

# THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK

Edited by  
JOHN PAXTON

126<sup>TH</sup>  
EDITION

1989-90


NUNC COGNOSCO EX PARTE



THOMAS J. BATA LIBRARY  
TRENT UNIVERSITY



TS 1614



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2019 with funding from  
Kahle/Austin Foundation

# THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK

1989-1990

Man hat behauptet, die Welt werde durch Zahlen regiert:  
das aber weiss ich, dass die Zahlen uns belehren, ob sie gut  
oder schlecht regiert werde.

GOETHE

#### Editors

Frederick Martin	1864-1883
Sir John Scott-Keltie	1883-1926
Mortimer Epstein	1911/27-1946
S. H. Steinberg	1946-1969
John Paxton	1963/69-

THE  
STATESMAN'S  
YEAR-BOOK

STATISTICAL AND HISTORICAL ANNUAL  
OF THE STATES OF THE WORLD  
FOR THE YEAR  
1989-1990

EDITED BY  
JOHN PAXTON

ST. MARTIN'S PRESS  
NEW YORK



JA 51 .S7 1989/90

Copyright © 1989 The Macmillan Press Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication  
may be reproduced or transmitted, in any form  
or by any means, without permission.

*First published in 1864*  
*126th edition 1989*

For information, write:  
ST. MARTIN'S PRESS, INC.  
175 Fifth Ave., New York, N. Y. 10010

Typeset in Great Britain by  
MB GRAPHIC (TYPESETTING) SERVICES  
Dunstable, Bedfordshire

*Printed in Great Britain by*  
RICHARD CLAY LTD  
*Bungay, Suffolk*

*Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 4-3776*

ISBN 0-312-03235-8

This edition published in the United States of America in 1989

## PREFACE

No fundamental change has taken place in the format of this, the 126th annual edition of THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, although every page has received revision.

As Namibia edges towards independence the editor has taken the opportunity to move details out of the section on the Republic of South Africa and place it firmly under 'N'.

Details of the new administration in the USA with details of voting by States are given but the editor regrets that not all the names of US Ambassadors to be appointed under the administration were known at the time of going to press.

The editor would like to thank all those kind correspondents who wrote congratulating us on our 125th birthday last year and also for those who have contributed to this edition.

THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK WORLD GAZETTEER, now in its third edition, is available for those who want more details about towns and regions and THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK HISTORICAL COMPANION, published last year as a celebration of publishing our 125th edition, is also available.

J.P.

THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK OFFICE,  
THE MACMILLAN PRESS LTD,  
LITTLE ESSEX STREET,  
LONDON, WC2R 3LF

## WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

On 1 Jan. 1960 following an agreement between the standards laboratories of Great Britain, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa and the USA, an international yard and an international pound (avoirdupois) came into existence. 1 yard = 91.44 centimetres; 1 lb. = 453.59237 grammes.

The abbreviation 'm' signifies 'million(s)' and tonnes implies metric tons.

LENGTH		DRY MEASURE	
Centimetre	0.394 inch	Litre	0.91 quart
Metre	1.094 yards	Hectolitre	2.75 bushels
Kilometre	0.621 mile		
LIQUID MEASURE		WEIGHT—AVOIRDUPOIS	
Litre	1.75 pints	Gramme	15.42 grains
Hectolitre	22 gallons	Kilogramme	2.205 pounds
		Quintal (= 100 kg)	220.46 pounds
		Tonne (= 1,000 kg)	<div> 0.984 long ton  1.102 short tons </div>
SURFACE MEASURE		WEIGHT—TROY	
Square metre	10.76 sq. feet	Gramme	15.43 grains
Hectare	2.47 acres	Kilogramme	<div> 32.15 ounces  2.68 pounds </div>
Square kilometre	0.386 sq. mile		

## BRITISH WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

LENGTH		WEIGHT	
1 foot	0.305 metre	1 ounce (= 437.2 grains)	28.350 grammes
1 yard	0.914 metre	1 lb. (= 7,000 grains)	453.6 grammes
1 mile (= 1,760 yds)	1.609 kilometres	1 cwt. (= 112 lb.)	50.802 kilo-grammes
		1 long ton (= 2,240 lb.)	1.016 tonnes
		1 short ton (= 2,000 lb.)	0.907 tonne
SURFACE MEASURE		LIQUID MEASURE	
1 sq. foot	9.290 sq. decimetres	1 pint	0.568 litre
1 sq. yard	0.836 sq. metre	1 gallon	4.546 litres
1 acre	0.405 hectare	1 quarter	2.909 hectolitres
1 sq. mile	2.590 sq. kilometres		

## CONVERSION OF UNITS

<i>To convert from</i>	<i>To</i>	<i>Multiply by</i>
acre	hectare	0.4047
barrel (oil)	cu. metre	0.159
bushel (imperial)	litre	36.37
bushel (US)	litre	35.24
carat	gramme	0.2
cu. foot	cu. metre	0.028 317
cu. metre	cu. foot	35.315
foot	metre	0.3048
gigawatt-hour	kilowatt-hour	1,000,000
hectare	acre	2.471
hundredweight (long)	kilogramme	50.802
hundredweight (short)	kilogramme	45.359
inch	millimetre	25.4
kilogramme	pound	2.2046
kilometre	mile (statute)	0.621 37
megawatt	kilowatt	1,000
metre	foot	3.2808
mile (nautical)	kilometre	1.852
mile (statute)	kilometre	1.6093
millimetre	inch	0.03937
ounce (troy)	gramme	31.103
pound	kilogramme	0.453 59
register ton	cu. metre	2.832
sq. kilometre	sq. mile	0.3861
sq. mile	sq. kilometre	2.590
per sq. mile	per sq. kilometre	0.3861
ton (long)	tonne (metric)	1.016
ton (short)	tonne (metric)	0.9072





# CONTENTS

## *Comparative Statistical Tables*

WHEAT	xv	MILLET	xxi
RYE	xvi	SORGHUM	xxii
BARLEY	xvii	SUGAR	xxiii
OATS	xviii	PETROLEUM	xxiv
MAIZE	xix	TERRITORIAL SEA LIMITS	xxvii
RICE	xx	CHRONOLOGY	xxxi

## *Part I: International Organizations*

### *The United Nations*

GENERAL ASSEMBLY	3
SECURITY COUNCIL	4
ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL COUNCIL	5
TRUSTEESHIP COUNCIL	6
INTERNATIONAL COURT OF JUSTICE	6
SECRETARIAT	7
BUDGET	7
MEMBER STATES OF THE UN	7
UNITED NATIONS SYSTEM	9

### *Specialized Agencies*

International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)	12
International Labour Organisation (ILO)	12
Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO)	14
Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)	15
World Health Organization (WHO)	16
International Monetary Fund (IMF)	18
International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD)	20
International Development Association (IDA)	21
International Finance Corporation (IFC)	21
International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO)	22
Universal Postal Union (UPU)	22
International Telecommunication Union (ITU)	23
World Meteorological Organization (WMO)	23
International Maritime Organization (IMO)	24
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)	25
World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO)	26
International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD)	27

### *Other International Organizations*

THE COMMONWEALTH	28
WORLD COUNCIL OF CHURCHES	31

INTERNATIONAL TRADE UNIONISM	32
EUROPEAN ORGANIZATIONS	
Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD)	35
North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)	36
Western European Union (WEU)	39
Council of Europe	39
European Communities	41
European Free Trade Association (EFTA)	46
The Warsaw Pact	47
Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON)	48
COLOMBO PLAN	49
ASSOCIATION OF SOUTH EAST ASIAN NATIONS (ASEAN)	51
ORGANIZATION OF AMERICAN STATES (OAS)	52
LATIN AMERICAN ECONOMIC GROUPINGS	54
CARIBBEAN COMMUNITY (CARICOM)	55
SOUTH PACIFIC FORUM	56
ARAB LEAGUE	56
ORGANIZATION OF THE PETROLEUM EXPORTING COUNTRIES (OPEC)	57
ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (OAU)	58
DANUBE COMMISSION	58

## *Part II: Countries of the World A-Z*

AFGHÁNISTÁN	63	BELIZE	204
ALBANIA	68	BENIN	208
ALGERIA	74	BERMUDA	212
ANDORRA	79	BHUTÁN	215
ANGOLA	81	BOLIVIA	218
ANGUILLA	85	BOTSWANA	224
ANTIGUA AND BARBUDA	87	BRAZIL	229
ARGENTINA	90	BRITISH ANTARCTIC TERRITORY	238
AUSTRALIA	97	BRITISH INDIAN OCEAN TERRITORY	238
<i>Territories</i>		BRUNEI	239
Australian Capital Territory	120	BULGARIA	243
Northern Territory	121	BURKINA FASO	250
Australian External Territories	125	BURMA	254
<i>States</i>		BURUNDI	258
New South Wales	129	CAMBODIA	261
Queensland	138	CAMEROON	265
South Australia	143	CANADA	270
Tasmania	148	<i>Provinces</i>	297
Victoria	153	Alberta	299
Western Australia	160	British Columbia	302
AUSTRIA	169	Manitoba	306
BAHAMAS	175	New Brunswick	309
BAHRAIN	180	Newfoundland and Labrador	312
BANGLADESH	185	Nova Scotia	317
BARBADOS	191	Ontario	320
BELGIUM	194		

Prince Edward Island	324	French Polynesia	515
Quebec	326	Wallis and Futuna	517
Saskatchewan	328	GABON	519
<i>Territories</i>		GAMBIA	523
Northwest Territories	331	GERMANY	526
Yukon Territory	333	GERMAN DEMOCRATIC	
CAPE VERDE	337	REPUBLIC (EAST)	527
CAYMAN ISLANDS	340	GERMANY, FEDERAL	
CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC	342	REPUBLIC OF (WEST)	534
CHAD	346	Baden-Württemberg	546
CHILE	349	Bavaria	547
CHINA, PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF	355	Berlin (West)	549
TAIWAN	368	Bremen	550
COLOMBIA	373	Hamburg	552
COMOROS	379	Hessen	553
CONGO	382	Lower Saxony	555
COSTA RICA	386	North Rhine-Westphalia	556
CÔTE D'IVOIRE	391	Rhineland-Palatinate	558
CUBA	395	Saarland	559
CYPRUS	401	Schleswig-Holstein	561
'Turkish Republic of		GHANA	563
Northern Cyprus'	406	GIBRALTAR	568
CZECHOSLOVAKIA	408	GREECE	571
DENMARK	416	GRENADA	578
Faroe Islands	427	GUATEMALA	581
Greenland	428	GUINEA	586
DJIBOUTI	431	GUINEA-BISSAU	589
DOMINICA	434	GUYANA	592
DOMINICAN REPUBLIC	436	HAITI	597
ECUADOR	441	HONDURAS	602
EGYPT	447	HONG KONG	607
EL SALVADOR	454	HUNGARY	614
EQUATORIAL GUINEA	459	ICELAND	623
ETHIOPIA	462	INDIA	630
FALKLAND ISLANDS	467	<i>States and Territories</i>	652
FIJI	470	Andhra Pradesh	653
FINLAND	474	Arunachal Pradesh	655
FRANCE	484	Assam	655
<i>Overseas Departments</i>		Bihar	657
Guadeloupe	500	Goa	658
Guiana	502	Gujarat	659
Martinique	504	Haryana	661
Réunion	506	Himachal Pradesh	662
<i>Territorial Collectivities</i>		Jammu and Kashmir	664
Mayotte	508	Karnataka	665
St Pierre and Miquelon	510	Kerala	667
<i>Overseas territories</i>		Madhya Pradesh	669
Antarctic territories	511	Maharashtra	672
New Caledonia	512	Manipur	673
		Meghalaya	675
		Mizoram	676

Nagaland	677	MAURITANIA	855
Orissa	678	MAURITIUS	858
Punjab	680	MEXICO	862
Rajasthan	682	MONACO	869
Sikkim	683	MONGOLIA	871
Tamil Nadu	686	MONTSERRAT	876
Tripura	688	MOROCCO	878
Uttar Pradesh	689	MOZAMBIQUE	884
West Bengal	691	NAMIBIA	888
<i>Territories</i>		NAURU	892
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	693	NEPÁL	894
Chandigarh	694	NETHERLANDS	898
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	694	Aruba	910
Daman and Diu	695	Netherlands Antilles	912
Delhi	695	NEW ZEALAND	915
Lakshadweep	696	Cook Islands	930
Pondicherry	697	Niue	932
INDONESIA	699	NICARAGUA	934
IRAN	706	NIGER	939
IRAQ	712	NIGERIA	942
IRELAND	717	NORWAY	948
ISRAEL	732	Dependencies	960
ITALY	741	OMAN	963
JAMAICA	753	PAKISTAN	968
JAPAN	758	PANAMA	978
JORDAN	767	PAPUA NEW GUINEA	984
KENYA	772	PARAGUAY	990
KIRIBATI	777	PERU	996
KOREA, REPUBLIC OF	780	PHILIPPINES	1002
North Korea	785	PITCAIRN	1008
KUWAIT	790	POLAND	1009
LAOS	794	PORTUGAL	1019
LEBANON	798	Macao	1025
LESOTHO	803	QATAR	1028
LIBERIA	806	ROMANIA	1032
LIBYA	810	RWANDA	1040
LIECHTENSTEIN	815	ST CHRISTOPHER (KITTS) -	
LUXEMBOURG	818	NEVIS	1043
MADAGASCAR	822	ST HELENA	1046
MALAÛI	826	ST LUCIA	1048
MALAYSIA	830	ST VINCENT	1050
Peninsular Malaysia	835	SAN MARINO	1053
Sabah	838	SÃO TOMÉ	1055
Sarawak	840	SAUDI ARABIA	1057
MALDIVES, REPUBLIC OF	844	SENEGAL	1063
MALI	846	SEYCHELLES	1067
MALTA	849		

SIERRA LEONE	1070	UNITED ARAB EMIRATES	1290
SINGAPORE	1075	UNITED KINGDOM	1295
SOLOMON ISLANDS	1082	Great Britain	1295
SOMALIA	1085	Northern Ireland	1357
SOUTH AFRICA,		Isle of Man	1365
REPUBLIC OF	1088	Channel Islands	1367
Cape of Good Hope	1099	UNITED STATES OF AMERICA	1372
Natal	1101	<i>States</i>	1424
Transvaal	1102	Alabama	1425
Orange Free State	1103	Alaska	1427
		Arizona	1430
Bophuthatswana	1105	Arkansas	1432
Transkei	1107	California	1435
Venda	1108	Colorado	1438
Ciskei	1110	Connecticut	1440
SOUTH GEORGIA AND THE		Delaware	1443
SOUTH SANDWICH ISLANDS	1113	District of Columbia	1445
SPAIN	1114	Florida	1447
Western Sahara	1126	Georgia	1449
SRI LANKA	1127	Hawaii	1451
SUDAN	1135	Idaho	1453
SURINAME	1140	Illinois	1456
SWAZILAND	1144	Indiana	1459
SWEDEN	1148	Iowa	1461
SWITZERLAND	1164	Kansas	1463
SYRIA	1175	Kentucky	1465
TANZANIA	1179	Louisiana	1468
THAILAND	1184	Maine	1470
TOGO	1190	Maryland	1473
TONGA	1194	Massachusetts	1476
TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO	1197	Michigan	1478
TUNISIA	1201	Minnesota	1481
TURKEY	1206	Mississippi	1484
TURKS AND CAICOS ISLANDS	1214	Missouri	1486
TUVALU	1216	Montana	1489
UGANDA	1218	Nebraska	1491
UNION OF SOVIET		Nevada	1494
SOCIALIST REPUBLICS	1222	New Hampshire	1496
Russia	1251	New Jersey	1498
Ukraine	1261	New Mexico	1501
Belorussia	1263	New York	1503
Azerbaijan	1264	North Carolina	1507
Georgia	1267	North Dakota	1509
Armenia	1270	Ohio	1511
Moldavia	1272	Oklahoma	1514
Estonia	1273	Oregon	1517
Latvia	1275	Pennsylvania	1521
Lithuania	1276	Rhode Island	1524
Central Asia	1278	South Carolina	1526
Kazakhstan	1279	South Dakota	1528
Turkmenistan	1281	Tennessee	1530
Uzbekistan	1282	Texas	1533
Tadzhikistan	1285	Utah	1536
Kirghizia	1287	Vermont	1538
		Virginia	1540
		Washington	1542
		West Virginia	1544
		Wisconsin	1547
		Wyoming	1551



<i>Outlying Territories</i>	1553	WESTERN SAMOA	1591
Guam	1553	YEMEN ARAB REPUBLIC	1594
Republic of Palau	1555	YEMEN, PEOPLE'S DEMO- CRATIC REPUBLIC OF	1597
Marshall Islands	1556	YUGOSLAVIA	1601
Micronesia	1556	Bosnia and Herzegovina	1609
Northern Marianas	1556	Croatia	1610
Samoa	1557	Macedonia	1610
Other Pacific Territories	1559	Montenegro	1611
Puerto Rico	1559	Serbia	1612
Virgin Islands	1562	Kosovo	1612
URUGUAY	1565	Vojvodina	1613
VANUATU	1570	Slovenia	1613
VATICAN CITY STATE	1573	ZAÏRE	1614
VENEZUELA	1576	ZAMBIA	1619
VIETNAM	1583	ZIMBABWE	1623
VIRGIN ISLANDS, BRITISH	1589		

PLACE AND INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS INDEX 1631

PRODUCT INDEX 1665

NAME INDEX 1677

ADDENDA xxxiv

# WHEAT

Area (1,000 hectares)

Average  
1979-81

Countries

	1984	1985	1986	1987	Average 1979-81	1984	1985	1986	1987	1984	1985	1986	1987
Afghanistan	2,321	2,313	2,315	2,315	2,315	2,321	2,313	2,315	2,315	2,850	2,750	2,900	2,850
Algeria	1,657	1,668	1,550	1,760	1,550	1,657	1,668	1,550	1,760	1,200	1,478	1,445	1,640
Argentina	5,900	5,382	4,900	4,950*	8,060	5,900	5,382	4,900	4,950*	13,220	8,700	8,900	10,100*
Australia <sup>1</sup>	12,078	11,736	11,236	8,861	14,468	12,078	11,736	11,236	8,861	18,666	16,167	16,139	12,190
Bulgaria <sup>1,2</sup>	986	1,067	1,127	1,050*	3,881	986	1,067	1,127	1,050*	4,836	3,068	4,327	3,500*
Canada	13,386	13,729	14,239	13,508	20,430	13,386	13,729	14,239	13,508	21,199	24,252	31,377	26,342
Chile <sup>1</sup>	513	506	569	677	882	513	506	569	677	988	1,165	1,626	1,874
China <sup>1</sup>	28,930	29,219	29,617	28,924	59,196	28,930	29,219	29,617	28,924	87,817	85,807	90,044	87,724*
Czechoslovakia <sup>2</sup>	1,121	1,209	1,205	1,212	4,482	1,121	1,209	1,205	1,212	6,170	6,023	5,305	6,154
Egypt <sup>1</sup>	577	498	507	577	1,844	577	498	507	577	1,815	1,872	1,929	2,722
France	4,473	5,105	4,865	4,934	22,362	4,473	5,105	4,865	4,934	32,977	28,890	26,570	27,434
Germany, Fed. Rep. of <sup>2</sup>	1,642	1,624	1,648	1,679	8,177	1,642	1,624	1,648	1,679	10,223	9,866	10,406	9,774
Greece	1,022	881	872	868	2,770	1,022	881	872	868	2,308	1,791	2,493	2,147
Hungary <sup>1,3</sup>	1,187	1,358	1,318	1,300	4,800	1,187	1,358	1,318	1,300	7,392	6,578	5,793	5,714
India	22,364	24,672	22,997	22,811	34,550	22,364	24,672	22,997	22,811	45,476	44,069	47,052	45,576
Iran	5,824	5,978	6,405	6,725	6,215	5,824	5,978	6,405	6,725	5,500	6,626	7,577	7,960
Iraq	1,215	1,540	1,240	859	854	1,215	1,540	1,240	859	471	1,406	1,036	722
Italy	3,373	3,034	3,136	3,087	8,989	3,373	3,034	3,136	3,087	10,057	8,461	9,104	9,359
Japan <sup>1</sup>	188	232	246	271	571	188	232	246	271	741	874	876	864*
Mexico	723	1,033	1,224	1,042	2,754	723	1,033	1,224	1,042	4,505	5,207	4,772	4,409
Morocco	1,673	1,856	2,223	2,288	1,500	1,673	1,856	2,223	2,288	1,989	2,050	3,809	2,427
Pakistan <sup>1</sup>	6,865	7,343	7,259	7,706	10,760	6,865	7,343	7,259	7,706	10,882	11,703	13,923	12,016
Poland <sup>1</sup>	1,525	1,706	2,025	2,133	4,189	1,525	1,706	2,025	2,133	6,010	6,461	7,502	7,942
Romania <sup>1</sup>	2,154	2,360	2,360	2,400*	5,471	2,154	2,360	2,360	2,400*	7,580	5,666	7,320	6,880*
S. Africa, Republic of	1,770	1,919	1,925	1,927	1,965	1,770	1,919	1,925	1,927	2,332	1,680	2,321	2,766
Spain <sup>2</sup>	2,628	2,306	2,114	2,223	4,510	2,628	2,306	2,114	2,223	6,052	5,329	4,392	5,768
Turkey <sup>2</sup>	9,208	9,026	9,356	9,415	17,038	9,208	9,026	9,356	9,415	17,235	17,032	19,032	18,932
USSR <sup>1</sup>	59,463	50,265	48,728	45,700	89,859	59,463	50,265	48,728	45,700	68,600	78,078	92,306	85,000
UK	1,434	1,902	1,991	1,994	8,116	1,434	1,902	1,991	1,994	14,970	12,046	13,911	11,800
USA	28,898	26,197	24,574	22,634	66,229	28,898	26,197	24,574	22,634	70,618	65,999	56,926	57,925
Yugoslavia <sup>2</sup>	1,475	1,348	1,346	1,445	4,624	1,475	1,348	1,346	1,445	5,595	4,859	4,776	5,272

World total

235,091 231,600 230,587 228,484 220,689

443,621 516,457 505,729 537,493 516,780

xv

\* Unofficial figures.

<sup>1</sup> Sown area.

<sup>2</sup> Includes spelt.

<sup>3</sup> Field crops and other crops.

# R YE

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>				<i>Average 1979-81</i>	<i>Production (1,000 tonnes)</i>			
	1984	1985	1986	1987		1984	1985	1986	1987
Argentina	157	115	90	90	199	140	105	94	100
Austria	94	88	83	85	105	381	339	284	309
Belgium	8	6	8*	8	12	38	26	36*	36
Bulgaria <sup>1</sup>	26	32	30	30*	21	37	49	52	50*
Canada	370	353	315	313	364	664	569	609	493
China	700	600	550	650	733	1,400	1,000	900	1,000
Czechoslovakia <sup>2</sup>	192	179	155	142	171	710	620	547	496
Denmark	122	126	120	135*	59	608	565	546	512*
Finland	44	31	27	38	44	92	72	71	74
France	102	87	81	82	121	349	297	229	299
German Demo. Rep.	718	690	680	680*	671	2,510	2,505	2,406	2,375*
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	439	426	414	408	532	1,931	1,821	1,768	1,736
Hungary <sup>1,3</sup>	75	85	89	94	72	193	166	172	187
Netherlands	6	5	4	6	10	25	19	19	27
Poland <sup>1</sup>	3,545	3,083	2,760	2,647	2,970	9,540	7,600	7,074	6,817
Portugal	130	123	124	125	166	103	97	100	110
Romania <sup>1</sup>	30	30*	35	30	33	47*	45*	66*	55
Spain	231	211	221	227	219	315	273	220	320
Sweden	62	46	40	39*	58	246	157	159	156
Switzerland	250	232	221	230*	439	360	360	350	385
Turkey	9,420	9,520	8,741	9,000	7,557	14,000	15,739	15,296	16,000
USSR <sup>1</sup>	397	290	274	276	295	825	524	496	500
USA	47	45	42	41	56	81	77	74	69
Yugoslavia									
World total	17,324	16,592	15,309	15,554	15,077	34,825	33,282	31,813	32,361

\* Unofficial figures.

<sup>1</sup> Sown area.

<sup>2</sup> Includes mixture of wheat and rye.

<sup>3</sup> Field crops and other crops.

# BARLEY

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>					<i>Average 1979-81</i>	<i>Production (1,000 tonnes)</i>				
	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988		1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Australia <sup>1</sup>	3,518	3,284	2,294	2,407	2,407	3,278	5,554	4,868	3,551	3,270	3,270
Austria	329	334	333	291	291	1,288	1,517	1,521	1,292	1,179	1,179
Belgium	152	131	142*	142	142	844	935	747	858*	740*	740*
Bulgaria <sup>1</sup>	315	260	318	300*	300*	1,439	1,279	800	1,144	1,000*	1,000*
Canada	4,566	4,750	4,829	5,046	5,046	11,199	10,296	12,387	14,634	14,382	14,382
China	1,201	1,020	1,100	990	990	3,133	3,300	2,700	2,520	2,800	2,800
Czechoslovakia	777	789	821	834	834	3,524	3,677	3,538	3,530	3,551	3,551
Denmark	1,181	1,094	1,078	965	965	6,250	6,072	5,251	5,134	4,355	4,355
Finland	562	646	589	583	583	1,421	1,715	1,854	1,714	1,089	1,089
France	2,107	2,255	2,097	1,992	1,992	10,997	11,543	11,440	10,120	10,490	10,490
German Demo. Rep.	866	882	895	905*	905*	3,592	4,138	4,366	4,293	4,255*	4,255*
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	2,011	1,949	1,947	1,837	1,837	8,566	10,284	9,690	9,377	8,514	8,514
Greece	344	316	297	267	267	838	890	588	740	626	626
Hungary <sup>1,2</sup>	265	279	253	205	205	848	1,220	1,046	857	790	790
India	1,802	1,253	1,369	1,282	1,282	2,020	1,834	1,556	1,962	1,728	1,728
Iran	1,336	2,084	2,200	2,200	2,200	1,397	1,500	2,298	2,500	2,500	2,500
Ireland	349	298	283	276	276	1,603	1,770	1,494	1,428	1,562	1,562
Italy	324	468	434	445	445	914	1,618	1,630	1,447	1,708	1,708
Japan <sup>1</sup>	120	113	107	105*	105*	392	396	378	344	340*	340*
Korea, South <sup>1</sup>	386	237	190	204*	204*	1,059	804	571	453	516*	516*
Morocco	2,190	2,383	2,472	2,314	2,314	1,712	1,405	2,541	3,563	1,543	1,543
Poland <sup>1</sup>	1,362	1,242	1,335	1,286	1,286	3,563	3,555	4,086	4,412	4,335	4,335
Romania <sup>1</sup>	833	672	650*	696	696	2,360	2,448	1,850	2,200*	2,497	2,497
Spain	3,520	4,023	4,246	4,352	4,352	6,571	10,789	10,698	7,431	9,602	9,602
Sweden	678	643	627	549	549	2,323	2,733	2,309	2,327	2,087	2,087
Syria	1,220	1,289	1,548	1,570	1,570	1,129	304	740	1,119	576	576
Turkey	2,846	3,250	3,343	3,314	3,314	5,480	6,500	6,500	7,000	6,900	6,900
USSR <sup>1</sup>	33,456	29,058	29,964	31,000	31,000	42,502	41,800	46,540	53,889	56,000	56,000
UK	2,333	1,979	1,917	1,831	1,831	10,058	11,064	9,740	10,014	9,100	9,100
USA	3,214	4,696	4,859	4,058	4,058	8,838	13,046	12,876	13,292	11,474	11,474
World total	81,044	78,039	79,189	78,741	78,741	156,844	171,828	176,582	182,109	178,518	178,518

<sup>1</sup> Sown area.

<sup>2</sup> Field crops and other crops.

\* Unofficial figures.

<sup>1</sup> Sown area.

## OATS

Countries	Area (1,000 hectares) <sup>1</sup>				Average 1979-81	Production (1,000 tonnes)						
	1984	1985	1986	1987		1984	1985	1986	1987			
Argentina	384	333	400*	400	431	610	400	560*	500			
Australia	1,041	1,068	1,129	1,369	1,386	1,367	1,330	1,560	1,859			
Austria	77	75	73	69	298	292	284	270	246			
Belgium	27	29*	21*	21	171	118	145	84*	65			
Canada	1,406	1,263	1,287	1,263	2,993	2,670	2,736	3,251	2,995			
Chile	96	85	64	56	151	163	170	124	128			
China	300	400	400	400	600	500	490	500	500			
Czechoslovakia <sup>2</sup>	129	121	115	108	418	479	473	419	406			
Denmark	34	42	24*	18	166	158	168	100*	79			
Finland	419	411	403	368	1,183	1,321	1,218	1,175	723			
France	444	433	312	281	1,850	1,875	1,770	1,066	1,122			
German Demo. Rep.	161	178	163	167	571	700	746	666	575*			
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	555	584	506	464	2,777	2,507	2,806	2,276	2,024			
Ireland	25	23	21	20	95	141	106	102	110			
Italy	190	182	182	176	433	430	363	394	361			
Netherlands	12	11	7	8	106	58	58	40	47			
Norway	123	127	126	125	424	601	494	400	400			
Poland <sup>1</sup>	934	995	924	856	2,387	2,604	2,682	2,486	2,429			
Spain	479	459	393	349	527	788	680	433	503			
Sweden	428	445	455	405	1,635	1,904	1,668	1,486	1,489			
Turkey	172	167	158	164*	350	316	314	300	330			
USSR <sup>1</sup>	12,806	12,604	13,173	13,100	14,372	19,200	20,513	21,929	22,800			
UK	106	134	97	99	587	517	614	503	440			
USA	3,304	3,309	2,776	2,802	7,234	6,875	7,559	5,608	5,425			
Yugoslavia	153	151	152	140	296	256	252	260	232			
World total	25,399	25,156	24,922	24,866	42,582	47,887	49,376	47,421	47,197			

\* Unofficial figures

<sup>1</sup> Sown area

<sup>2</sup> Includes spelt.

<sup>3</sup> Field crops and other crops

\* Unofficial figures.

<sup>1</sup> Sown area.<sup>2</sup> Includes spelt.<sup>3</sup> Field crops and other crops.



# MAIZE

Countries	Area (1,000 hectares)					Production (1,000 tonnes)				
	Average 1979-81	1984	1985	1986	1987	Average 1979-81	1984	1985	1986	1987
Argentina	2,895	3,014	3,340	3,351	2,900*	9,333	9,500	11,900	12,400	9,250
Austria	190	207	208	217	207	1,338	1,542	1,727	1,740	1,534
Brazil	11,430	12,018	11,798	12,460	13,511	19,265	21,164	22,018	20,541	26,824
Bulgaria	605	542	435	574	550*	2,626	2,994	1,350	2,848	1,800*
Canada	1,038	1,192	1,123	994	998	5,901	7,024	6,970	5,912	7,008
China	19,986	18,589	17,756	19,199	20,290	60,720	73,600	64,052	71,128	76,495
Egypt	800	830	804	741	850*	3,159	3,170	3,699	3,793	4,100*
France	1,774	1,743	1,887	1,884	1,736	9,641	10,493	12,409	11,641	12,052
Greece	157	230	222	203	245	1,165	2,091	1,910	1,985	2,370
Hungary	1,270	1,133	1,082	1,146	1,170	7,022	6,686	6,818	7,261	7,187
India	5,887	5,800	5,797	5,873	5,300*	6,486	8,442	6,644	7,457	6,500
Indonesia	2,761	3,086	2,440	3,143	2,800*	4,035	5,288	4,330	5,920	4,800*
Italy	956	961	923	843	764	6,590	6,672	6,357	6,355	5,720
Kenya	1,273	985	1,790*	1,795*	1,600*	1,714	1,440	2,750*	2,825*	1,900*
Malawi	1,120	1,156	1,210	1,192*	1,152	1,268	1,398	1,355	1,294	1,225*
Mexico	6,836	6,972	7,498	6,818	8,387	11,866	12,910	13,957	12,154	10,988
Nigeria	443	562	562	600	700	591	1,058	1,196	1,300*	1,400
Philippines	3,267	3,315	3,511	3,595	3,754	3,174	3,439	3,863	4,091	4,276
Portugal	333	271	246	258	269	486	521	550	628	673
Romania	3,309	3,091	3,094	2,976	3,150	11,823	13,274	15,238	20,158	22,000
S. Africa, Republic of	4,900	3,953	3,887	4,044	4,014*	11,207	4,393	7,658	8,077	7,372
Spain	450	440	526	524	545	2,227	2,529	3,414	3,423	3,555
Tanzania	1,350	1,750	1,718*	1,905*	1,948*	1,642	1,939	2,093*	2,210*	2,359
Thailand	1,408	1,660	1,918	1,815	1,357	3,103	4,226	4,934	4,309	2,736
Turkey	583	550	567	560	570	1,263	1,500	1,900	2,300	2,400
USSR <sup>1</sup>	3,063	3,919	4,482	4,223	4,600	9,076	13,600	14,406	12,479	14,800
USA	29,661	29,103	30,442	27,988	23,944	192,084	194,928	225,478	209,555	179,437
Yugoslavia	2,250	2,331	2,402	2,369	2,218	9,736	11,312	9,901	12,526	8,863
Zimbabwe	1,097	1,356	1,256	1,314	1,211*	1,829	1,283	2,711	2,545	1,094*
World total	126,035	126,808	129,235	129,411	127,605	421,751	452,753	487,367	486,198	457,365

<sup>1</sup> For dry grain only.

\* Unofficial figures.

## RICE (Paddy)

Countries	Area (1,000 hectares)					Production (1,000 tonnes)				
	Average 1979-81	1984	1985	1986	1987	Average 1979-81	1984	1985	1986	1987
Bangladesh	10,310	10,223	10,399	10,610	9,359	20,125	21,930	22,562	23,109	22,250
Brazil	5,932	5,351	4,755	5,591	6,015	8,533	9,027	9,025	10,405	10,460
Burma	4,684	4,601	4,661	4,666	4,641	12,637	14,255	14,317	14,126	13,722
Cambodia	1,186	1,700	1,750	1,700	1,700	1,160	1,970	2,100	2,000	1,700
China	34,323	33,765	32,634	32,804	32,611	145,665	181,193	171,416	174,790	176,530
Colombia	424	364	386	333	389	1,843	1,696	1,798	1,632	1,879
Egypt	416	414	389	423	420*	2,376	2,236	2,311	2,388	2,400*
India	40,091	41,159	41,137	40,774	39,000*	74,557	87,553	95,818	90,696	77,960
Indonesia	9,063	9,764	9,902	9,988	9,870*	29,570	38,136	39,033	39,727	38,676
Iran	433	485	480	489	510	1,448	1,600	1,775	1,828	1,920
Italy	176	180	186	191	190	989	1,009	1,123	1,077	1,060
Japan	2,384	2,315	2,342	2,303	2,150	13,320	14,848	14,578	14,559	13,300*
Korea, North	793	830	840	860	875	4,970	5,570	5,800	6,000	6,200
Korea, South	1,230	1,231	1,237	1,236	1,262*	6,780	7,970	7,855	7,872	7,596*
Madagascar	1,182	1,198	1,181	1,168*	1,200	2,055	2,131	2,178	2,138*	2,230*
Malaysia	658	620	656	645	640*	2,053	1,572	1,953	1,890*	1,875*
Mexico	153	153	220	152	181	528	484	809	528	584
Nepál	1,275	1,377	1,391	1,333	1,333	2,361	2,709	2,804	2,801	2,372
Nigeria	517	670*	700*	720*	730*	1,027	1,300*	1,515*	1,416	1,500
Pakistan	1,981	1,999	1,863	2,066	1,884	4,884	4,973	4,378	5,230	4,768
Philippines	3,513	3,222	3,306	3,464	3,284	7,893	8,200	8,806	9,247	8,683
Sri Lanka	819	888	867	836	679	2,093	2,414	2,661	2,588	2,128
Thailand	8,953	9,630	9,833	9,194	9,000	16,967	19,905	20,264	18,868	17,650
USSR	637	688	671	621	600	2,558	2,720	2,572	2,633	2,700
USA	1,345	1,134	1,009	955	943	6,968	6,296	6,120	6,049	5,793
Vietnam	5,558	5,675	5,704	5,689	5,700	11,663	15,506	15,875	16,003	15,300
World total	143,755	145,697	144,493	144,808	141,051	396,470	470,284	472,714	473,068	454,320

\* Unofficial figures.

## MILLET

Countries	Area (1,000 hectares)				Average 1979-81	Production (1,000 tonnes)			
	1984	1985	1986	1987		1984	1985	1986	1987
Argentina	114	125	94	100	245	136	158	107	110
Australia	37	30	29	41	26	43	26	32	30*
Burkina Faso	723	974	1,054	1,168	390	372	587	687	632
Cameroon	373	477	500	465	402	207	443	450	400
Chad	688	950*	1,078*	950	409	254	526*	624*	510*
China	3,798	3,319	2,983	2,692	5,790	7,026	5,978	4,541	5,301
Egypt	153	143	168*	168*	641	561	547	600*	610*
Ethiopia	235	230	230	230	203	190	190	188	180
Ghana	220*	222	240	165	117	106	120	140	121*
India	16,220	16,207	16,702	16,702	9,189	9,771	7,399	8,288	6,900
Kenya	29	56	60	80	84	10	60	65	50
Korea, North	425	435	440	445	447	500	535	545	560
Korea, South	2	4	3	3	4	2	5	3	3
Mali	1,297	1,582	1,634	1,540	801	876	1,249	1,301	1,134
Nepal	134	151	151	151	121	124	138	138	139
Niger	3,030	3,160	3,239	3,000	1,311	771	1,450	1,383	1,020
Nigeria	2,882	3,700*	3,900*	3,700	2,732	3,200*	3,600*	4,100*	3,000
Pakistan	509	561	509	324	255	284	258	233	230
Senegal	1,062	1,336	793	1,079	603	471	950	634	769
Sudan	1,094	1,725	1,543	950*	458	158	428	285	120
Tanzania	450	341*	332*	383*	355	267	300*	273*	297*
Togo	121	66	116	116	44	76	74	82	83*
Uganda	297	312	300	350	473	223	210	390	490
USSR	2,794	2,808	2,485	3,000	1,759	1,890	2,886	2,368	3,900
Zimbabwe <sup>1</sup>	353	250	295*	310*	153	120	224*	141*	81
World total	40,091	39,048	40,256	39,360	27,753	28,389	29,269	28,630	27,711

<sup>1</sup> On farms and estates.

\* Unofficial figures.

## SORGHUM

Countries	Area (1,000 hectares)				Average 1979-81	Production (1,000 tonnes)				
	1984	1985	1986	1987		1979-81	1984	1985	1986	1987
Argentina	2,392	2,002	1,400	1,005	5,641	6,930	6,256	4,200	3,040	
Australia	730	723	734	767	1,084	1,885	1,369	1,416	1,184	
Burkina Faso	965	1,077	1,210	1,176	620	594	798	1,012	848	
China	2,458	1,965	1,896	1,898	7,034	7,747	5,696	5,481	6,100	
Colombia	238	192	227	264	488	590	499	600	718	
Ethiopia <sup>1,2</sup>	900	900	910	910	1,419	515	905	1,092	1,000	
France	58	44	45	39	332	262	206	172	209	
India	15,939	16,097	15,643	16,000	11,380	11,402	10,197	8,866	9,400	
Mexico	1,622	1,236	1,928	2,108	4,991	5,009	6,550	4,905	4,800	
Niger	1,098	1,140	1,109	1,100	347	236	328	360	360	
Nigeria	4,500	4,600	4,600	4,400	3,545	4,608	4,991	5,400*	4,500	
S. Africa, Republic of	283	315	307	314	540	477	600	437	467	
Sudan	3,355	5,408	4,960	3,360	2,361	1,097	3,542	3,282	1,300	
Thailand	266	292	184	204	237	374	404	211	243	
Uganda	206	186	200*	220*	312	164	148	290*	330*	
USA	6,214	6,792	5,609	4,291	19,157	22,004	28,456	23,829	18,819	
Venezuela	239	250	381*	369*	365	472	481	756*	850*	
Yemen Arab Republic	687	690	690	653	631	276	281	491	477	
World total	46,460	48,747	46,804	43,828	64,516	68,842	76,465	67,496	58,978	

\* Unofficial figures.

<sup>1</sup> Includes teff.<sup>2</sup> Unspecified millet and sorghum.

# **CENTRIFUGAL RAW SUGAR** (in 1,000 tonnes)

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Average 1979-81</i>	<i>1982</i>	<i>1983</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Argentina	1,584	1,623*	1,625	1,545	1,174	1,134*	1,053*
Australia <sup>1</sup>	3,243	3,500	3,171	3,548	3,379	3,371	3,450
Barbados <sup>2</sup>	113	89	85	100	100	111	85*
Brazil	7,991	9,314*	9,576*	9,332*	8,274*	8,649*	8,649*
Canada	118	122*	132	113	54	122	115
China	3,809	4,649	4,910	5,352*	6,347*	6,338*	6,273*
Colombia	1,192	1,318*	1,379	1,178	1,367	1,297	1,321
Cuba	7,510	8,279	7,460	8,331*	8,101*	7,347*	7,218
Czechoslovakia	808	885	792	844*	939*	862	770*
Dominican Rep.	1,142	1,255	1,219	1,156	921	803*	852*
Egypt	666	754	782*	780	887*	959	1,007
France	4,720	4,800	3,875	4,305	4,324	3,734*	3,973*
Fiji <sup>1</sup>	446	487	276	480	341	502	401
German Demo. Rep.	675	876*	692*	778*	798*	790*	760*
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	3,261	3,586	2,725	3,151	3,454	3,469	2,960*
Guyana	294	288	248	238	265	249	230*
India <sup>3</sup>	5,380	9,190	8,948	6,430	6,650	7,600	9,240*
Indonesia <sup>4</sup>	1,286	1,629	1,643	1,500	1,767	2,013	1,665
Italy	1,956	1,290	1,352	1,385*	1,352*	1,868*	1,870*
Jamaica	238	202	198	193	225	206	187*
Mauritius <sup>4</sup>	615	729	640	610	684	707	691
Mexico	2,796	2,873*	3,108*	3,297*	3,489*	4,068*	4,031*
Pakistan <sup>3</sup>	734	1,414	1,246	1,258	1,430	1,210	1,398
Peru	571	614	455*	620*	757*	611*	566*
Philippines	2,289	2,527	2,540	2,335	1,718	1,521	1,340
Poland	1,530	2,011	2,140	1,878	1,811	1,891	1,820
Puerto Rico	156	102	90	87	98	87*	87*
S. Africa, Rep. of	2,011	2,304	1,495	2,560	2,280	2,248*	2,320*
Spain	934	1,242	1,356	1,166	976	1,111	1,088*
Sweden	350	389	298	392	346	386	277*
Thailand	1,534	2,930	2,268*	2,350*	2,572	2,586	2,637
Trinidad	117	79	77	70	81	92	85*
Turkey	1,178	1,860*	1,770*	1,655*	1,398*	1,414*	1,793*
USSR	7,017	7,400	8,760*	8,685*	8,260*	8,700*	9,500
UK	1,215	1,544	1,185	1,400	1,317	1,433	1,343*
USA <sup>5</sup>	5,342	5,262	5,107	5,363	5,473	6,075	6,645
World total	88,614	102,422	97,929	99,976	99,283	101,815	103,358

<sup>1</sup> 94° net titre.

<sup>2</sup> Includes the sugar equivalent of fancy molasses.

<sup>3</sup> Includes sugar (raw value) refined from gur.

<sup>4</sup> Tel quel.

<sup>5</sup> Includes Hawaii.

\* Unofficial figures.



WORLD ESTIMATED CRUDE OIL PRODUCTION <sup>1</sup>

(in 1,000 tonnes)

	1960	1970	1987	1988
<i>Africa</i>				
Algeria	8,630	47,253	29,460	30,000
Angola	70	5,066	17,077	22,500
Congo	—	—	5,777	6,400
Côte d'Ivoire	—	—	1,200	800
Egypt	—	—	45,931	44,500
Gabon	850	5,460	7,980	8,750
Libya	—	159,201	46,790	48,500
Nigeria	880	53,420	63,670	70,000
Tunisia	—	4,151	5,000	4,800
Zaire	—	—	1,530	1,400
<i>Caribbean Area</i>				
Colombia	8,100	11,071	19,418	17,380
Cuba	—	—	894	750
Trinidad	6,075	7,225	8,353	7,800
Venezuela	148,690	193,209	88,290	93,000
<i>China</i>	5,000	20,000	132,940	135,000
<i>Far East</i>				
Australia	—	8,292	25,785	24,500
Brunei	4,690	6,916	7,250	7,500
Burma	530	750	900	750
India	440	6,809	30,143	31,500
Indonesia	20,560	42,102	64,110	62,000
Japan	510	750	603	650
Malaysia	—	—	23,500	27,000
New Zealand	—	—	1,272	1,300
Pakistan	360	486	2,032	2,400
Thailand	—	—	1,600	1,900
<i>Middle East</i>				
Abu Dhabi	—	33,288	50,845	55,000
Bahrain	2,250	3,834	2,108	2,150
Dubai	—	—	18,140	17,000
Iran	52,065	191,663	113,370	113,000
Iraq	47,480	76,600	101,810	128,000
Kuwait	81,860	137,397	61,440	73,000
Oman	—	—	28,265	29,500
Qatar	8,210	17,257	15,050	15,200
Saudi Arabia	61,090	176,851	209,570	251,000
Sharjah	—	—	3,125	3,150
Syria	—	4,350	12,000	13,500
Turkey	350	3,461	2,643	2,500

<sup>1</sup> Excluding small scale production in Afghanistan, Bangladesh and Mongolia; including other small producers not specified here.

# WORLD ESTIMATED CRUDE OIL PRODUCTION

(contd.)

(in 1,000 tonnes)

	1960	1970	1987	1988
<i>North America</i>				
Canada	27,480	69,954	88,560	93,000
USA	384,080	533,677	461,353	455,000
<i>Latin America</i>				
Argentina	9,160	19,969	21,630	23,000
Bolivia	990	1,128	915	900
Brazil	390	8,009	28,825	26,800
Chile		1,620	1,565	1,300
Ecuador	2,680	191	8,520	15,800
Mexico	14,125	21,877	142,960	143,000
Peru	450	3,450	8,071	700
<i>USSR and Eastern Europe</i>				
Albania	600	1,199	3,000	3,000
Bulgaria	200	334	280	280
Czechoslovakia	140	203	146	140
German Dem. Rep.	—	60	60	60
Hungary	1,215	1,937	1,916	1,900
Poland	195	424	145	140
Romania	11,500	13,377	10,500	10,000
USSR	148,000	352,667	624,000	624,000
Yugoslavia	1,040	2,854	3,868	3,700
<i>Western Europe</i>				
Austria	2,440	2,798	1,060	1,100
Denmark	—	—	4,599	4,800
France	2,260	2,308	3,235	3,500
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	5,560	7,536	3,728	3,900
Italy	1,990	1,408	3,632	4,500
Netherlands	1,920	1,919	4,681	4,300
Norway	—	—	49,500	56,000
Spain	—	156	1,639	1,500
UK	90	84	123,306	115,000
World total	1,090,080	2,336,153	2,909,670	3,025,230

## TERRITORIAL SEA LIMITS (IN MILES)

<i>State</i>	<i>Territorial Sea</i>	<i>Jurisdiction over fisheries (measured from the baseline of the territorial sea)</i>
Albania	15 (1976)	—
Algeria	12 (1963)	—
Angola	20 (1975)	200 (1975)
Antigua and Barbuda	12 (1982)	200 (1982) <sup>1</sup>
Argentina	200 (1967)	—
Australia	3 (1973)	200 (1979)
Bahamas	3 (1878)	200 (1977)
Bahrain	3	—
Bangladesh	12 (1974)	200 (1974) <sup>1</sup>
Barbados	12 (1977)	200 (1979) <sup>1</sup>
Belgium	3	up to median line (1978)
Belize	3 (1878)	—
Benin	200 (1976)	—
Brazil	200 (1970)	—
Brunei Darussalam	12 (1983)	200 (1983) (or median line)
Bulgaria	12 (1951)	200 (1987) <sup>1</sup>
Burma	12 (1968)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Cambodia	12 (1969)	200 (1979) <sup>1</sup>
Cameroon	50 (1974)	—
Canada	12 (1970)	200 (1977)
Cape Verde	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Chile	12 (1986)	200 (1947–52) <sup>1</sup>
China	12 (1958)	—
Colombia	12 (1970)	200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>
Comoros	12 (1976)	200 (1976) <sup>1</sup>
Congo	200 (1977)	—
Costa Rica	12 (1972)	200 (1975) <sup>1</sup>
Côte d'Ivoire	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Cuba	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Cyprus	12 (1964)	—
Denmark (including Faroe Islands and Greenland)	3 (1966)	200 (1977)
Djibouti	12 (1971)	200 (1979) <sup>1</sup>
Dominica	12 (1981)	200 (1981) <sup>1</sup>
Dominican Republic	6 (1967)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Ecuador	200 (1966)	—
Egypt	12 (1958)	—
El Salvador	200 (1950)	—
Equatorial Guinea	12 (1970)	200 (1984) <sup>1</sup>
Ethiopia	12 (1953)	—
Fiji	12 (1978)	200 (1981) <sup>1</sup>
Finland	4 (1956)	12 (1975) (or agreed boundary)
France	12 (1971)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup> (except Mediterranean)
Gabon	12 (1986)	200 (1986) <sup>1</sup>
Gambia	12 (1969)	200 (1978)
German Democratic Republic	12 (1985)	up to median line (1978)
Germany, Federal Republic of	3 <sup>2</sup>	200 (1977)
Ghana	12 (1986)	200 (1986) <sup>1</sup>
Greece	6 (1936)	—
Grenada	12 (1978)	200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>
Guatemala	12 (1934)	200 (1976) <sup>1</sup>
Guinea	12 (1980)	200 (1980) <sup>1</sup>
Guinea-Bissau	12 (1978)	200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Economic zone. <sup>2</sup> 3–16 miles in North Sea (German Bight); area defined by coordinates.



TERRITORIAL SEA LIMITS (IN MILES)—*contd.*

<i>State</i>	<i>Territorial Sea</i>	<i>Jurisdiction over fisheries (measured from the baseline of the territorial sea)</i>
Guyana	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>9</sup>
Haiti	12 (1972)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Honduras	12 (1965)	200 (1951) <sup>1</sup>
Iceland	12 (1979)	200 (1979) <sup>1</sup>
India	12 (1967)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Indonesia	12 (1957) <sup>2</sup>	200 (1980) <sup>1, 7</sup>
Iran	12 (1959)	<sup>8</sup>
Iraq	12 (1958)	—
Ireland	3 (1959)	200 (1977)
Israel	6 (1956)	—
Italy	12 (1974)	—
Jamaica	12 (1971)	—
Japan	12 (1977)	200 (1977)
Jordan	3 (1943)	—
Kenya	12 (1969)	200 (1979) <sup>1</sup>
Kiribati	12 (1983)	200 (1983) <sup>1</sup>
Korea (North)	12	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Korea (South)	12 (1978)	12
Kuwait	12 (1967)	—
Lebanon	12 (1983)	—
Liberia	200 (1976)	—
Libya	12 (1959)	—
Madagascar	12 (1985)	200 (1985) <sup>1</sup>
Malaysia	12 (1969)	200 (1980) <sup>1</sup>
Maldives, Republic of	12 (1975)	(1976) <sup>1, 3</sup>
Malta	12 (1978)	25 (1978)
Mauritania	12 (1988)	200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>
Mauritius	12 (1970)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Mexico	12 (1969)	200 (1976) <sup>1</sup>
Monaco	12 (1973)	200 (1975)
Morocco	12 (1973) <sup>4</sup>	200 (1981) <sup>1</sup>
Mozambique	12 (1976)	200 (1976) <sup>1</sup>
Namibia	6 (1963)	12 (1963)
Nauru	12 (1971)	200 (1978)
Netherlands	12 (1985)	200 (1977)
New Zealand	12 (1977)	200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>
Nicaragua	(1979) <sup>5</sup>	200 (1979) <sup>5</sup>
Nigeria	30 (1971)	200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>
Norway	4 (1812)	200 (1977) <sup>1</sup>
Oman	12 (1977)	200 (1981) <sup>1</sup>
Pakistan	12 (1966)	200 (1976) <sup>1</sup>
Panama	200 (1967)	—
Papua New Guinea	12 (1978)	200 (1978)
Peru	(1947) <sup>5</sup>	(offshore waters)
Philippines	<sup>6</sup>	200 (1947) <sup>5</sup>
		200 (1978) <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Economic zone.<sup>2</sup> The territorial sea of Indonesia is measured by straight lines surrounding the archipelago.<sup>3</sup> Territorial limits and economic zone defined by geographical co-ordinates.<sup>4</sup> Limits with opposite or adjacent states to be fixed by agreement, failing which median line principle to apply.<sup>5</sup> Sovereignty and jurisdiction over the sea, its soil and subsoil up to 200 miles (1947).<sup>6</sup> The territorial sea of the Philippines is determined by straight base-lines joining appropriate points of the outermost islands forming the Philippine archipelago in accordance with Treaties of 1898, 1900 and 1930 (1961).<sup>7</sup> 200 mile exclusive fisheries zone established 1985.<sup>8</sup> Outer limits of the superjacent waters of the continental shelf. Median line in the Sea of Oman (1973).<sup>9</sup> The Guyana Maritime Boundaries Act 1977 empowers the President to declare a 200 mile economic zone. In Jan. 1988 no such zone had been declared.

TERRITORIAL SEA LIMITS (IN MILES)—*contd.*

<i>State</i>	<i>Territorial Sea</i>	<i>Jurisdiction over fisheries (measured from the baseline of the territorial sea)</i>
Poland	12 (1978)	up to median line (1978)
Portugal	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>2</sup>
Qatar	3	<sup>1</sup>
Romania	12 (1951)	200 (1986) <sup>2</sup>
St Christopher (St Kitts)—Nevis	12 (1984)	200 (1984) <sup>2</sup>
St Lucia	12 (1984)	200 (1984) <sup>2</sup>
St Vincent and the Grenadines	12 (1983)	200 (1983) <sup>2</sup>
São Tomé and Príncipe	12 (1978)	200 (1978) <sup>2</sup>
Saudi Arabia	12 (1958)	<sup>6</sup>
Senegal	12 (1985)	200 (1985) <sup>2</sup>
Seychelles	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>2</sup>
Sierra Leone	200 (1971)	—
Singapore	3 (1878)	—
Solomon Islands	12 (1978)	200 (1986)
Somalia	200 (1972)	—
South Africa, Republic of	12 (1977)	200 (1977)
Spain	12 (1977)	200 (1978) <sup>2</sup> (except Mediterranean)
Sri Lanka	12 (1971)	200 (1977) <sup>2</sup>
Sudan	12 (1960)	—
Suriname	12 (1978)	200 (1978) <sup>2</sup>
Sweden	12 (1980)	200 (1978)
Syria	35 (1981)	—
Tanzania	50 (1973)	—
Thailand	12 (1966)	200 (1980) <sup>2</sup>
Togo	30 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>2</sup>
Tonga	<sup>3</sup>	—
Trinidad and Tobago	12 (1969)	200 (1986) <sup>2</sup>
Tunisia	12 (1973)	—
Turkey	<sup>7</sup>	12 (1964) 200 (1986) <sup>2</sup> (Black Sea)
Tuvalu	12 (1984)	200 (1984) <sup>2</sup>
USSR	12 (1909)	200 (1984) <sup>2</sup>
United Arab Emirates	<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup>	<sup>5</sup>
UK	12 (1987)	200 (1977)
USA	12 (1988)	200 (1983) <sup>2</sup>
Uruguay	200 (1969)	—
Vanuatu	12 (1978–82)	200 (1978–82) <sup>2</sup>
Venezuela	12 (1956)	200 (1978) <sup>2</sup>
Vietnam	12 (1977)	200 (1977) <sup>2</sup>
Western Samoa	12 (1971)	200 (1980) <sup>2</sup>
Yemen, People's Dem. Rep. of	12 (1970)	200 (1978) <sup>2</sup>
Yemen, Republic of	12 (1967)	—
Yugoslavia	12 (1979)	—
Zaire	12 (1974)	—

<sup>1</sup> Limited by agreement by the outer limits of the superjacent waters of the continental shelf or by a median line (1974).

<sup>2</sup> Economic zone.

<sup>3</sup> Territorial limits defined by geographical co-ordinates (173–177° W. and 15–23° 30' S.) (1887).

<sup>4</sup> Sharjah, 12 miles.

<sup>5</sup> Limits to be defined by agreement, failing which median line to apply (1980).

<sup>6</sup> Outer limits of the superjacent waters of the continental shelf.

<sup>7</sup> 6 Aegean (1964), 12 Black and Mediterranean.

The table above, reproduced from a survey prepared by the FAO of the UN shows: (a) the territorial sea limit, and (b) jurisdiction over fisheries.

### Books of Reference

- Booth, K., *Law, Force and Diplomacy at Sea*. London, 1985
- Buzan, B., *Seabed Politics*. New York, 1976
- Janis, M. W., *Sea Power and the Law of the Sea*. Lexington, 1977
- Luard, E., *The Control of the Sea-Bed*. London, 1974
- Moore, G., *Coastal State Requirements for Foreign Fishing. FAO Legislative Study No. 21*. Rev. 2. Rome, 1985
- Sangar, C., *Ordering the Oceans: The Making of the Law of the Sea*. Univ. of Toronto Press, 1987

## CHRONOLOGY

- 1988
- April 3 Ethiopia and Somalia. Disengagement agreed in the border war which began in 1977.
- 8 Western Samoa. Tofilau Eli Alesana elected Prime Minister.
- China. Yang Shangkun elected President, Wang Zhen, Vice-President. Li Peng confirmed as Premier of the State Council on 9th.
- 12 Bangladesh. State of Emergency lifted.
- 13 Italy. New coalition government under Ciriaco De Mita (Christian Democrat).
- 14 Afghánistán. Agreement signed: Soviet forces to withdraw.
- 16 Tunis. Khalil al-Wazir ('Abu Jihad'), co-ordinator of uprisings in the Israeli-occupied Palestinian communities, assassinated.
- 26 Federal Republic of Germany. Rupert Scholz became Minister of Defence.
- May 14 Ethiopia. State of Emergency proclaimed in Tigre and Eritrea, with strong counter-attack by government against rebel forces.
- 15 Yugoslavia. Raif Dizdarevic elected President of the Federal Collective State Presidency.
- 17 Peru. A. Villanueva del Campo took office as Prime Minister.
- 22 Hungary. János Kádár removed from his party post, appointed to Presidency.
- 26 Afghánistán. Mohammad Hasan Sharq became Prime Minister.
- 28 Lebanon. Syrian troops entered South Beirut, where *Hezbollah* forces (supported by Iran) were succeeding against Amal forces (supported by Syria).
- 29 Pakistan. The President dismissed the government as failing in its duty to preserve order and build up an Islamic state.
- June 9 Pakistan. Caretaker government appointed. The *Sharia* (Islamic code of law) to take effect as the supreme law.
- 16 Estonia. Karl Vaino dismissed as First Secretary of the Communist Party, blamed for national tension and economic problems.
- 20 Haiti. Military *coup*, led by Lieut.-Gen. Henri Namphy.
- 22 Vietnam. Do Muoi elected Chairman of the Council of Ministers.
- 29 Hungary. Bruno Ferenc Straub elected Head of State.
- July 3 The Gulf. US Navy cruiser *Vincennes* shot down an Iranian civil airliner.
- 5 North Yemen. Consultative Council replaced the Constituent People's Assembly.
- 6 Mexico. Presidential elections: Carlos Salinas de Gortari elected in a violently-disputed result.
- 8 Haiti. The President (Namphy) rescinded the Constitution.
- 11 Tunisia. Presidency for Life abolished.
- 18 Iran. Government announced acceptance of UN resolution 598 for ending the Gulf War, but fighting continued.

## CHRONOLOGY—*contd.*

- 1988
- July 31 Jordan. King Hussein announced severance of legal and administrative ties with Israeli-occupied West Bank.
- Aug. 3 Burma. Martial law imposed because of anti-government riots. Sein Lwin resigned as President and party leader on 12th, succeeded in both posts by Maung Maung on 19th.
- 4 Sudan. National emergency proclaimed after severe rainstorms. Thailand. Maj.-Gen. Chatichai Choonhaven became Prime Minister.
- 7 Bangladesh. Wahidul Haq appointed Finance Minister.
- 10 Ecuador. Rodrigo Borja sworn in as President.
- 15 Bangladesh. Approximate beginning of wide-spread floods which ultimately made about a quarter of the population homeless.
- 17 Pakistan. President Zia-ul-Haq killed in an air crash. Ghulam Ishaq Khan appointed acting President (confirmed in office 12 Dec.).
- 20 Palau. President Lazarus Salii shot dead. Thomas Remengesau became acting President.
- Sept. 6 Iraq. Amnesty offered to Iraqi Kurds.
- 13–18 Caribbean. Hurricane 'Gilbert'.
- 18 Haiti. *Coup*, led by Brig.-Gen. Prosper Avril.
- 19 Poland. Prime Minister resigns, succeeded by Mieczyslaw Rakowski.
- 22 Lebanon. Retiring President Gemayel appointed a 6-member military government to replace Dr Selim al Hoss's government, but the latter continued to function with factional support.
- 28 Iceland. New coalition government under Steingrimur Hermannsson.
- Oct. 1 Estonia. The Popular Front began a movement for increased freedom from the USSR. Similar movements were launched in Latvia (9th) and Lithuania (23rd).
- 3 Chad–Libya. The war between the two states was formally ended.
- 5 Chile. A plebiscite refused a further 8-year term to President Pinochet.
- Nov. 2 Palau. Ngiratkel Etpison was elected President.
- 5 Algeria. Col. Kaski Merbah became Prime Minister.
- 8 USA. George Bush won the Presidential election.
- 12–15 Algiers. The Palestine National Council proclaimed the state of Palestine, with Jerusalem as its capital, and also endorsed UN resolution 242 as the basis for peace in the Middle East, to be attained by moderate means.
- 15 Namibia. An agreement on Namibian independence and the withdrawal of Cuban troops from Angola, was accepted; signed by Cuba and Angola on 18th, and by the Republic of South Africa on 22nd.
- 16 Pakistan. A general election returned the People's Party, led by Benazir Bhutto.



# CHRONOLOGY—*contd.*

- 1988
- Nov. 22 Thailand. Floods and mudslides caused extensive damage in the south.
- 24 Hungary. Miklos Nemeth became Chairman of the Council of Ministers.
- USSR. State of Emergency following communal conflict, in parts of Azerbaijan.
- 29 Bangladesh. The most powerful cyclone since 1876 caused extensive damage.
- Dec. 1 USSR. Parliament approved constitutional reforms, establishing an executive presidency, and an elected congress as the supreme body of the state.
- 1-5 Argentina. Army rebellion. The government later (20th) dismissed Gen. Carindi whose departure the rebels had demanded.
- 4 Venezuela. Carlos Andres Pérez elected President.
- 5 South Korea. The Prime Minister and 19 ministers were dismissed. Kang Young Hoon became the new Prime Minister, Lee Kyn Sung the new Finance, and Choi Ho Joong the new Foreign Minister.
- 7 USSR. Massive earthquake centred on Spitak, Armenia, which was destroyed, and a large surrounding area.
- 9 Japan. Finance Minister Kiichi Miyazawa resigned; replaced by Tatsuo Murayama.
- 14 New Zealand. Finance Minister Roger Douglas resigned; replaced by David Kaygill.
- 19 Sri Lanka. Ranasinghe Premadasa elected President.
- 21 UK. A Pan American airliner blew up over Scotland; Iranians claimed to have destroyed it in revenge for the incident of 3 July.
- 22 Israel. Coalition government of National Unity sworn in.
- 30 Yugoslavia. Federal government resigned after failing to carry the budget.
- 1989
- Jan. 7 Japan. Emperor Hirohito died; succeeded by Akihito.
- 11 Hungary. The right to form political groups, without prior permission, became law.
- 18 Republic of South Africa. President Botha suffered a stroke. Chris Heunis was appointed acting President (19th).
- Federal Republic of Germany. The government confirmed that the German-built Rabitah chemical plant in Libya can manufacture weapons.
- 19 Yugoslavia. Ante Markovic was nominated Prime Minister.
- 23 USSR. Earthquake and mudslides caused severe damage in Tajikistan.
- 24 Finland. Foreign Minister Kalevi Sorsa resigned.
- 28 Tibet. Death of the Panchen Lama.
- 30 Iran. Amnesty International presented to the UN the names of 1,000 political prisoners executed since Aug. 1988.

CHRONOLOGY—*contd.*

1989

Feb.

- 2 Republic of South Africa. President Botha resigned as party leader and Prime Minister, succeeded in both posts by F. W. de Klerk.
- 3 Paraguay. An army *coup* overthrew President Stroessner. Gen. Andres Rodriguez was sworn in as President.
- 9 Jamaica. General election, returning the People's National Party, led by Michael Manley.
- 15 Afghánistán. Withdrawal of Russian troops is completed.  
Sri Lanka. General election returns the United National Party led by Ramasinghe Premadasa.

March

- 2 Malaysia. HRH Raja Tun Azlan Shah, Raja of Perak, elected *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* (Supreme Head of State).
- 3 Sri Lanka. Dingiri Banda Wijetunge appointed Prime Minister.
- 10 Zimbabwe. Enos Nkala resigned as Defence Minister.  
Zambia. Gen. Malimba Masheke replaced Kebby Musokotwane as Prime Minister.
- 19 El Salvador. Alfredo Cristiani was elected President.
- 26 USSR. First multi-candidate parliamentary elections.  
Sudan. Sadiq al Mahdi appointed the cabinet of his coalition government.



## ADDENDA

USSR. Elections took place on 26 March 1989 for the new Congress of People's Deputies which consists of 2,250 representatives. Of these 750 had been directly nominated by public organizations. The Congress will elect the Supreme Soviet of 542 deputies which will become the legislature.

*Chairman Uzbekistan Presidium:* M. M. Ibragimov.

*Chairman Kazakhstan Presidium:* M. R. Sagdiev.

NICARAGUA. *UK Ambassador:* William Marsden.

BELGIUM. *UK Ambassador:* Robert O'Neill.

MALTA. *President:* Dr Censu Tabone.

PARAGUAY. *President:* Gen. Andrés Rodríguez.

URUGUAY. *UK Ambassador:* Columba Sharkey.

HUNGARY. *UK Ambassador:* John Birch.

UK. *Broadcasting.* Cable services are regulated the the Cable Authority which was established by Parliament in 1984 to oversee the development of cable in the UK.

Three direct broadcasting by satellite (DBS) channels are due to begin broadcasting in 1989. They were authorized under the Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984; they will be uplinked from this country and will be subject to IBA regulation.

Satellite services are also receivable direct from other countries. Most existing satellite services received from abroad are used to feed cable systems and are therefore subject to Cable Authority regulation.

The Broadcasting Standards Council was set up in 1988 to monitor standards of taste and decency on all forms of broadcasting, receive and examine complaints and draw up a code on these matters. The Government intends to place the Council on a statutory basis in due course.

In 1988 the Government published a White Paper setting out their proposals for broadcasting in the UK in the 1990s. The White Paper proposed a new enabling framework for the expansion of British broadcasting, including the setting up of a new agency, the Independent Television Commission, to licence and supervise all parts of a liberalized commercial television sector. This body would replace the IBA and the Cable Authority. The Government intend to bring forward legislation at the earliest opportunity to give effect to those of the proposals in the White Paper for which legislation is needed.

FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY. Cabinet appointed 13 April 1989. *Chancellor:* Helmut Kohl (CDU). *Deputy Chancellor, Minister of Foreign Affairs:* Hans-Dietrich Genscher (FDP). *Interior:* Wolfgang Schäuble (CDU). *Justice:* Hans Engelhard (FDP). *Finance:* Theo Waigel (CSU). *Economy:* Helmut Haussmann (FDP). *Defence:* Gerhard Stoltenberg (CDU). *Transport:* Friedrich Zimmermann (CSU). *Government Spokesman:* Hans Klein (CSU). *Minister at the Chancellery:* Rudolf Seiters (CDU). *Inter-German Relations:* Dorothee Wilms (CDU). *Food, Agriculture and Forestry:* Ignaz Kiechle (CSU). *Labour and Social Affairs:* Norbert Blüm (CDU). *Youth, Family, Women and Health Affairs:* Ursula Lehr (CDU). *Environment, Nature Conservation and Reactor Safety:* Klaus Töpfer (CDU). *Post and Telecommunications:* Christian Schwarz-Schilling (CDU). *City Planning and Housing:* Gerda Hasselfeldt (CSU). *Research and Technology:* Heinz Riesenhuber (CDU). *Education and Science:* Jürgen Moellmann (FDP). *Economic Co-operation:* Jürgen Warnke (CSU).

PART I

INTERNATIONAL  
ORGANIZATIONS



# THE UNITED NATIONS

The United Nations is an association of states which have pledged themselves, through signing the Charter, to maintain international peace and security and to co-operate in establishing political, economic and social conditions under which this task can be securely achieved. Nothing contained in the Charter authorizes the organization to intervene in matters which are essentially within the domestic jurisdiction of any state.

The United Nations Charter originated from proposals agreed upon at discussions held at Dumbarton Oaks (Washington, D.C.) between the USSR, US and UK from 21 Aug. to 28 Sept., and between US, UK and China from 29 Sept. to 7 Oct. 1944. These proposals were laid before the United Nations Conference on International Organization, held at San Francisco from 25 April to 26 June 1945, and (after amendments had been made to the original proposals) the Charter of the United Nations was signed on 26 June 1945 by the delegates of 50 countries. Ratification of all the signatures had been received by 31 Dec. 1945. (For the complete text of the Charter see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1946, pp. xxi-xxxii.)

The United Nations formally came into existence on 24 Oct. 1945, with the deposit of the requisite number of ratifications of the Charter with the US Department of State. The official languages of the United Nations are Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish.

The headquarters of the United Nations is in New York City, USA.

*Flag:* UN emblem in white centred on a light blue ground.

*Membership.* Membership is open to all peace-loving states whose admission will be effected by the General Assembly upon recommendation of the Security Council. The table on pp. 7-8 shows the 159 member states of the United Nations.

The Principal Organs of the United Nations are: 1. The General Assembly. 2. The Security Council. 3. The Economic and Social Council. 4. The Trusteeship Council. 5. The International Court of Justice. 6. The Secretariat.

1. **The General Assembly** consists of all the members of the United Nations. Each member has only 1 vote. The General Assembly meets regularly once a year, commencing on the third Tuesday in Sept.; the session normally lasts until mid-December and is resumed for some weeks in the new year if this is required. Special sessions may be convoked by the Secretary-General if requested by the Security Council, by a majority of the members of the United Nations or by 1 member concurred with by the majority of the members. The Assembly also meets in emergency special session. The General Assembly elects its President for each session.

The first regular session was held in London from 10 Jan. to 14 Feb. and in New York from 23 Oct. to 16 Dec. 1946.

Special sessions have been held on Palestine (1947, 1948), Tunisia (1961), Financial Situation of UN (1963), South West Africa, Peace-Keeping, Postponement of Outer Space Conference (1967), Raw Materials and Development (1974), New International Economic Order (1975), Peace-keeping force in the Lebanon, Namibia, Disarmament (1978, 1982), Economic Issues (1980); Emergency Special sessions were held on Suez, Hungary (1956), Lebanon-Jordan-United Arab Republic dispute (1958), Congo (1960), Middle East (1967), Afghanistan, Palestine (1980, resumed 1982), Namibia (1981), Economic Situation in Africa (1986), Namibia (1986) and Third Special Session on Disarmament (1988).

The work of the General Assembly is divided between 7 Main Committees, on which every member state is represented. These are: First committee (disarmament



and related international security matters); special political committee; second committee (economic and financial matters); third committee (social, humanitarian and cultural matters); fourth committee (decolonisation matters); fifth committee (administrative and budgetary matters); sixth committee (legal matters).

In addition there is a General Committee charged with the task of co-ordinating the proceedings of the Assembly and its Committees; and a Credentials Committee which verifies the credentials of the delegates. The General Committee consists of 29 members, comprising the President of the General Assembly, its 17 Vice-Presidents and the Chairmen of the 7 Main Committees. The Credentials Committee consists of 9 members, elected at the beginning of each session of the General Assembly. The Assembly has 2 standing committees—an Advisory Committee on Administrative and Budgetary Questions, and a Committee on Contributions. The General Assembly establishes subsidiary and *ad hoc* bodies when necessary to deal with specific matters. These include: Special Committee on Peace-keeping Operations (33 members), Commission on Human Rights (43 members), Committee on the peaceful uses of outer space (53 members), Conciliation Commission for Palestine (3 members), Conference on Disarmament (40 members), International Law Commission (34 members), Scientific Committee on the effects of atomic radiation (20 members), Special Committee on the implementation of the declaration on the granting of independence to colonial countries and peoples (24 members), Special Committee on the policies of Apartheid of the Government of the Republic of South Africa (18 members) and UN Commission on International Trade Law (36 members).

The General Assembly may discuss any matters within the scope of the Charter, and, with the exception of any situation or dispute on the agenda of the Security Council, may make recommendations on any such questions or matters. For decisions on important questions a two-thirds majority is required, on other questions a simple majority of members present and voting. In addition, the Assembly at its fifth session, in 1950, decided that if the Security Council, because of lack of unanimity of the permanent members, fails to exercise its primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security in any case where there appears to be a threat to the peace, breach of the peace or act of aggression, the General Assembly shall consider the matter immediately with a view to making appropriate recommendations to members for collective measures, including in the case of a breach of the peace or act of aggression the use of armed force when necessary, to maintain or restore international peace and security.

The General Assembly receives and considers reports from the other organs of the United Nations, including the Security Council. The Secretary-General makes an annual report to it on the work of the Organization.

**2. The Security Council** consists of 15 members, each of which has 1 vote. There are 5 permanent and 10 non-permanent members elected for a 2-year term by a two-thirds majority of the General Assembly.

Retiring members are not eligible for immediate re-election. Any other member of the United Nations may be invited to participate without vote in the discussion of questions specially affecting its interests.

The Security Council bears the primary responsibility for the maintenance of peace and security. It is also responsible for the functions of the UN in trust territories classed as 'strategic areas'. Decisions on procedural questions are made by an affirmative vote of 9 members. On all other matters the affirmative vote of 9 members must include the concurring votes of all permanent members (in practice, however, an abstention by a permanent member is not considered a veto), subject to the provision that when the Security Council is considering methods for the peaceful settlement of a dispute, parties to the dispute abstain from voting.

For the maintenance of international peace and security the Security Council can, in accordance with special agreements to be concluded, call on armed forces, assistance and facilities of the member states. It is assisted by a Military Staff Committee consisting of the Chiefs of Staff of the permanent members of the Security Council or their representatives.

The Presidency of the Security Council is held for 1 month in rotation by the member states in the English alphabetical order of their names.

The Security Council functions continuously. Its members are permanently represented at the seat of the organization, but it may meet at any place that will best facilitate its work.

The Council has 2 standing committees of Experts and on the Admission of New Members. In addition, from time to time, it establishes *ad hoc* committees and commissions such as the Truce Supervision Organization in Palestine.

*Permanent Members:* China, France, USSR, UK, USA.

*Non-Permanent Members:* Algeria, Brazil, Nepal, Senegal, Yugoslavia (until 31 Dec. 1989); Canada, Colombia, Ethiopia, Finland, Malaysia (until 31 Dec. 1990).

**3. The Economic and Social Council** is responsible under the General Assembly for carrying out the functions of the United Nations with regard to international economic, social, cultural, educational, health and related matters.

By Nov. 1977, 15 'specialized' inter-governmental agencies working in these fields had been brought into relationship with the United Nations. The Economic and Social Council may also make arrangements for consultation with international non-governmental organizations and, after consultation with the member concerned, with national organizations; by 1983 over 600 non-governmental organizations had been granted consultative status.

The Economic and Social Council consists of 54 Member States elected by a two-thirds majority of the General Assembly. Forty-two are elected each year for an 18-year term. Retiring members are eligible for immediate re-election. Each member has 1 vote. Decisions are made by a majority of the members present and voting.

The Council nominally holds 2 sessions a year, and special sessions may be held if required. The President is elected for 1 year and is eligible for immediate re-election.

The Economic and Social Council has the following commissions:

Regional Economic Commissions: ECE (Economic Commission for Europe, Geneva); ESCAP (Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific, Bangkok); ECLAC (Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean, Santiago, Chile); ECA (Economic Commission for Africa, Addis Ababa). ESCWA (Economic Commission for Western Asia, Baghdad). These Commissions have been established to enable the nations of the major regions of the world to co-operate on common problems and also to produce economic information.

Six functional commissions, including: (1) a Statistical Commission with sub-commission on Statistical Sampling. (2) Commission on Human Rights; with sub-commission on Prevention of Discrimination and Protection of Minorities; (3) Social Development Commission; (4) Commission on the Status of Women; (5) Commission on Narcotic Drugs; (6) Population Commission.

The Economic and Social Council has the following standing committees: The Economic Committee, Social Committee, Co-ordination Committee, Committee on Non-Governmental Organizations, Interim Committee on Programme of Conferences, Committee for Industrial Development, Advisory Committee on the Application of Science and Technology to Development, Committee on Housing, Building and Planning.

Other special bodies are the International Narcotics Control Board, the Interim Co-ordinating Committee for International Commodity Arrangements and the Administrative Committee on Co-ordination to ensure (1) the most effective implementation of the agreements entered into between the United Nations and the specialized agencies and (2) co-ordination of activities.

*Membership:* Belize, Bolivia, Bulgaria, Canada, China, Denmark, Iran, Norway, Oman, Poland, Rwanda, Somalia, Sri Lanka, Sudan, USSR, United Kingdom, Uruguay, Zaïre (until 31 Dec. 1989). Colombia, Cuba, France, Federal Republic of Germany, Ghana, Greece, Guinea, India, Ireland, Japan, Lesotho, Liberia, Libya, Portugal, Saudi Arabia, Trinidad and Tobago, Venezuela, Yugoslavia (until 31



Dec. 1990); Bahamas, Brazil, Cameroon, Czechoslovakia, Indonesia, Iraq, Italy, Jordan, Kenya, Netherlands, New Zealand, Nicaragua, Niger, Thailand, Tunisia, Ukraine, USA, Zambia (until 31 Dec. 1991).

**4. The Trusteeship Council.** The Charter provides for an international trusteeship system to safeguard the interests of the inhabitants of territories which are not yet fully self-governing and which may be placed thereunder by individual trusteeship agreements. These are called trust territories.

All of the original 11 trust territories except one, the Pacific Islands (Micronesia), administered by the USA, have become independent or joined independent countries. The Trusteeship Council consists of the 1 member administering trust territories: USA; the permanent members of the Security Council that are not administering trust territories: China, France, USSR and UK. Decisions of the Council are made by a majority of the members present and voting, each member having 1 vote. The Council holds one regular session each year, and special sessions if required.

**5. The International Court of Justice** was created by an international treaty, the Statute of the Court, which forms an integral part of the United Nations Charter. All members of the United Nations are *ipso facto* parties to the Statute of the Court.

The Court is composed of independent judges, elected regardless of their nationality, who possess the qualifications required in their countries for appointment to the highest judicial offices, or are jurisconsults of recognized competence in international law. There are 15 judges, no 2 of whom may be nationals of the same state. They are elected by the Security Council and the General Assembly of the United Nations sitting independently. Candidates are chosen from a list of persons nominated by the national groups in the Permanent Court of Arbitration established by the Hague Conventions of 1899 and 1907. In the case of members of the United Nations not represented in the Permanent Court of Arbitration, candidates are nominated by national groups appointed for the purpose by their governments. The judges are elected for a 9-year term and are eligible for immediate re-election. When engaged on business of the Court, they enjoy diplomatic privileges and immunities.

The Court elects its own President and Vice-President for 3 years and remains permanently in session, except for judicial vacations. The full court of 15 judges normally sits, but a quorum of 9 judges is sufficient to constitute the Court. It may form chambers of 3 or more judges for dealing with a particular case or particular categories of cases. José María Ruda (Argentina) and Kéba Mbaye (Senegal) are, respectively, President and Vice-President of the Court until 1991.

*Competence and Jurisdiction.* Only states may be parties in cases before the Court, which is open to the states parties to its Statute. The conditions under which the Court will be open to other states are laid down by the Security Council. The Court exercises its jurisdiction in all cases which the parties refer to it and in all matters provided for in the Charter, or in treaties and conventions in force. Disputes concerning the jurisdiction of the Court are settled by the Court's own decision.

The Court may apply in its decision: (a) international conventions; (b) international custom; (c) the general principles of law recognized by civilized nations; and (d) as subsidiary means for the determination of the rules of law, judicial decisions and the teachings of highly qualified publicists. If the parties agree, the Court may decide a case *ex aequo et bono*. The Court may also give advisory opinions on legal questions to the General Assembly, the Security Council, certain other organs of the UN and a number of international organizations.

*Procedure.* The official languages of the Court are French and English. All questions are decided by a majority of the judges present. If the votes are equal, the President has a casting vote. The judgment is final and without appeal, but a revision may be applied for within 10 years from the date of the judgment on the ground of a new decisive factor. No court fees are paid by parties to the Statute.



*Judges.* The judges of the Court, elected by the Security Council and the General Assembly, are as follows: (1) To serve until 5 Feb. 1991: José María Ruda (Argentina), Sir Robert Jennings (UK), Gilbert Guillaume (France), Kéba Mbaye (Senegal). (2) To serve until 5 Feb. 1994: Taslim Olawale Elias (Nigeria), Manfred Lachs (Poland), Jens Evensen (Norway), Shigeru Oda (Japan), Ni Zhengyu (China). (3) To serve until 5 Feb. 1997: Roberto Ago (Italy), Mohamed Shahabuddeen (Guyana), Stephen Schwebel (USA), Mohammed Bedjaoui (Algeria), Nikolai K. Tarasov (USSR).

If there is no judge on the bench of the nationality of a party to a case, that party has the right to choose a person to sit as judge for that case. Such judges take part in the decision on terms of complete equality with their colleagues.

The Court has its seat at The Hague, but may sit elsewhere whenever it considers this desirable. The expenses of the Court are borne by the UN.

*Registrar:* Eduardo Valencia-Ospina (Colombia).

6. **The Secretariat** is composed of the Secretary-General, who is the chief administrative officer of the organization, and an international staff appointed by him under regulations established by the General Assembly. However, the Secretary-General, the High Commissioner for Refugees and the Managing Director of the Fund are appointed by the General Assembly. The first Secretary-General was Trygve Lie (Norway), 1946–53; the second, Dag Hammarskjöld (Sweden), 1953–61; the third, U. Thant (Burma), 1961–71; the fourth, Kurt Waldheim (Austria), 1972–81.

The Secretary-General acts as chief administrative officer in all meetings of the General Assembly, the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council and the Trusteeship Council.

The financial year coincides with the calendar year; accountancy is in US\$. Budget for 1988–89, \$1,400m.

*Secretary-General:* Javier Perez de Cuellar (Peru), re-appointed 1 Jan. 1986 for a 5-year term.

The Secretary-General is assisted by Under-Secretaries-General and Assistant Secretaries-General.

## MEMBER STATES OF THE UN

(as in 1986 with percentage scale of contribution)

Afghánistán	0.01	1946	Byelorussia <sup>1</sup>	0.34	1945
Albania	0.01	1955	Cambodia	0.01	1955
Algeria	0.14	1962	Cameroon	0.01	1960
Angola	0.01	1976	Canada <sup>1</sup>	3.06	1945
Antigua and Barbuda	0.01	1981	Cape Verde	0.01	1975
Argentina <sup>1</sup>	0.62	1945	Central African Rep.	0.01	1960
Australia <sup>1</sup>	1.66	1945	Chad	0.01	1960
Austria	0.74	1955	Chile <sup>1</sup>	0.07	1945
Bahamas	0.01	1973	China <sup>1</sup>	0.79	1945
Bahrain	0.02	1971	Colombia <sup>1</sup>	0.13	1945
Bangladesh	0.02	1974	Comoros	0.01	1975
Barbados	0.01	1966	Congo	0.01	1960
Belgium <sup>1</sup>	1.18	1945	Costa Rica <sup>1</sup>	0.02	1945
Belize	0.01	1981	Côte d'Ivoire	0.02	1960
Benin	0.01	1960	Cuba <sup>1</sup>	0.09	1945
Bhután	0.01	1971	Cyprus	0.02	1960
Bolivia <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	Czechoslovakia <sup>1</sup>	0.70	1945
Botswana	0.01	1966	Denmark <sup>1</sup>	0.72	1945
Brazil <sup>1</sup>	1.40	1945	Djibouti	0.01	1977
Brunei Darussalam	0.04	1984	Dominica	0.01	1978
Bulgaria	0.16	1955	Dominican Republic <sup>1</sup>	0.03	1945
Burkina Faso	0.01	1960	Ecuador <sup>1</sup>	0.03	1945
Burma	0.01	1948	Egypt <sup>1</sup>	0.07	1945
Burundi	0.01	1962	El Salvador <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945

Equatorial Guinea	0.01	1968	Oman	0.02	1971
Ethiopia <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	Pakistan	0.06	1947
Fiji	0.01	1970	Panama <sup>1</sup>	0.02	1945
Finland	0.50	1955	Papua New Guinea	0.01	1975
France <sup>1</sup>	6.37	1945	Paraguay <sup>1</sup>	0.02	1945
Gabon	0.03	1960	Peru <sup>1</sup>	0.07	1945
Gambia	0.01	1965	Philippines <sup>1</sup>	0.10	1945
German Democratic Rep.	1.33	1973	Poland <sup>1</sup>	0.64	1945
Germany, Federal Rep. of	8.26	1973	Portugal	0.18	1955
Ghana	0.01	1957	Qatar	0.04	1971
Greece <sup>1</sup>	0.44	1945	Romania	0.19	1955
Grenada	0.01	1974	Rwanda	0.01	1962
Guatemala <sup>1</sup>	0.02	1945	St Christopher and Nevis	0.01	1983
Guinea	0.01	1958	St Lucia	0.01	1979
Guinea-Bissau	0.01	1974	St Vincent and the Grenadines	0.01	1980
Guyana	0.01	1966	Samoa, Western	0.01	1976
Haiti <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	São Tomé and Príncipe	0.01	1975
Honduras <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	Saudi Arabia <sup>1</sup>	0.97	1945
Hungary	0.22	1955	Senegal	0.01	1960
Iceland	0.03	1946	Seychelles	0.01	1976
India <sup>1</sup>	0.35	1945	Sierra Leone	0.01	1961
Indonesia	0.14	1950	Singapore	0.10	1965
Iran <sup>1</sup>	0.63	1945	Solomon Islands	0.01	1978
Iraq <sup>1</sup>	0.12	1945	Somalia	0.01	1960
Ireland	0.18	1955	South Africa <sup>1</sup>	0.44	1945
Israel	0.22	1949	Spain	2.03	1955
Italy	3.79	1955	Sri Lanka	0.01	1955
Jamaica	0.02	1962	Sudan	0.01	1956
Japan	10.84	1956	Suriname	0.01	1975
Jordan	0.01	1955	Swaziland	0.01	1968
Kenya	0.01	1963	Sweden	1.25	1946
Kuwait	0.29	1963	Syrian Arab Rep. <sup>1</sup>	0.04	1945
Laos People's Dem. Rep.	0.01	1955	Tanzania	0.01	1961
Lebanon <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	Thailand	0.09	1946
Lesotho	0.01	1966	Togo	0.01	1960
Liberia <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	Trinidad and Tobago	0.04	1962
Libyan Arab Jamahiriya	0.26	1955	Tunisia	0.03	1956
Luxembourg <sup>1</sup>	0.05	1945	Turkey <sup>1</sup>	0.34	1945
Madagascar	0.01	1960	Uganda	0.01	1962
Malawi	0.01	1964	Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Rep. <sup>1</sup>	1.28	1945
Malaysia	0.10	1957	USSR <sup>1</sup>	10.20	1945
Maldives	0.01	1965	United Arab Emirates	0.18	1971
Mali	0.01	1960	UK <sup>1</sup>	4.86	1945
Malta	0.01	1964	USA <sup>1</sup>	25.00	1945
Mauritania	0.01	1961	Uruguay <sup>1</sup>	0.04	1945
Mauritius	0.01	1968	Vanuatu	0.01	1981
Mexico <sup>1</sup>	0.89	1945	Venezuela <sup>1</sup>	0.60	1945
Mongolia	0.01	1961	Vietnam	0.01	1977
Morocco	0.05	1956	Yemen Arab Republic	0.01	1947
Mozambique	0.01	1975	Yemen, P.D.R.	0.01	1967
Nepál	0.01	1955	Yugoslavia <sup>1</sup>	0.46	1945
Netherlands <sup>1</sup>	1.74	1945	Zaire	0.01	1960
New Zealand <sup>1</sup>	0.24	1945	Zambia	0.01	1964
Nicaragua <sup>1</sup>	0.01	1945	Zimbabwe	0.02	1980
Niger	0.01	1960			
Nigeria	0.19	1960			
Norway <sup>1</sup>	0.54	1945			

<sup>1</sup> Original member.

### Further Reading

*Yearbook of the United Nations.* New York, 1947 ff. Annual

*United Nations Chronicle.* Quarterly

*Monthly Bulletin of Statistics*

*General Assembly: Official-Records: Resolutions*

*Reports of the Secretary-General of the United Nations on the Work of the Organization.* 1946 ff.

- Documents of the United Nations Conference on International Organization, San Francisco, 1945.* 16 vols.
- Charter of the United Nations and Statute of the International Court of Justice.* Text in English, French, Chinese, Russian and Spanish.
- Repertory of Practice of UN's Organs.* 5 vols. New York, 1955
- Official Records of the Security Council, the Economic and Social Council, Trusteeship Council and the Disarmament Commission*
- Demographic Yearbook, 1948 ff.* New York, 1969
- Everyone's United Nations.* New York, 10th ed., 1986
- Statistical Yearbook.* New York, 1947 ff.
- United Nations Handbook 1987.* New Zealand Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Wellington, 1987
- Yearbook of International Statistics.* New York, 1950 ff.
- World Economic Survey.* New York, 1947 ff.
- Economic Survey of Asia and the Far East.* New York, 1946 ff.
- Economic Survey of Latin America.* New York, 1948 ff.
- Economic Survey of Europe.* New York, 1948 ff.
- Economic Survey of Africa.* New York, 1960 ff.
- Foot, W., *Dag Hammarskjöld—Servant of Peace.* London, 1962
- Forsythe, D., *United Nations Peacemaking: The Conciliation Commission for Palestine.* Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, 1973
- Humana, C., *World Human Rights Guide.* 2nd ed. London, 1986
- Lie, T., *In the Cause of Peace.* London, 1954
- Luard, E., *A History of the United Nations.* Vol. 1. London, 1982
- Osmanczyk, E., *Encyclopaedia of the United Nations.* London, 1985
- Peterson, M. J., *The General Assembly in World Politics.* Winchester, Mass, 1986
- Thant, U., *Towards World Peace.* New York, 1964
- Walters, F. P., *A History of the League of Nations.* 2 vols. London, 1952
- Williams, D., *The Specialised Agencies of the United Nations.* London, 1987
- Withthauer, K., *Die Bevölkerung der Erde: Verteilung und Dynamik.* Gotha, 1958.—  
*Distribution and Dynamics Relating to World Population.* Gotha, 1969

---

United Nations Information Centre, 20 Buckingham Gate, London SW1E 6LB

## UNITED NATIONS SYSTEM

The bulk of the work of the UN, measured in terms of money and personnel, is aimed at achieving the pledge made in Article 55 of the Charter to 'promote higher standards of living, full employment and conditions of economic and social progress and development'.

In addition to the 18 independent specialized agencies, there are some 14 major United Nations programmes and funds devoted to achieving economic and social progress in the developing countries.

Total contributions to the funds and programmes of the UN and specialized agencies for development activities amounted to \$1,100m. (not including contributions to the World Bank group) in 1987. The highest total contributions in 1988 went to the UN Development Programme (UNDP—\$1,000m.) the UN Children's Fund (UNICEF—\$290m.) and the UN Fund for Population Activities (UNFPA—\$167m.). The World Food Programme, which provides food aid to support development projects and emergency relief operations, provided aid worth \$900m. in 1983, making it the largest single source of development assistance in the UN system, apart from the World Bank.

The *United Nations Development Programme* (UNDP) is the world's largest agency for multilateral technical and pre-investment co-operation. It is the funding source for most of the technical assistance provided by the United Nations system, and UNDP is active in almost 150 countries and territories and in virtually every economic and social sector. UNDP assistance is provided only at the request of Governments and in response to their priority needs, integrated into over-all national and regional plans.

There are more than 5,000 UNDP-supported projects currently in operation at the national, regional, inter-regional and global levels, all aimed at helping developing countries make better use of their assets, improve living standards and expand productivity. The volume of such work was \$1,200m. in 1983.



UNICEF, established in 1946 to deliver post-war relief to children, now concentrates its assistance on development activities aimed at improving the quality of life for children and mothers in developing countries. During 1983, UNICEF was working in over 110 countries with a child population of some 1,300m., concentrating on basic services for children and maternal health care, nutrition, water supply and sanitation and education. *The State of the World's Children Report: 1984*, published by UNICEF, has helped to spread acceptance by local and national leaders of a strategy for child health and nutrition which UNICEF estimates could save the lives of 7m. children. UNICEF has focused on popularising four primary health care techniques which are low in cost and produce results in a relatively short time. These include: Oral rehydration therapy to fight the effects of diarrhoeal infections, which kill some 4m. children each year; expanded immunization against the 6 most common childhood diseases; child growth monitoring, and promotion of breast-feeding. The World Health Organization and UNICEF work closely together, providing training, equipment and the services of health care professionals. UNICEF is the world's largest supplier of vaccines and the 'cold chain' equipment needed to deliver them, as well as oral rehydration salts.

*Executive Director:* James P. Grant (USA).

The UN Population Fund (UNFPA) carries out programmes in over 130 countries and territories. The Fund's aims are to build up capacity to respond to needs in population and family planning; to promote awareness of population problems in both developed and developing countries and possible strategies to deal with them; to assist developing countries at their request in dealing with population problems. More than 25% of international population assistance to developing countries is channeled through UNFPA.

*Executive Director:* Dr Nafis Sadik (Philippines).

An International Conference on Population was convened by the United Nations in 1984 in Mexico City to review the World Population Plan of Action adopted by the 1974 population conference, and make recommendations for its future implementation.

Humanitarian relief to refugees and victims of natural and man-made disasters is also an important function of the UN system. Among the organizations involved in such relief activities are the Office of the UN Disaster Relief Co-ordinator (UNDRO), the Office of the UN High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR) and the UN Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East (UNRWA).

UNRWA was created by the General Assembly in 1949 as a temporary, non-political agency to provide relief to the nearly 750,000 people who became refugees as a result of the disturbances during and after the creation of the State of Israel in the former British Mandate territory of Palestine. 'Palestine refugees', as defined by UNRWA's mandate, are persons or descendants of persons whose normal residence was Palestine for at least 2 years prior to the 1948 conflict and who, as a result of the conflict, lost their homes and means of livelihood. UNRWA has also been called upon to assist persons displaced as a result of renewed hostilities in the Middle East in 1967. The situation of Palestine refugees in south Lebanon was of special concern to the Agency in 1984 which has carried out an emergency relief programme in that area for Palestine refugees affected in the aftermath of the Israeli invasion of Lebanon in 1982.

Over 2m. refugees are registered with the Agency which provides education, health care, supplementary feeding and relief services. Education and basic health care account for over 80% of the Agency's budget, which is financed by voluntary contributions from Governments. In 1986 its operating budget amounted to \$230m., while cash contributions were expected to total only \$194m.

*Commissioner-General:* Giorgio Giacomelli.

The *Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees* (UNHCR) was established by the UN General Assembly with effect from 1 Jan. 1951, originally for three years. Since 1954, its mandate has been renewed for successive five-year periods.

The work of UNHCR is of a purely humanitarian and non-political character.

The main functions of the Office are to provide international protection for refugees and to seek permanent solutions to their problems through voluntary repatriation, local integration into the country of first asylum or resettlement in other countries. UNHCR may also be called upon to provide emergency relief and on-going material assistance where necessary.

UNHCR concerns itself with refugees who have been determined to come within its mandate under the Statute, and with persons in analogous circumstances whom it assists under the terms of the good offices resolutions adopted by the General Assembly.

The High Commissioner is elected by the General Assembly and follows policy directives given by the General Assembly or the Economic and Social Council.

International protection is the primary function of UNHCR. Its main objective is to promote and safeguard the rights and interests of refugees. In so doing UNHCR devotes special attention to promoting a generous policy of asylum on the part of Governments and seeks to improve the status of refugees in their country of residence. It also helps them to cease being refugees through the acquisition of the nationality of their country of residence when voluntary repatriation is not possible. UNHCR pursues its objectives in the field of protection by encouraging the conclusion of intergovernmental legal instruments in favour of refugees, by supervising the implementation of their provisions and by encouraging Governments to adopt legislation and administrative procedures for the benefit of refugees.

UNHCR also provides material assistance to refugees, largely in camps and settlements, and seeks to promote their self-sufficiency leading to the attainment of durable solutions for their plight. Since 1951 UNHCR has assisted and found solutions for an estimated 30 million refugees and displaced persons.

In 1988 a number of major movements occurred in Africa and there were repatriations from the Sudan to Ethiopia and Uganda and some voluntary return for Ethiopians from Somalia and Djibouti. Afghans, estimated at 3m. in Pakistan and 2m. in Iran, remained the largest single problem. Resettlement remained the main durable solution for south-east Asian refugees in camps. Voluntary repatriation of 12,400 refugees in Central America (mainly Guatemalans, Nicaraguans and Salvadorans) took place.

In Oct. 1988 the Executive Committee of the High Commissioner's Programme approved a revised financial target of US\$420m. for UNHCR general programmes in 1988 and also approved the figure of US\$429m. for projected requirements in 1989.

For its work on behalf of refugees around the world, UNHCR was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1955 and again in 1981.

*Headquarters:* Palais des Nations, 1211, Geneva 10, Switzerland.

*UK Office:* 36 Westminster Palace Gardens, London, SW1P 1RR.

*High Commissioner:* Jean-Pierre Hocké (Swiss).

UN funds and programmes participating in the 1984 pledging conference for development activities:

UN Development Programme; Special Measures Fund for the Least Developed Countries; UN Development Programme Energy Account; UN Capital Development Fund; UN Special Fund for Land-Locked Developing Countries; UN Revolving Fund for National Resources Exploration; Special Voluntary Fund for the UN Volunteers; UN Financing System for Science and Technology for Development; UN Trust Fund for Sudano-Sahelian Activities; UN Children's Fund; UN Fund for Population Activities; UN Industrial Development Fund; UN Trust Fund for African Development Activities; Voluntary Fund for the UN Decade for Women; UN Trust Fund for the International Research and Training Institute for the Advancement of Women; UN Centre for Human Settlements (Habitat); UN Habitat and Human Settlements Foundation; UN Trust Fund for the Transport and Communications Decade in Africa; Trust Fund for the UN Centre on Transnational Corporations; UN Institute for Training and Research; UN Fund for Drug Abuse Control; UN Trust Fund for Social Defence; UN Development Programme Study Programme; Fund of the UN Environment Programme.



## SPECIALIZED AGENCIES OF THE UN

### INTERNATIONAL ATOMIC ENERGY AGENCY (IAEA)

*Origin.* The International Atomic Energy Agency came into existence on 29 July 1957. Its statute had been approved on 26 Oct. 1956, at an international conference held at UN Headquarters, New York. A relationship agreement links it with the United Nations. The IAEA had 113 member states in 1986.

*Functions.* (1) To accelerate and enlarge the contribution of atomic energy to peace, health and prosperity throughout the world, and (2) to ensure that assistance provided by it or at its request or under its supervision or control is not used in such a way as to further any military purpose. In addition, under the terms of the Non-Proliferation Treaty, to verify states' obligation to prevent diversion of nuclear energy from peaceful uses to nuclear weapons or other nuclear explosive devices.

The IAEA gives advice and technical assistance to developing countries on nuclear power development, on nuclear safety, on radioactive waste management, on legal aspects of the use of atomic energy, and on prospecting for and exploiting nuclear raw materials; in addition it promotes the use of radiation and isotopes in agriculture, industry, medicine and hydrology through expert services, training courses and fellowships, grants of equipment and supplies, research contracts, scientific meetings and publications. During 1987, a total of 962 projects were operational and 64 training courses were held. These activities involved 1,808 expert assignments while 1,975 persons received training abroad. The IAEA has research laboratories in Austria and Monaco. At Trieste, the International Centre for Theoretical Physics was established in 1964 which is now operated jointly by UNESCO and IAEA.

In Dec. 1987, a total of 166 safeguards agreements were in force with 97 states. Safeguards are the technical means applied by the IAEA to verify that nuclear equipment or materials are used exclusively for peaceful purposes. IAEA safeguards cover more than 95% of the civilian nuclear installations outside the 5 nuclear-weapon states (China, France, UK, USA and USSR). All nuclear-weapon states have opened all (UK, USA) or some (China, France, USSR) of their civilian nuclear plants to IAEA safeguards inspection. Installations in non-nuclear weapon states under safeguards or containing safeguarded material at 31 Dec. 1987 were 185 power reactors, 172 research reactors and critical assemblies, 7 conversion plants, 40 fuel fabrication plants, 6 reprocessing plants, 6 enrichment plants, and 406 other installations.

*Organization.* The Statute provides for an annual General Conference, a Board of Governors of 35 members and a Secretariat headed by a Director-General.

*Headquarters:* Vienna International Centre, PO Box 100, A-1400 Vienna, Austria.

*Director-General:* Hans Blix (Sweden).

### INTERNATIONAL LABOUR ORGANISATION (ILO)

*Origin.* The ILO, established in 1919 as an autonomous part of the League of Nations, is an intergovernmental agency with a tripartite structure, in which representatives of governments, employers and workers participate. It seeks through international action to improve labour conditions, raise living standards and promote productive employment. In 1946 the ILO was recognized by the United Nations as a specialized agency. In 1969 it was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize. In 1988 it numbered 150 members.

*Functions.* One of the ILO's principal functions is the formulation of international standards in the form of International Labour Conventions and Recommendations. Member countries are required to submit Conventions to their competent national authorities with a view to ratification. If a country ratifies a Convention it

agrees to bring its laws into line with its terms and to report periodically how these regulations are being applied. More than 5,300 ratifications of 168 Conventions had been deposited by mid-1988. Machinery is available to ascertain whether Conventions thus ratified are effectively applied.

Recommendations do not require ratification, but member states are obliged to consider them with a view to giving effect to their provisions by legislation or other action. By the end of 1988 the International Labour Conference had adopted 176 recommendations.

*Organization.* The ILO consists of the International Labour Conference, the Governing Body and the International Labour Office.

The Conference is the supreme deliberative organ of the ILO; it meets annually at Geneva. National delegations are composed of 2 government delegates, 1 employers' delegate and 1 workers' delegate.

The Governing Body, elected by the Conference, is the executive council. It is composed of 28 government members, 14 workers' members and 14 employers' members.

Ten governments hold permanent seats on the Governing Body because of their industrial importance, namely, Brazil, China, Federal Republic of Germany, France, India, Italy, Japan, USA, USSR and UK. The remaining 18 government seats were, at the end of 1988, held by Algeria, Angola, Argentina, Burkina Faso, Canada, Ethiopia, Finland, Ghana, Hungary, Indonesia, Iraq, Jamaica, Mongolia, Nicaragua, Pakistan, Ukraine, Venezuela, Zimbabwe.

The Office serves as secretariat, operational headquarters, research centre and publishing house.

The ILO budget for 1988-89 amounted to US\$357m.

*Activities.* In addition to its research and advisory activities, the ILO extends technical co-operation to governments under its regular budget and under the UN Development Programme and Funds-in-Trust in the fields of employment promotion, human resources development (including vocational and management training), development of social institutions, small-scale industries, rural development, social security, industrial safety and hygiene, productivity, etc. Technical co-operation also includes expert missions and a fellowship programme. Over \$112m. was spent on technical co-operation in 1987. Projects were in progress in some 115 countries and about 900 experts involved.

Major emphasis is being given to the ILO's World Employment Programme, launched in 1969 with the purpose of stimulating national and international efforts to increase the volume of productive employment, and so to counter the problem of rising unemployment in developing countries. A World Employment Conference in 1976 linked employment generation to the satisfaction of over-all basic human needs. Employment strategy missions have provided policy guidance to numerous developing countries while practical assistance continues through regional teams of specialists in Africa, Asia and Latin America, backed by an intensive programme of world-wide research.

The International Labour Conference (Geneva, June 1988) adopted a Convention and Recommendation on employment promotion and protection against unemployment, and a Convention and Recommendation on safety and health in construction. The session also began a two-year process of up-dating standards relating to indigenous and tribal populations.

In 1960 the ILO established in Geneva the International Institute for Labour Studies. The Institute specializes in advanced education and research on social and labour policy. It brings together for group study experienced persons from all parts of the world—government administrators, trade-union officials, industrial experts, management, university and other specialists.

A training institution was opened by the ILO in Turin, Italy, in 1965—the International Centre for Advanced Technical and Vocational Training. The Centre provides opportunities for technical, vocational and management training for individuals who have advanced beyond the facilities available in their own countries. Courses are geared particularly to the needs of developing countries.



*Headquarters:* International Labour Office, CH-1211 Geneva 22, Switzerland.

*Director-General:* Francis Blanchard (France).

*Chairman of the Governing Body:* Nathaniel G. Mensah (Benin).

*London Branch Office:* 96/98 Marsham St., SW1P 4LY.

The ILO has regional offices in Addis Ababa (for Africa), Bangkok (for Asia and the Pacific), Lima (for Latin America and the Caribbean) and Geneva (for Arab States).

### Further Reading

*Publications:* Regular periodicals in English, French and Spanish include the *International Labour Review*, *Legislative Series*, *Bulletin of Labour Statistics*, *Year Book of Labour Statistics*, *Official Bulletin* and *Labour Education*. *Women at Work* and the *Social and Labour Bulletin* are issued in English and French.

New volumes published in 1987 included: *Adjustment and Economic Performance in Developing Countries: A Synthesis*. *The Cost of Occupational Accidents and Diseases*. *Economically Active Population, Estimates and Projections: 1950–2025* (Vols. I–VI). *Employers and the Environmental Challenge*. *Ethanol, Employment and Development: Lessons from Brazil*. *Improve Your Business*. *Indirect Remuneration: An International Overview*. *Job Evaluation*. *Management Consulting: A Guide to the Profession*. *A Manager's Guide to International Labour Standards*. *New Cargo-Handling Techniques: Implications for Port Employment and Skills*. *Safety and Health in Coal Mines: An ILO Code of Practice*. *Social and Economic Effects of Petroleum Development in Non-OPEC Developing Countries: Synthesis Report*. *Trade, Employment and Industrialisation in Singapore*. *Workers' Participation: A Voice in Decisions, 1981–85*.

## FOOD AND AGRICULTURE ORGANIZATION OF THE UNITED NATIONS (FAO)

*Origin.* The UN Conference on Food and Agriculture in May 1943, at Hot Springs, Virginia, set up an Interim Commission in Washington in July 1943 to plan the Organization, which came into being on 16 Oct. 1945.

*Aims and Activities.* The aims of FAO are to raise levels of nutrition and standards of living; to improve the production and distribution of all food and agricultural products from farms, forests and fisheries; to improve the living conditions of rural populations; and, by these means, to eliminate hunger.

In carrying out these aims, FAO promotes investment in agriculture, better soil and water management, improved yields of crops and livestock, and the transfer of technology to, and the development of agricultural research in, developing countries. FAO promotes the conservation of natural resources and the rational use of fertilizers and pesticides. The Organization combats animal diseases, promotes the development of marine and inland fisheries, and encourages the rational use of forest resources. Technical assistance is provided in all these fields and others such as nutrition, agricultural engineering, agrarian reform, development communications, remote sensing for natural resources, and the prevention of food losses.

Special FAO programmes help countries prepare for, and provide relief in the event of, emergency food situations, in particular through the setting up of food reserves. Since the early 1980s, Africa has needed special emphasis and FAO created a special task force for that continent. The Agricultural Rehabilitation Plan for Africa, begun in 1985, channelled some US\$200m. to projects in 25 countries during its two years of operation. The Global Information and Early Warning System provides current information on the world food situation and identifies countries threatened by shortages to guide potential donors.

The Organization also has a major rôle in the collection, analysis and dissemination of information on natural resources and agricultural production.

FAO sponsors the World Food Programme (WFP) with the UN; WFP uses food commodities, cash and services contributed by member States of the UN to back programmes of social and economic development, as well as for relief in emergency situations.

*Finance and Administration.* The FAO Conference, composed of all member states, meets every other year to determine the policy and approve the budget and

work programme of FAO. The Council, consisting of 49 member nations elected by the Conference, serves as FAO's governing body between Sessions of the Conference. At its 24th Session in Nov. 1987, the Conference approved a Regular Programme budget for the two years 1988–89 of US\$492m., an increase of about 0.25% in real terms over the previous period. However, the slide in the value of the US dollar was a contributing factor, together with delays in the payment of some major contributions, in reducing considerably the funds available to FAO by the end of the previous biennium and during 1988. The Regular Programme, which is financed by contributions from member governments, covers the cost of the Organization's secretariat, its Technical Co-operation Programme and part of the cost of several Special Action Programmes.

FAO provides advice and assistance in the field through its Field Programmes, funded largely from external sources, such as the UN Development Programme (UNDP) and trust funds provided by governments. Funds available from UNDP have declined – from US\$167m. in 1980 to around US\$128m. in 1987. The drop has been partially offset by increases in trust funds and in funds available through the Technical Co-operation Programme funded from FAO's own Regular Programme budget. Trust fund delivery in 1987 was about US\$148m. Delivery under the Technical Co-operation Programme in 1987 was about US\$37m., compared with US\$21m. in 1984. Total Field Programme delivery in 1987 approached US\$315m., still well below 1981 delivery in real terms.

*Headquarters:* Via delle Terme di Caracalla, Rome, Italy.

*Director-General:* Dr Edouard Saouma (Lebanon).

### Further Reading

*FAO publications include: FAO Books in Print 1980–81: The State of Food and Agriculture (annual), 1947 ff.; Animal Health Yearbook (annual), 1957 ff.; Production Yearbook (annual), 1947 ff.; Trade Yearbook (annual), 1947 ff.; FAO Commodity Review (annual), 1961 ff.; Yearbook of Forest Products Statistics (annual), 1947 ff.; Yearbook of Fishery Statistics (in two volumes), FAO Fertilizer Yearbook, FAO Plant Protection Bulletin (quarterly).*

## UNITED NATIONS EDUCATIONAL, SCIENTIFIC AND CULTURAL ORGANIZATION (UNESCO)

*Origin.* A Conference for the establishment of an Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization of the United Nations was convened by the Government of the UK in association with the Government of France, and met in London, 1–16 Nov. 1945. UNESCO came into being on 4 Nov. 1946.

*Functions.* The purpose of UNESCO is to contribute to peace and security by promoting collaboration among the nations through education, science and culture in order to further universal respect for justice, for the rule of law and for the human rights and fundamental freedoms which are affirmed for the peoples of the world, without distinction of race, sex, language or religion, by the Charter of the United Nations.

*Activities.* The education programme has four main objectives: The extension of education; the improvement of education; and life-long education for living in a world community.

To train teachers specialized in the techniques of fundamental education UNESCO is helping to establish regional and national training centres. A centre for Latin America was opened in Mexico in 1951, one for the Arab States was set up in Egypt in 1953. UNESCO seeks to promote the progressive application of the right to free and compulsory education for all and to improve the quality of education everywhere.

In the natural sciences, UNESCO seeks to promote international scientific co-operation, such as the International Hydrological Programme which began in 1966. It encourages scientific research designed to improve the living conditions of mankind. Science co-operation offices have been set up in Montevideo, Cairo, New Delhi, Nairobi and Jakarta.



In the field of communication, UNESCO endeavours, by disseminating information, carrying out research and providing advice, to increase the scope and quality of press, film and radio services throughout the world.

In the cultural field, UNESCO assists member states in studying and preserving both the physical and the non-physical heritage of each society.

In the social sciences UNESCO helps in the development of research and teaching facilities and focuses on questions concerning Peace, Human Rights, Philosophy, Youth and Development Studies.

*Organization.* The organs of UNESCO are a General Conference (composed of representatives from each member state), an Executive Board (consisting of 51 government representatives elected by the General Conference) and a Secretariat. UNESCO had 158 members in 1988.

National commissions act as liaison groups between UNESCO and the educational, scientific and cultural life of their own countries.

Budget for 1988–89: \$350,386,000.

*Headquarters:* UNESCO House, 7 Place de Fontenoy, Paris.

*Director-General:* Federico Mayor (Spain).

### Further Reading

*Periodicals.* *Museum* (quarterly, English and French); *International Social Science Journal* (quarterly, English and French); *Impact of Science on Society* (quarterly, English and French); *Unesco Courier* (monthly, English, French and Spanish); *Prospects* (quarterly, English, French and Spanish); *Copyright Bulletin* (twice-yearly, English and French); *Unesco News* (English and French); *Nature and Resources* (quarterly, English, French and Spanish).

Hajnal, P. I., *Guide to UNESCO*. London and New York, 1983

## WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION (WHO)

*Origin.* An International Conference, convened by the UN Economic and Social Council, to consider a single health organization resulted in the adoption on 22 July 1946 of the constitution of the World Health Organization. This constitution came into force on 7 April 1948.

*Structure.* The principal organs of WHO are the World Health Assembly, the Executive Board and the Secretariat. Each of the 166 member states and 1 Associate Member (1986) has the right to be represented at the Assembly, which meets annually usually in Geneva, Switzerland. The 31-member Executive Board is composed of technically qualified health experts designated by as many member states elected by the Assembly. The Secretariat consists of technical and administrative staff headed by a Director-General. Health activities in member countries are carried out through regional organizations which have been established in Africa (regional office, Brazzaville), South-East Asia (New Delhi), Europe (Copenhagen), Eastern Mediterranean (Alexandria) and Western Pacific (Manila). The Pan American Sanitary Bureau in Washington serves as the Regional Office of WHO for the Americas.

*Functions.* WHO's objective, as stated in the first article of the Constitution is 'the attainment by all peoples of the highest possible level of health'. As the directing and co-ordinating authority on international health it establishes and maintains collaboration with the UN, specialized agencies, government health administrations, professional and other groups concerned with health. The Constitution also directs WHO to assist governments to strengthen their health services, to stimulate and advance work to eradicate diseases, to promote maternal and child health, mental health, medical research and the prevention of accidents; to improve standards of teaching and training in the health professions, and of nutrition, housing, sanitation, working conditions and other aspects of environment health. The Organization also is empowered to propose conventions, agreements and regulations and make recommendations about international health matters; to revise the international nomenclature of diseases, causes of death and public health practices;

to develop, establish and promote international standards concerning foods, biological, pharmaceutical and similar substances.

*Methods of work.* Co-operation in country projects is undertaken only on the request of the government concerned, through the 6 regional offices of the Organization. Worldwide technical services are made available by headquarters. Expert committees whose members are chosen from the 54 advisory panels of experts meet to advise the Director-General on a given subject. Scientific groups and consultative meetings are called for similar purposes. To further the education of health personnel of all categories, seminars, technical conferences and training courses are organized and advisors, consultants and lecturers are provided. WHO awards fellowships for study to nationals of member countries.

*Activities.* The main thrust of WHO's activities in recent years has been towards promoting national, regional and global strategies for the attainment of the main social target of the Member States for the coming years: 'Health for All by the Year 2000', or the attainment by all citizens of the world of a level of health that will permit them to lead a socially and economically productive life.

Almost all countries indicated a high level of political commitment to this goal, and guiding principles for formulating corresponding strategies and plans of action were prepared.

The 40th World Health Assembly, meeting in May 1987, approved an effective working budget of US\$633.98m for 1988-89. This represented a slight decrease over the 1986-87 budget in real terms, the increase of about US\$90m. in nominal terms being due to the rate of exchange of the US\$1 and other cost increases due mainly to inflation.

*AIDS.* The Assembly urged Member States to co-operate with one another and share in full openness with WHO all information on AIDS and related infections. It also appealed to countries to make voluntary contributions in cash and kind for the implementation of the global strategy for the prevention and control of AIDS.

*Health Manpower Imbalance.* In a resolution, the Assembly asked countries to take urgent measures to adjust the production of health manpower in order to bring the supply and distribution into line with expected future demand for services. It had been noted that while there was a shortage of certain categories of health workers in many countries, an increasing number of Member States had an over-supply of health professionals such as physicians and dentists, leading to their under-utilization, unemployment and migration to other countries.

*Fortieth Anniversary of WHO.* In 1988, 40 years will have elapsed since the WHO was founded. All governments were invited to take the greatest possible advantage of the anniversary to focus the attention of people in all walks of life – from ordinary citizens to the highest political leaders – upon past achievements, and present and future aspirations of the Organization through appropriate events, celebrations and information dissemination.

*Maternal Health and Safe Motherhood.* Noting that extremely high levels of maternal mortality and morbidity prevail in many developing countries, constituting in some cases 50% of all deaths in women of childbearing age, the Assembly urged Member States to give high priority to health and nutrition programmes directed towards girls from infancy to adolescence.

*Diarrhoeal Diseases Control.* The Assembly noted 'with appreciation' the reduction in deaths due to diarrhoea as a result of progress made by national diarrhoeal diseases control programmes and requested WHO to increase collaboration with Member States in this area.

*Technical Discussions.* The topic of the Technical Discussions in 1987 was Economic Support for National Health for All Strategies. The main conclusion drawn was that health is a shared responsibility which rests upon the individual, the community and the government and that the collective commitment of all



concerned is required in order to secure adequate economic support for health for all strategies.

*Traditional Medicine.* The Assembly urged countries to ensure quality control of drugs derived from traditional plant remedies by using modern techniques and applying suitable standards and good manufacturing practices.

*World Health Day.* World Health Day, 7 April 1987, was devoted to the theme Immunization – A Chance for Every Child. The theme chosen for World Health Day 1988 (WHO's 40th Anniversary) is Health for All – All for Health.

*Headquarters:* 1211 Geneva 27. *Regional Offices:* Alexandria, Brazzaville, Copenhagen, Manila, New Delhi, Washington.

*Director-General:* Dr Hiroshi Nakajima (Japan).

### Further Reading

- Basic Documents.* 37th ed., 1988 (Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, Spanish)  
*Handbook of Resolutions and Decisions.* Vol. I, 1973, Vol. II, 1985 and Vol. III, 1 ed., 1987 (Arabic, English, French, Russian, Spanish)  
*World Health Forum* (from 1980, quarterly: Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish)  
*Bulletin of WHO* (quarterly, 1947–51; 6 issues a year from 1978; bilingual English/French)  
*International Digest of Health Legislation* (quarterly, from 1948; English and French)  
*World Health, the Magazine of WHO.* 1957 ff. (10 issues a year; English, French, German, Portuguese, Russian and Spanish; and 4 issues a year. Arabic and Persian)  
*WHO Technical Report Series, 1950 ff.* (Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, Spanish)  
*Public Health Papers, 1959 ff.* (Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, Spanish)  
*World Health Statistics Annual* (from 1952; English, French and Russian)  
*World Health Statistics Quarterly* (monthly, 1947–76 then quarterly; bilingual English/French)  
*Weekly Epidemiological Record* (from 1926; bilingual English/French)  
*Publications of the WHO, 1947–57; catalogue: 1947–79* (1980); 1980–85 (1985), 1986  
*World Directories:*  
*Medical Schools, 1987; Schools of Public Health and Postgraduate Training Programmes in Public Health* (1985); *Schools for Medical Assistants, 1973* (1976); *Auxiliary Sanitarians 1973* (1978); *Dental Auxiliaries 1973* (1977); *Medical Lab. Technicians and Assistants, 1973* (1977)  
*The International Pharmacopoeia.* 3rd. ed., 3 vols, 1979, 1981, 1987 (English, French and Spanish)  
*Manual of the International Statistical Classification of Diseases, Injuries and Causes of Death.* 9th rev. (1977; English, French, Russian, Spanish)  
*IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans.* 1967 ff. (English)  
*International Histological Classification of Tumours.* Books and slides, from 1967, No. 25, 1980 (English, French, Russian and Spanish)  
*Report on the World Health Situation.* 1959 ff. (Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, Spanish); Seventh report (1987)  
*The Work of WHO, 1984–85: Biennial Report of the Director-General* (1986) (Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian, Spanish)  
*International Health Regulations (1969).* 3rd annotated ed., 1983 (Arabic, English, French, Russian, Spanish)

### INTERNATIONAL MONETARY FUND (IMF)

The International Monetary Fund was established on 27 Dec. 1945 as an independent international organization and began operations on 1 March 1947; its relationship with the UN is defined in an agreement of mutual co-operation which came into force on 15 Nov. 1947. The first amendment to the Fund's articles creating the special drawing right (SDR) took effect on 28 July 1969 and the second amendment took effect on 1 April 1978.

The capital resources of the Fund come from SDRs and currencies that the members pay under quotas calculated for them when they join the Fund. Members' quotas in the Fund, in 1988, amounted to SDR 89,987.6m. and are closely related to (i) subscription to the Fund, (ii) their drawing rights on the Fund under both regular and special facilities, (iii) their voting power, and (iv) their share of any

allocations of SDRs. Every Fund member is required to subscribe to the Fund an amount equal to its quota. An amount not exceeding 25% of the quota has to be paid in reserve assets, the balance in the member's own currency.

The Fund is authorized under its Articles of Agreement to supplement its resources by borrowing. In Jan. 1962, a 4-year agreement was concluded with 10 industrial members (Belgium, Canada, France, Federal Republic of Germany, Italy, Japan, Netherlands, Sweden, UK, USA) who undertook to lend the Fund up to \$6,000m. in their own currencies, if this should be needed to forestall or cope with an impairment of the international monetary system. Switzerland subsequently joined the group. These arrangements, known as the General Arrangements to Borrow (GAB), have been extended several times and the most recent 5-year renewal was to end in Dec. 1993. In early 1983 agreement was reached to increase the credit arrangements under the GAB to SDR 17,000m.; to permit use of GAB resources in transactions with Fund members that are not GAB participants; to authorize Swiss participation; and to permit borrowing arrangements with non-participating members to be associated with the GAB. Saudi Arabia and the Fund have entered into such an arrangement under which the Fund will be able to borrow up to SDR 1,500m. to assist in financing purchases by any member for the same purpose and under the same circumstances as in the GAB. The changes became effective by 26 Dec. 1983. The GAB have been used to finance drawings made by the UK in 1964, 1965, 1968, 1969, and 1977, by France in 1969 and 1970, and by the USA in 1978. The Fund has also borrowed from member countries and official institutions for two oil facilities and a supplementary financing facility. It has borrowed from the Saudi Arabian Monetary Agency (SAMA) and in 1986, concluded a 4-year SDR 3,000m. borrowing arrangement with Japan.

*Purposes:* To promote international monetary co-operation, the expansion of international trade and exchange rate stability; to assist in the removal of exchange restrictions and the establishment of a multilateral system of payments; and to alleviate any serious disequilibrium in members' international balance of payments by making the financial resources of the Fund available to them, usually subject to conditions to ensure the revolving nature of Fund resources.

*Activities.* Each member of the Fund undertakes a broad obligation to collaborate with the Fund and other members to ensure the existence of orderly exchange arrangements and to promote a system of stable exchange rates. In addition, members are subject to certain obligations relating to domestic and external policies that can affect the balance of payments and the exchange rate. The Fund makes its resources available, under proper safeguards, to its members to meet short-term or medium-term payments difficulties. The first allocation of special drawing rights was made on 1 Jan. 1970 with five SDR allocations since then. SDRs in existence now total SDR 21,400m. To further enhance its balance of payments assistance to its members the Fund established a compensatory financing facility on 27 Feb. 1963, temporary oil facilities in 1974 and 1975, a trust fund in 1976, and an extended facility for medium-term assistance to members with special balance of payments problems on 13 Sept. 1974 with additional financing now provided through a policy of enlarged access. In March 1986, it established the structural adjustment facility to provide assistance to low-income countries. In Dec. 1987, the Fund established the enhanced structural adjustment facility to provide further assistance to low-income countries facing high levels of indebtedness. In Aug. 1988, the compensatory and contingency financing facility was established, succeeding the compensatory financing facility; the new facility provides broader protection to members pursuing Fund-supported adjustment programmes.

The Committee on Reform of the International Monetary System and Related Issues, generally known as the Committee of Twenty, held its first session at the 1972 annual meeting, with the mandate to advise and report to the Board of Governors on all aspects of the international monetary system, including proposals for any amendments of the Articles of Agreement. The Committee of Twenty disbanded after submitting its final report in 1974. An Interim Committee of the Board of Governors on the International Monetary System and a Joint Ministerial Committee of the Boards of Governors of the World Bank and the Fund on the



Transfer of Real Resources to Developing Countries (Development Committee) were established and held their initial meetings in Jan. 1975 and since then have met on a semi-annual basis. Details of the reform of the international monetary system were incorporated in the second amendment of the Fund's Articles of Agreement, effective April 1978. In order to oversee the compliance of members with their obligations under the Articles of Agreement, the Fund is required to exercise firm surveillance over their exchange rate policies.

*Organization.* The highest authority in the Fund is exercised by the Board of Governors on which each member government is represented. Normally the Governors meet once a year, although the Governors may take votes by mail or other means between annual meetings. The Board of Governors has delegated many of its powers to the executive directors in Washington, of whom there are 22, of which 6 are appointed by individual members and the other 16 elected by groups of countries. Each appointed director has voting power proportionate to the quota of the government he represents, while each elected director casts all the votes of the countries which elected him. The 6 appointed executive directors represent the US, UK, France, Federal Republic of Germany, Japan and Saudi Arabia.

The managing director is selected by the executive directors; he presides as chairman at their meetings, but may not vote except in case of a tie. His term is for 5 years, but may be extended or terminated at the discretion of the executive directors. He is responsible for the ordinary business of the Fund, under general control of the executive directors, and supervises a staff of about 1,700.

*Headquarters:* 700 19th St. NW, Washington, D.C., 20431. Offices in Paris and Geneva.

*Managing Director:* Michel Camdessus (France).

### Further Reading

*Publications.* *Summary Proceedings of Annual Meetings of the Board of Governors.*—*Annual Report of the Executive Board.*—*Selected Decisions of the International Monetary Fund and Selected Documents.*—*International Financial Statistics* (monthly).—*IMF Survey* (bi-weekly).—*Balance of Payments Statistics.* Washington, monthly.—*IMF Staff Papers* (four times a year). Washington, from Feb. 1950.—*IMF Occasional Papers.*—*IMF Pamphlets.*—*Annual Report on Exchange Arrangements and Exchange Restrictions.* Washington, 1950 ff.—*Finance and Development.* Washington, from June 1964 (quarterly).—*Direction of Trade Statistics.* Washington (monthly). *IMF World Economic and Financial Surveys.* Washington. *Government Finance Statistics Yearbook. The International Monetary Fund, 1945–65: Twenty Years of International Monetary Co-operation.* 3 vols. Washington D.C. 1969

de Vries, M. G., *The International Monetary Fund, 1966–1971: The System Under Stress.* 2 vols. Washington D.C. 1976.—*The International Monetary Fund 1972–1978: Co-operation on Trial.* 3 vols. Washington D.C., 1985

## INTERNATIONAL BANK FOR RECONSTRUCTION AND DEVELOPMENT (IBRD)

Conceived at the Bretton Woods Conference, July 1944, the 'World Bank' began operations in June 1946. Its purpose is to provide funds and technical assistance to facilitate economic development in its poorer member countries.

The Bank obtains its funds from the following sources: Capital paid in by member countries; sales of its own securities; sales of parts of its loans; repayments; and net earnings. The subscribed capital of the Bank amounted to \$91,435m. at 30 June 1988. On 27 April 1988, the Board of Governors adopted a resolution that increased the authorized capital stock of the Bank by \$171,400m. This represented an increase of approximately \$40,000m. The resolution provides that the paid-in portion of the shares authorized to be subscribed under it will be 3%. Outstanding market-based borrowings had reached \$79,801m. by 30 June 1988. The Bank is self-supporting. Its net earnings for year ending 30 June 1987 amounted to \$1,113m.

By 1988 the Bank had made 2,818 loans totalling \$155,048m. in 102 of its

151 member countries. Lending was for the following purposes: Agriculture and rural development, \$32,051m.; Development Finance Companies, \$15,451.6m.; education, \$5,610.1m.; energy, \$34,330.1m.; industry, \$10,973m.; non-project, \$10,642.4m.; population, health and nutrition, \$851.1m.; small-scale enterprises, \$3,890m.; telecommunications, \$2,543.2m.; tourism, \$363.6m.; transportation, \$25,097.4m.; urban development, \$6,188.2m.; water supply and sewerage, \$7,129m., and technical assistance, \$273.7m. In order to eliminate wasteful overlapping of development assistance and to ensure that the funds available are used to the best possible effect, the Bank has organized consortia or consultative groups of aidgiving nations for the following countries: Bangladesh, Bolivia, Burma, Colombia, Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, Ethiopia, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, India, Kenya, Korea, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritania, Mauritius, Morocco, Nepal, Nigeria, Pakistan, Peru, the Philippines, Senegal, Somalia, Sri Lanka, Sudan, Tanzania, Thailand, Togo, Tunisia, Uganda, Zaïre, Zambia and the Caribbean Group for Co-operation in Economic Development. The Bank furnishes a wide variety of technical assistance. It acts as executing agency for a number of pre-investment surveys financed by the UN Development Programme. Resident missions have been established in 38 developing member countries as well as 3 regional missions in East and West Africa and Thailand primarily to assist in the preparation of projects. The Bank helps member countries to identify and prepare projects for the development of agriculture, education and water supply by drawing on the expertise of the FAO, WHO, UNIDO and UNESCO through its co-operative agreements with these organizations. The Bank maintains a staff college, the Economic Development Institute in Washington, D.C., for senior officials of the member countries.

*Headquarters:* 1818 H St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20433, USA. *European office:* 66 avenue d'Iéna, 75116 Paris, France. *London office:* New Zealand House, Haymarket, SW1Y 4TE, England. *Tokyo office:* Kokusai Building, 1-1, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 100, Japan.

*President:* Barber B. Conable, Jr., (USA).

### Further Reading

*Publications. Annual Reports.* 1946 ff.—*Summary Proceedings of Annual Meetings.* 1947 ff.—*The World Bank Group.* 1971.—*The World Bank Atlas.* 1967 ff.—*Catalog of Publications,* 1986.—*World Development Report.* 1978 ff.  
Payer, C., *The World Bank: A Critical Analysis.* London, 1982

## INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (IDA)

A lending agency which came into existence on 24 Sept. 1960. Administered by the World Bank, IDA is open to all members of the Bank.

IDA concentrates its assistance on those countries with an annual *per capita* gross national product of less than \$790 (1983 rate). Its resources consist mostly of subscriptions, general replenishments from its more industrialized and developed members, special contributions, and transfers from the net earnings of the Bank. IDA credits are made to Governments only. It had committed over \$43,307.7m. for 1,699 development projects in 83 countries, by 30 June 1987.

## INTERNATIONAL FINANCE CORPORATION (IFC)

The Corporation, an affiliate of the World Bank, was established in July 1956. Paid-in capital at 30 June 1988 was \$850.2m., subscribed by 133 member countries. In addition, it has accumulated earnings of \$438.2m. IFC supplements the activities of the World Bank by encouraging the growth of productive private enterprises in less developed member countries. Chiefly, IFC makes investments in the form of subscriptions to the share capital of privately owned companies, or long-term loans, or both. The Corporation will help finance new ventures, and it will also assist established enterprises to expand, improve or diversify their operations.

At 30 June 1988 IFC had approved investments amounting to \$10,500m., in over 90 countries.

*President:* Barber B. Conable, Jr., (USA).

*Executive Vice-President:* Sir William Ryrie (UK).

*Publications.* *Annual Reports.* 1956 ff.—*What IFC Does.* 1988

## INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION (ICAO)

*Origin.* The Convention providing for the establishment of the International Civil Aviation Organization was drawn up by the International Civil Aviation Conference held in Chicago from 1 Nov. to 7 Dec. 1944. A Provisional International Civil Aviation Organization (PICAO) operated for 20 months until the formal establishment of ICAO on 4 April 1947.

The Convention on International Civil Aviation superseded the provisions of the Paris Convention of 1919, which established the International Commission for Air Navigation (ICAN), and the Pan American Convention on Air Navigation drawn up at Havana in 1928.

*Functions.* It assists international civil aviation by establishing technical standards for safety and efficiency of air navigation and promoting simpler procedures at borders; develops regional plans for ground facilities and services needed for international flying; disseminates air-transport statistics and prepares studies on aviation economics; fosters the development of air law conventions. As part of the UN Development Programme it provides technical assistance to States in developing civil aviation programmes.

*Organization.* The principal organs of ICAO are an Assembly, consisting of all members of the Organization, and a Council, which is composed of 33 states elected by the Assembly, for 3 years, and meets in virtually continuous session. In electing these states, the Assembly must give adequate representation to: (1) states of major importance in air transport; (2) states which make the largest contribution to the provision of facilities for the international civil air navigation; (3) those states not otherwise included whose election will ensure that all major geographical areas of the world are represented. The main subsidiary bodies are: The Air Navigation Commission, composed of 15 members appointed by the Council; Air Transport Committee, open to council members; and the Legal Committee, on which all members of ICAO may be represented. There are 159 members. Budget for 1988: US\$30,090,000.

*Headquarters:* 1000 Sherbrooke St. West, Montreal, Quebec, Canada H3A 2R2.

*President:* Dr Assad Kotaite (Lebanon).

*Secretary-General:* Dr Shivinder Singh Sidhu (India).

*Annual Report of the Council.* (English, French, Russian, Spanish)

*ICAO Bulletin* (Monthly)

## UNIVERSAL POSTAL UNION (UPU)

*Origin.* The UPU was established on 1 July 1875, when the Universal Postal Convention adopted by the Postal Congress of Berne on 9 Oct. 1874 came into force. The UPU was known at first as the General Postal Union, its name being changed at the Congress of Paris in 1878. In 1980 there were 158 member countries.

*Functions.* The aim of the UPU is to assure the organization and perfection of the various postal services and to promote, in this field, the development of international collaboration. To this end, the members of UPU are united in a single postal territory for the reciprocal exchange of correspondence.

*Organization.* The UPU is composed of a Universal Postal Congress which usually meets every 5 years, a permanent Executive Council consisting of 40 members, a consultative Committee, which consists of 35 members elected on a geographical basis by each Congress, and an International Bureau, which functions as the permanent secretariat.



Since 1 July 1948 the Union has been governed by the revised Convention adopted by the twelfth Congress in Paris on 5 July 1947.

Budget for 1981: US\$9.5m.

*Headquarters:* Weltpoststrasse 4, 3000, Berne 15, Switzerland.

*Director-General:* Mohamed Ibrahim Sobhi (Egypt).

### Further Reading

*Publications. Documents of the Lausanne Congress 1974.* Bern, 1975.—*Universal Postal Convention: Paris, 5 July, 1948.* (Cmd. 7435).—*The Postal Union* (monthly, Arabic, Chinese, English, French, German, Spanish, Russian).—*The UPU: Its Foundation and Development.* Bern, 1959.

## INTERNATIONAL TELECOMMUNICATION UNION (ITU)

*Origin.* In 1932, at Madrid, the Union decided to merge the Telegraph Convention adopted in 1865 and the Radiotelegraph Convention adopted in 1906 into a single International Telecommunication Convention within annex, the Telephone, Telegraph and Radio Regulations. It also decided to change its name to International Telecommunication Union to better reflect all its new responsibilities. The ITU has been governed since 1 Jan. 1984 by the revised International Telecommunication Convention adopted in Nairobi in 1982.

*Functions.* (1) to maintain and extend international co-operation for the improvement and rational use of telecommunications of all kinds, as well as to promote and to offer technical assistance to developing countries in the field of telecommunications; (2) to promote the development of technical facilities and their most efficient operation with a view to improving the efficiency of telecommunication services, increasing their usefulness and making them, so far as possible, generally available to the public; (3) to harmonize the actions of nations in the attainment of those ends.

*Organization.* The ITU consists of the Plenipotentiary Conference, Administrative Conferences, the Administrative Council of 41 members, and of 4 permanent organs (the General Secretariat, the International Frequency Registration Board, and 2 international consultative committees, one for radio and one for telephone and telegraph).

Budget for 1989: Sw.Frs.132,000,000.

*Headquarters:* Place des Nations, Geneva, Switzerland.

*Secretary-General:* Richard E. Butler (Australia).

## WORLD METEOROLOGICAL ORGANIZATION (WMO)

*Origin.* A Conference of Directors of the International Meteorological Organization (set up in 1873), meeting in Washington in 1947, adopted a Convention creating the World Meteorological Organization. The WMO Convention became effective on 23 March 1950, and WMO was formally established on 19 March 1951, when the first session of its Congress was convened in Paris. An agreement to bring WMO into relationship with the United Nations was approved by this Congress and came into force on 21 Dec. 1951 with its approval by the General Assembly of the United Nations.

*Functions.* (1) To facilitate world-wide co-operation in the establishment of networks of stations for the making of meteorological observations as well as hydrological or other geophysical observations related to meteorology, and to promote the establishment and maintenance of meteorological centres charged with the provision of meteorological and related services; (2) to promote the establishment and maintenance of systems for the rapid exchange of meteorological and related information; (3) to promote standardization of meteorological and related observations and to ensure the uniform publication of observations and statistics; (4) to further the application of meteorology to aviation, shipping, water problems, agriculture and other human activities; (5) to promote activities in operational hydrology and to further close co-operation between meteorological and hydrological

services; and (6) to encourage research and training in meteorology and, as appropriate, to assist in co-ordinating the international aspects of such research and training.

*Organization.* WMO is an inter-governmental organization of 155 member states and 5 member territories responsible for the operation of their own meteorological services. Constituent bodies of WMO are the World Meteorological Congress which meets every 4 years, the executive council composed of 36 members elected in their personal capacity and including the President and 3 Vice-Presidents of the Organization, 6 regional associations of members and 8 technical commissions established by the Congress. A permanent secretariat is maintained in Geneva.

Budget for 1988–91: Sw.Frs.170m.

*Headquarters:* Case postale 5, CH-1211, Geneva 20, Switzerland.

*Secretary-General:* G. O. P. Obasi (Nigeria).

*Publications.* *WMO Bulletin.* 1952 ff.—*Meteorological Services of the World.* 1985.—*Publications of the World Meteorological Organization, 1951–1986.*

## INTERNATIONAL MARITIME ORGANIZATION (IMO)

*Origin.* The International Maritime Organization, until 1982 known as Intèr-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization (IMCO), was established as a specialized agency of the UN by a convention drawn up at the UN Maritime Conference held at Geneva in Feb./March 1948. The Convention became effective on 17 March 1958 when it had been ratified by 21 countries, including 7 with at least 1m. gross tons of shipping each. The International Maritime Organization started operations in Jan. 1959.

*Functions.* To facilitate co-operation among governments on technical matters affecting merchant shipping, especially concerning safety at sea; to prevent and control marine pollution caused by ships; to facilitate international maritime traffic. The International Maritime Organization is responsible for convening international maritime conferences and for drafting international maritime conventions. It also provides technical assistance to countries wishing to develop their maritime activities.

*Organization.* The International Maritime Organization had 132 members (and 1 associate member) in 1988. The Assembly, composed of all member states, normally meets every 2 years. The Council of 32 member states acts as governing body between Assembly sessions. The Maritime Safety Committee deals with all technical questions relating to maritime safety. It has established several sub-committees to deal with specific problems and like the Marine Environment Protection Committee, Legal Committee, Facilitation Committee and Committee on Technical Co-operation is open to all International Maritime Organization members. The Secretariat is composed of international civil servants.

The International Maritime Organization is depositary authority for the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1960, and the Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1948 and 1960; the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea by Oil, 1954, as amended in 1962 and 1969; the Convention on Facilitation of International Maritime Traffic, 1965; the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966; the International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969; the International Convention relating to Intervention on the High Seas in cases of Oil Pollution Casualties, 1969; the International Convention on Civil Liability for Oil Pollution Damage, 1969; Convention on International Compensation Fund for Oil Pollution Damage, 1971; Special Trade Passenger Ships Agreement, 1971; Convention on International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea, 1972; the International Convention for Safe Containers, 1972; the International Convention on Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973 as modified by the Protocol of 1978; the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974; Athens Convention relating to the Carriage of Passengers and their Luggage by Sea, 1974; Convention on the International Maritime Satellite Organization, 1976; Convention on Limitation of Maritime Claims, 1976; Torremolinos International Convention for the Safety of Fishing Vessels, 1977;



International Convention on Standards of Training, Certification and Watch-keeping for Seafarers, 1978; International Convention on Maritime Search and Rescue, 1979; Convention for the Suppression of Unlawful Acts Against the Safety of Maritime Navigation, 1988.

*Headquarters:* 4 Albert Embankment, London SE1 7SR.

*Secretary-General:* C. P. Srivastava (India).

*Assistant General Secretaries:* T. A. Mensah (Ghana), Y. Sasamura (Japan), H. Mallet (France).

*IMO News*

## GENERAL AGREEMENT ON TARIFFS AND TRADE (GATT)

*Origin.* The General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade was negotiated in 1947 and entered into force on 1 Jan. 1948. Its 23 original signatories were members of a Preparatory Committee appointed by the UN Economic and Social Council to draft the charter for a proposed International Trade Organization. Since this charter was never ratified, the General Agreement, intended as an interim arrangement, has instead remained as the only international instrument laying down trade rules accepted by countries responsible for nearly 90% of the world's trade. In Oct. 1988 there were 96 contracting parties, with one country acceding provisionally, and a further 28 countries applying GATT rules on a *de facto* basis.

*Functions.* GATT functions both as a multilateral treaty that lays down a common code of conduct in international trade and trade relations and as a forum for negotiation and consultation to overcome trade problems and reduce trade barriers. Key provisions of the Agreement guarantee most-favoured-nation treatment (exceptions being granted to customs unions and free trade areas, and for certain preferences in favour of developing countries); require that protection be given to domestic industry only through tariffs (apart from specified exceptions); provide for negotiations to reduce tariffs (which are then 'bound' against subsequent increase) and other trade distortions; and lay down principles (particularly in Part IV of the Agreement, added in 1965) to assist the trade of developing countries. The Agreement also provides for consultation on, and settlement of, disputes, for 'waivers' (the grant of authorization, when warranted, to derogate from specific GATT obligations) and for emergency action in defined circumstances.

Seven 'rounds' of multilateral trade negotiations, including the Kennedy Round of 1964-67, have been completed in GATT. The latest in this series, the Tokyo Round, although held in Geneva, was so called because it was launched at a Ministerial meeting in the Japanese capital in Sept. 1973.

Ninety-nine countries participated in the Tokyo Round. In Nov. 1979, the negotiations were concluded with agreements covering: An improved legal framework for the conduct of world trade (which includes recognition of tariff and non-tariff treatment in favour of and among developing countries as a permanent legal feature of the world trading system); non-tariff measures (subsidies and countervailing duties; technical barriers to trade; government procurement; customs valuation; import licensing procedures; and a revision of the 1967 GATT anti-dumping code); bovine meat; dairy products; tropical products; and an agreement on free trade in civil aircraft. The agreements contain provisions for special and more favourable treatment for developing countries.

Participating countries also agreed to reduce tariffs on thousands of industrial and agricultural products, for the most part over a period of 7 years ending on 1 Jan. 1987. As a result of these concessions, industrialized countries have reduced the average level of their import duties on manufactures by about 34%, a cut comparable to that achieved in the Kennedy Round.

The agreements providing an improved framework for the conduct of world trade took effect in Nov. 1979. The other agreements took effect on 1 Jan. 1980, except for those covering government procurement and customs valuation, which took effect on 1 Jan. 1981, and the concessions on tropical products which began as early as 1977. Committees were established to supervise implementation of each of the Tokyo Round agreements.

On 20 Sept. 1986, agreement was reached to launch the Uruguay Round of



multilateral trade negotiations. In Oct. 1988, there were 105 states participating in the negotiations.

The Declaration is divided into two sections. The first covers negotiations on trade in goods. Its objectives are to bring about further liberalization and expansion of world trade; to strengthen the role of GATT and improve the multilateral trading system; to increase the responsiveness of GATT to the evolving international economic environment; and to encourage co-operation in strengthening the inter-relationship between trade and other economic policies affecting growth and development.

In the area of trade in goods, Ministers committed themselves to a 'standstill' on new trade measures inconsistent with their GATT obligations and to a 'rollback' programme aimed at phasing out existing inconsistent measures. Negotiations are being undertaken in the following areas: Tariffs, non-tariff measures, tropical products, natural resource-based products, textiles and clothing, agriculture, subsidies, safeguards, trade-related aspects of intellectual property rights, including trade in counterfeit goods, and trade-related investment measures. Participants are reviewing certain GATT Articles, attempting to improve and strengthen the dispute settlement procedure, and negotiating to improve, clarify or expand the agreements reached during the Tokyo Round. One part of the negotiation is devoted to the functioning of the GATT system itself.

The second part of the Declaration covers a negotiation on trade in services.

To assist the trade of developing countries, GATT established in 1964 the International Trade Centre (since 1968 operated jointly with the UN, the latter acting through the UN Conference on Trade and Development) to provide information and training on export markets and marketing techniques. Other GATT action in favour of developing countries includes training courses on trade policy questions, organization of seminars and briefings, and technical assistance to delegations in the form of data and background documentation.

Budget for 1989: Sw. Frs. 64,861,000.

*Headquarters:* Centre William Rappard, 154 rue de Lausanne, 1211 Geneva 21, Switzerland.

*Director-General:* Arthur Dunkel (Switzerland).

### Further Reading

*Publications. Basic Instruments and Selected Documents.* 4 vols. and 34 supplements 1952-87.—*International Trade* [i.e., annual review], 1952 ff. Annually from 1953.—*Review of Development in the Trading System.* Semi-annually from 1987.—*GATT, What It Is, What It Does.*—*GATT Activities*, 1960 ff. Annually from 1972.—*GATT Focus*. From Feb. 1981 (10 issues a year).—*News of the Uruguay Round*. Monthly from March 1987.—*GATT Studies in International Trade*. 1971 ff. (irregular series).—*The Tokyo Round of Multilateral Trade Negotiations*. Report of the Director-General, 2 vols., 1979.—*Textile and Clothing in the World Economy*, 1984.—*The World Markets for Dairy Products*. Annually from 1981.—*The International Markets for Meat*. Annually from 1981.—*Trade in Natural Resource Products: Aluminium* (1987), *Lead* (1987), *Zinc* (1988).

Casadio, G. P., *Transatlantic Trade: USA-EEC Confrontation in the GATT Negotiations*. Farnborough, 1973

Dam, K. W., *The GATT: Law and International Economic Organization*. Chicago and London, 1970

Golt, S., *The GATT Negotiations, 1973-75: A Guide to the Issues*. London, 1974

Hudec, R. E., *The GATT Legal System and World Trade Diplomacy*. New York, 1975

Long, O., *Law and its Limitations in the GATT Multilateral Trade System*. Dordrecht, 1985

## WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION (WIPO)

*Origin.* The Convention establishing WIPO was signed at Stockholm in 1967 by 51 countries, and entered into force in April 1970. In Dec. 1974 WIPO became a specialized agency of the UN. *Inter alia* it took over the functions of the United International Bureaux for the Protection of Intellectual Property, also known as BIRPI (the French acronym of that name), which were established in 1893 to administer the affairs of the two principal international intellectual property treat-

ies – the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property of 1883 and the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works of 1886.

*Functions.* WIPO is responsible for the promotion of the protection of intellectual property throughout the world. Intellectual property comprises two main branches: Industrial property (patents and other rights in technological inventions, rights in trademarks, industrial designs, appellations of origin, etc.) and copyright and neighbouring rights (in literary, musical and artistic works, in films and performances of performing artists, phonograms, etc.). WIPO administers various international treaties, of which the most important are the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property and the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works. WIPO carries out a substantial programme of activities in promoting creative intellectual activity and in facilitating the transfer of technology, especially to and among developing countries.

*Membership* of WIPO is open to any State which is a member of at least one of the Unions created by the Paris Convention and the Berne Convention and to other States which are members of the organizations of the United Nations system, are party to the Statute of the International Court of Justice, or are invited to join by the General Assembly of WIPO. Membership of the Unions is open to any State. The number of member states of WIPO was 122 on 1 Jan. 1989; in addition, 11 States are party to treaties administered by WIPO but have not yet become members of WIPO.

*Organization.* The bodies of WIPO are: The *General Assembly* consisting of all member states of WIPO which are members of any of the Unions. Among its other functions, the General Assembly appoints and gives instructions to the Director General, reviews and approves his reports and adopts the biennial budget of expenses common to the Unions. The *Conference*, consisting of all States members of WIPO whether or not they are members of any of the Unions. Among its functions, the Conference adopts its biennial budget and establishes the biennial programme of legal-technical assistance. The *Co-ordination Committee*, consisting of the States members of WIPO which are members of the Executive Committees of the Paris or Berne Unions.

In addition, the Paris and Berne Unions have Assemblies and Executive Committees, with functions similar to those of the WIPO bodies in respect of the biennial budgets and programmes of the Unions.

The *WIPO Permanent Committees for Development Co-operation Related to Industrial Property* and *Related to Copyright and Neighbouring Rights* plan and review activities in the said fields; the *WIPO Permanent Committee on Industrial Property Information* is responsible for intergovernmental co-operation in industrial property documentation and information matters such as the standardization and exchange of patent documents.

WIPO has an international staff of 320. The working languages of the Organization are: Arabic, English, French, Russian and Spanish.

*Headquarters:* 34, chemin des Colombettes, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.

*Director-General:* Dr Arpad Bogsch (USA).

### Further Reading

*Periodicals.* *Industrial Property* (monthly, in English and French).—*Copyright* (monthly, in English and French).—*Les Marques internationales* (monthly, in French).—*International Designs Bulletin* (monthly, in English and French).—*Newsletter* (irregular, in Arabic, English, French, Portuguese, Russian and Spanish).—*PCT Gazette* (fortnightly, in English and French).—*Les appellations d'origine* (irregular, in French).—*Intellectual Property in Asia and the Pacific* (quarterly, in English). The Organization also produces a large selection of publications related to intellectual property.

## INTERNATIONAL FUND FOR AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT (IFAD)

The establishment of IFAD was one of the major actions proposed by the 1974 World Food Conference. The agreement for IFAD entered into force on 30



Nov. 1977 following attainment of initial pledges of \$1,000m. and the agency began its operations the following month. IFAD's purpose is to mobilise additional funds for agricultural and rural development in developing countries through projects and programmes directly benefiting the poorest rural population. In line with the Fund's focus on the rural poor, its resources are being made available in highly concessional loans.

*Organization.* The Governing Council, consisting of the entire membership, directs the Fund's operations. The chief executive is the President, who is also the Chairman of the 18-member Executive Board.

*President:* Idriss Jafairy (Algeria).

*Headquarters:* 107 Via del Serafico, Rome, Italy.

## THE COMMONWEALTH

The Commonwealth is a free association of sovereign independent states, numbering 48 at the beginning of 1989. There is no charter, treaty or constitution; the association is expressed in co-operation, consultation and mutual assistance for which the Commonwealth Secretariat is the central co-ordinating body.

The Commonwealth was first defined by the Imperial Conference of 1926 as a group of 'autonomous communities within the British Empire, equal in status, in no way subordinate one to another in any aspect of their domestic or foreign affairs, though united by a common allegiance to the Crown, and freely associated as members of the British Commonwealth of Nations'. The basis of the association changed from one owing allegiance to a common Crown, and the modern Commonwealth was born in 1949 when the member countries accepted India's intention of becoming a republic at the same time continuing 'her full membership of the Commonwealth of Nations and her acceptance of the King as the symbol of the free association of its independent member nations and as such the Head of the Commonwealth'. There were (1989) 17 Queen's realms, 26 republics, and 5 indigenous monarchies in the Commonwealth. All acknowledge the Queen symbolically as Head of the Commonwealth.

The Queen's legal title rests on the statute of 12 and 13 Will. III, c. 3, by which the succession to the Crown of Great Britain and Ireland was settled on the Princess Sophia of Hanover and the 'heirs of her body being Protestants'. By proclamation of 17 July 1917 the royal family became known as the House and Family of Windsor. On 8 Feb. 1960 the Queen issued a declaration varying her confirmatory declaration of 9 April 1952 to the effect that while the Queen and her children should continue to be known as the House of Windsor, her descendants, other than descendants entitled to the style of Royal Highness and the title of Prince or Princess, and female descendants who marry and their descendants should bear the name of Mountbatten-Windsor. The Royal Style and Titles of Queen Elizabeth are: In *Antigua and Barbuda* 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of Antigua and Barbuda and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Australia*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God Queen of Australia and Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In the *Bahamas*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of the Commonwealth of the Bahamas and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Barbados*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of Barbados and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Belize*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of Belize and of Her Other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Canada*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom, Canada and Her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith'. In *Grenada*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and of Grenada and Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Jamaica*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of Jamaica and of Her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Mauritius*: 'Elizabeth the Second, Queen of Mauritius and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the

Commonwealth'. In *New Zealand*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God Queen of New Zealand and Her Other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith'. In *Papua New Guinea*: 'Elizabeth the Second, Queen of Papua New Guinea and Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Saint Christopher and Nevis*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of Saint Christopher and Nevis and Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Saint Lucia*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of Saint Lucia and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of Commonwealth'. In *Saint Vincent and the Grenadines*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God, Queen of Saint Vincent and the Grenadines and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Solomon Islands*: 'Elizabeth the Second by the Grace of God Queen of Solomon Islands and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In *Tuvalu*: 'Elizabeth the Second by the Grace of God Queen of Tuvalu and of Her other Realms and Territories, Head of the Commonwealth'. In the *United Kingdom*: 'Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and of Her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith'.

A number of territories, formerly under British jurisdiction or mandate did not join the Commonwealth: Egypt, Iraq, Transjordan, Burma, Palestine, Sudan, British Somaliland, South Cameroons, and Aden. Two countries, the Republic of South Africa in 1961 and Pakistan in 1972, have left the Commonwealth. Fiji's membership lapsed with the emergence of the Republic in 1987.

Nauru and Tuvalu are special members, with the right to participate in all functional Commonwealth meetings and activities but not to attend meetings of Commonwealth Heads of Government.

*Member States.* The following are the member countries, with their dates of independence, and, where appropriate, the date on which they became republics: *United Kingdom*; *Canada* 1 July 1867<sup>1</sup>; *Australia* 1 Jan. 1901<sup>1</sup>; *New Zealand* 26 Sept. 1907<sup>1</sup>; *India* 15 Aug. 1947 (Republic on 26 Jan. 1950); *Sri Lanka* 4 Feb. 1948 (Republic on 22 May 1972); *Ghana* 6 March 1957 (Republic on 1 July 1960); *Malaysia* 31 Aug. 1957 as Federation of Malaya, 16 Sept. 1963 as Federation of Malaysia; *Cyprus* 16 Aug. 1960 (Republic on independence; joined Commonwealth on 13 March 1961); *Nigeria* 1 Oct. 1960 (Republic on 1 Oct. 1963); *Sierra Leone* 27 April 1961 (Republic on 19 April 1971); *Tanzania*–Tanganyika 9 Dec. 1961 (Republic on 9 Dec. 1962), Zanzibar 10 Dec. 1963 (Republic on 12 Jan. 1964), United Republic of Tanganyika and Zanzibar 26 April 1964; renamed United Republic of Tanzania 29 Oct. 1964; *Western Samoa* 1 Jan. 1962 (joined Commonwealth on 28 Aug. 1970); *Jamaica* 6 Aug. 1962; *Trinidad and Tobago* 31 Aug. 1962 (Republic on 1 Aug. 1976); *Uganda* 9 Oct. 1962 (Republic 8 Sept. 1967, second republic 25 Jan. 1971); *Kenya* 12 Dec. 1963 (Republic on 12 Dec. 1964); *Malawi* 6 July 1964 (Republic on 6 July 1966); *Malta* 21 Sept. 1964 (Republic on 13 Dec. 1974); *Zambia* 24 Oct. 1964 (Republic on independence); *The Gambia* 18 Feb. 1965 (Republic on 24 April 1970); *Maldives* 26 July 1965 (Republic on independence, joined Commonwealth on 9 July 1982); *Singapore* 16 Sept. 1963 as a state in the Federation of Malaysia, 9 Aug. 1965 as an independent state and republic not part of Malaysia; *Guyana* 26 May 1966 (Republic on 23 Feb. 1970); *Botswana* 30 Sept. 1966 (Republic on independence); *Lesotho* 4 Oct. 1966; *Barbados* 30 Nov. 1966; *Nauru* 31 Jan. 1968 (Republic on independence); *Mauritius* 12 March 1968; *Swaziland* 6 Sept. 1968; *Tonga* 4 June 1970; *Bangladesh* seceded from Pakistan as Republic 16 Dec. 1971, recognized by United Kingdom 4 Feb. 1972 (joined Commonwealth on 18 April 1972); *Bahamas* 10 July 1973; *Grenada* 7 Feb. 1974; *Papua New Guinea* 16 Sept. 1975; *Seychelles* 29 June 1976 (Republic on independence); *Solomon Islands* 7 July 1978; *Tuvalu* 1 Oct. 1978; *Dominica* 3 Nov. 1978 (Republic on independence); *Saint Lucia* 22 Feb. 1979; *Kiribati* 12 July 1979 (Republic on independence); *Saint Vincent and the Grenadines* 27 Oct. 1979; *Zimbabwe* 18 April 1980 (Republic on independence); *Vanuatu* 30 July 1980 (Republic on independence); *Belize* 21 Sept. 1981; *Antigua and Barbuda* 1 Nov. 1981; *Saint Christopher and Nevis* 19 Sept. 1983; *Brunei*<sup>2</sup> 1 Jan. 1984.

<sup>1</sup>These are the effective dates of independence, given legal effect by the Statute of Westminster 1931.



<sup>2</sup> Brunei was a sovereign state in treaty relationship with Britain, whereby Britain was responsible for the conduct of external affairs and had a consultative responsibility for defence. It had never been a dependent territory, and in 1971 had ceased to be a protected state. A Treaty of Friendship and Co-operation was signed on 7 Jan. 1979, becoming effective on 1 Jan. 1984 when Brunei assumed her full international responsibilities and Britain gave up her consultative commitment over defence matters.

*Dependent Territories and Associated States.* There are 15 British dependent territories, 7 Australian external territories, 2 New Zealand dependent territories and 2 New Zealand associated states. A dependent territory is a territory belonging by settlement, conquest or annexation to the British, Australian or New Zealand Crown.

United Kingdom dependent territories administered through the Foreign and Commonwealth Office comprise, in the Far East: Hong Kong; in the Indian Ocean: British Indian Ocean Territory; in the Mediterranean: Gibraltar; in the Atlantic Ocean: Bermuda, Falkland Islands, South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands, British Antarctic Territory, St Helena, St Helena Dependencies (Ascension and Tristan da Cunha); in the Caribbean: Montserrat, British Virgin Islands, Cayman Islands, Turks and Caicos Islands, Anguilla; in the Western Pacific: Pitcairn Group of Islands. The Australian external territories are: Coral Sea Islands Territory, Cocos (Keeling) Islands, Christmas Island, Heard Island and McDonald Islands, Norfolk Island, Australian Antarctic Territory and the Territory of Ashmore and Cartier Islands. The New Zealand dependent territories are: Tokelau and Ross Dependency. The New Zealand associated states are: Cook Islands and Niue.

While constitutional responsibility to Parliament for the government of the British dependent territories rests with the Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs, the administration of the territories is carried out by the Governments of the territories themselves.

*British Government Department.* With effect from 17 Oct. 1968, the Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs is responsible for the conduct of relations with members of the Commonwealth as well as with foreign countries, and for the administration of British dependent territories.

*Commonwealth Secretariat.* The Commonwealth Secretariat is an international body at the service of all 48 member countries. It provides the central organization for joint consultation and co-operation in many fields. It was established in 1965 by Commonwealth Heads of Government and has observer status at the UN General Assembly.

The Secretariat disseminates information on matters of common concern, organizes and services meetings and conferences, co-ordinates many Commonwealth activities, and provides expert technical assistance for economic and social development through the multilateral Commonwealth Fund for Technical Co-operation. The Secretariat is organized in divisions and sections which correspond to its main areas of operation: International affairs, economic affairs, food production and rural development, youth, education, information, applied studies in government, science and technology, law and health. Within this structure the Secretariat organizes the biennial meetings of Commonwealth Heads of Government, annual meetings of Finance Ministers of member countries, and regular meetings of Ministers of Education, Law, Health, and others as appropriate.

To emphasize the multilateral nature of the association, meetings are held in different cities and regions within the Commonwealth. Heads of Government decided that the Secretariat should work from London as it has the widest range of communications of any Commonwealth city, as well as the largest assembly of diplomatic missions.

The Commonwealth Secretary-General, who has access to Heads of Government, is the head of the Secretariat which is staffed by officers from member countries and financed by contributions from member governments.

Commonwealth Day is observed throughout the Commonwealth on the second Monday in March.

*Flag:* Royal blue with the emblem of a globe surrounded by 49 rays, all in gold.

*Headquarters:* Marlborough House, Pall Mall, London, SW1Y 5HX.

*Secretary-General:* Shridath S. Ramphal (Guyana).

### Further Reading

- The Commonwealth Year-Book*, HMSO, Annual  
*The Cambridge History of the British Empire*. 8 vols. CUP, 1929 ff.  
 Austin, D., *The Commonwealth and Britain*. London, 1988  
 Burns, Sir Alan, *In Defence of Colonies*. London, 1957  
 Chadwick, J., *The Unofficial Commonwealth*. London, 1982  
 Dale, W., *The Modern Commonwealth*. London, 1983  
 Garner, J., *The Commonwealth Office, 1925–1968*. London, 1978  
 Hailey, Lord, *An African Survey*. Rev. ed. Oxford, 1957.—*Native Administration in the British African Territories*. 5 vols. HMSO, 1951 ff.  
 Hall, H. D., *Commonwealth: A History of the British Commonwealth*. London and New York, 1971  
 Judd, D. and Slinn, P., *The Evolution of the Modern Commonwealth*. London, 1982  
 Keeton, G. W. (ed.) *The British Commonwealth: Its Laws and Constitutions*. 9 vols. London, 1951 ff.  
 Mansergh, N., *The Commonwealth Experience*. 2 vols. London, 1982  
 Maxwell, W. H. and L. F., *A Legal Bibliography of the British Commonwealth of Nations*. 2nd ed. London, 1956  
 Moore, R. J., *Making the New Commonwealth*. Oxford, 1987  
 Papadopoulos, A. N., *Multilateral Diplomacy within the Commonwealth: A Decade of Expansion*. The Hague, 1982  
 Smith, A. and Sanger, C., *Stitches in Time: The Commonwealth in World Politics*. New York, 1983  
 Wade, E. C. S. and Phillips, G. G., *Constitutional Law: An Outline of the Law and Practice of the Constitution, Including Central and Local Government and the Constitutional Relations of the British Commonwealth and Empire*. 8th ed. London, 1970

## WORLD COUNCIL OF CHURCHES

The World Council of Churches was formally constituted on 23 Aug. 1948, at Amsterdam, by an assembly representing 147 churches from 44 countries. By 1988 the member churches numbered over 300, from more than 100 countries.

The basis of membership (1975) states: 'The World Council of Churches is a fellowship of Churches which confess the Lord Jesus Christ as God and Saviour according to the Scriptures and therefore seek to fulfil together their common calling to the glory of the one God, Father, Son and Holy Spirit.' Membership is open to Churches which express their agreement with this basis and satisfy such criteria as the Assembly or Central Committee may prescribe. Today 305 Churches of Protestant, Anglican, Orthodox, Old Catholic and Pentecostal confessions belong to this fellowship.

The World Council was founded by the coming together of several diverse Christian movements. These included the overseas mission groups gathered from 1921 in the International Missionary Council, the Faith and Order Movement founded by American Episcopal Bishop Charles Brent, and the Life and Work Movement led by Swedish Lutheran Archbishop Nathan Söderblom.

On 13 May 1938 at Utrecht a provisional committee was appointed to prepare for the formation of a World Council of Churches. It was under the chairmanship of William Temple, then Archbishop of York.

**Assembly.** The governing body of the World Council, consisting of delegates specially appointed by the member Churches. It meets every 7 or 8 years to frame policy and to consider some main theme. The Assembly has no legislative powers and depends for the implementation of its decisions upon the action of the member Churches. Assemblies have been held in Amsterdam (1948), Evanston (1954), New Delhi (1961), Uppsala (1968), and Nairobi (1975) and most recently in Vancouver, Canada in 1983 under the theme 'Jesus Christ – the Life of the World'. In between assemblies, a 150-member Central Committee meets annually to carry out the assembly mandate, with a smaller 22-member Executive Committee meeting twice a year.

*Presidents:* Dr Marga Bührig (Switzerland), Most Rev. W. P. K. Makhulu (Botswana), Dame R. Nita Barrow (Barbados), Bishop Johannes Hempel (German



Democratic Republic), Dr Lois Wilson (Canada), Metropolitan Paulos Mar Gregorios (India), Patriarch Ignatios IV (Syria).

WCC programmes are organized from headquarters in Geneva, Switzerland, by a staff of 300 and a range of supervisory committees drawn from member churches. The 3 programme units are:

(i) Faith and Witness includes the Commission on Faith and Order, World Mission and Evangelism, Church and Society and the sub-unit on Dialogue with People of Living Faiths.

(ii) Justice and Service which includes Inter-Church Aid, Refugee and World Service (channelling over \$35m. from member churches to areas of need); the Commission on the Churches' Participation in Development; the Commission of the Churches on International Affairs, the Programme to Combat Racism and the Christian Medical Commission.

(iii) Education and Renewal includes sections dealing with renewal and congregational life, women, youth, church-related education, biblical studies, family ministry and the Programme on Theological Education.

A General Secretariat with a Communication Department, finance and central services co-ordinates the work of these 3 units.

Since 1975 the WCC has held several major world conferences on such diverse themes as 'Faith, Science and the Future', 'Your Kingdom Come', 'Family Power and Social Change', 'Strategies for Churches Combating Racism in the 1980's', 'The Community of Women and Men in the Church', 'Giving an Account of the Hope that is in Us' and 'Called to be Neighbours'.

Officers of the Central and Executive Committees: *Moderator*: Rev. Dr Heinz J. Held (Federal Republic of Germany). *Vice-moderators*: Dr Sylvia Ross Talbot (USA), Metropolitan Chrysostomos of Myra (Turkey). *General Secretary*: The Rev. Dr Emilio Castro.

*Office*: PO Box 66, 150 route de Ferney, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.

### Further Reading

*Official Reports: The First [... etc.] Assembly* (London, 1948, 1955, 1962, Geneva, 1968, 1975, 1983)

*Directory of Christian Councils*. 1985

*New Delhi to Uppsala 1961-68*. Geneva, 1968

*Uppsala to Nairobi 1968-75*. Geneva, 1975

*Nairobi to Vancouver*. Geneva, 1983

*Official Reports of the Faith and Order Conferences at Lausanne 1927, Edinburgh 1937, Lund 1952, Montreal 1963, Meeting of Faith and Order Commission, Louvain 1971, Accra 1974, Bangalore 1978, Vancouver 1983*

*Official Reports of the Life and Work Conferences at Stockholm 1925 and Oxford 1937; World Conference on Church and Society 1966*

*Minutes of the Central Committee*. Geneva, 1949 to date

Howell, L., *Acting in Faith: The World Council of Churches since 1975*. London, 1982

Hudson, D., *The World Council of Churches in International Affairs*. Leighton Buzzard, 1977

Potter, P., *Life in all its Fullness*. Geneva, 1981

van der Bent, A. J., *What in the World is the World Council of Churches?* Geneva, 1978.—*Handbook of Member Churches of the World Council of Churches*. Geneva, 1985

Visser 't Hooft, W. A., *The Genesis and Formation of the World Council of Churches*. Geneva, 1982

## INTERNATIONAL TRADE UNIONISM

There are three main international trade union confederations (i) the International Confederation of Free Trade Unions (ICFTU) which has in membership most of the national trade union confederations in the Western industrialized countries as well as democratic organizations in Asia, Africa, and Latin America; (ii) the World Federation of Trade Unions (WFTU) which draws its support mainly from Eastern Europe, but which also has affiliates in France and in several developing countries; and (iii) the World Confederation of Labour (WCL) which has affiliates in Western

Europe, Latin America and a small number of African and Asian countries. In addition, national trade unions are frequently members of international trade union federations, set up to protect the interests of working people in particular industries or trades, which are associated with the international confederations. The International Trade Secretariats (ITS) are associated with the ICFTU; Trade Union Internationals (TUI) with the WFTU; and the International Trade Federations (ITF) with the WCL.

Coldrick, A. P. and Jones, P., *International Directory of the Trade Union Movement*. London, 1979

*History.* The international trade union structure in 1988 was shaped mainly by developments since 1945. In that year the WFTU was set up with world-wide membership. Attempts by trade unions in Eastern Europe to turn the WFTU into an organization voicing unquestioning support for the policies of the USSR led most of the affiliates in the Western European countries to break away from the WFTU and to form the ICFTU in 1949.

**EUROPEAN TRADE UNION CONFEDERATION.** In Feb. 1973 the European Trade Union Confederation was formed by trade unionists in 15 Western European countries to deal with questions of interest to European working people arising inside and outside the EC. All the founding organizations were ICFTU affiliates but subsequently they accepted into membership European WCL affiliates, the Irish Congress of Trade Unions and the Italian Communist and Socialist trade union centre (CGIL) and other national organizations. The ETUC Congress meets every 3 years and the Executive Committee 5 times a year. The membership was (June 1988) about 44m. from 36 centres in 21 countries.

*General Secretary:* Mathias Hinterscheid.

*Headquarters:* Rue Montagne aux Herbes Potagères 37, 1000 Brussels.

**INTERNATIONAL CONFEDERATION OF FREE TRADE UNIONS.** The first congress of ICFTU was held in London in Dec. 1949. The constitution as amended provides for co-operation with the United Nations and the International Labour Organization and for regional organizations to promote free trade unionism, especially in less-developed countries.

*Organization.* The Congress meets every 4 years. It elects the Executive Board of 37 members nominated on an area basis for a 4-year period; 1 seat is reserved for a woman nominated by the Women's Committee; the Board meets at least twice a year. Various committees cover policy *vis-à-vis* such problems as those connected with nuclear energy and also the administration of the International Solidarity Fund. There are joint ICFTU-ITS committees for co-ordinating activities.

*Headquarters:* 37-41, rue Montagne aux Herbes Potagères, Brussels 1000, Belgium.

*General Secretary:* John Vanderveken.

Regional organizations exist in America, office in Mexico City; Asia, office in New Delhi; and Africa, office in Sierre Leone.

*Membership.* The ICFTU had July 1988, 141 affiliated organizations in 97 countries, which together represent about 87m. workers. The 10 largest groups were the American Federation of Labor and Congress of Industrial Organizations (12.7m.), the British Trades Union Congress (9.2m.), the Federal German Deutscher Gewerkschaftsbund (7.8m.), the Confederazione Italiana Sindacati Lavoratori (3.1m.), the Swedish Landsorganisationen (2.1m.), the Indian National Trade Union Congress (4.7m.), Japanese Confederation of Labour, Rengo (4.5m.), Polish NSZZ Solidarnosc (5m.), Argentinian Confederacion General de Trabajo (5m.), Indian Hind Mazdoor Sabha (2.1m.).

*Publications* (in 4 languages). *Free Labour World* (fortnightly).

**THE WORLD FEDERATION OF TRADE UNIONS.** The WFTU formally came into existence on 3 Oct. 1945, representing trade-union organizations in more than 50 countries of the world, both Communist and non-Communist, excluding Federal Republic of Germany and Japan, as well as a number of lesser and colonial territories. Representation from the USA was limited to the Congress of Industrial Organizations, as the American Federation of Labor declined to participate.

In Jan. 1949 the British, USA and Netherlands trade unions withdrew from WFTU, which had come under complete Communist control; and by June 1951 all non-Communist trade-unions, and the Yugoslavian Federation, had left WFTU.

*Organization.* The Congress meets every 4 years. In between, the General Council, of 134 members (including deputies), is the governing body, meeting (in theory) at least once a year. The Bureau controls the activities of WFTU between meetings of the General Council; it consists of the President, the General Secretary and members from different continents, the total number being decided at each Congress. The Bureau is elected by the General Council.

*General Secretary:* I. Zakaria (Sudan).

*Membership.* A total membership of 206m. from 90 national centres is claimed. The biggest groups are the Soviet All-Union Central Council of Trade Unions (107m.), the German Democratic Republic Free German Trade Union Federation (8m.), the Czechoslovak Central Council of Trade Unions (6m.), the Romanian General Confederation of Labour (6.4m.), the Hungarian Central Council of Trade Unions (4.5m.) and the French Confederation of Labour (CGT, 1.5m.).

*Publications.* *World Trade Union Movement* (monthly, in 9 languages); *Trade Union Press* (fortnightly, in 6 languages).

**WORLD CONFEDERATION OF LABOUR.** The first congress of the International Federation of Christian Trade Unions (IFCTU), as the WCL was then called, met in 1920; but a large proportion of its 3.4m. members were in Italy and Germany, where affiliated unions were suppressed by the Fascist and Nazi régimes, and in 1940 IFCTU went out of existence. It was reconstituted in 1945, and declined to merge with WFTU and, later, with ICFTU. The policy of IFCTU was based on the papal encyclicals *Rerum novarum* (1891) and *Quadragesimo anno* (1931), but in 1968, when the Federation became the WCL, it was broadened to include other concepts. The WCL now has Protestant, Buddhist and Moslem member confederations as well as its mainly Roman Catholic members.

*Organization.* The WCL is organized on a federative basis which leaves wide discretion to its autonomous constituent unions. Its governing body is the Congress, which meets every 4 years. The Congress appoints (or re-appoints) the Secretary-General at each 4-yearly meeting. The General Council which meets at least once a year, is composed of the members of the Confederal Board (at least 22 members, elected by the Congress) and representatives of national confederations, international trade federations, and trade union organizations where there is no confederation affiliated to the WCL. The Confederal Board is responsible for the general leadership of the WCL, in accordance with the decisions and directives of the Council and Congress. Headquarters: 71 rue Joseph II, Brussels 1040, Belgium.

*Secretary-General:* Jan Kulakowski.

There are regional organizations in Latin America (office in Caracas), Africa (office in Banjul, Gambia) and Asia (office in Manila) There is also a liaison centre in Montreal.

*Membership.* A total membership of 14m. in about 90 countries is claimed. The biggest group is the Confederation of Christian Trade Unions of Belgium (1.1m.).

*Publication.* *Labour Press and Information* (11 each year, in 5 languages).



# ORGANISATION FOR ECONOMIC CO-OPERATION AND DEVELOPMENT (OECD)

*History and Membership.* On 30 Sept. 1961 the Organisation for European Economic Co-operation (OEEC), after a history of 13 years (see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1961, p. 32), was replaced by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development. The change of title marks the Organisation's altered status and functions: With the accession of Canada and USA as full members it ceased to be a purely European body; while at the same time it added development aid to the list of its other activities. The member countries are now Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Denmark, Federal Republic of Germany, Finland, France, Greece, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey, UK and USA. Yugoslavia participates in the Organisation's activities with a special status. The Commission of the European Communities generally takes part in OECD's work.

*Objectives.* To promote economic and social welfare throughout the OECD area by assisting its member governments in the formulation of policies designed to this end and by co-ordinating these policies; and to stimulate and harmonize its members' efforts in favour of developing countries.

*Organs.* The supreme body of the Organisation is the Council composed of one representative for each member country. It meets either at Heads of Delegations level (about once a week) under the Chairmanship of the Secretary-General, or at Ministerial level (usually once a year) under the Chairmanship of a Minister of a country elected annually to assume these functions. Decisions and Recommendations are adopted by mutual agreement of all members of the Council.

The Council is assisted by an Executive Committee composed of 14 members of the Council designated annually by the latter. The major part of the Organisation's work is, however, prepared and carried out in numerous specialized committees, working parties and sub-groups, of which there exist over 200. Thus, the Organisation comprises Committees for Economic Policy; Economic and Development Review; Development Assistance (DAC); North-South Economics Issues; Commodities; Trade; Capital Movements and Invisible Transactions; Financial Markets; Fiscal Affairs; Competition Law and Policy; Consumer Policy; Maritime Transport; International Investment and Multinational Enterprises; Tourism; Energy Policy; Industry; Steel; Scientific and Technological Policy; Information, Computer and Communications Policy; Road Transport Research; Education; Manpower and Social Affairs; Environment; Urban Affairs; Control of Chemicals; Agriculture; Fisheries, etc.

Four autonomous or semi-autonomous bodies also belong to the Organisation: The International Energy Agency (IEA); the Nuclear Energy Agency (NEA); the Development Centre and the Centre for Educational Research and Innovation (CERI). Each one of these bodies has its own governing committee.

The Council, the committees and the other bodies are serviced by an international Secretariat headed by the Secretary-General of the Organisation.

All member countries have established permanent Delegations to OECD, each headed by an Ambassador.

*Chairman of the Council (ministerial):* A minister from the country elected (annually) to assume this function.

*Chairman of the Council (official level):* The Secretary-General.

*Secretary-General:* Jean-Claude Paye (France).

*Deputy Secretaries-General:* R. A. Cornell (USA), Pierre Vinde (Sweden).

*Executive Director of the International Energy Agency:* Helga Stecg (Federal Republic of Germany).

*Headquarters:* 2, rue André Pascal, 75775 Paris Cedex 16, France.

### Further Reading

OECD publishes numerous reports and statistical papers. Regular features include:

*Activities of OECD.* Annual

*News from OECD.* Monthly

*Main Economic Indicators.* Monthly

*The OECD Observer.* Bi-monthly

*The OECD Economic Outlook.* Semi-annual

*OECD/OECD Economic Surveys of Member Countries.*

*OECD Employment Outlook.* Annual

*Geographical Distribution of Financial Flows to Developing Countries.* Annual

*Development Co-operation Report.* Annual

*Tourism Policy and International Tourism in OECD Member Countries.*

*Maritime Transport.* Annual

*Energy Policies and Programmes of the IEA Member Countries.*

## NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO)

Western perceptions of the political situation in Europe following World War II gave rise, in 1947, to 2 major US initiatives – the Truman Doctrine and the Marshall Plan. These policies were designed to increase the ability of Western European countries to resist outside pressure and to assist them in bringing about their economic recovery. By 1948, on the initiative of the Foreign Secretary of the UK Ernest Bevin, 5 Western European nations had also entered into a treaty of mutual assistance in which they pledged themselves to come to each other's aid in the event of armed aggression against them (Brussels Treaty, 17 March 1948). The idea of a single mutual defence system involving North America as well as the European signatories of the Brussels Treaty was put forward by the Canadian Secretary of State for External Affairs in April 1948. It led, *via* the Vandenberg Resolution which enabled the US constitutionally to participate, to the creation of the Atlantic Alliance.

On 4 April 1949 the foreign ministers of Belgium, Canada, Denmark, France, Iceland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, the UK and the USA met in Washington and signed a treaty, the main clauses of which read as follows:

*Article 1.* The parties undertake, as set forth in the Charter of the United Nations, to settle any international disputes in which they may be involved by peaceful means in such a manner that international peace and security and justice are not endangered, and to refrain in their international relations from the threat or use of force in any manner inconsistent with the purposes of the United Nations.

*Article 2.* The parties will contribute toward the further development of peaceful and friendly international relations by strengthening their free institutions, by bringing about a better understanding of the principles upon which these institutions are founded, and by promoting conditions of stability and well-being. They will seek to eliminate conflict in their international economic policies and will encourage economic collaboration between any or all of them.

*Article 3.* In order more effectively to achieve the objectives of this treaty, the parties, separately and jointly by means of continuous and effective self-help and mutual aid, will maintain and develop their individual and collective capacity to resist armed attack.

*Article 4.* The parties will consult together whenever, in the opinion of any of them, the territorial integrity, political independence or security of any of the parties is threatened.

*Article 5.* The parties agree that an armed attack against one or more of them in Europe or North America shall be considered an attack against them all and consequently they agree that, if such an armed attack occurs, each of them, in exercise of the right of individual or collective self-defence recognized by article 51 of the Charter of the United Nations, will assist the party or parties so attacked by taking forthwith, individually and in concert with the other parties, such action as it deems necessary, including the use of armed force, to restore and maintain the security of the North Atlantic area. Any such armed attack and all measures taken as a result thereof shall immediately be reported to the Security Council. Such measures shall be terminated when the Security Council has taken the measures necessary to restore and maintain international peace and security.



*Article 6.* For the purpose of Article 5 an armed attack on one or more of the parties is deemed to include an armed attack (i) on the territory of any of the parties in Europe or North America, on the Algerian Departments of France, on the territory of Turkey or on the islands under the jurisdiction of any of the parties in the North Atlantic area north of the Tropic of Cancer; (ii) on the forces, vessels or aircraft of any of the parties, when in or over these territories or any other area in Europe in which occupation forces of any of the parties were stationed on the date when the treaty entered into force or the Mediterranean Sea or the North Atlantic area north of the Tropic of Cancer.

*Article 8.* Each party declares that none of the international engagements now in force between it and any other of the parties or any third state is in conflict with the provisions of this treaty, and undertakes not to enter into any international engagement in conflict with this treaty.

*Article 10.* The parties may, by unanimous agreement, invite any other European state in a position to further the principles of this treaty and to contribute to the security of the North Atlantic area to accede to this treaty. Any state so invited may become a party to the treaty by depositing its instrument of accession with the government of the United States of America. The government of the United States of America will inform each of the parties of the deposit of each such instrument of accession.

*Article 12.* After the treaty has been in force for 10 years, or at any time thereafter, the parties shall, if any of them so requests, consult together for the purpose of reviewing the treaty, having regard for the factors then affecting peace and security in the North Atlantic area, including the development of universal as well as regional arrangements under the Charter of the United Nations for the maintenance of international peace and security.

*Article 13.* After the treaty has been in force for 20 years, any party may cease to be a party one year after its notice of denunciation has been given to the government of the United States of America, which will inform the governments of the other parties of the deposit of each notice of denunciation.

The treaty came into force on 24 Aug. 1949. Greece and Turkey were admitted as parties to the treaty in 1952, the Federal Republic of Germany in 1955 and Spain in 1982.

NATO is an organization of sovereign states equal in status. Decisions taken are expressions of the collective will of member governments arrived at by common consent.

The North Atlantic Council is composed of representatives of the 16 member countries. At Ministerial Meetings of the Council, member nations are represented by Ministers of Foreign Affairs. These meetings are held twice a year. The Council also meets on occasion at the level of Heads of State and Government. In permanent session, at the level of Ambassadors, the Council meets at least once a week.

The Defence Planning Committee is composed of representatives of all member countries except France. Like the Council, it meets both in permanent session at the level of Ambassadors and twice a year at Ministerial level. At Ministerial Meetings member nations are represented by Defence Ministers.

The Council and Defence Planning Committee are chaired by the Secretary General of NATO at whatever level they meet. Opening sessions of Ministerial Meetings of the Council are presided over by the President, an honorary position held annually by the Foreign Minister of one of the member nations.

Nuclear matters are discussed by the Nuclear Planning Group in which 15 countries now participate. It meets regularly at the level of Permanent Representatives (Ambassadors) and twice a year at the level of Ministers of Defence.

The Permanent Representatives of member countries are supported by the National Delegations located at NATO Headquarters. The Delegations are composed of advisors and officials qualified to represent their countries on the various committees created by the Council. The Committees are supported by the International Staff responsible to the Secretary General.

*Headquarters:* 1110 Brussels, Belgium.

*Secretary-General:* Manfred Wörner (Federal Republic of Germany).

*Flag:* Dark blue with a white compass rose of 4 points in the centre.

The *Military Committee* is responsible for making recommendations to the Council and the Defence Planning Committee on military matters and for supplying guidance to the Allied Commanders. Composed of the Chiefs-of-Staff of all

member countries except France and Iceland (which has no military forces), the Committee is assisted by an International Military Staff. It meets at Chiefs-of-Staff level at least twice a year but remains in permanent session at the level of national military representatives. Liaison between the Military Committee and the French High Command is effected through the French Mission to the Military Committee. The chairman of the Military Committee is elected by the Chiefs-of-Staff for a period of 2–3 years. The present chairman is Gen. Wolfgang Altenburg (Federal Republic of Germany), appointed Oct. 1986.

The area covered by the North Atlantic Treaty is divided among three commands: The Atlantic Ocean Command, the European Command and the Channel Command. Defence plans for the North American area are developed by the Canada-US Regional Planning Group.

The NATO commanders are responsible for the development of defence plans for their respective areas, for the determination of force requirements and for the deployment and exercise of the forces under their command.

The *Allied Command Europe* (ACE) covers the area extending from the North Cape to the Mediterranean and from the Atlantic to the eastern border of Turkey. Responsibilities relating to the defence of Portugal and the UK are included but these come within the purview of more than one NATO Command. The European area, which is subdivided into a number of subordinate commands, is under the Supreme Allied Commander Europe (SACEUR) whose Headquarters, near Mons in Belgium, are known as SHAPE (Supreme Headquarters Allied Powers Europe).

SACEUR has also under his orders the ACE Mobile Force, composed of both land and air force units from different member countries, which can be ready for action at very short notice in any threatened area. The present SACEUR is Gen. John R. Galvin (USA).

Under the Supreme Allied Commander Atlantic (SACLANT) the *Atlantic Command* extends from the North Pole to the Tropic of Cancer and from the coastal waters of North America to those of Europe and Africa, but excludes the Channel and the British Isles. SACLANT, who would have the primary task in wartime of ensuring the security of the sea lanes in the whole Atlantic area, is an operational rather than an administrative commander. Under his direct command is the Standing Naval Force Atlantic (STANAVFORLANT) which is a permanent international squadron of ships drawn from NATO navies which normally operate in the Atlantic.

The present SACLANT, whose Headquarters are in Norfolk (USA), is Admiral Frank B. Kelso II (US), appointed Nov. 1988.

The *Channel Command* covers the English Channel and the southern North Sea. Under the Allied Commander-in-Chief Channel (CINCHAN) its mission is to control and protect merchant shipping in the area, co-operating with SACEUR in the air defence of the Channel. The forces earmarked to the Command in emergency are predominantly naval but include maritime air forces. CINCHAN also has under his command the NATO Standing Naval Force Channel (STANAVFORCHAN) which is a permanent force comprising mine counter-measure ships of different NATO countries. The present CINCHAN, with Headquarters at Northwood (UK), is Vice-Admiral Sir Julian Oswald (UK), appointed May 1987.

The *Canada-US Regional Planning Group*, which covers the North American area, develops and recommends to the Military Committee plans for the defence of this area. It meets alternately in Washington and Ottawa.

### Further Reading

The NATO Information Service publishes documentation, reference material and information brochures including: *The NATO Handbook*; *NATO: Facts and Figures*; *The NATO Review* (periodical); economic and scientific publications.

Cook, D., *The Forging of an Alliance*, London, 1989

De Staercke, A., *Nato's Anxious Birth: The Prophetic Vision of the 1940's*, London, 1985

Godson, J., *Challenges to the Western Alliance*, London, 1986

Goldstein, W., *Reagan's Leadership and the Atlantic Alliance*, New York, 1986

Hanning, H., *NATO—Our Guarantee for Peace*, London, 1986

Henderson, N., *The Birth of NATO*. London, 1982

Kaplan, L. S. and Clawson, R. W., *NATO After Thirty Years*. Wilmington, 1981

Williams, G. and A. Lee, *The European Defence Initiative*. London, 1986

## WESTERN EUROPEAN UNION

On 17 March 1948 a 50-year treaty 'for collaboration in economic, social and cultural matters and for collective self-defence' was signed in Brussels by the Foreign Ministers of the UK, France, the Netherlands, Belgium and Luxembourg. (See THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1954, pp. 32 f.)

On 20 Dec. 1950 the functions of the Western Union defence organization were transferred to the North Atlantic Treaty command, but it was decided that the reorganization of the military machinery should not affect the right of the Western Union Defence Ministers and the Chiefs of Staff to meet as they please to consider matters of mutual concern to the Brussels Treaty powers.

After the breakdown of the European Defence Community on 30 Aug. 1954 a conference was held in London from 28 Sept. to 3 Oct. 1954, attended by Belgium, Canada, France, the Federal Republic of Germany, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, the UK and the USA, at which it was decided to invite the Federal Republic of Germany and Italy to accede to the Brussels Treaty, to end the occupation of Western Germany and to invite the latter to accede to the North Atlantic Treaty; the Federal Republic agreed that it would voluntarily limit its arms production, and provision was made for the setting up of an agency to control the armaments of the 7 Brussels Treaty powers; the UK undertook not to withdraw from the Continent her 4 divisions and the Tactical Air Force assigned to the Supreme Allied Commander against the wishes of a majority, i.e., 4 of the Brussels Treaty powers, except in the event of an acute overseas emergency.

At a Conference of Ministers held in Paris from 20 to 23 Oct. 1954 these decisions were embodied in 4 Protocols modifying the Brussels Treaty which were signed in Paris on 23 Oct. 1954 and came into force on 6 May 1955.

The *Council of WEU* consists of the Foreign Ministers of the 7 powers or their representatives; it is so organized as to be able to exercise its functions continuously. An *Assembly*, composed of representatives of the Brussels Treaty powers to the Consultative Assembly of the Council of Europe, meets twice a year, usually in Paris. An *Agency for the Control of Armaments* and a *Standing Armaments Committee* have been set up in Paris. The social and cultural activities were transferred to the Council of Europe on 1 June 1960.

At a meeting of the Foreign, and Defence, Ministers of Western European Union held in Rome on 26–27 Oct. 1984, the Council adopted the 'Rome Declaration' and a document on the institutional reform of Western European Union. Member Governments support the reactivation of the Organization as a means of strengthening the European contribution to the North Atlantic Alliance and improving defence co-operation among the countries of Western Europe.

On 14 Nov. 1988, Spain and Portugal became members.

The Foreign Affairs and Defence Ministers meet twice a year. They met in Bonn, 22–23 April 1985, in Rome on 14 Nov. 1985, Venice on 29–30 April 1986, Luxembourg on 28 April 1987, The Hague on 26–27 Oct. 1987 and London on 14–15 Nov. 1988.

*Secretariat-General*: 9 Grosvenor Place, London, SW1X 7HL.

*Secretary-General*: Alfred Cahen.

## COUNCIL OF EUROPE

In 1948 the 'Congress of Europe', bringing together at The Hague nearly 1,000 influential Europeans from 26 countries, called for the creation of a united Europe, including a European Assembly. This proposal, examined first by the Ministerial



Council of the Brussels Treaty Organization, then by a conference of ambassadors, was at the origin of the Council of Europe, which is, with its 22 member States, the widest organization bringing together all European democracies. The Statute of the Council was signed at London on 5 May 1949 and came into force 2 months later. The founder members were Belgium, Denmark, France, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, the Netherlands, Norway, Sweden and the UK. Turkey and Greece joined in 1949, Iceland in 1950, the Federal Republic of Germany in 1951 (having been an associate since 1950), Austria in 1956, Cyprus in 1961, Switzerland in 1963, Malta in 1965, Portugal in 1976, Spain in 1977, Liechtenstein in 1978 and San Marino in 1988.

Membership is limited to European States which 'accept the principles of the rule of law and of the enjoyment by all persons within [their] jurisdiction of human rights and fundamental freedoms'. The Statute provides for both withdrawal (Art. 7) and suspension (Arts. 8 and 9). Greece withdrew from the Council in Dec. 1969 and rejoined in Nov. 1974.

*Structure.* Under the Statute two organs were set up: An inter-governmental *Committee of [Foreign] Ministers* with powers of decision and of recommendation to governments, and an inter-parliamentary deliberative body, the *Parliamentary Assembly* (referred to in the Statute as the *Consultative Assembly*)—both of which are served by the Secretariat. In addition, a large number of committees of experts have been established, two of them, the Council for Cultural Co-operation and the Committee on Legal Co-operation, having a measure of autonomy; on municipal matters the Committee of Ministers receives recommendations from the Standing Conference of Local and Regional Authorities of Europe.

The Committee of Ministers meets usually twice a year, their deputies 12 times a year.

The Parliamentary Assembly normally consists of 172 parliamentarians elected or appointed by their national parliaments (Austria 6, Belgium 7, Cyprus 3, Denmark 5, France 18, Federal Republic of Germany 18, Greece 7, Iceland 3, Ireland 4, Italy 18, Liechtenstein 2, Luxembourg 3, Malta 3, Netherlands 7, Norway 5, Portugal 7, San Marino 2, Spain 12, Sweden 6, Switzerland 6, Turkey 12, UK 18); it meets 3 times a year for approximately a week. The work of the Assembly is prepared by parliamentary committees.

The *Joint Committee* acts as an organ of co-ordination and liaison between representatives of the Committee of Ministers and members of the Parliamentary Assembly and gives members an opportunity to exchange views on matters of important European interest.

The European Convention on Human Rights, signed in 1950, set up special machinery to guarantee internationally fundamental rights and freedoms. The *European Commission of Human Rights* investigates alleged violations of the Convention submitted to it either by States or, in most cases, by individuals. Its findings can then be examined by the *European Court on Human Rights* (set up in 1959), whose obligatory jurisdiction has been recognized by 20 States, or by the Committee of Ministers, empowered to take binding decisions by two-thirds majority vote.

In 1956 the Resettlement Fund for National Refugees and Over-Population was created, the Governor of the Fund is responsible to the governments collectively. With 19 member countries, the main purpose of the Fund is to give financial aid, particularly in the spheres of housing, vocational training, regional planning and regional development. Since its foundation, the total amount of loans thus granted comes to over US\$6,000m.

In 1970 the Council set up a European Youth Centre at Strasbourg, where young people can discuss their own approach to international co-operation. More recently, a European Youth Foundation was created, and which provides money to subsidize activities by European Youth Organizations in their own countries.

*Aims and Achievements.* Art. 1 of the Statute states that the Council's aim is 'to achieve a greater unity between its members for the purpose of safeguarding and realising the ideals and principles which are their common heritage and facilitating



their economic and social progress'; 'this aim shall be pursued . . . by discussion of questions of common concern and by agreements and common action'. The only limitation is provided by Art. 1 (*d*), which excludes 'matters relating to national defence'.

Although without legislative powers, the Assembly acts as the power-house of the Council, initiating European action in key areas by making recommendations to the Committee of Ministers. As the widest parliamentary forum in Western Europe, the Assembly also acts as the conscience of the area by voicing its opinions on important current issues. These are embodied in resolutions. The Ministers' rôle is to translate the Assembly's recommendations into action, particularly as regards lowering the barriers between the European countries, harmonizing their legislation or introducing where possible common European laws, abolishing discrimination on grounds of nationality and undertaking certain tasks on a joint European basis.

In May 1976 the first plan of intergovernmental co-operation to be undertaken by the Council of Europe was adopted by the Committee of Ministers. The third one, adopted in Nov. 1986, will run until Dec. 1991. The plan takes account of political developments and progress achieved, and covers 9 key areas: Human rights, the media, social and socio-economic questions, education, culture and sport, youth, public health, heritage and environment, local and regional government, and legal co-operation.

Some 129 Conventions and Agreements have been concluded covering such matters as social security, cultural affairs, conservation of European wild life and natural habitats, protection of archaeological heritage, extradition, medical treatment, equivalence of degrees and diplomas, the protection of television broadcasts, adoption of children and transportation of animals. Treaties in the legal field include the adoption of the European Convention on the Suppression of Terrorism, the European Convention on the Legal Status of Migrant Workers and the Transfer of Sentenced Persons. The Committee of Ministers adopted a European Convention for the protection of individuals with regard to the automatic processing of personal data (1981), a Convention on the compensation of victims of violent crimes (1983), a Convention on spectator violence and misbehaviour at sport events and in particular at football matches (1985), the European Charter of Local Government (1985), and a Convention for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman or Degrading Treatment or Punishment (1987). The European Social Charter of 1965 sets out the social and economic rights which all member governments agree to guarantee to their citizens.

The official languages are English and French.

*Chairman of the Committee of Ministers:* (held in rotation).

*President of the Parliamentary Assembly:* Louis Jung (France).

*President of the European Court on Human Rights:* Rolv Ryssdal (Norway).

*President of the European Commission of Human Rights:* Carl Aage Nørgaard (Denmark).

*Secretary-General:* Marcelino Oreja (Spain).

*Headquarters:* Palais de l'Europe, 67006, Strasbourg, Cedex, France.

*Flag:* Blue with a ring of 12 gold stars in the centre.

### Further Reading

The Information Department, Council of Europe, BP 431, R6-67006 Strasbourg-Cedex.

*European Yearbook.* The Hague, from 1955

*Forum.* Strasbourg, from 1978, 4 times a year

*Yearbook on the Convention on Human Rights.* Strasbourg, from 1958

Cook, C. and Paxton, J., *European Political Facts, 1918-84.* London, 1986

## EUROPEAN COMMUNITIES

In May 1950 Belgium, France, the Federal Republic of Germany, Italy, Luxembourg and the Netherlands started negotiations with the aim of ensuring continual peace by a merging of their essential interests. The negotiations culminated in the

signing in 1951 of the Treaty of Paris creating the European Coal and Steel Community (ECSC). Two more communities with the aims of gradually integrating the economies of the 6 nations and of moving towards closer political unity, the European Economic Community (EEC) and the European Atomic Energy Community (EAEC or Euratom) were created in 1957 by the signing of the Treaties of Rome.

On 30 June 1970 membership negotiations began between the Six and the UK, Denmark, Ireland and Norway. On 22 Jan. 1972 those 4 countries signed a Treaty of Accession, although this was rejected by Norway in a referendum in Nov. 1972. On 1 Jan. 1973 the UK, Denmark and Ireland became full members. Greece joined the Community on 1 Jan. 1981; Spain and Portugal on 1 Jan. 1986, although Community legislation will only apply to them entirely after a transitional period. In Dec. 1985 the Treaties were amended again by the Single Act of Luxembourg. Turkey applied for membership in April 1987.

The institutional arrangements of the Communities provide an independent executive with powers of proposal (the Commission), various consultative bodies, and a decision-making body drawn from the Governments (the Council). Until 1967 the 3 Communities were completely distinct, although they shared some non-decision-making bodies: From that date the executives were merged in the European Commission, and the decision-taking bodies in the Council. The institutions and organs of the Communities are as follows:

The *Commission* consists of 17 members appointed by the member states to serve for 4 years. The Commission acts independently of any country in the interests of the Community as a whole, with as its mandate the implementation and guardianship of the Treaties. In this it has the right of initiative (putting proposals to the Council for action); and execution (once the Council has decided); and can take the other institutions or individual countries before the Court of Justice (see below) should any of these renege upon its responsibilities.

*Flag:* Blue with a ring of 12 gold stars.

*President:* Jacques Delors.

*Address:* 200 rue de la Loi, 1049, Brussels, Belgium.

The *Council of Ministers* consists of foreign ministers from the 12 national governments and represents the national as opposed to the Community interests. It is the body which takes decisions under the Treaties. Since the adoption of the Single Act of Luxembourg, an increasing number of its decisions are taken by majority vote, though some areas (e.g. taxation) are still reserved to unanimity. Specialist Councils (e.g. the *Agriculture Council*) meet to discuss matters related to individual policies. The Single Act also formalizes the meetings of Heads of State and Government in the *European Council*, which meets 3 times a year; and of Foreign Ministers in *Political Co-operation*, to discuss co-operation outside the framework of the Treaties. The Presidency of the Council is held for a 6-month term in the following order: Belgium, Denmark, Federal Republic of Germany, Greece, Spain, France, Ireland, Italy, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Portugal, UK.

*Address:* 170 rue de la Loi, 1048, Brussels.

The *European Parliament* consists of 518 members, directly elected from all Member States. France, the Federal Republic of Germany, Italy and the UK return 81 members each, Spain 60, the Netherlands 25, Belgium, Greece and Portugal 24, Denmark 16, Ireland 15 and Luxembourg 6. Party representation in Parliament was as follows: Socialists, 172; European People's Party (Christian Democratic Group), 119; European Democrats (formerly European Conservatives), 63; Communists and Allies, 46; Liberal, Democratic and Reform Group 41; European Democratic Alliance, 34; the 'Rainbow' group (a group of mixed tendencies), 20; the European Right, 16; Independents, 7. The Parliament has a right to be consulted on a wide range of legislative proposals, and forms one arm of the Community's Budgetary Authority. Since the Single Act it has an increased role in legislation, through the 'concertation' procedure, under which it can reject certain Council drafts in a second reading procedure. Elections were held in June 1989 for a 5-year mandate.

*President:* Lord Plumb.

*Address:* Centre européen du Kirchberg, Luxembourg.



The *Economic and Social Committee* has an advisory role and consists of 189 representatives, employers, trade unions, consumers, etc. The *Consultative Committee*, of 96 members, performs a similar role for the ECSC.

*President:* Alphonse Margot.

*Address:* 2, rue Ravenstein, 1000 Brussels.

The *European Court of Justice* is composed of 13 judges and 6 advocates-general, is responsible for the adjudication of disputes arising out of the application of the treaties, and its findings are enforceable in all member countries. A Chamber of First Instance was created under the Single Act in 1985.

*President:* Lord Mackenzie Stuart.

*Address:* Palais de la Cour de Justice, Kirchberg, Luxembourg.

The *Court of Auditors* was established by a Treaty signed on 22 July 1975 which took effect on 1 June 1977. It consists of 12 members, and replaced the former *Audit Board*. It audits all income and current and past expenditure of the European Communities.

*President:* Marcel Mart.

*Address:* 29 Rue Aldringen, Luxembourg.

*Annual Report of the Court of Auditors*, from 1977

The *European Investment Bank* (EIB) was created by the EEC Treaty to which its statute is annexed. Its governing body is the Board of Governors consisting of ministers designated by member states. Its main task is to contribute to the balanced development of the common market in the interest of the Community by financing projects: Developing less-developed regions; for modernizing or converting undertakings; or developing new activities, or those of common interest to several member states.

*Address:* 100, Boulevard Konrad Adenauer, Plateau du Kirchberg, Luxembourg.

*Annual Report of the European Investment Bank*

*Community Law.* Provisions of the Treaties and secondary legislation may be either directly applicable in Member States or only applicable after Member States have enacted their own implementing legislation. Secondary legislation consists of: Regulations, which are of general application and binding in their entirety and directly applicable in all member states; directives which are binding upon each Member State as to the result to be achieved within a given time, but leave the national authority the choice of form and method of achieving this result; decisions, which are binding in their entirety on their addressees. In addition the Council and Commission can issue recommendations and opinions, which have no binding force.

The Community's Legislative Process starts with a proposal from the Commission (either at the suggestion of its services or in pursuit of its declared political aims) to the Council. The Council generally seeks the views of the European Parliament on the proposal, and the Parliament adopts a formal Opinion, after consideration of the matter by its specialist Committees. The Council may also (and in some cases is obliged to) consult the Economic and Social Committee, which similarly delivers an opinion. When these opinions have been received, the Council will decide. Most decisions are taken on a majority basis, but will take account of reserves expressed by individual member states. The text eventually approved may differ substantially from the original Commission proposal.

*Community Finances.* The general budget of the European Communities for 1988, in ECUm. (1 ECU at Nov. 1988 = UK£0.66 or US\$1.20) was:

<i>Receipts</i>		<i>Expenditure</i>	
Agricultural levies and		Agriculture	30,021
Import duties	11,146	Social	2,772
VAT	24,149	Regional and transport	4,424
Miscellaneous	8,275	Industry, energy, research	1,187
		Development aid	870
	43,820	Administration and	
		miscellaneous	4,546
			43,820

The resources of the Community (the levies and duties mentioned above, and up to a 1.4% VAT charge) have been surrendered to it by Treaty. The Budget is made by the Council and the Parliament acting jointly as the Budgetary Authority. The Parliament has control, within a certain margin, of non-obligatory expenditure (*i.e.*, expenditure where the amount to be spent is not set out in the legislation concerned), and can also reject the Budget. Otherwise, the Council decides. ECSC operations are partly funded by a turnover levy (1988: 0.31%) on the coal and steel industries of the Community, partly from the general budget. The ECSC operating budget for 1988 was ECU432m.

**THE EUROPEAN COAL AND STEEL COMMUNITY.** The ECSC was the first of the 3 Communities, coming into existence on 10 Aug. 1952 following the signature of the Treaty of Paris on 18 April 1951. Its aim was to contribute towards economic expansion, growth of employment and a rising standard of living in Member States, through common action in the coal and steel sector, in a Community open to other nations. Since 1957 it has had the same membership as the other Communities.

*The Common Market for Coal and Steel.* This was achieved for coal, iron ore and scrap in Feb. 1953, for steel in May 1953 and for special steels in Aug. 1954. The Common External Tariff on ECSC products is between 4-8%. Rules for fair competition within the Common Market, based on non-discrimination by nationality and the free movement of goods, have been established. The ECSC also gives readaptation and retraining grants to former workers in these industries, and makes capital grants for new industrial investment in former coal and steel areas.

The Commission has to approve take-overs and mergers of coal or steel undertakings, and has the power in the case of crisis (and with the approval of the Council) to set production quotas and minimum prices by product, with fines for non-observance.

## **THE EUROPEAN ECONOMIC COMMUNITY (EEC) or COMMON MARKET**

Based on the Treaty of Rome of 25 March 1957 the EEC came into being on 1 Jan. 1958 with the same original members as the ECSC. The Treaty guarantees certain rights to the citizens of all Member States (*e.g.*, the outlawing of economic discrimination by nationality, and equal pay for equal work as between men and women) and sets out certain other areas where secondary legislation is to fill in the details. The most important policy areas are as follows:

*Freedom of movement for persons, goods and capital.* Under the Treaty individuals or companies from one Member State may establish themselves in another country (for the purposes of economic activity) or sell goods or services there on the same basis as nationals of that country. With a few exceptions, restrictions on the movement of capital have also been ended. Under the Single Act the Member States bound themselves to achieve the suppression of all barriers to free movement of persons, goods and services by 31 Dec. 1992.

*Customs Union and External Trade Relations.* Goods or Services originating in one Member State have free circulation within the EEC, which implies common arrangements for trade with the rest of the world. Member States can no longer make bilateral trade agreements with third countries: This power has been ceded to the Community. The Customs Union was achieved in July 1968, with the abolition of internal customs tariffs (or equivalents) and quantitative restrictions, and the establishment of the Common External Tariff. Denmark, Ireland and the UK adopted these from July 1977; Greece from Jan. 1986.

Following the 1973 accessions the Community made a series of agreements with the member states of EFTA to form an industrial free trade zone and to start the liberalization of agricultural trade. A new impetus was given by the 1984 Luxembourg agreement, and the EFTA countries are now seeking to co-operate in the achievement of the Internal Market. Association agreements which could lead to accession or customs union have been made with Cyprus, Malta and Turkey;



and commercial, industrial, technical and financial aid agreements with Algeria, Egypt, Israel, Jordan, Lebanon, Morocco, Syria, Tunisia and Yugoslavia. In 1976 Canada signed a framework agreement for co-operation in industrial trade, science and natural resources. Co-operation agreements also exist with a number of Latin American countries and groupings (e.g. the Andean Group) and with Arab and Asian countries; and an economic and commercial agreement has been signed with ASEAN.

In the *Development Aid* sector, the Community has an agreement (the Lomé Convention, originally signed in 1975 but renewed and enlarged in 1979 and 1984) with some 60 African, Caribbean and Pacific countries which removes customs duties without reciprocal arrangements for most of their imports to the Community, and under which ECU8,760m. of aid was granted between 1986–90. An economic and commercial agreement has also been signed with ASEAN.

*The Common Agricultural Policy (CAP).* The objectives set out in the Treaty are to increase agricultural productivity, to ensure a fair standard of living for the agricultural community, to stabilise markets, to assure supplies, and to ensure reasonable consumer prices. In Dec. 1960 the Council laid down the fundamental principles on which the CAP is based: A single market, which calls for common prices, stable currency parities and the harmonising of health and veterinary legislation; Community preference, which protects the single Community market from imports; common financing, through the European Agricultural Guidance and Guarantee Fund (EAGGF), which seeks to improve agriculture through its Guidance section, and to stabilise markets against world price fluctuations through market intervention, with levies and refunds on exports. At present common market organizations cover over 95% of EEC agricultural production. Greece is bringing its agricultural prices into line with the Community over a period of up to 7 years.

Following the disappearance of stable currency parities, artificial currency levels have been applied in the CAP. This factor, together with over-production due to high producer prices, means that the CAP consumes about two-thirds of the Communities' budget.

*The European Monetary System (EMS),* whose immediate objective is to create a zone of monetary stability in Europe by closer monetary co-operation, began operating in March 1979. All Member States (except Greece, the UK, Spain and Portugal 1988) limit fluctuations in the exchange rates of their currencies against a central rate denominated in ECU.

*Competition.* The Competition (anti-trust) law of the Community is based on 2 principles: That businesses should not seek to nullify the creation of the common market by the erection of artificial national (or other) barriers to the free movement of goods; and against the abuse of dominant positions in any market. These two principles have led among other things to the outlawing of prohibitions on exports to other Member States, of price-fixing agreements and of refusal to supply; and to the refusal by the Commission to allow mergers or take-overs by dominant undertakings in specific cases. Increasingly heavy fines are imposed on offenders.

## THE EUROPEAN ATOMIC ENERGY COMMUNITY (EURATOM)

Like the EEC, Euratom came into being on 1 Jan. 1958 following a Treaty signed in Rome on 25 March 1957, and it had the same Member States as the EEC. Its task is to promote common efforts between its members in the development of nuclear energy for peaceful purposes, and for this purpose it has monopoly powers of acquisition of fissile materials for civil purposes. It is in no way concerned with military uses of nuclear power.

The execution of the Treaty now rests with the European Commission, which is advised by the Scientific and Technical Committee (28 members). Major decisions rest with the Council. Euratom has 1 substantial research institute of its own, at Ispra, in Italy; it does other work in co-operation with research institutes in the Member States, or in joint and international undertakings.

A common market for nuclear materials and equipment came into force, and external tariffs were suspended, in Jan. 1959.

*European Community Delegation to the US:* 2111 M Street NW (Suite 707), Washington DC 20037.

*Head of Delegation:* Sir Roy Denman.

*US Delegation to the European Community:* 40 Boulevard du Régent, 1000 Brussels.

*Head of Delegation:* Alfred H. Kingon.

*European Community Delegation to the United Nations:* 1 Dag Hammarskjöld Plaza, 245 East 47th Street, New York NY 10017.

*Head of Delegation:* Jean-Pierre Derisbourg.

### Further Reading

*Official Journal of the European Communities.*—*General Report on the Activities of the European Communities* (annual, from 1967).—*The Agricultural Situation in the Community.* (annual).—*The Social Situation in the Community.* (annual).—*Report on Competition Policy in the European Community.* (annual).—*Basic Statistics of the Community* (annual).—*Bulletin of the European Community* (monthly).—*Register of Current Community Legal Instruments.* 1983

*Europe* (monthly), obtainable from the Information Office of the European Commission, 8 Storey's Gate, London, SW1P 3AT

Arbuthnott, H. and Edwards, G. (eds.) *A Common Man's Guide to the Common Market.* London, 1979

Cook, C. and Francis, M., *The First European Elections.* London, 1979

Drew, J., *Doing Business with the European Community.* London, 1979

Fennell, R., *The Common Agricultural Policy of the European Community.* London, 1979

Fitzmaurice, J., *The European Parliament.* London, 1982

Hallstein, W., *Europe in the Making.* London, 1973

Lodge, J., *The European Community: Bibliographical Excursions.* London, 1983

Mayre, R., *Postwar Europe.* London, 1983

Morris, B., et al *The European Community: A Practical Guide for Business and Government.* London, 1982

Palmer, D. M., *Sources of Information on the European Communities.* London, 1979

Parry, A. and Dinnage, J., *EEC Law.* London, 1982

Paxton, J., *The Developing Common Market.* London, 1976.—*A Dictionary of the European Communities.* 2nd ed. London, 1982

Twitchett, C. C., *Harmonisation in the EEC.* London, 1981

Wallace, W. and Herremann, I. (eds.) *A Community of Twelve?* Bruges, 1978

Walsh, A. E. and Paxton, J., *Competition Policy.* London, 1975

## EUROPEAN FREE TRADE ASSOCIATION (EFTA)

The European Free Trade Association has 6 member countries: Austria, Finland (an associate member from 1961–1985), Iceland, Norway, Sweden and Switzerland. The Stockholm Convention establishing the Association entered into force on 3 May 1960 and Finland became associated on 27 March 1961. Iceland joined EFTA on 1 March 1970 and was immediately granted duty-free entry for industrial goods exported to EFTA countries, while being given 10 years to abolish her own existing protective duties. The UK and Denmark, both founder members, left EFTA on 31 Dec. 1972 to join the EEC as did Portugal, also a founder member, on 31 Dec. 1985.

When the Association was created it had three objectives: To achieve free trade in industrial products between member countries, to assist in the creation of a single market embracing the countries of Western Europe, and to contribute to the expansion of world trade in general.

The first objective was achieved on 31 Dec. 1966, when virtually all inter-EFTA tariffs were removed. This was 3 years earlier than originally planned. Finland removed her remaining EFTA tariffs a year later on 31 Dec. 1967 and Iceland removed her tariffs on 31 Dec. 1979.

The fulfilment of the second aim was secured in 1972. On 22 Jan. 1972 the UK and Denmark signed the Treaty of Accession to the EEC whereby they became members of the enlarged Community from 1 Jan. 1973. On 22 July 1972, 5 other EFTA countries, Austria, Iceland, Portugal, Sweden and Switzerland signed Free Trade Agreements with the enlarged EEC. A similar agreement negotiated with Finland was signed on 5 Oct. 1973. Norway, whose intention of joining the EEC was reversed following a referendum, signed a similar agreement on 14 May 1973. The agreements now also apply to trade between the EFTA countries and the 3 countries which joined the EC at later dates: Greece (1 Jan. 1981) and Spain and Portugal (1 Jan. 1986). The Luxembourg Declaration in April 1944 which followed the final abolition of the abolition of tariffs on EFTA-EC trade in industrial goods set out the guidelines for strengthening and developing EFTA-EC cooperation, with the aim of creating the European Economic Space comprising all the 18 countries in the European free trade system.

The third objective was to contribute to the expansion of world trade. In 1959 trade between the countries now in EFTA amounted to US\$705.6m. and total exports from these countries were US\$6,562m. In 1987 the respective figures were US\$23,492m. and US\$159,999m. More than half EFTA trade is with the EC.

EFTA tariff treatment applies to those industrial products which are of EFTA origin, and these are traded freely between member countries. Each EFTA country remains free, however, to impose its own rates of duty on products entering from outside either EFTA or the EC.

Generally, agricultural products do not come under the provisions for free trade, but bilateral agreements have been negotiated to increase trade in these products.

The operation of the Convention is the responsibility of a Council assisted by a small secretariat. Each EFTA country holds the chairmanship of the Council for 6 months.

*Secretary-General:* Georg Reisch (Austria).

*Headquarters:* 9-11 rue de Varembe, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.

*Convention Establishing the European Free Trade Association*

*EFTA Bulletin* (Four issues a year)

*EFTA What it is, What it does*

*The European Free Trade Association*

## THE WARSAW PACT

On 14 May 1955 the USSR, Albania, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, the German Democratic Republic, Hungary, Poland and Romania signed, in Warsaw, a 20-year treaty of friendship and collaboration, after the USSR annulled treaties of alliance with the UK and France. The treaty was extended for 10 years in July 1975 and renewed for 20 years in April 1985. Since 1985 the Pact's Political Consultative Committee has met annually in member countries in turn. It has established a Committee of Defence Ministers (1969), a Military Council (1969), a Technical Committee (1969) and a Committee of Foreign Ministers.

The main provisions of the treaty are as follows:

*Article 4.* In case of armed aggression in Europe against one or several States party to the pact by a State or group of States, each State member of the pact ... will afford to the State or States which are the object of such aggression immediate assistance ... with all means which appear necessary, including the use of armed force ... These measures will cease as soon as the Security Council takes measures necessary for establishing and preserving international peace and security.

*Article 5.* The contracting Powers agree to set up a joint command of their armed forces to be allotted by agreement between the Powers, at the disposal of this command and used on the basis of jointly established principles. They will also take over agreed measures necessary to strengthen their defences.

*Article 9.* The present treaty is open to other States, irrespective of their social or Government regime, who declare their readiness to abide by the terms of the treaty in order to safeguard peace and security of the peoples.



*Article 11.* In the event of a system of collective security being set up in Europe and a pact to this effect being signed—to which each party to this treaty will direct its efforts—the present treaty will lapse from the day such a collective security treaty comes into force.

It is estimated (1988) that the armed forces of the Warsaw Pact countries total 3,090,000, compared with 2,213,593 NATO forces.

Marshal V. G. Kulikov (appointed Jan. 1977) is C.-in-C. of the united Armed Forces, with headquarters in Moscow.

In 1968 Albania left the Warsaw Pact.

Two Soviet divisions are stationed in Poland, 19 in the German Democratic Republic, 4 in Hungary and 5 in Czechoslovakia.

### Further Reading

Clawson, R. W. and Kaplan, L. S. (eds.) *The Warsaw Pact: Political Purpose and Military Means*. Wilmington, 1982

Holloway, D. and Sharp, J. M. O. (eds.) *The Warsaw Pact: Alliance in Transition*. London, 1984

Lewis, W. J., *The Warsaw Pact: Doctrine and Strategy*. Maidenhead, 1982

Nelson, D. N., *Alliance Behavior in the Warsaw Pact*. Boulder, 1986

## COUNCIL FOR MUTUAL ECONOMIC ASSISTANCE<sup>1</sup>

**Membership.** Founder members were USSR, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Poland and Romania. Later admissions were Albania (1949; ceased participation 1961), German Democratic Republic (1950), Mongolia (1962), Cuba (1972), Vietnam (1978). Yugoslavia takes part in 19 CMEA activities, and Afghanistan, Angola, Ethiopia, Laos, Mozambique, Nicaragua and the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen send observers to some CMEA bodies.

*External relations.* A declaration of mutual recognition was signed with the EEC in June 1988. CMEA exports to EEC were £12,700m. in 1987; imports, £16,000m. There are co-operation agreements with Afghanistan, Angola, Ethiopia, Finland, Iraq, Mexico, Mozambique, Nicaragua and the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen.

**The Charter.** The charter consists of a preamble and 18 articles. Extracts (in the language of the official English version) are as follows:

*Article 1. Aims and Principles:* 1 'The purpose of the Council is to promote, by uniting and co-ordinating the efforts of the member countries, the further extension and improvement of co-operation and the development of socialist economic integration, the planned development of their national economies, the acceleration of economic and technical progress in these countries, higher level of industrialization of the less industrialized countries, a continuous increase in labour productivity, a gradual approximation and equalization of economic development levels and a steady improvement in the wellbeing of the peoples. 2 The Council is based on the principles of the sovereign equality of all member countries.'

*Article 2. Membership* 'open to other countries which subscribe to the purposes and principles of the Council'.

*Article 3. Functions and Powers* to (a) 'organize all-round . . . co-operation of member countries in the most rational use of natural resources and acceleration of the development of their productive forces'; (b) 'foster the improvement of the international socialist division of labour by co-ordinating national economic development plans, and the specialization and co-operation of production in member countries'; (c) to assist in . . . carrying out joint measures for the development of industry and agriculture . . . transport . . . principal capital investments . . . [and] trade'.

*Article 4. Recommendations and Decisions* ' . . . shall be adopted only with the consent of the interested member countries.'

<sup>1</sup> CMEA is the official abbreviation. Other unofficial abbreviations are COMECON and CEMA. The Russian form is *Sovet Ekonomicheskoi Vzaimopomoshchi* (SEV).



**The Structure.** The supreme authority is the annual Council of all prime ministers held in members' capitals in rotation. Decisions must be unanimous.

There is an *Executive Committee* made up of 1 representative from each member state of deputy premier rank. It meets at least once every 3 months.

The administrative organ is the *Secretariat*.

*Headquarters:* Prospekt Kalinina, 56, Moscow, G-205.

*Secretary:* V. V. Sychev (appointed 1983).

In 1988 the Secretariat and its subordinate committees and permanent commissions were reduced in size and reorganized. Decision-making on trade matters has been delegated to enterprise level.

There are 6 *Committees: for Co-operation in Planning; for Scientific and Technical Co-operation; for Co-operation in Engineering; for Co-operation in the Agro-Industrial Complex; for Electronics; for Co-operation in Foreign Economic Relations*. There are also 13 *Permanent Commissions*.

Ther *Standing Conferences* of experts have been abolished.

There are 3 semi-autonomous bodies within CMEA: The Institute of Standardization, The Bureau for the Co-ordination of Ship Freighting and The International Institute of Economic Problems of the World Socialist System.

Also associated with CMEA are:

The **International Bank for Economic Co-operation** was founded in 1963 with a capital of 300m. roubles and started operating on 1 Jan. 1964. It undertakes multi-lateral settlements in 'transferable roubles' (i.e., used for intra-CMEA clearing accounts only) and advances credits to finance trading and other operations. The transferable rouble is a unit of account: Gold content 0.987412 gramme.

The **International Investments Bank** was founded in 1970 and went into operation on 1 Jan. 1971 with a capital of 1,713m. roubles (70% transferable and 30% convertible or in gold).

**Economic integration.** Trading accounts between members have been settled in 'transferable roubles', but a decision to proceed towards currency convertibility was taken at the 1987 Council. At the 1988 Council all members except Romania agreed to the gradual creation of a common market.

### Further Reading

*Charter of the Council for Mutual Economic Assistance*. Moscow, 1980

*Comecon Foreign Trade Data*. London, biennial, from 1979

*Council for Mutual Economic Assistance: Thirty Years*. Moscow, 1979

*Comprehensive Programme for the Further Extension and Improvement of Co-operation and the Development of Socialist Economic Integration by the CMEA-member Countries*. Moscow, 1971 (The official English-language version. This document also frequently referred to as the *Complex Programme*, etc.)

*Ekonomicheskoe Sotrudnichestvo Stran-Chlenov SEV*. Moscow, monthly

*Multilateral Economic Co-operation of Socialist States: A Collection of Documents*. Moscow, 1977

*Statistical Year Book of CMEA Member Countries*. Moscow, annual

*Survey of CMEA Activities*. Moscow, annual

Marrese, M. and Vanous, J., *Soviet Subsidization of Trade with Eastern Europe*. Berkeley, 1983

Nagy, L., *The Socialist Collective Agreement*. Budapest, 1984

Saunders, C. T. (ed.) *Regional Integration in East and West*. London, 1983

Schiavone, G., *The Institutions of Comecon*. London, 1981

Sobell, V., *The Red Market: Industrial Co-operation and Specialisation in Comecon*. Aldershot, 1984

Wallace, W. V. and Clarke, A. R., *Comecon, Trade and the West*. London, 1986

## COLOMBO PLAN

**History:** Founded in 1950 to promote the development of newly independent Asian member countries, the Colombo Plan has grown from its modest beginning

as a group of seven Commonwealth nations into an international organization of 26 countries.

Originally the Plan was conceived for a period of six years. Its life has since been extended from time to time, generally at five-year intervals. The Consultative Committee, the Plan's highest deliberative body, at its meeting in Jakarta in 1980, gave the Plan an indefinite span of life; its need and relevance will henceforth be examined only if considered necessary.

The Plan is multilateral in approach but bilateral in operation: Multilateral in that it takes cognizance of the problems of development of member countries in the Asia and Pacific region and endeavours to deal with them in a co-ordinated way; bilateral because negotiations for assistance are made direct between a donor and a recipient country.

*Aims:* The aims of the Colombo Plan are: (a) to promote interest in and support for the economic and social development in Asia and the Pacific; (b) to keep under review economic and social progress in the region and help accelerate development through co-operative effort; and (c) to facilitate development assistance to and within the region.

*Member Countries:* Afghanistan, Australia, Bangladesh, Bhutan, Burma, Cambodia, Canada, Fiji, India, Indonesia, Iran, Japan, Republic of Korea, Lao People's Democratic Republic, Malaysia, Maldives, Nepal, New Zealand, Pakistan, Papua New Guinea, Philippines, Singapore, Sri Lanka, Thailand, UK and USA.

*Development Assistance:* Colombo Plan aid covers all fields of socio-economic development and amounted to US\$5,015.7m. in 1986. It takes three principal forms:

- (i) *Capital Aid* including grants and loans for national projects mainly from the six developed member countries of the Plan.

The total amount of capital aid and technical co-operation assistance provided by the developed donors under the plan in 1986 was as follows:

	US\$1m.
Japan	2,695.6
USA	1,224.0
UK	433.8
Australia	383.6
Canada	269.9
New Zealand	8.8
Total	5,015.7

- (ii) *Technical Co-operation:* Assistance is provided in the form of services of experts and volunteers, fellowships, and equipment for training and research.

During 1986, 21,135 students and trainees received training, 10,306 experts and 2,488 volunteers were sent out. Total disbursements on technical co-operation by the developed member countries in 1986 amounted to \$746.3m.

- (iii) *Technical Co-operation Among Developing Countries (TCDC):* The promotion of TCDC is a major objective of the Plan. Under TCDC programmes in 1986, 2,874 students and trainees received training and 107 experts were sent out. TCDC expenditures during 1986 amounted to \$20.5m.

*Structure:* There are four organs which give focus to the Plan:

*Consultative Committee:* The Committee is the highest deliberative body of the Plan and consists of Ministers of member Governments who meet once in two years. The Ministerial meeting is preceded by a meeting of senior officials who are directly concerned with the operation of the Plan in various countries.

*Colombo Plan Council:* The Council is also a deliberative body which meets several times a year in Colombo, where most member countries have resident diplomatic missions, to review the economic and social development of the Asia-Pacific region and promote co-operation among member countries.

*Colombo Plan Bureau:* Its functions include servicing the meetings of the Colombo Plan Council and the Consultative Committee, carrying out research, and dis-

semination of statistical and other information relating to activities under the Plan. Since 1973 the Bureau has been operating a Drug Advisory Programme to assist national and regional efforts to eliminate the causes and ameliorate the effects of drug abuse.

*Colombo Plan Staff College:* The Colombo Plan Staff College for Technician Education, established in 1975, transferred from Singapore to the Philippines in 1987. The College helps member countries in developing their systems of technician education, mainly through training courses, seminars and consultancies. It is separately financed by most Colombo Plan member countries and functions under the guidance of its own Governing Board consisting of the heads of member countries' diplomatic missions resident in Singapore.

*Flag:* Dark blue with a central white disc containing the Colombo Plan logo in black.

*Headquarters:* Colombo Plan Bureau, 12 Melbourne Avenue, PO Box 596, Colombo 4, Sri Lanka.

*The Colombo Plan* (Cmd. 8080). HMSO, 1950; reprinted 1952.—*Annual Report*. HMSO 1952 to 1971 followed by Colombo Plan Bureau, Sri Lanka, 1971–86  
*Reports of the Council for Technical Co-operation*. HMSO annually until 1966–67 followed by the Colombo Plan Bureau, Sri Lanka, 1967–68 to date

## ASSOCIATION OF SOUTH EAST ASIAN NATIONS (ASEAN)

*History and Membership.* The Association of South East Asian Nations is a regional organization formed by the governments of Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand through the Bangkok Declaration which was signed by the Foreign Ministers of ASEAN countries on 8 Aug. 1967. Brunei joined in 1984.

*Objectives.* The main objectives are to accelerate economic growth, social progress and cultural development, to promote active collaboration and mutual assistance in matters of common interest, to ensure the stability of the South East Asian region and to maintain close co-operation with existing international and regional organizations with similar aims. Principal projects concern economic co-operation and development, with the intensification of intra-ASEAN trade and trade between the region and the rest of the world; joint research and technological programmes; co-operation in transportation and communications; promotion of tourism and South East Asian studies; including cultural, scientific, educational and administrative exchanges.

*Organs.* The highest authority in ASEAN are the Heads of Government of the Member Countries who meet as and when necessary to give directions to ASEAN. The highest policy-making body is the Meeting of Foreign Ministers, commonly known as the Annual Ministerial Meeting, which convenes in each of the ASEAN member countries on a rotational basis in alphabetical order. The Standing Committee, comprising the Foreign Minister of the country hosting the Ministerial Meeting in that particular year and the accredited ambassadors of the other member countries, carries out the work of the Association in between the Ministerial Meetings and handles the routine matters to ensure continuity and to make decisions based on the guidelines or policies set by the Ministerial Meetings and submit for the consideration of the Foreign Ministers all reports and recommendations of the various ASEAN committees. There are five economic committees under the ASEAN Economic Ministers and three non-economic committees that recommend and draw up programmes for ASEAN co-operation. These committees are responsible for the operation and implementation of ASEAN projects in their respective fields. Each ASEAN capital has an ASEAN National Secretariat. The central secretariat for ASEAN is located in Jakarta, Indonesia, and is headed by the Secretary General, a post that revolves among the member states in alpha-



betical order every 3 years. Bureau directors and other officers of the ASEAN Secretariat remain in office for 3 years.

*Secretary-General:* Roderick Yong (Brunei Darussalam).

### Further Reading

Broinowski, A., *Understanding ASEAN*. London, 1982

Wawn, B., *The Economies of the ASEAN Countries*. London, 1982

Wong, J., *ASEAN Economics in Perspective*. London, 1979

## ORGANIZATION OF AMERICAN STATES

On 14 April 1890 representatives of the American republics, meeting in Washington at the First International Conference of American States, established an 'International Union of American Republics' and, as its central office, a 'Commercial Bureau of American Republics', which later became the Pan American Union. This international organization's object was to foster mutual understanding and co-operation among the nations of the western hemisphere. Since that time, successive inter-American conferences have greatly broadened the scope of work of the organization.

This led to the adoption on 30 April 1948 by the Ninth International Conference of American States, at Bogotá, Colombia, of the Charter of the Organization of American States. This co-ordinated the work of all the former independent official entities in the inter-American system and defined their mutual relationships. The purposes of the OAS are to achieve an order of peace and justice, promote American solidarity, strengthen collaboration among the member states and defend their sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence. The OAS is a regional organization of the United Nations for the maintenance of peace and security.

Membership is on a basis of absolute equality. Each country has one vote in the Council of the Organization and its organs. The member countries were (1980): Antigua and Barbuda, Argentina, Bahamas, Barbados, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Cuba, Commonwealth of Dominica, Dominican Republic, Ecuador, El Salvador, Grenada, Guatemala, Haiti, Honduras, Jamaica, Mexico, Nicaragua, Panama, Paraguay, Peru, Saint Christopher (Kitts) and Nevis, Saint Lucia, Saint Vincent and the Grenadines, Suriname, Trinidad and Tobago, USA, Uruguay, Venezuela.

The OAS has been concerned increasingly in recent years with programmes to promote Latin American economic and social development. The OAS provides specialized training for thousands of Latin Americans each year in a wide variety of development-related fields. It also carries out several missions projects each year in response to requests from member governments.

On 27 Feb. 1967 the Third Special Inter-American Conference in Buenos Aires approved the Protocol of Amendment to the Charter of the OAS, which contained new standards for inter-American co-operation and a number of structural changes in the Organization.

On 14 April 1967 the Declaration of the Presidents of America, signed in Punta del Este, Uruguay, expressed the commitment of the American chiefs of state to promote Latin American economic integration; to join in efforts to increase substantially Latin American foreign-trade earnings; to modernize the living conditions of the rural population and raise agricultural productivity; and to expand programmes in education, science, technology and health.

On 22 Feb. 1968, in the Resolution of Maracay, the Inter-American Cultural Council launched new regional programmes for educational development and for scientific and technological development.

On 27 Feb. 1970, by ratification of more than the mandatory two-thirds of the OAS member states, the Protocol of Buenos Aires, modifying the 1948 Charter, entered into effect.



Under the amended Charter, the OAS accomplishes its purposes by means of:

(a) The *General Assembly*, which meets annually in various countries of the member states.

(b) The *Meeting of Consultation of Ministers of Foreign Affairs*, held to consider problems of an urgent nature and of common interest.

(c) Three councils of equal rank: the *Permanent Council*, which replaces the old OAS Council; the *Inter-American Economic and Social Council*; and the *Inter-American Council for Education, Science and Culture*. Functions are to direct and co-ordinate work in the areas of their competence and render the governments such specialized services as they may request. Each council is composed of 1 representative from each member state, appointed by his government.

(d) The *Inter-American Juridical Committee* which acts as an advisory body to the OAS on juridical matters and promotes the development and codification of international law. Eleven jurists, elected every 4 years by the General Assembly, represent all the American States.

(e) The *Inter-American Commission on Human Rights* which oversees the observance and protection of human rights. Seven members represent all the OAS member states.

(f) The *General Secretariat* is the central and permanent organ of the OAS.

(g) The *Specialized Conferences*, meeting to deal with special technical matters or to develop specific aspects of inter-American co-operation.

(h) The *Specialized Organizations*, inter-governmental organizations established by multilateral agreements to discharge specific functions in their respective fields of action, such as women's affairs, agriculture, child welfare, Indian affairs, geography and history, and health.

*Secretary-General*: João Clemente Baena Soares (Brazil).

*Assistant Secretary-General*: Valerie T. McComie (Barbados).

The Secretary-General and the Assistant Secretary-General are elected by the General Assembly for 5-year terms. The General Assembly approves the annual budget for the Organization, which is financed by quotas contributed by the member governments.

*General Secretariat*: Washington, D.C., 20006, USA.

*Flag*: Light blue with the OAS seal in colour in the centre.

### Further Reading

Publications of the OAS General Secretariat include:

*Charter of the Organization of American States*. 1948.—*As Amended by the Protocol of Buenos Aires in 1967*

*Americas*. Illustrated bi-monthly, from 1949 (Spanish and English edition)

*Organization of American States, a Handbook*. Rev. ed. 1977

*Organization of American States. Directory*. Quarterly, from 1951

*Report on the Tenth Inter-American Conference*. Caracas 1954. 1955

*Inter-American Review of Bibliography*. Quarterly, from 1951

*Annual Report of the Secretary-General*

*Status of Inter-American Treaties and Conventions*. Annual

*The Alliance for Progress: The Charter of Punta del Este*. 1962

*The Americas in the 1980s: An Agenda for the Decade Ahead*. 1982

Publications on Latin America (see also the bibliographical notes appended to each country):

*Revenue, Expenditure and Public Debts of the Latin American Republics*. Division of Financial Information, US Department of Commerce. Annual

*Boundaries of the Latin American Republics: An Annotated List of Documents, 1493–1943*.

Department of State, Office of the Geographer. Washington, 1944

Burgin, M. (ed.) *Handbook of Latin American Studies*. Gainesville, Fla., 1935 ff.

Hirschman, A. O., *Latin American Issues: [11] Essays and Comments*. New York, 1961

Plaza, G., *The Organization of American States: Instrument for Hemispheric Development*. Washington, 1969.—*Latin America Today and Tomorrow*. Washington, 1971

Steward, J. H. (ed.) *Handbook of the South American Indian*. 7 vols. Washington, 1946–59

Thomas, A. V. W. and A. J., *The Organization of American States*. Southern Methodist Univ. Press, 1963

## LATIN AMERICAN ECONOMIC GROUPINGS

*Latin American Integration Association (LAIA) /Asociacion Latinoamericana de Integracion (ALADI).* The Association took over from the Latin American Free Trade Area (LAFTA) on 1 Jan. 1981 which was created in 1960 to further trade between the member states and promote regional integration. Members: Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, Colombia, Ecuador, Mexico, Paraguay, Peru, Uruguay and Venezuela.

*Headquarters:* Cebollati 1461, Casilla 577, Montevideo, Uruguay.

*Sintesis ALADI* (monthly, Spanish)

*Newsletter* (six issues a year, Spanish)

*Central American Common Market (CACM) /Mercado Comun Centroamericana.* In Dec. 1960 El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras and Nicaragua concluded the General Treaty of Central American Economic Integration (*Tratado General de Integracion Economica Centroamericana*) under the auspices of the Organization of Central American States (ODECA) in Managua. Costa Rica acceded in 1962. Members: Costa Rica, El Salvador, Guatemala, Honduras and Nicaragua.

*Headquarters:* 4a Avda 10-25, Zona 14, Apdo 1237, Guatemala City, Guatemala.

*Carta Informativa* (monthly)

*Anuario Estadistica Centroamericano de Comercio Exterior* (annual)

*The Andean Group (Grupo Andino).* On 26 May 1969 an agreement was signed by Bolivia, Chile, Colombia, Ecuador and Peru creating the Andean Group. Venezuela was initially actively involved but did not sign the agreement until 1973. Chile withdrew from the Group in 1977. Members: Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Peru and Venezuela.

*Headquarters:* Avda Paseo de la Republica 3895, Casilla 18-1177, Lima 27, Peru.

*Latin American Economic System/Sistema Economico Latinoamericano (SELA).* SELA was created by 25 Latin American and Caribbean countries (Suriname joined in 1979) meeting in Panama, 17 Oct. 1975. The System provides member countries with permanent institutional machinery for joint consultation, co-ordination, co-operation and promotion in economic and social matters at both intraregional and extraregional levels.

*Headquarters:* Apdo 17035, El Conde, Caracas 1010, Venezuela.

*Latin American Association of Development Financing Institutions/Asociacion Latinoamericana de Instituciones Financieros de Desarrollo (ALIDE).* Founded in 1968 to promote co-operation among regional development financing organizations.

*Headquarters:* Paseo de la Republica 3211, POB 3988, Lima, Peru.

*Latin American Banking Federation/Federacion Latinoamericana de Bancos (FELABAN).* Established to co-ordinate efforts towards a wider and accelerated economic development in Latin American countries.

*Headquarters:* Apdo Aereo 091959, Bogota, DE8, Colombia.

*Organization of the Cooperatives of America/Organización de las Cooperativas de America.* Founded in 1963 to improve social, economic, cultural and moral conditions through the co-operative system.

*Headquarters:* POB 13568-24163, Calle 97A no. 11-31, Oficina 201, Bogota, Colombia.

### Further Reading

- Cooperative America* (six times a year, Spanish)  
*British Bulletin of Publications on Latin America, the Caribbean, Portugal and Spain*.  
 London, from June 1949 (half-yearly)  
*South America, Central America and the Caribbean*, 1988. London, 1987  
*The Latin America and Caribbean Review*, 1988. Saffron Walden, 1987  
 Angarita, C. and Coffey, P., *Europe and the Andean Countries: A Comparison of Economic Policies and Institutions*. London, 1988  
 Brooks, J., (ed.) 1989 *South American Handbook*. Bath (annual)  
 Bulmer-Thomas, V., *The Political Economy of Central America since 1920*. CUP, 1987  
 Duran, E., *European Interests in Latin America*. London, 1985  
 Inter-American Development Bank, *Economic and Social Progress in Latin America: Economic Integration*. Washington, 1984

## CARIBBEAN COMMUNITY (CARICOM)

*Establishment and Functions.* The Treaty establishing the Caribbean Community, including the Caribbean Common Market, and the Agreement establishing the Common External Tariff for the Caribbean Common Market, was signed by the Prime Ministers of Barbados, Guyana, Jamaica and Trinidad and Tobago at Chaguaramas, Trinidad, on 4 July 1973, and entered into force on 1 Aug. 1973. Six less developed countries of CARIFTA signed the Treaty of Chaguaramas on 17 April 1974. They were Belize, Dominica, Grenada, Saint Lucia, St Vincent and Montserrat, and the Treaty came into effect for those countries on 1 May 1974. Antigua acceded to membership on 4 July 1974 and on 26 July the Associated State of St Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla signed the Treaty of Chaguaramas in Kingston, Jamaica, and became a member of the Caribbean Community, Bahamas became a member of the Community but not of the Common Market on 4 July 1983.

The Caribbean Community has 3 areas of activity: (i) economic co-operation through the Caribbean Common Market; (ii) co-ordination of foreign policy; (iii) functional co-operation in areas such as health, education and culture, youth and sports, science and technology, and tax administration.

The Caribbean Common Market provides for the establishment of a Common External Tariff, a common protective policy and the progressive co-ordination of external trade policies; the adoption of a scheme for the harmonization of fiscal incentives to industry; double taxation arrangements among member countries; the co-ordination of economic policies and development planning; and a special regime for the less developed countries of the community.

*Membership:* Antigua and Barbuda, Bahamas, Barbados, Belize, Dominica, Grenada, Guyana, Jamaica, Montserrat, St Kitts-Nevis, Saint Lucia, St Vincent and the Grenadines, and Trinidad and Tobago.

*Structure:* The *Heads of Government Conference* is the principal organ of the Community, and its primary responsibility is to determine the policy of the Community. It is the final authority of the Community and the Common Market, and for the conclusion of treaties and relationships between the Community and international organizations and States. It is responsible for financial arrangements for meeting the expenses of the Community.

The *Common Market Council* is the principal organ of the Common Market and consists of a Minister of Government designated by each member state. Decisions in both the Conference and the Council are in the main taken on the basis of unanimity.

The *Secretariat*, successor to the Commonwealth Caribbean Regional Secretariat, is the principal administrative organ of the Community and of the Common Market. The Secretary-General is appointed by the Conference on the recommendation of the Council for a term not exceeding 5 years and may be reappointed. The



Secretary-General shall act in that capacity in all meetings of the Conference, the Council, and of the institutions of the Community.

Institutions of the Community, established by the Heads of Government Conference, are: Conference of Ministers responsible for Health; Standing Committees of Ministers responsible for Education, Industry, Labour, Foreign Affairs, Finance, Agriculture, Energy, Mines and Natural Resources, Industry, Science and Technology, and Transport, respectively.

*Associate Institutions:* Caribbean Development Bank; Caribbean Examinations Council; Council of Legal Education; University of the West Indies; University of Guyana; Caribbean Meteorological Organization.

*Flag:* Divided horizontally light blue over dark blue; in the centre a white disc bearing the linked letters CC in light blue and dark blue respectively.

*Secretary-General:* Roderick Rainford.

*Deputy Secretary-General:* Louis Wiltshire.

*Headquarters:* Bank of Guyana Building, PO Box 10827, Georgetown, Guyana.

The language of the Community is English.

### Further Reading

*CARICOM Perspective.* (3 times a year). *CARICOM Bibliography* (Bi-annual)

*The Caribbean Community in the 1980's.* Caribbean Community Secretariat, 1982

Axline, A. W., *Caribbean Integration: The Politics of Regionalism.* London and New York, 1979

Cross, M. and Heuman, G., *Labour in the Caribbean.* London, 1988

Parry, J. H., et. al. *A Short History of the West Indies.* Rev. ed. London, 1987

Payne, A. J., *The Politics of the Caribbean Community 1961-79.* Manchester Univ. Press, 1980

## SOUTH PACIFIC FORUM

The South Pacific Forum held its first meeting of Heads of Government in New Zealand in 1971. Membership: Australia, Cook Islands, Fiji, Kiribati, Nauru, New Zealand, Niue, Papua New Guinea, Solomon Islands, Tonga, Tuvalu, Vanuatu and Western Samoa. The Federated States of Micronesia have observer status.

In 1985 the Forum adopted a Treaty for a nuclear-free zone in the Pacific.

## THE LEAGUE OF ARAB STATES

*Origin.* The formation of the League of Arab States in 1945 was largely inspired by the Arab awakening of the 19th century. This movement sought to re-create and reintegrate the Arab community which, though for 400 years a part of the Ottoman Empire, had preserved its identity as a separate national group held together by memories of a common past, a common religion and a common language, as well as by the consciousness of being part of a common cultural heritage. The leaders of the Arab movement in the 19th century and of the Arab revolt against Turkey in the First World War sought to achieve these aims through secession from the Ottoman Empire into a united and independent Arab state comprising all the Arab countries in Asia. However the 1919 peace settlement divided the Arab world in Asia (with the exception of Saudi Arabia and the Yemen) into British and French spheres of influence and established in them a number of separate states and administrations (Syria, Lebanon, Iraq, Jordan and Palestine) under temporary mandatory control.

By 1943, however, 7 of these countries had substantially achieved their independence. An Arab conference therefore met in Alexandria in the autumn of 1944; it formulated the 'Alexandria Protocol', which delineated the outlines of the Arab

League. It was found that neither a unitary state nor a federation could be achieved, but only a league of sovereign states. A covenant, establishing such a league, was signed in Cairo on 22 March 1945 by the representatives of Egypt, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Syria, Lebanon, Jordan and Yemen. There were (1980) 21 members of the League: Algeria, Bahrain, Djibouti, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, Libya, Mauritania, Morocco, Oman, Palestine L.O., Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Somalia, Sudan, Syria, Tunisia, United Arab Emirates, P.D.R. of Yemen and Yemen Arab Republic.

In the Charter's Special Annex on Palestine, the signatories considered the special circumstances of Palestine and decided that until the country can effectively exercise its independence, the Council of the League should take charge in the selection of an Arab representative from Palestine to take part in its work.

Egypt's membership of the League was suspended, in accordance with a resolution passed at the Baghdad summit, in March 1979, at which time it was also agreed that the League secretariat should be moved from Cairo to Tunis. This action was taken in response to the signing of a bilateral peace treaty between Egypt and Israel.

*Organization.* The machinery of the League consists of a Council, a number of Special Committees and a Permanent Secretariat. On the Council each state has one vote. The Council may meet in any of the Arab capitals. Its functions include mediation in any dispute between any of the League states or a League state and a country outside the League. The Council has a Political Committee consisting of the Foreign Ministers of the Arab states. There are also 22 specialized agencies.

The Permanent Secretariat of the League, under a Secretary-General (who enjoys, along with his senior colleagues, full diplomatic status), has its seat in Tunisia.

The League considers itself a regional organization within the framework of the United Nations at which its secretary-general is an observer.

*Secretary-General:* Chedli Klibi (Tunisia).

*Flag:* Dark green with the seal of the Arab League in white in the centre.

*Arab Common Market.* The Arab Common Market came into operation on 1 Jan. 1965. The agreement, reached on 13 Aug. 1964 and open to all the Arab League states, has been signed by Iraq, Jordan, Syria and Egypt. The agreement provides for the abolition of customs duties on agricultural products and natural resources within 5 years, by reducing tariffs at an annual rate of 20%. Customs duties on industrial products are to be reduced by 10% annually. The agreement also provides for the free movement of capital and labour between member countries, the establishment of common external tariffs, the co-ordination of economical development and the framing of a common foreign economic policy.

### Further Reading

*Arab Maritime Data, 1979-80.* London, 1979

Gomaa, A. M., *The Foundation of the League of Arab States.* London, 1977

## ORGANIZATION OF THE PETROLEUM EXPORTING COUNTRIES

*Aims.* The Organization was founded in Baghdad, Iraq, in 1960 with the following founder members, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and Venezuela. The principal aims are unifying the petroleum policies of member countries and determining the best means for safeguarding their interests, individually and collectively; to devise ways and means of ensuring the stabilization of prices in international oil markets with a view to eliminating harmful and unnecessary fluctuations; and to secure a steady income for the producing countries, an efficient, economic and regular supply of petroleum to consuming nations, and a fair return on their capital to those investing in the petroleum industry.

*Membership* (1986). Algeria, Ecuador, Gabon, Indonesia, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Libya, Nigeria, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates and Venezuela. Membership is open to any other country having substantial net exports of crude petroleum, which has fundamentally similar interests to those of member countries.

*OPEC Fund for International Development*: The Fund was established in 1976 to provide financial aid to developing countries, other than OPEC members, on advantageous terms.

*Secretary-General*: Dr Subroto.

*Deputy Secretary-General*: Dr Fadhil J. Al-Chalabi (Iraq).

*Headquarters*: Obere Donaustrasse 93, A-1020 Vienna, Austria.

*Flag*: Light blue with the Opec logo in white in the centre.

### Further Reading

OPEC publications include: *Annual Statistical Bulletin*. *Annual Report*. *OPEC Bulletin* (monthly). *OPEC Review* (quarterly).

Ahrari, M. E., *Opec: The Failing Giant*. Univ. Press of Kentucky, 1986

Al-Chalabi, F., *OPEC and the International Oil Industry: A Changing Structure*. OUP, 1980

El Mallakh, R., *OPEC: Twenty Years and Beyond*. London, 1982

Griffin, J. and Teece, D. J., *OPEC Behaviour and World Oil Prices*. London and Boston, 1982

## ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY

On 25 May 1963 the heads of state or government of 32 African countries, at a conference in Addis Ababa, signed a charter establishing an 'Organization of African Unity' (*Organisation de l'Unité Africaine*).

Its chief objects are the furtherance of African unity and solidarity; the co-ordination of the political, economic, cultural, health, scientific and defence policies and the elimination of colonialism in Africa.

The organs of the Organization are: (1) the assembly of the heads of state and government; (2) the council of ministers; (3) the general secretariat; (4) a commission of mediation, conciliation and arbitration. Arabic, French, Portuguese and English are recognized as working languages.

*Chairman*: Moussa Traore (Mali).

*Secretary-General a.i.*: Ide Oumarou (Niger).

*Headquarters*: Addis Ababa.

*Flag*: Horizontally green, white, green, with the white fimbriated yellow, and the seal of the OAU in the centre.

## DANUBE COMMISSION

The Danube Commission was constituted in 1949 based on the Convention regarding the regime of navigation on the Danube, which was signed in Belgrade on 18 Aug. 1948. The Belgrade Convention reaffirmed that navigation on the Danube from Ulm to the Black Sea, with access to the sea through the Sulina arm and the Sulina Canal, is equally free and open to the nationals, merchant shipping and merchandise of all states as to harbour and navigation fees as well as conditions of merchant navigation.

The Danube Commission is composed of representatives from the countries on the Danube (1 for each of these countries), namely, Austria, Bulgaria, Hungary, Romania, Czechoslovakia, USSR and Yugoslavia. Since 1957, representatives of the Ministry of Transport from the Federal Republic of Germany have attended the meetings of the Commission as guests of the Secretariat.

The functions of the Danube Commission are to check that the provisions of the



Convention are carried out, to establish a uniform buoying system on all the Danube's navigable waterways and to establish the basic regulations for navigation on the river. The Commission co-ordinates the regulations for river, customs and sanitation control as well as the hydrometeorological service and collects statistical data concerning navigation on the Danube.

The Danube Commission enjoys legal status. It has its own seal and flag. The members of the Commission and elected officers enjoy diplomatic immunity. The Commission's official buildings, archives and documents are inviolable. French and Russian are the official languages of the Commission.

Since 1954 the headquarters of the Commission have been in Budapest.

*Flag:* Blue, with a red strip fimbriated white along the bottom edge, and the initials of the Commission within a wreath in the canton—Latin letters on obverse Cyrillic on reverse.

### Further Reading

Danube Commission's publications include: Compilation of Agreements on Danube Navigation; Basic Regulations of Navigation; Recommendations relating to the establishment of the dimensions of the channel and hydrotechnical and other works (1969; 1975; 1979; 1988 Editions); Plan of basic works aiming at obtaining the dimensions of the channel and hydro-technical and other works recommended on the Danube for the period 1980–1990 (1984 ed.); Danubian Bridges; Danubian Ships; Danube Maintenance; Danube Profile; Mileage Charts; Pilots' Charts; Sailing Direction; Hydrological Yearbooks; Hydrological Manuals; Statistical Yearbooks; Statistical Manuals; Recommendations on unified rules for sanitary, veterinary, plant protection and customs control; Rules of Procedure and other organization documents of the Danube Commission; Proceedings of Sessions; General Information on the Danube Commission and on its activity (with the text of the Convention regarding the regime of navigation on the Danube in annex).



PART II

COUNTRIES OF THE  
WORLD

A—Z





# AFGHÁNISTÁN

*Capital:* Kábul  
*Population:* 10–12m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$250 (1985)

## Jamhuria Afghanistan

**HISTORY.** A military *coup* on 17 July 1973 overthrew the monarchy of King Záhir Sháh. The *coup* was led by the King's cousin and brother-in-law Mohammad Daoud who declared a Republic. King Záhir abdicated on 24 Aug. 1973. President Daoud was killed in a military *coup* in April 1978 which led to the establishment of a pro-Soviet government of the People's Democratic Party of Afghánistán (PDPA).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Afghánistán is bounded north by the USSR, east and south by Pakistan and west by Iran.

The area is 251,773 sq. miles (652,090 sq. km). Population, according to the (1979) census, is 15,551,358, of which some 2.5m. are nomadic tribes. Estimate (1988) 10–12m. Approximately 3m. Afghans have sought refuge in Pakistan, over 1m. in Iran and several hundred thousand have been killed since 1979. Infant mortality rates are as high as 200 per 1,000 live births in some areas. The population of Kábul is over 2m. There are no current reliable population figures for other cities and major towns.

Census (1979), Kábul 913,164; Kandahár, 178,409; Herát, 140,323; Mazár-i Sharif, 103,372; Jalálábád, 53,915; Kunduz, 53,251; Baghlan, 39,228; Maimana, 38,251; Pul-i-Khumri, 31,101; Ghazni, 30,425; Charikar, 22,424; Shiberghan, 18,955; Gardez, 9,550; Faizabad, 9,098; Qala-i-nau, 5,340; Uiback, 4,938; Meterlam, 3,987; Cheghcherán, 2,974.

The main ethnic group are the Pathans. Other ethnic groups include the Tajiks, the Hazaras, the Turkomans and the Uzbeks.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is arid, with a big annual range of temperature and very little rain, apart from the period Jan. to April. Winters are very cold, with considerable snowfall, which may last the year round on mountain summits. Kábul. Jan. 27°F (−2.8°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 13" (338 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In Dec. 1979 Soviet troops invaded Afghánistán and Hafizullah Amin was deposed and replaced by Babrak Karmal. The pretext for the airlift of combat troops to Kábul was the Treaty of Friendship signed in Dec. 1978 between USSR and Afghánistán. In May 1986 Karmal was replaced as General Secretary of the PDPA by Dr Sayid Mohammed Najibullah who was elected President in Sept. 1987 at a special session of the Revolutionary Council. In early 1988 there were some 115,000 Soviet troops in Afghánistán but under the Geneva accords signed in April 1988 all USSR troops were withdrawn by 15 Feb. 1989.

A new Constitution was approved in Nov. 1987. The PDPA remains the leading political force in the country. It is governed by a Central Committee (112 full members and 63 alternate members), which elects a Political Bureau, currently of 14 full, and 4 alternate, members to decide policy. At that time, the name of the country was changed from the Democratic Republic of Afghánistán to the Republic of Afghánistán.

A State of Emergency was declared on 19 Feb. 1989 and a Military Council headed by President Najibullah was announced. On 20 Feb. the Prime Minister Dr Mohammed Hasan Sharq resigned when the 20-man Supreme Military Council for the Defence of the Homeland took over full control of economic, political and military policy.

On 23 Feb. 1989 Afghán rebels, meeting in Islamabad, Pakistan, elected Sibghatullah Mojaddidi as President of an interim government in exile.

*National flag:* Three equal horizontal stripes of red, black and green, with the national arms in the canton.

The official languages are Pushtu and Dari (Persian).

Local Government: There are 31 provinces each administered by an appointed governor.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription is currently for a period of 2 years, followed soon after by another period of 2 years for non-graduates.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 3 armoured and 12 infantry divisions, 1 mechanized infantry brigade, 1 artillery brigade, 2 mountain infantry and 1 commando brigades. Equipment includes 50 T-34, 300 T-54/-55 and 100 T-62 battle tanks. Strength was (1989) about 50,000, but most units of the Army, effectively under Soviet control, are well below strength, largely as a result of desertions.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, which is Russian-equipped, has about 180 combat aircraft and 5,000 officers and men. Nominal strength comprises 3 squadrons of Su-7 and Su-20 attack aircraft, 3 squadrons of MiG-21 interceptors (about 40 aircraft), 3 squadrons of MiG-17s and 3 squadrons of MiG-23s, a helicopter attack force of at least 30 Mi-24s, a transport wing with 6-8 An-12s, 12 twin-turboprop An-26s, about 10 piston-engined An-2s, 50 Mi-8 and 10 Mi-4 helicopters and 2 turboprop Il-18s, and Yak-18, Aero L-39 and MiG-15UTI trainers. The main fighter station is Bagram, with facilities for the largest jet transports and bombers. There is a fighter-bomber station at Shindand, a training station at Mazár-i-Sharif and an air academy at Sherpur. Large numbers of SA-2 and SA-3 surface-to-air missiles are operational in Afghánistán. The Soviet Union is withdrawing its aviation units operated in Afghánistán but is leaving aircraft behind for the national Air Force.

**Police and Militia.** In addition to the Army and Air Force there are a number of paramilitary units, including a 50,000-strong gendarmerie, secret police and 'Defence of the Revolution' forces.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Afghánistán is a member of UN and of the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 5-year plan was adopted in 1986 to cover period 1986-1991. Emphasis is on reconstruction of agriculture and irrigation systems as well as exploitation of natural gas resources.

**Budget.** In 1983-84 the budget envisaged expenditure of Afs. 49,941m. and revenue of Afs. 34,120m.

**Currency.** The monetary system is on the silver standard. The unit is the *afgháni*, weighing 10 grammes of silver 0.900 fine, which is subdivided into 100 *puls*. Rates of exchange are fixed (1989) Afs. 99.25 = £1; Afs. 57.67 = US\$1; unofficial rates are: Afs. 345 = £1; Afs. 225 = US\$1.

**Banking.** The Afghán State Bank (*Da Afghánistán Bank*) is the largest of the 3 main banks and also undertakes the functions of a central bank, holding the exclusive right of note issue. Total assets of the 3 main banks were: Da Afghánistán Bânk (1981), Afs. 22,839m.; Pashtany Tejaraty Bânk (1981), Afs. 6,997m.; Bânk-i-Milli (1981), Afs. 3,087m.

**Weights and Measures.** Weights and measures used in Kábul are: Weights: 1 *khurd* = 0.244 lb.; 1 *pao* = 0.974 lb.; 1 *charak* = 3.896 lb.; 1 *sere* = 16 lb.; 1 *kharwâr* = 1,280 lb. or 16 maunds of 80 lb. each. Long measure: 1 yard or *gaz* = 40 in. The metric system is in increasingly common use. Square measures: 1 *jarib* = 60 × 60

kábuli yd or  $\frac{1}{2}$  acre; 1 *kulbá* = 40 jaribs (area in which  $2\frac{1}{2}$  kharwárs of seed can be sown); 1 jarib yd = 29 in. Local weights and measures are in use in the provinces.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Hydro-electric plants have been constructed at Sarobi, Nangarhár, Naghlu, Mahipár, Pul-i-Khumri and Kandahár. Production (1986) 1,390m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Natural gas.** Production (1985) 2,400m. cu. metres. Natural gas is found in northern Afghánistán around Shiberghan and Sar-i-Pol; over 2,000m. cu. metres, about 95% of production, is piped to the USSR annually.

**Minerals.** Mineral resources are scattered and little developed. Coal is mined at Karkar in Pul-i-Khumri, Ishpushta near Doshi, north of Kábul and Dar-i-Suf south of Mazar (total production, 1983–84, 145,300 tonnes). Rich, but as yet unexploited, deposits of iron ore exist in the Hajigak hills about 100 miles west of Kábul; beryllium has been found in the Kunar valley and barite in Bamian province. Other deposits include gold; silver (now unexploited, in the Panjshir valley); lapis lazuli (in the Panjshir valley and Badakhshán); asbestos; mica; sulphur (near Maimana); chrome (in the Logar valley and near Herát); and copper (in the north).

**Agriculture.** Although the greater part of Afghánistán is more or less mountainous and a good deal of the country is too dry and rocky for successful cultivation, there are many fertile plains and valleys, which, with the assistance of irrigation from small rivers or wells, yield very satisfactory crops of fruit, vegetables and cereals. It is estimated that there are 14m. hectares of cultivable land in the country, of which only 6% of the total land was being cultivated in 1982–83 (5.34m. hectares of this being irrigated land). Before 1979 Afghánistán was virtually self-supporting in foodstuffs but in 1988 it was estimated that 33% of the land had been destroyed by war.

The castor-oil plant, madder and the asafœtida plant abound.

Fruit forms a staple food (with bread) of many people throughout the year, both in the fresh and preserved state, and in the latter condition is exported in great quantities. The fat-tailed sheep furnish the principal meat diet, and the grease of the tail is a substitute for butter. Wool and skins provide material for warm apparel and one of the more important articles of export. Persian lambskins (Karakuls) are one of the chief exports.

Production, 1988, in 1,000 tonnes: Wheat, 2,035; barley, 274; maize, 587; rice, 343.

Livestock (1988): Cattle, 2.7m.; horses, donkeys and mules (1986), 1.69m.; sheep, 19m.; goats (1986), 3m.; chickens, 5.9m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** At Kábul there are factories for the manufacture of cotton and woollen textiles, leather, boots, marble-ware, furniture, glass, bicycles, prefabricated houses and plastics. A large machine shop has been constructed and equipped by the USSR, with a capability of manufacturing motor spares. There is a wool factory and there are several cotton-ginning plants; a small cotton factory at Jabal-us-Seráj and a larger one at Pul-i-Khumri; a cotton-seed oil extraction plant at Lashkargah; a cotton textile factory at Gulbahar, and a cotton plant at Balkh.

An ordnance factory manufactures arms and ammunition, boots and clothing, etc. for the Army. There is a beet sugar plant at Baghlan (equipped with Soviet machinery) and a fruit-canning factory in Kandahár.

Industries include cement, coalmining, cotton textiles, small vehicle assembly plants, fruit canning, carpet making, leather tanning, footwear manufacture, sugar manufacture, preparation of hides and skins, and building. Most of these are relatively small and, with the exception of hides and skins, carpets and fruits, do not meet domestic requirements.

**Commerce.** Trade is supervised by the Government through the Ministries of Commerce and Finance and the Da Afghánistán Bánk. The Association of Afghán



Chambers of Commerce works in close liaison with the Ministry of Commerce. The Government monopoly controls the import of petrol and oil, sugar, cigarettes and tobacco, motor vehicles and consignment goods from bilateral trading countries. The principal surface routes for imports to Afghánistán are *via* the Soviet rail system and the border posts at Torghundi and Hairatan; and from Karachi *via* the border post at Torkham.

In the year ended March 1985 Afghán imports totalled US\$964.7m. and exports US\$670.5m. Main export commodities were karakul skins (US\$13.5m.), raw cotton (US\$12.5m.), dried fruit and nuts (US\$141m.), fresh fruit (US\$53.3m.) and natural gas (US\$302.4m.). Main items imported were petroleum products (US\$164m.), textiles (US\$122.5m.). Over 50% of trade is with the USSR.

Total trade between Afghánistán and UK (in £1,000 sterling, British Department of Trade returns):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	20,776	52,061	11,913	11,289	11,501
Exports and re-exports from UK	11,892	13,882	11,444	10,735	12,109

**Tourism.** Owing to internal political instability there has been negligible tourism since 1979.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were in 1978 over 2,812 km of asphalted road and 15,940 km of other roads. The Americans asphalted the Kandahár-Chaman and Kábul-Torkham roads. The Russians constructed a road and tunnel through the Salang pass (over 11,000 ft) which was opened in Sept. 1964 and cut 120 miles off the old road from Kábul to the north; they continued this road to Kunduz and Sherkhan Bandar (Qizil Qala) on the Oxus. In addition, the Americans in 1966 completed the road between Kábul and Kandahár and the Russians constructed a concrete road between Kandahár and Herát. In 1968 the Americans completed an asphalt road from Herát to the Iranian frontier at Islam Qala. With Soviet assistance a metalled road from Pul-i-Khumri to Mazár-i-Sharif was completed in 1969 and Mazár-i-Sharif to Shiberghán in 1971. A Soviet-built road and rail bridge across the Oxus (Amu Darya) River was opened in May 1982. There are about 90,000 cars and commercial vehicles registered in Kábul. All roads, particularly outside the towns, are in a very poor state of repair as a result of the war.

**Railways.** There are no railways in the country, but the Oxus bridge opened in 1982, brought Soviet Railways' track into the country. A 200 km line of 1,520 mm gauge has been authorized from Termez to Pul-i-Khumri.

**Aviation.** On 29 June 1956 Afghánistán signed an agreement with the USA for the development of civil aviation, including the construction of the international airport at Kandahár, comprising a loan of \$5m. and a grant of \$9.56m. Kábul airport has been expanded with Russian assistance. New runways at Kábul and Kandahár airports have been completed. Provincial all-weather airports have been constructed at Herát, Qunduz, Jalálábád and Mazár-i-Sharif.

Bakhtar Afghan Airlines (the domestic national airline) began operations on 8 Feb. 1968 and regularly serves the main internal airfields, which, from 1985 was merged with Ariana Afghan Airlines (the national airline) operating regular services to New Delhi, Prague, Tashkent and Moscow.

**Shipping.** There are practically no navigable rivers in Afghánistán, and timber is the only article of commerce conveyed by water, floated down the Kunar and Kábul rivers from Chitral on rafts. A port has been built at Qizil Qala on the Oxus; barge traffic is increasing on the Oxus. Three river ports on the Amu Darya have been built at Sherkhan Bandar, Tashguzar and Hairatan, linked by road to Kábul.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephones, installed in most of the large towns, numbered 31,200 in 1978. There is telegraphic communication between all the larger towns and with other parts of the world. Kábul Radio broadcasts in Pushtu, Persian, Urdu, English, French, Russian and German. The first TV colour transmissions in Kábul began in mid-1978. An agreement was signed in 1981 under which the

USSR undertook to assist with the development of communications. In 1978 there were 823,000 radio receivers and in 1982 12,000 television receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1983 there were 3 daily newspapers with a circulation of 67,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A Supreme Court was established in June 1978. If no provision exists in the Constitution or in the general laws of the State, the courts follow the Hanafi jurisprudence of Islamic law.

**Religion.** The predominant religion is Islam, mostly of the Sunni sect, though there is a minority of Shiah Moslems.

**Education.** There are elementary schools throughout the country, but secondary schools exist only in Kábul and provincial capitals. Both elementary and secondary education are free. In 1982 there were 1.1m. pupils (35,364 teachers) in primary education and 124,000 pupils (6,170 teachers) in secondary education. There are 3 teacher-training institutions in Kábul and 11 elsewhere; UNESCO is supporting an expansion programme. Technical, art, commercial and medical schools exist for higher education. Kábul University was founded in 1932 and has 9 faculties (medicine, science, agriculture, engineering, law and political science, letters, economics, theology, pharmacology). The University of Nangarhar in Jalálábád was founded in 1963. A Polytechnic in Kábul was completed in 1968. In 1982 there were 13,115 students in higher education, 4,427 in teacher-training schools and 1,230 in technical schools.

**Health.** In 1982 there were 1,215 doctors and 6,875 hospital beds. Two-thirds of the doctors and half the beds were in Kábul.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Afghānistān in Great Britain (31 Prince's Gate, London, SW7 1QQ)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Ahmad Sarwar.

Of Great Britain in Afghānistān (Karte Parwan, Kábul)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* I. W. Mackley, CMG.

Of Afghānistān in the USA (2341 Wyoming Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Alishah Masood.

Of the USA in Afghānistān (Wazir Akbar Khan Mina, Kábul)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* J. D. Glassman.

Of Afghānistān to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Shah Mohd Dost.

## Further Reading

Arnold, A., *Afghanistan: The Soviet Invasion in Perspective*. Oxford and Stanford, 1981.—

*Afghanistan's Two-Party Communism*. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983

Bradsher, H. S., *Afghanistan and the Soviet Union*. Duke Univ. Press, 1983

Chaliand, G., *Rapport sur la résistance afghane*. Paris, 1981.—*Report from Afghanistan*. New York, 1982

Ghaus, A. S., *The Fall of Afghanistan: An Insider's Account*. Oxford, 1988

Gilbertson, G. W., *Pakhto Idiom Dictionary*. 2 vols. London, 1932

Giradet, E. R., *Afghanistan: The Soviet War*. London, 1985

Gregorian, V., *The Emergence of Modern Afghanistan*. Stanford, 1970

Hammond, T. T., *Red Star over Afghanistan*. Boulder and London, 1984

Hanifi, M. J., *Historical and Cultural Dictionary of Afghanistan*. Metuchen, 1976

Hyman, A., *Afghanistan under Soviet Domination 1964–83*. London, 1984

Male, B., *Revolutionary Afghanistan*. London, 1982

Misra, K. P., *Afghanistan in Crisis*. London, 1981

Newell, N. P. and Newell, R. S., *The Struggle for Afghanistan*. Cornell Univ. Press, 1981

Roy, O., *Islam and Resistance in Afghanistan*. CUP, 1986

Sykes, P. M., *A History of Afghanistan*. 2 vols. New York, 1975

# ALBANIA

Capital: Tirana

Population: 3·08m. (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$930 (1986)

## Republika Popullore Socialiste e Shqipërisë

**HISTORY.** For the history of Albania before the Second World War see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK 1985-86, p. 66. During the years 1939-44 the country was overrun by Italians and Germans. The official Albanian date of the liberation is 29 Nov. 1944.

On 10 Nov. 1945 the British, US and USSR Governments recognized a Provisional Government under Gen. Enver Hoxha, on the understanding that it would hold free elections. The elections of 2 Dec. 1945 resulted in a Communist-controlled assembly, which on 11 Jan. 1946 proclaimed Albania a republic.

In 1946 Great Britain and the USA broke off relations with Albania and vetoed its admission to the UN. Albania was finally admitted in 1955.

Because of Albania's Stalinist and pro-Chinese attitudes diplomatic relations with USSR were broken off in 1961. In 1977 Albania terminated its special relationship with China. Since the death of Enver Hoxha on 11 April 1985 Albania has been moving out of its diplomatic isolation.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Albania is bounded north and east by Yugoslavia, south by Greece and west by the Adriatic. The area of the country is 28,748 sq. km (11,101 sq. miles). By the peace treaty Italy restored the island of Sazan (Saseno) to Albania. At the census of 1982 the population was, 2,786,100. Population in 1987, 3·08m (34% urban; density 107 per sq. km). The capital is Tirana (1983 population (in 1,000), 206); other large towns are Durrës (Durrsi, Durazzo) (72), Shkodër (Shkodra, Scutari) (71), Elbasan (70), Vlorë (Vlona, Vlonë, Vlora, Valona) (61), Korçë (Korça, Koritza) (57), Fier (37), Berat (37), Lushnjë (24), Kavajë (23) and Gjirokastër (Argyrocastro) (21).

Ethnic minorities (mainly Greeks) numbered some 200,000 in 1987.

Vital statistics, 1986 (per 1,000): Births, 25·3; deaths, 5·7; marriages, 9; divorces (1982), 0·8; natural increase, 21 per thousand. Growth rate, 1980-85, 2·1%. Life expectancy in 1987 was 72 years.

The country is administratively divided into 26 districts (*rreth*, pl. *rrethët*) (see map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1962. N.B. The district of Ersekë has been renamed Kolonjë). Districts are subdivided into 3,315 *lokaliteteve*.

Population			Population		
(in 1,000)			(in 1,000)		
Districts	Area (sq. km)	(1982)	Districts	Area (sq. km)	(1982)
Berat	1,026	154·0	Lushnjë	712	115·4
Dibrë	1,569	134·8	Mat	1,028	67·0
Durrës	859	217·0	Mirditë	698	45·0
Elbasan	1,466	208·0	Permet	930	36·4
Fier	1,191	212·0	Pogradec	725	62·0
Gjirokastër	1,137	60·3	Pukë	969	45·0
Gramsh	695	38·0	Sarandë	1,097	76·7
Kolonjë	805	22·3	Shkodër	2,528	206·2
Korçë	2,181	199·0	Skrapar	775	42·0
Krujë	607	93·0	Tepelenë	817	45·2
Kukës	1,564	86·0	Tirana	1,222	310·0
Lezhë	479	53·0	Tropojë	1,043	39·8
Librazhd	1,013	63·0	Vlorë	1,609	155·0

Districts are named after their capitals; exceptions: Tropojë, capital—Bajram Curri; Mat—Burrel; Mirditë—Rrëshen; Skrapar—Çorovodë; Dibrë—Peshkopi; Kolonjë—Ersekë.



The Albanian language is divided into two dialects—Gheg, north of the river Shkumbi, and Tosk in the south. Many places therefore have two forms of name: Vlonë (Gheg), Vlorë (Tosk), etc., and many are known also by an Italian name, e.g., Valona. Since 1945 the official language has been based on Tosk.

**CLIMATE.** Mediterranean-type, with rainfall mainly in winter, but thunderstorms are frequent and severe in the great heat of the plains in summer. Winters in the highlands can be severe, with much snow. Tirana. Jan. 44°F (6.8°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 54" (1,353 mm). Shkodër. Jan. 39°F (3.9°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 57" (1,425 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The political structure derived from the Constitution of 14 March 1946 as amended in 1950, 1955, 1960 and 1963. In Dec. 1976 a new Constitution was adopted, by which Albania became a 'Socialist People's Republic'. The supreme legislative body is the single-chamber People's Assembly of 250 deputies, which meets twice a year, and delegates its day-to-day functions to a Presidium. Election to the People's Assembly is by universal suffrage (at 18) every 4 years.

In the elections of 1 Feb. 1987 a 100% turnout of the electorate of 1,830,653 was claimed to vote for the 250 candidates (66 women) on the single list of the Democratic Front. (There was 1 vote against).

The Government consists of a prime minister (Chairman of the Council of Ministers), 4 deputy prime ministers and 18 ministers. Effective rule is exercised by the Albanian Labour (i.e., Communist) Party, founded 8 Nov. 1941, whose governing body is the Politburo.

In 1981 the Party had 122,600 full members and candidates (in 1979 37.5% workers, 29% farmers, 27% women).

*Titular Head of State: Chairman of the Presidium of the People's Assembly:* Ramiz Alia, elected Nov. 1982. In March 1989 the chief Party and Government posts were filled as follows: Full members of the Politburo: *First Secretary of the Central Committee of the Party:* Ramiz Alia, Adil Çarçani (*Prime Minister*), Foto Çami, Prokop Murra (*Minister of Defence*), Hekuran Isai<sup>1</sup> (*Minister of the Interior*), Besnik Bekteshi<sup>1</sup>, Pali Miska, Manush Myftiu<sup>1</sup>, Rita Marko, Muho Asllani, Hajredin Celiku; Simon Stefani, Lenka Çuko. Candidate members: Llambi Gegprifti (*Minister of Industry*), Qirjako Mihal, Pirro Kondi, Kico Mustaqi, Vangjel Cerava<sup>1</sup>.

Ministers not in the Politburo include: *Foreign Affairs:* Reiz Malile. *Foreign Trade:* Shane Korbeci. *Agriculture:* Themie Thomai. *Chairman, State Planning Commission:* Niko Gjyzari. *Finance:* Andrea Nako. *Education:* Skender Gjinush. *Health:* Ahmet Kamberi.

<sup>1</sup> Deputy Prime Minister.

Local Government is carried out by People's Councils at village, *lokalitet*, town and district level. Councillors are elected for 3 years.

*National flag:* Red, with a black double-headed eagle and a red, gold-edged 5-pointed star above it. *Mercantile flag:* Red, black, red (horizontal) with a red yellow-edged star in the centre.

*National anthem:* Rreth Flamurit te per bashkuar (The flag that united us in the struggle).

**DEFENCE.** Albania withdrew from the Warsaw Pact in 1968 in protest against the invasion of Czechoslovakia. The Constitution precludes the stationing of foreign troops in Albania. Conscription is for 2 years.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 tank brigade, 4 infantry brigades and 1 engineer, and 3 artillery regiments. Equipment includes 190 T-34 and T-54 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 31,500 (including 20,000 conscripts) and reserves number 150,000. There are also paramilitary internal security forces (5,000 men) and frontier guards (7,000).



**Navy.** The Navy consists of 3 submarines, 2 fleet minesweepers, 2 patrol vessels, 4 inshore minesweepers, 32 very fast (hydro foil) torpedo boats, 6 fast gunboats, 9 minesweeping boats, 1 degaussing ship, 4 small oilers, 1 diving tender, 1 torpedo recovery craft, 4 tugs and 12 small auxiliaries and service tenders. Navy personnel in 1989 totalled 3,300 officers and ratings, including 400 coastal defence guards. Service for ratings is 3 years. There are naval bases at Durrës and Vlorë.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, controlled by the Army, had (1989) about 7,200 officers and men, and in 1987 operated 80 combat aircraft received before relations with China were broken. The force included 20 Chinese-built F-7s and 30 F-6s, and 3 ground attack squadrons of F-2s and F-4s. Transport and training types include 3 Il-14s, 10 An-2s, Mi-4 helicopters, Yak-18s and MiG-15UTIs.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Albania is a member of UN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For the first six 5-year plans see THE STATESMAN'S Year-BOOK, 1985-86. The seventh 5-year plan (1981-85) was the first to be completed without foreign aid (Economic self-reliance is now stated to be a revolutionary principle). Increases over 1980 (and targets): Social product, 18% (32%); national income, 16% (34%); agriculture, 13% (31%). Targets of the eighth 5-year plan (1986-90): Social production, 30-32%; national income, 34-36%; industry, 29-31%; agriculture, 34-36%.

**Budget.** Budget figures for 1985: Revenue, 9,250m. leks; expenditure, 9,200m. leks (1984 expenditure: Economy 5,062m. leks; social, 2,401m. leks; administration 144m. leks). Defence expenditure (1986) 998m. leks.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *lek* of 100 *qintars*. It replaced the gold franc (*franc ar*) in July 1947. In Aug. 1965 a new *lek* was introduced: 10 old *leks* = 1 new *lek*. There are 5, 10, 20 and 50 *qintar* coins and a 1 *lek* coin; notes are for 1, 3, 5, 10, 25, 50 and 100 *leks*. Exchange rates, March 1989: US\$1 = 5.89 *leks*; £1 = 10.13.

**Banking.** The Albanian State Bank was founded in 1925 with Italian aid. In 1970 savings deposits amounted to 572m. leks. In 1970 the Agricultural Bank was set up as a credit institution for agricultural co-operatives.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Albania is rich in hydro-electric potential. Electric power production in 1985 was 4,700m. kwh., of which 53m. was from thermal plants. 2,000m. kwh. were exported in 1984 to Yugoslavia, Bulgaria, Romania and Greece.

**Oil.** Oil reserves are some 20m. tonnes. Output in 1988: Crude, 3m. tonnes; refined (1973), 1,596,000 tonnes. Refining capacity in 1970 was over 1m. tonnes. Oil is produced chiefly at Qytet Stalin which a pipeline connects to the port of Vlorë. Natural gas is extracted. Reserves: 8,000m. cu. metres; 1985 production, 420m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** The mineral wealth of Albania is considerable and includes coal (not bituminous), oil, chrome and ferro-nickel ores but it is only recently being developed. Chromium ore output was some 1.5m. tonnes in 1986. Reserves are about 20m. tonnes. Salt is extracted near Vlorë and bitumen mined at Selenicë. Production in tonnes (1984): Copper ore, 168,000; nickel ore, 6,000; brown coal, 1.78m.; phosphate, 18,000; nitrogenous fertilizer, 75,000; cement, 1.1m.

**Agriculture.** The country for the greater part is rugged, wild and mountainous, the exceptions being along the Adriatic littoral and the Korçë (Koritza) Basin, which are fertile. In 1983 arable land comprised 709,800 hectares, 55% of which was irrigated.

Land is held by the State (largely forests and non-agricultural), state farms (50 in

1982 averaging 3,000 hectares of arable land) and co-operatives (460 in 1989 covering 75% of farm land). Co-operatives are divided into 'advanced' and 'ordinary'. There is a pension scheme for collective farmers. In 1982 there were 31 machine and tractor stations. Tractors in 1980 numbered 17,300 (in 15-h.p. units).

Production of the main crops in 1986 was (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat, 540; sugar-beet, 320; maize, 410; potatoes, 136; fruit, 198; grapes, 83; oats, 30; sorghum, 36; seed cotton, 16; barley, 36; sunflower seeds, 55; wine, 23; rice, 14; tobacco, 20.

Livestock, 1987: Cattle, 619,000; sheep, 1,238,000; goats, 705,000; pigs, 229,000; horses and mules, 64,000; poultry, 5m.

**Forestry.** 35% of the territory of Albania is forest land, mainly oak, elm, pine and birch. Some 40,000 hectares per annum are afforested or improved.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1984 was 4,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** All industry is nationalized down to the smallest workshop. Output is small, and the principal industries are agricultural product processing, textiles, oil products and cement. Chemical and engineering industries are being built up. The metallurgical combine at Elbasan is being extended.

**Labour.** In 1978, 583,600 persons worked in the socialist sector of the national economy. In 1988, 47% of wage-earners were women.

Minimum wages may not fall below one-third of maximum. Hours of labour: 8-hour day, 6-day week and 12 days yearly paid holiday. Retirement age is 60 for men and 55 for women.

**Commerce.** Yugoslavia is Albania's main trading partner: in Nov. 1985 a 5-year agreement provided for a 20% increase in trade. Trade links with China were re-established in 1983, and a 5-year agreement was signed in Dec. 1985. Trade is conducted with the Comecon countries Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, North Korea, Poland, and Vietnam; and also with Italy, France and India. The establishment of joint companies with, and the acceptance of credits from, capitalist firms is forbidden.

Exports which in 1983 were (estimate) US\$500m. included crude oil, bitumen, chrome, nickel, copper, tobacco, fruit and vegetables.

Total trade between Albania and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,097	212	129	91	2,764
Exports and re-exports from UK	4,481	5,252	2,887	2,565	1,126

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1981, 21,000 km of roads suitable for motor traffic. The mountain districts of the north are still mostly inaccessible for wheeled vehicles, and communications are still by means of pack ponies or donkeys. Motor vehicles in 1970: Cars, 3,500; lorries and buses, 11,000. Road traffic carried 8.6m. passengers in 1970; goods carried, 34m. tonnes. There are no private cars.

**Railways.** Total length, in 1988 was 417 km. They comprise the lines from Durrës to Tirana, Vlorë, Ballsh, Korçë, Shkodër and across the Yugoslav border to Titograd. In 1987 the Milot-Rrëshen section of the Milot-Klos line was completed. Yugoslavia closed the line from Titograd in June 1988.

**Aviation.** There are regular scheduled flights from Tirana (Rinas Airport) to Belgrade, Bucharest, Budapest, East Berlin and Zurich. Olympic Airways operate a weekly flight from Athens to Tirana.

**Shipping.** In 1986 there were 20 ships totalling 56,133 GRT. The main ports are the Enver Hoxha Port of Durrës, Vlorë and Sarandë. A ferry service from Trieste to Durrës opened in Nov. 1983.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of post and telegraph offices (1970), 292; telephones (1963), 10,150. There are 17 broadcasting stations, including Tirana and Korçë. Radio Tirana operates a foreign service in 18 languages. Radio receiving sets (1983), 210,000; television sets, 20,500. Regular television broadcasting began in 1971. There were 7 TV stations in 1984.

**Cinemas and Theatres.** In 1975 there were 410 cinemas (including mobile) and in 1973 27 theatres with an attendance of 1.6m. 14 full-length films were produced in 1980.

**Newspapers and Books.** In 1978 there were 30 newspapers with an annual circulation of 57m. The Party paper is *Zëri i Popullit* (Voice of the People) (daily circulation, 105,000). 1,043 book titles were published in 1981.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice** is administered by People's Courts. Minor crimes are tried by tribunals. Judges of the Supreme Court are elected by the People's Assembly for 4-year terms. The Office of the Procurator-General oversees the administration of justice. In 1983 an Investigator's Office was set up, separate from the Ministry of the Interior and answerable to the People's Assembly.

**Religion.** Albania is constitutionally an atheist state. In 1967 the Government closed all mosques and churches. For details of the situation before 1967 *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1969–70. The population had been 70% Moslem.

**Education.** Primary education is free and compulsory in 8-year schools from 7 to 15 years. Secondary education is available in 12-year (general), technical-professional or lower vocational schools. Periods of productive work and military service are intermingled with full-time education. There were, in 1979–80, 2,541 kindergartens with 83,697 pupils and 3,920 teachers and in 1984–85, 721,057 primary and secondary school children with 35,846 teachers. In 1979–80 there were 116 technical-professional schools with 69,700 pupils and (in 1969–70) 36 institutes of higher education with 36,525 students and 941 teachers, including the Enver Hoxha University of Tirana (founded 1957), a polytechnic, an agricultural college, a medical school, 5 teachers' training colleges and an institute of science. In 1985–86 there were 820 teachers and some 12,000 students at Tirana University. An Albanian Academy was founded in 1972.

**Health.** Medical services are free, though medicines are charged for. In 1986 there were 797 hospitals and 3,307 outpatient clinics. In 1983 there were 4,967 doctors and dentists, and 17,600 hospital beds. In 1986 there were 710 maternity hospitals or hospital sections and 256 dental clinics.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVE

Of Albania to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Bashkim Pitarka.

## Further Reading

- Vjetari Statistikor* (Statistical Yearbook). Tirana, irregular, 1959–72  
*35 vjet Shqipëri socialiste* (statistical handbook). Tirana, 1979  
*History of the Labour Party of Albania 1966–1980*. Tirana, 1981  
*Portrait of Albania*. Tirana, 1982  
 Bertolino, J., *Albanie: la Citadelle de Staline*. Paris, 1979  
 Bland, W. B., *Albania*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988  
 Duro, I. and Hysa, R., *Albanian-English Dictionary*. Tirana, 1981  
 Dwyer, J. D., *Albania*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986  
 Fischer, B. J., *King Zog and the Struggle for Stability in Albania*. Boulder, 1984  
 Halliday, J., (ed.) *The Artful Albanian: The Memoirs of Enver Hoxha*. London, 1986  
 Hetzer, A. and Roman, V. S. *Albania: A Bibliographic Research Survey*. Munich, 1983  
 Hoxha, E., *Speeches, Conversations and Articles, 1969–1970*. Tirana, 1980.—*The Khrushchevites: Memoirs*. Tirana, 1980.—*The Anglo-American Threat to Albania*. Tirana, 1982.—*Selected works*. Tirana, 1982.



- Lendvai, P., *Das einsame Albanien*. Zurich, 1985  
Logoreci, A., *The Albanians: Europe's Forgotten Survivors*. London, 1977  
Marmullaku, R., *Albania and the Albanians*. London, 1975  
Martin, N., *La Forteresse Albanaise: un Communisme National*. Paris, 1979  
Pollo, S. and Arben, P., *The History of Albania*. London, 1981  
Prifti, P. R., *Socialist Albania since 1944*. Cambridge, Mass., 1978  
Russ, W., *Der Entwicklungsweg Albaniens*. Meisenheim-am-Glan, 1979  
Schnytzer, A., *Stalinist Economic Strategy in Practice: The Case of Albania*. OUP, 1982



# ALGERIA

*Capital:* Algiers

*Population:* 23.85m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,570 (1986)

## al-Jumhuriya al-Jazairiya ad-Dimuqratiya ash-Shabiya

**HISTORY.** On 1 Nov. 1954 the National Liberation Front (FLN) went over to open warfare against the French administration and armed forces. For details of history 1958–62 *see* p. 76 THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1982–83. A cease-fire agreement was reached on 18 March 1962, and Gen. de Gaulle declared Algeria independent on 3 July 1962; the Republic was declared on 25 Sept. 1962.

The Government was overthrown by a junta of army officers which, on 19 June 1965, established a Revolutionary Council under Col. Houari Boumédiène.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Algeria is bounded west by Morocco and Western Sahara, south-west by Mauritania and Mali, south-east by Niger, east by Libya and Tunisia, and north by the Mediterranean Sea. It has an area of 2,381,741 sq. km (919,595 sq. miles). Population (census 1987) 22,971,558; estimate (1988) 23.85m.

In 1987, 49% lived in urban areas and 46% were under 15 years of age. 83% speak Arabic, the official language, while 17% are Berber.

The populations (1987 Census) of the 48 *wilayat* were as follows:

Adrar	216,931	Mila	511,047
Ain Defla	536,205	Mostaganem	504,124
Ain Téouchent	271,454	M'Sila	605,578
Annaba (Bône)	453,951	Naâma	112,858
Batna	757,059	Ouahran (Oran)	916,578
al-Bayadh	155,494	Ouargla	286,696
Béchar	183,896	al-Oued	379,512
Béjaia (Bougie)	697,669	Oum al-Bouaghi	402,683
Biskra	429,217	Qacentina (Constantine)	662,330
Bordj Bou Arreridj	429,009	Relizane	545,061
Bouira	525,460	Saida	235,240
al-Boulaida (Blida)	704,462	Setif	997,482
Boumerdes	646,870	Sidi bel-Abbès	444,047
Cheliff (Orléansville)	679,717	Skikda	619,094
Djelfa	490,240	Souk Ahras	298,236
Guelma	353,329	Tamanrasset	94,219
Ghardaia	215,955	at-Tarf	276,836
Illizi	19,698	Tébessa	409,317
al-Jaza'ir (Algiers)	1,687,579	Tiaret	574,786
Jijel	471,319	Tindouf	16,339 <sup>1</sup>
Khenchela	243,733	Tipaza	615,140
Laghouat	215,183	Tissemsilt	227,542
Mascara	562,806	Tizi-Ouzou	931,501
Médéa	650,623	Tlemcen	707,453

<sup>1</sup> Excluding Saharawi refugees (170,000 in 1988) in camps.

The chief towns (1983) are as follows: Algiers, 1,721,607; Oran, 663,504; Constantine, 448,578; Annaba, 348,322; Blida, 191,314; Sétif, 186,978; Sidi-Bel-Abbès, 186,978; Tlemcen, 146,089; Skikda, 141,159; Bejaia, 124,122; Batna, 122,788; al Asnam, 118,996; Tizi-Ouzou, 100,749; Médéa, 84,292.

**CLIMATE.** Coastal areas have a warm temperate climate, with most rain in winter, which is mild, while summers are hot and dry. Inland, conditions become

more arid beyond the Atlas Mountains. Algiers. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 30" (762 mm). Biskra. Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 93°F (33.9°C). Annual rainfall 6" (158 mm). Oran. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 15" (376 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A Constitution was approved by referendum in Feb. 1989. There was a turnout of 83% and 92% of the voters approved of the constitutional reforms which included the beginning of the separation of the *Front de Libération Nationale* (FLN) from the State in that the Prime Minister is to be responsible to the National Assembly rather than the FLN. The ideals of socialism no longer exist in the new Constitution.

The President of the Republic is Head of State, Head of the Armed Forces, and Head of Government. He is elected by universal suffrage for 5-year terms (renewable).

*President of the Republic, General Secretary of the FLN, Minister of Defence:* Bendjedid Chadli (sworn in 9 Feb. 1979, re-elected in 1984 and 1989).

The President appoints a Prime Minister and other Ministers, and presides over meetings of the Council of Ministers.

The Council of Ministers, as in Nov. 1988, consisted of:

*Prime Minister:* Kasdi Merbah.

*Foreign Affairs:* Boualem Bessaïeh. *Interior:* Boubaker Belkaid. *Finance:* Sid Ahmed Ghazali. *Justice:* Boualem Baki. *Agriculture and Fisheries:* Mohamed Rouighi. *Information:* Bachir Rouis. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Boualem Bessaïeh. *Transport:* Hadi Khediri. *Energy, Chemical and Petrochemical Industries:* Sadok Boussena. *Heavy Industry:* Salim Saadi. *Light Industry:* Zitouni Messaoudi. *Hydraulics, Environment and Forests:* (Vacant). *Trade:* Mustefa Ben Amar. *Education:* Mohamed Cherif Kherroubi. *Higher Education:* Rafik Abdelhak Brerhi. *Technical Education:* Mohamed Nabi. *Youth and Sports:* Kamal Bouchama. *Public Health:* Messaoud Zitouni. *Social Security:* Z'hor Hounissi. *Veterans:* Djelloul Bakhti Nemiche. *Public Works:* Ahmed Benfreha. *Town Planning and Housing:* Abderrahmane Belayat. *Religious Affairs:* Abderrahmane Chibane. *Culture and Tourism:* Abdelmadjid Meziane. *Labour:* Mouloud Oumeziane.

Legislative power is held by the National People's Assembly, whose 295 members are elected for a 5-year term by universal suffrage from the single list of the FLN who nominate 3 candidates for each single-member seat.

*National flag:* Vertically green and white, a red crescent and star over all in centre.

The official language is Arabic, French being the principal foreign language. Arabic is spoken by 83.5% of the population and Berber by 16.1%.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription is for a period of 6 months at the age of 19.

**Army.** The Army had a strength of 120,000 in 1989, organized in 3 armoured, 5 mechanized and 12 motorized brigades; 31 infantry, 4 paratroop, 5 artillery, 5 air defence and 4 engineer battalions; and 12 companies of desert troops. Equipment includes 113 T-34, 390 T-54/-55, 300 T-62 and 100 T-72 main battle tanks.

**Navy.** The Navy, largely supplied from the USSR, consists of 4 diesel powered patrol submarines, 3 frigates, 4 missile-armed corvettes, 2 fleet minesweepers, 8 patrol vessels, 11 fast missile boats, 6 fast gunboats, 2 logistic landing ships, 1 landing vessel, 1 diving tender, 2 training craft, 1 torpedo recovery vessel, 1 degaussing ship, 1 survey ship, 12 fishery protection craft and 19 coastguard cutters (16 Italian-built). Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 7,000 officers, cadets and ratings.

There are naval bases at Algiers, Annaba and Mers el Kebir.

**Air Force.** Five MiG-15 jet-fighters were delivered in 1962 as the nucleus of an Algerian Air Force. Since then many more aircraft of Soviet design have followed, and the Air Force had (1989) about 300 combat aircraft and 12,000 personnel. Training and technical assistance have been given by Egypt and the Soviet Union.

There are 8 squadrons of MiG-21s, 3 squadrons of MiG-23 variable-geometry interceptors and fighter-bombers, 3 squadrons of Su-7 and Su-20 variable-geometry attack aircraft, 2 squadrons with MiG-25 fighter and reconnaissance aircraft, more than 40 Mi-24 assault helicopters and gunships, 17 C-130H Hercules, 2 F.27 and 6 An-12 transports, an Il-18 and a variety of smaller transports, a wing of 4 Mi-6, 30 Mi-8, about 30 Mi-4, 5 Puma, 6 Alouette III and 6 Hughes 269 helicopters, and training units equipped with CM.170 Magister armed jet counter-insurgency/trainers (20), 3 Beech Queen Air twin-engine/instrument trainers, MiG-15UTIs and MiG-17s, and two-seat versions of operational types. Surface-to-air missile units have Soviet-built 'Guidelines', 'Goas', 'Gainfuls' and 'Gaskins'.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Algeria is a member of UN, OAU, the Arab League and OPEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fourth development plan (1985-89) envisages expenditure of DA 550,000m. primarily on housing, agriculture and water resources.

**Budget.** The budget (including the development budget of DA 45,400m.) was DA 108,000m. for 1986-87, while revenue was DA 96,000 (23% from oil).

**Currency.** The Algerian currency is the *dinar* (DA). There are in circulation banknotes of DA 5, 10, 50 and 100 and coins of 1, 2, 5, 20 and 50 centimes and DA 1, 5 and 10. In March 1989, £1 = 11.65 DA; US\$1 = 6.77 DA.

**Banking.** The Banque Centrale d'Algérie is the government emission bank. Other banks operating in Algeria are Banque National d'Algérie, Crédit Populaire d'Algérie, Banque Extérieure d'Algérie, Caisse Algérienne de Développement, Banque Algérienne de Développement, Banque de l'Agriculture et du Développement.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 12,410m. kwh. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Two large oilfields went into production in 1957 around Edjélé and Hassi Messaoud and in 1959 at El Gassi. In 1960 about 200 wells were productive. Natural gas was discovered at Djebel Berga in 1954 and at Hassi-R'Mel in 1956. Oil pipelines from Edjélé to Skirra (Tunisia) and from Hassi Messaoud to Béjaia, and a gas pipeline from Hassi Messaoud *via* Hassi-R'Mel to Mostaganem-Oran-Algiers, have been completed. Oil production in 1988, 30m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Production of natural gas in 1985 was 50,000m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Algeria possesses deposits of iron, zinc, lead, mercury, silver, copper and antimony. Kaolin, marble and onyx, salt and coal are also found. Mineral output in 1982 (1,000 tonnes): Iron ore, 3,900; zinc, 12.9; copper, 0.9; lead, 3.6; phosphates (1980), 1,025; barite, 100; clay, 58; sulphur, 10; coal, 7.

**Agriculture.** The greater part of Algeria is of limited value for agricultural purposes. In the northern portion the mountains are generally better adapted to grazing and forestry than agriculture, and a large portion of the native population is quite poor. In spite of the many excellent roads built by the Government, a considerable area of the mountainous region is without adequate means of communication and is accessible only with difficulty. There were an estimated 7.5m. hectares of agricultural land in 1978-79, of which 6.8m. hectares were arable; 200,000 hectares under vine and 31.7m. hectares pastures and brushlands.

The chief crops in 1986 were (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat, 1,445; barley, 1,100; dates, 190; potatoes, 850; oranges, 220; mandarins and tangerines, 105; watermelons, 350; wine, 180; tomatoes, 275; olives, 140; onions, 152; oats, 80.



**Livestock, 1987:** 120,000 horses, 635,000 mules and asses, 1,597,000 cattle, 1.5m. sheep, 3,155,000 goats and 130,000 camels.

**Forestry.** The greater part of the state forests are mere brushwood, but there are very large areas covered with cork-oak trees, Aleppo pine, evergreen oak and cedar. The dwarf-palm is grown on the plains, alfa on the table-land. Timber is cut for firewood, also for industrial purposes, for railway sleepers, telegraph poles, etc., and for bark for tanning. Considerable portions of the forest area are also leased for tillage, or for pasturage for cattle and sheep.

**Fisheries.** There are extensive fisheries for sardines, anchovies, sprats, tunny fish, etc., and also shellfish. Fish taken in 1982 amounted to 64,500 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1981, 10.5m. tonnes of petroleum products were refined. Production of cement (1981) 4.45m. tonnes, crude steel (1982) 842,000 tonnes.

**Labour.** In 1984 the economically active population was estimated at 3.7% of whom 40% were in the agricultural sector.

**Trade Unions.** The *Union Générale des Travailleurs Algériens* had in 1982 about 1m. members in 8 affiliated groups, while the *Union Nationale des Paysans Algériens* had 700,000.

**Commerce.** The foreign trade of Algeria was as follows (in DA 1m.):

	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	49,384	49,782	...	49,491
Exports	60,478	60,722	...	64,564

In 1986 imports came chiefly from France, Federal Republic of Germany and Italy. Exports went mainly to Federal Republic of Germany and France.

Total trade between Algeria and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	274,155	251,462	140,860	172,927	159,748
Exports and re-exports from UK	272,438	176,596	129,624	73,115	86,615

**Tourism.** In 1986, there were 596,000 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were in 1986, 78,410 km of national highway including 45,070 km of concrete or bituminous roads. Motor vehicles in 1980 included 472,483 passenger cars and 283,966 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1986 there were 3,988 km of which 2,786 km is of 1,435mm gauge (298 km electrified) and 1,112 km of 1,055mm gauge railway open for traffic. In 1986 the railways carried 12.5m. tonnes of freight and 46.7m. passengers.

**Aviation.** There are 5 international airports as well as another 65 airfields controlled by government and 135 owned by petroleum companies. Air Algeria serves the main Algerian cities, and an international network. Algeria is also served by Swissair, Royal Air Maroc and United Arab Airline. In 1980 the airports handled 2.84m. passengers and 22,479 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** In 1982, 69.4m. tonnes of goods were handled at Algerian ports.

A state shipping line, *Compagnie Nationale Algérienne de Navigation*, was formed in Jan. 1964.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1980, 1,534 post offices; number of telephones (1985), 769,000. In 1982 *Radiodiffusion Télévision Algérienne* broadcast in Arabic, French and Kabyle (Berber) from 16 radio stations to (1986) 3.3m. radio receivers and from 16 television stations to about (1986) 1.54m. receivers.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 4 daily newspapers, with a combined circulation of 480,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are appeal courts at Algiers, Constantine and Oran; and in the *arrondissements* are 17 courts of first instance. There are also commercial courts and justices of the peace with extensive powers. Criminal justice is organized as in France. The Supreme Court is at the same time Council of State and High Court of Appeal.

**Religion.** The overwhelming part of the population are Sunni Moslems. There are about 150,000 Christians, mainly Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 11,692 state primary schools with 133,250 teachers and 3,625,000 pupils; 1,900 secondary schools with 95,000 teachers and 1,877,000 pupils; and 71 technical and teacher-training colleges with 2,528 teachers and (1982) 12,903 students in technical education and 1,124 teachers and 13,315 students in teacher-training.

In 1981 there were 72,200 students in higher education including universities at Algiers (with 17,086 students), Oran (9,000), Constantine (8,340), Annaba (6,126), Sétif (5,800) and Boumerdes. There are also Universities of Science and Technology at Algiers (11,500) and Oran (5,800) and university centres at Tlemcen, Tizi-Ouzou, Batna, Tiaret, Constantine, Mostaganem, Sidi-Bel-Abbès and Boulaïda.

**Health.** There were in 1986, 49,280 hospital beds; there were 15,361 doctors. There were also 1,422 dispensaries and consulting rooms, 747 health centres and 175 specializing centres for tuberculosis, venereal disease and trachoma in 1980.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Algeria in Great Britain (54 Holland Park, London, W11 3RS)

*Ambassador:* H. B. Azzout (accredited 18 Oct. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Algeria (Résidence Cassiopée, 7 Chemin des Glycines, Algiers)

*Ambassador:* P. H. C. Evers, CMG, LVO.

Of Algeria in the USA (2118 Kalorama Rd., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Mohamed Sahnoun.

Of the USA in Algeria (4 Chemin Cheich Bachir Brahimi, Algiers)

*Ambassador:* L. Craig Johnstone.

Of Algeria to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Hocine Djoudi.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Service de Statistique Générale publishes the annual *Statistique Générale de l'Algérie, Documents statistiques sur le commerce de l'Algérie* (from 1902).

Ageron, C.-R., *A History of Modern Algeria*. London, 1988

Bennoune, M., *The Making of Contemporary Algeria, 1830–1987*. CUP, 1988

Horne, A., *A Savage War of Peace: Algeria 1954–1962*. London, 1977

Knapp, W., *North West Africa: A Political and Economic Survey*. OUP, 1977

Lawless, R. I., *Algeria*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981

# ANDORRA

Capital: Andorre-la-Vieille

Population: 51,400 (1988)

## Principat d'Andorra

**HISTORY.** The political status of Andorra was regulated by the *Paréage* of 1278 which placed Andorra under the joint suzerainty of the Comte de Foix and of the Bishop of Urgel. The rights vested in the house of Foix passed by marriage to that of Bearn and, on the accession of Henri IV, to the French crown.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The co-principality of Andorra is situated in the eastern Pyrenees on the French-Spanish border. The country consists of gorges, narrow valleys and defiles, surrounded by high mountain peaks varying between 1,880 and 3,000 metres. Its maximum length is 30 km and its width 20 km; it has an area of 468 sq. km (181 sq. miles) and a population (census, 1986) of 46,976 (65% urban); estimate (1988) 51,400, scattered in 7 villages. The chief towns (1986) are Andorre-la-Vieille, the capital (15,639) and its suburb Les Escaldes (11,955).

Catalan is the official language and was spoken by 30% of the population in 1986 but 59% spoke Spanish and 6% French.

**CLIMATE.** Les Escaldes. Jan. 36°F (2.3°C), July 67°F (19.3°C). Annual rainfall 32" (808 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Sovereignty is exercised jointly by the President of the French Republic and the Bishop of Urgel. The co-princes are represented in Andorra by the '*Viguier français*' and the '*Viguier Episcopal*'. Each co-prince has set up a Permanent Delegation for Andorran affairs; the Prefect of the Eastern Pyrenees is the French Permanent Delegate.

The valleys pay every second year a due of 960 francs to France and 460 pesetas to the bishop.

A 'General Council of the Valleys' submits motions and proposals to the Permanent Delegations. Its 28 members are elected for 4 years; half of the council is renewed every 2 years. The council nominates a First Syndic (*Syndic Procureur Général*) and a Second Syndic from outside its members.

In Jan. 1982 an Executive Council was appointed, following elections held in Dec. 1981, and legislative and executive powers were separated.

*First Syndic:* Francesc Cerqueda-Pascuet.

*Head of Government:* Josef Pintat Solans (from 3 Jan. 1986).

*Finance:* Bonaventura Riberaigua Miquel. *Education and Culture:* Roc Rossell Dolcet. *Tourism and Sports:* Josep Miño Guitart. *Public Works:* Merce Sansa Reñe. *Agriculture, Commerce and Industry:* Luis Molne Armengol. *Labour and Social Welfare:* Maestre Campderros.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of blue, yellow, red, with the arms of Andorra in the centre.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1986 the budget balanced at 6,655m. pesetas.

**Currency.** French and Spanish currency are both in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 140m. kwh. Andorra imported another 200m. kwh from Spain.



**Agriculture.** In 1981, 472 tonnes of potatoes and 264 tonnes of tobacco were produced.

Livestock (1982): 9,000 sheep, 1,115 cattle, 217 horses.

**TRADE.** In 1986, imports amounted to 74,313m. pesetas (42% from Spain and 27% from France) and exports to 2,325m. pesetas (54% to France and 33% to Spain).

Total trade between Andorra and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	40	200	46
Exports and re-exports from UK	13,174	10,976	10,780

**Tourism.** Tourism is the main industry, and over 6m. people visited Andorra in 1982.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 220 km of roads (120 km paved). A good road connects the Spanish and French frontiers by way of Sant Julià, Andorre-la-Vieille, les Escaldes, Encamp, Canillo and Soldeu; it crosses the Col d'Envalira (2,400 metres). Another road connects Andorre-la-Vieille with La Massana and Ordino. Motor vehicles (1983) 24,789.

**Aviation.** The nearest airports are at Seo de Urgel, Barcelona and Perpignan.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1982) 17,719. Number of receivers (1986), radio, 8,000; TV, 4,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Judicial power is exercised in civil matters in the first instance, according to the plaintiff's choice, by either the *Bayle Français* or the *Bayle Episcopale*, who are nominated by the respective co-princes. The judge of appeal is nominated alternately for 5 years by each co-prince; the third instance (*Tercera Sala*) is either the supreme court of Andorra at Perpignan or the supreme court of the Bishop at Urgel.

Criminal justice is administered by the *Corts* consisting of the 2 Viguiers, the judge of appeal, 2 *rahonadors* elected by the general council of the valleys, a general attorney and an attorney nominated for 5 years alternatively by each of the co-princes. The accused may be assisted by a barrister.

**Religion.** The prevailing religious denomination is Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1986-87 there were 1,866 pupils at infant schools, 3,458 at primary schools, 3,271 at secondary schools, 230 at technical schools and 46 at special schools.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 112 doctors and 113 hospital beds.

## Further Reading

Brutails, *La Coutume d'Andorre*. Paris, 1904

Corts Peyret, J., *Geografía e Historia de Andorra*. Barcelona, 1945

Llobet, S., *El medio y la vida en Andorra*. Barcelona, 1947

Riberaygua-Argelich, B., *Les Valls d'Andorra*. Barcelona, 1946

# ANGOLA

*Capital:* Luanda

*Population:* 9.39m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$500 (1985)

## República Popular de Angola

**HISTORY.** The first Europeans to arrive in Angola were the Portuguese in 1482, and the first settlers arrived there in 1491. Luanda was founded in 1575. Apart from a brief period of Dutch occupation from 1641 to 1648, Angola remained a Portuguese colony until 11 June 1951, when it became an Overseas Province of Portugal. On 11 Nov. 1975 Angola became fully independent as the People's Republic of Angola.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Angola is bounded by Congo on the north, Zaïre on the north and north-east, Zambia on the east, South West Africa/Namibia on the south and the Atlantic ocean on the west. The area is 1,246,700 sq. km (481,351 sq. miles) including the 7,107 sq. km province of Cabinda, an enclave of territory separated by 30 km of Zaïre. The population at census, 1970, was 5,646,166, of whom 14% urban. Estimate (1988) 9,387,000, including 114,000 in Cabinda. Urban population (1986) 30% of whom 38% speak Umbundu, 27% Kimbundu, 13% Lunda and 11% Kikongo. Portuguese remains the official language. There were (1986) about 27,000 Cubans and 30,000 Europeans (mostly Portuguese) in Angola. Refugees living in Angola totalled 90,458 (1988) of whom 69,000 were Namibians.

The most important towns (with 1970 populations) are Luanda, the capital (480,613; 1988, 1.2m.), Huambo (61,885), Lobito (59,258), Benguela (40,996), Lubango (31,674; 1984, 105,000), Malange (31,559) and Namibe (formerly Moçamedes, 23,145; 1981, 100,000).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with low rainfall in the west but increasing inland. Temperatures are constant over the year and most rain falls in March and April. Luanda. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 13" (323 mm). Lobito. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 68°F (20°C). Annual rainfall 14" (353 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution adopted at independence, the sole legal party is the *Movimento Popular de Libertação de Angola – Partido do Trabalho*. The supreme organ of state is the unicameral National People's Assembly, whose members were first elected in Aug. 1980 for a 3-year term. In 1987 the Assembly had 206 members. There is an executive President elected for renewable terms of 5 years, who appoints a Council of Ministers to assist him.

Substantial parts of the country are, however, under the control of the anti-government forces of the *União Nacional para a Independência Total de Angola* (UNITA).

The Council of Ministers in June 1988 was as follows:

*President:* José Eduardo dos Santos (re-elected 9 Dec. 1985).

*Ministers of State:* Lieut.-Col. Pedro de Casto Van-Dúnem (Loy) *Productive Sphere, Petroleum and Energy*, Kundi Paihama (*Inspection and Control, State Security*).

*Planning:* António Henriques da Silva. *Defence:* Col.-Gen. Pedro Maria Tonha (Pedalé). *External Relations:* Afonso Van-Dúnem (Mbinda). *Justice:* Fernando José França Van-Dúnem. *Education:* Augusto Lopes Teixeira (Tutu). *Health:* António José Ferreira Neto. *Finance:* Augusto Teixeira de Matos. *Foreign Trade:* Domingo das Chagas Simoes Rangel. *Internal Trade:* Joaquim Guerreiro Dias.

*Industry:* Henrique de Carvalho dos Santos (Onambwe). *Transport and Communications:* Carlos António Fernandes. *Labour and Social Security:* Diogo Jorge de Jesus. *Agriculture:* Fernando Faustino Muteka. *Interior:* Lieut.-Gen. Manuel Alexandre Rodrigues (Kito). *Construction:* João Henriques Garcia. *Fisheries:* Domingos Ramos da Cruz.

*Flag:* Horizontally red over black, with a star and an arc of cogwheel crossed by a machete, all yellow over all in the centre.

*Local government:* Angola is divided into 18 provinces divided into 139 districts – (Cabinda, Zaïre, Uíge, Luanda, Cuanza Norte, Cuanza Sul, Malange, Lunda Norte, Lunda Sul, Benguela, Huambo, Bié, Moxico, Cuando-Cubango, Namibe, Huíla, Cunene and Bengo) each under a Provincial Commissioner, appointed by the President and an elected legislative of from 55 to 85 members.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription is for a period of 2 years.

**Army.** The Army has 70 brigades, each with infantry, tank, armoured personnel carriers, artillery and anti-aircraft units; and 10 SAM batteries. Total strength (1989) 91,500. Equipment includes Soviet T-34, T-54/55, T-62 and PT-76 tanks.

**Navy.** Twenty Portuguese naval craft were transferred on independence in 1975 and 9 vessels were acquired from the Soviet Navy in 1977-79, when 8 merchant ships were taken over from local trade for naval use. There are 6 fast missile boats, 5 fast torpedo boats, 4 patrol craft, 9 coastal patrol boats, 9 landing craft, 1 survey ship and 10 auxiliary vessels. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 1,500.

**Air Force.** The Angolan People's Air Force (FAPA) was formed in 1976. The combat force has been expanded since 1983 with Soviet assistance. It included (1988) 70 MiG-21, 50 MiG-23 and 30 Su-22 fighters, plus 25 Mi-24 and 6 Gazelle gunships. (The MiG-17 is being withdrawn from service.) There are 10 An-2, 20 An-26, 12 Islander, 4 Turbo-Porter, 8 Aviocar and 2 F.27 transports, 2 Embraer EMB-111 maritime surveillance aircraft, 4 PC-9, 12 PC-7 and 3 MiG-15UTI trainers, and 30 Mi-8, 15 Mi-17, 6 Dauphin and 40 Alouette III helicopters. Personnel (1989) 7,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Angola is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1986 budget includes 90,400m. kwanza for capital and current expenditure and revenue at 78,500m. kwanza.

**Currency.** The currency is the *kwanza* divided into 100 *lwei*. Coins are of 50 *lwei*, 1, 2, 5, 10 and 20 *kwanza*; notes are of 20, 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 *kwanza*. In March 1989, £1 = 53.16 *kwanza*; US\$1 = 30.89 *kwanza*.

**Banking.** All banking was nationalized in 1975. The *Banco Nacional de Angola* is the central bank and bank of issue, while the *Banco Popular de Angola* handles all commercial activities throughout the country.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) totalled 851m. kwh, mainly hydro-electricity. In Nov. 1984 an agreement was signed with Brazil and USSR to construct a hydro-electric plant at Kapanda on the river Kwanza, 250 miles south of Luanda.

**Oil.** Total production (1988) about 22.5m. tonnes.

**Minerals.** Production of diamonds during 1985 totalled 625,000 carats. Production (1983) of salt, 55,000 tonnes. There has been no production of iron ore since 1975, but the mines at Kassinga were restarted in 1985. Phosphate mining commenced in the north in 1981. Manganese and copper deposits exist.



**Agriculture.** The principal cash crops (with 1986 production, in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane (250), coffee (35), bananas (280), palm oil (40), palm kernels (12), seed cotton (33); others include tobacco, citrus fruit and sisal. Food crops comprise cassava (1,970), maize (230), sweet potatoes (180) and beans (40).

Livestock (1987): 3.39m. cattle, 260,000 sheep, 970,000 goats, 475,000 pigs.

**Forestry.** Mahogany and other hardwoods are exported, chiefly from the tropical rain forests of the north, especially Cabinda. Production (1984) 9m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1984) 70,700 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1982, 10,000 tonnes of steel were produced and, in 1985, 350,000 tonnes of cement.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports for 4 calendar years in 1m. Kwanzas.

	1982	1983	1984 <sup>1</sup>	1985 <sup>1</sup>
Imports	25,946	20,197	19,448	41,240
Exports	48,736	54,508	60,112	59,280

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

The chief imports are textiles, transport equipment, foodstuffs, pig-iron and steel; chief exports are crude oil, coffee, diamonds, sisal, fish, maize, palm-oil. In 1983, crude petroleum represented 85% of exports, petroleum products, 5.6%, coffee 3.9% and diamonds 5.6%. In 1985 Portugal provided 13% of imports, France 12%, the USA 11%, and Brazil 11%, while 45% of exports went to the USA%, 14% to Spain and 11% (all diamonds) to the Bahamas.

Total trade between Angola and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	150,639	43,147	2,312	10,036
Exports and re-exports from UK	43,187	30,896	29,573	20,154

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1986, 73,830 km of roads, and in 1984, 56,625 cars and 29,000 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** The length of railways open for traffic in 1986 was 2,952 km comprising 2,798 km of 1,067 mm gauge and 154 km of 600 mm gauge. The Benguela Railway runs from Lobito to the Zaïre border at Dilolo where it connects with the National Railways of Zaïre. Other lines link Luanda with Malange; Gunza with Gabela; and Namibe with Menongue. In 1986 Angola's railways carried 4.1m. passengers and 2.5m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Luanda has international air links to Lisbon, Rome, Paris, Moscow, Budapest, Brazzaville, São Tomé, Lusaka, Maputo, Sal (Cape Verde Islands), Havana, Kinshasa, Libreville, Berlin, Tripoli, Lagos, Algiers, Niamey, Sofia, Malta, Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo.

**Shipping.** In 1975, 2.85m. tonnes were discharged and 16m. tonnes loaded in Angolan ports. In 1986 there were 100 merchant vessels (over 100 GRT) totalling 127,000 GRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Angola is connected by cable with east, west and south African telegraph systems. There were, in 1973, 1,808 km of telegraph lines, 77 telephone stations (with 40,000 instruments in 1982), 162 telegraph stations and 31 wireless stations.

*Rádio Nacional de Angola* is the largest of the 18 stations operating on medium- and short-waves. *Rádio Nacional* transmits 3 programmes as well as operating 2 regional stations. Number of radio receivers (1986) 400,000 and television receivers 32,000.

**Cinemas.** There were, in 1972, 47 cinemas with seating capacity of 35,142.

**Newspaper.** The national daily newspaper is *Jornal de Angola*, with a circulation of 50,000 in 1984.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court and Court of Appeal are in Luanda.

**Religion.** Article 7 of the Constitution of the People's Republic of Angola states that: 'The People's Republic of Angola is a secular state, where there is a complete separation of religious institutions from the state. All religions will be respected.'

In 1980 55% of the population were Roman Catholic, 9% Protestant and 34% animist.

**Education.** In 1983 there were 2.4m. pupils in primary schools, 153,000 in secondary schools and 4,746 students in higher education. The *Universidade de Angola* (founded 1963) at Luanda with faculties at Huambo and Lubango, had 3,500 students in 1982.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 436 doctors and 20,700 hospital beds and in 1973, 87 pharmacists, 284 midwives and 3,115 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Angola in Great Britain (87 Jermyn St., London, SW1)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Angola (Rua Diogo Cão, 4, Luanda)

*Ambassador:* M. J. C. Glaze, CMG.

Of Angola to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Elísio de Figueiredo.

## Further Reading

*Anuário Estatístico de Angola.* Luanda, from 1897

Araújo, A. Correia de, *Aspectos do desenvolvimento económico e social de Angola.* Lisbon, 1964

Bender, G. J., *Angola under the Portuguese: Myth and Reality.* London, 1979

Bhagavan, M. R., *Angola's Political Economy 1975-1985.* Uppsala, 1986

Davidson, B., *In the Eye of the Storm.* London, 1972

Klinghoffer, A. J., *The Angolan War.* Boulder, 1980

Marcrum, J., *The Angolan Revolution.* (2 vols.) MIT Press, 1969 and 1978

Pélissier, R., *Les guerres grises.* Montamets, 1980.—*La Colonie du Minotaure.* Montamets, 1980.—*Le naufrage des coravelles.* Montamets, 1980

Somerville, K., *Angola: Politics, Economics and Society.* London and Boulder, 1986

Wheeler, D. L. and Pélissier, R., *Angola.* London, 1971

Zirka, A. K., *Angola Libre?* Paris, 1975

# ANGUILLA

*Capital:* The Valley  
*Population:* 6,700 (1988)

**HISTORY.** Anguilla was probably given its name by the Spaniards because of its eel-like shape. After British settlements in the 17th century, the territory was administered as part of the Leeward Islands. From 1825 it became more closely associated with St Kitts and ultimately incorporated in the colony of St Kitts-Nevis-Anguilla. Opposition to this association grew and finally in 1967 the island seceded unilaterally. Following direct intervention by the UK in 1969 Anguilla became *de facto* a separate dependency of Britain; and this was formalized on 19 Dec. 1980 under the Anguilla Act 1980. A new Constitution came into effect in April 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Anguilla is the most northerly of the Leeward Islands, some 70 miles (112 km) to the north-west of St Kitts and 5 miles (8 km) to the north of St Martin/St Maarten. The territory also comprises the island of Sombrero (on which there is an important lighthouse) and several other off-shore islets or cays. The total area of the territory is about 60 sq. miles (155 sq. km). Census population (1984) was 6,987. The capital is The Valley.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The House of Assembly consists of a Speaker, 7 elected members, 2 nominated members and 2 official members.

Executive power is vested in the Governor who is appointed by HM The Queen. Apart from his special responsibilities (External Affairs, Defence, Internal Security, including the Police, and the Public Service) and his reserve powers in respect of legislation, the Governor discharges his executive powers on the advice of an Executive Council comprising a Chief Minister, 3 Ministers and 2 official members: Attorney-General and Permanent Secretary, Finance.

*Governor:* G. O. Whittaker, OBE.

*Chief Minister:* Emile Gumbs.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1988, the budget was: Expenditure EC\$20.84m.; revenue EC\$22.7m. Anguilla finances its recurrent budget but aid for capital projects comes from UK and other donors.

**Currency.** The currency is the Eastern Caribbean *dollar*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1988) 4m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Because of low rainfall agriculture potential is limited. Main crops are pigeon peas, corn and sweet potatoes. Livestock consists of sheep, goats, cattle and poultry.

**Fisheries.** Fishing is a thriving industry with exports to neighbouring islands.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Trade.** Total trade between Anguilla and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	60	188	68
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,136	1,328	1,372

**Tourism.** There are a few hotels of international standing and others are under con-



struction. There are also several locally-owned hotels, guest houses and apartments. In 1987 there were 71,500 tourists, of which 50,500 were day visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are about 43 miles of tarred roads and 25 miles of secondary roads. In 1985 there were 973 passenger cars and 239 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is a 3,600 ft surfaced runway at Wallblake Airport. Apart from regular air taxi and charter flights WINAIR (subsidiary of ALM) provides daily scheduled services between Juliana International Airport, St Martin and Anguilla. WINAIR, LIAT and American Eagle operate direct flights from San Juan, Puerto Rico. Air BVI flies from Tortola and St Thomas to Anguilla.

**Shipping.** The main seaports are Road Bay and Blowing Point, the latter serving passenger and cargo traffic to and from St Martin.

**Post and Telecommunications.** There is a modern internal telephone service with (1986–87) 1,825 exchange lines; and international telegraph, telex and telephone services, all operated by Cable & Wireless. In 1986 there were 2,200 radio receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there was 1 daily newspaper.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** There were in 1988 Anglicans, Roman Catholics, Methodists, Seventh Day Adventists and Baptists.

**Education.** There are 6 government primary schools with (1986) 1,483 pupils and 1 secondary school with (1986) 634 pupils. Tertiary education is provided at regional universities and similar institutions.

**Health.** There is a 24-bed cottage hospital, clinics and a modern dental clinic. There were (1987) 4 doctors and 1 dentist.

## Further Reading

Petty, C. L., *Anguilla: Where there's a Will, there's a Way*. Anguilla, 1984

# ANTIGUA AND BARBUDA

*Capital:* St John's

*Population:* 81,500 (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$ 2,380 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Antigua was discovered by Columbus in 1493 and named by him after a church in Seville (Spain). It was first colonized by English settlers in 1632; nearby Barbuda was colonized in 1661 from Antigua. Formed part of the Leeward Islands Federation from 1871 until 30 June 1956, when Antigua became a separate Crown Colony, which was part of the West Indies Federation from 3 Jan. 1958 until 31 May 1962. It became an Associated State of the UK on 27 Feb. 1967 and obtained independence on 1 Nov. 1981.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Antigua and Barbuda comprises 3 islands of the Lesser Antilles situated in the Eastern Caribbean with a total land area of 442 sq. km (171 sq. miles); it consists of Antigua (280 sq. km), Barbuda, 40 km to the north (161 sq. km) and uninhabited Redonda, 40 km to the southwest (1 sq. km).

The population at the Census of 7 April 1970 was 65,525. In 1986 the estimated population was 81,500 of whom 1,500 lived in Barbuda. The chief towns are St John's, the capital on Antigua (30,000 inhabitants in 1982) and Codrington, the only settlement on Barbuda.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, but drier than most West Indies islands. The hot season is from May to Nov., when rainfall is greater. Mean annual rainfall is 40'' (1,000 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** H.M. Queen Elizabeth, as Head of State, is represented by a Governor-General appointed by her on the advice of the Prime Minister. There is a bicameral legislature, comprising a 17-member Senate appointed by the Governor-General and a 17-member House of Representatives elected by universal suffrage for a 5-year term. The Governor-General appoints a Prime Minister and, on the latter's advice, other members of the Cabinet.

*Governor-General:* Sir Wilfred Ebenezer Jacobs, GCMG, GCVO, OBE, QC.

*Prime Minister and Finance:* Right Hon. Vere C. Bird, Sen., PC.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Foreign Affairs, Economic Development, Tourism and Energy:* Lester Bryant Bird.

At the general elections held on 17 April 1984, the ruling Antigua Labour Party won all 16 seats on Antigua and there was one independent (representing Barbuda).

*Flag:* Red, with a triangle based on the top edge, divided horizontally black, blue, white, with a rising sun in gold on the black portion.

**DEFENCE.** The defence force has a strength of about 700. A coastguard service has been formed.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Antigua and Barbuda is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, CARICOM and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1988 envisaged revenue at EC\$217m. and expenditure of EC\$231.7m.

**Currency.** The Eastern Caribbean \$. In March 1989, £1 = EC\$4.67; US\$1 = EC\$2.71.

**Banking.** Barclays Bank International, Royal Bank of Canada, Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, the Virgin Islands National Bank, the Antilles International Trust Co. and the Bank of Nova Scotia have branches at St John's. There is also the Antigua Co-operative Bank and a government savings bank.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 63.8m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Cotton and fruits are the main crops. Production (1986) of fruits, 9,000 tonnes. There were 70,000 tonnes of cotton produced in 1985.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 18,000; pigs, 4,000; sheep, 13,000; goats, 13,000.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 1,013 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** An oil refinery was opened in 1982. Manufactures include toilet tissue, stoves, refrigerators, blenders, fans, garments and rum (molasses imported from Guyana).

**Labour.** In 1985 the workforce numbered 32,254, and there was 21% unemployment.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1984 amounted to EC\$356.1m. and exports to EC\$47.5m. of which the major amount came from bunkering provided to ships. The main trading partners were the USA, the UK and Canada.

Total trade between Antigua and Barbuda and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,069	4,271	10,845
Exports and re-exports from UK	17,774	19,334	20,755

**Tourism.** There were 149,000 tourists (excluding cruise passengers) in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 600 miles of roads (150 miles main road). In 1985 there were 10,000 passenger cars and 15,000 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport (V. C. Bird) on Antigua, and a small airstrip at Codrington on Barbuda.

**Shipping.** The main harbour is the St John's deep water harbour. There are 2 tugs for the berthing of ships and all modern and efficient general cargo handling equipment. The harbour can also accommodate 3 large cruise ships simultaneously.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 10,470 telephones. In 1983 there were 20,000 radios and 17,000 television sets.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE.

**Religion.** The vast majority of the population are Christian, preponderantly Anglican.

**Education.** In 1985 there were 10,551 pupils and 436 teachers in 48 primary schools, and 5,106 pupils and 304 teachers in (1983) 16 secondary schools.

**Health.** There is a general hospital (Holberton) with 215 beds, a mental hospital with 200 beds, a geriatric unit with 150 beds, 4 health centres and 16 dispensaries.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Antigua and Barbuda in Great Britain (15 Thayer St., London, W1M 5DL)  
*High Commissioner:* James A. E. Thomas.

Of Great Britain in Antigua and Barbuda (38 St Mary's St., St John's)  
*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG.



Of Antigua and Barbuda in the USA (3400 International Dr., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Edmund Hawkins Lake.

Of the USA in Antigua and Barbuda

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Robert DuBose (resides in Bridgetown).

Of Antigua and Barbuda to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Lloydstone Jacobs.

### Further Reading

Dyde, B., *Antigua and Barbuda: The Heart of the Caribbean*. London, 1986

# ARGENTINA

Capital: Buenos Aires  
Population: 31.06m. (1986)  
GNP per capita: US\$2,350 (1986)

## República Argentina

**HISTORY.** In 1515 Juan Díaz de Solís discovered the Río de La Plata. In 1534 Pedro de Mendoza was sent by the King of Spain to take charge of the 'Gobernación y Capitanía de las tierras del Río de La Plata', and in Feb. 1536 he founded the city of the 'Puerto de Santa María del Buen Aire'. In 1810 the population rose against Spanish rule, and in 1816 Argentina proclaimed its independence. Civil wars and anarchy followed until, in 1853, stable government was established.

Military leaders supported by the Navy and Air Force staged a *coup d'état* on 24 March 1976, and The Junta of Commanders in Chief deposed Isobel Perón and her Government elected in 1972. The Commander in Chief of the Army, Lieut-Gen. Videla, was appointed President. The previous Constitution remained in force in so far as it was consistent with the statutes and objectives of the Junta. Return to civilian rule took place on 10 Dec. 1983. For details of earlier history and Constitutions see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1982-83 and 1985-86.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Argentine Republic is bounded in the north by Bolivia, in the north-east by Paraguay, in the east by Brazil, Uruguay and the Atlantic Ocean and the west by Chile. The republic consists of 22 provinces, 1 federal district and the National Territories of Tierra del Fuego, the Antarctic and the South Atlantic Islands (census of 1980) as follows:

Provinces	Area: sq. km. 1960	Population: census, 1980	Capital	Population census, 1980 (1,000)
<i>Litoral</i>				
Federal Capital	200	2,922,829	Buenos Aires	2,908
Buenos Aires	307,571	10,865,408	La Plata	455
Corrientes	88,199	661,454	Corrientes	180
Entre Ríos	78,781	908,313	Paraná	160
Chaco	99,633	701,392	Resistencia	218
Santa Fé	133,007	2,465,546	Santa Fé	287
Formosa	72,066	295,887	Formosa	95
Misiones	29,801	588,977	Posadas	140
<i>Norte</i>				
Jujuy	53,219	410,008	San Salvador de Jujuy	124
Salta	154,775	662,870	Salta	260
Santiago del Estero	135,254	594,920	Santiago del Estero	148
Tucumán	22,524	972,655	San Miguel de Tucumán	393
<i>Centro</i>				
Córdoba	168,766	2,407,754	Córdoba	969
La Pampa	143,440	208,260	Santa Rosa	52
San Luis	76,748	214,416	San Luis	71
<i>Andina</i>				
Catamarca	100,967	207,717	Catamarca	78
La Rioja	89,680	164,217	La Rioja	67
Mendoza	148,827	1,196,228	Mendoza	118
San Juan	89,651	465,976	San Juan	118
Neuquén	94,078	243,850	Neuquén	90

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Area: sq. km. 1960</i>	<i>Population: census, 1980</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population census, 1980 (1,000)</i>
<i>Patagonia</i>				
Chubut	224,686	263,116	Rawson	13
Rio Negro	203,013	383,354	Viedma	24
Santa Cruz	243,943	114,941	Rio Gallegos	43
Tierra del Fuego <sup>1</sup>	21,263	29,392	Ushuaia	11

<sup>1</sup> The total area is 2,780,092 sq. km excluding the claimed 'Antarctic Sector' and the population at the 1980 Census was 27,947,446; estimate (1986) 31.06m. In 1980, 95% spoke the national language, Spanish, while 3% spoke Italian, 1% Guaraní and 1% other languages. In 1983, 83% lived in urban areas and 17% rural, while 98% were white and 2% mestizo (mixed).

The official census including the 'Antarctic Sector', and stated to comprise the 'Malvinas' (Falklands), South Orcadas (Orkneys), South Georgias, South Sandwich Islands and the 'sovereign territories of Argentina in the Antarctic': population 3,300.

The principal metropolitan areas (1980 Census) are Buenos Aires (9,927,404), Córdoba (982,018), Rosario (954,606), Mendoza (596,796), La Plata (560,341), San Miguel de Tucumán (496,914), Mar del Plata (407,024), and San Juan (290,479). The suburbs of Buenos Aires, outside the Federal District, include San Justo (946,715), Morón (596,769), Lomas de Zamora (508,620), General Sarmiento (499,648), Lanus (465,891), Quilmes (441,780), General San Martín (384,306), Caseros (340,343), Almirante Brown (332,548), Avellaneda (330,654), Vicente López (289,815), San Isidro (287,048), Merlo (282,828), Tigre (205,926), Berazategui (200,926), and Esteban Echeverría (187,969).

Other large cities (1980 Census) are Rosario (875,664), Mar del Plata (407,024), Bahía Blanca (220,765), Guaymallén (157,334), Godoy Cruz (141,553), Rio Cuarto (110,254), Comodoro Rivadavia (98,985), San Nicolás (96,313) and Concordia (93,618).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is warm temperate over the pampas, where rainfall occurs at all seasons, but diminishes towards the west. In the north and west, the climate is more arid, with high summer temperatures, while in the extreme south conditions are also dry, but much cooler. Buenos Aires. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 50°F (10°C). Annual rainfall 37" (950 mm). Bahía Blanca. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 48°F (8.9°C). Annual rainfall 21" (523 mm). Mendoza. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 47°F (8.3°C). Annual rainfall 8" (190 mm). Rosario. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 51°F (10.6°C). Annual rainfall 35" (869 mm). San Juan. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 50°F (10°C). Annual rainfall 4" (89 mm). San Miguel de Tucumán. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 56°F (13.3°C). Annual rainfall 38" (970 mm). Ushuaia. Jan. 50°F (10°C), July 34°F (1.1°C). Annual rainfall 19" (475 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Presidential, congressional and municipal elections took place on 30 Oct. 1983 and a return to civilian rule took place on 10 Dec. 1983. With the return to constitutional rule the Constitution of 1853 (as amended up to 1898) is again in effect. The President and Vice-President are elected by a 600-member electoral college (directly elected by popular vote) for 6-year terms; both must be Roman Catholics of Argentine birth. The President is Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Services, and appoints to all civil and judicial offices.

The following is a list of Presidents from 1973 onwards:

Gen. Juan Domingo Perón. 12 Oct. 1973–1 July 1974.	Gen. Roberto Viola, 29 March–22 Dec. 1981.
Maria Estela (Isabel) Martinez Perón. 1 July 1974 ( <i>a.i.</i> from 29 June 1974)–23 March 1976. (Deposed.)	Gen. Leopoldo Fortunato Galtieri, 22 Dec. 1981–17 June 1982.
Gen. Jorge Rafael Videla. 29 March 1976–29 March 1981.	Gen. Reynaldo Benito Antonio Bignone, 1 July 1982–10 Dec. 1983.

The National Congress consists of a Senate and a House of Deputies: The Senate comprises 46 members, 2 nominated by each provincial legislature and 2 from the Federal District for 9 years (one-third retiring every 3 years). The House of Deputies comprises 254 members directly elected by universal suffrage (at age 18).



In the General Election held on 3 Nov. 1985, the *Unión Cívica Radical* won 130 seats in the House of Deputies, the *Movimiento Justicialista Nacional* (Peronists) 103 seats and others 21 seats. Mid-term elections are due in Sept. 1988.

*President of the Republic:* Dr Raúl Alfonsín (sworn in 10 Dec. 1983).

*Vice-President:* Dr Víctor Martínez.

The Cabinet in Dec. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Foreign Affairs:* Dante Caputo. *Interior:* Enrique Nosiglia. *Treasury and Finance:* Juan Sourrouille. *Labour:* Ideler Tonelli. *Defence:* Horacio Jaunarena. *Education and Justice:* Jorge Sábato. *Public Health and Environment:* Conrado Storani. *Public Works:* Pedro Trucco.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of light blue, white and light blue, with the gold Sun of May in the centre.

*National anthem:* Oid, mortales, el grito sagrado Libertad (words by V. López y Planes, 1813; tune by J. Blas Parera).

*Local Government.* In Oct. 1983 the governors were elected by the people.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** There are 5 military districts. The Army is organized in 4 army corps; it consists of 2 armoured, 4 mechanized, 1 airborne, 2 mountain and 1 jungle brigades; 2 engineering, 1 aviation and 1 air defence battalions. The Army has about 100 fixed-wing aircraft and helicopters.

In 1989 the Army was 55,000 strong, of whom 30,000 were conscripts.

The trained reserve numbers about 250,000, of whom 200,000 belong to the National Guard and 50,000 to the Territorial Guard.

**Navy.** Principal ships of the Argentine Navy:<sup>3</sup>

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Guns	Shaft horse-power	Speed Knots
<i>Aircraft Carrier</i> <sup>1</sup>						
1945	Veinticinco de Mayo <sup>2</sup>	15,892	{ 18 fixed-wing 4 helicopters }	9 40mm	40,000	24.0

<sup>1</sup> The aircraft carrier *Independence*, ex-*Warrior*, purchased from the UK in 1958 was withdrawn from service in 1971.

<sup>2</sup> Ex-*Karel Doorman*, purchased from the Netherlands in 1968, ex-*Venerable*, purchased from UK in 1948.

<sup>3</sup> The cruiser *General Belgrano*, ex-*Phoenix*, purchased from the USA in 1951 was sunk by the British fleet submarine *Conqueror* in May 1982. Sister ship *Nueve de Julio* (ex-USS *Bloise*) was withdrawn from service in 1980. The cruiser *La Argentina* was stricken from the list in 1975.

There are 2 modern German-built diesel powered submarines, 2 older German-built smaller diesel-driven submarines, 4 modern German-built destroyers, 2 modern British-built destroyers (Type 42), 3 modern German-designed medium frigates, 3 modern French-built small frigates, 2 old training frigates, 4 coastal minesweepers, 2 minehunters, 4 patrol vessels (armed ocean tugs), 2 fast patrol vessels, 6 patrol craft, 3 survey ships, 2 survey launches, 2 training ships, 3 transports, 2 oilers, 2 tank landing ships, 12 minor landing craft, 2 polar ships, 20 ancillary vessels and service craft and 10 tugs.

The new construction programme includes 4 diesel-powered patrol submarines (one building and three projected), and 3 frigates.

The diesel-powered submarine *Sante Fe*, ex-USS *Catfish*, was damaged and beached during the Falklands invasion in April 1982, and was later sunk in deep water.

The active personnel of the Navy in 1989 comprised 25,000 officers and ratings, and 5,000 conscripts. The Marine Corps numbered 6,000.

The *Prefectura Naval Argentina* (PNA) for Coast Guard and rescue duties comprises five new 910-ton corvettes with helicopter and hangar, an ex-whaler of 700 tons, 7 patrol vessels, 40 coastal patrol craft and a training ship.

The Naval Aviation Service has some 100 fixed-wing aircraft and helicopters with 3,000 personnel, in 6 wings. Aircraft include 14 Super Entendard fighters, 5 A-4Q Skyhawk attack bombers, 13 Aermacchi M.B. 326 and 5 M.B.339A light jet armed trainers, 4 Lockheed Electra maritime surveillance aircraft and 6 S-2E ship-based Tracker anti-submarine aircraft, and a dozen types of training, transport and general purpose aircraft, plus 2 types of helicopters. A variable mix of Super Entendards, Skyhawks, Trackers and Sea King and Alouette helicopters operate from the aircraft carrier.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is organized into Air Operations, Air Regions, Materiel and Personnel Commands. Air Operations Command, responsible for all operational flying, is made up of air brigades, each with 1 to 4 squadrons, usually operating from a single base. No. I Air Brigade is a military air transport service, with responsibility also for LADE (state airline) operations into areas of Argentina not served by civilian companies. Its equipment includes 6 C-130E/H Hercules and 10 F.27 Friendship/Troopship turboprop transports, 2 KC-130H Hercules tanker/transports, 5 twin-turboprop F.28 Fellowship freighters, 7 Twin Otters, 15 Guarani IIs, the Presidential Boeing 707-320B and 707-320C, 4 more 707s, 2 VIP Fellowships, and many older or smaller types. No. II Air Brigade has 4 Canberra twin-jet bombers and 2 Canberra trainers; a photographic squadron with Guarani IIs and Learjets. No. III Air Brigade has 2 squadrons of IA 58 Tucan twin-turboprop COIN aircraft. No. IV Air Brigade comprises 2 ground attack squadrons equipped with about 30 Paris light jet combat and liaison aircraft, now being replaced by IA 63 Pampas, and one squadron with Mirage IIIs. No. V Air Brigade comprises 2 squadrons with a total of about 30 A-4P Skyhawk strike aircraft. No. VI Air Brigade has 40 Dagger (Israeli-built Mirage III) fighters, equipping 2 squadrons. No. VII Air Brigade has 2 helicopter squadrons with 12 armed Hughes 500M, 8 Bell 212, 6 Bell UH-1 and 2 Chinook helicopters. No. VIII Air Brigade has 1 squadron with 14 Mirage IIIE fighter-bombers and 2 Mirage IIID trainers. No. X Air Brigade has 1 squadron of Mirage IIIC/5 fighters. There is a flying school at Córdoba, equipped with turboprop-powered Embraer Tucanos and Paris jets. There were (1989) about 15,000 personnel and about 150 combat aircraft.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Argentina is a member of UN, OAS and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The financial year commences on 1 Nov. Budget receipts in 1985 6,517m. australes and expenditure 8,811m. australes.

**Currency.** The monetary system is on a gold-exchange standard, the unit for foreign transactions being, nominally, the *peso oro* (gold peso) and for domestic transactions, the *Austral* (paper peso), legal tender for all domestic debts.

The gold peso weighs 1.6129 grammes of gold 0.900 fine; it is divided into 100 *centavos*, but gold is not in circulation. Circulation consists chiefly of paper notes (issued since 1897) ranging from 100 *australes* down to 10 *cents*. The coins actually circulating, 1985, were steel-nickel, 5, 1 and ½ *cents*. In March 1989, US\$1 = 18.61 *austral*; £1 = 32.02 *austral*.

**Banking.** In 1984 there were 35 government banks, 141 private banks and 33 foreign banks. The total foreign debt at 31 Dec. 1985 was US\$38,392m.

**Weights and Measures.** Since 1 Jan. 1887 the use of the metric system has been compulsory.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power production (1986) was 42,790m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude oil production (1988) 23m. tonnes. The oil industry aims at achieving self-sufficiency.

**Gas.** Natural gas production (1983) 13,500,000m. cu. metres. New offshore fields were reported in 1988.

**Minerals.** Argentina produced 500,000 tonnes of washed coal in 1984. Gold, silver and copper are worked in Catamarca, where there are also 2 tin-mines, and gold and copper in San Juan, La Rioja and the south-western territories. Iron ore (90,000 tonnes in 1983), tungsten, beryllium, mica, uranium (30 tonnes in 1983), lead (32,000 tonnes in 1983), barites, zinc (43,500 tonnes in 1972), tin (1.8m. tonnes in 1972), manganese and limestone are produced.

**Agriculture.** Argentina has an area of about 670,251,000 acres, of which about 41% is pasture land, 32% woodland and 11% (73.73m. acres) cultivated.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle 55,684,000; sheep, 28,998,000; pigs, 4,036,000; horses, 3m. The Province of Buenos Aires has 38% of the cattle. Wool production, 1983, was 126,000 tonnes.

Wheat production (1986) 8.9m. tonnes from 4.9m. hectares.

Argentina's meat exports are calculated in terms of actual weight; not 'carcase weight', as is the international practice. In 1983, 84.16m. tons of meat were exported.

Cotton, potatoes, vine, tobacco, citrus fruit, olives, rice, soya, and yerba maté (Paraguayan tea) are also cultivated. There are 36 cane-sugar mills and 1 beet-sugar factory; cane-sugar production, 1986, 14m. tonnes. Potato harvest, 1985, amounted to 2.1m. tonnes. The area under tobacco, 1986, was 50,000 hectares; output 66,000 tonnes.

Sunflower seed (production (1986) 4.2m. tonnes), first grown by Russian immigrants in 1900, now furnishes the country's most popular edible oil. There are more than 10m. olive trees. 205,000 tonnes of groundnuts were produced in 1986 (mainly in Córdoba). Argentina is the world's largest source of tannin.

**Fisheries.** Fish landings in 1983 amounted to 550,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production (1983 in tonnes) Paper, 873,000; steel, 2.95m.; sulphuric acid (1979), 279,066; cement (1979), 6.7m. Motor vehicles produced (1981) totalled, 172,350; television receivers, 262,000.

**Commerce.** Import values include charges for carriage, insurance and freight; export values are on a f.o.b. basis. Real values of foreign trade (in US\$1m.), exclusive of coin and bullion:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984 <sup>1</sup>	1985 <sup>1</sup>
Imports	10,541	9,430	5,337	4,504	4,585	3,814
Exports	8,021	9,146	7,625	7,836	8,107	8,396

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

Total trade between Argentina and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	65	2,032	28,635	64,595	66,281
Exports and re-exports from UK	5,232	3,815	10,115	10,267	12,991

**Tourism.** In 1986, 1.6m. tourists visited Argentina.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1983 there were 220,093 km of national and provincial highways. The 4 main roads constituting Argentina's portion of the Pan-American Highway were opened to traffic in 1942. In 1985 there were 5.08m. cars and commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** The system based on the 1949 amalgamation of 18 government, British and French-owned railways, comprises 7 railways with a total route-km in 1987 of



34,172 km (210 km electrified) on metre, 1,435 mm and 1,676 mm gauges. In 1987 railways carried 7,977 tonne-km and 11,966m. passenger-km. In 1988 parts of the network were being prepared for privatization.

**Aviation.** There were (1986) 10 international airports and 54 other airports. Commercial airlines flew a total of 75m. km in 1984, with 47,500 tonnes and 4.3m. passengers.

**Shipping.** The merchant fleet, 1986, consisted of 454 vessels of 3,171,154 DWT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1949 the telephone service was nationalized; instruments numbered 3,250,000 in 1984. There were (1984) 122 radio stations and 4 television channels in Buenos Aires. In 1985 there were 8m. radio receivers and 5.9m. television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1972). Cinemas numbered 1,650, with seating capacity of 611,400.

**Newspapers** (1985). Daily newspapers numbered 227 with a circulation of 2.7m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by federal and provincial courts. The former deal only with cases of a national character, or in which different provinces or inhabitants of different provinces are parties. The chief federal court is the Supreme Court, with 5 judges at Buenos Aires. Other federal courts are the appeal courts, at Buenos Aires, Bahía Blanca, La Plata, Córdoba, Mendoza, Tucumán and Resistencia. Each province has its own judicial system, with a Supreme Court (generally so designated) and several minor chambers. Trial by jury is established by the Constitution for criminal cases, but never practised, except occasionally in the provinces of Buenos Aires and Córdoba.

The death penalty was re-introduced in 1976 for the killing of government, military police and judicial officials, and for participation in terrorist activities.

The police force is centralized under the Federal Security Council.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic religion is supported by the State and membership was 26m. in 1986. There are several Protestant denominations with a total congregation (1983) of 500,000. The Jewish congregation numbered 300,000 in 1983.

**Education.** In 1984 the primary schools had 218,520 teachers and 4,430,513 pupils; secondary schools had 86,874 teachers and 656,521 pupils, vocational schools had 119,309 teachers and 905,755 pupils.

There are National Universities at Buenos Aires (2), Córdoba (2), La Plata, Tucumán, Santa Fé (Litoral), Rosario, Corrientes (Nordeste.), Mendoza (Cuyo), Bahía Blanca (Sur), Catamarca, Tandil, Neuquén (Comahue), San Salvador de Jujuy, Salta, Santa Rosa (La Pampa), Mar del Plata, Comodoro Rivadavia (Patagonia), Río Cuarto, Entre Ríos, Resistencia, San Juan and Santiago del Estero. There are also private universities in Buenos Aires (6), Mendoza (3), Córdoba, Comodoro Rivadavia, La Plata, Morón, Tucumán, Salta, Santa Fé and Santiago del Estero. In 1981 universities had 525,688 students and 54,039 lecturers.

**Health.** Free medical attention is obtainable from public hospitals. Many trade unions provide medical, dental and maternity services for their members and dependants. In 1980 there were 151,568 hospital beds and 72,762 doctors.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Diplomatic links with Argentina were broken by Great Britain in April 1982 following the invasion of the Falkland Islands.

Of Argentina in the USA (1600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Dr Enrique J. Candiotti.

Of the USA in Argentina (4300 Colombia, Palermo, Buenos Aires)

*Ambassador:* Theodore Gildred.

Of Argentina to the United Nations  
*Ambassador: Dr Marcelo E. R. Delpech.*

### Further Reading

- Boletín del comercio exterior Argentino y estadísticas económicas retrospectivas.* Annual  
*Anuario de comercio exterior de la República Argentina.* Annual  
*Economic Review, Banco de la Nación.* Buenos Aires  
*Síntesis Estadística Mensual.* Dirección General de Estadística. Buenos Aires, 1947 ff.  
*Boletín Internacional de Bibliografía Argentina.* Ministry of Foreign Relations. Buenos Aires. Monthly  
*Geografía de la República Argentina.* Ed. by the Sociedad Argentina de Estudios Geográficos. 7 vols. Buenos Aires. 1945–53  
 Bridges, E. L., *Uttermost Part of the Earth [Tierra del Fuego].* New York, 1949  
 Crawley, E., *A House Divided: Argentina 1880–1980.* London, 1984  
 Ferns, H. S., *Britain and Argentina in the 19th Century.* OUP, 1960.—*The Argentine Republic 1516–1971.* Newton Abbot, 1973  
 Graham-Yooll, A., *The Forgotten Colony: A History of the English-Speaking Communities in Argentina.* London, 1981  
 Rock, D., *Argentina 1516–1982.* London, 1986  
 Santillán, Diego A. de (ed.) *Gran Enciclopedia Argentina.* 9 vols. 1956–64  
 Simpson, J. and Bennett, J., *The Disappeared: Voices from a Secret War.* London, 1985  
 Wynia, G. W., *Argentina.* Hoddesdon, 1986

# AUSTRALIA

*Capital:* Canberra

*Population:* 16.25m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$11,910 (1986)

**HISTORY.** On 1 Jan. 1901 the former British colonies of New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, Western Australia and Tasmania were federated under the name of the 'Commonwealth of Australia', the designation of 'colonies' being at the same time changed into that of 'states'—except in the case of Northern Territory, which was transferred from South Australia to the Commonwealth as a 'territory' on 1 Jan. 1911.

In 1911 the Commonwealth acquired from the State of New South Wales the Canberra site for the Australian capital. Building began in 1923 and Parliament was opened at Canberra on 9 May 1927 by HRH the Duke of York (afterwards King George VI). A further area at Jervis Bay was acquired in 1915.

Territories under the administration of Australia in Jan. 1987, but not included in it, comprise Norfolk Island, the territory of Ashmore and Cartier Islands, and the Australian Antarctic Territory (acquired 24 Aug. 1936), comprising all the islands and territory, other than Adélie Land, situated south of 60° S. lat. and between 160° and 45° E. long. The Coral Sea Islands became an External Territory in 1969.

The British Government transferred sovereignty in the Heard Island and McDonald Islands to the Australian Government on 26 Dec. 1947. Cocos (Keeling) Islands on 23 Nov. 1955 and Christmas Island on 1 Oct. 1958 were also transferred to Australian jurisdiction.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Australia, including Tasmania but excluding external territories, covers a land area of 7,682,300 sq. km, extending from Cape York (10° 41' S) in the north some 3,680 km to Tasmania (43° 39' S), and from Cape Byron (153° 39' E) in the east some 4,000 km west to Western Australia (113° 9' E). Growth in Census population has been:

1901	3,774,310	1947	7,579,358	1971	12,755,638
1911	4,455,005	1954	8,986,530	1976	13,915,500
1921	5,435,734	1961	10,508,186	1981	15,053,600
1933	6,629,839	1966	11,599,498	1986	15,763,000

Area and resident population (estimate), 31 Dec. 1986:

<i>States and Territories (capitals in brackets)</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per 100 sq. km</i>
New South Wales (Sydney)	801,600	5,570,000	696
Victoria (Melbourne)	227,600	4,183,500	1,838
Queensland (Brisbane)	1,727,200	2,649,600	153
South Australia (Adelaide)	984,000	1,388,100	141
Western Australia (Perth)	2,525,500	1,477,700	59
Tasmania (Hobart)	67,800	448,200	661
Northern Territory (Darwin)	1,346,200	156,700	12
Aust. Cap. Terr. (Canberra)	2,400	260,700	10,862
Total	7,682,300	16,134,500	210

Resident population (estimate) in State capitals and other major cities, 30 June 1986:

<i>Statistical division</i>	<i>State</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Statistical district</i>	<i>State</i>	<i>Population</i>
Sydney	NSW	3,430,600	Newcastle	NSW	429,300
Melbourne	Vic.	2,942,000	Canberra <sup>1</sup>	ACT	285,800
Brisbane	Qld.	1,171,300	Wollongong	NSW	237,600
Adelaide	SA	993,100	Gold Coast <sup>2</sup>	Qld.	219,300
Perth	WA	1,025,300	Geelong	Vic.	148,300
Hobart	Tas.	180,300	Townsville	Qld.	103,700
Darwin	NT	68,500			

<sup>1</sup> Includes Queanbeyan (20,450).

<sup>2</sup> Includes Tweed Heads.



At 30 June 1987, the total population (16,263,319) included 8,120,541 males.

At 30 June 1987 the age-group distribution was: Under 15, 3,682,864; 15-44, 7,747,667; 45-64, 3,090,963; 65 and over, 1,741,825.

Australians born overseas (30 June 1987), 3.49m., of whom 1.2m. came from the UK and Ireland; 1.15m. from continental Europe; 606,604 from Asia and 230,451 from New Zealand.

At the 1986 census there were 227,645 Aboriginal Australians and Torres Straits Islanders.

### Vital statistics for 1986:

<i>States and Territories</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Infant deaths</i>
New South Wales	41,319	11,661	84,018	42,167	759
Victoria	29,390	9,670	60,416	30,175	517
Queensland	18,030	7,042	40,165	17,861	351
South Australia	9,878	3,776	19,742	10,328	146
Western Australia	10,379	4,001	24,187	9,307	214
Tasmania	3,302	1,245	6,913	3,454	79
Northern Territory	759	381	3,307	661	53
Aust. Cap. Terr.	1,856	1,641	4,526	1,028	35
Total	114,913	39,417	234,274	114,981	2,154
Rate <sup>1</sup>	7.2	2.5	14.7	7.2	9.2 <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Resident (estimate).

<sup>2</sup> Per 1,000 live births registered.

### Overseas arrivals and departures:

	<i>1984-85</i>	<i>1985-86</i>	<i>1986-87</i>
Arrivals	2.68m.	2.94m.	3.32m.
Long term and permanent	163,260	186,400	205,750
of whom, settlers	77,510	77,510	113,540
Departures	2.63m.	2.81m.	3.19m.
Long term and permanent	95,250	92,460	102,100
of whom, Australian residents leaving for good	51,710	49,690	49,360

Australian Bureau of Statistics, *Australian Demographic Statistics*. Quarterly. Canberra, June 1979 to date

National Population Inquiry, *Population and Australia: Recent Demographic Trends and their Implications*. Canberra, 1978

**CLIMATE.** Over most of the continent, four seasons may be recognised. Spring is from Sept. to Nov., Summer from Dec. to Feb., Autumn from March to May and Winter from June to Aug., but because of its great size there are climates that range from tropical monsoon to cool temperate, with large areas of desert as well. In Northern Australia there are only two seasons, the wet one lasting from Nov. to March, but rainfall amounts diminish markedly from the coast to the interior. Central and southern Queensland are subtropical, north and central New South Wales are warm temperate, as are parts of Victoria, Western Australia and Tasmania, where most rain falls in winter. Canberra. Jan. 68°F (20°C), July 42°F (5.6°C). Annual rainfall 23" (629 mm). Adelaide. Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 52°F (11.1°C). Annual rainfall 21" (528 mm). Brisbane. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 58°F (14.4°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,153 mm). Darwin. Jan. 83°F (28.3°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 59" (1,536 mm). Hobart. Jan. 62°F (16.7°C), July 46°F (7.8°C). Annual rainfall 24" (629 mm). Melbourne. Jan. 67°F (19.4°C), July 49°F (9.4°C). Annual rainfall 26" (659 mm). Perth. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 55°F (12.8°C). Annual rainfall 35" (873 mm). Sydney. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 53°F (11.7°C). Annual rainfall 47" (1,215 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** *Federal Government:* Under the Australian Constitution legislative power in Australia is vested in a Federal Parliament, consisting of the Queen, represented by a Governor-General, a Senate and a House of Representatives. Under the terms of the constitution there must be a session of parliament at least once a year.

The Senate comprises 76 Senators (12 for each State voting as one electorate and

as from Aug. 1974, 2 Senators respectively for the Australian Capital Territory and the Northern Territory). Senators representing the States are chosen for 6 years. The terms of Senators representing the Territories expire at the close of the day next preceding the polling day for the general elections of the House of Representatives. In general, the Senate is renewed to the extent of one-half every 3 years, but in case of disagreement with the House of Representatives, it, together with the House of Representatives, may be dissolved, and an entirely new Senate elected. The House of Representatives consists, as nearly as practicable, of twice as many Members as there are Senators, the numbers chosen in the several States being in proportion to population as shown by the latest statistics, but not less than 5 for any original State. The numerical size of the House after the election in 1987 was 148, including the Members for Northern Territory and the Australian Capital Territory. The Northern Territory has been represented by 1 Member in the House of Representatives since 1922, and the Australian Capital Territory by 1 Member since 1949 and 2 Members since May 1974. The Member for the Australian Capital Territory was given full voting rights as from the Parliament elected in Nov. 1966. The Member for the Northern Territory was given full voting rights in 1968. The House of Representatives continues for 3 years from the date of its first meeting, unless sooner dissolved.

Every Senator or Member of the House of Representatives must be a subject of the Queen, be of full age, possess electoral qualifications and have resided for 3 years within Australia. The franchise for both Houses is the same and is based on universal (males and females aged 18 years) suffrage. Compulsory voting was introduced in 1925. If a Member of a State Parliament wishes to be a candidate in a federal election, he must first resign his State seat.

Executive power in Australia is vested in the Governor-General advised by an Executive Council. The Governor-General presides over the Council, and its members hold office at his pleasure. All Ministers of State, who are members of the party or parties commanding a majority in the lower House, are members of the Executive Council under summons. A record of proceedings of meetings is kept by the Secretary to the Council. At Executive Council meetings the decisions of the Cabinet are (where necessary) given legal form, appointments made, resignations accepted, proclamations, regulations and the like made.

The policy of a ministry is, in practice, determined by the Ministers of State meeting without the Governor-General under the chairmanship of the Prime Minister. This group is known as the Cabinet. There are 11 Standing Committees of the Cabinet comprising varying numbers of Cabinet and non-Cabinet Ministers. In Labour Governments all Ministers have been members of Cabinet. In Liberal and National Country Party government, only the senior ministers. Cabinet meetings are private and deliberative and records of meetings are not made public. The Cabinet does not form part of the legal mechanisms of Government; the decisions it takes have, in themselves, no legal effect. The Cabinet substantially controls, in ordinary circumstances, not only the general legislative programme of Parliament but the whole course of Parliamentary proceedings. In effect, though not in form, the Cabinet, by reason of the fact that all Ministers are members of the Executive Council, is also the dominant element in the executive government of the country.

The legislative powers of the Federal Parliament embrace trade and commerce, shipping, etc.; taxation, finance, banking, currency, bills of exchange, bankruptcy, insurance; defence; external affairs, naturalization and aliens, quarantine, immigration and emigration; the people of any race for whom it is deemed necessary to make special laws; postal, telegraph and like services; census and statistics; weights and measures; astronomical and meteorological observations; copyrights; railways; conciliation and arbitration in disputes extending beyond the limits of any one State; social services; marriage, divorce etc.; service and execution of the civil and criminal process; recognition of the laws, Acts and records, and judicial proceedings of the States. The Senate may not originate or amend money bills; and disagreement with the House of Representatives may result in dissolution and, in the last resort, a joint sitting of the two Houses. No religion may be established by the Commonwealth. The Federal Parliament has limited and enumerated powers, the

several State parliaments retaining the residuary power of government over their respective territories. If a State law is inconsistent with a Commonwealth law, the latter prevails.

The Constitution also provides for the admission or creation of new States. Proposed laws for the alteration of the Constitution must be submitted to the electors, and they can be enacted only if approved by a majority of the States and by a majority of all the electors voting.

The Australia Acts 1986 removed residual powers of the British government to intervene in the government of Australia or the individual states.

The 35th Parliament was elected in July 1987.

*House of Representatives* (following July 1987 elections): Australian Labor Party, 86 seats; Liberal Party, 43; National Party, 19.

*Senate* (1989): Australian Labor Party, 32; Liberal Party, 27; Australian Democratic Party, 7; National Party, 7; others, 3.

*Governor-General*: William George Hayden.

The following is a list of former Governors-General of the Commonwealth:

Earl of Hopetoun	1901-02	HRH the Duke of Gloucester	1945-47
Lord Tennyson	1902-04	Sir William McKell	1947-53
Lord Northcote	1904-08	Viscount Slim	1953-60
Earl of Dudley	1908-11	Viscount Dunrossil	1960-61
Lord Denman	1911-14	Viscount De L'Isle	1961-65
Viscount Novar	1914-20	Lord Casey	1965-69
Lord Forster	1920-25	Sir Paul Hasluck	1969-74
Lord Stonehaven	1925-31	Sir John Kerr	1974-77
Sir Isaac Isaacs	1931-36	Sir Zelman Cowen	1977-82
Earl Gowrie	1936-45	Sir Ninian Stephen	1982-89

*National flag*: The British Blue Ensign with a large star of 7 points beneath the Union Flag, and in the fly 5 stars of the Southern Cross, all in white.

The cabinet of the Labour administration in Feb. 1989 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister*: Robert Hawke.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Attorney-General*: Lionel Bowen.

*Industry, Technology and Commerce*: John Button.

*Community Services and Health*: Neil Blewett.

*Industrial Relations*: Peter Morris.

*Treasurer*: Paul Keating.

*Immigration, Local Government and Ethnic Affairs*: Robert Ray.

*Finance*: Peter Walsh.

*Foreign Affairs and Trade*: Gareth Evans.

*Special Minister of State*: Susan Ryan.

*Transport and Communications*: Ralph Willis.

*Employment, Education and Training*: John Dawkins.

*Primary Industry and Energy*: John Kerin.

*Administrative Services*: Stewart West.

*Defence*: Kim Beazley.

*Social Security and Social Justice*: Brian Howe.

*Arts, Sport, Environment, Tourism and Territories*: Graham Richardson.

*Science and Small Business*: Barry Jones.

*Aboriginal Affairs*: Gerry Hand.

*Veterans' Affairs*: Ben Humphries.

*Consumer Affairs*: Peter Staples.

*The Acts of the Parliament of the Commonwealth of Australia Passed from 1901 to 1973.*

12 vols. Annual volumes, 1974 to date

*The Australian Constitution Annotated.* Attorney-General's Department, Canberra, 1980

*Parliamentary Handbook of the Commonwealth of Australia.* Canberra, 1915 to date



- Commonwealth of Australia Directory* [1921–1958 *The Federal Guide*; 1961–72 *Commonwealth Directory*; 1973–75 *Australian Government Directory*]. Prime Minister's Department. Canberra, 1924 to date
- Crisp, L. F., *Australian National Government*. 3rd ed. Melbourne and London, 1975
- Hughes, C. A. and Graham, B. D., *A Handbook of Australian Government and Politics*. Canberra, 1968
- Odgers, J. R., *Australian Senate Practice*. 5th ed. Canberra, 1976
- Paton, Sir George (ed.) *The Commonwealth of Australia: its Laws and Constitution*. London, 1952
- Pettifer, J. A., *House of Representatives Practice*. Canberra, 1981
- Sawer, G., *Australian Federal Politics and Law 1901–1929, 1929–1949*. 2 vols. Melbourne, 1974.—*Australian Government To-day*. 11th ed. Melbourne, 1973
- Wynes, W. A., *Executive and Judicial Powers in Australia*. 5th ed. Sydney, 1976

*State Government*: In each of the 6 States (New South Wales, Victoria, Queensland, South Australia, Western Australia, Tasmania) there is a State government whose constitution, powers and laws continue, subject to changes embodied in the Australian Constitution and subsequent alterations and agreements, as they were before federation. The system of government is basically the same as that described above for the Commonwealth—*i.e.*, the Sovereign, her representative (in this case a Governor), an upper and lower house of Parliament (except in Queensland, where the upper house was abolished in 1922), a cabinet led by the Premier and an Executive Council. Among the more important functions of the State governments are those relating to education, health, hospitals and charities, law, order and public safety, business undertakings such as railways and tramways, and public utilities such as water supply and sewerage. In the domains of education, hospitals, justice, the police, penal establishments, and railway and tramway operation, State government activity predominates. Care of the public health and recreative activities are shared with local government authorities and the Federal Government, social services other than those referred to above are now primarily the concern of the Federal Government, and the operation of public utilities is shared with local and semi-government authorities.

*Administration of Territories*. Since 1911, responsibility for administration and development of the Australian Capital Territory has been vested in Federal Ministers and Departments.

The ACT House of Assembly has been accorded the forms of a legislature, but continues to perform an advisory function for the Minister for the Capital Territory.

On 1 July 1978 the Northern Territory of Australia became a self-governing Territory with expenditure responsibilities and revenue-raising powers broadly approximating those of a State, although the Territory is not a State under the Constitution.

*Local Government*. The system of municipal government is broadly the same throughout Australia, although local government legislation is a State matter.

Each State is sub-divided into areas known variously as municipalities, cities, boroughs, towns, shires or district councils, totalling about 900. Within these areas the management of road, street and bridge construction, health, sanitary and garbage services, water supply and sewerage, and electric light and gas undertakings, hospitals, fire brigades, tramways and omnibus services and harbours is generally part of the functions of elected aldermen and councillors. The scope of their duties, however, differs considerably, for in all States the State Government, either directly or through semi-government authorities, also carries out some or all of these types of services.

In some instances, *e.g.*, in New South Wales, a number of local government authorities combine to conduct a public undertaking such as the supply of water or electricity.

**DEFENCE.** The Minister for Defence has responsibility under legislation for the control and administration of the Defence Force. The Chief of Defence Force Staff is vested with command of the Defence Force. He is the principal military adviser

to the Minister. The Secretary, Department of Defence is the Permanent Head of the Department. He is the principal civilian adviser to the Minister and has statutory responsibility for financial administration of the Defence outlay. The Chief of Defence Force Staff and the Secretary are jointly responsible for the administration of the Defence Force except with respect to matters falling within the command of the Defence Force or any other matter specified by the Minister.

The Chief of Naval Staff, the Chief of the General Staff and the Chief of the Air Staff command the Navy, Army and Air Force respectively. They have delegated authority from the Chief of Defence Force Staff and the Secretary to administer matters relating to their particular Service.

The structure of Defence is characterized by 3 organizational types: (i) A Central Office comprising 5 groups of functional orientated Divisions: Strategic Policy and Force Development; Supply and Support; Manpower and Financial Services; Management and Infrastructure Services; and, Defence Science and Technology; (ii) the 3 Armed Services of the Defence Force, each having a Service Office element in addition to the command structure; and (iii) a small number of outrider organizations concerned with such specialist fields as intelligence and natural disasters.

*Defence Support.* The Department of Defence Support purchases goods and services for defence purposes; provides technical expertise and other assistance to the defence industry; involves Australian industry in defence equipment to the maximum practical extent; administers the Australian Offsets Program so as to stimulate technological advancement and broaden the capabilities of strategic industries; within overall defence policies helps the capacity, efficiency and capability of Australian industry to design and export defence materiel; manages the Government's munitions and aircraft factories, and dockyards; markets defence and allied products and services to help maintain strategic industries.

The Department employs approximately 15,000 people (under the Public Service Act, the Supply and Development Act and the Naval Defence Act) in five states. This workforce includes some 2,100 professional and technical staff, 4,200 tradesmen and 1,500 apprentices.

**Army.** Overall organization and financial control of the Australian Army is vested in the Chief of General Staff. Under the Defence Force Re-organisation Act, which received the Royal Assent on 9 Sept. 1975, the Military Board, which was previously the controlling body of the Army, was abolished. The Act became effective on 1 Feb. 1976. A functional command structure, Headquarters Field Force Command, Headquarters Logistic Command, and Headquarters Training Command, with Headquarters in military districts, was introduced in 1973.

The strength of the Army was 32,000 in 1989. The Command troops consist of 1 regiment each of Air Defence, engineering, aviation and Special Air Service; the 1 infantry division is composed of 1 mechanized and 2 infantry brigades, 4 artillery regiments, and 1 regiment each of reconnaissance, armoured personnel carriers, engineering and aviation. The Army Aviation Corps has 25 N22 Missionmaster 14 Turbo-Porter transports, and 44 JetRanger helicopters.

The effective strength of the Army Reserve in 1989 was 25,000.

Staff and command training is carried out at the Command and Staff College, Queenscliff, Victoria, and the Land Warfare Centre, Canungra, Queensland.

In Jan. 1986 the Australian Defence Force Academy, Canberra, accepted its first officer cadets for the 3 Services. Cadets will study at the academy for degrees in arts, science and engineering. During semester breaks they will carry out military training with their particular Services.

At the end of 3 years at the academy, army officer cadets will undertake a year of military training at the Royal Military College, Duntroon. This will culminate with commissioning as a lieutenant.

From 1986 the Royal Military College have taken officer cadets for commission-

ing who previously would have attended the Officer Cadet School, Portsea, and the Women's Officer Cadet School, Sydney.

**Navy.** The Chief of Naval Staff is assisted by the Deputy Chief of Naval Staff with the Chief of Naval Personnel, the Chief of Naval Operational Requirements and Plans, the Chief of Naval Material and the Chief of Naval Engineering. On 1 Feb. 1976 the Naval Board was abolished. The command, operation and administration of the Fleet is by the Flag Officer Commanding HM Australian Fleet while materiel support of the fleet is by the Flag Officer Naval Support Command.

There are 6 UK-built Oberon class diesel-driven patrol submarines; 3 US-built guided missile destroyers; 4 US-built guided missile frigates, commissioned 1980-84; 5 frigates; 1 destroyer parent ship, 1 fleet replenishment ship, 1 training ship (*ex-liner*), 3 survey ships; 3 minehunters; 1 landing ship; 20 patrol boats; 6 landing craft; 1 amphibious heavy lift ship; 85 auxiliaries and service craft, and 7 tugs.

The Fleet Air Arm lately operated 22 Sea King, Wessex, Iroquois, Squirrel and Bell 206B helicopters and 2 HS748 fixed wing aircraft.

The serving strength in 1989 totalled 15,800 personnel including women.

The main training establishments are in Victoria, Sydney, Nowra and Jervis Bay.

**Air Force.** Command of the Royal Australian Air Force is vested in the Chief of the Air Staff (CAS) assisted by the Deputy Chief of the Air Staff, Chief of Air Force Operations and Plans, Chief of Air Force Materiel, Chief of Air Force Personnel, Chief of Air Force Technical Services, Director-General Supply—Air Force and Assistant Secretary Resources Planning.

The CAS administers and controls RAAF units through two commands: Operational Command and Support Command. Operational Command is responsible to the CAS for the command of operational units and the conduct of their operations within Australia and overseas. Support Command is responsible to the CAS for training of personnel, and the supply and maintenance of service equipment.

Flying establishment comprises 16 squadrons, of which 2 are equipped with 24 F-111 strike/reconnaissance aircraft. Of the others, 3 are equipped with missile-armed F-18 Hornet interceptors and 2 with Orion maritime reconnaissance aircraft. There are eight transport squadrons, 2 with Hercules turboprop transports, 2 with Caribou STOL transports, 1 with a mix of Ecureuil and Iroquois helicopters, 1 with Boeing Vertol CH-47C medium lift helicopters, 1 with Black Hawk helicopters, and a special transport squadron equipped with BAC One-Eleven, Mystère 20 and HS 748 aircraft. There is also one squadron operating B707 aircraft. Training aircraft include piston-engined Airtrainers, built in New Zealand, Aermacchi MB 326H jets for pilot training, and HS 748 aircraft for navigator training. A training unit has F-18 Hornets for crew conversion.

Training for commissioned rank is carried out at the RAAF Academy and Officers' Training School, both located at Point Cook, Victoria. Other major training activities which lead to commissioned rank include basic aircrew training and technical and commercial cadet schemes. Basic ground training to tradesman level is conducted at RAAF technical training schools. Higher command and staff training is, in the main, carried out at the RAAF Staff College, Fairbairn, ACT.

Personnel (1989) 22,600. There is also an Australian Air Force Reserve.

Long, G. (ed.) *Australia in the War of 1939-45*. 22 vols. Canberra, 1952 ff.

O'Neil, R. and Horner, D. M., *Australian Defence Policy for the 1980s*. Univ. of Queensland Press, 1983

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Australia is a member of the UN, the Commonwealth, OECD, Colombo Plan, the South Pacific Commission and the South Pacific Bureau for Economic Co-operation.



## ECONOMY

**Financial relations with the States.** Since 1942 the Federal Government alone has levied taxes on incomes. In return for vacating this field of taxation, the State Governments are reimbursed by grants from the Federal Government out of revenue received. Payments to the States represent about one-third of Federal Government outlays, and in turn the payments State Governments receive from the Federal Government account for nearly half of their revenues.

The Financial Agreement of 1927 established the Australian Loan Council which represents the Federal and six State Governments, and co-ordinates domestic and overseas borrowings by these governments, including annual borrowing programmes. The Federal Government acts as a central borrowing agency in raising loans to finance the major part of those programmes. The Loan Council in 1984 agreed upon arrangements for the co-ordination of borrowings by semi-government and local authorities and government-owned companies.

**Budget.** In 1929, under a financial agreement between the Federal Government and States, approved by a referendum, the Federal Government took over all State debts existing on 30 June 1927 and agreed to pay \$A15.17m. a year for 58 years towards the interest charges thereon, and to make substantial contributions towards a sinking fund on State debt. The Sinking Fund arrangements were revised under an amendment to the agreement in 1976.

Receipts, Financing Transactions and Outlays of the Federal Government for years ending 30 June (in \$A1m.):

Receipts:	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89 <sup>1</sup>
Income tax	39,408	45,962	52,234	59,480
Gross PAYE	27,575	30,657	33,359	37,950
Companies	6,111	6,714	8,801	10,200
Sales tax	5,728	6,348	7,547	8,630
Excise				
Oil and LP gas and products	6,832	6,728	6,889	6,433
Other	2,373	2,557	78	2,217
Customs	3,339	3,228	3,683	3,592
<i>Total taxation</i>	<i>58,999</i>	<i>66,354</i>	<i>74,897</i>	<i>82,318</i>
Interest from States and Northern Territory	2,331	2,427	2,479	2,507
Interest from non-Budget authorities	819	782	789	816
Rent, Dividends, etc.	2,347	2,935	2,309	1,517
<i>Total non-tax receipts</i>	<i>5,794</i>	<i>6,491</i>	<i>5,908</i>	<i>5,164</i>
<b>Total Receipts</b>	<b>64,792</b>	<b>72,846</b>	<b>80,806</b>	<b>87,481</b>
<b>Outlays:</b>				
Defence	6,673	7,209	7,422	7,658
Forces manpower	1,948	2,008	2,137	2,201
Equipment, stores, etc.	2,620	2,903	2,614	2,785
Education	4,917	5,218	5,714	6,307
Universities	2,528	2,672	2,841	3,092
Schools and pre-schools	1,755	1,822	1,950	2,126
Student assistance	402	476	641	786
Health	6,871	7,494	8,283	10,797
Medical services and benefits	2,899	3,210	3,477	3,725
Hospital services and benefits	1,553	1,540	1,674	3,625
Pharmaceutical services and benefits	725	867	1,059	1,156
Nursing home and domiciliary benefits	1,167	1,292	1,454	1,594

Outlays ( <i>continued</i> )	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89 <sup>1</sup>
Social Security and Welfare				
Aged	19,143	20,541	22,464	23,719
Veterans and dependants	6,062	6,484	7,240	7,861
Handicapped	2,575	2,754	3,118	3,195
Widows and single parents	1,875	2,149	2,481	2,702
Families	2,162	2,319	2,527	2,542
Unemployed and sick	1,781	1,664	1,843	2,020
Housing and Community Amenities	3,622	4,008	4,037	4,077
Assistance to States and Northern Territory	1,481	1,680	1,380	1,329
Urban and Regional Development	1,033	1,191	1,019	906
Culture and Recreation	45	102	64	111
Transport and Communication	906	949	1,034	1,072
Industry, assistance and development	1,844	1,719	1,712	1,692
Labour and employment	1,988	1,812	2,166	2,097
Public Services	1,045	1,035	1,038	1,071
Administration	4,783	5,279	5,699	5,754
Foreign affairs and overseas aid	2,128	2,434	2,627	2,780
Payments to or for States, NT and local governments	1,325	1,303	1,394	1,464
<i>Total outlay</i>	13,587	14,437	14,830	13,235
	70,429	75,491	78,764	82,013

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

The following table shows Government securities on issue on account of the Commonwealth Government and States, at 30 June 1985:

<i>Repayable in Australian currency</i>	<i>Total (\$A1m.)</i>
Treasury bonds	21,288.6
Australian savings bonds	3,914.7
Treasury notes	2,894.7
Total (including other categories)	28,718.7
<i>Repayable in foreign currency</i> <i>(Australian currency equivalent)</i>	9,845.2

Gross foreign debt at 30 June 1988 was \$A114,900; net foreign debt, \$A88,700.

*Australian National Accounts.* Australian Bureau of Statistics. 1953-54 to date  
*Public Authority Finance: Commonwealth Government Finance, Australia.* Australian Bureau of Statistics, 1962-63 to date  
*Public Authority Finance: State and Local Government Finance, Australia.* Australian Bureau of Statistics, 1971-72 to date  
*Public Authority Finance: Government Financial Estimates.* Australian Bureau of Statistics, 1975-76 to date  
*National Income and Expenditure.* Australian Bureau of Statistics. Canberra, 1946 to date  
*Treasury Information Bulletin* (and Supplements). Canberra Treasury Dept., 1956 to date (quarterly)  
 Hagger, A. J., *A Guide to Australian Economic and Social Statistics.* Sydney, 1983

**Currency.** On 14 Feb. 1966 Australia adopted a system of decimal currency. The currency unit, the *dollar* (\$) is divided into 100 *cents*. The transition period ended on 31 July 1967. Decimal notes are issued in denominations of \$2, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100. Coins are issued in denominations of 1, 2, 5, 10, 20 and 50 cents and \$1.

Australian notes, issued by the note-issue department of the Reserve Bank, are legal tender throughout Australia. The total value of notes in circulation on 30 June 1984 was \$A7,205m., of which \$A6,418m. was held by the public. In March 1989, US\$1 = 1.23 *dollars*; £1 = 2.12 *dollars*.

**Banking.** The banking system in Australia comprises:

(a) The Reserve Bank of Australia. This is the central bank which in addition to its central banking business (including the note-issue department) provides special finance through the rural credits department for the processing, manufacture and marketing of primary produce.

The Reserve Bank's functions and responsibilities derive from the Reserve Bank Act 1959 and the Banking Act 1959, and the Financial Corporations Act 1974.

(b) Four major trading banks: (i) The Commonwealth Bank of Australia; (ii) 3 private trading banks: The Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd, Westpac Banking Corporation and the National Commercial Banking Corporation of Australia Ltd.

(c) Other trading banks: (i) 3 State Government banks—The State Bank of New South Wales, The State Bank of South Australia, and the Rural and Industries Bank of Western Australia; (ii) one joint stock bank—The Bank of Queensland Ltd, formerly The Brisbane Permanent Building and Banking Co. Ltd, which has specialized business in one district only; (iii) The Australian Bank Ltd; (iv) branches of 17 overseas banks—the restrictions on foreign banks operating in Australia, and on foreign investment in the merchant banks, were lifted in 1984–85.

(d) The Commonwealth Development Bank of Australia.

(e) The Australian Resources Development Bank Ltd opened on 29 March 1968, to assist Australian enterprises in developing Australia's natural resources, through direct loans and equity investment or by re-financing loans made by trading banks. The bank is jointly owned by the 4 major Australian trading banks.

(f) The Primary Industry Bank of Australia Ltd commenced operations on 22 Sept. 1978. The equity capital of the bank consists of eight shares. Seven shares are held by the Australian Government and the major trading banks while the eighth share is held equally by the 4 State banks. The main objective of the bank is to facilitate the provision of loans to primary producers on longer terms than are otherwise generally available. The role of the bank is restricted to re-financing loans made by banks and other financial institutions.

(g) Savings banks, of which the leader is the Commonwealth Savings Bank (the main source of housing loans). Total deposits, all savings banks, (at 30 June 1985). \$38,878m.; (1986), \$42,614m.; (1987), \$52,495m.

For history of the Reserve Bank see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK 1986–87, p. 104.

Reserve Bank, 30 June 1987, total liabilities \$26,541m., of which notes on issue, \$9,801m.; deposits by trading banks, \$3,472m.; deposits by Commonwealth Government, \$2,090m.; assets \$26,541m. of which gold and foreign exchange (including IMF Special Drawing Rights), \$17,120m., treasury notes \$1,657m., other Commonwealth Government securities \$6,638m.

At 30 June 1984, 11 savings banks were operating in Australia. These are the 4 major savings banks being wholly owned subsidiaries of the trading banks; the Bank of New Zealand Saving Bank Ltd; the Bank of Queensland Saving Bank Ltd; the State Bank of Victoria and the Savings Bank of South Australia; the Rural and Industries Bank of Western Australia, and 2 Trustee Savings Banks in Tasmania. At 30 June 1984 these savings banks had 5,592 branches and 10,533 agencies throughout Australia.

The following table is a summary of banking business (in \$A1m.) in the several States of the Commonwealth:

Particulars	NSW <sup>1</sup>	Vic.	Q'ld	SA	WA	Tas.	Australia (including A.C.T. and N.T.)
All trading banks: <sup>1</sup>							
Fixed deposits	10,961	5,876	4,013	1,225	2,052	344	24,891
Current deposits	5,686	3,295	2,055	752	1,027	231	13,494
Advances	13,148	6,388	4,879	2,840	2,966	445	31,743
Savings bank deposits <sup>2</sup>	9,532	12,916	4,709	3,327	2,214	1,103	34,328

<sup>1</sup> Weekly averages for June 1984.

<sup>2</sup> At June 1984.

*Treasury Information Bulletin.* Department of the Treasury. Canberra, 1956 to date (quarterly)



**Weights and Measures.** Conversion to the metric system is in progress.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production 1985-86, 124,369m. kwh. Supply 240 and 250 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Production (1,000 tonnes):

	1986
Copper	248
Lead	448
Zinc	712
Tin	9
Coal	139,000
Lignite	38,000
Iron Ore	94,000
Gold (tonnes)	75
Crude Oil (1 m. tonnes)	24.5 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1988.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 there were about 169,700 farms and ranches, covering 64% of the land area. Ninety per cent of farmland is grazing land. Where crops are grown, the most important are wheat (10m. tonnes from 8.9m. hectares in 1987); sugar cane (25m. from 306,000); barley (3.29m.); oats (1.86m.) and rice (780,000). Vineyards (57,000 hectares) produced 372m. litres from 512,000 tonnes. The livestock farms produced beef and veal (1.5m. tonnes); mutton and lamb (583,000); pigmeats (282,000); poultry-meats (384m.); wool (887,000); whole milk (6,162m. litres).

Gross value of production, 1987, in \$A1m.:

	<i>NSW</i>	<i>Vic.</i>	<i>Q'ld</i>	<i>SA</i>	<i>WA</i>	<i>Tas.</i>	<i>Aust.<sup>1</sup></i>
Wheat	723.8	428.2	128.4	390	858.9	0.7	2,530
Sugar cane	27.4		558.9				586.4
Barley	73.5	63.8	36.9	183.8	71.3	3.3	432.6
Oats	58.1	43.8	2.5	15.6	43.5	1.3	164.8
Rice	80.5		4.6				85.1
Grapes	55.6	117.8	4.3	82	12	0.4	272.2
Cotton	308.1		64.4				372.5
Fruit	232.4	203.6	191.1	120.2	58.9	29.8	837.2
Vegetables	149.9	227.4	252.4	98.8	89.2	62.3	885.4
Livestock disposals	1,244.7	1,066.6	1,349.5	326.4	407.9	111.1	4,611.1
Wool	1,098.7	726.3	292.4	389.3	716.3	108.7	3,333.6
Whole milk	250.2	643.8	159.6	80.8	59	64	1,257.4

<sup>1</sup> Includes Northern Territory and Australian Capital Territory.

**Livestock (in 1,000) at 31 March 1987:**

	<i>NSW</i>	<i>Vic.</i>	<i>Q'ld</i>	<i>SA</i>	<i>WA</i>	<i>Tas.</i>	<i>N. Terr.</i>	<i>ACT</i>	<i>Australia</i>
Cattle	4,868	3,478	9,011	912	1,660	535	1,439	12	21,915
Sheep	52,192	26,586	14,627	17,234	33,463	4,954	1	100	149,157
Pigs	830	432	579	422	295	46	7	—	2,611

**Forestry.** At 31 March 1981 there were 741,000 hectares of coniferous plantations.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Statistics of the manufacturing industries in Australia in 1986-87: Number of establishments, 28,795; workers employed, 1,022,700; salaries and wages paid, \$A21,415.7m.; value-added, \$A45,420.7m. (excludes small single-establishment enterprises employing less than 4 persons).

## Manufacturing by sector, 1986-87:

<i>Sector</i>	<i>Employment</i>	<i>Value Added (\$Am.)</i>
Food, beverages and tobacco	167,500	8,394.2
Meat products	45,100	1,663.7
Textiles	34,400	1,409.0
Clothing and footwear	74,200	1,982.0
Wood and products	45,700	1,617.3
Printing and allied	85,500	3,777.5
Chemical, petroleum and coal products	53,500	4,115.3
Basic metals and products	73,600	4,379.7
Fabricated metal	97,300	3,522.4
Transport equipment	112,300	4,188.4
Other machinery and equipment	127,500	5,134.1

**Labour.** The majority of wage and salary earners in Australia have their minimum wages and conditions of work prescribed in awards of industrial arbitration authorities established under federal and State legislation. However, in some States, some conditions of work (e.g., normal weekly hours of work, long-service leave, annual leave) are set down in State legislation. In Sept. 1987 it was estimated that the average weekly earnings of all employees were \$A393.20. Wage and salary earners are 84% of the labour force. Average working week, 37.5 hours. About 40% of the total workforce is female.

Employees in all States are covered by workers' compensation legislation and by certain industrial award provisions relating to work injuries.

During 1987 industrial disputes involving stoppages of work of 10 man-days or more accounted for 1,316,400 working days lost. In these disputes 605,300 workers were involved.

The following table shows estimates (in 1,000) of the civilian population, by labour force status. The estimates are derived by the ABS from the population survey which is based on a sample of dwellings, carried out by personal interview, covering about two-thirds of 1% of the population.

	<i>May 1984</i>	<i>May 1985</i>	<i>May 1986</i>	<i>May 1987</i>
In the labour force	7,127.5	7,238.6	7,536.7	7,719.0
Employed	6,490.5	6,631.8	6,944.5	7,084.0
Unemployed	637.0	606.7	592.2	635.0
Not in the labour force	4,622.3	4,704.0	4,624.1	4,721.9
Civilian population aged 15 years and over	11,744.8	11,942.6	12,160.9	12,440.9

The following table shows population survey estimates (in 1,000) of employed persons in Australia classified by industry:

<i>Industry<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Financial Year</i>	
	<i>1985-86</i>	<i>1986-87</i>
Agriculture, forestry and logging, fishing and hunting	435.4	421.3
Mining	106.7	101.7
Manufacturing	1,139.3	1,134.7
Food, beverages and tobacco	176.3	175.5
Metal products	191.3	185.4
Other manufacturing	771.7	773.8
Electricity, gas and water	143.4	132.7
Construction	474.6	497.3
Wholesale and retail trade	1,380.9	1,405.0
Transport and storage	375.0	389.0
Communication	143.2	139.9
Finance, property and business services	689.0	722.8
Public administration and defence	328.5	332.5
Community services	1,179.5	1,238.9
Recreation, personal and other services	452.8	477.7
Total employed	6,848.0	6,993.7

<sup>1</sup> Australian Standard Industrial Classification.

The following table shows the number of unemployed persons (from the population survey), job vacancies (from the ABS Job Vacancies survey) and the number of persons in receipt of unemployment benefit:

	May 1984	May 1985	May 1986	May 1987
Persons unemployed	637,000	606,700	592,200	635,000
Job Vacancies	34,800 <sup>2</sup>	56,600	54,400	53,800
Unemployment benefit recipients <sup>1</sup>	584,500	561,400	569,966	561,698

<sup>1</sup> Data relates to the month of June      <sup>2</sup> Not strictly comparable with earlier surveys.

**Trade Unions.** At the end of June 1987 there were 316 trade unions reporting in Australia with an estimated membership of 3,240,100. About 55% of wage and salary earners were estimated to be members of unions. In 1987 there were 40 unions with fewer than 100 members and 10 unions with 80,000 or more members. Many of the larger trade unions are affiliated with central labour organizations, the oldest and by far the largest being the Australian Council of Trade Unions formed in 1927.

*Labour Statistics 1987.* Australian Bureau of Statistics, Canberra, 1988

Portus, J. H., *The Development of Australian Trade Union Law.* Melbourne, 1958

Rawson, D. W., *A Handbook of Australian Trade Unions and Employees' Associations.* Canberra, 1977

**Commerce.** Throughout Australia there are uniform customs duties, and trade between the States is free.

Value of the total imports and exports for years ending 30 June, in \$A1,000:

	Imports	Exports
1984-85	29,049,445	29,708,113
1985-86	34,691,197	32,795,007
1986-87	37,021,910	35,782,583

The Australian customs tariff provides for preferences to goods produced in and shipped from certain specified countries such as UK, Canada, New Zealand and Ireland. Preferences occur as a result of reciprocal trade agreements between Australia and these countries.

Australia also has bilateral agreements with a number of other countries guaranteeing reciprocal treatment in matters of trade.

The Australia-New Zealand free-trade agreement came into force on 1 Jan. 1966 in certain scheduled goods.

In addition, Australia is a signatory to the multilateral General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT).

Principal commodities exported and imported from Australia (in \$A1,000):

Exports	1986-87 \$m.	Exports	1986-87 \$m.
Live animals	308.5	Crude fertilizers, minerals (not coal, petroleum, gems)	103.4
Meat and preparations	2,249.5	Metal ores and scrap	4,853.1
Dairy goods and eggs	467.6	Coal, coke and briquettes	5,456.1
Fish, shellfish and their preparations	600.5	Petroleum and products	1,622.1
Cereals and preparations	2,800.6	Gas, natural and manufactured	231.0
Vegetables and fruit	550.9	Animal oils and fats	89.7
Sugar and honey	694.0	Fixed vegetable oils and fats	22.3
Coffee, tea, cocoa, spices and their manufacturers	65.3	Processed oils and fats, waxes thereof	11.4
Animal feed (excl. unmilled cereal)	208.8	Organic chemicals	50.8
Miscellaneous edible products	48.0	Inorganic chemicals	65.8
Beverages	132.9	Dyeing, colouring and tanning materials	35.1
Tobacco and manufactures	18.6	Medicinal and pharmaceutical products	166.3
Raw hides and skins	543.3	Essential oils, perfume and cleansing preparations	57.2
Oil seeds and fruit	41.1	Manufactured fertilizers	5.3
Crude rubber (incl. synthetic and reclaimed)	5.6	Explosives and pyrotechnic products	5.4
Cork and wood	361.9		
Pulp and waste paper	27.6		
Textile fibres (not wool tops)	3,871.5		



<i>Exports (continued)</i>	<i>1986-87 \$m.</i>	<i>Exports</i>	<i>1986-87 \$m.</i>
Artificial resins, plastic and cellulose materials	137.5	Telecommunications and sound equipment	87.6
Other chemical materials and products	140.0	Electrical machinery n.e.s., and parts	255.6
Leather and manufactures, dressed furskins	118.4	Road vehicles (inc. air-cushion vehicles)	438.7
Rubber manufactures	41.1	Other transport equipment	577.0
Cork and wood manufactures (not furniture)	9.2	Sanitary, plumbing, heating and lighting fittings	15.6
Paper, board and pulp	103.9	Furniture and parts	33.6
Textile yarn, fabrics and products	246.0	Travel goods, handbags etc.	4.2
Non-metallic mineral goods n.e.s.	174.7	Clothing and accessories	39.3
Iron and steel	590.2	Footwear	9.4
Non-ferrous metals	2,307.8	Professional, scientific and controlling instruments	176.7
Metal manufactures n.e.s.	243.4	Photographic and optical goods, watches and clocks	249.6
Power generators	295.5	Miscellaneous manufactured articles, n.e.s.	325.4
Special machinery, industrial	305.4	Commodities and transactions, n.e.s.	2,337.1
General machinery and parts, industrial	236.3		
Office machines and data-processing equipment	390.0	Total trade	35,782.6
<i>Imports</i>	<i>1986-87 \$m.</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>1986-87 \$m.</i>
Live animals	112.8	Organic chemicals	880.6
Meat and preparations	16.3	Inorganic chemicals	321.6
Dairy goods and eggs	81.0	Dyeing, colouring and tanning materials	189.0
Fish, shellfish and preparations	422.6	Medicinal and pharmaceutical products	507.9
Cereals and preparations	72.8	Essential oils, perfume and cleansing preparations	241.7
Vegetables and fruit	271.5	Manufactured fertilizers	139.8
Sugar, sugar preparations and honey	28.3	Explosives and pyrotechnic products	14.1
Coffee, tea, cocoa, spices and their manufactures	404.9	Artificial resins, plastic and cellulose materials	783.7
Animal feed (excluding unmilled cereal)	54.5	Other chemical materials and products	393.5
Miscellaneous edible products	147.1	Leather and manufactures, dressed furskins	151.5
Beverages	210.7	Rubber manufactures	461.9
Tobacco and manufactures	116.1	Cork and wood manufactures (not furniture)	169.1
Raw hides and skins	3.8	Paper, Board and pulp	1,012.8
Oil seeds and oleaginous fruit	9.7	Textile yarns, fabrics and products	1,831.3
Crude rubber (including synthetic and reclaimed)	87.7	Non-metallic mineral goods, n.e.s.	712.6
Cork and wood	297.6	Iron and steel	634.4
Pulp and waste paper	171.1	Non-ferrous metals	203.0
Textile fibres (not wool tops)	150.4	Metal manufactures n.e.s.	1,009.1
Crude fertilizers and minerals (not coal, petroleum, gems)	224.2	Power-generating machinery and equipment	1,216.2
Metal ores and scrap	38.8	Special machinery, industrial	1,736.8
Coal, coke and briquettes	2.8	General machinery and parts, industrial	1,983.5
Petroleum and products	1,742.2	Office machines and data-processing equipment	2,557.2
Gas, natural and manufactured	4.3	Telecommunications and sound equipment	1,497.6
Animal oils and fats	2.0	Electrical machinery n.e.s., and parts	1,884.6
Fixed vegetable oils and fats	64.3		
Processed oils and fats, and waxes thereof	25.1		

<i>Imports (continued)</i>	<i>1986-87</i> <i>\$m.</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>1986-87</i> <i>\$m.</i>
Road vehicles (including air-cushion vehicles)	2,720.0	Professional, scientific and controlling instruments	907.0
Other transport equipment	1,345.1	Photographic and optical goods, watches and clocks	720.0
Sanitary, plumbing, heating and lighting fixtures	75.4	Miscellaneous manufactured articles, n.e.s.	2,160.2
Furniture and parts	235.3	Commodities and transactions, n.e.s.	1,894.0
Travel goods, handbags, etc.	197.7		
Clothing and accessories	656.5		
Footwear	250.8	Total trade	37,021.9

Total trade in (\$A1m.) with the more important countries, according to origin (imports) and consignment (exports):

<i>From or to</i>	<i>1985-86</i>		<i>1986-87</i>	
	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
Belgium-Luxembourg	287.1	259.8	311.9	297.6
Canada	691.1	460.4	750.5	637.1
China-excl. Taiwan Province	435.0	1,498.0	588.8	1,590.5
Egypt, Arab Republic of	...	560.9	...	362.5
France	776.1	710.3	827.3	908.8
Germany, Fed. Republic of	2,718.4	885.8	2,782.1	1,101.1
Hong Kong	676.5	722.4	800.0	1,086.1
India	170.7	428.6	203.4	425.4
Indonesia	209.3	526.5	310.6	527.6
Iran	...	305.3	4.4	343.8
Italy	1,094.7	688.4	1,110.3	823.7
Japan	8,248.3	9,358.4	7,737.1	9,088.0
Korea, Rep. of	556.7	1,322.0	898.0	1,499.6
Malaysia	325.4	516.3	409.7	590.0
New Zealand	1,454.5	1,507.6	143.2	1,775.9
Pakistan	...	126.8	61.0	100.5
Papua New Guinea	170.9	558.0	189.7	651.1
Saudi Arabia	470.8	493.6	437.3	298.0
Singapore, Republic of	745.2	725.8	755.9	779.8
Sweden	657.9	91.2	655.3	120.9
Taiwan	1,161.1	1,064.1	1,517.5	1,227.6
USSR	...	969.7	151.4	687.7
UK	2,516.0	1,151.2	2,705.5	1,374.9
USA	7,284.8	3,253.6	8,118.4	4,194.6

*Overseas Trade.* Australian Bureau of Statistics. Canberra, 1906 to date

Total trade between UK and Australia (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	612,087	736,986	643,238	673,837	745,570
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,186,521	1,373,184	1,227,647	1,223,613	1,377,997

**Tourism.** During 1987, 1.7m. overseas visitors arrived in Australia intending to stay for less than 12 months; tourists spent \$A3,700m.

Australian Bureau of Statistics, Canberra: *Rural Industries*. 1962-63 to date.—*Manufacturing Establishments: Details of Operations*. 1968-69 to date.—*Non-rural Primary Industries*. 1967-68 and 1968-69.—*Value of Production*. 1964-65 to 1968-69.—*Manufacturing Industry*. 1963-64 to 1967-68.—*Manufacturing Commodities*. 1963-64 and 1964-65.—*Building and Construction*. 1964-65 to date

*Quarterly Review of Agricultural Economics*. Bureau of Agricultural Economics. Canberra, 1948 to date

*Developments in Australian Manufacturing Industry*. Department of Trade. Melbourne, 1954-55 to date (annual)

*The Australian Mineral Industry Review*. Department of National Development—Bureau of Mineral Resources, Geology and Geophysics. Canberra, 1948 to date

*Australian Economy*. Department of the Treasury. Canberra, 1956 to date

Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy. *Proceedings: New Series*. Melbourne, 1912 to date

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The length of roads in Australia for general traffic (1987) is 840,000 km, of which (1985) 266,686 is sealed, 200,862 of gravel, crushed stone or other improved surface, and 337,179 of cleared or formed surface only.

At 30 June 1984, 8,832,800 motor vehicles, including 6,636,200 cars and station wagons, 1,798,200 utilities, panel-vans, truck type vehicles and buses and 398,400 motor cycles, were registered in Australia. New motor vehicle registration figures for 1984-85 include 510,893 cars and station wagons, 100,089 utilities and panel-vans, 63,848 truck type vehicles and buses and 45,879 motor cycles.

**Railways.** Government railways for the year ended 30 June 1984:

<i>State:</i>	<i>System</i>	<i>Route-km open <sup>4</sup></i>	<i>Revenue train-km run, 1,000</i>	<i>Passenger journeys, 1,000</i>	<i>Goods and livestock, carried, 1,000 tonnes</i>	<i>Gross earnings, \$A1,000</i>	<i>Working expenses, \$A1,000</i>
	New South Wales	9,884	61,659	202,253	46,594	823,055	1,234,053
	Victoria	5,783	30,702	84,599	10,486	305,283	717,447
	Queensland	10,381	33,303	37,652	53,150	717,956	725,059
	South Australia <sup>3</sup>	130	3,697	69,680	...	50,277	126,127
	Western Australia	5,623	10,333	8,665	19,870	228,339	246,552
	Australian National <sup>1 2</sup>	7,450	10,238	357	12,083	227,063	325,170

<sup>1</sup> The Australian National Railways operates services of the former Commonwealth Railways, the non-metropolitan South Australian Railways and the Tasmanian Railways.

<sup>2</sup> Excludes Adelaide metropolitan rail passenger services and the Tasmanian Region.

<sup>3</sup> The South Australian State Transport Authority operates services in the Adelaide metropolitan area.

<sup>4</sup> Inter system traffic is included in the total for each system over which it passes.

The State railway gauges are: New South Wales, 1,435 mm; Victoria, 1,600 mm (325 km 1,435 mm); Queensland, 1,067 mm (111 km 1,435 mm); South Australia, 1,600 mm for 2,533 km, 1,824 km 1,435 mm and the rest 1,067 mm; West Australia, 137 km, 1,435 mm and the rest 1,067 mm, and Tasmania, 1,067 mm. Of the Australian National Railways, the gauge of the Trans-Australian and Australian Capital Territory is 1,435 mm, and for the Central Australia 1,067 mm for 869 km and 1,435 mm for 350 km. Under various Commonwealth-State standardization agreements, all the State capitals are now linked by 1,435 mm gauge track. The Central Australia railway extends as far north as Alice Springs (now standard gauge on new alignment from Tarcoola to Alice Springs).

**Aviation.** All civil flying in Australia and its Territories is subject to legislative control by the Australian Government. In some cases intrastate air services are also subject to legislative control by the relevant State Government. The administration of the Air Navigation Act and Regulations and other Commonwealth aviation legislation is a function of the Commonwealth Department of Aviation under the Minister for Aviation.

All Australian-owned airlines, except Qantas Airways, operate regular internal air services. During 1984-85 hours flown numbered 250,779; paying passengers carried numbered 11,359,700; weight of goods carried was 153,181 tonnes, and gross weight of mail was 18,467 tonnes.

During 1983 hours flown by Australian regular overseas services which are operated by or on behalf of Qantas numbered 89,952; km flown, 71 m.; paying passengers, 2,449,596; freight, 90,357 tonnes; mail, 4,744 tonnes.

Expenditure by the Aviation Portfolio on air transport for the year 1983-84 was \$A448.8m. Aviation related expenditure by other Australian Government Departments for the same period was \$A71.6m.

At 30 June 1984 there were 441 licensed aerodromes and 71 governmental aerodromes in Australia.

**Shipping.** As at 30 June 1983 the Australian merchant marine (vessels of 150 tons gross and over) consisted of 74 coastal vessels of 1,146,505 tons gross and 30 overseas vessels of 924,037 tons gross.



Entrances and clearances of vessels (with cargo and in ballast) engaged in overseas trade:

	<i>Entrances</i>		<i>Clearances</i>	
	<i>No.</i>	<i>DWT</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>DWT</i>
1982-83	9,998	315,465,880	9,914	316,847,814
1983-84	6,131	263,614,000	6,026	267,264,000

The following summary shows shipping activity by States, 1983-84:

<i>Particulars</i>	<i>NSW</i>	<i>Vic.</i>	<i>Q'ld</i>	<i>SA</i>	<i>WA</i>	<i>Tas.</i>	<i>N.T.</i>	<i>Aust.</i>
Overseas vessel arrivals								
Calls	2,607	1,903	2,142	853	2,621	469	268	10,863
DWT (1,000 tonnes)	78,331	43,407	71,325	19,651	133,714	12,591	7,839	366,859
Overseas cargo:								
Discharged 1,000 gross weight tonnes	6,324	4,321	2,413	2,326	4,928	476	1,208	22,859
Overseas vessel departures								
Calls	2,599	1,865	2,132	846	2,599	470	268	10,779
DWT (1,000 tonnes)	79,663	42,283	72,950	19,487	135,124	12,556	7,906	369,968
Overseas cargo								
Loaded 1,000 gross weight tonnes	37,475	7,236	40,506	5,264	94,651	5,026	4,742	197,048

**Post and Broadcasting.** Business, year ended 30 June 1985. Postal services revenue, \$A1,211.3m., of which mail services earned \$A1,080.5m.; expenditure \$A1,186.8m., of which labour cost \$A911.8m.

At 30 June 1985, there were 6,187,947 telephone services. Telecommunications revenue, \$A4,764.8m., of which telephone calls earned \$A2,640.4m.; expenditure, \$A4,379.7m., of which marketing and operations cost \$A890.1m. and interest \$A898.9m.

The National Broadcasting and Television Service is provided by the Australian Broadcasting Corporation, which at 30 June 1983 operated 95 medium-wave, 25 frequency modulation and 6 high-frequency radio stations, and 10 high-frequency radio stations for overseas services. In addition, 130 medium-wave, and 7 frequency modulation, commercial broadcasting stations plus 38 public radio stations (both MW and FM) were operating.

Television services are provided in each State, the Northern Territory and the Australian Capital Territory by the ABC and by commercial television stations. There were 272 national stations (including translators) and 50 commercial television stations in 1983.

The Overseas Telecommunications Commission (OTC), established by the Overseas Telecommunications Act 1946, is responsible for the establishment, maintenance, operation and development of all public telecommunications' services between Australia and other countries, between Australia and its external territories and with ships at sea.

**Cinemas** (1971). There were 976 cinemas including 241 drive-in cinemas, with a total seating capacity of about 478,000.

**Newspapers** (1981). There was 1 national newspaper (average daily circulation 126,000) and 14 metropolitan daily newspapers in Australia with a combined daily circulation of 3.6m. Of these, 3 papers published in Melbourne accounted for 1.3m. and 4 published in Sydney for 1.2m.

*Australian Transport.* Sydney, Institute of Transport, 1937 to date (quarterly)

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicial power of the Commonwealth of Australia is vested in the High Court of Australia (the Federal Supreme Court), in the Federal courts created by the Federal Parliament (the Federal Court of Australia and the Family Court of Australia) and in the State courts invested by Parliament with Federal jurisdiction.

**High Court.** The High Court consists of a Chief Justice and 6 other Justices, appointed by the Governor-General in Council. The Constitution confers on the High Court original jurisdiction, *inter alia*, in all matters arising under treaties or

affecting consuls or other foreign representatives, matters between the States of the Commonwealth, matters to which the Commonwealth is a party and matters between residents of different States. Federal Parliament may make laws conferring original jurisdiction on the High Court, *inter alia*, in matters arising under the Constitution or under any laws made by the Parliament. It has in fact conferred jurisdiction on the High Court in matters arising under the Constitution and in matters arising under certain laws made by Parliament.

The High Court may hear and determine appeals from its own Justices exercising original jurisdiction, from any other Federal Court, from a Court exercising Federal jurisdiction and from the Supreme Courts of the States. It also has jurisdiction to hear and determine appeals from the Supreme Courts of the Territories. The right of appeal from the High Court to the Privy Council was abolished in 1986.

*Other Federal Courts.* Since 1924, 4 other Federal courts have been created to exercise special Federal jurisdiction, *i.e.* the Federal Court of Australia, the Family Court of Australia, the Australian Industrial Court and the Federal Court of Bankruptcy. The Federal Court of Australia was created by the Federal Court of Australia Act 1976 and began to exercise jurisdiction on 1 Feb. 1977. It exercises such original jurisdiction as is invested in it by laws made by the Federal Parliament including jurisdiction formerly exercised by the Australian Industrial Court and the Federal Court of Bankruptcy, and in some matters previously invested in either the High Court or State and Territory Supreme Courts. The Federal Court also acts as a court of appeal from State and Territory courts in relation to Federal matters. Appeal from the Federal Court to the High Court will be by way of special leave only. The State Supreme Courts have also been invested with Federal jurisdiction in bankruptcy.

*State Courts.* The general Federal jurisdiction of the State courts extends, subject to certain restrictions and exceptions, to all matters in which the High Court has jurisdiction or in which jurisdiction may be conferred upon it.

*Industrial Tribunals.* The major Federal industrial tribunal in Australia is the Australian Conciliation and Arbitration Commission, constituted by presidential members (with the status of judges) and commissioners. The Commission's functions include settling industrial disputes, making awards, determining the standard hours of work, wage fixation, etc. Questions of law, the judicial interpretation of awards, imposition of penalties, etc., in relation to industrial matters, are now dealt with by the Federal Court.

*Australian Digest of Reported Decisions of the Australian Courts and of Australian Appeals to the Privy Council.* 2nd ed. Sydney, Law Book Co. 1963—Supplements 1964 ff.

Baalman, J., *Outline of Law in Australia*. 4th ed. Sydney, 1979

Bates, N., *Introduction to Legal Studies*. 3rd ed. Melbourne, 1980

Benjafield, D. G. and Whitmore, H., *Principles of Australian Administrative Law*. 3rd ed. Sydney, 1966

Cowen, Z., *Federal Jurisdiction in Australia*. 2nd ed. Melbourne, 1978

Fleming, J. G., *The Law of Torts*. 5th ed. Sydney, 1977

Gunn, J. A. L., *Australian Income Tax Law and Practice*. 9th ed. by F. C. Bock and E. F.

Mannix, Sydney, 1969, and *Butterworth's Taxation Service* to date

Howard, C., *Criminal Law*. 3rd ed. Sydney, 1975

Mills, C. P. and Sorrell, G. H., *Federal Industrial Law*. (Nolan and Cohen.) 5th ed. Sydney, 1975

O'Connell, D. P. (ed.) *International Law in Australia*. Sydney, 1966

Paterson, W. E. and Ednie, H. H., *Australian Company Law*. 2nd ed. Sydney, 1976, and *Butterworth's Company Service* to date

Sawer, G., *The Australian and the Law*. Melbourne, 1976

Twyford, J., *The Layman and the Law in Australia*. 2nd ed. Sydney, 1980

Wynes, A., *Legislative, Executive and Judicial Powers in Australia*. 5th ed. Sydney, 1976

Yorston, R. K. and Fortescue, E. E., *Australian Mercantile Law*. 14th ed. Sydney, 1971

**Religion.** Under the Constitution the Commonwealth cannot make any law to establish any religion, to impose any religious observance or to prohibit the free exercise of any religion, nor can it require a religious test as qualification for office or public trust under the Commonwealth. The following percentages refer to those

religions with the largest number of adherents at the census of 1986. The census question on religion was not obligatory, however.

Christian, 73% of population; Catholic, 26%; Anglican, 23.9%; Uniting, 7.6%; Presbyterian, 3.6%; Orthodox, 2.7%; Baptist, 1.3%; Lutheran, 1.3%; Church of Christ, 0.6%; Religion other than Christian 2.%, No religion 12.7%, No statement 12.3%.

**Education.** The Governments of the Australian States and the Northern Territory have the major responsibility for education, including the administration and substantial funding of primary, secondary, and technical and further education. In most States, a single Education Department is responsible for these three levels, but in New South Wales and South Australia there is a separate department responsible solely for technical and further education and in Victoria, a Technical and Further Education Board. Furthermore, in New South Wales an Education Commission advises the Minister on primary, secondary and post-secondary education.

The Australian Government is directly responsible for education services in the Australian Capital Territory, administered through an education authority, and for services to Norfolk Island, Christmas Island and the Cocos (Keeling) Islands. The Australian Government provides supplementary finance to the States and is responsible for the total funding of universities and colleges of advanced education. It also has special responsibilities for student assistance, education programmes for Aboriginal people and children from non-English-speaking backgrounds, and for international relations in education.

The Australian Constitution empowers the Federal Government to make grants to the States and to place conditions upon such grants. There are two national Education Commissions which advise the Federal Government on the financial needs of educational institutions. The Commonwealth Schools Commission, established in 1973, advises on financial assistance to the States for schools. The Commonwealth Tertiary Education Commission advises on providing the States with total funding for universities and colleges of advanced education, and supplementary assistance for their institutions of technical and further education.

In 1984 legislation was passed to reactivate the national Curriculum Development Centre (CDC) within the framework of the Commonwealth Schools Commission. The CDC's functions are to concentrate on co-ordination and dissemination and on sponsoring the development of materials through contract arrangements with other agencies.

School attendance is compulsory between the ages of 6 and 15 years (16 years in Tasmania), at either a government school or a recognized non-government educational institution. Many Australian children attend pre-schools for a year before entering school (usually in sessions of 2-3 hours, for 2-5 days per week). Government schools are usually co-educational and comprehensive. Non-government schools have been traditionally single-sex, particularly in secondary schools, but there is a trend towards co-education. Tuition is free at government schools, but fees are normally charged at non-government schools.

The following is a summary at July 1987 of primary and secondary school education:

	Schools		Teachers <sup>1</sup>		Pupils <sup>2</sup>	
	Government	Non-government	Government schools	Non-government schools	Government schools	Non-government schools
<i>States and Territories</i>						
New South Wales	2,210	852	47,323	16,580	755,084	275,903
Victoria	2,091	729	41,432	16,192	537,895	253,086
Queensland	1,322	386	23,996	6,889	375,810	119,249
South Australia	717	177	13,951	3,400	187,388	53,959
Western Australia	733	237	12,552	3,807	208,078	62,662
Tasmania	261	66	4,732	1,130	65,401	17,602
Northern Territory	143	22	2,158	346	26,707	5,176
Aust. Cap. Terr.	98	35	2,829	1,200	40,379	20,504
	7,575	2,504	148,972	49,543	2,196,742	808,141

<sup>1</sup> Full-time teachers plus the full-time equivalent of part-time teaching.

<sup>2</sup> Full-time pupils only.



In post-secondary education, tuition fees were abolished in 1974 and student allowances are provided for full-time students subject to a means test. Universities are autonomous institutions, as are the substantial majority of colleges of advanced education. While both offer degree courses, colleges also offer diploma and associate diploma courses; these tend to be vocational or of applied learning.

Students enrolled at university (1985) 175,476 as follows:

<i>Type of Course</i>		<i>Type of Enrolment</i>	
Doctorate	7,805	Full-time internal	107,427
Master	16,749	Part-time internal	51,562
Bachelor	137,490	External	16,487
Non-degree	13,432		

University teaching staff, full-time and full-time equivalent in 1985, 10,539.

Other advanced education (1985) 195,231 students enrolled and 11,039 staff.

Type of institution and enrollment:

College of advanced education	184,335
Institute of advanced education within a university	2,960
Technical and further education institution	5,275
Other Commonwealth institution	312
Other institution	2,349
Full-time internal	97,360
Part-time internal	68,759
External	29,112

Teacher education usually takes place in colleges of advanced education, though a substantial number of secondary teachers and a few primary teachers receive their pre-service education in a university. Government school teachers are recruited by the State and Northern Territory departments of education, and in the Australian Capital Territory by the ACT Schools Authority and the Public Service Board. Non-government schools recruit their own teachers.

The Australian Government provides assistance for students. The Secondary Allowances Scheme aims to help parents with a limited income to keep their children at school for the final 2 years of secondary education. The Assistance for Isolated Children Scheme provides special support to families whose children are isolated from schooling or are handicapped. The Adult Secondary Education Assistance Scheme provides assistance for mature-age students undertaking a full-time one-year matriculation level programme or a two-year programme if studies beyond the tenth year in the Australian secondary school system have not previously been undertaken. The Tertiary Education Assistance Scheme is a means-tested scheme to assist students enrolled for full-time study in approved courses at post-secondary institutions. Allowances are also available for post-graduate study and overseas study. Aboriginal students are eligible for assistance under the Aboriginal Secondary Grants Scheme and the Aboriginal Study Grants Scheme. The States also offer various schemes of assistance, principally at the primary and secondary levels.

National bodies with a co-ordinating, planning or funding rôle include: the Australian Education Council, comprising the Federal and State Ministers of Education, the Conference of Directors-General of Education and an advisory body, the National Aboriginal Education Committee.

Total expenditure on education in Australia (public and private sectors) in 1983-84 was estimated at \$A10,805m.

*Australian Education Directory*. Canberra, 1983

*Directory of Higher Education Courses 1982*. Canberra, 1982

*Primary and Secondary Schooling in Australia*. Canberra, 1977

Schools Commission, *Triennium 1982-84. Report for 1982*. Canberra, 1981

Tertiary Education Commission, *Report for 1982-84, Triennium Vol. 2: Recommendations for 1982*. Canberra, 1981

**Health.** In 1987 there were an average 5.4 hospital beds per 1,000 population. There were 1,053 hospitals (general). The Royal Flying Doctor Service serves remote areas.

**Social Security and Welfare.** All Commonwealth Government social security pensions, benefits and allowances are financed from the Commonwealth Government's general revenue. In addition, assistance is provided for welfare services.

Expenditure on main programmes, 1987-88, \$A22,599m.

The following summarizes the conditions of the major benefits.

*Age and invalid pensions*—age pensions are payable to men 65 years of age or more and women 60 years of age or more who have lived in Australia for a specified period and, unless permanently blind, also satisfy an income test. Persons over 16 years of age who are permanently blind or permanently incapacitated for work to the extent of at least 85% may receive an invalid pension. There is no residence qualification for an invalid pension if the permanent incapacity or blindness occurred within Australia or during temporary absence from Australia. An income test must be satisfied for an invalid pension unless permanently blind. Additional amounts are paid to pensioners with dependent children. Supplementary assistance may be paid to a pensioner paying rent or private lodging subject to an income test. Remote area allowance is payable to pensioners living in income tax zone A, except for those aged 70 or more receiving the special rate of age pension. Supplementary assistance, additional pension for children, mother's/guardian's allowance and remote area allowance are not taxable.

*Wife's pension*—payable to the wife of an age or invalid pensioner if she is not eligible for a pension in her own right. The maximum rate and the income test are identical to those for age and invalid pensioners.

*Spouse carer's pension*—payable to the husband of an age or invalid pensioner who is providing constant care and attention at home for his wife if he is not eligible for pension in his own right. The maximum rate and the income test are identical to those for age and invalid pensions.

*Widow's pension*—widows, divorcees, certain deserted wives, women who have been the dependant of a man for 3 years immediately prior to his death and women whose husbands have been convicted of an offence and have been imprisoned for not less than 6 months may, if they satisfy a residence requirement and an income test, receive a widow's pension. If they have any dependent children they also receive a mother's/ guardian's allowance plus an additional allowance for each child. Persons who pay private rent may also receive supplementary assistance subject to an income test. Pensions are subject to income tax, but not mother's allowances, additional pension for children, supplementary assistance, or remote area allowance.

*Supporting parents benefit*—sole parents who have custody, care and control of any dependent children may, if they satisfy a residence requirement and an income test, receive supporting parents benefit. It is payable at the same rate as the widow's pension and is subject to the same income test. Mother's/guardian's allowance, additional pension for each dependent child, supplementary assistance and remote area allowance are also payable.

*Sheltered employment allowance*—is payable to disabled persons under age—pension age engaged in approved sheltered employment who are qualified to receive invalid pension. The rates of payment and allowances and income test are the same as invalid pension.

*Rehabilitation allowance*—persons undertaking a rehabilitation programme with the Commonwealth Rehabilitation Service who are eligible for a social security pension or benefit are eligible to receive a non taxable rehabilitation allowance during treatment or training and for up to 6 months thereafter. The allowance is equivalent to the invalid pension and is subject to the same income test.

*Family Allowance*—is paid without income test to assist families with children under 16 years or dependent full-time students aged 16 years to under 25 years. It is not subject to income tax.



*Family income supplement*—payable subject to an income test to families with one or more children eligible for family allowances so long as they are not in receipt of any Commonwealth pension, benefit or allowance which provides additional payment for dependent children; this is not taxable.

*Handicapped child's allowance*—payable to parents or guardians of severely physically or mentally handicapped children in the family home and needing constant care and attention. The allowance is free of an income test but is subject to a residence qualification similar to that for family allowance. It may also be paid, subject to an income test, in cases where the child is handicapped but not severely, and requires marginally less care and attention.

*Double orphan's pension*—the guardian of a child under 16 years of age or of a full-time student under 25, both of whose parents are dead, or one of whose parents is dead and the whereabouts of the other parent unknown, and for refugee children where both parents are outside Australia, may receive double orphan's pension. The payment is not subject to an income test nor is it taxable.

*Unemployment and sickness benefits*—are paid, subject to an income test, to persons between the ages of 16 and age pension age who are unemployed, able and willing to work and making efforts to obtain work, or temporarily unable to work because of sickness or injury. To be granted benefit a person must have resided in Australia for at least 12 months preceding his claim or intend to remain in Australia permanently. For unemployment benefit purposes unemployment must not be due to industrial action by that person or by members of a union to which that person is a member.

*Service Pension* is a Social-Welfare type payment paid by the Department of Veterans' Affairs, similar to the age and invalid pensions provided by the Department of Social Security. Male Veterans who have reached the age of 60 years or are permanently unemployable, and who served in a theatre of war, are eligible for service pension subject to an income test. Female Veterans who served abroad or embarked for service abroad, and who have reached the age of 55 or are permanently unemployable, are also eligible. Wives of service pensioners are also eligible provided that they do not receive a pension from the Department of Social Security.

*Disability pension* is a compensatory payment in respect of incapacity attributable to war service. It is paid at a rate commensurate with the degree of incapacity suffered from service-related disabilities and is free of any income test. A separate allowance may be paid to dependents.

In addition to cash benefits, welfare services are provided either directly or through State and Local government authorities and voluntary agencies, for people with special needs.

*Medicare*. On 1 Feb. 1984 the Commonwealth Government introduced the new universal health scheme known as Medicare. This covers: Automatic entitlement under a single public health fund to medical and optometrical benefits of 85% of the Medical Benefits Schedule fee, with a maximum patient payment for any service where the Schedule fee is charged; access without direct charge to public hospital accommodation and to inpatient and outpatient treatment by doctors appointed by the hospital; the restoration of funds for community health to approximately the same real level as 1975; the reduction in charges for private treatment in shared wards of public hospitals, and increases in the daily bed subsidy payable to private hospitals.

The Medicare programme is financed in part by a 1% levy on taxable incomes, with low income cut-off points. The tax rebate formerly paid for basic health insurance contributions ceased from 30 June 1983. In addition, the Commonwealth's annual contribution to the Health Benefits Reinsurance Trust Fund was reduced from \$A100m. to \$A20m. from 1 July 1983. Under the provisions of the National Health Act, the Commonwealth Government subsidises registered health insurance organizations by contributing to the Reinsurance Trust Fund for payments of benefits to patients with hospital treatment in excess of 35 days.



Medicare benefits are available to all persons ordinarily resident in Australia with the exception of members of foreign diplomatic missions and their dependants; visitors staying more than 6 months.

*Medical Benefits.* The Health Insurance Act provides for a Medical Benefits Schedule which lists medical services and the Schedule (standard) fee applicable in each State in respect of each medical service. Schedule fees are set and updated by an independent fees tribunal appointed by the Government. The fees so determined are to apply for Medicare benefits purposes.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Australia in Great Britain (Australia House, Strand, London, WC2B 4LA)  
*High Commissioner:* Douglas McClelland, AC.

Of Great Britain in Australia (Commonwealth Ave., Canberra)  
*High Commissioner:* Sir John Coles, KCMG.

Of Australia in the USA (1601 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)  
*Ambassador:* F. Rawdon Dalrymple.

Of the USA in Australia (Moonah Pl., Canberra)  
*Ambassador:* Mel Sembler.

Of Australia to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Richard A. Woolcott.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Australian Bureau of Statistics (Cameron Offices, Belconnen, A.C.T., 2616) was established in 1906. All the activities of the Bureau are covered by the Census and Statistics Act, which confers authority to collect information and contains secrecy provisions to ensure that individual particulars obtained are not divulged. Under the provisions of the Statistics (Arrangements with States) Act which became law on 12 May 1956, the statistical services of all the States have been integrated with the Australian Bureau. An outline of the development of statistics in Australia is published in the *Official Year Book*, No. 51, 1965. *Australian Statistician:* Dr R. J. Cameron.

The principal publications of the Bureau are:

*Official Year Book of Australia.* 1907 to date

*Pocket Year Book Australia.* 1913 to date

*Monthly Summary of Statistics Australia.* Oct. 1937 to date

*Digest of Current Economic Statistics Australia.* Aug. 1959 to date

*Catalogue of Publications,* 1976 to date

## Other Official Publications

*Atlas of Australian Resources.* Dept. of Resources and Energy, Division of National Mapping

*Climatological Atlas of Australia.* Bureau of Meteorology, Melbourne, 1940

*Norfolk Island—Annual Report.* Dept. of Territories and Local Government

*Cocos (Keeling) Islands—Annual Report.* Dept. of Territories and Local Government

*Christmas Island—Annual Report.* Dept. of Territories and Local Government

*Australian Books: Select List of Works About or Published in Australia.* National Library of Australia, Canberra, 1934 to date

*Australian National Bibliography.* Canberra, 1936 to date

*Historical Records of Australia.* 34 vols. National Library, Canberra, 1914–25

*Australia Handbook.* Dept. of Administrative Services, Australian Information Services

*Annual Report.* Dept. of Foreign Affairs, Canberra, 1932 to date

*Australian Foreign Affairs Record.* Dept. of Foreign Affairs, Canberra, 1936 to date

*Australian Treaty List.* Dept. of Foreign Affairs, Canberra, consolidated volume from Federation to 1970 with supplements to date

Coxon, H., *Australian Official Publications.* Oxford, 1981

*Documents on Australian Foreign Policy 1937–49.* Vols. I–VI. Dept. of Foreign Affairs, Canberra, 1975–83

*Diplomatic List.* Dept. of Foreign Affairs, Canberra, 1949 to date

*Consular and Trade Representatives.* Dept. of Foreign Affairs, Canberra, 1936 to date

### Non-Official Publications

- Australian Encyclopædia*. 12 vols. Sydney, 1983
- Australian Quarterly: A Quarterly Review of Australian Affairs*. Sydney, 1929 to date
- Ball, D. and Langtry, J. O., *Civil Defence and Australia's Security in a Nuclear Age*. Sydney, 1984
- Blainey, G., *The Tyranny of Distance: How Distance Shaped Australia's History*. Melbourne, 1982
- Caves, P. E. and Krause, L. B., *The Australian Economy: A View from the North*. Sydney, 1984
- Clark, M., *A Short History of Australia*. Melbourne, 1981
- Deery, S. and Plowman, D., *Australian Industrial Relations*. Sydney, 1985
- Dixson, M., *The Real Matilda: Women and Identity in Australia 1788 to the Present*. Melbourne, 1984
- Gilbert, A. D. and Inglis, K. S. (eds.) *Australians: A Historical Library*. 5 vols. CUP, 1988
- Howard, C., *Australia's Constitution*. Melbourne, 1985
- Hurst, J., *Hawke P. M.* Sydney, 1983
- Inglis, K., *This is the ABC: The Australian Broadcasting Commission*. Melbourne, 1983
- Jupp, J., *Party Politics: Australia, 1966-1981*. Sydney, 1982
- Kepars, I., *Australia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984
- Lucy, R., *The Australian Form of Government*. Melbourne, 1985
- Moore, D. and Hall, R., *Australia: Image of a Nation*. London, 1983
- Serle, P., *Dictionary of Australian Biography*. 2 vols. Sydney, 1949
- Solomon, D., *Australia's Government and Parliament*. Melbourne, 1981
- Spann, R. N., *Government Administration in Australia*. Sydney, 1979
- Who's Who in Australia*. Melbourne, 1906 to date
- Wilson, R. K., *Australia's Resources and their Development*. Univ. of Sydney, 1980
- National Library: The National Library, Canberra, A.C.T. Director-General: Harrison Bryan*.

## AUSTRALIAN TERRITORIES

### AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY

**HISTORY.** The area, now the Australian Capital Territory, was first visited by white men in 1820 and settlement commenced in 1824. Until its selection as the seat of government it was a quiet pastoral and agricultural community.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the Australian Capital Territory is 2,432 sq. km (including Jervis Bay area). The population (estimate) at 30 June 1986 was 264,400. Previous census population:

	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Total</i>		<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Total</i>
1911	992	722	1,714	1966	49,991	46,041	96,032
1921	1,567	1,005	2,572	1971	73,589	70,474	144,063
1933	4,805	4,142	8,947	1976	100,103	95,519	197,622
1947	9,092	7,813	16,905	1981	110,415	111,194	221,609
1954	16,229	14,086	30,315	1986	132,100	132,300	264,400
1961	30,858	27,970	58,828				

(Figures before 1961 exclude particulars of full-blood Aborigines.)

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of Australia provided (Sec. 125) that the seat of government should be selected by parliament and that it should be within New South Wales, distance not less than 160 km from Sydney. The present area was surrendered by New South Wales and accepted by the Australian Government from 1 Jan. 1911. In 1915 an additional 73 sq. km at Jervis Bay was transferred from New South Wales to the Commonwealth. In 1911 an international competition was held for the city plan. The plan chosen was that of W. Burley Griffin, of Chicago. Construction was delayed by the First World War, and it was not until 1927 that, with the transfer of parliament and certain depart-

ments, Canberra became in fact the seat of government. Most Australian Government departments now have their headquarters in Canberra.

The general administration lies with the A.C.T. Administration, responsible to the Federal Minister for the Arts, Sport, Environment, Tourism and Territories. The Administration provides all municipal and Territorial services except police and courts (responsibility of the Federal Attorney-General).

The Australian Capital Territory Representation (House of Representatives) Act, 1973, provided for the representation of residents of the Territory by 2 elected members in the House of Representatives. The Senate (Representation of Territories) Act 1973 provided for the election of 2 Senators from the Territory. Elections took place on 1 Dec. 1984.

**FINANCE.** In 1987-88 the A.C.T. was given its own budget for the first time. The Territory is treated equitably with the States regarding local revenue raising, expenditure and assistance by the Commonwealth government.

**PRODUCTION.** Outside Canberra the Territory is mainly reserved for forestry and nature conservation (Namadgi National Park is 94,000 hectares). A considerable amount of reafforestation (mostly pine) has been undertaken, the total area of commercial plantations at 30 June 1987 being 16,060 hectares. Farming is mainly in grazing: Livestock (1986), 13,181 cattle, 119,393 sheep, over 1,000 horses. There is no secondary industry of any importance.

**EDUCATION.** In July 1986 there were 96 government schools comprising 67 primary schools, 24 secondary schools and colleges, 1 combined primary/secondary school and 4 special schools. Non-government schools numbered 36 of which there were 23 primary schools, 5 secondary schools and 8 schools with both primary and secondary enrolments. Students enrolled full-time in government schools in 1986 numbered 22,003 and 17,369 in primary and secondary school levels respectively. Enrolments at non-government schools comprised 10,451 primary school students and 9,317 secondary school students. Pre-school education is provided at 73 centres with a total enrolment of 4,356 (1986). The Canberra, Woden and Bruce Colleges of Technical and Further Education with a total enrolment of about 24,100 in 1986 provide trade, post-trade certificate, associate diploma, craft and leisure courses.

The Canberra School of Music, opened in 1965, had 483 students in 1986. The Canberra School of Arts had 589 students in 1986. In 1987 two amalgamations were announced: Canberra, Woden and Bruce Colleges of T.A.F.E., to form the A.C.T. Institute of T.A.F.E.; the Schools of Art and Music to form the Canberra Institute of the Arts.

The Canberra College of Advanced Education commenced operation in 1970. Enrolments (1986) 5,964. The Australian National University is situated in Canberra. Enrolments (1986) 6,349.

### Further Reading

*A.C.T. Statistical Summary.* Australian Bureau of Statistics. From 1960

Wigmore, L., *Canberra: A History of Australia's National Capital*. 2nd ed. Canberra, 1971

## NORTHERN TERRITORY

**HISTORY.** The Northern Territory, after forming part of New South Wales, was annexed on 6 July 1863 to South Australia and in 1901 entered the Commonwealth as a corporate part of South Australia. The Commonwealth Constitution Act of 1900 made provision for the surrender to the Commonwealth of any territory by any state, and under this provision an agreement was entered into on 7 Dec. 1907 for the transfer of the Northern Territory to the Commonwealth, and it formally passed under the control of the Commonwealth Government on 1 Jan. 1911. For details of Constitutional development until 1978 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-



Book 1980-81 pp. 123-24. The Commonwealth Government retained responsibility until Self-Government was granted on 1 July 1978.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Northern Territory is bounded by the 26th parallel of S. lat. and 129° and 138° E. long. Its total area is 1,346,200 sq. km. The coastline is about 6,200 km in length, and the Territory includes adjacent islands between 129° and 138° E. long. The greater part of the interior consists of a tableland rising gradually from the coast to a height of about 700 metres. On this tableland there are large areas of excellent pasturage. The southern part of the Territory is generally sandy and has a small rainfall, but water may be obtained by means of sub-artesian bores.

The total population of the Territory (1986) is 155,000. The capital, seat of Government and principal port is Darwin, on the north coast; population 76,400 in June 1987. Other main centres include Katherine (6,100), 330 km south of Darwin; Alice Springs (22,900), in Central Australia; Tennant Creek (3,300), a rich mining centre 500 km north of Alice Springs; Nhulunbuy (3,800), a bauxite mining centre on the Gove Peninsula in eastern Arnhem Land; and Jabiru, a model town built to serve the rich Uranium Province in eastern Arnhem Land with a planned population of 6,000 (actual, 1986, 1,410). Palmerston is a Darwin satellite town (1986, 5,700); Yulara (estimate, 500) is a resort village serving Uluru National Park and Ayers Rock. There also are a number of large self-contained Aboriginal communities. Aboriginals were 29,087 at the 1981 Census. On 31 July 1984, 26,692,400 hectares were designated Aboriginal Land under the Aboriginal Land Rights (N.T.) Act 1976.

Vital statistics for 1983: Births, 3,127; deaths, 727; marriages, 776; divorces, 371.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Northern Territory (Self-Government) Act 1978 established the Northern Territory as a body politic as from 1 July 1978, with Ministers having control over and responsibility for Territory finances and the administration of the functions of government as specified by the Federal Government. Regulations have been made conferring executive authority for the bulk of administrative functions. At 31 Dec. 1979 the only important powers retained by the Commonwealth related to rights in respect of Aboriginal land, some significant National Parks and the mining of uranium and other substances prescribed in the Atomic Energy Act. Proposed laws passed by the Legislative Assembly require the assent of the Administrator, who may assent, withhold assent, return them with recommended amendments or reserve them for the Governor-General's pleasure. The Governor-General may disallow any law assented to by the Administrator within 6 months of the Administrator's assent.

The Northern Territory has federal representation, electing 1 member to the House of Representatives and 2 members to the Senate.

**FINANCE.** Budgets since the introduction of self-government in 1978 in \$A1m.:

	1980-81	1981-82	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	656	744	850	972.8	1,095.7
Expenditure	656	746	851	970.4	1,081.3

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

The revenue available in 1984-85 comprised \$A945.7m. in payments to the Northern Territory from the Commonwealth, as established by agreement at the time of self-government, together with \$A150m. raised by the Northern Territory which included \$A52.9m. through state-like taxes.

Expenditure during 1984-85 included \$A189m. for education; \$A86m. for lands and housing; \$A116.2m. for health; \$A71.9m. for law, order and public safety; \$A38.8m. for local government and \$A371.9m. for economic services.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Oil and Gas.** Significant oil and gas reserves have been discovered in the Amadeus Basin. In 1981 the Territory's first petroleum leases were granted at Mereenie.

There are estimated recoverable reserves of 28m. bbls of oil. Estimated gas reserves at Mereenie are 23,000m. cu. metres. A pipeline has been constructed from Palm Valley to carry natural gas 150 km to Alice Springs where it is providing fuel for the local power station. Proven reserves are 1,400m. cu. metres of gas.

**Minerals.** The most important natural resources are minerals and the mining industry, by far the largest commercial industry in the Territory. Gross value of output, \$A915m. in 1986, of which 45% was for uranium oxide.

At present there are five major mining organizations extracting bauxite, manganese, uranium, gold and copper; in addition, one firm is producing uranium oxide from stockpiled ore. Zinc, lead and silver are also mined, and rock, sand and gravel are produced as construction materials.

Gove Peninsula bauxite reserves are estimated at 250m. tonnes with an average alumina content of 50%. Alumina is exported to Europe, the USA, Africa and Asia. More than half the bauxite goes to Japan as does a large quantity of manganese ore.

Copper, gold and bismuth are mined in the Tennant Creek area. Warrego Mine has a proven copper/gold ore resource of 4.8m. tonnes and Gecko Mine has a proven ore resource of 3.3m. tonnes. Nobles Nob has been producing gold since 1938 and currently mills 8,000 tonnes of ore per month.

**Agriculture.** Cattle and buffalo production, valued at \$A109m. in 1987, constitutes the largest farming industry in the Northern Territory. Many buffalo are exported live to Indonesia. Value of cattle and buffalo exports, 1986, about \$20m.

The USA is the largest importer of Territory beef, followed by Taiwan and Japan.

There are 243 pastoral stations in the Northern Territory which produce cattle for Australian and overseas markets. They vary from small stations of 270 sq. km. to huge properties like Wave Hill Station which runs cattle over 12,359 sq. km.

General agriculture is conducted on a small scale. Fruit, vegetables, eggs, dairy produce, poultry and cereals are produced. Properties in the Katherine, Douglas-Daly and Adelaide River districts produce the Territory's seven main crops – sorghum, maize, mung beans, soybeans, rice, sesame and peanuts. Area under crops, 1987–88, 8,800 hectares.

**Forestry.** A forest development programme which commenced in 1970 has continued the multiple use management of Northern Territory forested areas; this included a softwood programme of 400 hectares per year, the introduction of additional suitable tree species in both arid and higher rainfall areas, conservation and management of native forests for production and recreational purposes, survey and assessment of resources, fire control activities and the creation of training opportunities for Aborigines in forestry and allied saw-milling activities.

Local production of sawn timber is mainly of Cypress pine.

**Fisheries.** The total value (*ex-vessel*) of commercial fish products landed in the Northern Territory in 1987 was \$A40.33m. Of this, prawns contributed \$A35.76m. and barramundi \$A2m. Mud crabs, threadfin salmon, shark, mackerel, bay lobster and reef fish made up most of the remainder.

**INDUSTRY AND TRADE.** In 1983–84 value added in the manufacturing industry, from 113 factories (with 4 or more persons employed) was \$A108m. 2,402 persons were employed in these factories. In 1984, 75 trade unions had 20,300 members.

**Tourism.** Tourism is the second most important industry (after mining), contributing about \$A300m. to the economy in 1985–86, when there were 651,000 visitors.

**National Parks and Reserves.** About 43,000 sq. km have been set aside as wildlife sanctuaries under the Wildlife Conservation and Control Ordinance. They are controlled by the Chief Inspector of Wildlife who is an officer of the Department of the Northern Territory. 236,000 sq. km of Aboriginal reserves are also wild-life protected areas.

The Conservation Commission of the Northern Territory administers some 53



national parks and reserves covering an area of over 5,800 sq. km. The Commission is responsible under the National Parks and Gardens Ordinance for the care, control and management of these reserves, and its functions include the preservation and protection of natural and historical features and the encouragement of public use and enjoyment of land set aside in such reserves.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are now (1988) 5,528 km of sealed road and 5,450 km of gravel and crushed stone road within the Northern Territory. They include three major interstate links: The Stuart Highway from Darwin to the South Australian border, the Barkly Highway, Tennant Creek to Mt. Isa, 444 km of which is in the Northern Territory, and the Victoria Highway, Katherine to the Western Australian border, a distance of 468 km. In addition to this there are 4,758 km of formed roads and 4,194 km of unformed roads or tracks, totalling approximately 19,931 km of roads. In 1984-85 registrations of new motor vehicles included 4,504 cars, 2,248 utilities etc., 294 trucks, 82 buses and 1,092 motor cycles.

**Railways.** Alice Springs is linked to the Trans-continental network by a new standard (1,435 mm) gauge railway to Tarcoola (831 km), opened in 1980. This replaced the largely narrow gauge line to Port Augusta. The standard gauge railway is to be extended to Darwin, providing Australia with its first north-south rail link.

**Aviation.** Ansett and Australian Airlines operate daily services between the Territory and southern states. In addition, intra-Territory services are provided by Ansett NT and smaller commuter operators. In all, 47 general charter companies operate throughout the Territory, using fixed wing aircraft, helicopters or both. Qantas currently operates three international flights out of Darwin each week and Garuda provide 2 services weekly to Bali and Jakarta. Royal Brunei provide a twice-weekly to Bali and Jakarta. Royal Brunei provide a twice-weekly service linking Darwin and Bandar Seri Begawan with connections to Hong Kong etc. Merpati Nusantara provide a twice-weekly service to Koepang.

**Shipping.** Regular freight shipping services connect Darwin with Western Australia, the eastern States and overseas. Passenger vessels also call at Darwin at irregular intervals.

The Port of Darwin is 997 km in extent; it is equipped to handle bulk, container and roll-on-roll-off traffic. There is a cyclone shelter for fishing vessels.

The ports of Melville Bay (Gove) and Milner Bay (Groote Eylandt) are connected with Darwin, the eastern States and overseas by regular shipping freight services.

The inland and coastal communities around the coast are provided with regular freight barge services from Darwin. Some of these communities also receive a barge freight-transshipment service out of a Brisbane vessel which calls at Melville and Milner Bays.

**Radio and Television.** In 1984 there were 8,658 radio-communication stations, 8 radio broadcasting stations and 5 television stations.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** There were (1986) about 35,000 pre-school, primary and secondary students enrolled in about 160 Government and non-Government schools. The proportion of migrant and Aboriginal students in the Territory is high with the latter comprising about 30% of total school enrolments. Schools range from single classrooms and transportable units catering for the needs of small Aboriginal communities and pastoral properties to urban high schools for over 1,000 pupils. Bilingual programmes operate in Aboriginal communities where traditional Aboriginal culture prevails. Secondary education extends from years 8 to 12. Technical and Further Education courses are conducted by the Darwin Institute of Technology, the NT Open College, the Alice Springs College of TAFE, Katherine Rural College, and Bachelor College which is primarily an Aboriginal teacher training institution. Advanced education courses, including a range of degree



courses, are conducted by the Darwin Institute of Technology. In Jan. 1987, the University College of the Northern Territory began operation with an enrolment of over 250 students, including a number from South East Asian countries. The college awards arts and science degrees of the University of Queensland.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 5 hospitals with 650 beds. Community health services are provided from urban and rural Health Centres including mobile units. Remote communities are served by the Aerial Medical Service and by resident Aboriginal health workers.

### Further Reading

- The Northern Territory: Annual Report.* Dept. of Territories, Canberra, from 1911. Dept. of the Interior, Canberra, from 1966–67. Dept. of Northern Territory, from 1972
- Australian Territories.* Dept. of Territories, Canberra, 1960 to 1973. Dept. of Special Minister of State, Canberra, 1973–75. Department of Administrative Services, 1976
- Northern Territory Statistical Summary.* Australian Bureau of Statistics, Canberra, from 1960
- Donovan, P. F., *A Land Full of Possibilities: A History of South Australia's Northern Territory 1863–1911.* 1981.—*At the Other End of Australia: The Commonwealth and the Northern Territory 1911–1978.* Univ. of Queensland Press, 1984
- Heatley, A., *The Government of the Northern Territory.* Univ. of Queensland Press, 1979
- Mills, C. M., *A Bibliography of the Northern Territory.* Canberra, 1977
- Powell, A., *Far Country: A Short History of the Northern Territory.* Melbourne Univ. Press, 1982

## AUSTRALIAN EXTERNAL TERRITORIES

**AUSTRALIAN ANTARCTIC TERRITORY.** An Imperial Order in Council of 7 Feb. 1933 placed under Australian authority all the islands and territories other than Adélie Land situated south of 60° S. lat. and lying between 160° E. long. and 45° E. long. The Order came into force with a Proclamation issued by the Governor-General on 24 Aug. 1936 after the passage of the Australian Antarctic Territory Acceptance Act 1933. The boundaries of Adélie Land were definitively fixed by a French Decree of 1 April 1938 as the islands and territories south of 60° S. lat. lying between 136° E. long. and 142° E. long. The Australian Antarctic Territory Act 1954 declared that the laws in force in the Australian Capital Territory are, so far as they are applicable and are not inconsistent with any ordinance made under the Act, in force in the Australian Antarctic Territory.

The area of the territory is estimated at 6,119,818 sq. km (2,362,875 sq. miles).

On 13 Feb. 1954 the Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions (ANARE) established a station on MacRobertson Land at lat. 67° 37' S. and long. 62° 52' E. The station was named Mawson in honour of the late Sir Douglas Mawson. Meteorological and other scientific research is conducted at Mawson, which is the centre for coastal and inland survey expeditions.

A second Australian scientific research station was established on the coast of Princess Elizabeth Land on 13 Jan. 1957 at lat. 68° 34' S. and long. 77° 58' E. The station was named Davis in honour of Capt. John King Davis, Mawson's second-in-command on 2 expeditions. The station was temporarily closed down in Jan. 1965 and re-opened in Feb. 1969.

In Feb. 1959 the Australian Government accepted from the US Government custody of Wilkes Station, which was established by the US on 16 Jan. 1957 on the Budd Coast of Wilkes Land, at lat. 66° 15' S. and long. 110° 32' E. The station was named in honour of Lieut. Charles Wilkes, who commanded the 1838–40 US expedition to the area, and was closed in Feb. 1969. Operations were then transferred to the new station, Casey. Construction commenced on Casey station in Jan. 1965 and was continued, mainly during summer visits, until Feb. 1969, when it was opened. The station, specially designed to withstand blizzard winds and prevent inundation by snow, is situated 2.4 km south of Wilkes at lat. 66° 17' S. and long. 110° 32' E. The Antarctic Division has also operated a station, since March 1948, at Macquarie Island, about 1,360 km south-east of Hobart. Macquarie Island is part of the State of Tasmania.

On 1 Dec. 1959 Australia signed the Antarctic Treaty with Argentina, Belgium, Chile, France, Japan, New Zealand, Norway, South Africa, the USSR, the UK and the USA. Poland, Czechoslovakia, German Democratic Republic, Netherlands, Romania, Brazil, Denmark, Bulgaria, Federal Republic of Germany, Italy, India, People's Republic of China, Spain, Papua New Guinea, Peru, Hungary and Uruguay have subsequently acceded to the Treaty. Poland became a full member of the Antarctic Treaty in 1977 and the Federal Republic of Germany in 1981 and India and Brazil in 1983. The Treaty reserves the Antarctic area south of 60° S. lat. for peaceful purposes, provides for international co-operation in scientific investigation and research, and preserves, for the duration of the Treaty, the *status quo* with regard to territorial sovereignty, rights and claims. The Treaty entered into force on 23 June 1961.

**COCOS (KEELING) ISLANDS.** The Cocos (Keeling) Islands are 2 separate atolls comprising some 27 small coral islands with a total area of about 14.2 sq. km, and are situated in the Indian Ocean at 12° 05' S. lat. and 96° 53' E. long. They lie 2,768 km north-west of Perth and 3,685 km west of Darwin, while Colombo is 2,255 km to the north-west of the group.

The main islands in this Australian Territory are West Island (the largest, about 10 km from north to south) on which is an airport and an animal quarantine station, and most of the European community; Home Island, occupied by the Cocos Malay community; Direction, South and Horsburgh Islands, and North Keeling Island, 24 km to the north of the group.

Although the islands were discovered in 1609 by Capt. William Keeling of the East India Company, they remained uninhabited until 1826, when the first settlement was established on the main atoll by an Englishman, Alexander Hare, with a group of followers, predominantly of Malay origin. Hare left the islands in 1831, by which time a second settlement had been formed on the main atoll by John Clunies-Ross, a Scottish seaman and adventurer, who began commercial development of the islands' coconut palms.

In 1857 the islands were annexed to the Crown: in 1878 responsibility was transferred from the Colonial Office to the Government of Ceylon, and in 1886 to the Government of the Straits Settlement. By indenture in 1886 Queen Victoria granted all land in the islands to George Clunies-Ross and his heirs in perpetuity (with certain rights reserved to the Crown). In 1903 the islands were incorporated in the Settlement of Singapore and in 1942-46 temporarily placed under the Governor of Ceylon. In 1946 a Resident Administrator, responsible to the Governor of Singapore, was appointed.

On 23 Nov. 1955 the Cocos Islands were placed under the authority of the Australian Government as the Territory of Cocos (Keeling) Islands. An Administrator, appointed by the Governor-General, is the Government's representative in the Territory and is responsible to the Minister for Territories and Local Government. The Cocos (Keeling) Islands Council, established as the elected body of the Cocos Malay community in July 1979, advises the Administrator on all issues affecting the Territory.

In 1978 the Australian Government purchased the Clunies-Ross family's entire interests in the islands, except for the family residence. A Cocos Malay co-operative has been established to take over the running of the Clunies-Ross copra plantation (118 tonnes of copra were exported in 1985-86) and to engage in other business with the Commonwealth in the Territory, including construction projects.

The population of the Territory at 30 June 1986 was 616, distributed between Home Island (414) and West Island (202).

The islands are low-lying, flat and thickly covered by coconut palms, and surround a lagoon in which ships drawing up to 7 metres may be anchored, but which is extremely difficult for navigation.

An equable and pleasant climate, affected for much of the year by the south-east trade winds. Temperatures range over the year from 68° F (20° C) to 88° F (31.1° C) and rainfall averages 80" (2,000 mm) a year.

The Cocos (Keeling) Islands Act 1955 is the basis of the Territory's administra-

tive, legislative and judicial systems. Under section 8 of this Act, those laws which were in force in the Territory immediately before the transfer continued in force there.

**Roads.** There are 24 km of roads.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 150 radio receivers and (1985) 180 telephones.

**Religion.** About 58% are Moslems and 22% Christians.

**Education.** In 1986 there were 2 primary schools (on Home Island and West Island) with 105 pupils and 8 teachers, a secondary school (on West Island) with 30 pupils and 5 staff, and a technical school with 9 pupils.

**Health.** In 1985 there was a doctor and 4 nursing personnel, with 5 beds in clinics.

*Administrator:* C. M. Stuart.

**CHRISTMAS ISLAND** is an isolated peak in the Indian Ocean, lat. 10° 25' 22" S., long. 105° 39' 59" E. It lies 360 km S., 8° E. of Java Head, and 417 km N. 79° E. from Cocos Islands, 1,310 km from Singapore and 2,623 km from Fremantle. Area about 135 sq. km. The climate is tropical with temperatures varying little over the year at 27° C. The wet season lasts from Nov. to April with an annual total of about 2,673 mm. The island was formally annexed by the UK on 6 June 1888, placed under the administration of the Governor of the Straits Settlements in 1889, and incorporated with the Settlement of Singapore in 1900. Sovereignty was transferred to the Australian Government on 1 Oct. 1958. The population (Census, 1981) was 2,871; estimate (1986) 2,000 of whom 1,300 were of Chinese, 600 of Malay and 100 of Australian/European origin.

The legislative, judicial and administrative systems are regulated by the Christmas Island Act, 1958-73. They are the responsibility of the Commonwealth Government and operated by an Administrator. The laws of Singapore which were in force before the transfer have been continued but can be amended, repealed or substituted by ordinances made by the Governor-General. The first Island Assembly was elected in Sept. 1985.

Extraction and export of rock phosphate dust was the island's only industry until 1987. In Dec. 1948 Australia and New Zealand bought the lease rights of the Christmas Island Phosphate Co. and set up the Christmas Island Phosphate Commission (CIPC), which conducted the mining operation until mid-1981. The Phosphate Mining Co. of Christmas Island Ltd (PMCI) acted as managing agents for the CIPC until the Commission was wound up and then mined in its own right. The Commonwealth Government appointed liquidators on 11 Nov. 1987, with a view to ending all mining.

**Electricity.** Production (1985) 33m. kwh.

**Roads.** There are 32 km of roads, 759 passenger cars and 383 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** There is a 20 km railway to serve the phosphate mines.

**Aviation.** There are weekly flights to Perth (Western Australia) and to Singapore.

**Shipping.** In 1985, 1.2m. tonnes (mostly phosphates) were loaded and 46,000 tonnes discharged at the port.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 2 post offices and (1986) 2,500 radio receivers.

**Religion.** About 35% are Buddhists, 25% Muslims and 20% Christians.

**Education.** In 1985 there were 261 pupils in 2 primary schools, 114 pupils in a secondary school and 60 students in a technical school.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 2 doctors, a dentist, a pharmacist and a hospital with 35 beds.

*Administrator:* T. F. Paterson.

**NORFOLK ISLAND.** 29° 02' S. lat. 167° 57' E. long., area 3,455 hectares, population, (June 1986), 1,977. The island was formerly part of the colony of New



South Wales and then of Van Diemen's Land. It was a penal colony 1788–1814 and 1825–55. In 1856 it received all 194 descendants of the *Bounty* mutineers from Pitcairn Island. It has been a distinct settlement since 1856, under the jurisdiction of the state of New South Wales; and finally by the passage of the Norfolk Island Act 1913, it was accepted as a Territory of the Australian Government. The Norfolk Island Act 1957 is the basis of the Territory's legislative, administrative and judicial systems. An Administrator, appointed by the Governor-General and responsible to the Minister for Territories and Local Government, is the senior government representative in the Territory.

The Norfolk Island Act 1979 gives Norfolk Island responsible legislative and executive government to enable it to run its own affairs to the greatest practicable extent. Wide powers are exercised by the Norfolk Island Legislative Assembly of 9 elected members, and by an Executive Council, comprising the executive members of the Legislative Assembly who have ministerial-type responsibilities. The seat of administration is Kingston, the only major settlement. The Act preserves the Commonwealth's responsibility for Norfolk Island as a Territory under its authority, indicating Parliament's intention that consideration would be given to an extension of the powers of the Legislative Assembly and the political and administrative institutions of Norfolk Island within 5 years. Some powers were transferred in 1985 and further transfers are being considered.

The Territory Administration is financed from local revenue which for 1985–86 totalled \$A5,140,000; expenditure, \$A5,388,000.

Public revenue is derived mainly from tourism, the sale of postage stamps, customs duties, liquor sales and company registration and licence fees. Residents are not liable for income tax on earnings within the Territory, nor are death and personal stamp duties levied.

In 1986, 29,428 visitors travelled to Norfolk. Descendants of the *Bounty* mutineer families constitute the 'original' settlers and are known locally as 'Islanders', while later settlers, mostly from Australia, New Zealand and UK, are identified as 'mainlanders'. Over the years the Islanders have preserved their own lifestyle and customs, and their language remains a mixture of West Country English, Gaelic and Tahitian.

**Roads.** There are 72 km of roads (53 km paved), 1,802 passenger cars and 90 commercial vehicles.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There is one post office and (1984) 1,090 telephones, 400 television and 1,200 radio receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The island's Supreme Court sits as required and a Court of Petty Sessions exercises both civil and criminal jurisdiction.

**Religion.** 40% of the population are Anglicans.

**Education.** In 1986 there were 2 primary schools with 120 pupils and a secondary school with 111 pupils.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 2 doctors, a pharmacist and a hospital with 20 beds.

*Administrator:* Commodore J. A. Matthew, CVO, MBE.

*Chief Minister:* David E. Buffett.

**HEARD AND McDONALD ISLANDS.** These islands, about 2,500 miles south-west of Fremantle, were transferred from UK to Australian control as from 26 Dec. 1947. Heard Island is about 43 km long and 21 km wide; Shag Island is about 8 km north of Heard. The total area is 412 sq. km (159 sq. miles). The McDonald Islands are 42 km to the west of Heard.

**TERRITORY OF ASHMORE AND CARTIER ISLANDS.** By Imperial Order in Council of 23 July 1931, Ashmore Islands (known as Middle, East and West Islands) and Cartier Island, situated in the Indian Ocean, some 320

km off the north-west coast of Australia (area, 5 sq. km), were placed under the authority of the Commonwealth.

Under the Ashmore and Cartier Islands Acceptance Act, 1933, the islands were accepted by the Commonwealth under the name of the Territory of Ashmore and Cartier Islands, and the effective date was proclaimed by the Governor-General to be 10 May 1934. It was the intention that the Territory should be administered by the State of Western Australia, but owing to administrative difficulties the Territory was annexed to and deemed to form part of the Northern Territory of Australia (by amendment to the Act in 1938) with relevant laws of the Northern Territory, applying to the Territory of Ashmore and Cartier Islands. Responsibility for the administration of Ashmore and Cartier Islands rests with the Minister for the Arts, Sport, the Environment, Tourism and Territories.

On 16 Aug. 1983 a national nature reserve was declared over Ashmore Reef and the area so declared is now known as Ashmore Reef National Nature Reserve.

The islands are uninhabited but Indonesian fishing boats, which have traditionally plied the area, fish within the Territory and land to collect water in accordance with an agreement between the governments of Australia and Indonesia.

Periodic visits are made to the islands by ships of the Royal Australian Navy, and aircraft of the Royal Australian Air Force make aerial surveys of the islands and neighbouring waters.

**TERRITORY OF CORAL SEA ISLANDS.** The Coral Sea Islands became a Territory of the Commonwealth of Australia under the Coral Sea Islands Act 1969. It comprises scattered reefs and islands over a sea area of about 1 m. sq. km. The Territory is uninhabited apart from a manned meteorological station on Willis Island.

## NEW SOUTH WALES

**HISTORY.** New South Wales became a British possession in 1770; the first settlement was established at Port Jackson in 1788; a partially elective Council was established in 1843, and responsible government in 1856. New South Wales federated with the other Australian states to form the Commonwealth of Australia in 1901.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** New South Wales is situated between the 28th and 38th parallels of S. lat. and 141st and 154th meridians of E. long., and comprises 309,433 sq. miles (801,428 sq. km), inclusive of Lord Howe Island, 6 sq. miles (17 sq. km), but exclusive of the Australian Capital Territory (911 sq. miles, 2,359 sq. km) and 28 sq. miles (73 sq. km) at Jervis Bay.

**Lord Howe Island,** 31° 33' 4" S., 159° 4' 26" E., which is part of New South Wales, is situated about 702 km north-east of Sydney; area, 1,654 hectares, of which only about 120 hectares are arable; resident population, estimate (30 June 1987), 290. The Island, which was discovered in 1788, is of volcanic origin. Mount Gower, the highest point, reaches a height of 866 metres.

The Lord Howe Island Board manages the affairs of the Island and supervises the Kentia palm-seed industry.

Census population of New South Wales (including full-blood Aborigines from 1966):

	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Persons</i>	<i>Population per sq. km</i>	<i>Average annual increase % since previous census</i>
1901	710,264	645,091	1,355,355	2	1.86
1911	857,698	789,036	1,646,734	2	1.97
1921	1,071,501	1,028,870	2,100,371	3	2.46
1933	1,318,471	1,282,376	2,600,847	3	1.76
1947	1,492,211	1,492,627	2,984,838	4	0.99
1954	1,720,860	1,702,669	3,423,529	4	1.98

	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Persons</i>	<i>Population per sq. km</i>	<i>Average annual increase % since previous census</i>
1961	1,972,909	1,944,104	3,917,013	5	1.94
1966	2,126,652	2,111,249	4,237,901	5	1.58
1971	2,307,210	2,293,970	4,601,180	6	1.66
1976	2,380,172	2,396,931	4,777,103	6	0.75
1981	2,548,984	2,577,233	5,126,217	6	1.42
1986	2,684,570	2,717,311	5,401,881	7	1.05

At 30 June 1987 the estimated resident population of New South Wales was 5,605,300 (1985, 5,531,500). Sydney Statistical Division, 3,525,850 (3,472,650); Newcastle Statistical Subdivision, 418,960 (416,120); Wollongong Statistical Subdivision, 233,650 (232,510). Population of principal municipalities outside Sydney: Albury, 39,610 (39,180); Armidale, 20,920 (20,680); Bathurst, 25,620 (25,300); Broken Hill, 24,170 (25,170); Casino, 10,820 (10,770); Cessnock, 43,170 (42,700); Dubbo, 31,290 (31,040); Goulburn, 21,700 (21,780); Grafton, 16,230 (16,380); Greater Lithgow, 20,070 (20,170); Greater Taree, 36,960 (36,310); Hastings, 42,220 (41,170); Kiama, 14,080 (13,740); Lake Macquarie, 159,300 (158,300); Lismore, 38,130 (37,480); Maitland, 46,130 (45,410); Newcastle, 132,240 (132,940); Orange, 32,520 (32,340); Queanbeyan, 23,880 (23,180); Shellharbour, 45,550 (45,250); Shoalhaven, 59,470 (57,670); Tamworth, 33,830 (33,710); Wagga Wagga, 50,930 (50,380); Wollongong, 174,020 (173,520).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths (excluding still-births)</i>	<i>Infantile mortality per 1,000 live births</i>
1985	87,786	41,183	11,871	44,264	9.8
1986	84,531	41,319	11,661	42,167	9.0
1987	86,093	40,650	12,044	42,192	8.5

The annual rates per 1,000 of mean estimated resident population in 1987 were: Births, 15.3; deaths, 7.5; marriages, 7.2.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Within the State there are three levels of government: The Commonwealth Government, with authority derived from a written constitution; the State Government with residual powers; the local government authorities with powers based upon a State Act of Parliament, operating within incorporated areas extending over almost 90% of the State.

The Constitution of New South Wales is drawn from several diverse sources: certain Imperial statutes such as the Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act (1900); the Australian States Constitution Act (1907); an element of inherited English law; amendments to the Commonwealth of Australia Constitution Act; the (State) Constitution Act; the Australia Acts of 1986; the Constitution (Amendment) Act 1987 and certain other State Statutes; numerous legal decisions; and a large amount of English and local convention.

The Parliament of New South Wales may legislate for the peace, welfare and good government of the State in all matters not specifically reserved to the Commonwealth Government.

The State Legislature consists of the Sovereign, represented by the Governor, and two Houses of Parliament, the Legislative Council (upper house) and the Legislative Assembly (lower house).

Australian citizens aged 18 and over, and other British subjects who were enrolled prior to 25 Jan. 1984, men and women aged 18 years and over, are entitled to the franchise. Voting is compulsory. The optional preferential method of voting is used for both houses.

The Legislative Council has 45 members elected for a term of office equivalent to three terms of the Legislative Assembly, with 15 members retiring at the same time as the Legislative Assembly elections. The whole State constitutes a single electoral district. In Oct. 1988, the Council consisted of the following parties: Australian Labor Party (ALP), 21; Liberal Party of Australia (Lib), 12; National Party of



Australia (NP), 7; Call to Australia Group (CTA), 3; Australian Democrats (AD), 2.

The President of the Legislative Council has an annual salary (1988) of \$A77,985; the Leader of the Opposition members, the Chairman of Committees and the Deputy Leader of the Government members (if not a Minister), \$A58,771 each; the Deputy Leader of the Opposition members and Government and Opposition Whips, \$A54,388 each. The President is paid an annual expense allowance of \$A12,977; the Leader of the Opposition members, the Chairman of Committees, the Deputy Leader of the Government members (if not a Minister) and the Deputy Leader of the Opposition members (when a leader of a party), \$A7,133 each; the Deputy Leader of the Opposition members (when not a leader of a party) and Government and Opposition Whips, \$A2,861 each. Other members who are not Ministers receive an annual salary of \$A48,750. All members receive an annual electoral allowance of \$A16,180.

The Legislative Assembly has 109 members elected in single seat electoral districts for a maximum period of 4 years. The Legislative Assembly, elected on 19 March 1988, consisted in Oct. 1988 of the following parties: APL, 42; Lib, 39; NP, 20; Independent (Ind), 6; Vacant, 2.

The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly and the Leader of the Opposition members receive a salary of (1988) \$A77,985 each; the Chairman of Committees and Deputy Leader of the Opposition members, \$A58,771 each; Government and Opposition Whips, \$A55,383 each. The Speaker and the Leader of the Opposition members also receive an expense allowance of \$A12,977 each; the Chairman of Committees and Deputy Leader of the Opposition members, \$A7,133 each; Government and Opposition Whips, and Deputy Leader of the National Party, \$A3,367 each. Members who are not Ministers receive an annual salary of \$A48,750. All members receive an annual electoral allowance ranging from \$A16,180 to \$A31,359 according to the location of their constituencies.

Executive power is vested in the Governor, who is appointed by the Crown, and an Executive Council consisting of members of the Cabinet. Ministers receive the following annual salaries (1988): Premier, \$A96,946; Deputy Premier, \$A87,585; the Leader of the Government members in the Legislative Council, \$A88,537; Deputy Leader of Government members in the Legislative Council, \$A84,477; other Ministers, \$A82,869. Ministers also receive an expense allowance (Premier, \$A27,777; Deputy Premier, \$A13,888; other Ministers, \$A12,977 each). Ministers also receive an electoral allowance ranging from \$A16,180 to \$A27,221 to members of the Legislative Assembly, according to the location of their electorate; and \$A16,180 to each member of the Legislative Council.

*Governor:* Rear Admiral David James Martin, AO (sworn in 20 Jan. 1989).

The New South Wales Ministry, in Oct. 1988, was as follows:

*Premier, Treasurer and Minister for Ethnic Affairs:* The Hon. N. F. Greiner, MP.  
*Deputy Prime Minister, Minister for State Development and Minister for Public Works:* The Hon. W. T. J. Murray, MP. *Minister for Health and Minister for the Arts:* The Hon. P. E. J. Collins, MP. *Minister for Agriculture and Rural Affairs:* The Hon. I. M. Armstrong, OBE, MP. *Attorney-General:* The Hon. J. R. A. Dowd, MP. *Minister for Housing:* The Hon. J. J. Schipp, MP. *Minister for the Environment and Assistant Minister for Transport:* The Hon. T. J. Moore, MP. *Chief Secretary and Minister for Tourism:* The Hon. G. B. West, MP. *Minister for Police and Emergency Services and Vice-President of the Executive Council:* The Hon. E. P. Pickering, MLC. *Minister for Sport, Recreation and Racing:* The Hon. R. B. R. Smith, MLC. *Minister for Family and Community Services:* The Hon. Virginia Chadwick, MLC. *Minister for Education and Youth Affairs:* The Hon. T. A. Metherell, MP. *Minister for Transport:* The Hon. B. G. Baird, MP. *Minister for Administrative Services and Assistant Minister for Transport:* The Hon. Matthew Singleton, MP. *Minister for Business and Consumer Affairs:* The Hon. G. B. P. Peacocke, MP. *Minister for Mineral Resources and Minister for Energy:* The Hon. N. E. W. Pickard, MP. *Minister for Industrial Relations and Employment and Minister Assisting the Premier:* The Hon. J. J. Fahey, MP. *Minister for Natural Resources:* The Hon. I. R. Causley, MP. *Minister for Local Government and*

*Minister for Planning:* The Hon. D. A. Hay, MP. *Minister for Corrective Services:* The Hon. M. R. Yabsley, MP.

*Agent-General in London:* (Vacant) (66 Strand, WC2N 5LZ).

**Local Government.** A system of local government extends over most of the State, including the whole of the Eastern and Central land divisions and almost three-quarters of the sparsely populated Western division. At 26 Sept. 1988 there were 65 municipalities, and 110 corporate bodies called shires. A number of the municipalities and shires have combined to form 41 county councils, which administer electricity or water supply undertakings or render other services of common benefit.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** State Consolidated Fund: Statement of receipts and expenditure (in \$A1 m.) for financial years ending 30 June:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Receipts: Recurrent	7,348	8,220	10,657	12,379
Capital	654	659	1,508	1,384
Total Receipts	8,002	8,879	12,165	13,763
Expenditure: Recurrent	7,511	8,305	10,634	11,871
Capital	491	573	1,531	1,592
Revenue Equalization	...	...	...	...
Total Expenditure	8,002	8,879	12,165	13,519
Surplus/deficit	—	—	—	245

State Government receipts (in \$A1 m.) for 1987-88 included receipts from loan raisings, 114; Commonwealth general revenue grant, 4,269; and state taxation, 5,423. Expenditure included capital works and services, 1,592; education, 2,646; health, 3,137; and public debt charges, 750.

**Public Debt.** The long term debt of the State has three components. Debt outstanding at 30 June 1988 (in \$A1 m.) for each of these components was:

Debt of statutory bodies under State Government guarantee	18,142.1
Loan liability to the Commonwealth under the 1927 Financial Agreement	5,962.7
Loan liability to the Commonwealth outside the Financial Agreement	3,178.0
Total debt	27,282.8

Since 1983, access to the capital markets for borrowings has been principally through the New South Wales Treasury Corporation which acts as the central borrowing authority of the State.

**Banking.** There were 27 trading banks operating in New South Wales at 30 June 1988, including the Commonwealth Bank of Australia and the State Bank of New South Wales (Government banks). The trading bank business is transacted chiefly by the Commonwealth Bank of Australia, the State Bank of New South Wales and 3 private banks. At 30 June 1988 the 27 banks operated 1,960 branches and 293 agencies in New South Wales.

The weekly average amount of deposits held in New South Wales by the 27 banks was \$A25,778.7m. in June 1988, consisting of \$A19,219.1m. bearing interest and \$A6,559.6m. not bearing interest. Bank advances, overdrafts, bills discounted, etc., amounted to \$A30,669.7m. A statement of other assets and liabilities of the banks in New South Wales is of little significance, as banking business is conducted on an Australia-wide basis.

Savings bank deposits at the end of June 1988 amounted to \$A20,155.9m., representing \$A3,548 per head of population.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** New South Wales contains extensive mineral deposits. The most

important minerals mined are: Coal (which accounts for 76% of the value of the State's mineral production); silver-lead-zinc (9%); construction materials (sand, gravel, stone, etc., 10%); and mineral sands (rutile, zircon, etc., 1%). At 30 June 1987, there were 449 mining establishments. The average employment on a whole year basis in the N.S.W. mining industry for 1986-87 was 26,005 persons. During 1986-87, wages and salaries paid were \$A982m., and value added was \$A2,315m. Mine production of coal and metallic minerals (gross content) is shown below:

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87
Antimony (tonnes)	718	1,409	1,264	1,202
Cadmium (tonnes)	1,339	1,735	1,216	1,113
Coal (1,000 tonnes)	66,823	70,034	77,186	88,507
Cobalt (tonnes)	60	66	55	55
Copper (tonnes)	25,541	23,038	26,733	32,400
Gold (kg)	966	1,464	1,015	2,227
Lead (tonnes)	213,154	251,595	233,270	206,139
Silver (kg)	304,314	355,827	367,751	408,829
Sulphur (tonnes)	220,203	248,681	253,800	264,631
Tin (tonnes)	1,388	1,306	1,280	249
Titanium dioxide (tonnes)	41,392	41,283	47,240	58,066
Zinc (tonnes)	330,940	385,075	355,443	362,180
Zircon (tonnes)	59,181	47,113	53,607	50,234

The value of output in mining and quarrying in 1986-87 was \$A3,437m.

**Agriculture.** The area under cultivation in New South Wales during 3 years (ended 31 March) and the principal crops (in tonnes) produced were as follows (Data relates to farms whose estimated value of agricultural operations was \$A20,000 or more at the census):

Area of crops (hectares)		1985	1986	1987			
		5,712,279	5,925,308	5,325,305			
		1985	1986	1987			
Principal crops	Hectares	Production	Hectares	Production	Hectares	Production	
Wheat	Grain	3,549,945	5,589,059	3,647,637	5,898,015	3,098,826	4,855,244
	Hay	12,751	36,568	15,112	46,611	19,237	55,456
Barley	Grain	596,023	904,718	538,754	811,780	408,313	613,646
	Hay	1,403	2,435	1,393	3,277	1,801	4,574
Oats	Grain	304,278	393,580	422,249	530,726	482,257	635,185
	Hay	19,101	50,907	25,200	71,008	39,066	111,344
Grain Sorghum		204,031	316,511	159,407	298,380	188,062	391,582
Potatoes		6,415	107,962	5,840	108,085	6,225	121,573
Lucerne (hay)		58,718	279,667	63,731	309,325	71,710	341,859
Rice		117,676	844,515	102,805	701,472	92,281	589,074
Cotton		131,237	534,039	135,820	541,751	125,026	499,356
Oilseeds		200,351	183,851	205,589	206,711	149,760	156,452

In 1986-87, 13,701 hectares of sugar-cane were cut for crushing, the production being 1,276,084 tonnes. The total area under grapes was 11,969 (including 643 not bearing) hectares; the production of table grapes was 8,476 tonnes; of wine, 117,800 tonnes; of dried vine fruits, 9,115 tonnes.

In 1986-87, 4,376 hectares of banana plantations; production from 3,949 hectares, 79,478 tonnes; there were 30,278 hectares of orchard fruit.

At 31 March 1987 the State had 52m. sheep and lambs, 4,868,047 cattle and 829,833 pigs. The production of shorn and crutched wool in 1986-87 was 229.7m. kg (greasy). In the year ended 30 June 1988 production of butter was 1,057 tonnes; cheese, 13,145 tonnes, and bacon and ham, 32,343 tonnes.

**Forestry.** The estimated area of Crown and private lands is 15m. hectares. The total area of State forests amounts to 3.2m. hectares, and 223,000 hectares have been set apart as timber reserves.

In 1986-87, 3,466,000 cu. metres of timber (excluding firewood) were produced, including 1,214,000 cu. metres of forest hardwood and 1,323,000 cu. metres of pulpwoods.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Approximately 17% of employed persons in New South Wales are employed in manufacturing industries.



A very wide range of manufacturing activities is undertaken in the Sydney area, and there are large iron and steel works and associated metal fabrication works in operation in proximity to the coalfields at Newcastle and Port Kembla.

The following table shows a summary of manufacturing industries' statistics for 1986-87:

<i>Industry</i>	<i>Estab- lishments</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Employment</i> <sup>2</sup>		<i>Wages and salaries</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>Value added</i>
	<i>No.</i>	<i>Males (1,000)</i>	<i>Females (1,000)</i>	<i>(\$1m.)</i>	<i>(\$1m.)</i>
Food, beverages and tobacco	959	34.5	16.1	1,111	2,699
Textiles	228	5.8	3.8	197	425
Clothing and footwear	745	5.0	16.1	306	571
Wood, wood products and furniture	1,310	18.7	3.7	404	773
Paper, paper products, printing and publishing	1,224	24.4	12.6	885	1,907
Chemical, petroleum and coal products	377	16.4	7.8	635	1,959
Non-metallic mineral products	599	11.5	1.6	316	741
Basic metal products	186	35.3	2.8	1,026	1,981
Fabricated metal products	1,632	27.7	6.5	715	1,291
Transport equipment	409	27.6	2.6	678	1,081
Other machinery and equipment	1,552	39.1	14.2	1,154	2,268
Miscellaneous manufacturing	835	14.2	7.0	442	875
Total manufacturing	10,026	260.0	94.8	7,869	16,570

<sup>1</sup> Operating at 30 June 1987. Excludes single-establishment manufacturing enterprises with less than 4 persons employed.

<sup>2</sup> Persons employed at 30 June 1987, including working proprietors.

<sup>3</sup> Excludes drawings of working proprietors.

Some of the principal articles manufactured in 1987-88 were:

<i>Article</i>	<i>Quantity</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Quantity</i>
Flour (1,000 tonnes)	561	Ready mixed concrete (1,000 cu. metres)	4,729
Footwear (1,000 pairs)	5,881	Clay bricks (1m.) <sup>1</sup>	713
Raw steel (1,000 tonnes)	4,728	Electricity (1m. kwh.) <sup>1</sup>	49,702

<sup>1</sup> Includes the Australian Capital Territory.

During 1986-87 the value of all building jobs commenced in New South Wales was \$A5,528m. (of which jobs valued at \$A1,359m. were being built for government ownership), jobs completed were valued at \$A4,539m. (\$A862m. for government ownership), and jobs under construction at the end of the period were valued at \$A6,294m. (\$A2,406m. for government ownership).

**Labour.** Two systems of industrial arbitration and conciliation for the adjustment of industrial relations between employers and employees are in operation—the State system which operates within the territorial limits of the State, and the Commonwealth system, which applies to industrial disputes extending beyond State borders.

The industrial tribunals are authorized to fix minimum rates of wages and other conditions of employment. Their awards may be enforced by law, as may be industrial agreements between employers and organizations of employees, when registered.

The principal State tribunal is the Industrial Commission of New South Wales. The Commission is empowered to exercise all the arbitration and conciliation powers conferred on subsidiary tribunals, and has in addition authority to determine any widely defined 'industrial matter', to adjudicate in case of illegal strikes and lockouts, etc., to investigate union ballots when irregularities are alleged and to hear appeals from subsidiary tribunals. Subsidiary tribunals are Conciliation Committees for various industries, each having an equal number representing employers and employees and a Conciliation Commissioner as chairman.

The chief industrial tribunals of the Commonwealth are the Industrial Division of the Federal Court of Australia, composed of judges, and the Australian Conciliation and Arbitration Commission, composed of presidential members, and commissioners.

Most State awards and agreements prescribe a basic wage. However, since 1974, the State Industrial Commission has also specified a minimum wage in line with Commonwealth awards. For May 1988, average weekly ordinary time earnings were \$A496 for full-time adult males and \$A413.10 for full-time adult females.

The standard working week varies for employees under Commonwealth and State awards. In June 1985 the New South Wales average weekly standard hours were 37.85 for full-time adult males and 38.18 for full-time adult females. Over-time is permitted under prescribed conditions, and in May 1988 average weekly total earnings were \$A542 for full-time adult males and \$A424 for full-time adult females.

**Trade Unions.** Registration of trade unions is effected under the New South Wales Trade Union Act 1881, which follows substantially the Trade Union Acts of 1871 and 1876 of England. Registration confers a quasi-corporate existence with power to hold property, to sue and be sued, etc., and the various classes of employees covered by the union are required to be prescribed by the constitution of the union. For the purpose of bringing an industry under the review of the State industrial tribunals, or participating in proceedings relating to disputes before Commonwealth tribunals, employees and employers must be registered as industrial unions, under State or Commonwealth industrial legislation respectively. At 30 June 1987, there were 186 trade unions with a total membership of 1,205,800. Approximately 59% (estimate) of wage and salary earners were members of trade unions.

**Commerce.** The external commerce of New South Wales, exclusive of interstate trade, is included in the statement of the commerce of Australia (*see pp. 109-11*). The overseas commerce of New South Wales is given in \$A1,000 ending 30 June:

	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>		<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
1982-83	8,610,870	4,963,957	1985-86	15,130,137	7,329,298
1983-84	10,027,696	5,240,042	1986-87	16,195,265	8,355,713
1984-85	12,707,157	6,717,850	1987-88	18,103,870	10,609,887

The main exports from New South Wales of Australian produce in 1986-87 were coal (18.2%), textile fibres (17.3%), non-ferrous metals (8.2%), meat (5.5%), cereals (4.8%). Principal imports were office machines (12.4%), electrical machinery, apparatus and appliances (5.4%), road vehicles (5%), general industrial machinery (4.6%), telecommunications equipment (4.2%).

Principal destinations of all exports from New South Wales in 1986-87 were Japan (31.3%), EEC countries (12.1%), ASEAN countries (7.4%), USA (7.4%), Hong Kong (7.2%), Republic of Korea (6%), New Zealand (5.9%), Taiwan (4.4%). Major sources of supply were EEC countries (24.1%), USA (23.5%), Japan (18.6%), UK (8.2%), Federal Republic of Germany (6.5%), ASEAN countries (5.4%), New Zealand (4.6%).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** At 31 Dec. 1986 there were 195,005 km of roads and streets open for general traffic in New South Wales (excluding unincorporated and Lord Howe Island), comprising 76,355 km bitumen or concrete, 64,363 km gravel, crushed stone or other improved surface, 34,288 km earth formed and 19,999 km natural surface.

The principal bus services in Sydney and Newcastle are operated by the State Government.

The number of registered motor vehicles (excluding tractors and trailers) at 30 June 1988 was 3,064,145, including 1,931,925 cars, 374,710 station wagons, 181,976 utilities, 213,906 panel vans, 203,831 trucks, 54,166 buses and 103,631 motor cycles.

**Railways.** At 30 June 1987, 9,909 km of government railway were open (618 km electrified). The revenue (including supplements) in 1986-87 was \$A1,446m.; the expenditure from revenue, \$A1,446m.; the number of passengers carried, 224.2m. and 54.6m. tonnes of freight carried. Also open for traffic are 325 km of Victorian Government railways which extend over the border; 68 km of private railways

(mainly in mining districts) and 53 km of Commonwealth Government-owned track.

**Aviation.** Sydney is the major airport in New South Wales and Australia's principal international air terminal. During the year ended 31 Dec. 1987 scheduled aircraft movements at Sydney totalled 114,632. Passengers totalled 7,006,689 on domestic services and 3,462,604 on international services. Freight handled on domestic and international services was 61,232 tonnes and 153,337 tonnes respectively.

**Shipping.** Arrivals of vessels engaged in overseas trade in the ports of New South Wales in 1986-87 numbered 2,805 and clearances numbered 2,756. The revenue tonnage of cargo discharged and loaded was 8.6m. and 49.8m. respectively. Sydney Harbour is the principal port of Australia. The number of overseas vessels which entered in 1986-87 was 1,185.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Legal processes may be conducted in Local Courts presided over by magistrates or in higher courts (District Court or Supreme Court) presided over by judges. There is also an appellate jurisdiction. Persons charged with the more serious crimes must be tried before a higher court.

Children's Courts have been established with the object of removing children as far as possible from the atmosphere of a public court. There are also a number of tribunals exercising special jurisdiction, e.g., the Industrial Commission and the Compensation Court.

At 30 June 1988 there were 4,190 persons (3,961 males; 229 females) in prison custody in New South Wales.

**Religion.** There is no established church in New South Wales, and freedom of worship is accorded to all.

The following table shows the statistics of the religious denominations in New South Wales at the census in 1986, and of ministers of religion registered for the celebration of marriages in 1987:

<i>Denomination</i>	<i>Ministers</i>	<i>Adherents</i>	<i>Denomination</i>	<i>Ministers</i>	<i>Adherents</i>
Catholic	1,701	1,529,176	Other Christian	1,496	288,865
Anglican	1,008	1,519,806	Muslim	11	57,551
Uniting Church	603	327,360	Jewish	29	28,236
Presbyterian	228	227,663	Other Non-Christian	38	57,079
Orthodox	66	165,659	Others	...	1,101,409 <sup>1</sup>
Baptist	443	67,187			
Lutheran	38	31,890	Total	5,661	5,401,881

<sup>1</sup> Comprises 539,467 'no religion' and 561,942 'religion not stated' or 'inadequately described' (this is not a compulsory question in the census schedule).

**Education.** The State Government maintains a system of primary and secondary education, and attendance at school is compulsory from 6 to 15 years of age. In all government schools education is free. Non-government schools are subject to government inspection.

In July 1987 there were 2,210 government schools, comprising 1,666 primary schools, 64 combined primary and secondary schools, 379 secondary schools and 101 special-purpose schools. Total enrolment was 755,084 students, including 433,201 receiving primary instruction and 320,297 receiving secondary instruction. There were 47,323 teachers (including the full-time equivalent of part-time teachers) in 1987.

In July 1987 there were 852 non-government schools with 16,580 teachers (including the full-time equivalent of part-time teachers) and 275,940 students. This included 608 Roman Catholic schools with 12,127 teachers and 213,899 students and 36 Anglican schools with 1,532 teachers and 20,887 students.

The University of Sydney, founded in 1850, had 17,961 students in 1987. There are 7 colleges providing residential facilities at the university. The University of New England at Armidale, previously affiliated with the University of Sydney, was incorporated in 1954, and in 1987 had 9,424 students.



The University of New South Wales was established in 1949. Enrolments in 1987 numbered 17,825. There are 7 colleges providing residential facilities at the university. The University of Newcastle, previously affiliated with the University of New South Wales, was granted autonomy from 1965, and in 1987 had 5,766 students. The University of Wollongong, also previously associated with the University of New South Wales, became autonomous in 1975, and in 1987 had 5,702 students. Macquarie University in Sydney, established in 1964, had 10,883 students in 1987.

Advanced education courses at colleges of advanced education and other institutions provide tertiary training with a vocational emphasis. In 1987 there were 59,643 students enrolled in these courses.

Post-school technical and further education is provided at State technical and further education colleges. Enrolments in 1986 totalled 402,572 (85% being part-time).

State Government expenditure (including capital expenditure and federal grants) on education in 1985–86 was \$A3,787m.

**Social Welfare.** The Commonwealth Government makes provision for social benefits, such as age and invalid pensions, widows' pensions, supporting parents' benefits, family allowances, and unemployment, sickness and special benefits.

The number of age and invalid pensions (including wives' and carers' pensions) current in New South Wales on 30 June 1987 was: Age, 487,855; invalid, 127,552. Expenditure for the year ended 30 June 1987 was \$A2,316m. for age pensions and \$A651m. for invalid pensions.

In addition there were 53,726 widows' pensions current in New South Wales at 30 June 1987. Expenditure on widows' pensions totalled \$A340m. in 1986–87. Supporting parents' benefits at 30 June 1987 numbered 66,379; expenditure in 1986–87 was \$A525m.

Under the Family Allowance scheme, which commenced in 1976, payments to families and approved institutions for children under 16 years and full-time students under 18 years (under 25 in special circumstances) during 1986–87 amounted to \$A497m. The scheme covered 1,402,413 children and students at 30 June 1987.

Unemployment, sickness and special benefits commenced in 1945. During the year 1986–87 claims totalling \$A1,566m. were paid in New South Wales. At 30 June 1988 unemployment benefit was being paid to 181,445 persons, sickness benefits to 33,329 persons and special benefits to 9,379 persons.

Direct State Government social welfare services are limited, for the most part, to the assistance of persons not eligible for Commonwealth Government pensions or benefits and the provision of certain forms of assistance not available from the Commonwealth Government. The State also subsidizes many approved services for needy persons.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The NSW Government Statistician's Office was established in 1886, and in 1957 was integrated with the Commonwealth Bureau of Census and Statistics (now called the Australian Bureau of Statistics). *Deputy Commonwealth Statistician:* John Wilson. Its principal publications are:

*New South Wales Year Book* (1886/87–1900/01 under the title *Wealth and Progress of New South Wales*): latest issue, 1988

*Regional Statistics:* latest issue, 1988

*New South Wales Pocket Year Book.* Published since 1913; latest issue, 1988

*Monthly Summary of Statistics.* Published since May 1931

*New South Wales in Brief.* 1988

New South Wales Dept. of Business and Consumer Affairs, *New South Wales Business Handbook*, Sydney, 1987

New South Wales Department of Environment and Planning, *Sydney Into Its Third Century: Metropolitan Strategy for the Sydney Region*, Sydney, 1988

New South Wales Government Information Service, *New South Wales Government Directory*, 5th ed. Sydney, 1987

*State Library:* The State Library of NSW, Macquarie St., Sydney. *State Librarian:* Alison Crook, BA (Hons), MBA, Dip Lib, Dip Ed, ALAA, AAIM.

## QUEENSLAND

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Queensland comprises the whole north-eastern portion of the Australian continent, including the adjacent islands in the Pacific Ocean and in the Gulf of Carpentaria. Estimated area 1,727,000 sq. km.

The increase in the population as shown by the censuses since 1901 has been as follows:

Year	Census counts			Intercensal increase	
	Males	Females	Total	Numerical	Rate per annum %
1901	277,003	221,126	498,129	—	—
1911	329,506	276,307	605,813	107,684	1.98
1921	398,969	357,003	755,972	150,159	2.24
1933	497,217	450,317	947,534	191,562	1.86
1947	567,471	538,944	1,106,415	158,881	1.11
1954	676,252	642,007	1,318,259	211,844	2.53
1961	774,579	744,249	1,518,828	200,569	2.04
1966	849,390 <sup>1</sup>	824,934 <sup>1</sup>	1,674,324 <sup>1</sup>	144,857	1.84
1971	921,665 <sup>1</sup>	905,400 <sup>1</sup>	1,827,065 <sup>1</sup>	152,741 <sup>1</sup>	1.76 <sup>1</sup>
1976	1,024,611 <sup>1</sup>	1,012,586 <sup>1</sup>	2,037,197 <sup>1</sup>	210,132 <sup>1</sup>	2.20 <sup>1</sup>
1981	1,153,404 <sup>1</sup>	1,141,719 <sup>1</sup>	2,295,123 <sup>1</sup>	257,926 <sup>1</sup>	2.41 <sup>1</sup>
1986	1,295,630 <sup>1</sup>	1,291,685 <sup>1</sup>	2,587,315 <sup>1</sup>	292,192 <sup>1</sup>	2.43 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Including Aborigines.

Since the 1981 census, official population estimates are according to place of usual residence and are referred to as estimated resident population. Estimated resident population at 30 June 1987, 2,676,800.

Statistics on birthplaces from the 1986 census are as follows: Australia, 2,162,995 (83.6%); UK and Ireland, 158,949 (6.1%); other countries, 229,760 (8.9%); at sea and not stated, 35,611 (1.4%).

Vital statistics (including Aborigines) for calendar years:

	Total births	Marriages	Divorces	Deaths
1985	40,437	17,810	6,816	18,629
1986	40,371	18,030	7,042	17,861
1987	39,365	18,265	6,918	18,861

The annual rates per 1,000 population in 1987 were: Marriages, 6.8; births, 14.7; deaths, 7. The infant death rate was 9.3 per 1,000 births.

Brisbane, the capital, had at 30 June 1987 (estimate) a resident population of 1,215,341 (Statistical Division). The resident populations of the other major centres (Statistical Districts) at the same date were: Gold Coast-Tweed, 193,585; Townsville, 108,342; Sunshine Coast, 90,184; Toowoomba, 79,137; Cairns, 73,162; Rockhampton, 60,406; Mackay, 49,988; Bundaberg, 43,182 and Gladstone, 30,564. Other cities included Mount Isa, 24,214; and Maryborough, 22,833.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Queensland, formerly a portion of New South Wales, was formed into a separate colony in 1859, and responsible government was conferred. The power of making laws and imposing taxes is vested in a Parliament of one House—the Legislative Assembly, which comprises 89 members, returned from 4 electoral zones for 3 years, elected for single-member constituencies at compulsory ballot. Members are entitled to \$A47,315 per annum, with individual electorate allowances for travelling, postage, etc., of from \$A18,887 to \$A38,510.

At the general election of 1 Nov. 1986 there were 1,563,294 persons registered as qualified to vote under the Elections Act 1983. This Act provides franchise for all males and females, 18 years of age and over, qualified by 6 months' residence in Australia and 3 months in the electoral district.

The Legislative Assembly, following the elections of 1 Nov. 1986, was composed of the following parties: National, 49; Liberal, 10; Australian Labor, 30; total, 89.

*Governor of Queensland:* Sir Walter Benjamin Campbell, QC (assumed office 22 July 1985).

The Executive Council of Ministers, in Oct. 1988 consisted of the following members:

*Premier and Treasurer and Minister for the Arts:* Michael John Ahern.

*Deputy Premier, Minister for Public Works, Main Roads and Expo and Minister for Police:* William Angus Manson Gunn. *Transport:* Ivan James Gibbs. *Land Management:* William Hamline Glasson. *Finance and Minister Assisting the Premier and Treasurer:* Brian Douglas Austin. *Employment, Training and Industrial Affairs:* Vincent Patrick Lester. *Mines and Energy:* Martin James Tenni. *Primary Industries:* Neville John Harper. *Environment, Conservation and Tourism:* Geoffrey Hugh Muntz. *Family Services and Welfare Housing:* Peter Richard McKechnie. *Northern Development, Community Services and Ethnic Affairs:* Robert Carl Katter. *Water Resources and Maritime Services:* Donald McConnell Neal. *Justice and Attorney-General:* Paul John Clauson. *Industry, Small Business, Communications and Technology:* Robert Edward Borbidge. *Local Government and Racing:* James Henry Randell. *Corrective Services and Administrative Services:* Theo Russell Cooper. *Health:* Leisha Teresa Harvey. *Education, Youth and Sport:* Brian George Littleproud.

Each Minister has a salary of \$A76,597, the Premier receives \$A96,821, the Deputy Premier, \$A83,293, and the Leader of the Opposition, \$A69,163.

*Agent-General in London:* Hon. D. T. McVeigh (392-3 Strand, WC2R 0LZ).

*Local Government.* Provision is made for local government by the subdivision of the State into cities, towns and shires. These are under the management of aldermen or councillors, who are elected by all persons 18 years and over. Local Authorities are charged with the control of all matters of a parochial nature, such as sewerage, cleansing and sanitary services, health services, domestic water supplies, and roads and bridges within their allotted areas. In addition to Government grants and subsidies, Local Authority revenue is derived from general rates, paid by land-owners on the unimproved capital value of land, and by charging for some specific services.

For the year ended 30 June 1987, the receipts and expenditure (including loans) for the 134 Local Authorities were \$A1,887m. and \$A1,851m. respectively and their rateable values amounted to \$A16,922m.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure of the Consolidated Revenue Fund of Queensland during 5 years ending 30 June (in \$A1,000):

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Revenue	4,212,842	4,681,674	5,190,941	5,649,027	6,308,439
Expenditure	4,211,919	4,682,431	5,190,727	5,648,701	6,270,305

Total receipts of the Queensland Government Authorities in 1986-87 were \$A8,449.4m., of which Taxation and Federal Government grants amounted to \$A5,280.6m. Expenditure from these funds included: Education, \$A1,954.3m.; fuel and energy, \$A632.6m.; transport and communications, \$A1,067.6m.; health, \$A1,000.2m.

Revenue and expenditure of Commonwealth Government departments on account of Queensland are not included.

**Debt.** The public debt of the State at 30 June 1988 was \$A2,444.9m.

**Banking.** The major national trading and savings banks dominate banking operations in Queensland. The Bank of Queensland, which is a privately owned bank with its head office in Queensland, and several licensed foreign banks also provide trading and savings bank facilities. In June 1988 the average of weekly deposits held in trading banks in Queensland amounted to \$A8,672.1m. while the average of advances owing to the banks was \$A7,642.5m. The total depositors' balances held in savings banks in Queensland at 30 June 1988 was \$A7,129.2m.



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** During 1987–88, 98.1% of the State's generation of 22,241 m. kwh was derived from coal-fuelled steam power stations. The hydro-electric stations located in north Queensland provided 1.9% of the State's electricity needs with the remainder being produced by gas turbine and internal combustion generation using light fuel oil and natural gas.

**Minerals.** Principal minerals produced during 1986–87 were: Copper, 182,853 tonnes; coal, 68,820,000 tonnes; lead, 195,000 tonnes; zinc, 265,000 tonnes; silver, 490,254 kg; tin, 700 tonnes; gold, 13,107 kg; bauxite, 7,893,000 tonnes; mineral sands concentrates, 509,000 tonnes; nickel, 27,700 tonnes; liquid petroleum, 1,869,000 kilolitres. Value of output, at the mine, was \$A4,345m. The chief mines are at Mount Isa (copper, silver, lead, zinc), Weipa (bauxite), Mount Morgan, Charters Towers, Chillagoe and Kidston (gold), Moreton and Bowen Basin (coal), Greenvale (nickel), Cooper-Eromanga Basin (petroleum) and North Stradbroke Island (mineral sands).

**Land Settlement.** At 30 June 1987, of the 172.7m. hectares of the State, 121m. hectares was Crown leasehold, 20.9m. hectares was in process of freeholding and the remaining 30.8m. hectares was roads, reserves, freehold, mining tenures and vacant land.

In the western portion of the State water is comparatively easily found by sinking artesian bores. At 30 June 1986, 3,585 such bores had been drilled, of which 2,485 were flowing.

**Agriculture.** Livestock on farms and stations at 31 March 1987 numbered 9.01m. cattle, 14.63m. sheep and 579,000 pigs. The wool production (greasy) was, in 1986–87, 63m. kg, valued at \$A292m. The total area under crops during 1986–87 was 3m. hectares.

<i>Crop</i>	<i>Area (hectares)</i>		<i>Production (tonnes)</i>	
	<i>1985–86</i>	<i>1986–87</i>	<i>1985–86</i>	<i>1986–87</i>
Sugar-cane, crushed	284,939	286,967	22,577,738	23,466,026
Wheat	969,547	794,582	1,686,201	833,138
Maize	61,180	38,348	171,467	118,017
Sorghum	564,788	624,902	1,099,962	1,018,807
Barley	332,503	167,917	789,567	275,855
Oats	20,240	20,315	24,679	18,793
Potatoes	5,489	6,335	112,934	132,729
Pumpkins	3,378	3,602	31,670	33,122
Tomatoes	4,304	3,570	84,835	78,778
Peanuts	28,059	32,843	41,081	44,470
Tobacco	2,765	2,942	6,492	7,572
Apples <sup>1</sup>	2,920	2,804	26,406	36,591
Grapes <sup>2</sup>	1,119	1,059	5,016	4,191
Citrus <sup>1</sup>	1,641	1,689	46,868	46,507
Bananas <sup>2</sup>	2,998	3,408	61,550	64,298
Pineapples <sup>2</sup>	3,695	3,758	129,738	142,288
Green fodder <sup>3</sup>	416,602	580,203	...	...
Hay (all kinds)	37,452	51,643	217,286	228,583
Cotton (raw)	41,211	30,996	51,000	40,248

<sup>1</sup> Area of trees 6 years and over.

<sup>2</sup> Bearing area only.

<sup>3</sup> Excluding lucerne and other pastures.

**Forestry.** A considerable area consists of natural forest, eucalyptus, pine and cabinet woods being the timbers mostly in evidence; a large quantity of ornamental woods is utilized by cabinet makers. The amount of timber processed, including plantation and imported, in 1986–87 was (in cu. metres): Conifers, 613,780; hardwoods, structural timbers and cabinet woods, 637,514.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The 1970s created a milestone in the State's industrial progress when the value added in production by the manufacturing sector exceeded the value of production in the agriculture, forestry, fishing and hunting sector. In 1984–85, there

were 3,392 establishments, with four or more workers, employing 87,593 males and 22,347 females, and producing goods and services worth \$A12,921m. The value added was \$A4,385m. The manufacturing establishments contributing most to the overall production during 1984-85 were those predominantly engaged in the processing of food, beverages and tobacco.

The gross value of Queensland agricultural commodity production (in \$A1,000) during 1986-87, amounted to 3,479,050, which included crops, 1,626,445; livestock disposals, 1,349,452; livestock products, 503,153.

**Labour.** Of the total population of 2.7m., 1,176,400 were in employment in Aug. 1988, 253,600 in wholesale and retail trade, 197,800 in community services and 146,400 in manufacturing. Industrial wages and conditions are controlled partly by Federal and partly by State authorities. A State Industrial Commission is empowered to determine all industrial matters in relation to employers and employees, to fix minimum wage-rates and other conditions of employment. An Industrial Court hears appeals and decides points of industrial law. The Federal Court of Australia and the Conciliation and Arbitration Commission are superior within their jurisdictions. In Queensland most employees (62%) work under State awards; 22% under Federal awards.

Rates of wages for each occupation are prescribed by these courts. The weighted average minimum award rate of pay in Feb. 1988 for full-time adult males was \$A378.70 and for full-time adult females \$A350.50, while for Feb. 1988, average weekly earnings were \$A488.90 for full-time adult males and \$A389.30 for full-time adult females. (Average earnings include award, over-award and overtime payments.) A standard working week of either 38 or 40 hours is prescribed for most awards.

**Trade Unions.** Unions both of employees and employers must be registered with the State or Australian Commission. There were 69 employees' and 40 employers' unions registered with the State Commission at 31 Dec. 1986, the former comprising 379,331 and the latter 36,867 members.

**Commerce.** The overseas commerce of Queensland is included in the statement of the commerce of Australia (*see pp. 109-11*).

Total value of the direct overseas imports and exports of Queensland (in \$A1,000) f.o.b. port of shipment for both imports and exports:

	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Imports	1,994,608	2,086,861	2,319,651	2,649,953	2,501,990	2,844,482
Exports	4,470,870 <sup>1</sup>	5,473,718 <sup>1</sup>	6,602,512 <sup>1</sup>	7,737,046 <sup>1</sup>	7,799,966 <sup>1</sup>	8,189,894 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> State of origin.

In 1987-88 interstate exports totalled \$A3,030.8m. and imports \$A6,690.8m. The chief exports overseas are minerals including alumina, coal, meat (preserved or frozen), sugar, wool, cereal grains, copper and lead, and manufactured goods. Principal overseas imports are machinery, motor vehicles, mineral fuels (including lubricants, etc.), chemicals and manufactured goods classified by material. Chief sources of imports in 1987-88 were Japan (\$A592.5m.), USA (\$A652.9m.), UK (\$A145.3m.), EEC, excluding UK (\$A352.9m.); exports went chiefly to Japan (\$A2,871.5m.), USA (\$A795.7m.), UK (\$A592m.), EEC, excluding UK (\$A963.4m.).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** At 30 June 1987 there were 168,434 km of roads; of these, 151,761 km were formed roads, of which 55,581 km were surfaced with sealed pavement.

At 30 June 1987 motor vehicles registered in Queensland totalled 1,575,329, comprising 1,122,973 cars and station wagons, 216,755 utilities, 86,722 panel vans, 9,529 buses, 69,167 trucks and 70,183 motor cycles.

**Railways.** Practically all the railways are owned by the State Government. Total length of line at 30 June 1987 was 10,210 km, of which 1,670 km electrified. In 1986-87, 44.3m. passengers and 75.2m. tonnes of goods and livestock were carried.

**Aviation.** Queensland is well served with a network of air services, with overseas and interstate connexions. Subsidiary companies provide planes for taxi and charter work, and the Flying Doctor Service operates throughout western Queensland.

**Shipping.** In 1986-87, cargo discharged was 3.1m. revenue tonnes and cargo loaded was 63.5m. revenue tonnes.

**Broadcasting.** At 30 June 1987, 60 broadcasting and 43 television stations were in operation throughout Queensland.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by Higher Courts (Supreme and District), Magistrates' Courts and Children's Courts. The Supreme Court comprises a Chief Justice, a senior puisne judge, 17 puisne judges and 2 masters; the District Courts, 24 district court judges of whom 1 is chairman. Stipendiary magistrates preside over the Magistrates' and Children's Courts, except in the smaller centres, where justices of the peace officiate. A parole board may recommend prisoners for release.

The total number of persons convicted of serious offences by the Higher Courts in 1986-87 was 2,645; summary convictions in Magistrates' Courts totalled 133,140 and proven offences in Children's Courts numbered 4,408. There were, at 30 June 1987, 5 prisons, 2 prison farms conducted on the honour system and 1 prison for criminally-insane patients, with 2,261 male and 88 female prisoners. The total police force was 5,381 at 30 June 1987.

**Religion.** There is no State Church. Membership, census 1986: Anglican, 640,867; Catholic, 628,906; Uniting Church, 255,287; Presbyterian, 120,239; Lutheran, 56,910; Baptist, 39,099; other Christian, 211,316; Buddhist, 5,769; Muslim, 3,731; Hebrew, 2,631; all others (including not stated and no religion), 622,560.

**Education.** Education in Queensland ranges from pre-school level through to tertiary level. In addition, child care, kindergarten and adult education facilities are available. Education is compulsory between the ages of 6 and 15 years and is provided free in government schools. Expenditure on education by State and local government authorities for 1984-85 was \$A1,645m.

At July 1987, pre-school education and child care was provided at 1,337 centres with 4,445 staff and 76,380 children.

Primary and secondary education comprises 12 years of full-time formal schooling and is provided by both the government and non-government sectors. At July 1987, the State administered 989 primary, 84 primary/secondary, and 168 secondary schools with 229,058 primary students and 142,367 secondary students. In addition, 81 special schools provided educational programmes for 4,385 children. State education programmes were provided by 24,157 teachers. Non-government enrolments at July 1987 were 58,947 primary students and 60,183 secondary students at 238 primary, 65 primary/secondary and 82 secondary schools. Educational programmes were provided at 5 non-government special schools for 144 children. Educational programmes at non-government schools were provided by 7,714 teachers.

Post-secondary education in Queensland involves technical and further education, advanced education and university education. In 1986, enrolments in TAFE courses totalled 158,516, while 31,634 students were enrolled in advanced education courses. At 30 April 1987 there were 26,034 university students.

**Social Welfare.** Public hospitals are maintained by State and Federal Government endowment, supplemented by fees from patients not in standard wards. Welfare institutions providing shelter and social care for the aged, the handicapped, and children, are maintained or assisted by the State. A child health service is provided throughout the State. Age, invalid, widows', disability and war service pensions, family allowances, and unemployment and sickness benefits are paid by the Federal Government. Age pensioners in the State at 30 June 1987 numbered



208,356; invalid pensioners, 41,689; disability and service pensioners, 144,207 (including dependants).

There were 23,776 widows' pensions current at 30 June 1987, and at the same date family allowances were being paid to 356,486 families in respect of 698,927 children under 16 years and eligible students aged 16 to 24 years. In addition, family allowances were paid to 2,673 children and students in institutions.

**Housing.** In 1987-88, 35,274 dwelling units in new residential buildings valued at SA2,058m. were approved for construction. This total comprised 25,611 houses and 9,663 dwelling units in new other residential buildings comprising flats, semi-detached units, home units, villa units, town houses, etc. In 1987-88, 25,040 dwelling units in new residential buildings were completed and 13,470 were being built at 30 June 1988. The Queensland Housing Commission, financed by Federal and State Government loans, builds dwellings for sale and for rental. Building and co-operative housing societies are assisted by Federal and State Government loans.

### Further Reading

- Statistical Information:* The Statistical Office (313 Adelaide St., Brisbane) was set up in 1859. *Deputy Commonwealth Statistician:* D. N. Allen. *A Queensland Official Year Book* was issued in 1901, the annual *ABC of Queensland Statistics* from 1905 to 1936 with exception of 1918 and 1922. Present publications include: *Queensland Year Book*. Annual, from 1937 (omitting 1942, 1943, 1944, 1987).—*Queensland Pocket Year Book*. Annual from 1950.—*Monthly Summary of Queensland Statistics*. From Jan. 1961  
*Australian Sugar Year Book*. Brisbane, from 1941  
 Endean, R., *Australia's Great Barrier Reef*. Brisbane, 1982  
 Johnston, W. R., *A Bibliography of Queensland History*. Brisbane, 1981.—*The Call of the Land: A History of Queensland to the Present Day*. Brisbane, 1982  
 Johnston, W. R. and Zerner, M., *Guide to the History of Queensland*. Brisbane, 1985  
 Queensland State Public Relations Bureau, *Queensland Resources Atlas*. Brisbane, 1980  
 Queensland Department of Commercial and Industrial Development, *Resources and Industry of Far North Queensland*. Brisbane, 1980  
*State Library:* The State Library of Queensland, Queensland Cultural Centre, South Bank, South Brisbane. *State Librarian:* S. L. Ryan.

## SOUTH AUSTRALIA

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area of South Australia is 380,070 sq. miles (984,377 sq. km). The settled part is divided into counties and hundreds. There are 49 counties proclaimed, covering 23m. hectares, of which 19m. hectares are occupied. Outside this area there are extensive pastoral districts, covering 76m. hectares, 43m. of which are under pastoral leases.

Census population (exclusive of full-blood Aborigines before 1966):

	Males	Females	Total		Males	Females	Total
1901	180,485	177,861	358,346	1966	550,196	544,788	1,094,984
1911	207,358	201,200	408,558	1971	586,051	587,656	1,173,707
1921	248,267	246,893	495,160	1976	620,162	624,594	1,244,756
1933	290,962	289,987	580,949	1981	635,696	649,337	1,285,033
1947	320,031	326,042	646,073	1986	665,960	679,985	1,345,945
1961	490,225	479,115	969,340				

The number of Aborigines (as reported on Census schedules) in the State at the Census of 30 June 1986 was 13,298.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	Live Births	Marriages	Divorces	Deaths
1985	19,790	10,148	4,216	10,496
1986	19,741	9,878	3,776	10,328
1987	19,235	9,695	4,050	10,565

The infant mortality rate in 1987 was 8.73 per 1,000 live births.

The Adelaide Statistical Division had 1,012,782 inhabitants at 30 June 1987 in 22 cities and 8 municipalities and other districts. Cities outside this area (with

populations at 30 June 1987) are Whyalla (27,730), Mount Gambier (19,584), Port Augusta (15,883), Port Pirie (15,164) and Port Lincoln (12,615).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** South Australia was formed into a British province by letters patent of Feb. 1836, and a partially elective Legislative Council was established in 1851. The present Constitution bears date 24 Oct. 1856. It vests the legislative power in an elected Parliament, consisting of a Legislative Council and a House of Assembly. The former is composed of 22 members. Every 4 years half the members retire, and the resulting vacancies are filled at a general election on the basis of proportional representation with the State as one multi-member electorate. The qualifications of an elector are, to be an Australian citizen, or a British subject who on 25 Jan. 1984 was enrolled on a Commonwealth electoral roll and/or at some time between 26 Oct. 1983 and 25 Jan. 1984 inclusive was enrolled on an electoral roll for a South Australian Assembly district or a Commonwealth electoral roll in any State. The person must be of at least 18 years of age and have lived continuously in Australia for at least 6 months, in South Australia for at least 3 months and in the sub-division for which he is enrolled at least 1 month. War service may substitute for residential qualifications in some cases. By the Constitution Act Amendment Act, 1894, the franchise was extended to women, who voted for the first time at the general election of 25 April 1896. The qualifications for election as a member of both Houses are the same as for an elector. Certain persons are ineligible for election to either House.

The House of Assembly consists of 47 members elected for 4 years, representing single electorates. Election of members of both Houses takes place by preferential secret ballot. Voting is compulsory for those on the Electoral Roll.

The House of Assembly, elected on 7 Dec. 1985, consists of the following members: Liberal Party of Australia, 16; Australian Labor Party, 27; National Party of Australia, 1; Independent, 3. The Legislative Council consists of 9 Liberal Party of Australia, 11 Labor and 2 Australian Democrat members.

Each member of Parliament receives \$A48,281 per annum with allowances of \$A12,325–39,095 according to location of electorate, a free pass over government railways and superannuation rights. Electors enrolled (Aug. 1988) numbered 938,614.

The executive power is vested in a Governor appointed by the Crown and an Executive Council, consisting of the Governor and the Ministers of the Crown. The Governor has the power to dissolve the House of Assembly but not the Legislative Council unless that Chamber has twice consecutively with an election intervening defeated the same or substantially the same Bill passed in the House of Assembly by an absolute majority.

*Governor:* Lieut.-Gen. Sir Donald Dunstan, KBE, CB.

The South Australian Labor Ministry, in Aug. 1988 was as follows:

*Premier, Treasurer and Minister for the Arts:* John Charles Bannon, MP.

*Deputy Premier, Minister of Environment and Planning, Chief Secretary and Minister of Emergency Services:* Donald Jack Hopgood, MP. *Attorney-General, Minister of Consumer Affairs, Minister of Corporate Affairs and Minister of Ethnic Affairs:* Christopher John Sumner, MLC. *Minister of State Development and Technology and Minister of Employment and Further Education:* Lynn Maurice Ferguson Arnold, MP. *Minister of Transport:* Gavin Francis Keneally, MP. *Minister of Education, Minister of Children's Services and Minister of Aboriginal Affairs:* Gregory John Crafter, MP. *Minister of Housing and Construction and Minister of Public Works:* Terence Henry Hemmings, MP. *Minister of Health, Minister of Correctional Services and Minister Assisting the Treasurer:* Frank Trevor Blevins, MLC. *Minister of Tourism, Minister of Local Government, Minister of Youth Affairs and Minister Assisting the Minister for the Arts:* Barbara Jean Wiese, MLC. *Minister of Agriculture, Minister of Fisheries and Minister of Recreation and Sport:* Milton Kym Mayes, MP. *Minister of Water Resources, Minister of Lands, Minister of Repatriation, Minister of Community Welfare and Minister Assisting the Minister of Health:* Susan Mary Lenehan, MP. *Minister of Mines and Energy and*

*Minister of Forests:* John Heinz Cornelis Klunder, MP. *Minister of Labour and Minister of Marine:* Robert John Gregory, MP.

Ministers are jointly and individually responsible to the legislature for all their official acts, as in the UK.

*Agent-General in London:* G. Walls (50 Strand, WC2N 5LW).

**Local Government.** The closely settled part of the State (mainly near the sea-coast and the River Murray) is incorporated into local government areas, and subdivided into district councils (rural areas only), municipal corporations (mainly metropolitan, but including larger country towns) and cities (more densely populated areas with a qualification of 15,000 residents in the Adelaide metropolitan area, and 10,000 in the country). The main functions of councils are the construction and maintenance of roads and bridges, sport and recreational facilities and garbage collection and disposal.

The number and area of the sub-divisions, together with expenditure (in \$A1,000) for the year ended 30 June 1987, were:

	No.	Area (1,000 hectares)	Roads and bridges	Recreation and culture	All other	Total expendi- ture
Adelaide statistical division	30	189.3	57,967	63,972	201,766	323,705
Other municipal corporations and district councils	96	15,210.5	47,752	20,029	90,447	158,228
Total	126	15,399.8	105,719	84,001	292,213	481,933

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Recurrent revenue and expenditure (in \$A1,000) for years ended 30 June:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Revenue	1,923,808	2,160,679	2,639,937	2,966,345	3,217,176	4,225,669
Expenditure	2,032,765	2,190,399	2,626,240	2,955,350	3,214,926	4,215,265

**Banking.** Deregulation of the Australian Banking System has seen an additional 7 trading banks operating since June 1985. In June 1988 the average weekly balance of deposits held by all 13 trading banks was \$A4,521.1m. The average weekly balance of loans, advances and bills discounted was \$A5,433.1m.

The 7 savings banks on 30 June 1988 had deposits amounting to \$A3,807.8m. or \$A2,732 per head of population.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The value of minerals produced in 1986-87 was \$A899.9m. The principal minerals produced are opals, natural gas, iron ore, copper, gypsum, salt, talc, clays, limestone, dolomite and sub-bituminous coal.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of South Australia (984,377 sq. km), 265,042 sq. km were alienated, 485,904 sq. km were held under lease and 233,430 sq. km were unoccupied. Area used for agricultural purposes, at 31 March 1987, was 594,707 sq. km.

**Soil Conservation.** Under the direction of special officers in the Department of Agriculture, determined efforts are made to deal with the problems of erosion and soil conservation. Included in the programme are the planting of cereal rye, perennial rye and other grasses to check sand drifts; contour-furrowing and contour banking; contour planting with vines and fruit trees and several water-diversion schemes.

**Irrigation.** For the year ended 31 March 1987, 91,765 hectares were under irrigated culture, being used as follows: Vineyards, 16,418; orchards, 11,865; vegetables, 6,244, and other crops and pasture, 57,238. Most of these areas are along the river Murray.



Gross value of agricultural production (in \$A1,000), 1986-87: Crops, 1,030,753; livestock slaughtering, 326,402; livestock products, 496,724. Total gross value, 1,853,879; local value (*i.e.* less marketing costs), 1,653,699.

<i>Chief crops</i>	<i>1985-86</i>		<i>1986-87</i>	
	<i>Hectares</i>	<i>Tonnes</i>	<i>Hectares</i>	<i>Tonnes</i>
Wheat	1,432,334	1,781,475	1,616,318	2,254,863
Barley	1,153,274	1,687,384	955,425	1,592,296
Oats	106,665	108,138	112,632	149,114
Hay	142,637	453,759	198,568	635,094
Vines	...	220,591,000 <sup>1</sup>	...	194,361,000 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Litres of wine.

Fruit culture is extensively carried on, and in 1986-87, 294,574 tonnes of fresh fruit were produced. Other products, in addition to all kinds of root crops and vegetables, are grass seeds and oil seeds. Livestock, March 1987: 911,702 cattle, 17,234,335 sheep and 422,385 pigs. In 1986-87, 112,807 tonnes of wool and 374m. litres of milk were produced.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The preliminary turnover for manufacturing industries for 1986-87 was \$A9,354m.

<i>Industry sub-division</i>	<i>Establishments (No.)</i>	<i>Persons employed (No.)</i>	<i>Wages and salaries (\$A1m.)</i>	<i>Turnover (\$A1m.)</i>	<i>Value added (\$A1m.)</i>
Food, beverages and tobacco	381	16,076	287	1,945	661
Textiles, clothing and footwear	124	6,653	107	578	244
Wood, wood products and furniture	346	6,880	119	534	238
Paper, paper products, printing and publishing	217	7,609	167	661	321
Chemical, petroleum and coal products	41	2,153	54	387	147
Non-metallic mineral products	142	3,422	78	451	226
Basic metal products	41	7,038	180	984	324
Fabricated metal products	373	7,242	126	576	245
Transport equipment	133	16,493	344	1,619	577
Other machinery and equipment	314	12,149	230	1,019	472
Miscellaneous manufacturing	200	6,822	127	600	227
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,312</b>	<b>92,537</b>	<b>1,820</b>	<b>9,354</b>	<b>3,681</b>

Practically all forms of secondary industry are to be found, the most important being, motor vehicle manufacture, saw-milling and the manufacture of household appliances, basic iron and steel, meat and meat products, and wine and brandy.

**Labour.** Two systems of industrial arbitration and conciliation for the adjustment of industrial relations between employers and employees are in operation—the State system, which operates when industrial disputes are confined to the territorial limits of the State, and the Federal system, which applies when disputes involve other parts of Australia as well as South Australia.

The industrial tribunals are authorized to fix minimum rates of wages and other conditions of employment, and their awards may be enforced by law. Industrial agreements between employers and organizations of employees, when registered, may be enforced in the same manner as awards. In Feb. 1988 the minimum wage under State awards was \$A188.40.

**Commerce.** The commerce of South Australia, exclusive of inter-state trade, is comprised in the statement of the commerce of Australia given under the heading of the Commonwealth, *see pp.* 109-11.

Overseas imports and exports in \$A1m. (year ending 30 June):

	<i>1983-84</i>	<i>1984-85</i>	<i>1985-86</i>	<i>1986-87</i>	<i>1987-88</i>
Imports	1,318.7	1,603.2	1,737.5	1,501.8	1,805.0
Exports	1,635.8	1,921.4	1,987.3	2,047.1	2,243.9

Principal exports in 1987-88 were (in \$A1m.): Wool, 378.1; wheat, 269.7; meat, 196; petroleum and petroleum products, 126.3; barley, 102; iron and steel, 88.3.

Principal imports in 1987-88 were (in \$A1m.): Machinery, 561.6; transport equipment (including motor vehicles), 240.2; petrol and products, 157.3.

In 1987-88 the leading suppliers of imports were (in \$A1m.): Japan (648.8), USA (223.2), UK (120.3), Saudi Arabia (104.4); main exports went to Japan (395), USA (217), New Zealand (157.6), Iran (95.7), UK (93.8), Singapore (89.5).

**Tourism.** In June 1988 there were 348 hotels and motels with 9,156 rooms; 196 caravan parks had a total of 22,052 sites.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** At 30 June 1986, of the roads customarily used by the public, there were 2,527 km of national roads, 10,000 km of arterial roads and 89,473 km of local roads, totalling 102,000 km. Lengths of road classified by surface were as follows: Sealed, 22,382 km; unsealed, 79,618 km. Costs of construction and maintenance are shared by the State and Commonwealth governments and by the councils of the local areas. Motor vehicles registered at 30 June 1988 included 552,118 cars, 114,039 station wagons, 149,180 commercial vehicles and 31,130 cycles.

**Railways.** At 30 June 1987, Australian National Railways operated 5,420 km of railway in country areas. The State Transport Authority operated 149 km of railway in the metropolitan area of Adelaide, which carried 11.8m. passengers in 1986. All public freight and non-metropolitan passenger services are operated by Australian National.

**Aviation.** For the year ended 30 June 1986 there were 1,980,063 passengers and 17,111 tonnes of freight handled by 23,537 aircraft movements at Adelaide, South Australia's principal airport (including Adelaide International). On 30 June 1986 there were 7 government and 29 licensed aerodromes.

**Shipping.** There are several good harbours, of which Port Adelaide is the principal one. In 1985-86, 891 vessels conducting overseas trade entered South Australia with 1,701,640 import tonnes of cargo and left with 5,779,505 export tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** At 30 June 1987, there were 544 post offices. Telephone services connected totalled 643,257 on 30 June 1987. There were 31 radio and 51 television stations at 30 June 1987.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court, which incorporates admiralty, civil, criminal, land and valuation, and testamentary jurisdiction; district criminal courts, which have jurisdiction in many indictable offences; local courts and courts of summary jurisdiction. Circuit courts are held at several places. In the year ended 31 Dec. 1987, 3,096 criminal matters were proven in higher courts. During the year 1985 there were 706 sequestrations and schemes under the Bankruptcy Act. There were 2,498 prisoners received under sentence in 1986 with an average prison population of 632.

**Religion.** At the Census of 1986 the religious distribution of the population (as reported on Census schedules) was as follows: Catholic, 267,137; Anglican, 242,722; Uniting Church, 176,980; Lutheran, 64,851; Orthodox, 37,149; Baptist, 21,415; Presbyterian, 18,566; other Christians, 108,048; non-Christian, 13,843; indefinite, 5,458; no religion, 227,564; not stated, 162,212.

**Education.** Education is secular and is compulsory for children 6-15 years of age. Primary and secondary education at government schools is free. In 1987 there were 717 government schools, comprising 521 primary, 69 primary and secondary, 101 secondary schools and 26 special schools. There were 187,388 full-time students. The Department of Technical and Further Education is responsible for technical, adult and vocational education. In 1987 there were 22 colleges of technical and further education, among the facilities are an adult migrant education service, a

further education, among the facilities are an adult migrant education service, a centre for performing arts and schools of music, maritime and external studies. Tertiary education, including teacher education, is provided by the 2 universities and 3 colleges of advanced education. There were 177 non-government schools and colleges, most of which are associated with religious denominations (53,959 students). In 1987 there were 405 pre-school centres with an enrolment of 26,932 pre-school children.

**Social Welfare.** Age, invalidity, war, unemployment, etc., pensions are paid by the Commonwealth Government. The number of pensioners in South Australia at 30 June 1987 was: Disability and service, 74,944; age, 133,621; invalid, 29,610; unemployment, 74,744. There are schemes for family allowances, widows, supporting parents and sickness and hospital and pharmaceutical benefits.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The State branch of the Australian Bureau of Statistics is in Citibank Centre, 41 Currie St., Adelaide (GPO Box 2272). *Deputy Commonwealth Statistician:* R. J. Rogers. Although the first printed statistical publication was the *Statistics of South Australia, 1854* with the title altered to *Statistical Register* in 1859, there is a written volume for each year back to 1838. These contain simple records of trade, demography, production, etc. and were prepared only for the use of the Colonial Office; one copy was retained in the State.

The publications of the State branch include the *South Australian Year Book*, the *Pocket Year Book of South Australia* and a *Monthly Summary of Statistics*, a quarterly bulletin of building activity, a quarterly bulletin of tourist accommodation and approximately 40 special bulletins issued each year as particulars of various sections of statistics become available.

*South Australia:* Premier's Department, Adelaide, 1980

Douglas, J., *South Australia from Space*. Adelaide, 1980

Finlayson, H. H., *The Red Centre: Man and Beast in the Heart of Australia*. 2nd ed. Sydney, 1952

Gibbs, R. M., *A History of South Australia: From Colonial Days to the Present*. Adelaide, 1984

Whitelock, D., *Adelaide, 1836-1976: A History of Difference*. Univ. of Queensland Press, 1977

*State Library:* The State Library of S.A., North Terrace, Adelaide. *State Librarian:* E. M. Miller, MA (Hons), Dip. NZLS, ANZLA, ALAA.

## TASMANIA

**HISTORY.** Abel Janzoon Tasman discovered Van Diemen's Land (Tasmania) on 24 Nov. 1642. The island became a British settlement in 1803 as a dependency of New South Wales; in 1825 its connexion with New South Wales was terminated; in 1851 a partially elective Legislative Council was established, and in 1856 responsible government came into operation. On 1 Jan. 1901 Tasmania was federated with the other Australian states into the Commonwealth of Australia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tasmania is an island separated from the mainland by the Bass Strait with an area (including islands) of 68,331 sq. km, or 6.83m. hectares, of which 6,441,000 hectares form the area of the main island. The population at 10 consecutive censuses was:

	Population	Increase % per annum		Population	Increase % per annum
1921	213,780	1.12	1966	371,436	1.18
1933	227,599	0.52	1971	398,100 <sup>1</sup>	0.99
1947	257,078	0.87	1976	412,300 <sup>1</sup>	0.70 <sup>2</sup>
1954	308,752	2.65	1981	427,200 <sup>1</sup>	0.72 <sup>2</sup>
1961	350,340	1.82	1986	436,353	...

<sup>1</sup> Resident population.

<sup>2</sup> Not comparable with previous censuses.

At the census of 30 June 1986, 5.32% were born in the UK and Ireland, 2.68% in other European countries and 88.61% in Australia. The last full-blooded Tasmanian Aboriginal died in 1876.



## Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Natural increase</i>
1985	3,520	1,169	7,215	3,658	3,557
1986	3,302	1,245	...	...	...
1987	3,141	1,115	6,753	3,596	...

The largest cities and towns (with populations at the 1986 Census) are Hobart (175,082), Launceston (88,486), Devonport (1981, 21,424) and Burnie (20,585).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Parliament consists of the Governor, the Legislative Council and the House of Assembly. The Council has 19 members, elected by adults with 6 months' residence. Members sit for 6 years, 3 retiring annually and 4 every sixth year. There is no power to dissolve the Council. Vacancies are filled by by-elections. The House of Assembly has 35 members; the maximum term for the House of Assembly is 4 years. Members of both Houses are paid a basic salary of \$A40,102 (Sept. 1988), plus an electorate allowance, according to the division represented. The annual allowance payable is calculated as a percentage of basic salary. The amounts vary from \$A5,659 (11%) to \$A13,205 (35%). Women received the right to vote in 1903. Proportional representation was adopted in 1907, the method now being the single transferable vote in 7-member constituencies. Casual vacancies in the House of Assembly are determined by a transfer of the preference of the vacating member's ballot papers to consenting candidates who were unsuccessful at the last general election.

A Minister must have a seat in one of the two Houses; all present Ministers are members of the House of Assembly.

In addition to the salary paid to Ministers as members of either House, the following allowances are payable: Premier, in conjunction with a ministerial office, \$A47,160; Deputy Premier, in conjunction with a ministerial office, \$A32,069; other Ministers, \$A26,410. The Leader of the Opposition in the House of Assembly receives an allowance of \$A26,410. The holders of some other offices receive allowances ranging from \$A2,264 to \$A12,576.

An election in Feb. 1986 resulted in the Liberal Party retaining government. The composition of the new House of Assembly in Dec. 1988 Liberal, 19 seats, Labor, 14 and 2 Independents.

The Legislative Council is predominantly independent without formal party allegiance; 1 member is Labor-endorsed.

*Governor:* Sir Phillip Bennett, AO, KBE, DSO.

The Liberal Party Cabinet was composed as follows in Dec. 1988:

*Premier, Treasurer, Minister for State Development and Small Business and for Energy:* R. T. Gray.

*Deputy Premier, Tourism, Licensing, Police and Emergency Services, Road Safety, Gaming:* G. A. Pearsall. *Attorney-General, Lands, Parks and Wildlife, Sport and Recreation, Minister responsible for the Motor Accidents Insurance Board:* J. M. Bennett. *Employment and Training, Housing, Labour and Industry, Consumer Affairs:* R. J. Beswick. *Main Roads, Local Government, Water Resources, Racing:* I. M. Braid. *Public Administration, Primary Industry, Transport, Secretary to Cabinet:* N. C. K. Evers. *Health, Community Welfare and the Elderly:* F. R. Groom. *Forests, Mines, Sea Fisheries, Multicultural Affairs, Minister Assisting the Premier:* R. J. Groom. *Construction, Administrative Services, Environment, Inland Fisheries:* P. C. L. Hodgman. *Education and the Arts, Industrial Relations, Deregulation, Technology:* P. E. Rae.

**Local Government.** For the purposes of local government, the State is divided into 47 municipal areas comprising the cities of Hobart, Launceston, Glenorchy and Devonport and 43 municipalities. The number of municipalities was reduced from 45 in May 1985 because of the amalgamation of 2 municipalities with the City of Launceston. The cities and municipalities are managed by elected aldermen and

councillors, respectively, with reference to local matters such as sanitation and health services, domestic water supplies and roads and bridges within each particular area. The chief source of revenue is rates (based on assessed annual value) levied on owners of property.

*Tasmanian Islands.* Three inhabited Tasmanian islands (Bruny, King and Flinders) are organized as municipalities. Nearly 1,360 km south-east lies Macquarie Island (230 sq. km), part of the State, and used only as an Australian research base and meteorological station.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The revenue is derived chiefly from taxation (pay-roll, motor, lottery and land tax, business franchises and stamp duties), and from grants and reimbursements from the Commonwealth Government. Customs, excise, sales and income tax are levied by the Commonwealth Government, which makes grants to Tasmania for both revenue and capital purposes. Commonwealth Government grants to Tasmania in 1986-87 totalled \$A852m. These included General Purpose Revenue Funds, \$A448m.; Specific Purpose Grants, \$A303m.; Capital Grants, \$A30m.; and Health Grants, \$A70m.

Specific Purpose Grants are mainly used to provide essential services such as hospitals, housing, roads and educational services, while General Purpose Revenue Funds have been paid since 1942 to compensate the State for the loss of income tax to the federal government.

Consolidated Revenue Fund receipts and expenditure, in \$A1,000, for financial years ending 30 June:

	1981-82	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87
Revenue	683,231	764,990	853,107	953,209	1,024,697	1,107,870
Expenditure	717,628	772,735	855,006	952,922	1,036,954	1,106,608

The public debt at current exchange rates amounted to \$A1,256m. at 30 June 1987.

In 1986-87 State taxation revenue amounted to \$A277m., of which pay-roll tax provided \$A83.7m.; motor tax, \$A18.6m.; stamp duties, \$A58.4m.; business franchises, \$A56.1m., and lottery tax, \$A10.6m.

**Banking.** Trading bank activity in Tasmania is divided between 3 private banks and the Commonwealth Trading Bank. For the month of June 1987 liabilities represented by depositors' balances averaged \$A760m. and assets represented by advances, \$A756m. The 6 savings banks operating in Tasmania are the Commonwealth Savings Bank, 2 trustee savings banks and 3 private savings banks operated by trading banks. At 30 June 1988 total savings bank deposits were \$A1,642m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Tasmania has good supplies of hydro-electric power because of assured rainfall and high level water storages (natural and artificial). The Hydro-Electric Commission, Tasmania's sole commercial supplier of electricity, has been surveying water power resources of the State for many years and it is estimated that about 3m. kw. can be economically developed. With the addition of the Reece Dam, 2,055,800 kw. of generating plant was in commission in 1985-86. In 1985-86 the peak loading was 1,319,400 kw. The Pieman River Power Development, comprising 3 stations, was completed in 1987. The Gordon River Power Development Stage 2 (the Gordon-below-Franklin scheme) was halted by a High Court decision.

**Minerals.** The assayed content of principal metallic minerals contained in locally produced concentrates for 1985-86 was (in tonnes): Zinc, 98,427; iron pellets, 1,487,000; copper, 27,461; lead, 38,958; tin, 4,396; gold, 2,550 kg; silver, 104,281 kg. Coal production, 329,734 tonnes.

**Primary Industries.** The estimated gross value of recorded production from agriculture in 1986-87 was (in \$A1m.): Livestock products, 180.4; livestock

slaughterings and other disposals, 111.5; crops, 144.9; total gross value, 436.8. Estimated gross value of fisheries was \$A91m.

**Agriculture.** From 1986-87 the scope of the Census includes only those establishments undertaking agricultural activity and having an EVAO (Estimated Value of Agricultural Operations) of \$A20,000 or more. The scope of previous Censuses was establishments undertaking agricultural activity having an EVAO of \$A2,500 or more.

The area occupied by the 3,637 holdings in 1986-87 totalled 1,872,794 hectares, of which 910,276 were devoted to crops and sown pasture. The following table shows the area and production, in tonnes, of the principal crops:

	1984-85		1985-86		1986-87	
	Hectares	Production	Hectares	Production	Hectares	Production
Wheat	2,456	4,389	1,837	4,014	1,729	4,739
Barley	12,352	29,700	12,209	27,722	8,487	20,681
Oats	9,851	15,855	10,264	16,530	7,765	11,215
Green peas	7,042	31,400	6,622	27,908	6,714	22,683
Potatoes	5,209	203,472	4,832	193,485	5,744	223,425
Hay	51,667	212,543	56,664	261,455	45,116	200,363
Hops (bearing) (dry)	869	1,341	835	1,178	854	1,165

Livestock at 31 March 1987: Sheep, 4.9m.; cattle, 534,800; pigs, 46,100.

Wool produced during 1986-87 was 26,341 tonnes, valued at \$A108.7m. In 1986-87 butter production was 5,839 tonnes; cheese, 17,183 tonnes.

**Forestry.** Indigenous forests cover a considerable part of the State, and the saw-milling and woodchipping industries are very important. Production of sawn timber in 1986-87 was 299,300 cu. metres. 827,000 cu. metres of logs were used for milling in 1986-87 and a further 3,970,400 cu. metres were used for chipping, grinding or flaking. Newsprint and paper are produced from native hardwoods, principally eucalypts.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The most important manufactures for export are refined metals, newsprint and other paper manufactures, pigments, woollen goods, fruit pulp, confectionery, butter, cheese, preserved and dried vegetables, sawn timber, and processed fish products. The electrolytic-zinc works at Risdon near Hobart treat large quantities of local and imported ore, and produce zinc, sulphuric acid, superphosphate, sulphate of ammonia, cadmium and other by-products. At George Town, large-scale plants produce refined aluminium and manganese alloys. During 1986-87, 3,991,900 tonnes (green weight) of woodchips were produced. In 1984-85 the average employment in manufacturing establishments employing 4 or more persons was 24,494; wages and salaries (excluding proprietors' drawings), \$A443m.; turnover, \$A2,423m.; value added, \$A938m.; and number operating at 30 June 1985, 575.

**Labour.** The Commonwealth Industrial Court (judicial powers) and Commonwealth Conciliation and Arbitration Commission (arbitral powers) have jurisdiction over federal unions, *i.e.*, with interstate membership. Most Tasmanian employees are covered by federal awards.

State Industrial Boards, established for the various trades by resolution of Parliament or proclamation of the Governor, cover most of the remaining employees. Each Board consists of a Chairman appointed by the Governor with equal representation of employers and employees. The Boards have authority over minimum rates for wages or piecework, number of working hours for which the wage is payable, conditions of apprenticeship, annual leave and adjustment of wage and piecework rates. Industrial Boards follow to a large extent the wage rates fixed by the Conciliation and Arbitration Commission.

**Commerce.** Trade by sea and air in \$A1m. for years ending 30 June:

	1980-81	1981-82	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85
Imports	1,207.1	1,258.5	1,339.1	1,461.7	1,895.3
Exports	1,540.2	1,574.6	1,728.9	1,907.2	2,093.1



In 1986-87 exports totalled \$A1,099,808,000 to overseas countries. The principal countries of destination (with values in \$A1m.) for overseas exports were: Japan, 432; USA, 118.6; Malaysia, 65.8; Indonesia, 63.4; and China (excluding Taiwan), 32.5. In 1986-87 imports totalled \$A289,525,000 from overseas countries. The principal countries of origin (with values in \$A1m.) for overseas imports were: Canada, 43.2; Japan, 40.1; USA, 34.5; New Zealand, 24.7; Taiwan 6.9; China, 2.3 and Malaysia, 0.14.

The main commodities by value (with values in \$A1m.) exported to overseas countries during 1986-87 were: Ores and concentrates (mainly iron, copper, lead, tin and tungsten), 192; refined zinc, 208; abalone, 53; and greasy wool, 56. Other main exports, for which details are not available for separate publication were woodchips, newsprint, printing and writing papers, refined aluminium, ferro-alloys and chocolate confectionery. The main imports from overseas countries in 1986-87 (with values in \$A1m.) were: Petroleum products, 18; new motor vehicles, 16; and chemicals and related products, 26.

**Tourism.** In 1986, 629,600 passengers arrived in Tasmania by sea and air from interstate and New Zealand of whom 329,100 or just over 52% were visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The total road length at 30 June 1985 was 22,406 km, consisting of a classified road system of 3,892 km maintained by the State Department of Main Roads, and the remainder maintained by local government authorities, the Forestry Commission and the Hydro-Electric Commission. Motor vehicles registered at 30 June 1988 comprised 208,600 cars and station wagons, 62,000 other vehicles and 5,900 motor cycles.

**Railways.** There is an 851-km network of 1,067-mm gauge lines linking Hobart and Launceston with coastal and country areas, formerly operated by Tasmanian Government Railways, but since 1 July 1975 worked by the Australian National Railways Commission. A private railway of 134 km, operated by the Emu Bay Railway Co. Ltd, connects Burnie with the mining settlements on the west coast.

**Aviation.** Regular daily passenger and freight air services connect the south, north and north-west of the State with the mainland of Australia. In 1987 there was a total of 33,478 scheduled aircraft movements at Tasmanian airports; a total of 1.1m. passengers and 32,964 tonnes of freight, including mail, was carried.

**Shipping.** In 1986-87 there were, 1,804 ship visits to Tasmania with 10,797,274 mass tonnes of cargo carried through Tasmanian ports.

For posts and telegraphs, *see* p. 113.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court of Tasmania, with civil, criminal, ecclesiastical, admiralty and matrimonial jurisdiction, established by Royal Charter on 13 Oct. 1823, is a superior court of record, with both original and appellate jurisdiction, and consists of a Chief Justice and 6 puisne judges. There are also inferior civil courts with limited jurisdiction, licensing courts, mining courts, courts of petty sessions and coroners' courts.

During the year 1987, 25,703 offences were finalized in the lower courts, 1,517 in the higher courts and 4,820 in the children's courts. The total police force at Sept. 1988 was 1,075. There was 1 gaol, with 297 prisoners at 30 June 1988.

**Religion.** There is no State Church. At the census of 1986 the following numbers of adherents of the principal religions were recorded:

Anglican Church	154,748	Other religions	33,625
Roman Catholic	80,479	No religion	47,852
Methodist	36,724	Not stated <sup>1</sup>	61,742
Uniting Church			
Presbyterian	12,084	Total	435,346
Baptist	8,092		

**Education.** Education is controlled by the State and is free, secular and compulsory between the ages of 6 and 16. At 1 July 1987 government schools had a total enrolment of 65,401 pupils, including 28,153 at secondary level; private schools had a total enrolment of 17,602 pupils, including 8,231 at secondary level.

Technical and further education is conducted at technical and community colleges in the major centres throughout the state. In 1986 there were 19,416 students enrolled in the Division of Technical and Further Education, 21,884 students in the Division of Adult Education. In 1984 teaching staff was made up of 518 full-time and 2,641 part-time teachers.

Tertiary education is offered at the University of Tasmania in Hobart, the Tasmanian State Institute of Technology and the Australian Maritime College, in Launceston. The University (established 1890) had (1987) 3,457 full-time and 1,725 part-time students, and 363 full-time teachers. There were 1,487 full-time and 681 part-time students enrolled in advanced education courses in 1987.

**Social Welfare.** Old Age, Invalid, War Service and Widows' Pensions are paid by the Commonwealth Government. The number of pensioners in Tasmania on 30 June 1987 was: Age (including wife and carer pensioners), 38,743; invalid, 10,904; war (disability), 15,337; widows, 4,723. Benefit payments totalled \$A473m. (including payments to wives).

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The State Government Statistical Office (Commonwealth Government Centre, Hobart), established in 1877, became in 1924 the Tasmanian Office of the Australian Bureau of Statistics, but continues to serve State statistical needs as required.

*Deputy Commonwealth Statistician and Government Statistician of Tasmania:* Stuart Jackson.

Main publications: *Annual Statistical Bulletins* (e.g., *Demography*, *Courts*, *Agricultural Industry*, *Finance*, *Manufacturing Establishments* etc.).—*Pocket Year Book of Tasmania*. Annual (from 1913).—*Tasmanian Year Book*. Annual (from 1967).—*Monthly Summary of Statistics* (from July 1945).

Tasmanian Development Authority, *Tasmanian Manufacturers Directory*. Hobart, 1985

Angus, M., *The World of Olegas Truchanas*. Hobart, 1975

Green, F. C. (ed.) *A Century of Responsible Government*. Hobart, 1956

Phillips, D., *Making more Adequate Provisions: State Education in Tasmania 1839-1985*. Hobart, 1985

Robson, L., *A History of Tasmania. Volume I: Van Diemen's Land from the Earliest Times to 1855*. Melbourne, 1983

Townsley, W. A., *The Government of Tasmania*. Brisbane, 1976

*State Library:* The State Library of Tasmania, Hobart. *State Librarian:* D. W. Dunstan.

## VICTORIA

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The State has an area of 227,600 sq. km, and a resident population (estimate) of 4,183,500 at 31 Dec. 1986.

The resident population (estimate) of the Melbourne Statistical Division at 30 June 1986 was 2,942,600 or 71% of the population of the State. The resident population (estimate) of each statistical district in Victoria at 30 June 1986 was: Ballarat, 78,290; Bendigo, 64,790; Geelong, 148,270; Morwell, 18,090; Shepparton-Mooroopna, 39,540.

The census count (exclusive of full-blood aboriginals prior to 1971) was:

Date of census enumeration	Males	Population Females	Total	On previous census	
				Numerical increase	Increase %
5 April 1891	598,222	541,866	1,140,088	278,522	32.33
31 March 1901	603,720	597,350	1,201,070	60,982	5.35
3 April 1911	655,591	659,960	1,315,551	114,481	9.53
4 April 1921	754,724	776,556	1,531,280	215,729	16.40
30 June 1933	903,244	917,017	1,820,261	288,981	18.87
30 June 1947	1,013,867	1,040,834	2,054,701	234,440	12.88
30 June 1954	1,231,099	1,221,242	2,452,341	397,640	19.35
30 June 1961	1,474,395	1,455,718	2,930,113	477,772	19.48
30 June 1966	1,614,240	1,605,977	3,220,217	290,104	9.90
30 June 1971	1,750,061	1,752,290	3,502,351	282,134	8.76
30 June 1976	1,814,783	1,832,192	3,646,975	144,624	4.13
30 June 1981	1,901,411	1,931,032	3,832,443	185,468	5.09
30 June 1986	1,991,469	2,028,009	4,019,478	187,035	4.88

The count for the Melbourne Statistical Division (S.D.) on 30 June 1986 was 2,942,600. The count for the Geelong S.D. was 139,792; Ballarat S.D., 75,210; Bendigo S.D., 62,380; Shepparton-Mooroopna S.D., 37,086; and the Victorian component of Albury-Wodonga S.D., 35,183. Other urban centres: Warrnambool, 22,706; Traralgon, 19,233; Morwell, 16,387; Wangaratta, 16,598; Mildura, 18,382; Sale, 13,559; Horsham, 12,174; Colac, 9,532; Hamilton, 9,969; Bairnsdale, 10,328; Portland, 10,934; Swan Hill, 8,831; Ararat, 8,015; Benalla, 8,490; Maryborough, 7,705; Castlemaine, 6,603.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1984	59,485	28,931	10,501	29,532
1985	61,555	29,810	9,688	31,353
1986	60,152	29,390	9,670	30,175

The annual rates per 1,000 of the mean resident population (estimate) in 1986 were: Marriages, 7.1; births, 14.4; deaths, 7.2; divorces, 2.3.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Victoria, formerly a portion of New South Wales, was, in 1851, proclaimed a separate colony, with a partially elective Legislative Council. In 1856 responsible government was conferred, the legislative power being vested in a parliament of two Houses, the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. At present the Council consists of 44 members who are elected for 2 terms of the Assembly, one-half retiring at each election. The Assembly consists of 88 members, elected for 4 years from the date of its first meeting unless sooner dissolved by the Governor. Members and electors of both Houses must be aged 18 years and Australian citizens or those British subjects previously enrolled as electors, according to the Constitution Act 1975. No property qualification is required, but judges, members of the Commonwealth Parliament, undischarged bankrupts and persons convicted of an offence which is punishable by life imprisonment, may not be members of either House. Single voting (one elector one vote) and compulsory preferential voting apply to Council and Assembly elections. Enrolment for Council and Assembly electors is compulsory. The Council may not initiate or amend money bills, but may suggest amendments in such bills other than amendments which would increase any charge. A bill shall not become law unless passed by both Houses.

Private members of both Houses receive salaries of \$A48,680 per annum.

Members holding the following offices receive an additional salary and in some cases an expense allowance. The President of the Council, \$A36,510 salary and \$A5,355 expense allowance; the Speaker of the Assembly, \$A36,510 salary and \$A5,355 expense allowance; the Chairman of Committees of the Council, \$A15,578 salary and \$A1,947 expense allowance; the Chairman of Committees of the Assembly, \$A15,578 salary and \$A1,947 expense allowance; the Leader of the Opposition in the Assembly, \$A36,510 salary and \$A8,762 expense allowance; the Deputy Leader of the Opposition in the Assembly, \$A15,578 salary and \$A2,921 expense allowance; the Leader of the Third Party, \$A15,578 salary and \$A2,921 expense allowance; a member of either House who is the Parliamentary Secretary of the Cabinet, \$A15,578 salary and \$A2,921 expense allowance; the Government Whip in the Assembly, \$A8,762 salary; the Whip of any recognized Party which consists of at least 12 members of Parliament, of which Party no member is a responsible Minister, \$A8,762 salary. Members receive electorate allowances, residential allowances and allowances for attending Parliament and Parliamentary Standing Committees.

The Legislative Assembly, elected on 1 Oct. 1988, is composed as follows: Labor Party, 46; Liberal Party, 33; National Party, 9.

*Governor:* Dr J. Davis McCaughey, AC.

In the exercise of the executive power the Governor is advised by a Cabinet of responsible Ministers. Section 50 of the Constitution Act 1975 provides that the number of Ministers shall not at any one time exceed 18, of whom not more than 6 may sit in the Legislative Council and not more than 13 may sit in the Legislative



Assembly. No Minister may hold office for more than 3 months unless he or she is or becomes a member of the Council or the Assembly.

Responsible Ministers receive the following amounts: The Premier, \$A48,680 salary and \$A20,446 expense allowance; the Deputy Premier, \$A41,378 salary and \$A10,223 expense allowance; 16 other Ministers, \$A36,510 salary and \$A8,762 expense allowance. The President, Speaker, Chairman of Committees in the Assembly and in the Council, Parliamentary Secretary of the Cabinet, Leader and Deputy Leader of the Opposition in the Assembly, Leader of the Opposition in the Council and Leader in the Assembly of the Third Party, also receive a travelling allowance when travelling on official business. The Premier, Deputy Premier, a Minister or office holder or Member, also receive a travelling allowance when travelling on official business.

The Labor Party Government was as follows on 13 Oct. 1988:

*Premier:* John Cain, MP.

*Deputy Premier, Minister for Agriculture and Rural Affairs, and the Arts:* R. C. Fordham, MP. *Industry, Technology and Resources:* E. H. Walker, MLC. *Health:* D. R. White, MLC. *Police and Emergency Services, and Tourism:* S. M. Cragg, MP. *Ethnic Affairs and Minister assisting the Minister for Education:* C. J. Hogg, MLC. *Treasurer:* R. A. Jolly, MP. *Transport:* J. H. Kennan, MP. *Education:* J. E. Kirner, MLC. *Attorney-General and Local Government:* A. McCutcheon, MP. *Labour:* N. Pope, MP. *Housing and Construction:* B. T. Pullen, MLC. *Consumer Affairs, Planning and Environment:* T. W. Roper, MP. *Conservation, Forests and Lands:* K. P. Setches, MP. *Community Services:* P. C. Spyker, MP. *Sport and Recreation:* N. B. Trezise, MP. *Property and Services, and Water Resources:* R. W. Walsh, MP. *Parliamentary Secretary of the Cabinet:* M. A. Lyster, MLC.

---

*Agent-General in London:* Ian Haig (Victoria House, Melbourne Place, Strand, London, WC2R 4LG).

*Local Government.* With the exception of Yallourn Works area (26.9 sq. km) and the unincorporated areas—French Island (154 sq. km), Lady Julia Percy Island (1.3 sq. km), the Bass Strait Islands and part of Gippsland Lakes (312.8 sq. km) and Tower Hill Lake Reserve (5 sq. km), the State is divided (in Oct. 1988) into 210 municipal districts, namely 68 cities, 5 towns, 6 boroughs and 132 shires. The constitution of cities, towns, boroughs and shires is based on statutory requirements concerning population, rate revenue and net annual value of rateable property.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The receipts and payments (in \$A1m.) of the Consolidated Fund in the years shown (ended 30 June) were:

	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86
Receipts	7,203	7,781	8,827	9,659
Payments	7,209	7,752	8,828	9,686

The Consolidated Fund is divided into two sectors: The Current Account and the Works and Services (capital account).

Total receipts for 1985-86 of the Current Account sector were 7,865. Principal receipt items were: State taxation, 3,095; Commonwealth tax sharing, 2,248; other Commonwealth payments, 821 and public authorities, 410.

The Works and Services sector contributed 1,793. Principal receipt items were: Commonwealth payments, 646; loan raisings, 360 and the State Development Account (an investment account receiving deposits from various State Authorities), 89.

Of total Consolidated Fund payments during 1985-86 7,894 was paid through the Current Account sector. Principal payment items were: Debt charges, 702; education, 2,503; health, 1,612 and transport, 1,633.

The remaining 1,763 paid through the Works and Services sector was appro-

prated into the Works and Services Account, from which the Victorian Government makes its capital expenditure. Principal payment items were: Education, 249; housing, 239; transport, 739 and water resources, 53.

The public debt of Victoria at 30 June 1985 was 4,385. Victoria had other liabilities due to the Commonwealth Government of 1,336 largely being advances for housing.

**Banking.** The State Bank of Victoria, the largest bank in the State, joined with the State Banks of New South Wales, South Australia and Western Australia to form the State Banks Association in Feb. 1984. The Bank provides a full range of domestic and international banking services for both business and personal customers and is the largest supplier of housing finance in Victoria, with approvals for owner-occupied dwellings totalling \$A853m. in the year to June 1985.

There are 4 major trading banks in Victoria (Commonwealth Bank of Australia, Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd, Westpac Banking Corporation and National Australia Bank) with a total of 1,248 branches and 245 agencies between them at 30 June 1986, and 4 other trading banks. Private savings banks had 1,107 branches and 401 agencies at 30 June 1986. On 30 June 1986 there were 8.8m. operative accounts (excluding school bank accounts) in savings banks in Victoria. The total credit due to depositors amounted to \$A16,586m., made up of State Savings Bank, \$A8,059.8m.; Commonwealth Savings Bank, \$A2,635m.; private savings banks, \$A5,891.3m.

The weekly average of deposits and advances of trading banks operating in Victoria during June 1986 were as follows: Deposits, not bearing interest, \$A3,145.5m.; deposits, bearing interest, \$A9,961.6m.; total deposits, \$A13,107.1m.; loans, advances, and bills discounted, \$A12,684.9m. The weekly average of debits to customers' accounts (excluding debits to Federal and State Government accounts at City branches in State capitals) for the same period totalled \$A26,514m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** All electricity in this State for public supply is generated by the largest electricity supply authority in Australia, the State Electricity Commission of Victoria. Through its network of 116,000 km of power lines the SEC supplies more than 1,424,000 customers. Another 277,800 customers take SEC power from 11 metropolitan councils which buy in bulk and distribute electricity through their own systems.

Electricity demand has almost doubled in 10 years and is now over 25,000 megawatt/hours a year. Generating capacity at 30 June 1985 was 6,603 megawatts compared with 3,863 in 1973. This includes capacity within Victoria and that available from New South Wales.

About 80% of the power generated for the state system is supplied by brown-coal fired generating stations, Yallourn, Morwell, Hazelwood and Loy Yang, located in the La Trobe Valley on one of the largest single brown coal deposits in the world 140 to 180 km east of Melbourne in Central Gippsland.

There are 2 other thermal stations and 3 hydro-electric stations in north east Victoria. Victoria is also entitled to approximately 30% of the output of the Snowy Mountains hydro-electric scheme and half the output of the Hume hydro-electric station, both of which are in New South Wales.

**Oil and Natural Gas.** Crude oil in commercially recoverable quantities was first discovered by the Esso/BHP partnership in 1967 in 2 large fields offshore in East Gippsland in Bass Strait between 65 and 80 km from land. These fields, Halibut and Kingfish, with 10 other fields since discovered—Marlin, Snapper, Barracouta, Mackerel, Tuna, Cobia, Flounder, Fortescue, Bream and Seahorse have been assessed as containing initial recoverable reserves of more than 2,930m. bbls of treated crude oil.

Gippsland crude now supplies approximately 72% of Australia's refinery requirements. Depletion of production from the 2 major fields, Kingfish and Halibut and the smaller Barracouta field, is now expected to occur in the late-1980s. Production of crude oil (1986) 145m. bbls.



Natural gas was discovered offshore in East Gippsland in 1965. The initial recoverable reserves of treated gas are 220,400m. cu. metres. Reserves are sufficient for at least 30 years. Following an extensive development and distribution programme, natural gas was first connected to homes and industry in Victoria in April 1969. All gas consumers in Melbourne, Geelong, Ballarat, Bendigo, Shepparton, Euroa, Benalla, Wangaratta, Wodonga, Albury and a number of towns near Melbourne, in the La Trobe Valley and in East Gippsland, are now using natural gas. At 30 June 1985 a total of 1,013,455 consumers were being supplied with it. During the period 1 July 1982 to 30 June 1983 a total volume of 5,646m. cu. metres of gas was consumed in Victoria, including commercial sales and plant usage.

Natural gas and crude oil are conveyed from the producing fields to a large treatment plant at Longford in East Gippsland from where both hydrocarbons are distributed by a network of transmission lines to tank farms and city gate distribution points.

The crude oil is then distributed to refineries in Victoria by pipeline and to other States by seagoing tankers. Natural gas is distributed to residential and industrial consumers through a network of approximately 20,289 km of mains.

Liquefied petroleum gas is now being produced after extraction of the propane and butane fractions from the untreated oil and gas.

**Brown Coal.** Major deposits of brown coal are located in the Central Gippsland region and comprise approximately 94% of the total resources in Victoria. The resource is estimated to be 202,000 megatonnes, of which about 31,000 megatonnes are regarded as readily accessible reserves. It is young and soft with a water content of 60% to 70%. In the La Trobe Valley section of the region, the thick brown coal seams underlie an area from 10 to 30 km wide extending over approximately 70 kilometres from Yallourn in the west to the south of Sale in the east. It can be won continuously in large quantities and at low cost by specialized mechanical plant.

About 54% of the resources occur in areas where the overburden over the uppermost seam is less than 30.5 metres while 95% is in areas with less than 91.4 metres of overburden. The current primary use of these reserves is to fuel the major base load electricity generating stations located at Morwell and Yallourn.

**Minerals.** Production of certain metals and minerals, 1984-85: Gold (1985-86), 1,271,669 grammes, value \$A17,901,000; kaolin, 89,000 tonnes, value \$A5,091,000; gypsum, 247,000 tonnes, value \$A1,353,000.

**Land Settlement.** Of the total area of Victoria (22.76m. hectares), 13,973,915 hectares on 30 June 1984 were either alienated or in process of alienation. The remainder (8,786,085) constituted Crown land as follows: Perpetual leases, grazing and other leases and licences, 2,160,352; reservations including forest and timber reserves, water, catchment and drainage purposes, national parks, wildlife reserves, water frontages and other reserves, plus unoccupied and unreserved including areas set aside for roads, 6,625,733. Establishments with agricultural activity at 31 March 1985 numbered 45,884.

**Agriculture.** The following table shows the area under the principal crops and the produce of each for 3 seasons (in 1,000 units):

Season	Total crop area		Wheat		Oats		Barley		Potatoes		Hay	
	Hec- tares	Hec- tares	Tonnes	Hec- tares	Tonnes	Hec- tares	Tonnes	Hec- tares	Tonnes	Hec- tares	Tonnes	
1983-84	2,655	1,614	3,862	324	495	403	759	13	362	718	3,032	
1984-85	2,569	1,523	2,666	228	343	486	638	15	379	387	1,516	
1985-86	2,528	1,508	2,250	212	300	389	476	14	367	425	1,648	

In 1985-86 there were 20,025 hectares of vines, yielding 68,761 tonnes of grapes for wine-making and 290,657 tonnes of grapes for drying or for table use. The area cut for green feed and silage covered 90,738 hectares, and orchards and vegetables, including potatoes and onions, occupied 47,776 hectares; tobacco, 1,652



hectares yielding 3,711 tonnes (dry). Fruit production, 1986, included oranges, 60,744 tonnes, and strawberries, 1,475,457 kg.

At March 1986 there were in the State 3.7m. head of cattle, 26,892,261 sheep and 431,680 pigs. In 1985-86, 655,132 tonnes of fresh meat was produced. The wool produced in the season 1985-86 amounted to 171m. kg, valued at \$A542m. The quantity of butter produced in 1985-86 was 90.9m. kg.

The gross value of Victorian primary production (rural and non-rural) in 1985-86 was \$A3,413m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Selected articles manufactured (1986-87, in tonnes): Beef and veal, 312,000; lamb, 130,000; butter, 90,140; cheese, 101,832; white flour, 248,414; cotton yarn, 10,477; wool yarn, 16,548; cotton cloth, 19,445 sq. metres; wool cloth, 3,987 sq. metres; 188,000 cars and station wagons; plastic and synthetic resins, 427; 447m. clay bricks; ready mixed concrete, 3,151,000 cu. metres.

**Labour.** In Aug. 1987 there were 1,931,200 employed persons (59% of the civilian population aged 15 years and over): Agriculture, forestry, fishing and hunting, 96,000; mining, 7,700; manufacturing, 394,100; electricity, gas and water, 33,600; construction, 128,400; wholesale and retail trade, 369,300; transport and storage, 95,400; communication, 40,200; finance, property and business services, 199,000; public administration and defence, 96,300; community services, 357,200; recreation, personal and other services, 114,000. There were 122,000 unemployed persons in Aug. 1987 (5.9% of the labour force).

**Trade Unions.** There were 176 trade unions with a total membership of 886,400 operating in Victoria in June 1986.

**Commerce.** The commerce of Victoria, exclusive of inter-state trade, is included in the statement of the commerce of Australia, *see* pp. 109-11.

The total value of the overseas imports and exports of Victoria, including bullion and specie but excluding inter-state trade, was as follows (in \$A1,000):

	1980-81	1981-82	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86 <sup>1</sup>
Imports	5,929,278	7,175,776	6,989,815	8,185,717	10,084,483	12,409,575
Exports <sup>2</sup>	3,989,429	4,177,187	4,321,674	5,059,996	6,382,293	6,810,680

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

<sup>2</sup> Includes re-exports.

The chief exports in 1985-86 were: Petroleum products and gases; textile fibres and their wastes; cereals and cereal preparations; dairy products; meat and meat preparations; road vehicles, and power generating machinery. Exports in 1985-86 went mainly to Japan (\$A1,526m.), USA (\$A878m.) and New Zealand (\$A467m.).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985-86 there were 158,574 km of roads open for general traffic, consisting of 7,527 km of state highways and freeways, 14,867 km of main roads, 1,851 km of tourist and forest roads and 134,329 km of other roads and streets. The number of registered motor vehicles (other than tractors) at 30 June 1986 was 2,476,800.

**Railways.** All the railways are the property of the State and are under the management of the State Transport Authority and the Metropolitan Transit Authority, responsible to the Victorian Government.

At 30 June 1986, 5,714 km of government railway were open. In 1986, 10,512,000 tonnes of goods and livestock were carried.

**Aviation.** There were (1984) 57,437 domestic and (1985) 11,359 international aircraft movements at Essendon and Melbourne airports. Passengers totalled (1984) 4,646,496 on domestic flights and (1985) 1,156,951 on international flights. Freight handled (1984) 90,763 tonnes on domestic flights and (1985) 65,434 tonnes on international flights.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 2,554,000 telephones. In 1987 there were 52 broadcasting stations and 19 television stations.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court with a Chief Justice and 21 puisne judges. There are a county court, magistrates' courts, a court of licensing, and a bankruptcy court, etc.

Criminal matters proven for 1985 in the children's court were 13,504; magistrates' courts, 70,802; and higher (judges') courts, 2,795 (excluding driving and traffic offences).

There are 12 gaols in Victoria. At 30 June 1987 there were 1,956 persons confined in these prisons.

**Religion.** There is no State Church in Victoria, and no State assistance has been given to religion since 1875. At the date of the 1986 census the following were the enumerated numbers of each of the principal religions: Catholic,<sup>1</sup> 1,104,044; Church of England, 715,414; Uniting, 280,262 (including Methodist); Orthodox, 177,565; Presbyterian, 138,000; Protestant (undefined), 87,557; other Christian, 90,756; Moslem, 37,965; Hebrew, 32,387; no religion, 557,939; no reply, 574,712; other groups, 222,877.

<sup>1</sup> So described on individual census schedules.

**Education.** Education establishments in Victoria consist of 4 universities, established under special Acts and opened in 1855, 1961, 1967 and 1977; Colleges of Advanced Education; government schools (primary, primary-secondary, high and secondary technical, and further education colleges), and non-government schools.

The University of Melbourne, founded in 1853, had, in 1986, 16,099 students and 1,387 academic staff.

Monash University, founded in 1958 in an eastern suburb of Melbourne, had, in 1986, 13,839 students and 1,122 teaching and research staff.

La Trobe University, founded in 1964 in a northern suburb of Melbourne, had 9,927 students and 609 academic staff in 1986.

Deakin University (1974) near Melbourne had 7,068 students and 261 academic staff in 1986.

Primary education of children of the ages of 6 to 15 years inclusive is free, secular and compulsory. On 1 July 1986 there were 1,602 government primary schools, 82 special schools, 23 combined primary-secondary schools and 407 secondary schools (including both junior technical schools and high schools). There were 19,114 teaching staff (FTE or full-time equivalent units) with an enrolment of 302,404 pupils in primary and special grades, and 21,609 teaching staff (FTE) with an enrolment of 243,732 pupils in secondary grades. In 1985 there were 204,603 students (excluding adult education programmes) enrolled in technical and further education schools and colleges.

*Non-government Schools.* There were at 1 July 1986, 734 non-government schools, excluding commercial colleges, with 15,907 teaching staff (FTE) and 250,396 pupils enrolled. Of these schools, 503 were Roman Catholic.

**Health.** At 30 June 1985 there were 283 approved hospitals with 21,311 beds, of which 117 with 5,951 beds were private, and 398 approved nursing homes with 15,972 beds.

**Social Services.** Victoria was the first State of Australia to make a statutory provision for the payment of Age Pensions. The Act providing for the payment of such pensions came into operation on 18 Jan. 1901, and continued until 1 July 1909, when the Australian Invalid and Old Age Pension Act came into force. The Social Services Consolidation Act, which came into operation on 1 July 1947, repealed the various legislative enactments relating to age (previously old-age) and invalid pensions, maternity allowances, child endowment, and unemployment, and sickness benefits and while following in general the Acts repealed, considerably liberalized many of their provisions: it has since been amended. On 30 June 1986 there

were 349,667 aged and 75,954 invalid pensioners in Victoria, and the amount paid in pensions, including payments to wives of invalid pensioners, during 1985–86 was \$A1,966.5m.

The number of disability pensions (members of the forces and their dependants) payable in Victoria on 30 June 1986 was 100,245, and the number of service pensions was 97,517. The amount paid in war and service pensions by the Federal Government during 1985–86 was \$A638m.

Under the Australian Unemployment and Sickness Benefit Act 1944, there were 102,155 persons receiving benefits at June 1986 (excluding migrants in accommodation centres) and the amount paid in benefits totalled \$A680.3m. in the year ended 30 June 1986.

The number of widows' pensions in force in Victoria at 30 June 1986 was 42,308, and the total amount paid in allowances during the year was \$A248.6m.

The number of family allowances in force in Victoria at 30 June 1986 was 1,084,467 (including students). In addition (in 1986), endowment was being paid in respect of 1,518 children who were being maintained in approved institutions. The total amount paid in endowment in Victoria during the year ended 30 June 1986 was \$A401.4m.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Australian Bureau of Statistics (The Rialto Building, 525 Collins Street, Melbourne, 3000). *Deputy Commonwealth Statistician:* Erle Bourke.

*Victorian Year Book.* (Annually since 1873)

*Victorian Pocket Year Book.* (Annually since 1956)

*Victorian Statistical Register.* (Annually from 1854 to 1916)

*Monthly Summary of Statistics* (from Jan. 1960)

*Historical Records of Victoria.* Victorian Government Printing Office, Melbourne (From 1981)

*Victoria: The First Century.* Official History of Victoria. Melbourne, 1934

*Victorian Municipal Directory.* Melbourne, (From 1866)

Broome, R., *The Victorians: Arriving.* New South Wales, 1984

Christie, M. F., *Aborigines in Colonial Victoria, 1835–86.* Sydney Univ. Press, 1979

Dingle, T., *The Victorians: Settling.* New South Wales, 1984

Dunstan, D., *Governing the Metropolis: Politics, Technology, and Social Change in a Victorian City: Melbourne 1850–1891.* Melbourne Univ. Press, 1984

Grant, J. and Serle, G., *The Melbourne Scene 1803–1956.* Melbourne Univ. Press, 1956

Pratt, A., *The Centenary History of Victoria.* Melbourne, 1934

Priestley, S., *The Victorians: Making Their Mark.* Melbourne, 1984

*State Library:* The State Library of Victoria, 328 Swanston St., Melbourne, 3000. *State Librarian:* W. Horton, BA, ALAA.

## WESTERN AUSTRALIA

**HISTORY.** In 1791 Vancouver, in the *Discovery*, took formal possession of the country about King George Sound. In 1826 the Government of New South Wales sent 20 convicts and a detachment of soldiers to King George Sound and formed a settlement then called Frederickstown. In 1827 Captain (afterwards Sir) James Stirling surveyed the coast from King George Sound to the Swan River, and in May 1829 Captain (afterwards Sir) Charles Fremantle took possession of the territory. In June 1829 Captain Stirling, newly appointed Lieut.-Governor, founded the colony now known as the State of Western Australia. On 1 Jan. 1901 Western Australia became one of the 6 federated States within the Commonwealth of Australia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Western Australia lies between 113° 09' and 129° E. long. and 13° 44' and 35° 08' S. lat.; its area is 2,525,500 sq. km.



The population at each census from 1947 was as follows <sup>1</sup>:

	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Total</i>		<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Total</i>
1947	258,076	244,404	502,480	1971	539,332	514,502	1,053,834
1954	330,358	309,413	639,771	1976	599,959	578,383	1,178,342
1961	375,452	361,177	736,629	1981	659,249	642,807	1,300,056
1966	432,569	415,531	848,100	1986	726,299	714,308	1,440,607

<sup>1</sup> 1961 and earlier exclude full-blood Aborigines; from 1966 figures refer to total population (*i.e.*, including Aborigines). Figures from 1971 are based on estimated resident population.

The population at the 1986 census was 1,406,949 (709,569 males and 699,360 females). Of these 1,020,362 were born in Australia. Married persons numbered 617,382 (308,974 males and 308,408 females); widowers, 10,787; widows, 49,776; divorced, 23,505 males and 28,268 females; never married, 348,343 males and 294,771 females. The number of males under 21 was 247,826 and of females 235,620.

Perth, the capital, had an estimated resident population of 1,080,237 at June 1986. Of this, the area administered by the City of Perth had a population of 81,818 while the population in the area for which the City of Fremantle is responsible (which includes the chief port of the State) was 24,010.

Principal local government areas outside the metropolitan area, with population at 30 June 1987 (estimate): Bunbury, 25,249; Geraldton, 20,162; Mandurah, 20,343; Roebourne, 17,615; Port Hedland, 13,583; Albany, 14,741; Boulder, 13,636; Kalgoorlie, 11,119.

Vital statistics for calendar years <sup>1</sup>:

	<i>Births</i>	<i>Ex-nuptial births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1983	23,046	3,642	10,519	3,822	8,359
1984	21,625	3,489	9,920	4,069	8,503
1985	23,109	3,886	10,398	4,039	8,836
1986 <sup>2</sup>	24,236	4,481	10,379	4,001	9,307

<sup>1</sup> Figures prior to 1984 are on State of registration basis; those from 1984 are on State of usual residence basis. <sup>2</sup> Provisional.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In 1870 partially representative government was instituted, and in 1890 the administration was vested in the Governor, a Legislative Council and a Legislative Assembly. The Legislative Council was, in the first instance, nominated by the Governor, but it was provided that in the event of the population of the colony reaching 60,000, it should be elective. In 1893 this limit of population being reached, the Colonial Parliament amended the Constitution accordingly.

The Legislative Council consists of 34 members, 2 members representing each of the 17 electoral provinces. Each member is elected for a term of 6 years, one-half of the members retiring every 3 years.

There are 57 members of the Legislative Assembly, each member representing one of the 57 electoral districts of the State. Members are elected for the duration of the Parliament, normally 3 years. The qualifications applying to candidates and electors are identical for the Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. A candidate must have resided in Western Australia for a minimum of 12 months, be at least 18 years of age and free from legal incapacity, be an Australian citizen, and be enrolled, or qualified for enrolment, as an elector. A judge of the Supreme Court, the Sheriff of Western Australia, an undischarged bankrupt or a debtor against whose estate there is a subsisting order in bankruptcy may not be elected to Parliament. No person may hold office as a member of the Legislative Assembly and the Legislative Council at the same time. An elector must be at least 18 years of age, be an Australian citizen free from legal incapacity, must have resided in the Commonwealth of Australia for 6 and in Western Australia for 3 months continuously and in the electoral district for which he claims enrolment for a continuous period of 1 month immediately preceding the date of his claim. Enrolment is compulsory for all qualified persons except Aboriginal natives of Australia, who are entitled but not required to enrol. Voting at elections is on the preferential system and is compulsory for all enrolled persons.

Ordinary members of the legislature are paid a salary of \$A46,477 a year, with an additional electorate allowance, ranging from \$A14,000 to \$A31,928 according to location of electorate. Members are entitled to free travel on Western Australian government railway, bus and ferry services, and, by arrangement, once every year on government railways in other States. All members of Parliament contribute to superannuation benefits.

The Premier receives a salary, including an electorate allowance, of \$A110,397, the Deputy Premier \$A98,462, the Leader of the Government in the Legislative Council \$A95,021, and all other Ministers \$A88,689—105,710 according to location of electorate.

The Legislative Assembly, elected on 18 Feb. 1986, is composed as follows: Australian Labor Party, 32; Liberal Party, 19; National Party of Australia, 6. The Legislative Council, one-half of which was elected on the same day, is composed of 16 Australian Labor Party, 14 Liberal Party, 4 National Party of Australia.

*Governor:* Gordon Reid, AC.

The Australian Labor Party Cabinet was, at 13 Oct. 1988:

*Premier, Treasurer, Productivity, Public Sector Management, Women's Interests:* Hon. Peter McCallum Dowding, MLA.

*Deputy Premier, Economic Development and Trade:* Hon. David Charles Parker, MLA. *Attorney General, Budget Management, Corrective Services, Leader of the Government in the Legislative Council:* Hon. Joseph Max Berinson, MLC. *Community Services, The Family, Youth, The Aged, Minister assisting the Minister for Women's Interests, Deputy Leader of the Government in the Legislative Council:* Hon. Elsie Kay Hallahan, MLC. *Mines, Local Government, Regional Development:* Hon. Jeffrey Phillip Carr, MLA. *Transport, Planning, Parliamentary and Electoral Reform, Intergovernmental Relations, Leader of the House in the Legislative Assembly:* Hon. Robert John Pearce, MLA. *Conservation and Land Management, Environment, Waterways:* Hon. Barry James Hodge, MLA. *Agriculture, The South West, Fisheries, Economic Development and Trade:* Hon. Julian Fletcher Grill, MLA. *Health:* Hon. Keith James Wilson, MLA. *Police and Emergency Services, Minister assisting the Treasurer:* Hon. Ian Frederick Taylor, MLA. *Housing, Tourism, Racing and Gaming:* Hon. Pamela Anne Beggs, MLA. *Labour, Works and Services, Minister assisting the Minister for Productivity and Public Sector Management:* Hon. Gavan John Troy, MLA. *Water Resources, Small Business, The North West, Aboriginal Affairs:* Hon. Ernest Francis Bridge, MLA. *Employment and Training, Multicultural and Ethnic Affairs, Minister assisting the Minister for Education with TAFE:* Hon. Gordon Leslie Hill, MLA. *Consumer Affairs, Sport and Recreation:* Hon. Graham John Edwards, MLC. *Lands, The Arts:* Hon. Yvonne Daphne Henderson, MLA. *Education:* Hon. Carmen Mary Lawrence, MLA. *Parliamentary Secretary of the Cabinet:* John Bell Read, MLA.

---

*Agent-General in London:* R. Davies (Western Australia House, 115 Strand, WC2R0AJ).

*Local Government.* The only unincorporated area in mainland Western Australia is King's Park, a public reserve of about 403 hectares in Perth. Including the lord-mayoralty of Perth there were 15 cities, 11 towns and 113 shires at 30 June 1987. The executive body in each of these districts is normally an elective council, presided over by a mayor (city and town) or a president (shire), but in certain circumstances it may be a commissioner appointed by the Governor. Their functions include road construction and repair, the provision of parks and recreation grounds, the administration of building controls and local services such as health and library services. Finance is derived largely from rates levied on property owners as well as charges for services and government grants (mainly for road construction).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The revenue and expenditure (in \$A) of Western Australia, as reported in the Consolidated Revenue Fund, in years ended 30 June, are given as follows:

	1985	1986	1987	1988 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	2,843,079,541	3,099,411,391	3,284,233,136	3,547,900,000
Expenditure	2,842,267,768	3,099,044,981	3,277,526,154	3,546,900,000

<sup>1</sup> Estimates.

Main items of revenue in 1986-87: Railways (\$A225,514,366), taxation (\$A832,823,302), lands, timber and mining (\$A219,271,497), public utilities other than railways (\$A14,180,211), from Federal funds (\$A1,591,533,000). Western Australia had a net public debt of \$A1,575,414,004 on 30 June 1987, the charge for the year being \$A202,807,982.

**Banking.** There are 18 trading banks in Western Australia including the Commonwealth Trading Bank and The Rural and Industries Bank of Western Australia. In June 1988, the average of customers' balances was \$A6,111m. and average advances \$A5,981m.

At 30 June 1988, the 9 savings banks held deposits of \$A5,442.1m., in 2,638,557 accounts.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The mining industry has been for many years of considerable significance in the Western Australian economy. Until the mid-1960s the major mineral produced was gold. It was then replaced by iron ore in terms of value, and has at various times fallen behind nickel concentrates, bauxite, oil, mineral sands and salt. In the latter half of the 1980s it enjoyed a resurgence and was (1988) second only to iron ore.

The total ex-mine value of minerals from mining and quarrying in the State in 1986-87 was \$A5,009.9m. Principal minerals produced in 1986-87 were: Iron ore, 92.5m. tonnes, value \$A1,801.6m.; bauxite, 20.4m. tonnes; gold bullion, 75.4m. grammes, value \$A1,295.9m.; mineral sands concentrates valued at \$A196.9m.; nickel concentrates, 406,000 tonnes; tin concentrates, 731 tonnes; black coal, 3.8m. tonnes; crude oil, 2,174m.; natural gas, 3,377,000m. kilolitres; salt, 5.1m. tonnes, value \$A107.4m.; diamonds, 32.2m. carats, value \$A284.1m.

### Agriculture.

Crop	1985-86		1986-87	
	Area 1,000 hectares	Production 1,000 tonnes	Area 1,000 hectares	Production 1,000 tonnes
Wheat	4,143	4,359	4,260	5,377
Oats	286	336	302	414
Barley	824	1,022	468	601
Hay	189	597	218	681
Potatoes	2	69	2	68
Cauliflower	1	17	1	16

Crop	1985-86		1986-87	
	No. Trees (1,000)	Production Tonnes	No. Trees (1,000)	Production Tonnes
Apples	697	46,074	699	34,470
Pears	120	6,169	128	7,107
Oranges	132	5,188	183	5,432

Irrigation has been established by the Government along the south-western coastal plain and in the north of the State. Reservoirs with an aggregate capacity of 6,207m. cu. metres provided irrigation water for 20,402 hectares in 6 districts during 1985-86.

Livestock at 31 March 1987 included 1,660,000 cattle, 33,463,000 sheep and 295,000 pigs.

The wool clip in 1986-87 was 183,000 tonnes.

**Forestry.** The area of State forests and timber reserves at 30 June 1988 was 1,965,220 hectares; 1987-88 production of sawn timber was 318,652 cu. metres, principally Jarrah and Karri hardwoods.



**Fisheries.** The catch of fish, crustaceans and molluscs in Western Australia in 1985-86 totalled 30,765 tonnes for a gross value of \$A138.7m. Of this, rock lobsters, with a total catch of 7,231 tonnes accounted for \$A89.1m.

**Value of Agricultural Commodities Produced.** The estimated gross values of Western Australian agricultural commodities during 1986-87 were: Crops and pastures, \$A1,361.89m.; livestock slaughterings and other disposals, \$A409.43m.; livestock products, \$A806.2m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Perhaps the most significant change in Western Australian manufacturing came when the basis for an integrated industrial complex was established with the opening of a large oil refinery at Kwinana in 1954. Two of the plants in the Kwinana complex are directly concerned with metals processing. An alumina refinery commenced operations in 1964 and a nickel refinery commenced operations in 1970. Major mineral processing plants outside Kwinana also contribute to Western Australia's manufacturing industry. A plant at Australind, near Bunbury, which extracts titanium dioxide from ilmenite has been in operation since 1963. A nickel smelter commenced operations at Kalgoorlie in 1973 and another alumina refinery, at Pinjarra, began operating in 1972. In addition, two new alumina refineries are now in operation, one at Wagerup and the other at Worsley.

Besides providing for heavy industry directly associated with minerals processing, the mining development of recent years, especially on the North West Shelf, has also given impetus to other manufacturing activity, particularly to industries associated with the provision of capital equipment and other manufactured goods for the major mining projects.

The following table shows preliminary manufacturing industry statistics for 1986-87<sup>1</sup>:

<i>Industry sub-division</i>	<i>Number of establishments operating at 30 June</i>	<i>Persons employed<sup>2</sup> 1,000</i>	<i>Wages and salaries \$Am.</i>	<i>Turnover \$Am.</i>	<i>Value added \$Am.</i>
Food, beverages and tobacco	356	12.4	236	1,815	575
Textiles	38	1.2	20	102	55
Clothing and footwear	75	1.8	24	65	41
Wood, wood products and furniture	457	8.1	125	584	265
Paper, paper products, printing and publishing	262	7.6	142	504	257
Chemical, petroleum and coal products	65	2.9	79	598	212
Non-metallic mineral products	201	4.6	104	599	264
Basic metal products	53	6.2	186	1,887	588
Fabricated metal products	442	8.5	167	753	301
Transport equipment	140	4.1	90	289	138
Other machinery and equipment	345	7.1	147	578	245
Miscellaneous manufacturing	197	2.9	50	279	103
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,631</b>	<b>67.4</b>	<b>1,370</b>	<b>8,052</b>	<b>3,042</b>

<sup>1</sup> Excludes single establishment enterprises with less than 4 persons employed.

<sup>2</sup> At 30 June. Includes working proprietors.

**Labour.** A Court of Arbitration was established in Western Australia in 1901 under the provisions of the 'Industrial Conciliation and Arbitration Act 1900'. The Court of Arbitration was replaced, with effect from 1 Feb. 1964, by the Western Australian Industrial Appeal Court and The Western Australian Industrial Commission, authorities constituted in terms of the *Industrial Arbitration Act 1912*. These authorities continue to operate under the provisions of the *Industrial Arbitration Act 1979* which was proclaimed on 1 March 1980.

The Western Australian Industrial Appeal Court consists of 3 Judges, one of whom is the Presiding Judge. The members are nominated by the Chief Justice of Western Australia. An appeal lies to the Court from decisions of the President of the Western Australian Industrial Commission, the Full Bench or the Commission

in Court Session but only on the ground that the decision is erroneous in law or is in excess of jurisdiction.

The Western Australian Industrial Commission consists of a President, a Chief Industrial Commissioner, a Senior Commissioner, and 'such number of other Commissioners as may, from time to time, be necessary'. There were 9 'other Commissioners' at Nov. 1988. A person shall not be appointed as President unless he is qualified to be a Judge, and on appointment he is entitled to the status of a Puisne Judge. The President or a Commissioner sitting or acting alone constitutes the Commission and may exercise the appropriate powers of the Commission.

The Commission can inquire into any industrial matter and make an award, order or declaration relating to such matter. 'Industrial matter' means any matter affecting or relating to the work, privileges, rights, or duties of employers or employees in any industry and includes any matter relating to the wages, salaries, allowances, or other remuneration of employees or the prices to be paid in respect of their employment; the hours of employment, sex, age, qualification or status of employees and the mode, terms and conditions of employment including conditions which are to take effect after the termination of employment. The Commission may also make inquiries where industrial action has occurred or is likely to occur.

The Commission in Court Session is constituted by not less than 3 Commissioners sitting or acting together, and may make General Orders, hear matters referred by the Commission, and hear appeals from decisions of Boards of Reference.

The Full Bench is constituted by not less than 3 members of the Commission, 1 of whom is the President, and may hear matters referred by the Commission on questions of law, and appeals from decisions of the Commission and Industrial Magistrates.

The following table shows details of the number of industrial awards, unions and members registered with The Western Australian Industrial Commission.

<i>At 30 June</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Awards in force	491	630	608	592	610
<i>Employee organizations:</i>					
Number	67	70	72	69	70
Membership	174,330	185,061	176,769	189,770	186,608
<i>Employer organizations:</i>					
Number	14	15	15	15	15
Membership	2,144	2,535	3,561	2,690	2,825

**Commerce.** The external commerce of Western Australia, exclusive of interstate trade, is comprised in the statement of the commerce of Australia, *see pp.* 109–11.

The total value of imports and exports, including interstate trade, but excluding interstate value of horses, in 5 years (30 June) is, in \$A1m., as follows:

	<i>1982–83</i>	<i>1983–84</i>	<i>1984–85</i>	<i>1985–86</i>	<i>1986–87</i>
Imports	5,683.8	5,574.4	6,446.5	6,880.0	2,545.1
Exports	5,922.3 <sup>1</sup>	6,464.5 <sup>1</sup>	7,577.4 <sup>1</sup>	8,139.2 <sup>1</sup>	6,667.9 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Including ships' stores.

Selected overseas exports (in \$A) for 1986–87: Iron ore and concentrates, 1,700,546,428; wheat, 687,303,004; wool, 730,497,552; petroleum and petroleum products, 174,772,112; gold bullion, 10,362,756; live sheep and lambs, 105,015,345; beef and veal, 88,348,476; rock lobster tails, 82,401,763; salt, 49,110,776; mutton and lamb, 50,304,651; barley, 39,879,990; prawns, 47,132,328; zirconium, 59,381,449; rutile, 38,542,823; ilmenite and leucosene, 55,397,722; hides and skins (including fur skins), 41,103,010; whole rock lobsters, 61,262,935; fruit and nuts (fresh or dried), 13,919,635; oats, 10,948,410.

Selected overseas imports (in \$A) for 1986–87: Petroleum and petroleum products, 352,464,898; machinery, 631,998,324; transport equipment, 282,781,595; iron and steel, 90,693,760; chemicals, 161,777,654; food, 87,858,038; crude fertilizer, 23,684,485; rubber manufactures, 51,892,671; paper and paperboard, 52,129,469.

The chief countries exporting to Western Australia in 1986-87 were (in \$A): Japan, 448,662,920; USA, 332,800,482; Zimbabwe, 282,865,765; UK, 202,714,767; Federal Republic of Germany, 133,594,901; Singapore, 124,654,028; Indonesia, 112,133,802. Western Australia's exports in 1986-87 (in \$A) went chiefly to: Japan, 1,957,609,482; USA, 846,354,871; China, People's Republic of, 448,874,809; Switzerland, 266,004,801; Republic of Korea, 233,027,100; USSR, 277,688,792; UK, 204,996,237.

**Tourism.** In 1986-87, 216,000 international visitors contributed \$A237m. to the economy; 444,200 interstate tourists contributed \$274m.; 4,617,000 intrastate tourists contributed \$A932m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** At 30 June 1986 there were 119,941 km of prepared and formed roads in Western Australia, 39,877 km of bituminous surface, 37,272 km other constructed surfaces and 42,792 km formed but not metalled or otherwise prepared. In addition, there are 20,216 km of roads unprepared except for clearing which are used for general traffic.

New motor vehicles registered in Western Australia during the year ended 30 June 1988 were 48,872.

**Railways.** At 30 June 1988 the State had 5,553 km of State government railway and 731 km of Federal line, the latter being the western portion of the Trans-Australian line (Kalgoorlie-Port Pirie), which links the State railway system to those of the other States of the Commonwealth. At 30 June 1985, mining companies operated 1,285 km of private railways for the transport of ore to ports on the north-west coast. In 1987-88 state railways carried 22m. tonnes and 449,000 passengers. Perth suburban lines, controlled by a separate authority, carried 9.6m. passengers.

**Aviation.** An extensive system of regular air services operates in Western Australia for the transport of passengers, freight and mail. During the year ended 31 Dec. 1987, Perth Airport handled 21,309 aircraft movements and 2,075,562 passengers on domestic and international services.

**Shipping.** In 1986-87, the number of overseas direct vessels through the major ports was: Port of Fremantle, 1,069 entered, 1,057 cleared; Dampier, 451 entered, 442 cleared; Port Hedland, 403 entered, 408 cleared; Port Walcott, 91 entered, 91 cleared. The gross weight (in tonnes) of overseas cargo through those ports was: Port of Fremantle, 3,287,417 discharged, 7,097,325 loaded; Dampier, 244,592 discharged, 32,099,254 loaded; Port Hedland, 128,734 discharged, 32,299,330 loaded; Port Walcott, 19,583 discharged, 11,314,413 loaded.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Postal, telephone and telegraph facilities are afforded at 411 offices. Telephone services connected totalled 635,786 at 30 June 1988.

There were 55 radio broadcasting and 87 television stations, including translator stations, in operation at 30 June 1986.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In Western Australia justice is administered by a Supreme Court, consisting of a Chief Justice, 9 puisne judges and 2 masters at 30 June 1988; a District Court comprising a chief judge and 14 other judges and Magistrates' Courts exercising both civil and criminal jurisdiction. The lower courts are presided over by justices of the peace, except in the more important centres, where the court is constituted by a stipendiary magistrate. Juvenile offenders may be dealt with either by the Children's (Suspended Proceedings) Panel or by the Children's Court. The Panel is comprised of 1 representative from the Department for Community Services and 1 from the Police Department. It is empowered to deal with certain offences involving first offenders under the age of 16 years who have pleaded guilty. Other young offenders are dealt with by the Children's Court, which is presided over by a Magistrate.



<i>Offences against law</i>	<i>1983-84</i>	<i>1984-85</i>	<i>1985-86</i>	<i>1986-87</i>
Charges	109,580 <sup>1</sup>	115,739 <sup>1</sup>	...	211,966
Lower Court convictions <sup>2</sup>	101,241 <sup>1</sup>	105,025 <sup>1</sup>	...	190,372
Higher Court convictions	2,581	3,369	4,142	3,912

<sup>1</sup> Excludes Perth and East Perth Lower Courts.

<sup>2</sup> Includes convictions for traffic offences: 42,654 in 1983-84; 43,851 in 1984-85; 87,140 in 1986-87. In addition, small fines were imposed for minor traffic offences as follows: 1982, 358,395; 1983, 348,009; 1984, 373,662; 1985, 416,774; 1986, 401,415; 1987, 510,400.

Persons in prison at 30 June 1988 numbered 1,550 males and 108 females.

**Religion.** There is no State Church, and freedom of worship is accorded to all. At the census, 30 June 1986, the principal denominations were: Anglican, 371,302; Catholic, 347,695; Uniting, 82,876; Presbyterian, 31,641; Baptist, 16,869; Orthodox, 16,722; other Christian, 110,922; Buddhist, 7,178; all other, including not stated and no religion, 421,724.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory from the age of 6 until the end of the year in which the child attains 15 years. Pre-school education is provided by a kindergarten system partly financed from government subsidy. In 1987 there were 731 government primary and secondary schools providing free education to 208,027 students and 237 non-government primary and secondary schools providing education, for which fees are charged, to 62,662 students.

Technical education is available at a number of technical colleges, schools and centres, which are staffed and controlled by the Education Department.

Tertiary Education at 30 April 1987:

	<i>Teaching Staff<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Students Enrolled</i>
University of Western Australia	600	9,625
Murdoch University	237	4,624
Curtin University of Technology	720	12,669
Western Australian College of Advanced Education	569	10,775

<sup>1</sup> Comprises full-time teaching staff and part-time staff on the basis of equivalent full-time staff.

State Government expenditure from consolidated revenue on education during the year ended 30 June 1987, amounted to \$A844,900,889.

**Social Welfare.** At 30 June 1987 there were 44 general hospitals and 8 nursing homes maintained wholly by public funds and 43 general hospitals and 9 nursing homes partly assisted therefrom. In addition, there are numerous private hospitals.

The Health Department of Western Australia Psychiatric Services comprises 3 approved hospitals, 10 outpatient clinics for adults, 10 general rehabilitation units, 7 psychiatric extended care units and 1 rehabilitation hostel. Specifically for children are: 3 outpatient clinics and 3 residential units. The Authority for the Intellectually Handicapped comprises 24 hostels and 20 group homes.

The Department for Community Services is responsible for the provision of welfare and community services throughout the State. There were 10 directorates in the Department on 30 June 1986. Six were regionally based, 3 in the Perth metropolitan area and 3 were in the country. These are concerned with direct service delivery, which is provided through 20 divisional and 35 district offices.

Direct services provided to the community include emergency financial assistance, family and substitute care, and counselling and psychological services. The Department supervises children's Day Care Centres. There is a 24-hour emergency welfare service provided through the Crisis Care Unit. Specialist units work in the areas of child abuse, adoptions, youth activities and Family Court counselling.

The Department provides residential facilities for the temporary accommodation, care and training of children and is also responsible for young offenders recommended for detention or remand by a Court.

Age, invalid, widows', disability and service pensions, and unemployment benefits are paid by the Federal Government. The number of pensioners in Western Australia at 30 June 1986 was: Age, 103,085; invalid, 25,769; widows, 12,817; disability, 35,223 and service, 36,423. There were 55,089 recipients of unemployment benefits at 30 June 1986.

During 1985–86 the department provided emergency assistance in 102,734 cases. This assistance, valued at \$A4,504,000, was in the form of cash, vouchers to purchase goods and services, and payment on behalf of individuals.

**Housing.** In 1986–87, 12,330 new houses and 3,619 new other dwellings were completed in Western Australia. Of these, the State Housing Commission provided 1,885 new dwelling units for sale and for rental.

The value of dwellings completed during this period was \$A795.8m. Additions and alterations valued at \$A10,000 or more to dwellings, were valued at \$A70.4m.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The State Government Statistician's Office was established in 1897 and now functions as the Western Australian Office of the Australian Bureau of Statistics (Merlin Centre, 30 Terrace Road, Perth). *Deputy Commonwealth Statistician and Government Statistician:* B. N. Pink. Its principal publications are: *Western Australian Year Book* (new series, from 1957). *Western Australian Pocket Year Book* (from 1919). *Monthly Summary of Statistics* (from 1958)

Battye, J. S., *Western Australia: A History from its Discovery to the Inauguration of the Commonwealth*. Oxford, 1924.—*The Cyclopedia of Western Australia*. Adelaide, Vol. 1 (1912), Vol. 2 (1913)

Crowley, F. K., *Australia's Western Third: A History of Western Australia from the First Settlements to Modern Times*. (Rev. ed.). Melbourne, 1970

Kimberly, W. B., *History of Western Australia: A Narrative of Her Past*. Melbourne, 1897

Stannage, C. T. (ed.) *A New History of Western Australia*. Perth, 1980

Stephenson, G. and Hepburn, J. A., *Plan for the Metropolitan Region: Perth and Fremantle*. Perth, 1955

*State Library:* Alexander Library Building, Perth. *State Librarian:* R. C. Sharman, BA, FLAA.

# AUSTRIA

Capital: Vienna

Population: 7.58m. (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$12,297 (1986)

## Republik Österreich

**HISTORY.** Following the break-up of the Austro-Hungarian Empire, the Republic of Austria was proclaimed on 12 Nov. 1918. On 12 March 1938 Austria was forcibly absorbed in the German Reich as *Ostmark* until it was liberated by the Allied armies in 1945. On 27 April 1945 a provisional government was set up and was recognized by the Allies on 20 Oct. 1945. Austria recovered its full independence on 27 July 1955.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Austria is a land-locked country bounded north by the Federal Republic of Germany and Czechoslovakia, east by Hungary, south by Yugoslavia and Italy, and west by Switzerland and Liechtenstein. It has an area of 83,855 sq. km (32,376 sq. miles) and its population at recent censuses has been as follows:

1923	6,534,481	1951	6,933,905	1971	7,456,403
1934	6,760,233	1961	7,073,807	1981	7,555,338

Estimate (1987) 7,575,732. In 1981, 55% were urban and 97% were German-speaking, with linguistic minorities of Turks (60,000), Slovenes and Croats (32,000), Slovaks (23,000), Hungarians (19,000) and Czechs (10,000). The areas, populations and capitals of the 9 federal states are as follows:

Federal Provinces	Area sq. km	Population (1987)	State capitals
Vienna (Wien)	415	1,479,841	Vienna
Lower Austria (Niederösterreich)	19,172	1,425,842	St Pölten
Burgenland	3,965	266,909	Eisenstadt
Upper Austria (Oberösterreich)	11,980	1,294,220	Linz
Salzburg	7,154	461,879	Salzburg
Styria (Steiermark)	16,387	1,180,967	Graz
Carinthia (Kärnten)	9,534	541,876	Klagenfurt
Tirol	12,647	609,754	Innsbruck
Vorarlberg	2,601	314,444	Bregenz

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	Live births	Still births	Deaths <sup>1</sup>	Marriages	Divorces
1984	89,234	409	88,466	45,823	14,869
1985	87,440	407	89,578	44,867	15,460
1986	86,964	385	87,071	45,821	14,679
1987	86,503	289	84,907	76,205	14,639

<sup>1</sup> Excluding still births.

The populations of the principal towns (excluding Vienna), according to the census of 12 May 1981 (area, 1 Jan. 1987) were as follows:

Graz	243,166	Steyr	38,942	Feldkirch	23,745	Mödling	19,276
Linz	199,910	Dornbirn	38,641	Baden	23,140	Lustenau	17,401
Salzburg	139,426	Wiener		Krems a.d.D.	23,056	Braunau	
Innsbruck	117,287	Neustadt	35,006	Klosterneuburg	22,975	am Inn	16,318
Klagenfurt	87,321	Leoben	31,989	Amstetten	21,989	Ternitz	16,104
Villach	52,692	Wolfsberg	28,097	Traun	21,464	Hallein	15,377
Wels	51,060	Kapfenberg	25,716	Leonding	19,389	Bruck an der Mur	15,068
St Pölten	50,419	Bregenz	24,561				

**CLIMATE.** Climate ranges from cool temperate to mountain type according to situation. Winters are cold, with considerable snowfall, but summers are very warm. The wettest months are May to August.



Vienna, Jan. 28°F (−2°C), July 67°F (19.5°C). Annual rainfall 25.6'' (640 mm). Graz, Jan. 28°F (−2°C), July 67°F (19.5°C). Annual rainfall 34'' (849 mm). Innsbruck, Jan. 27°F (−2.7°C), July 66°F (18.8°C). Annual rainfall 34.7'' (868 mm). Salzburg, Jan. 28°F (−2.0°C), July 65°F (18.3°C). Annual rainfall 50.6'' (1,266 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Austria recovered its sovereignty and independence on 27 July 1955 by the coming into force of the Austrian State Treaty between the UK, the USA, the USSR and France on the one part and the Republic of Austria on the other part (signed on 15 May).

The Constitution of 1 Oct. 1920 was restored on 27 April 1945. Austria is a democratic federal republic comprising 9 states (*länder*), with a federal President (*Bundespräsident*) directly elected for not more than 2 successive 6-year terms, and a bicameral National Assembly which comprises a National Council and a Federal Council.

The National Council (*Nationalrat*) comprises 183 members directly elected for a 4-year term by proportional representation on a national basis. At the General Elections held on 23 Nov. 1986 the *Sozialistische Partei Österreichs* (SPÖ) won 80 seats, the *Österreichische Volkspartei* (ÖVP) 77 seats, the *Freiheitliche Partei Österreichs* (FPÖ) 18 seats and the *Vereinigte Grüne Österreich* (VGÖ or ecologists) 8 seats. The Federal Council (*Bundesrat*) 63 members appointed by the 9 states for the duration of the individual State Assemblies' terms; in 1987 the ÖVP held 33 seats and the SPÖ 30 seats.

The head of government is a Federal Chancellor, who is appointed by the President from the party winning the most seats in National Council elections. The Chancellor nominated a Vice-Chancellor and other Ministers for the President to appoint to a Council of Ministers which the Chancellor leads.

*Federal President:* Dr Kurt Waldheim (elected 8 June 1986; took office 8 July).

The coalition government formed by the SPÖ and ÖVP in Jan. 1989 was composed as follows:

*Chancellor:* Dr Franz Vranitzky.

*Vice Chancellor and Foreign Affairs:* Dr Alois Mock. *Finance:* Ferdinand Lacina. *Social Affairs:* (Vacant). *Interior:* (Vacant). *State Industry:* Dr Rudolf Streicher. *Education:* Dr Hilde Hawlicek. *Women's Affairs:* Johanna Dohnal. *Chancellery:* Harald Ettl, Dr Heinrich Neisser, Dr Johannes Ditz. *Defence:* Dr Robert Lichal. *Agriculture:* Josef Riegler. *Science:* Dr Hans Tuppy. *Trade:* Robert Graf. *Youth and Environment:* Dr Marilies Flemming. *Justice:* Dr Egmont Foregger.

The Federal Council (*Bundesrat*) which represents the federal provinces has 63 members and (1987) the Socialist Party had 30 members and the People's Party 33. The *Nationalrat* and *Bundesrat* together form the National Assembly.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, red.

*National anthem:* Land der Berge, Land am Strome (words by Paula Preradovic; tune by W. A. Mozart).

The official language is German.

*Local Government.* The Republic of Austria comprises 9 Federal States (Vienna, Lower Austria, Upper Austria, Salzburg, Styria, Carinthia, Tirol, Vorarlberg, Burgenland). There is in every province an elected Provincial Assembly.

Every community has a Council, which chooses one of its number to be head of the Community (burgomaster) and a committee for the administration and execution of its resolutions.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription is for a 6-month period, with liability for 60 days reservist refresher training spread over 15 years.

**Army.** The Army consists of an alert force (*Bereitschafts truppe*), mainly the 1st Armoured Division organized in 3 armoured infantry brigades; 1 air-missile and 2

mountain battalions; a cadre force comprising 8 motorized infantry brigades; and territorial troops, comprising 26 regiments and security companies. The country is divided into 9 regional commands. Strength was (1989) 50,000 (25,000 conscripts).

**Army Aviation.** (*Heeresfliegerkräfte*): The Division comprises 10 squadrons with about 4,700 personnel and about 180 aircraft, organized in three Aviation Regiments each of which including air defence battalions. PC-7 Turbo-trainers are also in service. About 30 SAAB105 Oe strike/trainer aircraft equip one squadron of a surveillance wing responsible for defence of Austrian airspace and a fighter-bomber wing of two squadrons. Helicopters equip six squadrons for transport/support, communications, observation, search and rescue duties. Types in service include Alouette III, armed Kiowa, JetRanger and Agusta-Bell AB.204s and AB.212s. Fixed-wing transports comprise two Skyvans and 12 Turbo-Porters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Austria is a member of UN, OECD and EFTA.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for calendar years provided revenue and expenditure (ordinary and extraordinary) as follows (in 1m. schilling):

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	287,791	300,954	316,673	344,901	372,895	391,675	409,556
Expenditure	339,456	372,774	407,791	435,135	464,673	498,390	514,461

**External debt.** The budgetary external debt was (1987) 124,739m. schilling.

**Currency.** The Austrian unit of currency is the *schilling* of 100 *groschen*. The rate of exchange in March 1989, £1 = 22.42 *schilling*, US\$1 = 13.02 *schilling*.

**Banking.** The National Bank of Austria, opened on 2 Jan. 1923, was taken over by the German Reichsbank on 17 March 1938. It was re-established on 3 July 1945. At 31 Dec. 1987 foreign exchange amounted to 75,428m. and note circulation to 98,387m. schilling.

Principal banks with total assets (in 1m. schilling 1987): Creditanstalt, 388,309; Girozentrale Und Bank der Österreichischen Sparkassen, 276,430; Österreichische National Bank, 214,571; Österreichische Länderbank, 247,727; Zentralsparkasse Und Kommerzbank, 201,834; Österreichische Kontrollbank, 173,697; Bank Für Arbeit Und Wirtschaft, 178,266; Genossenschaftliche Zentralbank, 168,224; Österreichische Postsparkasse, 163,107; Die Erste Österreichische Spar-Casse-Bank, 136,299; Österreichische Volksbanken, 57,850; Österreichische Investitionskredit, 46,125; Bank Für Oberösterreich Und Salzburg, 41,092; Österreichisches Credit Institut, 37,111.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric energy produced (1m. kwh.): 1987, 50,503; 1986, 44,653; 1985, 44,534; 1984, 42,382; 1983, 42,625. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The commercial production of petroleum began in the early 1930s. Production of crude oil (in tonnes): 1960, 2,448,391; 1971, 2,798,237; 1983, 1,268,573; 1984, 1,205,430; 1985, 1,146,958; 1986, 1,115,924; 1987, 1,060,367.

**Minerals.** The mineral production (in tonnes) was as follows:

	1986	1987		1986	1987
Lignite	2,968,978	2,785,611	Pig-iron	3,348,600	3,450,714
Iron ore	3,120,000	3,050,000	Raw steel	4,291,895	4,301,165
Lead and zinc ore <sup>1</sup>	400,246	322,088	Rolled steel	3,461,545	3,432,451
Raw magnesite <sup>1</sup>	1,084,360	946,943	Tungsten ore	489,006	326,501

<sup>1</sup> Including recovery from slag.

Austria is one of the world's largest sources of high-grade graphite. Production,

which averaged 20,000 tonnes yearly from 1929 to 1944, dropped to 246 in 1946, but rose to 102,237 in 1964, and fell again to 23,992 in 1970, 37,199 in 1980, 24,451 in 1982, 40,418 in 1983, 43,789 in 1984, 30,764 in 1985, 36,167 in 1986 and 39,391 in 1987.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 the total area sown amounted to 1,420,058 hectares.

The chief products (area in hectares, yield in tonnes) were as follows:

	1985		1986		1987	
	Area	Yield	Area	Yield	Area	Yield
Wheat	319,837	1,562,770	324,415	1,414,599	320,366	1,450,731
Rye	88,131	338,700	83,406	283,601	85,415	309,327
Barley	344,079	1,521,408	332,685	1,292,450	291,496	1,178,686
Oats	75,247	283,893	73,362	269,919	69,373	245,728
Potatoes	37,719	1,042,196	34,854	982,405	34,128	879,497

Production of raw sugar in 1949, 66,700; 1955, 219,300; 1960, 308,000; refined sugar: 1970, 298,000; 1980, 419,800; 1982, 563,472; 1983, 354,479; 1984, 426,544; 1985, 430,730; 1986, 282,576; 1987, 358,951 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 2,589,509; pigs, 3,946,997; sheep, 260,595; goats, 37,534; horses, 45,179; poultry, 14,503,801.

**Forestry.** Forested area 41% of which 75% coniferous. Felled timber, in cu. metres: 1960, 10,015,925; 1970, 11,122,896; 1980, 12,732,507; 1985, 11,625,732; 1986, 12,130,950; 1987, 11,759,643.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** On 26 July 1946 the Austrian parliament passed a government bill, nationalizing some 70 industrial concerns. As from 17 Sept. 1946 ownership of the 3 largest commercial banks, most oil-producing and refining companies and the principal firms in the following industries devolved upon the Austrian state: River navigation; coal extraction; non-ferrous mining and refining; iron-ore mining; pig-iron and steel production; manufacture of iron and steel products, including structural material, machinery, railroad equipment and repairs, and shipbuilding; electrical machinery and appliances. Six companies supplying electric power were nationalized in accordance with a law of 26 March 1947.

In 1987, 9,343 industrial establishments (including 2,117 sawmills) employed 544,999 persons, producing a value of 623m. schillings.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports are as follows (excluding coined gold):

	Imports				Exports	
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Quantity (1,000 tonnes)	39,238	38,910	39,680	18,279	18,050	18,718
Value (1m. sch.)	430,469	407,954	411,859	353,962	342,479	342,433

The total trade between Austria and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	529,620	630,586	705,732	781,986	874,430
Exports and re-exports from UK	320,901	381,047	403,000	463,187	509,991

**Tourism.** Tourism is an important industry. In 1987, 20,343 hotels and boarding-houses had a total of 650,462 beds available; 15,761,399 foreigners visited Austria; of these 765,150 came from the UK and 671,474 from the USA.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 Dec. 1987 federal roads had a total length of 10,139 km, 1,362 km autobahn; provincial roads, 23,464 km. On 31 Dec. 1987 there were registered 3,946,117 motor vehicles, including 2,684,780 passenger cars, 221,139 lorries, 375,352 tractors and 293,566 trailers.

**Railways.** Austrian railways have been nationalized since before the First World War. Length of route (Dec. 1987), 5,767 km, of which 3,144 km were electrified. Nineteen private railways have a total length of 563 km. Passengers in 1987 numbered 174m., and 63m. tonnes of freight were carried.



**Aviation.** Austria has 6 airports in Vienna (Schwechat), Linz, Salzburg, Graz, Klagenfurt and Innsbruck. In 1987, 95,092 commercial aircraft arrived and departed at Austrian airports.

**Shipping.** Austria has no sea frontiers, but the Danube is an important waterway. Goods traffic (in tonnes): 6,533,730 in 1983; 8,093,854 in 1984; 7,619,115 in 1985; 7,708,311 in 1986; 8,027,360 in 1987. Ore and metal, coal and coke and iron ore comprise in bulk more than two-thirds of these cargoes. The Danube Steamship Co. (DDSG) is the main Austrian shipping company.

**Post and Broadcasting.** All postal, telegraph and telephone services are run by the State. In 1987 there were 2,907,000 telephones.

The 'Österreichische Rundfunk' transmits 2 national and 9 regional programmes. In the local area of Vienna there is an additional special service in English and French; there is also a 24 hour foreign service (short wave). All broadcasting is financed by licence payments and advertisements. There were 2.7m. registered listeners in Dec. 1987. Television was inaugurated in summer 1955 and 2 programmes are transmitted, both in colour, with 2.5m. licences in Dec. 1987.

**Cinemas** (1987). There were 455 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 32 daily newspapers (6 of them in Vienna) and a circulation of 2.6m. of all Austrian newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court of Justice (*Oberster Gerichtshof*) in Vienna is the highest court in the land. Besides there are 4 higher provincial courts (*Oberlandesgerichte*), 21 provincial and district courts (*Landes- und Kreisgerichte*) and 205 local courts (*Bezirksgerichte*) (1987).

**Religion.** In 1981 there were 6,372,645 Roman Catholics (84.3%), 423,162 Protestants (5.6%), 118,866 others (1.6%), 452,039 without religious allegiance (6%) and 79,017 (1%) unknown. The Roman Catholic Church has 2 archbishoprics and 7 bishoprics.

**Education** (1987-88). There were in Austria 5,128 elementary and special schools with 68,600 teachers and 650,241 pupils. Of all kinds of secondary schools there were 1,509 with 503,420 pupils.

There were also 114 commercial academies with 37,677 students and 4,638 teachers. There were 264 schools of technical and industrial training (including schools of hotel management and catering) with 6,173 teachers and 63,530 pupils; 51 higher schools of women's professions (secondary level) with 14,028 pupils; 9 training colleges of social workers with 642 pupils. 122 trade schools had 15,396 pupils.

Austria has 12 universities and 6 colleges of arts maintained by the State: Universities at Vienna (2,797 teachers, 61,033 students), Graz (1,118 teachers, 22,429 students), Innsbruck (1,278 teachers, 19,178 students) and Salzburg (495 teachers, 9,679 students). There are also technical universities at Vienna (1,091 teachers, 16,083 students) and Graz (625 teachers, 8,690 students), a mining university at Leoben (199 teachers, 1,833 students), an agricultural university at Vienna (253 teachers, 5,317 students), a veterinary university at Vienna (188 teachers, 2,445 students), a commercial university at Vienna (286 teachers, 17,517 students), a university for social and economic sciences at Linz (396 teachers, 9,218 students) and a university for educational science at Klagenfurt (159 teachers, 3,031 students). There is an academy of fine arts at Vienna (149 teachers, 491 students), a college of applied arts at Vienna (234 teachers, 989 students), 3 colleges of music and dramatic art at Vienna (514 teachers, 2,098 students), 'Mozarteum' Salzburg (325 teachers, 1,296 students) and Graz (290 teachers, 1,126 students); the college for industrial design at Linz (120 teachers, 405 students).

**Health.** In 1987 there were 22,889 doctors, 334 hospitals and 83,341 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Austria in Great Britain (18 Belgrave Mews West, London, SW1X 8HU)

*Ambassador:* Dr Walter F. Magrutsch (accredited 11 Feb. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Austria (Jaurèsgasse 12, 1030 Vienna)

*Ambassador:* R. J. O'Neill, CMG (accredited 5 Sept. 1986).

Of Austria in the USA (2343 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Dr Friedrich Hoess (accredited 21 Dec. 1988).

Of the USA in Austria (Boltzmanngasse, 16, A-1091 Vienna)

*Ambassador:* Henry A. Grunwald (accredited 20 Jan. 1988).

Of Austria to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Peter Hohenfellner (accredited 24 Feb. 1988).

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Austrian Central Statistical Office was founded in 1829. *Address:* Hintere Zollamtsstrasse, 2b, 1033 Vienna. *President:* Mag. Erich Bader.

*Main publications:*

*Statistisches Handbuch für die Republik Österreich.* New Series from 1950. Annually

*Statistische Nachrichten.* Monthly

*Beiträge zur österreichischen Statistik* (850 vols.)

*Ergebnisse der Volkszählung vom 12 Mai 1981* (26 vols.)

*Ergebnisse der Häuser- und Wohnungszählung vom 12 Mai 1981* (14 vols.)

*Statistik in Österreich 1918–1938.* [Bibliography] Vienna, 1985

*Veröffentlichungen des Österr. Statist Zentralamtes 1945–1985.* [Bibliography] Vienna, 1986

Bobek, H. (ed.) *Atlas der Republik Österreich.* 3 vols. Vienna, 1961 ff.

Salt, D., *Austria.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986

Sottriffer, K., *Greater Austria: 100 Years of Intellectual and Social Life from 1800 to the Present Time.* Vienna, 1982

Waldheim, K., *In the Eye of the Storm.* London, 1985

*National Library:* Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, Vienna. *Director General:* Dr Magda Strebl.

# THE COMMONWEALTH OF THE BAHAMAS

*Capital:* Nassau

*Population:* 236,171 (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$7,190 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Bahamas were discovered by Columbus in 1492 but the Spanish did not make a permanent settlement. British settlers arrived in the 17th century and it was occupied by Britain, except for a short period in the 18th century, until it gained independence. Internal self-government with cabinet responsibility was introduced on 7 Jan. 1964 and full independence achieved on 10 July 1973.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Commonwealth of The Bahamas consists of 700 islands and more than 1,000 cays off the south-east coast of Florida. They are the surface protuberances of two oceanic banks, the Little Bahama Bank and the Great Bahama Bank. Land area, 5,353 sq. miles (13,864 sq. km).

The areas and populations of the major islands are as follows:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1980</i>		<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1980</i>
Grand Bahama	1,373	33,102	San Salvador	163	} 825
Abaco	1,681	7,271	Rum Cay	78	
Bimini Islands	23	1,411	Long Island	448	3,404
Berry Islands	31	509	Ragged Island	23	164
New Providence	207	135,437	Crooked Island	238	518
Andros	5,957	8,307	Long Cay	23	33
Eleuthera	518	8,331	Acklins Island	389	618
Cat Island	388	2,215	Mayaguana	110	464
Exuma Islands	290	3,670	Inagua Islands	1,671	924

The capital is Nassau on New Providence Island (135,437 inhabitants in 1980) and the only other large town is Freeport (24,423) on Grand Bahama. About 13% of the population were (1980) of British extraction, the rest being of African and mixed descent.

Vital statistics, 1986: Births, 4,770; deaths, 1,407 (excluding still-births); marriages, 1,792.

**CLIMATE.** Winters are mild and summers pleasantly warm. Most rain falls in May, June, Sept. and Oct., and thunderstorms are frequent in summer. Rainfall amounts vary over the islands from 30" (750 mm) to 60" (1,500 mm). Nassau. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 47" (1,179 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Commonwealth of The Bahamas is a free and democratic sovereign state. Executive power rests with Her Majesty the Queen, who appoints a Governor-General to represent her, advised by a Cabinet whom he appoints. There is a bicameral legislature. The Senate comprises 16 members all appointed by the Governor-General, 9 on the advice of the Prime Minister, 4 on the advice of the Leader of the Opposition, and 3 after consultation with both of them. The House of Assembly consists of 49 members elected from single-member constituencies for a maximum term of 5 years. At the general election of 19 June 1987, the Progressive Liberal Party obtained 31 seats, the Free National Movement 16 seats and 2 independents.

Independence from Britain took place on 10 July 1973.

*Governor-General:* Sir Henry Taylor.

The Cabinet in Oct. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister, Finance:* Rt. Hon. Sir Lynden O. Pindling, KCMG.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Foreign Affairs and Tourism:* Clement T. Maynard.  
*Youth, Sports and Community Affairs:* Peter Bethel. *Works and Utilities:* Darrell



E. Rolle. *Housing and National Insurance*: George W. Mackey. *Attorney-General and Education*: Paul L. Adderley. *Employment and Immigration*: Alfred T. Maycock. *Transport and Local Government*: Philip M. Bethel. *Health*: Norman R. Gay. *Agriculture, Trade and Industry*: Ervin Knowles.

*National flag*: Three horizontal stripes of aquamarine, gold, aquamarine, with a black triangle on the hoist.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Commonwealth of The Bahamas is a member of UN, OAS, the Commonwealth, CARICOM and an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

Budget (in B\$):	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	401,160,713	435,547,873	468,849,335
Expenditure	416,512,806	420,616,320	478,199,453

The main sources of revenue were customs duties and receipts from fees, post office and public utilities.

**Currency.** A decimal system of currency was introduced in 1966. Bahamian \$1.72 = £1 sterling (March 1989). Notes: \$0.50, 1, 3, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100; coins: 1, 5, 10, 15, 25, 50 cents, \$1, 2, 5. Sterling currency has been withdrawn. American currency is generally accepted.

Bank of England and Canadian notes are not accepted, except at the banks from travellers from the UK.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of The Bahamas was established in June 1974. At Dec. 1987, it had assets of B\$249.82m. and capital and reserves of B\$58.62m. On 30 June 1988 there were 385 institutions licensed to carry on banking and/or trust business under the Banks and Trust Companies Regulations Act. There were 19 designated institutions by the Exchange Control Department as authorized dealers and agents. Among these were the Royal Bank of Canada, the Bank of Nova Scotia, the Bank of Montreal, Chase Manhattan Bank, Barclays Bank, the Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce and Citibank. While the majority of banks are located in Nassau, there are branches on several of the other islands. The Bahamas Development Bank, Bank of Montreal (now Bank of Bahamas) was established in 1974 and began operations in Jan. 1978. At Dec. 1987 it had total assets of B\$13.34m. and paid-up capital of B\$6.75m.

The Post Office Savings Bank, 31 Dec. 1984, had deposits of B\$2.7m.

**Weights and Measures.** The UK (Imperial) system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity is provided primarily by The Bahamas Electricity Corporation in conjunction with a few private franchises in the Family Islands. As at 31 Dec. 1987, total generated capacity was 306.1 mw; total units generated, 8,570 mwh and total number of consumers, 67,525. Supply 115 volts; 60 Hz.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 agricultural production was B\$32.8m. (1973, B\$17.5m.). Chicken and poultry production declined in 1987, 14,830,000 (16,890,000 lb in 1986). Egg production (1987) 4,930,000 dozen. Production of sheep, goats and pigs declined in 1985: 133 sheep, 122 goats and 3,871 pigs were slaughtered. Beef production increased, with 19 beef cattle slaughtered.

Total agricultural production including fisheries was valued at B\$34m. in 1985. Production, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane, 232; vegetables, 28; fruit, 13.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 5,000; sheep, 40,000; goats, 19,000; pigs, 20,000; poultry, 1m.

**Forestry.** Production of cascarilla bark and pulp-wood in 1976 was B\$1.8m., all of which was exported.

**Fisheries.** Studies were undertaken in 1986 to assess the viability of a stone crab industry. Aquaculture of red fish and marine shrimp have proved to be important. Exports of spiny lobster and snappers in 1986 were B\$21.4m. (B\$24.6m. in 1987). Imports of fish in 1986 were B\$4.5m. (B\$4.1m. in 1985).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Tourism is the major industry. Several light industries have been established on Grand Bahama and New Providence in response to special encouragement legislation; these include garment manufacturing, ice, furniture, purified water, plastic containers, perfumes, industrial gases, jewellery and others. Larger industrial activities in The Bahamas include manufacture of alcoholic beverages, pharmaceuticals, aragonite mining and solar salt production. Two industrial sites, one in New Providence and the other in Grand Bahama, have been developed as part of the industrialization programme.

**Trade Unions.** In 1986 there were 36 unions, the largest is The Bahamas Hotel Catering and Allied Workers' Union (5,000 members) and The Bahamas Public Services Union (over 4,000 members).

**Commerce.** The principal exports in 1985 were hormones, rum, salt, crawfish, cement and aragonite.

The principal imports in 1985 were: Food, drink and tobacco, raw materials and articles mainly unmanufactured and articles wholly or mainly manufactured.

Imports and exports (excluding bullion and specie) for 6 calendar years in B\$:

	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>		<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
1980	5,506,577	4,836,366	1984	4,224,175	3,539,428
1981	4,203,000	3,515,000	1985	3,081,116	3,033,142
1982	3,051,000	2,444,000	1986	3,323,437	2,702,162
1983	4,616,251	3,970,319			

Total trade in £1,000 sterling, between Bahamas and UK (British Department of Trade returns):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	38,478	70,763	10,266	15,943	24,781
Exports and re-exports from UK	220,356	94,059	95,816	27,063	20,708

**Tourism.** Tourism is the most important industry in The Bahamas. In 1986 there were 3,002,000 foreign arrivals in The Bahamas.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 245 miles of paved roads in New Providence, and approximately 885 miles in Grand Bahama and the Family Islands. In 1987, 74,062 motor vehicles were registered. There are no railroads.

**Aviation.** Nassau international airport is located on the island of New Providence, about 10 miles from the city of Nassau. The other international airport is at Freeport on Grand Bahama Island. Scheduled flights—Air Canada: Once weekly from Toronto and Montreal. Bahamasair: 5 times daily to Miami, once daily to Newark, 3 times a week to Orlando and Tampa. Delta Airlines: once daily from Nassau to Fort Lauderdale and Dallas; once daily to Atlanta and Boston and once daily to New York. Eastern Airlines: 4 flights daily from Nassau to Miami, 5 daily from Freeport to Miami. British Airways: Once weekly to Kingston and once weekly to Bermuda and London. Braniff Express: 5 flights weekly to Orlando. Henson Airlines: Once daily from Nassau to Fort Lauderdale and Tampa and 4 times daily from Freeport to West Palm Beach. Midway Airlines: Once daily from Nassau to Fort Lauderdale and Chicago. Piedmont Airlines: Once daily to Charlotte and once daily to Baltimore and Hartford. Pan American: Once daily to New York from Nassau and twice daily from Freeport to Miami. Trans World Airlines: 5 flights weekly to New York and Boston from Nassau, 3 flights weekly from Freeport to New York and once weekly to St Louis. TCNA: Twice weekly from Nassau to Grand Turk, Providenciales and Cape Haitien. Comair: 4 flights daily from Freeport to Fort Lauderdale. Aero Coach: 4 flights daily from Freeport

to Fort Lauderdale and 2 daily to West Palm Beach. Canadian Airlines: Twice weekly from Toronto to Treasure Cay, Governor's Harbour and Nassau. There are 58 airstrips on the various Family Islands. During 1986, 1,343,324 passengers landed at Nassau from 61,431 aircraft arrivals. At Freeport in 1986, 618,555 passengers landed from 33,157 aircraft arrivals.

**Shipping.** In 1987, 2,279 cruise liners cleared Nassau carrying 1,540,000 passengers. In 1984, 542 cargo vessels discharged 757,737 tons of cargo at Nassau. There are indirect cargo services with UK and Canada *via* the USA and passenger services with the USA only.

**Post and Telecommunications.** In 1985 there were 127 post offices. New Providence and most of the other major islands have modern automatic telephone systems in operation, interconnected by an extensive multi-channel radio network, while local distribution within the islands is by overhead and underground cables. The total number of telephones in use at 31 Dec. 1987 was approximately 119,061. International telecommunications service is provided by a submarine cable system to Florida, USA, and an INTELSAT Standard 'A' Earth Station. International operator assisted and direct dialling telephone services are available to all major countries. There is an automatic Telex system and a packet switching system for data transmission, and land mobile and marine telephone services. The Bahamas Broadcasting Corporation operates radio broadcasting stations on AM and FM in New Providence and Grand Bahama and a TV station in New Providence. In 1986 there were 40,000 television and 120,000 radio receivers.

**Cinemas** (1988). There are 4 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1988). There are 2 daily and 1 weekly newspapers in Nassau.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice** (1986). 32,878 cases (traffic, 11,334; criminal, 17,970; civil, 2,178; domestic, 1,396) were dealt with in the magistrates' court, and civil, 1,561; divorce, 516; criminal, 200 in the Supreme Court. The strength of the police force (1988) was 1,665 officers and other ranks.

**Religion.** Over 94% of the population is Christian, with 26% being Roman Catholic, 21% Anglican and 48% other Protestants.

**Education.** Education is under the jurisdiction of the Ministry of Education and Culture. In 1986-87 there were 230 schools, and of these, 190 are fully maintained by Government and 39 are independent schools. Total school enrolment, 60,189. There are 38 government-owned schools in New Providence and 151 on the Family Islands. 26 independent schools are located on New Providence and 14 on the Family Islands. 280 students attended 5 special schools, 3 on New Providence and 2 on Grand Bahama; total staff, 49. Free education is available in ministry schools in New Providence and the Family Islands. Courses lead to the Bahamas Junior Certificate and the General Certificate of Education (GCE). Independent schools provide education at primary, secondary and higher levels.

The College of The Bahamas, officially opened in 1975, is the only publicly-funded tertiary level institution. It offers a wide range of programmes leading to the associate degree, advanced level GCE (London), college diplomas and certificates. Degree programmes in education are offered in conjunction with the University of the West Indies and the University of Miami. Total enrolment (1987) 5,866 with a staff of 128.

The Hotel Training College offers a wide range of subjects up to middle management level in aspects of hotel work. Enrolment in this institution includes Bahamian as well as regional and international students. Several schools of continuing education offer secretarial and academic courses. The Government-operated Princess Margaret Hospital offers a nursing course at two levels.

**Health.** In 1988 there was a government general hospital (454 beds) and a psychiatric/geriatric care centre (457 beds) in Nassau, and a hospital in Freeport (74 beds).



The Family Islands, comprising 20 health districts, had 13 health centres, 38 main clinics and 52 satellite clinics. There was 1 private hospital (24 beds) in Nassau.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of The Bahamas in Great Britain (10 Chesterfield St., London, W1X 8AH)

*High Commissioner:* Dr Patricia Rodgers.

Of Great Britain in The Bahamas (Bitco Bldg., East St., Nassau)

*High Commissioner:* Colin Mays, CMG.

Of The Bahamas in the USA (600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)

*Ambassador:* Margaret MacDonald, CVO, CBE.

Of the USA in The Bahamas (Queen St., Nassau)

*Ambassador:* Carol Boyd Hallett.

Of The Bahamas to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* James Moultrie.

### Further Reading

*Bahamas Handbook and Businessman's Annual* (Annual)

Albury, P., *The Story of the Bahamas*. London, 1975.—*Paradise Island Story*. London, 1984

Barrett, P. J. H., *Grand Bahama*. London, 1982

Craton, M. A., *A History of the Bahamas*. London, 1962

Hughes, C. A., *Race and Politics in the Bahamas*. Univ. of Queensland Press, 1981

Hunte, G., *The Bahamas*. London, 1975

Stevenson, C. St. J., *The Bahamas Reference Annual*. Annual

*Library:* Nassau Public Library.

# BAHRAIN

*Capital:* Manama

*Population:* 421,040 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$8,530 (1986)

## Dawlat al Bahrayn

**HISTORY.** Treaties with Britain of 1882 and 1892 were replaced by a treaty of friendship which was signed on 15 Aug. 1971. Under the earlier treaties Britain had been responsible for Bahrain's defence and foreign relations. On the same day the State of Bahrain declared its independence.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The State of Bahrain forms an archipelago of about 33 small islands in the Arabian Gulf, between the Qatar peninsula and the mainland of Saudi Arabia. The total area is about 265.5 sq. miles (687.75 sq. km). Bahrain ('Two Seas'), is 30 miles long and 10 miles wide (578 sq. km). It is connected by a causeway nearly 1.5 miles long, carrying a motor road, with the second largest island, Muharraq, 4 miles long and 1 mile wide, to the north-east, and by a causeway with Sitra, an island 3 miles long and 1 mile wide, to the east. In Nov. 1986 a causeway linking Bahrain with Saudi Arabia was officially opened. Other islands are Umm Al-Nassan, 3 miles by 2 miles, and Jidda, 1 mile by 0.5 mile, both to the west; Nabih Saleh, to the east; the Hawar group of 16 small islands off Qatar, to the south-east, and several islets, some uninhabited. From Sitra oil pipelines and a causeway carrying a road extend out to sea for 3 miles to a deep-water anchorage. The islands are low-lying, the highest ground being a hill in the centre of Bahrain, 450 ft. (122.4 metres) high.

The population in 1981 (census) was 350,798. Estimate (1988) 421,040. The majority of the people are Moslem arabs.

Arabic is the official language. English is widely used in business.

Manama, the capital of the state and the commercial centre, is situated at the northern end of the largest island and extends for 1.5 miles along the shore. It has a population 1988, of 151,500 (1981 census, 108,684). Other towns are Muharraq, 1988, 78,000 (46,061); Jidhafs, 48,000 (7,232); Rifa'a, 28,150 (22,408); Isa Town (21,275) and Hidd (7,111).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is pleasantly warm between Dec. and March but from June to Sept. the conditions are very hot and humid. The period June to Nov. is virtually rainless. Bahrain. Jan. 66°F (19°C), July 97°F (36°C). Annual rainfall 5.2" (130 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A Constitution was ratified in June 1973 providing for a National Assembly of 30 members, popularly elected for a 4-year term, together with all members of the Cabinet (appointed by the Amir). Elections took place in Dec. 1973, but in Aug. 1975 the Amir dissolved the Assembly and has since ruled through the Cabinet alone.

*Reigning Amir:* The ruling family is the Al Khalifa, an Arab dynasty, who have been in power since 1782. The present Amir, HH Shaikh Isa bin Sulman Al-Khalifa (born 1933) succeeded on 2 Nov. 1961. *Crown Prince:* Shaikh Hamad bin Isa Al-Khalifa.

In Jan. 1989 the cabinet was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Shaikh Khalifa bin Sulman Al-Khalifa.

*Defence:* Shaikh Khalifa bin Ahmed Al-Khalifa. *Transport:* Ibrahim Mohammed Hassan Homaidan. *Housing:* Shaikh Khalid bin Abdulla Al-Khalifa. *Information:* Tariq Abdulrahman Almoayed. *Education:* Dr Ali Fakhro. *Health:* Jawad Salim Al-Arrayed. *Justice and Islamic Affairs:* Shaikh Abdullah bin Khalid Al-Khalifa. *Labour and Social Affairs:* Shaikh Khalifa bin Sulman bin Mohammed Al-Khalifa. *Works, Power and Water:* Majid Jawad Al Jishi. *Interior:*

Shaikh Mohammed bin Khalifa Al-Khalifa. *Foreign Affairs*: Shaikh Mohammed bin Mubarak Al-Khalifa. *Finance and National Economy*: Ibrahim Abdul-Karim. *Development and Industry*: Yousuf Ahmed Al-Shirawi. *Commerce and Agriculture*: Habib Ahmed Kassim. *Acting Minister of State for Cabinet Affairs*: Yousuf Ahmed Al-Shirawi. *Minister of State for Legal Affairs*: Dr Hussain Al Baharna.

*Flag*: Red, with white serrated vertical strip on hoist.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 infantry and 1 tank battalion, 1 armoured car squadron, 1 artillery and 2 mortar batteries with a personnel strength of 2,300 (1989). Equipment included 8 Saladin armoured cars and 8 Ferret scout cars.

**Navy.** The Naval force consists of 4 fast missile craft and 2 fast gunboats; personnel (1989) 350. There is also a Coast Guard with 20 coastal patrol craft and 4 other vessels. Coast Guard personnel number 250.

**Air Force.** An independent Air Force was created in 1985 as the successor to the Air Wing of the Army (Bahrain Defence Force). A fighter squadron operates 12 F-5E/F Tiger IIs, while 16 F-16s are on order for delivery in 1989-90. Three MBB BO 105 helicopters are also in use. Police and security forces both also operate helicopters. Personnel (1989) 200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Bahrain is a member of UN, the Arab League, the Gulf Co-operation Council and OAPEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The revenue of the State is derived from oil royalties and from customs duties, which are 10% *ad valorem* for luxury goods and 5% for essential goods. The exceptions are motor vehicles (20%); tobacco (30%); alcoholic beverages (100%); fresh fruit and vegetables (7%). Total revenues in 1988, BD 490m. (of which oil BD 252m.) and expenditure BD 365m.

On 2 Jan. 1958 Manama was declared a free transit port and the former 2% transit duty was abolished, but storage charges are levied.

**Currency.** The Bahrain *dinar* is divided into 1,000 *fiils*. The Bahrain currency board issues notes of 20, 10, 5 and 1 *dinars*, and 500 *fiils*, and coins of 100, 50, 25, 10, 5 and 1 *fiils*. £1 = BD 0.653 in March 1989; US\$1 = BD 0.379.

**Banking.** The Bahrain Monetary Agency has central banking powers. Since Nov. 1984 it has been responsible for licensing and monitoring the activities of money changers. There were (1988) 20 full commercial banks (including Bahrain Islamic Bank), 6 of which are locally incorporated and the rest branches of foreign banks. Total assets at June 1988, BD 1,512m. Two types of offshore banking units were operating in 1988: 15 locally incorporated banks (including 4 Islamic) with headquarters in Bahrain, and 50 branches of foreign banks. Total assets at 30 Sept. 1987 US\$59,500m. There are 15 investment banks (3 Islamic), with assets of US\$1,750m. in Dec. 1985. The state-owned Housing Bank provides financing for construction, development of real estate and reclamation of land.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is officially in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 2,891.2m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** In 1931 oil was discovered. Operations were conducted by the Bahrain Petroleum Co., registered in Canada but owned by US interests, under a concession granted by the Shaikh. Production of crude oil in 1988 was 2.15m. tonnes. A large oil refinery on Bahrain Island, besides treating crude oil produced locally, also processes oil from Saudi Arabia transported by pipeline.



In 1975 the Bahrain Government assumed a direct 60% interest in the Bahrain oilfield and related crude oil facilities of BAPCO.

Bahrain's proven oil reserves in 1988 were 150m. bbls.

**Gas.** There is an abundant supply of natural gas with known reserves of 7.1m. cu. ft. in 1987. Production, 1987, 252,431m. cu. ft. Bahrain's gas reserves are 100% government-owned.

**Water.** Water is obtained from artesian wells and desalination plants and there is a piped supply to Manama, Muharraq, Isa Town, Rifa'a and most villages. In 1987 total water production was about 60m. gallons per day; daily consumption 59.7m. gallons by Aug. 1987. A further desalination plant with a capacity of 10m. gallons per day was due on stream in 1988.

**Agriculture.** The 6-year agricultural plan, commissioned in 1982, aimed to increase food production from 6-16% of total domestic requirements and to improve conservation of natural water and irrigation techniques.

There are about 900 farms and small holdings (average 2.5 hectares) operated by about 2,500 farmers who produce a wide variety of fruits (45,000 tonnes in 1986) and vegetables (30,000 tonnes in 1986). The major crop is alfalfa for animal fodder. Ninety tonnes of dates a year are processed and a new processing plant produced a further 300 tonnes in 1986.

Thirty-two poultry farms produced about 3,000 tonnes of domestic poultry in 1987. 95% of egg requirements are met by domestic production of 90m. eggs a year, and 30% of broiler needs.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 6,000; camels, 1,000; sheep, 8,000; goats, 16,000; poultry 1m.

**Fisheries.** The government operates a fleet of 2 large and 5 smaller trawlers. In 1986 total landings weighed 8,057 tonnes with a value of BD6.6m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Bahrain is being developed as a major manufacturing state, the first important enterprise being the Aluminium Bahrain (ALBA), a company whose original shareholders included the Bahrain Government and British, Swedish, Federal German and US interests. In 1975, the government acquired a majority shareholding in the enterprise. The aluminium smelter operation is the largest non-oil industry in the Gulf; output, 1987, 180,000 tonnes. Ancillary industries developed around aluminium smelting include the production of aluminium powder. A plant producing aluminium alloys went on stream in 1987. The Gulf Aluminium Rolling Mill Company (GARMCO), a joint venture between Bahrain, Saudi Arabia, Kuwait, Iraq, Oman and Qatar, was inaugurated in Feb. 1986. The Arab Shipbuilding and Repair Yard (ASRY), commissioned in 1977, is now in service. The dry dock can handle up to 50 tankers (500,000 DWT each) annually. A US\$207m. iron ore pelletizing plant was inaugurated in Dec. 1984 (output, 1985, 680,000 tonnes) and a US\$400m. petrochemical complex started operations in 1985.

In addition to the traditional minor industries such as boat-building, weaving, pottery, etc., other modern industries have developed, which include electronics assembly and the production of building materials, furniture, syringes and other medical items, matches, asbestos pipes and plastics, foodstuffs and textiles.

The pearling industry for which Bahrain used to be famous has considerably declined.

**Employment.** Total work force in the private sector (estimate 1987) 85,979, of which 25.2% Bahraini.

**Commerce.** In 1987 total imports were BD1,021.5m. and total exports were BD896.4m. Refined petroleum accounted for almost 83% of exports; crude oil accounted for 49% of merchandise imports.

The major non-oil imports in 1987 were machinery and transport, BD188.8m.; classified manufactured goods, including Alumina, BD91.2m.; chemicals,

BD54.4m.; food and live animals, BD71.2m., and miscellaneous manufactured articles, BD68.7m. The chief sources of supply (in BD1m.) were USA (87.9); UK (83.8); Japan (57); Federal Republic of Germany (28.4), and Australia (27.7).

The chief non-oil exports in 1987 were classified manufactured goods, including aluminium, BD113.9m., and machinery and transport, BD11.5m. The main markets (in BD1m.) were Saudi Arabia (25.6); Japan (21); USA (19.6); India (9.3), and Pakistan (8.1).

Import of arms and ammunition and telecommunication equipment is subject to special permission; the sale of alcoholic liquor is restricted and the import of cultured pearls is forbidden.

Total trade between Bahrain and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	28,240	45,219	19,732	60,687	75,786
Exports and re-exports from UK	138,614	161,560	130,991	125,189	138,150

**Tourism.** More than 165,000 tourists from the Gulf area arrived in 1985.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The 25 km causeway links Bahrain with Saudi Arabia. In 1987 there were 112,520 registered vehicles.

**Aviation.** The airport, situated at Muharraq, can take the largest aircraft and is considered one of the most modern and efficient in the Middle East, used by 2,486,582 arriving and 2,512,882 departing passengers in 1987. British Airways, Gulf Air, Middle East Airlines, Pakistan International Airways, Qantas, Kuwait Airways, Air India International, Singapore Airlines, UTA, Saudi Arabian Airlines, KLM, Air Lanka, Cathay Pacific Airways, Iraqi Airways, Korean Airways, Philippine Airlines, Thai Airways International, Trans-Mediterranean Airways, Egyptair, Alia, Cyprus Airways, Ethiopia Airlines and Sudan Airways also operate to and from Bahrain. Bahrain International Airport is the Arabian Gulf's main air communication centre.

**Shipping.** Bahrain's traditional position as the entrepôt of the Southern Gulf has been supplemented by the development of Mina Sulman—the new modern harbour—as a free transit and industrial area. Local and international companies have developed industries in this area, which is also used as a storage centre for firms selling elsewhere in the Gulf. The facilities offered by Mina Sulman include engineering and ship repairing yards; the Basrec slipway is probably the largest between Rotterdam and Hong Kong.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, at Dec. 1987, 120,000 telephones. There is a state-operated radio and television station and in 1983 there were 150,500 radio and 120,000 television receivers. There were 3 public service satellite stations in 1987.

**Cinemas.** There were 6 cinemas in 1987.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there were several Arabic newspapers, and 1 English language daily newspaper, published in Manama.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Criminal law is codified, based on English jurisprudence.

**Religion.** Islam is the State religion. In 1981 85% of the population were Moslem and 7.3% Christian. There are also Jews, Bahai, Hindu and Parsee minorities.

**Education.** Government schools provide free education from primary to technical college level. There were, in 1987, 143 schools for boys and girls with 4,967 teachers and 88,132 pupils. In 1984, 5 boys' general and commercial schools had 2,177 pupils; 3 boys' industrial schools at secondary level, had 1,306 pupils. In addition there were 7 private schools. The Men's Teacher Training College (established 1966) and the Women's Teacher Training College (established 1967) give

2-year courses. In 1987, 1,665 Bahrainis were in higher education abroad. The Gulf Technical College opened in Bahrain in Sept. 1968 and Bahrain University in 1978. In 1987, 6,922 adult education centres were open throughout Bahrain.

**Health.** There is a free medical service for all residents of Bahrain. In 1986, there were 4 government hospitals and 18 health centres, an American mission hospital, an oil company hospital, a military hospital and an international hospital.

**Social Security.** In Oct. 1976, pensions, sickness and industrial injury benefits, unemployment, maternity and family allowances were established.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Bahrain in Great Britain (98 Gloucester Rd., London, SW7 4AU)

*Ambassador:* Sulman Abdul Wahab Al Sabbagh (accredited 19 Dec. 1984).

Of Great Britain in Bahrain (21 Government Ave., P.O. Box 114, Manama)

*Ambassador:* J. A. Shepherd.

Of Bahrain in the USA (3502 International Dr., NW, Washington D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Ghazi Mohammed Al-Gosaibi.

Of the USA in Bahrain (Shaikh Isa Road, P.O. Box 26431, Manama)

*Ambassador:* Dr Sam H. Zakhem.

Of Bahrain to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Karim Ebrahim Al-Shakar.

### Further Reading

*Bahrain Business Directory.* Manama (annual)

*Statistical and General Information:* Ministry of Information, PO Box 253, Manama

*Statistical Abstract.* Central Statistics Organisation (annual)

Rumaihi, M. G., *Bahrain: Social and Political Change since the First World War.* New York and London, 1976

Unwin, P. T. H., *Bahrain.* [Bibliography]. London and Santa Barbara, 1984



# BANGLADESH

*Capital:* Dhaka

*Population:* 104.1m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$140 (1986)

## People's Republic of Bangladesh

**HISTORY.** The state was formerly the Eastern Province of Pakistan. In Dec. 1970 Sheikh Mujibur Rahman's Awami League Party gained 167 seats out of 300 at the Pakistan general election and immediately made known their wish for greater independence for the then Eastern Province. Martial law was imposed following disturbances in Dhaka, and civil war developed in March 1971. The war ended in Dec. 1971 and Bangladesh was proclaimed an independent state.

**EVENTS.** Extensive flooding in 1988 disrupted national life.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Bangladesh is bounded west and north-west by West Bengal (India), north by Assam and Meghalaya (India), east by Assam, Tripura (India) and Burma, south by the Bay of Bengal. The area is 55,598 sq. miles (143,999 sq. km). Bangladesh's population (1981 census), 87,120,000. An adjustment for underenumeration produced a revised census figure of 89,912,000, of whom 14.09m. were urban and 46.3m. were male. Population estimate, 1987, 104.1m. In 1984 the birth-rate was 33.6 per 1,000 population; death-rate, 11.88; infant mortality 121 per 1,000 live births. Life expectancy (1983) 53.9 years (60.3 in urban areas). The capital is Dhaka (population, 1981, 3,440,147) and its ports are Chittagong (1,391,877) and Khulna (646,359). Other large cities are Rajshahi (253,740) and Barisal (142,098). There are 21 regions divided into 64 districts:

		<i>Area</i> <i>(sq. km)</i>	<i>Population</i> <i>1981</i>			<i>Area</i> <i>(sq. km)</i>	<i>Population</i> <i>1981</i>
Dinajpur (3 districts)	6,566	3,198,000	Kushtia (3)	3,440	2,292,000		
Rangpur (5)	9,593	6,510,000	Jessore (4)	6,573	4,020,000		
Bogra (2)	3,888	2,728,000	Khulna (3)	12,168	4,329,000		
Rajshahi (4)	9,456	5,270,000	Barisal (4)	7,299	4,667,000		
Pabna (2)	4,732	3,424,000	Patuakhali (2)	4,095	1,843,000		
Rajshahi division	34,238	21,132,000	Khulna division	33,575	17,151,000		
Tangail (1)	3,403	2,444,000	Sylhet (4)	12,718	5,656,000		
Mymensingh (3)	9,668	6,568,000	Comilla (3)	6,599	6,881,000		
Jamalpur (2)	3,349	2,452,000	Noakhali (3)	5,460	3,816,000		
Dhaka (6)	7,470	10,014,000	Chittagong (2)	7,457	5,491,000		
Faridpur (5)	6,882	4,764,000	Chittagong Hill Tracts (2)	8,679	580,000		
Dhaka division	30,772	26,242,000	Bandarban (1)	4,501	171,000		
			Chittagong division	45,414	22,595,000		

The official language is Bangla.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical monsoon climate with heat, extreme humidity and heavy rainfall in the monsoon season, from June to Sept. The short winter season is mild and dry. Rainfall varies between 50" (1,250 mm) in the west to 100" (2,500 mm) in the south-east and up to 200" (5,000 mm) in the north-east. Dhaka. Jan. 66°F (19°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 81" (2,025 mm). Chittagong. Jan. 66°F (19°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 108" (2,831 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Bangladesh is a republic. The Constitution came into force on 16 Dec. 1972 and provided for a parliamentary democracy.

For developments between Jan. 1975 and March 1982, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1986-87, pp. 186-187.

On 23 March 1982 there was a bloodless military *coup*, by which Lieut.-Gen. Hossain Mohammad Ershad became chief martial law administrator. President Sattar was deposed. The Constitution was suspended and parliament ceased to function. Assanuddin Chowdhury was sworn in as civilian president on 27 March. Lieut.-Gen. Ershad assumed the presidency on 11 Dec. 1983. He was re-elected on 15 Oct. 1986.

Martial law ended on 10 Nov. 1986. The Constitution (Seventh Amendment) Act restored the constitution but protected the legality of President Ershad's decrees under martial law.

Parliament has one chamber of 300 members directly elected every 5 years by citizens over 18. There are 30 seats reserved for women members elected by Parliament.

In Jan. 1986 a National Executive Committee was formed and the National Party launched, composed of government supporters. The Party won the election of 3 March 1988, but there was a low turn-out and the result was disputed.

*President, Minister for Defence:* Lieut.-Gen. Hossain Mohammad Ershad.

The Council of Ministers was as follows in Feb. 1989:

*Prime Minister, Posts and Telecommunications:* Mizanur Rahman Choudhury.

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Moudud Ahmed (*Industries*), K. Zafar (*Information*), Abdul Matin (*Home Affairs*). *Relief:* Maj.-Gen. Shamsul Huq. *Commerce:* Maj.-Gen. Abdul Munim Shah. *Local Authorities:* Moazzem Hussain Anisul. *Land:* Sirajul Hussain Khan. *Energy, Mineral Resources:* Anwar Hussain. *Foreign Affairs:* Anisul Islam Mahmood. *Health, Family Planning:* Salahuddin Qader Chowdhury. *Ports, Shipping:* Mayeedul Islam. *Fisheries, Livestock:* Mirza Ruhul Amin. *Textiles:* Sunil Gupta. *Labour, Manpower:* Anwar Zahid. *Finance:* A. Hoq. *Planning:* Air Vice Marshal A. K. Khandakar. *Education:* S. S. Islam. *Jute:* Zafar Imam. *Communication:* Matiur Rahman. *Agriculture:* M. Mahbubuzzaman.

*National flag:* Bottle green with a red disc in the centre.

*National anthem:* Amar Sonar Bangla, ami tomay bhalobashi (My golden Bengal, I love you). Words by Rabindranath Tagore.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** There are 5 infantry divisional headquarters, with 13 infantry brigades, and 2 armoured and 6 artillery regiments, and 6 engineer battalions. Strength (1989) 90,000, with an additional 55,000 paramilitary volunteers, including an armed police reserve and the Bangladesh Rifles. Equipment includes 30 Soviet T-54 and 20 Chinese Type-59 tanks.

**Navy.** Naval bases are at Chittagong (handed over by India on 14 Feb. 1972), Kaptai, Khulna and Dacca.

The fleet comprises 3 former British frigates (*Ali Hyder*, ex-HMS *Jaguar*, and *Abu Bakr*, ex-HMS *Lynx*, each 2,520 tons full load, transferred in July 1978 and March 1982, respectively, and *Umar Farooq*, ex-HMS *Llandaff*, 2,408 tons full load, transferred in Dec 1976); 8 new Chinese-built 390-ton fast attack craft, 4 Chinese-built fast missile craft, 4 Chinese-built fast torpedo boats, 2 ex-Yugoslav 200-ton patrol vessels, 8 ex-Chinese 155-ton fast gunboats, 2 ex-Indian 150-ton patrol craft, 1 British-built 140-ton patrol craft, 5 indigenously built 70-ton river gunboats, 1 oiler, 1 repair vessel, 12 auxiliaries and 1 training ship of 710 tons.

The manpower of the Navy in 1989 was 7,500, comprising 600 officers and 6,900 ratings.

**Air Force.** Deliveries, from the Soviet Union and China successively, have built up a current strength of about 20 J-6 (MiG-19) fighter-bombers; 1 An-24 and 3 An-26 turboprop transports; about 20 Mi-8, Bell 212, Bell 206L and Alouette III heli-

copters; 10 Chinese CJ-6 piston-engined primary trainers, FT-2 (MiG-15UT1) jet advanced trainers, 6 Magister armed jet trainers and some light aircraft. Personnel strength, (1989) 4,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Bangladesh is a member of the Commonwealth, the Asian Development Bank, the Organisation for South Asian Regional Co-operation, the UN and all its related agencies, the Colombo Plan and the Islamic Conference.

**External Debt.** Estimated debt, June 1985, US\$6,000m. Most of this was in loans from the Western aid group through the World Bank.

**Treaties.** Bangladesh signed an economic and technical co-operation agreement with China on 4 Jan. 1977. The amended constitution of 1977 states that Bangladesh seeks fraternal relations with Moslem countries based on Islamic solidarity.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The third 5-year development plan, 1985-90, envisages an annual growth rate of 5.4%, and an industrial growth rate of 10.1% annually; of industrial development funds, 55% is for the private sector. Agriculture receives 30% of total plan expenditure, and the plan aims at self-sufficiency in food by 1990.

**Budget.** Details were as follows for the financial year 1985-86 (Tk. l m.):

<i>Revenue receipts</i>	42,152	<i>Expenditure</i>	36,006
Customs duties	12,020	Defence	5,970
Income and corporation tax	4,587	Education	6,012
Excise duties	8,730	General administration	14,344
Sales tax	4,400	Law and order	3,508

Money supply (May 1988) stood at Tk.49,412m.

**Currency.** A new currency, the *Taka*, was floated in 1976 (Tk.54.50 = £1 and Tk.31.67 = US\$1 in March 1989).

**Banking.** The former private banking system, except for foreign banks, has been nationalized. In May 1988 the Bangladesh Bank had Tk.28,270m. notes in circulation; Tk.19,971m. deposits; Tk.25,886m. foreign liabilities, Tk.52,709m. assets. The scheduled banks had Tk.131,764m. deposits, Tk.32,210m. assets and Tk.24,313m. borrowings from the Bangladesh Bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was introduced from July 1982, but imperial measures are still in use. Weight is in the *seer* (1 *seer* = 2 lb.); the *maund* (1 *maund* = 40 *seers*) and the ton.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power is generated and distributed by the Bangladesh Power Development Board and the Rural Electrification Board. Installed capacity, June 1987, 1,757 mw.; electricity generated, 1986-87, 5,288.01m. kwh.; consumption, 3,479.38m. kwh.

**Oil.** Supplies have been located in the Bay of Bengal. Drilling is in progress.

**Gas.** Natural gas from Titas and other sites is piped to Dhaka; reserves are considered sufficient for 200 years. Production, 1986-87, 125,315m. cu. ft. Consumption, 118,955m. cu. ft.

**Water.** India and Bangladesh are working towards agreement on sharing the water of the river Ganges. The flow will be monitored daily at the Farakka barrage and two other points.



**Minerals.** Minerals include salt, limestone, white clay, glass sand. Production, 1986-87: Limestone, 44,660m. tons (value Tk.13.34m.); china clay, 12,272m. tons (Tk.17.2m.). The Rajshahi and Jamalpur areas have known reserves of coal.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture contributed 45.7% of GDP in 1986-87 and employs about 80% of the economically active population. The land area is 35.7m. acres, of which 7.2m. is not available for cultivation, 5.2m. is forest, 1.1m. is (1986-87) fallow and 32.4m. is cropped (26.2m. under rice, 1.4m. wheat and 1.9m. jute). Cultivable waste is about 721,000 acres. About 5.43m. acres (1987) is irrigated; 2.4m. by tubewells and another 1.63m. by power pump. Rice is the most important food crop; production in 1986-87, 15.4m. tons. Other crops (1,000 tons): Sugar-cane, 6,787; wheat, 1,074; tobacco, 52 (1986); tea, 35 (1986); potatoes, 1,052; bananas, 706 (1986); sweet potatoes, 539.

Fertilizers used (1986-87), 1.32m. tonnes, of which 915m. tonnes was urea.

Livestock in 1987 (1,000): Poultry, 91,000; cattle, 23,500; goats, 10,800; sheep, 1,130; buffalo, 1,900. Livestock products in 1986 (tonnes): Beef and veal, 130,000; cow and buffalo milk, 977,000; goats' milk, 528,000; eggs, 83,800.

Bangladesh produces about 70% of the world production of raw jute which is the principal foreign exchange earner. Production, 1987, 1.2m. tonnes.

**Forestry.** The total area under forests (1986) is 5.2m. acres. The output of roundwood timber in 1980 (1,000 cu. metres): Sawlogs, veneer logs and sleepers, 555; pulpwood, 63; fuel wood, 9,754.

**Fisheries.** Being bounded on the south by the Bay of Bengal and having numerous rivers, streams, khals and bils, the state is pre-eminently a fish-producing area and possesses great possibilities for the manufacture of various oils and fish products.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Out of the existing industries, the textile-mills, sugar factories, match factories, glass works, hosiery factories, a paper-mill, jute-mills, aluminium works and a cement factory, with a capacity of 2m. tons per annum, are the most prominent. New government policy in 1982 aimed to restore public-sector jute and textile mills to private ownership and encourage the private sector. Arms and ammunition, atomic energy, forestry, air transport, communications and electrical industries would remain in the public sector.

In May 1988, 70 jute mills had 23,000 working looms; they employed 179,000 workers; average monthly production 43,000 tons, valued at Tk.809.5m.

Refinery distillation capacity, 1.68m. tonnes. There is a steel mill at Chittagong with a capacity of 250,000 ingot-tons per annum. There is also a newsprint factory, 4 fertilizer factories, a shipyard, a dockyard and a liquified natural gas plant. Large-scale industry employs about 7% of the active population and provided 5.8% (1986-87) of the GDP. Production, 1986-87: Jute goods, 540,000 tonnes (value Tk.10,029m.); cotton yarn, 99.5m. lb.; cotton cloth, 64.9m. yd.; cement, 310,000 tonnes; steel ingots, 82,021 tonnes; steel billets, 55,297 tonnes, newsprint, 46,643 tonnes; diesel engines valued at Tk.56.3m.; bicycles at Tk.20.8m. and motor cycles at Tk.276.5m.

**Labour.** In 1983-84, the total employed were 27,972,000; agriculture, forestry and fisheries, 16,389,000; trade, hotels and restaurants, 3,271,000; personal service, 3,250,000; manufacturing, 2,108,000. In Jan. 1988 an agricultural worker earned Tk.34.05 per day, a skilled mason Tk.88.57.

**Commerce.** The main export commodities are jute goods, hide, skins, leather and tea. In 1986-87 exports were valued at Tk.33,682.13m., of which Tk.6,251.67m. was from food and live animals (mainly fish, but Tk.903.2m. from tea); inedible crude materials except fuels, Tk.2,899.8m., of which Tk.2,754.2 from jute; manufactured goods, Tk.12,772.7m. (mainly jute goods). Principal imports (Tk.68,496.09m.) are machinery and transport equipment (Tk.14,170.87m.); manufactured goods (Tk.16,313m.); minerals, fuels and lubricants (Tk.10,132.3m.).

Sources of imports: Tk.5,582.96m. from Singapore (mainly petroleum); Tk.9,052.4m. from Japan (machinery and vehicles); Tk.5,278.45m. from USA (foodstuffs). Of exports, Tk.10,478.5m. worth went to USA (clothing, jute products); Tk.8,438.6m. to EC countries; Tk.2,149.6m. to Japan; Tk.1,575.7m. to Singapore.

Total trade between Bangladesh and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	35,348	34,117	35,454	50,249
Exports and re-exports from UK	69,420	48,218	54,382	64,018

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 106,765 visitors to Bangladesh of whom 47,390 were from India. Foreign exchange earnings, Tk.192.4m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The State is backward in the matter of road communications, but there are some 2,700 miles of paved and 1,500 miles of unpaved road. In 1987 Bangladesh Road Transport Corporation ran 434 passenger vehicles and 327 trucks.

**Railways.** In 1986-87 there were 2,791 km of railways, comprising 969 km of 1,676 mm gauge and 1,822 km of metre gauge. In 1986-87 the railways carried about 2m. tons of freight and 71m. passengers. Passenger earnings, Tk.754m.; goods, Tk.591m.; total earnings, Tk.1,573m.

**Aviation.** Bangladesh Biman (Bangladesh Airways) has domestic flights from Dhaka and international services to Calcutta, Kathmandu, Bombay, Dubai, Abu Dhabi, Jeddah, Bangkok, Singapore, London, Doha, Kuwait, Amsterdam, Rome, Karachi, Kuala Lumpur, Bahrain, Tripoli, Athens and Muscat. In 1987 Zia International Airport handled 1.18m. passengers; total, including Chittagong, Osmani, Jessore and small aerodromes, 1.6m. Freight and mail handled, Zia, 32,413 tons; total, 34,376; Aircraft movements, Zia, 29,393; total, 55,051.

**Shipping.** Navigable channels provide 5,000 miles of cheap water routes. There are 3 principal waterways, the Padma, Brahmaputra and Meghna. These are freely used by inland steam vessels, which serve areas where railways cannot be economically constructed. The Bangladesh Shipping Corporation owns 24 ships including a 93,000-ton oil tanker (*Banglar Noor*) and has the capacity to carry 20% of imports and 12% of exports. In 1986-87 the port of Chittagong handled 5.8m. tons of imports and 402,000 tons of exports; total, all ports 7.4m. tons of imports and 1.1m. tons of exports. Vessels entered (all ports) 1,792 and cleared, 1,770. The 16 inland-water ferries carried 4.7m. passengers and 402,000 vehicles, earning Tk.220m.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 122,190 telephones in 1982. Dhaka and Islamabad were linked by telephone in Oct. 1976 and a second telephone circuit was agreed on 11 April 1977. International communications are by satellite, Chittagong being linked to the Indian Ocean Intelsat IV satellite.

**Newspapers.** In Nov. 1985 there were 54 daily newspapers with a circulation of 554,000. Most papers are published in Dhaka. The Government has set up a paper (*Dainik Arta-aj Rajshahi*) to stimulate a regional press. Most papers are privately owned. There is a Press Institute.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The amended constitution in 1977 set up a Supreme Judicial Council to establish a code of conduct for Supreme Court and High Court judges, who may be removed from office by the President on the Council's recommendation.

**Religion.** Islam is the official religion, and in June 1988 parliament passed the 8th constitutional amendment declaring it to be the State Religion; about 80% of the people are Muslim and the rest Hindus, Buddhists and Christians.

**Education.** At the 1981 census 19.7% of the population was literate (male 25.8%,

female 13.2%). The compulsory primary education scheme has been replaced by model primary education. The Government has dissolved the District School Boards and taken over school administration.

In 1984-85 there were 42,200 primary schools (8.5m. pupils), 9,360 secondary schools (2.5m.) and (1983-84) 657 intermediate and degree colleges. Of these, there were 123 government colleges, of which 113 gave degrees and 10 were intermediate; degree colleges had 126,060 students and 4,764 faculty; intermediate, 2,936 students and 194. There were 534 non-government colleges (256 degree-giving). They had 287,781 students and 9,033 teachers. There were 6 universities: In 1982-83 Dhaka had 12,394 students (and 893 faculty); Rajshahi 10,198 (463); Chittagong 5,420 (427); Jahangirnagar 1,284 (164); Engineering University 3,015 (300); Agricultural, 3,771 (379). There are 10 teacher-training colleges, 49 primary training institutes and 57 vocational institutes.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 452 government hospitals, 1 mental and 12 tuberculosis and chest hospitals, 11 medical colleges and nursing training centres which train about 1,200 nurses annually. There were 21,370 beds. Voluntary agencies ran 164 hospitals with 4,771 beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Bangladesh in Great Britain (28 Queen's Gate, London, SW7)

*High Commissioner:* Maj.-Gen. K. M. Safiullah.

Of Great Britain in Bangladesh (Abu Bakr Hse., Plot 7, Road 84, Gulshan, Dhaka, 12)

*High Commissioner:* T. G. Streeton, CMG, MBE.

Of Bangladesh in the USA (2201 Wisconsin Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20007)

*Ambassador:* A. H. S. Ataul Karim.

Of the USA in Bangladesh (Adamjee Court Bldg., Motijheel, Dhaka)

*Ambassador:* Willard A. DePree.

Of Bangladesh to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Justice B. A. Siddiky.

### Further Reading

Bangladesh Planning Commission, *The First Five Year Plan—The Second Five Year Plan*.

Ministry of Finance, *Bangladesh Economic Survey: 1979-80*

Abdullah, T. and Zeidenstein, S., *Village Women of Bangladesh: Prospects for Change*. Oxford, 1981

Baxter, C., *Bangladesh: A New Nation in an Old Setting*. Boulder, 1986

Chen, L. C. (ed.) *Disaster in Bangladesh, Health Crisis in a Developing Nation*. OUP, 1973

Chowdhury, R., *The Genesis of Bangladesh*. London, 1972

Dutt, K., *Bangladesh Economy: An Analytical Study*. New Delhi, 1973

Franda, M., *Bangladesh: The First Decade*. New Delhi, 1982

Hartmann, B. and Boyce, J., *A Quiet Violence: View from a Bangladesh Village*. London, 1983

Kamal, K. A., *Sheikh Mujibur Rahman*. 2nd ed. Dhaka, 1970

Kashyap, S. C. (ed.) *Bangla Desh: Background and Perspectives*. New Delhi, 1971

Khan, A. R., *The Economy of Bangladesh*. London, 1972

de Lucia, R. J. and Jacoby, H. D., *Energy Planning for Developing Countries: A Study of Bangladesh*. John Hopkins Univ. Press, 1982

Mascarenhas, A., *The Rape of Bangladesh*. London, 1971

de Vylder, S., *Agriculture in Chains. Bangladesh: A Case Study in Contradictions and Constraints*. London, 1982

O'Donnell, C. P., *Bangladesh: Biography of a Muslim Nation*. Boulder, 1986

Rahman, M., *Bangladesh Today: An Indictment and a Lament*. London, 1978

Robinson, E. A. G. and Griffin, K. (ed.) *The Economic Development of Bangladesh*. London, 1974



# BARBADOS

*Capital:* Bridgetown

*Population:* 253,881 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$4,668 (1987)

**HISTORY.** Barbados was occupied by the British in 1627 and during its colonial history never changed hands. Full internal self-government was attained in 1961. Barbados became an independent sovereign state within the Commonwealth on 30 Nov. 1966.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Barbados lies to the east of the Windward Islands. Area 166 sq. miles (430 sq. km). In 1980 the census population was 248,983. Estimate (1987) 253,881. Bridgetown is the principal city: Population, 7,466.

**CLIMATE.** An equable climate in winter, but the wet season, from June to Nov., is more humid. Rainfall varies from 50" (1,250 mm) on the coast to 75" (1,875 mm) in the higher interior. Bridgetown. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 51" (1,275 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Legislature consists of the Governor-General, a Senate and a House of Assembly. The Senate comprises 21 members appointed by the Governor-General, 12 being appointed on the advice of the Prime Minister, 2 on the advice of the leader of the opposition and 7 in the Governor-General's discretion. The House of Assembly comprises 27 members elected every 5 years. In 1963 the voting age was reduced to 18.

The Privy Council is appointed by the Governor-General after consultation with the Prime Minister. It consists of 12 members and the Governor-General as chairman. It advises the Governor-General in the exercise of the royal prerogative of mercy and in the exercise of his disciplinary powers over members of the public and police services.

In the general election of May 1986 the Democratic Labour Party gained 24 seats and the Barbados Labour Party 3 seats.

*Governor-General:* Sir Hugh Springer, GCMG, CBE.

The Cabinet, in Jan. 1989, was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister, Minister of Finance and Economic Affairs:* Erskine Sandiford.

*Deputy Prime Minister, International Transport, Immigration and Telecommunications, Leader of Government Business in the House of Assembly:* Philip Greaves. *Attorney-General, Legal Affairs:* Maurice A. King, QC. *Employment, Labour Relations and Community Development:* Keith Simmons. *Foreign Affairs, Leader of the Senate:* Sir James Tudor. *Health:* Branford Taitt. *Housing and Lands:* Harold A. Blackman. *Tourism and Sport:* Wesley Hall. *Trade and Industry:* E. Evelyn Greaves. *Transport and Works:* Dr Don Blackman. *Education and Culture:* Cyril Walker. There were two Ministers of State.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of blue, gold, blue, with a black trident in the centre.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Barbados is a member of UN, OAS, CARICOM, the Commonwealth and an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1987-88 envisaged capital expenditure of BD\$176.5 and current expenditure of BD\$814.1.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *Barbados dollar* (BD\$) divided into 100 cents. In March 1989, £1 = BD\$3.48; US\$1 = 2.02.

**Banking.** Eight main commercial banks operate in Barbados including Barclays Bank International, the Royal Bank of Canada, Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, the Bank of Nova Scotia, Chase Manhattan Bank, Caribbean Commercial Bank, The Barbados National Bank, Bank of Credit and Commerce International.

Barbados is headquarters for the Caribbean Development Bank. The Barbados Development Bank opened on 15 April 1969 and Barbados became a member of the Inter-American Development Bank on 19 March 1969.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 425m. kwh. Supply 150 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude oil production (1987) 20,865,600 US gallons and reserves, 3.24m. bbls.

**Gas.** Output of gas (1987) 936m. cu. ft and reserves 18,618m. cu. metres.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of 106,240 acres, about 55,000 acres are arable land. The land is intensely cultivated. In 1987, 12,000 hectares of sugar-cane were harvested. Cotton was successfully replanted in 1983 and 91 bales were harvested from 300 acres in 1985. The agricultural sector accounted for 7.1% (provisional) of GDP in 1985 (1946, 45%; 1967, 24%). In 1985, 6.9% of the total labour force were employed in agriculture. In 1987, 85,000 tonnes of sugar were produced. There are 6 sugar factories and 2 rum refineries in production. In 1987, 2,000 tonnes of yams and 2,000 tonnes of sweet potatoes were produced. Hot peppers, eggplants, watermelons, breadfruit and red ginger lilies are also grown for export.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 17,000; sheep, 56,000; goats, 33,000; pigs, 49,000; poultry, 1m.

**Fisheries.** There are about 745 (1987) powered boats and many men and women are employed during the flying-fish season. Large numbers of these boats are laid up from July to Oct. The fish catch in 1987 was 9,800 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial establishments operating in Barbados in 1987 numbered approximately 330 and ranged from the manufacture of processed food to small specialized products such as garment manufacturing, furniture and household appliances, electrical components, plastic products and electronic parts.

**Commerce.** Total trade for calendar years in BD\$1,000:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Domestic Imports <sup>1</sup>	1,257,961	1,324,623	1,221,595	1,181,075	1,035,891
Domestic Exports <sup>1</sup>	581,579	583,667	496,471	420,614	214,511

<sup>1</sup> Exclusive of bullion and specie.

In 1987 the principal imports (BD\$1m.) were: Machinery and transport equipment, 250.2; manufactured goods, 309; food and live animals, 167; lubricants, mineral fuels, etc., 111.5; chemicals, 107.6; crude minerals, 32.2; beverages and tobacco, 23.7; animal and vegetable oils and fats, 9.4. In 1987 the principal domestic exports (BD\$1m.) were: Sugar, 56.9; electronic components, 51.8; clothing, 23.8.

Total trade between Barbados and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports from UK	22,509	13,512	11,661	23,320	19,487
Exports and re-exports to UK	30,654	36,856	38,338	33,067	32,061

**Tourism.** In 1987, 421,859 tourists visited Barbados spending BD\$757.2m. The industry employs over 10,000 people.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 1,035 miles of road open to traffic, of which 855 miles are all-weather roads. From Jan. to Dec. 1987 there were 34,740 private cars, 2,266 hired cars and taxis, 470 buses including minibuses and 7,855 other vehicles including motorcycles.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport at Seawell, Christ Church, Barbados, served by British Airways, BWIA, Leeward Islands Air Transport, PANAM, American Airlines, Wardair, Air Martinique Cruziero (SC), Air Canada, Caribbean Airways and Eastern Airlines, Cubana Airlines, Venezuelan Airlines.

**Shipping.** A deep-water harbour opened in 1961 at Bridgetown provides 8 berths for ships 500–600 ft in length, including one specially designed for bulk sugar loading. The number of merchant vessels entering in 1986 was 1,961 of 6,452,000 net tons.

**Post and Telephone.** There is a general post office in Bridgetown and 16 branches on the island. In 1985 there were 86,785 telephones in service.

**Cinemas.** There were (1985) 3 cinemas and 2 drive-in cinemas for 600 cars.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there were 2 daily newspapers with a total circulation of 39,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Supreme Court and by magistrates' courts. All have both civil and criminal jurisdiction. There is a Chief Justice and 3 puisne judges of the Supreme Court and 8 magistrates.

**Religion.** The majority (about 70%) of the population are Anglicans, the remainder mainly Methodists, Moravians and Roman Catholics.

**Education.** In 1984–85 children in 105 government primary schools numbered 29,392; in 21 secondary schools, 21,501; in 5 vocational centres, 967; in 15 assisted private approved secondary schools, 4,227. There are 23 independent primary schools with 3,547 pupils and a number of independent schools for which no accurate figures are available. Education is free in all government-owned and maintained institutions from primary to university level.

In 1963 Erdiston College became one of the constituent Colleges of the University of the West Indies Institute of Education. The College of Arts and Sciences of the University of the West Indies in Barbados was opened in Sept. 1963 and Cave Hill campus in 1967. In 1984–85, 186 students attended Erdiston College and 1,617 students attended the Cave Hill campus. The Barbados Community College for higher education at pre-university level was opened in 1969; in 1984–85, 1,806 students (full- and part-time) were enrolled.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 2,054 hospital beds and 243 doctors.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Barbados in Great Britain (1 Great Russell St., London, WC1B 3NH)  
*High Commissioner:* Vernon Smith.

Of Great Britain in Barbados (Lower Collymore Rock, Bridgetown)  
*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG.

Of Barbados in the USA (2144 Wyoming Ave., NW, Washington, D.C. 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Sir William Douglas, KCMG.

Of the USA in Barbados (PO Box 302, Bridgetown)  
*Ambassador:* Paul A. Russo.

Of Barbados to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Dame Nita Barrow.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Barbados Statistical Service (NIS Bldg, Fairchild St, St Michael) produces selected monthly statistics and annual abstracts. *Director:* Eric Straughn.

Dann, G., *The Quality of Life in Barbados*. London, 1984.

Hoyos, F. A., *Barbados: A History from the Amerindians to Independence*. London, 1978.—*Barbados: A Visitor's Guide*. London, 1983.—*Tom Adams: A Biography*. London, 1988.

Potter, R. B. and Dann, G. M. S., *Barbados* [Bibliography]. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987  
Worrell, D., *The Economy of Barbados 1946–1980*. Bridgetown, 1982

*Library:* The Barbados Public Library, Bridgetown. *Acting Chief Librarian:* Edwin Ifill.



# BELGIUM

*Capital:* Brussels

*Population:* 9.88 m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$9,230 (1986)

## Royaume de Belgique— Koninkrijk België

**HISTORY.** The kingdom of Belgium formed itself into an independent state in 1830, having from 1815 been part of the Netherlands. The secession was decreed on 4 Oct. 1830 by a provisional government, established in consequence of a revolution which broke out at Brussels, on 25 Aug. 1830. A National Congress elected Prince Leopold of Saxe-Coburg King of the Belgians on 4 June 1831; he ascended the throne 21 July 1831.

By the Treaty of London, 15 Nov. 1831, the neutrality of Belgium was guaranteed by Austria, Russia, Great Britain and Prussia. It was not until after the signing of the Treaty of London, 19 April 1839, which established peace between King Leopold I and the King of the Netherlands, that all the states of Europe recognized the kingdom of Belgium. In the Treaty of Versailles (28 June 1919) it is stated that as the treaties of 1839 'no longer conform to the requirements of the situation', these are abrogated and will be replaced by other treaties.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Belgium is bounded north by the Netherlands, north-west by the North Sea, west and south by France, east by Federal Republic of Germany and Luxembourg. Belgium has an area of 30,518 sq. km (11,778 sq. miles). The Belgian exclave of Baarle-Hertog in the Netherlands has an area of 7 sq. km, and a population (1 Jan. 1988) of 1,098 males and 1,014 females.

By an agreement, 23 Sept. 1956, the frontier with Germany was slightly readjusted.

<i>Census</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Increase % per annum</i>	<i>Census</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Increase % per annum</i>
1900	6,693,548	1.03	1947	8,512,195	0.36
1910	7,423,784	1.09	1961	9,189,741	0.52
1920	7,405,569	0.06	1970	9,650,944	0.55
1930	8,092,004	0.84	1981	9,848,647	0.18

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Provincial capitals</i>	<i>Area (hectares)</i>	<i>Estimated population (31 Dec.)</i>			
			1970 <sup>1</sup>	1985	1986	1987
Antwerp (Anvers)	Antwerp	286,726	1,533,249	1,582,786	1,585,163	1,587,450
Brabant	Brussels	335,811	2,176,373	2,218,349	2,219,272	2,221,818
Flanders	West	Bruges	1,054,429	1,090,387	1,092,696	1,035,193
	East	Ghent	1,310,117	1,328,805	1,328,931	1,328,779
Hainaut	Mons	378,669	1,317,453	1,277,939	1,274,034	1,271,649
Liège	Liège	386,213	1,008,905	991,535	991,089	992,068
Limbourg	Hasselt	242,231	652,547	731,875	734,382	736,981
Luxembourg	Arlon	444,114	217,310	224,988	225,563	226,452
Namur	Namur	366,501	380,561	412,231	413,621	415,326
Total		3,051,871	9,650,944	9,858,895	9,864,751	9,875,716

<sup>1</sup> Census.

In 1987 there were 4,821,803 males and 5,053,913 females.

Foreigners numbered 858,650 on 1 Jan. 1988.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Immigration</i>	<i>Emigration</i>
1984	115,790	110,577	58,989	18,768	47,002	56,447
1985	114,283	112,691	57,630	18,530	47,042	54,021
1986	117,271	111,671	56,657	18,434	48,959	53,793
1987	117,448	105,840	56,588	19,830	49,750	57,033

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Of the total births				
excluding still-born	115,790	114,283	117,271	117,448
Boys	59,353	58,695	60,569	60,386
Girls	56,437	55,588	56,702	57,062

The most important towns, with estimated population on 1 Jan. 1988:

Brussels and suburbs <sup>1</sup>	970,346	St Niklaas (St Nicolas)	68,059
Antwerp (Antwerpen) <sup>2</sup>	476,044	Tournai (Doornik)	66,749
Ghent (Gent)	232,620	Hasselt	65,798
Charleroi	208,938	Genk	61,499
Liège (Luik)	200,312	Seraing	61,427
Brugge (Bruges)	117,857	Mouscron (Moeskroen)	53,543
Namur (Namen)	103,104	Verviers	53,355
Mons (Bergen)	89,515	Roeselare (Roulers)	52,132
Leuven (Louvain)	84,180	Turnhout	37,567
Aalst (Alost)	76,714	Herstal	36,919
Kortrijk (Courtrai)	76,314	Lokeren	34,488
La Louvière	76,291	Vilvoorde (Vilvorde)	32,893
Mechelen (Malines)	75,718	Lier (Lierre)	30,938
Oostende (Ostende)	68,397		

<sup>1</sup> The suburbs comprise 18 distinct communes, viz., Anderlecht, Etterbeek, Forest, Ixelles, Jette, Koekelberg, Molenbeek St Jean, St Gilles, St Josse-ten-Noode, Schaerbeek, Uccle, Woluwe-St Lambert, Auderghem, Watermael-Boitsfort, Woluwe-St Pierre, Berchem Ste Agathe, Evere and Ganshoren.

<sup>2</sup> Including Berchem, Borgerhout, Deurne, Hoboken, Merksem and Wilrijk.

**CLIMATE.** Cool temperate climate, influenced by the sea, giving mild winters and cool summers. Brussels. Jan. 36°F (2.2°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 33'' (825 mm). Ostend. Jan. 38°F (3.3°C), July 62°F (16.7°C). Annual rainfall 31'' (775 mm).

**KING. Baudouin**, born 7 Sept. 1930, succeeded his father, Leopold III, on 17 July 1951, when he took the oath on the constitution before the two Chambers: Married on 15 Dec. 1960 to Fabiola de Mora y Aragón, daughter of the Conde de Mora and Marqués de Casa Riera.

*Brother and Sister of the King.* (1) Josephine Charlotte, Princess of Belgium, born 11 Oct. 1927; married to Prince Jean of Luxembourg, 9 April 1953; (2) Albert, Prince of Liège, born 6 June 1934; married to Paola Ruffo di Calabria, 2 July 1959; *offspring:* Prince Philippe, born 15 April 1960; Princess Astrid, born 5 June 1962; married to Archduke Lorenz of Austria, 22 Sept. 1984; Prince Laurent, born 19 Oct. 1963. *Half-brother and half-sisters of the King.* Prince Alexandre, born 18 July 1942; Princess Marie Christine, born 6 Feb. 1951; Princess Maria-Esmeralda, born 30 Sept. 1956.

*Aunt of the King.* Princess Marie-José, born 4 Aug. 1906, married to Prince Umberto (King Umberto II of Italy in 1946) on 8 Jan. 1930.

#### BELGIAN SOVEREIGNS

Leopold I	1831–65	Leopold III	1934–44, 1950–51
Leopold II	1865–1909	Regency	1944–50
Albert	1909–34	Baudouin	1951–

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** According to the constitution of 1831, Belgium is a constitutional, representative and hereditary monarchy. The legislative power is vested in the King, the Senate and the Chamber of Representatives. The royal succession is in direct male line in the order of primogeniture. By marriage without the King's consent, however, the right of succession is forfeited, but may be restored by the King with the consent of the two Chambers. No act of the King can have effect unless countersigned by one of his Ministers, who thus becomes responsible for it. The King convokes, prorogues and dissolves the

Chambers. In default of male heirs, the King may nominate his successor with the consent of the Chambers. If the successor be under 18 years of age the two Chambers meet together for the purpose of nominating a regent during the minority.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of black, yellow, red.

*National anthem:* Après des siècles d'esclavage (La Brabançonne; words by Jenneval, 1830; tune by F. van Campenhout, 1930).

French, Dutch and German are official languages.

Those sections of the Belgian Constitution which regulate the organization of the legislative power were revised in Oct. 1921. For both Senate and Chamber all elections are held on the principle of universal suffrage.

The Senate consists of members elected for 4 years, partly directly and partly indirectly. The number elected directly is equal to half the number of members of the Chamber of Representatives. The constituent body is similar to that which elects deputies to the Chamber; the minimum age of electors is 18 years. Women were given the suffrage at parliamentary elections on 24 March 1948. In the direct elections of members of both the Senate and Chamber of Representatives the principle of proportional representation was introduced by law of 29 Dec. 1899.

Senators are elected indirectly by the provincial councils, on the basis of 1 for 200,000 inhabitants. Every addition of 125,000 inhabitants gives the right to 1 senator more. Each provincial council elects at least 3 senators. There are at present 51 provincial senators. No one, during 2 years preceding the election, must have been a member of the council appointing him. Senators are elected by the Senate itself in the proportion of half the preceding category. The senators belonging to these two latter categories are also elected by the method of proportional representation. All senators must be at least 40 years of age. They receive about 2m. francs per annum. Sons of the King, or failing these, Belgian princes of the reigning branch of the royal family, are by right senators at the age of 18, but have no voice in the deliberations till the age of 25 years; this prerogative is hardly ever used.

The members of the Chamber of Representatives are elected by the electoral body. Their number, at present 212 (law of 3 April 1965), is proportional to the population, and cannot exceed one for every 40,000 inhabitants. They sit for 4 years. Deputies must be not less than 25 years of age, and resident in Belgium.

Each deputy has an annual allowance of about 2m. francs. Senators and deputies have also free railway passes.

The Senate and Chamber meet annually in October and must sit for at least 40 days; but the King has the power of convoking extraordinary sessions and of dissolving them either simultaneously or separately. In the latter case a new election must take place within 40 days and a meeting of the chambers within 2 months.

An adjournment cannot be made for a period exceeding 1 month without the consent of the Chambers.

After the revision of the Constitution by the laws of 24 Dec. 1970 and 28 July 1971 establishing three regions and two cultural councils, legislation on 'preparatory regionalization' was enacted in July 1974. Further revisions of the functions of the Cultural Councils took place on 8 and 9 Aug. 1980. The Cultural Councils became Community Councils with greater authority and the Regional Councils became competent on economic matters.

Elections were held on 13 Dec. 1987, the Flemish Christian Social Party (CVP) won 43 seats, Francophone Socialist Party (FS) 40, Flemish Socialist Party (SP) 32, Liberal Flemish Freedom and Progress Party (PVV) 25, Francophone Liberal Reform Party (PRL) 23, Francophone Christian Social Party (PSC) 19, Flemish Peoples' Union (VU) 16, Others, 14.

A 5-party coalition government was as follows in Nov. 1988:

*Prime Minister:* Wilfried Martens (CVP).

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Philippe Moureaux, PS (Brussels Region and Institutional Reform); Willy Claes, SP (*Economic Affairs and Planning, National Education (Flemish)*); Jean-Luc Dehaene, CVP (*Communications and Institu-*



*tional Reform*); Melchior Wathelet, PSC (*Justice and Middle Classes*); Hugo Schlitz, VU (*Budget and Scientific Policy*). *Foreign Affairs*: Léo Tindemans (CVP). *Finance*: Philippe Maystadt (PSC). *Foreign Trade*: Robert Urbain (PS). *Public Affairs*: Michel Hansenne (PSC). *Post and Telecommunications*: Freddy Willockx (SP). *Social Affairs*: Philippe Busquin (PS). *National Defence*: Guy Coëme (PS). *Public Works*: Paula D'Hondt Van Opdenbosch (CVP). *Interior, Modernization of Public Services, and National Scientific and Cultural Institutions*: Louis Tobback (SP). *National Education (French)*: Yvan Ylieff (PS). *Co-operation and Development*: André Geens (VU). *Pensions*: Alain Van der Biest (PS). *Employment and Work*: Luc Van den Brande (CVP).

There are thirteen Secretaries of State.

**Local Government.** Belgium has 9 provinces and since the so-called 'Amalgamation Law' of 30 Dec. 1975, 589 communes (instead of 2,359). They have a large measure of autonomous government. According to the law of 9 June 1982, all Belgians over 18 years of age, who are recorded in the registers of population of the commune have the right to vote in the communal elections. Proportional representation is applied to the communal elections, and communal councils are to be renewed every 6 years. In each commune there is a college composed of the burgomaster as the president and a certain number of aldermen.

**DEFENCE.** According to the Law of 30 April 1962, the Belgian Armed Forces are recruited by annual calls to the colours and by voluntary enlistments.

Military service is 10 months for conscripts serving in the Federal Republic of Germany and 12 months for those serving in Belgium, 13 months for voluntary reserve officers and 15 for the paracommando regiment. Duration of military obligation is 8 years for most soldiers called for compulsory service.

The Medical Service has a strength of 5,785 personnel. Beside the medical units and detachments in the Armed Forces, the medical service manages 6 military hospitals and a central pharmacy.

**Army.** The Army comprises as major units 1 armoured and 3 mechanized brigades (2 of which are deployed as the Belgian divisions in the Belgian corps area in the Federal Republic of Germany) and 1 paracommando regiment. There are also 2 reconnaissance, 4 air defence, 1 missile, 4 engineering, 2 artillery and 2 tank battalions. Total strength (1989) 65,700. *Gendarmerie*, 16,700.

Equipment includes nearly 334 LEOPARD Main Battle Tanks, 133 SCORPION Light Tanks, 153 SCIMITAR Armoured Fighting Vehicles, 1,267 Armoured Personnel Carriers and 80 JPK 90mm Self-Propelled Anti-Tank Guns; Artillery Battalions are equipped with 155mm and 203mm Self-Propelled Howitzers, LANCE Surface-to-Surface Missiles, HAWK Surface-to-Air Missiles and GEPARD Armoured Vehicles with 35mm Anti-Aircraft Guns.

Other equipment in use: MILAN Anti-Tank Guided Weapon, STRIKER Armoured Fighting Vehicle with SWINGFIRE Anti-Tank Guided Weapon, Islander aircraft, Alouette II helicopters, Epervier Remotely Piloted Vehicle.

**Navy.** The naval forces include 4 frigates (Navy designed and built) completed in 1978, 6 ocean minehunters, 2 command and logistic support ships, 2 coastal minehunters, 4 coastal minesweepers, 11 inshore minesweepers, 2 research ships, 1 ammunition transport, 6 tugs and 2 service craft. Ten tripartite minehunters are being built. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 4,490 officers and ratings.

The naval air arm comprises 2 Alouette III general utility helicopters.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has a strength of (1989) 18,700 personnel and more than 230 aircraft in 12 operational squadrons and support units. There are 5 flying wings. The all-weather fighter wing consists of 2 squadrons of F-16s. One fighter-bomber wing has 2 squadrons of F-16s. Another fighter-bomber wing operates 2 squadrons of Mirage 5, and is converting to F-16. The fourth wing operates Mirage 5, 1 squadron fighter bomber attack and 1 squadron tactical reconnaissance fighter. The transport wing consists of 1 squadron equipped with 12 C-130H Hercules turboprop transports, and 1 squadron flying 2 Boeing 727s, 3 HS 748 twin-

turboprop transports, 5 Swearingen Merlin III light turboprop transports and 2 light twin-jet Falcons. Other types in service include Sea King Mk 48 search and rescue helicopters, SIAI-Marchetti SF.260M and Alpha Jet training aircraft. Two surface-to-air missile groups, stationed in Germany, are equipped with Nike Hercules missiles. Aircraft on order include 44 more F-16s with deliveries which began in 1988.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Belgium is a member of UN, European Communities, Benelux Economic Union, Council of Europe, NATO, OECD and WEU.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for calendar years (in 1 m. francs):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
<i>Receipts</i>						
Current	1,210,518	1,310,921	1,382,786	1,408,727	1,455,500	1,485,100
Capital	338,596	373,447	391,763	204,415	344,900	308,500
Total	1,549,114	1,684,368	1,774,549	1,614,142	1,800,400	1,793,600
<i>Expenditure</i>						
Current	1,611,881	1,710,302	1,803,661	1,840,903	1,804,700	1,937,600
Capital	216,147	166,317	170,839	173,352	156,100	165,400
Total	1,828,028	1,876,619	1,974,500	2,014,255	1,960,400	2,103,000

On 31 Dec. 1987 the Belgian public debt consisted of (in 1 m. francs): Internal debt consolidated, 3,120,400; short and middle terms, 1,617,700; at sight, 88,400. External debt, 1,046,000.

**Currency.** The *franc*, containing 0.01826 gramme of fine gold, is the unit of currency.

No gold has been minted since 1882 (save only 5 m. francs struck in 1914 and a limited number of new gold (50 Ecu) and silver (5 Ecu) coins issued in 1987). Note circulation 31 Dec. 1987, 425,603 m. francs.

The official rate of exchange in March 1989 was US\$1 = 38.84 francs; £1 = 66.85 francs.

**Banking.** The bank of issue in Belgium is the National Bank, instituted in 1850. It is the cashier of the State, and is authorized to carry on the usual banking operations. The articles of association of the National Bank of Belgium were modified on 13 Sept. 1948 so as to strengthen public control.

The savings banks are mainly operated by the *Caisse Générale d'Epargne et de Retraite* and by the private savings banks. The *Caisse Générale d'Epargne et de Retraite* (CGER), a state institution, consists of 2 parts: the *Caisse d'Epargne* which performs the whole range of banking activities and a further unit which embodies the funds engaged in social security and insurance activities; the CGER operates under the authority of the Minister of Finance. The *Commission bancaire* (bank commission) supervises the financial situation and the activities of the *Caisse d'Epargne*. It co-operates with the Belgian postal service, thus obviating any need of a postal-savings system. The savings deposits and savings bonds of the *Caisse d'Epargne* amounted to 725,572 m. francs on 31 Dec. 1987. The private savings banks, whose liabilities expressed in savings accounts and bonds amounted to 1,048,739 m. francs on 31 Dec. 1987, are controlled by the 'Commission bancaire'.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The production of electricity (1 m. kwh.) amounted to 51,015 in 1980; 48,179 in 1981; 47,936 in 1982; 49,912 in 1983; 51,850 in 1984; 54,184 in 1985; 57,505 in 1986. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Gas.** Production of gas (in 1m. cu. metres): 675 in 1980; 690 in 1981; 594 in 1982; 623 in 1983; 717 in 1984; 716 in 1985; 636 in 1986; 674 in 1987.

**Minerals.** Output (in tonnes) for 5 calendar years:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Coal	6,097,428	6,297,563	6,211,471	5,589,208	4,356,455
Briquettes	45,265	44,682	...	...	...
Coke	5,105,675	5,925,767	5,963,729	5,130,229	5,226,272
Cast iron	8,033,206	8,968,470	8,719,040	8,047,635	8,242,366
Wrought steel	10,157,031	11,303,381	10,687,461	9,764,551	9,786,422
Finished steel	7,056,770	8,138,190	8,072,766	7,359,316	7,415,200

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of 3,051,871 hectares, there were, in 1987, 1,382,914 hectares under cultivation, of which 351,319 were under cereals, 29,000 vegetables, 122,120 industrial plants, 148,519 root crops, 652,133 pastures and meadows.

<i>Chief crops</i>	<i>Area in hectares</i>			<i>Produce in tonnes</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	179,883	181,412	185,349	1,149,592	1,256,924	1,046,523
Barley	118,243	127,893	122,878	685,369	793,069	678,104
Oats	20,931	13,543	14,667	93,562	59,317	60,430
Rye	5,159	4,476	4,145	22,546	19,337	16,663
Potatoes	40,940	39,990	44,574	1,521,706	1,400,721	1,620,310
Beet (sugar)	117,865	112,763	106,189	5,952,187	5,886,234	5,425,174
Beet (fodder)	14,752	13,898	13,614	1,355,302	1,315,591	1,145,379
Tobacco	534	548	398	1,863	1,957	1,097

In 1987 there were 22,785 horses, 3,079,142 cattle, 187,999 sheep, 8,684 goats and 5,861,470 pigs.

**Forestry.** In 1970 the forest area covered 19.7% of the land surface. In 1970, 2.85 cu. metres of timber were felled.

**Fisheries.** The total quantity of fish landed amounted to 31,373 tons valued at 3,226m. francs in 1987. The fishing fleet had a total tonnage of 23,385 gross tons at 31 Dec. 1987.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1985 there were 13 sugar factories, output 145,279 tonnes of raw sugar; 3 sugar refineries, output 219,570 tonnes; 9 distilleries, output 88,504 hectolitres of potable and industrial alcohol; 132 breweries, output 13,930,884 hectolitres of beer; margarine factories, output 171,755 tonnes.

Six trusts control the greater part of Belgian industry: The Société Générale (founded in 1822) owns about 40% of coal, 50% of steel, 65% of non-ferrous metals and 35% of electricity; Brufina-Confinindus operates in steel, coal, electricity and heavy engineering; the Groupe Solvay rules the chemical industry; the Groupe Copée has interests in steel and coal; Empain controls tramways and electrical equipment; the Banque Lambert owns petroleum firms and their accessories.

**Commerce.** By the convention concluded at Brussels on 25 July 1921 between Belgium and Luxembourg and ratified on 5 March 1922 an economic union was formed by the two countries, and the customs frontier between them was abolished on 1 May 1922. Dissolved in Aug. 1940, the union was re-established on 1 May 1945. On 14 March 1947, in execution of an agreement signed in London on 5 Sept. 1944, there was concluded a customs union between Belgium and Luxembourg, on the one hand, and the Netherlands, on the other. The union came into force on 1 Jan. 1948, and is now known as the Benelux Economic Union. A joint tariff has been adopted and import duties are no longer levied at the Netherlands frontier, but import licences may still be required. A full economic union of the three countries came into operation on 1 Nov. 1960.

Benelux information is supplied by the Secretariat General of the Benelux Economic Union, Rue de la Régence, 39, 1000 Brussels. It publishes *Benelux. Bulletin Trimestriel de Statistique; Statistisch Kwartaalbericht* (1955 ff.).



## Trade by selected countries (in 1,000 Belgian francs):

	<i>Imports from</i>			<i>Exports to</i>		
	1985	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1985	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>
France	498,946,005	485,654,709	487,456,000	600,636,737	614,836,278	633,087,614
USA	187,924,213	154,715,670	...	200,789,652	162,607,549	160,922,202
UK	295,653,660	255,845,998	241,700,385	309,864,652	267,140,182	260,676,840
Netherlands	614,602,338	547,563,309	532,663,194	451,005,568	461,130,695	465,060,873
German Dem. Rep.	9,425,453	7,903,247	7,185,006	3,790,007	5,335,897	4,734,044
Germany, Fed. Rep.	695,513,488	709,251,792	754,378,524	588,661,598	605,793,518	613,903,542
Argentina	11,867,259	10,466,223	7,317,577	2,032,665	2,574,133	2,554,813
Italy	118,169,483	129,985,407	132,176,726	172,280,290	179,133,742	197,444,146
Switzerland	77,349,479	67,528,998	60,336,281	76,325,828	72,607,130	70,790,329
Zaire	32,604,538	27,831,948	23,925,043	13,989,196	12,231,661	10,165,716
Denmark	16,909,563	16,909,130	18,604,666	34,469,832	37,042,773	32,841,555
USSR	74,000,531	46,777,802	47,866,797	37,305,363	22,164,309	18,322,900
India	11,609,454	11,799,729	12,358,210	41,809,451	36,184,941	38,451,392
Rep. of S. Africa	20,687,570	16,093,835	14,356,875	10,824,906	9,351,499	10,165,716
Canada	18,772,444	16,054,286	21,554,369	21,847,569	18,434,189	14,988,935
Brazil	29,597,678	15,836,369	17,316,710	3,970,743	4,115,124	5,126,127
Australia	9,825,578	8,489,467	9,518,452	10,632,024	8,494,508	8,394,566

## Imports and exports for 6 calendar years (in 1,000 Belgian francs):

	<i>Imports</i>		<i>Exports</i>	
1982	2,653,362,108	2,393,152,616	1985	3,317,811,996
1983	2,820,864,806	2,651,340,902	1986	3,065,238,630
1984	3,195,768,712	2,992,116,161	1987 <sup>1</sup>	3,099,208,803

The total trade between Belgium and Luxembourg and UK was as follows (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,691,794	4,016,889	4,083,883	4,362,463	4,956,037
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,051,722	3,347,596	3,832,605	3,857,717	4,251,961

Principal Belgian-Luxembourg exports to UK in 1987<sup>1</sup> (tonnes; francs): Textiles (162,617; 26,428m.); metals (705,288; 22,784m.); chemical and pharmaceutical products (666,258; 24,354m.); precious stones and manufactures thereof (972; 27,108m.).

Principal Belgian-Luxembourg imports from the UK in 1987<sup>1</sup> (tonnes; francs): Machinery and electrical apparatus (61,514; 33,859m.); vehicles, chiefly motor cars, and aircraft (116,508; 22,199m.); textiles (39,161; 9,419m.); precious stones (134; 76,554m.); base metals and manufactures thereof (259,362; 10,266m.).

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

**Tourism.** In 1987 receipts totalled 112.2m. francs.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The total length of the roads in Belgium on 31 Dec. 1987 was as follows: State roads (including 1,568 km of motorway), 14,471 km; provincial roads, 1,371 km. The majority of roads are metalled. Number of motor vehicles in Belgium, 1 Aug. 1988, 4,158,127, including 3,497,818 passenger cars, 16,095 buses, 296,415 lorries, 31,627 non-agricultural tractors, 146,550 agricultural tractors, 131,095 motor cycles and 38,527 special vehicles.

**Railways.** The main Belgian lines were a State enterprise from their inception in 1834. In 1926 the *Société Nationale des Chemins de Fer Belges (SNCB)* was formed to take over the railways. The State is sole holder of the ordinary shares of SNCB, which carry the majority vote at General Meetings. The length of railway operated on 31 Dec. 1987 was 3,568 km. Revenue (1987), 64,645m. francs; expenditure, 68,652m. francs. In 1987, 64m. tonnes of freight and 142.2m. passengers were carried.

The *Société Nationale des Chemins de Vicinaux (SNCV)* operates electrified light railways around Charleroi (97 km) and from De Panne to Knokke (68 km). There is also a metro and tramway in Brussels, and tramways in Antwerp and Ghent.

**Aviation.** The national Belgian airline SABENA (*Société anonyme belge d'exploitation de la navigation aérienne*) was set up in 1923. Its capital is 750m. francs. In addition to its European network, SABENA operates different routes to North and South America, to North, Central and South Africa and to the Near, the Middle and the Far East. In 1986 its airfleet comprised 25 aircraft. In 1987 SABENA flew 58m. km, carrying 2,362,152 revenue passengers, 553m. ton-km of freight and 23m. ton-km of mail.

**Shipping.**<sup>1</sup> On 1 Jan. 1988 the Belgian merchant fleet was composed of 78 vessels of 2,039,409 tons. There were 42 shipping companies, of which the most important were the Compagnie Maritime Belge, with 11 ships, and the Belcan, SA, with 4 ships.

<sup>1</sup> Belgian shipping returns are given in the official 'Moorsom tons', which may be converted into net tons by deducting 19.85% from the Moorsom total.

The navigation at the port of Antwerp in 1987 was as follows: Number of vessels entered, 15,366; tonnage, 125,582,029. Number of vessels cleared, 15,526; tonnage, 127,041,508.

The total length of navigable waterways (rivers and canals) was 1,569.3 km in 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 1,839 post offices. The gross revenue of the post office in the year 1987 amounted to 32,123m. francs.

In 1987 there were 4,719,273 telephones, 3,367,192 telephone subscribers, 7,223 mobile telephone subscribers, 36,754 subscribers to the paging service and 27,620 telex subscribers. As to data transmission, there were (1986) 50,226 modems connected to subscriber lines, 25,089 data transmission lines and 1,139 telegraph type lines.

*Radio-Télévision belge de la Communauté française (RTBF)* and *Belgische Radio en Televisie (BRT)* are public institutions broadcasting in French and Dutch respectively.

BRT has 5 radio programmes: BRT 1 is for service and information, documentary programmes, radio drama and light music; BRT 2 is for regional entertainment from each of the Flemish provinces. Both stations broadcast on medium-wave and on FM (stereo). BRT 3, on FM (stereo) is the cultural station; Studio Brussels (medium-wave and FM) gives information and light music for young listeners; the International Service (short-and medium-wave) aims at reaching the Fleming dwelling abroad and at presenting a picture of Flemish cultural life.

RTBF has 5 radio programmes: Radio I (medium-wave) for information; Radio II (FM stereo) for entertainment and local information; Radio III (FM stereo) for classical music; Radio 21 (FM stereo) a young people's popular music and news programme; *Radio quatre internationale* (short-wave) which broadcasts to Africa.

Each body has 2 television channels, one general and one mainly for sport, special events, cultural events, feature films; broadcasting is by PAL standards. Commercial advertising is not allowed on radio or television, which are financed by the Flemish and French Community Councils. In 1985 the Flemish community had 2.77m. radio receivers and 1.7m. television sets of which 76.5% were colour sets; the French-speaking community had 1.7m. radio receivers and 1.2m. television sets of which 72% were colour sets; 83.2% of the Flemish and 89% of the French-speaking households were connected to a television cable-network. Number of receivers (1987), radio, 4,608,450; TV, 3,172,636.

**Cinemas** (1987). There were 407 cinemas, with a seating capacity of 102,760.

**Newspapers** (1987). There are 35 daily newspapers (some of them only regional or local editions of larger dailies), of which 19 are in French, 15 in Dutch and 1 in German.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Judges are appointed for life. There is a court of cassation, 5 courts of appeal, and assize courts for political and criminal cases. There are 27 judicial districts, each with a court of first instance. In each of the 222 cantons is a justice and judge of the peace. There are, besides, various special tribunals. There is trial by jury in assize courts.

**Religion.** Of the inhabitants professing a religion the majority are Roman Catholic, but no inquiry as to the profession of faith is now made at the censuses. There are, however, statistics concerning the clergy, and according to these there were in 1987: Roman Catholic higher clergy, 129; inferior clergy, 5,773; Protestant pastors, 81; Anglican Church, 11 chaplains; Jews (rabbis and ministers), 22. The State does not interfere in any way with the internal affairs of any church. There is full religious liberty, and part of the income of the ministers of all denominations is paid by the State.

There are 8 Roman Catholic dioceses subdivided into 260 deaneries.

Estimated number of Protestants, 24,000; of Jews, 35,000.

The Protestant (Evangelical) Church is under a synod. There is also a Central Jewish Consistory, a Central Committee of the Anglican Church and a Free Protestant Church.

**Education.** On 8 Nov. 1962/2 Aug. 1963 a linguistic frontier was fixed between the Dutch-speaking, French-speaking and German-speaking parts of Belgium. In the north, Dutch is recognized as the official language, in the south, French, and along the eastern border, German. The city and *arrondissement* of Brussels are bilingual. The percentage of the population in the Flemish, French, German and bilingual regions was 57.7, 31.8, 0.7, 9.8 on 1 Jan. 1988. (See map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1967-68.)

*Higher Education* (1986-87). Higher education is given in state universities: Ghent (12,876 students), Liège (9,839 students), Mons (1,915 students), the Polytechnic Faculty in Mons (736 students), the Antwerp State University Centre (1,985 students), the Gembloux Faculty of Agronomical Sciences (989 students), the Royal Military School in Brussels (843 students) and in the private universities: Catholic University of Louvain (40,154 students), the Free University of Brussels (20,923), University Institution Antwerp (1,816 students), St Ignatius Antwerp (3,644 students), Our Lady of Peace in Namur (3,901 students), Catholic University Faculty in Mons (1,092 students), St Louis in Brussels (1,182 students), St Aloysius in Brussels (722 students), the Limbourg University Centre (778 students) and the Protestant Faculty of Theology in Brussels (106 students). The total number of students in university colleges, faculties and institutes was 103,505.

There are 5 royal academies of fine arts and 5 royal conservatoires at Brussels, Liège, Ghent, Antwerp and Mons.

*Secondary Education.* 2,143 (1986-87) middle schools had a total of 97,120 pupils in the general classes and 143,836 in the technical classes in the traditional system and 602,299 pupils in the new system.

*Elementary Education.* There were 4,681 (1986-87) primary schools, with 755,085 pupils and 4,229 (1986-87) infant schools, with 381,787 pupils.

*Normal Schools.* Under the French and German linguistic systems there were 27 (1986-87) schools for training secondary teachers (2,118 students) in 1986-87; 33 (1986-87) for training elementary teachers (2,674 students) in 1986-87, 24 technical normal schools in 1986-87 with 926 students and 17 normal infant schools with 1,462 students in 1986-87.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 30,942 physicians (including 454 dentists), 5,979 other dentists and 11,027 pharmacists. Hospital beds numbered 89,589 on 1 Jan. 1986.

**Social Security.** Social security is based on the law of Dec. 1944. It applies to all workers subject to an employment contract, and is administered by the Central National Office of Social Security (ONSS), which collects from employers and em-



ployees all contributions referring to family allowances, health insurance, old age insurance, holidays and unemployment. These sums are distributed by the Central Office to the various institutions concerned with these benefits. Insurance against unemployment is organized through a common fund, which also undertakes to re-train the unemployed for another employment while providing for their families. Since 1944 further laws have increased allowances, made fresh provisions for housing (1945), injuries while working, professional illnesses, etc. (1948).

Apart from private charity, the poor are assisted by the communes through the agency of the *Centre Public d'Aide Sociale* in French-speaking parts of the country and *Openbaar Centrum voor Maatschappelijk Welzijn* in Dutch-speaking areas. Provisions of a national character have been made for looking after war orphans and men disabled in the war. Certain other establishments, either state or provincial, provide for the needs of the deaf-mutes and the blind, and of children who are placed under the control of the courts. Provision is also made for repressing begging and providing shelter for the homeless.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Belgium in Great Britain (103 Eaton Sq., London, SW1W 9AB)  
*Ambassador:* Jean-Paul Van Bellinghen (accredited 24 Feb. 1984).

Of Great Britain in Belgium (Britannia Hse., rue Joseph II 28, 1040 Brussels)  
*Ambassador:* Sir Peter Petrie, CMG.

Of Belgium in the USA (3330 Garfield St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Herman Dehennin.

Of the USA in Belgium (Blvd. du Régent 27, 1000 Brussels)  
*Ambassador:* Maynard Wayne Glitman.

Of Belgium to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* P. Noterdaeme.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Institut National de Statistique (44 rue de Louvain, Brussels) was set up on 24 Jan. 1831, under the designation of Bureau de Statistique Générale; after several changes, it received its present name on 2 May 1946. *Director-General (in charge):* L. Diels.  
*Main publications:*

- Statistiques du commerce extérieur* (monthly)
- Bulletin de Statistique*. Bi-monthly
- Annuaire Statistique de la Belgique* (from 1870).—*Annuaire statistique de poche* (from 1965)
- Statistiques Agricoles*. Irregular
- Annuaire administratif et judiciaire de Belgique*. Annual. Brussels
- L'économie belge*. Ministère des Affaires Economiques. Annual (from 1947)
- Guide des Ministères: Revue de l'Administration Belge*. Brussels, Annual

# BELIZE

*Capital:* Belmopan

*Population:* 176,000 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,170 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The early settlement of the territory was probably effected by British woodcutters about 1638; from that date to 1798, in spite of armed opposition from the Spaniards, settlers held their own and prospered. In 1780 the Home Government appointed a superintendent, and in 1862 the settlement was declared a colony, subordinate to Jamaica. It became an independent colony in 1884. Self-government was attained in 1964. Independence was achieved on 21 Sept. 1981.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Belize is bounded north by Mexico, west and south by Guatemala and east by the Caribbean. Area, 22,963 sq. km. There are 6 districts:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Population census, 1980</i>		<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Population census, 1980</i>
Corozal	1,860	22,902	Cayo	5,338	22,337
Belize	4,204	50,801	Stann Creek	2,176	14,181
Orange Walk	4,737	22,870	Toledo	4,649	11,762

Total population (census, 1980) 145,353. Estimate (1987) 176,000. In 1987 the birth rate per 1,000 was 36.1 and the death rate 4.1; infantile mortality 20 per 1,000 births; there were 1,103 marriages.

English is the official language. Spanish is spoken by 31.6% of the population. The main ethnic groups are Creole (African descent), Mestizo (Spanish-Maya) and Garifuna (Caribs).

Main city, Belize City; population, census 1980, 39,771. Estimate (1987) 48,400. Following the severe hurricane which struck the territory on 31 Oct. 1961 the capital Belmopan (population, 1986, 3,500) has been moved to a new site 50 miles inland; construction began in Jan. 1967 and it became the seat of government on 3 Aug. 1970. See map in the 1978-79 edition of THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate with high rainfall and small annual range of temperature. The driest months are Feb. and March. Belize. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 76" (1,890 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Having achieved self-government in Jan. 1964 delays occurred in achieving independence because of the outstanding territorial claim by Guatemala. Attempts to reach agreement on the claim finally failed prior to independence being granted, but guarantees were given by Britain that a military force would remain.

The Constitution, which came into force on 21 Sept. 1981, provided for a National Assembly, with a 5-year term, comprising a 28-member House of Representatives elected by universal adult suffrage, and a Senate consisting of 8 members appointed by the Governor-General on the advice of the Prime Minister, 2 on the advice of the Leader of the Opposition and 1 on the advice of the Belize Advisory Council.

At the general election in Dec. 1984 the United Democratic Party won 21 seats in the House of Representatives and the People's United Party 7.

*Governor-General:* Dame Elmira Minita Gordon, GCMG, GCVO.

The cabinet in Jan. 1987 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Minister of Finance and Defence:* The Rt Hon. Manuel Amadeo Esquivel, PC.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Home Affairs:* Curl Thompson.  
*Attorney-General and Minister of Foreign Affairs and Economic Development:* Dean Barrow. *Agriculture:* Dean Lindo. *Labour and Social Services:* Philip Goldson. *Natural Resources:* Charles Wagner. *Health:* Israel Alpuche. *Electricity,*

*Communication and Transport:* Derek Aikman. *Works and Housing:* Hubert Elrington. *Commerce, Industry and Tourism:* Edwardo Juan. *Education, Youth, and Sports:* Elodio Aragon.

*Flag:* Blue with red band along the top and bottom edges. In the centre a white disc containing the coat of arms surrounded by a green garland.

**DEFENCE.** The Defence Force consists of 1 infantry battalion, with 3 active and 3 reserve companies. The Air Wing operates two twin-engined BN-2B Defenders for maritime patrol and transport duties and a single DO 27 utility aircraft. There is also a Maritime wing of the Belize Defence Force. It operates 2 armed Wasp patrol vessels and a number of smaller vessels utilized for anti-smuggling and coast guard duties. Naval personnel (1989) 50. British Forces Belize number about 1,600, including a detachment of the Royal Air Force which deploys Harrier V/STOL ground attack/reconnaissance aircraft. Personnel (1989) 700.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Belize is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, CARICOM and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1988-89 envisaged expenditure of \$B178.7m.

Public external debt, 31 Dec. 1987, US\$103.8m.

**Currency.** There are notes of \$B100, 20, 10, 5 and 1, and a subsidiary mixed metal coinage of 1-, 5-, 10-, 25- and 50-cent pieces. In March 1989, £1 = \$B3.46 and US\$1 = \$B2.

**Banking.** A Central Bank was established in 1981. There were (1987) 4 commercial banks with a total of 14 branches: Belize Bank, Barclays Bank PLC, Bank of Nova Scotia and the locally incorporated Atlantic Bank. The Development Finance Corporation provides long-term credit for development of agriculture and industry. There were (1985) 7 government savings banks, 26 credit unions and 17 insurance companies. Amendments to the Banking Ordinance permit offshore banking.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 74.4m. kwh. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Several oil companies were (1986) exploring for oil both off-shore and on-shore. Oil was discovered in the north in 1981 but not in commercial quantities.

**Agriculture.** In 1986 agriculture provided 65% of total foreign exchange earnings and employed 30% of the total labour force. The main agricultural export is sugar, followed by citrus fruit, chiefly grapefruit and oranges processed into oil, squash and concentrates. Citrus production, 1987, 1,672,000 boxes of oranges, 883,000 boxes of grapefruit. Sugar-cane production in 1987 was 789,000 tonnes. Bananas are the third export crop; production, 1987, 1,184,000 boxes. [Ed. note: Box of grapefruit, 80 lb., oranges, 90 lb., bananas, 42 lb.]. Cacao is becoming increasingly important as an export crop. Mangoes are also grown commercially; production, 1986, 1,000 tonnes. Main cultivated food crops (with production, 1986) are maize (18,000 tonnes), rice (4,000 tonnes) and red kidney beans. Belize is self-sufficient in fresh beef and pork, poultry and eggs. A dairy plant (daily milk processing capacity 400 gallons) began operations in 1986. Beekeeping co-operatives produced 620,000 lbs of honey in 1987.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 51,000; sheep, 4,000; pigs, 25,000; poultry, 1m.

**Forestry.** 2,964 sq. miles, 49% of the total land area, are under forests which include mahogany, cedar, Santa Maria, pine and rosewood, and many secondary hardwoods of known or probable market value, as well as woods suitable for pulp production. Exports of forest produce in 1986 amounted to \$B1m.



**Fisheries.** There are 12 registered fishing co-operatives. Food and game fish are plentiful, and domestic consumption is heavy. Main export markets for scale fish are in the USA, Mexico and Jamaica. Fish products exported in 1987 to the USA were valued at \$B14m. Turtles—Hawksbill, Loggerhead and Green—are plentiful but as yet are not exported. There were 758 fishing vessels in 1987.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1987 production of the major commodities was: Sugar, 82,300 tons; molasses, 24,300 tons; cigarettes, 98.8m.; beer, 568,000 gallons; batteries, 6,600; wheat flour, 18m. lb.; rum (1986), 4.5m. gallons; fertilizer, 7,896 tons; garments, 2,592,000; citrus concentrates, 1,919,000 gallons; soft drinks, 817,000 cases. The labour market alternates between full employment, often accompanied by local shortages in the citrus and sugar-cane harvesting (Jan.–July), and under-employment during the wet season (Aug.–Dec.), aggravated by the seasonal nature of the major industries.

**Trade Unions.** There are 12 accredited unions with an estimated membership of 8,000.

**Commerce.** In 1987 total imports amounted to \$B285.9m. Total exports, \$B198.8m. The principal domestic exports were timber (\$B4.8m.), sugar (\$B62.6m.), fish products (\$B11m.), garments (\$B31.3m.), bananas (\$B14.3m.), citrus products (\$B31m.), molasses (\$B1.1m.) and honey (\$B500,000).

Total trade between Belize and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	15,911	15,050	17,954	22,757	22,461
Exports and re-exports from UK	11,501	8,329	8,232	7,543	12,064

**Tourism.** Tourists totalled 99,266 in 1987 spending \$B41.3m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are four major highways and all principal towns and villages are linked by road to Belmopan and Belize City. In 1987, there were 12,752 licensed vehicles.

**Aviation.** The Philip Goldson International Airport is 14 km from Belize City. Four airlines maintain international services to and from the USA, Central America and Mexico. In 1987, 372,800 passengers arrived and departed on international flights. Domestic air services provide connections to all main towns and 3 of the main offshore islands.

**Shipping.** The main port is Belize City, with a modern deep water port able to handle containerized shipping. Registered shipping (1981), 55 sailing vessels, 1,348 net tons, and 323 motor vessels, 745,197 net tons. The second largest port, Commerce Bight just south of Dangriga, can accommodate medium-sized vessels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1988), 11,165. Belize Telecommunications Ltd has instituted a country-wide fully automatic telephone dialling facility. There are 7 main post offices and 61 sub-post offices.

The Belize Broadcasting Network broadcasts daily, with 80% of its programmes in English and the remainder in Spanish.

**Cinemas** (1985). There were 10 cinemas with seating capacity of 10,000.

**Newspapers.** There were 5 weekly newspapers and 2 monthly magazines in 1987.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Each of the 6 judicial districts has summary jurisdiction courts (criminal) and district courts (civil), both of which are presided over by magistrates. There is a Supreme Court and a Court of Appeal. There is a Director of Public Prosecutions, a Chief Justice and 3 Puisne Judges.

**Religion.** In 1986 about 62% of the population was Roman Catholic and 28% Protestant, including Anglican, Methodist, Seventh Day Adventist, Mennonite, Nazarene, Jehovah's Witness, Pentecostal and Baptist. There was a small group of Bahai.

**Education.** Education is compulsory for children between 6-14 years and primary education is free. In 1987, 226 primary schools had a total enrolment of 40,000 pupils with 1,578 teachers; 26 secondary schools, 7,326 pupils with 572 teachers; 8 other technical schools, 932 students with 69 teachers. The Belize Teachers' College offers courses for primary and secondary school teachers. The 2-year course leads to a teachers' diploma. The University College of Belize opened in 1986. There is 1 government-maintained special school for mentally handicapped and physically handicapped children. The University of the West Indies maintains an extra-mural department in Belize City.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 7 government hospitals (1 in Belmopan, 1 in Belize City and 1 in each of the other 5 districts) and an infirmary for geriatric and chronically ill patients, with 82 doctors and (1987) 583 hospital beds. Medical services in rural areas are provided by health care centres and mobile clinics.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Belize in Great Britain (15 Thayer St., London, W1M 5DL)

*High Commissioner:* Sir Edney Cain, OBE.

Of Great Britain in Belize (P.O. Box 91, Belmopan)

*High Commissioner:* P. A. B. Thomson, CVO.

Of Belize in the USA (3400 International Dr., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Edward A. Laing.

Of the USA in Belize (Gabourel Lane and Hutson St., Belize City)

*Ambassador:* Richard G. Rich, Jr.

Of Belize to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Kenneth E. Tillett.

### Further Reading

*Abstract of Statistics 1981.* Government Printer, Belize City, 1982

Bianchi, W. J., *Belize: The Controversy Between Guatemala and Great Britain.* New York, 1959

Dobson, D., *A History of Belize.* Belize, 1973

Grant, C. H., *The Making of Modern Belize.* CUP, 1976

Setzekorn, W. D., *Formerly British Honduras: A Profile of the New Nation of Belize.* Ohio Univ. Press, 1981

Woodward, R. L., Jr, *Belize.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1980

# BENIN

*Capital:* Porto-Novo

*Population:* 4.44m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$270 (1986)

## République Populaire du Bénin

**HISTORY.** The territory of the present State was occupied by France in 1892 and was constituted a division of French West Africa in 1904 under the name of Dahomey. It became an independent republic within the French Community on 4 Dec. 1958, and acquired full independence on 1 Aug. 1960.

In the sixth *coup* since independence, Maj. Mathieu (now Ahmed) Kerekou came to power on 26 Oct. 1972 and proclaimed a Marxist-Leninist state, whose name was altered from Dahomey to Benin on 1 Dec. 1975.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Benin is bounded east by Nigeria, north by Niger and Burkina Faso, west by Togo and south by the Gulf of Guinea. The area is 112,622 sq. km, and the population, census 1979, 3,338,240. Estimate (1988) 4,444,000. In 1979, 48% of the inhabitants were male, 14.2% urban and 49% were under 15 years of age. The seat of government is Porto-Novo (208,258 inhabitants in 1982); the chief port and business centre is Cotonou (487,020 in 1982); other important towns (1982) are Parakou (65,945), Natitingou (50,800, 1979), Abomey (54,418), Kandi (53,000) and Ouidah. On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 3,033 refugees in Benin, primarily from Chad.

The areas, populations and capitals of the 6 provinces are as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1979</i>	<i>Estimate 1987</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Atakora	31,200	479,604	622,000	Natitingou
Borgou	51,000	490,669	630,000	Parakou
Zou	18,700	570,433	731,000	Abomey
Mono	3,800	477,378	610,000	Lokossa
Atlantique	3,200	686,258	909,000	Cotonou
Ouémé	4,700	626,868	806,000	Porto-Novo

French is the official language, while 47% of the people speak Fon, 12% Adja, 10% Bariba, 9% Yoruba, 6% Fulani, 5% Somba and 5% Aizo.

**CLIMATE.** In coastal parts there is an equatorial climate, with a long rainy season from March to July and a short rainy season in Oct. and Nov. The dry season increases in length from the coast, with inland areas having rain only between May and Sept. Porto Novo. Jan. 82°F (27.8°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 52" (1,300 mm). Cotonou. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 53" (1,325 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under a *Loi fondamentale* adopted in Aug. 1977, the sole political party is the *Parti de la Révolution Populaire du Bénin*; its Congress held in Nov. 1985 elected a Central Committee of 45 members to direct Party policy and to appoint the 11-member Political Bureau.

There is a unicameral legislature, the National Revolutionary Assembly of 196 People's Commissioners elected on 10 June 1984 for 5 years from the sole list of the PRPB. The Assembly elects the President for a 5-year term, and he appoints and leads a National Executive Council composed in Feb. 1989 as follows:

*President, Minister of National Defence:* Brig.-Gen. Mathieu Kerekou (re-elected 31 July 1984).

*Ministers-Delegate to the Presidency:* Maj. Edouard Zodehougan (*Interior, Security and Territorial Administration*), Simon Ogouma (*Planning and Statistics*). *Rural Development and Co-operative Action:* Maj. Adolphe Biaoou. *Equipment and Transport:* Soule Dankora. *Finance and Economy:* Hospice Antonio.



*Commerce, Crafts and Tourism:* Girigissou Gado. *Nursery and Primary Education:* Capt. Philippe Akpo. *Secondary and Higher Education:* Vincent Guezodje. *Culture, Youth and Sports:* Ali Houdou. *Labour and Social Affairs:* Ireré Zindou. *Public Health:* Soule Dankoro. *Information and Communications:* Ousmane Batoko. *Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Guy Laudry Hazoume. *Justice, Inspection and Parastatal Enterprises:* Saliou Abdoudou.

*National flag:* Green with a red star in the canton.

*Local Government.* The 6 provinces, each governed by an appointed Prefect and a Provincial Revolutionary Council, are divided into 84 districts.

**DEFENCE.** National service is for a period of 18 months.

**Army.** The Army consists of 3 infantry, 1 para-commando, 1 engineer and 1 service battalion, 1 armoured reconnaissance squadron and 1 artillery battery. Strength (1989) 3,800, with an additional 2,000-strong paramilitary gendarmerie.

**Navy.** A naval force was formed in 1979 with 4 fast gunboats and 2 fast torpedo boats transferred from the USSR, constituting a somewhat over-ambitious flotilla for such a short coastline, but a fast patrol craft and a tug were recently added. Personnel in 1989, 200.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had a strength of (1989) about 350 officers and men, 2 twin-turboprop An-26 and 2 C-47 transports, 1 Cessna Skymaster, 1 Aero Commander 500, 2 Broussard communications aircraft and 2 Ecureuil helicopters. A twin-turboprop Corvette is operated by the Air Force on VIP missions for government agencies.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Benin is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 10-year development plan (1981–90) envisages an expenditure of 958,800m. francs CFA.

**Budget.** The 1986 recurrent budget balanced at 57,028m. francs CFA and the investment budget at 49,849m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *franc CFA* (*Communauté financière africaine*), with a parity value of 50 *francs CFA* to 1 French *franc*. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50 and 100 *francs CFA*, and banknotes of 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *francs CFA*. In March 1989, £1 = 542 *francs CFA*; US\$1 = 315 *francs CFA*.

**Banking.** The *Banque Centrale des Etats de l'Afrique de l'Ouest* is the bank of issue and the central bank. The *Banque Commerciale du Bénin*, in Cotonou, conducts all government business.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** *Société Béninoise d'Electricité et d'Eau*, produced 172m. kwh in 1985 from generating plants at Cotonou, Porto-Novo and Parakou. Major development of hydro-electric resources along the Mono river are being conducted jointly with Togo. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The Semé oilfield, located 10 miles offshore, was discovered in 1968. Production commenced in 1982 and reached 3.3m. bbls in 1985.

**Agriculture.** 90% of the population subsist by agriculture. The chief products, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes) were: Cassava, 726; yams, 858; maize, 364; sorghum, 90; groundnuts, 67; beans, 44; rice, 9; and sweet potatoes, 34, while cash crops were palm kernels, 18, and palm oil, 38. Cotton cultivation has been successfully introduced in the north; coffee cultivation has given good results in the south.

**Livestock** (1986 in 1,000): Cattle (930), sheep (1,160), goats (1,100), pigs (600), poultry (22,000), horses (6), asses (1).

**Forestry.** There are about 16,000 sq. km of classified forest, mainly in the north. Roundwood production in 1985 was 4.4m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Total catch in 1985 was 20,306 tonnes (80% from inland and lagoon waters).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial plants are few, limited mainly to palm-oil processing and brewing. There is a sugar complex at Savé, a cement plant at Onigbolo and textile mills at Cotonou and Parakou. Production (1985) included 51,000 tonnes of sugar, 37,000 tonnes of palm oil and 318,000 tonnes of cement.

**Labour.** In 1973 the small trade unions were amalgamated to form a single body, now named the *Union Nationale des Syndicats des Travailleurs du Bénin*.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1983, US\$113m.; exports, US\$78m. The main exports are palm oil and kernels, cocoa, cotton and sugar. In 1984, 32% of exports were to Spain, 21% to Federal Republic of Germany and 16% to France, which provided the largest share (23%) of imports.

Total trade between Benin and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,101	7,390	4,910	2,930	2,450
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,829	8,362	6,728	7,207	8,169

**Tourism.** There were 41,000 foreign tourists in 1980.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 7,445 km of roads in 1985, 2,740 passenger cars and 567 goods vehicles.

**Railways.** There are 579 km of metre-gauge railway. One line connects Cotonou with Parakou (438 km) and is being extended to Dosso (in Niger); the second runs from Cotonou *via* Porto-Novo to Pobé (107 km); and the third from Cotonou *via* Ouidah to Segboroué on the Togo frontier (34 km), continuing to Lomé. In 1986 1.5m. passengers and 456,000 tonnes of freight were carried.

**Aviation.** In 1981, 80,400 passengers and 9,763 tonnes of freight passed through Cotonou airport. There are other airports at Abomey, Natitingou, Kandi and Parakou.

**Shipping.** In 1983, 736,000 tonnes were unloaded and 64,400 tonnes loaded at the port of Cotonou. There were (1986) 15 vessels of 4,887 GRT registered in Benin.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1985, 8,650 telephones. Telegraph lines connect Cotonou with Togo, Niger and Senegal. In 1984 there were 68,000 radios and 17,250 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1976 there were 4 cinemas with a seating capacity of 4,400.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there was 1 daily newspaper with a circulation of 12,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court is at Cotonou. There are Magistrates Courts in Cotonou, Porto-Novo, Natitingou, Abomey, Kandi, Ouidah and Parakou, and a *tribunal de conciliation* in each district.

**Religion.** 61% of the population follow animist beliefs, chiefly Voodoo, about 22% are Christian, mainly Roman Catholic, and 15% Moslem.

**Education.** There were, in 1984, 444,232 pupils in primary schools, 112,267 in secondary schools and 8,315 students in technical schools. The University of Benin (Cotonou) had 6,302 students in 1983. Adult literacy (1980) 28%.

**Health.** In 1982 there were 6 hospitals, 31 health centres, 186 dispensaries and 65 maternity clinics with (1978, combined) 4,968 beds, and in 1979 there were 204 doctors, 13 dentists, 55 pharmacists and 1,294 midwives.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Benin in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Souler Issoufou Idrissou (resides in Paris).

Of Great Britain in Benin

*Ambassador:* Sir Martin Ewans, KCMG (resides in Lagos).

Of Benin in the USA (2737 Cathedral Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of the USA in Benin (Rue Caporal Anani Bernard, Cotonou)

*Ambassador:* Walter E. Stadler.

Of Benin to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Simon Ifedé Ogouma.



# BERMUDA

*Capital:* Hamilton

*Population:* 58,080 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$18,000 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Spaniards visited the islands in 1515, but, according to a 17th-century French cartographer, they were discovered in 1503 by Juan Bermudez, after whom they were named. No settlement was made, and they were uninhabited until a party of colonists under Sir George Somers was wrecked there in 1609. A company was formed for the 'Plantation of the Somers' Islands', as they were called at first, and in 1684 the Crown took over the government.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Bermuda consists of a group of some 150 small islands (about 20 inhabited), situated in the western Atlantic (32° 18' N. lat., 64° 46' W. long.); the nearest point of the mainland, about 570 miles distant, is Cape Hatteras, N.C., and 690 miles from New York.

The area is 20.59 sq. miles (53.3 sq. km), of which 2.3 sq. miles were leased in 1941 for 99 years to the US Government for naval and air bases. The civil population (*i.e.*, excluding British and American military, naval and air force personnel) in 1980 (Census) was 54,893. Estimate (1987) 58,080.

Chief town, Hamilton; population, about 3,000.

In 1987 there were 899 live births, 694 marriages and 438 deaths; infantile mortality rate (1987) was 4.4 per 1,000 live births.

**CLIMATE.** A pleasantly warm and humid climate, with up to 60" (1,500 mm) of rain, spread evenly throughout the year. Hamilton. Jan. 63°F (17.2°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 59" (1,463 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Bermuda is a colony with representative government. Under the constitution of 8 June 1968 the Governor, appointed by the Crown, is normally bound to accept the advice of the Cabinet in matters other than external affairs, defence, internal security and the police, for which he retains special responsibility. The Cabinet is appointed from among members of the bicameral legislature, on the recommendation of the Premier. The Senate, of whom one or two members may serve on Cabinet, consists of 11 members. As a result of a Constitutional Conference held in Feb. 1979, it was decided that 5 Senators would be appointed by the Governor on the recommendation of the Premier, 3 by the Governor on the recommendation of the Opposition Leader and 3 by the Governor in his own discretion. The 40 members of the House of Assembly are elected 2 from each of 20 constituencies under full universal, adult suffrage. A general election was held in Feb. 1989. The United Bermuda Party won 23 seats, the Progressive Labour Party, 15 and others, 2.

*Governor:* Sir Desmond Langley, KCVO, MBE.

*Premier:* John W. D. Swan.

*Flag:* The British Red Ensign with the badge of the Colony in the fly.

**DEFENCE.** The Bermuda Regiment had 734 men and women in 1987.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure in \$B for years ending 31 March:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	186,553,800	214,800,000	231,508,700	251,550,300	297,639,200
Expenditure	186,553,245	190,362,000	200,706,300	220,172,000	245,542,700

Expenditure in \$B1,000 (excluding capital items) was earmarked as follows:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Education	30,589	25,585	27,853	30,187	31,972
Health and Social Services	37,113	434,100	491,600	553,300	801,500
Public Works	16,090	20,195	21,427	23,234	24,969
Police	13,953	15,970	17,204	19,025	21,019
Tourism	14,750	17,793	19,383	21,566	23,213
Marine and Ports Services	4,678	5,127	5,852	6,285	7,175
Public Transportation	953	93,200	77,800	3,431	3,706
Agriculture and Fisheries	6,266	5,719	6,126	6,716	3,579
Post Office	4,196	5,022	5,991	6,255	7,276

The estimated chief sources of revenue in 1988-89 were: Customs duties, \$115m.; employment tax, \$23.9m.; land tax, \$12m.; hospital levy, \$30m.; vehicle licenses, \$9,513,000; stamp duties, \$13m.; passenger taxes, \$10.4m. Public debt, as at 31 March 1988, was nil.

**Currency.** Decimal currency based on a *Bermuda dollar* of 100 cents was introduced 6 Feb. 1970. In March 1989 £1 = 1.72 Bermuda dollars and US\$1 = 1 Bermuda dollar. The Bermuda Monetary Authority issues notes in denominations of \$100, \$50, \$20, \$10, \$5 and \$1, and coins in values of \$5, \$1, 50c, 25c, 10c, 5c and 1c.

**Banking.** There are 3 banks, the Bank of Bermuda, Ltd, the Bank of N. T. Butterfield and Son, Ltd, and the Bermuda Commercial Bank, Ltd, with correspondent banks and representatives in either New York, London, Canada or Hong Kong.

**Weights and Measures.** Metric, except that US and Imperial measures are used in certain fields.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 391 m. kwh. Supply 115 volts; 60 Hz.

**Agriculture.** The chief products are fresh vegetables, bananas and citrus fruit. In 1986, 603 acres were under cultivation. In 1987 6,859 persons were employed in agriculture, fishing and horticulture.

In 1987, total value of agricultural products was \$B6,187,000.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 1,000; pigs, 2,000; goats, 1,000; poultry (1982), 47,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Trade Unions.** Legislation providing for trade unions was enacted in Oct. 1946, and there are 9 trade unions with a total membership (1987) of 8,000.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in \$B:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	414,094,688	402,491,252	...	419,939,867
Exports	40,544,514	23,053,764	...	29,218,856

The visible adverse balance of trade is more than compensated for by invisible exports, including tourism and off-shore insurance business.

Imports in 1987 from USA, \$260m.; UK, \$41m.; Canada, \$27m.

In 1985 the principal imports were food, drink and tobacco (\$130.5m.); clothing (\$29m.), electric appliances (\$39m.), transport equipment (\$24m.). The bulk of exports comprise sales of fuel to aircraft and ships, and re-exports of pharmaceuticals.

Total trade between Bermuda and UK, in £1,000 sterling (British Department of Trade returns):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,037	6,394	1,262	1,208	6,767
Exports and re-exports from UK	22,843	28,024	26,180	25,383	24,995

**Tourism.** In 1987, 613,628 tourists visited Bermuda including those arriving by air and cruise ship.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1948 the railway service was discontinued and a government-operated bus service introduced.

Between 1908 and Aug. 1946 the use of motor vehicles, with the exception of ambulances, fire engines and other essential services, was prohibited. In 1987, out of 43,359 registered vehicles 17,240 were private cars.

**Aviation.** American Airlines, Pan American, Delta Airlines and Eastern Airlines maintain regular services between Bermuda and the USA. British Airways also have regular flights through Bermuda linking Bermuda with Baltimore, Tampa and London. Air Canada services call at Bermuda on their route between Toronto, Montreal and Halifax.

**Shipping.** In 1987, there were 189 visits by cruise ships, 239 visits by cargo ships and 27 visits by oil and gas tankers.

**Post and Broadcasting** (1987). There are 15 post offices. The telephone company is privately owned and rented 52,670 telephones in 1987. Cables connect the islands with the USA, Halifax (N.S.) and Tortola, providing connexion with the world. Radio and television broadcasting is commercial.

**Newspapers** (1988). There is 1 daily newspaper with a circulation of 17,961 and 2 weeklies with a total circulation of 26,000.

## JUSTICE, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 3 magistrates' courts, 3 Supreme Courts and a court of appeal. The police had a strength of 463 men and women in 1988.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 5 and 16, and government assistance is given by the payment of grants, and, where necessary, of school fees. In 1987, there were 18 primary schools, 14 secondary schools (of which 5 are private, including 2 denominational schools and one run by the US Armed Forces in Bermuda), 4 special schools at the primary and secondary levels which cater to 190 blind, deaf, speech impaired and multiple handicapped persons aged 14–21, and 11 pre-school nurseries. There were 475 full-time students attending the Bermuda College in 1987. There is no university, but extra-mural courses are available from Queen's University in Canada and the University of Maryland in the USA.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 2 hospitals, 57 doctors, 23 dentists, 643 professional nurses and 35 pharmacists.

## Further Reading

*Bermuda Report, 1980–84.* Hamilton, 1986

*Bermuda Historical Quarterly.* 1944 ff.

Hayward, S. J., Holt-Gomez, V. and Sterrer, W., *Bermuda's Delicate Balance: People and the Environment.* Hamilton, 1981

Warwick, J. B., (ed.) *Who's Who in Bermuda 1980–81.* Hamilton, 1982

Wilkinson, H. C., *Bermuda from Sail to Steam.* OUP, 1973

Zuill, W. S., *The Story of Bermuda and Her People.* London, 1973

*National Library:* The Bermuda Library, Hamilton. *Head Librarian:* Cyril O. Packwood.



# BHUTÁN

*Capital:* Thimphu  
*Population:* 1.4m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$160 (1987)

## Druk-yul

**HISTORY.** In 1774 the East India Company concluded a treaty with the ruler of Bhután. Under a treaty signed in Nov. 1865 the Bhután Government was granted an annual subsidy. By an amending treaty concluded in Jan. 1910 the British Government undertook to exercise no interference in the internal affairs of Bhután, and the Bhután Government agreed to be guided by the advice of the British Government in regard to its external relations.

The Government of India concluded a fresh treaty with Bhután on 8 Aug. 1949. Under this treaty the Government of Bhután continues to be guided by the Government of India in regard to its external relations, and the Government of India have undertaken not to interfere in the internal administration of Bhután. The subsidy paid to Bhután has been increased to Rs 500,000, and the Government of India agreed to retrocede to Bhután an area of about 32 sq. miles in the territory known as Dewangiri, which was annexed in 1865.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Bhután is situated in the eastern Himalayas, bordered north by China and on all other sides by India. Extreme length from east to west 190 miles; extreme breadth 90 miles. Area about 18,000 sq. miles (46,500 sq. km); population estimated at approximately 1,400,000 (1988). Hindus, of Nepálese origin, form 25%-30% of the population. Life expectancy (1985) was 48 years. The capital is at Thimphu (1987, 15,000 population).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is largely controlled by altitude. The mountainous north is cold, with perpetual snow on the summits, but the centre has a more moderate climate, though winters are cold, with rainfall under 40" (1,000 mm). In the south, the climate is humid sub-tropical and rainfall approaches 200" (5,000 mm).

**KING.** Jigme Singye Wangchuck, succeeded his father Jigme Dorji Wangchuck who died 21 July 1972.

**GOVERNMENT.** In 1907 the Tongsa Penlop (the governor of the province of Tongsa in central Bhután), Sir Ugyen Wangchuk, GCIE, KCSI, was elected as the first hereditary Maharaja of Bhután. The Bhutánese title is Druk Gyalpo, and his successor is now addressed as King of Bhután. From Oct. 1969 the absolute monarchy was changed to a form of 'democratic monarchy'. The National Assembly (*Tshogdu*) was reinstituted in 1953. It has 151 members and meets twice a year. Two-thirds are representatives of the people and are elected for a 3-year term. All Bhutánese over 25 years may be candidates. Ten monastic representatives are elected by the central and regional ecclesiastical bodies, while the remaining members are nominated by the King, and include members of the Council of Ministers (the Cabinet) and the Royal Advisory Council.

The official languages are Dzongkha, Lhotsam (Nepáli) and English.

*National flag:* Diagonally yellow over orange, over all in the centre a white dragon.

*Local government:* There are 18 districts, each under a district officer (*Dzongda*).

## DEFENCE

**Army.** There was (1989) an Army of 4,000 men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Bhután is a member of UN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 6th 5-year plan (1987–92), allows for expenditure of N8,811 m.

**Budget.** The budget for 1988–89 envisaged expenditure of N2,157m. and internal revenue of N660m.

**Currency.** Paper currency has been introduced, known as the *Ngultrum*. Cupronickel and bronze currency is known as *Chetrum* (100 *Chetrum* = 1 *Ngultrum*). Indian currency is also legal tender. In March 1989, £1 = N26.60; US\$1 = N15.46.

**Banking.** The Bank of Bhután was established in 1968. The headquarters are at Phuntsholing with 22 branches throughout the country. The Royal Monetary Authority, Thimphu, was founded in 1982 to act as Bhután's central bank. Deposits (Dec. 1987) N828m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 1,950m. kwh, and 23 towns and 93 villages had electricity.

**Minerals.** Large deposits of limestone, marble, dolomite, graphite, lead, copper, slate, coal, talc, gypsum, beryl, mica, pyrites and tufa have been found.

**Agriculture.** The area under cultivation in 1984 was some 126,000 hectares. The chief products (1986 production in 1,000 tonnes) are rice (63), millet (8), wheat (11), barley (5), maize (88), cardamom, potatoes (28), oranges (27), apples, handloom cloth, timber and yaks. Extensive and valuable forests abound.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 395,000; yaks (1985), 31,271; pigs, 62,000; sheep and goats, 55,000; poultry (1985), 179,521.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1987 there were about 400 small-scale cottage and industrial units and also a cement plant, a fruit processing factory, a tea-chest ply veneer factory, a resin and turpentine factory, a salt iodization plant and 3 distilleries.

**Commerce.** Trade with India dominates but timber, cardamom and liquor are also exported to the Middle East, Singapore and Western Europe.

Total trade between Bhután and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	...	...	14	175
Exports and re-exports from UK	109	76	411	12,464

**Tourism.** Tourism is the largest source of foreign exchange (1987, US\$2.04m. net). In 1987, 2,486 tourists visited Bhután.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were about 2,000 km of roads. In 1986, there were 3,630 vehicles, of which 716 were private cars and 1,697 buses, jeeps and trucks.

**Aviation.** (1987) There are 3 to 6 flights weekly by Druk-Air between Paro and Calcutta and a weekly return service from Paro to Dhaka.

**Post and Broadcasting.** A modern postal system was introduced in 1962. There are 56 general post offices and 30 branch post offices. In 1986 there were 943 km of telephone lines, 13 automatic exchanges and 1,945 telephones.

An international microwave link connects Thimphu to the Calcutta and Delhi satellite connexions. Thimphu and Phuntsholing are connected by telex to Delhi.

In 1986 there were 36 wireless stations for internal administrative communications, and 13 hydro-met stations, with an estimated 15,000 radio receivers. Bhután Broadcasting Service, Thimphu, broadcasts a daily programme in English, Shar-chopkha, Dzongkha and Nepáli.

**Newspapers.** The only weekly newspaper, *Kuensel*, began publication in Aug.

1986 to replace the government weekly bulletin. It is published in 3 languages (English, Dzongkha and Nepáli). Total circulation (1988) about 12,500.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court consists of 8 judges (2 elected by the National Assembly for 5-year terms) appointed by the King. There is a Magistrate's Court in each district, under a *Thrimpon*, from which appeal is to the High Court at Thimphu.

**Religion.** In 1988 there were 1,160 monks in the Central Monastic Body (Thimphu and Punakha) and 2,120 in the District Monk Bodies. The monks are headed by an elected Je Khempo (Head Abbot). The majority of the people are Mahayana Buddhists of the Drukpa subsect of the Kagyud School which was first introduced from Tibet during the 12th century. Hindus of Nepálese origin represent approximately 25% of population.

**Education.** In 1988 there were 42,446 pupils and 1,513 teachers in primary schools, 16,350 pupils and 695 teachers in junior high and high schools and 1,761 pupils and 150 teachers in technical, vocational and tertiary-level schools. Many students receive higher technical training in India, as well as under the UN Development Programme, the Colombo Plan, etc., in Australia, the Federal Republic of Germany, New Zealand, Japan, Singapore, the USA and UK.

**Health.** There were (1986) 28 hospitals, 46 dispensaries, 67 basic health units, 4 indigenous dispensaries, 5 leprosy hospitals, 1 mobile hospital, 1 health school and 15 malaria eradication centres. In 1988 beds totalled 915; there were 134 doctors and 541 paramedics.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVE

Of Bhután to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dasho Jigmi Thinley.

The Government of Bhután is in diplomatic relations with Bangladesh and India at ambassadorial level with resident missions in Thimphu. Honorary Consuls have also been appointed in Singapore, South Korea and Hong Kong (the latter also responsible for Macao).

## Further Reading

- Bhutan, Himalayan Kingdom.* Bhután Government, Thimphu, 1979  
 Aris, M., *Bhutan: The Early History of an Himalayan Kingdom.* Warminster, 1979  
 Chakravarti, B., *A Cultural History of Bhutan.* 2nd rev. ed., 2 vols. Chitteranjan, 1981  
 Collister, P., *Bhutan and the British.* London, 1987  
 Das, N., *The Dragon Country.* New Delhi, 1973  
 Mehra, G. N., *Bhutan: Land of the Peaceful Dragon.* Rev. ed. New Delhi, 1985  
 Rahul, R., *Royal Bhutan.* New Delhi, 1983  
 Ronaldshay, the Earl of, *Lands of the Thunderbolt.* 2nd ed. London, 1931  
 Rose, L. E., *The Politics of Bhutan.* Cornell Univ. Press, 1977  
 Rustomji, N., *Bhutan: The Dragon Kingdom in Crisis.* OUP, 1978  
 Verma, R., *India's Role in the Emergence of Contemporary Bhutan.* Delhi, 1988



# BOLIVIA

## República de Bolivia

*Capital:* Sucre

*Seat of Government:* La Paz

*Population:* 7m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$540 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Until 1884, when Bolivia was defeated by Chile, she had a strip bordering on the Pacific which contains extensive nitrate beds and at that time the port of Cobija (which no longer exists). She lost this area to Chile; but in Sept. 1953 Chile declared Arica a free port and, although it is no longer a free port for Bolivian imports, Bolivia still has certain privileges.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Bolivia is a landlocked state bounded north and east by Brazil, south by Paraguay and Argentina and west by Chile and Peru, with an area of some 424,165 sq. miles (1,098,581 sq. km).

The following table shows the area and population of the departments (the capitals of each are given in brackets):

<i>Departments</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Census 1976</i>	<i>Census 1982<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Per sq. km 1975</i>
La Paz (La Paz)	133,985	1,456,078	1,913,184	12.50
Cochabamba (Cochabamba)	55,631	720,952	908,674	15.57
Potosí (Potosí)	118,218	657,743	823,485	7.98
Santa Cruz (Santa Cruz)	370,621	710,724	942,986	1.36
Chuquisaca (Sucre)	51,524	358,516	435,406	9.69
Tarija (Tarija)	37,623	186,704	246,691	5.95
Oruro (Oruro)	53,588	310,409	385,121	6.93
Beni (Trinidad)	213,564	168,367	217,700	0.99
Pando (Cobija)	63,827	34,493	42,594	0.55
Total	1,098,581	4,687,718	5,915,841	4.85

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

Total population (estimate 1988) 7m. of whom 49% urban.

Population (estimate 1985) of the principal towns: La Paz, 992,592; Santa Cruz, 441,717; Cochabamba, 317,251; Oruro, 178,393; Potosí, 113,000; Sucre, 86,609; Tarija (1982), 54,001.

Spanish is the official and commercial language, but the majority of Indians speak Aymará (25.2%) or Quechua (34.4%).

**CLIMATE.** The very varied geography of Bolivia produces several different climates. The two most significant are the low-lying areas in the Amazon Basin, which are very warm and damp throughout the year, with heavy rainfall from Nov. to March, and the alti-plano, which is generally dry between May and Nov. with abundant sunshine, but the nights are cold in June and July, while the months from Dec. to March are the wettest. La Paz. Jan. 53°F (11.7°C), July 47°F (8.3°C). Annual rainfall 23" (574 mm). Sucre. Jan. 55°F (13°C), July 49°F (9.4°C). Annual rainfall 27" (675 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Republic of Bolivia was proclaimed on 6 Aug. 1825; its first constitution was adopted on 19 Nov. 1826.

La Paz is the actual capital and seat of the Government, but Sucre is the legal capital and the seat of the judiciary.

The following is a list of presidents since 1966 and the date on which they took office:

Gen. René Barrientos Ortuño (Constitutional President killed in air accident), 6 Aug. 1966–27 April 1969.  
 Dr Luis Adolfo Siles Salinas (deposed), 27 April 1969–26 Sept. 1969.  
 Gen. Alfredo Ovando Candia, 26 Sept. 1969–6 Oct. 1970.  
 Gen. Juan José Torres, 7 Oct. 1970–21 Aug. 1971.  
 Gen. Hugo Banzer Suarez, 21 Aug. 1971–21 July 1978.  
 Gen. Juan Pereda Asbun, 21 July 1978–24 Nov. 1978.  
 Gen. David Padilla Arancibia, 24 Nov. 1978–8 Aug. 1979.

Dr Walter Guevara Arze (deposed), 8 Aug. 1979–1 Nov. 1979.  
 Dr Lydia Gueiler Tejada (deposed), 16 Nov. 1979–17 July 1980.  
 Maj.-Gen. Luis García Meza Tejada (resigned), 18 July 1980–4 Aug. 1981.  
 Military Junta, 4 Aug. 1981–4 Sept. 1981.  
 Gen. Celso Torrelio Villa, (resigned), 4 Sept. 1981–19 July 1982.  
 Brig.-Gen. Guido Vildoso Calderón, 21 July 1982–10 Oct. 1982.  
 Dr Hernan Siles Zuazo, 10 Oct. 1982–6 Aug. 1985.

Following elections in July 1979 which were inconclusive an interim President was chosen with the agreement of the three parties who had polled most votes. For details of political history 1970–78 see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1980–81 and for the period 1978–1980 see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1983–84.

The President and Vice-President are elected by universal suffrage for a four year term. The President appoints the members of his Cabinet from candidates nominated by the Senate. There is a bicameral legislature; the Senate comprises 27 members, 3 from each department, and the Chamber of Deputies 117 members, all elected for 4 years. Elections to the National Congress were held on 14 July 1985. The *Movimiento Nacionalista Revolucionario* gained 59 seats; *Alianza Democrática Nacionalista*, 51; *Movimiento de la Izquierda Revolucionaria*, 16; *Movimiento Nacionalista Revolucionario de Izquierda*, 8.

The Cabinet was composed as follows in Jan. 1988:

*President*: Dr Victor Paz Esstensoro (sworn in 6 Aug. 1985).

*Foreign Affairs and Culture*: Dr Guillermo Bedregal Gutierrez. *Interior, Migration and Justice*: Dr Juan Carlos Duran Saucedo. *National Defence*: Alfonso Revollo. *Finance*: Juan Cariaga. *Planning and Co-ordination*: Gonzalo Sanchez de Lozada. *Education*: Enrique Ipinia. *Transport and Communications*: Andres Petricevich. *Industry and Commerce*: Fernando Moscoso. *Labour*: Dr Alfredo Franco Guachalla. *Health*: Dr Carlos Perez. *Minerals and Metallurgy*: Jaime Villalobos. *Agriculture*: Jose Guillermo Justiniano S. *Energy and Hydrocarbons*: Fernando Illanes. *Housing*: Franklin Anaya. *Information*: Hernan Antelo. *Aeronautics*: Jaime Zegada Hurtado. *Secretary-General*: Dr Walter Zuleta Roncali.

*National flag*: Three horizontal stripes of red, yellow, green, with the arms of Bolivia in the centre.

*National anthem*: Bolivianos, el hado propicio (words by I. de Sanjinés; tune by B. Vincenti).

*Local Government*: The republic is divided into 9 departments, established in Jan. 1826, with 98 provinces administered by sub-prefects, and 1,272 cantons administered by corregidores. The supreme authority in each department is vested in a prefect appointed by the President.

**DEFENCE.** Bolivia is divided into 8 military districts, with divisional headquarters in Viacha, Oruro, Villa Montes, Camiri, Roboré, Riberalta, Santa Cruz, Cochabamba; regional HQ are located at La Paz, Sucre, Tarija, Potosí, Trinidad and Cobija. There is selective conscription for 12 months at the age of 18 years.

**Army.** The Army consists of 8 cavalry groups, 1 motorized infantry regiment, 22 infantry, 1 artillery and 6 engineer battalions. Equipment, 24 EE-9 Cascavel armoured cars. Strength (1989) 20,000.

**Navy.** A small Navy exists for river and lake patrol comprising 10 patrol craft operating in Lake Titicaca, Beni river systems and the Bolivia-Paraguay 6,000-mile river systems, 1 transport (a gift from Venezuela for use to and from Bolivian free zones in Argentina and Uruguay) and 2 hospital ships (one a gift from USA). There are two armed T-6 patrol aircraft and 2 Cessna light transports.

Personnel in 1989 totalled 3,600 officers and men including marines. Most training of officers and petty officers is carried out in Argentina. The junior ratings are almost entirely converted soldiers.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, established in 1923, has 3 combat-capable Groups, 2 equipped with T-33 armed jet trainers, and one with armed T6s, SF.260s and Hughes 500 helicopters, for counter-insurgency operations. A search and rescue helicopter Group has 15 Brazilian-assembled Lamas and 20 UH-1 Iroquois. Other types in service include Brazilian T-23 Uirapuru and American T-41 primary trainers and Swiss turboprop-powered Pilatus PC-7 basic trainers, 1 Electra four-turboprop transport, 6 Fokker F.27 and 4 Israeli-built Arava twin-turboprop light transports, 2 Convair transports, 2 C-130H/L-100-30 Hercules, 6 C-47s, 15 Turbo-Porters and about 35 Cessna single- and twin-engined light aircraft. Personnel strength (1989) about 4,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Bolivia is a member of UN, OAS, LAIA (formerly LAFTA), the Andean Group and the Amazon Pact.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditures in Im. *pesos bolivianos* balanced as follows: In 1982 there was a projected budget deficit of \$b.110,959m.

**Currency.** On 1 Jan. 1987 the *boliviano* (\$b. equal to Im. *pesos*) was introduced. Exchange rates were \$b.2.53 = US\$1 and \$b.4.35 = £1 in March 1989.

**Banking.** In 1986 the principal banks were Banco Central de Bolivia, Banco del Estado, Banco de Santa Cruz de la Sierra, Banco Agrícola de Bolivia, Banco Boliviano Americano, Banco Hipotecario Nacional, Banco Mercantil, Banco Minero de Bolivia, Banco Nacional de Bolivia, Banco do Brasil, Banco de la Nacion Argentina, Banco Popular del Peru, Banco Industrial S.A., First National City Bank, Banco del Progress Nacional, Bank of America and Bank of Boston.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is used by the administration and prescribed by law, but the old Spanish system is also employed.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power production is expanding. Installed capacity was estimated at 490,000 kw. in 1985. Estimated production from all sources (1986), 2,080m. kwh. Supply 110 volts in La Paz but 220 volts in most other cities; 60 Hz.

**Oil and Gas.** There are petroleum and natural gas deposits in the Santa Cruz-Camiri areas. A pipeline for crude oil connects Caranda (Santa Cruz) with the Pacific coast at Arica (Chile) and a natural gas pipeline to Argentina was inaugurated in May 1972. All production, refining and internal distribution is now in the hands of *Yacimientos Petroliferos Fiscales Bolivianos* (the State Petroleum Organization). Total production of crude oil in 1988 was estimated at 900,000 tonnes. Production of natural gas in 1981 was estimated at 175,478m. cu. ft.

**Minerals.** Mining is the most important industry, accounting for about 69% of the foreign-exchange earnings. About half the mineral mined is tin. Tin mines are at altitudes of from 12,000 to 18,000 ft, where few except native Indians can stand the conditions; transport is costly. Bolivian tin is extracted by shaft-mining, frequently very deep; the ore yields only 0.7% or less of tin and is very refractory; tin is exported in concentrates called *barrilla*, through Pacific ports for refining. Smelt-



ing capacity was increased in 1980 and it is planned to smelt all the ores from the State Mining Co. but complex ores still have to be exported for smelting. Tin production in 1984 was 17,875 tonnes.

The state industry is being run by the *Corporación Minera de Bolivia* (COMIBOL) employing about 23,000 in mining and administrative capacities.

Alluvial gold deposits in the Alto Beni region are being exploited. Production (1984) 1.1 tonne.

Foreign firms are seeking exploration rights for uranium and a small uranium processing plant was opened in Oct. 1980 at Cotaje (Potosí province). Large deposits of salt are found near Lake Poopó and in the south of Bolivia.

**Agriculture.** The extensive and still largely undeveloped region east of the Andes comprises about three-quarters of the entire area of the country, and since the agrarian reform of 1953 sugar-cane, rice and cotton have been grown in this *Oriente* in increasing abundance, reaching self-sufficiency in all these products. Output in 1,000 tonnes in 1986 was: Sugar-cane, 1,850; rice, 137; coffee, 19; maize, 457; potatoes, 697; wheat, 81; cotton (lint), 2; cocoa, 3. Cocaine is by far the largest crop grown.

Livestock: In 1987 there were 5.38m. head of cattle, mostly in the Santa Cruz and Beni departments; some are exported to Peru; horses, 311,000; asses, 600,000; pigs, 1.69m.; sheep, 9.5m.; goats, 2.3m.; poultry, 8m.

**Forestry.** Tropical forests with woods ranging from the 'iron tree' to the light *palo de balsa* are beginning to be exploited. In 1962 the Forestry Service announced proved reserves of 46.3m. hectares, plus a similar amount available for immediate development.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There are few industrial establishments and the country relies on imports for the supply of many consumer goods. However a new investment law passed in 1971 provides incentives and protection for new investment, both foreign and domestic, and for reinvestment in various fields including manufacturing industry, mining, agriculture, construction and tourism.

**Commerce.** The value of imports and exports in US\$1,000 has been as follows:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	833,160	917,081	496,300	451,100	713,800	...
Exports	942,000	995,298	898,500	786,700	609,500	672,500

Chief exports in 1983 (in US\$1m.): Natural gas, 378.2; tin, 207.9; silver, 58.3; zinc, 33.4; wolfram, 20; coffee, 12.9; sugar, 12.3.

Chief imports in 1983 (in US\$1m.): Raw materials for industry, 211.3; capital goods for industry, 152.4; consumer goods, 52.3; transport equipment, 52.2; construction materials, 38.4.

Imports and exports (in US\$1m.), by country, 1984:

Country	Imports	Exports	Country	Imports	Exports
Argentina	97.2	271.1	Japan	22.9	—
Brazil	154.6	14.7	Korea	125.5	—
Chile	16.2	—	Peru	—	14.8
Federal Republic of Germany	31.5	38.6	UK	24.9	24.6
France	—	23.9	USA	116.1	145.1

Total exports, 1984, of all minerals, in concentrates, ingots or solder, were valued at US\$363.9m.

Bolivia having no seaport, imports and exports pass chiefly through the ports of Arica and Antofagasta in Chile, Mollendo-Matarani in Peru, through La Quiaca on the Bolivian-Argentine border and through river-ports on the rivers flowing into the Amazon.

Total trade between Bolivia and UK (British Department of Trade returns in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	20,052	14,434	10,225	14,799	13,224
Exports and re-exports from UK	17,170	10,443	3,663	3,658	6,029

**Tourism.** There were 133,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** A highway, in poor condition, 497 km long, runs from Cochabamba to the lowland farming region of Santa Cruz. La Paz and Oruro are also connected by a metalled road. Of other main highways (unmetalled) there is one from La Paz through Guaqui into Peru, another from La Paz, *via* Oruro, Potosí, Tarija and Bermejo, into Argentina, with branches to Cochabamba, Sucre and Camiri, passable throughout the year except at the height of the rainy season, and others from Villazón to Villa Montes *via* Tarija, passable during the dry season. The total length of the road system is 41,000 km (1984). Motor vehicles in use in 1984, 168,600, including 43,677 cars.

**Railways.** In 1964 Bolivian National Railways (ENFE) was formed by the amalgamation of the Bolivian Government Railways, Bolivian Railway Co. and the Bolivian section of the Antofagasta (Chile) & Bolivia Railway. The Guaqui-La Paz Railway, formerly operated by Peru, became part of ENFE in 1973 and the privately-owned Marchacamarca Uncia mineral line was taken over in 1987. Access to the Pacific is by 3 routes: To Antofagasta and Arica in Chile, and to Mollendo in Peru *via* Guaqui, the Lake Titicaca train ferry to Puno (Peru), then rail to the coast. Construction began in 1978 of a 150-km line linking Puno with Desaguadero on the Bolivian border which would by-pass the train ferry, though gauge difference would still prevent through running to Peru. Current network totals 3,642 km of metre gauge, comprising unconnected Eastern (1,386 km) and Western (2,257 km) systems. In 1987 the railways carried 1.4m. passengers and 982,000 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** The 2 international airports are El Alto (8½ miles from La Paz) and Viru Viru (10 miles from Santa Cruz). The national airline is Lloyd Aéreo Boliviano. The airline runs regular services between La Paz and Lima, São Paulo, Buenos Aires, Miami, Caracas, Salta and Arica as well as many internal services. Eastern Airways runs regular flights between La Paz, Buenos Aires, Santiago and Asunción linking Bolivia to the USA. Lufthansa links Bolivia with Europe. Other airlines serving Bolivia are Aerolineas Argentinas, Cruzeiro, Aero Peru and Lan Chile.

**Shipping.** Traffic on Lake Titicaca between Guaqui and Puno is carried on by the steamers of the Peruvian Corporation. About 12,000 miles of rivers, in 4 main systems (Beni, Pilcomayo, Titicaca-Desaguadero, Mamoré), are open to navigation by light-draught vessels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In Bolivia there were, in 1978, 458 post offices, of these, 205 provided telegraph and telephone services together with a further 245 offices for telegraph and telephone service only. There is telephone service in the cities of La Paz, Cochabamba, Oruro, Sucre, Potosí, Santa Cruz, Tarija, Camiri, Tupiza, Villazon, Riberalta and Trinidad with (1983), 204,747 telephones. There were (1987) about 85 radio stations, the majority of which are local and commercial. There is a commercial government television service. There are 4 private television stations and 1 University station (educational channel) in La Paz.

**Cinemas.** In 1986 there were 29 cinemas in La Paz and some 15 in other cities.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 7 daily newspapers in La Paz, 2 in Oruro, and 1 in Cochabamba. Several other towns have regular newspapers devoted to local news, but most of them appear only a few times a week. An economic monthly journal *Revista Economica* and 4 daily newspapers are produced in Santa Cruz.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Supreme Court, superior district courts (of 5 or 7 judges) and courts of local justice. The Supreme Court, with headquarters at Sucre, is divided into two sections, civil and criminal, of 5 justices each, with the Chief Justice presiding over both. Members of the Supreme Court are chosen on a two-thirds vote of Congress.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic is the recognized religion of the state; the free exercise of other forms of worship is permitted. The Catholic Church is under a cardinal (in Sucre), an archbishop (in La Paz), 6 bishops (Cochabamba, Santa Cruz, Oruro, Potosí, Riberalta and Tarija) and vicars apostolic (titular bishops resident in Cueva, Trinidad, San Ignacio de Velasco, Riberalta and Rurrenabaque).

By a law of 11 Oct. 1911 all marriages must be celebrated by the civil authorities. Divorce is permitted by a law enacted on 15 April 1932.

**Education.** Primary instruction is free and obligatory between the ages of 6 and 14 years. In 1981 there were 1.1m. pupils and 51,000 teachers in 10,662 primary and elementary schools.

At Sucre, Oruro, Potosí, Cochabamba, Santa Cruz, Tarija, Trinidad and La Paz are universities; La Paz is the most important of them while the San Francisco Xavier University at Sucre is one of the oldest in America, founded in 1624.

**Health.** In 1972 there were 2,143 doctors.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Bolivia in Great Britain (106 Eaton Sq., London, SW1W 9AD)

*Ambassador:* Eduardo Arauco Paz (accredited 15 Nov. 1985).

Of Great Britain in Bolivia (Avenida Arce 2732–2754, La Paz)

*Ambassador:* C. J. Sharkey, CMG, MBE.

Of Bolivia in the USA (3014 Massachusetts Ave, NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Carlos E. Delius.

Of the USA in Bolivia (Banco Popular Del Peru Bldg, La Paz)

*Ambassador:* Edward M. Rowell.

Of Bolivia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Jorge Gumucio Granier.

### Further Reading

*Anuario Geográfico y Estadístico de la República de Bolivia*

*Anuario del Comercio Exterior de Bolivia*

*Boletín Mensual de Información Estadística*

Dunkerley, J., *Rebellion in the Veins: Political Struggle in Bolivia 1952–1982*. London, 1984

Fifer, J. V., *Bolivia: Land, Location and Politics Since 1825*. CUP, 1972

Guillermo, L., *A History of the Bolivian Labour Movement 1848–1971*. CUP, 1977

Klein, H., *Bolivia: The Evolution of a Multi-Ethnic Society*. OUP, 1982

Yaegar, G. M., *Bolivia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988



# BOTSWANA

*Capital:* Gaborone

*Population:* 1.21m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$840 (1986)

**HISTORY.** In 1885 the territory was declared to be within the British sphere; in 1889 it was included in the sphere of the British South Africa Company, but was never administered by the company; in 1890 a Resident Commissioner was appointed, and in 1895, on the annexation of the Crown Colony of British Bechuanaland to the Cape of Good Hope, the British Government was in favour of transferring the Protectorate to the BSA Company, but the three major chiefs of the Bakwena, the Bangwaketse and the Bamangwato went to England to protest against this proposal, and agreement was reached that their country should remain a British Protectorate if they ceded a strip of land on the eastern side of the country for railway construction. This railway was built in 1896-97.

On 30 Sept. 1966 the Bechuanaland Protectorate became an independent and sovereign member of the Commonwealth under the name of the Republic of Botswana.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Botswana is bounded west and north by South-West Africa (Namibia), north-east by Zambia and Zimbabwe and east and south by the Republic of South Africa. Area about 222,000 sq. miles (582,000 sq. km); population, estimate 1988, was 1,211,816 (census, 1981, 941,027).

The main business centres (with estimated population, 1988) are Gaborone (110,973), Mahalapye (100,902), Serowe (93,008), Tutume (84,524), Bobonong (53,572), Francistown (49,396), Selebi-Phikwe (46,490), Boteti (31,725), Lobatse (25,689), Palapye (15,775), Jwaneng (12,569), Tlokweng (10,937), Orapa (8,330).

The seat of government is at Gaborone.

The official language is English; the national language is Setswana.

**CLIMATE.** Most of the country is sub-tropical, but there are arid areas in the south and west. In winter, days are warm and nights cold, with occasional frosts. Summer heat is tempered by prevailing north-east winds. Rainfall comes mainly in summer, from Oct. to April, while the rest of the year is almost completely dry with very high sunshine amounts. Gaborone. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 55°F (12.8°C). Annual rainfall 21" (538 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of the republic is based on the Constitution which came into effect in March 1965, with some minor alterations.

The executive rests with the President of the Republic who is responsible to the National Assembly.

The National Assembly consists of 38 members, 34 elected by universal suffrage. The general election, held in Sept. 1984, returned 28 members of the Botswana Democratic Party, 5 Botswana National Front and 1 Botswana People's Party.

The President is an *ex-officio* member of the Assembly. If the President is already a member of the National Assembly, a by-election will be held in that constituency.

There is also a House of Chiefs to advise the Government. It consists of the Chiefs of the 8 tribes who were autonomous during the days of the British protectorate, and 4 members elected by and from among the sub-chiefs in 4 districts.

The first President of Botswana, who was re-elected 3 times, was Sir Seretse Khama, KBE, who died 13 July 1980.

*President of the Republic:* Dr Quett Ketumile Joni Masire (re-elected 1984).

In Dec. 1988 the Cabinet was as follows:

*Vice President and Minister of Finance and Development Planning:* P. S. Mmusi. *Presidential Affairs and Public Administration:* P. H. K. Kedikilwe. *External Affairs:* Dr G. K. T. Chiepe. *Health:* J. L. T. Mothibamele. *Agriculture:*

D. K. Kwelagobe. *Local Government and Lands*: P. Balopi. *Works and Communications*: C. J. Butale. *Commerce and Industry*: M. P. K. Nwako. *Mineral Resources and Water Affairs*: A. M. Mogwe. *Education*: K. P. Morake. *Home Affairs*: E. M. K. Kgabo. *Assistant Minister of Finance and Development Planning*: O. I. Chilume. *Assistant Ministers of Local Government and Lands*: M. R. Tshipinare and R. K. Sebego. *Assistant Minister of Agriculture*: G. Oteng. *Attorney-General*: Moleleki Mokama. *Speaker of the National Assembly*: J. G. Haskins.

*National flag*: Light blue with a horizontal black stripe, edged white, across the centre.

*Local Government*. Local government is carried out by 9 district councils and 4 town councils. Revenue is obtained mainly from sales taxes; from rates in the towns and from central government subventions in the districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army**. A defence force has been created for border control and comprises 5 infantry, 1 armoured car, 1 reconnaissance and 1 engineer companies. Personnel (1989) 3,100.

**Air Force**. Equipment includes 9 BAC Strikemaster light strike aircraft, 5 Britten-Norman Defender armed light transports for border patrol, counter-insurgency and casualty evacuation duties, 5 Bulldog piston-engined basic trainers, 2 CN-235 turboprop-powered medium transports, 2 Skyvan turboprop passenger/cargo transports, 2 Trislander 3-engined transports, 2 Ecureuil helicopters and 2 Cessna 152 light aircraft. Personnel (1989) about 150.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership**. Botswana is a member of UN, OAU, SADCC, the Non-Aligned Movement, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning**. Development Plan 1986–91 envisages capital expenditure of P1,200m.

**Budget**. The 1987–88 budget envisaged expenditure of P1,081m., revenue was expected to rise to P1,428m. The budget allowed for P5,000m. for drought relief.

**Currency**. The currency was formerly the South African Rand but in Aug. 1976 a new currency, the *pula*, was introduced (P3.46 = £1 sterling and P2.01 = US\$1 in March 1989).

**Banking**. There were (1986) 3 commercial banks (Barclays Bank of Botswana Ltd, Standard Chartered Bank Botswana Ltd and Bank of Credit and Commerce (Botswana) Ltd) with 34 branches and sub-branches, and 44 agencies. The Bank of Botswana, established in 1976, is the central bank. The National Development Bank, founded in 1964, has 6 regional offices and agricultural, industrial and commercial development divisions. The government-owned Botswana Savings Bank operates through 64 post offices.

Total assets and liabilities of the 3 commercial banks at 31 Dec. 1987, P601.1m. and of the Bank of Botswana, P3,163.7m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity**. The coal-fired power station at Morupule supplies all major cities. Production (1986) 533m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Water**. Surface water resources are about 18,000m. cu. metres a year. Nearly all flows into northern districts from Angola through the Okavango and Kwando river systems. The Zambezi, also in the north, provides irrigation in Chobe District. In the south-east, there are dams to exploit the ephemeral flow of the tributaries of the Limpopo. 80% of the land has no surface water, and must be served by boreholes.

**Minerals.** An important part of government revenue comes from the diamond mines at Orapa and Jwaneng and the nickel-copper complex at Selebi-Phikwe. An open-pit coalmine has been developed at Morupule. Mineral production 1987: Diamonds, 13,324,000 carats; copper-nickel, 43,238 tonnes (value P81,374,000); coal, 579,409 tonnes (P10,332,000).

Mineral resources in north-east Botswana are being investigated, including salt and soda ash on the Sua Pan of the Makgadikgadi Salt Pans, nickel-copper at Selkirk and Phoenix, copper south of Maun and close to Ghanzi, and coal at Mmamabula.

**Agriculture.** Cattle-rearing is the chief industry, and the country is more a pastoral than an agricultural one, crops depending entirely upon the rainfall. In 1987, 295,000 hectares were planted with crops. In 1987 the number of cattle was 2.3m.; goats, 1.05m.; sheep, 215,000; poultry, 1m. Meat and meat products (1986) exported P144,157,165, sold locally P7,469,859.

Production (1987, in 1,000 tonnes): Maize, 2; sorghum, 8; groundnuts, 1; millet, 1; wheat, 1; roots and tubers, 7; sunflower seeds, 1; pulses, 14; seed cotton, 1; vegetables, 16; fruit, 11.

**Forestry.** There are forest nurseries and plantations. Concessions have been granted to harvest 7,500 cu. metres in Kasane and Chobe Forest Reserves and up to 2,500 cu. metres in the Masame area.

**WILDLIFE.** About 17% of land is set aside for wildlife preservation. In 1986 there were 4 national parks, 6 game reserves, 3 game sanctuaries and 40 controlled hunting areas for photographic and game viewing safaris and recreational (safari) and subsistence hunting.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE.

**Labour.** In 1987 there were 80,449 Batswana employed in the mines of the Republic of South Africa. The estimated total number of paid employees in all sectors in Botswana in Sept. 1986 was 130,100.

**Commerce.** In 1986 imports totalled P1,331,619 and exports P1,613,838. Of imports, 83% come from the Republic of South Africa, 8% from Zimbabwe. Exports are mainly diamonds (to Switzerland), copper-nickel matte (to USA), beef and beef products (to EEC).

Imports (1986 in P1,000) included vehicles and transport equipment, 220,902; food, beverages and tobacco, 218,115; machinery and electrical equipment, 206,239; Exports were mainly diamonds, 1,196,686. Imports in 1986 were mainly from the South African customs area (P1,021,984,000) and exports mainly to Europe (P1,413,982,000).

Botswana is a member of the South African customs union with Lesotho, the Republic of South Africa and Swaziland.

Total trade between Botswana and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	14,913	20,998	16,652	11,836	6,942
Exports and re-exports from UK	9,015	6,680	8,629	10,275	26,763

**Tourism.** There were 99,210 foreign visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 Dec. 1985, 1,914 km of road were bitumen-surfaced, 1,255 km gravel and about 4,860 km earth. In 1987 there were 38,520 registered motor vehicles including 11,286 cars, 13,412 light delivery vans and 5,960 lorries.

**Railways.** The main line from Mafikeng in Bophuthatswana to Bulawayo in Zimbabwe traverses Botswana. With two short branches the total is 708 km. These lines, formerly operated by National Railways of Zimbabwe, were taken over by the new Botswana Railways organization in 1987. In 1986-87 railways carried 1,116m. tonne-km and 257m. passenger-km.



**Aviation.** The Seretse Khama International Airport at Gaborone opened in 1984. Regular international flights are flown by Air Botswana, Air Zimbabwe, Royal Swazi Air, Air Zambia, Air Tanzania, Air Malawi, Kenya Airways, Lesotho Airways, South African Airways and British Airways into Gaborone. Air Botswana carried an estimated 53,000 passengers, 420,000 kg of cargo and 94,656 kg of mail in 1984.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 66 post offices and 72 agencies. There were 12,511 telephones installed in 1987. Radio Botswana broadcasts 119 hours a week in English and Setswana.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there was 1 daily newspaper, the bilingual (Setswana-English) *Daily News*, which is published by the Department of Information and Broadcasting; circulation, 36,000. There are 3 other privately-owned newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Botswana Court of Appeal was established in 1954. It has jurisdiction in respect of criminal and civil appeals emanating from the High Court of Botswana and has jurisdiction in all criminal and civil causes and proceedings. Subordinate courts and traditional courts are in each of the 12 administrative districts. The police force was 2,359 in 1985.

**Religion.** Freedom of worship is guaranteed under the Constitution. Christian denominations include the United Congregational Church of Southern Africa, the Catholic Church, Anglican, Lutheran, Dutch Reformed, Seventh Day Adventist, Assemblies of God, Methodist and Quaker groups. Non-Christian religions include Bahais, Moslems and Hindus.

**Education** (1985). Primary education has been free since 1980 and secondary education from 1988. In 1987 enrolment in primary schools was 239,324 with 7,778 teachers, and in secondary schools 35,462 with 1,607 teachers. There were 1,332 students with 78 teachers in teacher training colleges and Molepolole College of Education had 497 students with 28 teachers. There is a Polytechnic and an Auto Trades Training School. Throughout the country, Brigades provide lower level vocational training. The Department of Non-Formal Education offers secondary level correspondence courses and is the executing agency for the National Literacy Programme. The University of Botswana had 1,700 full-time students in 1986-87.

In 1987, 63% of those over 15 years could read and write.

**Health** (1986). There were 13 general hospitals, a mental hospital, 7 health centres, 81 clinics and 246 health posts. There were also 438 stops for mobile health teams. In 1986 there were 156 registered medical practitioners, 14 dentists, and 1,530 nurses. The health facilities are the concern of central and local government, medical missions, mining companies and voluntary organizations.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Botswana in Great Britain (6 Stratford Pl., London, W1N 9AE)  
*High Commissioner:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Botswana (Private Bag 0023, Gaborone)  
*High Commissioner:* Brian Smith.

Of Botswana in the USA (4301 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Serara T. Ketlogetswe.

Of the USA in Botswana (PO Box 90, Gaborone)  
*Ambassador:* Natale H. Bellocchi.

Of Botswana to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Legwaila Joseph Legwaila.

### Further Reading

*General Information:* The Director of Information and Broadcasting, PO Box 0060, Gaborone, Botswana publishes *Botswana Handbook*, the monthly *Kutlwano*, *The Botswana Daily News*, *Botswana in Brief* and *Botswana Up To Date*.

*Botswana '86: An Official Handbook*. Department of Information and Broadcasting, Gaborone, 1986

*Statistical Bulletins*. Quarterly. Central Statistical Office, Gaborone

*Report on the Population Census, 1981*. Government Printer, Gaborone, 1982

Campbell, A. C., *The Guide to Botswana*. Gaborone, 1980

Colclough, C. and McCarthy, S., *The Political Economy of Botswana*. OUP, 1980

Harvey, C., (ed.) *Papers on the Economy of Botswana*. London and Nairobi, 1981

Parson, J., *Botswana: Liberal Democracy and Labour Reserve in Southern Africa*. Aldershot, 1984

# BRAZIL

*Capital:* Brasília, DF

*Population:* 144.3m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,740 (1986)

## República Federativa do Brasil

**HISTORY.** Brazil was discovered on 22 April 1500 by the Portuguese Admiral Pedro Alvares Cabral, and thus became a Portuguese settlement; in 1815 the colony was declared 'a kingdom', and it was proclaimed an independent Empire in 1822. The monarchy was overthrown in 1889 and a republic declared. Following a *coup* in 1964 the armed forces retained overall control until civilian government was restored on 15 March 1985.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Brazil is bounded east by the Atlantic and on its northern, western and southern borders by all the South American countries except Chile and Ecuador. The area is 8,511,965 sq. km (3,286,487 sq. miles) including 55,457 sq. km of inland water. Population as at 1 Sept. 1980 (census) and 1 July 1987 (estimate):

<i>Federal Unit and Capital</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Estimate 1987</i>
North	3,581,180 <sup>1</sup>	5,880,268	8,139,900
Rondônia (Pôrto Velho)	243,044	491,069	981,800
Acre (Rio Branco)	152,589	301,303	386,200
Amazonas (Manaus)	1,564,445	1,430,089	1,842,800
Roraima (Boa Vista)	230,104	79,159	109,500
Pará (Belém)	1,248,042	3,403,391	4,587,200
Amapá (Macapá)	140,276	175,257	232,400
North-east	1,548,672 <sup>2</sup>	34,812,356	40,528,800
Maranhão (São Luís)	328,663	3,996,404	4,864,600
Piauí (Teresina)	250,934	2,139,021	2,517,900
Ceará (Fortaleza)	148,016	5,288,253	6,122,500
Rio Grande do Norte (Natal)	53,015	1,898,172	2,194,500
Paraíba (João Pessoa)	56,372	2,770,176	3,104,500
Pernambuco (Recife)	98,281	6,141,993	6,990,300 <sup>3</sup>
Alagoas (Maceió)	27,731	1,982,591	2,302,800
Fernando de Noronha <sup>4</sup>	26	1,279	...
Sergipe (Aracajú)	21,994	1,140,121	1,345,100
Bahia (Salvador)	561,026	9,454,346	11,086,600
South-east:	924,935	51,734,125	61,691,400
Minas Gerais (Belo Horizonte)	587,172	13,378,553	15,099,700
Espírito Santo <sup>5</sup> (Vitória)	45,597	2,023,340	2,382,000
Rio de Janeiro (Rio de Janeiro) <sup>6</sup>	44,268	11,291,520	13,267,100
São Paulo (São Paulo)	247,898	25,040,712	30,942,600
South	577,723	19,031,162	21,515,200
Parana (Curitiba)	199,554	7,629,392	8,530,000
Santa Catarina (Florianópolis)	95,985	3,627,933	4,235,800
Rio Grande do Sul (Pôrto Alegre)	282,184	7,773,837	8,749,400
Central West	1,879,455	7,544,795	9,576,900
Mato Grosso (Cuiabá) <sup>7</sup>	881,001	1,138,691	1,580,900
Mato Grosso do Sul (Campo Grande) <sup>7</sup>	350,548	1,369,567	1,673,500
Goiás (Goiânia)	642,092	3,859,602	4,638,800
Distrito Federal (Brasília)	5,814	1,176,935	1,683,700
Total	8,511,965	119,002,706	141,452,200

For notes see p. 230.



Population (1988) 144,262,000; density, 17 per sq. km.

The 1980 census showed 59,123,361 males and 59,879,345 females. The urban population comprised 72.8% in 1986.

The language is Portuguese.

Population of principal cities (1980 census):

São Paulo	7,032,547	Brasília	410,999	São José dos	
Rio de Janeiro	5,090,700	Santos	410,933	Campos	268,034
Salvador	1,491,642	Guarulhos	426,693	Olinda	266,751
Belo Horizonte	1,441,567	Niterói	382,736	Londrina	257,899
Recife	1,183,391	São Bernardo do		Sorocaba	254,672
Porto Alegre	1,114,867	Campo	381,097	Uberlândia	230,185
Curitiba	842,818	Natal	376,446	Diadema	228,660
Belém	755,984	Maceió	375,771	Feira de Santana	227,004
Goiânia	702,858	Teresina	339,042	Campina Grande	222,102
Fortaleza	647,917	Duque de Caxias	306,243	Jundiaí	221,888
Manaus	611,763	Ribeirão Preto	300,828	São Gonçalo	221,591
Campinas	566,627	Juiz de Fora	299,432	Joinville	216,986
Santo André	549,556	João Pessoa	290,247	Canoas	213,999
Nova Iguaçu	491,766	Aracaju	287,934	São João de Meriti	210,574
Osasco	474,543	Campo Grande	282,857	Mauá	205,740

The principal metropolitan areas (estimate, 1986) were São Paulo (15,784,022), Rio de Janeiro (10,489,360), Belo Horizonte (3,213,051), Recife (2,767,221), Porto Alegre (2,704,919), Salvador (2,182,615), Fortaleza (1,936,759), Curitiba (1,907,904) and Belém (1,124,788).

**CLIMATE.** Because of its latitude, the climate is predominantly tropical, but factors such as altitude, prevailing winds and distance from the sea cause certain variations, though temperatures are not notably extreme. In tropical parts, winters are dry and summers wet, while in Amazonia conditions are constantly warm and humid. The N.E. sertao is hot and arid, with frequent droughts. In the south and east, spring and autumn are sunny and warm, summers are hot, but winters can be cold when polar air-masses impinge. Brasília. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 64" (1,600 mm). Bahia. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 76" (1,900 mm). Belém. Jan. 79°F (26°C), July 79°F (26°C). Annual rainfall 97" (2,438 mm). Manaus. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 72" (1,811 mm). Recife. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 75°F (24°C). Annual rainfall 64" (1,610 mm). Rio de Janeiro. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,082 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present Constitution came into force on 5 Oct. 1988, the eighth since independence from the Portuguese in 1822. The present Constitution grants powers to the President to issue decree-laws on matters connected with the economy and national security; it gives the President authority to intervene in any of the 23 states without consultation with Congress and the right to declare a state of siege and to rule by decree. President and Vice-President are elected for a 6-year term and are not immediately re-eligible.

Congress consists of a 69-member Senate (3 Senators per state) and a 487-member Chamber of Deputies. The Senate is two-thirds directly elected (50% of these elected for 8 years in rotation) and one-third indirectly elected. Following partial elections held on 15 Nov. 1986, the *Partido do Movimento Democrático Brasileiro* (PMDB) held 44 seats, its ally the *Partido da Frente Liberal* (PLL) 16 seats, and others 12 seats in the Senate. The Chamber of Deputies is elected by

<sup>1</sup> Including litigious area between states of Amazonas and Pará (2,680 sq. km).

<sup>2</sup> Including litigious area between states of Piauí and Ceará (2,614 sq. km).

<sup>3</sup> Including population of Fernando de Noronha.

<sup>4</sup> The archipelago comprises the main isle (of the same name), Rocas atoll and the islets of São Pedro and São Paulo.

<sup>5</sup> Including the islands of Trindade and Martin Vaz.

<sup>6</sup> The former States of Rio de Janeiro and Guanabara were consolidated, from 15 March 1975, into a single State of Rio de Janeiro.

<sup>7</sup> The former state of Mato Grosso was divided into 2 new states from 1 Jan 1979.

universal franchise for 4 years. At the General Election held on 15 Nov. 1986, the PMDB won 259 seats in the Chamber, the PFL 115 seats, and others 113 seats.

Voting is voluntary from 16 and compulsory for men and women between the ages of 18 and 65 and optional for persons over 65. Enlisted men (who numbered 339,849 at the 1980 census) may not vote. The Constitutional Amendment number 25 of 15 May 1985 granted illiterate persons (until then disenfranchised) the right to vote and also provided for the direct election of the President.

Former Presidents since 1956 have been as follows:

Juscelino Kubitschek de Oliveira, 31 Jan. 1956–31 Jan. 1961.	Marshal Artur da Costa e Silva, 15 March 1967–31 Aug. 1969 (resigned).
Jânio da Silva Quadros, 31 Jan. 1961–25 Aug. 1961 (resigned).	Gen. Emilio Garrastazu Medici, 30 Oct. 1969–15 March 1974.
João Belchior Marques Goulart, 7 Sept. 1961–31 March 1964 (deposed).	Gen. Ernesto Geisel, 15 March 1974–15 March 1979.
Marshal Humberto de Alencar Castelo Branco, 15 April 1964–15 March 1967.	Gen. João Baptista de Oliveira Figueiredo, 15 March 1979–15 March 1985.

*President of the Republic:* José Sarney, assumed office 15 March 1985 and became President on 22 April 1985 when President-elect Tancredo de Almeida Neves died.

The cabinet was composed as follows in June 1988:

*Head of President's Civil Household:* Ronaldo Costa Couto. *Head of President's Military Household:* Gen. Rubens Bayma Denys. *Head of National Information Service:* Gen. Ivan de Souza Mendes. *Head of General Armed Forces (EMFA):* Adml. Valbert Lisieux Medeiros. *Air Force:* Brig. Octávio Júlio Moreira Lima. *Agriculture:* Iris Rezende Machado. *Science and Technology:* Luiz Henrique da Silveira. *Communications:* Antonio Carlos Peixoto de Magalhães. *Culture:* Celso Monteiro Furtado. *Urban Development and Environment:* Luiz Humberto Prisco Viana. *Education:* Hugo Napoleão do Rego Neto. *Army:* Gen. Leônidas Pires Gonçalves. *Finance:* Mailson Ferreira da Nobrega. *Industry and Commerce:* José Hugo Castelo Branco. *Interior:* João Alves Filho. *Justice:* Paulo Brossard de Souza Pinto. *Navy:* Adm. Henrique Saboia. *Mines and Energy:* Dr Antônio Aureliano Chaves de Mendonça. *Social Welfare:* Renato Bayma Archer da Silva. *Foreign Affairs:* Roberto Costa de Abreu Sodré. *Health:* Luiz Carlos Borges da Silveira. *Labour:* Almir Pazzianotto Pinto. *Transport:* José Reinaldo Carneiro Tavares. *Administration:* Aluizio Alves. *Land Reform and Development:* Jader Fontanelle Barbalho. *Extraordinary Head of the Secretariat for Planning:* João Batista de Abreu. *Extraordinary Minister of Irrigation:* Vicente Carvalcante Fialho.

*National flag:* Green, with yellow lozenge on which is placed a blue sphere, containing 24 white stars and crossed with a band bearing the motto *Ordem e Progresso*.

*National anthem:* Ouviram do Ipiranga . . . (words by J. O. Duque Estrada; tune by F. M. da Silva).

*Local Government.* Brazil consists of 23 states, 3 federal territories (Roraima, Amapá, Fernando de Noronha) and 1 federal district. Each state has its distinct administrative, legislative and judicial authorities, its own constitution and laws, which must, however, agree with the constitutional principles of the Union. Taxes on interstate commerce, levied by individual states, are prohibited. The governors and members of the legislatures are elected for 4-year terms, but magistrates are appointed and are not removable from office save by judicial sentence. The states and territories are sub-divided into 4,180 *municípios*, each under an elected mayor (*prefeito*) and municipal council, and then further sub-divided into *distritos*. The Federal District is the national capital, inaugurated in 1960; it is divided into 8 administrative Regions the first Region being Brasília.

## DEFENCE.

*Army.* The Army is organized in 8 divisions, each with 4 armoured, 4 mechanized cavalry brigades and 12 motorized infantry brigades; in addition there are 7 light

'jungle' infantry battalions, 28 artillery groups and 2 engineer groups; total strength (1989) over 218,000. An Aviation Corps is being formed.

**Navy.** The principal ship of the Brazilian Navy:

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Guns	Shaft horse-power	Speed Knots
			<i>Aircraft Carrier</i>			
1945	Minas Gerais, <sup>1</sup>	15,890	{ 16 fixed-wing 4 helicopters }	10 40mm AA	40,000	24.0

<sup>1</sup> Ex-*Vengeance*, purchased from Great Britain in 1956.

There are also 7 diesel-powered submarines (1 new built in FR Germany, 3 modern built in Britain and 3 old *ex-US*), 6 modern frigates (the *Constituição*, *Defensora*, *Liberal* and *Niteroi*, built in Britain, and the *Independência* and *União*, built in Brazil), 10 old *ex-US* destroyers, 9 fleet tug type corvettes, 6 coastal mine-sweepers, 1 river monitor, 5 river patrol ships, 6 coastal gunboats, 1 submarine rescue ship, 2 tank landing ships, 4 transports, 19 local transports, 4 oilers, 1 repair ship, 6 training ships, 9 survey ships (2 carrying a helicopter), 6 survey launches, 35 minor landing craft, 6 coastal training craft, 12 tenders, 14 auxiliaries, 17 tugs and 3 floating docks. Two small diesel-powered patrol submarines and 4 corvettes are being built and 3 more submarines, 8 corvettes and 6 minehunters are planned.

Naval bases are at Rio de Janeiro, Aratu (Bahia), Belém, Natal, Recife, Salvador, with river bases at Ladário and Rio Negro.

The Fleet Air Arm was formed on 26 Jan. 1965. Aircraft for service on the carrier include 4 Sea King SH-3 helicopters and 12 S-2A/E Tracker anti-submarine aircraft from USA. Seven Westland Wasp HAS-1 light helicopters are operated on utility and search and rescue duties with 16 Bell 206B Jet Ranger, 10 more Sea King, 6 Super Puma and 28 Esquilo (AS 350) helicopters. Eight Westland Lynx WG13 helicopters and a Sea Lynx HAS-23 are assigned to the destroyer leader/frigates of the 'Niteroi' class.

The active personnel in 1989 totalled 50,500, including marines and auxiliary corps.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is organized in 6 zones, centred on Belém, Recife, Rio de Janeiro, São Paulo, Porto Alegre and Brasília. The 1a ALADA (air defence wing) has 16 Mirage IIIE fighters and 5 Mirage IIID trainers, integrated with Roland mobile short-range surface-to-air missile systems deployed by the Army, and a radar/communications/computer network. Two fighter groups have 3 squadrons of F-5E Tiger II supersonic fighter-bombers and two-seat F-5Bs; 4 others operate AT-26 (Aermacchi MB 326G) Xavante light jet attack/trainers, licence-built by Embraer in Brazil. Counter-insurgency squadrons are also equipped with Neiva Regente lightplanes, Universal armed piston-engined trainers, Super Puma transports and UH-1D/H Iroquois and armed Ecureuil helicopters for liaison and observation. There is an ASW group of S-2A/E Trackers for shore-based and carrier-based operations; a maritime patrol group (2 squadrons) with 12 EMB-111 (P-95) twin-turboprop aircraft developed from the Embraer Bandeirante transport and 3 Lear jets; and 2 air-sea rescue units with Bandeirantes. Equipment of transport units includes 1 squadron of C-130E/H Hercules transports; 1 squadron of Boeing 707 and KC-130H Hercules tanker/transport; 1 group made up of a squadron of HS 748 and a second squadron of Bandeirante turboprop transports; 2 troop-carrier groups with DHC-5 Buffaloes; 1 group with Bandeirantes; and 7 independent squadrons with Bandeirantes and Buffaloes. Light aircraft for liaison duties include 30 Embraer U-7s (licence-built Piper Senecas) and 5 Cessna Caravans. The VIP transport group has 2 Boeing 737s, 11 HS 125 twin-jet light transports, several Embraer Brasília, 6 Embraer Xingu (VU-9) twin-turboprop pressurized transports and Ecureuil and JetRanger helicopters. Training is performed primarily on locally-built T-25 Universal and turboprop T-27 Tucano (EMB-312) basic trainers, and AT-26 Xavante armed jet basic trainers. Future



equipment will include 79 AM-X jet attack aircraft, produced jointly by Embraer and Aeritalia/Aermacchi of Italy. Super Puma helicopters plus small quantities of F-5 and Mirage III fighters.

Personnel strength (1989) about 50,700, with more than 600 aircraft of all types.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Brazil is a member of UN, OAS and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 3-year 'Targets' Plan was introduced in July 1986, providing for a new National Development Fund with a budget of US\$20,000m. for investment.

**Budget.** In 1987 the budget balanced at 591,845,000m. cruzeiros.

The foreign debt (including states and municipalities) of Brazil on 30 Sept. 1987 amounted to US\$100,896m. Internal federal debt, Sept. 1987 was Cz\$3,580,026m. Internal states and municipalities (main securities outstanding), Sept. 1987, Cz\$234,456m.

**Currency.** The *new cruzado* (NCz\$) is the monetary unit which was introduced in Jan. 1989. 1 *new cruzado* = 1,000 *old cruzados*. The exchange rate was in March 1989 US\$1 = NCz\$0.9995; £1 = NCz\$1.7203.

**Banking.** The Bank of Brazil (founded in 1853 and reorganized in 1906, with an authorized capital of Cr\$60m. from 1967) is not a central bank of issue but a state-owned commercial bank; it had 2,488 branches in 1986 throughout the republic. On 31 Dec. 1986 deposits were Cr\$167,366m.

On 31 Dec. 1964 the Banco Central do Brasil was founded as the national bank of issue; assets (1985) Cr\$639,424m.

The country's currency held by the public on 31 Dec. 1985 was Cr\$23,494m. Since Sept. 1939 gold and dollar supply has risen from US\$40m. to US\$420m., of which the government's gold was US\$288m. in May 1961. All banks had on 31 Dec. 1986 deposits of Cr\$698,023m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system has been compulsory since 1872.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Brazil's hydro-electric potential capacity for electric power production was estimated at 106,500 mw in Dec. 1984, one of the largest in the world, of which 34% belongs to the Amazon hydro-electric basin. Installed capacity (1986) 46,149 mw of which 39,102 mw hydro-electric. Production (1986) 211,779m. kwh (193,096 kwh hydro-electric). Supply 110, 127 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** There are 13 oil refineries, of which 11 are state owned. Crude oil production (1988) 26.8m. tonnes. Promising results have been obtained with the exploration of that area which in 1974 represented only 9% of all the national oil production.

The country imported substantial amounts of oil in 1986: 29,777,240 tonnes (value f.o.b. US\$2,786m.). Imports come mainly from Saudi Arabia, Iraq and Nigeria.

In Dec. 1984 a major oil field was reported on the fringes of the existing Campos Basin oil field; reserves are estimated at 4,000m. bbls. Total proven reserves (1986) 2,194m. bbls.

**Gas.** Production (1986) 5,686m. cu. metres; proven reserves (1986) 93,000m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Brazil is the only source of high-grade quartz crystal in commercial quantities; output, 1985, 113,282 tonnes raw, 8,470 tonnes processed. It is the largest western producer of chrome ore (reserves of 9.3m. tonnes; output, 1985, 727,125 tonnes); other minerals are mica (144 tonnes in 1985); zirconium, 21,867; beryllium 1; graphite 191,832; titanium ore 2,596,122 tonnes, and magnesite

623,330 tonnes. Along the coasts of the states of Rio de Janeiro, Espírito Santo and Bahia are found monazite sands containing thorium; output, 1985, 4,546 tonnes; reserves are estimated at 17,000 tonnes. Manganese ores of high content are important (reserves in 1985 were estimated at 68.7m. tonnes); output, 1985, 3,516,501 tonnes. Output of bauxite, 1985, 9,963,082 tonnes; mineral salt (1985), 994,873; tungsten ore, 477,061, unrough, 2,050; lead, 316,472; asbestos, 2,254,922; coal (1983), 21,367,472. Deposits of coal exist in Rio Grande do Sul, Santa Catarina, Paraná and Minas Gerais. Total reserves were estimated at 4,159.5m. tonnes in 1984.

Iron is found chiefly in Minas Gerais, notably the Cauê Peak at Itabira. The Government is now opening up what is believed to be one of the richest iron-ore deposits in the world, situated in Carajás, in the northern state of Pará, with estimated reserves of 35,000m. tonnes, representing the largest concentration of high-grade (66%) iron ore in the world. Total output of iron ore, 1985, mainly from the Cia. Vale do Rio Doce mine at Itabira, was 168,120,184 tonnes.

Production of tin ore (cassiterite, processed) was 44,599 tonnes in 1985. Output of barytes, 83,617 tonnes. Output of phosphate rock, 23.7m. tonnes.

Gold is chiefly from Pará (12,705 kg in 1985), Mato Grosso (5,914 kg) and Minas Gerais (4,642 kg); total production (1985), 29,673 kg processed. Silver output (processed in 1985) 38,024 kg. Diamond output in 1985 was 349,527 carats (200,000 carats from Minas Gerais, 130,000 carats from Mato Grosso).

**Agriculture.** In 1986, 14,330,630 people were employed in agriculture, with (1984) 8.9% of the land area under cultivation. In 1980, there were 5.16m. farms (61% family operated). Production (in tonnes):

	1985	1986 <sup>1</sup>		1985	1986 <sup>1</sup>
Bananas			Grapes	712,182	589,775
(1,000 bunches)	481,503	504,216	Cocoa	430,789	460,442
Kidney beans	2,548,738	2,219,478	Coffee	3,821,292	2,007,200
Cassava	23,124,782	25,555,997	Cotton, raw	2,856,568	2,314,540
Castor beans	417,657	261,378	Jute	20,081	27,857
Oranges			Maize	22,018,180	20,541,227
(1,000 fruits)	71,071,533	66,633,107	Soya	18,278,585	13,334,691
Potatoes	1,946,659	1,833,651	Sugar-cane	247,199,474	238,493,386
Rice	9,024,555	10,404,676	Wheat	4,320,267	5,638,470
Sisal	290,901	246,232	Tobacco	410,474	387,257
Tomatoes	1,934,610	1,838,334			

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

Harvested coffee area, 1986, 2,259,000 hectares, principally in the 4 states of São Paulo, Paraná, Espírito Santo and Minas Gerais. Harvested cocoa area, 1986, 658,000 hectares. Bahia furnished 87% of the output in 1985. Two crops a year are grown. Harvested castor-bean area, 1986, 458,000 hectares. Tobacco output was 386,000 tonnes in 1986 grown chiefly in Rio Grande do Sul and Santa Catarina.

Rubber is produced chiefly in the states of Acre, Amazonas and Pará. Output, 1986, 44,000 tonnes (natural). Brazilian consumption of rubber in 1984, was 336,726 tonnes. Jute output, 1986, 63,000 tonnes. Plantations of tung trees established in 1930 are beginning to yield tung oils in commercial quantities; output, 1984, 5,426 tonnes.

Livestock (in 1,000): 1987, 131,503 cattle, 32,000 swine, 19,200 sheep, 9,800 goats, 6,800 horses, 1,350 asses and 1,950 mules. In 1987, 10.6m. cattle, 11.7m. swine, 1.9m. sheep and lambs, 2m. goats and (1982) 798m. poultry were slaughtered for meat.

**Forestry.** Production (1984) 222m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The fishing industry had a 1984 catch of 958,908 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The total number of persons engaged in industry (1980) was 5,004,522 and the value of production Cr\$9,738,340m.

The National Iron and Steel Co. at Volta Redonda, State of Rio de Janeiro, fur-

nishes a substantial part of Brazil's steel. Brazil's total output, 1986: Pig-iron, 20,267,656 tonnes; crude steel, 21,233,346 tonnes.

Cement output, 1986, was 25,257,000 tonnes. Brazil's output of paper, 1986, was 4,525,570 tonnes. Production (1984) of rubber tyres for motor vehicles, 23m. units; rubber tubes for motor vehicles, 14m. units.

**Labour.** The work force in 1986 numbered 55,435,973, of whom 14,330,630 were in agriculture.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports for calendar years in Cr\$1m.:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	3,338,626	8,288,170	5,966,160	77,947,888	187,473,962
Exports	3,368,796	11,652,923	49,422,908	148,571,718	124,964,192

Principal imports in 1986 were (in US\$1m.): Mineral products, 3,874; chemical products, 2,127; machinery and mechanical appliances, electrical equipment, 2,714; vegetable products, 1,195.

Principal exports in 1985 were (in US\$1m.): Coffee (green), 2,369; soybean bran, 1,175; iron ore, 1,101; soya, 763; orange juice, 749; footwear, 571; cocoa beans, 361; pig iron, 268.

Of exports (in US\$1m.) in 1986. USA took 6,315; Japan, 1,515; Netherlands, 1,303; Germany (Fed. Rep.), 1,101; Italy, 911; France, 720; Argentina, 682; UK, 647; China, 518. Of 1986 imports, USA furnished 3,228; Germany (Fed. Rep.), 1,285; Iraq, 960; Japan, 882; Saudi Arabia, 880; Argentina, 737; France, 569.

Total trade between Brazil and UK (according to British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	610,624	552,259	636,675	742,145
Exports and re-exports from UK	211,512	295,152	347,916	304,735

**Tourism.** In 1986, 1,717,659 tourists visited Brazil. 642,937 were Argentinian, 234,196 Uruguayan, 217,965 US citizens, 114,709 Paraguayan, 70,381 German, 69,446 Bolivian, 49,598 Chilean, 66,742 Italian, 54,573 French, 37,470 Spanish, 27,647 Canadian, 22,494 Peruvian, 24,094 Portuguese, 30,748 UK citizens, 29,931 Swiss, 24,728 Japanese.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1986) 1,593,655 km of highways. In 1985 Brazil had 13,184,450 motor vehicles, including 9,494,193 passenger cars, 1,864,368 commercial vehicles, 130,064 buses and minibuses.

**Railways.** Public railways are operated by two administrations, the Federal Railways (RFFSA) formed in 1957 and São Paulo Railways (FEPASA) formed in 1971, which is confined to the state of São Paulo. RFFSA had a route-length of 22,184 km (82 km electrified) in 1985 and FEPASA 5,036 km (1,527 km electrified). Principal gauges are metre (24,373 km) and 1,600 mm (3,449 km). Traffic moved by RFFSA in 1985 amounted to 82.4m. tonnes of freight and 547.6m. passengers. FEPASA carried 21m. tonnes and 77.8m. passengers.

There are several important independent freight railways, including the Vitória à Minas (729 km with (1985) 103.1m. tonnes of freight), the Carajas (890 km, opened in 1985) and the Amapá (194 km). There are rapid-transit railways (metros) operating in São Paulo (from 1975), Rio de Janeiro city (1979), Belo Horizonte, Pôrto Alegre (both in 1985), and small systems in Fortaleza and Salvador.

**Aviation.** There were 34 companies (30 foreign) operating in 1985. The 4 Brazilian companies cover the whole territory and in 1986 they carried 16,285,000 passengers (14,161,000 in domestic traffic). Their commercial fleet consisted of 248 aircraft on 31 Dec. 1984. There were 243 taxiplane companies on 31 Dec. 1985. The 4 airlines are Viação Aérea Rio Grande do Sul (VARIG), Cruzeiro do Sul, Trans Brasil and VASP. In 1986 there were 126 airports with scheduled flights.



**Shipping.** Inland waterways, mostly rivers, are open to navigation over some 43,000 km; number of vessels in 1984, 1,348. Rio de Janeiro and Santos are the 2 leading ports; there are 19 other large ports. During 1985, 42,342 vessels entered and cleared the Brazilian ports.

The Lloyd Brasileiro is owned and operated by the Government; its fleet comprised (1984), 39 vessels of 604,733 DWT. Brazilian shipping, 1984 (registered with Lloyds) amounted to 1,636 vessels of 10,001,356 DWT. Petrobrás, the government oil monopoly, took over the government tanker fleet of 26 vessels in 1958; total tanker fleet in 1984 was 70 vessels of 5,090,494 DWT (private and government-owned).

**Post and Broadcasting.** Of the telegraph system of the country, about half, including all interstate lines, is under control of the Government. There were 11,381 post and telegraph offices in 1986. There were 7,363,586 telephones in 1984 (São Paulo, 2,755,534; Rio de Janeiro, 1,204,701; Brasília, 210,197). In 1986 there were 2,073 radio and 177 television stations, with an estimated 67m. radio and 26m. television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1984). Cinemas numbered 1,813.

**Newspapers** (1984). There were 314 daily newspapers with a total yearly circulation of 1,976m. Foreigners and corporations (except political parties) are not allowed to own or control newspapers or wireless stations.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Federal Court of Justice at Brasília composed of 11 judges, and a Federal Court of Appeal of 13 judges; all are appointed by the President with the approval of the Senate. There are also federal courts in each state and territory and the federal district military courts to arraign members of the armed forces, as well as 'electoral courts' to protect the elections, and labour tribunals. Each state organizes its own judicial system in accordance with state law, but in Brasília federal justice is administered. Judges are appointed for life.

**Religion.** At the 1980 census Roman Catholics numbered 105,861,113 (89% of the total), Protestants, 7,885,846 (6.6%) and Spiritualists, 1,538,230.

**Education.** Elementary education is compulsory. In 1986 there were 69,132,375 persons aged 15 years or over who could read and write; this was 80% of that age group (81.2% among men; 78.8% among women).

In 1984 there were 37,348 pre-primary schools with 2,493,381 pupils and 107,338 teachers. In 1985 there were 187,274 primary schools, with 24,769,736 pupils and 1,040,566 teachers; 9,260 secondary schools, with 3,016,138 pupils and 206,111 teachers; and 859 higher education institutions, with 1,367,609 pupils and 113,459 teachers. This tertiary level comprises 68 universities (including 20 private) and 791 other institutions (606 private).

Of the 35 Federal universities, the principal are at Rio de Janeiro (30,000 students), Niterói (20,713), Belo Horizonte (20,044), João Pessoa (19,849), Salvador (18,431), Porto Alegre (17,626), Recife (18,500), Manaus (17,000), Curitiba (14,882), Fortaleza (14,700) and Natal (14,000). Largest of the 10 State universities is that of São Paulo (44,159 students, founded 1934), and there are 2 Municipal universities.

The 20 private universities include 11 Catholic universities in Rio de Janeiro, São Paulo, Porto Alegre, Campinas, Recife, Belo Horizonte, Goiânia, Curitiba, Pelotas, Salvador and Petrópolis.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 27,552 hospitals and clinics of which 6,861 were for inpatients; total number of beds, 538,721 (411,184 in private institutions). In 1980 there were 97,100 doctors, 56,015 dentists, 5,129 pharmacists, 2,526 midwives and 306,411 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Brazil in Great Britain (32 Green St., London, W1Y 4AT)

*Ambassador:* Celso Antônio de Souza e Silva (accredited 9 Dec. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Brazil (Setor de Embaixadas Sul, Quadra 801, Conjunto K, Brasília, D.F.)

*Ambassador:* M. J. Newington, CMG.

Of Brazil in the USA (3006 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Marcílio Marques Moreira.

Of the USA in Brazil (Ave das Noções, Lote 3, Brasília, D.F.)

*Ambassador:* Harry W. Shlaudeman.

Of Brazil to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Paulo Nogueira Batista.

## Further Reading

*Anuário do Transporte Aéreo.* Ministério da Aeronáutica, DAC. Rio de Janeiro, 1986

*Anuário Estatístico do Brasil.* Vol. 46. Fundação Instituto Brasileiro de Geografia e Estatística, Rio de Janeiro, 1986

*Anuário Mineral Brasileiro.* Departamento Nacional da Produção Mineral. Brasília, 1986

*Boletim do Banco Central do Brasil.* Banco Central do Brasil. Brasília. Monthly

*A Profile of Brazil.* Banco do Brasil, 1984

*Anuario Sunamam,* Superintendência Nacional da Marinha Mercante, 1984

Bruneau, T. C., *The Church in Brazil: The Politics of Religion.* Univ. of Texas Press, 1982

Bryant, S. V., *Brazil* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985

Burns, E. B., *A History of Brazil.* 2nd ed. Columbia Univ. Press, 1980

Dickenson, J. P., *Brazil.* Harlow, 1982

Falk, P. S. and Fleischer, D. V., *Brazil's Economic and Political Future.* Boulder, 1988

Hanbury-Tenison, R., *A Question of Survival for the Indians of Brazil.* London, 1973

McDonough, P., *Power and Ideology in Brazil.* Princeton Univ. Press, 1981

Mainwaring, S., *The Catholic Church and Politics in Brazil, 1916-86.* Stanford Univ. Press, 1986

Micallef, J., (ed.) *Brazil: Country with a Future.* London, 1982

Moraes, R. Borba de., *Bibliographia Brasiliana (1504-1900).* 2 vols. 1958

Trebat, T. J., *Brazil's State-Owned Enterprises.* CUP, 1983

Tyler, W. G., *The Brazilian Industrial Economy.* Aldershot, 1981

Young, J. M., *Brazil: Emerging World Power.* Malabar, 1982

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional Avenida Rio Branco 219-39, Rio de Janeiro, RJ.

# BRITISH ANTARCTIC TERRITORY

**HISTORY.** The British Antarctic Territory was established on 3 March 1962, as a consequence of the entry into force of the Antarctic Treaty, to separate those areas of the then Falkland Islands Dependencies which lay within the Treaty area from those which did not (i.e. South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands see p. 1113).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The territory encompasses the lands and islands within the area south of 60°S latitude lying between 20°W and 80°W longitude (approximately due south of the Falkland Islands and the Dependencies). It covers an area of some 660,000 sq. miles, and its principal components are the South Orkney and South Shetland Islands, the Antarctic Peninsula (Palmer Land and Graham Land) the Filchner and Ronne Ice Shelves and Coats Land.

British Antarctic Territory has no indigenous or permanently resident population. There is however an itinerant population of scientists and logistics staff of about 300, manning a number of research stations.

The territory is administered by a High Commissioner. Designated personnel of the scientific stations of the British Antarctic Survey are also appointed to exercise certain legal and administrative functions.

*High Commissioner:* William H. Fullerton (resides in Port Stanley).

Fox, R., *Antarctica and the South Atlantic*. London, 1985

Parsons, A., *Antarctica: The Next Decade*. CUP, 1987

# BRITISH INDIAN OCEAN TERRITORY

**HISTORY.** This territory was established by an Order in Council on 8 Nov. 1965, consisting then of the Chagos Archipelago (formerly administered from Mauritius) and the islands of Aldabra, Desroches and Farquhar (all formerly administered from Seychelles). The latter islands became part of Seychelles when that country achieved independence on 29 June 1976.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The group, with a total land area of 23 sq. miles (60 sq. km) comprises 5 coral atolls (Diego Garcia, Peros Banhos, Salomon, Eagle and Egmont) of which the largest and southern-most, Diego Garcia, covers 17 sq. miles (44 sq. km) and lies 450 miles (724 km) south of the Maldives. The British Indian Ocean Territory was established to meet UK and US defence requirements in the Indian Ocean. In accordance with the terms of Exchanges of Notes between the UK and US governments in 1966 and 1976, a US Navy support facility has been established on Diego Garcia. There is no permanent population in the British Indian Ocean Territory.

*Commissioner:* R. J. S. Edis (non-resident).

*Administrator:* M. R. Crompton (non-resident).



# BRUNEI

*Capital:* Bandar Seri Begawan  
*Population:* 226,300 (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$15,400 (1986)

## Negara Brunei Darussalam

**HISTORY.** The Sultanate of Brunei was a powerful state in the early 16th century, with authority over the whole of the island of Borneo and some parts of the Sulu Islands and the Philippines. At the end of the 16th century its power had begun to decline and various cessions were made to Great Britain, the Rajah of Sarawak and the British North Borneo Company in the 19th century to combat piracy and anarchy. By the middle of the 19th century the State had been reduced to its present limits. In 1847 the Sultan of Brunei entered into a treaty with Great Britain for the furtherance of commercial relations and the suppression of piracy, and in 1888, by a further treaty, the State was placed under the protection of Great Britain. As a result of negotiations in June 1978, the Sultan and the British Government signed a new treaty on 7 Jan. 1979 under which Brunei became a fully sovereign and independent State on 31 Dec. 1983.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Brunei, on the northwest coast of Borneo, is bounded on all sides by Sarawak territory, which splits the State into two separate parts, with the smaller portion forming Temburong district. Area, about 2,226 sq. miles (5,765 sq. km), with a coastline of about 100 miles. Population (1981 census) was 191,770; estimate (1988) 226,300. Malays (155,500), Chinese (41,500). The 4 districts are Brunei/Muara (114,310), Belait (49,590), Tutong (21,640), Temburong (6,230). The capital is Bandar Seri Begawan (census, 1981) 63,868, 9 miles from the mouth of Brunei River; other large towns are Seria (23,511) and Kuala Belait (19,281). 50% of the population speak Malay and 26% Chinese.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical marine, hot and moist, but nights are cool. Humidity is high and rainfall heavy, varying from 100" (2,500 mm) on the coast to 200" (5,000 mm) inland. There is no dry season. Bandar Seri Begawan. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 131" (3,275 mm).

**RULER.** The Sultan and Yang di-Pertuan is HM Sir Muda Hassanal Bolkiah Mu'izzadin Waddaulah. He succeeded on 5 Oct. 1967 at his father's abdication and was crowned on 1 Aug. 1968.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 29 Sept. 1959 the Sultan promulgated a Constitution, but parts of it have been in abeyance since Dec. 1962. At independence, the Privy Council, Council of Ministers, and the posts of Chief Minister and State Secretary were abolished. There is no legislature (the 33-member Legislative Council was dissolved in Feb. 1984) and supreme political powers are vested in the Sultan.

The Council of Ministers was composed as follows in Dec. 1988:

*Prime Minister, Minister of Defence:* HM The Sultan and Yang di-Pertuan.

*Foreign Affairs:* Pengiran Muda Mohamad Bolkiah. *Finance:* Pengiran Muda Jefri Bolkiah. *Home Affairs:* Isa Ibrahim. *Communications:* Awang Zakaria Bin Haji Suleiman. *Attorney-General and Law:* Pengiran Bahrin Abas. *Industry and Primary Resources:* Abdul Rahman Taib. *Religious Affairs:* Mohd Zain Serudin. *Development:* Dr Ismail Damit. *Culture, Youth and Sports:* Hussein Yusof. *Health:* Dr Johar Noordin. *Education:* Abdul Aziz Umar.

The official language is Malay, but English may be used for other purposes. The Chinese community mainly use the Hokkien dialect.

*Flag:* Yellow, with 2 diagonal strips of white over black with the national arms in red placed over all in the centre.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The armed forces are known as the Task Force and contain the naval and air elements. Strength (1989) 4,000. Military units include 2 infantry battalions, 1 armoured reconnaissance squadron, 1 engineer squadron and 1 signals squadron. Equipment includes 16 Scorpion light tanks, 24 Sankey AT-104 armoured personnel carriers and 12 Rapier missiles.

**Navy.** The Flotilla of the Royal Brunei Armed Forces comprises 3 fast missile-armed attack craft of 200 tons (completed by Vosper, Singapore in 1978-79), 3 coastal patrol boats (built by Vosper-Thornycroft (Singapore)), 2 landing craft, 2 utility craft and 3 small patrol boats. River Division operates 24 fast assault boats. Personnel in 1989 numbered 500 (45 officers and 455 ratings) in the First Flotilla (for offshore work) and in the Special Combat Division and River Division.

Two coastal patrol craft supplied in 1979 for the Marine Police operate with 7 smaller patrol boats.

**Air Wing.** The Air Wing of the Royal Brunei Armed Forces was formed in 1965. Current equipment includes 6 MBB BO 105, 2 Bell 206B JetRanger, 1 Bell 214, 2 Sikorsky S-70 and 11 Bell 212 helicopters, and 2 SF.260M piston-engined trainers. Personnel (1989) 300.

**Police.** Establishment provides over 1,750 officers and men (1980). In addition, there is a small auxiliary force mostly employed on static guard duties.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Brunei is a member of the UN, the Commonwealth and ASEAN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A fifth Five-Year National Development Plan (1986-90) aims to further improve the economic, social and cultural life of the people.

**Budget.** The budget for 1986 envisaged expenditure of B\$2,720m. and revenue of B\$3,332m.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Brunei dollar* with a par value of 0.290 299 gramme of gold. In March 1989, £1 = B\$3.33; US\$1 = B\$1.93.

**Banking.** In 1986 there were 9 banks (2 incorporated in Brunei) with a total of 41 branches.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power production (1986) was 470m. kwh. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The Seria oilfield, discovered in 1929, has passed its peak production. The high level of crude oil production is maintained through the increase of offshore oilfields production, which exceeds onshore oilfields production. There were 182 offshore structures in 1986. Production was 7.5m. tonnes in 1988. The crude oil is exported directly, and only a small amount is refined at Seria for domestic uses.

**Gas.** Natural gas is produced (5.1m. tonnes in 1985) at one of the biggest liquefied natural gas plants in the world and is exported to Japan.

**Agriculture.** The chief agricultural products in 1986 were fruit (6,000 tonnes), rice (3,000 tonnes), roots and tubers (1,000 tonnes), bananas (1,000 tonnes) and cassava (1,000 tonnes).

Livestock in 1987: Cattle, 3,000; buffaloes, 10,000; pigs, 14,000; chickens, 2m.

**Forestry.** Most of the interior is under forest, containing large potential supplies of serviceable timber. Annual production averages 300,000 cu. metres.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Brunei depends primarily on its oil industry, which employs more than 7% of the entire working population. Other minor products are rubber, pepper, sawn timber, gravel and animal hides. Local industries include boat-building, cloth weaving and the manufacture of brass and silverware.

**Commerce.** Crude oil accounts for 56% of the total value of the exports and re-exports. The second main export is liquefied natural gas, which contributes 40% and petroleum products 3%. In 1986 imports totalled B\$1,450m.; exports, B\$3,991m. Singapore supplied 24% of imports, the USA 15.2% and Japan 20%. Japan took 68% of all exports.

Total trade between Brunei and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	21,966	23,346	71,624	34,144	142,461
Exports and re-exports from UK	122,651	71,496	154,146	204,129	171,556

**Tourism.** There were 47,043 visitors in 1984.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1983) 1,233 km of road, of which 451 miles are bituminous surfaced. The main road connects Bandar Seri Begawan with Kuala Belait and Seria. In 1983 there were 63,177 passenger cars and 9,603 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** Royal Brunei Airlines (RBA) and Singapore Airlines provide daily services linking Brunei and Singapore. RBA also operates services to Bangkok, Manila, Kuala Lumpur, Kuching, Kota Kinabalu and Hong Kong. Cathay Pacific Airways also operates to Brunei and on to Western Australia from Hong Kong. British Airways provides a weekly service between Brunei and UK. Malaysian Airlines System has air connections from neighbouring regions. In 1985 Brunei International Airport handled 380,000 passengers and 8,500 tons of freight.

**Shipping.** Regular shipping services operate from Singapore, Hong Kong, and from ports in Sarawak and Sabah to Bandar Seri Begawan. Private companies operate a passenger ferry service between Bandar Seri Begawan and Labuan daily.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 14 post offices (1983) and a telephone network (31,200 telephones in 1985) linking the main centres. Radio Brunei is operated by the Department of Radio and Television and operates on medium- and short-waves in Malay, Iban, Dusun, English and Chinese. Number of receivers (1984): Radio 52,000 and television 31,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court comprises a High Court and a Court of Appeal and the Magistrates' Courts. The High Court receives appeals from subordinate courts in the districts and is itself a court of first instance for criminal and civil cases. Appeal from the High Court is to a Court of Appeal. The Judicial Committee of the Privy Council in London is the final court of appeal. Syariah Courts deal with Islamic law.

**Religion.** The official religion is Islam. In 1982, 63% of the population were Moslem (mostly Malays), 14% Buddhists and 10% Christian.

**Education** (1986). There is free primary education for 6 years, followed by 3 years secondary education for those who show ability. Scholarships can lead to tertiary education overseas, either in the academic or vocational fields, although vocational training is given locally. In 1986 there were 243 schools of all types (primary and secondary) with 64,090 pupils and 4,087 teachers.

Students have been sent to Al-Azhar University in Cairo since 1960. The University of Brunei Darussalam opened in 1985 with an enrolment of 176 students.



**Health.** In 1981 there were 5 hospitals with 630 beds; there were also 97 doctors, 12 dentists, 3 pharmacists, 115 midwives and 280 nursing personnel.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Brunei in Great Britain (49 Cromwell Rd, London, SW7 2ED)

*High Commissioner:* Pengiran Setia Raja Pengiran Haji Jaya (accredited 14 March 1984).

Of Great Britain in Brunei (Hong Kong Chambers, Jalan Pemancha, Bandar Seri Begawan)

*High Commissioner:* Roger Westbrook.

Of Brunei in the USA (2600 Virginia Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)

*Ambassador:* Pengiran Haji Idriss.

Of the USA in Brunei (Bandar Seri Begawan)

*Ambassador:* Thomas C. Ferguson.

Of Brunei to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Awang Haji Jaya Bin Abdul Latif.

### Further Reading

Krausse, S. C. and G. H., *Brunei*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

# BULGARIA

Capital: Sofia

Population: 8.97m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$6,460 (1985)

## Narodna Republika Bulgaria

**HISTORY.** The Bulgarian state was founded in 681, but fell under Turkish rule in 1396. By the Treaty of Berlin (1878), the Principality of Bulgaria and the Autonomous Province of Eastern Rumelia, both under Turkish suzerainty, were constituted. In 1885 Rumelia was reunited with Bulgaria. On 5 Oct. 1908 Bulgaria declared her independence of Turkey.

In 1941 Bulgaria signed the Three Power Pact and the Anti-Comintern Pact. After a referendum which abolished the monarchy (for details *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1986-87) the Fatherland Front government asked for an armistice, which was signed on 28 Oct. 1944 by the USSR, the UK and the USA. A People's Republic was proclaimed on 15 Sept. 1946. The peace treaty was signed in Paris on 10 Feb. 1947. It restored the frontiers as on 1 Jan. 1941.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of Bulgaria is 110,994 sq. km (42,855 sq. miles) and is bounded in the north by Romania, east by the Black Sea, south by Turkey and Greece and west by Yugoslavia.

The country was divided into 28 provinces (*okrüg*, plur. *okrüzi*). Area and population in 1986:

Province	Area (sq. km)	Pop. 1,000	Province	Area (sq. km)	Pop. 1,000	Province	Area (sq. km)	Pop. 1,000
Blagoevgrad	6,484	350	Pleven	4,335	361	Sofia (City)	1,311	1,204
Burgas	7,702	451	Plovdiv	5,642	759	Stara Zagora	5,077	414
Gabrovo	2,034	174	Razgrad	2,654	199	Tolbukhin	4,707	258
Khaskovo	4,008	303	Ruse	2,618	305	Türgovishte	2,717	170
Kürdzhalı	4,028	304	Shumen	3,390	256	Varna	3,832	465
Kyustendil	3,055	189	Silistra	2,854	174	Veliko Tŭrnovo	4,646	338
Lovech	4,136	201	Sliven	3,620	240	Vidin	3,041	165
Mikhailovgrad	3,623	223	Smolyan	3,487	166	Vratsa	3,943	287
Pazardzhik	4,457	329	Sofia	7,091	304	Yambol	4,113	204
Pernik	2,391	175						

In Aug. 1987 these provinces were grouped into 9 regions (*oblast*) which replaced them as administrative units: Mikhailovgrad (Mikhailovgrad, Vidin, Vratsa); Lovech (Lovech, Pleven, Gabrovo, Veliko Tŭrnovo); Razgrad (Razgrad, Ruse, Silistra, Türgovishte); Varna (Varna, Shumen, Tolbukhin); Sofia Region (Sofia Province, Pernik, Kyustendil, Blagoevgrad); Sofia City; Plovdiv (Plovdiv, Pazardzhik, Smolyan); Khaskovo (Khaskovo, Stara Zagora, Kürdzhalı); Burgas (Burgas, Sliven, Yambol).

The population at the census of Dec. 1985 was 8,942,976 (females, 4,515,936). Population on 1 Jan. 1988 was 8,973,600 (4.4m. males; 66% urban). Population density 80.9 per sq. km.

Ethnic minorities are not identified officially, but there are some 800,000 Turks. Attempts forcibly to Bulgarianise these in the mid 1980s led to protests from Turkey. A Bulgarian-Turkish protocol envisaging discussions of this problem was signed in Feb. 1988. There are also Gipsies, Jews, Romanians and Armenians.

Population of principal towns (1987): Sofia, 1,128,859; Plovdiv, 356,596; Varna, 305,891; Ruse, 190,450; Burgas, 197,555; Stara Zagora, 156,441; Pleven, 133,747; Shumen, 106,496; Tolbukhin, 111,037; Sliven, 106,610; Pernik, 97,225; Yambol, 94,951; Khaskovo, 91,409; Gabrovo, 81,554; Pazardzhik, 81,513.

Vital statistics, 1987: Live births, 116,672; deaths, 107,213; marriages, 64,429; divorces, 11,687; birth rate, 13 per 1,000 population; death rate, 12; infant mortality, 14.7 per 1,000; growth rate, 1. Abortions, 1987: 134,097.

Expectation of life in 1986 was 71.19 years.

**CLIMATE.** The southern parts have a Mediterranean climate, with winters mild and moist and summers hot and dry, but further north the conditions become more continental, with a larger range of temperature and greater amounts of rainfall in summer and early autumn. Sofia. Jan. 28°F(−2.2°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 25.4" (635 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 'Tŭrnovo' Constitution of 1879 was replaced by the 'Dimitrov' Constitution in 1947. This was in turn replaced by a new constitution on 18 May 1971. This vests supreme state power in a single-chamber National Assembly (*Narodno Sŭbranie*) which meets at least three times a year. Between sessions it delegates its powers to a Council of State elected from its members. The Assembly consists of 400 deputies elected from areas of equal population by direct, secret and universal suffrage (everybody at age of 18 being eligible to vote and hold office) for a term of 5 years.

At the election on 27 Oct. 1946 the Fatherland Front, composed of the Workers (Communist), Agrarian, Socialist and Zveno Parties, and independents, obtained 364 seats (277 to the Communists) and the opposition 101. In 1947–48 the oppositional Agrarian Union and the Zveno Party were dissolved, the Socialists merged with the Communists, and the Fatherland Front became a mass organization with individual memberships. Inside the Fatherland Front, there remain two political parties, the Bulgarian Communist Party (BCP) and the Bulgarian People's Agrarian Union. Petŭr Tanchev (*1st Vice-Chairman, Council of State*) is Secretary of the Agrarian Union and Pencho Kubadinski Chairman of the Fatherland Front's National Council.

Elections to the National Assembly were held on 8 June 1986. 6,639,562 votes were stated to have been cast (from an electorate of 6,650,739) for the 400 candidates of the Fatherland Front (84 women; 276 Communists; 99 Agrarian Union; 25 independents). The speaker is Stanko Todorov.

Constitutionally there is no office of Head of State, but Todor Zhivkov (*Chairman of the Council of State, Secretary-General of the Communist Party*), performs some of its functions. Ministries were radically reorganized in 1987.

Real political power lies with the BCP, whose highest policy-making and executive body is its Politburo, elected by the Central Committee.

In March 1989 it consisted of *Full Members*: Todor Zhivkov, Georgi Atanasov (*Prime Minister*), Pencho Kubadinski, Milko Balev, Gen. Dobri Dzhurov (*Defence Minister*), Petŭr Mladenov (*Foreign Minister*), Grisha Filipov, Yordan Yotov, Ivan Panev, Dimitŭr Stoitianov. *Candidate Members*: Petŭr Dyulgerov, Andrei Lukanov (*Minister of Foreign Economic Relations*), Georgi Yordanov (*Minister of Education*), Grigor Stoichkov (*Deputy Prime Minister*), Stoian Markov, Stoian Ovcharov (*Minister of Economy and Planning*).

Ministers not in the Politburo include: Svetla Daskalova (*Justice*), Radoi Popivanov (*Health and Social Welfare*), Georgi Pankov (*Minister, Ambassador to the USSR*), Georgi Tanev (*Interior*).

In 1984 membership of the BCP was 892,000; Young Communist League, (1976) 1.3m.; Agrarian Union (1986), 120,000; Fatherland Front, 3,770,080.

In May 1967 a second 20-year treaty of friendship, co-operation and mutual assistance with the Soviet Union was signed.

*National flag*: Three horizontal stripes of white, green, red, with the national emblem in the canton.

*National anthem*: An arrangement of Mila Rodino (Dear Fatherland), a popular patriotic song, was declared the national anthem in 1964.

*Local Government*. People's Councils for the 9 regions, 29 urban areas and 299 other districts are elected for 30 months. In addition to their civic functions they supervise the management of publicly owned enterprises. The Councils' executive organs are Permanent Committees. Elections were held on 28 Feb. 1988, for the first time with multiple candidacies; 25.87% of the 65,455 councillors elected were non-party, 23.75% women.



**DEFENCE.** There is a compulsory service of 2 years in the Army and Air Force (3 years in the Navy). Defence spending was cut by 12% in 1989.

**Army.** In 1989 the Army had a strength of 115,000, including 70,000 conscripts, and is organized in 8 motor rifle divisions and 5 tank brigades. Bulgaria is divided into 3 Military Districts, based on Sofia, Plovdiv and Sliven. Equipment includes 350 T-34, 1,500 T-54/-55 and 200 T-72 tanks. Paramilitary forces, including border guards, security police and People's Territorial Militia, number some 172,500.

**Navy.** The Navy consists of 4 *ex*-Soviet 'R' class diesel-powered patrol submarines, 3 *ex*-Soviet 'Riga' class old small frigates, 3 *ex*-Soviet 'Poti' class corvettes, 7 *ex*-Soviet 'Osa' class missile boats, 6 *ex*-Soviet patrol vessels, 6 *ex*-Soviet torpedo boats, 2 fleet minesweepers, 9 coastal minesweepers, 4 inshore minesweepers, 18 minesweeping boats, 24 landing craft, 4 oilers, 3 survey ships, 2 salvage craft, 9 tugs, 3 training ships, 2 degaussing vessels, 2 diving tenders and 20 auxiliaries and service craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 8,800 officers and ratings of whom 3,000 were conscripts.

**Air Force.** The large tactical Air Force had (1987) about 250 Soviet-built combat aircraft and (1989) 34,000 personnel. There are 3 regiments of MiG-21 and MiG-23 interceptors; 2 regiments of fighter/ground attack MiG-23s and MiG-17s; 2 reconnaissance squadrons of MiG-17s and MiG-21s; some Mi-24 helicopter gunships; a total of about 35 Tu-134, Il-14, An-2 and An-24/26 transport aircraft; a total of about 60 Mi-4, Mi-2, Ka-26, and Mi-8 helicopters; and L-29 Delfin, L-39 Albatros, MiG-15UT1, Zlin 42 and MiG-21UT1 trainers. Soviet-built 'Guideline', 'Goa' and 'Ganef' surface-to-air missiles have also been supplied to Bulgaria.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Bulgaria is a member of UN, Comecon and the Warsaw Pact.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** State economic planning started in 1947. There were planning reforms in 1964, 1969, 1982, 1986 and 1987. An economic code of 1 Jan. 1988 provides for the self-management and self-accounting of all economic enterprises.

For the first eight 5-year plans *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK for 1987-88. The ninth 5-year plan is running from 1986 to 1990. The emphasis is on technological development.

**Budget.** The revenue and expenditure of Bulgaria for calendar years were as follows (in lm. leva):

	1977	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	9,498	13,187	15,385	15,824	16,812	17,754	18,097	19,506	20,672
Expenditure	9,477	13,167	15,370	15,809	16,663	17,392	18,087	19,491	20,662

Of the 1984 revenue 92% came from the national economy. 1983 expenditure was: National economy, 8,630m. leva; education, 2,945m.; social security, 2,846m.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *lev* (pl. *leva*) divided into 100 *stotinki* (sing. *stotinka*). It has been linked to the Soviet rouble since May 1952. A new *lev*, equalling 10 old leva, was introduced on 1 Jan. 1962. The parity (clearing value) is 1 rouble = 1.30 *leva*. Official rate of exchange (March 1989) was £1 = 1.50 *leva*; US\$1 = 0.87 *leva*. Rate of exchange for non-commercial transactions (1987): £1 = 2.40 *leva*; US\$1 = 1.65 *leva*. Notes are issued for 1, 2, 5, 10 and 20 *leva* and coins for 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50 *stotinki* and 1, 2 and 5 *leva*.

**Banking.** Under a banking reform of 1987 the National Bank remains the central bank and is responsible for issuing currency. The Foreign Trade Bank (founded 1964) and the State Savings Bank also remain, the latter now serving local enterprises as well as the public. In 1986, 10.48m. depositors had savings totalling 13,954m. leva. Five commercial banks serving various specific industrial sectors, and three more broadly-based (the Economic Bank, the Agricultural Bank and the

Bank for Economic Initiative) have been set up. A Bavarian-Bulgarian Bank began operating in May 1987.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use. On 1 April 1916 the Gregorian calendar came into force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Energy.** Bulgaria has little oil, gas or high-grade coal and energy policy is based on the exploitation of its low-grade coal and hydro-electric resources, which produce 20% of the electricity supply. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Electricity.** In 1987 there were 135 power stations with a potential of 10.7m. kw. (thermal, (46) 6.5m. kw.; hydroelectric, (88) 2m. kw.; nuclear, (1) 2.26m. kw.). Output, 1987, 43,464m. kwh. Domestic consumption was rationed in 1987-88.

**Oil.** Oil is extracted in the Balchik district on the Black Sea, in an area 100 km north of Varna and at Dolni Dubnik near Pleven. There are refineries at Burgas (annual capacity 5m. tonnes) and Dolni Dubnik (7m. tonnes). Total crude oil production (1988) 280,000 tonnes.

**Minerals.** Ore production 1987: Manganese, 10,900 tonnes; iron, 559,000 tonnes. 38.5m. tonnes of coal including 372,000 tonnes of hard coal and 31.4m. tonnes of lignite were mined in 1987. 92 tonnes of salt were extracted in 1987.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 agricultural land covered 6,165,300 hectares, of which 4,650,300 hectares were arable.

Size of private plots (maximum, 1 hectare) is based on the number of members of a household. Total area of private plots in 1987 was 616,300 hectares. Collective and state farms have been incorporated into 'agricultural-industrial complexes'. There were 285 of these in 1987. 146,351 tractors (in 15-h.p. units) were in use and 14,125 combine harvesters.

In 1982, 26 irrigation systems and 161 dams irrigated 1,169,900 hectares.

Production in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat, 4,149; maize, 1,858; barley, 1,091; sugar beet, 772; sunflower seed, 410; seed cotton, 20; tobacco, 133; tomatoes, 835; potatoes, 318; grapes, 916. Bulgaria produces 80% of the world supply of attar of roses; annual production, 1,200 kg.

Other products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1987: Meat, 883; wool, 32; honey, 11; 2,867m. eggs were produced and 2,513m. litres of milk.

Livestock (1988, in 1,000s): 123 horses, 1,649 cattle, including 646 milch cows, 8,886 sheep, 4,034 pigs, 41,424 poultry and 608 beehives.

**Forestry.** Forest area, 1987, was 3,868,000 hectares (34% coniferous, 25% oak). 46,041 hectares were afforested in 1987 and 6.7m. cu. metres of timber were cut.

**Fisheries.** Catch, 1982: 115,600 tonnes (15,600 tonnes freshwater).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** All industry was nationalized in 1947 and is divided into 11 associations of up to 150 linked enterprises. A Labour Code of 1986 provides for the self-management of enterprises and the election of management by the workforce.

<i>Industrial production</i>	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Crude steel (1,000 tonnes)	2,584	2,831	2,878	2,944	2,965	3,045
Pig-iron (1,000 tonnes)	1,558	1,623	1,578	1,702	1,615	1,652
Cement (1,000 tonnes)	5,614	5,644	5,717	5,296	5,700	5,494
Sulphuric acid (1,000 tonnes)	916	861	908	810	807	689

In 1987 there were also produced (in 1,000 tonnes): Coke, 1,314; rolled steel, 3,325; artificial fertilizers, 2,003; calcinated soda, 689; sugar, 416; cotton fabrics, 352m. metres; woollens, 43m. metres.

**Labour.** There is 42½-hour 5-day working week. The average wage (excluding peasantry) was 2,791 leva per annum in 1987. Population of working age (males 16-60; females 16-55), 1985, 5.02m. (2.7m. males). The labour force (excluding

peasantry) in 1987 was 4,112,674 (49.8% female), of whom 2,811,334 (44.9%) were manual labourers. 1,422,215 worked in industry, 350,711 in building and 875,202 in agriculture and forestry. There were some 4m. trade union members in 1988.

**Commerce.** Foreign trade is controlled by the Ministry of Foreign Trade. Bulgarian trade has developed as follows (in 1m. foreign exchange leva):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	10,976	11,966	12,842	14,067	14,353	14,067
Exports	10,880	11,818	12,987	13,739	13,351	13,802

Proportion of major exports in 1987: Production machinery, 59%; foods, 11%; industrial consumer goods, 10%. Imports: Production machinery, 44%; fuels, 32%; chemicals, 6%.

Main exports are food products, tobacco, non-ferrous metals, cast iron, leather articles, textiles and (to Communist countries) machinery; main imports are machinery, oil, natural gas, steel, cellulose and timber.

81% of Bulgaria's trade is with the Communist countries (59% with USSR). Agreements with USSR envisage the co-ordination of Soviet and Bulgarian 5-year plans. Indebtedness to the West was US\$5,400m. in 1988. Libya is Bulgaria's biggest non-Communist export market, the Federal Republic of Germany her major non-Communist supplier.

Total trade between Bulgaria and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	17,345	22,291	32,459	24,249	28,068
Exports and re-exports from UK	55,917	109,970	80,504	88,761	82,156

Joint Western-Bulgarian industrial ventures have been permitted since 1980. Western share participation may exceed 50%. There were 6 in operation in 1985. In Oct. 1987 the Bulgarian government offered to repurchase Bulgarian bonds.

**Tourism.** Since 1988 5-year passports have been issued instead of ad hoc excats. Bulgaria received 7.59m. foreign visitors in 1987 and 540,000 Bulgarians made visits abroad.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 36,908 km of roads, including 242 km of motorways and 2,938 km of main roads. 940m. passengers and 917m. tonnes of freight were carried.

**Railways.** In 1987 there were 4,294 km of standard gauge railway, including 2,510 km electrified. 110m. passengers and 83m. tonnes of freight were carried.

**Aviation.** BALKAN (Bulgarian Airlines) operates internal flights from Sofia (airport: Vrazhdebna) and international flights to Algiers, Amsterdam, Athens, Baghdad, Bratislava, Belgrade, Benghazi, Berlin, Brussels, Bucharest, Budapest, Cairo, Casablanca, Copenhagen, Damascus, Dresden, Frankfurt, Istanbul, London, Madrid, Moscow, Nicosia, Paris, Prague, Rome, Stockholm, Syktyvkar, Tunis, Vienna, Warsaw and Zurich. There are also flights from Burgas to Leningrad and Kiev, and from Varna to Leningrad, Kuwait, Athens and Stockholm. In 1987 BALKAN carried 2.8m. passengers and 24,213 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** Ports, shipping and shipbuilding are controlled by the Bulgarian United Shipping and Shipbuilding Corporation. In 1982 it had 194 ocean-going vessels with a loading capacity of 1.6m. DWT. Burgas is a fishing and oil-port open to tankers of 20,000 tons. Varna is the other important port. There is a rail ferry between Varna and Ilitchovsk (USSR). In 1987 Bulgaria set up an exclusive economic zone extending 200 miles into the Black Sea. In 1987, 460,000 passengers and 26m. tonnes of cargo were carried by sea-borne shipping, and 299,000 passengers and 4.08m. tonnes of freight by inland waterways.

**Pipeline.** Conveyed 21m. tonnes in 1987.



**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 4,053 post and telecommunications offices, 2,228,681 telephones, 80 radio transmitters and 43 television transmitters. Radio Sofia transmits 2 TV programmes and 2 radio programmes on medium- and short-waves. A service for tourists is broadcast *via* the Varna II transmitter on 1,124 kHz. Advertisements are broadcast for half an hour a day. Bulgaria participates in the East European TV link 'Intervision'. Colour programmes by SECAM system. Radio receiving sets licensed in 1987, 1,982,929; television, 1,692,711.

**Cinemas and Theatres (1987).** There were 37 theatres, 20 puppet theatres, 8 opera houses, 1 operetta house and 3,305 cinemas. 705 films were made (35 full-length).

**Newspapers and Books.** In 1987 there were 17 dailies with a circulation of 2.2m. and 377 other periodicals. The Party newspaper is *Rabotnicheskoto Delo* ('The Workers' Cause'), circulation 811,455 in 1987. 3,786 book titles were published in 1987.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A law of Nov. 1982 provides for the election (and recall) of all judges by the National Assembly. There are a Supreme Court, 28 provincial courts (including Sofia), 105 regional courts and 'Comrades' Courts' for minor offences. Jurors are elected at the local government elections.

The maximum term of imprisonment is 20 years. 'Exceptionally dangerous crimes' carry the death penalty. In 1985 harsh penalties were imposed for terrorist acts and drug smuggling following incidences of both.

The Prosecutor General who is elected by the National Assembly for 5 years and subordinate to it alone, exercises supreme control over the observance of the law by all government bodies, officials and citizens. He appoints and discharges all Prosecutors of every grade. The powers of this office were extended and redefined by a law of 1980 to put a greater emphasis on crime prevention and the rights of citizens.

**Religion.** 'The traditional church of the Bulgarian people' (as it is officially described), is that of the Eastern Orthodox Church. It was disestablished under the 1947 Constitution. In 1953 the Bulgarian Patriarchate was revived. The present Patriarch is Metropolitan Maksim of Lovech (enthroned 1971). The seat of the Patriarch is at Sofia. There are 11 dioceses, each under a Metropolitan, 10 bishops, 2,600 parishes, 1,700 priests, 400 monks and nuns, 3,700 churches and chapels, one seminary and one theological college.

The Constitution provides for freedom of conscience and belief but forbids propaganda against the Government. The State provides 17% of Church funds.

Churches may not maintain schools or colleges, except theological seminaries, or organize youth movements.

In 1987 there were some 60,000 Roman Catholics (including 10,000 Uniates) in 2 bishoprics with (in 1983) 42 priests (20 Uniates) in 50 parishes. In 1984 there were 5 Protestant groups: Pentecostals (10,000 members, 120 churches, 30 pastors); Baptists (1,000 members, 20 churches); Methodists; Congregationalists; Adventists. There were estimated to be about 700,000 practising Moslems in 1984 under a Chief Mufti elected by 7 regional muftis. There were about 1,000 mosques in 1987.

**Education.** Education is free, and compulsory for children between the ages of 7 and 16. The gradual introduction of unified secondary polytechnical schools offering compulsory education for all children from the ages of 7 to 17 was begun in 1973-74. Complete literacy is claimed. Schools are classified according to which years of schooling they offer: Elementary (1-3), primary (1-8), preparatory (4-8), secondary (9-11), complete secondary (1-11).

Educational statistics for 1987-88: 4,840 kindergartens (344,396 children, 28,652 teachers); 732 elementary schools; 2,159 primary schools; 44 preparatory schools; 72 secondary schools; 482 complete secondary schools. Numbers of teachers and pupils: School years 1 to 3, 24,442 and 412,520; 4 to 8, 37,612 and 679,677; 9 to 11, 9,837 and 167,845. There were also 4 vocational-technical

schools (51 teachers, 1,343 students), 261 secondary vocational-technical schools (7,405 teachers, 106,564 students), 248 technical colleges (10,619 teachers, 115,036 students), 16 post-secondary institutions (780 teachers, 11,019 students) and 30 institutes of higher education (15,941 teachers, 116,407 students). University entrance is by competitive examination. Failure rate was 65% in 1985. There are 3 universities: the Kliment Ohrid University in Sofia (founded 1888) had 1,502 teachers and 15,501 students (in 1987–88); the Kirill i Metodii University in Veliko Tŭrnovo (founded 1971) had 417 teachers and 5,042 students and the Paisi Hilendarski University in Plovdiv (founded 1961) had 487 teachers and 5,117 students.

The Academy of Sciences was founded in 1869.

**Social Welfare.** Retirement and disablement pensions and temporary sick pay are calculated as a percentage of previous wages (respectively 55–80%, 35–100%, 69–90%) and according to the nature of the employment.

Monthly family allowances for children under 16: 15 leva for 1 child, 60 leva for 2 children and 115 leva for 3 children.

In 1986, 2.25m. persons received pensions totalling 2,650m. leva.

All medical services are free. In 1987 there were 185 hospitals (including 15 mental hospitals and addiction treatment centres) and 85,804 beds. There were 27,107 doctors and 5,229 dentists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Bulgaria in Great Britain (186 Queen's Gate, London, SW7 5HL)  
*Ambassador:* Dimitar Aleksandrov Zhulev (accredited 25 Feb. 1987).

Of Great Britain in Bulgaria (Blvd. Marshal Tolbukhin 65–67, Sofia)  
*Ambassador:* Richard Thomas.

Of Bulgaria in the USA (1621 22nd St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Velichko Velichkov.

Of the USA in Bulgaria (1 Stamboliski Blvd., Sofia)  
*Ambassador:* Sol Polansky.

Of Bulgaria to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Aleksandŭr Strezov.

## Further Reading

- Kratka Bŭlgarska Entsiklopediia* (Short Bulgarian Encyclopaedia), 5 vols. Sofia, 1963–69  
*Statistical Reference Book: PR of Bulgaria*. Sofia, annual from 1988  
*Statisticheski Godishnik* (Statistical Yearbook). Sofia from 1956  
*Constitution of the People's Republic of Bulgaria*. Sofia, 1971  
*Information Bulgaria*. Oxford, 1985  
*Modern Bulgaria: History, Politics, Economy, Culture*. Sofia, 1981  
*Normative Acts of the Foreign Economic Relations of the People's Republic of Bulgaria*. Sofia, 1982  
Atanasova, T., et al., *Bulgarian-English Dictionary*. Sofia, 1975  
Bell, J. D., *The Bulgarian Communist Party from Blagoev to Zhivkov*. Stanford, 1985  
Crampton, R. J., *A Short History of Modern Bulgaria*. CUP, 1987  
Feiwel, G. R., *Growth and Reforms in Centrally Planned Economies: the Lessons of the Bulgarian Experience*. New York, 1977  
Lampe, J. R., *The Bulgarian Economy in the Twentieth Century*. London, 1986  
Pundeff, M. V., *Bulgaria: A Bibliographic Guide*. Library of Congress, 1965  
Zhivkov, T., *Modern Bulgaria: Problems and Tasks in Building an Advanced Socialist Society*. New York, 1974.—*Marxist Concepts and Practices*. Oxford, 1984.—*Statesman and Builder of New Bulgaria*. 2nd ed. Oxford, 1985

# BURKINA FASO

*Capital:* Ouagadougou

*Population:* 8.53m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$150 (1986)

**HISTORY.** A separate colony of Upper Volta was in 1919 carved out of the colony of Upper Senegal and Niger, which had been established in 1904. In 1932 it was abolished and most of its territory transferred to Ivory Coast, with small parts added to French Sudan and Niger, but it was re-constituted with its former borders on 4 Sept. 1947. Upper Volta became an autonomous republic within the French Community on 1-1 Dec. 1958 and reached full independence on 5 Aug. 1960.

On 3 Jan. 1966 the government of Maurice Yameogo was overthrown by a military *coup* led by Lieut-Col. Sangoulé Lamizana, who assumed the Presidency. In a further *coup* on 25 Nov. 1980, President Lamizana was overthrown and a military regime assumed power. Further *coups* took place on 7 Nov. 1982, 4 Aug. 1983 and 15 Oct. 1987. The name of the country was changed to Burkina Faso in 1984.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Burkina Faso is bounded north and west by Mali, east by Niger, south by Benin, Togo, Ghana and the Côte d'Ivoire. The republic covers an area of 274,122 sq. km; population (census, 1985) 7,967,019 (3,846,518 males). Estimate (1988) 8.53m. The largest cities (1985 census) are Ouagadougou, the capital (442,223), Bobo-Dioulasso (231,162), Koudougou (51,670), Ouahigouya (38,604), Banfora (35,204), Kaya (25,799), Fada N'Gourma and Tenkodogo.

The areas and populations of the 30 provinces were:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1985</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1985</i>
Bam	4,017	164,263	Nahouri	3,843	105,273
Bazéga	5,313	306,976	Namentenga	7,755	198,798
Bougouriba	7,087	221,522	Ouhritenga	4,693	303,229
Boulgou	9,033	403,358	Oudalan	10,046	105,715
Boulkiemde	4,138	363,594	Passoré	4,078	225,115
Comoé	18,393	250,510	Poni	10,361	234,501
Ganzourgou	4,087	196,006	Sanguie	5,165	218,289
Gnagna	8,600	229,249	Sanmatenga	9,213	368,365
Gourma	26,613	294,123	Sèno	13,473	230,043
Houet	16,472	585,031	Sissili	13,736	246,844
Kadiogo	1,169	459,138	Soum	13,350	190,464
Kénédougou	8,307	139,722	Sourou	9,487	267,770
Kossi	13,177	330,413	Tapoa	14,780	159,121
Kouritenga	1,627	197,027	Yatenga	12,292	537,205
Mouhoun	10,442	289,213	Zoundwéogo	3,453	155,142

The principal ethnic groups are the Mossi (48%), Fulani (10%), Lobi-Dagari (7%), Mandé (7%), Bobo (7%), Sénoufo (6%), Gourounsi (5%), Bissa (5%), Gourmantché (5%). French is the official language.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate with a wet season from May to Nov. and a dry season from Dec. to April. Rainfall decreases from south to north. Ouagadougou. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 36" (894 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following the *coup* of 15 Oct. 1987, when President Sankara was killed, the ruling National Recovery Council was dissolved and the government re-shuffled. A new Military Council was formed on 31 Oct. 1987

*President of CNR, Head of State and Government:* Capt. Blaise Compaoré.

The ruling Popular Front appointed a Council of Ministers, composed in Sept. 1988 as follows:



*Popular Defence and Security:* Maj. Jean-Baptiste Boukary Lingani. *External Relations:* Jean Marc Palm. *Justice:* Salif Sampegbo. *Economic Development:* Capt. Henri Zongo. *Health and Social Welfare:* Alain Zougba. *Secondary and Higher Education and Scientific Research:* Clément Oumarou Ouedraogo. *Planning and Co-operation:* Youssouf Ouedraogo. *Territorial Administration:* Jean-Léonard Compaoré. *Information and Culture:* Serge Théophile Balima. *Environment and Tourism:* Beatrice Damiba. *Commerce and People's Supply:* Frederic Korsaga. *Transport and Communications:* Issa Konate. *Peasant Co-operatives:* Capt. Laurent Sedgho. *Equipment:* Capt. Kambou Daprou. *Sports:* Capt. Hein Théodore Kilimite. *Labour, Social Security and Civil Service:* Nabou Kanidoua. *Finance:* Bintou Sanogo. *Agriculture and Livestock:* Albert Guigma. *Water Resources:* Alfred Nombre. *Primary Education and Mass Literacy:* Alice Tiendrebeogo. *Secretary-Gen. of the Revolutionary Committees:* Capt. Arsène Ye Bognessan. *Secretary-Gen. of the Council of Ministers:* Prosper Vocouma.

There are also 7 Secretaries of State.

*National flag:* Horizontally red over green with a yellow star over all in the centre.

*Local government:* The country is divided into 30 provinces and 250 districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 5 infantry regiments, 1 airborne regiment and support units. Equipment includes about 83 armoured cars. Strength (1989), 7,000 with a further 1,500 men in paramilitary forces.

**Air Force.** Creation of a small air arm to support the land forces began, with French assistance, in 1964. Combat equipment includes 5 MiG-21 fighters and 2 MiG-21U trainers and 6 SF.260W Warrior light strike aircraft. Other equipment comprises 2 HS.748 twin-turboprop freighters, 1 C-47, 2 twin-turboprop Nord 262s, an Aero Commander 500, 2 Broussard and 1 Reims/Cessna Super Skymaster for transport and liaison duties, 1 Cessna 172 trainer, and 3 Dauphin and Alouette III helicopters. Personnel total (1989) 200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Burkina Faso is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 5-year Development Plan (1986-90) aimed at economic sufficiency and envisages expenditure of 630,000m. francs CFA.

**Budget.** Government revenue in 1988 was 90,295m. francs CFA and expenditure 96,285m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc* CFA with a parity rate of 50 francs CFA to 1 French franc. In March 1989, £1 = 541.63 francs; US\$1 = 314.72 francs.

**Banking.** The *Banque Centrale des Etats de l'Afrique de l'Ouest* is the bank of issue. The main commercial bank is the *Banque Internationale du Burkina*. In Dec. 1982 it had deposits of 32,046m. francs CFA.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production of electricity (1986) was 159m. kwh.

**Minerals.** There are deposits of manganese near Tambao in the north, but exploitation is limited by existing transport facilities. Magnetite, bauxite, zinc, lead, nickel and phosphates have been found in the same area. Gold was discovered in 1987 at Assakan, near the Malian border.

**Agriculture.** Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Sorghum, 1,012; millet, 687; sugar-cane, 345; maize, 158; groundnuts, 152; rice, 28; seed cotton, 142; sesame, 16. Rice and groundnuts are of increasing importance.

**Livestock** (1987): 3.17m. cattle, 2.3m. sheep, 3.43m. goats, 70,000 horses, 200,000 donkeys.

**Forestry.** In 1983, 25% of the land was forested, chiefly in the deep river valleys of the Mouhoun (Black Volta), Nakambe, (White Volta) and Nazinon (Red Volta). Production (1985), 6.69m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** River fishing produced 7,000 tonnes in 1983.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1982 gross manufacturing (including energy) was 68,146,600 francs CFA, of which textiles (3,666,600 francs CFA) and metal products (2,795,100 francs CFA).

**Labour.** In 1982 the labour force was 3,503,610 of whom 2,873,000 (82%) were engaged in agriculture, forestry and fishing. The trade union federation is the *Confédération syndicale burkinabe*.

**Commerce.** In 1985 imports totalled 146,243m. francs CFA and exports 31,157m. francs CFA. The major exports were cotton (37%) and karite nuts (7%). In 1983 France provided 28%, the Côte d'Ivoire 24% and USA 9% of imports, while the Côte d'Ivoire took 9%, France 12%, Taiwan 27%, China 11% and UK 8% of exports.

Total trade between Burkina Faso and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	557	1,369	462	546
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,729	3,104	4,168	3,732

**Tourism.** There were 60,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The road system comprises 13,134 km, of which 4,396 km are national, 1,744 km departmental, 2,364 km regional and 1,940 km unclassified roads. In 1982 there were 33,769 vehicles, comprising 16,463 private cars, 419 buses, 14,852 commercial vehicles, 411 special vehicles and 1,123 tractors.

**Railway.** An independent Burkina Faso railway organization was established in 1988 to run the portion in Burkina (495 km of metre-gauge) of the former Abidjan-Niger Railway. An extension was under construction (1989) from the terminus at Ouagadougou to Kaya (107 km).

**Aviation.** Ouagadougou and Bobo-Dioulasso are regularly served by UTA and Air Afrique and in 1982 dealt with 120,684 passengers and 6,778 tonnes of freight. Air Burkina operates all internal flights to 47 domestic airports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1982, some 42 post offices and (1981) 10,625 telephones. There are radio stations at Ouagadougou and Bobo-Dioulasso and (1984) 116,000 receivers. The state television service, *Télévision Nationale du Burkina*, broadcasts 6 days a week in Ouagadougou; there were (1984) 20,000 receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1982 there were 12 cinemas with 14,000 seats.

**Newspapers.** Four daily newspapers were published in Ouagadougou in 1986.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court in Ouagadougou and Courts of Appeal at Ouagadougou and Bobo-Dioulasso. Revolutionary People's Tribunals have replaced the former lower courts.

**Religion.** In 1980 45% of the population followed animist religions; 43% were Moslem and 12% Christian (mainly Roman Catholic).

**Education.** There were (in 1984) 276,732 pupils and 4,796 teachers in 1,037

primary schools, 43,001 pupils and 1,553 teachers in 79 secondary schools, 4,492 students with 484 teachers in 27 technical schools and (1980) 495 students in teacher-training establishments. The Université d'Ouagadougou had 3,870 students and 216 teaching staff in 1984.

**Health** (1980). There were 5 hospitals, 254 dispensaries, 11 medical centres, 65 regional clinics and 167 mobile clinics with a total of 4,587 beds. There were 119 doctors, 14 surgeons, 52 pharmacists, 163 health assistants, 229 midwives and 1,345 nursing personnel.

A 10-year health programme started in 1979, providing for 7,000 village health centres, 515 district health centres, regional and sub-regional medical centres, 10 departmental hospitals, 2 national hospitals and a university centre of health sciences in Ouagadougou.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Burkina Faso in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Amadé Ouedraogo, resides in Brussels (accredited 11 July 1984).

Of Great Britain in Burkina Faso

*Ambassador:* V. E. Sutherland, CMG (resides in Abidjan).

Of Burkina Faso in the USA (2340 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Paul-Desire Kabore.

Of the USA in Burkina Faso (PO Box 35, Ouagadougou)

*Ambassador:* Leonardo Neher.

Of Burkina Faso to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

### Further Reading

MacFarlane, D. M., *Historical Dictionary of Upper Volta*. Metuchen, 1978



# BURMA

*Capital:* Rangoon  
*Population:* 39.84m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$200 (1986)

## Pyidaungsu Myanma Naingngandaw

**HISTORY.** The Union of Burma came formally into existence on 4 Jan. 1948 and became the Socialist Republic of the Union of Burma in 1974. In 1948 Sir Hubert Rance, the last British Governor, handed over authority to Sao Shwe Thaik, the first President of the Burmese Republic, and Parliament ratified the treaty with Great Britain providing for the independence of Burma as a country not within His Britannic Majesty's dominions and not entitled to His Britannic Majesty's protection. This treaty was signed in London on 17 Oct. 1947 and enacted by the British Parliament on 10 Dec. 1947.

For the history of Burma's connexion with Great Britain see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1950, p. 836.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Burma is bounded east by China, Laos and Thailand, west by the Indian ocean, Bangladesh and India. The total area of the Union is 261,228 sq. miles (676,577 sq. km). The population in 1983 (census) was 35,313,905. Estimate (1988) 39,840,000. Birth rate (1977 estimate), 29.1; death rate, 10.4 per 1,000 population; infant deaths, 56.3 per 1,000 live births. The leading towns are: Rangoon, the capital (1983), 2,458,712; other towns, Mandalay, 532,985; Moulmein, 219,991; Pegu, 150,447; Bassein, 144,092; Sittwe (Akyab), 107,907; Taunggye, 107,607; Monywa, 106,873.

The population of the 7 States and 7 Divisions at the 1983 census (provisional): Kachin State, 903,982; Kayah State, 168,355; Karen State, 1,057,505; Chin State, 368,985; Sagaing Division, 3,855,991; Tenasserim Division, 917,628; Pegu Division, 3,800,240; Magwe Division, 3,241,103; Mandalay Division, 4,580,923; Mon State, 1,682,041; Rakhine State, 2,045,891; Rangoon Division, 3,973,782; Shan State, 3,718,706; Irrawaddy Division, 4,991,057.

The Burmese belong to the Tibeto-Chinese (or Tibeto-Burman) family.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is equatorial in coastal areas, changing to tropical monsoon over most of the interior, but humid temperate in the extreme north, where there is a more significant range of temperature and a dry season lasting from Nov. to April. In coastal parts, the dry season is shorter. Very heavy rains occur in the monsoon months May to Sept. Rangoon. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 104" (2,616 mm). Akyab. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 206" (5,154 mm). Mandalay. Jan. 68°F (20°C), July 85°F (29.4°C). Annual rainfall 33" (828 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 18 Sept. 1988, the Armed Forces, under Chief of Defence Staff Gen. Saw Maung, seized power and set up a State Law and Order Restoration Council, with Gen. Saw Maung as Chairman.

A government was formed on 20 Sept. 1988, consisting of:

*Prime Minister, Defence, Foreign Affairs:* Gen. Saw Maung.

*Planning and Finance, Energy, Mines:* Rear-Adm. Maung Maung Khin. *Transport and Communications, Construction:* Maj.-Gen. Tin Tun. *Home and Religious Affairs, Information and Culture:* Maj.-Gen. Phone Myint. *Education, Social Welfare and Labour:* Brig.-Gen. Aung Ye Kyaw. *Industry:* Maj.-Gen. Sein Aung. *Co-operatives, Livestock Breeding and Fisheries, Agriculture and Fisheries:* Maj.-Gen. Chit Swe. *Trade:* Col. Abel. *Health:* Dr Pe Thein.

*National flag:* Red with a blue canton bearing 2 ears of rice within a cog-wheel and a ring of 14 stars, all in white.

*Language:* The official language is Burmese; the use of English is permitted.

*Local government:* Burma is divided into 7 states and 7 administrative divisions; these are sub-divided into 314 townships and thence into villages and wards.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The strength of the Army (1989) was 170,000. The Army is organized into 9 regional commands comprising 7 light infantry divisions. Combat units comprise 2 armoured, 165 independent infantry and 4 artillery battalions, and 1 anti-aircraft battery. Equipment includes over 20 Comet tanks, 40 Humber armoured cars and 45 Ferret scout cars. In addition, there are 2 paramilitary units: People's Police Force (38,000) and People's Militia (35,000).

**Navy.** The fleet includes 2 old escort patrol vessels (*ex*-USA PCE and MSF types), 2 small indigenously built corvettes, 3 new patrol craft, 21 gunboats, 7 river gunboats, 30 small river patrol craft, 1 support ship, 2 survey vessels, 12 fishery protection cutters (3 offshore, 3 coastal, 6 inshore), 10 auxiliaries and 12 landing craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 7,000 including 800 marines.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is intended primarily for internal security duties. Its combat force comprises about 5 T-33A jet fighter/trainers supplied under MAP, supplemented by 15 SIAI-Marchetti SF.260W light piston-engined attack/trainers. Other training aircraft include 20 turboprop Pilatus PC-7s and PC-9s, and 10 jet-powered T-37Cs. Transport and second-line units are equipped with 4 FH-227, 7 Turbo-Porter, 1 Citation and 10 Cessna 180 aircraft, 10 Japanese-built Bell 47 (H-13), 12 Bell UH-1, and 10 Alouette III helicopters. Personnel (1989) 9,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Burma is a member of the UN and Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Development Plan, 1986–90, envisages a total investment of K.14,000m.

**Budget.** The budget estimates (in K.lm.) for fiscal year 1 April 1988–31 March 1989 was revenue K.31,083m. and expenditure K.30,042m.

The largest items, in 1986–87, of revenue were commodities and service tax (K.5,778m.) and customs (K.4,208m.); of expenditure, processing and manufacturing (K.2,490m.); trade (K.1,000m.); mining (2,841m.).

**Currency.** The currency unit is now the *kyat* divided into 100 *pyas*. There are notes of *kyat* 90, 45, 15, 10, 5 and 1, and coins of *kyat* 1; *pyas* 100, 50, 25, 10, 5 and 1.

In March 1989, £1 = K.11.41 and US\$1 = K.6.63.

**Banking.** Banks include the Union of Burma Bank, the Myanmar Economic Bank, the Myanmar Foreign Trade Bank and the Myanmar Agricultural Bank, and the State Insurance Company is the Myanmar Insurance Corporation.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1987–88 the total installed capacity of the Electric Power Corporation was 746,000 kw., of which 258,000 was hydro-electricity, 92,000 steam-turbine, 302,000 natural gas and 94,000 diesel. Production (1987–88) 2,279m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Production (1988) of crude oil was 750,000 tonnes; natural gas 32,596m. cu. feet, petroleum (1986–87) 38,290m. cu. ft.

**Minerals.** Production in 1987–88 (in tonnes): Copper concentrates, 50,800; refined tin metal, 500; refined lead, 6,000; refined copper metal, 234; tin concen-

trates, 868; tungsten concentrates, 496; steel billets, 16,000; steel grinding balls, 3,000. Refined silver, 450,000 fine oz.; refined gold, 100 fine oz.

**Agriculture.** Production (1987–88) in 1,000 tonnes: Paddy, 13,722; sugar-cane, 2,969; maize, 277; jute, 41; cotton, 82; wheat, 241; butter beans, 122; soya beans, 24; rubber, 15.

Livestock (1987–88): Cattle, 9.9m.; buffaloes, 2.2m.; pigs, 3.1m.; sheep and goats, 1.5m.; poultry, 39.5m.

In 1987–88 the area irrigated by government-controlled irrigation works was 2,598,000 acres.

**Forestry.** The area of reserved forests in 1987–88 was 39,241 sq. miles. Teak extracted in 1987–88, 360,000 cu. tons; hardwood, 1,156,000 cu. tons. All the teak and about 60% of the hardwood is from the state sector. Other forest produce included 18,400,000 cu. tons of firewood and 867,000 cu. tons of charcoal.

**Fisheries.** In 1987–88 sea fishing produced 12,519,000 *viss* and freshwater fisheries 3,020,000 *viss*. [Ed. note 1 *viss* = 3.6 lb.].

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production (1987–88) in 1,000 tonnes: Cement, 490; sheet glass, 6.5; fertilizers, 326.4; sugar, 59.4; paper, 16.3; cotton yarn, 10.5. 2,300 motor cars, 700 tractors and 11,330 bicycles were produced in 1987–88.

**Labour.** Economically active (1987–88) 15.81m.

**Commerce.** All imports and exports are controlled by the government trading organizations.

Imports and exports (K.1 m.) for 1987–88: Imports 4,100 and exports 2,098.7.

Total trade between Burma and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	6,420	9,944	5,092	3,826	4,427
Exports and re-exports from UK	16,488	20,221	10,835	24,715	11,685

**Tourism.** There were 42,175 tourists in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 14,533 miles of road in 1987–88, of which 2,452 miles were union highway.

**Railways.** The Burma Railways were nationalized in 1948 and the present Burma Railways Corporation took over in 1972. In 1985 there were 2,774 miles of route on metre gauge. In 1987–88 the railway carried 2.28m. tons of freight and 65.9m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Burma Airways Corporation, formerly Union of Burma Airways, started its internal service in Sept. 1948 and its external service in Nov. 1950. Regular international services were (Nov. 1988) maintained only to Bangkok. There were, in 1987, 37 civil airfields.

**Shipping.** Burma has 60 miles of navigable canals. The Irrawaddy is navigable up to Myitkyina, 900 miles from the sea, and its tributary, the Chindwin, is navigable for 390 miles. The Irrawaddy delta has nearly 2,000 miles of navigable water. The Salween, the Attaran and the G'yne provide about 250 miles of navigable waters around Moulmein.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 1,113 post offices in 1987–88. Number of telephones was 61,872 in 1987–88. There were (1985) 7 radio stations and one television broadcasting station. In 1985 there were 725,000 radio and 35,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1971 there were about 418 cinemas.



**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 2 daily newspapers, 1 Burmese language and 1 English language.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The highest judicial authority is the Chief Judge, appointed by the State Law and Order Restoration Council.

**Religion.** Religious freedom is allowed. At the 1983 census, 68% of the population was Buddhist.

**Education.** The medium of instruction in all schools is Burmese; English is taught as a compulsory second language from kindergarten level.

Education is free in the primary, junior secondary and vocational schools; fees are charged in senior secondary schools and universities.

In 1986–87 there were 750 state high schools with 238,498 pupils, 1,772 state middle schools with 1,125,632 pupils and 33,499 state primary schools with 5,056,961 pupils; the total teaching staff was 218,206, of which 158,934 were in primary schools.

Beside the Arts and Science University, there are independent degree-giving institutes of engineering, education, medicine, agriculture, economics and commerce, and veterinary sciences. A foreign-languages institute in Rangoon had (1987) 1,127 students learning English, French, German, Russian, Japanese, Chinese and Italian.

There are intermediate colleges at Taunggyi, Magwe, Akyab and Myitkyina, and degree colleges at Moulmein and Bassein, and several technical and agricultural institutes at higher and middle level. 7,040 school teachers were being trained in 16 training colleges in 1986–87. Technical high schools had 5,414 students; agricultural schools, 1,675; other vocational colleges, 4,639, and university colleges 91,748.

**Health.** In 1986–87 there were 10,579 doctors and 636 hospitals with 26,839 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Burma in Great Britain (19A Charles St., London, W1X 8ER)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Burma (80 Strand Rd., Rangoon)

*Ambassador:* Martin Morland, CMG.

Of Burma in the USA (2300 S. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* U Myo Aung.

Of the USA in Burma (581 Merchant St., Rangoon)

*Ambassador:* Burton Levin.

Of Burma to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* U Maung Maung Gyi.

## Further Reading

*Burma: Treaty between the Government of the United Kingdom and the Provisional Government of Burma.* (Treaty Series No. 16, 1948.) HMSO, 1948

Cornyn, W. S. and Musgrave, J. K., *Burmese Glossary.* New York, 1958

Lehman, F. K., *The Structure of Chin Society.* Univ. of Illinois Press, 1963

Silverstein, J., *Burma: Military Rule and the Politics of Stagnation.* Cornell Univ. Press, 1978.

—*Burmese Politics: The Dilemma of National Unity.* Rutgers Univ. Press, 1980

Steinberg, D. I., *Burma.* Boulder, 1982

Stewart, J. A. and Dunn, C. W., *Burmese-English Dictionary.* London, 1940 ff.

Taylor, R. H., *The State of Burma.* London, 1988

# BURUNDI

*Capital:* Bujumbura

*Population:* 5·13m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$240 (1986)

## Republika y'Uburundi

**HISTORY.** Tradition recounts the establishment of a Tutsi kingdom under successive Mwamis as early as the 16th century. German military occupation in 1890 incorporated the territory into German East Africa. From 1919 Burundi formed part of Ruanda-Urundi administered by the Belgians, first as a League of Nations mandate and then as a UN trust territory. Internal self-government was granted on 1 Jan. 1962, followed by independence on 1 July 1962.

On 8 July 1966 Prince Charles Ndzizeye deposed his father Mwami Mwambutsa IV, suspended the constitution and made Capt. Michel Micombero Prime Minister. On 1 Sept. Prince Charles was enthroned as Mwami Ntare V. On 28 Nov., while the Mwami was attending a Head of States Conference in Kinshasa (Congo), Micombero declared Burundi a republic with himself as president.

On 31 March 1972 Prince Charles returned to Burundi from Uganda and was placed under house arrest. On 29 April 1972 President Micombero dissolved the Council of Ministers and took full power; that night heavy fighting broke out between rebels from both Burundi and neighbouring countries, and the ruling Tutsi, apparently with the intention of destroying the Tutsi hegemony. Prince Charles was killed during the fighting and it was estimated that up to 120,000 were killed. On 14 July 1972 President Micombero reinstated a Government with a Prime Minister. On 1 Nov. 1976 President Micombero was deposed by the Army, as was President Bagaza on 3 Sept. 1987.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Burundi is bounded north by Rwanda, east and south by Tanzania and west by Zaïre, and has an area of 27,834 sq. km (10,759 sq. miles).

The population at the census in 1986 was 4,782,406; estimate (1988) 5·13m. There are three ethnic groups—Hutu (Bantu, forming over 83% of the total); Tutsi (Nilotic, less than 15%); Twa (pygmoids, less than 1%). There are some 3,500 Europeans and 1,500 Asians. In 1988 some 270,000 Tutsi refugees were living in Burundi, the majority from Rwanda.

Bujumbura, the capital, had (1986 census) 272,600 inhabitants. Gitega (95,300) was formerly the royal residence.

The local language is Kirundi, a Bantu language. French is also an official language. Kiswahili is spoken in the commercial centres.

**CLIMATE.** An equatorial climate, modified by altitude. The eastern plateau is generally cool, the easternmost savanna several degrees hotter. The wet seasons are from March to May and Sept. to Dec. Bujumbura. Jan. 73°F (22·8°C), July 73°F (22·8°C). Annual rainfall 33" (825 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was promulgated on 21 Nov. 1981 and provides for a one-party state. The 65-member National Assembly elected in Oct. 1982 comprised 52 members elected by universal suffrage from a list of 104 candidates nominated by UPRONA (*Parti de l'Unité et du Progrès National du Burundi*), together with 13 members appointed by the President. President Bagaza became Party Chairman and Head of the Central Committee for a 5-year term in Jan. 1980 and was re-elected for a second 5-year term in Sept. 1984 but was deposed in Sept. 1987.

*President of the Republic, Minister of Defence:* Major Pierre Buyoya (assumed office 1 Oct. 1987).

*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Cyprien Mbonimpa.

*Finance:* Pierre Binoba.

*Flag:* White diagonal cross dividing triangles of red and green, in the centre a white disc bearing 3 red green-bordered 6-pointed stars.

*Local Government:* There are 15 provinces, each under a military governor, and sub-divided into 114 districts and then into communes.

**DEFENCE.** The national armed forces total (1989), 7,200 (there are also about 1,500 in paramilitary units) and include a small naval flotilla and air force flight of 3 SF 260, 3 Cessna 150 and 1 DO27 liaison aircraft, 4 Alouette III and 2 armed Gazelle helicopters. The Army comprises 2 infantry battalions, 1 parachute battalion, 1 commando battalion and 1 armoured-car company.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Burundi is a member of UN and OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1985 budget envisaged receipts of 17,152m. Burundi francs and expenditure at 18,757m. Burundi francs.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Burundi franc*. There are coins of 1, 5 and 10 *francs* and bank notes of 10, 20, 50, 100, 500, 1,000 and 5,000 *francs*. The exchange rate was 268.81 *Burundi francs* = £1 and 156.19 *Burundi francs* = US\$1 in March 1989.

**Banking.** The Bank of the Republic of Burundi is the central bank and 4 commercial banks have headquarters in Bujumbura.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system operates.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity production was (1986) 44m. kwh. The majority of the electricity is supplied by Zaïre. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Mineral ores such as bastnasite and cassenite were formerly mined but output is now insignificant. Gold is mined on a small scale. Deposits of nickel (280m. tonnes) and vanadium remain to be exploited.

**Agriculture.** The main economic activity and 85% of employment is subsistence agriculture. Beans, cassava, maize, sweet potatoes, groundnuts, peas, sorghum and bananas are grown according to the climate and the region.

The main cash crop is coffee, of which about 95% is arabica. It accounts for 90% of exports and taxes and levies on coffee constitute a major source of revenue. A coffee board (OCIBU) manages the grading and export of the crop. Production (1985) 36,000 tonnes. The main food crops (production 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are cassava (520), yams (7), bananas (1,260), dry beans (300), maize (160), sorghum (220), groundnuts (80) and peas (32). Other cash crops are cotton (7) and tea (3).

Cattle play an important traditional role, and there were about 360,000 head in 1987. There were (1987) some 865,000 goats, 390,000 sheep and 80,000 pigs.

**Forestry.** Production (1985) 3.6m. cu. metres. For most of the population wood is the main form of energy.

**Fisheries.** There is a small commercial fishing industry on Lake Tanganyika. The catch in 1985 totalled 14,900 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial development is rudimentary. In Bujumbura there are plants for the processing of coffee and by-products of cotton, a brewery, cement works, a textile factory, a soap factory, a shoe factory and small metal workshops.

**Commerce.** The total value of exports in 1986 was US\$184.6m., and of imports, US\$245.4m. Main exports in 1986 were coffee and tea. Main imports, petrol products, food, vehicles and textiles. In 1984, 34% of exports were to the Federal Republic of Germany, while Belgium supplied 15% and France 14% of imports.



Total trade between Burundi and the UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,924	3,367	3,074	1,330	1,807
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,710	1,592	2,324	2,867	2,922

**Tourism.** Tourism is developing and there were 66,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There is a road network of 5,144 km connecting with Rwanda, Zaïre and Tanzania. In 1984 there were 7,533 cars and 4,364 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** In 1984, 38,141 passengers arrived or departed through Bujumbura International airport, and there are local airports at Gitega, Nyanza-Lac, Kiofi and Nyakagunda.

**Shipping.** There are lake services from Bujumbura to Kigoma (Tanzania) and Kalémié (Zaïre). The main route for exports and imports is *via* Kigoma, and thence by rail to Dar es Salaam.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 38 post offices and 6,033 telephones. In 1986 there were 4,000 television and 230,000 radio sets.

**Cinemas.** In 1980 there were 7 cinemas with 2,000 seats.

**Newspapers.** There was (1984) one daily newspaper (*Le Renouveau*) with a circulation of 20,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court, an appeal court and a *tribunal de première instance* at Bujumbura and provincial tribunals in each provincial capital.

**Religion.** About 60% of the population is Roman Catholic; there is a Roman Catholic archbishop and 3 bishops. About 3% are Pentecostal, 1% Anglican and 1% Moslem, while the balance follow traditional tribal beliefs.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 387,710 pupils in 1,023 primary schools, 13,037 in 62 secondary schools, 12,902 in 47 technical schools and 2,783 students in higher education.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 216 doctors, 6 dentists, 24 pharmacists, 1,126 nursing personnel and 33 hospitals with 5,709 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Burundi in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Astère Nzisabira, resides in Brussels (accredited 10 June 1988).

Of Great Britain in Burundi

*Ambassador:* R. L. B. Cormack, CMG (resides in Kinshasa).

Of Burundi in the USA (2233 Wisconsin Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20007)

*Ambassador:* Edouard Kadigiri.

Of the USA in Burundi (PO Box 1720, Ave. du Zaïre, Bujumbura)

*Ambassador:* James Daniel Phillips.

Of Burundi to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Jonathas Niyungeko.

## Further Reading

Lemarchand, R., *Rwanda and Burundi*. London, 1970

Weinstein, W., *Historical Dictionary of Burundi*. Metuchen, 1976

# CAMBODIA

## People's Republic of Kampuchea

*Capital:* Phnom Penh

*Population:* 6.23m. (1985)

*GNP per capita:* No accurate  
estimate available (1989)

Since April 1975 the situation in Cambodia has been such that it has been impossible to obtain reliable statistical and other information.

**HISTORY.** The recorded history of Cambodia starts at the beginning of the Christian era with the Kingdom of Fou-Nan, whose territories at one time included parts of Thailand, Malaya, Cochinchina and Laos. The religious, cultural and administrative inspirations of this state came from India. The Kingdom was absorbed at the end of the 6th century by the Khmers, under whose monarchs was built, between the 9th and 13th centuries, the splendid complex of shrines and temples at Angkor. Attacked on either side by the Vietnamese and the Thai from the 15th century on, Cambodia was saved from annihilation by the establishment of a French protectorate in 1863. Thailand eventually recognized the protectorate and renounced all claims to suzerainty in exchange for Cambodia's north-western provinces of Battambang and Siem Reap, which were, however, returned under a Franco-Thai convention of 1907, confirmed in the Franco-Thai treaty of 1937. In 1904 the province of Stung Treng, formerly administered as part of Laos, was attached to Cambodia. For history to 1969 *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1973-74, p. 1112.

Following a period of increasing economic difficulties and growing indirect involvement in the Vietnamese war Prince Sihanouk was deposed in March 1970 and on 9 Oct. 1970 the Kingdom of Cambodia became the Khmer Republic. From 1970 hostilities extended throughout most of the country involving North and South Vietnamese and US forces as well as Republican and anti-Republican Khmer troops. During 1973 direct American and North Vietnamese participation in the fighting came to an end, leaving a civil war situation which continued during 1974 with large-scale fighting between forces of the Khmer Republic supported by American arms and economic aid and the forces of the United National Cambodian Front including 'Khmer Rouge' communists supported by North Vietnam and China.

After unsuccessful attempts to capture Phnom Penh in 1973 and 1974, the Khmer Rouge ended the 5-year war in April 1975, when the remnants of the republican forces surrendered the city.

From April 1975 the Khmer Rouge instituted a harsh and highly regimented régime. They cut the country off from normal contact with the world and expelled all foreigners. All cities and towns were forcibly evacuated and the population were set to work in the fields.

The régime had difficulties with the Vietnamese from 1975 and this escalated into full-scale fighting in 1977-78. On 7 Jan. 1979, Phnom Penh was captured by the Vietnamese, and the Prime Minister, Pol Pot, fled. In Dec. 1985 the Khmer Rouge still had 30,000 guerrillas fighting the Vietnamese in Cambodia. Pol Pot formally retired as C.-in-C. of the Khmer Rouge forces on 2 Sept. 1985 but retained an advisory role.

In June 1982 the Khmer Rouge (who claim to have abandoned their Communist ideology and to have disbanded their Communist Party) entered into a coalition with Son Sann's Khmer People's National Liberation Front and Prince Sihanouk's group. This government in exile is recognized by the UN.

In 1988 there were unofficial talks between Prince Sihanouk and Hun Sen and an informal meeting in Jakarta between the 4 Cambodian factions and their respective backers with the aim of obtaining a settlement of the political situation.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Cambodia is bounded north by Laos and Thailand, in the west by Thailand, east by Vietnam and south by the Gulf of Thailand. It has an area of about 181,035 sq. km (69,898 sq. miles).

The total population was 5,756,141 (census, 1981) of whom 93% were Khmer, 4% Vietnamese and 3% Chinese. Estimate (1985) 6,232,000.

The capital, Phnom Penh is located at the junction of the Mekong and Tonle Sap rivers. Populations of major towns have fluctuated greatly since 1970 by flows of refugees from rural areas and from one town to another. Phnom Penh formerly had a population of at least 2.5m. but a 1983 estimate puts it at 500,000. Other cities are Kompong Cham and Battambang. Khmer is the official language.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with high temperatures all the year. Phnom Penh. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 52" (1,308 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following the ousting of the Khmer Rouge régime, the Vietnamese-backed Kampuchean National United Front for National Salvation (KNUFNS) on 8 Jan. 1979 proclaimed a People's Republic and established a People's Revolutionary Council to administer the country. A 117-member National Assembly was elected on 1 May 1981 for a 5-year term, which was extended by its own decision in Feb. 1986; in June 1981 it ratified a new Constitution under which it appointed a 7-member Council of State and a 16-member Council of Ministers, replacing the Revolutionary Council.

*President of the Council of State:* Heng Samrin.

*Prime Minister:* Hun Sen.

*National flag:* Red with a five-towered silhouette of the temple of Angkor Wat in the centre in yellow.

**DEFENCE.** Since the end of the war in April 1975 there has been no accurate data on defence and the three sections below should be treated with great reserve. There is conscription into the armed forces.

**Army.** Strength (1989) 30,000 including 6 infantry divisions and some 50 supporting units. Equipment reported includes 80 T-54/-55 and 10 PT-76 tanks. There are also paramilitary police and militia units.

**Navy.** The Marine Royale Khmer was established on 1 March 1954 and became Marine Nationale Khmer on 9 Oct. 1970. It recently included 2 fast anti-submarine hydrofoil craft, 1 ex-Soviet fast attack craft, 9 coastal patrol craft, 29 river patrol boats, 3 surveying craft, 1 tug, 2 floating docks and 2 landing craft. About a third of this force is operational and the remainder of questionable fighting value. Two patrol vessels and 2 support (landing) gunboats escaped from Khmer Rouge, and 2 torpedo boats were believed to have sunk. Units since stricken include 7 amphibious vessels, 8 coastal patrol craft and 60 river patrol boats and service craft.

Naval personnel provided for in 1989 did not exceed 1,000.

**Air Force.** Aviation operations were resumed in 1988 under the aegis of the Army, equipment includes a small number of Mil Mi-8 transport helicopters and Mi-24 gunships.

## ECONOMY

**Currency.** Under the Khmer Rouge money was abolished, but in 1980 the use of money was restored by the People's Republic of Kampuchea. There are coins of 5 *sen* and banknotes of 10, 20 and 50 *sen* and of 1, 5, 10, 20 and 50 *riel*. In March 1989, £1 = 172.10 *riel*; US\$1 = 100 *riel*.

**Banking.** In 1964 all bank functions were taken over by government banks. In 1972 legislation permitted the re-opening of foreign banks but by the end of Dec. 1973 only a few representational offices had opened.



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 142m. kwh. Supply 120 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** A phosphate factory, jointly controlled by the State and private interests, was set up in 1966 near a deposit of an estimated 350,000 tons. Another deposit of about the same size is earmarked for exploitation. High-grade iron-ore deposits (possibly as much as 2.5m. tons) exist in Northern Cambodia, but are not exploited commercially because of transportation difficulties. Some small-scale gold panning (6,687 troy oz. in 1963) and gem (mainly zircon) mining is carried out at Pailin where there is potential for considerable expansion.

**Agriculture.** The overwhelming majority of the population is normally engaged in agriculture, fishing and forestry. Of the country's total area of 44m. acres, about 20m. are cultivable and over 20m. are forest land. In 1980, 1.5m. hectares were cultivated. Before the spread of war the high productivity provided for a low, but well-fed standard of living for the peasant farmers, the majority of whom owned the land they worked. A relatively small proportion of the food production entered the cash economy. The war and unwise pricing policies have led to a disastrous reduction in production to a stage in which the country had become a net importer of rice.

A crop of about 2m. tonnes of paddy was produced in 1986. Rubber production in 1985 amounted to 16,000 tonnes. Production of other crops (1986 in tonnes): Maize, 92,000; dry beans, 37,000; soybeans, 2,000.

Livestock (1987) FAO estimate: Cattle, 1.6m.; buffaloes, 700,000; sheep, 1,000; pigs, 1.3m.; horses, 14,000; poultry, 9m.

**Forestry.** Much of Cambodia's surface is covered by potentially valuable forests, 3.8m. hectares of which are reserved by the Government to be awarded to concessionaires, and are not at present worked to an appreciable extent. The remainder is available for exploitation by the local residents, and as a result some areas are over-exploited and conservation is not practised. There are substantial reserves of pitch pine. Roundwood production (1982) 5.1 m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Cambodia has the greatest freshwater fish resources in South-East Asia. Production in 1982 84,700 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Some development of industry had taken place before the spread of open warfare in 1970. Industry established and in operation in Jan. 1970 included a motor-vehicle assembly plant, 3 cigarette manufacturing concerns, a modern factory, several metal fabricating concerns, a distillery, a saw-mill, textile, fish canning, plywood, paper, cement, sugar sack, tyre, pottery and glassware factories and a cotton-ginnery. In the private sector there are about 3,200 manufacturing enterprises, producing a wide range of goods; most of them are small family concerns.

**Commerce.** Principal imports by order of value (1972) were petroleum products, metals and machinery (including vehicles), general foodstuffs and chemicals.

The only recorded export in 1972 was 7,328 tonnes of rubber. Much of the country's trade is with Hong Kong and Singapore.

Total trade between Cambodia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	72	77	58	268	55
Exports and re-exports from UK	635	467	217	435	322

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1981, 2,670 km of asphalt roads (including the 'Khmer-American Friendship Highway' from outside Phnom Penh to close to Kompong Som, built under the US aid programme and opened in July 1959), and 10,680 km of unsurfaced roads.

**Railways.** A line of 385 km (metre gauge) links Phnom Penh to Poipet (Thai frontier). In 1969 traffic amounted to 170m. passenger-km and 76m. ton-km. Work was completed during 1969 on a line Phnom Penh-Kompong Som *via* Takeo and Kampot. Total length, 649 km but by 1973 only a short stretch between Battambang and the Thai border remained in operation, the remainder having been closed by military action. Irregular passenger and freight trains were running over all the network in 1988.

**Aviation.** The Pochentong airport is 10 km from Phnom Penh. Air Kampuchea has 2 small aircraft.

**Shipping.** The port of Phnom Penh can be reached by the Mekong (through Vietnam) by ships of between 3,000 and 4,000 tons. In 1970, 97 ocean-going vessels imported 51,300 tons of cargo at Phnom Penh and exported 86,400 tons.

A new ocean port has been built under the French aid programme at Kompong Som (formerly Sihanoukville) on the Gulf of Siam and is being increasingly used by long-distance shipping.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 58 post offices functioning in 1968. There are telephone exchanges in all the main towns; number of telephones in 1981, 7,315. There is an International Telex network in Phnom Penh and direct telephone and telegraphic links with Singapore. In 1986 there were 6 radio stations and 200,000 receivers, and 2 television stations with 52,000 receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there were 16 daily newspapers.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** In 1980 the majority of the population practised Theravada Buddhism. The Constitution of 1976 ended Buddhism as the State religion. There are small Roman Catholic and Moslem minorities.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 1,504,840 pupils in primary schools, 147,730 in secondary schools and 7,334 in vocational establishments. Phnom Penh University reopened in 1988.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 200 doctors, 130 pharmacists and 146 hospitals and clinics with 16,200 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

UK and USA Embassies have been closed as have Cambodian Embassies in London and Washington.

Of Democratic Kampuchea to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Thiounn Prasith.

## Further Reading

- Ablin, D. A. and Hood, M., (eds.) *The Cambodian Agony*. London and New York, 1987  
 Barron, J. and Paul, A., *Murder of a Gentle Land*. New York, 1977.—*Peace with Horror*. London, 1977  
 Debré, F., *La Révolution de la Forêt*. Paris, 1976  
 Etcheson, C., *The Rise and Demise of Democratic Kampuchea*. London, 1984  
 Kiljunen, K., (ed.) *Kampuchea: Decade of the Genocide*. London, 1984  
 McDonald, M., *Angkor*. London, 1958  
 Ponchaud, F., *Cambodia, Year Zero*. London, 1978  
 Vickery, M., *Cambodia: 1975–1982*. London, 1984

# CAMEROON

*Capital:* Yaoundé

*Population:* 11 m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$910 (1986)

## République du Cameroun

**HISTORY.** The former German colony of Kamerun was occupied by French and British troops in 1916. The greater portion of the territory (422,673 sq. km) was in 1919 placed under French administration, excluding the territory ceded to Germany in 1911, which reverted to French Equatorial Africa. The portion under French trusteeship was granted full internal autonomy on 1 Jan. 1959 and complete independence was proclaimed on 1 Jan. 1960.

The portion assigned to British trusteeship consisted of 2 parts where separate plebiscites were held in Feb. 1961. The northern part decided in favour of joining Nigeria, while the southern part decided to join the Cameroon Republic. This was implemented on 1 Oct. 1961 with the formation of a Federal Republic of Cameroon. As a result of a national referendum, Cameroon became a unitary republic on 2 June 1972. In Jan. 1984 the country was renamed the Republic of Cameroon.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Cameroon is bounded west by the Gulf of Guinea, north-west by Nigeria and east by Chad, with Lake Chad at its northern tip, and the Central African Republic, and south by Congo, Gabon and Equatorial Guinea. The total area is 465,054 sq. km (179,558 sq. miles). Population (1976 census) 7,663,246 (28.5% urban). Estimate (1988) 11,082,000.

The areas, populations and chief towns of the 10 provinces were:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1976</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>	<i>Estimate 1981</i>
Adamaoua	63,691	359,227	Ngaoundéré	47,508
Centre	68,926	1,176,206	Yaoundé	435,892
Est	109,011	366,235	Bertoua	18,254
Extrême-Nord	34,246	1,394,958	Maroua	81,861
Littoral	20,239	935,166	Douala	636,980
Nord (Bénoué)	65,576	479,072	Garoua	77,856
Nord-Ouest	17,810	980,531	Bamenda	58,697
Ouest	13,872	1,035,597	Bafoussam	75,832
Sud	47,110	315,739	Ebolowa	22,222
Sud-Ouest	24,471	620,515	Buéa	29,953

Other large towns (1981): Nkongsamba (86,870), Kumba (53,823), Foumban (41,358), Limbe (32,917), Edéa (31,016), Mbalmayo (26,934) and Dschang (21,705).

The population is composed of Sudanic-speaking people in the north (Fulani, Sao and others) and Bantu-speaking groups, mainly Bamileke, Beti, Bulu, Tikar, Bassa, Duala, in the rest of the country. In Dec. 1987 there were 8,547 Chadian refugees living in Cameroon. The official languages are French and English.

**CLIMATE.** An equatorial climate, with high temperatures and plentiful rain, especially from March to June and Sept. to Nov. Further inland, rain occurs at all seasons. Yaoundé. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 62" (1,555 mm). Douala. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 160" (4,026 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1972 Constitution, subsequently amended, provides for a President as head of state and government and commander of the armed forces. He is directly elected for a 5-year term, and there is a Council of Ministers whose members must not be members of parliament.



The National Assembly, elected by universal adult suffrage for 5 years, consists of 180 representatives. Elections took place in April 1988. Since 1966 the sole legal party has been the Cameroon National Union. In March 1985 the UNC was renamed the Cameroon People's Democratic Movement and is administered by a 65-member Central Committee and a 12-member Political Bureau.

The Council of Ministers in June 1988 comprised:

*President:* Paul Biya (assumed office 6 Nov. 1982, re-elected April 1988).

*Minister-Delegate at the Presidency, Defence:* Michel Meva'a M'Eboutou. *Territorial Administration:* Ibrahim Mbomo Njoya. *Social and Women's Affairs:* Aissatou Yaou. *Agriculture:* John Niba Ngu. *Special Duties at the Presidency:* Ogork Ebot Ntui. *Industrial and Commercial Development:* Joseph Tsanga Abanda. *National Education:* Georges Ngango. *Livestock, Fisheries and Animal Industries:* Dr Hamadjoda Adjoudji. *Higher Education, Computer Services and Scientific Research:* Abdoulaye Babale. *Finance:* Sadou Hayatou. *Public Service and State Control:* Joseph Owona. *Information and Culture:* Henri Bandolo. *Youth and Sports:* Dr Joseph Fofe. *Justice, Keeper of the Seals:* Benjamin Itoe. *Water Resources and Energy:* Francis Nkwain. *Plan and Regional Development:* Elisabeth Tankeu. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Oumarou Sanda. *External Relations:* Jacques-Roger Booh Booh. *Public Health:* Joseph Mbede. *Public Works and Transport:* Claude Tchepanou. *Labour and Social Welfare:* Jean Baptiste Bokam. *Town Planning and Housing:* Ferdinand Leopold Oyono.

There were 7 Secretaries of State.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of green, red, yellow, with a gold star in the centre.

*National anthem:* O Cameroon, Thou Cradle of our Fathers.

*Local Government:* The 10 provinces are each administered by a governor appointed by the President. They are sub-divided into 49 *départements* (each under a *préfet*) and then into *arrondissements* (each under a *sous-préfet*).

## DEFENCE.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 armoured car, 1 para-commando, 1 engineer and 5 infantry battalions and 5 artillery batteries. Equipment includes M-8 armoured and Ferret scout cars. Total strength (1989) 6,600, there are an additional 4,000 paramilitary troops.

**Navy.** The Navy operates 1 fast missile-armed craft, 3 patrol vessels (all 4 French-built), 2 ex-Chinese fast gunboats, 12 coastal patrol launches, 12 inshore cutters, 2 landing craft and 32 auxiliaries and service craft. Personnel in 1989 numbered 700.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 3 C-130H Hercules turboprop transports, 4 Buffalo and 1 Caribou STOL transports, 3 C-47s for transport and communications duties, 3 Broussard liaison aircraft, 6 Magister armed jet basic trainers, 5 Alpha Jet close support/trainers, and 5 Alouette helicopters. Some of 4 Gazelle light helicopters are armed with anti-tank missiles. A small VIP transport fleet, maintained in civil markings, comprises 1 Boeing 727 jet aircraft, 1 Gulfstream III and 3 Aerospatiale helicopters. Radar-equipped Dornier 128-6 twin-turboprop aircraft serve for offshore oilfield patrol. Personnel total (1989) 300.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Cameroon is a member of UN, OAU, the Non-Aligned Movement and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Sixth 5-year Development Plan (from 1 July 1986 to 30 June 1991) gives priority to rural development and food self-sufficiency.

**Budget.** The budget for 1987-88 balanced at 650,000m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc CFA*, with a parity rate of 50 *francs*

CFA to 1 French *franc*. In March 1989, £1 = 541.63 *francs CFA*; US\$1 = 169.79 *francs CFA*.

**Banking.** The Banque des Etats de l'Afrique Centrale is the sole bank of issue. The commercial banks are Banque Internationale pour l'Afrique Occidentale, Société Camerounaise de Banque, Société Générale de Banque au Cameroun, Banque International pour le Commerce et l'Industrie du Cameroun, Cameroon Bank, Banque Camerounaise de Développement, Bank of Credit and Commerce Cameroon, Paribas Cameroun, Boston Bank Cameroon Ltd, Chase Bank Cameroon Ltd and Bank of America Cameroon. Most of the banks operate in all the large cities and towns throughout the Republic.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There are 3 hydro-electric power stations at Edéa on the Sanaga river with a capacity of 180,000 kw. Total production (1986) 4,200m. kwh. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Production (estimate, 1985) mainly from Kole oilfield was 9.2m. tonnes.

**Minerals.** There are considerable deposits of bauxite and kyanite around Ngaoundéré. Further deposits of bauxite and cassiterite remain to be exploited in the Adamaoua plateau.

**Agriculture.** At the 1976 Census, 80% of the working population were engaged in agriculture. The main food crops (with 1986 production in 1,000 tonnes): Cassava, 690; millet, 400; maize, 350; plantains, 986; yams, 400; groundnuts, 140; bananas, 67. Cash crops include palm oil, 85; palm kernels, 52.3; cocoa, 120; coffee, 122; rubber, 19; cotton, 38; raw sugar, 76.

Livestock (1987): 4.4m. cattle, 2.5m. sheep, 2.45m. goats, 1.2m. pigs.

**Forestry.** Over 50% of Cameroon consists of forests, ranging from tropical rain forests in the south (producing hardwoods such as mahogany, ebony and sapele) to semi-deciduous forests in the centre and wooded savannah in the north. Production in 1983 amounted to 9.9m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** In 1984-85 the industrial output of fish was 10,790 tonnes of which shrimp, 686 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There is a major aluminium smelting complex at Edéa; aluminium production in 1983 amounted to 77,600 tonnes. Production of cement totalled 227,000 tonnes in 1980. There are also factories producing shoes, beer, soap, oil and food products, cigarettes. Agro-industrial production (1984-85, in tonnes): Rubber, 17,679; palm-oil, 76,954; sugar, 73,717; oil palm, 14,849; tea, 2,279.

**Labour.** In 1982 the work-force numbered 3,543,000 of whom 73% were occupied in agriculture. The principal trade union federation is the *Organisation des syndicats des travailleurs camerounais* (OSTC) established on 7 Dec. 1985 to replace the former body, the UNTC.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in 1m. francs CFA were as follows:

	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85
Imports	429,466	462,891	482,297
Exports	407,203	484,144	495,977

In 1984-85, exports (in 1m. francs CFA) went mainly to the Netherlands (136,057), France (127,966), Italy (58,333), Federal Republic of Germany (35,089), USA (30,098) and Spain (25,517), while imports were mainly from France (193,176), USA (51,687), Japan (36,354), Federal Republic of Germany (31,220) and Italy (26,610); the main exports were crude oils (123,398), coffee and by-products (111,201) and cocoa and by-products (105,858).

Total trade between Cameroon and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	132,539	73,746	7,634	14,201	16,180
Exports and re-exports from UK	23,254	44,806	34,368	28,057	20,472

**Tourism.** There were an estimated 140,000 foreign visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 66,910 km of roads, of which 2,922 km were tarmac. In 1984–85 there were 73,963 passenger cars and 43,165 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** Cameroon Railways, *Regifercam* (1,115 km in 1985) link Douala with Nkongsamba and Ngaoundéré, with branches M'Banga–Kumba and Makak–M'Balmayo. In 1986–87 railways carried 2.3m. passengers and 1.4m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Douala is the main international airport; other airports are at Yaoundé and Garoua. Camair, the national airline, serve 7 domestic airports. In 1981–82, 644,000 passengers and 14,600 tonnes of freight passed through the airports.

**Shipping.** The merchant-marine consisted (1986) of 48 vessels (over 100 GRT) of 76,433 GRT. The major port of Douala handled (1984) 3m. tonnes of imports and 1m. tonnes of exports and in 1984–85, 671 cargo ships and 2,582 other ships entered the port. Timber is exported mainly through the south-west ports of Kribi and Campo. Other ports are Bota, Tiko, Limbe and Garoua.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1975) 150 post offices supplemented by a mobile postal service; telephones (1984), 47,200; radio stations, 10 with 785,000 receivers. Television was introduced in 1985.

**Cinemas.** There were (1979) 52 cinemas with a capacity of 29,000 seats.

**Newspapers.** There was (1984) 1 daily newspaper with a circulation of 20,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court sits at Yaoundé, as does the High Court of Justice (consisting of 9 titular judges and 6 surrogates all appointed by the National Assembly). There are magistrates' courts situated in the provinces.

**Religion.** In 1980, 21% of the population was Roman Catholic, 22% Moslem, 18% Protestant, while 39% followed traditional (animist) religions.

**Education** (1984–85). There were 1,638,569 pupils and 32,082 teachers in primary schools, 238,075 pupils and 8,381 teachers in general secondary schools, 77,551 pupils and 3,239 teachers in technical secondary schools, and 3,880 students in vocational training schools. In 1984–85 there were 13,753 students and 572 teaching staff at higher education institutions of the University of Yaoundé.

**Health.** In 1981 there were 1,003 hospitals and health centres with 24,541 beds; there were also (1982) 604 doctors and 17 dentists, 96 pharmacists, 399 midwives and 1,086 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Cameroon in Great Britain (84 Holland Pk., London, W11 3SB)

*Ambassador:* Dr Giberger Bol-Alima (accredited 12 May 1987).

Of Great Britain in Cameroon (Ave. Winston Churchill, BP 547, Yaoundé)

*Ambassador:* Martin Reith.

Of Cameroon in the USA (2349 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Vincent Paul-Thomas Pondi.

Of the USA in Cameroon (Rue Nachtigal, BP 817, Yaoundé)

*Ambassador:* Mark L. Edelman.

Of Cameroon to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Paul Bamela Engo.



**Further Reading**

*Statistical Information:* The Service de la Statistique Générale, at Douala, set up in 1945, publishes a monthly bulletin (from Nov. 1950)

DeLancey, M. W. and Schraeder, P. J., *Cameroon*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986

Ndongko, W. A., *Planning for Economic Development in a Federal State: The Case of Cameroon, 1960-71*. New York, 1975

Rubin, N., *Cameroon*. New York, 1972

# CANADA

*Capital:* Ottawa

*Population:* 25.6m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$14,100 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The territories which now constitute Canada came under British power at various times by settlement, conquest or cession. Nova Scotia was occupied in 1628 by settlement at Port Royal, was ceded back to France in 1632 and was finally ceded by France in 1713, by the Treaty of Utrecht; the Hudson's Bay Company's charter, conferring rights over all the territory draining into Hudson Bay, was granted in 1670; Canada, with all its dependencies, including New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island, was formally ceded to Great Britain by France in 1763; Vancouver Island was acknowledged to be British by the Oregon Boundary Treaty of 1846, and British Columbia was established as a separate colony in 1858. As originally constituted, Canada was composed of Upper and Lower Canada (now Ontario and Quebec), Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. They were united under an Act of the Imperial Parliament, 'The British North America Act, 1867', which came into operation on 1 July 1867 by royal proclamation. The Act provided that the constitution of Canada should be 'similar in principle to that of the United Kingdom'; that the executive authority shall be vested in the Sovereign, and carried on in his name by a Governor-General and Privy Council; and that the legislative power shall be exercised by a Parliament of two Houses, called the 'Senate' and the 'House of Commons'.

On 30 June 1931 the British House of Commons approved the enactment of the Statute of Westminster freeing the Provinces as well as the Dominion from the operation of the Colonial Laws Validity Act, and thus removing what legal limitations existed as regards Canada's legislative autonomy. A joint address of the Senate and the House of Commons was sent to the Governor-General for transmission to London on 10 July 1931. The statute received the royal assent on 12 Dec. 1931.

Provision was made in the British North America Act for the admission of British Columbia, Prince Edward Island, Newfoundland, Rupert's Land and Northwest Territory into the Union. In 1869 Rupert's Land, or the Northwest Territories, was purchased from the Hudson's Bay Company. On 15 July 1870, Rupert's Land and the Northwest Territory were annexed to Canada and named the Northwest Territories, Canada having agreed to pay the Hudson's Bay Company in cash and land for its relinquishing of claims to the territory. By the same action the Province of Manitoba was created from a small portion of this territory and they were admitted into the Confederation on 15 July 1870. On 20 July 1871 the province of British Columbia was admitted, and Prince Edward Island on 1 July 1873. The provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan were formed from the provisional districts of Alberta, Athabaska, Assiniboia and Saskatchewan and originally parts of the Northwest Territories and admitted on 1 Sept. 1905. Newfoundland formally joined Canada as its tenth province on 31 March 1949.

In Feb. 1931 Norway formally recognized the Canadian title to the Sverdrup group of Arctic islands. Canada thus holds sovereignty in the whole Arctic sector north of the Canadian mainland.

In Nov. 1981 the Canadian government agreed on the provisions of an amended constitution, to the end that it should replace the British North America Act and that its future amendment should be the prerogative of Canada. These proposals were adopted by the Parliament of Canada and were enacted by the UK Parliament as the Canada Act of 1982.

The enactment of the Canada Act was the final act of the UK Parliament in Canadian constitutional development. The Act gave to Canada the power to amend the Constitution according to procedures determined by the Constitutional Act 1982, which was proclaimed in force by the Queen on 17 April 1982. The Constitution Act 1982 added to the Canadian Constitution a charter of Rights and Freedoms, and provisions which recognize the nation's multi-cultural heritage, affirm the existing rights of native peoples, confirm the principle of equalization of benefits among the provinces, and strengthen provincial ownership of natural resources.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Canada is bounded north-west by the Beaufort Sea, north by the Arctic Ocean, north-east by Baffin Bay, east by the Davis Strait, Labrador Sea and Atlantic Ocean, south by the USA and west by the Pacific Ocean and USA (Alaska). Population of the area now included in Canada:

1851	2,436,297	1901	5,371,315	1951 <sup>1</sup>	14,009,429
1861	3,229,633	1911	7,206,643	1961	18,238,247
1871	3,689,257	1921	8,787,949	1971	21,568,311
1881	4,324,810	1931	10,376,786	1981	24,343,181
1891	4,833,239	1941	11,506,655		

<sup>1</sup> From 1951 figures include Newfoundland.

Population (census), 3 June 1986, was 25,354,064. Estimate (1987) 25.6m.

Areas of the provinces, etc. (in sq. km) and population at recent censuses:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Land area</i>	<i>Fresh water area</i>	<i>Total land and fresh water area</i>	<i>Population, 1976</i>	<i>Population, 1981</i>	<i>Population, 1986<sup>1</sup></i>
Newfoundland	371,690	34,030	405,720	557,725	567,681	568,349
Prince Edward Island	5,660	—	5,660	118,229	122,506	126,646
Nova Scotia	52,840	2,650	55,490	828,571	847,442	873,199
New Brunswick	72,090	1,350	73,440	677,250	696,403	710,442
Quebec	1,356,790	183,890	1,540,680	6,234,445	6,438,403	6,540,276
Ontario	891,190	177,390	1,068,580	8,264,465	8,625,107	9,113,515
Manitoba	548,360	101,590	649,950	1,021,506	1,026,241	1,071,232
Saskatchewan	570,700	81,630	652,330	921,323	968,313	1,010,198
Alberta	644,390	16,800	661,190	1,838,037	2,237,724	2,375,278
British Columbia	929,730	18,070	947,800	2,466,608	2,744,467	2,889,207
Yukon	478,970	4,480	483,450	21,836	23,153	23,504
Northwest Territories	3,293,020	133,300	3,426,320	42,609	45,471	52,238
Total	9,215,430	755,180	9,970,610	22,992,604	24,343,181	25,354,064

<sup>1</sup> Including estimates of incompletely enumerated Indian reserves and Indian settlements.

Of the total population in 1986, 21,113,855 were Canadian born, 3,908,150 foreign born, 282,025 of the latter being USA born and 2,435,100 European born.

The population (1986) born outside Canada in the provinces was in the following ratio (%): Newfoundland, 1.6; Prince Edward Island, 3.5; Nova Scotia, 4.7; New Brunswick, 3.8; Quebec, 8.3; Ontario, 23.1; Manitoba, 13.6; Saskatchewan, 7.2; Alberta, 15.6; British Columbia, 22.1; Yukon, 11.5; Northwest Territories, 5.4.

In 1986, figures for the population, according to origin, were <sup>1</sup>:

<i>Single origins</i>	18,035,665	Polish	222,260
Austrian	24,900	Portuguese	199,595
Belgian	28,395	Romanian	18,745
British <sup>2</sup>	6,332,725	Russian	32,080
Czech and Slovak <sup>3</sup>	55,535	Scandinavian <sup>6</sup>	171,715
Chinese	360,320	Spanish	57,125
Dutch (Netherlands)	351,765	Swiss	19,130
Finnish	40,565	Ukrainian	420,210
French <sup>4</sup>	6,093,160	Other single origins:	99,025
German	896,720		
Greek	143,780	<i>Multiple origins:</i> <sup>7</sup>	6,986,345
Magyar (Hungarian)	97,850	British and French	1,139,345
Italian	709,590	British and Other	2,262,525
Japanese	40,245	French and Other	325,655
Aboriginal Peoples <sup>5</sup>	373,265	Other multiple origins	616,000

<sup>1</sup> Data on ethnic origins for the 1986 Census excludes the population on incompletely enumerated Indian reserves and settlements. For Canada there were 136 such reserves and settlements and the total population was estimated to be about 45,000 in 1986.

<sup>2</sup> Includes the single origins of English, Irish, Scottish, Welsh, British, n.i.e. and other British.

<sup>3</sup> Includes the single origins of Czech, Czechoslovakian and Slovak.

<sup>4</sup> Includes the single origins of French, Acadian, French Canadian and Québécois.

<sup>5</sup> Includes the single origins of Inuit, Métis and North American Indian.

<sup>6</sup> Includes the single origins of Danish, Icelandic, Norwegian, Swedish and Scandinavian, n.i.e.

<sup>7</sup> Includes persons who report more than one origin.



The total aboriginal population single origins numbered 373,265 in 1986 and the Inuit population was 27,290 in 1986.

Populations of Census Metropolitan Areas (CMA) and Cities (proper), 1986 census:

	<i>CMA</i>	<i>City proper</i>		<i>CMA</i>	<i>City proper</i>
Toronto	3,427,168	612,289	Victoria	255,547	66,303
Montreal	2,921,357	1,015,420	Windsor	253,988	193,111
Vancouver	1,380,729	431,147	Oshawa	203,543	123,651
Ottawa-Hull	819,263	300,763 <sup>1</sup>	Saskatoon	200,665	177,641
Edmonton	785,465	573,982	Regina	186,521	175,064
Calgary	671,326	636,104	St John's	161,901	96,216
Winnipeg	623,304	594,551	Chicoutimi-		
Quebec	603,267	164,580	Jonquière	158,468	—
Hamilton	557,029	306,728	Chicoutimi	—	61,083
St Catharines-			Jonquière	—	58,467
Niagara	343,258	—	Sudbury	148,877	88,717
St Catharines	—	123,455	Sherbrooke	129,960	74,438
Niagara Falls	—	72,107	Trois Rivières	128,888	50,122
London	342,302	269,140	Thunder Bay	122,217	112,272
Kitchener	311,195	150,604	Saint John	121,265	76,381
Halifax	295,990	113,577			

<sup>1</sup> Ottawa.

The total 'urban' population of Canada in 1986 was 19,352,085, against 18,435,927 in 1981.

While the registration of births, marriages and deaths is under provincial control, the statistics are compiled on a uniform system by Statistics Canada.

The following table gives the results for the year 1987:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Live births</i> <i>Number</i>	<i>Marriages</i> <i>Number</i>	<i>Deaths</i> <i>Number</i>
Newfoundland	8,100	3,421	3,540
Prince Edward Island	1,928	970	1,121
Nova Scotia	12,358	6,445	7,255
New Brunswick	9,788	4,962	5,458
Quebec	84,634	33,083	46,892
Ontario	133,882	70,839	67,865
Manitoba	17,009	7,816	8,911
Saskatchewan	17,513	6,820	8,061
Alberta	43,744	18,896	13,560
British Columbia	41,967	21,826	21,213
Yukon Territory	483	183	113
N.W. Territories	1,507	257	235
	<u>372,913</u>	<u>175,518</u>	<u>184,224</u>

Immigrant arrivals by country of last permanent residence:

<i>Country</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
UK	4,454	5,088	8,547
France	1,401	1,610	2,290
Germany	1,578	1,403	1,906
Netherlands	466	524	575
Greece	551	551	771
Italy	650	715	1,031
Portugal	910	1,970	5,977
Other Europe	8,849	10,848	16,466
Asia	38,597	41,600	67,337
Australia	355	338	530
USA	6,669	7,275	7,967
Caribbean	6,132	8,874	11,227
All other	13,690	18,423	27,474
Total	<u>84,302</u>	<u>99,219</u>	<u>152,098</u>

**CLIMATE.** The climate ranges from polar conditions in the north to cool temperate in the south, but with considerable differences between east coast, west coast and the interior, affecting temperatures, rainfall amounts and seasonal distribution. Winters are very severe over much of the country, but summers can be very hot inland. *See* individual provinces for climatic details.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The members of the Senate are appointed until age 75 by summons of the Governor-General under the Great Seal of Canada. Members appointed before 2 June 1965 may remain in office for life. The Senate consists of 104 senators, namely, 24 from Ontario, 24 from Quebec, 10 from Nova Scotia, 10 from New Brunswick, 4 from Prince Edward Island, 6 from Manitoba, 6 from British Columbia, 6 from Alberta, 6 from Saskatchewan, 6 from Newfoundland, 1 from the Yukon Territory and 1 from the Northwest Territories. Each senator must be at least 30 years of age, a born or naturalized subject of the Queen and must reside in the province for which he is appointed and his total net worth must be at least \$4,000. The House of Commons is elected by the people, for 5 years, unless sooner dissolved. Women have the vote and are eligible. From 1867 to the election of 1945 representation was based on Quebec having 65 seats and the other provinces the same proportion of 65 which their population had to the population of Quebec. In the General Election of 1949 readjustments were based on the population of all the provinces taken as a whole. Generally speaking, this format for representation has prevailed in all subsequent elections with readjustments made after each decennial census. Under the Representation Act 1986, effective March 1986, the formula contained in section 51 of the Constitution Act, 1867<sup>1</sup> dealing with the number of seats in the House of Commons and their distribution throughout the country, was changed.

<sup>1</sup>The Constitution Act, 1986 (Representation). Redrawing of Electoral boundaries statutes of Canada 1984-86, Chap. 8.

The thirty-fourth Parliament, elected in Nov. 1988, comprises 295 members and the provincial and territorial representation are: Ontario, 99; Quebec, 75; Nova Scotia, 11; New Brunswick, 10; Manitoba, 14; British Columbia, 32; Prince Edward Island, 4; Saskatchewan 14; Alberta, 26; Newfoundland, 7; Yukon Territory, 1; Northwest Territories, 2.

State of parties in the Senate (Sept. 1988): Liberals, 59; Progressive Conservatives, 31; Independent, 5; Independent P.C., 1; Vacant, 8; total 104.

State of the parties in the House of Commons (Nov. 1988): Progressive Conservatives, 169; Liberals, 82; New Democratic Party, 43.

The following is a list of Governors-General of Canada:

Viscount Monck	1867-1868	Viscount Willington	1926-1931
Lord Lisgar	1868-1872	Earl of Bessborough	1931-1935
Earl of Dufferin	1872-1878	Lord Tweedsmuir	1935-1940
Marquess of Lorne	1878-1883	Earl of Athlone	1940-1946
Marquess of Lansdowne	1883-1888	Field-Marshal Viscount	
Lord Stanley of Preston	1888-1893	Alexander of Tunis	1946-1952
Earl of Aberdeen	1893-1898	Vincent Massey	1952-1959
Earl of Minto	1898-1904	Georges Philias Vanier	1959-1967
Earl Grey	1904-1911	Roland Michener	1967-1974
HRH the Duke of Connaught	1911-1916	Jules Léger	1974-1979
Duke of Devonshire	1916-1921	Edward Schreyer	1979-1984
Viscount Byng of Vimy	1921-1926		

*Governor-General:* Jeanne Sauvé.

*National flag:* Vertically red, white, red with the white of double width and bearing a stylized red maple leaf.

The office and appointment of the Governor-General are regulated by letters patent, signed by the King on 8 Sept. 1947, which came into force on 1 Oct. 1947. In 1977 the Queen approved the transfer to the Governor-General of functions discharged by the Sovereign. He is assisted in his functions, under the provisions of the Act of 1867, by a Privy Council composed of Cabinet Ministers.

The following is the list of the Conservative Cabinet in Feb. 1989, in order of precedence, which in Canada attaches generally rather to the person than to the office:

*Prime Minister:* The Rt. Hon. Martin Brian Mulroney.

*Secretary of State for External Affairs:* The Rt. Hon. Charles Joseph Clark.

*Minister for International Trade:* The Hon. John Carmell Crosbie.

*Deputy Prime Minister, President of the Privy Council and Minister for Agriculture:* The Hon. Donald Frank Mazankowski.  
*Minister of Public Works and Minister for the Atlantic Canada Opportunities Agency:* The Hon. Elmer MacIntosh MacKay.  
*Minister of Energy, Mines and Resources:* The Hon. Jake Epp.  
*President of the Treasury Board:* The Hon. Robert R. de Cotret.  
*Minister of Health and Welfare:* The Hon. Henry Perrin Beatty.  
*Minister of Finance:* The Hon. Michael Holcombe Wilson.  
*Minister of Regional Industrial Expansion and Minister of State for Science and Technology:* The Hon. Harvie Andre.  
*Minister of National Revenue:* The Hon. Otto John Jelinek.  
*Minister of Fisheries and Oceans:* The Hon. Thomas Edward Siddon.  
*Minister of Western Economic Diversification and Minister of State (Grains and Oilseeds):* The Hon. Charles James Mayer.  
*Minister of Defence:* The Hon. William Hunter McKnight.  
*Minister of Transport:* The Hon. Benoit Bouchard.  
*Minister of Communications:* The Hon. Marcel Masse.  
*Minister of Employment and Immigration:* The Hon. Barbara Jean McDougall.  
*Minister of Veterans Affairs:* The Hon. Gerald S. Merrithew.  
*Minister of State (Employment and Immigration) and Minister of State (Seniors):* The Hon. Monique Vezina.  
*Minister of State (Forestry):* The Hon. Frank Oberle.  
*Leader of the Government in the Senate and Minister of State (Federal-Provincial Relations):* The Hon. Lowell Murray.  
*Minister of Supply and Services:* The Hon. Paul Wyatt Dick.  
*Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development:* The Hon. Pierre H. Cadieux.  
*Minister of State (Youth), Minister of State (Fitness and Amateur Sport) and Deputy Leader of the Government in the Commons:* The Hon. Jean J. Charest.  
*Minister of State (Small Businesses and Tourism):* The Hon. Thomas Hockin.  
*Minister for External Relations:* The Hon. Monique Landry.  
*Minister for Consumer and Corporate Affairs:* The Hon. Bernard Valcourt.  
*Secretary of State and Minister of State (Multiculturalism and Citizenship):* The Hon. Gerry Weiner.  
*Minister of Justice, Attorney-General of Canada and Leader of the Government in the Commons:* The Hon. Douglas Grinsdale Lewis.  
*Solicitor-General of Canada and Minister of State (Agriculture):* The Hon. Pierre Blais.  
*Minister of the Environment:* The Hon. Lucien Bouchard.  
*Minister of State (Privatization and Regulatory Affairs):* The Hon. John McDermid.  
*Minister of State (Transport):* The Hon. Shirley Martin.  
*Associate Minister of Defence:* The Hon. Mary Collins.  
*Minister of State (Housing):* The Hon. Alan Redway.  
*Minister of State (Science and Technology):* The Hon. William Winegard.  
*Minister of State (Indian Affairs and Northern Development):* The Hon. Kim Campbell.  
*Minister of Labour:* The Hon. Jean Corbell.  
*Minister of State (Finance):* The Hon. Gilles Loiselle.

The salary of a member of the House of Commons (Jan. 1988) is \$58,300 with a tax-free allowance of \$19,400. The salary of a senator is \$58,300 with a tax-free allowance of \$9,300. The salary and allowances of the Prime Minister total \$146,300. The salary of the Speaker of the House of Commons is \$126,200; the salary of the Speaker of the Senate is \$99,700; the salary of the Opposition Leader is \$124,200 and that of the National Democratic Party Leader, \$104,500; all these also have tax-free allowances of from \$19,400–\$25,600.

An Act to provide retiring allowances, on a contributory basis, to members of the House of Commons was given the Royal Assent on 4 July 1952. Subsequent amendments provide allowances for surviving spouses and for former Prime Ministers or their surviving spouses.

*Canadian Parliamentary Handbook.* Compiled by John Bejerimi, Borealis Press, Ottawa, 1986



- Index to Federal Programs and Services 1986*. Seventh edition. Supply and Services Canada. Annual, Ottawa
- Organisation of the Government of Canada 1980*. 13th edition. Irregular, Ottawa
- A consolidation of the *The Constitution Acts 1867 to 1982*. Department of Justice Canada. Ottawa, 1986
- Bureaucracy in Canadian Government: selected readings*. 2nd edition, edited by W. D. K. Kernashan. Toronto, 1973
- Laskin's Canadian Constitutional Law*. 5th ed., Vol. 2, Neil Finkelstein. Toronto: Carswell, 1986
- Leading Constitutional decisions: Cases on the British North America Act*. Edited and with an introduction by Peter H. Russell, 3rd edition. Ottawa, 1982
- The Canadian Parliamentary Guide*. Annual. Ottawa
- Report of the Royal Commission on Dominion-Provincial Relations, Canada 1867-1939*. 3 vols. Ottawa, 1940
- Byers, R. B. (ed.) *Canada Challenged: The Viability of the Confederation*. Toronto, 1979
- Information Canada. *Organization of the Government of Canada*. Loose-leaf service. Ottawa, 1970
- Cheffins, R. I. and Johnson, P. A., *The Revised Canadian Constitution, Politics as law*. Toronto, 1986
- Fox, P. W., and White, G., *Politics Canada*. 6th ed. Toronto, 1987
- Franks, C. E. S., *The Parliament of Canada*. Univ. of Toronto Press, 1987
- Hogg, P. W., *Constitutional Law of Canada*. 2nd ed. Toronto, 1985
- Kennedy, W. F. M., *Statutes, Treaties and Documents of the Canadian Constitution, 1713-1929*. Toronto, 1930
- Kernaghan, N. (ed.) *Bureaucracy in Canadian Government, Selected Readings*. Toronto, 1969
- Morton, W. L., *The Kingdom of Canada: A General History From Earliest Times*. Toronto, 1969
- Olmsted, R. A., *Decisions of the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council Relating to the British North America Act, 1867, and the Canadian Constitution, 1867-1954*. Ottawa, Queens' Printer, 1954
- Russell, P. H. (ed.) *Leading Constitutional Decisions; Cases on the British North America Act*. Toronto, 1968

**DEFENCE.** The Department of National Defence was created by the National Defence Act, 1922, which established one civil Department of Government in place of the previous Departments of Militia and Defence, Naval Service and the Air Board. The Department now operates under authority of RSC 1970, c.N1-4. The Minister of National Defence has the control and management of the Canadian Forces and all matters relating to national defence establishments and works for the defence of Canada. He is the Minister responsible for presenting before the Cabinet, matters of major defence policy for which Cabinet direction is required. He is also responsible for the emergency measures organization known since 1 July 1986 as 'Emergency Preparedness Canada'.

In Dec. 1976, the Minister of National Defence was named as minister responsible for all aspects of air Search and Rescue (SAR) in the areas of Canadian SAR responsibility, and for the overall co-ordination of marine Search and Rescue including provision of air resources for marine SAR within Canadian territorial waters and in designated oceanic areas off the Pacific and Atlantic Coasts in accordance with agreements made with the United States Coast Guard. A group from Transport Canada, the Department of National Defence and the Department of Fisheries and Oceans was set up at the same time, as a co-ordinating body.

From September 1985 the Minister has shared his responsibilities with a newly appointed Associate Minister of National Defence.

The Canadian Forces (CF) are the military element of the Canadian government and are part of the Department of National Defence (DND). Government policy concerning the CF takes into account national and foreign policy. The roles of the CF are developed within this framework. They are:

- the protection of Canada and Canadian national interests at home and abroad; this includes the provision of aid of the civil power and national development;
- the defence of North America in co-operation with the United States' military forces;
- the fulfillment of such North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) commitments to security as may be agreed upon; the performance of such international peacekeeping roles as Canada may from time to time assume.

*Command Structure.* The missions and roles of the CF are undertaken by functional and regional commands. Commands and major organizations report directly to National Defence Headquarters (NDHQ) in Ottawa, Ontario from headquarters situated as follows:

- Mobile Command, St Hubert, Quebec;
- Maritime Command, Halifax, Nova Scotia;
- Air Command, Winnipeg, Manitoba;
- Canadian Forces Training System, Trenton, Ontario;
- Canadian Forces Communication Command, Ottawa, Ontario;
- Canadian Forces Europe, Lahr, Federal Republic of Germany (FRG); and
- Northern Region, Yellowknife, NWT.

1. *Mobile Command.* With a 1987 combined Regular Force, Primary Reserve and civilian staff of 45,720, Mobile Command (FMC) maintained combat ready land forces to meet Canada's defence commitments.

#### Defence of North America

Mobile Command is prepared to undertake defence of North America operations in conjunction with the forces of the United States. Under the Canada-United States Basic Defence Agreement, a number of mutual defence treaties exist. One that directly concerns Mobile Command is Canada-United States Land Operations (CANUS LANDOP). It is designed to provide the co-ordination of the land defence of Canada, Alaska, and the continental United States. Under this plan, Mobile Command is responsible for co-ordinating the land defence of Canada by both Canadian and US forces, if required, and must be prepared to assist US forces in the defence of Alaska and the United States. Both this and the National Security task involves Mobile Command in maintaining a presence in the Canadian North through surveillance and patrols and numerous exercises.

#### Nato Commitments

Mobile Command (FMC) provides forces in support of several NATO commitments. FMC NATO commitments are to provide:

- (a) A Brigade Group to reinforce ACE (Allied Command Europe) Forces in emergency. That brigade is known as the CAST (Canadian Air/Sea Transportable) Brigade and is committed to operations in North Norway with Norwegian division. The CAST Brigade Group was reassigned to the NATO Central Region in 1989 and was consolidated with other Canadian land forces to form 1 Canadian Division.
- (b) An infantry battle group for operations with the Allied Command Europe Mobile Force (Land (AMF)L). The Canadian contingent is designated to deploy either to North Norway or to the Zeeland Group of Islands in Denmark. The contingent maintains a high degree of operational readiness for this purpose and exercises in its operational areas on a regular basis.

Although the land force units in Europe are not part of FMC, the command provides trained replacements through individual and sub-unit rotations to sustain peacetime manning requirements. The Command is also tasked to provide personnel augmentation to bring 4 Brigades to full establishment in the event of war, and to provide replacements and reinforcements to sustain the Brigade in combat.

#### International Peacekeeping or Stability Operations

Mobile Command is committed to providing forces for international peacekeeping or stability operations. It maintains a ready force of battalion group size on short notice to meet urgent international requirements, and provides the majority of Canadian troops assigned to UN duties. At present, its UN involvement includes a unit in Cyprus and a service support element on the Golan Heights, and a small number of personnel to augment the national commitment to the Multi-National Peacekeeping Force (MFO) in the Sinai.

#### Budget and Personnel

In 1987-88, FMC budget was approximately \$317m. for normal operations and maintenance costs. This excluded salaries for the 24,258 Regular Force and full-time civilian personnel which accounted for about \$869m. of departmental

expenditure. FMC also allocated about \$108m. for the 17,004 Militia members. Expenditures in support of British, German and US Army units training on FMC bases were recovered from the nations concerned.

2. *Maritime Command.* The Maritime Command (MARCOM) role is to have a maritime force ready to meet Canada's defence commitments. This role is fulfilled using MARCOM resources and designated Air Command aircraft under MARCOM control.

Maritime Command comprises operational maritime forces, headquarters and supporting units located primarily on the east and west coasts of Canada, but also extending as far north as Frobisher Bay and as far south as Bermuda.

Operational forces include 20 destroyers, 6 coastal patrol and training ships, 3 submarines, 3 operational support ships, 1 diving support ship, as well as Air Command aircraft under the operational control of Maritime Command. In addition there are 5 gate vessels, 2 'R' Class patrol vessels and the FORT STEELE located at Reserve Training Units on both coasts, and 16 minor vessels located at naval reserve units across Canada.

### Protection of Canada and National Interests

Maritime Command continues to conduct military surveillance of Canadian territorial waters on both coasts. Surveillance patrols in support of Canadian national interests are conducted in the 370 km Economic zone by surface and air units.

Numerous missions are flown in northern latitudes to establish a Canadian presence and ensure that foreign vessels are operating in accordance with national regulations. CP-121 Tracker reconnaissance aircraft conduct flying operations in aid of the Department of Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Ships of Maritime Command spend time at sea on both the east and west coasts locating, identifying and boarding foreign fishing vessels.

### Defence of North America

Combat readiness in the Fleet is maintained through many different training exercises. Early each year units deploy to the Caribbean for intensive training and maintenance period, normally followed by a large-scale NATO exercise. A Combat Training Exercise (COMBATEX) is usually conducted each May and October. This exercise is designed to provide a realistic at-sea examination for members of the Combat Control Officer (CCO) Course, culminating a year-long course in maritime warfare.

### Nato Exercises

Canada is continuously represented in NATO's Standing Naval Force Atlantic (STANAVFORLANT) by a Halifax based destroyer. This multi-national squadron provides a highly visible demonstration of NATO solidarity in the face of an expanding Soviet naval threat. Ports are visited in Alliance nations throughout Europe, the Mediterranean and the east coast of North America, strengthening ties with NATO's member nations. East coast destroyers participate in the NATO Squadron and are involved in a number of exercises on both sides of the Atlantic. In addition to STANAVFORLANT, Maritime Command ships participate in several NATO exercises each year.

### Budget and Personnel

MARCOM's budget for fiscal year 1987-88 was \$2,200m.

#### Personnel

		Maritime Air Group (MAG)	
Maritime Command		Regular Force	4,968
Regular Force	9,922	Reserves	230
Naval Reserves	3,760	DND Civilian Employees	1,396
DND Civilian Employees	7,707	Total	6,594
Total	21,389		

3. *Air Command.* Air Command is headquartered at Canadian Forces Bases (CFB) Winnipeg, Manitoba. Air Command's six functional groups provide combat-ready air forces to meet Canada's defence commitments. It is also responsible for the Prairie Region.



### Personnel and Budget

Air Command consists of 21,814 Regular Force members, 1,150 Air Reserves and 7,041 civilians for a total of 30,005 members. The operations and maintenance budget for 1987-88 was \$445.5m. including aviation fuel operations and maintenance costs. The budgets for the Air Reserves, the Prairie Region Cadets and Allied Military Training at CFB Goose Bay, Newfoundland were \$11.7m., \$6.9m. and \$31.1m. respectively.

### Projects and Plans

During 1988, Air Command took delivery of the last of the 138 CF-18 fighter aircraft. Progress was made toward the North American Air Defence Modernization achievement of operational capability, expected for late 1989. Projects such as the New Shipborne Aircraft Project and the CF-18 air-to-air missiles are also being advanced.

### Functional Organization

Air Command is divided into six functional air groups. The Commander, Air Command, whose headquarters is in Winnipeg, Manitoba, delegates operational control to the commanders of the air groups over their assigned resources. The Commander retains responsibility for flight safety, as well as air doctrine and standards relating to flying operations throughout the Canadian Forces, including units located outside Canada. The air groups are:

- (a) Fighter Group (Headquarters at North Bay, Ontario) maintains the sovereignty of Canada's airspace, supports Mobile and Maritime Command training and operations, and fulfills Canada's commitments to NATO and NORAD.
- (b) Air Transport Group (Headquarters at Trenton, Ontario) provides airlift resources for the Canadian Forces, and is responsible for Search and Rescue (SAR) forces for Canada and surrounding waters.
- (c) Maritime Air Group (Headquarters at Halifax, Nova Scotia) is responsible for the management of all air resources engaged in maritime patrol, maritime surveillance and anti-submarine warfare.
- (d) 10 Tactical Air Group (Headquarters at St. Hubert, Quebec) provides combat-ready tactical aviation forces for operational employment in support of Mobile Command operations and training, and of other defence commitments.
- (e) 14 Training Group (Headquarters at Winnipeg) trains aircrew and other air personnel to initial classification and trade specifications, and provides other training as directed.
- (f) Air Reserve Group (Headquarters at Winnipeg) provides support to Air Command by provision of operational units and individual augmentees.

4. *Canadian Forces Training System.* The Canadian Forces Training System headquarters is located at CFB Trenton, Ontario. Its functions include the planning and conduct of all recruit, trades, specialist and other officer classification training common to more than one command.

5. *Canadian Forces Communication Command (CFCC).* Canadian Forces Communication Command (CFCC) provides strategic communication services, as well as communications research and high frequency radio direction-finding services for the CF. To effect these services CFCC operates and maintains several data networks and voice communications systems.

It is implicit in the provision of strategic communications for the CF and emergency government that the organization be capable of extending services to the various military and civil headquarters during a national emergency. As well, it must supply reliable strategic communications from Canada to CF combat elements anywhere in the world. To these ends, Communication Command personnel exercise their equipment and procedures regularly.

### Personnel and Budget

The Canadian Forces Communication Command's (CFCC) 5,832 personnel includes a regular force contingent of 3,165 members, a Communications Reserve of 2,030 and a civilian force of all 637 persons.

The 1988 command budget was \$108.1m. Expenses included long distance tele-

phone services and Canada's share of costs to ensure global access to our NORAD NATO and Commonwealth partners.

6. *Canadian Forces Europe (CFE)*. Throughout 1988 Canadian Forces Europe (CFE) continued to provide combat-ready land and air forces to Supreme Allied Commander Europe in accordance with Canada's NATO commitment. The two formations stationed permanently in Central Europe, 4 Canadian Mechanized Brigade Group (4 CMBG) and 1 Canadian Air Group (1 CAG), completed challenging and realistic training programmes to maintain their operational readiness at the highest possible state. Support for the two formations was provided by Canadian Forces Bases (CFBs) Lahar and Baden-Soellingen.

#### Personnel and Budget

During 1988 the total number of service personnel at CFE numbered 7,252.

During the fiscal year 1987-88, CFE was allocated an operations and maintenance budget of \$342.7m.

The *Reserve Force* consists of officers and men who are enrolled for other than continuing full-time military service. The sub-components of the Reserve Force are the Primary Reserve; the Supplementary Reserve; the Cadet Instructors List; and the Canadian Rangers.

The elements of the Primary Reserve are the Naval Reserve; Militia; Air Reserve; and Communication Reserve. Funded personnel levels for these four elements are 3,720; 17,004; 1,150; and 2,030 respectively.

The Supplementary Reserve consists of officers and men who, except when on active service, are not required to perform duty or training.

The Cadet Instructors List consists of commissioned officers who may be required to undergo annual training and whose primary duty is the supervision, administration and training of cadets.

The Canadian Rangers consists of officers and men who volunteer to hold themselves in readiness for service but are not required to undergo annual training. Their role is to provide a military force in sparsely settled, northern, coastal and isolated areas of Canada.

*Regional organization.* In order to most effectively respond to support requirements within Canada, a regional structure has been superimposed over the functional organization. This has been accomplished by dividing Canada into six geographic regions and appointing the senior commander in each region as the Region Commander. Thus the following interrelationship of Functional Command/Region/geographical area has resulted: *Maritime Command* - Atlantic Region (Newfoundland, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Prince Edward Island); *Mobile Command* - Eastern Region (Quebec); *Canadian Forces Training System* - Central Region (Ontario); *Air Command* - Prairie Region (Manitoba, Saskatchewan, and Alberta); *Maritime Forces Pacific* - Pacific Region (British Columbia); and *Northern Region Headquarters* - Northern Region (Yukon and Northwest Territories). Functional responsibilities include representation to provincial governments, aid of the Civil Power, emergency and survival operations, and administration of cadets, as well as regional support services for all units in the region.

7. *Northern Region Headquarters.* Situated in Yellowknife, NWT, the Northern Region Headquarters (NRHQ) was formed on 15 May 1970 to assist in maintaining Canadian sovereignty and support ongoing Canadian Forces activities in the North.

#### Personnel and Budget

NRHQ strength, including detachment personnel, was about 81 Regular Force and civilian personnel located in Yellowknife and Whitehorse.

Seventy-three percent of the region's \$2.3m. annual budget was used to support the Ranger and Cadet programme including National Cadet Camp Whitehorse. The remaining 27% was used for operations and maintenance.

#### Training

Increasing emphasis on the North during 1988 was felt by NRHQ as more land



and air units carried out air defence, tactical airlift and adventure training exercises. These exercises included French army and Royal Air Force units as well as elements of the CF.

The estimated net Program Expenditures for the Department of National Defence for 1987-1988 is \$10,340m.

The strength of the Regular Forces for 1988 was 86,476.

*Royal Canadian Mounted Police.* The Royal Canadian Mounted Police is a civil force maintained by the federal government. It was established in 1873, as the North-West Mounted Police for service in what was then the North-West Territories and, in recognition of its services, was granted the use of the prefix 'Royal' by King Edward VII in 1904. Its sphere of operations was expanded in 1918 to include all of Canada west of Thunder Bay. In 1920 the force absorbed the Dominion Police, its headquarters was transferred from Regina to Ottawa, and its title was changed to Royal Canadian Mounted Police. The force is responsible to the Solicitor-General of Canada and is controlled and managed by a Commissioner who holds the rank and status of a Deputy Minister. The Commissioner is empowered under the Royal Canadian Mounted Police Act to appoint members to be peace officers in all provinces and territories of Canada.

The responsibilities of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police are national in scope. The administration of justice within the provinces, including the enforcement of the Criminal Code of Canada, is part of the power and duty delegated to the provincial governments.

All provinces except Ontario and Quebec have entered into contracts with the Royal Canadian Mounted Police to enforce criminal and provincial laws under the direction of the respective Attorneys-General. In addition, in these 8 provinces the Force is under agreement to provide police services to 191 municipalities, thereby assuming the enforcement responsibility of municipal as well as criminal and provincial laws within these communities. The Royal Canadian Mounted Police is also responsible for all police work in the Yukon and Northwest Territories enforcing federal law and territorial ordinances. The 15 Divisions, alphabetically designated, make up the strength of the Force across Canada; they comprise 52 subdivisions which include 725 detachments. Headquarters Division, as well as the Office of the Commissioner, is located in Ottawa. The Force maintains liaison officers in 17 countries and represents Canada in the International Criminal Police Organization which has its headquarters in Paris.

Thorough training is emphasized for members of the Force. Recruits receive 6 months of basic training at the Royal Canadian Mounted Police Academy in Regina. This is followed by a further 6 months of supervised on-the-job training. The RCMP also operates the Canadian Police College at which its members and selected representatives of other Canadian and foreign police forces may study the latest advances in the fields of crime prevention and detection.

Many of these advances have been incorporated into the operation of the Force. A teletype system links the widespread divisional headquarters with the administrative centre at Ottawa and a network of fixed and mobile radio units operates within the provinces. The focal point of the criminal investigation work of the Force is the Directorate of Laboratories and Identification; its services, together with those of divisional and sub-divisional units, and of 8 Crime Detection Laboratories, are available to police forces throughout Canada. The Canadian Police Information Centre at RCMP Headquarters, a duplexed computer system, is staffed and operated by the Force. Law Enforcement agencies throughout Canada have access *via* a series of remote terminals of information on stolen vehicles, licences and wanted persons.

In Oct. 1987, the Force had a total strength of 20,058 including regular members, special constables, civilian members and Public Service employees. It maintained 6,984 motor vehicles, 87 police service dogs and 156 horses.

The Force has 13 divisions actively engaged in law enforcement, 1 Headquarters Division and 1 training division. Maritime services are divisional responsibilities and the Force currently has 394 boats at various points across Canada. The Air



Directorate has stations throughout the country and maintains a fleet of 26 fixed-wing aircraft and 8 helicopters.

Eays, J., *In Defence of Canada: Growing up Allied*. Univ. of Toronto Press, 1980

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Canada is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OECD, NATO and Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Budgetary revenue and expenditure of the Government of Canada for years ended 31 March (in Canadian \$1 m.):

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	70,891	76,823	85,793	97,459	103,305
Expenditure	109,215	111,227	116,395	125,542	132,250

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

Budgetary revenue, main items, 1987-88 (estimates in Canadian \$1 m.):

Income tax, personal	45,125	Non-resident tax	1,162
Income tax, corporation	10,878	Oil export charge	-
Sales tax	12,934	Natural gas tax	1
Customs import duties	4,384	Non-tax revenue	1,669

Details of budget estimates<sup>1</sup>, 1987-88 (in Canadian \$1 m.):

Economic and regional development	14,289	External affairs and aid	3,439
Social development	56,642	Defence	10,772
Public debt charges	28,976	Parliament	231
		Services to government	4,186

<sup>1</sup> The Department of Finance now manages expenditure under a new system of broad categories (listed above) called 'envelopes'.

On 31 March 1988 the net public debt was \$277,439m.

Canadian Tax Foundation. *The National Finances: An Analysis of the Revenues and Expenditures of the Government of Canada*. Toronto. Annual

**Currency.** The denominations of money in the currency of Canada are dollars and cents. The cent is one-hundredth part of a dollar. Circulating coins are in denominations of 1, 5, 10, 25, 50 and 100 cents. The monetary standard is gold of 900 millesimal fineness (23.22 grains of pure gold equal to 1 gold dollar). The Currency Act provides for gold coins in the denominations of \$5, \$10 and \$20, which are legal tender. The British and US gold coins are also legal tender, at the par rate of exchange. The legal equivalent of the British sovereign is \$4.86⅔.

Since 1935 the Bank of Canada has the sole right to issue paper money for circulation in Canada. Restrictions introduced by the 1944 revisions of the Bank Act cancelled the right of chartered banks to issue or re-issue notes after 1 Jan. 1945; and in Jan. 1950 the chartered banks' liability for such of their notes as then remained outstanding was transferred to the Bank of Canada in return for payment of a like sum to the Bank of Canada. On 31 May 1970 the Canadian dollar which was stabilized at 92.50 US cents was allowed to fluctuate. The value of the US\$ in Canadian funds was \$1.19 and £1 sterling = Canadian \$2.05 in March 1989.

The Bank of Canada bank notes in circulation are in denominations of \$1, \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50, \$100 and \$1,000. On 25 March 1986, the Government of Canada announced the introduction of a circulating dollar coin with the eventual withdrawal of one dollar bank note in 1989.

The Ottawa Mint was established in 1908 as a branch of the Royal Mint, in pursuance of the Ottawa Mint Act, 1901. In Dec. 1931 control of the Mint was passed over to the Canadian Government, and since that time it has operated as the Royal Canadian Mint. The Mint issues nickel, bronze and cupronickel coins for circulation in Canada. In 1967, in celebration of Canada's Centennial of Confederation, a \$20 gold piece was minted, the first gold coin struck since 1919.

In 1935, on the occasion of His Majesty's Silver Jubilee, the Royal Canadian Mint issued the first Canadian silver dollar. Commemorative dollars were also issued in 1939 on the occasion of the visit of King George VI and Queen Elizabeth to Canada; in 1949, when Newfoundland became the tenth Province of Canada; in 1958, the one-hundredth anniversary of the establishment of the Colony of British Columbia; in 1964, the centennial of the Charlottetown and Quebec Conferences which paved the way to confederation. The silver dollar bearing the design of the canoe manned by an Indian and a Voyageur has been issued in the years 1935-38, 1945-48, 1950-57, 1959-63, 1965 and 1966. In 1968, the coin bore the same design but its composition changed from silver to nickel. This composition remained for all the following years. The design was used again in 1969, 1972, 1975-87. For centennial year the Canada goose replaced the usual canoe design on the silver dollar. Because of a world-wide shortage of silver, the Government, in Aug. 1967, authorized the Mint to change the metal content of the 25-cent and 10-cent coins. Commencing in Sept. 1968, 10-cent, 25-cent, 50-cent and \$1 coins were minted in pure nickel. Gold refining is one of the principal activities of the Mint. On average the Mint refines about 70% of Canada's total gold production. In 1987 the Mint processed over 3.8m. gross troy oz. of gold. Of this total, 2,862,489 troy oz. of rough bullion were received from Canadian gold mines for treatment, containing 2,282,724 troy oz. of fine gold and 400,260 troy oz. of fine silver. Coins issued (1987): Gold bullion 2,468,495 pieces.

**Banking.** Commercial banks in Canada are known as chartered banks and are incorporated under the terms of the Bank Act, which imposes strict conditions as to capital, returns to the Federal government, types of lending operations and other matters. In Aug. 1988 there were 69 chartered banks (10 domestic banks and 59 foreign bank subsidiaries) incorporated under the provisions of the Bank Act; the 10 had 6,728 branches serving 1,700 communities in all provinces in Canada and 235 branches in other countries. The foreign bank subsidiaries operate 413 offices in Canada including 58 head offices. The Bank Act is subject to revision by Parliament every 10 years. Bank charters expire every 10 years and are renewed at each decennial revision of the Bank Act. The chartered banks make detailed monthly and yearly returns to the Minister of Finance and are subject to periodic inspection by the Superintendent of Financial Institutions, an official appointed by the Government.

The Bank of Canada Act, effective from 3 July 1934, provided for the establishment of a central bank for the Dominion. This bank commenced operations on 11 March 1935 with a paid-up capital of \$5m. By reason of certain changes introduced into the composition of stockholders of the bank (for which see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1944 pp. 322-23), the Minister of Finance on behalf of Canada is the sole registered owner of the capital stock of the bank. The revised Bank Act, which came into force on 1 Dec. 1980, requires chartered banks to maintain a statutory primary reserve of 10% on demand deposits, 3% on foreign-currency deposits and 2% on notice deposits, with an additional 1% on the portion of notice deposits exceeding \$500m. This reserve is required to be maintained in the form of notes and deposits with the Bank of Canada. A secondary reserve of 4% in the form of treasury bills, government bonds, etc., is also required. All gold held in Canada by the chartered banks was transferred to the Bank of Canada along with the gold held by the Government as reserve against Dominion notes outstanding at the time of the commencement of operations of the Bank of Canada. The liability of the Dominion notes outstanding at the commencement of business of the Bank of Canada was assumed by the bank.

In the year ending 31 March 1988, the Federal Business Development Bank authorized 5,542 loans for a total of \$862m.

**Weights and Measures.** The legal weights and measures are in transition from the Imperial to the International system of units. The Metric Commission, established in June 1971, co-ordinates Canada's conversion to the metric system.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The net generation of electricity in 1987 was 482,107,563 mwh., of which utilities accounted for 445,382,995 mwh. Of the total, 313,188,941 mwh. was from hydro-electricity, 92,279,066 mwh. from conventional steam plants and 72,888,224 mwh. from nuclear plants. The demand in 1987 was 440,345,000 mwh. Supply 115 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil and Natural Gas.** The emergence of conventional oil and gas producing industry in the western sedimentary basin and the more recent developments in Alberta's oil sands have been accompanied by the construction of extensive systems of oil and gas pipelines. These systems extend from Alberta westward to British Columbia as well as to systems in the northwestern United States and eastward as far as Montreal, Quebec with extensions into the Mid-West and eastern USA. At the end of 1987 Canada's oil pipeline system had 47,862 km in operation. Net oil deliveries in 1987 were 160,787,858 cu. metres. The Trans-Canada natural gas pipeline is the longest in the world (10,589.8 km). It brings natural gas from the Alberta-Saskatchewan border across the prairies, through northern Ontario to Toronto, then eastward to Montreal. Natural gas pipeline mileage totalled 240,000 km in 1987. Total deliveries of marketable natural gas to transportation and distribution systems in 1987, 78,265.4m. cu. metres; total gas sales 47,816.6m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Alberta, British Columbia, Saskatchewan and Quebec are the chief mining provinces. Total value of minerals produced in 1987 (preliminary) was \$36,038,604,000. Principal minerals produced in 1987 (preliminary) were as follows:

	<i>Quantity</i> (1,000)	<i>Value</i> (\$1,000)
<i>Metallics</i>		
Copper (kg)	767,299	1,844,588
Nickel (kg)	187,805	1,288,531
Zinc (kg)	1,329,408	1,693,655
Iron ore (tonnes)	37,553	1,254,248
Gold (grammes)	117,834	2,242,858
Lead (kg)	390,503	412,761
Silver (kg)	1,250	373,681
Molybdenum (kg)	11,581	92,648
Others	...	1,725,495
Total metallics	...	10,928,465
<i>Non-metallics</i>		
Asbestos (tonnes)	665	235,168
Potash (K <sub>2</sub> O) (tonnes)	7,465	705,826
Salt (tonnes)	10,294	235,420
Sulphur, elemental (tonnes)	6,888	650,762
Gypsum (tonnes)	8,811	87,908
Others	...	565,356
Total non-metallics	...	2,480,440
<i>Fuels</i>		
Crude petroleum (cu. metres)	87,108	11,992,672
Natural gas (1,000 cu. metres)	71,962	4,310,674
Natural gas by-products (cu. metres)	20,879	2,016,864
Coal (tonnes)	59,790	1,635,000
Total fuels	...	19,955,210
<i>Structural materials</i>		
Cement (tonnes)	12,205	976,025
Sand and gravel (tonnes)	260,265	729,147
Stone (tonnes)	105,675	547,495
Clay products (bricks, tiles, etc.)	...	210,208
Lime (tonnes)	2,271	177,900
Total structural materials	...	2,640,775



Value (in Canadian \$1,000) of mineral production by provinces:

<i>Provinces</i>	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>	<i>Provinces</i>	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>
Newfoundland	817,339	767,816	Saskatchewan	2,524,555	2,996,823
Pr. Ed. Island	1,754	1,917	Alberta	16,330,475	17,148,092
Nova Scotia	366,718	390,095	British Columbia	3,161,338	3,428,963
New Brunswick	501,570	700,709	Yukon Territory	176,101	447,204
Quebec	2,190,538	2,527,761	N.W. Territories	788,287	950,110
Ontario	4,824,739	5,656,634			
Manitoba	763,892	1,022,484	Total	32,447,308	36,038,608

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

**Agriculture.** Though the manufacturing and service industries now predominate, agriculture is still very important to the Canadian economy. As a percentage of the GDP, agriculture in 1987 equalled 3.1% of the net value of production; it also accounted for about 8.4% of the total value of commodities exported (1987).

According to the census of 1986 the total land area is 2,278.6m. acres of which 167.6m. acres are agricultural land.

Grain growing, dairy farming, fruit farming, ranching and fur farming are all carried on successfully. Total farm cash receipts (1987) \$20,965.6m.

The following table shows the value of farm cash receipts for 1987, for selected agricultural commodities, in Canadian \$1,000:

Wheat <sup>1</sup>	2,558,048	Tobacco	257,178
Oats and barley <sup>1</sup>	550,645	Cattle and calves	3,777,697
Rapeseed	699,617	Hogs	2,117,647
Potatoes	347,299	Sheep and lambs	34,146
Vegetables	632,118	Dairy products	2,877,695
Fruit	332,494	Poultry and eggs	1,494,886

<sup>1</sup> Includes Canadian Wheat Board payments.

Number of occupied farms (census of 1986) was 293,089; average farm size, 231 hectares.

**Field Crops.** The estimated acreage and yield of the principal field crops, by provinces, 1987 were:

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Wheat</i>		<i>Tame hay</i>		<i>Oats</i>	
	1,000 acres	1,000 bu.	1,000 acres	1,000 bu.	1,000 acres	1,000 bu.
Newfoundland	—	—	10	14	—	—
Prince Edward Island	13	680	137	315	24	1,490
Nova Scotia	7	420	171	390	17	862
New Brunswick	11	513	173	410	30	1,680
Quebec	161	6,730	2,436	7,170	255	15,040
Ontario	470	23,300	2,550	8,500	275	16,800
Manitoba	4,850	145,000	1,550	3,200	450	27,000
Saskatchewan	20,400	560,000	2,000	2,800	800	46,000
Alberta	7,270	213,000	4,350	9,000	1,200	81,000
British Columbia	110	3,900	840	2,200	70	4,400
Total, Canada	33,292	953,543	14,217	33,999	3,121	194,272

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Barley</i>		<i>Rye</i>		<i>Corn for Grain</i>	
	1,000 acres	1,000 bu.	1,000 acres	1,000 bu.	1,000 acres	1,000 bu.
Prince Edward Island	66	3,900	—	—	—	—
Nova Scotia	13	749	—	—	—	—
New Brunswick	26	1,600	—	—	3	252
Quebec	430	20,990	—	—	563	55,510
Ontario	590	36,000	49	1,500	1,840	215,000
Manitoba	1,700	89,000	65	1,800	50	4,300
Saskatchewan	3,800	180,000	430	9,800	—	—
Alberta	5,600	302,500	220	6,000	12	1,120
British Columbia	140	6,300	10	300	—	—
Total, Canada	12,365	641,039	774	19,400	2,468	276,182

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Canola</i>		<i>Mixed grains</i>		<i>Soybeans</i>	
	<i>1,000 acres</i>	<i>1,000 bu.</i>	<i>1,000 acres</i>	<i>1,000 bu.</i>	<i>1,000 acres</i>	<i>1,000 bu.</i>
Prince Edward Island	—	—	62	4,050	—	—
Nova Scotia	—	—	—	—	—	—
New Brunswick	—	—	—	—	—	—
Quebec	—	—	69	3,674	16	533
Ontario	40	1,300	540	35,000	1,120	46,000
Manitoba	1,000	25,800	80	4,000	—	—
Saskatchewan	2,600	68,000	60	2,700	—	—
Alberta	2,850	72,000	150	8,000	—	—
British Columbia	110	2,500	110	220	—	—
Total, Canada	6,600	169,600	965	57,624	1,136	46,533

**Livestock.** In parts of Saskatchewan and Alberta stockraising is still carried on as a primary industry, but the livestock industry of the country at large is mainly a subsidiary of mixed farming. The following table shows the numbers of livestock (in 1,000) by provinces in July 1988:

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Milch cows</i>	<i>Other cattle and calves</i>	<i>Sheep and lambs</i>	<i>Swine</i>
Newfoundland	4.2	4.0	7.1	16.5
Prince Edward Island	20.9	78.1	6.1	126.0
Nova Scotia	33.6	92.4	38.0	143.0
New Brunswick	26.8	76.2	9.0	95.0
Quebec	568.0	936.0	111.0	3,080.0
Ontario	465.0	1,820.0	201.0	3,370.0
Manitoba	66.0	1,009.0	22.0	1,200.0
Saskatchewan	53.0	2,097.0	51.0	845.0
Alberta	124.0	3,891.0	198.0	1,735.0
British Columbia	75.0	620.0	53.5	236.0
Total	1,436.5	10,623.7	696.7	10,846.5

Net production<sup>1</sup> of farm eggs in 1986, 472.3m. doz. (\$494.2m.); 1987, 475.5m. doz. (\$492.6m.).

<sup>1</sup> Includes exports.

Wool production (in tonnes), 1983, 1,352; 1984, 1,306; 1985, 1,219; 1986, 1,143; 1987, 1,144.

**Dairying.** The dairy products industry has shown a marked tendency towards centralization; the number of establishments decreased between 1961 and 1985<sup>1</sup> from 1,720 to 394 (77.1%), whereas the number of employees has decreased from 32,857 to 25,445 (22.6%). Production, 1987: Butter, 95,595 tonnes; cheddar cheese, 115,561 tonnes<sup>2</sup>; concentrated whole milk products, 69,729 tonnes; skim milk powder, 101,581 tonnes.

<sup>1</sup> The number of establishments/employees are based on the 1980 Standard Industrial Classification.

<sup>2</sup> Includes cheddar used to make processed cheese.

**Fruit Farming.** The value of fruit production (excluding apples) in 1986 was (in \$1,000): Ontario, 84,729; British Columbia, 76,990; Quebec, 15,023; Nova Scotia, 11,966; New Brunswick, 4,900; Prince Edward Island, 2,051. Total apple production in Canada in 1986 was 388,176 tonnes.

**Tobacco.** Commercial production of tobacco is confined to Ontario and Quebec. Farm cash receipts in 1987 totalled \$258.8m.

**Forestry.** As of 1985, the total area of land covered by forests is estimated at about 4,364,000 sq. km, of which 2,642,000 sq. km are classed as productive forest land.

Lumber production (in cu. metres) in 1985 was 52,109,287.

Lumber shipments from sawmills and planing mills in 1985 was valued at \$5,545m. Pulp production was 20.2m. tonnes in 1985 and 20.5m. tonnes in 1984.

In 1985 mill shipments of paper amounted to 14.2m. tonnes valued at \$8,766,065,000.

**Fur Trade.** In 1986-87, 4,661,945 pelts valued at \$150,129,659, were taken. In wild-life pelt production marten led in total value, followed by beaver, muskrat and coyote/prairie wolf. The most important animal raised on fur farms is mink, with 44% of the total value of production. The value of mink pelts from fur farms in 1986-87 was \$66,122,569. There were, in 1986-87, 1,040 fur farms reporting fox and 488 mink.

**Fisheries.** During 1986, landings in Canadian commercial fisheries reached 1,510,810 tonnes. The landed value was \$1,357.6m. and the estimated market value was \$2,952m. The landed value of principal fish in 1986 was (in \$1,000): Salmon, 271,114; cod, 217,646; lobster, 242,690; herring, 73,997; scallops, 74,510; freshwater fish, 77,180; halibut, 39,685. Exports of fisheries' products, 1986, were valued at \$2,432m.

*Canadian Mines Handbook.* Annual. Toronto, from 1931

*Canadian Fisheries, Highlights 1983.* Dept. of Fisheries and Oceans, 1984

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry groups ranked by value of shipments, survey of 1985 (based on 1980 Standard Industrial Classification):

<i>Industry</i>	<i>Production workers</i>	<i>Wages (\$1,000)</i>	<i>Cost of materials (\$1,000)</i>	<i>Value of shipments (\$1,000)</i>
Food industries	135,226	2,774,064	22,502,053	32,792,936
Beverage industries	17,445	506,206	2,020,693	4,863,698
Tobacco products	4,178	136,801	685,135	1,640,901
Rubber products	18,029	459,548	1,227,071	2,554,187
Plastic products	30,890	571,650	2,042,618	3,860,925
Leather and allied industries	19,954	295,758	663,016	1,308,180
Primary textile	19,589	395,031	1,383,846	2,669,665
Textile industries	25,152	409,979	1,450,182	2,650,075
Clothing industries	98,854	1,321,426	2,703,750	5,543,164
Wood industries	90,988	2,203,516	6,164,466	11,121,616
Furniture and fixtures	42,576	748,740	1,574,847	3,398,624
Paper and allied industries	86,477	2,699,480	8,711,530	18,074,629
Printing, publishing and allied industries	74,386	1,802,150	3,515,739	9,534,831
Primary metal industries	80,989	2,660,807	8,906,869	16,970,955
Metal fabricating industries	112,386	2,578,632	7,195,841	13,971,012
Machinery industries	53,286	1,263,801	3,759,316	7,450,789
Transport equipment	63,192	4,735,027	29,125,931	43,182,266
Electrical and electronic products	88,224	2,002,149	6,651,939	13,270,246
Non-metallic mineral products	38,763	1,001,780	2,303,654	5,879,141
Refined petroleum products	6,436	265,859	21,090,561	24,420,831
Chemical and chemical prods.	46,274	1,269,796	9,649,600	18,268,582
Other manufacturing	51,865	970,395	2,487,540	5,065,381
All industries	1,205,159	31,072,595	145,817,198	248,492,634

**Labour.** In 1987 (annual average) the industrial distribution of the employed was estimated as follows (in 1,000): Community, business and personal service, 3,934; manufacturing, 2,044; trade, 2,116; transport, communication and other utilities, 906; construction, 680; public administration, 814; finance, insurance and real estate, 695; agriculture, 475; non-agriculture, 11,480; other primary industries, 291; total employed, 11,955; unemployed, 1,167. Union returns filed for 1985 in compliance with the Corporations and Returns Act (1962), show 395 labour organizations reporting on 14,909 local union branches in Canada. Union membership in 1985 was 3.49m. 34.4% of paid workers in major industry groups were members of reporting labour organizations, with about 58.9% of the organized workers members of unions affiliated with the Canada Labour Congress. Over 1.38m. of the union members were in international unions, which have



branches both in Canada and the USA and in most cases belong to central labour organizations in both countries.

It is generally established by legislation, both federal and provincial, that a trade union to which the majority of employees in a unit suitable for collective bargaining belong, is given certain rights and duties. An employer is required to meet and negotiate with such a trade union to determine wage-rates and other working conditions of his employees. The employer, the trade union and the employees affected are bound by the resulting agreement. If an impasse is reached in negotiation conciliation services provided by the appropriate government board are available. Generally, work stoppages do not take place until an established conciliation or mediation procedure has been carried out and are prohibited while an agreement is in effect. Almost 23% of the workers affected by collective agreements are in the manufacturing industry.

Freedom of association is a civil right in Canada, and under common law workers are at liberty to join unions and participate in their activities. This right has also been guaranteed by statutes which make it an offence to interfere with freedom of association.

Certain specific minimum standards in regard to working conditions are set by law, for the most part by provincial labour legislation. Minimum wages, maximum hours of work or an overtime rate of pay after a specified number of hours, minimum weekly rest periods, annual vacations with pay, statutory holidays, maternity leave and notice of termination of employment are established for the majority of workers.

Dept. of Labour, *Working Conditions in Canadian Industry*. Annual, Ottawa

**Commerce.** In the past the custom tariff of Canada has been protective, with a preferential tariff in favour of the UK, the Dominions, a number of Crown Colonies, and the Irish and South African Republics. At the Imperial Economic Conference of 1932, held in Ottawa, the UK developed further the policy of preferential tariffs to the Dominions, and on the part of the latter there was a general lowering of the existing tariffs against certain lines of UK manufacturers. Canada is one of the signatories of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) and of the Kennedy Round agreements.

Imports and domestic exports (in Canadian \$1,000) for calendar years:

	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>		<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
1960	5,842,695	5,255,575	1985	104,355,196	116,145,111
1970	13,951,903	16,820,098	1986 <sup>1</sup>	112,511,445	116,733,385
1980	69,273,844	74,445,976	1987 <sup>2</sup>	116,238,614	121,462,342
1984	95,459,996	109,436,610			

<sup>1</sup> Revised <sup>2</sup> Estimate.

Exports (domestic) by countries in 1987 (in Canadian \$1,000):

Australia	689,109	Kenya	9,361
Bahamas	30,821	Leeward and Windward Islands	45,776
Bahrain	11,439	Malawi	3,749
Bangladesh	124,365	Malaysia	118,387
Barbados	41,775	Malta	1,767
Belize	6,070	Mauritius and Dependencies	992
Bermuda	36,901	New Zealand	136,216
Britain (UK)	2,849,882	Nigeria	22,435
British Oceania	319	Pakistan	82,055
Cyprus	14,262	Qatar	3,616
Falkland Islands	26	Sierra Leone	318
Fiji	2,511	Singapore	167,992
Gambia	570	South Africa, Republic of <sup>1</sup>	113,170
Ghana	25,506	Sri Lanka	30,579
Gibraltar	157	Tanzania	25,426
Guyana	5,162	Trinidad and Tobago	70,505
Hong Kong	480,055	Uganda	809
India	270,999	Zambia	18,877
Ireland	143,261		
Jamaica	94,780	Afghanistan	44

Exports (*continued*)

Albania	540	Kuwait	20,133
Algeria	200,653	Lebanon	10,139
Angola	4,772	Liberia	3,958
Argentina	96,588	Libya	28,781
Austria	92,048	Madagascar	3,689
Belgium and Luxembourg	1,137,151	Mauritania	1,672
Benin	3,309	Mexico	521,980
Bolivia	4,487	Morocco	203,608
Brazil	636,825	Mozambique	18,386
Burma	1,074	Netherlands	1,020,954
Cameroon Republic	15,752	Netherlands Antilles	10,560
Chile	98,596	Nicaragua	9,820
China	1,432,079	Norway	310,114
Colombia	224,330	Panama	34,366
Costa Rica	30,700	Paraguay	4,008
Côte d'Ivoire	11,192	Peru	120,523
Cuba	272,892	Philippines	122,095
Czechoslovakia	14,138	Poland	12,455
Denmark	110,533	Portugal	173,010
Dominican Republic	55,399	Portuguese Africa	2,993
Ecuador	41,345	Puerto Rico	233,577
Egypt (UAR)	83,529	Romania	53,678
El Salvador	15,611	St Pierre and Miquelon	30,831
Ethiopia	34,593	Saudi Arabia	267,862
Finland	95,792	Senegal	12,805
France	1,037,364	Somalia	825
French Africa	26,466	Spain	212,453
French Guiana	139	Spanish Africa	1,057
French Oceania	3,280	Sudan	11,749
French West Indies	7,260	Suriname	1,004
Gabon	1,378	Sweden	248,463
German Democratic Rep.	55,858	Switzerland	402,465
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	1,515,196	Syria	8,875
Greece	66,464	Taiwan	757,023
Greenland	4,023	Thailand	194,929
Guatemala	20,182	Togo	763
Guinea	3,410	Tunisia	75,368
Haiti, Republic of	25,386	Turkey	266,074
Honduras	14,043	USSR	800,606
Hungary	16,226	United Arab Emirates	22,292
Iceland	10,387	USA	91,756,404
Indonesia	305,079	US Oceania	3,492
Iran	168,093	US Virgin Islands	4,630
Iraq	119,636	Uruguay	25,935
Israel	146,321	Venezuela	336,684
Italy	842,807	Vietnam	2,337
Japan	7,036,248	Yemen (South)	5,706
Jordan	5,713	Yugoslavia	16,516
Korea, North	7,063	Zaire	17,206
Korea, South	1,167,413	Zimbabwe	8,792

## Imports by countries in 1987 (in Canadian \$1,000):

Australia	564,125	Gibraltar	—
Bahamas	42,178	Guyana	33,777
Bahrain	1,649	Hong Kong	1,137,618
Bangladesh	23,024	India	170,867
Barbados	21,127	Ireland	199,697
Belize	5,849	Jamaica	113,774
Bermuda	5,454	Kenya	12,637
Britain (UK)	4,339,184	Leeward and Windward Islands	5,525
British Oceania	—	Malawi	1,007
Cyprus	1,811	Malaysia	187,277
Falkland Islands	190	Malta	1,273
Fiji	6,482	Mauritius and Dependencies	27,612
Gambia	113	New Zealand	199,737
Ghana	6,264	Nigeria	251,504

Imports (*continued*)

Pakistan	61,554	Israel	116,355
Qatar	290	Italy	1,702,833
Sierra Leone	10,186	Japan	7,550,709
Singapore	261,904	Jordan	587
South Africa, Republic of <sup>1</sup>	155,389	Korea, North	1,621
Sri Lanka	34,260	Korea, South	1,844,039
Tanzania	2,254	Kuwait	564
Trinidad and Tobago	36,875	Lebanon	1,570
Uganda	1,967	Liberia	1,822
Zambia	23	Libya	—
		Madagascar	111
Afghanistan	161	Mauritania	—
Albania	11	Mexico	1,169,566
Algeria	22,124	Morocco	29,429
Angola	121,836	Mozambique	1,520
Argentina	111,550	Netherlands	750,152
Austria	247,460	Netherlands Antilles	19,629
Belgium and Luxembourg	618,951	Nicaragua	28,661
Benin	1	Norway	256,845
Bolivia	3,657	Panama	30,749
Brazil	850,542	Paraguay	808
Burma	717	Peru	75,210
Cameroon Republic	1,173	Philippines	107,146
Chile	153,300	Poland	68,648
China	770,901	Portugal	89,093
Colombia	132,997	Portuguese Africa	—
Costa Rica	63,223	Puerto Rico	226,927
Côte d'Ivoire	13,226	Romania	57,046
Cuba	51,567	St Pierre and Miquelon	1,258
Czechoslovakia	63,830	Saudi Arabia	175,134
Denmark	248,964	Senegal	156
Dominican Republic	29,489	Somalia	—
Ecuador	95,697	Spain	485,245
Egypt (UAR)	34,018	Spanish Africa	2,371
El Salvador	43,151	Sudan	1,480
Ethiopia	1,876	Suriname	3,551
Finland	287,798	Sweden	883,737
France	1,488,728	Switzerland	586,810
French Africa	11,230	Syria	439
French Guiana	9	Taiwan	2,023,029
French Oceania	455	Thailand	200,776
French West Indies	266	Togo	14,076
Gabon	5,757	Tunisia	2,312
German Democratic Rep.	34,047	Turkey	78,321
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	3,534,458	USSR	35,547
Greece	63,551	United Arab Emirates	48,698
Greenland	18,191	USA	79,088,767
Guatemala	33,008	US Oceania	1,778
Guinea	19,453	US Virgin Islands	54,038
Haiti, Republic of	8,664	Uruguay	130,198
Honduras	16,945	Venezuela	551,238
Hungary	47,366	Vietnam	7,709
Iceland	8,319	Yemen (South)	1,013
Indonesia	168,010	Yugoslavia	70,713
Iran	110,304	Zaire	30,646
Iraq	80,801	Zimbabwe	13,680

<sup>1</sup> The Customs Union of Southern Africa for 1987 includes trade with Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia and the Republic of South Africa.

## Categories of imports in 1987, estimate (in Canadian \$1,000):

Live animals	162,114	Fabricated materials, inedible	20,856,255
Food, feed, beverages and tobacco	6,628,970	End products, inedible	79,194,780
Crude materials, inedible	7,404,422	Special transactions	1,992,074



Categories of exports (Canadian produce) in 1987, estimate (in Canadian \$1,000):

Live animals	366,049	Fabricated materials, inedible	41,820,903
Food, feed, beverages and tobacco	10,243,041	End products, inedible	51,920,965
Crude materials, inedible	16,800,920	Special transactions	328,463

Total trade of Canada with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,618,057	1,652,974	1,470,434	1,470,434	2,038,245
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,183,613	1,693,557	1,698,156	1,938,237	2,038,433

**Tourism.** The number of visitors to Canada in 1987 was 39,595,211 (1986, 40,459,341). In 1987, 36,952,611 came from USA (1986, 38,199,514).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The total length of federal and provincial territorial roads and highways in Canada at the end of March 1986 was 280,251 km. Expenditures by these two levels of government on roads and highways during the fiscal year 1985-86 amounted to approximately \$5,347.7m.

Federal expenditures were directed largely to the maintenance of national park highways, Indian Reserve roads and designated provincial/territorial highway construction in projects. In general highways are controlled and maintained by the province who also have the responsibility of providing assistance to their municipalities and townships.

The Alaska Highway is part of the Canadian highway system. For the Trans-Canada Highway see map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1962.

Registered motor vehicles totalled 15,227,311 in 1986; they included 11,477,314 passenger cars and taxis, 3,212,132 trucks and buses and 430,135 motor cycles.

**Urban Transit.** There are metros in Montreal, Toronto and Vancouver, and tram/light rail systems in Calgary, Edmonton and Toronto. In 1986 urban transit systems (urban and suburban passenger transport, electrical railway, trolley coach, bus or subway) carried 1,522,360,000 fare passengers 757,748,467 km for an operating revenue of \$2,282,932,000. In 1986, intercity and rural bus operations carried 25,514,000 fare passengers 174,716,779 km, earning revenues of \$335,860,000.

**Railways.** The total length of track operated during 1986 in Canada was 93,544 km. Mainline track, 38,589 km; branch line, 29,831 km; industrial and siding track, 25,124 km.

Canada has 2 great trans-continental systems: The Canadian National Railway system (CN), a government-owned body which operates 50,708 km (1986) of track, and the Canadian Pacific Railway, a joint-stock corporation operating 33,458 km (1986). From 1 April 1978, a government funded organization known as Via Rail took over passenger services formerly operated by CP and CN; 5.9m. passengers were carried in 1987.

Selected statistics of Canadian railways for 1986: Passenger revenue \$250m.; freight revenue, \$6,216.8m.; total railway operating revenues, \$7,570.5m.; total operating expenses, \$6,787.4m.

**Aviation.** Civil aviation in Canada is under the jurisdiction of the federal government. The technical and administrative aspects are supervised by Transport Canada, while the economic functions are assigned to the National Transportation agency.

In 1987 Canadian airports handled 48,657,505 passengers, 140,455 tonnes of mail and 549,214 tonnes of cargo. Operating revenue for the Canadian commercial air carriers (1987) was \$6,386.3m.; operating expenditure, \$6,024.7m.

**Shipping.** Total vessel arrivals and departures at Canadian ports in domestic shipping was 49,304 in 1987, totalling a cumulative GRT of 228,239,653. A total of 58,678 vessel movements in international shipping at Canadian ports in 1987 loaded and unloaded 227m. tonnes of cargo.

The major canals in Canada are those of the St Lawrence-Great Lakes waterway

with their 7 locks, providing navigation for vessels of 26-ft draught from Montreal to Lake Ontario; the Welland Canal by-passing the Niagara River between Lake Ontario and Lake Erie with its 8 locks; and the Sault Ste Marie Canal and lock between Lake Huron and Lake Superior. These 16 locks overcome a drop of 582 ft from the head of the lakes to Montreal. The St Lawrence Seaway was opened to navigation on 1 April 1959 (see map in *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1957). In 1987, traffic on the Montreal-Lake Ontario Section of the Seaway numbered 3,227 transits carrying 40m. cargo tonnes; on the Welland Canal Section, 3,914 transits with 42.7m. cargo tonnes. Value of fixed assets was \$544,731,000 and investments, \$32,950,000 at 31 March 1988.

**Coast Guard.** The Canadian Coast Guard (formed in 1962) is responsible to the Minister of Transport. In 1987 it comprised 1 heavy icebreaker; 7 medium icebreakers; 8 light icebreakers/nav. aid tenders; 16 ice strengthened/nav. aid tenders; 1 hydraulic survey and founding vessel; 76 search and rescue vessels (all types and sizes); 4 hovercraft; 34 helicopters and 1 fixed-wing aircraft (DC-3).

**Post.** In 1987-88 there were 14,576 postal outlets (including stamp agents) in operation and 7,811m. pieces of mail were processed. Total revenue (1987-88) was \$3,139m.; total expenditure, \$3,169m.

There were 919,143 miles (1,479,216 km) of telegraph wire in Canada in 1979 (including external cable landed in Canada). There were 13.2m. (estimate) telephone access lines reported by major telephone companies in 1987.

**Broadcasting.** There were 852 originating stations operating in Canada at 31 March 1988, of which 420 were AM radio stations, 296 FM radio stations and 136 television stations. Radio and television licence fees were abolished in 1953.

**Cinemas** (1985). There were 788 cinemas with a seating capacity of 533,584 and 219 drive-in theatres with a capacity of 117,641 cars.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 116 daily newspapers, of which 100 were in English, 11 in French and 5 others.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court in Ottawa, having general appellate jurisdiction in civil and criminal cases throughout Canada. There is an Exchequer Court, which is also a Court of Admiralty. There is a Superior Court in each province and county courts, with limited jurisdiction, in most of the provinces, all the judges in these courts being appointed by the Governor-General. Police, magistrates and justices of the peace are appointed by the provincial governments.

For the year ended 31 Dec. 1987, 2,363,558 Criminal Code Offences were reported and 411,845 adults were charged.

*Canadian Legal and Directory.* Toronto. Annual

**Religion.** Membership of the leading denominations in 1981:

Province	Roman Catholic	United Church of Canada	Anglican Church of Canada	Presby- terian	Lutheran
Newfoundland	204,430	104,835	153,530	2,700	460
Prince Edward Island	56,415	29,645	6,850	12,620	210
Nova Scotia	310,140	169,605	131,130	38,285	12,315
New Brunswick	371,100	87,460	66,260	12,070	1,810
Quebec	5,609,685	126,275	132,115	34,625	17,655
Ontario	2,986,175	1,655,550	1,164,315	517,020	254,175
Manitoba	269,070	240,395	108,220	23,910	58,830
Saskatchewan	279,840	263,375	77,725	16,065	88,785
Alberta	573,495	525,480	202,265	63,890	144,675
British Columbia	526,355	548,360	374,055	89,810	122,395
Yukon	5,470	3,310	4,665	615	915
Northwest Territories	18,215	3,725	15,295	505	665
Total, Canada	11,210,385	3,758,015	2,436,375	812,110	702,905

Other denominations: Baptist, 696,850; Greek Orthodox, 314,870; Jewish, 296,425; Ukrainian (Greek) Catholic, 190,585; Pentecostal, 338,790; Menonite, 189,370; other, 3,136,815.

**Education.** Under the Constitution the various provincial legislatures have power over education. These powers are subject to certain qualifications respecting the rights of denominational and minority language schools. Newfoundland and Quebec legislations provide for Roman Catholic and Protestant school boards. School Acts in Ontario, Saskatchewan and Alberta provide tax support for both public and separate schools. School board revenues derive from local taxation on real property and government grants from general provincial revenue.

Except in Quebec the number of private elementary and secondary schools is small; their enrolments in 1987-88 were less than 4.6% of the total elementary-secondary enrolment. Indian and Northern Affairs Canada finances schools for Indian and Inuit children; the enrolment in 1987-88 was 43,105.

In 1987-88, 474,820 full-time regular students (graduates and undergraduates) were enrolled in universities. In 1987 some 36,489 took bachelor's or professional first degrees in social sciences, commerce, economics, law, political science, psychology and geography; 16,140 in education; 10,977 in humanities; 8,581 in engineering and applied sciences; and 3,177 in fine and applied arts. Unclassified, 6,730.

The following statistics give information, for 1987-88, about all elementary and secondary schools, public, federal, private and blind and deaf:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Teachers</i>	<i>Pupils</i>
Newfoundland	582	7,970	136,000
Prince Edward Island	73	1,280	24,650
Nova Scotia	578	10,080	171,800
New Brunswick	468	7,560	139,400
Quebec	2,845	70,660	1,154,000
Ontario	5,387	98,810	1,875,800
Manitoba	836	12,350	219,400
Saskatchewan	1,033	11,430	215,400
Alberta	1,713	25,470	475,200
British Columbia	1,888	26,320	525,600
Yukon	25	300	4,900
Northwest Territories	75	700	13,100
National Defence (overseas)	9	260	3,750
<b>Total</b>	<b>15,512</b>	<b>273,190</b>	<b>4,959,000</b>

**Health.** Constitutional responsibility for personal health care services rests with the ten provinces of Canada. Accordingly, Canada's national health insurance system consists of an interlocking set of provincial hospital and medical insurance plans conforming to certain national standards rather than a single national programme. These national standards, which are set out in the Canada Health Act, include: Provision of a comprehensive range of hospital and medical benefits; universal population coverage; access to necessary services on uniform terms and conditions; portability of benefits; and public administration of provincial insurance plans.

Provinces satisfying these national standards are eligible for federal financial assistance according to the provisions of the Federal-Provincial Fiscal Arrangements and Federal Post-Secondary Education and Health Contributions Act. Under this Act, the provinces are entitled to receive equal-per-capita federal health contributions escalated annually by the three year average increase in nominal Gross National Product. These federal contributions are paid in the form of a combination of tax point and cash transfers, which together account for approximately 50% of provincial expenditures on insured hospital and medical care services. Over and above these health insurance transfers, the federal government also provides unconditional financial support for such provincial extended health care service programmes as nursing home care, certain home care services and adult residential care services. These supplementary equal-per-capita cash payments to the provinces are also escalated annually by provincial population increases and increases to nominal GNP.



The national health insurance programmes were introduced in stages. The Hospital Insurance and Diagnostic Services Act was passed in 1958, providing prepaid coverage to all Canadians for in-patient and, at the option of each province, out-patient hospital services. The Medical Care Act was introduced in 1968 to extend universal coverage to all medically-required services provided by medical practitioners. The Canada Health Act, which took effect 1 April 1984, consolidated the original federal health insurance legislation and clarified the national standards provinces are required to meet in order to qualify for full federal health contributions.

The approach taken by Canada is one of state-sponsored health insurance. Accordingly, the advent of insurance programmes produced little change in the ownership of hospitals, almost all of which are owned by non-government non-profit corporations, or in the rights and privileges of private medical practice. Patients are free to choose their own general practitioner without losing their insured benefits (there is a minor exception in Quebec involving the non-emergency services of a few physicians). Except for 0.5% of the population whose care is provided for under other legislation (such as serving members of the Canadian Armed Forces), all residents are eligible, regardless of whether they are in the work force. Benefits are available without upper limit so long as they are medically necessary, provided any registration obligations are met. Benefits are also portable during any temporary absence from Canada anywhere in the world—subject to any limitation a province may impose upon treatment electively sought outside the particular province without prior approval.

In addition to the benefits qualifying for federal contributions, provinces provide additional benefits at their own discretion. All provinces provide benefits covering a variety of services (*e.g.*, optometric care, children's dental care, drug benefits). Most provinces fund their portion of health costs out of general provincial revenues. Three provinces levy health premiums which meet part of the provincial costs, 2 provinces impose a levy on employers, and 2 provinces utilize a tax or surcharge, based on personal income tax, for this purpose. There are no co-charges for medically necessary short-term hospital care or medical care. Several provinces have charges for long-term chronic hospital care geared, approximately, to the room and board portion of this OAS-GIS payment mentioned under Social Welfare. In 1988, total health expenditures were about \$50,400m., representing 8.7% of GNP. Public sector spending accounts for about 75% of total national health expenditure.

**Social Welfare.** The social security system provides financial benefits and social services to individuals and their families through a variety of programmes administered by federal, provincial and municipal governments, and voluntary organizations. Federally, the Department of National Health and Welfare is responsible for research into the areas of health and social issues, provision of grants and contributions for various social services, improvement and construction of health facilities, the administration of several of Canada's income security programmes and the development and promotion of measures designed to improve the health and well-being of Canadians. These programmes are: The Family Allowances programme, introduced in 1945 and amended in 1973; the Old Age Security programme, introduced in 1952 and to which were added the Guaranteed Income Supplement in 1967 and the Spouse's Allowance in 1975; and the Canada Pension Plan and Canada Assistance Plan which came into being in 1966. Several income security programmes are administered by other federal departments—the Child Tax Credit, Unemployment Insurance, and two financial benefit programmes for veterans. Workers' Compensation is run by provincial Boards; the provincial governments administer social assistance and social service programmes which are cost-shared by the federal government under the Canada Assistance Plan, as well as various taxation and income supplementation programmes.

The 1973 Family Allowances Act provides for the payment of a monthly Family Allowance (\$32.38 in 1988) in respect of a dependent child under the age of 18 who is a resident of Canada and is wholly or substantially maintained by a parent or guardian. At least one parent must be a Canadian citizen, or admitted to Canada as

a permanent resident under the Immigration Act, or admitted to Canada for a period of not less than 1 year, if during that time his or her income is subject to Canadian income tax. Benefits are also paid under prescribed circumstances to Canadian citizens living abroad. Eligibility for Family Allowances (FA) is a precondition for receipt of the refundable Child Tax Credit discussed below. A Special Allowance (\$48.31 monthly in 1988) is paid on behalf of a child under the age of 18 who is maintained by a welfare agency, a government department or an institution. In some cases, payment is made directly to a foster parent.

The Family Allowances Act specifies that a provincial government may request the federal government to vary the allowance rates payable within the province by age and/or family size subject to the fulfillment of stipulated conditions. Only the provinces of Alberta and Quebec have exercised this option. During the month of March 1987, over 3.7m. Canadian families (including 6.6m. eligible children) received Family Allowances; the Special Allowance was paid on behalf of 32,000 of these children. The total bill for FA and Special Allowances for 1986-87 was \$2,534m.

The Old Age Security (OAS) pension is payable to persons 65 years of age and over who satisfy the residence requirements stipulated in the Old Age Security Act. The amount payable, whether full or partial, is also governed by stipulated conditions, as is the payment of an OAS pension to a recipient who absents himself from Canada. OAS pensioners with little or no income apart from OAS may, upon application, receive a full or partial supplement known as the Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS). Entitlement is normally based on the pensioner's income in the preceding year, calculated in accordance with the Income Tax Act. The spouse of an OAS pensioner, aged 60 to 64, meeting the same residence requirements as those stipulated for OAS, may be eligible for a full or partial Spouse's Allowance (SPA). SPA is payable, on application, depending on the annual combined income of the couple (not including the pensioner spouse's basic OAS pension or GIS). In 1979, the SPA programme was expanded to include a spouse, who is eligible for SPA in the month the pensioner spouse dies, until the age of 65 or until remarriage (Extended Spouse's Allowance). Since Sept. 1985, SPA has also been available to low income widow(ers) aged 60-64 regardless of the age of their spouse at death. For the first quarter of 1988, the basic OAS pension was \$310.66 monthly; the maximum Guaranteed Income Supplement was \$369.21 monthly for a single pensioner or a married pensioner whose spouse was not receiving a pension or a Spouse's Allowance, and \$240.47 monthly for each spouse of a married couple where both were pensioners. The maximum Spouse's Allowance for the same quarter was \$551.13 monthly (equal to the basic pension plus the maximum GIS married rate), and \$608.46 for widow(ers). Total OAS/GIS/SPA benefit expenditures for 1986-87 were \$13.445m.; in March 1987, almost 2.9m. Canadians received benefits through these programmes.

The Canada Pension Plan (CPP) is designed to provide workers with a basic level of income protection in the event of retirement, disability or death. Benefits may be payable to a contributor, a surviving spouse or an eligible child. As of 1 Jan. 1987, payment of actuarially adjusted retirement benefits may begin as early as age 60 or as late as age 70. Benefits are determined by the contributor's earnings and contributions made to the Plan. Contribution is compulsory for most employed and self-employed Canadians 18 to 65 years of age. The Canada Pension Plan does not operate in Quebec, which has exercised its constitutional prerogative to establish a similar plan, the Quebec Pension Plan (QPP), to operate in lieu of CPP; there is reciprocity between the two to ensure coverage for all adult Canadians in the labour force. In 1987, the maximum retirement pension payable under CPP and QPP was \$521.52, the maximum disability pension was \$634.09, and the maximum surviving spouse's pension was \$312.91 (for survivors 65 years of age and over). For survivors under 65 years of age CPP pays a reduced flat rate while QPP pays varied rates depending on the age of the survivor. In 1987 both CPP and QPP were funded by equal contributions of 1.9% of pensionable earnings from the employer and 1.9% from the employee (self-employed persons contribute the full 3.8%), in addition to the interest on the investment of excess funds. In 1987, the range of yearly pensionable earnings was from \$2,500 to \$25,900; a person who



earned and contributed at less than the maximum level receives monthly benefits at rates lower than the maximum allowable under CPP/QPP. In March 1987, about 2.7m. Canadians received Canada or Quebec Pension Plan benefits. Total expenditures in 1986-87 for both plans were about \$7,849m.

The Saskatchewan Pension Plan (SPP) Act came into force on 1 Aug. 1986 and provides for voluntary contributions by provincial residents between the ages of 18 and 65 who hold a health services card and who are not receiving retirement benefits under CPP/QPP or SPP. The plan is designed for those who are not adequately covered by a private pension plan or the Canada Pension Plan (for example, homemakers, employees of small businesses, part-time employees and self-employed persons, including farmers).

OAS and CPP legislation authorizes reciprocal agreements with other countries to achieve portability of pensions. Such agreements have been made with Italy, France, Portugal, the United States, Greece, Jamaica, Barbados, Belgium, Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Austria, St Lucia and Spain. In addition, agreements have been signed with the Federal Republic of Germany, Luxembourg, Finland and the Netherlands, and will take effect when ratified by Canada and the other countries. In general, such agreements also provide for the conclusion of arrangements with the province of Quebec to cover QPP contributors on a similar basis.

Under the Canada Assistance Plan, the federal government pays 50% of the cost to the provinces and territories of: Assistance to persons in need; welfare services provided to persons who are in need or likely to become in need if they do not receive such services (welfare services means services having as their object the lessening, removal or prevention of the causes and effects of poverty, child neglect or dependence on public assistance); and work activity projects which are designed to improve the employability of persons who have unusual difficulty in finding or retaining jobs or in undertaking job training. For the direct financial assistance programmes, 'need' is determined by the 'budget deficit' or needs test established by the province which takes into account an applicant's requirement and his income and resources available to meet these requirements. The rates of assistance payable are also determined by provincial authorities. Through the Plan, the federal government shares in the costs of a wide range of welfare services such as homemaker, counselling and rehabilitation services. The funding, administration, and delivery of such services are particular to each province and municipality. In March 1987, close to 1.9m. Canadians (representing 1,048,900 households) were in receipt of direct financial assistance from provincial programmes shareable under the Canada Assistance Plan. Total payments to the provinces under the Plan (including direct financial assistance, welfare services and work activity projects) for the 1986-87 financial year were almost \$4,438m. Revenue Canada, Taxation administers the Child Tax Credit (CTC) which was introduced in 1978. The programme provides benefits to low and middle income families, in addition to those provided through Family Allowances (described above). The maximum credit payable in 1988 (in respect of the 1987 taxation year) is \$489 for each eligible child (i.e. the parent must be entitled to receive a Family Allowance in respect of that child for Jan. 1988 or at any time during 1987 if the child died during 1987), where the net annual family income for the 1987 taxation year was below a specified level (\$23,500 for 1 child); CTC entitlement is reduced by 5% of the amount by which the family's income exceeded this level. As of 1986, a partial payment of the CTC is made in Nov. of the taxation year; the remainder is paid after application is made through the income tax system. It is estimated that approximately \$1,460m. was paid out to approximately 2.4m. Canadian families in 1986 for the 1985 taxation year.

The Unemployment Insurance programme, administered by Employment and Immigration Canada, was introduced in 1940 and revised in 1971; it provides income protection to workers suffering temporary employment interruptions such as loss of work, illness and pregnancy. Lump sum retirement benefits are also paid to workers aged 65 whether or not they leave the labour force. Approximately 95% of workers in Canada are covered through the UI programme. To be insurable, workers must be employed by the same employer for at least 15 hours a week, or make \$113 a week or more (in 1988). Neither the self-employed (except specified



fishermen) nor those over 65 years are eligible. The programme is funded by employer and employee contributions and provides a benefit of 60% of average weekly insurable earnings. In 1988, the maximum weekly benefit was \$339. Approximately 1.25m. Canadians collected UI benefits in March 1987; programme expenditures for 1986-87 were approximately \$10,640m.

The Department of Veterans Affairs offers two direct financial assistance programmes – the Veterans' and Civilians' Disability Pensions programme and the War Veterans' and Civilian War Allowances programme, which were introduced in 1919 and 1930 respectively and both amended to include civilians in 1962. The first programme provides pensions to military personnel disabled during service as defined in the legislation, a surviving spouse or dependents. Benefits are based on the degree of disability ranging from 5% to 100%. In March 1987, there were approximately 143,775 persons/families receiving pensions for a cost of just under \$764m. in 1986-87. War Veterans' and Civilian War Allowances provide financial benefits to persons, or their dependents, who meet service eligibility requirements and who, due to age or incapacity, are unable to work and have insufficient income for maintenance, as determined by an income test. Benefits vary depending upon the family composition of the applicant. In March 1987, about 82,400 persons were receiving benefits under the programme; benefit expenditures in 1986-87 were \$425m.

Workers' Compensation, administered by provincial Boards, provides compulsory coverage against wage loss due to work-related injury or disease for workers in specified trades and industries. The programme is employer-funded and precludes legal action by the worker against his employer. Benefits are based upon previous earnings and degree of impairment and may be of a long or short term nature. Maximum compensation is set at 75% of a fixed maximum gross earnings level or 90% of a fixed maximum net earnings level, depending on the province. Benefits are also available to surviving spouses and dependent children and are calculated in the above manner; however, additional sums may be available for funeral and related expenses. Medical support and rehabilitation services are also intrinsic to the programme. Benefit expenditures for Workers' Compensation in 1986 were approximately \$3,005m. Provincial governments provide direct or indirect financial assistance to low-income families, seniors and disabled persons in the areas of tax grants and shelter assistance. Programmes include rental and mortgage assistance programmes, home repair and renovation assistance programmes and tax exemptions, reductions, and rebates.

Ismael, J. S., (ed.) *Canadian Welfare State: Evolution and Transition*. Univ. of Alberta Press, 1987

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Canada in Great Britain (Macdonald House., Grosvenor Sq., London, W1X 0AB)

*High Commissioner:* The Hon. Donald S. Macdonald, PC (accredited 11 Nov. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Canada (80 Elgin St., Ottawa, K1P 5K7)

*High Commissioner:* Sir Alan Urwick, KCVO, CMG.

Of Canada in the USA (1746 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036-1985)

*Ambassador:* Allan E. Gotlieb.

Of the USA in Canada (100 Wellington St., Ottawa, K1P 5T1)

*Ambassador:* Thomas M. T. Niles.

Of Canada to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Yves Fortier.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Statistics Canada, Ottawa, has been the official central statistical organization for Canada since 1918. The Bureau, which reports to Parliament through the Minister of Supply and Services, serves as the statistical agency for federal government departments; co-ordinates the statistics of the provincial governments along national lines; and

channels all Canadian statistical data to internal organizations. *Chief Statistician of Canada*: Dr I. P. Fellgi.

Publications of Statistics Canada are classified as periodical (issued more frequently than once a year), annual, biennial and occasional publications. The occasional publications frequently supplement the annual reports and usually contain historical information. A complete list is contained in the Statistics Canada catalogue 1987-88, available at a nominal cost. Official publications include:

- The Canada Year Book*. Biennial, from 1905  
*Canada, Official Handbook*. Annual, from 1930. Biennial, from 1980  
*Canadian Economic Observer*. Monthly, with annual historical supplements, from 1988  
*Twelfth Decennial Census of Canada, 1981*. Ottawa, 1982  
*Atlas and Gazetteer of Canada*. Dept. of Energy, Mines and Resources. Ottawa, 1969  
*Cambridge History of the British Empire*. Vol. VI. *Canada and Newfoundland*. Cambridge, 1930  
*Canadian Almanac and Directory*. Toronto. Annual  
*Canadian Annual Review*. Annual, from 1960  
*Canadian Dictionary: French-English*. Toronto, 1970  
*Canadian Encyclopedia*. 3 vols. Edmonton, 1985  
*Canadiana: A List of Publications of Canadian Interest*. National Library, Ottawa. Monthly, with annual cumulation. 1951 ff.  
Cook, R., *French-Canadian Nationalism: An Anthology*. Toronto, 1970.—*The Maple Leaf Forever: Essays on Nationalism and Politics in Canada*. Toronto, 1971  
Creighton, D. G., *Canada's First Century*. Toronto, 1970.—*Towards the Discovery of Canada*. Toronto, 1974  
Dewitt, D. B. and Kirton, J. J., *Canada as a Principal Power: A Study in Foreign Policy*. Toronto, 1983  
*Dictionnaire Bélisle de la langue française au Canada; dictionnaire oxford*. 1970  
*Dictionnaire canadien; français-anglais-français*. Toronto, 1962  
*Encyclopedia Canadiana*. 10 vols. Rev. ed. Ottawa, 1967  
Granatstein, J. L., *Twentieth Century Canada*. Toronto, 1983  
Hardy, W. G., *From Sea to Sea: Canada, 1850-1920: The Road to Nationhood*. Toronto, 1960  
Harris, R. C., (ed.) *Historical Atlas of Canada*. Vol I. Univ. of Toronto, 1987  
Hockin, T. A., *Government in Canada*. London, 1976  
Ingles, E., *Canada*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989  
Kerr, D. G. G., *Historical Atlas of Canada*. Toronto, 1960  
Leacy, F. H., (ed.) *Historical Statistics of Canada*. Government Printer, Ottawa, 1983  
Lower, A. R. M., *Colony to Nation: A History of Canada*. 4th ed. Toronto, 1964  
McCann, L. D., (ed.) *Heartland and Hinterland: A Geography of Canada*. Scarborough, Ontario, 1982  
Mallory, J. R., *The Structure of Canadian Government*. Toronto, 1971  
Moir, J. and Saunders, R., *Northern Destiny: A History of Canada*. Toronto, 1970  
Newman, P. C., *Company of Adventurers: The Story of the Hudson's Bay Company*. Vol. 1. London, 1986  
Nurgitz, N. and Segal, H., *No Small Measure: The Progressive Conservatives and the Constitution*. Ottawa, 1983  
Smith, D. L., (ed.) *History of Canada: An Annotated Bibliography*. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983  
*National Library*: The National Library of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario. *Librarian*: J. Guy Sylvestre.

## CANADIAN PROVINCES

The 10 provinces have each a separate parliament and administration, with a Lieut.-Governor, appointed by the Governor-General in Council at the head of the executive. They have full powers to regulate their own local affairs and dispose of their revenues, provided only they do not interfere with the action and policy of the central administration. Among the subjects assigned exclusively to the provincial legislatures are: The amendment of the provincial constitution, except as regards the office of the Lieut.-Governor; property and civil rights; direct taxation for revenue purposes; borrowing; management and sale of Crown lands; provincial hospitals, reformatories, etc.; shop, saloon, tavern, auctioneer and other licences for local or provincial purposes; local works and undertakings, except lines of ships, railways, canals, telegraphs, etc., extending beyond the province or connect-

ing with other provinces, and excepting also such works as the Dominion Parliament declares are for the general good; marriages, administration of justice within the province; education.

*Local Government.* Under the terms of the British North America Act the provinces are given full powers over local government. All local government institutions are, therefore, supervised by the provinces, and are incorporated and function under provincial acts.

The acts under which municipalities operate vary from province to province. A municipal corporation is usually administered by an elected council headed by a mayor or reeve, whose powers to administer affairs and to raise funds by taxation and other methods are set forth in provincial laws, as is the scope of its obligations to, and on behalf of, the citizens. Similarly, the types of municipal corporations, their official designations and the requirements for their incorporation vary between provinces. The following table sets out the classifications as at 1 Jan. 1988.

Type and size of group	Nfld.	PEI	NS	NB	Que.	Ont.	Man.
Type:							
Regional municipalities	—	—	—	—	98	39	—
Metropolitan and regional municipalities <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	3	12	—
Counties and regional districts	—	—	—	—	95	27	—
Unitary municipalities	170	86	66	114	1,500	792	184
Cities <sup>2</sup>	3	1	3	6	65	50	5
Towns	167	8	39	25	193	145	35
Villages	—	—	—	83	233	119	39
Rural municipalities <sup>3</sup>	—	77	24	—	1,009	478	105
Quasi-municipalities <sup>4</sup>	143	—	—	—	—	8	17
Total	313	86	66	114	1,598	839	201

Population size group (1986 census):

Unitary municipalities—							
Over 100,000	—	—	2	—	4	18	1
50,000 to 99,999	1	—	1	2	16	14	—
10,000 to 49,999	4	1	18	4	80	81	4
Under 10,000	165	85	45	108	1,400	679	179
Total	170	86	66	114	1,500	792	184

Type and size of group	Sask.	Alta.	BC	YT	NWT	Canada
Type:						
Regional municipalities	—	—	28	—	—	165
Metropolitan and regional municipalities <sup>1</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	15
Counties and regional districts	—	—	28	—	—	150
Unitary municipalities	821	345	144	8	8	4,238
Cities <sup>2</sup>	12	15	37	2	1	200
Towns	146	108	12	2	5	885
Villages	364	172	48	4	2	1,064
Rural municipalities <sup>3</sup>	299	50	47	—	—	2,089
Quasi-municipalities <sup>4</sup>	14	19	—	—	30	231
Total	835	364	172	8	38	4,634

Population size group (1986 census):

Unitary municipalities—						
Over 100,000	2	2	4	—	—	33
50,000 to 99,999	—	—	10	—	—	44
10,000 to 49,999	7	18	29	1	1	248
Under 10,000	812	325	101	7	7	3,913
Total	821	345	144	8	8	4,238

<sup>1</sup> Includes urban communities in Quebec; and Metropolitan Toronto, regional municipalities and the district municipality of Muskoka in Ontario. <sup>2</sup> Includes the borough of East York.

<sup>3</sup> Includes municipalities in Nova Scotia; parishes, townships, united townships and municipalities without designation in Quebec; townships in Ontario; rural municipalities in Manitoba and Saskatchewan; municipal districts and counties in Alberta; and districts in British Columbia.

<sup>4</sup> Includes local government communities and the metropolitan area in Newfoundland; improvement districts in Ontario and Alberta; local government districts in Manitoba; and hamlets in the Northwest Territories.



# ALBERTA

**HISTORY.** The southern half of the province of Alberta was part of Rupert's land which was granted by royal charter in 1670 to the Hudson's Bay Company. The intervention by the North West Company in the fur trade after 1783 led to the establishment of trading posts. In 1869 Rupert's land was transferred from the Hudson's Bay Company (which had absorbed its rival in 1821) to the new Dominion, and in the following year this land was combined with the former Crown land of the North Western Territories to form the Northwest Territories.

In 1882 'Alberta' first appeared as a provisional 'district', consisting of the southern half of the present province. In 1905 the Athabasca district to the north was added when provincial status was granted to Alberta.

Four parties have held office: The Liberals 1905–21; the United Farmers 1921–35; Social Credit 1935–71, and Progressive Conservative since Sept. 1971.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the province is 661,185 sq. km; 644,389 sq. km being land area and 16,796 sq. km water area. The population (estimate 1 Oct. 1988) was 2,410,600; the urban population (1986), centres of 1,000 or over, was 1,877,758 and the rural 488,067. Population of the cities (30 June 1988): Calgary, 657,118; Edmonton, 576,249; Lethbridge, 60,610; Red Deer, 54,839; Medicine Hat, 42,290; St Albert, 38,318; Fort McMurray, 34,949; Grande Prairie, 26,648; Leduc, 13,126; Camrose, 12,968; Fort Saskatchewan, 11,983; Spruce Grove, 11,918; Airdrie, 10,957; Lloydminster (Alberta portion), 10,201; Wetaskiwin, 10,103; Drumheller, 6,366.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** A continental climate: Long, cold winters and mild summers. Rainfall amounts are greatest between May and Sept. Edmonton. Jan. 5°F (–15°C), July 63°F (17°C). Annual rainfall 13·6" (345·6 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution of Alberta is contained in the British North America Act of 1867, and amending Acts; also in the Alberta Act of 1905, passed by the Parliament of the Dominion of Canada, which created the province out of the then Northwest Territories. All the provisions of the British North America Act, except those with respect to school lands and the public domain, were made to apply to Alberta as they apply to the older provinces of Canada. On 1 Oct. 1930 the natural resources were transferred from the Dominion to provincial government control. The province is represented by 6 members in the Senate and 26 in the House of Commons of Canada.

The executive is vested nominally in the Lieut.-Governor, who is appointed by the federal government, but actually in the Executive Council or the Cabinet of the legislature. Legislative power is vested in the Assembly in the name of the Queen.

Members of the Legislative Assembly are elected by the universal vote of adults over the age of 18 years.

There are 83 members in the legislature (elected 8 May 1986): 61 Progressive Conservative, 16 New Democratic Party, 4 Liberal, 2 Representative.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Hon. Helen Hunley (sworn in 22 Jan. 1985).

*Flag:* Blue with the shield of the province in the centre.

The members of the Ministry were as follows in Dec. 1988:

*Premier, President of Executive Council:* Hon. D. R. Getty.

*Deputy Premier and Minister of Advanced Education:* Hon. D. J. Russell. *Municipal Affairs and Deputy Government House Leader:* Hon. D. Anderson. *Federal and Intergovernmental Affairs:* Hon. J. D. Horsman. *Economic Development and Trade:* Hon. L. R. Shaben. *Provincial Treasurer:* Hon. D. Johnston. *Energy:* Hon. P. N. Webber. *Technology, Research and Telecommunications, Government House Leader:* Hon. L. Young. *Transportation and Utilities:* Hon. J. A. Adair. *Health:* Hon. N. Betkowski. *Tourism:* Hon. D. Sparrow. *Labour:* Hon. R. Orman.

*Social Services:* Hon. C. E. Osterman. *Forestry, Lands and Wildlife:* Hon. E. L. Fjordbotten. *Environment:* Hon. I. Reid. *Public Works, Supply and Services:* Hon. E. D. Isley. *Agriculture:* Hon. P. Elzinga. *Associate Minister of Agriculture and Deputy Government House Leader:* Hon. S. Cripps. *Culture and Multiculturalism:* Hon. G. Stevens. *Recreation and Parks:* Hon. N. Weiss. *Career Development and Employment, Deputy Government House Leader:* Hon. K. Kowalski. *Education:* Hon. J. Dinning. *Solicitor General:* Hon. M. E. Moore. *Consumer and Corporate Affairs:* Hon. E. McCoy. *Attorney-General:* Hon. K. Rostad. *Special Projects:* Hon. N. S. Crawford.

*Local Government.* The local government units are City, Town, New Town, Village, Summer Village, County, Municipal District and Improvement District.

There are 16 cities in Alberta, namely: Airdrie, Calgary, Camrose, Drumheller, Edmonton, Fort McMurray, Fort Saskatchewan, Grande Prairie, Leduc, Lethbridge, Lloydminster, Medicine Hat, Red Deer, St Albert, Spruce Grove and Wetaskiwin. These cities operate under the Municipal Government Act. The governing body consists of a mayor and a council of from 6 to 20 members. A city can be incorporated by order of the Lieut.-Governor-in-Council. A population of 10,000 is required.

There are no limits of area specified in the statutes for any of the different local government units. The population requirement for a Town as specified in the Municipal Government Act is 1,000 people, and the area at incorporation is that of the original village.

A Village must contain 75 separate and occupied dwellings. The Municipal Government Act requires each dwelling to have been occupied continuously for a period of at least 6 months. A Summer Village must contain 50 separate dwellings.

A rural county area is an area incorporated through an order of the Lieut.-Governor-in-Council under the provisions of the County Act. One board of councillors deal with both municipal and school affairs.

A rural Municipal District is an area which has been incorporated under the Municipal Government Act. In Municipal Districts separate boards control municipal and school affairs.

Areas not incorporated as counties or Municipal Districts are termed Improvement Districts or Special Areas. Sparsely populated, such districts are administered and taxed by the Department of Municipal Affairs of the provincial government. There are no requirements as to the minimum number of residents of a County or Municipal District.

**FINANCE.** The budgetary revenue and expenditure (in Canadian \$) for years ending 31 March were as follows:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88 <sup>1</sup>	1988-89 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue <sup>2</sup>	10,122,287,000	9,873,259,000	7,168,269,000	8,627,000,000	9,819,000,000
Expenditure <sup>2</sup>	9,078,938,000	10,331,460,000	10,608,678,000	10,416,113,000	10,489,824,000

<sup>1</sup> Estimates.

<sup>2</sup> Excludes funds allocated to Alberta Heritage Savings Trust Fund for 1985-86 and 1986-87.

Personal income *per capita* (1987), \$18,176.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Oil.** In 1987, 70,835,000 cu. metres of crude oil were produced with gross sales value of \$10,003,912,000. Alberta produced 81% of Canada's crude petroleum output in 1987. Production of natural gas by-products was 20,111,000 cu. metres, valued at \$1,955,955,000.

The 4 major deposits of oil sands are found in northern and eastern Alberta: The Athabasca, Cold Lake, Peace River and Buffalo Head Hills deposits; total area, 140,800 sq. km. A limited part of the deposits along the Athabasca River can be exploited through open-pit mining. The rest of the Athabasca, and all the deposits in the other areas, are deeper reserves which must be developed through in situ techniques. These reserves reach depths of 760 metres. By 31 Dec. 1986 there were 638 enhanced oil recovery projects operating. Production of bitumen was estimated at 12,000 cu. metres per day in Dec. 1985.

Two oil sands mining plants in the Fort McMurray area produced 10.5m. cu. metres of synthetic crude oil in 1987 and 6.1m. cu. metres of crude bitumen.

**Gas.** Natural gas is found in abundance in numerous localities. In 1987, 62,195m. cu. metres valued at \$3,843,639,000 were produced.

**Minerals.** In 1987 the remaining in-place established resources of coal total about 75,000m. tonnes. Of this amount, about 31,000m. is considered to be recoverable by surface and underground methods. Production (1987) 25.07m. tonnes valued at \$396.2m.

Value of total mineral production increased from \$16,330,582,000 in 1986 to \$17,148,092,000 in 1987.

**Agriculture.** Total area of farms (1986) 51,040,463 acres; improved land, 31,891,516; (under crops, 22,641,092; improved pasture, 3,402,183; summer fallow, 5,255,965; other improved land, 592,276); unimproved land, 19,148,947; (unimproved pasture, 16,057,185; woodland, 713,699; other unimproved land, 2,378,063). Number of farms (1986) 57,777.

For particulars of agricultural production and livestock, *see under CANADA*, pp. 284-85. Farm cash receipts in 1987 totalled \$3,970,685,000, of which crops contributed \$1,774,562,000; livestock and products, \$1,891,732,000, and other sources, \$304,391,000.

**Forestry.** Total forest lands, managed by the Crown, (1987-88) 338,000 sq. km, of which 184,000 sq. km were productive (supporting 2,200m. cu. metres of wood). An additional 191,000 sq. km had the potential to produce commercial timber. In 1986-87, 7.3m. cu. metres of lumber and plywood were produced.

**Fisheries.** The largest catch in commercial fishing is whitefish. Perch, tullibee, walley, pike and lake trout are also caught in smaller quantities. In 1984 a provincial fish marketing policy was implemented and a new commercial fishery licensing system was approved for implementation in 1986. Commercial fish production in 1987-88 was 2.1m. kg, value \$3,130,836.

**INDUSTRY.** The leading manufacturing industries are food and beverages, petroleum refining, metal fabricating, wood industries, primary metal, chemical and chemical products and non-metallic mineral products industries. There were in 1985 approximately 2,536 manufacturing establishments, in which were employed 74,684 persons, who earned in salaries and wages \$2,080,991,000.

Manufacturing shipments had a total value of \$16,620,858,000 in 1987. Chief among these shipments were: Food and beverages, \$4,590,006,000; refined petroleum and coal products, \$3,099,906,000; chemicals and chemical products, \$2,796,704,000; fabricated metal products, \$796,723,000; primary metals, \$831,410,000; non-metallic mineral products, \$623,594,000; printing, publishing and allied, \$656,292,000; wood, \$690,149,000; paper and allied products, \$554,051,000; machinery, \$674,721,000; furniture and fixtures, \$131,471,000; other, \$170,607,000.

Total retail sales (1987) \$14,855,273,000.

Tourism is of increasing importance and in 1987 contributed \$2,191,627,600 to the economy.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were 152,852 km of roads and highways, including 107,586 km gravelled and 19,476 km paved.

At 31 March 1988 there were 2,170,655 motor vehicles registered, including 1,345,678 passenger cars, 380,640 commercial vehicles, 346,758 trailers, 6,363 buses and 39,489 motor cycles.

**Railways.** In 1988 the length of main railway lines was 10,106 km. In 1986 there was a rail rapid transit network in Edmonton (10.5 km) and Calgary (22.5 km).

**Post and Telecommunications.** Alberta's modern telephone system is owned and operated by the provincial government, except in the city of Edmonton (owned and



operated by Edmonton) and some rural lines. There were 1,253,727 telephone subscriber lines in service in April 1988.

## JUSTICE AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The Supreme Judicial authority of the province is the Court of Appeal. Judges of the Court of Appeal and Court of Queen's Bench are appointed by the Federal Government and hold office until retirement at the age of 75. There are courts of lesser jurisdiction in both civil and criminal matters. The Court of Queen's Bench has full jurisdiction over civil proceedings. A Provincial Court which has jurisdiction in civil matters up to \$2,000 is presided over by provincially appointed judges. Youth Courts have power to try boys and girls 12–17 years old inclusive for offences against the Young Offenders Act.

The jurisdiction of all criminal courts in Alberta is enacted in the provisions of the Criminal Code. The system of procedure in civil and criminal cases conforms as nearly as possible to the English system.

**Education.** Schools of all grades are included under the term of public school (including those in the separate school system which are publicly supported). The same board of trustees controls the schools from kindergarten to university entrance. In 1987–88 there were 441,042 pupils enrolled in elementary, junior high schools and high schools. The University of Alberta (in Edmonton), organized in 1907, had, in 1987–88, 25,210 full-time students. The University of Calgary, formerly part of the University of Alberta and autonomous from April 1966, had in 1987–88, 16,842 full-time students. The University of Lethbridge, organized in 1966, had in 1987–88, 2,717 full-time students. The Athabasca University had in 1987–88, 10,197 part-time students. Banff Centre for Continuing Education had in 1987–88, 1,300 part-time students. The full-time enrolment at Alberta's 11 public colleges totalled 18,640 students in 1987–88.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Alberta Bureau of Statistics (Dept. of Treasury, Edmonton), which was established in 1939, collects, compiles and distributes information relative to Alberta. Among its publications are: *Alberta Statistical Review* (Quarterly).—*Alberta Economic Accounts* (Annual).—*Alberta Facts* (Annual).—*Population Projections, Alberta* (Occasional).—*Alberta Population Growth* (Quarterly).

Dept. of Economic Development and Trade, *Alberta Industry and Resources Database*. Edmonton, (Biannual)

MacGregor, J. G., *A History of Alberta*. 2nd ed. Edmonton, 1981

Masson, J., *Alberta's Local Governments and their Politics*. Univ. of Alberta Press, 1985

Richards, J., *Prairie Capitalism: Power and Influence in the New West*. Toronto, 1979

Wiebe, Rudy., *Alberta, a Celebration*. Edmonton, 1979

## BRITISH COLUMBIA

**HISTORY.** Vancouver Island was organized as a colony in 1849; the mainland as far as the watershed of the Rocky Mountains was organized as a colony following a gold rush on the Fraser River in 1859. The two were united as the colony of British Columbia in 1866; this became a Canadian Province in 1871.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** British Columbia has an area of 948,596 sq. km. The capital is Victoria. The province is bordered westerly by the Pacific ocean and Alaska Panhandle, northerly by the Yukon and Northwest Territories, easterly by the Province of Alberta and southerly by the USA along the 49th parallel. A chain of islands, the largest of which are Vancouver Island and the Queen Charlotte Islands, affords protection to the mainland coast.

The 1986 census population was 2,889,207; estimate (1988) 2,984,000.

The principal cities and their 1988 estimated populations are as follows: Greater Vancouver, 1,325,932; Greater Victoria, 276,276; Prince George, 65,779;

Kelowna, 64,480; Kamloops, 61,967; Nanaimo, 50,890; Penticton, 24,811; Vernon, 20,786; Port Alberni, 17,888; Prince Rupert, 15,909; Cranbrook, 15,175; Fort St. John, 12,743.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is cool temperate, but mountain influences affect temperatures and rainfall very considerably. Driest months occur in summer. Vancouver, Jan. 36°F (2.2°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 58" (1,458 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** British Columbia (then known as New Caledonia) originally formed part of the Hudson's Bay Company's concession. In 1849 Vancouver Island and in 1858 British Columbia were constituted Crown Colonies; in 1866 the two colonies amalgamated. The British North America Act of 1867 provided for eventual admission into Canadian Confederation, and on 20 July 1871 British Columbia became the sixth province of the Dominion.

British Columbia has a unicameral legislature of 69 elected members. Government policy is determined by the Executive Council responsible to the Legislature. The Lieut.-Governor is appointed by the Governor-General of Canada, usually for a term of 5 years, and is the head of the executive government of the province.

*Lieut.-Governor:* The Hon. David See-Chai Lam.

*Flag:* A banner of the arms, *i.e.*, blue and white wavy stripes charged with a setting sun in gold, across the top of a Union Flag with a gold coronet in the centre.

The Legislative Assembly is elected for a maximum term of 5 years. Every male or female Canadian citizen 19 years and over, having resided a minimum of 6 months in the province, duly registered, is entitled to vote. Representation of the parties in Sept. 1987: Social Credit Party, 46; New Democratic Party, 22; Independent, 1.

The province is represented in the Federal Parliament by 28 members in the House of Commons, and 6 Senators.

The Executive Council was composed as follows, July 1988:

*Premier and President of the Executive Council:* William N. Vander Zalm.

*Regional Development and Minister of State for Mainland/Southwest:* Elwood Veitch. *Minister of State for Vancouver Island/Coast and North Coast and Minister Responsible for Parks:* Terry Huberts. *Minister of State for Thompson-Okanagan and Kootenay and Minister Responsible for Crown Lands:* Howard Dirks. *Minister of State for Cariboo and Minister Responsible for Environment:* Bruce Strachan. *Minister of State for Nechako and Northeast and Minister Responsible for Native Affairs:* Jack Weisgerber. *Advanced Education and Job Training and Minister Responsible for Science and Technology:* Stan Hagen. *Agriculture and Fisheries:* John Savage. *Attorney-General:* Bud Smith. *Education:* Tony Brummet. *Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources:* Jack Davis. *Finance and Corporate Relations:* Mel Couvelier. *Forests:* Dave Parker. *Government Management Services:* Cliff Michael. *Health and Minister Responsible for Seniors:* Peter Dueck. *International Business and Immigration:* John Jansen. *Labour and Consumer Services:* Lyall Hanson. *Municipal Affairs, Recreation and Culture:* Rita Johnston. *Social Services and Housing:* Claude Richmond. *Solicitor General:* Angus Ree. *Tourism and Provincial Secretary:* Bill Reid. *Transportation and Highways:* Neil Vant.

---

*Agent-General in London:* Garde Gardom (British Columbia House, 1 Regent St., London, SW1Y 4NS).

*Local Government.* Vancouver City was incorporated by statute and operates under the provisions of the Vancouver Charter of 1953 and amendments. This is the only incorporated area in British Columbia not operating under the provisions

of the Municipal Act. Under this Act municipalities are divided into the following classes: (a) a village with a population between 500 and 2,500, governed by a council consisting of a mayor and 4 aldermen; (b) a town with a population between 2,500 and 5,000, governed by a council consisting of a mayor and 4 aldermen; (c) a city where the population exceeds 5,000 governed by a council consisting of a mayor and 6 or 8 aldermen depending on population; (d) a district where the area exceeds 810 hectares and the average density is less than 5 persons per hectare, governed by a council consisting of a mayor and 6 or 8 aldermen depending on population.

There are 3 other forms of local government: There are 8 Development Regions each represented in Cabinet by a Minister of State; the regional district covering a number of areas both incorporated and unincorporated, governed by a board of directors; and the improvement district governed by a board of 3 trustees.

Revenue for municipal services is derived mainly from real-property taxation, although additional revenue is derived from licence fees, business taxes, fines, public utility projects and grants-in-aid from the provincial government.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Current provincial revenue and expenditure, including all capital expenditures, in Canadian \$1 m. for fiscal years ending 31 March:

	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	8,179.8	8,578.0	10,322.0	11,440.0
Expenditure	9,146.3	9,749.0	11,122.0	11,835.0

The main sources of current revenue are the income taxes, contributions from the federal government, and privileges, licences and natural resources taxes and royalties.

The main items of expenditure in 1988-89 (preliminary) are as follows: Health, \$3,572m.; social services, \$1,892m.; education, \$2,765m.; transport and communications, \$709m.; industrial development, trade and natural resources, \$876m.

**Banking.** On 31 Dec. 1987, Canadian chartered banks maintained 811 branches and had total assets of \$34,413m. in British Columbia; credit unions at 283 locations had total assets of \$7,129m. Several foreign banks have Canadian head offices in Vancouver and several others have branches.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Generation in 1987 totalled 63,066m. kwh. of which a net 13,336m. kwh. were exported. Consumption within the province was 50,934m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Copper, coal, natural gas, crude oil, gold and silver are the most important minerals produced. The 1988 total of mineral production was estimated at \$3,838m. Total value of mineral fuels produced in 1988 was estimated at: Coal, \$1,023.2m.; oil and gas, \$672.3m.

**Agriculture.** Only 2.4m. hectares or 4% of the total land area is arable or potentially arable. Farm cash receipts, in 1987, were \$1,072.1m.

**Forestry.** About 46% of British Columbia's land is productive forest land, with 43.3m. hectares bearing commercial forest. Over 94% of the forest area is owned or administered by the provincial government. The total cut from forests in 1987 was 90.6m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** In 1987 the wholesale market value of fish products was \$793m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The selling value of factory shipments from all manufacturing industries reached an estimated \$26,115m. in 1988.

**Labour.** The labour force averaged 1,484,000 persons in 1987 with 1,306,000



employed, of which 462,000 were in service industries, 246,000 in trade, 157,000 in manufacturing, 119,000 in transportation, communication and other utilities, 79,000 in finance, insurance and real estate, 87,000 in public administration, 72,000 in construction, 31,000 in agriculture, 24,000 in forestry, 20,000 in mining and 8,000 in fishing and trapping.

**Commerce.** Exports through British Columbia customs ports during 1987 totalled \$21,286.7m. in value, while imports amounted to \$10,946.5m. About 32% of exports through British Columbia customs ports are products from other provinces, primarily grains, potash and fuels from the Prairie Provinces. USA is the largest market for products exported through British Columbia customs ports (\$7,257.3m. in 1987) followed by Japan (\$4,051.1m.).

Exports were valued at \$15,689.9m. in 1987. The leading exports were: Lumber, \$4,170.5m.; pulp, \$2,874.5m.; coal, \$1,269.5m.; paper and paperboard, \$1,338.4m.

**Tourism.** In 1987, 16.7m. tourists spent \$3,086m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** At 31 March 1988 there were 47,024 km of provincial roads and rights of way in the province, of which 22,213 km were paved. In 1987, 1,316,303 passenger cars and 466,296 commercial vehicles were licensed.

**Railways.** The province is served by two transcontinental railways, the Canadian Pacific Railway and the Canadian National Railway. Passenger service is provided by VIA Rail, a Crown Corporation. British Columbia is also served by the publicly owned British Columbia Railway, the Railway Freight Service of the B.C. Hydro and Power Authority, the Northern Alberta Railways Company and the Burlington Northern Inc. The combined route-mileage of mainline track operated by the CPR, CNR and BCR totals 7,500 km. The system also includes CPR and CNR railcar barge connections to Vancouver Island, between Prince Rupert and Alaska, and interchanges with American railways at southern border points. A metro line was opened in Vancouver in 1986.

**Aviation.** International airports are located at Vancouver and Victoria. Daily inter-provincial and intraprovincial flights serve all main population centres. Small public and private airstrips are located throughout the province. Total passenger arrivals and departures on scheduled services (1987) 6,853,322.

**Shipping.** The major ports are Vancouver, New Westminster, Victoria, Nanaimo and Prince Rupert. The volume of domestic cargo handled during 1987 was 46.4m. tonnes; international cargo, 86.5m. tonnes.

The British Columbia Ferries connect Vancouver Island with the mainland and also provide service to other coastal points. Service by other ferry systems is also provided between Vancouver Island and the USA. The Alaska State Ferries connect Prince Rupert with centres in Alaska.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The British Columbia Telephone Company have approximately 1.6m. telephones in service. In March 1986 there were 67 AM radio, 19 FM radio, 10 television stations and 2 pay-television networks originating in British Columbia. In addition there were 575 re-broadcasting stations in the province.

## JUSTICE, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicial system is composed of the Court of Appeal, the Supreme Court, County Courts, and various Provincial Courts, including Magistrates' Courts and Small Claims Courts. The federal courts include the Supreme Court of Canada and the Federal Court of Canada.

**Education.** Education, free up to Grade XII levels, is financed jointly from municipal and provincial government revenues. Attendance is compulsory from the age of 6 to 15. There were 491,234 pupils enrolled in public schools from kindergarten to Grade XII in Sept. 1987.

The universities had a full-time enrolment of approximately 36,058 for 1987–88. They include University of British Columbia, Vancouver; University of Victoria, Victoria and Simon Fraser University, Burnaby. The regional colleges are Camosun College, Victoria; Capilano College, North Vancouver; Cariboo College, Kamloops; College of New Caledonia, Prince George; Douglas College, New Westminster; East Kootenay Community College, Cranbrook; Fraser Valley College, Chilliwack/Abbotsford; Kwantlen College, Surrey; Malaspina College, Nanaimo; North Island College, Comox; Northern Lights College, Dawson Creek/Fort St John; Northwest Community College, Terrace/Prince Rupert; Okanagan College, Kelowna with branches at Salmon Arm and Vernon; Selkirk College, Castlegar; Vancouver Community College, Vancouver.

There are also the British Columbia Institute of Technology, Burnaby; Emily Carr College of Art and Design, Vancouver; Justice Institute of British Columbia, Vancouver; Open Learning Institute, Richmond; Pacific Marine Training Institute, North Vancouver; Pacific Vocational Institute, Burnaby/Maple Ridge/Richmond. A televised distance education and special programmes through KNOW, the Knowledge Network of the West is provided.

**Health.** The Government operates a hospital insurance scheme giving universal coverage after a qualifying period of 3 months' residence in the province. The province has come under a national medicare scheme which is partially subsidized by the provincial government and partially by the federal government.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Central Statistics Bureau (Ministry of Finance and Corporate Relations, Hon. Mel Couvelier—Minister, Parliament Buildings, Victoria, B.C., V8V 1X4), collects, compiles and distributes information relative to the Province.

Publications include *B.C. Industry Review* (annual); *Manufacturers' Directory*; *External Trade Report* (annual); *British Columbia Facts and Statistics* (annual); *British Columbia Economic Accounts* (annual); *British Columbia Population Forecast* (annual).

Ministry of Finance, *British Columbia Financial and Economic Review*, Victoria, B.C. (annual)

Morley, J. T., *The Reins of Power: Governing British Columbia*, Vancouver, 1983

Ormsby, M., *British Columbia: A History*, Vancouver, 1958

## MANITOBA

**HISTORY.** The Hudson's Bay Company formed a colony on the Red River in 1812, which was part of territory annexed to Canada in 1870. The Metis colonists (part-Indian, mostly French-speaking, Catholic) objected to the arrangements for the purchase of the Company territory by Canada and the province of Manitoba was created to accommodate them. It was extended northwards and westwards in 1881 and to Hudson Bay in 1912.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the province is 250,946 sq. miles (649,046 sq. km), of which 211,721 sq. miles are land and 39,225 sq. miles water. From north to south it is 793 km and at the widest point it is 493 km.

The population (census, 1986) was 1,071,232. Estimate (April 1987), 1,082,800. Population of Winnipeg, the capital (June 1986), 625,304; other principal cities (census, 1986): Brandon, 38,708; Thompson, 14,701; Portage la Prairie, 13,198; Selkirk, 10,013; Flin Flon (Manitoba portion), 7,243.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is cold continental, with very severe winters but pleasantly warm summers. Rainfall amounts are greatest in the months May to Sept. Winnipeg, Jan. -3°F (-19.3°C), July 67°F (19.6°C). Annual rainfall 21" (539 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Manitoba was known as the

Red River Settlement before its entry into the Dominion in 1870. The provincial government is administered by a Lieut.-Governor assisted by an Executive Council (Cabinet) which is appointed from and responsible to a legislative assembly of 57 members elected for 5 years. Women were enfranchised in 1916. The Electoral Division Act, 1955, created 57 single-member constituencies and abolished the transferable vote. There are 28 rural electoral divisions, and 29 urban electoral divisions. The province is represented by 6 members in the Senate and 14 in the House of Commons of Canada.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Dr George Johnson (sworn in 12 Dec. 1986).

*Flag:* The British Red Ensign with the shield of the province in the fly.

State of parties in the Legislative Assembly in Nov. 1988: Progressive Conservative 24, Liberals 21, and New Democratic Party, 12.

The members of the Progressive Conservative Ministry (sworn in 9 May 1988) are as follows (Nov. 1988):

*President of the Executive Council, Minister of Federal-Provincial Relations, Chairman of the Treasury Board:* Gary Albert Filmon.

*Northern Affairs, Minister responsible for Native Affairs, the Communities Economic Development Fund Act, Channel Area Loggers Ltd, Moose Lake Loggers Ltd, A. E. MacKenzie Company Ltd, Manitoba Oil and Gas Corporation:* James Erwin Downey. *Health:* Donald Warder Orchard. *Highways and Transportation, Government Services:* Albert Driedger. *Finance, Minister responsible for the Crown Corporations Accountability Act, and the Manitoba Data Services Act:* Clayton Sidney Manness. *Community Services, Employment Services and Economic Security, and Minister responsible for the Status of Women:* Charlotte Louise Oleson. *Deputy Premier, Municipal Affairs, Minister responsible for the Manitoba Public Insurance Corporation Act, and Jobs Fund:* James Glen Cummings. *Attorney-General, Consumer and Corporate Affairs, Co-operative Development, Minister responsible for Corrections, Constitutional Affairs, Liquor Control Act, Keeper of the Great Seal:* James Collus McCrae. *Labour, Environment, Workplace Safety and Health, Minister responsible for the Workers Compensation Act, Civil Service Act, the Civil Service Superannuation Act, Civil Service Special Supplementary Severance Benefit Act and Public Servants Insurance Act:* Edward James Connery. *Industry, Trade and Technology, Business Development and Tourism, Minister responsible for the Development Corporation Act, Sport, Minister responsible for Fitness and Amateur Sport, Boxing and Wrestling Commission Act, Manitoba Forestry Resources Ltd:* James Arthur Ernst. *Agriculture, Minister responsible for the Manitoba Telephone Act:* Glen Marshall Findlay. *Education:* Leonard Derkach. *Urban Affairs, Housing:* Gerald Ducharme. *Culture, Heritage and Recreation, Minister responsible for the Manitoba Lotteries Foundation Act:* Bonnie Elizabeth Mitchelson. *Natural Resources, Minister responsible for the Natural Resources Development Act:* John (Jack) Penner. *Energy and Mines, Minister responsible for the Natural Gas Supply Act, Manitoba Hydro Act, and Seniors:* Harold Johan Neufeld.

*Local Government.* Rural Manitoba is organized into rural municipalities which vary widely in size. Some have only 4 townships (a township is 36 sq. miles), while the largest has 22 townships. The province has 105 rural municipalities, as well as 35 incorporated towns, 39 incorporated villages and 5 incorporated cities.

On 1 Jan. 1972, the cities and towns comprising the metropolitan area of Winnipeg were amalgamated to form the City of Winnipeg. A mayor and council are elected to a central government, but councillors also sit on 'community committees' which represent the areas or wards they serve. These committees are advised by non-elected residents of the area on provision of municipal services within the community committee jurisdiction. Taxing powers and overall budgeting rest with the central council. The mayor is elected at the same time as the councillors in a city-wide vote. Revisions to the City of Winnipeg Act came into effect with the municipal elections held in Oct. 1977.

Since Jan. 1945, 17 Local Government Districts have been formed in the less densely populated areas of the province. They are administered by a provincially appointed person, who acts on the advice of locally elected councils.



In the extreme north, many communities have locally elected councils, while others are administered directly by the Department of Northern Affairs. This department provides most of the funding in all these northern settlements.

**FINANCE.** Provincial revenue and expenditure (current account) for fiscal years ending 31 March (in Canadian \$):

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87 <sup>1</sup>	1987-88 <sup>2</sup>
Revenue	2,797,155,000	2,924,600,000	3,116,600,000	3,385,800,000	3,772,600,000
Expenditure	3,226,104,000	3,407,200,000	3,644,900,000	3,945,600,000	4,187,900,000

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary unaudited. <sup>2</sup> Budgeted.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The total generating capacity of Manitoba's power stations is 4.1m. kw. The Manitoba Hydro system, owned by the province, provides most of this power, while the city-owned Winnipeg Hydro provides about 190,000 kw. The systems have about 436,000 customers and consumption was 13.6m. kwh. in 1986.

**Oil.** Crude oil production in 1986 was valued at \$195m. for the 825,000 cu. metres produced.

**Minerals.** Total value of minerals in 1986 was about \$758.4m. Principal minerals mined are nickel, zinc, copper, and small quantities of gold and silver. Manitoba has the world's largest deposits of caesium ore.

**Agriculture.** Rich farmland is the main primary resource, although the area of Manitoba in farms is only about 14% of the total land area. In 1986 the total value of agricultural production in Manitoba was \$2,200m., with \$1,500m. from crops, \$737m. from livestock and from the sale of other products including furs, hides and honey.

**Forestry.** About 40% of the land area is wooded, of which 149,000 sq. km is productive forest land. Total sales of wood-using industries (1986, estimate) \$500m.

**Fur Trade.** Value of fur production to the trapper was \$5m. in 1986.

**Fisheries.** From 22,000 sq. miles of rivers and lakes fisheries production was about \$18m. in 1985-86. Whitefish, sauger, pickerel, pike, trout and perch are the principal varieties of fish caught.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufacturing, the largest industry in the province, encompasses almost every major industrial activity in Canada. Estimated shipments in 1986 totalled \$5,611m. Manufacturing employed about 57,000 persons. Due to the agricultural base of the province, the food and beverage group of industries is by far the largest, valued at \$1,902m. in 1986, accounting for about 33.9% of the total value. The next largest segments are transportation equipment, \$409m. (7.3%), clothing and textiles, \$399m. (7.1%) and printing and allied products, \$344m. (6.1%).

**Trade.** Products grown and manufactured in Manitoba find ready markets in other parts of Canada, in the USA, particularly the upper midwest region, and in other countries. Export shipments to foreign countries from Manitoba in 1986 were valued at about \$2,462m., with \$1,331m. (54.1%) going to the US. Of total exports about 28% are raw materials and about 72% are processed and manufactured products.

**Tourism.** In 1986, non-Manitoban tourists numbered 2.4m. All tourists including Manitobans contributed \$657m. to the economy.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Highways and provincial roads totalled 19,721 km in 1987.

**Railways.** At 30 June 1987 the province had 6,250 km of track, not including industrial track, yards and sidings.

**Aviation.** A total of 108 licensed commercial air carriers operate from bases in Manitoba, as well as 6 regularly scheduled major national and international airlines.

**Post.** All of the Manitoba Telephone System's 502,400 (1986) telephones are dial-operated. There are some privately-owned fixtures and extension phones; all service is operated by MTS.

**EDUCATION.** Education is controlled through locally elected school divisions. There are about 199,000 children enrolled in the province's elementary and secondary schools. Manitoba has 3 universities with an enrolment of about 33,800 during the 1986-87 year; the University of Manitoba, founded in 1877, in Winnipeg, the University of Winnipeg, and Brandon University. Expenditure (estimate) on education in the 1987-88 fiscal year was \$747m.

Three community colleges, in Brandon, The Pas and Winnipeg, offer 2-year diploma courses in a number of fields, as well as specialized training in many trades. They also give a large number and variety of shorter courses, both at their campuses and in many communities throughout the province.

### Further Reading

*General Information:* Inquiries may be addressed to the Information Services Branch, Room 29, Legislative Building, Winnipeg, R3C 0V8.

The Department of Agriculture publishes: *Year Book of Manitoba Agriculture*

Information Services Branch publishes: *Manitoba Facts*

*Manitoba Statistical Review.* Manitoba Bureau of Statistics, Quarterly

*Twelfth Census of Canada: Manitoba.* Statistics Canada, 1981

Jackson, J. A., *The Centennial History of Manitoba.* Toronto, 1970

Morton, W. L., *Manitoba: A History.* Univ. of Toronto Press, 1967

## NEW BRUNSWICK

**HISTORY.** Touched by Jacques Cartier in 1534, New Brunswick was first explored by Samuel de Champlain in 1604. It was ceded by the French in the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713 and became a permanent British possession in 1763. It was separated from Nova Scotia and became a province in June 1784, as a result of the great influx of United Empire Loyalists. Responsible government came into being in 1848, and consisted of an executive council, a legislative council (later abolished) and a House of Assembly.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the province is 28,354 sq. miles (73,000 sq. km), of which 27,633 sq. miles (71,569 sq. km) are land area. The population (census 1986) was 710,422. Of the individuals identifying a single ethnic origin (at the 1986 census), 46.9% were British and 33.3% French. Other significant ethnic groups were German, Dutch and Scandinavian. Among those who provided a multiple response 9.9% were of British and French descent and 4.3% British and other. In 1986 there were 9,375 Native People or Native People and other. Census 1986 population of urban centres: Saint John, 76,381; Moncton, 55,468; Fredericton (capital), 44,352; Bathurst, 14,683; Edmundston, 11,497; Campbellton, 9,073.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** A cool temperate climate, with rain at all seasons but temperatures modified by the influence of the Gulf Stream. Saint John. Jan. 14°F (-10°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 51" (1,278 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The government is vested in a Lieut.-Governor and a Legislative Assembly of 58 members each of whom is individually elected to represent the voters in one constituency or riding. A simultaneous translation system is used in the Assembly. Any Canadian subject of full age and 6 months' residence is entitled to vote. As a result of the provincial election held on 13 Oct. 1987 and subsequent by-elections, the Assembly is composed of 58 Liberal Party members. The province has 10 members in the Canadian Senate and 10 members in the federal House of Commons.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Gilbert Finn (appointed Aug. 1987).

*Flag:* A banner of the Arms, i.e., yellow charged with a black heraldic ship on wavy lines of blue and white; across the top a red band with a gold lion.

The members of the Liberal government are as follows (Dec. 1988):

*Premier and Minister responsible for the Advisory Council on the Status of Women, and for Regional Development:* Francis J. McKenna.

*President of the Executive Council and Intergovernmental Affairs:* Aldéa Landry.

*Attorney General and Justice:* James Lockyer. *Finance and responsibility for the New Brunswick Liquor Corporation:* Allan Maher. *Chairman of Board of Management:* Gerald Clavette. *Supply and Services:* Bruce Smith. *Transportation:* Sheldon Lee. *Natural Resources and Energy:* Morris Green. *Agriculture:* Alan Graham. *Health and Community Services:* Ray Frenette. *Income Assistance:* Laureen Jarrett. *Labour and responsibility for Multiculturalism:* Michael McKee. *Education:* Shirley Dysart. *Advanced Education and Training:* Dr Russ King. *Municipal Affairs and Environment:* Vaughn Blaney. *Commerce and Technology:* A. W. Lacey. *Fisheries:* Aidéa Landry. *Tourism, Recreation and Heritage:* Roland Beaulieu. *Housing:* Peter Trites. *Chairman of the New Brunswick Electric Power Commission:* Rayburn Doucett. *Solicitor General:* Conrad Landry.

**Local Government.** Under the reforms introduced in 1967 the province has assumed complete administrative and financial responsibility for education, health, welfare and administration of justice. Local government is now restricted to provision of services of a strictly local nature. Under the new municipal structure, units include existing and new cities, towns and villages. Counties have disappeared as municipal units. Areas with limited populations have become local service districts. The former local improvement districts have become towns, villages or local service districts depending on their size.

**FINANCE.** The ordinary budget (in Canadian \$) is shown as follows (financial years ended 31 March):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Gross revenue	2,374,475,834	2,665,248,497	2,770,035,356	3,024,858,732
Gross expenditure	2,527,275,188	2,745,033,882	2,890,963,016	3,131,700,768

Funded debt and capital loans outstanding (exclusive of Treasury Bills) as of 31 March 1987 was \$3,567m. Sinking funds held by the province at 31 March 1987, \$956m. The ordinary budget excludes capital spending.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Hydro-electric, thermal and nuclear generating stations of the New Brunswick Electric Power Commission had an installed capacity of 3,189,976 kw. at 31 March 1987, consisting of 14 generating stations. The Mactaquac hydro-electric development near Fredericton, has a name plate capacity of 653,400 kw. The largest thermal generating station, Coleson Cove, near Saint John, has over 1m. kw. of installed capacity. Atlantic Canada's first nuclear generating station, a 630,000 kw. CANDU plant built on a promontory jutting out in the Bay of Fundy, near Saint John, went into commercial operation in Jan. 1983. New Brunswick is electrically inter-connected with utilities in neighbouring provinces of Quebec, Nova Scotia and Prince Edward Island, as well as the New England States. Electricity export sales accounted for over 40% of revenue in 1986-87; energy purchases,



mainly from the large Hydro Quebec system, supplied about 34% of in-province energy requirements.

**Minerals.** In 1987, a total of 22 different metals, minerals and commodities were produced. These included lead, zinc, copper, cadmium, bismuth, gold, silver, antimony, potash, salt, limestone, dolomite, gypsum, oil, gas, coal, oil shales, sand, gravel, clay, peat and marl. The total value of minerals produced in 1987 reached a record high of \$707.7m., a 40% increase from \$501.6m. in 1986. The largest contributors to mineral production are zinc, silver, lead and potash with zinc accounting for over 42% of total value in 1987. These 4 minerals recorded significant increases in price in late 1986 which continued into 1987. In Canada in 1987, New Brunswick ranked first in bismuth production; second in antimony, tungsten, peat and potash; third in sulphur, lead, silver and zinc, and fifth in copper and clay products. Antimony is mined at Lake George and production resumed at the Durham Resources mine near Fredericton in 1985. Peat, rapidly becoming a major industry, is produced from 18 operations in the north. Two potash mines are in operation in the Sussex area, including the Denison-Potacan mine where production commenced in 1985. Oil and natural gas continue to be produced in the Stoney Creek and Hillsborough areas. Gordex Minerals produced its first gold in 1986 using the heap leach process. Coal is strip-mined at Grand Lake, producing some 530,000 tonnes annually. Not all of the province's minerals have been explored sufficiently and research continues. Provincial government programmes are being supplemented by a 5-year, \$22m. Mineral Development Agreement between the Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources and the province. Federal and Provincial agencies are co-operating on field, laboratory and other projects.

**Agriculture.** The total area under crops is estimated at 129,475 hectares. Farms numbered 3,554 and averaged 115 hectares each (census 1986). Potatoes account for 21% of total farm cash income. Mixed farming is common throughout the province. Dairy farming is centred around the larger urban areas, and is located mainly along the Saint John River Valley and in the south-eastern sections of the province. Income from dairy operations provides about 22% of farm cash income. New Brunswick is self-sufficient in fluid milk and supplies a processing industry. For particulars of agricultural production and livestock, *see under CANADA*, pp. 284-85. Farm cash receipts in 1988 were approximately \$250m.

**Forestry.** New Brunswick contains some 62,000 sq. km of productive forest lands. The gross value of forest production was over \$1,786m. in 1986, and it accounts for almost one-quarter of all goods produced in the province. The pulp and paper and allied industry group is the largest component of the industry contributing about 56% of the value of output. Timber-using plants employ about 15,000 people for all aspects of the forest industry, including harvesting, processing and transportation. Practically all forest products are exported from the province's numerous ports and harbours near which many of the mills are located or sent by road or rail to the USA.

**Fisheries.** Commercial fishing is one of the most important primary industries of the province, employing 7,934. Nearly 50 commercial species of fish and shellfish are landed, including scallop, shrimp, crab, herring and cod. Landings in 1987 (147,000 tonnes) amounted to \$116m. In 1986 there were 150 fish processing plants employing 14,000 people in peak periods. The total market value of 94,383 tonnes of fish products in 1985 was \$315.2m. Estimate (1986) \$350m. Exports (1987) \$345.4m., mainly to the USA and Japan.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 there were 1,477 manufacturing and processing establishments, employing about 42,300 persons. New Brunswick's location, with deep-water harbours open throughout the year and container facilities at Saint John, makes it ideal for exporting. Industries include food and beverages, paper and allied industries, timber products. About 20% of the industrial labour force work in Saint John.

**TOURISM.** Tourism is a major industry. During 1987, 4.5m. tourists spent approximately \$497m. Over 27,000 people are employed in the industry.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are about 1,541.9 km of arterial highways and 2,381.7 km of collector roads, all of which are hard-surfaced. 12,279.9 km of local roads provide access to most areas in the province. The main highway system, including 596.4 km of the Trans-Canada Highway, links the province with the principal roads in Quebec and Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island, as well as the Interstate Highway System in the eastern seaboard states of the USA. Passenger vehicles, 31 March 1988, numbered 291,857; commercial vehicles, 123,252; motor cycles, 12,048.

**Railways.** New Brunswick is served by main lines of both Canadian Pacific and Canadian National railways.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1984 the New Brunswick Telephone Co. Ltd had 439,446 telephones in service. The province is served by 21 radio stations. Sixteen are privately owned and 3 owned by the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation and 2 are university stations. Three stations broadcast in the French language, 3 are bilingual and the CBC International Service broadcasts in several languages from its station at Sackville. The province is served by 4 television stations, 1 of which broadcasts in French.

**Newspapers.** New Brunswick had (1987) 6 daily newspapers, 2 in French, and 23 weekly newspapers, 7 in French or bilingual.

**EDUCATION.** Public education is free and non-sectarian. There are 4 universities. The University of New Brunswick at Fredericton (founded 13 Dec. 1785 by the Loyalists, elevated to university status in 1823, reorganized as the University of New Brunswick in 1859) had 6,607 full-time students at the Fredericton campus and 1,172 full-time students at the Saint John campus (1987-88); Mount Allison University at Sackville had 1,798 full-time students; the Université de Moncton at Moncton, 4,235 full-time students, with 262 and 494 full-time students respectively at its satellite campuses at Shippagan and Edmundston; St Thomas University at Fredericton, 1,350 full-time students. During the period 1 July 1986 to 30 June 1987, there were 12,197 students enrolled full-time at 9 Community College campuses and at various campus training centres.

There were, in Sept. 1988, 136,600 students and 7,400 full-time (equivalent) teachers in the province's 440 schools. There are 41 school boards.

## Further Reading

*Industrial Information:* Dept. of Commerce and Technology, Fredericton. *Economic Information:* Dept. of Finance, New Brunswick Statistics Agency, Fredericton. *General Information:* NB Information Service, Fredericton.

*Directory of Products and Manufacturers.* Department of Commerce and Development; Annual

Thompson, C., *New Brunswick Inside Out*. Ottawa, 1977

Trueman, S., *The Fascinating World of New Brunswick*. Fredericton, 1973

## NEWFOUNDLAND AND LABRADOR

**HISTORY.** Archaeological finds at L'Anse-au-Meadow in northern Newfoundland show that the Vikings had established a colony there at about A.D. 1000. This site is the only known Viking colony in North America. Newfoundland was discovered by John Cabot 24 June 1497, and was soon frequented in the summer months by the Portuguese, Spanish and French for its fisheries. It was formally occupied in Aug. 1583 by Sir Humphrey Gilbert on behalf of the English Crown, but various attempts to colonize the island remained unsuccessful. Although British sovereignty was recognized in 1713 by the Treaty of Utrecht, disputes over

fishing rights with the French were not finally settled till 1904. By the Anglo-French Convention of 1904, France renounced her exclusive fishing rights along part of the coast, granted under the Treaty of Utrecht, but retained sovereignty of the offshore islands of St Pierre and Miquelon.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area, 143,501 sq. miles (371,690 sq. km) of which freshwater, 13,139 sq. miles (34,030 sq. km). In March 1927 the Privy Council decided the boundary between Canada and Newfoundland in Labrador. This area, now part of the Province of Newfoundland and Labrador, is 102,699 sq. miles. The coastline is extremely irregular. Bays, fiords and inlets are numerous and there are many good harbours with deep water close to shore. The coast is rugged with bold rocky cliffs from 200 to 400 ft high; in the Bay of Islands some of the islands rise 500 ft, with the adjacent shore 1,000 ft above tide level. The interior is a plateau of moderate elevation and the chief relief features trend north-east and south-west. Long Range, the most notable of these, begins at Cape Ray and extends north-east for 200 miles, the highest peak reaching 2,673 ft. Approximately one-third of the area is covered by water. Grand Lake, the largest body of water, has an area of about 200 sq. miles. The principal rivers flow towards the north-east. On the borders of the lakes and water-courses good land is generally found, particularly in the valleys of the Terra Nova River, the Gander River, the Exploits River and the Humber River, which are also heavily timbered.

Census population, 1986, was 568,349.

The capital of Newfoundland is the City of St John's (161,901, metropolitan area). The other cities are Corner Brook (22,719), Mt Pearl (20,293); important towns are Labrador City (8,664), Gander (10,207), Stephenville (7,994), Grand Falls (9,121), Happy Valley-Goose Bay (7,248), Marystown (6,660), Channel-Port aux Basques (5,901), Windsor (5,545), Carbonear (5,337), Bonavista (4,605), Wabana (4,057), Wabush (2,637).

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** The cool temperate climate is marked by heavy precipitation, distributed evenly over the year, a cool summer and frequent fogs in spring. St. John's. Jan. 23°F (−5°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 54" (1,367 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Until 1832 Newfoundland was ruled by the Governor under instructions of the Colonial Office. In that year a Legislature was brought into existence, but the Governor and his Executive Council were not responsible to it. Under the constitution of 1855, which lasted until its suspension in 1934, the government was administered by the Governor appointed by the Crown with an Executive Council responsible to the House of Assembly of 27 elected members and a Legislative Council of 24 members nominated for life by the Governor in Council. Women were enfranchised in 1925. At the Imperial Conference of 1917 Newfoundland was constituted as a Dominion.

In 1933 the financial situation had become so critical that the Government of Newfoundland asked the Government of the UK to appoint a Royal Commission to investigate conditions. On the strength of their recommendations, the parliamentary form of government was suspended and Government by Commission was inaugurated on 16 Feb. 1934.

A National Convention, elected in 1946, made, in 1948, recommendations to H.M. Government in Great Britain as to the possible forms of future government to be submitted to the people at a national referendum. Two referenda were held. In the first referendum (June 1948) the three forms of government submitted to the people were: Commission of government for 5 years, confederation with Canada and responsible government as it existed in 1933. No one form of government received a clear majority of the votes polled, and commission of government, receiving the fewest votes, was eliminated. In the second referendum (July 1948) confederation with Canada received 78,408 and responsible government 71,464 votes.



In the Canadian Senate on 18 Feb. 1949 Royal assent was given to the terms of union of Newfoundland and Labrador with Canada, and on 23 March 1949, in the House of Lords, London, Royal assent was given to an amendment to the British North America Act made necessary by the inclusion of Newfoundland and Labrador as the tenth Province of Canada.

Under the terms of union of Newfoundland and Labrador with Canada, which was signed at Ottawa on 11 Dec. 1948, the constitution of the Legislature of Newfoundland and Labrador as it existed immediately prior to 16 Feb. 1934 shall, subject to the terms of the British North America Acts, 1867 to 1946, continue as the constitution of the Legislature of the Province of Newfoundland and Labrador until altered under the authority of the said Acts.

The franchise was in 1965 extended to all male and female residents who have attained the age of 19 years and are otherwise qualified as electors.

The House of Assembly (Amendment) Act, 1979, established 52 electoral districts and 52 members of the Legislature.

In Jan. 1988 there were 35 Progressive-Conservatives, 15 Liberals and 2 New Democrats.

The province is represented by 6 members in the Senate and by 7 members in the House of Commons of Canada.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Hon. James W. McGrath (assumed office 5 Sept. 1986).

*Flag:* White, in the hoist 4 solid blue triangles; in the fly 2 red triangles voided white, and between them a yellow tongue bordered in red.

The Progressive-Conservative Executive Council was, in Jan. 1989, composed as follows:

*Premier and Minister of Energy:* (Vacant).

*Deputy Premier and Minister of Health:* Dr John Collins. *Finance and Minister responsible for Newfoundland and Labrador Hydro:* Neil Windsor. *President of Treasury Board, President of Executive Council and Government House Leader:* Leonard A. Simms. *Intergovernmental Affairs:* Ronald G. Dawe. *Transportation:* Norman Doyle. *Justice:* Lynn Verge. *Development and Tourism:* Harold M. Barrett. *Education:* Loyola Hearn. *Fisheries:* Thomas G. Rideout. *Career Development and Advanced Studies:* William B. Matthews. *Social Services:* Glenn Tobin. *Forest Resources:* Robert J. Aylward. *Municipal Affairs:* Charles Brett. *Rural and Agricultural Development:* Charles Power. *Mines:* Jerome Dinn. *Public Works and Services:* Dr Hugh M. Twomey. *Labour:* T. A. Blanchard. *Culture, Recreation and Youth:* John C. Butt. *Environment and Lands:* James Russell. *Consumer Affairs and Communications:* D. Haig Young. *Minister responsible for Newfoundland and Labrador Housing:* Milton Peach. *Minister responsible for Northern Development:* Garfield Warren.

*Agent-General in London:* H. Watson Jamer (60 Trafalgar Sq., WC2).

**FINANCE.** Budget<sup>1</sup> in Canadian \$1,000 for fiscal years ended 31 March:

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88 <sup>2</sup>	1988-89 <sup>3</sup>
Gross revenue	1,768,464	1,867,470	2,072,581	2,233,339	2,407,804	2,572,910
Gross expenditure	1,827,839	1,954,762	2,117,012	2,260,845	2,465,608	2,613,733

<sup>1</sup> Current amount only.

<sup>2</sup> Revised estimates.

<sup>3</sup> Estimates.

*Capital account:*

	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88 <sup>2</sup>	1988-89 <sup>3</sup>
Gross revenue	63,952,000	49,888,000	120,641,000	91,234,000
Gross expenditure	273,347,000	252,932,000	299,436,000	311,850,000

<sup>1</sup> Current amount only.

<sup>2</sup> Revised estimates.

<sup>3</sup> Estimates.

Public debenture debt as at 31 March 1988 (preliminary) was \$3,955.7m.; sinking fund, \$977.7m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The electrical energy requirements of the province are met mainly by hydro-electric power, with petroleum fuels being utilized to provide the balance. The total amount of energy generated in the province in 1987 was 40,089,415 mwh., of which 94% was derived from hydro-electric facilities. The greater part of the energy produced in 1987 (preliminary) came from Churchill Falls, of which 30,392,727 mwh. was sold to Hydro-Quebec under the terms of a long-term contract. Energy consumed in the province during 1987 (preliminary) totalled 9,696,688 mwh., with approximately 7,379,743 mwh., or 76%, coming from hydro-electric facilities.

At Dec. 1987 total electrical generating capacity in the province was 7,402 mw., with hydro-electric plants accounting for 6,644 mw., or 90%. It is estimated that potential additional hydro-electric generating capacity of up to 4.5m. kw. can be developed at various sites in Labrador.

**Oil.** In 1981 the province consumed refined petroleum at the rate of 39,000 bbls a day.

Since 1965, 134 wells have been drilled on the Continental Margin of the Province. In 1987 offshore exploration expenditures were \$188.6m.

By 31 Dec. 1985 there had been 20 significant hydrocarbon discoveries off Newfoundland and delineation drilling had been initiated or was ongoing at 6: Terra Nova, Ben Nevis, Whiterose, North Ben Nevis and Mara. In 1986 only the Hibernia discovery had commercial capability and the Canada-Newfoundland Offshore Petroleum Board approved Mobil Oil Canada's development plan for the Hibernia Project, with production starting in the early 1990's.

In 1979, a discovery of oil was made on the Hibernia geological structure located 164 nautical miles east of Cape Spear. The discovery well, Hibernia P-15, tested medium gravity, sweet crude from several intervals with a reported total producing capability in excess of 20,000 bbls of oil per day.

By 31 Dec. 1985 there had been 20 significant hydrocarbon discoveries off Newfoundland but by Nov. 1986 only one (Hibernia) was considered commercially viable.

In June 1986, the Canada-Newfoundland Offshore Petroleum Board approved Mobil Oil Canada's development plan for the Hibernia Project. Production is currently expected to begin in the early 1990's.

**Minerals.** The mineral resources are vast but only partially documented. Large deposits of iron ore, with an ore reserve of over 5,000m. tons at Labrador City, Wabush City and in the Knob Lake area are supplying approximately half of Canada's production. Other large deposits of iron ore are known to exist in the Julienne Lake area.

There are a variety of other minerals being produced in the province in more limited amounts.

Uranium deposits in the Kaipokak Bay area near Makkovik in Labrador are presently being studied by Brinex. The Central Mineral Belt, which extends from the Smallwood Reservoir to the Atlantic coast near Makkovik, holds uranium, copper, beryllium and molybdenite potential.

In 1986 a gold mine was being developed at Hope Brook on the south coast east of Port aux Basques. Full production from an underground operation using conventional carbon-in-pulp gold processing is planned to start in late 1988.

Production in 1987 (preliminary): Iron ore, 18,775,000 tonnes (\$685,423,000); zinc, 13,358,000 kg (\$17,018,000); asbestos, 60,000 tonnes (\$21m.); gypsum, 410,000 tonnes (\$4,656,000); pyrophyllite and talc (\$1,668,000); cement (\$9,541,000); clay products (\$960,000); sand and gravel, 2,650,000 tonnes (\$13,250,000); stone, 535,000 tonnes (\$2,950,000); quartz (\$1.15m.); cadmium, 10,000 kg (\$58,000); peat, 4,000 tonnes (\$673,000); gold (\$7,804,000); silver (\$15,000).

**Agriculture.** The estimated value of agricultural products sold, including livestock, 1986, was \$44.9m.

**Forestry.** The forestry economy in the province is mainly dependent on the operation of 3 newsprint mills. In 1987 the gross value of newsprint exported from these 3 mills totalled \$508.4m. Lumber mills, saw-log operations produced 38m. f.b.m. in 1983-84.

**Fisheries.** The principal fish landings are cod, flounder, redfish, Queen crabs, lobster, salmon and herring. In 1987 (preliminary) a yearly average of some 10,800 persons were employed by the fish-processing industry and there were 29,023 licensed full-, part-time and casual fishermen engaged in harvesting operations. Approximately 224 processing operations were licensed in 1987. The production of fresh and frozen fish products was \$420.9m. in 1985.

The total catch in 1986 (preliminary) was 493,845 tonnes valued at \$197,581,000, which comprised: Cod, 270,172 tonnes (\$103,451,000); flounders and soles, 64,675 (\$19,525,000); herring, 14,448 tonnes (\$2,469,000); redfish, 22,254 (\$4,532,000); lobster, 1,917 (\$11,625,000); salmon, 1,191 (\$4,572,000); capelin, 64,788 (\$20,867,000); crab, 9,175 (\$10,439,000); other, 45,185 (\$20,101,000).

**INDUSTRY.** The total value of manufacturing shipments in 1987 was \$1,645m. This consists largely of first-stage processing of primary resource products with two of the largest components being paper and fish products.

**TRADE UNIONS.** There were (1985) 429 unions representing 79,165 members of international and national unions and government employee associations.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 8,238 km, of which 5,671 were paved.

**Railways.** In 1981 there were 1,457.8 km of main track railway, of which the Canadian National Railways operated 1,130.6 (3 ft 6 in.), the Quebec North Shore and Labrador Railway 324.8 (4 ft 8½ in.) and there were 2.4 km of private line. Car and passenger ferries operate from Port aux Basques and Argentia to North Sydney, Nova Scotia. On the island of Newfoundland, the Terra Transport operates a trans-island bus and rail freight service in addition to a coastal service for both passengers and freight. In 1988 CNR closed its Newfoundland operation. In the months that the Labrador coast is ice-free, usually from June to Nov., the CN Marine operates a scheduled coastal steamer service every week.

**Aviation.** The province is linked to the rest of Canada by regular air services provided by Air Canada, Canadian International Airways, Quebecair and a number of smaller air carriers.

**Shipping.** At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 1,528 ships registered in Newfoundland.

**Post.** There were 473 post offices open in 1987, and 2 telegraph offices in the Newfoundland and Labrador postal district. Telephone access lines in the province numbered 203,000 in 1986.

**EDUCATION.** The number of schools in 1987-88 was 566. The enrolment was 136,228; full-time teachers numbered 7,794. The Memorial University, offering courses in arts, science, engineering, education, nursing and medicine, had approximately 15,900 full- and part-time students in 1986-87. Total expenditure for education by the Government in 1986-87 was \$598.3m.

## Further Reading

- Blackburn, R. H. (ed.) *Encyclopaedia of Canada: Newfoundland Supplement*. Toronto, 1949  
 Horwood, H., *Newfoundland*. Toronto, 1969  
 Loture, R. de, *Histoire de la grande pêche de Terre-Neuve*. Paris, 1949  
 Mercer, G. A., *The Province of Newfoundland and Labrador: Geographical Aspects*. Ottawa, 1970  
 Perlin, A. B., *The Story of Newfoundland, 1497-1959*. St John's, 1959



Tanner, V., *Outlines of Geography. Life and Customs of Newfoundland-Labrador*. 2 vols. Helsinki, 1944, and Toronto, 1947

Taylor, T. G., *Newfoundland: A Study of Settlement*. Toronto, 1946

## NOVA SCOTIA

**HISTORY.** The first permanent settlement was made by the French early in the 17th century, and the province was called Acadia until finally ceded to the British by the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the province is 21,425 sq. miles (55,000 sq. km), of which 20,401 sq. miles are land area, 1,024 sq. miles water area. The population (census 1986) was 873,199.

Population of the principal cities and towns (census 1986): Halifax, 113,577; Dartmouth 65,243; Sydney, 27,754; Glace Bay, 20,467; Truro, 12,124; New Glasgow, 10,022; Amherst, 9,671; New Waterford, 8,326; Sydney Mines, 8,063; Bedford, 8,010; North Sydney, 7,472; Yarmouth, 7,617.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** A cool temperate climate, with rainfall occurring evenly over the year. The Gulf Stream moderates the temperatures in winter so that ports remain ice-free. Halifax. Jan. 23°F (-5°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 56" (1,412 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the British North America Act of 1867 the legislature of Nova Scotia may exclusively make laws in relation to local matters, including direct taxation within the province, education and the administration of justice. The legislature of Nova Scotia consists of a Lieut.-Governor, appointed and paid by the federal government, and holding office for 5 years, and a House of Assembly of 52 members, chosen by popular vote not more than every 5 years. The province is represented in the Canadian Senate by 10 members, and in the House of Commons by 11.

The franchise and eligibility to the legislature are granted to every person, male or female, if of age (19 years), a British subject or Canadian citizen, and a resident in the province for 1 year and 2 months before the date of the writ of election in the county or electoral district of which the polling district forms part, and if not by law otherwise disqualified. State of parties in Sept. 1988: 28 Progressive Conservatives, 21 Liberals, 2 New Democrats, 1 Independent.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Alan R. Abraham.

*Flag:* A banner of the Arms, *i.e.*, white with a blue diagonal cross, bearing in the centre the royal shield of Scotland.

The members of the Progressive Conservative Ministry were as follows in Sept. 1988:

*Premier, President of the Executive Council, Minister of Intergovernmental Affairs, Minister of Advanced Education and Job Training, Chairman of the Policy Board, Minister Responsible for the Cabinet Secretariat:* Rt Hon. John M. Buchanan, PC, QC.

*Agriculture and Marketing:* Roger S. Bacon. *Lands and Forests, Minister Responsible for the Emergency Measures Organization Act:* Jack MacIsaac. *Mines and Energy:* Kenneth Streach. *Education:* Ronald C. Giffin, QC. *Attorney-General, Labour:* Terence R. B. Donahoe, QC. *Community Services, Consumer Affairs, Minister Responsible for the Human Rights Act, Minister in Charge of the Residential Tenancies Act and the Advisory Council on the Status of Women Act:* Thomas J. McInnis. *Health and Fitness, Registrar General, Minister in Charge of the Drug Dependency Act and Reporting on the Handicapped:* Joel R. Matheson, QC. *Solicitor General, Provincial Secretary, Minister in Charge of the Regulations*

*Act and the Liquor Control Act:* Ronald S. Russell. *Finance, Housing, Minister in Charge of the Nova Scotia Sport and Recreation Commission and the Lottery Act:* Greg Kerr. *Fisheries:* John E. Leefe. *Government Services, Chairman of the Management Board, Minister Responsible for the Communications and Information Act and Civil Service Act:* George C. Moody. *Small Business Development, Municipal Affairs, Minister Responsible for the Nova Scotia Business Capital Corporation Act:* David Nantes. *Transportation and Communications:* Guy LeBlanc. *Tourism and Culture, Minister Responsible for the Heritage Property Act:* Brian A. Young. *Industry, Trade and Technology, Minister Responsible for the Nova Scotia Research Foundation Corporation Act and the Advisory Council on Applied Science and Technology:* Donald W. Cameron. *Environment:* Donald P. McInnes.

*Agent-General in London:* Donald M. Smith (14 Pall Mall, SW1Y 5LU).

**Local Government.** The main divisions of the province for governmental purposes are the 3 cities, the 39 towns and the 24 rural municipalities, each governed by a council and a mayor or warden. The cities have independent charters, and the various towns take their powers from and are limited by The Towns Act, and the various municipalities take their powers from and are limited by The Municipal Act as revised in 1967. The majority of municipalities comprise 1 county, but 6 counties are divided into 2 municipalities each. In no case do the boundaries of any municipality overlap county lines. The 18 counties as such have no administrative functions.

Any city (of which there are 3) or incorporated town (of which there are 39) that lies within the boundaries of a municipality is excluded from any jurisdiction by the municipal council and has its own government.

**FINANCE.** Revenue is derived from provincial sources, payments from the federal government under the Federal-Provincial Fiscal Arrangements and Established Programs Financing Act. Recoveries consist generally of amounts received under various federal cost-shared programmes. Main sources of provincial revenues include income and sales taxes.

Revenue, expenditure and debt (in Canadian \$1m.) for fiscal years ending 31 March:

	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989 <sup>1</sup>
<i>Budgetary Transactions</i>					
Current Expenditure	2,789.8	2,983.6	3,093.1	3,283.6	3,504.5
Current Revenues and Recoveries	2,549.6	2,714.6	2,903.9	3,164.5	3,386.6
Operating Deficit (Surplus)	240.3	269.0	189.2	119.1	117.9
Sinking Fund Instalments and Serial Retirements	65.1	77.2	87.3	86.5	91.1
Net Capital Expenditures	231.2	192.0	198.5	221.7	290.1
Net Budgetary Transactions	536.5	538.2	475.0	427.3	499.1
<i>Non-Budgetary Transactions</i>					
Capital Expenditures	6.8	2.7	0.9	2.5	2.0
Net Increase (Decrease) in Advances and Investments	(12.1)	(7.4)	28.1	(18.7)	1.1
Net Other Transactions	7.0	6.7	7.2	7.2	6.6
Non-Budgetary Transactions	1.6	2.0	36.2	(9.0)	9.7
	538.1	540.2	511.2	418.3	508.8

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

**Banking.** All major Canadian banks are represented with numerous branch locations throughout the Province. In March 1988 total deposits with chartered banks in Nova Scotia totalled \$3,567m.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Principal minerals in 1987 were: Coal, 2.8m. tonnes, valued at \$170.7m.; gypsum, 6m. tonnes, valued at \$51m.; sand and gravel, 7.8m. tonnes, valued at \$22.7m. Total value of mineral production in 1987 was about \$390.1m.

**Agriculture.** Dairying, poultry and egg production, livestock and fruit growing are the most important branches. Farm cash receipts for 1987 were estimated at \$289m., with an additional \$6.5m. going to persons on farms as income in kind.

Cash receipts from sale of dairy products were \$82m., with total milk production of 177,859,000 litres.

The production of poultry meat in 1987 was 22,517 tonnes, of which 19,651 tonnes were chickens and fowls and 2,866 tonnes were turkeys. Egg production was 18.5m. dozen.

The main 1987 fruit crops were apples, 55,245 tonnes; blueberries, 6,165 tonnes; and strawberries, 1,989 tonnes.

**Forestry.** The estimated forest area of Nova Scotia is 15,555 sq. miles (40,298 sq. km), of which about 25% is owned by the province. The principal trees are spruce, balsam fir, hemlock, pine, larch, birch, oak, maple, poplar and ash. 4,142,618 cu. metres of round forest products were produced in 1987.

**Fisheries.** The fisheries of the province in 1987 had a landed value of \$510.6m. of sea fish including scallop fishery, \$83.8m., and lobster fishery, \$154.8m. In 1985 there were about 6,412 employees in the fish processing industry; the value of shipment of goods was \$444.1m.

**INDUSTRY.** The number of manufacturing establishments was 820 in 1985; the number of employees was 35,149; wages and salaries, \$774.6m.; value of shipments was \$4,634.8m. The value of shipments in 1987, was \$4,616.8m., and the leading industries were food, paper and allied industries and transportation equipment.

**TRADE UNIONS.** Total union membership during 1987 was 105,326 belonging to 97 unions comprised of 609 individual locals. The largest percentage of the total union membership was in the service sector followed by public administration and defence sector. An estimated 48,250 members in 381 locals were affiliated with the Canadian Labour Congress.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 25,800 km of highways; paved included 128 km free-way, 2,515 km arterial, 4,540 km collector and 5,288 km local. 13,411 km of highway are unpaved.

**Railways.** The province is covered with a network of 1,100 km of mainline track.

**Aviation.** There is a direct air service to all Canadian points and international service to Boston, New York, Bermuda, London, Glasgow, Orlando and Tampa.

**Shipping.** Ferry services connect Nova Scotia with Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, New Brunswick and Maine. Direct service by container vessels is provided from the Port of Halifax to ports in Europe, Asia and the Caribbean.

## JUSTICE AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court which is a Court of common law and equity possessing original and appellate jurisdiction in civil and in criminal cases. The Supreme Court consists of an appeal division of 8 judges and a trial division of 12



judges. There are also county courts, family courts, probate courts, magistrates' courts, small claims courts, municipal and justices' courts. Bodies, sometimes referred to as courts, are established for the revision of assessment rolls, voters' lists and like purposes.

Young offenders under 16 years are now tried by Youth Courts. The Courts were established in April 1984. As of 1985, the Youth Courts have the jurisdiction to adjudicate charges against 16- and 17- year-old offenders.

For the year fiscal ending 31 March 1988 there were 4,301 admissions to provincial custody; of these, 2,912 were sentenced.

**Education.** Public education in Nova Scotia is free, compulsory and undenominational through elementary and high school. Attendance is compulsory to the age of 16. In addition to 534 public schools there are the Atlantic Provinces Resource Centres for the Hearing Handicapped and for the Visually Impaired; the Shelburne Youth Centre for young offenders and the Nova Scotia Residential Centre for delinquent children; and the Nova Scotia Youth Training Centre for mentally handicapped children. The province has 19 universities, colleges and technical institutions, of which the largest is Dalhousie University in Halifax. The Nova Scotia Agricultural College and the Nova Scotia Teachers' College are located at Truro. The Technical University of Nova Scotia at Halifax grants degrees in engineering and architecture.

The Department of Vocational and Technical Training administers 2 institutes of technology and a nautical institute. It also provides in-school training for the Department of Labour Apprenticeship programme.

The Nova Scotia government offers financial support and organizational assistance to local school boards for provision of weekend and evening courses in academic and avocational subjects, and citizenship for new Canadians. It also provides local authorities with specialist support services to assist them in providing community workshops and it operates a correspondence study service for children and adults.

Occupational courses at the high school level are provided by 14 regional vocational schools under the jurisdiction (except in 3 school areas) of the Department of Vocational and Technical Training in the public school system.

Total estimated expenditure on education for the year 1987 was \$653.8m., of which 81% was borne by the provincial government. In 1987-88, classrooms operated in 534 schools, with 10,414 teachers and 169,231 pupils.

### Further Reading

- Nova Scotia Fact Book*. N.S. Department of Development, Halifax, 1986  
*Nova Scotia Resource Atlas*. N.S. Department of Development, Halifax, 1986  
 Atlantic Provinces Economic Council. *The Atlantic Vision*, 1990. Halifax, 1979  
 Public Archives of Nova Scotia. *Place Names and Places of Nova Scotia*. Halifax, 1967  
 Beck, M., *The Evolution of Municipal Government in Nova Scotia, 1749-1973*. 1973  
 Fergusson, C. B., *Nova Scotia in Encyclopedia Canadiana*, Vol. VII. Toronto, 1968  
 Hamilton, W. B., *The Nova Scotia Traveller*. Toronto, 1981  
 McCormick, P., *A Guide to Halifax*. Tantallon, 1984  
 McCreath, P. and Leefe, J., *History of Early Nova Scotia*. Halifax, 1982  
 Vaison, R., *Nova Scotia Past and Present: A Bibliography and Guide*. Halifax, 1976

## ONTARIO

**HISTORY.** The French explorer Samuel de Champlain explored the Ottawa River from 1613. The area was governed by the French, first under a joint stock company and then as a royal province, from 1627 and was ceded to Great Britain in 1763. A constitutional act of 1791 created there the province of Upper Canada, largely to accommodate loyalists of English descent who had immigrated after the United States war of independence. Upper Canada entered the Confederation as Ontario in 1867.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area is about 412,582 sq. miles (1,068,630 sq. km), of which some 344,100 sq. miles (891,200 sq. km) are land area and some 64,490 sq. miles (189,196 sq. km) are lakes and fresh water rivers.

The province extends 1,050 miles (1,690 km) from east to west and 1,075 miles (1,730 km) from north to south.

Ontario is bounded on the north by the waters of Hudson and James Bay, on the east by Quebec, on the west by Manitoba, and on the south by the states of New York, Pennsylvania, Ohio, Michigan, Wisconsin and Minnesota.

The population of the province (census, 1 June 1981) was 8,625,107. Estimate (1985) 9.1m. Population of the principal cities (1985): Hamilton, 307,690 (city), 421,264 (metropolitan area); Kitchener, 147,439 (city), 287,801 (census metropolitan area); London, 276,000 (city); Ottawa (federal capital), 304,448 (city), 562,782 (census metropolitan area); Sudbury, 90,453 (city), 154,387 (regional municipality); Toronto (provincial capital), 606,247 (city), 2,998,947 (census metropolitan area); Windsor, 195,028 (city).

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** A temperate continental climate, but conditions are quite severe in winter, though proximity to the Great Lakes has a moderating influence on temperatures. Ottawa, Jan. 12°F (-11.1°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 35" (871 mm). Toronto, Jan. 23°F (-5°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 33" (815 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The provincial government is administered by a Lieut.-Governor, a cabinet and one chamber elected by a general franchise for a period of 5 years. Women were granted the right to vote and be elected to the chamber in 1917. The minimum voting age is 18 years.

In Aug. 1987 the provincial legislature was composed as follows: Progressive Conservatives, 51; Liberals, 51; New Democrats, 23; total 125.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Right Hon. Lincoln M. Alexander, PC, QC (appointed Sept. 1985).

*Flag:* The British Red Ensign with the shield of Ontario in the fly.

The members of the Executive Council in Oct. 1988 were as follows (all Liberals):

*Premier and President of the Council and Minister of Intergovernmental Affairs:* Hon. David Peterson.

*Deputy Premier, Treasurer and Minister of Economics:* Hon. Robert F. Nixon. *Agriculture and Food:* Hon. Jack Riddell. *Attorney-General and Minister for Native Affairs:* Hon. Ian G. Scott, QC. *Citizenship, Race Relations and The Ontario Human Rights Commission:* Hon. Gerry Phillips. *Colleges and Universities:* Hon. Lyn McLeod. *Community and Social Services:* Hon. John Sweeney. *Consumer and Commercial Relations:* Hon. William Wrye. *Correctional Services:* Hon. David Ramsay. *Culture and Communications:* Hon. Lyn Munro. *Education:* Hon. Chris Ward. *Energy:* Hon. Robert Wong. *Environment:* Hon. James Bradley. *Financial Institutions and Chairman of Management Board of Cabinet:* Hon. Murray Elston. *Government Services:* Hon. Richard Patten. *Health:* Hon. Elinor Caplan. *Housing:* Hon. Chaviva Hosek. *Industry, Trade and Technology:* Hon. Monte Kwinter. *Labour and Women's Issues:* Hon. Gregory Sorbara. *Mines:* Hon. Sean Conway. *Municipal Affairs:* Hon. John Eakins. *Natural Resources:* Hon. Vincent Kerrio. *Northern Development:* Hon. Rene Fontaine. *Revenue and Francophone Affairs:* Hon. Bernard Grandmaitre. *Skills Development:* Hon. Alvin Curling. *Solicitor General:* Hon. Joan Smith. *Tourism and Recreation:* Hon. Hugh O'Neil. *Transportation:* Hon. Ed Fulton. *Ministers Without Portfolio:* Hon. Remo Mancini, Hon. Mavis Wilson.

*Local Government.* Local government in Ontario is divided into two branches, one covering municipal institutions and the other education.

The present municipal system dates from The Municipal Corporations Act en-

acted by The Province of Canada in 1849. It has been considerably modified in recent years with the creation of the Municipality of Metropolitan Toronto in 1954 and the launching of the Government of Ontario's local government restructuring programme in 1968. Generally, there are two levels of municipal government in Ontario. The upper level consists of 27 counties plus 12 restructured regional municipalities. The local level comprises more than 800 cities, towns and townships. Cities in the traditional county system function independently of the county in which they lie, as do 4 towns which have been separated for municipal purposes. There are no separated municipal units in regional governments.

Ontario's local municipalities are governed by councils elected by popular vote.

A city council usually consists of a mayor, aldermen and, sometimes, an executive committee known as a board of control.

Councils of towns, villages and townships usually consist of a mayor, reeve, deputy reeve, councillors and, in the case of the newer regional municipalities, one or more regional councillors who represent the area municipalities on the regional council.

County and regional government councils are federated assemblies.

A county council consists of the Reeves and deputy Reeves of the towns, villages and townships. The head of the county council is the warden, who is elected by the council from among its own members.

A regional council consists of the heads of council of the local municipalities, as well as a varying number of regional councillors, who are elected on the basis of representation, either directly or indirectly. The head of the regional council is the chairman who is elected by council but who, unlike a county warden, need not have been a council member.

No municipality in Ontario may incur long-term debts without the sanction of the tribunal created by the Provincial Legislature and known as the Ontario Municipal Board. Debenture obligations incurred by municipalities for utility undertakings (water-works and electric light and power systems) are discharged ordinarily out of revenues derived from the sale of utility services and do not fall upon the ratepayers.

Municipal councils have no jurisdiction for education beyond the collection of taxes for school purposes. Responsibility for providing, operating and maintaining school facilities, and for the supply of teachers, rests with local education authorities known as Boards of Education or School Boards. These Boards are now generally organized on a county or regional basis. Apart from some of the larger cities, local municipal school boards no longer exist.

Municipal institutions come under the jurisdiction of the Provincial Ministry of Intergovernmental Affairs. One of the principal functions of the Ministry is to advise and assist municipalities on such matters as accounting, reporting, auditing, budgeting and planning. Educational support and guidance at the provincial level is the responsibility of the Ministry of Education, which deals with the training of teachers and the formulation of curriculum. (At the university and community college level, education support services are provided by the Ministry of Colleges and Universities.)

There are considerable areas in the northernmost parts of Ontario where as yet there is little or no settlement of population. In such areas no municipal organization exists, and control for all purposes over such areas remains in the hands of the Provincial Government.

**FINANCE.** The gross revenue and expenditure and the net cash requirements (in Canadian \$1,000) for years ending 31 March were as follows:

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Gross revenue	21,313	23,765	26,228	28,454	33,866
Gross expenditure	24,553	26,430	32,562	31,031	34,846
Net cash requirement	2,289	1,701	2,134	1,544	980

Gross revenue and expenditure figures include all non-budgetary transactions, *i.e.*, the lending and investment activity of the Government to Crown corporations, agencies and municipalities as well as the repayment of these loans or recovery of investments. Transactions on behalf of Ontario Hydro are excluded.



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity** (1987). Ontario Hydro recorded for the calendar year an installed generating capacity of 30,701 m. kw. and a net energy output generated and purchased of 132,970 m. kwh.

**Minerals** (1987). The total value of shipments from mines was \$5,700m. Important commodities (in \$1m.) were: Nickel, 902; copper, 675; uranium, 509; gold, 1,029; zinc, 412. The mining industry employed about 24,148 people in 1987.

**Agriculture**. In 1987, 3.5m. hectares were under field crops with total farm receipts of \$5,484m.

**Forestry**. According to the most recent inventory (1985) the total area of productive forest is 39.9m. hectares, comprising: Softwoods, 26.3m.; hardwoods, 13.6m. The growing stock equals 5,102m. cu. metres. The estimated value of shipments by the forest products industry (including logging) was (1987) \$9,925m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry** (1988). Ontario is Canada's most highly industrialized province. About 73% of value added in commodity-producing industries is accounted for by manufacturing. Construction is next with 10%.

In 1987, the labour force was 5m. Total labour income was \$124,624m. The 1987 Gross Provincial Product (GPP) was \$204,411m.

The leading manufacturing industries are motor vehicles and parts, iron and steel, meat and meat preparations, dairy products, paper and paperboard, chemical products, petroleum and coal products, machinery and equipment, metal stamping and pressing and communications equipment.

**Trade**. In 1987 Ontario exported 51.9% (\$62,593m.) of Canada's total foreign trade.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads**. There were, in 1986, 154,680.3 km of roads. Motor licences (on the road) numbered (1986) 6.6m., of which 4.3m. were passenger cars, 946,145 commercial vehicles, 26,661 buses, 918,699 trailers, 144,643 motor cycles and 237,806 snow vehicles.

**Railways**. The provincially-owned Ontario Northland Railway has about 550 miles of track and the Algoma Central Railway 325 miles. The Canadian National and Canadian Pacific Railways operate a total of about 9,500 miles in Ontario. There is a metro and tramway network in Toronto.

**Post** (1985). Telephone service is provided by 30 independent systems (178,527 telephones) and Bell Canada (10m. telephones).

**EDUCATION**. There is a complete provincial system of elementary and secondary schools as well as private schools. In 1987 publicly financed elementary and secondary schools had a total enrolment of 1,829,874 pupils.

In 1965 Ontario established Colleges of Applied Arts and Technology (CAATS). There are now 22 of these publicly owned colleges with full-time enrolment (1987) of 95,929 in full-time academic courses.

The University of Toronto, founded in 1827 (full-time enrolment, 1987, 35,678), and 14 other major universities (total full-time enrolment, 1987, 182,848), all receive provincial grants. The general expenditure of the provincial ministries of education and colleges and universities for the fiscal year ending 31 March 1988 was \$6,490m.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information*: Annual publications of the Ontario Ministry of Treasury and Economics include: *Ontario Statistics*; *Ontario Budget*; *Public Accounts*; *Financial Report*.

Guillet, E. C., *Pioneer Days in Upper Canada*. Toronto, 1933

McDonald, D. C. (ed.) *The Government and Politics of Ontario*. 2nd ed. Toronto, 1980

Middleton, J. E., *The Province of Ontario: A History 1615-1927*. Toronto, 1927, 4 vols.

Schull, J., *Ontario since 1867*. Toronto, 1978

## PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND

**HISTORY.** The earliest discovery of the island is not satisfactorily known, but the first recorded visit was by Jacques Cartier in 1534, who named it Isle St-Jean; it was first settled by the French, but was taken from them in 1758. It was annexed to Nova Scotia in 1763, and constituted a separate colony in 1769. Prince Edward Island entered the Confederation on 1 July 1873.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The province, which is the smallest in Canada, lies in the Gulf of St Lawrence, and is separated from the mainland of New Brunswick and Nova Scotia by Northumberland Strait. The area of the island is 2,185 sq. miles (5,660 sq. km). Total population (census, 1986), 126,646; (estimate, 1988), 128,700. Population of the principal cities: Charlottetown (capital), 15,776; Summerside, 8,020.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** The cool temperate climate is affected in winter by the freezing of the St. Lawrence, which reduces winter temperatures. Charlottetown. Jan. 19°F (-7.2°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,077 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The provincial government is administered by a Lieut.-Governor-in-Council (Cabinet) and a Legislative Assembly of 32 members who are elected for up to 5 years. In Nov. 1988, parties in the Legislative Assembly were: Liberals, 22; Progressive Conservatives, 9; vacant, 1.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Lloyd G. MacPhail (sworn in 1 Aug. 1985).

*Flag:* A banner of the arms, *i.e.*, a white field bearing 3 small trees and a larger tree on a compartment, all green, and at the top a red band with a golden lion; on 3 sides a border of red and white rectangles.

*Premier and President of Executive Council:* Hon. Joseph A. Ghiz, QC.

*Finance and Community and Cultural Affairs:* Hon. Gilbert R. Clements. *Energy and Forestry:* Hon. Allison Ellis. *Industry:* Hon. Leonce Bernard. *Fisheries:* Hon. Johnny Ross Young. *Transportation and Public Works:* Hon. Robert Morrissey. *Education:* Hon. Betty Jean Brown. *Agriculture:* Hon. Tim Carroll. *Justice and Attorney-General and Labour:* Hon. Wayne Cheverie. *Tourism and Parks:* Hon. Gordon MacInnis. *Health and Social Services:* Hon. Keith Milligan.

*Local Government.* The Municipalities Act, 1983, provides for the incorporation of Towns and Communities. The City of Charlottetown and the town of Summerside are incorporated under private Acts of the Legislature.

**FINANCE.** Revenue and expenditure (in Canadian \$) for 5 financial years ending 31 March:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	432,222,600	446,850,500	486,328,400	522,352,800	577,597,600
Expenditure	440,300,700	450,806,600	509,642,900	532,090,200	583,484,900

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power is supplied to 100% of the population. The province's net generated and purchased consumption of electricity during 1986 was 607.6m. kwh. In 1988, peak demand for electricity was 126.9 mw. In 1977 the province completed the laying of an undersea power cable which links the island with New

Brunswick and the Maritime Power Grid. In 1980, 30 miles of additional 138 kv transmission line was added to the PEI system. In 1986, about 98% of power requirements were supplied through this system.

**Agriculture.** Total area of farms occupied approximately 673,196 acres in 1986 out of the total land area of 1,399,040 acres. Farm cash receipts in 1987 were \$216m. with cash receipts from potatoes accounting for 38% of the total. Cash receipts from dairy products, cattle and hogs followed in importance. The land in forest covered 700,000 acres in 1986 and total value of forest products sold in 1986 was about \$7m. For particulars of agricultural production and livestock, *see under CANADA*, pp. 284-85.

**Fisheries.** The fishery in 1987 had a landed value of \$73m. Lobsters and shellfish accounted for 80% of the total. Value of groundfish landings accounted for 10.3%; pelagic and estuarial, 6.7%; Irish moss, 3%.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Value of manufacturing shipments for all industries in 1987 was \$341.7m.

**Commerce.** Average personal income rose from \$12,031 in 1986 to \$13,134 in 1987. The average weekly wage (industrial aggregate) rose from \$348.50 in 1986 to \$362.49 in 1987. The labour force averaged 60,000 in 1987, while employment averaged 52,000.

In 1984, provincial GDP for manufacturing was \$78.9m.; construction, \$56m. In 1987, total value of retail trade was \$640.6m.

**Tourism.** The value of the tourist industry was estimated at \$82.3m. in 1987 with 233,940 tourist parties.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The province has a total of 5,280 km of road, including 3,725 km of paved highway.

**Railways.** Rail service is provided over 235 miles of track within the province and connects with the national railways system *via* the New Brunswick-Prince Edward Island ferry service.

**Aviation.** In 1987 air service for passengers, mail and cargo provided 15 flights daily in each direction between the province and various points in eastern Canada. A daily bus service operates between various centres in the province as well as to the mainland.

**Shipping.** A ferry service provides rail and highway communication with New Brunswick by means of 4 large ferries, 2 of which are powerful ice-breakers. Another ferry service employing 2 ferries plus an additional 2 for summertime operates between the province and Nova Scotia throughout the season of open navigation. A third ferry service employing 1 ferry operates between the province and Magdalen Islands, Quebec, during the open navigation season.

**Post.** In 1987 there were approximately 86,547 telephones.

**EDUCATION (1987-88).** Under the regional school boards there are 66 public schools, 1,394 teaching positions, 24,335 students. There is one undergraduate university (over 1,837 full-time students), and a college of applied arts and technology (2,181 full-time students), both in Charlottetown. Total expenditure on education in the year ending 31 March 1988 was \$124,759,700.

## Further Reading

Baldwin, D. O., *Abegweit: Land of the Red Soil*. Charlottetown, 1985

Bolger, F. W. P., *Canada's Smallest Province*. Charlottetown, 1973

Clark, A. H., *Three Centuries and the Island*. Toronto, 1959

Hocking, A., *Prince Edward Island*. Toronto, 1978

MacKinnon, F., *The Government of Prince Edward Island*. Toronto, 1951



## QUEBEC—QUÉBEC

**HISTORY.** Quebec was formerly known as New France or Canada from 1534 to 1763; as the province of Quebec from 1763 to 1790; as Lower Canada from 1791 to 1846; as Canada East from 1846 to 1867, and when, by the union of the four original provinces, the Confederation of the Dominion of Canada was formed, it again became known as the province of Quebec (Québec).

The Quebec Act, passed by the British Parliament in 1774, guaranteed to the people of the newly conquered French territory in North America security in their religion and language, their customs and tenures, under their own civil laws.

In the referendum held 20 May 1980, 59.5% voted against and 40.5% for 'separatism'.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of Quebec (as amended by the Labrador Boundary Award) is 1,667,926 sq. km (594,860 sq. miles), of which 1,315,134 sq. km is land area and 352,792 sq. km water. Of this extent, 911,106 sq. km represent the Territory of Ungava, annexed in 1912 under the Quebec Boundaries Extension Act. The population (census 1986) was 6,532,461.

Principal cities (1986): Quebec (capital), 164,580; Montreal, 1,015,420; Laval, 284,164; Sherbrooke, 74,438; Verdun, 60,246; Hull, 58,722; Trois-Rivières, 50,122.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** Cool temperate in the south, but conditions are more extreme towards the north. Winters are severe and snowfall considerable, but summer temperatures are quite warm. Rain occurs at all seasons. Quebec. Jan. 10°F (−12.2°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,008 mm). Montreal. Jan. 11°F (−11.7°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 30" (776 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** There is a Legislative Assembly consisting of 122 members, elected in 122 electoral districts for 4 years. At the provincial general elections held 2 Dec. 1985, Liberals won 99 seats and *Parti Québécois*, 23. The Liberal Party was led by Robert Bourassa who failed to win a seat but did so at a subsequent by-election on 20 Jan. 1986.

*Lieut.-Governor:* The Hon. Gilles Lamontagne.

*Flag:* The Fleurdelysé flag, blue with a white cross, and in each quarter a white fleur-de-lis.

Senior members of the Executive Council as in Dec. 1988, were as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Robert Bourassa.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Cultural Affairs:* Lise Bacon. *Finance:* Gérard D. Lévesque. *Education:* Claude Ryan. *Justice:* Gil Rémillard.

*General-delegate in London:* Reed Scowen (59 Pall Mall, London SW1Y 5JH).

*General-delegate in New York:* Léo Paré (17 West 50th St., Rockefeller Center, New York 10020).

*General-delegate in Paris:* Jean-Louis Roy (66 Pergolèse, Paris 75116).

### ECONOMY

**Budget.** Ordinary revenue and expenditure (in Canadian \$1,000) for fiscal years ending 31 March:

	1982-83	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87
Revenue	19,210,266	21,410,969	23,310,027	24,080,778	25,646,247
Expenditure	22,259,296	24,523,514	25,542,499	27,222,178	28,465,454

The total net debt at 31 March 1987 was \$24,051,417,000.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Water power is one of the most important natural resources of the province of Quebec. Its turbine installation represents about 40% of the aggregate of Canada. At the end of 1986 the installed generating capacity was 32,599 mw. Production, 1987, was 148,261 gwh.

**Minerals** (1987). The estimated value of the mineral production (metal mines only) was \$2,665,558,000. Chief minerals: Iron ore, (confidential); copper, \$120,344,000; gold, \$576,739,000; zinc, \$105,296,000.

The second major iron-ore development in northern Quebec is, like the one at Knob Lake which gave birth to Schefferville, based on the Quebec-Labrador Trough which extends from Lac Jeannine to the northern tip of Ungava peninsula. The port of Sept-Iles and the railway connecting it with Schefferville allow easy shipment to the furnaces and steel mills of Canada, the USA and Europe.

Non-metallic minerals produced include: Asbestos (\$166,377,000; about 71% of Canadian production), titane-dioxide (confidential), industrial lime, dolomite and brucite, quartz and pyrite. Among the building materials produced were: Stone, \$200,172,000; cement, \$227,340,000; sand and gravel, \$62,642,000; lime, (confidential).

**Agriculture.** In 1987 the total area (estimate) of the principal field crops was 2,001,200 hectares. The yield of the principal crops was (1987 in 1,000 tonnes):

<i>Crops</i>	<i>Yield</i>	<i>Crops</i>	<i>Yield</i>
Tame hay	6,500	Fodder corn	2,000
Oats for grain	232	Maize for grain	1,410
Potatoes	410	Barley	457
Mixed grains	75	Buckwheat	15

The farm cash receipts from farming operations estimated in 1987 amounted to \$3,265,126,000. The principal items being: Livestock and products, \$2,427,516,000; crops, \$521,386,000; dairy supplements payments, \$132,069,000, forest and maple products, \$81,470,000.

**Forestry.** Forests cover an area of 764,279 sq. km. About 556,044 sq. km are classified as productive forests, of which 652,956 sq. km are provincial crown land and 108,992 sq. km are privately owned. Quebec leads the Canadian provinces in pulp-wood production, having nearly half of the Canadian estimated total.

In 1985 production of lumber was softwood and hardwood, 9,919,931 cu. metres; woodpulp, 6,029,681 tonnes.

**Fisheries.** The principal fish are cod, herring, red fish, lobster and salmon. Total catch of sea fish, 1987, 95,469 tonnes, valued at \$122,224,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1985 there were 10,563 industrial establishments in the province; employees, 480,742; salaries and wages, \$11,797,245,000; cost of materials, \$38,607,566,000; value of shipments, \$65,921,129,000. Among the leading industries are petroleum refining, pulp and paper mills, smelting and refining, dairy products, slaughtering and meat processing, motor vehicle manufacturing, women's clothing, saw-mills and planing mills, iron and steel mills, commercial printing.

**Commerce.** In 1987 the value of Canadian exports through Quebec custom ports was \$19,838,776,000; value of imports, \$19,714,149,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 58,045 km of roads and 3,650,242 registered motor vehicles.

**Railways.** There were (1985) 4,507 km of railway. There is a metro system in Montreal.

**Aviation.** In 1987 Quebec had 2 international airports, Dorval (Montreal) with landing runway of 8.4 km and Mirabel (Montreal) with 7.3 km.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephones numbered 3,296,084 in 1986 and there were 35 television and 116 radio stations.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 10 French- and 2 English-language daily newspapers.

**EDUCATION.** The province has 7 universities: 3 English-language universities, McGill (Montreal) founded in 1821, Bishop (Lennoxville) founded in 1845 and the Concordia University (Montreal) granted a charter in 1975; 4 French-language universities: Laval (Quebec) founded in 1852, Montreal University, opened in 1876 as a branch of Laval and became independent in 1920, Sherbrooke University founded in 1954 and University of Quebec founded in 1968.

In 1986-87 there were 114,921 full-time university students and 118,999 part-time students.

In 1986-87, in pre-kindergartens, there were 6,457 pupils; in kindergartens, 93,597; primary schools, 578,933; in secondary schools, 457,477; in colleges (post-secondary, non-university), 158,796; and in classes for children with special needs, 124,421. The school boards had a total of 60,026 teachers.

Expenditure of the Departments of Education for 1986-87, \$7,109,668,000 net. This included \$1,176,321,000 for universities, \$4,384,786,000 for public primary and secondary schools, \$220,115,000 for private primary and secondary schools and \$986,659,000 for colleges.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Quebec Bureau of Statistics was established in 1912. The Bureau, which reports to the Finance Dept. since March 1983, collects, compiles and distributes statistical information relative to Quebec. *Director:* Nicole Gendreau.

A statistical information list is available on request. Among the most important publications are: *Le Québec Statistique, Statistiques* (quarterly), *Comptes économiques du Québec* (annual), *Perspectives démographiques* (annual), *Situation démographique* (annual), *Commerce international du Québec* (annual), *Investissements privés et publics* (annual).

Baudoin, L., *Le Droit civil de la province de Québec*. Montreal, 1953

Blanchard, R., *Le Canada-français*. Paris, 1959

Hamelin, J., *Histoire du Québec*. St-Hyacinthe, 1978

Jacobs, J., *The Question of Separatism: Quebec and the Struggle for Sovereignty*. London, 1981

McWhinney, E., *Quebec and the Constitution*. Univ. of Toronto Press, 1979

Ouellet, F., *Histoire de la Chambre de Commerce de Québec, 1809-1959*. Québec, 1959

Raynauld, A., *Croissance et structure économiques de la province de Québec*. Québec, 1961

Trofimenko, S. M., *Action Française*. Univ. of Toronto Press, 1975

Wade, F. M., *The French Canadians, 1760-1967*. Toronto, 1968.—*Canadian Dualism: Studies of French-English Relations*. Quebec-Toronto, 1960

## SASKATCHEWAN

**HISTORY.** Saskatchewan derives its name from its major river system, which the Cree Indians called 'Kis-is-ska-tche-wan', meaning 'swift flowing'. It officially became a province when it joined the Confederation on 1 Sept. 1905.

In 1670 King Charles II granted to Prince Rupert and his friends a charter covering exclusive trading rights in 'all the land drained by streams finding their outlet in the Hudson Bay'. This included what is now Saskatchewan. The trading company was first known as The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England; later as the Hudson's Bay Company. In 1869 the Northwest Territories was formed, and this included Saskatchewan. In 1882 the District of Saskatchewan was formed. By 1885 the North-West Mounted Police had been inaugurated, with headquarters in Regina (now the capital), and the Canadian Pacific Railway's transcontinental line had been completed, bringing a stream of immigrants to southern Saskatchewan. The Hudson's Bay Company surrendered its claim to territory in return for cash and land around the existing trading posts. Legislative government was introduced.



**AREA AND POPULATION.** Saskatchewan is bounded on the west by Alberta, on the east by Manitoba, to the north by the Northwest Territories; to the south it is bordered by the US states of Montana and North Dakota. The area of the province is 251,700 sq. miles (570,113 sq. km), of which 220,182 sq. miles is land area and 31,518 sq. miles is water. The population, 1986 census, was 1,010,198. Population of cities, 1986 census: Regina (capital), 175,064; Saskatoon, 177,641; Moose Jaw, 35,073; Prince Albert, 33,686; Yorkton, 15,574; Swift Current, 15,666; North Battleford, 14,876; Estevan, 10,161; Weyburn, 10,153; Lloydminster, 7,155; Melfort, 6,078; Melville, 5,123.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** A cold continental climate, with severe winters and warm summers. Rainfall amounts are greatest from May to Aug. Regina. Jan. 0°F (-17.8°C), July 65°F (18.3°C). Annual rainfall 15" (373 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The provincial government is vested in a Lieut.-Governor, an Executive Council and a Legislative Assembly, elected for 5 years. Women were given the franchise in 1916 and are also eligible for election to the legislature. State of parties in Oct. 1988: Progressive Conservative, 37; New Democratic Party, 26; vacant, 1.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Hon. Sylvia O. Fedoruk.

*Flag:* Green over gold, with the shield of the province in the canton, and a green and red prairie lily in the fly.

The Progressive Conservative Ministry in Oct. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Premier and Agriculture:* Grant Divine.

*Deputy Premier, Provincial Secretary, SaskPower:* Eric Berntson. *Finance, SaskTel, Saskatchewan Pension Plan:* Garry Lane. *Trade and Justice:* Bob Andrew. *Consumer and Commercial Affairs, Investment, Science and Technology:* Ray Meiklejohn. *Rural Development, Crop Insurance Corporation:* Neil Hardy. *Education, Public Service Commission:* Lorne Hepworth. *Highways and Transportation:* Grant Hodgins. *Urban Affairs, Sask Housing Corporation:* Jack Klein. *Parks, Recreation and Culture:* Colin Maxwell. *Health, Sask Forest Products Corporation:* George McLeod. *Social Services, Human Resources, Labour and Employment:* Grant Schmidt. *Energy and Mines, Saskoil:* Pat Smith. *Environment and Public Safety, Sask Water Corporation:* Herb Swan. *Economic Development and Tourism, SEDCO:* Joan Duncan.

*Agent-General in London:* Paul Rousseau, 21 Pall Mall, SW1Y 5LP.

**Local Government.** The organization of a city requires a minimum population of 5,000 persons; that of a town, 500; that of a village, 100 people. No requirements as to population exist for the rural municipality.

Cities, towns, villages and rural municipalities are governed by elected councils, which consist of a mayor and 6–20 aldermen in a city; a mayor and 6 councillors in a town; a mayor and 2 other members in a village; a reeve and a councillor for each division in a rural municipality (usually 6).

**FINANCE.** Budget and net assets (years ending 31 March) in Canadian \$1,000:

	1985–86	1986–87	1987–88	1988–89
Budgetary revenue	3,048,650	3,358,742	3,202,508	3,607,683
Budgetary expenditure	3,396,230	3,747,892	3,779,743	3,935,896

**ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES.** Agriculture used to dominate the history and economics of Saskatchewan, but the 'prairie province' is now a rapidly developing mining and manufacturing area. It is a major supplier of oil; has the world's largest deposits of potash; and net value of non-agricultural production accounts for (1987) 89.2% of the provincial economy.

**Electricity.** The Saskatchewan Power Corporation generated 12,822m. kwh. in 1987.

**Minerals.** The 1987 mineral sales were valued at \$3,263,200,000, including (in \$1m.): Petroleum, 1,517.1; natural gas, 170.6; coal and others, 105.1; gold, 20; silver, ...; copper, 4.4; zinc, 1; potash, 727.2; salt, 20; uranium, 637.5; sodium sulphate, 21.8.

**Agriculture.** Saskatchewan normally produces about two-thirds of Canada's wheat. Wheat production in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes), was 19,139 from 20.5m. acres; oats, 709 from 800,000 acres; barley, 3,963 from 3.8m. acres; rye, 248.5 from 400,000 acres; rapeseed, 1,542 from 2.6m. acres; flax, 318 from 600,000 acres. Livestock (1 July 1988): Cattle and calves, 2.15m.; swine, 845,000; sheep and lambs, 51,000. Poultry in 1987: Chickens, 13,428,000; turkeys 774,000. Cash income from the sale of farm products in 1987 was \$4,237m. At the June 1986 census there were 63,431 farms in the province, each being a holding of 1 acre or more with sales of agricultural products during the previous 12 months of \$250 or more.

The South Saskatchewan River irrigation project, whose main feature is the Gardiner Dam, was completed in 1967. It will ultimately provide for an area of 200,000 to 500,000 acres of irrigated cultivation in Central Saskatchewan. As of 1987, 90,000 acres are irrigated. Total irrigated land in the province, 304,000 acres.

**Forestry.** Half of Saskatchewan's area is forested, but only 115,000 sq. km are of commercial value at present. Forest products valued at \$265m. were produced in 1987. The province's first pulp-mill, at Prince Albert, went into production in 1968; its daily capacity is 1,000 tons of high-grade kraft pulp.

**Fur Production.** In 1986-87 wild fur production was estimated at \$7,577,296. Ranch-raised fur production amounted to \$196,337.

**Fisheries.** The lakeside value of the 1986-87 commercial fish catch of 3.7m. kg was \$3.1m.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1985 Saskatchewan had 791 manufacturing establishments, employing 19,245 persons. Manufacturing contributed \$1,147m., construction \$792m. to the total gross domestic product at factor cost of \$18,500m. in 1987.

**TOURISM.** An estimated 1,063,000 out of province tourists spent \$206m. in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 25,180 km of provincial highways, 207,500 km of municipal roads (including prairie trails). Motor vehicles registered totalled (1987) 805,085. Bus services are provided by 2 major lines.

**Railways.** There were (1987) approximately 12,089 km of main railway track.

**Aviation.** Saskatchewan had 2 major airports, 176 airports and landing strips in 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1988) 716 post offices (excluding sub-post offices), 82 TV and re-broadcasting stations and 50 AM and FM radio stations. 747,000 telephones were connected to the Saskatchewan Telecommunications system.

**EDUCATION.** The University of Saskatchewan was established at Saskatoon on 3 April 1907. In 1987-88 it had 13,500 full-time students, 4,000 part-time students and 1,200 full-time teaching staff. The University of Regina was established 1 July 1974; in 1987-88 it had 5,950 full-time and 3,966 part-time students and 379 full-time faculty members.

The Saskatchewan education system in 1987-88 consisted of 112 school divisions and 4 comprehensive school boards, of which 22 are Roman Catholic separate school divisions, serving 142,386 elementary pupils, 55,623 high-school students and 3,134 students enrolled in special classes. In addition, provincial

technical and vocational schools had 26,076 students enrolled in 1987. In addition there are 10 community colleges with an enrolment of approximately 79,136 students in the 1987-88 school year.

### Further Reading

Tourist and industrial publications, descriptive of the Government's programme, are obtainable from the Department of Industry and Commerce; other government publications from Government Information Services (Legislative Building, Regina).  
*Saskatchewan Economic Review*; Executive Council, Regina, Annual  
 Archer, J. H., *Saskatchewan: A History*, Saskatoon, 1980  
 Arora, V., *The Saskatchewan Bibliography*, Regina, 1980  
 Richards, J. S. and Fung, K. I. (eds.) *Atlas of Saskatchewan*, Univ. of Saskatchewan, 1969

## THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES

**HISTORY.** The Territory was developed by the Hudson's Bay Company and the North West Company (of Montreal) from the 17th century. The Canadian Government bought out the Hudson's Bay Company in 1869 and the Territory was annexed to Canada in 1870. The Arctic Islands lying north of the Canadian mainland were annexed to Canada in 1880 by Queen Victoria.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area of the Territories is 1,304,903 sq. miles (3,379,700 sq. km), divided into 5 administrative regions: Fort Smith, Inuvik, Kitikmeot, Keewatin and Baffin. The population in June 1986 was 51,384, 29,602 of whom were Inuit (Eskimo) or Dene (Indian) and Metis. When the transfer of governmental responsibility from Ottawa to the Territorial capital at Yellowknife took place in 1967, the population of Yellowknife increased by the influx of civil servants from 3,741 in 1966 to 11,077 in 1985. Main centres (June 1985): Inuvik (3,166), Fort Smith (2,468), Hay River (3,142), Iqaluit, formerly Frobisher Bay (2,954), Rankin Inlet (1,315), Cambridge Bay (902).

**CLIMATE.** Conditions range from cold continental to polar, with long hard winters and short cool summers. Precipitation is low. Yellowknife, Jan. -15°F (-26°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 10" (256 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Northwest Territories comprises all that portion of Canada lying north of the 60th parallel of N. lat. except those portions within the Yukon Territory and the Provinces of Quebec and Newfoundland: It also includes the islands in Hudson Bay, James Bay and Ungava Bay except those within the Provinces of Manitoba, Ontario and Quebec.

The Northwest Territories is governed by a Government Leader, with a 7-member cabinet and a Legislative Assembly. The Assembly is composed of 24 members elected for a 4-year term of office. A Commissioner of the Northwest Territories acts as a lieutenant-governor and is the federal government's senior representative in the Territorial government. The seat of government was transferred from Ottawa to Yellowknife when it was named Territorial capital on 18 Jan. 1967.

*Government Leader:* Dennis Patterson.

*Commissioner:* J. H. Parker.

*Flag:* Vertically, blue, white, blue, with the white of double width and bearing the shield of the Territory.

Legislative powers are exercised by the Executive Council on such matters as taxation within the Territories in order to raise revenue, maintenance of justice, licences, solemnization of marriages, education, public health, property, civil rights and generally all matters of a local nature.

The Territorial Government has assumed most of the responsibility for the administration of the Northwest Territories but political control of Crown lands and non-renewable resources still rests with the Federal Government. On 6 Sept.



1988, the Federal and Territorial Governments signed an agreement for the transfer of management responsibilities for oil and gas resources, located on- and off-shore, in the Northwest Territories to the Territorial Government. In a Territory-wide plebiscite in April 1982, a majority of residents voted in favour of dividing the Northwest Territories into two jurisdictions, east and west. Two forums for each jurisdiction have been created to develop constitutions for the proposed new territories and to negotiate a dividing boundary.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Oil and Gas.** As of Sept. 1987, 71 licences for oil and gas exploration were held for over 7.2m. hectares, of which 44 were for the mainland, 14 were for the arctic islands and 16 for the marine coast.

Crude oil is produced at Norman Wells and piped to Alberta. In 1986, oil production was 117,520 cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Metallic mineral production for the year 1986, from 7 producing mines, was valued at \$630m. The Northwest Territories produces 26.5% of Canada's lead, 23% of zinc, 12.9% of gold and 3% of Canadian silver.

**Trapping and Game.** The 180,000 pelts, furs and hides sold by Northwest Territories hunters and trappers in the 1984-85 season were valued at \$5.5m. The pelts of highest value are those of the marten, muskrat, polar bear and lynx. A herd of some 6,500 buffalo is protected in Wood Buffalo National Park. Barren ground caribou are plentiful.

**Forestry.** The principal trees are white and black spruce, jack-pine, balsam, poplar and birch. In 1985-86, 70,600 cu. metres of lumber, valued at \$2.8m., was produced.

**Fisheries.** Commercial fishing, principally on Great Slave Lake, in 1983-84 produced fish valued at \$1.7m., principally trout, arctic char and whitefish.

**CO-OPERATIVES.** There are 46 active co-operatives, including 6 housing co-operatives and one central organization to service local co-operatives, in the Northwest Territories. They are active in handicrafts, furs, fisheries, retail stores and print shops. Total revenue in 1985 was about \$31m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The Mackenzie Route connects Grimshaw, Alberta, with Hay River, Pine Point, Fort Smith, Fort Providence, Rae-Edzo and Yellowknife. The Mackenzie Highway extension to Fort Simpson and a road between Pine Point and Fort Resolution have both been opened.

Highway service to Inuvik in the Mackenzie Delta was opened in spring 1980, extending north from Dawson, Yukon as the Dempster Highway. The Liard Highway connecting the communities of the Liard River valley to British Columbia opened in 1984.

**Railways.** There is one small railway system in the north which runs from the Pine Point site and Hay River, on the south shore of Great Slave Lake, 435 miles south to Grimshaw, Alberta, where it connects with the CN Rail's main system.

**Aviation** (1979). Fourteen licensed and 1 unlicensed airports are operated by the federal Ministry of Transport and there are 17 licensed and 18 unlicensed airports operated by the Government of the Northwest Territories. Two licensed and 10 unlicensed airports are operated by private owners. Regular mail, passenger and express services are maintained throughout the Territories. A seaplane base is operated by the Ministry of Transport and there are 17 private seaplane bases. Scheduled services join major points with centres in southern Canada.

**Shipping.** A direct inland-water transportation route for about 1,700 miles is provided by the Mackenzie River and its tributaries, the Athabasca and Slave rivers. Subsidiary routes on Lake Athabasca, Great Slave Lake and Great Bear River and Lake total more than 800 miles.

**Post and Broadcasting** (1987). There were 79 post offices. The CBC northern service operated radio stations at Yellowknife, Inuvik, Frobisher Bay and Rankin Inlet. Virtually all communities of 150 or over were receiving television *via* satellite. Telephone service is provided by common carriers to nearly all communities in the Northwest Territories. Those few communities without service have high frequency or very high frequency radios for emergency use.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** In 1986–87 the Government of the Northwest Territories operated 72 schools with 769 teachers. In addition, 2 public school districts operated at Yellowknife, one Roman Catholic separate school district at Yellowknife, and one school society operated a school at Rae-Edzo. The total enrolment in grades kindergarten to 12 was 13,296 in 1986–87. Three large and 4 small residences accommodate 400 students. Free correspondence courses are available to any pupil in a settlement where appropriate instruction is not available. There is a full range of courses available in the school system: Academic, industrial arts, home economics, commercial, technical and occupational training. The continuing and special education programme provides courses and financial assistance to residents who have left the school system or are taking post high school training.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 7 hospitals in the Territories, 5 operated by the territorial government (Yellowknife, Hay River, Inuvik, Iqaluit and Fort Smith) and 2 operated by the federal government. The territorial government also operated 12 nursing stations, 2 boarding homes (Winnipeg, Montreal), 2 regional health boards (Keewatin and Kitimeot) and 1 transient centre. The federal government operated 30 nursing stations, 5 health stations and 5 health centres.

**Welfare.** Welfare services are provided by professional social workers. Facilities included (1986) for children: 13 group homes, 2 residential treatment centres, 3 secure custody facilities for young offenders and 1 receiving home, as well as 4 homes for the aged.

## Further Reading

- Annual Report of the Government of the Northwest Territories*  
*Government Activities in the North, 1983–84*. Indian and Northern Affairs, Canada  
*NWT Data Book 86–87*. Yellowknife, 1986  
 Boyle, E. and Sprudz, A., *Arctic Cooperatives, Canada 1965–68*  
 Dawson, C. A., *The New North-West*. Toronto, 1947  
 MacKay, D., *The Honorable Company*. Toronto, 1949  
 Zaslow, M., *The Opening of the Canadian North 1870–1914*. Toronto, 1971

# YUKON TERRITORY

**HISTORY.** Formerly part of the North-West Territories, Yukon was joined to the Dominion as a separate territory in 1898.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Yukon Territory is situated in the extreme north-western section of Canada and comprises 482,515 sq. km. of which 4,481 fresh water. The census population in 1981 was 23,153; 1988 (estimate), 28,725. Principal centres are Whitehorse (capital), 19,989; Watson Lake, 1,680; Dawson City, 1,650; Faro, 1,304; Mayo-Elsa, 929.

Vital statistics, *see* p. 272.

Religion, *see* p. 291.

**CLIMATE.** A cold climate, with considerable annual range of temperature and moderate rainfall. Whitehorse. Jan. 5°F (–15°C), July 56°F (13.3°C). Annual rainfall 10" (250 mm). Dawson City. Jan. –22°F (–30°C), July 57°F (13.9°C). Annual rainfall 13" (320 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Yukon Territory was constituted a separate territory in June 1898. It is governed by a 5-member Executive Council (Cabinet) appointed from the majority party in the 16-member elected Legislative Assembly. The members are elected for a 4-year term. The seat of government is at Whitehorse. A federally appointed Commissioner has the final signing authority for all legislation passed by the Assembly.

*Commissioner:* Ken McKinnon (appointed 27 March 1986)

*Flag:* Vertically green, white, blue, in the proportions 2 : 3 : 2, charged in the centre with the arms of the Territory.

The legislative authority of the Assembly includes direct taxation, education, property and civil rights, territorial civil service, municipalities and generally all matters of local or private nature. All other major administration including federal Crown lands, income tax and natural resources is federally controlled. Discussions are continuing between the federal and territorial governments on the transfer of certain federal programmes to the Yukon government. A formula financing agreement allows the Yukon government to determine how it will spend funds transferred from the federal government.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The three main sectors of the Yukon economy are government, tourism and mining. Government expenditures were \$425m. in 1986-87. The mining industry has made a strong recovery in all sectors. Curragh Resources reopened the Cyprus Anvil lead-zinc mine in 1986, employing 490 people in 1987. In 1987 gold production from Yukon's placer mines was \$63m., setting a 70 year record, and the Territory's second hardrock gold mine went into production. Hardrock gold production was \$34m., silver \$40m., lead \$106m., zinc \$197m., and exploration expenditures were \$45m. The tourism industry remains strong, benefiting from Vancouver's Expo '86. In general, in 1987 the economy had recovered strongly from the recession of 1981-85.

**Finance.** The territorial revenue and expenditure (in Canadian \$1,000) for fiscal years ended 31 March was:

	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	238,377	262,279	292,355	307,362
Expenditure	208,699	266,513	333,682	302,280

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Hydro generated power is supplied through plants at Whitehorse Rapids, Aishihik and Mayo. Thermal (diesel) generated power is supplied to several other communities. Current capacity is 78 mw hydro and 44 mw thermal generated power.

**Oil.** Dome Petroleum, Gulf, Esso Resources, Petro Canada and Shell had been exploring (1986) extensively for oil in the Beaufort Sea but the fall in oil prices has curtailed this activity.

**Minerals.** Mining remains the main industry. Lead, zinc, silver and gold are the chief minerals. Production figures for year ending 31 Dec. 1987 (provisional) in tonnes were: Lead, 100,267; zinc, 154,479; silver, 133; gold, 5. The value of mining production sales in 1987 was \$449m. (provisional).

**Agriculture.** There are areas where the climate is suitable for the production of forage crops (occupying the largest acreage and used as feed for the estimated 2,500 horses), early maturing varieties of cereals and grains and vegetables. In 1984 cereal crop and forage fertility trials were initiated and the Yukon New Crop Development Project began in 1985. In 1987 there were 29 full time and 75 part-time farmers. The total improved acreage was 5,000 acres and the estimated value of agricultural products (farm gate not retail) \$1.3m.

**Forestry.** The forests are part of the great Boreal forest region of Canada which stretches from the east coast of Canada into Alaska and north well above the Arctic



Circle. Vast areas are covered by coniferous stands in the southern portion of Yukon with white spruce and lodgepole pine forming pure stands on wet sites and in northern aspects. Deciduous species form pure stands or occur mixed with conifers throughout forest areas.

The value of forest production in 1987 was approximately \$7.2m.

**Fisheries.** Commercial fishing concentrates on chinook salmon, chum salmon, lake trout and whitefish. The value of the raw catch in 1987 was \$294,000.

**Game and Furs.** The country abounds with big game, such as moose, goat, caribou, mountain sheep and bear (grizzly and black). The fur trapping industry is considered vital to rural and remote residents and especially native people wishing to maintain a traditional lifestyle. In 1987, 26,266 pelts were taken for a market value of \$1,181,382. Lynx was the most valuable fur and made up 50.6% of the total harvest bringing in \$598,448 in revenues.

**TOURISM.** In 1987, 194,000 tourists visited Yukon and spent (estimate) \$90m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The Alaska Highway and its side roads connect Yukon's main communities with Alaska and the provinces and with adjacent mining centres. Interior roads connect the mining communities of Elsa (silver-lead), Faro (lead-zinc-silver) and Dawson City (gold) and mineral exploration properties (lead-zinc and tungsten) north of Ross River. The 727 km Dempster Highway north of Dawson City connects with Inuvik, on the Arctic coast; this highway, the first public road to be built to the Arctic ocean, was opened in Aug. 1979. The Carcross-Skagway road was opened in May 1979, providing a new access to the Pacific Ocean. There are 4,688 km of roads in the Territory, of which about 250 km are paved. The other major roads, including the Alaska Highway, have received a new surface treatment which resembles pavement and the rest are all-weather gravel of which 1,364 km are accessible during the summer months only.

**Railways.** The 176-km White Pass and Yukon Railway connected Whitehorse with year-round ocean shipping at Skagway, Alaska, but was closed in 1982. A modified passenger service was restarted in 1988 to take cruise ship tourists from Skagway to the White Pass summit and back.

**Aviation.** Commercial airlines provide regular daily services between Whitehorse, Watson Lake, Edmonton and Vancouver. Regularly scheduled air services extend from Whitehorse to interior communities of Faro, Mayo, Dawson City, Old Crow, Ross River, Watson Lake and Juneau, Alaska with connecting service to Anchorage, Seattle, Fairbanks and other points in Alaska. There are several commercial bush plane operations for charter service.

**Shipping.** The majority of goods are shipped into the Territory by truck over the Alaska and Stewart-Cassiar Highways. Some goods are shipped by barge to Skagway and Haines, Alaska, and then trucked to Whitehorse.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 3 radio stations in Whitehorse and 13 low-power relay radio transmitters operated by CBC. CHON-FM, operated by Northern Native Broadcasting Society offers 12 hours of programming, 5 days a week, and is transmitted to virtually all Yukon communities by satellite. Dawson City has its own community run radio station, CFYT, which provides 15 hours of local programming 5 days a week. There are also 12 basic cable and 6 pay-cable TV channels in Whitehorse, and private cable operations in Faro and Watson Lake. Live CBC national television is provided by the Anik satellite to virtually every community in the Territory. All telephone and telecommunications in the Territory are provided by NorthwesTel, a subsidiary of Bell Canada Enterprises. Almost all pole lines have been replaced with microwave transmission.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 2 newspapers, 1 published 5 days a week and 1 twice a week, in Whitehorse. Elsa and Dawson City both have newsletters. *Dan Sha*, a publication for native people, is a monthly.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** In Sept. 1987, the Territory had 26 schools with 319 teachers and 4,925 pupils attending classes from kindergarten to grade 12. In 1984 French schooling for francophone children was introduced. Virtually all post-secondary adult education, from trades and technical training to the first 2 years of university transfer programmes, is administered by Yukon College. In 1988 approximately 450 students were involved in full-time programmes at Yukon College, Whitehorse, while 1,200–1,400 persons were enrolled in part-time courses in Whitehorse and the rural communities. The college also operates 13 community campuses and 4 mobile classrooms. The Yukon government provides financial assistance to students requiring further education outside the territory.

**Health.** The health care system provides all residents with the care demanded by illness or accident. The federal government operates 1 general hospital at Whitehorse, 3 cottage hospitals, 2 nursing stations, with a total of 160 beds, 11 health centres and 4 health stations. The territorial government also operates a medical evacuation programme to send patients to Edmonton or Vancouver for specialized treatment not available in the Territory.

### Further Reading

*Annual Report of the Commissioner.*

Yukon Executive Council, *Statistical Review.*

Berton, P., *Klondike.* Toronto, 1963

Coults, R., *Yukon Places and Names.* Sidney, 1980

McCourt, E., *The Yukon and Northwest Territories.* Toronto, 1969

William, A. A., *The Discovery and Exploration of the Yukon.* Sidney, 1976

# CAPE VERDE

*Capital:* Praia

*Population:* 359,000 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$460 (1986)

## República de Cabo Verde

**HISTORY.** The Cape Verde Islands were discovered in 1460 by Diogo Gomes, the first settlers arriving in 1462. In 1587 its administration was unified under a Portuguese governor. The colony became an Overseas Province on 11 June 1951.

On 30 Dec. 1974 Portugal transferred power to a transitional government headed by the Portuguese High Commissioner. Full independence was granted on 5 July 1975.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Cape Verde is situated in the Atlantic Ocean 620 km WNW of Senegal and consists of 10 islands and 5 islets. Praia is the capital. The islands are divided into 2 groups, named Barlavento (windward) and Sotavento (leeward). The total area is 4,033 sq. km (1,557 sq. miles). The population (census, 1980) was 295,703. Estimate (1988) 359,000. About 600,000 Cape Verdeans live abroad.

The areas and populations (1980, census) of the islands are:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>		<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>
Santo Antão	779	43,321	Maio	269	4,098
São Vicente <sup>1</sup>	227	41,594	São Tiago	991	145,957
São Nicolau	388	13,572	Fogo	476	30,978
Sal	216	5,826	Brava	67	6,985
Boa Vista	620	3,372			
			Sotavento	1,803	188,018
Barlovento	2,230	107,685	Total	4,033	295,703

<sup>1</sup> Includes Santa Luzia which is uninhabited.

The main towns (1980 census) are Praia, the capital (37,676) on São Tiago; and Mindelo (36,746) on São Vicente. 70% of the inhabitants are of mixed origins, and another 28% are black. Crioulo serves as the common language of the islands, although the official language is Portuguese.

Vital statistics (1985): Births, 10,949; deaths, 2,804.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is arid, with a cool dry season from Dec. to June and warm dry conditions for the rest of the year. Rainfall is sparse, rarely exceeding 5" (127 mm) in the northern islands or 12" (304 mm) in the southern ones. There are periodic severe droughts. Praia. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 10" (250 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution adopted on 12 Feb. 1981 removed all reference to possible future union with Guinea-Bissau, and the *Partido Africano da Independência de Cabo Verde*, founded 20 Jan. 1981, became the sole legal party. The legislature consists of a unicameral People's National Assembly of 83 members elected for 5 years by universal suffrage; it elects the President, who appoints and leads a Council of Ministers. Elections were held on 7 Dec. 1985.

*President:* Aristides Maria Pereira (assumed office 5 July 1975; re-elected 1981 and 1986).

In Jan. 1988 the Council of Ministers comprised:

*Prime Minister, Co-operation and Planning, Finance:* Gen. Pedro Verona Rodrigues Pires.

*Foreign Affairs:* Col. Silvino Manuel da Luz. *Armed Forces and Security:* Col. Júlio de Carvalho. *Transport, Trade and Tourism:* Maj. Osvaldo Lopez da Silva. *Education:* André Corsino Tolentino. *Health, Labour and Social Welfare:* Dr



Ireneu Gomes. *Justice*: Dr José Eduardo Araújo. *Information, Culture and Sport*: Dr David Hopffer Cordeiro Almada. *Agriculture and Fisheries*: Maj. João Pereira Silva. *Local Government and Town Planning*: Tito Livio Santos de Oliveira Ramos. *Industry and Energy*: Adão Silva Rocha. *Public Works*: Adriano de Oliveira Lima. *Deputy Ministers*: Herculano Vieira (*to Prime Minister*), Dr Arnaldo Vasconcellos Franca (*Finance*). *Secretaries of State*: Virgílio Burgo Fernandes (*Trade and Tourism*), Miguel Lima (*Fisheries*), Aguiñaldo Lisboa Ramos (*Foreign Affairs*), Renato Cardoso (*Public Administration*), João de Deus Maximiano (*Assistant to Prime Minister*).

**National flag:** Horizontally yellow over green, with a vertical red strip in the hoist charged slightly above the centre with a black star surrounded by a wreath of maize, and beneath this a yellow clam shell.

**Local government:** The 2 *distritos* (Barlovento and Sotavento) are sub-divided into 14 *concelhos* – Ribeira Grande, Paúl, Porto Novo (these 3 covering Santo Antão island), São Vicente (including Santa Luzia), São Nicolau, Sal, Boa Vista, Maio, Praia, Santa Catarina, Tarrafal, Santa Cruz (these 4 covering São Tiago island), Fogo and Brava.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Popular Revolutionary Armed Forces had a strength of 1,000 in 1989. There is also a paramilitary People's Militia.

**Navy.** There are 3 fast gunboats and 3 fast attack craft (*ex-torpedo boats*), all 6 *ex-Soviet* and 1 hydrographic survey vessel. Personnel (1989) 200.

**Air Force.** An embryo air force operates two survivors of three An-26 twin-turboprop transports and has (1989) under 100 personnel.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Cape Verde is a member of UN, OAU and an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The second 5-year development plan (1985–89) is concentrated on the fishing industry and small-scale enterprises.

**Budget.** In 1984, the budget included revenue of 1,630m. escudos Caboverdianos and expenditure, 2,134.5m.

**Currency.** *Escudo Caboverdiano* of 100 *centavos*. There are coins of 20 and 50 *centavos* and of 1, 2½, 10, 20 and 50 *escudos*, and banknotes of 100,500 and 1,000 *escudos*. In March 1989, 130.39 *Escudo* = £1 and 75.76 *Escudo* = US\$1.

**Banking.** The Banco de Cabo Verde is the bank of issue and commercial bank, with branches at Praia, Mindelo and Espargos airport (Sal).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1986 amounted to 18m. kwh; capacity (1986), 14,000 kw.

**Minerals.** Salt is obtained on the islands of Sal, Boa Vista and Maio. Volcanic rock (pozzolana) is mined for export.

**Agriculture.** Mostly confined to irrigated inland valleys, the chief crops (production, 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are: Coconuts, 10; sugar-cane, 10; bananas, 4; potatoes, 3; cassava, 4; sweet potatoes, 7; maize, 12; beans, groundnuts and coffee. Bananas and coffee are mainly for export.

Livestock (1987): 65,000 goats, 13,000 cattle, 50,000 pigs and 6,000 asses.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1983 was 13,205 tonnes, of which tuna comprised 46%. About 200 tonnes of lobsters are caught annually.

**COMMERCE.** Imports in 1985 totalled 7,445m. escudos Caboverdianos, of

which 27% came from Portugal, 22% from the Netherlands; exports in 1985 totalled 462m. escudos Caboverdianos, of which 31% went to Algeria, 30% to Portugal, 14% to Italy. In 1983, expatriated earnings from Cape Verdeans abroad totalled 2,800m. escudos Caboverdianos. Exports: Fish, salt and bananas.

Total trade of Cape Verde with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	211	370	426	301	132
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,162	2,282	1,618	1,208	1,812

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 2,250 km of roads (660 km paved) in 1981 and there were 4,000 private cars and 1,343 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** Amilcar Cabral International Airport, at Espargos on Sal, is a major refuelling point on flights to Africa and South America, with 21,200 passengers disembarking and 23,106 embarking in 1982. Transportes Aéreos de Cabo Verde provides regular services to smaller airports on most of the other islands.

**Shipping.** The main ports are Mindelo and Praia. In 1982 the ports handled 371,812 tonnes of imports and 146,822 tonnes of exports. In 1986, the merchant marine comprised 25 vessels of 14,095 GRT.

**Broadcasting.** There are 2 radio stations, at Praia and Mindelo; both are government-owned. There were (1983) 46,857 radio receivers and (1984) 2,384 telephones.

**Cinemas.** In 1972 there were 6 cinemas with 2,800 seats.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a network of People's Tribunals, with a Supreme Court in Praia.

**Religion.** In 1982, over 98% of the population were Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1983 there were 57,262 pupils and 1,959 teachers at 449 primary schools, 7,262 pupils and 500 teachers at 13 preparatory schools, 3,192 pupils and 103 teachers at 3 secondary schools, and 724 students and 103 teachers at a technical school. There were 199 students and 36 teachers in 3 teacher-training colleges and about 500 students were at foreign universities.

In 1981, 49% of the adult population were literate.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 21 hospitals and dispensaries with 632 beds; there were also 51 doctors, 3 dentists, 7 pharmacists, 9 midwives and 184 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in Cape Verde

*Ambassador:* J. E. C. Macrae, CMG (resides in Dakar).

Of Cape Verde in the USA (3415 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20007)

*Ambassador:* José Luis Fernandes Lopes.

Of the USA in Cape Verde (Rua Hojl Ya Yenna 81, Praia)

*Ambassador:* Vernon D. Penner, Jr.

Of Cape Verde to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Humberto Bettencourt Santos.

## Further Reading

*Anuario Estatístico de Cabo Verde.* Praia. Annual

Andrade, E., *The Cape Verde Islands: From Slavery to Modern Times.* Dakar, 1973

Carreira, A., *The People of the Cape Verde Islands.* London, 1982

Lobban, R., *The Cape Verde Islands.* New York, 1974

# CAYMAN ISLANDS

*Capital:* George Town  
*Population:* 23,700 (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$9,000 (1987)

**HISTORY.** The islands were discovered by Columbus on 10 May 1503 and (with Jamaica) were recognized as British possessions by the Treaty of Madrid in 1670. Grand Cayman was settled in 1734 and the other islands in 1833. They became a separate Crown Colony on 4 July 1959, administered by the same governor as Jamaica until the latter's independence on 6 Aug. 1962 when they received their own Administrator (From 1972 a governor).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Cayman Islands consist of Grand Cayman, Little Cayman and Cayman Brac. Situated in the Caribbean Sea, about 200 miles NW of Jamaica. Area, 100 sq. miles (260 sq. km). Census population of 1979, 16,677 (11,282 Caymanians by birth); estimate (1988) 23,700. The spoken language is English. The chief town is George Town, estimate (1988) 12,000. Vital statistics (1987): Births, 359; marriages, 279; deaths, 106.

The areas and populations of the islands are:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1979</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>
Grand Cayman	197	15,000	22,330
Cayman Brac	36	1,607	1,326 <sup>1</sup>
Little Cayman	26	70	70

<sup>1</sup> Census 1987.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical maritime, with a cool season from Nov. to March and temperatures some 10°F warmer for the remaining months. Rainfall averages 56" (1,400 mm) a year at George Town. Hurricanes may be experienced between July and Nov.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution came into force in Aug. 1972. The Legislative Assembly consists of the Governor (as President), 3 official members, and 12 elected members.

The Executive Council consists of the Governor (as Chairman), the 3 official members and 4 elected members elected by the elected members of the Legislative Assembly.

*Governor:* A. J. Scott, CVO, CBE.

*Flag:* British Blue Ensign with the arms of the Colony on a white disc in the fly.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue 1988, C\$79.6m.; expenditure, C\$75.7m. Public debt (31 Dec. 1987), C\$17m.; total reserves, C\$8.3m.

**Currency.** The Cayman Island dollar (C\$) is divided into 100 cents. In March 1989, £1 = 1.43 C\$; US\$1 = 0.83.

**Banking.** 524 commercial banks and trust companies held licences in 1988, which permit the holders to offer services to the public, over 30 domestically. Barclays Bank PLC has offices at George Town and Cayman Brac.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 161.4m. kwh.

**Industry.** Finance and tourism are the main industries. In 1988 16,821 companies were registered in the islands.

**Commerce.** Exports, 1987 (f.o.b.), totalled C\$2m. Imports, (c.i.f.), C\$163m.;



principally foodstuffs, manufactured items, textiles, building materials, automobiles and petroleum products.

Total trade between Cayman Islands and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	826	2,422	1,318	9,858
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,410	11,403	6,442	5,051

**Tourism.** Tourism is the chief industry of the islands, after financial services, and there were (1988) over 2,680 beds in hotels and over 2,350 in apartments, guest-houses and cottages. There were 480,792 visitors in 1987, including 209,044 by air, an increase of 26% over 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1988) about 110 miles of road and (1987) 12,709 motor vehicles.

**Aviation.** Cayman Airways provides regular services between Grand Cayman and Miami, Houston, Tampa, Atlanta and Jamaica. Eastern and Northwest Airlines provide a daily service between Miami and Grand Cayman. CAL provides a regular inter-island service. Air Jamaica also provides services between Grand Cayman and Jamaica.

**Shipping.** Motor vessels ply regularly between the Cayman Islands, Jamaica, Costa Rica and Florida. Shipping registered at George Town, 650 vessels (mid-1988).

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 16,162 telephones in 1987 and there are 2 radio broadcasting stations in the islands, with (1988) 20,000 receivers.

**Newspapers.** The *Caymanian Compass* is published 5 days a week.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Grand Court, sitting 6 times a year at George Town under a Chief Justice and 2 puisne judges. 2 Summary Courts sit at other times.

**Religion.** There are Anglican, Roman Catholic, Presbyterian and other Christian communities represented in the islands.

**Education.** In 1988 there were 10 government primary schools with 1,313 pupils, 6 private elementary schools with 910 pupils and 4 private secondary schools with 332 pupils. Post-primary education at the government high schools and the government middle school was attended by 1,917 pupils. There was also a private institution for further education and a government school for special educational needs.

**Health.** In 1988 there was a fully-equipped general hospital in George Town with 15 doctors, a dental clinic, 4 district clinics and a hospital in Cayman Brac.

## Further Reading

*Annual Report, 1987.* Cayman Islands Government, 1988

*Statistical Abstract of the Cayman Islands, 1987.* Cayman Islands Government Statistics Unit, 1988

# CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC

*Capital:* Bangui  
*Population:* 2.86m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$290 (1986)

## République centrafricaine

**HISTORY.** Central African Republic became independent on 13 Aug. 1960, after having been one of the 4 territories of French Equatorial Africa (under the name of Ubangi Shari) and from 1 Dec. 1958 a member state of the French Community. A new Constitution was adopted in 1976 and it provided for the country to be a parliamentary democracy and to be known as the Central African Empire. President Bokassa became Emperor Bokassa I. The Emperor was overthrown in a *coup* on 20–21 Sept. 1979 and the empire was abolished. On 15 March 1981 David Dacko was re-elected President but Army Chief General André Kolingba took power in a bloodless *coup* on 1 Sept. 1981 at the head of a Military Committee for National Recovery (CMRN), which held supreme power until 21 Sept. 1985 when President Kolingba dissolved it and initiated a return towards constitutional rule.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Central African Republic is bounded north by Chad, east by Sudan, south by Zaïre and Congo, and west by Cameroon. The area covers 622,436 sq. km (240,324 sq. miles); its population in 1975 (census), 2,054,610 and estimate in 1988 was 2,860,000 of which 37% urban. The capital is Bangui (596,776 inhabitants in 1988).

The areas, populations and capitals of the prefectures are as follows:

<i>Prefecture</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>
Bangui <sup>1</sup>	67	596,776	Bangui	596,776
Ombella-M'poko	31,835	137,469	Boali	...
Lobaye	19,235	174,134	M'baïki	29,495
Sangha <sup>2</sup>	19,412	62,977	Nola	...
Haute-Sangha	30,203	253,717	Berbérati	45,432
Nana-Mambere	26,600	213,630	Bouar	49,166
Ouham-Pende	32,100	258,166	Bozoum	22,600
Ouham	50,250	292,132	Bossangoa	41,877
Gribingui <sup>2</sup>	19,996	92,558	Kaga-Bandoro	19,774
Bamingui-Bangoran	58,200	31,082	Ndele	...
Vakaga	46,500	25,629	Birao	...
Kemo-Gribingui	17,204	84,884	Sibut	22,214
Ouaka	49,900	235,277	Bambari	52,092
Basse-Kotto	17,604	199,830	Mobaye	...
Haute-Kotto	86,650	57,583	Bria	24,620
M'bomou	61,150	143,971	Bangassou	36,254
Haut-M'bomou	55,530	39,560	Obo	...

<sup>1</sup> Autonomous commune.    <sup>2</sup> Economic prefecture.

French is the official language.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate with little variation in temperature. The wet months are May, June, Oct. and Nov. Bangui. Jan. 80°F (26.5°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 61" (1,525 mm). Ndele. Jan. 83°F (28.3°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 57" (1,417 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution adopted by a national referendum on 21 Nov. 1986, the sole legal political party is the *Rassemblement Démocratique Centrafricain (RDC)*. Legislative elections for the 52-member National Assembly were held on 31 July 1987. The President is elected

by popular vote for a term of 6 years, and appoints and leads a Council of Ministers.

The Council of Ministers in 1988 was composed as follows:

*President of the Republic and of the RDC, Minister of Defence and Veterans' Affairs:* Gen. André Kolingba (assumed office 1 Sept. 1981, re-elected 21 Nov. 1986).

*Foreign Affairs:* Michel Gbezerabria. *Interior, Territorial Administration:* Lieut.-Col. Christophe Grelombe. *Economy, Finance, Planning and International Co-operation:* Dieudonné Wazoua. *National and Higher Education:* Pierre Samy-Mackfoy. *Transport and Civil Aviation:* Pierre Gonifei-Gaibounanou. *Civil Service, Labour, Social Security and Professional Training:* Daniel Sehoulia. *Justice, Keeper of the Seals:* Thomas Mapouka. *Public Health and Social Affairs:* Jean Willybiro-Sako. *Rural Development:* Théodore Baga-Yambo. *Energy and Mines, Geology and Hydrology:* Lieut. Michel Salle. *Tourism, Water Resources, Forestry, Hunting and Fishing:* Raymond Mbitikon. *Trade and Industry, Small and Medium-sized Enterprises:* Timothée Marboua. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Jean-Louis Psimhis. *Public Works and Territorial Planning:* Jacques Kikhe. *Information, Arts and Culture:* David Nguindo. *Parliamentary Relations, Secretary to Council of Ministers:* Justin Ndjapou.

There are also 4 Secretaries of State.

*National flag:* Four horizontal stripes of blue, white, green, yellow; over all in the centre a vertical red strip, and in the canton a yellow star.

*Local Government:* Central African Republic is divided into 14 prefectures (subdivided into 50 sub-prefectures); 2 'economic prefectures' and the autonomous commune of Bangui (the capital).

**DEFENCE.** Selective national service for a 2-year period is in force. There are some 6,500 personnel in the armed forces and the para-military Gendarmerie.

**Army.** The Army consisted (1989) of about 3,500 men, comprising an infantry battalion, with supporting engineer, signals and transport companies. Equipment includes 4 T-55 tanks, 39 armoured personnel carriers and 10 Ferret scout cars.

**Navy.** The naval force has 9 river patrol craft and (1989) 85 personnel.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 2 Rallye Guerrier armed light aircraft, 1 twin-jet Caravelle, 1 DC-4 and 2 C-47 transports, 2 Reims-Cessna 337, 6 Aermacchi AL.60 and 5 Broussard liaison aircraft, 1 Alouette and 1 Ecureuil helicopters. It also maintains and operates the government's Caravelle and Falcon 20 twin-jet VIP aircraft. Personnel strength (1989) about 300.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Central African Republic is a member of UN, OAU and an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The new recovery plan (1983-86) provided for expenditure of 31,300m. francs CFA for development of agriculture, transport and infrastructure.

**Budget.** The budget for 1987 provided for expenditure of 56,610m. francs CFA, and for revenue of 46,230m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc CFA* with a parity of 50 *francs CFA* to 1 French *franc*. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100 and 500 *francs CFA*, and banknotes of 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *francs CFA*. In March 1989, £1 = 541.63 *francs CFA*; US\$1 = 314.72 *francs CFA*.

**Banking.** The *Banque des Etats de l'Afrique Centrale* is the bank of issue.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1987 totalled 91m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.



**Minerals.** In 1986 258,701 carats of gem diamonds, 98,678 carats of industrial diamonds and (1987) 224 kg of gold were mined. There are significant regions of uranium in the Bakouma area.

**Agriculture.** Over 86% of the working population is occupied in subsistence agriculture. The main crops (production 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are cassava, 708; groundnuts, 142; bananas, 83; plantains, 65; millet, 40; maize, 53; seed cotton, 63; coffee, 18; rice, 16.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 2,224,000; goats, 1,135,000; sheep, 116,000; pigs, 371,000.

**Forestry.** The extensive hardwood forests, particularly in the south-west, provide mahogany, obeche and limba for export. Production (1985) 3.42m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 13,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The small industrial sector includes factories producing cotton fabrics, footwear, beer and radios.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in 1 m. francs CFA:

	1981	1982	1983	1984
Imports	25,646	41,307	52,100	77,700
Exports	21,323	35,454	43,700	50,000

In 1983, France took 30% of exports and provided 46% of imports. Of all exports, coffee comprised 29% (by value), diamonds 24%, timber 19% and cotton 13%.

Total trade of Central African Republic with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,739	1,452	233	195
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,151	787	1,127	733

**Tourism.** There were about 4,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 20,286 km of roads, of which 442 km bitumenized and (1984) 46,982 vehicles in use.

**Railways.** There are no railways, but a proposal existed (1985) for an 800 km line (1,435 mm gauge) from Bangui through Cameroon and Congo to connect with the Trans-Gabon railway at Belinga.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Mpoko, near Bangui, and Berbérati. Air Centrafrique operates extensive internal services to several airstrips.

**Shipping.** Timber and barges are taken to Brazzaville (Congo).

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1982) 1,200 television and (1986) 125,000 radio receivers and 3,323 telephones.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there were 5 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there was one daily newspaper.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Criminal Court and Supreme Court are situated in Bangui. There are 16 high courts throughout the country.

**Religion.** About 57% of the population follow animist beliefs, 20% are Roman Catholic, 15% Protestant and 8% Moslem.

**Education.** The University of Bangui was founded in 1970 and had 1,489 students in 1980. In 1985 there were 308,022 pupils at primary schools and 52,787 at secondary schools; technical schools (1982) held 1,325 students, while 327 were at the 2 teacher-training establishments.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 104 hospitals and health centres with 3,774 beds; there were also 112 doctors, 6 dentists, 16 pharmacists, 168 midwives and 710 nursing personnel.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Central African Republic in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Christophe Maïdou (resides in Paris).

Of Great Britain in Central African Republic

*Ambassador:* M. Reith (resides in Yaoundé).

Of Central African Republic in the USA (1618 22nd St., NW, Washington, D.C. 20008)

*Ambassador:* Christian Lingama-Toleque.

Of the USA in Central African Republic (Ave. President Dacko, Bangui)

*Ambassador:* David C. Fields.

Of Central African Republic to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Christian Lingama-Toleque.

### Further Reading

Kalek, H. P., *Historical Dictionary of the Central African Republic*. Metuchen, 1980

# CHAD

*Capital:* N'djaména

*Population:* 5.4m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$88 (1984)

## République du Tchad

**HISTORY.** France proclaimed a protectorate over Chad on 5 Sept. 1900, and in July 1908 the territory was incorporated into French Equatorial Africa. It became a separate colony March 1920, and in 1946 one of the four constituent territories of French Equatorial Africa. On 28 Nov. 1958 Chad became an autonomous republic within the French Community and achieved full independence on 11 Aug. 1960, although the northern prefecture of Borkou-Ennedi-Tibesti remained under French military administration until 1965.

Conflicts between the central government and secessionist groups, particularly in the Moslem north and centre of Chad, began in 1965 and flared into a prolonged and confused civil war that continued under different protagonists, with occasional pauses during attempts at reconciliation. On 7 June 1982 the *Forces Armées du Nord* (FAN) led by Hissène Habré gained control of the country. In June 1983 the Libyan-backed forces of former President Goukouni Oueddei re-occupied Bourkou-Ennedi-Tibesti, but by April 1987 most of the rebels rallied to the government side, which then forced the Libyans back into the Aozou Strip, a 114,000 sq. km region in the extreme north of Chad occupied by Libyan forces since 1973. A ceasefire took effect on 11 Sept. 1987.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Chad is bounded west by Cameroon, Nigeria and Niger, north by Libya, east by Sudan and south by the Central African Republic. Area, 1,284,000 sq. km; its population in 1988 was estimated at 5,396,000 (census 1975, 4,029,917). The capital is N'djaména, formerly Fort Lamy with 511,700 inhabitants in 1986, other large towns (1985) being Sarh (124,000), Moundou (87,000), Abéché (71,000), Bongor (69,000) and Doba (64,000).

The areas, populations and chief towns of the 14 prefectures were:

<i>Préfecture</i>	<i>sq. km</i>	<i>Population Estimate 1984</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Borkou-Ennedi-Tibesti	600,350	103,000	Faya (Largeau)
Biltine	46,850	200,000	Biltine
Ouaddaï	76,240	411,000	Abéché
Batha	88,800	410,000	Ati
Kanem	114,520	234,000	Mao
Lac	22,320	158,000	Bol
Chari-Baguirmi	82,910	719,000	N'djaména
Guéra	58,950	234,000	Mongo
Salamat	63,000	121,000	Am Timan
Moyen-Chari	45,180	582,000	Sarh
Logone Oriental	28,035	350,000	Doba
Logone Occidental	8,695	324,000	Moundou
Tandjilé	18,045	341,000	Laï
Mayo-Kabbi	30,105	757,000	Bongor

The official language is French but more than 100 different languages and dialects are spoken. The largest ethnic group is the Sara of southern Chad. Arabic serves as a common language throughout the semi-tropical (Sahelian) centre and the Saharan north.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with adequate rainfall in the south, though Nov. to April are virtually rainless months. Further north, desert conditions prevail. N'djaména. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 30" (744 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** From June 1982 a State Council administered the country until 21 Oct. 1982, when Hissène Habré was sworn in as President and appointed a Council of Ministers to administer the country. A



provisional constitution had been promulgated on 29 Sept. 1982, under which a new official political party was established on 22 June 1984, the *Union nationale pour l'indépendance et la révolution* (UNIR), administered by a 15-member Executive Bureau. A National Consultative Assembly was also formed on 21 Oct. 1982, comprising 2 representatives from each of the 14 prefectures and 2 from the capital, N'djaména.

*President, Minister of Defence, Veterans and War Victims:* Hissène Habré.

*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Capt. Gouara Lassou.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of blue, yellow, red.

*Local Government:* The 14 *préfectures* are divided into 53 *sous-préfectures*.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** A new national army, the Forces Armées Nationales Tchadiennes (FANT) was formed in Dec. 1982. In 1989 the strength was over 17,000 and there was a paramilitary force of 5,700.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 3 C-130 Hercules, 1 VIP Caravelle, 1 C-54, 2 Aviocar and 6 C-47 transports, 4 Reims-Cessna F337 light aircraft, 2 Turbo-Porters, 2 Broussard communications aircraft and about 6 Gazelle and Puma helicopters. 2 armed PC-7 aircraft have recently been supplied by France. Personnel (1989) about 200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Chad is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1987 envisaged expenditure of 25,400m. francs CFA of which defence amounted to 11,800m. and revenue, 17,800m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc CFA* with a parity value of 50 *francs CFA* to 1 French *franc*. In March 1989, £1 = 514.63 *francs*; US\$1 = 314.72 *francs*.

**Banking.** The *Banque des Etats de l'Afrique Centrale* is the bank of issue, and the principal commercial banks are the *Banque de Développement du Tchad* and the *Banque Tchadienne de Crédit et de Dépôts*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) amounted to 66m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The oilfield in Kanem *préfecture* has been linked by pipeline to a new refinery at Lai (in Tandjilé) but production has remained minimal due to war disruption.

**Minerals.** Salt (about 4,000 tonnes per annum) is mined around Lake Chad, and deposits of uranium, gold and bauxite are to be exploited.

**Agriculture.** Cotton growing (in the south) and animal husbandry (in the central zone) are the most important industries. Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes) was: Millet, 600; sugar-cane, 290; yams, 219; seed cotton, 70; groundnuts, 90; cassava, 306; rice, 25; dry beans, 42; sweet potatoes, 41; mangoes, 32; dates, 33; maize, 53; cotton lint, 27; cotton seed, 40.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 5,148,000; sheep, 2.62m.; goats, 2.7m.; chickens, 4m.

**Fisheries.** Fish production from Lake Chad and the Chari and Logone rivers, was estimated at 110,000 tonnes in 1983.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Cotton ginning is the principal activity, undertaken in some 22 mills. Sugar refineries produced 23,000 tonnes in 1984. A textile factory produced 13.1m. metres of woven fabric in 1980, a brewery 130,000 hectolitres of beer and a cigarette factory 259m. cigarettes. There are also rice and flour mills and other factories involved in food processing or light industry.

**Commerce. Trade (in 1 m. francs CFA):**

	1981	1982	1983
Imports	29,349	35,701	74,802
Exports	22,665	18,968	48,563

The main trading partners are France and Nigeria. Cotton formed 91% of exports in 1983 as civil war has decimated other exporting industries.

Total trade with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	626	1,099	2,806	1,101	1,764
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,521	1,847	1,250	1,006	639

**COMMUNICATIONS**

**Roads.** In 1983 there were 40,000 km of roads, of which only 400 km are surfaced. In 1982 there were 7,000 private cars and 5,000 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport at N'djaména, from which UTA and Air Afrique run 4 flights per week to Paris; there are also flights to Douala, Bangui and Kinshasa. Air Tchad operates internal services to 12 secondary airports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1978 there were 3,850 telephones and (1983), 75,000 radios in use.

**Cinemas.** In 1977 there were 13 cinemas with 12,400 seats.

**JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE**

**Justice.** There are criminal courts and magistrates courts in N'djaména, Moundou, Sarh and Abéché, with a Court of Appeal situated in N'djaména.

**Religion.** The northern and central parts of the country are predominantly Moslem (44% of the total population) and the southern part is mainly animist (38%) or Christian (17%).

**Education.** In 1984 there were 288,479 pupils in primary schools, 43,053 in secondary schools, and 2,559 in technical schools and teacher-training establishments. The University of Chad (founded 1971) at N'djaména had (1984) 1,643 students and 141 teaching staff.

**Health.** There were 33 hospitals with 3,353 beds in 1977 and in 1978 90 doctors, 4 dentists, 9 pharmacists, 98 midwives and 993 nursing personnel.

**DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES**

Of Chad in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Abdoulaye Lamana (resides in Brussels).

Of Great Britain in Chad

*Ambassador:* M. G. Fort (resides in London).

Of Chad in the USA (2002 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Mahamat Ali Adoum.

Of the USA in Chad (Ave., Felix Eboué, N'djaména)

*Ambassador:* John Blane.

Of Chad to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mahamat Ali Adoum.

**Further Reading**

Kelley, M. P., *Conditions of the State's Survival*. Oxford, 1986

Thompson, V. and Adloff, R., *Conflict in Chad*. London and Berkeley, 1981

Westebbe, R., *Chad: Development Potential and Constraints*. Washington, D.C., 1974

# CHILE

Capital: Santiago

Population: 12.68m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$1,320 (1986)

## República de Chile

**HISTORY.** The Republic of Chile threw off allegiance to the crown of Spain, constituting a national government on 18 Sept. 1810, finally freeing itself from Spanish rule in 1818.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Chile is bounded north by Peru, east by Bolivia and Argentina, and south and west by the Pacific ocean.

Chile has an area of 736,905 sq. km (284,520 sq. miles) excluding the claimed Antarctic territory. Many islands to the west and south belong to Chile: The Islas Juan Fernández (179 sq. km with 516 inhabitants in 1982) lie about 600 km west of Valparaíso, and the volcanic Isla de Pascua (Easter Island or Rapa Nui, 118 sq. km with 1,867 inhabitants in 1982), discovered in 1722, lies about 3,000 km WNW of Valparaíso. Small uninhabited dependencies include Sala y Gómez (400 km east of Easter Is.), San Ambrosio and San Félix (1,000 km northwest of Valparaíso, and 20 km apart) and Islas Diego Ramírez (100 km SW of Cape Horn).

In 1940 Chile declared, and in each subsequent year has reaffirmed, its ownership of the sector of the Antarctic lying between 53° and 90° W. long.; and asserted that the British claim to the sector between the meridians 20° and 80° W. long. overlapped the Chilean by 27°. Seven Chilean bases exist in Antarctica. A law promulgated 21 July 1955 put the Intendente (*now* Gobernador) of the Province (*now* Region) of Magallanes in charge of the 'Chilean Antarctic Territory' which has an area of 1,269,723 sq. km. and a population (1982) 1,368.

The total population at the census in 1982 was 11,275,440. Estimate (31 March 1988) 12,683,000.

The areas of the 13 regions and their populations (census, 1982) were as follows:

Region	Sq. km	Census 1982	Capital	Estimate 1987
Tarapacá	58,786	273,427	Iquique	132,948
Antofagasta	125,253	341,203	Antofagasta	204,577
Atacama	74,705	183,071	Copiapó	70,241 <sup>1</sup>
Coquimbo	40,656	419,178	La Serena	106,617
Aconcagua	16,396	1,204,693	Valparaíso	278,762
Metropolitan	15,549	4,294,938	Santiago	4,858,342
Liberador	16,456	584,989	Rancagua	172,489
Maule	30,518	723,224	Talca	164,482
Biobío	36,939	1,516,552	Concepción	294,375
Araucanía	31,946	692,924	Temuco	217,789
Los Lagos	67,247	843,430	Puerto Montt	113,488
Aisén	108,997	65,478	Coihaique	31,167 <sup>1</sup>
Magallanes	132,034	132,333	Punta Arenas	111,724

<sup>1</sup> Census, 1982

Vital statistics (1984): Birth rate 21.2 per 1,000 population; death rate, 6.3; marriage rate, 7 (1982); infantile mortality rate, 20.1 per 1,000 live births. Life expectancy (1981): Men, 65.4 years, women, 70.1.

Over 92% of the population is mixed or *mestizo*; only about 2% are European immigrants and their descendants, while the remainder are indigenous amerindians of the Araucanian, Fuegian and Chango groups. Language and culture remain of European origin, with the 675,000 Araucanian-speaking (mainly Mapuche) Indians the only sizeable minority.

Other large towns (estimate, 1987) are: Viña del Mar (297,294), Talcahuano (231,356), Arica (169,774), San Bernardo (168,534), Puente Alto (165,534),



Chillán (148,805), Los Angeles (126,122), Osorno (122,462), Valdivia (117,205), Calama (109,645), Coquimbo (105,252) and Quilpué (103,004).

**CLIMATE.** With its enormous range of latitude and the influence of the Andean Cordillera, the climate of Chile is very complex, ranging from extreme aridity in the north, through a Mediterranean climate in Central Chile, where winters are wet and summers dry, to a cool temperate zone in the south, with rain at all seasons. In the extreme south, conditions are very wet and stormy. Santiago. Jan. 67°F (19.5°C), July 46°F (8°C). Annual rainfall 15" (375 mm). Antofagasta. Jan. 69°F (20.6°C), July 57°F (14°C). Annual rainfall 0.5" (12.7 mm). Valparaíso. Jan. 64°F (17.8°C), July 53°F (11.7°C). Annual rainfall 20" (505 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Marxist coalition government of President Salvador Allende Gossens was ousted on 11 Sept. 1973 by the 3 Armed Services and the *Carabineros* (para-military police). These forces formed a government headed by a Junta of the 4 Commanders-in-Chief. Gen. Augusto Pinochet Ugarte, Commander-in-Chief of the Army, took over the presidency. President Allende died on the day of the *coup*.

Marxist parties were outlawed and all political activities banned. The new Government assumed wide-ranging powers but the 'state of siege' ended in March 1978. A new Constitution was approved by 67.5% of the voters on 11 Sept. 1980 and came into force on 11 March 1981. It provided for a return to democracy after a minimum period of 8 years. Gen. Pinochet would remain in office during this period after which the Junta would nominate a single candidate for President.

The capital is Santiago, founded on 12 Feb. 1541.

*National flag:* Two horizontal bands, white, red, with a white star on blue square in top sixth next to staff.

*National anthem:* Dulce patria, recibe los votos (words by E. Lillo, 1847; tune by Ramón Carnicer, 1828).

The following is a list of the presidents since 1946:

Gabriel González Videla, 3 Nov. 1946–3 Nov. 1952.	Eduardo Frei Montalva, 3 Nov. 1964–3 Nov. 1970.
Carlos Ibáñez del Campo, 3 Nov. 1952–3 Nov. 1958.	Salvador Allende Gossens, 3 Nov. 1970–11 Sept. 1973 (deposed).
Jorge Alessandri Rodríguez, 3 Nov. 1958–3 Nov. 1964.	

*President of the Republic:* Gen. Augusto Pinochet Ugarte (assumed office 17 Dec. 1974).

The *Junta Militar de Gobierno* consisted in Jan. 1986 of Lieut.-Gen. Humberto Gordon (Army), Adm. José Toribio Merino Castro (Navy C.-in-C.), Gen. Rodolfo Stange (Carabineros Dir.-Gen.) and Gen. Fernando Matthei Aubel (Air Force C.-in-C.).

A plebiscite was held on 5 Oct. 1988 with President Pinochet as the candidate to be approved or rejected by the people, to continue for 8 more years. Votes against 54.6%, votes in favour 43.31%. President continues in office but in Dec. 1989 Presidential elections will take place.

The Cabinet in March 1988 was composed as follows:

*Interior:* Sergio Fernandez. *Foreign Affairs:* Ricardo García Rodríguez. *Defence:* Vice-Adm. Patricio Carvajal. *Economy, Development and Building:* Brig.-Gen. Manuel Concha. *Exchequer:* Hernán Buchi. *Education:* Juan Antonio Guzmán. *Justice:* Hugo Rosende. *Public Works:* Maj.-Gen. Bruno Siebert. *Agriculture:* Jorge Prado. *Treasury:* Jorge Veloso. *Employment and Social Welfare:* Alfonso Márquez de la Plata. *Health:* Juan Giaconi. *Mining:* Samuel Lira. *Housing and Urbanism:* Miguel Ángel Produje. *Transport and Telecommunications:* Gen. Jorge Massa. *General Secretary of State:* Orlando Poblete. *General Secretary to the Presidency:* Brig.-Gen. Sergio Valenzuela. *Planning Office:* Sergio Melnick. *Development Corporation:* Col. Guillermo Letelier. *Energy:* Lieut.-Gen. Herman Brady.

**Local Government.** For the purposes of local government the Military Junta in pursuance of its policy of administrative decentralization, has divided the republic into 13 regions (12 and Greater Santiago). Each Region is presided over by an *Intendente*, while the provinces (40) included in it are in charge of a *Gobernador* who represents the central government. The provinces are divided into municipalities under an *alcalde* (mayor). All these officials are appointed by the President.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is for a period of 2 years at the age of 19.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 6 divisions, each with infantry, armoured cavalry, artillery and engineer regiments; and 1 helicopter-borne ranger unit. Equipment includes 150 M-4A3 and 21 AMX-30 tanks, 110 light tanks and 300 armoured cars. The service operates over 50 aircraft including 6 Aviocar transports, 20 Puma, 2 Super Puma, 2 Iroquois, 2 Jet Ranger and 10 Lama helicopters, 4 Navajo and 3 Cessna 337 communications aircraft and 15 Cessna Hawk XP trainers. Strength (1989) 57,000 (30,000 conscripts) and 100,000 reserves.

**Navy.** The principal ships of the Chilean Navy are the 4 ex-British guided missile armed destroyers *Norfolk*, 5,440 tons standard, completed in 1970, purchased in 1982 and re-named *Prat* on transfer; *Antrim* of the same age, purchased in 1984 and re-named *Cochrane*; *Glamorgan*, completed in 1966, purchased in 1986 and re-named *Almirante Latorre* and *Fife*, completed in 1966, handed over in 1987 and re-named *Blanco Encalada*.

There are 2 modern Federal German-built small diesel-electric patrol submarines, 2 diesel powered patrol submarines (British 'Oberon' class), 4 other destroyers (2 old British built and 2 ancient *ex-US*), 2 frigates (modern British 'Leander' class, *Condell* and *Lynch*), 2 fast missile craft, 4 torpedo boats, 5 patrol vessels, 26 coastal patrol craft, 1 submarine support vessel, 3 landing ships, 2 landing craft, 1 survey ship, 4 transports, 2 training ships, 1 antarctic patrol ship, 2 harbour patrol boats, 4 oilers, 4 floating docks and 2 tugs.

The Naval Air Service has 5 squadrons: 1 with *Bandeirante*, *Westwind* and *Aviocar* transports; 1 with *Alouette* and *JetRanger* ASW helicopters; 1 with *EMB-111* and *Falcon* maritime patrol aircraft; and 2 with *Pilatus PC-7* trainers.

Naval personnel in 1988 totalled 29,000 all ranks including 5,200 marines and 500 in the maritime air service.

**Air Force.** Approximate strength (1989) is 15,000 personnel, with (1987) 105 first-line and 150 second-line aircraft, divided among 12 groups, each comprising 1 squadron, within 4 combat and support wings. Groups 1 and 12 have twin-jet A-37Bs, from a total of 34 acquired for light strike/reconnaissance duties. Group 2 is equipped for photo-reconnaissance with 2 *Canberras*. Group 4 has 14 *Mirage 50* fighters. Group 5 has 14 *Twin Otters* for light transport and survey duties. Group 7 has 12 *F-5E Tiger II* fighter-bombers and 2 *F-5F* trainers. Groups 8 and 9 are also fighter-bomber units, with a total of 30 *Hunter F.71s*, *ex-RAF FGA.9s*, and *T.72s*. Group 10 is a transport wing, with 2 *C-130H Hercules*, 2 *Boeing 707s*, 7 *Douglas* piston-engined transports and various helicopters. An aerial survey unit has 2 *Learjets* and 3 *Beech* twin-engined aircraft. Training aircraft include piston-engined *Piper Dakota* and *T-35 Pillan* basic trainers and Spanish-built *CASA C-101BB* *Aviojets*. *CASA C-101CC* *Aviojet* light strike aircraft were being delivered in 1989.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Chile is a member of the UN, OAS and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987 revenue was US\$8,469.8m. and expenditure, US\$8,421.6m.

**Currency.** In Jan. 1960 a system came into force based on the *escudo* (equivalent of 1,000 *pesos*), the *centésimo* (10 *pesos*) and the *milésimo* (1 *peso*). On 29 Sept. 1975 the currency reverted to *pesos* with a value of 1,000 *escudos* to the new *peso*.

In March 1989 there were 436.95 *pesos* = £1 and 253.89 *pesos* = US\$1.

**Banking.** There is a Central Bank and State Bank and in 1988 18 domestic and 24 foreign banks were operating.

On 31 Dec. 1987 notes and coins in circulation were 161,337m. pesos; deposits in foreign currency totalled US\$866.9m. and deposits in local currency 1,745,545m. pesos.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system has been legally established in Chile since 1865, but the old Spanish weights and measures are still in use to some extent.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1987 production of electricity was 14,821m. kwh, of which 80% hydro-electric. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Petroleum was discovered in 1945 in the southern area of Magallanes. Production (1988) 1.3m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Production (1987) 4,352.6m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** The wealth of the country consists chiefly in its minerals, especially in the northern provinces of Atacama and Tarapacá.

Copper is the most important source of foreign exchange (about 41% of exports in 1987) and government revenues (almost 40%). The copper industry's output in 1987 was 1,417,780 tonnes. Exports during 1987 were valued at US\$2,100.5m. Copper production will increase by up to 30% in 1991 when the Escondida mine begins production.

Nitrate of soda is found in the Atacama deserts. Exports were US\$98.8m. in 1987. Production was 870,000 tonnes in 1985. Iodine is a by-product: 1985 production totalled 2,760 tonnes. The use of solar evaporation as a means of reducing costs has developed the production of potassium salts as an additional by-product.

Iron ore, of which high-grade deposits estimated at over 1,000m. tonnes exist in the provinces of Atacama and Coquimbo, has overtaken nitrate as Chile's second mineral. Production in 1987 was 6,690,168 tonnes, plus 3,684,590 tonnes processed into pellet form.

Coal reserves exceed 2,000m. tons, partially low in thermal unit. Net 1987 production was 1,736,152 tonnes.

In 1987 other minerals included molybdenum (16,941 tonnes, pure), zinc (19,618 tonnes), manganese (31,803 tonnes), lead (829 tonnes).

**Agriculture.** Total area of land available for agricultural use in 1986 was 29m. hectares, of which 12% was sown crops, 38% grassland and 15% forested.

Some principal crops were as follows:

Crop	Area harvested, 1,000 hectares	Production, 1,000 tonnes	Crop	Area harvested, 1,000 hectares	Production, 1,000 tonnes
	1988	1988		1988	1988
Wheat	577	1,874	Potatoes	62	727
Oats	61	127	Dry beans	77	81
Barley	24	48	Lentils	39	25
Maize	90	617	Green peas	7	24
Rice	39	147	Sugar-beet	47	2,650

In 1987 fruit plantations had expanded to 119,600 hectares with 9 types of fruit, mainly apples and table grapes. Production, 1988 (in 1,000 tonnes): Apples, 592; grapes, 440; pears, 80; peaches and nectarines, 78; plums, 72; oranges, 70; lemons and limes, 50. Exports in the season ended May 1988 totalled 90m. cases valued at US\$527m.

Production of animal products in 1987 was (in 1,000 tonnes): Cattle, 174.6; sheep, 14.5; pork, 88.3; poultry, 89.5. Eggs, 1,790m.; milk, 1,100m. litres.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 3.58m.; horses, 490,000; asses, 28,000; sheep, 6.05m.; goats, 600,000; pigs, 1.15m.; poultry, 19m.

**Forestry.** In 1987, there were 1,150,000 hectares of artificial forests from Maule to Magallanes, the most important species being the pine (*pinus radiata*) which



covers almost 930,000 hectares. Eucalyptus and poplar cover some 92,000 hectares. Native species of importance amounted to 9.4m. hectares in 1983.

Production during 1987 amounted to about 287m. in. of sawn timber. Exports of forestry products in 1987 were valued at US\$587m.

**Fisheries.** Chile has 4,200 km of coastline and exclusive fishing rights to 1.6 m. sq. km. There are 220 species of edible fish. Catch of fish and shellfish in 1987 was 4.9m. tonnes; shellfish, 167,000 tonnes. Exports of seafood in 1987 were US\$654.3m., of which fishmeal accounted for US\$375m. The industry employs 70,000 (1.5% of the working population).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** A nationally-owned steel plant operates from Huachipato, near Concepción. Output, 1987, 689,800 tonnes of steel ingots. Cellulose and wood-pulp are two industries which are rapidly developing; in 1987, 673,100 tonnes of cellulose were produced. Cement (1.5m. tonnes) and fishmeal (469,400 tonnes) are also important.

**Labour.** In Dec. 1987 the total workforce numbered 4.01m., of which 837,000 were employed in agriculture, 208,000 in construction, 607,000 in manufacturing industries, 690,000 in trade, 81,000 in mining and 253,000 in transport and communications. A methanol plant with production capacity of 750,000 tonnes a year began operations in 1988 in Punta Arenas.

Trade unions began in the middle 1880s.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in US\$1m.:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	3,580	2,969	3,357	2,955	3,099	3,967
Exports	3,798	3,835	3,650	3,743	4,199	5,046

In 1987 imports (in US\$1m.) from USA, were valued at 773; Venezuela, 144; Brazil, 380; Japan, 387; Federal Republic of Germany, 335; Argentina, 159; Spain, 117; France, 129; UK, 128; Italy, 96.

In 1987 the principal imports were (in US\$1m.): Fuels, 460; chemicals, 740; industrial equipment, 718; transport equipment, 260; tools, 38, live animals, 4; food-stuffs, 40. The principal exports in 1987 were (in US\$1m.): Copper, 2,100; paper and pulp, 365; gold, 165; fresh fruit, 527; fish meal, 375; nitrate, 99.

Total trade between Chile and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	108,420	134,750	128,007	112,843	179,628
Exports and re-exports from UK	74,997	73,914	67,459	105,838	80,901

**Tourism.** Some 560,000 tourists visited Chile in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were in Chile 78,025 km of highways. There were in 1986 (estimate), 850,000 automobiles, 185,000 goods vehicles and 22,500 buses.

**Railways.** The total length of state railway lines was (1987) 6,969 km, including 1,945 km electrified, of broad- and metre-gauge. In 1987 the State Railways carried 6.1 m. tonnes and 7.2m. passengers. Further electrification is in progress between Concepción and Puerto Montt (600 km). An underground railway in Santiago was opened in Sept. 1975. The Antofagasta (Chili) and Bolivia Railway (702 km, metre-gauge) links the port of Antofagasta with Bolivia and Argentina.

**Aviation.** There are 7 international airports, 16 domestic airports and about 300 landing grounds. Chile is served by 19 commercial air companies (2 Chilean). In 1980, 325,800 passengers were carried into and out of Chile on international services; 265,400 passengers were carried on internal routes.

**Shipping.** The mercantile marine has consisted since 1982 of 60 ships of over 100 tons (825,076 DWT) but most of the fleet operates under flags of convenience.

Valparaíso is the chief port. The free ports of Magallanes, Chiloé and Aysén serve the southern provinces.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 1,486 post offices and agencies. In 1983 there were 608,200 (Santiago, 360,053) telephones in use.

At the end of 1982 there were 267 commercial broadcasting stations. Three television stations are operated by the Universities and there is a national television station using NTSC 525 line colour standards. In 1977 there were 2m. radio receivers and (1976) 710,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1986). Cinemas numbered 170; 60 of them are in Santiago.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 65 daily newspapers and 100 magazines.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are a High Court of Justice in the capital, 12 courts of appeal distributed over the republic, tribunals of first instance in the departmental capitals and second-class judges in the sub-delegations. The police force had (1975) about 27,000 officers and men; it is organized and regulated by the Ministry of Defence.

**Religion.** 89.5% of the population are Catholics. There are 1 cardinal-archbishop, 5 archbishops, 22 bishops and 2 vicars apostolic. Latest estimates show 6.7m. Roman Catholics, 880,500 Protestants and 25,000 Jews.

**Education.** Education is in 3 stages: Basic (6–14 years), Middle (15–18) and University (19–23). Enrolment (1981): 2,139,319 pupils in the basic schools, 392,940 pupils in the middle schools and 161,809 pupils in technical schools; teachers in 1980 numbered 66,354 in basic, 24,387 in middle and 4,176 in technical schools.

University education is provided in the state university, University of Chile (founded in 1842), the Catholic University at Santiago (1888), the University of Concepción (1919), the Catholic University at Valparaíso (1928), the Universidad Técnica Federico Santa María at Valparaíso (1930), the Universidad Técnica del Estado (1952), Universidad Austral, Valdivia (1954) and Universidad del Norte, Antofagasta (1957) with a total student population of 118,978 in 1981.

**Health.** In 1982 there were 5,416 doctors, 1,644 dentists, 201 pharmacists, 1,930 midwives and 25,889 nursing personnel. 205 hospitals, 296 health centres and 888 emergency posts.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Chile in Great Britain (12 Devonshire St., London, W1N 2FS)

*Ambassador:* Juan Carlos Délano (accredited 26 Nov. 1987).

Of Great Britain in Chile (La Concepción 177, Casilla 72-D, Santiago)

*Ambassador:* Alan White, CMG, OBE.

Of Chile in the USA (1732 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* Hernán Felipe Errázuriz.

Of the USA in Chile (Agustinas 1343, Santiago)

*Ambassador:* Harry G. Barnes Jr.

Of Chile to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Pedro Daza.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Instituto Nacional de Estadística (Santiago), was founded 17 Sept. 1847. *Director General:* Alvaro Vial Donoso. Principal publications: *Anuario Estadística* and the bi-monthly *Estadística Chilena*.

Other sources are: *Geografía Económica*, by the Corporación de Fomento de la Producción, and *Boletín Mensual*, by the Banco Central de Chile.

Blakemore, H., *Chile*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Davis, N., *The Last Two Years of Salvador Allende*. London, 1985

Horne, A., *Small Earthquake in Chile. A Visit to Allende's South America*. London, 1972

Lasaga, M., *The Copper Industry in the Chilean Economy. An Econometric Analysis*. Aldershot, 1981

Porteous, J. D., *The Modernization of Easter Island*. Victoria, B.C., 1981

Smith, B. H., *Church and Politics in Chile: Challenges to Modern Catholicism*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1983

# PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA

*Capital:* Beijing (Peking)  
*Population:* 1,072.2m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$250 (1986)

Zhonghua Renmin  
Gonghe Guo

**HISTORY.** In the course of 1949 the Communists obtained full control of the mainland of China, and in 1950 also over most islands off the coast (but not Taiwan, *see* p 368).

On 1 Oct. 1949 Mao Zedong (Tse-tung) proclaimed the establishment of the People's Republic of China.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** China is bounded north by the USSR and Mongolia, east by Korea, the Yellow Sea and the East China Sea, with Hong Kong and Macao as enclaves on the south-east coast; south by Vietnam, Laos, Burma, India, Bhutan and Nepal; west by India, Pakistan, Afghanistan and the USSR.

The capital is Beijing (Peking).

*See* map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1968-69.

The total area (including Taiwan) is estimated at 9,572,900 sq. km (3,696,100 sq. miles).

At the 1982 census population was 1,008,175,288. Han Chinese numbered 936.7m. There are 55 ethnic minorities; those numbering more than 3m. were with percentage of total population: Zhuang (1.3%), Hui (0.7%), Uighur (0.6%), Yi (0.54%), Miao (0.5%), Manchu (0.43%), Tibetan (0.39%) and Mongolian (0.34%).

1979 regulations restricting married couples to a single child, a policy enforced by compulsory abortions and economic sanctions, have been widely ignored, and it was admitted in 1988 that the population target of 1,200m. by 2000 was in jeopardy and would have to be revised to 1,270m. Since 1988 peasant couples have been permitted a second child after 4 years if the first born is a girl, a measure to combat infanticide.

Population, 1988: 1,072.2m. (1986: males, 530.11m.; urban, 382.44m.). Vital statistics, 1987: Birth rate (per 1,000), 21.04%; death rate, 6.65%; growth rate, 14.39%. Population density, 109 per sq. km. in 1986. There were 8,290,588 marriages and 457,938 divorces in 1985. Expectation of life was 67 in 1985.

Since 1978 China has accepted 286,500 Vietnamese refugees.

Estimates of persons of Chinese race outside China, Taiwan and Hong Kong in 1980 varied from 15m. to 20m. Since 1982 China has permitted the emigration of a quota of 75 persons per day to Hong Kong.

A number of widely divergent varieties of Chinese are spoken. The official 'Modern Standard Chinese' is based on the dialect of North China. The ideographic writing system of 'characters' is uniform throughout the country, and has undergone systematic simplification. In 1958 a phonetic alphabet (*Pinyin*) was devised to transcribe the characters, and in 1979 this was officially adopted for use in all texts in the Roman alphabet. The previous transcription scheme (Wade) is still used in Taiwan.

China is administratively divided into 22 provinces, 5 autonomous regions (originally entirely or largely inhabited by ethnic minorities, though in some regions now outnumbered by Han immigrants) and 3 government-controlled municipalities. These are in turn divided into 165 prefectures, 321 cities, 2,046 counties and 620 urban districts. (For earlier administrative divisions *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1986-87).



<i>Government-controlled municipalities</i>	<i>Area (in 1,000 sq. km)</i>	<i>Population in 1986 (in 1,000s)</i>	<i>Density per sq. km</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Beijing	17.8	9,750	580	—
Tianjin	4.0	8,190	725	—
Shanghai	5.8	12,320	1,987	—
<i>Provinces</i>				
Hebei	202.7	56,170	299	Shijiazhuang
Shanxi	157.1	26,550	170	Taiyuan
Liaoning	151.0	37,260	256	Shenyang
Jilin	187.0	23,150	124	Changchun
Heilongjiang	463.6	33,320	71	Harbin
Jiangsu	102.2	62,130	611	Nanjing
Zhejiang	101.8	40,700	400	Hangzhou
Anhui	139.9	52,170	374	Hefei
Fujian	123.1	27,490	227	Fuzhou
Jiangxi	164.8	35,090	211	Nanchang
Shandong	153.3	77,760	507	Jinan
Henan	167.0	78,080	468	Zhengzhou
Hubei	187.5	49,890	266	Wuhan
Hunan	210.5	56,960	271	Changsha
Guangdong	231.4	63,640	299	Guangzhou
Sichuan	569.0	103,200	182	Chengdu
Guizhou	174.0	30,080	171	Guiyang
Yunnan	436.2	34,560	88	Kunming
Shaanxi	195.8	30,430	148	Xian
Gansu	530.0	20,710	46	Lanzhou
Qinghai	721.0	4,120	6	Xining
<i>Autonomous regions</i>				
Inner Mongolia	450.0	20,290	17	Hohhot
Guangxi	220.4	39,460	167	Nanning
Tibet <sup>1</sup>	1,221.6	2,030	2	Lhasa
Ningxia	170.0	4,240	64	Yinchuan
Xinjiang	1,646.8	13,840	9	Urumqi
Hainan	34.0	6,000	176	Haikou

<sup>1</sup> See also paragraph on Tibet below.

Population of largest cities in 1986: Shanghai, 6.98m.; Beijing (Peking), 5.86m.; Tianjin, 5.38m.; Shenyang, 4.2m.; Wuhan, 3.4m.; Guangzhou (Canton), 3.29m.; Chongqing, 2.78m.; Harbin, 2.63m.; Chengdu, 2.58m.; Xian, 2.33m.; Zibo, 2.3m.; Nanjing, 2.25m.; Taiyuan, 1.88m.; Changchun, 1.86m.; Dalian, 1.63m.; Zhengzhou, 1.59m.; Kunming, 1.49m.; Jinan, 1.43m.; Tangshan, 1.39m.; Guiyang, 1.38m.; Lanzhou, 1.35m.; Anshan, 1.28m.; Qiqihar, 1.26m.; Hangzhou, 1.25m.; Qingdao, 1.25m.; Fushun, 1.24m.; Fuzhou, 1.19m.; Changsha, 1.16m.; Shijiazhuang, 1.16m.; Jilin, 1.14m.; Nanchang, 1.12m.; Baotou, 1.1m.; Huainan, 1.07m.; Luoyang, 1.05m.; Ningbo, 1.02m.; Datong, 1m.; Urumqi, 1m.

**Tibet.** For events before and after the revolt of 1959 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1964-65 (under TIBET), and 1988-89. On 9 Sept. 1965 Tibet became an Autonomous Region. 301 delegates were elected to the first People's Congress, of whom 226 were Tibetans. The senior spiritual leader, the Dalai Lama is in exile. The Banqen Lama, who was re-elected at the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference in 1978, died in Jan. 1989. In 1988 the Tibetan population of Tibet was 2m., Han 73,000. Population of the capital, Lhasa, in 1986 was 310,000. Expectation of life was 45 years in 1985. 2m. Tibetans live outside Tibet, in China, and in India and Nepal. Chinese efforts to modernize Tibet include irrigation, road-building and the establishment of light industry: in 1985 296 small and medium-sized factories and mines were producing electric power, coal, building materials, lumber, textiles, chemicals and animal products.

In 1979, 1.6m. were engaged in agriculture, including 0.5m. nomadic herdsmen. By 1984, a large measure of autonomy for the peasantry had been re-introduced: compulsory deliveries and some taxes were abolished and private ownership of livestock and 30-year disposition of land were granted. There were 23m. cattle in

1984. In 1975 Tibet became self-sufficient in grain for the first time. There are now 21,600 km of highways, and air routes link Lhasa with Chengdu, Xian and Kathmandu. Six more were opened in 1987. 30,000 tourists visited Tibet in 1986.

The borders were opened for trade with neighbouring countries in 1980. In July 1988 Tibetan was reinstated as a 'major official language', competence in which is required of all administrative officials.

Efforts are being made to revive Tibetan culture as part of China's new liberal policy towards minorities. Since 1980 178 monasteries and 743 shrines have been renovated and reopened. There were some 15,000 monks and nuns in 1987. In 1984 a Buddhist seminary in Lhasa opened with 200 students. Circulation of the Tibetan-language *Xizang Daily* now totals 38,000. In 1987 there were 2,388 primary schools, 64 secondary schools, 14 technical schools and 3 higher education institutes. The total number of students was 146,000. A university was established in 1985. In 1987 there were 7,048 medical personnel (of whom 59% were Tibetan) and 957 medical institutions, with a total of 4,738 beds.

Since 1987 there have been several anti-Chinese demonstrations in which a number of people have been killed.

Batchelor, S., *The Tibet Guide*. London, 1987

The Dalai Lama, *My Land and My People* (ed. D. Howarth). London, 1962

Grunfeld, A. T., *The Making of Modern Tibet*. London, 1987

Jäschke, H. A., *A Tibetan-English Dictionary*. London, 1934

Levenson, C. B., *The Dalai Lama: A Biography*. London, 1988

Shakabpa, T. W. D., *Tibet: A Political History*. New York, 1984

Sharabati, D., *Tibet and its History*. London, 1986

**CLIMATE.** Most of China has a temperate climate but, with such a large country, extending far inland and embracing a wide range of latitude as well as containing large areas at high altitude, many parts experience extremes of climate, especially in winter. Most rain falls during the summer, from May to Sept., though amounts decrease inland. Peking (Beijing). Jan. 24°F (-4.4°C), July 79°F (26°C). Annual rainfall 24.9" (623 mm). Chongqing. Jan. 45°F (7.2°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 43.7" (1,092 mm). Shanghai. Jan. 39°F (3.9°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 45.4" (1,135 mm). Tianjin. Jan. 24°F (-4.4°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 21.5" (533.4 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 21 Sept. 1949 the 'Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference' met in Peking, convened by the Chinese Communist Party. The Conference adopted a 'Common Programme' of 60 articles and the 'Organic Law of the Central People's Government' (31 articles). Both became the basis of the Constitution adopted on 20 Sept. 1954 by the 1st National People's Congress, the supreme legislative body. The Consultative Conference continued to exist after 1954 as an advisory body. In 1986 it had 2,021 members.

New Constitutions were adopted in 1975 and 1978 (for details see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1986-87).

A further Constitution was adopted in 1982. It defines 'socialist modernisation' as China's basic task and restores the post of State President (*i.e.* Head of State). Constitutional amendments of 1988 legalized private companies and sanction the renting out of 'land-use' rights.

The National People's Congress can amend the Constitution, elects and has power to remove from office the highest State dignitaries, decides on the national economic plan, etc. The Congress elects a *Standing Committee* (which supervises the State Council) and the *State President* for a 5-year term: Yang Shangkun was elected in April 1988. *Vice-President*: Wang Zhen.

Congress is elected for a 5-year term and meets once a year for 2 or 3 weeks. When not in session, its business is carried on by its Standing Committee. It is composed of deputies elected on a constituency basis by direct secret ballot. Any voter, and certain organizations, may nominate candidates. Nominations may exceed seats by 50-100%. 2,839 deputies were elected to the 7th Congress in March-April 1988.

In 1989 there were 33 Ministries and 8 Commissions under the State Council. *Premier, Chairman of the Commission for Economic Restructure:* Li Peng. *Vice-Premiers:* Tian Jiyun, Yao Yilin, Wu Xueqian. Other ministers include: Qian Qichen (*Foreign Affairs*), Zheng Tuobin (*Foreign Trade*), Qin Jiwei (*Defence*), Wang Bingqian (*Finance*) and Wang Fang (*Public Security*).

Since 1970 China's diplomatic relations have expanded considerably. On 25 Oct. 1971 the UN voted for the People's Republic to take over the China seat from the Nationalists by 76 votes to 35 with 17 abstentions. On 1 Jan. 1979 the US recognized the Beijing government as the sole legal government of China and diplomatic relations were established. In 1978 China and Japan signed a 10-year treaty of peace and friendship. China did not renew its treaty of friendship with the USSR which expired in 1980, but since 1985 there have been signs that both countries were endeavouring to normalize their relations. It was announced in Feb. 1989 that there would be a meeting between President Gorbachev and Deng Xiaoping in May 1989.

*State emblem:* 5 stars above Peking's Gate of Heavenly Peace, surrounded by a border of ears of grain entwined with drapings, which form a knot in the centre of a cogwheel at the base; the colours are red and gold.

*National flag:* Red with a large star and 4 smaller stars all in yellow in the canton.

*National anthem:* 'March of the Volunteers' composed 1935 by Tien Han. (Replacing the 1978 version).

*De facto* power is in the hands of the Communist Party of China, which had 47m. members in 1988. There are 8 other parties, all members of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference. In mid-1966 the Party Chairman, Mao Tse-tung, launched the 'Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution' to eradicate 'revisionism' which can be taken to have terminated by April 1969 when the 9th Party Congress was convened. This adopted a new Party Constitution which proclaimed the leading rôle of the Party and designated Lin Biao as Mao's successor. A factional dispute developed centred on Lin Biao (killed in an air crash in Mongolia in Sept. 1971) and in Aug. 1973 the 10th Party Congress adopted amendments to the Party Constitution, removing references to Lin Biao and the succession to Mao, and electing a new Central Committee which appointed a new Politburo and Standing Committee. In Jan. 1975 the Central Committee appointed as a vice-chairman of the Politburo Deng Xiaoping, former Party Secretary-General dismissed during the Cultural Revolution. In April 1976 a 'radical' faction in the Politburo engineered a second dismissal of Deng from all his posts, and Hua Guofeng was appointed First Party Vice-Chairman as well as Premier. On the death of Mao on 9 Sept. 1976 Hua became Party Chairman. In Oct. 1976 the 'radical' faction (the 'Gang of Four' led by Mao's widow, Jiang Qing) were placed under arrest. At the 11th Party Congress in Aug. 1977 a new Party Constitution was adopted, and a new Central Committee was elected. Changes in the leadership saw a second reinstatement of Deng to his Party and government posts. Hua Guofeng was replaced as Premier by Zhao Ziyang in Sept. 1980. The 'Gang of Four' were brought to trial in Nov. 1980. A suspended death sentence was passed on Jiang Qing in Jan. 1981. Hua Guofeng was removed from the Party Chairmanship in June 1981 and replaced by Hu Yaobang. In 1985 a nationwide drive to promote younger and better-qualified personnel and favour supporters of Deng Xiaoping resulted in massive reshuffles at ministerial and Politburo level. In the wake of student demonstrations Hu Yaobang was accused of 'bourgeois liberalism' and forced to resign as Party General Secretary in Jan. 1987. Deng Xiaoping and several colleagues retired from the Politburo in Nov. 1987. The members of the Politburo in March 1989 (the first 5 constituting its Standing Committee) were Zhao Ziyang (*General Secretary*), Li Peng, Qiao Shi, Hu Qili, Yao Yilin; Hu Yaobang, Wan Li, Tian Jiyun, Jiang Zemin, Li Tieying, Li Ruihuan, Li Ximing, Yang Rudai, Yang Shangkun, Wu Xueqian, Song Ping, Qin Jiwei; candidate member, Ding Guangen.

*Local Government.* There are 4 administrative levels: (1) Provinces, Autonomous



Regions and the municipalities directly administered by the Government; (2) prefectures and autonomous prefectures (*zhou*); (3) counties, autonomous counties and municipalities; (4) towns. Local government organs ('congresses') exist at provincial, county and township levels and in national minority autonomous prefectures, but not in ordinary prefectures which are just agencies of the provincial government. Up to county level congresses are elected directly. Multiple candidacies are permitted at local elections.

**DEFENCE.** Although retired from his political offices in 1987, Deng Xiaoping remains chairman of the State and Party's Military Commissions. China is divided into 7 military regions. The military commander also commands the air, naval and civilian militia forces assigned to each region.

Conscription is compulsory but for organizational reasons selective: Only some 10% of potential recruits are called up. Service is 3 years with the Army and 4 years with the Air Force and 5 years with the Navy.

It was announced in 1985 most of the regional commanders were replaced by younger officers. A Defence University to train senior officers in modern warfare was established in 1985.

**Army.** The Army (PLA: 'People's Liberation Army') is divided into main and local forces. Main forces, administered by the 7 military regions in which they are stationed but commanded by the Ministry of Defence, are available for operation anywhere and are better equipped. Local forces concentrate on the defence of their own regions. There are 22 Integrated Group Armies comprising 80 infantry, 10 armoured and 6 artillery divisions; and 50 engineer regiments. Land-based missile forces consisted of (1985 estimate): 4 intercontinental, 60 intermediate range and 50 medium range ballistic missiles. Total strength in 1989 was 2.3m. including 1m. conscripts.

The security forces, including the armed police, number some 1,830,000.

**Navy.** The steady new construction programme of all classes of warships in modernized yards, many with advanced nuclear and/or missile capability, has been maintained. Chinese naval strength is an important factor in the present and future balance of power in the eastern hemisphere.

Strength comprises 4 nuclear powered and ballistic missile armed submarines, 1 diesel-powered submarine with ballistic missile tubes, 3 nuclear propelled fleet submarines, 3 diesel driven cruise missile submarines, 106 patrol submarines, 19 destroyers, 34 frigates, 14 patrol escorts, 237 missile boats, 21 large patrol boats, 70 fast patrol craft, 395 fast gunboats, 255 fast torpedo boats, 28 ocean minesweepers, 100 coastal minesweepers, 80 mine warfare craft, 100 river patrol craft, 35 coastal patrol craft, 50 survey and research ships, 35 supply ships, 16 support ships, 40 oilers, 12 boom defence vessels, 3 repair ships, 58 landing ships, 530 landing craft, 20 salvage ships, 3 icebreakers, 43 tugs, 375 coast and river defence craft and 525 vessels of the Maritime Militia.

Active personnel in 1989 exceeded 300,000 officers and men, including 30,000 in the naval air force and over 28,000 marines.

Main naval bases: Qingdao (North Sea Fleet); Shanghai (East Sea Fleet); Tsam-kong (Zhanjiang) (South Sea Fleet).

The largely land-based naval air force of over 700 aircraft, primarily for defensive and anti-submarine service, includes J-4 and J-5 (MiG-17), J-6 (MiG-19), J-7 (MiG-21) and Q-5 fighters, some 120 H-5 (Il-28) torpedo bombers, Be-6 flying boats, Mi-4, Mi-8 and Super Frelon helicopters, and communications, research, training and transport aircraft.

**Air Force.** In 1984 the Air Force was estimated at 4,500 front-line aircraft, organized in over 100 regiments of jet-fighters and about 12 regiments of tactical bombers, plus reconnaissance, transport and helicopter units. Each regiment is made up of 3 or 4 squadrons (each 12 aircraft), and 3 regiments form a division.

Equipment includes about 500 J-7 (MiG-21), 2,000 J-6 (MiG-19) and 750 J-4 and J-5 (MiG-17) interceptors and fighter-bombers, with about 500 H-5 (Il-28) jet-bombers, about 120 H-6 Chinese-built copies of the Soviet Tu-16 twin-jet strategic

bomber, plus 500 Q-5 twin-jet fighter-bombers (known in the west as 'Fantan'), evolved from the MiG-19. Under development is a new fighter designated J-8 (known in the west as 'Finback'). Transport aircraft include about 500 Y-5 (An-2), Y-8 (An-12), Y-12, An-24/26, Li-2, Il-14 and three-turboprop Trident fixed-wing types, plus 300 Z-5 (Mi-4) and Z-6 (Mi-8) helicopters. The MiG fighters and Antonov transports have been manufactured in China, initially under licence, and other types have been assembled there, including several hundred JJ-5 (2-seat MiG-17) trainers. Small quantities of Western aircraft have been procured in the past few years, including 24 Black Hawk and 6 Super Puma transport helicopters, 8 Gazelle armed helicopters and 5 Challenger VIP transports. The US Government is providing technical assistance in developing the J-8 fighter.

Total strength (1989) 470,000, including 220,000 in air defence organization.

At least 27 nuclear tests have been made since 1964 and a nuclear force capable of reaching large parts of the USSR and Asia is operational. It was announced in 1986 that atmospheric nuclear testing had been abandoned. Land-based missile forces thought to be deployed consist of 4 intercontinental, 60 intermediate-range (approximately 3–5,000 km) and 50 medium-range (1,100 km) ballistic missiles. Missile forces are controlled by the Second Artillery, the missile arm of the PLA.

Joffe, E., *The Chinese Army after Mao*. London, 1987

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The People's Republic of China is a member of UN, the IMF, the Asian Development Bank, and is an observer at GATT.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For planning history 1953–73 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1973–74, p. 817.

The long-term aim of the present leadership is to transform China by the year 2000 into a modern developed economic power by the implementation of 'the 4 modernizations', i.e., of agriculture, industry, defence and science and technology. In 1978, as a first step to the realization of the '4 modernizations', a 10-year plan (1976–85) was introduced. However this proved in practice to be over-ambitious; many of the planned targets were too high and the scale of capital construction was too great. The pursuit of the plan caused serious imbalances in the economy. In 1979 a policy of 'readjusting, restructuring, consolidating and improving' the economy was adopted.

Agriculture and light industry received higher priority in development targets. A programme for fundamental reform of the urban economy was introduced in 1985, to be fully implemented by 1990. The state plan was reduced in scope and enterprises gained a degree of freedom in deciding their production and marketing a portion of it. Wages vary according to work performed, and prices have been adjusted to reflect market conditions. However, the end of 1988 saw the reinstatement of more state control of the economy as a response to declining production, inflation, a foreign trade imbalance and unequal regional development. The seventh 5-year plan is running from 1986 to 1990. It aims to curb investment in order to keep inflation below 10%, and to restrict the pace of development to within the limits imposed by infrastructural resources. Production in agriculture is scheduled to rise at an annual average of 6%, and in industry, 7%.

Price controls were reimposed in Oct. 1988 in an effort to halt inflation, which had reached 20%.

**Budget.** 1987 revenue was 234,663m. yuan; expenditure, 242,692m. yuan.

Sources of revenue, 1985 (in million yuan): State enterprise income tax, 51,380; industrial and commercial tax, 110,100; agricultural tax, 4,210. Expenditure, 1986: Capital construction, 65,570; culture, 38,000; defence, 20,126; price subsidies, 24,200.

China's foreign exchange reserves in March 1988 were US\$17,100m. Gold reserves in 1988 were 12.67m. troy oz. of gold.



**Currency.** The currency is called Renminbi (RMB, *i.e.*, People's Currency). The unit of currency is the *yuan* which is divided into 10 *jiao*, the *jiao*, into 10 *fen*. In July 1986 the *yuan* was devalued by 15.8%. The official rate of exchange in March 1989 was £1 = 6.42 *yuan*; US\$1 = 3.73 *yuan*.

Notes are issued for 1, 2 and 5 *jiao* and 1, 2, 5 and 10 *yuan* and coins for 1, 2 and 5 *fen*.

**Banking.** A re-organization of the banking system in 1983 resulted in the People's Bank of China assuming the role of a Central Bank (*Director*: Li Guixian). Its former commercial role has been taken over by the Industrial and Commercial Bank. Other specialized banks include the Agricultural Bank of China, the China Investment Bank and the Chinese People's Construction Bank. The Bank of China will continue to be responsible for foreign banking operations. It has branches in London, New York, Singapore, Luxembourg, Macao and Hong Kong, and agencies in Tokyo and Paris.

Savings bank deposits were 1,622,600m. *yuan* in 1985.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use alongside traditional units of measurement, for which *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1975-76, p. 826 and 1954, pp. 877-88.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Sources of energy in 1985: Coal 72.8%; oil, 20.9%; hydroelectric power, 4.3%; gas, 2%. Hydroelectric potential is 676m. kw. Generating is not centralized; local units range between 30 and 60 mw of output. Output in 1987: 496,000m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz. There are nuclear energy plants under construction at Shanghai and at Daya Bay in Guangdong. Plans to build further nuclear power plants were postponed in 1986 on economy grounds.

**Oil.** Exploration in the South China and Yellow Seas had not produced any commercially viable discoveries by 1986. There are on-shore fields at Daqing, Shengli, Dagang and Karamai, and 10 provinces south of the Yangtze River have been opened for exploration in co-operation with foreign companies. Crude oil production was 135m. tonnes in 1988.

**Gas.** Natural gas is available from fields near Canton and Shanghai and in Sichuan province. Production was 13,700m. cu. metres in 1987, but is only used locally.

**Minerals.** *Coal.* Most provinces contain coal, and there are 70 major production centres, of which the largest are in Hebei, Shanxi, Shandong, Jilin and Anhui. Coal reserves are estimated at 769,180m. tonnes. Coal production was 920m. tonnes in 1987.

*Iron.* Iron ore deposits are estimated at 496,410m. tonnes and are abundant in the anthracite field of Shanxi, in Hebei and in Shandong and are found in conjunction with coal and worked in the north-east. Estimated output of iron ore in 1984, 122m. tonnes. The biggest steel bases are at Anshan with a capacity of 6m. tons, Wuhan (capacity 3.5m. tonnes), Baotou and Maanshan (both 2.5m. tonnes) and Baoshan near Shanghai.

*Tin.* Tin ore is plentiful in Yunnan, where the tin-mining industry has long existed. Tin production was 15,000 tonnes in 1981.

*Tungsten.* China is the world's principal producer of wolfram (tungsten ore), producing 14,000 tonnes in 1981. Mining of wolfram is carried on in Hunan, Guangdong and Yunnan.

Production of other minerals in 1978 (in tonnes): Phosphate rock, 4.5m.; aluminium, 225,000; copper, 200,000; lead, 120,000; zinc, 125,000; antimony, 9,000; manganese, 2m.; (1973) sulphur, 130,000; (1967) bauxite, 350,000; (1973) salt, 18,000; (1969) asbestos, 160,000. Other minerals produced: Barite, bismuth, gold, graphite, gypsum, mercury, molybdenum, silver.

**Agriculture.** China remains essentially an agricultural country. 144m. hectares are sown to crops. Intensive agriculture and horticulture have been practised for



millennia. Present-day policy aims to avert the traditional threats from floods and droughts by soil conservancy, afforestation, irrigation and drainage projects, and to increase the 'high stable yields' areas by introducing fertilizers, pesticides and improved crops. 44.04m. hectares were irrigated in 1985, and 17.8m. tonnes of chemical fertilizer were applied.

Agricultural communes have shed the administrative functions which they had in the Maoist period to become purely economic units. There were 2,048 state farms in 1984 and 180m. peasant households in 1989.

Since 1978 more flexible methods of management have been adopted comprising 'responsibility systems', whereby individual households or other small units are contracted to supply to the commune or government purchasing agency a quantity of crops to be produced from an allotted area of commune land. Any surplus is at the disposal of the household, to be consumed or marketed. In 1984 peasants were granted contracts to commune land with inheritance rights, and were permitted to hire up to 7 labourers. Initially production improved, but a fall in the 1985 total grain harvest to 380m. tonnes from the 1984 record of 407m. tonnes led to a policy of encouraging grain production in 1986. The 1988 harvest also fell short of targets. Reasons for the shortfall included the greater profitability in devoting land to cash crops and stock-breeding and the migration of 60m. peasants to industry. Net *per capita* annual peasant income, 1987: 460 yuan.

In 1985 there were 852,354 large and medium-sized tractors and 34,573 combine harvesters.

Agricultural production (in 1m. tonnes), 1986: Rice, 177; wheat, 89; maize, 65.56; soybeans, 11.01; roots and tubers, 138.84; tea, 0.49; 1987: Cotton, 4.19; oilseed crops, 15.25; sugar-cane, 46.85; fruit, 15.51. The gross value of agricultural output in 1987 was 444,700m. yuan.

Livestock, 1987: Horses, 10,988,000; cattle, 71,347,000; goats, 67,457,000; pigs, 326.4m.; sheep, 178.35m. Meat production in 1987 was 19.21m. tonnes.

**Forestry.** Forest area in 1985 was 115m. hectares, including 2.6m. hectares of timber forest. Timber reserves were 102,600m. cu. metres in 1985. The chief forested areas are in Heilongjiang, Sichuan and Yunnan. Timber output in 1985 was 63.1m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Total catch, 1985: 7.05m. tonnes. There were 172,582 motor fishing vessels in 1985.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** 'Cottage' industry is very old in the economy and persists into the 20th century. Modern industrial development began with the manufacture of cotton textiles, and the establishment of silk filatures, steel plants, flour-mills and match factories. In 1985 there were 463,200 industrial enterprises, of which 367,800 were collectives and 93,700 state-owned. 7,900 were classified as 'large and medium-sized'. A law of Aug. 1988 ends direct state control of factories and provides for the possibility of bankruptcy. In 1985 rural industries expanded by 53% and accounted for 20% of total industrial production. In 1988 there were 13.7m. 'small' and 115,000 'large' (more than 8 employees) private businesses accounting for 13% of retail sales. Labour is drawn from the rural surplus. Expanding sectors of manufacture are: Steel, chemicals, cement, agricultural implements, plastics and lorries.

1985 production (in tonnes): Chemical fertilizer, 13.3m.; pig-iron, 40m.; cement, 142m.; cotton cloth, 14,360m. metres; motor vehicles, 439,000; tractors, 44,600; bicycles, 32.3m.; chemical fibres, 734,900; steel, 46.6m.; rolled steel, 36.8m.; coke, 33m.; paper, 8.26m.; sugar, 4.6m.; drugs, 58,500; cotton yarn, 3.2m. and 10m. TV sets.

The gross value of industrial output in 1985 was 875,960m. yuan.

**Labour.** Workforce (excluding peasantry), 1986: 499m. (36.4% female), including 371m. rural workers, 83m. industrial workers, 24m. workers in service trades and commerce, 20.7m. in building and 12.2m. in transport and telecommunications. 23.44m. worked in private businesses in 1988. There were 3.6m. unemployed in

1986. Average annual non-agricultural wage in 1985: 1,184 yuan. There is a 6-day 48-hour working week.

**Commerce.** Foreign trade is being decentralized and has expanded rapidly since 1978. A trade deficit developed in 1984, and measures to curb this were taken in 1985. In 1980 4 Special Economic Zones were set up in the provinces of Guangdong and Fujian, in which concessions are made to foreign businessmen to encourage their investment. In 1984 14 coastal cities and Hainan Island were opened for technological imports, and in 1988 Hainan was also designated a Special Economic Zone. Since 1979 joint ventures with foreign firms have been permitted. By 1986 2,645 equity joint ventures, 4,075 contractual joint ventures and 130 wholly-owned foreign subsidiaries had been launched. About 80% of the investment was from Hong Kong. There is no maximum limit on the foreign share of the holdings; the minimum limit is 25%. A Stock Exchange was opened in Shanghai in 1986. Foreign indebtedness was US\$2,500m. in 1987. In 1985 the IMF lent China US\$3,000m. repayable over 5 years.

Trade in 1987: Imports, US\$33.4m.; exports, US\$34.6m.

Main exports are textiles, oil and oil products; others are chemicals, light industrial goods and arms. Major imports are machinery and transport equipment, iron and steel, and chemicals.

Major exports in 1985 (in 1,000 tonnes): Crude oil, 30,030; petroleum products, 6,210; tea, 137; cereals, 93,300; tungsten ore, 16; cotton cloth, 16,733m. metres; imports: Wheat, 53,800; rolled steel, 20,030; motor vehicles, 353,979 units; chemical fertilizers, 76,100.

In 1984 only 7.2% of China's trade was with Communist countries (2.5% with the USSR), but trade with the USSR reached some US\$2,800m. in 1988. A trade agreement covering 1986-90 was signed in 1985. Japan is China's biggest trading partner. Other major partners are Hong Kong, USA, Federal Republic of Germany and Canada. Customs duties with Taiwan were abolished in 1980.

Total trade between China and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	278,474	307,963	327,032	391,766	443,698
Exports and re-exports from UK	317,256	396,156	535,943	416,012	411,563

China has agreed to settle by 1990 British claims for assets totalling £23.4m. confiscated by the present Chinese Government when it took power in 1949.

In April 1978 a most-favoured-nation agreement was signed with EEC, and in 1980 the EEC extended preferential tariffs to China.

China has most-favoured-nation status with the USA. In 1985 the UK and the USA signed nuclear power agreements with China, and the UK and China signed a second agreement on economic co-operation valid till 1990.

In 1988 Japan and China signed an investment protection treaty, putting Japanese firms in China on the same footing as local firms.

**Tourism.** 1.37m. foreigners and 1.63m. overseas Chinese visited China in 1985. Restrictions on Chinese wishing to travel abroad were eased in Feb. 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The total road length was 942,400 km in 1985. Highways are well graded but mostly unmetalled. In 1985 there were 2.2m. lorries and 790,000 passenger vehicles. The use of bicycles is very widespread.

In 1985, 762m. tonnes of freight and 4,272m. passengers were transported by road.

**Railways.** In 1985 there were 52,100 km of railway including 4,200 km electrified. Gauge is standard except for some 600 mm track in Yunnan.

The principal railways are:

(1) The great north-south trunk lines: (a) Beijing-Canton Railway (over 2,300 km), *via* Zhengzhou-Wuhan-Zhuzhou-Hengyang. (b) Tianjin-Shanghai Railway (1,500 km), *via* Pukow and Nanjing. (c) Baoji-Chongqing Railway, *via* Chengdu



(1,174 km). Chongqing with the east-west route from Hengyang to the Vietnam border, and to Kunming, connecting there with the Yunnan Railway to the Vietnam border. Two further lines connect Baoji.

(2) Great east-west trunk lines: (a) Longhai Railway; Lianyungang-Xuzhou-Zhengzhou (on the Beijing-Canton line) -Xian-Baoji-Tianshui-Lanzhou (1,500 km). (b) Lanzhou-Xinjiang Railway: Lanzhou-Yumen-Hami-Turfan-Urumqi (1,800 km); (c) Shanghai-Youyiguan (Vietnam border) *via* Hangzhou, Nanchang, Hengyang (on the Beijing-Canton line), Guilin, Liuzhou and Nanning. (d) Beijing-Lanzhou *via* Xining (from which a branch connects with the lines through Mongolia to the Trans-Siberian Railway), Dadong (from which a branch serves the province of Shanxi), Baotou and Yinchuan (Ningxia). (e) Zhuzhou-Guiyang (632 km). (f) Xiangfan-Chongqing.

Branches link coastal areas (e.g., Fujian province) and the smaller inland centres with the main parts of the system. Surveys have been made for a new 500-km railway, linking the trunk line with the oilfield of Karamai in Xinjiang.

(3) The Manchurian system: (a) Chinese Eastern (Changchun) Railway (2,370 km), from Manzhouli on the Soviet border through northern Inner Mongolia and Manchuria *via* Qiqihar, Harbin and Mudanjiang to the Soviet border near Vladivostok. (b) South Manchuria Railway (705 km, 1,120 km with branches), Changchun-Shenyang-Luda. (c) Beijing-Shenyang Railway, with branches in Manchuria (854 km, 1,350 km with branches).

The Beijing-Lanzhou line connects through a branch with the Trans-Siberian Railway in the USSR. A line from Xinjiang across the border to Soviet Kazakhstan is due for completion in 1991.

In 1986, 14 major construction projects were in progress, totalling over 3,000 km, and 9,000 km of electrification is planned. Track doubling is being carried out.

In 1986 the railways carried 1,347m. tons of freight and 1,248m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Since 1985 the Civil Aviation Administration of China has become the administrative body for 5 new airlines: Air China (based on Beijing); Eastern Airways (Shanghai); Southern Airways (Canton); South-Western Airways (Chengdu) and the Capital Helicopter Company. There are services to Pyongyang, Hanoi, Rangoon, Singapore, Bangkok, Karachi, Tokyo, Moscow, Ulan Bator, Teheran, Addis Ababa, Bucharest, Belgrade, Zürich, Paris, Frankfurt, Manila, New York, San Francisco, London, Sydney and Hong Kong. Route lengths in 1985: International, 106,000 km; domestic, 171,200 km. British Airways have a direct flight London-Beijing. Japan Airlines have a route from Tokyo to Beijing (*via* Osaka and Shanghai), Air France Paris to Beijing (*via* Athens and Karachi), Pakistan Airlines Karachi to Beijing, Aeroflot Moscow to Beijing, Ethiopian Airlines Addis Ababa to Shanghai, Tarom Bucharest to Beijing, Swissair Geneva to Beijing and Shanghai, Iran Air Paris to Beijing and PANAM Beijing *via* Tokyo. Singapore Airlines Singapore to Beijing and Thai Airways Bangkok to Beijing.

In 1985 CAAC carried 7.47m. passengers and 195,000 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** In 1980 the ocean-going merchant fleet consisted of 431 vessels with a total DWT of 7.92m.

Cargo handled by the major ports in 1985 (in tonnes): Shanghai, 113m.; Dalian, 44m.; Qinhuangdao, 44m.; Qingdao, 26m.; Huangpu, 18m.; Tianjin, 18m.; Zhanjiang, 12m. In 1985 65.6m. tonnes of freight were carried.

Inland waterways totalled 109,075 km in 1985. 434m. tonnes of freight and 270m. passengers were carried.

**Pipeline.** A pipeline links the Daqing oilfield to the port of Luda and to refineries in Peking. There is a pipeline from Lanzhou to Lhasa. There were 11,800 km of pipeline in 1985 which carried a load of 136.5m. tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 53,100 post offices in 1985, and 6,259,829 telephones. The use of *Pinyin* transcription of place names has been requested for mail to addresses in China (e.g., 'Beijing' *not* 'Peking').

In 1984 there were 167 radio and 93 television stations and in 1981 9.02m. TV receivers. Most are communally owned.



**Cinemas and Theatres.** There were 8,723 cinemas, 182,948 film projection units and 6,651 theatres in 1985. 127 feature films were made in 1985.

**Newspapers and books.** In 1985 there were 698 newspapers with a circulation of 19,980m. and 5,705 periodicals. The Party newspaper is *Renmin Ribao* (People's Daily). In 1979 it had a daily circulation of 7m. 45,603 book titles were produced in 66,700m. copies in 1985.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Six new codes of law (including criminal and electoral) came into force in 1980, to regularize the legal unorthodoxy of previous years. There is no provision for *habeas corpus*. An anti-crime campaign was launched in Aug. 1983 which, it was claimed in 1985, had cut the crime rate sharply; by 1986 624,000 sentences of death or long-term imprisonment had been imposed. The death penalty has been extended from treason and murder to include rape, embezzlement, smuggling, drug-dealing, bribery and robbery with violence. Courts will no longer be subject to the intervention of other state bodies, and their decisions will be reversible only by higher courts. 'People's courts' are divided into some 30 higher, 200 intermediate and 2,000 basic-level courts, and headed by the Supreme People's Court. The latter tries cases, hears appeals and supervises the people's courts.

People's courts are composed of a president, vice-presidents, judges and 'people's assessors' who are the equivalent of jurors. 'People's conciliation committees' are charged with settling minor disputes.

There are also special military courts.

Procuratorial powers and functions are exercised by the Supreme People's Procuracy and local procuracies.

**Religion.** Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism have long been practised. Confucianism has no ecclesiastical organization and appears rather as a philosophy of ethics and government. Taoism—of Chinese origin—copied Buddhist ceremonial soon after the arrival of Buddhism two millennia ago. Buddhism in return adopted many Taoist beliefs and practices. It is no longer possible to estimate the number of adherents to these faiths. A more tolerant attitude towards religion had emerged by 1979, and the Government's Bureau of Religious Affairs was reactivated.

Ceremonies of reverence to ancestors have been observed by the whole population regardless of philosophical or religious beliefs.

Moslems are found in every province of China, being most numerous in the Ningxia-Hui Autonomous Region, Yunnan, Shaanxi, Gansu, Hebei, Honan, Shandong, Sichuan, Xinjiang and Shanxi. They totalled 14m. in 1986.

Roman Catholicism has had a footing in China for more than 3 centuries. In 1985 there were about 3m. Catholics who are members of the Patriotic Catholic Association, which declared its independence of Rome in 1958. In 1979 there were about 1,000 priests. In 1977 there were 78 bishops and 4 apostolic administrators, not all of whom were permitted to undertake religious activity. This figure included 46 'democratically elected' bishops not recognized by the Vatican. A bishop of Beijing was consecrated in 1979 without the consent of the Vatican and 2 auxiliary bishops of Shanghai in 1984. Archbishop Gong Pinmei, arrested in 1955, was freed in 1988. Protestants are members of the All-China Conference of Protestant Churches. 2 Protestant bishops were installed in 1988, the first for 30 years.

**Education.** In 1988 220m. people (70% women) were illiterate. In 1986 90% of school-age children attended school. In 1985 there were 172,262 kindergartens with 14.8m. children and 798,000 teachers. An educational reform of 1985 is phasing in compulsory 9-year education consisting of six years of primary schooling and three years of secondary schooling, to replace an existing 5-year system. In 1985 there were 832,309 primary schools with 6.02m. teachers and 133.7m. pupils, and 104,848 secondary schools, with 4.18m. teachers and 50.93m. pupils. There were 1,016 institutes of higher education, with 0.87m. teachers and 1.7m. students.

University entry is dependent upon entrance examinations. Since 1985 instead of receiving grants based on parents' income students have been funded by com-

petitive scholarships. Following student demonstrations in Jan. 1987 political education courses and periods of labour service have been restored to university curricula, and political criteria of selection re-applied.

The Academy of Sciences had in 1964 some 20 provincial branches and an Academy of Social Sciences was established in 1977.

Among the universities are the following: People's University of China, Peking (founded 1912 by Dr Sun Yat-sen; reorganized 1950; about 3,000 students); Peking University, Peking (1898, enlarged 1945; about 10,000 students); Xiamen University, Fujian (1921 and 1937); Fudan University, Shanghai (1905); Inner Mongolia University, Hohhot; Lanzhou University, Lanzhou (Gansu Prov.); Nankai University, Tianjin (1919); Nanjing University, Nanjing (1888 and 1928); Jilin University, Changchun (Jilin Prov.); North-West University, Xian (Shanxi Prov.); Shandong University, Qingdao (1926); Sun Yat-sen University, Canton (founded 1924 by Dr Sun Yat-sen); Sichuan University, Chengdu (1931); Qinghua University, Peking, Wuhan University, Wuhan (Hubei Prov.; 1905 and 1928); Yunnan University, Kunming. In 1987 some 36,000 students were studying abroad, but in 1988 the number has reduced to 3,000 a year (600 only to USA).

Chen, T. H., *Chinese Education since 1949*. Oxford, 1981

Heyhoe, R., (ed.) *Contemporary Chinese Education*. London, 1984

**Health.** Medical treatment is free only for certain groups of employees, but where costs are incurred they are partly borne by the patient's employing organization. In 1985 there were 1,413,000 doctors, of whom 336,000 practise Chinese medicine. About 10% of doctors are in private practice.

In 1985 there were 59,619 hospitals (including 348 mental hospitals) with 2.23m. beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of China in Great Britain (49 Portland Pl., London, W1N 3AH)

*Ambassador:* Ji Chaozhu (accredited Sept. 1987).

Of Great Britain in China (Guang Hua Lu 11, Jian Guo Men Wai, Beijing)

*Ambassador:* Sir Alan Donald, KCMG.

Of China in the USA (2300 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Han Xu.

Of the USA in China (Xiu Shui Bei Jie 3, Beijing)

*Ambassador:* Winston Lord.

Of China to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Li Luye.

## Further Reading

*Beijing Review*. Beijing, weekly

*China: A Statistics Survey in 1985*. Beijing, 1986

*China Daily* [European ed.]. London, from 1986

*China Directory* [in Pinyin and Chinese]. Tokyo, annual

*The China Quarterly*. London, from 1960

*China Reconstructs*. Beijing, monthly

*China's Foreign Trade*. Bimonthly. Beijing, from 1966

*People's Republic of China Yearbook*. Beijing, from 1983

*Statistical Yearbook of China*. Beijing and Oxford, from 1981

*The Population Atlas of China*. OUP, 1988

Barnett, A. D., *The Making of Foreign Policy in China*. London, 1985

Barnett, A. D. and Clough, R., (eds.) *Modernizing China: Post-Mao Reform and Development*. Boulder, 1986

Bartke, W. (ed.) *Who's Who in the People's Republic of China*. 2nd ed. New York, 1986

Bartke, W. and Schier, P., *China's New Party Leadership: Biographies and Analysis*. London, 1985

Blecher, M., *China: Politics, Economics and Sociology*. London, 1986

Bonavia, D., *The Chinese*. New York, 1980.—*The Chinese: A Portrait*. London, 1981

- Boorman, H. L. and Howard, R. C., (eds.) *Biographical Dictionary of Republican China*. 5 vols. Columbia Univ. Press, 1967-79.
- Brady, J. P., *Justice and Politics in People's China: Legal Order or Continuing Revolution?* London, 1982
- Brown, D. G., *Partnership with China: Sino-foreign Joint Ventures in Historical Perspective*. Boulder, 1985
- Bullard, M., *China's Political-Military Evolution*. Boulder, 1985
- The Cambridge History of China*. 14 vols. CUP, 1978 ff.
- Chang, D. W., *China under Deng Xiao-ping: Political and Economic Reforms*. London, 1989
- Cheng, P., *China*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983
- Chow, G. C., *The Chinese Economy*. New York, 1985
- Chu, G. C. and Hsu, F. L., (eds.) *China's New Social Fabric*. London, 1983
- Deng Xiaoping, *Speeches and Writings*. 2nd ed. Oxford, 1987
- Dietrich, C., *People's China: A Brief History*. OUP, 1986
- Domes, J., *The Government and Politics of the PRC*. Boulder, 1985
- Fairbank, J. K., *The Great Chinese Revolution 1800-1985*. London, 1987
- Ginsburg, N. and Lalor, B. A., (eds.) *China: The 80s Era*. Boulder, 1984
- Grummit, K., *China Economic Handbook*. London, 1986
- Guide to China's Foreign Economic Relations and Trade*. Hong Kong, 1984
- Harding, H. (ed.) *China's Foreign Relations in the 1980's*. Yale UP, 1984.—*China's Second Revolution*. Washington, 1987
- Hinton, H. C. (ed.) *The People's Republic of China 1949-1979*. 5 vols. Wilmington, 1980
- Hook, B. (ed.) *The Cambridge Encyclopaedia of China*. CUP, 1982
- Hsieh, C. M., *Atlas of China*. New York, 1973
- Jingrong, W. (ed.) *The Pinyin-Chinese Dictionary*. Beijing and San Francisco, 1979
- Kaplan, F. M. (ed.) *Encyclopedia of China Today*. 3rd ed. London, 1982
- Kapur, H., *China and the European Economic Community*. Dordrecht, 1986
- Kim, S. S. (ed.) *China and the World: Chinese Foreign Policy in the Post-Mao Era*. Boulder, 1984
- Klein, D. W. and Clark, A. B., *Biographic Dictionary of Chinese Communism, 1921-1965*. Harvard U.P., 1971
- Lamb, M., *Directory of Officials and Organizations in China, 1968-1983*. Armonk, 1984
- Lardy, N. R., *Agriculture in China's Modern Economic Development*. CUP, 1983
- Leeming, F., *Rural China Today*. London, 1985
- Lippit, V. D., *The Economic Development of China*. Armonk, 1987
- Mabbett, I., *Modern China: The Mirage of Modernity*. New York, 1985
- Mancall, M., *China at the Center: 300 Years of Foreign Policy*. New York, 1984
- Marshall, M., *Organizations and Growth in Rural China*. London, 1985
- Mathews, R. H., *Chinese-English Dictionary*. Cambridge, Mass., 1943-47
- Maxwell, N. and McFarlane, B. (eds.) *China's Changed Road to Development*. Oxford, 1984
- Moise, E. E., *Modern China: A History*. London, 1986
- Moser, L. J., *The Chinese Mosaic: the Peoples and Provinces of China*. Boulder, 1985
- Nathan, A. J., *Chinese Democracy*. London, 1986
- Pan, L., *The New Chinese Revolution*. London, 1987
- Pannell, C. W. and Laurence, J. C., *China: the Geography of Development and Modernization*. London, 1983
- Riskin, C., *China's Political Economy: The Quest for Development since 1949*. OUP, 1987
- Rodzinski, W., *A History of China*. Oxford, 1981-84
- Schram, S. R. (ed.) *The Scope of State Power in China*. London, 1985
- Segal, G., *Defending China*. OUP, 1985
- Segal, G. and Tow, W. T. (eds.) *Chinese Defence Policy*. London, 1984
- Song, J., et al., *Population Control in China*. New York, 1985
- Teiwes, F. C., *Leadership, Legitimacy and Conflict in China*. London, 1984
- Thornton, R. C., *China: A Political History, 1917-1980*. Boulder, 1982
- The Times Atlas of China*. London, 1974
- Wong, K. and Chu, D. (eds.) *Modernization in China: The Case of the Shenzhen Special Economic Zone*. OUP, 1986
- Yahuda, M. B., *Towards the End of Isolationism: China's Foreign Policy after Mao*. London, 1983
- Yin, J., *Government of Socialist China*. Lanham, 1984
- Young, G. (ed.) *China: Dilemmas of Modernisation*. London, 1985



TAIWAN<sup>1</sup>

‘Republic of China’

*Capital:* Taipei*Population:* 19.7m. (1987)*GNP per capita:* US\$5,075 (1987)

**HISTORY.** The island of Taiwan (Formosa) was ceded to Japan by China by the Treaty of Shimonoseki on 8 May 1895. After the Second World War the island was surrendered to Gen. Chiang Kai-shek in Sept. 1945 and was placed under Chinese administration on 25 Oct. 1945. USA broke off diplomatic relations with Taiwan on 1 Jan. 1979 on establishing diplomatic relations with the Peking Government. Relations between the USA and Taiwan are maintained through the American Institute on Taiwan and the Co-ordination Council for North American Affairs in the USA, set up in 1979 and accorded diplomatic status in Oct. 1980.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Taiwan lies between the East and South China Seas about 100 miles from the coast of Fujian. The total area of Taiwan Island, the Penghu Archipelago and the Kinma area is 13,969 sq. miles (36,179 sq. km). Population (1987), 19.7m., of whom some 2m. are mainland Chinese who came with the Nationalist Government. There are also 332,169 aboriginals. Population density: 546 per sq. km.

In 1987, birth rate was 1.6%; death rate, 0.49%; rate of growth, 1.1% per annum (2000 target: 0.72% per annum). Life expectancy, 1987: Males, 71.09 years; females, 76.31 years.

Taiwan is divided into two special municipalities (Taipei, the capital, population 2.64m. in 1987 and Kaohsiung, population 1.3m. in 1987), 5 municipalities (Taichung, Keelung, Tainan, Chiayi and Hsinchu) and 16 counties (*hsien*): Changhwa, Chiayi, Hsinchu, Hualien, Ilan, Kaohsiung, Miaoli, Nantou, Penghu, Pingtung, Taichung, Tainan, Taipei, Taitung, Taoyuan, Yunlin. The seat of the provincial government is at Chungshing.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate with hot, humid conditions and heavy rainfall in the summer months but cooler from Nov. to March when rainfall amounts are not so great. Typhoons may be experienced. Taipei. Jan. 59°F (15.3°C), July 83°F (29.2°C). Annual rainfall 100" (2,500 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Taiwan is controlled by the remnants of the Nationalist Government. On 1 March 1950, Chiang Kai-shek resumed the presidency of the ‘Republic of China’. He died 5 April 1975. His son Chiang Ching-kuo was president from March 1978 to his death in Jan. 1988. He was succeeded by Lee Teng-hui. Until 1986 there were 3 political parties: The ruling Kuomintang (KMT) (2.44m. members in 1987), which has a youth movement (China Youth Corps) of over 1m. members; the Young China Party, and the China Democratic Socialist Party. Opposition parties were banned.

The National Assembly was elected in 1947. In 1989 it had 940 delegates. Government is conducted through 5 councils (Executive, Legislative, Judicial, Examination, and Control *Yuan*). The highest administrative organ is the Executive Yuan, headed by the premier, which includes a number of ministers. The highest legislative body is the Legislative Yuan, elected in 1948, which in 1989 numbered 312 members. The National Assembly, Legislative Yuan and Control Yuan are elected bodies. Their terms of office have been extended indefinitely. As the number of original delegates dwindled, regulations introduced in 1966 and 1972 provided for the election of additional members to the National Assembly and Legislative Yuan, and elections were held in 1969, 1972, 1975, 1980, 1983 and 6 Dec. 1986. Martial law, in force since 1949, was lifted in July 1987, and the ban on opposition parties was dropped in Jan. 1989. A new Democratic Progress Party (DPP) was formed in Oct. 1986 and a Democratic Liberal Party in Sept. 1987. In the 1986 elections the DPP contested 44 of the 157

<sup>1</sup> See note on transcription of names p. 355.

seats to be filled in the National Assembly and Legislative Yuan, gaining 11 in the former and 12 in the latter. The KMT gained 127 seats. Turnout 7.7m. from electorate of 11.8m. There is also a Provincial Assembly of which the current Eighth Assembly with 77 members was elected on 16 Nov. 1985. Electoral turnout was 72.8%. 59 seats went to the KMT. Further local government elections were held 1 Feb. 1986: the KMT won 1,002 out of 1,146 seats.

State emblem: A 12-pointed white sun in a blue sky.

*National flag:* Red with a blue first quarter bearing the state emblem in white.

*National anthem:* 'San Min Chu I', words by Dr Sun Yat-sen; tune by Cheng Mao-yun.

The cabinet included the following in March 1989:

*Prime Minister:* Yu Kuo-hwa.

*Vice-Premier:* Shih Chi-yang. *Foreign Minister:* Lien Chan. *Minister of National Defence:* Cheng Wei-yuan. *Minister of the Interior:* Hsu Shui-teh. *Minister of Finance:* Shirley Kuo. *Minister of Education:* Mao Kao-kuan. *Minister of Justice:* Hsiao Tien-tsang. *Minister of Economic Affairs:* Chen Li-an. *Minister of Communications:* Kuo Nan-hung. *Chairman, Council for Economic Planning:* Fredrick Chien. The Governor of Taiwan Province was Chiu Chuang-huan.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army, which was formed on the forces which escaped to Taiwan under Chiang Kai-shek at the end of the civil war in 1949, numbered about 270,000 in 1989. It was reorganized, re-equipped and trained by the USA and in 1989 consisted of 12 heavy and 6 light infantry divisions, 6 armoured infantry and 1 airborne brigades, 4 tank groups, 20 field artillery and 5 SAM battalions. The aviation element has about 80 helicopters, including 70 U4-1 Iroquois and 3 Chinooks plus 10 O-1 Bird Dog observation aircraft. There is a conscription system for 2 years and reserve liability. US supplies of military equipment were resumed in 1980 after a moratorium in 1979. US forces were withdrawn by 1 May 1979.

**Navy.** There are 2 new Netherlands-built diesel powered patrol submarines, but most of the major vessels in naval service are former US Navy ships now over 40 years old and well overdue for replacement. There are 2 other diesel powered patrol submarines, 26 destroyers, 10 frigates, 3 corvettes (*ex-fleet minesweepers*), 62 fast missile craft, 13 coastal minesweepers, 1 coastal minelayer, 9 minesweeping boats, 28 coastal patrol craft, 2 dock landing ships, 1 amphibious flagship, 26 landing ships, 22 utility landing craft, 260 LCM landing craft, 150 minor landing craft, 2 repair ships, 5 surveying ships, 12 support ships, 3 transports, 7 oilers, 1 supply ship, 17 tugs, 5 floating docks and 25 service craft. Customs have 18 coastguard cutters.

Active personnel in 1989 totalled 35,500 officers and ratings in the Navy and 30,000 officers and men in the Marine Corps. There are 45,000 naval reservists and 35,000 marine reservists.

The Navy has 12 anti-submarine helicopters, 6 search and rescue helicopters and operational control of 2 squadrons of Air Force anti-submarine warfare Tracker aircraft; and the Marine Corps operates a number of observation helicopters.

**Air Force.** The Nationalist Air Force is equipped mainly with aircraft of US design, including F-5E fighters built in Taiwan. It has 11 front-line squadrons of F-5E/F Tiger IIs, 3 of F-104G Starfighters and 1 tactical reconnaissance squadron of RF-104G Starfighters. The 6 transport squadrons are equipped with a VIP Boeing 720, 4 Boeing 727s, 5 C-54s, 20 C-47s, about 40 C-119Gs, 12 C-130H Hercules and 10 C-123 Providers. There is a naval co-operation squadron with S-2A/E Trackers. Search and rescue units operate Albatross amphibians and S-70 and Iroquois helicopters, and there are other helicopter and large training elements, some equipped with AT-3 twin-jet trainers designed and built in Taiwan and others with US-supplied T-34Cs. Total strength in 1989: 70,000 personnel and (1988) 400 combat aircraft.

**INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS.** By a treaty of 1 Dec. 1954 the USA was pledged to protect Taiwan, but this treaty lapsed 1 year after the USA established diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China on 1 Jan. 1979. In April 1979 the US Congress approved a law to maintain commercial, cultural and other relations between USA and Taiwan.

The People's Republic took over the China seat in the UN from the Nationalists on 25 Oct. 1971.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** There have been a series of development plans. The ninth (1986–89), aims at an annual growth rate of 6.5% (industry 6.1%, agriculture 1.3%).

**Budget.** There are 2 budgets, the national together with a special defence budget (partly secret) and the provincial (*i.e.*, for Taiwan proper). For the fiscal year July 1988–June 1989 the budget is scheduled for NT\$561,570m. Expenditure planned: 34% on defence; 17% on economic development; 18% on welfare; 14% on culture. Foreign exchange reserves were US\$76,700m. in 1987.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the New Taiwan dollar, divided into 100 cents. There are coins of NT\$ 1, 5 and 10 and notes of NT\$ 10, 50, 100, 500 and 1,000. There are no cent coins or notes. Exchange rates (March 1989): £1 = NT\$47.98; US\$1 = NT\$27.88.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of China (reactivated in 1961) regulates the money market, manages foreign exchange and issues currency.

The Bank of Taiwan is the largest commercial bank and the fiscal agent of the Government. In addition, there are 16 domestic commercial banks and 33 local branches of foreign banks.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Output of electricity in 1987 was 65,514m. kwh.; total generating capacity was 16.2m. kw. There are 3 nuclear power-stations (capacities 1m., 1m. and 0.6m. kw.) and a fourth is envisaged. Supply 110 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** There are reserves of coal (182m. tonnes), gold (1.5m. tonnes), copper (4.8m. tonnes), sulphur (2.4m. tonnes), oil (1.2m. kl.) and natural gas (19,240 cu. metres). In 1987, coal production was 1.5m. tonnes; refined oil, 1.9m. kl.; natural gas, 1,057m. cu. metres.

**Agriculture.** The cultivated area was 886,281 hectares in 1987, of which 487,809 hectares were paddy fields. Production in 1,000 tonnes, in 1987: Rice, 1,900; tea, 26; bananas, 204; pineapples, 193; sugar-cane, 5,163; sweet potatoes, 345; wheat, 4.7; soybeans, 18; peanuts, 112.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 171,759; pigs, 7,129,034; goats, 207,022.

**Forestry.** Forest area, 1987: 1,885,141 hectares; forest reserves, 326,189,164 cu. metres; timber production, 409,215 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The fleet comprised 5,273 vessels over 20 GRT in 1987; the catch was 1,236,170 tonnes in 1987.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Output (in tonnes) in 1986 (and 1987): Steel bars, 2.1m. (2.3m.); pig-iron, 197,536 (87,180); shipbuilding, 552,294 (564,268); sugar, 534,980 (539,000); cement, 14.4m. (15.7m.); fertilizers, 1.1m. (1.3m.); paper, 635,075 (716,812); cotton fabrics, 756m. metres (729m.).

**Labour.** In 1987 the labour force was 7.56m., of whom 1.2m. worked in agriculture, forestry and fisheries, 3.43m. in industry (including 2.81m. in manufacturing and 550,000 in building), 1.44m. in commerce, 430,000 in transport and communications, and 1.5m. in other services. 161,000 were registered unemployed.



**Commerce.** Foreign trade affairs are handled by the China External Trade Development Council (founded 1970), which operates branches in 23 countries under the name of Far East Trade Service. Principal exports: Textiles, electronic products, agricultural products, metal goods, plastic products. Principal imports: Oil, chemicals, machinery, electronic products. Total trade, in US\$1m.:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	20,287	21,959	20,102	24,165	34,957
Exports	25,123	30,456	30,723	39,789	53,538

The USA, Japan and Hong Kong are Taiwan's major trade partners followed by the Federal Republic of Germany, UK and Canada. A mounting trade surplus has caused friction with the USA and a sharp appreciation of the Taiwan dollar. Economic liberalisation measures are being undertaken to improve the position.

Total trade between Taiwan and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	585,246	582,904	705,775	1,006,880	1,150,392
Exports and re-exports from UK	150,648	164,776	192,492	292,275	355,786

**Tourism.** In 1987 1,760,943 tourists visited Taiwan, and 1,058,410 Taiwanese made visits abroad. The ban on Taiwanese travel to Communist China was lifted in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 19,945 km of roads (16,884 km surfaced). 7,702,150 motor vehicles were registered including 1,254,955 passenger cars, 21,608 buses, 451,100 trucks and 5,958,754 motor cycles. 2,008m. passengers and 227m. tonnes of freight were transported (excluding urban buses).

**Railways.** Total route length in 1987 was 2,876 km (1,067 mm to 762 mm gauge), of which a large proportion is owned by the Taiwan Sugar Corporation and other concerns. The state network consisted of 1,075 km. Freight traffic amounted to 19.1m. tonnes and passenger traffic to 134.4m.

**Aviation.** There are 2 international airports: Chiang Kai-shek at Taoyuan near Taipei, and Kaohsiung which operates daily flights to Hong Kong. There are 6 domestic airlines, including China Airlines (CAL), which also operates international services to Bangkok, Hong Kong, Jakarta, Kuala Lumpur, Manila, Seoul, Singapore, Amsterdam, Saudi Arabia, Japan and USA. In 1987 12.36m. passengers and 510,741 tonnes of freight were flown.

**Shipping.** The merchant marine in 1987 comprised 2 passenger ships, 88 container ships, 27 bulk carriers, 14 tankers and 129 mixed service ships, with a total DWT of 6.96m.

The 4 international ports, Kaohsiung, Keelung, Hualien and Taichung, are being extensively redeveloped. The first two are container centres. Suao port is an auxiliary port to Keelung.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 12,511 post offices. Number of telephones, 6,548,733. In 1986 there were more than 5m. TV receivers. There are 3 TV networks.

**Cinemas** (1987). Cinemas numbered 594.

**Newspapers and Books.** There were 31 daily papers with a circulation of 3.8m. and 3,486 periodicals in 1987. 8,980 book titles were published. A 36-year ban on the publication of new dailies was lifted on 1 Jan. 1988.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** There were 2.05m. Taoists in 1987 with 7,353 temples and 23,430 priests, 3.56m. Buddhists with 3,265 temples and 5,860 priests, 477,650 Protestants and, in 1986, 291,592 Catholics.

**Education.** Since 1968 there has been free compulsory education for 9 years

(6-15). In that year the curriculum was modernized to give more emphasis to science while retaining the traditional basis of Confucian ethics. Since 1983 school-leavers aged 15-18 receive part-time vocational education. There were, in 1987-88, 2,472 primary schools with 76,226 teachers and 2,400,614 pupils; 1,059 secondary schools with 78,747 teachers and 1,707,270 students; 107 schools of higher learning, including 39 universities and colleges, with 22,924 full-time teachers and 464,664 students.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 78,569 medical personnel, including 17,045 doctors, 4,150 dentists and 3,652 doctors of Chinese medicine. There were 88 public hospitals with 31,506 beds and 817 private hospitals with 46,521 beds.

### Further Reading

- Statistical Yearbook of the Republic of China.* Taipei, annual  
*Republic of China: A Reference Book.* Taipei, annual.  
*Taiwan Statistical Data Book.* Taipei, annual  
*Annual Review of Government Administration, Republic of China.* Taipei, annual  
 Gälli, A., *Taiwan ROC: A Chinese Challenge to the World.* London, 1987  
 Gold, T. B., *State and Society in the Taiwan Miracle.* Armonk, 1986  
 Hsieh, C. C., *Strategy for Survival: The Foreign Policy and External Relations of the Republic of China on Taiwan 1949-1979.* London, 1985  
 Kuo, S. W., *The Taiwan Economy in Transition.* Boulder, 1983  
 Liu, A. P. L., *Phoenix and the Lame Lion: Modernization in Taiwan and Mainland China, 1950-1980.* Stanford, 1987  
 Simon, D. F. S., *Taiwan, Technology Transfer, and Transnationalism.* Boulder, 1983  
*National Library:* National Central Library, Taipei (established 1986). *Director:* Wang Chen-ku.

# COLOMBIA

*Capital:* Bogotá

*Population:* 27.9m. (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,129 (1986)

## República de Colombia

**HISTORY.** The Vice-royalty of New Granada gained its independence of Spain in 1819, and was officially constituted 17 Dec. 1819, together with the present territories of Panama, Venezuela and Ecuador, as the state of 'Greater Colombia', which continued for about 12 years. It then split up into Venezuela, Ecuador and the republic of New Granada in 1830. The constitution of 22 May 1858 changed New Granada into a confederation of 8 states, under the name of Confederación Granadina. Under the constitution of 8 May 1863 the country was renamed 'Estados Unidos de Colombia', which were 9 in number. The revolution of 1885 led the National Council of Bogotá, composed of 2 delegates from each state, to promulgate the constitution of 5 Aug. 1886, forming the Republic of Colombia, which abolished the sovereignty of the states, converting them into departments, with governors appointed by the President of the Republic, though they retained some of their old rights, such as the management of their own finances.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Colombia is bounded north by the Caribbean sea, north-west by Panama, west by the Pacific ocean, south-west by Ecuador and Peru, north-east by Venezuela and south-east by Brazil. The estimated area is 1,141,748 sq. km (440,829 sq. miles). It has a coastline of about 2,900 km, of which 1,600 km are on the Caribbean sea and 1,300 km on the Pacific ocean. Population census, (1985) 27,867,326. Bogotá, the capital, (census, 1985) 3,982,941.

<i>Départamentos</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population census 1985</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population census 1985</i>
Antioquia	63,612	3,888,067	Medellín	1,468,089
Atlántico	3,388	1,428,601	Barranquilla	899,781
Bolívar	25,978	1,197,623	Cartagena	531,426
Boyacá	23,189	1,097,618	Tunja (M.E.)	93,792
Caldas	7,888	838,094	Manizales	299,352
Cauquetá	88,965	214,473	Florencia	79,515
Cauca	29,308	795,838	Popayán	158,336
César (El)	22,905	584,631	Valledupar	192,049
Chocó	46,530	242,768	Quibdó	75,524
Córdoba	25,020	913,636	Montería	224,147
Cundinamarca <sup>1</sup>	22,478	1,382,360	Bogotá	3,982,941
Guajira (La)	20,848	255,310	Riohacha	76,943
Huila	19,890	647,756	Neiva	194,556
Magdalena	23,188	769,141	Santa Marta	218,205
Meta	85,635	412,312	Villavicencio	178,685
Nariño	33,268	1,019,098	Pasto	244,700
Norte de Santander	21,658	883,884	Cúcuta	379,478
Quindío	1,845	377,860	Armenia	187,130
Risaralda	4,140	625,451	Pereira	287,999
Santander	30,537	1,438,226	Bucaramanga	352,326
Sucre	10,917	529,059	Sincelejo	135,857
Tolima	23,562	1,051,852	Ibagué	292,965
Valle del Cauca	22,140	2,847,087	Cali	1,350,565

<sup>1</sup> Excluding Bogotá.

<i>Intendencias</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population census 1985</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population census 1985</i>
Arauca	23,818	70,085	Arauca	21,279
Casanare	44,640	110,253	El Yopal	23,169
Putumayo	24,885	119,815	Mocoa	20,325
San Andrés y Providencia	44	35,936	San Andrés	32,282



	<i>Area</i> (sq. km)	<i>Population</i> census 1985	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population</i> census 1985
Comisarias				
Amazonas	109,665	30,327	Leticia	19,245
Guainía	72,238	9,214	Obando (Puerto Inírida)	9,214
Guaviare	53,460	35,305	San José del Guaviare	31,082
Vaupés	54,135	18,935	Mitú	13,192
Vichada	100,242	13,770	Puerto Carreño	8,081

The bulk of the population lives at altitudes of from 4,000 to 9,000 ft above sea-level. It is divided broadly into: 68% mestizo, 20% white, 7% Indio and 5% Negro.

The official language is Spanish.

**CLIMATE.** The climate includes equatorial and tropical conditions, according to situation and altitude. In tropical areas, the wettest months are March to May and Oct. to Nov. Bogotá. Jan. 58°F (14.4°C), July 57°F (13.9°C). Annual rainfall 42" (1,052 mm). Baranquilla. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 32" (799 mm). Cali. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 37" (915 mm). Medellín. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 64" (1,606 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The legislative power rests with a Congress of 2 houses, the Senate, of 112 members, and the House of Representatives, of 199 members, both elected for 4 years. Congress meets annually at Bogotá on 20 July. Women were given the vote, which is now open to citizens of either sex, over 18 years of age, on 25 Aug. 1954.

The President is elected by direct vote of the people for a term of 4 years, and is not eligible for re-election until 4 years afterwards. Congress elects, for a term of 2 years, one substitute to occupy the presidency in the event of a vacancy during a presidential term. There are 13 Ministries. The Governors of Departments and the Mayor of Bogotá are nominated by the national government.

A National Economic Council, functioning since May 1935, went through several transformations, becoming in 1954 a Directorate of Planning.

*National Flag:* Three horizontal stripes of yellow, blue, red with the yellow of double width.

*National anthem:* Oh! Gloria inmarcesible (words by R. Núñez; tune by O. Sindici).

The following is a list of presidents since 1953:

Gen. Gustavo Rojas Pinilla, 13 June 1953–10 May 1957.

*Military Junta*, Maj.-Gen. Gabriel París and 4 others, 10 May 1957–7 Aug. 1958.

Dr Alberto Lleras Camargo (Lib.), 7 Aug. 1958–7 Aug. 1962.

Dr Guillermo León Valencia (Cons.), 7 Aug. 1962–7 Aug. 1966.

Dr Carlos Lleras Restrepo (Lib.), 7 Aug. 1966–7 Aug. 1970.

Dr Misael Pastrana Borrero (Cons.), 7 Aug. 1970–7 Aug. 1974.

Dr Alfonso López Michelsen (Cons./Lib.), 7 Aug. 1974–7 Aug. 1978.

Dr Julio Cesar Turbay Ayala (Lib.), 7 Aug. 1978–7 Aug. 1982.

Dr Belisario Betancur Cuartas (Cons.), 7 Aug. 1982–7 Aug. 1986.

*President:* Dr Virgilio Barco Vargas (Lib.). He was elected on 25 May 1986 and took office on 7 Aug. 1986.

The Cabinet was composed as follows in Nov. 1988:

*Defence:* Gen. Manuel Jaime Guerrero. *Finance and Public Credit:* Luis Fernando Alarcón Mantilla. *Agriculture:* Gabriel Rosas Vega. *Economic Development:* Carlos Arturo Marulanda. *Labour and Social Security:* Juan Martín Caicedo Ferrer. *Health:* Luis H. Arraut Esquivel. *Mines and Energy:* Oscar Mejía Vallejo. *Education:* Manuel F. Becerra. *Communications:* Pedro Martín Leyes. *Public Works and Transport:* Luis Fernando Jaramillo Correa. *Government:* César Gaviria Trujillo. *Justice:* Guillermo Plazas Alcid. *Foreign Affairs:* Julio Londoño Paredes.

*Local government:* The country is divided into 23 *départamentos*, 4 *intendencias*,

5 *comisarias* and a Special District. The governor of each is appointed by the President, but each has also a directly-elected legislature. The *départementos* are subdivided into municipalities, each with a mayor appointed by the departmental governor.

**DEFENCE.** Men become liable for 1 year's military service at age 18, although the system is applied selectively. *Ex*-conscripts remain in the reserve, divided into 3 classes, until age 45.

**Army.** The Army consists of 14 infantry brigades, artillery, cavalry, engineer and motorized troops and the usual services. Personnel (1989) 69,000 men (conscripts, 25,800); reserves 116,900. Number of national police (1986) 65,869.

**Navy.** Colombia has 2 Federal German-built 1,200-ton diesel-electric powered patrol submarines completed in 1975, 2 Italian-built midget submarines; 4 new German-built missile-armed frigates; 4 old patrol vessels (*ex*-US fleet tugs); 2 fast patrol gunboats; 3 river gunboats; 4 surveying vessels; 4 coastguard patrol vessels; 10 patrol motor launches; 5 small transports, 1 training ship, 5 service craft, and 10 tugs. Personnel in 1989 totalled 5,600 men. The Navy has also a brigade of marines with 5,000 officers and men. An air arm was formed in 1984 and has 4 BO 105 helicopters for ship-based ASW and SAR duties.

**Air Force.** Formed in 1922, the Air Force has been independent of the Army and Navy since 1943, when its reorganization began with US assistance. In 1986 it had about 300 aircraft, including a squadron of Mirage 5-COA fighter-bombers, 5-COR reconnaissance aircraft and 5-COD two-seat operational trainers; 2 squadrons of A-37B jets for counter-insurgency duties, a transport group equipped with 3 C-130, 12 C-47s, 3 C-54s, 4 DC-6s and a small number of Arava, Beaver and Turbo-Porter light transports; a presidential F-28 Fellowship jet transport; 1 Boeing 707. UH-1B/H utility helicopters; and a reconnaissance unit with Iroquois, Lama, Hughes OH-6A, 300C and TH-55 helicopters. Eight more C-47s, 2 C-54s, 1 F-28 and 4 HS.748 transports are flown by the Air Force operated airline SATENA. Thirty Cessna T-41D primary trainer/light transports were delivered in 1968 and were followed by 10 T-37C jet advanced trainers to supplement piston-engined T-34s and T-33A armed jet trainers. Total strength (1989) 6,700 personnel.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Colombia is a member of the UN, OAS, the Andean Group and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1982-86 Development Plan gave priority to agriculture.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure of central government in 1986: Revenue, 945,419,000 pesos; expenditure, 901m. pesos. External public debt, 31 Dec. 1987, US\$12,530,000.

**Currency.** Coins include 1, 2, 5, 10, 20 and 50 *pesos*. There are also notes representing 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000 and 5,000 *gold pesos*. Exchange rate March 1989, 605.82 *pesos* = £1 sterling; 352.02 *pesos* = US\$1.

**Banking.** On 23 July 1923 the Banco República was inaugurated as a semi-official central bank, with the exclusive privilege of issuing bank-notes in Colombia; its charter, in 1951, was extended to 1973. Its note issues must be covered by a reserve in gold of foreign exchange of 25% of their value. Total assets (Dec. 1987) 2,198,217m.

There are 25 commercial banks, of which 12 are privately owned, 8 jointly owned by Colombian and foreign interest and 5 official in nature, with total assets of 1,387,057 pesos as of May 1986.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was introduced in 1857, but in ordinary commerce Spanish weights and measures are generally used; according to new de-

finitions by the Ministry of Development, *e.g.*, *botella* (750 grammes), *galón* (5 *botellas*), *vara* (70 cm), *arroba* (25 lb., of 500 grammes; 4 *arrobas* = 1 quintal).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Capacity of electric power (1986) was 7.19m. kw. Electric power produced in 1986, 29,580m. kwh. Supply 110, 120 and 150 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Production in 1988 was 17.38m. tonnes.

**Minerals.** Colombia is rich in minerals; gold is found chiefly in Antioquia and moderately in Cauca, Caldas, Tolima, Nariño and Chocó; output in 1987, 853,468 troy oz.

Other minerals are silver (167,277 troy oz. in 1987), copper, lead, mercury, manganese, emeralds and platinum; production of platinum, 1987, 22,530 troy oz. The chief emerald mines are those of Muzo and Chivor.

The Government holds the monopoly, which is leased to the Banco de la República, for extracting salts from the outstanding Zipaquirá mines (several hundred feet in depth and several hundred square miles in area) and for evaporating many sea salt pans; salt production in 1987 was 204,045 tonnes of land salt from the Zipaquirá mines and 616,971 tonnes of sea salt from Manaure and Galerazamba on the Caribe coast. Coal reserves were estimated at 16,500m. tonnes in 1983; production (1987, provisional) 14,594,000 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Very little of the country is under cultivation, but much of the soil is fertile and is coming into use as roads improve. The range of climate and crops is extraordinary; the agricultural colleges have different courses for 'cold-climate farming' and 'warm-climate farming'. In 1988 there were 2,170,540 hectares under temporary cultivation and 1,191,400 under permanent.

Coffee area harvested (1986) 945,000 hectares; production (1987) 12,974,000 60 kg. sacks. Crops are grown by smallholders, and are picked all the year round. Production (1987, in 1,000 tonnes): Potatoes, 2,355.4; rice, 1,878.6; maize, 887.8; sorghum, 717.7.

The rubber tree grows wild. Fibres are being exploited, notably the 'fique' fibre, which furnishes all the country's requirements for sacks and cordage; output (1987) 24,300 tonnes. Tolú balsam is cultivated, and copaiba trees are tapped but are not cultivated. Tanning is an important industry.

Livestock (1987): 23,971,000 cattle, 2,511,000 pigs, 2,652,000 sheep, 138.5m. poultry.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1984) 76,885 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production (1987): Iron, 606,764 tonnes; cement, 5,898,135 tonnes; motor cars, 42,818; industrial vehicles, 8,869.

**Commerce.** Imports (c.i.f. values) and exports (f.o.b. values) (excluding export tax) for calendar years (in US\$1m.):

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	4,492	4,131	3,852	4,228
Exports	3,483	3,552	5,108	5,024

Important articles of export in 1987 (in US\$1m.) were coffee (1,651), bananas (210), flowers (145), sugar (16), clothing and textiles (84). The chief imports are machinery, vehicles, tractors, metals and manufactures, rubber, chemical products, wheat, fertilizers and wool. It was reported (1987) that cocaine exports earn Colombia more than its main export, coffee.

Imports in 1987 (in US\$1,000) from USA were valued at 1,494,100; Venezuela, 120,516; Japan, 386,165; Federal Republic of Germany, 334,524; Brazil, 150,496. Exports (in US\$1,000) went to USA, 1,877,801; Federal Republic of Germany, 592,316; Netherlands, 212,107; Venezuela, 220,164; Italy, 68,298.



Total trade between Colombia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling).

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	80,387	112,486	94,112	65,331	61,835
Exports and re-exports from UK	43,485	82,639	58,084	61,385	53,132

**Tourism.** Foreign visitors totalled 732,000 in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Owing to the mountainous character of the country, the construction of arterial roads and railways is costly and difficult. Total length of highways, about 75,000 km in 1983. Of the 2,300-mile Simón Bolívar highway, which runs from Caracas in Venezuela to Guayaquil in Ecuador, the Colombian portion is complete. Buenaventura and Cali are linked by a highway (Carreterra al Mar). Motor vehicles in 1986 numbered 1,242,650, of which 611,978 were passenger cars and 108,826 lorries.

**Railways.** There are 5 divisions of the State Railway with a total length of 2,622 km in 1985 and a gauge of 914 mm. The Pacific Railway connects Bogotá with the port of Buenaventura. The Atlantic line from Bogotá to Sta. Marta was opened in July 1961. Three connecting links are planned to improve the operating efficiency of the network. Total railway traffic, 1987, was 1,429,000 passengers and 1,055,000 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** In civil aviation Colombia ranks perhaps second, after Brazil, among South American countries. There are 670 landing grounds of all kinds. In 1987 the national airports moved 5,524,000 passengers and 95,000 tonnes of cargo.

**Shipping.** Vessels entering Colombian ports in 1987 unloaded 6,101,000 tonnes of imports and loaded 17,543,000 tonnes of exports.

The Magdalena River is subject to drought, and navigation is always impeded during the dry season, but it is an important artery of passenger and goods traffic. The river is navigable for 900 miles; steamers ascend to La Dorada, 592 miles from Barranquilla.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The length of telephone lines in service is 705,852 km (Bogotá only); instruments in use, 1 Jan. 1984, 2,547,222. The cable company is government owned. Television was established in 1954 and in 1978 there were 1.75m. sets in use. In 1983 there were 485 radio stations, of which 50 were in Bogotá.

**Cinemas** (1986). There were 657 cinemas, of which 64 were in Bogotá.

**Newspapers** (1984). There were 31 daily newspapers, with daily circulation totalling 1.5m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court, at Bogotá, of 20 members, is divided into 3 chambers—civil cassation (6), criminal cassation (8), labour cassation (6). Each of the 61 judicial districts has a superior court with various sub-dependent tribunals of lower juridical grade. Communism was outlawed by government decree on 5 March 1956.

**Religion.** The religion is Roman Catholic, with the Cardinal Archbishop of Bogotá as Primate of Colombia and 7 other archbishops in Cartagena, Manizales, Medellín, Pamplona, Popayán, Cali and Tunja, 26 bishops, 1,546 parishes and 4,020 priests. Other forms of religion are permitted so long as their exercise is 'not contrary to Christian morals or to the law'.

**Education.** Primary education is free but not compulsory, and facilities are limited. Schools are both state and privately controlled. In 1986 there were 6,640 pre-primary schools with 292,741 pupils, 34,520 primary schools with 3,740,379 pupils. In 5,181 secondary schools there were 1,684,731 pupils and in 232 higher education establishments there were 417,786 students.

The National University in Bogotá was founded in 1886 and there are 71 other universities with (1986) 303,094 students.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 753 hospitals and clinics. There were also 861 health centres.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Colombia in Great Britain (3 Hans Cres., London, SW1X 0LR)

*Ambassador:* Dr Fernando Cepeda (accredited 28 July 1988).

Of Great Britain in Colombia (Calle 98, No. 9-03 Piso 4, Bogotá)

*Ambassador:* Richard Neilson, CMG, LVO.

Of Colombia in the USA (2118 Leroy Pl., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Victor Mosquera Chaux.

Of the USA in Colombia (Calle 38, 8-61, Bogotá)

*Ambassador:* Charles A. Gillespie Jr.

Of Colombia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Enrique Peñalosa.

### Further Reading

*Anuario General de Estadística de Colombia.* Bogotá. Annual

*Anuario de Comercio Exterior de Colombia.* Annual

*Anuario Estadístico Bogotá D. E.* Annual

*Boletín Mensual de Estadística.* Monthly

*Economía y Estadística.* Occasional

*Informe Financiero del Contralor General.* Annual

*Informe del Gerente de la Caja de Crédito Agrario, Industrial y Minero.* Annual

*Memorias (13) de los Ministros al Congreso Nacional.* Annual

Braun, H., *The Assassination of Gaitán: Public Life and Urban Violence in Colombia.* Univ. of Wisconsin Press, 1985

Hartlyn, J., *The Politics of Coalition Rule in Colombia.* CUP, 1988

Moraretz, D., *Why the Emperor's New Clothes are not made in Colombia.* OUP, 1982

# COMOROS

*Capital:* Moroni

*Population:* 422,500 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$280 (1986)

## République fédérale islamique des Comores

**HISTORY.** The 3 islands forming the present state became French protectorates at the end of the 19th century, and were proclaimed colonies on 25 July 1912. With neighbouring Mayotte they were administratively attached to Madagascar from 1914 until 1947, when the 4 islands became a French Overseas Territory, achieving internal self-government in Dec. 1961.

In referenda held on each island on 22 Dec. 1974, the 3 western islands voted overwhelmingly for independence, while Mayotte voted to remain French. The Comoran Chamber of Deputies unilaterally declared the islands' independence on 6 July 1975, but Mayotte remained a French dependency.

The first government of Ahmed Abdallah was overthrown on 3 Aug. 1975 by a *coup* led by Ali Soilih (who assumed the Presidency on 2 Jan. 1976), but Ahmed Abdallah regained the Presidency after a second *coup* ousted Ali Soilih in May 1978.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Comoros consists of 3 islands in the Indian ocean between the African mainland and Madagascar with a total area of 1,862 sq. km (719 sq. miles). Population (estimate, 1988) 434,166.

	<i>Area sq. km</i>	<i>Population census 1980</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>	<i>Population census 1980</i>
Njazidja (Grande Comore)	1,148	192,177	Moroni	20,112
Mwali (Mohéli)	290	17,194	Fomboni	5,663
Nzwani (Anjouan)	424	137,621	Mutsamudu	12,518
	<hr/> 1,862	<hr/> 346,992		

The indigenous population are a mixture of Malagasy, African, Malay and Arab peoples; the vast majority speak Comoran, an Arabised dialect of Swahili, but a small proportion speak Makua (a bantu language), French or Arabic. In 1985, 27% of the population were urban and 48% were under 15 years.

**CLIMATE.** There is a tropical climate, affected by Indian monsoon winds from the north, which gives a wet season from Nov. to April. Moroni. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall, 113" (2,825 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the new Constitution approved by referendum on 1 Oct. 1978 (amended 1983), the Comoros are a Federal Islamic Republic. Mayotte has the right to join when it so chooses.

The President is Head of State, directly elected for a 6-year term (renewable once). He appoints up to 9 other Ministers to form the Council of Government, on which each island's Governor has a non-voting seat. There is a 42-member unicameral Federal Assembly, directly elected for 5 years. Each of the 3 islands is administered by a Governor (nominated by the President), up to 4 Commissioners whom he appoints to assist him, and a Legislative Council directly elected for 5 years.

*President:* Ahmed Abdallah Abderemane (elected Oct. 1978 and re-elected Sept. 1984).

The Council of Government was composed as follows in Dec. 1986:

*Economy, Finance, Domestic Commerce and State Enterprises:* Said Ahmed Said Ali. *Foreign Affairs, Co-operation and Foreign Commerce:* Said Madi Kafe. *Health and Population:* Ali Hassanaly. *Interior, Information and Press:* Omar



Tamou. *Justice, Employment and Professional Training and Manpower*: Ben Ali Bacar. *National Education, Culture, Youth and Sports*: Salim Idarousse. *Plan, Equipment, Environment and Urbanism and Housing*: Abdou'Rahim Mikidache. *Production, Rural Development, Industry and Crafts*: Mohamed Ali. *Director General, Central Bank*: Mohamed Halifa.

There were 3 Secretaries of State.

*National flag*: Green with a crescent and 4 stars all in white in the centre, tilted towards the lower fly.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The army had a strength of about 700 in 1988.

**Navy.** An *ex*-British landing craft built in 1945 was transferred from France in 1976 and another vessel, with ramps, was purchased in 1981. Two small patrol boats were supplied by Japan in 1982.

**Air Arm.** In 1988 only 1 Cessna 402B communications aircraft and an Ecureuil helicopter were in operation.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Comoros is a member of UN and an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1984, current revenue amounted to 6,066m. Comorian francs and current expenditure to 7,008m. Comorian francs; the separate capital budget totalled 593m. Comorian francs revenue against 1,000m. Comorian francs expenditure.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *Comorian franc*. There are banknotes of 500, 1,000, and 5,000 *Comorian francs*. In March 1989, £1 = CF541.63; US\$1 = CF314.72.

**Banking.** The Institut d'émission des Comores was established as the new bank of issue in 1975. The chief commercial banks are the Banque des Comores, established in 1974 by the separation of the former Comoran section of the Banque de Madagascar et des Comores and the Banque de Développement des Comores.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 5m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The chief product was formerly sugar-cane, but now vanilla, copra, maize and other food crops, cloves and essential oils (citronella, ylang, lemon-grass) are the most important products. Production (1986 in tonnes): Cassava, 93,000; coconuts, 47,000; bananas, 36,000; sweet potatoes, 18,000; rice, 16,000; maize, 6,000 and copra, 3,000.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 88,000; sheep, 9,000; goats, 96,000; asses, 4,000.

**Forestry.** Njazidja has a fine forest and produces timber for building.

**Fisheries.** In 1983 the catch was (estimate) 4,000 tonnes.

**COMMERCE.** Imports in 1985 amounted to 16,481m. Comorian francs, exports to 7,048m. Comorian francs. France provided 41% of imports and took 66% of exports. The main exports (1985) were vanilla (67% of value), cloves (20%), ylang-ylang (9%), essences, copra and coffee.

Trade between Comoros and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	236	234	...	91	33
Exports and re-exports from UK	316	603	307	527	333

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were about 5,000 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1983 there were 750 km of classified roads, of which 262 km were tarmac. There were 3,600 passenger cars and about 2,000 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport at Hahaya (on Njazidja). Air Comores have twice-weekly flights to Antananarivo, Dar es Salaam and Mombasa. Air France and Air Madagascar also have twice-weekly flights to Antananarivo. Air Comores has daily internal flights between Moroni and Nzwani, and 5 per week between Moroni and Mwali.

**Shipping.** In 1982, vessels entering Comoran ports (excluding internal traffic) discharged 39,000 tonnes and loaded 15,000 tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 496 telephones in 1983. *Comores-Inter* broadcasts in French and Comorian on short-wave and FM for approximately 8 hours a day. Number of radios (1988) 40,000.

**Cinemas.** In 1973 there were 2 cinemas with a seating capacity of 800.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** French and Moslem law is in a new consolidated code. The Supreme Court comprises 7 members, 2 each appointed by the President and the Federal Assembly, and 1 by each island's Legislative Council.

**Religion.** Islam is the official religion, and over 99% of the population are Sunni Moslems; there are about 1,000 Christians.

**Education.** In 1981 there were 59,709 pupils and 1,292 teachers in 236 primary schools; 32 secondary schools had 13,528 pupils and 432 teachers, 2 technical schools held 151 students with 9 teachers, and a teacher-training college had 119 students and 8 teachers.

**Health.** In 1978 there were 20 doctors, 1 dentist, 2 pharmacists, 35 midwives and 124 nursing personnel. In 1980 there were 17 hospitals and clinics with 763 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in Comoros

*Ambassador:* R. B. Crowson, CMG (resides in Port Louis).

Of the Comoros in the USA

*Ambassador:* Amini Al Moumin.

Of the USA in the Comoros

*Ambassador:* Patricia Gates Lynch (resides in Antananarivo).

Of the Comoros to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Amini Al Moumin.

## Further Reading

Newitt, N., *The Comoro Islands*. London, 1985

# CONGO

Capital: Brazzaville  
Population: 2-27m. (1988)  
GNP per capita: US\$1,040 (1986)

## République Populaire du Congo

**HISTORY.** First occupied by France in 1882, the Congo became (as 'Middle Congo') a territory of French Equatorial Africa from 1910-58, when it became a member state of the French Community. It became an independent Republic on 15 Aug. 1960.

The first President, Fulbert Youlou, was deposed on 15 Aug. 1963 by a *coup* led by Alphonse Massamba-Débat, who became President on 19 Dec. Following a second *coup* in Aug. 1968, the Army took power under the leadership of Major Marien Ngouabi, whose colleague, Major Alfred Raoul, was appointed President from 3 Sept. until 1 Jan. 1969, when Ngouabi himself became President.

The country's present name was established on 3 Jan. 1970, when a Marxist-Leninist state was introduced. Ngouabi was assassinated on 18 March 1977, and succeeded by Col. Joachim Yhombi-Opango, who in turn was replaced on 5 Feb. 1979 by Col. Denis Sassou-Nguesso.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Congo is bounded by Cameroon and the Central African Republic in the north, Zaïre to the east and south, the Cabinda province of Angola and the Atlantic to the south-west and Gabon to the west, and covers 342,000 sq. km; census population (1984), 1,909,248. Estimate (1988) 2,266,000. The main towns (census, 1984) are Brazzaville, the capital (585,812), Pointe-Noire, the main port and oil centre (294,203), N'kayi (formerly Jacob) (35,540) and Loubomo (formerly Dolisie) (49,134). Over 51% were urban.

The areas, populations and capitals of the Regions in 1984 were:

Region	Sq. km	1984	Capital	Region	Sq. km	1984	Capital
Kouilou	13,694	369,073	Pointe-Noire	Fed. District	65	585,812	Brazzaville
Niari	25,942	173,606	Loubomo	Plateaux	38,400	109,663	Djambala
Lékoumou	20,950	68,287	Sibiti	Cuvette	74,850	135,744	Owando
Bouenza	12,265	187,143	N'kayi	Sangha	55,800	46,152	Ouessou
Pool	33,990	184,263	Kinkala	Likouala	66,044	49,505	Impfondo

In 1984, 45% spoke Kongo dialects, chiefly in the south and south-west; 20% were Teke (in the south-east); 15% Sanka and 16% Ubangi chiefly inhabit the north. There are also about 12,000 pygmies and 12,000 Europeans (mainly French). French is the official language, but 2 local *patois*, Monokutuba (west of Brazzaville) and Lingala (north of Brazzaville), serve as lingua francas.

**CLIMATE.** An equatorial climate, with moderate rainfall and a small range of temperature. There is a long dry season from May to Oct. in the S.W. plateaux, but the Congo Basin in the N.E. is more humid, with rainfall approaching 100'' (2,500 mm). Brazzaville. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 59'' (1,473 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In July 1979 a new Constitution was approved by referendum. Executive power was vested in the President, elected for a 5-year term by the National Congress of the *Parti congolais du travail* (the sole legal party since 1969). The President is assisted by a Council of Ministers, appointed and led by him. The PCT Congress elects a Central Committee of 75 members and a Political Bureau of 10 to administer it; it nominates all candidates for the 153-member People's National Assembly and for the regional, district and local councils, all of which were last elected on 11 Aug. 1984. In 1984 a constitu-



tional amendment made the President Head of Government and reduced the role of the Prime Minister to that of a co-ordinator.

The Council of Ministers in July 1988 was composed as follows:

*President, Head of Government, Minister of Defence and Security:* Col. Denis Sassou-Nguesso.

*Prime Minister:* Ange-Edouard Pongui.

*Minister in the President's Office in charge of Defence and Security:* Col. Emmanuel Elenga. *Rural Development:* Justin Lekoundzou Itihi Ossetoumba. *Transport and Civil Aviation:* Col. Raymond Damas Ngollo. *Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Antoine Ndinga Oba. *Industry, Fisheries and Crafts:* Hilaire Mounthault. *Planning, Finance and Economy:* Pierre Moussa. *Territorial Administration and People's Power:* Lt.-Col. Benoît Moundele Ngolo. *Public Works, Construction, Housing and Urban Affairs:* Florent Tsiba. *Public Health and Social Affairs:* Bernard Combo Matsiona. *Mines and Energy, Posts and Telecommunications:* Aimé Emmanuel Yoka. *Forestry:* Ambroise Noumazalaye. *Secondary and Higher Education:* Rodolphe Adada. *Commerce, Small and Medium Enterprises:* Alphonse Poati-Souchalaty. *Basic Education and Literacy:* Pierre-Damien Bassoukou-Boumba. *Scientific Research and Environment:* Ossebi Douniam. *Sports and Leisure:* Jean-Claude Ganga. *Justice, Labour and Social Security:* Dieudonné Kimbembe. *Information:* Paul Ngatse. *Culture and Arts, Tourism:* Jean-Baptiste Tati-Loutard.

*National flag:* Red, in the canton the national emblem of a crossed hoe and mattock, a green wreath and a gold star.

*Local Government:* The republic is divided into the capital district of Brazzaville and 9 regions (each under an appointed Commissioner and an elected Council), which are sub-divided into 46 districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 8 battalions, 2 armoured, 1 artillery and 3 infantry, 1 engineering, and 1 paracommando. Equipment includes 35 T-54/-55 and 15 T-59 tanks. Total personnel (1989) 8,000.

**Navy.** The flotilla includes 3 new Spanish-built fast attack craft, 1 ex-Soviet patrol (ex-torpedo) boat, 3 ex-Chinese gunboats, 4 ex-Chinese river patrol craft, 2 ex-Soviet guard vessels, 4 small patrol cutters, 2 French-built modern tugs and 12 small river patrol boats. Personnel in 1989 totalled 300 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had (1989) about 500 personnel, 15 MiG-17 jet fighters, 1 twin-turboprop F28 Fellowship for VIP transport, 6 Antonov An-24/26 turboprop transports, 2 C-47, 2 Nord 262, and 2 Noratlas piston-engined transports, 3 Broussard communications aircraft, 4 L-39 jet trainers and 2 Alouette II and 1 Alouette III light helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Congo is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The National 5-year Development Plan 1982-86 envisaged an investment of 1,105,000m. francs CFA.

**Budget.** The 1988 Budget provided for revenue of 251,800m. francs CFA (over 50% from overseas funding) and expenditure of 283,976m. francs CFA, of which 252,800m. were for administration and 31,976m. for investment.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc CFA* with a parity value of 50 *francs CFA* to 1 French franc. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100 and 500 *francs CFA*, and banknotes of 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *francs CFA*. In March 1989, £1 = 541.63 *francs*; US\$1 = 314.72 *francs*.

**Banking.** The *Banque des États de l'Afrique Centrale* is the bank of issue. There are

4 commercial banks situated in Brazzaville, including the *Banque Commerciale Congolaise* and the *Union Congolaise de Banques*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1985 was 306m. kwh from a hydro-electric plant at Djoué near Brazzaville and from about 6 thermal plants. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Oil reserves are estimated at 500–1,000m. tonnes. Output in 1988 was 6.4m. tonnes from the 26 offshore oil platforms operated by Elf Congo and Agip Congo. A refinery at Pointe-Noire came on stream in Dec. 1982.

**Minerals.** Lead, copper, zinc and gold (3 kg in 1983) are the main minerals. There are reserves of phosphates, bauxite and iron.

**Agriculture.** Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Cassava, 620; sugar-cane, 510; pineapples, 110; bananas, 34; plantains, 64; yams, 14; maize, 8; groundnuts, 16; palm-oil, 15.6; coffee, 2; cocoa, 2; rice, 3; sweet potatoes, 14.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 71,000; pigs, 45,000; sheep, 64,000; goats, 185,000; poultry, 1m.

**Forestry.** Equatorial forests cover 20m. hectares (60% of the total land area) from which (in 1983) 2,238,000 cu. metres of timber were produced, mainly okoumé from the south and sapele from the north. Hardwoods (mainly mahogany) are also exported.

**Fisheries.** In 1983 the catch amounted to 31,926 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There is a growing manufacturing sector, located mainly in the 4 major towns, producing processed foods, textiles, cement (39,242 tonnes in 1982), metal industries and chemicals; in 1981 it employed 26% of the labour force.

**Trade Unions.** In 1964 the existing unions merged into one national body, the *Confédération Syndicale Congolaise*.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1985 totalled 306,198m. francs CFA (mainly machinery) and exports 488,366m. (of which petroleum 93%). In 1985 39% of imports were from France; 60% of exports were to USA, 14% to Spain and 11% to France.

Total trade between the Congo and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,958	2,819	2,444	1,930	2,016
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,207	12,112	9,165	19,219	8,521

**Tourism.** There were 39,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1982) 8,246 km of all-weather roads, of which 849 km were paved. In 1982 there were 30,500 cars and 18,600 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** A railway (517 km, 1,067 mm gauge) and a telegraph line connect Brazzaville with Pointe-Noire and a 200 km branch railway links Mont-Belo with Mbinda on the Gabon border. In 1986 railways carried 2.5m. passengers and 1.3m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** The principal airports are at Maya Maya (near Brazzaville) and Pointe-Noire. In addition there are 22 airfields served by the local airline, Lina-Congo.

**Shipping.** Pointe-Noire handled (1979) 2.4m. tonnes of goods including manganese from Gabon. There were (1985) 21 vessels of 8,458 GWT registered. There are hydrofoil connexions from Brazzaville to Kinshasa (30 km across the river).

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephones (1983) numbered 18,093. In 1985 there were 99,000 radios and 5,000 TV sets in use.

**Cinemas.** In 1973 there were 7 cinemas with a seating capacity of 5,100.

**Newspapers.** In 1986 there were 3 daily newspapers with a combined circulation of 24,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court, Court of Appeal and a criminal court are situated in Brazzaville, with a network of *tribunaux de grande instance* and *tribunaux d'instance* in the regions.

**Religion.** In 1980, 54% of the population were Roman Catholic, 24% Protestant, 19% followed animist beliefs and 3% were Moslem.

**Education.** In 1982 there were 406,835 pupils and 6,997 teachers in 1,377 primary schools, 171,862 pupils and 3,638 teachers in 122 secondary schools, 18,150 students with 1,261 teachers in 36 technical schools and teacher-training establishments. The Université Marien-Ngouabi (founded 1972) in Brazzaville had 7,255 students and 292 teaching staff in 1980. Adult literacy (1980) 56%.

**Health.** There were (1978) 274 doctors, 2 dentists, 28 pharmacists, 413 midwives, 1,915 nursing personnel and 473 hospitals and dispensaries with 6,876 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Congo in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Jean-Marie Ewengue (accredited 12 June 1986, resides in Paris).

Of Great Britain in the Congo (Ave. du General de Gaulle, Plateau, Brazzaville)

*Ambassador:* A. I. Glasby.

Of the Congo in the USA (4891 Colorado Ave., NW, Washington D.C., 20011)

*Ambassador:* Benjamin Bounkoulou.

Of the USA in the Congo (PO Box 1015, Brazzaville)

*Ambassador:* Leonard G. Shurtleff.

Of the Congo to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Martin Adouki.

## Further Reading

Thompson, V. and Adloff, R., *Historical Dictionary of the People's Republic of the Congo*. 2nd ed. Metuchen, 1984



# COSTA RICA

*Capital:* San José  
*Population:* 2·81m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$1,420 (1986)

## República de Costa Rica

**HISTORY.** Part of the Spanish Viceroyalty of New Spain from 1540, Costa Rica (the 'Rich Coast') formed part of Central America when the latter acquired independence on 15 Sept. 1821. Central America seceded to Mexico on 5 Jan. 1822 until 1 July 1823, when it became an independent confederation as the United Provinces of Central America. The province of Guanacaste was acquired from Nicaragua in 1825. Costa Rica left the confederation and achieved full independence in 1838. The first Constitution was promulgated on 7 Dec. 1871.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Costa Rica is bounded north by Nicaragua, east by the Caribbean, southeast by Panama, and south and west by the Pacific. The area is estimated at 51,100 sq. km (19,730 sq. miles). The population at the census of 1 June 1984 was 2,416,809. Estimate (1988) 2,816,558.

The area and census of population for 1 June 1984 was as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population</i>
San José	4,959·63	890,434	San José	241,464
Alajuela	9,753·23	427,962	Alajuela	34,556
Cartago	3,124·67	271,671	Cartago	23,928
Heredia	2,656·27	197,575	Heredia	21,440
Guanacaste	10,140·71	195,208	Liberia	22,525 <sup>1</sup>
Puntarenas	11,276·97	265,883	Puntarenas	29,224 <sup>1</sup>
Limón	9,188·52	168,076	Limón	52,602 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> District

In 1986, 50% lived in urban areas, and 37% were aged under 15; population density (1988) 55 per sq. km.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1984	20,558 <sup>1</sup>	78,197 <sup>1</sup>	9,931 <sup>1</sup>
1985	19,747 <sup>1</sup>	84,252 <sup>1</sup>	10,968 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

The population of European descent, many of them of pure Spanish blood, dwell mostly around the capital of the republic, San José, and in the principal towns of the provinces. Limón, on the Caribbean coast, and Puntarenas, on the Pacific coast, are the chief commercial ports. The United Fruit Co., who in 1941 abandoned their banana plantations on the Atlantic coast in favour of large new plantations on the Pacific coast, have constructed ports at Quepos and Golfito. The Standard Fruit Co. and others have cleared land since 1958 in the Atlantic coast area. There are some 15,000 West Indians, mostly in Limón province. The indigenous Indian population is dwindling and is now estimated at 1,200. There were (1988) some 23,100 refugees (19,000 from Nicaragua).

Spanish is the language of the country.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with a small range of temperature and abundant rains. The dry season is from Dec. to April. San José. Jan. 66°F (18·9°C), July 69°F (20·6°C). Annual rainfall 72" (1,793 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution was promulgated in Nov. 1949. It forbids the establishment or maintenance of an army. The legislative power is normally vested in a single chamber called the Legislative Assembly, which since 1962 consists of 57 deputies, 1 for every 49,000 inhabitants.

elected for 4 years. The President and 2 Vice-Presidents are elected for 4 years; the candidate receiving the largest vote, provided it is over 40% of the total, is declared elected, but a second ballot is required if no candidate gets 40% of the total. Suffrage is universal, there being no exemption for reasons of economic status, race or sex. The vote is direct by secret ballot for all nationals of 18 years or over. Elections are normally held on the first Sunday in February. Voting for President, Deputies and Municipal Councillors is secret and compulsory for all men under 70 years of age. Independent non-party candidates are barred from the ballot.

The Cabinet in Dec. 1988 was composed as follows:

*President:* Oscar Arias Sánchez, elected 2 Feb. 1986.

*Minister at the Presidency:* Rodrigo Arias Sánchez. *Foreign Affairs:* Rodrigo Madrigal Nieto. *Interior and Police:* Guido Fernández Saborio. *Finance:* Fernando Naranjo Villalobos. *Health:* Dr Edgar Mohs Villalta. *Public Works and Transport:* Guillermo Constenla Umaña. *Public Security:* Hernán Garrón Salazar. *Agriculture:* Alberto Esquivel Volio. *Education:* Francisco Antonio Pacheco. *Economy and Commerce:* Luis Diego Escalante Vargas. *Industry, Energy and Mines:* Calixto Chávez Zamora. *Culture, Youth and Sports:* Carlos Francisco Echeverría Salgado. *Labour and Social Security:* Edwin León. *Housing and Urban Development:* Fernando Zumbado Jiménez. *Science and Technology:* Rodrigo Zeledón Araya. *Foreign Trade:* Muni Figueres de Jiménez. *Justice:* Luis Paulino Mora. *Planning:* Otón Solís Fallas. *Co-ordinator of Presidential Advisers:* Danilo Jiménez Veiga. *Central Bank President:* Eduardo Lizano Fait. *Vice-President:* Jorge Manuel Dengo. *Vice-President:* Victoria Garrón de Doryan.

The powers of the President are limited by the constitution, which leaves him the power to appoint and remove at will members of his cabinet. All other public appointments are made jointly in the names of the President and of the minister in charge of the department concerned.

*National flag:* Five unequal stripes of blue, white, red, white, blue, with the national arms on a white disc near the hoist.

*National anthem:* Noble patria, tu hermosa bandera (words by J. M. Zeledón, 1903; tune by M. M. Gutiérrez, 1851).

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army was abolished in 1948, and replaced by a Civil Guard reputed to be 6,000 strong. There has never been compulsory military service or training.

**Navy.** The flotilla includes 1 fast patrol craft and 1 armed tug on the Atlantic coast and 5 small coastguard cutters on the Pacific coast. Personnel (1989) 100 officers and men.

**Air Wing.** The Civil Guard operates a small air wing equipped with about 15 light-planes and helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Costa Rica is a member of UN, CACM and OAS.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1985 Budget provided for revenue of 41,101.6m. colones and expenditure of 43,135.5m. colones.

External government debt on 31 Dec. 1985 was US\$3,665m.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *colone* (C). The official rate in March 1989 was C80.28 = US\$1; 138.15 = £1. The official rate is used for all imports on an essential list and by the Government and autonomous institutions and a free rate is used for all other transactions.

The currency is chiefly notes. The Banco Central issue notes for 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 colones. Silver coins of 1 colone, 50 centimos and 25 centimos were in 1935 replaced by coins (2 and 1 colones and 50 and 25 centimos) made up

of 3 parts copper and 1 part nickel, and given the same value as the subsidiary silver currency. There are copper coins (and chromium stainless steel coins) of 10 and 5 centimos.

**Banking.** By a law passed on 28 Jan. 1950 a Central Bank was established for the organization and direction of the national monetary system and of dealings in foreign exchange, the promotion of facilities for credit and the supervision of all banking operations in the country. The bank has a board of 7 directors appointed by the Government, including *ex officio* the Minister of Finance and the Planning Office Director.

The National Insurance Institute (*Instituto Nacional de Seguros*) is a Government organization, created in 1924, which has a monopoly of new insurance business.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is legally established; but in the country districts the following old Spanish weights and measures are found: *libra* = 1.014 lb. avoirdupois; *arroba* = 25.35 lb. avoirdupois; *quintal* = 101.40 lb. avoirdupois, and *fanega* = 11 Imperial bushels.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity, derived from water power in the highlands, is increasingly used as motive power. Output, 1986, was 2,770m. kwh. Supply 120 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Gold output is about 3,000 troy oz. per year. Salt production from sea water is about 10,000 tonnes annually. Haematite ore was discovered on the Nicoya Peninsula late in 1960 and sulphur near San Carlos in 1966. The United Nations have offered US\$1m. towards a 3-year mining survey.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the principal industry. The cultivated area is about 1m. acres; grass lands cover 1.8m. acres; forests and woodlands, 9,855,000 acres. There are thousands of square miles of public lands that have never been cleared on which can be found quantities of rosewood, cedar, mahogany and other cabinet woods. The principal agricultural products are coffee, bananas, sugar and cattle. Coffee normally accounts for about half the country's foreign-exchange earnings.

Coffee production in 1986 was 128,000 tonnes; sugar-cane, 2.65m.; bananas, 1m.; cocoa, 5,000; maize, 104,000; tobacco, 2,000; rice, 186,000; potatoes, 40,000.

Dairy-farming and cattle-raising are substantial pursuits. In 1987 cattle numbered 2.36m. and pigs 238,000.

Costa Rica is the seat of the Inter-American Institute of Agricultural Sciences, with headquarters at Turrialba.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main manufactured goods are foodstuffs, textiles, fertilizers, pharmaceuticals, furniture, cement, tyres, canning, clothing, plastic goods, plywood and electrical equipment.

Industrial production was valued at 25.1m. colones in 1980, compared with 1.499m. in 1972.

**Labour.** As Costa Rica is still essentially an agricultural country, the organization of labour has made progress only in the larger centres of population, and even there it is not a strong movement. There are two main trade unions, *Rerum Novarum* (anti-Communist) and *Confederación General de Trabajadores Costarricenses* (Communist).

**Commerce.** The value of imports into and exports from Costa Rica in 5 years was as follows in US\$:

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	1,208,529,000	867,000,000	987,826,445	1,093,739,311	1,098,178,489
Exports	1,030,203,040	870,800,000	559,951,375	1,006,389,617	...



The values (in US\$1m.) of the principal imports in 1984 were: Machinery, including transport equipment, 219.6; manufactures, 317.5; chemicals, 250.1; fuel and mineral oils, 166.7; foodstuffs, 9.

Chief exports (in US\$1m.) in 1984 were: Manufactured goods and other products, 450.6; coffee, 267.8 (mostly to Federal Republic of Germany, USA, UK and Italy); bananas, 251 (to USA); sugar, 35.5; cocoa, 1.5.

Total trade between Costa Rica and UK (British Department of Trade returns in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	21,248	22,646	30,318	16,752	16,902
Exports and re-exports from UK	9,138	14,413	12,007	14,407	11,390

**Tourism.** There was a total of 261,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were about 28,994 km of all-weather motor roads open. On the Costa Rica section of the Inter-American Highway it is possible to motor to Panama during the dry season. The Pan-American Highway into Nicaragua is metalled for most of the way and there is now a good highway open almost to Puntarenas. Motor vehicles, 1985, numbered 186,046.

**Railways.** The nationalized railway system (*Incofer*), totalling 828.5 km (128 km electrified) of 1,067 mm gauge, connects San José with Limón, the Atlantic port, and San José with Puntarenas, the Pacific port. Total railway traffic in 1985 was 1m. tonnes of freight and 2m. passengers.

**Aviation.** There were 92 airports (59 private) in service in 1984. Passenger movement in and out of Costa Rica is almost entirely by air *via* the local company, LACSA, PANAM and TACA. Passengers carried, 1984, 1,014,559. LACSA links San José by daily services with all the more important towns.

**Shipping.** In 1981, 1,221 ships entered and cleared the ports of the republic (Puerto Limón, Puntarenas and Golfito).

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 281,042 telephones in 1983.

The commercial wireless telegraph stations are operated by *Cia Radiográfica Internacional de Costa Rica*. The stations are located at Cartago, Limón, Puntarenas, Quepos and Golfito. The Government has 19 wireless telegraph stations in its local network. The principal or central station at San José also maintains international radio-telegraph circuits to Nicaragua, Honduras, San Salvador and Mexico. The Government has 202 telegraph offices and 88 official telephone stations. In 1986 there were 200,000 radio and 470,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1979). Cinemas numbered 106, with seating capacity of 105,000.

**Newspapers** (1984). There were 4 daily newspapers all published in San José.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Supreme Court, 5 appeal courts divided into 5 chambers; the Court of Cassation, the Higher and Lower Criminal Courts, and the Higher and Lower Civil Courts. There are also subordinate courts in the separate provinces and local justices throughout the republic. Capital punishment may not be inflicted.

**Religion.** Roman Catholicism is the religion of the State, which contributes to its maintenance but controls the Church Patronage and insists on lay instruction in history, economics and similar subjects; there is entire religious liberty under the constitution, but religious appeals are forbidden in current political discussions. The Archbishop of Costa Rica has 4 bishops at Alajuela, Limón, San Isidro el General and Tilarán.

Protestants number about 40,000.

**Education.** Costa Rica has a very low illiteracy rate. Elementary instruction is compulsory and free; secondary education (since 1949) is also free. Elementary schools are provided and maintained by local school councils, while the national government pays the teachers, besides making subventions in aid of local funds. In 1984 there were 3,068 public primary schools with 12,223 teachers and administrative staff and 353,958 enrolled pupils; there were 241 public and private secondary schools with 148,032 pupils. The University of Costa Rica, founded in San José in 1843, had (1980) 2,337 professors in 13 faculties and 38,629 students.

**Health.** In 1982 there were 1,929 doctors and 39 hospitals with 7,706 beds. In 1979 there were 239 dentists.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Costa Rica in Great Britain (14 Lancaster Gate, London, W2 3LW)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Juan Fernando Cordero-Arias

Of Great Britain in Costa Rica (Edificio Centro Colon, Apartado 815, San José)

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* Michael Daly, CMG.

Of Costa Rica in the USA (1825 Connecticut Ave., NW Washington D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Danilo Jimenez.

Of the USA in Costa Rica (Avenida 3 and Calle 1, San José)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* James L. Tull.

Of Costa Rica to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Carlos José Gutierrez.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Official statistics are issued by the Director General de Estadística (Ministerio de Industria y Comercio, San José) as they become available. The compilation of statistics was started in 1861.

Ameringer, C. D., *Democracy in Costa Rica*. New York, 1982

Biesanz, R., (et al), *The Costa Ricans*. Hemel Hempstead, 1982

Bird, L., *Costa Rica: Unarmed Democracy*. London, 1984

Fernandez Guardia, L., *Historia de Costa Rica*. 2nd ed., 2 vols. San José, 1941

Seligson, M. A., *Peasants of Costa Rica and the Development of Agrarian Capitalism*. Univ. of Wisconsin Press, 1980

Stansifer, C. and Miller, R., *Costa Rica*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

# CÔTE D'IVOIRE

*Capital:* Abidjan  
*Population:* 11.63m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$740 (1986)

## République de la Côte d'Ivoire

**HISTORY.** France obtained rights on the coast in 1842, but did not actively and continuously occupy the territory till 1882. On 10 Jan. 1889 Ivory Coast was declared a French protectorate, and it became a colony on 10 March 1893; in 1904 it became a territory of French West Africa. On 1 Jan. 1933 most of the territory of Upper Volta was added to the Ivory Coast, but on 1 Jan. 1948 this area was returned to the re-constituted Upper Volta, now Burkina Faso. The Ivory Coast became an autonomous republic within the French Community on 4 Dec. 1958 and achieved full independence on 7 Aug. 1960. From 1 Jan. 1986 the French version of the name of the country became the only correct title.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Côte d'Ivoire is bounded west by Liberia and Guinea, north by Mali and Burkina Faso, east by Ghana, and south by the Gulf of Guinea. It has an area of 322,463 sq. km and a population at the 1975 census of 6,702,866 (of whom 31.8% were urban). Estimate (1988) 11,634,000 (50% urban).

The areas and populations of the 34 departments were:

<i>Department</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1975</i>	<i>Department</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1975</i>
Abengourou	6,900	177,692	Ferkéssédougou	17,728	90,423
Abidjan	14,200	1,389,141	Gagnoa	4,500	174,018
Aboisso	6,250	148,823	Guiglo	14,150	137,672
Adzopé	5,230	162,837	Issia	3,590	104,081
Agboville	3,850	141,970	Katiola	9,420	77,875
Biankouma	4,950	75,711	Korhogo	12,500	276,816
Bondoukou	16,530	296,551	Lakota	2,730	76,105
Bongouanou	5,570	216,907	Man	7,050	278,659
Bouaflé	5,670	164,817	Mankono	10,660	82,358
Bouaké	23,800	808,048	Odienné	20,600	124,010
Bouna	21,470	84,290	Oumé	2,400	85,486
Boundiali	7,895	96,449	Sassandra	17,530	116,644
Dabakala	9,670	56,230	Séguéla	11,240	75,181
Daloa	11,610	265,529	Soubre	8,270	75,350
Danané	4,600	170,249	Tingréla	2,200	35,829
Dimbokro	8,530	258,116	Touba	8,720	77,786
Divo	7,920	202,511	Zuénoula	2,830	98,792

The principal cities (populations, census 1975) are the capital, Abidjan (951,216; estimate 1982, 1.85m.), Bouaké (175,264), Daloa (60,837), Man (50,288), Korhogo (45,250) and Gagnoa (42,362). The new capital will be at Yamoussoukro (120,000 in 1984).

The principal ethnic groups are the Akan-speaking peoples of the south-east (Baule, 12% and Anyi, 11%) and the Bete (20%) and Kru of the south-west; in the north-east are Voltaic groups including Senoufo (14%), while Malinké (7%) and other Mandé peoples inhabit the north-west.

French is the official language and there were (1985) about 50,000 French residents.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, affected by distance from the sea. In coastal areas, there are wet seasons from May to July and in Oct. and Nov., but in central areas the periods are March to May and July to Nov. In the north, there is one wet season from June to Oct. Abidjan. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 84" (2,100 mm). Bouaké. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 48" (1,200 mm).



**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1960 Constitution was amended in 1971, 1975, 1980, 1985 and 1986. The sole legal Party is the *Parti Démocratique de la Côte d'Ivoire*. There is a 175-member National Assembly elected by universal suffrage (Elections were held in Nov. 1985) for a 5-year term. The President is also directly elected for a 5-year term (renewable). He appoints and leads a Council of Ministers who assist him.

The Government was in Jan. 1988 composed as follows:

*President:* Félix Houphouët-Boigny. (Re-elected for a sixth 5-year term in 1985).

*Ministers of State:* Auguste Denise, Mathieu Ekra, Camille Alliali, Maurice Seri Gnoleba, Emile Kéi Boguinard, Lamine Diabate, Lanzeni N. P. Coulibaly, Paul Gui Dibo, Amadou Thiam. *Public Health and Population:* Alphonse Djedje Mady. *Information and Culture:* Laurent Dona Fologo. *Commerce:* Nicolas Kouandi Angba. *Labour and 'Ivorization' of Personnel:* Albert Vanié Bi Tra. *Civil Service:* Jean-Jacques Bechio. *Tourism:* Duon Sadia. *Social Affairs:* Yaya Ouattara. *Mining:* Yed Esai Angoran. *Internal Security:* Gen. Oumar N'daw. *Justice, Keeper of the Seals:* Noel Neme. *Defence:* Jean Konan Banny. *Interior:* Siméon Konan. *Foreign Affairs:* Siméon Ake. *Economy and Finance:* Abdoulaye Koné. *Agriculture, Water and Forest Resources:* Denis Bra Kanon. *National Education, responsible for Secondary and Higher Education:* Dr Bala Keita and 14 other ministers.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of orange, white, green.

*Local government:* There are 34 departments, each under an appointed Prefect and an elected Conseil-Général, sub-divided into 163 sub-prefectures.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consisted in 1989 of 1 armoured battalion, 3 infantry battalions and support units. Equipment includes 5 AMX-13 light tanks and 7 ERC-90 armoured cars. Total strength (1989), 5,500. Paramilitary forces, 7,800.

**Navy.** Offshore, riverine and coastal patrol squadrons include 2 fast missile craft, 2 patrol vessels, 1 river defence craft, 1 light transport, 4 fast assault boats and 2 minor landing craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 70 officers and 630 ratings.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, formed in 1962, has 6 Alpha Jet advanced trainers, with combat potential, 1 turbofan F-28 Fellowship, 1 Super-King Air, 1 Cessna 421, 1 Gulfstream transport, 2 Reims-Cessna 150s, 6 Beech F-33Cs and 4 SA330 Puma, 4 Dauphin 2 and Alouette III helicopters. Personnel (1989) 900.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Côte d'Ivoire is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1981-85 Five Year Development Plan concentrated on the primary sector, mainly increasing food production.

**Budget.** The budget for 1988 totalled 493,500m. francs CFA and for recurrent expenditure and 143,600m. francs CFA for investment. Capital expenditure 145,879 francs CFA.

**Currency.** The currency is the *franc CFA* with a parity rate of 50 *francs CFA* to 1 French *franc*. In March 1989, £1 sterling = 541.63 francs CFA; US\$1 = 314.72 francs CFA.

**Banking.** The *Banque Centrale des Etats de l'Afrique de l'Ouest* is the bank of issue. Numerous foreign and domestic banks have offices in Abidjan, and *Société Générale de Banque*, *Société Ivoirienne de Banque*, *Banque Internationale pour le Commerce et l'Industrie de la Côte d'Ivoire* and *Banque Internationale pour l'Afrique Occidentale* maintain wide branch networks throughout the country.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1985 amounted to 2,162 m. kwh mostly from new hydro-electric projects at Kassou and Taabo on the Bandama river, Buyo on the Sassandra river, and from 2 older dams on the Bia river. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Petroleum has been produced (offshore) since Oct. 1977. Production (1988) 800,000 tonnes.

**Minerals.** Diamond extraction was 700,000 carats in 1985. Exploitation of iron ore deposits at Bangolo in the west await completion of hydro-electric projects.

**Agriculture.** The main export crops (production 1986 in 1,000 tonnes) are coffee (280), cocoa (520), bananas (170), pineapples (300), palm oil (180), palm kernels (43), seed cotton (206) and rubber (48); food crops include yams (2,996), cassava (1,500), plantains (1,400), rice (460), maize (550), millet (35) and groundnuts (86). Sugar-cane (1.5 m. tonnes in 1986) is grown on new plantations in the north at Ferkéssédougou and elsewhere.

Livestock, 1987: 965,000 cattle, 1.5 m. sheep, 1.5 m. goats, 450,000 pigs, 1,000 horses and 1,000 donkeys.

**Forestry.** Equatorial rain forests, especially in the south, cover 3 m. hectares and produce over 30 commercially valuable species including teak, mahogany and ebony. Production in 1983 was 11.8 m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1985 amounted to 93,098 tonnes (16% from inland waters).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrialization has developed rapidly since independence, particularly food processing, textiles and sawmills. Several factories produce palm-oil, fruit preserves and fruit juice.

**Labour.** The main trade union is the *Union Générale des Travailleurs de Côte d'Ivoire*, with over 100,000 members.

**Commerce.** Trade for calendar years in 1 m. francs CFA:

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	681,464	718,593	714,828	658,569	772,987
Exports	689,298	747,452	796,774	1,184,347	1,318,059

In 1985 exports of coffee furnished 21% of exports, cocoa 30%, timber 7% and petroleum products, 9%. Of the total 17% went to France, 17% to the Netherlands, 12% to the USA and 9% to Italy. Of the imports, France supplied 32%, and Nigeria, 11%.

Total trade between the Côte d'Ivoire and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	93,875	116,699	117,058	90,246	64,041
Exports and re-exports from UK	25,347	29,514	34,266	26,834	31,172

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 187,000 foreign tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 roads totalled 53,736 km (including 128 km of motorway) and there were 182,956 private cars and 43,001 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** From Abidjan a metre-gauge railway runs to Léraba on the border with Burkina Faso (655 km), and thence through Burkina Faso to Ouagadougou. Operation of the railway as a single entity ended in 1986, and in 1988 separate organizations were established in each country. In 1986-87 the railways carried 1.6 m. passengers and 684,000 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** The international airport is at Abidjan-Port-Buet. In 1981 it handled 870,000 passengers and 33,000 tonnes of freight and mail. Air Ivoire provides regular domestic services to 10 regional airports and 15 landing strips.

**Shipping.** The main ports are Abidjan and San Pedro. In 1981 Abidjan port handled 5.8m. tonnes and San Pedro 1.5m. tonnes. In 1986 the merchant marine comprised 61 vessels of 141,674 tons gross.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 87,700 telephones in 1984 and 1,800 telex machines. In 1986 there were 550,000 television and 1.2m. radio receivers.

**Cinemas.** There were 60 cinemas in 1977 with a seating capacity of 41,000.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there was 1 daily newspaper, *Fraternité-Matin*.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 28 courts of first instance and 3 assize courts in Abidjan, Bouaké and Daloa, 2 courts of appeal in Abidjan and Bouaké, and a supreme court in Abidjan.

**Religion.** In 1980, 24% were Moslems (mainly in the north), 32% Christians (chiefly Roman Catholics in the south), and 44% animists.

**Education.** There were, in 1984, 1,179,456 pupils in primary schools, 245,342 pupils in secondary schools and (1979) 22,437 in technical schools. The *Université Nationale de Côte d'Ivoire*, at Abidjan (founded 1964), had 12,755 students in 1984.

**Health.** In 1978 there were 9,962 hospital beds, 429 doctors, 36 dentists, 615 midwives, 3,052 nurses and 76 pharmacists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Côte d'Ivoire in Great Britain (2 Upper Belgrave St., London, SW1X 8BJ)  
*Ambassador:* Théodore De Mel (accredited 10 Feb. 1987).

Of Great Britain in the Côte d'Ivoire (Immeuble 'Les Harmonies', Blvd. Carde, Abidjan)

*Ambassador:* V. E. Sutherland, CMG.

Of the Côte d'Ivoire in the USA (2424 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Charles Gomis.

Of the USA in the Côte d'Ivoire (5 Rue Jesse Owens, Abidjan)

*Ambassador:* Dennis Kux.

Of the Côte d'Ivoire to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Amara Essy.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Service de la Statistique, Abidjan. It publishes *Bulletin Statistique Mensuel* and *Inventaire Économique de la Côte d'Ivoire*.

Zartman, I. W. and Delgado, C., *The Political Economy of Ivory Coast*. New York, 1984

Zolberg, A. R., *One-Party Government in the Ivory Coast*. Rev. ed. Princeton Univ. Press, 1974



# CUBA

*Capital:* Havana

*Population:* 10.24m. (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,696 (1981)

## República de Cuba

**HISTORY.** Cuba, except for the brief British occupancy in 1762–63, remained a Spanish possession from its discovery by Columbus in 1492 until 10 Dec. 1898, when the sovereignty was relinquished under the terms of the Treaty of Paris, which ended the struggle of the Cubans against Spanish rule. Cuba thus became an independent republic, but the United States stipulated under the 'Platt Amendment' (abrogated by Roosevelt in 1934) that Cuba must enter into no treaty relations with a foreign power, which might endanger its independence.

The revolutionary movement against the Batista dictatorship, led by Dr Fidel Castro, started on 26 July 1953 (now a national holiday). It achieved power on 1 Jan. 1959 when Batista fled the country.

An invasion force of émigrés and adventurers landed in Cuba on 17 April 1961; the main body was defeated at the Bay of Pigs (Matanzas province) and mopped up by 20 April.

The US Navy blockaded Cuba from 22 Oct. to 22 Nov. 1962.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island of Cuba forms the largest and most westerly of the Greater Antilles group and lies 135 miles south of the tip of Florida, USA. It has an area of 44,206 sq. miles (114,524 sq. km); the Isle of Youth (formerly Isle of Pines) has 1,180 sq. miles, and other islands about 1,350 sq. miles. Census (1981) 9,723,605; estimate in 1986 was 10.24m.

The area, population and density of population of the 14 provinces and the special Municipality of the Isle of Youth were as follows (1987 estimate):

	<i>Area</i> <i>sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>		<i>Area</i> <i>sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>
Pinar del Río	10,860	669,500	Camagüey	14,134	711,200
La Habana	5,671	618,100	Las Tunas	6,373	467,600
Ciudad de La Habana	727	2,025,700	Holguín	9,105	957,800
Matanzas	11,669	586,600	Granma	8,452	765,700
Cienfuegos	4,149	346,600	Santiago de Cuba	6,343	954,000
Villa Clara	8,069	789,200	Guantánamo	6,366	478,000
Sancti Spíritus	6,737	415,600			
Ciego de Avila	6,485	345,200	Isla de la Juventud	2,199	68,700

The chief cities (1986, estimate) were Habana, the capital (2,014,800), Santiago de Cuba (358,800), Camagüey (260,800), Holguín (194,700), Santa Clara (178,300), Guantánamo (174,400), Cienfuegos (109,300), Matanzas (105,400), Bayamo (105,300), Pinar del Río (100,900), Las Tunas (91,400), Ciego de Avila (80,500) and Sancti Spíritus (75,600).

Infant mortality (1986) 13.6 per 1,000 live births.

**CLIMATE.** Situated in the sub-tropical zone, Cuba has a generally rainy climate, affected by the Gulf Stream and the N.E. Trades, though winters are comparatively dry after the heaviest rains in Sept. and Oct. Hurricanes are liable to occur between June and Nov. Havana. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 48" (1,224 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The previous Constitution was suspended in Jan. 1959. The first socialist Constitution came into force on 24 Feb. 1976.

Since 1940 the following have been Presidents of the Republic:

	<i>Took office</i>		<i>Took office</i>
Gen. Fulgencio Batista y Zaldívar	10 Oct. 1940	Gen. Fulgencio Batista y Zaldívar	10 March 1952
Dr Ramón Grau San Martín	10 Oct. 1944	Dr Manuel Urratia Lleo	2 Jan. 1959
Dr Carlos Prío Socarrás	10 Oct. 1948	Osvaldo Dorticos Torrado	17 July 1959

Legislative power is vested in the National Assembly of People's Power, consisting of 499 deputies elected for a 5-year term by the Municipal Assemblies; elections were held in 1976, 1981 and 1986. The National Assembly elects a 31-member Council of State as its permanent organ. The Council of State's President, who is head of state and of government, nominates and leads a Council of Ministers approved by the National Assembly.

*President:* Dr Fidel Castro Ruz became President of the Council of State on 3 Dec. 1976. He is also President of the Council of Ministers, First Secretary of the Cuban Communist Party and C.-in-C. of the Revolutionary Armed Forces.

*First Vice-President of the Council of State and of the Council of Ministers, Minister of the Revolutionary Armed Forces:* Raúl Castro Ruz. *Foreign Affairs:* Isidoro Octavio Malmierca Peoli. *Interior:* José Abrantes Fernandez. *Justice:* Juan Escalona Reguera. *Foreign Trade:* Ricardo Cabrisas Ruiz.

The Council of Ministers also includes 10 other Vice-Presidents, the Presidents of 10 State Planning Committees and 17 other Ministers.

Dr Castro on 2 Dec. 1961 proclaimed 'a Marxist-Leninist programme adapted to the precise objective conditions existing in our country'. The provisional *Organizaciones Revolucionarias Integradas* (ORI) were established as an intermediate stage towards a single (communist) party, and gave way to the *Partido Unido de la Revolución Socialista* (PURS). This brought together the *Partido Socialista Popular*, *Movimiento de 26 Julio* and (Students') *Directorio Revolucionario*. The PURS in turn became (3 Oct. 1965) the *Partido Comunista de Cuba*.

The Congress of the PCC elects a Central Committee of 146 full and 79 alternate (non-voting) members, which in turn appoints a Political Bureau comprising 14 full and 10 alternate members.

*National flag:* 3 blue, 2 white stripes (horizontal); a white 5-pointed star in a red triangle at the hoist.

*National anthem:* Al combate corred bayameses (words and tune by P. Figueredo, 1868).

*Local Government.* The country is divided into 14 provinces, the special Municipality (the Isle of Youth) and 169 municipalities. Local Government is the responsibility of the organizations of Peoples' Power. Elections were held in 1976, 1979, 1981, 1984 and 1987 for delegates to the Municipal Assemblies by universal suffrage for 2½ year terms; the Municipal Assemblies then elected the Provincial Assemblies for similar terms.

**DEFENCE.** On 13 Nov. 1963 conscription was introduced for all men between the ages of 16 and 45, later raised to 50 (3 years); women of the 17–35 age groups may volunteer (for 2 years).

**Army.** The strength was 145,000 officers and men (60,000 conscripts) in 1989. Reserves are estimated at 130,000.

The Army is organized in 4 corps, 3 armoured divisions, 3 mechanical divisions, 13 infantry divisions and air defence regiments. Equipment includes 150 T-34, 650 T-54/-55, 300 T-62 tanks and 60 PT-64 light-tanks. Para-military forces total 69,000 and the new Territorial Militia, 1.3m. including reservists, all armed.

**Navy.** The expanding Navy consists of 3 *ex*-Soviet diesel-powered submarines, 3 *ex*-Soviet guided missile-armed frigates, 18 missile boats, 9 hydrofoil attack craft, 4 patrol vessels, 24 fast gunboats, 4 minehunters, 10 inshore minesweepers, 12 motor launches, 14 coastguard vessels, 15 survey vessels, 2 landing ships, 6 landing craft and 15 service craft. The large majority of over 140 craft are former units of the Soviet Navy.

Personnel in 1989 totalled 13,500 including marines and coastguard. The USA is still in possession of the Guantánamo naval base, but the Cuban Government refuses to accept the nominal rent of US\$5,000 per annum.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has been extensively re-equipped with aircraft supplied by USSR and in 1989 had a strength of some 22,000 officers and men and 300

combat aircraft. About 12 interceptor and 4 ground-attack squadrons fly MiG-23, MiG-21 and MiG-17 jet fighters. There is a squadron of An-26 twin-turboprop transports, some An-24 twin-turboprop transports, piston-engined Il-14s, and about 100 Mi-24 gunship, Mi-8 (some armed), Mi-17 and Mi-4 helicopters, Zlin 326 piston-engined trainers and L-39, MiG-15UTI, MiG-21U and MiG-23U jet trainers. An-2M biplanes are operated by the Air Force, mainly on agricultural and liaison duties. Soviet-built surface-to-air ('Guideline', 'Goa' and 'Gainful') and coastal defence ('Samlet') missiles are in service.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Cuba is a member of the UN, SELA, the Non-Aligned Movement and COMECON.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Cuban economy is now centrally planned. Since July 1972 Cuba has been a member of the Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON) and, since Jan. 1974, of the two COMECON international banks.

**Budget.** Revenue in 1989 11,900m. pesos and expenditure, 13,500m. pesos.

**Currency.** The *peso* is not a freely exchangeable currency but an official exchange rate is announced daily reflecting any changes in the strength of the US\$. In March 1989, the sterling-peso rate was £1 = 1.316 *pesos*. US currency is accepted in tourist/hotel shops, but is not normally legal tender.

Copper-nickel coins of 1 *peso* and 20, 5, 2 and 1 *cent* are issued. Notes are for 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 3 and 1 *peso*.

**Banking.** On 23 Dec. 1948 the president signed the law creating a central bank (with capital of US\$10m.) and which began operating 27 April 1950.

On 14 Oct. 1960 all banks were nationalized, except the Royal Bank of Canada and the Bank of Nova Scotia, which were bought out later. All banking is now carried out by the National Bank of Cuba through its 250 agencies, or via the Banco Financiero.

All insurance business was nationalized in Jan. 1964. A National Savings Bank was established in 1983.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is legally compulsory, but the American and old Spanish systems are much used. The sugar industry uses the Spanish long ton (1.03 tonnes) and short ton (0.92 tonne). Cuba sugar sack = 329.59 lb. or 149.49 kg. Land is measured in *caballerías* (of 13.4 hectares or 33 acres).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1987 was 13,583m. kwh. Supply 115 and 120 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude oil production (1988) 750,000 tonnes.

**Minerals.** Iron ore abounds, with deposits estimated at 3,500m. tons, of which 90% were held as reserves by American steel interests but are now controlled by the Cuban Ministry of Basic Industry; output (tonnes), wrought iron (1980), 1,180; steel (1987), 401,500. Output of copper concentrate (1987) was 3,461 tonnes; refractory chrome (1982), 27,300 tonnes. Other minerals are nickel and cobalt (1987, 35,800 tonnes), silica and barytes. Gold and silver are also worked. Salt output from the solar evaporation of sea water was 122,300 tonnes in 1986.

**Agriculture.** In May 1959 all land over 30 *caballerías* was nationalized and has since been turned into state farms. In Oct. 1963 private holdings were reduced to a maximum of 5 *caballerías* (approximately 67 hectares).



In Sept. 1984 there were 1,472 co-operatives comprising 70,000 *caballerías* of land. The total cultivated land (1982) included state-owned, 3,398,200 hectares, and in the private sector, 475,400 hectares.

The most important product is sugar, of which Cuba is the world's second largest producer; with its by-products it furnishes nearly 50% by value of the national exports. The 1987 crop was estimated at 7.2m. tonnes. There are 164 mills, including 40 of the largest, which were taken over from US interests, and which represent 39% of total capacity. Tobacco, coffee, cotton, maize, rice, potatoes and citrus fruit are grown.

Production of other important crops in 1986 was (in tonnes): Tobacco, 45,583; rice, 575,762; maize, 35,989; coffee, 22,800.

Tobacco is grown mainly in the Vuelta-Abajo district, near Pinar del Río. Coffee is grown chiefly in the province of Oriente.

A fast-growing fibre, *kenaf*, originally from India, soft in texture, is replacing jute for sacking (production, 1986, 13,468 tonnes); the tobacco industry uses *majagua*, another local fibre, while a third fibre, *yarey*, from palms is also used. 316,473 tonnes of potatoes were produced in 1986. A nitrate plant has been built at Nuevitas and a large British-built urea plant at Cienfuegos. The principal fruits exported are pineapples, citrus fruit, tomatoes and pimentos. A rice cultivation plan began in 1967 in the south of Havana province. Cultivation is highly mechanized and the area so far sown produces two crops a year.

In 1986 citrus fruit production was 786,330 tonnes. Seed cotton production, 1986, was 3,000.

In 1987 the livestock included 2.4m. pigs; 718,000 horses; 382,000 sheep; 110,000 goats; 5,007,000 head of cattle.

**Forestry.** Cuba has extensive forest lands. These forests contain valuable cabinet woods, such as mahogany and cedar, besides dye-woods, fibres, gums, resins and oils. Cedar is used locally for cigar-boxes, and mahogany is exported. Cedars, mahogany, *majagua*, teca, etc., are also raised. In 1984 saplings planted included: Eucalyptus, 12.4m.; pine, 40.1m.; *majagua*, 3.5m.; mahogany, 6.6m.; cedar, 1.3m.; casuarina, 17m.

**Fisheries.** Fishing is the third most important export industry, after sugar and nickel. Catch (1986) 244,589 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production in 1987 was: Textiles, 326.1m. sq. metres; cement, 3.5m. tonnes; wheat flour, 404,200 tonnes; fuel oil (1986), 3,314,000 tonnes; diesel oil (1986), 991,000 tonnes; 324,700 tyres; 304,700 inner tubes; leather shoes, 14.2m. pairs; paint (1986), 84,800 hectolitres; soft drinks (1985), 2,106,500 hectolitres; 278.6m. cigars; 15,397,600m. cigarettes; fertilizers, 996,400 tonnes; 2,351 buses (1986); 227,400 radios; 55,500 TVs.

**Trade Unions.** All workers have a right to join a trade union. The Workers' Central Union of Cuba, to which 23 unions are affiliated, had 2m. members in 1978.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports (including bullion and specie) for calendar years (in 1m. pesos):

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	7,207	7,983	7,569	7,612
Exports	5,462	7,209	6,702	5,401

Cuba's principal exports are sugar, minerals, tobacco and fish. The main imports from non-Communist countries are chemicals and engineering and electrical machinery and transport equipment.

In 1985 the USSR provided 67% of imports (by value) and took 75% of exports; in 1984 sugar formed 75% of all exports.

Total trade between Cuba and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	13,020	7,273	8,555	12,776	28,489
Exports and re-exports from UK	64,377	59,332	58,760	41,510	31,162

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 194,531 visitors (280,000 in 1957).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 16,740 km of paved highways open to traffic, traversing the island for 760 miles from Pinar del Río to Santiago. In 1983 there were 49,841 hire cars (including coaches and buses).

**Railways.** There were (1986) 4,881 km of public railway (mainly 1,435 mm gauge) of which 152 km is electrified. In 1987 it carried 2,189m. passenger-km and 13.2m. tonnes of freight. In addition, the large sugar estates have 7,773 km of lines on 1,435, 914 and 760 mm gauges.

**Aviation.** The state airline CUBANA operates all internal services, and from Havana to Mexico City, Madrid, Moscow and East Berlin, Montreal, Prague, Paris and Brussels, and also to Lima, Panama, Kingston, Bridgetown, Port of Spain, Georgetown and Managua. The other regular foreign services are Mexican, Spanish, Soviet, Czech, East German and Canadian.

**Shipping.** The coastline is over 3,500 miles long and has many fine harbours. The merchant marine, in 1987, consisted of 118 sea-going vessels of 1,427,916 DWT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 3,545 miles of public and 8,902 miles of private telegraph wires. Cuba has 103 radio broadcasting stations and 2 television stations. Radio receiving sets, 1985, numbered 2.14m.; television sets, 1.53m. The national telephone system (1985) had 493,000 instruments.

**Cinemas.** In 1986 there were 515 (35mm) and 927 (16mm) cinemas.

**Newspapers.** In 1986 there were 29 newspapers of which 17 were daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court in Havana and 7 regional courts of appeal. The provinces are divided into judicial districts, with courts for civil and criminal actions, with municipal courts for minor offences. The civil code guarantees aliens the same property and personal rights as are enjoyed by nationals.

The 1959 Agrarian Reform Law and the Urban Reform Law passed on 14 Oct. 1960 have placed certain restrictions on both. Revolutionary Summary Tribunals have wide powers.

**Religion.** There is no state Church, though Roman Catholics predominate. There is a bishop of the American Episcopal Church in Havana; there are congregations of Methodists in Havana and in the provinces as well as Baptists and other denominations.

**Education.** Education is compulsory (between the ages of 6 and 14) and free, and now available everywhere. In 1964 illiteracy was officially declared to have been completely eliminated.

In 1986-87 the universities had 256,619 students and 21,573 teaching staff. In 1986-87 there were 1,000,971 pupils and 61,490 teachers at primary schools, 1,153,659 pupils and 98,105 teachers at intermediate schools and 173,295 students at adult primary schools.

**Health.** There were (1986) 21,567 doctors, 5,752 dentists and 261 hospitals with 65,824 beds. The 1988 health and education budget was 2,940.2m. pesos.

Free medical services are provided by the state polyclinics, though a few doctors still have private practices. All serious tropical diseases are effectively kept under control, and virtually all children under the age of 15 have been vaccinated against poliomyelitis.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Cuba in Great Britain (167 High Holborn, London, WC1)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Cuba (Edificio Bolivar, Carcel 101-103, Havana)

*Ambassador:* A. D. Brighty.

Of Cuba to the United Nations  
*Ambassador: Oscar Oramas-Oliva.*

The USA broke off diplomatic relations with Cuba on 3 Jan. 1961 but in 1977 Interest Sections were opened, officially attached to the Swiss Embassy in Havana and to the Czech Embassy in Washington respectively.

### Further Reading

- Anuario Estadístico de la República de Cuba.* Havana  
*Boletín Oficial*, Ministerio de Comercio. Monthly  
*Estadística General: Comercio Exterior.* Quarterly and Annual.—*Movimiento de Población.* Monthly and Annual. Havana  
*Anuario azucarero de Cuba.* Havana, from 1937  
Brundenius, C., *Revolutionary Cuba: The Challenge of Economic Growth with Equity.* Oxford, 1984  
Dominguez, J. I., *Cuba: Order and Revolution.* Harvard Univ. Press, 1978  
Gravette, A. G., *Cuba: Official Guide.* London, 1988  
Guerra y Sánchez, R. and others, *Historia de la Nación Cubana.* 10 vols. Havana, 1952  
MacEwan, A., *Revolution and Economic Development in Cuba.* London, 1981  
Mesa-Lago, C., *The Economy of Socialist Cuba: A Two-Decade Appraisal.* Univ. of New Mexico Press, 1981  
O'Connor, J., *The Origins of Socialism in Cuba.* London, Cornell Univ. Press, 1970  
Ritter, A. R. M., *The Economic Development of Revolutionary Cuba: Strategy and Performance.* New York, 1974  
Thomas, H., *The Cuban Revolution: 25 Years Later.* Epping, 1984



# CYPRUS

*Capital:* Nicosia

*Population:* 680,400 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$6,831 (1987)

## Kypriaki Dimokratia— Kıbrıs Cumhuriyeti

**HISTORY.** About the middle of the 2nd millennium B.C. Greek colonies were established in Cyprus and later it formed part of the Persian, Roman and Byzantine empires. In 1193 it became a Frankish kingdom, in 1489 a Venetian dependency and in 1571 was conquered by the Turks. They retained possession of it until its cession to England for administrative purposes under a convention concluded with the Sultan at Constantinople, 4 June 1878. On 5 Nov. 1914 the island was annexed by Great Britain and on 1 May 1925 given the status of a Crown Colony.

For the history of Cyprus from 1931 to 1974 see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1958, pp. 237–38, 1959, p. 236, and 1983–84, p. 385.

On 15 July 1974 a *coup* was staged in Cyprus by the men of the Greek ruling junta, for the overthrow of President Makarios. The President left the island and the *coup* was short-lived. On 23 July power was handed over to the President of the House of Representatives, Glafcos Clerides, in accordance with the Constitution. He acted as President until the return of President Makarios on Dec. 7.

Turkey invaded the island on 20 July, eventually landing 40,000 troops supported with heavy armament and tanks. In two military operations 20–30 July and 14–16 Aug. the Turkish troops managed to occupy 40% of the northern part of Cyprus. As a result 200,000 Greek Cypriots fled to live as refugees in the south. The Cyprus crisis was raised in the UN and the General Assembly unanimously adopted resolutions calling for the withdrawal of all foreign troops from Cyprus and the return of refugees to their homes, but without result.

On 13 Feb. 1975 at a special meeting of the executive council and legislative assembly of the Autonomous Turkish Cypriot Administration a Turkish Cypriot Federated State was proclaimed. Rauf Denktash was appointed President and he declared that the state would not seek international recognition. The proclamation was denounced by President Makarios and the Greek Prime Minister but welcomed by the Turkish Prime Minister. In 1984 the UN Secretary-General initiated talks on a possible federal state but these failed in Jan. 1985. On 15 Sept. 1988 the first meeting between President Vassiliou and Rauf Denktash took place following a UN initiative in Aug. to restart substantive talks.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island lies in the eastern Mediterranean, about 50 miles off the south coast of Turkey and (at the nearest points) 65 miles off the coast of Syria. Area 3,572 sq. miles (9,251 sq. km); greatest length from east to west about 150 miles, and greatest breadth from north to south about 60 miles. The Turkish occupied area is 3,400 sq. km (about 37% of the total area). Population by ethnic group:

<i>Ethnic group</i>	1946	1960	1980	1986	1987
Greek Orthodox	361,199	441,656	507,500	538,900	544,700
Turkish Moslem	80,548	104,942	118,000	125,500	126,900
Others	8,367	26,968	3,500	8,700	8,800
Total	450,114	573,566	629,000	673,100	680,400

Population estimate (June 1987) 680,400, of which 81% are Greek Cypriot (Armenian, Maronite and Latin minorities included) and 19% Turkish Cypriot. Principal towns with populations (Dec. 1987 estimate): Nicosia (the capital), 164,500 (Greek Cypriots); Limassol, 118,200; Larnaca, 52,800; Paphos, 22,600.

As a result of the Turkish invasion and the occupation of part of Cyprus, 200,000 Greek Cypriots were displaced and forced to find refuge in the south of the island. The urban centres of Famagusta, Kyrenia and Morphou were completely evacuated. See p. 406 for details of the 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus'.

Vital statistics. The birth rate per 1,000 population in 1987 was 18.7; death rate, 8.9; infantile mortality per 1,000 live births, 11.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is Mediterranean, with very hot, dry summers and variable winters. Maximum temperatures may reach 112°F (44.5°C) in July and Aug., but minimum figures may fall to 22°F (-5.5°C) in the mountains in winter when snow is experienced. Rainfall is generally between 10 and 27" (250 and 675 mm) and occurs mainly in the winter months, but it may reach 48" (1,200 mm) in the Troodos mountains. Nicosia. Jan. 50°F (10.0°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 15" (371 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The legislative power is exercised by the House of Representatives of 80 members, of whom 56 were elected by the Greek community and 24 by the Turkish community. As from Dec. 1963 the Turkish members have ceased to attend.

On 13 Dec. 1959 Archbishop Makarios was elected President of the Republic. Dr Fazil Kuchuk was elected Vice-President unopposed; he resigned on 4 Jan. 1964. On 13 Feb. 1975, Rauf Denktash the Turkish-Cypriot leader announced the formation of a Turkish-Cypriot state within a federal republic and on 15 Nov. 1983 a unilateral declaration of independence, as the Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus, was announced.

When President Makarios died in Aug. 1977 Spyros Kyprianou became acting President and was proclaimed President on 31 Aug. 1977 and was elected for a 5-year term in 1978 and re-elected in 1983. In 1988 George Vassiliou was installed as President following elections held on 14 Feb.

*Flag:* White with a copper-coloured outline of the island with 2 green olive-branches beneath.

The elections held on 8 Dec. 1985 returned 16 Democratic Party, 15 Akel Party (Communists), 6 EDEK (Socialist Party), 19 Democratic Rally. The Turks have not participated in the proceedings of the House since Dec. 1963.

The Council of Ministers in Feb. 1988 was as follows:

*Foreign Affairs:* George Iacovou. *Interior:* Christodoulos Veniamin. *Defence:* Andreas Aloneftis. *Agriculture and Natural Resources:* Andreas Gavrielides. *Commerce and Industry:* Takis Nemitsas. *Health:* Panikos Papageorgiou. *Communications and Works:* Nakos Protopapas. *Finance:* George Syrimis. *Education:* Andreas Philippou. *Labour and Social Insurance:* Takis Christofides. *Justice:* Christodoulos Chrysanthou.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** Total strength (1989) 13,000 organized in 1 mechanized infantry and 1 infantry brigades, with artillery and support units. The National Guard has a twin-engined Maritime Islander light transport and 2 AB.47 and 4 armed Gazelle helicopters. There is also a para-military force of 3,666 armed police.

The Turkish-Cypriot Security Force: 27,000 Turkish mainland troops, 3,000 Turkish Cypriots, and some T-34 tanks.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Cyprus is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, the Council of Europe and the Non-Aligned Movement.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A fourth emergency economic action plan (1982-86) envisaged expenditure of £C398m. for development projects.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for calendar years (in £C1m.):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Expenditure	368	418	448	491	535
Revenue	289	344	390	427	462

Main sources of ordinary revenue in 1987 (in £C1m.) were: Import duties, 89 (including 19 temporary refugee levy on imports); excise duties, 55; income tax, 87; rents, royalties and interest, 17; sales of goods and services, 21; other duties and taxes, 46; social security contributions, 78.

Main divisions of ordinary expenditure in 1987 (in £C1m.): Wages and salaries, 176; pensions and gratuities, 15; commodity subsidies, 30; expenditures on goods and services, 36; public debt charges, 150; social insurance benefits, 80.

Development expenditure for 1987 (in £C1m.) included 24 for water development, 5 for agriculture, forests and fisheries, 3 for rural development, 14 for roads, 2 for airports and 0.5 for tourism. (An independent Ports Authority with its own funds was set up in 1977.)

The outstanding public debt as at 31 Dec. 1987 was £C602m., excluding sinking fund reserves, and accumulated sinking funds totalled £C70m. Outstanding loans as at 31 Dec. 1987 totalled £C60m. Foreign debt (1987) public and private, £C494m.

**Currency.** From Oct. 1983 the *Cyprus £* has been divided into 100 *cents*. Notes of the following denominations are in circulation: £10, £5, £1, 50 *cents*. Coins in circulation: Cupro-zinc-nickel: 20, 10, 5, 2, 1 *cent* and ½ *cent* in aluminium. Rate of exchange, March 1989: £1 = £C0.8290; US\$1 = £C0.4816.

**Banking.** There is a Central and Issuing Bank exercising monetary functions, and the Cyprus Development Bank Ltd established by the Government as a major source of loan funds for industrial development. Commercial banks operating in Cyprus are: Bank of Cyprus Ltd, Turkish Bank Ltd, Cyprus Popular Bank Ltd, Barclays Bank International, National Bank of Greece, Hellenic Bank Ltd, Arab Bank Ltd and Turkiye Is Bankasi. There are 2 central co-operative banks (Co-operative Central Bank Ltd and the Cyprus Turkish Co-operative Central Bank Ltd) and 3 specialized financial institutions (Mortgage Bank of Cyprus Ltd, Lombard Banking (Cyprus) Ltd and Housing Finance Corporation). Fifteen off-shore banking units were in operation in 1989.

Turkish Bank Ltd, Turkiye Is Bankasi and the Cyprus Turkish Co-operative Central Bank Ltd are operating in the Turkish occupied area of the republic and consequently no control or supervision is exercised by the Central Bank of Cyprus.

The Central Bank of Cyprus, established in 1963, is responsible for the issue of currency, the regulation of money supply and credit, administration of the exchange control law and the foreign-exchange reserves of the republic. The Bank also acts as a banker of the banks operating in Cyprus and of the Government and acts as supervisor of the banking system.

At the end of Dec. 1987 total deposits in banks were £C1,413m. The country's foreign exchange reserves at the end of Dec. 1987 were £C501m.

**Weights and Measures.** Weights and measures had been based on the standard weights and measures of the UK. From 1 Jan. 1986 a programme of gradual adoption of the Metric (SI) System is being implemented with the end of 1988 as the target date for completion of the change.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 1,512m. kwh. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Water Resources.** In 1985 £C23.9m. was spent on water dams, water supplies, hydrological research and geophysical surveys. Existing dams had (1984) a capacity of 150m. cu. metres as against 6m. cu. metres before independence.

**Minerals.** The principal minerals exported during 1987 were (in tonnes): Asbestos, 22,340; flotation pyrites, 21,905; copper precipitates, 304. Mining products provided about 1% of domestic exports in 1987. Total value of minerals exported in 1987 was £C3.5m.

**Agriculture.** Chief agricultural products in 1987 (1,000 tonnes): Grapes, 173; potatoes, 150; milk, 118.2; cereals (wheat and barley), 125.5; citrus fruit, 150.7; meat, 53.8; carobs, 7; fresh fruit, 24.6; olives, 8; other vegetables, 117; eggs, 10m. dozen.



Of the island's 2.3m. acres, approximately 1m. are cultivated. 13.9% (1987) of the economically active population are engaged in agriculture.

Livestock in 1987 (in 1,000): Cattle, 45; sheep, 310; goats, 220; pigs, 266; poultry, 2,400.

**Forestry.** By Dec. 1982, the reforestation of burnt areas in the Paphos Forest was completed and an area of 7,492 hectares (56,000 donums) was reforested. Reforestation work in other bare areas of state forests was carried out in an area of 6,464 hectares (42,318 donums). Total forest area, 1,754 sq. km.

In 1987 the chief forest products were timber, valued at £C717,000; firewood, £C165,000; figures relate to the area of Cyprus not occupied by Turkey.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1987) 2,602 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Cyprus has no heavy industry, but a wide variety of light manufacturing industries. Manufacturing industry in 1987 contributed about £C269.2m. to the GDP and gave employment to 45,300 of the economically active population.

The highest increases in output in 1987 were production of wearing apparel, metal products and machinery and equipment. Industrial exports declined to £C126.2m. in 1986 and accounted for 70% of total domestic exports.

**Trade Unions and Associations.** About 80% of the workforce is organized and the majority of workers belong either to the Pancyprian Federation of Labour or the Cyprus Workers Confederation.

**Commerce.** The commerce and the shipping, exclusive of coasting trade, for calendar years were (in £C1,000):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports <sup>1</sup>	641,962	796,520	762,312	659,100	714,400
Exports <sup>2</sup>	260,525	336,826	290,610	260,200	298,000

<sup>1</sup> Excluding Naafi imports.

<sup>2</sup> Including re-exports and ships' stores.

### Chief civil imports, 1987 (in £C1,000):

Petroleum and petroleum products	82,049	Feeding stuff for animals	10,215
Textile yarn and fabrics made up	74,533	Tobacco and manufactures	8,480
Iron and steel	26,163	Meat and meat preparations	9,159
Cereals and cereal preparations	21,733	Animal and vegetable oils, fats and waxes	7,951
Machinery and Transport equipment	174,217	Non-metallic mineral manufactures	18,330
Paper, paperboard and pulp and articles thereof	25,601	Medicinal and pharmaceutical products	14,800
Artificial resins and plastics	18,932	Manufactures of metal, n.e.s.	22,813
		Dairy products and eggs	5,129

### Chief domestic exports, 1987 (in £C1,000):

Grapes	3,331	Cigarettes	6,258
Grapefruit	6,983	Paper products	3,960
Lemons	3,627	Cement	4,730
Oranges	4,546	Clothing	68,621
Potatoes	22,223	Footwear	16,018
Wine	4,011	Medicinal and pharmaceutical products	4,363
Fruit, preserved and juices	8,635		

In 1987 the EEC countries supplied 56.9% of the imports; Arab countries, 6%; others, 36.9%. Of the exports (1987), 20.4% went to Arab countries; 41% to EEC countries; 5.4% to Eastern Europe and 33.6% to other countries.

Total trade between Cyprus and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	94,381	93,689	124,198	118,250	121,828
Exports and re-exports from UK	146,773	150,921	140,387	141,129	159,788

**Tourism.** Foreign visitors (1987), 1,156,972 (948,551 tourists and 208,421 excursionists).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 the total length of roads in the Government controlled area was 8,966 km, of which 4,427 km were bituminous and 4,539 km were earth or gravel roads. The main roads which are maintained by the Ministry of Communications and Works (Public Works Department) totalled 2,917 km, of which 1,279 km were bituminous. The total of urban streets was 1,825 km, of which 1,290 were bituminous. Village roads and streets totalled 4,387 km, of which 1,421 km were bituminous, the rest being of earth or gravel surface. There were also 2,564 km of gravel roads. On 31 Dec. 1986, there were 279,368 motor vehicles including 2,426 buses and 58,780 goods vehicles.

The area controlled by the Government of the Republic and that occupied by Turkey are now served by separate transport systems, and there are no services linking the two areas.

**Aviation.** Nicosia airport has been closed since Aug. 1974. In 1988, 30 international airlines operated scheduled services between Cyprus and Europe, Africa and the Middle East, and another 22 airlines operated non-scheduled services. A new airport opened in the 'Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus' in 1986. During 1987, 2,190,366 persons travelled and 28,233 tonnes of commercial air-freight was handled through Larnaca and Paphos international airports.

**Shipping.** In 1987, 4,424 ships of 12,839,267 net tons entered Cyprus ports. Ships under Cyprus registry numbered 1,692 of 1,486 net tons. Famagusta has been closed to international traffic since Oct. 1974.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 56 post offices and 696 postal agencies. There are 17 post offices and 368 postal agencies in the Turkish occupied area. Telephones (1987) 180,118. Wireless licences issued (1981) were 247,000, including television licences.

Cyprus Broadcasting Corporation broadcasts mainly in Greek, but also in Turkish, English, and Armenian on medium-waves. The corporation also broadcasts on one TV channel. There are also 2 foreign broadcasting stations.

**Cinemas** (1985). In the government-controlled area there were 59 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 11 Greek, 6 Turkish and 1 English daily newspapers and 7 Greek, 7 Turkish and 1 English weeklies.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The administration of justice is exercised by separate and independent judiciary. Under the 1960 Constitution and other legislation in force there are the Supreme Court of the Republic, Assize Courts, District Courts, Ecclesiastical Courts and Turkish Family Courts.

The Supreme Court is composed of 5-7 judges one of whom is the President of the Court. There is an Assize Court and a District Court for each district. The Assize Courts have unlimited criminal jurisdiction and may order the payment of compensation up to £C800. The District Courts exercise original civil and criminal jurisdiction, the extent of which varies with the composition of the Bench.

There is a Supreme Council of Judicature, consisting of the Attorney-General of the Republic, the President and Judges of the Supreme Court, entrusted with the appointment, promotion, transfers, termination of appointment and disciplinary control over all judicial officers, other than the Judges of the Supreme Court.

**Religion.** See Area and Population, p. 401.

**Education.** Until 31 March 1965 each community managed its own schooling through its respective Communal Chamber. Intercommunal education had been placed under the Minister of the Interior, assisted by a Board of Education for Intercommunal Schools, of which the Minister was the Chairman. In 1965 the

Greek Communal Chamber was dissolved and a Ministry of Education was established to take its place. Intercommunal education has been placed under this Ministry.

*Greek-Cypriot Education.* Elementary education is compulsory and is provided free in 6 grades to children between 5½ and 12 years of age. In some towns and large villages there are separate junior schools consisting of the first three grades. Apart from schools for the deaf and blind, there are also 9 schools for handicapped children. In 1987–88 the Ministry ran 201 kindergartens for children in the age group 2½–5½; there were 279 privately run pre-primary schools. There were 379 primary schools with 56,530 pupils and 2,562 teachers in 1987–88.

Secondary education is also free and attendance for the first cycle is compulsory. The secondary school is 6 years, 3 years at the gymnasium followed by 3 years at the lykeion. In 1978–79 the lyceums of optional subjects were introduced, in which students can choose one of the 5 main fields of specialization: Classical, science, economics, commercial/secretarial and foreign languages. There are 3-year technical schools. In 1987–88 there were 105 secondary schools with 3,331 teachers and 42,191 pupils.

Post-secondary education is provided at the Pedagogical Academy, which organizes 3-year courses for the training of pre-primary and primary school teachers, and at the Higher Technical Institute, which provides 3–4-year courses for technicians in civil, electrical, mechanical and marine engineering. There is also a 2-year Forestry College (administered by the Ministry of Agriculture), a Hotel and Catering Institute, the Mediterranean Institute of Management (Ministry of Labour and Social Insurance) and a 1–3-year Nurses' School (Ministry of Health). Adult education is conducted through youth centres in rural areas, foreign language institutes in the towns and private institutions offering courses in business administration and secretarial work.

In 1987–88, 9,741 students were studying in universities abroad, mainly in Greece, the USA, UK, Federal Republic of Germany and Italy.

Greek is the language of 82% of the population and Turkish of 18%. English is widely spoken. English and French are compulsory subjects in secondary schools. Illiteracy is largely confined to older people.

**Social Security.** The administration of the social-security services in Cyprus is in the hands of the Ministry of Labour and Social Insurance, with the Ministry of Health providing medical services through public clinics and hospitals on a means test, except medical treatment for employment accidents, which is given free to all insured employees and financed by the Social Insurance Scheme.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Cyprus in Great Britain (93 Park St., London, W1Y 4ET)

*High Commissioner:* Tasos Panayides.

Of Great Britain in Cyprus (Alexander Pallis St., Nicosia)

*High Commissioner:* The Hon. H. J. H. Maud, CMG.

Of Cyprus in the USA (2211 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Andrew J. Jacovides.

Of the USA in Cyprus (Therissos St., Nicosia)

*Ambassador:* Bill K. Perrin.

Of Cyprus to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Constantine Moushoutas.

## 'TURKISH REPUBLIC OF NORTHERN CYPRUS'

**HISTORY.** *See* p. 401.



**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus occupies 3,355 sq. km (about 37% of the island of Cyprus) and its population was estimated in 1986 to be 162,676. Population of principal towns (1985): Nicosia, 37,400; Famagusta, 19,428; Kyrenia, 6,902; Morphou, 10,179; Lefka, 3,785. Ethnic groups: Turks, 158,225; Greeks, 733; Maronites, 368; Others, 961.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus was proclaimed on 15 Nov. 1983. The President is Rauf R. Denktash, and there is a Council of Ministers comprised in June 1988 of:

*Prime Minister:* Derviş Eroğlu.

*Foreign Affairs and Defence:* Kenan Atakol. *Economy and Finance:* Mehmet Bayram. *Interior, Village Affairs and Environment:* Olgun Paşalar. *Education and Culture:* Salih Djoşar. *Agriculture and Forests:* Aytac Beşeşler. *Communications, Works and Tourism:* Nazif Borman. *Trade and Industry:* Taşkent Atasayan. *Health and Social Welfare:* Dr Mustafa Erbilen. *Labour, Youth and Sports:* Günay Djaymaz. *Housing:* Mustafa Adaoghlu.

A 50-seat Legislative Assembly was elected in June 1985. In June 1988 the Ulusal Birlik Partisi (National Unity Party) had 25 seats, the Cumhuriyetçi Türk Partisi (Turkish Republican Party) 12 seats, the Toplumcu Kurtuluş Partisi (Communal Liberation Party) 9 seats and others 4 seats.

*Flag:* White with horizontal bars of red set near the top and bottom; between these a crescent and star in red.

**Budget.** The 1988 Budget balanced at 170,121 m. Turkish lire.

**Currency.** The Turkish *lire* is used throughout Northern Cyprus.

**Trade.** Imports in 1986 amounted to 102,461 m. and exports to 35,018 m. Turkish lire.

**Tourism.** There were 150,000 tourists in 1987.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 20,781 pupils and 751 teachers in primary schools, 11,103 pupils and 706 teachers in secondary schools, 1,748 students and 192 teachers in technical schools, and 1,649 students with 84 teaching staff in higher education.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 118 doctors.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Statistics and Research Department, Nicosia.

*North Cyprus Almanack.* London, 1987

Attalides, M., *Cyprus Nationalism and International Politics.* Edinburgh, 1979

Bitsios, D. S., *Cyprus: The Vulnerable Republic.* Thessaloniki, 1975

Crawshaw, N., *The Cyprus Revolt: An Account of the Struggle for Union with Greece.* London, 1978

Denktash, R., *The Cyprus Triangle.* London, 1982

Ertekin, N. M., *The Cyprus Dispute.* Nicosia North, 1984

Georghallides, G. S., *A Political and Administrative History of Cyprus 1918–1926.* Nicosia, 1979

Halil, K., *The Rape of Cyprus.* London, 1982

Hill, Sir George F., *A History of Cyprus.* 4 vols. Cambridge, 1940–52

Hitchins, C., *Cyprus.* London, 1984

Hunt, D., *Footprints in Cyprus.* London, 1982

Kitromilides, P. M. and Evriviades, M. L., *Cyprus*, [Bibliography]. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982

Kyle, K., *Cyprus.* London, 1984

Loizos, P., *The Heart Grows Bitter: A Chronicle of Cypriot War Refugees.* CUP, 1982

Mayes, S., *Makarios.* London, 1981

Necatigil, Z. M., *Our Republic in Perspective.* Nicosia, 1985

Oberling, P., *The Road to Bellapais: The Turkish Cypriot Exodus to Northern Cyprus.* Boulder, 1982

Polyviou, P. G., *Cyprus: The Tragedy and the Challenge.* London, 1975.—*Cyprus in Search of a Constitution.* Nicosia, 1976.—*Cyprus: Conflict and Negotiation, 1960–1980.* London, 1980

Reddaway, J., *Burdened With Cyprus.* London, 1986

St John-Jones, L. W., *The Population of Cyprus.* London, 1983

# CZECHOSLOVAKIA

Capital: Prague

Population: 15.5m. (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$8,700 (1985)

## Československá Socialistická Republika

**HISTORY.** The Czechoslovak State came into existence on 28 Oct. 1918, when the Czech *Národní Výbor* (National Committee) took over the government of the Czech lands upon the dissolution of Austria-Hungary. Two days later the Slovak National Council manifested its desire to unite politically with the Czechs. On 14 Nov. 1918 the first Czechoslovak National Assembly declared the Czechoslovak State to be a republic with T. G. Masaryk as President (1918-35).

The Treaty of St Germain-en-Laye (1919) recognized the Czechoslovak Republic, consisting of the Czech lands (Bohemia, Moravia, part of Silesia) and Slovakia. To these lands were added as a trust the autonomous province of Subcarpathian Ruthenia.

This territory was broken up for the benefit of Germany, Poland and Hungary by the Munich agreement (29 Sept. 1938) between UK, France, Germany and Italy.

In March 1939 the German-sponsored Slovak government proclaimed Slovakia independent, and Germany incorporated the Czech lands into the Reich as the 'Protectorate of Bohemia and Moravia'. A government-in-exile, headed by Dr Beneš, was set up in London in July 1940.

Liberation by the Soviet Army and US Forces was completed by May 1945.

Territories taken by Germans, Poles and Hungarians were restored to Czechoslovak sovereignty. Subcarpathian Ruthenia was transferred to the USSR.

Elections were held in May 1946, at which the Communist Party obtained about 38% of the votes.

A coalition government under a Communist Prime Minister, Klement Gottwald, remained in power until 20 Feb. 1948, when 12 of the non-Communist ministers resigned in protest against infiltration of Communists into the police.

In Feb. a predominantly Communist government was formed by Gottwald. In May elections resulted in an 89% majority for the government and President Beneš resigned.

In 1968 pressure for liberalization culminated in the overthrow of the Stalinist leader, Antonín Novotný, and his associates. The Communist Party introduced an 'Action Programme' of far-reaching reforms.

Soviet pressure to abandon this programme was exerted between May and Aug. 1968, and finally, Warsaw Pact forces occupied Czechoslovakia on 21 Aug. The Czechoslovak government was compelled to accept a policy of 'normalization' (i.e., abandonment of most reforms) and the stationing of Soviet forces on Czechoslovak soil. In 1969-1970 Soviet pressure led to extensive changes in the Party and Government.

A Czechoslovak-Soviet 20-year Treaty of Friendship, Co-operation and Mutual Assistance was signed in May 1970. Since 1977 a dissident civil rights movement 'Charter 77' has been active despite official efforts to suppress it.

In 1974 the German Federal Republic and Czechoslovakia annulled the Munich agreement of 1938.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Czechoslovakia is bounded north-west by the German Democratic Republic, north by Poland, east by the USSR, south by Hungary and Austria and south-west by the Federal Republic of Germany. At the census of 11 Nov. 1980 the population was 15,283,095 (4,991,168 in Slovakia; 7.9m. females). Population in 1986, 15,520,839 (Slovakia, 5,177,441; females 7,960,979). There are 12 administrative regions (*Kraj*), one of which is the capital, Prague (Praha) and one the capital of Slovakia, Bratislava.

<i>Region</i>	<i>Chief city</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population 1986</i>
<i>Czech</i>			
Prague	—	495	1,190,576
Středočeský	Prague (Praha)	11,003	1,139,116
Jihočeský	České Budějovice	11,345	694,928
Západočeský	Plzeň (Pilsen)	10,876	874,152
Severočeský	Ústí nad Labem	7,810	1,181,818
Východočeský	Hradec Králové	11,240	1,245,474
Jihomoravský	Brno	15,028	2,075,180
Severomoravský	Ostrava	11,067	1,956,753
<i>Slovak</i>			
Bratislava	—	367	413,002
Západoslovenský	Bratislava	14,491	1,713,750
Stredoslovenský	Banská Bystrica	17,986	1,575,887
Východoslovenský	Košice	16,195	1,457,452

The area of Czechoslovakia is 127,903 sq. km (Slovakia, 49,039 sq. km). Population density in 1986: 121 per sq. km. Growth rate in 1986, 2.2 per 1,000. Expectation of life in 1985 was 67 (males); 74 (females).

Ethnic minorities have equal political and cultural rights. In 1985 there were (in 1,000): Czechs, 9,805; Slovaks, 4,809; Hungarians, 588; Poles, 71; Germans, 58; Ukrainians, 47; Russians, 8. There were 303,000 gypsies in 1983.

Official languages are Czech and Slovak.

The population of the principal towns in 1986 was as follows (in 1,000):

Prague (Praha)	1,194	Hradec Králové	100	Prešov	83
Bratislava	417	Pardubice	94	Banská Bystrica	78
Brno	385	České Budějovice	94	Karviná	75
Ostrava	328	Haviřov	92	Kladno	73
Košice	222	Žilina	92	Trnava	70
Plzeň	175	Ústí nad Labem	91	Most	65
Olomouc	106	Gottwaldov	86	Frýdek-Místek	63
Liberec	101	Nitra	85	Martin	62

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1984	226,595	121,376	37,422	182,351
1985	226,036	119,583	38,289	184,105
1986	219,964	119,927	37,885	185,405

Infant mortality in 1986 (per 1,000 live births), 5.4. Abortion rate per 1,000 live births, in 1985: Czech Lands, 728; Slovakia, 504. Abortion law was liberalized in 1986.

**CLIMATE.** A humid continental climate, with warm summers and cold winters. Precipitation is generally greater in summer, with thunderstorms. Autumn, with dry, clear weather and spring, which is damp, are each of short duration. Prague. Jan. 29.5°F (−1.5°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 19.3" (483mm). Brno. Jan. 31°F (−0.6°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 21" (525mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1960 constitution remains in force as amended by Constitutional Acts 143 and 144 of 1968. For details of previous constitutions, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1968–69, pp. 927–28.

Since 1 Jan. 1969 Czechoslovakia has been a federal socialist republic consisting of two nations of equal rights: The Czech Socialist Republic (the Czech lands, previously Bohemia, Moravia and part of Silesia), and the Slovak Socialist Republic (Slovakia). Each Republic is governed by a National Council (the Czech with 200 deputies, the Slovak with 150), which delegates to an overall Federal Assembly responsibility for constitutional and foreign affairs, defence and important economic decisions. The Federal Assembly consists of the Chamber of Nations, which has 75 Czech and 75 Slovak delegates, and the Chamber of the People, which has 200 deputies. Both Chambers are elected by direct universal suffrage. Deputies are elected for a 5-year term so as to coincide with Communist Party congresses. Minimum age of voters is 18, of deputies, 21 years. At the



elections of May 1986 a single list of National Front candidates was presented. Turnout was 10,884,947 from an electorate of 10,950,675 (99.39%).

*President of the Republic:* Gustáv Husák (born 1913), *Speaker of the Federal Assembly:* Alois Indra.

The real source of power is the Communist Party of Czechoslovakia (CPCS), of which the Communist Party of Slovakia (*First Secretary:* Ignác Janák) is a constituent part. Communists head the National Front, which incorporates the remaining political parties (Czechoslovak Socialist Party, Czechoslovak People's Party, Slovak Reconstruction Party, Slovak Freedom Party) and the trade unions and youth organizations. The CPCS had 1,675,000 members in 1986. In March 1989 the Party's Presidium consisted of Miloš Jakeš (*Secretary General*); Ladislav Adamec (*Prime Minister*); Jan Fojtík; Karel Hoffmann; Gustáv Husák; Alois Indra; Ignác Janák; Iván Knotek; Jozef Lenárt; František Pitra; Miroslav Štěpán; Karel Urbanek; Miroslav Závadil. Candidate members: Josef Hamán, Vladimír Herman, Miloslav Hrušková.

There were government reshuffles in April and Oct. 1988. In March 1989 members of the government not in the Party Presidium included: 2 *First Deputy Prime Ministers:* Pavel Hrivňák (*Chairman, State Commission for Scientific, Technical and Investment Development*); Bohumil Urban (*Chairman, State Planning Commission*); 5 *Deputy Prime Ministers:* Karel Julis; Iván Knotek; Matej Lúčan; Jaromír Obzina; František Pitra; *Other Ministers:* Jaromír Algayer (*Agriculture*); Jan Sterba (*Foreign Trade*); Milán Václavík (*Defence*); František Ondřích (*Chairman, People's Control Committee*); Jaromír Johanes (*Foreign*); Jan Stejskal (*Finance*); František Kinel (*Interior*).

The Czech Prime Minister is František Pitra; the Slovak, Iván Knotek.

Local government is carried on by National Committees consisting of deputies elected for 5-year terms. There are 10 regional Committees, 2 City Committees with the same status for Prague and Bratislava, 108 district Committees and 7,979 town and community Committees. Elections were held in 1986. 197,404 candidates were elected.

*National flag:* White and red (horizontal), with a blue triangle of full depth at the hoist, point to the fly.

*National anthem:* Kde domov můj (words by J. K. Tyl; tune by F. J. Škroup, 1834); combined with, Nad Tatru sa blýska (words by J. Matuška, 1844).

**DEFENCE.** Defence is the responsibility of the Defence Council headed by the CPCS Secretary General.

Defence expenditure cuts of 15% were announced in 1989.

There are some 55,000 Soviet troops in the country, legalized by an agreement which followed the Warsaw Pact invasion of Aug. 1968.

Military service is 2 years in the Army and Air Force.

**Army.** The Army had a strength (1989) of 197,000 (118,000 conscripts). It consists of 5 armoured, 5 motor rifle and 1 artillery divisions, 1 airborne brigade, 6 engineer battalions and 5 regiments of Civil Defence Troops. Equipment includes 3,400 T-54/-55/-72 tanks. There are also 2 paramilitary forces: Border Troops (11,000) and People's Militia (120,000).

**Air Force.** The Air Force is organized as a tactical force, under overall army command, and had a strength of some 52,000 personnel and 450 combat aircraft in 1989. Three interceptor regiments (each 3 squadrons of 14 aircraft) are equipped with MiG-23 and MiG-21 jets, and there are 4 regiments of Su-20, Su-25, MiG-23 and MiG-21 ground attack aircraft, as well as Mi-24 gunship helicopters. MiG-21s and modified L-39 Albatros jet trainers are used for tactical reconnaissance. Transport units have a total of 60 Let L-410, An-24/26, Il-14 and Tu-134 aircraft and about 100 Mil Mi-2 (some armed), Mi-4, Mi-8 and Mi-17 helicopters. Training units are equipped with 2-seat MiG-23s and MiG-21s and Czech-built aircraft, including L-29 and L-39 Albatros jet advanced trainers and Zlin primary trainers. Surface-to-air ('Guideline', 'Goa', 'Ganef', 'Gainful' and 'Gaskin') missile units are operational.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Czechoslovakia is a member of UN, COMECON and the Warsaw Pact.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For the first six 5-year plans see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1985-86. In 1980 some rationalizations in the planning system, which have become known as the 'Set of measures', were applied. The 7th 5-year plan ran from 1981 to 1985. National income rose by 11%, industrial production by 13%, agricultural by 9% (Targets were 14%, 18% and 10%). The eighth 5-year plan covers 1986-90. Targets include a growth in national income of 18% and in agricultural production of 6%. Emphasis is laid on intensive rather than extensive development and a more efficient use of resources. Cautious proposals for restructuring the economy after 1990 were outlined in the 'Principles of Reconstruction' announced in Jan. 1987.

**Budget.** Budgets for calendar years (in Kčs. 1 m.):

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Revenue	306,262	311,568	314,203	324,127	343,805	359,692	368,696
Expenditure	304,182	310,928	314,046	323,890	342,192	358,028	365,949

Main items of the 1988 budget were (in Kčs. 1,000m.): Revenue: From the economy, 258; direct taxes, 47. Expenditure: National economy, 90; health and social services, 96; defence, 27; administration, 4.

**Currency.** The monetary unit in the Czechoslovak Republic is the *koruna* (Kčs.) or crown of 100 *haler*. Notes in circulation: Kčs. 10, 20, 50, 100, 500. Coin: 5, 10, 20, 50 *halers*, and Kčs. 1, 2, 5. The *koruna* is based on a gold content of 0.123426 gramme of pure gold and pegged on the rouble at Kčs. 1.80 = R.1. The IMF did not approve this change of the par value, and Czechoslovak membership was terminated in 1954. Foreign currency reserves were US\$4,832m. in 1987; gold reserves were US\$1,832m. Official rates of exchange (March 1989): £1 = Kčs. 25.84; US\$1 = Kčs. 8.10. Tourist: £1 = Kčs. 16.67; US\$1 = Kčs. 9.69.

The return of 18.4 tonnes of gold seized by Nazi Germany and held in London and New York since the nationalization of Western assets in 1948 was agreed in Jan. 1982 by the Czech, British and US governments.

**Banking.** For previous banking history see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1971-72, pp. 858-59. The central bank and bank of issue is the State Bank (Státní Banka), which controls foreign exchange reserves, and is a savings bank and a commercial credit bank to enterprises, except foreign trade enterprises. These are financed by the Commercial Bank (Obchodní Banka) which carries out all foreign trade transactions. The Trade Bank (Zivnostenská Banka) provides banking services for private foreign clients, and maintains branches abroad. There is also an Investment Bank (Investiční Banka), one of whose functions is to manage foreign securities. 'Foreign exchange points' (e.g., hotels) have partial foreign exchange authorization. There were 19.2m. savings accounts totalling 234.881m. Kčs in 1985.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production of electricity in 1986: 84,774m. kwh. In 1986 there were 2 nuclear power stations, producing 14.5% of all electricity. Supply 120, 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Production (1988) 140,000 tonnes. There is an oil pipeline from the USSR with branches to Bratislava and Zaluží.

**Gas.** A natural gas pipeline which supplies the German Federal and Democratic Republics, Austria and Italy as well as Czechoslovakia. A second is under construction.

**Minerals.** Czechoslovakia is not rich in minerals. There are hard and soft coal re-



serves (chief coalfields: Most, Chomutov, Kladno, Ostrava and Sokolov). There is also uranium, glass sand and salt, and small quantities of iron ore, graphite, copper and lead. Gold deposits were found near Prague in 1985. Production in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Coal, 25,197; lignite and brown coal, 102,738.

**Agriculture.** In 1986 there were 6.8m. hectares of agricultural land (4.8m. hectares arable, 0.8m. meadow, 0.8m. pasture), of which 4.3m. were held by collective farms, 2.1m. by state farms and 71,000 as private plots (maximum size 1 hectare).

In 1986 there were 1,664 collective farms with 998,664 members and 235 state farms with 167,046 employees. Crop production in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-beet, 7,135; wheat, 5,305; potatoes, 3,512; barley, 3,530; maize, 992; rye, 547.

**Livestock.** In 1987: Cattle, 5,073,000 (including 1,794,000 milch cows); horses, 46,000; pigs, 6,833,000; sheep, 1,104,000; poultry, 49m. In 1986 production of meat was 1,759,838 tonnes (live weight); milk, 6,804m. litres; 5,558m. eggs. In 1986 there were 138,731 tractors. 39,723 hectares were irrigated in 1986.

**Forestry.** Czechoslovakia is a richly wooded country, and the timber industry is important. Forest area in 1987 was 4,601,159 hectares (50% spruce, 16% beech and pine, 7% oak). The area reafforested in 1986 was 72,703 hectares. The timber yield was 18.8m. cu. metres in 1986.

**Fisheries.** Total catch was 21m. tonnes in 1986.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrialization is well developed and antedates the Communist régime. All industry is nationalized.

Output in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Pig-iron, 9,573; crude steel, 15,112; coke, 10,091; rolled-steel products, 11,181; cement, 10,298; paper, 960; sulphuric acid, 1,294; nitrogenous fertilizers, 614; phosphate fertilizers, 307; plastics, 1,140; synthetic fibres, 193; sugar, 985; beer, 23m. hectolitres; cars, 185,030 (no.).

Textile production (in 1m. metres) in 1986: Cotton, 606; linen, 99; woollen, 59; shoes, 124.5m. pairs (56m. leather).

**Labour.** There were 8,762,635 persons of employable age in 1986 (*i.e.*, males, 15–59; females 15–54), of whom 7.7m. (46% women) were employed: 5.8m. in production (industry, 2.9m.; agriculture, 900,000; building, 700,000); and 1.9m. in services.

A 5-day 42-hour week with 4 weeks annual holiday is standard. A new wage system of norms and differentials linked to productivity was introduced in 1985. Average monthly wage in 1986: Kčs. 2,927. In 1988 the trade union movement had 7.7m. members; chairman, Miroslav Závadil.

**Commerce.** Total trade (in Kčs. 1m.) for calendar years:

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	86,276	94,177	103,012	113,737	120,323	125,449
Exports	87,689	95,314	103,838	114,230	119,818	121,777

In 1986, trade with Communist countries amounted to 194,436m. Kčs. (109,742m. Kčs. with the USSR, 23,903m. Kčs. with the German Democratic Republic, 21,586m. Kčs. with Poland). The UK is Czechoslovakia's third biggest non-Communist trade partner after the Federal German Republic and Austria.

Major exports in 1986 (percentage of total): Machinery, 54; industrial consumer goods, 17.1; other finished products, 11.7. Imports: Machinery, 40; fuel, 38.

There are 11 foreign trade agencies (independent legal entities with their own capital run by state-appointed managers). Joint economic ventures with Western firms holding up to 49% of the equity have been permitted since 1985. Foreign hard-currency indebtedness was US\$4,000m. in 1989.

In 1972 an Anglo-Czech Agreement on Co-operation was signed. Under this an Anglo-Czech Joint Commission was established to further the development of trade and industrial and scientific co-operation.

UK-Czechoslovak trade has been conducted since 1 Jan. 1975 on the basis of autonomous EEC measures.



Total trade between Czechoslovakia and UK for calendar years (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	117,188	120,017	125,399	141,472	148,248
Exports and re-exports from UK	78,075	100,452	108,841	114,101	130,420

**Tourism.** In 1986, 10.66m. tourists visited Czechoslovakia (770,000 from the West) and 6.02m. Czechoslovak tourists made visits abroad (210,000 to the West).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 73,805 km of motorways and first-class roads (660 km of motorways in 1988). In 1984 there were 2,639,564 private cars (figures have not been given since). In 1986 state road transport carried 2,300m. passengers and 346m. tonnes of freight. In 1986 there were 101,801 accidents with 1,206 fatalities.

**Railways.** In 1986 the length of railway track was 13,116 km. Of this, 3,530 km were electrified. In 1986, 19,935m. passenger-km and 69,315m. tonne-km of freight were carried.

**Aviation.** Air transport is run by ČSA (Czechoslovak Airlines). The main airports are: Prague (Ruzyně), Brno (Cernovice), Bratislava (Vajnory), Olomouc (Holice), Košice (Barca). In 1986, 1.3m. passengers and 24,747 tonnes of freight were flown. There are 6 internal and 53 international flights from Prague. British Airways operates air traffic London–Prague, Air France Paris–Prague–Bucharest.

**Shipping.** In 1986 Czechoslovak Maritime Shipping had 14 freighters totalling 259,879 DWT, based on Szczecin. In 1986, 1,842m. tonnes of cargo were carried.

There are 475 km of inland waterways. Freight transport totalled 14.22m. tonnes in 1986.

Czechoslovak Danube Shipping operate 5 ships totalling 244,000 DWT in the Mediterranean from Bratislava, and Czechoslovak Elbe–Oder Shipping had a fleet of 284,500 DWT in 1985.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 5,112 post offices in 1986. Number of telephones in service in 1986 was 3,706,718. *Československý Rozhlas*, the governmental broadcasting station, broadcasts on 2 networks; 1 from Prague with 3 programmes in Czech and Slovak and 1 from Bratislava with 2 programmes in Slovak and additional broadcasts in Hungarian and Ukrainian. *Československá Televisie* broadcast 2 television programmes nation-wide, including colour broadcasts. In 1986, 3.9m. people held wireless and 4.39m. TV licences.

**Cinemas and Theatres** (1986). There were 2,787 cinemas and 81 theatres. 43 full-length films were made.

**Newspapers and Books** (1986). There were 30 daily newspapers, including 12 in Slovak, and 1,050 other periodicals. The party daily *Rudé Právo* ('Red Justice') has a circulation of about 1m. 6,962 book titles were published in 106.7m. copies.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The criminal and criminal procedure codes date from 1 Jan. 1962, as amended in April 1973.

There is a Federal Supreme Court and federal military courts, with judges elected by the Federal Assembly. Both republics have Supreme Courts and a network of regional and district courts whose professional judges are elected by the republican National Councils. Lay judges are elected by regional or district local authorities. Local authorities and social organizations may participate in the decision-making of the courts.

**Religion.** Official surveys suggest that 20% of the population are religious believers. Churches are controlled by the Federal Secretariat for Church Affairs and the Ministries of Culture. In 1987 there were 18 different faiths with 5,500 clergy and 7,500 churches. The largest single church is the Roman Catholic (3.7m. members, 4,336 parishes 5,085 churches and 3,175 priests, 1985): Its main support is in

Slovakia. Cardinal František Tomášek was installed as archbishop of Prague in 1978. The archbishopric of Trnava is held by a bishop and that of Olomouc by an administrator. Most of the remaining 10 dioceses are directed by Government-appointed capitulary vicars but 3 bishops were consecrated in 1988, the first since 1973. There were 2 seminaries and 6 theological faculties in 1989.

In 1986 there were 1.3m. non-Catholic church members, including 475,000 Hussites, 81,000 Czech Brethren with 670 congregations, 370,000 Slovak Lutherans in 2 districts with 15 associations of parishes, 36,000 Silesian Lutherans and 120,000 Reformed Christians with 7 associations of parishes. In 1981 there were 15,000 Jews (mainly in Prague, where there is a synagogue and, since 1984, a rabbi). In 1986 there were 150,000 Orthodox with 100 congregations in 4 dioceses. The Uniate Church was suppressed in 1950 but maintains a clandestine existence.

**Education.** In 1986–87 there were 11,445 kindergartens for children from 3 to 6 years, with 50,669 teachers and 668,634 pupils. Education is free and compulsory for 10 years. Children of 6 to 14 yrs attend primary school (grades 1 to 9). Selection then takes place for secondary schools (4 years), vocational secondary schools (4 years) or apprentice centres (2–4 years). University entrance is mainly from secondary schools. In 1986–87 there were 6,274 primary schools with 2,088,750 pupils and 97,385 teachers, 343 secondary schools with 9,723 teachers and 134,103 pupils and 561 secondary vocational schools with 257,968 students and 17,044 teachers. In higher education in 1986–87, there were 135,874 (59,160 women) full-time students, and 19,459 teachers. There are 36 institutions of higher education, with 112 faculties. These include 5 universities—the Charles University in Prague (founded 1348); the Purkyně (formerly Masaryk) University in Brno (1919); the Comenius University in Bratislava (1919); the Palacký University in Olomouc (1573); the Šafárik University in Košice (1959); and 12 technical universities or institutes.

**Welfare.** Medical care is free. In 1986 Kčs. 31,924m. were spent on health insurance benefits. There were, in 1986, 230 hospitals with a total of 122,842 beds, and 56,721 doctors and dentists. Family allowances (Kčs. per month): 1 child, 200; 2 children, 650; 3, 1,210. Old age pensions averaging 67% of salary are paid at the age of 60 (men), 53–57 (women).

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Czechoslovakia in Great Britain (25 Kensington Palace Gdns., London, W8 4QY)

*Ambassador:* Jan Fidler (accredited 30 May 1986).

Of Great Britain in Czechoslovakia (Thunovská 14, 11800 Prague 1)

*Ambassador:* P. L. O'Keefe, CMG, CVO.

Of Czechoslovakia in the USA (3900 Linnean Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Dr Miroslav Houštěcký.

Of the USA in Czechoslovakia (Tržiste 15–12548 Praha, Prague)

*Ambassador:* Julian M. Niemczyk.

Of Czechoslovakia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Evžen Zápotocký.

## Further Reading

*The Constitution of the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic*, Prague, 1960

*Statistická ročenka ČSSR* [Statistical Yearbook], Prague, annual since 1958

*Historická statistická ročenka ČSSR*, Prague, 1985

*Czechoslovak Foreign Trade*, Prague, monthly

Batt, J., *Economic Reform and Political Change in Eastern Europe: A Comparison of the Czechoslovak and Hungarian Experiences*, Basingstoke, 1988

Bradley, J. F. N., *Politics in Czechoslovakia, 1945–1971*, Lanham, 1981

Czechoslovak Chamber of Commerce and Industry. *Facts on Czechoslovak Foreign Trade*, Prague, annual since 1965.—*Your Trade Partners in Czechoslovakia*, Prague, 1986

- Demek, J. and others, *Geography of Czechoslovakia*. Prague, 1971
- Eidlin, F. H., *The Logic of 'Normalization': The Soviet Intervention in Czechoslovakia of 21 August 1968 and the Czechoslovak Response*. Columbia Univ. Press, 1980
- Hermann, A. H., *A History of the Czechs*. London, 1975
- Hejzlar, Z. and Kusin, V. V., *Czechoslovakia, 1968-1969*. New York, 1975
- Husák, G., *Speeches and Writings*. Oxford, 1986
- Kalvoda, J., *The Genesis of Czechoslovakia*. New York, 1986
- Kaplan, K., *The Communist Party in Power: A Profile of Party Politics in Czechoslovakia*. Boulder, 1987
- Kolařová, V. and Slaba, D., *Czech-English and English-Czech dictionary*. Prague, 1979
- Korbel, J., *Twentieth-Century Czechoslovakia: The Meanings of its History*. Columbia Univ. Press, 1977
- Krystufek, Z., *The Soviet Régime in Czechoslovakia*. Columbia Univ. Press, 1981
- Kusin, V. V., *From Dubček to Charter 77*. Edinburgh, 1978
- Leff, C. S., *National Conflict in Czechoslovakia: The Making and Remaking of a State, 1918-1987*. Princeton, 1988
- Mamatey, V. S. and Luža, R. (eds.) *A History of the Czechoslovak Republic 1918-1948*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1973
- Mlynař, Z., *Night Frost in Prague: the End of Humane Socialism*. New York, 1980
- Procházka, J., *English-Czech and Czech-English Dictionary*. 16th ed. London, 1959
- Sejna, J., *We Will Bury You*. London, 1982
- Short, D., *Czechoslovakia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986
- Sperling, W., *Tschechoslowakei: Beiträge zur Landeskunde Ostmitteleuropas*. Stuttgart, 1981
- Stevens, J. N., *Czechoslovakia at the Crossroads: The Economic Dilemmas of Communism in Postwar Czechoslovakia*. Boulder, 1985
- Suda, Z. L., *Zealots and Rebels: A History of the Communist Party in Czechoslovakia*. Stanford, 1980
- Teichová, A., *The Czechoslovak Economy, 1918-1980*. London, 1988
- Wallace, W. V., *Czechoslovakia*. London, 1977



# DENMARK

*Capital:* Copenhagen

*Population:* 5.13m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$12,640 (1986)

## Kongeriget Danmark

**HISTORY.** First organized as a unified state in the 10th century, Denmark acquired approximately its present boundaries in 1815, having ceded Norway to Sweden and its north German territory to Prussia. Denmark became a constitutional monarchy in 1849.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** According to the census held on 9 Nov. 1970 the area of Denmark proper was 43,075 sq. km (16,631 sq. miles) and the population 4,937,579. Population, Jan. 1988: 5,129,254.

<i>Administrative divisions</i>	<i>Area (sq. km) 1988</i>	<i>Population 1970</i>	<i>Population 1988</i>	<i>Population 1988 per sq. km</i>
København (Copenhagen) (city)	88	622,773	468,704	5,314
Frederiksberg (borough)	9	101,874	85,814	9,785
Københavns (county)	526	615,343	605,127	1,151
Frederiksborg	1,347	259,442	339,914	252
Roskilde	891	153,199	215,164	241
Vestsjælland	2,984	259,057	282,775	95
Storstrøm	3,398	252,363	257,161	76
Bornholm	588	47,239	46,642	79
Fyn	3,486	432,699	457,070	131
Sønderjylland	3,938	238,062	250,132	64
Ribe	3,131	197,843	217,973	70
Vejle	2,997	306,263	329,590	110
Ringkøbing	4,853	241,327	266,554	55
Aarhus	4,561	533,190	591,993	130
Viborg	4,123	220,734	230,966	56
Nordjylland	6,173	456,171	483,675	78
Total	43,093	4,937,579	5,129,254	119

The population is almost entirely Scandinavian; in Jan. 1988, of the inhabitants of Denmark proper, 95.2% were born in Denmark, including Faroe Islands and Greenland.

On 1 Jan. 1988 the population of the capital, Copenhagen (comprising Copenhagen, Frederiksberg and Gentofte municipalities), was 619,985 (including suburbs, 1,343,916); Aarhus, 258,028; Odense, 174,016; Aalborg, 154,739; Esbjerg, 81,385; Randers, 61,155; Kolding, 57,043; Helsingør, 56,607; Herning, 56,191; Horsens, 54,776.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Living births</i>	<i>Stillbirths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Emigration</i>	<i>Immigration</i>
1983	50,822	265	27,096	14,763	57,156	25,999	27,718
1984	51,800	230	28,624	14,490	57,109	25,053	29,035
1985	53,749	240	29,322	14,385	58,378	26,715	36,214
1986	55,312	242	30,773	14,490	58,100	27,928	38,932
1987	56,221	288	31,132	14,381	58,136	30,123	36,296

Illegitimate births: 1983, 40.6%; 1984, 41.9%; 1985, 43%; 1986, 43.9%; 1987, 44.7%.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is much modified by marine influences, and the effect of the Gulf Stream, to give winters that are cold and cloudy but warm and sunny summers. In general, the east is drier than the west, though few places have more than 27" (675 mm) of rain a year. Long periods of calm weather are exceptional and windy conditions are common. Copenhagen. Jan. 33°F (0.5°C), July 63°F

(17°C). Annual rainfall 22.8'' (571 mm). Esbjerg. Jan. 33°F (0.5°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 32'' (800 mm).

**REIGNING QUEEN.** *Margrethe II*, born 16 April 1940; married 10 June 1967 to Prince Henrik, born Count de Monpezat; *offspring*: Crown Prince Frederik, born 26 May 1968; Prince Joachim, born 7 June 1969. She succeeded to the throne on the death of her father, King Frederik IX, on 14 Jan. 1972.

*Mother of the Queen*: Queen Ingrid, born Princess of Sweden, 28 March 1910.

*Sisters of the Queen*: Princess Benedikte, born 29 April 1944 (married 3 Feb. 1968 to Prince Richard of Sayn-Wittgenstein-Berleburg); Princess Anne-Marie, born 30 Aug. 1946 (married 18 Sept. 1964 to King Constantine of Greece).

The crown of Denmark was elective from the earliest times. In 1448 after the death of the last male descendant of Swein Estridsen the Danish Diet elected to the throne Christian I, Count of Oldenburg, in whose family the royal dignity remained for more than 4 centuries, although the crown was not rendered hereditary by right till 1660. The direct male line of the house of Oldenburg became extinct with King Frederik VII on 15 Nov. 1863. In view of the death of the king, without direct heirs, the Great Powers signed a treaty at London on 8 May 1852, by the terms of which the succession to the crown of Denmark was made over to Prince Christian of Schleswig-Holstein-Sonderburg-Glücksburg, and to the direct male descendants of his union with the Princess Louise of Hesse-Cassel, niece of King Christian VIII of Denmark. In accordance with this treaty, a law concerning the succession to the Danish crown was adopted by the Diet, and obtained the royal sanction 31 July 1853. Linked to the constitution of 5 June 1953, a new law of succession, dated 27 March 1953, has come into force, which restricts the right of succession to the descendants of King Christian X and Queen Alexandrine, and admits the sovereign's daughters to the line of succession, ranking after the sovereign's sons.

Subjoined is a list of the kings of Denmark, with the dates of their accession, from the time of election of Christian I of Oldenburg:

*House of Oldenburg*

Christian I	1448	Christian IV	1588	Frederik V	1746
Hans	1481	Frederik III	1648	Christian VII	1766
Christian II	1513	Christian V	1670	Frederik VI	1808
Frederik I	1523	Frederik IV	1699	Christian VIII	1839
Christian III	1534	Christian VI	1730	Frederik VII	1848
Frederik II	1559				

*House of Schleswig-Holstein-Sonderburg-Glücksburg*

Christian IX	1863	Christian X	1912	Margrethe II	1972
Frederik VIII	1906	Frederik IX	1947		

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution of Denmark is founded upon the 'Grundlov' (charter) of 5 June 1953.

The legislative power lies with the Queen and the *Folketing* (Diet) jointly. The executive power is vested in the Queen, who exercises her authority through the ministers. The judicial power is with the courts. The Queen must be a member of the Evangelical-Lutheran Church, the official Church of the State. The Queen cannot assume major international obligations without the consent of the *Folketing*. The *Folketing* consists of one chamber. All men and women of Danish nationality of more than 18 years of age and permanently resident in Denmark possess the franchise and are eligible for election to the *Folketing*, which is at present composed of 179 members; 135 members are elected by the method of proportional representation in 17 constituencies. In order to attain an equal representation of the different parties, 40 *tillægsmandater* (additional seats) are divided among such parties which have not obtained sufficient returns at the constituency elections. Two members are elected for the Faroe Islands and 2 for Greenland. The term of the legislature is 4 years, but a general election may be called at any time.

The *Folketing* must meet every year on the first Tuesday in October. Besides its legislative functions, it appoints every 6 years judges who, together with the ordi-

nary members of the Supreme Court (*Højesteret*), form the *Rigsret*, a tribunal which can alone try parliamentary impeachments. The ministers have free access to the House, but can vote only if they are members.

*Folketing*, elected 10 May 1988: 55 Social Democrats, 10 Radical Liberals, 35 Conservatives, 24 Socialist People's Party, 9 Centre Democrats, 4 Christian People's Party, 22 Liberals, 16 Progress Party, 2 Faroe Islands and 2 Greenland representatives.

The executive (called the State Council (*Statsraadet*) when acting with the Queen presiding) is a minority non-Socialist coalition government, consisting of the Conservatives, the Liberals, the Centre Democrats and the Christian People's Party; it was in Dec. 1988 as follows:

*Prime Minister*: Poul Schlüter.

*Foreign Affairs*: Uffe Ellemann-Jensen. *Finance*: Palle Simonsen. *Justice*: Erik Ninn-Hansen. *Economy*: Niels Helveg Petersen. *Environment*: Lone Dybkjaer. *Education and Research*: Bertel Haarder. *Social Affairs*: Aase Olesen. *Ecclesiastical Affairs*: Mette Madsen. *Energy*: Svend Erik Hov. *Labour*: Henning Dyremose. *Fisheries and Nordic Co-operation*: Lars P. Gammelgaard. *Industry*: Nils Wilhjelm. *Culture and Communications*: Ole Vig Jensen. *Taxation*: Anders Fogh Rasmussen. *Health*: Elsebeth Kock-Petersen. *Agriculture*: Laurits Toernaes. *Defence*: Bernt Johan Collet. *Housing*: Agnete Laustsen.

The ministers are individually and collectively responsible for their acts, and if impeached and found guilty, cannot be pardoned without the consent of the *Folketing*.

In 1948 a separate legislature (*Lagting*) and executive (*Landsstyre*) were established for the Faroe Islands, to deal with specified local matters and in 1979 a separate legislature (*Landsting*) and executive (*Landsstyre*) were established for Greenland, also to deal with specified local matters.

*National flag*: Red with white Scandinavian cross (Dannebrog).

*National anthems*: Kong Kristian stod ved højen Mast (words by J. Ewald, 1778; tune by J. E. Hartmann, 1780) and Der er et yndigt land.

*Local Government*. For administrative purposes Denmark is divided into 275 municipalities (*kommuner*); each of them has a district council of between 5 and 25 members, headed by an elected mayor. The city of Copenhagen forms a district by itself and is governed by a city council of 55 members, elected every 4 years, and an executive (*magistraten*), consisting of the chief burgomaster (*overborgmesteren*) and 6 burgomasters, appointed by the city council for 4 years. There are 14 counties (*amtskommuner*), each of which is administered by a county council (*amstråd*) of between 13 and 31 members, headed by an elected mayor. All councils are elected directly by universal suffrage and proportional representation for 4-year terms. A third council, the Metropolitan Council, with a constitution similar to the counties was established 1 April 1974. The Metropolitan Council is responsible for overall development within Metropolitan Copenhagen.

The counties and Copenhagen are superintended by the Ministry of Interior Affairs. The municipalities are superintended by 14 local supervision committees, headed by a state county prefect (*statsamtmand*) who is a civil servant appointed by the Queen.

**DEFENCE.** The Danish military defence is organized in accordance with the Defence Act of May 1982 and the overall organization of the Danish Armed Forces comprises the Defence Command, the Army, the Navy, the Air Force and inter-service authorities and institutions. To this should be added the Home Guard, which is an indispensable part of Danish military defence. The Home Guard is based on the Home Guard Act of May 1982.

In accordance with the Defence Act the Chief of Defence has full command of the three services: The Army, the Navy and the Air Force. The Chief of Defence,



and the Defence Staff constitute the Defence Command. The Inspector Generals of the Army, the Navy and the Air Force are members of the Defence Staff.

The Minister of Defence is assisted by a Defence Council consisting of the Chief of Defence, the Chief of Defence Staff, the Chief of Danish Operational Forces, the Inspector Generals of the Army, the Navy and the Air Force and the Chief of the Home Guard.

The Constitution of 1849 declared it the duty of every fit man to contribute to the national defence, and this provision is still in force. According to the Personnel Act of May 1982, the military personnel comprises officers, n.c.o.s and privates. Private personnel are provided by enlistment and by recruiting of volunteers. Selection of conscripts takes place at the age of 18–19 years, and the conscripts are normally called up for 9 months service  $\frac{1}{2}$ –1  $\frac{1}{2}$  years later. Afterwards conscripts may be recalled for refresher training or musters. The initial training period for conscripts in combat and engineer units is 12 months.

**Army.** The Army comprises field army formations and the local defence forces. The field army formations are organized in a covering force and in reserve units (comprising 6 regimental combat teams and some independent battalions). The covering force numbers about 13,000 men and comprises a standing force (regulars and conscripts with more than six months' service), and a supplementary force consisting of men newly released from service. The standing force are organized in standing brigade units, headquarters units and support units. The brigade units are organized in 5 mechanized infantry brigades. The field army is equipped with 200 medium battle tanks, 50 light tanks and about 650 armoured personnel carriers as well as artillery including 72 self-propelled howitzers. The Army has 14 Hughes 500 helicopters and 8 Supporter aircraft for observation and liaison. The local defence units consist of about 18,000 men organized in 9 infantry battalions and some artillery battalions. The men of the latest annual service groups form the troops of the line, while those of the previous years form the local defence, the reserve and the reserve for the Home Guard. The mobilization units of the field army and the local defence force will total about 59,000 men.

**Navy.** The Navy comprises the fleet and coast-defence which includes several permanent fortifications. The fleet includes 5 submarines, 2 frigates, 3 small frigates, 5 ocean escorts (for fishery protection and surveying duties), 10 fast missile craft, 6 fast torpedo boats, 4 ocean minelayers, 2 coastal minelayers, 3 coastal mine-sweepers, 3 torpedo recovery vessels, 23 patrol vessels including 1 standard flex 300 class, 5 coastal patrol launches, 2 oilers, auxiliary vessels and the royal yacht. The Naval Air Arm comprises 8 Lynx helicopters (one is carried in each of the ocean escorts).

Total strength of the Navy is 7,900 officers and men (1,200 officers, 3,200 regular ratings, 990 national service, 2,600 civilians). Reserves total 10,000 (the mobilization force is 4,600 men).

The Naval Home Guard has 35 vessels and 4,700 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The operational units of the Air Force comprise 8 surface-to-air missile squadrons and 6 flying squadrons.

The air defence force consists of the 8 Hawk surface-to-air missile squadrons and 4 all-weather air-defence squadrons with a total of 57 F-16s. All squadrons have an air-defence and a fighter-bomber rôle.

The fighter bomber force comprises 2 squadrons with a total of 32 F 35 Drakens, one unit having a secondary reconnaissance role.

In addition the Air Force has a number of supplementary units, including 1 transport squadron (C-130 Hercules and Gulfstream III), 1 helicopter rescue squadron (S-61 As), and a control and warning system.

Total strength of the Air Force is about 9,300, and the mobilization force about 10,000 men.

**Home Guard.** The overall Home Guard organization comprises the Home Guard Command, the Army Home Guard, the Naval Home Guard and the Air Force Home Guard.

The personnel of the Home Guard is recruited on a voluntary basis. The personnel establishment of the Home Guard is at present about 72,100 persons (56,300 in the Army Home Guard, 4,700 in the Navy Home Guard and 11,000 in the Air Force Home Guard).

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Denmark is a member of UN, NATO, OECD and the European Communities.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget (*Finanslovsforslag*) must be laid before the Parliament (*Folketing*) not later than 4 months before the beginning of a new fiscal year.

The following shows the actual revenue and expenditure as shown in central government accounts for the calendar years 1984, 1985 and 1986, the approved budget figures for 1987 and the budget for 1988 (in 1,000 kroner):

	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989
Revenue	160,156,688	193,545,000	202,200,000	205,100,000	227,400,000
Expenditure	186,495,042	185,703,000	198,700,000	208,600,000	219,600,000

Receipts and expenditures of special government funds and expenditures on public works are included.

The 1989 budget envisages revenue of 123,350m. kroner from income and property taxes and 125,755m. from consumer taxes.

The central government debt on 31 Dec. 1987 amounted to 416,200m. kroner.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *kroner* of 100 *ore*. In 1931 Denmark went off the gold standard, as established in 1873.

Small change: 10-kroner and 5-kroner pieces of copper-nickel, 1-kroner pieces of copper-nickel; 25-*ore* and 10-*ore* pieces of copper-nickel, and 5-*ore* pieces of copper-steel-copper clad. In March 1989, £1 = 12.42 *kroner*; US\$1 = 7.22 *kroner*.

**Banking.** On 31 Dec. 1987 the accounts of the National Bank balanced at 133,826m. kroner. The assets included official net foreign reserves of 65,826m. kroner. The liabilities included notes and coin of 22,809m. kroner. On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 72 commercial banks, with deposits of 305,631m. kroner, and 140 savings banks, with deposits of 119,455m. kroner. Their advances amounted to 275,625m. kroner and 116,522m. kroner respectively. On 31 Dec. 1987 the money supply was 364,440m. kroner.

**Weights and Measures.** The use of the metric system of weights and measures has been obligatory in Denmark since 1 April 1912.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 27,501m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; Hz 50.

**Oil.** Production (1988) 4.6m. tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Land ownership is widely distributed. In June 1987 (census) there were 86,940 holdings with at least 5 hectares of agricultural area (or at least a production equivalent to that from 5 hectares of barley). About 9,000 holdings were below the sample threshold. There were 16,527 small holdings (with less than 10 hectares), 55,653 medium sized holdings (10–50 hectares) and 14,760 holdings with more than 50 hectares.

The number of agricultural workers declined from 120,442 in July 1961 to 24,109 in June 1987.

In June 1987 the cultivated area was utilized as follows (in 1,000 hectares): Grain, 1,499; peas and beans, 204; root crops, 210; other crops, 343; green fodder and grass, 540; fallow, 4; total cultivated area, 2,800.

	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Production (in 1,000 tonnes)</i>		
<i>Chief crops</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Wheat	339	353	399	1,972	2,177	2,285
Rye	126	120	737	565	546	512
Barley	1,094	1,078	954	5,251	5,134	4,292
Oats <sup>1</sup>	42	27	21	168	111	94
Potatoes	30	31	30	1,100	1,129	957
Other root crops	198	190	180	11,379	10,563	8,314

<sup>1</sup> Including mixed grain.

Livestock, 1987: Horses, 33,000; cattle, 2,351,000; pigs, 9,266,000; poultry, 14,619,000.

Production (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1987: Milk, 4,860; butter, 96; cheese, 272; beef, 255; pork and bacon, 1,198; eggs, 77.

In May 1987 farm tractors numbered 164,949 and harvester-threshers, 33,863.

**Fisheries.** The total value of the fish caught was (in 1 m. kroner): 1950, 156; 1955, 252; 1960, 376; 1965, 650; 1970, 854; 1975, 1,442; 1980, 2,888; 1984, 3,645; 1985, 3,542; 1986, 3,554; 1987, 3,503.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The following table sets forth the gross factor income (in 1 m. kroner) by industrial origin in 3 calendar years:

	<i>1985</i>		<i>1986</i>		<i>1987</i>	
	<i>Current Prices</i>	<i>1980 Prices</i>	<i>Current Prices</i>	<i>1980 Prices</i>	<i>Current Prices</i>	<i>1980 Prices</i>
Agriculture, fur-farming, forestry, etc.	27,976	21,194	27,881	22,515	25,509	21,655
Fishing	2,683	2,267	2,830	1,776	2,766	1,733
<b>Total</b>	<b>30,659</b>	<b>23,461</b>	<b>30,711</b>	<b>24,291</b>	<b>28,276</b>	<b>23,388</b>
Mining and quarrying	6,718	4,836	4,404	6,229	5,053	7,192
Manufacturing	102,607	71,806	111,690	72,314	115,006	70,378
Electricity, gas and water	6,436	5,332	7,326	5,850	6,992	5,750
Construction	32,628	22,128	37,179	24,506	40,405	24,609
<b>Total</b>	<b>148,389</b>	<b>104,102</b>	<b>160,599</b>	<b>108,899</b>	<b>167,456</b>	<b>107,929</b>
Wholesale and retail trade	75,242	48,895	78,184	49,675	77,002	47,710
Restaurants and hotels	7,304	4,697	8,685	4,577	9,776	4,780
Transport and storage	34,691	21,531	35,764	22,310	37,070	23,741
Communication	10,255	6,036	10,951	6,581	11,076	6,698
Financing and insurance	15,700	10,925	21,909	13,935	24,711	14,349
Dwellings	46,815	30,319	49,257	29,942	51,740	30,099
Business services	28,089	18,801	31,443	20,266	31,400	19,535
Market services of education, health	6,287	4,358	6,709	4,455	6,944	4,370
Recreational and cultural services	5,014	3,252	5,400	3,620	5,749	3,747
Household services, incl. auto repair	14,456	9,485	15,557	9,737	18,442	9,906
<b>Total</b>	<b>243,852</b>	<b>158,301</b>	<b>263,859</b>	<b>165,098</b>	<b>273,910</b>	<b>164,937</b>
Other producers, excl. government	3,410	2,345	3,734	2,447	3,844	2,324
Producers of government services	115,230	81,469	120,005	83,116	131,916	83,461
<b>Total</b>	<b>118,640</b>	<b>83,814</b>	<b>123,739</b>	<b>85,563</b>	<b>135,760</b>	<b>85,784</b>



	1985		1986		1987	
	Current Prices	1980 Prices	Current Prices	1980 Prices	Current Prices	1980 Prices
Imputed bank service charges	-16,504	-11,344	-22,850	-14,865	-25,246	-16,424
Gross domestic product at factor cost	525,035	358,332	556,059	368,986	580,156	365,616
Plus indirect taxes	112,898	67,122	130,851	70,666	135,506	69,426
Less subsidies	18,358		19,769		22,634	
Gross domestic product at market prices	619,575	425,454	667,141	439,652	693,028	435,042

According to the registration of business units for VAT settlement there were in 1985 a total of 37,000 manufacturing enterprises. In the following table 'number of wage-earners' refers to 7,300 establishments with 6 employees or more (1987), while 'gross-output' and 'value-added' cover 3,298 kind-of-activity units of enterprises with 20 employees or more (1987).

Branch of industry	Number of wage-earners (1,000)	Gross output in factor values (1m. kroner)	Value added in factor values (1m. kroner)
Mining and quarrying	0.9	810	613
Food products	52.6	84,852	22,242
Beverages	6.1	7,181	4,277
Tobacco	1.6	2,367	1,228
Textiles	11.4	8,440	3,870
Wearing apparel	8.5	3,660	1,797
Leather and products	0.6	403	173
Footwear	1.1	1,016	391
Wood products	8.2	5,735	2,644
Furniture and fixtures	11.8	6,556	3,428
Paper and products	7.1	7,002	3,351
Printing, publishing	15.7	13,722	8,853
Industrial chemicals	12.5	24,281	12,849
Other chemical products, petroleum refineries, petroleum coal products and rubber	2.7	8,242	2,247
Plastic products	7.6	5,688	3,114
Pottery, china, glass and products	3.5	1,669	1,018
Non-metal products	10.2	9,760	5,894
Iron, steel and non-ferrous metals	4.4	3,824	1,850
Metal products	27.6	18,712	9,693
Machinery	40.2	28,099	15,452
Electrical machinery	16.4	14,383	7,702
Transport equipment	17.1	12,620	5,567
Controlling equipment	6.5	5,290	3,347
Other industries	4.6	3,980	2,271
Total manufacturing	278.9	278,288	123,873

**Labour.** In 1986, 6% of the working population lived on agriculture, forestry and fishery, 21% on industries and handicrafts, 7% on construction, 14% on commerce, etc., 7% on transport and communication, and 45% on administration, professional services, etc.

**Commerce.** The following table shows the value, in 1,000 kroner, of special trade imports and exports (including trade with the Faroe Islands and Greenland) for calendar years:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>
Imports	148,896,460	171,825,816	191,562,564	184,732,811	173,917,898
Exports	146,800,268	179,338,909	179,577,142	171,790,740	175,096,550

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

## Imports and exports (in 1 m. kroner) for calendar years:

<i>Leading commodities</i>	1986		1987 <sup>1</sup>	
	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
Live animals, meat, etc.	768	19,533	921	18,503
Dairy products, eggs	618	6,888	652	6,567
Fish and fish preparations	4,732	10,261	5,682	11,246
Cereals and cereal preparations	1,357	4,289	1,430	4,144
Sugar and sugar preparations	719	1,281	654	1,173
Coffee, tea, cocoa, etc.	2,912	608	1,812	572
Feeding stuff for animals	3,779	1,386	3,633	1,187
Wood, lumber and cork	2,866	496	2,472	476
Textiles, fibres, yarns, fabrics, etc.	6,972	4,024	6,523	4,370
Fuels, lubricants, etc.	16,066	4,145	13,334	4,271
Pharmaceutical products	2,616	5,434	2,609	5,741
Fertilizers, etc.	2,093	966	1,806	1,072
Metals, manufactures of metals	16,687	8,254	15,197	8,379
Machinery, electrical, equipment, etc.	38,969	35,316	37,457	35,650
Transport equipment	19,283	6,007	14,403	6,843

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

## Distribution of Danish foreign trade (in 1,000 kroner) according to countries of origin and destination, for calendar years:

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports</i>			<i>Exports</i>		
	1985	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1985	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>
Belgium	6,363,654	6,748,061	5,992,849	3,253,814	3,306,555	3,569,127
Finland	6,337,703	5,635,681	5,430,974	3,711,536	3,837,577	4,005,093
France	8,527,353	9,322,415	9,265,627	7,924,526	8,913,639	9,709,029
Germany (Fed. Rep.)	40,383,642	43,624,759	40,933,799	28,460,093	28,925,446	29,642,814
Norway	7,747,222	6,746,534	7,376,717	12,071,284	13,075,133	12,961,072
Sweden	24,991,263	22,784,336	21,263,827	21,692,076	19,480,514	20,104,206
Switzerland	3,589,022	3,956,279	3,729,602	3,412,264	3,559,544	4,087,902
UK	18,009,597	14,025,640	13,253,328	21,908,237	20,096,111	20,169,797
USA	11,339,399	9,700,211	9,297,642	18,148,661	14,558,022	12,376,736
Allied forces in Fed. Rep. Germany	—	—	—	223,572	193,114	187,811

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

## Total trade between Denmark (without the Faroe Islands) and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,660,447	1,715,233	1,752,174	1,873,495	2,028,089
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,197,381	1,371,556	1,211,637	1,231,097	1,170,853

**Tourism.** In 1987, foreigners visiting Denmark spent some 15,185m. kroner. In 1987 foreigners spent 4.48m. nights in hotels and 3.29m. nights at camping sites.

*Industrial Statistics.* Danmarks Statistik, Copenhagen (annually)

*Quarterly Statistics for the Industry: Commodity Statistics.* Danmarks Statistik, Copenhagen

*Statistics on Agriculture, Horticulture and Forestry.* Danmarks Statistik, Copenhagen (annually)

*Agricultural Statistics 1900–1965.* Vol. 1: *Agricultural Area and Harvest and Utilization of Fertilizers.*—Vol. II: *Livestock and Livestock Products, and Consumption of Feeding Stuffs.*

Danmarks Statistik, Copenhagen, 1968–69

*External Trade of Denmark.* Danmarks Statistik, Copenhagen

*Danish Industry in Facts and Figures.* Federation of Danish Industries, Copenhagen (annually)

*Energy Supply of Denmark, 1900–58 and 1948–65.* Danmarks Statistik, Copenhagen, 1959, 1967. Annual Supplements 1966–75 have been published in Statistical News

*Report on Fisheries.* Ministry of Fisheries, Copenhagen (annually)

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Denmark proper had (1 Jan. 1987), 593 km of motorways, 3,986 km of other state roads, 7,082 km of provincial roads and 58,529 km of commercial roads. Motor vehicles registered at 31 Dec. 1987 comprised 1,575,639 passenger

cars, 286,415 lorries, 11,780 taxicabs (including 5,147 for private hire), 8,110 buses and 42,456 cycles.

**Railways.** In 1987 there were 2,476 km of State railways (199 km electrified), which carried 4,787m. passenger-km and 1,680m. tonne-km. There were also 494 km of private railways in 1986.

**Aviation.** On 1 Oct. 1950 the 3 Scandinavian airlines, Det Danske Luftfartsselskab, ABA and DNL, combined in Scandinavian Airlines System. In 1985–86 SAS flew 136m. km and carried 11,708,000 passengers.

SAS inaugurated its transpolar routes Copenhagen–Los Angeles on 15 Nov. 1954 and Copenhagen–Tokyo on 25 Feb. 1957, and its trans-Asian express route Copenhagen–Bangkok–Singapore *via* Tashkent on 4 Nov. 1967.

**Shipping.** On 31 Dec. 1987 the Danish merchant fleet consisted of 2,755 vessels (above 20 GRT) of 4,809,945 GRT.

In 1987, 34,651 vessels of 61 m. GRT entered the Danish ports, unloading 44m. tonnes and loading 21m. tonnes of cargo; traffic by passenger ships and ferries is not included.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1986, 1,296 post offices. On 31 Dec. 1986 the length of telephone circuits of private companies was 13,295,852 km. On 31 Dec. 1986 there were 4,010,994 telephone instruments. Postal revenues, 1986, 11,101m. kroner; expenditure, 8,752m. kroner.

*Danmarks Radio* is the government broadcasting station and is financed by licence fees. Television is broadcast by *Danmarks Radio* with colour programmes by PAL system. Number of receivers (1987): Combined radio and television, 1.94m., including 1.7m. colour sets; radio only, 0.09m.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there were 397 cinema rooms with a seating capacity of 67,117.

**Newspapers.** In 1986 there were 47 daily newspapers with a combined circulation of 1.88m. on weekdays.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The lowest courts of justice are organized in 83 tribunals (*byretter*), where cases are dealt with by a single judge. The tribunals at Copenhagen have 34 judges, Aarhus 13, Odense 10, Aalborg 9, and the other tribunals have 1 to 4. Cases of greater consequence are dealt with by the superior courts (*Landsretterne*); these courts are also courts of appeal for the above-named cases. Of superior courts there are two: *Østre Landsret* in Copenhagen with 46 judges, *Vestre Landsret* in Viborg with 23 judges. From these an appeal lies to the Supreme Court (*Højesteret*) in Copenhagen, composed of 15 judges. Judges under 65 years of age can be removed only by judicial sentence.

In 1987, 14,693 men and 1,838 women were convicted of violations of the criminal code, fines not included. In 1987, the daily average population in penal institutions, local prisons, etc., was 3,257 men and 151 women, of whom 753 men and 56 women were on remand.

**Religion.** At the Reformation in 1536 the Danish Church ceased to exist as a legally independent unit, a part of the Roman Catholic Church, and became instead a Lutheran Church under the direction of the State. Since that time the State has, in one form or another, continued to exercise supreme authority in the affairs of the Church, and has regulated these by the passing of laws, by royal decree, or other appropriate means. The great majority of Danish citizens (about 90%) belongs to the National Church. Administratively, Denmark is divided into 10 dioceses each with a Bishop who, within the framework of the law, is the supreme diocesan authority in ecclesiastical affairs. The Bishop together with the Chief Administrative Officer of the county make up the diocesan governing body, responsible for all matters of ecclesiastical local finance and general administration. Bishops are appointed by the Crown after an election at which the clergy and parish council members of the diocese have had the opportunity of voting for the candidates nominated. Each diocese is divided into a number of deaneries (107 in



the whole country) each with its Dean and Deanery Committee, who have certain financial powers. Local government at parish level (there are about 2,100 parishes in all) is in the hands of Parish Councils, who are elected for a 4-year period of office.

Since the Constitution of 1849 complete religious toleration is extended to every sect, and no civil disabilities attach to Dissenters.

**Education.** Education has been compulsory since 1814. The *folkeskole* (public primary and lower secondary school) comprises a pre-school class (*bornehaveklasse*), a 9-year basic school corresponding to the period of compulsory education and a 1-year voluntary tenth form. Compulsory education may be fulfilled either through attending the *folkeskole* or private schools or through home-instruction, on the condition that the instruction given is comparable to that given in the *folkeskole*. The *folkeskole* is mainly a municipal school and no fees are paid. In the year 1986-87, 2,536 primary and lower secondary schools had 694,270 pupils and employed 64,100 teachers. Approximately 16% of the total number of schools were private schools and they were attended by nearly 10% of the total number of pupils. The 9-year basic school is in practice not streamed. However, a certain differentiation may take place in the eighth and ninth forms.

On completion of the eighth and ninth forms the pupils may sit for the leaving examination of the *folkeskole* (*folkeskolens afgangsprøve*). On completion of the tenth form the pupils may sit for either the leaving examination of the *folkeskole* (*folkeskolens afgangsprøve*) or the advanced leaving examination of the *folkeskole* (*folkeskolens udvidede afgangsprøve*).

For 14-18 year olds there is an alternative of completing compulsory education at continuation schools, with the same leaving examinations as in the *folkeskole*. In the year 1986-87 there were 188 continuation schools with 14,365 pupils.

Under certain conditions the pupils may continue school either in the 3-year gymnasium (upper secondary school) or 2-year *studenterkursus* (adult upper secondary school) ending with *studentereksamen* (upper secondary school leaving examination) or in the 2-year higher preparatory examination course ending with the *højere forberedelseseksamen*. There were (1986-87) 162 of these upper secondary schools with 70,257 pupils.

Vocational education and training consists of apprenticeship training, *lærlingeuddannelse*; vocational education, *EFG-uddannelse*, consisting of a 1-year basic course, *EFG-basisår*, followed by a second part, *EFG-2.del*, and courses preparing for a vocation, leading to a diploma.

Vocational education and training cover courses in commerce and trade, iron and metal industry, chemical industry, construction industry, graphic industry, service trades, food industry, agriculture, horticulture, forestry and fishery, transport and communication, and health related auxiliary programmes.

In 1986-87 70,068 students were enrolled within trade and commerce, of whom 7,647 were in apprenticeship training and 46,211 in vocational education. 86,442 students were enrolled within technical education, of whom 36,376 were in apprenticeship training and 36,939 in vocational education. 16,210 students were admitted to the diploma courses within the field of trade and commerce, and 13,127 students were admitted to the technical diploma courses.

Tertiary education comprises all education after the 12th year of education, no matter whether the 3 years after the 9th form of the *folkeskole* have been spent on a course preparing for continued studies (*studentereksamen* or *højere forberedelseseksamen*), or a course preparing for a vocation (*lærlingeuddannelse*, *EFG-uddannelse*, etc.). Tertiary education can be divided into 2 main groups, short courses of further education and long courses of higher education. There was a total of 26,554 students at short courses of further education.

There were 28 teacher-training colleges with 5,652 students and 26 colleges for training of teachers for kindergartens and leisure-time activities with 4,850 students.

Degree-courses in engineering: The Technical University of Denmark had 5,274 students. The Engineering Academy had 2,138 students and 8 engineering colleges had 5,649 students.

Universities: The University of Copenhagen (founded 1479) 24,081 students. The University of Aarhus (founded in 1928) 12,251 students. The University of Odense (founded in 1964) 5,391 students. Roskilde University Centre (founded in 1972) 2,231 students. Aalborg University Centre (founded in 1974) 4,806 students.

Other types of post-secondary education: The Royal Veterinary and Agricultural University had 2,459 students. The two dental colleges had 774 students. The Danish School of Pharmacy had 831 students. The 11 colleges of economics, business administration and modern languages had 21,418 students. The 2 schools of architecture had 1,679 students. Five academies of music had 796 students. Two schools of librarianship had 577 students. The Royal Danish School of Educational Studies had 2,104 students. The 5 schools of social work had 811 students. The Danish School of Journalism had 717 students. Nine colleges of physical therapy had 1,367 students. Two schools of Midwifery Education had 113 students. Two colleges of home economics had 378 students. The School of Visual Arts had 130 students. Two schools of nursing had 397 students. Three military academies had 326 students and 4 colleges for ship's officers 179 students.

Among adult education the most well-known are *Folkeskolehøjskoler*, folk high schools. Adult education in general programmes, single subjects (since 1978) and courses for semi-skilled workers and for skilled workers is organized by counties.

Andresén, A., *The Danish Folk High School To-day*. Copenhagen, 1981

Struve, K., *Schools and Education in Denmark*. Copenhagen, 1981

Thorsen, L., *Public Libraries in Denmark*. English and French eds., Copenhagen, 1972

**Social Security.** The main body of Danish social welfare legislation is consolidated in 7 acts concerning (1) public health security, (2) sick-day benefits, (3) social pensions (for early retirement and old age), (4) employment injuries insurance, (5) employment services and unemployment insurance, (6) social assistance including assistance to handicapped, rehabilitation, child and juvenile guidance, day-care institutions, care of the aged and sick, and (7) family allowances.

*Public health security*, covering the entire population, provides free medical care, substantial subsidies for certain essential medicines together with some dental care and a funeral allowance. Hospitals are primarily municipal and the hospital treatment is normally free. All employed workers are granted daily sickness allowances, others can have limited daily sickness allowances. Daily cash benefits are granted in the case of temporary incapacity for work because of illness, injury or child-birth to all persons who earn an income derived from personal work. The benefit is paid at the rate of 90% of the average weekly earnings. There was a maximum rate of 2,339 kroner a week (July 1988).

*Social pensions* cover the entire population. Entitlement to old-age pensions at the full rates is subject to the condition that the beneficiary has been ordinarily resident in Denmark for a number of years (40). For a shorter period of residence, the benefits are reduced proportionally. The basic amount of the old-age pension in July 1988 was 77,808 kroner a year to married couples and 40,836 to single persons. Various supplementary allowances, depending on age and income, may be payable with the basic amount. Persons aged 55–66 may, depending on health and income, apply for an early-retirement pension. Persons over 67 years of age are entitled to the basic amount. The pensions to a married couple are calculated and paid to the husband and the wife separately. Early retirement pension to a disabled person is payable, having regard to the degree of disability, at a rate of up to 95,904 kroner to a single person. Early-retirement pensions may be subject to income regulation. The same applies to the basic amount of the old age pension to persons aged 67–69.

*Employment injuries insurance* provides for disablement or survivors' pensions and compensations. The scheme covers practically all employees.

*Employment services* are provided by regional public employment agencies. The insurance against unemployment provides daily allowances. The unemployment insurance funds had in June 1988 a membership of 1,974,828.

The *Social Assistance Act* applies to the field of social legislation which rules the individually granted benefits in contrast to the other fields of social legislation which apply to fixed benefits.

Total social expenditure, including hospital and health services, statutory pensions, etc, amounted in the financial year 1986 to 168,929m. kroner.

*Bibliography of Foreign Language Literature on Industrial Relations and Social Services in Denmark.* Ministries of Labour and Social Affairs, Copenhagen, 1975

*Social Conditions in Denmark.* Vols. 1-8. Ministries of Labour and Social Affairs, Copenhagen

Marcussen, E., *Social Welfare in Denmark.* 4th ed. Copenhagen, 1980

## THE FAROE ISLANDS

### Færøerne/Føroyar

**HISTORY.** A Norwegian province 1380-1709, the islands secured the restoration of their Parliament in 1852 and since 1948 they have been a self-governing region of the Kingdom of Denmark. From 1 Jan. 1972 the Faroe Islands were no longer members of EFTA.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The archipelago is situated due north of Scotland and lies equidistant between Norway and Iceland, with a total land area of 1,399 sq. km (540 sq. miles). There are 17 inhabited islands (the main ones being Stromø, Østerø, Vago, Suderø, Sandø and Bordø) and numerous islets, all mountainous and volcanic. The census population in 1977 was 41,969; estimate (31 Dec. 1986) 46,312. The capital is Tórshavn (15,287 inhabitants on 31 Dec. 1986) on Stromø. The inhabitants speak Færøese, a Scandinavian language which has official status along with Danish.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The parliament (*Lagting*), comprises 32 members elected by proportional representation by universal suffrage at age 18. The *Lagting* elected on 8 Nov. 1984 consists of 7 Samband Party, 8 Social Democrats, 7 Folkeflokk, 2 Progressive Party, 2 Home Rule Party and 6 Republicans. Parliament elects from among its members a government of from 4 to 6 members (*Landsstyre*) which administers Færøese affairs. Denmark is represented by an appointed commissioner (*Rigsombudsmand*) who administers other matters. The Færøes are represented by 2 members in the Danish parliament.

*Chief Minister (Lagmand):* Atli P. Dam.

*Flag:* White with a red blue-edged Scandinavian cross.

### ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1987 Budget balanced at 2,004 Færøese kroner.

**Currency.** Since 1940 the currency has been the *Færøese krone* (of 100 *ore*) which remains freely interchangeable with the Danish krone.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There is a hydro-electric station at Vestmanhavn on Strømø and at Eide on Østerø. Total production (1986) 187.5m. kwh, of which hydro-electric 46m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Only 2% of the surface is cultivated, the main crop being potatoes (1,282 tonnes in 1984). The chief use is for grazing, the traditional mainstay of the economy. Livestock (1986): Sheep, 64,690; cattle, 1,665.

**Fisheries.** Deep sea fishing now forms the most important sector of the economy, primarily in the 200-mile exclusive zone but also off Greenland, Iceland, Svalbard and Newfoundland and in the Barents Sea. Total catch (1986) 354,000 tonnes, primarily cod, blue whiting, coalfish, prawns, mackerel and herring.



**COMMERCE.** The main industries are fisheries and crafts. Exports, mainly fresh, frozen, filleted and salted fish, amounted to 1,999m. kroner in 1986; imports to 2,670m. kroner. In 1986 Denmark supplied 46% of imports, Norway 13% and Federal Republic of Germany 9%; exports were mainly to Denmark (18%), the USA (14%), Federal Republic of Germany (13%) and UK (13%).

Total trade with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	17,649	21,383	21,380	19,239	23,141
Exports and re-exports from UK	5,140	5,605	5,709	7,165	4,445

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 433 km of roads, 12,973 passenger cars and 3,041 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** The airport is on Vagø, from which there are regular services to Copenhagen, Bergen, Reykjavík and Kirkwall (Orkney).

**Shipping.** The chief port is Tórshavn, with smaller ports at Klaksvig, Vestmanna, Ejde, Fuglafjørður and Skalafljórdur.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 18,033 telephones. *Útvarp Føroya* broadcasts from Tórshavn about 40 hours a week on 4 transmitters. In 1986 there were 16,800 radio and 9,000 television receivers.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** About 75% are Evangelical Lutherans and 20% are Plymouth Brethren. There are small Baptist and Roman Catholic communities.

**Education.** In 1986–87 there were 5,606 primary and 2,904 secondary school pupils with 534 teachers.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 75 doctors, 34 dentists, 8 pharmacists, 13 midwives and 235 nursing personnel. In 1985 there were 3 hospitals with 370 beds.

### Further Reading

*Árbog for Færoerne*, 1986

*Faroes in Figures*. Thorshavn, annual, from 1956

Rutherford, G. K., (ed.) *The Physical Environment of the Faroe Islands*. The Hague, 1982

West, J. F., *Faroe*. London, 1973

## GREENLAND

### Grønland/Kalaallit Nunaat

**HISTORY.** A Danish possession since 1380, Greenland became on 5 June 1953 an integral part of the Danish kingdom. Following a referendum in Jan. 1979, home rule was introduced from 1 May 1979, and full internal self-government was attained in Jan. 1981 after a transitional period.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area 2,175,600 sq. km (840,000 sq. miles), made up of 1,833,900 sq. km of ice cap and 341,700 sq. km of ice-free land. The population, 1 Jan. 1987, numbered 53,733; West Greenland, 48,424; East Greenland, 3,366; North Greenland (Thule), 794, and 1,149 not belonging to any specific municipality. Of the total in 1986, 9,303 were born outside Greenland. Capital, Godthaab (Nuuk) (1986), 11,209.

**CONSTITUTION.** Greenland has the same rights as other counties in Denmark with a democratically elected council (*landsråd*). Denmark is represented by an appointed commissioner. At the elections held on 26 May 1987 for the Parliament, *Landsting*, the *Siumut* gained 11 seats, the *Atassut*, 11 seats, the *Inuit*

*Ataqtigiiit*, 4 seats and the *Isittup Partii-a* the remaining 1 seat. The Premier, Jonathan Motzfeldt, formed a 6-member administration, *Landsstyre*.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The Budget for 1984 balanced at 1,156.7m. kroner.

**Currency.** The Danish kroner remains the legal currency.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1984) 181.7m. kwh.

**Fisheries.** In 1983 the catch totalled 107,360 tonnes; there were also 92,794 seals and 2,308 whales killed.

**INDUSTRY.** Until the beginning of this century, the hunting of land and sea mammals, especially seals, was the main occupation of the population; now fishing is most important. Fish-processing industries, construction and trade are also important occupations.

Coal production ceased in 1972. A deposit of the valuable mineral cryolite has been mined at Ivigtut. The mine is now worked out, but exports from stock will continue for some years. In 1973 the Danish company Greenex A/S began producing lead and zinc concentrate near Umanak. Annual production of lead and zinc concentrates was in 1984 about 27,000 tonnes and 129,000 tonnes respectively.

Public authorities are investigating uranium and coal deposits in Greenland as well as possibilities of hydro-electric power and there are other private prospectors for various minerals.

**COMMERCE.** Imports (c.i.f. Greenland) (in 1m. kroner): 1979, 1,448; 1980, 1,848; 1981, 2,096; 1982, 2,319; 1983, 2,421; 1984, 2,836; 1985, 3,140; 1986 (provisional), 2,912. Exports (f.o.b. Greenland) (in 1m. kroner): 1979, 867; 1980, 1,199; 1981, 1,325; 1982, 1,432; 1983, 1,653; 1984, 1,751; 1985, 1,842; 1986 (provisional), 2,078. Trade is mainly with Denmark.

Total trade with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,983	3,168	4,789	838	1,430
Exports and re-exports from UK	99	348	452	735	1,151

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1970) 150 km of roads, of which 60 km were paved.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport at Søndre Strømfjord, and about 12 local airports with scheduled services.

**Broadcasting.** *Grønlands Radio* broadcasts in Greenlandic and Danish. The short wave transmitters are located at Godthaab. Several towns have local television stations. In 1984 there were 11,554 telephones, 10,000 television sets and 13,500 radio sets.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court (*Landsret*) in Godthaab comprises one professional judge and 2 lay magistrates, while there are 18 district courts under lay assessors.

**Religion.** About 98% of the population are Evangelical Lutherans.

**Education.** There were (1986-87) 9,148 pupils in primary comprehensive schools, of whom 7,141 were in the course of compulsory education (9 years). On 1 July 1986, 1,469 students were enrolled in vocational training.

**Health.** The medical service is free to all inhabitants. There is a central hospital in Godthaab and 16 smaller district hospitals. In 1985 there were 63 doctors and 601 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

- Greenland*. R. Danish Ministry of Greenland. Copenhagen. Annual from 1968
- Indkomst- og erhvervsforholdene i Grønland ved Hjemmestyrets indførelse* (Income and Business Conditions in Greenland at the Introduction of Home Rule), Statistiske Undersøgelser nr. 40, Danmarks Statistik 1984
- Meddelelser om Grønland*. Ed. Kommissionen for videnskabelige undersøgelser i Grønland. Copenhagen, 1899 ff. Since 1979 issued in 3 separate series: 'Bioscience', 'Geoscience' and 'Man and Society'
- Statistiske Efterretninger* (Statistical News), from 1983 special series: *Færøerne og Grønland* (Faroe Islands and Greenland)
- Gad, F., *A History of Greenland*. Vol. 1. London, 1970.—Vol. 2. London, 1973
- Hertling, K. (ed.) *Greenland Past and Present*. Copenhagen, 1970

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

- Of Denmark in Great Britain (55 Sloane St., London, SW1X 9SR)  
*Ambassador*: Peter Dyvig (accredited 20 May 1986).
- Of Great Britain in Denmark (36–40 Kastelsvej, DK-2100, Copenhagen)  
*Ambassador*: N. C. R. Williams.
- Of Denmark in the USA (3200 Whitehaven St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador*: Eigil Jørgensen.
- Of the USA in Denmark (Dag Hammarskjolds Alle 24, Copenhagen)  
*Ambassador*: Terence A. Todman.
- Of Denmark to the United Nations  
*Ambassador*: Ole Bierring.

### Further Reading

- Statistical Information*: Danmarks Statistik (Sejrogade 11, 2100 Copenhagen Ø.) was founded in 1849 and reorganized in 1966 as an independent institution; it is administratively placed under the Minister of Economic Affairs. *Chief*: N. V. Skak-Nielsen. Its main publications are: *Statistisk Årbog* (Statistical Yearbook). From 1896; *Statistiske Efterretninger* (Statistical News), *Statistiske Månedsoversigt* (Monthly Review of Statistics), *Statistisk årsoversigt* (Statistical Ten-Year Review).
- Ministry of Foreign Affairs, *Danish Foreign Office Journal. Commercial and General Review*.—Denmark. 1961.—*Economic Survey of Denmark* (annual).—*Facts About Denmark*. 1959.—Hæstrup, J., *From Occupied to Ally: the Danish Resistance Movement*. 1963
- Bibliografi over Danmarks Offentlige Publikationer*. Institut for International Udvæksling. Copenhagen. Annual
- Dania polyglotta. Annual Bibliography of Books ... in Foreign Languages Printed in Denmark*. State Library, Copenhagen. Annual
- Kongelig Dansk Hofog Statskalender*. Copenhagen. Annual
- Brønildsen, F., *A Dictionary of the English and Dano-Norwegian Languages*. 2 vols. Copenhagen, 1902–07
- Danstrup, J., *History of Denmark*. 2nd ed. Copenhagen, 1949
- Johansen, H. C., *The Danish Economy in the Twentieth Century*. London, 1987
- Krabbe, L., *Histoire de Danemark*. Copenhagen and Paris, 1950
- Miller, K. E., *Denmark*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987
- Nielsen, B. K., *Engelsk-Dansk Ordbog*. Copenhagen, 1964
- Trap, J. P., *Kongeriget Danmark*. 5th ed. 11 vols. Copenhagen, 1953 ff.
- Vinterberg, H. and Bodelsen, C. A., *Dansk-Engelsk Ordbog*. Copenhagen, 1966
- National Library*: Det Kongelige Bibliotek, Copenhagen. *Librarian*: P. Birkelund.



# DJIBOUTI

*Capital:* Djibouti

*Population:* 484,000 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$760 (1984)

## Jumhuriyya Djibouti

**HISTORY.** At a referendum held on 19 March 1967, 60% of the electorate voted for continued association with France rather than independence and the new statute for the territory came into being on 5 July 1967. In Jan. 1976, following discussions between Ali Aref and President Giscard d'Estaing, it was announced that the French Government affirmed that the Territory of the Afars and the Issas was destined for independence but no date was fixed. Legislative elections were held on 8 May and independence as the Republic of Djibouti was achieved on 27 June 1977.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Djibouti is bounded north-east by the Gulf of Aden, south-east by Somalia and all other sides by Ethiopia.

Djibouti has an area of 23,200 sq. km (8,960 sq. miles). The population was estimated in 1988 at 484,000, of whom 47% were Somali (Issa), 37% Afar, 8% European (mainly French) and 6% Arab. There were (1987) about 13,000 refugees from Ethiopia. Djibouti, the seat of government, had (1988) 290,000 inhabitants; other towns are Tadjoura, Obock, Dikhil and Ali-Sabieh. There are 5 administrative districts.

**CLIMATE.** Conditions are hot throughout the year, with very little rain. Djibouti. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 96°F (35.6°C). Annual rainfall 5" (130 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under an organic law approved by the Constituent Assembly on 10 Feb. 1981, the President is directly elected for a 6-year term (renewable once) and the Constituent Assembly became a 65-member Chamber of Deputies, with a 5-year term. In Oct. 1981, the Assembly declared Djibouti a one-Party state, the ruling Party being the *Rassemblement Populaire pour le Progrès*. Elections for the Chamber of Deputies were held 21 May 1982, when 26 Somali, 23 Afar and 16 Arab members were elected.

*President:* Hassan Gouled Aptidon (elected 1977 and re-elected 1981 and 1987).

The Council of Ministers in Jan. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister, Planning and Land Development:* Barkat Gourad Hamadou.

*Agriculture and Rural Development:* Mohammed Moussa Chehem. *Civil Service and Administrative Reform:* Ismail Ali Youssouf. *Commerce, Transport and Tourism:* Moussa Bouraleh Robleh. *Finance and National Economy:* Mohammed Djama Elabe. *Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Moumin Bahdon Farah. *Health and Social Affairs:* Ougoure Hassan Ibrahim. *Industry and Industrial Development:* Salem Abdou. *Interior, Posts and Telecommunications:* Youssouf Ali Chirdon. *Justice and Islamic Affairs:* Elaf Orbis Ali. *Labour and Social Welfare:* Ahmed Ibrahim Abdi. *National Defence:* Hussein Barkad Siraj. *National Education:* Souleiman Farah Lodon. *Ports and Shipping:* Bourhan Ali Warki. *Public Works, Urban Affairs and Housing:* Ahmed Aden Youssouf. *Youth, Sports and Culture:* Omar Chirdon Abass.

*National flag:* Horizontally blue over green, with a white triangle based on the hoist charged with a red star.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army comprises 1 infantry battalion, 1 armoured squadron, 1 support battalion, 1 border commando battalion and 1 parachute company. Equipment includes 30 armoured cars. The strength of the Army (of which the Navy and Air

Force form part) was (1989) 3,000 men. There is also a paramilitary force of some 1,200 men.

**Navy.** The nucleus of a naval force was acquired in 1977 with the commissioning of a coastal patrol craft transferred by France with 3 minor landing craft and 2 new patrol launches were given by France in 1985. Personnel (1989) 60.

**Air Force.** There is a small air force, all equipment *via* French aid. There are 2 CASA Aviocar and 2 Noratlas transports, 1 Falcon 20 VIP aircraft, 1 Cessna 206 for liaison, 1 Rallye trainer, and 5 helicopters (Alouette II and Ecureuil). Personnel (1989) 100.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Djibouti is a member of UN, OAU, the Arab League and an ACP State of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue for 1986 was 24,494m. Djibouti francs and expenditure 23,133m.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Djibouti franc*. In March 1989, £1 = 300 *Djibouti francs*; US\$1 = 174 *Djibouti francs*.

**Banking.** The Banque Nationale de Djibouti is the bank of issue. There are 6 commercial banks.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 140m. kwh. Installed capacity 80,100 kw.

**Minerals.** Minerals supposed to exist are gypsum, mica, amethyst and sulphur.

**Agriculture.** Mainly market gardening at the oasis of Ambouli and near urban areas. Tomato production (1987) 1,000 tonnes. Livestock (1987): 51,000 cattle, 410,000 sheep, 500,000 goats, 8,000 donkeys, 56,000 camels.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1984 was 426 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1986 there were 2,134 persons employed in construction and 1,235 in manufacturing.

**Commerce.** The main economic activity is the operation of the port. The chief imports are cotton goods, sugar, cement, flour, fuel oil and vehicles; the chief exports are hides, cattle and coffee (transit from Ethiopia). Trade in 1m. Djibouti francs:

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	39,307	39,425	35,670	33,106
Exports	1,919	2,362	2,488	3,628

Total trade between Djibouti and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	59	293	53	175	169
Exports and re-exports from UK	8,896	21,546	12,537	12,501	8,479

**Tourism.** There were 21,790 visitors in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1987) 3,037 km of roads, of which 412 km were hard-surfaced. In 1987 there were 11,799 passenger cars and 1,501 commercial vehicles.

**Railway.** For the line Djibouti-Addis Ababa, of which 106 km lies within Djibouti *see* p. 465. In 1987 the railway carried 291,700 tonnes of freight and 1,295,000 passengers.

**Aviation.** Air Djibouti provides services to Addis Ababa, Nairobi, Jidda and the

Gulf. Other airlines serving Djibouti international airport (Ambouli) are Ethiopian Airlines, Air France, Air Tanzania and Yemen Airways Corporation. In 1987, 67,856 passengers and 6,036 tonnes of freight arrived at Ambouli, and 61,518 passengers and 1,612 tonnes of freight departed.

**Shipping.** In 1986 there entered at Djibouti 1,723 vessels, unloading 466,000 tonnes and loading 155,000 tonnes of merchandise. In 1981 the merchant marine comprised 8 vessels of 3,185 GRT. Djibouti became a free port in 1981.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1987), 4,452. *Radiodiffusion-Télévision de Djibouti* broadcasts on medium- and short-waves in French, Somali, Afar and Arabic. There is a television transmitter in Djibouti, broadcasting for 36 hours a week. Number of receivers (1984): radio, 17,500; TV, 11,200.

**Cinemas.** In 1975 there were 4 cinemas with a seating capacity of 5,800.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Court of First Instance and a Court of Appeal in the capital. The judicial system is based on Islamic law.

**Religion.** The vast majority of the population is Moslem, with about 24,000 Roman Catholics.

**Education.** In 1987-88 there were 26,173 pupils and 592 teachers at primary schools, 6,327 pupils and 307 teachers at secondary and technical schools. There were 117 students in teacher training with 13 lecturers.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 29 hospitals and dispensaries with 1,285 beds, 89 physicians, 10 dentists and 15 pharmacists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Djibouti in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Ahmed Ibrahim Abdi (resides in Paris).

Of Great Britain in Djibouti

*Ambassador:* M. A. Marshall (resides in San'a).

Of the USA in Djibouti (Plateau du Serpent Blvd., Djibouti)

*Ambassador:* John P. Ferriter.

Of Djibouti to the United Nations and in the USA

*Ambassador:* Roble Olhayé.

## Further Reading

Poinsot, J.-P., *Djibouti et la Côte française des Somalis*. Paris, 1965

Schraeder, P. J., *Djibouti*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

Thompson, V. and Adloff, R., *Djibouti and the Horn of Africa*. Stanford Univ. Press, 1967



# COMMONWEALTH OF DOMINICA

*Capital:* Roseau

*Population:* 94,191 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,210 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Dominica was discovered by Columbus. It was a British possession from 1805, a member of the Federation of the West Indies 1958–62, an Associated State of the UK, 1967–78 and became an independent republic as the Commonwealth of Dominica on 3 Nov. 1978.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Dominica is an island in the Windward group of the West Indies situated between Martinique and Guadeloupe. It has an area of 751 sq. km (290 sq. miles) and a population at the 1981 Census of 74,851; estimate (1987) 94,191. The chief town, Roseau, had about 20,000 inhabitants in 1981.

The population is mainly of Negro and mixed origins, with small white and Asian minorities. There is a Carib settlement of about 500, almost entirely of mixed blood.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with pleasant conditions between Dec. and March, but there is a rainy season from June to Oct., when hurricanes may occur. Rainfall is heavy, with coastal areas having 70'' (1,750 mm) but the mountains may have up to 250'' (6,250 mm). Roseau. Jan. 76°F (24.2°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 78'' (1,956 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The House of Assembly has 21 elected and 9 nominated members. The Speaker is elected from among the members of the House or from outside. The Cabinet is presided over by the Prime Minister and consists of 6 other Ministers including the Attorney-General (official member). Elections were held in July 1985. The Dominica Freedom Party won 15 seats, the Dominica Labour Party 5 seats and the United Dominica Labour Party 1 seat.

*President:* C. A. Seignoret.

The Cabinet in Nov. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Minister for Finance, Economic Development and External Affairs:* Mary Eugenia Charles.

*Attorney-General and Minister for Legal Affairs and Labour:* Brian G. K. Alleyne. *Agriculture, Trade, Industry and Tourism:* Charles A. Maynard. *Health, Water, Sewerage and Fire:* Ronan David. *Community Development, Housing and Social Affairs:* Heskeith Alexander. *Education and Sports:* Henry George. *Communications and Works, Electricity, Telecommunications and Feeder Roads:* Alleyne Carbon.

*National flag:* Green with a cross over all of yellow, black, and white pieces, and in the centre a red disc charged with a Sisserou parrot in natural colours within a ring of 10 green yellow-bordered stars.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Commonwealth of Dominica is a member of UN, OAS, CARICOM, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1986 there was a deficit of EC\$12.4m.

**Currency.** The French *franc*, the £ sterling and the East Caribbean *dollar* are legal tender. In March 1989, EC\$2.71 = US\$1 and EC\$4.67 = £1.

**Banking.** Savings bank (Dec. 1982), 2,862 depositors, with \$593,659 deposits. There are branches of Barclays Bank International and Royal Bank of Canada

in Roseau, and branches of Barclays and National Commercial and Development Bank at Portsmouth. The National Commercial and Development Bank was opened in 1977 and Banque Française Commerciale opened in 1979.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 16m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Hurricanes in 1979 and 1980 devastated large agricultural areas and damaged infrastructure. Production (1987): Bananas, 65,000 tonnes; coconuts, 2,145; beef 439; pork 420. Livestock (1987): Cattle, 4,000; pigs, 9,000; sheep, 4,000; goats, 6,000; poultry (1986), 115,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main industries are agriculture and tourism.

**Commerce** (1987). Imports, EC\$179,215,824; exports and re-exports, EC\$129,590,586. Chief products: Bananas, soap, fruit juices, essential oils, coconuts, vegetables, fruit and fruit preparations, and alcoholic drinks.

Total trade between Dominica and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	18,110	26,612	37,083	32,423
Exports and re-exports from UK	10,257	8,780	10,431	8,416

**Tourism.** Tourists (1987) totalled 41,200.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were 470 miles of road and 280 miles of track. Vehicles totalled (Oct. 1988) 6,933.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephone lines, 210 route miles; number of telephones, 7,700 (Oct. 1988). Radio receivers (1982) 13,405.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there was 1 cinema with a seating capacity of 1,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 12 magistrates' courts. There is also a supreme court which dealt with 60 criminal and 307 civil cases in 1987-88. The police force consists of 10 officers and 431 other ranks.

**Religion.** 80% of the population is Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1987-88 there were 65 primary schools with 15,262 pupils and 10 secondary schools with 3,251 pupils, and 2 colleges of higher education.

**Health.** In Sept. 1988 there were 3 hospitals with 245 beds, 31 doctors, 4 dentists, 10 pharmacists, 273 nursing personnel, 7 health centres and 44 health clinics.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in Dominica

*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG (resides in Bridgetown).

Of Dominica in the USA

*Ambassador:* McDonald P. Benjamin.

Of Dominica to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Franklin Andrew Baron.

## Further Reading

Myres, R. A., *Dominica*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

*Library:* Public Library, Roseau. *Librarian:* Mrs. C. Williams.

# DOMINICAN REPUBLIC

*Capital:* Santo Domingo  
*Population:* 6.7m. (1987)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$710 (1986)

## República Dominicana

**HISTORY.** On 5 Dec. 1492 Columbus discovered the island of Santo Domingo, which he called La Española; for a time it was called Hispaniola. The city of Santo Domingo, founded by his brother, Bartholomew, in 1496, is the oldest city in the Americas. The western third of the island—now the Republic of Haiti—was later occupied and colonized by the French, to whom the Spanish colony of Santo Domingo was also ceded in 1795. In 1808 the Dominican population, under the command of Gen. Juan Sánchez Ramírez, routed an important French military force commanded by Gen. Ferrand, at the famous battle of Palo Hincado. This battle was the beginning of the end for French rule in Santo Domingo and culminated in the successful siege of the capital. Eventually, with the aid of a British naval squadron, the French were forced to capitulate and the colony returned again to Spanish rule, from which it declared its independence in 1821. It was invaded and held by the Haitians from 1822 to 1844, when they were expelled, and the Dominican Republic was founded and a constitution adopted. Independence day 27 Feb. 1844. Great Britain, in 1850, was the first country to recognize the Dominican Republic. The country was occupied by American Marines from 1916 until 1924. In 1936 the name of the capital city was changed from Santo Domingo to Ciudad Trujillo; and back again in 1961.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Dominican Republic occupies the eastern portion (about two-thirds) of the island of Hispaniola, Quisqueya or Santo Domingo, the western division forming the Republic of Haiti.

Area is 48,442 sq. km (18,700 sq. miles) with 870 miles of coastline, 193 miles of frontier line with Haiti (marked out in 1936).

The populations of the 26 provinces and National District at the 1981 census, and the 3 new provinces with estimates for 1987, were:

La Altagracia	100,112	Pedernales	17,006
Azua	142,770	Peravia	168,123
Bahoruco	78,636	Puerto Plata	206,757
Barahona	137,160	La Romana	109,769
Dajabón	57,709	Salcedo	99,191
Districto Nacional	1,550,739	Samaná	65,699
Duarte	235,544	Sánchez Ramírez	126,567
Españolat	164,017	San Cristóbal	446,132
La Estrelleta	65,384	San Juan	239,957
Hato Mayor	76,023 <sup>1</sup>	San Pedro de Macorís	152,890
Independencia	38,768	Santiago	550,372
Maria Trinidad Sánchez	112,629	Santiago Rodríguez	55,411
Monseñor Nouel	121,906 <sup>1</sup>	El Seibo	157,866
Monte Cristi	83,407	Valverde	100,319
Monte Plata	170,758 <sup>1</sup>	La Vega	385,043

<sup>1</sup> Estimate, 1987.

Census (1981) 5,647,977. Estimate (1987) 6,708,000.

Population of the principal municipalities (Census 1981): Santo Domingo, the capital, 1,313,172; Santiago de los Caballeros, 278,638; La Romana, 91,571; San Pedro de Macorís, 78,562; San Francisco de Macorís, 64,906; La Vega, 52,432; San Juan de la Managuana, 49,764; Barahona, 49,334; Puerto Plata, 45,348.

The population is partly of Spanish descent, but is mainly composed of a mixed race of European and African blood.



**CLIMATE.** A tropical maritime climate with most rain falling in the summer months. The rainy season extends from May to Nov. and amounts are greatest in the north and east. Hurricanes may occur from June to Nov. Santo Domingo. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 56" (1,400 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was promulgated on 28 Nov. 1966.

The President is elected for 4 years, by direct vote. In case of death, resignation or disability, he is succeeded by the Vice-president. There are 12 secretaries of state, a judicial adviser with secretary-of-state rank and 2 ministers without portfolio in charge of departments. Citizens are entitled to vote at the age of 18, or less when married.

At the general elections held in May 1986, 56 seats were won by the *Partido Reformista Social Cristiano*, 48 by the *Partido Revolucionario Dominicano*, and 16 seats by the *Partido de la Liberación Dominicana*.

There is a bicameral legislature, comprising a 27-member Senate and a 120-member Chamber of Deputies, both elected for 4-year terms at the same date as the President.

*President:* Dr Joaquín Balaguer (elected 16 May 1986; took office 16 Aug.).

*Foreign Affairs:* Dr Donald J. Reid Cabral.

*National flag:* Blue, red; quartered by a white cross.

*National anthem:* Quisqueyanos valientes, alzemos (words by E. Prud'homme; tune by J. Reyes, 1883).

*Local Government:* The republic consists of a National District (containing the capital, Santo Domingo, and surrounding areas) and 29 provinces, divided into 97 municipalities.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army has a strength (1989) of about 13,000. It is organized in 4 infantry brigades and 1 artillery battalion. There were (1989) some light tanks and armoured cars.

**Navy.** The Navy, largely comprising former US vessels, consists of 1 very old frigate (built 1944) acting as the staff flagship (former training ship, *ex*-presidential yacht), 2 very old escort (*ex*-fleet) minesweepers, 3 very old patrol vessels (*ex*-netlayers), 1 medium landing ship, 2 landing craft, 8 coastguard vessels, 8 patrol cutters, 4 small training craft, 2 oilers, 1 survey craft and 10 tugs. Personnel in 1989 totalled 4,000 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, with HQ at San Isidoro, has 1 combat squadron with 8 Cessna A-37s; 1 squadron with a total of about 10 Bell 205A-1, OH-6A and Alouette II/III helicopters; 1 transport squadron with 3 C-47s and some smaller communications aircraft; a Presidential Dauphin 2 helicopter; and an assortment of trainers, including 10 T-34B Mentors, 5 Cessna T-41s and 2 T-6 Texans. Personnel strength was (1989) 3,800.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Dominican Republic is a member of UN and OAS.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Expenditure (1986) RD\$2,251m. and revenue RD\$2,113m. In 1985 external debt was RD\$3,551m.

**Currency.** In Oct. 1947 the *peso oro*, then equal to the US\$, was formally made the unit of currency. In March 1989, £1 = RD\$10.97; US\$1 = RD\$6.38.

There are silver coins for 50, 25 and 10 centavos, a copper-nickel 5-centavo piece and a copper 1-centavo piece.

**Banking.** There are 4 foreign banks—the Royal Bank of Canada with 12 branches, the Bank of Nova Scotia with 11 branches, the Citibank with 6 branches, the Chase Manhattan Bank with 7 branches and the Bank of America with 4 branches. An agricultural and mortgage bank, with paid-up capital of RD\$500,000, was established in 1945; in 1950 its capital was increased to RD\$5m. In 1947 the Central Bank of the Dominican Republic was established. A Banco Popular Dominicano, with an authorized capital of RD\$5m., opened in Jan. 1964.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was nominally adopted on 1 Aug. 1913, but English and Spanish units have remained in common use in ordinary commercial transactions; on 17 Sept. 1954 a more drastic law requiring the decimal metric system was passed.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1986, 3,800m. kwh. of electricity was generated. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Bauxite output in 1982 was 152,250 tonnes. Silver and platinum have been found, and near Neiba there are several hills of rock salt. Ferronickel production (1983) 52,278 tonnes. The Rosario Dominicana goldmines were nationalized in Oct. 1979. Production of gold (1983) 354,023 troy oz.; silver, 1,329,138.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture and its processing industries are the chief source of wealth, sugar cultivation being the principal industry. Of the total area (1984) meadows and pastures, 43%; permanent cultivation, 30%; forestry 13%.

Livestock in 1987: 2,058,000 cattle, 2,637,000 pigs, 84,000 sheep.

Sugar-cane production, 1986, was 7.3m. tonnes. Coffee is exported mainly to USA. Output, 1986, 55,000 tonnes. Production of rice for home consumption and export is fostered; output, 1986, 298,000 tonnes. Cocoa is the second principal crop and covers 2m. *tareas* (340,000 acres); output in 1986, 37,000 tonnes. There are useful crops of yucca and beans for local consumption. Scientific growing of bananas (1986: 422,000 tonnes) and of leaf tobacco (1986: 12,000 tonnes) is progressing.

**Fisheries.** The total catch (1981) was 14,500 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Important products are sugar (1,105,263 tonnes of crude and 104,194 of refined sugar in 1983), cement (960,000 tonnes in 1981). Value of textile manufactures (1983), RD\$30.4m.; tobacco products, RD\$63.5m.

**Commerce.** Total imports and exports in RD\$1m. (equal to US\$1m.):

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	1,450.2	1,255.8	1,297.0	1,257.1	1,285.9
Exports	1,188.0	767.7	785.9	868.1	739.3

The principal exports in 1983 were (in RD\$1m.): Sugar, 263.5; coffee, 76.3; ferronickel, 83.5; Doré, 164.5.

Total trade between the Dominican Republic and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	5,620	7,900	7,599	8,637	8,523
Exports and re-exports from UK	12,535	14,595	15,178	23,887	17,235

**Tourism.** About 800,000 tourists visited the Dominican Republic in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length of roads (1982) 17,362 km and which 5,035 km paved. There were 94,600 cars and 55,340 commercial vehicles in 1983.

**Railways.** Some 142 km of the Dominican Government Railway remains in use

between La Vega and the port of Sánchez. Twelve lines, including the Central Romana Railway, exist to serve the sugar industry, totalling 1,600 km.

**Aviation.** The country is reached from the American continent and the Caribbean islands by 8 international airlines and in 1987 there were 4 airports. Two local aviation companies provide interior services and connect Santo Domingo with San Juan in Puerto Rico, Curaçao, Aruba and Miami.

**Shipping.** Santo Domingo is the leading port; Puerto Plata ranks next. In 1971, vessels of 9,833,000 tons entered the ports to discharge 3,009,000 tonnes of cargo, and vessels of 5,276,000 tons cleared the ports having loaded 1,986,000 tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephone instruments (1983), 175,054, of which 138,169 in Santo Domingo. The telegraph has a total length of about 500 km, privately owned; they have been leased to All-America Cables, Inc., which also controls submarine cables connecting, in the north, Puerto Plata with Puerto Rico and New York, and in the south, Santo Domingo with Puerto Rico, Cuba and Curaçao.

There were (1989) more than 90 broadcasting stations in Santo Domingo and other towns; this includes the 2 government stations. There are 4 television stations. In 1986 there were 800,000 radio and 500,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1978). Cinemas numbered 72, with seating capacity of about 40,000.

**Newspapers** (1985). There were 9 daily newspapers with a circulation of 208,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicial power resides in the Supreme Court of Justice, the courts of appeal, the courts of first instance, the communal courts and other tribunals created by special laws, such as the land courts. The Supreme Court consists of a president and 8 judges chosen by the Senate, and the procurator-general, appointed by the executive; it supervises the lower courts. Each province forms a judicial district, as does the *Distrito Nacional*, and each has its own procurator fiscal and court of first instance; these districts are subdivided, in all, into 72 municipalities and 18 municipal districts, each with one or more local justices. The death penalty was abolished in 1924.

**Religion.** The religion of the state is Roman Catholic; other forms of religion are permitted.

**Education.** Primary instruction (5,956 schools) is free and obligatory for children between 7 and 14 years of age; there are also secondary, normal, vocational and special schools, all of which are either wholly maintained by the State or state-aided; in 1983–84, primary schools had 20,607 teachers and 1,121,851 pupils and there were 352,328 pupils in secondary schools.

The University of Santo Domingo (founded 1538) and 5 other universities had 88,000 students in 1985–86.

**Health.** There were, in 1980, 2,142 doctors and 8,953 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Dominican Republic in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in the Dominican Republic

*Ambassador:* Giles Fitzherbert, CMG (resides in Caracas).

Of the Dominican Republic in the USA (1715 22nd St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Eduardo Leon.

Of the USA in the Dominican Republic (Calle Cesar Nicolas Penson, Santo Domingo)

*Ambassador:* Lowell C. Kilday.



Of the Dominican Republic to the United Nations

Ambassador: Dr Juan Aristides Taveras-Guzman.

### Further Reading

*Anuario estadístico de la República Dominicana, 1944-45.* Ciudad Trujillo, 1949. This has been succeeded by separate annual reports covering foreign trade, vital statistics, banking, insurance, housing and communications.

*Official Guide to the Dominican Republic, 79-80.* Tourist Information Center, Santo Domingo, 1980

Atkins, G. P., *Arms and Politics in the Dominican Republic.* London, 1981

Bell, I., *The Dominican Republic.* London, 1980

Black, J. K., *The Dominican Republic: Politics and Development in an Unsovereign State.* London, 1986

Diederich, B., *Trujillo: The Death of the Goat.* London, 1978

Wiarda, H. J. and Kryzanek, M. J., *The Dominican Republic: A Caribbean Crucible.* Boulder, 1982

# ECUADOR

*Capital:* Quito

*Population:* 9.64m. (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,160 (1986)

## República del Ecuador

**HISTORY.** The Spaniards under Francisco Pizarro founded a colony after their victory at Cajamarca (16 Nov. 1532). Their rule was first challenged by the rising of 10 Aug. 1809. Marshal Sucre defeated the Spaniards at Pichincha in 1822, and in 1822 Bolívar persuaded the new republic to join the federation of Gran Colombia. The Presidency of Quito became the Republic of Ecuador by amicable secession 13 May 1830.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Ecuador is bounded on the north by Colombia, on the east and south by Peru, on the west by the Pacific ocean. The frontier with Peru has long been a source of dispute between the two countries. The latest delimitation of it was in the treaty of Rio, 29 Jan. 1942, when, after being invaded by Peru, Ecuador lost over half her Amazonian territories. Ecuador unilaterally denounced this treaty in Sept. 1961. *See* map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1942. Fighting between Peru and Ecuador began again in Jan. 1981 over this border issue but a ceasefire was agreed in early Feb.

No definite figure of the area of the country can yet be given, as a portion of the frontier has not been delimited. One estimate of the area of Ecuador is 270,670 sq. km, excluding the litigation zone between Peru and Ecuador, which is 190,807 sq. km, but including the Galápagos Islands (7,844 sq. km).

Mainland Ecuador has 3 distinct zones: the *Sierra* or uplands of the Andes, consisting of high mountain ridges with valleys, with 3.76m. of the population and high-priced farming land; the *Costa*, the coastal plain between the Andes and the Pacific, with 4.03m., whose permanent plantations furnish bananas, cacao, coffee, sugar-cane and many other crops; the *Oriente*, the upper Amazon basin on the east and the site of the main oilfields, consisting of tropical jungles threaded by large rivers (0.26m.).

The population is predominantly of Mestizos and Amerindians, with some proportion of people of European or African descent.

The official language is Spanish. The Amerindians of the highlands also speak the Quechua language; in the Oriental Region various tribes have languages of their own.

Census population in 1982, 8,072,702. Estimate (1986) 9.64m.

The population 28 Nov. 1982 was distributed by provinces as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1982</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Census 1982</i>
Azuay	8,092	443,044	Cuenca	272,397
Bolívar	4,142	141,566	Guaranda	14,155 <sup>1</sup>
Cañar	3,481	174,674	Azogues	13,840 <sup>1</sup>
Carchi	3,744	125,452	Tulcán	33,635 <sup>1</sup>
Chimborazo	6,056	320,268	Riobamba	149,757
Cotopaxi	5,198	279,765	Latacunga	55,979
El Oro	5,908	337,818	Machala	117,243
Esmeraldas	15,162	247,311	Esmeraldas	141,030
Guayas	21,382	2,047,001	Guayaquil	1,300,868
Imbabura	4,976	245,745	Ibarra	60,719 <sup>1</sup>
Loja	11,472 <sup>2</sup>	358,952	Loja	86,196
Los Ríos	6,370	457,065	Babahoyo	42,583 <sup>1</sup>
Manabí	18,105	858,780	Portoviejo	167,070
Pichincha	16,587	1,376,831	Quito	1,110,248
Tungurahua	3,110	324,286	Ambato	221,392
Napo <sup>3</sup>	52,318 <sup>2</sup>	115,110	Tena	4,735 <sup>1</sup>
Pastaza <sup>3</sup>	30,269 <sup>2</sup>	31,779	Puyo	...
Morona-Santiago <sup>3</sup>	26,418 <sup>2</sup>	70,217	Macas	...
Zamora-Chinchipe <sup>3</sup>	18,394 <sup>2</sup>	46,691	Zamora	6,365
Colon (Galápagos)	7,994	6,119	Baquerizo Moreno	...

<sup>1</sup> 1983 estimate.

<sup>2</sup> Excluding Peru-Ecuador litigation zone.

<sup>3</sup> Comprising 'Región Oriental'.

Vital statistics for calendar years: Births, (1985) 209,974; deaths, (1985) 51,134.

**CLIMATE.** The climate varies from equatorial, through warm temperate to mountain conditions, according to altitude which affects temperatures and rainfall. In coastal areas, the dry season is from May to Dec., but only from June to Sept. in mountainous parts, where temperatures may be 20°F colder than on the coast. Quito Jan. 59°F (15°C), July 58°F (14.4°C). Annual rainfall 44" (1,115 mm). Guayaquil. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 39" (986 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution came into force on 10 Aug. 1979. It provides for an executive President and a Vice-President to be directly elected for a non-renewable 4-year term by universal suffrage, with a further 'run-off' ballot being held between the two leading candidates where no-one has secured an absolute majority of the votes cast. The President appoints and leads a Council of Ministers.

Legislative power is vested in a unicameral 71-member National Congress, also directly elected for a 4-year term, 12 members on a national basis and 59 on a provincial basis. Voting is obligatory for all literate citizens of 18 years and over. At the most recent congressional elections in June 1986, 43 seats were won by the *Frente Progresista Democrática* and 27 by the *Frente de Reconstrucción Nacional*, with 1 independent.

The following is a list of the presidents and provisional executives since 1948:

Galo Plaza Lasso, 1 Sept. 1948–31 Aug. 1952.	Dr Otto Arosemena Gómez, 17 Nov. 1966–1 Sept. 1968.
Dr José María Velasco Ibarra, 1 Sept. 1952–31 Aug. 1956.	Dr José María Velasco Ibarra, 1 Sept. 1968–15 Feb. 1972 (deposed).
Dr Camilo Ponce Enríquez, 1 Sept. 1956–31 Aug. 1960.	Gen. Guillermo Rodríguez Lara, 16 Feb. 1972–11 Jan. 1976 (resigned).
Dr José María Velasco Ibarra, 1 Sept. 1960–8 Nov. 1961 (withdrew).	Adm. Alfredo Poveda Burbano, 11 Jan. 1976–10 Aug. 1979.
Dr Carlos Julio Arosemena Monroy, 8 Nov. 1961–11 July 1963 (deposed).	Jaime Roldós Aguilera, 10 Aug. 1979–24 May 1981.
Military Junta, 11 July 1963–31 March 1966.	Oswaldo Hurtado Larrea, 24 May 1981–10 Aug. 1984.
Clemente Yerovi Indaburu, 31 March–16 Nov. 1966 (interim).	León Febres Cordero Rivadeneira, 10 Aug. 1984–10 Aug. 1988.

*President:* Rodrigo Borja Cevallos (elected 9 May 1988; installed 10 Aug. 1988).

The Cabinet in Dec. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Government and Justice:* Andrés Vallejo Arco. *Defence:* Gen. Jorge Félix Mena. *Education and Culture:* Alfredo Vera Arrata. *Agriculture and Livestock:* Enrique Delgado. *Public Works and Communications:* Juan Neira. *Finance and Public Credit:* Jorge Gallardo. *Foreign Affairs:* Diego Cordóvez. *Industry, Commerce Integration and Fishing:* Juan José Pons. *Public Health:* Plutarco Naranjo. *Social Welfare and Public Promotion:* Raúl Baco Carbo. *Secretary General for Public Administration:* Washington Herrera. *Energy and Mines:* Diego Tamariz. *Labour and Human Resources:* César Verduga. *Secretary General for Public Information:* Gonzalo Ortiz.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of yellow, blue, red, with the yellow of double width, and in the centre over all the national arms.

*National anthem:* Indignados tus hijos del yugo (words by J. L. Mera; music by A. Neumann, 1866).

*Local Government.* The country is divided politically into 20 provinces; 4 of them comprise the 'Región Oriental' and one the Archipelago of Galápagos, situated in the Pacific ocean about 600 miles to the west of Ecuador and comprising 15 islands. The provinces are administered by governors, appointed by the Government; their sub-divisions, or cantons, by political chiefs and elected cantonal councillors; and the parishes by political lieutenants. The Galápagos Archipelago is administered by the Ministry of National Defence. The 20 provinces are made up of 115 cantons, 212 urban parishes and 715 rural parishes.



**DEFENCE.** Military service is selective, with a 1-year period of conscription. The country is divided into 4 military zones, with headquarters at Quito, Guayaquil, Cuenca and Pastaza.

**Army.** The Army consists of 6 infantry, 1 armoured and 2 'jungle' brigades. Strength (1989) 33,000, with about 50,000 reservists. Equipment includes 45 American M-3 and 104 French AMX-13 light tanks. The aviation element has 5 Arava, 7 Turbo-Porter and 1 Buffalo Air transports, 4 survey aircraft, 3 Cessna light aircraft and 14 helicopters including 4 Super Pumas and 3 Pumas.

**Navy.** The Navy consists of 2 Federal Republic of Germany-built diesel-electric powered patrol submarines; 1 old *ex-US* destroyer (completed in 1946), 1 old *ex-US* frigate (built in 1943), 6 Italian-built new corvettes, 6 fast missile boats, 7 coastal patrol craft, 1 landing ship, 1 medium landing ship, 1 supply ship, 2 survey vessels and 6 tugs. The Maritime Air Force has 19 aircraft, including 7 Cessna light aircraft, 2 Alouette III and 5 Jet Ranger helicopters and 3 Beech trainers. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 3,800 officers and men. There are 17 Coast Guard cutters.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, formed with Italian assistance in 1920, was reorganized and re-equipped with US aircraft after Ecuador signed the Rio Pact of Mutual Defence in 1947 but latest equipment acquired from Europe and Brazil. 1989 strength of about 3,000 personnel and 70 combat aircraft includes a strike squadron equipped with 9 single-seat and 2 two-seat Jaguars; an interceptor squadron of 14 single-seat and 1 two-seat Mirage F.1; an interceptor squadron with 11 Kfir; 3 counter-insurgency units equipped with 11 Cessna A-37B, 25 T-33 and 12 Strike-master light jet attack and training aircraft, 1 squadron with 4 piston-engined C-47 and 2 C-130, 2 Buffalo and 4 HS 748 turboprop transports; Alouette III, AS 332 Super Puma, SA 330 Puma, Bell 47, Bell 212, UH-1 Iroquois and SA 315B Lama helicopters; and Cessna 150, T-34C-1 and T-41A/D trainers. Other transports are operated by the military airline TAME.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Ecuador is a member of UN, OAS, the Andean Group and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1985-89 medium term objectives aim at private investment in agriculture, fishing, mining, petroleum and gas. Improvement in infrastructure is envisaged.

**Budget.** Estimated revenue in 1986 was 186,824m. sucres and expenditure, 216,466m. sucres.

Net international reserves, 31 Dec. 1987, were US\$55m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *sucre*, divided into 100 *centavos*. In circulation are a pure nickel 1-sucre and copper-nickel and copper-zinc 50-, 20- and 10-centavo pieces. The currency consists mainly of the notes of the Central Bank in denominations of 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 sucres. In March 1989, US\$1 = 433.63; £1 = 746.27.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of Ecuador, at Quito, with a capital and reserves of 3,462m. sucres at Dec. 1986, is modelled after the Federal Reserve Banks of US: through branches opened in 16 towns it now deals in mortgage bonds. All commercial banks must be affiliated to the Central Bank. American and European banks include the Bank of London and Canada with branches in Quito and Guayaquil.

**Weights and Measures.** By a law of 6 Dec. 1856 the metric system was made the legal standard but the Spanish measures are in general use. The quintal is equivalent to 101.4 lb.

The meridian of Quito has been adopted as the official time.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1985, total capacity of hydraulic and thermal plants was 1,795,100 kw. Estimated output was 4,805m. kwh. Supply 110, 120 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Production of crude oil in 1988 was 15.8m. tonnes. In 1988 management of oil companies was taken over by the government.

**Gas.** In 1985, natural gas production was 608,453.5m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Production (1983): Silver, 3,137.6 troy oz; gold, 607.6 troy oz; copper, 7,900 kg; zinc, 14,820 kg.

The country also has some iron, uranium, lead and coal.

**Agriculture.** Ecuador is divided into two agricultural zones: The coast and lower river valleys, where tropical farming is carried on in an average temperature of from 18° to 25° C.; and the Andean highlands with a temperate climate, adapted to grazing, dairying and the production of cereals, potatoes, pyrethrum and other flowers, and vegetables suitable to temperate climates. Some wheat has to be imported.

124,000 acres of rich virgin land in the Santo Domingo de los Colorados area has been set aside for settlement of smallholders.

Excepting the two agricultural zones and a few arid spots on the Pacific coast, Ecuador is a vast forest. Roughly estimated, 10,000 sq. miles on the Pacific slope extending from the sea to an altitude of 5,000 ft on the Andes, and the Amazon Basin below the same level containing 80,000 sq. miles, nearly all virgin forest, are rich in valuable timber, but much of it is still not commercially accessible.

The staple export products are bananas, cacao and coffee. Main crops, in 1,000 tonnes, in 1986: Rice, 510; potatoes, 505; maize, 328; coffee, 118; barley, 40; cocoa, 112; bananas, 2,100.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 3,847,000; sheep, 2.1m.; pigs, 4.16m.; horses, 345,000; poultry, 42m.

**Forestry.** In 1981, 4.5m. cu. metres of timber were cut. Exports approximately US\$10m. per annum.

**Fisheries.** Fisheries and fish product exports were valued at US\$387.6m. in 1986 (268,000 tonnes).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production in 1978: Sugar, 178,000 tonnes; beer, 1,560,000 hectolitres; cement 1.06m. tonnes.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports for calendar years, in US\$1m.:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports (f.o.b.)	2,187	1,421	1,567	1,611	1,631
Exports (f.o.b.)	2,327	2,348	2,622	2,905	2,186

Of the total exports (1985); petroleum, US\$1,926m.; bananas, US\$220m.; cocoa, US\$138.4m.; coffee, US\$190.8m.

USA furnished 30% of imports in 1985 and took 61% of the exports.

Total trade between Ecuador and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	12,951	19,015	11,339	14,002	13,120
Exports and re-exports from UK	34,323	58,628	46,673	37,934	50,417

**Tourism.** There were 252,443 visitors in 1986, spending US\$170m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985, there were 36,187 km of roads of all types in this mountainous country. A trunk highway through the coastal plain is under construction which will link Machala in the extreme south-west with Esmeraldas in the north-west and with Quito and the northern section of the Pan-American Highway. In 1984, there were 314,360 cars and 32,379 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** A 1,067 mm gauge line runs from San Lorenzo through Quito to Guayaquil and Cuenca, total 971 km.

**Aviation.** There are 2 international airports. The following international lines operate: Air France, Avianca, Eastern, Ecuatoriana de Aviación, KLM, Lufthansa, Pan-Am, Iberia, LAN Chile, Aerovías Peruanas, Aereolíneas Argentinas, Air Panama and Varig. They connect Quito with North and Central America, other countries in South America and Europe. All the leading towns are connected by an almost daily service.

**Shipping.** Ecuador has 3 major seaports, of which Guayaquil is the chief and 6 minor ones. The merchant navy comprises 39,964 tons of seagoing and 21,232 tons of river craft. In 1980 ships totalling 26·58m. GRT entered Ecuadorean ports, unloading 2·28m. tons, and loading 8·59m. tons.

There is river communication, improved by dredging, throughout the principal agricultural districts on the low ground to the west of the Cordillera by the rivers Guayas, Daule and Vinces (navigable for 200 miles by river steamers in the rainy season).

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1985 there were 339,040 telephones in use, 104,000 in Quito and 104,000 in Guayaquil; most were operated by the Government; 99% were automatic. Television was inaugurated in 1960 in Guayaquil, in 1961 in Quito and in 1967 in Cuenca. In 1985 there were 1·9m. radio receivers and 600,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** (1974). Cinemas numbered about 185 with total seating capacity of 114,600.

**Newspapers** (1984). There were 22 daily newspapers with an aggregate daily circulation of 526,000; 7 papers in Quito and Guayaquil have the bulk of the circulation.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court in Quito, consisting of a President and 15 Justices, comprises 5 chambers each of 3 Justices. There is a Superior Court in each province, comprising chambers (as appointed by the Supreme Court) of 3 magistrates each. There are numerous lower and special courts. Capital punishment and all forms of torture are prohibited by the constitution, as are imprisonment for debt and contracts involving personal servitude or slavery.

**Religion.** The state recognizes no religion and grants freedom of worship to all. In 1984, 92% of the population were Roman Catholics. Divorce is permitted. Illegitimate children have the same rights as legitimate ones with respect to education and inheritance.

**Education.** Primary education is free and obligatory. Private schools, both primary and secondary, are under some state supervision. In 1982, 13,291 primary schools had 1,676,681 pupils; 1,633 secondary schools with 687,085 pupils. The 9 Universities include 3 in Guayaquil, 2 in Quito, and others at Cuenca, Machala, Loja and Portoviejo, while 8 technical colleges are in other towns.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 11,000 doctors and 337 hospitals with 15,455 beds. In 1979 there were 795 dentists and 505 pharmacists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Ecuador in Great Britain (3 Hans Cres., London, SW1X 0LS)  
*Ambassador:* Dr José Antonio Correa (accredited 7 Feb. 1989).

Of Great Britain in Ecuador (Calle Gonzalez Suarez 111, Quito)  
*Ambassador:* M. W. Atkinson, CMG, MBE.

Of Ecuador in the USA (2535 15th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).



Of the USA in Ecuador (Avenida 12 de Octubre y Avenida Patria, Quito)  
*Ambassador: (Vacant).*

Of Ecuador to the United Nations  
*Ambassador: (Vacant).*

### Further Reading

*Anuario de Legislación Ecuatoriana.* Quito. Annual

*Boletín del Banco Central.* Quito

*Boletín General de Estadística.* Tri-monthly

*Boletín Mensual del Ministerio de Obras Públicas.* Monthly

*Informes Ministeriales.* Quito. Annual

*Bibliografía Nacional, 1756–1941.* Quito, 1942

*Invest in Ecuador.* Banco Central del Ecuador, Quito, 1980

Buitrón, A. and Collier, Jr, J., *The Awakening Valley: Study of the Otavalo Indians.* New York, 1950

Corkhill, D., *Ecuador.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

Cueva, A., *The Process of Political Domination in Ecuador.* London, 1982

Hickman, J., *The Enchanted Islands: The Galapagos Discovered.* Oswestry, 1985

Martz, J. D., *Ecuador: Conflicting Political Culture and the Quest for Progress.* Boston, 1972.—*Politics and Petroleum in Ecuador.* New Brunswick, 1987

Middleton, A., *Class, Power and the Distribution of Credit in Ecuador.* Glasgow, 1981

# EGYPT

*Capital:* Cairo

*Population:* 49.28m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$760 (1986)

## Jumhuriyat Misr al-Arabiya

**HISTORY.** Part of the Ottoman Empire from 1517 until Dec. 1914 when it became a British protectorate, Egypt became an independent monarchy on 28 Feb. 1922. Following a revolution on 23 July 1952, a Republic was proclaimed on 18 June 1953. Egypt merged with Syria on 22 Feb. 1958 to form the United Arab Republic, retaining that name when Syria broke away from the union on 28 Sept. 1961, finally re-adopting the name of Egypt on 2 Sept. 1971.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Egypt is bounded east by Israel, the Gulf of Aqaba and the Red Sea, south by Sudan, west by Libya and north by the Mediterranean. The total area is 1,002,000 sq. km (386,900 sq. miles), but the cultivated and settled area, that is, the Nile valley, delta and oases, covers only about 35,580 sq. km.

The area, population (1976 Census and 1985 estimate) and capitals of the governorates are:

<i>Governorate</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1976 census</i>	<i>1985 estimate</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Sinai al-Janûbiya	33,140	10,104	24,000	At-Tur
Sinai ash-Shamâliya	25,574		152,000	Al-Arish
Suez	17,840	194,001	254,000	Suez
Ismailia	1,442	351,889	465,000	Ismâilya
Port Said	72	262,620	374,000	Port Said
Sharqiya	4,180	2,621,208	3,318,000	Zaqâziq
Daqahliya	3,471	2,732,756	3,469,000	Mansûra
Damietta	589	557,115	728,000	Damietta
Kafr el Sheikh	3,437	1,403,468	1,795,000	Kafr el-Sheikh
Alexandria	2,679	2,318,655	2,821,000	Alexandria
Behera	10,130	2,517,292	3,199,000	Damanhur
Gharbiya	1,942	2,294,303	2,847,000	Tanta
Menûfiya	1,532	1,710,982	2,157,000	Shibin el-Kom
Qalyûbiya	1,001	1,674,006	2,186,000	Benha
Cairo	214	5,084,463	6,205,000	Cairo
Giza	85,105	2,419,247	3,159,000	Giza
Faiyûm	1,827	1,140,245	1,495,000	Faiyûm
Beni Suef	1,322	1,108,615	1,424,000	Beni-Suef
Minya	2,262	2,055,739	2,692,000	Minyâ
Asyût	1,530	1,695,378	2,179,000	Asyût
Sohag	1,547	1,924,960	2,455,000	Sohag
Qena	1,851	1,705,594	2,159,000	Qinâ
Aswân	679	619,932	781,000	Aswân
al-Bahr al-Ahmar	203,685	56,191	70,000	Al-Ghurdaqah
al-Wadi al-Jadid	376,505	84,645	113,000	Al-Kharijah
Mersa Matruh	212,112	112,772	173,000	Matruh
<b>Total</b>		<b>36,656,180</b>	<b>46,694,000</b>	

The principal towns, with their (estimate) 1986 populations, were:

Cairo	6,325,000	Asyût	291,300	Sani Suwayf	162,500
Alexandria	2,893,000	Zagâziq	274,400	Uqsar (Luxor)	147,900
Gaza	1,670,800	Suez	265,000	Qinâ	141,700
Shubrâ al-Khayma	533,300	Kafr ad-Dawwar	240,000	Sawhâj	141,500
Mahalla al-Kubrâ	385,300	Ismâiliya	236,300	Shibin al-Kawm	135,900
Port Said	382,000	Fayyûm	227,300	Dumyât	121,200
Tantâ	373,500	Damanhûr	225,900	Banhâ	120,200
Mansûra	357,800	Minyâ	203,300	Kafr ash-Shaykh	104,200
Hulwan	352,300	Aswân	195,700		

Population (1987) 49.28m. and of Greater Cairo 13.3m.

The official language is Arabic, although French and English are widely spoken.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is mainly dry, but there are winter rains along the Mediterranean coast. Elsewhere, rainfall is very low and erratic in its distribution. Winter temperatures are everywhere comfortable, but summer temperatures are very high, especially in the south. Cairo. Jan. 56°F (13.3°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 1.2" (28 mm). Alexandria. Jan. 58°F (14.4°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 7" (178 mm). Aswân. Jan. 62°F (16.7°C), July 92°F (33.3°C). Annual rainfall trace. Giza. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 16" (389 mm). Ismailia. Jan. 56°F (13.3°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 1.5" (37 mm). Luxor. Jan. 59°F (15°C), July 86°F (30°C). Annual rainfall trace. Port Said. Jan. 58°F (14.4°C), July 78°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 3" (76 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution was approved by referendum on 11 Sept. 1971. It defines Egypt as 'an Arab Republic with a democratic, socialist system' and the Egyptian people as 'part of the Arab nation' with Islam as the state religion and Arabic as the official language.

The President of the Republic is nominated by the People's Assembly and confirmed by plebiscite for a 6-year term. He is the supreme commander of the armed forces and presides over the defence council.

Presidents since the establishment of the Republic have been:

Gen. Mohamed Neguib, 18 June 1953–14 Nov. 1954 (deposed).  
Col. Gamal Abdel Nasser, 14 Nov. 1954–28 Sept. 1970 (died).

Col. Muhammad Anwar Sadat, 28 Sept. 1970–6 Oct. 1981 (assassinated).  
Lieut.-Gen. Muhammad Hosni Mubarak, 7 Oct. 1981–.

The People's Assembly is a unicameral legislature consisting of 448 members directly elected for a 5-year term; the President of the Republic may appoint up to 10 additional members. At the general elections held in April 1987, the National Democratic Party gained 346 seats, the New *Wafd* Party 35, SLP-led alliance 60, Independent 7.

The President may appoint one or more Vice-Presidents, and appoints a Prime Minister and a Council of Ministers, whom he may remove as he wishes.

A 210-member consultative body, the Shura Council, was established in 1980. Two-thirds of its members are elected and one-third appointed by the President.

*President of the Republic:* Hosni Mubarak, sworn in for second 6-year term Oct. 1987.

The Council of Ministers in Jan. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Dr Atef Mohamed Naguib Sidki.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Defence and Military Production:* Field Marshal Mohamed Abdul Halim Abu Ghazala. *Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Foreign Affairs:* Dr Ahmed Esmat Abdul Meguid. *Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Planning:* Dr Kamal Ahmed el-Ganzuri. *Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Agriculture and Food Sufficiency:* Dr Youssef Amin Wali. *Insurance and Social Affairs:* Dr Amal Abdul Rehim Osman. *Housing, Utilities and New Communities:* Hassaballah Mohamed el Kafrawi. *Minister of State for Foreign Affairs:* Dr Boutros Boutros-Ghali. *Transport, Communications and Marine Transport:* Soliman Mctwalli Soliman. *Electricity and Energy:* Mohamed Maher Abaza. *Minister of State for Military Production:* Dr Gamal el Sayed Ibrahim. *Information:* Mohamed Safwat el Sherif. *Public Works and Water Resources:* Esam Abdul Hamid Radi. *Industry:* Mohamed Mahmoud Abdul Wahhab. *Petroleum and Mineral Wealth:* Abdul Hadi Mohamed Kandil. *Cabinet Affairs and Minister of State for Administrative Development:* Dr Atef Mohamed Ebeid. *Tourism and Civil Aviation:* Fuad Abdul Latif Sultan. *Interior:* Zaki Mostafa Badr. *Supply and Home Trade:* Dr Mohamed Galal Abul Dahab. *Minister of State for Scientific Research:* Dr Adel Abdul Hamid Ez. *Health:* Dr Mohamed Ragheb Dwidar. *Economy and Foreign Trade:* Dr Yusri Ali Mustafa.



*People's Assembly and Shura Council Affairs:* Dr Ahmed Salama Mohamed. *Education:* Dr Ahmed Fathi Serour. *Finance:* Dr Mohamed Ahmed el Razzaz. *Wakfs:* Dr Mohamed Ali Mahgoub. *Manpower and Training:* Assem Abdul Haq Saleh. *Justice:* Farouk Seifull Nasr. *Minister of State for International Co-operation:* Dr Mouris Makramallah. *Minister of State for Emigration and Expatriates' Affairs:* Dr Fuad Iskandar. *Culture:* Farouk Hosni.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, black, with the national emblem in the centre in gold.

*Local Government.* There are 26 governorates: 16 provinces, 5 cities and 5 frontier districts.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription is for 3 years, between the ages of 20 and 35. Graduates serve for 1 year.

**Army.** The Army comprises 4 armoured, 6 mechanized infantry, and 3 infantry divisions; 1 Republican Guard, 2 independent armoured, 5 independent infantry, 2 airmobile, 1 parachute, 8 artillery, 2 heavy mortar, and 6 anti-tank guided weapon brigades; 7 commando groups; and 2 surface-to-surface missile regiments. Strength (1989) 320,000 (180,000 conscripts) and about 500,000 reservists. Equipment includes 1,040 T-54/-55, 600 T-62 and 753 M-60A3 tanks.

**Navy.** There are 12 elderly diesel-driven *ex*-Soviet and *ex*-Chinese submarines (most nearing the end of their hull lives and of which only 8 can be operational – 2 having been used for spares and 2 being overhauled), 1 old destroyer, 2 new Chimere-built frigates, 5 frigates, 23 missile boats, 3 torpedo boats, 7 fast attack craft, 8 new patrol gunboats, 1 submarine parent ship (*ex*-frigate), 4 fleet mine-sweepers, 2 inshore minesweepers, 3 medium landing ships, 14 landing craft, 10 minor landing craft, 2 survey vessels, 10 service craft, 2 tenders, 3 minelaying hovercraft, 1 large training ship (*ex*-Royal Yacht), 7 auxiliaries and 4 tugs. There are 108 coast guard cutters.

Naval bases are at Alexandria, Port Said, Mersa Matruh, Port Tewfik, Hurghada and Safaqa. The Naval Academy is at Abu Qir.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 20,000 officers and men, including the Coast-guard, but not reserves of about 15,000.

**Air Force.** Until 1979, the Air Force was equipped largely with aircraft of USSR design, but subsequent re-equipment involves aircraft bought in the West, as well as some supplied by China. Strength (1989) is about 25,000 personnel and 500 combat aircraft, of which the interceptors are operated by an independent Air Defence Command, in conjunction with many 'Guideline', 'Goa', 'Gainful', Hawk and Crotale missile batteries. There are about 12 Tu-16 twin-jet strategic bombers, some equipped to carry 'Kelt' air-to-surface missiles. Other interceptor/ground attack fighter divisions are equipped with 75 F-16 Fighting Falcons, 50 Mirage 5s, 33 F-4E Phantoms, 20 Mirage 2000s, 80 F-6s (Chinese-built MiG-19s), 15 Alpha Jets, 50 Su-7s, more than 120 MiG-21s, and 60 F-7s (Chinese-built MiG-21s). Airborne early warning capability is provided by 5 E-2C Hawkeyes. Transport units have 19 C-130H Hercules turboprop heavy freighters, 12 An-12s, 9 twin-turboprop Buffaloes and up to 175 Gazelle, Mi-4, Mi-6, Mi-8, Sea King/Commando and Agusta-built CH-47C helicopters; some Commando helicopters and 2 EC-130H Hercules are equipped for electronic warfare duties. Training units are equipped with Gomhouria piston-engined trainers, Embraer Tucanos, Czech-built L-29 Delfin and Alpha Jet jet trainers, two-seat versions of the MiG-15, MiG-17s, two-seat FT-6s, Mirage 5s, MiG-21Us and Su-7Us, and UH-12E helicopters. Main aircrew training centre is the EAF Academy at Bilbeis.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Egypt is a member of UN, OAU, the Arab League and OAPEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 5-year development plan runs 1987/88–1991–92 and envisages investments totalling £E46,500m.

**Budget.** Ordinary revenue and expenditure for fiscal years ending 30 June, in £E1m.:

	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Revenue	15,010	14,451	17,910
Expenditure	19,910	20,246	23,060

**Currency.** By decree of 18 Oct. 1916 (20 Zi-El-Higga 1934), the monetary unit of Egypt is the gold Egyptian pound of 100 *piastres* of 1,000 *millièmes*. Coins in circulation are 20, 10, 5, 2 piastres (silver); 2, 1 piastre, 5 millièmes, 1 millième (bronze). Gold coins are no longer in circulation. Silver coin is legal tender only up to £E1, and bronze coins up to 10 piastres. The Treasury issues 5- and 10-piastre currency notes. Bank-notes are issued by the National Bank in denominations of 5, 10, 25 and 50 piastres, £E1, 5, 10, 20, and 100.

In March 1989, £1 sterling = £E4.15; US\$1 = £E2.41.

**Banking.** On 18 Aug. 1960 a Central Bank of Egypt was established by decree. It manages the note issue, the Government's banking operations and the control of commercial banks. At the same date the National Bank founded in 1898 ceased to be the central bank and became a purely commercial bank. In 1986 there were 27 commercial banks, 33 business and investment banks (joint ventures and 22 foreign currency branches) and 4 specialized banks. There were also 29 representative offices of foreign banks.

**Weights and Measures.** In 1951 the metric system was made official with the exception of the *feddân* and its subdivisions.

**Capacity.** *Kadah* = 1/96th *ardeb* = 3.36 pints. *Rob* = 4 *kadahs* = 1.815 gallons. *Keila* = 8 *kadahs* = 3.63 gallons. *Ardeb* = 96 *kadahs* = 43.555 gallons, or 5.44439 bu., or 198 cu. decimetres.

**Weights.** *Rotl* = 144 dirhems = 0.9905 lb. *Oke* = 400 dirhems = 2.75137 lb. *Qantâr* or 100 *rotls* or 36 *okes* = 99.0493 lb. 1 *Qantâr* of unginned cotton = 315 lb. 1 *Qantâr* of ginned cotton = 99.05 lb. The approximate weight of the *ardeb* is as follows: Wheat, 150 kg; beans, 155 kg; barley, 120 kg; maize, 140 kg; cotton seed, 121 kg.

**Surface.** *Feddân*, the unit of measure for land = 4,200.8 sq. metres = 7,468.148 sq. pics = 1.03805 acres. 1 sq. pic = 6.0547 sq. ft = 0.5625 sq. metre.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity generated in 1986 was 40,600m. kwh. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The first commercial discovery of oil in the Middle East outside Iran was made in Egypt in 1909, but production long remained low and often insufficient to meet Egypt's domestic requirements. Policy is controlled by the Egyptian General Petroleum Corporation (EGPC) a wholly state-owned corporation answerable to the Minister of Petroleum. EGPC is whole or part-owner of the various production and refining companies and controls supplies to the domestic marketing companies. With the agreement of EGPC several foreign oil companies were exploring for oil in 1986.

Production 1988, was 44.5m. tonnes of crude oil. Net oil earnings (1983-84) US\$2,340m.

**Gas.** The first gas field, at Abu Madi in the Nile delta, became operational in 1974 and produced 4,306,000 tonnes in 1986. The 2 other fields are at Abu Gharadeq in the Western Desert and Abu Qir near Alexandria.

**Water.** The Aswân High Dam, completed in 1970, allows for a perennial irrigation system.

**Minerals.** Production (1981 in tonnes): Phosphate rock, 1m. (1985); iron ore, 2,130,000; marine salt, 869,000. Other minerals discovered include manganese, chrome, tantalum, molybdenum and uranium.

**Agriculture.** The cultivated area of Egypt proper was estimated in 1982 at 11.17m. feddâns (1 feddân = 1.038 acres) and of this, 4,945,000 feddâns were under winter crops, 5,017,000 under summer crops, 818,000 under Nile crops and 390,000 under orchards.

Irrigation occupies a predominant place in the economic development of the country. An intricate irrigation system now reaches most cultivated areas but only about 6.5% of the total land area is arable. The 'vertical' development policy calls for improved methods, better drainage and the introduction of stiff penalties for encroachment of farmland. Under the first phase of the 'horizontal' expansion programme, which aims to add 2.8m. feddâns to the arable area over 20 years, 24,000 feddâns are being added near Alexandria. Export earnings from agriculture have fallen and Egypt is no longer self sufficient in food production partly due to the increase in population. No priority has been given in government planning and because of inadequate investment earnings have fallen for its three most important export crops, cotton, oranges and rice.

In 1985-86 the area sown with cotton rose 7% to 440,705 hectares; output increased 8% to 1,985,000 bales.

The major summer crops are cotton, rice, maize and sorghum. Berseem (Egyptian clover), wheat and beans are the main winter crops.

Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar cane, 9,450; maize, 3,801; tomatoes, 2,840; rice, 2,450; wheat, 1,929; potatoes, 1,275; oranges, 1,170; lint cotton, 434.

Livestock (1987): 1.9m. cattle, 2.55m. buffaloes, 1.16m. sheep, 1.6m. goats, 70,000 camels and 15,000 pigs.

**Forestry.** In 1982 total removal of roundwood was 1.89m. cu. metres of which 1.8m. was fuel wood.

**Fisheries.** The catch of the Egyptian sea, Nile and lake fisheries in 1982 amounted to 155,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** (1987) Almost all large-scale enterprises are in the public sector and these account for about two-thirds of total output. The private sector, dominated by food processing and textiles, consists of about 150,000 small and medium businesses, most employing less than 50 workers. A car industry is being established.

Production in 1985-86 (in 1,000 tonnes) included: Phosphates, 766; fertilizer phosphates, 100.1; fertilizer nitrates, 4,482; cement, 7,735; cotton yarn, 225; cotton fabrics, 608,000 metres.

**Trade Unions.** Trade unions were first recognized in 1942.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports for 5 years (in £E1,000):

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	6,187,486	6,354,517	7,192,657	7,536,100	6,276,300
Exports	2,262,982	2,184,122	2,250,295	2,197,900	2,600,000

In 1985 major exports (in £E1m.) included: Crude petroleum, 1,402.1; refined petroleum, 362.5; cotton, 299. Major imports (1984-85) included: Machinery and transport equipment, 1,915.2; foodstuffs, 1,848.5.

Exports, 1985 (in US\$1m.), were mainly to Italy (656.6), Israel (462), Romania (434.2), France (430), USSR (177.8), Netherlands (152.1), Greece (119.2), Japan (113.8), Spain (100.2) and Republic of Korea (99.7); imports were mainly from USA (1,295.7), Federal Republic of Germany (953.8), Italy (757.3), France (700.9), Japan (514.7), UK (425.3), Spain (390.1), Romania (369.7), Netherlands (356.5) and Australia (335.7).

Total trade between Egypt and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	164,946	162,162	328,053	127,261	163,038
Exports and re-exports from UK	427,688	471,091	371,007	342,195	289,309

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 1.36m. tourists (43% from Arab countries) spending £E251.3m.



## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1980, the total length of roads was 21,637 km, of which 16,182 km were paved. Motor vehicles, in 1981, 580,000 private cars, 165,000 commercial vehicles (including buses).

**Railways.** In 1986 there were 4,321 km of state railways (1,435 mm gauge) which carried 28,340m. passenger-km and 8.6m. tonnes of freight. An underground rail system was opened in Cairo in 1987.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport at Cairo. There are 95 airfields (77 unusable). The national airline Egyptair operates scheduled flights connecting Cairo with Athens, Rome, Frankfurt, Zürich, London, Khartoum, Tokyo, Bombay, Aden, Jeddah, Doha, Dharan, Kuwait, Beirut, Baghdad, Tripoli, Benghazi, Algiers, Entebbe, Nairobi, Dar-es-Salaam, Kano, Lagos, Accra, Abidjan, Damascus, Amman, Manila, Paris, Munich, Copenhagen, Nicosia, Karachi, Aleppo, Bahrain, Abu Dhabi, Dubai, Sharjah, Sanaa and Vienna. In addition, Egyptair operates scheduled flights on a widespread domestic network connecting Cairo with Port Said, Mersa Matruh, Asyût, Luxor, Aswân. In 1982, 62,000 tonnes of cargo were carried.

**Shipping.** The Egyptian merchant navy in 1980 consisted of 75 steamers of 387,460 tons.

In 1977, 3,050 ships of 11,432,000 tons entered the port of Alexandria and 876 ships of 4,583,000 tons entered Port Said.

**Suez Canal.** The Suez Canal was opened for navigation on 17 Nov. 1869. By the convention of Constantinople of 29 Oct. 1888 the canal is open to vessels of all nations and is free from blockade, except in time of war, but the UAR Government did not allow Israeli ships to use the canal until May 1979, when the embargo was lifted. It is 173 km long (excluding 11 km of approach channels to the harbours), connecting the Mediterranean with the Red Sea. Its minimum width is 197 ft at a depth of 33 ft, and its depth permits the passage of vessels up to 38 ft draught.

In 1976 a 2-stage development project was started. The first stage which was completed in 1980 allowing vessels, of up to 150,000 tons, fully loaded, and up to 370,000 tons in ballast to pass through the canal and give a draught of 53 ft.

During the war with Israel in June 1967 the Canal was blocked. The canal was cleared and re-opened to shipping on 5 June 1975. This is part of a programme to develop and rebuild the whole area of Suez to make it one of the largest tax-free industrial zones. Canal toll fees reached US\$980m. in 1984, and in 1983 22,224 vessels (378.2m. tons) went through the canal. The first tunnel below the canal, located 10 miles north of Suez City, was completed on 30 April 1980 and the first phase of a £E4,000m. development plan, to widen and deepen the canal, was completed in 1980.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1980-81, 1,821 postal agencies, 1,812 mobile offices (1978), 1,747 government and 2,956 private post offices. Number of telephones in 1984, 600,000. Number of wireless licences in 1984, 12m. and 4m. TV licences.

The internal telecommunications system is owned and operated by the Telecommunications Organization. Government landlines connect with those of the Gaza sector and the Sudan.

**Cinemas** (1971). There were 152 cinemas with a seating capacity of 140,900.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there were 11 dailies published in Cairo and 6 in Alexandria.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The National Courts in 1981 were as follows: Court of Cassation with a bench of 5 judges which constitutes the highest court of appeal in both criminal and civil cases; Courts of Appeal with 3 judges situated in Cairo and 4 other cities; Assize Courts with 3 judges which deal with all cases of serious crime; Central Tribunals with 3 judges which deal with ordinary civil and commercial cases; Summary Tribunals presided over by a single judge which hear civil disputes in matters

up to the value of £E3,250, and criminal offences punishable by a fine or imprisonment of up to 3 years.

**Religion.** In 1986 about 90% of the population were Moslems, mostly of the Sunni sect, and about 7% Coptic Christians, the remainder being Roman Catholics, Protestants or Greek Orthodox, with a small number of Jews.

There are in Egypt large numbers of native Christians connected with the various Oriental Churches; of these, the largest and most influential are the Copts, who adopted Christianity in the 1st century. Their head is the Coptic Patriarch. There are 25 metropolitans and bishops in Egypt; 4 metropolitans for Ethiopia, Jerusalem, Khartoum and Omdurman, and 12 bishops in Ethiopia. Priests must be married before ordination, but celibacy is imposed on monks and high dignitaries. The Copts use the Diocletian (or Martyrs') calendar, which begins in A.D. 284.

**Education.** Primary education (6 years) was made free in 1944, secondary and technical education in 1950. Compulsory education is provided in primary schools (6 years).

In 1982–83 there were 503 nurseries and kindergartens with 84,539 pupils. In 1982–83 there were in basic education (6–15 years) 5,036,608 primary stage pupils in 12,013 schools and 1,769,768 preparatory stage pupils in 3,151 schools. In secondary education there were 517,998 general secondary pupils in 823 schools; 441,636 commercial secondary pupils in 639 schools; 208,468 industrial secondary pupils in 170 schools and 84,527 agricultural secondary pupils in 65 schools. Ninety-two teacher training schools had 63,429 pupils and 144 rehabilitation schools had 8,215 pupils.

El Azhar institutes educate students who join the faculties of El Azhar University after graduation. In 1982–83, 1,287 institutes had 308,370 students.

Government experimental language schools, which teach in foreign languages, had 5,000 nursery and kindergarten pupils in 1982–83, and 2,700 primary stage pupils in 1983–84.

Higher education: In 1982, there were 64,870 students in 17 higher commercial institutes and 22,341 students in 16 industrial institutions.

There were 11 universities in Egypt (apart from El Azhar University), with 558,527 students and 74,945 graduates in 1980–81. El Azhar University had 65,451 students and 5,346 graduates in 1980–81.

**Health.** In 1983–84 there were about 73,300 doctors and 85,350 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Egypt in Great Britain (26 South St., London, W1Y 8EL)

*Ambassador:* Mohamed I. Shaker (accredited 27 Oct. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Egypt (Ahmed Ragheb St., Garden City, Cairo)

*Ambassador:* W. J. Adams, CMG.

Of Egypt in the USA (2310 Decatur Pl., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Abdel Raouf El-Ridy.

Of the USA in Egypt (5 Sharia Latin America, Cairo)

*Ambassador:* Frank G. Wisner.

Of Egypt to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Abdel Halim Badawi.

## Further Reading

*The Egyptian Almanac.* Annual

*Le Mondain Egyptien (Who's Who).* Cairo. Annual

Aliboni, R., (et al) *Egypt's Economic Potential.* London, 1984

Ansari, H., *Egypt: The Stalled Society.* New York, 1986

Hart, V., *Modern Egypt.* Cairo, 1984

Heikal, M., *Autumn of Fury: Assassination of Sadat.* London, 1983

Hopwood, D., *Egypt: Politics and Society 1945–1981.* London, 1982

Kepel, G., *Muslim Extremism in Egypt.* Univ. of California Press, 1986

McDermott, A., *Egypt: From Nasser to Mubarak.* London, 1988

Makar, R. N., *Egypt.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Waterbury, J., *The Egypt of Nasser and Sadat.* Princeton Univ. Press, 1983

# EL SALVADOR

*Capital:* San Salvador

*Population:* 5.48m. (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$820 (1986)

## República de El Salvador

**HISTORY.** In 1839 the Central American Federation, which had comprised the states of Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras, Nicaragua and Costa Rica, was dissolved, and El Salvador declared itself formally an independent republic in 1841.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** El Salvador is the smallest and most densely populated (256 inhabitants per sq. km) of the Central American states. Its area (including 247 sq. km of inland lakes) is estimated at 21,393 sq. km (8,236 sq. miles) with population estimate (1985) 5.48m.

The republic is divided into 14 departments, each under an appointed governor. Their areas and populations in 1981 were:

<i>Department</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1981</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>1984</i>
Ahuachapán	1,281	241,323	Ahuachapán	20,153
Sonsonate	1,133	321,989	Sonsonate	47,489
Santa Ana	1,829	445,462	Santa Ana	135,186
La Libertad	1,650	388,538	Nueva San Salvador	52,226
San Salvador	892	979,683	San Salvador	452,614
Chalatenango	2,507	235,757	Chalatenango	28,675
Cuscatlán	766	203,978	Cojutepeque	31,108
La Paz	1,155	249,635	Zacatecoluca	25,650
San Vicente	1,175	206,959	San Vicente	26,461
Cabañas	1,075	179,909	Sensuntepeque	50,448
Usulután	1,780	399,912	Usulután	31,349
San Miguel	2,532	434,047	San Miguel	86,722
Morazán	1,364	215,163	San Francisco	13,015
La Unión	1,738	309,879	La Unión	27,186

† 1980.

**CLIMATE.** Despite its proximity to the equator, the climate is warm rather than hot and nights are cool inland. Light rains occur in the dry season from Nov. to April while the rest of the year has heavy rains, especially on the coastal plain. San Salvador. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 71" (1,775 mm). San Miguel. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 68" (1,700 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was enacted in Dec. 1983. The Executive Power is vested in a President elected for a non-renewable term of 5 years, with Ministers and Under-Secretaries appointed by him. The Legislative power is an Assembly of 60 members elected by universal suffrage and proportional representation for a term of 3 years. The judicial power is vested in a Supreme Court, of a President and 9 magistrates elected by the Legislative Assembly for renewable terms of 3 years; and subordinate courts. For governments, 1961–79 *see* STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK 1982–83, p. 436.

Presidential elections were held in March 1989 (*see* Addenda).

*President:* José Napoleon Duarte (elected May 1984).

In Oct. 1988 the Cabinet was composed as follows:

*Vice-President:* Rodolfo Castillo Claramont. *Foreign Affairs:* Dr Ricardo Acevedo Peralta. *Planning and Co-ordination of Economic and Social Development:* Remo Bardi. *Interior:* Dr Edgar Ernesto Belloso. *Justice:* Dr Julio Alfredo Samayoa. *Finance:* Ricardo J. López. *Foreign Trade:* Dr Ricardo González Camacho. *Economics:* Dr Ricardo Perdomo. *Education:* Professor Carlos Cruz Avalos. *Defence and Public Safety:* Carlos Eugenio Vides Casanova. *Labour and*



*Social Security:* Dr Lazaro Tadeo Bernal Lizama. *Public Health and Social Welfare:* Dr Benjamín Valdez H. *Agriculture and Livestock:* Dr José Antonio Morales Ehrlich. *Works:* Luis Lopez Cerón.

*National flag:* Blue, white, blue (horizontal); the white stripe charged with the arms of the republic.

*National anthem:* Saludemos la patria orgullosos (words by J. J. Cañas; tune by J. Aberle).

**DEFENCE.** There is selective national service for 2 years.

**Army.** The Army comprises 6 infantry brigades, 1 mechanized cavalry regiment, 1 artillery brigade, 1 engineer, 1 anti-aircraft, 1 parachute and 6 counter-insurgency battalions. Equipment includes 12 AMX-13 light tanks and 10 AML-90 armoured cars. Strength was (1989) 39,000. There are also National Guard, National Police and Treasury Police, paramilitary units, numbering (1989) about 12,000 and a territorial civil defence force of up to 12,000.

**Navy.** The Navy includes 3 patrol boats, 1 modern French-built tug, 6 cutters and 25 service launches. Personnel in 1989 totalled 1,000 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force underwent a major re-equipment programme in 1974–75, with most aircraft coming from Israel and US aid for transport units, but lost 18 aircraft in a guerrilla attack in Jan. 1982. Counter-insurgency equipment includes 8 A-37B and 6 Magister attack aircraft, 3 armed C-47 transports and 4 Hughes 500MD helicopters. Other aircraft are 6 C-47, 3 Arava, 1 DC-6 and 2 C-123 transports, 6 Cessna O-2 patrol aircraft, plus 3 Lamas, 3 Alouette III and 40 UH-1H helicopters. Training types include about 15 piston-engined T-41Cs, T-6s and T-34s. Strength totalled about 2,000 personnel in 1989.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** El Salvador is a member of UN, CACM and OAS.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The development plan 1985–89 envisages investment of C6,294m.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for fiscal years ending 31 Dec., in 1,000 colones:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Revenue	1,376,337	1,740,424	1,730,899	1,723,333	2,817,730	2,391,010
Expenditure	1,606,335	1,757,600	1,864,699	1,847,065	2,685,009	2,276,052

External debt amounted to US\$1,650m. in 1983.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *colón* (C) of 100 *centavos*. The *colón* (C) is issued in denominations of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25 and 100 *colones*; 25 and 50 *centavos* and 1 *colón* (silver); 1, 2, 5 and 10 *centavos* (copper–nickel and copper–zinc); 1 centavo (nickel). In March 1989, £1 = C8.62; US\$1 = C5.01.

**Banking.** There are 10 native commercial banks, including the Banco Salvadoreño (paid-up capital, 6m. colones). The Citibank Bank of America and the Bank of Santander and Panama S. A. are the only foreign institutions. The Central Reserve Bank of El Salvador, constructed in 1934 out of the Banco Agrícola Comercial, was nationalized on 20 April 1961.

**Weights and Measures.** On 1 Jan. 1886 the metric system was made obligatory. But other units are still commonly in use, of which the principal are as follows: *Libra* = 1.014 lb. av.; *quintal* = 101.4 lb. av.; *arroba* = 25.35 lb. av.; *fanega* = 1.5745 bushels.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** A 200 ft high dam completed in 1954 was constructed across the (un-navigable) Lempa River, 35 miles north-east of San Salvador, with an annual capa-

city of 344m. kwh. The San Lorenzo dam, completed in 1983, has an annual capacity of 722m. kwh. Production in 1986, 1,710m. kwh.; consumption (1984), 1,415m. kwh. Supply 120 and 240 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Production of petroleum derivatives during 1984 totalled C608,473,000.

**Minerals.** The mineral output of the republic is now negligible, but the Ministry of Public Works has recently started to investigate 2 new silver mines in the department of Morazán.

**Agriculture.** El Salvador is predominantly agricultural; 32.5% of its total area is used for crops and 30.2% for pasture. Area devoted to coffee (1982-83) was about 516,615 acres, entirely owned by nationals. In 1981, 35.5% of the working population was engaged in farming.

Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Coffee, 141; seed cotton, 55; maize, 391; dry beans, 50; rice, 53; sorghum, 135; sugar-cane, 3,175. A little rubber is exported.

Livestock (1987): 1,024,000 cattle, 398,000 pigs, 5,000 sheep, 15,000 goats.

**Forestry.** In the national forests are found dye woods and such woods as mahogany, cedar and walnut. Balsam trees also abound; El Salvador is the world's principal source of this medicinal gum. Production, 1981, C36,148,000.

**Fisheries.** In 1983, fish products were valued at C82.2m. Total catch 1983, 7,600 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Total production was valued at C4,579,322m. in 1984, which included (in 1,000 colones): Food, C1,827,983; textiles, C273,573; chemicals, C310,922; footwear and clothing, C218,287; beverages, C352,224.

**Commerce.** The imports (including parcels post) and exports have been as follows in calendar years in 1,000 colones:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	2,404,269	2,461,458	2,141,852	2,228,700	2,443,575	2,403,444
Exports	2,683,953	1,991,940	1,748,616	1,840,800	1,793,432	1,697,420

Of total exports (1984), coffee furnished about 34.6% by weight and 61.7% by value. The coffee is of the 'mild' variety; it is sold in bags of 60 kg, but trade statistics use a bag of 69 kg.

In 1985 US took 811,515,000 colones of exports and furnished 813,420,000 colones of the imports. The chief imports in 1984 were manufactured goods (26.9%), chemical and pharmaceutical products (23%), non-edible crude materials, mainly crude oil (17.2%), electric machinery, tools and appliances and transport equipment (15.4%). The other Central American Republics, the Federal Republic of Germany, Japan, Canada, Mexico, Spain, France and the Netherlands are also important trading partners.

Total trade between El Salvador and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,551	1,662	1,323	1,890	2,961
Exports and re-exports from UK	7,589	8,507	6,917	9,595	8,186

**Tourism.** There were 134,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 there were 12,164 km of national roads in the republic, including 1,706 km of main paved roads; 3,421 km main asphalted roads; other roads, 7,038 km. Motor vehicles registered, 1983, 150,079.

**Railways.** All railways (602 km) came under the control of National Railways of El Salvador (*Fenadesal*) in 1975. Lines run from Acajutla to San Salvador; Cutuco to San Salvador; between San Salvador and Santa Ana, San Miguel and Sonsonate;

there is also a link to the Guatemalan system. Total railway traffic in 1986 was 51,000 tonnes of freight and 524,000 passengers.

**Aviation.** The airport at Ilopango, 8 km from San Salvador, now a military airport, and the new international airport at Cuscatlán, 40 km from San Salvador, opened in 1979. In 1985, 170,510 passengers arrived and 179,827 departed.

**Shipping.** The principal ports are La Unión, La Libertad and Acajutla, all on the Pacific. Passengers (and some freight) use the Guatemalan port of Puerto Barrios on the Atlantic, reaching El Salvador by rail or road.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The telephone and telegraph systems are government-owned; the radio-telephone systems are partly private, partly government-owned. Telephone instruments, 1983, 82,158. There were (1986) over 50 radio stations. Radio El Salvador is state-owned. There were (1988) 4 commercial television channels and 2 educational channels sponsored by the Ministry of Education.

**Cinemas** (1976). Cinemas numbered 65.

**Newspapers** (1987). There are 4 daily newspapers in San Salvador and 1 in Santa Ana.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Supreme Court of Justice, courts of first and second instance, besides minor tribunals. Magistrates of the Supreme Court and courts of second instance are elected by the Legislative Assembly for a renewable 3-year term.

An anti-Communist law, effective 29 Sept. 1962, has made the propagation of totalitarian or Communist doctrines an offence punishable by imprisonment; supplementary offences, contrary to democratic principles, are punished by prison terms of from 3 to 7 years.

**Religion.** The dominant religion is Roman Catholicism. Under the 1962 Constitution churches are exempted from the property tax; the Catholic Church is recognized as a legal person, and other churches are entitled to secure similar recognition. There is an archbishop in San Salvador and bishops at Santa Ana, San Miguel, San Vicente, Santiago de María, Usulután, Sonsonate and Zacatecoluca.

**Education.** Education is free and obligatory. In 1929 the State took over control of all schools, public and private, but the provision that the teaching in government schools must be wholly secular was removed in 1945.

In 1985 there were 62,500 pupils in nursery schools, 1,075,600 in secondary schools, 93,900 students at universities and polytechnics and (1983) 42,700 students receiving adult education.

**Social Welfare.** The Social Security Institute now administers the sickness, old age and death insurance, covering industrial workers and employees earning up to ₡700 a month. Employees in other private institutions with salaries over this amount are included but are excluded from the medical and hospital benefits.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of El Salvador in Great Britain (62 Welbeck St., London, W1)

*Ambassador:* Dr Mauricio Rosales-Rivera (accredited 26 Feb. 1986).

Of Great Britain in El Salvador

*Ambassador:* D. Joy, CBE (resides in Tegucigalpa).

Of El Salvador in the USA (2308 California St., NW, Washington, DC., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Dr Ernesto Rivas-Gallont.

Of the USA in El Salvador (25 Ave. Norte, Colonia Dueñas, San Salvador)

*Ambassador:* William Waller.

Of El Salvador to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Roberto Meza.



### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Dirección General de Estadística y Censos (Villa Fermina, Calle Arce, San Salvador) dates from 1937. *Director General:* Lieut.-Col. José Castro Meléndez. Its publications include *Anuario Estadístico*. Annual from 1911.—*Boletín Estadístico*. Quarterly.—*El Salvador en Gráficas*. Annual.—*Atlas Censal de El Salvador*. 1955 only.—*Revista Mensual*, Banco Central de Reserva de El Salvador.

Angel Gallardo, M., *Cuatro Constituciones Federales de Centro América y Las Constituciones Políticas de El Salvador*. San Salvador, 1945

Armstrong, R. and Shenk, J., *El Salvador: The Face of Revolution*. London, 1982

Baloyra, E. A., *El Salvador in Transition*. Univ. of North Carolina Press, 1982

Bevan, J., *El Salvador. Education and Repression*. London, 1981

Browning, D., *El Salvador: Landscape and Society*. OUP, 1971

Devire, F. J., *El Salvador: Embassy under Attack*. New York, 1981

Didion, J., *Salvador*. London, 1983

Erdozain, P., *Archbishop Romero: Martyr of El Salvador*. Guildford, 1981

Montgomery, T.S., *Revolution in El Salvador: Origins and Evolution*. Boulder, 1982

North, L., *Bitter Grounds: Roots of Revolt in El Salvador*. London, 1981

Schmidt, S. W., *El Salvador: America's Next Vietnam*. Salisbury (N.C.), 1983

Woodward, R. L., *El Salvador*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

# EQUATORIAL GUINEA

*Capital:* Malabo  
*Population:* 336,000 (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$420 (1983)

## República de Guinea Ecuatorial

**HISTORY.** Equatorial Guinea was a Spanish colony (Territorios Españoles del Golfo de Guinea) until 1 April 1960, the territory was then divided into two Spanish provinces with a status comparable to the metropolitan provinces until 20 Dec. 1963, when they were re-joined as an autonomous Equatorial Region. It became an independent Republic on 12 Oct. 1968 as a federation of the two provinces, and a unitary state was established on 4 Aug. 1973. The first President, Francisco Macías Nguema, was declared President-for-Life on 14 July 1972, but was overthrown by a military *coup* on 3 Aug. 1979. A Supreme Military Council then created was the sole political body until constitutional rule was resumed on 12 Oct. 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The mainland part of Equatorial Guinea is bounded north by Cameroon, east and south by Gabon, and west by the Gulf of Guinea in which lie the islands of Bioko (formerly Macías Nguema, formerly Fernando Póo) and Annobón (called Pagalu from 1973 to 1979). The total area is 28,051 sq. km (10,831 sq. miles) and the population at the 1983 census was 300,000. Estimate (1988) 336,000. Another 110,000 are estimated to remain in exile abroad.

The 7 provinces are grouped into 3 regions with areas and populations as follows:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1983</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>
Annobón	17	2,006	Palé
Bioko Norte	776	46,221	Malabo
Bioko Sur	1,241	10,969	Luba
Centro Sur	9,931	52,393	Kogo
Kié-Ntem	3,943	70,202	Mikomeseng
Litoral	6,665 <sup>1</sup>	66,370	Bata
Wele-Nzas	5,478	51,839	Mongomo

<sup>1</sup> Including the adjacent islets of Corisco, Elobey Grande and Elobey Chico (17 sq. km).

In 1986 the largest towns were Bata (17,000) and the capital Malabo (10,000).

The main ethnic group on the mainland (Río Muni) is the Fang; there are several minority groups along the coast and adjacent islets. On Bioko the indigenous inhabitants (Bubis) constitute 60% of the population there, the balance being mainly Fang and coast people from Río Muni; the formerly numerous immigrant workers from Nigeria and Cameroon have mostly been repatriated. On Annobón the indigenous inhabitants are the descendents of Portuguese slaves and still speak a Portuguese patois. The official language is Spanish.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is equatorial, with alternate wet and dry seasons. In Río Muni, the wet season lasts from Dec. to Feb.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was approved in Aug. 1982 by 95% of the votes cast in a plebiscite, which also confirmed the President in office for a further 7-year term. It provides for an 11-member Council of State, and for a 41-member House of Representatives of the People, the latter being directly elected on 28 Aug. 1983 for a 5-year term and re-elected on 10 July 1988. The President appoints and leads a Council of Ministers.

On 12 Oct. 1987 a single new political party was formed as the *Partido Democrático de Guinea Ecuatorial*.

*President and Minister of Defence, Security and Political Affairs:* Col. Teodoro Mbasogo Obiang Nguema (from 3 Aug. 1979).

*Prime Minister, Health:* Capt. Cristino Seriche Bioko Malabo.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Territorial Administration (Interior) and National Security:* Isidoro Eyi Monsui Andeme. *Foreign Affairs:* Marcelino Nguema Ongueme.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, white, red; a blue triangle based on the hoist; in the centre the national arms.

**DEFENCE.** Under President Macías the *Guardia Nacional* consisted mainly of Fang soldiers with Cuban and Chinese military advisers. Total active strength (1989) of 1,400 with some 2,000 para-military personnel. Since the 1979 *coup*, Moroccan troops and Spanish military and police personnel have replaced Soviet bloc advisers.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Equatorial Guinea is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1982 budget envisaged income at 2,980m. Bikuele and expenditure at 4,038m. Bikuele.

**Currency.** On 2 Jan. 1985 the country joined the franc zone and the *Ekuele* was replaced by the *franc CFA* with a parity value of 50 *francs CFA* to 1 French franc. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100 and 500 *francs CFA*, and banknotes of 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *francs CFA*. In March 1989, £1 = 541.63 *francs CFA*; US\$1 = 314.72 *francs CFA*.

**Banking.** The *Banque des Etats de l'Afrique Centrale* became the bank of issue in Jan. 1985. There are 2 commercial banks.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 17m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The chief products are cocoa (75,000 hectares in 1986), coffee (18,000 hectares) and wood; in 1984 production was about 10,000 tonnes of cocoa, most of it high-grade exported to Spain and the US. Coffee, of mediocre quality, is chiefly a Fang product. Production (1986) of coffee 7,000 tonnes; palm oil, 7,000; palm kernels, 2,900; bananas, 19,000. Food crops include cassava, 55,000; sweet potatoes, 35,000. Plantations in the hinterland have been abandoned by their Spanish owners and except for cocoa, commercial agriculture is under serious difficulties.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 4,000; sheep, 36,000; goats, 8,000.

**Forestry.** Wood was almost entirely exported from Río Muni to Spain and the Federal Republic of Germany. Production: 1981, 465,000 cu. metres. Since 1979 the lumber industry has resumed activity but there was (1981) a shortage of labour.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 2,500 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Bioko has very few industries. Río Muni has no industry except lumbering. Post-independence political conditions have not been conducive to private investment.

**Commerce.** In 1981 imports amounted to 7,982m. Bikuele (of which 80% came from Spain) and exports to 2,502m. Bikuele (of which Spain took 87%). Cocoa amounted to 71% of all exports and timber to 24%.



Total trade between Equatorial Guinea and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	559	...	1	...	...
Exports and re-exports from UK	553	191	633	1,572	1,029

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Length (1982) 2,760 km of which 330 km surfaced.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Malabo and Bata. The line Madrid–Malabo–Bata is subsidized by Spain. Links with Douala (from Malabo) and Libreville (Gabon) exist.

**Shipping.** Malabo is the main port. The other ports are Luba, formerly San Carlos (bananas, cocoa) in Bioko and Bata, Kogo and Mbini (wood) in Río Muni. A new harbour in Bata has been completed. In 1981 47,731 tonnes were unloaded and 50,843 loaded.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In Feb. 1989 the radio stations began broadcasting in French in addition to Spanish. Estimated number of telephones (1969), 1,451. In 1984 there were 90,000 radio and 2,100 TV receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Constitution guarantees an independent judiciary. The Supreme Tribunal is the highest court of appeal and is located at Malabo. There are Courts of First Instance and Courts of Appeal at Malabo and Bata.

**Religion.** The population of Equatorial Guinea is nominally Roman Catholic with influential Protestant groups in Malabo and Río Muni. By order of the President most churches were closed in 1975 and in June 1978 the Roman Catholic Church was banned. Since 1979, religious services have been restored.

**Education.** There were in 1981 about 40,110 pupils and 647 teachers in 511 primary schools and 3,013 pupils and 288 teachers in 14 secondary schools.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Equatorial Guinea in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Equatorial Guinea

*Ambassador:* M. Reith (resides at Yaoundé).

Of the USA in Equatorial Guinea (Calle de Los Ministros, Malabo)

*Ambassador:* Francis S. Ruddy.

Of Equatorial Guinea to the USA and the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Florencio Maye Ela.

## Further Reading

*Atlas Historico y Geográfico de Africa Española.* Madrid, 1955

*Plan de Desarrollo Económico de la Guinea Ecuatorial.* Presidencia del Gobierno. Madrid, 1963

Berman, S., *Spanish Guinea: An Annotated Bibliography.* Microfilm Service, Catholic University. Washington, D.C. 1961

Liniger-Goumaz, M., *La Guinée équatoriale un pays méconnu.* Paris, 1980.—*Connaître la Guinée Equatoriale.* Paris, 1986

Pélissier, R., *Les Territoires espagnols d'Afrique.* Paris, 1963.—*Los territorios españoles de Africa.* Madrid, 1964.—*Etudes Hispano-Guinéennes.* Orgeval, 1969

# ETHIOPIA

*Capital:* Addis Ababa

*Population:* 46m. (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$120 (1986)

## Hebretesebawit Ityopia

**HISTORY.** The ancient empire of Ethiopia has its legendary origin in the meeting of King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba. Historically, the empire developed in the centuries before and after the birth of Christ, at Aksum in the north, as a result of Semitic immigration from South Arabia. The immigrants imposed their language and culture on a basic Hamitic stock. Ethiopia's subsequent history is one of sporadic expansion southwards and eastwards, checked from the 16th to early 19th centuries by devastating wars with Moslems and Gallas. Modern Ethiopia dates from the reign of the Emperor Theodore (1855-68).

Menelik II (1889-1913) defeated the Italians in 1896 and thereby safeguarded the empire's independence in the scramble for Africa. By successful campaigns in neighbouring kingdoms within Ethiopia (Jimma, Kaffa, Harar, etc.) he united the country under his rule and created the empire as it is today.

In 1936 Ethiopia was conquered by the Italians, who were in turn defeated by the Allied forces in 1941 when the Emperor returned.

The former Italian colony of Eritrea, from 1941 under British military administration, was in accordance with a resolution of the General Assembly of the UN, dated 2 Dec. 1950, handed over to Ethiopia on 15 Sept. 1952. Eritrea thereby became an autonomous unit within the federation of Ethiopia and Eritrea.

This federation became a unitary state on 14 Nov. 1962 when Eritrea was fully integrated with Ethiopia although a secessionist movement has also been active.

A provisional military government assumed power on 12 Sept. 1974 and deposed the Emperor. On 24 Nov. 1974 the Provisional Military Government announced that on 23 Nov. it had executed 60 former military and civilian leaders including Gen. Aman Andom who was Chairman of the Provisional Military Administrative Council.

On 3 Feb. 1977, Brig.-Gen. Teferi Bante, the Chairman of PMAC and 6 other members of the ruling military council were killed and Lieut.-Col. Mengistu Haile Mariam became Chairman.

In mid-1977 Somalia invaded Ethiopia and took control of the Ogaden region. After an offensive mounted with strong USSR and Cuban support the area was recaptured and in March Somalia withdrew all troops from the area. Control was re-established by Ethiopia later in 1978 and nationalist guerrillas were pushed back. Sporadic fighting continued in the Ogaden and along the border. Talks about the normalization between Ethiopia and Somalia commenced in 1986 and were concluded in April 1988 as a result of which troops were withdrawn from the border areas and prisoners of war exchanged.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Ethiopia is bounded north-east by the Red Sea, east by Djibouti and Somalia, south by Kenya and west by Sudan. It has a total area of 1,221,900 sq. km (471,800 sq. miles). The first census was carried out in 1984: Population (preliminary) 42,019,418. Estimate (1986) 46m. There were 265,000 refugees in Ethiopia in Jan. 1988.

The dominant race of Ethiopia, the Amhara, inhabit the central Ethiopian highlands. To the north of them are the Tigréans, akin to the Amhara and belonging to the same Christian church, but speaking a different, though related, language. Both these races are of mixed Hamitic and Semitic origin, and further mixed by inter-marriage with Oromo (Galla) and other races. The Oromos, some of whom are Christian, some Moslem and some pagan, comprise about 40% of the entire population, and are a pastoral and agricultural people of Hamitic origin. Somalis,

another Hamitic race, inhabit the south-east of Ethiopia, in particular the Ogaden desert region. These like the closely related Afar people, are Moslem. The Afar stretch northwards from Wollo region into Eritrea.

<i>Region</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population May, 1984</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>Population May 1984</i>
Addis Ababa	218	1,412,575	—	—
Arussi	23,500	1,662,233	Assela	36,720
Bale	124,600	1,006,491	Goba	22,963
Eritrea	117,600	2,614,700	Asmara	275,385
Gemu Gofa	39,500	1,248,034	Arba Minch	23,030
Gojjam	61,600	3,244,882	Debre Markos	39,808
Gondar (Begemdir)	74,200	2,905,362	Gondar	68,958
Hararge	259,700	4,151,706	Harar	62,160
Illubabor	47,400	963,327	Mattu	12,491
Kefa	54,600	2,450,369	Jimma	60,992
Shoa	85,200	8,090,565	—	—
Sidamo	117,300	3,790,579	Awassa	36,169
Tigre	65,900	2,409,700	Mekele	61,583
Wollega	71,200	2,369,677	Lekemti	28,824
Wollo	79,400	3,609,918	Dessie	68,848

Other large towns (population, May 1984): Dire Dawa, in Hararge, 98,104; Nazret, in Shoa, 76,284; Bahr Dar, 54,800; Debre Zeit, 51,143.

*Local Government.* From Sept. 1987 the country was divided into 24 administrative and 5 autonomous regions. Each region governed by a regional *shengo*.

**CLIMATE.** The wide range of latitude produces many climatic variations between the high, temperate plateaus and the hot, humid lowlands. The main rainy season lasts from June to Aug., with light rains from Feb. to April, but the country is very vulnerable to drought. Addis Ababa. Jan. 59°F (15°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 50" (1,237 mm). Harar. Jan. 65°F (18.3°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 35" (897 mm). Massawa. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 94°F (34.4°C). Annual rainfall 8" (193 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The People's Democratic Republic of Ethiopia was inaugurated on 10 Sept. 1987 at the first meeting of the newly elected *Shengo* (National Assembly). A new Constitution, on a Marxist model, was approved on 1 Feb. 1987 in a referendum. On 14 June 1987 Ethiopia held its first parliamentary election when 813 members belonging to the single political party the Workers' Party of Ethiopia were elected to the new civilian legislature.

*President:* Mengistu Haile Mariam.

*Vice President:* Fisseha Desta.

*Prime Minister:* Fikre-Selassie Wogderess.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, yellow and red.

*National anthem:* Ityopya, Ityopia Kidemi (tune by Daniel Yohannes, 1975).

**DEFENCE.** Ethiopia's revolutionary rulers have moved away from US military assistance since they came to power and from 1977 have relied on USSR for most of their military aid.

Selective conscription was introduced in 1983 for a period of 30 months.

**Army.** The Army, comprises 22 infantry divisions with some 32 tank battalions, 8 para-commando brigades, 37 artillery battalions and 12 air defence battalions. Equipment includes 600 T-54/-55, 20 T-34 and 30 M-47 tanks. Strength (1989) 313,000 including a People's Militia.

**Navy.** The Navy consists of 2 *ex*-Soviet light frigates, 4 *ex*-Soviet fast missile boats, 2 *ex*-Soviet fast torpedo boats, 1 hydrofoil fast attack craft, 1 training ship (1,768 tons; *ex*-US seaplane tender), 1 *ex*-Netherlands coastal minesweeper, 1 patrol craft



(ex-US coastguard motor gunboat), 3 patrol boats, 3 ex-Soviet coastal cutters, 4 harbour defence craft, 2 medium landing ships, 2 landing craft and 4 minor landing craft. The Naval Base and College are at Massawa.

Personnel in 1989 totalled 4,000 officers and men. Soviet advisers remained embarked in the 6 attack craft acquired until Ethiopian naval officers and ratings had sufficient experience to operate independently the missiles and torpedoes.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, trained originally by Swedish and American personnel, but now operating aircraft of Soviet origin, has its headquarters at Debre Zeit, near Addis Ababa. It includes a training school and a central workshop. Fighter equipment is understood to comprise 140 MiG-17s, MiG-21s and MiG-23s. There is a squadron of Mi-24 helicopter gunships, and a transport squadron equipped with An-12s, and An-26s. Training aircraft include two-seat MiG-21s and L-39 jet basic trainers. More than 30 Mi-8 helicopters are in service. Most equipment surviving from the 1960s and '70s (such as F-5 fighters, Canberra bombers and US-built transports) is in storage. However since 1984 India has delivered 10 Chetak (Alouette III) helicopters and Italy 21 SF-260TP turboprop trainers. Personnel, (1989) 10,000 officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Ethiopia is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The economy is centrally planned and organized. GDP growth 1974-85 averaged 1.2%.

**Budget.** Revenue for 1985-86 was EB4,356m. and expenditure EB4,392m.

Of the estimated revenue in 1985-86, EB1,620m. came from taxes.

**Currency.** The Ethiopian *birr*, divided into 100 cents, is the unit of currency; it is based on 5.52 grains of fine gold. It consists of notes of EB1, 2, 10, 50 and 100 denominations, and bronze 1-, 5-, 10-, 25- and 50-cent coins. In March 1989 *Birr* 3.55 = £1 sterling; *Birr* 2.06 = US\$1.

**Banking.** The State Bank is the National Bank of Ethiopia. The Investment Bank of Ethiopia, was established in 1963 with a capital of EB10m., of which the Government held the majority of shares. In Sept. 1965 it became the Ethiopian Investment Corporation, which is a substantial shareholder in a number of industrial and other ventures. There is also the Agricultural and Industrial Development Bank, SC.

On 1 Jan. 1975 the Government nationalized all banks, mortgage and insurance companies.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is officially in use. Traditional weights and measures vary considerably in the various provinces: the principal ones are: *Frasilla* = approximately 37½ lb.; *gasha*, the principal unit of land measure, which is normally about 100 acres but can vary between 80 and 300 acres, depending on the quality of the land.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1986 totalled 722m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz. Over 92% of energy supply is from firewood, charcoal, dung and crop residues. The main power source is hydro-electricity although imported fuel supplies 22% of public power systems.

**Oil.** A Russian built state-owned oil refinery at Assab came on stream in 1967 with a capacity of 750,000 tonnes of crude per annum.

**Minerals.** Ethiopia has little proved mineral wealth. Salt is produced mainly in Eritrea, while a placer goldmine is worked by the Government of Adola in the south. Gold production, in 1985-86, was 923 kg. Small quantities of other minerals are produced including platinum.

**Agriculture.** Coffee is by far the most important source of rural income accounting for 70% of foreign earnings in 1982. Harari coffee (long berry Mocha) is cultivated in the east.

Teff (*Eragrostis abyssinica*) is the principal food grain, followed by barley, wheat, maize and durra. Pulses and oilseeds are imported for local consumption and export. Cane sugar is an important crop.

Production (1986 in 1,000 tonnes): Maize, 1,500; sorghum, 1,100; barley, 1,000; pulses, 945.

Livestock (1987): 30m. cattle, 23.2m. sheep, 17.3m. goats; smaller numbers of donkeys, horses, mules and camels. Hides and skins and butter (ghee) are important for home consumption and export. Sheep, cattle and chickens are the main providers of meat. In 1986 79.3% of the population were engaged in agriculture, producing 44.7% of GDP. The continuing drought has had a devastating effect on production.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 3,900 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial output is controlled by the State and most public industrial enterprises are controlled by the Ministry of Industry. Most individual activity is centred around Addis Ababa and Asmara, although Asmara has been severely hit by the civil war in Eritrea.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports (in EBI m.) for 4 years.

	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	1,529	1,810	1,601	1,734
Exports	835	863	866	689

Total trade between Ethiopia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	13,733	13,805	22,343	12,875	8,451
Exports and re-exports from UK	63,434	66,089	50,049	46,146	47,661

**Tourism.** There were 59,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1989) 3,508 km of asphalt roads and 9,687 km of rural and gravel roads.

Motor vehicles (1984): Cars, 41,300; lorries and trucks, 8,800; buses, 3,041.

**Railways.** The former Franco-Ethiopian Railway Co. (782 km, metre-gauge) became the Ethiopian-Djibouti Railway Corp. in 1981, when the remaining France-owned shares were bought out. In 1986 the railway carried 370,000 tonnes of freight and 1m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Ethiopian Air Lines, formed in 1946, carried 242,924 passengers in 1980 and 8,613 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** A state shipping line was established in 1964. The ports unloaded 1.75m. tonnes in 1982 and loaded 547,000.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The postal system serves 301 offices, mainly by air-mail. All the main centres are connected with Addis Ababa by telephone or radio telegraph. International telephone services are available at certain hours to most countries in Europe, North America and India. Number of telephones (1986), 162,000.

The Ethiopian Broadcasting Service makes sound broadcasts on the medium and short waves in English, Amharic and in the vernacular languages spoken within the country. There were about 45,000 television sets and 2m. radio receivers in 1986.

**Cinemas** (1974). There were 31 cinemas, with seating capacity of about 25,600.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 3 government-controlled daily newspapers with a combined circulation of about 47,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The legal system is said to be based on the Justinian Code. A new penal code came into force in 1958 and Special Penal Law in 1974. Codes of criminal procedure, civil, commercial and maritime codes have since been promulgated.

The extra-territorial rights formerly enjoyed by foreigners have been abolished, but any person accused in an Ethiopian court has the right to have his case transferred to the High Court, provided he asks for this before any evidence has been taken in the court of first instance.

Provincial and district courts have been established, and High Court judges visit the provincial courts on circuit. The Supreme Court at Addis Ababa is presided over by the Chief Justice.

**Religion.** About 45% of the population are Moslem and 40% Christian, mainly belonging to the Ethiopian Orthodox Church.

**Education.** Primary education commences at 7 years and continues with optional secondary education at 13 years. In the academic year 1988–89 there were more than 2.5m. pupils in primary schools and in secondary schools there were 500,000 students. Higher education is co-ordinated under the National University, chartered in 1961; in 1979–80, there were 14,562 students. The University College, the Engineering, Building and Theological Colleges are in Addis Ababa, the Agricultural College in Harar and the Public Health College in Gondar.

**Health.** In 1977 there was one doctor for every 75,000 people.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Ethiopia in Great Britain (17 Prince's Gate, London, SW7 1PZ)

*Ambassador:* Ato Teferra Haile-Selassie (accredited 24 June 1985).

Of Great Britain in Ethiopia (Fikre Mariam Abatechan St., Addis Ababa)

*Ambassador:* Harold Walker, CMG.

Of Ethiopia in the USA (2134 Kalorama Rd., NW, Washington D.C., 20008)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Girma Amare.

Of the USA in Ethiopia (Entoto St., Addis Ababa)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* James R. Cheek.

Of Ethiopia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Tesfaye Tadesse.

## Further Reading

Clapham, C., *Transformation and Continuity in Revolutionary Ethiopia*. CUP, 1988

Halliday, F. and Molyneux, M., *The Ethiopian Revolution*. London, 1981

Hancock, G., *Ethiopia: The Challenge of Hunger*. London, 1985

Pool, D., *Eritrea: Africa's Longest War*. London, 1982

Schwab, P., *Ethiopia: Politics, Economics and Society*. Boulder, 1985.



# FALKLAND ISLANDS

Capital: Stanley  
Population: 1,916 (1986)

**HISTORY.** France established a settlement in 1764 and Britain a second settlement in 1765. In 1770 Spain bought out the French and drove off the British. This action on the part of Spain brought that country and Britain to the verge of war. The Spanish restored the settlement to the British in 1771, but the settlement was withdrawn on economic grounds in 1774. In 1806 Spanish rule was overthrown in Argentina, and the Argentine claimed to succeed Spain in the French and British settlements in 1820. The British objected and reclaimed their settlement in 1832 as a Crown Colony.

On 2 April 1982 Argentine forces invaded the Falkland Islands and the Governor was expelled. At a meeting of the UN Security Council, held on 3 April, the voting was 10 to 1 in favour of the resolution calling for Argentina to withdraw. Britain regained possession on 14–15 June after the Argentine surrendered.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Crown Colony is situated in the South Atlantic Ocean about 480 miles north-east of Cape Horn. The numerous islands cover 4,700 sq. miles. The main East Falkland Island, 2,610 sq. miles; the West Falkland, 2,090 sq. miles, including the adjacent small islands.

The population of the Falkland Islands at census 1986 was 1,916. The only town is Stanley, in East Falkland, with a population of just over 1,200. The population of the Falkland Islands is nearly all of British descent, with about 67% born in the islands. A large garrison of British servicemen was stationed near Stanley in 1987.

**CLIMATE.** A cool temperate climate, much affected by strong winds, particularly in spring. Stanley. Jan. 49°F (9.4°C), July 35°F (1.7°C). Annual rainfall 27" (681 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution came into force on 3 Oct. 1985. This incorporated a chapter protecting fundamental human rights and in the preamble recalled the provisions on the right of self-determination contained in international covenants.

Executive power is vested in the Governor who must consult the Executive Council except on urgent or trivial matters. He must consult the Commander British Forces on matters relating to defence and internal security (except police).

There is a Legislative Council consisting of 8 elected members and 2 *ex officio* members, the Chief Executive and Financial Secretary. Only elected members have a vote. The Commander British Forces has a right to attend and take part in its proceedings but has no vote. The Attorney General also has a similar right to take part in proceedings with the consent of the person presiding. The Governor presides over sittings. He also presides over sittings of the Executive Council which consists of 3 elected members (elected by and from the elected members of Legislative Council) and the Chief Executive and Financial Secretary (*ex officio*). The Commander British Forces and Attorney General have a right to attend but may not vote.

Offices in the Public Service are constituted by the Governor and he makes appointments and is responsible for discipline. The Constitution allows for the establishment of a public service commission.

*Governor:* W. H. Fullerton.

*Chief Executive:* D. G. P. Taylor.

*Financial Secretary:* J. H. Buckland-James.

*Attorney General:* D. G. Lang.

*Government Secretary:* C. F. Redston.

*Flag:* British Blue Ensign with arms of Colony on a white disc in the fly.

**DEFENCE.** Since 1982 the Islands have been defended by a large garrison of British servicemen. The Commander British Forces is responsible for all military matters in the Islands. He liaises with the Governor on civilian and political matters, and advises him on matters of defence and internal security, except police. In addition there is a local volunteer defence force.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in £ sterling) for fiscal years ending 30 June:

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88 <sup>1</sup>	1988-89 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	5,314,000	5,163,000	6,003,315	19,646,310	22,774,680	35,761,900
Expenditure	3,867,000	4,358,000	5,344,048	12,212,805	21,968,150	28,646,190

<sup>1</sup> Estimate

**Currency.** The Falkland £ is at parity with the £ sterling.

**Banking.** On 1 Dec. 1983 the government savings bank was dissolved, and all savings bank deposits were transferred to the Standard Chartered Bank, which has a branch in Stanley, and provides a full range of banking facilities.

**SHEEP FARMING.** Much of the Colony is divided into large sheep runs. Subdivision into smaller family units is actively being pursued. Wool is the principal product, but hides are exported. In 1988 there were 704,602 sheep, 5,969 cattle and 1,837 horses in the islands.

**DEVELOPMENT.** The economy was formerly based solely on agriculture, principally sheep farming with a little dairy farming for domestic requirements and crops for winter fodder. Since the establishment of a 150-mile interim conservation and management zone around the Islands and the consequent introduction, on 1 Feb. 1987, of a licensing regime for vessels fishing within the zone the economy has diversified and income from the associated fishing activities is now the largest source of revenue. The Falkland Islands Development Corporation was established by statute in June 1984 with the aim of encouraging economic development. The first projects assisted by the Corporation include inshore and offshore fisheries surveys to establish potential catch size and value, agricultural improvement schemes to encourage investment in the land, a wool spinning and knitting factory to process a portion of the islands' main product, a new dairy and a hydroponic market garden.

**TRADE.** Total trade between the Falkland Islands and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	7,434	14,286	8,148	4,209
Exports and re-exports from UK	9,502	11,135	7,353	9,037

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 27 km of made-up roads in and around Stanley and another 54 km of all-weather road between Stanley and Mount Pleasant Airport. Other settlements outside Stanley are linked by tracks, which are passable, with high axle clearing four-wheel drive vehicles in all but the worst weather. Work has recently recommenced on the construction of an all-weather track linking the Estancia Farm with the Stanley to Mount Pleasant Road which help towards opening up the north of East Falkland. The Government is also providing assistance to farms which wish to improve tracks and bridges to their immediate area.

**Aviation.** Air communication is currently *via* Ascension Island. A new airport, completed in 1986, is sited at Mount Pleasant on East Falkland. RAF Tristar aircraft operate a twice-weekly service between the Falklands and the UK. Internal air links are provided by the government operated air service, which carries pas-

sengers, mail, freight and medical patients between the settlements and Stanley on non-scheduled flights in Islander aircraft.

**Shipping.** A charter vessel calls 4 or 5 times a year to/from the UK. There is occasional direct communication with South Georgia, the South Sandwich Islands and the British Antarctic Territory by the Royal research ships *John Biscoe* and *Bransfield* and by the ice-patrol vessel HMS *Endurance*. Vessels of the Royal Fleet Auxiliary run regularly to South Georgia. Sea links with Chile and Uruguay began in 1989.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1987) 560. International direct dialling is available, as are international telex and facsimile links. Cable and Wireless plc signed a contract with the Falkland Islands Government in Sept. 1988 for the complete replacement of the telecommunications network with a modern system, which will allow confidential communications between the Camp (and Stanley) and the outside world for the first time. There is a government-operated broadcasting station at Stanley and television broadcasts began in 1988.

## JUSTICE, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court, and a Court of Appeal sits in the United Kingdom; appeals may go from that court to the judicial committee of the Privy Council. Judges have security of tenure and may only be removed for inability or misbehaviour on the advice of the judicial committee of the Privy Council. The senior resident judicial officer is the Senior Magistrate. There is an Attorney General and a Crown Counsel and a firm of solicitors established an office in Stanley in 1988.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 5 and 15 years. In Sept. 1988 there were 390 children receiving education in the Colony. Almost 75% attended schools in Stanley, the others were taught in settlement schools or by itinerant teachers. 5 children were being educated abroad.

**Health.** The Government Medical Department is responsible for all medical services to civilians. The Chief Medical Officer advises the Government on policy, and is chairman of the Board of Health responsible for public health. Medical services for the Islands are run from a temporary hospital; a new hospital and some sheltered accommodation was completed in March 1987. Services include all primary care for Stanley and the flying doctor service for outlying farm settlements.

**WILD LIFE.** The Falkland Islands are noted for their outstanding wild life, including penguin and seal. Four Nature Reserves have been declared and 18 Wild Animal and Bird Sanctuaries gazetted. The brown trout introduced between 1947 and 1952 can now be found in nearly all the rivers and there are good runs of sea-trout during spring and autumn.

## Further Reading

- Falkland Islands: The Facts.* HMSO, London, 1982  
*Falkland Islands Journal.* Stanley, from 1967  
*Falkland Islands Review* [Franks Report] Cmnd. 8787. HMSO, London, 1983  
*Falklands/Malvinas, Whose Crisis?* Latin American Bureau, London, 1982  
 Calvert, P., *The Falklands Crisis: The Rights and the Wrongs.* London, 1982  
 Hanrahan, B. and Fox, R., *'I counted them all out and I counted them all back'.* London, 1982  
 Hastings, M. and Jenkins, S., *The Battle for the Falklands.* London, 1983  
 Hoffmann, F. L. and Hoffmann, O. M., *Sovereignty in Dispute.* London, 1984  
 Phipps, C., *What Future for the Falklands?* London, 1977  
 Shackleton, E., *Falkland Islands Economic Study 1982.* HMSO, London, 1982  
 Strange, J. J., *The Falkland Islands.* 3rd ed. Newton Abbot, 1983.—*The Falkland Islands and their Natural History.* Newton Abbot, 1987



# FIJI

*Capital:* Suva

*Population:* 715,375 (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,810 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Fiji Islands were discovered by Tasman in 1643 and visited by Capt. Cook in 1774, but first recorded in detail by Capt. Bligh after the mutiny of the *Bounty* (1789). In the 19th century the search for sandalwood, in which enormous profits were made, brought many ships. Deserters and shipwrecked men stayed on; firearms salvaged from wrecks were used in native wars, new diseases swept the islands, and rum and muskets became regular articles of trade. Tribal wars became bloody and general until Fiji was ceded to Britain on 10 Oct. 1874, after a previous offer of cession had been refused. British administrators produced order out of chaos, and since then there has been steady political, social and economic progress. Fiji gained independent status on 10 Oct. 1970.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Fiji comprises about 332 islands and islets (about 110 inhabited) lying between 15° and 22° S. lat. and 174° E. and 177° W. long. The largest is Viti Levu, area 10,429 sq. km (4,027 sq. miles), next is Vanua Levu, area 5,556 sq. km (2,145 sq. miles). The island of Rotuma (47 sq. km, 18 sq. miles), about 12° 30' S. lat., 178° E. long., was added to the colony in 1881. Total area, 7,078 sq. miles (18,333 sq. km).

A population census is taken every 10 years. Total population (census, Aug. 1986), 715,375; average annual increase about 2%. The 1986 total population consisted of the following: 329,308 (46%) Fijians; 348,704 (48.7%) Indians; 37,366 (5.2%) were of other races.

Suva, the capital, is on the south coast of Viti Levu; population (census, 1986), 71,608. Suva was proclaimed a city on 2 Oct. 1953. Lautoka had 28,728 in 1986.

Vital statistics, 1987: Crude birth rate per 1,000 population, Fijian, 30.7, Indian, 25.6; crude death rate per 1,000 population, Fijian, 5.4, Indian, 5.2.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, but oceanic influences prevent undue extremes of heat or humidity. The S.E. Trades blow from May to Nov., during which time nights are cool and rainfall amounts least. Suva. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 117" (2,974 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following a military *coup* in May 1987 the government was removed from office by the Governor-General who took temporary control of the administration. A second *coup* led by Col. Rabuka took place in Sept. and Fiji was declared a Republic and membership of the Commonwealth lapsed.

*President:* Ratu Sir Penaia Ganilau, GCMG, KCVO, KBE, DSO.

*Prime Minister and Minister for Foreign Affairs:* Ratu Sir Kamisese Mara, GCMG, KBE.

*Home Affairs, National Youth Service and Auxiliary Army Services:* Brig. Sitiveni Rabuka. *Fijian Affairs:* Col. Vataliai Navunisaravi. *Finance and Economic Planning:* Josefata Kamikamica. *Education:* Filipe Bole. *Primary Industries:* Viliame Gonelevu. *Trade and Commerce:* Berenado Vunibobo. *Health:* Dr Apenisa Kuruasika. *Communications, Works and Transport:* Apisai Toru. *Attorney-General and Justice:* Sailosi Kepa. *Tourism, Civil Aviation and Energy:* David Pickering. *Youth and Sport:* Col. Ilaisa Kacisolomone. *Rural Development and Rural Housing:* Col. Apolosi Biuvakaloloma. *Indian Affairs:* Irene Jai Narayan. *Forests:* Ratu Sir Josaia Tavaiaia. *Employment and Industrial Relations:* Taniela Veitata. *Co-operatives and National Marketing Authority:* Ishwari Bajpai. *Women's Affairs and Social Welfare:* Finau Tabakaucord. *Housing and Urban Development:* Tomasi Vakatora. *Lands and Mineral Resources:* Ratu William Toganivalu. *Information:* Ratu Inoke Kubuabola.

**Flag:** Light blue with the Union Flag in the canton and the shield of Fiji in the fly.

**Local Government.** Fiji is divided into 15 provinces, each with its own council under which 188 Tikina Councils have been established. The number of Tikina Councils within a province varies from 4 to 22. Tikina Councils have wide powers to make by-laws and levy rates to raise revenue. 50% of the rates collected is credited to the Provincial Council treasury for the running of the Council and 50% is used for the financing of the Tikina and village projects.

**DEFENCE.** The Fiji Military Forces are for the defence of Fiji, maintenance of law and order and provision of forces to international peace-keeping agencies overseas. The forces have two overseas battalions and regular and territorial units at home. Total active strength (1989) 3,200 (reserves, 5,000).

**Navy.** A naval division was authorized in 1974 to perform fishery protection, surveillance, hydrographic surveying and coastguard duties. Present strength is 3 coastal minesweepers (*ex-US MSC*), 1 utility vessel and 2 survey craft. Naval personnel in 1989 numbered 300 officers and ratings. Training is carried out in Australia, New Zealand, USA and Hong Kong. The naval base is HMFS *Viti* in Suva.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Fiji is a member of the UN, the Colombo Plan, the South Pacific Forum and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The financial year corresponds with the calendar year. All figures are in \$1m. Fijian.

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Revenue	258.3	296.4	337.7	349.9	348.1
Expenditure	273.2	304.1	344.4	349.3	370.9

**Currency.** Fiji changed to decimal currency on 13 Jan. 1969, with the major unit being \$F1. In March 1989, £1 = \$F2.48; US\$ = \$F1.44.

**Banking.** The National Bank of Fiji had, in 1985, deposits amounting to \$F62.3m. due to 241,375 accounts. The headquarters are at Suva, and there are 11 branches, 35 postal agencies and 9 private agencies throughout Fiji. The Westpac Banking Corporation has 9 branches, 2 sub-branches and 18 agencies; the Bank of New Zealand has 8 branches, and 18 agencies; the Australia and New Zealand Bank has 9 branches and 7 agencies and the Bank of Baroda has 8 branches and 3 agencies in Fiji.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 220m. kwh. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Agriculture.** Some 600,000 acres of land are in agricultural use. Sugar-cane is the principal cash crop (production, 1986, 4.3m. tonnes), accounting for more than two-thirds of Fiji's export earnings; one quarter of the population depend on it directly for their livelihood. Copra, Fiji's second major cash crop (output, 1986, 22,000 tonnes), provides coconut oil and other products for export. Ginger is the third major export crop replacing bananas which has declined through disease and hurricane. Production, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 28; maize, 2; fruit, 18; vegetables, 16. Tobacco and cocoa are also cultivated. There is a small, but fast developing, livestock industry.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 159,000; horses, 41,000; goats, 59,000; pigs, 29,000; poultry, 2m.

**Forestry.** Fiji supplies the bulk of its own timber requirements. A comprehensive pine scheme has been implemented with the aim of planting 186,000 acres by 1988.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1985) 15,900 tonnes. Exports (1986) F\$20m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Major industries include 4 large sugar-mills, the goldmines (2,647 kg in 1987) and 2 mills which process copra into coconut oil and coconut meal. There is a great variety of light industries.

**Trade Unions.** In 1987 there were 46 trade unions operating with about 45,000 members.

**Commerce.** Exports in 1987, \$F408,815,000 (including re-exports). Imports, \$F465,583,000. Chief exports: Sugar, gold, molasses and canned fish.

Total trade between Fiji and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	46,943	70,209	36,328	66,500	53,062	65,273
Exports and re-exports from UK	12,184	11,281	9,843	8,775	7,381	6,358

**Tourism.** In 1987, there were 389,866 visitors. Earnings (1987) \$F145.7m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total road mileage is 2,996, of which 376 are sealed (paved), 2,534 are gravelled and 86 are unimproved. In 1987, there were 70,206 vehicles including 29,262 private cars, 23,029 goods vehicles, 1,289 buses, 4,499 tractors, 2,236 taxis and 2,882 rental and hire cars and others.

**Railway.** Fiji Sugar Cane Corporation runs 600 mm gauge railways at four of its mills on Viti Levu and Vanua Levu, totalling 595 km.

**Aviation.** Fiji provides an essential staging point for long-haul trunk-route aircraft operating between North America, Australia and New Zealand. Under the South Pacific Air Transport Council, which comprises the UK, Australia, New Zealand and Fiji, the international airport at Nadi has been developed and administered. Eighteen other airports are in use for domestic services.

**Shipping.** The 3 ports of entry are Suva, Lautoka and Leuuka. In 1985, 1,313 vessels called at Suva, 780 at Lautoka and 1,004 at Leuuka. Local shipping provides services to scattered outer islands of the group.

**Post.** There were (1988) 50 post offices and 185 postal agencies. Overseas telephone and telegram services are available through the Commonwealth cable to most countries except those in the South Pacific, which are served by direct radio circuits. The automatic telex network operates through New Zealand into the international telex system. There are ship-to-shore radio facilities. There were 60,017 telephones in 1987.

**Newspapers.** In 1985 there were 2 daily newspapers (circulation 53,000).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** An independent Judiciary is guaranteed under the Constitution of Fiji. The Constitution allows for a High Court of Fiji which has unlimited original jurisdiction to hear and determine any civil or criminal proceedings under any law.

The High Court also has jurisdiction to hear and determine constitutional and electoral questions including the membership of members of the House of Representatives.

The Chief Justice of Fiji is appointed by the President acting after consultation with the Prime Minister.

The Fiji Court of Appeal of which the Chief Justice is *ex officio* President is formed by three specially appointed Justices of Appeal. The Justices of Appeal are appointed by the President acting after consultation with the Judicial and Legal Services Commission. Generally any person convicted of any offence has a right of appeal from the High Court to the Fiji Court of Appeal. The final appellant court is the Supreme Court. Most matters coming before the Superior Courts originate in Magistrates' Courts.

**Police.** The Royal Fiji Police Force had (1987) a total strength of 1,561.



**Religion.** The 1986 census showed: Christians, 378,452; Hindus, 273,088; Sikhs, 4,674; Moslems, 56,001; Confucians, 82.

**Education** (1987). School attendance is not compulsory in Fiji. There were 815 schools scattered over 56 islands, staffed by 7,082 teachers, of whom about 99.3% were trained. There were also 236 pre-schools. The 674 primary and 141 secondary schools had 180,514 pupils. The technical and vocational schools had 4,039 students and the teachers' college 205. There were 3 teacher-training colleges, 1 medical and 2 agricultural schools.

The University of the South Pacific (USP) opened in Feb. 1968 at Laucala Bay in Suva. In 1987 there were about 2,344 students enrolled in courses on campus and about 4,085 enrolments in extension services. The University has an operating budget of SF12.13m. a year provided by the 11 countries it serves.

Total government expenditure on education in 1987 (including USP) was SF76,184,852.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 25 hospitals with 1,721 beds, 271 doctors, 48 dentists and 1,543 nurses.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Fiji in Great Britain (34 Hyde Park Gate, London, SW7 5DN)

*Ambassador:* Brig.-Gen. Ratu Epeli Nailatikau, LVO, OBE (accredited 8 June 1988).

Of Great Britain in Fiji (47 Gladstone Rd., Suva)

*Ambassador:* R. A. R. Barltrop, CMG, CVO.

Of Fiji in the USA (2233 Wisconsin Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20007)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Abdul Yusuf.

Of the USA in Fiji (31 Loftus St., Suva)

*Ambassador:* Edric Sherman.

Of Fiji to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Winston Thompson.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* A Bureau of Statistics was set up in 1950 (Government Buildings, Suva).

*Trade Report.* Annual (from 1887 [covering 1883–86]). Bureau of Statistics, Suva.

*Journal of the Fiji Legislative Council.* Annual (from 1914 [under different title from 1885]). Suva

*Fiji Today.* Suva, Annual

*Fiji Facts and Figures.* Suva, 1986

*Report of Commission of Inquiry Into Natural Resources and Population Trends in Fiji.* Suva, Government Press, 1960

Ali, A., *Plantations to Politics, studies on Fiji Indians.* Suva, 1980

Bain, K., *Fiji at the Crossroads.* London, 1989

Capell, A., *New Fijian Dictionary.* 2nd ed. Glasgow, 1957

Ravuvu, A., *Vaka i Taukei: The Fijian Way of Life.* Suva, 1983

Scarr, D., *Fiji, A Short History.* Sydney, 1984

Williams, E., *Fiji.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Wright, R., *On Fiji Islands.* London, 1987

# FINLAND

*Capital:* Helsinki

*Population:* 4.94m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$18,118 (1987)

## Suomen Tasavalta— Republiken Finland

**HISTORY.** Since the Middle Ages Finland was a part of the realm of Sweden. In the 18th century parts of south-eastern Finland were conquered by Russia, and the rest of the country was ceded to Russia by the peace treaty of Hamina in 1809. Finland became an autonomous grand-duchy which retained its previous laws and institutions under its Grand Duke, the Emperor of Russia. After the Russian revolution Finland declared itself independent on 6 Dec. 1917. The Civil War began in Jan. 1918 between the 'whites' and 'reds', the latter being supported by Russian bolshevik troops. The defeat of the red guards in May 1918 consequently meant freeing the country from Russian troops. A peace treaty with Soviet Russia was signed in 1920.

On 30 Nov. 1939 Soviet troops invaded Finland, after Finland had rejected territorial concessions demanded by the USSR. These, however, had to be made in the peace treaty of 12 March 1940, amounting to 32,806 sq. km and including the Carelian Isthmus, Viipuri and the shores of Lake Ladoga.

When the German attack on the USSR was launched in June 1941 Finland again became involved in the war against the USSR. On 19 Sept. 1944 an armistice was signed in Moscow. Finland agreed to cede to Russia the Petsamo area in addition to cessions made in 1940 (total 42,934 sq. km) and to lease to Russia for 50 years the Porkkala headland to be used as a military base. Further, Finland undertook to pay 300m. gold dollars in reparations within 6 years (later extended to 8 years). The peace treaty was signed in Paris on 10 Feb. 1947. The payment of reparations was completed on 19 Sept. 1952. The military base of Porkkala was returned to Finland on 26 Jan. 1956.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Finland is bounded north-west and north by Norway, east by the USSR, south by the Baltic Sea and west by the Gulf of Bothnia and Sweden. The area and the population of Finland on 31 Dec. 1987 (Swedish names in brackets):

<i>Province</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Population<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Population per sq. km<sup>2</sup></i>
Uusimaa (Nyland)	9,898	1,214,775	122.7
Turku-Pori (Åbo-Björneborg)	22,170	714,196	32.2
Åhvenanmaa (Åland)	1,527	23,761	15.6
Häme (Tavastehus)	17,010	681,550	40.1
Kymi (Kymmene)	10,783	337,254	31.3
Mikkeli (St Michel)	16,342	207,927	12.7
Pohjois-Karjala (Norra Karelen)	17,782	176,699	9.9
Kuopio	16,511	255,705	15.5
Keski-Suomi (Mellersta Finland)	16,230	248,441	15.3
Vaasa (Vasa)	26,447	444,405	16.8
Oulu (Uleåborg)	56,866	433,715	7.6
Lappi (Lappland)	93,057	200,174	2.2
<b>Total</b>	<b>304,623</b>	<b>4,938,602</b>	<b>16.2</b>

<sup>1</sup> Excluding inland water area which totals 33,522 sq. km.

<sup>2</sup> Resident population.

The growth of the population, which was 421,500 in 1750, has been:

<i>End of year</i>	<i>Urban</i>	<i>Rural</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Percentage urban</i>
1800	46,600	786,100	832,700	5.6
1900	333,300	2,322,600	2,655,900	12.5
1950	1,302,400	2,727,400	4,029,800	32.3
1960	1,707,000	2,739,200	4,446,200	38.4
1970	2,340,300	2,258,000	4,598,300	50.9
1980	2,865,100	1,922,700	4,787,800	59.8
1987	3,052,400	1,886,200	4,938,600	61.8

The population on 31 Dec. 1987 by language primarily spoken: Finnish, 4,624,376; Swedish, 297,591; other languages, 14,925; Lappish, 1,710.

The principal towns with resident census population, 31 Dec. 1987, are (Swedish names in brackets):

Helsinki (Helsingfors)—capital	490,034	Kajaani	36,056
(metropolitan area)	978,241	Kokkola (Gamlakarleby)	34,599
Tampere (Tammerfors)	170,533	Imatra	34,566
(metropolitan area)	257,847	Rovaniemi	32,911
Turku (Åbo)	160,456	Kouvola	31,933
(metropolitan area)	261,717	Mikkeli (St Michel)	31,728
Espoo (Esbo)	164,569	Rauma (Raumo)	30,757
Vantaa (Vanda)	149,063	Savonlinna (Nyslott)	28,510
Oulu (Uleåborg)	98,582	Järvenpää	29,001
Lahti	93,671	Seinäjoki	26,837
Kuopio	78,619	Kerava	26,829
Pori (Björneborg)	77,395	Kemi	25,984
Jyväskylä	65,719	Nokia	24,811
Kotka	57,745	Varkaus	24,791
Vaasa (Vasa)	53,780	Riihimäki	24,674
Lappeenranta (Villmanstrand)	53,737	Iisalmi	23,695
Joensuu	47,099	Tornio	22,538
Hämeenlinna (Tavastehus)	42,486	Valkeakoski	22,282
Hyvinkää (Hyvinge)	39,185	Kuusankoski	21,888

#### Vital statistics in calendar years:

	<i>Living births</i>	<i>Of which illegitimate</i>	<i>Still-born</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths (exclusive of still-born)</i>	<i>Emigration</i>
1980	63,064	8,247	266	29,388	44,398	14,824
1981	63,469	8,431	260	30,100	44,404	10,042
1982	66,106	9,007	263	30,459	43,408	7,403
1983	66,076	9,386	268	29,474	45,388	6,822
1984	65,076	9,825	260	28,550	45,098	7,467
1985	62,796	10,931	241	25,751	48,198	7,739
1986	60,632	...	193	25,820	47,135	8,269
1987	60,035	...	...	26,339	47,917	8,604

In 1986 the rate per 1,000 was: Births, 12.4; marriages, 5.6; deaths, 9.6, and infantile deaths (1985, per 1,000 live births), 6.2.

*Population Census 1985.* 5 vols. Helsinki, 1988

*Population.* Annual. Helsinki

**CLIMATE.** The climate is severe in winter, which lasts about 6 months, but mean temperatures in south and south-west are less harsh, 21°F (−6°C). In the north, mean temperatures may fall to 8.5°F (−13°C). Snow covers the ground for three months in the south and for over six months in the far north. Summers are short but quite warm, with occasional very hot days. Precipitation is light throughout the country, with one third falling as snow, the remainder mainly as convectional rain in summer and autumn. Helsinki (Helsingfors). Jan, 21°F (−6°C), July 62°F (16.5°C). Annual rainfall 24.7" (618 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Finland is a republic according to the Constitution of 17 July 1919.

Parliament consists of one chamber of 200 members chosen by direct and proportional election in which all Finnish citizens (men or women) who are 18 years have the vote (since 1972). The country is divided into 15 electoral districts with a representation proportional to their population. Every citizen over the age of 18 is eligible for Parliament, which is elected for 4 years, but can be dissolved sooner by the President.

The President is elected for 6 years by a college of 301 electors, elected by the votes of the citizens in the same way as the members of Parliament.

*President of Finland:* Dr Mauno Koivisto (elected 1982, re-elected 1988).

State of Parties for Parliament elected on 15–16 March 1987: Conservative 53; Swedish Party, 13 (including 1 for Coalition of Åland); Centre, 40; Rural, 9; Social Democratic Party, 56; People's Democratic League, 16; Christian League, 5; the Greens, 4; Democratic Alternative, 4.



The Council of State (Cabinet), composed as follows in Feb. 1988:

*Prime Minister:* Harri Holkeri.

*Foreign Affairs:* Pertti Paasio. *Minister of State, Prime Minister's Office:* Ilkka Kanerva. *Finance:* Erkki Liikanen. *Finance (Deputy):* Ulla Puolanne. *Education:* Christoffer Taxell. *Education (Deputy):* Anna-Liisa Piipari. *Social Affairs and Health:* Helena Pesola. *Social Affairs and Health (Deputy):* Tarja Halonen. *Justice:* Matti Louekoski. *Agriculture and Forestry:* Toivo T. Pohjala. *Transport and Communication:* Pekka Vennamo. *Labour:* Matti Puhakka. *Trade and Industry:* Ilkka Suominen. *Defence:* Ole Norrback. *Environment:* Kaj Bärlund. *Interior:* Jarmo Rantanen. *Foreign Trade:* Pertti Salolainen.

*National flag:* White with a blue Scandinavian cross.

*National anthem:* Maamme; Swedish: Vårt land (words by J. L. Runeberg, 1843; tune by F. Pacius, 1848).

Finnish and Swedish are the official languages of Finland.

*Local Government.* For administrative purposes Finland is divided into 12 provinces (*lääni*, Sw.: *län*). The administration of each province is entrusted to a governor (*maaherra*, Sw.: *landshövding*) appointed by the President. He directs the activities of the provincial office (*lääninhallitus*, Sw.: *länsstyrelse*) and of local sheriffs (*nimismies*, Sw.: *länsman*). In 1988 the number of sheriff districts was 225.

The unit of local government is the commune. Main fields of communal activities are local planning, roads and harbours, sanitary services, education, health services and social aid. The communes raise taxes independent from state taxation. Two different kinds of communes are distinguished: Urban communes (*kaupunki*, Sw.: *stad*) and rural communes. In 1988 there were altogether 461 communes of which 94 were urban and 367 rural. In all communes communal councils are elected for terms of 4 years; all inhabitants (men and women) of the commune who have reached their 18th year are entitled to vote and eligible. The executive power is in each commune vested in a board which consists of members elected by the council and one or a few chief officials of the commune. Several communes often form an association for the administration of some common institution, e.g., a hospital or a vocational school.

The autonomous county (*landskap*) of Åland has a county council (*landsting*) of one chamber, elected according to rule corresponding to those for parliamentary elections. In addition to its provincial governor it has a county board with executive power in matters within the field of the autonomy of the county.

*Constitution Act and Parliament Act of Finland.* Helsinki, 1978

**DEFENCE.** The period of military training is 240 to 330 days and refresher training obligation 40 to 100 days between conscript service and age 50 (officers and NCOs age 60). Total strength of trained and equipped reserves is about 700,000.

**Army.** The country is divided into 7 military areas. The Army consists of 1 armoured brigade, 7 infantry brigades, 7 independent infantry battalions, 2 field-artillery regiments, 2 independent field-artillery battalions, 2 coastal artillery regiments, 3 independent coastal artillery battalions, 4 anti-aircraft regiments, 2 engineering battalions, 1 signals regiment and 2 signals battalions, making a total strength in 1989, of about 30,000.

**Navy.** The Fleet comprises 2 corvettes, 2 coastal minelayers, 8 missile craft, 1 missile experimental craft, 6 fast patrol boats, 11 inshore minesweepers, 5 patrol boats capable of minelaying, 12 coastal patrol craft, 6 support ships, 1 headquarters ship, 13 transport craft, 14 landing craft, 2 tugs, 1 supply ship, 9 ice-breakers and 1 cable ship. There is a naval academy. Personnel in 1989 totalled 2,700 (200 officers and 2,500 ratings).

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 3 fighter squadrons, 1 transport squadron, a military school of aviation, a technical school, a signal school and a depot. The fighter squadrons have MiG-21bis and Saab J35 Draken aircraft. Other equipment includes 29 Valmet Vinka piston-engined primary trainers of Finnish design, 47 Hawk trainers, MiG-21U and Saab J35C jet advanced trainers, Fokker F.27 transport aircraft, Piper Arrow liaison aircraft, Learjet 35A target tugs, Piper Chieftain

utility transports, and Mi-8 and Hughes 500 helicopters. Personnel (1989) 2,900 officers and men.

**Frontier Guard.** Comprises 8 large patrol craft, 12 coastal craft and 34 coastal patrol boats. Personnel (1989) 4,400.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Finland is a member of UN, the Nordic Council, OECD and EFTA.

**Treaties.** A Treaty of friendship, co-operation and mutual assistance between Finland and the USSR was concluded in Moscow on 6 April 1948 for 10 years, extended on 19 Sept. 1955 to cover a period of 20 years, extended on 19 July 1970 for a further period of 20 years and extended again on 6 June 1983 for a further period of 20 years.

*Treaty of Peace with Finland (10 Feb. 1947). Cmd. 7484*

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Actual revenue and expenditure for the calendar years 1981–87, the ordinary budget for 1988 and the proposed budget for 1989 in 1m. marks:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989
Revenue	63,043	76,354	86,611	96,408	96,769	108,650	113,838	124,177
Expenditure	68,008	77,190	85,748	95,803	95,172	106,988	113,815	124,175

Of the total revenue, 1987, 28% derived from sales tax, 24% from income and property tax, 10% from excise duties, 11% from other taxes and similar revenue, 15% from loans and 12% from miscellaneous sources. Of the total expenditure, 1987, 17% went to education and culture, 18% to social security, 9% to transport, 9% to agriculture and forestry, 10% to general administration, public order and safety, 9% to health, 5% to communities and housing policy, 5% to defence, 4% to promotion of industry and 14% to other expenditures.

At the end of Dec. 1987 the foreign loans totalled 28,680m. marks. The internal loans amounted to 29,831m. marks, of which, 20,872m. were long-term loans. The cash surplus was 145m. marks. The total public debt was 58,511m. marks.

**Currency.** The unit of currency, starting 1 Jan. 1963, is the new *mark* of 100 *pennis*, equalling 100 old *marks*. The gold standard was suspended on 12 Oct. 1931. Aluminium bronze coins are 5 *marks* 50, 20 and 10 *pennis*; copper coins, 5 *pennis*; aluminium coins, 10 and 5 *pennis*; silver, 1 *mark* pieces. Exchange rate in March 1989: 7.43 marks = £1; 4.32 marks = US\$1.

**Banking.** The Bank of Finland (founded in 1811) is owned by the State and under the guarantee and supervision of Parliament. It is the only bank of issue, and the limit of its right to issue notes is fixed equal to the value of its assets of gold and foreign holdings plus 500m. marks. Notes of 1,000, 500, 100, 50 and 10 marks are in circulation, and their total value at the end of 1987 was 9,117m. marks.

At the end of 1987 the deposits in banking institutions totalled 183,571m. marks and the loans granted by them 220,130m. marks. The most important groups of banking institutions were:

	Number of institutions	Number of offices	Deposits (1m. marks)	Loans (1m. marks)
Commercial banks	6	1,553	65,586	77,663
Savings banks	230	1,323	52,440	51,062
Postipankki	1	943 <sup>1</sup>	19,868	20,171
Co-operative banks	369	1,221	44,726	48,403

<sup>1</sup> In addition: 3,178 post offices.

*Bank of Finland Monthly Bulletin.* Helsinki, from 1926

*Unitas.* Quarterly Review, issued by Union Bank of Finland. Helsinki, from 1929

*Economic Review* (issued quarterly by Kansallis-Osake-Pankki). Helsinki, from 1948

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures was introduced in 1887 and is officially and universally employed.

*Economic Survey of Finland.* Annual

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity production was (in 1m. kwh.) 8,605 in 1960; 22,562 in 1970; 38,710 in 1980; 39,354 in 1982; 40,120 in 1983; 43,311 in 1984; 47,316

in 1985; 46,916 in 1986; 50,897 in 1987, of which 27% was hydro-electric. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** The most important mines are Outokumpu (copper, discovered in 1910) and Otanmäki (iron, discovered in 1953). In 1987 the metal content (in tonnes) of the output of copper concentrates was 17,800, of zinc concentrates 55,000, of nickel concentrates 104,416, of iron concentrates and pellets 648,000 and of lead concentrates 2,400.

**Agriculture.** The cultivated area covers only 9% of the land and of the economically active population 10% were employed in agriculture and forestry in 1988. The arable area was divided in 1986 into 195,430 farms, and the distribution of this area by the size of the farms was: Less than 5 hectares cultivated, 56,145 farms; 5–20 hectares, 105,322 farms; 20–50 hectares, 30,361 farms; 50–100 hectares, 3,201 farms; over 100 hectares, 401 farms.

The principal crops (area (1988) in 1,000 hectares, yield in tonnes) were in 1987:

<i>Crop</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Yield</i>	<i>Crop</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Yield</i>
Rye	26	74,200	Oats	389	723,200
Barley	683	1,089,200	Potatoes	45	490,500
Wheat	109	281,100	Hay	331	1,337,100

The total area under cultivation in 1988 was 2,094,300 hectares. Production of dairy butter in 1987 was 60,700 tonnes, and of cheese, 85,200 tonnes.

Livestock (1988): Horses, 15,100; cattle, 1,443,400; pigs, 1,305,100; poultry, 6,678,200; reindeer, 364,000.

**Forestry.** The total forest land amounts to 30–31 m. hectares. The productive forest land covers 19.73 m. hectares. The growing stock was valued at 1,660 m. cu. metres in 1977–84 and the annual growth at 68.4 m. cu. metres.

In 1986 there were exported: Round timber, 1,287 m. cu. metres; sawn wood, 4,557 m. cu. metres; plywood and veneers, 502 m. cu. metres.

*Monthly Review of Agriculture.* Board of Agriculture  
*Agriculture 1982: Annual Statistics of Agriculture.* Helsinki

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The following data cover establishments with a total personnel of 5 or more in 1987<sup>1</sup>:

<i>Industry</i>	<i>Establishments</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Personnel</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>Value of production</i> <i>Gross</i> <i>(1m. marks)</i>	<i>Value added</i> <i>(1m. marks)</i>
Mining and quarrying	105	5,041	2,032	960
Metal ore mining	8	1,970	657	256
Other mining	97	3,117	1,395	715
Manufacturing	6,678	465,657	241,693	85,271
Manufacture of food, beverages and tobacco	968	56,171	44,620	11,143
Textile, wearing apparel and leather industries	827	48,677	11,943	4,889
Manufacture of textiles	277	14,875	4,195	1,854
Manufacture of wearing apparel, except footwear	391	25,607	5,062	2,195
Manufacture of wood and wood products, incl. furniture	959	44,635	16,836	5,973
Manufacture of paper and paper prod., printing, publishing	890	78,999	56,503	18,939
Manufacture of paper and paper products	192	41,332	42,077	12,332
Printing, publishing, etc.	698	37,669	14,477	6,749
Manufacture of chemicals and chemical, petroleum, coal, rubber and plastic products	446	37,605	29,562	9,675
Manufacture of industrial chemicals	154	14,000	11,130	4,233
Manufacture of other chemical products	94	9,922	4,679	1,996
Petroleum refineries	2	2,811	9,548	1,845
Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products	414	20,154	8,045	3,785
Basic metal industries	84	17,547	15,064	3,658
Iron and steel basic industries	52	12,659	10,021	3,002
Non-ferrous metal basic industries	32	4,888	5,044	653

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.   <sup>2</sup> 1986.   <sup>3</sup> Working proprietors, salaried employees and wage earners.



<i>Industry</i>	<i>Establish- ments<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Person- nel<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Value of production</i>	
			<i>Gross (1m. marks)</i>	<i>Value added (1m. marks)</i>
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, machinery, etc.	1,992	156,899	58,316	26,536
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, excl. machinery	712	30,745	10,641	4,858
Manufacture of machinery, except electrical	672	54,252	20,890	10,037
Manufacture of electrical machinery, apparatus, etc.	224	31,083	11,439	5,548
Manufacture of transport equipment	295	35,521	13,587	5,222
Other manufacturing industries	98	4,595	1,216	654
Electricity, gas and water	538	28,175	29,271	10,626
All industry	7,321	498,915	272,996	96,933

<sup>1</sup> 1986.<sup>2</sup> Working proprietors, salaried employees and wage earners.

GDP (at market prices) *per capita* (1987) 79,791 marks.

*Industrial Statistics of Finland. Annual*

**Commerce.** Imports and exports for calendar years, in 1m. marks:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	71,528	74,682	81,520	77,602	86,696
Exports	69,692	80,904	84,028	82,579	87,564

The trade with some principal import and export countries was (in 1,000 marks):

<i>Country</i>	<i>Imports</i>		<i>Exports</i>	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
Australia	249,647	193,012	818,998	855,462
Austria	1,015,166	1,116,462	780,888	976,030
Belgium-Luxembourg	1,898,600	2,234,537	1,409,646	1,566,432
Brazil	519,441	498,217	199,120	236,654
Canada	409,536	448,754	909,917	996,499
China	276,537	449,628	558,831	688,804
Colombia	627,620	357,060	89,360	90,184
Czechoslovakia	387,442	448,417	296,835	334,278
Denmark	2,180,946	2,453,531	3,321,407	3,407,716
France	3,458,835	3,719,549	3,690,723	4,615,266
German Dem. Rep.	438,378	432,260	271,343	370,089
Germany (Fed. Rep.)	13,159,293	15,130,348	8,016,002	9,580,921
Greece	157,584	234,581	409,177	465,333
Hungary	269,456	325,970	253,182	264,024
Iran	192,140	17,513	129,322	190,430
Iraq	323	779	197,534	30,410
Ireland	309,516	322,321	455,568	495,158
Israel	174,024	169,714	270,110	322,777
Italy	3,526,004	3,789,514	1,741,234	2,239,715
Japan	5,021,830	6,136,845	1,265,633	1,237,712
Netherlands	2,369,031	2,675,770	2,854,576	3,141,046
Norway	1,713,455	1,904,761	3,714,877	4,132,019
Poland	954,877	847,495	237,709	313,459
Portugal	677,560	804,374	215,028	294,035
Saudi Arabia	731,005	703,740	380,919	426,352
Spain	872,452	963,449	876,116	1,118,784
Sweden	10,558,463	11,205,449	12,228,313	13,090,417
Switzerland	1,579,115	1,743,071	1,331,434	1,564,687
USSR	11,933,002	12,461,880	16,773,798	13,522,520
UK	5,055,640	6,192,359	8,667,112	9,990,071
USA	3,721,745	4,539,359	4,479,560	4,523,448

Principal imports 1987 (in 1m. marks): Machinery, apparatus and appliances, 31,747; mineral fuels, lubricants, etc., 11,677; chemicals, 9,009; food and live animals, 4,435; road vehicles, 8,250; crude materials, inedible, except fuels, 4,799; textile yarn, fabrics, etc., 3,283; iron and steel, 3,040.

Principal exports in 1987 (in 1m. marks): Paper and paper-board, 22,534;

machinery and transport equipment, 23,520; wood shaped or simply worked, 4,687; wood pulp, 3,994; ships, 2,446; clothing, 2,956; veneers, plywood, etc., and other wood manufactures, 2,571; food and live animals, 1,711; road vehicles, 3,374.

Total trade between Finland and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,248,561	1,324,792	1,346,058	1,539,011	1,813,549
Exports and re-exports from UK	684,477	705,365	664,451	797,236	824,951

*Foreign Trade. Annual*

**Tourism.** In 1986 tourism contributed 3,026m. marks to the economy.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In Jan. 1988 there were 77,255 km of public roads, of which 44,420 km were paved. At the end of 1987 there were 1,698,671 registered cars, 51,956 lorries, 146,219 vans and pick-ups, 9,233 buses and coaches and 13,640 special automobiles.

**Railways.** On 31 Dec. 1987 the total length of the line operated was 5,869 km (1,445 km electrified), of which all except 6 km was owned by the State. The gauge was 1,524 mm. In 1987 the number of passengers carried was 41m. and the amount of goods carried was 30m. tonnes. The total revenue in 1987 was 3,141m. marks and the total expenditure 4,149m. marks.

**Aviation.** The scheduled traffic of Finnish airlines covered 43m. km in 1987. The number of passengers was 3,626,103 and the number of passenger-km 3,587,134. The air transport of freight and mail amounted to 98m. tonne-km.

**Shipping.** The total registered mercantile marine on 31 Dec. 1987 was 415 vessels of 840,000 gross tons. In 1987 the total number of vessels arriving in Finland from abroad was 15,774 and the goods discharged amounted to 31.3m. tonnes. The goods loaded for export from Finland ports amounted to 22.4m. tonnes.

The lakes, rivers and canals are navigable for about 6,100 km. Timber floating is important, and there are about 9,400 km of floatable inland waterways. In 1987 bundle floating was about 4.6m. tonnes and free floating 1.2m. tonnes.

On 27 Aug. 1963 the USSR leased to Finland the Russian part of the canal connecting Lake Saimaa with the Gulf of Finland. After extensive rebuilding the canal was opened for traffic in 1968. The Saimaa Canal and deepwater channels on Lake Saimaa (755 km) can be used by vessels with dimensions not larger than as follows: length 82 metres, width 11.8 metres, draught 4.2 metres and height of mast 24.5 metres.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 3,502 post offices and 615 telegraph offices. The total length of telegraph wires was 582,000 km and that of domestic trunk and net group telephone wires 9.4m. km. The number of telephone subscriber lines (1987), 2,365,486. All post and telegraph systems are administered by the State jointly with a large part of the telephone services. The total revenues from postal services were 3,503m. marks and from (wire and radio) telegraph services 3,528m. marks.

On 31 Dec. 1987 the number of television licences was 1,842,922, of which licences for colour television, 1,606,196. *Oy Yleisradio AB* broadcasts 2 programmes in Finnish and 1 in Swedish on long-, medium- and short-waves, and on FM. Three TV programmes (1 commercial) are broadcast.

**Cinemas.** In Dec. 1987 there were 320 cinemas with a seating capacity of 74,000.

**Newspapers.** In 1985 the number of newspapers published more often than 3 times a week was 77, of which 66 were in Finnish and 11 in Swedish.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The lowest courts of justice are the municipal courts in towns and district courts in the country. Municipal courts are held by the burgomaster and at least 2 members of court, district court by judge and 5 jurors, the judge alone deciding, unless the jurors unanimously differ from him, when their decision prevails. From

these courts an appeal lies to the courts of appeal (*Hovioikeus*) in Turku, Vaasa, Kuopio, Helsinki, Kouvola and Rovaniemi. The Supreme Court (*Korkein oikeus*) sits in Helsinki. Appeals from the decisions of administrative authorities are in the final instance decided by the Supreme Administrative Court (*Korkein hallinto-oikeus*), also in Helsinki. Judges can be removed only by judicial sentence.

Two functionaries, the *Oikeuskansleri* or Chancellor of Justice, and the *Oikeusasiamies* (ombudsman), or Solicitor-General, exercise control over the administration of justice. The former acts also as counsel and public prosecutor for the Government; while the latter, who is appointed by the Parliament, exerts a general control over all courts of law and public administration.

At the end of 1987 the prison population numbered 3,939 men and 115 women; the number of convictions in 1986 was 346,331, of which 319,074 were for minor offences with maximum penalty of fines and 27,068 with penalty of imprisonment. 11,467 of the prison sentences were unconditional.

**Religion.** Liberty of conscience is guaranteed to members of all religions. National churches are the Lutheran National Church and the Greek Orthodox Church of Finland. The Lutheran Church is divided into 8 bishoprics (Turku being the archiepiscopal see), 79 provostships and 598 parishes. The Greek Orthodox Church is divided into 3 bishoprics (Kuopio being the archiepiscopal see) and 27 parishes, in addition to which there are a monastery and a convent.

Percentage of the total population at the end of 1986: Lutherans, 88.9; Greek Orthodox, 1; others, 1; not members of any religion, 9.1.

#### Education (1986-87). *Primary and Secondary Education:*

	Number of institu- tions	Teachers	Students
<i>First-level Education</i> (Lower sections of the comprehensive schools, grades I-VI)	5,334	46,000	388,465
<i>Second-level Education</i> General education (Upper sections of the comprehensive schools, grades VII-IX, and senior secondary schools)			289,998
<i>Vocational education</i>			113,117

**Higher Education.** Education at the third level (including universities and third level education at vocational colleges) was provided for 133,933 students. Education at universities was provided at 20 institutions with 7,425 teachers and 95,987 students.

**University Education.** Universities and similar types of institutions and the number of teachers and students are:

	Founded	Teachers	Students Total	Women
Universities				
Helsinki	1640	1,774	25,758	14,902
Turku (Swedish)	1919	307	4,414	2,542
Turku (Finnish)	1922	762	9,412	5,640
Jyväskylä	1958	530	6,685	4,258
Oulu	1958	817	8,055	3,843
Tampere	1966	564	9,749	5,959
Joensuu	1969	340	3,938	2,458
Kuopio	1972	280	2,212	1,367
Lapland	1979	108	1,184	587
Vaasa	1968	105	1,745	888
Universities of Technology				
Lappeenranta	1969	140	1,609	245
Helsinki	1849	585	8,806	1,468
Tampere	1972	262	3,463	446
College of Veterinary Medicine, Helsinki	1946	50	290	219
Schools of Economics and Business Administration				
Helsinki (Finnish)	1911	153	3,213	1,423
Helsinki (Swedish)	1927	94	1,714	725
Turku (Finnish)	1950	65	1,518	715



	Founded	Teachers	Students	
			Total	Women
Universities of Art				
Sibelius Academy	1939	284	1,108	602
University of Industrial Arts	1949	146	934	593
Theatre Academy	1979	59	180	85

General adult education (at civic institutes, folk high schools and study centres) had 869,000 students.

*General Education.* Central Statistical Office, Helsinki (annual), *Higher Education.* Central Statistical Office, Helsinki (annual), *Vocational Education.* Helsinki (annual)

**Health.** In 1986 there were 11,452 physicians, 4,719 dentists and 73,317 hospital beds.

**Social Security.** The Social Insurance Institution administers general systems of old age pensions (to all persons over 65 years of age and disabled younger persons) and of health insurance. An additional system of compulsory old age pensions paid for by the employers is in force and works through the Central Pension Security Institute. Systems for child welfare, care of vagrants, alcoholics and drug addicts and other public aid are administered by the communes and supervised by the National Social Board and the Ministry of Social Affairs and Health.

The total cost of social security amounted to 96,275m. marks in 1986. Out of this 27,760m. (28.8%) was spent for health, 1,743m. (1.8%) for industrial accidents, 6,132m. (6.4%) for unemployment, 37,042m. (38.5%) old age and disability, 15,682m. (16.3%) for family allowances and child welfare, 1,059m. (1.1%) for general welfare purposes, 2,434m. (2.5%) for war-disabled, etc., 1,418m. (1.5%) as tax reductions for children. Out of the total expenditure 29% was financed by the State, 17% by local authorities, 42% by employers, 8% by the beneficiaries and 4% by users.

*Labour Protection in Finland.* Helsinki, 1980

*Social Welfare in Finland.* Helsinki, 1980

*Social Security in the Nordic Countries 1981.* Statistical Reports of the Nordic Countries, vol. 44. Helsinki, 1984

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Finland in Great Britain (38 Chesham Pl., London, SW1X 8HW)

*Ambassador:* Ilkka Olavi Pastinen, KCMG (accredited 24 Feb. 1983).

Of Great Britain in Finland (16–20 Uudenmaankatu, Helsinki 00120)

*Ambassador:* H. A. J. Staples, CMG.

Of Finland in the USA (3216 New Mexico Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20016)

*Ambassador:* Jukka Valtasaari.

Of the USA in Finland (Itäinen Puistotie 14A, Helsinki 00140)

*Ambassador:* Rockwell A. Schnabel.

Of Finland to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Klaus Törnudd.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistical Office (Tilastokeskus, Swedish: Statistikcentralen; address: PO Box 504, SF-00101 Helsinki 10) was founded in 1865 to replace earlier official statistical services dating from 1749 (in united Sweden–Finland). Statistics on foreign trade, agriculture, forestry, navigation, health and social welfare are produced by other state authorities. Its publications include: *Statistical Yearbook of Finland* (from 1879) and *Bulletin of Statistics* (monthly, from 1924). A bibliography of all official statistics of Finland was published in Finnish, Swedish and English in *Statistical publications 1856–1979.* Helsinki, 1980.

*Constitution Act and Parliament Act of Finland.* Helsinki, 1984

*Suomen valtiokalenteri–Finlands statskalender (State Calendar of Finland).* Helsinki. Annual

*Facts About Finland.* Helsinki. Annual (Union Bank of Finland)

*Facts about Finland.* Helsinki, 1988

*Finland in Figures.* Helsinki, Annual

- Finland in Maps*. Helsinki, 1979
- Finnish Press Laws*. Helsinki, 1984
- Making and Applying Law in Finland*. Ministry of Justice, 1983
- Statistical Yearbook of Finland*. Helsinki, Annual
- Yearbook of Finnish Foreign Policy*. Helsinki, Annual
- The Finnish Banking System*. Helsinki, 1987
- Finnish Industry*. Helsinki, 1988
- Finnish Local Government*. Helsinki, 1983
- Health Care in Finland*. Helsinki, 1987
- Arter, D., *Politics and Policy-Making in Finland*. Brighton, 1987
- Hurme-Malin-Syväoja, *Finnish-English General Dictionary*. Helsinki, 1984
- Hurme-Pesonen, *English-Finnish General Dictionary*. Helsinki, 1982
- Jakobson, M. *Myth and Reality*. Helsinki, 1987
- Jutikkala, E. and Pirinen, K., *A History of Finland*. 3rd ed. New York, 1979
- Kekkonen, U., *President's View*. London, 1982
- Kirby, D. G., *Finland in the Twentieth Century*. 2nd ed. London, 1984
- Klinge, M., *A Brief History of Finland*. Helsinki, 1987
- Paasivirta, J., *Finland and Europe. The Period of Autonomy and the International Crises 1808-1914*. London, 1981
- Polvinen, T., *Between East and West - Finland in International Politics 1944-1947*. Minnesota Univ. Press, 1986
- Puntila, L. A., *The Political History of Finland, 1809-1966*. Helsinki, 1974
- Screen, J. E. O., *Finland*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981
- Singleton, F., *The Economy of Finland in the Twentieth Century*. Univ. of Bradford Press, 1987
- University of Turku, *Political Parties in Finland*. Turku, 1987

# FRANCE

*Capital:* Paris

*Population:* 55.84m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$10,740 (1986)

## République Française

**HISTORY.** The republic proclaimed on the fall of the Bourbon monarchy in 1792 lasted until the First Empire, under Napoleon I, was established in 1804. The Bourbon monarchy was restored in 1814 and (with an interval during 1815) lasted until the abdication of Louis Philippe in 1848. The Second Republic was established on 12 March 1848, the Second Empire (under Louis Napoleon) on 2 Dec. 1852. The Third Republic was established on 4 Sept. 1870 following the capture and imprisonment of Louis Napoleon in the Franco-Prussian war, and lasted until the German occupation of 1940. The Fourth Republic was established on 24 Dec. 1946 and lasted until 4 Oct. 1958.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** France is bounded north by the English Channel (*La Manche*), north-east by Belgium and Luxembourg, east by Federal Republic of Germany, Switzerland and Italy, south by the Mediterranean (with Monaco as a coastal enclave), south-west by Spain and Andorra, and west by the Atlantic Ocean. The total area is 543,965 sq. km (210,033 sq. miles).

The population (present in actual boundaries) at successive censuses has been:

1801	27,349,003	1881	37,672,048	Mar. 1946	40,506,639
1821	30,461,875	1891	38,342,948	May 1954	42,777,174
1841	34,230,178	1901	38,961,945	Mar. 1962	46,519,997
1861	37,386,313	1911	39,604,992	Mar. 1968	49,778,540
1866	38,067,064	1921	39,209,518	Feb. 1975	52,655,802
1872	36,102,921	1931	41,834,923	Mar. 1982	54,334,871

The 1982 total included 3,680,100 foreigners, of whom 795,920 were Algerian, 764,860 Portuguese, 431,120 Moroccan, 333,740 Italian and 321,440 Spanish.

The latest population estimate (at 1 July 1988) is 55,854,000.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Stillborn</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1983	300,513	98,700	748,525	5,723	559,655
1984	281,402	104,000	759,939	5,835	542,490
1985	269,300	...	768,431	...	552,500
1986	265,340	...	778,940	...	546,880

Live birth rate in 1986 was 14.1 per 1,000 inhabitants; death rate, 9.9; marriage rate, 4.8; divorce rate, 2; infant mortality (1987), 7.6 per 1,000 live births. Life expectation at birth (1987); men, 72; women, 80.3. Population growth rate (1986), 4.2 per 1,000. Average density (1988) 102.7 persons per sq. km.

The areas, populations and chief towns of the 22 Metropolitan regions were as follows:

<i>Regions</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Census March 1982</i>	<i>Estimate Jan. 1986</i>	<i>Chief town</i>
Alsace	8,280	1,566,048	1,599,800	Strasbourg
Aquitaine	41,308	2,656,544	2,718,200	Bordeaux
Auvergne	26,013	1,332,678	1,334,400	Clermont-Ferrand
Basse-Normandie	17,589	1,350,979	1,373,400	Caen
Bourgogne (Burgundy)	31,582	1,596,054	1,607,200	Dijon
Bretagne (Brittany)	27,208	2,707,886	2,764,200	Rennes
Centre	39,151	2,264,164	2,324,400	Orléans
Champagne-Ardenne	25,606	1,345,935	1,352,500	Reims
Corse (Corsica)	8,680	240,178	248,700	Ajaccio
Franche-Comté	16,202	1,084,049	1,085,900	Besançon
Haute-Normandie	12,317	1,655,362	1,692,800	Rouen



<i>Regions</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Census March 1982</i>	<i>Estimate Jan. 1986</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>
Île-de-France	12,012	10,073,059	10,250,900	Paris
Languedoc-Roussillon	27,376	1,926,514	2,011,900	Montpellier
Limousin	16,942	737,153	735,800	Limoges
Lorraine	23,547	2,319,905	2,313,200	Nancy
Midi-Pyrénées	45,348	2,325,319	2,355,100	Toulouse
Nord-Pas-de-Calais	12,414	3,932,939	3,923,200	Lille
Pays de la Loire	32,082	2,930,398	3,017,700	Nantes
Picardie	19,399	1,740,321	1,774,000	Amiens
Poitou-Charentes	25,810	1,568,230	1,583,600	Poitiers
Provence-Côte d'Azur	31,400	3,965,209	4,058,800	Marseille
Rhône-Alpes	43,698	5,015,947	5,153,600	Lyon

Populations of the principal conurbations and towns at Census 1982:

<i>Conurbation</i>	<i>Town</i>	<i>Conurbation</i>	<i>Town</i>
Paris 8,706,963 <sup>1</sup>	2,188,918	Limoges 171,689	144,082
Lyon 1,220,844 <sup>2</sup>	418,476	Mantes-la-Jolie 170,265	43,585
Marseille 1,110,511	878,689	Amiens 154,498	136,358
Lille 936,295 <sup>3</sup>	174,039	Thionville 138,034	41,448
Bordeaux 640,012	211,197	Perpignan 137,915	113,646
Toulouse 541,271	354,289	Nîmes 132,343	129,924
Nantes 464,857	247,227	Pau 131,265	85,766
Nice 449,496	338,486	Saint-Nazaire 130,271	68,947
Toulon 410,393	181,985	Montbéliard 128,194	33,362
Grenoble 392,021	159,503	Bayonne 127,477	42,970
Rouen 379,879	105,083	Aix-en-Provence 126,552	124,550
Strasbourg 373,470	252,264	Troyes 125,240	64,769
Valenciennes 349,505	40,881	Besançon 120,772	119,687
Lens 327,383	38,307	Hagondange-Briey 119,669	9,091
Saint-Étienne 317,228	206,688	Annecy 112,632	51,593
Nancy 306,982	99,307	Valence 106,041	68,157
Cannes 295,525	72,787	Maubeuge 105,714	36,156
Tours 262,786	136,483	Lorient 104,025	64,675
Béthune 258,383	26,105	Angoulême 103,552	50,151
Clermont-Ferrand 256,189	151,092	Poitiers 103,204	82,884
Le Havre 254,595	200,411	La Rochelle 102,143	78,231
Rennes 234,418	200,390	Calais 100,823	76,935
Montpellier 221,307	201,067	Forbach 99,606	27,321
Mulhouse 220,613	113,794	Boulogne-sur-Mer 98,566	48,349
Orléans 220,478	105,589	Chambéry 96,163	54,896
Dijon 215,865	145,569	Bourges 92,202	79,408
Douai 202,366	44,515	Cherbourg 85,485	30,112
Brest 201,145	160,355	Saint-Brieuc 83,900	51,399
Reims 199,388	181,985	Creil 82,505	36,128
Angers 195,859	141,143	Melun 82,479	36,218
Dunkerque 195,705	73,618	Colmar 82,468	63,764
Le Mans 191,080	150,331	Saint-Chamond 82,059	40,571
Metz 186,437	118,502	Roanne 81,786	49,638
Caen 183,526	117,119	Béziers 81,347	78,477
Avignon 174,264	91,474	Arras 80,477	45,364

<sup>1</sup> Including towns of Boulogne-Billancourt (102,595), Argenteuil (96,045), Versailles (95,240), Montreuil (93,394), Saint-Denis (91,275), Nanterre (90,371) and Vitry-sur-Seine (85,820).

<sup>2</sup> Including towns of Villeurbanne (118,330) and Vénissieux (64,982).

<sup>3</sup> Including towns of Roubaix (101,836) and Tourcoing (97,121).

*Recensement de la population de 1982.* Paris, Institut National de la Statistique et des Etudes Economiques, 1983

Scargill, I., *Urban France*. London, 1983

**CLIMATE.** The north-west has a moderate maritime climate, with small temperature range and abundant rainfall, but inland, rainfall becomes more seasonal, with a summer maximum, and the annual range of temperature increases. Southern France has a Mediterranean climate, with mild moist winters and hot dry summers. Eastern France has a continental climate and a rainfall maximum in summer, with thunderstorms prevalent.

Paris. Jan. 37°F (3°C), July 64°F (18°C). Annual rainfall 22.9" (573 mm).  
 Bordeaux. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 68°F (20°C). Annual rainfall 31.4" (786 mm).  
 Lyon. Jan. 37°F (3°C), July 68°F (20°C). Annual rainfall 31.8" (794 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of the Fifth Republic, superseding that of 1946, came into force on 4 Oct. 1958. It consists of a preamble, dealing with the Rights of Man, and 92 articles.

France is a Republic, indivisible, secular, democratic and social; all citizens are equal before the law (Art. 2). National sovereignty resides with the people, who exercise it through their representatives and by referenda (Art. 3). Political parties carry out their activities freely, but must respect the principles of national sovereignty and democracy (Art. 4).

The President of the Republic sees that the Constitution is respected; he ensures the regular functioning of the public authorities, as well as the continuity of the state. He is the protector of national independence and territorial integrity (Art. 5). He is elected for 7 years by direct universal suffrage (Art. 6). He appoints a Prime Minister and, on the latter's advice, appoints and dismisses the other members of the Government (Art. 8). He presides over the Council of Ministers (Art. 9). He can dissolve the National Assembly, after consultation with the Prime Minister and the Presidents of the two Houses (Art. 12). He appoints to the civil and military offices of the state (Art. 13). In times of crisis, he may take such emergency powers as the circumstances demand; the National Assembly cannot be dissolved during such a period (Art. 16).

*Previous Presidents of the Fifth Republic:*

General Charles André Joseph de Gaulle, 8 Jan. 1959–28 April 1969 (resigned); Alain Poher (interim), 28 April 1969–20 June 1969; Georges Jean Raymond Pompidou, 20 June 1969–2 April 1974 (died); Alain Poher (interim), 2 April 1974–27 May 1974; Valéry Giscard d'Estaing, 27 May 1974–21 May 1981.

*President of the Republic:* François Mitterrand (elected 10 May 1981; took office 21 May 1981; re-elected 8 May 1988).

The government determines and conducts the policy of the nation (Art. 20). The Prime Minister directs the operation of the Government, is responsible for national defence and ensures the execution of laws (Art. 21). Members of the Government must not be members of Parliament (Art. 23).

The Council of Ministers was composed as follows in March 1989:

*Prime Minister:* Michel Rocard (PS).

*National Education, Youth and Sport:* Lionel Jospin (PS).

*Economy, Finance and Budget:* Pierre Bérégovoy (PS).

*Equipment and Housing:* Maurice Faure (MRG).

*Foreign Affairs:* Roland Dumas (PS).

*Ministers:*

*Justice, Keeper of the Seals:* Pierre Arpaillange (non-party).

*Defence:* Jean-Pierre Chevènement (PS).

*Interior:* Pierre Joxe (PS).

*Industry and Regional Planning:* Roger Fauroux (non-party).

*European Affairs:* Edith Cresson (PS).

*Transport and Sea:* Michel Delebarre (PS).

*Civil Service and Administrative Reform:* Michel Durafour (UDF-Rad.).

*Labour, Employment and Vocational Training:* Jean-Pierre Soisson (UDF-PR).

*Co-operation and Overseas Development:* Jacques Pelletier (UDF-Rad.).

*Culture, Communication, Major Works and the Bicentenary:* Jack Lang (PS).

*Overseas Departments and Territories and Government Spokesman:* Louis Le Pen (PS).

*Agriculture and Forestry:* Henri Nallet (PS).

*Postal Services, Telecommunications and Space:* Paul Quilès (PS).

*Relations with Parliament:* Jean Poperen (PS).

*Solidarity, Health and Social Protection:* Claude Evin (PS).

*Research and Technology:* Hubert Curien (PS).

*Foreign Trade:* Jean-Marie Rausch (UDF-CDS).

*Ministers-Delegate:* Michel Charasse (PS) (*Budget*), Olivier Stirn (PS) (*Tourism*), Alain Decaux (non-party) (*Relations with Francophone countries*), Jacques Mellick (PS) (*Sea*), Jacques Chérèque (PS) (*Regional Planning and Redeployment*), Théo Braun (PS) (*Elderly*), Edwige Avice (PS) (*Foreign Affairs*), François Doubin (MRG) (*Trade and Artisan Industries*), Catherine Tasca (non-party) (*Communication*).

There were also 17 Secretaries of State.

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the Senate; the National Assembly is elected by direct suffrage and the Senate by indirect suffrage (Art. 24). It convenes as of right in two ordinary sessions per year, the first on 2 Oct. for 80 days and the second on 2 April for not more than 90 days (Art. 28).

The National Assembly comprises 577 Deputies, elected for a 5-year term from single-member constituencies – 555 in Metropolitan France and 22 in the various overseas departments and dependencies. The General Election, held in June 1988, resulted in a composition (by group, including 'affiliates') of 275 *Parti Socialiste* (including 9 *Mouvement des Radicaux de Gauche* and 6 other 'affiliates'), 40 *Union Du Centre* (*Centre des Démocrates Sociaux*), 132 *Rassemblement Pour la République* (Gaullists), 90 *Union de la Démocratie Française* (of which 58 *Parti Républicaine*), 25 *Parti Communiste Française* and 15 others.

The Senate comprises 319 Senators elected for 9-year terms (one-third every 3 years) by an electoral college in each Department or overseas dependency, made up of all members of the Departmental Council or its equivalent in overseas dependencies, together with all members of Municipal Councils within that area; there are 296 Senators for Metropolitan France, 13 for the Overseas Departments and dependencies, and 10 for French citizens residing outside France and its dependencies. Following the partial elections held in Sept. 1986, the Senate was composed of (by group, including 'affiliates') 154 UDF, 77 RPR, 73 *Groupe Socialiste* (including 9 MRG) and 15 *Groupe Communiste*.

The Constitutional Council is composed of 9 members whose term of office is 9 years (non-renewable), one-third every 3 years; 3 are appointed by the President of the Republic, 3 by the President of the National Assembly, and 3 by the President of the Senate; in addition, former Presidents of the Republic are, by right, life members of the Constitutional Council (Art. 56). It oversees the fairness of the elections of the President (Art. 58) and Parliament (Art. 59) and of referenda (Art. 60), and acts as a guardian of the Constitution (Art. 61).

The Economic and Social Council advises on Government and Private Members' Bills (Art. 69). It comprises representatives of employers', workers' and farmers' organizations in each Department and Overseas Territory.

*National flag:* The Tricolour of three vertical stripes of blue, white, red.

*National anthem:* La Marseillaise (words and music by C. Rouget de Lisle, 1792).

*Local Government:* France is divided into 22 regions for national development work, for planning and for budgetary policy. Under far-reaching legislation on decentralisation promulgated in March 1982, state-appointed Regional Prefects were abolished and their executive powers transferred to the Presidents of the Regional Councils, which are to be directly elected.

There are 96 *départements* within the 22 regions each governed by a directly-elected *Conseil Général*. From 1982 their Presidents' powers are greatly extended to take over local administration and expenditure from the former Departmental prefects, now called 'Commissioners of the Republic' with responsibility for public order. The *arrondissement* (325 in 1982) and the *canton* (3,714 in 1982), have little administrative significance.

The unit of local government is the *commune*, the size and population of which vary very much. There were, in 1982, in the 96 metropolitan departments, 36,433 communes. Most of them (31,122) had less than 1,500 inhabitants, and 16,144 had less than 300, while 227 communes had more than 30,000 inhabitants. The local affairs of the commune are under a Municipal Council, composed of from 9 to



36 members, elected by universal suffrage for 6 years by French citizens of 21 years or over after 6 months' residence. Each Municipal Council elects a mayor, who is both the representative of the commune and the agent of the central government.

In Paris the *Conseil de Paris* is composed of 109 members elected from the 20 *arrondissements*. It combines the functions of departmental *Conseil Général* and Municipal Council.

**DEFENCE.** The President of the Republic exercises command over the Armed Forces. He is assisted by the High Council of Defence (*Conseil Supérieur de Défense*), which studies defence problems, and by two Committees (*Comité de Défense* and *Comité de Défense restreint*) which formulate directives. The Prime Minister is responsible for national defence; he exercises his military responsibilities and co-ordinates inter-ministry defence activities through the General Secretariat of National Defence (SGDN). Under the Prime Minister's authority, the Minister of Defence is responsible for the execution of military policy, in particular the organization and administration of the Armed Forces.

On 5 July 1969 the Ministry of Defence assumed responsibility from the former individual service Ministries for the Army, Air Force and Navy. The Ministry prepares general directives for negotiations relating to defence. The preparation and control of the Armed Forces is exercised by the Chief of Staff of the Armed Forces, the Chiefs of Staff of the 3 services—Army, Navy and Air—and the head of the *Gendarmerie*.

French forces are not formally under the NATO command structure. About 48,000 French service personnel are stationed in the Federal Republic of Germany, with a further 15,000 stationed in other overseas locations.

The General Directorate for Armament (DGA) is responsible for all aspects of the procurement of defence equipment. It employs about 73,000 personnel, and co-ordinates another 217,000 others employed in the defence industry.

**Army.** The Army consisted in 1988 of 297,822 personnel, of whom 112,244 were regular soldiers and 185,578 conscripts serving 12 months, as well as 40,846 civilians.

The Territorial Defence Forces consist of 7 zone brigades, 23 joint-services divisional regiments (RIAD), an infantry division and a Rhine division. They provide the main operational defence of French territory.

The peace-time tactical units comprise the Mechanized Armoured Corps (CBM) and the Rapid Intervention Force (FAR). The CBM forms the 1st Army of 170,000 men, with headquarters in Strasbourg, and is organized, equipped and trained for action in the Central Europe theatre; it consists of 6 armoured divisions, 2 light armoured divisions and 2 motorized rifle divisions, plus artillery, engineering, signals, parachute, transport, supply and naval infantry and artillery units. It also includes 5 nuclear artillery regiments equipped with 30 launchers for 'Pluton' missiles.

The headquarters of the FAR are at Maisons-Laffite. It comprises 55,000 men organized, equipped and trained for rapid engagement either in Europe or over large distances elsewhere; it includes a parachute division, an air-portable marine division, a light armoured division, an alpine division and an air-mobile division, together with various specialized units.

Equipment includes 1,339 AMX-30 and 300 AMX-13 main battle tanks, 1,082 AMX-10 armoured vehicles, 2,870 armoured vehicles, 500 155-mm guns, 177 Roland anti-aircraft missile systems and 1,440 Milan anti-tank weapons.

The *Aviation Légère de l'Armée de Terre* (ALAT) with about 7,000 personnel is an integral part of the Army, equipped with 677 helicopters of various types for observation, reconnaissance, combat area transport, liaison and supply duties.

**Gendarmerie.** The para-military police force exists to ensure public security and maintain law and order, as well as participate in the operational defence of French territory as part of the armed forces. It consists of (1988) 87,497 personnel including 9,582 conscripts and 948 civilians. It comprises a mobile force of over 18,000 personnel and 120 departmental forces with over 51,000 personnel, together with

specialised units. It is equipped with 28 VBC-90 armoured gun-carriers, 121 light armoured cars, 155 armoured vehicles and 33 troop transport vehicles, as well as 42 helicopters and 6 light aircraft.

**Navy.** The French coast and its hinterland are organized in 3 maritime regions, each under the authority of a Maritime Prefect (with headquarters in Cherbourg, Brest and Toulon); the seas and oceans are divided into 4 zones, with the Maritime Prefects in Brest and Toulon as Cs.-in-C. of home-based naval aircraft and vessels in the Atlantic and Mediterranean zones respectively, while 2 Flag Officers command the overseas naval forces in the Pacific and Indian Ocean zones.

Personnel in 1988 numbered 66,160 officers and other ranks (including 19,158 conscripts) as well as 7,553 civilians. There are (1988) 107 combat vessels totalling 192,585 displacement tons, and 39 support craft totalling 79,450 displacement tons.

The following is a summary of the strength of the fleet at the end of the years shown:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Aircraft carriers	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>1</sup>
Capital submarines <sup>2</sup>	5	5	5	5	6	6	6	6	6
Other submarines	23	22	23	18	20	16	17	18	18
Cruisers	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2
Destroyers	19	20	20	18	18	16	17	17	15
Frigates	22	22	25	26	26	25	25	25	24

<sup>1</sup> Including 1 helicopter-carrier.      <sup>2</sup> Nuclear-powered ballistic missile type.

The principal warships of the French Navy are as follows:

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horsepower	Speed Knots
-----------	------	-------------------------------	----------	--------------------	------------------	----------------

#### Aircraft Carriers

1963	Foch	27,307	{ 40 fixed wing, 4 helicopters }	2 Crotale <sup>1</sup>	126,000	32.0
1961	Clemenceau					

<sup>1</sup> 8 single 3.9 in guns replaced by 2 Crotale missile launchers during 1986-88.

#### Helicopter Carrier

1964	Jeanne d'Arc <sup>1</sup>	10,000	8 helicopters <sup>2</sup>	6 'Exocet' (singles) 4 single 3.9 in.	40,000	26.5
------	---------------------------	--------	----------------------------	--	--------	------

<sup>1</sup> Cruiser type forward, flat-topped midships to aft.      <sup>2</sup> Four in peacetime.

#### Cruiser

1959	Colbert	8,500	—	4 'Exocet' (singles) 1 twin 'Maurica' 2 single 3.9 in.	86,000	31.5
------	---------	-------	---	--	--------	------

#### Capital (Strategic) Submarines

Class	No.	Displacement (submerged) tons	Missile Tubes (vertical)	Nuclear Reactors	Shaft horse- power	Speed Knots
'611'	5	8,940	16 M 20	1	16,000	25 dived 20 surface
'615'	1	8,920	16 M 4	1	16,000	25

The '611' class comprises *Le Redoubtable* (completed 1971), *Le Terrible* (1973), *Le Foudroyant* (1974), *L'Indomptable* (1976) and *Le Tonnant* (1980). *L'Inflexible* (1985) of the '615' class is of intermediate type between her predecessors and an ordered class of 14,200 tonnes of which the first, *Le Triomphant*, was laid down in 1988.

All the named vessels above are also armed with four 21-inch torpedo tubes.

There are also 4 nuclear-powered fleet submarines (*Rubis*, 1983, *Saphir*, 1984, *Casabianca*, 1986, and *Emeraude*, 1987) of 2,670 tons (submerged), 14 diesel-

powered submarines, 17 destroyers, 25 frigates, 3 fast missile craft, 10 fast attack craft, 5 patrol vessels, 10 large mine counter hunters (*ex-ocean* minesweepers), 12 coastal minehunters, 12 coastal minesweepers (3 used as patrol vessels and 4 as diving ships), 8 inshore minesweepers (used as diving and utility tenders), 7 surveying vessels, 2 dock landing ships, 6 tank landing ships, 8 landing craft, 27 minor landing craft, 6 maintenance, repair and depot ships, 5 oilers, 13 boom defence vessels, 8 support ships, 13 transports, 17 training vessels, 40 auxiliary ships and 110 tugs.

A 34,000 ton nuclear-powered aircraft carrier (*Charles de Gaulle*, for completion in 1995), a seventh nuclear-powered ballistic missile submarine, 4 more nuclear-powered fleet (torpedo-armed) submarines and 3 guided missile destroyers are under construction. A second nuclear-powered aircraft carrier, 2 guided missile destroyers, 3 frigates, 4 surveying ships and 5 mine-hunters are projected.

The naval air arm, known usually as *Aéronavale*, includes 3 squadrons of Super Etendard transonic fighter-bombers, 1 squadron of Etendard reconnaissance fighters, 1 squadron of US-built Crusader all-weather fighters, 2 squadrons of Alizé turboprop anti-submarine aircraft, 4 squadrons of Atlantic maritime reconnaissance aircraft and 5 anti-submarine and assault helicopter squadrons with Super Frelon and Lynx helicopters. Strength is 375 aircraft comprising 275 fixed-wing and 100 helicopters.

**Air Force.** Formed as the *Service Aéronautique* in April 1910, the *Armée de l'Air* is organized in 7 major commands. The *Commandement des Forces Aériennes Stratégiques* (CFAS) commands the airborne nuclear deterrent force. The *Commandement de la Force Aérienne Tactique* (FATAC) directs the tactical air forces and is responsible for support of the ground forces. Under FATAC the 1st *Commandement Aérien Tactique* (1° CATAC) controls tactical air units based in eastern France; the 2nd *Commandement Aérien Tactique* (2° CATAC) controls the reserve forces and the air component of the *Force d'Intervention*. The *Commandement du Transport Aérien Militaire* (COTAM) is responsible for air transport operations and participates also in the training and transport of airborne forces. The *Commandement de la Défense Aérienne* (DA) controls French airspace. The *Commandement des Écoles de l'Armée de l'Air* (CEAA) is responsible for training the personnel for all branches of the Air Force. The *Commandement des Transmissions* has responsibility for communications and electronic warfare. Finally, the *Commandement du Génie de l'Air*, made up mainly of Army personnel, undertakes airbase construction and maintenance under Air Force control.

The home-based French Air Force is divided territorially among 4 metropolitan air regions (Metz, Villacoublay, Bordeaux, Aix-en-Provence); overseas, small air units are integrated into the local joint-service commands. There are about 40 combat squadrons plus about 30 transport, helicopter and support squadrons, and the Air Force uses a total of 60 bases.

The strategic, tactical and air defence forces are equipped entirely with jet aircraft. The CFAS has 20 Mirage IV supersonic nuclear bombers, deployed in 2 squadrons supported by 11 C-135F in-flight refuelling tanker transports. The FATAC deploys 6 wings (18 squadrons), with about 105 Mirage III-E and 5F ground-attack fighters, and 120 Jaguar strike aircraft, 3 reconnaissance squadrons with Mirage F1-CRs, and operational conversion units equipped with Mirage III-Bs and Jaguars. The air defence forces have 4 wings, comprising 8 squadrons with 120 Mirage F1-C and 4 squadrons with 60 Mirage 2000C interceptors. The COTAM is organized into 3 wings, equipped with 74 Transall C.160 turboprop transports, 5 DC-8s, 3 C-130s and 105 helicopters. Training aircraft include CAP-10/20/230 piston-engined primary trainers, Epsilon piston-engined and Fouga-Magister jet basic trainers, Mirage F1Bs, Mirage III-Bs, Mirage 2000Bs and two-seat Jaguars in wings for operational transformation; 25 Embraer 121-Xingus bought from Brazil are dual-purpose training/liason aircraft. Delivery of the Mirage 2000N strike aircraft began in 1987. Total officers and other ranks (1989) 95,000; 450 combat aircraft.



## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** France is a member of UN, the Council of Europe, NATO and the European Communities.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For the history of planning in France from 1947 to 1980, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1982-83, p. 474. The Eighth Plan, covering the 1981-85 period, was set aside after the change of government in May 1981 and replaced by an interim plan for 1982-83, followed by a new Ninth Plan for 1984-88.

### Budget.

<i>Receipts</i>		<i>1987-88</i>	
Taxation		1,179,633	
Income tax		220,335	
Corporation tax		121,240	
Payroll tax		28,540	
Taxes on consumption			
V.A.T.		522,887	
Non fiscal receipts		74,430	
Receipts from special allocations account		61,457	
Internal taxes on petroleum products		106,041	
Total gross budget receipts		1,134,930	

<i>Expenditure</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>%</i>	<i>1988</i>	<i>%</i>
Public authorities and general administration	133,888	12.2	142,038	12.3
Education and culture	250,377	22.7	260,820	22.6
Social affairs, health, employment	202,672	18.4	205,383	17.8
Agriculture and countryside	24,466	2.2	24,291	2.1
Housing and town planning	47,954	4.4	52,387	4.6
Transport and communications	47,568	4.3	47,142	4.1
Industry and services	49,939	4.5	51,049	4.4
External affairs	42,954	3.9	44,117	3.8
Defence	177,856	16.1	182,877	15.9
Miscellaneous expenditure	124,770	11.3	142,897	12.4
Total expenditure	1,102,444		1,153,001	

The accounts of revenue and expenditure are examined by a special administrative tribunal (*Cour des Comptes*), instituted in 1807.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc*. Coins are issued for 5, 10, 20 and 50 centimes, 1, 2, 5 and 10 francs; and bank-notes for 10, 20, 50, 100, 200 and 500 francs. In March 1989, £1 sterling = 10.83 *francs*; US\$1 = 6.29 *francs*.

**Banking.** The *Banque de France*, founded in 1800, and nationalized on 2 Dec. 1945, has the monopoly (since 1848) of issuing bank-notes throughout France. Note circulation at 31 Dec. 1981 was 151,900m. francs. As a Central Bank, it puts monetary policy into effect and supervises its application.

The National Credit Council, formed in 1945 to regulate banking activity and consulted in all political decisions on monetary policy, comprises 45 members nominated by the Government; its president is the Minister for the Economy, its vice-president is the Governor of the *Banque de France*. Four principal deposit banks were nationalized in 1945 and the remainder in 1982 but the latter were privatized in 1987. The chief banks (1989) were the Crédit Lyonnais (founded 1863), Banque Nationale de Paris (founded by amalgamation 1966), Société Générale (founded 1864), Crédit Industriel et Commercial, Crédit Commercial de France, the Banque de Paris et des Pays-Bas (Paribas) and the Crédit du Nord.

Total deposits and short- and medium-term held bills by the banks at 31 Dec. 1981 was 1,302,800m. francs. The rest of the banking system comprises the popular banks, the *Crédit agricole*, the *Crédit mutuel*, the *Banque française du commerce extérieur* and the various financial establishments.

The state savings organization (*Caisse nationale d'épargne*) is administered by the post office on a giro system. On 31 Dec. 1981 the private savings banks (*Caisses d'épargne et de prévoyance*), numbering about 500 had 434,000m. francs in deposits; the state savings banks had 206,300m. francs in deposits. Deposited funds are centralized by a non-banking body, the *Caisse de Dépôts et Consignations*, which finances a large number of local authorities and state aided housing projects, and carries an important portfolio of transferable securities.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (in 1m. kwh.): 1985, 332,016, of which 24% was hydro-electric and 49% nuclear. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** In 1988 3.5m. tonnes of crude oil were produced. The greater part came from the Parentis oilfield in the Landes. Reserves (1985) total 221m. bbls. France has an important oil-refining industry, chiefly utilizing imported crude oil. The principal plants are situated in Seine-Maritime and in Bouches-du-Rhône. In 1985, 72.49m. tonnes of petroleum products were refined. There are 7,802 km of pipelines.

There has been considerable development of the production of natural gas and sulphur in the region of Lacq in the foothills of the Pyrenees. Production of natural gas was 10,574m. cu. metres in 1984; reserves (1985) 41,000m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Principal minerals and metals produced in 1983, in 1,000 tonnes: Coal, 33,396; crude steel, 17,616; iron ore, 15,972; pig iron, 13,752; bauxite, 1,660; potash salts, 1,651.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of France (54.9m. hectares) 17.9m. were under cultivation, 12.3m. were pasture, 1.3m. were under vines, 14.6m. were forests and 8.8m. were uncultivated land in 1985.

The following table shows the area under the leading crops and the production for 3 years:

	Area (1,000 hectares)			Produce (1,000 tonnes)		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	4,805	4,865	4,934	28,890	26,570	27,434
Rye	87	81	82	297	229	299
Barley	2,255	2,097	1,992	11,440	10,120	10,490
Oats	433	312	281	1,770	1,066	1,122
Potatoes	211	201	196	7,787	6,021	7,200
Sugar-beet	490	448	446	29,777	25,830	25,725
Maize	1,887	1,884	1,736	12,409	11,641	12,052

Production (1987, in 1,000 tonnes): White sugar, 3,906; wine and must, 70,791,000 hectolitres; beef, 1,567; veal, 342; pork, 1,486; lamb and mutton, 157; poultry, 1,170; milk, 241,797,000 hectolitres.

The production of fruits (other than for cider making) for 3 years was (in 1,000 tonnes) as follows:

	1985	1986	1987		1985	1986	1987
Apples	2,349	2,739	2,424	Melons	254	279	280
Pears	435	370	455	Nuts	48	49	50
Plums	197	209	203	Grapes	10,226	10,800	10,300
Peaches	488	473	473	Strawberries	92	92	99
Apricots	103	114	95	Oranges	1	3	3

In 1987 the numbers of farm animals (in 1,000) were (figures for 1986 in brackets): Horses, 310 (310); cattle, 22,803 (23,102); sheep, 10,580 (10,790); goats, 976 (969); pigs, 12,002 (10,956); poultry, 218,000 (216,000).

**Forestry.** The total area of forested land (1988) was 139,000 sq. km. Timber sold (1982), 28,342m. cu. metres valued at 7,581m. francs.

**Fisheries.** (1987). There were 23,426 fishermen, and 9,620 sailing-boats, steamers and motor-boats. Catch (in tonnes): Fish, total, 513,367; crustaceans, 24,111; shell fish, 226,890.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial production (in 1,000 tonnes) for 3 years was as follows:

	1984	1985	1986
Sulphuric acid	4,531	4,322	3,956
Caustic acid	1,497	1,467	1,517
Sulphur	1,775	1,570	1,170
Polystyrene	485	497	501
Polyvinyl	797	809	880
Polyethylene	1,005	1,019	1,133
Wool	47	50	48
Cotton	151	142	139
Linen	2.2	1.2	1.2
Silk	57	61	66
Man-made fibres, yarns	29	...	...
Jute	3.2	5	4.8
Cheese	1,191	1,219	1,237
Chocolate	122	125	129
Biscuits	400	402	407
Sugar	3,956	3,953	3,435
Fish preparations	102	101	108
Jams and jellies	128	130	137
Cement	22,724	22,224	22,596

Engineering production (in 1,000 units) for 3 years:

	1984	1985	1986
Motor vehicles	3,062	3,016	3,195
Television sets	2,001	1,913	1,869
Radio sets	2,128	2,632	...
Tyres	47,817	47,715	51,138

**Employment** (1985). Out of an economically active population of 21,257,200 persons, there were 1.56m. engaged in agriculture; 1,518,000 in building and public works; 4,181,900 in other manufacturing industries; 889,200 in transport; 609,900 in business, banking and insurance; 3,270,900 in services; 2,950,400 in commerce. In 1987, there were 23,972,302 employed (10,376,646 female), of whom 1,524,932 were foreign workers; in June 1988, there were 2,400,000 unemployed.

**Trade Unions.** The main confederations recognized as nationally representative are: the CGT (Confédération Générale du Travail), founded in 1895; the CGT-FO (Confédération Générale du Travail-Force Ouvrière) which broke away from the CGT in 1948 as a protest against Communist influence therein; the CFTC (Confédération Française des Travailleurs Chrétiens), which was founded in 1919 and divided in 1964, with a breakaway group retaining the old name and the main body continuing under the new name of CFDT (Confédération Française Démocratique du Travail); and the CGC (Confédération Générale des Cadres) formed in 1944 which only represents managerial and supervisory staff.

Membership is estimated because unions are not required to publish figures; but at elections held on 8 Dec. 1982 for labour tribunals, the CGT was supported by 2.8m. members, the CGT-FO by 1.4m., the CFDT by 1.8m., the CFTC by 650,000 and the CGC by 740,000. Except for the CGC unions operate within the framework of industries and not of trades.

**Commerce.** Imports (c.i.f.) and exports (f.o.b.) in 1m. francs for 5 calendar years were (including gold):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	799,754	903,775	962,746	863,172	951,430
Exports	694,659	813,003	870,812	863,652	889,960



The chief imports for home use and exports of home goods are to and from the following countries, in 1m. francs (including gold):

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports (c.i.f)</i>		<i>Exports (f.o.b.)</i>	
	1985	1986	1985	1986
Belgium-Luxembourg	82,288	83,944	73,931	74,906
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	159,057	172,362	130,513	133,085
Italy	96,796	103,388	95,322	97,249
Japan	26,887	32,227	10,736	11,160
Spain	36,535	36,961	29,340	33,780
Switzerland	20,275	22,174	36,499	37,733
UK	78,992	58,078	71,553	72,708
USA	73,246	67,008	75,349	61,027

Total trade between France and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	5,885,715	6,632,410	7,348,574	8,381,984	9,390,207
Exports and re-exports from UK	7,082,389	7,751,751	6,210,216	7,781,546	8,270,408

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 31.9m. tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 345,000 km of departmental road network and, in 1988, 36,800 km of national road network of which 8,590 km were motorway.

**Railways.** As from 1 Jan. 1938 all the independent railway companies were merged with the existing state railway system in a Société Nationale des Chemins de Fer Français, which became a public industrial and commercial establishment in 1983.

In 1987, the State railway totalled 34,680 km (11,692 km electrified) of 1,435 mm gauge, and carried 142m. tonnes of freight and 782m. passengers. A new railway for high-speed trains was completed in 1983 between Paris and Lyon and another is under construction to serve Western France.

The Paris transport network consisted in 1985 of 472 km of underground railway (métro) and regional express railways and 2,134 km of bus routes. In 1985 it carried 1,477m. passengers on the métro and 747m. by bus.

**Aviation.** Air France, UTA and Air Inter, the national airlines, had (31 Dec. 1985) a fleet of 137 aircraft, servicing Europe, North America, Central and South America, West and East Africa, Madagascar, the Near, Middle and Far East. There are local networks in the West Indies and Central America. In 1985 Air France, UTA and Air Inter flew 2,900m. tonne-km (excluding mail) and (1987) 44,358m. passenger-km. There were (1984) 60 airports with scheduled services.

**Shipping.** Merchant ships, on 1 Jan. 1985, numbered 1,174 vessels of 8,945,046 GRT. During 1987, 186.87m. tonnes of cargo were unloaded, of which 92.2m. tonnes were crude and refined petroleum products, and 61.93m. tonnes were loaded; total passenger traffic, 21.5m..

In 1987 there were 8,500 km of navigable rivers, waterways and canals (of which 1,647 km accessible to vessels over 3,000 tons), with a total traffic in 1985 of 64.12m. tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 31 Dec. 1983 the telephone system (government-owned) had 29,373,663 subscribers; the Paris region (including the Paris and Seine-et-Marne, Yvelines, Essonne, Hauts-de-Seine, Seine-Saint-Denis, Val-de-Marne and Val-d'Oise departments) accounted for 5,396,726. In 1985 there were 17,233 post offices.

Radio and television broadcasting was reorganized under the Act of 7 Aug. 1974 which replaced the Office de Radiodiffusion Télévision Française with 4 broadcasting companies, a production company and an audio-visual institute. Organization, development, operation and the maintenance of networks and installations became the responsibility of the Public Broadcasting Establishment. Radio pro-

grammes are broadcast from 363 transmitters by 3 stations: *France Inter*, *France Musique* and *France Culture*. Television programmes are broadcast from 325 transmitters and 4,661 relay stations on 3 channels. There were about 20m. radio and 17.95m. TV sets in use in 1986.

**Cinemas** (1987). There were 5,063 cinemas; attendances totalled 132.5m.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 72 daily papers published in the provinces with a circulation of 6.7m. copies, and 14 published in Paris with a national circulation of 2.5m. Among Paris dailies *France-Soir* sells 539,000; *Le Monde* 445,000; *Le Parisien Libéré* 421,000 and *Le Figaro* 465,000. Among provincial dailies *Ouest-France* (Rennes) sells 783,000; *Le Progrès* (Lyon) 447,000; *La Voix du Nord* (Lille) 372,000; *Sud-Ouest* (Bordeaux) 430,000; *La Dauphine Libérée* (Grenoble) 401,000 and *Le Provençal* (Marseilles) 345,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Since 1958, 472 *tribunaux d'instance* (11 in overseas departments), under a single judge each and with increased material and territorial jurisdiction, have replaced the former *juges de paix* (1 in each canton); and 181 *tribunaux de grande instance* (6 in overseas departments) have taken the place of the former *tribunaux de première instance* (1 in each *arrondissement*).

The *tribunaux de grande instance* usually have a collegiate composition, however a law dated 10 July 1970 has allowed them to administer justice under a single judge in some civil cases.

All petty offences (*contraventions*) are disposed of in the Police Courts (*Tribunaux de Police*) presided over by a Judge on duty in the *tribunal d'instance*. The Correctional Tribunals pronounce upon all graver offences (*délits*), including cases involving imprisonment up to 5 years. They have no jury, and consist of 3 judges of the *tribunal de grande instance*, although in some cases, the correctional tribunal may consist of a single judge. In all cases of a *délit* or a *crime* the preliminary inquiry is made in secrecy by an examining magistrate (*juge d'instruction*), who either dismisses the case or sends it for trial before a court where a public prosecutor (*Procureur*) endeavours to prove the charge.

The 282 Conciliation Boards (*Conseils de Prud'hommes*) each composed of an equal number of employers and employees deal with labour disputes. Commercial litigation goes to one of the 229 Commercial Courts (*Tribunaux de Commerce*) composed of tradesmen and manufacturers elected for 2 years. Other local tribunals exist to deal with social security or rural holdings disputes.

When the decisions of any of these Tribunals are susceptible of appeal, the case goes to one of the 35 Courts of Appeal (*Cours d'Appel*), (including 3 in overseas departments and 2 in overseas territories), composed each of a president and a variable number of members.

The 103 Courts of Assizes are each composed of a President who is a member of the Court of Appeal, and 2 other magistrates, and assisted by a jury of 9 lay people, to try severe criminal offences involving imprisonment of over 5 years. The decisions of the Courts of Appeal and the Courts of Assizes are final; however, the Court of Cassation (*Cour de Cassation*) has discretion to verify if the law has been correctly interpreted and if the rules of procedure have been followed exactly. The Court of Cassation may annul any judgment, and the cases have to be tried again by a Court of Appeal or a Court of Assizes.

Capital punishment was abolished in Aug. 1981.

On 24 Jan. 1973 the first Ombudsman (*médiateur*) was appointed for a 6-year period.

The French penal institutions consist of: (1) *maisons d'arrêt* and *de correction*, where persons awaiting trial as well as those condemned to short periods of imprison-

sonment are kept; (2) central prisons (*maisons centrales*) for those sentenced to long imprisonment; (3) special establishments, namely (a) schools for young adults, (b) hostels for old and disabled offenders, (c) hospitals for the sick and psychopaths, (d) institutions for recidivists. Special attention is being paid to classified treatment and the rehabilitation and vocational re-education of prisoners including work in open-air and semi-free establishments. There are 2 penal institutions for women.

Juvenile delinquents go before special judges and courts; they are sent to public or private institutions of supervision and re-education.

The population at 31 Dec. 1984 of all penal establishments was 43,001 men and 1,497 women.

**Religion.** No religion is officially recognized by the State. Under the law promulgated on 9 Dec. 1905, which separated Church and State, the adherents of all creeds are authorized to form associations for public worship (*associations cultuelles*). The law of 2 Jan. 1907 provided that, failing *associations culturelles*, the buildings for public worship, together with their furniture, would continue at the disposition of the ministers of religion and the worshippers for the exercise of their religion; but in each case there was required an administrative act drawn up by the *préfet* as regards buildings belonging to the State or the departments and by the *maire* as regards buildings belonging to the communes.

There were (1985) 125 archbishops and bishops of the Roman Catholic Church, with (1974) 43,557 clergy of various grades and (1986) 42.35m. members. The Protestants of the Augsburg confession are, in their religious affairs, governed by a General Consistory, while the Reformed Church is under a Council of Administration, the seat of which is in Paris. In 1986 there were about 800,000 Protestants and 2.5m. Moslems.

**Education.** The primary, secondary and higher state schools constitute the 'Université de France'. The Supreme Council of 84 members has deliberative, administrative and judiciary functions, and as a consultative committee advises respecting the working of the school system, the inspectors-general are in direct communication with the Minister. For local education administration France is divided into 25 academic areas, each of which has an Academic Council whose members include a certain number elected by the professors or teachers. The Academic Council deals with all grades of education. Each is under a Rector, and each is provided with academy inspectors, 1 for each department.

Compulsory education is now provided for children of 6–16. The educational stages are as follows:

1. Non-compulsory pre-school instruction for children aged 2–5, to be given in infant schools or infant classes attached to primary schools.

2. Compulsory elementary instruction for children aged 6–11, to be given in primary schools and certain classes of the *lycées*. It consists of 3 courses: Preparatory (1 year), elementary (2 years), intermediary (2 years). Physically or mentally handicapped children are cared for in special institutions or special classes of primary schools.

3. Lower secondary education (*Enseignement du premier cycle du Second Degré*) for pupils aged 11–15, consists of 4 years of study in the *lycées* (grammar schools), *Collèges d'Enseignement Secondaire* or *Collèges d'Enseignement Général*.

4. Upper secondary education (*Enseignement du second cycle du Second Degré*) for pupils aged 15–18:

*Long, général* or *professionnel* provided by the *lycées* and leading to the *baccalauréat* or to the *baccalauréat de technicien* after 3 years.

*Court*, professional courses of 3, 2 and 1 year are taught in the *lycées d'enseignement professionnel*, or the specialized sections of the *lycées*, CES or CEG.



The following table shows the number of schools in 1987-88 and the numbers of pupils in full-time education:

	<i>State</i>		<i>Private</i>	
	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Pupils</i>	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Pupils</i>
Nursery	17,900	5,732,931	385	930,853
Primary	40,235		6,038	
Secondary	7,342	4,481,797	3,905	1,192,813

*Higher Instruction* is supplied by the State in the universities and in special schools, and by private individuals in the free faculties and schools. The law of 12 July 1875 provided for higher education free of charge. This law was modified by that of 18 March 1880, which granted the state faculties the exclusive right to confer degrees. A decree of 28 Dec. 1885 created a general council of the faculties, and the creation of universities, each consisting of several faculties, was accomplished in 1897, in virtue of the law of 10 July 1896.

The law of 12 Nov. 1968 laying down future guidelines for higher education redefined the activities and working of universities. Bringing several disciplines together, 780 units for teaching and research (UER—Unités d'Enseignement et de Recherche) were formed which decided their own teaching activities, research programmes and procedures for checking the level of knowledge gained. They and the other parts of each university must respect the rules designed to maintain the national standard of qualifications.

The UERs form the basic units of 69 Universities and 3 National Polytechnic Institutes (with university status), grouped into 25 *académies* with 980,404 students in 1987.

There are also Catholic university facilities in Paris, Angers, Lille, Lyon and Toulouse with (1981-82) 34,118 students and private universities with (1984-85) 17,646 students.

Outside the university system, higher education (academic, professional and technical) is provided by over 400 schools and institutes, including the various Grand Écoles. In 1984-85 there were 139,827 students in state establishments and 61,996 in private establishments. In 1984-85 there were also 46,258 students in preparatory classes leading to the Grande Écoles, 105,101 in the Sections de Techniciens Supérieurs and 31,513 in the Écoles d'ingénieurs; there were also 18,951 students in Écoles normales d'instituteurs (teacher-training).

**Health.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 138,859 doctors, (1987) 49,610 chemists, (1986) 34,946 dentists, (1986) 294,260 nurses and (1986) 9,725 midwives. On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 3,730 hospitals with 574,000 beds.

**Social Welfare.** An order of 4 Oct. 1945 laid down the framework of a comprehensive plan of Social Security and created a single organization which superseded the various laws relating to social insurance, workmen's compensation, health insurance, family allowances, etc. All previous matters relating to Social Security are dealt with in the Social Security Code, 1956; this has been revised several times, and finally by orders laid down on 21 Aug. 1967, which were ratified on 31 July 1968. The Social Security general scheme covers all wage-earning workers in industry and commerce that are not covered by a special scheme of their own.

**Contributions.** All wage-earning workers or those of equivalent status are insured regardless of the amount or the nature of the salary or earnings. The funds for the general scheme are raised mainly from professional contributions, these being fixed within the limits of a ceiling (assessed at 68,760 francs per annum on 1 Jan. 1981) and calculated as a percentage of the salaries. The calculation of contributions payable for family allowances, old age and industrial injuries relates only to this amount; on the other hand, the amount payable for sickness, maternity expenses,

disability and death is calculated partly within the limit of the 'ceiling' and partly on the whole salary. These contributions are the responsibility of both employer and employee, except in the case of family allowances or industrial injuries, where they are the sole responsibility of the employer.

Contributions and benefits paid in 1984 (in 1 m. francs) were:

	<i>Contributions</i>	<i>Benefits</i>
Health service	259,258	219,476
Industrial injuries	34,049	25,551
Old age pensions	135,243	123,414
Family benefits	93,948	91,561

*Self-employed Workers.* From 17 Jan. 1948 allowances and old-age pensions were paid to self-employed workers by independent insurance funds set up within their own profession, trade or business. Schemes of compulsory insurance for sickness were instituted in 1961 for farmers and in 1966, with modifications in 1970, for other non-wage-earning workers.

*Social Insurance.* The orders laid down in Aug. 1967 ensure that the whole population can benefit from the Social Security Scheme; at present all elderly persons who have been engaged in the professions, as well as the surviving spouse, are entitled to claim an old-age benefit; 98% of the population, both working and retired, are covered by a compulsory scheme of insurance for sickness, the remaining 2% who are not covered by a compulsory insurance scheme have been able to participate in a voluntary scheme since 1967; the whole population benefit from the legislation regarding family allowances.

*Sickness Insurance* refunds the costs of treatment required by the insured and the needs of dependants. A decree of 12 Oct. 1976 laid down conditions on which students of 20 or over at public or private educational institutions, who do not benefit from a social security scheme in their own right, are guaranteed insurance benefits for sickness or maternity, holding their parents entitlement until the end of the academic year in which they attain their 21st birthday, provided they have proof that their studies have been interrupted by illness. The general principles relating to medical care consist of: A free choice by the patient of his doctor, his pharmaceutical chemist, his place of treatment, etc.; the medical practitioner is granted freedom of prescription. Reimbursement is not as a rule made in full; the insured person usually pays between 10% and 30% of the legal rate except in cases of exemption. The insured who is recognized as medically unfit for work receives daily allowances equal to half of the wage which has been used to calculate the contributions, or to two-thirds of this if the person has 3 or more children. These allowances may be paid for 3 years, plus 1 additional year if the insured undergoes re-adaptation treatment or takes up fresh vocational training.

*Maternity Insurance* covers the costs of medical treatment relating to the pregnancy, confinement and lying-in period; the beneficiaries being the insured person or the spouse. The daily allowances are equal to 90% of the salary on which contributions were calculated.

*Insurance for Invalids* is divided into 3 categories: (1) those who are capable of working; (2) those who cannot work; (3) those who, in addition, are in need of the help of another person. According to the category, the pension rate varies from 30 to 50% of the average salary for the last 10 years, with additional allowance for home help for the third category.

*Old-age Pensions* for workers were introduced in 1910 and are now fixed by the Social Security Code of 28 Jan. 1972. Since 1983 people who have paid insurance for at least 37½ years (150 quarters) receive at 60 a pension equal to 60% of basic salary. People who have paid insurance for less than 37½ years but no less than 15 years can expect a pension equal to as many 1/150ths of the full pension as their quarterly payments justify. In the event of death of the insured person, the husband or wife of the deceased person receives half the pension received by the latter. Compulsory supplementary schemes ensure benefits equal to 70% of previous earnings.

*Family Allowances.* The system comprises: (a) Family allowances proper, equivalent to 25.5% of the basic monthly salary (1,246 francs) for 2 dependent children, 46% for the third child, 41% for the fourth child, and 39% for the fifth and each subsequent child; a supplement equivalent to 9% of the basic monthly salary for the second and each subsequent dependent child more than 10 years old and 16% for each dependent child over 15 years. (b) Family supplement (519 francs) for persons with at least 3 children or one child aged less than 3 years. (c) Antenatal grants. (d) Maternity grant equal to 260% of basic salary; increase for multiple births or adoptions, 198%; increase for birth or adoption of third or subsequent child, 457%. (e) Allowance for specialized education of handicapped children. (f) Allowance for orphans. (g) Single parent allowance. (h) Allowance for opening of school term. (i) Allowance for accommodation, under certain circumstances. (j) Minimum family income for those with at least 3 children. Allowances (b), (g), (h) and (j) only apply to those whose annual income falls below a specified level.

*Workmen's Compensation.* The law passed by the National Assembly on 30 Oct. 1946 forms part of the Social Security Code and is administered by the Social Security Organization. Employers are invited to take preventive measures. The application of these measures is supervised by consulting engineers (assessors) of the local funds dealing with sickness insurance, who may compel employers who do not respect these measures to make additional contributions; they may, in like manner, grant rebates to employers who have in operation suitable preventive measures. The injured person receives free treatment, the insurance fund reimburses the practitioners, hospitals and suppliers chosen freely by the injured. In cases of temporary disablement the daily payments are equal to half the total daily wage received by the injured. In case of permanent disablement the injured person receives a pension, the amount of which varies according to the degree of disablement and the salary received during the past 12 months.

A law promulgated on 11 Oct. 1946 has created a medical labour service of doctors who hold a diploma of 'industrial health specialists'. These doctors are entrusted with the control of hygiene and health matters in all industrial undertakings or groups of undertakings. In addition, it is the duty of this medical service to examine wage-earners when they are engaged, to carry out periodical medical examinations and to ensure the application of the existing rules relating to safety in work.

*Unemployment Benefits* vary according to circumstances (full or partial unemployment) which are means-tested. Since 1926 unemployment benefits have been paid from public funds. Full unemployment benefit amounts to 13.50 francs per day for the head of the family and 5.40 francs for the spouse or a dependent person. After 3 months the payment is reduced to 12.40 francs.

A collective agreement signed on 31 Dec. 1958 between the national council of employers and certain trade unions has established a system of special allowances for totally unemployed workers in industry and trade. The costs are shared by employers (2.76% of wages) and employees (0.84%) and the benefits vary according to circumstances. The system is now governed by the law of 16 Jan. 1979. A similar agreement of 21 Feb. 1968 extends the system to partial unemployment.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of France in Great Britain (58 Knightsbridge, London, SW1X 7JT)

*Ambassador:* Vicomte Luc de la Barre de Nanteuil (accredited 28 Feb. 1986).

Of Great Britain in France (35 rue du Faubourg St Honoré, 75383 Paris)

*Ambassador:* Sir Ewen Fergusson, KCMG.

Of France in the USA (4101 Reservoir Rd., NW, Washington, D.C., 20007)

*Ambassador:* Emmanuel de Margerie.

Of the USA in France (2 Ave. Gabriel, Paris)

*Ambassador:* Walter Curley.

Of France to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Pierre-Louis Blanc.



### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Institut national de la Statistique et des Études économiques (18, Boulevard Adolphe Pinard, 75014 Paris) is the central office of statistics. It was established by a law of 27 April 1946, which amalgamated the Service National des Statistiques (created in 1941 by merging the Direction de la Statistique générale de la France and the Service de la Démographie) with the Institut de Conjoncture (set up in 1938) and some statistical services of the Ministry of National Economy. The Institut comprises the following departments: Metropolitan statistics, Overseas statistics, Market research and economic studies, Documentation, Research statistics and economics, Informatics, Foreign Economic Studies.

The main publications of the Institut include:

- Annuaire statistique de la France* (from 1878)
- Annuaire statistique des Territoires d'Outre-Mer* (from 1959)
- Bulletin mensuel de statistique* (monthly)
- Documentation économique* (bi-monthly)
- Données statistiques africaines et Malgaches* (quarterly)
- Economie et Statistique* (monthly)
- Tableaux de l'Economie Française* (biennially, from 1956)
- Tendances de la Conjoncture* (monthly)

Braudel, F., *The Identity of France: Vol 1, History and Environment*. London, 1988

Caron, F., *An Economic History of Modern France*. London, 1979

Chambers, F. J., *France*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

Crozier, M., *A Strategy for Change: The Future of French Society*. MIT Press, 1982

Peyrefitte, A., *The Trouble with France*. New York, 1981

Pinchemel, P., *France: A Geographical, Social and Economic Survey*. CUP, 1987

Tuppen, J. N., *France*. Folkestone, 1981

## OVERSEAS DEPARTMENTS

On 19 March 1946 the French colonies of Guadeloupe, French Guiana, Martinique and Réunion each became an Overseas Department of France, with the same status as the departments comprising Metropolitan France. The former territory of Saint Pierre and Miquelon held a similar status from July 1976 until June 1985, when it became a *collectivité territoriale*.

## GUADELOUPE

**HISTORY.** Discovered by Columbus in Nov. 1493, the two main islands were then known as *Karukera* (Isle of Beautiful Waters) to the Carib inhabitants, who resisted Spanish attempts to colonize. A French colony was established on 28 June 1635, and apart from short periods of occupancy by British forces, Guadeloupe has since remained a French possession. On 19 March 1946 Guadeloupe became an Overseas Department; in 1974 it additionally became an administrative region.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Guadeloupe consists of a group of islands in the Lesser Antilles. The two main islands, Basse-Terre to the west and Grande-Terre to the east, are separated by a narrow channel, called Rivière Salée. Adjacent to these are the islands of Marie Galante (*Ceyre* to the Caribs) to the south-east, La Désirade to the east, and the Îles des Saintes to the south. The islands of St Martin and St Barthélemy lie 250 km to the north-west.

	Area in sq. km	Census 1974	Census 1982	Chieftown
St Martin <sup>1</sup>	54 <sup>2</sup>	6,191	8,072	Marigot
St Barthélemy	21	2,491	3,059	Gustavia
Basse-Terre	848	135,746	135,341	Basse-Terre
Grande-Terre	590	159,424	163,668	Pointe-à-Pitre
Îles des Saintes	13	3,084	2,901	Terre-de-Bas
La Désirade	20	1,682	1,602	Grande Anse
Marie-Galante	158	15,912	13,757	Grand-Bourg
	1,705	324,530	328,400	

<sup>1</sup>Northern part only; the southern third is Dutch.

<sup>2</sup>Includes uninhabited Tintamarre.

Population (estimate, 1988) 336,300. 77% are mulatto, 10% black and 10% mestizo, but the populations of St Barthélemy and Les Saintes are still mainly descended from 17th-century Breton and Norman settlers. French is the official language, but a Creole dialect is spoken by the vast majority except on St Martin.

The seat of government is Basse-Terre (13,656 inhabitants in 1982) at the south-west end of that island but the largest towns are Pointe-à-Pitre (25,310 inhabitants), the economic centre and main port, and its suburb, Les Abymes (51,837 inhabitants).

Vital statistics (1985): Live births, 6,760; deaths, 2,313; marriages, 1,611.

**CLIMATE.** Warm and humid. Pointe-à-Pitre. Jan. 74°F (23.4°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 71" (1,814 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Guadeloupe is administered by a *Conseil Général* of 42 members (assisted by an Economic and Social Committee of 40 members) and a Regional Council of 39 members, both directly elected for terms of 6 years. It is represented in the National Assembly by 4 deputies, in the Senate by 2 senators and on the Economic and Social Council by 2 councillors. There are 3 *arrondissements*, sub-divided into 34 communes, each administered by an elected municipal council. The French government is represented by an appointed Commissioner.

*Commissioner:* Yves Bonnet.

*President of the Conseil Général:* Dominique Larifla.

*President of the Regional Council:* Félix Proto.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1983 balanced at 1,633m. francs.

**Banking.** The main commercial banks are the Banque des Antilles Françaises (with 6 branches), the Banque Populaire de la Guadeloupe (with 6 branches), the Banque Nationale de Paris (14 branches), the Crédit Agricole (26), the Banque Française Commerciale (8), the Société Générale de Banque aux Antilles (5) and the Chase Manhattan Bank (1). The Caisse Centrale de Coopération économique is the official bank of the department and issues its bank-notes.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1986 totalled 315m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Chief products (1986) are bananas (157,000 tonnes), sugar-cane (773,000 tonnes), rum (64,883 hectolitres of pure alcohol in 1984). Other fruits and vegetables are grown for domestic consumption. 11.8m. flowers were grown in 1984.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 76,000; goats, 32,000; sheep, 4,000; pigs, 44,000.

**Forestry.** In 1985, there were 395 sq. km of forests. In 1984, 51,848 cu. metres of wood were produced.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1984 was 8,500 tonnes; crustacea (120 tonnes), shell fish (300 tonnes).

**COMMERCE.** Trade for 1985 (in 1m. francs) was imports 5,745 and exports 669. 60% of imports were from France, while 63% of exports went to France and 18% to Martinique. In 1985 bananas formed 43% of the exports, sugar 10% and rum 7%. St Martin and St Barthélemy are free ports.

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 212,000 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 3,500 km of roads. There were 87,785 passenger cars and 33,350 commercial vehicles in 1981.

**Aviation.** Air France and 7 other airlines call at Guadeloupe. In 1984 there were

31,451 arrivals and departures of aircraft and 1,325,500 passengers at Raizet (Pointe-à-Pitre) airport and, 6,682 aircraft movements and 116,000 passengers at Marie-Galante airport.

**Shipping.** Guadeloupe is in direct communication with France by means of 12 steam navigation companies. In 1983, 1,239 vessels arrived to disembark 74,921 passengers and 1,035,800 tonnes of freight and to embark 74,999 passengers and 470,600 tonnes of freight.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1984 there were 47 post offices and 64,916 telephones. RFO broadcasts for 17 hours a day in French and television broadcasts for 6 hours a day. There were (1983) 25,000 radio and (1981) 32,886 TV receivers.

**Newspapers.** There was (1984) 1 daily newspaper (*France-Antilles*) with a circulation of 25,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 4 *tribunaux d'instance* and 2 *tribunaux de grande instance* at Basse-Terre and Pointe-à-Pitre; there is also a court of appeal and a court of assizes at Basse-Terre.

**Religion.** The majority of the population are Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 62,303 pupils at 284 primary schools and 45,843 at secondary schools. The University Antilles-Guyane had 4,809 students in 1984-85, of which Guadeloupe itself had 1,870.

**Health.** The medical services in 1985 included 11 public hospitals (2,891 beds) and 18 private clinics (1,256 beds). There were 416 physicians, 127 dentists, 127 pharmacists, 70 midwives and 1,131 nursing personnel.

## Further Reading

*Information:* Office du Tourisme du départemente, Point-à-Pitre. *Director:* Eric W. Rotin. Lasserre, G., *La Guadeloupe, étude géographique*. 2 vols. Bordeaux, 1961

# GUIANA

## Guyane Française

**HISTORY.** A French settlement on the island of Cayenne was established in 1604 and the territory between the Maroni and Oyapock rivers finally became a French possession in 1817. Convicts settlements were established from 1852, that on off-shore Devil's Island being most notorious; all were closed by 1945. On 19 March 1946 the status of Guiana was changed to that of an Overseas Department and in 1974 also became an administrative region.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** French Guiana is situated on the north-east coast of South America, and has an area of about 83,533 sq. km (32,252 sq. miles) and a population at the 1982 Census of 73,012, of whom 3,000 were tribal Indians; estimate (1988) 90,500. The chief towns (1982 populations) are Cayenne, the capital (38,135), Kourou (6,465) and Saint-Laurent-du-Maroni (5,042). These figures exclude the floating population of miners, officials and troops and about 10,000 Surinamese refugees since 1986.

In 1982, 43% of the inhabitants were of Creole origin, 14% Chinese, 11% from Metropolitan France and 8% Haitian. 90% of the population speak Creole.

Vital statistics (1988): Live births, 2,700; deaths, 562; marriages (1985), 317.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** French Guiana is administered by a General Council of 19 members and a Regional Council of 31 members, both directly elected for terms of 6 years. It is represented in the National Assembly by 2 deputies and in the Senate by 1 senator. The French government is represented by



an appointed Commissioner. There are 2 *arrondissements* (Cayenne and Saint-Laurent-du-Maroni) sub-divided into 20 communes.

*Commissioner:* Jacques Dewatre.

*President of the General Council:* Elie Castor.

*President of the Regional Council:* Georges Othily.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1987 balanced at 847m. francs, excluding duplicated items and national expenditure.

**Banking.** The Banque de la Guyane has a capital of 10m. francs and reserve fund of 2.39m. francs. Loans totalled 2,762m. francs in 1987. Other banks include Banque National de Paris-Guyane, Crédit Martiniquais and Banque Française Commerciale.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1987 totalled 208m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Agriculture.** Only 13,461 hectares are under cultivation. The crops (1987, in tonnes) consist of rice (13,500), fruit and vegetables (20,500) and sugar-cane (2,111).

Livestock (1987): 17,000 cattle, 10,000 swine and (1986) 117,000 poultry.

**Forestry.** The country has immense forests (about 66,700 sq. km in 1988) rich in many kinds of timber. Roundwood production (1986) 84,330 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The fishing fleet for shrimps comprises 42 US and 38 French boats. The catch in 1987 totalled 4,268 tonnes of shrimps and 2,874 tonnes of fish. Production of *Macrobrachium Rosenbergii* (an edible river shrimp) totalled 70 tonnes.

**COMMERCE.** Trade in 1m. francs:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	2,158	2,287	2,065	2,371
Exports	327	300	55	323

In 1986, 8% of imports came from Trinidad and Tobago, 65% from France and 11% from the EEC, while 36% of exports went to the USA, 16% to Japan, 22% to the French West Indies and 23% to France. In 1985, shrimps formed 53% of exports and timber, 9%.

Total trade between Guiana and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	795	124	55	380	1,148
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,106	1,146	1,052	1,134	4,232

**TOURISM.** There were 66,100 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Three chief and some secondary roads connect the capital with most of the coastal area by motor-car services. There are (1986) 372 km of national and 341 km of departmental roads. In 1987 there were 20,098 passenger cars, 427 trucks and 121 buses. Connexions with the interior are made by waterways which, despite rapids, are navigable by local craft.

**Aviation.** In 1987, 101,564 passengers and 2,934 tonnes of freight arrived and 103,077 passengers and 1,484 tonnes of freight departed by air at Rochambeau International Airport (Cayenne). There are regular internal flights to 7 other airports.

The base of the European Space Agency (ESA) is located near Kourou and has been operational since 1979.

**Shipping.** The chief ports are: Cayenne, St-Laurent-du-Maroni and Kourou.

Dégrad des Cannes (the port of Cayenne) is visited regularly by ships of the Compagnie Général Maritime, the Compagnie Maritime des Chargeurs Réunis and Marseille Fret. In 1986, 542 vessels arrived and departed. 118,000 tonnes of petroleum products arrived and 238,000 tonnes of other freight arrived and departed.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1988), 22,771. There are wireless stations at Cayenne, Oyapoc, Régina, St-Laurent-du-Maroni and numerous other locations.

RFO-Guyane (Guiana Radio) broadcasts for 133 hours each week on medium- and short-waves and FM in French. Television is broadcast for 71 hours each week on 2 channels. In 1982 there were 40,000 radio and 9,500 TV receivers.

**Newspapers.** There was (1988) 1 daily newspaper (*Presse de la Guyane*) with a circulation of 1,000 and a bi-weekly paper (*France-Guyane*) with a circulation of 5,500.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** At Cayenne there is a *tribunal d'instance* and a *tribunal de grande instance*, from which appeal is to the regional *cour d'appel* in Martinique.

**Religion.** In 1980, 87% of the population was Roman Catholic and 4% Protestant.

**Education.** Primary education has been free since 1889 in lay schools for the two sexes in the communes and many villages. In 1986 public primary schools had 890 teachers and 9,563 pupils, the *lycées* and *collèges d'enseignement secondaire*, 793 teachers and 9,085 pupils. Private schools had 152 teachers and 2,224 pupils. The *Institut Henri Visioz* forms part of the *Université des Antilles-Guyane*, with 253 students.

**Health.** There were (1986) 160 physicians, 44 dentists, 33 pharmacists, 29 midwives and 496 nursing personnel. In 1987 there were 3 hospitals with 748 beds and 3 private clinics with 162 beds.

## MARTINIQUE

**HISTORY.** Discovered by Columbus in 1493, the island was known to its inhabitants as *Madinina*, from which its present name was corrupted. A French colony was established in 1635 and, apart from brief periods of British occupation, has since remained under French control. On 19 March 1946 its status was altered to that of an Overseas Department, and in 1974 it also became an administrative region.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island, situated in the Lesser Antilles between Dominica and St Lucia, occupies an area of 1,079 sq. km (417 sq. miles). The population, 1982 Census, was 328,566 (estimate, 1988, 336,000), of whom 99,844 lived in Fort-de-France, the capital and chief commercial town, which has a landlocked harbour nearly 40 sq. km in extent. Other towns (1982) are Lamentin (26,367), Schoelcher (16,412) and La Trinité (10,087).

French is the official language, but the majority of the population use a Creole dialect.

Vital statistics (1987): Live births 6,338; deaths 2,153; marriages 1,537.

**CLIMATE.** Fort-de-France. Jan. 74°F (23.5°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 72" (1,840 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The island is administered by a *Conseil Général* of 45 members and a Regional Council of 41 members, both directly elected for terms of 6 years. The French government is represented by an appointed Commissioner. There are 3 *arrondissements*, sub-divided into 34

communes, each administered by an elected municipal council. Martinique is represented in the National Assembly by 4 deputies, in the Senate by 2 senators and on the Economic and Social Council by 2 councillors.

*Commissioner:* Edouard Lacroix.

*President of the Conseil Général:* Émile Maurice.

*President of the Conseil Régional:* Aimé Cesaïre.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget, 1988, balanced at 2,451m. francs.

**Banking.** The Institut d'Émission des Départements d'Outre-mer is the official bank of the department. The Caisse Centrale de Coopération économique is used by the Government in assisting the economic development of the department.

The Banque des Antilles Françaises (with a capital of 32.5m. francs), the Crédit Martiniquais (30.4m. francs), the Société Générale de Banque aux Antilles (15m. francs), the Banque Française Commerciale (49m. francs), the Banque Nationale de Paris, Crédit Agricole and the Chase Manhattan Bank are operating at Fort-de-France.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1987 totalled 513m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Bananas, sugar and rum are the chief products, followed by pineapples, food and vegetables. In 1987 there were 3,458 hectares under sugar-cane, 6,766 hectares under bananas and 893 hectares under pineapples. Production (1987): Sugar, 6,365 tonnes; rum, 99,693 hectolitres; cane for sugar, 93,535 tonnes; cane for rum, 121,835 tonnes; bananas (1985) 190,000 tonnes; pineapples (1985) 25,000 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): 43,000 cattle, 88,000 sheep, 47,000 pigs, 45,000 goats and 2,000 horses.

**Forestry.** Production (1985) 11,000 cu. m. Forests comprise 26% of the land area.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1987 was 3,100 tonnes.

## COMMERCE. Trade in 1m. francs:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	5,983	6,050	6,065	6,708
Exports	1,351	1,300	1,496	1,163

In 1987 the main items of import were crude petroleum and foodstuffs; main items of export were petroleum products (14%), bananas (46%) and rum (13%); 65% of imports came from France and 64% of exports went to France and 24% to Guadeloupe.

Total trade between Martinique and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	229	126	14	712	83
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,980	2,776	21,230	10,705	3,886

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 261,139 tourists (67% from France).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 7 km of motorway, 260 km of national roads, 618 km of district roads and 755 km of local roads. In 1985 there were 8,179 passenger cars and 1,828 commercial vehicles registered.

**Aviation.** In 1987, 1,185,248 passengers arrived and departed by air at Fort-de-France-Lamentin airport.

**Shipping.** The island is visited regularly by French, American and other lines. In 1987, 1,330 commercial vessels called at Martinique and discharged 8,970 passengers and 1,509,625 tonnes of freight and embarked 7,744 passengers and 678,568 tonnes of freight, excluding about 150,000 passengers calling in transit.



**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1985, 46 post offices and, 81,985 telephones. Radio-telephone service to Europe is available. In 1984 there were 46,000 radio and 42,500 TV receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there was 1 daily newspaper with a circulation of 30,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by 2 *tribunaux d'instance*, a *tribunal de grande instance*, a regional court of appeal, a commercial court, a court of assizes and an administrative court.

**Religion.** In 1982, 94% of the population was Roman Catholic.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 6 and 16 years. In 1986, there were 17,630 pupils in nursery schools, 32,362 pupils in primary schools, 34,657 pupils in secondary schools and 7,672 students at technical college. The *Institut Henri Visioz*, forms part of the *Centre Universitaire Antilles-Guyane*, which had (1986) 3,056 students.

**Health.** There were (1985) 18 hospitals with 3,626 beds, 492 doctors, 150 pharmacists, 121 dentists and 124 midwives.

### Further Reading

*Annuaire statistique I.N.S.E.E. 1977-80*, Martinique, 1982

*La Martinique en quelques chiffres*, Martinique, 1982

*Guide Economique des D.O.M.-T.O.M.*, Paris, 1982

## RÉUNION

**HISTORY.** Réunion (formerly Île Bourbon) became a French possession in 1638 and remained so until 19 March 1946, when its status was altered to that of an Overseas Department; in 1974 it also became an administrative region.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island of Réunion lies in the Indian Ocean, about 640 km east of Madagascar and 180 km south west of Mauritius. It has an area of 2,512 sq. km (968.5 sq. miles) and population of 515,798 (March 1982 census); estimate (1988) 574,800. The capital is Saint-Denis (1982 census) 109,072; Saint-Pierre, 58,412. Most inhabitants speak a creole language, but French is official and Gujarati is also spoken.

Vital statistics (1985): Live births, 13,111; deaths, 3,050.

The small islands of Juan de Nova, Europa, Bassas da India, Îles Glorieuses and Tromelin, with a combined area of 32 sq. km, are all uninhabited and lie at various points in the Indian Ocean adjacent to Madagascar. They remained French after Madagascar's independence in 1960, and are now administered by Réunion. Both Mauritius and the Seychelles claim Tromelin (transferred by the UK from the Seychelles to France in 1954), and Madagascar claims all 5 islands.

**CLIMATE.** A sub-tropical maritime climate, free from extremes of weather, though the island lies in the cyclone belt of the Indian Ocean. Conditions are generally humid and there is no well-defined dry season. Saint-Denis. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 56" (1,400 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The island is administered by a *Conseil Général* of 36 members and a Regional Council of 45 members, both directly elected for terms of 6 years. Réunion is represented in the National Assembly by 5 deputies, in the Senate by 2 senators, and in the Economic and Social Council by 1 councillor. There are 4 *arrondissements*, sub-divided into 24 communes each administered by an elected municipal council. The French government is represented by an appointed Commissioner.

*Commissioner:* Jean Anciaux.

*President of the Conseil Général:* Auguste Legros.

*President of the Conseil Régional:* Pierre Lagourgue.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1987 balanced at 2,938m. French francs.

**Banking.** The Institut d'émission des Départements d'Outre-mer has the right to issue bank-notes. Banks operating in Réunion are the Banque de la Réunion (Crédit Lyonnais), the Banque Nationale de Paris Internationale, the Caisse Régionale de Crédit Agricole Mutuel de la Réunion, the Banque Française Commerciale (BFC) CCP, Trésorerie Générale, and the Banque de la Réunion pour l'Economie et la Développement.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 394m. kwh.

**Agriculture** (1986). The chief produce is sugar (241,000 tonnes), molasses (1984, 69,353 tonnes), bananas (5,000 tonnes), rum (1984, 98,037 hectolitres), maize (14,000 tonnes), potatoes (4,000 tonnes), onions (1984, 1,831 tonnes), bananas (5,000 tonnes), pineapples (4,000 tonnes), tomatoes (3,000 tonnes), vanilla (1984, 168 tonnes), essences and tobacco.

**Livestock** (1987): 19,000 cattle, 74,000 pigs, 3,000 sheep, 43,000 goats and 4m. poultry.

**Forestry.** There were (1985) 103,330 hectares of forest. Roundwood production (1983) 33,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** In 1985 the catch was 2,180 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry** (1985). Total number of workers (in 418 firms employing 10 or more) 16,000. The sugar industry employed 2,900.

**Commerce.** Trade in 1m. French francs:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	3,749	4,311	5,304	6,410	6,895	7,457
Exports	554	571	688	662	695	802

The chief export is sugar, forming (1985) 72% by value. In 1985 (by value) 65% of imports were from, and 53% of exports to, France.

Total trade between Réunion and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	407	1,391	12,259	1,056	1,372
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,327	4,081	4,225	8,624	8,536

**Tourism.** There were 93,476 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1984, 1,711 km of roads. There were 92,900 registered vehicles in 1984.

**Railways.** In 1984 there were 614 km of railways serving only the sugar plantations.

**Aviation.** Air France maintains an air service 6 times a week. In 1985, 210,121 passengers and 6,625 tonnes of freight arrived and 210,764 passengers and 3,666 tonnes of freight departed at Saint-Denis-Gillot airport.

**Shipping.** Four shipping lines serve the island. In 1985, 362 vessels visited the island to discharge 1,122,800 tonnes of freight and 1,900 passengers, and load 340,000 tonnes of freight and 1,900 passengers at Pointe-des-Galets.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are telephone and telegraph connexions with Mauritius, Madagascar and metropolitan France. There are 38 post offices and a central telephone office; number of telephones (1984), 85,861.

*France Régions 3* broadcast in French on medium- and short-waves for more than 18 hours a day. There are 2 television channels broadcasting for 70 hours a week. In 1984 there were 114,500 radio and 107,500 TV receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1986 there were 25 cinemas with a seating capacity of 10,200.

**Newspapers.** There were (1985) 3 daily newspapers with a combined circulation of 70,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 3 *tribunaux d'instance*, 2 *tribunaux de grande instance*, 1 *Cour d'Appel*, 1 *tribunal administratif* and 2 *conseils de prud'homme*.

**Religion.** In 1980, 96% of the population was Roman Catholic and 2% Moslem.

**Education.** Secondary education is provided in (1983–84) 6 *lycées*, 50 *collèges*, and 9 *lycées d'enseignement technique* with 66,653 pupils altogether and in 13 private secondary schools with 3,407 pupils. Primary education is given in 336 public schools with 4,018 teachers and 106,437 pupils; and in 28 private schools, with 306 teachers, and 8,827 pupils. The *Université Française de l'Océan Indien* (founded 1971) had 2,674 students and 82 teaching staff in 1984.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 21 hospitals with 3,879 beds; in 1984 there were 762 physicians, 183 dentists, 180 pharmacists, 102 midwives and 1,791 nursing personnel.

### Further Reading

*Bulletin de l'Académie de la Réunion.* Biennial  
*Bulletin de la Chambre d'Agriculture de la Réunion*  
*Panorama de l'Economie de la Réunion.* 1983  
*Statistiques et Indicateurs Economiques.* 1983

## TERRITORIAL COLLECTIVITIES

### MAYOTTE

**HISTORY.** Mayotte was a French colony from 1843 until 1914, when it was attached, with the other Comoro islands, to the government-general of Madagascar. The Comoro group was granted administrative autonomy within the French Republic and became an Overseas Territory.

When the other 3 islands voted to become independent (as the Comoro state) in 1974, Mayotte voted against this and remained a French dependency. In Dec. 1976, it became (following a further referendum) a Territorial Collectivity.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mayotte, east of the Comoro Islands, consists of a main island (362 sq. km) with 57,363 inhabitants at the 1985 Census, containing the chief town, Mamoundzou (12,119); and the smaller island of Pamanzi (11 sq. km) lying 2 km to the east, with 9,775 inhabitants in 1985, containing the old capital of Dzaoudzi (5,675). The whole territory covers 373 sq. km (144 sq. miles) and had a 1985 Census population of 67,138; estimate (1988) 77,300. The spoken language is Mahorian (akin to Comoran, an Arabized dialect of Swahili), but French remains the official and commercial language.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The island is administered by a *Conseil Général* of 17 members, directly elected for a 6-year term. The French government is represented by an appointed Commissioner. Mayotte is represented by 1 deputy in the National Assembly and by 1 member in the Senate. There are 17 communes, including 2 on Pamanzi.



*Commissioner:* Akli Khider.

*President of the Conseil Général:* Younoussa Bamana.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1984, revenue was 137.1m. francs (44% being subsidies from France) and expenditure 148.4m. francs. The 1985 Budget balanced at 313m. francs.

**Currency.** Since Feb. 1976 the currency has been the (metropolitan) *French franc*.

**Banking.** The *Institut d'Emission d'Outre-mer* and the *Banque Française Commerciale* both have branches in Dzaoudzi.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1982) 5m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The main food crops (1983 production in tonnes) are mangoes (1,500), bananas (1,300), breadfruit (700), cassava (500) and pineapples (200). The chief cash crops are ylang-ylang, vanilla, coffee, copra, cinnamon and cloves.

Livestock (1982): Cattle, 3,000; goats, 10,000; pigs, 2,000.

**Fisheries.** A lobster and shrimp industry has recently been created. Annual catch is about 2,000 tonnes.

**COMMERCE.** In 1984, exports totalled 34m. francs (57% to France in 1983) and imports 182.8m. francs (53% from France). Ylang-ylang formed 48% of exports, vanilla 33% and coffee 12%. Total trade between Mayotte and UK (1984): Imports to UK, £67,000 and exports and re-exports from UK, £343,000.

Total trade between Mayotte and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	22	9	185	654
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,000	506	2,352	3,123

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 93 km of main roads and 137 km of local roads, with 1,528 motor vehicles.

**Aviation.** In 1985, 17,426 passengers and 172 tonnes of freight arrived and departed by air.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1984 there were 6,000 radio receivers. Telephones (1981) 400.

**Newspapers.** There is 1 daily newspaper, *le Journal de Mayotte*.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a *tribunal de première instance* and a *tribunal supérieur d'appel*.

**Religion.** The population is 97% Sunni Moslem, with a small Christian (mainly Roman Catholic) minority.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 14,992 pupils and 407 teachers in 72 primary schools; 1,374 pupils in 1 secondary school; and 475 students in 2 technical and teacher-training establishments.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 9 doctors, 1 dentist, 1 pharmacist, 2 midwives and 51 nursing personnel. In 1981 there were 2 hospitals with 86 beds.

# ST PIERRE AND MIQUELON

## Îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon

**HISTORY.** The tiny remaining fragment of the once extensive French possessions in North America, the archipelago was settled from France in the 17th century and finally became a French territory from 1816 until July 1976, when its status was altered to that of an Overseas Department. In June 1985 it became a Territorial Collectivity.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The archipelago consists of 8 small islands off the south coast of Newfoundland, with a total area of 242 sq. km, comprising the Saint-Pierre group (26 sq. km) and the Miquelon-Langlade group (216 sq. km). The population (census, 1982) was 6,041 of whom 5,415 were on Saint-Pierre and 626 on Miquelon; estimate (1988) 6,400. The chief town is St Pierre.

Vital statistics (1986): Births, 89; marriages, 16; deaths, 48.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The dependency is administered by a *Conseil Général* of 19 members, directly elected for a 6-year term. It is represented in the National Assembly by 1 deputy, in the Senate by 1 senator and in the Economic and Social Council by 1 councillor. The French government is represented by an appointed Commissioner.

*Commissioner:* Jean-René Garnier.

*President of the Conseil Général:* Marc Plantegenest.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The ordinary budget for 1986 balanced at 50m. francs.

**Banking.** Banks include the Banque des Îles Saint-Pierre et Miquelon and the Crédit Saint-Pierrais.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 38m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The islands, being mostly barren rock, are unsuited for agriculture, but some vegetables are grown and livestock kept for local consumption.

**Fisheries.** The catch (the islands' main industry) amounted in 1987 to 15,000 tonnes, chiefly cod.

**COMMERCE.** Trade in 1m. francs:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	387.7	358.4	348.3	343.5
Exports	68.6	106.7	163.1	186.7

In 1987, 85% of imports came from Canada, while 36% of exports were to USA, 27% to France and 11% to UK.

The main exports are fish (88%), shellfish (6%) and fishmeal (5%).

Total trade between St Pierre and Miquelon and UK (British Department of Trade returns in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	743	497	474	77	159
Exports and re-exports from UK	523	370	367	604	470

**Tourism.** There were (1987) 16,193 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were 120 km of roads, of which 50 km were paved. In 1988 there were 1,920 passenger cars and 774 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** Air Saint-Pierre connects St Pierre with Montreal, with Halifax and Sydney (Nova Scotia), and there are occasional flights to and from St John's (Newfoundland).

**Shipping.** St Pierre has regular services to Fortune (Newfoundland) and Halifax. In 1987, 83,875 tonnes of freight were unloaded and 8,501 tonnes loaded, while 991 ships (of 823,000 gross tonnage) entered the harbour.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 4,393 telephones in 1987. RFO broadcasts in French on medium-waves. St Pierre is connected by radio-telecommunication with most countries of the world.

**Cinemas.** There were (1988) 2 cinemas with a seating capacity of 760.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a *tribunal de première instance* and a *tribunal supérieur d'appel* at St Pierre.

**Religion.** The population is chiefly Roman Catholic.

**Education.** Primary instruction is free. There were, in 1988, 8 nursery and primary schools with 980 pupils and 4 secondary schools (including 2 technical schools) with 753 pupils.

**Health.** There was (1988) 1 hospital on St Pierre with 100 beds; 12 doctors and 5 dentists.

### Further Reading

De Curton, E., *Saint-Pierre et Miquelon*. Paris, 1944

De La Rue, E. A., *Saint-Pierre et Miquelon*. Paris, 1963

Ribault, J. Y., *Histoire de Saint-Pierre et Miquelon: Des Origines à 1814*. St Pierre, 1962

## OVERSEAS TERRITORIES

Among the 7 French Overseas Territories remaining since Algerian independence in 1962, the Comoro Islands declared their independence on 6 July 1975 (recognized by France on 31 Dec.), but the island of Mayotte remained French and in Dec. 1976 was classed as a 'territorial collectivity'. The territory of Saint Pierre and Miquelon became a fifth Overseas Department in July 1976, but in June 1985 it acquired the same status as Mayotte. The former French Somaliland (subsequently Territory of the Afars and Issas) became independent on 27 June 1977 as the Republic of Djibouti. The remaining French Overseas Territories are New Caledonia (with its dependancies), French Polynesia, Wallis and Futuna, and the French Southern and Antarctic Territories.

## SOUTHERN AND ANTARCTIC TERRITORIES

### Terres Australes et Antarctiques Françaises

The Territory of the TAAF was created on 6 Aug. 1955. It comprises the Kerguelen and Crozet archipelagoes, the islands of Saint Paul and Amsterdam (formerly Nouvelle Amsterdam), all in the southern Indian ocean, and Terre Adélie.

The Administrator is assisted by a 7-member consultative council which meets twice yearly in Paris; its members are nominated by the Government for 5 years. The 12 members of the Scientific Council are appointed by the Senior Administrator after approval by the Minister in charge of scientific research. A 15-member



Consultative Committee on the Environment, created in Nov. 1982, meets at least once a year to discuss all problems relating to the preservation of the environment. The administration has its seat in Paris.

*Administrateur supérieur:* Claude Corbier.

The staff of the permanent scientific stations of the TAAF (180 in 1989) is renewed annually and forms the only population.

**Kerguelen islands**, situated 48–50° S. lat., 68–70° E. long., consists of 1 large and 85 smaller islands and over 200 islets and rocks with a total area of 7,215 sq. km (2,786 sq. miles), of which Grande Terre occupies 6,675 sq. km (2,577 sq. miles). It was discovered in 1772 by Yves de Kerguelen, but was effectively occupied by France only in 1949. Port-aux-Français has several scientific research stations (75 members). Reindeer, trout and sheep have been acclimatized.

**Crozet islands**, situated 46° S. lat., 50–52° E. long., consists of 5 larger and 15 tiny islands, with a total area of 505 sq. km (195 sq. miles); the western group includes Apostles, Pigs and Penguins islands; the eastern group, Possession and Eastern islands. The archipelago was discovered in 1772 by Marion Dufresne, whose mate, Crozet, annexed it for Louis XV. A meteorological and scientific station (35 members) at Base Alfred-Faure on Possession Island was built in 1964.

**Amsterdam Island and Saint-Paul Island**, situated 38–39° S. lat., 77° E. long. Amsterdam, with an area of 54 sq. km (21 sq. miles) was discovered in 1522 by Magellan's companions; Saint-Paul, lying about 100 km to the south, with an area of 7 sq. km (2.7 sq. miles), was probably discovered in 1559 by Portuguese sailors. Both were first visited in 1633 by the Dutch explorer, Van Diemen, and were annexed by France in 1843. They are both extinct volcanoes. The only inhabitants are at Base Martin de Vivies, established in 1949 on Amsterdam Island, with several scientific research stations, hospital, communication and other facilities (35 members). Crayfish are caught commercially on Amsterdam.

**Terre Adélie** comprises that section of the Antarctic continent between 136° and 142° E. long., south of 60° S. lat. The ice-covered plateau has an area of about 432,000 sq. km (166,800 sq. miles), and was discovered in 1840 by Dumont d'Urville. A research station (30 members) is situated at Base Dumont d'Urville, which is maintained by the French Polar Expeditions.

### Further Reading

*T.A.A.F. Revue trimestrielle*. Paris, 1957 ff.

## NEW CALEDONIA

### Nouvelle Calédonie et Dépendances

**HISTORY.** New Caledonia was annexed by France in 1853 and, together with most of its former dependencies, became an Overseas Territory in 1958.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The territory comprises the island of New Caledonia and various outlying islands, all situated in the south-west Pacific with a total land area of 18,576 sq. km (7,172 sq. miles). In 1983 the population (census) was 145,368, including 53,974 Europeans (majority French), 61,870 Melanesians (Kanakas), 7,700 Vietnamese and Indonesians, 5,570 Polynesians, 12,174 Wallisians, 4,080 others; 1988 (estimate) 153,700. The capital, Nouméa had (1983) 60,112 inhabitants. Vital statistics (1987): Live births, 3,881; deaths, 864.

The main islands are:

1. The island of New Caledonia with an area of 16,372 sq. km, has a total length of about 400 km, and an average breadth of 50 km, and a population (census, 1983) of 127,885. The east coast is predominantly Melanesian, the Nouméa region predominantly French, and the rest of the west coast of mixed population.

2. The Loyalty Islands, 100 km (60 miles) east of New Caledonia, consisting of 3 large islands, Maré, Lifou and Uvéa, and many small islands with a total area of 1,981 sq. km and a population (census, 1983) of 15,510, nearly all Melanesians except on Uvéa, which is partly Polynesian. The chief culture in the islands is that of coconuts and the chief export, copra.
3. The Isle of Pines, 50 km (30 miles) to the south-east of Nouméa, with an area of 152 sq. km and a population of 1,287 (census 1983), is a tourist and fishing centre.
4. The Bélep Archipelago, about 50 km north-west of New Caledonia, with an area of 70 sq. km and a population of 686 (census 1983).

The remaining islands are all very small and none have permanent inhabitants. The largest are the Chesterfield Islands, a group of 11 well-wooded coral islets with a combined area of 10 sq. km, about 550 km west of the Bélep Archipelago. The Huon Islands, a group of 4 barren coral islets with a combined area of just 65 hectares, are 225 km north of the Bélep Archipelago. Walpole, a limestone coral island of 1 sq. km, lies 150 km east of the Isle of Pines; Matthew Island (20 hectares) and Hunter Island (2 sq. km), respectively 250 km and 330 km east of Walpole, are spasmodically active volcanic islands also claimed by Vanuatu.

**CLIMATE.** Nouméa. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,083 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following constitutional changes introduced by the French government in 1985 and 1988, the Territory is administered by a High Commissioner assisted by a 4-member Consultative Committee, consisting of the President of the Territorial Congress (as President) and the Presidents of the 3 Provincial Assemblies. The French government is represented by the appointed High Commissioner. In Sept. 1987 the electorate voted in favour of remaining a French possession.

There is a 54-member Territorial Congress consisting of the complete membership of the 3 Provincial Assemblies.

New Caledonia is represented in the National Assembly by 2 deputies, in the Senate by 1 senator and in the Economic and Social Council by 1 councillor.

The Territory is divided into 3 provinces, Nord, Sud and Îles Loyauté, each under a directly-elected Regional Council. They are sub-divided into 32 communes administered by locally-elected councils and mayors.

Agreement was reached in June 1988 between the French government and representatives of both the European and Melanesian communities on New Caledonia, and confirmed in Nov. 1988 by plebiscites in both France and New Caledonia, under which the territory has been divided into 3 autonomous provinces, and a further referendum on full independence will be held in 1998.

*High Commissioner:* Bernard Grasset.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1988 balanced at 38,171m. francs CFP.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc* CFP, with a parity of CFP *francs* 18·18 to the French *franc*.

**Banking.** There are branches of the Banque de Indosuez, the Banque Nationale de Paris, the Banque de Paris et des Pays-Bas, and the Société Générale, and the Banque de la Nouvelle-Calédonie (Crédit Lyonnais).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1987, production totalled 1,962m. kwh.

**Minerals.** The mineral resources are very great; nickel, chrome and iron abound;

silver, gold, cobalt, lead, manganese, iron and copper have been mined at different times. The nickel deposits are of special value, being without arsenic. Production of nickel ore in 1987, 2.79m. tonnes and chrome ore 152,756 tonnes. About 3,270 sq. km of mining land are owned, and 300 sq. km have been granted for exploitation. In 1987 the furnaces produced 8,283 tonnes of matte nickel and 29,531 tonnes of ferro-nickel.

**Agriculture.** 271,864 hectares are pasture land; about 10,035 hectares are commercially cultivated. The chief agricultural products are beef, pork, poultry, coffee, copra, maize, fruit and vegetables.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 122,000; pigs, 43,000; goats, 19,000.

**Forestry.** There are about 250,000 hectares of forest. Roundwood production (1983) 12,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1987 totalled 5,775 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Local industries include chlorine and oxygen plants, cement, soft drinks, barbed wire, nails, pleasure and fishing boats, clothing, pasta, household cleaners and confectionery.

**Labour.** The working population (1983 census) was 58,000 of whom 19,700 worked in agriculture.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in 1m. francs CFP for 5 years:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	42,201	49,605	55,931	62,939	63,349
Exports	22,035	33,452	43,938	26,249	20,653

In 1987, 48.9% of the imports came from France and 8.2% from Australia, while 43.1% of the exports went to France. Refined minerals (mainly ferro-nickel and nickel) formed 62.2% of exports by value, nickel ore 9.5% and chrome ore 3.8%.

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 60,747 tourists of which 30% French and 27% Japanese.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1987, 6,340 km of roads, of which 1,824 were paved. There were (1986) 44,551 vehicles.

**Aviation.** New Caledonia is connected by air routes with France (by UTA), Australia (UTA and Qantas), New Zealand (UTA and Air New Zealand), Fiji and Wallis and Futuna (by Air Cal International), Vanuatu and Tahiti (by UTA), and Nauru (by Air Nauru). In 1987, 101,123 passengers arrived and 111,381 departed via La Tontouta airport, near Nouméa. Internal services connect Nouméa with 17 domestic air fields.

**Shipping.** In 1987, 418 vessels entered Nouméa unloading 856,120 tonnes of goods and loading 1,265,500 tonnes of which 1m. tonnes comprised mineral exports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1987) 49 post offices and telex, telephone, radio and television services. There were (1987) 21,915 telephones. RFO broadcasts in French on medium- and short-wave radio (there are also 9 private stations) and on 2 television channels for 95 hours a week. Number of receivers (1986): Radio, 85,000; TV, 35,000.

**Cinemas.** In 1988 there were 11 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there was 1 daily newspaper with a circulation of 16,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a *Tribunal de Première Instance* and a *Cour d'Appel* in Nouméa.



**Religion.** In 1980 over 72% of the population was Roman Catholic, 16% Protestant and 4% Moslem.

**Education.** In 1987, there were 32,205 pupils and 2,075 teachers in 276 primary schools, 13,540 pupils in 47 secondary schools, 5,887 students in 28 technical and vocational schools, and 853 students and 75 teaching staff in 5 higher education establishments.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 173 physicians, 37 dentists, 29 pharmacists, 20 midwives and 761 paramedical personnel; 6 hospitals and 24 dispensaries had a total of 1,081 beds.

### Further Reading

*Journal Officiel de la Nouvelle Calédonie*  
*Tableaux de l'Economie Calédonienne, 1988*

## FRENCH POLYNESIA

### Territoire de la Polynésie Française

**HISTORY.** French protectorates since 1843, these islands were annexed to France 1880–82 to form 'French Settlements in Oceania', which opted in Nov. 1958 for the status of an Overseas Territory within the French Community.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total land area of these 5 archipelagoes, scattered over a wide area in the Eastern Pacific is 3,521 sq. km (1,359 sq. miles). The population, Census, 1983, was 166,753; estimate (1988) 191,400.

The official languages are French and Tahitian.

Vital statistics (1987): Births, 5,384; marriages, 1,251; deaths, 1,041.

The islands are administratively divided into 5 *circonscriptions*:

1. The **Windward Islands** (Îles du Vent) (123,069 inhabitants in 1983) comprise Tahiti with an area of 1,042 sq. km and 115,820 inhabitants; Moorea with an area of 132 sq. km and 7,059 inhabitants; Maïo (Tubuai Manu) with an area of 9 sq. km and 190 inhabitants, and the smaller Mehetia and Tetiaroa. The capital is Papeete (78,814 inhabitants including suburbs).

2. The **Leeward Islands** (Îles sous le Vent), comprise the volcanic islands of Raiatea, Tahaa, Huahine, Bora-Bora and Maupiti, together with 4 small atolls, the group having a total land area of 404 sq. km and 19,060 inhabitants in 1983. The chief town is Uturoa on Raiatea.

The Windward and Leeward Islands together are called the Society Archipelago (Archipel de la Société). Tahitian, a Polynesian language, is spoken throughout the archipelago and used as a *lingua franca* in the rest of the territory.

3. The **Tuamotu Archipelago**, consisting of two parallel ranges of 78 atolls lying north and east of the Society Archipelago, have a total area of 690 sq. km; the most populous atolls are Rangiroa, Hao and Tureia. Mururoa and Fangataufa atolls in the south-east of the group have been used by France for nuclear tests since 1966, having been ceded to France in 1964 by the Territorial Assembly.

The *circonscription* (total 11,793 inhabitants) also includes the **Gambier Islands** further east (of which Mangareva is the principal), with an area of 36 sq. km and a population of 582; the chief centre is Rikitea on Mangareva.

4. The **Austral or Tubuai Islands**, lying south of the Society Archipelago, comprise a 1,300 km chain of volcanic islands and reefs. They include Rimatara, Rurutu, Tubuai, Raivaevae and, 500 km to the south, Rapa-Iti, with a combined area of 148 sq. km and 6,283 inhabitants; the chief centre is Mataura on Tubuai.

5. The **Marquesas Islands**, lying north of the Tuamotu Archipelago, with a total area of 1,049 sq. km and 6,548 inhabitants, comprise Nukuhiva, Uapu, Uahuka,

Hivaoa, Tahuata, Fatuhiva and 4 smaller (uninhabited) islands; the chief centre is Taiohae on Nukuhiva.

**CLIMATE.** Papeete. Jan. 81°F (27.1°C), July 75°F (24°C). Annual rainfall 83" (2,106 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the 1984 Constitution, the Territory is administered by a Council of Ministers, whose President is elected by the Territorial Assembly from among its own members; he appoints a Vice-President and 9 other ministers. There is an advisory Economic and Social Committee. French Polynesia is represented in the National Assembly by 2 deputies, in the Senate by 1 senator, and in the Economic and Social Council by 1 councillor. The French government is represented by a High Commissioner. The Territorial Assembly comprises 41 members elected every 5 years by universal suffrage.

At the elections held in March 1986, the *Tahoeraa Huiraatira* (Gaullists) won 22 seats, the *Amuitahiraa No Porinesia* 5 seats, Nationalists 5 seats and others 9 seats.

*High Commissioner:* Jean Montpezat.

*President of the Council of Ministers:* Alexandre Leontieff.

*Flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, red, with the white of double width containing the emblem of French Polynesia in yellow.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The ordinary budget for 1987 balanced at 52,135m. francs CFP.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc* CFP, with a parity of CFP francs 18.18 to the French *franc*.

**Banking.** There are 5 commercial banks, the Bank Indosuez, the Bank of Tahiti, the Banque de Polynésie, Paribas Pacifique and Société de Crédit et de Développement de l'Océanie.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1987 amounted to 244.7m. kwh (18% hydro-electric).

**Agriculture.** An important product is copra (coconut trees covering the coastal plains of the mountainous islands and the greater part of the low-lying islands), production (1987) 14,988 tonnes. Tropical fruits, such as bananas, pineapples, oranges, etc., are grown only for local consumption.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 7,000; horses, 2,000; pigs, 51,000; sheep, 2,000; goats, 3,000; poultry, 1m.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1986 amounted to 1,703 tonnes of fish.

**COMMERCE.** Trade in 1m. francs CFP:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	74,241	85,622	88,939	92,667	90,587
Exports	4,823	5,084	6,564	5,112	9,094

Total trade between the French possessions in the Pacific and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2	23	95	18	56
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,276	3,961	4,890	5,275	3,421

Chief exports are coconut oil and cultured pearls. In 1987, France provided 52% of imports and USA 13%, while (1985) 44% of exports went to France and 21% to USA.

**Tourism.** Tourism is very important, earning almost half as much as the visible exports. There were 161,238 tourists in 1986 (61% from the USA).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 there were 797 km of roads and 44,000 vehicles.

**Aviation.** Seven international airlines connect Tahiti with Paris, Los Angeles and many Pacific locations. There is also a regular air service between Faaa airport (on Tahiti), Moorea and the Leeward Isles with occasional connexions to the other groups. In 1987, 194,218 international passengers arrived and 197,301 departed via the airports at Faaa and on Mooréa and Bora-Bora. Thirty other airfields have regular domestic services.

**Shipping.** Several shipping companies connect France, San Francisco, New Zealand, Japan, Australia, South East Asia and most Pacific locations with Papeete.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1985), 28,192. *Radio Tele Tahiti* belongs to *Société de Radiodiffusion et de Télévision pour l'Outre-mer* (RFO) and broadcasts in French, Tahitian and English on medium- and short-waves and also broadcasts 1 television programme via 5 transmitters. There are also 9 private radio stations. Number of receivers (1986): Radio, 84,000; TV, 26,400.

**Cinemas.** In 1986 there were 8 cinemas in Papeete.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 2 daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a *tribunal de première instance* and a *cour d'appel* at Papeete.

**Religion.** In 1980 it was estimated that 46.5% of the inhabitants were Protestants, 39.4% Roman Catholic and 5.1% Mormon.

**Education.** Education was reorganized in 1975. There were, in 1986-87, 42,079 pupils in 264 primary schools, 13,740 pupils in 41 secondary schools, and 4,156 pupils in technical schools and teacher-training colleges.

**Health.** There were (1987) 273 physicians, 88 dentists, 35 pharmacists, 24 midwives and 464 nursing personnel. There was (1987) a main hospital at Mamao (on Tahiti), 7 secondary hospitals, 2 private clinics, 9 medical centres and 18 infirmaries, with together 1,048 beds.

**DEPENDENCY.** The uninhabited Clipperton Island, 1,000 km off the west coast of Mexico, is administered by the High Commissioner for French Polynesia but does not form part of the Territory; it is an atoll with an area of 5 sq. km.

### Further Reading

- Journal Officiel des Etablissements Françaises de l'Océanie*, and *Supplement Containing Statistics of Commerce and Navigation*. Papeete  
 Andrews, E., *Comparative Dictionary of the Tahitian Language*. Chicago, 1944  
 Bounds, J. H., *Tahiti*. Bend, Oregon, 1978  
 Luke, Sir Harry, *The Islands of the South Pacific*. London, 1961  
 O'Reilly, P. and Reitman, E., *Bibliographie de Tahiti et de la Polynésie française*. Paris, 1967  
 O'Reilly, P. and Teissier, R., *Tahitiens. Répertoire bio-bibliographique de la Polynésie française*. Paris, 1963

## WALLIS AND FUTUNA

**HISTORY.** French dependencies since 1842, the inhabitants of these islands voted on 22 Dec. 1959 by an overwhelming majority in favour of exchanging their status to that of an Overseas Territory, which took effect from 29 July 1961.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Territory comprises two groups of islands (total area 274 sq. km) in the central Pacific. The Îles de Hoorn lie 240 km north-east of Fiji and consist of 2 main islands—Futuna (64 sq. km) and uninhabited Alofi



(51 sq. km). The Wallis Archipelago lies another 160 km further north-east, and comprises one main island – Uvea (159 sq. km), with a surrounding coral reef. The capital is Mata-Utu (815 inhabitants, 1983) on Uvea.

The resident population, census March 1982, was 11,943 (estimate, 1988, 15,400), comprising 7,843 on Uvea and 4,100 on Futuna. About 12,000 Wallisians and Futunians live abroad, mainly in New Caledonia. Wallisian and Futunian are distinct Polynesian languages.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Senior Administrator carries out the duties of Head of the Territory, assisted by a 20-member Territorial Assembly directly elected for a 5-year term. The territory is represented by 1 deputy in the National Assembly, by 1 senator in the Senate, and by 1 member on the Economic and Social Council. There are 3 districts: Singave and Alo (both on Futuna) and Wallis.

*Administrateur supérieur:* Jacques Le Ilénaff.

*President of the Territorial Assembly:* Falakiko Gata.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1982 budget provided for expenditure of 303.8m. francs CFP.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc* CFP, with a parity of CFP francs 18.18 to the French *franc*.

**AGRICULTURE.** The chief products are copra, cassava, yams, taro roots and bananas.

Livestock: Pigs, 29,000 (1987); goats, 8,000 (1987).

**COMMERCE.** Imports (1981) amounted to 667m. francs CFP. There are few exports.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1977 there were 100 km of roads on Uvea.

**Aviation.** In 1980 there were 581 aircraft arrivals and departures at Hihifo airport, on Uvea. There is a weekly flight *via* Vila (Vanuatu) to Nouméa (New Caledonia) and three flights each week to Futuna (Point Vele air strip).

**Shipping.** A regular service links wharves at Mata-Utu and at Singave (Futuna) with Nouméa (New Caledonia), Suva (Fiji) and Vila and Santo (Vanuatu).

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 2 radio stations and 6 post offices. In 1985 there were 340 telephones.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a *tribunal de première instance*, from which appeals can be made to the *cours d'appel* in New Caledonia.

**Religion.** The majority of the population is Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1983, there were 3,962 pupils in 13 primary and lower secondary schools.

**Health.** In 1981 there were 4 physicians, 1 pharmacist, 1 dentist, 5 midwives and 27 nursing personnel. There were (1982) 3 hospitals with 92 beds.

# GABON

*Capital:* Libreville

*Population:* 1.22m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$3,020 (1986)

## République Gabonaise

**HISTORY.** First colonized by France in the mid-19th century, Gabon was annexed to French Congo in 1888 and became a separate colony in 1910 as one of the 4 territories of French Equatorial Africa. It became an autonomous republic within the French Community on 28 Nov. 1958 and achieved independence on 17 Aug. 1960. The first President, Leon M'ba, died on 30 Nov. 1967 and was succeeded on 2 Dec. by his Vice-President, Albert-Bernard (now Omar) Bongo.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Gabon is bounded west by the Atlantic ocean, north by Equatorial Guinea and Cameroon and east and south by Congo. The area covers 267,667 sq. km; its population at the 1970 census was 950,007; estimate (1988) is 1,226,000. The capital is Libreville (350,000 inhabitants, 1983), other large towns being Port-Gentil (123,300), Masuku (formerly Franceville, 38,030), Lambaréné (26,257 in 1978) and Mouanda (22,909 in 1978).

Vital statistics (1975): Birth rate, 3.22%; death rate, 2.22%.

Provincial areas, populations (estimate 1978, in 1,000) and capitals are as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1978</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1978</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Estuaire	20,740	359	Libreville	Nyanga	21,285	98	Tchibanga
Woleu-Ntem	38,465	166	Oyem	Ngounié	37,750	118	Mouila
Ogooué-Ivindo	46,075	53	Makokou	Ogooué-Lolo	25,380	49	Koulamoutou
Moyen-Ogooué	18,535	49	Lambaréné	Haut-Ogooué	36,547	213	Masuku
Ogooué-Maritime	22,890	194	Port-Gentil				

The largest ethnic groups are the Fang (30%) in the north, Eshira (25%) in the south-west, and the Adouma (17%) in the south-east. French is the official language.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is equatorial, with high temperatures and considerable rainfall. Mid-May to mid-Sept. is the long dry season, followed by a short rainy season, then a dry season again from mid-Dec. to mid-Feb., and finally a long rainy season once more. Libreville. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 99" (2,510 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1967 Constitution (as subsequently revised) provides for an Executive President directly elected for a 7-year term, who appoints a Council of Ministers to assist him. The unicameral National Assembly consists of 111 members, directly elected for a 5-year term (latest elections, Feb. 1985) and a further 9 members nominated by the President.

The sole legal political party is the *Parti démocratique gabonais* founded in 1968. It is governed by a Central Committee of 297 members and a 44-member Political Bureau, both elected by the third party congress in Sept. 1986.

*President:* Omar Bongo (re-elected in 1973, 1979 and 1986).

The Council of Ministers was composed as follows in Aug. 1988:

*Prime Minister:* Léon Mébiame.

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Georges Rawiri (*Transport, Social Communications, Water and Forestry*), Etienne-Guy Mouvagha Tchiboba (*Mining*), Emile Kassa-Mapsi (*Civil Service and Administrative Reform*), Simon Essimengane (*Housing and Town Planning*).

*Ministers of State:* Martin Bongo (*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation*), Henri Minko (*Public Lands, Land Registration, Law of the Sea*), François Owono-Nguema (*Culture, Arts and Popular Education*), René Radembino-Coniquet (*Sec.-Gen. to the Presidency*), Jules Bourdés-Ogouliguende (*Higher Education and Scientific Research*), Etienne Moussirou (*Industry and Consumer Affairs*), Richard

Nguema Békale (*Territorial Administration, Local Collectives and Immigration*), Jean-François Ntoutoume-Emane (*Commerce, Technology Transfer and Rationalisation*), Alexandre Sambat (*Tourism, Leisure and National Parks*).

There are also 18 Ministers, 4 Ministers-Delegate and 9 Secretaries of State.

*Flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, yellow, blue.

*Local government:* The 9 provinces, each administered by a governor appointed by the President, are divided into 37 *départements*, each under a prefect.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 all-arms Presidential Guard battalion group with support units, totalling (1989), 1,900 men. There is also a paramilitary force of about 5,000 personnel. France maintains a 600-strong marine battalion.

**Navy.** The small naval flotilla in 1989 comprised 2 new French-built vedettes, 4 fast attack craft, 1 frigate-size amphibious ship, and 1 service tender. Personnel in 1989 totalled 350 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 6 single-seat and 3 two-seat Mirage 5 ground-attack aircraft, and 1 EMB-111 maritime patrol aircraft. Transport duties are performed primarily by 5 Hercules and 1 EMB-110 Bandeirante turboprop aircraft, 3 Nord 262s. Single Mystère 20, F-28 and DC-8 aircraft are used for VIP duties. Three T-34C-1 armed turboprop aircraft, 4 armed Magister trainers and an EMB-110 Bandeirante are operated for *La Présidentiale Garde*. Also in service are 4 Puma, 5 Gazelle, 2 Ecureuil and 4 Alouette III helicopters. Personnel (1989) 600.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Gabon is a member of UN, OAU and OPEC; it is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY.

**Planning.** The Fifth 5-year Plan (1984–88) envisaged public expenditure of 1,228,478m. francs CFA, of which 595,662m. were to develop the infrastructure.

**Budget.** The 1988 budget provided for expenditure of 325,000m. francs CFA and revenue of 265,000m.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the franc CFA, with a parity value of 50 francs CFA to 1 French franc. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100 and 500 *francs* CFA, and banknotes of 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *francs* CFA. In March 1989 £1 = 541.63 *francs* CFA; US\$1 = 314.72 *francs* CFA.

**Banking.** The *Banque des États de l'Afrique Centrale* is the bank of issue. There are 9 commercial banks situated in Gabon. The *Banque Gabonaise de Développement* and the *Union Gabonaise de Banque* are Gabonese controlled.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The semi-public *Société d'énergie et d'eau du Gabon* produced 736m. kwh. in 1985, mainly from thermal plants but increasingly from hydro-electric schemes at Kinguéle (near Libreville), Tchimbélé and Poubara (near Masuku). Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Extraction from offshore fields totalled 8.75m. tonnes in 1988. Gabon operates 2 refineries, at Port-Gentil and at nearby Pointe Clairette. Proven reserves (1984) 490m. bbls.

**Gas.** Natural gas production (1985) was 201m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Production (1986) of manganese ore (from deposits around Moanda in the south-east) amounted to 3m. tonnes. Uranium is mined nearby at Mounana (850 tonnes in 1986). An estimated 850m. tonnes of iron ore deposits, discovered



1971 at Mékambo (near Bélinga in the north-east) await completion of the branch railway line to be exploited. Gold (18 kg in 1982), zinc and phosphates also occur.

**Agriculture.** The major crops (production, 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are: Sugar-cane, 130; cassava, 255; plantains, 170; maize, 11; groundnuts, 8; bananas, 8; palm oil, 3.6; cocoa, 2; coffee, 1 and rice, 1.

Livestock (1987): 9,000 cattle, 83,000 sheep, 63,000 goats, 153,000 pigs.

**Forestry.** Gabon's equatorial forests covering 78% of the land area produced 1.38m. cu. metres of *okoumé* and other softwoods in 1985. Hardwoods (mahogany, ebony and walnut) are also exported.

**Fisheries.** The total catch (1985) amounted to 47,754 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** A sugar refinery at Masuku produced (1984) 15,000 tonnes raw sugar. Most manufacturing is based on the processing of food, timber and mineral resources.

**Labour.** The workforce in 1984 numbered 533,000 of whom 74% were agricultural.

**Commerce.** In 1985 imports totalled 384,000m. francs CFA and exports 876,000m. francs CFA. France and USA are Gabon's principal trading partners. In 1983 petroleum made up 83.5% of exports; metals, 7.5% and timber, 7%.

Total trade between Gabon and the UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	70,775	48,292	36,642	5,357	5,091
Exports and re-exports from UK	20,548	30,588	16,627	11,962	18,808

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1983) 7,513 km of roads and in 1982 there were 16,043 passenger cars and 10,695 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** A 1,435-mm gauge (Transgabonais) railway runs from Owendo *via* N'Djole to Booué and Lastourville, Mouanda and Masuku, opened throughout in 1986. A branch from Booué to Bélinga is also under construction. Total 649 km of 1,437 mm gauge. In 1986, 134,000 passengers and 662,000 tonnes of freight were transported.

**Aviation.** There are 3 international airports at Port-Gentil, Masuku, and Libreville; internal services link these to 65 domestic airfields.

**Shipping.** Owendo (near Libreville), Mayumba and Port-Gentil are the main ports. In 1987 there were 23 merchant vessels of 97,967 GNT. In 1982, 6.8m. tonnes were loaded and 733,000 tonnes unloaded at the ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1985 there were 11,700 telephones, 21,000 television and 100,000 radio licences.

**Cinemas.** In 1974 there were 6 cinemas with a seating capacity of 4,100.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 2 newspapers published in Libreville; *Gabon-Matin* (daily) has a circulation of 18,000 and *L'Union* (weekly) 15,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are *tribunaux de grande instance* at Libreville, Port-Gentil, Lambaréné, Mouila, Oyem, Masuku and Koulamoutou, from which cases move progressively to a central Criminal Court, Court of Appeal and Supreme Court, all 3 located in Libreville. Civil police number about 900.

**Religion.** 84% of the population is Christian (65% Roman Catholic), the majority of the balance following animist beliefs. There are about 10,000 Moslems.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between 6–16 years. In 1984–85 there were

178,111 pupils with 3,837 teachers in 940 primary schools; 25,815 pupils with 1,894 teachers in 51 secondary schools; 13,529 students with 720 teachers in 29 technical and teacher-training establishments.

The Université Omar Bongo, founded in 1970 in Libreville, had (1983–84) 3,228 students and 616 teaching staff.

**Health** In 1985 there were 565 doctors, and in 1977, 20 dentists, 28 pharmacists, 99 midwives and 823 nursing personnel. In 1981 there were 16 hospitals and 87 medical centres, with a total of 4,815 beds, as well as 258 local dispensaries.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Gabon in Great Britain (48 Kensington Ct., London, W8 5DB)

*Ambassador:* Charles Mamadou Diop (accredited 20 Nov. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Gabon (Immeuble CK2, Blvd de l'Indépendance, Libreville)

*Ambassador:* M. A. Goodfellow.

Of Gabon in the USA (2034 20th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Jean Robert Odzaga.

Of the USA in Gabon (Blvd de la Mer, Libreville)

*Ambassador:* Warren Clark, Jr.

Of Gabon to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Laurent-Marie Biffot.

### Further Reading

Bory, P., *The New Gabon*. Monaco, 1978

Remy, M., *Gabon Today*. Paris, 1977

# THE GAMBIA

*Capital:* Banjul

*Population:* 788,163 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$230 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Gambia was discovered by the early Portuguese navigators, but they made no settlement. During the 17th century various companies of merchants obtained trading charters and established a settlement on the river, which, from 1807, was controlled from Sierra Leone; in 1843 it was made an independent Crown Colony; in 1866 it formed part of the West African Settlements, but in Dec. 1888 it again became a separate Crown Colony. The boundaries were delimited only after 1890. The Gambia achieved full internal self-government on 4 Oct. 1963 and became an independent member of the Commonwealth on 18 Feb. 1965. The Gambia became a republic within the Commonwealth on 24 April 1970. The Gambia, with Senegal formed the Confederation of Senegambia on 1 Feb. 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Gambia is bounded west by the Atlantic ocean and on all other sides by Senegal. Area of Banjul (formerly Bathurst) and environs, 87.8 sq. km. In the provinces (area, 10,601.5 sq. km) the settled population (1971) was 275,469, not including temporary immigrants. Total population (census, April 1983), 687,817; (estimate, 1988) 788,163. The largest tribe is the Mandingo (251,997), followed by the Fulas (117,092), Woloffs (91,004), Jolas (64,494) and Sarahulis (51,137). The capital is Banjul, 1983 census (44,188), and the surrounding urban area, Kombo St Mary (101,504). Other principal towns are Serekunda (68,433), Bakau (19,309), Birkama (19,584), Sukuta (7,227), Gunjur (7,115) and Farafenni (10,168).

Birth rate (1983) 49 per 1,000; death rate, 21.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is characterized by two very different seasons. The dry season lasts from Nov. to May, when precipitation is very light and humidity moderate. Days are warm but nights quite cool. The SW monsoon is likely to set in with spectacular storms and produces considerable rainfall from July to Oct., with increased humidity. Banjul. Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 52" (1,295 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Parliament consists of the House of Representatives which consists of a Speaker, Deputy Speaker and 36 elected members; in addition, 4 Chiefs are elected by the Chiefs in Assembly; 5 nominated members are without votes and the Attorney-General is appointed and has no vote. *See* Senegal for details about Senegambia.

A general election was held March 1987. State of parties (Jan. 1988): The People's Progressive Party 31 and the National Convention Party 5.

The Government was in June 1988 composed as follows:

*President:* Sir Dawda Kairaba Jawara.

*Vice-President, Education, Youth, Sports and Culture:* Bakary B. Darbo. *External Affairs:* Alhaji Omar Sey. *Finance and Trade:* Sherif Sisay. *Agriculture:* Saikou Sabally. *Health, Labour, Social Welfare and Environment:* Louise Njie. *Works and Communications:* Alhaji Momodou Cadi Cham. *Economic Planning and Industrial Development:* Mbemba Jatta. *Justice and Attorney-General:* Hassan Jallow. *Water Resources:* Omar A. Jallow. *Information and Tourism:* Dr Lamin Saho. *Interior:* Alhaji Lamin biti Jabang. *Local Government and Lands:* Landing Jallow Sonko.

*National flag:* Three wide horizontal stripes of red, blue, green, with narrower stripes of white between them.

*Local Administration.* The Gambia is divided into 36 districts, each traditionally under a Chief, assisted by Village Heads and advisers. These districts are grouped



into 6 Area Councils containing a majority of elected members, with the Chiefs of the district as *ex-officio* members. The city of Banjul is administered by a City Council.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Gambia is a member of UN, OAU, the Commonwealth, ECOWAS, the Non-Aligned Conference and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for years ending 30 June are (in dalasi):

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87
Revenue	150,500,000	172,300,050	218,080,000	266,730,000
Expenditure	164,908,621	189,279,550	207,524,639	262,531,520

**Currency.** The currency is the *dalasi* and is divided into 100 *butut*. 11.23 *dalasi* = £1 sterling; 6.53 *dalasi* = US\$1 (March 1989).

**Banking.** There are 5 banks in the Gambia, the Standard Bank of Gambia Ltd, Central Bank of the Gambia, Commercial and Development Bank, la Banque Internationale pour le Commerce et l'Industrie (BICI) and Agricultural Development Bank. On 30 Nov. 1978 the government savings bank had about 36,000 depositors holding approximately 992,496 dalasi.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 63m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Heavy minerals, including ilmenite, zircon and rutile, have been discovered (1m. tons up to 31 Dec. 1980) in Sanyang, Batokunku and Kartong areas.

**Agriculture.** Almost all commercial activity centres upon the marketing of groundnuts, which is the only export crop of financial significance; in 1987, 120,000 tonnes were produced. Cotton is also exported on a limited scale. Rice is of increasing importance for local consumption; production (1987) 32,000 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): 300,000 cattle, 200,000 goats, 195,000 sheep, 13,000 pigs and (1982) 300,000 poultry.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1981) 9,700 tonnes, of which 1,100 tonnes were from inland waters.

**LABOUR.** There are 4 large and several small active trade unions.

**TRADE.** Chief items of imports are textiles and clothing, vehicles and machinery, metal goods and petroleum products.

Imports and exports, in 1,000 dalasi:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88 <sup>1</sup>
Imports	358,569	567,631	797,568	844,973
Exports	163,890	204,195	221,319	245,621

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

Chief items of export (1985-86, in 1,000 dalasi): Groundnuts shelled, 33,570; groundnut oil, 15,132; groundnut cake, 4,142; cotton lint, 3,862; fish and fish preparations, 2,507; hides and skins, 1,652. Main imports: Food and live animals, 175,280; basic manufactured goods, 113,916; machinery and transport equipment, 97,850; mineral fuels and lubricants, 56,630.

Total trade between the Gambia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,407	2,823	2,273	3,038	2,927
Exports and re-exports from UK	10,233	11,918	16,707	19,765	19,236

**TOURISM.** In 1985-86, 78,268 tourists visited the Gambia.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 2,990 km of motorable roads, of which 1,718 km rank as all-weather roads including 306 km of bituminous surface and 531 km of laterite gravel. Number of licensed motor vehicles (1983): 3,420 private cars, 775 buses and coaches, 1,219 motorcycles, scooters and mopeds.

**Aviation.** The Gambia is served by Gambia Air Shuttle, Minerve, British Airways, Ghana Airways and Nigeria Airways. The number of aircraft landing at Yundum Airport in 1984–85 was 1,576.

**Shipping.** The chief port is Banjul. In 1985–86, 125,959 tonnes of goods were loaded and 300,212 tonnes unloaded. Internal communication is maintained by steamers and launches. The Gambia River Development Organization was founded in 1978 as a joint project with Senegal to develop the river and its basin. Guinea and Guinea-Bissau were also members in 1984.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are several post offices and agencies; postal facilities are also afforded to all river towns. Telephones numbered 3,476 in Jan. 1980.

Radio Gambia, a government station, broadcasts for about 15 hours a day; Radio Syd, a commercial station, broadcasts for 20 hours. Number of radio receivers (1983, estimate), 66,000.

**Cinemas.** In 1984 there were 14 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** There is an official newspaper and several news-sheets.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by a Supreme Court consisting of a chief justice and puisne judges. It has unlimited jurisdiction but there is a Court of Appeal. Two magistrates' courts and divisional courts are supplemented by a system of travelling magistrates. There are also Moslem courts, group tribunals dealing with cases concerned with customs and traditions, and one juvenile court.

**Religion.** About 90% of the population is Moslem. Banjul is the seat of an Anglican and a Roman Catholic bishop. There are some Methodist missions. Some sections of the population retain their original animist beliefs.

**Education** (1983–84). There were 180 primary schools (2,445 teachers, 60,630 pupils), 16 secondary technical schools (475 teachers, 8,923 pupils), 8 secondary high schools (231 teachers, 4,037 pupils). In 1982–83 there were 8 post-secondary schools (148 teachers, 1,058 pupils). Gambia College, which replaced Yundum College as a teacher-training and vocational centre, opened for agricultural and health students in 1979.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 43 government doctors, 23 private doctors and about 635 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Gambia in Great Britain (57 Kensington Ct., London, W8 5DG)  
*High Commissioner:* Horace R. Monday, Jr.

Of Great Britain in the Gambia (48 Atlantic Rd., Fajara, Banjul)  
*High Commissioner:* Alec Ibbott, CBE.

Of the USA in the Gambia (Fajara (East), Kairaba Ave., Banjul)  
*Ambassador:* Herbert E. Horowitz.

## Further Reading

*The Gambia since Independence 1965–1980.* Banjul, 1980  
Gamble, D. P., *The Gambia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988  
Tomkinson, M., *The Gambia: A Holiday Guide*. London, 1983

# GERMANY

**POST-WAR HISTORY.** Since the unconditional surrender of the German armed forces on 8 May 1945 there has been no central authority whose writ runs in the whole of Germany. Consequently no peace treaty has been signed with a government representing the whole of Germany, and the country is virtually partitioned between the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic.

By the Berlin Declaration of 5 June 1945 the governments of the USA, the UK, the USSR and France assumed supreme authority over Germany. Each of the 4 signatories was given a zone of occupation, in which the supreme power was to be exercised by the C.-in-C. in that zone (*see* map in *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1947). Jointly these 4 C.-in-C. constituted the Allied Control Council in Berlin, which was to be competent in all 'matters affecting Germany as a whole'. The territory of Greater Berlin, divided into 4 sectors, was to be governed as an entity by the 4 occupying powers.

At the Potsdam Conference (17 July–2 Aug. 1945) the northern part of the Province of East Prussia, including its capital Königsberg (renamed Kaliningrad), was transferred to the Soviet Union, pending final ratification by a peace treaty; and it was agreed that, pending the final peace settlement, Poland should administer those parts of Germany lying east of a line running from the Baltic Sea immediately west of Swinemünde along the river Oder to its confluence with the Western Neisse and thence along the Western Neisse to the Czechoslovak frontier.

The agreements between the war-time allies concerning the occupation zones (12 Sept. 1944) and control of Germany (1 May 1945) were repudiated by the USSR on 27 Nov. 1958.

A Treaty was signed in East Berlin between the German Democratic Republic and the Federal Republic of Germany on 21 Dec. 1972 agreeing the basis of relations between the two countries.



# GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

*Capital:* Berlin (East)  
*Population:* 16.6m. (1986)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$10,400 (1985)

## Deutsche Demokratische Republik

**HISTORY.** For the immediate post-war history *see* p. 526. An agreement proclaiming the Oder-Neisse line the permanent frontier between Germany and Poland was concluded between the German Democratic Republic (GDR) and Poland on 6 July 1950. A protocol on the delimitation of the frontier was signed on 27 Jan. 1951.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The GDR is bounded north by the Baltic Sea, east by Poland, south-east by Czechoslovakia and west by Federal Germany. Its area is 108,333 sq. km. Population at the census of 31 Dec. 1981 was 16,705,635. Population in 1986, 16,639,877 (7.88m. male; 12.74m. urban). Population density: 153 per sq. km. There were some 110,000 Sorbs, a Slav minority, in 1985. Administratively, the country is divided into 15 counties (*Bezirk*), subdivided in 1986 into 38 urban districts, 191 rural districts and 7,567 communities, Berlin (East) has county status. Area and population, 1986:

<i>Counties</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population (1,000s)</i>		<i>Per sq. km</i>
		<i>Total</i>	<i>Female</i>	
Berlin (East)	403	1,223.3	647.4	3,035
Cottbus	8,262	883.3	458.1	107
Dresden	6,738	1,771.6	941.6	263
Erfurt	7,349	1,235.0	647.9	168
Frankfurt	7,186	707.6	366.5	98
Gera	4,004	740.5	390.0	185
Halle	8,771	1,785.8	940.5	204
Karl-Marx-Stadt	6,009	1,870.0	998.8	311
Leipzig	4,966	1,373.8	732.9	277
Magdeburg	11,526	1,250.0	656.7	108
Neubrandenburg	10,948	619.2	318.6	57
Potsdam	12,568	1,120.3	583.7	89
Rostock	7,075	903.0	466.0	128
Schwerin	8,672	592.1	307.7	68
Suhl	3,856	549.2	287.2	142

The capital is Berlin (East).

Resident population of the principal towns in 1986:

Berlin (East)	1,223,309	Rostock	245,606	Schwerin	127,823
Leipzig	552,133	Halle	234,768	Cottbus	125,784
Dresden	519,737	Erfurt	216,646	Zwickau	120,573
Karl-Marx-Stadt	314,437	Potsdam	140,198	Jena	107,369
Magdeburg	288,798	Gera	132,303	Dessau	103,508

Vital statistics:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1983	233,756	125,429	49,624	222,702
1984	228,135	133,898	50,320	221,204
1985	227,648	131,514	51,240	225,362
1986	222,269	137,208	52,439	223,521

Rates per 1,000, 1986: Birth, 13.4; marriage, 8.3; divorce, 3.2; death, 13.4; infant mortality, 4.7 stillborn, 9.2 under 1 year. Expectation of life, 1986: Men, 69.5; women, 75.5.

**CLIMATE.** The continental-type climate makes winters crisp and clear, but with cold easterly winds bringing very low temperatures and appreciable snowfall. Summers are hot, but with much convectional rainfall. Berlin. Jan. 31°F (−0.5°C), July 66°F (19°C). Annual rainfall 22.5" (563 mm). Dresden. Jan. 30°F (−1°C), July 65°F (18.5°C). Annual rainfall 27.2" (680 mm). Leipzig. Jan. 31°F (−0.6°C), July 65°F (18.5°C). Annual rainfall 24" (605 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Upon the establishment of the Federal Republic of Germany, the People's Council of the Soviet-occupied zone, appointed in 1948, was converted into a provisional People's Chamber.

On 7 Oct. 1949 the provisional People's Chamber enacted a constitution of the 'German Democratic Republic'.

A new 'socialist constitution' was approved by a referendum on 6 April 1968 (revised in 1974), when 94.54% of the electorate voted for the constitution; it came into force on 8 April 1968. The People's Chamber, is 'the supreme organ of state power'; it elects the Council of State, the Council of Ministers, the National Defence Council and the judges of the Supreme Court. The Speaker is Horst Sindermann.

*Council of State.* The Council is authorized to issue decisions and to interpret existing laws. The Chairman of the Council of State represents the GDR in international law. In March 1989 it consisted of: *Chairman:* Erich Honecker; *Deputy Chairmen:* Manfred Gerlach, Gerald Götting, Heinrich Homann, Egon Krenz, Günter Maleuda, Günter Mittag, Horst Sindermann, Willi Stoph; 15 other members and a secretary.

In March 1989 the Council of Ministers consisted of a Presidium, composed as follows:

*Chairman (i.e. Premier):* Willi Stoph.

*First Deputy Chairmen:* Alfred Neumann, Werner Krolkowski.

*Deputy Chairmen:* Günther Kleiber, Wolfgang Rauchfuss (*Minister of Materials*), Gerhard Schürer (*Chairman, State Planning Commission*), Dr Herbert Weiz (*Minister of Science*), Manfred Flegel, Hans-Joachim Heusinger (*Minister of Justice*), Dr Hans Reichelt (*Minister for the Environment*), Rudolph Schulze (*Minister for Posts and Telecommunications*), Horst Sölle. *Members:* Walter Halbritter (*Director, Office of Prices*), Ernst Höfner (*Minister of Finance*); and 32 other ministers, including: Gen. Heinz Kessler (*Defence*), Oskar Fischer (*Foreign Affairs*), Gerhard Beil (*Foreign Trade*), and Friedrich Dickel (*Interior*).

Supreme political power is in the hands of the Socialist Unity (i.e. Communist) Party of Germany (SED), which had 2.2m. members in 1985, and which is united in the National Front with 4 puppet parties (1985 membership in brackets): Christian Democratic Union (120,000), Democratic Farmers (100,000), Liberal Democratic Party (90,000) and the National Democratic Party (90,000). At the June 1986 elections to the People's Chamber 703 National Front candidates stood for the 500 seats. Unsuccessful candidates were placed on a reserve list. 99.74% of the 12,434,444 electorate voted; 99.94% of votes were for National Front candidates. 161 women were elected.

The Politburo of the SED in March 1989 consisted of: Erich Honecker (*General Secretary*); Hermann Axen; Hans-Joachim Böhme; Horst Dohls; Werner Eberlein; Kurt Hager; Joachim Herrmann; Werner Jarowinski; Heinz Kessler; Günther Kleiber; Egon Krenz; Werner Krolkowski; Siegfried Lorenz; Erich Mielke; Günter Mittag; Erich Mueckenberg; Alfred Neumann; Günther Schabowski; Horst Sindermann; Willi Stoph; Harry Tisch; candidate members: Ingeburg Lange; Gerhard Müller; Margarete Müller; Gerhard Schürer; Werner Walde.

*National flag:* Black, red, golden (horizontal); in the centre, on both sides, the coat of arms showing a hammer and compass with a wreath of grain entwined with a black, red and golden ribbon.

*National hymn:* Auferstanden aus Ruinen (tune by Hanns Eisler).

Local government is conducted by assemblies at each administrative level. 3,235 representatives were elected to the County Assemblies in June 1986.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription for men between 18 and 25 years was introduced on 24 Jan. 1962 (18 months' service in the army, 2 years in the navy and air force).

In 1988 some 422,000 Soviet troops with about 1,000 heavy tanks and 6,000 armoured vehicles were stationed in the GDR. It was announced that these would be reduced in 1989-90. Defence budget cuts of 10% were made in 1989, chiefly along the Polish border.

**Army.** The Army, set up on 1 March 1956, is organized in 2 army corps, including 2 armoured divisions and 4 motorized infantry divisions. Operationally these divisions are subordinate to the Soviet formations of the Warsaw Pact forces. They are armed with about 3,000 tanks (mostly Soviet T-54, T-55, T-62 and T-72), 330 self-propelled guns and ground-to-air 'Guideline' missiles. The Border Police was taken out of the Army in 1974. Total army strength was (1989) 120,000 (71,500 conscripts) with a reserve of 330,000 men.

**Police.** The Police force (*Volkspolizei*) numbered 25,000 security and 46,500 border troops. There are also 450,000 militiamen organized in combat groups. The militia receive military instruction from the People's Police.

**Navy.** The 'People's Navy' (*Volksmarine*) includes 19 frigates, 5 corvettes, 12 missile boats, 20 torpedo boats, 46 coastal minesweepers, 3 intelligence ships, 12 tank landing ships, 10 oilers, 2 training ships, 4 supply ships, 5 survey vessels, 9 small survey craft, 13 buoy tenders, 3 diving vessels, 1 cable layer, 2 torpedo recovery craft, 2 icebreakers, 30 auxiliary ships and service craft and 13 tugs. The Navy operates one squadron of 8 Mi-14 helicopters. Personnel in 1989 totalled 15,000 officers and men, including the GBK Coastal Frontier Guards (*Grenz Brigade Küste*) which operates 40 vessels, many of them *ex-Navy*.

**Air Force.** The *ex-air-police*, set up in Nov. 1950, had in 1989 a strength of about 37,000 officers and men and 375 combat aircraft. Two air defence divisions consist respectively of 2 and 4 regiments (each with 3 squadrons of 12 aircraft), plus a fighter training division, equipped with MiG-21, MiG-23, and MiG-29 supersonic fighters. Tactical aircraft comprise a Regiment of MiG-23s and one equipped with Su-22s, backed up by 1 squadron of MiG-21 reconnaissance fighters. Mi-24 gunship helicopters have been delivered to the German Democratic Republic. Other units include a regiment of Mi-2, Mi-4 and Mi-8 helicopters, a regiment of An-2, Let L-410, Il-14, An-26 and Tu-134 transports and a Flight Training Division with Yak-18, Trener, L-29 Delfin, L-39 Albatross, MiG-15UTI and MiG-21U training aircraft. 'Guideline' and 'Goa' surface-to-air missile units are operational.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The German Democratic Republic is a member of UN and Comecon.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The economy is one of the most successful of the centrally-planned type. Although there have been small concessions to 'market forces', improvement is sought rather in 'comprehensive intensification': rationalization, cutting production costs and combining production units. Extrasystemic features favouring economic performance include the beneficial special relationship with Federal Germany and special support from the USSR. The current 5-year plan is running from 1986 to 1990. Annual increase targets: National income, 4.4%; industrial production, 8.3%.



**Budget.** The budget of the GDR was as follows (in M 1m.) for calendar years:

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Revenue	167,466	182,836	192,410	213,535	235,535	247,013
Expenditure	167,159	182,071	191,689	211,778	234,392	246,368

Of the 1986 expenditures, M 13,014m. were earmarked for health and social services, M 12,895m. for education and M 34,186 for social benefits and pensions.

**Currency.** The circulating Reichsmark notes were in June 1948 exchanged for 'Deutsche Mark' (East), renamed 'Mark of the German Bank of Issue' (MDN) from 1 Aug. 1964 and further renamed 'the Mark of the GDR' (M) from 1967. Money in circulation, 1985: M 13,651m. In March 1989, £1 = 3.19 M; US\$1 = 1.85 M.

**Banking.** The most important banking institutions are the State Bank, which is the bank of issue, the Foreign Trade Bank and the Industrial and Trade Bank. Savings in 1986, totalled M 132,315m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Sources of energy in 1986 included lignite, 83.3%, nuclear power, 9.5% and hydroelectric power, 1.5%. Electricity generation (1986): 115,291 kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** The GDR is a major producer of lignite. Production in 1986, 311m. tonnes. Uranium, cobalt, bismuth, arsenic and antimony are exploited in the western Erzgebirge and eastern Thuringia.

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 6.2m. hectares including 4.7m. hectares arable and 1.25m. hectares grassland. In 1986 there were 3,890 collective farms with 5.27m. hectares of arable land, and 465 state farms with 446,154 hectares of land.

The yield of the main crops in 1986 was as follows (in 1,000 tonnes): Potatoes, 9,997; sugar-beet, 7,747; barley, 4,293; wheat, 4,195; rye, 2,406; oats, 666.

Livestock (in 1,000) in 1987: Cattle, 5,804 (including 2,032 milch cows); pigs, 12,840; sheep, 2,647; poultry, 50,000.

In 1986 there were 161,515 tractors and 17,461 combine harvesters.

**Forestry.** In 1985 there were 2,977,600 hectares of forest. Timber production was 10,115,000 cu. metres in 1986. The industry employed 50,454 people in 1985.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1986) 272,500 tonnes. Inland catch was 24,821 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry produced about 80% of the national income in 1985. There were 3,449 state and co-operative industrial enterprises in 1986. Industry has been organised in integrated trusts (*kombinat*) since 1979. The percentage of privately owned enterprises was 32.8 in 1950 and 2.9 in 1982.

Production of iron and steel (in 1,000 tonnes):

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Crude steel	7,308	7,467	7,168	7,219	7,573	7,853	7,967
Rolled steel	5,128	5,061	4,959	5,084	5,386	5,637	9,361

Other products in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Sulphuric acid, 883; potash fertilizers, 3,485; nitrogen fertilizers, 1,252; petrol, 4,329; diesel fuel, 6,324; caustic soda, 638; cement, 11,988; passenger cars (no.), 218,000; television receivers (no.), 712,000; shoes, 85.5m. pairs; plastics and synthetic resins, 1,045.

**Labour.** In 1986 the workforce was 8.55m., of whom 37.7% worked in industry, 21.1% in the service sector, 10.8% in agriculture and 10.3% in commerce. There is a 5-day working week of 43¼ hours. Annual leave is 4 weeks. Average monthly wage, 1986: M1,170. Membership of the trade union organization was 9.45m. (4.98m. women) in 1986.

**Commerce.** Total trade was as follows (in 1m. Valuta-Mark):

	<i>Total</i>			<i>Total</i>	
	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>		<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
1981	67,000	65,927	1984	83,501	90,402
1982	69,878	75,231	1985	86,701	93,490
1983	76,197	84,227	1986	90,465	91,505

In 1986 machinery made up 47% of exports and fuels and metal ores 40% of imports; 67% of trade is with Communist countries. Largest trading partners: USSR (39%), Czechoslovakia, Poland, Federal Republic of Germany.

Total trade between the German Democratic Republic and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	190,130	204,293	195,513	180,299	152,977
Exports and re-exports from UK	92,270	63,797	81,276	81,489	113,239

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1986, 47,210 km of classified roads including 1,855 km of motorways. 3,486m. passengers and 143.2m. tonnes of goods were carried by public transport. There were 3,462,184 cars, 219,415 lorries, 1,321,832 motorcycles and 57,600 buses. There were 45,203 road accidents in 1986, with 1,484 fatalities.

**Railways.** There were, in 1987, 13,730 km of standard gauge line, of which 3,092 km were electrified. 22,563m. passenger-km and 58,823m. tonne-km of freight were carried.

**Aviation.** Interflug operates services between Berlin and Prague, Warsaw, Budapest, Bucharest, Moscow, Sofia, Belgrade, Tirana, Cairo, Baghdad, Beirut and other capitals. Passengers carried (1985), 1,446,000; freight, 39,678 tonnes.

**Shipping.** In 1986 the merchant fleet had 174 vessels of 1,344,795 GRT. 11.4m. tonnes of freight were carried in 1985. Navigable inland waterways had a total length of 2,319 km. 6m. passengers and 18.5m. tonnes of freight were carried. In 1986 a rail ferry was opened from the Island of Rügen to the ice-free Soviet port of Klaipeda, by-passing Poland.

**Pipeline.** 1,307 km in 1986. Materials transported in 1984: 37.3m. tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 11,971 post offices and agencies and 3,441,484 telephone subscribers. *Staatliches Komitee für Rundfunk*, the governmental broadcasting system, broadcasts 4 programmes on long-, medium- and short-waves, and on FM. The foreign service is broadcast in 11 languages on medium- and short-waves, using the name Radio Berlin International. The transmitters are located at Königswusterhausen, Leipzig and Nauen. Radio Volga transmits on long-waves from Burg and broadcasts in Russian for the Soviet Armed Forces in Germany. More than 80% of the programmes are relays from Radio Moscow. Radio Moscow is using relay transmitters on medium-waves at Leipzig for programmes in German. *Deutsche Freiheitssender 904* and *Deutsche Soldatensender* are clandestine stations claiming to be operating from the Federal Republic although they are located not far from Burg. *Fernsehen der DDR* broadcasts 2 TV programmes in colour, using SECAM-system. Number of wireless licences (1986), 6.7m.; TV licences, 6.14m.

**Cinemas and Theatres** (1986). There were 823 cinemas with a seating capacity of 243,982, and 200 theatres with a capacity of 56,243.

**Newspapers.** There were 541 newspapers and periodicals in 1986. 6,543 book titles were published in 148.6m. copies.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court, responsible to the People's Chamber, and county, district and lay courts. Judges are elected by the people's representative organs. The administration of justice is overseen by the Prosecutor General who

heads a hierarchy of public prosecutors' offices. The death penalty was abolished in July 1987.

**Religion.** According to the census of 1950, 80.5% of the population were Protestants and 11% were Roman Catholics. The Synod of Lutheran Churches was founded in 1969 and embraces 8 regional churches. There were some 1.5m. Lutherans in 1986 with 4,300 priests. In 1988 there were 1.05m. Catholics with 1,200 priests.

**Education.** 10-year comprehensive schooling is compulsory and free. 2-year apprenticeship or secondary schooling may follow: The pupil receives a grant. In 1986 779,700 children were in 13,265 pre-school educational institutions. General education schools numbered 5,895 in 1986 with 170,277 teachers and 2,041,013 pupils. Of these schools 5,198 with 1,942,525 pupils offered 10 years schooling and the remainder 12.

In addition there were 959 vocational schools (*Berufsschulen*) with 16,244 teachers and 369,100 trainees, and 239 technical schools with 160,379 students. There were also 9 universities and 45 other higher education institutes with 131,560 full-time students, including 66,228 women. University entrance is 75% from secondary school and 25% from apprenticeships.

**Health and Welfare.** Medical care is free and funded by compulsory social insurance. Sick pay is 90% of wages for 6 weeks, reducing to 50%. Monthly child allowances in 1986 were M50 for a first child, M100 for a second, M150 for a third. Retirement pensions graduated according to years worked are paid at 60 (women) and 65 (men). Monthly average, 1986: M476. In 1986 there were 538 hospitals and 162 sanatoria with 169,179 beds and 598 health centres. There were 39,157 doctors and 12,182 dentists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the German Democratic Republic in Great Britain (34 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8QB)

*Ambassador:* Dr Gerhard Lindner (accredited 27 July 1984).

Of Great Britain in the German Democratic Republic (108 Berlin, Unter den Linden 32/34)

*Ambassador:* Nigel Broomfield, CMG.

Of the German Democratic Republic in the USA (1717 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* Dr Gerhard Herder.

Of the USA in the German Democratic Republic (1080 Berlin, Neustädtische Kirchstrasse 4-5)

*Ambassador:* Francis J. Meehan.

Of the German Democratic Republic to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Harry Ott.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The central statistical agency is the Staatliche Zentralverwaltung für Statistik (Hans-Beimler-Str. 70-72, 102, Berlin).

*Statistisches Jahrbuch der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*, annual (from 1956).—*Statistisches Taschenbuch der DDR* (annual, from 1959; also Arabic, English, French, Russian, Spanish editions).—*Statistische Praxis* (from 1946).

*The Constitution of the German Democratic Republic*. 3rd ed. Berlin, 1974  
*DDR-Handbuch*. 3rd ed. Cologne, 1985

Åslund, A., *Private Enterprise in Eastern Europe: The Non-Agricultural Private Sector in Poland and the GDR*. London, 1985

Beyme, K. von, and Zimmerman, H., (eds.) *Policy-making in the German Democratic Republic*. Aldershot, 1984

Buch, G., *Namen und Daten der wichtiger Personen der DDR*. 4th ed. West Berlin, 1987



- Childs, D., *The GDR: Moscow's German Ally*. London, 1983.—(ed.), *Honecker's Germany*. London, 1985.—*East Germany to the 1990s: Can it resist Glasnost?* London, 1987
- Dennis, M., *German Democratic Republic*. London, 1987
- Edwards, G. E., *GDR Society and Social Institutions*. London, 1985
- Honecker, E., *Reden und Aufsätze*. Berlin, 1975.—*The German Democratic Republic, Pillar of Peace and Socialism*. New York, 1979.—*Aus meinem Leben*. Berlin, 1980
- Krisch, H., *The German Democratic Republic*. Boulder, 1985
- McAdams, A. J., *East Germany and Detente*. CUP, 1985
- McCauley, M., *The German Democratic Republic since 1945*. London, 1983
- Scharf, C. B., *Politics and Change in East Germany*. London, 1984
- Staritz, D., *Geschichte der DDR, 1949–1985*. Frankfurt-am-Main, 1985
- Wallace, I., *East Germany: The German Democratic Republic*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987
- Weber, H., *Geschichte der DDR*. Munich, 1985
- National Library*: Deutsche Bücherei, Leipzig C.I. *Director*: Helmut Röttsch.—*Deutsche Staatsbibliothek*, Berlin. *Director*: Professor H. Kunze.

# FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

*Capital:* Bonn

*Population:* 61 m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$12,080 (1986)

## Bundesrepublik Deutschland

**HISTORY.** The Federal Republic of Germany became a sovereign independent country on 5 May 1955.

In June 1948 USA, UK and France agreed on a central government for the 3 western zones. An Occupation Statute, which came into force on 30 Sept. 1949, reduced the responsibilities of the occupation authorities. Formally, the Federal Republic of Germany came into existence on 21 Sept. 1949. The Petersberg Agreement of 22 Nov. 1949 freed the Federal Republic of numerous restrictions of the Occupation Statute. In 1951 USA, UK and France as well as other states terminated the state of war with Germany; the Soviet Union followed on 25 Jan. 1955. On 5 May 1955 the High Commissioners of USA, UK and France signed a proclamation revoking the Occupation Statute. On the same day, the Paris and London treaties, signed in Oct. 1954, came into force and established the sovereignty of the Federal Republic of Germany.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Federal Germany is bounded north by Denmark and the North and Baltic Seas, east by the German Democratic Republic, and Czechoslovakia, south-east and south by Austria, south by Switzerland and west by France, Luxembourg, Belgium and the Netherlands. West Berlin is an enclave within the German Democratic Republic. Area: 248,706 sq. km. Population, 1987, 61,170,000 (29,314,000 males). Density 246 per sq. km.

The capital is Bonn.

The Federation comprises 11 Länder (states).

Area and population of the Länder in 1987:

<i>Länder</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population (in 1,000's) (Males in brackets)</i>	<i>Per sq. km</i>
Schleswig-Holstein	15,727	2,612 (1,265)	166
Hamburg	755	1,567 (736)	2,082
Lower Saxony	47,438	7,189 (3,459)	152
Bremen	404	654 (307)	1,618
North Rhine-Westphalia	34,068	16,672 (7,963)	490
Hessen	21,115	5,552 (2,667)	263
Rhineland-Palatinate	19,848	3,606 (1,732)	182
Baden-Württemberg	35,751	9,350 (4,499)	261
Bavaria	70,553	11,043 (5,290)	156
Saarland	2,569	1,041 (496)	406
Berlin (West)	480	1,884 (872)	3,914

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Of these illegitimate</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Divorces</i>
1984	364,140	584,157	52,998	696,118	130,894
1985	364,661	586,155	55,070	704,296	128,268
1986	372,008	625,963	59,808	701,890	122,581
1987	382,377	642,010	62,358	687,419	...

Crude birth rate in 1987 was 10.4 per 1,000 population; marriage rate, 6.3; death rate, 16.3; infantile mortality 8.3; growth rate, -0.7.

In 1987 there were 4,630,200 resident foreigners, including 1,481,400 Turks, 597,600 Yugoslavs, 544,400 Italians and 279,900 Greeks; 36,646 persons were naturalized in 1986, including 12,386 from Romania and 7,251 from Poland.

In 1986 there were 410,100 emigrants and 598,500 immigrants. In 1987 57,379 persons sought asylum. There were 29,459 immigrants from, and 2,625 emigrants to, the GDR in 1986 and 9,705 defectors from GDR in 1988.

Populations of towns of over 100,000 inhabitants in 1987 (in '000):

<i>Town</i>	<i>Land</i>	<i>Popula- tion</i>	<i>Town</i>	<i>Land</i>	<i>Popula- tion</i>
Berlin (West)	Berlin (West)	1,879.2	Saarbrücken	Saarland	184.4
Hamburg	Hamburg	1,571.3	Herne	N. Rhine-Westph.	171.3
Munich	Bavaria	1,274.7	Mülheim a.d.		
Cologne	N. Rhine-Westph.	914.3	Ruhr	N. Rhine-Westph.	170.4
Essen	N. Rhine-Westph.	615.4	Hamm	N. Rhine-Westph.	166.0
Frankfurt am			Solingen	N. Rhine-Westph.	158.4
Main	Hessen	592.4	Leverkusen	N. Rhine-Westph.	154.7
Dortmund	N. Rhine-Westph.	568.2	Osnabrück	Lower Saxony	153.8
Stuttgart	Baden-Württ.	565.2	Ludwigshafen		
Düsseldorf	N. Rhine-Westph.	560.6	am Rhein	Rhinel.-Pal.	152.2
Bremen	Bremen	522.0	Neuss	N. Rhine-Westph.	143.8
Duisburg	N. Rhine-Westph.	514.6	Oldenburg	Lower Saxony	139.3
Hanover	Lower Saxony	505.7	Heidelberg	Baden-Württ.	136.2
Nuremberg	Bavaria	467.4	Göttingen	Lower Saxony	133.8
Bochum	N. Rhine-Westph.	381.2	Darmstadt	Hessen	133.6
Wuppertal	N. Rhine-Westph.	374.2	Bremerhaven	Bremen	132.2
Bielefeld	N. Rhine-Westph.	299.4	Würzburg	Bavaria	127.1
Mannheim	Baden-Württ.	294.6	Regensburg	Bavaria	123.8
Bonn	N. Rhine-Westph.	291.4	Wolfsburg	Lower Saxony	122.0
Gelsenkirchen	N. Rhine-Westph.	283.6	Remscheid	N. Rhine-Westph.	121.0
Karlsruhe	Baden-Württ.	268.3	Recklinghausen	N. Rhine-Westph.	117.6
Münster	N. Rhine-Westph.	267.6	Bottrop	N. Rhine-Westph.	112.3
Wiesbaden	Hessen	266.5	Heilbronn	Baden-Württ.	111.7
Mönchenglad-			Koblenz	Rhinel.-Pal.	110.3
bach	N. Rhine-Westph.	255.1	Paderborn	N. Rhine-Westph.	110.3
Braunschweig	Lower Saxony	247.8	Siegen	N. Rhine-Westph.	107.3
Augsburg	Bavaria	246.0	Offenbach am		
Kiel	Schleswig-Holstein	243.6	Main	Hessen	107.1
Aachen	N. Rhine-Westph.	239.2	Salzgitter	Lower Saxony	105.4
Oberhausen	N. Rhine-Westph.	221.5	Pforzheim	Baden-Württ.	104.5
Krefeld	N. Rhine-Westph.	216.6	Witten	N. Rhine-Westph.	102.2
Lübeck	Schleswig-Holstein	209.2	Bergisch		101.8
Hagen	N. Rhine-Westph.	206.1	Gladbach	N. Rhine-Westph.	
Mainz	Rhinel.-Pal.	189.0	Ulm	Baden-Württ.	100.7
Freiburg im			Hildesheim	Lower Saxony	100.6
Breisgau	Baden-Württ.	186.2	Erlangen	Bavaria	100.2
Kassel	Hessen	185.4			

**CLIMATE.** Oceanic influences are only found in the north-west where winters are quite mild but stormy. Elsewhere a continental climate is general. To the east and south, winter temperatures are lower, with bright frosty weather and considerable snowfall. Summer temperatures are fairly uniform throughout. Frankfurt. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 24" (601 mm). Hamburg. Jan. 31°F (-0.6°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 29" (726 mm). Hanover. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 24" (604 mm). Köln. Jan. 36°F (2.2°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 27" (676 mm). Munich. Jan. 28°F (-2.2°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 34" (855 mm). Stuttgart. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 27" (677 mm).

**CONSTITUTION.** The Constituent Assembly (known as the 'Parliamentary Council') met in Bonn on 1 Sept. 1948, and worked out a Basic Law which was approved by a two-thirds majority of the parliaments of the participating Länder and came into force on 23 May 1949.

The Basic Law (*Grundgesetz*) consists of a preamble and 146 articles. The first section deals with the basic rights which are legally binding for legislation, administration and jurisdiction.

The Federal Republic is a democratic and social constitutional state on a parliamentary basis. The federation is constituted by the 11 Länder (states): Baden-Württemberg, Bavaria, Bremen, Berlin (West), Hamburg, Hessen, Lower Saxony,



North Rhine-Westphalia, Rhineland-Palatinate, Saarland and Schleswig-Holstein. In Berlin (West) the Basic Law applies with certain restrictions. The Basic Law decrees that the general rules of international law form part of the federal law. The constitutions of the Länder must conform to the principles of a republican, democratic and social state based on the rule of law. Executive power is vested in the Länder, unless the Basic Law prescribes or permits otherwise. Federal law takes precedence over state law.

Legislative power is vested in the Federal Assembly (*Bundestag*) and the Federal Council (*Bundesrat*).

The Federal Assembly, elected in universal, direct, free, equal and secret elections, for a term of 4 years.

The Federal Council consists of 45 members appointed by the governments of the Länder in proportions determined by the number of inhabitants. Each Land has at least 3 votes.

The Head of State is the Federal President (*Bundespräsident*) who is elected for a 5-year term by a Federal Convention specially convened for this purpose. This Convention consists of all the members of the Federal Assembly and an equal number of members elected by the Länder parliaments according to proportional representation. Presidents may be re-elected for one further term only.

Executive power is vested in the Federal Government, which consists of the Federal Chancellor, elected by the Federal Assembly on the proposal of the Federal President, and the Federal Ministers, who are appointed and dismissed by the Federal President upon the proposal of the Federal Chancellor.

The Federal Republic has exclusive legislation on: (1) foreign affairs (2) federal citizenship; (3) freedom of movement, passports, immigration and emigration, and extradition; (4) currency, money and coinage, weights and measures, and regulation of time and calendar; (5) customs, commercial and navigation agreements, traffic in goods and payments with foreign countries, including customs and frontier protection; (6) federal railways and air traffic; (7) post and telecommunications; (8) the legal status of persons in the employment of the Federation and of public law corporations under direct supervision of the Federal Government; (9) trade marks, copyright and publishing rights; (10) co-operation of the Federal Republic and the Länder in the criminal police and in matters concerning the protection of the constitution, the establishment of a Federal Office of Criminal Police, as well as the combating of international crime; (11) federal statistics.

For concurrent legislation in which the Länder have legislative rights if and as far as the Federal Republic does not exercise its legislative powers. *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1956, p. 1038.

Federal laws are passed by the Federal Assembly and after their adoption submitted to the Federal Council, which has a limited veto. The Basic Law may be amended only upon the approval of two-thirds of the members of the Federal Assembly and two-thirds of the votes of the Federal Council.

The foreign service, federal finance, railways, postal services, waterways and shipping are under direct federal administration.

In the field of finance the Federal Republic has exclusive legislation on customs and financial monopolies and concurrent legislation on: (1) excise taxes and taxes on transactions, in particular, taxes on real-estate acquisition, incremented value and on fire protection; (2) taxes on income, property, inheritance and donations; (3) real estate, industrial and trade taxes, with the exception of the determining of the tax rates.

The Federal Republic can, by federal law, claim part of the income and corporation taxes to cover its expenditures not covered by other revenues. Financial jurisdiction is uniformly regulated by federal legislation.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of black, red, gold.

*National anthem:* *Einigkeit und Recht und Freiheit* (words by H. Hoffmann, 1841; tune by J. Haydn, 1797).

*Local Government.* Below Land level local government is carried on by elected

councils to counties (*Landkreise*), county boroughs (*Kreisfreie Städte*) and local communities (*Gemeinden*).

**GOVERNMENT.** The 11th Federal Assembly, elected 25 Jan. 1987, is composed of 520 members. These include 22 members for Berlin with limited voting rights. Electoral turnout was 84.4%. The government is formed by a coalition of the Christian Democrat/Christian Socialist (CDU/CSU) alliance with the Free Democrats (FDP). (The CSU is a Bavarian party where the CDU does not stand). Percentage votes, and seats gained (1983 electoral results in brackets): CDU/CSU 44.3%, 223 (48.8%, 244); Social Democratic Party (SPD), 37%, 186 (38.2%, 193); FDP, 9.1%, 46 (7%, 34); Greens, 8.3%, 42 (5.6%, 27).

*Federal President:* Dr Richard von Weizsäcker (sworn in 1 July 1984).

*Speaker of the Federal Assembly:* Rita Süßmuth (elected Nov. 1988).

The Cabinet, in March 1989, was as follows:

*Chancellor:* Dr Helmut Kohl (CDU).

*Without Portfolio:* Wolfgang Schäuble (CDU).

*Deputy Chancellor, Minister of Foreign Affairs:* Hans-Dietrich Genscher (FDP).

*Interior:* Dr Friedrich Zimmermann (CSU).

*Justice:* Hans A. Engelhard (FDP).

*Finance:* Dr Gerhard Stoltenberg (CDU).

*Economics:* Helmut Haussman (FDP).

*Food, Agriculture and Forestry:* Ignaz Kiechle (CSU).

*Intra-German Relations:* Dorothee Wilms (CDU).

*Labour and Social Affairs:* Dr Norbert Blüm (CDU).

*Defence:* Rupert Scholz (CDU).

*Youth, Family Affairs and Health:* Ursula-Maria Lehr (CDU).

*Transport:* Jürgen Warnke (CSU).

*Posts and Telecommunications:* Dr Christian Schwarz-Schilling (CDU).

*Regional Planning, Building and Urban Development:* Dr Oscar Schneider (CSU).

*Research and Technology:* Dr Heinz Riesenhuber (CDU).

*Education and Science:* Jürgen Möllemann (CDU).

*Economic Co-operation:* Hans Klein (CSU).

*Environment:* Walter Wallman (CDU).

**DEFENCE.** The Paris Treaties, which entered into force in May 1955, stipulated a contribution of the Federal Republic to western defence within the framework of NATO and the Western European Union. The Federal Armed Forces (*Bundeswehr*) had a total strength (1988) of 488,400 all ranks (223,450 conscripts) and a further 750,000 reserves.

**Army.** The Army is divided into the Field Army, containing the units assigned to NATO in event of war, and the Territorial Army. The Field Army is organized in 3 corps, comprising 6 armoured, 4 armoured infantry, 1 mountain and 1 airborne divisions. Equipment includes 650 M-48, 2,287 Leopard I and 2,000 Leopard II tanks. An air component operates 210 BO 105P anti-armour helicopters, 105 CH-53G and 187 UH-1D Iroquois transport helicopters, plus 115 Alouette II and 95 BO 105M liaison/observation helicopters. The Territorial Army is organized into 5 Military Districts, under 3 Territorial Commands. Its main task is to defend rear areas and remains under national control even in wartime. Total strength was (1989) 332,100 (conscripts 175,900) Territorial Army 41,700.

**Navy.** The Federal Navy comprises 24 diesel-powered coastal submarines, 7 destroyers, 9 frigates, 5 corvettes, 40 fast missile boats (Exocet armed), a light cruiser-sized training ship, a 3-mast sailing ship, 10 frigate-type support ships, 12 mine-hunters, 18 fast minesweepers, 18 inshore minesweepers, 6 control ships for TROIKA minesweeping system, 22 utility landing craft, 12 beachmaster landing craft, 2 minetransporter, 9 oilers, 11 auxiliary and support ships, 2 ammunition transporters, 2 oil recovery ships, 10 torpedo recovery vessels, 8 coast guard

cutters, 2 repair ships, 28 tugs, 3 icebreakers, and 42 miscellaneous and service craft.

The projected construction programme includes 6 hybrid-powered submarines, 4 frigates, 10 fast mine warfare craft and 20 minehunters.

The Naval Air Arm operates 116 fixed-wing aircraft, including 92 Tornados, 19 Atlantics and 20 DO28s; and 39 helicopters (20 Sea Kings and 19 Lynx). About 20 more Tornados and 5 Lynx were on order for delivery, 1988.

Navy personnel in 1989 totalled 4,655 officers and 30,300 men, including 6,700 in the Naval Air Arm.

**Air Force.** Since Oct. 1970, the *Luftwaffe* has comprised the following commands: German Air Force Tactical Command, German Air Force Support Command (including two German Air Force Regional Support Commands—North and South) and General Air Force Office. Its strength in 1989 was approximately 108,700 officers and other ranks and over 550 first-line combat aircraft. Combat units, including 12 heavy fighter-bomber squadrons, 7 light ground attack/reconnaissance squadrons, 4 reconnaissance squadrons, 8 surface-to-surface missile squadrons, and an air defence force of 4 interceptor squadrons, 24 batteries of *Nike-Hercules* and 36 batteries of *Improved Hawk* surface-to-air missiles, are assigned to NATO. There are 4 F-4F Phantom interceptor squadrons, 8 Tornado attack squadrons, 4 attack squadrons of F-4Fs, 4 RF-4E Phantom reconnaissance squadrons, and 7 light attack/reconnaissance squadrons of Alpha Jets. Four transport squadrons (each 15 aircraft) with turboprop Transall C-160 aircraft and 1 wing of 5 helicopter squadrons with UH-1D Iroquois add to the air mobility of the *Bundeswehr*. There are also VIP, support and light transport aircraft, and Piaggio P.149D initial training aircraft. Guided weapons in service include 8 squadrons of *Pershing* surface-to-surface missiles and 6 battalions of *Nike-Hercules* and 9 battalions of *Improved Hawk* surface-to-air missiles.

Pilots undergo basic and advanced training in USA.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Federal Republic of Germany is a member of UN, OECD, European Communities, WEU, NATO and the Council of Europe.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Since 1 Jan. 1979 tax revenues have been distributed as follows: Federal Government. Income tax, 42.5%; capital yield and corporation tax, 50%; turnover tax, 67.5%; trade tax, 15%; capital gains, insurance and accounts taxes, 100%; excise duties (other than on beer), 100%. Länder. Income tax, 42.5%; capital yield and corporation tax, 50%; turnover tax, 32.5%; trade tax, 15%; other taxes, 100%. Local authorities. Income tax, 15%; trade tax, 70%; local taxes, 100%.

Budgets for 1987 and 1988 (in DM1m.):

Revenue	All public authorities		Federal portion	
	1987	1988	1987	1988
			Current	
Taxes	451,291	460,253	218,841	223,851
Economic activities	34,600	34,542	11,867	11,867
Interest	2,937	3,041	1,129	1,162
Current allocations and subsidies	106,641	106,867	1,058	1,221
Other receipts	30,087	31,815	3,791	4,263
<i>minus</i> equalising payments	96,735	100,037	...	...
	528,821	536,481	237,823	242,364
			Capital	
Sale of assets	8,921	7,406	2,685	2,738
Allocations for investment	23,018	24,040	15	14
Repayment of loans	8,795	7,621	2,424	2,428
Public sector borrowing	2,575	2,309	...	...
<i>minus</i> equalising payments	22,296	22,702	...	...
	21,013	18,674	5,123	5,180
Totals	549,835	555,707	242,946	247,544



<i>Expenditure</i>	<i>All public authorities</i>		<i>Federal portion</i>	
	1987	1988	1987	1988
		<i>Current</i>		
Staff	186,271	192,394	39,278	40,511
Materials	91,552	93,163	40,053	40,498
Interest	58,678	62,091	31,039	32,327
Allocations and subsidies	260,720	268,804	125,846	130,187
<i>minus</i> equalising payments	96,735	100,037	...	...
	500,485	516,415	236,215	243,524
		<i>Capital</i>		
Construction	38,454	39,393	5,857	6,348
Acquisition of property	12,492	10,820	1,821	1,770
Allocations and subsidies	46,474	46,303	17,414	17,020
Loans	18,732	19,217	8,193	8,575
Acquisition of shares	3,209	2,816	1,365	1,290
Repayments in the public sector	1,537	1,547	...	...
<i>minus</i> equalising payments	22,296	22,702	...	...
	98,661	97,394	34,648	35,003
<i>Totals</i>	599,146	612,061	270,864	277,564

Major areas of expenditure in 1987 (and 1988) in DM1,000m.: Social, 87.2 (89.2); defence, 53.6 (53.9); transport and communications, 13.1 (12.9); economy, 10.2 (11.6).

**Currency.** 100 *pfennig* (pf.)=1 *deutsche Mark* (DM). There are 1, 2, 5, 10, 50 pf., 1, 2, 5 and 10 DM coins and 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 DM notes. Money in circulation in 1984, DM 104,700m. In March 1989, £1 = 3.19 DM; US\$1 = 1.85

**Banking.** On 14 Feb. 1948 the Bank deutscher Länder was established in Frankfurt as the central bank.

The Länder and Berlin central banks were merged from 1 Aug. 1957 to form the Deutsche Bundesbank. Its assets were DM 230,474m. in 1987.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1986, 408,266m. kwh. were produced. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil and Gas.** The chief oilfields are in Emsland (Lower Saxony). In 1987, 17.98m. tonnes of petroleum, and 10.93m. tonnes of diesel oil were produced. Gas production was 15,871m. cu metres.

**Minerals.** The main production areas are: North Rhine-Westphalia (for coal, iron and metal smelting-works), Central Germany (for brown coal), and Lower Saxony (Salzgitter for iron ore; the Harz for metal ore).

Production (in 1,000 tonnes):

<i>Minerals</i>	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Coal	89,014	82,202	79,426	82,398	80,801	76,300
Lignite	127,307	124,281	126,739	120,667	114,310	108,799
Iron ore	1,304	976	977	1,034	717	...
Potash	22,536	27,200	29,543	29,248	24,775	25,795
Crude oil	4,256	4,116	4,055	4,105	4,017	3,800

Production of iron and steel (in 1,000 tonnes):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Pig-iron	27,621	26,598	30,203	31,919	29,443	28,918
Steel	35,880	35,729	39,389	40,908	37,533	36,577
Rolled products finished	25,702	26,063	27,962	28,919	27,409	27,092

**Agriculture.** Area cultivated, 1987: 11.86m. hectares (arable, 7.27m.; pasture, 4.48m.).

In 1987 the number of agricultural holdings classified by area farmed was:

	<i>Total</i>	<i>1-5 hectares</i>	<i>5-20 hectares</i>	<i>20-100 hectares</i>	<i>Over 100 hectares</i>
Schleswig-Holstein	29,580	6,242	5,485	16,484	1,369
Hamburg	1,202	717	272	199	14
Lower Saxony	106,523	27,881	29,368	47,186	2,086
Bremen	404	133	89	178	4
North Rhine-Westphalia	87,653	26,593	30,399	30,041	620
Hessen	52,485	18,813	20,252	13,304	274
Rhineland-Palatinate	51,238	20,575	18,729	11,726	208
Baden-Württemberg	116,052	45,528	46,347	23,798	379
Bavaria	234,066	59,466	116,644	57,302	654
Saarland	3,561	1,402	1,063	1,042	54
Berlin (West)	120	70	25	25	...
<i>Federal Republic</i>	<i>682,884</i>	<i>207,420</i>	<i>268,275</i>	<i>201,127</i>	<i>5,662</i>

Area (in 1,000 hectares) and yield (in 1,000 tonnes) of the main crops:

	<i>Area</i>				<i>Yield</i>			
	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Wheat	1,634	1,618	1,648	1,671	10,223	9,866	10,406	9,932
Rye	439	424	414	412	1,931	1,821	1,768	1,599
Barley	2,006	1,944	1,947	1,849	8,284	9,690	9,377	8,571
Oats	555	582	506	459	2,507	2,807	2,276	2,008
Potatoes	219	218	210	206	7,272	7,905	7,390	6,836
Sugar-beet	406	403	391	376	...	20,813	20,260	19,049

Wine must production (in 1 m. hectolitres): 5.4 in 1985; 10 in 1986; 8.9 in 1987.

Livestock, Dec. 1987: Cattle, 14,886,900 (including 5,076,500 milch cows); sheep, 1,413,700; pigs, 23,669,600; horses, 1986, 367,600; poultry, 1986, 72,123,700.

In 1987 there were 1.73m. tractors.

**Forestry.** Forestry is of great importance, conducted under the guidance of the State on scientific lines. In recent years enormous depredation has occurred through pollution with acid rain. Forest area in 1987 was 5.3m. hectares, of which 2.24m. were owned by the State. In 1986 29m. cu. metres of timber were cut.

**Fisheries.** In 1987 the yield of sea fishing was 159,616 tonnes live weight.

In 1987 the fishing fleet consisted of 14 trawlers (23,226 gross tons) and 635 cutters.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1986 there were 51,355 manufacturing firms (with 20 and more employees) employing 8.29m. persons, made up of 280,000 in energy and water services, 214,000 in mining, 1.4m. in raw materials processing, 3.7m. in the manufacture of producers' goods, 1.3m. in the manufacture of consumer goods, 466,000 in food and tobacco and 929,000 in building.

Production of major industrial products:

<i>Products (1,000 tonnes)</i>	<i>1983</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Aluminium	743	777	745	765	738
Artificial fertilizers	1,618	1,691	1,651	1,425	1,449
Sulphuric acid, SO <sub>3</sub>	3,543	3,518	3,428	3,351	3,323
Soda, Na <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>3</sub>	1,218	1,364	1,412	1,442	1,448
Cement	30,466	28,909	25,758	26,580	25,268
Plastics	7,100	7,505	7,666	7,941	8,546
Cotton yarn	181	194	131	128	142
Woollen yarn	46	49	42	41	40
Passenger cars (1,000)	3,875	3,505	3,867	3,952	4,008
Bicycles (1,000)	3,334	3,024	2,891	3,209	2,884

**Labour.** 25.97m. persons were employed in 1987, including 10.04m. women and 1.59m. foreign workers. Major categories: Manufacturing industries, 10.52m.; services, 9.41m.; commerce and transport, 4.7m.; self-employed, 2.43m.; agriculture, forestry and fishing, 1.33m. Unemployed 2.23m.; unfilled vacancies, 171,000; part-time workers, 278,000.

**Trade Unions.** The majority of trade unions belong to the *Deutscher Gewerkschaftsbund* (DGB, German Trade Union Federation), which had (women in brackets) 7.76m. (1.79m.) members in 1988, including 5.18m. (873,000) manual workers, 1.77m. (757,000) white-collar workers and 805,000 (158,000) civil servants. Of these 2.61m. (391,000) worked in the metal industries, 1.2m. (380,000) in public services, 476,000 in building and 346,000 in mining and energy. DGB unions are organized in industrial branches such that only one union operates within each enterprise. Outside the DGB lie several smaller unions: The *Deutscher Beamtenbund* (DBB) or civil servants union with 786,000 (203,000) members, the *Deutsche Angestellten-Gewerkschaft* (DAG) or union of salaried staff with 494,126 (212,000) members and the *Christlicher Gewerkschaftsbund Deutschlands* (CGD, Christian Trade Union Federation of Germany) with 308,000 (77,000) members.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in DM 1m.:

Imports					Exports			
1984	1985	1986	1987	1984	1985	1986	1987	
434,257	463,811	413,744	409,641	488,223	537,164	526,363	527,377	

Distribution of imports and exports by categories of countries in 1987 (in DM 1m.): EEC, 215,612, 277,916; developing countries, 50,177, 52,094; Communist countries, 19,471, 22,994 (USSR, 7,261, 7,846; China, 3,456, 5,000). Most important trading partners in 1987 (trade figures in DM 1m.) Imports: France, 47,482; Netherlands, 44,939; Italy, 39,206; UK, 29,394; Belgium with Luxembourg, 29,129; USA, 25,613; Japan, 25,245; Switzerland, 18,968; Austria, 17,293. Exports: France, 63,609; USA, 49,879; UK, 46,632; Netherlands, 46,088; Italy, 46,056; Belgium with Luxembourg, 38,846; Switzerland, 32,126; Austria, 28,410.

Distribution by commodities in 1987 (in DM 1m.) Imports and exports: Live animals, 655,793; foodstuffs, 43,337, 21,284; luxury foods and tobacco, 7,835, 4,321; raw materials, 27,956, 6,625; semi-finished products, 50,994, 28,610; manufactures, 270,509, 462,145.

Total trade between the Federal Republic of Germany and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	11,090,227	12,601,387	14,139,097	15,783,904	17,667,097
Exports and re-exports from UK	7,458,042	8,947,055	8,542,196	9,404,257	9,521,851

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 38,102 places of accommodation with 1.14m. beds (including 9,982 hotels with 530,000 beds). In the summer of 1987 38.88m. overnight stays (8.47 by foreigners) were registered.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 the total length of classified roads was 173,478 km, including 8,437 km of motorway (*Autobahn*), 31,368 km of federal highways, 63,382 km first-class and 70,291 km second-class country roads. Motor vehicles licensed on 1 July 1987: 32,762,300 (including 27,908,200 passenger cars, 1,391,100 trucks and 70,200 buses. In 1986 343.9m. tonnes of freight and 5,694m. passengers were transported by road.

Road casualties in 1987 totalled 424,622 injured and 7,967 killed.

**Railways.** Length of Federal Railway in 1986 was 27,500 km (1,435 mm gauge) of which 11,426 km was electrified. In 1986 it carried 1,108m. passengers and 303.5m. tonnes of freight. There were also 2,918 km of privately-owned and other minor railways.

**Aviation.** Deutsche Lufthansa was set up in 1953 with a capital of DM 900m. The Federal Republic owns 74.3%, Land North Rhine-Westphalia 2.2%, the Federal Railways, 0.9%, Federal Post 1.8%, Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau 3% and private industry 17.8%. In 1985 it had 88 Boeings and 16 Airbuses.

Lufthansa operate internal, European, African, North and South Atlantic, Near



and Far East routes. In 1987 it carried 48.74m. passengers and 842,000 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** On 31 Dec. 1986 the mercantile marine comprised 1,771 ocean-going vessels of 4,554,000 GRT.

The inland-waterways fleet on 31 Dec. 1986 included 2,154 motor freight vessels totalling 2m. tonnes and 429 tankers of 551,951 tonnes. The length of the navigable rivers and canals in use was 4,452 km.

Sea-going ships in 1987 carried 136.1m. tonnes of cargo. Inland waterways carried 229.5m. tonnes in 1986.

**Pipeline.** In 1987 there were 1,715 km of pipeline. 57.14m. tonnes of oil were transported.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 17,616 post offices and 40.29m. telephones.

The post office savings banks had, in 1987, 21,521,000 depositors with DM 38,229m. to their credit.

In 1986 postal revenues amounted to DM 55,122m. and expenditure to DM 52,419m.

There are 9 regional broadcasting stations. The *Arbeitsgemeinschaft der öffentlich-rechtlichen Rundfunkanstalten der Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (ARD) organizes co-operation between them and also broadcasts a federal-wide TV programme of its own. Number of wireless licences, (1987) 26.39m.; of television licences, 23.39m.

**Cinemas and Theatres.** In 1986 there were 3,262 cinemas and 280 theatres with seating capacities of 643,270 and 148,049 respectively. 60 feature films were made in 1986.

**Newspapers and Books.** In 1986, 356 newspapers and 6,908 periodicals were published with respective circulations of 25.26m. and 275.49m. 63,679 book titles were published.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the federal courts and by the courts of the Länder. In criminal procedures, civil cases and procedures of non-contentious jurisdiction the courts on the Land level are the local courts (*Amtsgerichte*), the regional courts (*Landgerichte*) and the courts of appeal (*Oberlandesgerichte*). Constitutional federal disputes are dealt with by the Federal Constitutional Court (*Bundesverfassungsgericht*) elected by the Federal Assembly and Federal Council. The Länder also have constitutional courts. In labour law disputes the courts of the first and second instance are the labour courts and the Land labour courts and in the third instance, the Federal Labour Court (*Bundesarbeitsgericht*). Disputes about public law in matters of social security, unemployment insurance, maintenance of war victims and similar cases are dealt with in the first and second instances by the social courts and the Land social courts and in the third instance by the Federal Social Court (*Bundessozialgericht*). In most tax matters the finance courts of the Länder are competent and in the second instance, the Federal Finance Court (*Bundesfinanzhof*). Other controversies of public law in non-constitutional matters are decided in the first and second instance by the administrative and the higher administrative courts (*Observerwaltungsgerichte*) of the Länder, and in the third instance by the Federal Administrative Court (*Bundesverwaltungsgericht*).

For the inquiry into maritime accidents the admiralty courts (*Seeämter*) are competent on the Land level and in the second instance the Federal Admiralty Court (*Bundesoberseeamt*) in Hamburg.

The death sentence has been abolished.

**Religion.** Census (1970) 49% of the population were Protestants, 44.6% Roman Catholics and 0.1% Jews.

The Evangelical (Protestant) Church consists of 18 member-churches in the Federal Republic and West Berlin (7 Lutheran Churches, 8 United-Lutheran-

Reformed, 2 Reformed Churches and 1 Confederation of United member Churches: 'Church of the Union'). Its organs are the Synod, the Church Conference and the Council under the chairmanship of Bishop Dr Eduard Lohse (Hanover). There are also some 12 Evangelical Free Churches. In 1983 there were 10,648 parishes, 16,302 priests and 25.5m. members.

There are 5 Catholic archbishops and 17 bishoprics. Chairman of the German Bishops' Conference is Cardinal Höffner, Archbishop of Cologne. A concordat between Germany and the Holy See was signed on 20 July and ratified on 10 Sept. 1933.

The 'Old Catholics', who are in full communion with the Anglican Churches, numbered about 30,000 in 1977; they have a bishop at Bonn.

*Evangelische Kirche in Deutschland*. Hanover, 1979

*Taschenbuch der evangelischen Kirche in Deutschland*. Frankfurt, 1980

*Kirchliches Handbuch. Amtliches statistisches Jahrbuch der Katholischen Kirche Deutschlands*

*Pastoral der Kirche fremden—Eröffnungsreferat der Deutschen Bischofskonferenz 1979 in Fulda—von Kardinal Joseph Höffner*. Bonn, 1979

*Alt-Katholisches Jahrbuch*. Bonn, 1978

*Katholiken und ihre Kirche, Protestanten und ihre Kirche*. Munich, 1977

**Education.** Education is compulsory for children aged 6 to 15. After the first 4 (or 6) years at primary school (*Grundschulen*) children attend post-primary (*Hauptschulen*), secondary modern (*Realschulen*), grammar (*Gymnasien*), or comprehensive schools (*Integrierte Gesamtschulen*). Secondary modern school comprises 6, grammar school 9, years. Entry to higher education is by the final Grammar School Certificate (Abitur-Higher School Certificate). There are special schools (*Sonderschulen*) for handicapped or maladjusted children.

In 1986–87 there were 3,081 kindergartens with 62,318 pupils and 4,596 teachers, 21,119 primary and post-primary schools with 3,722,478 pupils and 232,375 teachers; 2,824 special schools with 261,461 pupils and 41,887 teachers, 2,609 secondary modern schools with 975,485 pupils and 61,351 teachers; 2,469 grammar schools with 1,655,857 pupils and 124,454 teachers; 339 comprehensive schools with 238,009 pupils and 27,835 teachers.

Vocational education is provided in part-time, full-time and advanced vocational schools (*Berufs-, Berufsaufbau-, Berufsfach- and Fachschulen*, including *Fachschulen für Technik* and *Schulen des Gesundheitswesens*). Occupation-related, part-time vocational training of 6 to 12 hours per week is compulsory for all (including unemployed) up to the age of 18 years or until the completion of the practical vocational training. Full-time vocational schools comprise courses of at least one year. They prepare for commercial and domestic occupations as well as specialized occupations in the field of handicrafts. Advanced full-time vocational schools are attended by pupils over 18. Courses vary from 6 months to 3 or more years.

In 1986–87 there were 7,568 full- and part-time vocational schools with 89,829 teachers and 2,600,822 pupils (1,172,333 female).

**Higher Education.** In 1986–87 there were 61 institutes of university status: Universities proper at Augsburg, Bamberg, Bayreuth, Berlin (West), Bielefeld, Bochum, Bonn, Bremen, Cologne, Dortmund, Düsseldorf, Erlangen-Nuremberg, Frankfurt am Main, Freiburg im Breisgau, Giessen, Göttingen, Hamburg, Hanover, Heidelberg, Hohenheim, Kaiserslautern, Karlsruhe, Kiel, Konstanz, Mainz, Mannheim, Marburg, Munich, Münster, Oldenburg, Osnabrück, Passau, Regensburg, Saarbrücken, Stuttgart, Trier, Tübingen, Ulm and Würzburg; technical universities at Berlin (West), Braunschweig, Clausthal, Hamburg-Harburg and Munich; military universities at Hamburg and Munich; a medical university at Lübeck; a Catholic university at Eichstatt; a private Nordic university at Flensburg; and advanced schools (*Hochschulen*) at Aachen, Cologne (sport), Darmstadt (technical), Hamburg (economics and politics), Hanover (medical, veterinary), Hildesheim, Koblenz (private business), Lüneburg, Rhineland-Palatinate (education), Speyer (administration) and Witten-Herdecke (private). There were 49 other institutes of higher education.



Teachers in 1985: Universities, 103,842; technical universities, 22,639; polytechnics, 7,670; art colleges, 4,861.

Students in 1986-87 (women in brackets): Universities and equivalent institutions, 931,348 (381,237); polytechnics, 88,151 (27,770); teachers' training colleges, 10,244 (7,179); theological colleges, 3,469 (1,159); art schools, 22,019 (10,903); technical universities, 279,387 (76,284); business colleges, 33,081 (13,900).

**Health.** In 1987 there were 165,015 doctors (including 79,216 in hospitals) and 38,055 dentists. There were 3,071 hospitals (including 941 private) with 674,384 beds.

**Social Welfare.** *Social Health Insurance* (introduced in 1883). Wage-earners and apprentices, salaried employees with an income below a certain limit and social-insurance pensioners are compulsorily insured. Voluntary insurance is also possible.

Benefits: Medical treatment, medicines, hospital and nursing care, maternity benefits, death benefits for the insured and their families, sickness payments and out-patients' allowances.

36.5m. persons were insured in 1986 (21.4m. compulsorily) and 10.7m. persons (including 6.6m. women) were drawing pensions. Number of cases of incapacity for work totalled 25m., and 391m. working days were lost. Total disbursements DM 119,867m.

*Accident Insurance* (introduced in 1884). Insured are all persons in employment or service, apprentices and the greater part of the self-employed and the unpaid family workers.

Benefits in the case of industrial injuries and occupational diseases: Medical treatment and nursing care, sickness payments, pensions and other payments in cash and in kind, surviving dependants' pensions.

Number of insured in 1986, 37.7m.; number of current pensions, 956,000; total disbursements, DM 13,418m.

*Workers' and Employees' Old-Age Insurance Scheme* (introduced in 1889). All wage-earners and salaried employees, the members of certain liberal professions and—subject to certain conditions—self-employed craftsmen are compulsorily insured. The insured may voluntarily continue to insure when no longer liable to do so or increase the insurance.

Benefits: Measures designed to maintain, improve and restore the earning capacity; pensions paid to persons incapable of work, old age and surviving dependants' pensions.

Number of insured in 1986, 31.4m. (15.1m. women); number of current pensions, 1986: 13.6m.; pensions to widows and widowers, 3.9m.; pensions to orphans, 398,000. Total disbursements in 1986, DM 192,049m.

There are also special retirement and unemployment pension schemes for miners and farmers, assistance for war victims and compensation payments to members of German minorities in East European countries expelled after the Second World War and persons who suffered damage because of the war or in connexion with the currency reform.

*Family Allowances.* The monthly allowance for the first child is DM 50, for the second, DM 70-100 (varying according to income) for the third DM 140-220 and the fourth DM 140-240. DM 10,743 were dispersed to 6.19m. recipients in 1987.

*Unemployment Allowances.* In 1987 834,000 persons (378,000 women) were receiving unemployment benefit and 577,000 (162,000 women) earnings-related benefit. Total expenditure on these and similar benefits (e.g. short-working supplement, job creation schemes) was DM 35,961m. in 1987.

*Accommodation Allowances* averaging DM 144 a month were paid in 1986 to 1.88m. persons whose monthly income averaged DM 1,513.

*Public Welfare* (introduced in 1962). In 1986 DM 23.19m. were distributed to 3.02m. recipients.



*Public Youth Welfare.* For supervision of foster children, official guardianship, assistance with adoptions and affiliations, social assistance in juvenile courts, educational assistance and correctional education under a court order. Total expenditure in 1986, DM 6,701m.

*Übersicht über die soziale Sicherung.* Bundesministerium für Arbeit und Sozialordnung. 9th ed. Bonn, 1977

*Arbeits- und Sozialstatistik.* Bundesminister für Arbeit und Sozialordnung, Bonn (from 1950)

*Fachserie 13 Sozialleistungen.* Statistisches Bundesamt (from 1951)

*Fachserie 12 Gesundheitswesen.* Statistisches Bundesamt (from 1946)

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Federal Republic of Germany in Great Britain (23 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8PZ)

*Ambassador:* Baron Hermann von Richthofen (accredited 16 Dec. 1988).

Of Great Britain in the Federal Republic of Germany (Friedrich-Ebert-Allee 77, 5300 Bonn 1)

*Ambassador:* Sir Christopher Mallaby, KCMG.

Of the Federal Republic of Germany in the USA (4645 Reservoir Rd, NW, Washington, D.C., 20007)

*Ambassador:* Juergen Ruhfus.

Of the USA in the Federal Republic of Germany (Deichmanns Ave., 5300, Bonn)

*Ambassador:* Gen. Vernon A. Walters.

Of the Federal Republic of Germany to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Hans Werner Lautenschlager.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The central statistical agency is the Statistisches Bundesamt, 62 Wiesbaden 1, Gustav Stresemann Ring 11. *President:* Egon Hölder. Its publications include:

*Statistisches Jahrbuch für die Bundesrepublik Deutschland; Wirtschaft und Statistik* (monthly, from 1949); *Das Arbeitsgebiet der Bundesstatistik* (latest issue 1988; Abridged English version: *Survey of German Federal Statistics*).

Ardagh, J., *Germany and the Germans.* London, 1987

Berghahn, V. R., *Modern Germany: Society, Economy and Politics in the Twentieth Century.* CUP, 1982

Byrne, K. von, *The Political System of the Federal Republic of Germany.* New York, 1983

*Die Bundesrepublik Deutschland: Staatshandbuch.* Cologne, annual

Burdick, C., et al. (eds.) *Contemporary Germany: Politics and Culture,* Boulder, 1984

Carr, J., *Helmut Schmidt. Helmsman of Germany.* London, 1985

Childs, D., *Germany since 1918.* 2nd ed. New York, 1980

Conradt, D. P., *The German Polity.* 2nd ed. New York, 1982

Craig, G. A., *Germany, 1866–1945.* OUP, 1981—*The Germans.* Harmondsworth, 1984

Detwiler, D. S. and Detwiler, I. E., *West Germany.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Dittmers, M., *The Green Party in West Germany.* 2nd ed. Buckingham, 1988

Edinger, L. J., *West German Politics.* New York, 1986

Eley, G., *From Unification to Nazism: Reinterpreting the German Past.* London, 1986

Friese, F.-J., *Investment and Business Establishments in the Federal Republic of Germany: A Guide for the Foreign Investor.* Frankfurt-am-Main, 1988

Hardach, K., *The Political Economy of Germany in the Twentieth Century.* California Univ. Press, 1980

Hubatsch, W., *Studies in Medieval and Modern German History.* Basingstoke, 1985

Hucko, E. M. (ed.) *The Democratic Tradition [Texts of German Constitutions].* Leamington Spa, 1987

Johnson, N., *State and Government in the Federal Republic of Germany: the Executive at Work.* 2nd ed. Oxford, 1983

Jonas, M., *The United States and Germany: A Diplomatic History.* Cornell Univ. Press, 1984

Koch, H. W., *A Constitutional History of Germany in the Nineteenth and Twentieth Centuries.* London, 1984

Kohl, W. L., and Basevi, G., *West Germany: A European and Global Power.* London, 1982

- Kolinsky, E., *Parties, Opposition and Society in West Germany*. London, 1984
- König, K., et al. (eds.) *Public Administration in the Federal Republic of Germany*. Boston, 1983
- Laqueur, W., *Germany Today: a Personal Report*. London, 1985
- Leaman, J., *The Political Economy of West Germany, 1945-1985*. Basingstoke, 1987
- Markovits, A. S. (ed.) *The Political Economy of West Germany: Modell Deutschland*. New York, 1982
- Marshall, B., *The Origins of Post-War German Politics*. London, 1988
- Moreton, E. (ed.) *Germany between East and West*. Cambridge Univ. Press, 1987
- Pasley, M., (ed.) *Germany: a Companion to German Studies*. 2nd ed. London, 1982
- Schweitzer, D.-C., (ed.) *Politics and Government in the Federal Republic of Germany: Basic Documents*. Leamington Spa, 1984
- Smith, E. O., *The West German Economy*. London, 1983
- Smith, G., *Democracy in Western Germany*. 3rd ed. Aldershot, 1986
- Wallach, P. and Romoser, G. K. (eds.) *West German Politics in the Mid-Eighties: Crisis and Continuity*. New York, 1985
- Weizsäcker, R. von, *A Voice from Germany: Speeches*. London, 1986
- Who's Who in Germany, 1982-1983*. Munich, 1983
- Wild, T., (ed) *Urban and Rural Change in West Germany*. London, 1983
- National Library: Deutsche Bibliothek, Zeppelinallee 4-8; Frankfurt (Main). Director: Günther Pflug.*

## THE LÄNDER

### BADEN-WÜRTTEMBERG

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Baden-Württemberg comprises 35,751 sq. km, with a population (at 1 Jan. 1988) of 9,390,032 (4,534,477 males, 4,855,555 females).

The Land is administratively divided into 4 areas, 9 urban and 35 rural districts, and numbers 1,111 communes. The capital is Stuttgart.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	94,442	54,901	15,984	93,295
1986	101,616	55,705	15,294	93,003
1987	103,590	56,780	16,781	91,587

**CONSTITUTION.** The Land Baden-Württemberg is a merger of the 3 Länder, Baden, Württemberg-Baden and Württemberg-Hohenzollern, which were formed in 1945. The merger was approved by a plebiscite held on 9 Dec. 1951, when 70% of the population voted in its favour.

The Diet, elected on 20 March 1988, consists of 66 Christian Democrats, 42 Social Democrats, 7 Free Democrats, 10 Ecologists.

The Government is formed by Christian Democrats, with Lothar Späth (CDU) as Prime Minister.

**AGRICULTURE.** Area and yield of the most important crops:

	<i>Area (in 1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Yield (in 1,000 tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Rye	16.4	17.0	16.2	80.7	75.6	64.0
Wheat	218.5	216.3	220.1	1,330.6	1,166.0	1,071.0
Barley	200.8	197.4	190.2	995.9	810.7	809.8
Oats	85.3	77.7	74.2	437.6	329.4	332.9
Potatoes	15.5	14.9	14.0	838.8	807.1	304.6
Sugar-beet	23.4	23.3	22.4	1,228.6	1,293.5	1,219.7

Livestock (3 Dec. 1987): Cattle, 1,708,200 (including 625,600 milch cows); horses (1986), 51,516; pigs, 2,310,200; sheep, 236,000; poultry (1986), 6,005,209.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 9,332 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 1,432,437 persons; of these, 259,320 were employed in machine construction (excluding office machines, data processing equipment and facilities);

72,605 in textile industry; 248,669 in electrical engineering; 226,913 in car building.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 4,343,800 at the 1%-EC-sample survey of March 1987. Of the total 493,000 were self-employed (including family workers), 3,850,800 employees; 175,800 were engaged in agriculture and forestry; 2,005,800 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 669,800 in commerce and transport, 1,462,400 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 28,364 km of 'classified' roads, including 1,415 km of autobahn, 4,976 km of federal roads, 10,130 km of first-class and 11,843 km of second-class highways. Motor vehicles, at 1 Jan. 1988, numbered 5,290,001, including, 4,517,295 passenger cars, 8,485 buses, 198,645 lorries, 311,526 tractors and 195,454 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Staatsgerichtshof*), 2 courts of appeal, 17 regional courts, 108 local courts, a Land labour court, 9 labour courts, a Land social court, 8 social courts, a finance court, a higher administrative court (*Verwaltungsgerichtshof*), 4 administrative courts.

**RELIGION.** On 1 Jan. 1987, 43.8% of the population were Protestants and 47.2% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987-88 there were 3,626 primary schools (*Grund und Hauptschule*) with 31,600 teachers and 540,446 pupils; 573 special schools with 8,047 teachers and 42,943 pupils; 442 intermediate schools with 11,517 teachers and 179,889 pupils; 416 high schools with 18,831 teachers and 241,326 pupils; 27 *Freie Waldorf* schools with 1,126 teachers and 15,045 pupils. Other schools together had 964 teachers and 12,907 pupils; there were also 40 *Fachhochschulen* (colleges of engineering and others) with 46,358 students.

In the winter term 1987-88 there were 9 universities (Freiburg, 22,788 students; Heidelberg, 26,667; Konstanz, 7,052; Tübingen, 23,164; Karlsruhe, 18,907; Stuttgart, 18,990; Hohenheim, 5,420; Mannheim, 11,361; Ulm, 4,981); 8 teacher-training colleges with 7,378 students; 5 colleges of music with 2,813 students and 2 colleges of fine arts with 1,020 students.

*Statistical Information:* Statistisches Landesamt Baden-Württemberg (P.O.B. 898, D7000 Stuttgart 1) (President: Prof. Max Wingen), publishes: '*Baden-Württemberg in Wort und Zahl*' (monthly); *Jahrbücher für Statistik und Landeskunde von Baden-Württemberg*; *Statistik von Baden-Württemberg* (series); *Statistisch-prognostischer Bericht* (latest issue 1987-88); *Statistisches Taschenbuch* (latest issue 1987-88).

*State Library:* Württembergische Landesbibliothek, Konrad-Adenauer-Str. 8, 7000 Stuttgart 1. *Director:* Dr Hans-Peter Geh. *Badische Landesbibliothek Karlsruhe*, Lamm-Str. 16, 7500 Karlsruhe 1. *Director:* Dr Römer.

## BAVARIA

### Bayern

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Bavaria has an area of 70,553 sq. km. The capital is Munich. There are 7 areas, 96 urban and rural districts and 2,051 communes. The population (31 Dec. 1987) numbered 11,082,559 (5,324,331 males, 5,758,228 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	111,365	66,012	19,252	121,941
1986	118,439	67,061	18,352	120,489
1987	119,623	70,035	19,846	119,662

**CONSTITUTION.** The Constituent Assembly, elected on 30 June 1946, passed a constitution on the lines of the democratic constitution of 1919, but with greater



emphasis on state rights; this was agreed upon by the Christian Social Union and the Social Democrats.

The elections for the Diet, held on 12 Oct. 1986, had the following results: 128 Christian Social Union, 61 Social Democrats, 15 Green Party. The cabinet of the Christian Social Union is headed by Minister President Max Streibl (CSU).

#### AGRICULTURE. Area and yield of the most important products:

	Area (1,000 hectares)			Yield (1,000 tonnes)		
	1986	1987	1988 <sup>1</sup>	1986	1987	1988 <sup>1</sup>
Wheat	493.1	501.0	510.7	2,829.1	2,686.1	3,678.8
Rye	56.4	53.5	51.0	219.1	189.1	223.1
Barley	521.5	500.3	515.2	2,193.4	2,028.2	2,698.4
Oats	121.2	114.0	113.9	558.5	468.4	504.8
Potatoes	72.4	68.1	64.9	2,426.1	1,849.1	2,499.2
Sugar-beet	79.1	77.0	77.8	4,544.4	4,216.2	...

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary figures.

Livestock (3 Dec. 1987): 5,047,500 cattle (including 1,908,500 milch cows); (1986) 62,600 horses; 344,300 sheep; 4,055,700 pigs; (1986) 11,888,400 poultry.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987, 9,396 establishments (with 20 or more employees) employed 1,355,323 persons; of these, 253,719 were employed in electrical engineering; 184,887 in mechanical engineering; 117,925 in clothing and textile industries.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 5,350,800 at the 1% sample survey of the microcensus of March 1987. Of the total, 540,300 were self-employed, 258,500 unpaid family workers, 4,552,000 employees; 2,230,200 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building; 901,400 in commerce and transport; 1,809,400 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** There were, on 1 Jan. 1988, 41,002 km of 'classified' roads, including 1,994 km of autobahn, 7,087 km of federal roads, 13,807 km of first-class and 18,114 km of second-class highways. Number of motor vehicles, at 1 July 1988, was 6,521,861, including 5,306,550 passenger cars, 239,562 lorries, 13,147 buses, 582,279 tractors, 308,208 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Verfassungsgerichtshof*), a supreme Land court (*Oberstes Landesgericht*), 3 courts of appeal, 21 regional courts, 72 local courts, 2 Land labour courts, 11 labour courts, a Land social court, 7 social courts, 2 finance courts, a higher administrative court (*Verwaltungsgerichtshof*), 6 administrative courts.

**RELIGION.** At the census of 27 May 1970 there were 69.9% Roman Catholics and 25.7% Protestants.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987-88 there were 2,806 primary schools with 43,452 teachers and 711,027 pupils; 381 special schools with 6,206 teachers and 39,681 pupils; 336 intermediate schools with 8,765 teachers and 127,996 pupils; 395 high schools with 20,037 teachers and 273,104 pupils; 261 part-time vocational schools with 7,977 teachers and 347,984 pupils, including 51 special part-time vocational schools with 562 teachers and 8,137 pupils; 565 full-time vocational schools with 3,737 teachers and 51,951 pupils including 229 schools for public health occupations with 927 teachers and 15,535 pupils; 293 advanced full-time vocational schools with 2,180 teachers and 26,331 pupils; 82 vocational high schools (*Berufshochschulen*, *Fachhochschulen*) with 1,810 teachers and 27,527 pupils.

In the winter term 1987-88 there were 11 universities with 168,356 students (Augsburg, 9,007; Bamberg, 5,424; Bayreuth, 5,958; Eichstätt, 2,072; Erlangen-Nürnberg, 25,654; München, 61,743; Passau, 5,355; Regensburg, 11,952; Würzburg, 17,066; the Technical University of München, 22,051; München University of the Federal Armed Forces (Universität der Bundeswehr), 2,074; the college of

philosophy, München, 346 and 2 philosophical-theological colleges with together 424 students (Benediktbeuern, 122; Neuendettelsau, 302). There were also 2 colleges of music, 2 colleges of fine arts and 1 college of television and film, with together 2,264 students; 13 vocational colleges (*Fachhochschulen*) with 54,130 students including one for the civil service (*Bayerische Beamtenfachhochschule*) with 4,354 students.

*Statistical Information:* Bayerisches Landesamt für Statistik und Datenverarbeitung, 51 Neuhauser Str. 8000 Munich, was founded in 1833. *President:* Dr Hans Helmut Schiedermaier. It publishes: *Statistisches Jahrbuch für Bayern*, 1894 ff.—*Bayern in Zahlen*. Monthly (from Jan. 1947).—*Zeitschrift des Bayerischen Statistischen Landesamts*, July 1869–1943; 1948 ff.—*Beiträge zur Statistik Bayerns*, 1850 ff.—*Statistische Berichte*, 1951 ff.—*Schaubilderhefte*, 1951 ff.—*Kreisdaten*, 1972 ff.—*Gemeindedaten*, 1973 ff.

Nawiasky, H. and Luesser, C., *Die Verfassung des Freistaates Bayern vom 2. Dez. 1946*. Munich, 1948; supplement, by H. Nawiasky and H. Lechner, Munich, 1953

*State Library:* Bayerische Staatsbibliothek, Munich 22. *Director:* Dr Franz G. Kaltwasser.

## BERLIN

**GOVERNMENT.** Greater Berlin was under quadripartite Allied government (Kommandatura) until 1 July 1948, when the Soviet element withdrew. On 30 Nov. 1948, a separate Municipal Government was set up in the Soviet Sector (see p. 526).

**AREA.** The total area of Berlin is 883 sq. km, of which Western Berlin covers 480 sq. km and the Soviet Sector 403 sq. km. The *British Sector* includes the administrative districts of Tiergarten, Charlottenburg, Wilmersdorf and Spandau; the *American Sector* those of Kreuzberg, Neukölln, Tempelhof, Schöneberg, Zehlendorf and Steglitz; the *French Sector* covers the administrative districts of Wedding and Reinickendorf, and the *Soviet Sector*, those of Mitte, Friedrichshain, Prenzlauer Berg, Pankow, Weissensee, Lichtenberg, Treptow and Köpenick. The British, American and French sectors form an administrative unit, called Berlin (West).

In 1961 the East German Government tried to stop the outflow of migrants, by erecting a heavily fortified barrier, the 'Berlin Wall', along the border. A minefield which accompanied it was removed in 1985.

## BERLIN (WEST)

**POPULATION.** Population, 31 Dec. 1987, 1,897,066 (883,093 males, 1,013,973 females). In 1987, 1,079,000 were Protestants; 285,000 Roman Catholics; 50,000 Moslems and 6,000 Jews.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	17,921	12,277	6,597	32,614
1986	18,688	11,941	6,060	31,727
1987	19,554	11,961	6,230	30,719

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** According to the constitution of 1 Sept. 1950, Berlin is simultaneously a Land of the Federal Republic (though not yet formally incorporated) and a city. It is governed by a House of Representatives (at least 200 members); the executive power is vested in a Senate, consisting of the Governing Mayor, the Mayor and not more than 16 senators.

In the municipal elections, held on 10 March 1985, the Christian Democrats obtained 69 seats; the Social Democrats, 48; the Alternative List, 15; the Free Democrats, 12.

*Governing Mayor:* Eberhard Diepgen (Christian Democrat).

## ECONOMY

**Currency.** The legal tender of Berlin (West) is the German Mark (DM).

**Banking.** On 20 March 1949 when the DM (West) became the only legal tender of the Western Sectors, the Zentralbank of Berlin was established. Its functions were similar to those of the Zentralbanks of the Länder of the Federal Republic. The Berlin Central Bank was merged with the Bank deutscher Länder as from 1 Aug. 1957, when the latter became the Deutsche Bundesbank. The legal tender for the Western Sectors of Berlin is being issued by the Deutsche Bundesbank (formerly Bank deutscher Länder).

**AGRICULTURE.** Agricultural area (April 1988), 1,318 hectares, including 948 hectares arable land and 93 hectares gardens, orchards, nurseries.

Livestock (Dec. 1986): Cattle, 641; pigs, 3,122; horses, 3,517; sheep, 1,126.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 (monthly averages), 1,025 establishments (with 20 or more employees) employed 162,845 persons; of these, 56,943 were employed in electrical engineering, 15,656 in machine construction, 12,480 in the manufacture of chemicals, 3,903 in steel construction and 3,550 in textiles.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 875,900 at the 1%-sample survey of the microcensus of June 1987. Of the total, 71,300 were self-employed including unpaid family workers, 804,600 employees; 8,100 were engaged in agriculture and forestry; 259,400 in power supply, manufacturing and building; 160,300 in commerce and transport; 427,300 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** There were, on 1 Jan. 1987, 145.6 km of 'classified' roads, including 44.3 km of autobahn and 101 km of federal roads. On 1 July 1987, 774,737 motor vehicles were registered, including 612,309 passenger cars, 43,016 lorries, 37,624 motor cycles, and 2,792 buses.

**JUSTICE.** There are a court of appeal (*Kammergericht*), a regional court, 7 local courts, a Land Labour court, a labour court, a Land social court, a social court, a higher administrative court, an administrative court and a finance court.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987-88 (preliminary figures) there were 448 schools providing general education (excluding special schools) with 179,293 pupils; 56 special schools with 6,730 pupils. There were a further 174 vocational schools with 59,814 pupils.

In the winter term 1987-88 there was 1 university (56,258 students); 1 technical university (28,724); 1 theological (evangelical) college (524); 1 college of fine arts with 4,404 students; 1 vocational college (for economics) (1,590); 2 colleges for social work (1,191); 1 technical college (5,119), 1 college of the Federal postal administration (518) and 2 colleges for public administration (2,690).

*Statistical Information:* The Statistisches Landesamt Berlin was founded in 1862 (Fehrbelliner Platz 1, 1000 Berlin 31). *Director:* Günther Appel. It publishes: *Statistisches Jahrbuch* (from 1867); *Berliner Statistik* (monthly, from 1947).—*100 Jahre Berliner Statistik* (1962).

Childs, D. and Johnson, J., *West Berlin: Politics and Society*. London, 1981

Hillenbrand, M. J., *The Future of Berlin*. Monclair, 1981

*State Library:* Amerika-Gedenkbibliothek-Berliner Zentralbibliothek-, Blücherplatz 1, D1000 Berlin 61. *Director:* Dr Peter K. Liebenow.

## BREMEN

### Freie Hansestadt Bremen

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the Land, consisting of the towns and ports of Bremen and Bremerhaven, is 404 sq. km. Population, 31 Dec. 1987, 652,365 (306,176 males, 346,189 females).



## Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	5,294	3,804	1,999	8,545
1986	5,745	3,904	1,680	8,707
1987	5,773	3,951	2,210	8,489

**CONSTITUTION.** Political power is vested in the House of Burgesses (*Bürgerschaft*) which appoints the executive, called the Senate.

The elections of 13 Sept. 1987 had the following result: 54 Social Democratic Party, 25 Christian Democrats, 10 Free Democratic Party, 10 Die Grünen, 1 Deutsche Volksunion. The Senate is only formed by Social Democrats; its president is Klaus Wedemeier (Social Democrat).

**AGRICULTURE.** Agricultural area comprised (1987), 10,048 hectares: yield of grain crops (1987), 6,059 tonnes; potatoes, 155 tonnes.

Livestock (3 Dec. 1986): 16,816 cattle (including 5,120 milch cows); 4,351 pigs; 459 sheep; 1,031 horses; 22,456 poultry.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987, 340 establishments (20 and more employees) employed 75,935 persons; of these, 8,088 were employed in shipbuilding (except naval engineering); 7,270 in machine construction; 9,639 in electrical engineering; 1,813 in coffee and tea processing.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 261,000 at the 1%-sample survey of the microcensus of March 1987. Of the total, 22,000 were self-employed, 238,000 employees; 81,000 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 71,000 in commerce and transport, 110,000 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 127 km of 'classified' roads, including 45.4 km of autobahn, 81.6 km of federal roads, 7 km of first-class and 5 km of second-class highways. Registered motor vehicles on 1 July 1987 numbered 289,795, including 260,274 passenger cars, 13,284 trucks, 2,417 tractors, 614 buses and 9,542 motor cycles.

**SHIPPING.** Vessels entered in 1987, 9,657 of 42,479,000 net tons; cleared, 9,620 of 42,511,000 net tons. Sea traffic, 1987, incoming 18,027,000 tonnes; outgoing, 11,955,000 tonnes.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Staatsgerichtshof*), a court of appeal, a regional court, 3 local courts, a Land labour court, 2 labour courts, a Land social court, a social court, a finance court, a higher administrative court, an administrative court.

**RELIGION.** On 27 May 1970 (census) there were 82.4% Protestants and 10.2% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987 there were 302 new system schools with 5,154 teachers and 66,184 pupils; 26 special schools with 584 teachers and 2,960 pupils; 24 part-time vocational schools with 29,656 pupils; 34 full-time vocational schools with 6,755 pupils; 7 advanced vocational schools (including institutions for the training of technicians) with 812 pupils; 11 schools for public health occupations with 1,027 pupils.

In the winter term 1987-88 about 9,847 students were enrolled at the university. In addition to the university there were 4 other colleges in 1987-88 with about 6,286 students.

*Statistical Information:* Statistisches Landesamt Bremen (An der Weide 14-16 (P.B. 101309), D2800 Bremen 1), founded in 1850, *Director:* Ltd Reg. Dir. Volker Hannemann. Its current publications include: *Statistische Mitteilungen Freie Hansestadt Bremen* (from 1948).—*Monatliche Zwischenberichte* (1949-53); *Statistische Monatsberichte* (from

1954).—*Statistische Berichte* (from 1956).—*Statistisches Handbuch für das Land Freie Hansestadt Bremen* (1950–60, 1961; 1960–64, 1967; 1965–69, 1971; 1970–74, 1975; 1975–80, 1982; 1981–85, 1987).—*Bremen im statistischen Zeitvergleich 1950–1976*. 1977.—*Bremen in Zahlen*. 1988.

*State and University Library*: Bibliotheks Str., D2800 Bremen 33. *Director*: Prof. Dr Hans-Albrecht Koch.

## HAMBURG

### Freie und Hansestadt Hamburg

**AREA AND POPULATION.** In 1938 the territory of the town was re-organized by the amalgamation of the city and its 18 rural districts with 3 urban and 27 rural districts ceded by Prussia. Total area, 754.7 sq. km (1987), including the islands Neuwerk and Scharhörn (7 sq. km). Population (31 Dec. 1987), 1,569,523 (736,123 males, 833,400 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	12,711	8,768	4,916	22,266
1986	13,404	9,180	4,556	21,973
1987	14,259	9,565	4,825	21,516

**CONSTITUTION.** The constitution of 6 June 1952 vests the supreme power in the House of Burgesses (*Bürgerschaft*) of 120 members. The executive is in the hands of the Senate, whose members are elected by the *Bürgerschaft*.

The elections of 17 May. 1987 had the following results: Social Democrats, 55; Christian Democrats, 49; Green Alternatives, 8; Free Democrats, 8. The First Burgomaster is Dr Henning Voscherau (Social Democrat).

The territory has been divided into 7 administrative districts.

**AGRICULTURE.** The agricultural area comprised 14,800 hectares in 1987. Yield, in tonnes, of cereals, 21,400; potatoes, 900.

Livestock (3 Dec. 1986): Cattle, 12,263 (including 2,874 milch cows); pigs, 6,767; horses, 2,654; sheep, 2,552; poultry, 24,736.

**FISHERIES.** In 1987 the yield of sea and coastal fishing was 700 tonnes valued at DM 1.7m.

**INDUSTRY.** In June 1987, 775 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 135,655 persons; of these, 20,948 were employed in electrical engineering; 16,869 in machine construction; 8,393 in shipbuilding (except naval engineering); 13,391 in chemical industry.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 723,100 at the 0.1%-sample survey of the microcensus of April 1986. Of the total, 60,400 were self-employed, 6,100 unpaid family workers, 656,600 employees; 9,000 were engaged in agriculture and forestry, 181,600 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 205,800 in commerce and transport, 326,700 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 3,889 km of roads, including 79 km of autobahn, 153 km of federal roads. Number of motor vehicles (1 July 1988), 715,888, including 643,166 passenger cars, 35,029 lorries, 1,600 buses, 5,089 tractors, 21,030 motor cycles and 9,074 other motor vehicles.

**SHIPPING.** Hamburg is the largest port in the Federal Republic.

<i>Vessels</i>	1938	1958	1978	1986
Entered: Number	18,149	19,033	16,636	13,740
Tonnage	20,567,311	27,454,640	61,785,643	53,033,000
Cleared: Number	19,316	20,363	17,414	13,950
Tonnage	20,547,148	27,579,914	62,028,141	53,080,000

**JUSTICE.** There is a constitutional court (*Verfassungsgericht*), a court of appeal (*Oberlandesgericht*), a regional court (*Landgericht*), 6 local courts (*Amtsgerichte*), a Land labour court, a labour court, a Land social court, a social court, a finance court, a higher administrative court, an administrative court.

**RELIGION.** On 27 May 1970 (census) Evangelical Church and Free Churches 73.6%, Roman Catholic Church 8.1%.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987 there were 369 schools of general education (not including *Internationale Schule*) with 8,264 teachers and 261,271 pupils; 61 special schools with 772 teachers and 6,658 pupils; 46 part-time vocational schools with 48,366 pupils; 22 schools with 1,609 pupils in their vocational preparatory year; 23 schools with 1,952 pupils in manual instruction classes; 59 full-time vocational schools with 11,068 pupils; 10 economic secondary schools with 2,433 pupils; 2 technical *Gymnasien* with 309 pupils; 24 advanced vocational schools with 4,045 pupils; 38 schools for public health occupations with 2,766 pupils; 6 vocational introducing schools with 255 pupils and 21 technical superior schools with 2,523 pupils; all these vocational and technical schools have a total number of 2,803 teachers.

In the summer term 1987 there was 1 university with 40,958 students; 1 technical university with 430 students; 1 college of music and 1 college of fine arts with together 1,992 students; 1 university of the *Bundeswehr* with 1,413 students; 1 professional high school (*Fachhochschule*) with 13,052 students; 1 high school for economics and politics with 1,947 students; 1 high school of public administration with 940 students, as well as 1 private professional high school with 150 students.

*Statistical Information:* The Statistisches Landesamt der Freien und Hansestadt Hamburg (Steckelhörn 12, D2000 Hamburg 11) publishes: *Hamburg in Zahlen*, *Statistische Berichte*, *Statistisches Taschenbuch*, *Statistik des Hamburgischen Staates*.

Klessmann, E., *Geschichte der Stadt Hamburg*. Hamburg, 1981

Meyer-Marwitz, B., *Das Hamburg Buch*. Hamburg, 1981

Ohlig, J., *Porträt einer Weltstadt*. Hamburg, 1974

Plagemann, V., *Industriekultur in Hamburg*. Hamburg, 1984

Studt, B. and Olsen, H., *Hamburg—eine kurzgefaßte Geschichte der Stadt*. Hamburg, 1964

*State Library:* Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek, Carl von Ossietzky, Von-Melle-Park 3, D2000 Hamburg 13. *Director:* Prof. Dr Horst Gronemeyer.

## HESSEN

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state of Hessen comprehends the areas of the former Prussian provinces Kurhessen and Nassau (excluding the exclaves belonging to Hessen and the rural counties of Westerwaldkreis and Rhine-Lahn) and of the former Volksstaat Hessen, the provinces Starkenburg (including the parts of Rheinhessen east of the river Rhine) and Oberhessen. Hessen has an area of 21,114 sq. km. Its capital is Wiesbaden. Since 1 Jan. 1981 there have been 3 areas with 5 urban and 21 rural districts and 421 communes. Population, 25 May 1987 (census), was 5,507,777 (2,656,257 males, 2,851,520 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	49,682	31,823	11,877	63,360
1986	52,587	32,520	11,380	63,385
1987	54,814	33,705	12,448	61,698



**CONSTITUTION.** The constitution was put into force by popular referendum on 1 Dec. 1946. The Diet, elected on 5 April 1987, consists of 44 Social Democrats, 47 Christian Democrats, 9 Free Democrats, 10 *Die Grünen*.

The Christian Democrat cabinet is headed by Minister President Walter Wallmann (CDU).

**AGRICULTURE.** Area and yield of the most important crops:

	Area (in 1,000 hectares)			Yield (in 1,000 tonnes)		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	141.7	144.1	143.1	850.1	913.5	825.5
Rye	31.5	29.5	29.5	138.5	132.9	125.2
Barley	141.6	146.6	138.2	707.8	727.9	648.4
Oats	63.2	55.9	49.5	294.3	243.0	212.1
Potatoes	9.7	8.7	8.3	304.7	303.7	227.5
Sugar-beet	21.7	21.8	21.5	1,061.4	1,061.0	1,063.6

Livestock, Dec. 1987: Cattle, 787,692 (including 253,281 milch cows); pigs 1.18m.; sheep, 138,773; Dec. 1986, horses, 31,600; poultry, 3.39m.

**INDUSTRY.** In June 1988, 3,603 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 624,486 persons; of these, 96,670 were employed in chemical industry; 89,118 in electrical engineering; 91,186 in car building; 74,436 in machine construction; 30,337 in food industry.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 2.53m. at the 1% sample survey of the microcensus of March 1987. Of the total, 202,300 were self-employed, 47,500 unpaid family workers, 2,283,200 employees; 70,000 were engaged in agriculture and forestry, 1,013,200 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 492,200 in commerce and transport, 957,600 in other services.

**ROADS.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 16,628 km of 'classified' roads, including 928 km of autobahn, 3,521 km of federal highways, 7,147 km of first-class highways and 5,031 km of second-class highways. Motor vehicles licensed on 1 July 1988 totalled 3,185,565, including 2,778,192 passenger cars, 5,803 buses, 119,733 trucks, 141,376 tractors and 107,506 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Staatsgerichtshof*), a court of appeal, 9 regional courts, 58 local courts, a Land labour court, 12 labour courts, a Land social court, 7 social courts, a finance court, a higher administrative court (*Verwaltungsgerichtshof*), 5 administrative courts.

**RELIGION.** In 1980 there were 51.7% Protestants and 35.3% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987 there were 1,249 primary schools with 14,669 teachers and 262,171 pupils (including *Förderstufen*); 235 special schools with 2,676 teachers and 18,147 pupils; 157 intermediate schools with 2,473 teachers and 42,389 pupils; 153 high schools with 8,714 teachers and 113,286 pupils; 191 *Gesamtschulen* (comprehensive schools) with 10,910 teachers and 149,137 pupils; 119 part-time vocational schools with 4,662 teachers and 168,717 pupils; 253 full-time vocational schools with 2,459 teachers and 35,001 pupils; 99 advanced vocational schools with 582 teachers and 8,803 pupils; 171 schools for public health occupations with 9,768 pupils.

In the winter term 1987-88 there were 3 universities (Frankfurt/Main, 29,639 students; Giessen, 17,149; Marburg-Lahn, 14,217); 1 technical university in Darmstadt (14,721); 1 *Gesamthochschule* (10,543); 15 *Fachhochschulen* (37,470); 2 Roman Catholic theological colleges and 1 Protestant theological college with together 502 students; 1 college of music and 2 colleges of fine arts with together 1,319 students.

*Statistical Information:* The Hessisches Statistisches Landesamt (Rheinstr. 35-37, D6200 Wiesbaden). *President:* Götz Steppuhn. Main publications: *Statistisches Taschenbuch für das*

*Land Hessen* (zweijährlich; 1980–81 ff.).—*Staat und Wirtschaft in Hessen* (monthly).—*Beiträge zur Statistik Hessens*.—*Statistische Berichte*.—*Hessische Gemeindestatistik 1960–61* (5 vols., 1963 ff.).—*Hessische Gemeindestatistik 1970* (5 vols., 1972 ff.).—*Hessische Gemeindestatistik* (annual, 1980 ff.).

*State Library*: Hessische Landesbibliothek, Rheinstr. 55–57, D6200 Wiesbaden. *Director*: Dr Helmut Schwitzgebel.

## LOWER SAXONY

### Niedersachsen

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Lower Saxony (excluding the town of Bremerhaven, and the districts on the right bank of the Elbe in the Soviet Zone) comprises 47,439 sq. km, and is divided into 4 administrative districts, 38 rural districts, 9 towns and 1,019 communes; capital, Hanover.

Estimated population, on 31 Dec. 1987, was 7,190,215 (3,458,605 males, 3,731,610 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	67,223	40,778	13,885	84,432
1986	71,226	42,740	13,198	84,071
1987	73,037	43,730	13,780	82,964

**GOVERNMENT.** The Land Niedersachsen was formed on 1 Nov. 1946 by merging the former Prussian province of Hanover and the *Länder* Brunswick, Oldenburg and Schaumburg-Lippe. The Diet, elected on 15 June 1986, consists of 69 Christian Democrats, 66 Social Democrats; Free Democrats, 9 and *Die Grünen*, 11.

The cabinet of the Christian Democratic Union is headed by Minister President Dr Ernst Albrecht (CDU).

**AGRICULTURE.** Area and yield of the most important crops:

	<i>Area (in 1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Yield (in 1,000 tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	280	280	301	1,619	2,119	2,066
Rye	178	176	178	742	747	690
Barley	455	454	425	2,204	2,290	2,071
Oats	136	110	95	678	519	448
Potatoes	78	79	82	3,103	3,011	3,282
Sugar-beet	152	146	139	7,238	6,850	6,264

Livestock, 3 Dec. 1986: Cattle, 3,314,709 (including 1,089,765 milch cows); horses, 76,853; pigs, 7,774,344; sheep, 191,013; poultry, 35,239,391.

**FISHERIES.** In 1986 the yield of sea and coastal fishing was 83,314 tonnes valued at DM 61 m.

**INDUSTRY.** In Sept. 1987, 4,163 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 645,812 persons; of these 58,344 were employed in machine construction; 146,926 (1986) in car building; 65,715 in electrical engineering.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 2,993,100 in 1987. Of the total 266,500 were self-employed, 102,100 unpaid family workers, 2,792,000 employees; 211,100 were engaged in agriculture and forestry, 1,116,500 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 547,700 in commerce and transport, 1,117,800 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** At 1 Jan. 1987 there were 27,947 km of 'classified' roads, including 1,129 km of autobahn, 4,953 km of federal roads, 8,724 km of first-class and 13,141 km of second-class highways.

Number of motor vehicles, 1 Jan. 1988, was 3,866,135 including 3,281,885 passenger cars, 149,037 lorries, 8,513 buses, 247,130 tractors, 139,143 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Staatsgerichtshof*), 3 courts of appeal, 11 regional courts, 79 local courts, a Land labour court, 15 labour courts, a Land social court, 8 social courts, a finance court, a higher administrative court (together with Schleswig-Holstein), 4 administrative courts.

**RELIGION.** On 27 May 1970 (census) there were 74.6% Protestants and 19.6% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987 there were 2,241 primary schools with 23,560 teachers and 363,145 pupils; 295 special schools with 4,540 teachers and 27,161 pupils; 325 stages of orientation with 7,403 teachers and 123,405 pupils; 269 intermediate schools with 7,756 teachers and 108,687 pupils; 242 grammar schools with 13,083 teachers and 156,633 pupils; 9 evening high schools with 197 teachers and 1,676 pupils; 24 integrated comprehensive schools with 2,013 teachers and 20,423 pupils; 17 co-operative comprehensive schools with 1,600 teachers and 18,651 pupils. In 1986 there were 139 part-time vocational schools with 225,189 pupils; 118 year of basic vocational training with 23,973 pupils; 538 full-time vocational schools with 38,008 pupils; 92 *Fachgymnasien* with 11,403 pupils; 142 *Fachoberschulen* with 8,151 pupils (full-time vocational schools leading up to vocational colleges); 36 vocational extension schools with 509 pupils; 196 advanced full-time vocational schools (including schools for technicians) with 9,439 pupils; 241 public health schools with 14,290 pupils.

In the winter term 1987–88 there were 4 universities (Göttingen, 28,943 students; Hanover, 25,981; Oldenburg, 8,390; Osnabrück, 8,777); 2 technical universities (Braunschweig, 15,084; Clausthal, 3,746); the medical college of Hanover (3,636), the veterinary college in Hanover (1,915) and the colleges of Hildesheim (2,184) and Lüneburg (2,288).

*Statistical Information:* The Niedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt—Statistik\* (Geibelstr. 65, D3000 Hanover 1) fulfils the function of the 'Statistisches Landesamt für Niedersachsen'. *Head of Division:* Abteilungsdirektor Dr Günter Koop. Main publications are: *Statistisches Jahrbuch Niedersachsen* (from 1950).—*Statistische Monatshefte Niedersachsen* (from 1947).—*Statistik Niedersachsen*.

*State Library:* Niedersächsische Staats- und Universitätsbibliothek, Prinzenstr. 1, 3400, Göttingen. *Director:* Helmut Vogt; Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek, Waterloostr. 8, D3000 Hannover 1. *Director:* Dr Wilhelm Totok.

## NORTH RHINE-WESTPHALIA

### Nordrhein-Westfalen

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Land comprises 34,071 sq. km. It is divided into 5 areas, 23 urban and 31 rural districts. Capital Düsseldorf. Population, 25 May 1987, 16,711,845 (8,010,464 males, 8,701,381 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	159,713	101,321	38,203	191,161
1986	171,891	103,402	36,933	191,430
1987	177,109	105,446	37,810	185,565

**GOVERNMENT.** The Land Nordrhein-Westfalen is governed by Social Democrats; Minister President, Johannes Rau (SPD). The Diet, elected on 12 May 1985, consists of 125 Social Democrats, 88 Christian Democrats and 14 Free Democrats.



**AGRICULTURE.** Area and yield of the most important crops:

	Area (in 1,000 hectares)			Yield (in 1,000 tonnes)		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	235.4	236.6	240.9	1,464.6	1,636.3	1,551.3
Rye	53.4	50.9	52.9	232.6	235.1	228.5
Barley	327.4	338.7	328.3	1,714.0	1,871.0	1,677.1
Oats	85.7	71.1	66.1	395.9	333.2	296.8
Potatoes	18.3	17.6	17.4	706.6	643.3	702.0
Sugar-beet	81.6	80.5	78.1	4,099.3	4,019.4	3,997.6

Livestock, 3 Dec. 1987: Cattle, 1,949,453 (including 567,056 milch cows); pigs, 6,282,088; sheep, 169,881; horses (1986), 80,901; poultry (1986), 12,196,102.

**INDUSTRY.** In Sept. 1987, 10,780 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 1,964,801 persons; of these, 156,158 were employed in mining; 280,861 in machine construction; 139,801 in iron and steel production; 198,405 in chemical industry; 187,239 in electrical engineering; 57,258 in textile industry.

Output and/or production in 1,000 tonnes, 1987: Hard coal, 65,133; lignite, 103,614; pig-iron, 18,086; raw steel ingots, 21,285; rolled steel, 14,747; castings (iron and steel castings), 1,119; cement, 9,190; fireproof products, 1,051; sulphuric acid (including production of cokeres), 1,766; staple fibres and rayon, 331; metal-working machines, 96; equipment for smelting works and rolling mills, 112; machines for mining industry, 173; cranes and hoisting machinery, 55; installation implements, 1,323,785,000 (pieces); cables and electric lines, 241; springs of all kinds, 206; chains of all kinds, 80; locks and fittings, 361; spun yarns, 209; electric power, 167,660m. kwh. Of the total population, 11.8% were engaged in industry.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 6,840,400 at the 1%-sample survey of the microcensus of March 1987. Of the total, 559,500 were self-employed, 83,100 unpaid family workers, 6,197,800 employees; 145,600 were engaged in agriculture and forestry, 3,001,500 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 1.24m. in commerce and transport, 2,454,000 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** There were (1 Jan. 1988) 29,836 km of 'classified' roads, including 2,016 km of autobahn, 5,488 km of federal roads, 12,387 km of first-class and 9,945 km of second-class highways. Number of motor vehicles, 1 July 1988, 8,645,821, including 6,954,300 passenger cars, 738,845 lorries, 332,332 motor lorries/trucks, 16,895 buses, 211,608 tractors and 309,394 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Verfassungsgerichtshof*), 3 courts of appeal, 19 regional courts, 130 local courts, 3 Land labour courts, 30 labour courts, a Land social court, 8 social courts, 3 finance courts, a higher administrative court, 7 administrative courts.

**RELIGION.** On 25 May 1987 (census) there were 35.2% Protestants and 49.4% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987 there were 4,581 primary schools with 64,016 teachers and 1,004,719 pupils; 732 special schools with 12,444 teachers and 80,480 pupils; 542 intermediate schools with 15,711 teachers and 251,660 pupils; 125 *Gesamtschulen* (comprehensive schools) with 7,744 teachers and 85,756 pupils; 634 high schools with 37,533 teachers and 494,253 pupils; in 1987 there were 289 part-time vocational schools with 470,097 pupils; vocational preparatory year 219 schools with 14,824 pupils; 316 full-time vocational schools with 92,188 pupils; 15 schools offering upgrading courses to raise the general level of education and quality for vocational colleges with 279 pupils; 215 full-time vocational schools leading up to vocational colleges with 23,236 pupils; 161 advanced full-time vocational schools with 21,314 pupils; 573 schools for public health occupations with 10,990 teachers and 32,237 pupils; 24 schools within the scope of a pilot system of courses with 57,508 pupils and 2,242 teachers.

In the winter term 1987–88 there were 8 universities (Bielefeld, 13,026 students; Bochum, 31,608; Bonn, 38,864; Dortmund, 18,033; Düsseldorf, 15,200; Cologne, 47,176; Münster, 43,682; Witten, 210); the Technical University of Aachen (35,303); 4 Roman Catholic and 2 Protestant theological colleges with together 1,190 students. There were also 4 colleges of music, 2 colleges of fine arts and the college for physical education in Cologne with together 10,678 students; 20 *Fachhochschulen* (vocational colleges) with 97,251 students, and 6 *Gesamthochschulen* with together 82,846 students.

*Statistical Information:* The Landesamt für Datenverarbeitung und Statistik Nordrhein-Westfalen (Mauerstr. 51, D4000 Düsseldorf 30) was founded in 1946, by amalgamating the provincial statistical offices of Rhineland and Westphalia. *President:* A. Benker. The Landesamt publishes: *Statistisches Jahrbuch Nordrhein-Westfalen*. From 1949. More than 550 other publications yearly.

Forst, Walter, *Kleine Geschichte Nordrhein-Westfalens*. Münster, 1986.

*Land Library:* Universitätsbibliothek, Universitätsstr. 1, D4000 Düsseldorf. *Director:* Dr G. Gattermann.

## RHINELAND-PALATINATE

### Rheinland-Pfalz

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Rhineland-Pfalz comprises 19,848 sq. km. Capital Mainz. Population (at 31 Dec. 1986), 3,611,437 (1,732,019 males, 1,879,418 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	34,899	22,971	7,215	42,587
1986	37,181	22,814	7,354	43,214
1987	37,778	23,905	7,516	42,016

**CONSTITUTION.** The constitution of the Land Rheinland-Pfalz was approved by the Consultative Assembly on 25 April 1947 and by referendum on 18 May 1947, when 579,002 voted for and 514,338 against its acceptance.

The elections of 17 May 1987 returned 48 Christian Democrats, 40 Social Democrats, 7 Free Democrats and 5 Green Party.

The cabinet is headed by Carl Ludwig Wagner (Christian Democrat).

**AGRICULTURE.** Area and yield of the most important products:

	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	106.9	105.7	103.8	592.4	557.8	552.5
Rye	29.1	28.1	27.7	130.8	115.3	108.5
Barley	138.4	137.3	128.4	636.4	617.8	541.0
Oats	44.9	38.4	35.7	183.4	151.2	140.4
Potatoes	12.5	12.4	11.4	379.9	381.5	336.8
Sugar-beet	23.1	22.7	21.8	1,176.8	1,213.0	1,234.6
Wine (1,000 hectolitres)	60.7	61.0	61.2	4,144.2	6,729.1	6,323.0

Livestock (3 Dec. 1987): Cattle, 578,900 (including 201,600 milch cows); horses, (1986) 19,900; sheep, 117,900; pigs, 592,000; poultry (1986), 2,904,800.

**INDUSTRY.** In Sept. 1987, 2,573 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 368,662 persons; of these 75,374 were employed in chemical industry; 16,152 in production of leather goods and footwear; 48,731 in machine construction; 14,144 in processing stones and earthenware.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 1,584,000 at the census of March 1987. Of the total, 153,800 were self-employed, 48,200 unpaid family workers, 1,382,000 employees; 86,000 were engaged in agriculture and forestry,

665,200 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 257,400 in commerce and transport, 575,400 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** There were (1 Jan. 1988) 18,518 km of 'classified' roads, including 775 km of autobahn, 3,218 km of federal roads, 6,974 km of first-class and 7,551 km of second-class highways. Number of motor vehicles, 1 July 1988, was 2,137,385, including 1,796,846 passenger cars, 79,519 lorries, 5,053 buses, 146,508 tractors and 89,173 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Verfassungsgerichtshof*), 2 courts of appeal, 8 regional courts, 47 local courts, a Land labour court, 5 labour courts, a Land social court, 4 social courts, a finance court, a higher administrative court, 4 administrative courts.

**RELIGION.** On 27 May 1970 (census) there were 40.7% Protestants and 55.7% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987 there were 1,187 primary schools with 14,272 teachers and 222,055 pupils; 155 special schools with 1,728 teachers and 12,173 pupils; 108 intermediate schools with 3,148 teachers and 48,593 pupils; 137 high schools with 6,977 teachers and 95,459 pupils; 93 vocational schools with 110,386 pupils; 144 advanced vocational schools and institutions for the training of technicians (full-and part-time) with 7,080 pupils; 105 schools for public health occupations with 337 teachers and 6,347 pupils.

In the winter term 1987-88 there were the University of Mainz (25,006 students), the University of Kaiserslautern (7,371 students), the University of Trier (7,521 students), the *Hochschule für Verwaltungswissenschaften* in Speyer (445 students), the Koblenz School of Corporate Management (*Wissenschaftliche Hochschule für Unternehmensführung in Koblenz*) with 165 students, the Roman Catholic Theological College in Trier (239 students) and the Roman Catholic College in Vallendar (62 students). There were also the Teacher-Training College of the Land Rheinland-Pfalz (*Erziehungswissenschaftliche Hochschule*) with 2,792 students, the *Fachhochschule des Landes Rheinland-Pfalz* (college of engineering) with 16,149 students and 4 *Verwaltungsfachhochschulen* with 2,151 students; also 2 private colleges for social-pedagogy (882 students).

*Statistical Information:* The Statistisches Landesamt Rheinland-Pfalz (Mainzer Str., 14-16, D5427 Bad Ems) was established in 1948. *President:* Dr Weis. Its publications include: *Statistisches Jahrbuch für Rheinland-Pfalz* (from 1948); *Statistische Monatshefte Rheinland-Pfalz* (from 1958); *Statistik von Rheinland-Pfalz* (from 1949) 325 vols. to date; *Rheinland-Pfalz im Spiegel der Statistik* (1968); *Die kreisfreien Städte und Landkreise in Rheinland-Pfalz* (1977); *Rheinland-Pfalz heute* (from 1973); *Benutzerhandbuch des Landesinformationssystems* (1976); *Rheinland-Pfalz heute und morgen* (Mainz, 1985); *Raumordnungsbericht 1985 der Landesregierung Rheinland-Pfalz* (Mainz, 1985). *Landesentwicklungsprogramm 1980* (Mainz, 1980).

Klöpffer, R. and Korber, J., *Rheinland-Pfalz in seiner Gliederung nach zentralörtlichen Bereichen*. Remagen, 1957

## SAARLAND

**HISTORY.** In 1919 the Saar territory was placed under the control of the League of Nations. Following a plebiscite, the territory reverted to Germany in 1935. In 1945 the territory became part of the French Zone of occupation, and was in 1947 accorded an international status inside an economic union with France. In pursuance of the German-French agreement signed in Luxembourg on 27 Oct. 1956 the territory returned to Germany on 1 Jan. 1957. Its re-integration with Germany was completed by 5 July 1959.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Saarland has an area of 2,568 sq. km. Estimated population, 31 Dec. 1987, 1,033,748 (495,414 males, 544,334 females). The capital is Saarbrücken.



Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	9,800	6,964	2,418	12,765
1986	10,493	7,214	2,370	12,912
1987	10,517	7,021	2,481	12,318

**CONSTITUTION.** Saarland now ranks as a *Land* of the Federal German Republic and is represented in the Federal Diet by 8 members. The constitution passed on 15 Dec. 1947 is being revised.

The Saar Diet, elected on 10 March 1985, is composed as follows: 26 Social Democrats, 20 Christian Democrats, 5 Free Democrats.

Saarland is governed by Social Democrats in Parliament. Minister President: Oskar Lafontaine (Social Democrat).

**AGRICULTURE AND FORESTRY.** The cultivated area occupies 120,163 hectares or slightly more than half the total area; the forest area comprises nearly 33% of the total (256,804 hectares).

Area and yield of the most important crops:

	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	6.1	6.6	7.0	32.2	30.5	31.1
Rye	6.2	6.1	6.1	25.9	23.5	24.0
Barley	10.7	10.5	10.0	47.0	42.7	42.2
Oats	6.3	5.6	5.4	27.0	20.2	22.4
Potatoes	0.5	0.4	0.4	13.7	13.3	11.4
Sugar-beet	...	...	...	0.2	...	...

Livestock, Dec. 1987: Cattle, 68,712 (including 22,931 milch cows); pigs, 41,417; sheep, 13,201; horses (1986), 3,746; poultry (1986), 302,765.

**INDUSTRY.** In June 1988, 586 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 133,380 persons; of these 22,389 were engaged in coalmining, 20,896 in manufacturing motor vehicles, parts, accessories, 16,352 in iron and steel production, 12,162 in machine construction, 8,606 in electrical engineering, 7,359 in steel construction. In 1987 the coalmines produced 10.7m. tonnes of coal. Four iron foundries had 5 blast furnaces working and produced 3.6m. tonnes of pig-iron and 4m. tonnes of crude steel.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 409,600 at the 1%-sample survey of the microcensus of April 1986. Of the total, 34,900 were self-employed, 5,600 unpaid family workers, 365,100 employees; 7,800 were engaged in agriculture and forestry, 177,700 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 79,200 in commerce and transport, 144,900 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** At 1 Jan. 1987 there were 2,188 km of 'classified' roads, including 223 km of autobahn, 406 km of federal roads, 784 km of first-class and 786 km of second-class highways. Number of motor vehicles, 31 Dec. 1987, 560,864, including 497,263 passenger cars, 21,504 lorries, 1,434 buses, 13,109 tractors and 22,659 motor cycles.

**JUSTICE.** There are a constitutional court (*Verfassungsgerichtshof*), a court of appeal, a regional court, 11 local courts, a Land labour court, 3 labour courts, a Land social court, a social court, a finance court, a higher administrative court, an administrative court.

**RELIGION.** On 27 May 1970 (census) 73.8% of the population were Roman Catholics and 24.1% were Protestants.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987-88 there were 325 primary schools with 3,761 teachers and 58,164 pupils; 48 special schools with 533 teachers and 3,092 pupils; 36 intermediate schools with 1,030 teachers and 13,080 pupils; 36 high schools with 1,970

teachers and 23,871 pupils; 8 *Gesamtschulen* (comprehensive high schools) with 301 teachers and 3,306 pupils; 2 *Freie Waldorfschulen* with 57 teachers and 679 pupils; 4 Evening intermediate schools with 269 pupils; 2 Evening high schools and 1 *Saarland-Kolleg* with 20 teachers and 374 pupils; 43 part-time vocational schools with 30,134 pupils; year of commercial basic training: 79 institutions with 2,971 pupils; 21 advanced full-time vocational schools and schools for technicians with 3,094 pupils; 53 full-time vocational schools with 5,443 pupils; 11 vocational extension schools with 591 pupils; 26 *Fachoberschulen* (full-time vocational schools leading up to vocational colleges) with 2,926 pupils; 42 schools for public health occupations with 2,252 pupils. The number of pupils visiting the vocational schools amounts to 47,411. They are instructed by 2,928 teachers.

In the winter term 1987–88 there was the University of the Saarland with 18,040 students; 1 music-conservatory with 254 students; 1 vocational college (economics, engineering and design) with 2,995 students; 1 vocational college for social affairs with 206 students; 1 vocational college for public administration with 191 students.

*Statistical Information:* The Statistisches Amt des Saarlandes (Hardenbergstrasse 3, D6600 Saarbrücken 1) was established on 1 April 1938. As from 1 June 1935, it was an independent agency; its predecessor, 1920–35, was the Statistical Office of the Government Commission of the Saar. *Chief:* Direktor Josef Mailänder. The most important publications are: *Statistisches Handbuch für das Saarland*, from 1950.—*Statistisches Taschenbuch für das Saarland*, from 1959.—*Saarländische Bevölkerungs- und Wirtschaftszahlen*. Quarterly, from 1949.—*Saarland in Zahlen* (special issues).—*Einzelchriften zur Statistik des Saarlandes*, from 1950.—*Statistische Nachrichten*, from 1981.

Fischer, P., *Die Saar zwischen Deutschland und Frankreich*. Frankfurt, 1959

Osang, R. M., *Saarland ABC*. Saarbrücken, 1975

Schmidt, R. H., *Saarpolitik 1945–57*. 3 vols. Berlin, 1959–62

## SCHLESWIG-HOLSTEIN

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of Schleswig-Holstein is 15,728 sq. km; it is divided into 4 urban and 11 rural districts and 1,131 communes. The capital is Kiel. The population (estimate, 31 Dec. 1986) numbered 2,612,672 (1,265,399 males, 1,347,273 females).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1985	23,099	15,042	5,803	31,330
1986	24,693	15,631	5,290	30,979
1987	25,956	16,464	5,937	30,885

**GOVERNMENT.** The elections of 8 May 1988 gave the Christian Democrats 27, the Social Democratic Party 46 and the South Schleswig Association 1 seat.

*Prime Minister:* Björn Engholm.

**AGRICULTURE.** Area and yield of the most important crops:

	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	145.8	154.6	152.8	1,081.8	1,230.0	1,135.4
Rye	50.0	48.0	47.3	213.8	221.8	164.6
Barley	142.8	139.6	127.6	726.9	849.3	743.7
Oats	32.0	24.4	18.2	164.0	132.6	85.1
Potatoes	4.5	4.1	3.9	177.6	151.8	120.9
Sugar-beet	17.3	17.2	15.9	775.6	768.9	493.6

Livestock, 3 Dec. 1987: 33,134 horses (1986), 1,496,732 cattle (including 480,261 milch cows), 1,631,829 pigs, 196,334 sheep, 3,213,920 poultry (1986).

**FISHERIES.** In 1987 the yield of small-scale deep-sea and inshore fisheries was 47,617 tonnes valued at DM65.6m.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 (average), 1,528 establishments (with 20 and more employees) employed 164,160 persons; of these, 9,296 were employed in ship-building (except naval engineering); 31,990 in machine construction; 22,222 in food and kindred industry; 16,915 in electrical engineering.

**LABOUR.** The economically active persons totalled 1,155,400 in 1987. Of the total, 118,800 were self-employed, 22,200 unpaid family workers, 1,021,400 employees; 61,900 were engaged in agriculture and forestry, 335,500 in power supply, mining, manufacturing and building, 246,700 in commerce and transport, 511,300 in other industries and services.

**ROADS.** There were (1 Jan. 1988) 9,849.1 km of 'classified' roads, including 386.5 km of autobahn, 1,964.8 km of federal roads, 3,525.5 km of first-class and 3,972.2 km of second-class highways. Number of motor vehicles, 1 Jan. 1988, was 1,341,107, including 1,155,353 passenger cars, 53,611 lorries, 2,811 buses, 73,818 tractors, 39,652 motor cycles.

**SHIPPING.** The Kiel Canal, 98.7 km (51 miles) long, is on Schleswig-Holstein territory. In 1938, 53,530 vessels of 22.6m. net tons passed through it; in 1981, 52,641 vessels of 53.3m. net tons; in 1982, 49,100 vessels of 52.7m. net tons; in 1983, 49,320 vessels of 50.9m. net tons; in 1984, 50,920 vessels of 53m. net tons; in 1985, 48,387 vessels of 53.5m. net tons; in 1986, 46,543 vessels of 47.5m. net tons; in 1987, 45,324 vessels of 45m. net tons.

**JUSTICE.** There are a court of appeal, 4 regional courts, 30 local courts, a Land labour court, 6 labour courts, a Land social court, 4 social courts, a finance court, an administrative court.

**RELIGION.** On 27 May 1970 (census) there were 86.5% Protestants and 6% Roman Catholics.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987-88 there were 690 primary schools with 5,167 teachers and 136,831 pupils; 165 special schools with 1,370 teachers and 13,114 pupils; 174 intermediate schools with 2,654 teachers and 54,338 pupils; 99 high schools with 4,018 teachers and 67,916 pupils; 7 *Integrierte Gesamtschulen* (comprehensive schools) with 283 teachers and 4,664 pupils; 42 part-time vocational schools with 1,596 teachers and 87,280 pupils; 143 full-time vocational schools with 458 teachers and 11,326 pupils; 58 advanced vocational schools with 274 teachers and 5,359 pupils; 61 schools for public health occupations with 4,346 pupils; 53 vocational grammar schools with 382 teachers and 6,399 pupils; 6 *Fachhochschulen* (vocational colleges) with 12,492 pupils in the summer term 1988.

In the summer term 1988 the University of Kiel had 16,676 students, 2 teacher-training colleges had 1,849 students, 1 music college had 306 students, 1 *Medizinische* University in Lübeck had 1,121 students and 1 *Nordische* University in Flensburg had 68 students.

*Statistical Information:* Statistisches Landesamt Schleswig-Holstein (Fröbel Str. 15-17, D2300 Kiel 1). *Director:* Dr Mohr. Publications: *Statistisches Taschenbuch Schleswig-Holstein*, since 1954.—*Statistisches Jahrbuch Schleswig-Holstein*, since 1951.—*Statistische Monatshefte Schleswig-Holstein*, since 1949.—*Statistische Berichte*, since 1947.—*Beiträge zur historischen Statistik Schleswig-Holstein*, from 1967.—*Lange Reihen*, from 1977.

Baxter, R. R., *The Law of International Waterways*, Harvard Univ. Press, 1964

Brandt, O., *Grundriss der Geschichte Schleswig-Holsteins*. 5th ed. Kiel, 1957

*Handbuch für Schleswig-Holstein*. 23rd ed. Kiel, 1986

*State Library:* Schleswig-Holsteinische Landesbibliothek, Kiel, Schloss. *Director:* Prof. Dr Dieter Lohmeier.



# GHANA

*Capital:* Accra

*Population:* 13.8m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$390 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The State of Ghana came into existence on 6 March 1957 when the former Colony of the Gold Coast and the Trusteeship Territory of Togoland attained Dominion status. The name of the country recalls a powerful monarchy which from the 4th to the 13th century A.D. ruled the region of the middle Niger.

The Ghana Independence Act received the royal assent on 7 Feb. 1957. The General Assembly of the United Nations in Dec. 1956 approved the termination of British administration in Togoland and the union of Togoland with the Gold Coast on the latter's attainment of independence.

The country was declared a Republic within the Commonwealth on 1 July 1960 with Dr Kwame Nkrumah as the first President. On 24 Feb. 1966 the Nkrumah regime was overthrown in a military *coup* and ruled by the National Liberation Council until 1 Oct. 1969 when the military regime handed over power to a civilian regime under a new constitution. Dr K. A. Busia was the Prime Minister of the Second Republic. On 13 Jan. 1972 the armed forces and police took over power again from the civilian regime in a *coup*.

In Oct. 1975 the National Redemption Council was subordinated to a Supreme Military Council (SMC). In 1979 the SMC was toppled in a *coup* led by Flight-Lieut. J. J. Rawlings. The new government permitted elections already scheduled and these resulted in a victory for Dr Hilla Limann and his People's National Party. However on 31 Dec. 1981 another *coup* led by Flight-Lieut. Rawlings dismissed the government and Parliament, suspended the Constitution and established a Provisional National Defence Council to exercise all government powers.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Ghana is bounded west by the Côte d'Ivoire, north by Burkina Faso, east by Togo and south by the Gulf of Guinea. The area of Ghana is 92,456 sq. miles (239,460 sq. km); census population 1984, 12,296,081. Estimate (1988) 13,812,000.

Ghana is divided into 10 regions:

<i>Regions</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population census 1984</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population census 1984</i>
Eastern	19,977	1,680,890	Koforidua	58,731
Western	23,921	1,157,807	Sekondi-Takoradi	93,400
Central	9,826	1,142,335	Cape Coast	57,224
Ashanti	24,390	2,090,100	Kumasi	376,246
Brong-Ahafo	39,557	1,206,608	Sunyani	38,834
Northern	70,383	1,164,583	Tamale	135,952
Volta	20,572	1,211,907	Ho	37,777
Upper East	8,842	772,744	Bolgatanga	32,495
Upper West	18,477	438,008	Wa	...
Greater Accra	2,593	1,431,099	Accra	867,459

The capital is Accra, other chief towns (population, census, 1970); Asamankese, 101,144; Tema, 99,608 (1984); Nsawam, 57,350; Tarkwa, 50,570; Oda, 40,740; Obuasi, 40,001; Winneba, 36,104; Keta, 27,461; Agona Swedru, 23,843.

Vital statistics (1985): Birth rate, 47 per 1,000; death rate 15 per 1,000.

In the south and centre of Ghana, the people are of the Kwa ethno-linguistic group, mainly Akan (Ashanti, Fante, etc.), Ewe (in the Volta region) and Ga, while the 20% living in the north belong to Gur peoples (Dagbane, Gurma and Grusi).

**CLIMATE.** The climate ranges from the equatorial type on the coast to savannah in the north and is typified by the existence of well-marked dry and wet seasons. Temperatures are relatively high throughout the year. The amount, duration and seasonal distribution of rain is very marked, from the south, with over 80" (2,000

mm) to the north, with under 50" (1,250 mm). In the extreme north, the wet season is from March to Aug., but further south it lasts until Oct. Near Kumasi, two wet seasons occur, in May and June and again in Oct. and this is repeated, with greater amounts, along the coast of Ghana. Accra. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 29" (724 mm). Kumasi. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 58" (1,402 mm). Sekondi-Takoradi. Jan. 79°F (25°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 47" (1,181 mm). Tamale. Jan. 82°F (27.8°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,026 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Since the *coup* of 31 Dec. 1981, supreme power is vested in the Provisional National Defence Council, which in Sept. 1988 consisted of: Flight-Lieut. Jerry John Rawlings (Chairman), Aanaa Enin, Ebo Tawiah, D. F. Annan, Mahama Iddrisu, Capt. Kojo Tsikata, P. V. Obeng, Maj.-Gen. Mensah-Wood and Lieut.-Gen. A. Quianoo. Ministerial responsibilities are exercised by Secretaries appointed by the PNDC, comprising in Sept. 1988:

*Chairman of Committee of Secretaries:* P. V. Obeng.

*Finance and Economic Planning:* Dr Kwesi Botchway. *Foreign Affairs:* Dr Obed Asamoah. *Fuel and Power:* Ato Ahwoi. *Mobilization and Social Welfare:* Huudu Yahaya. *Justice and Attorney-General:* G. E. K. Aikins. *Lands and Natural Resources:* Kwame Peprah. *Local Government and Rural Development:* Kwamina Ahwoi. *Youth and Sports:* Saarah Mensah. *Roads and Highways:* Lieut.-Col. M. K. Gbedemah. *Education and Culture:* K. B. Asante. *Interior:* Nii Okajiah Adamafio. *Works and Housing:* Dr Charles Boadu. *Health:* Nana Akuoku Sarpong. *Information:* Dr Mohammed Ben Abdallah. *Transport and Communications:* Yaw Donkoh. *Trade and Tourism:* Kofi Djin. *Industries, Science and Technology:* Dr Francis Acquah. *Agriculture:* Cmdre S. G. Obimpeh. *Chief of Staff, PNDC:* Lieut.-Col. E. K. T. Donkor. *Advisor for CDR Affairs at the Secretariat:* Lieut.-Col. J. Y. Assasie (rtd). There are 7 Secretaries of various Committees.

*National flag:* Red, gold, green (horizontal); a black star in the centre.

*National anthem:* Hail the name of Ghana.

*Local government:* The 10 Regions, each under a Regional Secretary appointed by the PNDC, are divided into 110 districts.

## DEFENCE.

**Army.** The Ghana Army consists of 6 infantry battalions, 1 reconnaissance battalion, 1 field engineer battalion, 1 parachute battalion, 1 mortar battalion, with armoured cars and ancillary units. Total strength, (1989) 9,000. There is also a people's militia and Committees for the Defence of the Revolution.

**Navy.** The Ghana Navy was formed in 1959. It comprises 4 German-built fast attack craft, 2 patrol craft, 2 coastal patrol boats and 2 service craft. Naval personnel in 1989 numbered 800 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** The Ghana Air Force was formed in 1959, when an Air Force Training School was established at Accra. Its first combat unit has 4 Italian-built Aermacchi M.B.326K light ground attack jets ordered in 1976. It has, for training, transport, search and rescue, and air survey operations, 4 Fokker Friendship twin-turboprop transports, and a twin-turboprop Fokker Fellowship for Presidential use, all built in the Netherlands, 8 Islander piston-engined light transports, 6 Shorts Skyvan twin-turboprop STOL transports, and 10 Bulldog primary trainers, all built in the UK; 2 Bell 212 helicopters built in the US; 4 French-built Alouette III helicopters, and 5 Aermacchi M.B.326F and 2 M.B.339 jet trainers. There are air bases at Takoradi and Tamale. Personnel strength (1989) about 800.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Ghana is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAU, ECOWAS and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987 budget provided for revenue estimated at C 109,711m. and expenditure estimated at C 109,407m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *cedi* (C), divided into 100 *pesewas* (P). Notes are issued of 1, 2, 5, 10, 50, 200 and 500 C; cupro-nickel coins of 2½, 5, 10 and 20 P and 1 C. In March 1989, £1 = C 450.32; US\$1 = C 261.66.

**Banking.** The Bank of Ghana was established in Feb. 1957 as the central bank of the country. The Ghana Commercial Bank, also established in Feb. 1957, is a purely commercial institution with agricultural financing as one of its priorities. It had 150 full branches in Sept. 1987, 1 in London and 1 subsidiary in Lomé (Togo). Barclays Bank of Ghana Ltd has 39 branches and agencies and the Standard Bank (Ghana) Ltd has 38 branches.

The National Investment Bank, established in 1963, is an autonomous joint state-private development finance institution. The former post office savings bank has been transformed into the National Savings and Credit Bank. The Bank for Housing and Construction opened in 1973; The Merchant Bank (Ghana) Ltd in 1972; The Ghana Co-operative Bank was established and re-organized in 1974; The Agricultural Development Bank in 1967; The Consolidated Discount House Ltd in Nov. 1987.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 4,372m. kwh, mainly from 2 hydro-electric stations operated by the Volta River Authority, Akosombo (6 units) and Kpong (4 units), with a total capacity of 1,072 mw. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The Government announced in Jan. 1978 that oil had been found in commercial quantities with known reserves (1980) 7m. bbls and in Oct. 1983 formed the Ghanaian National Petroleum Corporation with exploration rights in all areas not covered by existing agreements.

**Minerals.** In 1987 gold production was 323,496 fine oz.; diamonds, 396,720 carats; manganese, 235,123 tonnes; bauxite, 226,415 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** In southern and central Ghana main food crops are maize, rice, cassava, plantain, groundnuts, yam and cocoyam, and in northern Ghana groundnuts, rice, maize, sorghum, millet and yams.

Production of main food crops (1987 in 1,000 tonnes) was: Maize, 553; rice, 81; millet (1986), 130; sorghum, 300; cassava, 2,943; cocoyam, 1,000; yam, 1,001; plantain, 1,005.

Cocoa is by far Ghana's main cash crop. Production (1987) 218,881 tonnes. Output has fallen considerably since the 1970s, and Ghana has lost its long-held position as the world's leading producer to the Côte d'Ivoire. While there is smuggling to that country, Ghana's low cocoa production was due to ageing trees and declining interest in cocoa growing because of poor prices. Since 1982 the PNDC has carried out a rehabilitation programme for cocoa as well as increased producer prices for farmers, which has halted the decline and raised production considerably.

Among other cash crops, tobacco and coffee are important, and improved types of palm oil and coconuts are being planted on an increased scale; progress has been made with clonal rubber in the south-west; pepper, ginger, pineapple, avocado, citrus and other crops are being grown for export, and efforts are being made to increase local supplies of cotton, kenaf, tobacco, palm oil, mango, pineapple and sugar-cane for local industries.

**Livestock, 1987:** Cattle, 1,133,000; sheep, 1,988,000; goats, 1.9m.; horses (1986), 4,000; pigs, 398,000; poultry, 8,214,000.

**Forestry.** The total land area is 23,854,000 hectares. In 1988 the closed forest zone covered 8,225,900 hectares, of which 2,559,400 hectares were reserves and 46,600 hectares unreserved forest lands. In 1986, 221,000 cu. metres of logs and 104,000 cu. metres of sawn timber were exported. Production (1987) 493,543 cu. metres.



**Fisheries.** Catch (1987) 324,630 tonnes (54,630 from inland waters).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The aluminium smelter at Tema is the centre of industrial development, mainly concentrated on Accra/Tema, Kumasi and Takoradi/Sekondi. In 1984 the Volta Aluminium Company (VALCO), which operates the smelter, reached an agreement with the government on the use of Volta dam electricity. Production (1986) 120,000 tonnes.

**Commerce.** In 1986 exports were US\$773m.; imports, US\$787.3m. Exports went mainly to USA, UK, Japan and Federal Republic of Germany. Imports came from Nigeria, UK, USA and Federal Republic of Germany. Principal exports: Cocoa, timber and gold; imports were raw materials, capital equipment, petroleum and food.

Total trade between Ghana and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	61,561	99,410	103,480	113,859	106,314
Exports and re-exports from UK	82,897	116,883	113,218	138,081	126,148

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 92,550 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 agencies of the Ministry of Roads and Highways maintained about 14,514 km of trunk roads, 14,000 km of feeder and 10,000 km of other rural roads, and 1,700 km of city and municipal roads. The number of vehicles in use (1986) was 54,196, of which private cars, 26,590.

**Railways.** Total length of railways open in 1985 was 953 km of 1,067 mm gauge. In 1985 railways carried 510,000 tonnes and 2.1m. passengers.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport at Accra, domestic airports at Takoradi, Kumasi, Tamale and Sunyani and airstrips at Wa, Navrongo and Ho. Services are operated by Ghana Airways, Nigeria Airways, Swissair, KLM, British Airways, Egypt Air, Air India, Aeroflot, Air Afrique and Bulgarian Airlines. Total aircraft freight in 1986 was 8,661,971 tonnes.

**Shipping.** The chief ports are Takoradi and Tema. In 1983, 1,299,146 tonnes of cargo were imported and 1,682,519 tonnes were exported by 663 ships.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 444 telephone exchanges and 666 call offices with (1987) 74,935 telephones in use. There are internal wireless stations at Accra, Kumasi, Bawku, Lawra, Kete-Krachi, Tamale, Yendi, Kpandu, Tumu and Sekondi-Takoradi. In 1985 there were over 2m. radio and 140,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there were 83 cinemas with an average seating capacity of 1,200.

**Newspapers.** There were (1987) 3 daily and 48 weekly and monthly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Courts were constituted as follows:

*Supreme Court.* The Supreme Court consists of the Chief Justice who is also the President and not less than 4 other Justices of the Supreme Court. The Supreme Court is the final court of appeal in Ghana. The final interpretation of the provisions of the constitution has been entrusted to the Supreme Court.

*Court of Appeal.* The Court of Appeal consists of the Chief Justice together with not less than 5 other Justices of the Appeal court and such other Justices of Superior Courts as the Chief Justice may nominate. The Court of Appeal is duly constituted by 3 Justices. The Court of Appeal is bound by its own previous decisions and all courts inferior to the Court of Appeal are bound to follow the decisions of the Court of Appeal on questions of law. Divisions of the Appeal Court may be created, subject to the discretion of the Chief Justice.

**High Court of Justice.** The Court has jurisdiction in civil and criminal matters as well as those relating to industrial and labour disputes including administrative complaints. The High Court of Justice has supervisory jurisdiction over all inferior Courts and any adjudicating authority and in exercise of its supervisory jurisdiction has power to issue such directions, orders or writs including writs or orders in the nature of habeas corpus, certiorari, mandamus, prohibition and quo warranto. The High Court of Justice has no jurisdiction in cases of treason. The High Court consists of the Chief Justice and not less than 12 other judges and such other Justices of the Superior Court as the Chief Justice may appoint.

The PNDC has established Public Tribunals in addition to the traditional courts of justice.

There is a Public Tribunal Board consisting of not less than 5 members and not more than 15 members of the public appointed by the PNDC, at least one of whom shall be a lawyer of not less than 5 years' standing as a lawyer. The Board is responsible for the administration of all tribunals.

A tribunal consists of at least three persons and not more than five persons, selected by the Board from among persons appointed by the Council as members of public tribunals.

**Religion.** In 1988 Christians represented 52% of the population (Protestant, 37%; Roman Catholic, 15%), Moslem, 13%, others, 30%.

**Education.** In 1985–86 there were 2,399 kindergartens for the age-groups 4–6 years with 171,182 pupils. Primary schools are free and attendance is compulsory. In 1985–86 there were 9,004 primary schools with 1,491,162 pupils. In 1986 there were 5,310 middle schools with 617,613 pupils; 110 junior secondary schools with 18,372 pupils and 233 secondary schools with 133,435 students. In 1986 there were 45 training colleges with 15,210 students and 26 vocational-technical schools with 19,547 students at the beginning of the academic year. In 1987–88 there were 8,847 students at the 3 universities (University of Ghana, the University of Science and Technology at Kumasi, and the University of Cape Coast). University education is free.

**Health.** In 1988 medical facilities included 46 government hospitals, 252 health centres and posts, 3 university hospitals, 3 mental hospitals, 35 mission hospitals, 34 mission clinics and 40 private hospitals. In addition, there are 26 nurses and midwives training schools. There were 600 doctors, 5,190 nurses and 2,830 midwives in 1986.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Ghana in Great Britain (13 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8PR)

*High Commissioner:* Dr J. L. S. Abbey (accredited 15 Oct. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Ghana (Osu Link, off Gamel Abdul Nasser Ave., Accra)

*High Commissioner:* A. H. Wyatt, CMG.

Of Ghana in the USA (2460 16th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Eric K. Otoo.

Of the USA in Ghana (Ring Rd. East, Accra)

*Ambassador:* Stephen Lyne.

Of Ghana to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* James Victor Gbeho.

## Further Reading

*Digest of Statistics.* Accra. Quarterly (from May 1953)

*Ghana. Official Handbook.* Annual

Davidson, B., *Black Star.* London, 1973

James, C. L. R., *Nkrumah and the Ghana Revolution.* London, 1977

Jones, T., *Ghana's First Republic 1960–1966.* London, 1975

Killick, T., *Development Economics in Action: A Study of Economic Policies in Ghana.* London, 1978

Ray, D. I., *Ghana: Politics, Economics and Society.* London, 1986

# GIBRALTAR

*Population:* 29,692 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$4,370 (1985)

**HISTORY.** The Rock of Gibraltar was settled by Moors in 711; they named it after their chief Jebel Tariq, 'the Mountain of Tariq'. In 1462 it was taken by the Spaniards, from Granada. It was captured by Admiral Sir George Rooke on 24 July 1704, and ceded to Great Britain by the Treaty of Utrecht, 1713. The cession was confirmed by the treaties of Paris (1763) and Versailles (1783).

On 10 Sept. 1967, in pursuance of a United Nations resolution on the decolonization of Gibraltar, a referendum was held in Gibraltar in order to ascertain whether the people of Gibraltar believed that their interests lay in retaining their link with Britain or in passing under Spanish sovereignty. Out of a total electorate of 12,762, 12,138 voted to retain the British connexion, while 44 voted for Spain.

On 15 Dec. 1982 the border between Gibraltar and Spain was re-opened for Spaniards and Gibraltarian pedestrians who are residents of Gibraltar. The border had been closed by Spain in June 1969. Following an agreement signed in Brussels in Nov. 1984 the border was fully opened on 5 Feb. 1985.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area, 2½ sq. miles (6.5 sq. km). Total population, including port and harbour (census, 1981), 28,719. Estimate (31 Dec. 1987) 29,692 (of which 20,162 were British Gibraltarian, 5,665 Other British and 3,865 Non-British). The population is mostly of Genoese, Portuguese and Maltese as well as Spanish descent.

Vital statistics (1987): Births, 531; marriages, 724; deaths, 217.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is warm temperate, with westerly winds in winter bringing rain. Summers are pleasantly warm and rainfall is low. Frost or snow is very rare. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 29" (772 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following a Constitutional Conference held in July 1968, a new Constitution was introduced in 1969. The Legislative and City Councils were merged to produce an enlarged legislature known as the Gibraltar House of Assembly. Executive authority is exercised by the Governor, who is also Commander-in-Chief. The Governor, while retaining certain reserved powers, is normally required to act in accordance with the advice of the Gibraltar Council, which consists of 4 *ex-officio* members (the Deputy Governor, the Deputy Fortress Commander, the Attorney-General and the Financial and Development Secretary) together with 5 elected members of the House of Assembly appointed by the Governor after consultation with the Chief Minister. Matters of primarily domestic concern are devolved to elected Ministers, with Britain responsible for other matters, including external affairs, defence and internal security. There is a Council of Ministers presided over by the Chief Minister.

The House of Assembly consists of a Speaker appointed by the Governor, 15 elected and 2 *ex-officio* members (the Attorney-General and the Financial and Development Secretary).

A Mayor of Gibraltar is elected by the elected members of the Assembly.

*Governor and C.-in-C.:* Air Chief Marshal Sir Peter Terry, GCB, AFC.

*Chief Minister:* Joseph John Bossano.

*Flag:* White with a red strip along the bottom, a red triple-towered castle with a gold key depending from the gateway.

**DEFENCE.** The Gibraltar Regiment is a part-time unit consisting of 1 infantry company, 1 battery of 105 mm light guns and an air defence troop equipped with blowpipe missiles with a small regular cadre. There is also a resident battalion from the British Army, an RAF Base and a Naval Base.



## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in £ sterling):

	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	62,930,849	75,387,665	78,343,477	81,730,000
Expenditure	70,082,715	72,868,043	82,063,600	86,103,000

**Currency.** The legal currency consists of Gibraltar government notes in denominations of £50, £20, £10, £5 and £1 and UK silver and copper-cupro-nickel coins. The amount of local currency notes in circulation at 31 March 1987 was £9,482,510.

**Banking.** Domestic and offshore banking services are provided by 12 banks: Barclays Bank PLC (with 3 branches), Lloyds Bank PLC, Hambros Bank Ltd, Bank of Credit and Commerce Gibraltar Ltd, United Bank of Gibraltar Ltd, Algemene Bank Gibraltar Ltd, Banque Indosuez, Lombard North Central PLC, Jyske Bank, Banco de Bilbao (Gibraltar) Ltd, Banco Central SA and Nat West Bank PLC. In addition there are 8 offshore banks: Gibraltar and Iberian Bank Ltd, Hong Kong Bank and Trust Co. Ltd, Hambros Bank Ltd, Gibraltar Private Bank Ltd, Republic National Bank of New York (Gibraltar) Ltd, Gibraltar Trust Bank Ltd, Banco Hispano Americano SA and Abbey National (Gib) Ltd. Total assets of commercial banks were £664.8m. in Dec. 1987.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There are a number of relatively small industrial concerns engaged in the bottling of beer and mineral waters, etc., mainly for local consumption. There is a small but important commercial ship-repair yard with 3 dry docks for vessels of up to 75,000 DWT, and a yacht repair yard.

**Employment.** The total insured labour force at 31 Dec. 1987, was 14,018. There were (1987) 12 registered trade unions and 9 employers associations. Approximately 50% of the local labour force is employed by the UK departments of the Gibraltar Government. In the private sector the main sources of employment are the construction industry, ship repairing, hotel and catering services, shipping services, trading agencies and retail distribution.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports (in £ sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	66,098,000	113,200,000	111,700,000	140,962,000
Exports	25,072,000	48,300,000	44,300,000	51,731,000

Britain and the Commonwealth provide the bulk of imports, but fresh vegetables and fruit come mainly from Morocco and Spain. Foodstuffs accounted for 14% of total imports (about £20m.) in 1987. About 44% of non-fuel imports originate from the UK. Other sources include Japan, Spain and USA. Value of non-fuel imports, 1987, £111m. Exports are mainly re-exports of petroleum and petroleum products supplied to shipping. Gibraltar depends largely on tourism, offshore banking and other financial sector activity, the entrepôt trade and the provision of supplies to visiting ships. Exports of local produce are negligible.

Total trade between Gibraltar and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,582	6,021	3,367	4,537
Exports and re-exports from UK	47,052	46,200	49,986	67,944

**Tourism.** The number of tourists in 1987 was 3,184,490 of which 123,287 arrived by air, 97,955 by sea and 2,963,248 by land.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 31 miles of roads including 4.25 miles of pedestrian way.

**Aviation.** There are regular flights between London and Gibraltar operated by GB Airways and British Airways. GB Airways operate daily flights between Gibraltar

and Tangier. Air Europe operate regular flights between London and Gibraltar and Manchester and Gibraltar.

**Shipping.** Gibraltar has a government-owned ship repair yard of strategic importance. There is a deep Admiralty harbour of 440 acres. A total of 2,601 merchant ships, 35,651,314 GRT, entered the port during 1987, including 1,921 deep-sea ships of 35,490,934 GRT. In 1987, 5,071 calls were made by yachts, 134,372 GRT and 122 cruise liners called during 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** An automatic telephone system exists in the town; number of telephones (1987), 14,000. International direct dialling facilities are available to over 100 countries via the Gibraltar Telecommunications Ltd (Gibtel) Earth Station and other international circuits. Air-mail arrives daily. A direct air-mail service between Gibraltar and Tangier is run by GB Airways Ltd. Surface mails arrive direct and through France, Spain and Tangier. Radio Gibraltar broadcasts for 17 hours daily, in English and Spanish, and GBC Television operates for 5 hours daily in English. Number of receivers (31 Dec. 1987), TV, 7,071.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there was 1 cinema with a seating capacity of 1,680.

**Newspapers.** There were (1989) 1 daily and 4 weeklies.

### JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicial system is based on the English system. There is a Court of Appeal, a Supreme Court, presided over by the Chief Justice, a court of first instance and a magistrates' court.

**Religion.** Religion of civil population mostly Roman Catholic; 1 Anglican and 1 Roman Catholic cathedral and 2 Anglican and 6 Roman Catholic churches; 1 Presbyterian and 1 Methodist church and 4 synagogues; annual subsidy to each communion, £500.

**Education.** Free compulsory education is provided for children between ages 4 and 15 years. Scholarships are made available for universities, teacher-training and other higher education in Britain. The comprehensive system was introduced in Sept. 1972. There were (1987) 12 primary and 2 comprehensive schools. Primary schools are mixed and divided into first schools for children aged 4-8 years and middle schools for children aged 8-12 years. The comprehensives are single-sex. In addition, there are 2 Services primary schools and 1 private primary school. A new purpose-built Special School for severely handicapped children aged 2-16 years was opened in 1977, and there are 2 Special Units for children with special educational needs (1 attached to a first school, the other to a middle school), 2 nurseries for children aged 3-4 years and an occupational therapy centre for handicapped adults. Technical education is available at the Gibraltar College of Further Education managed by the Gibraltar Government. In Sept. 1987, there were 1,399 pupils at government first schools, 1,364 at government middle schools, 139 at private and 798 at services schools; 19 at the special school; 837 at the boy's comprehensive school and 901 at the girls' comprehensive. In addition there were 134 full-time and 416 part-time students in the Gibraltar College of Further Education. Total full-time pupils in all educational institutions, 5,591. In 1986-87, government expenditure on education was £5,655,136.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 3 hospitals with 252 beds and 24 doctors. Total expenditure on medical and health services during year ended 31 March 1987 was £7,256,462.

### Further Reading

*Gibraltar Year Book.* Gibraltar, (Annual)

Ellicott, D., *Our Gibraltar.* Gibraltar, 1975

Green, M. M., *A Gibraltar Bibliography.* London, 1980.—*Supplement.* London, 1982

Hills, G., *Rock of Contention: A History of Gibraltar.* London, 1974

Jackson, W. G. F., *The Rock of the Gibraltarians.* Farleigh Dickinson Univ. Press, 1987

Magauran, H. C., *Rock Siege: The Difficulties with Spain 1964-85.* Gibraltar, 1986

Shields, G. J., *Gibraltar.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

# GREECE

Capital: Athens

Population: 9.99m. (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$4,710 (1987)

## Elliniki Dimokratia

**HISTORY.** Greece gained her independence from Turkey in 1821–29, and by the Protocol of London, of 3 Feb. 1830, was declared a kingdom, under the guarantee of Great Britain, France and Russia. For details of the subsequent history to 1947 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1957, pp. 1069–70 and for details of the monarchy see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1973–74, p. 1000.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Greece is bounded north by Albania, Yugoslavia and Bulgaria, east by Turkey and the Aegean Sea, south by the Mediterranean and west by the Ionian Sea. The total area is 131,957 sq. km (50,949 sq. miles), of which the inhabited islands account for 25,042 sq. km (9,669 sq. miles).

The population was 9,740,417 according to the census of 5 April 1981. Estimate (1987) 9.99m.

Athens is the capital; population of Greater Athens, in 1981, 3,027,331.

The following table shows the prefectures (*Nomoi*) and their population:

<i>Nomoi</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population 1981</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population 1981</i>
<i>Greater Athens</i> <sup>1</sup>	427	3,027,331	Athens (Piraeus)	885,737 196,389
<i>Central Greece and Euboea</i> <sup>2</sup>	24,391	1,099,841		
Aetolia and Acarnania	5,461	219,764	Missolonghi	10,164
Attica <sup>2</sup>	3,381	342,093	Athens	885,737
Boeotia	2,952	117,175	Levadeia	16,864
Euboea	4,167	188,410	Chalcis	44,867
Evrytania	1,869	26,182	Karpenissi	5,100
Phthiotis	4,441	161,995	Lamia	41,667
Phokis	2,120	44,222	Amphissa	7,156
<i>Peloponnesos</i>	21,379	1,012,528		
Argolis	2,154	93,020	Nauplion	10,609
Arcadia	4,419	107,932	Tripolis	21,311
Akhaia	3,271	275,193	Patras	141,529
Elia	2,618	160,305	Pyrgos	21,958
Korinthia	2,290	123,042	Korinthos	22,658
Lakonia	3,636	93,218	Sparte	11,911
Messenia	2,991	159,818	Calamata	41,911
<i>Ionian Islands</i>	2,307	182,651		
Zakynthos	406	30,014	Zante	9,764
Kerkyra	641	99,477	Kerkyra	33,561
Kefallenia	904	31,297	Argostolion	6,788
Levkas	356	21,863	Levkas	6,415
<i>Epirus</i>	9,203	324,541		
Arta	1,662	80,044	Arta	18,283
Thesprotia	1,515	41,278	Hegoumenitsa	5,879
Yannina	4,990	147,304	Yannina	44,829
Preveza	1,036	55,915	Preveza	12,662
<i>Thessaly</i>	14,037	695,654		
Karditsa	2,636	124,930	Karditsa	27,291
Larissa	5,381	254,295	Larissa	102,048
Magnessia	2,636	182,222	Volos	71,378
Trikkala	3,384	134,207	Trikkala	40,857

<sup>1</sup> Comprising parts of Attica (2,551,027) and Piraeus (476,304) prefectures.

<sup>2</sup> Excluding figures for the parts of Attica and Piraeus prefectures within Greater Athens.



<i>Nomoi</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population 1981</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population 1981</i>
<i>Macedonia</i>	34,177	2,121,953		
Grevena	2,291	36,421	Grevena	7,433
Drama	3,468	94,772	Drama	36,109
Imathia	1,701	133,750	Verria	37,087
Thessaloniki	3,683	871,580	Thessaloniki	406,413
Kavalla	2,111	135,218	Kavalla	56,375
Kastoria	1,720	53,169	Kastoria	17,133
Kilkis	2,519	81,562	Kilkis	11,148
Kozani	3,516	147,051	Kozani	30,994
Pella	2,506	132,386	Edessa	16,054
Pieria	1,516	106,859	Katerini	38,016
Serres	3,968	196,247	Serres	45,213
Florina	1,924	52,430	Florina	12,562
Khalkidiki	2,918	79,036	Polygyros	4,075
Aghion Oros (Mount Athos)	336	1,472	Karyai (locality)	235
<i>Thrace</i>	8,578	345,220		
Evros	4,242	148,486	Alexandroupolis	34,535
Xanthi	1,793	88,777	Xanthi	31,541
Rodopi	2,543	107,957	Komotini	34,051
<i>Aegean Islands</i>	9,122	428,533		
Cyclades	2,572	88,458	Hermoupolis	13,876
Lesvos	2,154	104,620	Mitylini	24,115
Samos	778	40,519	Samos	5,575
Khios	904	49,865	Khios	24,070
Dodecanese	2,714	145,071	Rhodes	40,392
<i>Crete</i>	8,336	502,165		
Heraklion	2,641	243,622	Heraklion	101,634
Lassithi	1,823	70,053	Aghios Nikolaos	8,130
Rethymnon	1,496	62,634	Rethymnon	17,736
Canea	2,376	125,856	Canea	47,338

In 1981 cities (*i.e.*, communes of more than 10,000 inhabitants, including Greater Athens) had 5,475,997 inhabitants (56.2%), towns (*i.e.*, communes with between 2,000 and 9,999 inhabitants), 1,154,567 (11.9%), villages and rural communities (under 2,000 inhabitants), 3,109,853 (31.9%).

Mount Athos, the easternmost of the three prongs of the peninsula of Chalcidice, is a self-governing community composed of 20 monasteries. (See THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1945, p. 983.) For centuries the peninsula has been administered by a Council of 4 members and an Assembly of 20 members, 1 deputy from each monastery. The Greek Government on 10 Sept. 1926 recognized this autonomous form of government; Articles 109–112 of the Constitution of 1927 gave legal sanction to the Charter of Mount Athos, drawn up by representatives of the 20 monasteries on 20 May 1924. Article 103 of the 1952 Constitution and Article 105 of the 1975 Constitution confirmed the special status of Mount Athos.

Vital statistics (1987): 105,899 live births; 853 still births; 2,221 illegitimate live births; 62,899 marriages; 95,232 deaths.

The Greek language consists of 2 branches, *katharevousa*, a conscious revival of classical Greek and *demotiki*. Demotiki is the official language both spoken and written.

**CLIMATE.** Coastal regions and the islands have typical Mediterranean conditions, with mild, rainy winters and hot, dry, sunny summers. Rainfall comes almost entirely in the winter months, though amounts vary widely according to position and relief. Continental conditions affect the northern mountainous areas, with severe winters, deep snow cover and heavy precipitation, but summers are hot. Athens. Jan. 48°F (8.6°C), July 82.5°F (28.2°C). Annual rainfall 16.6'' (414.3 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A *coup d'état* took place on 21 April 1967, 'to avert the danger of a communist threat against the nation'. A Military Government was formed, which suspended the 1952 Constitution. Following the unsuccessful counter-*coup* in 1967, King Constantine went abroad.

Voting took place on 29 July 1973 in the referendum to change Greece from a Monarchy to a Republic and to elect a President. 77.2% of the valid votes were cast for a republican régime.

On 25 Nov. 1973, in a bloodless *coup*, President Papadopoulos was overthrown and Lieut.-Gen. Phaedon Ghizikis was sworn in. The military dictatorship collapsed on 23 July 1974 and the 1952 Constitution was reintroduced in a modified form. A new Constitution was introduced in June 1975. Parliamentary elections took place on 12 Nov. 1974.

A further referendum on the Monarchy took place on 8 Dec. 1974 and 69.2% of the valid votes were cast for an 'uncrowned democracy'.

Elections were held on 2 June 1985. The results were New Democracy, 126; Pan-Hellenic Socialist Movement, 161; Communists, 13; Euro-Communists, 1.

*President:* Christos Sartzetakis (elected President in March 1985).

The Cabinet in Feb. 1988:

*Prime Minister:* Andreas G. Papandreou.

*Vice-Premier and National Defence:* Yiannis Charalambopoulos. *Vice-Premier and Justice:* Agamemnon Koutsogiorgas. *Minister to the Prime Minister:* Apostolos Kaklamanis. *Foreign Affairs:* Karolos Papoulias. *Interior:* Akis Tsochatzopoulos. *National Economy:* Panagiotis Roumeliotis. *Finance:* Dimitris Tsovolas. *Health, Welfare and Social Services:* Giannis Floros. *Education and Religion:* Antonis Tritsis. *Culture:* Melina Mercouri. *Public Order:* Antonis Drossoyiannis. *Northern Greece:* Stelios Papathemelis. *The Aegean:* Petros Valvis. *Agriculture:* Yiannis Pottakis. *Environment, Town Planning and Public Works:* Evangelos Kouloumbis. *Industry, Energy and Technology:* Athanassios Peponis. *Labour:* George Gennimatas. *Commerce:* Nikos Akritidis. *Transport and Communications:* Kostas Badouvas. *Merchant Marine:* Evangelos Yannopoulos. *Without Portfolio:* Athanassios Filippopoulos.

*National flag:* Nine horizontal stripes of blue and white, with a canton of blue with a white cross.

*National anthem:* Hymn to Freedom, *Imnos eis tin Eleftherian* (words by Dionysios Solomos, 1824; tune by N. Mantzaros, 1828).

**DEFENCE.** In Aug. 1950 the Ministries of War, Marine and Military Aviation were fused into a single Ministry of National Defence. The General Staff of National Defence is directly responsible to the Minister on general defence questions, besides the special staffs for Army, Navy and Air Force. Military service in the Armed Forces is compulsory and universal. Liability begins in the 21st year and lasts up to the 50th. The normal terms of service are Army 21 months, Navy 25 months, Air Force 23 months, followed by 19 years in the First Reserve and 10 years in the Second Reserve.

**Army.** The Army is organized into 3 Military Regions, comprising 1 armoured, 1 mechanized, 1 para-commando and 11 infantry divisions; 5 armoured brigades; 15 field artillery, 8 anti-aircraft, 2 surface-to-air missile, and 3 army aviation battalions; and 1 independent aviation company. Equipment includes 359 M-47, 1,125 M-48, 195 AMX-30 and 186 Leopard I main battle tanks. Hellenic Army Aviation has over 100 helicopters, including 40 AB-205 and 50 UH-1H Iroquois, 5 Chinooks, 18 Nardi-Hughes 300s, and 15 Cessna U-17A observation aircraft, 2 Aero Commander and 2 Super King Air transports. Strength (1989) 170,500 (112,500 conscripts), with a further 350,000 reserves. There is also a paramilitary gendarmerie of 25,000 men.

**Navy.** The Hellenic Navy includes 2 modern Netherlands-built leader-size guided missile frigates, 10 submarines (8 modern German (Fed. Rep.)-built small and 2 old ex-US large), 14 very old ex-US destroyers, 1 ex-German support frigate, 1 new armed training ship carrying a helicopter, 4 very old ex-US frigates (small DE type), 2 coastal minelayers, 14 fast missile vessels, 6 fast torpedo boats, 2 fast attack craft, 14 coastal minesweepers, 9 coastal patrol boats, 1 dock landing ship, 8 tank landing ships, 5 medium landing ships, 10 landing craft, 88 minor landing

craft, 1 ammunition ship, 5 oilers, 2 transports, 1 depot ship, 4 surveying craft, 2 light-house tenders, 5 water carriers, 1 netlayer and 14 fleet tugs.

The Navy operates 10 HU-16 Albatross patrol amphibians (manned by Air Force crews) and 12 AB-ASW anti-submarine helicopters and 4 Alouettes for SAR and liaison.

Personnel in 1989 totalled 2,500 officers and 17,000 ratings (200 women).

**Air Force.** The Hellenic Air Force had a strength (1989) of about 24,000 officers and men and 300 combat aircraft, consisting of 3 squadrons of F-4E Phantom air-superiority fighters, 2 squadrons of F-104G Starfighters, 2 squadrons of Mirage F.1 fighters, 3 squadrons of A-7H Corsair II attack aircraft, 3 squadrons of F-5 fighters, 1 squadron of RF-4E reconnaissance fighters and 1 squadron of HU-16B Albatross ASW amphibians (under Navy control). There are also transport squadrons equipped with C-130H Hercules (12), Noratlas, NAMC YS-11, DO28 and C-47 aircraft, 12 Canadair CL-215 twin-engined amphibians, 36 T-2E Buckeye training/attack aircraft, other training and helicopter equipment, and anti-aircraft units equipped with Nike-Hercules and Hawk surface-to-air missiles. Forty F-16 Fighting Falcon and 40 Mirage 2000 fighters are being delivered (1989).

The HAF is organized into Tactical, Training and Air Materiel Commands.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Greece is a member of UN, EEC, the Council of Europe and the military and political wings of NATO.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The estimated revenue and expenditure for calendar years were as follows (in 1m. drachmai):

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Revenue	736,000	933,000	1,114,412	1,464,867
Expenditure	1,055,000	1,470,058	1,776,937	2,166,461

**Currency.** On 11 Nov. 1944 the Greek currency was stabilized at 1 new *drachma* equalling 50,000m. old *drachmai*. Further readjustments took place in 1946, 1949 and 1953. A 'new issue' of notes and coins was put into circulation on 1 May 1954, 1 new drachma equalling 1,000 old drachmai (72 drachmai = £1; 30 drachmai = US\$1). The 'new issue' comprises notes of 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 drachmai and metal coins of 1, 2, 5, 10 and 20 drachmai and 10, 20 and 50 *lepta*. Rate of exchange, March 1989, £1 = 268.10 drachmai; US\$1 = 155.78.

**Banking.** The Bank of Greece (*Trapeza Tis Ellados*) is the bank of issue.

The National Investment Bank for industrial development was set up in Dec. 1963; of its capital of 180m. drachmai, the National Bank provided 60%.

Other important banks are the Ionian and Popular Bank of Greece, the Commercial Bank of Greece, the National Mortgage Bank, the Hellenic Industrial Development Bank, the Investment Bank, the Commercial Credit Bank, the Agricultural Bank, the Bank of Central Greece and the General Bank of Greece.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was made obligatory in 1959; the use of other systems is prohibited. The Gregorian calendar was adopted in Feb. 1923.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Total installed capacity of the Public Power Corporation was 7,759,121 kw as at 31 Dec. 1986. Total net production in 1987 was 27,330m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Greece produces a variety of ores and minerals, including (with production, 1985, in tonnes) iron-pyrites (173,262), bauxite (2,453,798), nickel (2,244,888), magnesite (927,834), asbestos (3,704,820), chromite (214,031), barytes, marble (white and coloured) and various other earths, chiefly from the Laurium district, Thessaly, Euboea and the Aegean islands. There is little coal, and



lignite of indifferent quality (35.96m. tonnes, 1985). Salt production (1985) 195,103 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area (131,957 sq. km) 39,452 sq. km is arable and fallow. Another 52,550 sq. km is grazing land, 29,511 sq. km is forest.

Production (1987, in 1,000 tonnes):

Wheat	2,213	Grapes (table ready)	237
Tobacco	155	Wine (must)	448
Seed cotton	589	Citrus fruit	769
Sugar-beet	2,025	Other fruit	1,135
Raisins	121	Milk	1,689
Olive oil	250	Meat	443

Olive production (1987) about 1.1m. tonnes.

Rice is cultivated in Macedonia, the Peloponnese, Epirus and Central Greece. Successful experiments have been made in growing rice on alkaline land previously regarded as unfit for cultivation. The main kinds of cheese produced are white cheese in brine (commercially known as Fetta) and hard cheese, such as Kefalotyri.

Livestock (1987): 743,000 cattle, 1,000 buffaloes, 1,226,000 pigs, 11,412,000 sheep, 5m. goats, 65,000 horses, 91,000 mules, 185,000 asses, 31m. poultry.

**Fisheries.** In 1986, 14,024 fishermen were active and landed 112,714 tonnes of fish. 33,000 kg of sponges were produced in 1986.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufacturing contributed 971,000m. drachmai to GDP in 1987. The main products are canned vegetables and fruit, fruit juice, beer, wine, alcoholic beverages, cigarettes, textiles, yarn, leather, shoes, synthetic timber, paper, plastics, rubber products, chemical acids, pigments, pharmaceutical products, cosmetics, soap, disinfectants, fertilizers, glassware, porcelain sanitary items, wire and power coils and household instruments.

Production, 1985 (1,000 tonnes): Textile yarns, 198; cement, 12,855; fertilizers, 2,009; ammonia, 296; iron (concrete-reinforcing bars), 899; alumina, 386; aluminium, 175; beer, 326; bottled wine, 114; chemical acids, 1,500; iron wire, 104; glass products, 106; packing materials, 96; cigarettes (1,000 pieces) 27,635; petroleum, 9,917; detergents, 126; olive oil, 409.

**Labour.** Of the economically active population in 1987, 970,700 were engaged in agriculture, 715,600 in manufacturing and 1,911,200 in other employment.

**Trade Unions.** The status of trade unions in Greece is regulated by the Associations Act 1914. Trade-union liberties are guaranteed under the Constitution, and a law of June 1982 altered the unions' right to strike.

The national body of trade unions in Greece is the Greek General Confederation of Labour.

**Commerce.** In 1987 exports totalled (in 1m. drachmai) 880,985.2 including: Clothing, 194,981.1; textile yarn, 51,067.3; petroleum products, 48,096.7; tobacco, 37,251.5; prepared fruits, 28,466.8; olive oil, 26,120.3; cements, 21,148.5. Imports totalling 1,758,951.4 including: Petroleum oils, crude, 203,311.6; meat, 101,001.9; iron and steel, 59,417.1; plastic materials, 48,366.6.

Exports in 1987 (in 1m. drachmai) were mainly to the Federal Republic of Germany (214,452.6), Italy (142,298.9), France (75,909.4), UK (72,521.7) and USA (59,861.9). Imports were mainly from the Federal Republic of Germany (389,888.6), Italy (215,568.8), France (137,573.7) and the Netherlands (123,752.3).

Total trade between Greece and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	279,367	320,131	308,644	355,320	356,974
Exports and re-exports from UK	354,332	335,352	356,020	444,500	468,032

**Tourism.** Tourists visiting Greece in 1986 numbered 7,025,000. In 1987 they spent the equivalent of US\$2,192m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1986, 37,997 km of roads, of which 8,871 were national and 29,126 provincial roads.

Number of motor vehicles in Dec. 1987: 2,107,469, of which 1,432,577 were passenger cars, 656,144 goods vehicles, 18,748 buses.

**Railways.** In 1987 the State network, Hellenic Railways (OSE), totalled 2,479 km comprising 1,565 km of 1,435 mm gauge, 892 km of 1,000 mm gauge, and 22 km of 750 mm gauge, and carried 3.8m. tonnes of freight and 11.8m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Olympic Airways connects Athens with all important cities of the country, Europe, the Middle East and USA. Thirty-four foreign companies connect Athens with the principal cities of the world.

The principal airport is at Athens. In 1986, 231,412 aircraft departed and arrived; 10,468,000 passengers embarked and 10,428,000 disembarked.

**Shipping.** In Dec. 1987 the merchant navy comprised 2,061 vessels of 22,706,257 GRT. Greek-owned ships under foreign flags totalled 4,164,000 GRT in July 1988.

There is a canal (opened 9 Nov. 1893) across the Isthmus of Corinth (about 4 miles).

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 3,597 telephone exchanges and 4,122,317 telephones.

*Elliniki Radiophonia Tileorasis* (ERT), the Hellenic National Radio and Television Institute, is the government broadcasting station. ERT broadcasts 2 TV programmes. Number of receivers: Radio, 5m.; television, 1.4m.

**Cinemas** (1981). There were 1,150 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 33 daily newspapers published in Athens, 6 in Piraeus and 100 elsewhere.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Under the 1975 Constitution judges are appointed for life by the President of the Republic, after consultation with the judicial council. Judges enjoy personal and functional independence. There are three divisions of the courts: Administrative, civil and criminal and they must not give decisions which are contrary to the Constitution. Final jurisdiction lies with a Special Supreme Tribunal.

Some laws, passed before the 1975 Constitution came into force, and which are not contrary to it, remain in force.

**Religion.** The Christian Eastern Orthodox faith is the established religion to which 98% of the population belong.

The Greek Orthodox Church is under an archbishop and 67 metropolitans, 1 archbishop and 7 metropolitans in Crete, and 4 metropolitans in the Dodecanese. The Roman Catholics have 3 archbishops (in Naxos and Corfu and, not recognized by the State, in Athens) and 1 bishop (for Syra and Santorin). The Exarchs of the Greek Catholics and the Armenians are not recognized by the State.

Complete religious freedom is recognized by the Constitution of 1968, but proselytizing from, and interference with, the Greek Orthodox Church is forbidden.

**Education.** Public education is provided in nursery, primary and secondary schools, starting at 6 years of age and since 1963 free at all levels.

In 1985-86 there were 5,203 nursery schools with 7,617 teachers and 160,079 pupils; 8,675 primary schools with 37,994 teachers and 887,735 pupils; 1,652 high schools with 24,302 teachers and 436,817 pupils; 1,002 lycea with 17,480 teachers and 267,302 pupils and 480 technical and vocational schools with 7,992 teachers and 107,422 pupils. There were also 19 teacher training schools with 170 teachers and 13,989 students; 11 technical education schools with 4,149 teachers and

52,732 students; 42 vocational and ecclesiastical schools with 577 teachers and 3,306 students and 24 higher education schools with 8,217 teachers and 134,985 students.

In 1982–83 there were 13 universities with 94,574 students and 7,638 lecturers.

**Health** (1986). There were 488 hospitals and sanatoria with a total of 52,864 beds. There were 30,481 doctors and 9,131 dentists.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Greece in Great Britain (1A Holland Park, London, W11 3TP)

*Ambassador*: Stephanos G. Stathatos (accredited 12 Feb. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Greece (1 Ploutarchou St., 106 75 Athens)

*Ambassador*: Sir David Miers, KBE, CMG.

Of Greece in the USA (2221 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador*: George D. Papoulias.

Of the USA in Greece (91 Eleftheriou Venizelou St., Athens)

*Ambassador*: Robert V. Keeley.

Of Greece to the United Nations

*Ambassador*: Constantine Zepos.

### Further Reading

Clogg, R., *Greece in the 1980s*. London, 1983

Clogg, R. and M. J., *Greece*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1980

Freris, A. F., *The Greek Economy in the Twentieth Century*. London, 1986

Holden, D., *Greece Without Columns: The Making of the Modern Greeks*. London, 1972

Kousoulas, D. G., *Revolution and Defeat: The Story of the Greek Communist Party*. OUP, 1965

Kykkotis, I., *English–Modern Greek and Modern Greek–English Dictionary*. 3rd ed. London, 1957

Mouzelis, N. P., *Modern Greece*. London, 1978

Pring, J. T., *The Oxford Dictionary of Modern Greek, Greek–English, English–Greek*. OUP, 1965–82

Tsoukalis, L., *Greece and the European Community*. Farnborough, 1979

Woodhouse, C. M., *The Struggle for Greece, 1941–1949*. London, 1976.—*Karamanlis: The Restorer of Greek Democracy*. OUP, 1982

Xydis, S. G., *Greece and the Great Powers, 1944–47*. Thessaloniki, 1963



# GRENADA

*Capital:* St George's

*Population:* 88,000 (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,240 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Grenada became an independent nation within the Commonwealth on 7 Feb. 1974. Grenada was formerly an Associated State under the West Indies Act, 1967. The 1973 Constitution was suspended in 1979 following a revolution.

On 19 Oct. 1983 the army took control after a power struggle led to the killing of Maurice Bishop the Prime Minister. At the request of a group of Caribbean countries, Grenada was invaded by US-led forces on 24–28 Oct. On 1 Nov. a State of Emergency was imposed which ended on 15 Nov. when an interim government was installed.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Grenada is the most southerly island of the Windward Islands with an area of 120 sq. miles (311 sq. km); the state also includes the Southern Grenadine Islands to the north, chiefly Carriacou and Petite Martinique, with an area of 13 sq. miles (34 sq. km). The total population (Census, 1981) was 89,099 including 4,671 on the Southern Grenadines; estimate (1987) 92,000. The Borough of St. George's, the capital, had 29,369 inhabitants in 1981, but its urban area had a population of only 4,788. In 1983, 84% of the people were black and a further 12% of mixed origins.

Vital statistics (1983): Births, 2,880; deaths, 794.

**CLIMATE.** The tropical climate is very agreeable in the dry season, from Jan. to May, when days are warm and nights quite cool, but in the wet season there is very little difference between day and night temperatures. On the coast, annual rainfall is about 60" (1,500 mm) but it is as high as 150–200" (3,750–5,000 mm) in the mountains.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The British sovereign is represented by an appointed Governor-General. There is a bicameral legislature, consisting of a 13-member Senate, appointed by the Governor-General, and a 15-member House of Representatives, elected by universal suffrage. Elections were held for the 15-seat House of Representatives on 3 Dec. 1984. The New National Party won 14 seats and the Grenada United Labour Party, 1.

*Governor-General:* Sir Paul Scoon, GCMG, GCVO, OBE.

*Prime Minister, Finance, Security and Home Affairs:* Rt. Hon. Herbert Blaize PC.

*National flag:* Divided into 4 triangles of yellow, top and bottom, and green, hoist and fly; in the centre a red disc bearing a gold star; along the top and bottom edged red stripes each bearing 3 gold stars; on the green triangle near the hoist a pod of nutmeg.

*Local government:* Elected local councils were re-introduced in 1986; there are 7 district councils (including 1 for Carriacou/Petite Martinique) and the Borough Council of St. George's.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** A People's Revolutionary Army was created in 1979. Personnel about 6,500 organized into 3 infantry battalions and an artillery battery.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Grenada is a member of the UN, OAS, Caricom, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1986 estimates balanced at EC\$236.4m. Value added tax is to replace income tax.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Eastern Caribbean dollar*. In March 1989, £1 = EC\$4.67; US\$ = EC\$2.71.

**Banking.** In 1981 there were 5 commercial banks in Grenada: The National Commercial Bank, Barclays Bank International, Royal Bank of Canada, Bank of Nova Scotia and the Grenada Co-operative Bank. The Grenada Agricultural Bank was established in 1965 to encourage agricultural development. In 1981, bank deposits were EC\$164.7m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 24m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The principal crops (production in lb.) are: Cocoa (1986, 3,000 tonnes), nutmegs (6,767,199), bananas (1986, 8,000 tonnes), and mace (506,950); coconuts, corn and pigeon peas, citrus, sugar-cane, root-crops and vegetables are also grown, in addition to small scattered cultivations of cotton, cloves, cinnamon, pimento, coffee and fruit trees The fish catch was about 3m. lb.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 4,000; sheep, 17,000; goats, 11,000; pigs, 11,000; poultry (1982), 260,000.

**Fisheries.** The catch (1983) was 1,801 tonnes.

**COMMERCE** (1986). Total value of imports, EC\$225m. The main exports are cocoa (EC\$10.6m.), nutmegs (EC\$26.1m.) and fruit (EC\$15.3m.).

Of exports in 1981, UK took 35.6%; Netherlands, 15.8%; Trinidad, 15.6%; Federal Republic of Germany, 9%; Canada, 2.8%; USA, 2.5%. Of 1981 imports, Trinidad furnished 19.2%; USA, 18.6%; UK, 16.6%; Canada, 5.5%; Netherlands, 1.6%; Federal Republic of Germany, 1.3%.

Total trade between Grenada and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	5,703	6,735	7,011	6,302	6,115
Exports and re-exports to UK	8,319	8,820	8,628	8,772	7,162

**TOURISM.** In 1986, there were 171,000 visitors: including 114,000 cruise ship passengers.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The scheduled road mileage is 577, of which 377 have an oiled surface and 210 are graded as third- and fourth-class roads. Vehicles registered (1979) 6,676.

**Aviation.** A new international airport was inaugurated in Oct. 1984 at Point Salines. Pearls Airport has daily connexions to London, New York and South America *via* nearby islands. There is a small airstrip on Carriacou.

**Shipping.** Total shipping for 1978 was 927 motor and steamships and 166 sailing and auxiliary vessels, with a total net tonnage of 2,210,532 and 7,479 respectively.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The telephone system is owned and operated by the Grenada Telephone Co. Ltd. The Government of Grenada is a shareholder. The system is completely automatic, and in 1983 served 5,544 subscribers. Cable & Wireless (W.I.) Ltd operates a VHF radio system (telephone and telegraph) to Trinidad and Barbados, from where connexion is made to all other parts of the world. There were (1978) 63,500 radios.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Grenada Supreme Court, situated in St George's, comprises a High Court of Justice, a Court of Magisterial Appeal (which hears appeals from the lower Magistrates' Courts exercising summary jurisdiction) and an Itinerant Court of Appeal (to hear appeals from the High Court).

**Religion.** The majority of the population are Roman Catholic; the Anglican and Methodist churches are also well represented.

**Education.** There are 20 primary schools, 4 junior schools and 16 secondary schools, as well as 46 schools taking the full age range. There is a Technical Centre in each district and a Technical Institute in St George's, where there is also a Teacher Training College and a branch of the University of the West Indies. There were 22,093 primary and 6,249 secondary school pupils in 1981.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 6 hospitals and clinics with 325 beds. In 1979 there were 34 doctors, 5 dentists, 1 pharmacist (1978), 107 midwives (1978) and 259 nursing personnel.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Grenada in Great Britain (1 Collingham Gdns., London, SW5)  
*High Commissioner:* O. M. Gibbs, CMG (accredited 15 March 1984).

Of Great Britain in Grenada  
*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG (resides at Bridgetown).

Of Grenada in the USA (1701 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)  
*Ambassador:* Albert O. Xavier.

Of the USA in Grenada (P.O. Box 54, St George's)  
*Chargé d'Affaires:* John C. Leary.

Of Grenada to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Dr Lamuel A. Stanislaus.

### Further Reading

- Davidson, J. S., *Grenada: A Study in Politics and the Limits of International Law*. London, 1987
- Gilmore, W. G., *The Grenada Intervention: Analysis and Documentation*. London, 1984
- Hodge, M. and Searle, C. (eds) *Is Freedom We Making*. Govt. Information Service, 1981
- O'Shaughnessy, H., *Grenada: Revolution, Invasion and Aftermath*. London, 1984
- Page, A., Sutton, P. and Thorndike, T., *Grenada and Invasion*. London, 1984
- Searle, C., *Grenada: The Struggle against Destabilization*. London, 1983
- Searle, C. and Rojas, D. (eds) *To Construct from Morning*. Grenada, 1982
- Sinclair, N., *Grenada: Isle of Spice*. London, 1987
- Thorndike, T., *Grenada: Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1985
- Wheaton, P. and Sunshine, C. (eds) *Grenada: The Peaceful Revolution*. Washington, 1982



# GUATEMALA

*Capital:* Guatemala City  
*Population:* 8.99m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$930 (1986)

## República de Guatemala

**HISTORY.** From 1524 to 1821 Guatemala was a Spanish captaincy-general, comprising the whole of Central America. It became independent in 1821 and formed part of the Confederation of Central America from 1823 to 1839, when Rafael Carrera dissolved the Confederation.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Guatemala is bounded on the north and west by Mexico, south by the Pacific ocean and east by El Salvador, Honduras and Belize, and the area is 108,889 sq. km (42,042 sq. miles). In March 1936 Guatemala, El Salvador and Honduras agreed to accept the peak of Mount Montecristo as the common boundary point.

The census population was 6,054,227 in 1981. Estimate (1988) 8.99m. In 1983, 53% were pure Indians, of 21 different groups descended from the Maya; most of the remainder are mixed Indian and Spanish. Density of population, 1985, 77 per sq. km.

Vital statistics, 1984: Births, 302,921; deaths, 75,462; marriages, 31,351.

Guatemala is administratively divided into 22 departments, each with a governor appointed by the President. Population, 1985:

<i>Departments</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Departments</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population</i>
Alta Verapaz	6,686	393,446	Petén	35,854	118,116
Baja Verapaz	3,124	160,567	Quezaltenango	1,951	478,030
Chimaltenango	1,979	283,887	Quiché	8,378	460,956
Chiquimula	2,376	220,067	Retalhuleu	1,858	228,563
El Progreso	1,922	106,115	Sacatepéquez	465	148,574
Escuintla	4,384	565,215	San Marcos	3,791	590,152
Guatemala	2,126	2,050,673	Santa Rosa	2,955	263,060
Huehuetenango	7,403	571,292	Sololá	1,061	181,816
Izabal	9,038	330,546	Suchitepéquez	2,510	327,763
Jalapa	2,063	171,542	Totonicapán	1,061	249,067
Jutiapa	3,219	348,032	Zacapa	2,690	155,496

The capital is Guatemala City with about 1.5m. inhabitants (1988). Other towns are Quezaltenango (65,733), Puerto Barrios (38,956), Mazatenango (38,319), Antigua (26,631), Zacapa (35,769) and Cobán (43,538).

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with little variation in temperature and a well marked wet season from May to Oct. Guatemala City. Jan. 63°F (17.2°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 53" (1,316 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution, drawn up by the Constituent Assembly elected on 1 July 1984, was promulgated in June 1985 and came into force on 14 Jan. 1986. The President and Vice-President are elected for a term of 5 years by direct election (with a second round of voting if no candidate secures 50% of the first-round votes). The Legislative Assembly comprises 100 members. Presidential, congressional and municipal elections were held on 3 Nov. 1985, with a second round of voting on 8 Dec. 1985.

*President:* Marco Vinicio Cerezo Arévalo (assumed office 14 Jan. 1986).

*Vice-President:* Roberto Carpio Nicolle.

*Foreign Relations:* Alfonso Cabrera Hidalgo. *Finance:* Rodolfo Paiz Andrade.

*Defence:* Gen. Héctor Gramajo Morales.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of blue, white, blue, with the national arms in the centre.

*National anthem:* ¡Guatemala! feliz (words by J. J. Palma; tune by R. Alvarez).

**DEFENCE.** There is selective conscription into the armed forces for 30 months.

**Army.** The Army numbered (1989) 40,000, organized in 39 infantry, 1 armoured and 1 engineer battalions, 18 field artillery batteries, 2 anti-aircraft artillery batteries, 1 Special Forces brigade and 7 reconnaissance squadrons. Equipment includes light tanks and armoured cars. Reserves, 1989, 5,000. Territorial militia, 725,000.

**Navy.** A Naval force was formed in 1959. It comprises 8 small patrol craft, 1 landing craft, 2 small troop carriers, 6 motor launches, 30 river patrol craft, 1 survey craft and 1 tug. Since 1973 the base at Santo Tomas has had a 230-ton marine elevator (synchrolift), greatly improving naval repair facilities. Personnel in 1989 numbered 1,200 (including marines).

**Air Force.** There is a small Air Force with 10 A-37B and 2 T-33 light attack aircraft, 1 DC-6, 10 C-47, 3 F-27 and 7 Israeli-built Arava transports, 10 Pilatus PC-7 turboprop trainers, and a number of Cessna light aircraft and Bell helicopters, including a few armed UH-1 Iroquois. Strength was (1989) about 850 personnel and 80 aircraft.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Guatemala is a member of UN, OAS and CACM.

**External Debt.** In 1984 the external debt was Q.539.9m.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1988 National Economic Development Plan, called 'Guatemala 2000', calls for sustained GDP growth of at least 6% per annum until 2000.

**Budget.** In 1988 expenditure was 3,000m. quetzales; revenue, 2,500m. quetzales

**Currency.** The gold *quetzal* was established 7 May 1925 equal to 60 old Guatemala paper pesos, with a gold content equal to that of the US\$. Coins of 25, 10, 5 and 1 *centavos* were issued by the Banco de Guatemala on 16 Sept. 1965; they are of a lower content value than the previous ones. There are also paper notes of 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 1 and ½ *quetzales* (50 *centavos*). In March 1989, £1 = Q.4.73; US\$1 = Q.2.75.

**Banking.** On 4 Feb. 1946 the Central Bank of Guatemala (founded in 1926 as a mixed central and commercial bank) was superseded by a new institution, the Banco de Guatemala, to operate solely as a central bank. Savings and term deposits at commercial banks were Q.3,885.2m. at 31 July 1988. Total currency in circulation on 31 Dec. 1987 was Q.950m.; total net international reserves amounted to Q.50m. on 31 July 1988.

There are 24 banks, including the Banco de Guatemala, Banco Nacional de Desarrollo, set up in 1971 to promote agricultural development, its counterpart for small industries (Banco de los Trabajadores) set up in Jan. 1966 with initial capital of US\$1.3m., a branch of Lloyds Bank International Ltd and a branch of the Bank of America.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system has been officially adopted, but is little used in local commerce.

<i>Libra</i> of 16 oz.	= 1.014 lb.	<i>League</i>	= 3 miles
<i>Arroba</i> of 25 libras	= 25.35 lb.	<i>Vara</i>	= 32 in.
<i>Quintal</i> of 4 arrobas	= 101.40 lb.	<i>Manzana</i>	= 100 varas sq.
<i>Tonelada</i> of 20 quintals	= 18.10 cwt	<i>Caballeria</i> of 64 man-	
<i>Fanega</i>	= 1½ Imp. bushels	zanazas	= 110 acres

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** 2,800m. kwh. of electricity were generated in 1987. A large hydro-electric plant was inaugurated in Dec. 1985. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Guatemala began exporting crude oil in 1980; exports, 1984, were valued at Q.34m. Production is from wells in Alta Verapaz department from where the oil is piped to Santo Tomas de Castilla. Further exploration is proceeding in the Petén.

**Minerals.** Mineral production includes zinc and lead concentrates, some antimony and tungsten, a small amount of cadmium and silver; some copper is also being mined. Exports (1988) Q.2m.

**Agriculture.** The Cordilleras divide Guatemala into two unequal drainage areas, of which the Atlantic is much the greater. The Pacific slope, though comparatively narrow, is exceptionally well watered and fertile between the altitudes of 1,000 and 5,000 ft, and is the most densely settled part of the republic. The Atlantic slope is sparsely populated, and has little of commercial importance beyond the chicle and timber-cutting of the Petén, coffee cultivation of Cobán region and banana-raising of the Motagua Valley and Lake Izabal district. Soil erosion is serious and a single week of heavy rains suffices to cause flooding of fields and much crop destruction.

The principal crop is coffee; there are about 12,000 coffee plantations with 138m. coffee trees on about 338,000 acres, but 80% of the crop comes from 1,500 large coffee farms employing 426,000 workers. Production (1988) 156,000 tonnes. Coffee exports in 1987 were valued at Q.600m. mainly to USA and Federal Republic of Germany.

Bananas are still an important export crop, but exports have at times been seriously reduced, partly by labour troubles and by hurricanes. Production (1987) 709,000 tonnes. Exports 1987 were worth Q.67m.

Cotton exports in 1984 were valued at Q.70.4m. Cotton lint production (1987) 30,000 tonnes. Other important exports (1984) were sugar, Q.74.5m.; beef, Q.11.6m. Guatemala is, after Mexico, the largest producer of chicle gum (used for chewing-gum manufacture in USA). Rubber development schemes are under way, assisted by US funds. Guatemala is one of the largest sources of essential oils (citronella and lemon grass); exports in 1984 were valued at Q.1.7m. Cardamom, exported mainly to the Arab countries, was valued at US\$40m. in 1987.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 2.3m.; pigs, 865,000; sheep, 690,000; horses, 100,000; poultry, 15m.

**Forestry.** The forest area has an extent of 17,784,000 acres. The department of Petén is rich in mahogany and other woods. Production (1980) 11.23m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Exports were about Q.11.8m. in 1984.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The principal industries are food and beverages, tobacco, chemicals, hides and skins, textiles, garments and non-metallic minerals. New industries include electrical goods, plastic sheet and metal furniture.

**Trade Unions.** There are 3 federations for private sector workers.

**Commerce.** Values in Q.1,000 (1 quetzal = US\$1) were:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports (c.i.f.)	1,135,000	1,278,496	1,020,572	804,000	1,230,000
Exports (f.o.b.)	1,150,000	1,122,286	1,174,800	825,000	824,000

Total trade between Guatemala and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	9,565	5,176	8,098	7,536	10,678
Exports and re-exports from UK	10,660	13,397	9,288	13,926	15,387

**Tourism.** There were 287,000 foreign visitors in 1986.



## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 there were 18,000 km of roads, of which 2,850 are paved. There is a trunk highway from coast to coast *via* Guatemala City. There are 2 trunk highways from the Mexican to the Salvadorean frontier: the Pacific Highway serving the fertile coastal plain and the Pan-American Highway running through the highlands and Guatemala City. Motor vehicles number about 200,000.

**Railways.** The principal railway system is the government-owned (since 1968) *Ferrocarriles de Guatemala*. All railways are of 914 mm gauge. Total length of all lines was (1988) 953 km. Passengers carried, 1986, numbered 379,789, and freight carried 650,000 tonnes.

**Aviation.** The government-owned airline, Aviateca, and 2 private airlines furnish both domestic and international services; 6 other airlines handle international traffic.

**Shipping.** The chief ports on the Atlantic coast are Puerto Barrios and Santo Tomás de Castilla; on the Pacific coast, Puerto Quetzal and Champerico. Total tonnage handled was, 1987, 7m. tons.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Government own and operate the telegraph and telephone services; there were 180,000 telephones in Sept. 1988. There are some 70 broadcasting stations. Radio receiving sets in use, 1988, numbered about 1m. There are 4 commercial TV stations, 1 government station and about 250,000 TV receivers. There is also reception by US television satellite.

**Cinemas** (1984). Cinemas numbered approximately 100.

**Newspapers** (1984). There are 4 daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered in a Constitution Court, a Supreme Court, 6 appeal courts and 28 courts of first instance. Supreme Court and appeal court judges are elected by Congress. Judges of first instance are appointed by the Supreme Court.

All holders of public office have to show on entering office, and again on leaving, a full account of their private property and income.

**Religion.** Roman Catholicism is the prevailing faith; but all other creeds have complete liberty of worship. Guatemala has a Roman Catholic archbishopric.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 11,587 schools with 45,611 teachers and an attendance of 1,331,294 pupils; these figures include private schools. There are 1,237 secondary and other schools having 13,891 teachers and an attendance of 194,484 pupils; the autonomous University of San Carlos de Borromeo, founded in 1678, was reopened in 1910 with 7 faculties and schools and there are 4 new universities. Students at state university (1984) approximately 45,552. All education is in theory free, but owing to a grave shortage of state schools private schools flourish. The 1964 census showed that 63% of those 10 years of age and older were illiterate.

**Social Welfare.** A comprehensive system of social security was outlined in a law of 30 Oct. 1946. Medical personnel include about 1,250 doctors and 275 dentists for the whole republic. There are about 60 public hospitals and about 100 dispensaries.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Guatemala in Great Britain (13 Fawcett St., London, SW10 9HN)

*Ambassador:* Dr Erwin Blandon.

Of Great Britain in Guatemala (7a Avenida 5-10, Zona 4, Guatemala City)

*Ambassador:* Bernard Everett.

Of Guatemala in the USA (2220 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Rodolfo Rohmoser Valdeavellano.

Of the USA in Guatemala (7-01 Avenida de la Reforma, Zone 10, Guatemala City)

*Ambassador:* James Michel.

Of Guatemala to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Francisco Villagrán DeLeon.

### Further Reading

The official gazette is called *Diario de Centro America*.

Banco de Guatemala, *Memoria annual, Estudio económico* and *Boletín Estadístico*

Bloomfield, L. M., *The British Honduras-Guatemala Dispute*. Toronto, 1953

Franklin, W. B., *Guatemala*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981

Glassman, P., *Guatemala Guide*. Dallas, 1977

Immerman, R. H., *The CIA in Guatemala: The Foreign Policy of Intervention*. Univ. of Texas Press, 1982

Mendoza, J. L., *Britain and Her Treaties on Belize*. Guatemala, 1946

Morton, F., *Xeláhu*. London, 1959

Plant, R., *Guatemala: Unnatural Disaster*. London, 1978

Schlesinger, S. and Kinzer, S., *Bitter Front: The Untold Story of the American Coup in Guatemala*. London and New York, 1982

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional, 5a Avenida y 8a Calle, Zona 1, Guatemala City.

# GUINEA

*Capital:* Conakry

*Population:* 6.53m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$320 (1985)

## République de Guinée

**HISTORY.** Guinea was proclaimed a French protectorate in 1888 and a colony in 1893. It became a constituent territory of French West Africa in 1904. The independent republic of Guinea was proclaimed on 2 Oct. 1958, after the territory of French Guinea had decided at the referendum of 28 Sept. to leave the French Community. Following the death of the first President, Ahmed Sekou Touré on 27 March 1984, the armed forces staged a *coup* and dissolved the National Assembly.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Guinea, a coastal state of West Africa, is bounded north-west by Guinea-Bissau and Senegal, north-east by Mali, south-east by the Côte d'Ivoire, south by Liberia and Sierra Leone, and west by the Atlantic Ocean.

The area is 245,857 sq. km (94,926 sq. miles), and the population, census, 1983, was 5,781,014; estimate, 1988, 6,533,000. The capital is Conakry. In 1985, 25% were urban.

The areas, populations and chief towns of the major divisions are:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1983</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>	<i>Census 1983</i>
Conakry (city)	308	705,280	Conakry	705,280
Guinée-Maritime	43,980	1,147,301	Kindia	55,904
Moyenne-Guinée	51,710	1,595,007	Labé	65,439
Haute-Guinée	92,535	1,086,679	Kankan	88,760
Guinée-Forestière	57,324	1,246,747	Nzérékoré	23,000 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1972.

The ethnic composition is Fulani (40.3%, predominant in Moyenne-Guinée), Malinké (or Mandingo, 25.8%, prominent in Haute-Guinée), Susu (11%, prominent in Guinée-Maritime), Kissi (6.5%) and Kpelle (4.8%) in Guinée-Forestière, and Dialonka, Loma and others (11.6%).

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with high rainfall near the coast and constant heat, but conditions are a little cooler on the plateau. The wet season on the coast lasts from May to Nov., but only to Oct. inland. Conakry. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 172" (4,293 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following the *coup* of 3 April 1984, supreme power rests with a *Comité Militaire de Redressement National*, ruling through a Council of Ministers appointed by the President composed as follows in 1988:

*President and Head of CMRN:* Brig-Gen. Lansana Conté.

*Ministers-Delegate to Presidency:* Babacar N'Diaye (*National Defence*), Zainoul Sanousi Abidiné (*Information, Culture and Tourism*), Kemoko Keita (*Economy and Finance*), Capt. Abdourahmane Diallo (*Special Missions*).

*Resident (Regional) Ministers:* Capt. Gbago Zoumanigui (*Guinée-Maritime*), Lieut.-Col. Sory Doumbouya (*Moyenne-Guinée*), Kerfalla Camara (*Haute-Guinée*), Mamadou Baldet (*Guinée-Forestière*).

*Foreign Affairs:* Jean Traoré. *Justice:* Bassirou Barry. *Economy and Finance:* Laminé Bolivogui. *Agriculture and Animal Resources:* Alhousseiny Fofana. *Industry, Trade and Handicrafts:* Ousmane Sow. *Civil Service and Administrative Reform:* Mamouna Bangoura. *Social Affairs and Employment:* Jean Kolipé Lama. *Natural Resources and Environment:* Dr Ousmane Sylla. *Housing and Town Planning:* Dr Bana Sidibé. *Education:* Saliou Coumbassa. *Public Health and Population:* Dr Pathc Diallo. *Religious Affairs:* Abdourahmane Bah. *Transport*



*and Public Works:* Facine Touré. *Post and Telecommunications:* Hervé-Vincent Bangoura. *Interior and Decentralisation:* Henri Tofani. *Planning and International Co-operation:* Edouard Benjamin.

**Local Government:** The administrative division comprises the capital Conakry and 29 provinces divided into 175 districts, grouped into 4 'supra-regions' which correspond to the 4 major geographical and ethnic areas: Guinée-Maritime; Moyenne-Guinée; Haute-Guinée and Guinée-Forestière.

**National flag:** Three vertical strips of red, gold, green.

Besides French, there are 8 official languages taught in schools: Fulani, Malinké, Susu, Kissi, Kpelle, Loma, Basari and Koniagi.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army of 8,500 men (1989), comprises 1 armoured, 5 infantry, 1 commando and 1 engineer, 1 artillery, 1 air defence and 1 special force battalions. Equipment includes 30 T-34 and 20 PT-76 tanks. There are also 3 paramilitary forces: People's Militia (7,000), Gendarmerie (1,000) and Republican Guard (1,600).

**Navy.** The Navy comprises 1 patrol ship (*ex-Soviet ocean minesweeper*), 6 fast gunboats, 4 fast attack craft, 13 coastal patrol craft, and 4 small landing craft. There are bases at Conakry and Kakanda. Personnel in 1989 exceeded 600 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, formed with Soviet assistance, is reported to be equipped with 6 MiG-17 jet-fighters and 2 MiG-15UTI trainers, 2 Il-18 turboprop transports, 4 An-14 and 4 Il-14 piston-engined transports and a Yak-40 jet aircraft for VIP duties, all Russian built, plus a few helicopters, piston-engined Yak-18 and L-29 jet trainers. Personnel (1989) 800.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Guinea is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1986: Revenue 109,602m. *Guinea francs* and expenditure of 136,999m. *Guinea francs*.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *Guinea franc*. There are banknotes of 25, 50, 100, 500, 1,000 and 5,000 *Guinea francs*. In March 1989, £1 = 518.40 *francs*; US\$1 = 310.22 *francs*.

**Banking.** In 1986 the Central Bank was restructured and commercial banking returned to the private sector.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production of electrical energy was 236m. kwh. in 1986.

**Minerals.** Bauxite is mined at Fria, Boké and Kindia; output (1985) 13.1m. tonnes, alumina 580,000 tonnes. Production of iron ore from the Nimba and Simandou mountains commenced in 1981, following exhaustion of the Kaloum peninsula deposits. Diamond mining output (1985) 105,000 carats of gem diamonds and 7,000 carats of industrial diamonds.

**Agriculture.** The chief crops (production, 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are: Cassava, 500; rice, 480; plantains, 350; sugar-cane, 200; bananas, 105; groundnuts, 75; sweet potatoes, 70; yams, 61; maize, 50; palm-oil, 40; palm kernels, 46; pineapples, 20; pulses, 50; coffee, 15; coconuts, 15.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 1.8m.; sheep, 460,000; goats, 460,000; pigs, 50,000.

**Forestry:** In 1984, 42% of the country was forested. Round-wood production (1985) 3.69m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries:** Catch (1985) 30,000 tonnes.

**COMMERCE.** In 1984 imports totalled 7,542m. *Guinea francs* (32% from France) and exports 11,009m. *Guinea francs* (28% to the USA). Alumina forms about 30% and bauxite 58% of the exports.

Total trade between Guinea and the UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,171	9,064	23,892	19,538	7,582
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,469	10,301	10,679	10,675	10,106

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 28,400 km of roads and tracks, of which 520 km are bituminized. In 1978 there were 9,948 cars and 9,992 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** A railway connects Conakry with Kankan (662 km) and is to be extended to Bougouni in Mali. A line 134 km long linking bauxite deposits at Sangaredi with Port Kamsar was opened in 1973 and a third line links Conakry and Fria (144 km).

**Aviation.** There are airports at Conakry and Kankan; in 1978, 71,000 passengers disembarked and embarked.

**Shipping.** There are ports at Conakry and for bauxite exports at Kamsar (opened 1973). There were (1983) 18 vessels of 6,944 GRT registered in Guinea.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephones, 1981, numbered about 10,000. There were 125,000 radio receivers and 7,600 television receivers in 1984.

**Newspapers.** In 1979 there was 1 daily newspaper (circulation 20,000).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are *tribunaux du premier degré* at Conakry and Kankan, and a *juge de paix* at Nzérékoré. The High Court, Court of Appeal and Superior Tribunal of Cassation are at Conakry.

**Religion.** In 1980, about 69% of the population was Moslem, 1% Christian (mainly Roman Catholic) and 30% followed tribal religions.

**Education.** In 1980–81, 257,547 pupils and 7,165 teachers in primary schools, 89,900 pupils and 3,520 teachers in secondary schools, 2,776 students in technical schools and 8,437 in teacher-training colleges and 18,270 in higher education.

**Health.** In 1976 there were 314 hospitals and dispensaries with 7,650 beds; there were also 277 doctors, 21 dentists, 159 pharmacists, 394 midwives and 1,533 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Guinea in Great Britain (resides in Paris)

*Ambassador:* Sekou Decazi Camara (accredited on 13 June 1985).

Of Great Britain in Guinea

*Ambassador:* J. E. C. Macrae, CMG (resides in Dakar).

Of Guinea in the USA (2112 Leroy Pl., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Tolo Beavogui.

Of the USA in Guinea (2nd Blvd. and 9th Ave., Conakry)

*Ambassador:* Samuel E. Lupo.

Of Guinea to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mohamed Traore.

## Further Reading

- Bulletin Statistique et Economique de la Guinée*, Monthly. Conakry  
 Adamolekun, L., *Sékou Touré's Guinea*. London, 1976  
 Camara, S. S., *La Guinée sous la France*. Paris, 1976  
 Taylor, F. W., *A Fulani-English Dictionary*. Oxford, 1932

# GUINEA-BISSAU

Capital: Bissau

Population: 932,000 (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$170 (1986)

## Republica da Guiné-Bissau

**HISTORY.** Guinea-Bissau, formerly Portuguese Guinea, on the coast of Guinea, was discovered in 1446 by Nuno Tristão. It became a separate colony in 1879. It is bounded by the limits fixed by the convention of 12 May 1886 with France. In 1951 Guinea-Bissau became an overseas province of Portugal. The struggle against colonial rule began in 1963. Independence was declared on 24 Sept. 1973. In 1974 Portugal formally recognized the independence of Guinea-Bissau.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Guinea-Bissau is bounded by Senegal in the north, the Atlantic ocean in the west and by Guinea in the east and south. It includes the adjacent archipelago of Bijagós. Area, 36,125 sq. km (13,948 sq. miles); population (census, 1979), 767,739, of whom 125,000 (estimate, 1988) resided in the capital, Bissau; (estimate, 1988) 932,000.

The areas and populations (census 1979) of the regions were as follows:

Region	Sq. km	Census 1979	Region	Sq. km	Census 1979
Bissau City	78	109,214	Gabu	9,150	104,315
Bafatá	5,981	116,032	Oio	5,403	135,114
Biombo	838	56,463	Quinara	3,138	35,532
Bolama-Bijagós	2,624	25,473	Tombali	3,736	55,099
Cacheu	5,175	130,227			

In 1979, 14% of the population were urban, 48.2% were male and 44.3% were under the age of 15.

The main ethnic groups were (1979) the Balante (27%), Fulani (23%), Malinké (12%), Mandjako (11%) and Pepel (10%). Portuguese remains the official language, but Crioulo is spoken throughout the country.

**CLIMATE.** The tropical climate has a wet season from June to Nov., when rains are abundant, but the hot, dry Harmattan wind blows from Dec. to May. Bissau. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 78" (1,950 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was promulgated on 16 May 1984. The Revolutionary Council, established following the 1980 *coup*, was replaced by a 15-member Council of State, while in April 1984 a new National People's Assembly was elected comprising 150 Representatives elected by and from the directly-elected regional councils. The sole political movement is the *Partido Africano da Independencia da Guiné e Cabo Verde* (PAIGC). The President is Head of State and Government, leading a Council of Ministers which in Oct. 1988 was composed as follows:

*President:* Gen. João Bernardo Vieira.

*Ministers of State:* Col. Iafai Camara (*Armed Forces*), Dr Vasco Cabral (*Justice*), Carlos Correia (*Rural Development and Fisheries*), Tiago Aleluia Lopes (*Presidency*).

*Foreign Affairs:* Júlio Semedo. *Education, Culture and Sports:* Dr Fidelis Cabral d'Almada. *Commerce and Tourism:* Maj. Manuel dos Santos. *Public Works:* Avito da Silva. *National Security and Public Order:* Maj. José Pereira. *Natural Resources and Industry:* Filinto de Barros. *Finance:* Dr Vítor Freire Monteiro. *Public Health:* Adelino Nunes Correia. *Planning:* (Vacant). *Civil Service and Labour:* Henriqueta Godinho Gomes. *Information and Telecommunications:* Mussa Djassi. *Minister-Governor of Central Bank:* Dr Pedro A. Godinho Gomes.

There are 11 Secretaries of State.

*National flag:* Horizontally yellow over green with red vertical strip in the hoist bearing a black star.



**Local government:** The administrative division is divided into 3 provinces, 8 regions (each under an elected regional council), in turn subdivided into 37 sectors; and the city of Bissau, treated as a separate region.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consisted in 1989 of 5 infantry battalions, 1 engineer unit and 1 tank squadron. Equipment includes 10 T-34 tanks. Personnel, 6,800 men.

**Navy.** The naval flotilla includes 8 fast attack craft, 11 coastal patrol craft, 4 utility landing craft, 2 river craft and 4 minor landing craft. Based at Bissau. Personnel in 1989 totalled 300 officers and men.

**Air Force.** Formation of a small Air Force began in 1978 with the delivery of a French-built Cessna FTB-337 twin-engined counter-insurgency and general-purpose light transport. It has been followed by 2 Alouette III helicopters and 2 Dornier Do 27 utility aircraft. Personnel (1989) 100.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Guinea-Bissau is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Development Plan ending 1990 aims at self-sufficiency in food.

**Budget.** The budget for 1985 balanced at 1,000m. pesos.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *peso* of 100 *centavos*. There are coins of 50 *centavos* and 1, 2, 5 and 20 *pesos*, and banknotes of 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 *pesos*. In March 1989, £1 = 1,123.20 *pesos*; US\$1 = 652.64 *pesos*.

**Banking.** The Banco Nacional da Guiné-Bissau, founded 1976, is the bank of issue and also the commercial bank. There are also state-owned savings institutions. A private bank is planned to open in 1989.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 28m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Mining is very little developed although bauxite (200m. tonnes) has been located in the Boé area. Exploration for oil is taking place but no finds have been reported.

**Agriculture.** Chief crops (production, 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are: Groundnuts, 29; sugar-cane, 5; plantains, 25; coconuts, 25; rice, 125; rubber, 23 (1981); palm kernels, 14; millet, 18; palm-oil, 2.8; sorghum, 33; maize, 29; cashew nuts, 10; timber, hides, seeds and wax.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 340,000; sheep, 205,000; goats, 210,000; pigs, 290,000; poultry, 1m.

**Forestry.** Production (1985) 559,000 cu. metres. 33% of the country is forested.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1985) 3,600 tonnes. Fishing is an important export industry.

**COMMERCE.** Imports in 1983, 1,586m. pesos of which 33% from Portugal; exports, 358m. of which 66% went to Portugal, 11% to Senegal and 10% to Guinea. In 1980, fish formed 33% of exports, groundnuts, 24% and coconuts, 17%.

Total trade between Guinea-Bissau and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	—	2	214	17	22
Exports and re-exports from UK	499	1,209	1,319	1,152	925

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1982) 5,058 km of roads and 4,100 vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport serving Bissau at Bissalanca.

**Shipping.** The main port is Bissau; minor ports are Boloma, Cacheu and Catió. In 1974, 169 vessels entered the ports unloading 134,000 tonnes.

**Post.** In 1986 there were 3,000 telephones and 26,000 radio receivers.

**Cinemas.** There were 4 cinemas (1988) with a seating capacity of 950.

**Newspapers** (1984). There was one weekly newspaper, with a circulation of 3,000.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** In 1985 about 30% of the population were Moslem and about 5% Christian (mainly Roman Catholic).

**Education.** There were, in 1984, 81,444 pupils in 658 primary schools with 3,153 teachers; 11,710 pupils in 12 secondary schools with 718 teachers and 1,027 students in 4 technical schools and teacher-training establishments with 107 teachers.

**Health.** In 1981 there were 17 hospitals and clinics with 1,570 beds and in 1980 there were 108 doctors, 2 dentists, 3 pharmacists, 2 midwives and 56 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Guinea-Bissau in Great Britain (resides in Brussels)

*Ambassador:* Bubacar Turé (accredited 26 Nov. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Guinea-Bissau

*Ambassador:* J. E. C. Macrae, CMG (resides in Dakar).

Of Guinea-Bissau in the USA

*Ambassador:* Alfredo Lopes Cabral.

Of the USA in Guinea-Bissau (Ave. Domingos Ramos, Bissau)

*Ambassador:* John Dale Blacken.

Of Guinea-Bissau to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Alfredo Lopes Cabral.

## Further Reading

*Relatório e Mapas do Movimento Comercial e Marítimo da Guiné.* Bolama, Annual Cabral, A., *Revolution in Guinea.* London, 1969.—*Return to the Source.* New York, 1973

Davidson, B., *Growing from the Grass Roots.* London, 1974

Gjerstad, O. and Sarrazin, C., *Sowing the First Harvest: National Reconstruction in Guinea-Bissau.* Oakland, 1978

Rudebeck, L., *Guinea-Bissau: A Study of Political Mobilization.* Uppsala, 1974

# GUYANA

*Capital:* Georgetown

*Population:* 812,000 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$500 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The territory, including the counties of Demerara, Essequibo and Berbice, named from the 3 rivers, was first partially settled by the Dutch West Indian Company about 1620. The Dutch retained their hold until 1796, when it was captured by the English. It was finally ceded to Great Britain in 1814 and named British Guiana. On 26 May 1966 British Guiana became an independent member of the Commonwealth under the name of Guyana and the world's first Co-operative Republic on 23 Feb. 1970.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Guyana is situated on the north-east coast of South America on the Atlantic ocean, with Suriname on the east, Venezuela on the west and Brazil on the south and west. Area, 83,000 sq. miles (214,969 sq. km). Estimated population (1987), 812,000. The official language is English, and in 1980 the population comprised 51% (East) Indians, 30% Africans, 10% mixed race, 5% Amerindian and 4% others. The capital is Georgetown, whose metropolitan area had 188,000 inhabitants in 1983; other towns are New Amsterdam, Linden, Rose Hall and Corriverton.

Vital statistics (1983): Birth rate 2.90%; death rate 0.70%.

Venezuela demanded the return of the Essequibo region in 1963. It was finally agreed in March 1983 that the UN Secretary-General should mediate. There was also an unresolved claim (1984) by Suriname for the return of an area between the New river and the Courantyne river.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with rainy seasons from April to July and Nov. to Jan. Humidity is high all the year but temperatures are moderated by sea-breezes. Rainfall increases from 90" (2,280 mm) on the coast to 140" (3,560 mm) in the forest zone. Georgetown. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 87" (2,175 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was promulgated in Oct. 1980. The National Assembly consists of 65 elected members. Elections are held under the single-list system of proportional representation, with the whole of the country forming one electoral area and each voter casting his vote for a party list of candidates. The legislature is elected for 5 years unless earlier dissolved.

The elections held on 9 Dec. 1985 gave the People's National Congress 42 seats, the People's Progressive Party 8 seats, the United Force 2 seats and the Working People's Alliance 1 seat.

The Cabinet was in 1988 composed as follows:

*President:* H. Desmond Hoyte.

*Prime Minister:* Hamilton Green.

*Vice-Presidents:* Mohamed Shahabuddeen (*Attorney-General*); Ranji Chandisingh (*National Development*); Viola Burnham (*Education and Social Development*).

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* William Haslyn Parris (*Planning and Development*); Robert H. O. Corbin (*Agriculture*). *Foreign Affairs:* Rashleigh Jackson. *Finance:* Carl Greenidge. *Labour:* Seeram Prashad. *Trade and Tourism:* Winston S. Murray. *Information:* Yvonne Harewood-Benn.



*National flag:* Green with a yellow triangle based on the hoist, edged in white, charged with a red triangle edged in black.

*Local government:* There are 10 administrative regions: Barima/Waini, Pomeroon/Supernaam, Essequibo Islands/West Demerara, Demerara/Mahaica, Mahaica/Berbice, East Berbice/Corentyne, Cuyuni/Mazaruni, Potaro/Siparuni, Upper Takutu/Upper Essequibo, Upper Demerara/Berbice.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Guyana Army had (1989) a strength of 5,300 (which includes airforce), including a women's army corps. It comprises 2 infantry battalions, 1 guards, 1 special forces, 1 support weapons and 1 engineer battalion.

**Navy.** The Maritime Corps is an integral part of the Guyana Defence Force. In 1989 it had 250 personnel and comprised 3 fast patrol craft, 6 coastal patrol boats, 2 service vessels and a landing craft.

**Air Force.** The Air Command is equipped with light aircraft and helicopters, including 1 Super King Air 200 twin-turboprop transport, 6 Islander twin-engined STOL transports, a Cessna U206F utility lightplane, and 5 Bell 206/212/412 and 2 Mi-8 helicopters. Personnel (1989) 300.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Guyana is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, Caricom, the Non-Aligned Movement and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for calendar years (in G\$1,000):

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Revenue	1,009,936	818,136	887,539	1,537,928	1,200,208	1,618,125
Expenditure	1,176,678	1,621,814	1,236,878	1,585,840	1,562,858	2,858,467

**Currency.** The Bank of Guyana, established in 1965, issued Guyana dollar notes of \$1, 5, 10 and 20 and coins of 1-, 5-, 10-, 25- and 50-cent pieces. In March 1989: £1 = 15.54 G\$; US\$1 = 9.03 G\$.

**Banking.** Of the 6 commercial banks operating in Guyana 2 are foreign-owned (Bank of Baroda and Bank of Nova Scotia) and 4 locally controlled (Guyana National Co-operative Bank, the National Bank of Industry and Commerce and the Republic Bank). The Guyana Agricultural and Industrial Development Bank (Gaibank) for farmers and agri-based industries and the Guyana Co-operative Mortgage Finance Bank for housing. Barclays Bank plc became Guyana Bank of Trade and Commerce in 1988.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 500m. kwh. Supply 110 volts; 60 Hz and 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Placer gold mining commenced in 1884, and was followed by diamond mining in 1887. Output of gold was 14,040 oz. in 1986. Production of diamonds was 10,200 in 1980. Total production of the 4 grades of bauxite (calcined, chemical, metallurgical and abrasive) was 1.5m. tonnes in 1986. Full-scale production of manganese began in 1960 and other minerals include uranium, oil, copper and molybdenum.

**Agriculture.** Production, 1987: Sugar-cane, 3.3m. tonnes; rice, 350,000 tonnes. Important products are coconuts, 40,000 tonnes, 1987 and oranges 11,000 tonnes. Other tropical fruits and vegetables are grown mostly in scattered plantings; they include mangoes, papaws, avocado pears, melons, bananas and gooseberries. Other important crops are tomatoes, cabbages, black-eye peas, peanuts, carrots, onions, turmeric, ginger, pineapples, red kidney beans, soybeans, eschallot and tobacco. Large areas of unimproved land in the coastal region, which vary in width

up to about 30 miles from the sea, are still available for agricultural and cattle-grazing projects.

Livestock estimate (1987): Cattle, 210,000; pigs, 185,000; sheep, 120,000; goats, 77,000; poultry, 15m.

**Forestry.** Guyana can be divided roughly into 3 regions: (1) A low coastal region varying in width up to about 30 miles and constituting the agricultural area; (2) an intermediate area about 100 miles wide, of slightly higher undulating land containing the chief mineral and forest resources of the country; and (3) a hinterland of several mountain ranges and extensive savannahs. 19,844,170 hectares of the land area is forested out of 21,497,000 hectares. Production (1986) 4.7m. cu. ft.

**Fisheries.** Production (1986) of fish, 39,000 tons and shrimp, 3,500 tons.

#### COMMERCE. Imports and exports (in G\$) for calendar years:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	840,442,362	745,000,000	821,300,000	959,500,000	1,618,000,000
Exports	775,544,161	580,000,000	831,300,000	914,400,000	1,092,000,000

Chief imports (1983): Fuel and lubricants, 19,367,367 kg, \$272,513,835; milk, 1,386,887 kg, \$8,674,714.

Chief domestic exports (1983): Sugar, 210,734 tonnes, \$195,814,993; rice, 41,721 tonnes, \$64,939,971; bauxite, dried, 779,768 tonnes, \$66,629,072; bauxite, calcined, 340,709 tonnes, \$136,201,592; alumina, 29,301 tonnes, \$7,019,133; rum, 20,442,180 litres, \$6,987,107; timber, 49,720 cu. metres, \$10,837,689; molasses, 53,938,864 litres, \$2,019,371; shrimps, 7,318,145 kg, \$14,067,860.

Imports (exclusive of transshipments), 1981, from CARICOM Territories, 35%; from USA, 25%; from UK, 16%; from Canada, 4%; exports (exclusive of transshipments) to UK, 26%; to CARICOM Territories, 17%; to Canada, 5%.

Total trade between Guyana and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	57,884	52,377	55,535	58,502	43,518
Exports and re-exports from UK	14,845	18,406	13,737	15,371	10,590

#### COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Roads and vehicular trails in the national, provincial and urban systems amount to 8,870 km. Motor vehicles, as of 31 Dec. 1987, totalled 53,446, including 8,401 passenger cars, 3,682 lorries and vans, 8,958 tractors and trailers, and 15,893 motor cycles. The main road on the Atlantic Coast, some 290 km (180 miles) long extends from Charity on the Pomeroon River to Crabwood Creek on the Corentyne, there are two unbridged gaps made by the Berbice and Essequibo Rivers, and the banks of the Demerara River are linked by a 1,853 metre (6,074 ft) floating bridge.

**Railways.** There is a government-owned railway in the North West District, while the Guyana Mining Enterprise operates a standard gauge railway of 133 km from Linden on the Demerara River to Ituni and Coomacka.

**Aviation.** Guyana Airways Corporation operates 11 flights weekly on its international service and 21 flights locally. In 1985 Guyana Airways Corporation carried 108,936 passengers on its international service and 59,113 passengers locally. Other services in operation: British Airways 4 times weekly to the Caribbean, Europe and North America; PANAM 3 times weekly to North, Central and South America; Air France, to and from Guadeloupe, Paramaribo and Cayenne 4 times a week; British West Indian Airways, Ltd, to and from Trinidad twice a week, providing direct connexion with New York and London; Cubana Airlines once a fortnight; Suriname Airways and Tropical Airways once weekly. The International Airport at Timehri serves Arrow Air Airlines, BWIA, Cubana Airways, and Suriname Airways.

**Shipping.** There are 217 nautical miles of river navigation. There are ferry services across the mouths of the Demerara, Berbice and Essequibo rivers, the last provid-

ing a link between the islands of Leguan and Wakenaam and the mainland at Adventure, and a number of coastal and river-boat services carrying both passengers and cargo. A number of launch services are operated in the more remote areas by private concerns.

Georgetown harbour, about  $\frac{1}{2}$  mile wide and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles long, has a minimum depth of 24 ft. New Amsterdam harbour is situated at the mouth of the Berbice River; there are wharves for coastal vessels only. Bauxite is loaded on ocean-going freighters at Mackenzie, 67 miles up the Demerara River, and at Everton on the Berbice River, about 10 miles from the mouth of the waterway. The Essequibo River has several timber-loading berths ranging from 20 to 40 ft. Springlands on the Corentyne River is the point of entry and departure of passengers travelling by launch services to and from Suriname. In 1984 the merchant marine comprised 84 vessels of 20,248 GRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The inland public telegraph and radio communication services are operated and maintained by the Telecommunication Corporation, established on 1 March 1967. On 31 Aug. 1987 there were 57 post offices and 28 agencies.

The telephone exchanges had at 31 Aug. 1987 a total of 28,450 direct exchange lines with (1987), 20,000 telephone instruments. The number of route miles in the coastal and inland areas was 2,982 km. 39 land-line stations were maintained at post offices in the coastal area, and 8 telegraph stations in the interior provide communication with the coastal area through a central telegraph office in Georgetown.

The Guyana Broadcasting Corporation, which came into operation on 1 July 1980, has 2 channels. In 1985 there were 350,000 radio receivers.

**Cinemas** (1987). There are 52 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There is 1 daily newspaper with a circulation of 60,000 and 5 weekly papers with a combined circulation of about 120,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The law, both civil and criminal, is based on the common and statute law of England, save that the principles of the Roman-Dutch law have been retained in respect of the registration, conveyance and mortgaging of land.

The Supreme Court of Judicature consists of a Court of Appeal and a High Court.

**Religion.** In 1980, 34% of the population were Hindu, 34% Protestant, 18% Roman Catholic and 9% Muslim.

**Education.** In Sept. 1976 the Government assumed total responsibility for education from nursery school to university. Private education was abolished. In Sept. 1984, the total number of schools was 876: Nursery, 368; primary, 418; community high, 34; general secondary, 56.

There are now 5 technical and vocational schools and 2 schools for the teaching of home economics and domestic crafts. Training in co-operatives is provided by the Kuru-Kuru Co-operative College and agriculture by the Guyana School of Agriculture and the Burnham Agricultural Institute. Art training is provided by the Burrowes School of Art. The training of primary and secondary school teachers is undertaken by 3 institutions. Higher education is also provided by the University of Guyana which was established in 1963 with faculties of medicine, natural science, social science, art, technology and education as well as first year students in law. There were 2,250 students in 1987-88. The total number of pupils in all schools was 233,723 in 1983.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 213 health facilities including hospitals. There were (1987) 142 doctors, 19 dentists and (1982) 32 pharmacists, 546 midwives and 881 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Guyana in Great Britain (3 Palace Ct., London, W2 4LP)  
*High Commissioner:* Cecil S. Pilgrim (accredited 5 Dec. 1986).



Of Great Britain in Guyana (44 Main St., Georgetown)  
*High Commissioner:* D. P. Small, CMG, MBE.

Of Guyana in the USA (2490 Tracy Pl., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Dr Cedric Hilburn Grant.

Of the USA in Guyana (31 Main St., Georgetown)  
*Ambassador:* Theresa A. Tull.

Of Guyana to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Samuel R. Insanally.

### Further Reading

- Baber, C. and Jeffrey, H. B., *Guyana: Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1986  
Braveboy-Wagner, J. A., *The Venezuela-Guyana Border Dispute: Britain's Colonial Legacy in Latin America*. London, 1984  
Chambers, F., *Guyana*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988  
Daly, P. H., *From Revolution to Republic*. Georgetown, 1970  
Daly, V. T., *A Short History of the Guyanese People*. Rev. ed. London, 1975  
Hope, K. R., *Development Policy in Guyana: Planning, Finance and Administration*. London, 1979  
Latin American Bureau, *Guyana: Fraudulent Revolution*. London, 1984  
Sanders, A., *The Powerless People*. London, 1987  
Spinner, T. J., *A Political and Social History of Guyana, 1945-83*. Epping, 1985

# HAITI

*Capital:* Port-au-Prince

*Population:* 5.3m. (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$330 (1986)

## République d'Haiti

**HISTORY.** Haiti occupies the western third of the large island of Hispaniola which was discovered by Christopher Columbus in 1492. The Spanish colony was ceded to France in 1697 and became her most prosperous colony. After the extirpation of the Indians by the Spaniards (by 1533) large numbers of African slaves were imported whose descendants now populate the country. The slaves obtained their liberation following the French Revolution, but subsequently Napoleon sent his brother-in-law, Gen. Leclerc, to restore French authority and re-impose slavery. Toussaint Louverture, the leader of the slaves who had been appointed a French general and governor, was kidnapped and sent to France, where he died in gaol. However, the reckless courage of the Negro troops and the ravages of yellow fever forced the French to evacuate the island and surrender to the blockading British squadron.

The country declared its independence on 1 Jan. 1804, and its successful leader, Gen. Jean-Jacques Dessalines, proclaimed himself Emperor of the newly-named Haiti. After the assassination of Dessalines (1806) a separate régime was set up in the north under Henri Christophe, a Negro general who in 1811 had himself proclaimed King Henry. In the south and west a republic was constituted, with the mulatto Alexander Pétion as its first President. Pétion died in 1818 and was succeeded by Jean-Pierre Boyer, under whom the country became re-united after Henry had committed suicide in 1820. From 1822 to 1844 Haiti and the eastern part of the island (later the Dominican Republic) were united. After one more monarchical interlude, under the Emperor Faustin (1847–59), Haiti has been a republic. From 1915 to 1934 Haiti was under United States occupation.

Following a military *coup* in 1950, and subsequent uprisings, Dr François Duvalier was elected President on 22 Oct. 1957 and subsequently became President for Life in 1964. He died on 21 April 1971 and was succeeded as president for life by his son, Jean-Claude Duvalier who fled the country on 7 Feb. 1986.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area is 27,750 sq. km (10,700 sq. miles), of which about three-quarters is mountainous. The population at the census in 1982 was 5,053,792 of which 21% urban and 48.5% male. Estimate (1985) 5,272,000.

The areas and populations of the 9 *départements* are as follows:

<i>Département</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1982</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>1982</i>
Nord-Ouest	2,094	293,531	Port-de-Paix	21,733 <sup>1</sup>
Nord	2,175	564,002	Cap Haïtien	64,406
Nord-Est	1,698	189,573	Fort-Liberté	...
L'Artibonite	4,895	732,932	Gonaïves	34,209
Centre	3,597	361,470	Hinche	...
Ouest	4,595	1,551,792	Port-au-Prince	449,831 <sup>2</sup>
Sud-Est	2,077	367,911	Jacmel	...
Sud	2,602	502,624	Les Cayes	34,090
Grande Anse	3,100	489,957	Jérémie	17,117 <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1975.    <sup>2</sup> Metropolitan area, 763,188.    <sup>3</sup> 1971.

The Île de la Gonave, some 40 miles long, lies in the gulf of the same name. Among other islands is La Tortue, off the north peninsula. 95% of the population is black, with an important minority of mulattoes and only about 5,000 white residents, almost all foreign.

Haiti is the only French-speaking republic in the Americas. The standard French of government, parliament and the press is spoken by the small literate

minority (about 10%), but the great majority of the people habitually speak the dialect known as Créole.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, but the central mountains can cause semi-arid conditions in their lee. There are rainy seasons from April to June and Aug. to Nov. Hurricanes and severe thunderstorms can occur. The annual temperature range is small. Port-au-Prince. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 53" (1,321 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1983 Constitution, provided for an Executive President who was elected for life and could nominate his successor. He nominated a Cabinet to assist him and, in cases of national emergency, could dismiss both the Cabinet and the National Assembly and govern by decree. A new draft Constitution was approved in March 1987. The unicameral National Assembly comprises 59 deputies elected for 6-year terms (renewable) by universal suffrage at age 18.

Following the departure of President Jean-Claude Duvalier the 5-man Council of Government formed in Feb. 1986 was composed of Gen. Henry Namphy; Col. Max Valles, Commander of the Presidential Guard; Col. William Regala, Inspector-General; Alix Cinéas and Gérard Gourgue. Presidential elections were planned for 29 Nov. 1987 but were postponed because of violence. They took place on 17 Jan. 1988 and on 24 Jan. Leslie Manigat was declared elected President with 534,080 votes, 50.29% of the total cast. President Manigat was sworn in on 5 Feb. On 17 July 1988 Gen. Namphy was dismissed but he staged a *coup* on 19–20 June and dissolved the legislature and appointed a military administration. A further *coup* took place on 17 Sept. by non-commissioned officers and Gen. Namphy was deposed.

The Cabinet in Sept. 1988 was composed as follows:

*President:* Lieut.-Gen. Prosper Avril.

*Interior, Defence:* Col. Carl Dorsainville. *Foreign Affairs:* Serge Charles. *Finance:* Leonce Thelsuma. *Education:* Remy Zamor. *Information:* Anthony Saint-Pierre. *Justice:* Gilbert Austin. *Health:* Serge Pinthro. *Public Works, Transport, Communications:* Franck Paultre. *Agriculture, Natural Resources:* Frederic Agenor. *Social Affairs:* Arnault Guerrier. *Commerce:* Jean Gerard.

*National flag:* Horizontally blue over red with the national arms on a white panel in the centre.

*National anthem:* 'La Dessalinienne': Pour le pays, pour les ancêtres (words by J. Lhérisson; tune by N. Geffrard, 1903).

**DEFENCE.** The Haitian Defence Force (*Forces Armées d'Haïti*) totalling about 7,600 men, was divided into Army, Navy, and Air Force. The President is Commander-in-Chief and appoints the officers.

**Army.** Total strength, about 7,000 (1989), organized into 9 Military Departments and the 'Leopards'. Three of the Departments are in Port-au-Prince and consist of the Presidential Guard, 1 infantry battalion, 1 special forces battalion, 2 artillery battalions and 6 garrison departments.

**Navy.** The Navy/coastguard of 300 (1989) had 1 *ex-US* armed tug, and 14 coastal patrol boats. The base is at Port-au-Prince.

**Air Force.** Personnel strength was (1989) about 300, with (1987) about 30 aircraft of some 12 varieties. They include 7 Summit/Cessna O2-337 Sentry twin piston-engined counter-insurgency aircraft, 1 DC-3, 6 light transports, 14 training and liaison aircraft, including 4 S.211 jet trainers, 4 turboprop-powered SF.260 TPs, and 2 helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Haiti is a member of UN and OAS.



## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue (fiscal year ending 30 Sept.) in US\$1m. (5 gourdes = US\$1), 1986-87, 305m.; expenditure, 350m.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *gourde* and its value fixed at 5 *gourdes* = US\$1. In March 1989, £1 = 8.64 *gourdes*. There are copper-nickel coins for 50, 20, 10 and 5 *centimes* and copper-zinc-nickel coins of 10 and 5 *centimes*.

**Banking.** Banque Nationale de Credit, owned by the State, was established in 1982. US dollars may be included in the minimum required reserves. The Royal Bank of Canada, the Citibank, the Bank of Nova Scotia, the Bank of Boston, the Banque de l'Union Haitienne (mainly local capital with participation from American, Canadian and Dominican Republic Banks), Banque Nationale de Paris and Banque Nationale de la République d'Haiti (the central bank and has a monopoly of the note issue) all have branches in Port-au-Prince.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is officially accepted.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 332m. kwh. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Copper exists but is at present uneconomic to exploit. Haiti may possess undeveloped mineral resources of oil, gold, silver, antimony, sulphur, coal and lignite, nickel, gypsum and porphyry.

**Agriculture.** Only one-third of the country is arable and most people own the tiny plots they farm; the resulting pressure of population is the main cause of rural poverty. Number of farms is estimated at over 500,000.

The occupations of Haiti are nine-tenths agricultural, carried on in 7 large plains, from 200,000 to 25,000 acres, and in 15 smaller plains down to 2,000 acres. Irrigation is used in some areas. Haiti's most important product is coffee of good quality, classified as 'mild', and grown by peasants. Production in 1986 totalled about 38,000 tonnes. Second most important crop is sugar. Sisal is grown extensively. Much of the fibre is exported as or for cordage. New types of cotton are being tried with success. New varieties of rice should significantly boost future production, especially in the Artibonite Valley. Output of main crops in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes) was: Sugar-cane, 3,150; mangoes, 350; plantains, 275; sweet potatoes, 360; cassava, 270; bananas, 235; maize, 160; sorghum, 110; rice, 180; sisal, 10; cotton, 6; cocoa, 5.

Rum and other spirits are distilled. Essential oils from vetiver, neroli and amyris are important. Cattle and horse breeding are encouraged.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 1,474,000; sheep, 93,000; goats, 1,113,000; horses, 425,000; poultry, 8m.

**Fisheries.** Production (1984) 5,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Light manufacturing industries assembling or finishing goods for re-export constitute the fastest growing sector. Soap factories produce laundry soap, toilet soap and detergent. A cement factory located near the capital produced 243,000 tonnes in 1980. A steel plant making rods, beams and angles was opened in 1974. There are also a pharmaceutical plant, a tannery, a plastics plant, 2 paint works, 5 shoe factories, a large factory producing enamel cookingware, 2 pasta-making factories, a tomato cannery and a flour-mill, all located in or near Port-au-Prince.

**Commerce.** In 1987 exports were US\$160m. and imports, US\$280m.

The leading imports are foodstuffs, textiles, machinery, mineral oils, raw materials for transformation industries and vehicles.

Total trade between Haiti and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,402	1,512	899	621	844
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,736	5,048	5,147	5,327	6,760

**Tourism.** In 1986, 112,000 tourists visited Haiti.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length of roads is some 4,000 km, little of which is practicable in ordinary motors in the rainy season. There were (1984) about 50,000 vehicles in Haiti.

**Railways.** The only railway is owned by the Haitian American Sugar Company.

**Aviation.** An airport capable of handling jets was opened at Port-au-Prince in 1965. US and French carriers provide daily direct services to New York, Miami, Jamaica, Puerto Rico and the French Antilles. There are also services to the Dominican Republic and the Netherlands Antilles. A Haitian company provides a cargo service to the US and Puerto Rico. Air services connecting Port-au-Prince with other Haitian towns are operated by Haiti Air Inter.

**Shipping.** US, French, Federal Republic of Germany, Dutch, British, Canadian and Japanese lines connect Haiti with the US, Latin America (except Cuba), Canada, Jamaica, Europe and the Far East.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Most principal towns are connected by the government telegraph system, telephones and wireless.

The telephone company, of which the Haitian Government is now the majority stockholder, is in process of being modernized. Telephone subscribers totalled 34,000 in 1984.

In 1982 there were 105,000 radio and 65,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1984). There were 10 cinemas in Port-au-Prince.

**Newspapers** (1984). There were 6 daily newspapers in Port-au-Prince, also a monthly in English and 1 weekly newspaper in Cap Haïtien.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Judges, both of the lower courts and the court of appeal, are appointed by the President. The legal system is basically French. The divorce law has recently been amended to permit parties to obtain 'quick and painless' divorces at a moderate cost, in the hope of attracting the US trade, now that the Mexican 'divorce mills' have closed down. This has developed a useful flow of dollar revenue.

**Police.** The Police number about 1,200 in Port-au-Prince and are part of the armed forces.

**Religion.** Since the Concordat of 1860, the official religion is Roman Catholicism, under an archbishop with 5 suffragan bishops. There are still quite a number of foreigners, French and French Canadians mainly, among the clergy but the first Haitian archbishop took office in 1966. The Episcopal Church now has its first Haitian bishop who was consecrated in 1971. Other Christian churches number perhaps 10% of the population. The folk religion is Voodoo.

**Education.** Education is divided into primary (first 6 years), secondary (the next 7 years) and finally superior or university. The school system is modelled on that of France. The law calls for free and compulsory elementary education in the French language.

In 1983 there were 3,321 primary schools with 14,927 teachers and 658,102 pupils. Secondary schools had 98,562 pupils in 1980.

Higher education is offered at the University of Haiti with 4,100 students in 1980.

**Health.** There were, in 1972, 332 doctors and 104 dentists in practice, 44 hospitals, and 196 health centres and rural clinics. The hospitals had 3,329 beds, of which 776 were in private and charitable establishments.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Haiti in Great Britain. The Embassy closed on 30 March 1987.

Of Great Britain in Haiti

*Ambassador:* Alan J. Payne, CMG (resides in Kingston).

Of Haiti in the USA (2311 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of the USA in Haiti (Harry Truman Blvd., Port-au-Prince)

*Ambassador:* Brunson McKinley.

Of Haiti to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

## Further Reading

The official gazette is *Le Moniteur*.

*Revue Agricole d'Haïti*. From 1946. Quarterly

Bellegarde, D., *Histoire du Peuple Haïtien*. Port-au-Prince, 1953

Chambers, F. J., *Haiti*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983

Ferguson, J., *Papa Doc, Baby Doc: Haiti and the Duvaliers*. Oxford, 1987

Laguerre, M. S., *The Complete Haitiana*. [Bibliography] London and New York, 1982

Lundahl, M., *The Haitian Economy: Man, Land and Markets*. London, 1983

Nicholls, D., *From Dessalines to Duvalier: Race, Colour and National Independence in Haiti*. CUP, rev., 1986.—*Haiti in Caribbean Context: Ethnicity, Economy and Revolt*. London, 1985

*National Library:* Bibliothèque Nationale, Rue du Centre, Port-au-Prince.



# HONDURAS

Capital: Tegucigalpa

Population: 4.3m. (1986)

GNP per capita: US\$740 (1986)

## República de Honduras

**HISTORY.** Honduras celebrates 15 Sept. 1821 as the anniversary of its national independence from Spain. On 5 Nov. 1838 Honduras declared itself an independent sovereign state, free from the Federation of Central America, of which it had formed a part.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Honduras is bounded north by the Caribbean, east and south-east by Nicaragua, west by Guatemala, south-west by El Salvador and south by the Pacific ocean. Area is 112,088 sq. km (43,277 sq. miles), with a population, census (1974) of 2,656,948. Estimate (1986) 4.3m.

The chief cities (populations, 1986) were Tegucigalpa, the capital (604,600), San Pedro Sula (399,700), El Progreso (58,300), Choluteca (60,700), Danli (18,800) and the Atlantic coast ports of La Ceiba (63,800), Puerto Cortés (40,000) and Tela (30,100); other towns include Olanchito (13,000), Juticalpa (13,900), Comayagua (28,800), Signatepeque (30,100) and Santa Rosa de Copan (20,000).

The areas and populations of the 18 departments and federal district were as follows:

Department	Sq. km	1983	Department	Sq. km	1983
Atlántida	4,251	242,235	Intibucá	3,072	111,412
Choluteca	4,211	289,637	Islas de la Bahía	261	18,744
Colón	8,875	128,370	La Paz	2,331	86,627
Comayagua	5,196	211,465	Lempira	4,290	174,916
Copán	3,203	217,258	Ocotepeque	1,680	64,151
Cortés	3,954	624,090	Olancho	24,350	228,122
El Paraíso	7,218	206,601	Santa Bárbara	5,115	286,854
Federal District	1,648	604,600 <sup>1</sup>	Valle	1,565	125,640
Francisco Morazán	6,298	203,753	Yoro	7,939	304,310
Gracias a Dios	16,630	35,471			

<sup>1</sup> 1986.

Aboriginal tribes number over 35,000, principally Miskito, Payas and Xicaques Indians and Sambos (the latter a mixture of Miskito and Negro), each speaking a different dialect. The Spanish-speaking inhabitants are chiefly *mestizos*, Indians with an admixture of Spanish blood. Gracias a Dios is still largely unexplored and is inhabited by pure native races who speak little or no Spanish.

In 1985 the population growth rate was 3.1%; infant mortality rate 70 per 1,000 live births; life expectancy 62.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with a small annual range of temperature but with high rainfall. Upland areas have two wet seasons, from May to July and in Sept. and Oct. The Caribbean Coast has most rain in Dec. and Jan. and temperatures are generally higher than inland. Tegucigalpa. Jan. 66°F (19°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 64" (1,621 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Presidential and Congressional elections were held on 24 Nov. 1985. A new Constitution was promulgated on 20 Jan. 1982. The President is directly elected for a 4-year term.

At the 1985 Presidential elections the National Party's leading candidate obtained 41% of the vote, but the leading Liberal, José Azcona Hoyo, was declared President-elect since the combined Liberal vote was 51% against 45% for the National Party candidates.

*President:* José Azcona Hoyo (sworn in 27 Jan. 1986).

The legislature is a 134-member Congress of Deputies, composed following the elections of 24 Nov. 1985 of 46 deputies of the official *Partido Liberal*, 63 of the *Partido Nacional* and the remaining 25 seats were won by a rival Liberal Party faction and 2 smaller political parties.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of blue, white, blue, with 5 blue stars in the centre.

*National anthem:* Tu bandera (words by A. C. Coello; tune by C. Hartling).

*Local government:* Honduras comprises a Federal District (containing the cities of Tegucigalpa and Comayaguela) and 18 departments (each administered by an appointed Governor), sub-divided into 282 municipalities.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription is for approximately 24 months.

**Army.** The Army consists of 3 infantry brigades, 1 armed cavalry regiment, 1 artillery and 1 engineer battalion. Equipment includes 12 Scorpion light tanks. Strength (1989) 15,400 (11,000 conscripts). There is also a paramilitary Public Security Force of 5,000 men.

**Air Force.** Equipment includes 12 F-5E/F Tiger IIs and a few F-86 fighters, 12 A-37B jet light attack aircraft, 4 Spanish-built CASA C-101BB armed jet trainers, 4 four-engined Douglas and Lockheed transports, 6 C-47, 4 Israeli-built Arava and 2 Westwind transports, some helicopters and Tucano and T-41A trainers. Total strength was (1989) about 2,200 personnel, of whom many are civilian maintenance staff.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Honduras is a member of UN, OAS and CACM.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1988 revenue (in 1m. lempiras) was 2,165 (1987, 1,932); expenditure, (1987) 2,059.

Total external debt (1986) was (in 1m. lempiras), 4,882 and net reserves of foreign currency, 280.

**Currency.** The unit of the monetary system is the *lempira* also known as a *peso*, comprising 100 *centavos*. Notes are issued by the Banco Central de Honduras which has the sole right to issue, in denominations of 100, 50, 20, 10, 5, 2 and 1 *lempiras*. Coins in circulation are 50 and 20 *centavos* in silver, 10 and 5 *centavos* in cupro-nickel and 2 and 1 *centavos* in copper.

Rate of exchange, March 1989: £1 = 3.45 *lempiras*; US\$1 = 2 *lempiras*.

**Banking.** The central bank of issue is the Banco Central de Honduras. The Banco Atlántida has branches in Tegucigalpa, San Pedro Sula, Comayaguela, Puerto Cortés, La Ceiba, Tela, El Progreso, Choluteca and other towns. The Banco de Honduras which operates in many parts of the country is controlled by the Citibank. The Bank of London and Montreal has branches in Tegucigalpa, San Pedro Sula, Comayaguela and La Ceiba. The Central American Bank for Economic Integration has its head office in Tegucigalpa.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system has been legal since 1 April 1897, but English pounds and yards and the old Spanish system are still in use: 1 *vara* = 32 in.; 1 *manzana* (10,000 sq. *varas*) = 700 sq. metres; 1 *arroba* = 25 lb.; 1 *quintal* = 100 lb.; 1 *tonelada* = 2,000 lb.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 1,400m. kwh. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Mineral resources include gold, silver, lead, copper, zinc and iron ore, which are exported. There are probably reserves of other minerals which have not

yet been exploited. The Compañía Minera Los Angeles SA has a mine currently extracting lead, zinc and silver at Valle de Angeles (Department of Francisco Morazán).

**Agriculture.** Although Honduras is essentially an agricultural country, less than a quarter of the total land area is cultivated and by far the larger portion of this is on the Caribbean and Pacific coastal plains. Agriculture employs 58.9% of the working population and provides 80% of the exports. The main agricultural crops are: Bananas, coffee, sugar and tobacco. Meat and lobster were important exports in 1987.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 2,859,000; sheep, 7,000; pigs, 567,000; goats, 29,000; horses, 170,000; poultry, 6m.

**Forestry.** Forests cover nearly 45% of the total land area. Honduras has an abundance of hard- and soft-woods. Large stands of mahogany and other hardwoods—granadino, guayacán, walnut and rosewood—grow in the north-eastern part of the country, in the interior valleys, and near the southern coast. Stands of pine occur almost everywhere in the interior, but are severely damaged by bark beetle and fires. In 1985, total wood exports amounted to 200,000 cu. metres valued at 65.1m. lempiras.

**Fisheries.** Commercial fishing in territorial waters is restricted to Honduran nationals and Honduran companies in which the controlling share of the capital is owned by a Honduran national. Shrimps and lobsters are important catches; exports (1985) 102.4m. lempiras.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Small-scale local industries include beer and mineral waters, cement, flour, vegetable lard, coconut oil, sweets, cigarettes, cigars, textiles and clothing, panama hats, plastics, nails, matches, plywood, furniture, paper bags, soap, candles, fruit juices and household chemicals. Electricity from an important hydro-electric scheme, EL CAJON, built at Rio Lindo to serve the Central and North Coast regions, came on stream in 1985 (290 mw). The manufacturing industry employed 12% of the working population in 1985.

**Labour.** The organization of trade unions was begun in 1954 with the assistance of ORIT (Inter-American Regional Organization) sponsored by the USA trade unions. In 1972 there were 166 trade unions, of which only 119 were active, with about 67,956 members. A 'Charter of Labour' was granted in Feb. 1955 and an advanced Labour Code and Social Security Bill passed into law in May 1959. A Ministry of 'Labour, Social Assistance and the Middle Class' was created in 1955; the last four words of its title were expunged in 1957.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1986 were valued at 1,940m. lempiras and exports at 1,800m. lempiras.

Imports (1985) in 1m. lempiras: Fuel and lubricants, (1986) 565; consumer goods, 426; raw materials, 576; capital goods, 432.

Exports (1986) in 1m. lempiras: Bananas, 530; coffee, 612; timber, 74; refrigerated meats, 40; shrimp and lobster, 88.

Trade with main countries in 1m. lempiras (1986) was: USA, 1,518.8; Japan, 302.2; Federal Republic of Germany, 297.2; Italy, 157.1; Netherlands, 89; Belgium, 85.6; Spain, 55.2; UK, 49.

Total trade between Honduras and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	12,360	11,139	5,280	4,703	8,295
Exports and re-exports from UK	7,382	9,026	9,213	10,449	7,891

**Tourism.** There were 204,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Honduras is connected with Guatemala, El Salvador and Nicaragua by the Pan-American Highway. Out of a total of 17,022 km of road (1985), 2,102 were



asphalted and 8,366 were unpaved but of all-weather construction. There are good asphalted highways between Puerto Cortés in the north and Choluteca in the south passing through San Pedro Sula and Tegucigalpa with branches to Guatemala and El Salvador. In 1986 there were 114,675 motor vehicles.

**Railways.** Only 4 railways exist; they are confined to the north coastal region and are used mainly for transportation of bananas. Tegucigalpa, the capital, is not served by any railway, and there are no international railway connexions. The total railways operating in 1986 were 955 km of 1,067 mm and 914 mm gauge, which carried 1 m. passengers and 1.2 m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Over a large part of the country the aeroplane is the normal means of transport for both passengers and freight. There are international airports at Tegucigalpa, San Pedro Sula, La Ceiba and over 30 smaller airstrips in various parts of the country.

**Shipping.** Sailings to the Atlantic coast port of Puerto Cortés from Europe are frequent, mainly operated by the Harrison Line, Cia Generale Transatlantique, the Royal Netherlands Steamships Co., Hapag Lloyd and vessels owned or chartered by the Tela Railroad Co., a subsidiary of United Brands, and the Standard Fruit Co.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Government in April 1972 operated 18,845 km of telephone lines and 12,526 km of telegraph lines. Number of telephones in use, 1984, 37,278; telephone exchanges, 56; number of telegraph offices, 262; combined telephone and telegraph offices, 184; radio stations, 187; commercial television channels, 4. There were (1979) about 27,000 receivers in use. Transmission in colour commenced mid-1973.

**Cinemas** (1982). Cinemas numbered about 60 with seating capacity of some 60,000.

**Newspapers** (1984). The 4 most important daily papers are *El Heraldo* and *La Tribuna* in Tegucigalpa, *La Prensa* and *El Tiempo* in San Pedro Sula. Several others exist but their circulation is low and their influence is very limited.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Judicial power is vested in the Supreme Court, with 7 judges elected by the National Congress for 6 years; it appoints the judges of the courts of appeal, labour tribunals and the district attorneys who, in turn, name the justices of the peace.

**Religion.** Roman Catholicism is the prevailing religion, but the constitution guarantees freedom to all creeds, and the State does not contribute to the support of any. Evangelical movements from North America are fast spreading their influence.

**Education.** Instruction is free, compulsory (from 7 to 15 years of age) and secular. In 1983 the 6,422 primary schools had 704,612 children (19,300 teachers); the 354 secondary, normal and technical schools had 129,606 pupils (5,916 teachers); the teachers' training college had 3,220 students in 1985. In 1985, the three universities had a total of 30,616 students.

The illiteracy rate was 40% of those 10 years of age and older in 1983.

**Health.** In 1981 there were about 1,370 doctors. In 1987 there were 46 public hospitals and 25 private, with 5,601 beds, and 617 health centres.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Honduras in Great Britain (47 Manchester St., London, W1M 5PB)  
*Ambassador:* Max Velásquez-Díaz (accredited 7 June 1984).

Of Great Britain in Honduras (Edificio Palmira, 3<sup>er</sup> Piso, Colonia Palmira, Tegucigalpa)  
*Ambassador:* David Joy, CBE (accredited 5 Aug. 1987).

Of Honduras in the USA (4301 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Dr Jorge Ramón Hernández Alcerro.

Of the USA in Honduras (Ave. La Paz, Tegucigalpa)  
*Ambassador:* Everett Ellis Briggs.

Of Honduras to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Roberto Martínez Ordoñez.

### Further Reading

The *Anuario Estadístico* (latest issue, *Comercio Exterior de Honduras*, 1983) is published by the Dirección de Estadísticas y Censos, Tegucigalpa. *Director:* Elizabeth Zavala de Turcios.

*Monthly Bulletin.*—*Honduras en Cifras*. Banco Central de Honduras, 1980

Checchi, V. (and others), *Honduras, a Problem in Economic Development*. New York, 1959

Morris, J. A., *Honduras: Caudillo Politics and Military Rulers*. Boulder, 1984

Rubio Melhado, A., *Geografía General de la República de Honduras*. Tegucigalpa, 1953

# HONG KONG

Population: 5.66m. (1987)

GDP per capita: US\$8,227 (1987)

**HISTORY.** Hong Kong Island and the southern tip of the Kowloon peninsula were ceded by China to Britain after the first and second Anglo-Chinese Wars respectively by the Treaty of Nanking 1842 and the Convention of Peking 1860. Northern Kowloon was leased to Britain for 99 years by China in 1898. Since then, Hong Kong has been under British administration, except from Dec. 1941 to Aug. 1945 during the Japanese occupation. Talks began in Sept. 1982 between Britain and China over the future of Hong Kong after the lease expiry in 1997. On 19 Dec. 1984, the two countries signed a joint declaration whereby China would recover sovereignty over Hong Kong (including Hong Kong Island, Kowloon and the New Territories) from 1 July 1997 and establish it as a Special Administrative Region where the existing social and economic systems, and the present life-style, would remain unchanged for another 50 years.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Hong Kong island is 32 km east of the mouth of the Pearl River and 130 km south-east of Canton. The area of the island is 79.45 sq. km. It is separated from the mainland by a fine natural harbour. On the opposite side is the peninsula of Kowloon (11.44 sq. km), which was added to the Territory by the Convention of Peking, 1860. By a further convention, signed at Peking on 9 June 1898, about 979.23 sq. km, consisting of all the immediately adjacent mainland and numerous islands in the vicinity, were leased to Great Britain by China for 99 years. This area is known as the New Territories. Total area of the territory is 1,071 sq. km (including recent reclamations), a large part of it being steep and unproductive hillside. Some 40% of the territory is conserved as country parks. Shortage of land suitable for development for housing and industry is a serious problem. Since 1945, the Government has reclaimed about 2,305 hectares from the sea, principally from the seafronts of Hong Kong and Kowloon, facing the harbour. In the New Territories, the new town of Tsuen Wan, incorporating Tsuen Wan, Kwai Chung and Tsing Yi, already houses 700,000 of its planned ultimate population of 890,000. The construction of 7 further new towns at Sha Tin, Tuen Mun, Tai Po, Fanling, Yuen Long, Junk Bay and Tin Shui Wai is now well under-way, with planned ultimate population of about 710,000, 570,000, 305,000, 220,000, 190,000, 220,000 and 125,000 respectively.

The population was 5,613,000 at 1987 census. Estimate (31 Dec. 1987) 5,658,800. During the war years the population of Hong Kong fluctuated sharply. In Sept. 1945, at the end of the Japanese occupation, it was about 600,000. In mid-1950 it was estimated at 2.24m. Since 1976 the average annual growth rate has been 2.1%. Of the present population about 22.6% are under 15 years of age. About 59% of the population was born in Hong Kong. There were 9,532 Vietnamese refugees in Dec. 1987.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is warm sub-tropical being much affected by monsoons, the winter being cool and dry and the summer hot and humid, May to Sept. being the wettest months. Jan. 60°F (15.6°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 85" (2,162 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The administration is in the hands of a Governor, aided by an Executive Council, composed of the Chief Secretary, the Commander British Forces, the Financial Secretary, the Attorney-General (who are members *ex officio*) and such other members, as may be appointed by the Queen upon the Governor's nomination. In Nov. 1987 there were, in addition to the 4 *ex-officio* members, 1 nominated official and 9 appointed members. There is also a Legislative Council, presided over by the Governor. In 1989 it consists of 3 *ex-officio* members, namely the Chief Secretary, the Financial Secre-



tary, the Attorney-General, 7 official members, 20 appointed members and 26 elected members. Chinese and English are the official languages. District boards with elected members were set up in 1982 in the 19 administrative districts of Hong Kong. They have mainly an advisory role to perform and have a substantial influence over district affairs.

*Governor and C.-in-C.:* Sir David Wilson, KCMG.

*Commander British Forces:* Maj.-Gen. Garry Johnson, OBE, MC.

*Chief Secretary:* Sir David Ford, KBE, LVO, JP.

*Flag:* British Blue Ensign with the arms of the Territory on a white disc in the fly.

**DEFENCE.** The Hong Kong garrison, under the Commander British Forces, comprises units of all three services. Its principal rôle is to assist the Hong Kong Government in maintaining security and stability.

**Army.** The Army constitutes the bulk of the garrison. It comprises a UK battalion, based at Stanley Fort, and 3 Gurkha infantry battalions, all based in the New Territories; supporting units include the Queen's Gurkha Engineers, the Queen's Gurkha Signals, the Gurkha Transport Regiment, and 660 Squadron Army Air Corps.

**Navy.** The Naval Base is at HMS *Tamar*. The Hong Kong Squadron comprises 3 Peacock class patrol craft which are specially designed for patrol duties during typhoons and perform Search and Rescue operation in both Hong Kong waters and international waters in the South China Sea. The vessels, HMS *Peacock*, HMS *Plover*, HMS *Starling*, were built by Hall Russell, Aberdeen, Scotland in 1984–85.

**Air Force.** The Royal Air Force is based at Shek Kong. No. 28 (Army Co-operation) Squadron operates Wessex helicopters. In addition to its operational rôle in support of the army and navy, the RAF carries out search and rescue and medical evacuation tasks. It is also responsible for air traffic control services at Shek Kong, and provides a territory-wide air traffic advisory service.

**Auxiliary Forces.** The local auxiliary defence units, consisting of the Royal Hong Kong Regiment and the Royal Hong Kong Auxiliary Air Force, are administered by the Hong Kong Government, but, if called out, would come under the command of the Commander British Forces. The Royal Hong Kong Regiment (The Volunteers) has a strength of about 950. It is fully mobile and its rôle is to operate in support of regular army battalions stationed in Hong Kong. The Royal Hong Kong Auxiliary Air Force is intended mainly for internal security and air-sea rescue duties. It has a strength of about 171, operating a fleet of nine aircraft – 2 twin-engined Beech King Air 200s, 4 Slingsby T-67 trainers, and three Aérospatiale Dauphin 365C1 helicopters.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The public revenue and expenditure for financial years ending 31 March were as follows (in HK\$):

	1985–86	1986–87	1987–88	1988–89 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	41,241,000,000	43,870,000,000	55,641,000,000	53,740,000,000
Expenditure	39,798,200,000	39,928,000,000	44,022,000,000	49,976,000,000

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

The revenue is derived chiefly from rates, licences, tax on earnings and profits, land sales, duties on tobacco, hydrocarbon oils, methyl alcohol, intoxicating liquor, non-intoxicating liquor, non-alcoholic beverages and cosmetics and various duties.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the Hong Kong *dollar*. Banknotes (of denominations of \$10 upwards) are issued by the Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation, and the Standard Chartered Bank. Their combined note issue was, at 31 Dec. 1987, HK\$26,926m. Subsidiary currency consisting of HK\$5, HK\$2, HK\$1,

50-cent, 20-cent, 10-cent, 5-cent copper-nickel-alloy coins and 1-cent notes is issued by the Hong Kong Government and at 31 Dec. 1987 totalled HK\$1,841 m.

Since Oct. 1983 the HK\$ has been linked to the US\$1 at a fixed exchange rate of US\$1 = HK\$7.81. In March 1989, £1 = HK\$13.45.

The Hong Kong Government has issued a set of 14 Hong Kong commemorative HK\$1,000 gold coins over the years. The set comprises 2 coins commemorating the Queen's visit to Hong Kong in 1975 and in 1986 and 12 coins depicting the animals of the Chinese lunar calendar. The last coin in the lunar series was issued in 1987 to commemorate the Year of the Rabbit.

**Banking.** At 31 Dec. 1987: There were 154 banks licensed under the Banking Ordinance with a total of 1,387 banking offices, and 141 representative offices of foreign banks; bank deposits were HK\$641,683 m. and loans and advances HK\$666,072 m.; there were 232 deposit taking companies registered, and 33 licensed, under the Deposit-taking Companies Ordinance with total deposits of HK\$61,924.

**Weights and Measures.** Metric, British Imperial, Chinese and US units are all in current use in Hong Kong. However Government departments have now effectively adopted metric units; all new legislation uses metric terminology and existing legislation is being progressively metricated. Metrication is also proceeding in the private sector.

The statutory equivalent for the *chek* is 14 5/8 inches. The variation of the size of the *chek* with usage still persists in Hong Kong but the *chek* and derived units are now used much less than in the past.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 20,687 m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Water.** The provision of sufficient reservoir capacity to store the summer rainfall in order to meet supply requirements has always been a serious problem. Over the years no less than 17 impounding reservoirs have been constructed with a total capacity of 586 m. cu. metres. The major among these are the Plover Cove Reservoir (230 m. cu. metres) finally completed in 1973 and the High Island Reservoir (280 m. cu. metres) completed in 1978, both involving the conversion of sea water inlets into fresh water lakes.

There are no sites remaining in Hong Kong suitable for development as storage reservoirs. Consequently the purchase of water from China has been of increasing importance and the future needs of Hong Kong will be met to a large extent from this source. In 1987 water purchased from China was in the order of 417 m. cu. metres which represents over 50% of Hong Kong's demand. The agreement with China allows for annual increases up to a total figure of 620 m. cu. metres per annum by 1994-95 which will represent around 60% of Hong Kong's demand.

These resources can be further supplemented when necessary by up to 181,000 cu. metres of fresh water a day from a desalting plant completed in 1976 and now considered as a reserve resource.

**Agriculture.** Only 9% of the total land area is suitable for crop farming and most vegetables are produced through intensive market gardening cultivation, with 34% self-sufficiency. In 1987, 141,000 tonnes of vegetables and 2,350 tonnes of fruit were produced. Poultry production was 45,300 tonnes, with 39% self-sufficiency. Livestock (1987): Cattle, 790; pigs, 660,000.

**Fisheries.** The fishing fleet of 5,000 vessels supplies 81% of fresh marine fish consumed locally. In 1987 the total catch was 217,920 tonnes, valued at HK\$2,024 m. Inland freshwater farming and coastal marine farming provided 9,080 tonnes of freshwater fish valued at HK\$276 m. and 2,870 tonnes of marine products valued at HK\$187 m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** An economic policy based on free enterprise and free trade; an industrious work force; an efficient and aggressive commercial infrastructure;

modern and efficient sea-port (including container shipping terminals) and airport facilities; its geographical position relative to markets in North America and its traditional trading links with Britain have all contributed to Hong Kong's success as a modern industrial territory.

In Sept. 1987, there were 50,409 factories employing 875,250 people out of a total population of over 5.6m. The type of factory involved ranges from the small sub-contractor type to large highly complex modern establishments. Given the scarcity of land it is most common for light industry to operate in multi-storey buildings specially designed for this purpose. The main industry is textiles and clothing, which employed 43% of the total industrial workforce and accounted for 42% of total domestic exports in 1987. Other major light manufacturing industries include electronic products, clocks and watches, toys, plastic products, electrical products, metalware, footwear, cameras and travel goods. Heavy industry includes ship-building, ship-repairing, aircraft engineering and the manufacture of machinery.

**Commerce.** Hong Kong's industries are mainly export oriented. The total value of domestic exports in 1987 was HK\$195,254m. The major markets were USA (37.3%), China (14.3%), Federal Republic of Germany (7.6%), UK (6.6%), Japan (4.9%), Canada (2.9%), Netherlands (2.1%) and Singapore (2%). There is also a sizeable and flourishing entrepôt trade which accounted for another HK\$182,780m. in 1987.

The total value of imports in 1987 was HK\$377,948m., mainly from China (31.1%), Japan (19%), Taiwan (8.8%), USA (8.5%), Republic of Korea (4.5%) and Singapore (3.8%).

The chief import items were manufactured goods (28.5%), machinery and transport equipment (26%), chemicals (8.1%), foodstuffs (6.8%), mineral fuel, lubricants and related materials (2.5%).

Duties are levied only on tobacco, hydrocarbon oils, methyl alcohol, alcoholic liquors, non-alcoholic beverages and cosmetics, whether imported into or manufactured in Hong Kong for local consumption.

All imports (apart from foodstuffs, which are subject to a flat declaration charge irrespective of the value of the consignment) and exports are subject to an *ad valorem* declaration charge at the rate of HK50 cents for every \$1,000 value (or part thereof) of the goods shipped.

Visible trade normally carries an adverse balance which is offset by a favourable balance from exchange, shipping and insurance transactions, an inflow of capital, ship-repairing, a flourishing tourist industry, etc.

Hong Kong has a free exchange market. Foreign merchants may remit profits or repatriate capital. Import and export controls are kept to the minimum, consistent with strategic requirements.

Total trade between Hong Kong and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling) is given as follows:

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,266,965	1,175,984	1,530,786	1,531,681	1,788,631
Exports and re-exports from UK	897,419	949,180	960,956	1,013,038	1,030,725

**Tourism.** 4.5m. tourists spent HK\$25,437m. in Hong Kong during 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In June 1988 there were 1,409.7 km of roads, distributed as follows: Hong Kong Island, 388.2; Kowloon, 368.2, and New Territories, 653.3. A cross-harbour tunnel, 1.8 km in length, opened to traffic in Aug. 1972, now links Hong Kong Island with the Kowloon peninsula. The 1.4 km twin-tube Lion Rock Tunnel, which links Kowloon with Sha Tin New Town and other areas of the north-eastern New Territories, became fully operational in Oct. 1978. The 1.8 km twin-tube Aberdeen Tunnel, which connects Aberdeen and Wanchai, became operational in March 1983. A 34 km Light Railway Transit System was scheduled for late 1988 and will connect Tuen Mun and Yuen Long in the New Territories.



**Railways.** There is an electric tramway with a total track length of 30.4 km, and a cable tramway connecting the Peak district with the lower levels in Victoria. The electrified Kowloon-Canton Railway runs for 34 km from the terminus at Hung Hom in Kowloon to the border point at Lo Wu. It carried 136m. passengers and 4.6m. tonnes of freight in 1987. A light rail system operated by KCR opened in the Tuen Mun area in late 1988.

An underground Mass Transit Railway system, comprising 38 km with 37 stations, is now in operation. The system consists of three lines, one linking the Central District of Hong Kong Island with Tsuen Wan in the west of Kowloon, the second linking Kwun Tong in East Kowloon with Yau Ma Tei in Nathan Road and the third Island line links Sheung Wan and Chai Wan. A second cross-harbour line is under construction linking Kwun Tong and Quarry Bay. It carried 593m. passengers in 1987.

**Aviation.** Hong Kong International Airport is situated on the north shore of Kowloon Bay. It is regularly used by some 38 airlines and many charter airlines which provide frequent services throughout the Far East to Europe, North America, Africa, the Middle East, Australia and New Zealand. British Airways operates 7 flights per week via India or the Gulf to the UK. Cathay Pacific Airways, one of the two Hong Kong-based airlines, operates more than 400 passenger and cargo services to Europe, the Far and Middle East, Australia and North America weekly. Hong Kong Dragon Airlines Ltd, which was set up in July 1985, operates B-737 non-scheduled services between Hong Kong and a number of cities in Asia, the People's Republic of China and Micronesia. British Caledonian Airways operates scheduled services on the Hong Kong to London route. About 1,000 scheduled flights are operated weekly to and from Hong Kong by various airlines. In 1987, 73,370 aircraft arrived and departed on international flights, carrying 12m. passengers and 610,565 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** The port of Hong Kong, which ranks among the top three container ports in the world, handled 3.46m. twenty-foot equivalent units in 1987. The Kwai Chung Container Port has seven berths with more than 2,300 metres of quay backed by about 114 hectares of cargo handling area. In 1987, some 15,241 ocean-going vessels called at Hong Kong and loaded and discharged some 70m. tonnes of cargo. This included 47m. tonnes of general goods, 48% of which was containerized cargo.

**Telecommunications, Post and Broadcasting.** There were 103 post offices in 1987; postal revenue totalled HK\$1,240.6m.; expenditure, HK\$857m. in the 1987-88 financial year; 685m. letters and parcels were handled. Telephone service is provided by the Hong Kong Telephone Co. Ltd., a member of the Cable and Wireless Worldwide Communications Group. It provides local, and in association with Cable and Wireless (HK) Ltd., international voice, data and facsimile transmission services for Hong Kong. At 31 Dec. 1987 there were over 2.6m. telephones served by 2m. lines. Cable and Wireless (Hong Kong) Ltd, which is owned jointly by Cable and Wireless PLC and the Hong Kong Government, provides the international telecommunication services as well as local telegram and telex services. These include public telegram, telex, telephone, television programmes transmission and reception, leased circuits, facsimile, switched data, ship-shore and air-ground communications. International facilities are provided through submarine cables, microwave and satellite radio systems.

There is a government broadcasting station, Radio Television Hong Kong, with daily transmissions in English and Chinese. A commercial station, the Commercial Broadcasting Co. Ltd, transmits daily in English and Cantonese. Two radio stations operate 8 channels with 4 providing 24-hour service.

Television Broadcasts Ltd and Asia Television Ltd transmit commercial television in English and Chinese on 4 channels, in colour.

**Cinemas.** In June 1988 there were 135 cinemas with a seating capacity in excess of 110,000.

**Newspapers.** In June 1988 there were 68 daily or weekly newspapers, registered and in circulation, including 14 English-language papers, one bilingual paper, 52 Chinese-language dailies, one Japanese-language paper and a number of news agency bulletins.

## JUSTICE, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court which comprises the Court of Appeal and the High Court. While the Court of Appeal hears appeals on all matters, civil and criminal from the lower courts, the High Court has unlimited jurisdiction in both civil and criminal matters including bankruptcy, company winding-up, adoptions, probate and lunacy matters. The District Court has civil jurisdiction to hear monetary claims up to HK\$60,000 or, where the claims are for recovery of land, the annual rent or rateable value does not exceed HK\$45,000. In its criminal jurisdiction, it may try more serious offences except murder, manslaughter and rape; the maximum term of imprisonment it can impose is seven years. The Magistrates' Court exercises criminal jurisdiction over a wide range of indictable and summary offences. Its powers of punishment are generally restricted to a maximum of two years' imprisonment, or a fine of HK\$10,000, though cumulative sentences of imprisonment up to three years may be imposed. The Coroner's Court inquires into the identity of a deceased person and the cause of death. The Juvenile Court has jurisdiction to hear charges against young people aged under 16 for any offence other than homicide. Children under the age of seven are not deemed to have reached the age of criminal responsibility. The Lands Tribunal determines on statutory claims for compensation over land and certain landlord and tenant matters. The Labour Tribunal provides inexpensive and speedy settlements to individual monetary claims arising from disputes between employers and employees. The Small Claims Tribunal deals with monetary claims involving amounts not exceeding HK\$15,000. The Obscene Articles Tribunal, established in 1987, has two judicial functions. It has exclusive jurisdiction to determine whether an article referred to it by a court or a magistrate is an obscene or indecent article and where the matter publicly displayed is indecent and it also has power to classify an article as Class I (neither obscene or indecent), Class II (an indecent article) or Class III (an obscene article).

**Police.** At the end of 1987, the establishment of the Royal Hong Kong Police Force was 26,600. In addition, there were over 5,800 auxiliary officers. During the year, 82,914 crimes were reported. The overall detection rate was 46.2% and a total of 37,561 people were arrested and prosecuted.

The Marine Police is responsible for patrolling some 1,850 sq. km of territorial waters and involved in the control of some 33,000 local craft with a maritime population of between 50,000 and 60,000. At the end of 1987, it consisted of a disciplined staff of more than 2,260 and a fleet of over 120 vessels.

**Education.** The majority of schools have to be registered with the Education Department under the Education Ordinance. They are required to comply with regulations as to staff, building, fire and health requirements. From Sept. 1971, free and compulsory primary education was introduced in government and the majority of government-aided schools. Free junior secondary education of 3 years' duration was introduced in 1978 and it was made compulsory in Sept. 1979.

In March 1988 there were 225,108 pupils in kindergartens (all private), another 534,309 in primary schools and 446,484 in secondary schools.

There are 8 technical institutes with a total enrolment of 53,200, 1 technical teachers' college and 3 colleges of education with a total enrolment of 5,511.

The University of Hong Kong had 6,860 undergraduates in 1987 and the Chinese University of Hong Kong, inaugurated in Oct. 1963, had 6,030 undergraduates. The Hong Kong Polytechnic, 1987, had a total of 26,440 students. In Oct. 1984, the City Polytechnic was opened and had a total of 5,140 students in 1986.

**Health.** In Feb. 1988 there were 5,380 doctors and about 24,560 hospital beds.

**Social Security.** The Government co-ordinates and implements expanding programmes in social welfare, which include social security, family services, child care, services for the elderly, youth and community work, probation and corrections and rehabilitation. 155 voluntary welfare agencies are subsidised by public funds.

The Government gives non-contributory cash assistance to needy families, unemployed able-bodied adults, the severely disabled and the elderly. Caseload in July 1988 totalled 376,520. Victims of natural disasters, crimes of violence and traffic accidents are financially assisted.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Census and Statistics Department is responsible for the preparation and collation of Government statistics. These statistics are published mainly in the *Hong Kong Monthly Digest of Statistics* which is also available in a collected annual edition. The Department also publishes monthly trade statistics, economic indicators, annual review of overseas trade, etc. Statistical information is also published in the annual reports of Government departments. *Hong Kong 1988*, and other government publications are available from the Hong Kong Government Publications Centre, GPO Building, Connaught Place, Hong Kong, and the Hong Kong Government Office in London, 6 Grafton Street, London, W1X 3LB.

The Hong Kong Trade Development Council, Connaught Centre, Connaught Place, Hong Kong, issues a monthly *Hong Kong Enterprise* and other publications.

*Hong Kong 1988.* Hong Kong Government Press, 1988

Beazer, W. F., *The Commercial Future of Hong Kong*. New York, 1978

Benton, G., *The Hong Kong Crisis*. London, 1983

Bonavia, D., *Hong Kong 1997*. London, 1984

Cheng, J. Y. S. (ed.) *Hong Kong: In Search of a Future*. OUP, 1984

Chill, H., et al (eds.) *The Future of Hong Kong: Toward 1997 and Beyond*. Westport, 1987

Endacott, G. B., *A History of Hong Kong*. 2nd ed. OUP, 1973.—*Government and People in Hong Kong, 1841–1962. A Constitutional History*. OUP, 1965

Hopkins, K., *Hong Kong: The Industrial Colony*. OUP, 1971

Morris, J., *Hong Kong: Xianggang*. London, 1988

Tregear, E. R., *Land Use in Hong Kong*. Hong Kong Univ. Press, 1958.—*Hong Kong Gazetteer*. Hong Kong Univ. Press, 1958.—*The Development of Hong Kong as Told in Maps*. Hong Kong Univ. Press, 1959

Youngson, A. J., *Hong Kong: Economic Growth and Policy*. OUP, 1982



# HUNGARY

*Capital:* Budapest

*Population:* 10.6m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,010 (1986)

## Magyar Népköztársaság

**HISTORY.** Hungary first became an independent kingdom in 1001. For events in Hungary since 1918 *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1945, pp. 1006-7, and 1957, p. 1096.

On 23 Oct. 1956 an anti-Stalinist revolution broke out, and the newly formed coalition government of Imre Nagy on 1 Nov. withdrew from the Warsaw Pact and asked the UN for protection. János Kádár, formed a counter-government on 3 Nov. and asked the USSR for support.

Russian troops suppressed the revolution and abducted Nagy and his Ministers; Nagy was secretly executed in 1958.

On 7 Sept. 1967 a second Soviet-Hungarian treaty of friendship was concluded for 20 years with subsequent automatic 5-year renewals.

In 1978 the crown of St Stephen, the symbol of Hungarian nationhood, which had been in US hands since 1945, was returned to Hungary.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Hungary is bounded north by Czechoslovakia, north-east by the USSR, east by Romania, south by Yugoslavia and west by Austria. The peace treaty of 10 Feb. 1947 restored the frontiers as of 1 Jan. 1938. The area of Hungary is 93,032 sq. km (35,911 sq. miles).

The official language is Hungarian (Magyar), which is a member of the Finno-Ugrian group.

At the census of 1 Jan. 1980 the population was 10,709,550 (5,195,300 males). Population in 1988: 10,604,000 (males, 5,116,000). Ethnic composition, 1984: Hungarians, 96.6%; Germans, 1.6%; Slovaks, 1.1%; Romanians, 0.2%; others, 0.5%. There were 0.32m. Gypsies in 1985. A Gypsy Council was set up in 1985.

59% of the population is urban (20% in Budapest). Population density, 114 per sq. km. Birth rate, 1987, 11.8 per 1,000; death rate, 13.4 per 1,000. Since 1981 the population has been decreasing, by 1.6 per 1,000 in 1987; expectation of life (1985): males, 66; females, 74. There is a world-wide Hungarian diaspora, of 1.5m. in 1988 (730,000 in US; 220,000 in Israel; 140,000 in Canada), and Hungarian minorities (3.5m. in 1988) in Romania, Yugoslavia and Czechoslovakia.

Vital statistics, 1987: Births, 125,736; marriages, 66,037 (of which 20,700 remarriages); divorces, 30,700; deaths, 142,455; abortions, 84,500 (approx.); infant mortality, 17.3 per 1,000 live births.

Area (in sq. km) and population (in 1,000) of counties and county towns:

<i>Counties (1988)</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Chieftown (1988)</i>	<i>Population</i>
Baranya	4,487	434	Pécs	182
Bács-Kiskun	8,362	553	Kecskemét	105
Békés	5,632	416	Békéscsaba	71
Borsod-Abaúj-Zemplén	7,247	779	Miskolc	210
Csongrád	4,263	457	Szeged	188
Fejér	4,373	426	Székesfehérvár	113
Győr-Sopron	4,012	426	Győr	131
Hajdú-Bihar	6,211	549	Debrecen	217
Heves	3,637	338	Eger	67
Komárom	2,251	320	Tatabánya	76
Nógrád	2,544	229	Salgótarján	49
Pest	6,394	988	Budapest	2,104
Somogy	6,036	349	Kaposvár	74
Szabolcs-Szatmár	5,938	570	Nyíregyháza	119
Szolnok	5,607	428	Szolnok	81
Tolna	3,704	263	Szekszárd	39
Vas	3,337	277	Szombathely	87
Veszprém	4,689	387	Veszprém	66
Zala	3,784	311	Zalaegerszeg	63
Budapest	525	2,104	(has county status)	

**CLIMATE.** A humid continental climate, with warm summers and cold winters. Precipitation is generally greater in summer, with thunderstorms. Dry, clear weather is likely in autumn, but spring is damp and both seasons are of short duration. Budapest. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 71°F (21.5°C). Annual rainfall 25" (625 mm). Pécs. Jan. 30°F (-0.7°C), July 71°F (21.5°C). Annual rainfall 26.4" (661 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 1 Feb. 1946 the National Assembly proclaimed a republic.

The present People's Republic was established by the constitution of 18 Aug. 1949 which vests supreme power in Parliament. Parliament elects a Presidential Council, which exercises the functions of Parliament between sessions. The 1949 Constitution was amended in 1972. Citizens are stated to have both indirect (through elected representatives) and direct (through local and enterprise councils) democratic rights. State and co-operative property are recognized as co-existing with equal status. Personal property is 'recognized and protected' up to the limit set by law (this includes for private artisans and small companies places of business and machinery). In Jan. 1989 a reform programme involving electoral law, press law and the right to strike and form associations culminating in the enactment of a new constitution in 1990, was approved by Parliament.

Ethnic minorities have equal rights and education in their own tongue.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, green.

*National anthem:* God bless the Hungarians—Isten áldd meg a magyart (words by Ferenc Kölcsey, tune by Ferenc Erkel).

*Chairman of the Presidential Council (Head of State):* Bruno Straub (not a Communist), appointed June 1988. *Deputy Chairmen:* István Sárlos, Rezső Trautmann.

In 1949 the Hungarian Working People's Party (Communists), the Smallholders' Party, the National Peasant Party, the Trade Union Federation, the Association of Working Peasants, the Democratic Women's Association and the Federation of Working Youth were merged in the Hungarian People's Independence Front. In 1954 a new comprehensive organization was formed, the People's Patriotic Front (PPF). The Communist Youth Association (Kisz) had 912,000 members in 1986.

The Communist Party was reorganized after the 1956 revolution and changed its name to 'Hungarian Socialist Workers' Party'. It had 888,000 members in 1988. János Kádár and other leaders associated with him were replaced in 1988. The Party Politburo in March 1989: Károly Grósz, (*General Secretary*); János Berecz; Judit Cséhak; Csaba Hámori; Pál Iványi; János Lukács; Miklós Németh; Rezső Nyers; Imre Pozsgay; István Szabó; Ilona Tatai.

Prominent members of the Government in March 1989 were:

*Prime Minister:* Miklós Németh.

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Imre Pozsgay, Péter Medgyessy (*Chairman, Planning and Economy Committee*). *Finance:* Miklós Villányi. *Foreign Affairs:* Péter Várkonyi. *Interior:* Dr István Horváth. *Chairman, National Planning Office:* János Hoos. *Defence:* Col.-Gen. Ferenc Kárpáti. *Justice:* Kálmán Kulcsár. *Environment:* László Maróthy. *Health and Social Affairs:* Judit Cséhak. *Minister of State for Economic Affairs:* Rezső Nyers. *Trade:* Tamás Beck.

Parliament consists of 387 deputies, elected for a 5-year term by all citizens over 18 years. The Speaker is István Stáding.

The right to select candidates is vested solely in pre-election nomination meetings open to all voters. In order to stand candidates must receive one-third of the votes of those present. Since 1983 more than one candidate must stand in each constituency. All candidates must support the policies of the PPF. To be elected candidates must gain at least 50% of the votes cast. Candidates who receive more than 25% of the votes become alternate deputies. In addition a 'national slate' of 35 prominent personalities is voted on by all citizens.

At the elections of 8 June 1985 93.9% of the 7,728,280 electors voted (97% in 1980) for the 762 candidates, including 71 not sponsored by the PPF, of whom 25 were elected. 5.4% of the votes were invalid, and 1.2% negative. 77% of those elect-

ed were Communist Party members. In 42 constituencies no candidate gained an absolute majority, and a second vote was taken on 22 June after new nomination meetings. Turnout here was 83%.

*Local Government.* Hungary is divided into 19 counties (*megyék*) and the capital city, Budapest, which has county status. Counties are sub-divided into towns and boroughs. These are administered by a hierarchy of local councils which in turn elect Executive Committees to carry on day-to-day administration. There are 1,507 local council constituencies. Elections are held at the same time as general elections. Members of county councils are elected by the lower councils. At the June 1985 elections 42,731 councillors and 30,885 alternate councillors were elected.

**DEFENCE.** The 1947 Treaty authorized Hungary to have an army up to a strength of 65,000 personnel, and an air force of 90 aircraft, of which not more than 70 may be combat types with a personnel strength of 5,000.

By a law of 1976 the Presidential Council may establish a National Defence Council which in times of war would exercise supreme control over defence.

Men between the ages of 18 and 23 are liable for 18 months' conscription in the Army, 24 months in the Air Force. Compulsory military service age-limits are 18 to 55 (18 to 45 women).

The security police (BKH) is controlled by the Ministry of the Interior.

The Workers' Militia is a para-military organization armed with automatic weapons. Strength (1988), 60,000.

Three Soviet divisions are stationed in Hungary.

**Army.** Hungary is divided into 4 army districts: Budapest, Debrecen, Kiskunfélegyháza, Pécs. The strength of the Army was (1989) 77,000 (including 45,000 conscripts). It is organized in 5 tank brigades, 10 motor rifle brigades, 1 artillery and 1 surface-to-surface missile brigade, 1 anti-aircraft regiment, 3 surface-to-air missile regiments and 1 airborne battalion. Equipment includes 1,200 T-54/-55, 100 T-72 and 100 PT-76 tanks.

**Navy.** The maritime wing of the Army in 1989 deployed 500 officers and men operating AN-1 mine-searching vessels, AM minesweepers and various patrol craft, transports, ice-breakers, tugs and bridging vessels.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is an integral part of the Army, with a strength (1989) of about 22,000 officers and men and 200 combat aircraft. The combat aircraft strength comprises 1 regiment of MiG-23 fighters, 1 of MiG-21 interceptors, 1 of Su-22 fighter-bombers, 1 of Su-25 ground attack aircraft, and a regiment of Mi-8 and Mi-24 armed helicopters. Transport units are equipped with An-2, An-24 and An-26 aircraft. Other types in service include Ka-26, Mi-2 and Mi-8 helicopters and L-29 Delfin trainers. 'Guideline' and 'Goa' surface-to-air missiles are also operational.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Hungary is a member of UN, the Warsaw Pact and Comecon and, since 1982, IMF and IBRD.

**External Debt.** Hungary settled its debt to the UK in 1967. By an agreement of 6 March 1973 Hungary is to meet US claims of US\$189m. arising from war damage and nationalization in 20 yearly instalments. Hungarian indebtedness to the West was some £13,700m. in 1989. A US\$400m. loan was made by IBRD in 1983.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 'New Economic Mechanism' introduced in 1968, allows decentralisation in planning and responsiveness to market forces. For details of this and previous economic plans see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1985-86. New forms of enterprise management were introduced in 1985, under which some 25% of enterprises will elect their own management and a further 50% will be run by enterprise councils. Remaining enterprises will continue to be state-administered. The



seventh 5-year plan covers 1986 to 1990. There were large price increases in 1983, 1985, 1987 and 1989. Income tax and VAT were introduced in Jan. 1988. Inflation was 18% in 1988. An austerity programme was adopted in July 1988.

**Budget.** The budget for calendar years was as follows (in 1,000 forints):

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	472,600	485,792	543,735	572,920	638,130	615,000	650,700
Expenditure	482,400	498,007	549,822	576,580	651,310	643,700	694,500

1986 revenue included (1,000m. forints): Payments by enterprises, 434.2; consumption tax, 103.1; payments by the population, 72.9. Expenditure included: Support of enterprises, 141.7; social security, 142.1; consumer price supports, 59.8; capital expenditure, 87.5. The defence budget was cut by 17% in 1989.

**Currency.** A decree of 26 July 1946 instituted a new monetary unit, the *forint* subdivided into 100 *fillér*. The rate of exchange (March 1989) 92.49 forints to the £1 sterling, 53.74 forints = US\$1. A uniform exchange rate was established in Oct. 1981 as a preliminary to the introduction of external, central-bank convertibility for foreign trade. Since 1983 the forint has been devalued several times by a total of 28%.

**Banking.** In 1987 a two-tier system was established. The National Bank remained the central state financial institution, responsible for the circulation of money and foreign currency exchange, but also became a central clearing bank, with general (but not operational) control over 5 new second-tier commercial banks and 10 specialized development banks. 9 other commercial banks were set up in 1985 to finance development. In 1987 the State Development Institute was established to issue Government bonds to cover the budgetary deficit. A stock exchange was opened in Jan. 1989.

The Hungarian International Trade Bank opened in London in 1973. In 1980 the Central European International Bank was set up in Budapest with 7 Western banks holding 66% of the shares. The National Savings Bank handles local government as well as personal accounts. Deposits in 1987: 286,600m. forints.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Sources of energy in 1987: Oil, 32.3%; gas, 27.6%; coal, 23.7%; others, 16.4%. Imported, 49.1%. Capacity of all power stations in 1987 was 7,253 mw. There is an 880-mw nuclear power station at Paks. A 750 kv power line links Albertirsa with the Soviet grid at Vinnitsa. 29,735m. kwh were produced in 1987 (10,985 kwh by nuclear power), and 12,610m. kwh imported. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Oil and natural gas have been found in the Szeged basin and in Zala county. Production in 1988: Oil, 1.9m. tonnes; gas (1987), 7,118m. cu. m. Length of pipeline for crude oil ('Friendship' I and II from USSR, section of the Adria oil pipeline from Rijeka to Czechoslovakia) and natural gas, 1987: 1,204 km and 4,308 km.

**Minerals.** Production in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Coal, 2,360; lignite, 7,223; brown coal, 13,261; bauxite, 3,101.

**Agriculture.** Agricultural land was collectivised in 1950. A law of 1968 permits collectives to own land, and guarantees individuals' rights to private plots. Collectives meet in a National Council of Agricultural Co-operatives.

In 1987 the agricultural area was (in 1,000 hectares) 6,511, of which 4,709 were arable, 1,222 meadows and pastures, and 241 orchards and vineyards.

In 1987 there were 1,262 collective farms with 5m. hectares of land (including 287,100 hectares of household plots) and 130 state farms with 910,400 hectares of land. The irrigated area was 143,000 hectares; 54,000 tractors were in use.

In 1985 state farms were transformed from state-administered into self-governing bodies under the Ministry of Agriculture.

## Production statistics (in 1,000 tonnes):

<i>Crops</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>Crops</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Wheat	6,555	5,744	5,674	Maize	6,619	7,024	6,987
Rye	164	169	185	Potatoes	975	812	694
Barley	1,039	845	781	Sugar-beet	4,072	3,764	4,224
Oats	130	121	95	Sunflower seed	673	855	787

Livestock in 1987 was (in 1,000 head) as follows: Cattle, 1,664; pigs, 8,216; poultry, 36,220; sheep, 2,336; horses, 88,000.

Livestock products (1987): Eggs, 4,210m.; milk, 2,690m. litres; wool, 10,200 tonnes; animals for slaughter, 2,234,000 tonnes.

The north shore of Lake Balaton and the Tokaj area are important wine-producing districts. Wine production in 1987 was 317m. litres.

**Forestry.** The area under forest in 1987 was 1.67m. hectares. 30,000 hectares were afforested and 8.2m. cu. metres of timber were cut.

**Fisheries.** There are fisheries in the rivers Danube and Tisza and Lake Balaton, and in 1984 there were 26,000 hectares of commercial fishponds. Catch in 1984: 38,976 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

## Industry. Production (in 1,000 tonnes):

	<i>1983</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Pig-iron	2,047	2,097	2,095	2,054	2,109
Crude steel	3,617	3,750	3,646	3,715	3,622
Rolled steel	2,820	2,953	2,863	2,903	2,825
Aluminium	74	74	74	74	74
Alumina	836	839	798	856	858
Cement	4,243	4,145	3,678	3,846	4,153
Artificial fertilizers	761	742	733	747	777
Synthetic materials (PVC, etc.)	344	385	389	423	539
Sulphuric acid	606	549	520	543	573
Sugar	476	407	483	421	448
Cotton cloth (1 m. sq. metres)	307	303	310	314	311
Woolen (1 m. sq. metres)	37	39	36	34	34
Silk and rayon (1 m. sq. metres)	55	57	59	58	58
Leather footwear (1 m. pairs)	44	45	45	42	39

By a law of 1986 creditors may proceed against insolvent companies which may be liquidated. Workers laid off receive 12 months' 'relocation support'.

**Labour.** In 1987 there were 4,885,200 wage-earners (2,248,000 female) in the following categories: Working-class, 61.4%; white-collar, 23.7%; co-operative peasantry, 8.3%; self-employed tradesmen, 4.6%. 4,619,100 worked in the socialist sector. Percentage distributions of the workforce: Industry, 31.2; agriculture, 19.3; social and cultural services, 12.5; trade, 10.5; transport and communications, 8.3; building, 7. A 40-hour 5-day week was introduced in 1984. Average monthly wages in 1987: 6,596 forints. Minimum wage in 1984: 2,000 forints. There were some 30,000 unemployed in 1988. Unemployment benefit for one year became payable from Jan. 1989. Retirement age: Men, 60; women, 55. Leave entitlement, 15-24 days in 1985.

**Trade Unions.** Membership of the official National Council of Trade Unions (*Chairman*: Sándor Nagy) was 4.9m. in 1984, 3.9m. in 1988. Several independent trade unions have been founded since May 1988.

**Commerce.** The economy is heavily dependent on foreign trade. Trade for calendar years (in 1 m. forints):

	<i>1981</i>	<i>1982</i>	<i>1983</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Imports	314,300	324,800	365,000	390,500	410,100	439,700	463,100
Exports	299,400	324,500	374,100	414,000	424,600	420,300	450,100

In 1987 Hungary's trade with communist countries (in 1,000m. forints): Imports, 241.8; exports, 247. In 1987 USSR was Hungary's major trading partner

(28.5% of imports, 32.7% of exports), ahead of the Federal Republic of Germany (13.9%, 9.8%) and the German Democratic Republic (6.4%, 5.6%).

Commodity structure of foreign trade (%), 1987:

	Imports		Exports	
	<i>Communist countries</i>	<i>Other countries</i>	<i>Communist countries</i>	<i>Other countries</i>
Fuels and electricity	28.9	6.0	0.5	6.4
Raw materials	12.6	11.7	2.3	10.7
Semi-finished products	13.1	32.3	9.8	25.8
Spare parts	8.1	13.2	10.4	3.8
Machinery and capital goods	21.3	14.5	47.0	12.2
Industrial consumer goods	12.9	11.6	16.4	16.6
Agricultural produce	0.8	4.2	3.6	8.9
Food industry products	2.3	6.5	9.8	15.6

All exports and imports require licensing by the Ministry of Foreign Trade, and may be handled by 29 specialized foreign-trade agencies. Enterprises may handle their own foreign trade relations, set up companies abroad and participate in foreign companies. Hard currency is available through the National Bank. Tax-free zones for foreign companies exporting their own products were established in 1983. The Marketexpo branch of the Hungarian National Market Research Institute will conduct research for foreign firms. The agency Interag acts for Western firms in Hungary.

Joint ventures with Western firms holding more than 50% of the capital are permitted, and may be declared duty-free zones. Foreign companies may set up offices in Hungary. In 1978 the US and Hungary signed a most-favoured-nation trade agreement. In 1988 a trade agreement was signed with the EEC which will lower quotas by 1995.

Total trade between Hungary and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	75,905	84,114	77,229	83,267	96,288
Exports and re-exports from UK	100,502	107,226	101,557	101,300	131,212

**Tourism.** In 1987, 18.95m. foreigners visited Hungary (5.43m. from the West), of whom 11.83m. were tourists (2.68m. from the West); and 7.2m. Hungarians travelled abroad (0.99m. to the West) of whom 6.51m. (0.74m.) were tourists. Restrictions on travel to the West were eased in Jan. 1988.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 29,699 km of roads, including motorways, 217 km; highways, 94 km and other first class main roads, 1,910 km. In 1987 passenger cars numbered 1,660,300 (1,619,100 private), lorries 174,997 and coaches and buses 26,893. 223m. tonnes of freight and 641m. passengers were transported by road in 1987 (excluding intra-urban passengers). In 1987 there were 19,842 road accidents with 1,573 fatalities.

**Railways.** Route length of public lines in 1987, 7,766 km, of which 1,920 km were electrified. 115m. tonnes of freight and 230m. passengers were carried.

**Aviation.** Hungarian Air Lines (Malév) operate from Ferihegy airport, 16 km from Budapest. Passengers carried, 1987, 1.3m. Malév has 22 aircraft and flies 39 routes (including one to UK). British Airways, PANAM, Air France, SABENA, Swissair, OS, Lufthansa and KLM as well as Aeroflot and East European lines have services to Budapest. TNT operates an express freight service.

**Shipping.** Permanently navigable waterways have a length of 1,688 km. The Hungarian Shipping Company (MAHART) has agencies at Amsterdam, Alexandria, Algiers, Beirut, Rijeka and Trieste. It has 17 sea-going ships. 4.7m. tonnes of cargo were carried in 1987 and 4.3m. passengers.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of post offices (1987), 2,584; number of telephones, 812,700 (556,000 private). TV licences, (1987) 2,958,000. *Magyar Rádió és Televízió* broadcasts 3 programmes on medium-waves and FM and also regional programmes, including transmissions in German, Romanian and Serbo-Croat. Two TV programmes are broadcast, averaging 101 hours a week in 1987. Colour



broadcasts are only transmitted in Budapest, using the SECAM system. Foreign commercials are accepted.

**Cinemas and Theatres** (1987). There were 3,279 cinemas; attendance 56m. 32 full-length feature films were made. There were 41 theatres; attendance 5-87m.

**Newspapers and Books.** In 1986 there were 29 dailies and 1,654 other periodicals. The Party daily is *Népszabadság* ('People's Freedom'). 7,804 book titles were published in 1987 in 97.9m. copies.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The administration of justice is the responsibility of the Procurator-General, who is elected by Parliament for a term of 6 years. Civil and criminal cases fall under the jurisdiction of the district courts, county courts and the Supreme Court in Budapest. Criminal proceedings are dealt with by district courts through 3-member councils and by county court and the Supreme Court in 5-member councils. A new Civil Code was adopted in 1978 and a new Criminal Code in 1979.

District Courts act only as courts of first instance; county courts as either courts of first instance or of appeal. The Supreme Court acts normally as an appeal court, but may act as a court of first instance in cases submitted to it by the Public Prosecutor. All courts, when acting as courts of first instance, consist of 1 professional judge and 2 lay assessors, and, as courts of appeal, of 3 professional judges. Local government Executive Committees may try petty offences.

District or county judges and assessors are elected by the district or county councils, all members of the Supreme Court by Parliament.

There are also military courts of the first instance. Military cases of the second instance go before the Supreme Court.

Judges are elected by the Presidential Council. 66,337 sentences were imposed on adults in 1987, including 29,308 of imprisonment. Juvenile convictions: 6,555.

**Religion.** There are 20 authorized religious denominations which share proportionally an annual state subsidy of 70m. forints. 8.5m. of the population professed a religious faith in 1976; the number of active church members was put between 1m. and 1.5m.

Senior church appointments require the consent of the Presidential Council. Lower ones are ratified by the State Office for Church Affairs. Certain appointments become valid if the Office makes no comment within 15 days, and for the most minor church appointments neither state consent nor prior notification is required. Ecclesiastics are required to take an oath of allegiance to the state.

In 1976 there were 5.25m. Roman Catholics with 4,400 churches, and 500,000 Uniates. In 1979 there were 3 seminaries and 1 Uniate seminary, a theological academy, and 8 secondary schools. There were 2,400 Roman Catholic priests in 1986. There are also lay co-operators of both sexes who perform some priestly duties. The Primate of Hungary is Archbishop László Pácskai, appointed Aug. 1986. There are 11 dioceses, all with bishops or archbishops. There is one Uniate bishopric.

In 1976 there were 2m. Calvinists with 4 dioceses, 1,300 ministers and 1,567 churches. There were 2 theological colleges (20% of students female) with 16 teachers, and 1 secondary school. There were 500,000 Lutherans with 16 dioceses, 374 ministers and 673 churches. There is a theological college with 6 teachers. The 10 denominations in the Association of Free Churches had 37,000 members, 230 ministers and 675 churches. There are 4 Orthodox denominations with 40,000 members in 1979. The Unitarian Church has 10,000 members, 11 ministers and 6 churches. In 1988 there were 80,000 Jews (825,000 in 1939) with 136 synagogues, 26 rabbis and a rabbinical college which enrolls 10 students a year.

**Education.** Education is free and compulsory from 6 to 14. Primary schooling ends at 14; thereafter education may be continued at secondary, secondary technical or secondary vocational schools, which offer diplomas entitling students to apply for higher education, or at vocational training schools which offer tradesmen's diplomas. Students at the latter may also take the secondary school diploma examinations after 2 years of evening or correspondence study.

In 1987–88 there were 4,786 kindergartens with 33,896 teachers and 398,325 pupils; 3,540 primary schools with 90,925 teachers and 1,277,300 pupils; 608 secondary schools with 19,184 teachers and 239,800 pupils; and 284 vocational training schools with 177,200 students and 11,651 teachers. There are 4 universities proper (Budapest, Pécs, Szeged, Debrecen), and 14 specialized universities (6 technical, 4 medical, 3 arts, 1 economics). At these and at 36 other institutions of higher education there were 66,700 students and 15,302 teachers.

*Libraries and Museums.* In 1987 there were 4,566 public and 4,754 trade union libraries. Major national libraries (1985): National Széchenyi, 6.3m. volumes; Budapest University, 3.4m.; Academy of Sciences, 1.7m.; National Technical Library and Documentation Centre, 1.4m. In 1987 there were 710 museums with 20.1m. visitors.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 35,423 doctors and dentists and 104,581 hospital beds.

**Social Security.** Medical treatment is free. Patients bear 15% of the cost of medicines. Sickness benefit is 75% of wages, old age pensions (at 60 for men, 55 for women) 60–70%. In 1987, 162,000m. forints were paid out in social insurance benefits including 23,182m. in family allowances, 13,400m. in sick pay and 110,055m. in pensions. There were 2.37m. pensioners in 1987. In 1986 family allowances were paid to 1,327,000 families. Monthly allowances (in forints) are: One child, 920; two, 2,440; three, 4,050; four, 5,400 (more for single parents).

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Hungary in Great Britain (35 Eaton Pl., London, SW1X 8BY)

*Ambassador:* Dr Mátyás Domokos (accredited 22 Nov. 1984).

Of Great Britain in Hungary (Harmincad Utca 6, Budapest V)

*Ambassador:* L. V. Appleyard, CMG.

Of Hungary in the USA (3910 Shoemaker St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Dr Vencel Hazi.

Of the USA in Hungary (Szabadság Tér 12, Budapest V)

*Ambassador:* Mark Palmer.

Of Hungary to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Ferenc Esztergalyos.

## Further Reading

*Statistikai Évkönyv.* Budapest, annual; since 1871, abridged English version, *Statistical Year-Book*

*Statistical Pocket Book of Hungary* (in English). Budapest, annual from 1959

*State Budget.* Budapest, annual from 1983

*Hungarian Digest.* Budapest, 6 a year from 1980

*The Hungarian Economy: a Quarterly Economic and Business Review.* Budapest, since 1972

*Hungary 66* (67 etc.). Budapest, annual from 1966

*Managers in Hungary: A Biographical Directory.* Budapest, 1986

*Marketing in Hungary.* Budapest, quarterly

*Quarterly Review of the National Bank of Hungary.* From 1983

*Information Hungary.* Budapest, 1980

*The Constitution of the Hungarian People's Republic.* Budapest, 1972

*The 13th Congress of the Hungarian Workers' Party, March 25–28, 1985.* Budapest, 1986

Andorka, R. and Bertalan, L. (eds.) *Economy and Society in Hungary.* Budapest, 1986

Bako, E., *Guide to Hungarian Studies.* 2 vols. Stanford Univ. Press, 1973

Batt, J., *Economic Reform and Political Change in Eastern Europe: A Comparison of the Czechoslovak and Hungarian Experiences.* Basingstoke, 1988

Berend, I. T. and Ranki, G., *Hungary: A Century of Economic Development.* New York and Newton Abbot, 1974.—*Underdevelopment and Economic Growth: Studies in Hungarian Social and Economic History.* Budapest, 1979.—*The Hungarian Economy in the Twentieth Century.* London, 1985

Bernat, T., (ed.) *An Economic Geography of Hungary.* Budapest, 1985

Bölköny, J., *Magyarország Kormányai, 1848–1975.* Budapest, 1978. [Lists governments and politicians]

- Brown, D. M., *Towards a Radical Democracy: The Political Economy of the Budapest School*. Cambridge, 1988
- Cave, M., *Alternative Approaches to Economic Planning*. London, 1981
- Fekete, J., *Back to the Realities: Reflections of a Hungarian Banker*. Budapest, 1982
- Gati, C., *Hungary and the Soviet Bloc*. Duke Univ. Press, 1986
- Hare, P. G., and others (eds.), *Hungary: a Decade of Economic Reform*. London, 1981
- Hegedüs, A., *The Structure of Socialist Society*. London, 1977
- Heinrich, H.-G., *Hungary: Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1986
- Kabdebó, T., *Hungary*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1980
- Kádár, J., *For a Socialist Hungary*. Budapest, 1974.—*Socialism and Democracy in Hungary*. Budapest, 1984.—*János Kádár*. Oxford, 1985
- Kovrig, B., *Communism in Hungary*. Stanford, 1979
- Kozma, F., *Economic Integration and Economic Strategy*. The Hague, 1982
- Kulesár K., *Contemporary Hungarian Society*. Budapest, 1984
- Lendvai, P., *Hungary: The Art of Survival*. London, 1989
- Macartney, C. A., *Hungary: A Short History*. London, 1962
- Németh, G. (ed.) *Hungary: A Comprehensive Guide*. Budapest, 1980
- Ország, L., *Hungarian-English Dictionary*. Budapest, 1977.—*English-Hungarian Dictionary*. Budapest, 1970
- Pamlényi, E. (ed.) *A History of Hungary*. Budapest, 1975
- Pécsi, M. and Sáfárvai, B., *Physical and Economic Geography of Hungary*. 2nd ed. Budapest, 1979
- Rába, A. and Schenk, K.-E., (eds.) *Investment System and Foreign Trade Implications in Hungary*. New York, 1987
- Szoboszlai, G. (ed.) *Politics and Public Administration in Hungary*. Budapest, 1985
- Vardy, S. B. and Vardy, A. H., (eds.) *Society in Change*. Boulder, 1983
- Vasary, I., *Beyond the Plan: Social Change in a Hungarian Village*. Boulder, 1987



# ICELAND

Capital: Reykjavík

Population: 247,357 (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$15,252 (1986)

## Lýðveldið Ísland

**HISTORY.** The first settlers came to Iceland in 874. Between 930 and 1264 Iceland was an independent republic, but by the 'Old Treaty' of 1263 the country recognized the rule of the King of Norway. In 1381 Iceland, together with Norway, came under the rule of the Danish kings, but when Norway was separated from Denmark in 1814, Iceland remained under the rule of Denmark. Since 1 Dec. 1918 it has been acknowledged as a sovereign state. It was united with Denmark only through the common sovereign until it was proclaimed an independent republic on 17 June 1944.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Iceland is a large island in the North Atlantic, close to the Arctic Circle, and comprises an area of about 103,000 sq. km (39,758 sq. miles), with its extreme northern point (the Rifstangi) lying in 66° 32' N. lat., and its most southerly point (Kötlutangi) in 63° 23' N. lat., not including the islands north and south of the land; if these are included, the country extends from 67° 10' N. (the Kolbeinsey) to 63° 17' N. (Surtsey, one of the Westman Islands). It stretches from 13° 30' (the Gerpir) to 24° 32' W. long. (Látrabjarg). The skerry *Hvalbakur* (The Whaleback) lies 13° 16' W. long.

There are 8 regions:

Region	Inhabited land (sq. km)	Mountain pasture (sq. km)	Waste- land (sq. km)	Total area (sq. km)	Popula- tion (1 Dec. 1987)
Capital area	1,266	716	—	1,982	137,941
Southwest Peninsula } West	5,011	3,415	275	8,711	14,603
Western Peninsula	4,130	3,698	1,652	9,470	10,217
Northland West	4,867	5,278	2,948	13,093	10,646
Northland East	9,890	6,727	5,751	22,368	25,925
East } South }	16,921	17,929	12,555	{ 21,991 25,214	13,096 19,993
Iceland	42,085	37,553	23,181	102,819	247,357

The census population (1980) was 229,187. In 1987, 24,771 were domiciled in rural districts and 222,586 in towns and villages (of over 200 inhabitants.) The population is almost entirely Icelandic.

In 1987 foreigners numbered 3,874; of these 1,042 were Danish, 736 US, 380 British, 296 Norwegian and 264 German nationals.

The capital, Reykjavík, had on 1 Dec. 1987, a population of 93,245; other towns were Akranes, 5,426; Akureyri, 13,856; Bolungarvík, 1,225; Dalvík, 1,393; Eskifjörður, 1,067; Garðabær, 6,549; Grindavík, 2,047; Hafnarfjörður, 13,780; Húsavík, 2,502; Ísafjörður, 3,460; Keflavík, 7,133; Kópavogur, 15,037; Neskaupstaður, 1,713; Njarðvík, 2,352; Ólafsfjörður, 1,181; Sauðárkrúkur, 2,473; Selfoss, 3,698; Seltjarnarnes, 3,859; Seyðisfjörður, 984; Siglufjörður, 1,895; Vestmannaeyjar, 4,699.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	Living births	Still-born	Marriages	Divorces	Deaths	Infant deaths
1985	3,856	9	1,252	543	1,656	22
1986	3,881	18	1,229	498	1,598	21
1987	4,193	15	1,160	477	1,725	30

The official language is Icelandic (*íslenska*).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is cool temperate oceanic and rather changeable, but mild for its latitude because of the Gulf Stream and prevailing S.W. winds. Precipitation is high in upland areas, mainly in the form of snow. Reykjavík. Jan. 34°F (1°C), July 52°F (11°C). Annual rainfall 34" (860 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 24 May 1944 the people of Iceland decided in a referendum to sever all ties with the Danish Crown. The voters were asked whether they were in favour of the abrogation of the Union Act, and whether they approved of the bill for a republican constitution: 70,725 voters were for severance of all political ties with Denmark and only 370 against it; 69,048 were in favour of the republican constitution, 1,042 against it and 2,505 votes were invalid. On 17 June 1944 the republic was formally proclaimed, and as the republic's first president the Alþingi elected Sveinn Björnsson for a 1-year term (re-elected 1945 and 1949; died 25 Jan. 1952). The President is now elected for a 4-year term.

*President of the Republic of Iceland:* Vigdís Finnbogadóttir (elected 29 June 1980, with 43,611 out of 129,049 valid votes, inaugurated 1 Aug. 1980); re-elected unopposed in 1984; re-elected in 1988 with 94% of the valid votes.

*National flag:* Blue with a red white-bordered Scandinavian cross.

*National anthem:* Ó Guð vors lands (words by M. Jochumsson, 1874; tune by S. Sveinbjörnsson).

The *Alþingi* (Parliament) is divided into two Houses, the Upper House and the Lower House. The former is composed of one-third of the members elected by the whole Alþingi in common sitting. The remaining two-thirds of the members form the Lower House. The members of the Alþingi receive payment for their services.

The budget bills must be laid before the two Houses in joint session, but all other bills can be introduced in either of the Houses. If the Houses do not agree, they assemble in a common sitting and the final decision is given by a majority of two-thirds of the voters, with the exception of budget bills, where a simple majority is sufficient. The ministers have free access to both Houses, but can vote only in the House of which they are members.

The electoral law enacted in 1984 provides for an Alþingi of 63 members. Of these, 54 seats are distributed among the 8 constituencies as follows: 14 seats are allotted to Reykjavík, 8 to Reykjanes (i.e. the Southwest excluding Reykjavík) and 5 or 6 to each of the remaining 6. From the 9 seats then left, 8 are divided beforehand among the constituencies according to the number of registered voters in the preceding elections. Finally, one seat is given to a constituency after the elections, to compensate the party with the fewest seats as compared to its number of votes.

At the elections held on 25 April 1987 the following parties were returned: Independence Party, 18; Progressives, 13; Social Democrats, 10; People's Alliance, 8; Citizen's Party, 7; Women's Alliance, 6; Association for Equality and Social Justice, 1.

The executive power is exercised under the President by the Cabinet. The coalition Cabinet, as constituted in Sept. 1988, was as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Steingrímur Hermannsson (Progress).

*Foreign Affairs:* Jón Baldvin Hannibalsson (Soc. Dem.). *Finance:* Ólafur Ragnar Grímsson (People's Alliance). *Social Affairs:* Jóhanna Sigurðardóttir (Soc. Dem.). *Fisheries, Justice and Church:* Halldór Ásgrímsson (Progress). *Agriculture and Communications:* Steingrímur J. Sigfússon (People's Alliance). *Health and Social Security:* Guðmundur Bjarnason (Progress). *Commerce, Energy and Industry:* Jón Sigurðsson (Soc. Dem.). *Education:* Svavar Gestsson (People's Alliance).

*Local Administration.* Iceland is divided into 216 communes, of which 28 have the status of towns, while the 188 remaining communes make up 23 counties (*sýslur*). The commune and county councils are elected by universal suffrage (men and women 18 years of age and over), in town and other urban communes by proportional representation, but in rural communes by simple majority. The county councils consist of one representative for each of the constituent communes, their purpose being the superintendence of local government within the county. Town councils and county councils come under the supervision of the Ministry of Social Affairs. For national government there are 27 divisions, consisting of towns and counties, single or combined, with the exception of Keflavik Airport. In the capital the different branches of national government are independent (courts, police,

customs), while in other national government divisions they are the charge of one official, who, in the case of counties, presides over the county council as well.

**DEFENCE.** Iceland possesses neither an army nor a navy. Under the North Atlantic Treaty, US forces are stationed in Iceland as the Iceland Defence Force. Three armed fishery protection vessels are maintained by the Icelandic National Coastguard, with 1 patrol aircraft and 2 helicopters. Coastguard Service personnel in 1989 totalled about 125 officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Iceland is a member of UN, EFTA, OECD, the Council of Europe, NATO and the Nordic Council.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Total revenue and expenditure for calendar years (in 1 m. kr.):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	10,328	16,282	22,088	28,746	40,176	52,324
Expenditure	9,479	17,717	20,474	30,617	46,374	53,582

Main items of the Treasury accounts for 1987 (in 1 m. kr.):

Revenue		Expenditure	
Direct taxes	6,381	Administration, justice and police	5,332
Indirect taxes	42,017	Foreign service	496
Other	3,926	Education, culture and State Church	8,683
		Health and social security	23,266
		Subsidies	1,657
		Agriculture	2,000
		Fisheries	1,250
		Manufacturing and energy	1,878
		Communications	3,642
		Other	5,378

Central government debt was on 31 Dec. 1987, 52,026m. kr, of which the foreign debt amounted to 29,995m. kr.

**Currency.** The Icelandic monetary units are the *króna*, pl. *krónur* and the *eyrir*, pl. *aurar*. There are 100 *aurar* to the *króna*. In March 1989, US\$1 = kr. 52.50; £1 = kr. 90.35. Note and coin circulation, 31 Dec. 1987, was 2,187m. kr.

**Banking.** By Act of 29 March 1961 the Central Bank of Iceland was established, which took over the central bank function up to that date exercised by the *Landsbanki Íslands* (The National Bank of Iceland, owned entirely by the State). Other banks are: *Búnaðarbanki Íslands* (the Agricultural Bank of Iceland), a state bank, founded in 1930; *Útvegsbanki Íslands* (the Fisheries Bank of Iceland Ltd), originally established by law in 1903 as the Bank of Iceland (*Íslandsbanki*); *Iðnaðarbanki Íslands* (Industrial Bank of Iceland Ltd), a joint-stock bank, established 1953, part of the shares being owned by the Government; *Verzlunarbanki Íslands* (Iceland Bank of Commerce Ltd), established in 1961; *Samvinnubanki Íslands* (The Icelandic Co-operative Bank), established in 1963; *Alþýðubankinn* (The People's Bank Ltd) established 1971. On 31 Dec. 1987 the accounts of the Central Bank balanced at 27,162m. kr.

At the end of 1987 there were 38 savings banks with deposits amounting to 10,619m. kr. and total deposits of the commercial banks amounted to 57,883m. kr.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is obligatory.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The installed capacity of public electrical power plants at the end of 1987 totalled 921,860 kw., of which 752,000 kw. comprised hydro-electric plants. Total electricity production in public-owned plants in 1987 amounted to 4,152m. kwh.; in privately-owned plants, 5m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.



**Agriculture.** Of the total area of Iceland, about six-sevenths is unproductive, but only about 1.3% is under cultivation, which is largely confined to hay, potatoes and turnips. In 1987 the total hay crop was 3,643,101 cu. metres; the crop of potatoes, 18,093 tonnes, and of turnips 1,100 tonnes. At the end of 1987 the livestock was as follows: Horses, 59,218; cattle, 69,029 (including 32,880 milch cows); sheep, 624,262; pigs, 3,351; poultry, 274,210.

**Fisheries.** Fishing vessels at the end of 1987 numbered 899 with a gross tonnage of 117,451. Total catch in 1986, 1,651,000 tonnes; 1987, 1,625,000 tonnes.

The Icelandic Government announced that the fishery limits off Iceland were extended from 12 to 50 nautical miles from Sept. 1972. An interim agreement for 2 years signed by the UK and Iceland in Nov. 1973 expired in Nov. 1975.

On 15 July 1975 the Icelandic Government issued a decree that from 15 Oct. 1975 the fishery limits of Iceland were extended from 50 to 200 nautical miles. The Icelandic Government maintain that this extension is necessary to protect the fish stocks in Icelandic waters because the fishing industry is of vital importance to the national economy.

**COMMERCE.** Total value of imports (c.i.f.) and exports (f.o.b.) in 1,000 kr.:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	20,605,978	26,780,309	37,600,289	45,905,230	61,231,629
Exports	18,632,993	23,556,960	33,749,626	44,967,770	53,053,078

Leading exports (in 1,000 kg and 1,000 kr.):

	1986		1987	
	Quantity	Value	Quantity	Value
Marine products	714,954	34,627,277	638,277	40,322,027
Aluminium	77,490	4,124,712	89,081	5,080,422
Ferro-silicon	64,990	1,334,417	71,656	1,472,594

Leading imports (in 1,000 tonnes and 1,000 kr.):

	1986		1987	
	Quantity	Value	Quantity	Value
Ships (number)	9	1,301,492	20	3,279,600
Fuel oil	89,339	457,500	79,326	367,600
Gas oils	253,244	1,729,800	285,975	1,812,900
Jet fuel	63,547	464,700	98,228	703,500
Cereals	14,102	245,500	15,602	239,500
Animal feed	52,549	450,900	53,178	475,000
Gasoline	116,804	877,700	118,511	828,800
Motor vehicles (number)	16,055	3,512,700	24,681	6,385,200
Fishing nets and other gear	841	336,900	1,032	410,100

Value of trade with principal countries for 3 years (in 1,000 kr.):

	1985		1986		1987	
	Imports (c.i.f.)	Exports (f.o.b.)	Imports (c.i.f.)	Exports (f.o.b.)	Imports (c.i.f.)	Exports (f.o.b.)
Austria	204,353	32,970	322,485	38,691	460,175	43,839
Belgium	897,870	422,846	1,058,839	430,997	1,600,741	632,743
Brazil	185,555	50,073	296,787	43,897	303,435	57,002
Canada	135,572	102,292	183,245	135,477	253,273	155,191
Czechoslovakia	97,819	74,240	153,404	57,619	222,441	52,707
Denmark	3,410,894	950,284	4,745,348	1,713,553	5,623,103	2,049,506
Faroe Islands	18,151	281,830	34,673	248,476	51,019	332,770
Finland	951,339	680,324	1,212,184	834,180	1,437,854	901,293
France	1,080,935	1,346,481	1,374,778	2,152,271	2,067,547	2,853,565
German Dem. Rep.	92,822	25,984	114,871	37,354	180,419	29,249
Germany, Fed. Rep.	4,984,664	2,810,308	6,964,772	4,079,811	9,309,949	5,301,154
Greece	19,157	291,544	25,188	391,881	47,455	544,769
Hungary	14,685	23,223	15,007	9,008	17,822	13,875
India	40,371	—	30,845	—	33,958	—
Ireland	94,784	28,442	124,155	55,962	182,098	96,422
Israel	34,801	12,498	23,963	15,206	29,488	4,277
Italy	978,963	611,296	1,334,697	1,329,494	1,922,360	1,612,898
Japan	1,631,711	1,672,187	2,993,567	2,147,361	5,012,566	4,139,386

	1985		1986		1987	
	<i>Imports</i> (c.i.f.)	<i>Exports</i> (f.o.b.)	<i>Imports</i> (c.i.f.)	<i>Exports</i> (f.o.b.)	<i>Imports</i> (c.i.f.)	<i>Exports</i> (f.o.b.)
Netherlands	3,354,926	485,754	3,923,719	508,010	4,956,247	493,084
Nigeria	1,054	27,853	269	774,918	416	796,702
Norway	2,854,835	715,865	3,322,749	1,153,656	5,052,542	957,056
Poland	66,295	247,996	82,972	446,297	532,591	483,555
Portugal	866,629	1,909,337	439,552	2,915,100	485,120	4,967,089
Spain	371,097	1,308,908	532,291	1,592,764	643,754	1,575,506
Sweden	2,994,644	384,590	4,099,720	1,097,525	5,032,051	1,014,228
Switzerland	417,820	1,082,207	503,762	1,425,111	659,240	1,429,739
USSR	3,016,431	2,271,996	2,607,005	1,924,609	2,573,564	1,932,899
UK	3,591,482	6,214,810	3,754,209	9,177,626	5,032,757	10,321,470
USA	2,557,771	9,118,359	3,208,469	9,770,811	4,367,065	9,677,945

Total trade between Iceland and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	86,104	128,281	173,140	178,314	198,365
Exports and re-exports from UK	64,242	76,194	73,640	84,866	87,100

**TOURISM.** There were 129,315 visitors to Iceland in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 Dec. 1987 the length of the public roads (including roads in towns) was 12,453 km. Of these 8,269 km were national main roads and 3,104 km were provincial roads. Total length of surfaced roads was 2,649 km. Motor vehicles registered at the end of 1987 numbered 134,469, of which 121,694 were passenger cars and 11,846 trucks; there were also 929 motor cycles.

**Aviation.** One large and some small companies maintain regular services between Reykjavík and various places in Iceland (the large one 1987: 275,575 passengers). The large company maintains regular services between Iceland and the UK, the Scandinavian countries, some other European countries and USA. In 1987 the company carried in scheduled foreign flights 597,199 passengers.

**Shipping.** Total registered vessels, 1,037 (187,829 GRT) on 31 Dec. 1987, of these 899 were sea-going fishing vessels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** At the end of 1986 the number of post offices was 137 and telephone and telegraph offices 111; number of telephone subscribers, 113,000. The State Broadcasting Service, *Ríkisútvarpid*, broadcasts 2 radio channels and 1 TV channel. On 1 Jan. 1986 the state monopoly on broadcasting was abolished by law and the field opened to others, if they fulfilled certain conditions. Besides *Ríkisútvarpid* 3 privately owned radio stations and 1 TV station were in operation in 1988. Number of licensed receivers (1987): Radio, about 83,000; television, about 75,000.

**Cinemas** (1987). In the capital area there were 7 cinemas (20 cinema halls) with a seating capacity of about 5,000.

**Newspapers** (1987). There are 6 daily newspapers, 5 in Reykjavík and one in Akureyri, with a combined circulation of about 100,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The lower courts of justice are those of the provincial magistrates (*sýslumenn*) and town judges (*bæjarfógetar*). From these there is an appeal to the Supreme Court (*hæstiréttur*) in Reykjavík, which has 8 judges.

**Religion.** The national church, and the only one endowed by the State, is Evangelical Lutheran. But there is complete religious liberty, and no civil disabilities are attached to those not of the national religion. The affairs of the national church are under the superintendence of a bishop. In 1987, 5,172 persons (2.1%) were Dissenters and 3,157 persons (1.3%) did not belong to any religious community.

**Education.** Compulsory education for children began in 1907, and a university was founded in Reykjavik in 1911. There is in Reykjavik a teachers' training college and a technical high school; various specialized institutions of learning and a number of second-level schools are scattered throughout the country. There are many part-time schools of cultural activities, including music.

Compulsory education comprises 9 classes, 7-15 years of age. After completion of a facultative 9th class, attended by 93%-95% of the relevant age group, there is access to further schooling free of charge. Some 53-74% of the age groups 16-19 years old attend schools. Around 15%-20% of each age group go into handicraft apprenticeship. About 30% pass matriculation examination, generally at the age of 20. Approximately one third-level student out of every four goes abroad for studies, two-thirds of them to Scandinavia, the rest mainly to English- and German-speaking countries.

Immatriation in Iceland in autumn 1987: Preceding the first level, 4,000. First-level (1st-6th class) 25,100. Second-level first stage (7th-9th class) 12,700. Second-level second stage (4-year courses) 13,900. Third-level studies, 4,700.

**Social Welfare.** The main body of the Icelandic social welfare legislation is consolidated in six main acts:

(i) *The social security legislation* (a) health insurance, including sickness benefits; (b) social security pensions, mainly consisting of old age pension, disablement pension and widows' pension, and also children's pension; (c) employment injuries insurance.

(ii) *The unemployment insurance legislation*, where daily allowances are paid to those who have met certain conditions.

(iii) *The subsistence legislation*. This is controlled by municipal government, and social assistance is granted under special circumstances, when payments from other sources are not sufficient.

(iv) *The tax legislation*. In 1975 family allowances were abolished and children's support included in the tax legislation, according to which a certain amount for each child in a family is subtracted from income taxes or paid out to the family.

(v) *The rehabilitation legislation*.

(vi) *Child and juvenile guidance*.

*Health insurance* covers the entire population. Citizenship is not demanded and there is no waiting period. Most hospitals are both municipally and state run, a few solely state run and all offer free medical help. Medical treatment out of hospitals is partly paid by the patient, the same applies to medicines, except medicines of life-long necessary use, which are paid in full by the health insurance. Dental care is free for the age groups 6-15, but is paid 75% for those five years or younger and the age group 16 but 50% for old age and disabled pensioners. Sickness benefits are paid to those who lose income because of periodical illness. The daily amount is fixed and paid from the 11th day of illness.

The pension system is composed of the public social security system and some 90 private pension funds. The social security system pays basic old age and disablement pensions of a fixed amount regardless of past or present income, as well as supplementary pensions to individuals with low present income. The pensions are index-linked, i.e. are changed in line with changes in wage and salary rates in the labour market. The private pension funds pay pensions that depend on past payments of premiums that are a fixed proportion of earnings. The payment of pension fund premiums is compulsory for all wage and salary earners. The pensions paid by the funds differ considerably between the individual funds, but are generally index-linked. In the public social security system, entitlement to old age and disablement pensions at the full rates is subject to the condition that the beneficiary has been resident in Iceland for 40 years at the age period of 16-67. For shorter period of residence, the benefits are reduced proportionally. Entitled to old age pension are all those who are 67 years old, and have been residents in Iceland for 3 years of the age period of 16-67. Entitled to disablement pension are those who have lost 75% of their working capacity and have been residents in Iceland for 3 years before



application or have had full working capacity at the time when they became residents. Old age and disablement pension are of equally high amount, in the year 1986 the total sum was 74,028 kr. for an individual. Married pensioners are paid 90% of two individuals' pensions. In addition to the basic amount, supplementary allowances are paid according to social circumstances and income possibilities. Widows' pensions are the same amount as old age and disablement pension, provided the applicant is over 60 when she becomes widowed. Women at the age 50–60 get reduced pension. Women under 50 are not entitled to widows' pensions.

The employment injuries insurance covers medical care, daily allowances, disablement pension and survivors' pension and is applicable to practically all employees.

All benefits within the above-mentioned laws shall go up in step with general wages within 6 months from their increase.

Social assistance is primarily municipal and granted in cases outside the social security legislation. Domestic assistance to old people and disabled is granted within this legislation, besides other services.

Child and juvenile guidance is performed by chosen committees according to special laws, such as home guidance and family assistance. In cases of parents' disablement the committees take over the guidance of the children involved.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Iceland in Great Britain (1 Eaton Terrace, London, SW1W 8EY)

*Ambassador:* Ólafur Egilsson (accredited 28 Nov. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Iceland (Laufásvegur 49, 101 Reykjavík)

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* Richard Best.

Of Iceland in the USA (2022 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Ingvi S. Ingvarsson.

Of the USA in Iceland (Laufásvegur 21, 101 Reykjavík)

*Ambassador:* L. Nicholas Ruwe.

Of Iceland to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Hans G. Andersen.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Statistical Bureau of Iceland, Hagstofa Íslands (Reykjavík) was founded in 1914. *Director:* Hallgrímur Snorrason. Its main publications are:

*Statistical Abstract.* (latest issue 1984)

*Hagskýrslur Íslands.* Statistics of Iceland (from 1912)

*Hagtiðindi* (Statistical Bulletin) (from 1916)

*Economic Statistics.* Central Bank of Iceland (quarterly from 1980)

*Icelandic Currency Reform January 1st 1981.* Central Bank of Iceland, 1980

*Heilbrigðisskýrslur.* Public Health in Iceland (latest issue for 1983; published 1986)

Cleasby, R., *An Icelandic-English Dictionary.* 2nd ed. Oxford, 1957

Foss, H. (ed.) *Directory of Iceland.* Annual. Reykjavík, 1907–40, 1948 ff.

Hermannsson, Halldór, *Islandica.* An annual relating to Iceland and the Fiske Icelandic Collection in Cornell University Library. Ithaca (from 1908)

Hood, J. C. F., *Icelandic Church Saga.* London, 1946

Horton, J. J., *Iceland.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983

Leaf, H., *Iceland Yesterday and Today.* London, 1949

Magnússon, S. A., *Northern Sphinx: Iceland and the Icelanders from the Settlement to the Present.* London, 1977

Nordal, J. and Kristinsson, V. (eds) *Iceland 1986.* Central Bank of Iceland, Reykjavík, 1987

Þórðarson, Matthías, *The Althing, Iceland's Thousand-Year-Old Parliament, 930–1930.* Reykjavík, 1930

Þorsteinsson, Þorsteinn, *Iceland, 1946: A Handbook Published on the 60th Anniversary of the National Bank of Iceland.* 4th ed. Reykjavík, 1946

Zoëga, G. T., *Íslensk-ensk (and Ensk-íslensk) orðabók.* 3rd ed. 2 vols. Reykjavík, 1932–51

*National Library:* Landsbókasafnið, Reykjavík, *Librarian:* Dr Finnþogi Guðmundsson.

# INDIA

*Capital:* New Delhi

*Population:* 748m. (1984)

*GDP per capita:* US\$270 (1986)

## Bharat

**HISTORY.** The Indus civilization was fully developed by c. 2500 B.C., and collapsed c. 1750 B.C. An Aryan civilization spread from the west as far as the Ganges valley by 500 B.C.; separate kingdoms were established and many of these were united under the Mauryan dynasty established by Chandragupta in c. 320 B.C. The Mauryan Empire was succeeded by numerous small kingdoms. The Gupta dynasty (A.D. 320–600) was followed by the first Arabic invasions of the north-west. Moslem, Hindu and Buddhist states developed together with frequent conflict until the establishment of the Mogul dynasty in 1526. The first settlements by the East India Company were made after 1600 and the company established a formal system of government for Bengal in 1700. During the decline of the Moguls frequent wars between the Company, the French and the native princes led to the Company's being brought under British Government control in 1784; the first Governor-General of India was appointed in 1786. The powers of the Company were abolished by the India Act, 1858, and its functions and forces transferred to the British Crown. Representative government was introduced in 1909, and the first parliament in 1919. The separate dominions of India and Pakistan became independent within the Commonwealth in 1947 and India became a republic in 1950.

**EVENTS.** In Aug. 1988 there was an earthquake in Bihar, affecting also West Bengal, and followed by widespread flooding.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** India is bounded north-west by Pakistan, north by China, Tibet, Nepal and Bhutan, east by Burma, south-east, south and south west by the Indian ocean. The far eastern states and territories are almost separated from the rest by Bangladesh as it extends northwards from the Bay of Bengal. The area of the Indian Union (excluding the Pakistan and China-occupied parts of Jammu and Kashmir) is 3,166,829 sq. km. Its population according to the 1981 census (preliminary figures) was 683,810,051 (excluding the occupied area of Jammu and Kashmir); this represents an increase of 24.8% since 1971. Sex ratio was 940 females per 1,000 males (929 in 1971); density of population, 221 per sq. km. About 23.7% of the population was urban in 1981 (in Maharashtra, 35%; in Himachal Pradesh, 7.7%).

Many births and deaths go unregistered. Data from certain areas of better registration and field studies suggest that the birth rate for 1987 was about 32 per 1,000 population, the death rate 14 per 1,000. In 1980 (estimate) the age-group 0–14 years represented 39.7% of the population and only 5.5% were over 60. In 1981 expectation of life for men was 52 years, for women 50.

Marriages and divorces are not registered. The minimum age for a civil marriage is 18 for women and 21 for men; for a sacramental marriage, 14 for girls and 18 for youths.

The main details of the census of 1 March 1971 and of 1 March 1981 are:

<i>Name of State</i>	<i>Land area in sq. km (1981)</i>	<i>Population</i>	
		1971	1981
<i>States</i>			
Andhra Pradesh	276,814	43,502,708	53,403,619
Assam	78,438	14,625,152	19,902,826
Bihar	173,876	56,353,369	69,823,154
Gujarat	195,984	26,697,475	33,960,905
Haryana	44,222	10,036,808	12,850,902
Himachal Pradesh	55,673	3,460,434	4,237,569
Jammu and Kashmir <sup>1</sup>	101,283	4,617,000	5,981,600
Karnataka	191,773	29,299,014	37,043,451

<sup>1</sup> Excludes the Pakistan-occupied area.

Name of State	Land area in sq. km (1981)	Population	
		1971	1981
Kerala	38,864	21,347,375	25,403,217
Madhya Pradesh	442,841	41,654,119	52,131,717
Maharashtra	307,762	50,412,235	62,693,898
Manipur	22,356	1,072,753	1,433,691
Meghalaya	22,489	1,011,699	1,327,824
Nagaland	16,527	516,449	773,281
Orissa	155,782	21,944,615	26,272,054
Punjab	50,362	13,551,060	16,669,755
Rajasthan	342,214	25,765,806	34,102,912
Sikkim	7,299	...	315,682
Tamil Nadu	130,069	41,199,168	48,297,456
Tripura	10,477	1,556,342	2,060,189
Uttar Pradesh	294,413	88,341,144	110,858,019
West Bengal	87,853	44,312,011	54,485,560
<i>Union Territories</i>			
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	8,293	115,133	188,254
Arunachal Pradesh <sup>1</sup>	83,578	467,511	628,050
Chandigarh	114	257,251	450,061
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	491	74,170	103,677
Daman and Diu	110	62,648	78,981
Delhi	1,485	4,065,698	6,196,414
Goa <sup>2</sup>	3,701	795,123	1,003,136
Lakshadweep	32	31,810	40,237
Mizoram <sup>1</sup>	21,087	332,390	487,774
Pondicherry	480	471,707	604,136
Grand total	3,166,829	547,949,809	683,810,051

<sup>1</sup> Achieved statehood 1986.<sup>2</sup> Achieved statehood 1987.

Greatest density occurs in Delhi (4,178 per sq. km), Chandigarh (3,948), Lakshadweep (1,257) and Pondicherry (1,228). The lowest occurs in Arunachal Pradesh (7).

There were (1981) 353,347,249 males and 330,462,802 females.

In 1981, 502m. were rural (c. 76%) and 156m. were urban.

Cities and Urban Agglomerations (with states in brackets) having more than 250,000 population at the 1981 census were (1,000):

Agra (U.P.)	770	Erode (T.N.)	275	Nasik (Mah.)	429
Ahmedabad (Guj.)	2,515	Faridabad		Patna (Bih.)	916
Ajmer (Raj.)	374	agglomeration	327	Pondicherry	251
Aligarh (U.P.)	320	Ghaziabad (U.P.)	292	Pune (Mah.)	1,685
Allahabad (U.P.)	642	Gorakhpur (U.P.)	306	Raipur (M.P.)	339
Amravati (Mah.)	261	Guntur (A.P.)	367	Rajahmundry (A.P.)	268
Amritsar (Pun.)	589	Gwalior (M.P.)	560	Rajkot (Guj.)	444
Asansol (W.B.)	365	Hubli-Dharwar (Kar.)	526	Ranchi (Bih.)	501
Aurangabad (Mah.)	316	Hyderabad (A.P.)	2,528	Rourkela (Ori.)	321
Bangalore (Kar.)	2,914	Indore (M.P.)	827	Saharanpur (U.P.)	294
Bareilly (U.P.)	438	Jabalpur (M.P.)	758	Salem (T.N.)	515
Belgaum (Kar.)	300	Jaipur (Raj.)	1,005	Sangli (Mah.)	269
Bhavnagar (Guj.)	308	Jalandhar (Pun.)	406	Sholapur (Mah.)	514
Bhopal (M.P.)	672	Jamnagar (Guj.)	317	Srinagar (J. & K.)	520 <sup>1</sup>
Bikaner (Raj.)	280	Jamshedpur (Bih.)	670	Surat (Guj.)	913
Bokaro Steel City (Bih.)	261	Jhansi (U.P.)	281	Thana (Mah.)	389
Bombay (Mah.)	8,227	Jodhpur (Raj.)	494	Tiruchirapalli (T.N.)	608
Calcutta (W.B.)	9,166	Kanpur (U.P.)	1,688	Tirunelveli (T.N.)	324
Calicut (Ker.)	546	Kolhapur (Mah.)	351	Trivandrum (Ker.)	520
Chandigarh (Ch.)	421	Kotah (Raj.)	347	Tuticorin (T.N.)	251
Cochin (Ker.)	686	Lucknow (U.P.)	1,007	Ujjain (M.P.)	282
Coimbatore (T.N.)	917	Ludhiana (Pun.)	606	Ullhasnagar (Mah.)	648
Cuttack (Ori.)	326	Madras (T.N.)	4,277	Vadodara (Guj.)	744
Dehra Dun (U.P.)	294	Madurai (T.N.)	904	Varanasi (U.P.)	794
Delhi	5,714	Mangalore (Kar.)	306	Vijayawada (A.P.)	545
Dhanbad (Bih.)	677	Meerut (U.P.)	538	Visakhapatnam (A.P.)	594
Durgapur (W.B.)	306	Moradabad (U.P.)	348	Warangal (A.P.)	336
Durg-Bhilainagar (M.P.)	490	Mysore (Kar.)	476		
		Nagpur (Mah.)	1,298		

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.



*Report of the Officials of the Government of India and the People's Republic of China on the Boundary Question.* New Delhi, Ministry of External Affairs, 1961  
*Census of India: Reports and Papers, Decennial Series.* (Government of India.)  
*Annual Report on the Working of Indian Migration.* Government of India, from 1956  
*Report of the Commissioner for Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.* Government of India. Annual  
*Public Health. Report of the Public Health Commission with the Government of India.* Annual  
 Agarwala, S. N., *India's Population Problems.* New York, 1973

**CLIMATE.** India has a variety of climatic sub-divisions. In general, there are four seasons. The cool one lasts from Dec. to March, the hot season is in April and May, the rainy season is June to Sept., followed by a further dry season till Nov. Rainfall, however, varies considerably, from 4" (100 mm) in the N.W. desert to over 400" (10,000 mm) in parts of Assam.

Range of temperature and rainfall: New Delhi. Jan. 57°F (13.9°C), July 88°F (31.1°C). Annual rainfall 26" (640 mm). Bombay. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 72" (1,809 mm). Calcutta. Jan. 67°F (19.4°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 64" (1,600 mm). Cherrapunji. Jan. 53°F (11.7°C), July 68°F (20°C). Annual rainfall 432" (10,798 mm). Cochin. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 117" (2,929 mm). Darjeeling. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 62°F (16.7°C). Annual rainfall 121" (3,035 mm). Hyderabad. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 30" (752 mm). Madras. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 87°F (30.6°C). Annual rainfall 51" (1,270 mm). Patna. Jan. 63°F (17.2°C), July 90°F (32.2°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,150 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 26 Jan. 1950 India became a sovereign democratic republic. India's relations with the British Commonwealth of Nations were defined at the London conference of Prime Ministers on 27 April 1949.

Unanimous agreement was reached to the effect that the Republic of India remains a full member of the Commonwealth and accepts the Queen as 'the symbol of the free association of its independent member nations and, as such, the head of the Commonwealth'. This agreement was ratified by the Constituent Assembly of India on 17 May 1949.

The constitution was passed by the Constituent Assembly on 26 Nov. 1949 and came into force on 26 Jan. 1950. It has since been amended 59 times.

India is a Union of States and comprises 25 States and 7 Union territories. Each State is administered by a Governor appointed by the President for a term of 5 years while each Union territory is administered by the President through an administrator appointed by him.

The capital is New Delhi.

**Presidency.** The head of the Union is the President in whom all executive power is vested, to be exercised on the advice of ministers responsible to Parliament. He is elected by an electoral college consisting of all the elected members of Parliament and of the various state legislative assemblies. He holds office for 5 years and is eligible for re-election. He must be an Indian citizen at least 35 years old and eligible for election to the Lower House. He can be removed from office by impeachment for violation of the constitution.

There is also a Vice-President who is *ex-officio* chairman of the Upper House of Parliament.

**Central Legislature.** The Parliament for the Union consists of the President, the Council of States (*Rajya Sabha*) and the House of the People (*Lok Sabha*). The Council of States, or the Upper House, consists of not more than 250 members; in 1988 there were 232 elected members and 12 members nominated by the President. The election to this house is indirect; the representatives of each State are elected by the elected members of the Legislative Assembly of that State. The Council of States is a permanent body not liable to dissolution, but one-third of the

members retire every second year. The House of the People, or the Lower House, consists of 546 members, 532 directly elected on the basis of adult suffrage from territorial constituencies in the States, and 13 members to represent the Union territories, chosen in such manner as the Parliament may by law provide; in Dec. 1987 there were 544 elected members and 2 members nominated by the President. The House of the People unless sooner dissolved continues for a period of 5 years from the date appointed for its first meeting; in emergency, Parliament can extend the term by 1 year.

*State Legislatures.* For every State there is a legislature which consists of the Governor, and (a) 2 Houses, a Legislative Assembly and a Legislative Council, in the States of Bihar, Jammu and Kashmir, Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh (where it is provided for but not in operation), Maharashtra and Uttar Pradesh, and (b) 1 House, a Legislative Assembly, in the other States. Every Legislative Assembly, unless sooner dissolved, continues for 5 years from the date appointed for its first meeting. In emergency the term can be extended by 1 year. Every State Legislative Council is a permanent body and is not subject to dissolution, but one-third of the members retire every year. Parliament can, however, abolish an existing Legislative Council or create a new one, if the proposal is supported by a resolution of the Legislative Assembly concerned.

*Legislation.* The various subjects of legislation are enumerated in three lists in the seventh schedule to the constitution. List I, the Union List, consists of 97 subjects (including defence, foreign affairs, communications, currency and coinage, banking and customs) with respect to which the Union Parliament has exclusive power to make laws. The State legislature has exclusive power to make laws with respect to the 66 subjects in list II, the State List; these include police and public order, agriculture and irrigation, education, public health and local government. The powers to make laws with respect to the 47 subjects (including economic and social planning, legal questions and labour and price control) in list III, the Concurrent List, are held by both Union and State governments, though the former prevails. But Parliament may legislate with respect to any subject in the State List in circumstances when the subject assumes national importance or during emergencies.

Other provisions deal with the administrative relations between the Union and the States, interstate trade and commerce, distribution of revenues between the States and the Union, official language, etc.

*Fundamental Rights.* Two chapters of the constitution deal with fundamental rights and 'Directive Principles of State Policy'. 'Untouchability' is abolished, and its practice in any form is punishable. The fundamental rights can be enforced through the ordinary courts of law and through the Supreme Court of the Union. The directive principles cannot be enforced through the courts of law; they are nevertheless fundamental in the governance of the country.

*Citizenship.* Under the Constitution, every person who was on the 26 Jan. 1950, domiciled in India and (a) was born in India or (b) either of whose parents was born in India or (c) who has been ordinarily resident in the territory of India for not less than 5 years immediately preceding that date became a citizen of India. Special provision is made for migrants from Pakistan and for Indians resident abroad. Under the Citizenship Act, 1955, which supplemented the provisions of the Constitution, Indian citizenship is acquired by birth, by descent, by registration and by naturalization. The Act also provides for loss of citizenship by renunciation, termination and deprivation. The right to vote is granted to every person who is a citizen of India and who is not less than 21 years of age on a fixed date and is not otherwise disqualified.

*Parliament.* Parliament and the state legislatures are organized according to the following schedule (figures show distribution of seats in Dec. 1988):

	Parliament		State Legislatures	
	House of the People (Lok Sabha)	Council of States (Rajya Sabha)	Legislative Assemblies (Vidhan Sabhas)	Legislative Councils (Vidhan Parishads)
<i>States:</i>				
Andhra Pradesh	42	18	294	—
Arunachal Pradesh	2	1 <sup>3</sup>	30	—
Assam	14	7	126	—
Bihar	54	22	324	96
Goa	1	—	31	—
Gujarat	26	11	182	—
Haryana	10	5	90	—
Himachal Pradesh	4	3	68	—
Karnataka	28	12	224	75
Kerala	20	9	140	—
Madhya Pradesh	40	16	320	—
Maharashtra	48	19	288	63
Manipur	2	1	60	—
Meghalaya	2	1	60	—
Mizoram	1	1	30	—
Nagaland	1	1	60	—
Orissa	21	10	147	—
Punjab	13	7	117	—
Rajasthan	25	10	200	—
Sikkim	1	1	32	—
Tamil Nadu	39	18	234	—
Tripura	2	1	60	—
Uttar Pradesh	85	34	425	108
West Bengal	42	16	294	—
Jammu and Kashmir	6	4	76 <sup>2</sup>	36 <sup>4</sup>
<i>Union Territories:</i>				
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1	—	—	—
Chandigarh	1	—	—	—
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	1	—	—	—
Delhi	7	3	56	—
Daman and Diu	1	—	—	—
Lakshadweep	1	—	—	—
Pondicherry	1	1	30	—
Nominated by the President under Article 80 (1) (a) of the Constitution	—	12	—	—
Total	544 <sup>1</sup>	244	3,997	378

<sup>1</sup> Includes 2 nominated members to represent Anglo-Indians.

<sup>2</sup> Excludes 24 seats for Pakistan-occupied areas of the State which are in abeyance.

<sup>3</sup> Nominated by the President.

<sup>4</sup> Excludes seats for the Pakistan-occupied areas.

The number of seats allotted to scheduled castes and scheduled tribes in the House of the People is 79 and 40 respectively. Out of the 3,997 seats allotted to the Legislative Assemblies, 557 are reserved for scheduled castes and 315 for scheduled tribes.

In Dec. 1988 the composition of the House of the People was: Congress (I) 398; Telugu Desam, 29; CPI (Marxist), 22; All India Anna DMK-I, 7; Janata, 13; Bharatiya Janata, 2; Communist Party, 6; Asom Gana Parishad, 6; Lok Dal, 5; All India Anna DMK-II, 4; J. & K. National Conference, 3; Revolutionary Socialist Party, 3; Akali Dal (Badal), 3; Muslim League, 2; Forward Bloc, 2; Kerala Congress, 2; DMK, 2; Akali Dal (Barhala), 2; Independents, 6; others, 10; nominated, 2; vacant, 8.

The Council of States was composed as follows: Congress (I) 142; CPI (Marxist) 16; All-India Anna DMK-I 6; Janata, 20; Bharatiya Janata, 8; Lok Dal, 7; Telugu Desam, 14; Communist Party, 3; DMK, 3; others, 11; Nominated 5; Vacant 4.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of saffron (orange), white and green, with the wheel of Asoka in the centre in blue.



*National anthem: Jana-gana-mana* (words by Rabindranath Tagore).

*Indian Independence Act, 1947*. (Ch. 30.) London, 1947

*The Constitution of India (Modified up to 15 April 1967)*. Delhi, 1967

Appadorai, A., *Indian Political Thinking in the Twentieth Century: From Naoroji to Nehru*.

OUP, 1971.—*Documents on Political Thought in Modern India*. OUP, 1974

Austin, G., *The Indian Constitution*. OUP, 1972

Mansergh, N., (ed.) *The Transfer of Power 1942–47*. 5 vols. HMSO, 1970–75

Pylee, M. V., *Constitutional Government in India*. 2nd ed. Bombay, 1965

Rao, K. V., *Parliamentary Democracy of India*. 2nd ed. Calcutta, 1965

Seervali, H. M., *Constitutional Law of India*. Bombay, 1967

**Language.** The Constitution provides that the official language of the Union shall be Hindi in the Devanagari script. It was originally provided that English should continue to be used for all official purposes until 1965. But the Official Languages Act 1963 provides that, after the expiry of this period of 15 years from the coming into force of the Constitution, English might continue to be used, in addition to Hindi, for all official purposes of the Union for which it was being used immediately before that day, and for the transaction of business in Parliament. According to the Official Languages (Use for official purposes of the Union) Rules 1976, an employee may record in Hindi or in English without being required to furnish a translation thereof in the other language and no employee possessing a working knowledge of Hindi may ask for an English translation of any document in Hindi except in the case of legal or technical documents.

The 56th amendment to the Constitution (26 Nov. 1987) authorised the preparation of a Constitution text in Hindi.

The following 15 languages are included in the Eighth Schedule to the Constitution: Assamese, Bengali, Gujarati, Hindi, Kannada, Kashmiri, Malayalam, Marathi, Oriya, Punjabi, Sanskrit, Sindhi, Tamil, Telugu, Urdu.

There are numerous mother tongues grouped under each language. Hindi, Bengali, Telugu, Tamil and Marathi languages (including mother tongues grouped under each) are spoken by 264.2m., 51.5m., 54.2m., 44.7m. and 49.6m. of the population respectively.

*Ferozsons English–Urdu, Urdu–English Dictionary*. 2 vols. 4th ed. Lahore, 1961

Fallon, S. W., *A New English–Hindustani Dictionary*. Lahore, 1941

Grierson, Sir G. A., *Linguistic Survey of India*. 11 vols. (in 19 parts). Delhi, 1903–28

Mitra, S. C., *Student's Bengali–English Dictionary*. 2nd ed. Calcutta, 1923

Scholberg, H. C., *Concise Grammar of the Hindi Language*. 3rd ed. London, 1955

University of Madras, *Tamil Lexicon*. 7 vols. Madras, 1924–39

Vyas, V. G. and Patel, S. G., *Standard English–Gujarati Dictionary*. 2 vols. Bombay, 1923

**Government.** *President of the Republic:* R. Venkataraman (sworn in 25 July 1987).  
*Vice-President:* Shankar Dayal Sharma (elected 4 Sept. 1987).

There is a Council of Ministers to aid and advise the President of the Republic in the exercise of his functions; this comprises Ministers who are members of the Cabinet and Ministers of State who are not. A Minister who for any period of 6 consecutive months is not a member of either House of Parliament ceases to be a Minister at the expiration of that period. The Prime Minister is appointed by the President; other Ministers are appointed by the President on the Prime Minister's advice.

The salary of each Minister is Rs 27,000 per annum, and that of each Deputy Minister is Rs 21,000 per annum. Each Minister is entitled to the free use of a furnished residence and a chauffeur-driven car throughout his term of office. A Cabinet Minister has a sumptuary allowance of Rs 1,000 per month, Ministers of State, Rs 500 and Deputy Ministers, Rs 300. At the administrative head of each Ministry is a Secretary of the Government.

Following was the composition of the Cabinet in Feb. 1989:

*Prime Minister:* Rajiv Gandhi.

*Portfolios held by the Prime Minister assisted by Ministers of State:*

*Science and Technology, Atomic Energy, Personnel and Space.*

*Ministers:*

*Industry:* J. Vengal Rao.

*Finance:* S. B. Chavan.

*Defence:* Krishna Chandra Pant.

*External Affairs:* P. V. Narasimha Rao.

*Commerce:* Dinesh Singh.

*Urban Development:* Mohsinha Kidwai.

*Agriculture:* Bhajan Lal.

*Parliamentary Affairs, Information and Broadcasting:* H. K. L. Bhagat.

*Steel and Mines:* M. Lal Fotedar.

*Human Resources Development:* P. Shiv Shankar.

*Home:* Buta Singh.

*Energy:* Vasant Sathe.

*Communications:* B. Bahadur Singh.

*Planning:* Madhav Sinh Solanki.

*Law and Justice, Water Resources:* B. Shankaranand.

*Textiles, Health, Family Planning:* R. N. Mirdha.

*Labour:* Bindeshwari Dubey.

*Environment and Forest:* Z. R. Ansari.

There were also 7 Ministers of State with independent charge, 30 other Ministers of State and 5 Deputy Ministers.

*Local Government.* There were in 1981, 42 municipal corporations, 2,165 municipalities, 420 notified area committees and 59 cantonment boards (all figures exclude Assam). The municipal bodies have the care of the roads, water supply, drainage, sanitation, medical relief, vaccination and education. Their main sources of revenue are taxes on the annual rental value of land and buildings, octroi and terminal, vehicle and other taxes. The municipal councils enact their own bye-laws and frame their budgets, which in the case of municipal bodies other than corporations generally require the sanction of the State government. All municipal councils are elected on the principle of adult franchise.

For rural areas there is a 3-tier system of *panchayati raj* at village, block and district level, although the 3-tier structure may undergo some changes in State legislation to suit local conditions. All *panchayati raj* bodies are organically linked, and representation is given to special interests. Elected directly by and from among villagers, the *panchayats* are responsible for agricultural production, rural industries, medical relief, maternity and child welfare, common grazing grounds, village roads, tanks and wells, and maintenance of sanitation. In some places they also look after primary education, maintenance of village records and collection of land revenue. They have their own powers of taxation. There are some judicial *panchayats* or village courts.

*Panchayati raj* now cover all the States with the exception of Mizoram, Nagaland and Meghalaya, although Nagaland has area, range and tribal councils. They exist in all the Union Territories except Lakshadweep.

The powers and responsibilities of *panchayati raj* institutions are derived from State Legislatures, and from the executive orders of State governments.

*NAGARLOK (Municipal Affairs Quarterly).* Quarterly. Institute of Public Administration. Delhi

*Proceedings of the 13th Meeting of the Central Council of Local Self Government.* Delhi, 1970

*Report of the Committee on Budgetary Reforms in Municipal Administration.* Delhi, 1974

*State Machinery for Municipal Supervision.* Institute of Public Administration. Delhi, 1970

*Statistical Abstract of India.* Annual. Delhi.

**DEFENCE.** The Supreme Command of the Armed Forces vests in the President of the Indian Republic. Policy is decided at different levels by a number of committees, including the Political Affairs Committee presided over by the Prime Minister and the Defence Minister's Committee. Administrative and operational control rests in the respective Service Headquarters, under the control of the Ministry of Defence.

The Ministry of Defence is the central agency for formulating defence policy and

for co-ordinating the work of the three services. Among the organizations directly administered by the Ministry are the Research and Development Organization, the Production Organization, the National Defence College, the National Cadet Corps and the Directorate-General of Armed Forces Medical Services.

The Research and Development Organization (headed by the Scientific Adviser to the Minister) has under it about 30 research establishments. The Production Organization controls 8 public-sector undertakings and 28 ordnance and 2 departmental factories.

The National Defence College, New Delhi, was established in 1960 on the pattern of the Imperial Defence College (UK): the 1-year course is for officers of the rank of brigadier or equivalent and for senior civil servants. The Defence Services Staff College, Wellington, trains officers of the three Services for higher command for staff appointments. There is an Armed Forces Medical College at Pune.

The National Defence Academy, Khadakvasla, gives a 3-year basic training course to officer cadets of the three Services prior to advanced training at the respective Service establishments.

**Army.** The Army Headquarters functioning directly under the Chief of the Army Staff is divided into the following main branches: General Staff Branch; Adjutant General's Branch; Quartermaster-General's Branch; Master-General of Ordnance Branch; Engineer-in-Chief's Branch; Military Secretary's Branch.

The Army is organized into 5 commands each divided into areas, which in turn are subdivided into sub-areas.

Recruitment of permanent commissioned officers is through the Indian Military Academy, Dehra Dun. It conducts courses for ex-National Defence Academy, National Cadet Corps and direct-entry cadets, and for serving personnel and technical graduates.

The Territorial Army came into being in Sept. 1949, its role being to: (1) relieve the regular Army of static duties and, if required, support civil power; (2) provide anti-aircraft units, and (3) if and when called upon, provide units for the regular Army. The Territorial Army is composed of practically all arms of the Services.

The authorized strength of the Army was (1989) 1.1 m., that of the Territorial Army, 50,000. There are 2 armoured, 1 mechanized, 20 infantry and 11 mountain divisions, 7 independent armoured brigades, 7 independent infantry, 3 independent artillery brigades, 1 parachute brigade, 1 mountain brigade and 4 independent engineer brigades. An Aviation Corps was formed in 1986.

**Navy.** Since 26 Jan. 1950 the former Royal Indian Navy, which traced its history in an unbroken line from the foundation in 1613 of the East India Company's Marine, has been known as 'Indian Navy', and the ships referred to as 'INS' instead of 'HMS'. There are 3 commands: Eastern, Western and Southern; and 2 fleets: Eastern and Western.

#### Principal ships of the Indian Navy:

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horse-power	Speed Knots
<i>Aircraft Carriers</i> <sup>1</sup>						
1959	Viraat (ex-Hermes)	23,900	5 Sea Harriers; 9 Sea King helicopters	2 quadruple Seacat missile launchers	78,000	28.0
1961	Vikrant (ex-Hercules)	16,000	22 capacity	4 40 mm. AA	40,000	24.5

<sup>1</sup>The cruiser *Delhi* (ex-*Achilles*) completed in 1933, was scrapped in 1979; and the cruiser *Mysore* (ex-*Nigeria*), completed in 1940, was deleted from the List in 1986.

The fleet also includes 2 new German (FR)-built submarines, 11 ex-Soviet submarines, 5 new Soviet-built guided missile armed destroyers, 3 new 'stretched', or improved 'Leander' type missile frigates and 6 broad-beamed 'Leander' class general purpose frigates (all nine built in India), 2 anti-submarine frigates and 2



anti-aircraft frigates (all four built in Great Britain), 1 very old *ex*-British frigate, 5 corvettes, 13 fast missile boats, 14 fast attack craft, 8 *ex*-Soviet ocean minesweepers, 10 inshore minesweepers, 11 landing ships, 5 landing craft, 13 survey ships, 1 repair ship, 1 submarine parent ship, 1 submarine rescue ship, 6 oilers, 22 service craft and 6 tugs.

New construction includes 2 Federal German-built patrol submarines, 2 indigenously built similar submarines, 4 Soviet built larger submarines, 3 more Soviet destroyers, 3 more frigates and 7 corvettes. India plans to build an aircraft carrier and/or an aviation support/HQ ship.

The major training establishments of the Navy include INS *Venduruthy* at Cochin (Basic and Divisional, Gunnery, Torpedo and Anti-Submarine, Navigation and Direction, Communication), INS *Vaisura* at Jamnagar (Electrical), INS *Shivaji* at Lonavla (Engineering), INS *Hansa* at Goa (Aviation), INS *Hamla* at Bombay (Supply and Secretariat) and INS *Satyavahana* (Submarine) and INS *Circars* (Boys') at Vishakhapatnam.

The Fleet Requirement Unit of the Naval Aviation Station, INAS *Garuda*, is at Cochin. The 100 aircraft include Sea Harriers and Sea King anti-submarine helicopters for the aircraft carriers, Ilyushin Il-38 and Tupolev Tu-142M maritime patrol, Chetak utility/SAR, and Alize anti-submarine aircraft.

Naval personnel in 1989, 52,000 officers and ratings, including the Naval Air Arm.

The Coast Guard was constituted as an independent para-military service by 1978 Act of Parliament. It comprised the frigates *Kirpan* and *Kuthar* and five patrol craft all transferred from the Indian Navy and 2 larger patrol vessels custom-built. It has since been augmented by new specifically built ships and aircraft, including six 1,040-ton offshore patrol vessels with aircraft and hangar, 5 inshore protection craft, 4 fast patrol craft, 8 South Korean-built launches and 11 Japanese-designed vedettes (10 built indigenously). There are 19 aircraft. The Coast Guard is administered by a Director-General (Vice-Admiral) and a Deputy Director-General (Commodore). It functions under the Defence Ministry but is funded by the Revenue Department.

Personnel in 1988 comprised 80 officers and 400 ratings.

**Air Force.** The Indian Air Force Act was passed in 1932, and the first flight was formed in 1933.

The Air Headquarters, under the Chief of Air Staff, consists of 4 main branches, viz., Air Staff, Administration, Policy and Plans, and Maintenance. Units of the IAF are organized into 5 operational commands—Western at Delhi, Central at Allahabad, Eastern at Shillong, Southern at Trivandrum and South-Western at Jodhpur. Training Command HQ is at Bangalore, Maintenance Command at Nagpur. Nominal strength in 1989 was 115,000 personnel and 735 aircraft of all types, in over 50 squadrons of aircraft and helicopters and about 30 squadrons of 'Guideline' and 'Goa' surface-to-air missiles, and close-range missiles such as 'Gainful' and Tigercat.

Air defence units include 2 squadrons of MiG-23 variable-geometry interceptors, 2 squadrons of MiG-29s, 18 squadrons of MiG-21s and 3 of Mirage 2000s. Initial delivery of MiG-21s from the Soviet Union was followed by large-scale licence production in India. Other combat units include 4 squadrons of MiG-27s, 3 of Ajeet (Gust Mk 2) fighters, 2 of Canberras, 4 of Jaguars, 4 of MiG-23 supersonic fighter-bombers and one of MiG-25 reconnaissance aircraft plus a MiG-25U two seat trainer. Currently the main re-equipment programmes involve the licence-production of MiG-27 and Jaguar strike aircraft.

The large transport force includes An-12s, An-32s, Il-76s, Do 228s, HS 748s, 2 Boeing 737s, and smaller aircraft and helicopters for VIP and other duties. Helicopter units have Mi-8s and Mi-17s (10 squadrons), Mi-26s, and Mi-25 gunships, but the bulk of the Air Force's Chetaks (Alouette IIIs) and Cheetahs (Lamas) have been transferred to Army control, main training types are the Hindustan HPT-32 and Kiran, Polish-built TS-11 Iskra, Hunter T.66, MiG-21UT1 and MiG-23U.

Primary flying training is provided at the Elementary Flying School, Bidar, and advanced flying training at the Air Force Academy, Dundigal, Hyderabad. There is a Navigation and Signals School at Begumpet. The IAF Technical College, Jalahalli, imparts technical training, while the IAF Administrative College, Coimbatore, trains officers of the ground duty branch. There are also land-air warfare, flying instructors' and medical schools.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** India is a member of the UN, the Commonwealth and the Colombo Plan.

**External Debt.** At the end of Nov. 1987 India's external public debt was estimated at Rs 319,100m.

**Treaties.** India pursues a general policy of non-alignment; the exception is a Treaty of Peace, Friendship and Cooperation with the USSR, 1971; the parties agreed to mutual support short of force in the event of either being attacked by a third party.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The sixth plan (1980-85) envisaged total investment of Rs 1,587,100m., of which Rs 975,000m. was for the public sector. The seventh plan (1985-89) aims at an annual 5.2% growth. The priority sections are power generation, irrigation and hydro carbons. Total planned outlay, Rs 3,200,000m., 56% from the public sector. Annual plan outlay (1987-88) Rs 446,980m.

Ministry of Agriculture. *Serving the Small Farmer: Policy Choices in Indian Agricultural Development.* 1975

Dutt, A. K. (ed.) *India: Resources, Potentialities and Planning.* Rev. ed. Dubuque, India, 1973

Singh, T., *India's Development Experience.* London, 1975

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (on revenue account) of the central government<sup>1</sup> for years ending 31 March, in crores of rupees:

	1986-87	1987-88 <sup>1</sup>	1988-89 <sup>2</sup>
Revenue	32,898	38,122	42,798
Expenditure	40,674	46,619	52,640

<sup>1</sup> Revised.

<sup>2</sup> Budget estimates.

Important items of revenue and expenditure on the revenue account of the central government for 1988-89 (estimates), in Rs 1 m.:

Revenue		Expenditure	
Net tax revenue	318,900	General Services	53,130
Non-tax revenue	109,080	Defence	130,000
		Grants in aid to States, etc.	22,100

Total capital account receipts (1988-89 budget), Rs 232,780m.; capital account disbursements, Rs 209,200m. Total (revenue and capital) receipts, Rs 660,760m.; disbursements, Rs 735,600m.

Under the Constitution (Part XII and 7th Schedule), the power to raise funds has been divided between the central government and the states. Generally, the sources of revenue are mutually exclusive. Certain taxes are levied by the Union for the sake of uniformity and distributed to the states. The Finance Commission (Art. 280 of the Constitution) advises the President on the distribution of the taxes which are distributable between the centre and the states, and on the principles on which grants should be made out of Union revenues to the states. The main sources of central revenue are: customs duties; those excise duties levied by the central government; corporation, income and wealth taxes; estate and succession duties on non-agricultural assets and property, and revenues from the railways and posts and telegraphs. The main heads of revenue in the states are: taxes and duties levied by the state governments (including land revenues and agricultural income tax); civil administration and civil works; state undertakings; taxes shared with the centre; and grants received from the centre.

**Currency.** A decimal system of coinage was introduced in 1957. The Indian *rupee* is divided into 100 *paise* (until 1964 officially described as *naye paise*), the decimal coins being 1, 2, 3, 5, 10, 20, 25 and 50 *paise*.

The rupee is valued in relation to a package of main currencies. The £ is the currency of intervention. In March 1989 Rs 26.60 = £1; Rs 15.46 = US\$1.

The paper currency consists of: (1) Reserve Bank notes in denominations of Rs 2, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100; and (2) Government of India currency notes of denominations of Re 1 deemed to be included in the expression 'rupee coin' for the purposes of the Reserve Bank of India Act, 1934.

According to the Reserve Bank of India, the total money supply with the public on the last Friday of Oct. 1986 was Rs 26,204 crores. Foreign exchange reserves, Feb. 1987, Rs 69,644.8m.

100,000 rupees are called 1 lakh; 100 lakhs are called 1 crore.

**Banking.** The Reserve Bank, the central bank for India, was established in 1934 and started functioning on 1 April 1935 as a shareholder's bank; it became a nationalized institution on 1 Jan. 1949. It has the sole right of issuing currency-notes. The Bank acts as adviser to the Government on financial problems and is the banker for central and state governments, commercial banks and some other financial institutions. The Bank manages the rupee public debt of central and state governments. It is the custodian of the country's exchange reserve and supervises repatriation of export proceeds and payments for imports. The Bank gives short-term loans to state governments and scheduled banks and short and medium-term loans to state co-operative banks and industrial finance institutions. The Bank has extensive powers of regulation of the banking system, directly under the Banking Regulation Act, 1949, and indirectly by the use of variations in Bank rate, variation in reserve ratios, selective credit controls and open market operations. Bank rate was raised to 10% in July 1981.

Except refinance for food credit and export credit, the Reserve Bank's refinance facility to commercial banks has been placed on a discretionary basis. The net profit of the Reserve Bank of India for the year ended June 1986, after making the usual or necessary provisions, amounted to Rs 210 crores.

The commercial banking system consisted of 275 scheduled banks (*i.e.*, banks which are included in the 2nd schedule to the Reserve Bank Act) and 4 non-scheduled banks on 30 June 1986; scheduled banks included 194 Regional Rural Banks. Total deposits in commercial banks, Nov. 1986, stood at Rs 95,164 crores. The business of non-scheduled banks forms less than 0.1% of commercial bank business. Of the 275 scheduled banks, 21 are foreign banks which specialize in financing foreign trade but also compete for domestic business. The largest scheduled bank is the State Bank of India, constituted by nationalizing the Imperial Bank of India in 1955. The State Bank acts as the agent of the Reserve Bank and the subsidiaries of the State Bank act as the agents of the State Bank for transacting government business as well as undertaking commercial functions. Fourteen banks with aggregate deposits of not less than Rs 50 crores were nationalized on 19 July 1969. Six banks were nationalized in April 1980. The 28 public sector banks (which comprise the State Bank of India and its seven associate banks and 20 nationalised banks) account for over 90% of deposits and bank credit of all scheduled commercial banks.

*Reserve Bank of India: Report on Currency and Finance.—Report on the Trend and Progress of Banking in India.—Report of the Central Board of Directors. Annual. Bombay*

**Weights and Measures.** Uniform standards of weights and measures, based on the metric system, were established for the first time by the Standards of Weights and Measures Act, 1956, which provided for a transition period of 10 years. So far the system has been fully adopted in trade transactions but there are a few fields such as engineering, survey and land records and the building and construction industry where it has not; efforts are being made to complete the change as early as possible.

In order to align this legislation with the latest international trends an expert committee (Weights and Measures (Law Revision) Committee) was set up by the central government to suggest a revised Bill which was passed by Parliament



in April 1976. The new Standards of Weights and Measures Act, 1976, has recognized the International System of Units and other units recommended by the General Conference on Weights and Measures and is in line with the recommendations of the International Organisation of Legal Metrology (OIML). The new Act also covers the system of numeration, the approval of models of weights and measures, regulation and control of inter-state trade in relation to weights and measures. The Act also protects consumers through proper indication of weight, quantity, identity, source, date and price on packaged goods. A draft Standards of Weights and Measures (Enforcement) Bill has also been prepared by the committee for adoption either by Parliament or State legislatures, as enforcement is now in the 'concurrent' list of legislation.

The provisions of the 1976 Act came into force in Sept. 1977, as did the accompanying Standards of Weights and Measures (Packaged Commodities) Rules, 1977.

While the Standards of Weights and Measures are laid down in the Central Act, enforcement of weights and measures laws is entrusted to the state governments; the central Directorate of Weights and Measures is responsible for co-ordinating activities so as to ensure national uniformity.

An Indian Institute of Legal Metrology trains officials of the Weights and Measures departments of India and different developing countries. The Institute is being modernized with technical assistance from the Federal Republic of Germany.

There are 2 Regional Reference Standards laboratories at Ahmedabad and Bhubaneswar which (besides calibrating secondary standards of physical measurements) also provide testing facilities in metrological and industrial measurements. These laboratories are equipped with Standards next in line to the National Standards of physical measurements which are maintained at the National Physical Laboratory in New Delhi.

For weights previously in legal use under the Standards of Weight Act, 1956, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1961, p. 171.

**Calendar.** The dates of the Saka era (named after the north Indian dynasty of the first century A.D.) are being used alongside Gregorian dates in issues of the *Gazette of India*, news broadcasts by All-India Radio and government-issued calendars, from 22 March 1957, a date which corresponds with the first day of the year 1879 in the Saka era.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In March 1986 about 68% of all villages had electricity. Total installed capacity (1985-86) was 46.6m. kw. Production of electricity in 1985-86 was 170,037m. kwh., of which 119,104m. kwh. came from thermal and nuclear stations and 50,933m. kwh from hydro-electric stations. Supply 230 and 250 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil and Gas.** The Oil and Natural Gas Commission, Oil India Ltd and the Assam Oil Co. are the only producers of crude oil. Estimated production, 1988 31.5m. tonnes, about 60% of consumption. The main fields are in Assam and offshore in the Gulf of Cambay (the Bombay High field). Natural gas production, 1984-85, 6,600m. cu. metres.

**Water.** The net area of 57m. hectares (1982) under irrigation exceeds that of any other country except China, and equals about 38% of the total area under cultivation. Irrigation projects have formed an important part of all three Five-Year Plans. The possibilities of diverting rivers into canals being nearly exhausted, the emphasis is now on damming the monsoon surplus flow and diverting that. Ultimate potential of irrigation is assessed at 107m. hectares, total cultivated land being 142m. hectares. In 1985 India and Bangladesh reached an agreement to monitor the water of the Ganges at the Farakka barrage.

1987 was a year of severe drought, affecting both agriculture and water-supplies to cities.

**Minerals.** Bihar, West Bengal and Madhya Pradesh produce 42%, 25% and 19% of all coal, respectively. The coal industry was nationalized in 1973. Production,

1984-85, 147m. tonnes; reserves (including lignite) are estimated at 155,902m. tonnes. Production of other minerals, 1986 estimates (in 1,000 tonnes): Iron ore, 48,441; bauxite, 2,273; chromite 642; copper ore, 4,420; manganese ore, 1,275; gold, 1,929 kg. Other important minerals are lead, zinc, limestone, apatite and phosphorite, dolomite, magnesite and silver. Value of mineral production, 1982 (provisional), Rs 53,912m. of which mineral fuels produced Rs 48,140m., metallic minerals Rs 2,671m. and non-metallic Rs 3,102m.

**Agriculture.** The chief industry of India has always been agriculture. About 70% of the people are dependent on the land for their living. In 1983-84 it provided 39.8% of GDP.

In 1984-85 agricultural commodities accounted for about 20% by value of Indian exports, while agricultural commodities, machinery and fertilizers accounted for about 20% of imports. Tea accounted for about 30% of agricultural exports.

An increase in food production of at least 2% per annum is necessary to keep pace with the rising population. Foodgrain production, 78.4m. tons in 1962-63, was 150.5m. tonnes in 1985-86.

The Indian Council of Agricultural Research works through 41 institutes, 7 national research centres, 4 project directorates, and 68 national research projects. There are 4 national research bureaux and 23 agricultural universities.

The farming year runs from July to June through three crop seasons: Kharif (monsoon); rabi (winter) and summer.

Agricultural production, 1987-88 (in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 56,434; wheat, 45,096; total foodgrains, 138,414; sugar-cane 196,723; oilseeds, 12,378; cotton, 6.43m. bales (of 170 kg); jute is grown in West Bengal (half total yield), Bihar and Assam, total yield, 5.8m. bales (of 180 kg); maize, 5,629; pulses, 11,040. The coffee industry is growing: The main cash varieties are Arabica and Robusta (main growing areas Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu).

The tea industry is important, with production concentrated in Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala. Total crop in 1986-87, about 621,000 tonnes from 370,000 hectares.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 199.3m.; sheep, 55,482,000; pigs, 8.8m.; horses, 950,000; asses, 1.3m.; goats, 105m.; buffaloes, 74.26m.

Fertilizer consumption in 1985-86 was 8.7m. tonnes.

**Land Tenure.** There are three main traditional systems of land tenure: *Ryotwari* tenure, where the individual holders, usually peasant proprietors, are responsible for the payment of land revenues; *zamindari* tenure, where one or more persons own large estates and are responsible for payment (in this system there may be a number of intermediary holders); and *mahawari* tenure, where village communities jointly hold an estate and are jointly and severally responsible for payment.

Agrarian reform, initiated in the first Five-Year Plan, being undertaken by the state governments includes: (1) The abolition of intermediaries under *zamindari* tenure. (2) Tenancy legislation designed to scale down rents to  $\frac{1}{4}$  -  $\frac{1}{5}$  of the value of the produce, to give permanent rights to tenants (subject to the landlord's right to resume a minimum holding for his personal cultivation), and to enable tenants to acquire ownership of their holdings (subject to the landlord's right of resumption for personal cultivation) on payment of compensation over a number of years. (3) Fixing of ceilings on existing holdings and on future acquisition; the holding of a family is between 4.05 and 7.28 hectares if it has assured irrigation to produce two crops a year; 10.93 hectares for land with irrigation facilities for only one crop a year; and 21.85 hectares for all other categories of land. Tea, coffee, cocoa and cardamom plantations have been exempted. (4) The consolidation of holdings in community project areas and the prevention of fragmentation of holdings by reform of inheritance laws. (5) Promotion of farming by co-operative village management (see p. 644).

The average size of holding for the whole of India is 2.63 hectares. Andhra Pradesh, 2.87; Assam, 1.46; Bihar, 1.53; Gujarat, 4.49; Jammu and Kashmir, 1.43; Karnataka, 4.11; Kerala, 0.75; Madhya Pradesh, 3.99; Maharashtra, 4.65; Orissa, 1.98; Punjab, 3.85; Rajasthan, 5.5; Tamil Nadu, 1.49; Uttar Pradesh, 1.78; West Bengal, 1.56.



Of the total 71 m. rural households possessing operational holdings, 34% hold on the average less than 0.20 hectare of land each.

**Opium.** By international agreement the poppy is cultivated under licence, and all raw opium is sold to the central government. Opium, other than for wholly medical use, is available only to registered addicts.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1986-87) was 2.92m. tons, of which Kerala, Tamil Nadu, and Maharashtra produced about half. Of the total catch, 1,720,000 tons were marine fish. There were 96 deep-sea (20 metres and above) fishing boats at end Dec. 1986, and 63 under construction. There were 22,000 mechanised boats (1985-86). There were 7,452 fishermen's co-operatives with 783,000 members in 1984-85; total sales, Rs 205.4m.

**Forestry.** The lands under the control of the state forest departments are classified as 'reserved forests' (forests intended to be permanently maintained for the supply of timber, etc., or for the protection of water supply, etc.), 'protected forests' and 'unclassed' forest land.

In 1984-85 the total forest area was 75m. hectares. Main types are teak and sal. About 16% of the area is inaccessible, of which about 45% is potentially productive. In 1985-86 3m. saplings were planted. Some states have encouraged planting small areas around villages.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industries.** Railways, air transport, armaments and atomic energy are government monopolies. In a number of industries (including the manufacture of iron and steel and mineral oils, shipbuilding and the mining of coal, iron and manganese ores, gypsum, gold and diamonds) new units are set up only by the state. In a further group of industries (road transport, manufacture of chemicals such as drugs, dye-stuffs, plastics and fertilizers) the state established new undertakings, but private enterprise may develop either on its own or with state backing, which may take the form of loans or purchase of equity capital. Nationalized industries employed 4m. in 1981. Under the Industries (Development and Regulation) Act, 1951, as amended, industrial undertakings are required to be licensed; 162 industries are within the scope of the Act. The Government are authorized to examine the working of any undertaking, to issue directions to it and to take over its control if this be deemed necessary. A Central Advisory Council has been set up consisting of representatives of industry, labour, consumers and primary producers. There are Development Councils for individual industries and (1981) 4 national development banks.

Foreign investment is encouraged by a tax holiday on income up to 6% of capital employed for 5 years. There are special depreciation allowances, and customs and excise concessions for export industries.

Oil refinery installed capacity, Dec. 1985, was 45.55m. tonnes; production of refined oils (1984-85), 33.2m. tonnes. The Indian Oil Corporation was established in 1964 and had (1984) most of the market.

Industry, particularly steel, has suffered from a shortage of power and coal. There is expansion in petrochemicals, based on the oil and associated gas of the Bombay High field, and gas from Bassein field. Small industries (initial outlay on capital equipment of less than Rs 3.5m.) are important; they employ about 9.6m. and produced (1985-86) goods worth Rs 611,000m. The industrial growth rate, 1987-88 was 7.6%.

Industrial production, 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Pig-iron and ferro-alloys, 11,074; steel ingots, 12,605; finished steel, 9,790; aluminium, 245; motor cycles and scooters, 1,479,012; buses and trucks, 123,924; cars and jeeps, 155,592; petroleum products, 44,688; sulphuric acid, 2,709; cement, 37,008; board and paper, 1,654; nitrogen fertilizer, 5,688; phosphate fertilizer, 1,560; jute goods, 1,244; cotton yarn, 1,348; cotton cloth, 9,617m. metres; man-made fibre, 178; diesel engines, 176,424 engines; electric motors, 4.2m. h.p.; sugar, 8,508.



Lal, V. B., (et al) *The Aluminium Industry in India: Promise, Prospects, Constraints and Impact*. New Delhi, 1985

**Labour.** At the 1981 census there were 222.5m. workers, of whom 92.5m. were cultivators, 55.5m. agricultural labourers; in 1984 there were 7.4m. in manufacturing, 11.3m. in social, community and personal services, 1.5m. in construction and 3.53m. in transport, communications and storage. There were 36,606 registered trade unions. The bond labour system was abolished in 1975. Man-days lost by industrial disputes, 1986, 22.12m., of which 2.05m. were in the public sector. An ordinance of July 1981 gave the government power to ban strikes in essential services; the ordinance was to remain in force for six months and would then be renewable.

**Companies.** The total number of companies limited by shares at work in India, 31 March 1986, was 122,159; aggregate paid-up capital was Rs 31,943.3 crores. There were 16,122 public limited companies with an aggregate paid-up capital of Rs 7,159.9 crores, and 106,037 private limited companies (Rs 24,783.4 crores). There were also 298 companies with unlimited liability.

During 1985-86, 15,056 new limited companies were registered in the Indian Union under the Companies Act 1956 with a total authorized capital of Rs 4,409.9 crores; 1,589 were public limited companies (Rs 3,198.5 crores) and 13,467 were private limited companies (Rs 1,211.4 crores). There were 3 private companies with unlimited liability also registered in 1985-86. Of the new non-government limited companies, 419 had an authorized capital of Rs 1 crore and above, and 331 of between Rs 50 lakhs and Rs 1 crore. During 1985-86, 133 companies with an aggregate paid-up capital of Rs 12.17 crores went into liquidation and 129 companies (Rs 0.81 crores) were struck off the register.

On 31 March 1986 there were 1,020 government companies at work with a total paid-up capital of Rs 25,284.3 crores; 440 were public limited companies and 580 were private limited companies.

On 31 March 1986, 335 companies incorporated elsewhere were reported to have a place of business in India; 122 were of UK and 69 of USA origin.

Department of Company Affairs, Govt. of India. *Annual Report on the Working and Administration of the Companies Act, 1956*. New Delhi, 1983

**Co-operative Movement.** On 30 June 1986 there were about 315,000 co-operative societies with a total membership of about 145m. These included Primary Co-operative Marketing Societies, State Co-operative Marketing Federations and the National Agricultural Co-operative Marketing Federation of India. There were also 15 State Co-operative Commodity Marketing Federations, and 10 State Tribal Co-operative Development Corporations/Federations.

There were, on 30 June 1985, 28 State Co-operative Banks, 350 Central Co-operative Banks, 92,408 Primary Agricultural Societies, 19 State Land Development Banks, and 881 primary or district Land Development Banks/branches which provide long-term investment credit.

Total agricultural credit disbursed by Co-operatives in 1985-86 was Rs 3,206 crores including Rs 2,409 crores in short-term credit, Rs 258 crores in medium-term credit and Rs 539 crores in long-term credit. Total credit disbursed in 1983-84, Rs 2,905 crores.

Value of agricultural produce marketed by Co-operatives in 1985-86 was about Rs 4,193 crores.

In June 1985-86 there were 2,429 processing units; in 1985-86, 195 sugar factories produced 4.16m. tons; 92 spinning mills (capacity 2.44m. spindles) produced 122m. kg. (1984-85) of yarn; there were 294 oil mills and similar units; total storage capacity was 8.49m. tons.

In 1985-86 there were 64,000 retail depots distributing 3.8m. tons of fertilizers.

*Indian Labour Guide*. Monthly. Delhi

*Co-operative Movement in India, Statistical Statements Relating to*. Annual. Reserve Bank of India, Bombay

**Commerce.** The external trade of India (excluding land-borne trade with Tibet and Bhutan) was as follows (in 100,000 rupees):

	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports and Re-exports</i>
1982-83	1,429,274	880,337
1983-84	1,583,146	977,071
1984-85	1,713,420	1,174,368
1985-86	1,965,769	1,089,459
1986-87	2,008,353	1,256,662
1987-88 <sup>1</sup>	2,234,304	1,571,940

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

The distribution of commerce by countries and areas was as follows in the year ended 31 March 1987 (in 100,000 rupees):

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Exports to</i>	<i>Imports from</i>	<i>Countries</i>	<i>Exports to</i>	<i>Imports from</i>
Afghanistan	2,047	3,286	Malaysia	10,485	55,214
Algeria	3,239	65	Morocco	857	22,593
Argentina	296	4,357	Nepal	14,286	6,436
Australia	14,728	43,103	Netherlands	22,635	38,566
Austria	2,435	6,128	New Zealand	2,058	4,406
Bahrain	2,601	9,764	Nigeria	3,316	126
Bangladesh	16,201	2,308	Norway	1,844	4,729
Belgium	35,347	108,972	Pakistan	1,495	2,750
Brazil	546	28,070	Poland	10,582	10,943
Bulgaria	4,373	2,890	Qatar	1,844	3,129
Burma	73	3,289	Romania	8,038	10,581
Canada	14,948	38,037	Saudi Arabia	21,894	68,723
Czechoslovakia	8,526	6,042	Singapore	22,081	36,972
Denmark	4,461	9,382	Spain	6,211	21,444
Egypt	7,318	28,645	Sri Lanka	8,733	1,133
Finland	1,200	7,257	Sudan	797	242
France	27,451	66,944	Sweden	5,560	35,330
German Dem. Republic	8,401	8,965	Switzerland	16,018	34,854
Federal Rep. of Germany	74,030	193,662	Tanzania	2,079	3,721
Ghana	410	1,797	Thailand	6,542	6,372
Hong Kong	40,135	10,920	Turkey	3,179	14,772
Hungary	4,681	4,100	United Arab Emirates	28,745	33,280
Indonesia	2,233	9,935	USSR	187,288	107,221
Iran	4,729	13,495	UK	73,711	162,299
Iraq	1,599	14,967	USA	235,932	196,330
Italy	32,066	49,022	Yemen, Arab Rep.	1,616	—
Japan	134,364	255,799	Yemen, People's Dem. Rep.	617	—
Jordan	1,401	13,437	Yugoslavia	7,142	10,229
Kenya	3,180	1,127	Zaire	104	4,906
Korea	11,016	32,232	Zambia	461	7,031
Kuwait	9,538	28,617			

The value (in 100,000 rupees) of the leading articles of merchandise was as follows in the year ended 31 March 1987 (provisional):

<i>Exports</i>	<i>Value</i>
Meat and meat preparations	7,597
Fish, crustaceans, molluscs and preparations thereof	47,853
Rice	16,484
Vegetables and fruits	46,803
Coffee and coffee substitutes	30,624
Tea and mate	54,965
Spices	26,906
Oilcake	18,721
Tobacco unmanufactured and tobacco refuse	13,983
Raw cotton	18,208
Iron ore	54,322
Ores and minerals (excluding iron, mica and coal)	11,394
Cotton yarn, fabrics and madeup articles	56,207

<i>Exports</i>	<i>Value</i>
Readymade garments	121,830
Jute manufactures including twist and yarn	26,504
Leather and leather manufactures	78,718
Gems and jewellery	206,925
Works of art	14,502
Handmade carpets	28,739
Metal manufactures except iron and steel	12,982
Machinery including transport equipments	74,514
Mineral fuel, lubricants and related products	41,123
Chemicals and allied products	43,779
Iron and steel	5,686

<i>Imports</i>	
Wheat	3,727
Sugar	20,524
Pulp and waste paper	20,843
Crude rubber including synthetic and reclaimed	8,074
Synthetic and regenerated fibre	4,411
Fertilizers, crude	13,110
Sulphur and unroasted iron pyrites	14,731
Metalliferous ores and metal scrap	36,771
Petroleum, Petroleum products and related materials	267,956
Edible oil	61,196
Organic chemicals	50,441
Inorganic chemicals	53,126
Medical and pharmaceutical products	15,803
Fertilizers, manufactured	49,513
Artificial resins, plastic materials etc	43,589
Chemical materials and products	11,962
Paper, paper board and manufactures thereof	19,481
Textile yarn, fabrics and madeup articles	12,472
Pearls, precious and semi-precious stones	149,548
Non-metallic mineral manufactures exclg. pearls	8,513
Iron and steel	144,969
Non-ferrous metal	41,491
Manufactures of metal	19,914
Machinery other than electric	371,390
Electrical machinery	87,745
Transport equipment	67,684
Professional, scientific, controlling instruments, photographic, optical goods, watches and clocks	45,562

Total trade between India and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	571,470	431,785	440,681	536,704	559,684
Exports and re-exports from UK	780,997	894,708	941,169	1,090,146	1,111,740

*Annual Statement of the Foreign Trade of India.* 2 vols. Calcutta

*Monthly Statistics of the Foreign Trade of India.* Calcutta

*Review of the Trade of India.* Annual, Delhi

*India-Handbook of Commercial Information.* 3 vols. Calcutta

*Guide to Official Statistics of Trade, Shipping, Customs and Excise Revenue of India.* Rev. ed. Calcutta

**Tourism.** There were 1.16m. visitors (excluding nationals of Pakistan and Bangladesh) in 1987 bringing about Rs 19,000m. in foreign exchange; 166,590 from UK, 134,876 from USA, 74,351 from Sri Lanka.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984-85 there were 1,770,000 km of roads, of which 832,000 km were surfaced. Roads are divided into 5 main administrative classes, namely, national highways, state highways, major district roads, other district roads and village roads. The national highways (31,803 km in 1986) connect capitals of states, major



ports and foreign highways. The national highway system is linked with the ESCAP (Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific) international highway system. The state highways are the main trunk roads of the states, while the major district roads connect subsidiary areas of production and markets with distribution centres, and form the main link between headquarters and neighbouring districts.

There were (31 March 1985) 8,796,000 motor vehicles in India, comprising 1,380,000 private cars and jeeps, 4.9m. motor cycles and scooters, 160,000 taxis, 210,000 buses and 850,000 goods vehicles.

**Railways.** The Indian railway system is government-owned and (under the control of the Railway Board) is divided into 9 zones; route-km at 31 March 1986:

<i>Zone</i>	<i>Headquarters</i>	<i>Route-km</i>
Central	Bombay	6,486 km (943.34 km electrified)
Eastern	Calcutta	4,281 km (1,229.06 km)
Northern	Delhi	10,977 km (884.29 km)
North Eastern	Gorakhpur	5,163 km
North East Frontier	Gauhati	3,763 km
Southern	Madras	6,729 km (431.95 km)
South Central	Secunderabad	7,138 km (393.04 km)
South Eastern	Calcutta	7,075 km (1,972.63 km)
Western	Bombay	10,224 km (496.13 km)

Principal gauges are 1,676 mm. and metre, with networks also of 762 and 610 mm. gauge.

Passengers carried in 1985-86 were approximately 3,433m.; freight, 286.4m. tonnes. Revenue (1985-86) from passengers, Rs 1,720 crores; from goods, Rs 4,232 crores.

Indian Railways pay to the central government a fixed dividend of 4.5% on capital-at-charge. Railway finance in Rs 1m.:

<i>Financial years</i>	<i>Gross traffic receipts</i>	<i>Working expenses</i>	<i>Net revenues (traffic and miscellaneous)</i>	<i>Net surplus or deficit (after dividend)</i>
1986-87 <sup>1</sup>	75,030	53,920	5,810	+110
1987-88 <sup>2</sup>	81,790	75,500	7,210	+690

<sup>1</sup> Revised estimate.

<sup>2</sup> Budget.

**Aviation.** The air transport industry in India was nationalized in 1953 with the formation of two Air Corporations: Air India for operating long-distance international air services, and Indian Airlines for operating air services within India and to adjacent countries. A third airline, Vayudoot, was formed in 1981 as an internal feeder airline. There are 93 airports.

Air India runs Boeing 747s and 707s, Airbus A-300 and A-310s; it operates from Bombay, Delhi, Madras, Trivandrum, Hyderabad, Goa and Calcutta to Africa (Nairobi, Lagos, Seychelles, Mauritius, Dar es Salaam, Lusaka and Harare); to Europe (London, Paris, Amsterdam, Frankfurt, Geneva, Zurich, Brussels, Moscow and Rome); to western Asia (Doha, Abu Dhabi, Dharan, Dubai, Bahrain, Kuwait, Muscat, Jeddah, Ras al Khaymah, Sharjah and Baghdad); to east Asia (Bangkok, Hong Kong, Tokyo, Osaka, Kuala Lumpur, Singapore and Sydney); to North America (New York).

Indian Airlines has a fleet of 53 aircraft consisting of Airbus A-300BS, Boeing 737, F-27 and HS-748 aircraft (Sept. 1986). During 1985-86 they carried 9.2m. passengers; net profit Rs 58.75 crores. Flights cover over 83,000 unduplicated route km. Vayudoot serves remote areas of India; it has a network of 62 stations.

The National Airports Authority maintains and operates 84 civil aerodromes and 25 terminals at military aerodromes. The management of the 4 international airports at Bombay (Santa Cruz), Calcutta (Dum Dum), Delhi (Palam) and Madras is vested in the International Airports Authority of India.

**Shipping.** In June 1988, 369 ships totalling 5,457,616 GRT were on the Indian Register; of these, 138 ships of 466,025 GRT were engaged in coastal trade, and

231 ships of 4,991,591 GRT in overseas trade. Traffic of major ports, 1987-88, was as follows:

<i>Port</i>	<i>Ships cleared</i>	<i>Imports (1m. tonnes)</i>	<i>Exports (1m. tonnes)</i>
Calcutta	897	3.4	0.8
Bombay	2,074	13.4	15.2
Madras	1,390	10.4	7.9
Cochin	598	5.6	1.2
Mormugao	417	1.0	11.9
Vishakhapatnam	579	7.0	7.8
Kandla	950	16.3	1.8
Paradip	218	2.3	2.9
New Mangalore	420	1.3	4.8
Tuticorin	417	4.0	0.3
Haldia	554	5.3	3.4

The shipyard at Vishakhapatnam is capable of building vessels of a maximum of 42,750 DWT. Present capacity is about 118,250 DWT per year. The Cochin Shipyard can build ships of 85,000 DWT each and repair ships up to 100,000 DWT. The installed capacity of the shipyard is 150,000 DWT new construction and 1m. GRT ship repair, per annum. Garden Reach Shipbuilders and Engineers are building bulk carriers of 26,000 DWT, ferry ships (6,000 DWT), hydrographic research ships, tugs and fast patrol craft.

There are about 5,200 km of major rivers navigable by motorised craft, of which 1,700 km are used. Canals, 4,300 km, of which 485 km are navigable by motorised craft (331 km are used).

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 1 April 1987 there were 143,987 post offices and 36,161 telegraph offices. Of the post offices, 127,930 were rural and 16,057 urban.

The telephone system is in the hands of the Telecommunications Department, except in Delhi, served by public corporation. In April 1987 the Department had 3,486,387 telephones, 213 telex exchanges and 31,755 subscribers.

There were 88 radio stations on 31 March 1986, and programmes were sent out from 167 transmitters. There were 44 high-power and 135 low-power television transmission centres. In 1985 television covered 36% of the national area and 58% of the population. Entertainment films occupy 29.3% of broadcasting time, news and current affairs, 21.3%. A communications satellite ('APPLE') went into operation in July 1981.

**Cinemas.** In 1976 there were 9,017 cinemas, including about 2,660 touring cinemas; about 500 feature films were produced.

**Newspapers.** In 1982 the total number of newspapers and periodicals was 19,937; about 30% were published in Delhi, Bombay, Calcutta and Madras. There were 1,334 daily and 5,898 weekly papers. Circulation of dailies (1981), 13.2m., of weeklies, 12.9m. Hindi papers have the highest number and circulation, followed by English, then Bengali, Urdu and Marathi.

*Annual Report of the Register of Newspapers for India. New Delhi*

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** All courts form a single hierarchy, with the Supreme Court at the head, which constitutes the highest court of appeal. Immediately below it are the high courts and subordinate courts in each state. Every court in this chain, subject to the usual pecuniary and local limits, administers the whole law of the country, whether made by Parliament or by the state legislatures.

The states of Andhra Pradesh, Assam (in common with Nagaland, Meghalaya, Manipur, Mizoram, Tripura and Arunachal Pradesh), Bihar, Gujarat, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, Karnataka, Kerala, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Orissa, Punjab (in common with the state of Haryana and the Union Territory of Chandigarh), Rajasthan, Tamil Nadu, Uttar Pradesh, West Bengal and Sikkim have each a High Court. The jurisdiction of Bombay High Court extends to the Territory of Goa. There is a separate High Court for Delhi. For the Andaman and Nicobar Islands the Calcutta High Court, for Pondicherry the High Court of

Madras, and for Lakshadweep the High Court of Kerala are the highest judicial authorities; in Dadra and Nagar Haveli the High Court of Bombay is the relevant high court. The Allahabad High Court has a Bench at Lucknow, the Bombay High Court has Benches at Nagpur and Aurangabad, the Madhya Pradesh High Court has Benches at Gwalior and Indore, the Patna High Court has a Bench at Ranchi and the Rajasthan High Court has a Bench at Jaipur. Judges and Division Courts of the Gauhati High Court also sit in Meghalaya, Manipur, Nagaland and Tripura. Below the High Court each state is divided into a number of districts under the jurisdiction of district judges who preside over civil courts and courts of sessions. There are a number of judicial authorities subordinate to the district civil courts. On the criminal side magistrates of various classes act under the overall supervision of the High Court.

The Code of Criminal Procedure, 1898, has been replaced by the Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974), which came into force with effect from 1 April 1974. The new Code provides for complete separation of the Judiciary from the Executive throughout India.

**Police.** The states control their own police force through the state Home Ministers. The Home Minister of the central government co-ordinates the work of the states and controls the Central Detective Training School, the Central Forensic Laboratory, the Central Fingerprint Laboratory as well as the National Police Academy at Mount Abu (Rajasthan) where the Indian Police Service is trained. This service is recruited by competitive examination of university graduates and provides all senior officers for the state police forces. The Central Bureau of Investigation functions under the control of the Cabinet Secretariat.

The cities of Pune, Ahmedabad, Nagpur, Bangalore, Calcutta, Madras, Bombay and Hyderabad have separate police commissionerates.

Sarkar, P. C., *Civil Laws of India and Pakistan*. 2 vols. Calcutta, 1953.—*Criminal Laws of India and Pakistan*. 2nd ed. 2 vols. Calcutta, 1956

Setalvad, M. C., *The Common Law of India*. London, 1960

Sharma, S. R., *Supreme Court in the Indian Constitution*. Delhi, 1959

**Religion.** The principal religions in 1981 (census) were: Hindus, 549.7m. (82.63%); Moslems, 75.6m. (11.36%); Christians, 16.2m. (2.43%); Sikhs, 13.1m. (1.96%); Buddhists, 4.7m. (0.7%); Jains, 3.2m. (0.48%).

**Education.** Literacy. According to the 1981 census the literacy percentage in the country (excluding age-group, 0-4) was 36.23 (34.45 in 1971); 46.74% among males, 24.88% among females. Of the states and territories, Chandigarh and Kerala have the highest rates.

*Educational Organization.* Education is the concurrent responsibility of state and Union governments. In the union territories it is the responsibility of the central government. The Union Government is also directly responsible for the central universities and all institutions declared by parliament to be of national importance; the promotion of Hindi as the federal language; coordinating and maintaining standards in higher education, research, science and technology. Professional education rests with the Ministry or Department concerned, e.g., medical education, the Ministry or Department of Health. The Department of Education is a part of the Union Ministry of Human Resource Development, headed by a cabinet minister. There are several autonomous organizations attached to the Department of Education. These include the University Grants Commission, the National Institute of Educational Planning and Administration and the National Council of Educational Research and Training. There is a Central Advisory Board of Education to advise the Union and the State Governments on any educational question which may be referred to it.

*School Education.* The school system in India can be divided into four stages: Primary, middle, secondary and senior secondary.

Primary education is imparted either at independent primary (or junior basic) schools or primary classes attached to middle or secondary schools. The period of instruction in this stage varies from 4 to 5 years and the medium of instruction is in



most cases the mother tongue of the child or the regional language. Free primary education is available for all children. Legislation for compulsory education has been passed by some state governments and Union Territories but it is not practicable to enforce compulsion when the reasons for non-attendance are socio-economic. Residential schools are planned for country children.

The period for the middle stage varies from 2 to 3 years.

*Higher Education.* Higher education is given in arts, science or professional colleges, universities and all-India educational or research institutions. In 1985-86 there were 132 universities, 10 institutions of national importance and 17 institutions deemed as universities. Of the universities, 9 are central: Aligarh Muslim University; Banaras Hindu University; University of Delhi; University of Hyderabad; Jawaharlal Nehru University; North Eastern Hill University; Visva Bharati; Pondicherry; Indira Gandhi National Open. The rest are state universities. Total enrolment at universities, 1985-86, 3.57m., of which 3.14m. were undergraduates. Women students, 1.05m.

Grants are paid through the University Grants Commission to the central universities and institutions deemed to be universities for their maintenance and development and to state universities for their development projects only; their maintenance is the concern of state governments. During 1985-86 the University Grants Commission sanctioned grants of Rs 192.37 crores.

*Technical Education.* The number of institutions awarding degrees in engineering and technology in 1986 was 184 (in 1947: 38), and those awarding diplomas in engineering and technology numbered 422 (in 1947: 53); the former admitted about 34,800, the latter about 66,400 students. There were also 47 Girls' Polytechnics with about 5,900 students. There were 108 Community Polytechnics. For training high-level engineers and technologists 5 Institutes of Technology, the Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore, and 104 other institutions conduct post-graduate and research courses. There are (1986) 4 national Management Institutions and 42 other management units, admitting about 3,000 annually.

*Adult Education.* In spite of the improvement in the literacy rate, the number of adult illiterates over 14 was over 424.26m. in 1981. Adult education is, therefore, being accorded a high priority; it formed part of the Minimum Needs Programme under the seventh Five-Year Plan (1985-90). The National Literacy Mission aims to cover all illiterate persons in the age-group 15-35 by 1990. The Directorate of Adult Education, established in 1971, is the national resource centre; with state resource centres it is responsible for producing teaching/learning materials, training and orientation, monitoring and evaluating the programme.

Educational statistics for the year 1985-86:

Type of recognized institution	No. of institutions	No. of students on rolls	No. of teachers
Primary/junior basic schools	528,079	86,465,189	1,509,910
Middle/senior basic schools	134,074	28,124,756	967,988
High/higher secondary schools	61,314	15,105,934	1,158,745
Training schools and colleges	1,416	182,777 <sup>1</sup>	—
Arts, Science and Commerce colleges	4,078	3,014,186 <sup>2</sup>	—

<sup>1</sup> Enrolment by stages of teachers' training courses at school and college level.

<sup>2</sup> Enrolment by stages of all post-graduate and graduate courses.

School pupils represent 93.4% of the age-group 6-11 and 52% of 11s-14s.

*Expenditure.* Total public expenditure on education 1985-86 is estimated at Rs 8,143 crores. Total public expenditure on education, sport, arts and youth welfare during the Seventh Plan, Rs 6,382.65 crores; Seventh Plan spending on adult education, Rs 130 crores in the central and Rs 230 crores in the state sectors.

*Health.* Health programmes are primarily the responsibility of the state governments. The Union Government has sponsored and supported major schemes for disease prevention and control which are implemented nationally. These include the prevention and control of malaria, filaria, tuberculosis, leprosy, venereal

diseases, smallpox, trachoma and cancer. There are also Union Government schemes in connexion with water supply and sanitation, and with nutrition. The Nutrition Advisory Committee of the Indian Council of Medical Research sponsors schemes for research and advises the Government. The National Nutrition Advisory Committee is to formulate a national nutrition policy and recommend measures for improving national standards.

Medical relief and service is primarily the responsibility of the states. Medical education is also a state responsibility, but there is a co-ordinating Central Health Educational Bureau. Family planning is centrally sponsored and locally implemented. The goal is to reduce the birth-rate by means of education in family planning methods.

The central government budget for 1984–85 provided Rs 469.7 crores for family welfare (including family planning) and Rs 343 crores for health; Rs 124.4 crores was for prevention and control of disease.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of India in Great Britain (India House, Aldwych, London, WC2B 4NA)

*High Commissioner:* Shri Maharajkrishan Rasgotra (accredited 13 Oct. 1988).

Of Great Britain in India (Chanakyapuri, New Delhi 1100-21)

*High Commissioner:* Sir David Goodall, KCMG.

Of India in the USA (2107 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* P. K. Kaul.

Of the USA in India (Shanti Path, Chanakyapuri, New Delhi 21)

*Ambassador:* John G. Dean.

Of India to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Chinmaya Rajaninath Gharekhan.

## Further Reading

*Special works relating to States are shown under their separate headings.*

*India: A Reference Annual.* Delhi Govt. Printer. Annual

*Cambridge History of India.* 6 vols. CUP, 1922-47. Supp., 1953

*The Times of India Directory and Yearbook.* Bombay and London. Annual

Akbar, M. J., *India: The Siege Within.* Harmondsworth, 1985

Balasubramanyam, V. N., *The Economy of India.* London, 1985

Bardham, P., *The Political Economy of Development in India.* Oxford, 1984

Brown, J., *Modern India: The Origins of an Asian Democracy.* OUP, 1985

Chatterjee, S. P., *Indian Climatology.* Calcutta, 1956. (ed.), *National Atlas of India* (Preliminary (Hindi) edition). Calcutta, 1957

Fishlock, T., *India File: Inside the Subcontinent.* London, 1983

von Fürer-Haimendorf, C., *Tribes of India: the Struggle for Survival.* Univ. of California Press, 1983

Kesavan, B. S. and Kulkarni, V. Y. (eds) *The National Bibliography of Indian Literature, 1901-53.* New Delhi, 1963 ff.

Gupta, G. K. and Kharbas, D. S., *India.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Hall, A., *The Emergence of Modern India.* Columbia Univ. Press, 1981

Hart, D., *Nuclear Power in India: a Comparative Analysis.* London, 1983

Majumdar, R. C., Raychandhuri, H. C. and Datta, K., *An Advanced History of India.* 2nd ed. London, 1950

Mehra, P., *A Dictionary of Modern Indian History, 1707-1947.* Delhi, 1987

Mitra, H. N., *The Indian Annual Register.* Calcutta, from 1953

Moore, R. J., *Making the New Commonwealth.* Oxford, 1987

Nanda, B. R. (ed.) *Socialism in India.* Delhi, Bombay, Bangalore, Kanpur, London, 1972

Pachauri, R. K., *Energy and Economic Development in India.* New York, 1977

Philips, C. H. (ed.) *The Evolution of India and Pakistan: Select Documents.* OUP, 1962 ff.—  
*Politics and Society in India.* London, 1963

Poplai, S. L. (ed.) *India, 1947-50* (select documents). 2 vols. Bombay and London, 1959

Ray, R. K., *Industrialisation of India.* OUP, 1983

Roach, J. R., (ed.) *India 2000: The Next Fifteen Years.* Riverdale, My, 1986

Smith, V. E., *Oxford History of India.* 3rd ed. OUP, 1958

Spear, P., *India: A Modern History.* 2nd ed. Univ. of Michigan Press, 1972

Sutton, S. C., *Guide to the India Office Library (founded in 1801)*. HMSO, 1952  
 Thomas, R., *India's Emergence as an Industrial Power*. Royal Institute of International Affairs, London, 1982  
 Yasdani, C. (ed.) *Early History of the Deccan*. 2 vols. London, 1960

## STATES AND TERRITORIES

The Republic of India is composed of the following 25 States and 7 centrally administered Union Territories:

<i>States</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>States</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Andhra Pradesh	Hyderabad	Manipur	Imphal
Arunachal Pradesh	Itanagar	Meghalaya	Shillong
Assam	Dispur	Mizoram	Aizawl
Bihar	Patna	Nagaland	Kohima
Goa	Panaji	Orissa	Bhubaneswar
Gujarat	Ahmedabad	Punjab	Chandigarh
Haryana	Chandigarh	Rajasthan	Jaipur
Himachal Pradesh	Shimla	Sikkim	Gangtok
Jammu and Kashmir	Srinagar	Tamil Nadu	Madras
Karnataka	Bangalore	Tripura	Agartala
Kerala	Trivandrum	Uttar Pradesh	Lucknow
Madhya Pradesh	Bhopal	West Bengal	Calcutta
Maharashtra	Bombay		

### *Union Territories*

Andaman and Nicobar Islands; Chandigarh; Dadra and Nagar Haveli; Delhi; Daman and Diu; Lakshadweep; Pondicherry.

*States Reorganization.* The Constitution, which came into force on 26 Jan. 1950, provided for 9 Part A States (Assam, Bihar, Bombay, Madhya Pradesh, Madras, Orissa, Punjab, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal) which corresponded to the previous governors' provinces; 8 Part B States (Hyderabad, Jammu and Kashmir, Madhya Bharat, Mysore, Patalia-East Punjab (PEPSU), Rajasthan, Saurashtra and Travancore-Cochin) which corresponded to Indian states or unions of states; 10 Part C States (Ajmer, Bhopal, Bilaspur, Coorg, Delhi, Himachal Pradesh, Kutch, Manipur, Tripura and Vindhya Pradesh) which corresponded to the chief commissioners' provinces; and Part D Territories and other areas (e.g., Andaman and Nicobar Islands). Part A States (under governors) and Part B States (under rajpramukhs) had provincial autonomy with a ministry and elected assembly. Part C States (under chief commissioners) were the direct responsibility of the Union Government, although Kutch, Manipur and Tripura had legislatures with limited powers. Andhra was formed as a Part A State on its separation from Madras in 1953. Bilaspur was merged with Himachal Pradesh in 1954.

The States Reorganization Act, 1956, abolished the distinction between Parts A, B and C States and established two categories for the units of the Indian Union to be called States and Territories. The following were the main territorial changes: the Telugu districts of Hyderabad were merged with Andhra; Mysore absorbed the whole Kannada-speaking area (including Coorg, the greater part of 4 districts of Bombay, 3 districts of Hyderabad and 1 district of Madras); Bhopal, Vindhya Pradesh and Madhya Bharat were merged with Madhya Pradesh, which ceded 8 Marathi-speaking districts to Bombay; the new state of Kerala, comprising the majority of Malayalam-speaking peoples, was formed from Travancore-Cochin with a small area from Madras; Patalia-East Punjab was included in Punjab; Kutch and Saurashtra in Bombay; and Ajmer in Rajasthan; Hyderabad ceased to exist.

On 1 May 1960 Bombay State was divided into two parts: 17 districts (including Saurashtra and Kutch) in the north and west became the new state of Gujarat; the remainder was renamed the state of Maharashtra.

In Aug. 1961 the former Portuguese territories of Dadra and Nagar Haveli became a Union territory. The Portuguese territory of Goa and the smaller territories of Daman and Diu, occupied by India in Dec. 1961, were constituted a Union territory in March 1962. In Aug. 1962 the former French territories of Pondicherry, Karikal, Mahé and Yanaon were formally transferred to India and



became a Union territory. In Sept. 1962 the Naga Hills Tuensang Area was constituted a separate state under the name of Nagaland. On 1 Nov. 1966, under the Punjab Reorganization Act 1966, a new state of Haryana and a new Union Territory of Chandigarh were created from parts of Punjab (India); for details, see pp. 661 and 694. On 26 Jan. 1971 Himachal Pradesh became a state. In 1972 the North East Frontier Agency and Mizo hill district were made Union territories (as Arunachal Pradesh and Mizoram) and Manipur, Meghalaya and Tripura full states. Sikkim became a state in 1975. Statehood for Mizoram was passed by parliament in July 1986; for Arunachal Pradesh in Dec. 1986; for Goa in May 1987.

*Report of the States Reorganization Commission.* Government of India. Delhi, 1956

## ANDHRA PRADESH

**HISTORY.** Andhra was constituted a separate state on 1 Oct. 1953, on its partition from Madras, and consisted of the undisputed Telugu-speaking area of that state. To this region was added, on 1 Nov. 1956, the Telangana area of the former Hyderabad State, comprising the districts of Hyderabad, Medak, Nizamabad, Karimnaga, Warangal, Khammam, Nalgonda and Mahbubnaga, parts of the Adilabad district and some taluks of the Raichur, Gulbarga and Bidar districts, and some revenue circles of the Nanded district. On 1 April 1960, 221.4 sq. miles in the Chingleput and Salem districts of Madras were transferred to Andhra Pradesh in exchange for 410 sq. miles from Chittoor district. The district of Prakasam was formed on 2 Feb. 1970. Hyderabad was split into 2 districts on 15 Aug. 1978. A new district, Vizianagaram, was formed in 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Andhra Pradesh is in south India and is bounded south by Tamil Nadu, west by Karnataka, north and northwest by Maharashtra, northeast by Madhya Pradesh and Orissa, east by the Bay of Bengal. The state has an area of 275,100 sq. km and a population (1981 census) of 53.5m. Density, 195 per sq. km. Growth rate 1971–81, 23.19%. The principal language is Telugu. Cities with over 250,000 population (1981 census), see p. 631. Other large cities (1981): Nellore (236,879); Kakinada (226,600); Kurnool (206,700); Nizamabad (183,135); Eluru (168,100); Machilipatnam (138,500); Anantapur (119,536); Tenali (119,200); Tirupati (115,200); Vizianagaram (115,200); Adoni (108,900); Proddatur (107,100); Cuddapah (103,100); Bheemavaram (101,940).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Andhra Pradesh has a unicameral legislature; the Legislative Council was abolished in June 1985. There are 295 seats in the Legislative Assembly. At the election of March 1985, the Telegu Dasam party continued in office.

For administrative purposes there are 23 districts in the state. The capital is Hyderabad.

*Governor:* M. S. Kumud Ben Joshi.

*Chief Minister:* N. J. Rama Rao.

**BUDGET.** The budget (estimate) for 1988–89 showed total receipts on revenue account of Rs 4,612.34 crores, and expenditure of Rs 4,755.99 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There are 6 hydro-electric plants including Machkund, Upper Sileru and Nizam Sagar and 5 thermal stations including Nellore and Kothagudam. Installed capacity, 1987–88, 3,604 mw., power generated 13,799m. kwh. In 1987–88 there were 24,600 electrified villages and 828,000 electric pump sets.

**Gas.** Natural gas has been found in the Krishna–Godavari basin, where 3 gas-powered generating stations are proposed.

**Water.** In 1987–88, 15 large and 36 medium irrigation projects were in hand. The

Telugu Ganga joint project with Tamil Nadu, now in execution, will irrigate about 233,000 hectares, besides supplying drinking water to Madras city (Tamil Nadu).

**Minerals** The state is an important producer of asbestos and barytes. Other important minerals are copper ore, coal, iron and limestone, steatite, mica and manganese.

**Agriculture.** There were (1987-88) about 12.1m. hectares of cropped land, of which 3.87m. hectares were under food-grains. Yield per hectare, in kg: Sugarcane, 7,483; rice, 2,264; ground-nuts, 787; tobacco, 975; jowar, 650; cotton, 204; castor, 186.

Livestock (1983 provisional): Cattle, 13.12m.; buffaloes, 8.7m.; goats, 5.5m.; sheep, 7.5m.

**Forests.** In 1987 it was estimated that forests occupy 23.2% of the total area of the state or 63,771 sq. km; main forest products are teak, eucalyptus, cashew, casuarina, softwoods and bamboo.

**Fisheries.** Production 1986-87, 140,841 tonnes of marine fish and 107,950 tonnes of inland water fish. The state has a coastline of 974 km.

**INDUSTRY.** The main industries are textile manufacture, sugar-milling machine tools, pharmaceuticals, cement, chemicals, glass, fertilizers, electronic equipment, heavy electrical machinery, aircraft parts and paper-making. There is an oil refinery at Vishakhapatnam, where India's only major shipbuilding yards are situated. In 1988 a steel plant was under construction at Vishakhapatnam and a railway repair shop at Tirupathi.

Cottage industry includes the manufacture of carpets, wooden and lacquer toys, brocades, bidriware, filigree and lace-work. The wooden toys of Nirmal and Kondapalli are particularly well known. Sericulture is developing rapidly. District Industries Centres have been set up to promote small-scale industry.

Tourism is growing; the main centres are Hyderabad, Nagarjunasagar, Warangal, Araku Valley, Horsley Hills and Tirupathi.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 March 1987 there were 2,352 km of national highways, 8,387 km of state highways, 25,487 km of major district roads, 85,156 km of other roads. Number of vehicles: 535,000 motor cycles and scooters, 58,500 cars and jeeps, 63,760 goods vehicles and 12,000 buses.

**Railways.** In 1987-88 there were approximately 5,090 route-km of railway, of which 3,032 km were broad gauge.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Hyderabad, Tirupathi, Vijayawada and Vishakhapatnam, with regular scheduled services to Bombay, Delhi, Calcutta, Bangalore and Madras. A feeder airline serves Rajahmundry and Cuddapah.

**Shipping.** The chief port is Vishakhapatnam. There are minor ports at Kakinada, Machilipatnam, Bheemunipatnam, Narsapur, Krishnapatnam, Vadarevu and Kalingapatnam.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The high court of Judicature at Hyderabad has a Chief Justice and 25 puisne judges.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 47,525,681; Moslems, 4,533,700; Christians, 1,433,327; Jains 18,642; Sikhs, 16,222; Buddhists, 12,930.

**Education.** In 1981, 29.94% of the population were literate (39.13% of men and 20.52% of women). There were, in 1986-87 44,299 primary schools (5,344,000 students); 5,672 upper primary (1,890,000); 5,191 high schools (2,404,000). Education is free for children up to 14.

There were in 1986-87 361 degree colleges, 641 junior colleges and 13 universities: Osmania University, Hyderabad; Andhra University, Waltair; Sri Venkates-

wara University, Tirupathi; Kakatiya University, Warangal; Nagarjuna University, Guntur; Sri Jawaharlal Nehru Technological University, Hyderabad; Central University, Hyderabad; A.P. Agricultural University, Hyderabad; Sri Krishnadevaraya University, Anantapur; Smt. Padmarathi Mahila Vishwaridyalayam (University for Women), Tirupathi; A. P. Open University, Hyderabad; Telugu University, Hyderabad and A. P. Medical University, Vijayawada.

## ARUNACHAL PRADESH

**HISTORY.** In Jan. 1972 the former North East Frontier Agency of Assam was created a Union Territory. In Dec. 1986, by the Constitution (55th Amendment) and State of Arunachal Pradesh Acts, the Territory became the 24th state of India.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state is in north-east India and is bounded by Assam, Bhutan, China and Burma; it comprises the former frontier divisions of Kameng, Tirap, Subansiri, Siang and Lohit; it has an area of 81,426 sq. km and a population (1981 census) of 628,050; growth, 1971-81, 34.34%; density, 7 per sq. km.

The state is mainly tribal; there are over 80 tribes using about 50 tribal dialects.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** There is a Legislative Assembly of 30 members. Elections were to be held during 1987. The capital is Itanagar.

*Lieut.-Governor:* R. D. Pradhan.

*Chief Minister:* Gegong Apang.

**NATURAL RESOURCES.** About 60% of the land area is forest, and most is mountainous. There is some farming on terraced land; crops include rice, rubber, coffee, fruits and spices. Agriculture employs about 46% of the population.

## ASSAM

**HISTORY.** Assam first became a British Protectorate at the close of the first Burmese War in 1826. In 1832 Cachar was annexed; in 1835 the Jaintia Hills were included in the East India Company's dominions, and in 1839 Assam was annexed to Bengal. In 1874 Assam was detached from Bengal and made a separate chief commissionership. On the partition of Bengal in 1905, it was united to the Eastern Districts of Bengal under a Lieut.-Governor. From 1912 the chief commissionership of Assam was revived, and in 1921 a governorship was created. On the partition of India almost the whole of the predominantly Moslem district of Sylhet was merged with East Bengal (Pakistan). Dewangiri in North Kamrup was ceded to Bhutan in 1951. The Naga Hill district, administered by the Union Government since 1957, became part of Nagaland in 1962. The autonomous state of Meghalaya within Assam, comprising the districts of Garo Hills and Khasi and Jaintia Hills, came into existence on 2 April 1970, and achieved full independent statehood in Jan. 1972, when it was also decided to form a Union Territory, Mizoram (now a state), from the Mizo Hills district.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Assam is in eastern India, almost separated from central India by Bangladesh. It is bounded west by West Bengal, north by Bhutan and Arunachal Pradesh, east by Nagaland, Manipur and Burma, south by Meghalaya, Bangladesh, Mizoram and Tripura. The area of the state is now approximately 78,438 sq km. Its population (1981 census) 19.9m. Density, 254 per sq. km. Growth rate since 1971, 36.09%. Principal towns with population (1971) are; Guwahati, 122,981; Dibrugarh, 80,344; Tinsukia, 55,392; Nowgong, 52,892; Silchar, 52,612. The principal language is Assamese.



The central government is surveying the line of a proposed boundary fence to prevent illegal entry from Bangladesh.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Assam has a unicameral legislature of 126 members. In Dec. 1985 elections were held and an Asom Gana Parishad government was returned. The temporary capital is Dispur.

*Governor:* B. N. Singh.

*Chief Minister:* P. Kumar Mahanta.

**BUDGET.** The revised budget estimates for 1986-87 showed revenue account receipts of Rs 1,152.8 crores and expenditure of Rs 1,170.6 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1985-86 there was an installed capacity of 428 mw and 13,648 villages (out of 21,995) with electricity. New power stations are under construction at Lakwa, and Karbi-Langpi hydro-electricity project.

**Oil.** Assam contains important oilfields and produces about 50% of India's crude oil. There is also natural gas.

**Water.** In 1986-87, 448,000 hectares were irrigated; 2 major and 18 medium projects were in hand.

**Minerals.** Coal production (1985), 834,000 tonnes. The state also has limestone, refractory clay, dolomite, and corundum.

**Agriculture.** There are 802 tea plantations, and growing tea is the principal industry. Production in 1985, 352m. kg, over 50% of Indian tea. Over 72% of the cultivated area is under food crops, of which the most important is rice. Total food-grains, 1985-86, 30.3m. tonnes. Main cash crops: Jute, tea, cotton, oilseeds, sugar-cane, fruit and potatoes. Wheat has been introduced recently and yielded 100,500 tonnes in 1985-86. Cattle are important.

**Forestry.** There are 17,400 sq. km of reserved forests under the administration of the Forest Department and 10,063.81 sq. km of unclassed forests, altogether about 30% of the total area of the state. Revenue from forests, 1985-86, Rs 216m.

**INDUSTRY.** Sericulture and hand-loom weaving, both silk and cotton, are important home industries together with the manufacture of brass, cane and bamboo articles. Hand-loom weaving of silk is stimulated by state and central development schemes. There are two silk-spinning mills and 26 cotton-mills. The main heavy industry is petro-chemicals; there are 3 oil refineries. Other industries include manufacturing paper, fertilizers, sugar, jute and plywood products, rice and oil milling.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984-85 there were 26,352 km of road maintained by the Public Works Department in Assam, including national highway. There were 135,322 motor vehicles in the state in 1985.

**Railways.** The route km of railways in 1988 was 2,338 km, of which 262.09 km are broad gauge.

**Aviation.** Daily scheduled flights connect the principal towns with the rest of India. There are airports at Guwahati, Tezpur, Jorhat, North Lakhimpur, Silchar and Dibrugarh.

**Shipping.** Water transport is important in Lower Assam; the main waterway is the Brahmaputra River. Cargo carried in 1986 was 65,000 tonnes.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The seat of the High Court is Guwahati. It has a Chief Justice and 6 puisne judges.

**Religion.** At the 1971 census Hindus numbered 10,604,618; Moslems, 3,592,124; Christians, 381,010; Buddhists, 22,565; Jains, 12,914; Sikhs, 11,920.

**Education.** In 1986-87 there were 26,952 primary/junior basic schools; 5,356 middle/senior basic; 2,948 high/higher secondary. There were 165 colleges for general education, 3 medical colleges, 3 engineering and 1 agricultural, 8 teacher-training colleges and 3 universities. There is a fisheries college at Raha.

Goswami, P. C., *Economic Development of Assam*. London, 1963

Reid, Sir Robert, *History of the Frontier Areas Bordering on Assam*. Shillong, 1942

## BIHAR

The state contains the ethnic areas of North Bihar, Santhalpargana and Chota Nagpur. In 1956 certain areas of Purnea and Manbhum districts were transferred to West Bengal.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Bihar is in north India and is bounded north by Nepal, east by West Bengal, south by Orissa, south-west by Madhya Pradesh and west by Uttar Pradesh. The area of Bihar is 173,877 sq. km and its population (1981 census), 69,914,734, a density of 402 per sq. km. Growth rate since 1971, 24.06%. Population of principal towns, *see* p. 631. Other large towns (1981): Muzaffarpur, 189,765; Darbhanga, 175,879; Biharsharif, 151,305; Munghyr, 129,187; Arrah, 124,614; Katihar, 121,693; Dhanbad, 119,807; Chapra, 111,407; Purnea, 109,649; Bermo, 101,502.

The official language is Hindi (55.8m. speakers at the 1981 census), the second, Urdu (6.9m.), the third, Bengali (2m.).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Bihar has a bicameral legislature. The Legislative Assembly consists of 324 elected members and the Council, 96. After the elections in March 1985 a Congress government was returned. For the purposes of administration the state is divided into 10 divisions covering 39 districts. The capital is Patna.

*Governor:* J. Pahadia.

*Chief Minister:* (Vacant).

**BUDGET.** The budget estimates for 1989-90 show total receipts of Rs 37,346.7m and expenditure of Rs 37,574.7m. Plan allocation, 1989-90, Rs 18,000m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity (1985-86) 1,379.68 mw. Power generated (1986-87), 3,695m. kw.; there were 38,197 villages with electricity. Hydro-electric projects in hand will add about 149.2mw. capacity.

**Minerals.** Bihar is very rich in minerals, with about 40% of national production. There are huge deposits of copper, apatite and kyanite and sizeable deposits of coal, mica and china clay. Bihar is a principal producer of iron ore. Other important minerals: Manganese, limestone, graphite, chromite, asbestos, barytes, dolomite, feldspar, columbite, pyrites, saltpetre, glass sands, slate, lead, silver, building stones and radio-active minerals.

**Agriculture.** About 26% of the cultivable area is irrigated. Cultivable land, 11.6m. hectares, of a total area of 17.4m. hectares. Total cropped area, 1986-87, 8.5m. hectares. Production (1986-87): Rice, 6.0m. tonnes; wheat, 2.9m.; total foodgrains, 10.9m. Other food crops are maize, rabi and pulses. Main cash crops are jute, sugar-cane, oilseeds, tobacco and potato.

Forests in 1984 covered 30,896 hectares. There are 12 protected forests.

**INDUSTRY.** Main plants are the Tata Iron and Steel Co., the Tata Engineering and Locomotive Co., the steel plant at Bokaro, oil refinery at Barauni, Heavy

Engineering Corporation and Foundry Forge project at Ranchi, and aluminium plant at Muri. Other important industries are machine tools, fertilizers, electrical engineering, sugar-milling, paper-milling, silk-spinning, manufacturing explosives and cement. There is a copper smelter at Ghatsila and a zinc plant at Tundo. There were 54,396 small industries in 1985.

**TOURISM.** The main tourist centres are Bodh Gaya, Patna, Nalanda, Jamshedpur, Sasaram, Betla, Hazaribagh and Vaishali.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1983-84 the state had 84,185 km of highway. Passenger transport has been nationalized in 7 districts. There were 289,717 motor vehicles in March 1988.

**Railways.** The North Eastern, South Eastern and Eastern railways traverse the state; route-km, 1985-86, 5,362.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Patna and Ranchi with regular scheduled services to Calcutta and Delhi.

**Shipping.** The length of waterways open for navigation is 900 miles.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a High Court (constituted in 1916) at Patna, and a bench at Ranchi, with a Chief Justice, 32 puisne judges and 4 additional judges.

**Police.** The police force is under a Director General of Police; in 1986 there were 1,036 police stations.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 58,011,070; Moslems, 9,874,993; Christians, 740,186; Sikhs, 77,704; Jains, 27,613; Buddhists, 3,003.

**Education.** At the census of 1981 the number of literates was 18.32m. (26.2%: males 38.11%; females, 13.62%). There were, 1985-86, 3,666 high and higher secondary schools with (1984-85) 1.4m. pupils, 11,841 middle schools with 2.1m. pupils, 50,798 primary schools with 8,203,000 pupils. Primary and middle schools had 211,719 teachers, higher secondary, high schools and junior colleges, 43,593. Education is free for children aged 6-11.

There were 10 universities in academic year 1986-87; Patna University (founded 1917) with 18,895 students (1984-85); Bihar University, Muzaffarpur (1952) with 57 constituent colleges, 10 affiliated colleges and 75,886 students (1981-82); Bhagalpur University (1960) with 40,182 students (1983-84); Ranchi University (1960) with 66,296 students (1982-83); Darbhanga Sanskrit University (1961); Magadha University, Gaya (1962) and Lalit Narayan Mithila University (1972), Darbhanga.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 259 hospitals with 19,583 beds, and 861 dispensaries with 4,166 beds.

Das, A. N., *Agrarian Movements in India: Studies in 20th Century Bihar*. London, 1982

## GOA

**HISTORY.** The coastal area was captured by the Portuguese in 1510 and the inland area was added in the 18th century. In Dec. 1961 Portuguese rule was ended and Goa incorporated into the Indian Union as a Territory together with Daman and Diu. Goa was granted statehood as a separate unit on 30 May 1987. Daman and Diu remained Territories (see p. 695).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Goa, bounded on the north by Maharashtra and on the east and South by Karnataka, has a coastline of 105 km. The area is 3,702 sq. km. (Population, 1981 census, 1,007,749). Density, 272 per sq. km.



Panaji is the largest town: population (urban agglomeration, 1981) 76,839. The languages spoken are Konkani (official language) Marathi, Hindi, English.

**GOVERNMENT.** The Indian Parliament passed legislation in March 1962 by which Goa became a Union Territory with retrospective effect from 20 Dec. 1961. On 30 May 1987 Goa attained statehood, it is represented by 3 elected and one nominated representatives in Parliament. There is a Legislative Assembly of 31 members of which 3 are nominated. The Capital is Panaji. There are 196 village Panchayats.

*Governor:* Dr Gopal Singh.

*Chief Minister:* Pratapsing Rane.

**BUDGET.** The total budget for 1987-88 was Rs 238.07 crores. Annual plan 1988-89, Rs 92 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Seventeen towns and 396 villages were supplied with electric power by March 1987; Goa receives its power supply from the neighbouring states of Maharashtra and Karnataka.

**Minerals.** Resources include manganese ore and iron ore, both of which are exported. There are also reserves of bauxite, lime stone and clay.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the main occupation, important crops are rice, pulses, ragi, mango, cashew and coconuts. Area irrigated under paddy (1986-87) 37,050 hectares of high yielding grains (production 106,607 tonnes). Area under pulses 4,323, sugar-cane 1,751, groundnut 570.

Government poultry and dairy farming schemes produced 77.5m. eggs and 7.74m. litres of milk in 1986-87.

**Fisheries.** Fish is the territory's staple food. In 1986-87 the catch of seafish was 60,116 tonnes (value Rs 109,975 lakhs). There is a coastline of about 105 km and about 4,074 active fishing vessels.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986-87 there were 31 large and medium industrial projects and 3,527 small units registered. There were 11 Government industrial estates. Small units were mainly occupied in making nylon fishing-nets, ready made clothing, pesticides, pharmaceuticals and footwear.

In 1986 there were 46 small-scale industry units employing 23,730 persons.

**ROADS.** In 1986 there were 4,164 km of motorable roads (National Highway, 224 km).

**JUSTICE.** There is a bench of the Bombay High Court at Panaji.

Hutt, A., *Goa: A Traveller's Historical and Architectural Guide*. Buckhurst Hill, 1988

## GUJARAT

**HISTORY.** On 1 May 1960, as a result of the Bombay Reorganization Act, 1960, the state of Gujarat was formed from the north and west (predominantly Gujarati-speaking) portion of Bombay State, the remainder being renamed the state of Maharashtra. Gujarat consists of the following districts of the former state of Bombay: Banas Kantha, Mehsana, Sabar Kantha, Ahmedabad, Kaira, Panch Mahals, Vadodara, Bharuch, Surat, Dangs, Amreli, Surendranagar, Rajkot, Jamnagar, Junagadh, Bhavnagar, Kutch, Gandhinagar and Bulsar.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Gujarat is in western India and is bounded north by Pakistan and Rajasthan, east by Madhya Pradesh, south-east by Maharashtra, south and west by the Indian ocean and Arabian sea. The area of the state is 195,984 sq. km and the population at the 1981 census (revised) was

34,086,000; a density of 174 per sq. km. Growth rate 1971–81, 27.2%. The chief cities, *see* p. 631. Gujarati and Hindi in the Devanagari script are the official languages.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Gujarat has a unicameral legislature, the Legislative Assembly, which has 182 elected members. After the elections in March 1985 a Congress government was returned.

The capital is Gandhinagar. There are 19 districts.

*Governor:* Ram Krishna Trivedi.

*Chief Minister:* Amarsinh Chaudhury.

**BUDGET.** The budget estimates for 1986–87 showed an overall deficit of Rs 41.21 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1985 the total generating capacity was 3,383 mw of electricity, serving 34,500 towns and villages and 322,681 wells and tube-wells.

**Water.** The Karjan Dam, under construction, will provide a reservoir of 630m. cu. metres capacity; it is designed to irrigate 56,000 hectares through 2 main canals.

**Oil and Gas.** There were crude oil and gas reserves in 23 fields in 1982–83. Production: Crude oil, 3.2m. tonnes; gas, 658.5m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Chief minerals produced in 1983 (in tonnes) included lime stone (3.6m.), agate stone (541), calcite (612), quartz and silica (204,459), bauxite (520,000), crude china clay (10,557), refined china clays (10,335), dolomite (279,232), crude fluorite (105,886), graded fluorite (348), calcareous and sea sand (630,000) and lignite (646,000). Enormous reserves of coal were found under the Kalol and Mehsana oil and gas fields in May 1980. The deposit, mixed with crude petroleum, is estimated at 100,000m. tonnes, extending over 500 km.

**Agriculture.** In 1985–86 drought was exceptionally severe. Cropped area, 1981–82, was 10.9m. hectares. Area and production of principal crops, 1984–85 (in 1,000 hectares and 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 566 and 835; groundnuts, 2,061 and 1,572; cotton, 1,383 and 2,069,000 bales of 170 kg. Total cropped area 3.9m. hectares producing 4.7m. tonnes.

Livestock (1982): Buffaloes, 4.43m.; other cattle, 6.93m.; sheep, 2.33m.; goats, 3.26m.; horses and ponies, 24,000.

**Fisheries.** There were (1984) about 225,000 people engaged in fisheries. There were 11,774 fishing vessels (4,245 motor vessels). The catch for 1982–83 (estimate) was 212,419 tonnes.

**INDUSTRY.** Gujarat is one of the 4 most industrialized states. In 1985 there were more than 70,000 small-scale units and 13,000 factories including 1,328 textile factories. There were 167 industrial estates. Principal industries are textiles, general and electrical engineering, petrochemicals, machine tools, heavy chemicals, pharmaceuticals, dyes, sugar, soda ash and cement. Large fertilizer plants have been set up and there is an oil refinery at Koyali near Vadodara, with a developing petro-chemical complex.

State production of soda-ash is 90.4% of national output, and of salt, about 60%. Salt production (1984) 8.4m. tonnes; cement production, 142,100 tonnes.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 there were 57,845 km of roads. Gujarat State Transport Corporation operated 13,284 routes.

**Railways.** In 1983 the state had 5,633 km of railway line.

**Aviation.** Ahmedabad is the main airport. There are 5 services daily between Ahmedabad and Bombay, Jaipur and Delhi. There are 8 other airports: Baroda, Bhavnagar, Bhuj, Jamnagar, Kandla, Keshod, Porbandar and Rajkot.

**Shipping.** The largest port is Kandla. There are 39 other ports, 11 intermediate, 28 minor.

**Post.** There were (March 1984–85) 9,000 post offices, 2,000 telegraph offices. Ahmedabad has direct dialling telephone connexion (or night S.T.D.) with 273 cities and 16 foreign countries. There were 227,000 telephone connexions in the state.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court of Judicature at Ahmedabad has a Chief Justice and 18 puisne judges.

**Religion.** At the 1971 census Hindus numbered 23,835,471; Moslems, 2,249,055; Jains, 451,578; Christians, 109,341; Sikhs, 18,233; Buddhists, 5,469.

**Education.** In 1981 the number of literates was 14.85m. (43.7%). Primary and secondary education up to Standard XI are free. Education above Standard XII is free for girls. In 1984–85 there were 27,087 primary schools; nearly all villages with more than 200 people have one within 1.5 km. There were 4,125 secondary schools including 1,416 higher secondary schools.

There are 7 universities in the state. Gujarat University, Ahmedabad, founded in 1949, is teaching and affiliating; it has 149 affiliated colleges. The Maharaja Sayajirao University of Vadodara (1949) is residential and teaching. The Sardar Patel University, Vallabh-Vidyanagar, (1955) has 16 constituent and affiliated colleges. The 2 newer universities (1967) are Saurashtra University at Rajkot with 54 affiliated colleges, and South Gujarat at Surat with 37. Bhavnagar University (1978) is residential and teaching with 7 affiliated colleges. North Gujarat University was established at Patan in 1986. Gujarat Vidyapith at Ahmedabad is deemed a university under the University Grants Commission Act. There were also 1 agricultural and 1 Ayurvedic university.

There are 9 engineering colleges, 24 polytechnics, 5 medical colleges, 6 agricultural, 3 pharmaceutical and 2 veterinary. In 1984–85 the total number of higher education institutes was 400, with 213,000 students.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 260 primary health centres and 4,869 sub-centres.

Rushbrook Williams, L. F., *The Black Hills: Kutch in History and Legend*. London, 1958  
Desai, I. F., *Untouchability in Rural Gujarat*. Bombay, 1977

## HARYANA

**HISTORY.** The state of Haryana, created on 1 Nov. 1966 under the Punjab Reorganization Act, 1966, was formed from the Hindi-speaking parts of the state of Punjab (India). It comprises the districts of Hissar, Mohindergarh, Gurgaon, Rohtak and Karnal; Bhiwani, Faridabad, Jind, Kurukshetra, Sirsa, Sonapat, Ambala.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Haryana is in north India and is bounded north by Himachal Pradesh, east by Uttar Pradesh, south and west by Rajasthan and north-west by Punjab. Delhi forms an enclave on its eastern boundary. The state has an area of 44,212 sq. km and a population (1981) of 12,922,618; density, 291 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971–81, 28.75%. The principal language is Hindi.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The state has a unicameral legislature with 90 members. In Dec. 1988 Lok Dal held 66 seats; Bharatiya Janata, 17; Congress (I), 4; others, 2; vacant, 1. The state shares with Punjab (India) a High Court, a university and certain public services. The capital (shared with Punjab) is Chandigarh (*see* p. 694). Its transfer to Punjab, intended for 1986, has been postponed. There are 12 districts.

*Governor:* H. R. Barari.

*Chief Minister:* Devi Lal.



**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1988-89 show income of Rs 1,447.5 crores and expenditure of Rs 1,350 crores. Annual plan 1988-89, Rs 600 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Approximately 1,000 mw are supplied to Haryana, mainly from the Bhakra Nangar system. In 1985-86 installed capacity was 1,572 mw and all the villages had electric power.

**Minerals.** Minerals include placer gold, barytes and rare earths. Value of production, 1984-85, Rs 39m.

**Agriculture.** Haryana has sandy soil and erratic rainfall, but the state shares the benefit of the Sutlej-Beas scheme. Agriculture employs over 82% of the working population; in 1981 there were about 900,000 holdings (average 3.7 hectares), and the gross irrigated area was 1.97m. hectares. Area under high-yielding varieties of foodgrains, 1986-87, 2.54m. hectares; foodgrain production was 7.64m. tonnes; sugar (gur), oilseeds, and wheat, are important.

Forests cover 3.3% of the state.

**INDUSTRY.** Haryana has a large market for consumer goods in neighbouring Delhi. In 1987-88 there were 376 large and medium scale industries employing 120,000 and producing goods worth over Rs 10,000m. There were 78,000 small units. The main industries are cotton textiles, agricultural machinery, woollen textiles, scientific instruments, glass, cement, paper and sugar milling, cars, tyres and tubes, motor cycles, bicycles, steel tubes, engineering goods, electrical and electronic goods. An oil refinery is being set up at Karnal, capital outlay, Rs 1,300 crores.

### COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1987-88) about 20,285 km of metalled roads, linking all villages. Road transport is nationalized. There were 139,890 motor vehicles in 1982-83.

**Railways.** The state is crossed by lines from Delhi to Agra, Ajmer, Ferozepur and Chandigarh. Route km, 1983-84, 1,501. The main stations are at Ambala and Kurukshetra.

**Aviation.** There is no airport within the state but Delhi is on its eastern boundary.

### JUSTICE AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** Haryana shares the High Court of Punjab and Haryana at Chandigarh.

**Education.** In 1981 the number of literates was 4.67m. In 1987-88 there were 8,496 schools and colleges with 3,021,333 attending. This includes 5,048 primary schools, 2,049 high and higher secondary schools, 1,222 middle schools and 132 colleges.

## HIMACHAL PRADESH

**HISTORY.** The territory came into being on 15 April 1948 and comprised 30 former Hill States. The state of Bilaspur was merged with Himachal Pradesh in 1954. The 6 original districts were: Mahasu, Sirmur, Mandi, Chamba, Bilaspur and Kinnaur. On 1 Nov. 1966, under the Punjab Reorganization Act, 1966, certain parts of the state of Punjab (India) were transferred to Himachal Pradesh. These comprise the districts of Shimla, Kulu, Kangra, and Lahaul and Spiti; and parts of Hoshiarpur and Ambala districts.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Himachal Pradesh is in north India and is bounded north by Kashmir, east by Tibet, south-east by Uttar Pradesh, south by Haryana, south-west and west by Punjab. The area of the state is 55,673 sq. km and

it had a population at the 1981 census of 4,280,818. Density, 77 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 23.71%. Principal language is Pahari.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Full statehood was attained, as the 18th state of the Union, on 25 Jan. 1971.

On 1 Sept. 1972 districts were reorganized and 2 new districts created, Hamirpur and Una, making a total of 12. The capital is Shimla.

There is a unicameral legislature. After the elections in March 1985 a Congress government was returned.

*Governor:* Vice Adm. (Retd.) R. K. S. Ghandhi.

*Chief Minister:* Vir Bhadra Singh.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1987-88 showed revenue receipts of Rs 549.19 (1986-87, Rs 529.75 crores) crores (including central assistance and centrally-sponsored schemes) and expenditure on revenue account of Rs 567.37 crores (Rs 494.79 crores). The capital account showed expenditure of Rs 244.56 crores (Rs 226.19 crores). Annual plan, 1988-89, Rs 260 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In March 1987, 16,141 villages had electricity. Power generation is the first priority of the 7th five-year plan.

**Water.** An artificial confluence of the Sutlej and Beas rivers has been made, directing their united flow into Govind Sagar Lake.

**Minerals.** The state has rock salt, slate, gypsum, limestone, barytes, dolomite and pyrites.

**Agriculture.** Farming employs 76% of the people. Irrigated area is 26% of the area sown. Main crops are seed potatoes, wheat, maize, rice and fruits such as apples, peaches, apricots, nuts, pomegranates.

Production of foodgrains (1986) 1.32m. tonnes.

Livestock (1977 census): Buffaloes, 384,497; other cattle, 2,106,220; goats, 1,035,337.

**Forestry.** Himachal Pradesh forests cover 38.3% of the state and supply the largest quantities of coniferous timber in northern India. They are the main source of revenue of Pradesh. The forests also ensure the safety of the catchment areas of the Jumna, Sutlej, Beas, Ravi and Chenab rivers.

**INDUSTRY.** The main sources of employment are the forests and their related industries; there are factories making turpentine and rosin. The state also makes fertilizers, cement and TV sets. There is a foundry and a brewery. Other industries include salt production and handicrafts, including weaving.

### COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The national highway from Chandigarh runs through Shimla; other main highways from Shimla serve Kulu, Manali, Kangra, Chamba and Pathankot. The rest are minor roads. Pathankot is also on national highways from Punjab to Kashmir.

**Railways.** There is a line from Chandigarh to Shimla, and the Jammu-Delhi line runs through Pathankot. A Nangal-Talwara rail link has been approved by the central government (1985).

**Aviation.** The state has airports at Bhuntar near Kulu and at Jubbarhathi near Shimla.

**JUSTICE.** The state has its own High Court at Shimla.

**EDUCATION.** In 1987, 43.91% of the population was literate.

## JAMMU AND KASHMIR

**HISTORY.** The state of Jammu and Kashmir, which had earlier been under Hindu rulers and Moslem sultans, became part of the Mogul Empire under Akbar from 1586. After a period of Afghan rule from 1756, it was annexed to the Sikh kingdom of the Punjab in 1819. In 1820 Ranjit Singh made over the territory of Jammu to Gulab Singh. After the decisive battle of Sobraon in 1846 Kashmir also was made over to Gulab Singh under the Treaty of Amritsar. British supremacy was recognized until the Indian Independence Act, 1947, when all states decided on accession to India or Pakistan. Kashmir asked for standstill agreements with both. Pakistan agreed, but India desired further discussion with the Government of Jammu and Kashmir State. In the meantime the state became subject to armed attack from the territory of Pakistan and the Maharajah acceded to India on 26 Oct. 1947, by signing the Instrument of Accession. India approached the UN in Jan. 1948; India-Pakistan conflict ended by ceasefire in Jan. 1949. Further conflict in 1965 was followed by the Tashkent Declaration of Jan. 1966. Following further hostilities between India and Pakistan a ceasefire came into effect on 17 Dec. 1971, followed by the Simla Agreement in July 1972, whereby a new line of control was delineated bilaterally through negotiations between India and Pakistan and came into force on 17 Dec. 1972.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state is in the extreme north and is bounded north by China, east by Tibet, south by Himachal Pradesh and Punjab and west by Pakistan. The area is 222,236 sq. km, of which about 78,932 sq. km is occupied by Pakistan and 42,735 sq. km by China; the population of the territory on the Indian side of the line, 1981 census, was 5,981,600. Growth rate, 1971-81, 29.57%. The official language is Urdu; other commonly spoken languages are Kashmiri (3.1m. speakers at 1981 census), Hindi (1m.), Dogri, Balti, Ladakhi and Punjabi.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Maharajah's son, Yuvraj Karan Singh, took over as Regent in 1950 and, on the ending of hereditary rule (17 Oct. 1952), was sworn in as Sadar-i-Riyasat. On his father's death (26 April 1961) Yuvraj Karan Singh was recognized as Maharajah by the Indian Government; he decided not to use the title while he was elected head of state.

The permanent Constitution of the state came into force in part on 17 Nov. 1956 and fully on 26 Jan. 1957. There is a bicameral legislature; the Legislative Council has 36 members and the Legislative Assembly has 76. Since the 1967 elections the 6 representatives of Jammu and Kashmir in the central House of the People are directly elected; there are 4 representatives in the Council of States. After a period of President's rule, a National Conference-Indira Congress coalition government was formed in March 1987.

Kashmir Province has 8 districts and Jammu Province has 6 districts. Srinagar (population, 1981, 586,038) is the summer and Jammu (206,135) the winter capital.

*Governor:* Jag Mohan.

*Chief Minister:* Farooq Abdullah.

**BUDGET.** Total planning expenditure for 1987-88 is Rs 375 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity (1986-87) 208.93 mw.; 5,468 villages had electricity.

**Minerals.** Minerals include coal, bauxite and gypsum.

**Agriculture.** About 80% of the population are supported by agriculture. Rice, wheat and maize are the major cereals. The total area under food crops (1983-84) was estimated at 860,900 hectares. Total foodgrains produced, 1985-86, 1.3m. tonnes. Fruit is important; production, 1985-86, 800,000 tonnes; exports, Rs 2,000m.



The Agrarian Reforms Act came into force in July 1978; the Debtors Relief Act and the Restriction of Mortgage Properties Act also alleviate rural distress. The redistribution of land to cultivators is continuing.

**Livestock** (1982): Cattle, 2,325,200; buffaloes, 5,631,000; goats, 1,003,900; sheep, 1,908,700; horses, 973,000, and poultry, 2,406,760.

**Forestry.** Forests cover about 20,891.89 sq. km., forming an important source of revenue, besides providing employment to a large section of the population. About 20,174 sq. km of forests yield valuable timber; state income in 1985-86 was Rs 477m.

**INDUSTRY.** There are 2 central public sector industries and 30 medium-scale (latter employing 6,468 in 1984). The largest industrial complex is the Bari Brahmar estate in Jammu which covers 320 acres and accommodates diverse manufacturing, as does the Khanmuh estate. The Sopore industrial area in Kashmir Division is intended for industries based on horticulture. There are 19,000 small units (1985-86) employing 86,713. The main traditional handicraft industries are silk spinning, wood-carving, papier-maché and carpet-weaving. Value of total industrial production, 1983-84, Rs 1,573m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Kashmir is linked with the rest of India by the motorable Jammu-Pathankot road. The Jawahar Tunnel, through the Banihal mountain, connects Srinagar and Jammu, and maintains road communication with the Kashmir Valley during the winter months. In 1983 there were 11,863 km of roads.

There were 52,930 motor vehicles in 1983-84.

**Railways.** Kashmir is linked with the Indian railway system by the line between Jammu and Pathankot; route km of railways in the state, 1985-86, 77 km.

**Aviation.** Major airports, with daily service from Delhi, are at Srinagar and Jammu. There is a third airport at Leh. Srinagar airport is being developed as an international airport.

**Post.** There were 1,290 post offices in 1980, 82 telephone exchanges and approximately 12,120 private telephones.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court, at Srinagar and Jammu, has a Chief Justice and 4 puisne judges.

**Religion.** The majority of the population, except in Jammu, are Moslems. At the 1981 census Moslems numbered 3,843,451; Hindus, 1,930,448; Sikhs, 133,675; Buddhists, 69,706; Christians, 8,481; Jains, 1,576.

**Education.** The proportion of literates was 27% in 1981. Education is free. There were (1984-85) 909 secondary schools, 2,113 middle and 7,646 primary schools; total, 739,000 pupils. Jammu University (1969) has 3 constituent and 11 affiliated colleges, with 8,118 students (1984-85); Kashmir University (1948) has 6 constituent, 12 affiliated and 6 oriental institutions (11,900 students); the third university is Sher-E-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences and Technology. There are 2 medical colleges, an engineering college, 1 agricultural college, 2 polytechnics, 12 professional colleges, 8 oriental colleges and an Ayurvedic college.

**Health.** In 1983-84 there were 45 hospitals, 93 primary health centres and 425 units, 679 clinics and dispensaries, and 483 other units. There were 2,036 doctors. There is a National Institute of Medical Sciences.

Bamzai, P. N. K., *A History of Kashmir*. Delhi, 1962

Gupta, S., *Kashmir: A Study in India-Pakistan Relations*. London, 1967

## KARNATAKA

**HISTORY.** The state of Karnataka, constituted as Mysore under the States Reorganization Act, 1956, brought together the Kannada-speaking people distri-

buted in 5 states, and consisted of the territories of the old states of Mysore and Coorg, the Bijapur, Kanara and Dharwar districts and the Belgaum district (except one taluk) in former Bombay, the major portions of the Gulbarga, Raichur and Bidar districts in former Hyderabad, and South Kanara district (apart from the Kasaragod taluk) and the Kollegal taluk of the Coimbatore district in Madras. The state was renamed Karnataka in 1973.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state is in south India and is bounded north by Maharashtra, east by Andhra Pradesh, south by Tamil Nadu and Kerala, west by the Indian ocean and north-east by Goa. The area of the state is 191,791 sq. km, and its population (1981 census), 37,135,714, an increase of 26.43% since 1971. Density, 194 per sq. km. Kannada is the language of administration and is spoken by about 66% of the people. Other languages include Telugu (8.17%), Urdu (9%), Marathi (4.5%), Tamil (3.6%), Tulu and Konkani. Principal cities, *see* p. 631.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Karnataka has a bicameral legislature. The Legislative Council has 63 members. The Legislative Assembly consists of 225 elected members. After elections in March 1985 the Janata party formed a government.

The state has 20 districts (of which Bangalore Rural is one) in 4 divisions: Bangalore, Mysore, Belgaum and Gulbarga. The capital is Bangalore.

*Governor:* P. Venkatasubiah.

*Chief Minister:* S. R. Bommai.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1986-87 showed a deficit of Rs 38.89 crores; for 1987-88, Rs 60.96 crores. Annual plan, 1988-89, Rs 900 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1983 the state's installed capacity was 2,009.8 mw. Electricity generated, 1986-87, 8,125m. kwh.

**Water.** About 1.69m. hectares were irrigated in 1985.

**Minerals.** Karnataka is an important source of gold and silver. The estimated reserves of high grade iron ore are 5,000m. tonnes. These reserves are found mainly in the Chitradurga belt. The National Mineral Development Corporation of India has indicated total reserves of nearly 1,000m. tonnes of magnesite and iron ore (with an iron content ranging from 25 to 40) which have been found in Kudremukh Ganga-Mula region in Chickmagalur District. The estimated reserves of manganese are over 275m. tonnes.

Limestone is found in many regions; deposits (1986) are about 4,248m. tonnes.

Karnataka is the largest producer of chromite. It is one of the only two states of India producing magnesite. The other minerals of industrial importance are corundum and garnet.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture forms the main occupation of more than three-quarters of the population. Physically, Karnataka divides itself into four regions—the coastal region, the southern and northern 'maidan' or plain country, comprising roughly the districts of Bangalore, Tumkur, Chitaldrug, Kolar, Bellary, Mandya and Mysore, and the 'malnad' or hill country, comprising the districts of Chickmagalur, Hassan and Shimoga. Rainfall is heavy in the 'malnad' tracts, and in this area there is dense forest. The greater part of the 'maidan' country is cultivated. Coorg district is essentially agricultural.

The main food crops are rice and jowar, and ragi which is also about 30% of the national crop. Total foodgrains production (1985-86), 5.74m. tonnes of which rice, 1.87m. tonnes. Sugar, groundnut, castor-seed, safflower, mulberry silk and cotton are important cash crops. The state grows about 70% of the national coffee crop.

Production, 1985-86 (1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane, 12,574; tobacco (1983-84), 158.2; chillies, 131.3; ground nuts, 615; castor seed, 134; cotton, 503 bales (170 kg).

**Livestock** (1986): Buffaloes, 3,647,967; other cattle, 11,300,223; sheep, 4,791,650; goats, 4,546,928.

**Forestry.** Total forest in the state (1984–85) is 3,047,102 acres, producing sandal wood, bamboo and other timbers, and ivory.

**INDUSTRY.** The Vishweswaraya Iron and Steel Works is situated at Bhadravati, while at Bangalore are national undertakings for the manufacture of aircraft, machine tools, light engineering and electronics goods. Other industries include textiles, vehicle manufacture, cement, chemicals, sugar, paper, porcelain and soap. In addition, much of the world's sandalwood is processed, the oil being one of the most valuable productions of the state. Sericulture is a more important cottage industry giving employment, directly or indirectly, to about 2.7m. persons; production of raw silk, 1985–86, 4,300 tonnes, over two-thirds of national production.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985–86 the state had 112,610 km of roads. There were (31 March 1984) 578,352 motor vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1985–86 there were 3,024 km of railway (including 154 km of narrow gauge) in the state.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Bangalore, Mangalore, Bellary and Belgaum, with regular scheduled services to Bombay, Calcutta, Delhi and Madras.

**Shipping.** Mangalore is a deep-water port for the export of mineral ores. Karwar is being developed as an intermediate port.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The seat of the High Court is at Bangalore. It has a Chief Justice and 11 puisne judges.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census there were 31,906,793 Hindus; 4,104,616 Moslems; 764,449 Christians; 297,974 Jains; 42,147 Buddhists; 6,401 Sikhs.

**Education.** The number of literates, according to the 1981 census, was 38.5m. In 1985–86 the state had 37,271 primary schools, 4,777 high schools, 636 schools for professional and technical education and 128 polytechnic and engineering schools. Education is free up to pre-university level.

Universities: Mysore (1916); Karnatak (1950) at Dharwar; University of Agricultural Sciences (1964) at Hebbal, Bangalore; Gulbarga, and Mangalore. Mysore has 6 university and 117 affiliated colleges (1983–84); Karnatak, 5 and 115; Bangalore, 126 affiliated; Hebbal, 8 constituent colleges.

The Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore, is unaffiliated; it conducts diploma courses in engineering, metallurgy and technology. There are 417 other colleges, including medical, law and commercial.

Learmouth, A. T. A. and Bhat, L. T., *Mysore State*. 2 vols. London, 1961–62

## KERALA

**HISTORY.** The state of Kerala, created under the States Reorganization Act, 1956, consists of the previous state of Travancore-Cochin, except for 4 taluks of the Trivandrum district and a part of the Shencottah taluk of Quilon district. It took over the Malabar district (apart from the Laccadive and Minicoy Islands) and the Kasaragod taluk of South Kanara (apart from the Amindivi Islands) from Madras State.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kerala is in south India and is bounded north by Karnataka, east and south-east by Tamil Nadu, south-west and west by the Indian ocean. The state has an area of 38,863 sq. km. The 1981 census showed a population of 25,453,680; density of population was 655 per sq. km (highest of any state). Growth rate, 1971–81, 19%. Population of principal cities, see p. 631.

Languages spoken in the state are Malayalam, Tamil and Kannada.



The physical features of the land fall into three well-marked divisions: (1) the hilly tracts undulating from the Western Ghats in the east and marked by long spurs, extensive ravines and dense forests; (2) the cultivated plains intersected by numerous rivers and streams; and (3) the coastal belt with dense coconut plantations and rice fields.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The state has a unicameral legislature of 140 elected (and one nominated) members including the Speaker. After the elections of March 1987 the Indian National (I) Congress Party and allies held 60 seats, the Left Front (CPI, CPI (M) and allies), 78.

The state has 14 districts. The capital is Trivandrum.

*Governor:* R. Dulari Sinha.

*Chief Minister:* E. K. Nayanar.

**BUDGET.** Revised budget estimates for 1986-87 showed total revenue receipts of Rs 1,470 crores, expenditure Rs 1,612 crores. Annual Plan expenditure, 1987-88 Rs 380 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity (March 1987), 1,476.5 mw.; energy generated in 1986-87 was 4,641.6m. kw. The Idukki hydro-electric plant produced 2,314.4m. kwh, the Sabarigiri scheme 962.99m.

**Minerals.** Next to Bihar, Kerala possesses the widest variety of economic mineral resources among the Indian States. The beach sands of Kerala contain monazite, ilmenite, rutile, zircon, sillimanite, etc. There are extensive whiteclay deposits; other minerals of commercial importance include mica, graphite, limestone, quartz sand and lignite. Iron ore has been found at Kozhikode (Calicut).

**Agriculture.** The chief agricultural products are rice, tapioca, coconut, arecanut, cashewnut, oilseeds, pepper, sugar-cane, rubber, tea, coffee and cardamom. About 98% of Indian black pepper and about 95% of Indian rubber is produced in Kerala. Area and production of principal crops, 1986-87 (in 1,000 hectares and 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 786, 1,133; black pepper, 319, 44; arecanut, 60, 10,664 (million nuts); coconuts, 682.5, 3,068 (million nuts); tea, 36.1, 48.6; coffee, 57.6, 23.5; rubber, 271, 162; tapioca, 257, 6,066.

Livestock (1982, provisional); Buffaloes, 7.4m.; other cattle, 3m.; goats, 2m. In 1982-83 milk production was 1m. tonnes. Egg production, 1,018m.

**Forestry.** About 24% of the area is comprised of forests, including teak, sandal wood, ebony and blackwood and varieties of softwood. Net forest revenue, 1986-87, Rs 48.18 crores, from timber, bamboos, reeds and ivory.

**Fisheries.** Fishing is a flourishing industry; the catch in 1986 was about 364,000 tonnes. Fish exports, Rs 167.11 crores.

**INDUSTRIES.** Most of the major industrial concerns are either owned or sponsored by the Government. Among the privately owned factories are the numerous cashew and coir factories. Other important factory industries are rubber, tea, tiles, oil, textiles, ceramics, fertilizers and chemicals, zinc-smelting, sugar, cement, rayon, glass, matches, pencils, monazite, ilmenite, titanium oxide, rare earths, aluminium, electrical goods, paper, shark-liver oil, etc.

The number of factories registered under the Factories Act 1948 on 31 Dec. 1984 was 11,489, with daily average employment of 292,000.

Among the cottage industries, coir-spinning and handloom-weaving are the most important, forming the means of livelihood of a large section of the people. Other industries are the village oil industry, ivory carving, furniture-making, bell metal, brass and copper ware, leather goods, screw-pines, mat-making, rattan work, bee-keeping, pottery, etc. These have been organized on a co-operative basis.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986–87 there were 110,649 km of roads in the state; national highways, 839 km. There were 414,000 motor vehicles in 1986–87.

**Railways.** There is a coastal line from Mangalore (Karnataka) which serves Cannanore, Mahe, Kozhikode (Calicut), Ernakulam (for Cochin), Quilon and Trivandrum, and connects them with main towns in Tamil Nadu. In 1986–87 there were 806 km broad gauge and 113 km metre gauge lines.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Calicut, Cochin and Trivandrum with regular scheduled services to Delhi, Bombay and Madras; international flights leave from Trivandrum.

**Shipping.** Port Cochin, administered by the central government, is one of India's major ports; in 1983 it became the out-port for the Inland Container Depot at Coimbatore (Tamil Nadu). There are 13 other ports and harbours.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The High Court at Ernakulam has a Chief Justice and 14 puisne judges and 3 additional judges.

**Religion.** The majority are Hindus; other important faiths are Christianity and Islam. There are also some Jains.

**Education.** Kerala is the most literate Indian State with 17m. literates at the 1981 census (70%). Education is free up to the age of 14.

In 1986–87 there was a total school enrolment of 5.72m. students. There were 6,828 lower primary schools 2,884 upper primary schools and 2,430 high schools.

Kerala University (established 1937) at Trivandrum, is affiliating and teaching; in 1986–87 it had 43 affiliated arts and science colleges. The University of Cochin is federal, and for post-graduate studies only. The University of Calicut (established 1968) is teaching and affiliating and has 69 affiliated colleges. Kerala Agricultural University (established 1971) has 3 constituent colleges. Gandhiji University at Kottayam was established in 1983 and has 56 affiliated colleges.

## MADHYA PRADESH

**HISTORY.** Under the provisions of the States Reorganization Act, 1956, the State of Madhya Pradesh was formed on 1 Nov. 1956. It consists of the 17 Hindi districts of the previous state of that name, the former state of Madhya Bharat (except the Sunel enclave of Mandsaur district), the former state of Bhopal and Vindhya Pradesh and the Sironj subdivision of Kotah district, which was an enclave of Rajasthan in Madhya Pradesh.

For information on the former states, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1958, pp. 180–84.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state is in central India and is bounded north by Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh, east by Bihar and Orissa, south by Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra, west by Gujarat. Madhya Pradesh is the largest Indian state in size, with an area of 443,446 sq. km. In respect of population it ranks sixth. Population (1981 census), 52,138,467, an increase of 25.15% since 1971. Density, 118 per sq. km.

Cities with over 250,000 population, *see* p. 631. Other large cities (1981): Sagar, 207,401; Bilaspur, 186,885; Ratlam, 156,490; Burhanpur, 141,142; Mudwari-Katni, 125,096; Khandwa, 114,463; Rewa, 100,519.

The number of persons speaking each of the more prevalent languages (1981 census) were: Hindi, 43,870,242; Urdu, 1,131,288; Marathi, 1,184,128; Gujarati, 581,084.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Madhya Pradesh is one of the 9 states for which the Constitution provides a bicameral legislature, but the Vidhan

Parishad or Upper House (to consist of 90 members) has yet to be formed. The Vidhan Sabha or Lower House has 320 elected members. Following the election of March 1985, a Congress government was returned, with 250 out of 350 seats.

For administrative purposes the state has been split into 11 divisions with a Commissioner at the head of each; the headquarters of these are located at Bhopal, Bilaspur, Gwalior (2), Hoshangabad, Indore, Jabalpur, Raipur, Rewa, Sagar and Ujjain. There are 45 districts.

The seat of government is at Bhopal.

*Governor:* S. Grewal.

*Chief Minister:* Moti Lal Vora.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1985–86 showed total revenue of Rs 23,627m. and expenditure of Rs 22,800m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Madhya Pradesh is rich in low-grade coal suitable for power generation, and also has immense potential hydro-electric energy. Power generated, 9,871m. kwh. in 1984–85. The thermal power stations are at Korba in Bilaspur district, Amarkantak in Shahdol district and Satpura in Betul district; new stations are being built. The only hydro-electric power station is at Gandhi Sagar lake in Mandsaur district; this, with a maximum water surface of 165 sq. miles, is the biggest man-made lake in Asia.

**Water.** Major irrigation projects include the Chambal Valley scheme (started in 1952 with Rajasthan), the Tawa project in Hoshangabad district, the Barna and Hasdeo schemes, the Mahanadi canal system and schemes in the Narmada valley at Bargi and Narmadasagar. Total irrigation potential in 1983, 10m. hectares, of which 3m. had been achieved.

**Minerals.** The state has extensive mineral deposits including coal (35% of national deposits), iron ore (30%) and manganese (50%), bauxite (44%), ochre, sillimanite, limestone, dolomite, rock phosphate, copper, lead, tin, fluorite, barytes, china clay and fireclay, corundum, gold, diamonds, pyrophyllite and diaspore, lepidolite, asbestos, vermiculite, mica, glass sand, quartz, feldspars, bentonite and building stone. New and very large reserves of copper were found in the Malanjkhand area in 1986.

In 1985 the output of major minerals was (in tonnes): Coal, 41.3m.; limestone, 11.7m.; dolomite, 695,000; diamonds, 16,324 carats; bauxite, 641,000; iron ore, 8.7m.; manganese ore, 262,000. Value of production, 1985, Rs 8,907m.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the mainstay of the state's economy and 80% of the people are rural. Over 42% of the land area is cultivable, of which 14% is irrigated. The Malwa region abounds in rich black cotton soil, the low-lying areas of Gwalior, Bundelkhand and Baghelkhand and the Chhatisgarh plains have a lighter sandy soil, while the Narmada valley is formed of deep rich alluvial deposits. Production of principal crops, 1985–86 (in tonnes): Foodgrains, 15.5m. of which rice, 5.76m.; sugar-cane 1,519,000; oilseeds, 1,310,600, and cotton, 141,300.

Livestock (1985–86): Buffaloes, 6,861,000; other cattle, 26,503,000; sheep, 1,120,000; goats, 7,636,000; horses and ponies, 112,000.

**Forestry.** In 1982 155,411 sq. km. or about 35% of the state's area was covered by forests. The forests are chiefly of sal, saja, bija, bamboo and teak. They are the chief source in India of best-quality teak; they also provide firewood for about 60% of domestic fuel needs, and form valuable watershed protection. Forest revenue, 1984–85, Rs 2,730m.

**INDUSTRY.** The major industries are the steel plant at Bhilai, Bharat Heavy Electricals at Bhopal, the aluminium plant at Korba, the security paper mills at Hoshangabad, the Bank Note Press at Dewas, the newsprint mill at Nepanagar and alkaloid factory at Neemuch, cement factories, vehicle factory, ordnance factory, and gun carriage factory. There are also 23 textile mills, 7 of them nationalized.

The Bhilai steel plant near Durg is one of the 6 major steel mills. A power station



at Korba (Bilaspur) with a capacity of 420 mw serves Bhilai, the aluminium plant and the Korba coalfield.

The heavy electricals factory was set up by the Government of India at Bhopal during the second-plan period. This is India's first heavy electrical equipment factory and also one of the largest of its type in Asia. It makes a variety of highly complicated equipment required for generation, transmission, distribution and utilization of electric power.

Other industries include cement, sugar, straw board, paper, vegetable oil, refractories, potteries, textile machinery, steel casting and rerolling, industrial gases, synthetic fibres, drugs, biscuit manufacturing, engineering, tools, rayon and art silk. The number of heavy and medium industries in the state is 193, with 181 ancillary industries; the number of small-scale industries in production is 77,360. Thirty-nine out of 45 districts in the state are categorized as industrially backward districts.

The main industrial development agencies are Madhya Pradesh Financial Corporation, Madhya Pradesh Audyogik Vikas Nigam Ltd, Madhya Pradesh State Industries Corporation, Madhya Pradesh Laghu Udyog Nigam, Madhya Pradesh State Textile Corporation, Madhya Pradesh Handicrafts Board, Khadi and Village Industries Board and Madhya Pradesh State Mining Corporation.

The state is known for its traditional village and home crafts such as handloom weaving, best developed at Chanderi and Maheshwar, toys, pottery, lacework, woodwork, zari work, leather work and metal utensils. The ancillary industries of dyeing, calico printing and bleaching are centred in areas of textile production.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length of roads in 1982-83 was 113,176 km, of which 58,230 km were surfaced. In 1983-84 there were 395,727 motor vehicles.

**Railways.** Bhopal, Bilaspur, Katni, Khandwar and Ratlam are important junctions for the central and northern networks. Route km of railways (1985-86), 5,779 km.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Bhopal, Indore, Jabalpur, Khajuraho and Raipur with regular scheduled services to Bombay, Calcutta and Delhi.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The High Court of Judicature at Jabalpur has a Chief Justice and 21 puisne judges.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 48,504,575; Moslems, 2,501,919; Christians, 351,972; Buddhists, 75,312; Sikhs, 143,020, Jains, 444,960.

**Education.** The 1981 census showed 14.5m. people to be literate. Education is free for children aged up to 14.

In 1984-85 there were 377 higher educational institutions. Primary schools had 6.1 m. pupils and higher secondary schools, 1,035,005 pupils.

There are 11 universities in Madhya Pradesh: Dr. Hari Singh Gour University (established 1946), at Sagar, had 73 affiliated colleges and 40,000 students in 1984-85; Rani Durgavati University (1957) had 28 affiliated colleges and 8,539 students; Vikram University (1957), at Ujjain, had 35 affiliated and 29 constituent colleges and 34,053 students; Indira Kala Sangeet Vishwavidyalaya (1956), at Khairagarh, had 33 affiliated colleges and 6,720 students on roll (this university teaches music and fine arts); Devi Ahilya University (1964) had 25 affiliated colleges and 23,884 students; Jiwaji University (1963), at Gwalior, had 47 affiliated colleges and 41,358 students; Jawaharlal Nehru Krishi University (1964), at Jabalpur, had 10 constituent colleges and 2,871 students in 1983-84; Ravishankar University (1964), at Raipur, had 61 affiliated colleges. In 1984-85 there were 338 degree-granting colleges, 20 teacher-training colleges, and 39 professional colleges, 12 polytechnics and 51 technical-industrial arts and craft schools.

# MAHARASHTRA

**HISTORY.** Under the States Reorganization Act, 1956, Bombay State was formed by merging the states of Kutch and Saurashtra and the Marathi-speaking areas of Hyderabad (commonly known as Marathwada) and Madhya Pradesh (also called Vidarbha) in the old state of Bombay, after the transfer from that state of the Kannada-speaking areas of the Belgaum, Bijapur, Kanara and Dharwar districts which were added to the state of Mysore, and the Abu Road taluka of Banaskantha district, which went to the state of Rajasthan.

By the Bombay Reorganization Act, 1960, which came into force 1 May 1960, 17 districts (predominantly Gujarati-speaking) in the north and west of Bombay State became the new state of Gujarat, and the remainder was renamed Maharashtra.

The state of Maharashtra consists of the following districts of the former Bombay State: Ahmednagar, Akola, Amravati, Aurangabad, Bhandara, Bhir, Buldana, Chanda, Dhulia (West Khandesh), Greater Bombay, Jalgaon (East Khandesh), Kolaba, Kolhapur, Nagpur, Nanded, Nasik, Osmanabad, Parbhani, Pune, Ratnagiri, Sangli, Satara, Sholapur, Thana, Wardha, Yeotmal; certain portions of Thana and Dhulia districts have become part of Gujarat.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Maharashtra is in central India and is bounded north and east by Madhya Pradesh, south by Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Goa, west by the Indian ocean and north-west by Daman and Gujarat. The state has an area of 307,762 sq. km. The population at the 1981 census (revised) was 62,784,174 (an increase of 24.36% since 1971), of whom about 30m. were Marathi-speaking. Density, 204 per sq. km. The area of Greater Bombay was 603 sq. km. and its population 8,227,000. For other principal cities, *see* p. 631.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Maharashtra has a bicameral legislature. The Legislative Council has 78 members. The Legislative Assembly has 288 elected members and 1 member nominated by the Governor to represent the Anglo-Indian community. Following the election of March 1985 Congress (I) held 159 seats; Congress (U), 54; Janata, 21; B.J.P., 16; P.W.P., 13; others, 25.

The Council of Ministers consists of the Chief Minister, 7 other Ministers, and 12 Ministers of State.

The capital is Bombay.

*Governor:* K. Brahmananda Reddy

*Chief Minister:* Sarad Pawar.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates, 1986–87, show a deficit of Rs 341.63 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity, 31 March 1986, 6,940 mw. (5,477 mw. thermal, 1,303 mw. hydro-electricity and 160 mw. nuclear).

**Minerals.** Value of main mineral production, 1985, Rs 215 crores. The state has coal, silica, sand, dolomite, kyanite, sillimanite, limestone, iron ore, manganese, bauxite.

**Agriculture.** About 12.5% of the cropped area is irrigated. In 1984–86 there was severe drought in 18 of the state's 30 districts. The monsoon-season harvest failed, and the winter-season harvest was poor.

In normal seasons the main food crops are rice, wheat, jowar, bajri and pulses. Main cash crops: cotton, sugar-cane, groundnuts.

Livestock (1978 census): Buffaloes, 3,898,716; other cattle, 6,916,355; sheep, 2,636,001; goats, 7,562,925; horses and ponies, 48,817; poultry, 18,750,817.

**Forestry.** Forests occupy 20.8% of the state.

**INDUSTRY.** Industry is concentrated mainly in Bombay, Pune and Thana. The

main groups are chemicals and products, textiles, electrical and non-electrical machinery, petroleum and products, and food products. The state industrial development corporation had invested Rs 5,000 crores in 4,400 industrial units by 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 March 1985 there were 151,724 km of roads, of which 88,117 km were surfaced. There were 1,391,641 motor vehicles on 31 March 1985, of which 441,084 were in Greater Bombay. Passenger and freight transport has been nationalized.

**Railways.** The total length of railway on 31 March 1984 was 5,297 km; 60% was broad gauge, 19% metre gauge and 21% narrow gauge. The main junctions and termini are Bombay, Manmad, Akola, Nagpur, Pune and Sholapur.

**Aviation.** The main airport is Bombay, which has national and international flights. Nagpur airport is on the route from Bombay to Calcutta and there are also airports at Pune and Aurangabad.

**Shipping.** Maharashtra has a coastline of 720 km. Bombay is the major port, and there are 48 minor ports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The High Court has a Chief Justice and 37 judges. The seat of the High Court is Bombay, but it has benches at Nagpur, Aurangabad and Panaji (Goa).

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 51,109,457; Moslems, 5,805,785; Buddhists, 3,946,149; Christians, 795,464; Jains, 939,392; Sikhs, 107,255. Other religions, 155,692; religion not stated, 1,394.

**Education.** The number of literates, according to the 1981 census, was 29.6m.

The total number of recognized institutions in 1984-85 was 62,452, with 14,288,000 students. Higher and secondary schools numbered 7,683 with 4,263,000 pupils; primary schools, 53,420, with 9,235,000 pupils; pre-primary schools, 701 with 78,000.

Bombay University, founded in 1857, is mainly an affiliating university. It has 145 colleges with a total (1984-85) of 215,692 students. Colleges in Goa can affiliate to Bombay University. Nagpur University (1923) is both teaching and affiliating. It has 94 colleges with 81,872 students. Pune University, founded in 1948, is teaching and affiliating; it has 165 colleges and 169,859 students. The SNDT Women's University had 10 colleges with a total of 10,083 students. Marathwada University, Aurangabad, was founded in 1958 as a teaching and affiliating body to control colleges in the Marathwada or Marathi-speaking area, previously under Osmania University; it has 115 colleges and 81,691 students. Shiwaji University, Kolhapur, was established in 1963 to control affiliated colleges previously under Pune University. It has 127 colleges and 100,055 students. Amravarti University has 81 colleges and 57,633 students.

*Statistical Information:* The Director of Publicity, Sachivalaya, Bombay.  
Tindall, G., *City of Gold*, London, 1982

## MANIPUR

**HISTORY.** Formerly a state under the political control of the Government of India, Manipur, on 15 Aug. 1947, entered into interim arrangements with the Indian Union and the political agency was abolished. The administration was taken over by the Government of India on 15 Oct. 1949 under a merger agreement, and it is centrally administered by the Government of India through a Chief Commissioner. In 1950-51 an Advisory form of Government was introduced. In 1957 this was replaced by a Territorial Council of 30 elected and 2 nominated members. Later in 1963 a Legislative Assembly of 30 elected and 3 nominated



members was established under the Government of Union Territories Act 1963. Because of the unstable party position in the Assembly, it had to be dissolved on 16 Oct. 1969 and President's Rule introduced. The status of the administrator was raised from Chief Commissioner to Lieut.-Governor with effect from 19 Dec. 1969. On the 21 Jan. 1972 Manipur became a state and the status of the administrator was changed from Lieut.-Governor to Governor.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state is in north-east India and is bounded north by Nagaland, east by Burma, south by Burma and Mizoram, and west by Assam. Manipur has an area of 22,327 sq. km and a population (1981) of 1,420,953. Density, 64 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 32.46%. The valley, which is about 1,813 sq. km, is 2,600 ft above sea-level. The hills rise in places to nearly 10,000 ft, but are mostly about 5,000-6,000 ft. The average annual rainfall is 65 in. The hill areas are inhabited by various hill tribes who constitute about one-third of the total population of the state. There are about 40 tribes and sub-tribes falling into two main groups of Nagas and Kukis. Manipuri and English are the official languages. A large number of dialects are spoken, while Hindi is gradually becoming prevalent.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** With the attainment of statehood, Manipur has a Legislative Assembly of 60 members, of which 19 are from reserved tribal constituencies. There are 8 districts. Capital, Imphal (population, 1981, 155,639). Presidential rule was imposed in Feb. 1981.

*Governor:* Gen. K. V. Krishna Rao.

*Chief Minister:* R. K. Jaichandra Singh.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1986-87 show revenue of Rs 2,359m. and expenditure on revenue account of Rs 1,567m. Plan allocation 1988-89, Rs 1,225m.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity (1987) is 24.67 mw. from diesel and hydro-electric generators. This has been augmented since 1981 by the North Eastern Regional Grid. In May 1987 there were 789 villages with electricity.

**Water.** The main power, irrigation and flood-control schemes are the Loktak Lift Irrigation scheme (irrigation potential, 40,000 hectares; the Singda scheme (potential 4,000 hectares, and improved water supply for Imphal); the Thoubal scheme (potential 34,000 hectares, 7.5 mw. of electricity and 10 MGD of water supply), and four other large projects. By 1986-87 more than 43,500 hectares had been irrigated.

**Agriculture.** Rice is the principal crop; with wheat, maize and pulses. Total food-grains, 1986-87, 166,700 tonnes.

Agricultural work force, about 348,000. Only 210,000 hectares are cultivable, of which 186,000 are under paddy. Fruit and vegetables are important in the valley, including pineapple, oranges, bananas, mangoes, pears, peaches and plums. Soil erosion, produced by shifting cultivation, is being halted by terracing.

**Forests.** Forests occupy about 15,154 sq km. The main products are teak, jurjan, pine; there are also large areas of bamboo and cane, especially in the Jiri and Barak river drainage areas, yielding about 300,000 tonnes annually. Total revenue from forests, 1985-87, Rs 14.1 m.

**Fisheries.** Landings in 1981-82, 3,450 tonnes.

**INDUSTRY.** Handloom weaving is a popular industry. Larger-scale industries include sugar, cement, starch and glucose. Sericulture produces about 45 tonnes of raw silk annually. Estimated non-agricultural work force, 240,000.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** A national highway from Kazirangar (Assam) runs

through Imphal to the Burmese frontier. There are no railways, but the highway runs through Dimapur which has a rail-head, 215 km from Imphal. There is an airport at Imphal with regular scheduled services to Delhi and Calcutta.

## EDUCATION AND HEALTH

**Education.** The 1981 census gave the number of literates as 587,618. In 1985–86 there were 2,679 primary schools, 440 middle schools, 358 high and higher schools and 63 colleges, as well as Manipur University.

**Health.** In 1985–86 there were 39 hospitals (including primary health centres) with 1,683 beds, and 445 dispensaries (including primary health centres).

# MEGHALAYA

**HISTORY.** The state was created under the Assam Reorganization (Meghalaya) Act 1969 and inaugurated on 2 April 1970. Its status was that of a state within the State of Assam until 21 Jan. 1972 when it became a fully independent state of the Union. It consists of the former Garo Hills district and United Khasi and Jaintia Hills district of Assam.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Meghalaya is bounded north and east by Assam, south and west by Bangladesh. In 1981 (census figure) the area was 22,429 sq. km and the population 1,335,819. Density 59 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971–81, 31.25%. The people are mainly of the Khasi, Jaintia and Garo tribes.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Meghalaya has a unicameral legislature. The Legislative Assembly has 60 seats. Party position in summer 1984: Meghalaya Democratic Front, 37 (including 31 Congress I); opposition, 13.

There are 5 districts. The capital is Shillong (population, 1981, 109,244).

*Governor:* B. N. Singh.

*Chief Minister:* Purno A. Sangma.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1986–87 showed revenue receipts of Rs 2,177m. and expenditure of Rs 1,639m. Annual Plan expenditure, 1988–89, Rs 130 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Total installed capacity (1985–86) was 133.7 mw. 1,397 villages had electricity.

**Minerals.** The East and West Khasi and Jaintia Hills districts produce coal, sillimanite (95% of India's total output), limestone, dolomite, feldspar, quartz and glass sand. The state also has deposits of coal (estimated reserves 1,200m. tonnes), limestone (2,100m.), fire clay (100,000) and sandstone which are virtually untapped because of transport difficulties.

**Agriculture.** About 80% of the people depend on agriculture, and 27% of the cultivable area is irrigated. Principal crops are potatoes, fresh fruit and cotton. Production 1985–86 (in 1,000 tonnes): Foodgrains, 167; potatoes, 149; tapioca, 5; jute, 51,034 bales (of 180 kg). Annual production (in 1,000 tonnes, estimated) of pineapples, 70; oranges, 80; bananas, 35.

Forest products are the state's chief resources.

**INDUSTRY.** Apart from agriculture the main source of employment is the extraction and processing of minerals; there are also important timber processing mills. The state has a plywood factory, a cement factory and a beverage plant. Meghalaya Industrial Development Corporation has set up industrial units. There is a new industrial area in Byrnihat, and two industrial estates in Shillong and Mendipathar. In 1985–86 there were 58 registered factories and 671 small-scale industries.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** A national highway from Guwahati (Assam) runs through Dispur and Shillong. The state has no railways. Umroi airport (20 km from Shillong) connects the state with main air services. In 1985–86 there were 461 km of national highway and 917 km of state highway; total surfaced roads, 2,066 km; unsurfaced, 3,073 km.

**JUSTICE.** There is a High Court at Shillong which is common to Assam, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Manipur, Mizoram, Tripura and Arunachal Pradesh.

**EDUCATION.** In 1984–85 the state had 4,127 primary schools, 597 middle schools, 264 high and higher-secondary schools and 14 colleges. The North-eastern Hill University started functioning at Shillong in 1973.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 7 government hospitals, 39 primary health centres, 36 government dispensaries and 189 sub-centres. Total beds (hospitals and health centres), 1,422.

## MIZORAM

**HISTORY.** On 21 Jan. 1972 the former Mizo Hills District of Assam was created a Union Territory. A long dispute between the Mizo National Front (originally Separatist) and the central government was resolved in 1985. Mizoram became a state by the Constitution (53rd Amendment) and the State of Mizoram Acts, July 1986.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mizoram is one of the eastern-most Indian states, lying between Bangladesh and Burma, and having on its northern boundaries Tripura, Assam and Manipur. The area is 21,081 sq. km and the population (1981 census) 493,757. Density, 23 per sq. km; growth rate 1971–81, 48.55%.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Mizoram has a unicameral Legislative Assembly with 40 seats: Congress 1, 22; Mizo National Front, 14; others, 4. The capital is Aizawl.

*Governor:* H. Saikia.

*Chief Minister:* Lalthnahawla.

**ELECTRICITY.** Installed capacity (1986–87), 16,109 kw. Work was in progress (1988) on one diesel and two hydro-electric generators. In 1986–87, 207 villages out of 721 were electrified.

**AGRICULTURE.** About 90% of the people are engaged in agriculture, either on terraced holdings or in shifting cultivation. Area under rice paddy, 1986–87, 48,344 hectares; production, 68,746 tonnes.

Total forest area, 15,985 sq. km.

**INDUSTRY.** Hand loom weaving and other cottage industries are important.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Aizawl is connected by road and air with Silchar in Assam.

**RELIGION.** The mainly tribal population is 83.81% Christian.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 there were 1,005 primary, 443 middle and 154 high schools; there were 11 colleges and one university. Total enrolment, schools and colleges, 145,365.

**HEALTH.** In 1986–87 there were 9 hospitals, 22 primary and 25 subsidiary health centres. Total beds, 893.



# NAGALAND

**HISTORY.** The territory was constituted by the Union Government in Sept. 1962. It comprises the former Naga Hills district of Assam and the former Tuensang Frontier division of the North-East Frontier Agency; these had been made a Centrally Administered Area in 1957, administered by the President through the Governor of Assam. In Jan. 1961 the area was renamed and given the status of a state of the Indian Union, which was officially inaugurated on 1 Dec. 1963.

For some years a section of the Naga leaders sought independence. Military operations from 1960 and the prospect of self-government within the Indian Union led to a general reconciliation, but rebel activity continued. A 2-month amnesty in mid 1963 had little effect. A 'ceasefire' in Sept. 1964 was followed by talks between a Government of India delegation and rebel leaders. The peace period was extended and the 'Revolutionary Government of Nagaland' (a breakaway group from the Naga Federal Government) was dissolved in 1973. Further talks with the Naga underground movement resulted in the Shillong Peace Agreement of Nov. 1975.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The state is in the extreme north-east and is bounded west and north by Assam, east by Burma and south by Manipur. Nagaland has an area of 16,579 sq. km and a population (1981) census of 774,930. Density 47 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 50.05%. Towns include Kohima, Mokokchung, Tuensang and Dimapur. The chief tribes in numerical order are: Angami, Ao, Sema, Konyak, Chakhesang, Lotha, Phom, Khiamngan, Chang, Yimchunger, Zeliang-Kuki, Rengma and Sangtam.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** An Interim Body (Legislative Assembly) of 42 members elected by the Naga people and an Executive Council (Council of Ministers) of 5 members were formed in 1961, and continued until the State Assembly was elected in Jan. 1964. The Assembly has 60 members: Congress I, 36; Nagaland People's Council, 24. The Governor has extraordinary powers, which include special responsibility for law and order.

There are 10 cabinet ministers and 10 ministers of state.

The state has 7 districts (Kohima, Mon, Zunheboto, Wokha, Phek, Mokokchung and Tuensang). The capital is Kohima.

*Governor:* Gen. K. V. Krishna Rao.

*Chief Minister:* S. C. Jamir.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates 1986-87, revenue receipts, Rs 2,837m., expenditure, Rs 2,283m. Annual Plan, 1988-89, Rs 110 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity (1984) 5.12 mw; all towns and villages are electrified.

**Agriculture.** 90% of the people derive their livelihood from agriculture. The Angamis, in Kohima district, practise a fixed agriculture in the shape of terraced slopes, and wet paddy cultivation in the lowlands. In the other two districts a traditional form of shifting cultivation (*jhumming*) still predominates, but some farmers have begun tea and coffee plantations and horticulture. About 51,250 hectares were under terrace cultivation and 68,500 under *jhumming* in 1985-86. Production of rice (1985-86) was 83,200 tonnes.

Forests covered 2,875 sq. km in 1987.

**INDUSTRY.** There is a forest products factory at Tijit; a paper-mill (100 tonnes daily capacity) at Tuli, a distillery unit and a sugar-mill (1,000 tonnes daily capacity) at Dimapur. Bricks and TV sets are also made, and there are over 1,000 small units.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** There is a national highway from Kaziranga (Assam) to Kohima and on to Manipur. There are state highways connecting Kohima with the district headquarters. Total surfaced roads, 1,538 km; unsurfaced, 5,287 km. (1987-88). Dimapur has a rail-head and a daily air service to Calcutta.

## RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Religion.** Christianity is the main religion; there are also Hindus, Moslems, and followers of indigenous faiths.

**Education.** The 1981 census records 329,000 literates, or 42.57%: 50.06% of men and 33.89% of women. In 1987 there were 3 government and 10 private colleges, 70 government and 50 private high schools, 226 government and 147 private middle schools and 1,150 government primary schools, 1 polytechnic, 1 agricultural college, 2 law colleges. The North Eastern Hill University opened at Kohima in 1978. Total enrollment in schools and colleges, 1987, 219,300.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 36 hospitals (1,435 beds), 21 primary and 3 community health centres, 72 dispensaries, 193 sub-centres.

Aram, M., *Peace in Nagaland*, New Delhi, 1974

## ORISSA

**HISTORY.** Orissa, ceded to the Mahrattas by Alivardi Khan in 1751, was conquered by the British in 1803. In 1803 a board of 2 commissioners was appointed to administer the province, but in 1805 it was designated the district of Cuttack and was placed in charge of a collector, judge and magistrate. In 1829 it was split up into 3 regulation districts of Cuttack, Balasore and Puri, and the non-regulation tributary states which were administered by their own chiefs under the ægis of the British Government. Angul, one of these tributary states, was annexed in 1847, and with the Khondmals, ceded in 1835 by the tributary chief of the Boudh state, constituted a separate non-regulation district. Sambalpur was transferred from the Central Provinces to Orissa in 1905. These districts formed an outlying tract of the Bengal Presidency till 1912, when they were transferred to Bihar, constituting one of its divisions under a commissioner. Orissa was constituted a separate province on 1 April 1936, some portions of the Central Provinces and Madras being transferred to the old Orissa division.

The rulers of 25 Orissa states surrendered all jurisdiction and authority to the Government of India on 1 Jan. 1948, on which date the Provincial Government took over the administration. The administration of 2 states, viz., Saraikella and Kharswan, was transferred to the Government of Bihar in May 1948. By an agreement with the Dominion Government, Mayurbhanj State was finally merged with the province on 1 Jan. 1949. By the States Merger (Governors' Provinces) Order, 1949, the states were completely merged with the state of Orissa on 19 Aug. 1949.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Orissa is in eastern India and is bounded north by Bihar, north-east by West Bengal, east by the Bay of Bengal, south by Andhra Pradesh and west by Madhya Pradesh. The area of the state is 155,707 sq. km, and its population (1981 census), 26,370,271, density 169 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 20.17%. The largest cities are Cuttack (269,064 in 1988), Rourkela (205,598) and Bhubaneswar (219,419). The principal and official language is Oriya.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Legislative Assembly has 147 members. After the election in March 1985 a Congress government was returned.

The state consists of 13 districts.

The capital is Bhubaneswar (18 miles south of Cuttack).

*Governor:* S. Nurul Hasan.  
*Chief Minister:* J. B. Patnaik.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates, 1988–89 showed total revenue and expenditure of Rs 3,989.79 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The Hirakud Dam Project on the river Mahanadi irrigates 628,000 acres and has an installed capacity of 1,394 mw. There are other projects under construction: The upper Kolab; Indrabati; Rengali Dam; hydro-electric power is now serving a large part of the state. There were 27,811 electrified villages in 1988.

**Minerals.** Orissa is India's leading producer of chromite (95% of national output), dolomite (50%), manganese ore (25%), graphite (80%), iron ore (16%), fire-clay (34%), limestone (20%), and quartz-quartzite (18%). Production in 1986 (1,000 tonnes): Iron ore, 8,030; manganese ore, 464; chromite, 561; coal, 6,844; limestone, 2,954; dolomite, 980; bauxite, 239.

**Agriculture.** The cultivation of rice is the principal occupation of nearly 75% of the population, and only a very small amount of other cereals is grown. Production of foodgrains (1986–87) totalled 7.39m. tonnes from 7m. hectares; oilseeds (951,000 tonnes) and sugar-cane (3.93m. tonnes) are also grown. Turmeric is cultivated in the uplands of the districts of Ganjam, Phulbani and Koraput, and is exported.

Livestock (1988): Buffaloes, 1.33m.; other cattle, 12.92m.; sheep, 1.98m.; goats, 4.93m.; 10.55m. poultry including ducks.

**Forests.** Forests occupy about 43% of the area of the state, the most important species being sal, teak, kendu, sandal, sisu, bija, kusum, kongada and bamboo.

**Fisheries.** There were, in 1985, 574 fishery co-operative societies.

**INDUSTRY.** Over 180 large and medium industries have been set up (1988), mostly based on minerals, including the steel plant of Hindustan Steel Ltd at Rourkela, a pig-iron plant near Barbil, 3 ferrochrome plants, 2 ferromanganese plants at Joda and Rayagada, 1 ferrosilicon plant at Theruvelli and an aluminium smelter plant at Hirakud, 4 refractory plants and 2 cement plants. There are 3 large paper mills at Rayagada, Chowdwar and Brajrajnagar, three fertilizer plants, a caustic soda plant, a salt manufacturing unit and an industrial explosives plant. There are aluminium-alumina plants at Damanjodi and Angul.

Other industries of importance are sugar, glass, aluminium, heavy machine tools, a coach-repair factory, a re-rolling mill and textile mills. Also, there were 31,674 small-scale industries and 803,214 artisan-based. The seven-year plan proposes a further 16,600 and 375,000 respectively; handloom weaving and the manufacture of baskets, wooden articles, hats and nets; silver filigree work and hand-woven fabrics are specially well known.

**TOURISM.** Tourist traffic is concentrated mainly on the 'Golden Triangle', Konark, Puri and Bhubaneswar, and its temples. Tourists also visit Gopalpur, the Similipal National Park, Nandankanan and Chilka Lake.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 March 1984–85 length of roads was: State highway, 2,846 km; national highway, 1,625 km; other Public Works Department roads, 61,330 km; council roads, 5,048 km. There were 183,888 motor vehicles in 1985. A 144-km expressway, part national highway, connects the Daitari mining area with Paradip Port.

**Railways.** The total length of railway in 1984–85 was 1,982 km, of which 1,310 km was single line.

**Aviation.** There is an airport at Bhubaneswar with regular scheduled services to New Delhi, Calcutta, Visakhapatnam and Hyderabad.



**Shipping.** Paradip was declared a 'major' port in 1966 and has been developed to handle 4m. tons of traffic. Other minor ports at Chandbali and Gopalpur.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The High Court of Judicature at Cuttack has a Chief Justice and 10 puisne judges.

**Religion.** There were in 1981: Hindus (including scheduled castes and scheduled tribes), 25,161,725; Christians, 480,426; Moslems, 422,266; Sikhs, 14,270; Buddhists, 8,028; Jains, 6,642.

**Education.** The percentage of literates in the population is 34.12% (males, 46.9%, females, 21.11%).

In 1986-87 there were 34,886 primary, 7,508 middle English and (1987-88) 4,036 high and higher secondary schools. There are 54 government colleges and 348 private colleges.

Utkal University was established in 1943 at Cuttack and moved to Bhubaneswar in 1962; it is both teaching and affiliating. It has 2 university colleges (law) and 113 affiliated colleges. Berhampur University has 20 affiliated colleges and Orissa University of Agriculture and Technology 4 constituent colleges. Sambalpur University has 42 affiliated colleges. Sri Jagannath Sanskrit Viswavidyalaya University was established in 1981 for oriental studies.

## PUNJAB (INDIA)

**HISTORY.** The Punjab was constituted an autonomous province of India in 1937. In 1947, the province was partitioned between India and Pakistan into East and West Punjab respectively, under the Indian Independence Act, 1947, the boundaries being determined under the Radcliffe Award. The name of East Punjab was changed to Punjab (India) under the Constitution of India. On 1 Nov. 1956 the erstwhile states of Punjab and Patiala and East Punjab States Union (PEPSU) were integrated to form the state of Punjab. On 1 Nov. 1966, under the Punjab Reorganization Act, 1966, the state was reconstituted as a Punjabi-speaking state comprising the districts of Gurdaspur (excluding Dalhousie), Amritsar, Kapurthala, Jullundur, Ferozepore, Bhatinda, Patiala and Ludhiana; parts of Sangrur, Hoshiarpur and Ambala districts; and part of Kharar tehsil. The remaining area comprising an area of 18,000 sq. miles and an estimated (1967) population of 8.5m. was shared between the new state of Haryana and the Union Territory of Himachal Pradesh. The existing capital of Chandigarh was made joint capital of Punjab and Haryana; its transfer to Punjab alone (due in 1986) has been delayed while the two states seek agreement as to which Hindi-speaking districts shall be transferred to Haryana in exchange.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Punjab is in north India and is bounded at its northernmost point by Kashmir, north-east by Himachal Pradesh, south-east by Haryana, south by Rajasthan, west and north-west by Pakistan. The area of the state is 50,362 sq. km, with census (1981) population of 16,788,915. Density 333 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 23.01%. The largest cities, *see* p. 631. The official language is Punjabi.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Punjab (India) has a unicameral legislature, the Legislative Assembly, of 117 members. Presidential rule was imposed in May 1987 after outbreaks of communal violence. In March 1988 the Assembly was officially dissolved. By the 59th constitutional amendment the Union government was enabled to impose a state of emergency on the Punjab for a period of up to 3 years.

There are 12 districts. The capital is Chandigarh (*see* p. 694). There are 106

municipalities, 118 community development blocks and 9,331 elected village *panchayats*.

*Governor:* S. Shankar Ray.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates, 1987-88, showed a surplus of Rs 38.75 crores on revenue account and a deficit of Rs 68.86 crores on capital account.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity, 1987-88, was 2,661 mw; all villages had electricity.

**Agriculture.** About 75% of the population depends on agriculture which is technically advanced. The irrigated area rose from 2.21m. hectares in 1950-51 to 6.5m. hectares in 1985-86. In 1987-88, wheat production was 11m. tonnes, rice, 5.4m.; oilseeds, 178,000; maize, 366,000; cotton, 1.86m. bales.

Livestock (1977 census): Buffaloes, 4,110,000; other cattle, 3.31m.; sheep and goats, 1,219,600; horses and ponies, 75,900; poultry, 5.5m.

**Forestry.** In 1987-88 there were 267,644 hectares of forest land, of which 134,776 hectares belonged to the Forest Department.

**INDUSTRY.** In March 1987 the number of registered industrial units in the Punjab (India) was 122,766, employing about 800,000 people. On 31 March 1988 there were (provisional) 135,305 small industrial units, investment Rs 937 crores. The chief manufactures are textiles (especially hosiery), sewing machines, sports goods, sugar, bicycles, electronic goods, machine tools, hand tools, vehicle parts, surgical goods and vegetable oils. Recent (1988) large projects include food processing, paper and newsprint.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The total length of metalled roads on 31 March 1987 was 35,501 km. State transport services cover 815,380 route km daily with a fleet of 3,422 buses carrying a daily average of over 1m passengers. Coverage by private operators is estimated as 40%.

**Railways.** The Punjab possesses an extensive system of railway communications, served by the Northern Railway. Total length, (1986) 3,630.04 km.

**Aviation.** There is an airport at Amritsar, and Chandigarh airport is on the north-eastern boundary; both have regular scheduled services to Delhi, Jammu, Srinagar and Leh. There are also Vayudoot services to Ludhiana and Kulu.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Punjab and Haryana High Court exercises jurisdiction over the states of Punjab and Haryana and the territory of Chandigarh. It is located in Chandigarh. It consists (1988) of a Chief Justice and 21 puisne judges.

**Religion.** At the 1971 census Hindus numbered 5,037,235; Sikhs, 8,159,172; Moslems, 114,447; Christians, 162,202; Jains, 21,383; Buddhists, 1,374.

**Education.** Compulsory education was introduced in April 1961; at the same time free education was introduced up to 8th class for boys and 9th class for girls as well as fee concessions. The aim is education for all children of 6-11.

At 30 Sept. 1987 there were 12,322 primary schools, 1,395 middle schools, 2,405 high schools and 324 senior secondary schools.

Punjab University was established in 1947 at Chandigarh as an examining, teaching and affiliating body. In 1962 Punjabi University was established at Patiala and an agricultural university at Ludhiana. Guru Nanak University has been established at Amritsar to mark the 500th anniversary celebrations for Guru Nanak Dev, first Guru of the Sikhs. Altogether there are 205 affiliated colleges, 163 for arts and science, 18 for teacher training, 9 medical, 3 engineering and 11 for other studies.

**Health.** Punjab claims the longest life expectancy (60.6 years for women, 60.7 for men) and lowest death rate (9 per 1,000). There were (1987) 265 hospitals, 528 Ayurvedic and Unani hospitals and dispensaries, 280 primary health centres, 2,752 sub-centres and 1,652 dispensaries.

Singh, Khushwant, *A History of the Sikhs*. 2 vols. Princeton and OUP, 1964-67

## RAJASTHAN

**HISTORY.** As a result of the implementation of the States Reorganization Act, 1956, the erstwhile state of Ajmer, Abu Taluka of Bombay State and the Sunel Tappa enclave of the former state of Madhya Bharat were transferred to the state of Rajasthan on 1 Nov. 1956, whereas the Sironj subdivision of Rajasthan was transferred to the state of Madhya Pradesh.

**EVENTS.** An instance of *suttee* on 4 Sept. 1987 brought about state legislation (Rajasthan Sati (Prevention) Ordinance) promulgated on 1 Oct., and the central government's Sati Prevention Act (strengthening existing penalties) in Dec. 1987.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Rajasthan is in north-west India and is bounded north by Punjab, north-east by Haryana and Uttar Pradesh, east by Madhya Pradesh, south by Gujarat and west by Pakistan. The area of the state is 342,239 sq. km and its population (census 1981, revised), 34,261,862, density 100 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 32.36%. The chief cities, *see* p. 631.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** There is a unicameral legislature, the Legislative Assembly, having 200 members. After the election in March 1985 a Congress government was returned.

The capital is Jaipur. There are 27 districts.

*Governor:* Sukhdev Prasad.

*Chief Minister:* Shiv Charan Mathur.

**BUDGET.** Revised estimates for 1986-87 show total revenue receipts of Rs 1,637 crores, and expenditure of Rs 1,707 crores. Receipts included: Share in Central taxes, Rs 356.9 crores; state excise, Rs 96 crores, sales tax, Rs 386.9 crores; vehicles taxes, Rs 76 crores; non-tax revenue, Rs 333.3 crores. Expenditure included: Education, art and culture, Rs 389.4 crores; medical and family welfare, Rs 124.2 crores; water supply and public health, Rs 164.5 crores; agriculture, Rs 249.2 crores; irrigation, Rs 329.1 crores. Annual plan 1988-89, Rs 710 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity in Feb. 1988, 1,803 mw.; 21,409 villages and 289,574 wells had electric power.

**Water.** In 1984 the Bhakra Canal irrigated 300,000 hectares, the Chambal Canal, 200,000 and the Rajasthan Canal, 450,000. The Rajasthan (now the Indira Gandhi canal) is the main canal system, of which (1984) 189 km. of main canal and 2,950 km of distributors had been built. Cost, at 1 March 1984, Rs 419 crores. There were 2,909 villages with drinking water in 1984-85.

**Minerals.** The state is rich in minerals. In 1985-86, 305,670m. tonnes of gypsum and 172,989 tonnes of rock phosphate were produced. Other minerals include silver (9,852 kg., 1984 estimate), asbestos, feldspar, copper, limestone and salt. Total sale value of mineral production in 1984 (estimate) was about Rs 233 crores. Lead-zinc reserves have been found near Rampura-Agucha, estimated at 61m. tonnes.

**Agriculture.** The state has suffered drought and encroaching desert for several years. The cultivable area is (1985-86) about 26.6m. hectares, of which 4m. is irrigated. Production of principal crops (in 1,000 tonnes), 1984-85: Pulses, 1,300;



sugar-cane (gur), 1,300; total oilseeds, 1,000; cotton, 300,000 bales (of 180 kg). Total foodgrains (1985-86) 6,337.

Livestock (1983): Buffaloes, 6,034,743; other cattle, 13,466,474; sheep, 15,389,100; goats, 15,397,993; horses and ponies, 45,381; camels, 7,528,287.

**INDUSTRY.** In March 1986 there were 8,233 registered factories and 122,304 small industrial units. There were 171 industrial estates. Total capital investment Rs 4,750.7m. Chief manufactures are textiles, cement, glass, sugar, sodium, oxygen and acetylene units, pesticides, insecticides, dyes, caustic soda, calcium, carbide, nylon tyre cords and refined copper.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 49,311 km of roads including 37,617 km of good and surfaced roads in Rajasthan; there were 15,134 km of national highway. Motor vehicles numbered 554,388 in Dec. 1985.

**Railways.** Jodhpur, Marwar, Udaipur, Ajmer, Jaipur, Khota, Bikaner and Sawai Madhopur are important junctions of the north-western network.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Jaipur, Jodhpur, Khota and Udaipur with regular scheduled services by Indian Airlines.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The seat of the High Court is at Jodhpur. There is a Chief Justice and 11 puisne judges. There is also a bench of High Court judges at Jaipur.

**Religion.** At the 1971 census Hindus numbered 23,093,895; Moslems, 1,778,275; Jains, 513,548; Sikhs, 341,182; Christians, 30,202.

**Education.** The proportion of literates to the total population was 24.39% at the 1981 census.

In 1985-86 there were 35,508 primary and upper primary schools, 2,052 secondary and 892 higher secondary schools. Elementary education is free but not compulsory.

In 1985-86 there were 266 colleges. Enrolment at these was 171,000 in 1985. Rajasthan University, established at Jaipur in 1947, is teaching and affiliating (6 affiliated colleges); Jodhpur University and Udaipur University were founded in 1962. There are 2 others, at Vanasthali and Pilani. There are also 11 medical and nursing colleges, 5 engineering colleges, 21,436 adult and other education centres, 32 sanskrit institutions, 34 teacher-training colleges and 13 polytechnics.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 995 hospitals and dispensaries, 348 primary health centres, 72 Unani, 80 homoeopathic and 3 naturopathy hospitals. There were 111 maternity centres, and 3,046 Ayurvedic hospitals and dispensaries.

## SIKKIM

**HISTORY.** Sikkim became the twenty-second state of the Indian Union in May 1975. It is inhabited chiefly by the Lepchas, who are a tribe indigenous to Sikkim with their own dress and language, the Bhutias, who originally came from Tibet, and the Nepális, who entered from Nepál in large numbers in the late 19th and early 20th century. The main languages spoken are Bhutia, Lepcha and Nepáli. Being a small country Sikkim had frequently been involved in struggles over her territory, and as a result her boundaries have been very much reduced over the centuries. In particular the Darjeeling district was acquired from Sikkim by the British East India Company in 1839. The Namgyal dynasty had been ruling Sikkim since the 14th century; the first consecrated ruler was Phuntsog Namgya I who was consecrated in 1642 and given the title of 'Chogyal', meaning 'King ruling in accordance with religious laws', derived from Cho-religion and Gyalpo-king. The last Chogyal was deposed in 1975 and died in America in 1982.

Sikkim is a land of wide variation in altitude, climate and vegetation, and is known for the great number and variety of birds, butterflies, wild flowers and orchids to be found in the different regions. It is a fertile land and to the Sikkimese is known as Denjong, The Valley of Rice.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Sikkim is in the Eastern Himalayas and is bounded north by Tibet, east by Tibet and Bhutan, south by West Bengal and west by Nepal. Area, 7,298 sq. km. Census population (1981), 314,999, of whom 36,768 lived in the capital, Gangtok. Density 43 per sq km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 50.01%.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Sikkim was joined to the British Empire by a treaty in 1886 until 1947, but that relationship ceased when Britain withdrew from India in 1947. Thereafter there was a standstill agreement between India and Sikkim until a treaty was signed on 5 Dec. 1950 between India and Sikkim by which Sikkim became a protectorate of India and India undertook to be responsible for Sikkim's defence, external relations and strategic communications. The Chogyal had governed Sikkim with the help of the Sikkim Council, consisting of 18 elected members and 6 members nominated by the Chogyal. Sikkim parties represented were: National Party, Sikkim National Congress and, later, Sikkim Janta Congress.

Political reforms were demanded by the National Congress and the Janta Congress in March-April 1973 and Indian police took over control of law and order at the request of the Chogyal. On 13 April it was announced that the Chogyal had agreed to meet most of the political demands. Elections were held in April 1974 to a popularly-elected assembly. By the Government of Sikkim Act, June 1974, the Chogyal became a constitutional monarch with power of assent to the Assembly's legislation. By the Constitution (Thirty-Sixth Amendment) Act 1974 Sikkim became a state associated with the Indian Union. The office of Chogyal was abolished in April 1975. By the Constitution (Thirty-Eighth Amendment) Act 1975 Sikkim became the twenty-second state of the Indian Union. The Assembly has 32 members with a cabinet of 10 ministers including the Chief Minister. After the election of March 1985 a Sangram Parishad government was returned.

*Governor:* S. K. Bhatnagar.

*Chief Minister:* N. Bahadur Bhandari.

The official language of the Government is English. Lepcha, Bhutia, Nepali and Limboo have also been declared official languages.

Sikkim is divided into 4 districts for administration purposes, Gangtok, Mangan, Namchi and Gyalshing being the headquarters for the Eastern, Northern, Southern and Western districts respectively. Each district is administered by a District Collector. Within this framework are the Panchayats or Village Councils.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The seventh Five-Year Plan covered 1985-90.

**Budget.** The annual budget for 1987-88 is Rs 57 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There are 4 operational hydro-electric power stations; the Lagyap project is also being implemented by the Government of India as aid to meet the growing demand for electrical power for new industries. The first of its two 6 mv generators was commissioned 1 Sept. 1979.

**Agriculture.** The economy is mainly agricultural; main food crops are rice, maize, millet, wheat and barley; cash crops are cardamom (a spice), mandarin oranges, apples, potatoes, and buckwheat. Foodgrain production, 1983, 84,000 tonnes. A tea plantation has recently been started. Forests occupy about 1,000 sq. km. of the land area (excluding hill pastures) and the potential for a timber and wood-pulp industry is being explored. Some medicinal herbs are exported.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There is a state Industrial Development Investment Corporation and an Industrial Training Institute offering 7 trades. There are two cigarette factories (at Gangtok and Rangpo), two distilleries and a tannery at Rangpo and a fruit preserving factory at Singtam. Copper, zinc and lead are mined by the Sikkim Mining Corporation. A recent survey by the Geological Survey of India and the Indian Bureau of Mines has confirmed further deposits of copper, zinc, silver and gold in Dikchu, North Sikkim. There is a jewel-bearing factory for the production of industrial jewels. A watch factory has been set up in collaboration with Hindustan Machine Tools (India). A number of small manufacturing units for leather, wire nails, storage cells batteries, candles, safety matches and carpets, are already producing in the private sector. Local crafts include carpet weaving, making hand-made paper, wood carving and silverwork. To encourage trading in indigenous products, particularly agricultural produce, the State Trading Corporation of Sikkim has been established.

**Tourism.** There is great potential for the tourist industry; a 78-bed lodge at Gangtok and a 50-bed tourist lodge in West Sikkim have been opened. Tourism has been stimulated by the opening of new roads from Pemayangtse to Yuksam in West Sikkim and from Yuksam to the Dzongri Glacier.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 1,201 km. of metalled roads, all on mountainous terrain, and 18 major bridges under the Public Works Department. Public transport and road haulage is nationalized.

**Railways.** The nearest railhead is at Siliguri (115 km from Gangtok).

**Aviation.** The nearest airport is at Bagdogra (128 km from Gangtok), linked to Gangtok by helicopter service.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 1,445 telephones (1987) and 37 wireless stations. A radio broadcasting station, Akashvani Gangtok, was built in 1982, and a permanent station in 1983. Gangtok also has a low-power TV transmitter.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** The state religion is Mahayana Buddhism, but a large proportion of the population is Hindu. There are some Christians, Moslems and members of other religions.

**Education.** At the 1981 census there were 100,000 literates. Sikkim has (1987) 528 pre-primary schools, 246 primary schools, 123 junior high schools, 55 secondary and 13 senior secondary schools. Education is free up to class XII; text books are free up to class V. There are 500 adult education centres. There is also a training institute for primary teachers, a law college and a degree college.

**Health.** There are (1983) 4 district hospitals at Singtam, Gyalshing, Namchi and Mangan, and one central referral hospital at Gangtok, besides 20 primary health centres, 109 sub-centres and 8 dispensaries, a maternity ward, chest clinic and 2 blocks for tuberculosis patients. There is a blood bank at Gangtok. There are 110 doctors. Medical and hospital treatment is free; there is a health centre for every 20,000 of the population. Small-pox and Kala-azar have been completely eliminated and many schemes for the provision of safe drinking water to villages and bazaars have been implemented. A leprosy hospital (20 beds) was being built near Gangtok in 1987.



## TAMIL NADU

**HISTORY.** The first trading establishment made by the British in the Madras State was at Peddapali (now Nizampatnam) in 1611 and then at Masulipatnam. In 1639 the English were permitted to make a settlement at the place which is now Madras, and Fort St George was founded. By 1801 the whole of the country from the Northern Circars to Cape Comorin (with the exception of certain French and Danish settlements) had been brought under British rule.

Under the provisions of the States Reorganization Act, 1956, the Malabar district (excluding the islands of Laccadive and Minicoy) and the Kasaragod district taluk of South Kanara were transferred to the new state of Kerala; the South Kanara district (excluding Kasaragod taluk and the Amindivi Islands) and the Kollegal taluk of the Coimbatore district were transferred to the new state of Mysore; and the Laccadive, Amindivi and Minicoy Islands were constituted a separate Territory. Four taluks of the Trivandrum district and the Shencottah taluk of Quilon district were transferred from Travancore-Cochin to the new Madras State. On 1 April 1960, 405 sq. miles from the Chittoor district of Andhra Pradesh were transferred to Madras in exchange for 326 sq. miles from the Chingleput and Salem districts. In Aug. 1968 the state was renamed Tamil Nadu.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tamil Nadu is in south India and is bounded north by Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh, east and south by the Indian ocean and west by Kerala. Area, 130,358 sq. km. Population (1981 census), 48,408,077, density of 372 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 17.5%. Tamil is the principal language and has been adopted as the state language with effect from 14 Jan. 1958. The principal towns, see p. 631.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Governor is aided by a Council of 16 ministers. There is a unicameral legislature; the Legislative Assembly has 234 members: DMK, 148; AIADMK, 27; Congress 1, 26; others, 33.

There are 20 districts. The capital is Madras.

*Governor:* P. C. Alexander.

*Chief Minister:* M. Karunanidhi.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1987-88, revenue receipts, Rs 2,779.2 crores, revenue account expenditure, Rs 2,874 crores. Capital outlay, Rs 1,555.68 crores; capital account receipts, Rs 657.98 crores. Annual plan 1988-89, Rs 1,457 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity 1987-88 amounted to 4,558 mw of which 1,799 mw was hydro-electricity and 2,408 mw thermal. 99.9% of villages were supplied with electricity. The Kalpakkam nuclear power plant became operational in 1983; capacity, 350 mw.

**Water.** A joint project with Andhra Pradesh was agreed in 1983, to supply Madras with water from the Krishna river, also providing irrigation, *en route*, for Andhra Pradesh. In 1981-82 3.4m. hectares were irrigated.

**Minerals.** Value of mineral exports, 1983, Rs 1.5 crores. The state has magnesite, salt, coal, chromite, bauxite, limestone, manganese, mica, quartz, gypsum and feldspar.

**Agriculture.** In 1981 there were 5.5m. cultivators and 5.9m. agricultural labourers. The land is a fertile plain watered by rivers flowing east from the Western Ghats, particularly the Cauvery and the Tambaraparani. Temperature ranges between 6°C. and 39°C., rainfall between 442 mm. and 1,307 mm. Of the total land area (13.01m. hectares), 6,508,349 hectares were cropped and 298,659 hectares of waste were cultivable. The staple food crops grown are paddy, maize, jawar, bajra, pulses and millets. Important commercial crops are sugar-cane, oilseeds, cashew-nuts, cotton, tobacco, coffee, tea, rubber and pepper. Production 1983-84, in 1,000

tons, (and area, 1,000 hectares): Rice 5,000 (2,282); millet 1,900 (1,652); sugarcane 2,500 (132); pulses 115 (333); cotton 3m. bales (169); oilseeds 752 (825).

Livestock (1982 census): Buffaloes, 3,212,242; other cattle, 10,365,500; sheep, 5,536,514; goats, 5,246,192; swine, 693,735; horses, ponies, mules, camels and donkeys, 90,632; poultry, 18,283,720.

**Forestry.** Forest area, 1985-86, 2,245,159 hectares, of which 1,844,779 were reserved forest. Forests cover about 27% of land area. Main products are teak, soft wood, wattle, sandalwood, pulp wood, cashew and cinchona bark.

**Fisheries.** There were 101,869 active marine fishermen working the 1,000 km coastline in 1986-87.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The number of working factories was 12,286 in 1986, employing 811,936 workers. The consumption of power in the industrial sector was 43% of total state consumption in 1982-83. The biggest central sector project is Salem steel plant.

Cotton textiles is one of the major industries. There are nearly 180 cotton textile mills and many spinning mills supplying yarn to the decentralized handloom industry. Other important industries are cement, sugar, manufacture of textile machinery, power-driven pumps, bicycles, electrical machinery, tractors, rubber tyres and tubes, bricks and tiles and silk.

Public sector undertakings include the Neyveli lignite complex, integral coach factory, high-pressure boiler plant, photographic film factory, surgical instruments factory, teleprinter factory, oil refinery, continuous casting plant and defence vehicles manufacture. Main exports: Cotton goods, tea, coffee, spices, engineering goods, motor-car ancillaries.

In 1986 there were 4,386 registered trade unions. Man-days lost by strikes, 2,372,440; by lockouts, 1,080,684.

**Tourism.** In 1982, 229,000 foreign tourists visited the state.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 March 1986 the state had approximately 160,942 km of national and state highways, major and other district roads. In 1986-87 there were 958,269 registered motor vehicles.

**Railways.** On 31 March 1987 there were 6,451 km of railway track (3,886 route km). Madras and Madurai are the main centres.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Madras, Tiruchirapalli and Madurai, with regular scheduled services to Bombay, Calcutta and Delhi. Madras is the main centre of airline routes in South India.

**Shipping.** Madras and Tuticorin are the chief ports. Important minor ports are Cuddalore and Nagapattinam. Madras handled 22.89m. tonnes of cargo in 1987-88, Tuticorin, 4.26m. The Inland Container Depot at Coimbatore has a capacity of 50,000 tonnes of export traffic; it is linked to Cochin (Kerala).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** There is a High Court at Madras with a Chief Justice and 16 judges.

**Police.** Strength of armed police, 1986, 12,723; there were 6,033 specials and 33,115 local police.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 43,016,546 (88.86%), Christians, 2,798,048 (5.78%); Moslems, 2,519,947 (5.21%).

**Education.** At the 1981 census 22.6m. people were literate (14.3m. males).

Education is free up to pre-university level. In 1986-87 there were 39,325 schools for general education, 10.2m. students and 290,000 teachers. There were 199 general colleges (200,000 students and 15,155 teachers); 80 professional colleges (38,313 and 5,519); 19 special education colleges (2,366 and 316).

There are 13 universities. Madras University (founded in 1857) is affiliating and teaching. Annamalai University, Annamalainagar (founded 1928) is residential; Madurai University (founded 1966) is an affiliating and teaching university; ten others include one agricultural and one rural university, and Mother Theresa Women's University.

*Statistical Information:* The Department of Statistics (Fort St George, Madras) was established in 1948 and reorganized in 1953. *Director:* D. S. Rajabushanam, MA. Main publications: *Annual Statistical Abstract; Decennial Statistical Atlas; Season and Crop Report; Quinquennial Wages Census; Quarterly Abstract of Statistics.*

## TRIPURA

**HISTORY.** A Hindu state of great antiquity having been ruled by the Maharajahs for 1,300 years before its accession to the Indian Union on 15 Oct. 1949. With the reorganization of states on 1 Sept. 1956 Tripura became a Union Territory, and was so declared on 1 Nov. 1957. The Territory was made a State on 21 Jan. 1972.

**EVENTS.** Tripura National Volunteers (tribal guerillas) signed an agreement with Union and State governments in Aug. 1988, to end an 8-month campaign of insurgency.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tripura is bounded by Bangladesh, except in the north-east where it joins Assam and Mizoram. The major portion of the state is hilly and mainly jungle. It has an area of 10,477 sq. km and a population of 2,060,189 (1981 census); Density, 196 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971-81, 32.37%.

The official languages are Bengali and Kokbarak. Manipuri is also spoken.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** There is a Legislative Assembly of 60 members. The election of Jan. 1983 was won by the Communist Party of India (Marxist). The territory has 3 districts, divided into 10 administrative subdivisions, namely, Sadar, Khowai, Kailasahar, Dharmanagar, Sonamura, Udaipur, Belonia, Kamalpur, Sabroom and Amarapur.

The capital is Agartala (population, 1981, 132,186).

*Governor:* Gen. K. V. Krishna Rao.

*Chief Minister:* Sudhir Ranjan Majumdar.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates 1985-86 balance at Rs 289 crores.

### ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity (1984), 15 mw (demand 23 mw); there were (1985) 1,710 electrified villages.

**Agriculture.** About 24% of the land area is cultivable. The tribes practise shifting cultivation, but this is being replaced by modern methods. The main crops are rice, wheat, jute, mesta, potatoes, oilseeds and sugar-cane. Foodgrain production (1983-84), about 370,000 tonnes. There are 49 registered tea gardens producing 4,500,000 kg. per year, and employing about 10,000.

**Forestry.** Forests cover about 55% of the land area. They have been much depleted by clearance for shifting cultivation and, recently, for refugee settlements of Bangladeshis. About 8% of the forest area still consists of dense natural forest; losses elsewhere are being replaced by plantation. Commercial rubber plantation has also been encouraged. In 1984, 4,167 hectares were under new rubber plantations.

**INDUSTRY.** Tea is the main industry. There is also a jute mill producing about 15 tonnes per day and employing about 2,000. The main small industries; aluminium utensils, saw-milling, soap, piping, fruit canning, handloom weaving and



sericulture. Handloom weaving products (1983–84) were valued at Rs 9.75 crores.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length of motorable roads (1974) 3,692 km, of which 1,123 km were surfaced. Vehicles registered, 31 March 1984, 9,924, of which 3,191 were lorries.

**Railways.** There is a railway between Dharmanagar and Kalkalighat (Assam).

**Aviation.** There is 1 airport and 2 airstrips. The airport (Agartala) has regular scheduled services to Calcutta.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** In autumn 1985 there were 1,974 primary schools (325,504 pupils); 308 middle schools (70,010); 240 high schools (40,964). There were 9 colleges of general education, 17 colleges of professional and technical education and 1,203 social education centres.

**Health.** There were (1980) 12 hospitals, with 1,357 beds, 128 dispensaries, 297 doctors and 459 nurses. There were 26 primary health centres and about 35 other medical units.

# UTTAR PRADESH

**HISTORY.** In 1833 the then Bengal Presidency was divided into two parts, one of which became the Presidency of Agra. In 1836 the Agra area was styled the North-West Province and placed under a Lieut.-Governor. The two provinces of Agra and Oudh were placed, in 1877, under one administrator, styled Lieut.-Governor of the North-West Province and Chief Commissioner of Oudh. In 1902 the name was changed to 'United Provinces of Agra and Oudh', under a Lieut.-Governor, and the Lieut.-Governorship was altered to a Governorship in 1921. In 1935 the name was shortened to 'United Provinces'. On Independence, the states of Rampur, Banaras and Tehri-Garwhal were merged with United Provinces. In 1950 the name of the United Provinces was changed to Uttar Pradesh.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Uttar Pradesh is in north India and is bounded north by Himachal Pradesh, Tibet and Nepal, east by Bihar, south by Madhya Pradesh and west by Rajasthan, Haryana and Delhi. The area of the state is 294,413 sq. km. Population (1981 census), 110,862,013, a density of 377 per sq. km. Growth rate, 1971–81, 25.52%. Cities with more than 250,000 population, see p. 631. The official language is Hindi.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Uttar Pradesh has had an autonomous system of government since 1937. There is a bicameral legislature. The Legislative Council has 108 members; the Legislative Assembly has 426, of which 425 are elected. After the elections in March 1985 a Congress government was returned.

There are 12 administrative divisions, each under a Commissioner, and 57 districts.

The capital is Lucknow.

*Governor:* M. Usman Arif.

*Chief Minister:* Narayan Dutt Tiwari.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates 1988–89 show revenue and capital receipts of Rs 8,242.1 crores; revenue and capital account expenditure, Rs 8,600.93 crores.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The State Electricity Board had, 1987–88, an installed capacity of

4,540 mw. There were 75,749 villages with electricity in March 1988, out of a total 112,568.

**Minerals.** The state has magnesite, fire-clay, coal, copper, dolomite, limestone, soapstone, gypsum, bauxite, diaspore, ochre, phosphorite, pyrophyllite, silica sand and steatite among others.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture occupies 78% of the work force. About 9m. hectares are irrigated. The state is India's largest producer of foodgrains; production (1987-88), 28.12m. tonnes; sugar-cane 8.82m.; oilseeds, 1.22m. The state is one of India's main producers of sugar. There were (1981) 1,199 veterinary centres for cattle.

Forests cover (1987) about 5.13m. sq. km.

The state government in 1985 began a management programme for the ravines of the Chambal river catchment area. The programme includes stabilizing ravines, soil conservation, afforestation, pasture development and ravine reclamation. Estimated cost of a six-year programme, Rs 453.96m.

**INDUSTRY.** Sugar production is important; other industries include edible oils, textiles, distilleries, brewing, leather working, agricultural engineering, paper and chemicals. There is an aluminium smelter at Renukoot. An oil refinery at Mathura has capacity of 6m. tonnes per annum. Large public-sector enterprises have been set up in electrical engineering, pharmaceuticals, locomotive building, general engineering, electronics and aeronautics. Village and small-scale industries are important; there were 90,237 small units in 1983. About one-third of cloth output is from hand-looms. Total working population (1981) 30.8m., of whom 6.8m. were non-agricultural.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, 31 March 1983, 273,011 km of motorable roads, of which 66,034 km were metalled. (This excludes forest roads.) In 1983 there were 674,049 motor vehicles of which 391,307 were motorcycles.

**Railways.** Lucknow is the main junction of the northern network; other important junctions are Agra, Kanpur, Allahabad and Varanasi.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Lucknow, Kanpur, Varanasi, Allahabad, Agra, Jhansi, Lalitpur and Gorakhpur.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The High Court of Judicature at Allahabad (with a bench at Lucknow) has a Chief Justice and 49 puisne judges including additional judges. There are 56 sessions divisions in the state.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 92,365,968; Moslems, 17,657,735; Sikhs, 458,647; Christians, 162,199; Jains, 141,549; Buddhists, 54,542.

**Education.** At the 1981 census 30.1m. people were literate. In 1987-88 there were 74,480 junior basic schools, 16,582 senior basic schools and 5,737 higher secondary schools.

Uttar Pradesh has 20 universities: Allahabad University (founded 1887); Agra University (1927); the Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi (1916); Lucknow University (1921); Aligarh Muslim University (1920); Roorkee University (1948), formerly Thomason College of Civil Engineering (established in 1847); Gorakhpur University (1957); Varanasaya Sanskrit Vishwavidyalaya, Varanasi (1958); Kashi Vidyapith, Varanasi (1963). Kanpur University and Meerut University were founded in 1966. Govind Ballabh Pant University, Pantnagar (1969); Garhwal University, Srinagar, (1973). Two universities of agriculture were founded in 1974-75 and Avadh, Kumaon, Rohilkhand and Jhansi Universities in 1975. Jaunpur University (Purvanchal Vishwavidyalaya) was founded in 1987.

There are also two institutions with university status: Gurukul Kangri and Dayal Bagh Educational Institute. There are 9 medical colleges.

**HEALTH.** In 1987-88 there were 4,034 allopathic, 2,448 ayurvedic and unani and 980 homoepathic hospitals. There were also TB hospitals and clinics.

## WEST BENGAL

**HISTORY.** For the history of Bengal under British rule, from 1633 to 1947, see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1952, p. 183.

Under the terms of the Indian Independence Act, 1947, the Province of Bengal ceased to exist. The Moslem majority districts of East Bengal, consisting of the Chittagong and Dacca Divisions and portions of the Presidency and Rajshahi Divisions, became what was then East Pakistan (now Bangladesh).

**EVENTS.** Gorkha seperatists have campaigned for a Gorkha state in the hill areas; there has been strike and terrorist action. In Aug. 1988 an agreement was signed establishing a Darjeeling Gorka Hill Council with limited autonomy.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** West Bengal is in north-east India and is bounded north by Sikkim and Bhután, east by Assam and Bangladesh, south by the Bay of Bengal and Orissa, west by Bihar and north-west by Nepál. The total area of West Bengal is 87,853 sq. km. At the 1981 census its population was 54,580,647, an increase of 23.17% since 1971, the density of population 621 per sq. km. Population of chief cities, see p. 631. The principal language is Bengali.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The state of West Bengal came into existence as a result of the Indian Independence Act, 1947. The territory of Cooch-Bihar State was merged with West Bengal on 1 Jan. 1950, and the former French possession of Chandernagore became part of the state on 2 Oct. 1954. Under the States Reorganization Act, 1956, certain portions of Bihar State (an area of 3,157 sq. miles with a population of 1,446,385) were transferred to West Bengal.

The Legislative Assembly has 295 seats. Distribution March 1987: Communist Party of India (Marxist), 187; Forward Bloc, 26; Revolutionary Socialist Party, 18; Communist Party of India, 11; Revolutionary Communist Party of India, 1; Forward Bloc (Marxist), 2; Democratic Socialist Party, 2; Socialist Party, 4. Total 'Left Front', 251. Opposition: Indian National Congress, 40; others, 3; nominat-ed, 1.

The capital is Calcutta.

For administrative purposes there are 3 divisions (Jalpaiguri, Burdwan and Presidency), under which there are 16 districts, including Calcutta. The Calcutta Metropolitan Development Authority has been set up to co-ordinate development in the metropolitan area (1,350 sq. km). For the purposes of local self-government there are 16 *zilla parishads* (district boards), 339 *panchayat samities* (regional boards), and 3,305 *gram* (village) *panchayats*. There are 99 municipalities, 3 Corporations and 9 Notified Areas. The Calcutta Corporation has a mayor and deputy mayor, a commissioner, aldermen and standing committees.

*Governor:* T. B. Rajeshwar.

*Chief Minister:* J. Basu.

**BUDGET.** Budget estimates for 1987-88 showed a deficit of Rs 597m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity, 1985-86, 3,278 mw; 20,531 villages had electricity at 31 March 1986.

**Water.** The major irrigation and power scheme at present under construction is (1987) the Teesta barrage. Major irrigation schemes are the Mayurakshi Reservoir, Kansabati Reservoir, Mahananda Barrage and Aqueduct and Damodar



Valley. During 1984–85 government canals irrigated 989,689 hectares. At March 1986 there were 5,674 tubewells and 3,155 riverlift irrigation schemes.

**Minerals.** Value of production, 1985, Rs 4,952.6m. The state has coal (the Raniganj field is one of the 3 biggest in India) including coking coal. Coal production (1985) 19.36m. tonnes.

**Agriculture.** About 5m. hectares are rice-paddy, one-third of it irrigated. Total foodgrain production, 1985–86, 9.13m. tonnes; oilseeds (provisional), 233,700 tonnes; jute, 7.4m. bales (180 kg); wheat, 738,700 tonnes. The state produces 57.3% of the national output of jute.

Livestock (1976 census): 11,968,000 cattle, 758,000 buffaloes; 1981 census, 758,000 sheep and goats, and 15,052,000 poultry.

Forests cover 13.4% of the state.

**Fisheries.** Landings, 1985–86, about 424,000 tonnes. During 1985–86 Rs 74.4m. was invested in fishery schemes.

**INDUSTRY.** The total number of registered factories, 1984, was 7,628; average daily employment in public sector industries, 1.6m. The coalmining industry had 116 units with average daily employment of 128,000.

There is a large automobile factory at Uttarpara, and there are aluminium rolling-mills at Belur and Asansol. Durgapur has a large steel plant and other industries under the state sector—a thermal power plant, coke oven plant, fertilizer factory, alloy steel plant and ophthalmic glass plant. There are a locomotive factory and cable factory at Chittaranjan and Rupnarayanpur. A refinery and fertilizer factory are operating at Haldia.

Small industries are important; 225,760 units were registered at 31 March 1986, (estimated employment, 1.6m.).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1981–82 the length of national highway was 1,631 km, of state highway. On 31 March 1984 the state had 453,113 motor vehicles.

**Railways.** The length of railways within the state (1985–86) is 3,771 km. The main centres are Howrah, Sealdah, Kharagpur, Asansol and New Jalpaiguri. The Calcutta Metro was 75% complete by July 1987.

**Aviation.** The main airport is Calcutta which has national and international flights. The second airport is at Bagdogra in the extreme north, which has regular scheduled services to Calcutta. Vayudoot domestic airline flies between Calcutta and district headquarters.

**Shipping.** Calcutta is the chief port: A barrage has been built at Farakka to control the flow of the Ganges and to provide a rail and road link between North and South Bengal. A second port is being developed at Haldia, halfway between the present port and the sea, which is intended mainly for bulk cargoes. West Bengal possesses 779 km of navigable canals.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The High Court of Judicature at Calcutta has a Chief Justice and 36 puisne judges. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands (*see below*) come under its jurisdiction.

**Police.** At 1 June 1987 the police force numbered 54,959, under a director-general and an inspector-general. Calcutta has a separate force under a commissioner directly responsible to the Government; its strength was 21,140 at 1 June 1987.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 42,007,159; Moslems, 11,743,259; Christians, 319,670; Buddhists, 156,296; Sikhs, 49,054; Jains, 38,663.

**Education.** At the 1981 census 22.2m. people were literate. In 1985–86 there were 50,811 primary schools, 3,890 junior high and 6,580 high and higher secondary schools. Education is free up to higher secondary stage.

The University of Calcutta (founded 1857) is affiliating and teaching; in 1983-84 it had 140,671 students. Visva Bharati, Santiniketan, was originally established in 1951 and is residential and teaching; it had 3,189 students in 1983-84. The University of Jadavpur, Calcutta (1955), had about 5,000 students in 1983-84. Burdwan University was established 15 June 1960 with 30 affiliated colleges previously under the supervision of the University of Calcutta; in 1983-84 there were 49,139 students. Kalyani University was established in 1960 (1,672 students in 1981-82). The University of North Bengal (1962) had 16,000 students in 1981-82. Rabindra Bharati University with 3 affiliated colleges had 2,995 students in 1981-82. Bidhan Chandra Krishi Viswavidyalaya (1974) had 1,239 students in 1981-82.

## UNION TERRITORIES

**ANDAMAN AND NICOBAR ISLANDS.** The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are administered by the President of the Republic of India acting through a Lieut.-Governor. There is a Pradesh Council, 5 members of which are selected by the Administrator as advisory counsellors. The seat of administration is at Port Blair, which is connected with Calcutta (1,255 km away) and Madras (1,190 km) by steamer service which calls about every 10 days; there are air services from Calcutta and Madras. Roads in the islands, 722 km black-topped and 20 km others. There are 2 districts.

The population (1981 census) was 188,741; density 23 per sq. km.; growth rate 1971-81, 63.5%. Port Blair (1981), 49,634.

The climate is tropical, with little variation in temperature. Heavy rain (125" annually) is mainly brought by the south-west monsoon. Humidity is high.

Budget figures for 1986-87 show total revenue receipts of Rs 1,00,182 lakhs, and total expenditure on revenue account of Rs 7,05,812 lakhs.

On 31 March 1988 there were 314 educational institutions, including a B. Ed. college, another teachers' training college, and a polytechnic. Literacy (1981 census), 51.56%.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Lieut.-Gen. (Ret'd.) T. S. Oberoi.

The **Andaman Islands** lie in the Bay of Bengal, 193 km from Cape Negrais in Burma, 1,255 from Calcutta and 1,190 from Madras. Five large islands grouped together are called the Great Andamans, and to the south is the island of Little Andaman. There are some 204 islets, the two principal groups being the Ritchie Archipelago and the Labyrinth Islands. The total area is about 8,249 sq. km. The Great Andaman group is about 467 km long and, at the widest, 51 km broad.

The original inhabitants live in the forests by hunting and fishing; they are of a small Negrito type and their civilization is about that of the Stone Age. Their exact numbers are not known, as they avoid all contact with civilization. The total population of the Andaman Islands (including about 430 aborigines) was 158,287 in 1981. Main aboriginal tribes, Andamanese, Onges, Jarawas and Sentinelese. Under a central government scheme started in 1953, some 4,000 displaced families, mostly from East Pakistan, had been settled in the islands by May 1967.

Japanese forces occupied the Andaman Islands on 23 March 1942. Civil administration of the islands was resumed on 8 Oct. 1945.

From 1857 to March 1942 the islands were used by the Government of India as a penal settlement for life and long-term convicts, but the penal settlement was abolished on re-occupation in Oct. 1945.

The Great Andaman group, densely wooded, contains many valuable trees, both hardwood and softwood. The best known of the hardwoods is the *padauk* or Andaman redwood; *gurjan* is in great demand for the manufacture of plywood. Large quantities of softwood are supplied to match factories. Annually the Forest Department export about 25,000 tons of timber to the mainland. Coconut, coffee and rubber are cultivated. The islands are slowly being made self-sufficient in paddy and rice, and now grow approximately half their annual requirements.



Livestock (1982): 27,400 cattle, 9,720 buffaloes, 17,600 goats and 21,220 pigs. Fishing is important. There is a sawmill at Port Blair and a coconut-oil mill. Little Andaman has a palm-oil mill.

The islands possess a number of harbours and safe anchorages, notably Port Blair in the south, Port Cornwallis in the north and Elphinstone and Mayabandar in the middle.

The **Nicobar Islands** are situated to the south of the Andamans, 121 km from Little Andaman. The British were in possession 1869–1947. There are 19 islands, 7 uninhabited; total area, 1,953 sq. km. The islands are usually divided into 3 sub-groups (southern, central and northern), the chief islands in each being respectively, Great Nicobar, Camotra with Nancowrie and Car Nicobar. There is a fine land-locked harbour between the islands of Camotra and Nancowrie, known as Nancowrie Harbour.

The population numbered, in 1981, 30,454, including about 22,200 of Nicobarese and Shompen tribes. The coconut and arecanut are the main items of trade, and coconuts are a major item in the people's diet.

The Nicobar Islands were occupied by the Japanese in July 1942; and Car Nicobar was developed as a big supply base. The Allies reoccupied the islands on 8 Oct. 1945.

**CHANDIGARH.** On 1 Nov. 1966 the city of Chandigarh and the area surrounding it was constituted a Union Territory. Population (1981), 450,061; density, 3,948 per sq. km.; growth rate, 1971–81, 74.9%. Area, 114 sq. km. It serves as the joint capital of both Punjab (India) and the state of Haryana, and is the seat of a High Court and of a university serving both states. The city will ultimately be the capital of just the Punjab; joint status is to last while a new capital is built for Haryana.

There is some cultivated land and some forest (27.5% of the territory).

Evenson, N., *Chandigarh*. Berkeley, Cal., 1966

**DADRA AND NAGAR HAVELI.** Formerly Portuguese, the territories of Dadra and Nagar Haveli were occupied in July 1954 by nationalists, and a pro-India administration was formed; this body made a request for incorporation into the Union, 1 June 1961. By the 10th amendment to the constitution the territories became a centrally administered Union Territory with effect from 11 Aug. 1961, forming an enclave at the southernmost point of the border between Gujarat and Maharashtra. Area 491 sq. km.; population (1981), 103,676 (males 52,515, females 51,161); density 211 per sq. km; growth rate, 1971–81, 39.78%. There is an Administrator appointed by the Government of India. The day-to-day business is done by various departments, co-ordinated by the Administrator's secretary and headed by a Collector. Headquarters are at Silvassa. The territory and 78.82% of the population is tribal and organized in 72 villages. Languages used are Bhili, Gujarat, Bhilodi (91.1%), Marathi and Hindi.

*Administrator:* Dr Gopal Singh.

*Collector:* R. K. Verma.

**Electricity.** Electricity is supplied by Gujarat, and all villages have been electrified.

**Water.** As the result of a joint project with the governments of Gujarat, Goa, Daman and Diu there is a reservoir at Damanganga with irrigation potential of 8,280 hectares.

**Agriculture.** Farming is the chief occupation, and about 22,000 hectares were under crops in 1987–88. Much of the land is terraced and there is a 100% subsidy for soil conservation. The major food crops are rice and ragi; wheat, small millets and pulses are also grown. There is little irrigation (1,000 hectares). There are 9 veterinary centres, a veterinary hospital, an agricultural research centre and breeding centres to improve strains of cattle and poultry. During 1987–88 the Administration distributed 245 tonnes of high yielding paddy seed, and high yielding wheat seed, and 490 tonnes of fertilizer.



**Forests.** About 20,311 hectares or 41.2% of the total area is forest, mainly of teak, sadad and khair. Timber production provides the largest simple contribution to the territory's revenue. There was (1985) a moratorium on commercial felling, to preserve the environmental function of the forests and ensure local supplies of firewood, timber and fodder.

**Industry.** There is no heavy industry, and the Territory is a "No Industry District". Industrial estates for small and medium units have been set up at Piparia, Masat and Khadoli. There are 287 small units, and 54 medium scale, employing about 6,000. Concessions (25% subsidy, 15 years' sales tax holiday) are available for small industries.

**Communications.** There are (1987) 313 km of motorable road. The railway line from Bombay to Ahmedabad runs through Vapi near Silvassa. The nearest airport is Bombay.

**Tourism.** The territory is a rural area between the industrial centres of Bombay and Surat-Vapi. The Tourism Department is developing areas of natural beauty to promote acceptable tourism.

**Justice.** The territory is under the jurisdiction of the Bombay (Maharashtra) High Court. There is a District and Sessions Court and one Junior Division Civil Court at Silvassa.

**Education.** Literacy was 26.67% of the population at the 1981 census. In 1987-88 there were 150 adult education centres (4,500 students); there were 144 government primary schools, 16 government-aided mission schools and one unaided; there were 2 higher secondary schools and 6 high schools. Total primary enrolment was 15,000; high-school and higher secondary, 2,058.

**Health.** The territory has 1 cottage hospital, 3 primary health centres and 7 dispensaries; there is also a mobile dispensary.

**DAMAN AND DIU.** Daman (Damão) on the Gujarat coast, 100 miles (160 km) north of Bombay, was seized by the Portuguese in 1531 and ceded to them (1539) by the Shar of Gujarat. The island of Diu, captured in 1534, lies off the south-east coast of Kathiawar (Gujarat); there is a small coastal area. Former Portuguese forts on either side of the entrance to the Gulf of Cambay, in Dec. 1961 the territories were occupied by India and incorporated into the Indian Union; they were administered as one unit together with Goa, to which they were attached until 30 May 1987, when Goa was separated from them and became a state.

**Area and Population.** Daman, 72 sq. km, population (1981) 48,560; Diu, 38 sq. km, population 30,421. The main language spoken is Gujarati.

The chief towns are Daman (population, 1981, 21,003) and Diu (8,020).

Daman and Diu have been governed as parts of a Union Territory since Dec. 1961, becoming the whole of that Territory on 30 May 1987.

The main activities are tourism, fishing and tapping the toddy palm. In Daman there is rice-growing, some wheat and dairying. Diu has fine tourist beaches, grows coconuts and pearl millet, and processes salt.

**DELHI.** Delhi became a Union Territory on 1 Nov. 1956.

**Area and Population.** The territory forms an enclave inside the eastern frontier of Haryana in north India. Delhi has an area of 1,483 sq. km. At the 1981 census its population was 6,220,406 (density per sq. km, 4,194). Estimate, 1 July 1987, 8.04m. Growth rate, 1971-81, 53%. In the rural area of Delhi there are 214 inhabited and 17 deserted villages and 27 census towns. They are distributed in 5 community development blocks.

**Government.** The Lieut-Governor is the Administrator, assisted by 4 Executive Councillors (1 Chief Executive Councillor and 3 Executive Councillors) appointed by the President of India on the recommendation of the Union Home Ministry. There is a Metropolitan Council of 61 members including 5 nominated by the

President of India. The Territory is covered by 3 local bodies: Delhi Municipal Corporation, New Delhi Municipal Committee and Delhi Cantonment Board.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Romesh Bhandari.

*Chief Executive Councillor:* J. Pravesh Chandra.

**Budget.** Revised estimates 1987-88 show total revenue of Rs 8,443m. and expenditure including plan expenditure: Rs 11,742m. of which plan, Rs 5,367m.; power, Rs 1,760m.; transport, Rs 794m.; water and sewerage, Rs 632m.; urban development, Rs 676m.; medical services and public health, Rs 393m.

**Agriculture.** The contribution to the economy is not significant. About 86,573 hectares are cropped (of which 65,545 are irrigated). Animal husbandry is increasing and mixed farms are common. Chief crops are wheat, jowar, bajra, grain, sugar-cane and vegetables.

**Industry.** The modern city is the largest commercial centre in northern India and an important industrial centre. Since 1947 a large number of industrial concerns have been established; these include factories for the manufacture of razor blades, sports goods, radios and television and parts, bicycles and parts, plastic and PVC goods including footwear, textiles, chemicals, fertilizers, medicines, hosiery, leather goods, soft drinks, hand tools. There is also metal forging, casting, galvanising and electro-plating, and printing. The number of industrial units functioning was about 68,000 in 1986-87; average number of workers employed was 621,000. Production was worth Rs 36,000m. and investment was about Rs 13,200m.

Some traditional handicrafts, for which Delhi was formerly famous, still flourish; among them are ivory carving, miniature painting, gold and silver jewellery and papier mâché work. The handwoven textiles of Delhi are particularly fine: this craft is being successfully revived.

Delhi publishes major daily newspapers, including the *Times of India*, *Hindustan Times*, *The Hindu*, *Indian Express*, *National Herald*, *Patriot*, *Financial Express* and *Statesman* (all in English); *Nav Bharat Times*, *Jansatta* and *Hindustan* (in Hindi), and 3 Urdu dailies

**Roads.** Five national highways pass through the city. There were (1987) 1,250,755 registered motor vehicles in Delhi. The Transport Corporation had 4,353 buses in daily service in 1987.

**Railways.** Delhi is an important rail junction with three main stations: Delhi, New Delhi, Hazrat Nizamuddin. There is an electric ring railway for commuters.

**Aviation.** Indira Gandhi International Airport operates international flights; Palam airport operates internal flights.

**Religion.** At the 1981 census Hindus numbered 5,200,432; Sikhs, 393,921; Moslems, 481,802; Jains, 73,917; Christians, 61,609; Buddhists, 7,117; others, 1,608.

**Education.** The proportion of literates to the total population was 61.54% at the 1981 census (68.4% of males and 53.07% of females).

The total number of educational institutions in 1986-87 was 6,750, with an enrolment of 1.90m.

The University of Delhi was founded in 1922; it had 66 constituent colleges and institutions in 1986-87, with a total of 106,058 students. There are also Jawaharlal Nehru university, Indira Gandhi National Open University and the Jamia Millia Islamia; the Indian Institute of Technology at Haus Khaz; the Indian Agricultural Research Institute at Pusa; the All India Institute of Medical Science at Ansari Nagar and the Indian Institute of Public Administration are deemed universities.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 76 hospitals including 41 general, 26 special, 5 Ayurvedic, 2 Unani, 2 Homeopathic. There were 567 dispensaries.

**LAKSHADWEEP.** The territory consists of an archipelago of 36 islands (10 inhabited), about 300 km off the west coast of Kerala. It was constituted a Union

Territory in 1956 as the Laccadive, Minicoy and Amindivi Islands, and renamed in Nov. 1973. The total area of the islands is 32 sq. km. The northern portion is called the Amindivis. The remaining islands are called the Laccadives (except Minicoy Island). The inhabited islands are: Androth (the largest), Amini, Agatti, Bitra, Chetlat, Kadmat, Kalpeni, Kavaratti, Kiltan and Minicoy. Androth is 4.8 sq. km, and is nearest to Kerala. An Advisory Committee associated with the Union Home Minister and an Advisory Council to the Administrator assist in the administration of the islands; these are constituted annually. Population (1981 census), 40,249, nearly all Moslems. Density, 1,258 per sq. km.; growth rate, 1971-81, 26.53%. The language is Malayalam, but the language in Minicoy is Mahl. There were, in autumn 1988, 9 high schools and 9 nursery schools, 19 junior basic schools, 4 senior basic schools and 2 junior colleges. There are 2 hospitals and 7 primary health centres. The staple products are copra and fish. There is a tourist resort at Bangarem, an uninhabited island with an extensive lagoon. Headquarters of administration, Kavaratti Island. An airport, with Vayadoot services, opened on Agatti island in April 1988. The islands are also served by ship from the mainland and have helicopter inter-island services.

*Administrator:* Wajahat Habibullah.

**PONDICHERRY.** Formerly the chief French settlement in India, Pondicherry was founded by the French in 1674, taken by the Dutch in 1693 and restored to the French in 1699. The English took it in 1761, restored it in 1765, re-took it in 1778, restored it a second time in 1785, retook it a third time in 1793 and finally restored it to the French in 1814. Administration was transferred to India on 1 Nov. 1954. A Treaty of Cession (together with Karikal, Mahé and Yanam) was signed on 28 May 1956; instruments of ratification were signed on 16 Aug. 1962 from which date (by the 14th amendment to the Indian Constitution) Pondicherry, comprising the 4 territories, became a Union Territory.

**Area and Population.** The territory is composed of enclaves on the Coromandel Coast of Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh, with Mahé forming an enclave on the coast of Kerala. The total area of Pondicherry is 492 sq. km, divided into 4 Districts. On Tamil Nadu coast: Pondicherry (293 sq. km; population, 1981 census, 444,417), Karikal (160; 120,010). On Kerala coast: Mahé (9; 28,413). On Andhra Pradesh coast: Yanam (30; 11,631). Total population (1981 census), 604,471; density, 1,228 per sq. km.; growth rate, 1971-81, 28.14%. Pondicherry Municipality had (1981) 162,639 inhabitants. The principal languages spoken are Tamil, Telegu, Malayalam, French and English.

**Government.** By the Government of Union Territories Act 1963 Pondicherry is governed by a Lieut.-Governor, appointed by the President, and a Council of Ministers responsible to a Legislative Assembly. The election in March 1985 returned a Congress (I) government.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Thiru T. P. Tewary.

**Planning.** Approved outlay for 1987-88 was Rs 470m. Of this, Rs 14m. was for agriculture, Rs 12.2m. for rural development, Rs 16m. for co-operatives, Rs 110m. for education, Rs 8.5m. for public works, Rs 34.5m. for electricity, Rs 10.4m. for fisheries.

**Budget.** Budget estimates for 1987-88 show revenue receipts of Rs 49.6 crores.

**Electricity.** Power is bought from neighbouring states. All 292 villages have electricity. Consumption, 1986-87, 386 units per head. Peak demand, 62 mw.; total consumption, 233.23m. units.

**Agriculture.** Nearly 45% of the population is engaged in agriculture and allied pursuits; 90% of the cultivated area is irrigated. The main food crop is rice. Foodgrain production, 101,000 tonnes from 38,582 hectares in 1986-87, of which 89,713 tonnes was paddy; cash crops include oilseeds, cotton (7,700 bales of 180 kg) and sugar-cane (330,000 tonnes). Crops suffered from drought, as rains failed in the Mettur Dam catchment area.



**Industry.** There are (1987) 12 large and 24 medium-scale industries manufacturing consumer goods such as textiles, sugar, cotton yarn, paper, spirits and beer, potassium chlorate, rice bran oil, vehicle parts and soap, and employing 18,000 people. There were 17,500 people employed in 2,619 small industrial units engaged in varied manufacturing.

**Railways.** Pondicherry is on a branch from the main Madurai-Madras line.

**Aviation.** The nearest airport is Madras.

**Education.** There were, in Sept. 1987, 112 pre-primary schools (6,087 pupils and 195 teachers), 353 primary schools (50,884 and 1,680), 102 middle schools (47,959 and 1,592), 65 high schools (39,365 and 1,470) and 22 higher secondary schools (23,450 and 680). There were 9 general education colleges (5,409 and 656); a medical college, a law college, a technical higher secondary school and a polytechnic had a total of 1,713 students.

**Health.** On 31 March 1986 there were 8 hospitals, 40 health centres and dispensaries and 73 sub-centres. Family schemes have reduced the birth rate to 22.2, the infant mortality rate to 38 per 1,000 live births.

# INDONESIA

*Capital:* Jakarta

*Population:* 172m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$510 (1986)

## Republik Indonesia

**HISTORY.** In the 16th century Portuguese traders in quest of spices settled in some of the islands, but were ejected by the British, who in turn were ousted by the Dutch (1595). From 1602 the Netherlands East India Company conquered the Netherlands East Indies, and ruled them until the dissolution of the company in 1798. Thereafter the Netherlands Government ruled the colony from 1816 to 1941, when it was occupied by the Japanese until 1945. An independent republic was proclaimed by Dr Sukarno and Dr Hatta on 17 Aug. 1945.

Complete and unconditional sovereignty was transferred to the Republic of the United States of Indonesia on 27 Dec. 1949, except for the western part of New Guinea, the status of which was to be determined through negotiations between Indonesia and the Netherlands within one year after the transfer of sovereignty. A union was created to regulate the relationship between the two countries. A settlement of the New Guinea (Irian Jaya) question was, however, delayed until 15 Aug. 1962, when, through the good offices of the United Nations, an agreement was concluded for the transfer of the territory to Indonesia on 1 May 1963. In Feb. 1956 Indonesia abrogated the union and in Aug. 1956 repudiated Indonesia's debt to the Netherlands.

During 1950 the federal system which had sprung up in 1946–48 (*see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1950, p. 1233) was abolished, and Indonesia was again made a unitary state. The provisional constitution was passed by the Provisional House of Representatives on 14 and came into force on 17 Aug. 1950. On 5 July 1959 by Presidential decree, the Constitution of 1945 was reinstated and the Constituent Assembly dissolved. For history 1960–66 *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1982–83, p. 678.

On 11–12 March 1966 the military commanders under the leadership of Lieut.-Gen. Suharto took over the executive power while leaving President Sukarno as the head of State. The Communist Party was at once outlawed and the National Front was dissolved in Oct. 1966. On 22 Feb. 1967 Sukarno handed over all his powers to Gen. Suharto.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Indonesia, covering a total land area of 741,098 sq. miles (1,919,443 sq. km), consists of 13,677 islands (6,000 of which are inhabited) extending about 3,200 miles east to west through three time-zones (East, Central and West Indonesian Standard time) and 1,250 miles north to south. The largest islands are Sumatra, Java, Kalimantan (Indonesian Borneo), Sulawesi (Celebes) and Irian Jaya (the western part of New Guinea). Most of the smaller islands except Madura and Bali are grouped together. The two largest groups of islands are Maluku (the Moluccas) and Nusa Tenggara (the Lesser Sundas).

The total population in 1980 (census) was 147,490,298, distributed as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>
Aceh (D.I.)	55,392	2,611,271	Banda Aceh	72,090
Sumatera Utara	70,787	8,360,894	Medan	1,378,955
Sumatera Barat	49,778	3,406,816	Padang	480,922
Riau	94,562	2,168,535	Pekanbaru	186,262
Jambi	44,924	1,445,994	Telanaipura	230,373
Sumatera Selatan	103,688	4,629,801	Palembang	787,187
Bengkulu	21,168	768,064	Bengkulu	64,783
Lampung	33,307	4,624,785	Tanjungkarang	284,275
Sumatera	473,606	28,016,160		

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>
Jakarta Raya (D.C.I.)	590	6,503,449	Jakarta	6,503,449
Jawa Barat	46,300	27,453,525	Bandung	1,462,637
Jawa Tengah	34,206	25,372,889	Semarang	1,026,671
Yogyakarta (D.I.)	3,169	2,750,813	Yogyakarta	398,727
Jawa Timur	47,922	29,188,852	Surabaya	2,027,913
Jawa and Madura	132,187	91,269,528		
Kalimantan Barat	146,760	2,486,068	Pontianak	304,778
Kalimantan Tengah	152,600	954,353	Palangkaraya	60,447
Kalimantan Selatan	37,660	2,064,649	Banjarmasin	381,286
Kalimantan Timur	202,440	1,218,016	Samarinda	264,718
Kalimantan	539,460	6,723,086		
Sulawesi Utara	19,023	2,115,384	Menado	217,159
Sulawesi Tengah	69,726	1,289,635	Palu	298,584
Sulawesi Selatan	72,781	6,062,212	Ujung Padang	709,038
Sulawesi Tenggara	27,686	942,302	Kendari	41,021
Sulawesi	189,216	10,409,533		
Bali	5,561	2,469,930	Denpasar	261,263
Nusa Tenggara Barat	20,177	2,724,664	Mataram	68,964
Nusa Tenggara Timur	47,876	2,737,166	Kupang	403,110
Timor Timur <sup>1</sup>	14,874	555,350	Dili	60,150
Maluku	74,505	1,411,006	Amboina	208,898
Irian Jaya	421,981	1,173,875	Jayapura	149,618
Palau-Palau Lain	584,974	11,071,991		

<sup>1</sup> Formerly Portuguese East Timor.

Other major cities (census 1980): Malang, 511,780; Surakarta, 469,888; Bogor, 247,409; Cirebon, 223,776; Kediri, 221,830; Madiun, 150,562; Pematangsiantar, 150,376; Pekalongan, 132,558; Tegal, 131,728; Magelang, 123,484; Jember, 122,712; Sukabumi, 109,994 and Probolinggo, 100,296 (all on Java); Balikpapan (on Kalimantan), 280,875. Estimate (1987) 172·25m.

The principal ethnic groups are the Aceh, Batak and Minangkabaus in Sumatra, the Javanese and Sundanese in Java, the Madurese in Madura, the Balinese in Bali, the Sasaks in Lombok, the Menadonese, Minahas, Torajas and Buginese in Sulawesi, the Dayaks in Kalimantan, Irianese in Irian Jaya, the Ambonese in the Moluccas and Timorese in Timor Timur.

Bahasa Indonesian, a Malay dialect, is the official language of the Republic although Dutch is spoken as an unofficial language.

**CLIMATE.** Conditions vary greatly over this spread of islands, but generally the climate is tropical monsoon, with a dry season from June to Sept. and a wet one from Oct. to April. Temperatures are high all the year and rainfall varies according to situation on lee or windward shores. Jakarta. Jan. 78°F (25·6°C), July 78°F (25·6°C). Annual rainfall 71" (1,775 mm). Padang. Jan. 79°F (26·7°C), July 79°F (26·7°C). Annual rainfall 177" (4,427 mm). Surabaya. Jan. 79°F (27·2°C), July 78°F (25·6°C). Annual rainfall 51" (1,285 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Indonesia is a sovereign, independent republic.

The People's Consultative Assembly is the supreme power. It has 1,000 members and it sits at least once every 5 years. The House of People's Representatives has 500 members, 400 of them elected 100 as representatives from various groupings and sits for a 5-year term.

General elections to the 360 elected seats in the House of Representatives were held on 23 April 1987 and 299 seats were won by the Golkar Party.



The Cabinet was as follows in Jan. 1989:

*President, Prime Minister and Minister of Defence:* Gen. Raden Suharto, elected by the People's Consultative Assembly in 1968 and re-elected in 1973, 1978, 1983 and 1988.

*Vice-President:* Sudharmono. *Internal Affairs:* Rudini. *Foreign Affairs:* Ali Alatas. *Defence and Security:* L. B. Murdani. *Justice:* Ismail Saleh. *Information:* Harmoko. *Finance:* Dr J. B. Sumarlin. *Trade:* Dr Arifin Siregar. *Industry:* Hartarto. *Agriculture:* Wardoyo. *Mines and Energy:* Dr Ginandjar Kartasasmita. *Public Works:* Radinal Mochtar. *Communications:* Azwar Anas. *Co-operatives:* Bustanil Arifin. *Manpower:* Dr Cosmas Batubara. *Transmigration:* Sugiarto. *Tourism, Post and Telecommunications:* Susilo Sudarman. *Education and Culture:* Dr Fuad Hassan. *Health:* Dr Adhyatma. *Religious Affairs:* H. Munawir Sjadzali. *Social Affairs:* Dr Haryati Soebadio. *Forestry:* Hasrul Harahap. *Co-ordinator Minister of Political and Security Affairs:* Sudomo. *Co-ordinator Minister of Economic, Financial and Industrial Affairs and Development Supervision:* Dr Radius Prawiro. *Co-ordinator Minister of People's Welfare:* Supardjo Rustam. *State Minister and Secretary of State:* Dr Moerdiono. *State Minister of National Development Planning and Chairman of the National Development Planning Board:* Dr Saleh Afiff. *State Minister of Population and Environment:* Dr Emil Salim. *State Minister of Housing Affairs:* Siswono Yudohusodo. *State Minister of Youth Affairs and Sports:* Akbar Tandjung. *State Minister for the Assessment and Application of Technology:* Dr B. J. Habibe. *State Minister of Utilization of the State Apparatus:* Sarwono Kusumaatmadja. *State Minister of Women's Affairs:* Sulasikin Murpratomo. *Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces:* Gen. Try Sutrisno. *Attorney-General:* Sukarton Marmosudjono. *Governor of Central Bank:* Dr Adrianus Moy.

There are 6 junior ministers.

*National flag:* Horizontally red over white.

*National anthem:* Indonesia Raya (tune by Wage Rudolf Supratman, 1928).

*Local government:* There are 27 provinces and 2 special districts (Aceh and Yogyakarta), each administered by a Governor appointed by the President; they are divided into 301 *kabupatens*, each under a  *bupati* , and thence into over 3,000 *kecamatan*s, each headed by a  *camat* . The capital, Jakarta, forms a separate metropolitan district.

**DEFENCE.** The Indonesian Armed Forces were formally set up on 5 Oct. 1945. On 11 Oct. 1967 the Army, Navy, Air Force and Police were integrated under the Department of Defence and Security. Their commanders no longer hold cabinet rank. There is selective military service.

**Army.** There are 2 infantry divisions: 1 armoured cavalry brigade, 3 infantry brigades, 3 airborne infantry brigades, 3 artillery regiments, 1 engineer regiment and 4 special warfare groups. There are 63 independent infantry battalions, 17 independent artillery battalions and 8 independent cavalry battalions. Equipment includes 100 AMX-13 and 41 PT-76 light tanks. The Army has over 80 aircraft, including 4 Aviocars, 2 C-47s and 16 other fixed-wing types, 16 Iroquois, 13 BO 105, 9 Hughes 300, 4 Alouette III helicopters and 10 locally-built Bell 412 helicopters. Total strength in 1989 was 215,000.

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 2 diesel powered patrol submarines, 15 frigates, 4 fast missile boats, 2 fast attack craft, 1 fast gunboat, 12 patrol vessels, 2 fleet mine-sweepers, 8 small patrol craft, 15 landing ships, 2 landing craft, 3 training ships, 6 surveying vessels, 2 command and submarine support ships, 1 destroyer depot ship, 1 repair ship, 1 cable ship, 6 oilers, 10 auxiliaries, 60 minor landing craft, 20 service craft and 6 tugs. Personnel (1989) 43,000, including 12,000 marines.

The Naval Air Arm has 60 aircraft, including nearly 30 helicopters. There are 78 customs patrol cutters, 10 maritime security agency boats, 35 Army vessels, 6 Air Force boats and 60 armed marine police craft.

Naval personnel in 1989 numbered 43,000 officers and men, including 12,000 of the Marine Commando Corps and 1,000 in the Naval Air Arm.

**Air Force.** Operational combat units comprise two squadrons of A-4E Skyhawk attack aircraft, and single squadrons of F-5E Tiger II fighters and OV-10F Bronco twin-turboprop counter-insurgency aircraft. Delivery of 12 General Dynamics F-16s, to equip a new squadron, began in 1988. There are 3 transport squadrons, equipped with turboprop C-130 Hercules, Nurtanio/CASA NC-212 Aviocar and F27 Friendship aircraft, and piston-engined C-47s, plus 3 specially-equipped Boeing 737 dual-purpose maritime surveillance/transport; and an assortment of other aircraft in transport, helicopter and training units including 16 Hawk attack/trainers, 25 T-34C-1 armed turboprop trainers, and 40 Swiss-built AS 202 Bravo piston-engined primary trainers. On order are 32 CN-235 twin-turboprop transports and Bell 412 helicopters, from Nurtanio of Indonesia. Personnel (1989) approximately 27,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Indonesia is a member of UN, OPEC and ASEAN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fourth Five-Year Development Plan (1984-89) gives priority to increasing production and services in agriculture, manufacturing, mining, communications and transportation, and tourist industries.

**Budget.** The ordinary budget (in Rp. 1m.) in 1987-88, balanced at 22,783,100m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *rupiah* (abbreviated Rp.), divided into 100 *sen*. There are banknotes of 1, 2.5, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 rupiahs and aluminium coins of 1, 5, 10, 25 and cupro-nickel coins of 50 *sen*.

In March 1989 there were 3,015 rupiahs = £1 sterling; 1,752 rupiahs = US\$1.

**Banking.** The Bank Indonesia, successor to De Javasche Bank established by the Dutch in 1828, was made the central bank of Indonesia on 1 July 1953. It had an original capital of Rp. 25m.; a reserve fund of Rp. 18m. and a special reserve of Rp. 84m.

There are 117 commercial banks, 28 development banks and other financial institutions, 8 development finance companies and 9 joint venture merchant banks. Commercial banking is dominated by 5 state-owned banks: Bank Rakyat Indonesia provides services to smallholder agriculture and rural development; Bank Bumi Daya, estate agriculture and forestry; Bank Negara Indonesia 1946, industry; Bank Dagang Negara, mining; and Bank Ekspor-Impor Indonesia, export commodity sector. All state banks are authorized to deal in foreign exchange.

There are 101 private commercial banks owned and operated by Indonesians. The 11 foreign banks, which specialize in foreign exchange transactions and direct lending operations to foreign joint ventures, include the Chartered Bank, the Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation, the Bank of America, the City Bank, the Bank of Tokyo, Chase Manhattan and the American Express International Banking Corporation. The government owns one Savings Bank, Bank Tabungan Negara, and 1,000 Post Office Savings Banks. There are also over 3,500 rural and village savings bank and credit co-operatives.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures was officially introduced in Feb. 1923, and came into full operation on 1 Jan. 1938.

The following are the old weights and measures: *Pikol* = 136.16 lb. avoirdupois; *Katti* = 1.36 lb. avoirdupois; *Bau* = 1.7536 acres; *Square Pal* = 227 hectares = 561.16 acres; *Jengkal* = 4 yd; *Pal* (Java) = 1,506 metres; *Pal* (Sumatra) = 1,852 metres.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Three large-scale hydro-electric plants are operating on the Jatiluhur

and Brantas rivers in Java and on the Asahan River in Sumatra. Electricity produced (1986) 30,000m. kwh. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Indonesia is the principal producer of petroleum in the Far East, production coming from Sumatra, Kalimantan (Indonesian Borneo) and Java. Proven reserves (1986) 8,500m. bbls. The 1988 output of crude oil was 62m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Pertamina, the state oil company, started to pump natural gas to Jakarta in 1979. Production (1986-87) 1,666,700m. cu. ft.

**Water.** In 1986-87, 21,934 hectares of new irrigation networks had been constructed and 36,517 hectares rehabilitated.

**Minerals.** The high cost of extraction means that little of the large mineral resources outside Java is exploited; however, there is copper mining in Irian Jaya, nickel mining and processing on Sulawesi, aluminium smelting in northern Sumatra. Coal production (1986-87) 1,731,800 tonnes; bauxite (1986-87), 636,400 tonnes. Output (in 1,000 tonnes, 1986-87) of iron ore was 155.3; copper concentrate, 249.2; silver, 2,858.7 kg; gold, 179.8 kg; nickel ore, 1,680.6. In 1986-87 tin production was 20,500 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 26,706; cassava, 12,667; corn, 5,361; sweet potatoes, 2,125; cane sugar, 1,986; coconuts and copra, 1,864; palm oil, 1,419; soyabeans, 1,177; rubber, 1,034; coffee, 346.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 6.47m.; buffaloes, 2,994,000; horses, 715,000; sheep, 5.3m.; goats, 12.9m.; pigs, 6,216,000; poultry, 428m.

**Forestry.** The forest area was (1985) 113m. hectares. Production (1986-87): Sawn timber, 7,442,000 cu. metres; plywood, 5,302,000 cu. metres. Exports (1986-87) of processed timber, 6,884,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** In 1986 the catch of sea fish was 1,923,000 tonnes; inland fish was 607,000 tonnes. In 1986 there were 98,965 motorized and 219,130 other fishing vessels. Exports (1986, provisional) included 36.1m. tonnes of shrimps, 34.7m. tonnes of fresh fish and 860,000 tonnes of ornamental fish.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There are shipyards at Jakarta Raya, Surabaya, Semarang and Amboina. There were (1985) more than 2,000 textile factories (total production in 1986-87, 2,761.5m. metres), large paper factories (817,200 tonnes, 1986-87), match factories, automobile and bicycle assembly works, large construction works, tyre factories, glass factories, a caustic soda and other chemical factories. Production (1986-87): Cement, 11,247,300 tonnes; fertilizers, 5,656,200 tonnes; 8,589,600 tyres; automobiles, 128,765; 2,344m. matches.

**Trade Unions.** All unions must be affiliated to the All Indonesia Labour Federation (FBSI). About 40% of the labour force belong to unions. Strikes are forbidden by law. The total labour force (1985, estimate) was 64m.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports (including oil) in US\$1m. for year April-March:

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	16,351.8	13,882.1	14,450.0	12,540.0
Exports	21,151.7	...	19,910.0	18,100.0

The main export items (in US\$1m.) in 1986 were: Gas and oil, 7,971.5; timber, 1,417.2; handicrafts, 952.7; coffee, 823.6; rubber, 719.8; shrimps, 288.6; tin, 180.6; copper, 157.9; pepper, 139.3; palm oil, 102.4. Exports went mainly to Japan (44.8%), USA (19.6%), Singapore (8.4%), Netherlands (3.1%), Republic of Korea (2.4%), Federal Republic of Germany (2.3%) and Hong Kong (2.3%).

The main import items are non-crude oil, rice, consumer goods, fertilizer, chemicals, weaving yarn, iron and steel, industrial and business machinery. In 1986 imports came mainly from Japan (29.2%), USA (13.8%), Singapore (9%), Federal Republic of Germany (6.7%), Australia (3.9%), UK (3.2%) and China (3.1%).



Total trade between Indonesia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	181,490	155,934	141,242	144,819	233,807
Exports and re-exports from UK	186,736	172,818	196,629	236,027	203,275

**Tourism.** In 1986 about 825,000 tourists visited Indonesia mainly from USA, Australia, Japan, Netherlands, Germany, France, UK and Singapore.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Most cities on Java, Sumatra, Sulawesi and Bali are connected by highways or secondary roads. The Trans-Sumatra trunk road connecting Aceh (north) and Lampung (south) and the Trans-Sulawesi highway were nearing completion in 1984. The feeder-road between West Sumatra and Riau provinces was completed with the building of the bridge over the Kampar River at Pekanbaru in 1974. Motor vehicles, at 31 Dec. 1986, totalled 7,263,188.

**Railways.** In 1987 the State Railways totalled 6,458 km of 1,067 mm gauge, comprising 4,967 km on Java (of which 125 km electrified) and 1,491 km on Sumatra. They carried 48.3m. passengers and 7.9m. tonnes of freight. In addition some narrow gauge lines are still operated.

**Aviation.** Indonesia has 14 major airports: 4 on Java, 3 on Sumatra, 2 on Sulawesi and one each on Bali, Kalimantan, Timor, Maluku and Irian Jaya. A new international airport, 18 miles west of Jakarta at Cengkareng, was opened in 1985. The Government and KLM in 1949 set up 'Garuda Indonesia' as a mixed enterprise on a 50-50 capital basis under KLM management. In 1986-87 the total number of passengers carried was 5,546,613, total freight 59,694 tonnes.

**Shipping.** There are 16 ports for oceangoing ships, the largest of which is Tanjung Priok, which serves the Jakarta area and has a container terminal. The national shipping company Pelajaran Nasional Indonesia (PELNI) maintains interinsular communications. The Jakarta Lloyd maintains regular services between Jakarta, Amsterdam, Hamburg and London. In 1986-87, 48 ocean-going ships with a capacity of 446,980 DWT carried 15,686,532 tonnes of freight.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1979 the postal and telegraph services of Indonesia included 2,796 post offices. There were 660 telegraph offices which handled 3.9m. domestic and 488,000 international cables. Post offices handled 446.36m. letters, Rp. 333,470m. in money orders and 3,760,000m. in postal cheques in 1986-87. Deposits with post office savings accounts, Rp. 31,210m. Number of telephones (1987), 919,055.

Radio Republik Indonesia, under the Department of Information, operates 49 stations. In 1986-87 there were 6,393,399 TV receivers. In 1986, 54,000 public TV sets were placed in villages within reach of the state-owned Televisi Republik Indonesia telecast.

**Newspapers** (1986-87). There were about 252 newspaper publishers with estimated circulation of 7,879,966, of which 2,782,898 daily newspapers. There were 270 publishers of weekly papers and magazines with a circulation of 3.5m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are courts of first instance, high courts of appeal in every provincial capital and a Supreme Court of Justice for the whole of Indonesia in Jakarta. Administrative matters on judicial organization are under the direction of the Department of Justice.

In civil law the population is divided into three main groups: Indonesians, Europeans and foreign Orientals, to whom different law systems are applicable. When, however, people from different groups are involved, a system of so-called 'inter-gentile' law is applied.

The present criminal law, which has been in force since 1918, is codified and is based on European penal law. This law is equally applicable to all groups of the

population. For private and commercial law, however, there are various systems applicable for the various groups of the population. For the Indonesians, a system of private and agrarian law is applicable; this is called Adat Law, and is mainly uncodified. For the other groups the prevailing private and commercial law system is codified in the Private Law Act (1847) and the Commercial Law Act (1847). These Acts have their origins in the French *Code Civile* and *Code du Commerce* through the similar Dutch codifications. These Acts are entirely applicable to Indonesian citizens and to Europeans, whereas to foreign Orientals they are applicable with some exceptions, mainly in the fields of family law and inheritance. Penal law was in the process of being codified in 1981.

**Religion.** Religious liberty is granted to all denominations. About 87% of the Indonesians were Moslems in 1988 and 9% Christians. There are also about 1.6m. Buddhists, probably for the greater part Chinese. Hinduism has 3.5m. members, of whom 2.5m. are on Bali.

**Education.** In 1986–87 there were 30,809,000 pupils in primary schools, 6,029,000 students in junior high schools and 3,742,000 students in senior high schools, vocational schools, higher training and sports teachers' training colleges.

English is the first foreign language taught in schools. Literacy rate was 72% in 1984.

Total number of students in higher education (1986–87) 1,278,400 attending the 49 state, or 637 private universities and technical institutes.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 21,493 doctors and 1,408 hospitals with 111,300 beds; in 1983 there were 1,292 dentists; in 1982 there were 16,928 midwives and 62,615 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Indonesia in Great Britain (38 Grosvenor Sq., London W1X 9AD)

*Ambassador:* S. Suhartoyo.

Of Great Britain in Indonesia (Jalan M.H. Thamrin 75, Jakarta 10310)

*Ambassador:* W. K. K. White, CMG.

Of Indonesia in the USA (2020 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* A. R. Ramly.

Of the USA in Indonesia (Medan Merdeka Selatan 5, Jakarta)

*Ambassador:* Paul D. Wolfowitz.

Of Indonesia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Nana Sutresna.

## Further Reading

*Indonesia 1988.* Department of Information, Jakarta, 1988

Bee, O. J., *The Petroleum Resources of Indonesia*. OUP, 1982

Bemmelen, R. W. van, *Geology of Indonesia*. 2 vols. The Hague, 1949

Echols, J. M. and Shadily, H., *An Indonesian–English Dictionary*. 3rd ed. Cornell Univ. Press, 1975

International Commission of Jurists, *Indonesia and the Rule of Law*. London, 1987

Leifer, M., *Indonesia's Foreign Policy*. London, 1983

McDonald, H., *Suharto's Indonesia*. Univ. Press of Hawaii, 1981

Palmier, L., *Understanding Indonesia*. London, 1986

Papeneck, G., *The Indonesian Economy*. Eastbourne, 1980

Polomka, P., *Indonesia Since Sukarno*. London, 1971

Robison, R., *Indonesia: The Rise of Capital*. Sydney, 1986

Thoolen, H., *Indonesia and the Rule of Law*. London, 1987

# IRAN

Capital: Tehrán

Population: 53.92m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$1,690 (1986)

## Jomhori-e-Islami-e-Irân

**HISTORY.** Persia was ruled by the Shahs as an absolute monarchy until 30 Dec. 1906 when the first Constitution was granted. Reza Khan took control after a *coup d'état* on 31 Oct. 1925 deposed the last Shah of the Qajar Dynasty, and became Reza Shah Pahlavi on 12 Dec. 1925. The country's name was changed to Iran on 21 March 1935. Reza Shah abdicated on 16 Sept. 1941 in favour of his son, Mohammad Reza Pahlavi.

Following widespread civil unrest, the Shah left Iran on 17 Jan. 1979. The Ayatollah Ruhollah Khomeini, spiritual leader of the Shi'a Moslem community, returned from 15 years' exile on 1 Feb. 1979 and appointed a provisional government on 5 Feb. An Islamic Republic was proclaimed on 1 Apr. 1979.

In Sept. 1980 war began with Iraq with destruction of some Iranian towns and damage to the oil installations at Abadán. A UN-arranged ceasefire took place on 20 Aug. 1988.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Iran is bounded north by the USSR and the Caspian Sea, east by Afghánistán and Pakistan, south by the Gulf of Oman and the Persian Gulf, and west by Iraq and Turkey. It has an area of 1,648,000 sq. km (634,724 sq. miles), but a vast portion is desert, and the average density is only (1987) 31 inhabitants to the sq. km. Refugees in Iran (Jan. 1988) 2.6m. (of which 2.2m. Afgháns).

The population at recent censuses was as follows: (1956) 18,944,821; (1966) 25,781,090; (1976) 33,708,744; (1986) 49,857,384. Estimate (1988) 53.92m.

The areas, populations and capitals of the 24 provinces (*ostán*) were:

Province	Area (sq. km)	Census 1976	Census 1986	Capital
Azárbáiján, East	67,102	3,197,685	4,114,084	Tabriz
Azárbáiján, West	38,850	1,407,604	1,971,677	Orúmiyeh <sup>2</sup>
Bakhtarán <sup>1</sup>	23,667	1,030,714	1,462,965	Bakhtarán <sup>3</sup>
Boyer ahmadi and Kohkiluyeh	14,261	244,370	411,828	Yásúj
Búshehr	27,653	347,863	612,183	Búshehr
Chahár Mahál and Bakhtiári	14,870	394,357	631,179	Shahr Kord
Esfáhán	104,650	2,176,694	3,294,916	Esfáhán
Fárs	133,298	2,035,582	3,193,769	Shiráz
Gilán	14,709	1,581,872	2,081,037	Rasht
Hamadán	19,784	1,088,024	1,505,826	Hamadan
Hormozgán	66,870	462,440	762,206	Bandár-e-Abbas
Ilám and Poshtkuh	19,044	246,024	382,091	Ilám
Kermán	179,916	1,091,148	1,622,958	Kermán
Khorásán	313,337	3,264,398	5,280,605	Mashhad
Khuzestán	67,282	2,187,118	2,681,978	Ahváz
Kordestán	24,998	782,440	1,078,415	Sánándáj
Lorestán	28,803	933,939	1,367,029	Khorramabád
Markazi	29,080	1,090,374	1,082,109	Arák
Mázándarán	46,456	2,387,171	3,419,346	Sári
Semnán	90,905	289,463	417,035	Semnán
Sistán and Balúchestan	181,578	664,292	1,197,059	Záhedán
Tehrán (formed from Markazi)	29,993	5,331,166	8,712,087	Tehrán
Yazd	70,011	356,849	574,028	Yazd
Zanján	36,398	1,117,157	158,800	Zanján

<sup>1</sup> Formerly Kermánsháhán.

<sup>2</sup> Formerly Rezáyeh.

<sup>3</sup> Formerly Kermánsháh.



The principal cities were:

	<i>Census</i> 1976	<i>Census</i> 1986		<i>Census</i> 1976	<i>Census</i> 1986
Tehrán	4,530,223	6,042,584	Ardabil	147,865	281,973
Esfáhán	661,510	986,753	Khorramshahr	140,490	...
Mashhad	667,770	1,463,508	Kermán	140,761	257,284
Tabriz	597,976	971,482	Karaj	137,926	275,100
Shiráz	425,813	848,289	Qazvin	139,258	248,591
Ahváz	334,399	579,826	Yazd	135,925	230,483
Abadán	294,068	...	Arák	116,832	265,349
Bakhtarán	290,600	560,514	Desful	121,251	151,420
Qom	247,219	543,139	Khorramábád	104,912	208,592
Rasht	188,957	290,897	Borujerd	101,345	183,879
Orúmiyeh	164,419	300,746	Zanján	100,351	215,261
Hamadán	165,785	272,499			

The national language is Farsi or Persian, spoken by 45% of the population. 23% spoke related languages, including Kurdish and Luri in the west and Baluchi in the south-east, while 26% spoke Turkic languages, primarily the Azerbáijáni-speaking peoples of the north-west and the Turkomen of Khorásan in the north-east.

**CLIMATE.** Mainly a desert climate, but with more temperate conditions on the shores of the Caspian Sea. Seasonal range of temperature is considerable. Abadán. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 97°F (36.1°C). Annual rainfall 8" (204 mm). Tehrán. Jan. 36°F (2.2°C), July 85°F (29.4°C). Annual rainfall 10" (246 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of the Islamic Republic was approved by a national referendum in Dec. 1979. It gives supreme authority to a religious leader (*wali faqih*), which position will be held by Ayatollah Khomeini for the rest of his natural life, and thereafter be elected by the Moslem clergy.

The President of the Republic is popularly-elected for a 4-year term and is head of the executive; he appoints a Prime Minister and other Ministers, subject to approval by the *Majlis*.

Presidents since the establishment of the Islamic Republic:

Abolhassan Bani-Sadr, 4 Feb. 1980–22 June 1981 (deposed)	Mohammad Ali Raja'i, 24 July 1981–30 Aug. 1981 (assassinated).
--	--

The Cabinet was composed as follows in 1988.

*President:* Hojatolislam Sayed Ali Khamenei (from 12 Oct. 1981, sworn in for second term 4 Sept. 1985).

*Prime Minister:* Mir Hosein Musavi-Khamenei.

*Agriculture and Rural Development:* Abas Ali Zali. *Commerce:* Hasan Abedi-Jafari. *Construction Jihad:* Bizhan Namdar-Zangeneh. *Culture and Higher Education:* Mohammad Farhadi. *Defence:* Mohammed Hosein Jalali. *Economic Affairs and Finance:* Mohammad Javad Iravani. *Education and Training:* Kazem Akrami. *Energy:* Mohammad Taqi Banki. *Foreign Affairs:* Ali Akbar Velayati. *Health and Medical Education:* Ali Reza Marandi. *Heavy Industries:* Behzad Nabavi. *Housing and Urban Development:* Seraj-ed-Din Kazeruni. *Industries:* Qolam Reza Shafei. *Information and Security:* Mohammad Mohammadai-Reyshahri. *Interior:* Ali Akbar Mohtashemi-Pur. *Islamic Guidance:* Mohammad Khatami. *Justice:* Hasan Habibi. *Labour and Social Affairs:* Abol Qasem Sarhadi-zadeh. *Mines and Metals:* Mohammad Reza Ayatollahi. *Petroleum:* Qolam Reza Aqazadeh. *Plan and Budget:* Masud Roqani-Zanjani. *Post, Telegraph and Telephone:* Mohammad Qarazi. *Revolutionary Guard:* Mohsen Rafiq-Dust. *Roads and Transport:* Mohammad Sayyed-Kia.

Legislative power is held by a 270-member Islamic Consultative Assembly (*Majlis*), directly elected for a 4-year term on 17 May 1984; but all legislation is subject to approval by a 12-member Council of Guardians who ensure it is in accordance with the Islamic code and with the Constitution. Six members of this constitutional Council are appointed by the *wali faqih* and six by the judiciary.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, white and red; on the borders of the green and red stripes the legend *Allah Akbar* in white Kufi script repeated 22 times in all; in the centre of the white stripe the national emblem in red.

*Local Government.* The country is divided into 24 provinces (*ostán*), these are sub-divided into 195 *shahrestán* (counties), each under a *farmándár* (governor) and thence into 500 *bakhsh* (districts), each under a *bakhshdár*. The districts are sub-divided into *dehstán* (groups of villages) each under a *dehdár*, each village having its elected *kadkhodá* (headman).

**DEFENCE.** Two years' military service is compulsory.

**Army.** The Army consisted (1989) of 305,000 men (about 250,000 conscripts), with some 350,000 reservists. It is organized in 4 mechanized, 6 infantry and 1 airborne divisions, and auxiliary units. Equipment includes T-54/-55/-62, T-72, 300 Chieftain, M-47/-48 and M-60A1 main battle tanks. There is also a 300,000-strong Revolutionary Guard Corps. The Army does operate aircraft, but strength is not known.

**Navy.** The fleet, declining since the revolution, before the war comprised 3 very old destroyers, 5 frigates, 2 old corvettes, 8 fast attack craft (some missile-armed), 3 old coastal minesweepers, 2 inshore minesweepers, 7 patrol boats, 14 hovercraft, 4 logistic landing ships, 2 tank landing ships, 4 landing craft, 2 supply ships, 1 repair ship, 1 replenishment ship, 4 survey vessels, 3 water carriers and 5 tugs. There were also 150 coastguard cutters and 40 customs craft. The Navy air service had a fleet of 20 helicopters and 14 fixed-wing aircraft.

The construction of 12 fast missile craft in France was to have been completed by mid-1979, but later boats did not receive their missiles and the last 3 boats were embargoed in France. They eventually sailed on 2 Aug. 1981 but one was seized by a Royalist group off Cadiz and after she surrendered to the French all three were sent to Iran in a merchant ship to obviate further trouble. Four were reported sunk during the war with Iraq. Two corvettes were also sunk.

Naval personnel nominally totalled 20,000 officers and ratings including marines, but (1989) fewer than 15,000 were reportedly active.

With war following revolution and withdrawal of UK and US maintenance teams the fleet lacks spares and the navy has run down, several ships being laid up. The situation was worsened by cessation of foreign help in training semi-illiterate conscripts and with poor morale following general instability and casualties the above ships do not represent an efficient maritime force.

Claims of sinkings during the Iran-Iraq war have not been officially confirmed. Figures for ship and personnel strengths should be interpreted with caution.

**Air Force.** In Aug. 1955 the Air Force became a separate and independent arm, and had a strength of about 23 first-line squadrons (each 15 aircraft, plus reserves), with 100,000 personnel before the 1979 revolution. Strength (1989) was estimated at 35,000 personnel and 100 serviceable combat aircraft. The latter include some MiG-19/Chinese-built F-6 fighter-bombers, supplied via North Korea, and surviving US fighters that include F-14 Tomcat, F-5E Tiger II and F-4D/E Phantom II fighter-bombers, plus a few RF-4E reconnaissance-fighters. Transport aircraft include F27s, C-130 Hercules, PC-6 Turbo-Porters, Boeing 707s and 747s, some equipped as flight refuelling tankers. The status of the large fleet of CH-47C Chinook, Bell Model 214 and other helicopters is not known; but two P-3F Orion maritime patrol aircraft remain operational. Training aircraft include Bonanza basic trainers and 35 turboprop PC-7 Turbo-Trainers.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Iran is a member of UN, OPEC and the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The development plan, 1983-88 envisages an investment of 14,191,300m. rials (60% state).

**Budget.** The budget for 1988–89 balanced at 9.8m. *rials*.

**Currency.** The Iranian unit of currency is the *rial* sub-divided into 100 *dinars*.

Notes in circulation are of denominations of 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *rials*. Coins in circulation are bronze–aluminium and copper, 50 *dinar*; silver alloy, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20 and 50 *rials*. In March 1989, US\$1 = 70.16 *rials*; £1 = 120.75 *rials*.

**Banking.** The *Bank Markazi Iran* was established in 1960 as the note-issuing authority and government bank of Iran. All other banks and insurance companies were nationalized in June 1979, and re-organized into 8 new state banking corporations. The 'Law for Usury-Free Banking' was given final approval in Aug.-Sept. 1983. From 21 March 1985 interest on accounts was abolished.

**Weights and Measures.** By a law passed on 8 Jan. 1933, the official weights and measures are those of the metric system.

The Iranian year is a solar year running from 21 March to 20 March; the Hejira year 1362 corresponds to the Christian year 21 March 1984–20 March 1985.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Capacity of generators installed at institutions affiliated to Ministry of Energy, 1985, was 12,369,000 kw., and 36,720m. kwh. was generated. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** For a history of Iran's oil industry 1951–79, see STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1982–83.

The petroleum industry was seriously disrupted by the 1979 revolution, and many facilities, including the vast refinery at Abadan, the new refinery at Bandar Khomeini and the tanker terminal at Kharg Island, have been destroyed or put out of action during the Gulf war with Iraq. All operating companies were nationalized in 1979 and operations are now run by the National Petrochemical Company.

Crude oil production, 113m. tonnes, 1988.

**Gas.** Natural gas production (1983) was 987,409m. cu. ft.

**Minerals.** Iran has substantial mineral deposits relatively underdeveloped. Production figures for 1985 (in 1,000 tonnes): Iron ore, 2,099; coal, 674; zinc and lead, 56; manganese, 46; chromite, 56; salt, 618.

**Agriculture.** In 1982, cultivatable land totalled 14,867,000 hectares, of which 5,664,000 were irrigated and 4,929,000 hectares fallow land. Forests totalled 12.7m. hectares and pastures 90m.

Crop production for 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat, 7,128; barley, 2,500; rice, 1,569; sugar-beet, 4,700; sugar-cane, 1,100; tobacco, 22.

Wool comes principally from Khorásán, Bakhtarán, Mázandarán and Azár-báiján. Production, 1972, 20,000 tonnes.

Rice is grown largely on the Caspian shores.

Cigarette tobacco is grown mainly in Hormozgán, Bushehr and West Azár-báiján *ostáns*. It is purchased by the Tobacco Monopoly and manufactured in the government factory at Tehrán.

Opium, until 1955, was an important export commodity in Iran. On 7 Oct. 1955 an Act was approved by Parliament to prohibit the cultivation and usage of opium.

Livestock (1987): 34.5m. sheep, 13.6m. goats, 8.35m. cattle, 316,000 horses, 27,000 camels, (1984) 20,000 pigs, 230,000 buffaloes, and 1.8m. donkeys.

**Fisheries.** The Caspian Fisheries Co. (Shilát) is a government monopoly. Exports of caviar (1975) were valued at US\$72m. In 1984–85 the catch (in tonnes) in the north was: Non-caviar fish, 4,385; caviar, 247; *clupeonella deliculata*, 1,660. In the south (1984): Canned fish, 6,196; non-canned fish, 16,452; shrimp, 973.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production of industrial goods, 1984: Vegetable oil, 444,192 tonnes;



sugar, 639,514 tonnes; finished cloth, 661,961,229 metres; footwear, 66,290,969 pairs; bricks, 10,824,612; cement, 12,064,027 tonnes; tractors, 14,513; combines, 612; tillers and threshers, 18,637; agricultural discs, 25,136; small vans, 68,644; trucks and small trucks, 14,932; private cars, 57,790; buses, 2,532; mini-buses, 8,170; ambulances, 559; motor cycles, 199,782. In 1984 there were 7,513 large-scale manufacturing establishments and the labour force was 619,332.

**Commerce.** Imports totalled 1,332,673m. rials in 1984–85. Exports totalled 33,041m. rials in 1984–85, excluding oil and hydrocarbon solvents obtained from oil.

Total trade between Iran and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	368,572	63,317	100,303	187,572	140,207
Exports and re-exports from UK	703,097	525,589	399,373	307,853	247,768

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 the total length of roads was 139,368 km, of which 504 km were freeways, 16,346 km main roads, 35,930 km by-roads, 33,618 km rural roads and 52,366 km other roads.

In 1984 private motor vehicles numbered 2,246,143; rented vehicles, 377,745; government vehicles, 144,248.

**Railways.** The State Railways totalled 4,567 km of main lines in 1985, of which 146 km electrified. In 1986 the railways carried 4,638m. passenger-km and 7,316 tonne-km. Construction began in 1983 of a link from Kermán to Zahedán to connect the network to Pakistan.

**Aviation.** In 1985, 1,470,000 passengers arrived at Mehrabad Airport (1,157,000 on domestic flights and 313,000 on international flights) and 1,516,000 passengers departed (1,155,000 domestic and 361,000 international). The state airline carried 3,166,000 passengers and 52,303 tons of cargo and mail in 1983.

**Shipping.** In 1985, 1,345 ships, capacity 11,998,000 tonnes, entered commercial ports, unloading 12,660,000 tonnes and loading 447,000 tonnes of goods (excluding oil products).

**Post and Broadcasting.** Postal, telegraph and telephone services are administered by the Iranian Ministry of Posts, Telegraphs and Telephones.

In 1985 the number of telephones was 1,305,122, of which some 488,516 were in Tehrán province. Wireless sets numbered 10m. in 1980, and television sets 2.1m.

**Cinemas** (1983). There were 277 cinemas with 174,366 seats.

**Newspapers.** There were in 1982, 17 daily papers in Tehrán and other cities. Their circulation is relatively small, *Ettela'át* and *Kayhán* leading with about 220,000 and 350,000 respectively. Two English-language and a French-language daily ceased publication in March 1979.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A new legal system based on Islamic law was introduced by the new constitution in 1979. The President of the Supreme Court and the public Prosecutor-General are appointed by the *wali faqih* (Ayatollah Khomeini). The Supreme Court has 16 branches and 109 offences carry the death penalty.

**Religion.** The official religion is the Shi'a branch of Islam, known as the *Ithna-Ashariyya*, which recognizes 12 Imáms or spiritual successors of the Prophet Mohammad. Of the total population, 96% are Shi'a, 3% are Sunni and 1% non-Moslem.

**Education.** The great majority of primary and secondary schools are state schools. Elementary education in state schools and university education are free; small fees are charged for state-run secondary schools. Text-books are issued free of charge to pupils in the first 4 grades of elementary schools.

In 1984 there were 634,200 pupils in elementary schools, 2,021,520 in orientation schools and 901,056 in general secondary schools; there were 184,520 students in technical and vocational schools, 37,247 in teacher-training schools, 18,590 gifted children, and 182,239 in adult education courses. Universities and other institutes of higher education had 145,809 students in 1984. The Free Islamic University was established after the revolution and in 1983 the International University of Islamic Studies was being organized.

A literacy movement was established in 1981 and by 1985, 3m. citizens had participated.

**Health.** In 1984 70,152 hospital beds were available in 589 hospitals. Medical personnel included 15,945 physicians and 2,340 dentists in 1982.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Diplomatic links between Great Britain and Iran were broken in March 1989.

Of Iran in the USA (3005 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of the USA in Iran (260 Takhte Jamshid Ave., Tehrán)  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Iran to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Dr Said Rajaie-Khorassani.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information.* Statistical Centre of Iran, Dr Fakemi Avenue, Tehrán, Iran, 14144.

Afshar, H., *Iran: A Revolution in Turmoil.* London, 1985

Arberry, A. J. (ed.) *The Cambridge History of Iran.* 8 vols. CUP, 1968ff.

Bakhash, S., *The Reign of the Ayatollahs.* London, 1984

Benard, C. and Zalmay, K., *'The Government of God' Iran's Islamic Republic.* Columbia Univ. Press, 1984

Haim, S., *Shorter Persian-English Dictionary.* Tehrán, 1958

Heikal, M., *Iran: The Untold Story.* New York, 1982

Hiro, D., *Iran under the Ayatollahs.* London, 1985

Hussain, A., *Islamic Iran: Revolution and Counter-Revolution.* London, 1985

Katouzian, H., *The Political Economy of Iran.* London, 1981

Keddie, N., *Roots of Revolution.* Yale Univ. Press, 1981

Lambton, A. K. S., *Landlord and Peasant in Persia.* OUP, 1953.—*Persian Vocabulary.* CUP, 1954

Looney, R. E., *The Economic Development of Iran: A Recent Survey with Projections to 1981.* New York, 1973

Nashat, G., *Women and Revolution in Iran.* Boulder, 1983

Navabpour, A. R., *Iran.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Sick, G., *All Fall Down.* London, 1985

Steinglass, F. J., *A Comprehensive Persian-English Dictionary.* 2nd ed. London, 1930

Stempel, J. D., *Inside the Iranian Revolution.* Indiana Univ. Press, 1981

Sullivan, W. H., *Mission to Iran.* New York, 1981

Zabih, S., *Iran's Revolutionary Upheaval: An Interpretive Essay.* San Francisco, 1979.—*The Mosaddegh Era: Roots of the Iranian Revolution.* Chicago, 1982.—*Iran since the Revolution.* London, 1982.—*The Left in Contemporary Iran.* London and Stamford, 1986

# IRAQ

*Capital:* Baghdad

*Population:* 17.06m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,140 (1986)

## al Jumhuriya al 'Iraqia

**HISTORY.** Part of the Ottoman Empire from the 16th century, Iraq was captured by British forces in 1916 and became in 1921 a Kingdom under a League of Nations mandate, administered by Britain. It became independent on 3 Oct. 1932 under the Hashemite Dynasty, which was overthrown on 14 July 1958 by a military *coup* which established a Republic, controlled by a military-led Council of Sovereignty under Gen. Qassim. The republican régime terminated the adherence of Iraq to the Arab Federation (see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1958, p. 806). In 1963 Qassim was overthrown and Gen. Abdul Salam Aref became President, to be succeeded in 1966 by his brother Abdul Rahman Aref. In 1968 a successful *coup* was mounted by the Ba'th Party, which brought Gen. Ahmed Al Bakr to the Presidency. His Vice-President, from 1969, Saddam Hussein, became President in a peaceful transfer of power in 1979.

An attempt at succession by the Kurdish minority in the north-east of Iraq flared up in 1962, and fighting continued until the acceptance of a peace plan in June 1966. The Revolutionary Command Council formed after the 17 July 1968 *coup* announced in March 1970 a complete and constitutional settlement of the Kurdish issue. This was not, however, fully accepted by the Kurdish opposition leader.

In Sept. 1980 Iraq invaded Iran in a dispute over territorial rights in the Shatt-al-Arab waterway which developed into a full-scale war. A UN-arranged ceasefire took place on 20 Aug. 1988.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Iraq is bounded north by Turkey, east by Iran, south-east by the Gulf, south by Kuwait and Saudi Arabia, and west by Jordan and Syria. The country has an area of 434,924 sq. km (167,925 sq. miles) and its population census (1977) was 12,000,497 and (estimate) 1988, 17,064,000.

The areas, populations (1977) and capitals of the governorates were:

<i>Governorate</i>	<i>sq. km</i>	<i>Estimate 1985</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Estimate 1985</i>
Al-Anbar	137,723	582,058	Ar-Ramadi	137,388
Babil (Babylon)	5,258	739,031	Al-Hillah	215,249
Baghdad	5,159	4,648,609	Baghdad	4,648,609
al-Basrah	19,070	1,304,153	Al-Basrah	616,700
Dahuk <sup>1</sup>	6,120	330,356	Dahuk	19,736 <sup>3</sup>
Dhi Qar	13,626	725,913	an-Nasiriyah	138,842
Diyala	19,292	691,350	Ba'qubah	114,516
Irbil <sup>1</sup>	14,471	742,682	Irbil	333,903
Karbala	5,034	329,234	Karbala	184,574
Maysan	14,103	411,843	Al-Amarah	131,758
Al-Muthanna	51,029	253,816	As-Samawah	33,473 <sup>2</sup>
an-Najaf	27,844	472,103	An-Najaf	242,603
Ninawa (Nineveh)	37,698	1,358,082	Mosul	570,926
al-Qadisiyah	8,507	511,799	Ad-Diwaniyah	60,553 <sup>2</sup>
Salah ad-Din	29,004	442,782	Samarra	62,008 <sup>3</sup>
As-Sulaymaniyah <sup>1</sup>	15,756	906,495	As-Sulaymaniyah	279,424
Ta'mim	10,391	650,965	Kirkuk	207,852 <sup>3</sup>
Wasit	17,308	483,716	Al-Kut	58,647 <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Forming Kurdish Autonomous Region.

<sup>2</sup> Census 1965.

<sup>3</sup> Estimate 1970.

The national language is Arabic, spoken by 81% of the population. There is a major minority group of Kurdish-speakers in the north-east (15.5%) and smaller groups speaking Turkic, Aramaic and Iranian languages.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is mainly arid, with small and unreliable rainfall and a large annual range of temperature. Summers are very hot and winters cold.



Al-Basrah. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 92°F (33.3°C). Annual rainfall 7" (175 mm). Baghdad. Jan. 50°F (10°C), July 95°F (35°C). Annual rainfall 6" (140 mm). Mosul. Jan. 44°F (6.7°C), July 90°F (32.2°C). Annual rainfall 15" (384 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Provisional Constitution was published on 22 Sept. 1968 and promulgated on 16 July 1970. The highest state authority remains the 9-member Revolutionary Command Council (RCC) but some legislative power has now been given to the 250-member National Assembly, elected 20 June 1980 for a 4-year term.

The only legal political grouping is the National Progressive Front (founded July 1973) comprising the Arab Socialist Renaissance (Ba'th) Party and various Kurdish parties; the Iraqi Communist Party left the Front in March 1979.

The President and Vice-President are elected by the RCC; the President appoints and leads a Council of Ministers responsible for administration.

*President:* Saddam Hussein at-Takriti (assumed office 17 July 1979).

*Vice-President:* Taha Moheddin Marouf.

The RCC was composed as follows in Dec. 1987:

Saddam Hussein at-Takriti (*Chairman*), Taha Moheddin Marouf, Izzat Ibrahim (*Vice-Chairman*), Na'im Hamid Haddad (*Secretary-General of the National Progressive Front*), Taha Yasin Ramadan (*First Deputy Prime Minister*), Gen. Adnan Khairallah (*Deputy Prime Minister, Defence*), Tariq Aziz Isa (*Deputy Prime Minister, Foreign Affairs*), Sa'doun Shakir Mahmud (*Interior*), Hasan Ali Nasar al-Amiri (*Trade*).

Besides those named above, the Council of Ministers comprises 7 Ministers of State, 19 other Ministers and 7 Presidential advisors with ministerial status.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, black, with 3 green stars on the white stripe.

*Local Government.* Iraq is divided into 18 governorates (*liwa*), each administered by an appointed Governor; three of the governorates form a (Kurdish) Autonomous Region, with an elected 57-member Kurdish Legislative Council. Each governorate is divided into *qadhas* (under Qaimaqams) and *nahiyahs* (under Mudirs).

**DEFENCE.** Military training is compulsory for all men when they reach the age of 18. This consists of 21-24 months' service (extended for war) with the colours.

**Army.** The Army is organized into 5 armoured, 2 mechanized and 39 infantry divisions including People's Army and Reserve brigades; 4 Presidential Guard divisions, 20 special forces brigades. Equipment includes 4,500 Soviet T-54/-55/-62/-72 and 1,500 Chinese Type-69 main battle tanks. Strength (1989 estimate) 955,000, including 480,000 active reserves.

**Navy.** The Navy comprises 4 new Italian-built frigates, 1 modern frigate/training ship, 4 new Italian-built missile corvettes, 12 *ex*-Soviet missile boats, 6 *ex*-Soviet torpedo boats, 3 Danish-built tank landing ships, 3 *ex*-Soviet but Polish-built medium landing ships, 3 *ex*-Soviet anti submarine craft, 2 fleet minesweepers, 5 inshore minesweepers, 1 training ship, 16 gunboats, 8 coastal patrol craft, 10 harbour patrol boats, 1 oiler, 1 presidential yacht. Information on war losses not available.

In 1989 naval personnel totalled 5,000 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** Except for some 40 Bell 214ST helicopters from the USA and 100 Mirage F.1E/B fighters, about 40 Alouette III, 10 Super Frelon, 40 Puma and 59 Gazelle helicopters acquired from France, the combat and transport squadrons are equipped primarily with aircraft of Soviet design, including 6 Tu-22 supersonic medium bombers, 30 Su-7 and 50 Su-20 fighter-bombers, some MiG-29 and 90 MiG-23 interceptors and fighter-bombers, and 100 Chinese-built F-7 and MiG-21 interceptors; 60 Chinese-built F-6 (MiG-19) fighters, 40 Mi-24 gunship helicopters, 100 Mi-8 helicopters, and four-turboprop Il-76, turboprop An-12 and An-24/26 transports. USSR was also reported (1987) to have supplied Su-25

ground attack aircraft. A few Il-14s and smaller types are used in a transport/communications role. L-29 Delfin and L-39 Albatross aircraft are employed for training, with Swiss-built Bravo piston-engined primary trainers, and Tucano and Pilatus PC-7 turboprop basic trainers, Soviet MiG-15UTI trainers and other types in the Air Force College and operational conversion units. Total strength (1989) 40,000 personnel and 500 combat aircraft. Soviet 'Guideline', 'Goa', 'Gainful', 'Gaskin' and Roland surface-to-air missiles are operational.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Iraq is a member of UN, Arab League and the Non-Aligned Movement.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in 1,000 Iraqi dinars) for 1981 balanced at I.D. 19,250m.

Oil revenues account for nearly 50%, customs and excise for about 26% of the total revenue.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *Iraqi dinar* (I.D.) = 1,000 *fil*s = 10 *riyals* = 20 *dirhams*. Silver alloy coins for 100 and 50 *fil*s (*dirham*) and 25 *fil*s are in circulation, and other coins for 10, 5 and 1 *fil*s. Notes are for ¼, ½ and 1 *dinar*, and for 5 and 10 *dinars*. In March 1989, £1 = 0.5350 *dinar*, US\$1 = 0.3108 *dinar*.

**Banking.** All banks were nationalized on 14 July 1964. The Central Bank of Iraq is the sole bank of issue. In 1941 the Rafidain Bank, financed by the Iraqi Government, was instituted to carry out normal banking transactions with head office in Baghdad and branches in the chief towns and abroad, including London. In addition, there are 4 government banks which are authorized to issue loans to companies and individuals: the Industrial Bank, the Agricultural Bank, the Estate Bank, and the Mortgage Bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production in 1986 amounted to 22,560m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Following the nationalization of the Iraqi oil industry in June 1972, the Iraqi National Oil Company (INOC) is responsible for the exploration, production, transport and marketing of Iraqi crude oil and oil products.

The total crude petroleum production was (1988) 128m. tonnes and of natural gas (1980) 1,760m. cu. ft. Oil exports are essential for the economy but oil terminals in the Gulf were destroyed in 1980 and the trans-Syria pipeline closed in 1982. Iraq is now wholly reliant on the 625 mile pipeline from Kirkuk to the Mediterranean *via* Turkey.

**Agriculture.** The chief winter crops (1986) are wheat, 1.1m. tonnes and barley, 1.3m. tonnes. The chief summer crop is rice, 145,000 tonnes. The date crop is important (100,000 tonnes), the country furnishing about 80% of the world's trade in dates; the chief producing area is the totally irrigated riverain belt of the Shatt-el-Arab. Wool and cotton are also important exports.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 1.5m.; buffaloes, 140,000; sheep, 8.7m.; goats, 1.4m.; horses, 55,000; camels, 55,000; chickens, 75m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Iraq is still relatively under-developed industrially but work has begun on new industrial plants which are being established with Soviet equipment and technical assistance.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports for 4 calendar years were (in US\$1 m.):

	1981	1982	1983	1984
Imports	10,530	10,250	9,785	11,260
Exports	20,922	21,728	12,275	11,720

In 1983, crude oil formed 98.6% of all exports, of which 23% to Brazil and 12.5% to Italy. 13.8% of imports came from Federal Republic of Germany and 11% from Kuwait.

Total trade between Iraq and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	69,047	44,125	66,129	33,871	43,406
Exports and re-exports from UK	343,120	444,749	443,890	271,655	412,091

**Tourism.** About 1,004,000 tourists visited Iraq in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 25,500 km of main roads in 1985. Vehicles registered in 1982 totalled 230,000 passenger cars and 145,000 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** The Iraqi Republic Railways were originally largely metre gauge but now comprise a 1,435 mm gauge main line from Um Qasr through Basra to Baghdad, Mosul and Tel-Kotchek on the Syrian frontier, and the remaining metre gauge route from Baghdad to Khanaqin, Kirkuk and Erbil. A 1,435 mm gauge line was opened in 1983 from Baghdad to Husaiba (404 km) on the Syrian frontier, which will form part of a through route to the Mediterranean port of Latakia, together with a branch of 155 km to serve phosphates deposits at Akashat. Total length 2,254 km. In 1986 the railways carried 2,360 tonne-km and 1,005m. passenger-km.

**Aviation.** Baghdad airport is served by British Airways, Lufthansa, Alitalia, SAS, Swissair, KLM, Middle East Air Lines, PIA, Iraqi Airways, Air Liban, United Arab Airlines and Aeroflot. In 1982 passenger-km were 1,476m. and cargo, 37.5m. tonne-km.

**Shipping.** The merchant fleet in 1980 comprised 142 vessels (over 100 gross tons) with a total tonnage of 1,465,949. The ports of Basra and Um Qasr have been closed since Sept. 1980.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Wireless telegraph services exist with UK, USA, UAR, Lebanon and Saudi Arabia, and wireless telephone services with UK, USA, Italy, UAR and USSR. Telephones, 1983, 624,685 (Baghdad, 302,219). In 1986 there were 2.5m. radio and 750,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1979). There were 87 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1983). In Baghdad there are 4 main daily newspapers (one of which is in English with a circulation of 200,000).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The courts are established throughout the country as follows: For civil matters: the court of cassation in Baghdad; 6 courts of appeal at Baghdad (2), Basra, Babylon, Mosul and Kirkuk; 18 courts of first instance with unlimited powers and 150 courts of first instance with limited powers, all being courts of single judges. In addition, 6 peace courts have peace court jurisdiction only. Tribal law was abolished in Aug. 1958.

For *Shara'* (religious) matters: the *Shara'* courts at all places where there are civil courts, constituted in some places of specially appointed Qadhis (religious judges) and in other places of the judges of the civil courts. For criminal matters: the court of cassation; 6 sessions courts (2 being presided over by the judge of the local court of first instance and 4 being identical with the courts of appeal). Magistrates' courts at all places where there are civil courts, constituted of civil judges exercising magisterial powers of the first and second class. There are also a number of third-



class magistrates' courts, powers for this purpose being granted to municipal councils and a number of administrative officials. Some administrative officials are granted the powers of a peace judge to deal with cases of debts due from cultivators.

**Religion.** In 1965 there were 7,711,712 Moslems, 232,406 Christians (1979), 2,500 Jews, 69,653 Yazidis and 14,262 Sabians.

**Education.** Primary and secondary education is free and primary education became compulsory in Sept. 1976. Primary school age is 6–12. Secondary education is for 6 years, of which the first 3 are termed intermediate. The medium of instruction is Arabic; Kurdish is used in primary schools in northern districts.

There were, in 1981, 10,816 primary schools with 2,637,023 pupils, and 1,579 secondary schools with 1,028,348 pupils. 155 vocational schools had 82,307 students and 62 teacher-training colleges had 102,430 students.

There are 6 universities with (1977) 71,536 students and 15 other higher educational establishments with 9,962 students.

**Health.** In 1981 there were 7,634 doctors, and 25,443 hospital beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Iraq in Great Britain (21 Queen's Gate, London, SW7 5JG)

*Ambassador:* Dr Mohammed Sadiq Al-Mashat.

Of Great Britain in Iraq (Zukafa 12, Mahala 218, Hai Al Khelood, Baghdad)

*Ambassador:* T. J. Clark, CMG, CVO.

Of Iraq in the USA (1801 P. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* Nizar Hamdoon.

Of the USA in Iraq (PO Box 2447, Alwiyah, Baghdad)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* David G. Newton.

Of Iraq to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Ismat Taha Kittani.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistical Organization, Ministry of Planning, Baghdad (*President:* Dr Salah Al-Shaikhly) publishes an annual *Statistical Abstract* (latest issue 1973). Foreign Trade statistics are published annually by the Ministry of Planning.

Abdulrahman, A. J., *Iraq* [Bibliography]. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984.

Axelgrad, F. W., *Iraq in Transition: A Political, Economic and Strategic Perspective*. London, 1986

Chubin, S. and Tripp, C., *Iran and Iraq at War*. London, 1988

Ghareeb, E., *The Kurdish Question in Iraq*. Syracuse Univ. Press, 1981

Postgate, E., *Iraq: International Relations and National Development*. London, 1983

# IRELAND

Capital: Dublin

Population: 3.54m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$5,080 (1986)

## Éire

**HISTORY.** In April 1916 an insurrection against British rule took place and a republic was proclaimed. The armed struggle was renewed in 1919 and continued until 1921. The independence of Ireland was reaffirmed in Jan. 1919 by the National Parliament (*Dáil Éireann*), elected in Dec. 1918.

In 1920 an Act was passed by the British Parliament, under which separate Parliaments were set up for 'Southern Ireland' (26 counties) and 'Northern Ireland' (6 counties). The Unionists of the 6 counties accepted this scheme, and a Northern Parliament was duly elected on 24 May 1921. The rest of Ireland, however, ignored the Act.

On 6 Dec. 1921 a treaty was signed between Great Britain and Ireland by which Ireland accepted dominion status subject to the right of Northern Ireland to opt out. This right was exercised, and the border between *Saorstát Éireann* (26 counties) and Northern Ireland (6 counties) was fixed in Dec. 1925 as the outcome of an agreement between Great Britain, the Irish Free State and Northern Ireland. The agreement was ratified by the three parliaments.

Subsequently the constitutional links between *Saorstát Éireann* and the UK were gradually removed by the *Dáil*. The remaining formal association with the British Commonwealth by virtue of the External Relations Act, 1936, was severed when the Republic of Ireland Act, 1948, came into operation on 18 April 1949.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Republic of Ireland lies in the Atlantic ocean, separated from Great Britain by the Irish Sea to the east, and bounded north-east by Northern Ireland.

<i>Counties and county boroughs</i>	<i>Area in hectares <sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Population, 1986 Females</i>	<i>Total</i>
<i>Province of Leinster</i>				
Carlow	89,635	20,813	20,145	40,948
Dublin County Borough	11,499	237,770	264,567	502,337
Dublin-Belgard	80,657	99,075	100,403	199,478
Dublin-Fingal		68,652	69,822	138,474
Dun Laoghaire-Rathdown		86,320	94,187	180,507
Kildare	169,425	59,445	56,570	116,015
Kilkenny	206,167	37,280	35,814	73,094
Laoighis	171,954	27,519	25,751	53,270
Longford	104,387	16,165	15,326	31,491
Louth	82,334	45,419	46,279	91,698
Meath	233,587	52,878	50,884	103,762
Offaly	199,774	30,814	28,992	59,806
Westmeath	176,290	31,986	31,320	63,306
Wexford	235,143	51,708	50,748	102,456
Wicklow	202,483	46,973	47,509	94,482
Total of Leinster	1,963,335	912,817	938,317	1,851,134
<i>Province of Munster</i>				
Clare	318,784	46,901	44,442	91,343
Cork County Borough	3,731	64,438	68,758	133,196
Cork	742,257	141,922	137,505	279,427
Kerry	470,142	63,162	60,760	123,922
Limerick County Borough	1,904	27,498	28,743	56,241
Limerick	266,676	54,957	53,006	107,963
Tipperary, N. R.	199,622	30,285	29,168	59,453
Tipperary, S. R.	225,836	39,350	37,701	77,051

<sup>1</sup> Exclusive of certain rivers, lakes and tideways.

<i>Counties and county boroughs</i>	<i>Area in hectares <sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Population, 1986 Females</i>	<i>Total</i>
<i>Province of Munster—contd.</i>				
Waterford County Borough	3,809	19,356	20,160	39,516
Waterford	179,977	26,287	25,295	51,582
Total of Munster	2,412,738	514,156	505,538	1,019,694
<i>Province of Connacht</i>				
Galway County Borough	...	22,524	24,484	47,008
Galway	593,966	67,834	63,338	131,172
Leitrim	152,476	14,197	12,803	27,000
Mayo	539,846	58,620	56,396	115,016
Roscommon	246,276	28,335	26,216	54,551
Sligo	179,608	28,114	27,865	55,979
Total of Connacht	1,712,172	219,624	211,102	430,726
<i>Province of Ulster (part of)</i>				
Cavan	189,060	28,170	25,711	53,881
Donegal	483,058	65,723	63,705	129,428
Monaghan	129,093	27,009	25,323	52,332
Total of Ulster (part of)	801,211	120,902	114,739	235,641
Total	6,889,456	1,767,499	1,769,696	3,537,195

<sup>1</sup> Exclusive of certain rivers, lakes and tideways.

Principal towns (1986 estimate): Greater Dublin including Dún Laoghaire, 920,956; Cork, 173,694; Limerick, 76,557; Galway, 47,104; Waterford, 41,054.

Vital statistics for 6 calendar years:

	<i>Births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>		<i>Births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1982	70,843	20,224	32,457	1985	62,388	18,791	33,213
1983	67,117	19,467	32,976	1986	61,425	18,322	33,627
1984	64,062	18,513	32,076	1987	58,864	18,149	31,219

**CLIMATE.** Influenced by the Gulf Stream, there is an equable climate with mild south-west winds, making temperatures almost uniform over the whole country. The coldest months are Jan. and Feb. (39–45°F, 4–7°C) and the warmest July and Aug. (57–61°F, 14–16°C). May and June are the sunniest months, averaging 5.5 to 6.5 hours each day, but over 7 hours in the extreme S.E. Rainfall is lowest along the eastern coastal strip. The central parts vary between 30–44" (750–1,125 mm), and up to 60" (1,500 mm) may be experienced in low-lying areas in the west. Dublin. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 30" (750 mm). Cork. Jan. 43°F (6.1°C), July 60°F (15.6°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,025 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Ireland is a sovereign independent, democratic republic. Its parliament exercises jurisdiction in 26 of the 32 counties of Ireland.

The first Constitution of the Irish Free State came into operation on 6 Dec. 1922. Certain provisions which were regarded as contrary to the national sentiments were gradually removed by successive amendments, with the result that at the end of 1936 the text differed considerably from the original document. On 14 June 1937 a new Constitution was approved by Parliament (*Dáil Éireann*) and enacted by a plebiscite on 1 July 1937. This Constitution came into operation on 29 Dec. 1937. Under it the name Ireland (*Éire*) was restored.

The Constitution provides that, pending the reintegration of the national territory, the laws enacted by the Parliament established by the Constitution shall have the same area and extent of application as those of the Irish Free State.

The *Oireachtas* or National Parliament consists of the President and two Houses, viz., a House of Representatives, called *Dáil Éireann*, and a Senate, called *Seanad Éireann*, consisting of 60 members. The *Dáil*, consisting of 166 members,



is elected by adult suffrage. Of the 60 members of the Senate, 11 are nominated by the *Taoiseach* (Prime Minister), 6 are elected by the universities and the remaining 43 are elected from 5 panels of candidates established on a vocational basis, representing the following public services and interests: (1) national language and culture, literature, art, education and such professional interests as may be defined by law for the purpose of this panel; (2) agricultural and allied interests, and fisheries; (3) labour, whether organized or unorganized; (4) industry and commerce, including banking, finance, accountancy, engineering and architecture; (5) public administration and social services, including voluntary social activities. The electing body is a college of about 1,109 members, comprising members of the *Dáil*, Senate, county boroughs and county councils.

A maximum period of 90 days is afforded to the Senate for the consideration or amendment of Bills sent to that House by the *Dáil*, but the Senate has no power to veto legislative proposals.

No amendment of the Constitution can be effected except with the approval of the people given at a referendum.

Irish is the first official language; English is recognized as a second official language. For further details of the Constitution see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1952, pp. 1123-34.

*President*: Pádraig Óhlighile (Patrick Hillery), installed on 3 Dec. 1976 and re-elected for a second 7-year term in 1983.

*Former Presidents*: Dr Douglas Hyde (1938-45); Seán T. O. Ceallaigh (1945-59; 2 terms); Éamon de Valéra (1959-73; 2 terms); Erskine Childers (1973-74; died in office); Cearbhall Ó Dálaigh (1974-76; resigned).

A general election was held in Feb. 1987: Fianna Fáil, 81 (Nov. 1982 election, 75); Fine Gael, 51 (70); Labour Party, 12 (16); Progressive Democrats, 14; Workers' Party, 4 (2); Democratic Socialists, 1; Independents, 3 (3).

There are no formal party divisions in the Senate.

The Government consisted of the following members in Nov. 1988:

*Taoiseach* (Prime Minister) and *Minister for the Gaeltacht*: Charles Haughey.

*Tánaiste* (Deputy Prime Minister) and *Minister for Foreign Affairs*: Brian Lenihan. *Finance*: Albert Reynolds. *Justice*: Gerry Collins. *Tourism and Transport*: John Wilson. *Agriculture and Food*: Michael O'Kennedy. *Social Welfare*: Dr Michael Woods. *Industry and Commerce*: Ray Burke. *Energy and Communications*: Michael Smith. *Marine*: Brendan Daly. *Environment*: Pádraig Flynn. *Labour*: Bertie Ahern. *Health*: Dr Rory O'Hanlon. *Defence*: Michael J. Noonan. *Education*: Mary O'Rourke.

There were 15 Ministers of State.

*National flag*: Three vertical strips of green, white, orange.

*National anthem*: The Soldier's Song (words by P. Kearney; music by P. Heaney).

*Local Government*. The elected local authorities comprise 27 county councils, 5 county borough corporations, 6 borough corporations, 49 urban district councils and 26 Boards of Town Commissioners. All the members of these authorities are elected under a system of proportional representation, normally every 5 years. All residents of an area who have reached the age of 18 are entitled to vote in the local election for their area. Women are eligible for election as members of local authorities in the same manner and on the same conditions as men. Elected members are not paid, but provision is made for the payment of travelling expenses and subsistence allowances.

The range of services for which local authorities are responsible is broken down into 8 main programme groups as follows: Housing and Building; Road Transportation and Safety; Water Supply and Sewerage; Development Incentives and Controls; Environmental Protection; Recreation and Amenity; Agriculture, Education, Health and Welfare and Miscellaneous Services. Because of the small

size of their administrative areas the functions carried out by town commissioners and some of the smaller urban district councils have tended to become increasingly limited, and the more important tasks of local government have tended to become the responsibility of the county councils.

The local authorities have a system of government which combines an elected council and a whole-time manager. The elected members have specific functions reserved to them which include the striking of rates (local tax), the borrowing of money, the adoption of development plans, the making, amending or revoking of bye-laws and the nomination of persons to other bodies. The managers, who are paid officers of their authorities, are responsible for the performance of all functions which are not reserved to the elected members, including the employment of staff, making of contracts, management of local authority property, collection of rates and rents and the day-to-day administration of local authority affairs. The manager for a county council is manager also for every borough corporation, urban district council and board of town commissioners whose functional area is wholly within the county.

**DEFENCE.** Under the direction of the President, and subject to the provisions of the Defence Act, 1954, the military command of the Defence Forces is exercisable by the Government through the Minister for Defence. To aid and counsel the Minister for Defence on all matters in relation to the business of the Department of Defence on which he may consult it, there is a Council of Defence consisting of the Minister for State at the Department of Defence, the Secretary of the Department of Defence, the Chief of Staff, the Adjutant-General and the Quartermaster-General. At present the Permanent Defence Force strength is approximately 13,400 all ranks including the Air Corps and the Naval Service. The Reserve Defence Force strength is approximately 16,700 all ranks. Recruitment is on a voluntary basis. The minimum terms of enlistment are 3 years in the Permanent Defence Force and 6 years in the Reserve.

Since May 1978 an Irish contingent has formed part of the United Nations force in Lebanon. The contingent now comprises 748 all ranks. 40 Irish officers are at present serving with the UN Truce Supervision Organization in the Middle East. Of these, 5 are seconded to the UN Good Offices Mission in Afghanistan and Pakistan (UNGOMAP) which was established early in 1988 and 15 are serving with the UN Iran Iraq Military Observer Group established in Aug. 1988. There is a small detachment with the UN force in Cyprus.

**Army.** The Army has 4 brigades and an infantry force. Three of the brigades have 2 infantry battalions and 1 brigade has 3 infantry battalions. Each brigade has a field artillery regiment and a squadron/company size unit for each of the support corps. The infantry force has 2 infantry battalions. The current (1989) strength of the Army is approximately 11,700 all ranks.

**Navy.** The Naval Service comprises 5 offshore patrol vessels and 1 helicopter offshore patrol vessel. All 6 ships were built in Cork. Two of the 5 AC Dauphin helicopters are for use on board the helicopter patrol vessel. The Naval Base is at Haulbowline Island in Cork Harbour. The current (1989) strength of the Naval Service is about 800 all ranks.

**Air Force.** The Air Corps has a current (1989) strength of about 810 all ranks. It has a total of 42 aircraft, comprised of 6 Fouga Magister armed jet trainers, 9 SF 260W armed piston-engined trainers, 8 Rheims-Cessna Rockets, 8 Alouette III, 5 Dauphin and 2 Gazelle helicopters, 2 twin-turbo prop Beech Super Kingair for coastal fishery patrol, and 1 Beech Super Kingair and 1 British Aerospace HS-125/700 twin turboprop transports.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Ireland is a member of UN, OECD, the Council of Europe and the European Communities.

**ECONOMY****Budget.** Current revenue and expenditure (in IR£1m.):

<i>Current revenue</i>	1987	1988
Customs duties	88	95
Excise duties	1,391	1,412
Capital taxes	40	40
Stamp duties	169	186
Income tax	2,713	2,706
Income levy	3	—
Corporation tax	257	280
Value-added tax	1,585	1,666
Agricultural levies (EEC)	11	13
Motor vehicle duties	139	140
Youth employment levy	97	97
Non-Tax Revenue	658	400
<b>Total</b>	<b>7,151</b>	<b>7,035</b>
<i>Current expenditure</i>		
Debt service	2,118	2,173
Industry and Labour	276	233
Agriculture	425	407
Fisheries, Forestry, Tourism	69	71
Health	1,159	1,157
Education	1,134	1,141
Social Welfare	2,623	2,695
Less: Receipts, e.g. social security	(-)-1,506	(-)-1,592
<b>Total (including other items)</b>	<b>8,417</b>	<b>8,160</b>

Capital expenditure amounted to £1,875m. in 1984, and £1,761m. in 1985.

On 31 Dec. 1987 the National Debt amounted to £23,691m. of which £14,001m. was denominated in Irish pounds and £9,690m. in foreign currencies and the official external reserves of the Central Bank of Ireland amounted to £2,821m.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the Irish *pound* or *an punt Éireannach*. From 10 Sept. 1928 when the first Irish legal-tender notes were issued, the Irish currency was linked to Sterling on a one-for-one basis. This relationship was discontinued on 30 March 1979 when, following Ireland's adherence to the European Monetary System, it became inconsistent with Ireland's obligations under that system.

The Central Bank has the sole right of issuing legal tender notes; token coinage is issued by the Minister for Finance through the Bank. In March 1989, £1 = IR£1.20; US\$ = IR£0.70.

The volume of legal-tender notes outstanding in Dec. 1986 was £1,067m. Total notes and coins outstanding amounted to £1,127m.

**Banking.** The Central Bank, which was established as from 1 Feb. 1943, in accordance with the Central Bank Act, 1942, replaced the Currency Commission, which was set up under the Currency Act, 1927, and had been responsible *inter alia* for the regulation of the note issue. In addition to the powers and functions of the Currency Commission the Central Bank has the power of receiving deposits from banks and public authorities, of rediscounting Exchequer bills and bills of exchange, of making advances to banks against such bills or against Government securities, of fixing and publishing rates of interest for rediscounting bills, or buying and selling certain Government securities and securities of any international bank or financial institution formed wholly or mainly by governments. The Bank also collects and publishes information relating to monetary and credit matters. The Central Bank Act, 1971, gives further powers to the Central Bank in the regulation of banking including licensing of banks, the supervision of their operations and control of liquidity and reserve ratios. The capital of the Bank is £40,000, of which £24,000 has been paid up and is held by the Minister for Finance.



The Board of Directors of the Central Bank consists of a Governor, appointed by the President on the advice of the Government, and 8 directors, all appointed by the Minister for Finance, 6 direct and 2 from among directors of the Associated Banks (the term applied to the 4 shareholding banks associated with the former Currency Commission).

The principal independent commercial banks are known (following the Central Bank Act, 1942) as the Associated Banks. They are Allied Irish Banks PLC., Bank of Ireland and two smaller banks, Ulster Bank and National Irish Bank. They operate the branch banking system; on 20 July 1988 their total deposit and current accounts within Ireland amounted to £6,138.5m. and their total gross assets in Ireland, £13,518.5m.

There are also 31 Non-Associated Banks of which 21 are merchant and commercial banks and 10 are industrial banks whose main activity is instalment credit. Four of the merchant or commercial banks are subsidiaries of the Associated Banks; 10 are from other EEC countries and 5 from outside the EEC (mainly US) and the remainder are Irish. On 20 July 1988 their current and deposit accounts and interbank borrowings amounted to £9,753.4m. (47% of total bank resources) and their lending to £4,960.6m. (38.8% of lending to residents); total gross assets in Ireland, £10,753m.

There are two state-owned credit corporations, one industrial and one agricultural, and several building societies. There are 4 Trustee Savings Banks and the Post Office Savings Bank which together had deposits of £1,065m. in March 1988.

**Weights and Measures.** Conversion to the metric system is in progress; the imperial system is still legal (1987).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The total generating capacity was (1987) 4,009 mw. In 1987 the total sales of electricity amounted to 10,506m. units supplied to 1,221,600 customers. Electricity generated by fuel source 1987: Coal, 40%; oil, 21%; gas, 18%; peat, 15%; hydro, 6%. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** About 551,000 sq. km of the continental shelf has been made an exploration area; at the furthest point the limit of jurisdiction is 520 nautical miles from the coast. Since 1970, 101 exploratory offshore oil wells have been drilled. A number of encouraging oil and gas flows have been recorded. In 1988, 83 blocks were held under exclusive offshore licences and offshore petroleum leases. A total of 875 sq. km were held under onshore petroleum prospecting licences.

**Gas.** There has been one commercial discovery of natural gas, off the south-west coast at Kinsale Head. Of the total reserves of 1.35m. cu. ft. it was estimated that at 31 Dec. 1988 approximately 56% would remain to be produced. Based on the estimated take-off this should last until 1999. Gas Transmission is controlled by the Irish Gas Board (BGE), who sell the gas into electricity generation, fertilizer production, and distribution systems for domestic, commercial and industrial use.

**Peat.** The country has very little indigenous coal, but possesses large reserves of peat, the development of which is handled by Bord na Mona (Peat Board). To date, the Board has acquired over 200,000 acres of bog and has established 21 locations around the country. In the year ending 31 March, 1988, production totalled 350,000 tonnes of sod peat and 5.28m. tonnes of milled peat. From this 3.35m. tonnes of peat went to generate electricity and 200,000 tonnes for the domestic market. A balance of 1.5m. tonnes was used by the Board in its factories to produce briquettes and moss peat. A total of 50m. tonnes of briquettes and 1.14m. cu. metres of moss peat were produced.

**Minerals.** Lead and zinc concentrates are important. Metal content of production, 1987: Zinc, 177,000 tonnes; lead, 34,000 tonnes. Barytes, gypsum, limestone and aggregates are also important, and there is some coal, silver, quartz, dolomite, silica sand, green and black marbles. Exploration activity is centred on base metals, precious metals, industrial minerals and coal and about 45 companies are prospecting.

**Agriculture.** General distribution of surface (in hectares) in 1987: Crops and pasture, 4,671,000; other land, including grazed mountain, 2,218,200; total, 6,889,200.

Estimated area (hectares) under certain crops calculated from sample returns:

<i>Crops</i>	<i>1983</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>Area</i> <i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Wheat	59,000	77,200	78,100	76,100	56,900
Oats	22,600	24,900	23,300	20,900	20,400
Barley	313,400	304,300	298,400	282,800	276,000
Potatoes	33,500	35,700	33,000	30,500	30,300
Sugar-beet	36,400	34,900	33,900	37,000	37,100

Gross agricultural output (excluding value of changes in stocks) for the year 1987 was valued at £2,824m.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 6,647,000; sheep, 4,575,100; pigs, 999,000; horses and ponies, 54,500; poultry, 8,781,200.

**Forestry.** The total area of state forests at 31 Dec. 1986 was 409,891 hectares, of which 330,351 was planted; 79,540 were reserve land for planting, the rest roads, water etc.

**Fisheries.** The number of vessels engaged in fishing in 1985 were 3,096, of which 1,116 accounted for the greater part of the fishing effort; men 7,778. The quantities and values of fish landed during 1986 were: Demersal fish, 32,776.6 tonnes, value IR£23,280,895; pelagic fish, 136,447.2 tonnes, value IR£15,496,339; shellfish, 24,449.5 tonnes, value IR£16,965,019. Total quantity: 193,673.3 tonnes; total value, IR£55,742,253.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The census of industrial production for 1985 gives the following details of the values (in IR£1m.) of gross and net output for the principal manufacturing industries. The figures for net output are those of gross output minus cost of materials, including fuel, light and power, repairs to plant and machinery and amounts paid to others in connexion with products made.

	<i>Gross output</i>	<i>Net output</i>
Slaughtering, preparing and preserving meat	1,496.5	210.1
Manufacture of dairy products	1,585.6	225.6
Bread, biscuit and flour confectionery	224.6	98.8
Cocoa, chocolate and sugar confectionery	226.4	62.5
Animal and poultry foods	392.9	66.4
Brewing and malting	266.1	165.6
Spirit distilling and compounding	149.2	81.9
Paper and paper products	196.7	73.1
Printing and publishing	315.8	205.1
Manufacture of metal articles	464.9	202.6
Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products	731.5	360.5
Chemicals, including manmade fibres	1,776.6	966.7
Mechanical engineering	357.4	169.6
Office machinery and data-processing machinery	1,576.7	631.4
Electrical engineering	985.5	478.2
Manufacture and assembly of motor vehicles, parts and accessories	107.5	40.4
Manufacture of other means of transport	141.9	67.5
Instrument engineering	408.1	244.5
Textiles	450.7	160.0
Manufacture of footwear and clothing	302.3	144.0
Timber and wooden furniture	253.8	99.3
Processing rubber and plastics	361.4	164.3
Mineral oil refining	296.8	14.0
Gas, water and electricity	1,144.3	736.7
All other industries	1,615.1	858.2
Total (all industries)	15,828.3	6,527.0

**Labour.** The total labour force at mid-April 1987 was about 1,312,000, of which about 232,000 persons were out of work. Of the estimated 1,080,000 persons at

work, 164,000 were in the agricultural sector, 300,000 in industry and 616,000 in services.

The number of trade unions in Dec. 1987 was 76; total membership, 484,000. About 225,000 were organized in 4 general unions catering both for white collar and manual workers. There were 16 employers' associations holding negotiation licences, with membership of 11,500.

**Commerce.** Value of imports and exports of merchandise for calendar years (in £):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	7,366,775,383	8,912,170,063	9,428,197,691	8,621,291,016	9,155,206,863
Exports	6,943,836,265	8,897,524,535	9,743,037,929	9,374,310,355	10,723,497,879

The values of the chief imports and total exports are shown in the following table (in IR£):

	Imports		Exports	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
Live animals and food	983,179,901	985,469,273	2,194,722,657	2,676,202,776
Raw materials	251,325,846	257,350,985	406,996,811	439,637,323
Mineral fuels and lubricants	732,793,957	676,513,660	73,376,041	77,210,373
Chemicals	1,047,823,647	1,126,241,468	1,251,001,477	1,307,169,062
Manufactured goods	1,369,937,912	1,442,726,042	884,597,156	942,246,268
Machinery and transport equipment	2,703,968,865	3,065,335,299	2,850,157,776	3,364,527,973
Manufactured articles <sup>1</sup>	1,121,282,359	1,172,788,204	1,108,920,726	1,304,259,946

<sup>1</sup> Not elsewhere specified.

Exports, in IR£1m., for 1987 (and 1986): UK, 3,662.6 (3,201.4); Federal Republic of Germany, 1,202.6 (1,022); France, 994.4 (876.6); USA, 833.8 (815.8); Netherlands, 778.3 (555.7); Belgium and Luxembourg, 512.8 (450.2); Italy, 392.5 (334.3); Sweden, 205.4 (173.5); Japan, 181.2 (170.6); Switzerland, 168.1 (155); Spain, 164.2 (137.3); Norway, 123.6 (96.3); Canada, 110 (118.5). Imports: UK, 3,815.9 (3,587.8); USA, 1,555.4 (1,365.4); Federal Republic of Germany, 764.6 (771.6); France, 401.2 (428.2); Japan, 397.6 (328.4); Netherlands, 338.8 (331.9); Italy, 225 (227.7); Belgium and Luxembourg, 197.5 (188.4); Sweden, 139.5 (139.8); Spain, 118 (119.6).

An Anglo-Irish free-trade agreement to remove progressively all duties between July 1966 and July 1975 was signed in London on 14 Dec. 1965.

Total trade between Ireland and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,635,039	2,816,007	3,053,807	3,488,406	3,876,630
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,393,499	3,642,844	3,558,372	3,831,737	4,057,046

**Tourism.** Total number of overseas tourists in 1987 was 2,096,000. These, together with cross-border visitors, spent £723m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** At 31 Dec. 1985 there were 92,302 km of public roads, consisting of 8 km of motorway, 5,365 km of national roads, 10,616 km of main (trunk and link) roads other than national roads, 73,975 km of county roads and 2,338 km of county borough and urban roads; of the total length 87,687 km (95%) was paved.

Number of licensed motor vehicles at 30 Sept. 1986: Private cars, 711,087; public-service vehicles, 8,132; goods vehicles, 101,475; agricultural tractors, 65,671; motor cycles, 25,735; other vehicles, 10,475.

The total number of km run by road motor passenger vehicles of the omnibus type during 1986 was 94,069,000. Passengers carried numbered 230,206,000 and the gross receipts from passengers were £125,010,000.

**Railways.** The total length of railway open for traffic at 31 Dec. 1987 was 1,944 km (38 km electrified), all 1,600 mm gauge.

*Railway statistics for years ending 31 Dec.*

	1986	1987
Passengers (no.)	21,735,000	24,895,000
Km run by coaching trains	9,655,000	9,692,000
Merchandise and mineral traffic conveyed (tonnes)	574,355,000	563,095,000
Km run by freight trains	4,239,000	4,232,000
Receipts (£)	135,936,000	132,083,000
Expenditure (£)	124,207,000	124,737,000



**Aviation.** Aer Lingus PLC is a state owned company. Incorporated in 1936, it operates air services within Ireland and between Ireland and Britain and Europe. Air services between Ireland and the USA are operated by Aerlinte Eireann PLC, a sister state owned company incorporated in 1947. Each company has a separate legal identity and board of directors. The management is common to both companies and their services are integrated under the marketing name of Aer Lingus as the national airline. During the year ended 31 March 1988 Aer Lingus carried 2,308,149 passengers and 24,606 tonnes of cargo/mail on its European services and 361,522 passengers and 15,885 tonnes of cargo/mail on its trans-Atlantic services.

In addition to Aer Lingus, there were in 1988 10 independent air transport operators, the largest of which, Ryanair, operates air services on a number of Ireland/UK routes.

**Shipping.** The Irish merchant fleet, of vessels of 100 gross tonnes or over, consisted of 74 vessels totalling 137,493 GRT at 31 July 1988. Total cargo traffic passing through the country's ports amounted to 22m. tonnes in 1986.

**Inland Waterways.** The principal inland waterways open to navigation are the Shannon Navigation (130 miles) and the Grand Canal and Barrow Navigation (156 miles). Merchandise traffic is not now transported on them and navigation is confined to pleasure craft operated either privately or commercially.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telecommunication services are provided by Bord Telecom Eireann as a statutory body set up under the Postal and Telecommunications Services Act, 1983. Number of telephones (30 June 1988), 694,000; public telephones, 5,200; telephone exchanges, 1,021; telex lines, 6,178; data lines, 7,175; Fax, 5,000 and Eircell (cellular mobile telephone service), 3,500 customers. All exchanges are automatic; 48.5% of customers are presently served by digital exchanges.

Postal services are provided by An Post, a statutory body set up under the Postal and Telecommunications Services Act, 1983. Number of Post Offices as of Dec. 1987, 2,142. Delivery points, 1,145,000. Number of items delivered during year ended 31 Dec. 1987, 445.9m.

Radio Telefis Eireann, a statutory body established under the Broadcasting Authority Acts 1960-79, provides the national TV and radio services. RTE is financed by advertising and by TV licences. On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 787,501 holders of current TV licences. During 1988 new legislation was enacted to provide for the establishment of an independent commercial national radio service, an independent TV service and local radio services.

**Cinemas.** There were (1986) 124 cinemas and 169 (estimate) screens.

**Newspapers** (1986). There are 7 daily newspapers (all in English) with a combined circulation of 647,912; 5 of them are published in Dublin (circulation, 555,282).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Constitution provides that justice shall be administered in public in Courts established by law by Judges appointed by the President on the advice of the Government. The jurisdiction and organization of the Courts are dealt with in the Courts (Establishment and Constitution) Act, 1961, the Courts (Supplemental Provisions) Acts, 1961-88. These Courts consist of Courts of First Instance and a Court of Final Appeal, called the Supreme Court. The Courts of First Instance are the High Court with full original jurisdiction and the Circuit and the District Courts with local and limited jurisdiction. A judge may not be removed from office except for stated misbehaviour or incapacity and then only on resolutions passed by both Houses of the *Oireachtas*. Judges of the Supreme, High and Circuit Courts are appointed from among practising barristers. Judges of the District Court (called District Justices) may be appointed from among practising barristers or practising solicitors.

The Supreme Court, which consists of the Chief Justice (who is *ex officio* an additional judge of the High Court) and 5 ordinary judges, has appellate jurisdic-

tion from all decisions of the High Court. The President may, after consultation with the Council of State, refer a Bill, which has been passed by both Houses of the *Oireachtas* (other than a money bill and certain other bills), to the Supreme Court for a decision on the question as to whether such Bill or any provision thereof is repugnant to the Constitution.

The High Court, which consists of a President (who is *ex officio* an additional Judge of the Supreme Court) and 15 ordinary judges, has full original jurisdiction in and power to determine all matters and questions, whether of law or fact, civil or criminal. In all cases in which questions arise concerning the validity of any law having regard to the provisions of the Constitution, the High Court alone exercises original jurisdiction. The High Court on Circuit acts as an appeal court from the Circuit Court.

The Court of Criminal Appeal consists of the Chief Justice or an ordinary Judge of the Supreme Court, together with either 2 ordinary judges of the High Court or the President and one ordinary judge of the High Court. It deals with appeals by persons convicted on indictment where the appellant obtains a certificate from the trial judge that the case is a fit one for appeal, or, in case such certificate is refused, where the court itself, on appeal from such refusal, grants leave to appeal. The decision of the Court of Criminal Appeal is final, unless that court or the Director of Public Prosecutions certifies that the decision involves a point of law of exceptional public importance, in which case an appeal is taken to the Supreme Court.

The Offences against the State Act, 1939 provides in Part V for the establishment of Special Criminal Courts. A Special Criminal Court sits without a jury. The rules of evidence that apply in proceedings before a Special Criminal Court are the same as those applicable in trials in the Central Criminal Court. A Special Criminal Court is authorised by the 1939 Act to make rules governing its own practice and procedure. An appeal against conviction or sentence by a Special Criminal Court may be taken to the Court of Criminal Appeal. On 30 May 1972 Orders were made establishing a Special Criminal Court and declaring that offences of a particular class or kind (as set out) were to be scheduled offences for the purposes of Part V of the Act, the effect of which was to give the Special Criminal Court jurisdiction to try persons charged with those offences.

The High Court exercising criminal jurisdiction is known as the Central Criminal Court. It consists of a judge or judges of the High Court, nominated by the President of the High Court. The Court sits in Dublin and tries criminal cases which are outside the jurisdiction of the Circuit Court.

The country is divided into a number of circuits for the purposes of the Circuit Court. The President of the Circuit Court is *ex officio* an additional judge of the High Court. The jurisdiction of the court in civil proceedings is limited to £15,000 in contract and tort, £15,000 in actions founded on hire-purchase and credit-sale agreements, £5,000 in equity and £5,000 in probate and administration, save by consent of the parties, in which event the jurisdiction is unlimited. In criminal matters it has jurisdiction in all cases except murder, treason, piracy and allied offences. The Circuit Court acts as an appeal court from the District Court.

The District Court has summary jurisdiction in a large number of criminal cases where the offence is not of a serious nature. In civil matters the Court has jurisdiction in contract and tort (except slander, libel, seduction, slander of title and false imprisonment) where the claim does not exceed £2,500; in proceedings founded on hire-purchase and credit-sale agreements, the jurisdiction is £2,500.

All criminal cases, except those of a minor nature, are tried by a judge and a jury of 12. A majority vote of the jury (10 must agree) is necessary to determine a verdict.

**Religion.** According to the census of population taken in 1981 the principal religious professions were as follows:

	<i>Leinster</i>	<i>Munster</i>	<i>Connacht</i>	<i>Ulster</i> (part of)	<i>Total</i>
Roman Catholics	1,645,489	949,938	406,811	202,238	3,204,476
Church of Ireland	58,356	18,076	5,973	12,961	95,366
Presbyterians	4,337	542	345	9,031	14,255
Methodists	3,339	1,285	324	842	5,790
Other religious denominations	9,148	2,586	753	483	12,970
Not stated or no religion	69,852	25,888	10,204	4,604	110,548



**Education. Elementary.** Elementary education is free and was given in about 3,384 national schools (including 114 special schools) in 1986. The total number of pupils on rolls in 1985-86 was 567,086, including pupils in special schools and classes; the number of teachers of all classes about 21,144, including remedial teachers and teachers of special classes. The estimated state expenditure on elementary education for 1988 is £405,524,000, excluding the cost of administration.

Special provision is made for handicapped and deprived children in special schools which are recognized on the same basis as primary schools, in special classes attached to ordinary schools and in certain voluntary centres where educational services appropriate to the needs of the children are provided. Categories of children include visually handicapped, hearing impaired, physically handicapped, mentally handicapped, emotionally disturbed, travelling children and other socially disadvantaged children. Provision is also made, on an increasing scale, for children with dual or multiple handicaps. Each class in such schools is very much smaller than ordinary classes in a primary school and, because of the size of the catchment areas involved, an extensive system of school transport has been developed. Many handicapped children who have spent some years in a special school or class are integrated into normal schools for part of their school career, if necessary with special additional facilities such as nursing services, special equipment, etc. For others who cannot progress within the ordinary school system the special schools or classes provide both the primary and post-primary level of education. There are also part-time teaching facilities in hospitals, child guidance clinics, rehabilitation workshops, special 'Saturday-morning' centres and home teaching schemes.

Special schools (1985-86) numbered 118 with 8,650 pupils. There were 248 special classes attached to ordinary schools with 2,711 pupils. 797 remedial teachers were employed for backward pupils in ordinary primary schools. 30 peripatetic teachers were employed for children with hearing or visual impairments, and for travelling children.

**Secondary.** Voluntary secondary schools are under private control and are conducted in most cases by religious orders; all schools receive grants from the State and are open to inspection by the Department of Education. The number of recognized secondary schools during the school year 1987-88 was 500, and the number of pupils in attendance was 214,937.

**Vocational Education Committee** schools provide courses of general and technical education. The number of vocational schools during the school year 1987-88 was 253, full-time students, 84,925. These schools are controlled by the local Vocational Education Committees; they are financed mainly by state grants and also by local rating authorities and VECs.

**Comprehensive Schools** which are financed by the State combine academic and technical subjects in one broad curriculum so that each pupil may be offered educational options suited to his needs, abilities and interests. Pupils are prepared for the State examinations and for entrance to universities and institutes of further education. The number of comprehensive schools during the school year 1987-88 was 16 with 8,859 students.

**Community Schools** continue to be established through the amalgamation of existing voluntary secondary and Vocational Education Committee schools where this is found feasible and desirable and in new areas where a single larger school is considered preferable to 2 smaller schools under separate managements. These schools provide second-level education and also provide adult education facilities for their own areas. They also make facilities available to voluntary organizations and to the adult community generally. The number of community schools during the school year 1987-88 was 45 with 32,189 students.

The estimated State expenditure for post-primary education for 1987 was £498,558,000.

**Regional Technical Colleges and Colleges of Technology.** Apprentice, technician



and professional courses (and some degree courses) are provided in the Dublin Institute of Technology under the auspices of the City of Dublin Vocational Education Committee; the Limerick College of Art, Commerce and Technology; the Cork School of Art and School of Music and 9 regional technical colleges at Athlone, Carlow, Cork, Dundalk, Galway, Letterkenny, Sligo, Tralee and Waterford. Students (full-time) 1987-88 (estimate) 20,000.

*University Education* is provided by the National University of Ireland, founded in Dublin in 1908, and by the University of Dublin (Trinity College), founded in 1592. The National University comprises 3 constituent colleges—University College, Dublin, University College, Cork, and University College, Galway.

St Patrick's College, Maynooth, Co. Kildare, is a national seminary for Catholic priests and a pontifical university with the power to confer degrees up to doctoral level in philosophy, theology and canon law. It also admits lay students (men and women) to the courses in arts, Celtic studies, science and education which it provides as a recognized college of the National University.

Besides the University medical schools, the Royal College of Surgeons in Ireland provides medical qualifications which are internationally recognized. Courses to degree level are available at the National College of Art and Design, Dublin.

There are six Colleges of Education for training primary school teachers. For degree awarding purposes, three of these colleges are associated with Trinity College, two with University College, Dublin, and one with University College, Cork. The Thomond College of Education, Limerick, trains post-primary teachers in physical education, rural and general science, metalwork and engineering science, woodwork and building science and commercial and secretarial subjects.

Third-level courses with a technological bias, leading to degree, diploma and certificate qualifications are also provided by the National Institutes for Higher Education, Limerick and Dublin. There are also 2 Home Economics Colleges, one associated with Trinity College and the other with University College, Galway.

*Agricultural.* An Chomhairle Óiliúna Talmhaíochta (ACOT) is the agency responsible for providing agricultural advisory and training services. Full-time instruction in agriculture is provided for all sections of the farming community. There are 4 agricultural colleges for young people, administered by ACOT, and 8 private ACOT-aided agricultural colleges, at each of which a 1-year course in agriculture is given. A second-year course in farm machinery is provided at one college. Scholarships tenable at these colleges, all of which are residential, are awarded by ACOT which also provides a comprehensive agricultural advisory service and conducts winter classes in agriculture and horticulture at local centres.

*Horticultural.* Two of the agricultural colleges mentioned above also provide a commercial horticultural course. A third college aided by ACOT also provides this course. A 3-year course in amenity horticulture is provided at the National Botanic Gardens in Dublin.

A comprehensive 3-year training programme for young entrants to farming leading to a 'Certificate in Farming' involving both formal instruction and a period of supervised on-farm work experience, was introduced by ACOT in 1982. Students taking the Certificate in Farming can follow a course in general agriculture, pigs, poultry or horticulture. In the case of horticulture, the major part of this course is taken at one of the three horticultural colleges.

**Health Services.** There are 3 categories of entitlement, based on a person's income:

(i) Persons on a low income and their dependants, who qualify for the full range of health services, free of charge, i.e. family doctor, drugs and medicines, hospital and specialist services as well as dental, aural and optical services. Maternity care and infant welfare services are also provided. There is no fixed limit, but guidelines laid down by health boards, determine eligibility – each application is considered on its merit. There is provision for hardship cases.

(ii) Persons whose income for the year ended 5 April 1987 was under £15,000. They and their dependants are entitled to free hospital services, both as an in-patient and an out-patient, a full maternity and infant welfare service and assis-

tance towards the cost of prescriptions. The latter limits the nett outlay on medicines used in a calendar month to £28.

(iii) Persons whose income for the year ended 5 April 1987 was £15,000 or more. They are entitled to in-patient and out-patient hospital services but they are liable for the fees of consultants. They are also entitled to assistance towards the cost of prescriptions. Drugs and medicines are made available free of charge to all persons suffering from specified long-term ailments such as diabetes, multiple sclerosis, epilepsy, etc. Hospital in-patient and out-patient services are free of charge to all children under 16 years of age, suffering from specified long-term conditions such as cystic fibrosis, spina bifida, cerebral palsy, etc. Immunization and diagnostic services as well as hospital services are free of charge to everyone suffering from an infectious disease. A maintenance allowance is also payable in necessitous cases.

From 18 May 1987 persons in categories (ii) and (iii) are liable for in-patient and out-patient charge. A charge of £10 is made for each day or part of a day during which in-patient services are availed of subject to a maximum payment of £100 in any period of 12 consecutive months. A charge of £10 for out-patient services is made for the first and subsequent instances relating to the same matter. Persons in category (i), women receiving service in respect of motherhood, children suffering from certain diseases etc. are not liable for these charges.

**Services for Children:** Health Boards are involved, with the co-operation of a wide network of voluntary organizations, in the provision of a range of child care services including adoption, fostering, residential care, day care and social work services for families in need of support.

**Welfare Services:** There are various services provided for the elderly, the chronic sick, the disabled and families in stress, such as social support service, day care services for children, home helps, home nursing, meals-on-wheels, day centres, cheap fuel, etc. Health Boards also provide disabled persons, without charge, with training for employment and place them in jobs.

**Grants and Allowances:** Disabled Persons' Maintenance Allowance is payable to the chronically disabled over the age of 16 who are not in long term care. Recipients are entitled to free travel and subject to certain conditions to electricity allowance, free TV licence, telephone rental and fuel vouchers. Mobility allowance is payable to severely disabled persons between 16 and 66 years who are unable to walk. Allowance for the Domiciliary Care of Severely Handicapped Children is payable to the mother of a severely handicapped child, maintained at home, but needing constant care and supervision. Blind welfare allowance: This allowance is in addition to the benefits for the blind operated by the Department of Social Welfare. Grants up to £1,500 are paid, subject to a means test, to disabled persons towards the purchase of a car, in order that they might obtain or retain employment.

**Health contributions:** A health contribution of 1.25% of income up to a ceiling of £15,000 is payable by all.

**Social Security.** Social-welfare services concerned primarily with income maintenance are under the general control of the Minister for Social Welfare. The services administered by the Department of Social Welfare are divided into Insurance and Assistance schemes.

**Insurance Services.** All employees irrespective of their level of earnings are compulsorily insured from age 16 to 66 years and are liable for pay-related social insurance contributions. The majority of employees pay a contribution of 7.75% of their earnings prescribed up to a ceiling of £15,500 while a contribution of 6.5% of their earnings continues to be deducted up to a ceiling of £16,200. Their employers pay a further 12.4% up to a prescribed ceiling of £16,200. (The insured population is approximately 1.2m.) Subject to appropriate statutory conditions (but without regard to the recipients' means) the following flat-rate insurance benefits are available: Disability benefit, invalidity pension, unemployment benefit, maternity benefit, widow's pension, deserted wife's benefit, orphan's allowance, treatment benefit, retirement pension payable at 65, old-age pension payable at 66 and a death grant. Pay-related benefit is payable with disability benefit, unemployment



benefit, maternity allowance and injury benefit to persons whose employment is insurable at certain class rates of pay-related social insurance contribution. The cost of the flat-rate and pay-related benefits is met by pay-related social insurance contributions from employers and employees and by a state grant.

The insurance services also provide for payment of benefits in respect of injury, disablement or death, as well as medical care resulting from an occupational accident or disease. These benefits are available to employees, irrespective of age, and are paid from an Occupational Injuries Fund which is financed by employers' contributions and income from investments.

In April 1988 compulsory social insurance was extended to self-employed persons. The majority of the self-employed pay a contribution of 3% of income up to a ceiling of £16,200, subject to a minimum contribution of £208 each year. Self-employed persons on low incomes who are exempted from having to make a return of income for tax purposes, pay a flat rate contribution of £104 per year. Subject to the same statutory conditions as in the case of employees (and without regard to the recipient's means), the following flat rate insurance benefits are available under the scheme: Widow's pension, orphan's allowance and old age pension payable at 66.

*Assistance Services.* Child Benefit is payable without a means test in respect of each child under 16 years of age and children between 16 and 18 who are at school or incapacitated for a prolonged period. The following Assistance services are subject to a means test: Non-contributory widows' and orphans' pensions to the survivors of persons whose lack of insurance (or inadequate insurance record) precludes payment of contributory pensions; deserted wife's allowance to women who have been deserted by their husbands and for whom the deserted wife's benefit is similarly precluded; allowances for unmarried mothers, prisoners' wives and single women between the ages of 58 and 66 years; old age pensions payable at age 66 to persons not entitled to insurance pensions; blind pensions (under the same general conditions as apply to old age pensions) payable at age 18; unemployment assistance payable during unemployment to persons not entitled to receive unemployment benefit; supplementary welfare allowance, payable when a person has no other resources or when such resources are insufficient to meet his needs; family income supplement, payable to low income families with children where one or more parents are in employment.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Ireland in Great Britain (17 Grosvenor Pl., London, SW1X 7HR)

*Ambassador:* Andrew O'Rourke.

Of Great Britain in Ireland (33 Merrion Rd., Dublin, 4)

*Ambassador:* Sir Nicholas Fenn, KCMG.

Of Ireland in the USA (2234 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Padraic N. MacKernan.

Of the USA in Ireland (42 Elgin Rd., Ballsbridge, Dublin)

*Ambassador:* Margaret M. Heckler.

Of Ireland to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Robert McDonagh.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistics Office (Earlsfort Terrace, Dublin, 2) was established in June 1949, and is attached to the Department of the Taoiseach. *Director:* T. P. Linchan, B.E., B.Sc.

Principal publications of the Central Statistics Office are *National Income and Expenditure* (annually), *Statistical Abstract* (annually), *Census of Population Reports*, *Census of Industrial Production Reports*, *Trade and Shipping Statistics* (annually and monthly), *Trend of Employment and Unemployment* (annually), *Reports on Vital Statistics* (annually and quarterly), *Irish Statistical Bulletin* (quarterly), *Labour Force Surveys* (annually), *Trade Statistics* (monthly), *Economic Series* (monthly).

*Aspects of Ireland.* (Series). Dublin Department of Foreign Affairs.



- Atlas of Ireland*. Royal Irish Academy, Dublin, 1979
- Facts About Ireland*. Dublin Department of Foreign Affairs, 6th ed. 1985
- The Gill History of Ireland*. 11 vols. Dublin
- Bartholomew, P. C., *The Irish Judiciary*. Dublin, Institute of Public Administration, 1974
- Chubb, B., *The Constitution and Constitutional Change in Ireland*. Dublin, reprinted 1988
- Coolahan, J., *Irish Education: Its History and Structure*. Dublin, 1981
- Eager, A. R., *A Guide to Irish Bibliographical Material*. 2nd ed. London, 1980
- Encyclopaedia of Ireland*. Dublin, 1968
- Foster, R. F., *Modern Ireland 1600–1972*. London, 1988
- Hensy, B., *The Health Services of Ireland*. 4th ed. Dublin, 1988
- Hickey, D. J. and Doherty, J. E., *A Dictionary of Irish History since 1800*. Dublin, 1980
- Johnston, T. J. and others, *A History of the Church of Ireland*. Dublin, 1953
- Lehane, B., *The Companion Guide to Ireland*. London, 1973
- McDunphy, Michael, *The President of Ireland: His Powers, Functions and Duties*. Dublin, 1945
- Maher, D., *The Tortuous Path: The Course of Ireland's Entry into the EEC 1948–73*. Dublin, 1986
- Miller, K. A., *Emigrants and Exiles: Ireland and the Irish Exodus to North America*. OUP, 1988
- Page, R., *Sources of Economic Information: Ireland*. Dublin, 1985
- Shannon, M. O., *Irish Republic*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986
- Thom's Directory of Ireland*. 2 vols. (Dublin, Street Directory, Commercial). Dublin, 1979–80
- Tobin, F., *Ireland in the 1960s*. Dublin, 1984

# ISRAEL

*Capital:* Jerusalem

*Population:* 4.44m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$6,350 (1986)

## Medinat Israel—State of Israel

**HISTORY.** The State of Israel was established on 14 May 1948. In 1967, following some years of uneasy peace, local clashes on the Israeli-Syrian border were followed by Egyptian mass concentration of forces on the borders of Israel. The UN emergency force was expelled and a blockade of shipping to and from Israel was imposed by Egypt in the Red Sea. Israel struck out at Egypt on land and in the air on 5–9 June 1967. Jordan joined in the conflict which spread to the Syrian borders. By 11 June the Israelis had occupied the Gaza Strip and the Sinai peninsula as far as the Suez Canal in Egypt, West Jordan as far as the Jordan valley and the heights east of the Sea of Galilee, including Quneitra in Syria.

A further war broke out on 6 Oct. 1973 when an Egyptian offensive was launched across the Suez Canal and Syrian forces struck on the Golan Heights. Following UN Security Council resolutions a ceasefire finally came into being on 24 Oct. In Dec. agreement was reached by Egypt and Israel on disengagement and a disengagement agreement was signed with Syria on 31 May 1974. A further disengagement agreement was signed between Israel and Egypt in Sept. 1975.

Developments in 1977 included President Sadat of Egypt's visit to Israel and peace initiative and in March 1978 Israeli troops entered southern Lebanon but later withdrew after the arrival of a UN peace-keeping force.

In Sept. 1978 President Carter convened the Camp David conference at which Egypt and Israel agreed on frameworks for peace in the Middle East with treaties to be negotiated between Israel and her neighbours. Negotiations began in USA between Egypt and Israel in Oct. 1978 and a peace treaty was signed in Washington 26 March 1979.

Under the Israel-Egypt peace treaty signed in Washington on 26 March 1979, Israel withdrew from the Sinai Desert in two phases, part was achieved on 26 Jan. 1980 and the final withdrawal by 26 April 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of Israel, within the boundaries defined by the 1949 armistice agreements with Egypt, Jordan, the Lebanon and Syria, is 20,770 sq. km (8,017 sq. miles), with a population (June 1983 census) of 4,037,600 (estimated, 1988, 4,442,000). Population of areas under Israeli administration as a result of the 6-day war was, in 1988: Judaea and Samaria (West Bank), 866,000, Gaza Strip, 564,000.

Crude birth rate per 1,000 population of Jewish population (1987), 20.5; non-Jewish: Moslems, 34.4; Christians, 22.3; Druzes and others, 30.7. Crude death rate, Jewish, 7.4; non-Jewish: Moslems, 3.6; Christians (1985), 5.2; Druzes and others (1985), 3.4. Infant mortality rate per 1,000 live births, Jewish, 8.8; non-Jewish: Moslems, 16.6; Christians (1985), 13.8; Druzes and others (1985), 12.9. Life expectancy (1985): Males, 73.5 years; females, 77.

Israel is administratively divided into 6 districts:

<i>District</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Population</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Chieftown</i>
Northern	4,501	718,900	Nazareth
Haifa	854	596,100	Haifa
Central	1,242	907,700	Ramla
Tel Aviv	170	1,018,800	Tel Aviv
Jerusalem <sup>2</sup>	627	518,200	Jerusalem
Southern	14,107	518,100	Beersheba

<sup>1</sup> 1986.

<sup>2</sup> Includes East Jerusalem.

On 23 Jan. 1950 the Knesset proclaimed Jerusalem the capital of the State and on 14 Dec. 1981 extended Israeli law into the Golan Heights. Population of the main towns (1987): Tel-Aviv/Jaffa, 319,500; Jerusalem, 482,700; Haifa, 223,200; Ramat Gan, 115,600; Bat-Yam, 132,800; Holon, 143,600; Petach-Tikva, 132,100; Beersheba, 114,600.

The official languages are Hebrew and Arabic.

Areas under Israeli occupation as a result of the 6-day war:

The **West Bank** has an area of 5,879 sq. km (2,270 sq. miles) and a population (1988) of 866,000, of whom 97% were Palestinian Arabs. About 80% are Muslims, 12% Jewish and 8% Christian. In 1984, the birth rate was 3.9% and the death rate 8%. In 1985, there were 25,370 passenger cars and 14,374 commercial vehicles registered. There were (1986) 179,081 pupils in primary schools and 96,444 in secondary schools, while (1983) there were 7,066 students in higher education. In 1985 there were 16 hospitals and clinics with 1,300 beds.

The **Gaza Strip** has an area of 363 sq. km (140 sq. miles) and a population (1988) of 564,000. The capital/chief town is Gaza itself, with (1979) 120,000 inhabitants. In 1984, over 98% of the population were Arabic-speaking Muslims; the birth rate was 4.8% and the death rate 0.8%. Citrus fruits, wheat and olives are grown, with farm land covering 193 sq. km (1980) and occupying most of the active workforce. Some 1,600 tonnes of fish (1984) was also caught. In 1985 there were 15,393 private cars and 4,760 commercial vehicles registered. There were (1986) 105,354 pupils in primary schools and 54,884 in secondary schools, with (1983) 2,387 students in higher education. In 1984 there were 7 hospitals and clinics with 558 beds.

*Immigration.* The following table shows the numbers of Jewish immigrants entering Palestine (Israel), including persons entering as travellers who subsequently registered as immigrants. For a year-by-year breakdown, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1951, p. 1167.

1919-48	482,857	1958-68	384,870	1980-87	114,384
1948-57	905,740	1969-79	384,066		

During the period 1948-68, 45.5% of the immigrants came from Europe and America and 54.5% from Asia and Africa; in 1985, 27.5% came from Europe and America and 72.5% from Asia and Africa.

The Jewish Agency, which, in accordance with Article IV of the Palestine Mandate, played a leading role in laying the political, economic and social foundations on which the State of Israel was established, continues to be instrumental in organizing immigration.

**CLIMATE.** From April to Oct., the summers are long and hot, and almost rainless. From Nov. to March, the weather is generally mild, though colder in hilly areas, and this is the wet season. Jerusalem. Jan. 48°F (9°C), July 73°F (23°C). Annual rainfall 21" (528 mm). Tel Aviv. Jan. 57°F (14°C), July 81°F (27°C). Annual rainfall 22" (550 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Israel is an independent sovereign republic, established by proclamation on 14 May 1948. For the history of the British Mandate, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1920-49, under PALESTINE.

In 1950 the Knesset (*Parliament*), which in 1949 had passed the Transition Law dealing in general terms with the powers of the Knesset, President and Cabinet, resolved to enact from time to time fundamental laws, which eventually, taken together, would form the Constitution. Fundamental laws that have been passed are: The Knesset (1958), Israel Lands (1960), the President (1964), the Government (1968), the State Economy (1975), the Army (1976), Jerusalem, capital of Israel (1980), and the Judicature (1984).

*National flag:* White with 2 horizontal blue stripes, the blue Shield of David in the centre.



*National anthem:* Hatikvah (The Hope). Words by N. N. Imber (1878); adopted as the Jewish National Anthem by the first Zionist Congress (1897).

The Knesset, a one-chamber Parliament, consists of 120 members. It is elected for a 4-year term by secret ballot and universal direct suffrage. The system of election is by proportional representation. After the Nov. 1988 elections the Knesset was composed as follows: Likud, 40; Labour Alignment, 39; Shas (Oriental Jew Religions), 6; National Religious Party, 5; Agudat Yisrael, 5; Citizens Rights Movement, 5; Communists, 4; Mapam, 3; Tehiya, 3; Shinui, 2; Moledet, 2; Degel Hatora, 2; Tsomet, 2; Arab Democratic List, 1; Progressive List for Peace, 1. Kach, an extreme right-wing party which held one seat in the last parliament was banned from the 1988 election. The President is elected by the Knesset by secret ballot by a simple majority; his term of office is 5 years. He may be re-elected once.

*Former Presidents of the State:* Chaim Weizmann (1949–52); Izhak Ben-Zvi (1952–63); Zalman Shazar (1963–68); Ephraim Katzir (1968–78); Yitzhak Navon (1978–83).

*President:* Chaim Herzog, elected 1983; re-elected 1988.

The Cabinet in Dec. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Labour Minister:* Yitzhak Shamir (Lik).

*Vice Prime Minister and Minister of Finance:* Shimon Peres (Lab). *Foreign Minister:* Moshe Arens (Lik). *Defence:* Yitzhak Rabin (Lab). *Second Vice Prime Minister and Minister of Housing:* David Levy (Lik). *Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Education and Culture:* Yitzhak Navon (Lab). *Transport:* Moshe Katzav (Lik). *Police:* Haim Bar-Lev (Lab). *Trade:* Ariel Sharon (Lik). *Energy:* Moshe Shahal (Lab). *Justice:* Dan Meridor (Lik). *Agriculture:* Avraham Katz-Oz (Lab). *Tourism:* Gideon Patt (Lik). *Health:* Ya'acov Tsur (Lab). *Economics Planning:* Yitzhak Moda'i (Lik). *Communications:* Gad Ya'acobi (Lab). *Interior:* Arie Der'i (Shas). *Immigration:* Yitzhak Peretz (Shas). *Religious Affairs:* (Vacant). *Science:* Ezer Weizman (Lab). *Environmental Quality:* Ronni Milo (Lik). *Ministers Without Portfolio:* Moshe Nissim (Lik), Ehud Olmert (Lik), Mordechai Gur (Lab), Rafi Edri (Lab).

*Local Government.* Local authorities are of three kinds, namely, municipal corporations, local councils and regional councils. Their status, powers and duties are prescribed by statute. Regional councils are local authorities set up in agricultural areas and include all the agricultural settlements in the area under their jurisdiction. All local authorities exercise their authority mainly by means of bye-laws approved by the Minister of the Interior. Their revenue is derived from rates and a surcharge on income tax. Local authorities are elected for a 4-year term of office concurrently with general elections.

There were (1988) 40 municipalities (3 Arab), 137 local councils (61 Arab and Druze) and 54 regional councils (1 Druze).

**DEFENCE.** The Defence Service Law, provides a compulsory 36-month conscription for men (Jews and Druze only). Unmarried women (Jews only) serve 24 months.

The Israel Defence Force is a unified force, in which army, navy and air force are subordinate to a single chief-of-staff. The Minister of Defence is *de facto* commander-in-chief but from Oct. 1973 the cabinet formed a defence committee with authority to make decisions on military operations.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 3 armoured divisions, 3 infantry divisions, 5 mechanized infantry brigades, 3 artillery battalions and 1 surface-to-surface missile battalion. The Reserves are organized in 9 armoured divisions, 1 mechanical (air mobile) division, 10 infantry and 4 artillery brigades. Equipment includes some 3,850 main battle tanks and 5,000 other armoured fighting vehicles. Strength (1989) 104,000 (conscripts 88,000), rising to 598,000 on mobilization.

**Navy.** The Navy includes 3 diesel-electric patrol submarines (built in Britain), 24 missile vessels (2 with helicopter and hangar, 2 of 500 tons, 8 SA'AR 4 class of 450

tons, 6 SA'AR 3 class of 250 tons, 6 SA'AR 2 class of 250 tons), 2 hydrofoils of 105 tons armed with missiles, 40 Dabur boats for coastal patrol.

The naval construction programme includes the building of 3 sa'ar 5 class corvettes (with helicopter). The ships will be constructed in the US, and are expected to be operational in 1995. In addition, 2 Dolphin class submarines are to be built in the Federal Republic of Germany, financed by the US. The Israel navy is equipped with Dvora class coastal patrol craft which will replace the Dabur. The Dvora is a high speed vessel, which reaches 42 knots per hour, and has improved armament detection capability. There is a shipyard and dock at the Haifa naval base.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 9,000 officers and men, of whom 3,000 are conscripts, including a Naval Commando. There are also 1,000 naval reservists available on mobilization.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has a personnel strength (1989) of 28,000, with about 629 first-line aircraft, all jets, of Israeli and US manufacture. There are 3 squadrons with about 50 F-15s, and 6 squadrons with the first 140 of a planned 250 F-16s in an interceptor role; 4 squadrons with 110 F-4E Phantoms, 4 squadrons with about 160 Kfirs, and 3 squadrons with A-4E/H/N Skyhawks in the fighter-bomber/attack role; and 15 RF-4E reconnaissance fighters; supported by 4 E-2C Hawkeye airborne early warning and control aircraft and a few OV-1 Mohawk, RC-12 and RU-21 aircraft. There are transport squadrons of turboprop C-130/KC-130 Hercules, C-47, Arava, Islander, and Boeing 707 (some equipped for tanker or ECM duties) aircraft, helicopter squadrons of CH-53, Super Frelon, AH-1 Huey-Cobra, Hughes 500MD/TOW Defender, JetRanger, Dauphin, Agusta-Bell 205, 206 and 212 aircraft, and training units with locally-built Magister jet trainers, which can be used also in a light ground attack role. Missiles in service include surface-to-air Hawks and surface-to-surface Lances.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Israel is a member of UN.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget year runs from 1 April to 31 March and in 1987-88 balanced at 39,294m. new shekels.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *new shekel* introduced in Jan. 1986 its value is 1,000 old *shekels*. Currency in circulation on 31 Dec. 1984 was I£161,651m. (bank-notes and coins). In March 1989, £1 = 3.11 *shekel*; US\$ = 1.81 *shekel*.

**Banking.** The Bank of Israel was established by law in 1954 as Israel's central bank. Its Governor is appointed by the President on the recommendation of the Cabinet for a 5-year term. He acts as economic adviser to the Government and has ministerial status. There are 26 commercial banks headed by Bank Leumi Le Israel, Bank Hapoalim and Israel Discount Bank, 2 merchant banks, 1 foreign bank, 15 mortgage banks and 9 lending institutions specifically set up to aid industry and agriculture.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use. The (metrical) *dunam* = 1,000 sq. metres (about 0.25 acre).

**Jewish Year.** The Jewish year 5749 corresponds to 12 Sept. 1988-29 Sept. 1989; 5750 30 Sept. 1989-19 Sept. 1990; 5751 20 Sept. 1990-8 Sept. 1991.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric-power production amounted during 1986 to 15,503m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil and Gas.** The only significant indigenous hydrocarbon known to be found is oil shale. In 1988 recoverable potential was estimated to be 250m. tons of oil.

**Minerals.** The most valuable natural resources of the country are the potash, bromine and other salt deposits of the Dead Sea, which are exploited by the Dead



Sea Works, Ltd. Geological research and exploration of the natural resources in the Negev are undertaken by the Israel Mining Corporation. Potash production in 1986 was 2,035,000 tons.

**Agriculture.** In the coastal plain (Sharon, Emek Hefer and the Shephelah) mixed farming, poultry raising, citriculture and vineyards are the main agricultural activities. The Emek (the Valley of Jezreel) is the main agricultural centre of Israel. Mixed farming is to be found throughout the valleys; the sub-tropical Beisan and Jordan plainlands are also centres of banana plantations and fish breeding. In Galilee mixed farming, olive and tobacco plantations prevail. The Hills of Ephraim are a vineyard centre; many parts of the hill country are under afforestation. In the northern Negev farming has been aided by the Yarkon-Negev water pipeline. This has become part of the overall project of the 'National Water Carrier', which is to take water from the Sea of Galilee (Lake Kinnereth) to the south. The plan includes a number of regional projects such as the Lake Kinnereth-Negev pipeline which came into operation in 1964; it has an annual capacity of 320m. cu. metres.

The area under cultivation (in 1,000 dunams) in 1985-86 was 4,358, of which 2,335 were under irrigation. Of the total cultivated area 2,367 dunams were under field crops, 405 under vegetables, potatoes, pumpkins and melons, 900 under citrus and orchards, 28 under fish ponds and the rest under miscellaneous crops, including auxiliary farms, nurseries, flowers, etc.

Industrial crops, such as cotton, have successfully been introduced. In 1985-86 the area under cotton totalled 465,000 dunams.

Livestock (1987) included 319,000 cattle, 281,000 sheep, 128,000 goats, 130,000 pigs, 4,000 horses, 23m. poultry.

Characteristic types of rural settlement are, among others, the following: (1) The *Kibbutz* and *Kvutza* (communal collective settlement), where all property and earnings are collectively owned and work is collectively organized. (126,700 people lived in 269 settlements in 1986). (2) The *Moshav* (workers' co-operative smallholders' settlement) which is founded on the principles of mutual aid and equality of opportunity between the members, all farms being equal in size. (146,400 in 411) (3) The *Moshav Shitufi* (co-operative settlement), which is based on collective ownership and economy as in the *Kibbutz*, but with each family having its own house and being responsible for its own domestic services. (10,900 in 47). (4) Other rural settlements in which land and property are privately owned and every resident is responsible for his own well-being. In 1986 there were 229 villages with a population of 114,800.

## · INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** A wide range of products is manufactured, processed or finished in the country, including chemicals, metal products, textiles, tyres, diamonds, paper, plastics, leather goods, glass and ceramics, building materials, precision instruments, tobacco, foodstuffs, electrical and electronic equipment.

**Labour.** The General Federation of Labour (Histadrut) founded in 1920, had, in 1987, 1.6m. members (including 170,000 Arab and Druze members); including workers' families, this membership represents 71.5% of the population covering 87% of all wage-earners. Several trades unions also exist representing other political and religious groups.

**Commerce.** External trade, in US\$1 m., for calendar years:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	8,173	8,667	8,257	8,202	9,550	11,916
Exports	5,639	5,603	6,242	6,682	7,712	8,475

The main exportable commodities are citrus fruit and by-products, fruit-juices, wines and liquor, sweets, polished diamonds, chemicals, tyres, textiles, metal products, machinery, electronic and transportation equipment, flowers. The main exports were, in 1986 (US\$1m.): Diamonds, 1,879; chemical and oil products, 790; agricultural products including citrus fruit, 560; manufactured goods,



machinery and transport equipment, 4,328. In 1986 62.7% of imports came from Europe, 18.6% from Canada and USA, 8.1% from Africa and Asia. Of exports, 36.4% went to Europe, 34% to Canada and USA, 12% to Africa and Asia.

Total trade between Israel and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	392,757	403,952	385,164	437,014	460,289
Exports and re-exports from UK	393,025	434,470	452,407	523,591	487,255

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were about 1.5m. tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 12,823 km of paved roads in 1986. Registered motor vehicles in 1986 totalled 819,102, including 8,191 buses, 120,842 trucks and 648,847 private cars.

**Railways.** Internal communications (1986–87) are provided by 528 km of standard gauge line. Construction is in progress of 215 km of new line linking Eilat on the Gulf of Aqaba with Sedom and the existing rail network. In 1986–87, 2.5m. passengers and 6.4m. tonnes of freight were carried.

**Aviation.** Air communications are centred in the airport of Ben Gurion, near Tel-Aviv. In 1986, 10,091 planes landed at Israeli airports on international flights; 1,542,000 passengers arrived, 1,556,000 departed. In 1986, 83,732 tons of freight were loaded and 78,603 tons unloaded. The Israeli airline El Al maintains regular flights to London, Paris, Rome, Amsterdam, Brussels, Cairo, Madrid, Lisbon, Bucharest, Athens, Vienna, New York, Montreal, Zürich, Munich, Istanbul, Johannesburg, Nairobi, Frankfurt and Copenhagen. In 1986–87 El Al carried 1.5m. passengers.

**Shipping.** Israel has 3 commercial ports, Haifa, Ashdod and Eilat. In 1986, 3,054 ships departed from Israeli ports; 17m. tons. of freight were handled. The merchant fleet consisted in 1986 of 73 vessels, totalling 1,571,000 GRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Ministry of Communications controls the postal service, and a public company responsible to the Ministry administers the telecommunications service. In 1986 there were 594 post offices and postal agencies, 50 mobile post offices and (1986) 1.94m. telephones.

Israeli television and the state radio station, *Kol Israel* are controlled by the Israel Broadcasting Authority, established in 1965. Radio licences in 1985 numbered approximately 1.12m. and television licences (1986) 936,000.

**Cinemas** In 1987 there were 162 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 21 daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice. Law.** Under the Law and Administration Ordinance, 5708/1948, the first law passed by the Provisional Council of State, the law of Israel is the law which was obtaining in Palestine on 14 May 1948 in so far as it is not in conflict with that Ordinance or any other law passed by the Israel legislature and with such modifications as result from the establishment of the State and its authorities.

Capital punishment was abolished in 1954, except for support given to the Nazis and for high treason.

The law of Palestine was derived from three main sources, namely, Ottoman law, English law (Common Law and Equity) and the law enacted by the Palestine legislature, which to a great extent was modelled on English law. The Ottoman law in its turn was derived from three main sources, namely, Moslem law which had survived in the Ottoman Empire, French law adapted by the Ottomans and the personal law of the non-Moslem communities.

**Civil Courts.** Municipal courts, established in certain municipal areas, have criminal jurisdiction over offences against municipal regulations and bye-laws and certain specified offences committed within a municipal area.

Magistrates courts, established in each district and sub-district, have limited jurisdiction in both civil and criminal matters.

District courts, sitting at Jerusalem, Tel-Aviv and Haifa, have jurisdiction, as courts of first instance, in all civil matters not within the jurisdiction of magistrates courts, and in all criminal matters, and as appellate courts from magistrates courts and municipal courts.

The Supreme Court has jurisdiction as a court of first instance (sitting as a High Court of Justice dealing mainly with administrative matters) and as an appellate court from the district courts (sitting as a Court of Civil or of Criminal Appeal).

In addition, there are various tribunals for special classes of cases, such as the Rents Tribunals and the Tribunals for the Prevention of Profiteering and Speculation. Settlement Officers deal with disputes with regard to the ownership or possession of land in settlement areas constituted under the Land (Settlement of Title) Ordinance.

*Religious Courts.* The rabbinical courts of the Jewish community have exclusive jurisdiction in matters of marriage and divorce, alimony and confirmation of wills of members of their community other than foreigners, concurrent jurisdiction with the civil courts in such matters of members of their community who are foreigners if they consent to the jurisdiction, and concurrent jurisdiction with the civil courts in all other matters of personal status of all members of their community, whether foreigners or not, with the consent of all parties to the action, save that such courts may not grant a decree of dissolution of marriage to a foreign subject.

The courts of the several recognized Christian communities have a similar jurisdiction over members of their respective communities.

The Moslem religious courts have exclusive jurisdiction in all matters of personal status over Moslems who are not foreigners, and over Moslems who are foreigners, if under the law of their nationality they are subject in such matters to the jurisdiction of Moslem religious courts.

Where any action of personal status involves persons of different religious communities, the President of the Supreme Court will decide which court shall have jurisdiction, and whenever a question arises as to whether or not a case is one of personal status within the exclusive jurisdiction of a religious court, the matter must be referred to a special tribunal composed of 2 judges of the Supreme Court and the president of the highest court of the religious community concerned in Israel.

**Religion.** Religious affairs are under the supervision of a special Ministry, with departments for the Christian and Moslem communities. The religious affairs of each community remain under the full control of the ecclesiastical authorities concerned: in the case of the Jews, the Sephardi and Ashkenazi Chief Rabbis, in the case of the Christians, the heads of the various communities, and in the case of the Moslems, the Qadis. The Druze were officially recognized in 1957 as an autonomous religious community.

In 1986 there were: Jews, 3,561,400; Moslems, 586,300; Christians, 100,200; Druze and others, 73,000.

The Jewish Sabbath and Holy Days are observed as days of rest in the public services. Full provision is, however, made for the free exercise of other faiths, and for the observance by their adherents of their respective days of rest and Holy Days.

**Education.** Laws passed by the Knesset in 1949 and 1978 provide for free and compulsory education from 5 to 16 years of age. There is free education until 18 years of age.

The State Education Law of 12 Aug. 1953 established a unified state-controlled elementary school system with a provision for special religious schools. The standard curriculum for all elementary schools is issued by the Ministry with a possibility of adding supplementary subjects comprising not more than 25% of the total syllabus. Most schools in towns are maintained by municipalities, a number are private and some are administered by teachers' co-operatives or trustees.

## Statistics relating to schools under government supervision, 1986–87:

Type of School <sup>1</sup>	Schools	Teachers	Pupils
<i>Hebrew Education</i>			
Primary schools	1,310	37,799	480,616
Schools for handicapped children	198	3,055	12,071
Schools of intermediate division	291	12,952	109,365
Secondary schools	516	22,864	191,519
Vocational schools	308		91,720
Agricultural schools	26		4,683
<i>Arab Education</i>			
Primary schools	308	6,610	140,777
Schools for handicapped children	16	176	1,262
Schools of intermediate division	55	1,578	23,393
Secondary schools	83	2,208	35,805
Vocational schools	37		5,696
Agricultural schools	2		640

<sup>1</sup> Schools providing more than one type of education are included more than once.

There are also a number of private schools maintained by religious foundations—Jewish, Christian and Moslem—and also by private societies.

The Hebrew University of Jerusalem, founded in 1925, comprises faculties of the humanities, social sciences, law, science, medicine and agriculture. In 1986–87 it had 16,870 students. The Technion in Haifa had 9,090 students. The Weizmann Institute of Science in Rehovoth, founded in 1949, had 570 students.

Tel Aviv University had 19,400 students. The religious Bar-Ilan University at Ramat Gan, opened in 1965 had 9,480 students. The Haifa University had 6,550 students. The Ben Gurion University had 5,200 students.

**Social Welfare.** In 1986 Israel had 150 hospitals with 27,399 beds and 9,500 doctors.

The National Insurance Law, which took effect in April 1954, provides for old-age pensions, survivors' insurance, work-injury insurance, maternity insurance, family allowances and unemployment benefits.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Israel in Great Britain (2 Palace Green, London, W8 4QB)

*Ambassador:* Yoav Biran (accredited 24 Nov. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Israel (192 Hayarkon St., Tel Aviv 63405)

*Ambassador:* Mark Elliott, CMG.

Of Israel in the USA (3514 International Dr., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Moshe Arad.

Of the USA in Israel (71 Hayarkon St., Tel Aviv)

*Ambassador:* Thomas R. Pickering.

Of Israel to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Benjamin Netanyahu.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* There is a Central Bureau of Statistics at the Prime Minister's Office, Jerusalem. It publishes monthly bulletins of statistics (economic and social), foreign trade statistics and price statistics.

*Atlas of Israel.* 3rd ed. 1985

*Government Yearbook.* Government Printer, Jerusalem. 1951 ff. (latest issue, 1971/72)

*Facts about Israel.* Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Jerusalem, 1985

*Statistical Abstract of Israel.* Government Printer, Jerusalem (from 1949/50)

*Israel Yearbook.* Tel-Aviv, 1948–49 ff.

*Statistical Bulletin of Israel.* 1949 ff.

*Reshumoth* (Official Gazette)

*Middle East Record*, ed. Y. Oron. London, 1960 ff.

*Laws of the State of Israel.* Authorized translation. Government Printer, Jerusalem, 1958 ff.

Alkalay, R., *The Complete English-Hebrew Dictionary*. 4 vols. Tel-Aviv, 1959–61



- Ben-Gurion, D., *Ben-Gurion Looks Back*. London, 1965.—*The Jews in Their Land*. London, 1966.—*Israel: A Personal History*. New York, 1971
- Gilbert, M., *The Arab-Israeli Conflict: Its History in Maps*. 3rd ed. London, 1981
- Harris, W., *Taking Root: Israeli Settlement in the West Bank, The Golan and Gaza Sinai 1967–1980*. Chichester, 1981
- Kieval, G. R., *Party Politics in Israel and the Occupied Territories*. Westport, 1983
- Louis, W. R. and Stookey, R. W., *The End of the Palestine Mandate*. London, 1986
- O'Brien, C. C., *The Siege*. London, 1986
- Peri, Y., *Between Battles and Ballots: Israeli Military in Politics*. CUP, 1983
- Reich, B., *Israel: Land of Tradition and Conflict*. London, 1986
- Sachar, H. M., *A History of Israel*. 2 vols. OUP, 1976 and 1987
- Sager, S., *The Parliamentary System of Israel*. Syracuse Univ. Press, 1986
- Segev, T., *1949: The First Israelis*. New York, 1986
- Sharkansky, I., *The Political Economy of Israel*. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986
- Shimshoni, D., *Israeli Democracy: The Middle of the Journey*. New York, 1982
- Snyder, E. M. and Kreiner, E., *Israel*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985
- Wolffsohn, M., *Politik in Israel*. Opladen, 1983
- National Library: The Jewish National and University Library, Jerusalem.*

# ITALY

Capital: Rome

Population: 57.4m. (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$8,570 (1986)

## Repubblica Italiana

**HISTORY.** On 10 June 1946 Italy became a republic on the announcement by the Court of Cassation that a majority of the voters at the referendum held on 2 June had voted for a republic. The final figures, announced on 18 June, showed: For a republic, 12,718,641 (54.3% of the valid votes cast, which numbered 23,437,143); for the retention of the monarchy, 10,718,502 (45.7%); invalid and contested, 1,509,735. Total 24,946,878, or 89.1% of the registered electors, who numbered 28,005,449. For the results of the polling in the 13 leading cities, see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1951, p. 1175. Voting was compulsory, open to both men and women 21 years of age or older, including members of the Civil Service and the Armed Forces; former active Fascists and a few other categories were excluded.

On 18 June the then Provisional Government without specifically proclaiming the republic, issued an 'Order of the Day' decreeing that all court verdicts should in future be handed down 'in the name of the Italian people', that the *Gazzetta Ufficiale del Regno d'Italia* should be re-named *Gazzetta Ufficiale della Repubblica Italiana*, that all references to the monarchy should be deleted from legal and government statements and that the shield of the House of Savoy should be removed from the Italian flag.

Thus ended the reign of the House of Savoy, whose kings had ruled over Piedmont for 9 centuries and as Kings of Italy since 18 Feb. 1861. (For fuller account of the House of Savoy, see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1946, p. 1021.) The Crown Prince Umberto, son of King Victor Emmanuel III, became Lieut.-Gen. (i.e., Regent) of the kingdom on 5 June 1944. Following the abdication and retirement to Egypt of his father on 9 May 1946, Umberto was declared King Umberto II; his reign lasted to 13 June, when he left the country. King Victor Emmanuel III died in Alexandria on 28 Dec. 1947.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Italy is bounded north by Switzerland and Austria, east by Yugoslavia and the Adriatic Sea, south-east by the Ionian Sea, south by the Mediterranean Sea, south-west by the Tyrrhenian Sea and Ligurian Sea and west by France. The population (present in actual boundaries) at successive censuses were as follows:

31 Dec. 1881	29,277,927	21 April 1936	42,302,680
10 Feb. 1901	33,370,138	4 Nov. 1951	47,158,738
10 June 1911	35,694,582	15 Oct. 1961	49,903,878
1 Dec. 1921	37,403,956	24 Oct. 1971	53,744,737
21 April 1931	40,582,043	25 Oct. 1981	56,243,935

The following table gives area and population of the Regions (census 1981 and estimate, 1987):

Regions	Area in sq. km (1981)	Resident pop. census, 1981	Resident pop. estimate, 1987	Density per sq. km (1981)
Piemonte	25,399	4,479,031	4,377,229	175
Valle d'Aosta	3,262	112,353	114,325	35
Lombardia	23,856	8,891,652	8,886,402	373
Trentino-Alto Adige	13,613	873,413	881,986	64
Bolzano-Bozen	7,400	430,568	436,604	58
Trento	6,213	442,845	445,382	71
Veneto	18,364	4,345,047	4,374,911	235
Friuli-Venezia Giulia	7,846	1,233,984	1,210,242	157
Liguria	5,416	1,807,893	1,749,572	332
Emilia Romagna	22,123	3,957,513	3,924,199	178
Toscana	22,992	3,581,051	3,568,308	155
Umbria	8,456	807,552	818,226	95
Marche	9,694	1,412,404	1,428,557	145
Lazio	17,203	5,001,684	5,137,270	289

<i>Regions</i>	<i>Area in sq. km (1981)</i>	<i>Resident pop. census, 1981</i>	<i>Resident pop. estimate, 1987</i>	<i>Density per sq. km (1981)</i>
Abruzzi	10,794	1,217,791	1,257,988	113
Molise	4,438	328,371	334,680	73
Campania	13,595	5,463,134	5,731,426	398
Puglia	19,347	3,871,617	4,042,996	199
Basilicata	9,992	610,186	621,506	60
Calabria	15,080	2,061,182	2,145,724	135
Sicilia	25,708	4,906,878	5,141,343	189
Sardegna	24,090	1,594,175	1,651,218	66
Total	301,268	56,556,911	57,399,108	187

## Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Living births</i>				<i>Deaths excl. of still-born</i>	
	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Legitimate</i>	<i>Illegitimate</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Still-born</i>	
1981	316,953	595,514	27,589	623,103	4,728	545,291
1982	312,486	590,042	29,055	619,097	4,757	534,935
1983	303,663	572,641	29,287	601,928	4,396	564,330
1984	298,028 <sup>1</sup>	557,773	30,098	587,871	4,175	534,675
1985	295,990 <sup>1</sup>	546,224	31,123	577,345	3,871	547,435
1986 <sup>1</sup>	296,539	523,801	31,044	554,845	3,658	542,127
1987 <sup>1</sup>	305,328	520,455	31,854	552,329	3,486	531,739

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

*Emigrants* to non-European countries, by sea and air: 1978, 23,589; 1979, 21,302; 1980, 20,360; 1981, 20,628; 1982, 22,324; 1983, 20,443; 1984, 16,776; 1985, 16,151; 1986, 13,215. Since 1960 nearly nine-tenths of these emigrants have gone to Canada, USA and Australia.

Communes of more than 100,000 inhabitants, with population resident at the census of 25 Oct. 1981 and on 31 Dec. 1987:

	<i>1981</i>	<i>1987</i>		<i>1981</i>	<i>1987</i>
Roma (Rome)	2,840,259	2,817,227	Perugia	142,348	147,602
Milano (Milan)	1,604,773	1,478,505	Ravenna	138,034	136,324
Napoli (Naples)	1,212,387	1,200,958	Pescara	131,330	130,525
Torino (Turin)	1,117,154	1,025,390	Reggio nell'E.	130,376	130,015
Genova (Genoa)	762,895	722,026	Rimini	127,813	130,787
Palermo	701,782	728,843	Monza	123,145	122,726
Bologna	459,080	427,240	Bergamo	122,142	118,655
Firenze (Florence)	448,331	421,299	Sassari	119,596	120,497
Catania	380,328	372,212	Siracusa (Syracuse)	117,615	123,706
Bari	371,022	358,906	La Spezia	115,392	107,435
Venezia (Venice)	346,146	327,700	Vicenza	114,598	109,932
Verona	265,932	258,523	Terzi	111,564	110,704
Messina	260,233	270,546	Forli	110,806	110,334
Trieste	252,369	237,191	Piacenza	109,039	104,976
Taranto	244,101	244,845	Cosenza	106,801	105,913
Padova (Padua)	234,678	223,907	Ancona	106,498	104,255
Cagliari	233,848	221,790	Bolzano	105,180	101,230
Brescia	206,661	198,839	Pisa	104,509	103,527
Modena	180,312	176,556	Torre del Greco	103,605	104,646
Parma	179,019	175,301	Noyara	102,086	102,961
Livorno (Leghorn)	175,741	173,114	Udine	102,021	—
Reggio di C.	173,486	178,714	Catanzaro	100,832	103,004
Prato	160,220	164,824	Alessandria	100,523	—
Salerno	157,385	153,807	Trento	99,179	100,677
Foggia	156,467	159,192	Lecce	91,289	101,520
Ferrara	149,453	143,046			

**CLIMATE.** The climate varies considerably with latitude. In the south, it is warm temperate, with little rain in the summer months, but the north is cool temperate with rainfall more evenly distributed over the year.

Florence, Jan. 42°F (5.6°C), July 76°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 36" (901 mm). Milan, Jan. 35°F (2°C), July 75°F (24°C). Annual rainfall 32" (802 mm). Naples, Jan. 48°F (8.9°C), July 77°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 34" (850 mm). Palermo, Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 28" (702 mm). Rome, Jan. 44.5°F (7°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 26" (657 mm). Venice, Jan. 38°F (3.3°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 29" (725 mm).



**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The new Constitution was passed by the constituent assembly by 453 votes to 62 on 22 Dec. 1947; it came into force on 1 Jan. 1948. The Constitution consists of 139 articles and 18 transitional clauses. Its main dispositions are as follows:

Italy is described as 'a democratic republic founded on work'. Parliament consists of the Chamber of Deputies and the Senate. The Chamber is elected for 5 years by universal and direct suffrage and it consists of 630 deputies. The Senate is elected for 5 years on a regional basis; each Region having at least 7 senators, consisting of 315 elected senators; the Valle d'Aosta is represented by 1 senator only. The President of the Republic can nominate 5 senators for life from eminent men in the social, scientific, artistic and literary spheres. On the expiry of his term of office, the President of the Republic becomes a senator by right and for life, unless he declines. The President of the Republic is elected in a joint session of Chamber and Senate, to which are added 3 delegates from each Regional Council (1 from the Valle d'Aosta). A two-thirds majority is required for the election, but after a third indecisive scrutiny the absolute majority of votes is sufficient. The President must be 50 years or over; his term lasts for 7 years. The President of the Senate acts as his deputy. The President can dissolve the chambers of parliament, except during the last 6 months of his term of office.

The Cabinet can be forced to resign only on a motivated motion of censure; the defeat of a government bill does not involve the resignation of the Government.

A Constitutional Court, consisting of 15 judges who are appointed, 5 each, by the President of the Republic, Parliament (in joint session) and the highest law and administrative courts, has rights similar to those of the Supreme Court of the USA. It can decide on the constitutionality of laws and decrees, define the powers of the State and Regions, judge conflicts between the State and Regions and between the Regions, and try the President of the Republic and the Ministers. The court was set up in Dec. 1955.

The reorganization of the Fascist Party is forbidden. Direct male descendants of King Victor Emmanuel are excluded from all public offices, have no right to vote or to be elected, and are banned from Italian territory; their estates are forfeit to the State. Titles of nobility are no longer recognized, but those existing before 28 Oct. 1922 are retained as part of the name.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of green, white, red.

*National anthem:* Fratelli d'Italia (words by G. Mameli; tune by M. Novaro, 1847).

*Head of State:* On 3 July 1985 Chamber and Senate in joint session elected by an absolute majority (752 votes out of 977 votes cast) Francesco Cossiga (Christian Democrat; born 1928), President of the Republic.

*Former Presidents of the Republic:* Luigi Einaudi (1948–55); Giovanni Gronchi (1955–62); Antonio Segni (1962–64); Giuseppe Saragat (1964–71); Giovanni Leone (1971–78); Alessandro Pertini (1978–85).

General elections for the Senate and Chamber of Deputies took place on 14 June 1987.

*Senate.* Christian Democrats, 125; Communists, 101; Socialists, 36; Italian Social Movement, 16; Social Democrats, 5; Republicans, 8; Liberals, 3; other groups, 21. Total: 315.

*Chamber.* Christian Democrats, 234; Communists, 177; Socialists, 94; Italian Social Movement, 35; Republicans, 21; Social Democrats, 17; Liberals, 11; Radical Party, 13; Green Party, 13; other groups, 15. Total: 630.

The coalition government was composed as follows in Jan. 1989.

*Prime Minister:* Ciriaco De Mita (DC).

*Vice Prime Minister:* Gianni De Michelis (PSI).

*Foreign Affairs:* Giulio Andreotti (DC).

*Interior:* Antonio Gava (DC).

*Justice:* Giuliano Vassalli (PSI).

*Southern Affairs:* Remo Gaspari (DC).

*Treasury:* Giuliano Amato (PSI).

*Budget:* Amintore Fanfani (DC).  
*Finance:* Emilio Colombo (DC).  
*Defence:* Valerio Zanone (PLI).  
*Education:* Giovanni Galloni (DC).  
*Public Works:* Enrico Ferri (Ind. PSDI).  
*Agriculture:* Calogero Mannino (DC).  
*Transport:* Giorgio Santuz (DC).  
*Post:* Oscar Mammi (PRI).  
*Industry:* Adolfo Battaglia (PRI).  
*Labour:* Rino Formica (PSI).  
*Foreign Trade:* Renato Ruggiero (PSI).  
*Merchant Navy:* Giovanni Prandini (DC).  
*State Industry:* Carlo Fracanzani (DC).  
*Health:* Carlo Donat Cattin (DC).  
*Tourism:* Franco Carraro (PSI).  
*Culture:* Vincenzo Bono Parrino (PSDI).  
*EEC Affairs:* Antonio La Pergola (PSDI/PSI).  
*Public Administration:* Paolo Cirino Pomicino (DC).  
*Scientific Research:* Antonio Ruberti (PSI).  
*Regional Affairs:* Antonio Maccanico (PRI).  
*Relations with Parliament:* Sergio Mattarella (DC).  
*Civil Protection:* Vito Lattanzio (DC).  
*Ecology:* Giorgio Ruffolo (PSI).  
*Urban Problems:* Carlo Tognoli (PSI).  
*Special Affairs:* Rosa Russo Jervolino (DC).

*Regional Administration.* Italy is administratively divided into regions (*regioni*), provinces (*province*) and municipalities (*comuni*).

Art. 116 of the 1948 constitution provided for the establishment of 5 autonomous regions with special statute (*regioni autonome con statuto speciale*) and 15 autonomous regions with ordinary statute (*regioni autonome con statuto normale*). The regions have their own parliaments (*consiglio regionale*) and governments (*giunta regionale e presidente*) with certain legislative and administrative functions adapted to the circumstances of each region.

A government commissioner co-ordinates regional and national activities. The results of the last regional elections were as follows:

Regions	Election date	Christian Demo- crats	Com- mun- ists	Social- ists	Social Move- ment	Social Demo- crats	Repub- licans	Lib- erals	Others	Total
Piemonte	12 May 1985	19	18	8	3	3	3	3	3	60
Valle d'Aosta <sup>1</sup>	26 June 1988	7	5	3	1	—	1	—	18	35
Lombardia	12 May 1985	31	22	12	4	2	4	1	4	80
Trentino-Alto Adige <sup>1</sup>	20 Nov. 1983	19	6	4	3	1	3	1	33	70
Veneto	12 May 1985	30	12	8	2	1	2	1	4	60
Friuli-Venezia Giulia <sup>1</sup>	26 June 1988	24	11	12	3	2	1	1	8	62
Liguria	12 May 1985	13	15	4	2	1	2	1	2	40
Emilia-Romagna	12 May 1985	13	26	4	2	1	2	1	1	50
Toscana	12 May 1985	14	25	5	2	1	1	—	2	50
Umbria	12 May 1985	9	14	4	2	—	1	—	—	30
Marche	12 May 1985	15	15	4	2	1	1	1	1	40
Lazio	12 May 1985	21	18	7	6	2	2	1	3	60
Abruzzi	12 May 1985	19	11	5	2	1	1	1	—	40
Molise	12 May 1985	18	5	3	1	1	1	1	—	30
Campania	12 May 1985	24	14	9	5	3	2	1	2	60
Puglia	12 May 1985	20	13	8	5	2	1	1	—	50
Basilicata	12 May 1985	14	7	5	1	2	1	—	—	30
Calabria	12 May 1985	16	10	8	2	2	1	—	1	40
Sicilia <sup>1</sup>	22 June 1986	36	14	13	8	4	5	3	7	90
Sardegna <sup>1</sup>	24 June 1984	27	24	8	3	4	3	—	12	81

<sup>1</sup> Autonomous regions with special statute.

**DEFENCE.** Most of the restrictions imposed upon Italy in Part IV of the peace treaty signed on 10 Feb. 1947 were repudiated by the signatories on 21 Dec. 1951, only the USSR objecting.

Head of the armed forces is the Defence Chief of Staff. In 1947 the ministries of war, navy and air were merged into the ministry of defence. The technical and scientific council for defence directs all research activities.

National service lasts 12 months in the Army and Air Force, and 18 months in the Navy.

**Army.** The Army consists of 3 corps, one of which is alpine and others include mechanized, armoured and support brigades. In peninsular defence there are 2 independent motorized and 2 independent mechanized brigades. In addition there is a rapid intervention force, 2 amphibious battalions and a support brigade with missiles. Equipment includes 500 M-47, 300 M-60A1 and 920 Leopard I main battle tanks. The Army air corps operates 100 light aircraft and 390 helicopters. Strength (1989) 265,000 (215,000 conscripts), with 520,000 reserves. There is also the paramilitary Carabinieri of 90,000 men.

**Navy.** Particulars of the principal surface ships in the Italian Navy:

<i>Completed</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Standard displacement Tons</i>	<i>Aircraft</i>	<i>Principal armament</i>	<i>Torpedo tubes</i>	<i>Shaft horse-power</i>	<i>Speed Knots</i>
<i>Light Aircraft Carrier</i>							
1985	Giuseppe Garibaldi (fitted with 6.5° VSTOL launching ramp)	10,100	16 Sea King helicopters	4 Teseo 2 launchers for Otomat; 2 Albatross systems with octuple Aspide missiles (48)	6 A/S	80,000	30
<i>Cruisers</i>							
1969	Vittorio Veneto (fitted as aircraft carrier aft)	7,500	9 helicopters	8 3-in.; 4 Teseo launchers; twin 'Terrier' missile launcher	6	73,000	32
1964 1964	Andrea Doria <sup>1</sup> Caio Duilio <sup>1</sup> }	6,000	4 helicopters	8 3-in.; twin 'Terrier' missile launcher	6	60,000	31

<sup>1</sup> Rated as guided-missile escort cruisers.

There are also 10 diesel-powered submarines, 4 guided-missile destroyers, 22 frigates, 8 corvettes, 4 ocean minesweepers, 15 minehunters, 10 coastal minesweepers, 7 hydrofoil missile boats, 1 dock landing ship, 2 tank landing ships, 3 surveying vessels, 2 salvage ships, 1 transport, 1 support ship, 5 training ships, 2 replenishment oilers, 14 water carriers, 1 netlayer, 6 repair craft, 20 auxiliaries, 5 coastal transports (landing craft), 5 motor transports (minor landing craft), 6 harbour oilers and 60 tugs. The Naval Air Arm has 98 anti-submarine and training helicopters.

One submarine, 1 dock landing ship and 4 corvettes are under construction. Two destroyers, 8 corvettes and 8 minehunters are projected.

The coastline of the peninsula is divided into zones, with headquarters at Spezia, Naples, Taranto and Ancona; all are under the jurisdiction of flag officers with the status of C.-in-C. The admirals commanding on the coasts of Sardinia and Sicily do not rank as C.-in-C.

Other localities of strategic importance under naval administration are Brindisi,



where there is an admiral commanding, and Genoa, Leghorn, Augusta and Venice, each of which is under a senior naval officer.

The personnel of the Navy in 1989 numbered 48,000 officers and ratings, including the naval air arm and the marine battalion.

**Air Force.** Control is exercised through 2 regional HQ near Taranto and Milan. Units assigned to NATO comprise the 1st air brigade of Nike-Hercules surface-to-air missiles, 5 fighter-bomber, 2 light attack, 8 interceptor and 2 tactical reconnaissance squadrons, with supporting transport, search and rescue, and training units. Two of the fighter-bomber squadrons have Tornados, others have Aeritalia G91Ys. The light attack squadrons operate G91Rs and MB.339s. F-104S Starfighters have been standardized throughout the interceptor squadrons. The reconnaissance force operates RF-104G Starfighters. A total of 187 AM-X jet aircraft, built jointly by Aeritalia, Aermacchi and Embraer of Brazil, will replace G91R, G91Y and F-104G/S aircraft in eight squadrons from 1989-90.

One transport squadron has turboprop C-130H Hercules aircraft; 2 others have turboprop Aeritalia G222s. There is a VIP and personnel transport squadron, equipped with AS-61, DC-9, Gulfstream III and Falcon 50 aircraft. Electronic warfare duties are performed by specially equipped G222s, PD-808s and MB 339s. Two land-based anti-submarine squadrons operate Breguet Atlantics. Search and rescue are performed by 20 Agusta-Sikorsky HH-3F helicopters, Canadair CL-215 amphibians and smaller types. There are also strong support and training elements; some MB 339 jet trainers have armament provisions for secondary close air support and anti-helicopter roles.

Air Force strength in 1989 was about 73,000 officers and men, about 400 combat aircraft, 200 fixed-wing second-line aircraft and over 100 helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Italy is a member of UN, NATO and the European Communities.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Total revenue and expenditure for fiscal years, in 1m. lire:

	<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Expenditure</i>		<i>Revenue</i>	<i>Expenditure</i>
1982	150,842,000	206,444,000	1985	218,973,000	319,099,000
1983	177,142,000	250,203,000	1986	266,301,009	384,344,429
1984	199,986,000	292,348,000	1987	283,875,850	442,965,463

In the revenue for 1987 turnover and other business taxes accounted for 63,838,450m. lire, customs duties and indirect taxes for 24,379,299m. lire.

The public debt at 31 Dec. 1987 totalled 798,539,164m. lire, including consolidated debt of 40,452m. lire and the floating debt 323,189,746m. lire.

**Currency.** The standard coin is the *lira*. From 30 March 1960 the gold standard was formally established as equal to 0.00142187 gramme of gold per lira.

State metal coins are of 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 200, and 500 lire. There are in circulation bank-notes of 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000 and 100,000 lire; they are neither convertible into gold as foreign moneys nor exportable abroad, nor importable from abroad into Italy (except for certain specified small amounts).

Circulation of money at 31 Dec. 1987: State coins and notes, 1,167,200m. lire; bank-notes, 54,451,000m. lire.

In March 1989 the rate of exchange was 1,361 lire per US\$1 and 2,342 lire per £1 sterling.

**Banking.** According to the law of 6 May 1926 there is only one bank of issue, the Banca d'Italia. Its gold reserve amounted to 39,812,000m. lire in Dec. 1987; the foreign credit reserves of the Exchange Bureau (*Ufficio Italiano Cambi*) amounted to 24,755,000m. lire at the same date.

Since 1936, all credit institutions have been under the control of a State organ, named 'Inspectorate of Credit'; the Bank of Italy has been converted into a 'public institution', whose capital is held exclusively by corporate bodies of a public

nature. Other credit institutions, totalling 1,109, are classified as: (1) 6 chartered banks (Banco di Napoli, Banco di Sicilia, Banca Nazionale del Lavoro, Monte dei Paschi di Siena, Istituto di S. Paolo di Torino, Banca di Sardegna); (2) 3 banks of national interest (Banca Commerciale Italiana in Milan, Credito Italiano in Genoa and Banco di Roma); (3) banks and credit concerns in general, including 150 joint-stock banks and 133 co-operative banks; (4) 84 savings banks and Monti di pegno (institutions granting loans against personal chattels as security); (5) 728 *Casse rurali e agrarie* (agricultural banks, established as co-operative institutions with unlimited liability of associates); (6) 5 Istituti di Categoria.

At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 277 credit institutes handling 95% of all deposits and current accounts, with capital and reserves of 61,828,000m. lire.

On 31 Dec. 1987 the post office savings banks had deposits and current accounts of 108,617,000m. lire; credit institutions, 533,666,000m. lire.

**Insurance.** By a decree of 29 April 1923 life-assurance business is carried on only by the National Insurance Institute and by other institutions, national and foreign, authorized by the Government. At 31 Dec. 1986 the insurances vested in the *Istituto Nazionale delle Assicurazioni* amounted to 18,154,358m. lire, including the decuple of life annuities.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Italy has greatly developed her water-power resources. In 1987 the total power generated was 201,372m. kwh., of which 42,585m. kwh. were generated by hydro-electric plants. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz and 120, 125, 160 and 260 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Production in 1987 amounted to 3,904,542 tonnes, of which 956,898 came from Sicily. Natural gas production (1987) 573,565m. cu. ft.

**Minerals.** The Italian mining industry is most developed in Sicily (Caltanissetta), in Tuscany (Arezzo, Florence and Grosseto), in Sardinia (Cagliari, Sassari and Iglesias), in Lombardy (particularly near Bergamo and Brescia) and in Piedmont.

Italy's fuel and mineral resources are wholly inadequate. Only sulphur and mercury outputs yield a substantial surplus for exports. In 1987 outputs, in tonnes, of raw steel were 22,858,742; rolled iron, 20,846,570; cast-iron ingots, 11,334,906.

Production of metals and minerals (in tonnes) was as follows:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Iron pyrites	666,964	646,209	442,674	690,395	760,860	784,924
Iron ore	195,034	67,700	273,700	—	—	—
Manganese	8,727	7,205	9,528	8,621	6,396	3,802
Zinc	74,142	83,462	81,291	87,380	50,515	67,798
Crude sulphur	88,848	40,858	20,639	4,911	—	—
Bauxite	23,810	3,118	—	—	2,250	15,057
Mercury	17,163	—	—	—	—	—
Lead	36,360	37,429	37,558	37,051	27,219	58,515
Aluminium	232,861	195,694	230,207	226,300	262,562	258,051

**Agriculture.** The area of Italy in 1987 comprised 301,278 sq. km, of which 263,027 sq. km was agricultural and forest land and 38,251 sq. km was unproductive; the former was mainly distributed as follows (in 1,000 hectares): Forage and pasture, 7,934; woods, 6,735; cereals, 4,688; vines, 1,083; olive trees, 1,177; garden produce, 527; leguminous plants, 255.

At the third general census of agriculture (24 Oct. 1982) agricultural holdings numbered 3,270,560 and covered 23,559,924 hectares. 3,063,010 owners (93.6%) farmed directly 16,597,798 hectares (70.4%); 152,250 owners (4.7%) worked with hired labour on 6,209,702 hectares (26.4%); 130,648 share-croppers (3.6%) tilled 1,271,485 hectares (5.1%); the remaining 55,300 holdings (1.7%) of 752,424 hectares (3.2%) were operated in other ways.

According to the labour force survey in July 1978 persons engaged in agriculture numbered 3.17m. (2.02m. males and 1.15m. females).

In 1986, 1,315,427 farm tractors were being used.

The production of the principal crops (in 1,000 metric quintals) in 1987: Sugar beet, 154,833; wheat, 93,591; maize, 57,619; tomatoes, 47,705; potatoes, 24,639; oranges, 13,429; rice, 10,439; barley, 17,079; lemons, 5,918; oats, 3,608; olive oil, 6,598; tangerines, 3,339; other citrus fruit, 364; rye, 203.

Production of wine, 1987, 75,822,000 hectolitres; of tobacco, 160,350 tonnes.

In 1986 consumption of chemical fertilizers in Italy was as follows (in 1,000 tons): Perphosphate, 761.3; nitrate of ammonia, 746.1; sulphate of ammonium, 374.5; potash salts, 106.8; nitrate of calcium<sup>15/16</sup>, 27.7; deposited slags, 29.6.

Livestock estimated in 1987: Cattle, 8,793,000; pigs, 9,383,000; sheep, 11,456,000; goats, 1,206,000; horses, 250,000; donkeys, 86,000; mules, 50,000.

**Fisheries.** The Italian fishing fleet comprised in 1982, 23,385 motor boats (323,512 gross tons) and 11,694 sailing vessels (14,612 gross tons). The catch in 1984 was 428,691 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main branches of industry are: (% of industrial value added at factor cost in 1982) Textiles, clothing, leather and footwear (17.7%), food, beverages and tobacco (10.4%), energy products (7.9%), agricultural and industrial machines (7.7%), metal products except machines and means of transport (7%), mineral and non-metallic mineral products (7%), timber and wooden furniture (6.6%), electric plants and equipment (6.3%), chemicals and pharmaceuticals (6.2%), means of transport (6.1%).

Production, 1987: Steel, 22,858,742; motor vehicles, 1,912,232; cement, 37,303,116 tonnes; artificial and synthetic fibres (including staple fibre and waste), 704,495 tonnes; polyethylene resins, 768,762 tonnes.

**Labour.** In 1988, 20.8m. persons were employed, 2m. unemployed (figures from a new series of statistics on the labour force, 1977, which is not comparable with previous series).

**Trade Unions.** There are 4 main groups: Confederazione Generale Italiana del Lavoro (Communist-dominated); Confederazione Italiana Sindacati Lavoratori (Catholic); Unione Italiana del Lavoro and Confederazione Italiana Sindacati Nazionali Lavoratori.

**Commerce.** The territory covered by foreign trade statistics includes Italy, the Republic of San Marino, but excludes the municipalities of Livigno and Campione.

The following table shows the value of Italy's foreign trade (in 1 m. lire):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	116,215,679	121,978,334	148,162,029	172,809,202	148,993,862	161,596,642
Exports	99,230,877	110,530,106	129,026,980	149,723,608	145,331,231	150,454,325

The following table shows trade by countries in 1 m. lire:

Countries	Imports into Italy from			Exports from Italy to		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Argentina	951,177	530,980	447,776	428,378	453,949	498,648
Australia	1,079,687	905,845	862,115	1,473,117	1,049,527	1,135,914
Austria	3,084,146	3,188,037	3,730,502	3,293,871	3,445,688	3,793,928
Belgium-Luxembourg	6,412,172	6,920,226	8,032,085	4,442,557	4,842,513	5,078,461
France	21,546,182	21,654,420	23,592,402	21,003,252	22,704,291	24,570,820
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	28,742,482	30,506,735	34,076,283	24,172,063	26,355,260	27,958,933
Japan	2,827,485	3,119,645	3,457,828	1,765,431	1,966,167	2,403,860
Netherlands	8,795,999	8,771,001	9,035,325	4,630,021	4,755,267	4,640,120
Switzerland	6,666,741	6,485,310	7,718,373	6,070,302	6,607,199	7,082,240
USSR	5,692,204	3,464,909	3,676,010	2,913,927	2,410,783	2,847,165
UK	8,540,121	7,596,570	8,513,763	10,423,757	10,298,981	11,192,851
USA	10,294,233	8,495,617	8,618,942	18,356,745	15,604,645	14,456,025
Yugoslavia	2,194,954	2,004,412	2,367,740	2,262,840	2,020,347	1,867,069

In 1988 the main imports were maize, wood, greasy wool, metal scrap, pit-coal, petroleum, raw oils, meat, paper, rolled iron and steel, copper and alloys, mechanical and electric equipment, motor vehicles. The main exports were fruit and



vegetables, fabrics, footwear and other clothing articles, rolled iron and steel, machinery, motor vehicles, plastic materials and petroleum by-products.

Italy's balance of trade (in 1,000m. lire) has been estimated as follows:

	<i>Goods and services</i>			<i>Income from investments and work, balance</i>	<i>Net balance</i>
	<i>Export</i>	<i>Import</i>	<i>Balance</i>		
1980	83,705	94,276	-10,571	790	-9,781
1986	179,781	166,786	+12,955	-6,907	+6,088
1987	190,271	183,388	+6,883	-6,535	+348

Remittances from Italians abroad (in US\$1 m. until 1969 and then 1,000m. lire): 1950, 72; 1960, 214; 1970, 289; 1980, 1,059; 1987, 1,570.

Total trade between Italy and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,814,163	4,293,941	4,658,036	5,216,751	5,817,445
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,902,666	3,466,495	3,472,364	4,145,659	4,106,417

**Tourism.** In 1987, 52.7m. foreigners visited Italy; they included 9.6m. German, 9m. Swiss, 10.5m. French, 5.5m. Austrian, 4.8m. Yugoslav, 2m. British, 1.4m. Dutch and 1.5m. US citizens. They spent about 15,782,808m. lire.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Italy's roads totalled (31 Dec. 1986) 300,292 km, of which 45,779 km were state roads, 106,850 km provincial roads, 141,666 km communal roads. Motor vehicles, Dec. 1984: Cars, 20.9m.; buses, 71,981; lorries, 1,720,445; motor cycles, light vans, etc., 5,552,717.

**Railways.** Railway history in Italy begins in 1839, with a line between Naples and Portici (8 km). Length of railways (31 Dec. 1987), 19,563 km, including 16,166 km of state railways, of which 6,967 had not yet been electrified. The first section of a new high-speed direct railway linking Rome and Florence opened in Feb. 1977. In 1986 the state railways carried 394.2m. passengers and 53.4m. tonnes of goods. The Rome Underground opened in Feb. 1980.

**Aviation.** The Italian airline Alitalia (with a capital of 421,900m. lire, of which 99.1% is owned by the State) operates flights to every part of the world. Airports include 25 international, 36 national and 75 club airports. Domestic and international traffic in 1987 registered 18,724,475 passengers arrived and 18,691,228 departed, while freight and mail (excluding luggage) amounted to 198,908 tonnes unloaded and 236,288 tonnes loaded.

**Shipping.** The mercantile marine at 31 Dec. 1986 consisted of 2,031 vessels of 8,060,067 gross tons, not including pleasure boats (yachts, etc.), sailing and motor vessels. There were 1,371 motor vessels of 100 gross tons and over.

In 1986, 256,313,000 tonnes of cargo were unloaded, and 95,252,000 tonnes of cargo were loaded in Italian ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 31 Dec. 1985 there were 14,276 post offices and 13,759 telegraph offices. The maritime radio-telegraph service had 20 coast stations. On 1 Jan. 1987 the telephone service had 26,873,730 apparatus. *Radiotelevisione Italiana* broadcasts 3 programmes and additional regional programmes, including transmissions in English, French, German and Slovenian on medium- and short-waves and on FM. It also broadcasts 2 TV programmes. Radio licences numbered 381,521; television and radio licences, 14,212,781.

**Cinemas.** There were 4,885 cinemas in 1985.

**Newspapers.** There were (1985) 72 daily newspapers with a combined circulation of 6.71m. copies; of the papers 14 are published in Rome and 7 in Milan. One daily each is published in German, Slovene and English.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Italy has 1 court of cassation, in Rome, and is divided for the administration of justice into 23 appeal court districts (and 3 detached sections), subdivided into 159 tribunali *circondari* (districts), and these again into *mandamenti* each with its own magistracy (*Pretura*), 899 in all. There are also 90 first degree assize courts and 26 assize courts of appeal. For civil business, besides the magistracy above mentioned, *Conciliatori* have jurisdiction in petty claims (those to a maximum amount of 1m. lire).

On 31 Dec. 1983 there were 25,016 male and 1,448 female prisoners in establishments for preventive custody, 10,819 males and 409 females in penal establishments and 1,255 males and 98 females in establishments for the execution of safety measures.

**Religion.** The treaty between the Holy See and Italy, of 11 Feb. 1929, confirmed by article 7 of the Constitution of the republic, lays down that the Catholic Apostolic Roman Religion is the only religion of the State. Other creeds are permitted, provided they do not profess principles, or follow rites, contrary to public order or moral behaviour.

The appointment of archbishops and of bishops is made by the Holy See; but the Holy See submits to the Italian Government the name of the person to be appointed in order to obtain an assurance that the latter will not raise objections of a political nature.

Catholic religious teaching is given in elementary and intermediate schools. Marriages celebrated before a Catholic priest are automatically transferred to the civil register. Marriages celebrated by clergy of other denominations must be made valid before a registrar. In 1972 there were 279 dioceses with 28,154 parishes and 43,714 priests. There were 187,153 members (154,796 women) of about 20,000 religious houses.

In 1962 there were about 100,000 Protestants and about 50,000 Jews.

**Education.** Education is compulsory from 6 to 14 years of age. An optional pre-school education is given to the children between 3 and 5 years in the preparatory schools (kindergarten schools). Illiteracy of males over 6 years was 2.2% in 1981, of females 3.9%.

Compulsory education can be classified as primary education (5-year course) and junior secondary education (3-year course).

Senior secondary education is subdivided in classical (*ginnasio* and classical *liceo*), scientific (scientific *liceo*), language lyceum, professional institutes and technical education: agricultural, industrial, commercial, technical, nautical institutes, institutes for surveyors, institutes for girls (5-year course) and teacher-training institutes (4-year course).

University education is given in Universities and in University Higher Institutes (4, 5, 6 years, according to degree course).

Statistics for the academic year 1987-88:

<i>Elementary schools</i>		<i>No.</i>	<i>Pupils</i>
Kindergarten		28,406	1,586,850
Public elementary schools		24,275	3,107,008
Private elementary schools			
Private elementary recognized schools ( <i>parificate</i> )		2,368	263,701
<i>Government secondary schools</i>			<i>Total students</i>
Junior secondary schools		10,032	2,618,679
Classical lyceum		738	217,282
Lyceum for science		998	405,098
Language lyceum		368	49,091
Teachers' schools		196	25,105
Teachers' institutes		665	163,630
Professional institutes		1,698	521,078
Technical institutes, of which:			
Industrial institutes		611	326,103
Commercial institutes		1,236	635,144
Surveyors' institutes		515	152,152
Agricultural institutes		96	29,850
Nautical institutes		48	11,764
Technical institutes for tourism		40	20,305
Managerial institutes		153	49,865
Girls technical schools		73	27,216
Artistic studies		267	85,651

<i>Universities and higher institutes</i>	<i>Date of foundation</i>	<i>Students 1986-87</i>	<i>Teachers 1986-87</i>	<i>Universities and higher institutes</i>	<i>Date of foundation</i>	<i>Students 1986-87</i>	<i>Teachers 1986-87</i>
Ancona	1965	6,731	355	Napoli	1224	9,040	4,400
Arezzo	1971	1,062	91	Padova	1222	42,562	2,282
Bari	1924	56,245	1,874	Palermo	1805	38,887	2,215
Bergamo	1970	3,809	113	Parma	1502	14,020	997
Bologna	1200	60,479	3,106	Pavia	1390	18,627	1,283
Brescia	1970	6,484	268	Perugia	1276	17,741	1,197
Cagliari	1626	18,961	1,096	Pescara	1965	9,613	233
Camerino (Macerata)	1727	3,275	211	Piacenza	1924	629	93
Cassino (Frosinone)	1968	3,389	94	Pisa	1338	30,662	1,993
Catania	1434	31,274	1,467	Potenza	1983	1,532	227
Catanzaro	1983	5,994	108	Reggio di C.	1968	4,737	190
Chieti	1965	4,578	354	Roma	1303	169,791	6,841
Cosenza	1972	6,169	456	Salerno	1944	21,350	523
Feltre (Belluno)	1969	547	35	Sassari	1677	8,378	504
Ferrara	1391	4,632	496	Siena	1300	10,478	763
Firenze	1924	42,862	2,302	Teramo	1965	5,362	129
Genova	1243	31,036	1,784	Torino	1404	58,594	2,486
L'Aquila	1956	6,334	648	Trento	1965	4,862	339
Lecce	1959	7,252	336	Trieste	1924	13,974	939
Macerata	1290	4,922	156	Udine	1969	4,448	372
Messina	1549	28,603	1,568	Urbino	1564	13,924	484
Milano	1924	130,299	3,842	Venezia	1868	22,894	726
Modena	1678	7,445	654	Verona	1969	8,628	501
				Viterbo	1980	1,394	133

**Health.** In 1985 there were 237,579 doctors and 470,579 hospital beds.

**Social Security.** Social expenditure is made up of transfers which the central public departments, local departments and social security departments, make to families. Payment is principally for pensions, family allowances and health services. Expenditure on subsidies, public assistance to various classes of people and people injured by political events or national disasters are also included.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Italy in Great Britain (14 Three Kings Yard, London, W1Y 2EH)

*Ambassador:* Boris Biancheri (accredited 11 Nov. 1987).

Of Great Britain in Italy (Via XX Settembre 80A, 00187, Rome)

*Ambassador:* Sir Derek Thomas, KCMG.

Of Italy in the USA (1601 Fuller St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Rinaldo Petrignani.

Of the USA in Italy (Via Veneto 119/A, Rome)

*Ambassador:* Peter Secchia.

Of Italy to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Maurizio Bucci.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Istituto Centrale di Statistica (16 Via Cesare Balbo 00100 Rome) was set up by law of 9 July 1926 as the central institute in charge of census and all statistical information. *President:* Prof. Guido Mario Rey. *Director-General:* Vincenzo Siesto. Its publications include:

*Annuario statistico italiano.* 1987, *Compendio statistico italiano.* 1988, *Bollettino mensile di statistica.* Monthly, from 1950, *Statistiche industriali.* 1987, *Statistiche demografiche.* 1987, *Statistica agrarie.* 1984, *Statistico della navigazione marittima.* 1988, *Statistico del commercio interno.* 1988, *Statistica annuale del commercio con l'estero.* 1988, *Statistica del commercio con l'estero.* Quarterly, *Statistiche del lavoro.* 1986, *Censimento generale dell'agricoltura.* 1982, *Censimento generale della popolazione.* 1981. Vol. I, II and III, *Censimento generale dell'industria e del commercio.* 1981 *Sommario di statistiche storiche, 1926-1985.*



- Italy*. Documents and Notes. Servizi delle Informazioni, Rome. 1952 ff.
- Italian Books and Periodicals*. Bimonthly from 1958
- Banco di Roma, *Review of the Economic Condition in Italy* (in English). Bimonthly, 1947 ff.
- Credito Italiano, *The Italian Economic Situation*. Bimonthly. Milan, from June 1961 (in Italian), from June 1962 (in English)
- Compendio Economico Italiano*. Rome, Unione Italiana delle Camere di Commercio. Annually from 1954
- Clark, M., *Modern Italy 1871-1982*. London, 1984
- Finer, S. E. and Mastropaolo, A. (eds.), *The Italian Party System, 1945-80*. London, 1985
- Grindrod, M., *The Rebuilding of Italy, 1945-55*. R. Inst. of Int. Affairs, 1955
- Nichols, P., *Italia, Italia*. London, 1974
- Smith, D. M., *The Making of Italy 1796-1866*. London, 1988
- Spotts, F. and Wieser, T., *Italy: A Difficult Democracy*. CUP, 1986
- Woolfe, S. J. (ed.) *The Rebirth of Italy, 1943-50*. New York, 1972
- National Library*: Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale Vittorio Emanuele II Viale Castro Pretorio, Rome. Director: Dr L. M. Crisari.

# JAMAICA

*Capital:* Kingston

*Population:* 2.3m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,068 (1987)

**HISTORY.** Jamaica was discovered by Columbus in 1494, and was occupied by the Spaniards between 1509 and 1655, when the island was captured by the English; their possession was confirmed by the Treaty of Madrid, 1670. Self-government was introduced in 1944 and gradually extended until Jamaica achieved complete independence within the Commonwealth on 6 Aug. 1962.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island of Jamaica lies in the Caribbean Sea about 150 km south of Cuba. The area is 4,411 sq. miles (11,425 sq. km). The population at the census of 8 June 1982 was 2,095,878, distributed on the basis of the 14 parishes of the island as follows: Kingston and St Andrew, 565,487; St Thomas, 76,347; Portland, 70,787; St Mary, 101,442; St Ann, 132,475; Trelawny, 65,038; St James, 127,994; Hanover, 60,420; Westmoreland, 116,163; St Elizabeth, 132,353; Manchester, 136,517; St Catherine, 315,970; Clarendon, 194,885.

Chief towns (census, 1982): Kingston and St Andrew, 524,638, metropolitan area; Spanish Town, 89,097; Montego Bay, 70,265; May Pen, 40,962; Mandeville, 34,502.

Estimated population, in 1987, was 2.3m. The population is 76% of African ethnic origin, 3% European and 21% mixed and other groups.

Vital statistics (1987): Births, 52,300 (22.2 per 1,000 population); deaths, 12,400 (5.3); migration loss, 30,900.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate but with considerable variation. High temperatures on the coast are usually mitigated by sea breezes, while upland areas enjoy cooler and less humid conditions. Rainfall is plentiful over most of Jamaica, being heaviest in May and from Aug. to Nov. The island lies in the hurricane zone. Kingston. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 32" (800 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution of Aug. 1962 the Crown is represented by a Governor-General appointed by the Crown on the advice of the Prime Minister. The Governor-General is assisted by a Privy Council. The Legislature comprises two chambers, an elected House and a nominated Senate. The executive is chosen from both chambers.

The Executive comprises the Prime Minister, who is the leader of the majority party, and Ministers appointed by the Prime Minister. Together they form the Cabinet, which is the highest executive power. An Attorney-General is a member of the House and is legal adviser to the Cabinet.

The Senate consists of 21 senators appointed by the Governor-General, 13 on the advice of the Prime Minister, 8 on the advice of the Leader of the Opposition. The House of Representatives (60 members, Dec. 1976) is elected by universal adult suffrage for a period not exceeding 5 years. Electors and elected must be Jamaican or Commonwealth citizens resident in Jamaica for at least 12 months before registration. The powers and procedure of Parliament correspond to those of the British Parliament.

The Privy Council consists of 6 members appointed by the Governor-General in consultation with the Prime Minister.

*Governor-General:* Sir Florizel Glasspole, GCMG, GCVO.

*National flag:* A yellow diagonal cross dividing triangles of green, top and bottom, and black, hoist and fly.

The elections to the House of Representatives, held on 9 Feb. 1989, returned 45 members of the People's National Party and the Jamaica Labour Party, 15 seats.

The Cabinet in March 1989 was comprised as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Michael Manley.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Production and Planning:* P. J. Patterson, QC. *Foreign Affairs and Foreign Trade:* David Coore, QC. *Finance and The Public Service:* Seymour Mullings. *National Security:* K. D. Knight. *Justice and Attorney-General:* Carl Rattray, QC. *Education:* Carlyle Dunkley. *Health:* Easton Douglas. *Labour, Welfare and Sports:* Portia Simpson. *Construction:* O. D. Ramtallie. *Public Utilities and Transport:* Robert Pickersgill. *Agriculture:* Horace Clarke. *Local Government:* Ralph Brown. *Tourism:* Frank Pringle. *Mining and Energy:* Hugh Small, QC. *Industry and Commerce:* Claude Clarke. *Youth, Culture and Community Development:* Dr Douglas Manley. *Without Portfolio and Leader of the House (with special responsibility for Parliamentary Affairs):* Dr Ken McNeil. *Without Portfolio (Office of the Prime Minister):* Dr Paul Robertson.

There are 10 Ministers of State.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Jamaica Defence Force consists of a Regular and a Reserve Force. The Regular Force is comprised of the 1st battalion, Jamaica Regiment and Support Services which include the Air Wing and Coast Guard. The Reserve Force consists of the 3rd battalion, Jamaica Regiment. Total strength (all services, 1989), 2,500. Reserves, 750.

**Air Force.** The Air Wing of the Jamaica Defence Force was formed in July 1963 and has since been expanded and trained successively by the British Army Air Corps and Canadian air force personnel. Equipment for army liaison, search and rescue, police co-operation, survey and transport duties includes 2 Defender armed STOL transports; 1 Beech King Air and 1 Cessna 337 light transports; 4 JetRanger and 2 Bell 212 helicopters. Personnel (1989) 150.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Jamaica is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAS, CARICOM and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for fiscal years ending 31 March (in J\$1 m.):

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Revenue	2,623	3,207	4,467	5,429
Expenditure	2,849	4,529	5,631	6,509

The chief heads of recurrent revenue are income tax; consumption, customs and stamp duties. The other major share of current resources is generated by the Bauxite levy. Net external debt at 31 Dec. 1987, US\$4,013.6m.

**Currency.** The currency is the *dollar*, divided into 100 cents. Currency circulation at 30 June 1988 was J\$979.3m. In March 1989, £1 = J\$9.32; US\$1 = J\$5.42.

**Banking.** On 1 May 1961 the Bank of Jamaica opened as Jamaica's Central Bank. It has the sole right to issue notes and coins in Jamaica, acts as Banker to the Government and to the commercial banks, and administers the island's external reserves and exchange control.

There are 10 commercial banks with over 171 branches and agencies in operation, with main offices in Kingston. Six of these banks are subsidiaries of major British and North American banks, of which 4 are incorporated locally. The Workers' Savings and Loan Bank is owned by the Government, Trade Unions and the private sector. The National Commercial Bank (Jamaica) Ltd, formerly Barclays Bank Jamaica Ltd, is 49% government-owned. The other 8 banks which operate are: The Bank of Nova Scotia (Jamaica) Ltd, City Bank of North America, Mutual Security Bank (formerly Royal Bank Jamaica Ltd), Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce (formerly Bank of Commerce), Jamaica Citizens Bank Ltd, Eagle Commercial Bank, Bank of Credit and Commerce International and Century National Bank.



Total deposits in commercial banks, 30 June 1988, J\$7,756.9m., of which J\$1,852.7m. were time deposits and J\$4,029m. were savings.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The Jamaica Public Service Co. is the public supplier of electricity. The bauxite companies, sugar estates and the Caribbean Cement Co. and Goodyear generate their own electricity. Total installed capacity, 1988, 485.4 mw. Production (1987) 1,680m. kwh. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Bauxite, ceramic clays, marble, silica sand and gypsum are commercially viable. Jamaica has become the world's third largest producer of bauxite and alumina. The bauxite deposits are worked by a Canadian, an American and a Jamaican company. In 1987, 7.8m. tonnes of bauxite ore was mined; gypsum, 176,300 tonnes; marble, 500 tonnes; sand and gravel, 6.8m. cu. metres; industrial lime, 2.15m. cu. metres.

**Agriculture** (1987). Production: Sugar-cane, 1,963,000 tons; sugar, 186,000 tons; rum, 4,588,000 proof gallons; molasses, 71,600 tons; bananas, 34,000 tons; citrus fruit, 793,000 boxes; cocoa, 2,600 tons; spices, 2,355 tons; copra, 3,016 short tons; domestic food crops, 482,473 short tons.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 290,000; goats, 440,000; pigs, 246,000; poultry, 5m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Three bauxite-mining companies also process bauxite into alumina; production, 1987, 1.6m. tonnes. From processing only a few agricultural products—sugar, rum, condensed milk, oils and fats, cigars and cigarettes—the island is now producing clothing, footwear, textiles, paints, building materials (including cement), agricultural machinery and toilet articles. There is an oil refinery in Kingston. In 1987 manufacturing contributed J\$3,505.9m. to the total GDP at current prices.

**Labour.** Average total labour force (1987), 1,069,000, of whom 845,400 were employed. Government and other services employed 228,950; agriculture, forestry and fishing, 272,000; manufacturing, 131,350; construction and installation, 39,550.

**Commerce.** Value of imports and domestic exports for calendar years (in US\$1m.):

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	1,183	1,144	969	1,216
Domestic exports	731	535	566	676

Principal imports in 1986 (in US\$1m.): Minerals, fuels, lubricants and related materials, 199.1 (20.5%), with imports of 56.9 from USA and 72.4 from Venezuela; food, 166.2 (17.1%), with 101 from USA; machinery and transport equipment, 174.8 (18%); manufactured goods, 166.9 (17.2%).

Principal domestic exports in 1986 (in US\$1m.): Crude materials, 300.9 (50.5%), of which alumina, 205.4 (34.5%) and bauxite, 90.1 (15.1%), with crude materials exports of 90.2 to USA, 84.2 to Canada and 29.4 to UK; food, 135 (22.7%), of which sugar, 62.3 (10.5%), with food exports of 84.4 to UK and 25.3 to USA; miscellaneous manufactures, 65.6 (11%).

Total trade between Jamaica and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	77,895	89,684	87,416	85,655	89,693
Exports and re-exports from UK	48,088	44,290	43,378	54,644	48,855

**Tourism.** In 1987, 1,037,634 tourists arrived in Jamaica, spending about US\$595m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads** (1987). The island has 7,826 miles of main roads, and over 2,874 miles of parochial and subsidiary roads. Main roads are constructed and maintained by the

Ministry of Construction (Works), while other roads are constructed and maintained by parish councils. In 1987 there were 71,742 licensed vehicles.

**Railways.** There are 294 km of railway open of 1,435 mm gauge, operated by the Jamaica Railway Corporation, which also operates 31 km (Alcoa Mineral Railway) on behalf of one of the bauxite companies. In 1987 the railway carried 30,820 tonnes and 1.27m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Scheduled commercial international airlines operate through the Norman Manley and Sangster international airports at Palisadoes and Montego Bay. In 1987 Norman Manley airport had 27,729 aircraft movements, handled 1.15m. passengers and 20,900 tonnes of freight. Sangster had 28,611 movements, with 1.7m. passengers and 5,247 tonnes of freight. Trans-Jamaica Airlines Ltd operates internal flights; in 1987 it carried 37,600 passengers. Air Jamaica, originally set up in conjunction with BOAC and BWIA in 1966, became a new company, Air Jamaica (1968) Ltd, and is affiliated to Air Canada. In 1969 it began operations as Jamaica's national airline. In 1987 Air Jamaica carried 1.18m. passengers.

**Shipping.** In 1987 there were 2,091 visits to all ports; 11.75m. tons of cargo were handled. Kingston had 1,273 visits and handled 4m. tons. The outports had 818 visits and handled 7.75m. tons, of which 6.16m. was loaded and 1.59m. landed.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 317 post offices and 505 postal agencies and sub-agencies. In Dec. 1987 there were 160,918 telephones.

There was (1987) 1 commercial and 1 publicly owned broadcasting stations; the latter also operates a television service.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there were 34 cinemas and 2 drive-in cinemas.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Judicature comprises a Supreme Court, a court of appeal, resident magistrates' courts, petty sessional courts, coroners' courts, a traffic court and a family court which was instituted in 1975. The Chief Justice is head of the judiciary. All prosecutions are initiated by the Director of Public Prosecutions.

**Police.** The Constabulary Force in 1987 stood at approximately 5,461 officers, sub-officers and constables (men and women).

**Religion.** Freedom of worship is guaranteed under the Constitution. The main Christian denominations are Anglican, Baptist, Roman Catholic, Methodist, Church of God, United Church of Jamaica, and Grand Cayman (Presbyterian-Congregational) Moravian, Seventh-Day Adventists, Pentecostal, Salvation Army, Quaker, and Disciples of Christ. Pocomania is a mixture of Christianity and African survivals. Non-Christians include Hindus, Jews, Moslems and Bahai followers. There is also a growing number of Rastafarians who believe in the deity of the late Emperor Hailé Selassié of Ethiopia.

**Education.** In Sept. 1973 education became free for all government grant-aided schools (the majority of all schools) and for all Jamaicans entering the University of the West Indies, the College of Arts, Science and Technology and the Jamaica School of Agriculture. In 1986-87 there were 1,585 pre-primary schools and departments (122,380 pupils); 293 primary schools (173,351 pupils); 492 all-age schools (159,285 pupils).

There were 141 secondary and vocational schools (167,228). Teacher-training colleges had 2,663 students; community colleges had 6,977; the College of Arts, Science and Technology had 3,654; the College of Agriculture, 208 and the University of the West Indies, 4,634.

**Health.** In 1987 the public health service had 4,187 staff in medicine, nursing and pharmacology; 311 in dentistry; 343 public health inspectors; 57 in nutrition. In 1987 there were 361 primary health centres, 5,472 public hospital beds and 305 private beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Jamaica in Great Britain (63 St James's St., London, SW1A 1LS)  
*Acting High Commissioner:* Douglas Saunders.

Of Great Britain in Jamaica (Trafalgar Rd., Kingston 10)  
*High Commissioner:* Derek Milton.

Of Jamaica in the USA (1850 K. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20006)  
*Ambassador:* Keith Johnson.

Of the USA in Jamaica (2 Oxford Rd., Kingston 5)  
*Ambassador:* Michael G. Sotirhos.

Of Jamaica to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Lloyd M. H. Barnett.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Department of Statistics, now Statistical Institute of Jamaica (25 Dominica Dr., Kingston), was set up in 1945—the nucleus being the Census Office, which undertook the operations of the 1943 Census of Jamaica and its Dependencies. *Director:* Vernon James. Publications of the Bureau include the *Bulletin of Statistics on External Trade* and the *Annual Abstract of Statistics*.

*Economic and Social Survey, Jamaica.* Planning Institute of Jamaica, Kingston (Annual)  
*Social and Economic Studies.* Institute of Social and Economic Research, Univ. of the West Indies. Quarterly

*A Review of the Performance of the Jamaican Economy 1981–1983.* Jamaica Information Service, 1985

*Quarterly Economic Report.* Planning Institute of Jamaica, Kingston

Beckford, G. and Witter, M., *Small Garden ... Bitter Weed. The Political Struggle and Change in Jamaica.* 2nd ed. London, 1982

Cassidy, F. G. and Le Page, R. B., *Dictionary of Jamaican English.* CUP, 1966

Floyd, B., *Jamaica: An Island Microcosm.* London, 1979

Goulbourne, H., *Teachers, Education and Politics in Jamaica, 1892–1972.* London, 1988

Ingram, K. E., *Jamaica.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Manley, M., *A Voice at the Work Place.* London, 1975.—*Jamaica: Struggle in the Periphery.* London, 1983

Payne, A. J., *Politics in Jamaica.* London and New York, 1988

Post, K., *Strike the Iron, A Colony at War: Jamaica 1939–1945.* 2 vols. Atlantic Highlands, N.J., 1981

Sherlock, P., *Keeping Company with Jamaica.* London, 1984

Stephens, E. H. and Stephens, J. D., *Democratic Socialism in Jamaica.* London, 1986

Stone, C., *Class, Race and Political Behaviour in Urban Jamaica.* Kingston, 1973.

—*Democracy and Clientalism in Jamaica.* London and New Brunswick, N.J., 1981

*Bibliography of Jamaica, 1900–1963.* Jamaica Library Service, 1963

*Libraries:* National Library of Jamaica, Kingston. Jamaica Library Service, Kingston.



# JAPAN

*Capital:* Tokyo

*Population:* 122.26m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$14,039 (1986)

## Nippon (or Nihon)

**HISTORY.** The house of Yamato, from about 500 B.C. the rulers of one of several kingdoms, in about A.D. 200 united the nation; the present imperial family are their direct descendants. From 1186 until 1867 successive families of Shoguns exercised the temporal power. In 1867 the Emperor Meiji recovered the imperial power after the abdication on 14 Oct. 1867 of the fifteenth and last Tokugawa Shogun Keiki (in different pronunciation: Yoshinobu). In 1871 the feudal system (Hoken Seido) was abolished; this was the beginning of the rapid westernization.

At San Francisco on 8 Sept. 1951 a Treaty of Peace was signed by Japan and representatives of 48 countries. For details *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1953, p. 1169. On 26 Oct. 1951 the Japanese Diet ratified the Treaty by 307 votes to 47 votes with 112 abstentions. On the same day the Diet ratified a Security Treaty with the US by 289 votes to 71 votes with 106 abstentions. The treaty provided for the stationing of American troops in Japan until she was able to undertake her own defence. The peace treaty came into force on 28 April 1952, when Japan regained her sovereignty. In 1960 Japan signed the Japan-US Mutual Security Treaty, valid for 10 years, which was renewed in 1970. Of the islands under US administration since 1945, the Bonin (Ogasawara), Volcano, and Daito groups and Marcus Island were returned to Japan in 1968, and the southern Ryukyu Islands (Okinawa) in 1972.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Japan consists of 4 major islands, Honshu, Hokkaido, Kyushu and Shikoku, and many small islands, with an area of 377,815 sq. km. Census population (1 Oct. 1985) 121,047,196 (males 59,495,663, females 61,551,553). Estimate (1987) 122,264,000 (males 60,091,000, females 62,173,000). Foreigners registered 31 Dec. 1987 were 884,025, of whom 673,787 were Koreans, 95,477 Chinese, 30,836 Americans, 25,017 Filipinos, 7,754 British, 4,381 Vietnamese, 3,817 Thais, 3,194 West Germans, 2,943 Canadians, 2,587 French, 2,585 Indians, 1,674 stateless persons.

Japanese overseas, Oct. 1986, 498,196; of these 159,360 lived in USA, 117,474 in Brazil, 22,031 in UK, 17,668 in Canada, 17,402 in the Federal Republic of Germany, 15,755 in Argentina, 13,922 in France, 9,356 in Hong Kong, 8,331 in Singapore.

The areas, populations and chief cities of the principal islands (and regions) are:

<i>Island/Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1986</i>	<i>Chief cities</i>
Hokkaido	83,519	5,678,000	Sapporo
Honshu/Tohoku	66,971	9,737,000	Sendai
/Kanto	32,377	37,156,000	Tokyo
/Chubu	66,774	20,694,000	Nagoya
/Kinki	33,070	21,932,000	Osaka
/Chugoku	31,881	7,764,000	Hiroshima
Shikoku	18,806	4,226,000	Matsuyama
Kyushu	42,150	13,295,000	Fukuoka
Okinawa	2,254	1,190,000	Naha

The leading cities, with population, 31 March 1987 (in 1,000), are:

Akashi	261	Fukuyama	362	Ibaraki	249
Akita	294	Funabashi	508	Ichinomiya	257
Amagasaki	500	Gifu	409	Ichikawa	405
Aomori	293	Hachioji	425	Iwaki	356
Asahikawa	363	Hakodate	314	Kagoshima	525
Chiba	793	Hamamatsu	518	Kanazawa	421
Fujisawa	333	Higashiosaka	503	Kashiwa	282
Fukui	248	Himeji	451	Kasugai	258
Fukuoka	1,142	Hirakata	383	Kawagoe	285
Fukushima	270	Hiroshima	1,034	Kawaguchi	409

Kawasaki	1,096	Naha	309	Suita	343
Kitakyushu	1,042	Nara	334	Takamatsu	326
Kobe	1,413	Neyagawa	257	Takatsuki	350
Kochi	310	Niigata	467	Tokorozawa	283
Koriyama	302	Nishinomiya	412	Tokushima	256
Koshigaya	264	Oita	389	Tokyo	8,209
Kumamoto	550	Okayama	570	Toyama	314
Kurashiki	415	Okazaki	287	Toyohashi	323
Kyoto	1,469	Omiya	377	Toyonaka	407
Machida	329	Osaka	2,546	Toyota	311
Maebashi	279	Sagamihara	489	Urawa	383
Matsudo	431	Sakai	808	Utsunomiya	412
Matsuyama	430	Sapporo	1,555	Wakayama	402
Miyazaki	280	Sasebo	250	Yao	270
Nagano	339	Sendai	686	Yokkaichi	266
Nagasaki	447	Shimonoseki	261	Yokohama	3,072
Nagoya	2,091	Shizuoka	468	Yokosuka	429

Vital statistics (in 1,000) for calendar years:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Births	1,577	1,529	1,515	1,509	1,490	1,432	1,383
Deaths	723	720	712	740	740	752	751

Crude birth rate of Japanese nationals in present area, 1986, was 11.4 per 1,000 population (1947: 34.3); crude death rate, 6.2; crude marriage rate, 5.9; infant mortality rate per 1,000 live births, 5.2.

**CLIMATE.** The islands of Japan lie in the temperate zone, north-east of the main monsoon region of S.E. Asia. The climate is temperate with warm, humid summers and relatively mild winters except in the island of Hokkaido and northern parts of Honshu facing the Japan Sea. There is a month's rainy season in June-July, but the best seasons are spring and autumn, though Sept. may bring typhoons. There is a summer rainfall maximum. Tokyo. Jan. 40.5°F (4.7°C), July 77.4°F (25.2°C). Annual rainfall 63" (1,460 mm). Hiroshima. Jan. 39.7°F (4.3°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 61" (1,603 mm). Nagasaki. Jan. 43.5°F (6.4°C), July 79.7°F (26.5°C). Annual rainfall 77" (2,002 mm). Osaka. Jan. 42.1°F (5.6°C), July 80.6°F (27°C). Annual rainfall 53" (1,400 mm). Sapporo. Jan. 23.2°F (-4.9°C), July 68.4°F (20.2°C). Annual rainfall 47" (1,158 mm).

**EMPEROR.** The Emperor bears the title of Nihon-koku Tenno' ('Emperor of Japan'). **Akihito**, born in Tokyo, 23 Dec. 1933; succeeded his father, Hirohito, 7 Jan. 1989; married 10 April 1959, to Michiko Shoda, born 20 Oct. 1934. *Offspring:* Crown Prince Naruhito (Hironomiya), born 23 Feb. 1960; Prince Fumihito (Ayanomiya), born 30 Nov. 1965; Princess Sayako (Norinomiya), born 18 April 1969.

By the Imperial House Law of 11 Feb. 1889, revised on 16 Jan. 1947, the succession to the throne was fixed upon the male descendants.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Japan's Government is based upon the Constitution of 1947 which superseded the Meiji Constitution of 1889. In it the Japanese people pledge themselves to uphold the ideas of democracy and peace. The Emperor is the symbol of the States and of the unity of the people. Sovereign power rests with the people. The Emperor has no powers related to government. Japan renounces war as a sovereign right and the threat or the use of force as a means of settling disputes with other nations. Fundamental human rights are guaranteed.

*National flag:* White, with a red disc.

*National anthem:* Kimi ga yo wa (words 9th century, tune by Hiromori Hayashi, 1881).

Legislative power rests with the Diet, which consists of the House of Representatives (of 512 members), elected by men and women over 20 years of age for a 4-year term, and the House of Councillors of 252 members (100 elected by party list system with proportional representation according to the d'Hondt method and 152 from prefectural districts), one-half of its members being elected every 3 years. The Lower House controls the budget and approves treaties with foreign powers.

The former House of Peers is replaced by the House of Councillors, whose members, like those of the House of Representatives, are elected as representatives of all the people. The House of Representatives has pre-eminence over the House of Councillors.

On 21 Dec. 1988 the House of Representatives consisted of 298 Liberal Democrats, 85 Socialists, 56 Komeito, 29 Democratic Socialists, 27 Japan Communist Party, and 6 Independents.

The Cabinet, as constituted in Jan. 1989, was as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Noboru Takeshita.

*Justice:* Masami Takatsuji.

*Foreign Affairs:* Sousuke Uno.

*Finance:* Tatsuo Murayama.

*Education:* Takeo Nisheoka.

*Health and Welfare:* Junichiro Koizumi.

*Agriculture, Forestry and Fishery:* Tsutomu Hata.

*Trade and Industry:* Hiroshi Mitsuzuka.

*Transport:* Shinji Sato.

*Postal Service:* Seiichi Kataoka.

*Labour:* Hyosuke Niwa.

*Construction:* Hikosaburo Okonogi.

*Home Affairs:* Shigenobu Sakano.

*Local Government.* The country is divided into 47 prefectures (*Todofuken*), including Tokyo-to (the capital), Osaka-fu and Kyoto-fu, Hokkai-do, and 43 *Ken*. Each *Todofuken* has its governor (*Chiji*) elected by the voters in the area. The prefectural government of Tokyo-to is also responsible for the urban part (formerly Tokyo-shi) of the prefecture. Each prefecture, city, town and village has a representative assembly elected by the same franchise as in parliamentary elections.

New legislation, which came into effect on 1 July 1954, has given the central government complete control of the police throughout the country.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The 'Ground Self-Defence Force' had in 1989 an authorized strength of 156,000 uniformed personnel, plus a reserve of 45,000 men. The Army is organized in 12 infantry divisions, 1 armoured division, 1 airborne brigade, 2 air defence brigades, 1 artillery, 5 engineer, 1 signal, 2 combined and 1 helicopter brigades in addition to 4 anti-aircraft artillery groups. Equipment includes 1,180 tanks, approximately 400 anti-tank transport, observation and training helicopters, plus about 19 fixed-wing aircraft.

The Northern Army, stationed in Hokkaido, consists of 4 divisions (1 of which is armoured), an artillery brigade, an anti-aircraft artillery brigade, a tank group and an engineering brigade. The Western Army, stationed in Kyushu, consists of 2 divisions and 1 combined brigade. The North-Eastern Army (2 divisions), the Eastern Army (2 divisions and 1 airborne brigade), the Middle Army (3 divisions and 1 combined brigade). The infantry division establishment is approximately 9,000 with 4 infantry regiments or 7,000 (lower establishment) with 3 infantry regiments. Each infantry division has an artillery regiment, an anti-tank unit, a tank battalion and an engineering battalion in addition to administrative units.

**Navy.** The 'Maritime Self-Defence Force' comprises 52 destroyers including 2 training and 8 converted, 16 frigates, 14 submarines, 39 mine warfare vessels, 5 motor torpedo boats, 9 patrol boats, 8 landing ships, 4 survey vessels, 2 auxiliary oilers, 33 auxiliary ships, 2 submarine rescue vessels, 1 ice breaker, 3 training vessels, and 311 support ships.



The Fleet Air Arm, numbering 7 air wings, includes 79 patrol aircraft and flying boats for anti-submarine patrol, 66 trainers and 74 helicopters plus transports, rescue planes and others.

Personnel in 1988 numbered 47,500 officers and ratings including the Naval Air Arm. There are also 4,150 in civil maritime defence.

**Air Force.** An 'Air Self-Defence Force' was inaugurated on 1 July 1954. In 1988 its equipment included 5 interceptor squadrons of F-15J/DI Eagles (total of 142 aircraft to be acquired by 1990) and 5 of F-4EJ Phantoms; 3 squadrons of Mitsubishi F-1 close-support fighters; 1 squadron of RF-4E reconnaissance fighters; 8 E-2C Hawkeye AWACS aircraft; ECM flight with 2 YS-11Es; 3 squadrons of turboprop Kawasaki C-1 and turboprop C-130H Hercules and NAMC YS-11 transports. About 55 helicopters, mostly KV-107s (to be replaced with CH-47 Chinooks), and MU-2 twin-turboprop aircraft perform search, rescue and general duties. Training units use piston-engined Fuji T-3 basic trainers, Fuji T-1 jet intermediate trainers, T-33 jet trainers and supersonic Mitsubishi T-2 jet advanced trainers. The T-33s will be replaced with Kawasaki T-4s from 1989. Six surface-to-air missile groups (19 squadrons) are in service. Total strength (1989) about 309 combat aircraft and 45,000 officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Japan is a member of UN, the Colombo Plan and OECD.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1988-92 Plan envisages an onward real growth rate of 3.75% and a nominal 4.75%. The real growth rate for 1989 is envisaged at 4% and the nominal 5.2%.

**Budget.** Ordinary revenue and expenditure for fiscal year ending 31 March 1989 balanced at 56,699,700m. yen.

Of the proposed revenue in 1988, 45,090,000m. was to come from taxes and stamps, 884,100m. from public bonds. Main items of expenditure: Social security, 10,384,500m.; public works, 6,082,400m.; local government, 10,905,600m.; education, 4,858,100m.; defence, 3,700,300m.

The outstanding national debt incurred by public bonds was estimated in March 1987 to be 147,326,700m. yen, including 700m. yen of Japan's foreign currency bonds.

The estimated 1988 budgets of the prefectures and other local authorities forecast a total revenue of 57,820,000m. yen, to be made up partly by local taxes and partly by government grants and local loans.

**Currency.** Coins of 1, 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500 *yen* are in circulation as well as notes of the Bank of Japan, of 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *yen*. Bank-notes for 500 *yen* are still in circulation but are gradually being replaced by coins. In March 1989, £1 = 221.75 *yen*; US\$1 = 128.85 *yen*.

In Dec. 1987 the currency in circulation consisted of 29,186,800m. yen Bank of Japan notes and 2,739,900m. yen subsidiary coins.

**Banking.** The modern banking system dates from 1872. The Nippon Ginko (Bank of Japan) was founded in 1882. The Bank of Japan has undertaken to finance the Government and the banks; its function is similar to that of a Central Bank in other countries. The Bank undertakes the actual management of Treasury funds and foreign exchange control.

Gold bullion and cash holdings of the Bank of Japan at 31 Dec. 1987 stood at 384,000m. yen.

There were on 31 Dec. 1987, 13 city banks, 64 regional banks, 7 trust banks, 3 long-term credit banks, 68 Sogo banks (mutual savings and loan banks), 455 Shinkin banks (credit associations), 443 credit co-operatives, and 81 foreign banks. There are also various governmental financial institutions, including postal savings which amounted to 121,215,400m. yen in Sept. 1988. Total savings by individuals,

including insurance and securities, stood at 606,663,500m. yen on 30 Sept. 1988, and about 62% of these savings were deposited in banks and the post-office.

Many foreign banks operate branches in Japan including: Bank of Indo-China, Hongkong & Shanghai Banking Corporation, Chartered Bank of India, Australia and China, Bank of India, Mercantile Bank of India, Bank of Korea, Bank of China, Algemene Bank Nederland NV, National Handelsbank NV, Bank of America, National City Bank of New York, Chase Manhattan Bank, Bangkok Bank and American Express Co.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was made obligatory by a law passed in March 1921, and the period of grace for its compulsory use ended on 1 April 1966.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1986 generating facilities were capable of an output of 173,808,000 kw.; electricity produced was 676,352m. kwh. Supply 100 and 200 volts; 50 or 60 Hz.

**Oil and Gas.** Output of crude petroleum, 1988, was 650,000 tonnes, almost entirely from oilfields on the island of Honshu, but 194,515,000 tonnes crude oil had to be imported. Output of natural gas, 1986, 2,105m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Ore production in tonnes, 1986, of chromite, 10,642; coal, 16,012,000; iron, 290,573; zinc, 222,071; manganese, 5,905; copper, 34,924; lead, 40,327; tungsten, 1,938; silver, 351,270 kg.; gold, 10,280 kg.

**Agriculture.** Agricultural workers in 1987 were 6,177,000, including 558,000 subsidiary and seasonal workers; 8.4% (1985) of the labour force as opposed to 24.7% in 1962. The arable land area in 1987 was 5,340,000 hectares (5,796,000 in 1970). Division of ordinary fields to non-agricultural use accounted largely for this decrease. Rice cultivation accounted for 2,303,000 hectares in 1986. The area planted with industrial crops such as rapeseed, tobacco, tea, rush, etc., was 254,000 hectares in 1986.

In 1987 there were 4,586,000 power cultivators and tractors in use together with 2,151,000 (1985) power sprayers and power dusters and 2,179,000 rice power planters.

Output of rice was 10.27m. tonnes in 1982, 10,366,000 in 1983, 11,878,000 in 1984, 11,662,000 in 1985 and 11,647,000 in 1986.

Production in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes) of barley was 353; wheat, 864; soybeans (1986), 245. Sweet potatoes, which in the past mitigated the effects of rice famines, have, in view of rice over-production, decreased from 4,955,000 tonnes in 1965 to 1,507,000 tons in 1986. Domestic sugar-beet and sugar-cane production accounted for only 33.1% of requirement in 1986. In 1986, 1,819,000 tonnes were imported, 31.7% of this being imported from Cuba, 25.8% from Australia, 21.5% from Thailand, 18.3% from South Africa.

Fruit production, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Mandarins, 2,168; apples, 986; pears, 490; grapes, 302; peaches, 219; and persimmons, 291.

Livestock (1987): 4,694,000 cattle (including about 2m. milch cows), 22,000 horses, 11,354,000 pigs, 27,000 sheep, 48,000 goats, 343m. chickens. Milk (1986), 7.46m. tonnes.

**Forestry.** Forests and grasslands cover about 25m. hectares (nearly 70% of the whole land area), with an estimated timber stand of 2,716m. cu. metres in 1984. In 1985, 42,067,000 cu. metres were felled.

**Fisheries.** Before the War, Japanese catch represented one-half to two-thirds of the world's total fishing, in 1985 it was 13.5%. The catch in 1986 was 12.74m. tonnes, excluding whaling.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Japan's industrial equipment, 1985, numbered 749,366 plants of all sizes, employing 11,543,000 production workers.

Since 1920 there has been a shift from light to heavy industries. The production of electrical appliances and electronic machinery has made great strides: television sets (1986: 13,885,000), radio sets (1986: 13,204,000), cameras (1987: 16,661,000), computing machines and automation equipment are produced in increasing quantities. The chemical industry ranks third in production value after machinery and metals (1985). Production, 1986, included (in tonnes): Sulphuric acid, 6,562,000; caustic soda, 2,984,000; ammonium sulphate, 1,783,000; calcium superphosphate, 513,000.

Output (1986), in 1,000 tonnes, of pig iron was 74,651; crude steel, 98,275; ordinary rolled steel, 78,136.

In 1986 paper production was 12,272,000 tonnes; paperboard, 8,790,000 tonnes.

Japan's textile industry before the War had 13m. cotton-yarn spindles. After the War she resumed with 2.78m. spindles; in 1964, 8.42m. spindles were operating. Output of cotton yarn, 1986, 445,000 tonnes, and of cotton cloth, 1,974m. sq. metres.

In wool, Japan aims at wool exports sufficient to pay for the imports of raw wool. Output, 1986, 112,000 tonnes of woollen yarns and 313m. sq. metres of woollen fabrics.

Output, 1986, of rayon woven fabrics, 640m. sq. metres; synthetic woven fabrics, 2,859m. sq. metres; silk fabrics, 108m. sq. metres.

Shipbuilding has been decreasing and in 1986, 7,646,000 gross tons were launched, of which 2,047,000 GRT were tankers.

**Labour.** Total labour force, 1987, was 59.11m., of which 4.5m. were in agriculture and forestry, 430,000 in fishing, 80,000 in mining, 5.33m. in construction, 14.25m. in manufacturing, 16m. in commerce and finance, 3.79m. in transport and other public utilities, 12.55m. in services (including the professions) and 1.98m. in government work.

In 1987 there were 12,272,000 workers organized in 73,138 unions. The largest federation is the 'General Council of Japanese Trade Unions' (Sohyo) with 4,068,000 members. The 'Japanese Confederation of Labour' (Domei Kaigi) had 2,093,000 members. The 'Federation of Independent Unions' (Churitsu Roren) founded in 1956 had 1,643,000 members.

In 1987, 1.73m. (2.8%) were unemployed. In 1987, 256,000 working days were lost in industrial stoppages.

#### Commerce. Trade (in US\$1m.)

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	152,030	138,831	126,393	136,503	129,539	126,408	149,515
Exports	143,289	131,931	146,927	170,114	175,638	209,151	229,221

#### Distribution of trade by countries (customs clearance basis) (US\$1m.):

	Exports		Imports	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
Africa	3,533	4,757	3,585	3,694
Australia	5,227	5,146	6,980	7,869
Canada	5,526	5,611	4,895	6,073
China	9,856	8,256	5,652	7,401
Fed. Rep. of Germany	10,477	12,833	4,298	6,150
Hong Kong	7,161	8,872	1,073	1,561
Latin America	9,494	8,760	6,194	6,355
South-east Asia	41,788	52,982	29,489	38,627
Korea, Republic of	10,475	13,229	5,292	8,075
Taiwan	7,852	11,346	4,691	7,128
USSR	3,150	2,563	1,972	2,352
UK	6,647	8,400	3,573	3,057
USA	80,456	83,580	29,054	31,490

#### Principal items in 1987, with value in 1m. yen were:

Imports, c.i.f.		Exports, f.o.b.	
Mineral fuels	5,706,000	Machinery and transport equipment	24,866,000
Foodstuffs	3,254,000	Metals and metal products	2,617,000
Metal ores and scrap	889,000	Textile products	1,005,000
Machinery and transport equipment	2,777,000	Chemicals	1,695,000



Total trade between Japan and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,768,019	4,117,024	4,932,497	5,463,116	6,509,137
Exports and re-exports from UK	925,311	1,012,436	1,193,933	1,495,111	1,742,747

**Tourism.** In 1987, 2,161,275 foreigners visited Japan, 479,891 of whom came from USA, 144,463 from UK. Japanese travelling abroad totalled 6,829,338 in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The total length of roads (including urban and other local roads) was 1,127,405 km at 1 April 1986; the 'national' roads extended 46,544 km, of which 45,199 km were paved. Motor vehicles, at 31 Dec. 1987, numbered 48,875,000, including 29,478,000 passenger cars and 19,162,000 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** The first railway was completed in 1872, between Tokyo and Yokohama (29 km). From 1 April 1987 the National Railways organization was disbanded and replaced by six regional operating authorities, plus separate companies for the Shinkansen (high-speed) and freight networks prior to privatization. Total length of railways, in March 1986, was 26,620 km, of which the national railways had 20,789 km (9,109 km electrified) and private railways, 5,831 km (4,943 km electrified). In 1986 the national railways carried 7,104m. passengers (private, 12,309m.) and 62m. tons of freight (private, 28m.). An undersea tunnel linking Honshu with Hokkaido was opened to rail services in 1988.

**Aviation.** The principal airlines are Japan Airlines and All Nippon Airways. Japan Airlines, founded in 1953, operate international services from Tokyo to the USA, Europe, the Middle East and Southeast Asia, including flights to London over the North Pole and to Moscow by way of Siberia. In 1986 Japanese companies carried 46,365,000 passengers in domestic services and 7,200,000 passengers in international services.

**Shipping.** On 30 June 1987 the merchant fleet consisted of 8,250 vessels of 100 gross tons and over; total tonnage 33m. gross tons; there were 713 ships for passenger transport (1,259,000 gross tons), 2,716 cargo ships (1,621,000 gross tons) and 1,288 oil tankers (10,416,000 gross tons).

**Coastguard.** The 'Maritime Safety Agency' (Coastguard) consists of 11 regional MS headquarters, 65 MS offices, 52 MS stations, 14 air stations, 1 special rescue station, 8 district communications centres, 2 traffic advisory service centres, 4 hydrographic observatories and 124 navigation aids offices (with 4,992 navigation aids facilities) and controls 44 large patrol vessels, 47 medium patrol vessels, 19 small patrol vessels, 231 patrol craft, 22 hydrographic service vessels, 5 firefighting vessels, 10 firefighting boats, 67 guard and rescue boats and 79 navigation aids service supply vessels. Personnel in 1987 numbered 12,047 officers and men.

The Coastguard aviation service includes 22 fixed-wing aircraft and 38 helicopters.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The telephone services, operated by a private company (NTT) since April 1985. In 1986 there were 46,325,000 instruments.

On 31 March 1987, 98.7% of all households owned colour television sets.

**Cinemas** (1987). Cinemas numbered 2,053 with an annual attendance of 144m. (1960: 1,014m.).

**Newspapers** (1986). Daily newspapers numbered 124 with aggregate circulation of 68,653,000, including 4 major English-language newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court is composed of the Chief Justice and 14 other judges. The Chief Justice is appointed by the Emperor, the other judges by the Cabinet. Every 10 years a justice must submit himself to the electorate. All justices and judges of the lower courts serve until they are 70 years of age.

Below the Supreme Court are 8 regional higher courts, district courts (*Chihosai-bansho*) in each prefecture (4 in Hokkaido) and the local courts.

The Supreme Court is authorized to declare unconstitutional any act of the Legislature or the Executive which violates the Constitution.

**Religion.** There has normally been religious freedom, but Shinto (literally, The Way of the Gods) was given the status of *quasi*-state-religion in the 1930s; in 1945 the Allied Supreme Command ordered the Government to discontinue state support of Shinto. State subsidies have ceased for all religions, and all religious teachings are forbidden in public schools.

In Dec. 1986 Shintoism claimed 107,576,000 adherents, Buddhism 92,947,000; these figures obviously overlap. Christians numbered 1,439,000.

**Education.** Education is compulsory and free between the ages of 6 and 15. Almost all national and municipal institutions are co-educational. On 1 May 1987 there were 15,060 kindergartens with 98,905 teachers and 2,016,224 pupils; 24,024 elementary schools with 448,977 teachers and 10,226,323 pupils; 11,132 junior high schools with 292,057 teachers and 6,081,330 pupils; 5,322 senior high schools with 274,913 teachers and 5,375,107 pupils; 561 junior colleges with 18,774 teachers and 437,641 pupils.

There were also 831 special schools for handicapped children (41,120 teachers, 96,028 pupils).

Japan has 7 main state universities, formerly known as the Imperial Universities: Tokyo University (1877); Kyoto University (1897); Tohoku University, Sendai (1907); Kyushu University, Fukuoka (1910); Hokkaido University, Sapporo (1918); Osaka University (1931), and Nagoya University (1939). In addition, there are various other state and municipal as well as private universities of high standing, such as Keio (founded in 1859), Waseda, Rikkyo, Meiji universities, and several women's universities, among which Tokyo and Ochanomizu are most notable. There are 474 colleges and universities with (1 May 1987) 1,934,483 students and 115,863 teachers.

**Social Welfare.** Hospitals at the end of 1986 numbered 9,699 with 1,533,887 beds. Physicians at the end of 1986 numbered 191,346; dentists, 66,797.

There are in force various types of social security schemes, such as health insurance, unemployment insurance and old-age pensions. The total population come under one or more of these schemes.

In 1986 16,177,955 persons and 8,956,257 households received some form of regular public assistance, the total of which came to 1,529,982m. yen.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Japan in Great Britain (46 Grosvenor St., London, W1X 0BA)

*Ambassador:* Kazuo Chiba.

Of Great Britain in Japan (1 Ichiban-cho, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 102)

*Ambassador:* Sir John Whitehead, KCMG, CVO.

Of Japan in the USA (2520 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Nobuo Matsunaga.

Of the USA in Japan (10-1, Akasaka 1-chome, Minato-Ku, Tokyo)

*Ambassador:* Michael Armacost.

Of Japan to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Hideo Kagami.

## Further Reading

Statistics Bureau of the Prime Minister's Office: *Statistical Year-Book* (from 1949).—*Statistical Abstract* (from 1950).—*Statistical Handbook of Japan 1977*.—*Monthly Bulletin* (from April 1950)

Economic Planning Agency: *Economic Survey* (annual), *Economic Statistics* (monthly), *Economic Indicators* (monthly)

Ministry of International Trade: *Foreign Trade of Japan* (annual)

- Kodansha Encyclopedia of Japan*. 9 vols. Tokyo, 1983
- Japan Times Year Book*. (I. *Year Book of Japan*. II. *Who's Who in Japan*. III. *Business Directory of Japan*.) Tokyo, first issue 1933
- Labor in Tokyo*. Tokyo Metropolitan Government, 1986
- Treaty of Peace with Japan*. (Cmd. 8392). HMSO, 1951; (Cmd. 8601). HMSO, 1952
- Allen, G. C., *The Japanese Economy*. London, 1981
- Baerwald, H. H., *Japan's Parliament*. CUP, 1974.—*Party Politics in Japan*. Boston, 1986
- Burks, A. W., *Japan: Profile of an Industrial Power*. Boulder, 1981
- Kenkyusha's *New Japanese-English [and English-Japanese] Dictionary*. 2 vols. New ed. Cambridge, Mass., and Berkeley, Cal., 1960
- Miyazaki, S., *The Japanese Dictionary Explained in English*. Tokyo, 1950
- Morishima, U., *Why has Japan 'Succeeded'?* CUP, 1984
- Murata, K., *An Industrial Geography of Japan*. London, 1980
- Nippon: A Chartered Survey of Japan*. Tsuneta Yano Memorial Society. Tokyo, annual
- Okita, S., *The Developing Economics of Japan: Lessons in Growth*. Univ. of Tokyo Press, 1983
- Prindl, A., *Japanese Finance: Guide to Banking in Japan*. Chichester, 1981
- Sansom, G. B., *A History of Japan*. 3 vols. London, 1958–64
- Shalman, F. J., *Japan*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988
- Tsoukalis, L., (ed.) *Japan and Western Europe*. London, 1982
- Vogel, E. F., *Japan as Number One*. Harvard Univ. Press, 1979
- Ward, P., *Japanese Capitals*. Cambridge, 1985



# THE HASHEMITE KINGDOM OF JORDAN

*Capital:* Amman

*Population:* 2.97m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,540 (1986)

## Al Mamlaka al Urduniya al Hashemiyah

**HISTORY.** By a Treaty, signed in London on 22 March 1946, Britain recognized Transjordan as a sovereign independent state. On 25 May 1946 the Amir Abdullah assumed the title of King, and when the treaty was ratified on 17 June 1946 the name of the territory was changed to that of 'The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan' in 1949. A new Anglo-Transjordan treaty was signed in Amman on 15 March 1948. The treaty was to remain in force for 20 years, but by mutual consent was terminated on 13 March 1957.

The Arab Federation between the Kingdoms of Iraq and Jordan, which was concluded on 14 Feb. 1958, lapsed after the revolution in Iraq of 14 July 1958, and was officially terminated by royal decree on 1 Aug. 1958.

Since the occupation of the West Bank in June 1967 by Israeli forces, that part of Palestine has not been administratively controlled by the Jordanian government.

On 31 July 1988, King Hussein announced that Jordan was to abandon its efforts to administer the Israeli-occupied West Bank and surrendered its claims to the territory to the Palestine Liberation Organization.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The part of Palestine remaining to the Arabs under the armistice with Israel on 3 April 1949, with the exception of the Gaza strip, was in Dec. 1949 placed under Jordanian rule and formally incorporated in Jordan on 24 April 1950. For the frontier lines *see* map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1951. In June 1967 this territory, known as the West Bank, was occupied by Israeli forces. For details *see* p. 733.

The area formerly administered by the Jordanian government, known as the East Bank, comprised 89,206 sq. km (34,443 sq. miles) following an exchange of territory with Saudi Arabia on 10 Aug. 1965. Its population at the 1979 Census was 2,132,997; latest estimate (1988) 2.97m. The area and population of the 8 governorates were:

<i>Muhafaza</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>Muhafaza</i>	<i>1986</i>
Asimah	1,160,000	Ma'an	97,500
Balqa	193,800	Mafraq	98,600
Irbid	680,200	Tafilah	41,400
Karak	120,100	Zarqa	404,500

The largest towns, with estimated population, 1984: Amman, the capital, 777,500; Zarqa, 265,700; Irbid, 136,200.

In 1986 registered births numbered 112,451; deaths, 8,853; marriages, 19,397; divorces (1984), 2,652.

**CLIMATE.** Predominantly a Mediterranean climate, with hot dry summers and cool wet winters, but in hilly parts summers are cooler and winters colder. Those areas below sea-level are very hot in summer and warm in winter. Eastern parts have a desert climate. Amman. Jan. 46°F (7.5°C), July 77°F (24.9°C). Annual rainfall 12" (290 mm). Aqaba. Jan. 61°F (16°C), July 89°F (31.5°C). Annual rainfall 1.5" (35 mm).

**KING.** The Kingdom is a constitutional monarchy headed by HM King **Hussein**, GCVO, eldest son of King Talal, who, being incapacitated by mental illness, was

deposed by Parliament on 11 Aug. 1952 and died 8 July 1972. The King was born 14 Nov. 1935, and married Princess Dina Abdul Hamid on 19 April 1955 (divorced 1957), Toni Avril Gardiner (Muna al Hussein) on 25 May 1961 (divorced 1972), Alia Toukan on 26 Dec. 1972 (died in air crash 1977) and Elizabeth Halaby on 15 June 1978. *Offspring*: Princess Alia, born 13 Feb. 1956; Prince Abdulla, born 30 Jan. 1962; Prince Faisal, born 11 Oct. 1963; Princesses Zein and Aisha, born 23 April 1968; Princess Haya, born 3 May 1974; Prince Ali, born 23 Dec. 1975; Prince Hamzah, born 1 April 1980; Prince Hashem, born 10 June 1981; Princess Iman, born 4 April 1983; Princess Raya, born 9 Feb. 1986. *Crown Prince* (appointed 1 April 1965): Prince Hassan, younger brother of the King.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution passed on 7 Nov. 1951 provides that the Cabinet is responsible to Parliament.

The legislature consists of a lower house of 60 members elected by universal suffrage (30 from East Jordan and 30 from West Jordan), and a senate of 30 members nominated by the King.

On 5 Feb. 1976 both Houses of Parliament approved amendments to the Constitution by which the King was empowered to postpone calling elections until further notice. The lower house was dissolved. This step was taken because no elections could be held in the West Bank which has been under Israeli occupation since June 1967.

Parliament was reconvened on 9 Jan. 1984. By-elections were held in March 1984 and 6 members were nominated for the West Bank bringing Parliament to 60 members. Women voted for the first time in 1984.

On 30 July 1988 Parliament was dissolved as a first step towards dismantling the legal and administrative links between the East and West Banks.

The Cabinet, in Aug. 1988, was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Defence*: Zaid Rifai.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Education*: Thogan Al-Hindawi. *Parliamentary Affairs*: Sami Joudeh. *Transport and Communication*: Khaled Al Haj Hassan. *Foreign Affairs*: Taher Al-Masri. *Agriculture*: Marwan Al-Humoud. *Labour*: Marwan Dodeen. *Islamic Affairs*: Abdul Aziz Al-Khayyat. *Finance*: Hana Odeh. *Supply*: Abd El-Salam Kan'an. *Energy and Mineral Resources*: Dr Hisham Al-Khatib. *Information*: Dr Hani Al-Khasawneh. *Justice*: Riyad Al Shak'a. *Health*: Dr Zaid Hamzah. *Planning*: Dr Taher Kan'an. *Interior*: Rajai Dajani. *Municipal, Rural and Environmental Affairs*: Y. Hamdan. *Housing and Public Works*: Shafik Zawaideh. *Youth*: Dr A. Khlyfat. *Culture and National Heritage*: Dr Mohammad Hammoury. *Tourism*: Zuhair Ajloni. *Industry and Trade*: Hamdi Tabba'a. *Prime Ministry Affairs*: Dr Fayes Tarawneh. *Social Development*: Dr Fawaz Toukan.

*National flag*: Three horizontal stripes of black, white, green, with a red triangle based on the hoist, bearing a white 7-pointed star.

The official language of the country is Arabic.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army is organized in 3 armoured, 1 special forces and 6 mechanized brigades, 4 anti-aircraft brigades, 1 independent Royal Guards brigade and 16 artillery battalions. Total strength (1989) 74,000 men.

**Navy.** The Coastal Guard or Jordan Sea Force has 14 patrol launches and 1 support craft based at Aqaba. Personnel (1989) totalled 250 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 2 interceptor and 3 ground attack squadrons equipped respectively with Mirage F1 and F-5E Tiger II fighters, and 2-seat F-5Fs, plus an OCU equipped with F-5A fighters and 2-seat F-5Bs. Two anti-armour squadrons have Bell AH-1S Huey Cobra helicopters. There are 6 C-130B/H Hercules and 2 CASA Aviocar turboprop transports, S-70 Blackhawk, S-76, Gazelle, Alouette III and Hughes 500D helicopters, piston-engined Bulldog basic

trainers and CASA Aviojet jet trainers. Hawk surface-to-air missiles equip 14 batteries. Strength (1989) about 11,000 officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Jordan is a member of the UN and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 5-year plan (1986–90) aims at improving agriculture and the development of water resources.

**Budget.** The budget estimates for the year 1987 provide for revenue of JD.100,854,700 and expenditure of JD.107,544,700 which included 209m. for defence. External public debt (1987) JD.1,261.6m.

**Currency.** The Jordan *dinar*, divided into 1,000 *fils*. The following bank-notes and coins are in circulation: 10, 5 dinars, 1 dinar, 500 fils (notes), 250, 100, 50, 25, 20 fils (cupronickel), 10, 5, 1 fils (bronze). In March 1989, £1 = JD.0.9,170; US\$ = JD.0.5,388.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of Jordan was established in 1964. In 1986 there were 9 local commercial banks including Arab Bank (the largest, with a capital of JD.22m.), 8 foreign commercial banks including Grindlays Bank and 6 foreign banks with representative offices. In 1985 there were 2 investment banks, 5 finance companies, 3 Islamic institutions and 3 real estated-linked savings and loan associations.

Assets and liabilities of the Jordanian banking system (including the Central Bank, commercial banks and the Housing Bank) totalled JD.2,404.34m. in 1984.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 2,955m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Oil was discovered in 1982 at Azraq, 70 km east of Amman and 7 new wells were under development in 1985. Deposits of oil shale, estimated at 10,000m. tonnes, have been discovered at Lajjun.

**Minerals.** Phosphates production in 1986 was 6.25m. tonnes. Potash is found in the Dead Sea. Reserves, over 800m. tonnes. A potash plant built on the southeast shore to extract compounds by solar evaporation produced 1.2m. tonnes in 1987. Cement production (1984), 1,994,082 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** The country east of the Hejaz Railway line is largely desert; north-western Jordan is potentially of agricultural value and an integrated Jordan Valley project began in 1973. The agricultural cropping pattern for irrigated vegetable cultivation was introduced in 1984 to regulate production and diversify the crops being cultivated. In 1987 Jordan was self-sufficient in the production of potatoes and onions. In 1986 the government began to lease state-owned land in the semi-arid southern regions for agricultural development by private investors, mostly for wheat and barley. Jordan is self-sufficient in poultry meat. The main crops are tomatoes and other vegetables, citrus fruit, wheat and olives.

Production in 1987 included (in tonnes): Tomatoes, 200,000; olives, 15,000; citrus fruit, 76,000; wheat, 115,000.

Livestock (1987): 1m. sheep; 450,000 goats; 33,000 cattle; 14,000 camels.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production (1987, in tonnes): Phosphates, 6,841,000; petroleum products, 2,229,000; cement, 2,472,000; iron, 219,000; fertilizer, 1,656,000.

Other industries include cigarettes, cosmetics, textiles, shoes, batteries, plastic



products, leather tanning, pharmaceutical products, iron pipes, detergents, aluminium and ceramics. Some 50% of industry is based in Amman.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1987 were valued at JD.915.54m. and exports and re-exports at JD.315.7m. Total remittances from Jordanians working abroad reached US\$1,187.5m. in 1984.

Major exports in 1987 (in JD.1m.) included phosphates, 61; chemicals, 69.93; food and live animals, 248.77; manufactured goods, 37.34. Major imports included machinery and transport equipment, 186.29; crude oil, 118.59.

Exports in 1987 (in JD.1m.) were mainly to Iraq, 59.87; Saudi Arabia, 26.2 and India, 22. Imports were mainly from Saudi Arabia, 76.76 and the USA, 93.39.

Total trade between Jordan and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	18,114	86,077	49,766	29,285	21,310
Exports and re-exports from UK	192,508	154,270	130,385	188,998	183,555

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 1.9m. foreign visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length of public highways, 4,095 km. Motor vehicles in 1980 included 73,078 private passenger cars, 11,207 taxis, 1,415 buses, 29,517 goods vehicles, 4,888 motor cycles.

**Railways.** The 1,050 mm gauge Hejaz Jordan and Aqaba Railway runs from the Syrian border at Nassib to Ma'an and Naqb Ishtar and Aqaba Port (total, 618 km). In 1986 the railways carried 31,304 passengers and 2,789,524 tons of freight.

**Aviation.** The Queen Alia International airport, at Zizya, 30 km south of Amman was inaugurated in 1983. There are other international airports at Amman and Aqaba. Jordan is served by over 20 international airlines.

**Shipping** (1980). The port of Aqaba handled 6,598,591 tons of cargo. JD.65m. was spent between 1980-85 on developing facilities and US\$1,000m. is to be provided under the 1986-90 plan on further developments including a special oil terminal and 4 new wharves.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1982 there were 791 post offices and (1987) 189,502 telephones. There were 280,000 TV receivers and 550,000 radios in 1985.

**Cinemas** (1975). Cinemas numbered 40 with a total attendance of 4,341,900.

**Newspapers** (1988). There were 4 daily (including 1 in English) and 3 weekly papers, with a total circulation (1987) of 188,000.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** About 80% of the population are Sunni Moslems.

**Education** (1987). There were 411 pre-primary schools with 1,461 teachers and 31,827 pupils; 1,294 elementary schools with 18,448 teachers and 542,519 pupils; 1,124 preparatory schools with 10,495 teachers and 214,743 pupils; 510 secondary schools with 7,023 teachers and 98,786 pupils and 27 vocational educational schools with 2,180 teachers and 31,770 pupils. The University of Jordan, inaugurated on 15 Dec. 1962 had in 1987, 12,672 students. The Yarmouk University (Irbid) was inaugurated in 1976 with (1987) 11,603 students. The Mu'tah University was inaugurated in 1981 with (1987) 1,349 students. The Jordan University of Science and Technology was inaugurated in 1987 with 2,815 students.

**Health** (1987). There were 4,500 physicians, 1,041 dentists and 56 hospitals with 5,672 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Jordan in Great Britain (6 Upper Phillimore Gdns., London, W8 7HB)  
*Ambassador:* Dr Albert Butros.

Of Great Britain in Jordan (Abdoun, Amman)  
*Ambassador:* Anthony Reeve, CMG.

Of Jordan in the USA (3504 International Dr., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Hussein Hamami.

Of the USA in Jordan (Jebel Amman, Amman)  
*Ambassador:* Roscoe S. Suddarth.

Of Jordan to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Abdullah Salah.

## Further Reading

The Department of Statistics, Ministry of National Economy, publishes a *Statistical Yearbook* (in Arabic and English), latest issue 1968, and a *Statistical Guide*, latest issue 1965.—*External Trade Statistics*, 1968.—*National Accounts and Input-Output Analysis*, 1959–65, 1967

*The Constitution of the Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan*. Amman, 1952

Gubser, P., *Jordan*. Boulder, 1982

Haas, J., *Husseins Königreich: Jordaniens Stellung in Nahen Osten*. Munich, 1975

Seccombe, I., *Jordan*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Seton, C. R. W., *Legislation of Transjordan, 1918-30*. London, 1931. [Continued by the Government of Jordan as an annual publication: *Jordan Legislation*. Amman, 1932 ff.]

Toni, Y. T. and Mousa, S., *Jordan: Land and People*. Amman, 1973

Wilson, M. C., *King Abdullah, Britain and the making of Jordan*. CUP, 1987

# KENYA

*Capital:* Nairobi

*Population:* 22.8m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$300 (1986)

## Jamhuri ya Kenya

**HISTORY.** Until Kenya became independent on 12 Dec. 1963, it consisted of the colony and the protectorate. The protectorate comprised the mainland dominions of the Sultan of Zanzibar, viz., a coastal strip of territory 10 miles wide, to the northern branch of the Tana River; also Mau, Kipini and the Island of Lamu, and all adjacent islands between the rivers Umba and Tana. The Sultan on 8 Oct. 1963 ceded the coastal strip to Kenya with effect from 12 Dec. 1963.

The colony and protectorate, formerly known as the East African Protectorate were, on 1 April 1905, transferred from the Foreign Office to the Colonial Office and in Nov. 1906 the protectorate was placed under the control of a governor and C.-in-C. and (except the Sultan of Zanzibar's dominions) was annexed to the Crown as from 23 July 1920 under the name of the Colony of Kenya, thus becoming a Crown Colony.

The territories on the coast became the Kenya Protectorate.

A Treaty was signed (15 July 1924) with Italy under which Great Britain ceded to Italy the Juba River and a strip from 50 to 100 miles wide on the British side of the river. Cession took place on 29 June 1925. The northern boundary is defined by an agreement with Ethiopia in 1947. A Constitution conferring internal self-government was brought into force on 1 June 1963, and full independence was achieved on 12 Dec. 1963. On 12 Dec. 1964 Kenya became a republic.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kenya is bounded by Sudan and Ethiopia in the north, Uganda in the west, Tanzania in the south and the Somali Republic and the Indian ocean in the east. The total area is 224,960 sq. miles (582,600 sq. km), of which 219,790 sq. miles is land area. In the 1979 census, the population was 15,327,061, of which 15,101,540 were Africans, 78,600 Asians, 39,900 Europeans, 39,140 Arabs. Estimate (1988) 22.8m.

The land areas, populations and capitals of the provinces are:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1979</i>	<i>Estimate 1987</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Census 1979</i>
Rift Valley	171,108	3,240,402	4,702,400	Nakuru	92,851
Eastern	155,760	2,719,851	3,864,700	Embu	15,986
Nyanza	12,526	2,643,956	3,892,600	Kisumu	152,643
Central	13,173	2,345,833	3,284,800	Nyeri	35,753
Coast	83,040	1,342,794	1,904,100	Mombasa	341,148
Western	8,223	1,832,663	2,535,900	Kakamega	32,025
Nairobi District	684	827,775	1,288,700	Nairobi	827,775
North-Eastern	126,902	373,787	554,000	Garissa	14,076

Other towns (1979): Machakos (84,320), Meru (70,439), Eldoret (59,503), Thika (41,324).

Kiswahili is the official language, but 21% speak Kikuyu as their mother tongue, 14% Luhya, 13% Luo, 11% Kamba, 11% Kalenjin, 6% Gusii, 5% Meru and 5% Mijikenda. English is spoken in commercial centres.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with wet and dry seasons, but considerable differences in altitude make for varied conditions between the hot, coastal lowlands and the plateau, where temperatures are very much cooler. Heaviest rains occur in April and May, but in some parts there is a second wet season in Nov. and Dec. Nairobi. Jan. 65°F (18.3°C), July 60°F (15.6°C). Annual rainfall 39" (958 mm). Mombasa. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 47" (1,201 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** There is a unicameral National



Assembly of 203 members, comprising 188 elected by universal suffrage for a 5-year term, 12 members appointed by the President, and the Speaker and Attorney-General ex-officio. The President is also directly elected for 5 years; he appoints a Vice-President and other Ministers to a Cabinet over which he presides. The sole legal political party is the Kenya African National Union (KANU).

Elections to the National Assembly took place by secret ballot on 21 March 1988. Only 123 seats were contested, the rest were unopposed.

*President:* Daniel T. arap Moi (elected 1978, re-elected 1983 and 1988).

*Vice-President and Home Affairs:* Dr Josephat Karanja. *Foreign Affairs:* Dr Robert J. Ouko. *Planning and National Development:* Dr Zachary Onyonka.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of black, red, green, with the red edged in white; bearing in the centre an African shield in black and white with 2 crossed spears behind.

*Administration.* The country is divided into the Nairobi Area and 7 provinces and there are 40 districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 armoured, 1 armoured reconnaissance, 6 infantry, 2 artillery, 1 parachute, 1 independent air cavalry and 2 engineer battalions. Equipment includes 76 Vickers Mk 3 main battle tanks. There are 32 Hughes Defender helicopters, of which 15 are armed with TOW missiles and 8 Hughes 530 helicopters. Total strength (1989) 19,000.

**Navy.** The Navy in 1989 consisted of 2 new British built missile armed fast attack craft, 4 British built smaller missile armed attack craft, 3 British built patrol craft, 2 patrol boats and 1 tug. Personnel (1989) totalled 1,000 officers and ratings. The base is at Mombasa which has a dry dock with a capacity of 18,000 tons. There are also 2 British-built small marine police cutters, and up to 15 larger customs/police craft are planned.

**Air Force.** An air force, formed 1 June 1964, was built up with RAF assistance and is under Army command. Equipment includes 11 F-5E/F-5F supersonic combat aircraft/trainers, 12 Hawk and 5 BAC 167 Strikemaster light jet attack/trainers, 8 twin-turboprop Buffaloes for transport, air ambulance, anti-locust spraying and security duties, 8 Skyservant light twins, 12 Bulldog piston-engined primary trainers and Puma and Gazelle helicopters. Personnel (1989) 3,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Kenya is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1984-88 development plan aimed at an average annual growth rate of 6.3%. In 1987 GDP grew by 4.8% (agriculture by 3.8%; manufacture by 5.7%).

**Budget.** Ordinary revenue and expenditure for 1988-89: Revenue, KSh.36,298m.; expenditure, KSh.55,504m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the Kenya *Shilling* divided into 100 *cents*; 20 shillings = K£1. Notes of the Central Bank of Kenya are circulated in denominations of KSh.5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 200 and 500 and coins in denominations of 5, 10 and 50 cents and KSh.1 and 5. Currency in circulation at Dec. 1987: Notes, K£425,080,000; coins, K£13.7m. In March 1989, £1 = 32.50 *Shilling*; US\$1 = 18.84 *Shilling*.

**Banking.** Banks operating in Kenya: The National & Grindlays Bank International, Ltd; the Standard Bank, Ltd; Barclays Bank of Kenya Ltd; Algemene Bank Nederland NV; Bank of India, Ltd; Bank of Baroda, Ltd; Habib Bank (Overseas), Ltd; Commercial Bank of Africa, Ltd; Citibank; The Co-operative Bank of Kenya, Ltd; National Bank of Kenya, Ltd; Agricultural Finance Corporation; The

Kenya Commercial Bank; The Central Bank of Kenya. In Jan. 1985 there were 43 non-bank finance institutions.

The Kenya Post Office Savings Bank, a state savings bank established in 1978, had 1,250,000 ordinary savings accounts with total deposits of KSh.750m. at 31 Dec. 1984.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed generating capacity was 575 mw in 1987; two-thirds was provided by hydropower from power stations on the Tana river, 30% by oil-fired power stations and the rest by geothermal power. Production (1987) 2,454m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Production, 1985 (in K£1,000): Soda ash, 13,002; fluorspar ore, 3,550; salt, 1,029; gold, 61.1. Other minerals included raw soda, lime and limestone, diatomite, garnets and vermiculite.

**Agriculture.** As agriculture is possible from sea-level to altitudes of over 9,000 ft, tropical, sub-tropical and temperate crops can be grown and mixed farming can be advocated. Four-fifths of the country is range-land which produces mainly livestock products and wild game which constitutes the major attraction of the country's tourist industry.

The main areas of crop production are the Central, Rift Valley, Western and Nyanza Provinces and parts of Eastern and Coastal Provinces. Coffee, tea, sisal, pyrethrum, maize and wheat are crops of major importance in the Highlands, while coconuts, cashew nuts, cotton, sugar, sisal and maize are the principal crops grown at the lower altitudes. Production, 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes), of principal food crops: Maize, 2,160; wheat, 161; rice, 30; barley, 18; millet, 50; sorghum, 130; potatoes, 730; sweet potatoes, 380; cassava, 540; sugar-cane, 3,700. Main cash crops (1987): Tobacco, 5,000; coffee, 105; tea, 156; vegetables, 467; fruit, 735; flowers, 37; cotton, 24; pyrethrums, 93; sisal, 37.

Livestock (1986): Cattle, 9m.; sheep, 7.1m.; goats, 8.5m.; pigs, 98,000; poultry, 21m.

**Forestry.** The total area of gazetted forest reserves in Kenya amounts to 16,800 sq. km, of which the greater part is situated between 6,000 and 11,000 ft above sea-level, mostly on Mount Kenya, the Aberdares, Mount Elgon, Tinderet, Londiani, Mau watershed, Elgeyo and Charangani ranges. These forests may be divided into coniferous, broad-leaved or hardwood and bamboo forests. The upper parts of these forests are mainly bamboo, which occurs mostly between altitudes of 8,000 and 10,000 ft and occupies some 10% of the high-altitude forests. Production (1985): Softwood, 407,000 cu. metres; hardwood, 542,000.

**Fisheries.** Landings in 1987 were 118,216 tonnes of fresh water fish, 6,096 tonnes of marine fish, 299 tonnes of crustaceans and 39 tonnes of other marine products; total value K£18,849,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1986 industry accounted for some 13% of GDP and employed about one-fifth of the wage-earning labour force. The main activities were textiles, chemicals, vehicle assembly and transport equipment, leather and footwear, printing and publishing, food and tobacco processing. An important sub-sector was the refining of crude petroleum at Mombasa.

**Commerce.** Total domestic exports (1987, provisional) K£753m.; imports K£1,431m.

Chief imports in 1987 were petroleum and petroleum products (19.7% of total), industrial supplies (32.8%), machinery and other capital equipment (22.4%), food and drink (6.9%) and transport equipment (13.3%). Chief exports were coffee (26%), tea (22%) and petroleum products (12.6%). By 1986 fresh vegetables, fruits and flowers became the fourth largest foreign exchange earner.

Imports in 1987 were mainly from the UK (17%), Japan (10.9%), Federal Republic of Germany (8%) and USA (7.1%). Exports were mainly to the UK

(16.8%), Federal Republic of Germany (9.6%), Uganda (8.9%), USA (5.4%) and Pakistan (15.7%).

Total trade between Kenya and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	203,243	185,622	163,745	129,236	142,455
Exports and re-exports from UK	176,061	160,651	170,671	199,059	202,094

**Tourism.** In 1987, about 662,100 tourists visited Kenya and spent KSh.5,840m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1981 there were 6,540 km of bitumen surfaced roads and 47,037 km of gravel-surfaced roads.

**Railways.** On 11 Feb. 1977 the independent Kenya Railways Corporation was formed following break-up of the East African Railways administration. The network totals 2,654 km of metre-gauge. In 1986, the railways carried 2.3m. passengers and 3.2m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Total number of passengers handled at the 3 main airports (1984) was 2,058,000. Jomo Kenyatta Airport, Nairobi, handles nearly 30 international airlines as well as Kenya Airways.

**Shipping.** A national shipping service is planned (1984) to be based in Mombasa, the Kenyan main port at Kilindini on the Indian Ocean. The port handles cargo freight both for Kenya as well as for the neighbouring East African states.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Voice of Kenya operates 2 national services (Swahili-English) from Nairobi and regional services in Kisumu, Nairobi and Mombasa. The television service provides programmes mainly in English and Swahili. A new television station opened in Mombasa in 1970. Telephones (1983) 216,674.

**Cinemas** (1971). Cinemas numbered 32, with seating capacity of 18,800.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The courts of justice comprise the High Court, established in 1921, with full jurisdiction both civil and criminal over all persons and all matters in Kenya, including Admiralty jurisdiction arising on the high seas and elsewhere, and Subordinate Courts. The High Court has its headquarters at Nairobi and consists of the Chief Justice and 28 puisne judges; it sits continuously at Nairobi, Mombasa, Nakuru and Kisumu; civil and criminal sessions are held regularly at Eldoret, Nyeri, Meru, Kitale, Kisii and Kericho.

The Subordinate Courts are presided over by Senior Resident, Resident or District Magistrates and are established in the main centres of all districts. They sit throughout the year. There are also Moslem Subordinate Courts established in areas where the local population is predominantly Moslem; they are presided over by Kadhis and exercise limited jurisdiction in matters governed by Moslem law.

**Religion.** In 1987, the Roman Catholic Church had nearly 6m. adherents (27% of the population), Protestants 4m. (19%) and other Christian churches over 6m. (27%), while Islam had 1.3m. (6%), traditional tribal religions 4m. (19%) and others 400,000 (2%).

**Education.** *Primary* (1987). 13,849 primary schools with 5.03m. pupils and 149,151 teachers.

*Secondary* (1987). There were 2,592 secondary schools with a total enrolment of 522,261 and 24,251 teachers.

*Technical* (1983). 18 technical colleges with 9,258 pupils and 368 teachers.

*Teacher training* (1987). 17,733 students were training as teachers in 22 colleges with 1,348 lecturers.



**Higher Education.** In 1987–88 there were 4 public universities and enrolments were: University of Nairobi (inaugurated 1970), 10,841; Moi University (opened 1985), 970; Kenyatta University, 5,135; Egerton University, 1,935 (592 undergraduates and 1,343 diploma students).

**Health.** In 1987 beds and cots in hospitals (including mission hospitals) totalled 31,356. 2,071 hospitals and health centres, including sub-centres and dispensaries, were in operation. Free medical service for all children and adult out-patients was launched in 1965.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Kenya in Great Britain (24-25 New Bond St., London, W1Y 9HD)  
*High Commissioner:* Dr Sally J. Kosgei.

Of Great Britain in Kenya (Bruce Hse., Standard St., Nairobi)  
*High Commissioner:* Sir John Johnson, KCMG.

Of Kenya in the USA (2249 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Denis D. Afande.

Of the USA in Kenya (Moi/Haile Selassie Ave., Nairobi)  
*Ambassador:* Elinor G. Constable.

Of Kenya to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* M. Okeyo.

## Further Reading

*Kenya Development Plan, 1984–88.* Nairobi, 1984

*Kenya Economic Survey, 1988.* Nairobi, 1988

*Statistical Abstract.* Government Printer, Nairobi, 1982

*Standard English–Swahili Dictionary.* Ed. Inter-territorial Language Committee of East Africa. 2 vols. London, 1939

*Who's Who in Kenya 1982–1983.* London, 1983

Arnold, G., *Kenyatta and the Politics of Kenya.* London, 1974.—*Modern Kenya.* London, 1982

Bienen, H., *Kenya: The Politics of Participation and Control.* Princeton Univ. Press, 1974

Bigsten, A., *Education and Income Distribution in Kenya.* Brookfield, Vermont, 1984

Bolton, K., *Haramble Country: A Guide to Kenya.* London, 1970

Collison, R. L., *Kenya.* [Bibliography] London and Santa Barbara, 1982

Harbeson, J. W., *Nation-Building in Kenya: The Role of Land Reform.* Northwestern Univ. Press, 1973

Hazlewood, A., *The Economy of Kenya: The Kenyatta Era.* OUP, 1980

Langdon, S. W., *Multinational Corporations in the Political Economy of Kenya.* London, 1981

Miller, N. N., *Kenya, the Quest for Prosperity.* Boulder and London, 1984

Tomkinson, M., *Kenya: A Holiday Guide.* 5th ed. London and Hammamet, 1981

# KIRIBATI

*Capital:* Tarawa

*Population:* 66,250 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$390 (1985)

**HISTORY.** The Gilbert and Ellice Islands were proclaimed a protectorate in 1892 and annexed (at the request of the native governments) as the Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony on 10 Nov. 1915 (effective on 12 Jan. 1916). On 1 Oct. 1975 the former Ellice Islands severed its constitutional links with the Gilbert Islands and took a new name Tuvalu.

Internal self-government was obtained on 1 Nov. 1976 and independence achieved on 12 July 1979 as the Republic of Kiribati.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kiribati (pronounced Kiribass) consists of 3 groups of coral atolls and one isolated volcanic island, spread over a large expanse of the Central Pacific with a total land area of 717.1 sq. km (276.9 sq. miles). It comprises Banaba or Ocean Island (5 sq. km), the 16 Gilbert Islands (295 sq. km), the 8 Phoenix Islands (55 sq. km), and 8 of the 11 Line Islands (329 sq. km), the other 3 Line Islands (Jarvis, Palmyra and Kingman Reef) being uninhabited dependencies of the US. Population, 1985 census, 63,848; estimate (1987) 66,250. It was announced in 1988 that 4,700 people are to be resettled on Teraina and Tabuaeran atolls because the main island group is overcrowded. Banaba, all 16 Gilbert Islands, and 3 atolls in the Line Islands (Teraina, Tabuaeran and Kiritimati—formerly Washington, Fanning and Christmas Islands respectively) are inhabited; their populations in 1985 (census) were as follows:

Banaba (Ocean Is.)	189	Abemama	2,966	Onotoa	1,927
Makin	1,777	Kuria	1,052	Tamana	1,348
Butaritari	3,622	Aranuki	984	Arorae	1,470
Marakei	2,693	Nonouti	2,930	Phoenix Island	24
Abaiang	4,386	Tabiteuea	4,493	Teraina	416
Tarawa	24,598	Beru	2,702	Tabuaeran	445
Maiana	2,141	Nikunau	2,061	Kiritimati	1,737

The remaining 13 atolls have no permanent population; the 8 Phoenix Islands comprise Birnie, Rawaki (formerly Phoenix), Enderbury, Kanton (or Abariringa), Manra (formerly Sydney), Orona (formerly Hull), McKean and Nikumaroro (formerly Gardner), while the others are Malden and Starbuck in the Central Line Islands and Caroline, Flint and Vostok in the Southern Line Islands. The population is almost entirely Micronesian.

**CLIMATE.** The Line Islands, Phoenix Islands and Banaba have a maritime equatorial climate, but the islands further north and south are tropical. Annual and daily ranges of temperature are small and mean annual rainfall ranges from 50" (1,250 mm) near the equator to 120" (3,000 mm) in the north. Tarawa. Jan. 83°F (28.3°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 79" (1,977 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the independence Constitution the republic has a unicameral legislature, comprising 36 members elected from 20 constituencies for a 4-year term. The *Beretitenti* (President) is both Head of State and of Government.

In Feb. 1989 the government was composed as follows:

*President and Foreign Affairs:* Jeremiah Tabai, GCMG.

*Vice-President, Finance and Economic Planning:* Teatao Teannaki. *Home Affairs and Decentralization:* Babera Kirata, OBE. *Trade, Industry and Labour:* Raion Bataroma. *Health and Family Planning:* Rotaria Ataia. *Natural Resource Development:* Taomati Iuta, OBE. *Education:* Ataraoti Mwemwenibure. *Communications:* Uera Rabaua. *Minister for the Line and Phoenix Group of Islands:* Tekinaiti Kaiteie. *Works and Energy:* Ieruru Karotu. *Attorney-General:* Michael Takabwebwe.

*National flag:* Red, with blue and white wavy lines in base, and in the centre a gold rising sun and a flying frigate bird.

*National anthem:* Teirake Kain Kiribati.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Kiribati is a member of the Commonwealth, South Pacific Forum and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Budget estimates for 1989 show revenue, \$A20,648,000; principal items: fishing licences, \$A3.87m.; customs duties, \$A5m.; direct taxation, \$A2.5m. Expenditure amounted to \$A20,648,000.

**Currency.** The currency in use is the Australian *dollar*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power production (1986) was 8m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Phosphate production was discontinued in 1979.

**Agriculture.** Land under agriculture and permanent cultivation, 50.7%; forest, 2.8%; other, 46.5%. The land is basically coral reefs upon which coral sand has built up, and then been enriched by humus from rotting vegetation and flotsam which has drifted ashore. The principal tree is the coconut, which grows prolifically on all the islands except some of the Phoenix Islands. Other food-bearing trees are the pandanus palm and the breadfruit. As the amount of soil is negligible, the only vegetable which grows in any quantity is a coarse calladium (alocasia) with the local name 'babai', which is cultivated most laboriously in deep pits. Pigs and fowls are kept throughout Kiribati.

Copra production is mainly in the hands of the individual landowner, who collects the coconut products from the trees on his own land. Production (1987) 12,000 tonnes; coconuts, 90,000 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): Pigs, 10,000; poultry (1982), 163,000.

**Fisheries.** Tuna fishing is an important industry and licenses have been granted to USSR fleets.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE.

**Commerce.** The principal imports (1984, in A\$1m.) are: Machinery and transport equipment, 8.5; food, 5.5; manufactured goods, 3.1; fuels, 2.25. The value of exports for 1981 amounted to \$A3.6m. Exports are almost exclusively copra.

Total trade between Kiribati and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	209	4	8	128
Exports and re-exports from UK	775	179	301	522

**Tourism.** Tourism is in the early stages of development and in 1984 total income from the industry was US\$1.4m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 640 km of roads, of which 483 km suitable for vehicles.

**Shipping.** The main port is at Betio (Tarawa). Other ports of entry are Christmas Island and Banaba. In 1980, 71 vessels were handled at Betio.

**Aviation.** Air Tuaru is the national carrier. It operates services from Tarawa to the other 15 outer islands in the Gilbertese Group, services varying between one and four flights each week. There is a charter service weekly to Christmas Island, in the Line Islands, which continues to Honolulu. A fortnightly service operates to Funafuti and weekly to Majuro and Nandi. Air Nauru has a weekly flight between Nauru and Tarawa.



**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 1,400 telephones in 1984. Radio Tarawa transmits daily in English and I-Kiribati. A telephone line to Australia was installed in 1981. There were (1983 estimate) 10,000 radio receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1974 there were 5 cinemas with a seating capacity of 2,000.

**Newspapers.** There was (1984) 1 bi-lingual weekly newspaper.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1989 Kiribati had a police force of 232 under the command of a Commissioner of Police. The Commissioner of Police is also responsible for prisons, immigration, fire service (both domestic and airport) and firearms licensing.

**Religion.** The majority of the population belong to the Roman Catholic or Protestant (Congregational) church; there are small numbers of Seventh-day Adventist, Mormons, Baha'i and Church of God.

**Education.** In 1987 the government maintained boarding school had an enrolment of 470 pupils and there were 112 primary schools, with a total of 13,192 pupils, 6 secondary schools with 1,649 pupils, and 1 community high school with 232 pupils. The Government also maintains a teachers' training college with 56 students in 1987 and a marine training school which offers training for about 70 merchant seamen each year. The Tarawa Technical Institute at Betio offers a variety of part-time and evening technical and commercial courses and had 389 students in 1986.

In 1986, 85 islanders were in overseas countries for secondary and further education or training.

**Welfare.** Government maintains free medical and other services. There are few towns, and the people are almost without exception landed proprietors, thus eliminating child vagrancy and housing problems to a large extent, except in the Tarawa urban area. Destitution is almost unknown. There were 16 doctors in 1986. There is a general hospital on Tarawa and dispensaries on other islands, with 283 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Kiribati in Great Britain

*High Commissioner:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Kiribati (Tarawa)

*High Commissioner:* Charles Thompson.

Of Kiribati in the USA

*Ambassador:* Atenroi Ba'teke, OBE (resides in Tarawa).

## Further Reading

*Kiribati, Aspects of History.* Univ. of South Pacific, 1979

Bailey, E., *The Christmas Island Story.* London, 1977

Cowell, R., *Structure of Gilbertese.* Suva, 1950

Grimble, Sir Arthur, *A Pattern of Islands.* London, 1953.—*Return to the Islands.* London, 1957

Maude, H. E., *Of Islands and Men.* London, 1968.—*Evolution of the Gilbertese Boti.* Suva, 1977

Sabatier, E., *Astride the Equator.* Melbourne, 1978

Whincup, T., *Nareau's Nation.* London, 1979

# KOREA

*Capital:* Seoul

*Population:* 42m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$3,450 (1988)

## Han Kook

**HISTORY.** Korea was united in a single kingdom under the Silla dynasty from 668. China, which claimed a vague suzerainty over Korea, recognized Korea's independence in 1895. Korea concluded trade agreements with the USA (1882), Great Britain, Germany (1883). After the Russo-Japanese war of 1904-5 Korea was virtually a Japanese protectorate until it was formally annexed by Japan on 29 Aug. 1910 thus ending the rule of the Yi dynasty of the choson kingdom, which had begun in 1392.

Following the collapse of Japan in 1945, American and Russian forces entered Korea to enforce the surrender of the Japanese troops there, dividing the country for mutual military convenience into two portions separated by the 38th parallel of latitude. Negotiations between the Americans and Russians regarding the future of Korea broke down in May 1946.

On 25 June 1950 the North Korean forces crossed the 38th parallel and invaded South Korea. The same day, the Security Council of the United Nations asked all member states to render assistance to the Republic of Korea. When the UN forces had reached the Manchurian border Chinese troops entered the war on the side of the North Koreans on 26 Nov. 1950 and penetrated deep into the south. By the beginning of April 1951, however, the UN forces had regained the 38th parallel. On 23 June 1951 Y. A. Malik, President of the Security Council, suggested a cease-fire, and on 10 July representatives of Gen. Ridgway met representatives of the North Koreans and of the Chinese Volunteer Army. A cease-fire agreement was signed on 27 July 1953.

For the contributions of member-nations of the United Nations to the war, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1954, p. 1195, and 1956, p. 1180.

On 16 Aug. 1953 the USA and Korea signed a mutual defence pact and on 28 Nov. 1956 a treaty of friendship, commerce and navigation.

On 4 July 1972 it was announced in Seoul and Pyongyang (North Korea) that talks had taken place aimed at 'the peaceful unification of the fatherland as early as possible'. In Nov. 1984 agreement was reached to form a joint economic committee.

A North Korean-UN agreement of 6 Sept. 1976 established a joint security area 850 metres in diameter, divided into 2 equal parts to ensure the separation of the two sides.

Several rounds of talks with North Korea took place in 1988.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** South Korea is bounded north by the demilitarized zone (separating it from North Korea), east by the Sea of Japan, south by the Korea Strait (separating it from Japan) and west by the Yellow Sea. The area was (1985) 99,022 sq. km (38,232 sq. miles). The population (census, 1 Nov. 1985) was 40,466,577 (male, 20,280,857). Estimate (1987) 42,082,000.

The areas (in sq. km) and 1985 census populations of the Regions were as follows:

<i>Region</i>	<i>sq. km</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>Region</i>	<i>sq. km</i>	<i>1985</i>
Seoul (city)	627	9,645,824	South Chungchong	8,807	3,001,538
Pusan (city)	433	3,516,768	North Cholla	8,052	2,202,218
Taegu (city)	455	2,030,649	South Cholla	12,189	3,748,442
Inchon (city)	201	1,387,475	North Kyongsang	19,427	3,013,276
Kyonggi	10,875	4,794,240	South Kyongsang	11,850	3,519,121
Kangwon	16,894	1,726,029	Cheju	1,825	489,458
North Chungchong	7,430	1,391,084			

The chief cities (populations, census 1985) are:

Seoul	9,645,824	Kwangchu	905,896	Masan	449,236
Pusan	3,516,768	Taejon	866,303	Seongnam	447,832
Taegu	2,030,649	Ulsan	551,219	Suwon	430,827
Inchon	1,387,475	Puch'on	456,311	Chonchu	426,490

**CLIMATE.** The extreme south has a humid warm temperate climate while the rest of the country experiences continental temperate conditions. Rainfall is concentrated in the period April to Sept. and ranges from 40" (1,020 mm) to 60" (1,520 mm). Pusan. Jan. 36°F (2.2°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 56" (1,407 mm). Seoul. Jan. 23°F (-5°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 50" (1,250 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution was approved by national referendum in Oct. 1987 and came into force on 25 Feb. 1988. It provides for a President, to be directly elected for a single 7-year term (by an electoral college of 5,271 directly-elected members), a State Council of ministers whom he appoints and leads, and a National Assembly (276 members) directly elected for 4 years (184 from 2-member constituencies and 92 by proportional representation).

The National Assembly elected on 26 April 1988 comprised 125 members of the Democratic Justice Party, 70 Party for Peace and Democracy, 59 Reunification Democratic Party, 1 from other parties and 9 independents.

*President of the Republic:* Roh Tae-woo (took office 25 Feb. 1988).

The Cabinet at March 1989 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Kang Young-Hoon.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Economic Planning:* Cho Soon. *Foreign Affairs:* Choi Ho-Joong. *Home Affairs:* Lee Han-Dong. *Finance:* Lee Kyu-Song. *Justice:* Huh Hyong-Koo. *National Defence:* Lee Sang-Hoon. *Education:* Chung Won-Sik. *Sports:* Kim Jip. *Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries:* Kim Sik. *Commerce and Industry:* Han Sung-Soo. *Energy and Resources:* Lee Bong-Suh. *Construction:* Park Sung. *Health and Social Affairs:* Moon Tae-Joon. *Labour Affairs:* Chang Young-Chol. *Transportation:* Kim Chang-Kun. *Communications:* Choe Young-Chol. *Culture and Information:* Choe Byung-Yol. *Government Administration:* (Vacant). *Science and Technology:* Lee Sang-Hi. *National Unification:* Lee Hong-Koo. *First Minister for State Affairs:* Chung Jong-Taek. *Second Minister for State Affairs:* Kim Yong-Jong. *Office of Legislation:* Hyon Hong-Joo. *Patriots and Veterans Affairs Agency:* Lee Sang-Hyong.

*National flag:* White charged in the centre with the *yang-um* in red and blue and with 4 black *pal-kwar* trigrams.

*Local government:* South Korea is divided into 9 provinces (*Do*) and 5 cities with provincial status (Seoul, Pusan, Taegu, Inchon and Kwangju); the provinces are sub-divided into 138 districts (*Gun*) and 58 cities (*Shi*).

**DEFENCE.** Military service is compulsory for 30-36 months in all services.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 19 infantry divisions, 2 mechanized infantry divisions, 7 independent special forces brigades, 2 anti-aircraft artillery brigades, 2 surface-to-air missile brigades, 1 army aviation brigade and 2 surface-to-surface battalions. Equipment includes 350 M-47 and 950 M-48A5 main battle tanks. Army aviation equipment includes 194 Hughes 500 and 8 AH-1G Huey Cobra helicopters for anti-armour operations, observation and liaison, plus 60 UH-1 Iroquois transport helicopters. Strength (1989) 542,000, with a Regular Army Reserve of 1.5m. and a Homeland Reserve Defence Force of 3.3m. Para-military Civilian Defence Corps, 3.5m.

**Navy.** The Fleet comprises 3 new very small submarines (built in South Korea), 2 indigenously built modern frigates, 11 aged (1943-46) *ex-US* destroyers, 4 equally old *ex-US* frigates (former fast transports, *ex-destroyer escorts*), 4 new missile



corvettes, 12 gun corvettes, 11 fast missile patrol craft, 65 fast attack craft, 10 fast gunboats, 3 coastal patrol boats, 8 coastal minesweepers, 8 landing ships, 7 medium landing craft, 20 utility landing craft, 1 repair ship, 7 surveying vessels, 2 salvage ships, 4 supply ships, 6 oilers, 13 auxiliary ships, 35 service craft, and 2 tugs. Nearly all South Korea's naval vessels are *ex-US* ships. The Navy has a small aviation element with 20 S-2A/F Tracker anti-submarine aircraft, 25 Hughes 500MD and 12 Alouette helicopters.

It was reported that the first submarine built in South Korea entered service in 1983. Probably the first of a class of four or five, she displaces only 175 tons.

The South Korean Coastguard operates 25 small ships and over 200 light vessels including rescue craft and tugs.

Personnel in 1989 totalled 29,000 in the Navy; plus 25,000 in the Marine Corps.

**Air Force.** With a 1989 strength of about 33,000 men, the Air Force is undergoing rapid expansion with US assistance. Its combat aircraft include 36 F-16C/D Fighting Falcons, about 95 F-4D/E Phantoms, 60 F-5A/B tactical fighters, more than 200 F-5E/F tactical fighters, 6 RF-5A reconnaissance fighters, 10 O-2A forward air control aircraft and 10 Hughes 500-D Defender helicopters. There are also 10 C-54 and 10 C-123 piston-engined transports, 4 C-130 Hercules turboprop-engined transports, 2 HS.748s, 1 Boeing 737 and 1 DC-6 for VIP transport; UH-1, Bell 212 and Bell 412 transport helicopters, and T-41, T-28, T-33 and T-37C trainers.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** Under the sixth 5-year social and economic plan (1987-91) the 1987 growth rate was 12.5% and the forecasted annual rate for 1988-91 is 7.3%.

**Budget.** The 1987 budget balanced at 16,059,600m. won of which 31% defence and 20% education.

**Currency.** Notes are issued by the Bank of Korea in denominations of 10,000, 5,000, 1,000 and 500 *won* and coin in denominations of 500, 100, 50, 10, 5 and 1 *won*. The exchange rate is determined daily by the Bank of Korea. In March 1989, 1,158.55 *won*=US\$1; 673.18 *won*=£1 sterling.

**Banking.** State-run banks include the Bank of Korea, the Korean Development Bank, the Medium & Small Industry Bank, the Citizen's National Bank, the Korea Exchange Bank, the National Livestock Co-operatives Federation and the Federation of Fisheries Co-operatives serving as banking and credit institutions for farmers and fishermen, the Korea Housing Bank, the Export and Import Bank of Korea.

There are 7 commercial banks: the Bank of Seoul & Trust Co. Ltd, the Cho Heung Bank Ltd, the Commercial Bank of Korea, the Korea First Bank, the Hanil Bank, the Shinhan Bank, the Koram Bank; and 10 local banks. The Bank of Korea is the central bank and the only note-issuing bank, the authorized purchaser of domestically produced gold.

In addition, there are non-bank financial institutions consisting of 19 insurance companies, the Land Bank of Korea, the Credit Guarantee Fund, 10 short-term financial companies, 211 mutual credit companies, and the Merchant Banking Corporation.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity generated (1986) was 65,000m. kwh. Supply 100 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** The KODECO Energy Co. and the Indonesian state-run oil company Pertamina are developing an oil field off the coast of Indonesia's Madura Island. KODECO began drilling operations in 1982 and began producing oil in Sept. 1985 from the Madura field, which contains 22.1m. bbls of proven oil deposits. The state-run Korean Petroleum Development Corp. (PEDCO) and the US company Hadson Petroleum International are exploring for oil in the southern part of the

Fifth Continental Shelf oil mining block off the coast of the Korean Peninsula. Oil worth US\$6,490m. was imported in 1985.

**Minerals.** In 1985, 1,879 mining companies employed 87,717 people. Mineral deposits are mostly small, with the exception of tungsten; the Sangdong mine is one of the world's largest deposits of tungsten. Output, 1985, included (in tonnes): Anthracite coal, 22.4m.; iron ore, 670,000; tungsten ore, 4,643; kaolin, 634,202; copper ore, 1,228; lead ore, 18,947; gold, 2,345; silver, 126,133; zinc ore, 92,509.

**Agriculture.** The arable land in South Korea comprised 2,140,995 hectares in 1986, of which 1,328,529 hectares were rice paddies and 812,466 hectares dry fields.

Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes) of rice was 5,607; of total crops from dry fields, 1,364, including barley, 453; of cash crops: Vegetables, 7,729; fruits, 1,475.

Output of tobacco manufactures, a government monopoly, was 82,982 tonnes in 1986. In 1987 cattle numbered 2,807,000; pigs, 3,347,000; poultry, 57m.

**Fisheries.** Fishery exports (1985) US\$960m. In 1986, 676 Korean deep-sea fishing vessels were operating overseas. In 1986, there was a total of 93,037 boats (883,851 gross tons). The fish catch (inland and marine) was 3,659,000 tonnes in 1986.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufacturing industry, which (1986) employed 3,659,000 persons, was concentrated primarily in 1986 on oil, petrochemicals, chemical fibres, construction, iron and steel, cement, machinery, shipbuilding, automobiles and electronics.

**Commerce.** In 1986 the total exports were US\$33,913m., while imports were US\$29,707m. In 1985 USA provided 20.8% and Japan 24.3% of imports; USA received 35.5% of exports, Japan 15%.

Major exports, 1986, included (in US\$1m.): Heavy and chemical products, 17,381; light industrial products, 14,451. Major imports included: Crude oil and raw materials, 17,165; capital goods, 11,326; grain and other goods, 3,092.

Total trade between Korea and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	443,819	480,448	661,975	936,038	1,135,107
Exports and re-exports from UK	219,406	247,887	288,421	427,229	1,742,747

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 1,472,811 foreign tourists. They spent about US\$1,548m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 53,653 km of roads. In 1986 motor vehicles totalled 1,309,434 including 472,601 trucks, 154,627 buses, 664,226 passenger cars.

**Railways.** In Dec. 1986, 6,324 km of railways existed, including 3,113 km of commercial railways, 441 km of which were electrified. In 1987 railways carried 525m. passengers and 59.3m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** In Dec. 1986, 38 countries maintained aviation agreement with Korea and had 34 air routes with 27 cities in 17 countries. The Ministry of Transportation opened the Seoul-Kuala Lumpur-Bangkok cargo route and Seoul-Singapore-Bangkok and Cheju-Pusan-Tokyo passenger routes in 1985.

In Dec. 1986 Korea had 113 commercial aircraft (49 Korean Air passenger-cargo planes, 16 light planes and 37 helicopters). In 1986, 3.91m. passengers and 75,148 tons of cargo were carried on domestic routes and 4.78m. passengers on international routes.

**Shipping.** In Dec. 1986, there were 25 first-grade ports and 22 second-grade ports, and 7,919,335 gross tons in various vessels. Of the total tonnage, national-flag ocean-going vessels accounted for 6,654,860 tons, chartered vessels for 1,264,475 tons. Passenger ships accounted for 54,804 tons, cargo vessels 6,305,198 tons and oil tankers 1,414,540 tons.

**Post and Telecommunications.** Post offices total 2,830 (1986); telephones (all government-owned) were 7,521,000 in 1986. The fourth satellite earth station was opened in Jan. 1985, bringing the number of communications circuits *via* satellite to 3,195. There were 4.93m. television receivers in 1986.

**Cinemas.** In 1986 there were 640 with a seating capacity of 236,188.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 32 daily papers, including 2 in English appearing in Seoul.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** Basically the religions of Korea have been Shamanism, Buddhism (introduced A.D. 372) and Confucianism, which was the official faith from 1392 to 1910. Catholic converts from China introduced Christianity in the 18th century, but the ban on Roman Catholicism was not lifted until 1882. Protestantism was introduced in the late 19th century. The Christian population in 1985 was 8,343,455.

**Education.** In 1986 Korea had 4,798,323 pupils enrolled in 6,535 elementary schools, 2,765,629 pupils in 2,412 middle schools and 2,262,397 pupils in 1,627 high schools (including 631 vocational schools).

For higher education, 1,262,493 students attended 256 universities, colleges and junior colleges in 1986. There are 203 graduate schools granting master's degrees in 2 years and doctor's degrees in 3 years, where 69,962 students attended in 1986. There are 4 Open Universities.

The Korean language belongs to the Ural-Altaic group, is polysyllabic, agglutinative and highly developed syntactically. The modern Korean alphabet of 10 vowels and 14 consonants forms a script known as Han-gul.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 31,616 physicians, 4,041 oriental medical doctors, 5,995 dentists, 6,513 midwives, 64,270 nurses, and 31,334 pharmacists. There were 19,623 hospitals, clinics and health care centres in 1986 with 107,907 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Korea in Great Britain (4 Palace Gate, London, W8 5NF)

*Ambassador:* Jay Hee Oh (accredited 16 Dec. 1987).

Of Great Britain in Korea (4 Chung-Dong, Chung-Ku, Seoul)

*Ambassador:* Lawrence J. Middleton, CMG.

Of Korea in the USA (2370 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Kim Kyong-Won.

Of the USA in Korea (Sejong-Ro, Seoul)

*Ambassador:* Donald Gregg.

## Further Reading

*A Handbook of Korea*, 4th ed. Seoul, 1982

*Guide to Investment in Korea*. Economic Planning Board. Seoul, 1980

*Korea Annual* 1983. 20th ed. Seoul, 1983

*Korea Statistical Year Book*. Seoul, 1981

*Major Economic Indicators, 1979-80*. Seoul, 1980

*Monthly Statistics of Korea*. Seoul

Hastings, M., *The Korean War*. London, 1987

Lew, H. J., *New Life Korean-English, English-Korean Dictionary*. 2 vols. Seoul, 1947-50

Martin, S. F. (ed.) *A Korean-English Dictionary*. Yale Univ. Press, 1968

Srivastava, M. P., *The Korean Conflict: Search for Unification*. New Delhi, 1982



# NORTH KOREA

*Capital:* Pyongyang

*Population:* 21·89m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,180 (1985)

## Chosun Minchu-chui Inmin Konghwa-guk

**HISTORY.** In northern Korea the Russians, arriving on 8 Aug. 1945, one month ahead of the Americans, established a Communist-led 'Provisional Government'. The newly created Korean Communist Party merged in 1946 with the New National Party into the Korean Workers' Party. In July 1946 the KWP, with the remaining pro-Communist groups and non-party people, formed the United Democratic Patriotic Front. On 25 Aug. 1948 the Communists organized elections for a Supreme People's Assembly, both in Soviet-occupied North Korea (212 deputies) and in US-occupied South Korea (360 deputies, of whom a certain number went to the North and took their seats). A People's Democratic Republic was proclaimed on 9 Sept. 1948. Several proposals for talks between North and South Korea on reunification have been made since 1980, but have repeatedly broken down. North-South economic talks were held in 1985, and there was an exchange of visits between divided families. Relations with the USSR have intensified since 1985.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** North Korea is bounded north by China, east by the sea of Japan, west by the Yellow Sea and south by South Korea, from which it is separated by a demilitarized zone of 1,262 sq km. Its area is 120,538 sq. km. Population estimate in 1988, 21·89m. (64% urban). Rate of population increase, 2·4% per annum; birth rate, 1985, 3%; death rate, 0·6%. Marriage is discouraged before the age of 32 for men and 29 for women. Expectation of life in 1986 was 74 years. Large towns (estimate, 1984): Pyongyang, the capital (2,639,448); Chongjin (754,128); Nampo (691,284); Sinuiju (500,000); Wonsan (350,000); Kaesong (345,642); Kimchaek (281,000); Haeju (131,000); Sariwon (130,000); Hamhung (775,000 in 1981).

**CLIMATE.** There is a warm temperate climate, though winters can be very cold in the north. Rainfall is concentrated in the summer months. Pyongyang. Jan. 18°F (-7·8°C), July 75°F (23·9°C). Annual rainfall 37" (916 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The political structure is based upon the Constitution of 27 Dec. 1972. The Constitution provides for a Supreme People's Assembly elected every 4 years by universal suffrage. Citizens of 17 years and over can vote and be elected. Elections were held in 1948, 1957, 1962, 1972, 1977, 1982 and 2 Nov. 1986. At the latter it was claimed that 100% of the electorate voted for the list of single candidates presented. There are 655 deputies. The government consists of the Administration Council directed by the Central People's Committee (*Secretary*, Chi Chang Ik) which had 13 members in 1988. In Nov. 1985 several Commissions were set up superordinate to ministries within the Council.

In practice the country is ruled by the Korean Workers' (*i.e.*, Communist) Party which elects a Central Committee which in turn appoints a Politburo. In March 1989 this was composed of: Marshal Kim Il Sung, (*General Secretary of the Party, President of the Republic, Chairman of the Central People's Committee, Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces*); Kim Jong Il (Kim Il Sung's son and designated successor) (*Vice-President of the Republic*); O Jin U (*Armed Forces' Minister*) (The latter 3 constituting the Politburo's Presidium); Kang Song San; Li Jong Ok (*Vice-President of the Republic*); Pak Sung Chul (*Vice-President of the Republic*); So Chol; Kim Yong Nam (*Deputy Prime Minister, Foreign Minister*); Kim Hwan

(*Deputy Prime Minister, Minister of the Chemical Industry*); Yon Hyong Muk (*Prime Minister*); O Guk Ryol; So Yun Sok; Ho Dam (*Deputy Prime Minister*); Hong Song Nam (*First Deputy Prime Minister, Chairman, State Planning Commission*); Kye Ung Tae. There were also 9 candidate members.

Ministers not full members of the Politburo include Kim Yun Hyok (*Deputy Prime Minister*); Cho Se Ung (*Deputy Prime Minister*); Yun Gi Jong (*Finance*); Chong Song Nam (*Foreign Economic Affairs*); Kim Bok Sin; Chong Jun Gi, Kim Yun Hyok, Kim Chang Ju (*Deputy Prime Ministers*); Choe Jong Guñ (*Foreign Trade*); Paek Hak Rim (*Public Security*).

In 1981 the Party had some 2m. members.

There are also the puppet religious Chongu and Korean Social Democratic Parties and various organizations combined in a Fatherland Front.

*National flag*: Blue, red and blue horizontal stripes separated by narrow white bands. The red stripe bears a white circle within which is a red 5-pointed star.

*National anthem*: 'A chi mun bin na ra i gang san' (Shine bright, o dawn, on this land so fair'). Words by Pak Se Yong; music by Kim Won Gyun.

The country is divided into 13 administrative units: 4 cities (Pyongyang, Chongjin, Hamhung and Kaesong) and 9 provinces (capitals in brackets): South Pyongan (Nampo), North Pyongan (Sinuiju), Jagang (Kanggye), South Hwanghai (Haeju), North Hwanghai (Sariwon), North Kangwon (Wonsan), South Hamgyong (Hamheung), North Hamgyong (Chongjin), Yanggang (Hyesan). These are subdivided into 152 counties.

*Local government*: There are 26,539 deputies in People's Assemblies at city/province, county and commune level. Elections were on 15 Nov. 1987.

**DEFENCE.** Chief of the General Staff is Choe Gwang (appointed 1988). Military service is compulsory at the age of 16 for periods of 5-8 years in the Army and Navy and 3-4 years in the Air Force. In 1987 defence spending was 22% of GNP. North Korea adhered to the 1968 Non-Proliferation Treaty on nuclear weapons in 1985.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 2 armoured, 6 mechanical, 1 motorized infantry, 25 infantry and 2 anti-aircraft divisions; 8 armoured, 21 infantry and 25 special forces brigades; 250 artillery, 82 multiple-rocket-launcher and 6 surface-to-surface missile battalions. Equipment includes 3,000 T-34/-55/-62 and 175 Type-59 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 750,000, with 500,000 reserves. There is also a paramilitary militia of some 3m. men and a ranger commando force of 100,000. The militia (men of 18-40 not in the armed forces or reserves, single women of 18-30) is estimated at 3m. It was announced in Jan. 1988 that 100,000 troops had been demobilized.

**Navy.** The Navy comprises 21 diesel-powered patrol submarines (17 *ex*-Chinese and indigenously-built and 4 *ex*-Soviet), 2 small frigates, 28 fast missile boats, 156 fast torpedo boats, 139 fast gunboats, 32 patrol vessels, 30 coastal patrol craft, 30 light gunboats, 8 medium landing ships, 25 utility landing craft, 20 mechanised landing craft, 100 small assault landing craft, 30 trawlers and auxiliaries, 2 *ex*-Soviet ocean tugs and 100 service craft. Up to 20 small submarines are reported as built locally with a dozen X-craft in commission. Personnel in 1989 totalled 39,000 officers and men with 40,000 reserves.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had a total of about 854 combat aircraft and 53,000 personnel in 1989. Since 1985 the USSR has supplied 50 MiG-23 supersonic and 30 Mig-29 interceptors, 40 Su-25 fighter-bombers and 30 SA3 surface-to-air missiles. Other equipment is believed to include about 160 supersonic MiG-21 interceptors, more than 100 F-6s (Chinese-built MiG-19s), 250 MiG-17s for ground attack and reconnaissance, 30 Su-7 fighter-bombers, 40 Chinese-built A5 fighter-bombers, 60 Il-28 twin-jet light bombers, 250 An-2 light transport aircraft, 40 Mi-4 and Mi-8 transport helicopters and 80 US Hughes 300 and 500 helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

North Korea is a member of WHO and an observer at UN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For previous plans see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1987-88. After a hiatus it was announced in Oct. 1986 that a third 7-year plan would run from 1987 to 1993. Steel production targets have been reduced (to 10m. tonnes) and more emphasis placed on export items, non-ferrous metals and fishery products.

**Budget** (in 1m. won) for calendar years:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	24,384	26,305	27,439	28,539	30,337
Expenditure	24,018	26,158	27,329	28,396	30,085

Defence spending was 13.8% of the budget in 1987 (14% in 1986). Local government revenue in 1987: 4,185m. won; expenditure, 3,427m. won.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *won*, divided into 100 *jun*. In March 1989, US\$1=0.97 *won*; £1=1.68 *won*.

**Weights and Measures.** While the metric system is in force traditional measures are in frequent use. The *jungbo*=1 hectare; the *ri*=3,927 metres.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There are 3 thermal power stations and 4 hydro-electric plants. A nuclear power plant is being built with Soviet help. Output in 1986, was 40,000m. kwh. Installed capacity was 6.11m. kw in 1987. Hydro-electric potential exceeds 8m. kw. A hydro-electric plant and dam under construction on the Pukhan near Mount Kumgang has been denounced as a flood threat by the South Koreans, who are constructing a defensive 'Peace Dam' in retaliation.

**Oil.** Oilwells went into production in 1957. An oil pipeline from China came on stream in 1976. Crude oil refining capacity was 70,000 barrels a year in 1986.

**Minerals.** North Korea is rich in minerals. Estimated reserves in tonnes: Iron ore, 3,300m.; copper, 2.15m.; lead, 6m.; zinc, 12m.; coal, 11,990m.; uranium, 26m.; manganese, 6,500m. 37.5m. tonnes of coal were mined in 1986. 16m. tonnes of iron ore were extracted in 1984.

**Agriculture.** In 1982 there were 2.1m. hectares of arable land, including 635,000 hectares of paddy fields. In 1982, 38% of the population made a living from agriculture.

Collectivization took place between 1954 and 1958. 90% of the cultivated land is farmed by co-operatives. Land belongs either to the State or to co-operatives, and it is intended gradually to transform the latter into the former, but small individually-tended plots producing for 'farmers' markets' are tolerated as a 'transition measure'. Livestock farming is mainly carried on by large state farms.

There is a large-scale tideland reclamation project. There were 37,600 km of irrigation canals in 1976, making possible 2 rice harvests a year. In 1982 there were 133,000 tractors (15 h.p. units). The technical revolution in agriculture (nearly 95% of ploughing, etc., is mechanized) has considerably increased the yield of grain (sown on 2.3m. *jungbo* of land); rice production, 1986, was 2m. tonnes, other grains, 4.83m. tonnes. 1,895,000 tonnes of potatoes were produced in 1986.

Livestock, 1987: 1.2m. cattle, 3.05m. pigs, 19m. poultry.

**Forestry.** Between 1961 and 1970, 800,000 hectares were afforested.

**Fisheries.** Catch in 1983: 1.6m. tonnes. There is a fishing fleet of 28,000 vessels including 19,000 motor vessels.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industries were intensively developed by the Japanese, notably cotton spinning, hydro-electric power, cotton, silk and rayon weaving, and chemical fertilizers. Production (in tonnes) in 1982: Pig-iron, 4m.; crude steel, 4m.; rolled



steel, 3.2m.; lead, 30,000; zinc, 140,000; copper, 48,000; ship-building, 400,000; chemical fertilizers, 620,000; chemicals, 20,000; synthetic resins, 90,000; cement (1986), 9,040; textiles (1986), 600m. metres; woven goods, 600m. metres; shoes, 40m. pairs; motor-cars (1986), 20,000; TV sets (1986), 240,000; refrigerators, 10,000. Annual steel production capacity was 4.3m. tonnes in 1987.

**Labour.** The economically-active population was 9m. in 1985. Industrial workers make up some 60% of the work force. Average monthly wage, 1984: 90 *won*.

**Commerce.** North Korea's largest trade partners have been USSR, China and Japan. Estimated exports, 1985: US\$1,234.6m. (US\$785.3m. to Communist countries); imports US\$1,991.5m. (US\$1,198.6m. from Communist countries). In Aug. 1987 140 Western banks declared North Korea in default on US\$770m. in outstanding loans. In 1984 foreign debt was estimated at US\$4,000m. (US\$2,230m. to non-Communist countries). The USA imposed sanctions in Jan. 1988 for alleged terrorist activities. The chief exports are metal ores and products, the chief imports machinery and petroleum products.

Joint ventures with foreign firms have been permitted since 1984.

Trade with the USSR is based on 5-year agreements, the last of which was signed in 1986.

Exports to the USSR in 1986 (and 1985) were worth 450.7m. (404.4m.) roubles; imports from the USSR, 757.2m. (654.8m.) roubles.

Total trade between North Korea and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	456	1,983	1,374	641	824
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,935	2,608	3,331	2,198	3,125

**Tourism.** A 40-year ban on non-Communist tourists was lifted in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 22,000 km of road in 1984, including 240 km of motorways. There were 180,000 motor cars in 1982. A 200 km 4-lane highway began construction in 1988 from Pyongyang to Kaesong.

**Railways.** The two trunk-lines Pyongyang-Sinuiju and Pyongyang-Myongchon are both electrified, and the Pyongyang-Sariwon trunk is in course of electrification. The 'Wonra' line runs from Wonsan to Rajin and is electrified from Myongchon to Rajin and beyond to Tumangang. The Namdokchon-Toknam line was opened in 1983. Lines are under construction from Pukchong to Toksong, from Palwon to Kujang and Kanggye *via* Hyesan to Musan. In 1987 the Unbong-Cha Song and Huju-Hyesan sections of this latter were opened. In 1988 there were 4,549 km of track, (2,706 km were electrified in 1984). In 1986, 89% of trains were hauled by electricity. In 1987 86% of all freight was transported by rail. A weekly service from Pyongyang to Beijing opened in 1983, and a twice-weekly service to Moscow in 1987.

**Aviation.** There are services to Moscow, Khabarovsk, Beijing and Hong Kong. An agreement envisaging a service from Pyongyang to Tokyo was signed in 1986. There are domestic flights from Pyongyang to Hamhung and Chongjin.

**Shipping.** The leading ports are Chongjin, Wonsan and Hungnam. Nampo, the port of Pyongyang, has been dredged and expanded. Pyongyang is connected to Nampo by railway and river. In 1987 the ocean-going merchant fleet numbered 71 vessels totalling 407,253 GRT.

The biggest navigable river is the Yalu, 698 km up to the Hyesan district.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There is a central TV station at Pyongyang and stations at Kaesong and Mansudae. In 1982 there were some 200,000 television receivers. The central broadcasting station is Radio Pyongyang. There are several local stations and a station for overseas broadcasts. There were some 10,000 telephones in 1983.

**Newspapers.** There were 11 newspapers in 1984. The party newspaper is *Nodong* (or *Rodong*) *Sinmun* (Workers' Daily News). Circulation about 600,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judiciary consists of the Supreme Court, whose judges are elected by the Assembly for 3 years; provincial courts; and city or county people's courts. The procurator-general, appointed by the Assembly, has supervisory powers over the judiciary and the administration; the Supreme Court controls the judicial administration.

**Religion.** The Constitution provides for 'freedom of religion as well as the freedom of anti-religious propaganda'. In 1986 there were 3m. Chondoists, 400,000 Buddhists and 200,000 Christians. Another 3m. followed traditional beliefs.

**Education.** Free compulsory universal technical education lasts 11 years: 1 pre-school year, 4 years primary education starting at the age of 6, followed by 6 years secondary.

In 1988 there were 47,600 kindergartens. In 1980 there were some 10,000 11-year schools. In 1982–83 there were 5.2m. pupils and 110,000 teachers, and nearly 1m. students in higher education. In 1985 there were 216 institutes of higher education, including 3 universities—Kim Il Sung University (founded 1946), Kim Chaek Technical University, Pyongyang Medical School—and an Academy of Sciences (founded 1952).

In 1977–78 Kim Il Sung University had some 17,000 students.

**Health.** Medical treatment is free. In 1982 there were 1,531 general hospitals, 979 specialised hospitals and 5,414 clinics. There were 24 doctors and 130 hospital beds per 10,000 population in 1983.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVE

Of North Korea to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Pak Gil Yon.

## Further Reading

- An, T. S., *North Korea in Transition*. Westport, 1983;—*North Korea: a Political Handbook*. Washington, 1983  
 Baik Bong, *Kim Il Sung: Biography*. 3 vols. New York, 1969–70  
 Chung, C.-S., (ed.) *North Korean Communism: A Comparative Analysis*. Seoul, 1980  
 Kihl, Y. W., *Politics and Policies in Divided Korea*. Boulder, 1984  
 Kim Han Gil, *Modern History of Korea*. Pyongyang, 1979  
 Kim Il Sung, *Works*. Pyongyang, 1980–83  
 Kim, Y. S., (ed.) *The Economy of the Korean Democratic People's Republic, 1945–1977*. Kiel, 1979  
 Koh, B. C., *The Foreign Policy Systems of North and South Korea*. Berkeley, 1984  
 Park, J. K. and Kim, J.-G., *The Politics of North Korea*. Boulder, 1979  
 Scalapino, R. A. and Lee, C.-S., *Communism in Korea. Part I: The Movement. Part II: The Society*. Univ. of Calif. Press, 1972—and Kim, J.-Y. (eds.), *North Korea Today: Strategic and Domestic Issues*. Univ. of California Press, 1983  
 Suh, D.-S., *Korean Communism, 1945–1980: A Reference Guide to the Political System*. Honolulu, 1981  
 Yang, S. C., *Korea and Two Regimes: Kim Il Sung and Park Chung Hee*. Cambridge, Mass., 1981

# KUWAIT

*Capital:* Kuwait

*Population:* 1.96m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$13,890 (1986)

## Dowlat al Kuwait

**HISTORY.** The ruling dynasty was founded by Shaikh Sabah al-Owel, who ruled from 1756 to 1772. In 1899 the then ruler Shaikh Mubarak concluded a treaty with Great Britain wherein, in return for the assurance of British protection, he undertook not to alienate any of his territory without the agreement of Her Majesty's Government. In 1914 the British Government recognized Kuwait as an independent government under British protection. On 19 June 1961 an agreement reaffirmed the independence and sovereignty of Kuwait and recognized the Government of Kuwait's responsibility for the conduct of internal and external affairs; the agreement of 1899 was terminated and Her Majesty's Government expressed their readiness to assist the Government of Kuwait should they request such assistance.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kuwait is bounded east by the Gulf, north and west by Iraq and south and south-west by Saudi Arabia, with an area of about 6,880 sq. miles (17,819 sq. km); the total population at the census of 1985 was 1,697,301, of which about 60% were non-Kuwaitis. Estimate (1988) 1.96m. Over 78% speak Arabic, the official language, while 10% speak Kurdish and 4% Iranian (Farsi). English is also used as a second language.

The country is divided into 4 governorates: The capital (comprising Kuwait City, Kuwait's 9 islands and territorial and shared territorial waters), with an area of 983 sq. km (population 167,750 at 1985 census); Hawalli, 620 sq. km (943,250); Ahmadi, 4,665 sq. km (304,662) and Jahra, 11,550 sq. km (279,466).

The chief cities were (census, 1985) Kuwait, the capital (44,335), and its suburbs Hawalli (145,126), as-Salimiya (153,369) and Jahra (111,222).

The Neutral Zone (3,560 sq. miles, 5,700 sq. km), jointly owned and administered by Kuwait and Saudi Arabia from 1922 to 1966, was partitioned between the two countries in May 1966, but the exploitation of the oil and other natural resources will continue to be shared.

**CLIMATE.** Kuwait has a dry, desert climate which is cool in winter but very hot and humid in summer. Rainfall is extremely light. Kuwait. Jan. 56°F (13.5°C), July 99°F (36.6°C). Annual rainfall 5" (125 mm).

**RULER.** HH Shaikh Jabir al-Ahmad al-Jabir al-Sabah the 13th Amir of Kuwait, succeeded on 31 Dec. 1977.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In 1976 the Amir dissolved the Assembly and at the same time parts of the Constitution were suspended. Elections were held in Feb. 1985 for the 50-member National Assembly. Executive authority is vested in the Council of Ministers.

The Cabinet in Oct. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* HRH Crown Prince Shaikh Saad al-Abdullah as Salim as Sabah.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Foreign Affairs:* Shaikh Sabah al Ahmad al Jabir as Sabah. *Finance and Economy:* Jassim Mohammed al Kharafi. *Education:* Anwar Abdullah al Nuri. *Waqfs and Islamic Affairs:* Khaled Ahmed Saad al Jasir. *Defence:* Shaikh Nawaf al Ahmad al Jabir as Sabah. *Justice, Legal and Administrative Affairs:* Dari Abdullah al Uthman. *Public Works:* Abdel Rahman Ibrahim al Houti. *Public Health:* Dr Abdurrahman Abdullah al Awadi. *Planning:* Mohammed Soleiman Said Ali. *Oil:* Shaikh Ali al Khalifa al Adhibi as Sabah. *Communications:* Khalid Jumayan Salim al Jumayan. *Electricity and Water:* Mohammed as Saad Abdel Moshin al Rifai. *Information:* Shaikh Nasser



Mohammed al Ahmad al Jabir as Sabah. *Social Affairs and Labour*: Jabir Mubarak al Hamad. *Interior*: Shaikh Salim as Sabah as Salim as Sabah. *Trade and Industry*: Faisal Abdel Razzaq al Khaled.

There are 5 Ministers of State.

**Flag:** Three horizontal stripes of green, white, red, with a black trapezium based on the hoist.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is compulsory for 24 months (university students, 12 months).

**Army.** Kuwait maintains a small, well-equipped and mobile army of 2 armoured and 1 mechanized infantry brigades and 1 surface-to-surface missile battalion. Equipment includes 70 Vickers Mk 1, 40 Centurion and 165 Chieftain main battle tanks. Strength (1989) about 16,000 men.

**Navy.** The flotillas comprise 6 fast missile craft, 2 larger fast missile gunboats (all eight West German-built); 40 coastal patrol craft built by Vosper/Thornycroft; 15 light patrol boats; 27 US-built very fast cutters; 6 general purpose launches; 6 Vosper Singapore-built landing craft, 4 other amphibious ships and 4 tugs.

Six hovercraft are reportedly to be ordered, and probably fast attack craft, patrol vessels and mine countermeasures vessels.

A Japanese firm was awarded the contract for the construction of a base to accommodate the planned expansion of the coastguard force.

In 1989 personnel totalled 2,100 officers and men.

**Air Force.** From a small initial combat force the Air Force has grown rapidly. It has 2 squadrons with 25 Mirage F1-C fighters and 4 Mirage F1-B 2-seat trainers; and 2 squadrons with 30 A-4KU/TA-4KU Skyhawk attack aircraft. Other equipment includes 2 DC-9 jet transports, 4 L-100-30 Hercules turboprop transports and 12 Hawk jet trainers, 10 Puma, 6 Exocet missile-armed Super Puma and 25 missile-armed Gazelle helicopters. Hawk surface-to-air missiles are in service. Personnel strength (1989) about 2,200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Kuwait is a member of UN, the Arab League, Gulf Co-operation Council, OPEC and OAPEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 5-year development plan runs from 1986-90.

**Budget.** The financial year runs 1 April-31 March. In 1985-86 revenue, KD 3,116m.; expenditure, KD 4,175m.

**Currency.** The Kuwait *dinar* of 1,000 *fil*s replaced the Indian external rupee on 1 April 1961. Coins in circulation are, 1, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100 *fil*s and notes of KD, 20, 10, 5, 1, ½ and ¼. In March 1989, £1 sterling = KD 0.498; US\$1 = KD 0.289.

**Banking.** In addition to the Central Bank, 7 commercial banks (Bank of Kuwait and the Middle East, National Bank of Kuwait, Commercial Bank of Kuwait, Gulf Bank, Al-Ahli Bank, Burgan Bank and Bank of Bahrain and Kuwait) and 3 specialized banks (Credit and Savings Bank, Kuwait Real Estate Bank and Industrial Bank of Kuwait) operate in Kuwait. There is also the Kuwait Finance House, which is not subject to the control of the Central Bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was adopted in 1962.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** 16,360m. kwh. were produced in 1986. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The Kuwait Petroleum Corporation (KPC) was set up in 1980 to reorganize, integrate and develop the oil sector. The functions of the operating oil companies have been reallocated: Kuwait Oil Company (KOC) specializes in exploration,

drilling and production in all areas; Kuwait National Petroleum Company (KNPC) is responsible for refining, local marketing and gas liquefaction operations; Kuwait Oil Tankers Company (KOTC) is in charge of transporting crude oil, liquefied gas and oil products to various world markets; Petrochemical Industries Company is in charge of use of hydrocarbon resources to set up diverse petrochemical industries, and the International Marketing Department of KPC markets and sells oil and gas worldwide.

Oil revenues in 1983–84 were KD2,787.6m. Crude oil production in 1988, 73m. tonnes. As well as selling crude oil, Kuwait is refining, marketing refined products, and prospecting and producing abroad. Production of petroleum products in 1984, 24,266,000 tonnes.

**Gas.** Production (1983) 170,200m. cu. ft.

**Water.** In 1986 there were 5 distillation plants with a daily total capacity of 215m. gallons. Fresh mineral water is pumped and bottled at Rawdhatain. Underground brackish water is used for irrigation, street cleaning and livestock; production, 1985, 18,000m. gallons.

**Agriculture.** In 1985 the area of cultivated land was 20m. sq. metres and there were 27 dairy farms with a total production capacity of about 30,000 tonnes of fresh milk. Major crops (production, 1986, in tonnes) were melons (2,000), tomatoes (15,000), onions (2,000), dates (2,000), radishes, clover.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 25,000; sheep, 265,000; goats, 320,000; poultry, 23m.

**Fisheries.** Shrimp fishing is becoming one of the important non-oil industries.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1985 there were 600 industrial establishments and 50,000 workers in the industrial sector. Industries, apart from oil, include boat building, fishing, food production, petrochemicals, gases and construction. The manufacture or import of alcoholic drinks is prohibited.

**Trade Unions.** In 1986 there were 16 trade unions and 17 labour federations.

**Labour.** In 1985 the labour force totalled 670,385, with 530,996 employed.

**Commerce.** The port of Kuwait formerly served mainly as an entrepôt for goods for the interior, for the export of skins and wool, and for pearl fishing. Entrepôt trade continues but, with the development of the oil industry, is declining in importance. Pearl fishing is now on a small scale. Dhows and launches of traditional construction are still built.

In 1984 total imports were valued at KD2,042m.; exports, KD3,632m. Oil accounted for 83.5% of exports at KD2,938m.

Major domestic exports include chemical fertilizers and other chemicals, shrimps, metal pipes and building materials, which represent about 33% of total non-oil products. The other 66% come from re-exports, particularly of machinery, transport equipment, foodstuffs and some industrial goods, which go mainly to neighbouring Arab countries.

Main imports include machinery, electrical generators, appliances, cars and medicines.

Total trade between Kuwait and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK <sup>1</sup>	141,606	156,912	58,517	81,530	72,318
Exports and re-exports from UK	301,520	347,915	300,586	225,168	237,515

<sup>1</sup> Including oil.

**Tourism.** There were 116,000 visitors in 1985.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 3,800 km and the number of vehicles was 560,000 (private cars 406,000).

**Aviation.** There were 29,000 scheduled and unscheduled flights to and from Kuwait International Airport in 1985, carrying 2,257,000 passengers and 74,000 tonnes of freight. Kuwait Airways flew 5,000 flights in 1984, carrying about 1.5m. passengers and 8m. tonnes of cargo. Forty airlines operate at the airport.

**Shipping.** The largest oil terminal is at Mina Ahmade, which received 348 oil tankers in 1984. Three small oil ports lie to the south of Mina Ahmade: Mina Shuaiba (250 oil tankers in 1984); Mina Abdullah (25) and Mina Al-Zor (40). The main ports for other traffic are at Shuwaikh, where 1,585 ships docked in 1985, discharging 5m. tonnes of goods; Shuaiba, about 3.75m. tonnes were handled in 1985 (3.1m. imported, 650,000 exported), and Doha.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1984), 419,200 telephones and there is a broadcasting and a television station. In 1985 there were 580,000 TV receivers and 750,000 radios.

**Cinemas.** In 1984 there were 14 cinemas, including 2 drive-ins.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there were 5 daily newspapers in Arabic and 2 in English, with a combined circulation of about 418,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1960 Kuwait adopted a unified judicial system covering all levels of courts. These are: Courts of Summary Justice, Courts of the First Instance, Supreme Court of Appeal, Court of Cassation, Constitutional Court and State Security Court. Islamic Sharia is a major source of legislation.

**Religion.** In 1980 about 78% of the population were Sunni Moslems, 14% Shia Moslems, 6% Christians and 2% others.

**Education.** In 1984-85 there were 350,604 pupils in 562 government schools: 24,150 in kindergartens, 126,441 in primary schools, 119,037 in intermediate schools and 77,626 in secondary schools. There were also (1984-85) 60,000 pupils in 42 Arab and 30 foreign private schools. In 1983-84 there were 2,378 students in the Teachers' Training Institute, 1,186 in the Institute of Applied Technology, 1,500 in the Religious Institute, 2,603 in the Commercial Institute and 340 in the Clinical Institute. The University of Kuwait had 15,990 students and 877 teachers in 1985-86.

**Health.** Medical services are free to all residents. There were (1985) 25 hospitals and sanatoria with 5,886 beds, 64 clinics and 25 health centres. In 1985 there were 2,692 doctors, 291 dentists and 8,557 nursing staff.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Kuwait in Great Britain (45 Queen's Gate, London, SW7)

*Ambassador:* Ghazi Mohammed Amin Al-Rayes (accredited 12 Feb. 1981).

Of Great Britain in Kuwait (Arabian Gulf St., Kuwait)

*Ambassador:* P. R. M. Hinchcliffe, CMG, CVO.

Of Kuwait in the USA (2940 Tilden St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Shaikh Saud Nasir Al-Sabah.

Of the USA in Kuwait (PO Box 77, Safat, Kuwait)

*Ambassador:* W. Nathaniel Howell.

Of Kuwait to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mohammad A. Abulhasan.

## Further Reading

*Arabian Year Book.* Kuwait, 1978

*Annual Statistical Abstract of Kuwait.* Kuwait

*Kuwait Facts and Figures 1986.* Ministry of Information, 1987

Clements, F. A., *Kuwait.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985

Girgis, M., (ed.) *Industrial Progress in Small Oil-Exporting Countries: The Prospect for Kuwait.* Harlow, 1984

Sabah, Y. S. F., *The Oil Economy of Kuwait.* London, 1980



# LAOS

Capital: Vientiane

Population: 3·83m. (1987)

GNP per capita: US\$220 (1984)

**HISTORY.** The Lao People's Democratic Republic was founded on 2 Dec. 1975. Until that date Laos was a Kingdom, once called Lanxang (the land of a million elephants).

In 1893 Laos became a French protectorate and in 1907 acquired its present frontiers. In 1941 French authority was suppressed by the Japanese. When the Japanese withdrew in 1945 an independence movement known as Lao Issara (Free Laos) set up a government under Prince Phetsarath, the Viceroy of Luang Prabang. This government collapsed with the return of the French in 1946 and the leaders of the movement fled to Thailand.

Under a new Constitution of 1947 Laos became a constitutional monarchy under the Luang Prabang dynasty, and in 1949 became an independent sovereign state within the French Union. Most of the Lao Issara leaders returned to Laos but a few remained in dissidence under Prince Souphanouvong, who allied himself with the Vietminh and subsequently formed the 'Pathet Lao' (Lao State) rebel movement.

The war in Laos from 1953 to 1973 between the Royal Lao Government (supported by American bombing and Thai mercenaries) and the Patriotic Front *Pathet Lao* (supported by large numbers of North Vietnamese troops) ended in 1973 when an agreement and a protocol were signed. A provisional coalition government was formed by the two sides in 1974. However, after the communist victories in neighbouring Vietnam and Cambodia in April 1975, the *Pathet Lao* took over the running of the whole country, although maintaining the façade of a coalition. On 29 Nov. 1975 HM King Savang Vatthana signed a letter of abdication and the People's Congress proclaimed a People's Democratic Republic of Laos on 2 Dec. For the history of *Pathet Lao* and the military intervention of the Vietminh, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1971-72, pp. 1126-28 and 1975-76 ed., pp. 1115-16.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Laos is a landlocked country of about 91,400 sq. miles (236,800 sq. km) bordered on the north by China, the east by Vietnam, the south by Cambodia and the west by Thailand and Burma. Apart from the Mekong River plains along the border of Thailand, the country is mountainous, particularly in the north, and in places densely forested.

The population (census, 1985) was 3,584,803 (1,757,115 male); estimate (1987) 3·83m. The most heavily populated areas are the Mekong River plains by the Thailand border. Otherwise, the population is sparse and scattered, particularly in the northern provinces, and the eastern part of the country has been depopulated by war. The majority of the population is officially divided into 4 groups: about 56% Lao-Lum (Valley-Lao), 34% Lao-Theung (Lao of the mountain sides); and 9% Lao-Soung (Lao of the mountain tops), who comprise the Meo and Yao. Other minorities include Vietnamese, Chinese, Europeans, Indians and Pakistanis.

The Lao-Lum and Lao-Tai belong to the Lao branch of the Tai peoples, who migrated into South-East Asia at the time of the Mongol invasion of South China. The valley Lao are Buddhists, following the Hinayana (Theravada) form. The majority of the Lao-Theungma diverse group consisting of many tribes but mostly belonging to the Mon-Khmer group—are animists.

The Meo and Yao live in northern Laos. Far greater numbers live in both North Vietnam and China, having migrated over the last century. Their religions have strong Confucian and animistic features but some are Christians.

There are 17 provinces. Compared with other parts of Asia, Laos has few towns. The administrative capital and largest town is Vientiane, with a population of census (1985) 377,409. Other important towns (1973) are Luang Prabang, 44,244; Pakse, 44,860, in the extreme south, and Savannakhet, 50,690.

*Language:* Lao is the official language of the country. The liturgical language of Theravada Buddhism is Pali.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical monsoon climate, with high temperatures throughout the year and very heavy rains from May to Oct. Vientiane. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 69" (1,715 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 2 Dec. 1975 a national congress of 264 people's representatives met and declared Laos a People's Democratic Republic. A People's Supreme Council was appointed to draw up a new Constitution.

*Acting President:* Phoumi Vongvichit.

*Prime Minister, Secretary General of the Central Committee of the Lao People's Revolutionary Party:* Kaysone Phomvihane.

*First Deputy Prime Minister, Deputy Secretary General of the Central Committee of the Lao People's Revolutionary Party:* Nouhak Phounsavanh.

The Politbureau of the LPRP comprises the above 3 plus: Phoumi Vongvichit <sup>1</sup>, Gen. Phoune Sipraseuth <sup>1</sup> (*Minister of Foreign Affairs*), Gen. Khamtai Siphandon <sup>1</sup> (*Minister of National Defence, Supreme Commander of the Lao People's Army*) and Sisomphon Lovansay (*Vice-President of the Supreme People's Assembly*). Ministers not in the Politbureau include Saly Vongkhamso <sup>1</sup> (*Chairman of State Planning Committee*).

<sup>1</sup> Vice-Chairman of the Council of Ministers.

There are 4 deputy prime ministers.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, blue, red, with blue of double width with in the centre a large white disc.

*National anthem:* Peng Sat Lao (Hymn of the Lao People).

*Provincial Administration:* All provincial administration is in the hands of the Lao People's Revolutionary Party. Orders come from the Central Committee through a series of 'People's Revolutionary Committees' at the province, town and village level.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is compulsory for 18 months.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 5 infantry divisions; 1 engineering regiment, 7 independent infantry regiments and 65 independent infantry companies; and 5 artillery and 9 anti-aircraft battalions. Equipment includes 30 T-34, T-55 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) about 52,500.

**Navy.** There were nominally 4 squadrons comprising 42 small river patrol craft of 6 different types, of which 14 were in commission and 28 in reserve; but the situation is very uncertain. Some 70 river patrol boats were reportedly transferred from Vietnam and 46 river patrol craft from the USSR in 1986 for operations on the Mekong. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled about 1,650 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** Since 1975, the Air Force has received aircraft from the USSR, including 40 MiG-21 fighters, 6 An-24 and 3 An-26 turboprop transports and 10 Mi-8 helicopters. They may be supplemented by a few of the C-47 and C-123 transports, and UH-1 Iroquois, supplied by the USA to the former régime. Personnel strength, about 2,000 in 1989.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Laos is a member of UN.

**Aid.** Foreign aid in 1986, was US\$44m.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The priorities of the second Five Year Plan, 1986-90 continues to be infrastructure projects (telecommunications and transport), agriculture (crop diversification and improving paddy production), and agro-industrial processing.

In 1988, in an attempt to stimulate the economy, the Government introduced an investment code designed to permit foreign companies to participate in Lao business ventures, and directives on the decentralization of decision-making in state/public enterprises and on the limited increase of private sector activities.

**Budget.** Total revenue 1984, K.4,947m.; total expenditure, K.8,384m.

**Currency.** The currency is the new *kip*. 1 *kip* = 100 *att*. Coinage, 1, 2 and 5 *att*; banknotes, 1, 5, 10, 20 and 50 *kip*. The official rate of exchange was (March 1989) K.432 = US\$1; £1 = K743.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Only a few towns in Laos have an electricity service. The Nam Ngum Dam situated about 45 miles north of Vientiane was inaugurated in Dec. 1971 with an initial installed capacity of 30,000 kw, and a planned ultimate capacity of 150,000 kw by 1985. Total installed capacity (1985) was 168,000 kw. Transmission lines to Vientiane and to Thailand have been constructed. Production (1986) 900m. kwh. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Various minerals are found, but only tin is mined to any significant extent at present, and only at 2 mines. Production of tin concentrates (1986) 559 tonnes. There are extremely rich deposits of high-quality iron in Xieng Khouang province and potash near Vientiane.

**Agriculture.** The chief products are rice (production in 1986, 1.49m. tonnes), maize (production 37,000 tonnes), tobacco (3,000 tonnes), seed-cotton (18,000 tonnes), citrus fruits, sticklack, benjohn tea and in the Boloven plateau coffee (6,000 tonnes), potatoes, cardamom and cinchara. Opium is produced but its manufacture is controlled by the state.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 593,000; buffaloes, 1.05m. horses, 44,000; pigs, 1,565,000; goats, 74,000; poultry, 8m.

**Forestry.** The forests, which cover over 50% of the country, produce valuable woods such as teak.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry is limited to beer, cigarettes, matches, soft drinks, plastic bags, saw-mills, rice-mills, weaving, pottery, distilleries, ice, plywood, bricks, etc. but most factories have been working at limited capacity in recent years. Plans for increased production are limited by lack of funds and skilled machine operators.

**Commerce.** In 1986 imports (estimate) amounted to US\$113m. and exports to US\$70m. The main imports were food and beverages, petroleum products and agricultural and other machinery. The chief supplying countries were Thailand and Japan. The main exports were timber and electricity.

Total trade between Laos and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	238	6	150	621	2
Exports and re-exports from UK	721	523	1,460	1,742	1,332

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 the national road network, consisted of 2,350 km paved, 3,250 km gravel and 6,780 km earth roads.

**Railways.** There is no railway in Laos, but the Thai railway system extends to Nongkhai, on the Thai bank of the Mekong, which is connected by ferry with Thadeua about 12 miles east of Vientiane.

**Aviation.** Lao Aviation provides scheduled domestic air services linking major towns in Laos and international services to Bangkok, Phnom Penh and Hanoi. Thai International, Aeroflot and Air Vietnam provide flights from Bangkok, Hanoi, Rangoon, Ho Chi Min City and Moscow.



**Shipping.** The river Mekong and its tributaries are an important means of transport, but rapids, waterfalls and narrow channels often impede navigation and make trans-shipments necessary.

**Telecommunications.** There is a radio network in Laos as well as a limited TV service with the main station at Vientiane. There were (1984) about 225,000 radio and 30,000 television receivers. A ground station constructed near Vientiane under the Soviet aid programme enables USSR television programmes to be received in the capital. It also provides a telephone service to Hanoi and Eastern Europe.

In 1985 there were 8,136 telephones in Laos.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** The majority of the population is Buddhist (Hinayana) but 34% follow tribal religions.

**Education.** In 1982–83 school year there were 6,525 elementary schools (481,000 pupils); 420 secondary schools (65,000 pupils); 60 senior high schools (17,000 pupils); and 55 vocational schools (13,000 students).

Literacy has improved from 40% in 1975, 65% in 1978 to 85% in 1981 according to official reports.

There is 1 teachers' training college, 1 college of education, 1 school of medicine, 1 agricultural college and an advanced school of Pali.

Sisavangvong University in Vientiane (founded 1958) had 1,600 students in 1984, and there are regional technical colleges in Luang Prabang, Savannakhet and Champasak.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 430 doctors and 11,650 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Laos in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Thongsay Bodhisane (accredited 17 Nov. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Laos

*Ambassador:* Derek Tonkin, CMG (resides in Bangkok).

Of Laos in USA (2222 S. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Done Somvorachit.

Of USA in Laos

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Harriet W. Isom.

Of Laos to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Kithong Vongsay.

## Further Reading

Cordell, H., *Laos*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Deuve, J., *Le royaume du Laos 1949–1965*. Paris, 1984

Stuart-Cox, M., *Contemporary Laos*. Univ. of Queensland Press, 1983.—*Laos: Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1986

Zaslloff, J. J., *The Pathet Lao: Leadership and Organization*. Lexington, Toronto and London, 1973

# LEBANON

al-Jumhuriya  
al-Lubnaniya

*Capital:* Beirut  
*Population:* 3.5m. (1984)  
*GNP per capita:* No reliable  
figures available.

**HISTORY.** After 20 years' French mandatory regime, Lebanon was proclaimed independent at Beirut on 26 Nov. 1941. On 27 Dec. 1943 an agreement was signed between representatives of the French National Committee of Liberation and of Lebanon, by which most of the powers and capacities exercised hitherto by France were transferred as from 1 Jan. 1944 to the Lebanese Government. The evacuation of foreign troops was completed in Dec. 1946.

In early May 1958 the opposition to President Chamoun, consisting principally (though not entirely) of Moslem pro-Nasserist elements, rose in insurrection; and for 5 months the Moslem quarters of Beirut, Tripoli, Sidon and the northern Bekaa were in insurgent hands. On 15 July the US Government acceded to President Chamoun's request and landed a considerable force of army and marines who re-established the authority of the Government.

Israeli attacks on Lebanon resulted from the presence and activities of armed Palestinian resistance units. Internal problems, which had long been latent in Lebanese society, were exacerbated by the politically active Palestinian population and by the deeply divisive question of the Palestine problem itself. An attempt to regulate the activities of Palestinian fighters through the secret Cairo agreement of 1969 was frustrated both by the inability of the Government to enforce its provisions and by an influx of battle-hardened fighters expelled from Jordan in Sept. 1970. A further attempt to control the guerrillas in 1973 also failed. From March 1975, Lebanon was beset by civil disorder causing considerable loss of life and economic life was brought to a virtual standstill.

By Nov. 1976 however, large scale fighting had been brought to an end by the intervention of the Syrian-dominated Arab Deterrent Force which ensured sufficient security to permit Lebanon to establish quasi-normal conditions under President Sarkis. Large areas of the country, however, remained outside Governmental control, including West Beirut which was the scene of frequent conflict between opposing militia groups. The South, where the Arab Deterrent Force could not deploy, remained unsettled and subject to frequent Israeli attacks. In March 1978 there was an Israeli invasion following a Palestinian attack inside Israel. Israeli troops eventually withdrew in June, but instead of handing over all their positions to UN Peacekeeping Forces they installed Israeli-controlled Lebanese militia forces in border areas. Severe disruption continued in the South. In June 1982, following on the attempted assassination of the Israeli ambassador in London, Israeli forces once again invaded, this time in massive strength, and swept through the country, eventually laying siege to and devastatingly bombing Beirut. In Sept. Palestinian forces, together with the PLO leadership, evacuated Beirut. On 23 Aug. 1982 Bachir Gemayel was elected President of Lebanon. On 14 Sept. he was assassinated. His brother, Amin Gemayel, was elected in his place on 21 Sept. Since then there has been a state of 'no peace, no war' with intermittent clashes between the various *de facto* forces on the ground. Israeli forces started a complete withdrawal on 16 Feb. 1985. A peace agreement was signed by the leaders of the Druse, Amal and (Christian) Lebanese Forces to end the civil war on 28 Dec. 1985 but its terms were not implemented. Syrian forces were acting as a peace keeping force between rival militias in early 1989.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Lebanon is a mountainous country about 135 miles long and varying between 20 and 35 miles wide, bounded on the north and east by Syria, on the west by the Mediterranean and on the south by Israel. Between

the two parallel mountain ranges of Lebanon and Anti-Lebanon lies the fertile Bekaa Valley. About one-half of the country lies at an altitude of over 3,000 ft.

The area of Lebanon is estimated at 10,452 sq. km (4,036 sq. miles) and the population at 3.5m. (1984, estimate) but there are no reliable estimates. The principal towns, with estimated population (1980), are: Beirut (the capital), 702,000; Tripoli 175,000; Zahlé, 46,800; Saida (Sidon), 24,740; Tyre, 14,000.

The official language is Arabic. French and, increasingly, English are widely spoken in official and commercial circles.

**CLIMATE.** A Mediterranean climate with short, warm winters and long, hot and rainless summers, with high humidity in coastal areas. Rainfall is largely confined to the winter months and can be torrential, with snow on high ground. Beirut. Jan. 55°F (13°C), July 81°F (27°C). Annual rainfall 35.7" (893 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Lebanon is an independent republic. The first Constitution was established under the French Mandate on 23 May 1926. It has since been amended in 1927, 1929, 1943 (twice) and 1947. It is a written constitution based on the classical separation of powers, with a President, a single chamber elected by universal adult suffrage, and an independent judiciary. The Executive consists of the President and a Prime Minister and Cabinet appointed by him. The system is, however, adapted to the peculiar communal balance on which Lebanese political life depends. This is done by the electoral law which allocates deputies according to the confessional distribution of the population, and by a series of constitutional conventions whereby, e.g., the President is always a Maronite Christian, the Prime Minister a Sunni Moslem and the Speaker of the Assembly a Shia Moslem. There is no highly developed party system other than on religious confessional lines.

#### Former Presidents of the Republic:

Bishara al-Khuri, 1 Jan. 1944–23 Sept. 1952

Camille Chamoun, 23 Sept. 1952–23 Sept. 1958

Gen. Fouad Chehab, 23 Sept. 1958–23 Sept. 1964

Charles Hélou, 23 Sept. 1964–17 June 1970

Suleiman Frangié, 17 June 1970–13 Sept. 1976

Elias Sarkis, 13 Sept. 1976–23 Sept. 1982

Bachir Gemayel, 23 Aug. 1982–14 Sept. 1982 (assassinated)

*President of the Republic:* Amin Gemayel (elected on 21 Sept. 1982 and took office on 23 Sept.).

On 1 May 1984, a new government was formed and aims to achieve constitutional and power-sharing reforms on the basis of a wide measure of consensus.

The Cabinet was composed as follows in Dec. 1987:

*Acting Prime Minister, Foreign Affairs, Labour and Education:* Dr Selim Hoss.

*Public Works, Transport and Tourism:* Walid Jumblatt. *Posts and Communications, Health and Social Affairs:* Joseph Hashem. *Finance, Housing and Co-operatives:* Camille Chamoun. *Justice, Hydroelectricity, Minister of State for Reconstruction and for Southern Lebanon:* Nabih Berri. *Defence, Agriculture:* Adel Osseirane. *Information:* Joseph Skaff. *Interior:* Abdullah al-Rassi. *Economy, Trade and Industry:* Victor Kassir.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, red, with the white of double width and bearing in the centre a green cedar of Lebanon.

*National anthem:* Kulluna lil watan lil 'ula lil' alam (words by Rashid Nachleh, tune by Mitri El-Murr).

*Local government:* The 6 governorates (including the city of Beirut) are subdivided into 26 districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The strength of the Army was about 15,000 in 1989 but it is in a state of flux



and most of its units are well below strength. Its equipment includes M-48 and AMX-13 tanks and Saladin armoured cars. In addition, there are numerous private militias under arms in Lebanon, divided between the Maronite-Christian factions, notably the Phalange of some 10,000 men, and the Moslem-Leftist groups, such as the Druze Free Lebanese Militia led by Walid Jumblatt.

**Navy.** The small flotilla includes 4 old French-built patrol boats (replacement craft to be acquired), 2 new French-built landing craft and 8 coastal patrol craft (2 British-built). Personnel in 1989 totalled 400 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had (1989) about 800 men and 50 aircraft. In addition to 6 Hunter jet fighter-bombers, it has (in storage) 9 Mirage III supersonic fighters and 1 Mirage 2-seat trainer. Other aircraft include 1 Dove light transport, 12 Alouette II and III, 4 Gazelle, 10 Puma and 9 Agusta-Bell 212 helicopters, and 5 Fouga Magister jet and 5 piston-engined Bulldog trainers. Serviceability of most aircraft is low because of the troubled national political situation.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Lebanon is a member of UN and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** Since the civil war a Development and Reconstruction Council has been responsible for co-ordinating all efforts.

**Budget.** The budget for 1985 provides for a total expenditure of £Leb.10,000m.

**Currency.** The Lebanese *pound*, divided into 100 *piastres*, is issued by the Banque du Liban, which commenced operations on 1 April 1964. There is a fluctuating official rate of exchange, fixed monthly (March 1989: £Leb.803.96 = £1 sterling; £Leb.467 = US\$1), this in practice is used only for the calculation of *ad-valorem* customs duties on Lebanese imports and for import statistics. For other purposes the free market is used.

**Banking.** Beirut was an important international financial centre, and there were about 80 banks registered with the central bank in 1979. As a result of the civil war, Beirut has lost much of its status as an international and regional banking centre; in general only local offices for banks remain.

**Weights and Measures.** The use of the metric system is legal and obligatory throughout the whole of the country. In outlying districts the former weights and measures may still be in use. They are: 1 *okiya* = 0.47 lb.; 6 *okiyas* = 1 *oke* = 2.82 lb.; 2 *okes* = 1 *rottol* = 5.64 lb.; 200 *okes* = 1 *kantar*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power production (1986) was 2,270m. kwh. Supply 110 and 120 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** There are 2 oil refineries in Lebanon, one at Tripoli, which refines oil brought by ship from Iraq, and the other at Sidon, which refines oil brought from Saudi Arabia by a pipeline owned by the Trans-Arabian Pipeline Co. These refineries were not fully active in 1987 and the country depends on imports.

**Minerals.** Iron ore exists but is difficult to work. Other minerals known to exist are iron pyrites, copper, bituminous shales, asphalt, phosphates, ceramic clays and glass sand; but the available information is of doubtful value.

**Agriculture.** Lebanon is essentially an agricultural country, although owing to its physical character only about 38% of the total area of the country is at present cultivated.

The estimated production (in 1,000 tonnes) of the main crops in 1986 was as follows: Citrus fruits, 366; apples, 133; grapes, 158; potatoes, 230; sugar-beet, 80; wheat, 13; bananas, 19; olives, 9.

Livestock (estimated, 1987): Goats, 465,000; sheep, 140,000; cattle, 50,000; pigs, 21,000; horses, 2,000; donkeys, 10,000; mules, 4,000.

**Forestry.** The forests of the past have been denuded by exploitation.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry suffered badly during the civil war. The manufacturing industry was small but had doubled in size in the 10 years before the war. As a result of the war some industrial concerns have closed but others are working at reduced capacity.

**Commerce.** Foreign as well as local wholesale and retail trade is the principal source of income in Lebanon. Because of the protectionist policies followed in some neighbouring countries, this sector has been declining, the sectors to gain being those of banking, real estate, government and services.

Reliable trade figures have not been published in recent years.

Total trade between Lebanon and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	6,859	7,888	9,845	9,528	14,172
Exports and re-exports from UK	76,223	52,751	55,867	40,707	55,575

**Tourism.** Receipts from tourism were £Leb.573m. in 1973; since 1975 they have been negligible, this sector having suffered badly as a result of the war.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The main roads in Lebanon are not good by international standards. The surface is normally of asphalt and they are well maintained in normal times. Roads between Beirut and the provinces were (1984) controlled by various militia.

— In 1985 there were about 300,000 cars and taxis.

**Railways.** There are 3 railway lines in Lebanon, all operated by the *Office des Chemins de Fer de l'Etat Libanais* (CFL): (1) Nakoura–Beirut–Tripoli (standard gauge); the Nakoura–Sidon section has been idle since the establishment of Israel; (2) a narrow-gauge line running from Beirut to Riyak in the Bekaa Valley (now closed) and thence to Damascus, Syria; (3) a standard-gauge line from Tripoli to Homs and Aleppo in Syria, providing access to Ankara and Istanbul. From Homs a branch of the CFL line extends south and re-enters Lebanon, terminating at Riyak. Total length 417 km. Apart from a short section near Beirut these lines were idle in 1984–85 because of insecurity and large sections needed repairs.

**Aviation.** Beirut International Airport is used by a few international airlines. There are 2 national airlines, Middle East Airlines/Air Liban and Trans-Mediterranean Airways. Over the past few years, Beirut airport was closed several times.

**Shipping.** Beirut is the largest port, followed by Tripoli, Jounieh and Sidon. Illegal ports have mushroomed on the coast, very much reducing the legal ports' activity. No reliable figures about tonnage were available in 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There is an automatic telephone system in Beirut which is being extended to other parts of the country. There are no telegraph, postal or telephone communications with Israel. Number of telephones (1986), 150,000.

The state radio transmits in Arabic, French, English and Armenian. Tété-Liban, which is 50% government-owned was the only television station in operation in 1984. There were 450,000 TV sets in 1986 and 1.5m. radios.

**Cinemas** (1973). There were 161 cinemas with a seating capacity of about 77,400.

**Newspapers** (1985). There were about 30 daily newspapers in Arabic, 2 in French, 1 in English and 4 in Armenian.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** Probably less than half the population are Christians. The Christian faith has been indigenous since the earliest times. The Christians include the Maronites,

Greek Orthodox, Armenians, Greek and Roman Catholics, Armenian Catholics and the Protestants. Moslems include the Sunnis, the Shiites and the Druzes. No reliable figures on the numbers of these communities are available. Most Jews left the country after the 1975 disturbances.

**Education.** Government schools in 1984 comprise primary and secondary schools. There were also private primary and secondary schools. There are also 5 universities, namely the Lebanese (State) University, the American University of Beirut, the French University of St Joseph (founded in 1875), the Arab University, a branch of Alexandria University and Beirut University College. The French Government runs the École Supérieure de Lettres and the Centre d'Études Mathématiques. The Maronite monks run the University of the Holy Spirit at Kaslik.

The Lebanese Academy of Fine Arts includes schools of architecture, art, music, political and social science.

**Health.** There are several government-run hospitals, and many private ones.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Lebanon in Great Britain (21 Kensington Palace Gdns., London, W8 4QM)  
*Ambassador:* Gen. Ahmad al-Hajj (accredited 25 May 1983).

Of Great Britain in Lebanon (Shamma Bldg., Raouché, Ras Beirut)  
*Ambassador:* A. J. Ramsay.

Of Lebanon in the USA (2560 28th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Dr Abdallah Bouhabib.

Of the USA in Lebanon  
*Ambassador:* John Kelly.

Of Lebanon to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Rachid Fakhoury.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Import and export figures are produced by the Conseil Supérieur des Douanes. The Service de Statistique Générale (M. A. G. Ayad, *Chef du Service*) publishes a quarterly bulletin (in French and Arabic) covering a wide range of subjects, including foreign trade, production statistics and estimates of the national income.

Cobban, H., *The Making of Modern Lebanon*. London, 1985

Deeb, M., *The Lebanese Civil War*. New York, 1980

Gilmour, D., *Lebanon: The Fractured Country*. Oxford and New York, 1983

Gordon, D. C., *The Republic of Lebanon: Nation in Jeopardy*. London, 1983

Khairallah, S., *Lebanon*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1979

Lafin, J., *The War of Desperation: Lebanon 1982-85*. London, 1985

Norton, A. R., *Amal and the Shi'a: Struggle for the Soul of Lebanon*. Univ. of Texas Press, 1987

Rabanovich, I., *The War for Lebanon, 1970-1983*. Cornell Univ. Press, 1984

Randal, J., *The Tragedy of Lebanon*. London, 1982

Weinberger, N. J., *Syrian Intervention in Lebanon*. New York, 1986

*National Library:* Dar el Kutub, Parliament Sq., Beirut.



# LESOTHO

*Capital:* Maseru

*Population:* 1.67m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$410 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Basutoland first received the protection of Britain in 1868 at the request of Moshoeshoe I, the first paramount chief. In 1871 the territory was annexed to the Cape Colony, but in 1884 it was restored to the direct control of the British Government through the High Commissioner for South Africa.

On 4 Oct. 1966 Basutoland became an independent and sovereign member of the Commonwealth under the name of the Kingdom of Lesotho.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Lesotho, an enclave within the Republic of South Africa is bounded on the west by the Orange Free State, on the north by the Orange Free State and Natal, on the east by Natal, and on the south by Transkei. The altitude varies from 1,500 to 3,482 metres. The area is 11,720 sq. miles (30,355 sq. km). Lesotho is a purely African territory, and the few European residents are government officials, traders, missionaries and artisans.

The census in 1986 showed a total population of 1,577,536 persons. Estimate (1988) 1.67m. The capital is Maseru (population, 1986, 109,382).

The official languages are Sesotho and English.

**CLIMATE.** A healthy and pleasant climate, with variable rainfall, but averaging 29" (725 mm) a year over most of the country. The rain falls mainly in the summer months of Oct. to April, while the winters are dry and may produce heavy frosts in lowland areas and frequent snow in the highlands. Temperatures in the lowlands range from a maximum of 90°F (32.2°C) in summer to a minimum of 20°F (-6.7°C) in winter.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Lesotho is a constitutional monarchy with HM the King as Head of State, but the constitution adopted at independence was suspended and the elections of 27 Jan. 1970 were declared invalid on 31 Jan. 1970. Parliamentary rule, with a National Assembly of nominated members, was reintroduced in April 1973, but the National Assembly was dissolved on 1 Jan. 1985 by the first Prime Minister, Chief Joseph Leabua Jonathan.

Chief Jonathan was deposed in a bloodless military *coup* on 20 Jan. 1986, and all executive and legislative powers handed to HM the King, acting through a Council of Ministers on the advice of a Military Council.

*Ruler:* Constantine Bereng Seeiso Motlotlehi Moshoeshoe II, Paramount Chief of the Sotho people since 1940, became King at independence on 4 Oct. 1966.

*Chairman of the Military Council:* Maj.-Gen. Justin Lekhanya.

The College of Chiefs settles the recognition and succession of Chiefs and adjudicates cases of inefficiency, criminality and absenteeism among them.

*National flag:* Diagonally white over blue over green with the white of double width charged with a brown Basotho shield in the upper hoist.

*Local Government.* The country is divided into 10 districts, subdivided into 22 wards, as follows: Maseru, Qacha's Nek, Mokhotlong, Leribe, Butha-Butha, Teyateyaneng, Mafeteng, Mophale's Hoek, Quthing, Thaba-Tseka. Most of the wards are presided over by hereditary chiefs allied to the Moshoeshoe family.

## DEFENCE

The Royal Lesotho Defence Force has 1,500 personnel. Formed in 1978, to facilitate deployment of men and equipment to less accessible regions, the service

has 2 Skyvan and 1 King Air twin-turboprop transports, and a total of 6 Bell 412, BO 105, and Bell 47 helicopters. The Skyvans are available also as ambulance aircraft.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Lesotho is a member of UN, OAU, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Expenditure (1986-87) M463m.; revenue, M385m.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Loti* (plural *Maloti*) divided into 100 *Lisente* which is at par with the South African *Rand*. In March 1989, £1 = 4.32 *Maloti*; US\$1 = 2.51 *Maloti*.

**Banking.** The Standard Bank of South Africa and Barclays Bank International have branches at Maseru, Mophale's Hoek and Leribe. The Lesotho Bank has branches throughout the country.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1985) 1m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Agriculture.** The chief crops were (1986 production in 1,000 tonnes): wheat, 11; maize, 86; sorghum, 33; barley, oats, beans, peas and other vegetables are also grown. Soil conservation and the improvement of crops and pasture are matters of vital importance.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 520,000; horses, 118,000; donkeys, 125,000; pigs, 70,000; sheep, 1.43m.; goats, 1.02m.; mules, 1,000; poultry, 1m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial development is progressing under the National Development Corporation. Diamond mining ceased in 1982.

**Commerce.** Lesotho, Botswana and Swaziland are members of the South African customs union, by agreement dated 29 June 1910.

Total values of imports and exports into and from Lesotho (in Mm.):

	1979	1980	1981	1982
Imports	312	372	453	541
Exports	38	45	43	38

In 1981, 97% of imports came from within the Southern African customs union, while 47% of exports went to the same countries and 42% to Switzerland.

Principal imports were food, livestock, drink and tobacco, machinery and transport equipment, mineral fuels and lubricants; principal exports were wool and mohair and diamonds.

The majority of international trade is with the Republic of South Africa.

Total trade between Lesotho and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	78	290	277	486	977
Exports and re-exports from UK	633	3,023	2,128	1,112	1,260

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 213,000 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1983) 311 km of tarred roads and 1,500 km of gravel-surfaced roads. In addition to the main roads there were (1983) 931 km of food aid tracks leading to trading stations and missions. Communications into the mountainous interior are by means of bridlepaths suitable only for riding and pack animals, but a mountain road of 80 miles has been constructed, and some parts are accessible by air transport, which is being used increasingly. In 1982 there were 11,962 commercial vehicles and 5,129 passenger cars.

**Railways.** A railway built by the South African Railways, 1 mile long, connects Maseru with the Bloemfontein–Natal line at Marseilles.

**Aviation.** There is a scheduled passenger service between Maseru and Jan Smuts Airport, Johannesburg, operated jointly by Lesotho National Airways and SAA. There are also 30 airstrips for light aircraft.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 5,409 telephones in 1983. Radio Lesotho transmits daily in English and Sesotho. Radio receivers (1986), 600,000.

**Newspapers.** In 1985, 3 daily newspapers had a combined circulation of 44,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Lesotho High Court and the Court of Appeal are situated in Maseru, and there are Magistrates' Courts in the districts.

**Religion.** About 93% of the population are Christians, 44% being Roman Catholics.

**Education.** Education is largely in the hands of the 3 main missions (Paris Evangelical, Roman Catholic and English Church), under the direction of the Ministry of Education. In 1984–85 the total enrolment in 1,141 primary schools was 314,003; in 143 secondary schools, 35,423; in the National Teacher-Training College and 8 technical schools enrolment 2,221. University education is provided at the National University of Lesotho established in 1975 at Roma; enrolment in 1985, 1,119 and 146 teaching staff.

**Health.** The government medical staff of the territory consists of 1 Permanent Secretary for Health, 1 Director of Health Services, 1 medical superintendent, 8 district medical officers and a total of 102 doctors including 20 specialists.

There are 11 government hospitals staffed by 308 matrons, sisters and nurses. There is accommodation for 2,175 patients in government hospitals.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Lesotho in Great Britain (10 Collingham Rd., London, SW5 0NR)  
*High Commissioner:* Dr John T. Kolane (accredited 2 June 1986).

Of Great Britain in Lesotho (PO Box Ms 521, Maseru 100)  
*High Commissioner:* J. C. Edwards.

Of Lesotho in the USA (1430 K. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20005)  
*Ambassador:* W. T. Van Tonder.

Of the USA in Lesotho (PO Box 333, Maseru, 100)  
*Ambassador:* Robert M. Smalley.

Of Lesotho to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Bureau of Statistics, PO Box 455, Maseru, Lesotho.

Ashton, H., *The Basuto*. 2nd ed. OUP, 1967

Bardill, J. E. and Cobbe, J. H., *Lesotho: Dilemmas of Dependence in South Africa*. London, 1986

Murray, C., *Families Divided: The Impact of Migrant Labour in Lesotho*. OUP, 1981

Willet, S. M. and Ambrose, D. P., *Lesotho*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981



# LIBERIA

*Capital:* Monrovia

*Population:* 2.44m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$450 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Republic of Liberia had its origin in the efforts of several American philanthropic societies to establish freed American slaves in a colony on the West African coast. In 1822 a settlement was formed near the spot where Monrovia now stands. On 26 July 1847 the State was constituted as the Free and Independent Republic of Liberia.

On 12 April 1980, President Tolbert was assassinated; his government was overthrown and the Constitution suspended. President Tolbert's party, the True Whig Party, was formed in 1860 and had been in power since 1870. In March 1980, the newly formed People's Progressive Party was banned and its leaders arrested. The *coup* was led by Master-Sergeant Doe who was later installed as Head of State and Commander-in-Chief of the army.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Liberia has about 350 miles of coastline, extending from Sierra Leone, on the west, to the Côte d'Ivoire, on the east. It stretches inland to a distance, in some places, of about 250 miles and is bounded in the north by Guinea.

The total area is about 42,989 sq. miles (111,370 sq. km). At the census (1984) population 2,101,628. Estimate (1988) 2,436,000. English is the official language spoken by 15% of the population. The rest belong in the main to 3 linguistic groups: Mande, West Atlantic, and the Kwa. These are in turn subdivided into 16 ethnic groups: Bassa, Bella, Gbandi, Mende, Gio, Dey, Mano, Gola, Kpelle, Kissi, Krahn, Kru, Lorma, Mandingo, Vai and Grebo.

Monrovia, the capital, had (1984) a population of 425,000; other towns include Buchanan (24,000).

There are 11 counties and 2 territories, whose areas, populations (1984 census) and capitals are as follows:

<i>County</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>
Bomi <sup>1</sup>	1,955	66,420	Tubmanburg
Bong	8,099	255,813	Gbarnga
Grand Bassa	8,759	159,648	Buchanan
Grand Cape Mount	5,827	79,322	Robertson
Grand Gedeh	17,029	102,810	Zwedru
Lofa	19,360	247,641	Voinjama
Margibi	3,263	97,992	Kakata
Maryland	5,351 <sup>2</sup>	132,058 <sup>2</sup>	Harper
Montserrado	2,740	544,878	Bensonville
Nimba	12,043	313,050	Saniquillie
Rivercess <sup>1</sup>	4,385	37,849	Rivercess
Sinoe	10,254	64,147	Greenville

<sup>1</sup> Territory.      <sup>2</sup> Includes new county of Grand Kru (chieftown, Barclayville).

**CLIMATE.** An equatorial climate, with constant high temperatures and plentiful rainfall, though Jan. to May is drier than the rest of the year. Monrovia. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 206" (5,138 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was approved by referendum in July 1984 and came into force on 6 Jan. 1986. The National Assembly consists of a 26-member Senate and a 64-member House of Representatives. General elections were held on 15 Oct. 1985. The National Democratic Party of Liberia gained 21 seats in the Senate; the Liberal Action Party, 3 seats and the Liberian Unification Party and the Unity Party one each. In the House of Representatives, the NDPL won 45 seats and others 19 seats.

*President and Commander-in-Chief:* Samuel Kanyon Doe.

*Vice President:* Harry F. Moniba.

*National flag:* Six red and 5 white horizontal stripes alternating. In the upper corner, nearest the staff, is a square of blue covering a depth of 5 stripes. In the centre of this blue field is a 5-pointed white star.

*National anthem:* All hail, Liberia, hail! (words by President Warner; tune by O. Lucas, 1860).

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The establishment organized on a militia basis numbers 5,300 (1989), divided into 6 infantry battalions with support units.

**Navy.** The small naval service or coastguard comprises 3 cutters, 3 small patrol boats, and 1 aircraft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 500 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Reconnaissance Unit, supports the Liberian Army. Equipment includes 2 C-47 transports, 4 Israeli-built Arava twin-turboprop light transports, 1 Cessna 208 Caravan transport and a small number of Cessna 172, 185 and 337G light aircraft. Personnel about 250.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Liberia is a member of UN, OAU, ECOWAS and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure was as follows (in US\$1,000):

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87
Revenue	315,000	237,600	366,400
Expenditure	371,000	366,700	366,400

**Currency.** The legal currency of Liberia is the *dollar* which is equivalent to US\$1 which itself has been in circulation since 3 Nov. 1942, but there is a Liberian coinage in silver and copper. Official accounts are kept in dollars and cents. The Liberian coins are as follows: Silver, \$5, \$1, 50-, 25-, 10- and 5-cent pieces; alloy, 2-cent and copper 1-cent pieces. The Government has not yet issued paper money. In March 1989, £1 = 1.72 Liberian \$; US\$1 = 1 Liberian \$.

**Banking.** The First National City Bank (Liberia) was founded in 1935. An Italian bank, Tradevco, started business in 1955. The International Trust Co. of Liberia opened a commercial banking department at the end of 1960. The Liberian Bank of Development and Investment (LBDI) was founded in 1964 and began operations in 1965. The National Bank of Liberia opened on 22 July 1974, to act as a central bank. The National Housing and Savings Bank opened on 20 Jan. 1972. The Liberian Finance & Trust Corporation was incorporated Oct. 1976 and began operations in May 1977. The Liberian Agricultural and Co-operative Development Bank started operations in 1978. The Bank of Credit & Commerce International opened in Sept. 1978 and Meridien Bank of Liberia in July 1985.

**Weights and Measures.** Weights and measures are the same as in UK and USA.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) was 655m. kwh. Supply 120 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Iron ore production was valued at US\$241.1m. tonnes in 1982. Gold production (1986) 21,125 oz valued at US\$7.3m. and diamond production (1982) 337,732 carats valued at US\$20.8m.

**Agriculture.** Over 65% of the labour force is engaged in agriculture. The soil is productive, but due to excessive rainfall (from 160 to 180 in. per year), there are large swamp areas. Rice, cassava, coffee, citrus and sugar-cane are cultivated. The Government is negotiating the financing of large-scale investment in rice production aimed at making the country self-sufficient in rice production. Coffee, cocoa and palm-kernels are produced mainly by the traditional agricultural sector.

The Liberia Produce Marketing Corporation (LPMC) operates an oil-mill in Monrovia, processing most of the palm-kernels. There were 2 large commercial oil-palm plantations in the country. The Liberia Industrial Co-operative (LBINC) has 6,000 acres of oil-palm (of which 5,000 acres are in production) in Grand Bassa County, and West Africa Agricultural Co. (WAAC) has 4,020 acres in production in Grand Cape Mount County.

Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 295; cassava, 326; coffee, 9; citrus, 7; sugar-cane, 159; cocoa, 5; palm-kernels, 8.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 42,000; pigs, 140,000; sheep, 240,000; poultry, 4m.

**Forestry.** The Firestone Plantation Co. have large rubber plantations, employing over 40,000 men. Their concession comprises about 1m. acres and expires in the year 2025. About 100,000 acres have been planted. Independent producers have a further 65,000 acres planted.

The foreign concessions produced 131.6m. lb. in 1981 while independent Liberian farmers produced 148.7m. lb. in 1981.

The production of logs in 1981 was 451m. cu. metres; 1980, 745m.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1982) 13,600 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There are a number of small factories (brick and tile, soap, nails, mattresses, shoes, plastics, paint, oxygen, acetylene, tyre retreading, a brewery, soft drinks, cement, matches, candy and biscuits).

**Commerce.** Imports in 1986 totalled US\$259,037,900 (1985, US\$284,377,000) and exports US\$408,374,099 (1985, US\$435,570,000). Liberia's main trading partners are the USA and the Federal Republic of Germany.

In 1987, iron ore accounted for about 70% of total export earnings, rubber 15% and sawn timber over 5%. Other exports were coffee, cocoa, palm-kernel oil, diamonds and gold.

Total trade between Liberia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	6,975	7,967	7,574	7,284	9,574
Exports and re-exports from UK	30,980	15,957	22,056	13,538	11,684

The figures for exports from the UK include the value of shipping transferred to the Liberian flag; the genuine exports are considerably lower.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1981, there were 4,794 miles of public roads (1,165 primary, 366 paved, 799 all-weather, 3,629 secondary and feeder) and 1,474 miles of private roads (93 paved, 1,381 laterite and earth). The principal highway connects Monrovia with the road system of Guinea, with branches leading into the Eastern and Western areas of Liberia. The latter branch reaches the Sierra Leone border and joins the Sierra Leone road system. A bridge over the St Paul River carries road traffic to the iron-ore mines at Bomi Hills.

**Railway.** A railway (for freight only) was built in 1951, connecting Monrovia with the Bomi Hills iron-ore mines about 69 km distant; this has been extended to the National Iron Ore Co. area by 79 km. There is a line from Nimba to Lower Buchanan and another line from Bong to Monrovia (78 km).

**Aviation.** The airport for Liberia is Roberts International Airport (30 miles from Monrovia). The James Spriggs Payne Airfield, 5 miles from Monrovia, can be used by light aircraft and mini jumbo jets. Air services are maintained by Ghana Airways, Swissair, British Caledonian, Air Guinea, SABENA, Iberia Airlines, Romanian Airlines and Air Liberia.

**Shipping.** Over 2,000 vessels enter Monrovia each year. The Liberian Government requires only a modest registration fee and an almost nominal annual charge and maintains no control over the operation of ships flying the Liberian flag.



**Post and Broadcasting.** There is cable communication with Europe and America via Dakar, and a wireless station is maintained by the Government at Monrovia. There is a telephone service (8,510 telephones, 1983), in Monrovia, which is gradually being extended over the whole country. There were (1986) 320,000 radio and 21,000 television receivers.

### JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by a Supreme Court of 5 judges, 14 circuit courts and lower courts.

**Religion.** The main denominations represented in Liberia are Methodist, Baptist, Episcopalian, African Methodist, Pentecostal, Seventh-day Adventist, Lutheran and Roman Catholic, working through missionaries and mission schools. There were (1985) about 670,000 Moslems.

**Education.** Schools are classified as: (1) Public schools, maintained and run by the Government; (2) Mission schools, supported by foreign Missions and subsidized by the Government, and operated by qualified Missionaries and Liberian teachers; (3) Private schools, maintained by endowments and sometimes subsidized by the Government.

In 1986 there were estimated to be 1,830 schools with 8,744 teachers and 443,786 pupils.

**Health.** There were 236 doctors in 1981 and about 3,000 hospital beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Liberia in Great Britain (2 Pembridge Pl., London, W2)

*Ambassador:* W. A. Givens.

Of Great Britain in Liberia (Mamba Point, Monrovia)

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* M. E. J. Gore.

Of Liberia in the USA (5201 16th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20011)

*Ambassador:* Eugenia Wordsworth-Stevenson.

Of the USA in Liberia (United Nations Drive, Monrovia)

*Ambassador:* James K. Bishop.

Of Liberia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Sylvester O. Jarrett.

### Further Reading

*Economic Survey of Liberia, 1981.* Ministry of Planning and Economic Affairs

Dunn, D. E., *The Foreign Policy of Liberia during the Tubman Era, 1944-71.* London, 1979

Fraenkel, M., *Tribe and Class in Monrovia.* OUP, 1964

Wilson, C. M., *Liberia: Black Africa in Microcosm.* New York, 1971

# LIBYA

*Capital:* Tripoli

*Population:* 3.96m. (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$7,180 (1985)

Al-Jamahiriya Al-Arabiya  
Al-Libiya Al-Shabiya  
Al-Ishtirakiya Al-Uzma

**HISTORY.** Tripoli fell under Turkish domination in the 16th century, and though in 1711 the Arab population secured some measure of independence, the country was in 1835 proclaimed a Turkish vilayet. In Sept. 1911 Italy occupied Tripoli and on 19 Oct. 1912, by the Treaty of Ouchy, Turkey recognized the sovereignty of Italy in Tripoli.

After the expulsion of the Germans and Italians in 1942 and 1943, Tripolitania and Cyrenaica were placed under British, and the Fezzan under French, military administration. Britain recognized the Amir Mohammed Idris Al-Senussi as Amir of Cyrenaica in June 1949.

Libya became an independent, sovereign, federal kingdom under the Amir of Cyrenaica, Mohammed Idris Al-Senussi, as King of the United Kingdom of Libya, on 24 Dec. 1951, when the British Residents in Tripolitania and Cyrenaica and the French Resident in the Fezzan transferred their remaining powers to the federal government of Libya, in pursuance of decisions passed by the United Nations in 1949 and 1950.

On 1 Sept. 1969 King Idris was deposed by a group of army officers. Twelve of the group of officers formed the Revolutionary Command Council chaired by Col. Muammar Qadhafi and proclaimed a republic.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Libya is bounded north by the Mediterranean Sea, east by Egypt and Sudan, south by Chad and Niger and west by Algeria and Tunisia. The area is estimated at 1,759,540 sq. km (679,358 sq. miles). The population, at the census on 31 July 1984, was 3,637,488; estimate (1986) 3,955,000.

In 1985, 65% of the population was urban. The chief cities (1981) were: Tripoli, the capital (858,000), Benghazi (368,000) and Misurata (117,000).

The populations (1984) of the municipalities were as follows:

Ajdabiya	100,547	Jabal al-Akhdar	120,662	Shati	46,749
Awbari	48,701	Khums	149,642	Surt	110,996
Aziziyah	85,068	Kufrah	25,139	Tarhunah	84,640
Benghazi	485,386	Marzuq	42,294	Tobruk	94,006
Derna	105,031	Misurata	178,295	Tripoli	990,697
Fatah	102,763	Niqat al-Khums	181,584	Yafran	73,420
Ghadames	52,247	Sabha	76,171	Zawia	220,075
Gharyan	117,073	Sawfajjin	45,195	Zlitan	101,107

**CLIMATE.** The coastal region has a warm temperate climate, with mild wet winters and hot dry summers, though most of the country suffers from aridity. Tripoli. Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 16" (400 mm). Benghazi. Jan. 56°F (13.3°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 11" (267 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In March 1977 a new form of direct democracy, the 'Jamahiriya' (state of the masses) was promulgated and the official name of the country was changed to Socialist Peoples Libyan Arab Jamahiriya. Under this system, every adult is supposed to be able to share in policy making through the Basic People's Congresses of which there are some 2,000 throughout Libya. These Congresses appoint Popular Committees to execute policy. Provincial and urban affairs are handled by Popular Committees responsible to Municipality People's Congresses, of which there are 13. Officials of these

Congresses and Committees form at national level the General People's Congress which now normally meets for about a week early each year. This is the highest policy-making body in the country. The General People's Congress appoints its own General Secretariat and the General People's Committee, whose members (the equivalents of ministers under other forms of government) head the 10 government departments which execute policy at national level.

Until 1977 Libya was ruled by a Revolutionary Command Council headed by Col. Muammar Qadhafi. Upon its abolition in that year the 5 surviving members of the RCC became the General Secretariat of the General People's Congress, still under Qadhafi's direction. In 1979 they stood down to be replaced by elected officials. Since then, Col. Qadhafi has retained his position as Leader of the Revolution. But neither he nor his former RCC colleagues have any formal posts in the present administration, although they continue to wield authority.

Arabic is the official language. Tripoli is the capital.

*Secretary-General of the General Secretariat of the General People's Congress:* Omar al-Muntasir.

*Foreign Affairs:* Jadallah Azzuz al-Talhi.

*National flag:* Plain green.

**DEFENCE.** There is selective conscription for a 2 year period. Enrolment in the reserves, numbering about 40,000, continues until age 49.

**Army.** The Army is organized into 38 tank battalions, 54 mechanized infantry, 1 National Guard, 41 artillery, 2 anti-aircraft and 12 parachute commando battalions, 7 surface-to-surface and 3 surface-to-air brigades. Equipment includes 1,800 T-54/-55/-62 and 180 T-72 main battle tanks. The Army has an aviation component; equipment includes 39 helicopters and about 10 O-1 Bird Dog observation aircraft. Strength (1989) 55,000. The paramilitary Pan-African Legion numbers 2,500.

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 6 *ex*-Soviet diesel-driven submarines, 6 *ex*-Yugoslav 2-man midget submarines, 3 missile-armed frigates, 7 missile-armed corvettes, 1 gun corvette, 8 ocean minesweepers, 25 fast missile craft, 14 fast gunboats, 8 patrol boats, 1 medium (dock type) logistic support ship, 2 landing ships, 3 medium landing ships, 16 landing craft, 1 maintenance repair craft, 1 diving ship, 1 salvage ship, 1 transport and 10 tugs. Under construction are 4 missile-armed fast attack craft.

One missile-armed fast corvette was sunk on 24 March 1986 and one severely damaged next day by US naval forces.

Libya has procured naval equipment and weapons from both the East (particularly the USSR) and the West; and the modern fleet constitutes a force of some importance in the Mediterranean, although training, maintenance and logistic support are questionable.

Personnel in 1989 6,500 officers and ratings, including coastguard. A large proportion of personnel have trained in the Soviet Union since 1975.

**Air Force.** The creation of an Air Force began in 1959. In 1974, delivery was completed of a total of 110 Mirage 5 combat aircraft and trainers, of which about 50 remain. They have been followed by 10 Tu-22 supersonic reconnaissance bombers, 70 MiG-25 interceptors and reconnaissance aircraft, 100 Su-22 ground attack fighters, 94 MiG-21s, and about 140 MiG-23 variable-geometry fighters and fighter-bombers from the USSR. Other equipment includes 40 Mirage F1 fighters from France, 6 Mirage F1-B two-seat trainers, 20 Mi-24 gunship helicopters, Mi-14 anti-submarine helicopters, 10 C-130/L-100 Hercules and 20 Aeritalia G222T transports, 8 Super Frelon and 6 Agusta-built CH-47C Chinook heavy-lift helicopters, and a total of 16 Bell 212, Bell 47, Alouette III and Mi-8 helicopters. Training is performed on piston-engined SF.260Ms (some of which are armed for light attack duties) from Italy; L-39 Albatros, Galeb and Magister jet aircraft; and twin-engined L-410s built in Czechoslovakia. Personnel total (1989) about 10,000, with many of the combat aircraft operated by foreign aircrew.



## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Libya is a member of UN, OAU, OIC, OPEC and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** Declining oil revenues (60% down on 1980 levels) has meant postponing of most projects envisaged in the 5-year development plan (1981–85) and no new development plan had been announced by Nov. 1988.

**Budget.** A development budget of LD1,335m. was announced for 1988.

**Currency.** The currency is the Libyan *dinar* which is divided into 1,000 *millemes*. Rate of exchange, March 1989: LD 0.5046 = £1; LD 0.2932 = US\$1.

**Banking.** A National Bank of Libya was established in 1955; it was renamed the Central Bank of Libya in 1972. All foreign banks were nationalized by Dec. 1970. In 1972 the government set up the Libyan Arab Foreign Bank whose function is overseas investment and to participate in multinational banking corporations. The National Agricultural Bank, which has been set up to give loans and subsidies to farmers to develop their land and to assist them in marketing their crops, has offices in Tripoli, Benghazi, Sebha and other agricultural centres.

**Weights and Measures.** Although the metric system has been officially adopted and is obligatory for all contracts, the following weights and measures are still used: *oke* = 1.282 kg; *kantar* = 51.28 kg; *draa* = 46 cm; *handaza* = 68 cm.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity capacity (1985) 5,615 mw. Production (1986) 2,126m. kwh. Supply 110, 115 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Production (1988) 48.5m. tonnes. Reserves (1988) 23,000m. bbls. The Libyan National Oil Corporation (NOC) was established in March 1970 to be the state's organization for the exploitation of Libya's oil resources. NOC does not participate in the production of oil but has a majority share in all the operating companies with the exception of two small producers Aquitaine-Libya and Wintershall Libya.

The largest producers are Waha (formerly Oasis, until the withdrawal of US oil companies at the end of June 1986) and AGECO who together produce more than 50% of total production. The other significant producers are Zuweitina (formerly Occidental Libya), AGIP, Sirte Oil Company, and Veba (also known as Mobil Oil Libya, although Mobil Inc. withdrew in July 1982 after EXXON's withdrawal from the Sirte Oil Company in Oct. 1981).

**Gas.** Reserves (1988) 620,000m. cu. metres. Production (1982) 29,000m. cu. metres. In 1983 a gas pipeline was under construction which will take gas from Brega, along the coast to Misurata. In 1987 agreement was reached with Algeria and Tunisia to construct a gas pipeline to supply western Libya with Algerian gas.

**Water.** Since 1984 a major project has been under way to bring water from wells in southern Libya to the coast. This scheme, called the 'Great Man-made River', is planned, on completion, to irrigate some 185,000 acres of land with water brought along some 4,000 km of pipes. It is planned that the project will be operational in 1990 at a cost of US\$3,300m.

**Minerals.** Cement production (1987) 2.7m. tonnes. Gypsum output (1982) 172,400 tonnes. Iron ore deposits have been found in the south and uranium has reportedly been found in the region of Ghat in the south-west.

**Agriculture.** Tripolitania has 3 zones from the coast inland—the Mediterranean, the sub-desert and the desert. The first, which covers an area of about 17,231 sq. miles, is the only one properly suited for agriculture, and may be further subdivided into: (1) the oases along the coast, the richest in North Africa, in which thrive the date palm, the olive, the orange, the peanut and the potato; (2) the steppe district, suitable for cereals (barley and wheat) and pasture; it has olive, almond, vine, orange and mulberry trees and ricinus plants; (3) the dunes, which are being

gradually afforested with acacia, robinia, poplar and pine; (4) the Jebel (the mountain district, Tarhuna, Garian, Nalut-Yefren), in which thrive the olive, the fig, the vine and other fruit trees, and which on the east slopes down to the sea with the fertile hills of Msellata. Of some 25m. acres of productive land in Tripolitania, nearly 20m. are used for grazing and about 1m. for static farming. The sub-desert zone produces the alfa plant. The desert zone and the Fezzan contain some fertile oases, such as those of Ghadames, Ghat, Socna, Sebha, Brak.

Cyrenaica has about 10m. acres of potentially productive land, most of which, however, is suitable only for grazing. Certain areas, chief of which is the plateau known as the Barce Plain (about 1,000 ft above sea-level), are suitable for dry farming; in addition, grapes, olives and dates are grown. With improved irrigation, production, particularly of vegetables, could be increased, but stock raising and dry farming will remain of primary importance. About 143,000 acres are used for settled farming; about 272,000 acres are covered by natural forests. The Agricultural Development Authority plans to reclaim 6,000 hectares each year for agriculture. In the Fezzan there are about 6,700 acres of irrigated gardens and about 297,000 acres are planted with date palms.

Production (1987, in tonnes): Wheat, 190,000; barley, 100,000; milk, 133,000; meat, 167,000. Olive trees number about 3.4m. and productive date-palm trees about 3m.

Livestock (1987): 5.7m. sheep, 960,000 goats, 212,000 cattle, 26m. poultry.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1982 was 7,425 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Since the revolution there has been an ambitious programme of industrial development aimed at the local manufacture of building materials (steel and aluminium pipes and fittings, electric cables, cement, bricks, glass, etc.), foodstuffs (dairy products, flour, tinned fruits and vegetables, dates, fish processing and canning, etc.), textiles and footwear (ready-made clothing, woollen and cotton cloth, blankets, leather footwear, etc.) and development of mineral deposits (iron ore, phosphates, mineral salts). Many projects have been delayed or reduced in recent years, owing to fall in oil revenues since 1980. Small scale private sector industrialization in the form of partnerships is permitted. From 21 Sept. 1969 all businesses, except oil and banks, were Libyan-owned; subsequently all banks and most oil companies were nationalized.

**Commerce.** Total imports in 1987 were valued at US\$4,969 (f.o.b.) and exports at US\$6,612 (f.o.b.), virtually all crude oil. In 1987, 25% of imports came from Italy, while 33% of exports were to Italy, 16% to the Federal Republic of Germany and 11% to Spain.

Total trade between Libya and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	155,276	311,764	136,390	133,649	111,812
Exports and re-exports from UK	246,467	237,639	260,529	220,626	235,957

**Tourism.** There were 100,000 visitors in 1984.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 25,675 km of roads. In 1982 there were 415,509 passenger cars and 334,405 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1989 there were no operating railways.

**Aviation.** A national airline, the Libyan Arab Airlines (LAA), was inaugurated on 30 Sept. 1965. Benghazi and Tripoli are linked by LAA and other international airlines to Athens, Rome, Madrid, Moscow, Frankfurt, Paris, Amsterdam, Vienna and Zurich.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Tripoli is connected by telegraph cable with Malta and by microwave link with Bengardane (Tunis). There are overseas wireless-telegraph

stations at Benghazi and Tripoli, and radio-telephone services connect Libya with most countries of western Europe. In 1982 some 102,000 telephones were in use and in 1983 there were 165,000 radio sets and 170,000 television receivers.

**Newspapers.** There was (1989) one daily in Tripoli with a circulation of about 40,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Civil, Commercial and Criminal codes are based mainly on the Egyptian model. Matters of personal status of family or succession matters affecting Moslems are dealt with in special courts according to the Moslem law. All other matters, civil, commercial and criminal, are tried in the ordinary courts, which have jurisdiction over everyone.

There are civil and penal courts in Tripoli and Benghazi, with subsidiary courts at Misurata and Derna; courts of assize in Tripoli and Benghazi, and courts of appeal in Tripoli and Benghazi.

**Religion.** Islam is declared the State religion, but the right of others to practise their religions is provided for. In 1982, 97% were Sunni Moslems.

**Education.** There were (1981–82) 718,124 pupils in primary schools, 286,414 in preparatory and secondary schools, 44,789 pupils in technical schools and 25,700 students in higher education. There are 2 universities of Al Fatah (in Tripoli) and Garyounes (in Benghazi).

**Health.** In 1981 there were 74 hospitals with 15,375 beds, 4,690 physicians, 314 dentists, 420 pharmacists, 1,080 midwives and 5,346 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

UK broke off diplomatic relations with Libya on 22 April 1984. Saudi Arabia looks after Libyan interests in UK and Italy looks after UK's interests in Libya.

USA suspended all embassy activities in Tripoli on 2 May 1980.

Of Libya to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Ali Treiki.

## Further Reading

Allen, J. A., *Libya: The Experience of Oil*. London and Boulder, 1981.—*Libya since Independence*. London, 1982

Bearman, J., *Qadhafi's Libya*. London, 1986

Blundy, D. and Lycett, A., *Qadhafi and the Libyan Revolution*. London, 1987

Cooley, J. K., *Libyan Sandstorm: The Complete Account of Qaddafi's Revolution*. London and New York, 1983

Fergiani, M. B., *The Libyan Jamahiriya*. London, 1984

Harris, L. C., *Libya: Qadhafi's Revolution and the Modern State*. Boulder and London, 1986

Lawless, R. I., *Libya*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

Waddhams, F. C., *The Libyan Oil Industry*. London, 1980

Wright, J., *Libya: A Modern History*. London, 1982



# LIECHTENSTEIN

*Capital:* Vaduz

*Population:* 27,700 (1987)

**HISTORY.** The Principality of Liechtenstein, situated between the Austrian province of Vorarlberg and the Swiss cantons of St Gallen and Graubünden, is a sovereign state whose history dates back to 3 May 1342, when Count Hartmann III became ruler of the county of Vaduz. Additions were later made to the count's domains, and by 1434 the territory reached its present boundaries. It consists of the two former counties of Schellenberg and Vaduz (until 1806 immediate fiefs of the Roman Empire). The former in 1699 and the latter in 1712 came into the possession of the house of Liechtenstein and, by diploma of 23 Jan. 1719, granted by the Emperor Charles VI, the two counties were constituted as the Principality of Liechtenstein.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Liechtenstein is bounded on the east by Austria and the west by Switzerland. Area, 160 sq. km (61.8 sq. miles); population, of Alemannic race (census 1980), 25,215; estimate, 1987, 27,700. In 1987 there were 365 births and 180 deaths. Population of Vaduz (census 1980), 4,606; estimate, 1987, 4,891. The language is German.

**REIGNING PRINCE.** **Francis Joseph II**, born 16 Aug. 1906; succeeded his great uncle, 26 July 1938; married on 7 March 1943 to Countess Gina von Wilczek; there are 4 sons, Prince Hans Adam (Has exercised the prerogatives to which the Sovereign is entitled from 26 Aug. 1984, born 14 Feb. 1945; married on 30 July 1967 to Countess Marie Aglaë Kinsky), Prince Philipp Erasmus (married on 11 Sept. 1971 to Isabelle de l'Arbre de Malander), Prince Nikolaus Ferdinand (married on 20 March 1982 to Princess Margaretha of Luxembourg) and Prince Franz Josef Wenzel, and one daughter, Princess Nora Elisabeth (married on 11 June 1988 to Vicente Marques de Mariño). The monarchy is hereditary in the male line.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Liechtenstein is a constitutional monarchy ruled by the princes of the House of Liechtenstein. The present constitution of 5 Oct. 1921 provides for a unicameral parliament (Diet) of 15 members elected for 4 years. Election is on the basis of proportional representation. The prince can call and dismiss the parliament. On parliamentary recommendation, he appoints the prime minister and the 4 councillors for a 4-year term. Any group of 900 persons or any 3 communes may propose legislation (initiative). Bills passed by the parliament may be submitted to popular referendum. A law is valid when it receives a majority approval by the parliament and the prince's signed concurrence. The capital and seat of government is Vaduz and there are 10 more communes all connected by modern roads. The 11 communes are fully independent administrative bodies within the laws of the principality. They levy additional taxes to the state taxes. Since Feb. 1921 Liechtenstein has had the Swiss currency, and since 29 March 1923 has been united with Switzerland in a customs union.

At the elections for the Diet, on 2 Feb. 1986, the Fatherland Union obtained 8 seats, the opposition Progressive Citizens' Party, 7 seats.

*Head of Government:* Hans Brunhart.

*National flag:* Horizontally blue over red, with a gold coronet in the first quarter.

*National anthem:* Oben am jungen Rhein (words by H. H. Jauch, 1850; tune, 'God save the Queen').

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Liechtenstein is a member of EFTA, the Council of Europe and the International Court of Justice.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Budget estimates for 1988: Revenue, 365,766,000 Swiss francs; expenditure, 357,345,000 Swiss francs. There is no public debt.

**Currency.** The Swiss *franc*.

**Banking.** There were (1988) 3 banks: Liechtensteinische Landesbank, Bank in Liechtenstein Ltd, Verwaltungs-und Privatbank Ltd.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity produced in 1987 was 47,622,000 kwh.

**Agriculture.** The rearing of cattle, for which the fine alpine pastures are well suited, is highly developed. In March 1988 there were 6,029 cattle (including 2,841 milk cows), 166 horses, 2,328 sheep, 91 goats, 3,119 pigs. Total production of dairy produce, 1987, 13,382,700 kg.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The country has a great variety of light industries (textiles, ceramics, steel screws, precision instruments, canned food, pharmaceutical products, heating appliances, etc.).

Since 1945 Liechtenstein has changed from a predominantly agricultural country to a highly industrialized country. The farming population has gone down from 70% in 1930 to only 2% in 1988. The rapid change-over has led to the immigration of foreign workers (Austrians, Germans, Italians, Spaniards). Industrial undertakings affiliated to the Liechtenstein Chamber of Industry and Commerce in 1987 employed 6,780 workers earning 341.5m. Swiss francs.

**Commerce.** Exports of home produce, for firms in membership of the Chamber of Commerce, in 1987 amounted to 1,288m. Swiss francs. 22.8% went to EFTA countries, of which Switzerland took 303.7m. (17%) and 39.3% went to EEC countries.

Total trade with UK is included with Switzerland from 1968.

**Tourism.** In 1987, 75,682 overnight visitors arrived in Liechtenstein.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 250 km of roads. Postal buses are the chief means of public transportation within the country and to Austria and Switzerland.

**Railways.** The 18.5 km of main railway passing through the country is operated by Austrian Federal Railways.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 13,812 telephones, 484 telex, 9,381 wireless sets and 8,875 television sets. The post and telegraphs are administered by Switzerland.

**Cinemas.** There were 2 cinemas in 1988.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 2 daily newspapers with a total circulation of 15,600.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The principality has its own civil and penal codes. The lowest court is the county court, *Landgericht*, presided over by one judge, which decides minor civil cases and summary criminal offences. The criminal court, *Kriminalgericht*, with a bench of 5 judges is for major crimes. Another court of mixed jurisdiction is the court of assizes (with 3 judges) for misdemeanours. Juvenile cases are treated in the Juvenile Court (with a bench of 3 judges). The superior court, *Obergericht*, and Supreme Court, *Oberster Gerichtshof*, are courts of appeal for civil and criminal

cases (both with benches of 5 judges). An administrative court of appeal from government actions and the State Court determines the constitutionality of laws.

The death penalty was abolished in 1989.

**Police.** The principality has no army. Police force, 43; auxiliary police, 29 (1988).

**Religion.** In 1987, 87.4% of the population was Roman Catholic and 8.3% was Protestant.

**Education** (1988–89). In 14 primary, 3 upper, 5 secondary, 1 grammar and 3 (for backward children) schools there were 3,574 pupils and 249 teachers. There is also an evening technical school, a music school and a children's pedagogic-welfare day school.

**Health.** In 1988 there was 1 hospital, but Liechtenstein has an agreement with the Swiss cantons of St Gallen and Graubünden and the Austrian Federal State of Vorarlberg that her citizens may use certain hospitals.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

In 1919, Switzerland agreed to represent the interests of Liechtenstein in countries where she has diplomatic missions and where Liechtenstein is not represented in her own right. In so doing Switzerland always acts only on the basis of mandates of a general or specific nature, which she may either accept or refuse, while Liechtenstein is free to enter into direct relations with foreign states or to set up her own additional diplomatic missions.

*British Consul-General:* A. H. Morgan (resident in Zürich).

*USA Consul-General:* L. Segesvary (resident in Zürich).

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Amt für Volkswirtschaft, Vaduz.

*Rechenschaftsbericht der Fürstlichen Regierung.* Vaduz. Annual, from 1922

*Jahrbuch des Historischen Vereins.* Vaduz. Annual since 1901

Kranz, W., *The Principality of Liechtenstein.* Press and Information Office. 5th ed. Vaduz, 1981

*The Economy of the Principality of Liechtenstein.* Press and Information Office, Vaduz, 1984

Batliner, E. H., *Das Geld- und Kreditwesen des Fürstentums Liechtenstein in Vergangenheit und Gegenwart.* 1959

Green, B., *Valley of Peace.* Vaduz, 1967

Larke, T. A. T., *Index and Thesaurus of Liechtenstein.* 2nd ed. Berkeley, 1984

Malin, G., *Kunstführer Fürstentum Liechtenstein.* Berne, 1977

Raton, P., *Liechtenstein: History and Institutions of the Principality.* Vaduz, 1970

Seger, O., *A Survey of Liechtenstein History.* 4th English ed. Vaduz, 1984

Steger, G., *Fürst und Landtag nach Liechtensteinischem Recht.* Vaduz, 1950



# LUXEMBOURG

*Capital:* Luxembourg  
*Population:* 372,100 (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$15,680 (1986)

## Grand-Duché de Luxembourg

**HISTORY.** The country formed part of the Holy Roman Empire until it was conquered by the French in 1795. In 1815 the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg was formed under the house of Orange-Nassau, also sovereigns of the Netherlands. In 1839 the Walloon-speaking area was joined to Belgium. In 1890 the personal union with the Netherlands ended with the accession of a member of another branch of the house of Nassau, Grand Duke Adolphe of Nassau-Weilburg.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Luxembourg has an area of 2,586 sq. km (999 sq. miles) and is bounded on the west by Belgium, south by France, east by the Federal Republic of Germany. The population (1988) was 372,100. The capital, Luxembourg, had (1987) 76,640 inhabitants; Esch-Alzette, the centre of the mining district, 23,720; Differdange, 16,000; Dudelange, 14,060, and Petange, 11,590. In 1988 the foreign population was about 99,400.

Vital statistics (1987): 4,238 births, 4,012 deaths, 1,958 marriages.

**CLIMATE.** Cold, raw winters with snow covering the ground for up to a month are features of the upland areas. The remainder resembles Belgium in its climate, with rain evenly distributed throughout the year. Jan. 33.3°F (0.7°C), July 63.5°F (17.5°C). Annual rainfall 30.1" (764 mm).

**REIGNING GRAND DUKE.** Jean, born 5 Jan. 1921, son of the late Grand Duchess Charlotte and the late Prince Felix of Bourbon-Parma; succeeded 12 Nov. 1964 on the abdication of his mother; married to Princess Joséphine-Charlotte of Belgium, 9 April 1953. *Offspring:* Princess Marie-Astrid, born 17 Feb. 1954, married Christian of Habsbourg-Lorraine 6 Feb. 1982 (*Offspring:* Marie Christine, born 31 July 1983; Imre, born 8 Dec. 1985); Prince Henri, *heir apparent*, born 16 April 1955, married Maria Teresa Mestre 14 Feb. 1981; (*Offspring:* Prince Guillaume, born 11 Nov. 1981, Prince Felix, born 3 June 1984, Prince Louis, born 3 Aug. 1986). Prince Jean, born 15 May 1957, married Hélène Vestur; Princess Margaretha, born 15 May 1957, married Prince Nikolaus of Liechtenstein 20 March 1982; Prince Guillaume, born 1 May 1963.

The civil list is fixed at 300,000 gold francs per annum, to be reconsidered at the beginning of each reign.

On 28 Sept. 1919 a referendum was taken in Luxembourg to decide on the political and economic future of the country. The voting resulted as follows: For the reigning Grand Duchess, 66,811; for the continuance of the Nassau-Braganza dynasty under another Grand Duchess, 1,286; for another dynasty, 889; for a republic, 16,885; for an economic union with France, 60,133; for an economic union with Belgium, 22,242. But France refused in favour of Belgium, and on 22 Dec. 1921 the Chamber of the Grand Duchy passed a Bill for the economic union between Belgium and Luxembourg. The agreement, which is for 60 years, provides for the disappearance of the customs barrier between the two countries and the use of Belgian, in addition to Luxembourg, currency as legal tender in the Grand Duchy. It came into force on 1 May 1922.

The Grand Duchy was under German occupation from 10 May 1940 to 10 Sept. 1944. The Grand Duchess Charlotte and the Government carried on an independent administration in London. Civil government was restored in Oct. 1944.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white and light blue.

*National anthem:* Ons Hemecht (words by M. Lentz, 1859; tune by J. A. Zinnen).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Grand Duchy of Luxembourg is a constitutional monarchy, the hereditary sovereignty being in the Nassau family. The constitution of 17 Oct. 1868 was revised in 1919, 1948, 1956 and 1972. The revision of 1948 has abolished the 'perpetually neutral' status of the country and introduced the concepts of right to work, social security, health services, freedom of trade and industry, and recognition of trade unions. The revision of 1956 provides for the devolution of executive, legislative and judicial powers to international institutions.

The national language is Luxemburgish; French, German and English are widely used.

The country forms 4 electoral districts. An elector must be a citizen (male or female) of Luxembourg and have completed 18 years of age; to be eligible for election the citizen must have completed 21 years of age.

The Chamber of Deputies consists of 25 Christian Social, 21 Socialists, 14 Democrats, and 2 Communists, and 1 Green alternative (Ecologist) and 1 non-attached deputy (elections of 17 June 1984). Members are elected for 5 years; they receive a salary and a travelling allowance.

The head of the state takes part in the legislative power, exercises the executive power and has a certain part in the judicial power. The constitution leaves to the sovereign the right to organize the Government, which consists of a Minister of State, who is President of the Government, and of at least 3 Ministers.

The Cabinet was, in July 1988, composed as follows:

*President of the Government, Minister of State, Minister for Finance:* Jacques Santer.

*Vice-President of the Government, Foreign Affairs, Foreign Trade and Co-operation, Economy and Middle Classes, Exchequer and Health:* Jacques F. Poos. *Social Security:* Benny Berg. *Justice, Cultural Affairs, Environment:* Robert Krieps. *National Education and Youth, Tourism:* Fernand Boden. *Interior, Family Affairs, Social Solidarity:* Jean Spautz. *Labour, Finance and Budget:* Jean-Claude Juncker. *Transport, Public Works, Energy:* Marcel Schlechter. *Agriculture and Viticulture, Armed Forces, Civil Service, Physical Education and Sports:* Marc Fischbach. *Secretary of State for Economy and Health:* Johnny Lahure. *Secretary of State for Agriculture and Viticulture:* René Steichen. *Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, Foreign Trade and Co-operation, Middle Classes:* Robert Goebbels.

Besides the Cabinet there is a Council of State. It deliberates on proposed laws and Bills, and on amendments; it also gives administrative decisions and expresses its opinion regarding any other question referred to it by the Grand Duke or the Government. The Council of State is composed of 21 members chosen for life by the sovereign, who also chooses a president from among them each year.

**DEFENCE.** A law passed by Parliament on 29 June 1967 abolished compulsory service and instituted a battalion-size army of volunteers enlisted for 3 years. Strength (1989) 800. The defence estimates for 1988 amounted to 2,247m. francs. Luxembourg is an original member of NATO and the battalion is committed to NATO ACE mobile force.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Luxembourg is a member of the UN, Benelux, the European Communities, OECD, the Council of Europe, NATO and WEU.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (including extraordinary) for years ending 30 April (in 1m. francs):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	75,047.9	81,363.8	82,351.6	86,309.4	85,047.5	89,319.0
Expenditure	73,599.3	79,536.8	82,015.3	86,204.3	85,421.7	89,250.0

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

Consolidated debt at 31 Dec. 1987 amounted to 14,889m. francs (long-term) and 3,216m. francs (short-term).

**Currency.** On 14 Oct. 1944 the Luxembourg *franc* was fixed at par value with the Belgian franc. Notes of the Belgian National Bank are legal tender in Luxembourg.

**Banking.** On 31 Dec. 1987 depositors in the State Savings Bank with a total of 50,301m. francs to their credit. There were (1988) 132 banks and 25 non-bank credit institutions established in Luxembourg which has become an international financial centre.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Power production was 1,036m. kwh. in 1987.

**Minerals.** In 1987 production (in tonnes) of pig-iron, 2,305,100; of steel, 3,301,860.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is carried on by about 6,500 of the population; 126,557 hectares were under cultivation in 1987. The principal crops are potatoes, barley, beet, oats, wheat and maize. In 1987, 142,600 hectolitres of wine were produced from 1,196 hectares.

Livestock (1987): 1,699 horses, 217,254 cattle, 74,944 pigs, 6,164 sheep.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Commerce.** By treaty of 5 Sept. 1944, signed in London, and the treaty of 14 March 1947, signed in The Hague, the Grand Duchy, together with Belgium and the Netherlands, became a party to the Benelux Customs Union, which came into force on 1 Jan. 1948. For further particulars *see* p. 199.

Total trade between Luxembourg and UK included with Belgium from 1974.

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 476,000 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 the network had a total of 5,073 km. Motor vehicles registered in Luxembourg on 1 Jan. 1988 included 168,476 passenger cars, 9,951 trucks, 717 buses, 19,278 tractors and special vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1987 there were 270 km of railway (standard gauge) of which 162 km electrified. It carried 593m. tonne-km and 269m. passenger-km.

**Aviation.** Findel is the airport for Luxembourg and 949,000 passengers and 97,116 tonnes of freight were handled in 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 the telephone system had 885,467 km of subterranean telegraph and telephone line, 161,700 telephones, 106 post telegraph offices. *Compagnie Luxembourgeoise de Télédiffusion* broadcasts 1 programme in Luxembourgian on FM. Powerful transmitters on long-, medium- and short-waves are used for commercial and religious programmes in French, Dutch, German, English and Italian. Ten TV programmes are broadcast. Colour transmission by SECAM system.

**Cinemas** (1988). There were 11 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 6 daily newspapers with a circulation of 130,000.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** The population is 95% Roman Catholic. The remaining 5% is mainly Protestant or Jewish, or does not belong to any religion. The Protestant Church is organized on an interdenominational basis.

**Education** (1986–87). Education is compulsory for all children between the ages of 6 and 15. The nursery schools had 8,315 pupils; primary schools had 24,381



pupils; technical secondary schools, 15,217 pupils; secondary schools, 7,772 pupils; the Superior Institute of Technology, 262 pupils; pedagogic education (1985–86), 145 pupils; university studies (1986–87), 426 pupils.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 666 doctors and 4,661 hospital beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Luxembourg in Great Britain (27 Wilton Crescent, London, SW1X 8SD)  
*Ambassador:* Jean Wagner (accredited 4 March 1986).

Of Great Britain in Luxembourg (14 Blvd Roosevelt, Luxembourg)  
*Ambassador and Consul-General:* Juliet Campbell, CMG.

Of Luxembourg in the USA (2200 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* André Philippe.

Of the USA in Luxembourg (22 Blvd. Emmanuel Servais, Luxembourg)  
*Ambassador:* Fred Bush.

Of Luxembourg to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Jean Feyder.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Service Central de la Statistique et des Études Économiques was founded in 1900 and reorganized in 1962 (19–21 boulevard Royal, C.P. 304 Luxembourg-City). *Director:* Georges Als. Main publications: *Bulletin du Statec*.—*Annuaire statistique*.—*Cahiers économiques*.

*Bulletin de Documentation.* Government Information Service. From 1945 (monthly)  
*The Institutions of the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg.* Press and Information Service, Luxembourg, 1982

Als, G., *Le Luxembourg, situation politique, économique et sociale.* Luxembourg, 1982

Calmes, C., *Au Fil de l'Histoire.* Luxembourg, 1977

Heiderscheid, A., *Aspects de Sociologie Religieuse du Diocèse de Luxembourg.* 2 vols. Luxembourg, 1961

Hury, C. and Christophory, J., *Luxembourg.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981

Majerus, P., *Le Luxembourg independant.* Luxembourg, 1948.—*L'État Luxembourgeois.* Luxembourg, 1983

Newcomer, J., *The Grand Duchy of Luxembourg: The Evolution of Nationhood, 963 A.D. to 1983.* Washington, 1983

*Archives of the State:* Luxembourg-City. *Director:* Paul Spang.

*National Library:* Luxembourg-City, 37 Boulevard Roosevelt. *Director:* Jules Christophory.

# MADAGASCAR

Capital: Antananarivo

Population: 10.92m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$230 (1987)

## Repoblika Demokratika n'i Madagaskar

**HISTORY.** Madagascar was discovered by the Portuguese, Diego Diaz, in 1500. The island was unified under the Imérina monarchy between 1797 and 1861, but French claims to a protectorate led to hostilities culminating in the establishment of a protectorate on 30 Sept. 1895. Madagascar became a French Colony on 6 Aug. 1896 and the monarchy was abolished on 26 Feb. 1897.

Madagascar became an Overseas Territory in 1946, and on 14 Oct. 1958, following a referendum, was proclaimed the autonomous Malagasy Republic within the French Community, achieving full independence on 26 June 1960.

The government of Philibert Tsiranana, President from independence, resigned on 18 May 1972 and executive powers were given to Maj.-Gen. Gabriel Ramanantsoa, who replaced Tsiranana as President on 11 Oct. 1972. On 5 Feb. 1975, Col. Richard Ratsimandrava became Head of State, but was assassinated 6 days later. A National Military Directorate under Brig.-Gen. Gilles Andriamahazo was established on 12 Feb. On 15 June it handed over power to a Supreme Revolutionary Council (SRC) under Didier Ratsiraka.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Madagascar is situated off the south-east coast of Africa, from which it is separated by the Mozambique channel, the least distance between island and continent being 250 miles (400 km); its length is 980 miles (1,600 km); greatest breadth, 360 miles (570 km).

The area is 587,041 sq. km (226,658 sq. miles). In 1975 (census) the population was 7,603,790. Estimate (1988) 10,919,000.

Province	Area in Sq. km	Population 1985	Chieftown	Population 1986
Antseranana	43,046	689,800	Antseranana	53,000
Mahajanga	150,023	1,075,300	Mahajanga	111,000
Toamasina	71,911	1,444,700	Toamasina	139,000
Antananarivo	58,283	3,195,800	Antananarivo	703,000
Fianarantsoa	102,373	2,209,700	Fianarantsoa	111,000
Toliary	161,405	1,396,700	Toliary	59,000

Vital statistics, 1984: Births, 456,000; deaths, 146,000.

The indigenous population are of Malayo-Polynesian stock, divided into 18 ethnic groups of which the principal are Merina (26%) of the central plateau, the Betsimisaraka (15%) of the east coast, and the Betsileo (12%) of the southern plateau. Foreign communities include Europeans, mainly French (30,000), Indians (15,000), Chinese (9,000), Comorians and Arabs.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, but the mountains cause big variations in rainfall, which is very heavy in the east and very light in the west. Antananarivo. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 54" (1,350 mm). Toamasina. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 128" (3,256 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The new Constitution of the Democratic Republic of Madagascar was approved by referendum on 21 Dec. 1975 and came into force on 30 Dec. It provides for a National People's Assembly of 137 members elected by universal suffrage for a 5-year term from the single list of the *Front National pour la Défense de la Révolution Socialiste Malgache*; following the general elections held on 28 Aug. 1983, this comprised 117 members of the *Avant-garde de la Révolution Malgache*, 9 of the *Parti du Congrès de l'Indépen-*

dence and 11 others. Executive power is vested in the President, directly elected for 7 years, who appoints a Council of Ministers to assist him, with the guidance of the 20-member Supreme Revolutionary Council.

*President:* Adm. Didier Ratsiraka (re-elected 7 Nov. 1982).

The Council of Ministers in Dec. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Lieut.-Col. Victor Ramahatra.

*Foreign Affairs:* Jean Bemananjara. *Defence:* Gen. Christophe Bienaimé Raveloson-Mahasampo. *Interior:* Ampy Portos. *Civil Service and Labour:* Georges Ruphin. *Finance and Economy:* Pascal Rakotomavo. *Health:* Dr Jean-Jacques Séraphin. *Commerce:* Georges Solofoson. *Industry, Energy and Mines:* José Rakotomavo. *Animal Production, Water Resources and Forestry:* Joseph Randrianasolo. *Agricultural Production and Agrarian Reform:* José-Michel Andrianoëlison. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Rakotovoa Andriantiana. *Secondary and Basic Education:* Charles Zeny. *Higher Education:* Ignace Rakoto. *Scientific Research:* Antoine Zafera. *Information and Ideological Guidance:* Simon Pierre. *Revolutionary Art and Culture:* Gisèle Rabesahala. *Transport and Tourism:* Jean Emile Tsaranazy. *Public Works:* Andrianaivomanana Razafindramisa. *Population, Social Welfare, Youth and Sport:* Jean-André Ndremanjary. *Justice:* Joseph Bedo. *Special Economic Advisor:* Rabearivelo Andriamalagasy.

*National flag:* Horizontally red over green, in the hoist a vertical white strip.

*National anthem:* Ry tanindrazanay malala ô!

Malagasy, which is a language of Malayo-Polynesian origin, is the official language. French and English are understood and taught in Malagasy schools.

*Local Government:* The six provinces are sub-divided into 110 *Fivondronana*, which in turn are divided into 1,252 *Firaisana* and finally into 11,393 *Fokontany* (the traditional communal divisions). Each level is governed by an elected council.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army is organized in 2 battalion groups, and 1 engineer, 1 signals, 1 service and 7 construction regiments. Equipment includes PT-76 light tanks and M-8 armoured cars. Strength (1989) 20,000 and gendarmerie 7,500.

**Navy.** The small maritime guard in 1989 had a strength of 500 (including 100 marines), equipped with 1 large patrol craft, 5 patrol boats, 1 medium landing ship, 1 landing craft, 4 minor landing craft and a large trawler training ship.

**Air Force.** Created in 1961, the Malagasy Air Force received its first combat equipment in 1978, with the arrival of 8 MiG-21 and 4 MiG-17 fighters, plus flying and ground staff instructors, from North Korea. Other equipment includes An-26 turboprop transports, 1 Britten-Norman Defender armed transport, 2 C-47s, 1 HS. 748 and 1 Yak-40 for VIP use, 1 Aztec, 2 Cessna Skymasters, 4 Cessna 172Ms and 6 Mi-8 helicopters. Personnel (1989) 500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Madagascar is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1984-87 agricultural plan aimed at food self-sufficiency and envisaged investment of US\$219m.

**Budget.** The budget 1988, envisaged revenue of 497,919,516,000 FMG and expenditure of 577,002,323,000 FMG.

**Currency.** The Malagasy *franc* is the unit of currency. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 50 and 100 francs and banknotes of 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 francs. In March 1989, £1 = 2,485 FMG; US\$1 = 1,443.93 FMG.

**Banking.** A Central Bank was formed in July 1973, replacing the former *Institut*



*d'Emission Malgache* as the central bank of issue. All commercial banking and insurance was nationalized in June 1975 and privatized in 1988. Industrial development is financed through the *Bankin'ny Indostria*, and other commercial banking undertaken by the *Bankin'ny Tantsaha Mpamokatra* and the *Banky Fampandrosoana ny Varotra*.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 479m. kwh. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The oil refinery at Toamasina has a capacity of 12,000 bbls a day.

**Minerals.** Mining production in 1986 included: Graphite, 161,788 tonnes; chromite, 82,910 tonnes; zircon (1985), 650 kg; beryl (1985), (industrial), 129,507 kg; mica, 1,775 kg; gold (1985), 181.6 grammes; industrial garnet (1985), 52.2 kg.

**Agriculture.** The principal agricultural products in 1987 were (in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 2,230; cassava, 2,450; mangoes, 190; bananas, 250; potatoes, 264; sugarcane, 1,800; maize, 153; sweet potatoes, 470; coffee, 83; oranges, 82; pineapples, 51; cotton, 41; groundnuts, 33; sisal, 21; tobacco, 4.

Cattle breeding and agriculture are the chief occupations. There were, in 1987, 10,565,000 cattle, 1,361,000 pigs, 611,000 sheep, 1.24m. goats and 29m. poultry.

**Forestry.** The forests contain many valuable woods, while gum, resins and plants for tanning, dyeing and medicinal purposes abound. Production (1984) 6.26m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The fish catch in 1984 was 56,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry, hitherto confined mainly to the processing of agricultural products, is now extending to cover other fields.

**Commerce.** Trade in 1m. FMG:

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports (c.i.f)	166,750	213,531	265,916	238,458
Exports (f.o.b)	127,257	192,267	181,630	205,875

The chief exports in 1985 were coffee (35%), cloves (15%) and vanilla (16%). France took 37% of exports, the USA, 14% and Japan, 11%, while France supplied 33% of imports, the USSR, 9%, Federal Republic of Germany, 6%, Qatar, 6% and the USA, 6%.

Total trade between Madagascar and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	6,236	6,432	6,925	7,154
Exports and re-exports from UK	9,484	6,872	6,382	4,747

**Tourism.** There were 27,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1982 there were 49,637 km of roads of which 4,774 km bitumenized. In 1983 there were 23,412 private cars and 14,159 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1987 there were 883 km of railways, all metre gauge. In 1987, 2.7m. passengers and 596,000m. tonnes of cargo were transported.

**Aviation.** Air France and Air Madagascar connect Antananarivo (International airport, Ivato) with Paris, Alitalia connects with Rome. Several weekly services operated by Air Madagascar connect the capital with the ports and the chief inland towns. In 1985, 138,362 passengers and 5,144 tonnes of cargo arrived and departed.

**Shipping.** In 1986, 705,824 tonnes were loaded and 1,153,133 tonnes unloaded at Toamasina, Mahajanga and other ports. In 1980, registered merchant marine was 56 vessels (of more than 100 GRT) with a total of 91,211 GRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were in 1978, 547 post offices and agencies. There were (1983) 37,100 telephone subscribers, and (1986) 2m. radio receivers and 96,000 television receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1985 there were 7 daily newspapers with a total circulation of 68,000.

**Cinemas.** There were, in 1974, 31 cinemas with a seating capacity of 12,500.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court and the Court of Appeal are in Antananarivo. In most towns there are Courts of First Instance for civil and commercial cases. For criminal cases there are ordinary criminal courts in most towns.

**Religion.** 47% of the population follow animist religions; 28% are Roman Catholic, 22% Protestant (mainly belonging to the Fiangonan'i Jesosy Kristy eto Madagaskar) and 3% Moslem.

**Education.** Education is compulsory from 6 to 14 years of age in the primary schools. In 1984 there were 1,608,722 pupils and 35,372 teachers in 13,973 primary schools, 275,000 pupils and 10,383 teachers in secondary schools and 11,041 students and 1,302 teachers in technical schools. The University of Madagascar has a main campus at Antananarivo and 5 university centres in the other provincial capitals, with 37,475 students in 1986. There are also 4 agricultural schools at Nanisana, Ambatondrazaka, Marovoay and Ivoloïna.

**Health.** In 1978 there were 749 hospitals and dispensaries with 20,625 beds; there were (1981) 901 doctors, 52 dentists, 87 pharmacists, 839 midwives and 770 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Madagascar in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* François de Paul Rabotoson (resides in Paris)

Of Great Britain in Madagascar (Immeuble Ny Havana, Cite de 67 Ha, Antananarivo)

*Ambassador:* A. V. Hayday.

Of Madagascar in the USA (2374 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Leon M. Rajaobelina.

Of the USA in Madagascar (14 rue Rainitovo, Antsahavola, Antananarivo)

*Ambassador:* Patricia Gates Lynch.

Of Madagascar to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Blaise Rabetafika.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Service de Statistique Générale in Antananarivo published the *Bulletin mensuel de Madagascar* (from 1971); continuation of the trimestrial *Bulletin de statistique générale* (1949–71), the *Revue de Madagascar*, the *Madagascar à travers ses provinces* (latest issue, 1953) and the *Statistiques du Commerce Extérieur de Madagascar*. *Bulletin de l'Académie Malgache* (from 1902)

Brandt, H., *Guide to Madagascar*. Chalfont St Peter, 1988

Brown, M., *Madagascar Rediscovered*. London, 1978

Deschamps, H., *Histoire de Madagascar*. Paris, 4th ed. 1972

# MALAWI

*Capital:* Lilongwe

*Population:* 7.1m. (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$160 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Malaŵi was formerly the Nyasaland (until 1907 British Central Africa) Protectorate, constituted on 15 May 1891.

Nyasaland became a self-governing country on 1 Feb. 1963, and on 6 July 1964 an independent member of the Commonwealth under the name of Malaŵi. It became a republic on 6 July 1966.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Malaŵi lies along the southern and western shores of Lake Malaŵi (the third largest lake in Africa), and is otherwise bounded north by Tanzania, south by Mozambique and west by Zambia. Land area (excluding inland water of Lakes Palombe, Chilwa and Chiuta) 36,325 sq. miles, divided into 3 regions and 24 districts, each administered by a District Commissioner.

Lake Malaŵi waters belonging to Malaŵi are 9,250 sq. miles and the whole Lake Malaŵi (including the waters under Mozambique by an agreement made between the two countries in 1950) is 11,650 sq. miles.

Population at census 1977, 5,547,460 (males, 2,673,589). Estimate (1985), 7,058,800. Over 90% of the population live in rural areas.

Population of main towns (estimate 1985) was as follows: Blantyre, 355,200; Lilongwe, 186,800; Mzuzu, 82,700; Zomba, 53,000.

Population of the regions, 1986 (and census 1977): Northern, 815,000 (648,853); Central, 2,938,300 (2,143,716); Southern, 3,525,600 (2,754,891).

The official languages are Chichewa, spoken by over 50% of the population, and English.

**CLIMATE.** The tropical climate is marked by a dry season from May to Oct. and a wet season for the remaining months. Rainfall amounts are variable, within the range of 29–100" (725–2,500 mm), and maximum temperatures average 75–89°F (24–32°C), and minimum temperatures 58–67°F (14.4–19.4°C). Lilongwe. Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 60°F (15.6°C). Annual rainfall 36" (900 mm). Blantyre. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,125 mm). Zomba. Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 54" (1,344 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The President of the republic is also head of Government and of the Malaŵi Congress Party. Malaŵi is a one-party state. Parliament is composed of 120 members: 104 elected for up to 5 years, and 16 nominated by the President.

*Life President, External Affairs, Agriculture, Justice, Works:* Ngwazi Dr H. Kamuzu Banda. (Took office 6 July 1966 and became Life President on 6 July 1971).

The Cabinet in Jan. 1989 was composed as follows:

*Without Portfolio, Administrative Secretary of Malaŵi Congress Party:* Maxwell Pashane. *Labour:* Wadson B. Deleza. *Health:* Edward Chitsulo Isaac Bwanali. *Trade, Industry and Tourism:* Robson W. Chirwa. *Finance:* Louis J. Chimango. *Forestry and Natural Resources:* Stanford Demba. *Transport and Communications:* Dalton S. Katopola. *Education and Culture:* Michael Mlambala. *Local Government:* Mfunjo Mwanjasi Mwakikunga.

*National flag:* Three equal horizontal stripes of black, red, green, with a red rising sun on the centre of the black stripe.

**DEFENCE.** All services form part of the Army and have a strength (1989) 5,250.

**Army.** The army is organized into 3 infantry battalions and 1 support battalion. Equipment includes scout cars.



**Navy.** There are 3 small lake patrol boats and 2 gunboats. Uniformed personnel in 1989 totalled 100.

**Air Wing.** To support the infantry battalion, the Air Wing has 1 Do 28D Sky-servant and 3 Do 228 light transports, and 2 Puma, 1 Ecureuil, 1 Dauphin, and 1 Alouette III helicopters. An HS 125 jet is used for VIP transport. Personnel (1989) 150.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Malawi is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, the Non-Aligned States, OAU, SADC and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Government of Malawi operates a 3-year 'rolling' public-sector investment programme, revised annually to take into account changing needs and the expected level of resources available. The greatest part of the development programme is annually financed from external aid, and priority in the use of resources has always been given to providing the counterpart contributions to funds received from external sources. The balance of these local resources is used for financing projects commanding high national priority for which no external funds can be secured.

**Budget.** Revenue Account receipts and expenditure (in K.1,000) for years ending 31 March:

	1983-84	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87
Revenue	458,140	353,200	450,200	512,300
Expenditure	449,747	416,800	523,600	547,000

**Currency.** The currency is the *kwacha* (dawn), which is subdivided into 100 *tambala* (cockerels). From 9 June 1975 the kwacha has been pegged to Special Drawing Rights. In March 1989: £1 sterling = K.4.55, US\$1 = K.2.65.

**Banking.** In July 1964 the Reserve Bank of Malawi was set up with a capital of K.1m. to be responsible for the issue of currency and the holding of external reserves and to issue treasury bills and local registered stock on behalf of the Government. Since then, the Reserve Bank has fully assumed the responsibilities of a Central Bank.

The National Bank of Malawi has a total of 14 branches in major urban areas and 25 static and 41 mobile agencies in rural areas. The Commercial Bank of Malawi Ltd opened in 1970 and has branches at Limbe, Lilongwe, Mzuzu and Zomba and an agency in Dedza and headquarters at Blantyre. It has 4 permanent and 65 mobile agencies.

In 1972 The Investment Development Bank of Malawi was established in Blantyre. Its resources are derived from domestic and foreign official sources and its objective is to provide medium and long-term credits to private entities considered of importance to the economy.

The post office savings bank had (1985) 257 offices conducting savings business throughout the country, and the New Building Society has agencies in Limbe, Mzuzu, Zomba, Muloza and Blantyre with its head office in Lilongwe.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system became fully operational in 1982.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The Electricity Supply Commission of Malawi is the sole supplier of electrical power and energy and the demand and supply of electricity and power on the inter-connected system was met from the hydro-electric generator sets installed at Tedzani Falls and Nkula Falls stations which together have a total capacity of 124 mw as at 1984. The inter-connected system extends from the Shire River hydro stations and covers most areas of the Southern and Central Regions, and part of the Northern Region. Production (1986) 466m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

Thermal plant of 23.8 mw capacity is available on the inter-connected system and there are stations at Blantyre, Lilongwe, Mtunthama, Kasungu, and Mzuzu.

The capacity of the isolated station at Karonga was increased to 480 kw with the installation of 120 kw diesel generator set.

**Minerals.** The main product in 1976 was marble (149,254 tonnes) for the manufacture of cement. Coal mining began in 1985.

**Agriculture.** Malawi is predominantly an agricultural country. In 1983 agriculture contributed about 43% to the GDP, and agricultural produce accounted for 90% of total exports. Maize is the main subsistence crop and is grown by over 95% of all smallholders; production (1986) 1,374,000 tonnes. Tea cultivation is of growing importance; in 1986, 42,000 tonnes were produced. Almost all the surplus crops produced by smallholders are sold to the Agricultural Development and Marketing Corporation. Production (1986): Tobacco, 71,000 tonnes; sugar-cane, 1.6m. tonnes.

Livestock in 1986: Cattle, 930,000; sheep, 180,000; goats, 690,000; pigs, 240,000.

**Forestry.** In 1983-84, 11,108 cu. metres of sawn timber were removed.

**Fisheries.** Landings in 1984 were 65,073 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Index of manufacturing output in 1985 (1970 = 100): manufacturing for domestic consumption 419.7 (229.5 in 1980); of this consumer goods were at 183.4 (252.5) and intermediate goods mainly for building and construction were at 111.1 (150.4). Manufacturing for export, 236.3 (201.6).

**Commerce.** Exports 1985 (in K.lm.): Tobacco, 229.9; tea, 113.3; sugar, 28.9; pulses, 6.4; groundnuts, 1.1; rice, 3; other crops including manufactures, 53.4.

Trade statistics for calendar years are (in K.lm.):

	1983	1984	1985
Imports	363.7	381.5	492.5
Exports	270.6	446.2	419.6

Total trade between Malawi and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	87,218	56,983	44,223	30,183
Exports and re-exports from UK	20,525	28,557	18,069	27,618

**Tourism.** There were 41,145 visitors to Malawi in 1985.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were 2,701 km of main road, of which 1,857 km were bitumen surfaced and 410 km gravel; 2,782 km of secondary roads, of which 285 km were surfaced and 239 km gravel; 5,354 km of district roads, of which 24 km were surfaced and 16 km gravel, and 8,008 km of earth roads. In 1987 there were 14,911 cars and 15,643 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** Malawi Railways (789 km-1,067 mm gauge) operates a main line from Salima to the Mozambique border near Nsanje, from which running powers over the Trans-Zambezia Railway allow access to the port of Beira; a branch opened in 1970 runs eastwards from a point 16 km south of Balaka to the Mozambique border to give a direct route to the deep-water port of Nacala. The 26-km section from Nsanje to the border is operated by the Central Africa Railway Co. Ltd. An extension of 111 km from Salima to the new state capital of Lilongwe was opened in Feb. 1979, and a further extension to Mchinji on the Zambian border (120 km) was completed in 1981. In 1987-88, 414,995 tonnes were hauled and 1,709,983 passengers carried.

**Aviation.** In 1983 the Kamuzu International Airport at Lilongwe was inaugurated. It handled (1987) 225,620 passengers and 4,785.6 tonnes. In 1987 Chileka Airport handled 95,879 passengers and 675.7 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** In 1987–88 lake ships carried 210,103 passengers and 28,983 tonnes of freight.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1987) 25,000. The Malaŵi Broadcasting Corporation broadcasts in English and Chichewa. There were 1m. radio sets in 1983.

**Newspapers** (1988). *The Daily Times* (English, Monday to Friday); 16,000 copies daily. *Malawi News* (English and Chichewa, Saturdays); 33,000 copies weekly. *Odini* (English and Chichewa); 8,500 copies fortnightly. *Boma Lathu* (Chichewa); 80,000 copies monthly.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered in the High Court, the magistrates' courts and traditional courts. There are 23 magistrates' courts, 176 traditional courts and 23 local appeal courts.

Appeals from traditional courts are dealt with in the traditional appeal courts and in the national traditional appeal court. Appeals from magistrates' courts lie to the High Court, and appeals from the High Court to Malaŵi's Supreme Court of Appeal.

**Religion.** In 1988 the Roman Catholic Church claimed 1.5m. members; Church of Central Africa Presbyterian, 500,000; Diocese of Southern Malaŵi and Lake Malaŵi (part of the Province of Central Africa (the Anglican Communion) (1983), 70,606; Seventh Day Adventist Church (1984), 59,319. Zambezi Evangelical Church (formerly Zambezi Industrial Mission) (1987), 30,000; Assembly of God, 13,740; Seventh Day Baptist (Central Africa Conference) (1987), 4,861; Church of Christ, 60,000; African Evangelical Church (1983), 6,000. Moslems were estimated to number about 500,000 in 1983.

**Education** In 1986–87 the number of pupils in primary schools was 1,022,765; in secondary schools, 25,681. There were 25,013 teachers in primary schools and 1,229 in secondary schools. The primary school course is of 8 years' duration, followed by a 4-year secondary course. English is taught from the 1st year and becomes the general medium of instruction from the 4th year. There were 1,802 students in teacher training schools and 777 in government technical schools.

The University of Malaŵi was inaugurated in 1965. In 1988–89 there were 2,323 students taking degree and diploma courses.

**Health.** In 1986 there were two central hospitals, one general hospital, one mental hospital, two leprosaria and 45 hospitals of which 21 were government district hospitals. There were 7,081 hospital beds of which 1,612 were for maternity.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Malaŵi in Great Britain (33 Grosvenor St., London, W1X 0DE)  
*High Commissioner:* Bernard Brenn Mtawali.

Of Great Britain in Malaŵi (Lingadzi Hse., Lilongwe, 3)  
*High Commissioner:* Dr D. G. Osborne.

Of Malaŵi in the USA (2408 Massachusetts Ave., Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* R. Mbaya.

Of the USA in Malaŵi (PO Box 30016, Lilongwe, 3)  
*Chargé d'Affaires:* George Trail.

Of Malaŵi to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* R. Mbaya.

## Further Reading

*General Information:* The Chief Information Officer, PO Box 494, Blantyre.  
Boeder, R. B., *Malawi*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981



# MALAYSIA

*Capital:* Kuala Lumpur

*Population:* 17m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,850 (1986)

**HISTORY.** On 16 Sept. 1963 Malaysia came into being, consisting of the Federation of Malaya, the State of Singapore and the colonies of North Borneo (renamed Sabah) and Sarawak. The agreement between the UK and the 4 territories was signed on 9 July (Cmnd. 2094); by it, the UK relinquished sovereignty over Singapore, North Borneo and Sarawak from independence day and extended the 1957 defence agreement with Malaya to apply to Malaysia. Malaysia became automatically a member of the Commonwealth of Nations. See map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1964-65.

On 9 Aug. 1965, by a mutual agreement dated 7 Aug. 1965 between Malaysia and Singapore, Singapore seceded from Malaysia to become an independent Sovereign nation.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Malaysia comprises 11 states and a federal territory in the Malay Peninsula (bounded north by Thailand), together with a further 2 states and a second federal territory lying on the island of Borneo (bounded south by Indonesia). Singapore and Brunei form enclaves along the coasts of these two parts.

The area of Malaysia is 329,759 sq. km (127,317 sq. miles) and the population (1988 estimate) is 16,968,000. The growth of Census population has been:

<i>Year</i>	<i>Peninsular Malaysia</i>	<i>Sarawak</i>	<i>Sabah/Labuan</i>	<i>Total Malaysia</i>
1970	8,809,557	975,918	655,295	10,440,770
1980	11,426,613	1,307,582	1,011,046	13,745,241

The areas, populations and chief towns of the states and federal territories are:

<i>State</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>
Johor	18,985	1,638,229	Johor Baharu	249,880
Kedah	9,425	1,116,140	Alor Setar	71,682
Kelantan	14,931	893,753	Kota Baharu	170,559
Kuala Lumpur <sup>2</sup>	243	977,102	Kuala Lumpur	937,875
Melaka	1,658	464,754	Melaka	88,073
Negeri Sembilan	6,646	573,578	Seremban	136,252
Pahang	35,960	798,782	Kuantan	136,625
Perak	21,005	1,805,198	Ipoh	300,727
Perlis	795	148,276	Kangar	12,956
Pinang	1,033	954,638	Pinang (Georgetown)	250,578
Selangor	7,956	1,515,536	Shah Alam	24,138
Terengganu	12,955	540,627	Kuala Terengganu	186,608
<i>Peninsular Malaysia</i>	<i>131,592</i>	<i>11,426,613</i>		
Labuan <sup>2</sup>	98	12,219	Victoria	...
Sabah	73,613	998,827	Kota Kinabalu	55,997
Sarawak	124,449	1,307,582	Kuching	74,229
<i>East Malaysia</i>	<i>198,160</i>	<i>2,318,628</i>		

<sup>1</sup> Revised figures

<sup>2</sup> Federal Territories.

Other large cities (1980 Census): Petaling Jaya (207,805), Kelang (192,080), Taiping (146,002), Sibü (85,231), Sandakan (70,420) and Miri (52,125).

Of the total population in 1980, 47% were Malay, 32% Chinese, 8% Indian and 13% others. Over 58% speak Malay, the official language, 9% Chinese, 4% Tamil and 3% Iban.

**CLIMATE.** Malaysia is affected by the monsoon climate. The N.E. monsoon

prevails from Oct. to Feb., bringing rain to the east coast of the peninsula. The S.W. monsoon lasts from mid-May to Sept. and affects the opposite coastline the most. Temperatures are uniform throughout the year. Kuala Lumpur. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 97.6" (2,441 mm). Penang. Jan. 82°F (27.8°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 109.4" (2,736 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of Malaysia is based on the Constitution of the former Federation of Malaya, but includes safeguards for the special interests of Sabah and Sarawak. It was amended in 1983.

The federal capital is Kuala Lumpur, established on 1 Feb. 1974 with an area of approximately 94 sq. miles. The official language is Bahasa Malaysia.

The Constitution provides for one of the 9 Rulers of the Malay States to be elected from among themselves to be the *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* (Supreme Head of the Federation). He holds office for a period of 5 years. The Rulers also elect from among themselves a Deputy Supreme Head of State, also for a period of 5 years.

*Supreme Head of State (Yang di-Pertuan Agong):* HM Sultan Mahmood Iskandar ibni Al-Marhum Sultan Ismail DK, SPMJ, SPDK, DK (Brunei) SSIJ, PIS, BSI, elected as 8th *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* from 26 April 1984, proclaimed 15 Nov. 1984.

*Raja of Perlis:* HRH Tuanku Syed Putra ibni Al-Marhum Syed Hassan Jamalullail, DK, DKM, DMN, SMN, SPMP, SPDK, acceded 12 March 1949.

*Sultan of Kedah:* HRH Tuanku Haji Abdul Halim Mu'adzam Shah ibni Al-Marhum Sultan Badlishah, DK, DKH, DKM, DMN, DUK, SPMK, SSDK, acceded 20 Feb. 1959.

*Regent of Johor:* HRH Tengku Ibrahim Ismail ibni Sultan Mahmood Iskandar Al-Haj, DK, SPMJ, appointed from 15 Nov. 1984.

*Sultan of Selangor:* HRH Sultan Salahuddin Abdul Aziz Shah ibni Al-Marhum Sultan Hisamuddin 'Alam Shah Al-Haj, DK, DMN, SPMS, SPDK, acceded 3 Sept. 1960.

*Raja of Perak:* HRH Raja Tun Azlan Shah, DK, DMN, PMN, SPCM, SPMP, acceded 3 Feb. 1984.

*Yang di-Pertuan Besar of Negeri Sembilan:* HRH Tuanku Ja'afar ibni Al-Marhum Tuanku Abdul Rahman, DMN, DK, acceded 8 April 1968.

*Sultan of Kelantan:* HRH Sultan Ismail Petra ibni Al-Marhum Sultan Yahya Petra, DK, SPMK, SJMK, SPSM, appointed 29 March 1979.

*Sultan of Trengganu:* HRH Sultan Mahmud Al Marhum ibni Al-Marhum Tuanku Al-Sultan Ismail Nasiruddin Shah, DK, SPMT, SPCM, appointed 2 Sept. 1979.

*Sultan of Pahang:* Sultan Haji Ahmad Shah Al-Musta'in Billah ibni Al-Marhum Sultan Abu Bakar Ri'ayatuddin Al-Mu'Adzam Shah, DKM, DKP, DK, SSAP, SPCM, SPMJ.

*Yang di-Pertua Negeri Pulau Pinang:* HE Tun Dr Awang bin Hassan, DUPN, SPMJ, appointed 1 May 1981.

*Governor of Malacca:* HE Tuan Yang Terutama Tan Sri Datuk Sri Utama Syed Ahmad Al-Haj bin Syed Mahmud Shahabudin, PSM, SPMK, DUNM, SSDK, PNBS, PGDK, JMN, JP, appointed 4 Dec. 1984.

*Yang di-Pertua Negeri Sarawak:* HE Datuk Patinggi Haji Ahmad Zaidi Adruce bin Muhammed Noor, DPSS, DP, PNBS, appointed 2 April 1985.

*Yang di-Pertua Negeri Sabah:* HE Datuk Mohamad Adnan Robert, SMN, SPDK, SPMP, DUPN, DP, appointed 26 June 1978.

Parliament consists of the *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* and two *Majlis* (Houses of Parliament) known as the *Dewan Negara* (Senate) of 68 members and *Dewan Rakyat* (House of Representatives) of 177 members. There are 169 members from the states in Malaysia and 8 from the Federal Territory. Appointment to the Senate

is for 3 years. The maximum life of the House of Representatives is 5 years, subject to its dissolution at any time by the *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* on the advice of his Ministers.

*National flag:* Fourteen horizontal stripes of red and white, with a blue quarter bearing a crescent and a star of 14 points, all in gold.

The elections to the House of Representatives held on 2-3 Aug. 1986, returned the following members: National Front, 148; Democratic Action Party, 24; PAS, 1; Independent, 4.

The Cabinet was in Nov. 1988 composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Minister of Home Affairs and Justice:* Datuk Seri Dr Mahathir Mohamad, SSDK, SSAP, SPMS, SPMJ, DP(Sk), DUPN, SPNS, SPDK, SPCM, SSMT, DUMN.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Minister of National and Rural Development:* Abdul Ghafar Baba. *Ministers in the Prime Minister's Department:* Dr Yusof Mohd Nor; Kasitah Gadam. *Works:* S. Samy Vellu. *Primary Industries:* Dr Lim Keng Yaik. *Information:* Dato Mohamed Rahmat. *Trade and Industry:* Datin Paduka Rafidah Aziz. *Energy, Telecommunications and Posts:* Leo Moggie. *Public Enterprises:* Dato Napsiah Omar. *Land and Regional Development:* Dr Sulaiman Daud. *Agriculture:* Sanusi Junid. *Defence:* Tenglen Ahmad Rithandeen. *Foreign Affairs:* Abu Hassan Omar. *Science, Technology and Environment:* Amar Stephen Yong. *Welfare:* Mustaffa Mohammad. *Education:* Anwar Ibrahim. *Finance:* Daim Zainuddin. *Transport:* Dr Ling Liong Sik. *Health:* Chan Siang Sun. *Labour:* Lee Kim Sai. *Youth and Sports:* Najib Tun Razak. *Housing and Local Government:* Ng Cheng Kiat. *Justice:* Vacant. *Culture and Tourism:* Sabbaruddin Chik.

**DEFENCE.** The Malaysian Constitution provides for the *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* (Supreme Head of State) to be the Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces who exercises his powers and authority in accordance with the advice of the Cabinet. Under the general authority of the *Yang di-Pertuan Agong* and the Cabinet, there is the Armed Forces Council which is responsible for the command, discipline and administration of all other matters relating to the Armed Forces, other than those relating to their operational use.

The Armed Forces Council is chaired by the Minister of Defence and its membership consists of the chief of the Defence Forces, the 3 Service Chiefs and 2 other senior military officers, the Secretary-General of the Ministry of Defence, a representative of State Rulers and an appointed member.

The chief of the Armed Forces Staff is the professional head of the Armed Forces and the senior military member in the Armed Forces Council. He is the principal adviser to the Minister of Defence on the military aspects of all defence matters. The chief of the Armed Forces Staff's committee, established under the authority of the Armed Forces Council, is the highest level at which joint planning and co-ordination with the Armed Forces are carried out. The Committee is chaired by the chief of the Armed Forces Staff and its membership consists of the chief of the Army, Navy and Air Force, the chief of Personnel Staff, the chief of logistic Staff and the chief of Staff of the Ministry of Defence.

**Army.** The Army is organized into 4 divisions, comprising 9 infantry brigades made up of 36 infantry battalions; 4 armoured, 5 field artillery, 5 engineer and 5 signals regiments and 2 anti-aircraft battalions. There is also a special service regiment. Equipment includes 26 Scorpion light tanks. Strength (1989) about 90,000, with as reserves the Malaysian Territorial Army (46,000) and the regular reservists who have completed their full-time service.

**Navy.** The Royal Malaysian Navy is commanded by the Chief of the Navy from the integrated Ministry of Defence in Kuala Lumpur. The main naval bases are KD Malaya at Lumut Perak, KD Sri Labuan on Labuan Island and KD Pelandok in Lumut, Perak. These establishments are responsible for the operation and administration of the ships, and KD Pelandok for the training of personnel.

The ships include 2 new German-built (Kiel) frigates, 2 British (Yarrow)-built frigates (including the former HMS *Mermaid*), 2 new corvettes, 4 new Italian-built



minehunters, 2 logistic support ships, 8 fast missile craft, 6 fast gunboats, 21 patrol craft, 2 landing ships, 1 diving tender, 2 survey vessels, 200 very small amphibious craft and 6 tugs. The peace-time tasks include fishery protection and anti-piracy patrols. There are also 50 armed patrol launches, 48 operated by the Royal Malaysian Police and 2 by the Government of Sabah (North Borneo) which also operates 4 other patrol boats, 1 landing craft and a yacht.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 12,500 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** Formed on 1 June 1958, the Royal Malaysian Air Force is equipped primarily to provide air defence and air support for the Army, Navy and Police. Its secondary rôle is to render assistance to Government departments and civilian organizations. There were in late 1988 13 squadrons, of which 9 operated transport aircraft and helicopters. 35 *ex-US* Navy A-4L/C Skyhawks equip 2 squadrons as the primary attack force. Other equipment includes 14 F-5E Tiger II jet fighter-bombers, 2 RF-5E reconnaissance-fighters, and 3 F-5F trainers, 2 F.28 Fellowship and 2 Challenger VIP transports, 9 C-130 Hercules four-engined transport and patrol aircraft, 15 Caribou twin-engined STOL transports, 2 HU-16 amphibians, 35 Sikorsky S-61A-4 Nuri heavy troop and cargo transport helicopters, 20 Alouette III, and 9 Bell 47 helicopters, 10 Cessna 402Bs for twin-engine training and liaison, 44 PC-7 Turbo-Trainers, 11 MB.339 jet trainers, 2 H.S. 125 Merpati twin-jet executive transports and 1 Super Puma VIP transport helicopter. Personnel (1989) totalled about 12,000.

**Volunteer Forces.** The Army Volunteer Force (Territorial Army) consists of first-line infantry, signals, engineer and logistics units able to take the field with the active army, and a second-line organization to provide local defence. There is also a small Naval Volunteer Reserve with Headquarters in Penang and Kuala Lumpur. The Royal Malaysian Air Force Volunteer Reserve has both air and ground elements.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Malaysia is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, Non-Aligned countries, the Colombo Plan, Organization of Islamic Conference and ASEAN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fifth 5-year plan, 1986-90 envisages an expenditure of M\$74,000m. and aims at stimulating economic growth through development of manufacturing industries, revitalization of agriculture and improvement of productivity in all sectors.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for calendar years, in M\$1 m.:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	16,434	18,608	20,805	21,114	19,518	17,861
Operating expenditure	16,185	16,124	17,506	20,066	20,075	20,793
Development expenditure	10,434	9,416	8,074	6,756	6,949	6,692

**Currency.** Bank Negara Malaysia (Central Bank of Malaysia) assumed sole currency issuing authority in Malaysia on 12 June 1967. The unit of currency issued by Bank Negara Malaysia is the Malaysian *ringgit* (\$) which is divided into 100 *sen*. Currency notes are of denominations of \$1, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 and \$1,000. Coins are of denominations of 1 *sen*, 5, 10, 20, 50 *sen* and \$1, \$5 and \$100. On 31 Dec. 1984, currency issued by Bank Negara Malaysia amounted to M\$6,561.4m., of which M\$6,147.6m. (93%) was notes and M\$413.8m. (6.3%) coins.

Rate of exchange, March 1989: 2.75 *ringgit* = US\$1; 4.74 *ringgit* = £1.

**Banking.** Thirty-nine banks were operating in Aug. 1985; of these 23 were domestic banks with over 650 banking offices. Five were banks incorporated in Singapore with 63 banking offices and the remaining 12 banks were foreign incorporated with 85 banking offices. Total deposits amounted to M\$56,453.1m. on 30 June 1987 and loans and advances amounted to M\$51,235.4m.

The National Savings Bank (formerly known as the post office savings bank) held M\$973.8m. due to 3,600,948 depositors at 31 Dec. 1978.

**Weights and Measures.** The standard measures are the imperial yard, pound and gallon. The Weights and Measures Act of 1972 provides for a 10-year transition to the metric system, and was completed by 31 Dec. 1981.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Oil.** Production (1988) 27m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Natural gas reserves, 1987, 1,400,000m. cu. metres. Production of LNG in 1986 was approximately 5.3m. tonnes, most of which was exported to Japan.

**Minerals.** Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Bauxite, 566; iron ore, 208; copper, 115; tin, 29.

**Agriculture.** Production, 1987: Pineapples, 149,700 tonnes; tobacco leaves, 12,000 tonnes from 15,000 hectares; pepper (1987), 15,000 tonnes from 10,550 hectares; cocoa, 130,000 tonnes from 245,000 hectares, rubber, 1,581 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 620,000, buffaloes, 245,000; sheep, 75,000; pigs, 2.2m.; goats, 347,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE.

**Industry.** The total labour force was 6,259,000 in 1987, of whom 5,687,800 were employed: 2,005,500 in agriculture, 820,500 in manufacturing, 843,900 in government.

Production, 1987 (1,000 tonnes): Rubber, 1,600; tin, 32; crude palm oil, 4,400; sawlogs, 30,700,000 cu. metres.

**Commerce.** In 1987 exports totalled M\$41,036m. and imports M\$31,087m.

Chief imports (1987, provisional): Machinery and transport equipment, M\$13,585m.; manufactured goods, M\$4,787m.; food, beverages and tobacco M\$3,233m.; crude petroleum and related products, M\$2,054m.

Chief exports (1986): Manufactured goods (M\$18,147m.); rubber (M\$3,784m.); crude petroleum (M\$6,223m.); palm oil (M\$3,038m.); saw logs (M\$3,218m.); tin, M\$857.

In 1986 imports came chiefly from Japan (20.5%); USA (18.8%); and Singapore (15%). Exports in 1986 went chiefly to Japan (22.7%), Singapore (17.1%) and USA (16.6%).

Total trade of Malaysia with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	383,860	350,058	397,122	525,017
Exports and re-exports from UK	281,671	226,912	257,970	310,462

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Aviation.** In 1987 there were 204,155 landings and take-offs, carrying 5,445,610 passengers.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Postal Services in Malaysia are under the Ministry of Energy, Telecommunications and Post and are headed by the Director-General of Post, Malaysia. There were 1,042,827 telephone subscribers in 1986; telephone connections between Peninsular Malaysia, Sabah and Sarawak are by satellite and submarine cable. As at 31 Dec. 1986, 525 post offices, 1,586 postal agencies, 236 mobile post offices and 1 riverine postal office were operating in Malaysia.

In 1987, 378,314 radio licences and 1,658,566 television licences were issued.

**Cinemas.** In 1974 there were 500 cinemas with a seating capacity of 345,400.

**Newspapers.** Papers are published in Malay (1,226,000 daily sales in 1984), English (830,000), Chinese (387,000) and Tamil (19,000).

**JUSTICE.** By virtue of Art. 121(1) of the Federal Constitution judicial power in

the Federation is vested on 2 High Courts of co-ordinate jurisdiction and status namely the High Court of Malaya and the High Court of Borneo, and the inferior courts. The Federal Court with its principal registry in Kuala Lumpur is the Supreme Court in the country.

The Lord President as the supreme head of the Judiciary, the 2 Chief Justices of the High Courts and 6 other Judges form the constitution of the Federal Court. Apart from having exclusive jurisdiction to determine appeals from the High Court the Federal Court is also conferred with such original and consultative jurisdiction as is laid out in Articles 128 and 130 of the Constitution.

A panel of 3 Judges or such greater uneven number as may be determined by the Lord President preside in every proceeding in the Federal Court.

The right of appeal to the Yang di-Pertuan Agong (who in turn refers the appeal to the Judicial Committee of the British Privy Council) from a decision of the Federal Court in respect of criminal and constitutional matters was abolished on 1 July 1978.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Malaysia in Great Britain (45 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8QT)

*High Commissioner:* Dato Mon Bin Jamaluddin (accredited 8 July 1988).

Of Great Britain in Malaysia (Wisma Damansara, Jalan Semantan, Kuala Lumpur)

*High Commissioner:* J. Nicholas T. Spreckley, CMG.

Of Malaysia in the USA (2401 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Albert S. Talalla.

Of the USA in Malaysia (376 Jalan Tun Razak, Kuala Lumpur)

*Ambassador:* John C. Monjo.

Of Malaysia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Yusof M. Hitam.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Department of Statistics, Malaysia, Kuala Lumpur, was set up in 1963, taking over from the Department of Statistics, States of Malaya. *Chief Statistician:* Khoo Teik Huat. Main publications: *Peninsular Malaysia Monthly and Annual Statistics of External Trade: Malaysia External Trade* (quarterly); *Peninsular Malaysia Statistical Bulletin* (monthly); *Rubber Statistics* (monthly); *Rubber Statistics Handbook* (annual); *Oil Palm Statistics* (monthly); *Oil Palm, Coconut and Tea Statistics* (annual). *Malaysia 1985*, The Department of Information, Kuala Lumpur, 1986

Anand, S., *Inequality and Poverty in Malaysia*. OUP, 1983

Brown, I. and Ampalavanar, R., *Malaysia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986

Gullick, J., *Malaysia: Economic Expansion and National Unity*. Boulder and London, 1982

Meerman, J., *Public Expenditure in Malaysia*. OUP, 1980

Snodgrass, D. R., *Inequality and Economic Development in Malaysia*. OUP, 1982

Zakaria, A., *Government and Politics in Malaysia*. OUP, 1987

## PENINSULAR MALAYSIA

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area of Peninsular Malaysia is about 50,810 sq. miles (131,598 sq. km). Population (1988 estimate) 14,005,000. The federal capital is Kuala Lumpur (244 sq. km).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The States of the Federation of Malaya, now known as Peninsular Malaysia, comprises the 11 States of Johore, Pahang, Negeri Sembilan, Selangor, Perak, Kedah, Perlis, Kelantan, Trengganu, Penang and Malacca.

For earlier history of the States and Settlements *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1957, p. 241.



The Constitution is based on the agreements reached at the London conference of Jan.-Feb. 1956, between HM Government in the UK, the Rulers of the Malay states and the Alliance Party (which at the first federal elections on 27 July 1955 obtained 51 of the 52 elected members), and subsequently worked out by the Constitutional Commission appointed after that conference.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** See p. 833.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1987, 16,287m. kwh. were generated. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Production (1987) 23.6m. tonnes of crude oil.

**Minerals.** Production (in tonnes): Tin-in-concentrates: 1986, 29,134; 1987, 30,388. Iron ore: 1986, 207,963; 1987, 161,287. Bauxite: 1986, 566,170; 1987, 482,125. Copper: 1986, 115,304; 1987, 122,206. Gold: 1986, 2,221 troy oz.; 1987, 2,716.

**Agriculture.** Production in 1986 (in tonnes): Rice (1985), 1,122,400 from (1986) 627,000 hectares; rubber, 1.54m.; palm oil, 4.54m.; palm kernels, 1.34m.; cocoa, 102,000; coconuts, 33,900; (the following all 1985) copra, 216,000; vegetables, 481,000; fruit, 898,000; sugar-cane, 1.2m.; tea, 4,000; cassava, 370,000; sweet potatoes, 50,000; roots and tubers, 505,000; maize, 24,000.

**Forestry** (1984). Reserved forests, 4.7m. hectares. Production of logs (1986), 30m. cu. metres; sawn timber, 5.15m. cu. metres; plywood (1984), 630,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Landings in 1983 493,117 tonnes. Fishermen (1985) 87,000; 70% off-shore.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Trade Unions.** There were, in Aug. 1987, 409 trade unions with 607,126 members in Peninsular Malaysia.

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 3,285,166 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 the Public Works Department maintained 39,915 km of roads. In 1985 the 8-mile road bridge between the mainland and Penang island opened.

In 1987, 4,591,472 motor vehicles were registered, including 1,475,760 private cars, 22,134 buses, 316,846 lorries and vans, 2,611,584 motor cycles.

**Railways.** The Malayan Railway main line runs from Singapore to Butterworth opposite Penang Island. From Bukit Mertajam 8 miles south of Butterworth a branch line connects Peninsular Malaysia with the State Railways of Thailand at the frontier station of Padang Besar. Other branch lines connect the main line with Port of Klang, Teluk Anson, Port Dickson and Ampang. The east-coast line, branching off the main line at Gemas, runs for over 300 miles to Tumpat, Kelantan's northernmost coastal town; a 13-mile branch line linking Pasir Mas with Sungei Golok makes a second connexion with Thailand.

In 1986 there were 1,639 km (metre gauge) which carried 6.7m. passengers and 2.8m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation** (1985). International air services are operated into Kuala Lumpur Johor and Penang airports. The national carrier, Malaysian Airlines System (MAS), began operation on 1 Oct. 1972 to provide both domestic and international services.

Civil aviation statistics for airports in Peninsular Malaysia (1984): Aircraft movements, 97,890; terminal passengers, 6,078,273; freight, 80,232 tonnes; mail, 7,163 tonnes.

**Shipping.** The major ports of Peninsular Malaysia are Port Kelang, Penang, Johor and Kuantan. In 1984 Port Kelang handled 12,357,262 tonnes of cargo valued at M\$16,318.4m., of which imports totalled 7,744,789 tonnes (M\$9,532.9m.) and exports 4,612,473 tonnes (M\$6,785.5m.). A total of 4,630 ships, GRT 35m. tonnes, called in 1984. In 1984 the Port of Penang handled 7,960,506 tonnes of cargo, of which 5,220,550 tonnes were imports and 2,739,956 tonnes exports. The total cargo handled in all ports during 1984 was 31,986,000 tonnes.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Unlike the Federal Court and the High Court which were established under the Constitution, the subordinate courts in Peninsular Malaysia comprising the sessions court, the Magistrate's court and the Penghulu's court were established under a Federal Law (the subordinate Courts Act, 1948 (Revised 1972)).

All offences other than those punishable with death are tried before a Sessions Court President who is empowered to pass any sentence allowed by law other than the sentence of death. In civil matters, the sessions court has jurisdiction to hear all actions and suits where the amount in dispute does not exceed M\$25,000.

A First Class Magistrate's criminal jurisdiction is limited to offences for which the maximum term provided by law does not exceed 10 years' imprisonment and to certain specified offences where the term of imprisonment provided for may be extended to 14 years' imprisonment or which are punishable with fine only.

Juvenile courts established under the Juvenile Courts Act, 1947 for juvenile offenders below the age of 18 are presided over by a First Class Magistrate assisted by 2 advisers. There are 30 penal institutions, including Borstal establishments and an open prison camp.

**Religion.** More than half the population are Moslems, and Islam is the official religion. In 1970 there were 4,673,670 Moslems, 765,250 Hindus, 220,897 Christians and 2,495,739 Buddhists.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 6,703 state assisted primary schools with 2,325,462 pupils and 103,983 teachers and in 1980, 208 private primary schools with 5,130 pupils and 224 teachers.

In 1986 there were 1,226 secondary schools with 1,329,399 pupils and 60,863 teachers.

There were (1980): 10 special schools with 1,312 pupils and 104 teachers; 401 classes for further education with 10,281 students and 997 teachers; 25 teacher training colleges with over 12,000 students.

In the academic year 1981-82 there were 10 institutions of higher learning:

	1981-82	
	Staff	Students
Ungku Omar Polytechnic, Ipoh	112	2,449
Kuantan Polytechnic, Kuantan	49	575
MARA Institute of Technology, Shah Alam	665	11,108
Tunku Ab. Rahman College, Kuala Lumpur	156	6,285
University of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur	1,085	9,310
University of Kebangsaan, Bangi	864	7,514
University of Science, Penang	417	4,387
University of Agriculture, Serdang	502	4,136
University of Technology, Kuala Lumpur	431	4,862

The International Islamic University opened in 1983.

**Health.** In 1983 Government maintained 60 general, district hospitals with 21,164 beds and 4 special medical institutions with 8,497 beds, and there were 99 private hospitals, nursing and maternity homes with 3,024 beds. In 1983 there were 4,082 doctors, 774 dentists, 13,874 midwives and 17,916 nurses.

## Further Reading

- Morris, M. W., *Local Government in Peninsular Malaysia*. London, 1980  
 Wilkinson, R. J., *Malay-English Dictionary*. 2 vols. New ed. London, 1956  
 Winstedt, Sir R., *Malaya and Its History*. 3rd ed. London, 1953.—*An English-Malay Dictionary*. 3rd ed. Singapore, 1949.—*The Malays: A Cultural History*. London, 1959

## SABAH

**HISTORY.** The territory now named Sabah, but until Sept. 1963 known as North Borneo, was in 1877-78 ceded by the Sultans of Brunei and Sulu and various other rulers to a British syndicate, which in 1881 was chartered as the British North Borneo (Chartered) Company. The Company's sovereign rights and assets were transferred to the Crown with effect from 15 July 1946. On that date, the island of Labuan (ceded to Britain in 1846 by the Sultan of Brunei) became part of the new Colony of North Borneo. On 16 Sept. 1963 North Borneo joined the new Federation of Malaysia and became the State of Sabah.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area, about 28,460 sq. miles (73,710 sq. km), with a coastline of 973 miles (1,577 km). The interior is mountainous, Mount Kinabalu being 13,455 ft (4,175 metres) high. Population, 1980 census 1,011,046, (1987 estimate, 1,342,631), of whom, 838,141 were Pribumis, 163,996 Chinese, 5,613 Indians, 3,296 others. The native population comprises Kadazans (largest and mainly agricultural), Bajaus and Bruneis (agriculture and fishing), Muruts (hill tribes), Suluks (mainly seafaring) and several smaller tribes.

The island of Labuan became Federal territory on 16 April 1984, 35 sq. miles (75 sq. km) in area, lying 6 miles (9.66 km) off the north-west coast of Borneo is a free port. It has a fine port, Victoria Harbour.

The principal towns are situated on or near the coast. They include Kota Kinabalu, the capital (formerly Jesselton), 1980 census population, 108,725, Tawau (113,708), Sandakan (113,496), Keningau in the hinterland (41,204), and Kudat (38,397).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical monsoon, but on the whole is equable, with temperatures around 80°F (26.5°C) throughout the year. Annual rainfall varies, according to locality, from 10" (250 mm) to 148" (3,700 mm). The north-east monsoon lasts from Dec. to April and chiefly affects the east coast, while the south-west monsoon from May to Aug. gives the west coast its wet season.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of the State of Sabah provides for a Head of State, called the *Yang Dipertua Negeri Sabah*. Executive authority is vested in the State Cabinet headed by the Chief Minister.

*Head of State:* Tan Seri Mohamad Said Keruak.

*Chief Minister:* Datuk Joseph Pairin Kittingan.

*Flag:* Three horizontal stripes of blue, white and red with a large light blue canton bearing an outline of Mount Kinabalu in dark blue.

The Legislative Assembly consists of the Speaker, 48 elected members and not more than 6 nominated members.

The official language was English for a period of 10 years from Sept. 1963 but in Aug. 1973 Bahasa Malaysia was introduced and in 1974 was declared the official language. English is widely used especially for business.

### ECONOMY

**Budget.** Budgets for calendar years, in M\$1,000:

<i>Ordinary Budget</i>	1982	1983	1984	1985 <sup>1</sup>	1986 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	1,481,738	1,315,650	1,336,171	1,156,431	1,099,475
Expenditure	1,340,536	1,645,666	1,437,179	1,037,226	1,017,981
<i>Development Budget</i>					
Revenue	546,902	492,806	195,099	202,861	219,067
Expenditure	555,460	328,983	299,889	239,231	206,510

<sup>1</sup> Excludes Federal Territory of Labuan.

**Banking.** There are branches of The Chartered Bank at Kota Kinabalu, Sandakan, Tawau, Labuan, Kudat, Tenom and Lahad Datu. The Hongkong and Shanghai



Bank has branches at Kota Kinabalu, Sandakan, Labuan, Beaufort, Papar and Tawau. The Hock Hua Bank (S) has branches at Kota Kinabalu, Sandakan and Tawau. The Chung Khiaw Bank has branches at Kota Kinabalu, Tuaran and Sandakan. Malayan Banking Ltd has branches at Kota Kinabalu, Tawau, Sem-porna and Sandakan. United Overseas Bank and the Overseas Chinese Banking Corporation have each a branch at Kota Kinabalu. Bank Bumiputra Malaysia has branches at Kota Kinabalu, Lahad Datu, Sandakan and Keningau. Overseas Union Bank and the Development and Commercial Bank have each a branch at Sandakan. The Sabah Bank Berhad and Sabah Development Bank were established in Kota Kinabalu in 1979.

The National Savings Bank has taken over the functions of the post office savings bank as from 1 Dec. 1974 and had (1987) M\$34.9m. due to depositors. It also provides additional services to depositors including the granting of loans for housing.

**COMMERCE.** The main imports are machinery, tobacco, provisions, petroleum products, metals, rice, textiles and apparel, vehicles, sugar, building material. Statistics for calendar years, in M\$1,000:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	3,802,334	3,647,744	4,037,766	3,432,768	3,604,801
Exports	5,432,972	5,522,111	5,546,967	4,967,423	6,477,242

**Tourism.** In 1987 some 41,855 tourists visited Sabah but excluding foreign visitors arriving *via* Peninsular Malaysia, Sarawak and Labuan.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads** (1987). There were 8,711 km of roads, of which 2,534 km were bitumen surfaced, 5,418 km gravel surfaced and 171 km of earth road. Work is in progress on a network of roads, notably the Kota Kinabalu-Sandakan and Sandakan-Lahad Datu road links.

**Railways.** A metre-gauge railway, 134 km, runs from Kota Kinabalu to Tenom in the interior. It carried 483,700 passengers and 253,300 tonnes of freight in 1987.

**Aviation.** External communications are provided from the international airport at Kota Kinabalu by Cathay Pacific Airways Ltd to Hong Kong; Malaysian Airways to Hong Kong, Manila, Brunei, Kuching, Singapore and Kuala Lumpur; Brunei Airways to Brunei and Kuching and Philippine Airlines to Manila.

The total air traffic handled at Sabah airports during 1987 was 2,173,763 passengers, 18,290,537 kg freight and 4,256,647 kg mail.

**Shipping** (1987). Merchant shipping totalling 20,315,580 NRT used the ports, handling 19,565,220 tonnes of cargo.

**Post.** As at 31 Dec. 1987 there were 41 post offices, handling 380,956 parcels. There were 99,308 telephones on 31 Dec. 1987. As at 31 Dec. 1987, there were 34,658 wireless and 87,309 television licences issued.

## JUSTICE, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Pursuant to the Subordinate Courts Ordinance (Cap. 20) (1951) Courts of a Magistrate of the First Class, Second Class and Third Class were established to adjudicate upon the administration of civil and criminal law. The civil jurisdiction of a First Class Magistrate is limited to cases where the amount in dispute does not exceed M\$1,000, but provision is made for the Chief Justice to enlarge that jurisdiction to M\$3,000. This has been established so as to confer this jurisdiction on all stipendiary magistrates. A Second Class Magistrate can only try suits where the amount involved does not exceed M\$500 and a Third Class Magistrate where it does not exceed M\$100.

The criminal jurisdiction of these Magistrates' Courts is limited to offences of a less serious nature although stipendiary magistrates have enhanced jurisdiction. There are no Juvenile Courts.

There are also Native Courts with jurisdiction to try cases arising from breach of native law and custom (including Moslem Law and custom) where all parties are natives or one of the party is a native (if the matter is a religious, matrimonial or sexual one). Appeals from Native Courts lie to a District Judge or a Native Court of Appeal presided over by a Judge.

In 1984, 4,228 convictions were obtained in 1,212 cases taken to court.

**Education.** In 1987, there were 203,443 primary and 99,515 secondary pupils. There are 924 primary schools (751 government, 163 grant-aided and 10 private), and 120 general secondary schools (62 government, 37 grant-aided and 13 private) throughout the State. There were 3 teacher-training colleges, with (1987) 2,207 students.

The Government also runs 5 vocational schools in Kota Kinabalu and Sandakan offering carpentry, motor mechanics, electrical installation, fitting/turning, radio and television and heavy plant fitting.

The Department of Education also runs further education classes in most towns and districts. The main medium of instruction in primary schools is Bahasa Malaysia although there are some Chinese medium primary schools. Secondary education is principally English but this is being replaced by Bahasa Malaysia.

**Health.** The principal diseases are malaria, pulmonary tuberculosis and intestinal infestations. Specific control programmes for malaria and tuberculosis have drastically reduced the incidence of these two diseases.

As at 31 Dec. 1987 there were 16 hospitals (2,799 beds). Sixty-five fixed dispensaries in outlying districts providing in-patient and out-patient care are staffed by hospital assistants under the supervision of district medical officers. There is one mental hospital at Kota Kinabalu. There are 18 maternity and child health centres throughout the State.

#### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Director, Federal Department of Information, Kota Kinabalu.  
Tregonning, K. G., *North Borneo*. HMSO, 1960

## SARAWAK

**HISTORY.** The Government of part of the present territory was obtained on 24 Sept. 1841 by Sir James Brooke from the Sultan of Brunei. Various accessions were made between 1861 and 1905. In 1888 Sarawak was placed under British protection. On 16 Dec. 1941 Sarawak was occupied by the Japanese. After the liberation the Rajah took over his administration from the British military authorities on 15 April 1946. The Council Negeri, on 17 May 1946, authorized the Act of Cession to the British Crown by 19 to 16 votes, and the Rajah ceded Sarawak to the British Crown on 1 July 1946.

On 16 Sept. 1963 Sarawak joined the Federation of Malaysia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area is about 48,250 sq. miles (124,449 sq. km), with a coastline of 450 miles and many navigable rivers.

The population at 1980 census was 1,294,753 (1986 estimate, 1.55m., including 449,166 Ibans; 309,679 Malays; 443,904 Chinese; 126,335 Bidayus; 87,248 Melanaus; 80,760 other indigenous; 18,082 others).

The chief towns are the capital, Kuching, about 21 miles inland, on the Sarawak River (1988 population: 150,000), Sibu, 80 miles up the Rejang River, which is navigable by large steamers (1985 population: 110,000), and Miri, the headquarters of the Sarawak Shell Ltd (1985 population: 74,000).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 24 Sept. 1941 the Rajah began to rule through a constitution. Since 1855 two bodies, known as Majlis Mesyuarat Kerajaan Negeri (Supreme Council) and the Dewan Undangan Negeri (State Legislature), had been in existence. By the constitution of 1941 they were

given, by the Rajah, powers roughly corresponding to those of a colonial executive council and legislative council respectively. Sarawak has retained a considerable measure of local autonomy in state affairs. The State or Legislature consists of 48 elected members and sits for 5 years unless sooner dissolved. In 1985 the Assembly approved a bill to increase its seats to 56 but this has not been implemented.

A ministerial system of government was introduced in 1963. The Chief Minister presides over the Supreme Council, which contains no more than 8 other Council Negeri members, all of whom are Ministers.

Elections to the State Legislature on 15 and 16 April 1987 returned 28 members of the Sarawak Barisan Nasional comprising the Party Pesaka Bumiputera Bersatu (PBB), the Sarawak United Peoples' Party and the Sarawak National Party.

Sarawak has 24 seats in the Malaysia House of Representatives (154 members) and 5 seats in the Senate (58 members).

Sarawak has 9 divisions each under a Resident.

*Head of State:* Tun Datuk Patinggi Haji Ahmad Zaidi Adruce bin Muhammed Noor, SSM, DP, PNBS, Bintang Mahaputera Adipradana (Indonesia).

*Chief Minister:* Datuk Patinggi Haji Abdul Taib Mahmud, DP, SPMJ, DGSM, PGDK, Kt. WE (Thailand) KOU (Korea), KEPN (Indonesia).

*Deputy Chief Ministers:* Tan Sri Datuk Amar Sim Kheng Hong, DA, PSM, PGDK, JMN. Datuk Alfred Jabu Anak Numpang, PNBS, KMN. *Environment and Tourism:* Datuk Amar James Wong Kim Min, DA, PNBS. *Infrastructure Development:* Datuk Dr Wong Soon Kai, PNBS, PBS. *Housing:* Datuk Celestine Ujang Anak Jilan, PNBS. *Industrial Development:* Abang Abdul Rahman Zohari bin Tun Datuk Abang Haji Openg, JBS. *Land Development:* Encik Adenan bin Haji Satem, JBS. *Special Functions:* Dr George Chan Hong Nam, KMN, PBS.

*State Secretary:* Datuk Amar Haji Bujang Mohd. Nor, DA, PNBS, JSM, AMN. *State Attorney-General:* Datuk Haji Mohammad Jemuri bin Serjan, PNBS, JMN, PPC. *State Financial Secretary:* Datuk Liang Kim Bang, PNBS, JBS, PPC, KMN.

The official language is Bahasa Malaysia. The use of English as official language in Sarawak was abolished in 1985.

*Flag:* Yellow with a diagonal stripe divided black over red charged with a yellow star of nine points.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1988 State revenue was M\$898.5m.; expenditure, M\$962m. The revenue is mainly derived from royalties on oil, timber and gas.

The fifth Malaysia 5-year development plan (1986-90) provides for Sarawak an expenditure of M\$4,731m.; of this sum about 90% was to be spent on infrastructure, public utilities, agriculture and land development, education and medical services.

**Currency.** The Malaysian *ringgit* is on a par of £0.334 or US\$0.426.

**Banking.** The National savings bank had 166,714 depositors in July 1988; the amount to their credit was M\$75m. There are branches of Bank Negara Malaysia in Kuching, and branches of the Chartered Bank, the Hongkong & Shanghai Bank, Bank Bumiputera Malaysia, the Overseas Chinese Banking Corporation, the Malayan Bank.

Nine local banks have branches in major towns. Sibu is the centre for local commercial banking with Hock Hua Bank (established in 1951, 13 branches and assets of M\$872.4m. in 1983) and Kwong Ming Bank (established in 1964, 8 branches and assets of M\$170m. in 1983). Both are locally owned and have branches in Kuala Lumpur and other towns.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry includes petroleum and petroleum products, natural gas, timber and timber products and rubber. Emphasis is being given to the development of petro-chemical, timber-based and agro-based industries.



**Commerce.** Exports in 1987 totalled M\$7,509.4m. Crude petroleum, the chief export, accounted for 23% of the total, with 5,336,000 tonnes, value M\$1,736m., exported to Korea (29%), Japan (25%), Philippines (16%), Peninsular Malaysia (8%), Singapore (5%), Taiwan (5%) and Thailand (5%) in 1986. Liquified natural gas accounted for 23% of the total at M\$1,741m., exported solely to Japan, in 1987. The other main exports in 1987 were sawn logs (25% of the total; 12.6m. cu. metres, value M\$1,897m.) and petroleum products (6% of the total). The major agricultural exports, which together accounted for M\$316m. or 4% of the total in 1987, were pepper, cocoa beans, crude palm oil and rubber.

Total import value, 1987, M\$3,269m.

Sarawak's major trading partners in 1987 were Japan (export, 43%; import, 14%), Peninsular Malaysia (export, 6%, import, 40%); Singapore (export, 9%, import, 13%); Korea (export, 11%, import, 0.4%); Sabah (export, 8%, import, 0.8%).

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 172,380 foreign tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 6,575 km of roads, consisting of 2,691 km of bitumen surfaced, 3,062 km of gravel or stone surfaced and 150 km of earth roads. There are no railways.

**Aviation.** There are daily Malaysian Airline System (MAS) B737 and Airbus flights between Kuching and Kuala Lumpur *via* Singapore, and also scheduled flights between Kuching, Brunei and Hong Kong. Major towns in Sarawak are linked up by internal air routes.

**Shipping.** In 1986 Sarawak ports handled a total of 27m. tonnes of cargo. Kuching wharf, operational since 1974, can accommodate vessels up to 15,000 tonnes. The Bintulu Port, the largest in the State, handled more than 9m. tonnes in 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 54 post offices, 18 mobile offices and 209 postal agencies. The Telecommunications department was privatized in 1986 and renamed Syarikat Telekom Malaysia (STM). A telephone system with 65 automatic exchanges (86,000 telephones) covers the country. There are International Subscribers Dialling (ISD) links with 75 countries and Atur system was introduced in 1985. The government radio and television service had, in 1986, 245 electric radio, 28,693 battery radio and 92,739 TV registered receivers.

**Newspapers** (1987). There are 1 Malay bi-weekly, 3 English and 7 Chinese dailies. One Malay and 1 Iban monthly newspapers are published by Government.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice** (1987). In Sarawak there are the High Court and the Subordinate Court. High Court cases go on appeal to the Supreme Court which sits in Sarawak and Sabah twice a year. The Subordinate Courts (Amendment) Act 1987 was extended to Sarawak on 2 Sept. 1987 in which the jurisdiction of the Sessions Court judges and magistrates of the First Class and Second Class was enhanced.

In 1986 a Moslem Court was established.

**Police.** There is a Royal Malaysia Police, Sarawak Component, with a total establishment of about 9,000 regular officers and men.

**Religion.** There are Church of England, Roman Catholic, American Methodist, Seventh-day Adventist and Borneo Evangelical missions. There is a large Moslem population and many Buddhists. Islam is the national religion.

**Education** (1987). There were 1,266 government and government-aided primary schools with 219,405 pupils and 10,735 teachers, and 121 secondary schools with 120,321 pupils and 5,106 teachers. There were 3 teacher-training centres and an agricultural university campus conducting pre-university courses. The MARA Institute of Technology campus, established in 1973, had 960 students in 1987 and

offers 3-year courses leading to diploma in accountancy, stenography and business studies and a 6-month pre-commerce course.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 17 government hospitals, 154 static and 118 travelling dispensaries, 145 public dental and school dental clinics and 130 maternal and child health centres. There were 302 doctors and 55 registered dentists.

### Further Reading

*Population and Housing Census of Malaysia, 1980.* Dept. of Statistics, Kuala Lumpur

*Sarawak Annual of Statistics.* Dept. of Statistics, Kuching, 1981

*Sarawak Annual External Trade Statistics.* Dept. of Statistics, Kuching, 1982

*1983 Sarawak Budget.* Information Dept., Sarawak

Milne, R. S. and Ratnam, K. J., *Malaysia, New States in a New Nation: Political Development of Sarawak and Sabah in Malaysia.* London, 1974

Runciman, S., *The White Rajahs.* CUP, 1960

Scott, N. C., *Sea Dyak Dictionary.* Govt. Printing Office, Kuching, 1956

*National Library:* The Sarawak Central Library, Kuching.

# MALDIVES

*Capital:* Malé

*Population:* 200,000 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$310 (1986)

## Divehi Jumhuriya

**HISTORY.** The islands were under British protection from 1887 until complete independence was achieved on 26 July 1965. Maldives became a republic on 11 Nov. 1968. An attempted *coup* took place in Nov. 1988.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Republic of Maldives, some 400 miles to the south-west of Sri Lanka, consists of 1,200 low-lying coral islands (only 202 inhabited), grouped into 12 clearly defined clusters of atolls. Area 115 sq. miles (298 sq. km). Population (census 1985), 181,453, of which 45% under 15 years. Estimate (1988) 200,000. Capital, Malé (46,334).

**CLIMATE.** The islands are hot and humid, and affected by monsoons. Malé. Average temperature 81°F (27°C). Annual rainfall 59" (1,500 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The President is elected every 5 years by universal adult suffrage. He is assisted by the Ministers' *Majlis*, a cabinet of ministers of his own choice whom he may dismiss at will. There is also a Citizens' *Majlis* (Parliament) which consists of 48 members, 8 of whom are nominated by the President and 40 directly elected (2 each from Malé and the 19 administrative districts) for a term of 5 years. There are no political parties.

*President, Minister of Defence and National Security:* Maumoon Abdul Gayoom (re-elected unopposed for a third term on 23 Sept. 1988).

*Attorney-General:* Ahmed Zaki. *Atolls Administration:* Abdullah Hameed. *Education:* Mohamed Zahir Hussain. *Fisheries:* Abdul Satar Moosa Didi. *Foreign Affairs:* Fathulla Jameel. *Health:* Abdulla Jameel. *Home Affairs and Social Services:* Umar Zahir. *Trade and Industry:* Ilyas Ibrahim. *Transport, Tourism and Shipping:* Ahmed Mujthaba.

The official and spoken language is Divehi, which is akin to Elu or old Sinhalese.

*National flag:* Red with a green panel bearing a white crescent.

*Local government:* Maldives is divided into the capital and 19 other administrative districts, each under an appointed governor (*verin*) assisted by local chiefs (*katheebun*), who are also appointed.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Maldives is a member of UN and the Commonwealth.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1985 revenue totalled 165.9m. rufiyaa and expenditure 195.5m. rufiyaa.

**Currency.** The *rufiyaa* is divided into 100 *laari*; there are notes of 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100 *rufiyaa*. In March 1989, £1 = 15.05 *rufiyaa*; US\$1 = 8.75 *rufiyaa*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production, 1987, 14.8m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The islands are covered with coconut palms and yield millet, cassava, yams, melons and other tropical fruit as well as coconut produce.

Production in 1987 included (in 1,000 tonnes): Coconuts, 13; copra, 2.



**Fisheries.** Catch, mainly tuna (1987) 56,900 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main industries are fishing, tourism, shipping, reedware, lacquer-work, coconut processing and garment manufacturing.

**Commerce.** In 1985 imports amounted to US\$47.9m. and exports to US\$23m. of which 29% was to Thailand, 24% to the USA and 20% to Sri Lanka. Bonito ('Maldivé fish') is the main export commodity.

Total trade between the Republic of Maldives and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	529	73	276	440	1,859
Exports and re-exports from UK	747	1,243	1,321	2,772	1,689

**Tourism.** Tourism, introduced in 1972, is expanding and there were 131,399 visitors in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 401 cars, 1,241 motorbikes, 648 handcarts, 16,681 bicycles and 485 other vehicles.

**Aviation.** There are direct flights to Europe, Dubai, Karachi, Singapore and neighbouring countries. Service to Australia is available *via* Singapore. In 1987, 2,975 aircraft, 292,903 passengers and 3,067,206 kg of freight were handled at Malé International Airport. There are 2 domestic airports. Air Maldives operates domestic flights only.

**Shipping.** The Maldives Shipping Line operated (1984) 32 vessels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1987) 2,965 telephones. There is one AM and one FM radio station broadcasting to (1985) 19,146 receivers. In 1987 there were 3,828 television sets and 2 television transmitters.

**Newspapers.** There were (1985) 2 daily newspapers, 1 weekly and 1 monthly magazine.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is based on the Islamic Shari'ah.

**Religion.** The State religion is Islam.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 300 primary schools with 53,412 pupils and 1,134 teachers and 6 secondary schools with 1,313 students and 116 teachers.

**Health.** There is an 84-bed hospital in Malé and 3 regional hospitals. In 1987 there were 7 doctors, 1 dentist and 19 nurses.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in the Republic of Maldives

*High Commissioner:* D. A. S. Gladstone, CMG (resides in Colombo).

Of the Republic of Maldives to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Hussain Manikufaan.

## Further Reading

Bell, H. C. P., *History, Archaeology and Epigraphy of the Maldivé Islands*. Ceylon Govt. Press, Colombo, 1940

Bernini, F. and Corbin, G., *Maldives*. Turin, 1973

Forbes, A., *The Maldives*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

# MALI

*Capital:* Bamako

*Population:* 7.78m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$170 (1986)

## République du Mali

**HISTORY.** Annexed by France between 1881 and 1895, the region became the territory of French Sudan as a part of French West Africa. It became an autonomous state within the French Community on 24 Nov. 1958, and on 4 April 1959 joined with Sénégal to form the Federation of Mali. The Federation achieved independence on 20 June 1960, but Sénégal seceded on 22 Aug. and Mali proclaimed itself an independent republic on 22 Sept. The National Assembly was dissolved on 17 Jan. 1968 by President Modibo Keita, whose government was then overthrown by an Army *coup* on 19 Nov. 1968; power was assumed by a Military Committee for National Liberation led by Lieut. (now General) Moussa Traoré, who became President on 19 Sept. 1969.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mali is a landlocked state, consisting of the Middle and Upper Niger basin in the south, the Upper Sénégal basin in the south-west, and the Sahara in the north. It is bounded west by Sénégal, north-west by Mauritania, north-east by Algeria, east by Niger and south by Burkina Faso, Côte d'Ivoire and Guinea. The republic covers an area of 1,240,192 sq. km (478,841 sq. miles) and had a population of 7,620,225 at the 1987 Census; estimate (1988) 7,784,000. In 1985, 21% lived in urban areas.

The areas, populations and chief towns of the regions are:

<i>Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1987</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>Census 1976</i>
Kayes	197,760	1,058,575	Kayes	44,736
Koulikoro	89,833	1,180,260	Koulikoro	16,876
Capital District	267	646,153	Bamako	404,022
Sikasso	76,480	1,308,828	Sikasso	47,030
Ségou	56,127	1,328,250	Ségou	64,890
Mopti	88,752	1,261,383	Mopti	53,885
Tombouctou	408,977	453,032	Tombouctou	20,483
Gao	321,996	383,734	Gao	30,714

The various indigenous languages belong chiefly to the Mande group; of these the principal are Bambara (spoken by 60% of the population), Soninké, Malinké and Dogon; non-Mande languages include Fulani, Songhai, Senufo and Tuareg. The official language is French.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with adequate rain in the south and west, but conditions become increasingly arid towards the north and east. Bamako. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,120 mm). Kayes. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 93°F (33.9°C). Annual rainfall 29" (725 mm). Tombouctou. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 90°F (32.2°C). Annual rainfall 9" (231 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution was announced on 26 April 1974 and approved by a national referendum on 2 June; it was amended by the National Assembly on 2 Sept. 1981. The sole legal party is the *Union démocratique du peuple malien* (UDPM), formally constituted on 30 March 1979 and governed by a 17-member Central Executive Bureau responsible to a 137-member National Council who nominate all candidates for election.

The President is directly elected for a term of 6 years. The 82-member National Assembly is also directly elected, for a term of 3 years. Elections were held on 26 June 1988.

The Council of Ministers in Sept. 1988 comprised:

*President, Head of Government, Secretary-General of UDPM, Minister of*

*National Defence:* Gen. Moussa Traoré (assumed office Sept. 1969, re-elected June 1985).

*Public Health and Social Affairs:* Dr Mamadou Dembelé. *Foreign Affairs and International Co-operation:* Modibo Keita. *National Education:* Gen. Sékou Ly. *Transport, Telecommunications and Tourism:* Mohamed Alhousseine Touré. *Planning:* Anthioumane N'Diaye. *Agriculture:* Moulaye Mohammed Haidara. *Environment and Livestock:* Morifing Koné. *Industry, Water Affairs and Energy:* Drissa Keita. *Public Works, Housing and Construction:* Cheikh Oumar Doumbia. *Territorial Administration and Development:* Lieut.-Col. Issa Ongoiba. *Employment and Civil Service:* Diallo Lalla Sy. *Justice:* Oumar Issaka Bâ. *Information:* Sidibe Alissata Cissé. *Finance and Trade:* Tiena Coulibaly. *Sports, Art and Culture:* Bakary Traoré. *Minister-Delegate for National Defence:* Gen. Abdoulaye Ouloguém.

*National flag:* Three vertical stripes of green, yellow, red.

*Local Government:* Mali is divided into the Capital District of Bamako and 7 regions, sub-divided into 46 *cercles* and then into 279 *arrondissements*.

**DEFENCE.** There is a selective system of 2 years' military service.

**Army.** The Army consists of 4 infantry battalions, 2 tank, 1 engineer, 1 parachute, 1 special force, 2 artillery battalions and support units. Equipment includes 21 T-34 tanks. Strength (1989) 6,900. There is also a paramilitary force of 7,800 men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 3 MiG-17 jet fighters, 1 MiG-15UT1 jet trainer, some Yak-18 piston-engined trainers, 2 An-24, 2 An-26 and 2 An-2 transports, and 3 Mi-8 and Mi-4 helicopters from USSR. A twin-turboprop Corvette is used for VIP transport. Personnel (1989) total about 400.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Mali is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1988 provided for revenue of 112,100m. francs CFA and expenditure of 146,500m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** Mali introduced its own currency, the *Mali franc*, in July 1962 but reverted to the *franc CFA* on 1 June 1984 at a rate of 2 *Mali francs* to 1 *franc CFA*. There are coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50 and 100 *francs CFA*, and notes of 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000 and 10,000 *francs CFA*.

**Banking.** The *Banque Centrale du Mali* (founded in 1968) is the bank of issue. There are 4 domestic and 2 French-owned banks.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) totalled 161m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Mineral resources are limited, but marble (at Bafoulabé) and limestone (at Diamou) are being extracted in the Upper Sénégal valley; iron ore deposits in this area await development. Salt is mined at Taoudenni in the far north (4,500 tonnes in 1986) and phosphates at Bouren (10,000 tonnes).

**Agriculture.** Production in 1986 included (in 1,000 tonnes): Millet, 1,284; sugarcane, 210; groundnuts, 120; rice, 249; maize, 200; seed cotton, 195; cotton lint, 70; cassava, 76; sweet potatoes, 57.

**Livestock, 1987:** Cattle, 4,476,000; horses, 62,000; asses, 550,000; sheep, 5.7m.; goats, 5.5m.; camels, 241,000; chickens, 15m.

**Forestry.** Production (1985) 4.89m. cu. metres. 7% of the land is forested.

**Fisheries.** In 1986 60,000 tonnes of fish were caught in the rivers.



**TRADE.** Exports in 1985 totalled 77,200m. francs CFA. Chief imports are food-stuffs, automobiles, petrol, building material, sugar, salt and beer. France and Côte d'Ivoire are the main sources of imports. Cotton formed 41% of exports and livestock in 1983; 25% went to Belgium and 16% to France.

Total trade between Mali and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	5,646	4,804	8,282	6,937	2,240
Exports and re-exports from UK	5,471	7,294	4,121	5,573	12,732

**Tourism.** There were 54,000 foreign tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1985) 15,700 km of roads, 23,209 passenger cars and 6,802 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** Mali has a railway from Kayes to Koulikoro by way of Bamako, a continuation of the Dakar-Kayes line in Sénégal. Total length 642 km (metre-gauge) and in 1986 carried 756,000 passengers and 503,000 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Air services connect the republic with Paris, Dakar and Abidjan. There are international airports at Bamako and Mopti, and Air Mali operates domestic services to 10 other airports.

**Shipping.** For about 7 months in the year small steamboats perform the service from Koulikoro to Tombouctou and Gao, and from Bamako to Kouroussa.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1984, 9,537 telephones and 110,000 radio and 500 television receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court was established at Bamako in 1969 with both judicial and administrative powers. The Court of Appeal is also at Bamako, at the apex of a system of regional tribunals and local *juges de paix*.

**Religion.** In 1983, 90% of the population were Sunni Moslems, 9% animists and 1% Christians.

**Education.** In 1982-83 there were 364,382 pupils and 10,912 teachers in 1,558 primary and intermediate schools, 13,227 pupils and 890 teachers in 20 senior schools, 12,612 students in 11 technical schools. There were 5,792 students and 491 teaching staff in 7 higher educational establishments in 1979.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 12 hospitals, 327 health centres and 445 dispensaries, with a total of 3,200 beds; there were 319 doctors, 18 surgeons, 14 dentists (1978), 24 pharmacists (1978), 250 midwives and 1,312 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Mali in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Lamine Keita (accredited 18 Feb. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Mali

*Ambassador:* John Macrae, CMG (resides in Dakar).

Of Mali in the USA (2130 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Nouhoum Samassekou.

Of the USA in Mali (Rue Testard and Rue Mohamed V, Bamako)

*Ambassador:* Robert J. Ryan, Jr.

Of Mali to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Seydou Niare.

# MALTA

*Capital:* Valletta

*Population:* 345,636 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$3,470 (1986)

## Repubblika Ta' Malta

**HISTORY.** Malta was held in turn by Phoenicians, Carthaginians and Romans, and was conquered by Arabs in 870. From 1090 it was subject to the same rulers as Sicily until 1530, when it was handed over to the Knights of St John, who ruled until dispersed by Napoleon in 1798. The Maltese rose in rebellion against the French and the island was subsequently blockaded by the British aided by the Maltese from 1798 to 1800. The Maltese people freely requested the protection of the British Crown in 1802 on condition that their rights and privileges be preserved. The islands were finally annexed to the British Crown by the Treaty of Paris in 1814.

On 15 April 1942, in recognition of the steadfastness and fortitude of the people of Malta during the Second World War, King George VI awarded the George Cross to the island.

Malta became independent on 21 Sept. 1964 and became a republic within the Commonwealth on 13 Dec. 1974. For earlier constitutional and government history see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1980-81, p. 837.

In 1971 Malta began to follow a policy of non-alignment and closed the NATO base. In March 1972 agreement was reached on the phasing out of the British Military base which was closed down completely on 31 March 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of Malta is 246 sq. km (94.9 sq. miles); Gozo, 67 sq. km (25.9 sq. miles); Comino, 3 sq. km (1.1 sq. miles); total area, 316 sq. km (121.9 sq. miles). Population, census 16 Nov. 1985, 345,418; estimate (1987) 345,636. Malta, 320,474; Gozo and Comino, 25,162. Chief town and port, Valletta, population 9,239 but the urban harbour area, 101,043.

Vital statistics, 1987, estimate: Births, 5,314; deaths, 2,908; marriages, 2,437; emigrants, 670; returned emigrants, 365 (estimate).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is Mediterranean, with hot, dry and sunny conditions in summer and very little rain from May to Aug. Rainfall is not excessive and falls mainly between Oct. and March. Average daily sunshine in winter is 6 hours and in summer over 10 hours. Valletta. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 23'' (578 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Malta is a democracy and the Constitution, provides for a President of the Republic, a House of Representatives of elected members and a Cabinet consisting of the Prime Minister and such number of Ministers as may be appointed. The Constitution which is founded on work, makes provision for the protection of fundamental rights and freedom of the individual, and ensures that all persons in Malta shall have full freedom of conscience and religious worship. In Jan. 1987 the 2 Political Parties agreed to amend the Constitution to provide that any political party winning more than 50% of all valid votes (but less than 50% of elected members) shall have the number of its members increased in order to have a majority in the House of Representatives. Elections were held in May 1987 in which the Nationalist Party obtained 50.91% of the votes but less seats than the Malta Labour Party. As a result of the above Amendment the Nationalist Party now commands a majority with 35 seats to the MLP 34 seats.

Maltese and English are the official languages.

Elections were held on 9 May 1987. State of parties on 31 Dec. 1987: Nationalist Party, 35; Malta Labour Party, 34.

*Acting President:* Paul Xuereb.

The Cabinet (Nationalist Party) was as at March 1989:

*Prime Minister:* Dr Edward Fenech Adami. *Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of the Interior and Justice:* Dr Guido De Marco. *Foreign Affairs:* (Vacant). *Education:* Dr Ugo Mifsud Bonnici. *Social Policy:* Dr Louis Galea. *Finance:* Dr George Bonello Dupuis. *Development of Infrastructure:* Michael Falzon. *Productive Development:* Lawrence Gatt. *Development of Tertiary Sector:* Dr Emmanuel Bonnici. *Gozo:* Anton Tabone.

There are 8 Parliamentary Secretaries.

*National flag:* Vertically white and red, with a representation of the George Cross medal in the canton.

**DEFENCE.** The Maltese armed forces include 751 personnel, as a Task Force, organized into 1 infantry battalion, and support companies including a Helicopter Flight equipped with 3 Agusta-Bell 47G light helicopters and 4 1AB206s. Duties of the Flight include patrol, search and rescue. There is also a para-military force of 700.

A coastal patrol force of small craft was formed in 1973. It is manned by the Maltese Regiment and primarily employed as a coastguard. In 1988 it comprised 11 patrol and 4 support craft.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Malta is a member of UN, the Commonwealth and the Council of Europe.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** National economic strategy aims especially at the attraction of new investment and the creation of new employment in the directly productive and market services (tertiary) sectors as a means of stimulating export-oriented growth. The objective is to promote the location in Malta of new manufacturing industry with higher skill production, develop the island as an offshore financial centre, and enter the EEC as a full member under suitable conditions. With this in mind an industrial incentive package has been announced, and a scheme introduced for the retraining of workers for productive employment in the private sector. Imports are being gradually liberalized, and plans are under way to turn Marsaxlokk all weather port into a free port zone for transshipment activities. Besides manufacturing (food, clothing, chemicals and electrical machinery parts), ship repair and shipbuilding and tourism are the mainstays of the economy.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in Lm):

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	218,557,730	220,548,390	225,853,367	221,160,214
Expenditure	223,982,512	227,644,950	240,463,682	263,619,931

The most important sources of revenue are customs duties, income tax, National Insurance contributions and receipts from the Central Bank of Malta.

**Currency.** The Maltese currency is (Lm) *Lira Maltija* (Maltese Lira). Central Bank of Malta notes of Lm2, Lm5, Lm10 and Lm20 denominations are in circulation. Malta coins are issued in the following denominations: Lm1, 50, 25, 10, 5, 2 and 1 cents; 5, 3 and 2 *mils*. Total notes and coins in circulation on 31 Aug. 1988, Lm306.2m. In March 1989, £1 sterling = Lm0.582; US\$1 = Lm0.338.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of Malta was founded in 1968. Commercial banking facilities are provided by Bank of Valletta Ltd, Lombard Bank (Malta) Ltd and Mid-Med Bank Ltd. The other domestic banking institutions are the Investment Finance Bank (long-term industrial loans), the Apostleship of Prayer Savings Bank Ltd, Lohombus Corporation Ltd (house mortgage) and Melita Bank International Ltd (offshore bank).



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity is generated at 2 interconnected power stations located at Marsa, having a total available generating capacity of 252 mw. The larger station with an installed capacity of 235 mw is also equipped to produce potable water as a co-generation process. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

The gross electricity generated in 1987-88 was 992.5m. kwh.

**Oil.** The government announced a new offshore exploration campaign in March 1988 and a number of companies were (1989) negotiating with the government for the acquisition of certain offshore blocks.

**Agriculture.** In 1986 agriculture and fisheries contributed Lm20.4m. to the Gross Domestic Product as against Lm19.4m. in 1985. (The 1986 figure represents a share of 4.4% in the GDP.) In 1983 there was a slight decrease in the cultivable area, which totalled 11,491 hectares as against 11,639 hectares in 1982. In 1986 agriculture employed 2,993 full-timers, representing 2.6% of the gainfully occupied population, and over 12,000 part-time farmers.

In 1987 the value of Malta's main agricultural exports reached Lm1,153,102. The 1987 exports consisted mainly of: Potatoes, Lm589,589; seeds, cut-flowers and plants, Lm518,774; wine, Lm21,458; hides and skins, Lm23,281.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 14,000; pigs, 95,000; sheep, 5,000; goats 5,000; poultry, 1m.

**Fisheries.** In 1986 the fishing industry occupied 1,270 power propelled and 86 other fishing boats, engaging 298 full-time and 676 part-time fishermen. The catch in 1986 was 1,067 tonnes valued at Lm858,998.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Foreign investors in industry in Malta are offered the following advantages: Political stability, excellent industrial relations, tax holidays, a strategic geographic location, a special association agreement with the EEC, eligibility for the generalized system of preferences operated by many industrialized countries including the USA and Japan, a fully developed and highly functional infrastructure, free repatriation of profits and capital, easily trainable and highly adaptable labour force, financing facilities at favourable rates of interest, ready-built factories at subsidized rents, training grants, soft loans. Over 300 state-aided manufacturing enterprises are in operation in various industrial sectors, of which the majority are foreign-owned or have foreign interests. The Malta Development Corporation is the Government agency responsible for promoting and implementing new industrial projects.

**Labour.** The total labour force in Dec. 1987 was 128,005; males, 96,150; females, 31,855, distributed as follows: Agriculture and fisheries, 3,203; manufacturing, 31,508; building, construction and quarrying, 6,736; services, 40,091; electricity, gas and drydocks, 6,215; government, 29,183; armed forces, 1,241; Dejma and auxiliary workers, 3,744. The number of registered unemployed under Part I of the Employment Register was 5,630, and under Part II, 454.

There were 23 trade unions registered as at 30 June 1988, with a total membership of 63,065 and 21 employers' associations with a total membership of 5,415.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports including bullion and specie (in Lm1,000):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	325,073	316,633	330,489	354,139	347,909	392,874
Exports	169,036	156,748	181,364	187,099	194,668	208,590

In 1987 the principal items of imports were: Semi-manufactures, Lm100.9m.; machinery and transport, Lm128.2m.; food, Lm41.8m.; fuels, Lm25.1m.; manufactures, Lm38.3m.; chemicals, Lm30.8m.; others, Lm20.1m. Of domestic exports: Manufactures, Lm99.3m.; machinery and transport, Lm54.9m.; semi-manufactures, Lm23.1m.; beverages and tobacco, Lm4.6m.; food, Lm4.2m.; chemicals, Lm2.9m.

In 1987, Lm74.5m. of the imports came from Italy, Lm67.6m. from UK,

Lm68.2m. from Federal Republic of Germany, Lm42m. from USA, Lm25.9m. from Asia, Lm14.4m. from the EFTA, Lm16.7m. from Africa, Lm1.7m. from Australia/Oceania, Lm26.9m. from other European countries; of domestic exports, Lm64.5m. to Federal Republic of Germany, Lm28m. to UK, Lm30m. to Italy, Lm20m. to Africa, Lm16.8m. to Asia, Lm16.5m. to USA, Lm4.1m. to EFTA and Lm7.7m. to other European countries.

Total trade between Malta and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	45,076	51,794	49,197	52,105	40,189
Exports and re-exports from UK	89,468	101,247	101,877	107,941	121,696

**Tourism.** In 1987, 745,943 tourists visited Malta, 446,686 from UK, 43,551 from Italy, 22,484 from Scandinavia, 70,228 from Federal Republic of Germany, 44,425 from Libya, 27,908 from France and 7,042 from USA. In 1987, gross tourist expenditure was Lm113m. (estimate).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Every town and village is served by motor omnibuses. There are ferry services running between Malta and Gozo; cars can be transported on the ferries. In 1987 there were 1,385 km of roads. Motor vehicles registered at 31 Dec. 1987 totalled 117,150, of which 86,298 were private cars, 3,160 hire cars, 17,910 commercial vehicles, 636 buses and 9,146 motor cycles.

**Aviation.** In 1988 the main scheduled airlines, Air Malta, Alitalia, British Airways, Corse Air, Interflug, JAT, KLM, Lufthansa, Libyan Arab Airlines, Balkan Bulgarian Airlines, Czechoslovakian Airlines, Austrian Airlines, Swissair, Aeroflot and Tunisavia, operated scheduled services between Malta and UK, German Democratic Republic, Federal Republic of Germany, France, Italy, Libya, Netherlands, Switzerland, Yugoslavia, Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, Austria, USSR, Tunisia, Greece and Hungary. In 1987 there were 17,212 civil aircraft movements at Luqa Airport. 1,573,147 passengers, 6,790 tonnes of freight and 670 tonnes of mail were handled. A new terminal at Luqa will be completed in 1991.

**Shipping.** The number of yachts and ships registered in Malta on 31 Dec. 1987 was 778; 2,386,967 GRT. Ships entering harbour, excluding yachts and fishing vessels, during 1987, 2,227.

**Post and Telecommunications.** Telephone services are administered by Telemalta Corporation with exchanges at Malta and Gozo. On 31 Dec. 1988 there were 163,800 telephones, 137,371 television sets and 27,226 radio sets.

**Cinemas** (1986). There were 18 cinemas with a seating capacity of 13,000.

**Newspapers.** There were (1988) 1 English, 2 Maltese daily newspapers and 8 weekly papers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The number of persons convicted of crimes in 1987 was 1,061; those convicted for contraventions against various laws and regulations numbered 7,440. Fifty-six were committed to prison and 6,208 were awarded fines.

**Police.** On 31 Dec. 1986 police numbered 50 officers and 1,333 other ranks, including 65 women police.

**Religion.** The majority of the population (96%) belong to the Roman Catholic Church.

**Education.** Education in Malta is compulsory between the ages of 5 and 16 and free in government schools. Kindergarten education is provided for 3- and 4-year old children. The primary level enrolls children between 5 and 11 years in a 6-year course. In 1987, there were 25,337 children (13,230 boys and 12,107 girls) in 80 government schools. Another 764 pupils were enrolled in preparatory (secondary) classes and classes for weaker pupils. Eight Junior Lyceums (6 in Malta and 2 in

Gozo) had a total of 6,253 students (2,655 boys, 3,918 girls). There were 31 other government secondary schools with a total of 7,358 (3,062 boys, 4,296 girls). Secondary schools run 5-year courses leading to GCE 'O' level. Two-year courses leading to GCE 'A' level on a worker/pupil system which alternates work with study periods are provided for in the New Lyceum, *i.e.*, upper secondary schools (1,384 students). A higher Secondary School catering for students at GCE O and A level enrolled 706 students. Enrolment in craft and technician courses in 3 technical institutes amounted to 1,094, while 5,698 (3,732 boys and 1,966 girls) were enrolled in the 12 trade schools for boys and 6 trade schools for girls. Other students are enrolled in specialized vocational schools. Trade schools offer 2- to 4-year courses in specialized trades and are open to students who finish their third year of secondary education. The number of children in special education amounted to 798.

There were 80 private schools with a population of 4,385 at the nursery level, 10,211 at the primary level and 6,513 at the secondary level.

About 5,000 students attended evening courses in academic, commercial, technical and practical subjects established in 82 centres. Other schools run on a mainly part-time basis by the Education Department for adult students are the School of Art, the School of Music and the School of Art and Design.

The University of Malta consists of 10 faculties: Law; Medicine and Surgery; Architecture and Civil Engineering; Dental Surgery; Education; Economics, Management and Accountancy; Mechanical and Electrical Engineering; Theology; Arts; Science. There were 2,500 students in 1988-89.

**Social Security.** The Social Security Act, 1987, provides cash benefits for marriage, maternity, sickness, unemployment, widowhood, orphanhood, invalidity, old age, children's allowances and industrial injuries.

The total number of persons in receipt of benefits on 31 Dec. 1987 was 88,009, *viz.*, 562 in receipt of sickness benefit, 365 unemployment benefit, 182 special unemployment benefit, 60 injury benefit, 290 disablement benefit, 84 death benefit, 22,372 retirement pensions, 9,325 widows' pensions, 8 widows' special allowance, 12 guardian's allowance, 5,343 invalidity pensions, 48,983 children's allowances and 423 maternity benefit.

The Act further provides for the payment of social assistance, medical assistance and non-contributory pensions to persons over 60 years of age, to blind persons over the age of 14 years and to handicapped persons over the age of 16 years.

The number of households in receipt of social assistance and of medical assistance on 31 Dec. 1987 was 6,919 and 7,603 respectively, and the number of pensioners in receipt of a non-contributory pension was 6,746.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 710 doctors, 80 dentists, 339 pharmacists, 249 midwives, 3,575 nursing personnel and 7 hospitals with 3,217 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Malta in Great Britain (16 Kensington Sq., London, W8 5HH)

*High Commissioner:* John A. Manduca.

Of Great Britain in Malta (7 St Anne St., Floriana)

*High Commissioner:* Brian Hitch, CMG, CVO.

Of Malta in the USA (2017 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Salv J. Stellini.

Of the USA in Malta (Development Hse., St Anne St., Floriana)

*Ambassador:* Peter R. Sommer.

Of Malta to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Alexander Borg Olivier.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Office of Statistics (Auberge d'Italie, Valletta) was set up in 1947. It publishes *Statistical Abstracts of the Maltese Islands*, a quarterly digest of statistics, quarterly and annual trade returns, annual vital statistics and annual publications on shipping



and aviation, education, agriculture and industry and National Accounts and Balance of Payments.

Government publications: Department of Information (Auberge de Castille, Malta), set up in 1955, publishes *The Malta Government Gazette* (twice weekly), *Malta Handbook*, *Economic Survey*, *Malta: Guidelines for Progress*, *Development Plan for Malta 1981-85* and *Supplement Paper Currency in Malta*, *Heritage of an Island*, *Reports on the Working of Government Departments*.

*Annual Reports*. Central Bank of Malta

*Trade Directory*. Chamber of Commerce (annual)

*The Year Book*. Sliema (annual)

Malta Independence Constitution (Cmnd 2406). HMSO, 1964

*Constitution of the Republic of Malta*. Information Division, 1975

*Malta Manufacturers and Exporters*. Department of Industry

*Economic Survey 1988*. Malta, 1988

Bannerman, D. A. and Vella-Gaffiero, J. A., *Birds of the Maltese Archipelago*. Valletta, 1976

Blouet, B., *The Story of Malta*. London, Rev. ed. 1981

Cremona, J. J., *The Malta Constitution of 1835 and its Historical Background*. Malta, 1959.—

*The Constitutional Developments of Malta under British Rule*. Malta Univ. Press, 1963.—*Human Rights Documentation in Malta*. Malta Univ. Press, 1966

Gerada, E. and Zuber, C., *Malta: An Island Republic*. Paris, 1979

Haslam, S. M., Sell, P. D. and Wolseley, P. A., *A Flora of the Maltese Islands*. Malta Univ. Press, 1977

Luke, Sir Harry, *Malta*. 2nd ed. London, 1962

Price, G. A., *Malta and the Maltese: A Study in 19th-century Migration*. Melbourne, 1954

Thackrah, J. R., *Malta*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985

# MAURITANIA

Capital: Nouakchott

Population: 1.89m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$440 (1986)

## République Islamique de Mauritanie

**HISTORY.** Mauritania became a French protectorate in 1903 and a colony in 1920. It became an autonomous republic within the French Community on 28 Nov. 1958 and achieved full independence on 28 Nov. 1960. Under its first President, Moktar Ould Daddah, Mauritania became a one-party state in 1964, but following his deposition by a military *coup* on 10 July 1978, the ruling *Parti du peuple mauritanien* was dissolved.

Following the Spanish withdrawal from Western Sahara on 28 Feb. 1976, Mauritania occupied the southern part (88,667 sq. km) of this territory and incorporated it under the name of Tiris el Gharbia. In Aug. 1979 Mauritania renounced sovereignty and withdrew from Tiris el Gharbia.

Following the *coup* of 10 July 1978, power was placed in the hands of a Military Committee for National Recovery (CMRN); the constitution was suspended and the 70-member National Assembly dissolved. On 6 April 1979 the CMRN was renamed the Military Committee for National Salvation (CMSN).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mauritania is bounded west by the Atlantic ocean, north by Western Sahara, north-east by Algeria, east and south-east by Mali, and south by Sénégal. The total area is 1,030,700 sq. km (398,000 sq. miles) of which 47% is desert, and the population at the Census of 1976 was 1,419,939 including 12,897 in Tiris el Gharbia; latest estimate (1988) 1,894,000. The capital Nouakchott had a population of over 500,000 in 1985; other towns (1976) were Nouâdhibou (21,961), Kaédi (20,848), Zouérate (17,474), Rosso (16,466) and Atâr (16,326).

The areas and populations of the Capital District and 12 Regions are:

Region	Sq. km	Estimate 1982	Region	Sq. km	Estimate 1982
Nouakchott District	120	150,000	Adrar	215,300	60,000
Hodh ech-Chargui	182,700	235,000	Dakhlet Nouâdhibou	22,300	30,000
Hodh el-Gharbi	53,400	154,000	Tagant	95,200	84,000
Açâba	36,600	152,000	Guidimaka	10,300	102,000
Gorgol	13,600	169,000	Tiris Zemmour	252,900	28,000
Brakna	33,000	171,000	Inchiri	46,800	23,000
Trarza	67,800	242,000			

In 1983, 34% of the population were urban and 25% were nomadic. In 1980 81% of the inhabitants were Moorish, speaking the Hassaniyah dialect of Arabic, while the other 19% consist of Negro peoples, mainly Fulfulde-speaking Tukulor (8%) and Fulani (5%) who together with the Soninke (Sarakole) and Wolof groups all inhabit the Sénégal valley in the extreme south.

The official languages are Arabic and French.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, but conditions are generally arid, even near the coast, where the only appreciable rains come in July to Sept. Nouakchott. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 6" (158 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 24-member CMSN wields all executive and legislative powers, working through an appointed Council of Ministers composed as follows in Aug. 1988:

*President, Prime Minister, Minister of Defence and Chairman of CMSN:* Col. Moaouia Ould Sidi Mohamed Taya (assumed office 12 Dec. 1984).

*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Capt. Mohamed Lemine Ould N'Diayane. *Interior:* Lieut.-Col. Djibril Ould Abdullahi. *Justice and Islamic Affairs:* Cheikh Mohamed Salem Ould Mohamed Lamine. *Economy and Finance:* Mohamed Ould Nan. *Trade and Transport:* Hamdi Samba Diop. *Fisheries and Marine Economy:* Dah Ould Sheikh. *Mines and Industry:* Abderrahman Khadija bint Ahmed. *Equipment:* Lieut.-Col. Brahim Ould Alioune N'Diaye. *National Education:* Hassiny Ould Didi. *Civil Service, Administrative Training, Labour, Youth and Sports:* Mohamed Ould Haimer. *Energy and Water Supply:* Soumare Oumar. *Rural Development:* Lieut.-Col. Omar Dieng Harouna. *Public Health and Social Affairs:* Maj. N'Daye Kane. *Posts, Telecommunications and Culture:* Mohamed Mahmoud Ould Weddahi. *Information:* Mohamed Haibetna Ould Sidi Haiba. *State Control:* Ethmane Sid'Ahmed Yessa. *Governor of Central Bank:* Ahmed Ould Zein. *Secretary-General to the Government:* Barou Abdullah.

*National flag:* Green, with a crescent beneath a star in yellow in the centre.

*Local Government:* Mauritania is divided into a capital district and 12 regions and sub-divided into 49 *départements*.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 infantry, 1 parachute and 1 artillery battalion, 1 Camel Corps, 3 armoured car squadrons and support units; total strength, 10,400 in 1989.

**Navy.** The Navy consists of 4 patrol vessels, 4 small patrol craft and 2 light aircraft. Personnel (1989) 350.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 6 Britten-Norman Defender armed light transports, 2 Maritime Surveillance Cheyennes for coastal patrol, 2 Buffalo and 2 Skyvan transports, 4 Reims-Cessna 337 Milirole twin-engined counter-insurgency, forward air control and training aircraft and 4 Hughes 500 helicopters for communications. Personnel (1989) 200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Mauritania is a member of UN, OAU, the Arab League and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1981–85 development plan stressed the development of agriculture and light industry.

**Budget.** The ordinary budget for 1986 balanced at 18,600m. ouguiyas.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *ouguiya* which is divided into 5 *khouns*. Banknotes of 1,000, 500, 200 and 100 *ouguiya* and coins of 20, 10, 5 and 1 *ouguiya* and 1 *khoun* are in circulation. In March 1989, £1 = 129.60 *ouguiya*; US\$1 = 75.31 *ouguiya*.

**Banking.** The *Banque Centrale de Mauritanie* (created 1973) is the bank of issue, and there are 5 commercial banks situated in Nouakchott.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 74m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Iron ore production (1984) 9.5m. tonnes. Copper mining at Akjoujt (by the state-owned SOMIMA), suspended in 1978, resumed in 1983.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is mainly confined to the south, in the Sénégal river valley. Production in tonnes (1986) of millet, 94,000; dates, 12,000; potatoes, 1,000; maize, 1,000; sweet potatoes, 2,000; rice, 16,000; groundnuts, 2,000.

In 1987 there were 800,000 camels, 1m. cattle, 149,000 asses, 17,000 horses, 3,950,000 sheep, 3,057,000 goats.

**Forestry.** There are 151,340 sq. km of forests, chiefly in the southern regions, where wild acacias yield the main product, gum arabic.

**Fisheries.** About 350,000 tonnes of fish are caught in Mauritanian coastal waters



each year, but only 50,000 tonnes (1985) are landed in the country (mainly at Nouâdhibou) with another 10,000 tonnes caught in inland waters.

**TRADE.** In 1985 imports totalled 15,758m. ouguiya, and exports, 28,887 ouguiya of which iron ore comprised 40% of exports and salted and dried fish 60%; 24% of all exports went to Italy, 22% to Japan, 18% to Belgium and 15% to France, while France provided 22% of imports and Spain 20%.

Total trade between Mauritania and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	10,343	6,311	2,184	8,724	7,259
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,656	2,069	2,495	3,862	3,048

**Tourism.** In 1975 there were 20,700 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 8,900 km of roads in 1983. In 1985 there were 15,017 passenger cars and 2,188 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** A 652-km railway links Zouérate with the port of Point-Central, 10 km south of Nouâdhibou, and is used primarily for iron ore exports. In 1986 it carried 9.4m. tonnes and 19,353 passengers.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Nouakchott, Nouâdhibou and Néma.

**Shipping.** The major ports are at Point-Central (for mineral exports), Nouakchott and Nouâdhibou.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1985, 3,161 telephones and 200,000 radio receivers and about 1,000 television receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are *tribunaux de première instance* at Nouakchott, Atar, Kaédi, Aïoun el Atrouss and Kiffa. The Appeal Court and Supreme Court are situated in Nouakchott. Islamic jurisprudence was adopted in Feb. 1980.

**Religion.** Over 99% of Mauritania are Sunni Moslem, mainly of the Qadiriyyah sect.

**Education.** In 1983–84 there were 119,337 pupils in primary schools, 27,924 in secondary schools, 3,572 in technical schools and teacher-training establishments and 4,340 students in higher education. The University of Nouakchott (founded 1983) had 974 students in 1984.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 13 hospitals and clinics with 1,325 beds. In 1984 there were 170 doctors, 8 dentists, 16 pharmacists, 129 midwives and 582 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Mauritania in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Mauritania

*Ambassador:* John Macrae, CMG (resides in Dakar).

Of Mauritania in the USA (2129 Leroy Pl., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Abdellah Ould Daddah.

Of the USA in Mauritania (PO Box 222, Nouakchott)

*Ambassador:* Robert L. Pugh.

Of Mauritania to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mohamed Mahjoub Ould Boye.

## Further Reading

Stewart, C. C. and Stewart, E. K., *Islam and Social Order in Mauritania*. New York, 1970  
Westebbe, R. M., *The Economy of Mauritania*. New York, 1971

# MAURITIUS

*Capital:* Port Louis

*Population:* 1,056,867 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,720 (1987)

**HISTORY.** Mauritius was known to Arab navigators probably not later than the 10th century. It was probably visited by Malays in the 15th century, and was discovered by the Portuguese between 1507 and 1512, but the Dutch were the first settlers (1598). In 1710 they abandoned the island, which was occupied by the French under the name of Ile de France (1715). The British occupied the island in 1810, and it was formally ceded to Great Britain by the Treaty of Paris, 1814. Mauritius attained independence on 12 March 1968. In 1965 the Chagos Archipelago was transferred to the British Indian Ocean Territory.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mauritius, the main island, lies 500 miles (800 km) east of Madagascar. Rodrigues (formerly a dependency and now a part of Mauritius) is about 350 miles (560 km) east of Mauritius. The outer islands consist of Agalega and the St Brandon Group. Population estimate (1987) 1,056,867.

<i>Island</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1972</i>	<i>Census 1983</i>
Mauritius	1,865	826,199	966,863
Rodrigues	104	24,769	33,082
<i>Dependencies</i>			
Agalega	70	366	487
St Brandon	1	—	—
Total	2,040	851,334	1,000,432

Port Louis is the capital (139,038, 1987). Other towns, Beau Bassin-Rose Hill, 93,016; Curepipe, 64,687; Quatre Bornes, 64,668; Vascoas-Phoenix, 55,464.

Vital statistics, 1987: Births, 19,151 (19.1 per 1,000); marriages, 11,201; deaths, 6,581 (6.6 per 1,000).

The official language is English.

**CLIMATE.** The sub-tropical climate produces quite a difference between summer and winter, though conditions are generally humid. Most rain falls in the summer so that the pleasantest months are Sept. to Nov. Rainfall amounts vary between 40" (1,000 mm) on the coast to 200" (5,000 mm) on the central plateau, though the west coast only has 35" (875 mm). Mauritius lies in the cyclone belt, whose season runs from Nov. to April, but is seldom affected by intense storms. Port Louis, Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,000 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Mauritius became an independent state and a monarchical member of the British Commonwealth on 12 March 1968 after 7 months of internal self-government. The Governor-General is the local representative of HM the Queen, who remains the Head of the State.

The Cabinet is presided over by the Prime Minister. Each of the other 18 members of the Cabinet is responsible for the administration of specified departments or subjects and is bound by the rule of collective responsibility. 10 Parliamentary Secretaries may also be appointed by the Governor-General on the advice of the Prime Minister.

The Legislative Assembly consists of a Speaker, elected from its own members, and 62 elected members (3 each for the 20 constituencies of Mauritius and 2 for Rodrigues) and 8 additional seats in order to ensure a fair and adequate representation of each community within the Assembly. General Elections are held every 5 years on the basis of universal adult suffrage.

The Constitution also provides for the Public Service Commission and the

Judicial and Legal Service Commission which have both assumed executive powers for appointments to the Public Service. An Ombudsman assumed office on 2 March 1970.

At the General Election held on 30 Aug. 1987, 41 of the 62 seats were won by the ruling *Alliance* (Mouvement Socialiste Mauricien, 26; Mauritius Labour Party, 9; Parti Mauricien Social-Démocrate, 4; Organisation du Peuple Rodriguais, 2) and 21 by the opposition *Union for the Future* (the Mouvement Militant Mauricien and its allies); of the 8 additional seats awarded to the highest losers in each community, 5 went to the *Alliance* and 3 to the *Union*.

*Governor-General*: Sir Veerasamy Ringadoo, GCMG, QC.

The Cabinet was composed as follows in Dec. 1988:

*Prime Minister, Defence and Internal Security, Information, External Communications and the Outer Islands*: Sir Anerood Jugnauth, QC.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Attorney-General, Justice, External Affairs and Emigration*: Sir Satcam Boolell, QC. *Deputy Prime Minister and Finance*: Seetanah Lutchmeenaraidoo. *Deputy Prime Minister and Economic Planning and Development*: Dr Beergoonath Ghurburrin. *Education, Arts and Culture*: Armoogum Parsuraman. *Trade and Shipping*: Dwarkanath Gungah. *Energy, Water Resources and Postal Services*: Mahyendrah Utchanah. *Labour and Industrial Relations, Women's Rights and Family Welfare*: Sheilabai Bappoo. *Youth and Sports and Tourism*: Michael James Kevin Glover. *Health*: Jagdishwar Goburdhun. *Agriculture, Fisheries and Natural Resources*: Murlidas Dullooo. *Social Security and Reform Institutions*: Dineshwar Ramjuttun. *Works*: Ramduth Jaddoo. *Rodrigues*: Serge Clair. *Housing, Lands and the Environment*: Sir Ramesh Jeewoolall. *Industry*: Clarel Malherbes. *Co-operatives*: V. Sajadah. *Local Government*: Regis Finette. *Civil Service Affairs and Employment*: Marie France Roussety.

*National flag*: Horizontally 4 stripes of red, blue, yellow and green.

**DEFENCE.** The Mauritius Police, which is responsible for defence, is equipped with arms; its strength was (1987) 5,367 officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Mauritius is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAU, the Non-Aligned Movement and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in Rs l.m.) for years ending 30 June:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Revenue	3,559	4,131	5,009	6,120
Expenditure	4,261	4,488	4,635	5,745

Principal sources of revenue, 1987-88 (estimate): Direct taxes, Rs 1,026.9m.; indirect taxes, Rs 4,457.7m.; receipts from public utilities, Rs 235.1m.; receipts from public services Rs 122.3m.; interest and reimbursement, Rs 263.7m. Capital expenditure was Rs 2,130.7m. Capital revenue, Rs 2,624m. On 30 June 1987 the public debt of Mauritius was Rs 8,293.1m.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the Mauritius *Rupee*, divided into 100 *cents*.

The currency consists of: (i) Bank of Mauritius notes of Rs 500, 200, 100, 50, 25, 10 and 5; (ii) Cupro-nickel coins of 5 rupees and 1 rupee; (iii) nickel-plated steel coins of 50 cents and 20 cents; (iv) copper-plated steel coins of 5 cents and 1 cent. In March 1989, £1 = 24.68 rupees; US\$1 = 14.34.

**Banking.** The Bank of Mauritius was established in 1966, with an authorized capital of Rs 10m., to exercise the function of a central bank. There are 13 commercial banks, the Mauritius Commercial Bank Ltd (established 1838), Barclays Bank PLC, the Bank of Baroda Ltd, The Hong Kong and Shanghai Banking Corporation, the Mauritius Co-operative Central Bank Ltd, Banque Nationale de Paris (Intercontinentale), the Habib Bank Ltd, the State Commercial Bank Ltd, the



Bank of Credit and Commerce International SA, Indian Ocean International Bank Ltd, Mauritius Commercial Bank Finance Corporation Ltd, Union International Bank Ltd and Habib Bank (Zurich). Other financial institutions include the Mauritius Housing Corporation, the Development Bank of Mauritius and the Post Office Savings Bank.

On 31 Dec. 1987 the Post Office Savings Bank held deposits amounting to Rs 205.4m., belonging to 252,686 depositors.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power production (1987) was 487m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 82,752 hectares were planted with sugar-cane. There were 19 factories and sugar production (1987 in tonnes) was 691,134, molasses, 189,510.

The main secondary crops in 1987 were tea (3,661 hectares from which 7,148,090 kg were produced), tobacco (912,284 kg), potatoes (15,535 tonnes) and maize (3,865 tonnes).

In 1987 poultry production totalled 7,500 tonnes, beef 994 tonnes, pork 732 tonnes and goat meat 136 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 38,000; goats, 95,000; poultry, 2m.

**Forestry.** The total forest area was estimated (1987) at 21,161 hectares including some 11,730 hectares of plantations. In 1987 production totalled 27,954 cu. metres of timber, poles and fuel wood.

**Fisheries.** Production (1987) 16,439 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufactures include: Knitwear, clothing, footwear, diamond cutting, jewellery, furniture, watchstraps, sunglasses, plastic ware and chemical products. Total employment in manufacturing (1988) 93,311.

**Labour.** In 1987 the labour force was 440,000.

**Trade Unions.** In 1986 there were 291 registered trade unions and 11 federations with a total membership of 101,179.

**Commerce.** Total trade (in Rs l m.) for calendar years:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports c.i.f.	6,494	8,010	9,090	13,042
Exports f.o.b.	5,180	6,644	9,063	11,604

In 1987, Rs 1,699m. of the imports came from France, Rs 1,110m. from the Republic of South Africa, Rs 1,059m. from UK, Rs 347m. from Australia. Rs 4,063m. of the exports went to UK, Rs 3,078m. to France, Rs 1,697m. to USA and Rs 907m. to Federal Republic of Germany.

Sugar exports in 1987 were 656,000 tonnes, Rs 4,310m. Other major exports (1987) included clothing, Rs 5,587m.; tea, Rs 90m. and toys, Rs 78m. Major imports, 1987, included textiles and fabrics, Rs 1,296m.; petroleum products, Rs 978m. and machinery and transport equipment, Rs 2,886m.

Total trade between Mauritius and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	160,042	122,829	153,271	163,271	186,240
Exports and re-exports from UK	24,358	28,512	32,087	44,395	38,553

**Tourism.** In 1987, 207,560 tourists visited Mauritius.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 27 km of motorway, 840 km of main roads, 934 km of rural roads. At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 24,365 cars, 1,529 buses, 9,186 motor cycles, 23,949 auto cycles and 8,136 lorries and vans.

**Aviation.** Mauritius is linked by air with Europe, Africa, Asia and Australia by the following airlines: Air France, Air India, Air Mauritius, British Airways, Luft-hansa, Singapore Airlines, South African Airways and Zambia Airways. In addition to passenger services two weekly cargo flights are operated by Air France and Air Mauritius on the Mauritius-Paris route and the Mauritius-Amsterdam route respectively. In 1987, 288,290 passengers arrived at Plaisance airport and 7,500 tonnes of freight were unloaded. Air Mauritius operates a joint regional service with Air Madagascar on the Mauritius-Tananarive-Moroni-Nairobi route, a joint weekly service with Air India to Bombay, and services to Réunion and Rodrigues.

**Shipping.** In 1987 588 vessels entered Port Louis with an average gross tonnage of 15,000 tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 31 telephone exchanges and 65,860 individual telephone installations in Mauritius and Rodrigues. Communication with other parts of the world is established *via* satellite.

At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 131,978 television sets and (1984) 129,414 radio sets.

**Cinemas** (1987). There were 36 cinemas, with a seating capacity of about 40,000.

**Newspapers.** There were (1987) 5 French daily papers (with occasional articles in English) and 2 Chinese daily papers with a combined circulation of about 80,000.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** At the 1983 Census (excluding Rodrigues) there were 247,723 Roman Catholics, 6,049 Protestants (Church of England and Church of Scotland), 506,270 Hindus and 160,190 Moslems.

**Education.** Primary education is free and not usually compulsory. About 95% of children attend schools. In 1987 there were 137,935 pupils at 267 primary schools and 69,825 pupils at 125 secondary schools. There were 8 special schools and 962 students in 3 technical institutions and 5 handicraft training centres and 631 teachers in training in 1986.

In 1987 over 618 students were enrolled at the University of Mauritius.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 800 doctors, including 136 specialists, and (1986) 2,814 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Mauritius in Great Britain (32-33 Elvaston Pl., London, SW7)

*High Commissioner:* Dr Boodhun Teelock (accredited 23 Feb. 1989).

Of Great Britain in Mauritius (King George V Ave., Floreal, Port Louis)

*High Commissioner:* R. B. Crowson, CMG.

Of Mauritius in the USA (4301 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Chitmansing Jesseramsing.

Of the USA in Mauritius (Rogers Bldg., John Kennedy St., Port Louis)

*Ambassador:* Ronald D. Palmer.

Of Mauritius to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr S. Peerthum.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistical Information Office (Rose Hill, Mauritius) was founded in July 1945. Its main publication is the *Bi-annual Digest of Statistics*.

Ministry of Information, *Fruits of Political and Social Democracy.—Mauritius Facts and Figures 1980*

Simmons, A. S., *Modern Mauritius: The Politics of Decolonization*. Indiana Univ. Press, 1982  
Toussaint A., *History of Mauritius*. London, 1978

*Library:* The Mauritius Institute Public Library, Port Louis.

# MEXICO

*Capital:* Mexico City  
*Population:* 82.7m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$1,850 (1986)

## Estados Unidos Mexicanos

**HISTORY.** Mexico's history falls into four epochs: the era of the Indian empires (before 1521), the Spanish colonial phase (1521–1810), the period of national formation (1810–1910), which includes the war of independence (1810–21) and the long presidency of Porfirio Díaz (1876–80, 1884–1911), and the present period which began with the social revolution of 1910–21 and is regarded by Mexicans as the period of social and national consolidation.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mexico is at the southern extremity of North America and is bounded in the north by USA, west and south by the Pacific, south-east by Guatemala, Belize and the Caribbean, and north-east by the Gulf of Mexico. It comprises 1,958,201 sq. km (756,198 sq. miles), including uninhabited islands (5,073 sq. km) offshore.

The population at recent censuses has been as follows:

1900	13,607,272	1950	25,791,017	1970	48,225,238
1930	16,552,722	1960	34,923,129	1980	66,846,833

The areas (in sq. km), populations and capitals of the states are:

<i>States</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Aguascalientes	5,471	519,439	684,247	Aguascalientes
Baja California	69,921	1,177,886	1,388,476	Mexicali
Baja California Sur	73,475	215,139	315,095	La Paz
Campeche	50,812	420,553	592,933	Campeche
Chiapas	74,211	2,084,717	2,518,679	Tuxtla Gutiérrez
Chihuahua	244,938	2,005,477	2,238,542	Chihuahua
Coahuila	149,982	1,557,265	1,906,119	Saltillo
Colima	5,191	346,293	419,439	Colima
Distrito Federal	1,479	8,831,079	10,263,275	México City
Durango	123,181	1,182,320	1,384,518	Victoria de Durango
Guanajuato	30,491	3,006,110	3,542,103	Guanajuato
Guerrero	64,281	2,109,513	2,560,262	Chilpancingo
Hidalgo	20,813	1,547,493	1,822,296	Pachuca de Soto
Jalisco	80,836	4,371,998	5,198,374	Guadalajara
México	21,355	7,564,335	11,571,111	Toluca de Lerdo
Michoacán de Ocampo	59,928	2,868,824	3,377,732	Morelia
Morelos	4,950	947,089	1,258,468	Cuernavaca
Nayarit	26,979	726,120	846,278	Tepic
Nuevo León	64,924	2,513,044	3,146,169	Monterrey
Oaxaca	93,952	2,369,076	2,650,232	Oaxaca de Juárez
Puebla	33,902	3,347,685	4,068,038	Puebla de Zaragoza
Querétaro	11,449	739,605	952,875	Querétaro
Quintana Roo	50,212	225,985	393,398	Chetumal
San Luis Potosí	63,068	1,673,893	2,020,715	San Luis Potosí
Sinaloa	58,328	1,849,879	2,367,567	Culiacán Rosales
Sonora	182,052	1,513,731	1,799,646	Hermosillo
Tabasco	25,267	1,062,961	1,299,507	Villahermosa
Tamaulipas	79,384	1,924,484	2,266,677	Ciudad Victoria
Tlaxcala	4,016	556,597	665,606	Tlaxcala
Veracruz	71,699	5,387,680	6,658,946	Jalapa Enríquez
Yucatán	38,402	1,063,733	1,302,600	Mérida
Zacatecas	73,252	1,136,830	1,251,531	Zacatecas

At the 1980 census 33,039,307 were males, 33,807,526 females. Estimate (1988) 82,734,454. Urban population was 66.3% and rural population was 33.7%. The official language is Spanish, the mother tongue of over 92% of the population, but



there are 5 indigenous language groups (Náhuatl, Maya, Zapotec, Otomi and Mixtec) from which are derived a total of 59 dialects spoken by 5,181,038 inhabitants (1980 census). In 1980, about 16% of the population were of European ethnic origin, 55% mestizo and 29% Amerindian.

The populations (1980 Census) of the largest cities were:

México <sup>1</sup>	12,932,116	Saltillo	321,758	Ensenada	175,425
Guadalajara <sup>2</sup>	2,244,715	Victoria de Durango	321,148	Poza Rica de Hidalgo	166,799
Monterrey <sup>3</sup>	1,916,472	Veracruz Llave	305,456	Tuxtla Gutiérrez	166,476
Puebla de Zaragoza	835,759	Querétaro	293,586	Ciudad Obregón	165,572
Léon de los Aldamas	655,809	Tampico	267,957	Salamanca	160,040
Ciudad Juárez	567,365	Villa Hermosa	250,903	Oaxaca de Juárez	157,284
Culiacán Rosales	560,011	Mazatlán	249,988	Ciudad Victoria	153,206
Mexicali	510,554	Irapuato	246,308	Campeche	151,805
Tijuana	461,257	Matamoros	238,840	Uruapan	146,998
Mérida	424,529	Cuernavaca	232,355	Minatitlán	145,268
Acapulco de Juárez	409,335	Celaya	219,010	Pachuca de Soto	135,248
Chihuahua	406,830	Jalapa Enriquez	212,769	Ciudad Madero	132,444
San Luis Potosí	406,630	Reynosa	211,412	Cordoba	126,179
Torreón	363,886	Nuevo Laredo	203,286	Los Mochis	122,531
Aguascalientes	359,454	Atizapán de Zaragoza	188,497	Monclova	119,609
Toluca de Lerdo	357,071	Coatzacoalcos	186,129	Gómez Palacio	116,967
Morelia	353,055	Tepic	177,007	Orizaba	114,848
Hermosillo	340,779				

<sup>1</sup> Metropolitan Area, including Netzahualcóyotl (1,341,230).

<sup>2</sup> Metropolitan Area, including Zapopan (345,390) and Tlaquepaque (135,500).

<sup>3</sup> Metropolitan Area, including Guadalupe (370,524) and San Nicolás de los Garzas (280,696).

Largest metropolitan areas (1986, estimate): Mexico City, 18,748,000; Guadalajara, 2,587,000; Monterrey, 2,335,000; Puebla de Zaragoza, 1,217,600; Léon de los Aldamas, 946,800; Torreón, 729,800; San Luis Potosí, 601,900; Ciudad Juárez, 595,700; Mérida, 580,300.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>
1983	2,609,088	413,403	507,550	29,427
1984	2,511,894	...	...	...

Crude birth rate in 1984 was 33.2 per 1,000 population; crude death rate, 5.4; marriage rate (1983) 6.8. In 1980 there were 73,260 permanent immigrants.

**CLIMATE.** Latitude and relief produce a variety of climates. Arid and semi-arid conditions are found in the north, with extreme temperatures, whereas in the south there is a humid tropical climate, with temperatures varying with altitude. Conditions on the shores of the Gulf of Mexico are very warm and humid. In general, the rainy season lasts from May to Nov. Mexico City. Jan. 55°F (12.6°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 30" (747 mm). Guadalajara. Jan. 59°F (15.2°C), July 69°F (20.5°C). Annual rainfall 36" (902 mm). La Paz. Jan. 64°F (17.8°C), July 85°F (29.4°C). Annual rainfall 6" (145 mm). Mazatlan Jan. 66°F (18.9°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 33" (828 mm). Merida. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 38" (957 mm). Monterrey. Jan. 58°F (14.4°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 23" (588 mm). Puebla de Zaragoza. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 34" (850 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was promulgated on 5 Feb. 1917 and has been amended from time to time. Mexico is a representative, democratic and federal republic, comprising 31 states and a federal district, each state being free and sovereign in all internal affairs, but united in a federation established according to the principals of the Fundamental Law. Citizenship, including the right of suffrage, is vested in all nationals of 18 years of age and older who have 'an honourable means of livelihood'.

There is complete separation of legislative, executive and judicial powers (Art. 49). Legislative power is vested in a General Congress of 2 chambers, a Chamber of Deputies and a Senate (Art.50). The Chamber of Deputies consists of 500 members

directly elected for 3 years, 300 of them from single-member constituencies and 200 chosen under a system of proportional representation (Arts.51-55). At the general elections held on 7 July 1988, 234 of the single-member seats were won by the *Partido Revolucionario Institucional* (PRI), 38 by the *Partido de Acción Nacional* (PAN).

The Senate comprises 64 members, 2 from each state and 2 from the federal district, directly elected for 6 years (Arts.56-58). At the elections of 7 July 1988, the PRI won 60 seats and the FDN 4 seats. Members of both chambers are not immediately re-eligible for election (Art.59). Congress sits from 1 Sept. to 31 Dec. each year; during the recess there is a permanent committee of 15 deputies and 14 senators appointed by the respective chambers.

The President is the supreme executive authority. He appoints the members of the Council of Ministers and the senior military and civilian officers of the state. He is directly elected for a single 6-year term.

The names of the presidents from 1958 are as follows:

Adolfo López Mateos, 1 Dec. 1958-30 Nov. 1964.	José López Portillo y Pacheco, 1 Dec. 1976-30 Nov. 1982.
Gustavo Díaz Ordaz, 1 Dec. 1964-30 Nov. 1970.	Miguel de la Madrid Hurtado, 1 Dec. 1982-30 Nov. 1988.
Luis Echeverría Álvarez, 1 Dec. 1970-30 Nov. 1976.	

*President:* Carlos Salinas de Gortari (assumed office 1 Dec. 1988).

In Nov. 1988 the Council of Ministers was composed as follows:

*Government:* Fernando Gutiérrez Barrios. *Foreign Relations:* Fernando Solana Morales. *Defence:* Gen. Antonio Riviello Bazan. *Navy:* Adm. Mauricio Scheleske Sánchez. *Finance and Public Credit:* Dr Pedro Aspe Armella. *Planning and Federal Budget:* Dr Ernesto Cédillo Ponce de León. *Comptroller-General:* María Elena Vásquez Nava. *Energy, Mines and Public Industries:* Fernando Hiriart Balderrama. *Commerce and Industrial Development:* Dr Jaime Serra Puche. *Agriculture and Water Resources:* Jorge de la Vega Domínguez. *Communications and Transport:* Andres Caso Lombardo. *Urban Development and Ecology:* Patricio Chirinos Calero. *Education:* Manuel Bartlett Díaz. *Health:* Dr Jesús Cumate Rodríguez. *Labour and Social Welfare:* Arsenio Farrell Cubillas. *Agrarian Reform:* Víctor Cervera Pacheco. *Tourism:* Carlos Hank González. *Fisheries:* María de los Angeles Moreno Iruegas. *Governor of Federal District:* Manuel Camacho Solís. *Attorney-General:* Enrique Álvarez del Castillo. *Attorney-General of the Federal District:* Ignacio Morales Lechuga. *Chief of the Presidential Staff:* Brig.-Gen. Arturo Cardona Marino. *Director-General of the Technical Cabinet Secretariat:* Dr José Córdoba Montoya. *Presidential Secretary:* Andrés Massieu Berlanga. *Director-General of Legal Affairs of the Presidency:* Ruben Valdés Abascal.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of green, white, red, with the national arms in the centre.

*National anthem:* Mexicanos, al grito de guerra (words by F. González Bocanegra; tune by Jaime Nunó, 1854).

*Local Government.* Mexico is divided into 31 states and a Federal District. The latter is co-extensive with Mexico City and is administered by a Governor appointed by the President. Each state has its own constitution, with the right to legislate and to levy taxes (but not inter-state customs duties); its Governor is directly elected for 6 years and its unicameral legislature for 3 years; judicial officers are appointed by the state governments. Mexico City is sub-divided into 16 municipalities and the 31 states into 2,378 municipalities.

## DEFENCE

*Army.* Enlistment into the regular army is voluntary, but there is conscription into a part-time militia, which numbers some 120,000. The regular army consists of 3 infantry brigades (one of which is mechanized), 3 armoured regiments, a garrison for each of the country's 36 military zones, and support units. Equipment includes 45 M-3/-8 tanks and some 140 armoured cars. Strength of the regular army (1989) 105,500; reserve, 60,000.

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 6 modern light frigate or corvette type with small helicopter hangar, 21 fishery protection cutters of 130 tons built in Britain in 1974–76 and 10 similar-design patrol craft built in Mexico in 1978–82, 6 patrol boats, 17 river patrol craft, 4 survey ships, 10 auxiliary vessels, (6 tugs and 4 float-ing docks). There are 6 tugs, 8 Aviocars and 8 HU-16 Albatross for maritime patrol. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled nearly 30,000 officers and men including naval air force and marines.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had (1989) a strength of about 7,000 officers and men, and has nine operational groups, each with one or two squadrons. No. 1 Group comprises No. 208 Squadron with 10 IAI Aravas for transport, search and rescue and counter-insurgency duties; and No. 209 Squadron with Bell 205A, 206B Jet-Ranger, Alouette III and Puma helicopters. No. 2 Group has two Squadrons (Nos. 206 and 207) of Swiss-built Pilatus PC-7 Turbo-Trainers for light attack duty. No. 3 Group (203 and 204 Squadrons) also operates PC-7s; No. 4 Group (201 and 205 Squadrons) is equipped with PC-7s. No. 5 Group consists of No. 101 communications Squadron and a photo-reconnaissance unit, both equipped with Aero Commander 500S piston-engined light twins. Nos. 301 and 302 Squadrons, in No. 6 Group, operate a total of 8 turboprop-powered Lockheed C-130 Hercules and 5 C-54, 2 C-118A and 1 DC-7 piston-engined transports. The main combat Group, No. 7, comprises No. 401 Squadron with 19 F-5E Tiger II and F-5F 2-seat fighters; and No. 202 Squadron with AT-33A jet trainer/fighter-bombers. No. 8 Group has 7 C-47s in a VIP transport squadron. No. 9 Group operates the Air Force's remaining 12 or more C-47s in Nos. 311 and 312 transport Squadrons. There is a Presidential Squadron with 7 Boeing 727s, 2 737s, 1 HS.125, 1 Electra, 1 JetStar, 1 Islander, 2 Super Pumas and 1 Bell 212. Other training aircraft include 20 Mudry CAP-10Bs, 20 Beech Musketeers, 40 Bonanzas, over 30 T-28 Trojans and PC-7 Turbo-Trainers.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Mexico is a member of UN, OAS and LAIA.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1985 budget provided for expenditure of 11,478,200m. pesos and revenue of 7,896,100m. pesos (45.5% from petroleum).

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *peso*. There are coins of 1, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 and 200 pesos; and banknotes of 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, and 50,000 pesos. Total currency in circulation (1984) was 1,192,000m. pesos.

Rate of exchange, March 1989: 2,362 pesos = US\$1; 4,065 pesos = £1.

**Banking.** The Bank of Mexico, established 1 Sept. 1925, is the central bank of issue; it is modelled on the Federal Reserve system, with large powers to 'manage' the currency. On 1 Sept. 1982 the private banking sector was nationalized. The total external debt (June 1986) was US\$97,000m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was introduced in 1896, and its sole use is enjoined by law of 14 Dec. 1928.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1985 the 498 generating plants had installed capacity of 21,492,000 kw. (34% hydro-electric). Production (1986) 90,490m. kwh. Supply 120 volts; 50 Hz and some 120 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude petroleum output was 143m. tonnes in 1988.

**Gas.** Natural gas production 37,160m. cu. metres in 1985.

**Minerals.** Uranium deposits were discovered in the states of Chihuahua, Durango, Sonora and Queretaro in 1959, rich deposits have been located in Nuevo León. Total reserves (proven 1982) 15,000 tonnes of uranium 308; potential reserves, 150,000 tonnes. Silver output (tonnes) was 2,415 in 1987; gold 8,000 kg.



Mexico has large coal resources, calculated at 5,448m. tonnes, including 1,675m. tonnes (65% cokeable) high-grade coking coal in Coahuila.

Output, 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Lead, 177; copper, 231; zinc, 271; fluorite, 724; pig iron, 4,965; sulphur, 2,304; manganese, 146; gypsum, 2,458; phosphorus, 633; barite, 401; coal, 4,252; coke, 2,340; dolomite, 362.

**Agriculture.** In 1981 Mexico had 21.9m. hectares of arable land, 74.4m. hectares of meadows and pastures, 48.1m. hectares of forests, 1.6m. hectares of permanent crops and 40.6m. hectares of other land. Grains occupy most of the cultivated land, with about 43% given to maize, 10% to sorghum and 5% to wheat. In 1982 there were 146,083 tractors.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 31,156,000; sheep, 5.8m.; pigs, 18,662,000; horses, 6,135,000; goats, 10m.; mules, 3.13m.; donkeys, 3,183,000; poultry, 229m.

Production of crops for 1987 was as follows (in 1,000 tonnes):

<i>Crop</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>Crop</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>Crop</i>	<i>1987</i>
Maize	10,988	Sugar-cane	42,560	Oranges	2,200
Sorghum	4,800	Tomatoes	1,731	Bananas	1,489
Wheat	4,409	Potatoes	950	Lemons	603
Barley	592	Dry beans	1,026	Pineapples	306
Rice	584	Soybeans	686	Apples	533
Chickpeas	180	Coconuts	975	Grapes	555
Cotton	410	Coffee	315	Mangoes	831

**Forestry.** Forests extended over 48m. hectares in 1981, containing pine, spruce, cedar, mahogany, logwood and rosewood. There are 14 forest reserves (nearly 800,000 hectares) and 47 national park forests of 750,000 hectares. In 1984 total roundwood production amounted to 9.45m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1984, in tonnes): Sardines, 284,204; anchoveta, 125,884; shrimp and prawns, 76,114; oysters, 42,807; tunny, 57,420; shark, 20,488; sea perch (*mojarra*), 75,273; sea bass, 20,750. Total catch in 1984 was 1,134,592 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1983, the primary sector (agriculture etc.) provided 7.9% of GDP, the mining, oil and petrochemical industry 11.2%, manufacturing and construction 27.4% and the service sector (commerce, transport and communications, power supply and other services) 54.6%.

**Labour.** In 1987 unemployment was estimated to be over 50%. Approximately 5m. people belong to trade unions, of whom 85% are affiliated to the *Congreso del Trabajo*.

**Commerce.** Trade for calendar years in US\$1m.:

	<i>1982</i>	<i>1983</i>	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>
Imports	15,057	9,006	11,788	13,994
Exports	21,230	22,312	24,054	21,820

Of total imports in 1985, 63.7% came from USA, 3.8% from Federal Republic of Germany and 5.2% from Japan. Leading imports were mechanical and transport equipment, machine tools, parts and spares.

Of total exports in 1985, 61.1% went to USA, 7.8% to Spain, 7.8% to Japan, 3.7% to France and 3.1% to UK. The main exports (1984) were crude petroleum (62%) vehicles (6%) and petroleum products (5%).

The 1,200 in-bond assembly plants situated along the US-Mexican border generate the second largest flow of foreign exchange after oil, earning US\$1,300m. in 1986 and employing 300,000 people.

Total trade between Mexico and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	175,487	236,811	116,078	244,719	144,947
Exports and re-exports from UK	150,126	203,404	162,328	198,992	190,011

**Tourism.** In 1987, there were 5,407,000 tourists; gross revenue, including border visitors, amounted to US\$2,274.4m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length, (1982) 214,073 km, of which 1,178 km were motorways. Motor vehicles registered in 1982 comprised 5,221,159 passenger cars, and 1,978,327 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** Following mergers completed in 1987, *Ferrocarriles Nacionales de México* (NdeM) is now the only common-carrier railway. It comprises 20,119 km of 1,435 mm gauge and 90 km of 914 mm gauge, and in 1987 carried 52.8m. tonnes of freight and 22m. passengers. In Mexico City an urban railway system opened in 1969 had 141 km of route and 7 lines in 1987 and carried 1,414m. passengers.

**Aviation.** There are 32 international and 40 national airports. Each of the larger states has a local airline which links them with main airports, which, in turn, furnish services to US, Central and South America and Europe. Thirty-four companies maintained international services, of which *Aeromexico* and *Mexicana de Aviacion* are Mexican. Domestic flights are handled by 77 companies. In 1983 commercial aircraft carried 20m. national and international passengers and some 127,000 tonnes of mail and freight.

**Shipping.** Mexico has 49 ocean ports, of which, on the Gulf coast, the most important include Coatzacoalcas, Carmen (Campeche), Tampico, Veracruz and Tuxpan. On the Pacific are Salina Cruz, Isla de Cedros, Guaymas, Santa Rosalia, Manzanillo, Lázaro Cárdenas and Mazatlán.

Merchant shipping loaded 72.4m. tonnes and unloaded 11m. tonnes of international traffic in 1984. Passengers (1982), embarked and disembarked 2.8m. In 1982, the merchant marine comprised 545 vessels (of over 100 GRT) with a total tonnage of 1,251,630 GRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1980 the telegraph and telephone system had 7,140 offices. *Teléfonos de México*, a state-controlled company, controls about 98% of all the telephone service. Telephones in use, Jan. 1985, 7,329,416.

In 1983 there were 1,014 commercial radio stations and 47 cultural government radio stations while (1982) 10,338,024 homes had receiving sets. In 1982 commercial television stations numbered 191 and cultural stations 8; there were 4,589,170 homes with receiving sets.

**Cinemas** (1983). Cinemas numbered 1,751 with annual attendance of 271.8m.

**Newspapers** (1982). There were 362 dailies and 36 weeklies, with an aggregate circulation of 9.5m. In Mexico City the main dailies are, *Excelsior*, *El Sol de México*, *Uno más Uno*, *La Prensa*, *El Heraldo de México*, *Novedades*, *El Universal* and *Esto*, with a combined circulation (1984) 1.8m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Magistrates of the Supreme Court are appointed for 6 years by the President and confirmed by the Senate; they can be removed only on impeachment. The courts include the Supreme Court with 21 magistrates, 12 collegiate circuit courts with 3 judges each and 9 unitary circuit courts with 1 judge each, and 68 district courts with 1 judge each.

The penal code of 1 Jan. 1930 abolished the death penalty, except for the armed forces.

**Religion.** The prevailing religion is the Roman Catholic (92.6% of the population in 1980); with (1983) 3 cardinals, 12 archbishops and 87 bishops, but by the constitution of 1857, the Church was separated from the State, and the constitution of 1917 provided strict regulation of this and all other religions. At the 1980 census there were also 3.3% Protestants, and 4.1% members of other religions.

**Education.** Primary and secondary education is free and compulsory, and secular.

In 1984-85 there were:

	<i>Establishments</i>	<i>Teachers</i>	<i>Students</i>
Nursery	31,022	72,325	2,147,495
Primary	76,183	437,408	15,219,245
Secondary	17,620	230,656	4,396,087
Preparatory/Vocational	4,300	112,775	1,734,737
Teacher-training	515	13,930	106,886
Higher education	1,305 <sup>1</sup>	92,338 <sup>1</sup>	1,121,252 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1983-84.

The most important university is the Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México (UNAM) in México City which, with its associated institutions, had, in 1982, 136,534 students (excluding post-graduates). UNAM was founded in 1551, re-organized in 1910, and granted full autonomy in 1920. Other universities of particular importance in México City are the Instituto Politécnico Nacional, specializing in technology and applied science, with 52,694 students, and the Universidad Autónoma Metropolitana with 27,452 students, opened in 1973.

Outside México City the principal universities are the Universidad de Guadalajara (in Guadalajara) with 65,799 students; the Universidad Veracruzana (in Jalapa) with 57,755 students; the Universidad Autónoma de Nueva León (in Monterrey) with 48,124 students; the Universidad Autónoma de Puebla (in Puebla) with 39,505 students; the Universidad Autónoma de Sinaloa (in Culiacán) with 33,366 students; and the Universidad Michoacana (in Morelia) with 23,935 students.

**Health.** In 1980 Mexico had 66,373 physicians; there were 6,315 state and private hospitals and clinics with 82,717 beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Mexico in Great Britain (8 Halkin St., London, SW1X 7DW)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Mexico (Lerma 71, Col. Cuauhtémoc, México City 06500, D.F.)

*Ambassador:* John A. Morgan, CMG.

Of Mexico in the USA (2829 16th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Jorge Espinosa de los Reyes.

Of the USA in Mexico (Paseo de la Reforma 305, México City 5, D.F.)

*Ambassador:* Charles J. Pilliod, Jr.

Of Mexico to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mario Moya-Palencia.

### Further Reading

*Anuario Estadístico de los Estados Unidos Mexicanos.* Annual

*Revista de Estadística* (Monthly); *Revista de Economía* (Monthly)

Banco de México S.A., Annual report

Banco Nacional de Comercio Exterior. *Comercio Exterior*, monthly.—*Mexico.* Annual (in Spanish or English)

Bazant, J., *A Concise History of Mexico.* CUP, 1977

Hamilton, N. and Harding, T. F., (eds.) *Mexico: State, Economy and Social Conflict.* London, 1986

Philip, G., (ed.) *Politics in Mexico.* London, 1985

Riding, A., *Distant Neighbours.* London, 1985.—*Mexico: Inside the Volcano.* London, 1987

Robbins, N., *Mexico.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Wyman, D. L., (ed) *Mexico's Economic Crisis: Challenges and Opportunities.* San Diego, 1983



# MONACO

*Capital:* Monaco

*Population:* 27,063 (1982)

**HISTORY.** Monaco is a small Principality on the Mediterranean, surrounded by the French Department of Alpes Maritimes except on the side towards the sea. From 1297 it belonged to the house of Grimaldi. In 1731 it passed into the female line, Louise Hippolyte, daughter of Antoine I, heiress of Monaco, marrying Jacques de Goyon Matignon, Count of Torigni, who took the name and arms of Grimaldi. The Principality was placed under the protection of the Kingdom of Sardinia by the Treaty of Vienna, 1815, and under that of France in 1861. Prince Albert I (reigned 1889–1922) acquired fame as an oceanographer, and his son Louis II (1922–49) was instrumental in establishing the International Hydrographic Bureau.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area is 195 hectares or 481 acres. The Principality is divided into 4 districts: Monaco-Ville, la Condamine, Monte-Carlo and Fontvieille. Population (1982), 27,063. The official language is French.

**CLIMATE.** A Mediterranean climate, with mild moist winters and hot dry summers. Monaco. Jan. 50°F (10°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 30" (758 mm).

**REIGNING PRINCE.** Rainier III, born 31 May 1923, son of Princess Charlotte, Duchess of Valentinois, daughter of Prince Louis II, 1898–1977 (married 19 March 1920 to Prince Pierre, Comte de Polignac, who had taken the name Grimaldi, from whom she was divorced 18 Feb. 1933). Prince Rainier succeeded his grandfather Louis II, who died on 9 May 1949. He married on 19 April 1956 Miss Grace Kelly, a citizen of the USA (died 14 Sept. 1982). *Issue:* Princess Caroline Louise Marguerite, born 23 Jan. 1957; married Philippe Junot on 28 June 1978, divorced, 9 Oct. 1980, married Stefano Casiraghi on 29 Dec. 1983, offspring: Andrea, born 8 June 1984, Charlotte, born 3 Aug. 1986, Pierre, born 7 Sept. 1987. Prince Albert Alexandre Louis Pierre, born 14 March 1958 (*heir apparent*). Princess Stephanie Marie Elisabeth, born 1 Feb. 1965.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Prince Rainier III on 28 Jan. 1959 suspended the Constitution of 5 Jan. 1911, thereby dissolving the National Council and the Communal Council. On 28 March 1962 the National Council (18 members elected every 5 years, last elections 1988) and the Communal Council (15 members elected every 4 years, last elections 1987) were re-established as elected bodies.

On 17 Dec. 1962 a new constitution was promulgated. It maintains the hereditary monarchy, though Prince Rainier renounces the principle of divine right. The supreme tribunal becomes the custodian of fundamental liberties, and guarantees are given for the right of association, trade union freedom and the right to strike. It provides for votes for women and the abolition of the death penalty.

The constitution can be modified only with the approval of the elected National Council. Women were given the vote in 1945.

Monegasque relations with France were based on a convention of neighbourhood and administrative assistance of 1951. This was terminated by France on 11 Oct. 1962, but has been replaced by several new conventions signed on 18 May 1963.

*National flag:* Horizontally red over white.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 55-acre site has been reclaimed from the sea at Fontvieille. This land has been earmarked for office and residential development. The present industrial zone is to be reorganized and developed with a view to attracting new light industry to the Principality.

**Budget.** The budget (in 1,000 francs) was as follows:

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Revenue	1,842,237	1,964,790	2,139,305	2,232,032	2,542,175
Expenditure	1,460,102	1,550,748	1,999,764	2,229,806	2,494,307

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the French *franc* divided into 100 *centimes*.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Trade Unions.** Membership of trade unions is estimated at 2,000 out of a work force of 25,000 (1986).

**Commerce.** International trade is included with France.

**Tourism.** There were 214,149 overnight tourists in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 47.8 km of roads in 1984.

**Railways.** The 1.6 km of main line passing through the country is operated by the French National Railways (SNCF).

**Aviation.** The nearest airport is at Nice, France and a heliport at Fontvieille.

**Shipping.** The harbour has an area of 40 acres, depth at the entrance 98 ft, and alongside the quay 23 ft at least.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephone subscribers numbered about 23,153 in 1987 and telex subscribers (1984), 597. Monaco issues its own postage stamps.

Radio Monte Carlo broadcasts FM commercial programmes in French (long- and medium-waves). Radio Monte Carlo owns 55% of Radio Monte Carlo Relay Station on Cyprus. The foreign service is dedicated exclusively to religious broadcasts and is maintained by free-will contributions. It operates in 36 languages under the name 'Trans World Radio' and has relay facilities on Bonaire, West Indies, and is planning to build relay facilities in the southern parts of Africa. *Télé Monte-Carlo* broadcasts TV programmes in French, Italian and English.

**Cinemas.** In 1986 there were 4 cinemas (one open air) with seating capacity of 1,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are the following courts, *Juge de Paix*, Tribunal of the First Instance, a Court of Appeal, Criminal Tribunal, *Cour de Révision Judiciaire* and a Supreme Tribunal.

**Police:** There is an independent police force (*Sûreté Publique*) which comprised (1986) 390 policemen and inspectors.

**Religion.** There has been since 1887 a Roman Catholic bishop elevated since 1982 to an archbishop, directly dependent on the Holy See.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 5,160 pupils with over 420 teachers.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 432 hospital beds and 53 physicians.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

*British Consul-General* (resident in Marseille): T. E. J. Mound, OBE.

*British Honorary Consul* (resident in Nice): Lieut.-Col. R. W. Challoner, OBE.

*Consul-General for Monaco in London:* I. S. Ivanovic.

## Further Reading

*Journal de Monaco. Bulletin Officiel.* 1858 ff.

Handley-Taylor, G., *Bibliography of Monaco.* London, 1968

# MONGOLIA

*Capital:* Ulan Bator

*Population:* 2m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$940 (1978)

## Bügd Nayramdakh Mongol Ard Uls – Mongolian People's Republic

**HISTORY.** Outer Mongolia was a Chinese province from 1691 to 1911, an autonomous state under Russian protection from 1912 to 1919 and again a Chinese province from 1919 to 1921. On 13 March 1921 a Provisional People's Government was established which declared the independence of Mongolia and on 5 Nov. 1921 signed a treaty with Soviet Russia annulling all previous unequal treaties and establishing friendly relations. On 26 Nov. 1924 the Government proclaimed the country the Mongolian People's Republic.

On 5 Jan. 1946 China recognized the independence of Outer Mongolia after a plebiscite in Mongolia (20 Oct. 1945) had resulted in an overwhelming vote for independence. A Sino-Soviet treaty of 14 Feb. 1950 guaranteed this independence. In Aug. 1986 a consular agreement, in June 1987 a boundary agreement, and in Nov. 1988 a border treaty, were signed with China.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mongolia is bounded north by the USSR, east and south and west by China. Area, 1,567,000 sq. km (605,022 sq. miles). Population (1979 census); 1,594,800; (1987) 2,001,000 (52% urban; 50% male). Density (1987), 1.28 per sq. km. Birth rate (1983), 36.2 per 1,000; death rate, 9.8 per 1,000; marriage rate, 5.7 per 1,000; divorce rate, 0.3 per 1,000. Rate of increase (1987), 27.5 per 1,000. The population is predominantly made up of Mongolian peoples (77.5% Khalkha). There is a Turkic Kazakh minority (5.3% of the population) and 8 Mongol minorities. The official language is Mongolian. Expectation of life in 1987 was 65 years. 45% of the population is under 16.

The republic is administratively divided into 3 cities (Ulan Bator, the capital, population 500,000 (1988), Darkhan, 80,000 (1988) and Erdenet 42,900 (1985)), and 18 provinces (*aimag*). The provinces are sub-divided into 258 districts (*somon*).

**CLIMATE.** A very extreme climate, with six months of mean temperatures below freezing, but much higher temperatures occur for a month or two in summer. Rainfall is very low and limited to the months mid-May to mid-Sept. Ulan Bator. Jan. -14°F (-25.6°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 8" (208 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** According to the fourth Constitution (1960) legislative power is vested in the *Great People's Khural* of deputies elected for 5 years by universal suffrage of voters over 18 years of age on a basis of 1 deputy per 2,500 inhabitants. It elects from its number 9 members of the Presidium, which carries on current state affairs.

At the election of 22 June 1986 it was stated that turn-out was 99.99%, and 99.99% of votes were cast for the 370 deputies (92 women).

*De facto* power is in the hands of the only political party, the Mongolian People's Revolutionary (*i.e.*, Communist) Party, which had 89,588 members and candidates in 1987 (workers, 33.2%; white collar, 50%; peasants, 16.8%; women, 30.9%; 15.6% under 30). The youth organization had over 180,000 members in 1982. The *Chairman of the Presidium of the Khural* (head of state) and *General Secretary of*



the Party is Dr Jambyn Batmunkh. The other members of the Politburo of the Party are: Dumaagiyn Sodnom, *Prime Minister*; B.-O. Altangerel, *First Deputy Prime Minister*; D. Molomjamts, Ts. Namsrai, B. Dejid, B. Lamjav. *Candidate members*: P. Damdin, S. Luvsangombo. Ministers not in the Politburo include: *Chairman, State Committee for Planning and the Economy*: P. Jasrai. *Minister of Defence*: Col.-Gen. J. Yondon; *Minister of Public Security*: A. Jamsranjav; *Foreign Minister*: Tserenpiliin Gombosuren; *Minister for Foreign Economic Relations*: P. Ochirbat; *Minister of Agriculture*: S. Gungaadorj.

*National flag*: Red-sky-blue-red (vertical), with a golden 5-pointed star and under it the golden *soyombo* emblem on the red stripe nearest to the flagpole.

Local government is administered by People's Deputies' *khurals*. Elections to the 380 *khurals* took place in June 1984. Turn-out was announced to be 99.99% of the electorate. There are some 15,000 councillors. White-collar, 50%; collective farmers, 30%; industrial workers, 20%; Communist Party members, 60%; women, 33%; under-30, 20%, first term of office, 50%.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is 3 years.

**Army.** The Army comprises 4 motorized infantry divisions. Equipment includes T-54/-55/-62 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 21,000, with reserves of 200,000. There is a paramilitary Ministry of Public Security force of about 15,000 men. A civil defence force was set up in 1970. There were some 75,000 Soviet service personnel in Mongolia, but in 1987 the USSR announced it had withdrawn one division of about 10,000 troops and further withdrawals were announced in 1989.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has about 100 pilots and more than 70 aircraft, including 12 MiG-21 and 10 MiG-17 fighters; a total of about 30 An-2, An-24 and An-26 transports used mainly on civil air services; 3 Wilga utility aircraft; 6 Mi-4 and 10 Mi-8 helicopters; and Yakovlev trainers. Personnel (1989) 3,500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Mongolia is a member of UN and Comecon.

**Aid.** Mongolia receives economic aid from the USSR and other communist countries. There is also a UN development aid programme running at US\$2m. per annum.

**Treaties.** Relations with the USSR are based on a 15-year treaty of economic and technical co-operation (1985).

Sino-Mongolian relations deteriorated after the estrangement between China and USSR, but have improved recently.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** Mongolia has had for centuries a traditional nomadic pastoral economy, which the Government aims to transform into an 'agricultural-industrial economy'. The eighth 5-year plan is running from 1986 to 1990. For earlier plans see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1987-88.

**Budget** (in 1m. tugriks):

	1978	1980	1982	1983	1984	1985
Revenue	3,660	4,070	4,830	5,255	...	5,743
Expenditure	3,650	4,058	3,131	3,356	...	5,693

Sources of revenue, 1983: turnover tax, 64%; profits tax, 28%; social insurance, 3.5%. Expenditure: economy, 40%; social and cultural, 40%.

**Currency.** 100 *möngö* = 1 *tugrik*. Notes are issued for 1, 3, 5, 10, 20, 50 and 100 *tugriks*; and coins for 1, 3, 5, 10, 15, 20, 50 *möngö* and 1 *tugrik*. Official exchange rates: £1 = 5.80 *tugriks*; 1 rouble = 4.76 *tugriks*; US\$1 = 3.37 *tugriks*.

**Banking.** The Mongolian State Bank (established 1924) is the sole bank, being at once a bank of issue and a commercial, savings and development bank. It has 21 main branches.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There are 6 thermal electric power stations. Production of electricity, 1986, 2,800m. kwh.

**Minerals.** There are large deposits of copper, nickel, zinc, molybdenum, phosphorites, tin, wolfram and fluorspar; production of the latter in 1984, 747,000 tonnes, entirely exported to the USSR. The copper/molybdenum ore-dressing plant at Erdenet was completed in 1981. Coal reserves are 17,000m. tonnes. Coal accounted for 74.6% of energy production in 1980. There are major coalmines near Ulan Bator and Darkhan. Coal (mainly lignite) production in 1984 was 5.4m. tonnes.

**Agriculture.** 68% of agricultural production derives from cattle-raising. In 1987 there were 2,018,000 horses, 2.48m. cattle, 13,194,000 sheep, 550,000 camels and 4,401,000 goats.

Ownership of livestock (in 1m.) in 1983:

	<i>Collective farms</i>	<i>State farms</i>	<i>Private</i>
Cattle	1.14	0.02	0.98
Camels	0.48	0.01	0.08
Horses	1.11	0.08	0.73
Sheep	10.92	1.04	1.93
Goats	3.55	0.07	0.91

In 1983 there were 45,100 pigs and 240,200 poultry. 230,300 tonnes of meat and 6.5m. litres of fermented mare's milk were produced in 1984. Milk production was 44.7m. litres in 1986. In 1983 there were 255 collective farms, 39 inter-farm associations, 14 fodder supply farms and 51 state farms.

All cultivated land belongs to collective or state farms. The total agricultural area in 1983 was 124.98m. hectares, of which 1.3m. were arable (1.2m. sown) and 12.37m. meadows and pastures. 78.5% of the sown area belongs to state farms, 21.2% to collectives. In 1985 81% was sown to cereals, 17% to fodder and 2% to vegetables. The 1986 crop was 664,000 tonnes of wheat; 1,700 tonnes of rye (1980); 50,000 tonnes of oats; 146,000 tonnes of barley. In 1986, 133,000 tonnes of potatoes were harvested. In 1981 there were 7,500 tractors (15 h.p. units) and 2,000 combine harvesters.

**Forestry.** Forests, chiefly larch, cedar, fir and birch, occupy 156,700 sq. km. Production, 1983: 683,100 cu. metres of timber.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry though still small in scale and local in character, is being vigorously developed and now accounts for a greater share of GNP than agriculture. The food industry accounts for 20% of industrial production. The main industrial centre is Ulan Bator; others are at Erdenet and Baga-Nuur, and a northern territorial industrial complex is being developed based on Darkhan and Erdenet to produce copper and molybdenum concentrates, lime, cement, machinery and wood- and metal-worked products. Production figures (1983): wool, 12,100 tonnes; cement, 165,300 tonnes; leather footwear, 2.2m. pairs; meat, 64,400 tonnes; soap, 10,800 tonnes.

**Employment.** The labour force was 365,000 in 1983, including 82,200 in industry, 41,200 in agriculture, 26,700 in building, 39,700 in transport and communications and 38,900 in trade. In 1983 48.4% of the labour force was female. Average wage was 500 tugriks per month in 1981. Trade union membership was 530,000 in 1988. There is a labour shortage necessitating the employment of military personnel, and workers from the USSR and Eastern Europe.

**Commerce.** Since 1989 enterprizes have been able to trade directly abroad and joint ventures with foreign firms have been permitted. Trade figures for 1983 (in 1m. tugriks): Exports, 1,816; imports, 2,764. Exports in 1988 included 40%

minerals and fuels, 28% food and consumer goods and 20% non-food raw materials. 97% of foreign trade is with communist countries. Main imports are machinery and fuel. Imports from the USSR totalled 1,014.6m. roubles in 1984, exports to the USSR, 387.4m. roubles.

Total trade between Mongolia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,264	4,750	3,847	1,857
Exports and re-exports from UK	142	1,031	941	1,637

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are fewer than 1,000 km of surfaced roads running around Ulan Bator, from Ulan Bator to Darkhan, at points on the frontier with USSR and towards the south. Truck services run where there are no surfaced roads. 30.8m. tonnes of freight were carried in 1983, and 144.9m. passengers.

**Railways.** The Trans-Mongolian Railway (1,423 km in 1983) connects Ulan Bator with the Soviet Union and China. The Moscow-Ulan Bator-Beijing express runs each way once a week. There are spur lines to Erdenet and to the coalmines at Nalaykha and Sharin Gol. A separate line connects Choybalsan in the east with Borzya on the Trans-Siberian railway. 1.9m. passengers and 12m. tonnes of freight were carried in 1983.

**Aviation.** Mongolian Airlines (MIAT) operates internal services, a flight to Irkutsk which links with the Soviet airlines (Aeroflot) stopping service to Moscow, and (with Aeroflot) a daily non-stop service to Moscow from Ulan Bator. A weekly flight to Beijing was inaugurated in 1988. 10,000 tons of freight were carried in 1983 and 500,000 passengers. Ulan Bator airport (Buyant Uhaa) was modernized and expanded in 1985.

**Shipping.** There is a steamer service on the Selenge River and a tug and barge service on Hobsgol Lake. 3,000 tonnes of freight were carried in 1976.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1983, 414 post offices and 264 telephone exchanges. Number of telephones (1983), 44,600.

There are wireless stations at Ulan Bator, Gobi Altai and Olgiy. In 1983 there were 186,600 radio and 70,700 television receivers. Television services began in 1967. A Mongolian television station opened in 1970. Mongolia is a member of the international TV organization Intervision.

**Cinemas.** In 1983 there were 26 cinemas, 493 mobile cinemas and 20 theatres.

**Newspapers and books.** In 1983, 37 newspapers and 39 journals were published. The Party daily paper *Ünen* ('Truth') had a circulation of 112,000 in 1978. 400 book titles were published in 1982 in 70m. copies

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Procurator-General is appointed, and the Supreme Court elected, by the *Khural* for 5 years. There are also courts at province, town and district level. Lay assessors sit with professional judges.

**Religion.** Tibetan Buddhist Lamaism was the prevalent form of religion. It was suppressed in the 1930s, and only one functioning monastery exists today, at Ulan Bator, with about 100 lamas.

**Education.** In 1985 there were 680 nurseries with 62,500 children. Schooling begins at the age of 7. In 1984-85 there were 911 general education schools with 444,000 pupils and 15,900 teachers, 28 specialized secondary schools with 23,000 students and 1,200 teachers and 40 vocational technical schools with 25,000 pupils. There is a state university (founded 1942) at Ulan Bator (40 professors, 240 lecturers and 10,000 students in 1982), and 7 other institutes of higher learning (teacher training, medicine, agriculture, economics, etc.) with 26,000 students in 1983 and 1,400 teachers under the supervision of an Academy of Sciences (founded 1961) which has 15 institutes and 190 research workers. Some 6,000 students a year are sent to study abroad, principally in the USSR.



In 1946 the Mongolian alphabet was replaced by Cyrillic, but its teaching has now been resumed.

**Health and Welfare.** In 1983 68.3m. tugriks were spent on maternity benefits.

Annual average per capita consumption (in kilogrammes) of foodstuffs over 1981–83: Meat, 91.4; milk and products, 147.7; sugar, 21.3; flour, 97.7; potatoes, 17.9; fresh vegetables, 14.5. In 1987 there were 24 doctors and 111 hospital beds per 10,000 population.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Mongolia in Great Britain (7 Kensington Ct., London, W8 5DL)

*Ambassador:* Ishetsogyin Ochirbal.

Of Great Britain in Mongolia (30 Enkh Taivny Gudamzh, Ulan Bator)

*Ambassador:* D. K. Sprague.

Of the USA in Mongolia

*Ambassador:* Richard Williams (accredited 18 Sept. 1988).

Of Mongolia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mangalyn Dugersuren.

### Further Reading

The Central Statistical Office: *National Economy of the MPR, 1924–1984: Anniversary Statistical Collection*. Ulan Bator, 1984

Bawden, C. R., *The Modern History of Mongolia*. London, 1968

Boberg, F., *Mongolian–English, English–Mongolian Dictionary*. 3 vols. Stockholm, 1954–55

Haltod, M. (ed.) *Mongolian–English Dictionary*. Berkeley, Cal., 1961

Jagchid, S. and Hyer, P. *Mongolia's Culture and Society*. Folkestone, 1979

Lattimore, O., *Nationalism and Revolution in Mongolia*. Leiden, 1955.—*Nomads and Commissars*. OUP, 1963

Lörinc, L., *Histoire de la Mongolie des Origines à nos Jours*. Budapest, 1984

*Mongol'skaia Narodnaia Respublika: Spravochnik*. Moscow, 1986

*News from Mongolia*. Ulan Bator, fortnightly, Jan. 1980

Rupen, R. A., *How Mongolia is Really Ruled: A Political History of the Mongolian People's Republic, 1900–1978*. Stanford, 1979

Sanders, A. J. K., *The People's Republic of Mongolia: A General Reference Guide*. OUP, 1968.—*Mongolia: Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1987

Shirendev, B. and Sanjdorj, M. (eds.) *History of the Mongolian People's Republic*. Vol. 3 (vols. 1 and 2 not translated). Harvard Univ. Press, 1976

*Socialist Mongolia*. Ulan Bator, 1981

# MONTSERRAT

*Capital:* Plymouth

*Population:* 11,852 (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$3,127 (1985)

**HISTORY.** Montserrat was discovered by Columbus in 1493 and colonized by Britain in 1632 who brought Irish settlers to the island. Montserrat formed part of the federal colony of the Leeward Islands from 1871 until 1956, when it became a separate colony following the dissolution of the Federation. The island's Constitution came into force in 1960 and the title Administrator was changed to that of Governor in 1971.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Montserrat is situated in the Caribbean Sea 25 miles south-west of Antigua. The area is 39.5 sq. miles (106 sq. km). Population, 1985, 11,852. Chief town, Plymouth, 3,500 inhabitants.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate but with no well-defined rainy season, though July to Dec. shows slightly more rainfall, with the average for the year being about 60" (1,500 mm). Dec. to March is the cooler season while June to Nov. is the hotter season, when hurricanes may occur. Plymouth. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 65" (1,628 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Montserrat is a crown colony. The Executive Council is composed of 4 elected Ministers (the Chief Minister and 3 other Ministers) and 2 civil service officials (Attorney-General and Financial Secretary). The Legislative Council consists of 7 elected and 2 civil service officials (the Attorney-General and Financial Secretary) and 2 nominated members. The Executive Council is presided over by the Governor and the Legislative Council by the Speaker.

In elections to the Legislative Council in 1987, 4 seats were won by the People's Liberation Movement, 2 by the National Development Party and 1 by the Progressive Democratic Party.

*Governor:* C. J. Turner, OBE.

*Chief Minister:* Hon. J. A. Osborne.

*Flag:* The British Blue Ensign with the shield of Montserrat in the fly.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987 the budget expenditure was at EC\$27m. of which EC\$8m. was capital expenditure. In 1981 the territorial budget ceased to be grant-aided by the British Government.

**Currency.** 100 cents = 1 Eastern Caribbean dollar (EC\$). Coins: 1, 2, 5, 25, 50 cents. Notes: 1, 5, 10, 20 and 100 dollars.

**Banking.** There are 6 recognized banks on Montserrat. These are Barclays Bank, the Royal Bank of Canada, The First American Bank, the Government Savings Bank, the Bank of Montserrat and the Montserrat Building Society.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 11.6m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Self-sufficiency in fruit, ground provisions and vegetables though canned and preserved foodstuffs were imported was achieved in 1988. The processing and packaging of tropical fruits and herbal teas for export are being encouraged together with the growing of ornamental plants for export.

Livestock (1987); Cattle, 2,807; pigs, 500; sheep, 6,000; goats, 5,500.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 150 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufacturing contributes about 6% to GDP and accounts for 10% of employment, but is responsible for up to 85% of exports. It is limited to small scale industries producing light consumer goods such as electronic components, plastic bags, leather goods and various items made from locally grown cotton.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1987 totalled EC\$68m.; domestic exports, EC\$8m. Chief imports were manufactured goods, food and beverages, machinery and transport equipment and fuel. Chief exports in 1986 were electronic parts and lighting fittings.

Total trade between Montserrat and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	115	414	358	139	125
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,999	2,330	3,926	2,432	2,524

**Tourism.** In 1987, 28,224 tourists arrived in Montserrat.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 290 km of roads, 212 km paved, 1,217 passenger cars and 215 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** At Blackburne airport 4,656 aircraft landed in 1987, disembarking 28,891 passengers and 85 tonnes of cargo.

**Shipping.** In 1987, 357 cargo vessels arrived, landing 45,067 and loading 663 tonnes of cargo.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1986), 3,738; telex, 33. In 1984 there were 4,000 radio and 1,100 TV receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 2 magistrates' courts, at Plymouth and Cudjoe Head. Strength of the police force (1987), 2 gazetted officers, 3 inspectorate and 89 other ranks.

**Religion.** In 1980 (census) there were 1,368 Roman Catholics, 3,676 Anglicans, 2,742 Methodists, 1,041 Seventh Day Adventists, 1,503 Pentecostals and 285 members of the Church of God. There is also a Christian Council of Churches.

**Education.** There are 9 government and 4 private nursery schools for children up to age 5; 9 government, 2 grant-aided and 3 private primary schools for children between 5-12 years; 1 comprehensive secondary school with 3 campuses and 2 private secondary schools for students 12 years and above. In 1987, 1,403 children were enrolled in the primary schools, with 67 teachers; 984 in the secondary schools, with 71 teachers. There is 1 government owned technical college with 72 students and 12 teachers.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 8 doctors and 67 hospital beds.

## Further Reading

- Population Census 1980.* Montserrat  
*Overseas Trade 1983.* Montserrat Government  
*Vital Statistics Report.* Montserrat Government, 1983  
*Statistical Digest 1984.* Montserrat Government  
 Fergus, H.A., *Montserrat: Emerald Isle of the Caribbean.* London, 1983  
 Library: Public Library, Plymouth. Librarian: Miss Ruth Allen.



# MOROCCO

*Capital:* Rabat

*Population:* 23m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$590 (1986)

## al-Mamlaka al-Maghrebia

**HISTORY.** From 1912 to 1956 Morocco was divided into a French protectorate (established by the treaty of Fez concluded between France and the Sultan on 30 March 1912), a Spanish protectorate (established by the Franco-Spanish convention of 27 Nov. 1912) and the international zone of Tangier (set up by France, Spain and Great Britain on 18 Dec. 1923).

On 2 March 1956 France and the Sultan terminated the treaty of Fez; on 7 April 1956 Spain relinquished her protectorate, and on 29 Oct. 1956 France, Spain, Great Britain, Italy, USA, Belgium, the Netherlands, Sweden and Portugal abolished the international status of the Tangier Zone. The northern strip of Spanish Sahara was ceded by Spain on 10 April 1958, and on 30 June 1969 the former Spanish province of Ifni was returned to Morocco.

A tripartite agreement was announced on 14 Nov. 1975 providing for the transfer of power from Spanish Sahara (Western Sahara) to the Moroccan and Mauritanian governments on 28 Feb. 1976. Spanish troops left El Aaiún on 20 Dec. 1975. On 14 April 1976 a Convention was signed by Mauritania and Morocco in which the 2 countries agreed to partition the former Spanish territory, but on 14 Aug. 1979 Mauritania renounced its claim to its share of the territory (Tiris El-Gharbiya) which was added by Morocco to its area.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Morocco is bounded by Algeria to the east and south-east, Western Sahara to the south-west, the Atlantic ocean to the north-west and the Mediterranean to the north. Excluding the Western Saharan territory claimed and occupied since 1976 by Morocco, the total area is 458,730 sq. km and its total population at the Sept. 1982 census was 20,255,687; the latest estimate (1987) is 23,557,000.

The areas (in sq. km) and populations (census 1982) of the provinces are:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1982</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1982</i>
Agadir	5,910	579,741	Nador	6,130	593,255
Taroudant	16,460	558,501	Ouarzazate	41,550	533,892
Al-Hoceima	3,550	311,298	Oujda	20,700	780,762
Azilal	10,050	387,115	Rabat-Salé <sup>1</sup>	1,275	1,020,001
Beni Mellal	7,075	668,703	Safi	7,285	706,618
Ben Slimane	2,760	174,464	Settat	9,750	692,359
Boulemane	14,395	131,470	Tangier	1,195	436,227
Casablanca-Anfa <sup>1</sup>	1,615	923,630	Tan-Tan	17,295	47,040
Aïn Chok-Hay Hassani <sup>1</sup>		298,376	Taounate	5,585	535,972
Ben Msik-Sidi Othmane <sup>1</sup>		639,558	Tata	25,925	99,950
Hay Mohamed-Aïn Sebâa <sup>1</sup>		421,272	Taza	15,020	613,485
Mohamedia-Znata <sup>1</sup>		153,828	Tétouan	6,025	704,205
Chechaouën	4,350	309,024	Tiznit	6,960	313,140
El Jadida	6,000	763,351			
El Kelâa-Srarhna	10,070	577,595	Morocco	458,730	20,255,687
Er Rachidia	59,585	421,207			
Es Saouira	6,335	393,683	Boujdour		
Fez	5,400	805,464	(Bojador)	100,120	8,481
Figuig	55,990	101,359	Es Semara		
Guelmim	28,750	128,676	(Smara)	61,760	20,480
Kénitra	4,745	715,967	Laâyoune		
Sidi Kacem	4,060	514,127	(Al Aaiún)	39,360	113,411
Khémisset	8,305	405,836	Oued Ed		
Khénifra	12,320	363,716	Dahab	50,880	21,496
Khouribga	4,250	437,002			
Marrakesh	14,755	1,266,695	Sahara	252,120	163,868
Meknès	3,995	626,868			
Ifrane	3,310	100,255			

<sup>1</sup> Urban prefectures

The chief cities (with Census populations, 1982) are as follows:

Casablanca	2,139,204	Tangier	266,346	Agadir	110,479
Rabat	518,616	Oujda	260,082	Mohammedia	105,120
Fez	448,823	Tétouan	199,615	Beni Mellal	95,003
Marrakesh	439,728	Safi	197,616	Al Jadida	81,455
Meknès	319,783	Kénitra	188,194	Taza	77,216
Salé	289,391	Khouribga	127,181	Ksar al Kabir	73,541

The official language is Arabic, spoken by 75% of the population; the remainder speak Berber. French and Spanish are considered subsidiary languages.

**CLIMATE.** The climate ranges from semi-arid in the south to warm temperate Mediterranean conditions in the north, but cooler temperatures occur in the mountains. Rabat. Jan. 55°F (12.9°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 23'' (564 mm). Agadir. Jan. 57°F (13.9°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 9'' (224 mm). Casablanca. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 16'' (404 mm). Marrakesh. Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 10'' (239 mm). Tangier. Jan. 53°F (11.7°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 36'' (897 mm).

**REIGNING KING.** **Hassan II**, born on 9 July 1929, succeeded on 3 March 1961, on the death of his father Mohammed V, who reigned 1927–61. The royal style was changed from 'His Sherifian Majesty the Sultan' to 'His Majesty the King' on 18 Aug. 1957. *Heir apparent:* Crown Prince Sidi Mohammed, born 21 Aug. 1963.

The King holds supreme civil and religious authority; the latter in his capacity of Emir-el-Muminin or Commander of the Faithful. He resides usually at Rabat, but occasionally in one of the other traditional capitals, Fez (founded in 808), Marrakesh (founded in 1062), or at Skhirat.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was approved by referendum in March 1972 and amendments were approved by referendum in May 1980. The Kingdom of Morocco is a constitutional monarchy with a legislature of a single chamber composed of 306 deputies. Deputies for 102 seats are elected by indirect vote through an electoral college representing the town councils, the regional assemblies, the chambers of commerce, industry and agriculture, and the trade unions. Deputies for the remaining 204 seats are by general election. The King, as sovereign head of State, appoints the Prime Minister and other Ministers, has the right to dissolve Parliament and approves legislation.

In the General Elections held on 14 Sept. 1984, the new *Union constitutionnelle* (founded Jan. 1983) won 83 seats, the *Rassemblement nationale des indépendants* 61 seats, the *Union socialiste des forces populaires* 36 seats, the *Mouvement populaire* 47 seats, *Istiqlal* (Independence) 41 seats; others 38 seats.

*National flag:* Red, with a green pentacle star in the centre.

The cabinet in 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* N. Azzeddine Laraki.

*Justice:* Moulay Mustapha Belarbi Alaoui. *Interior:* Driss Basri. *Foreign Affairs, Co-operation and Information:* Abdellatif Filali. *Planning:* Rachid Ghazouani. *National Education:* Mohamed Hilali. *Economic Affairs:* Moulay Zine Zahidi. *Finance:* Abdellatif Jouahri. *Trade, Industry and Tourism:* Abdallah al-Azmani. *Handicrafts and Social Affairs:* Mohamed Labied. *Transport:* Mohamed Bouamoud. *Energy and Mining:* Mohamed Fettah. *Health:* Tayeb Bencheikh. *Maritime Fishing and Merchant Navy:* Bensalem Smili. *Secretary-General of the Government:* Abbas Kaissi. *Cultural Affairs:* Mohamed Benaissa. *Housing and Land Management:* Abderrahmane Boufettas. *Equipment, Executive and Professional Training:* Mohamed Kabbaj. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Mohand Laensar. *Agriculture and Land Reform:* Otman Demnati. *Relations with Parliament:* Tahar Afifi. *Youth and Sports:* Abdellatif Semlali. *Labour:* Hassan Abbadi. *Islamic Affairs:* Abdelkbar Alaoui Medaghri. *Administrative Affairs:* Abderrahim

Ben Abdeljalil. *Saharan Province*: Khali H. Ould Rachid. *Relations with the European Community*: Azzedine Guessous. There was 1 Minister of State.

*Local Government*: The country is administratively divided into 39 provinces and 8 urban prefectures.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is compulsory for 18 months.

**Army.** The Army comprises 1 mechanized infantry, 2 motorized infantry, 1 light security, 2 parachute brigades and 1 anti-aircraft group; 4 mechanized infantry regiments; 9 artillery groups; 7 armoured, 1 Royal Guard, 3 camel corps, 3 desert cavalry, 1 mountain, 4 commando and 17 engineer battalions; and 7 armoured car squadrons. Equipment includes 173 M-48A5 main battle tanks, 50 light tanks and 1,400 armoured cars. Strength (1989) 170,000 men. There are also 35,000 paramilitary troops.

**Navy.** Navy includes 1 modern missile-armed light frigate, 4 new missile armed large patrol vessels or small corvettes, 2 modern fast attack (corvette size) gunboats, 1 ex-coastal minesweeper used for patrol duties, 1 patrol vessel, 1 gunboat, 1 sea-ward patrol craft, 9 coastal patrol boats, 4 landing craft acquired from France and 2 logistic support vessels. Six corvettes of new design have been ordered. There were also 13 small customs cutters and 24 more building. Personnel in 1989, 6,000 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** The Air Force was formed in Nov. 1956. Equipment in current use is mainly of US and West European origin. It includes 40 Mirage F1s, a total of 25 F-5A/B/E/F fighter-bombers and RF-5A reconnaissance-fighters, 3 OV-10 Bronco counter-insurgency aircraft, 2 Falcon 20s for electronic warfare, and 24 Gazelle armed helicopters, 24 Alpha Jet advanced trainers, 22 Magister armed jet basic trainers, 12 T-34C-1 turboprop basic trainers, 10 Swiss-built Bravo primary trainers, 2 Mudry CAP 10B aerobatic trainers, 4 Broussard liaison aircraft, 85 Agusta-Bell 205 and 212, Puma and JetRanger helicopters, 2 Do 28D Skyservants for coastal patrol, 11 CH-47C heavy-lift helicopters, 20 C-130H turboprop transport aircraft, 2 KC-130H tanker/transport, a Falcon 50 and a Gulfstream II VIP transport, 2 Boeing 707s and 8 turboprop King Air light transports. Personnel strength (1989) about 15,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Morocco is a member of UN, the Non-Aligned Movement, the Islamic Conference and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1986 envisaged revenue of 51,100m. DH and expenditure of 59,700m. DH.

**Debt.** In April 1985 foreign debt was estimated at US\$12,500m. (£9,800m.).

**Currency.** In Oct. 1959, a national currency was introduced. Its unit is the *dirham* (abbreviated DH), equalling 100 *centimes*. Notes: 10, 50, 100 DH; coins: 0.10, 0.20, 0.50, 1 DH. The exchange rate in March 1989 was £1 sterling = 14.30 DH; US\$1 = 8.31 DH.

**Banking.** The central bank is the Banque al Maghrib. Authorized banks are: La Banque Marocaine du Commerce Extérieur, La Banque Marocaine pour le Commerce et l'Industrie, La Banque Commerciale du Maroc, Compagnie Marocaine du Crédit et de Banque, Société Générale Marocaine de Banque, Crédit du Maroc, Union Marocaine de Banque, Société de dépôt et de crédits, Arab Bank Ltd, Bank of America, Banco Español en Maruecos, Banque de Paris et des Pays-Bas, First National City Bank, Société Hollandaise de Banque et de Gestion, The British Bank of the Middle East, Société de Dépôt et de Crédits, Wafabank, Citibank, Algemene Bank Nederland and Banque Américano-Suisse pour le Maroc. The Banque Centrale Populaire and regional Banques populaires also provide



banking services for small and medium businesses. There are 3 development banks: Banque Nationale du Développement Economique, whose major area of investment has been industry; Crédit Industriel et Hôtelier, which finances housing on easy terms; Caisse Nationale du Crédit Agricole, which specializes in agriculture. La Banque Nationale pour le Développement économique grants loans to the industrial sector. Le Crédit Immobilier et Hôtelier grants loans for construction. La Caisse de Dépôt et de Gestion is responsible for the centralization of savings and their management.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures is the sole legal system.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power-plants produced 6,920m. kwh. in 1986. Supply 110, 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude oil production, 17,500 tonnes 1981. Refined oil production (including imported crude), 4.5m. tonnes in 1983.

**Minerals.** The principal mineral exploited is phosphate, the output of which was 21.4m. tonnes in 1986. Other important minerals (in tonnes, 1985) are: Anthracite (774,500), iron ore (190,258), lead (153,636), copper (59,245), zinc (27,153), manganese (43,690), baryte (463,380), fluorine (74,350), salt (118,173).

**Agriculture.** Land suitable for cultivation, 1984, 7.7m. hectares, of which (in 1,000 hectares): Cereals, 4,500; leguminous vegetables, 400; market gardening, 150; oil-producing and industrial cultivation, 130; fodder, 110; dense fruit plantations, 400; fallows, 2,000.

Production in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat, 3,809; barley, 3,563; maize, 307; fruit, 1,725 (of which citrus fruits, 1,224); pulses, 393; sunflower seeds, 21; ground-nuts, 36; sugar beets, 2,500; sugar-cane, 790; olives, 330; potatoes, 56; tomatoes, 400; onions, 260.

Dairy production in 1986 included: Milk, 910,000 tonnes; butter, 13,723 tonnes; cheese, 6,396 tonnes. Meat production (1986) 327,000 tonnes.

Livestock (in 1,000 heads), 1987: Cattle, 2,850; sheep, 15,000; goats, 5,300.

**Forestry.** Forests cover 5m. hectares (8% of land area) and employed (1984) 50,000. They produce mainly firewood, building and industrial timber, some cork and charcoal.

**Fisheries.** The industry employed 83,000 workers in 1987. Total catch in 1986 was 591,000 tonnes, value 2,442,404,000 DH. The value of fish exports in 1986 was 2,860,552,000 DH.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1984 industry represented 14% of the GNP. Manufacturing industries are concentrated in Casablanca (metallurgy, car assembly, sugar-producing and pharmaceutical products), Fez, Rabat, Mohammadia (textile), Safi (chemicals, manure, fish treatment) and Agadir (fish treatment, canning factories). There are 8 cement factories, with an output of 3,848,200 tonnes in 1983, when self-sufficiency was achieved.

The agricultural and food industries produce 40% of the whole industrial output. The sugar industry meets 76% of the country's needs and produced 426,800 tonnes of crude sugar in 1983.

**Trade Unions.** In 1984 there were 8 trade unions.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports were (in US\$1m.):

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	3,530	3,880	3,750	3,800
Exports	2,030	2,150	2,160	2,500

Exports (1986) of phosphates 13.7m. tonnes, value DH3,840m.

Exports in 1985 went mainly to France (24%), Spain (7%), Federal Republic of

Germany (7%), Italy (6%) and UK (3%). Imports were mainly from France (25%), Spain (14%), Federal Republic of Germany (8%), Italy (6%) and UK (3%).

Total trade between Morocco and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	79,738	74,820	65,419	61,108	78,896
Exports and re-exports from UK	79,850	92,658	84,510	94,487	79,017

**Tourism.** In 1986, 1.47m. visitors came to Morocco, spending (1985) DH6,200m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1983 there were 57,592 km of classified roads, of which 19,099 km were surfaced. A motorway links Rabat to Casablanca. At the end of 1981 there were in use 207,370 lorries, 445,000 private cars and 18,424 motor cycles.

**Railways.** In 1987 there were 1,893 km of railways, of which 974 km were electrified. The principal standard-gauge lines are from Casablanca eastward to the Algerian border, forming part of the continuous rail line to Tunis; Casablanca to Marrakesh with 2 important branches, one eastward to Oued Zem tapping the Khouribga phosphate mines, the other westward to the port of Safi. Another branch serves the manganese mines at Bou Arfa. Two new double-track electrified lines are to serve a new deep-water port at Jorf Lasfar.

In 1987 the railways carried 2,069m. passenger-km and 4,726 tonne-km.

**Aviation.** There are 15 international airports as well as national airports. The most important, Mohamed V airport in Casablanca, handled 18,154 flights with 1,367,548 passengers and 24,968.8 tonnes of freight including mail in 1983. Total flights, 1983, 44,606 with 3,176,648 passengers and 29,882.7 tonnes of freight including mail.

**Shipping.** In 1983, 17,555 vessels entered and cleared the ports of Morocco and 19,393,000 tonnes of merchandise, including 13,891,500 tonnes of phosphate, were loaded and 11,260,000 tonnes unloaded.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 359 post offices. Telephone subscribers totalled 265,672 in 1983.

There are broadcasts in Arabic, Berber, French, Spanish and English from Rabat and Tangier; television in Arabic and French began in 1962. In 1984 there were 2.5m. radio receivers and in 1983 1,044,895 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** There were about 235 cinemas in 1971.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there were 12 daily newspapers (7 Arabic, 5 French) and 18 main weeklies and monthlies (10 Arabic, 8 French).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A uniform legal system is being organized, based mainly on French and Islamic law codes and French legal procedure. The judiciary consists of a Supreme Court, courts of appeal, regional tribunals and magistrates' courts.

**Religion.** Islam is the established state religion. 98% are Sunni Moslems of the Malekite school and 2% are Christians, mainly Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1959 a standardization of the various school systems (French, Spanish, Israeli, Moslem, etc.) was begun. Education is compulsory from the age of 7 to 13.

In 1984 there were 2,550,000 pupils and 75,094 teachers in 3,144 state primary schools; 1,050,000 pupils and 51,711 teachers in secondary schools; 10,020 (1981) students in technical schools and 16,148 (1981) students in teacher-training establishments.

The language of instruction in primary and secondary schools is Arabic. Some scientific courses were (1985) still taught in French.

Professional and vocational colleges had 6,942 students in 1983. There were 30,000 students abroad.

There are six universities, Mohamed V at Rabat, Hassan II at Casablanca, Mohamed Ben Abdallah at Fez, Quaraouyne at Fez, Mohamed I at Oujda and Cadi Ayyad at Marrakesh with a total enrolment of 99,637 students and 3,146 teaching staff in 1984.

**Health.** In the public sector, 1984, there were 1,048 medical centres and dispensaries, 5,258 doctors, 63 chemists and 4,424 (1983) registered nurses. In the private sector, 1984, there were 1,971 doctors, 6,713 (1983) chemists and 709 registered nurses. There were 14,847 qualified nurses in 1983.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Morocco in Great Britain (49 Queen's Gate Gdns., London, SW7 5NE)  
*Ambassador:* Abdeslam Zenined, GCVO.

Of Great Britain in Morocco (17 Blvd de la Tour Hassan, Rabat)  
*Ambassador:* J. W. R. Shakespeare, CMG, LVO.

Of Morocco in the USA (1601 21st St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)  
*Ambassador:* M'hamed Bargach.

Of the USA in Morocco (2 Ave. de Marrakech, Rabat)  
*Ambassador:* Thomas A. Nassif.

Of Morocco to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Driss Slaoui.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Service Central des Statistiques (BP 178, Rabat) was established in 1942. Its publications include: *Annuaire de Statistique Générale.—La Conjoncture Économique Marocaine* (monthly; with annual synthesis).—*Bulletin économique et social du Maroc* (trimestral)

*Bulletin Officiel* (in Arabic and French). Rabat. Weekly

Findlay, A. M. and A. M. and Lawless, R. I., *Morocco*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Kinross, Lord and Hales-Gary, D., *Morocco*. London, 1971

*National Library:* Bibliothèque Générale et Archives, Rabat.



# MOZAMBIQUE

## República Popular de Moçambique

*Capital:* Maputo

*Population:* 14.9m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$90 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Trading settlements were established by Arab merchants at Sofala (Beira), Quelimane, Angoche and Mozambique Island in the fifteenth century. Mozambique Island was visited by Vasco da Gamba's fleet on 2 March 1498, and Sofala was occupied by Portuguese in 1506. At first ruled as part of Portuguese India, a separate administration was created in 1752, and on 11 June 1951 Mozambique became an Overseas Province of Portugal. Following a decade of guerrilla activity, Portugal and the nationalists jointly established a transitional government on 20 Sept. 1974. Independence was achieved on 25 June 1975. In March 1984 the Republic of South Africa and Mozambique signed a non-aggression pact.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mozambique is bounded east by the Indian ocean, south by South Africa, south-west by Swaziland, west by South Africa and Zimbabwe and north by Zambia, Malaŵi and Tanzania. It has an area of 799,380 sq. km (308,642 sq. miles) and a population, according to the census of 1980, of 11,673,725. Estimate (1988) 14,907,000 of whom (1986) 882,814 lived in the capital, Maputo. Other chief cities are Beira (1986 population, 269,700) and Nampula (182,553). The areas, populations and capitals of the provinces are:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Estimate 1987</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Cabo Delgado	82,625	940,000	1,109,921	Pemba
Niassa	129,056	514,100	607,670	Lichinga
Nampula	81,606	2,402,700	2,837,856	Nampula
Zambézia	105,008	2,500,200	2,952,251	Quelimane
Tete	100,724	831,000	981,319	Tete
Manica	61,661	641,200	756,886	Chimoio
Sofala	68,018	1,065,200	1,257,710	Beira
Inhambane	68,615	997,600	1,167,022	Inhambane
Gaza	75,709	990,900	1,138,724	Xaixai
Province of Maputo	25,756	491,800	544,692	Maputo
City of Maputo	602	755,300	1,006,765	

The main ethnolinguistic groups are the Makua/Lomwe (52% of the population), mainly in the 4 provinces in the north, the Malaŵi (12%), Shona (6%) and Yao (3%) in Tete, Manica and Sofala, and the Thonga (24%) in the 3 provinces in the south. Portuguese remains the official language, but Swahili serves as a lingua franca north of the Zambézi.

**CLIMATE.** A humid tropical climate, with a dry season from June to Sept. In general, temperatures and rainfall decrease from north to south. Maputo. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 65°F (18.3°C). Annual rainfall 30" (760 mm). Beira. Jan. 82°F (27.8°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 60" (1,522 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution adopted at independence on 25 June 1975, the directing power of the state is vested in the *Frente de Libertação de Moçambique* (FRELIMO), the liberation movement, which in Feb. 1977 was reconstituted as sole political Party. A new Constitution was under discussion in 1987. The legislative organ is the People's Assembly of 250 members, elected in Dec. 1986.

The Council of Ministers in Jan. 1988 consisted of:

*President, and Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces:* Joaquim Alberto Chissano.

*Prime Minister and Planning:* Mário da Graça Machungo.

*Foreign Affairs:* Pascoal Mocumbi. *Defence:* Alberto Joaquim Chipande. *Deputy Minister of Defence, Chief of Staff of the Armed Forces:* Antonio Hama Thai. *Co-operation:* Jacinto Veloso. *Minister in the Presidency:* Feliciano Gundana. *Minister in the Presidency for State Administration:* José Oscar Monteiro. *Security:* Mariano de Araújo Matsinhe. *Health:* Fernando Everard do Rosario Vaz. *Education:* Graça Machel. *Interior:* Manuel António. *Finance:* Abdul Magid Osman. *Construction and Water:* João Salomão. *Trade:* Manuel Aranda da Silva. *Agriculture:* João Ferreira. *Transport and Communications:* Armando Emílio Guebuza. *Industry and Energy:* António José Lima Rodrigues Branco. *Justice:* Ali Ossumane Dauto. *Information:* Teodato Hunguana. *Mineral Resources:* John Kachamila. *Labour:* Aguiar Real Mazula. *Culture:* Luis Bernardo Honwana.

There are 14 Deputy Ministers and 11 Secretaries of State.

*National flag:* Horizontally green, black, yellow with the black fimbriated in white; a red triangle based on the hoist, charged with a yellow star surmounted by an open white book and a crossed rifle and hoe in black.

*Local Government.* The capital of Maputo and 10 provinces, each under a Governor who is automatically a member of the Council of Ministers, are sub-divided into 112 districts.

**DEFENCE.** Selective conscription for 2 years is in force.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 tank brigade and 7 infantry brigades, 2 independent mechanized and 7 anti-aircraft artillery battalions. Equipment includes T-34/-54/-55 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 35,000. There are also 9,500 Border Guards and various militias.

**Navy.** The small flotilla comprises 4 Indian-built (Goa) patrol craft, 2 *ex*-Soviet anti-submarine vessels, 6 former Portuguese coastal patrol boats, 6 *ex*-Soviet gunboats, 4 *ex*-Netherlands patrol craft, 10 Goa-built inshore patrol boats and 2 *ex*-Portuguese minor landing craft. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 700 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is reported to have about 20 MiG-17 and 30 MiG-21 fighters, probably flown by Cuban pilots, An-26 turboprop transports, and a few C-47 piston-engined transports. About 6 Mi-24 armed helicopters and 10 Mi-8 transport helicopters, a small number of L-39 jet trainers, Zlin 326 primary trainers and a few *ex*-Portuguese Air Force Alouette liaison helicopters. Personnel (1989) 1,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Mozambique is a member of UN, OAU, SADCC and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Economic Recovery Programme (1987-90) aims to stimulate production and to restore the real value of wages and earnings as an incentive to productivity in industry and agriculture.

**Budget.** In 1987 the revenue was US\$277.87m.; expenditure, US\$427.91m. Foreign debt (1986) US\$3,200m.

**Currency.** In June 1980 the currency became the *metical* (pl. *meticais*) divided into 100 *centavos*. The *metical* was established at par with the former *escudo*. In March 1989, £1 = 1,155 *meticais*; US\$1 = 671 *meticais*.

**Banking.** Most banks had been nationalized by 1979. The *Banco de Moçambique* (bank of issue) and the *Banco Popular de Desenvolvimento* (state investment bank) each have a capital of 1,000m. *meticais*.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 1,640m. kwh. Capacity (1986) 2,225,000 kw. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz. The hydro-electric dam at Cabora Bassa on the Zambezi is the largest producer in Africa.

**Minerals.** Coal is the main mineral being exploited. Output was 380,000 tonnes in 1983. Coal reserves (estimate) 400m. tonnes. Small quantities of bauxite, gold, titanium, fluorite and colombo-tantalite are produced. Iron ore deposits and natural gas are known to exist.

**Agriculture.** Production in tonnes (1986): Cereals, 610,000; tea, 15,000; maize, 350,000; bananas, 75,000; sisal, 3,000; rice, 60,000; groundnuts, 65,000; copra, 67,000; vegetables, 191,000; citrus, 42,000; potatoes, 65,000; cashews, 30,000; sunflower seed, 20,000; cotton (lint), 17,000; sugar, 26,000.

Livestock 1987: 1.35m. cattle, 370,000 goats, 117,000 sheep, 155,000 pigs, 20,000 asses.

**Forestry.** Forests represent 20% of land area. Production (1985) 35,000 cu. metres of cut timber.

**Fisheries.** In 1984 the prawn catch was 5,800 tonnes; other fish 11,700 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Although the country is overwhelmingly rural, there is some substantial industry in and around Maputo (steel, engineering, textiles, processing, docks and railways).

**Commerce.** Imports in 1987 totalled US\$645m. and exports US\$96m. In 1986 12% of imports came from the USSR, 12% from the Republic of South Africa and 12% from the USA. 21% of exports were to Spain, 22% to the USA and 23% to Japan. Shrimps made up 48% of exports; cashews, 12%; sugar, 10%; copra, 3% and petroleum products, 5%.

Total trade between Mozambique and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	8,549	6,908	1,335	6,580	5,574
Exports and re-exports from UK	15,671	11,343	13,175	21,168	24,218

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1984, 20,000 km of roads, of which 5,000 km were tarred. Motor vehicles, in 1980, included 99,400 passenger cars and 24,700 lorries and buses. The Government is devoting effort to constructing a new North/South road link, and to improving provincial rural feeder road systems.

**Railways.** The Mozambique State Railways consist of 5 independent networks known as the Maputo, Mozambique, Sofala (Beira), Inhambane and Gaza, and Quelimane systems. The Maputo system has a link at Komatipoort with the Republic of South Africa, Swaziland and Zimbabwe railways; the Sofala system links with Zimbabwe at Machipanda (near Umtali); and the Mozambique system links with Malaŵi at Entre Lagos. Total route-km (1986), 2,988 km (1,067 mm gauge), and 143 km (762 mm gauge). In 1986, 6.8m. passengers and 301m. tonne-km of goods were carried.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Maputo, Beira and Nampula with regular services to European and Southern African destination by several foreign airlines and by *Linhas Aéreas de Moçambique*, who also serve 13 domestic airports.

**Shipping.** The total tonnage handled by Mozambique ports (1981) was 9.12m. The principal ports are Maputo, Beira, Nacala and Quelimane.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Maputo is connected by telegraph with the Transvaal system. Quelimane has telegraphic communication with Chiromo. Number of telephones (1982), 56,305.



**Radio Moçambique** broadcasts 5 programmes in Portuguese, English, Afrikaans, Ronga and Shangane as well as 4 regional programmes in 8 languages. Number of receivers (1986): Radio, 500,000; TV, 20,000.

**Cinemas.** There were, in 1971, 31 cinemas with a seating capacity of 20,195.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 2 daily newspapers in Mozambique: *Noticias*, published in Maputo (circulation, 45,000), and *Diario de Mozambique* in Beira (15,000).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A system of People's Courts exists at all levels.

**Religion.** About 60% of the population follow traditional animist religions, while some 18% are Christian (mainly Roman Catholic) and 16% Moslem.

**Education.** In 1985 there were 1,251,391 pupils in 4,382 primary schools and 144,012 in 208 secondary schools. The *Universidade Eduardo Mondlane* had 2,500 students in 1985. Literacy rate (1986) 30%.

**Health.** There were (1985) 258 hospitals and medical centres with 12,472 beds; there were 317 doctors, 871 midwives and 2,590 nursing personnel. In 1980 there were 96 dentists and 8 pharmacists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Mozambique in Great Britain (159 New Bond St., London W1Y 9PA)  
*Ambassador:* Armado Alexandre Panguene.

Of Great Britain in Mozambique (Ave. Vladimir I Lenine 310, Maputo)  
*Ambassador:* J. N. Allan, CMG, CBE.

Of Mozambique in the USA (1990 M. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)  
*Ambassador:* Valeriano Ferrao.

Of the USA in Mozambique (35 Rua Da Mesquita, Maputo)  
*Chargé d'Affaires:* Michael E. Ranneberger.

Of Mozambique to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Manuel dos Santos.

## Further Reading

- Darch, C., *Mozambique*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987  
 Hanlon, J., *Mozambique: The Revolution under Fire*. London, 1984  
 Henriksen, T. H., *Mozambique: A History*. London and Cape Town, 1978  
 Houser, G. and Shore, H., *Mozambique: Dream the Size of Freedom*. New York, 1975  
 Isaacman, A., *A Luta Continua: Building a New Society in Mozambique*. New York, 1978.  
 — *Mozambique: From Colonization to Revolution, 1900–1982*. Aldershot and Boulder, 1984  
 Mondlane, E., *The Struggle for Mozambique*. London, 1983  
 Munslow, B., *Mozambique: The Revolution and its Origins*. London and New York, 1983

# NAMIBIA

*Capital:* Windhoek

*Population:* 1.29m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,020 (1986)

## Suidwes-Afrika— South West Africa

**HISTORY.** Britain annexed Walvis Bay in 1878, and incorporated it in the Cape of Good Hope in 1884. In 1884 South West Africa was declared a German protectorate. In 1915 the Union of South Africa occupied German South West Africa at the request of the Allied powers. On 17 Dec. 1920 the League of Nations entrusted South West Africa as a Mandate to the Union of South Africa, to be administered under the laws of the mandatory power. After World War II South Africa refused to place the territory under the UN Trusteeship system, and formally applied for its annexation to the Union. On 18 July 1966 the International Court of Justice decided that Ethiopia and Liberia had no legal right in applying for a decision on the international status of South West Africa, but in Oct. 1966 the General Assembly of the UN terminated South Africa's mandate, and established a UN Council for South West Africa in May 1967. However, South Africa continued to administer the territory, in defiance of various UN resolutions. It speeded up the implementation of the Odendaal Plan (1964), which required massive development aid and the formation of enlarged homelands for the various ethnic groups. In June 1968 the UN changed the name of the territory to Namibia. In 1971 the International Court of Justice ruled in an advisory opinion that South Africa's presence in Namibia was illegal. In Dec. 1973 the UN appointed a UN Commissioner for Namibia.

After negotiations between South Africa and the UN, a multi-racial Advisory Council was appointed in 1973. Representatives of all the population groups assembled in the Turnhalle in Windhoek for the Constitutional Conference, which on 17 Aug. 1976 decided that a multi-racial interim government was to be formed by early 1977, and that the country should become independent by 31 Dec. 1978. This interim government was rejected by the Western Five, (USA, Britain, Federal Republic of Germany, France and Canada), after which South Africa agreed to universal suffrage elections. An Administrator-General was appointed in Sept. 1977 to govern the territory until independence, and he quickly moved to abolish all laws based on racial discrimination – a precondition for elections. In April 1978 South Africa accepted a plan for UN-supervised elections leading to independence, which was endorsed in UN Security Council Resolution 435 of 27 July 1978. After the final plans for the UN-supervised elections were published, South Africa announced on 20 Sept. 1978 that it was going ahead with internally sponsored elections for a Constituent Assembly. In the elections held on 4-8 Dec. 1978 the Democratic Turnhalle Alliance (DTA) gained 41 of the 50 seats in a percentage poll of 82%, in spite of the fact that the South West Africa People's Organisation (SWAPO) instructed its members not to take part in the elections.

A 12-member Ministers' Council was instituted, and in Sept. 1981 it was enlarged to 15 members and given executive authority on all matters except constitutional issues, security and foreign affairs. On 11-13 Nov. 1980 elections were held for the second-tier Representative Authorities, which each control certain administrative functions for a specific ethnic group, but no specific geographical area. In Jan. 1983 the Ministers' Council and the National Assembly were dissolved and executive and legislative powers reverted to the Administrator-General.

On 13 Sept. 1983 the Multi-Party Conference (MPC) was formed. In May 1984 talks were held in Lusaka between the MPC and SWAPO, which were followed in July 1984 by talks between the Administrator-General and SWAPO. SWAPO

was again invited to take part in constitutional talks with the MPC, but again refused. The MPC then petitioned the Republic of South Africa for a form of self-government for Namibia, and on 17 June 1985 the Transitional Government of National Unity was installed, consisting of the six political groups in the MPC. Negotiations began again in May and July 1988 between Angola, Cuba and the Republic of South Africa. A peaceful settlement was agreed and the Geneva Protocol was signed on 5 Aug. 1988. In Dec. it was agreed that Cuban troops should withdraw from Angola and South African troops from Namibia by 1 April 1989.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area of the Territory, including the Caprivi-Zipfel, is 318,261 sq. miles (824,269 sq. km); this figure includes that of the enclave of Walvis Bay, administered by the Republic of South Africa, 434 sq. miles (1,124 sq. km).

The country is bounded on the north by Angola and Zambia, on the west by the Atlantic ocean, on the south and south-east by South Africa and on the east by Botswana. The Caprivi Strip, about 300 km long, extends eastwards up to the Zambezi river, projecting into Zambia and Botswana and touching Zimbabwe. The rainfall increases steadily from less than 50 mm. in the west and south-west up to 600 mm. in the Caprivi Strip.

The Kunene River and the Okavango, which form portions of the northern border of the country, the Zambesi, which forms the eastern boundary of the Caprivi-Zipfel, the Kwando or Mashi, which flows through the Caprivi-Zipfel from the north between the Okavango and the Zambesi, and the Orange River in the south, are the only permanently running streams. But there is a system of great, sandy, dry river-beds throughout the country, in which water can generally be obtained by sinking shallow wells. In the Grootfontein area there are large supplies of underground water, but except for a few springs, mostly hot, there is no surface water in the country.

The population at the censuses in 1970 and 1981 and estimates 1988, were:

	1970	1981	1988
Ovambos	342,455	506,114	641,000
Whites	90,658	76,430	82,000
Damaras	64,973	76,179	97,000
Hereros	55,670	76,296	97,000
Namas	32,853	48,541	62,000
Kavangos	49,577	95,055	120,000
Caprivians	25,009	38,594	48,000
Coloureds	28,275	42,254	52,000
Basters	16,474	25,181	32,000
Bushmen	21,909	29,443	37,000
Tswanas	4,407	6,706	8,000
Other	...	12,403	12,000
	732,260	1,033,196	1,288,000

The capital is Windhoek (population 114,500, estimate 1988). Other large towns: Swakopmund, 15,500; Rehoboth, 15,000; Rundu, 15,000; Keetmanshoop, 14,000; Tsumeb, 13,500; Otjiwarongo, 11,000.

English and Afrikaans are the official languages.

**ADMINISTRATION AND GOVERNMENT.** For history of the administration from 1949–1985 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK 1986–87 p. 1087. Legislative authority is the National Assembly in Windhoek consisting of 62 members nominated by the six political groups represented in the Transitional Government of National Unity; 22 members for the Democratic Turnhalle Alliance, which consists of 11 parties, and 8 members for each of the other parties; the Labour Party (LP), the National Party (NP), the Rehoboth Free Democratic Party (RFDP), the South West Africa National Union (SWANU), and the SWAPO-Democrats (SWAPO-D).

Included in the National Assembly is a Cabinet of eight Ministers and eight



Deputy Ministers (three Ministers from the DTA and one each from the other parties), which have full executive authority except for matters regarding foreign affairs and defence (retained by the Republic of South Africa) and constitutional development (which is handled by the Constitutional Council). Chairmanship of the Cabinet rotates three-monthly on an alphabetical basis. The Administrator-General remains in the country as representative of the South African government, with mainly a ceremonial role.

The Constitutional Council consists of a non-voting Chairman and 16 members nominated by the parties in the TGNU (six for the DTA and two each for the other parties). The aim of the Council, which started work in Jan. 1986, is to draft a constitution.

Certain administrative functions for nine of the ethnic groups are controlled by second-tier Representative Authorities first elected in 1980. These are the administrations for Ovambos, Namas, Damaras, Kavangos, Hereros, Whites, Basters, Coloureds and Tswanas. In the case of the Bushmen and Caprivians, these functions are handled by a commissioner and advisory council.

The country is administered by a Government Service founded on 1 July 1980, which consists of 16 departments, as well as the administrations of the nine second-tier Representative Authorities.

The third tier of government comprises municipalities which control the civic affairs of larger towns.

The Cabinet in Feb. 1989 consisted of:

*Minister of Economic Affairs, Mining and Sea Fisheries:* Andreas Shipanga. *Water Affairs, Posts and Telecommunications:* J. W. F. Pretorius. *Finance and Governmental Affairs:* Dirk Mudge. *National Education and the Central Personnel Institution:* Andrew Matjila. *Justice and Information:* Jariretundu Kozonguizi. *National Health, Welfare and Civic Affairs and Manpower:* Moses Katjiuungua. *Agriculture and Nature Conservation:* Hans Diergaardt. *Transport Services:* Harry Booysen.

*Administrator-General:* Louis Pienaar.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The revenue and expenditure (in R1,000) were:

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	1,000,000	1,199,400	1,589,600	1,589,200	1,865,430
Expenditure	1,176,687	1,392,449	1,545,300	1,896,700	1,945,430

**Banking.** The South African Reserve Bank branch in Windhoek performs the functions of a central bank. Commercial banks represented in the Territory include First National Bank, Boland Bank, Nedbank, Standard Bank, Bank of South West Africa/Namibia and Bank of Windhoek Ltd (the only locally-owned bank). There is a Land and Agricultural Bank in Windhoek.

A Post Office Savings Bank was established in 1916. The number of accounts opened in 1985-86 was 3,398. The balance due to holders as at 31 March 1986 amounted to R2,983,790.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 692m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Diamonds of 1,009,520 carats were recovered in 1986 from open cast mines north of the Orange river. The largest open groove uranium mine in the world started operations near Swakopmund in 1976. The mine has a production capacity of 5,000 short tons of uranium oxide concentrate per year and an estimated average of 60m. tons of ore has been processed annually since 1979.

**Agriculture.** Namibia is essentially a stock-raising country, the scarcity of water and poor rainfall rendering crop-farming, except in the northern and north-eastern parts, almost impossible. Generally speaking, the southern half is suited for the raising of small stock, while the central and northern parts are more suited for

cattle. In 1986 there were 314 registered hunting farms, 25 guest farms and 20 safari farms. Guano is harvested from the coast, converted into fertilizer in the Republic of South Africa and most of it exported to Europe.

**Livestock** (1987): 1,835,378 cattle, 2,811,224 sheep, 1,579,985 goats. In 1987, 246,163 head of cattle, 102,037 beef carcasses and 786,611 head of small stock were exported, and 770,627 karakul pelts were produced.

In 1987, 7.7m. litres of cows' milk and 56,000 kg of cheese were produced. Principal crops (1987 in tonnes): Wheat, 4,960; maize, 7,185; sunflower seed, 525.

**Fisheries.** The total catch of pelagic fish in 1987 was 475.4m. tonnes.

**COMMERCE.** Total imports, R1,712,900 and exports R1,809,800 in 1987.

The bulk of the direct imports into the country is landed at Walvis Bay which handles 750,000 tons of cargo a year.

Total trade between Namibia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	64,015	21,920	6,826	7,681	10,729
Exports and re-exports from UK	5,200	4,084	2,915	3,909	3,259

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 the total national road network was 41,762 km, including 4,500 km of tarred roads. In 1986 there were 103,715 registered motor vehicles.

**Railways.** The Namibia system connects with the main system of the South African Railways at De Aar. The total length of the line inside Namibia is 2,349 km of 1,065 mm gauge.

**Aviation.** In 1987-88 the Territory's 2 major airports handled about 190,217 passengers and 2.2m. kg of freight on international flights and 10,000 passengers and 88,000 kg of freight on internal flights.

**Shipping.** In 1985 Walvis Bay harbour handled 764 vessels and Luderitz, 152 vessels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 71 post offices and 16 postal agencies, and 1,070 private bag services distributed by rail or road transport.

There were (1987) 69,273 telephones. There were 1,012 telex users.

In 1987, 57,683 radio licences and 28,500 television licences were issued.

**Newspapers** (1988). There are 3 daily and 4 weekly newspapers.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** About 90% of the population is Christian.

**Education** (1988). In 1985-86, R65.84m. was spent on education. There were 1,153 schools for all races, 374,269 pupils and 12,525 teachers. This included 1,118 primary and senior secondary schools, 3 centres for the handicapped, 1 technical school and 2 agricultural schools, 3 technical institutes and 3 agricultural colleges. There were 4 teachers' training colleges and an academy.

**Health** (1988). There were 68 hospitals and 171 clinics. The ratio of beds per population was 5.5 per 1,000. There were 270 general practitioners, 30 specialists and 40 dentists. Nursing staff numbered 4,350.

## Further Reading

- Namibia Information Services, *Namibia: The Economy*. Windhoek, 1987  
*Human Rights and Namibia*. London, 1986  
 Rothenberg, R. I., *Namibia: Political and Economic Prospects*. Lexington, 1983  
 Schoeman, E. R. and H. S., *Namibia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984  
 Soggot, D., *Namibia: The Violent Heritage*. New York, 1986  
 Thomas, W. H., *Economic Development in Namibia*. Munich, 1978  
 van der Merwe, J. H., *National Atlas of South West Africa*. Windhoek, 1983

# NAURU

*Population:* 8,042 (1983)

*GNP per capita:* US\$9,091 (1985)

**HISTORY.** The island was discovered by Capt. Fearn in 1798, annexed by Germany in Oct. 1888, and surrendered to the Australian forces in 1914. It was administered under a mandate, effective from 17 Dec. 1920, conferred on the British Empire and approved by the League of Nations until 1 Nov. 1947, when the United Nations General Assembly approved a trusteeship agreement with the governments of Australia, New Zealand and UK as joint administering authority. Independence was gained in 1968.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island is situated 0° 32' S. lat. and 166° 56' E. long. Area, 5,263 acres (2,130 hectares). It is an oval-shaped upheaval coral island of approximately 12 miles in circumference, surrounded by a reef which is exposed at low tide. There is no deep water harbour but offshore moorings, reputedly the deepest in the world, are capable of holding medium-sized vessels, including 30,000 tonne capacity bulk carriers. On the seaward side the reef dips abruptly into the deep waters of the Pacific at an angle of 45°. On the landward side of the reef there is a sandy beach interspersed with coral pinnacles. From the sandy beach the ground rises gradually, forming a fertile section ranging in width from 150 to 300 yd and completely encircling the island. There is an extensive plateau bearing phosphate of a high grade, the mining rights of which were vested in the British Phosphate Commissioners until 1 July 1970, subject to the rights of the Nauruan landowners. In July 1970 the Nauru Phosphate Corporation assumed control and management of the enterprise. It is chiefly on the fertile section of land between the sandy beach and the plateau that the Nauruans have established themselves. With the exception of a small fringe round a shallow lagoon, about 1 mile inland, the plateau, which contains the phosphate deposits, has few foodbearing trees and is not settled by the Nauruans.

At the census held on 13 May 1983 the population totalled 8,042, of whom 4,964 were Nauruans.

Vital statistics, 1982: Births, 286 (224 Nauruan); deaths, 77 (42 Nauruan).

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, tempered by sea breezes, but with a high and irregular rainfall, averaging 82" (2,060 mm). Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 75" (1,862 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A Legislative Council was established by the Nauru Act, passed by the Australian Parliament in Dec. 1965 and was inaugurated on 31 Jan. 1966. The trusteeship agreement terminated on 31 Jan. 1968, on which day Nauru became an independent republic but having special relationship with the Commonwealth. An 18-member Parliament is elected on a 3-yearly basis.

*President and Minister for Foreign Affairs:* Hammer DeRoburt, GCMG, OBE.

*National flag:* Blue with a narrow horizontal gold stripe across the centre, beneath this near the hoist a white star of 12 points.

**FINANCE.** Revenue and expenditure (in \$A) for financial year ending 30 June 1983 (estimate): revenue, 97,279,300; expenditure, 111,284,800 (health, 1,602,200; education, 2,004,200).

The interests in the phosphate deposits were purchased in 1919 from the Pacific Phosphate Company by the governments of the UK, the Commonwealth of Australia and New Zealand at a cost of £Stg3.5m., and a Board of Commissioners representing the 3 governments was appointed to manage and control the working of the deposits. In May 1967, in Canberra, the British Phosphate Corporation agreed to hand over the phosphate industry to Nauru and on 15 June 1967 agreement was reached that the Nauruans could buy the assets of the B.P.C. for



approximately \$A20m. over 3 years. It is estimated that the deposits will be exhausted by 1993. Phosphate sales (1984–85) \$A100m.

**COMMERCE.** The export trade consists almost entirely of phosphate shipped to Australia, New Zealand and Japan. The imports consist almost entirely of food supplies, building construction materials and machinery for the phosphate industry.

Total trade between Nauru and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	916	479	148	674	642
Exports from UK	1,332	1,199	1,239	394	759

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Aviation.** There is an airfield on the island capable of accepting medium size jet aircraft. Air Nauru, a wholly owned government subsidiary, operates services with Boeing 727 and 737 aircraft to Melbourne, Sydney, Apia, Honiara, Guam, Tarawa, Majuro, Kagoshima, Okinawa, Noumea, Port Vila, Suva, Nadi, Ponape, Manila, Taipei, Truk, Saipan, Koror (Pelan), Honolulu, Singapore, Auckland, Pago Pago and Niue.

**Shipping.** The Nauru Local Government Council, through its agency the Nauru Pacific Shipping Line, owns 6 ships and 2 fishing boats. These ships ply between Australia, Pacific Islands, west coast of USA, New Zealand, Japan, Singapore etc. Other shipping coming to the island consists of those under charter to the phosphate industry.

**Telecommunications.** Number of telephones (1978) 1,500 and (1984) 5,500 radio receivers. Direct daily high frequency service is maintained with Tarawa and both long- and short-wave transmissions with merchant shipping. A separate tele-radio service exists between Nauru and Ocean Island.

**Cinemas.** In 1978 there were 7 cinemas with seating capacity of 1,500.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The highest Court is the Supreme Court of Nauru. It is the Superior Court of record and has the jurisdiction to deal with constitutional matters in addition to its other jurisdiction. There is also a District Court which is presided over by the Resident Magistrate who is also the Chairman of the Family Court and the Registrar of Supreme Court. The laws applicable in Nauru are its own Acts of Parliament and a large number of British statutes and the common law have been adopted for Nauru.

**Religion.** The population is mainly Roman Catholic or Protestant.

**Education.** Attendance at school is compulsory for all children between the ages of 6 and 16. In June 1983 there were 8 infant and primary schools and 2 secondary schools. There were 44 teachers and 2,164 pupils in infant, primary and secondary schools. In addition, there is a trade school with 4 instructors and an enrolment of 74 trainees. Scholarships are available for Nauruan children to receive secondary and higher education and vocational training in Australia and New Zealand. In 1984, 88 Nauruans were receiving secondary and tertiary education abroad.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in Nauru

*High Commissioner:* R. A. R. Barltrop, CMG, CVO (resides in Suva).

Of Nauru in the USA

*Ambassador:* T. W. Star (resides in Melbourne).

## Further Reading

Packett, C. N., *Guide to the Republic of Nauru*. Bradford, 1970

Pittman, G. A., *Nauru, the Phosphate Island*. London, 1959

Viviani, N., *Phosphate and Political Progress*. Canberra, 1970

# NEPÁL

*Capital:* Káthmándu  
*Population:* 16.63m. (1985)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$160 (1986)

## Nepal Adhirajya

**HISTORY.** From 1846 to 1951 Nepál was virtually ruled by the Ráná family, a member of which always held the office of prime minister, the succession being determined by special rules. The last Ráná prime minister (and, until 18 Feb. 1951, Supreme C.-in-C.) was HH Máharája Mohan Shumsher Jung Bahádúr Ráná, who resigned in Nov. 1951.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Nepál, is bounded on the north by Tibet, on the east by Sikkim and West Bengal, on the south and west by Bihar and Uttar Pradesh. There are 3 geographical regions: The fertile Tarai plain in the south; a central belt containing the Mahabharat Lekh and Churia Hills and the basins of the Inner Tarai; and the Himalayas in the north. Area 56,827 sq. miles (147,181 sq. km); population (estimate, 1985), 16,625,439; (census, 1981) 15,022,839 of whom 52.4% were Nepali-speaking and 18.5% Bihari-speaking.

Capital, Káthmándu, 75 miles from the Indian frontier; population (census 1981) 235,160. Other towns include Pátan (also called Lalitpur), 79,875; Moráng (Biratnagar), 93,544; Bhádgaón (Bhaktapur), 48,472.

The aboriginal stock is Mongolian with a considerable admixture of Hindu blood from India. They were originally divided into numerous hill clans and petty principalities, one of which, Gorkha or Gurkha, became predominant in 1559 and has since given its name to men from all parts of Nepál. The 15 feudal chieftainships were integrated into the kingdom on 10 April 1961.

**CLIMATE.** The rainfall is high, with maximum amounts from May to Sept., but conditions are very dry from Nov. to Jan. The range of temperature is moderate. Káthmándu. Jan. 50°F (10°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 57" (1,428 mm).

**RULING KING.** The sovereign is HM Maharájádhirája **Birendra Bir Bikram Sháh Dev**, who succeeded his father Mahendra Bir Bikram Sháh Dev on 31 Jan. 1972.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 18 Feb. 1951 the King proclaimed a constitutional monarchy, and on 16 Dec. 1962 a new Constitution of the 'Constitutional Monarchical Hindu State'. The village and town *panchayat*, recognized as the basic units of democracy, elect the district *panchayat*, these elect the zonal *panchayat*, and these finally the 112 members of the national *panchayat*. The Constitution was amended in 1975 and 1980. In addition, 28 representatives of professional organizations and royal nominees not exceeding 15% of the elected members, will be included in the national *panchayat*. The executive power is vested in the King, who appoints a council of ministers from the national *panchayat*. A state council will advise the King and proclaim the successor or, if the heir is a minor, a regency council. Art. 81 empowers the King to declare a state of emergency and to suspend the Constitution.

The Cabinet in March 1988 was as follows:

*Prime Minister, Defence and Royal Palace Affairs:* Marich Man Singh Shrestha.  
*Foreign Affairs:* Shailendra Kumar Upadhyaya. *Local Supply:* Dil Bahadur Shrestha. *Communications:* Hari Bahadur Basnyet. *Land Reform and Management:* Padma Sundar Lawate. *Panchayat and Local Development:* Pashupati Rana. *Industry:* Bala Ram Ghartimagar. *Water Resources:* Yadav Prasad Pant. *Commerce, Labour and Social Services:* Parshu Narayan Chaudhary. *Housing and Physical Planning:* Prakash Chandra Lohani. *Health:* Shushila Thapa. *Education:*

Keshar Bahadur Bista. *Finance*: Bharat Bahadur Pradhan. *Tourism*: Mohammad Mohashin.

There were 6 Ministers of State.

*National flag*: Two triangular parts of red, with a blue border all round, bearing symbols of the moon and the sun in white.

*National anthem*: 'May glory crown our illustrious sovereign' (1952).

*Local Government*: The country is administratively divided into 14 zones (Bágmati, Bheri, Dhaulagiri, Gandaki, Janakpur, Karnali, Kosi, Lumbini, Mahakali, Mechi, Náráyani, Rápti, Sagarmatha and Seti) and thence into 75 districts and over 3,500 villages.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 Royal Guard, 7 infantry brigades, and single artillery, engineer, signals, parachute and transport battalions, and 1 air squadron. Equipment includes 25 Ferrets. Strength of all services (1989) about 40,000, and there is also a 28,000-strong paramilitary police force.

**Air Force.** Independent of the army since 1979, the Air Force has 3 Skyvan transport aircraft, 1 Puma helicopter and 3 Chetak helicopters. An H.S. 748 turboprop transport and 1 Super Puma and 1 Puma helicopter are operated by the Royal Flight.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Nepál is a member of UN and the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The seventh (1985–90) plan envisages expenditure of NRs 50,500m. Priority will be given to education, transport, communications, power, agriculture and irrigation.

**Budget.** The general budget for the fiscal year 1987–88 envisaged current expenditure of NRs 4,307m. Domestic revenue were estimated at NRs 5,875m.

**Currency.** The Nepalese *rupee* is 171 grains in weight, as compared with the Indian rupee, which weighs 180 grains. The rate of exchange is 135 Nepalese rupees for 100 Indian rupees. 100 Nepalese *pice* = 1 Nepalese rupee. Coins of all denominations are minted. The Rástra Bank also issues notes of 1, 5, 10, 100 and 1,000 rupees. In March 1989, US\$1 = 24.10 *rupees*; £1 = 41.47 *rupees*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 395m. kwh. A hydro-electric power scheme on the Karnali river costing US\$4,500m. was being planned in 1986.

**Agriculture.** Nepál has valuable forests in the southern part of the country. In the northern part, on the slopes of the Himálayas, there grow large quantities of medicinal herbs which find a world-wide market. Of the total area, nearly one-third (11.2m. acres) is under forest; 5.4m. acres is covered by perpetual snow; 9.6m. acres is under paddy, 2.9m. maize and millet, 800,000 wheat. Production (1986 in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 2,350; maize, 880; wheat, 598; sugar-cane, 558; potatoes, 357; millet, 138.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 6,374,000, including about 689,000 cows; 2.89m. buffaloes; sheep, 821,000; goats, 5.07m.; pigs, 467,000; poultry, 10m.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 2,100 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industries, such as jute- and sugar-mills, match, leather, cigarette, and shoe factories, and chemical works have been established, including two industrial estates at Pátan and Balaju. Production (1982 in 1,000 tonnes): Jute goods, 15.7; sugar, 21.1; cement, 30; iron goods, 7.4.



**Commerce.** The principal articles of export are food grains, jute, timber, oilseeds, ghee (clarified butter), potatoes, medicinal herbs, hides and skins, cattle. The chief imports are textiles, cigarettes, salt, petrol and kerosene, sugar, machinery, medicines, boots and shoes, paper, cement, iron and steel, tea.

Imports and exports in NRs 1,000:

	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	4,930,200	6,172,500	6,514,300	7,742,000
Exports	1,491,400	1,132,000	1,703,900	2,741,000

Total trade between Nepál and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	5,564	9,347	5,966	8,331	9,384
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,453	7,835	4,672	8,707	4,968

**Tourism.** There were 223,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** With the co-operation of India and the USA 900 miles of motorable roads are being constructed, including the East-West Highway through southern Nepál. A road from the Tibetan border to Káthmándu was recently completed with Chinese aid. There are about 1,300 miles motorable roads. A ropeway for the carriage of goods covers the 14 miles from Dhursing above Bhimphedi into the Káthmándu valley. A road connects Káthmándu with Birgung.

**Railways.** Railways (762 mm gauge) connect Jayanagar on the North Eastern Indian Railway with Janakpur and thence with Bizalpura (54 km).

**Aviation.** The Royal Nepál Airline Corporation has linked Káthmándu, the capital, with 11 districts of Nepál; and in 1984, 30 airfields were in regular use. The airline carried 424,000 passengers and 2,900 tonnes of freight in 1983-84. The Royal Nepalese Airline Corporation has services between Káthmándu and Calcutta, Patna, New Delhi, Bangkok, Rangoon and Dacca, employing Boeing 727 jet aircraft.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Káthmándu is connected by telephone with Birganj and Raxaul (North Eastern Indian Railway) on the southern frontier with Bihar; and with the eastern part of the Terai foothills; an extension to the western districts is being completed. Number of telephones (1978) 9,425, of which 5,431 were in Káthmándu. Under an agreement with India and the USA, a network of 91 wireless stations exists in Nepál, with further stations in Calcutta and New Delhi. Radio Nepál at Káthmándu broadcasts in Nepáli and English. In 1983 there were 300,000 radio receivers and in 1985 the first television station opened.

**Newspapers.** In 1983 there were 7 daily newspapers with a circulation of 75,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court Act, established a uniform judicial system, culminating in a supreme court of a Chief Justice and no more than 6 judges. Special courts to deal with minor offences may be established at the discretion of the Government.

**Religion.** Hinduism is the religion of 90% of the people. Buddhists comprise 5% and Moslems 3%. Christian missions are permitted, but conversion is forbidden.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 1,748,000 primary school pupils, 454,000 secondary school pupils and the Tribhuvan University (founded 1960).

In 1981, 23% of the population were literate.

**Health.** There were about 420 doctors and 2,586 hospital beds in 1979.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Nepál in Great Britain (12a Kensington Palace Gdns., London, W8 4QU)  
*Ambassador:* Maj.-Gen. Bharat Keshar Simha (accredited 14 July 1988).

Of Great Britain in Nepál (Láincháur, Káthmándu)

*Ambassador:* R. E. Burges Watson, CMG.

Of Nepál in the USA (2131 Leroy Pl., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of the USA in Nepál (Pani Pokhari, Káthmándu)

*Ambassador:* Leon J. Weil.

Of Nepál to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Jai Pratap Rana.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* A Department of Statistics was set up in Káthmándu in 1950.

Baral, L. S., *Political Development in Nepal*. London, 1980

Bezruchka, S., *A Guide to Trekking in Nepal*. Leicester, 1981

Turner, R. L., *Nepali Dictionary*. 1980.

Wadhwa, D. N., *Nepal*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986

# THE NETHERLANDS

*Capital:* Amsterdam  
*Seat of Government:* The Hague  
*Population:* 14.71m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$8,500 (1984)

## Koninkrijk der Nederlanden

**HISTORY.** William of Orange (1533–84), as the German count of Nassau, inherited vast possessions in the Netherlands and the Principedom of Orange in France. He was the initiator of the struggle for independence from Spain (1568–1648); in the Republic of the United Netherlands he and his successors became the 'first servants of the Republic' with the title of 'Stadhouder' (governor). In 1689 William III acceded to the throne of England, becoming joint sovereign with Mary II, his wife. William III died in 1702 without issue, and after a stadhouderless period a member of the Frisian branch of Orange–Nassau was nominated hereditary stadhouder in 1747; but his successor, Willem V, had to take refuge in England, in 1795, at the invasion of the French Army. In Nov. 1813 the United Provinces were freed from French domination.

The Congress of Vienna joined the Belgian provinces, the 'Austrian Netherlands' before the French Revolution, to the Northern Netherlands. The son of the former stadhouder Willem V was proclaimed King of the Netherlands at The Hague on 16 March 1815 as Willem I. The union was dissolved by the Belgian revolution of 1830, and the treaty of London, 19 April 1839, constituted Belgium an independent kingdom.

### *Netherlands Sovereigns*

Willem I	1815–1840 (died 1843)	Wilhelmina	1890–1948 (died 1962)
Willem II	1840–1849	Juliana	1948–1980
Willem III	1849–1890	Beatrix	1980–

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Netherlands is bounded north and west by the North Sea, south by Belgium and east by the Federal Republic of Germany.

The total area of the Netherlands is 41,863 sq. km (16,163 sq. miles), of which 33,934 sq. km (13,102 sq. miles) is land area.

On 14 June 1918 a law was passed concerning the reclamation of the Zuiderzee. The work was begun in 1920; the following sections have been completed: 1. The Noordholland–Wieringen Barrage (2.5 km), 1924; 2. The Wieringermeer Polder (210 sq. km), 1930 (inundated by the Germans in 1945, but drained again in the same year); 3. The Wieringen–Friesland Barrage (30 km), 1932; 4. The Noordoost Polder (501 sq. km), 1942; 5. Oost Flevoland (604 sq. km), 1957; 6. Zuidelijk Flevoland (499 sq. km), 1967.

The reclamation of the Markerwaard is still a subject of political discussion. A portion of what used to be the Zuiderzee behind the barrage will remain a fresh-water lake; IJsselmeer (1,400 sq. km). The 'Delta-project', completed in 1986, comprises (semi) enclosure dams in the estuaries between the islands in the south-western part of the country, excluding the sea-entrances to the ports of Rotterdam and Antwerp. *See map in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1959.*

Growth of census population:

1829	2,613,298	1909	5,858,175	1960	11,461,964
1849	3,056,879	1920	6,865,314	1971	13,060,115
1869	3,579,529	1930	7,935,565		
1889	4,511,415	1947	9,625,499		



## Area, density and estimated population on 1 Jan. 1977 and 1988:

Province	Land area (in sq. km)	Population		Density per sq. km
	1988	1977	1988	1988
Groningen	2,345.57	544,264	556,757	237
Friesland	3,359.01	566,042	599,104	178
Drenthe	2,655.68	409,874	436,586	164
Overijssel	3,338.90	948,009	1,009,997	302
Flevoland <sup>1</sup>	1,411.75	85,619	193,739	137
Gelderland	5,014.94	1,653,516	1,783,610	356
Utrecht	1,331.09	873,753	965,229	725
Noord-Holland	2,667.02	2,299,410	2,352,888	882
Zuid-Holland	2,906.11	3,049,570	3,208,414	1,104
Zeeland	1,790.73	335,624	355,501	199
Noord-Brabant	4,944.16	1,991,176	2,156,280	436
Limburg	2,169.52	1,055,619	1,095,424	505
Central Population Register <sup>2</sup>	—	2,019	1,419	—
Total	33,934.47	13,814,495	14,714,948	434

<sup>1</sup> The new province Flevoland, former IJsselmeerpolders, established on 1 Jan. 1986. The Noordoostpolder (drained in 1942) and the Zuidelijke IJsselmeerpolders (drained in 1957) are parts of the former Zuiderzee, now called IJsselmeer.

<sup>2</sup> The Central Population Register includes persons who are residents of the Netherlands but who have no fixed residence in any particular municipality (living in caravans and houseboats, population on inland vessels, etc.).

Of the total population on 1 Jan. 1988, 7,273,611 were males, 7,441,337 females.

## Vital statistics for calendar years:

	Live births			Marriages	Divorces	Deaths	Net
	Total	Illegitimate	Still births				migration
1983	170,246	11,857	1,002	78,451	32,589	117,761	+ 5,978
1984	174,436	13,445	1,036	81,655	34,068	119,812	+ 8,053
1985	178,136	14,766	1,054	82,747	34,044	122,704	+ 24,147
1986	184,513	16,220	1,060	87,337	29,836	125,307	+ 32,669
1987	186,667	17,385	1,036	87,400	27,788	122,199	+ 43,924

## Population of principal municipalities on 31 Dec. 1987:

Aalsmeer	21,740	Deurne	29,251	Hardenberg	32,087
Achtkarspelen	27,382	Deventer	66,062	Harderwijk	34,255
Alkmaar	88,085	Doetinchem	40,922	Heemskerk	32,804
Almelo	62,134	Dongen	21,005	Heemstede	26,254
Almere	57,195	Dongeraadeel	24,654	Heerenvveen	37,505
Alphen a/d Rijn	58,154	Dordrecht	107,871	Heerhugowaard	35,450
Amersfoort	93,516	Dronen	23,517	Heerlen	94,321
Amstelveen	69,413	Edam-Volendam	24,406	Heiloo	20,428
Amsterdam	691,738	Ede	91,246	Den Helder	62,372
Apeldoorn	146,337	Eindhoven	191,002	Hellendoorn	34,097
Arnhem	128,107	Elburg	20,439	Hellevoetsluis	33,250
Assen	48,714	Emmen	92,323	Helmond	65,307
Baarn	24,835	Enschede	144,695	Hengelo (O.)	76,721
Barneveld	40,886	Epe	33,987	's-Hertogenbosch	89,988
Bergen op Zoom	46,609	Ermelo	25,441	Hilversum	85,150
Best	21,338	Etten-Leur	31,989	Hoogeveen	45,413
Beuningen	20,883	Franekeadeel	20,954	Hoogezand-	
Beverwijk	34,944	Geldermalsen	21,815	Sappemeer	34,799
De Bilt	31,781	Geldrop	25,742	Hoorn	54,996
Borne	21,043	Geleen	33,777	Houten	21,985
Boxtel	24,781	Gendringen	20,101	Huizen	41,401
Breda	120,212	Gilze en Rijen	22,031	Kampen	32,761
Brummen	20,660	Goes	31,731	Katwijk	39,218
Brunssum	29,719	Gorinchem	27,942	Kerkrade	52,984
Bussum	32,039	Gouda	62,321	Krimpen a/d IJssel	27,702
Capelle a/d IJssel	56,973	's-Gravenhage	444,313	Landgraaf	39,945
Castricum	22,517	Groningen	167,929	Leeuwarden	85,173
Culemborg	20,744	Haaksbergen	22,462	Leiden	107,893
Delft	88,074	Haarlem	91,369	Leiderdorp	21,890
Delfzijl	23,744	Haarlemmermeer	148,740	Leidschendam	32,229

Lelystad	58,449	Ridderkerk	46,199	Veenendaal	46,283
Leusden	27,001	Rijssen	23,701	Veghel	25,506
Lisse	20,677	Rijswijk	48,657	Veldhoven	38,002
Loon op Zand	20,999	Roermond	38,349	Velsen	57,147
Losser	22,429	Roosendaal en		Venlo	63,820
Maarssen	36,620	Nispen	58,651	Venray	34,126
Maassluis	33,116	Rosmalen	26,377	Vlaardingen	75,023
Maastricht	115,782	Rotterdam	574,299	Vlissingen	44,496
Meerssen	20,356	Rucphen	20,790	Voorburg	40,907
Meppel	23,268	Schiedam	69,276	Voorschoten	22,315
Middelburg	39,152	Schijndel	21,181	Voorst	23,744
Naaldwijk	27,396	Sittard	44,588	Vught	23,585
Nieuwegein	57,557	Skarsterlân	23,649	Waalwijk	28,542
Nijkerk	25,393	Slidrecht	22,866	Waddinxveen	24,326
Nijmegen	145,816	Smallerland	50,547	Wageningen	32,721
Noordoostpolder	37,795	Sneek	29,337	Wassenaar	26,044
Noordwijk	24,894	Soest	41,491	Weert	39,827
Nuenen c.a.	20,869	Spijkenisse	63,605	Weststellingwerf	24,576
Nunspeet	24,169	Stadskanaal	33,192	Wierden	22,017
Oldebroek	21,013	Steenwijk	20,917	Wijchen	32,818
Oldenzaal	29,547	Stein	26,470	Winschoten	19,895
Oosterhout	47,697	Terneuzen	35,173	Winterswijk	28,011
Ooststellingwerf	24,920	Tiel	31,000	Woerden	27,781
Opsterland	26,503	Tietjerksteradeel	30,063	Zaanstad	128,833
Oss	50,678	Tilburg	154,425	Zeist	59,727
Papendrecht	26,827	Uden	34,790	Zevenaar	26,495
Purmerend	54,472	Uithoorn	22,040	Zoetermeer	88,241
Putten	20,666	Utrecht	230,373	Zutphen	30,942
Raalte	26,624	Valkenswaard	29,715	Zwijndrecht	41,114
Renkum	34,024	Veendam	28,245	Zwolle	90,570
Rheden	46,486				

Urban agglomerations as at 1 Jan. 1988: Rotterdam, 1,035,530; Amsterdam, 1,030,743; The Hague, 680,391; Utrecht, 521,495; Eindhoven, 380,508; Arnhem, 297,345; Heerlen-Kerkrade, 267,034; Enschede-Hengelo, 249,980; Nijmegen, 240,635; Tilburg, 225,819; Haarlem, 213,562; Groningen, 206,652; Dordrecht-Zwijndrecht, 203,132; 's-Hertogenbosch, 192,785; Leiden, 183,394; Geleen-Sittard, 177,788; Maastricht, 160,420; Breda, 156,173; Zaanstreek, 141,016; Velsen-Beverwijk, 124,895; Hilversum, 102,564.

**CLIMATE.** A cool temperate maritime climate, marked by mild winters and cool summers, but with occasional continental influences. Coastal temperatures vary from 37°F (3°C) in winter to 61°F (16°C) in summer, but inland the winters are slightly colder and the summers slightly warmer. Rainfall is least in the months Feb. to May, but inland there is a well-defined summer maximum in July and Aug.

The Hague. Jan. 37°F (2.7°C), July 61°F (16.3°C). Annual rainfall 32.8" (820 mm). Amsterdam. Jan. 36°F (2.3°C), July 62°F (16.5°C). Annual rainfall 34" (850 mm). Rotterdam. Jan. 36.5°F (2.6°C), July 62°F (16.6°C). Annual rainfall 32" (800 mm).

**REIGNING QUEEN.** **Beatrix Wilhelmina Armgard**, born 31 Jan. 1938 daughter of Queen Juliana and Prince Bernhard; married to Claus von Amsberg on 10 March 1966; succeeded to the crown on 1 May 1980, on the abdication of her mother. *Offspring:* Prince Willem-Alexander, born 27 April 1967; Prince Johan Friso, born 25 Sept. 1968; Prince Constantijn, born 11 Oct. 1969.

*Mother of the Queen:* Queen Juliana Louise Emma Marie Wilhelmina, born 30 April 1909, daughter of Queen Wilhelmina (born 31 Aug. 1880, died 28 Nov. 1962) and Prince Henry of Mecklenburg-Schwerin (born 19 April 1876, died 3 July 1934); married to Prince Bernhard Leopold Frederick Everhard Julius Coert Karel Godfried Pieter of Lippe-Biesterfeld (born 29 June 1911) on 7 Jan. 1937. Abdicated in favour of her daughter, the Reigning Queen, on 30 April 1980.

*Sisters of the Queen:* Princess Irene Emma Elisabeth, born 5 Aug. 1939, married to Prince Charles Hugues de Bourbon-Parma on 29 April 1964, divorced 1981 (*sons:*

Prince Carlos Javier Bernardo, born 27 Jan. 1970; Prince Jaime Bernardo, born 13 Oct. 1972; *daughters*: Princess Margarita Maria Beatriz, born 13 Oct. 1972; Princess Maria Carolina Christina, born 23 June 1974; Princess Margriet Francisca, born in Ottawa, 19 Jan. 1943, married to Pieter van Vollenhoven on 10 Jan. 1967 (*sons*: Prince Maurits, born 17 April 1968; Prince Bernhard, born 25 Dec. 1969; Prince Pieter-Christiaan, born 22 March 1972; Prince Floris, born 10 April 1975); Princess Maria Christina, born 18 Feb. 1947, married to Jorge Guillermo on 28 June 1975 (*sons*: Bernardo, born 17 June 1977; Nicolas Daniel Mauricio, born 6 July 1979; *daughter*: Juliana, born 8 Oct. 1981).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** According to the Constitution of the Kingdom of the Netherlands, the Kingdom consists of the Netherlands, Aruba and the Netherlands Antilles. Their relations are regulated by the 'Statute' for the Kingdom, which came into force on 29 Dec. 1954. Each part enjoys full autonomy; they are united, on a footing of equality, for mutual assistance and the protection of their common interests.

The first Constitution of the Netherlands after its restoration as a Sovereign State was promulgated in 1814. It was revised in 1815 (after the addition of the Belgian provinces, and the assumption by the Sovereign of the title of King), 1840 (after the secession of the Belgian provinces), 1848, 1884, 1887, 1917, 1922, 1938, 1946, 1948, 1953, 1956, 1963, 1972 and 1983.

The Netherlands is a constitutional and hereditary monarchy. The royal succession is in the direct male or female line in the order of primogeniture. The Sovereign comes of age on reaching his/her 18th year. During his/her minority the royal power is vested in a Regent—designated by law—and in some cases in the Council of State.

The central executive power of the State rests with the Crown, while the central legislative power is vested in the Crown and Parliament (the *Staten-Generaal*), consisting of 2 Chambers. After the 1956 revision of the Constitution the Upper or First Chamber is composed of 75 members, elected by the members of the Provincial States, and the Second Chamber consists of 150 deputies, who are elected directly from all Netherlands nationals who are aged 18 or over on polling day. Members of the States-General must be Netherlands or recognized as Netherlands subjects and 21 years of age or over; they may be men or women. They receive an allowance.

First Chamber (as constituted in 1987): Labour Party, 26; Christian Democratic Appeal, 26; People's Party for Freedom and Democracy, 12; Democrats '66, 5; Party of Political Radicals, 1; Communist Party, 1; Pacifist Socialist Party, 1; Calvinist Party, 1; Reformed Political Federation, 1; Calvinist Political Union, 1.

Second Chamber (elected on 21 May 1986): Christian Democratic Appeal, 54; Labour Party, 52; People's Party for Freedom and Democracy, 27; Democrats '66, 9; Party of Political Radicals, 2; Pacifist Socialist Party, 1; Calvinist Party, 3; Reformed Political Federation, 1; Calvinist Political Union, 1.

The revised Constitution of 1917 has introduced an electoral system based on universal suffrage and proportional representation. Under its provisions, members of the Second Chamber are directly elected by citizens of both sexes who are Netherlands subjects not under 18 years (since 1972).

The members of the First Chamber and of the Second Chamber are elected for 4 years, and retire in a body. The Sovereign has the power to dissolve both Chambers of Parliament, or one of them, subject to the condition that new elections take place within 40 days, and the new House or Houses be convoked within 3 months.

Both the Government and the Second Chamber may propose Bills; the First Chamber can only approve or reject them without inserting amendments. The meetings of both Chambers are public, though each of them may by a majority vote decide on a secret session. It is a fixed custom, that Ministers and Secretaries of State, on their own initiative or upon invitation of the Parliament, attend the sessions to defend their policy, their budget, their proposals of Bills, etc., when these are in discussion. A Minister or Secretary of State, however, cannot be a member of Parliament at the same time.

The Constitution can be revised only by a Bill declaring that there is reason for



introducing such revision and containing the proposed alterations. The passing of this Bill is followed by a dissolution of both Chambers and a second confirmation by the new States-General by two-thirds of the votes. Unless it is expressly stated, all laws concern only the realm in Europe, and not the oversea part of the kingdom, the Netherlands Antilles.

Every act of the Sovereign has to be covered by a responsible Minister.

The Ministry, a coalition of Christian Democrats and Liberals, was composed as follows in Feb. 1989:

*Prime Minister:* Ruud Lubbers (CDA).

*Deputy Prime Minister and Economic Affairs:* Rudolf de Korte (VVD). *Foreign Affairs:* Hans van den Broek (CDA). *Finance:* Onno Ruding (CDA). *Defence:* Frits Bolkestein (VVD). *Development Aid Co-operation:* Piet Bukman (CDA). *Social Affairs and Employment:* Jan de Koning (CDA). *Home Affairs:* Cees van Dijk (CDA). *Justice:* Frits Korthals Altes (VVD). *Agriculture and Fisheries:* Gerrit Braks (CDA). *Welfare, Public Health and Culture:* Eelco Brinkman (CDA). *Education and Science:* Wim Deetman (CDA). *Transport and Public Works:* Neelie Smit-Kroes (VVD). *Housing, Physical Planning and Environment:* Ed Nijpels (VVD).

There are also 11 state secretaries.

The Council of State (*Raad van State*), appointed by the Crown, is composed of a vice-president and not more than 28 members. The Queen is president, but the day-to-day running of the council is in the hands of the vice-president. The Council can be consulted on all legislative matters. Decisions of the Crown in administrative disputes are prepared by a special section of the Council.

The Hague is the seat of the Court, Government and Parliament; Amsterdam is the capital.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, blue.

*National anthem:* Wilhelmus van Nassouwe (words by Philip Marnix van St Aldegonde, c. 1570).

*Local Government.* The kingdom is divided in 12 provinces and 714 municipalities. Each province has its own representative body, the Provincial States. The members must be 21 years of age or over; they are elected for 4 years, directly from the Netherlands inhabitants of the province who are 18 years of age or over. The electoral register is the same as for the Second Chamber. The members retire in a body and are subject to re-election. The number of members varies according to the population of the province, from 83 for Zuid-Holland to 39 for Flevoland (a new province in the Zuiderzee area). The Provincial States are entitled to issue ordinances concerning the welfare of the province, and to raise taxes pursuant to legal provisions. The provincial budgets and the provincial ordinances and resolutions relating to provincial property, loans, taxes, etc., must be approved by the Crown. The members of the Provincial States elect the First Chamber of the States-General. They meet twice a year, as a rule in public. A permanent commission composed of 6 of their members, called the 'Deputy States', is charged with the executive power and, if required, with the enforcement of the law in the province. Deputy as well as Provincial States are presided over by a Commissioner of the Queen, appointed by the Crown, who in the former assembly has a deciding vote, but attends the latter in only a deliberative capacity. He is the chief magistrate in the province. The Commissioner and the members of the Deputy States receive an allowance.

Each municipality forms a Corporation with its own interests and rights, subject to the general law, and is governed by a Municipal Council, directly elected from the Netherlands inhabitants, and, under certain circumstances, non-Netherlands inhabitants of the municipality who are 18 years of age or over, for 4 years. All Netherlands inhabitants and non-Netherlands inhabitants who meet certain requirements aged 21 or over are eligible, the number of members varying from 7 to 45, according to the population. The Municipal Council has the right to issue bye-laws concerning the communal welfare. The Council may levy taxes pursuant to legal provisions; these ordinances must be approved by the Crown. All bye-laws

may be vetoed by the Crown. The Municipal Budget and resolutions to alienate municipal property require the approbation of the Deputy States of the province. The Council meets in public as often as may be necessary, and is presided over by a Burgomaster, appointed by the Crown. The day-to-day administration is carried out by the Burgomaster and 2-7 Aldermen (*wethouders*), elected by and from the Council; this body is also charged with the enforcement of the law. The Burgomaster may suspend the execution of a resolution of the council for 30 days, but is bound to notify the Deputy States of the province. In maintaining public order, the Burgomaster acts as the chief of police. The Burgomaster and Aldermen receive allowances.

**DEFENCE.** The Netherlands are bordered on the south by Belgium, on the east by the Federal Republic of Germany. On both sides the country is quite level and has no natural defences, except the barriers of some large rivers, running east to west and south to north. The country has an excellent roadnet and a vast railway system, enabling rapid movement. The western part of the country is densely populated.

**Army.** Service is partly voluntary and partly compulsory; the voluntary enlistments are of small proportion to the compulsory. The total peacetime strength amounts to 69,900, including Military Police. The number of regulars is 25,000. The Army also employs 13,000 civilians. The legal period of active service for national servicemen is 22-24 months; the actual service period is 16 months for reserve-officers and n.c.o.s and 14 months for other ranks. The balance is spent as 'short leave'. After their period of actual service or short leave, conscript personnel are granted long leave. However, they will be liable to being called up for refresher training or in case of mobilization until they have reached the age of 35 (n.c.o.s 40, reserve officers 45).

The 1st Netherlands Army Corps is assigned to NATO. It consists of 10 brigades and Corps troops. The active part of the Corps comprises 2 armoured brigades and 4 armoured infantry brigades, grouped in two divisions and 40% of the Corps troops. Part of this force is stationed in the Federal Republic of Germany. The peacetime strength of the active brigades is 80% of the war-authorized strength.

The mobilizable part of the Corps comprises 1 armoured brigade, 2 armoured infantry brigades, 1 infantry brigade and the remaining Corps troops.

The mechanized brigades comprise tank battalions (Leopard I improved and Leopard 2), armoured infantry battalions (YP-408 and YPR-765), medium artillery battalions (155 mm self-propelled), armoured engineer units and armoured anti armour units. The Corps troops comprise headquarters units, combat-support units, including Engineer and Corps artillery (203 mm, 155 mm and Lance) and service-support units. Helicopter squadrons are also available.

The National Territorial Command forces consist of territorial brigades, security forces, some logistical units and staffs. The major part of these units is mobilizable. Some units in the Netherlands are earmarked for assignment to the United Nations as peace-keeping forces. The army is responsible for the training of these units. In time of war, the civil defence operations will be closely co-ordinated with the local civilian authorities.

**Navy.** The Royal Netherlands Navy has its main base in the Netherlands at Den Helder and minor bases at Flushing and Curaçao (Netherlands Antilles). The Ministry of Defence is located in The Hague.

The fleet comprises 6 diesel-electric patrol submarines, 18 frigates, 2 large (fast) combat support ships (aircraft carrying capacity 5 helicopters), 1 mine counter-measures support ship (*ex-ocean minesweeper*), 15 coastal minehunters, 11 coastal minesweepers, 2 diving vessels, 1 torpedo tender, 3 minelayer survey ships, 11 minor landing craft, 3 training ships, 12 tugs and 30 small auxiliary ships.

Four diesel-electric patrol submarines, 4 frigates, 2 coastal minehunters and 9 minor landing craft are under construction. The future construction programme includes 2 more diesel-electric patrol submarines.

In 1988 personnel totalled 16,880 officers and other ranks, including 1,700 in



the Naval Air Service, 560 female, and 2,800 in the Royal Netherlands Marine Corps.

The naval air service maintains 13 Orion P3C, 16 Westland Lynx SH14B/C embarked and 5 Lynx UH 14A for SAR, utility and transport.

**Air Force.** The Royal Netherlands Air Force (RNLAf) was established 1 July 1913. Its strength (1989) was 18,100 personnel and it has a first-line combat force of 9 squadrons of aircraft and 3 groups of surface-to-air missiles in the Federal Republic of Germany. All squadrons are operated by Tactical Air Command. Aircraft operated are F-16A/B (6 squadrons for air defence and ground attack, 1 for tactical reconnaissance), and NF-5A/B fighter-bombers (2 squadrons, to be re-equipped with F-16s by 1993). Also under control of Tactical Air Command is 1 squadron of the USAF, flying F-15C/D Eagles in the air defence role. 3 squadrons of Alouette III and Bölkow Bö 105C helicopters are under control of the Royal Netherlands Army, but flown and maintained by the RNLAf for use in the communications and observation roles. Also operated is 1 squadron of F.27 Friendship/Troopship transport aircraft, and another (based in Curaçao) with F.27 maritime patrol aircraft.

Training of RNLAf pilots is undertaken in the USA, Belgium and the Netherlands. The surface-to-air missile force consists of 1 group of Nike Hercules (to be disbanded in 1988), 1 group of Hawk and Patriot missile systems and 1 group of Hawk (to be partly re-equipped with Patriot as of 1989). Hawk missiles are also used for air defence in the Netherlands.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Netherlands is a member of UN, the European Communities, OECD, the Council of Europe and NATO.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The revenue and expenditure of the central government (ordinary and extraordinary) were, in 1m. guilders, for calendar years:

	1981 <sup>2</sup>	1982 <sup>2</sup>	1983 <sup>2</sup>	1984 <sup>3</sup>	1985 <sup>3</sup>	1986 <sup>4</sup>	1987 <sup>6</sup>
Revenue <sup>1</sup>	110,913	113,967	115,002	127,918	138,605	159,689	156,111
Expenditure <sup>5</sup>	130,589	142,586	146,622	157,709	162,085	167,321	170,275

<sup>1</sup> Without the revenue of loans.

<sup>2</sup> Accounts.

<sup>3</sup> Preliminary accounts.

<sup>4</sup> Revised budget figures.

<sup>5</sup> Without redemption of loans.

<sup>6</sup> Budget figures.

The revenue and expenditure of the Agriculture Equalization Fund, the Fund for Central Government roads, the Property Acquisition Fund and of the Investment Account Fund (established in 1978) have been incorporated in the general budget.

The national debt, in 1m. guilders, was on 31 Dec.:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Internal funded debt	153,262	183,312	208,484	219,466	234,474
„ floating „	21,535	19,806	19,799	19,969	16,683
Total	174,797	203,118	228,283	239,435	251,157

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *guilder* (guilder, florin) of 100 *cents*. In March 1989 the rate of exchange was US\$1 = 2.09 guilders; £1 = 3.60 guilders.

Legal tender are bank-notes, silver 10-guilder pieces, nickel 2½- and 1-guilder pieces, 25-cent, 10-cent pieces and bronze 5-cent pieces.

**Banking.** The Netherlands Bank, founded as a private institution, was nationalized on 1 Aug. 1948, the shareholders receiving, for a share of 1,000 guilders, a security of 2,000 guilders on the 2½% National Debt. Since 1863 the bank has the sole right of issuing bank-notes. The capital amounts to 75m. guilders.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures was adopted in the Netherlands in 1820.



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The total production of electrical energy (in 1m. kwh.) amounted in 1938 to 3,688; 1958, 13,854; 1970, 40,859; 1980, 64,806; 1984, 62,778; 1985, 62,936; 1986, 67,148; 1987, 68,437. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Gas.** Production of manufactured gas (milliard k joule): 1978, 181,033; 1979, 233,553; 1980, 210,011; 1981, 197,586; 1982, 244,438; 1983, 258,515; 1984, 267,643. Production of natural gas in 1950, 8m. cu. metres: 1955, 139; 1960, 384; 1970, 31,688; 1980, 91,153; 1981, 84,617; 1982, 72,035; 1983, 76,536; 1984, 77,251; 1985, 80,721; 1986, 74,037; 1987, 74,247.

**Minerals.** On 1 Jan. 1975 all coalmines were closed.

The production of crude petroleum (in 1,000 tonnes) amounted in 1943 (first year) to 0.2; 1953, 820; 1970, 1,919; 1978, 1,402; 1979, 1,316; 1980, 1,280; 1981, 1,348; 1982, 1,637; 1983, 2,589; 1984, 3,102; 1985, 3,729; 1986, 4,628; 1987, 4,291.

There are saltmines at Hengelo and Delfzijl; production (in 1,000 tonnes), 1950, 412.6; 1960, 1,096; 1970, 2,871; 1978, 2,939; 1979, 3,951; 1980, 3,464; 1981, 3,578; 1982, 3,191; 1983, 3,124; 1984, 3,674; 1985, 4,154; 1986, 3,763; 1987, 3,979.

**Agriculture.** The net area of all holdings was divided as follows (in hectares):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Field crops	738,808	749,722	763,068	787,078	789,798
Grass	1,178,534	1,164,290	1,141,978	1,124,472	1,114,009
Market gardening	68,110	72,288	72,352	66,971	70,415
Land for flower bulbs	14,558	15,055	15,564	16,432	16,420
Flower cultivation	5,824	5,965	6,216	6,377	6,623
Nurseries	6,498	6,738	7,037	7,523	7,911
Fallow land	3,763	4,965	6,367	5,410	6,493
Total	2,016,095	2,019,023	2,012,589	2,014,263	2,011,669

The net areas under special crops were as follows (in hectares):

Products	1987	1988	Products	1987	1988
Autumn wheat	103,221	104,182	Colza	9,706	7,272
Spring wheat	7,630	10,279	Flax	4,138	4,487
Rye	9,921	6,592	Agricultural seeds	22,084	24,627
Autumn barley	8,517	6,277	Potatoes, edible <sup>1</sup>	110,030	104,148
Spring barley	41,985	56,392	Potatoes, industrial <sup>2</sup>	58,316	56,673
Oats	2,999	13,167	Sugar-beet	127,725	123,374
Peas	36,354	28,210	Fodder-beet	1,907	2,078

<sup>1</sup> Including early and seed potatoes.

<sup>2</sup> Including seed potatoes.

The yield of the more important products, in tonnes, was as follows:

Crop	Average 1960-69	Average 1970-79	1986	1987	1988 <sup>1</sup>
Wheat	630,054	701,934	940,129	768,250	815,500
Rye	289,503	103,442	19,468	24,661	27,000
Barley	388,444	327,345	262,191	261,847	311,200
Oats	385,164	144,855	39,694	47,088	62,700
Field beans	1,847	...	29,984	48,091	...
Peas	61,808	19,972	124,376	121,552	113,800
Colza	11,763	32,797	20,144	30,963	22,900
Flax, unripped	159,257	43,620	24,821	31,745	31,300
Potatoes, edible <sup>2</sup>	2,508,369	3,084,356	4,751,998	4,955,081	4,606,400
Potatoes, industrial	1,469,799	2,554,555	2,104,617	2,522,446	...
Sugar-beet	4,045,153	5,546,689	7,706,695	6,920,023	...
Fodder-beet	1,678,285	348,117	171,018	166,075	...

<sup>1</sup> 1988 figures provisional.

<sup>2</sup> Including early potatoes.

**Livestock.** May 1988: 4,710,491 cattle, 13,933,819 pigs; 64,800 horses and ponies; 1,169,014 sheep, 95,154,970 poultry.

In 1987 the production of butter, under state control, declined to 199,250 tonnes; that of cheese, under state control, increased to 569,186 tonnes. Export value (processed and unprocessed) of arable crops amounted to 16,851m. guilders; animal produce, 18,766m. guilders and horticultural produce, 10,985m. guilders.

**Fisheries.** The total produce of fish landed from the sea and inshore fisheries in 1981 was valued at 595m. guilders; the total weight amounted to 399,438 tonnes. In 1981 the herring fishery had a value of 26m. guilders and a weight of 16,710 tonnes. The quantity of oysters produced in 1981 amounted to 573 tonnes (10m. guilders).

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Numbers employed (in 1,000) and turnover (in 1 m. guilders) in manufacturing enterprises with 10 employees and more, excluding building:

<i>Class in industry</i>	<i>Numbers employed</i>		<i>Turnover</i>	
	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>
Mining and quarrying	26.2	18.5	9.4	9.3
Manufacturing industry	239.6	237.3	808.5	811.2
Foodstuffs and tobacco products	70.0	67.4	131.9	132.7
Textile industry	5.1	5.0	23.8	22.8
Clothing	1.5	1.4	10.2	9.7
Leather and footwear	1.0	0.9	5.9	5.8
Wood and furniture industry	4.3	4.5	24.4	25.2
Paper industry	7.1	7.1	23.9	24.7
Graphic industry, publishers	12.3	13.4	62.7	64.0
Petroleum industry	14.6	15.5	9.3	9.3
Chemical industry, artificial yarns and fibre industry	36.2	36.5	87.1	87.6
Rubber and synthetic materials processing industry	6.4	6.7	26.9	28.0
Building industry, earthenware and glass	6.3	6.4	28.8	29.1
Basic metal industry	8.7	7.8	30.7	29.9
Metal products (excl. machinery and means of transport)	13.1	12.8	71.5	72.8
Machinery	14.8	14.5	82.2	78.7
Electrical industry	24.1	23.5	117.6	121.5
Means of transport	12.6	12.4	60.0	57.8
Instrument making and optical industry	0.9	1.0	7.4	7.2
Other industries	0.7	0.7	4.2	4.4
Public utilities	23.2	18.5	...	...

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

**Commerce.** On 5 Sept. 1944 and 14 March 1947 the Netherlands signed agreements with Belgium and Luxembourg for the establishment of a customs union. On 1 Jan. 1948 this union came into force and the existing customs tariffs of the Belgium-Luxembourg Economic Union and of the Netherlands were superseded by the joint Benelux Customs Union Tariff. It applies to imports into the 3 countries from outside sources, and exempts from customs duties all imports into each of the 3 countries from the other two. The Benelux tariff has 991 items and 2,400 separate specifications.

Returns of special imports and special exports for calendar years (in 1,000 guilders):

	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>		<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
1949	5,331,569	3,851,126	1984	198,813,498	210,663,054
1959	14,968,454	13,702,927	1985	216,008,008	226,017,400
1969	39,955,406	36,205,110	1986	185,052,790	197,286,108
1979	134,885,386	127,689,416	1987	184,477,026	187,574,394

Value of the trade with leading countries (in 1,000 guilders):

<i>Country</i>	<i>Imports</i>			<i>Exports</i>		
	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Belgium-Luxembourg	26,640,785	26,286,181	26,733,761	31,901,604	28,057,567	27,191,419
France	14,459,136	13,319,119	13,433,252	23,411,539	21,253,869	20,417,233
Germany (Fcd. Rep.)	48,326,397	48,888,290	49,012,046	67,683,921	55,687,427	51,405,119
Indonesia	792,064	630,571	632,353	534,332	664,440	511,816
Italy	6,531,097	7,034,169	6,928,697	13,006,527	12,474,524	12,089,519
Kuwait	3,124,506	1,517,250	1,704,471	350,155	298,297	214,530
Sweden	4,087,953	4,077,128	4,037,563	3,745,261	3,538,996	3,600,610
UK	21,541,672	15,213,018	14,187,862	21,408,907	20,093,817	19,340,347
USA	17,834,450	14,569,326	13,306,511	11,842,083	9,333,552	8,132,771
Venezuela	301,908	83,963	179,440	303,207	268,014	204,539

Total trade between the Netherlands and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	6,147,298	6,550,735	6,615,851	7,148,036	8,279,747
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,127,991	7,344,681	5,442,503	5,856,164	5,583,280

**Tourism.** There were 3,114,000 foreign visitors in 1987 (hotels only). 604,000 came from the Federal Republic of Germany, 556,000 from UK and 396,000 from USA. Total income from tourism (1987) US\$1,853m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 the length of the Netherlands network of surfaced inter-urban roads was 54,525 km, of which 2,040 km were motor highways. Number of private cars (1987), 5.1m.

**Railways.** All railways are run by the mixed company 'N.V. Nederlandse Spoorwegen'. Length of line in 1987 was 2,809 km, of which 1,931 km were electrified. Passengers carried (1987), 222m.; goods transported, 18.6m. tonnes.

**Aviation.** The Royal Dutch Airlines (KLM) was founded on 7 Oct. 1919. Revenue traffic, 1987-88: Passengers, 6.6m.; freight, 385m. kg; mail, 19m. kg.

**Sea-going Shipping.** Survey of the Netherlands mercantile marine as at 1 Jan. (capacity in 1,000 GRT):

	1987		1988	
<i>Ships under Netherlands flag</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Capacity</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Capacity</i>
Passenger ships <sup>1</sup>	4	49	4	77
Freighters (100 GRT and over)	476	2,506	410	2,138
Tankers	69	721	59	678
	549	3,276	473	2,892

<sup>1</sup> With accommodation for 13 or more cabin passengers.

In 1987, 43,782 sea-going ships of 361 m. gross tons entered Netherlands ports.

Total goods traffic by sea-going ships in 1987 (with 1986 figures in brackets), in 1m. tonnes, amounted to 250 (258) unloaded, of which 118 (122) tankshipping, and 83 (79) loaded, of which 30 (28) tankshipping. The total seaborne freight traffic at Rotterdam was 254m. (258m.) and at Amsterdam 29m. (29m.) tonnes.

The number of containers (including flats) at Rotterdam in 1987 (with 1986 figures in brackets) was: Unloaded from ships, 976,666 (988,859), of which 241,677 (287,632) from North America, and 1,010,178 (1,011,863) loaded into ships, of which 175,583 (156,300) to North America.

**Inland Shipping.** The total length of navigable rivers and canals is 4,831 km, of which about 2,391 km is for ships with a capacity of 1,000 and more tonnes. On 1 Jan. 1987 the Netherlands inland fleet actually used for transport (with carrying capacity in 1,000 tonnes) was composed as follows:

	<i>Number</i>	<i>Capacity</i>
Self-propelled barges	5,310	3,925
Dumb barges	392	386
Pushed barges	565	1,241
	6,267	5,552

In 1987, 273m. (1986: 271m.) tonnes of goods were transported on rivers and canals, of which 183m. (188m.) was international traffic. Goods transport on the Rhine across the Dutch-German frontier near Lobith amounted to 119m. (123m.) tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 6m. telephone connexions (42 per 100 inhabitants). Number of telex lines, 39,000. *Nederlandse Omroep Stichting* (NOS) provides 5 programmes on medium-waves and FM in co-operation with broadcasting organizations. Regional programmes are also broadcast.



Advertisements are transmitted. NOS broadcasts 3 TV programmes. Advertisements, 1986–87 were restricted to 5.5% of the transmission time in the evening. Television sets (1 Jan. 1988) totalled 4.7m.; holders of television licences may, in addition, have wireless receiving sets.

**Cinemas** (end 1987). There were 443 cinemas with a seating capacity of 106,000.

**Newspapers** (Sept. 1986). There were 85 daily newspapers with a total circulation of nearly 4.6m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the High Court of the Netherlands (Court of Cassation), by 5 courts of justice (Courts of Appeal), by 19 district courts and by 62 cantonal courts; trial by jury is unknown. The Cantonal Court, which deals with minor offences, is formed by a single judge; the more serious cases are tried by the district courts, formed as a rule by 3 judges (in some cases one judge is sufficient); the courts of appeal are constituted of 3 and the High Court of 5 judges. All judges are appointed for life by the Sovereign (the judges of the High Court from a list prepared by the Second Chamber of the States-General). They can be removed only by a decision of the High Court.

At the district court the juvenile judge is specially appointed to try children's civil cases and at the same time charged with administration of justice for criminal actions committed by young persons between 12 and 18 years old, unless imprisonment of more than 6 months ought to be inflicted; such cases are tried by 3 judges.

Number of sentences, and cases in which prosecution was evaded by paying a fine to the public prosecutor (excluding violation of economic and tax laws):

<i>Major offences</i>		<i>Minor offences</i>	
1985	93,855	1985	963,422
1986	93,148	1986	823,328
1987	97,361	1987	915,329

In addition, prosecution was evaded by paying a fine to the police in 1,725,419 cases in 1987.

**Police.** There are both State and Municipal Police. In 1987 the State Police, about 8,500 men strong, served 566, and the Municipal Police, about 20,300 men strong, served 148 municipalities. The State Police includes ordinary as well as water, mounted and motor police. The State Police Corps is under the jurisdiction of the Police Department of the Ministry of Justice, which also includes the Central Criminal Investigation Office, which deals with serious crimes throughout the country, and the International Criminal Investigation Office, which informs foreign countries of international crimes.

**Religion.** Entire liberty of conscience is granted to the members of all denominations. The royal family belong to the Dutch Reformed Church.

The number of adherents of the Churches according to survey estimates of 1983 was: Roman Catholics, 5,180,000; Dutch Reformed Church, 2,770,000; Reformed Churches, 1,134,000; other creeds, 631,000; no religion, 4,635,000.

The government of the Reformed Church is Presbyterian. On 1 July 1972 the Dutch Reformed Church had 1 synod, 11 provincial districts, 54 classes, 147 districts and 1,905 parishes.

Their clergy numbered 2,000. The Roman Catholic Church had, Jan. 1973, 1 archbishop (of Utrecht), 6 bishops and 1,815 parishes and rectorships. The Old Catholics had (1 July 1972) 1 archbishop (Utrecht), 2 bishops and 29 parishes. The Jews had, in 1970, 46 communities.

**Education.** Statistics for the scholastic year 1986–87:

	<i>Full-time</i>			<i>Part-time <sup>1</sup></i>		
	<i>Pupils</i>	<i>Students</i>		<i>Pupils</i>	<i>Students</i>	
	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Female</i>	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Female</i>
Basic schools	8,465	1,447,776	714,396	—	—	—
Special schools	1,000	103,047	32,596	—	—	—
Secondary general schools	1,354	775,826	409,394	80	100,930	72,454
Secondary vocational schools:						
Junior—						
Technical, nautical	368	167,733	16,125	4	210	4
Agricultural	133	32,995	9,646	82	1,502	463
Domestic science	491	84,103	78,839	—	—	—
Other	259	44,528	25,313	—	—	—
Senior—						
Technical, nautical	130	81,965	7,858	47	7,410	312
Agricultural	63	18,799	3,451	35	5,646	704
Service trade and health care training	187	77,064	69,936	50	10,448	7,045
Teachers' training (nursery schools)	27	85	83	45	409	399
Other	207	110,516	51,420	470	182,683	67,087
Third level non-university training:						
Technical, nautical	70	38,078	4,250	18	3,931	464
Agricultural	19	7,300	1,610	2	356	47
Arts	50	16,149	8,976	32	4,889	2,485
Teachers' training	126	25,572	15,969	97	27,042	14,058
Other	143	64,160	37,303	60	21,896	11,136

<sup>1</sup> Including apprenticeship schemes, young workers' educational institutes.

#### *Academic Year 1985–86*

	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Full-time Students</i>		<i>Part-time Students</i>	
		<i>Total</i>	<i>Female</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Female</i>
University education:					
Humanities	21	29,837	16,892	1,098	565
Social sciences		68,623	27,703	9,923	3,818
Natural sciences		14,350	3,596	193	47
Technical sciences		23,848	2,160	...	...
Medical sciences		17,853	7,965	98	58
Agricultural sciences		6,436	2,308	54	18

**Health.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 34,573 doctors and about 67,445 licensed hospital beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Netherlands in Great Britain (38 Hyde Park Gate, London, SW7 5DP)  
*Ambassador:* Hans Jonkman, GCVO (accredited 20 Feb. 1987).

Of Great Britain in the Netherlands (Lange Voorhout, 10, The Hague)  
*Ambassador:* M. R. H. Jenkins, CMG.

Of the Netherlands in the USA (4200 Linnean Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Richard H. Fein.

Of the USA in the Netherlands (Lange Voorhout, 102, The Hague)  
*Ambassador:* John S. Shad.

Of the Netherlands to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Adriaan Jacobovits de Szeged.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The 'Centraal Bureau voor de Statistiek' at Voorburg and Heerlen, is the official Netherlands statistical service. *Director-General of Statistics:* Prof. Dr W. Begeer.

The Bureau was founded in 1899. Prior to that year, statistical publications were compiled by the 'Centrale commissie voor de statistiek', the 'Vereniging voor staathuishoudkunde en

statistiek' and various government departments. These activities have gradually been taken over and co-ordinated by the Central Bureau, which now compiles practically all government statistics.

Its current publications include:

- Statistical Yearbook of the Netherlands*. From 1923/24 (preceded by *Jaarcijfers voor het Koninkrijk der Nederlanden*, 1898–1922); latest issue, 1987 (in English)
- Statistisch zakboek (Pocket Year Book)*. From 1899/1924 (1 vol.); latest issue, 1987
- CBS Select (Statistical Essays)*. From 1980; latest issue, 1987
- Statistisch Bulletin* (From 1945; weekly statistical bulletin)
- Maandschrift* (From 1944; monthly bulletin)
- 85 Jaren Statistiek In Tijdreeksen* (historical series of the Netherlands 1899–1984)
- Nationale Rekeningen (National Accounts)*. From 1948–50; latest issue, 1987
- Statistisch Magazine*. From 1981
- Statistische onderzoeken*. From 1977
- Statistical Studies*. From 1953
- Regionaal Statistisch Zakboek (Regional Pocket Yearbook)*. From 1972, latest issue 1986
- Environmental Statistics of the Netherlands*, 1987 (in English)

### Other Official Publications

- Central Economic Plan*. Centraal Plan bureau, The Hague (Dutch text), annually, from 1946
- Netherlands*. Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development. Paris, annual from 1964
- Staatsalmanak voor het Koninkrijk der Nederlanden*. Annual. The Hague, from 1814
- Staatsblad van het Koninkrijk der Nederlanden*. The Hague, from 1814
- Staatscourant (State Gazette)*. The Hague, from 1813
- Atlas van Nederland*. Government Printing Office, The Hague, 1970 and supplements up to and including 1973
- Basic Guide to the Establishing of Industrial Operations in the Netherlands 1976*. Ministry of Economic Affairs, The Hague, 1976

### Non-Official Publications

- Jansonius, H., *Nieuw Groot Nederlands—Engels Woordenboek Voor Studie en Praktijk*. 3 vols. Leiden, 1973 (Vols. 1–3)
- King, P. K. and Wintle, M., *The Netherlands*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988
- Pyttersen's Nederlandse Almanak*. Zaltbommel, annual, from 1899
- A Compact Geography of the Netherlands*. Utrecht, 1980
- National Library*: De Koninklijke Bibliotheek, Prinz Willem Alexanderhof 5, The Hague. Director: Dr C. Reedijk.

## ARUBA

**HISTORY.** Discovered by Alonzo de Ojeda in 1499, the island of Aruba was claimed for Spain but not settled. It was acquired by the Dutch in 1634, but apart from garrisons was left to the indigenous Caiquetios (Arawak) Indians until the 19th century. From 1828 it formed part of the Dutch West Indies and, from 1845, part of the Netherlands Antilles, with which on 29 Dec. 1954 it achieved internal self-government.

Following a referendum in March 1977, the Dutch government announced on 28 Oct. 1981 that Aruba would proceed to independence separately from the other islands. Aruba was constitutionally separated from the Netherlands Antilles from 1 Jan. 1986, and full independence has been promised by the Netherlands after a 10-year period.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island, which lies in the southern Caribbean 24 km north of the Venezuelan coast and 68 km west of Curaçao, has an area of 193 sq. km (75 sq. miles) and a population at the 1981 census of 60,312; estimate (1988) 62,500. The chief towns are Oranjestad, the capital (20,000) and Sint Nicolaas, site of the former oil refinery (17,000). Dutch is the official language, but the language usually spoken is Papiamentu, a creole language. Unlike other Caribbean islands, over half the population is of Indian stock, with the balance chiefly of Dutch, Spanish and mestizo origin.



**CLIMATE.** Aruba has a tropical marine climate, with a brief rainy season from Oct. to Dec. Oranjestad. Jan. 79°F (26.0°C), July 84°F (29.0°C). Annual rainfall 17" (432 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the separate constitution inaugurated on 1 Jan. 1986, Aruba is an autonomous part of the Kingdom of the Netherlands with its own legislature, government, judiciary, civil service and police force. The Netherlands is represented by a Governor appointed by the monarch. The unicameral legislature (*Staten*) consists of 21 members; at the general elections held on 27 Nov. 1985, 8 seats were won by the (*Movimento Electoral di Pueblo*, 7 by the *Arubaanse Volks Partij*, and 2 each by 3 smaller parties with whom the AVP formed a coalition government.

*Governor:* Felipe B. Tromp.

*Prime Minister, Minister of General Affairs:* J. Henny Eman.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Transport and Communications:* Benny Nisbet.

*Economic Affairs and Labour:* Leonard Berlinski. *Justice:* Watty Vos. *Education and Welfare:* Mito Croes. *Utilities and Public Works:* Charo Kelly. *Finance:* Armand W. Giebrecht.

*Flag:* Blue, with 2 narrow horizontal yellow stripes, and in the canton a red 4-pointed star fimbriated in white.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1984 budget totalled 207m. guilders revenue and 278m. guilders expenditure.

**Currency.** From 1 Jan. 1986 the currency has been the Aruban florin, at par with the Netherlands Antilles guilder. In March 1989, £1 = 3.09 *Aruban florins*; US\$1 = 1.80 *Aruban florins*.

**Banking.** As well as the Aruba Bank, there are local branches of the Algemene Bank Nederland, Barclays Bank International, Caribbean Mercantile Bank and Citibank.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Generating capacity totals 310,000 kw. Production (1986) 945m. kwh.

**Oil.** The Exxon refinery dominated the economy from 1929–85, when it was closed, resulting in unemployment reaching 40% by the end of 1985.

**Minerals.** Gold, first discovered in 1825, is still found but in uneconomic quantities.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Trade.** Total trade between Aruba and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	572	296	133
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,972	5,652	7,315

**Tourism.** Tourism is now the main economic sector. In 1986 there were 181,000 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 380 km of surfaced highways. In 1984 there were 23,409 passenger cars and 582 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is an international airport (Prinses Beatrix) served by numerous airlines.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 5 radio stations and 1 television station. In 1983 there were 17,000 telephones.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Aruban judiciary is now separated from that of the Netherlands Antilles. There is a Court of First Instance and a Court of Appeal situated in Oranjestad.

**Religion.** In 1981, 89% of the population were Roman Catholic and 7% Protestant.

**Education.** In 1983 there were 33 elementary schools with 6,763 pupils, 10 junior high schools with 3,082 pupils and 4 senior schools and colleges with 881 students.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 59 doctors, 16 dentists, 9 pharmacists, 189 nursing personnel and one hospital with 279 beds.

## THE NETHERLANDS ANTILLES

### De Nederlandse Antillen

**HISTORY.** Bonaire and Curaçao islands, originally populated by Caiquetios Indians, were discovered in 1499 by Amerigo Vespucci and Alonso de Ojeda respectively, and claimed for Spain. They were settled in 1527, and the indigenous population exterminated and replaced by a slave-worked plantation economy. The 3 Windward Islands, inhabited by Caribs, were discovered by Columbus in 1493. They were taken by the Dutch in 1632 (Saba and Sint Eustatius), 1634 (Curaçao and Bonaire) and 1648 (the southern part of Sint Maarten, with France acquiring the northern part). With Aruba, the islands formed part of the Dutch West Indies from 1828, and the Netherlands Antilles from 1845, with internal self-government being granted on 29 Dec. 1954. Aruba was separated from 1 Jan. 1986.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Netherlands Antilles comprise two groups of islands, the Leeward group (Curaçao and Bonaire) being situated 100 km north of the Venezuelan coast and the Windward Islands situated 800 km away to the north-east, at the northern end of the Lesser Antilles. The total area is 800 sq. km (308 sq. miles) and the Census population in 1981 was 235,707. Estimate (1986) 188,501 (excluding Aruba). Willemstad is the capital.

The areas, populations and chief towns of the islands are:

<i>Island</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1981 Census</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>Population</i>
Bonaire	288	9,065	Kralendijk	1,200
Curaçao	444	148,611	Willemstad	50,000
Saba	13	963	Leverock	—
Sint Eustatius	21	1,428	Oranjestad	—
Sint Maarten <sup>1</sup>	34	14,639	Philipsburg	6,000

<sup>1</sup> The southern part belongs to the Netherlands Antilles, the northern to France.

Dutch is the official language, but the languages usually spoken are Papiamentu (a creole language) on Curaçao and Bonaire, and English in the Windward Islands.

Vital statistics (1985, excluding Sint Eustatius and Aruba): Live births, 3,786; marriages, 1,061; deaths, 1,091.

**CLIMATE.** All the islands have a tropical marine climate, with very little difference in temperatures over the year. There is a short rainy season from Oct. to Jan. Willemstad. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 23" (582 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 29 Dec. 1954, the Netherlands Antilles became an integral part of the Kingdom of the Netherlands but are fully autonomous in internal affairs, and constitutionally equal with the Netherlands and Aruba. The Sovereign of the Kingdom of the Netherlands is Head of State and Government, and is represented by a Governor.

The executive power in internal affairs rests with the Governor and the Council

of Ministers, who together form the Government. The Ministers are responsible to a unicameral legislature (*Staten*) consisting of 22 members (since 1985, 14 from Curaçao, 3 from Bonaire, 3 from Sint Maarten, and 1 each from Saba and Sint Eustatius) elected by universal suffrage. In general elections held on 22 Nov. 1985, 9 seats were won by the *Democratische Partij*, 6 by the *Nationale Volks Partij*, 4 by the *Movimento Antijas Nobo*, and 1 each by three smaller parties.

The executive power in external affairs is vested in the Council of Ministers of the Kingdom, in which the Antilles is represented by a Minister Plenipotentiary with full voting powers. On each of the insular communities, local autonomous power is divided between an Island Council (elected by universal suffrage), the Executive Council and the Lieut.-Governor, responsible for law and order.

*Governor:* Dr Rene A. Römer.

The Cabinet in May 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Maria Liberia Peters.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Transport, Communications and Health:* Louis Gumbs. *Justice:* Ivo Knoppel. *Finance:* Gilbert de Paula. *Trade, Industry and Employment:* Chuchu Smits. *Social Affairs:* Stanley Inderson. *Development:* Franklin Christian. *Education:* Ellis Woodley.

*Flag:* White, with a red vertical strip crossed by a blue horizontal strip bearing 5 white stars.

## ECONOMY.

**Budget.** The central budget for 1984 envisaged 342.3m. NA guilders revenue and 394.5m. guilders expenditure.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Netherlands Antilles guilder* of 100 cents. There are notes of 250, 100, 50, 25, 10, 5, 2½ and 1 *guilder*, and coins of 2½ and 1 *guilder* and 25, 10, 5, 2½ and 1 *cent*. The official rate of exchange was £1 = 3.09 *NA guilder*; US\$1 = 1.80 *NA guilder* in March 1989.

**Banking.** At 31 Dec. 1986 the Bank of the Netherlands Antilles had total assets and liabilities of 628.9m. NA guilders; commercial banks, 1,863.5m. NA guilders.

Post office savings banks had deposits of 6,142,000 NA guilders in 1986.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) totalled 365m. kwh.

**Oil.** The economy was formerly based largely on oil refining at the Shell refinery on Curaçao, but following an announcement by Shell that closure was imminent, this was sold to the Netherlands Antilles government in Sept. 1985, and leased to *Petróleos de Venezuela* to operate on a reduced scale.

**Minerals.** About 100,000 tons of calcium phosphate are mined annually.

**Agriculture.** Livestock (1987): Cattle, 9,000; goats, 25,000. Figures include Aruba.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1982) 11,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Curaçao has one of the largest ship-repair dry docks in the western hemisphere. Curaçao has a paint factory, 2 cigarette factories, a textile factory, a brewery and some smaller industries. Bonaire has a textile factory and a modern-equipped salt plant. Sint Maarten has a rum factory and fishing is important. Sint Eustatius and Saba are of less economic importance.

**Labour.** In 1987 the economically active population numbered 58,742, the working population 41,760.

**Commerce** (1986). Total imports amounted to 2,002m. NA guilders, total exports to 1,641m. NA guilders.



Total trade between the Netherlands Antilles and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986 <sup>1</sup>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988
Imports to UK	221,012	163,236	78,509	5,133	7,823 <sup>1</sup>
Exports and re-exports from UK	20,235	19,844	17,260	19,635	20,089

<sup>1</sup> Excluding Aruba.

**Tourism.** In 1986, 594,000 tourists visited the islands (Sint Maarten, 439,000; Curaçao, 128,000; Bonaire, 27,000) excluding 441,000 cruise passengers (Curaçao, 126,000; Sint Maarten, 314,000).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984, the Netherlands Antilles had 820 km of surfaced highway distributed as follows: Curaçao, 550; Bonaire, 210; Sint Maarten, 3. Number of motor vehicles (31 Dec. 1986): 19,273.

**Aviation.** There are international airports on Curaçao (Hato Airport), Bonaire (Flamingo Field) and Sint Maarten (Princess Juliana Airport). In 1986 Curaçao handled 950,295 passengers, Bonaire 191,001 and Sint Maarten 1,001,605.

**Shipping** (1986). 897 tankers (totalling 19.69m. GRT) and 3,107 other motor and steamships of over 50 GRT (totalling 8,167,000 GRT) entered the port of Curaçao; 55 tankers (3,012,000 GRT) and 551 other motor and steamships (501,000 GRT) entered the port of Bonaire. Curaçao handled 172,904 passengers, Bonaire 3,898 and Sint Maarten 1,021,896.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones, 1986, 40,301. At 31 Dec. 1986 there were 17 radio transmitters (6 on Bonaire, 8 on Curaçao and 1 each on Saba, Sint Eustatius and Sint Maarten) and 6 TV channels (5 on Curaçao, 1 on Sint Maarten). These stations broadcast in *Papiamentu*, Dutch, English and Spanish and are mainly financed by income from advertisements. In addition, Radio Nederland and Trans World Radio have powerful relay stations operating on medium- and short-waves from Bonaire. There were (1984, including Aruba) 160,000 radio and 57,000 TV receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1985 there were 4 daily newspapers with a total circulation of 44,500.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Court of First Instance, which sits in each island, and a Court of Appeal in Willemstad.

**Religion.** In 1981, 85% of the population were Roman Catholics, 9.7% were Protestants (Sint Maarten and Sint Eustatius being chiefly Protestant).

**Education.** In 1986 (preliminary) there were 24,600 pupils and 1,145 teachers in 91 primary schools, 8,600 pupils and 630 teachers in 22 secondary schools, 7,760 students and 750 teachers in 34 technical and vocational schools, and 700 students with 80 teaching staff in higher education. Special education for 1,750 naturally deficient children was provided in 18 schools with 190 teachers.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 232 doctors, 47 dentists and (1985) 1,779 hospital beds; 1,465 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVE

*USA Consul-General:* Martin McLean.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Statistical publications (on population, trade, cost of living, etc., are obtainable on request from the Statistical Office, Willemstad, Curaçao. *Statistical Jaarboek 1970* (text in Dutch, English and Spanish).

*De West Indische Gids.* The Hague. Monthly from 1919

# NEW ZEALAND

*Capital:* Wellington

*Population:* 3.3m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$7,110 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The first European to discover New Zealand was Tasman in 1642. The coast was explored by Capt. Cook in 1769. From about 1800 onwards, New Zealand became a resort for whalers and traders, chiefly from Australia. By the Treaty of Waitangi, in 1840, between Governor William Hobson and the representatives of the Maori race, the Maori chiefs ceded the sovereignty to the British Crown and the islands became a British colony. Then followed a steady stream of British settlers.

The Maoris are a branch of the Polynesian race, having emigrated from the eastern Pacific before and during the 14th century. Between 1845 and 1848, and between 1860 and 1870, misunderstandings over land led to war, but peace was permanently established in 1871, and the development of New Zealand has been marked by racial harmony and integration.

**EVENTS.** The cyclone 'Bola' devastated a large area of North Island in March 1988 causing damage of more than NZ\$1,000m.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** New Zealand lies south-east of Australia in the south Pacific, Wellington being 1,983 km from Sydney by sea. There are two principal islands, the North and South Islands, besides Stewart Island, Chatham Islands and small outlying islands, as well as the territories overseas (*see pp. 930-32*).

New Zealand (*i.e.*, North, South and Stewart Islands) extends over 1,750 km from north to south. Area, excluding territories overseas, 268,046 sq. km comprising North Island, 114,685 sq. km; South Island, 149,813 sq. km; Stewart Island, 1,746 sq. km; Chatham Islands, 963 sq. km; minor islands, 829 sq. km. Growth in census population, exclusive of territories overseas:

	<i>Total population</i>	<i>Average annual increase %</i>		<i>Total population</i>	<i>Average annual increase %</i>
1858	115,462	—	1926	1,408,139	2.06
1874	344,984	—	1936	1,573,810	1.13
1878	458,007	7.33	1945 <sup>1</sup>	1,702,298	0.83
1881	534,030	5.10	1951 <sup>1</sup>	1,939,472	2.37
1886	620,451	3.05	1956 <sup>1</sup>	2,174,062	2.31
1891	668,632	1.50	1961 <sup>1</sup>	2,414,984	2.12
1896	743,207	2.13	1966 <sup>1</sup>	2,676,919	2.10
1901 <sup>1</sup>	815,853	1.89	1971 <sup>1</sup>	2,862,631	1.34
1906	936,304	2.75	1976 <sup>1</sup>	3,129,383	1.71
1911	1,058,308	2.52	1981 <sup>1</sup>	3,175,737	0.20
1916 <sup>1</sup>	1,149,225	1.50	1986 <sup>1</sup>	3,307,084	0.82
1921	1,271,644	2.27			

The census of New Zealand is quinquennial, but the census falling in 1931 was abandoned as an act of national economy, and owing to war conditions the census due in 1941 was not taken until 25 Sept. 1945. <sup>1</sup> Excluding members of the Armed Forces overseas.

The areas and populations of local government regions (with principal centres) at 4 March 1986 were as follows <sup>1</sup>:

<i>Local Government Region (and principal centre)</i>	<i>Area <sup>2</sup> (sq. km)</i>	<i>Total Population</i>		<i>Intercensal change (%)</i>
		<i>1981 census</i>	<i>1986 census</i>	
Northland (Whangarei)	12,604	113,994	126,999	11.4
Auckland (Auckland) <sup>1</sup>	5,201	827,408	887,448	7.3
Thames Valley (Thames-Coromandel)	4,666	54,343	58,665	8.0
Bay of Plenty (Tauranga)	9,126	172,480	187,462	8.7
Waikato (Hamilton)	13,241	221,850	228,303	2.9
Tongariro (Taupo)	12,085	40,089	40,793	1.8
East Cape (Gisborne)	11,461	53,295	53,968	1.3
Hawke's Bay (Napier, Hastings)	12,396	137,840	140,709	2.1
Taranaki (New Plymouth)	7,876	103,798	107,600	3.7
Wanganui (Wanganui)	9,171	68,702	69,439	1.1
Manawatu (Palmerston North)	6,669	113,238	115,500	2.0

<i>Local Government Region (and principal centre)</i>	<i>Area<sup>2</sup> (sq. km)</i>	<i>Total Population</i>		<i>Intercensal change (%)</i>
		<i>1981 census</i>	<i>1986 census</i>	
Horowhenua (Levin)	1,614	49,296	53,592	8.7
Wellington (Wellington)	1,379	323,162	328,163	1.5
Wairarapa (Masterton)	6,894	39,689	39,608	-0.2
<i>Total, North Island<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>114,383</i>	<i>2,319,184</i>	<i>2,438,249</i>	<i>5.1</i>
Nelson Bays (Nelson)	10,197	65,934	69,648	5.6
Marlborough (Blenheim)	12,882	37,557	38,225	1.8
West Coast (Greymouth)	22,893	34,178	34,942	2.2
Canterbury (Christchurch)	17,465	336,846	348,712	3.5
Aorangi (Timaru)	19,910	84,772	81,294	-4.1
Clutha-Central Otago	28,982	45,402	48,771	7.4
Coastal-North Otago (Dunedin)	10,590	138,164	137,393	-0.6
Southland (Invercargill)	27,716	107,905	104,618	-3.0
<i>Total, South Island<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>150,635</i>	<i>850,758</i>	<i>863,603</i>	<i>1.3</i>
<i>Total, New Zealand<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>265,018</i>	<i>3,169,942</i>	<i>3,301,852</i>	<i>4.2</i>

<sup>1</sup> Excludes Great Barrier Island and Chatham Island Counties.

<sup>2</sup> Excludes Extra County Islands.

New Zealand-born residents made up 84.5% of the population at the 1986 census. Foreign-born (provisional): UK, 196,872; Australia, 46,839; Netherlands, 24,159; Samoa, 33,864; Cook Islands, 15,540; others (including USA and Ireland), 187,644.

Maori population: 1896, 42,113; 1936, 82,326; 1945, 98,744; 1951, 115,676; 1961, 171,553; 1971, 227,414; 1976, 270,035; 1981, 279,255; 1986, 294,201.

Populations of main urban areas as at 31 March 1988 were as follows:

Auckland	841,700	Invercargill	52,200
Christchurch	300,700	Nelson	45,200
Dunedin	106,600	New Plymouth	47,800
Hamilton	103,500	Rotorua	53,000
Napier-Hastings	107,500	Tauranga	61,800
Palmerston North	67,700	Timaru	28,400
Wellington	325,200	Wanganui	41,000
Gisborne	32,000	Whangarei	43,800

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Total live births</i>	<i>Ex-nuptial births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces (decrees absolute)</i>
1985	51,798	12,921	27,480	24,657	8,607
1986	52,824	14,237	27,045	24,037	8,753
1987	55,254	15,798	27,419	24,443	8,709

Birth rate, 1987, 16.7 per 1,000; death rate, 8.29 per 1,000; marriage rate, 7.39 per 1,000; infant mortality, 9.85 per 1,000 live births.

External migration (exclusive of crews and through passengers) for years ended 31 March:

	<i>Arrivals</i>	<i>Departures</i>		<i>Arrivals</i>	<i>Departures</i>
1982	946,287	951,030	1986	1,111,926	1,130,444
1983	915,463	900,021	1987	1,321,729	1,317,372
1984	922,868	912,311	1988	1,554,992	1,555,949
1985	1,017,212	1,016,995			

*Population and Migration: Part B—External Migration.* Dept. of Statistics, Wellington, Annually

**CLIMATE.** Lying in the cool temperate zone, New Zealand enjoys very mild winters for its latitude owing to its oceanic situation, and only the extreme south has cold winters. The situation of the mountain chain produces much sharper climatic contrasts between east and west than in a north-south direction. Observations for 1983: Auckland, Jan. 65.5°F (18.6°C), July 50°F (10.2°C). Annual rainfall 41.5" (1,053 mm). Christchurch, Jan. 61.3°F (16.3°C), July 42.4°F (5.8°C). Annual rainfall 29" (737 mm). Dunedin, Jan. 57.4°F (14.1°C), July 43.2°F (6.2°C). Annual rainfall 38.1" (968 mm). Hokitika, Jan. 56.1°F (13.4°C), July



43.5°F (6.4°C). Annual rainfall 132.2" (3,357 mm). Rotorua. Jan. 61.2°F (16.2°C), July 43.7°F (6.5°C). Annual rainfall 49.9" (1,268 mm). Wellington. Jan. 59.9°F (15.5°C), July 46.4°F (8.0°C). Annual rainfall 51.2" (1,300 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Definition was given the status of New Zealand by the (Imperial) Statute of Westminster of Dec. 1931, which had received the antecedent approval of the New Zealand Parliament in July 1931. The Governor-General's assent was given to the Statute of Westminster Adoption Bill on 25 Nov. 1947.

The powers, duties and responsibilities of the Governor-General and the Executive Council under the present system of responsible government are set out in Royal Letters Patent and Instructions thereunder of 11 May 1917, published in the *New Zealand Gazette* of 24 April 1919. In the execution of the powers vested in him the Governor-General must be guided by the advice of the Executive Council.

The following is a list of Governors-General, the title prior to June 1917 being Governor:

Earl of Liverpool	1917-20	Viscount Cobham	1957-62
Viscount Jellicoe	1920-24	Sir Bernard Fergusson	1962-67
Sir Charles Fergusson, Bt	1924-30	Sir Arthur Porritt, Bt	1967-72
Lord Bledisloe	1930-35	Sir Denis Blundell	1972-77
Viscount Galway	1935-41	Sir Keith Holyoake	1977-80
Sir Cyril Newall	1941-46	Sir David Beattie	1980-85
Lord Freyberg, VC	1946-52	Sir Paul Reeves	1985-
Lord Norrie	1952-57		

*National flag:* The British Blue Ensign with 4 stars of the Southern Cross in red, edged in white, in the fly.

*National anthems:* God Save the Queen; God Defend New Zealand (words by Thomas Bracken, music by John J. Woods).

Since Nov. 1977 both 'God Save the Queen' and 'God Defend New Zealand' have equal status as national anthems.

Parliament consists of the House of Representatives, the former Legislative Council having been abolished since 1 Jan. 1951.

The statute law on elections and the life of Parliament is contained in the Electoral Act, 1956. In 1974 the voting age was reduced from 20 to 18 years.

The House of Representatives from Aug. 1987 consists of 97 members, including 4 members representing Maori electorates, elected by the people for 3 years. The 4 Maori electoral districts cover the whole country and adult Maoris of half or more Maori descent are the electors. From 1976 a descendant of a Maori is entitled to register either for a general or a Maori electoral district. Women's suffrage was instituted in 1893: Women became eligible as members of the House of Representatives in 1919. The House in 1987 included 12 women members.

During Parliamentary sittings the proceedings of the House are broadcast regularly on sound radio.

House of Representatives as composed following the General Election in Aug. 1987: Labour, 58; National Party, 39.

The Executive Council was composed as follows in Dec. 1988:

*Governor-General and C.-in-C.:* The Most Rev. Sir Paul Reeves (from Nov. 1985).

*Prime Minister, Education, Security Intelligence Service:* David R. Lange.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Attorney-General, Justice, Environment:* Geoffrey W. R. Palmer.

*External Relations and Trade:* Michael K. Moore.

*Finance:* David F. Cayhill.

*State Owned Enterprises, Postmaster-General, Works and Development, Pacific Island Affairs, Broadcasting, Public Trust Office, Railways:* Stanley J. Rodger.

*Maori Affairs:* Koro T. Wetere.

*Health:* (Vacant).

*Foreign Affairs, Disarmament and Arms Control:* Cedric R. Marshall.

*Internal Affairs, Local Government, Civil Defence, Arts and Culture:* Michael E. R. Bassett.

*Tourism, Minister of State, Leader of the House:* Jonathon L. Hunt.

*Defence, Science and Technology:* Robert J. Tizard.

*Agriculture, Fisheries:* Colin J. Moyle.

*Labour, Immigration, State Services:* (Vacant).

*Employment, Youth Affairs:* Philip B. Goff.

*Women's Affairs, Consumer Affairs, Statistics:* Margaret K. Shields.

*Police, Forestry, Lands, Recreation and Sport, Survey and Land Information, Valuation Department:* Peter Tapsell.

*Housing, Conservation:* Helen Clark.

*Social Welfare, War Pensions:* Michael J. Cullen.

*Transport, Civil Aviation, Meteorological Services:* William P. Jeffries.

*Energy, Regional Development, Commerce:* David J. Butcher.

Ministers not in Cabinet but on Executive Council: Trevor A. de Cleene, Fran Wilde, Philip T. E. Woollaston, Peter Neilson.

The Prime Minister (provided with residence) had in 1988 a salary of NZ\$141,500 plus a tax-free expense allowance of \$23,400 per annum; Ministers with portfolio, \$98,800 plus a tax-free expense allowance of \$9,600 (Minister of Foreign Affairs \$15,600) per annum; Minister without portfolio, \$80,000 plus a tax-free expense allowance of \$7,500 per annum; Parliamentary Under-Secretaries, \$77,100 plus an expense allowance of \$7,500 per annum. In addition, Ministers and Parliamentary Under-Secretaries not provided with residence at the seat of Government receive \$1,000 per annum house allowance. An allowance of \$200 per day while travelling within New Zealand on public service is payable to Ministers.

The Speaker of the House of Representatives receives \$91,600 plus an expense allowance of \$12,600 per annum in addition to his electorate allowance, and residential quarters in Parliament House, and the Leader of the Opposition \$98,800 plus expense allowance of \$9,600 per annum, and allowances for travelling and housing.

Members were paid \$54,200 per annum, plus an expense allowance varying from \$7,500 to \$17,000 according to the area of electorate represented.

There is a compulsory contributory superannuation scheme for members; retiring allowances are payable to a member after 9 years' service and the attainment of 45 years of age.

Dollimore, H. N., *The Parliament of New Zealand and Parliament House*. 3rd ed. Wellington, 1973

Scott, K. J., *The New Zealand Constitution*. OUP, 1962

*Local Government.* New Zealand is divided into 22 regions, excluding the Chatham Islands and various uninhabited minor islands. Of these, two (Auckland and Wellington Regions) are under directly-elected Regional Councils with direct rating powers, while the other twenty are under United Councils, appointed by constituent second-tier authorities upon which they precept. The regions are subdivided into (at 31 March 1987) 85 counties, 18 districts, 118 boroughs (and cities) and 3 town districts; further districts are being formed by the amalgamation of counties, boroughs and town districts, which they will eventually replace fully. Great Barrier Island and the Chatham Islands form the 86th and 87th counties outside the regional structure. There are also numerous other local authorities created for specific functions.

**DEFENCE.** The control and co-ordination of defence activities is obtained through the Ministry of Defence. This is a unitary department combining not only all joint-Service functions but also the former Departments of Army, Navy and Air.

**Army.** The Chief of the General Staff commands the Army, assisted by the General Staff and the staffs of Defence Headquarters. A regular force battalion is stationed in Singapore.

There are 2 infantry battalions, 1 artillery battery, 1 light armoured squadron.

Regular personnel, in 1989, totalled 6,000 all ranks; reserves, 1,300, territorial personnel totalled 5,759.

**Navy.** The Royal New Zealand Navy is administered by the Chief of Naval Staff and the Deputy Chief of Naval Staff at Defence Headquarters.

The RNZN ships include 4 frigates (including *Wellington* (ex-*Bacchante*) and *Southland* (ex-*Dido*) transferred from the Royal Navy in 1982 and 1983 respectively), 1 large fleet supply ship with helicopter deck, 1 surveying vessel, 4 patrol craft, 4 new inshore defence boats, 1 old harbour defence motor launch, 2 survey boats, 2 oceanographic research ships, 1 diving tender, 1 training ship and 1 tug.

Personnel, in 1989, totalled 2,600 officers and ratings and 800 in the naval reserve.

**Air Force.** The Chief of Air Staff and Air Officer Commanding the RNZAF exercises command and administration of the RNZAF. Operational units of the RNZAF comprise a utility helicopter support unit (UH-1H Iroquois) based in Singapore as part of the NZ force, South-east Asia. Maritime (P-3B Orion), long and medium-range transport (Boeing 727, C-130H Hercules, Andover, F.27 Friendship) and helicopter (Iroquois, Wasp) squadrons are based at RNZAF Base Auckland, and Hobsonville; and offensive support (A-4 Skyhawk) at RNZAF Base Ohakea. Flying training units (Airtrainer, Strikemaster, TA-4 Skyhawks, Sioux) are located at RNZAF Bases Wigram and Ohakea; ground training is carried out at RNZAF Bases Auckland, Woodbourne and Wigram.

The strength as at 31 March 1989 was 4,200 regular personnel, 900 reserves.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** New Zealand is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OECD, South Pacific Forum and the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The following tables of revenue and expenditure relate to the Consolidated Account, which covers the ordinary revenue and expenditure of the general government—i.e., apart from capital items, commercial and special undertakings, advances, etc. Revenue in the Account (in NZ\$1 m.) was as follows:

Year ended 31 March	Customs and excise	Sales tax	Income tax	Other taxes	Trading profits and depart- mental receipts	Interest	Total
1985	1,003.6	1,561.0	8,348.5	666.4	884.7	984.7	13,448.9
1986	966.9	1,553.6	10,567.2	724.5	1,287.3	1,446.7	16,546.2
1987	1,577.0	1,016.7	12,431.8	1,963.6	1,470.0	1,616.5	20,075.6
1988	2,771.8	0.5	13,799.9	4,446.3	2,905.6	1,900.6	25,824.8

Expenditure from Consolidated Account, year ended 31 March, was as follows (in NZ\$1 m.):

	Debt services	Social services <sup>1</sup>	Industrial development	Defence	Total (including other)
1985	2,781.4	8,254.1	1,984.8	756.4	16,162.4
1986	3,622.4	10,041.1	1,697.3	870.5	18,317.6
1987	4,411.9	12,334.9	11,531.5	1,096.0	31,992.8
1988	6,945.7	14,297.6	876.2	1,278.5	30,011.8

<sup>1</sup> Includes education, health and social welfare.

Taxation receipts in 1987–88 for all purposes amounted to \$21,528m., giving an average of \$6,492 per head of mean population. Included in the total taxation is \$510m. National Roads Fund taxation. The estimate for 1988–89 is \$23,035m., the total being inclusive of an estimated \$560m. of National Roads Fund taxation.

The gross public debt at 31 March 1988 was \$39,111m., of which \$21,855m. was held in New Zealand, \$4,034m. in Europe, \$7,204m. in USA and \$6,019m. in Canada, Australia and other sources. The gross annual interest charge on the public debt at 31 March 1988 was \$4,947,772,000.

**New Zealand System of National Accounts.** This replaces the National Income and



Expenditure Accounts which have been produced since 1948. National Accounts aggregates for 4 years are given in the following table (in NZ\$1 m.):

<i>Year ended</i>	<i>Gross domestic product</i>	<i>Gross national product</i>	<i>National income</i>
<i>31 March</i>			
1984	34,307	33,009	30,386
1985	38,838	36,934	33,800
1986	44,861	42,817	39,180
1987	53,382	51,167	47,071

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the New Zealand *dollar*, divided into 100 *cents*. In March 1989, £1 = 2.80NZ\$; US\$1 = 1.63NZ\$.

**Banking.** The Reserve Bank is the sole note-issuing authority. Seven denominations of Reserve Bank notes are issued: NZ\$1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100.

The New Zealand banking system comprises a central bank, the Reserve Bank of New Zealand, and 4 commercial or trading banks. There are also 12 trustee savings banks and Post Bank, while each trading bank has a private savings bank subsidiary. In addition, a number of trading companies, investment societies, etc., perform quasi-banking functions, accepting deposits and granting credits to clients.

The primary functions of the Reserve Bank are to act as the central bank, to advise the Government on matters relating to monetary policy, banking and overseas exchange, and to give effect to the monetary policy of the Government.

At the end of March 1987 the amount on deposit at trading banks was NZ\$17,362.5m., while advances amounted to NZ\$14,051.4m. The weekly average of bank debits for 1986 was NZ\$11,189.6m. excluding government.

The number of accounts with the post office savings bank at 31 March 1987 was 3.72m.; amount deposited during year ended March 1987, \$9,647m.; withdrawn, \$9,518m., total amount to credit of depositors at end of year, \$3,052m. At 31 March 1987, \$4,418m. was on deposit in Trustee Savings Banks to the credit of 3.31m. depositors. The amount to the credit of depositors with savings accounts in the trading banks was \$435.9m. at 31 March 1987.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures operates.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The general policy of the Government in regard to electric power is to supply power in bulk, leaving the reticulation and retail supply in the hands of local authorities; some of these are cities and boroughs but most are electric power boards. During the year ending 31 March 1986 hydro energy provided 73% of the national electricity supply, the balance coming from coal, oil, natural gas and geothermal energy. The last is obtained from Wairakei in the thermal region; natural steam is used to drive the turbines.

The transmission systems of the North and South Islands are linked by a high-voltage direct-current transmission and 40 km of submarine cable in Cook Strait. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

Principal statistics for 4 years ended 31 March are:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Number of establishments	89	94	95	96
Generators (capacity) AC (1,000 kw.)	6,382	6,988	7,435	7,435
Units generated (1m. kwh.)	25,855	26,765	27,017	28,310
Revenue (\$1,000)	1,852,830	2,014,438	2,524,772	2,933,879
Expenditure:				
Operating (\$1,000)	978,261	1,070,187	1,394,049	1,511,770
Management, etc. (\$1,000)	168,655	185,057	220,022	288,560
Capital charges (\$1,000)	383,720	461,946	568,540	794,184
Capital outlay:				
During year (\$1,000)	488,700	411,100	456,300	484,200
To date (\$1,000)	4,493,200	4,770,900	5,067,700	5,388,800

**Natural Gas.** In 1988 there were 6 gasfields in production: Kapuni (on stream 1970), Maui (1979), McKee (1984), Kaimiro (1984), Tariki and Ahuroa. Natural gas represents 29% of primary energy consumption.

**Minerals.** New Zealand's production of minerals in 1987 included 1,148 kg of gold, 3,140 tonnes of bentonite, 63,671 tonnes of clay for bricks, tiles, etc., 25,548 tonnes of potters' clays, 2,286,000 tonnes of iron sand, 823,000 tonnes of limestone for agriculture and 208,300 tonnes of limestone for industry, 1,211,000 tonnes of limestone, marl, etc., for cement, 10,000 tonnes of pumice, 14,100 tonnes of serpentine, 161,500 tonnes of silica sand. Mineral fuel production amounted to 2,402,000 tonnes of coal.

**Agriculture.** Two-thirds of the surface of New Zealand is suitable for agriculture and grazing. The total area under cultivation at 30 June 1987 was 17,795,113 hectares (including residential area and domestic orchards). There were 13,810,459 hectares of grassland, lucerne and tussock, 87,890 hectares of land for horticulture, 358,752 hectares of grain or fodder crops and 1,178,049 hectares of plantations.

The largest freehold estates are held in the South Island. The extent of occupied holdings as at 30 June 1987 (exclusive of holdings within borough boundaries) was as follows:

<i>Size of holdings (hectares)</i>	<i>Number of farms</i>	<i>Aggregate area (hectares)</i>	<i>Size of holdings (hectares)</i>	<i>Number of farms</i>	<i>Aggregate area (hectares)</i>
Under 5	10,376	31,182	400-799	4,379	2,389,912
5-19	15,895	157,622	800-1,199	1,203	1,160,296
20-39	8,352	235,550	1,200-1,999	918	1,398,745
40-59	7,435	359,649	2,000-3,999	565	1,544,234
60-99	10,088	777,712	4,000 and over	490	5,415,761
100-199	11,440	1,639,339			
200-399	9,655	2,685,111	Total	80,796	17,795,113

The area and yield for each of the principal crops are given as follows (area and yield for threshing only, not including that grown for chaff, hay, silage, etc.):

<i>Crop years</i>	<i>Wheat</i>		<i>Maize</i>		<i>Barley</i>	
	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>	<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>	<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>	<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>
1985	71.8	309.6	17.8	174.6	152.3	644.4
1986	91.4	379.7	19.5	187.7	138.6	556.2
1987	83.0	336.8	19.0	176.1	102.5	400.6

Private air companies are carrying out such aerial work as top-dressing, spraying and crop-dusting, seed-sowing, rabbit poisoning, aerial photography and surveying, and dropping supplies to deer cullers and dropping fencing materials in remote areas. In 1987, 1,724,380 tonnes of fertilizer was spread.

Livestock 1987: 7,999,000 cattle, 64.2m. sheep and 426,000 pigs, 500,000 deer and 1.1m. goats. Total meat produced in the year ended 30 Sept. 1987 was estimated at 1.21m. tonnes (including 547,600 tonnes of beef and 407,300 tonnes of lamb). Total liquid milk produced in the year ended 31 May 1987 was 7,073m. litres.

Production of wool for 1986-87, 350,000 tonnes (greasy basis).

*Agricultural Statistics.* Dept. of Statistics, Wellington. Annual.

**Forestry.** Of the 6.2m. hectares of indigenous forest, most is protected in National Parks or State Forests. Declining quantities of indigenous timber are being produced from restricted areas of State Forest and from privately owned forest. There are just over 1m. hectares of productive exotic forest, and this produces far more timber than the indigenous forests. Introduced pines form the bulk of the large exotic forest estate and among these radiata pine is the best multi-purpose tree, reaching log size in 25-30 years. Other species planted are Douglas fir and Eucalyptus species. The table below shows production of rough sawn timber in cu. metres for years ending 31 March:

	<i>Indigenous</i>		<i>Total</i>	<i>Exotic</i>		<i>Total</i>	<i>All Species</i>
	<i>Rimu and Miro</i>	<i>Beech</i>		<i>Exotic Pines</i>	<i>Douglas Fir</i>		<i>Total</i>
1984-85	101,792	17,076	140,766	1,636,000	174,780	2,164,880	2,305,646
1985-86	96,153	12,620	132,740	2,043,759	182,911	2,264,873	2,397,613
1986-87	85,000	8,000	112,000	1,764,000	174,000	1,966,000	2,079,000

Forest industries consist of 449 saw-mills, 5 plywood and veneer plants, 3 particle board mills, 8 pulp and paper mills and 2 fibreboard mills.

The basic products of the pulp and paper mills are mechanical and chemical pulp which are converted into newsprint, kraft and other papers, paperboard and fibreboard. Production of woodpulp, 31 March 1987, amounted to 1.11 m. tonnes and of paper (including newsprint paper and paperboard) to 644,000 tonnes.

**Fisheries.** The total value of New Zealand Fisheries exports during the year ended 30 June 1985 was \$513.7m., an increase of \$144.4m. (39.1%) over the previous year.

	<i>Exports, 1986</i>		<i>Exports, 1987</i>	
	<i>Quantity kg (1,000)</i>	<i>Value \$(1,000)</i>	<i>Quantity kg (1,000)</i>	<i>Value \$(1,000)</i>
Finfish or wetfish	91,593	319,808	110,949	457,107
Rock lobster	2,894	89,262	2,871	109,023
Shellfish (squid, mussels, oysters, etc)	36,883	97,704	42,961	145,339
Total	131,370	506,774	156,782	711,469

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Major industrial developments in recent years have included the establishment of an oil refinery, an iron and steel industry using New Zealand iron sands, a petro-chemical industry and an aluminium smelter using hydro-electric power.

Statistics of manufacturing industries:

<i>Production year</i>	<i>Persons engaged</i>	<i>Salaries and wages paid (NZ\$1,000)</i>	<i>Cost of materials (NZ\$1,000)</i>	<i>Sales and other income (NZ\$1,000)</i>	<i>Value added (NZ\$1,000)</i>
1985-86	304,640	5,479,271	17,502,521	31,799,989	9,342,728

The following is a statement of the provisional value of the products (including repairs) of the principal industries for the year 1985-86 (in NZ\$1,000):

<i>Industry group</i>	<i>Purchases &amp; operating expenses</i>	<i>Sales and other income (NZ\$1,000)</i>	<i>Value added</i>	<i>Additions to fixed tangible assets</i>
Food, beverage and tobacco manufacturing	8,651,628	9,174,803	2,395,813	469,275
Textile, wearing apparel, leather industries	2,740,161	2,914,926	911,462	151,353
Wood and wood products (including furniture)	1,948,056	2,086,568	707,513	167,887
Paper and paper products, printing and publishing	3,126,013	3,385,798	1,207,900	247,746
Chemicals and chemical, petroleum, coal, rubber and plastic products	3,883,330	3,847,384	986,496	1,374,006
Non-metallic mineral products (excludes products of petroleum and coal)	1,011,316	1,153,771	358,202	58,513
Basic metal industries	1,128,821	1,222,812	345,503	531,083
Fabricated metal products, machinery and equipment	7,352,124	7,728,508	2,333,535	344,495
Other manufacturing industries	259,679	285,419	96,304	14,438
Total	30,101,128	31,799,989	9,342,728	3,358,796



**Labour.** In March 1988 there were 208 industrial unions of workers with a total of 489,763 members in Dec. 1986.

By the Accident Compensation Act 1972 immediate compensation without proof of fault is provided for every injured person and wherever the accident occurred. Compensation is paid both for permanent physical disability and also—in the case of earners—for income losses on an income related basis. Regular adjustment in the level of payment is provided for in accordance with variations in the value of money. Non-earners such as tourists, housewives, children, students, retired people do not normally qualify for earnings related compensation but are eligible for all other benefits. These are not taxable. Housewives—including visiting women from overseas—who are non-earners are eligible for the benefits available to non-earners and home help can be paid for or the husband compensated for loss of earnings while he is looking after the home until the injured wife can resume her duties.

After the first week's incapacity and for the ensuing 4 weeks the earner can be paid 80% of his average earnings for the 28 days preceding the accident; after that the 80% is related to average earnings over the 12 preceding months. In addition—for earners—lump sums are payable for impairment, pain and disfigurement and for funeral expenses and weekly sums and lump payments to their widows and dependent children. All employees are covered by the Accident Compensation Act 1972.

**Commerce.** Trade (excluding specie and bullion) in NZ\$1m. for 12 months ended 30 June:

	<i>Total merchandise imported (v.f.d.)<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Exports of domestic produce</i>	<i>Re-exports</i>	<i>Total merchandise exported (f.o.b.)</i>
1984-85	11,344.2	11,011.9	303.9	11,315.8
1985-86	10,468.3	10,139.0	432.7	10,571.7
1986-87	10,803.4	11,723.9	383.3	12,107.2
1987-88	10,625.1	12,104.1	347.4	12,451.5

<sup>1</sup> Value for duty.

The principal imports for the 12 months ended 30 June 1988:

	<i>Value (NZ\$1,000) Commodity (c.i.f.)</i>
Bananas, fresh	31,368
Sugar, not refined	40,156
Crude rubber	33,543
Natural calcium phosphate	51,703
Aluminium oxide	191,396
Crude petroleum	488,901
Polyethylene, in primary forms	102,838
Polyvinylchloride, in primary forms	52,126
Paper and paperboard manufactures	204,919
Textile yarn and thread	103,457
Knitted or crocheted fabrics	44,269
Iron and steel	
Bars and rods	37,901
Angles, shapes and sections	42,471
Universals, plates, sheets, hoop and strip	299,558
Tubes, pipes and fittings	65,032
Copper and copper alloys	78,976
Float glass	42,030
Internal combustion engines not aircraft	64,319
Tractors	33,411
Photocopying apparatus	45,617
Video recording or reproducing apparatus	63,594
Motorcars, assembled and unassembled	844,080
Trucks, buses, vans, assembled and unassembled	172,100
Motor cycles	44,079
Total merchandise imported <sup>1</sup>	11,606,512

<sup>1</sup> Including commodities not listed.

The principal exports of New Zealand produce for the 12 months ended 30 June 1988 were:

<i>Commodity</i>	<i>Value (NZ\$1m.)</i>	<i>Commodity</i>	<i>Value (NZ\$1m.)</i>
Meat, fresh, chilled or frozen		Sheep and lamb pelts	397.0
Beef and veal	985.0	Forest products	
Lamb	776.8	Sawlogs and veneer logs, conifer	80.1
Mutton	123.7	Pinus Radiata timber	82.4
Dairy products		Wood pulp	353.0
Skimmed milk powder	249.0	Wood chips	35.9
Butter	524.0	Fibreboard	70.0
Cheese	286.2	Inedible tallow	65.1
Hides, skins and fur skins	550.5	Casein and caseinates	302.9
Wool	1,621.8	Iron ore and concentrates	23.9
Sausage casings	105.2	Unwrought aluminium	582.6
Fish, fresh, chilled or frozen	406.2		
Rock lobster (crayfish)	88.5	Total produce exported <sup>1</sup>	12,451.5

<sup>1</sup> Including commodities not listed and re-exports.

The following table shows the trade with different countries for the year ended 30 June (in NZ\$1,000):

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports v.f.d. from</i>		<i>Exports and re-exports f.o.b. to</i>	
	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Australia	1,942,097	2,266,644	1,794,912	2,073,760
Bahrain	8,627	9,210	8,891	8,399
Belgium	96,857	83,248	161,457	257,575
Canada	236,447	181,167	198,854	216,899
China	84,667	111,244	425,488	435,332
Fiji	24,837	16,114	123,106	88,461
France	191,383	177,602	226,003	188,650
Germany, Fed. Rep. of	641,557	597,873	310,773	294,289
Greece	1,590	6,793	72,975	60,685
Hong Kong	182,648	178,646	186,232	177,645
India	41,980	38,102	71,483	51,422
Iran	982	34,312	195,084	206,997
Italy	240,279	209,382	301,890	250,699
Japan	2,235,401	1,864,919	1,823,080	2,078,214
Korea, Republic of	178,340	198,979	244,970	287,540
Kuwait	9,401	20,029	19,902	15,342
Malaysia	48,418	57,631	133,376	163,644
Netherlands	156,564	158,205	165,451	170,663
Philippines	24,552	19,428	94,428	90,762
Saudi Arabia	203,903	247,563	99,006	99,731
Singapore	184,955	128,456	170,167	160,815
Sweden	118,345	121,837	18,755	26,637
UK	1,060,655	1,014,647	1,125,092	1,062,215
USSR	7,828	10,997	205,081	146,585
USA	1,729,477	1,683,069	1,944,831	1,802,985

Total trade between New Zealand and UK was as follows (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	483,749	533,047	455,694	487,332	443,081
Exports and re-exports from UK	367,512	396,595	343,145	378,368	300,016

**Tourism.** The country has a growing tourist industry. In the year ended 31 March 1988, 855,492 travellers visited New Zealand (including 650,766 tourists), compared with 763,209 (including 598,700 tourists) in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length of formed roads and streets in New Zealand at 31 March 1987 was 93,130 km. There were 14,949 bridges of over 3 metres in length with a total length of 335,000 metres at 31 March 1987. The network of state highways comprised, at 31 March 1987, 11,033 km, including the principal arterial traffic routes.

Total expenditure on roads, streets and bridges by the central government and local authorities combined for the financial year 1986-87 amounted to \$628m.

At 31 March 1988 motor vehicles licensed numbered 2,179,005, of which 1,387,475 were cars and 10,538 omnibuses and service vehicles. Included in the remaining numbers were 95,597 motor cycles, 1,020 power cycles, 289,181 trucks, 347,954 trailers and caravans and 9,973 farm tractors and other farm equipment.

**Railways.** On 31 March 1987 there were 4,273 km of 1,067 mm gauge railway open for traffic (519 km electrified). In 1986-87, railways carried 9m. tonnes and 15.1m. passengers. Operating earnings from government railways, 1986-87, \$468,865,000. Three rail/road ferries maintain a regular service between the North and South Islands.

**Aviation.** International services are operated to and from New Zealand by a state-owned company, Air New Zealand Ltd, and by a number of overseas companies. Air New Zealand Ltd also operates most domestic scheduled passenger services. Non-scheduled services are run by the main companies and also by a number of small operators and aero clubs.

Domestic scheduled services during the 12 months ended Dec. 1986: Passengers carried, 3,443,000. International services: Passengers carried, 1,413,384; mail, 4,162 tonnes; freight, 94,825 tonnes.

**Shipping.** Container ships operate from Auckland, Wellington, Lyttelton and Port Chalmers to the UK, Europe, North America and Japan. The government-owned New Zealand Shipping Corporation has begun to increase its activity into New Zealand-UK and Pacific trades.

Entrances and clearances of vessels from overseas:

	<i>Entrances</i>		<i>Clearances</i>	
	<i>No.</i>	<i>Tons</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>Tons</i>
1985	2,932	14,607,000	2,935	14,613,000
1986	2,519	13,388,000	2,527	13,365,000
1987	3,060	14,113,000	3,050	14,107,000

**Post and Broadcasting.** Receipts of the Post Office for year ended 31 March 1987 were \$2,271.6m.; total expenditure was \$1,912.6m. The average staff for 1986-87 was 40,891.

The telegraph and telephone systems are operated by the Post Office. At 31 March 1987 there were 2,315,000 telephones. The telecommunications receipts for the year 1986-87 were \$1,529m.

An earth satellite station has been built north of Auckland to link with the Pacific satellite Intelsat III to augment the Compac and Seacon telecommunications systems which link New Zealand with overseas countries.

There are 2 TV channels both operated by the state-owned New Zealand Broadcasting Corporation, which also operates most of the broadcasting stations. Over 85% of New Zealand households have TV sets. There are 66 medium-wave broadcasting stations and 2 short-wave transmitters. Some commercial material is broadcast by both sound and TV services. Number of TV receiving licences at 31 March 1987 was 914,689.

**Cinemas.** There were in 1981, 154 cinemas with a seating capacity of 89,364.

**Newspapers.** There were (1987), 34 daily newspapers (10 morning and 24 evening) with a combined circulation of 1,134,835. Seven of these newspapers (2 each in Auckland, Wellington and Christchurch and 1 in Dunedin) had a circulation of 711,538.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judiciary consists of the Court of Appeal, the High Court and District Courts. All exercise both civil and criminal jurisdiction. Other special courts include the Maori Land Court, Family Courts and Young Persons' Courts. At the end of Dec. 1987 the gaols and Borstal institutions contained 3,100 prisoners,



2,978 males and 122 females. The death penalty for murder was replaced by life imprisonment in 1961.

The Criminal Injuries Act, 1963, which came into force on 1 Jan. 1964, provided for compensation of persons injured by certain criminal acts and the dependants of persons killed by such acts. However, this has now been phased out in favour of the Accident Compensation Act, 1972, except in the residual area of property damage caused by escapers. Since 1970 legal aid in civil proceedings (except divorce) has been available for persons of small or moderate means. For the year ended 31 Dec. 1987 expenditure amounted to \$10,517,688 and 36,985 applications for aid were granted.

**Police.** The police in New Zealand are a national body maintained wholly by the central government. The total strength at 31 March 1988 was 5,291, the proportion of police to population being 1 to 627. The total cost of police services for the year 1987-88 was NZ\$379m., equivalent to \$113 per head of population. In New Zealand the police do not control traffic.

**Ombudsmen.** The office of Ombudsman was created in 1962. From 1975 additional Ombudsmen have been authorized. There are currently two. Ombudsmen's functions are to investigate complaints from members of the public relating to administrative decisions of government departments, local authorities and statutory organizations.

During the year ended 31 March 1988, 2,030 complaints were received, 78 of which were sustained.

**Religion.** No direct state aid is given to any form of religion. For the Church of England the country is divided into 7 dioceses, with a separate bishopric (Aotearoa) for the Maoris. The Presbyterian Church is divided into 23 presbyteries and the Maori Synod. The Moderator is elected annually. The Methodist Church is divided into 10 districts; the President is elected annually. The Roman Catholic Church is divided into 4 dioceses, with the Archbishop of Wellington as Metropolitan Archbishop.

<i>Religious denomination</i>	<i>Number of</i>	
	<i>clergy</i> <i>(April 1977)</i>	<i>Number of adherents</i> <i>1981 census    1986 census<sup>1</sup></i>
Church of England	780	814,740    784,059
Presbyterian	686	523,221    586,530
Roman Catholic (including 'Catholic' undefined)	931	456,858    495,300
Methodist	349	148,512    152,955
Baptist	254	50,043    67,716
Brethren	187	24,324
Ratana	142	35,781
Protestant (undefined)	—	16,986
Salvation Army	241	20,490
Latter-day Saints (Mormon)	162	37,686
Congregationalist	10	3,825
Seventh-day Adventist	55	11,523
Ringatu	88	6,114
Christian (undefined)	—	101,901
Jehovah's Witnesses	125	13,737
Hebrew	7	3,360
All other religious professions	—	279,768
Agnostic	—	24,201
Atheist	—	21,528
Not specified	—	108,015
Object to state	—	473,115
Total	4,712	3,175,737    3,261,786

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

**Education.** New Zealand has 6 universities, the University of Auckland, University of Waikato (at Hamilton), Victoria University of Wellington, Massey University (at Palmerston North), the University of Canterbury (at Christchurch) and the University of Otago (at Dunedin). There is, in addition, Lincoln College near Christchurch, a university college of agriculture, which is a constituent college of the

University of Canterbury. The number of students in 1987 was 66,435. There were 6 teachers' training colleges with 4,171 students in 1987.

At 1 July 1987 there were 314 state secondary schools with 14,456 full-time teachers and 215,739 pupils. There were also 35 district high schools with 3,097 scholars in the secondary division. At 1 July 1987, 78,309 part-time pupils attended technical classes, and 34,802 received part-time instruction from the technical correspondence institute. At 1 July 1987, 1,190 pupils received tuition from the secondary department of the correspondence school. There were 20 registered private secondary schools with 449 teachers and 11,853 pupils.

At 1 July 1987, there were 2,369 state primary schools (including intermediate schools and departments), with 406,809 pupils; the number of teachers was 18,403. A correspondence school for children in remote areas and those otherwise unable to attend school had 1,696 primary pupils. There were 76 registered private primary schools with 348 teachers and 11,611 pupils.

Education is compulsory between the ages of 6 and 15. Children aged 3 and 4 years may enrol at the 563 free kindergartens maintained by Free Kindergarten Associations, which receive government assistance. There are also 653 play centres which also receive government subsidy. In July 1987 there were 41,971 and 14,412 children on the rolls respectively.

Total expenditure out of government funds in 1987-88 upon education was NZ\$3,118m.

The universities and the affiliated agricultural colleges are autonomous bodies. Most secondary schools are controlled by their own boards. Virtually all state primary schools are controlled by the district education boards. There are 10 education districts. The Department of Education exercises certain defined functions in connexion with the general supervision of the education provided in state primary and secondary schools and disburses the government grants payable to controlling authorities for the running of those schools. Education in state schools is free for children under 19 years of age. Private schools are regularly visited by state school inspectors.

*Report of the Minister of Education ('E.I. Report').* Annually. Wellington, Government Printer

NZ Committee on Secondary Education. *Towards Partnership.* Dept. of Education, 1976

**Health.** At 30 June 1987 there were 8,312 doctors on the medical register. At 31 March 1987 there were 24,488 public hospital beds, of which 2,054 were for maternity cases.

**Social Welfare.** New Zealand's record for progressive legislation reaches back to 1898, when it was second only to Denmark in introducing non-contributory old-age pensions.

The present system came into operation from 1 April 1972. It provides for retirement, unemployment, widowhood, invalidity and sickness, as well as hospital and other medical care. Since 1 April 1969 the scheme has been financed from general taxation. Previously there was a special social security tax on virtually all income of individuals and companies in excess of \$4 a week which met approximately three-quarters of the cost of the scheme, the balance being met from general taxation.

At 31 March 1988 the current weekly rates of widows', invalids', sickness, domestic purposes, unemployment and miners' benefits were \$252.46 for a married couple, \$151.48 for an unmarried person aged 18 years or over, and \$122.57 for those under 18 years.

There are additional payments for dependent children.

All benefits except superannuation and family allowances are subject to an income test.

**Family Benefit.** A family benefit of \$6 a week is payable for each dependent child.

**Unemployment Benefit.** The payment is subject to the condition that the applicant is capable and willing to undertake suitable employment.

**Sickness Benefit.** Payment is subject to medical evidence of incapacity of a person who has suffered a loss of weekly earnings as a result.

Other benefits include emergency benefits and additional benefits for those in need but who either do not qualify for one of the standard benefits or who have special needs or commitments for which a benefit at the standard rate is insufficient.

*Medical, Hospital and Related Benefits.* Medical, hospital and other related benefits are also provided under the Social Welfare scheme. These consist mainly of the payment of certain fees for medical attention by private practitioners, free treatment in public and mental hospitals, certain fees for treatment in private hospitals, maternity benefits (including ante-natal and post-natal treatment and services of doctors and nurses at confinements), pharmaceutical benefits (medicines, drugs, etc., prescribed by medical practitioners), etc. There are also benefits in connexion with dental services up to the age of 16, X-ray diagnosis, massage, home-nursing, artificial aids, etc.

*Pensions.* Provision is made for the payment of pensions and allowances to members or dependants of disabled, deceased or missing members, of the New Zealand Forces who served in the South African War, the two World Wars, the Korean War and the Vietnam War, to members of the New Zealand Mercantile Marine during the Second World War, or in connexion with any emergency whether arising out of the obligations undertaken by New Zealand in the Charter of the United Nations or otherwise. Principal rates are: War pensions are payable to widows at a rate of \$151.48 a week, together with a mother's allowance of \$93.46 a week, increased by \$16 a week for each additional child, in addition to the normal child allowances of \$6 per week for each child. These rates may be increased by an amount not exceeding \$65.57 per week if the pensioner is suffering from total blindness, two or more serious disabilities or one extremely severe disability.

An 'economic pension' is defined as a supplementary pension granted on economic grounds and is additional to any pension payable as of right in respect of death or disablement. The maximum weekly rates are \$252.46 to a married person (if unmarried, \$151.48); to the widow or dependent widowed mother of a member, \$149.23.

War veterans' allowances are \$151.48 weekly for a single person and \$126.23 for a married person, plus an equal amount to a wife, increased by \$1.50 a week each at age 65, subject to income qualifications.

*Domestic Purposes Benefit.* A domestic purposes benefit is payable to unsupported male and female solo parents including divorced, separated and unmarried persons, prisoners' spouses and also to those who are required to give full-time care to a person (other than their spouse) who would otherwise have to be admitted to hospital.

*Death Benefit.* A death benefit of \$1,260 is payable to a widow or widower if totally dependent on the deceased plus \$630 for each dependent child.

*Social Welfare Benefits and War Pensions:*

<i>Benefits</i>	<i>Number in force at 31 March 1988</i>	<i>Total payments 1987-88 (NZ\$1,000)</i>
<b>SOCIAL WELFARE:</b>		
<i>Monetary—</i>		
Superannuation	479,985	3,986,544
Widows	12,862	104,170
Family	436,066	290,556
Invalids	24,379	196,051
Miners and orphans	1,546	6,243
Unemployment	86,782	672,694
Sickness	13,132	159,850
Domestic purposes	74,862	808,787
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,129,614</b>	<b>6,224,895</b>



<i>Benefits</i>		<i>Total payments</i>
SOCIAL WELFARE (contd.):		1987-88
<i>Health, etc.—</i>		(NZ\$1,000)
Medical		92,178
Hospital		53,776
Maternity		30,543
Pharmaceutical		439,601
Supplementary		67,554
Total		683,652

#### WAR PENSIONS as at 31 March 1988:

<i>Type of Person</i>	<i>Number in Force</i>	<i>Dependent Wives Included</i>	<i>Annual Value (NZ\$ 1,000)</i>
War disablement	21,212	—	43,417
Dependants of disabled	40	—	263
Widows	4,225	—	18,551
Other dependants of deceased	26	—	—
Economic	1,160	41	9,232
War service	1,648	959	18,196
War veteran's allowance	563	247	6,201
Police	32	—	73
Total	28,906	1,247	95,933

*Reciprocity with Other Countries.* There are reciprocal arrangements between New Zealand and Australia in respect of age, invalids', widows', family, unemployment and sickness benefits, and between New Zealand and the UK in respect of family, age, superannuation, widows', orphans', invalids', sickness and unemployment benefits.

*Superannuation.* Following the change of Government in Dec. 1975 the earnings-related superannuation scheme described in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1977-78, was abolished. Under the new system (operative from Feb. 1977) superannuation is payable to all New Zealanders on reaching the age of 60. It is taxable but not subject to an income test. The rates are based on the national average wage, of which married couples now receive 80% and single persons 60% of the married rate.

## MINOR ISLANDS

The minor islands (total area, 320 sq. miles, 829 sq. km) included within the geographical boundaries of New Zealand (but not within any local government area) are the following: Kermadec Islands (34 sq. km), Three Kings Islands (8 sq. km), Auckland Islands (62 sq. km), Campbell Island (114 sq. km), Antipodes Islands (606 sq. km), Bounty Islands (1 sq. km), Snares Islands (3 sq. km), Solander Island (1 sq. km). With the exception of meteorological station staff on Raoul Island in the Kermadec Group (5 in 1986) and Campbell Island (10 in 1986) there are no inhabitants.

The **Kermadec Islands** were annexed to New Zealand in 1887, have no separate administration and all New Zealand laws apply to them. Situation, 29° 10' to 31° 30' S. lat., 177° 45' to 179° W. long., 1,000 miles NNE of New Zealand. The largest of the group is Raoul or Sunday Island, 29 sq. km, smaller islands being Macauley and Curtis, while Macauley Island is 3 miles in circuit.

## TERRITORIES OVERSEAS

Territories Overseas coming within the jurisdiction of New Zealand consist of Tokelau and the Ross Dependency.

**Tokelau.** Situated some 480 km to the north of Western Samoa between 8° and 10° S. lat., and between 171° and 173° W. long., are the 3 atoll islands of Atafu, Nukunonu and Fakaofu of the Tokelau (Union) group. Formerly part of the Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony, the group was transferred to the jurisdiction of New Zealand on 11 Feb. 1926. By legislation enacted in 1948, the Tokelau Islands were declared part of New Zealand as from 1 Jan. 1949. The area of the group is 1,011 hectares; the population at 10 Oct. 1986 was 1,690.

By the Tokelau Islands Act 1948 the Tokelau Group was included within the territorial boundaries of New Zealand; legislative powers are now invested in the Governor-General in Council. The inhabitants are British subjects and New Zealand citizens. In Dec. 1976 the territory was officially renamed 'Tokelau', the name by which it has customarily been known to its inhabitants.

From 8 Nov. 1974 the office of Administrator was invested in the Secretary of Foreign Affairs. Certain powers are delegated to the district officer in Apia, Western Samoa.

Because of the very restricted economic and social future in the atolls, the islanders agreed to a proposal put to them by the Minister of Island Territories in 1965 that over a period of years most of the population be resettled in New Zealand. Up to March 1975, 528 migrants entered New Zealand as permanent residents under Government sponsorship. At the request of the people the scheme has now been suspended.

New Zealand Government aid to Tokelau totalled \$3.3m. for the year ended 31 March 1987.

**Ross Dependency.** By Imperial Order in Council, dated 30 July 1923, the territories between 160° E. long. and 150° W. long. and south of 60° S. lat. were brought within the jurisdiction of the New Zealand Government. The region was named the Ross Dependency. From time to time laws for the Dependency have been made by regulations promulgated by the Governor-General of New Zealand.

The mainland area is estimated at 400,000–450,000 sq. km and is mostly ice-covered. In Jan. 1957 a New Zealand expedition under Sir Edmund Hillary established a base in the Dependency. In Jan. 1958 Sir Edmund Hillary and 4 other New Zealanders reached the South Pole.

The main base—Scott Base—at Pram Point, Ross Island—is manned throughout the year, about 12 people being present during winter. Vanda Station in the dry ice-free Wright Valley is manned every summer.

Quartermain, L. B., *New Zealand and the Antarctic*. Wellington, 1971

## SELF-GOVERNING TERRITORIES OVERSEAS

### THE COOK ISLANDS

**HISTORY.** The Cook Islands, which lie between 8° and 23° S. lat., and 156° and 167° W. long., were proclaimed a British protectorate in 1888, and on 11 June 1901 were annexed and proclaimed part of New Zealand. In 1965 the Cook Islands became a self-governing territory in 'free association' with New Zealand.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The islands within the territory fall roughly into two groups—the scattered islands towards the north (Northern group) and the islands towards the south known as the Lower group. The names of the islands with their populations as at the census of 1986 were as follows:

<i>Lower Group—</i>			<i>Northern Group—</i>		
	<i>Area sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>		<i>Area sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>
Rarotonga	67.2	9,281	Nassau	1.2	119
Mangaia	51.8	1,270	Palmerston (Avarau)	2.0	66
Atiu	26.9	1,040	Penrhyn (Tongareva)	9.8	496
Aitutaki	18.0	2,400	Manihiki (Humphrey)	5.4	505
Mauke (Parry Is.)	18.4	693	Rakahanga (Reirson)	4.1	276
Mitiaro	22.3	265	Pukapuka (Danger)	5.1	761
Manuae and Te au-o-tu	6.2	—	Suwarrow (Anchorage)	0.4	—
Takutea	1.3	—			
			Total	293	17,185

Vital statistics (1985): Births, 418; marriages, 105; deaths, 117.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Cook Islands Constitution Act 1964, which provides for the establishment of internal self-government in the Cook Islands, came into force on 4 Aug. 1965.

The Act establishes the Cook Islands as fully self-governing but linked to New Zealand by a common Head of State, the Queen, and a common citizenship, that of New Zealand. It provides for a ministerial system of government with a Cabinet consisting of a Premier and 6 other Ministers. The New Zealand Government is represented by a New Zealand Representative and the position of a Queen's Representative has recently been created by changes in the Constitution. New Zealand continues to be responsible for the external affairs and defence of the Cook Islands, subject to consultation between the New Zealand Prime Minister and the Prime Minister. The changed status of the Islands does not affect the consideration of subsidies or the right of free entry into New Zealand for exports from the group. The capital is Rarotonga, which was devastated by a hurricane in Jan. 1987.

The unicameral Parliament comprises 24 members elected for a term of 5 years; at general elections held in Nov. 1983, the Democratic Party won 13 seats and the Cook Islands Party 11 seats. There is also an advisory council composed of hereditary chiefs, the 15-member House of Ariki, without legislative powers.

*Prime Minister:* Dr Pupuke Robati.

## ECONOMY AND TRADE

**Budget.** Budget 1987–88, NZ\$40,104,700. Revenue is derived chiefly from customs duties which follow the New Zealand customs tariff, income tax and stamp sales.

Grants from New Zealand, mainly for medical, educational and general administrative purposes totalled NZ\$7m. in 1982–83.

**Currency.** The Cook Island *dollar* is at par with the New Zealand *dollar*.

**Agriculture.** Livestock (1987): Pigs, 18,000; goats, 3,000.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1984) 800 tonnes.

**Commerce.** Exports, mainly to New Zealand, were valued at \$6.5m. in 1984. Main items of export were fresh fruit and vegetables, fruit juice, copra and clothing. Imports totalled \$30m. in 1984. The main items were foodstuffs, manufactured goods (including transport equipment), petrol and petroleum products.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 280 km of roads and 1,417 vehicles.

**Aviation.** New Zealand has financed the construction of an international airport at Rarotonga which became operational for jet services in Sept. 1973.

**Shipping.** A fortnightly cargo shipping service is provided between New Zealand, Niue and Rarotonga.

**Telecommunications.** Wireless stations are maintained at all the permanently



inhabited islands. In 1983 there were 2,052 telephones. There are 2 radio stations on Rarotonga with (1983) 10,000 receivers.

**Newspapers.** The *Cook Islands News* (circulation 2,000) is the sole daily newspaper.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND HEALTH

**Justice.** There is a High Court and a Court of Appeal, from which further appeal is to the Privy Council in the UK.

**Religion.** Some 60% of the population belong to the Cook Islands Congregational Church, about 20% are Roman Catholics, and the rest chiefly Mormons and Seventh-Day Adventists.

**Education.** In 1986 there were 30 primary schools with 165 teachers and 3,183 pupils, and 8 secondary schools with 146 teachers and 2,156 pupils on Rarotonga, Aitutaki, Mangaia, Atiu, Mauke and Pukapuka.

**Health.** All Cook Islanders receive free medical and surgical treatment in their villages, the hospital and the tuberculosis sanatorium. Cook Islands Maori patients in the hospital and the sanatorium and all schoolchildren receive free dental treatment. In 1982 there were 18 doctors, 8 dentists and 65 nursing personnel. In 1981 there were 8 hospitals and clinics with 154 beds.

## NIUE

**History.** Captain James Cook sighted Niue in 1774 but was repulsed by rock throwing warriors, their teeth painted red. Cook called the island Savage Island. Christian missionaries arrived in 1846. Niue became a British Protectorate in 1900 and was annexed to New Zealand in 1901. Internal self-government was achieved in free association with New Zealand on 19 Oct. 1974, New Zealand taking responsibility for external affairs and defence.

**Area and Population.** Niue is the largest uplifted coral island in the world. Distance from Auckland, New Zealand, 1,343 miles; from Rarotonga, 580 miles. Area, 258 sq. km; height above sea-level, 220 ft. Population (census, 1986) 2,531; estimate 31 Dec. 1988 was 2,190. During 1988 births registered numbered 55, deaths 14. Migration to New Zealand is the main factor in population change. The capital is Alofi (811 inhabitants in census, 1986).

**Constitution and Government.** There is a Legislative Assembly of 20 members, 14 elected from 14 constituencies and 6 elected by all constituencies.

**Premier:** Sir Robert R. Rex, CMG, OBE.

**Budget.** Financial aid from New Zealand, 1987–88, totalled \$8,500,000.

**Agriculture.** The most important products of the island are coconuts, honey, limes and root crops.

**Trade.** Exports, 1985, \$175,924 (main export, coconut cream); imports, \$3,753,384.

**Communications.** There is a wireless station at Alofi, the port of the island. A weekly commercial air service links Niue with New Zealand. Telephones (1986) 460.

**Justice.** There is a High Court under a Chief Justice, with a right of appeal to the New Zealand Supreme Court.

**Religion.** 75% of the population belong to the Congregational (Ekalesia Niue); 10% are Mormons and 5% Roman Catholics.

**Education.** There were 7 government schools with 702 pupils in 1987.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 3 doctors, 3 dentists, 7 midwives and 27 nursing personnel. There is a 25-bed hospital at Alofi.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of New Zealand in Great Britain (New Zealand Hse, Haymarket, London, SW1Y 4TQ)

*High Commissioner:* Bryce Harland.

Of Great Britain in New Zealand (Reserve Bank of New Zealand Bldg., 2 The Terrace, Wellington, 1)

*High Commissioner:* R. A. C. Byatt, CMG.

Of New Zealand in the USA (37 Observatory Cir., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* H. H. (Tim) Francis.

Of the USA in New Zealand (29 Fitzherbert Terrace, Wellington)

*Ambassador:* Della Newman.

Of New Zealand to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* David K. McDowell.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The central statistical office for New Zealand is the Department of Statistics (Wellington, 1).

The beginning of a statistical service may be seen in the early 'Blue books' prepared annually from 1840 onwards under the direction of the Colonial Secretary, and designed primarily for the information of the Colonial Office in England. A permanent statistical authority was created in 1858. The Department of Statistics functions under the Statistics Act 1975 and reports to Parliament through the Minister of Statistics. A comprehensive statistical service has been developed to meet national requirements, and close contact is maintained with the United Nations Statistical Office and other international statistical organizations; through the Conference of Asian Statisticians assistance is being given with the development of statistics in the region. The oldest publications consist of (a) census results from 1858 onwards and (b) annual volumes of statistics (first published 1858 but covering years back to 1853). Main current publications:

*New Zealand Official Yearbook.* Annual, from 1893

*Catalogue of New Zealand Statistics.* 1972

*Statistical Reports of New Zealand.* Annual

*Monthly Abstract of Statistics.* From 1914

*Pocket Digest of Statistics.* Annual, 1927-31, 1938 ff.

*Parliamentary Reports of Government Departments.* Annual

*Encyclopaedia of New Zealand.* 3 vols. Wellington, 1966

*National Bibliography.* Wellington, 1968

Alley, R., *New Zealand and the Pacific.* Boulder, 1984

Bedggood, D., *Rich and Poor in New Zealand.* Sydney, 1980

Bush, G., *Local Government and Politics in New Zealand.* Sydney, 1980

Easton, B., *Social Policy and the Welfare State in New Zealand.* Auckland, 1980

Grover, R. R., *New Zealand.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981

Hawke, G. R., *The Making of New Zealand: An Economic History.* CUP, 1985

Morrell, W. P. and Hall, D. O. W., *A History of New Zealand Life.* Christchurch and London, 1957

Oliver, W. H. (ed.) *The Oxford History of New Zealand.* OUP, 1981

Robson, J. L. (ed.) *New Zealand: The Development of its Laws and Constitution.* 2nd ed. London, 1967

Sinclair, K., *A History of New Zealand.* Rev. ed. London, 1980

Thakur, R., *In Defence of New Zealand.* Wellington, 1984

Wards, I., *A Descriptive Atlas of New Zealand.* Wellington, Government Printer, 1976

# NICARAGUA

*Capital:* Managua

*Population:* 3.5m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$790 (1986)

## República de Nicaragua

**HISTORY.** Active colonization of the Pacific coast was undertaken by Spaniards from Panama, beginning in 1523. After links with other Central American territories, and Mexico, Nicaragua became completely independent in 1838, but subject to a prolonged feud between the 'Liberals' of León and the 'Conservatives' of Granada. Mosquitia remained an autonomous kingdom on the Atlantic coast, under British protection until 1860.

On 5 Aug. 1914 the Bryan-Chamorro treaty between Nicaragua and the US was signed, under which the US in return for US\$3m. acquired a permanent option for a canal route through Nicaragua and a 99-year option for a naval base in the Bay of Fonseca on the Pacific coast and Corn Islands on the Atlantic coast. It was ratified by Nicaragua on 7 April 1916 and by the US on 22 June 1916. US Marines finally left in 1933. The Bryan-Chamorro treaty was abrogated on 14 July 1970 and the Corn Islands handed back in 1971.

The 46-year political domination of Nicaragua by the Somoza family ended on 17 July 1979, after the 17 years long struggle by the Sandinista National Liberation Front flared into civil war. A Government Junta of National Reconstruction was established by the revolutionary government on 20 July 1979 and a 51-member Council of State later created; both were dissolved on 10 Jan. 1985 following new Presidential and legislative elections.

On 9 Jan. 1987 the President signed the new Constitution, but immediately reimposed a state of emergency, suspending many of the liberties granted under the Constitution.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Nicaragua is bounded north by Honduras, east by the Caribbean, south by Costa Rica and west by the Pacific. Area 127,849 sq. km (49,363 sq. miles) or 118,558 sq. km (45,775 sq. miles) if the lakes are excluded. The coastline runs 540 km on the Atlantic and 350 km on the Pacific. Population at the census of April 1971 was 1,877,972. Estimate (1987) 3.5m.

Nicaragua is the largest in area and most thinly populated of the Central American republics, 30 inhabitants per sq. km in 1987. In 1984, births, 139,800; marriages, 13,600; deaths, 30,700.

The people of the western half of the republic are principally of mixed Spanish and Indian extraction, some of pure Spanish descent and many Indians. The population of the eastern half is composed mainly of Mosquito and other Indians and Zambos, and Negroes from Jamaica and other islands of the Caribbean. The main ethnic groups in 1980 were: Mestizo, 69%; white, 14%; black, 8%; amerindian, 4%.

The areas, estimated populations (1985) and capitals of the 6 regions and 3 special zones are as follows:

Region	Capital	Sq. km	1985	Special Zone	Capital	Sq. km	1985
1	Estelí	7,598	334,717	Zelaya Norte	Rosita	59,094	325,454
2	León	9,896	545,321	Zelaya Sur	Bluefields	1	1
3	Managua	3,597	903,998	Rio San Juan	San Carlos	7,448	34,330
4	Jinotepe	4,726	514,113				
5	Juigalpa	9,929	209,218				
6	Matagalpa	16,370	406,913				

<sup>1</sup> Included in Zelaya Norte.

The capital is Managua, situated on the lake of the same name, 180 ft above sea level, with (1985) 682,111 inhabitants. Other cities: León, 100,982; Granada, 88,636; Masaya, 74,946; Chinandega, 67,792; Matagalpa, 36,983; Estelí, 30,635; Tipitapa, 30,078; Chichigalpa, 28,889; Juigalpa, 25,625; Corinto, 24,250; Jinotepe, 23,538.



**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with a wet season from May to Jan. Temperatures vary with altitude. Managua. Jan. 79°F (26°C), July 86°F (30°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,140 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The National Assembly drafted and approved on 19 Nov. 1986 the new Constitution which was promulgated on 9 Jan. 1987. It provided for a unicameral National Assembly comprising 90 members directly elected by proportional representation, together with unsuccessful presidential election candidates obtaining a minimum level of votes.

The President and Vice-President are directly elected for a 6-year term commencing on the 10 Jan. following their date of election.

Under Article 185 of the Constitution, the President is empowered to declare a state of emergency and suspend certain of the civil rights provisions enshrined therein; this was done by the President immediately upon the promulgation of the Constitution.

*President:* Daniel Ortega Saavedra (elected 4 Nov. 1984, took office 10 Jan. 1985).

*Vice-President:* Sergio Ramírez Mercado.

The Council of Ministers in July 1988 was composed as follows:

*Foreign Affairs:* Miguel d'Escoto Brockman. *Defence:* Gen. Humberto Ortega Saavedra. *Interior:* Cdr Tomas Borge Martínez. *Presidency:* René Núñez Téllez. *Industry and Commerce:* Cdr Luis Carrión Cruz. *International Co-operation:* Cdr Henry Ruiz Hernández. *Agriculture:* Cdr Jaime Wheelock Román. *Finance:* William Hupper Argello. *Environment:* Miguel Ernesto Vigil Icaza. *Transport and Construction:* Cdr Mauricio Valenzuela. *Labour:* Benedicto Meneses Fonseca. *Health:* Dora Maria Téllez Argello. *Education:* Fernando Cardenal Martínez. *Justice:* Dr Rodrigo Reyes Portocarrero. *Culture:* Ernesto Cardenal Martínez.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of blue, white, blue, with the national arms in the centre.

*National anthem:* Salve a ti Nicaragua (words by S. Ibarra Mayorga, 1937).

*Local government.* Since 26 July 1982 the country has been divided into 6 administrative regions and 3 special zones. Article 181 of the new Constitution provides for autonomous governments for Zelaya Norte and Zelaya Sur to offer self-government for the ethnic minorities who chiefly inhabit the Atlantic coast – Miskitos, Sumos, Ramos, creoles, garifunas (mixed black and amerindian) and mestizos.

**DEFENCE.** Conscription for 2 years was introduced in 1983 for men between 17 and 22 years.

**Army.** The Army is organized into 2 armoured, 2 motorized infantry, 2 frontier and 1 artillery brigades. Equipment includes 130 T-54/-55 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 70,000; 30,000 reservists and Militia.

**Navy.** To picket the east and west coasts the Marina de Guerre Sandinista operates 8 *ex*-Soviet fast gunboats, 2 *ex*-North Korean fast torpedo boats, 2 *ex*-Soviet inshore minehunters, 4 *ex*-Soviet minesweeping boats, 4 coastguard cutters, 18 coastal patrol craft and 3 minor landing craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 4,000 officers and men.

**Air Force.** Formed in June 1938 as the Nicaraguan Army Air Force, the Air Force has been semi-independent since 1947. Its combat units are reported to have 4 L-39 Albatros light jet attack/trainers, 4 T-33 armed jet trainers, and 3 T-28 armed piston-engined trainers but confirmation is not available. Other equipment includes 4 C-47s, 2 Spanish-built Aviocar transports and smaller communications

aircraft and helicopters, including 20 Mi-8/17s, 2 Mi-2s and 5 Mi-24 gunships and 6 SF.260s for counter-insurgency duties. Personnel (1989) 3,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Nicaragua is a member of the UN, OAS and the CACM.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue in 1984 was 11,460m. córdobas and expenditure 14,311m. córdobas.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the new *córdoba* (C\$), divided into 100 *centavos*. Bills form the greater part of the currency, in denominations from 1,000 córdobas to 1 córdoba. Coins are 5 and 1 *cordobas* and 50, 25, 10 and 5 *centavos*. March 1989, US\$1 = 4,209 new *córdobas*; £1 = 7,241 new *córdobas*.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of Nicaragua came into operation on 1 Jan. 1961 as an autonomous bank of issue, absorbing the issue department of the National Bank. In July 1979 private financial banking was nationalized and branches of foreign banks were prohibited from receiving deposits.

**Weights and Measures.** Since 1893 the metric system of weights and measures has been recommended.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity for electric energy was 398,000 kw. in 1986 and 1,200 kwh. was produced. Supply 120 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Production of gold in 1980 was 67,000 troy oz.; of silver, 167,000 troy oz.; of copper, 3,000 tonnes. Large deposits of tungsten in Nueva Segovia were reported in 1961.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the principal source of national wealth, finding work for 65% of the labour force.

Of the total land area (about 36.5m. acres), about 17.5m. acres are under timber 900,000 acres are used for grazing and 2.1m. acres are arable. The unit of area used locally is the *manzana* (= 1.73 acres). Of the arable only 1.2m. acres are actively cultivated, 780,000 in annual crops such as cotton and rice and the remainder in perennial crops such as coffee and sugar-cane, or in two harvests a year in the cases of maize, sorghum and beans.

The products of the western half are varied, the most important being cotton, coffee, now under the aegis of the new *Instituto del Café*, sugar-cane, cocoa, maize, sesame and beans. Production (1986): Coffee, 44,000 tonnes; sugar-cane, 2,810,000 tonnes; cotton, 46,000 tonnes.

There were about 2.1m. head of cattle in 1987 and 749,000 pigs.

**Forestry.** Timber production has been declining, though the forests, which cover 10m. acres, contain mahogany and cedar, which were formerly largely exported, three varieties of rosewoods, guayacán (*lignum vitae*) and dye-woods. Production of sawn wood in 1983, 222,000 tonnes.

**Fisheries.** On the Atlantic coast fisheries are an important subsistence activity. Catch (1984) 4,300 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Chief local industries are cane sugar, cooking oil, cigarettes, beer, leather products, plastics, textiles, chemical products, metal products, cement (100,000 tonnes in 1982), strong and soft drinks, soluble coffee, dairy products, meat, plywood. Production of oil products (1983) 489,000 tonnes.

**Labour.** In 1980 there were some 813,000 persons gainfully employed.

**Commerce.** The foreign trade of Nicaragua, in US\$1m. (1984): Exports, 390m. consisting of cotton, coffee, chemical products, meat, sugar; imports, 750m.

Total trade between Nicaragua and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,176	1,324	1,307	717	725
Exports and re-exports from UK	4,755	6,368	7,349	7,883	6,856

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984, 4,000 km were paved, out of a total of 25,000 km. The whole 368.5 km of the Nicaraguan section of the Pan-American Highway is now paved. The all-weather Roosevelt Highway linking Managua with the river port Rama was completed in 1968, to provide the first overland link with the Atlantic coast. There are paved roads to San Juan del Sur, Puerto Sandino and Corinto. In 1981 there were 66,000 vehicles in use including 23,000 cars.

**Railways.** The Pacific Railroad of Nicaragua, owned and operated by the Government, has a total length of 334 km. all single-track, and connects Corinto, Chinandega, León, Managua, Masaya and Granada. Passengers carried (1986) 3.5m. and 2.5m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** LANICA, the Nicaraguan airline has daily flights to Miami and 6 flights a week to Guatemala and to the inner cities of Bluefields, Puerto Cabezas and the mining towns of Siuna and Bonanza. PANAM and TACA (Transportes Aéreos Centroamericanos), COPA (Compañía Panameña de Aviación), have daily services to Panama, Mexico, the other Central American countries and USA. SAM (Servicio Aéreo de Medellín) has 3 flights a week to Nicaragua and Colombia.

**Shipping.** The Pacific ports are Corinto (the largest), San Juan del Sur and Puerto Sandino through which pass most of the external trade. The chief eastern ports are El Bluff (for Bluefields) and Puerto Cabezas. The merchant marine consists solely of the Mamenic Line with 8 vessels. In 1980, 471,000 tonnes of goods were loaded and 1.14m. tonnes unloaded at Nicaraguan ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1984 there were 51,237 telephones.

The Tropical Radio Telegraph Company maintains a powerful station at Managua, and branch stations at Bluefields and Puerto Cabezas. The Government operates the National Radio with 47 broadcasting stations: there are 31 commercial stations and some 70 others. Number of wireless sets in 1984 was 200,000 and television sets 127,000. There are 2 television stations at Managua.

**Cinemas.** Cinemas numbered over 100 in 1977 and seated over 60,000.

**Newspapers.** In 1984 there were 3 daily newspapers (2 in Managua and 1 in León), with a total circulation of about 105,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicial power is vested in a Supreme Court of Justice at Managua, 5 chambers of second instance (León, Masaya, Granada, Matagalpa and Bluefields) and 153 judges of inferior tribunals.

**Religion.** The prevailing form of religion is Roman Catholic, but religious liberty is guaranteed by the Constitution. The republic constitutes 1 archbishopric (seat at Managua) and 7 bishoprics (León, Granada, Esteli, Matagalpa, Juigalpa, Masaya and Puerto Cabezas). Protestants, established principally on the Atlantic coast, numbered 54,100 in 1966.

**Education.** There were, in 1983, 4,976 primary schools, with a total of 534,996 pupils and 14,105 teachers; and 323 secondary schools, with 151,012 pupils. It was claimed that the illiteracy rate was 12% in 1983. In 1977 there were 6 universities and technical colleges with 1,204 professors and 23,171 students.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 2,172 doctors, 222 dentists, 5,649 nursing personnel and 49 hospitals with 5,045 beds.



# DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Nicaragua in Great Britain (8 Gloucester Rd., London, SW7 4PP)

*Ambassador:* Francisco d'Escoto.

Of Great Britain in Nicaragua

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* M. F. Daly (resides in San José).

Of Nicaragua in the USA (1627 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Dr Carlos Tunnermann.

Of the USA in Nicaragua (Km. 4½ Carretera Sur., Managua)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Nicaragua to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Nora Astorga-Gadea.

## Further Reading

Dirección General Estadística y Censos, *Boletín de Estadística* (irregular intervals); and *Indicadores Económicos*.

Black, G., *Triumph of the People: The Sandinista Revolution in Nicaragua*. London, 1981

Boletín de la Superintendencia de Bancos. Banco Central, Managua

Booth, J. A., *The End of the Beginning: The Nicaraguan Revolution*. Boulder, 1982

Christian, S., *Nicaragua: Revolution in the Family*. New York, 1985

McGinnis, J., *Solidarity with the People of Nicaragua*. New York, 1985

Rosset, P. and Vandermeer, J., (eds.) *The Nicaragua Reader: Documents of a Revolution under Fire*. New York, 1984

Spalding, R. J., *The Political Economics of Revolutionary Nicaragua*. London, 1987

Walker, T. W., *Nicaragua: The Land of Sandino*, Boulder, 1982.—*Nicaragua: The First Five Years*. New York, 1985

Weber, H., *Nicaragua: The Sandinista Revolution*. London and New York, 1981

Woodward, R. L., *Nicaragua*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional, Managua, D.N.

# NIGER

*Capital:* Niamey

*Population:* 7.19m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$260 (1986)

## République du Niger

**HISTORY.** Niger was occupied by France between 1883 and 1899, and constituted a military territory in 1901, which became a part of French West Africa in 1904. It became an autonomous republic within the French Community on 18 Dec. 1958 and achieved full independence on 3 Aug. 1960.

On 15 April 1974 the first President, Hamani Diori, was overthrown in a military *coup* led by Lieut.-Col. Seyni Kountché, who suspended the constitution, dissolved the National Assembly and banned political groups.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Niger is bounded north by Algeria and Libya, east by Chad, south by Nigeria, south-west by Benin and Burkina Faso, and west by Mali. Area, 1,186,408 sq. km (458,075 sq. miles), with a population at the 1977 census of 5,098,657. Estimate (1988) 7.19m. of which 20% live in urban areas. The major towns (populations 1983) are: Niamey, the capital (399,100 inhabitants), Zinder (82,800), Maradi (65,100), Tahoua (41,900), Agadèz (27,000), Arlit (28,000), Akouta (26,000). In 1987, 20% of the population was urban. The population is composed chiefly of Hausa (54%), Songhai and Djerma (23%), Fulani (10%), Beriberi-Manga (9%) and Tuareg (3%).

The official language is French but Hausa is understood by 85% of the population.

Vital statistics (1985): Births, 330,000; deaths, 150,000.

**CLIMATE.** Precipitation determines the geographical division into a southern zone of agriculture, a central zone of pasturage and a desert-like northern zone. The country lacks water, with the exception of the south-western districts, which are watered by the Niger and its tributaries, and the southern zone, where there are a number of wells. Niamey, 95°F (35°C). Annual rainfall varies from 22" (560 mm) in the south to 7" (180 mm) in the Sahara zone.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The country is administered by a Supreme Military Council of 12 officers led by the President, who appoints a Council of Ministers to assist him. A system of elected Development Councils at all levels has been created, culminating in a 150-member National Development Council with limited legislative powers charged with drafting a new constitution.

The Council of Ministers, in July 1988, comprised:

*Head of State, President of SMC, Defence and Interior:* Col. Ali Seybou (took office 14 Nov. 1987).

*Prime Minister:* Mamane Oumarou.

*Ministers of State:* Lieut.-Col. Mamadou Beidari (*Finance*), Tahaya Tounkara (*Planning and Regional Development*).

*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Allele Habibou. *Mines and Energy:* Adamou Souma. *Public and Semi-public Enterprises:* Mohamed Abdoulaye. *Public Health, Social and Women's Affairs:* Capt. Oumara Mai Manga. *Public Works and Housing:* Lieut.-Col. Oumarou Coulibali. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Cdr. Issa Amsa. *Transport and Tourism:* Capt. Amadou Moussa Gros. *National Education and Professional Training:* Ousmane Gazere. *Higher Education, Research and Technology:* Abache Saibou. *Civil Service and Labour:* Amadou Madougou. *Commerce, Industry and Artisan Affairs:* Ali Sabo. *Agriculture and Environment:* Brigi Rafini. *Livestock and Water Resources:* Alhaji Boukar Ousmane. *Information:* Hama Amadou. *Justice:* Soli Abdourahamane. *Youth, Sports and Culture:* Capt. Abdourahamane Saidou. *Ministers-Delegate:* Amadou

Fity Maiga (*Interior*), Lieut.-Col. Bagnou Beidou (*National Defence*). *Minister-Counsellor to the Presidency*: Maj. Amori Chardon.

There are 3 Secretaries of State.

*National flag*: Three horizontal strips of orange, white and green, with an orange disc in the middle of the white strip.

*Local government*: Niger is divided into 7 *départements* (Agadez, Diffa, Dosso, Maradi, Niamey, Tahoua and Zinder), each under a prefect, sub-divided into 32 *arrondissements*, each under a sub-prefect, and some 150 communes.

**DEFENCE.** Selective military service for 2 years operates.

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 armoured reconnaissance squadrons, 6 infantry, 1 engineer, 1 parachute and 1 support company. Equipment includes 10 M-8, 18 AML-90 and 18 AML-60-7 armoured cars. Strength (1989) 3,200. There are additional paramilitary forces of some 4,500 men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had (1989) over 100 officers and men, 2 C-130H and 3 Noratlas transports, 1 Boeing 737 VIP transport, 2 Cessna Skymasters and 3 Do 28D Skyservants and 1 Do 228 for communications duties.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Niger is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 10-year plan (1981-90) provided for an investment of 520,000m. francs CFA in the first phase (1981-85) with a prime aim of obtaining self-sufficiency in food and developing the mining sector.

**Budget.** The 1987 Budget provided for revenue of 198,073m. francs CFA and expenditure of 162,400m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc CFA*, with a parity rate of 50 francs CFA to 1 French franc.

**Banking.** The *Banque Centrale des États de l'Afrique de l'Ouest* is the bank of issue, and there are 9 commercial banks in Niamey.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) amounted to 265m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Deposits in the Lake Chad area, located in 1978, are to be exploited.

**Minerals.** Large uranium deposits are mined at Arlit and Akouta, in the Air mountains of northern Niger, with French and Japanese assistance. Concentrate production (1986) 3,108 tonnes. Phosphates are mined in the Niger valley, and coal reserves are being exploited by open-cast mining (production, 1985, 61,000 tonnes). Salt and natron are produced at Manga and Agadez, tin ore in Air, iron ore at Say.

**Agriculture.** The chief foodcrops in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes) were: Millet, 997; rice, 61; sorghum, 366; cassava, 2; sugar-cane, 110; onions, 120; rice, 65. The main cash crops are ground-nuts (41), cotton and gum arabic.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 3,358,000; horses, 301,000; asses, 510,000; sheep, 3,626,000; goats, 7,622,000; camels, 416,000; chickens, 15m.

**Forestry.** Production (1985) 3.92m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 6,840 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Some small manufacturing industries, mainly in Niamey, produce textiles, food products, furniture and chemicals.

**Trade Unions.** The sole national body is the *Union Nationale des Travailleurs du Niger*, which has 15,000 members in 31 unions.



**Commerce.** Imports in 1983 were valued at 123,288m. francs CFA and exports at 113,896m. francs CFA of which uranium formed 83%. France provided 33% of imports and Nigeria 32%, while 48% of exports went to France, 23% to Japan and 11% to Nigeria.

Total trade between Niger and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	391	399	848	10,556	1,359
Exports and re-exports from UK	10,682	12,076	10,367	7,026	7,552

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 19,137 km of roads. Niamey and Zinder are the termini of two trans-Sahara motor routes; the Hoggar–Air–Zinder road extends to Kano and the Tanezrouft–Gao–Niamey road to Benin. A 648-km 'uranium road' runs from Arlit to Tahoua. There were (1984), 23,100 private cars and 5,074 goods vehicles.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Niamey, Zinder and Maradi. Air Niger operates domestic services to over 20 other public airports.

**Shipping.** Sea-going vessels can reach Niamey (300 km. inside the country) between Sept. and March.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1983) 159 post offices and (1985) 11,824 telephones. In 1986 there were 300,000 radio and 25,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1970 there were 4 cinemas with a seating capacity of 3,800.

**Newspapers.** In 1986 there was 1 daily newspaper, *Le Sahel*, with a circulation of 3,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are Magistrates' and Assize Courts at Niamey, Zinder and Maradi, and justices of the peace in smaller centres. The Court of Appeal is at Niamey.

**Religion.** In 1983, 97% of the population was Sunni Moslem and the remainder mainly followed animist beliefs. There were about 30,000 Christians.

**Education.** There were, in 1980–81, 228,855 pupils and 5,518 teachers in 1,664 primary schools, 45,846 (1981) and 1,371 teachers in secondary schools, and 2,351 students and 120 teachers in the technical and teacher-training colleges. In 1982 there were 1,825 students and 273 teaching staff at the University of Niamey.

**Health.** In 1982 there were 2 hospitals, 36 medical centres and 116 dispensaries. In 1980 there were 136 doctors, and (in 1978) 10 dentists, 12 pharmacists, 88 midwives and 1,080 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Niger in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Abdou Garba (resides in Paris).

Of Great Britain in Niger

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* V. E. Sutherland, CMG (resides in Abidjan).

Of Niger in the USA (2204 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Joseph Diatta.

Of the USA in Niger (PO Box 11201, Niamey)

*Ambassador:* Richard W. Bogosian.

Of Niger to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Joseph Diatta.

## Further Reading

Bonardi, P., *La République du Niger*. Paris, 1960

Fugelstad, F., *A History of Niger, 1850–1960*. OUP, 1984

Séré de Rivières, E., *Histoire du Niger*. Paris, 1965

# NIGERIA

*Capital:* Lagos

*Population:* 105m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$730 (1986)

## Federal Republic of Nigeria

**HISTORY.** The Federal Republic comprises a number of areas formerly under separate administrations. Lagos, ceded in Aug. 1861 by King Dosunmu, was placed under the Governor of Sierra Leone in 1866. In 1874 it was detached, together with Gold Coast Colony, and formed part of the latter until Jan. 1886, when a separate 'colony and protectorate of Lagos' was constituted. Meanwhile the United African Company had established British interests in the Niger valley, and in July 1886 the company obtained a charter under the name of the Royal Niger Company. This company surrendered its charter to the Crown on 31 Dec. 1899, and on 1 Jan. 1900 the greater part of its territories was formed into the protectorate of Northern Nigeria. Along the coast the Oil Rivers protectorate had been declared in June 1885. This was enlarged and renamed the Niger Coast protectorate in 1893; and on 1 Jan. 1900, on its absorbing the remainder of the territories of the Royal Niger Company, it became the protectorate of Southern Nigeria. In Feb. 1906 Lagos and Southern Nigeria were united into the 'colony and protectorate of Southern Nigeria', and on 1 Jan. 1914 the latter was amalgamated with the protectorate of Northern Nigeria to form the 'colony and protectorate of Nigeria', under a Governor. On 1 Oct. 1954 Nigeria became a federation under a Governor-General. In 1967, 12 states were created and in 1976 this was increased to 19 and to 21 in 1987. On 1 Oct. 1960 Nigeria became sovereign and independent and a member of the Commonwealth and on 1 Oct. 1963 Nigeria became a republic.

For the history of Nigeria from 1961 to 1978, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1979-80, pp. 923-924.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Nigeria is bounded north by Niger, east by Chad and Cameroon, south by the Gulf of Guinea and west by Benin. It has an area of 356,669 sq. miles (923,773 sq. km). Census population, Nov. 1963, 55,670,052. The results of the 1973 census have been officially repudiated. There is considerable uncertainty over the total population, but one estimate based on electoral registration in 1978 is 95m. Estimate (1988) 105m.

There were (1984) 19 states and a Federal Capital Territory (Abuja):

<i>States</i>	<i>Area (in sq. km)</i>	<i>Population 1984</i>	<i>States</i>	<i>Area (in sq. km)</i>	<i>Population 1984</i>
Anambra	17,675	6,029,500	Kwara	66,869	2,884,400
Bauchi	64,605	4,075,800	Lagos	3,345	2,825,200
Bendel	35,500	4,125,500	Niger	65,037	1,961,800
Benue	45,174	4,068,600	Ogun	16,762	2,596,000
Borno	116,400	5,025,000	Ondo	20,959	4,617,200
Cross River	27,237	5,830,800	Oyo	37,705	8,732,300
Gongola	91,390	4,367,600	Plateau	58,030	3,397,500
Imo	11,850	6,157,000	Rivers	21,850	2,883,300
Kaduna	70,245	6,868,800	Sokoto	102,535	7,608,900
Kano	43,285	9,681,000			

Two new states were created (Akwa Ibom and Katsina) by division of existing states in 1988.

The populations (1983) of the largest towns were as follows:

Lagos	1,097,000	Ilesha	273,400	Aba	216,000
Ibadan	1,060,000	Onitsha	268,700	Ife	214,500
Ogbomoshoh	527,400	Ado-Ekiti	265,800	Ila	189,700
Kano	487,100	Iwo	261,600	Oyo	185,300
Oshogbo	344,500	Kaduna	247,100	Ikerre-Ekiti	176,800
Ilorin	343,900	Mushin	240,700	Benin City	165,900
Abeokuta	308,800	Maiduguri	230,900	Iseyin	157,000
Port Harcourt	296,200	Enugu	228,400	Katsina	149,300
Zaria	274,000	Ede	221,900	Jos	149,000

Sokoto	148,000	Ondo	122,600	Shomolu	106,800
Ilobu	143,800	Akure	117,300	Oka-Akoko	103,500
Offa	142,300	Gusau	114,100	Ikare	101,700
Owo	132,600	Ijebu-Ode	113,100	Sapele	100,600
Calabar	126,000	Effon-Alaiye	110,600	Minna	98,900
Shaki	125,800	Kumo	107,000	Warri	91,100

It was announced in Feb. 1976 that the federal capital would be moved from Lagos to the Abuja area and, in Sept. 1982, Abuja was established as the future capital.

**CLIMATE.** Lying wholly within the tropics, temperatures everywhere are high. Rainfall varies very much, but decreases from the coast to the interior. The main rains occur from April to Oct. Lagos. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 72" (1,836 mm). Ibadan. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,120 mm). Kano. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 35" (869 mm). Port Harcourt. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 100" (2,497 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution drafted and ratified in 1977-78, Nigeria is a sovereign, federal republic comprising 19 states and a federal capital district. Elections were held in Aug. 1983 and President Shagari was returned with 48% of the vote but in Dec. 1983 the military again took over control in a *coup* and in Jan. 1984 a Supreme Military Council under Maj.-Gen. Mohammed Buhari took office. In Aug. 1985 there was a *coup* following which a 29-member Armed Forces Ruling Council was sworn in on 30 Aug. 1985. Return to civilian rule is envisaged for 1992.

*Head of State, Chairman of AFRC and C.-in-C. of the Armed Forces:* Maj.-Gen. Ibrahim Babangida.

On 12 Sept. 1985 the AFRC appointed a National Council of Ministers comprising the following in Jan. 1989:

*Defence:* Gen. Domkat Bali. *Agriculture, Water Resources and Rural Development:* Maj.-Gen. Muhammed Gado Nasko. *External Affairs:* Maj.-Gen. Ike Nwachukwu. *Industries:* Lieut.-Gen. Alani Akinrinade. *Special Duties:* Air Vice-Marshal Shekri. *Social Development, Youth and Sports:* Air-Cmdre. Bayo Lawal. *Federal Capital Territory:* Air-Cmdre. Hamza Abdulahi. *Works and Housing:* Brig. M. Kontagora. *Internal Affairs:* Col. John Shagaya. *Finance and Economic Development:* Dr S. Chu. *Okongwu. Education:* Jubril Aminu. *Health:* Olikoye Ransome Kuti. *Information and Culture:* Prince Tony Momoh. *Justice:* Prince Bola Ajibola. *Transport:* Dr Kalu Idika Kalu. *Aviation:* Air Vice-Marshal Opere. *Communications:* Col. David Mark. *Petroleum Resources:* Rilwanu Lukman. *Trade:* Samaila Maman. *Mines, Power and Steel:* Burnu Sharif Musa. *Science and Technology:* Emmanuel Emevon. *Employment, Labour and Production:* Abubakar Umar. *Secretary to the Federal Government:* Chief Olu Falae.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of green, white, green.

*Local Government:* Each of the 21 states is administered by a military governor, who appoints and presides over a State Executive Council.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 armoured division, 2 mechanized divisions and 1 airborne and amphibious forces division, each with supporting artillery and engineer and reconnaissance units. Equipment includes 60 T-55 and 72 Vickers Mk 3 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 80,000 men.

**Navy.** The Nigerian Navy was established in 1958. It comprises the frigates *Aradu* (completed in the Federal Republic of Germany in 1982) and *Obuma* (ex-Nigeria) acting as training ship (completed in the Netherlands in 1965), 3 corvettes built in Britain in 1970-72 (*Otobo*), and 1975-80 (*Erinmi* and *Enyimiri*), 6 fast missile-armed attack vedettes (3 built in France and 3 in FR Germany), 2 mine-



hunters, 9 patrol craft, 16 coastal patrol boats, 2 tank landing ships, 2 utility landing craft, 1 survey ship, 1 training ship, 57 launches and 8 tugs.

The new construction programme provided for the delivery of 30 fast light craft ordered from Great Britain (6), United States (6), France (6) and Netherlands (12), this urgent expansion of armed light forces being necessitated by the continuing maritime lawlessness apparently endemic off the Nigerian coast. There are also over 80 small patrol launches operated by the Nigerian Police.

The Navy has a small aviation component, formed recently, equipped with 3 Lynx anti-submarine helicopters.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 5,000 ratings.

**Air Force.** The Nigerian Air Force was established in Jan. 1964. Pilots were trained initially in Canada, India and Ethiopia. The Air Force was built up subsequently with the aid of a Federal Republic of Germany mission; much first-line equipment has since been received from the Soviet Union. It has 14 MiG-21 supersonic jet-fighters, 16 Jaguar attack aircraft and MiG-21U fighter-trainers, and 22 Alpha Jet light attack/trainers. About 20 BO 105 twin-turbine helicopters have been acquired from the Federal Republic of Germany for search and rescue, while 2 F.27MPAs are used for maritime patrol. Transport units operate 9 C-130H-30 and C-130H Hercules 4-turboprop heavy transports, 5 twin-turboprop Aeritalia G222s, 3 DO 228s, a Boeing 727 and a Gulfstream II for VIP use, 18 Dornier 128-6 twin-turboprop and 18 DO 28D twin-piston utility aircraft, 2 Navajos and a Navajo Chieftain. Training types include 25 Bulldog primary trainers and about 12 MB 339 jets for instrument training, transport and ambulance duties. Medium-lift Aérospatiale Puma helicopters are also in service, but are being exchanged for Super Pumas, which were being delivered in 1989. Personnel (1989) total about 9,500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Nigeria is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, ECOWAS, OAU, OPEC and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fourth plan (1981–85) was launched in 1981 but was rescheduled because of lower oil prices.

**Budget.** The 1989 budget provided for expenditure (capital and recurrent) of ₦30,107m. and revenue of ₦20,800m.

**Currency.** Since 1 Jan. 1973 a decimal currency has been issued by the Central Bank of Nigeria, consisting of *Naira* (₦) and divided into 100 *kobo* (k). Notes in circulation ₦20, ₦10, ₦5, ₦1, 50k. Coins, 25k, 10k, 5k, 1k, ½k.

In March 1989, £1 = ₦12.53; US\$1 = ₦7.28. The currency is unconvertible and subject to stringent exchange controls.

**Banking.** There were (1989) 33 commercial banks, 16 merchant banks, 3 development banks, 1 mortgage bank and 1 savings bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The National Electric Power Authority generated 10,730m. kwh. in 1986. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** There are refineries at Port Harcourt, Warri and at Kaduna. Oil represents 95% of exports. Production, 1988, 70m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Natural gas is being used at electric power stations at Afam and Ughelli. Reserves: 4,000,000m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Production: Tin, 1980, 2,527 tonnes; columbite, 1977 (the world's largest producer), 800 tonnes; coal (1981) 114,875 tonnes. There are large deposits

of iron ore, coal (reserves estimate 245m. tonnes), lead and zinc. There are small quantities of gold and uranium.

**Agriculture.** Main food crops are millet and sorghum in the north, plantains and oil palms in the south, and maize, yams, cassava and rice in much of the country, the north being, however, the main food producing area. 1987 production figures (in 1,000 tonnes) are: Millet, 3,000; sorghum, 4,500; plantains, 1,800; maize, 1,400; yams, 19,000; cassava, 14,000; rice, 1,500.

In the 1970s food imports rose rapidly, especially of rice, but import curbs have cut this since 1982 and rice production has risen rapidly. In 1985–86 imports of rice, maize and vegetable oil were banned to encourage higher local production.

Production of crops for export or local industry has greatly declined since the early 1970s. Groundnut production in 1985 was 600,000 tonnes, but very little was sold to the government marketing board which until 1986 bought supplies for export and industry. Cotton lint production (1987) 27,000 tonnes. Cocoa production has declined in recent years, to 130,000 tonnes in 1987; palm kernel was 360,000 tonnes and palm oil, 730,000 tonnes.

In 1986 the marketing boards were abolished. State governments and private and co-operative buyers are all now able to buy any crops, all monopolies being ended.

Livestock (1987). There were 12.2m. cattle, 13.2m. sheep, 26m. goats, 1.3m. pigs and 175m. poultry.

**Forestry.** There are plywood factories at Epe, Sapele and Calabar, and numerous saw-mills. The most important timber species include mahogany, iroko, obeche, abwa, ebony and camwood.

**Fisheries.** The total catch (1984) was 373,800 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There were more than 2,000 industrial establishments in 1982. Timber and hides and skins are major export commodities. Industrial products include soap, cigarettes, beer, margarine, groundnut oil, meat and cake, concentrated fruit juices, soft drinks, canned food, metal containers, ply-wood, textiles, ceramic products and cement (3m. tonnes, 1985). Of growing importance is the local assembly of motor vehicles, bicycles, radio equipment, electrical goods and sewing machines. In 1982, the Delta Steel Plant opened at Ovwian—Aladja.

Under a decree on indigenization Nigerians must have a minimum of 40% shareholding in all foreign enterprises.

**Trade Unions.** All trade unions were dissolved in 1976 and 42 new unions, each organized around a particular occupation, have since been created.

**Commerce.** There is a great deal of internal commerce in local foodstuffs and imported goods moving by rail, lorry and pack animals overland, and by launches, rafts and canoes along an extensive and complex network of inland waterways.

Total trade in ₦m. for 4 years:

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports (c.i.f.)	6,588	7,200	8,300	6,700
Exports and re-exports (f.o.b.)	7,723	8,700	12,600	6,800

Total trade between Nigeria and UK (according to British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	375,796	660,410	329,036	159,386	128,123
Exports and re-exports from UK	768,449	960,703	566,176	481,568	330,476

**Tourism.** There were 340,000 foreign visitors in 1985.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads** (1980). There were 108,000 km of maintained roads and 633,268 vehicles were registered.

**Railways.** There are 3,505 route-km of line 1,067 mm gauge, which in 1984 ran 1,246m. tonne-km and carried 15.3m. passengers.

**Aviation.** There is an extensive system of internal and international air routes, serving Europe, USA, Middle East and South and West Africa. Regular services are operated by Nigerian Airways (WAAC), British Caledonian, UTA, KLM, SABENA, Swissair, PANAM and other lines. In 1981, 2.3m. passengers were carried on domestic and international routes.

**Shipping.** The principal ports are Lagos, Port Harcourt, Warri and Calabar.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Postal facilities are provided at 1,667 offices and agencies; telegraph, money order and savings bank services are provided at 280 of these. Most internal letter mail is carried by air at normal postage rates. External telegraph services are owned and operated by Nigerian External Telecommunications (NITEL), at Lagos, from which telegraphic communication is maintained with all parts of the world. There were 708,390 telephones in use in 1982, of which 249,150 were in Lagos and 33,138 in Ibadan. There is also a telex service.

Federal and some state governments have established commercial corporations for sound and television broadcasting, which are widely used in schools. In 1985 there were 15.7m. radio and 500,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1974). There were 120 cinemas, with a seating capacity of 60,000. Mobile cinemas are used by the Federal and States Information Services.

**Newspapers.** In 1989 there were 18 daily and 30 weekly newspapers. The aggregate circulation is about 1m., of which the *Daily Times* (Lagos) has about 400,000. (Another 4 dailies were published in Lagos, 4 in Ikeja, 3 in Enugu, and 4 in Ibadan.)

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The highest court is the Federal Supreme Court, which consists of the Chief Justice of the Republic, and up to 15 Justices appointed by AFRC. It has original jurisdiction in any dispute between the Federal Republic and any State or between States; and to hear and determine appeals from the Federal Court of Appeal, which acts as an intermediate appellate Court to consider appeals from the High Court.

High Courts, presided over by a Chief Justice, are established in each state. All judges are appointed by the AFRC. Magistrates' courts are established throughout the Republic, and customary law courts in southern Nigeria. In each of the northern States of Nigeria there are the Sharia Court of Appeal and the Court of Resolution. Moslem Law has been codified in a Penal Code and is applied through Alkali courts.

**Religion.** Moslems, 48%; Christians, 34% (17% Protestants and 17% Roman Catholic); others, 18%. Northern Nigeria is mainly Moslem; Southern Nigeria is predominantly Christian and Western Nigeria is evenly divided between Christians, Moslems and animists.

**Education.** In 1976 primary education became free throughout the country. Literacy rate (1973) 25%.

In 1982-83 there were 15,021,100 primary school pupils, and 2,421,625 secondary grammar/commercial school pupils.

Teacher-training institutions totalled 157 in 1973, and in 1982-83 there were 309,442 students enrolled in Grade II teacher-training colleges and 36,772 in advanced teachers' colleges/colleges of education. There were also in 1982-83 86,290 students in secondary technical/vocational schools and 46,244 in polytechnics/colleges of technology.

In 1989 there were 23 federal and 9 state universities.

**Health.** Most tropical diseases are endemic to Nigeria. Blindness, yaws, leprosy, sleeping sickness, worm infections, malaria are major health problems which, however, are yielding to remedial and preventative measures. In co-operation with the World Health Organization river blindness and malaria are being tackled on a large scale, while annual campaigns are undertaken against the danger of smallpox epidemics. Dispensaries and travelling dispensaries are found in most parts of the country.

In 1980 there were 8,000 doctors and 75,000 hospital beds.



**DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES**

Of Nigeria in Great Britain (9 Northumberland Ave., London, WC2 5BX)  
*High Commissioner:* George Dove-Edwin (accredited 29 May 1986).

Of Great Britain in Nigeria (11 Eleke Cres., Victoria Island, Lagos)  
*High Commissioner:* B. L. Barder.

Of Nigeria in the USA (2201 M. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)  
*Ambassador:* Hamzat Ahmadu.

Of the USA in Nigeria (2 Eleke Cres., Lagos)  
*Ambassador:* Princeton N. Lyman.

Of Nigeria to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Maj.-Gen. Joseph N. Garba.

**Further Reading**

- Nigeria Digest of Statistics.* Lagos, 1951 ff. (quarterly)  
*Annual Abstract of Statistics.* Federal Office of Statistics, Lagos, 1960 ff.  
*Nigeria Trade Journal.* Federal Ministry of Commerce and Industries (quarterly)  
 Achebe, C., *The Trouble with Nigeria.* London, 1984  
 Adamolekun, L., *Politics and Administration in Nigeria.* Ibadan, 1986  
 Barbour, K. M. (ed.) *Nigeria in Maps.* London, 1982  
 Burns, A., *History of Nigeria.* 8th ed. London, 1978  
 Crowder, M. and Abdullahi, G., *Nigeria, an Introduction to its History.* London, 1979  
 Ikoku, S. G., *Nigeria's Fourth Coup: Options for Modern Statehood.* Enugu, 1984  
 Kirk-Greene, A. and Rimmer, D., *Nigeria since 1970.* London, 1981  
 Myers, R. A., *Nigeria.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989  
 Nwabueze, B. O., *The Presidential Constitution of Nigeria.* Lagos and London, 1982  
 Oyediran, O., *Nigerian Government and Politics under Military Rule, 1966–1979.* New York, 1980  
 Oyovbaine, S.E., *Federalism in Nigeria: A Study in the Development of the Nigerian State.* London, 1985  
 Shaw, T. M. and Aluko, O., *Nigerian Foreign Policy: Alternative Perceptions and Projections.* London, 1984  
 Simmons, M. and Obe, O. A., *Nigerian Handbook 1982–83.* London, 1982  
 Tijjani, A. and Williams, D. (eds.) *Shehu Shagari: My Vision of Nigeria.* London, 1981  
 Van Apeldoorn, G. J., *Perspectives on Drought and Famine in Nigeria.* London, 1981  
 Williams, D., *President and Power in Nigeria.* London, 1982  
 Zartman, I. W., *The Political Economy of Nigeria.* New York, 1983

# NORWAY

*Capital:* Oslo  
*Population:* 4.2m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$16,400 (1986)

## Kongeriket Norge

**HISTORY.** By the Treaty of 14 Jan. 1814 Norway was ceded to the King of Sweden by the King of Denmark, but the Norwegian people declared themselves independent and elected Prince Christian Frederik of Denmark as their king. The foreign Powers refused to recognize this election, and on 14 Aug. a convention proclaimed the independence of Norway in a personal union with Sweden. This was followed on 4 Nov. by the election of Karl XIII (II) as King of Norway. Norway declared this union dissolved, 7 June 1905, and Sweden agreed to the repeal of the union on 26 Oct. 1905. The throne was offered to a prince of the reigning house of Sweden, who declined. After a plebiscite, Prince Carl of Denmark was formally elected King on 18 Nov. 1905, and took the name of Haakon VII.

### *Norwegian Sovereigns*

Inge Baardsson	1204	Erik of Pomerania	1389
Haakon Haakonsson	1217	Kristofer af Bavaria	1442
Magnus Lagabøter	1263	Karl Knutsson	1449
Eirik Magnusson	1280	Same Sovereigns as in Denmark	1450-1814
Haakon V Magnusson	1299	Christian Frederik	1814
Magnus Eriksson	1319	Same Sovereigns as in Sweden	1814-1905
Haakon VI Magnusson	1343	Haakon VII	1905
Olav Haakonsson	1381	Olav V	1957
Margrete	1388		

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Norway is bounded north by the Arctic ocean, east by the USSR, Finland and Sweden, south by the Skagerrak Straits and west by the North Sea.

<i>Fylker (counties)</i>	<i>Area (sq. km)</i>	<i>Census population 1 Nov. 1980</i>	<i>Population 1 Jan. 1988</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. km (total area) 1988</i>
Oslo (City)	454.0	452,023	453,700	999.4
Akershus	4,916.5	369,193	406,000	82.6
Østfold	4,183.4	233,301	237,000	56.7
Hedmark	27,388.4	187,223	186,400	6.8
Oppland	25,259.7	180,765	182,300	7.2
Buskerud	14,927.3	214,571	223,300	15.0
Vestfold	2,215.9	186,691	194,500	87.8
Telemark	15,315.1	162,050	163,200	10.7
Aust-Agder	9,211.7	90,629	96,000	10.4
Vest-Agder	7,280.3	136,718	142,000	19.5
Rogaland	9,140.7	305,490	329,500	36.1
Hordaland	15,633.8	391,463	405,100	26.0
Sogn og Fjordane	18,633.5	105,924	106,100	5.7
Møre og Romsdal	15,104.2	236,062	237,600	15.7
Sor-Trondelag	18,831.4	244,760	248,100	13.2
Nord-Trondelag	22,463.4	125,835	126,800	5.6
Nordland	38,327.1	244,493	240,100	6.3
Troms	25,953.8	146,818	146,500	5.6
Finnmark	48,637.3	78,331	74,100	1.5
Mainland total	323,877.5 <sup>1</sup>	4,092,340	4,198,300	13.0

Svalbard and Jan Mayen have an area of 63,080 sq. km. Persons staying on Svalbard and Jan Mayen are registered as residents of their home Norwegian municipality.

<sup>1</sup> 125,049 sq. miles.

On 1 Nov. 1980, 2,874,990 persons lived in densely populated areas and 1,197,939 in sparsely populated areas.

## Population of the principal towns at 1 Jan. 1988:

Oslo	453,730	Sandnes	42,584	Gjøvik	25,972
Bergen	209,831	Ålesund	35,563	Halden	25,848
Trondheim	135,524	Sandefjord	35,549	Moss	24,747
Stavanger	96,439	Bodo	35,377	Lillehammer	22,310
Kristiansand	63,491	Porsgrunn	31,249	Harstad	22,277
Drammen	51,843	Ringerike	26,974	Molde	21,784
Tromsø	49,459	Haugesund	26,947	Kongsberg	21,262
Skien	47,531	Fredrikstad	26,479	Steinkjer	20,403

## Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Births</i>	<i>Still-born</i>	<i>Illegitimate</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Deaths</i>
1984	20,537	7,974	50,274	261	10,687	42,581
1985	20,221	8,090	51,134	279	13,203	44,372
1986	20,513	7,891	52,514	268	14,673	43,560
1987 <sup>2</sup>	21,081	8,417	54,027	237	16,705	44,959

<sup>1</sup> Excluding still-born.<sup>2</sup> Provisional.

**CLIMATE.** There is considerable variation in the climate because of the extent of latitude, the topography and the varying effectiveness of prevailing westerly winds and the Gulf Stream. Winters along the whole west coast are exceptionally mild but precipitation is considerable. Oslo. Jan. 25°F (−3.9°C), July 63°F (17°C). Annual rainfall 27'' (683 mm). Bergen. Jan. 35°F (1.5°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 78.3'' (1,958 mm). Trondheim. Jan. 26°F (−3.5°C), July 57°F (14°C). Annual rainfall 32.1'' (870 mm).

**REIGNING KING.** Olav V, born 2 July 1903, married on 21 March 1929 to Princess Märtha of Sweden (born 28 March 1901, died 5 April 1954), daughter of the late Prince Carl (son of King Oscar II). He succeeded on the death of his father, King Haakon VII, on 21 Sept. 1957. *Offspring:* Princess Ragnhild Alexandra, born 9 June 1930 (married, 1953, Erling Lorentzen); Princess Astrid Maud Ingeborg, born 12 Feb. 1932 (married, 12 Jan. 1961, Hr. Johan Martin Ferner); Crown Prince Harald, born 21 Feb. 1937, married, 29 Aug. 1968, Sonja Haraldsen. *Offspring:* Princess Märtha Louise, born 22 Sept. 1971; Prince Haakon Magnus, born 20 July 1973.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Norway is a constitutional and hereditary monarchy. The royal succession is in direct male line in the order of primogeniture. In default of male heirs the King may propose a successor to the Storting, but this assembly has the right to nominate another, if it does not agree with the proposal.

The Constitution, voted by the constituent assembly at Eidsvoll on 17 May 1814 and modified at various times, vests the legislative power of the realm in the Storting (Parliament). The royal veto may be exercised; but if the same Bill passes two Stortings formed by separate and subsequent elections it becomes the law of the land without the assent of the sovereign. The King has the command of the land, sea and air forces, and makes all appointments.

Since June 1938 all branches of the Government service, including the state church, are open to women.

*National flag:* Red with a blue white-bordered Scandinavian cross.

*National anthem:* Ja, vi elsker dette landet (words by B. Bjørnson, 1865; tune by R. Nordraak, 1865).

The Storting assembles every year. The meetings take place *suo jure*, and not by any writ from the King or the executive. They begin on the first weekday in Oct. each year, until June the following year. Every Norwegian subject of 18 years of age is entitled to vote, unless he is disqualified for a special cause. Women are, since 1913, entitled to vote under the same conditions as men. The mode of election is direct and the method of election is proportional. The country is divided into 19 districts, each electing from 4 to 15 representatives.

At the elections for the Storting held in 1985, the following parties were



elected: Labour, 71; Conservative, 50; Centre Party, 12; Christian Democratic Party, 16; Socialist Left Party, 6; Party of Progress, 2.

The Storting, when assembled, divides itself by election into the *Lagting* and the *Odelsting*. The former is composed of one-fourth of the members of the Storting, and the other of the remaining three-fourths. Each Ting (the Storting, the Odelsting and the Lagting) nominates its own president. Most questions are decided by the Storting, but questions relating to legislation must be considered and decided by the Odelsting and the Lagting separately. Only when the Odelsting and the Lagting disagree, the Bill has to be considered by the Storting in plenary sitting, and a new law can then only be decided by a majority of two-thirds of the voters. The same majority is required for alterations of the Constitution, which can only be decided by the Storting in plenary sitting. The Storting elects 5 delegates, whose duty it is to revise the public accounts. The Lagting and the ordinary members of the Supreme Court of Justice (the *Hoyesterett*) form a High Court of the Realm (the *Riksrett*) for the trial of ministers, members of the *Hoyesterett* and members of the Storting. The impeachment before the *Riksrett* can only be decided by the Odelsting.

The executive is represented by the King, who exercises his authority through the Cabinet or Council of State (*Statsråd*), composed of a Prime Minister (*Statsminister*) and (at present) 17 ministers (*Statsråder*). The ministers are entitled to be present in the Storting and to take part in the discussions, but without a vote.

A Labour Government was formed and took office on 9 May 1986. The members of the Government were in Dec. 1988:

*Prime Minister:* Gro Harlem Brundtland.

*Foreign Affairs:* Thorvald Stoltenberg. *Cultural and Scientific Affairs:* Hallvard Bakke. *Environment:* Sissel Rønbeck. *Industry:* Finn Kristensen. *Petroleum and Energy:* Arne Øien. *Local Government and Labour:* Kjell Borgen. *Development:* Kirsti Kolle Grøndahl. *Trade:* Jan Balstad. *Fisheries:* Bjarne Mørk Eidem. *Defence:* Johan Jørgen Holst. *Communications:* William Engseth. *Justice:* Helene Bøsterud. *Finance:* Gunnar Berge. *Church and Education:* Mary Kvidal. *Health and Social Affairs:* Tove Strand Gerhardsen. *Agriculture:* Gunhild Øyangen. *Customer Affairs and Government Administration:* Einfrid Halvorsen.

The official languages are Bokmål (or Riksmål) and Nynorsk (or Landsmål).

*Local Government.* For the purposes of administration the country is divided into 19 counties (*fylker*), in each of which the central government is represented by a county governor (*fylkesmannen*). In addition, there are 47 urban districts (*bykommuner*) and 407 rural districts (*herredskommuner*), each of which usually corresponds in size to a parish (*prestegjeld*). The districts are administered by district councils (*kommunestyrrer*), whose membership may vary between 13 and 85 councillors, and by a committee (*formannskap*) which is elected by and from the members of the council. The council is four times the size of the committee. The council elects a chairman and a vice-chairman from among the committee members.

Each of the 18 counties forms a county district (*fylkeskommune*), while the remaining one, Oslo, comprises an urban district. The supreme authority in a county district is the county council (*fylkesting*). The members of the county council are elected directly by the electors of the county and the number of representatives varies between 25 and 85. In a county district the county committee (*fylkesutvalg*) occupies a position corresponding to that of the committee (*formannskap*) in the primary districts. The county committee is elected by and from among the members of the county council. The number of county committee members is one-fourth of the membership of the county council, but must be not more than 15. The county council elects from among the members of the county committee a county sheriff (*fylkesordfører*) and a deputy sheriff.

**DEFENCE.** Service is universal and compulsory, liability in peace-time commencing at the age of 19 and continuing till the age of 44. The training period in the Army, Coastal Artillery and Anti-air Artillery is 12 months, and periodic refresher training, in the Navy and Air Force, 15 months and limited refresher

training. The Norwegian Defence forces are organized into 2 integrated regional commands.

**Army.** In Northern Command the largest standing element is Brigade North. There are also 2 infantry battalions and 1 tank platoon, 1 SP field artillery battery and 1 AD battery in the North. Southern Command comprises 1 infantry battalion, 1 tank company and 1 self-propelled field artillery battery. Equipment includes Leopard I and M-48A5 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 19,000 (including 13,200 conscripts). The fast mobilization force numbers about 145,000, organized in 12 brigades and a number of independent battalions and other units.

**Navy.** The Royal Norwegian Navy comprises the Navy, the Coast Guard and the Coastal Artillery. The main combatants include 14 coastal submarines, 5 frigates, 2 corvettes, 38 missile-armed fast attack craft, 8 fast torpedo boats, 7 coastal mine-sweepers, 1 minehunter, 2 minelayers, 1 submarine and missile torpedo boat tender, 7 landing craft and 27 auxiliaries. In addition all 6 Coast Guard Vessels are prepared for the escort role. The Coastal Artillery includes coastal batteries and other static defence systems. Personnel strength (1989) totalled 9,000 officers and ratings.

**Coastguard.** The Coastguard main tasks are Fishery Protection and Economic Zone Patrol. The Coastguard assists other government agencies in rescue service, environment, surveillance and police duties. It comprises 3 frigate-size monitors each equipped with a Lynx helicopter, 3 corvette type cutters, 12 survey ships and 7 inspection vessels.

**Air Force.** The Royal Norwegian Air Force comprises the Air Force and the Anti-air Artillery. The Air Force consists of 4 squadrons of F-16 Fighting Falcons, 1 squadron of F-5 fighter-bombers, 1 maritime patrol squadron of P-3B Orions, 1 squadron of C-130H Hercules transports and Falcon 20s equipped for EW duties, 1 squadron with Twin Otter light transports and 2 squadrons of UH-1B helicopters, now being replaced by Bell 412SPs. The Anti-air Artillery deploy 4 Nike surface-to-air missile batteries and several light anti-aircraft artillery units. Noah (Norwegian adapted Hawk missiles) batteries have been introduced to provide area and airfield defence. Nine Westland Sea King helicopters are used for search and rescue duties; 5 Lynx helicopters are operated for the Coast Guard.

Total strength (1989) is about 9,100 personnel, including 5,300 conscripts.

**Home Guard.** The Home Guard is organized in small units equipped and trained for special tasks. Service after basic training is 1 week a year. The total strength is approximately 85,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Norway is a member of UN, NATO, EFTA, OECD, the Council of Europe and the Nordic Council.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Current revenue and expenditure for years ending 31 Dec. (in 1,000 kroner):

	1983 <sup>1</sup>	1984 <sup>1</sup>	1985 <sup>1</sup>	1986 <sup>1</sup>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1,2</sup>
Revenue	165,421,000	192,896,000	222,994,000	246,466,000	256,991,000	271,197,000
Expenditure	157,432,000	171,369,000	198,332,000	225,143,000	248,689,000	261,897,000

<sup>1</sup> Including National Insurance.

<sup>2</sup> Voted budget.

National debt <sup>1</sup> for years ending 31 Dec. (in 1,000 kroner):

1980	106,908,000	1983	92,406,100	1986	194,287,500
1981	107,662,000	1984	115,805,000	1987	165,248,000
1982	103,799,400	1985	142,392,600		

<sup>1</sup> At the rate of par on foreign loans; including treasury bills (in 1 m. kroner) which amounted to 14,600 in 1980, 17,200 in 1981, 13,880 in 1982, 13,413 in 1983, 24,558 in 1984, 35,111 in 1985, 48,975 in 1986 and 24,644 in 1987.

**Currency.** The Norwegian *kroner*, of 100 øre, is of the value of about 11 *kroner* to £1

sterling. National bank-notes of 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 *kroner* are legal means of payment. March 1989, US\$1 = 6.75 *kroner*; £1 = 11.62 *kroner*.

On 31 Aug. 1988 the nominal value of the coin in circulation was 1,199m. *kroner*; notes in circulation, 26,443m. *kroner*.

**Banking.** Norges Bank is the central bank. Supreme authority is vested in the Executive Board consisting of 7 members appointed by the King and the Supervisory Council consisting of 15 members elected by the Storting. It is the only bank of issue.

At the end of 1987 there were 28 private joint-stock banks. Their total amount of capital and funds was 14,653m. *kroner* (capital 7,674m., funds 6,979m.). Deposits amounted to 239,983m. *kroner*, of which 69,829m. *kroner* were at call and notice, and 170,154m. *kroner* on time.

The number of savings banks at the end of 1987 was 173. The total amount of funds of the savings banks amounted to 8,126m. *kroner*, and total deposits 172,095m. *kroner*, of which 62,909m. *kroner* were at call and notice and 109,186m. *kroner* on time.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures has been obligatory since 1875.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Norway is a large producer of hydro-electric energy. The potential total hydro-electric power at regulated mean water flow is estimated at 162,000m. kwh. annually.

By the end of 1986 the capacity of the installations for production of thermo-electric energy was 252 mw. and the capacity for production of hydro-electric energy was 24,626 mw. In 1987 the total production of electricity amounted to 104,283m. kwh. of which 99.5% was produced by hydro-electric plants.

Most of the electricity is used for industrial purposes, especially by the chemical and basic metal industries for production of nitrate of calcium and other nitrogen products, carbide, ferrosilicon and other ferro-alloys, aluminium and zinc. The paper and pulp industries are also big consumers of electricity. Supply 130, 150, 220 and 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** In 1963 sovereignty was proclaimed over the Norwegian continental shelf and in 1966 the first exploration well was drilled. By 1987 production was 6 times the domestic consumption of petroleum and is valued at about 10% of the GNP. Production (1988) 56m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Production (1987) 1,036,585m. cu. ft.

**Minerals.** Production and value of the chief concentrates, metals and alloys were:

<i>Concentrates and minerals</i>	1985		1986	
	<i>Tonnes</i>	<i>1,000 kroner</i>	<i>Tonnes</i>	<i>1,000 kroner</i>
Copper concentrates	97,035	261,621	116,943	225,018
Pyrites	395,162	70,973	379,934	80,062
Titanium ore	735,842	...	802,476	...
Zinc and lead concentrates	59,084	110,413	61,643	92,392
<i>Metals and alloys</i>				
Copper	37,828	...	35,202	...
Nickel	37,513	...	38,202	...
Aluminium	742,686	7,841,702	725,813	7,079,165
Ferro-alloys	921,903	3,318,867	195,257	546,659
Pig-iron	596,031	...	560,743	...
Zinc	97,762	...	90,475	...
Lead and tin	61	...	17	...

**Agriculture.** Norway, including Svalbard and Jan Mayen, is a barren and mountainous country. The arable soil is found in comparatively narrow strips, gathered in deep and narrow valleys and around fiords and lakes. Large, continuous tracts fit for cultivation do not exist. Of the total area, 79.3% is unproductive, 18% productive forest and 2.7% under cultivation.



<i>Principal crops</i>	<i>Area <sup>1</sup> (hectares)</i>			<i>Produce <sup>1</sup> (tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	39,090	39,600	57,980	169,900	158,400	248,800
Rye	1,060	1,000	960	3,500	3,100	3,600
Barley	170,550	174,370	162,740	600,000	544,700	567,400
Oats	129,260	127,300	122,310	494,200	400,400	467,700
Potatoes	18,610	17,130	17,610	440,100	398,300	371,100
Hay	424,460	424,860	423,700	2,978,300	2,880,300	2,887,400

Livestock, 1987 <sup>1</sup>: 16,500 horses, 945,500 cattle (347,600 milch cows), 2,247,700 sheep, 91,900 goats, 778,900 pigs, 3,980,800 hens.

Fur production in 1986–87 was as follows (1985–86 in brackets): Silver fox, 153,500 (97,800); silver-blue fox, 88,500 (74,000); blue fox, 376,000 (303,000); mink, 550,000 (553,000).

<sup>1</sup> Holdings with at least 5 decares agricultural area in use.

**Forestry.** About 80% of the productive forest area consists of conifers and 20% of broadleaves. The annual increment (estimate, 1987) is about 19m. cu. metres with bark. The area of productive forests is 66,600 sq. km. Forests in public ownership cover 8,470 sq. km of this area. Between 1977–78 and 1986–87 an annual average of 8.6m. cu. metres was cut for sale: 8.3m. for industrial use, 300,000m. for fuel. Of industrial use, 4.6m. cu. metres in the lumber industry, 3.2m. as pulp, 200,000 as particle board. About 700,000 cu. metres are consumed annually on farms.

**Fisheries.** The total number of registered fishermen in 1987 was 29,915, of whom 7,293 had another chief occupation. In 1987, the number of fishing vessels (all with motor) was 22,015, and of these, 12,995 were open boats.

The value of sea fisheries in 1m. kroner in 1987 was: Cod, 2,233; capelin, 89; mackerel, 231; coal-fish (saithe), 549; deep-water prawn, 757; haddock, 355; herring, 381; dogfish, 11. The catch totalled in 1987, 1.9m. tons, valued at 5,771m. kroner.

Fish farming is a growth industry, exports (1986) 1,664m. kroner.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry is chiefly based on raw materials produced within the country (wood, fish, etc.) and on water power, of which the country possesses a large amount. Crude petroleum and natural gas production, the manufacture of paper and paper products, industrial chemicals and basic metals are the most important export manufactures. In the following table are given figures for industrial establishments in 1986, excluding one-man units. Electrical plants, construction and building industry are not included. The values are given in 1m. kroner.

<i>Industries</i>	<i>Establish- ments</i>	<i>Number of Employees</i>	<i>Gross value of produc- tion</i>	<i>Value added</i>
Coalmining	1	825	236	48
Crude petroleum and natural gas	12	13,533	68,788	52,085
Metal-mining	14	3,034	1,396	435
Other-mining	412	3,188	2,230	1,014
Food manufacturing	2,222	50,106	52,460	6,499
Beverages	62	4,416	4,602	3,009
Tobacco	4	955	2,505	2,038
Textiles	417	8,441	3,375	1,259
Clothing, etc.	281	4,609	1,458	563
Footwear	32	637	211	92
Leather	55	774	299	97
Wood	1,431	19,574	12,467	3,820
Furniture and fixtures	507	9,067	4,772	1,708
Pulp and paper	131	13,354	13,783	3,542
Printing and publishing	1,847	35,947	17,512	7,692
Chemical, industrial	62	9,098	12,437	3,192
Chemical, other	168	6,217	5,119	1,856

<i>Industries</i>	<i>Establish- ments</i>	<i>Number of Employees</i>	<i>Gross value of produc- tion</i>	<i>Value added</i>
Petroleum, refined	3	909	7,650	125
Petroleum and coal	76	1,727	2,125	494
Rubber	71	1,673	906	389
Plastics	337	7,006	4,372	1,563
Ceramics	31	1,102	290	172
Glass	68	2,034	1,166	463
Other mineral products	510	8,047	6,798	2,385
Iron, steel and ferro-alloys	50	10,489	8,822	2,145
Non-ferrous metals	62	13,017	14,744	4,423
Metal products, except machinery	1,671	27,736	12,610	5,213
Machinery and equipment	1,311	42,369	41,890	10,228
Electrical apparatus and supplies	469	22,473	12,952	5,336
Transport equipment	910	26,564	14,477	4,674
Professional and scientific instruments, photographic and optical goods	65	1,513	843	382
Other manufacturing industries	289	2,968	1,161	500
Total (all included)	13,581	353,400	334,455	127,342

**Income at factor cost (in 1 m. kroner):**

	1985	1986	1987
Net domestic product	433,688	441,870	475,490
Less Indirect taxes	91,037	99,795	104,710
Add Subsidies	26,936	29,569	30,777
	369,587	371,644	401,557

<i>Industries</i>			
Agriculture	10,392	10,888	12,255
Forestry	2,454	2,783	3,173
Fishing and fish breeding	3,098	3,747	4,476
Crude petroleum and natural gas production	64,305	26,171	24,100
Manufacturing, mining and quarrying	65,820	70,390	75,935
Electricity supply	10,804	11,530	13,626
Construction	21,139	25,740	31,803
Wholesale and retail trade	37,305	41,666	43,367
Hotels and restaurants	6,457	7,280	8,582
Financial services	17,986	25,282	26,462
Business services	19,541	22,593	25,716

**Labour.** Distribution of employed persons by occupation in 1987 showed 464,000 (22%) in technical, physical science, humanistic and artistic work; 136,000 (6%) administration; 229,000 (11%) clerical; 216,000 (10%) sales; 137,000 (7%) agriculture, forestry, fishing etc.; 9,000 (0.4%) mining and quarrying; 151,000 (7%) transport and communication; 461,000 (22%) manufacturing; 280,000 (13%) service, and 44,000 (2%) military and occupations not specified.

Source: Labour Force Sample Surveys.

**Commerce.** Total imports and exports in calendar years (in 1,000 kroner):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	98,407,773	113,102,212	132,563,356	150,052,325	152,041,081
Exports	131,396,960	154,034,540	170,732,779	133,847,404	144,543,413

**Trading according to countries was as follows (in 1,000 kroner):**

<i>Countries</i>	1986		1987	
	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
Argentina	318,704	32,553	156,365	40,702
Australia and New Zealand	622,742	399,595	583,185	698,483
Belgium and Luxembourg	4,397,737	1,585,464	4,378,640	1,945,872
Brazil	1,046,830	651,742	773,523	376,506
Canada	2,000,803	705,812	1,877,465	1,166,056
China	...	...	1,157,868	559,516
Czechoslovakia	328,908	138,475	277,549	188,473

<i>Countries</i>	<i>1986</i>		<i>1987</i>	
	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
Denmark	10,704,384	5,969,916	11,734,081	7,394,155
Fed. Republic of Germany	25,418,960	25,313,058	23,555,899	21,448,057
Finland	5,995,158	2,343,720	6,603,609	2,842,569
France	6,109,453	4,639,154	5,618,155	7,338,247
Hong Kong	...	...	1,284,515	302,611
India	168,589	313,182	174,786	342,575
Italy	5,657,178	2,456,464	5,993,298	3,314,647
Japan	...	...	8,670,003	1,792,078
Korea	...	...	1,452,164	515,306
Netherlands	5,726,149	8,118,643	5,842,929	10,342,481
Panama	...	...	897,344	1,933,675
Poland	805,715	198,272	507,140	382,643
Portugal	1,247,301	462,650	1,474,040	798,568
Spain	1,509,911	759,112	1,736,538	874,777
Sweden	26,950,235	13,377,274	28,758,135	16,111,028
Switzerland	2,548,454	1,118,668	2,527,298	1,420,862
UK	13,194,894	3,678,950	13,617,861	38,638,438
USA	10,288,375	7,304,233	9,813,513	8,244,390
USSR	805,715	671,899	981,538	618,474

Principal items of import in 1986 (in 1,000 kroner): Machinery, transport equipment, etc., 60,796,759; fuel oil, etc., 8,859,517; base metals and manufactures thereof, 13,898,325; chemicals and related products, 10,123,453; textiles, 3,744,734.

Principal items of export in 1986 (in 1,000 kroner): Machinery and transport equipment, 23,718,106; base metals and manufactures thereof, 17,417,106; crude oil and natural gas, 53,076,842; edible animal products, 8,684,375; pulp and paper, 6,624,607.

Total trade between Norway and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	3,852,657	4,367,154	3,265,157	3,290,339	3,074,000
Exports and re-exports from UK	968,404	1,140,376	1,147,790	1,220,844	1,053,613

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 Dec. 1987 the length of the public roads (including roads in towns) was 86,805 km. Of these, 52,720 km were main roads; 58,690 km had some kind of paving, mostly bituminous and oil-gravel treatment, the rest being gravel-surfaced.

Number of registered motor vehicles (31 Dec. 1987) was 2,324,697, including 1,623,137 passenger cars (including taxis), 283,999 lorries and vans, 19,204 buses, 167,922 motor cycles and mopeds. The scheduled bus and lorry services in 1987 drove 4,199m. passenger-km.

**Railways.** The length of state railways on 31 Dec. 1987 was 4,218 km; of private companies, 16 km. On 2,450 km of state and 16 km of private railways electric traction is installed. Total receipts of the state railways and road traffic in 1987 were 3,036m. kroner; total expenses (excluding depreciation and interest on capital), 4,380m. kroner. The state railways carried 23.6m. tonnes of freight (of which 13m. was iron ore on the Ofoten railway) and 36.6m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Det Norske Luftfartsselskap (DNL) started its post-war activities on 1 April 1946. On 1 Aug. 1946 DNL, together with DDL (Danish Airlines) and ABA/SILA (Swedish Airlines), formed the 'Scandinavian Airlines System'—SAS. The 3 companies remained independent units, but all services were co-ordinated. In 1951 a new agreement was signed (retroactive from 1 Oct. 1950) according to which the 3 national companies became holding partners in a new organization which took over the entire operational system. Denmark and Norway hold each two-sevenths and Sweden three-sevenths of the capital, but they have joint responsibility towards third parties.

In the autumn of 1986 SAS had a fleet of 104 jet planes. Length of route network,



about 252,000 km. Scheduled air services are run by SAS, Braathens South-American and Far East Air transport service (SAFE) and Widerøes Flyveselskap service. The Norwegian share of the scheduled air service run by SAS is two-sevenths of the SAS service on international routes and the total SAS service in Norway.

	1,000 km flown	Passengers carried	1,000 passenger- km	Post, luggage, freight and passengers (1,000 ton-km) Total	Of which post
1983	59,638	5,610,866	4,345,000	514,000	19,000
1984	59,359	6,114,038	4,533,000	534,000	18,000
1985	63,666	6,799,735	4,791,000	557,000	19,000
1986	73,774	7,490,448	5,030,000	578,000	20,000

**Shipping.** The total registered mercantile marine on 1 Jan. 1988 was 1,328 vessels, 7m. gross tons (steam and motor vessels above 100 gross tons). These figures do not include fishing and catching boats, tugs, salvage vessels, icebreakers and similar special types of vessels, totalling 769 vessels of 366,000 gross tons.

Vessels entering Norway from foreign countries 1985	No.	Total Net tons
Norwegian	6,970	17,470
Foreign	10,013	31,264
Total entered	16,983	48,734

Goods (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1987 discharged, 20,548; loaded, 61,421, of which 12,078 was Swedish iron ore shipped from Narvik.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephone connexions on 31 Dec. 1987 was 1,948,680 (46.4 per 100 of population). Receipts, 14,487.3m. kroner; expenses, 13,397.7m. kroner (interest on capital included) for State Telecommunications. *Norsk Rikskringkasting* is a non-commercial enterprise operated by an independent state organization and broadcasts 1 programme (P1) on long-, medium-, and short-waves and on FM and 1 programme (P2) on FM. Local programmes are also broadcast. It broadcasts 1 TV programme from 2,098 transmitters. Colour programmes are broadcast by PAL system. Number of television licences, 1,453,878.

**Cinemas.** There were 448 cinemas with a seating capacity of 123,090 in 1985.

**Newspapers.** There were 64 daily newspapers with a combined circulation of 2,064,363 in 1988.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicature is common to civil and criminal cases. The same professional judges, who are legally educated, preside over both kinds of cases. These judges are as such state officials. The participation of lay judges and jurors, both summoned for the individual case, varies according to the kind of court and kind of case.

The ordinary Court of First Instance (*Herredsrett* and *Byrett*) is in criminal cases composed of one professional judge and 2 lay judges, chosen by ballot from a panel elected by the district council. In civil cases 2 lay judges may participate. The ordinary Court of First Instance is in general competent in all kinds of cases with the exception of criminal cases where the maximum penalty prescribed in the Criminal Code for the offence in question exceeds five years imprisonment. Altogether there are about 100 ordinary courts of first instance.

In every community there is a Conciliation Council (*Forliksråd*) composed of 3 lay persons elected by the district council. A civil lawsuit usually begins with mediation in the council which also has judicial authority in minor civil cases.

The ordinary Courts of Second Instance (*Lagmannsrett*), of which there are 5, are composed of 3 professional judges. Additionally, in civil cases 2 or 4 lay judges may be summoned. In criminal cases a jury of 10 lay persons is summoned to determine whether the defendant is guilty according to the charge. Four lay persons take part in the assessment of the punishment. In civil cases, the Court of Second Instance is an ordinary court of appeal. In criminal cases in which the lower court

does not have judicial authority, it is itself the court of first instance. In other criminal cases it is an appeal court as far as the appeal is based on an attack against the lower court's assessment of the facts when determining the guilt of the defendant. An appeal based on any other alleged mistakes is brought directly before the Supreme Court.

The Supreme Court (*Høyesterett*) is the court of last resort. There are 18 Supreme Court judges. Each individual case is heard by 5 judges. Some major cases are determined in plenary session. The Supreme Court may in general examine every aspect of the case and the handling of it by the lower courts. However, in criminal cases the Court may not overrule the lower court's assessment of the facts as far as the guilt of the defendant is concerned.

The Court of Impeachment (*Riksretten*) is composed of 5 judges of the Supreme Court and 10 members of Parliament.

All serious offences are prosecuted by the State. The Public Prosecution Authority (*Påtalemyndigheten*) consists of the Attorney General (*Riksadvokaten*), the district attorneys (*statsadvokater*) and legally qualified officers of the ordinary police force. Counsel for the defence is in general provided for by the State.

**Religion.** There is complete freedom of religion, the Evangelical Lutheran Church, however, being the national church, endowed by the State. Its clergy are nominated by the King. Ecclesiastically Norway is divided into 11 *Bispedømmer* (bishoprics), 93 *Prostier* (provostships or archdeaconries) and 623 *Prestegjeld* (clerical districts). There were 174,985 members of registered religious communities outside the Evangelical Lutheran Church, subsidized by central government and local authorities in 1988. The Roman Catholics are under a Bishop at Oslo, a Vicar Apostolic at Trondheim and a Vicar Apostolic at Tromsø.

**Education.** In Norway the children normally start their school attendance the year they are 7 years of age and finish compulsory school the year they complete 16 years of age.

On 1 Oct. 1987 the number of primary schools and pupils were as follows: 3,500 primary schools, 505,942 pupils; 87 special schools for the handicapped, 2,620 pupils.

On 1 Oct. 1986 the number of pupils in upper secondary schools, *i.e.*, folk high schools, secondary general schools and vocational schools, was 206,068.

There are in Norway 4 universities and 11 institutions equivalent to universities. In autumn 1987 the total number of students was 44,303. The University of Oslo, founded in 1811, had 19,478 students. The University of Bergen, founded in 1948, had 8,708 students. The University of Trondheim consists of the Norwegian Institute of Technology, founded in 1910, and the College of Arts and Science, founded in 1925. At each of them the number of students was in autumn 1987, 5,819 and 3,474 respectively. The University of Tromsø was established in 1968; 2,413 students were registered in autumn 1987. The other university institutions had 4,411 students.

On 1 Oct. 1986 there were at other schools of higher education, 60,191 students. These included 12,299 at colleges for teachers, 7,897 at colleges for engineers and 7,922 at district colleges.

In 1985-86 there were 6,673 Norwegian students and pupils attending foreign universities and schools.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 10,324 doctors and (1987) 66,373 hospital beds.

**Social Security.** In 1987, about 93,000m. kroner were paid under different social insurance schemes, amounting to approximately 20% of the net national income.

The National Insurance Act of 17 June 1966, which came into force on 1 Jan. 1967, replaced the schemes relating to old age pensions, disability benefits, widows' and mothers' pensions, benefits to unmarried women, 'survivors' benefit for children and rehabilitation aid. Schemes relating to health insurance, unemployment insurance and occupational injury insurance were revised and incorporated in National Insurance Scheme on 1 Jan. 1971. As from 1 Jan. 1981, benefits to divorced and separated supporters also are covered by the National Insurance Scheme.

The following conspectus gives a survey of schemes established by law. Many municipalities grant additional benefits to old-age, disablement and survivor's pensions.

<i>Type of scheme</i>	<i>Introduced<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Scope</i>	<i>Principal benefits as from 1 Oct. 1988</i>
National insurance	1967 (1988)		
<i>Medical care and sickness cash benefits<sup>2</sup></i>	1911	All residents	Medical benefits: all hospital expenses; cost share of expense of medical consultation, important medicines, travel expenses, etc. (such costs exceeding 880kr. a calendar year are paid in full by the National Insurance).
		Nearly all wage-earners	Daily sickness allowances: kr. 60 to 715 per day cash (5 days a week). The present sickness allowance scheme (established 1978) entitles employees to a daily allowance equal to 100% of their gross earned income (within certain limits) from and including the first day of absence; self-employed persons, ordinarily 65% of gross earned income as from the 15th day. Supplementary insurance available
		All female residents giving birth	Maternity allowances: same as sickness allowances for 120 days (time sharing with the father is possible) or a lump sum of kr. 4,730 per child
<i>Unemployment benefits<sup>2</sup></i>	1939	Nearly all wage-earners	Daily allowance during unemployment kr. 46 to 372 per day, excluding supplement for supported child(ren) (six days a week). Contributions to training and retraining, removal expenses, wage subsidies
<i>Rehabilitation benefits<sup>3</sup></i>	1961	Persons unfit for work because of disablement and persons who have a substantially limited general functional capacity	Training; treatment; rehabilitation allowance grants and loans Full rehabilitation allowance equals old age pension (however, no special supplement is granted, see below.)
<i>Disability benefits<sup>3</sup></i>	1961	All residents	<i>A basic grant and an assistance grant</i> to persons with special needs. Basic grant: kr. 4,368 to kr. 14,544 per annum (However, for many diabetes cases kr. 2,004 per annum.) Assistance grant: kr. 7,272, may be increased for children below 18 years' of age to a maximum of kr. 40,728 per annum
		All residents between 16 and 67 years of age	<i>Disability pension</i> to persons between 16 and 67 years of age, occupationally disabled by at least 50%, unfit for rehabilitation Full disability pension equals old age pension



<i>Type of scheme</i>	<i>Introduced<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Scope</i>	<i>Principal benefits as from 1 Oct. 1988</i>
<i>Occupational injury benefits<sup>2</sup></i> (industrial workers 1895; fishermen 1909; seamen 1913; military personnel 1953, combined in the act of occupational injury insurance 1960)	1960	All employed persons, drafted military personnel, school children and students; self-employed on a voluntary basis	The ordinary benefits of the National Insurance, alternative calculation of pensions etc. which in many cases are more favourable for the insured person—or his survivors than the ordinary rules <i>An occupational injury compensation</i> , alone or in addition to a disability pension
<i>Old age pensions<sup>3</sup></i>	1937	All persons above 67 years of age	Basic pensions: Single, kr. 31,000; couples, kr. 46,500 per annum; supplementary pensions based on previous pensionable income; supplement for supported spouse kr. 15,500 per annum; supplement for supported child(ren) kr. 7,750 or kr. 3,875 per child per annum; <i>see below</i> under 'Special supplement' and 'Compensation supplement'
<i>Death grants</i>	1967	All residents	A certain amount fixed by the Storting, for the time being kr. 4,000
<i>Survivors' benefits<sup>3</sup></i>	1965	All residents	Full pension = kr. 31,000 per annum + 55% of the supplementary pension due to the deceased, <i>transitional benefits</i> , child care allowance and educational allowances ( <i>see below</i> under 'Special supplement' and 'Compensation supplement')
<i>Children's pension<sup>3</sup></i>	1958	Under 18 (20) years of age, after loss of one or both parents	40% of basic amount (kr. 12,400) for first child, 25% (kr. 7,750) for each additional child. If both parents are dead, full survivors' pension for first, 40% of basic amount for second, 25% third, etc., child
<i>Benefits to unmarried supporters<sup>3</sup></i>	1965	Unmarried mothers or fathers	An additional maternity benefit of kr. 8,820, transitional benefit, full amount kr. 31,000 per annum, child care allowance and educational allowances ( <i>see below</i> under 'Special supplement' and 'Family allowances')
<i>Benefits to divorced and separated supporters<sup>4</sup></i>	1972	Divorced and separated supporters	Same kind of benefits as unmarried supporters above
<i>Benefits to unmarried persons forced to live at home<sup>3</sup></i>	1965	Unmarried persons under 67 years of age having stayed at home for at least 5 years to give necessary care and attention to parents or other near relatives	Transitional benefit or a pension kr. 31,000 per annum, educational allowances ( <i>see below</i> under 'Special supplement' and 'Compensation supplement')
Special supplement to National Insurance pensions or transitional benefits	1969 (1984)	Pensioners and persons with transitional allowance on basic rates	Full special supplement, 57% of basic amount, <i>i.e.</i> kr. 17,670. For a married pensioner full supplement is lower when spouse has her/his own pension (52·25%)

For notes *see* p. 960.

<i>Type of scheme</i>	<i>Introduced<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Scope</i>	<i>Principal benefits as from 1 Oct. 1988</i>
Compensation supplement to National Insurance pensions or transitional benefits	1970 (1984)	Pensioners, persons with transitional benefits (except unmarried, divorced and separated supporters) or rehabilitation allowances	Full compensation supplement kr. 500 for single persons and kr. 750 for married couples per annum
Family allowances	1946 (1987)	All families with children under 16 years of age	Kr. 7,188 per annum for the first child, kr. 7,680 for the second, kr. 9,096 for the third, kr. 9,720 for the fourth and kr. 10,104 for the fifth and each additional child. Single supporters receive benefits for one child more than the actual number
War pensions	1946 (1987)	War victims, 1939-45	Pensions up to kr. 137,424 per annum for single pensioners/couples (excluding supplement for supported child(ren); widows' and children's pensions
Special pension schemes:		Persons with at least: <sup>5</sup>	Maximum old-age pension:
<i>Forestry workers</i>	1952 (1987)	750 premium weeks (1,500 .. ..)	Kr. 31,000 per annum (for supported spouse an additional 33 1/3%, 10% supplement per child, maximum 5 children)
<i>Fishermen</i>	1958 (1987)	750 premium weeks (1,500 .. ..)	Kr. 31,000 per annum (for supported spouse an additional 50%, 30% supplement per child)
<i>Seamen</i>	1948 (1987)	150 months service (360 .. ..)	Kr. 101,585 <sup>6</sup> per annum (officers) Kr. 72,559 <sup>6</sup> .. .. (others) (no spouse supplement, an additional 10% per child)

<sup>1</sup> Date of latest revision of law in brackets.

<sup>2</sup> Transferred to national insurance scheme and revised in 1971.

<sup>3</sup> Transferred to national insurance scheme and revised in 1967.

<sup>4</sup> Transferred to national insurance scheme and revised in 1981.

<sup>5</sup> Requirements for maximum pensions in brackets.

<sup>6</sup> Supplements for service during war not included.

Provisions have been laid down for the integration of more than one benefit, pension, etc., so as to limit the total amount.

As a main rule all running benefits are taxable, while lump sums are not taxed. Certain tax modifications apply to all pensioners and pensioners with no other income than minimum benefits are not charged for tax.

## SVALBARD

An archipelago situated between 10° and 35° E. long. and between 74° and 81° N. lat. Total area, 62,000 sq. km (24,000 sq. miles).

The main islands of the archipelago are Spitsbergen (formerly called Vest-spitsbergen), Nordaustlandet, Edgeoya, Barentsoya, Prins Karls Forland, Bjornøya, Hopen, Kong Karls Land, Kvitøya, and many small islands. The arctic climate is tempered by mild winds from the Atlantic.

The archipelago was probably discovered by Norsemen in 1194 and rediscovered by the Dutch navigator Barents in 1596. In the 17th century the very lucrative whale-hunting caused rival Dutch, British and Danish-Norwegian claims to sovereignty and quarrels about the hunting-places. But when in the 18th century the whale-hunting ended, the question of the sovereignty of Svalbard lost its significance; it was again raised in the 20th century, owing to the discovery and exploitation of coalfields. By a treaty, signed on 9 Feb. 1920 in Paris, Norway's sovereignty over the archipelago was recognized. On 14 Aug. 1925 the archipelago was officially incorporated in Norway.

Coal is the principal product. Of the 3 Norwegian and 3 Soviet mining camps, 2 Norwegian and 2 Soviet camps are operating. Total population on 31 Dec. 1986 was 3,942, of which 1,387 were Norwegians, 2,535 Soviet citizens, and 10 Poles. In 1986, 349,204 tonnes of coal were exported from the Norwegian and 510,086 tonnes from the Soviet mines.

Norwegian and foreign companies have been prospecting for oil. So far 5 deep drillings have been made, but oil and gas finds have not been reported.

There are Norwegian meteorological and/or radio stations at the following places: Bjørnøya (since 1920), Hopen (1945), Isfjord Radio (1933), Longyearbyen (1930), Svalbard Lufthavn (1975) and Ny-Ålesund (1961). A research station, administered by Norsk Polarinstitutt, was erected at Ny-Ålesund in 1968 for various observations and investigations. An airport near Longyearbyen (Svalbard Lufthavn) opened in 1975.

*Norsk Polarinstitutt, Skrifter*, Oslo, from 1948 (under different titles from 1922)

Greve, T., *Svalbard: Norway in the Arctic*. Oslo, 1975

Hisdal, V., *Geography of Svalbard*. Norsk Polarinstitutt, Oslo, rev. ed., 1984

Orvin, A. K., 'Twenty-five Years of Norwegian Sovereignty in Svalbard 1925-1950' (in *The Polar Record*, 1951)

## JAN MAYEN

This bleak, desolate and mountainous island of volcanic origin and partly covered by glaciers, is situated 71° N. lat. and 8° 30' W. long., 300 miles NNE of Iceland. The total area is 380 sq. km (147 sq. miles). Beerenberg, its highest peak, reaches a height of 2,277 metres. Volcanic activity, which had been dormant, was reactivated in Sept. 1970.

The island was possibly discovered by Henry Hudson in 1608, and it was first named Hudson's Tutches (Touches). It was again and again rediscovered and re-named. Its present name derives from the Dutch whaling captain Jan Jacobsz May, who indisputably discovered the island in 1614. It was uninhabited, but occasionally visited by seal hunters and trappers, until 1921 when Norway established a radio and meteorological station. On 8 May 1929 Jan Mayen was officially proclaimed as incorporated in the Kingdom of Norway. Its relation to Norway was finally settled by law of 27 Feb. 1930. A LORAN station (1959) and a CONSOL station (1968) have been established.

## BOUVET ISLAND

### Bouvetøya

This uninhabited volcanic island, mostly covered by glaciers and situated 54° 25' S. lat. and 3° 21' E. long., was discovered in 1739 by a French naval officer, Jean Baptiste Loziert Bouvet, but no flag was hoisted till, in 1825, Capt. Norris raised the Union Jack. In 1928 Great Britain waived its claim to the island in favour of Norway, which in Dec. 1927 had occupied it. A law of 27 Feb. 1930 declared Bouvetøya a Norwegian dependency. The area is 50 sq. km (19 sq. miles). From 1977 Norway has had an automatic meteorological station on the island, and 5 men operated a meteorological station there during the 1978-79 season.

## PETER I ISLAND

### Peter I Øy

This uninhabited island, situated 68° 48' S. lat. and 90° 35' W. long., was sighted in 1821 by the Russian explorer, Admiral von Bellingshausen. The first landing was made in 1929 by a Norwegian expedition which hoisted the Norwegian flag. On 1 May 1931 Peter I Island was placed under Norwegian sovereignty, and on 24 March 1933 it was incorporated in Norway as a dependency. The area is 180 sq. km (69 sq. miles).



## QUEEN MAUD LAND

### Dronning Maud Land

On 14 Jan. 1939 the Norwegian Cabinet placed that part of the Antarctic Continent from the border of Falkland Islands dependencies in the west to the border of the Australian Antarctic Dependency in the east (between 20° W. and 45° E.) under Norwegian sovereignty. The territory had been explored only by Norwegians and hitherto been ownerless. Since 1949 expeditions from various countries have explored the area. In 1957 Dronning Maud Land was given the status of a Norwegian dependency.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Norway in Great Britain (25 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8QD)  
*Ambassador:* Kjell Eliassen (accredited 15 Feb. 1989).

Of Great Britain in Norway (Thomas Heftyesgate 8, 0264 Oslo, 2)  
*Ambassador:* J. A. Robson, CMG.

Of Norway in the USA (2720 34th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Kjell Eliassen.

Of the USA in Norway (Drammensveien 18, 0255 Oslo, 2)  
*Ambassador:* Robert D. Stuart Jr.

Of Norway to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Tom Eric Vraalsen.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Bureau of Statistics, Statistisk Sentralbyrå (Skippergaten 15, P.B.8131 Dep.0033, Oslo 1), was founded in 1876 as an independent state institution. *Acting director general:* Gisle Skancke. The earliest census of population was taken in 1769. The Sentralbyrå publishes the series *Norges Offisielle Statistikk*, Norway's official statistics (from 1828), and *Social Economic Studies* (from 1954). The main publications are:

- Statistisk Arbok for Norge* (annual, from 1880; from 1952 bilingual Norwegian-English)
- Økonomisk Utsyn* (Economic survey annual, from 1935; with English summary from 1952)
- Historisk Statistikk 1978* (historical statistics; bilingual Norwegian-English)
- Statistisk Månedshäfte* (monthly, from 1880; with English index)
- Sosialt Utsyn 1983* (social survey). Irregular
- Miljøstatistikk 1983* (environmental statistics). Irregular
- Norges Statskalender*. From 1816; annual from 1877
- Facts about Norway*. Ed. by Aftenposten. 20th ed. Oslo, 1986-87
- Arntzen, J. G. and Knudsen, B. B., *Political Life and Institutions in Norway*. Oslo, 1981
- Derry, T. K., *A History of Modern Norway, 1814-1972*. OUP, 1973.—*A History of Scandinavia*. London, 1979
- Glässer, E., *Norwegen* [Bibliography] Darmstadt, 1978
- Gleditsch, Th., *Engelsk-norsk ordbok*, 2nd ed. Oslo, 1948
- Greve, T., *Haakon VI of Norway, Founder of a New Monarchy*. London, 1983
- Gronland, E., *Norway in English, Books on Norway . . . 1742-1959*. Oslo, 1961
- Haugen, E., *Norwegian-English Dictionary*. Oslo, 1965
- Helvig, M., *Norway: Land, People, Industries, a Brief Geography*. 3rd ed. Oslo, 1970
- Holtedahl, O. (ed.) *Geology of Norway*. Oslo, 1960
- Hornby, A. S. and Svenkerud, H., *Oxford engelsk-norsk ordbok*. Oslo, 1983
- Hove, O., *The System of Education*. Oslo, 1968
- Imber, W., *Norway*. Oslo, 1980
- Knudsen, O., *Norway at Work*. Oslo, 1972
- Larsen, K., *A History of Norway*. New York, 1948
- Midgaard, J., *A Brief History of Norway*. Oslo, 1969
- Nielsen, K. and Nesheim, A., *Lapp Dictionary: Lapp-English-Norwegian*. 5 vols., Oslo 1963
- Orvik, N. (ed.) *Fears and Expectations: Norwegian Attitudes Toward European Integration*. Oslo, 1972
- Paine, R., *Coast Lapp Society*. 2 vols. Tromsø, 1957-65
- Popperwell, R. G., *Norway*. London, 1972
- Sather, L. B., *Norway*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986
- Selby, A., *Norway Today: An Introduction to Modern Norwegian Society*. Oslo, 1986
- National Library:* The University Library, Drammensvein 42b, 0255 Oslo. *Director:* Ben Ruqaas.

# OMAN

*Capital:* Muscat

*Population:* 1.2m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$4,990 (1986)

## Sultanate of Oman

**HISTORY.** Oman was dominated by Portugal from 1507–1649. The Al-Busaid family assumed power in 1744 and have ruled to the present day. The Sultanate of Oman, known as the Sultanate of Muscat and Oman until 1970, is an independent sovereign state, situated in south-east Arabia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Its coastline is over 1,000 miles long and extends from the Ras al Khaimah Shaikdom near Bukha on the west side of the Musandum Peninsula to Fujairah Shaikdom on the east side, then again from the southern boundary of Fujairah to Ras Dharbat Ali, which marks the boundary between Oman and the territory of the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen. The Sultanate extends inland to the borders of the Rub' al Khali ('Empty Quarter') across three geographical divisions—a coastal plain, a range of hills and a plateau. The coastal plain varies in width from 10 miles near Suwaiq to practically nothing in the vicinity of Mutrah and Muscat towns, where the hills descend abruptly into the sea. These hills are for the most part barren except at the highest part of the mountainous region of the Jebel Akhdar (summit 9,998 ft) where there is some cultivation. The plateau has an average height of 1,000 ft. With the exception of oases there is little or no cultivation. North-west of Muscat the coastal plain, known as the Batinah, is fertile and prosperous. The date gardens extend for over 150 miles. Whereas the coastline between the capital, Muscat, and the southern province of Dhofar is barren, Dhofar itself is highly fertile. Its principal town is Salalah on the coast which is served by the port of Raysut.

The area has been estimated at about 105,000 sq. miles (300,000 sq. km) and the population at 1.2m., chiefly Arabs; of these, some 40,000 live in Dhofar. The town of Muscat is the capital which, while formerly of some commercial importance, has now lost most of its trade to the adjacent port of Mutrah, the starting point for the trade routes into the interior. The population of both towns consists of pure Arabs, Indians, Pakistanis and Negroes; numerous merchants are Khojas (from Sind and Kutch) and Hindus (mostly from Gujarat and Bombay). Estimated population of the Capital area (comprising Muscat, Mutrah, Ruwi and Seeb), 1985, 250,000. Other principal towns are Nizwa, 10,000 and Salalah, 10,000. Other ports are Sohar, Khaburah and Sur on the Gulf of Oman and Raysut in the south; only Raysut affords shelter from bad weather.

The port of Gwadar and a small tract of country on the Balúchistán coast of the Gulf of Oman were handed over to Pakistan on 8 Sept. 1958.

The **Kuria Muria** islands were ceded to the UK in 1854 by the Sultan of Muscat and Oman. On 30 Nov. 1967 the islands were retroceded to the Sultan of Muscat and Oman, in accordance with the wishes of the population.

**CLIMATE.** Oman has a desert climate, with exceptionally hot and humid months from April to Oct., when temperatures may reach 117°F (47°C). From Dec. to the end of March, the climate is more pleasant. Light monsoon rains fall in the south from June to Sept., with highest amounts in the western highland region. Muscat. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 91°F (33.3°C). Annual rainfall 4.0" (99.1 mm). Salalah. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 3.3" (81.3 mm).

**RULER.** The present Sultan is Qaboos bin Said (born Nov. 1940). He took over from his father Said bin Taimur, on 23 July 1970 in a Palace *coup*.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Oman is an absolute monarchy and there is no formal constitution. The Sultan legislates by decree and appoints a

Cabinet to assist him; he holds the posts of Prime Minister and Minister of Foreign Affairs, Defence and Finance. Besides 17 departmental Ministers, the Cabinet also includes:

*Deputy Prime Minister for Security and Defence:* Sayyid Fahar Bin-Taimur al-Said. *Deputy Prime Minister for Finance and Economy:* Qais bin Abdal Munim al-Zawawi. *Deputy Prime Minister for Legal Affairs:* Sayyid Fahad Bin-Mahmoud al-Said. *Special Adviser to Sultan, Governor of Muscat:* Sayyid Thuwaini Bin-Shihab al-Said. *Special Adviser to Sultan on Religious and Historical Affairs:* Mohammad Bin-Ahmad Al Bu Saidi. *Minister of State for Foreign Affairs:* Yusuf Bin Alawi Bin Abdullah. *Minister of State, Governor of Dhofar:* Musallim Bin Ali al Bu Saidi.

In Oct. 1981 the Sultan issued three decrees establishing a 45-member State Consultative Council. The number of Council members was increased to 55 in 1983.

*National flag:* Red, with a white panel in the upper fly and a green one in the lower fly, and in the canton the national emblem in white.

*Local government:* Oman is divided into 10 provinces (*liwas*) and sub-divided into 41 governates (*wilayats*) each under a governor (*wali*).

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 headquarter brigades; 1 armoured, 1 reconnaissance and 3 artillery regiments; 8 infantry battalions; 1 special force, 1 engineer regiment and 1 parachute regiment. Equipment includes 6 M-60A1 and 33 Chieftain main battle tanks. Strength (1989) about 20,000.

**Navy.** The Navy comprises 4 new very fast missile-armed corvettes, 4 fast gun-boats, 4 inshore patrol craft, 1 training ship/offshore patrol vessel, 2 logistic support ships, 5 landing craft, 1 troop transport, 1 survey craft, 1 supply ship and 1 training ship. All the warships are British-built. Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 2,500 officers and ratings. The marine police operate 12 coastal patrol boats, 2 logistics support craft, 3 inshore patrol boats and 8 launches.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, formed in 1959, had in 1987 two strike/interceptor squadrons of Jaguars, a ground attack/interceptor squadron of Hunters, a squadron of Strikemaster light jet training/attack aircraft, 1 DC-8, 3 BAC One-Eleven and 1 Falcon VIP transports, 3 C-130H Hercules, 6 Defender and 15 Skyvan light transports, 35 Agusta-Bell 205, 212, 214B and JetRanger, and Bell 214 ST helicopters for security duties, 2 Super Puma VIP helicopters and 2 Bravo piston-engined trainers. Air defence force has batteries of Rapier low-level surface-to-air missiles. Personnel (1989) about 3,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Oman is a member of UN, the Arab League, the Islamic Conference Organisation and the Gulf Co-operation Council.

**Treaties.** The Treaty of Friendship, Commerce and Navigation between Britain and the Sultan signed on 20 Dec. 1951, reaffirmed the close ties which have existed between the British Government and the Sultanate of Oman for over a century and a half. A Memorandum of Understanding signed in June 1982 provided for regular consultations on international and bilateral issues.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The third 5-year plan (1986–90) envisages expenditure of R.O. 9,250m.

**Budget.** Revenue (1988) R.O. 1,350m. (1,065m. from oil); expenditure, 1,602m.

**Currency.** The *Rial Omani* was introduced in Nov. 1972 replacing the *Rial Saidi*. It is divided into 1,000 *baiza*. There are notes of 100, 200 and 500 *baiza* and 1, 5, 10, 20 and 50 *Rial Omani* and coins of 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100, 250 and 500 *baiza*. The exchange rate in March 1989 was £1 = 666 *baiza*; US\$1 = 387 *baiza*.



**Banking.** In Dec. 1986 there were 22 commercial banks operating in Oman, of which 13 were foreign institutions. There are 3 specialized banks: The Oman Development Bank, the Oman Housing Bank and the Oman Bank for Agriculture and Fisheries. The Central Bank of Oman commenced operations in 1975.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of measurement is in operation. Transactions in the former measurements are now illegal.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 2,920m. kwh. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** The economy of Oman is dominated by the oil industry, which provides nearly all Government revenue. In 1937 Petroleum Concessions (Oman) Ltd, a subsidiary of the Iraq Petroleum Co., was granted a 75-year oil concession extending over the whole of Oman, although it relinquished Dhofar in 1950. In 1951 the company's name was changed to Petroleum Development (Oman) Ltd. The company (PDO) regained the Dhofar concession area in 1969. When some of the IPC partners withdrew from Oman in 1960, Shell took over the management of PDO with an 85% interest (minority interests were held by Compagnie Française des Pétroles, 10% and Gulbenkian, 5%). At the beginning of 1974 the Oman Government bought a 25% share in PDO, increasing this retroactively to 60% in July. A Joint Management Committee was established. Other companies active in exploration activities in Oman, with mixed success, include Amoco, Elf-Aquitaine and a consortium of Deminex, Agip and Hispanoil with BP as operator.

Oil in commercial quantities was discovered in 1964 and production began at a rate of 200,000 bbls per day in 1967. Production has fluctuated from year to year, peaking in 1976 at 366,000 bbls per day. Production in 1988 was 29.5m. tonnes. Total proven reserves were estimated in 1986 to be 4,200m. bbls, or sufficient for 22 years at the current rate of production. Since the first oil refinery became operational in 1982, Oman has been self-sufficient in most oil-derived products.

Oman is not a member of OPEC or OAPEC.

**Gas.** Production (1986) 8m. cu. ft per day. In 1986 reserves were estimated at 195,000m. cu. metres.

**Water Resources.** Oman relies on a combination of water and desalination plants for its water. Two desalination plants at Ghubriah, built in 1972 and 1982, provide most of the water needs of the capital area.

**Minerals.** Production of refined copper at the smelter at Sohar was about 14,000 tonnes in 1984.

**Agriculture.** About 41,000 hectares are under cultivation. In the valleys of the interior, as well as on the Batinah, date cultivation has reached a high level, and there are possibilities of agricultural development subject to present water resources and soil surveys. The crop of dates was 77,000 tonnes in 1987, most of which is exported to India. Other main crops are limes, bananas, coconuts, mangoes and alfalfa. Camels (80,000 in 1987) are bred in large numbers by the inland tribes.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1985) 114,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufacturing accounts for 3% of GDP and apart from oil production, copper mining and smelting and cement production there are no industries of any importance. Fishing, water resources, soil and agricultural surveys are being undertaken. The government gives priority to import substitute industries.

**Commerce.** The total imports for 1985 were valued at R.O. 1,162m., including machinery and transport equipment (455m.), manufactured goods (240.9m.), food and live animals (124.1m.), petroleum products (19.7m.) and chemicals (31.7m.).

In 1985, 18.9% of imports came from Japan, 15.4% from UK, 5.3% from USA

and 7.3% from the Federal Republic of Germany; 66.3% of oil exports went to Japan, 14.1% to South Korea, 6.7% to Thailand, 2.9% to Singapore and 2.7% to Taiwan.

Total trade between Oman and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	82,655	69,015	87,235	49,487	146,751
Exports and re-exports from UK	390,275	489,926	399,647	249,916	344,875

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** A network of adequate graded roads links all the main sectors of population, and only a few mountain villages are not accessible by Land-Rover. In Dec. 1983 there were 3,222 km of paved roads and 18,667 km of graded roads. In 1985 there were 200,000 vehicles.

**Aviation.** Gulf Air run regional services in and out of Seeb international airport (20 miles from Muscat) to Bahrain, Doha, Abu Dhabi, Dubai, Karachi, Bombay and operate daily flights to and from London. Other airlines serving Muscat are British Airways, KLM, Thai International, British Caledonian, Air Tanzania, MEA, Kuwait Airlines, PIA, Air India, Iran Air, TMA (cargo) and Trade Winds (cargo). Domestic flights are provided by Oman Aviation Services.

**Shipping.** In Mutrah a deep-water port (named Mina Qaboos) was completed in 1974 at a cost of R.O. 18.2m. It provides 12 berths, 9 of which are deep-water berths, warehousing facilities and a harbour for dhows and coastal vessels. The annual handling capacity has been raised to 1.5m. tons. Mina Raysut, the port of Salalah, has a capacity of 1m. tons per year.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are Sultanate post offices in Muscat and Mutrah, relying solely upon a Post Office Box system for delivery. Omantel maintain a telegraph office at Muscat and an automatic telephone exchange (23,000 lines, 1984) which includes Mutrah, Bait-al-Falaj and Mina al-Fahal, the oil company terminal. A high-frequency radio link with Bahrain was opened in Aug. 1972 providing communications with other parts of the world. Internally, there are radio telephone, telex and telegraph services direct between Salalah and Muscat, and a VHF radio link between Seeb international airport and Muscat. The airport is also served by a SITA telex system. Radio Oman broadcasts daily for 17 hours in Arabic and 2 hours in English.

A colour television service covering Muscat and the surrounding area started transmission in Nov. 1974. A television service for Dhofar opened in 1975. Total number of televisions, 23,500 and radios, 800,000 in 1985.

**Newspapers.** There were (1987) 2 Arabic and 1 English daily newspapers and 2 English weekly newspapers.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** In 1985-86, there were 531 schools with 195,847 pupils and (1984-85) 9,236 teachers. Plans have been implemented for the development of technical and agricultural training and craft training at intermediate and secondary level. Oman's first university, the Sultan Qaboos University, opened in Sept. 1986. There are also programmes to combat adult illiteracy.

**Health.** Health services in 1984 were widely spread with 15 hospitals in use with 2,142 beds, and 1 more hospital planned, 21 health centres, 74 dispensaries, 572 doctors and 1,753 nurses. There are also Save the Children Fund Welfare Clinics at Sohar and Sur.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Oman in Great Britain (44A Montpelier Sq., London, SW7 1JJ)

*Ambassador:* Hussain Bin Mohammad Bin Ali.

Of Great Britain in Oman (PO Box 300, Muscat)

*Ambassador:* Robert John Alston, CMG.

Of Oman in the USA (2342 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Awadh Bader Al-Shanfari.

Of the USA in Oman (PO Box 966, Muscat)  
*Ambassador:* G. C. Montgomery.

Of Oman to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Salim Bin Mohammed Al-Khussaiby.

### Further Reading

- Oman in 10 years.* Ministry of Information, Oman, 1980  
*Oman: A MEED Practical Guide.* London, 1984  
 Carter, J. R. L., *Tribes of Oman.* London, 1981  
 Clements, F. A., *Oman: The Reborn Land.* London and New York, 1980.—*Oman.*  
 [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981  
 Graz, L., *The Omani's: Sentinels of the Gulf.* London, 1982  
 Hawley, D., *Oman and its Renaissance.* London, 1977  
 Peterson, J. E., *Oman in the Twentieth Century.* London and New York, 1978  
 Peyton, W. D., *Oman before 1970: The End of an Era.* London, 1985  
 Pridham, B. R., (ed.) *Oman: Economic, Social and Strategic Developments.* London, 1987  
 Shannon, M. O., *Oman and South-eastern Arabia: A Bibliographic Survey.* Boston, 1978  
 Skeet, I., *Muscat and Oman: The End of an Era.* London, 1974  
 Thesiger, W., *Arabian Sands.* London, 1959  
 Townsend, J., *Oman.* London, 1977  
 Ward, P., *Travels in Oman.* Cambridge, 1987  
 Wikan, U., *Behind the Veil in Arabia: Women in Oman.* Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, 1982  
 Wilkinson, J. C., *The Imanate Tradition of Oman.* CUP, 1987



# PAKISTAN

*Capital:* Islamabad

*Population:* 102.2m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$350 (1986)

## Islamic Republic of Pakistan

**HISTORY.** Pakistan was constituted as a Dominion on 14 Aug. 1947, under the provisions of the Indian Independence Act, 1947, which received the royal assent on 18 July 1947. The Dominion consisted of the following former territories of British India: Balúchistán, East Bengal (including almost the whole of Sylhet, a former district of Assam), North-West Frontier, West Punjab and Sind; and those States which had acceded to Pakistan.

On 23 March 1956 an Islamic republic was proclaimed after the Constituent Assembly had adopted the draft constitution on 29 Feb.

On 7 Oct. 1958 President Mirza declared martial law in Pakistan, dismissed the central and provincial Governments, abolished all political parties and abrogated the constitution of 23 March 1956. Field Marshal Mohammad Ayub Khan, the Army Commander-in-Chief, was appointed as chief martial law administrator and assumed office on 28 Oct. 1958, after Maj.-Gen. Iskander Mirza had handed all powers to him. His authority was confirmed by a ballot in Feb. 1960. He proclaimed a new constitution on 1 March 1962.

On 25 March 1969 President Ayub Khan resigned and handed over power to the army under the leadership of Maj.-Gen. Agha Muhammad Yahya Khan who immediately proclaimed martial law throughout the country, appointing himself chief martial law administrator on the same day. On 29 March 1970 the Legal Framework Order was published, defining a new constitution: Pakistan to be a federal republic with a Moslem Head of State; the National Assembly and Provincial Assemblies to be elected in free and periodical elections, the first of which was held on 7 Dec. 1970.

At the general election the Awami League based in East Pakistan and led by Sheikh Mujibur Rahman gained 167 seats and the Peoples' Party 90. Martial law continued pending the settlement of differences between East and West, which developed into civil war in March 1971. The war ended in Dec. 1971 and the Eastern province declared itself an independent state, Bangladesh. On 20 Dec. 1971 President Yahya Khan resigned and Mr Z. A. Bhutto became President and chief martial law administrator. On 30 Jan. 1972, Pakistan withdrew from the Commonwealth.

A new Constitution was adopted by the National Assembly on 10 April 1973 and enforced on 14 Aug. 1973. It provided for a federal parliamentary system with the President as constitutional head and the Prime Minister as chief executive. President Bhutto stepped down to become Prime Minister and Fazal Elahi Chaudhry was elected President.

The Chief of the Army Staff, Gen. M. Zia-ul-Haq, proclaimed martial law on 5 July 1977 and the armed forces took control of the administration; scheduled elections were postponed. Mr Bhutto was hanged (for conspiracy to murder) on 4 April 1979. Gen. M. Zia-ul-Haq succeeded Fazal Elahi Chaudhry as President in Sept. 1978.

With the proclamation of martial law the Constitution was kept in abeyance, but not abrogated.

National elections were held in Feb. 1985 on the basis of the 1973 Constitution, amended to provide wider presidential powers. On 19 Dec. 1984 a referendum had been held to determine whether the President should continue in office for a 5-year term, following the elections; results were announced as 98% in favour.

The Pakistan People's Party won 47 seats in the new Assembly, the Muslim League 17 and the Jamaat Islami Party, 9. In March 1985 the President set up a

new National Security Council, led by himself; he assumed power to appoint and dismiss ministers and retained the final decision on legislation.

In April 1985 the Council was replaced by a Federal Cabinet. On 30 Dec. 1985 martial law ended.

*Governors-General of Pakistan:* Quaid-I-Azam Mohammed Ali Jinnah (14 Aug. 1947–11 Sept. 1948); Khawaja Nazimuddin (14 Sept. 1948–18 Oct. 1951; took over the premiership after the assassination of Liaquat Ali Khan); Ghulam Mohammad (19 Oct. 1951–6 Aug. 1955); Maj.-Gen. Iskander Mirza (assumed office of President on 6 Oct. 1955, elected President on 5 March 1956).

*Presidents of Pakistan:* Maj.-Gen. Iskander Mirza (23 March 1956–28 Oct. 1958); Field Marshal Mohammad Ayub Khan (28 Oct. 1958–25 March 1969); Maj.-Gen. Agha Muhammad Yahya Khan (31 March 1969–20 Dec. 1971); Zulfikar Ali Bhutto (20 Dec. 1971–14 Aug. 1973); Fazal Elahi Chaudhry (14 Aug. 1973–16 Sept. 1978); Gen. Mohammad Zia ul-Haq (16 Sept. 1978–17 Aug. 1988); Ghulam Ishaq Khan (acting 17 Aug. 1988, confirmed 12 Dec. 1988).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Pakistan is bounded north-west by Afghánistán, north by the USSR and China, east by India and south by the Arabian Sea. The total area of Pakistan is 307,293 sq. miles (796,095 sq. km); population (1981 census), 84.25m.; males, 44,232,000; females, 40,021,000. Density, 105.8 per sq. km. Estimate (1987) 102.2m. Urban population, 28.3%.

The population of the principal cities is:

*Census of 1981*

Islamabad	201,000	Multan	730,000	Jhang	195,000
Karachi	5,103,000	Gujranwala	597,000	Sukkur	191,000
Lahore	2,922,000	Peshawar	555,000	Bahawalpur	178,000
Faisalabad	1,092,000	Sialkot	296,000	Kasur	155,000
Rawalpindi	928,000	Sargodha	294,000	Gujrat	154,000
Hyderabad	795,000	Quetta	285,000	Okara	154,000

Population of the provinces (census of 1981) was (1,000):

	<i>Area</i> <i>(sq. km)</i>	<i>1981 census population</i>			<i>1981 density</i> <i>per sq. km</i>	<i>Estimated</i> <i>total 1985</i>	
		<i>Total</i>	<i>Male</i>	<i>Female</i>	<i>Urban</i>		
North-west Frontier Province	74,521	11,061	5,761	5,300	1,665	148	12,287
Federally admin. Tribal Areas	27,219	2,199	1,143	1,056	—	81	2,467
Fed. Cap. Territory Islamabad	907	340	185	155	204	376	379
Punjab	205,344	47,292	24,860	22,432	13,051	230	53,840
Sind	140,914	19,029	9,999	9,030	8,243	135	21,682
Balúchistán	347,190	4,332	2,284	2,048	677	12	4,908

By Jan. 1987 there were 3m. Afghan refugees in Pakistan, of whom most were in the North-west Frontier Province, and small numbers in Baluchistan and the Punjab.

*Language.* The commonest languages are Urdu and Punjabi. Urdu is the national language while English is used in business and in central government. Provincial languages are Punjabi, Sindhi, Pushtu (North-West Frontier Province), Baluchi and Brahvi.

**CLIMATE.** A weak form of tropical monsoon climate occurs over much of the country, with arid conditions in the north and west, where the wet season is only from Dec. to March. Elsewhere, rain comes mainly in the summer. Summer temperatures are high everywhere, but winters can be cold in the mountainous north. Islamabad. Jan. 50°F (10°C), July 90°F (32.2°C). Annual rainfall 36" (900 mm). Karachi. Jan. 61°F (16.1°C), July 86°F (30°C). Annual rainfall 8" (196 mm). Lahore. Jan. 53°F (11.7°C), July 89°F (31.7°C). Annual rainfall 18" (452 mm). Multan. Jan. 51°F (10.6°C), July 93°F (33.9°C). Annual rainfall 7" (170 mm). Quetta. Jan. 38°F (3.3°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 10" (239 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution of 1973 Parliament is bi-cameral, comprising the National Assembly and the Senate. The strength of the National Assembly is 210 including 10 women. The Senate consists of 63 members, 14 from each province, 5 from Federally Administered Tribal Areas and 2 from the federal capital area, elected by the members of the Provincial Assemblies. A constitutional amendment of 29 March 1976 provided 6 National Assembly seats reserved for non-Moslem minority representatives.

The Constitution obliges the Government to use such ways and means as may enable the people to order their lives collectively and individually in accordance with the principles of Islam. The Constitution (Ninth Amendment) Bill, 1986, consolidated Islam as the basis of law.

An Ombudsman was appointed in Jan. 1983.

Elections to the National Assembly on 16 Nov. 1988 returned the Pakistan People's Party as the largest single group (92 seats) followed by the Islamic Democratic Alliance (55).

The government was composed as follows in Dec. 1988:

*President:* Ghulam Ishaq Khan.

*Federal Cabinet:*

*Prime Minister:* Benazir Bhutto.

*Interior, Law and Justice:* Alttaz Ahsan. *Labour, Manpower and Overseas Pakistanis:* M. Ahmad Awan. *Communications:* M. Ameen Faheem. *Culture and Tourism:* A. Tariq Khan. *Food and Agriculture:* R. Sikander Iqbal. *Commerce, Local Government:* F. Saleh Hayat. *Health and Social Welfare:* Amir Hayder Karimi. *Housing and Works, Science and Technology:* Jehangir Dadar. *Foreign Affairs:* S. Z. Yaqub Khan. *States, Frontier Regions and Kashmir Affairs:* M. Hanif Khan.

*National flag:* Green, charged at the centre, with a white crescent and white 5-pointed star, a white vertical stripe at the mast to one-quarter of the flag.

*Local Government.* Pakistan comprises the Federal Capital Territory (Islamabad), the provinces of the Punjab, the North-West Frontier, Sind and Baluchistan, and the tribal areas of the north-west. The provincial capitals are Peshawar (NW Frontier Province), Lahore (Punjab), Karachi (Sind) and Quetta (Baluchistan). Provincial governors are appointed by the President and are assisted by elected provincial councils.

Within the provinces there are divisions administered by Commissioners appointed by the President; the divisions are divided into districts and agencies administered by Deputy Commissioners or Political Agents who are responsible to the Provincial Governments.

The tribal areas (Khyber, Kurram, Malakand, Mohmand, North Waziristan, South Waziristan) are administered by political agents responsible to the federal government.

*Kashmir.* Pakistan controls the northern and western portions of Kashmir, an area of about 84,160 sq. km with a population of about 2.8m. in 1985. Under a United Nations resolution of 1949 its future was to be decided by plebiscite; it is still a disputed territory.

The people of Azad Kashmir (the west) have their own Assembly (42 members including 2 women), their own Council (of 14 members), High Court and Supreme Court. There is a Parliamentary form of Government with a Prime Minister as the executive head and the President as the Constitutional head. Elections to the Legislative's 40 general seats are to be held within 10 days of the general elections in Pakistan, according to a presidential proclamation of 8 Oct. 1977. The seat of government is Muzaffarabad.

The Pakistan Government is directly responsible for Gilgit and Baltistan (the north).



## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 armoured and 17 infantry divisions; 4 independent armoured, 8 independent infantry, 8 artillery and 3 anti-aircraft brigades; 6 armoured reconnaissance regiments, 7 surface-to-air missile batteries and 1 Special Services Group. Equipment includes 450 M-47/-48, 51 T-54/-55 and 1,100 Type-59 main battle tanks. The Army has an air component with about 100 fixed-wing aircraft for transport, reconnaissance and observation duties and 120 helicopters for anti-armour operations, transport, liaison and training. Strength (1989) 450,000, with a further 500,000 reservists. There are also 164,000 men in paramilitary units: National Guard, Frontier Corps, Pakistan Rangers, Coast Guard and Frontier Constabulary.

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 6 diesel-powered patrol submarines (completed in France in 1969-80), 3 midget submarines, 1 'County' class destroyer, *Babur* (ex-HMS *London*) transferred from the Royal Navy in 1982, 7 very old destroyers (6 ex-US and 1 ex-British), 4 ex-Chinese corvette-type patrol vessels, 8 ex-Chinese fast missile craft, 12 ex-Chinese fast gunboats, 4 ex-Chinese fast (hydrofoil) torpedo boats, 1 seaward defence boat, 1 oceanographic survey ship, 3 coastal mine-sweepers, 1 fleet replenishment ship, 1 degaussing vessel, 1 rescue ship, 2 landing craft, 1 water carrier and 4 tugs. The naval air arm has 4 Atlantics and 2 Fokker F27s for patrol and transport duties, 5 Sea King anti-submarine warfare helicopters and 4 Alouette III liaison helicopters.

The principal naval base and dockyard are at Karachi. Naval personnel in 1988 totalled 1,250 officers and 14,550 ratings.

**Air Force.** The Pakistan Air Force came into being on 14 Aug. 1947. It has its headquarters at Peshawar and is organized within 3 air defence sectors, in the northern, central and southern areas of the country. Air defence units include 2 squadrons of F-16 Fighting Falcons and at least 6 squadrons of Chinese-built F-6s (MiG-19). Tactical units include 5 squadrons of Mirage III-EP/5 supersonic fighters and 6 with A-5 fighter-bombers, 1 squadron equipped with Mirage III-RP reconnaissance aircraft, and 1 with C-130 Hercules turboprop transports. Flying training schools are equipped with Masshaq (Saab Supporter) armed piston-engined primary trainers, T-37B/C jet trainers supplied by the USA, Mirage III-DPs and Chinese-built FT-5s (two-seat MiG-17s) and FT-6s (two-seat MiG-19s). A VIP transport squadron operates the Presidential F27 turboprop aircraft, 3 four-jet Boeing 707s, 3 twin-jet Falcon 20s and a Puma helicopter. There is a flying college at Risalpur and an aeronautical engineering college at Korangi Creek. Total strength in 1989 was about 400 combat aircraft and 17,600 all ranks.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Pakistan is a member of the UN, the Colombo Plan, and Regional Co-operation for Development.

**External Debt** (30 June 1987), US\$17,908.64m.

**Treaties.** A mutual defence assistance agreement between Pakistan and the USA was signed in Karachi on 19 May 1954.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The sixth 5-year plan (1983-88) envisaged a total fixed investment of Rs 495,000m. including Rs 77,000m. for industry, of which Rs 62,000m. would be spent in the private sector. Real growth in GDP was planned at 6.5% annually (agriculture 5%; industry 9%). Expenditure was to be met mainly (75%) from internal resources. Allocations: For energy (Rs 116,000m.), agriculture and irrigation (Rs 88,000m.), special development programmes (Rs 22,000m.) and family planning (Rs 1,800m.).

**Budget.** The following table shows the budget for the years 1986-87 and 1987-88 in Rs 1m.:

	1986-87 Revised	1987-88 Budget
Revenue receipts	102,254.5	118,902.3
of which taxes	62,241.0	74,254.7
Capital receipts	62,829.0	78,714.5
of which External	23,081.4	25,352.4
Revenue expenditure	120,662.2	136,058.0
Capital expenditure	...	...

**Main items of expenditure on revenue account (Rs 1m.):**

	1986-87 Revised	1987-88 Budget
Defence	38,899.2	42,252.3
Debt servicing	22,783.3	25,999.9
Development	15,089.3	21,192.7
Administration	4,590.9	5,249.9
Social, including health and education	3,940.9	4,434.1

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the Pakistan *rupee*. In March 1989 Rs 33.50 = £1; Rs 19.47 = US\$1. Decimal coinage was introduced on 1 Jan. 1961. The rupee, which previously consisted of 64 *pice*, now consists of 100 *paisas*. The notes are of Rs 100, 50, 10 and 5 denominations issued by the State Bank in the name of the Government, and Rs 1 issued by the State Bank incurring no liability; the coinage in the decimal series is 0.5, 0.25, 0.1, 0.05 and 0.01 rupee.

Total monetary assets (including currency in circulation and deposits) on 31 March 1987 amounted to Rs 230,978m. Currency in circulation, Rs 73,596m.

**Banking.** As from 1 Jan. 1985, banks and other financial institutions will abandon the payment of interest on new transactions. This does not apply to international business, but does apply to the domestic business of foreign banks operating in Pakistan. Investment partnerships, between bank and customer, are to replace straight loans at interest. The aim is to bring all domestic financial transactions into conformity with Islamic teaching. The State Bank of Pakistan has prepared a schedule of acceptable practice.

The State Bank of Pakistan is the central bank; it came into operation as the Central Bank on 1 July 1948 with an authorized capital of Rs 30m. and was nationalized in Jan. 1974. At end June 1987 total assets or liabilities of the issue department amounted to Rs 78,181m. and those of the banking department Rs 79,165m.; total deposits, Rs 48,675m. It is the sole bank of issue for Pakistan, custodian of foreign exchange reserves and banker for the federal and provincial governments and for scheduled banks. It also manages the rupee public debt of federal and provincial governments. It provides short-term loans to the Government and commercial banks and short- and medium-term loans to specialized banks. The Bank's subsidiary Federal Bank for Co-operatives makes loans to provincial co-operative banks.

There were 32 scheduled banks in Pakistan on 30 June 1987. Of these 9 were Pakistani (nationalized since 1974). Total liabilities or assets of all scheduled banks stood at Rs 399,692.6m., of which time liabilities, Rs 105,389.5m., on the last working day of June, 1987. The National Bank of Pakistan acts as an agent of the State Bank for transacting Government business and managing currency chests at places where the State Bank has no offices of its own.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity of the state power system (1986-87) by type of generation: Thermal 3,263 mw., hydro-electric, 2,898 mw.; the Karachi Electric Supply Corporation had 17.9%. Total generated electrical energy in 1986-87, 28,236m. kwh: 15,241m. kwh of this was hydro-electricity, the main source being the Tarbela Dam. By June 1986 21,846 villages (of a total 43,244) had access to electric power. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Oil comes mainly from the Potowar Plain, from fields at Meyal, Tut, Balkassar, Joya Mair and Dhullian. Production in 1988 was 2.4m. tonnes. Oil reserves were also found at Dhodak in Dec. 1976. Exploitation is mainly through government incentives and concessions to foreign private sector companies. The Pak-Arab refinery pipeline runs 865 km. from Karachi to Multan; capacity, 4.5m. tonnes of oil annually.

**Gas.** Gas pipelines from Sui to Karachi (345 miles) and Multan (200) supply natural gas to industry and domestic consumers. A pipeline between Quetta and Shikarpur was constructed in 1982. There are 4 other productive fields. Reserves (1983), 500,000m. cu. metres; production in 1986-87 was 11,045m. cu. metres.

**Water.** The Indus water treaty of 1960, concluded between India and Pakistan, has created the basis for a large-scale development programme. The Indus Basin Development Fund Agreement has been subscribed by Australia, Canada, Federal Republic of Germany, New Zealand, UK and USA and is administered by the International Bank; the works to be constructed call for expenditure of US\$1,000m. The main purpose of the treaty is the division of the water power of the Indus and its 5 tributaries between India and Pakistan. After the construction of some 460 miles of canals, the Indus and the 2 western tributaries will serve Pakistan and the entire flow of the 3 eastern tributaries will be released for use in India.

The largest project is the construction of the Tarbela Dam, an earth-and-rock filled dam on the river Indus, 485 ft high, which has a gross storage capacity of 11.1m. acre feet of water for irrigation.

The Lloyd Barrage and Canal Construction Scheme, consists of a barrage across the river Indus at Sukkur and 7 canals—4 on the left and 3 on the right bank. Another barrage across the Indus, 4½ miles north of Kotri, called the Ghulam Muhammad Barrage, was completed in 1955. The Taunsa barrage on the Indus, 80 miles downstream of Kalabagh, was completed in 1958. The Gudu barrage, 10 miles from Kashmore, was completed in 1962.

The province of the Punjab set up in 1949 the Thal Development Authority to colonize the Thal desert between the Indus and Jhelum rivers.

The Chashma canal will carry water 172 miles across Dera Ismail Khan from the Chashma barrage on the Indus. The Mangla Dam on the Jhelum was inaugurated in Nov. 1967.

**Minerals.** The main agencies are the Pakistan Mineral Development Corporation, the Resource Development Corporation and the Gemstone Corporation of Pakistan. Coal is mined at Sharigh and Harnai on the Sind-Pishin railway and in the Bolan pass, also in Sor Range and Degari in the Quetta-Pishin district and in the Punjab; total recoverable reserves, about 480m. tonnes, mainly low-grade. A further 55m. tonnes was found at Lakhra in 1980 and reserves of over 500m. tonnes were found in the 300 sq. mile Thatta Sadha field in 1981. Copper ore reserves at Saindak, in Baluchistan, 412m. tons, containing (1984 estimate) 1.69m. tons of copper; 2.24m. oz. of gold; 2.2m. oz. of silver. Chromite is extracted in and near Muslimbagh. Limestone is quarried generally. Gypsum is mined in the Sibi district and elsewhere; reserves (1983), about 370m. tonnes. Iron ore is being worked in Kalabagh and elsewhere; reserves, about 400m. tonnes, low-grade. A further 18m. tonnes, high-grade, has been found in Baluchistan. Uranium has been found in Dera Ghazi Khan.

Production (tonnes, 1986-87): Coal, 2.14m.; chromite, 7,873; limestone, 6.6m.; gypsum, 379,000; rock salt, 546,000; fire clay, 94,820. Other minerals of which useful deposits have been found are magnesite, sulphur, barites, marble, bauxite, antimony ore, bentonite, celestite, dolomite, fireclay, fluorite, fuller's earth, phosphate rock, silica sand and soapstone.

**Agriculture.** The entire area in the north and west is covered by great mountain ranges. The rest of the country consists of a fertile plain watered by 5 big rivers and their tributaries. Agriculture is dependent almost entirely on the irrigation system based on these rivers. Areas irrigated, 1986: Punjab, 11.4m. hectares; Sind, 3.3m.;



NWFP, 820,000; Balúchistán, 510,000. It employs (1987) about 50% of labour and provides about 22% of GNP. The main crops are wheat, cotton, maize, sugar-cane and rice, while the Quetta and Kalat divisions (Balúchistán) are known for their fruits and dates.

Pakistan is self-sufficient in wheat, rice and sugar. Areas harvested, 1986-87: Wheat, 7.7m. hectares; rice, 2.07m.; sugar, 762,000.

Production, 1986-87, in 1,000 tonnes: Rice (cleaned), 3,486.3; wheat, 12,015.9; sugar-cane, 29,925.8; cotton, 1,319.9; cottonseed, 2,639.8; maize, 1,111.2; potatoes, 594.3.

An ordinance of Jan. 1977 reduced the upper limit of land holding to 100 irrigated or 200 non-irrigated acres; it also replaced the former land revenue system with a new agricultural income tax, from which holders of up to 25 irrigated or 50 unirrigated acres are exempt. Of about 4m. farms, 89% are of less than 25 acres. Of the surveyed area of 156m. acres, cultivated land accounts for 63m. acres, of which 11m. acres consist of fallow land, so that the net area sown is 52m. acres.

Livestock (estimate, 1987): Cattle, 16,900,000; buffaloes, 13,700,000; sheep, 26,600,000; goats, 31,900,000; poultry, 121.7m.

**Forestry.** In 1983-84 the forest departments managed 6.8m. hectares, including range-lands. Productive forests covered 1.29m. hectares, and produced (1986-87) 733,000 cu. metres of timber and firewood. Forest lands are also used as national parks, wildlife and game reserves.

**Fisheries.** In 1987 (provisional) landings were 335,000 tonnes of marine and 84,000 of inland water fish.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry employs about 10% of the population. Manufacturing (1987-88) contributed about 17% to GNP. In 1972 public sector companies were re-organized under a Board of Industrial Management. Government policy since 1977 has been to encourage private industry, particularly small industry. The public sector, however, is still dominant in large industries. Steel, cement, fertilizer and vegetable ghee are the most valuable public sector industries.

A public sector steel-mill (Pakistan Steel) has been built at Port Qasim near Karachi, capacity 1.1m. tonnes; production of coke and pig-iron began in autumn 1981 and of steel in 1983.

Production 1987-88 (tonnes): Refined sugar, 1.77m.; vegetable products, 685,549; jute textiles, 113,602; soda ash, 134,106; sulphuric acid, 78,723; caustic soda, 61,344; chip board and paper board, 70,027; bicycles, 661,183 units; cotton cloth, 280.9m. sq. metres; cotton yarn, 685.5m. kg.; cement, 7.04m.; steel billets 271,367; hot-rolled steel sheets and coils, 475,621; cold-rolled, 154,550; mild steel products, 867,565.

**Labour.** The 1981 census gave the total work force as 22.62m. Estimates (1985-86) give 28.9m., employed workforce 27.86m. In 1987 49.24% were engaged in agriculture, forestry and fishing, 14% in manufacturing; the textile industry was the largest single manufacturing employer. Services employed 11.48%; commerce, 12.05%; construction, 6.01%; transport, storage and communication, 5.25%.

**Commerce.** Total value of exports during 1987-88 amounted to Rs 78,444.6m., and the total value of imports to Rs 111,381.9m. (In 1986-87, exports were Rs 63,267.9m., imports, Rs 92,430.8m.). The value of the chief articles imported into and exported from Pakistan (in Rs 1m.):

	<i>Imports</i>			<i>Exports</i>	
	1986-87	1987-88		1986-87	1987-88
Minerals, fuels, lubricants	14,806.2	18,057.5	Cotton cloth	5,931.1	8,539.5
Machinery and transport equipment	27,543.5	32,869.0	Cotton yarns	8,765.6	9,597.4
Edible oils	5,003.4	8,977.0	Rice	5,052.6	6,404.4
Chemicals	15,773.1	17,612.5	Leather	...	5,041.5
Raw cotton	7,675.8	10,758.6	Carpets, tapestries	3,419.5	4,418.2

Of exports (1987-88), Rs 24,530.4m. went to the European Community; Rs 9,582.3m. to the middle east, of which Rs 3,892.1m. was to Saudi Arabia; Rs 8,603.4m. went to USA. Of imports, Rs 29,379.8m. came from the European Community; Rs 12,471.3m. from USA; Rs 20,898.5m. from the middle east, of which Rs 5,621.8m. was from Saudi Arabia.

Total trade between Pakistan and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	93,136	119,006	131,296	167,315	175,337
Exports and re-exports from UK	282,356	255,419	227,064	252,978	263,300

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 432,395 tourist arrivals spending US\$180.2m.; 207,300 came from India; 106,800 from Europe, including 65,600 from UK.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985-86 Pakistan had 106,580 km of roads, of which 45,686 km were all-weather roads. The Karakoram highway to the Chinese border, through Kohistan and the Hunza valley, was opened in 1978. An all-weather road linking Skardu and the remote NE Indus valley to the highway was built in 1980.

In 1986 there were 2m. vehicles registered, including 946,861 motor-cycles and 474,744 cars, jeeps and station wagons.

**Railways.** Pakistan Railways had (1986) a route of 8,775 km (of which 290 km electrified) mainly on 1,676 mm. gauge, with some metre gauge and narrow gauge line. In 1986-87 there were 83m. passengers and 11.6m. tonnes of freight. Gross earnings, 1986-87, Rs 4,667.4m., of which Rs 2,798.7m. was from freight. Expenses, Rs 4,010.6m., of which Rs 1,825.8m. was spent on repair and maintenance.

**Aviation.** Karachi is served by British Airways, KLM, PANAM, Lufthansa, Swissair, SAS, Iran National Airlines, Air France, Garuda, Gulf Air and by Philippine, Japanese, Chinese, East African, Syrian, Iraqi, Kuwait, Jordanian, Saudi Arabian, Romanian, Egyptian and Russian airlines.

Pakistan International Airlines (founded 1955; the majority of shares is held by the Government) had 4 DC-10s, 7 Boeing 707Cs, 5 720Bs, 2 747Bs and 8 Fokker F27s in 1977; 2 other Boeing 720Bs were on lease to Air Malta. Services operate to 20 home airports, New York, Paris, Amsterdam, Copenhagen, Istanbul, Athens, Rome, Cairo, Tripoli, Nairobi, Dhahran, Damascus, Amman, Baghdad, Persian Gulf points, Tokyo, Peking (Beijing), Zahedan, Singapore, Manila, Kuala Lumpur, Bangkok, Colombo, London, Frankfurt, Bombay, Delhi, Dacca, Kábul, Tehrán and Jeddah.

At Pakistan airports, 1986-87, there were 9.2m. passengers (including 5.7m. on domestic flights) and 194,311 tonnes of cargo (59,896).

**Shipping.** There is a seaport at Karachi, dry-cargo-handling capacity 6m. tonnes a year, oil-handling, 10m. The second port, 26 miles east of Karachi, is Port Muhammad Bin Qasim; it has iron and coal berths for Pakistan Steel Mills, multi-purpose berths, bulk-cargo handling, oil and container-traffic terminals. International shipping entered and cleared (1986-87): Karachi 1,922 and 1,885 vessels; Port Qasim 171 and 171. Cargo handled: Karachi 16.3m. tonnes, Port Qasim 3.88m. Coastal shipping (Pakistani and Arabian craft), total 641 vessels entered (189.6m. NRT), 652 cleared (191.9m.). The Pakistan National Shipping Corporation had 35 vessels in 1985, of 596,973 DWT. National flag carriers now operate between Pakistan and UK; USA and Canada; the Far East; the (Persian) Gulf, Arabian Gulf, Red Sea, Black Sea and Mekran Coast; Continental Europe and the Middle East. The Karachi Shipyard and Engineering Works Ltd construct all types of vessels up to 27,000 DWT and repairs all types; dry-dock and under-water repairs can be done on vessels up to 29,000 DWT, above-water repairs on vessels and drilling rigs of all sizes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The telegraph and telephone system is government-owned. Telephones, on 31 March 1987, numbered 643,500; a nationwide dialling system

is in operation between 46 cities. In 1987 there were 12,116 post offices. Pakistan has international telephone connections by 102 satellite, 7 HF, 4 microwave and 10 carrier circuits, and an international direct-dialling exchange. The Pakistan Broadcasting Corporation had 18 radio stations in Dec. 1986. Television stations operate in Lahore, Karachi, Peshawar, Quetta and Rawalpindi-Islamabad. In 1987 there were 1m. radio licences and 1.4m. TV sets.

**Cinemas** (1983). There are about 600 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** Dailies and periodicals numbered 1,748 in 1987; 125 were dailies, 346 weeklies and twice-weeklies, 718 monthlies and 414 quarterlies. Top circulation 1m. for Urdu daily papers, followed by 377,300 for Urdu weeklies, then 201,169 for English dailies. Papers are also published in Sindhi, Gujarati, Pushtu, Baluch, Arabic and Saraiki.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Central Judiciary consists of the Supreme Court of Pakistan, which is a court of record and has three-fold jurisdiction, namely, original, appellate and advisory. There are 4 High Courts in Lahore, Peshawar, Quetta and Karachi. Under the Constitution, each has power to issue directions of writs of *Habeas Corpus*, *Mandamus*, *Certiorari* and others. Under them are district and sessions courts of first instance in each division; they have also some appellate jurisdiction. Criminal cases not being sessions cases are tried by district magistrates and subordinate magistrates. There are subordinate civil courts also.

The Constitution provides for an independent judiciary, as the greatest safeguard of citizens' rights. The Laws (Continuance in Force) (Eleventh Amendment) Order, 1980, prescribed the date of 14 Aug. 1981 by which the judiciary shall be separated from the executive. There is an Attorney-General, appointed by the President, who has right of audience in all courts.

A Federal Shariat Court at the Supreme Court level has been established to decide whether any law is wholly or partially un-Islamic. Islamic law is to be enforced as the law of the state; penalties for offences involving intoxicating liquor, offences against property and sexual offences have been specified. Imprisonment remains as a penalty in general use, but some offences in all the above categories are liable to whipping and some property offences, to amputation.

**Religion.** Religious groups (1981 census): Moslems, 96.68%; Christians, 1.55%; Hindus, 1.51%; Parsees, Buddhists, and others. There is a Minorities Wing at the Religious Affairs Ministry to safeguard the constitutional rights of religious minorities.

**Education.** At the census of 1981, 23.3% of the population were able to read and write. Estimate (1985), 26%. Adult literacy programmes have been established.

The principle of free and compulsory primary education has been accepted as the responsibility of the state; duration has been fixed provisionally at 5 years. About 49% of children aged 5-9 are enrolled at school. Present policy stresses vocational and technical education, disseminating a common culture based on Islamic ideology. Figures for 1986-87 in 1,000:

	Total pupils	Female pupils	Total teachers	Women teachers	Institutions
Primary	7,368	2,458	187.4	58.9	80.7
Middle	2,004	545	58.3	17.4	6.4
High	690	185	84.8	25.9	4.7
Colleges	65,376	10,729	18.6	5.4	573 <sup>1</sup>
Universities	64,443	9,523	4.02	0.6	22 <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Numbers.

**Health.** In 1987 (provisional) there were 679 hospitals and 3,501 dispensaries (59,987 beds) and 51,020 doctors. There were 798 maternity and child welfare centres.



## Distribution by province:

	Hospitals	Dispensaries	Mother and child centres
Punjab	255	1,105	449
Sind	225	1,552	147
NWFP	151	533	141
Balúchistán	41	262	55

**DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES**

Of Pakistan in Great Britain (35 Lowndes Sq., London, SW1X 9JN)

*Ambassador:* Shaharyar M. Khan (accredited 26 Feb. 1987).

Of Great Britain in Pakistan (Diplomatic Enclave, Ramna 5, Islamabad)

*Ambassador:* N. J. Barrington, CMG, CVO.

Of Pakistan in the USA (2315 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Jamsheed K. A. Marker.

Of the USA in Pakistan (Diplomatic Enclave, Ramna, 5, Islamabad)\*

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Pakistan to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* S. Shah Nawaz.

**Further Reading**

*Pakistan Economic Survey 1984-85.* Ministry of Finance, Islamabad, 1985

*Pakistan Year-Book, Annual*

Ahmed, A. S., *Religion and Politics in Muslim Society: Order and Conflict in Pakistan.* CUP, 1973

Ali, T., *Can Pakistan Survive? The Death of the State.* Harmondsworth, 1983

Burke, S. M., *Pakistan's Foreign Policy.* OUP, 1973

Burki, S. J., *Pakistan Under Bhutto.* London, 1980

Griffin, K. and Khan, A. R. (ed.) *Growth and Inequality in Pakistan.* London and New York 1972

Hasan, M. (ed.) *Pakistan in a Changing World.* Karachi, 1978

Hyman, A. et al *Pakistan: Zia and After.* London, 1989

Jennings, Sir Ivor, *Constitutional Problems in Pakistan.* CUP, 1957

Siddiqui, K., *Conflict, Crisis and War in Pakistan.* London, 1972

Taylor, D., *Pakistan.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

# PANAMA

*Capital:* Panama City

*Population:* 2.32m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,330 (1986)

## República de Panamá

**HISTORY.** A revolution, supported by the USA, led to the separation of Panama from the United States of Colombia and the declaration of its independence on 3 Nov. 1903. The *de facto* Government was on 5 Nov. recognized by the USA, and soon afterwards by the other Powers. In 1924 Colombia agreed to recognize the independence of Panama. On 8 May 1924 diplomatic relations between Colombia and Panama were established. On 1 Oct. 1979 Panama assumed sovereignty over what was previously known as the Panama Canal Zone and now called the Canal Area.

For the treaties regulating the relations between Panama and the USA *see* pp. 981-82.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Panama is bounded north by the Caribbean, east by Colombia, south by the Pacific and west by Costa Rica. Extreme length is about 480 miles (772 km); breadth between 37 (60) and 110 miles (177 km); coastline, 726 miles (1,160 km) on the Atlantic and 1,060 (1,697 km) on the Pacific; total area is 29,761 sq. miles (77,082 sq. km); population according to the census of 11 May 1980 was 1,830,175. Estimate (1988) 2,321,300. Over 75% are of mixed blood and the remainder Indians, negroid, white and Asiatic.

The largest towns (census, 1980) are Panama City, the capital on the Pacific coast (386,393); its suburb San Miguelito (156,361); Colón, the port on the Atlantic coast (59,043); and David (50,621).

The areas and populations of the 9 provinces and the Special Territory were:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Bocas del Toro	9,506	53,579	78,600	Bocas del Toro
Chiriquí	8,924	287,801	366,400	David
Veraguas	11,226	173,195	211,600	Santiago
Herrera	2,185	81,866	102,000	Chitré
Los Santos	4,587	70,200	80,200	Las Tablas
Coclé	4,981	140,320	168,700	Penonomé
Colón	7,205	166,439	{ 165,400	Colón
Terr. de San Blas	3,206			El Porvenir
Panama	11,400	830,278	1,067,300	Panama City
Darién	15,458	26,497	39,200	La Palma

Vital statistics (1980): Births, 52,626; marriages, 8,850; deaths, 7,959.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, unvaryingly with high temperatures and only a short dry season from Jan. to April. Rainfall amounts are much higher on the north side of the isthmus. Panama City. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 70" (1,770 mm). Colón. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 127" (3,175 mm). Balboa Heights. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 70" (1,759 mm). Cristóbal. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 130" (3,255 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1972 Constitution, as amended in 1978 and 1983, provides a president and two vice-presidents to be elected by direct popular vote and a 67 seat Legislative Assembly to be elected on a party basis; in 28 of the 40 constituencies the party winning the vote obtaining one seat; in the other 12, the 39 remaining seats being allocated on a system of proportional party representation. There are also 505 Representatives elected, one member for each electoral district.

Elections, the first to be held in Panama for 16 years, were held in May 1984. Nicholas Barletta was elected president and took office in Nov. 1984, but he resigned in Sept. 1985 and was succeeded by one of his vice-presidents. In the Legislative Assembly the National Democratic Union (UNADE), a coalition party, won 40 seats; the Democratic Opposition Alliance (ADO) 27 seats.

On 26 Feb. 1988 the Legislative Assembly deposed Eric Arturo Delvalle and appointed Manuel Solis Palma as acting President in his place. Elections are due in May 1989.

The official language is Spanish.

*National flag:* Quarterly: first a white panel with a blue star, second red, third blue, fourth white with a red star.

*National anthem:* Alcanzamos por fin la victoria (words by J. de la Ossa; tune by Santos Jorge, 1903).

*Local government:* The 9 provinces and a Special Territory (another is envisaged) are sub-divided into 65 municipal districts and are further sub-divided into 505 *corregimientos* (electoral districts).

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army (National Guard) numbered (1989) 12,000 men organized in 8 light infantry companies, equipped with 16 V-150 and 13 V-300 armoured cars. There is one air-borne group.

**Navy.** Divided between both coasts, the flotilla comprises 2 patrol craft, 2 coast-guard cutters, 4 coastal launches, 3 medium landing ships, 3 utility landing craft and 3 logistic support vessels. In 1989 personnel totalled some 700 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The air force has 5 CASA 212, 2 Islander and 2 Twin Otter transports, 4 Cessna and 2 DHC-3 Otter liaison aircraft, a Falcon 20 and 2 Boeing 727s for VIP transport, 14 UH-1B/H Iroquois and twin-engined UH-1N helicopters plus a Super Puma for official use. Four Chilean-built Pillan trainers were delivered in 1988. Personnel (1989) 300.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Panama is a member of UN and OAS.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1987 budget provided for expenditure of 1,705m. balboas and revenue of 1,405m. balboas. Public sector debt was US\$3,691m. in 1985.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *balboa*. Other coins are the half-balboa (equal to 50 cents US); the quarter and tenth of a balboa piece; a cupro-nickel coin of 5 cents, and a copper coin of 1 cent. US coinage is also legal tender. The only paper currency used is that of the USA. In March 1989, US\$1 = 1 *balboa*; £1 = 1.72 *balboas*.

**Banking.** There is no statutory central bank. The Government accounts are handled through the *Banco Nacional de Panama*. The number of commercial banks was 132 in June 1986; 67 have a general licence, 30 an international licence, 13 a representational licence and 14 a fiduciary licence. Leading banks are the Citi-bank, Lloyds Bank International (Bahamas) Ltd., and the Chase Manhattan Bank of New York. Other foreign-owned banks include the Bank of America, as well as Canadian. Panama is a relatively small offshore banking centre. The total assets of Panamanian banks increased to US\$41,000m. between 1976–83.

**Weights and Measures.** English weights and measures are in general use; those of the metric system are also used.



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 3,120m. kwh. Supply 110 and 120 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** There are known to be copper deposits in the provinces of Chiriquí, Colón and Darien. The most important, containing possibly the largest undeveloped reserves in the world, is Cerro Colorado (Chiriquí) on which a feasibility study was undertaken by the Rio Tinto Zinc Corporation Ltd. If it is eventually decided to develop the mine, it is expected that the annual production of copper will reach 260,000 to 280,000 tonnes within a few years. The deposit has estimated reserves of 1,300m. tonnes, with an average grade of 0.76% copper.

**Agriculture.** Of the whole area (1981) 15.6% is cultivated, 57.6% is natural or artificial pasture land and 8.6% is fallow. Of the remainder only a small part is cultivated, though the land is rich in resources. About 60% of the country's food requirements are imported. Production in 1987 totalled 907,000 tonnes of bananas and 123,000 tonnes of raw sugar. Oranges (36,000 tonnes) and mangoes (28,000 tonnes) are also produced. Most important food crop, for home consumption, is rice, grown on 80% of the farms; Panama's *per capita* consumption is very high. Production of rice was 166,000 tonnes in 1987. Other products are maize (90,000 tonnes in 1987), cocoa (2,000 tonnes), coffee (15,000 tonnes) and coconuts (22,000 tonnes). Beer, whisky, rum, 'seco', anise and gin are produced. Coffee is mainly grown in the province of Chiriquí, near the Costa Rican frontier. The country has great timber resources, notably mahogany. Livestock (1987): 1.49m. cattle, 205,000 pigs and 8m. poultry.

**Forestry.** Production (1984) 2.05m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1982 was 337,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Local industries include cigarettes, clothing, food processing, shoes, soap, cement factories; foreign firms are being encouraged to establish industries, and a petrol refinery is operating at Colón.

**Commerce.** The imports and exports (including re-exports) for the Republic of Panama, for 4 calendar years are as follows (in 1,000 balboas; 1 balboa = US\$1):

	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>		<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>
1982	1,569,300	308,100	1984	1,423,000	251,500
1983	1,441,900	299,300	1985	3,140,800	789,000

Chief exports (36.7% to the USA) in 1983 were: Food and live animals, petroleum products and manufactured goods.

Chief imports (17.4% from USA), 1983, valued (in 1m. balboas f.o.b.) were: Mineral fuels 392.3, machines and transport equipment 324.7, basic manufactures 233.5, and chemicals 166.7.

Total trade between Panama (including Colón Free Zone) and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	9,681	14,612	4,950	4,919	12,230
Exports and re-exports from UK <sup>1</sup>	74,322	55,424	44,975	40,020	32,497

<sup>1</sup> Including new ships built for foreign owners and registered in Panama.

**Tourism.** In 1986, 467,000 people visited Panama.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Panama had in 1985, 9,694 km of roads. The road from Panama City westward to the cities of David and Concepción and to the Costa Rican frontier, with several branches, is part of the Pan-American Highway. A concrete highway connects Panama City and Colón.

On 1 Jan. 1981 registered motor vehicles, private and commercial, numbered 166,498.

**Railways.** The *Ferrocarril de Panama* (Panama Railroad) (1,524 mm gauge) (through the Canal area), which connects Ancón on the Pacific with Cristóbal on the Atlantic, is the principal railway. It is 190 km long and runs along the banks of the Canal. As most vessels unload their cargo at Cristóbal (Colón), on the Atlantic side, the greater portion of the merchandise destined for Panama City is brought overland by the *Ferrocarril de Panama*. The United Brands Company runs 376 km of railway, and the Chiriquí National Railroad 171 km.

**Aviation.** Eastern Airlines, Swissair, Varig, JAL, Alitalia, KLM, Iberia Airlines, Aeromexico, VIASA, Air France and other international companies operate at Gen. Omar Torrijos Airport, 12 miles from Panama City. Air Panama provides services between Panama City and New York, Los Angeles, Miami, Central America and some countries in South America. The *Compañía Panameña de Aviación* (COPA) and *Aerolíneas Las Perlas* provide a local service between Panama City and the provincial towns. COPA also provides an international service to Central America.

**Shipping.** Ships under Panamanian registry in 1988 numbered 12,094 of 67.2m. gross tons; most of these ships elect Panamanian registry because fees are low and labour laws lenient. All the international maritime traffic for Colón and Panama runs through the Canal ports of Cristóbal, Balboa and Bahía Las Minas (Colón); Almirante is used for both the provincial and international trade. There is an oil transfer terminal at Puerto Armuelles on the Pacific coast.

**Panama Canal.** On 18 Nov. 1903 a treaty between the USA and the Republic of Panama was signed making it possible for the US to build and operate a canal connecting the Atlantic and Pacific oceans through the Isthmus of Panama. The treaty granted the US in perpetuity the use, occupation and control of a Canal Zone, approximately 10 miles wide, in which the US would possess full sovereign rights 'to the entire exclusion of the exercise by the Republic of Panama of any such sovereign rights, power or authority'. In return the US guaranteed the independence of the republic and agreed to pay the republic \$10m. and an annuity of \$250,000. The US purchased the French rights and properties—the French had been labouring from 1879 to 1899 in an effort to build the Canal—for \$40m. and in addition, paid private landholders within what would be the Canal Zone a mutually agreeable price for their properties.

Two new treaties between Panama and USA were agreed on 10 Aug. and signed on 7 Sept. 1977. One deals with the operation and defence of the canal until the end of 1999 and the other guarantees permanent neutrality.

The USA maintains operational control over all lands, waters and installations, including military bases, necessary to manage, operate and defend the canal until 31 Dec. 1999. A new agency of the US Government, the Panama Canal Commission, operates the canal, replacing the Panama Canal Co. A policy-making board of 5 US citizens and 4 Panamanians serves on the Commission's board of directors. Until 1990 the canal administrator will be a US citizen and the deputy will be Panamanian. After that date the position will be reversed.

Six months after the exchange of instruments of ratification Panama assumed general territorial jurisdiction over the former Canal Zone and became able to use portions of the area not needed for the operation and defence of the canal. Panamanian penal and civil codes became applicable. At the same time Panama assumed responsibility for commercial ship repairs and supplies, railway and pier operations, passengers, police and courts, all of which were among other areas formerly administered by the Panama Canal Company and the Canal Zone Government.

66% of the electorate of Panama agreed to the ratification of the treaties when a referendum was held on 23 Oct. 1977 and on 18 April 1978 the treaty was ratified by the US Congress. The treaty went into effect on 1 Oct. 1979.

At the end of 1962 the US completed the construction of a high-level bridge over the Pacific entrance to the Canal, and the flags of Panama and the US were flown jointly over areas of the Canal Zone under civilian authority. Following the devaluation of the dollar in 1972 and 1973, the annuity was adjusted proportionally to US\$2.1m. and US\$2.33m. respectively.



In 1986 a tripartite commission, formed by Japan, Panama and the USA, began studies on alternatives to the Panama Canal. Options are: To build a sea-level canal, to enlarge the existing canal with more locks, to improve the canal alongside upgraded rail and road facilities, to continue with the existing facilities.

The Panama Canal Commission, a US Government Agency, is concerned primarily with the actual operation of the Canal. On 8 July 1974, 18 Nov. 1976 and 10 Oct. 1979 tolls were increased. These were the first increases of toll rates in the history of the Canal. Tolls were raised again on 12 March 1983. The new rates are US\$1.83 a Panama Canal ton for vessels carrying passengers or cargo and US\$1.46 per ton for vessels in transit in ballast. A Panama Canal ton is equivalent to 100 cu. ft of actual earning capacity. The new toll rate for warships, hospital ships and supply ships, which pay on a displacement basis, is US\$1.02 a ton.

The changes were designed to continue the approximately break-even financial operating results after paying its own expenses and paying interest on the net direct investment of the US in the Canal.

*Administrator of the Panama Canal Commission:* Dennis P. McAuliffe.

*Deputy Administrator:* Fernando Manfredo Jr. (Panama).

The total civilian and military population of the Canal area is 29,000 (estimate). The total permanent force employed by the Panama Canal Commission on 24 Sept. 1988 was 7,557, comprising 1,094 US citizens, 6,347 Panamanians and 116 others.

The Canal was opened to commerce on 15 Aug. 1914. It is 85 ft above sea-level. It is 51.2 statute miles in length from deep water in the Caribbean Sea to deep water in the Pacific ocean, and 36 statute miles from shore to shore. The channel ranges in bottom-width from 500 to 1,000 ft; the widening of Gaillard Cut to a minimum width of 500 ft was completed in 1969. Normally, the average time of a vessel in Canal waters is about 24 hours, 8–12 of which are in transit through the Canal proper. A map showing the Panama, Suez and Kiel canals on the same scale will be found in THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1959 and a further map in the 1978–79 edition.

Particulars of the ocean-going commercial traffic through the canal are given as follows (vessels of 300 tons Panama Canal net and 500 displacement tons and over; cargo in long tons):

Fiscal year ending 30 Sept.	North-bound (Pacific to Atlantic)		South-bound (Atlantic to Pacific)		Total		Tolls levied <sup>1</sup> (in US\$)
	Vessels	Cargo	Vessels	Cargo	Vessels	Cargo	
1985	5,612	64,492,298	5,903	74,150,945	11,515	138,643,243	300,807,914
1986	5,712	67,229,841	6,214	72,580,652	11,926	139,810,493	322,734,202
1987	5,766	61,683,921	6,464	87,006,459	12,230	148,690,380	329,858,775
1988	5,807	65,504,306	6,427	90,978,335	12,234	156,482,641	339,319,326

<sup>1</sup> All annual tolls figures have been revised to show total tolls collected instead of oceangoing commercial tolls.

In the fiscal year ending 30 Sept. 1988, 12,234 ships passed through the Canal. Transits by flag included 2,500 Panamanian; 1,280 Liberian; 862 Japanese; 634 US; 685 Greek; 618 Russian; 389 Ecuadorian; 460 British; 230 Fed. German; 641 Cyprian; 359 Filipino.

*Statistical Information:* The Panama Canal Commission Office of Public Affairs.

*Annual Reports on the Panama Canal*, by the Administrator of the Panama Canal Commission.

*Rules and Regulations Governing Navigation of the Panama Canal*. The Panama Canal Commission, Miami, Florida or Washington, DC

Cameron, I., *The Impossible Dream*. London, 1972

Le Feber, W., *The Panama Canal: The Crisis in Historical Perspective*. OUP, 1978

McCullough, D., *The Path Between the Seas*. New York and London, 1978

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are telegraph cables from Panama to North America and Central and South American ports, and from Colón to the USA and Europe. There is also inter-continental communication by satellite. There were (1985) 97 licensed commercial broadcasting stations, nearly all operated by private



companies, one of which functions in the canal. There are 12 television stations, one of them run by the US Army at Fort Clayton. In 1985 there were 295,000 radio and 400,000 television sets. On 1 Jan. 1983 there were 202,627 telephones.

**Cinemas.** In 1977 there were 52 cinemas in the district of Panama. All films must have Spanish subtitles.

**Newspapers.** There were (1986) 1 English language and 7 Spanish language daily morning newspapers and 1 English/Spanish evening newspaper.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court consists of 9 justices appointed by the executive. There is no death penalty.

**Religion.** 85% of the population is Roman Catholic, 5% Protestant, 4.5% Moslem. There is freedom of religious worship and separation of Church and State. Clergymen may teach in the schools but may not hold public office.

**Education.** Elementary education is compulsory for all children from 7 to 15 years of age, with an estimated 552,172 students in schools in 1985. The University of Panama at Panama City, inaugurated on 7 Oct. 1935, had a total enrolment (1985) of 55,000 students. The Catholic university Sta. Maria La Antigua, inaugurated on 27 May 1965, had 1,916 students in Sept. 1978.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 2,149 doctors, 409 dentists, 1,962 nursing personnel and 50 hospitals with 7,448 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Panama in Great Britain (119 Crawford St., London, W1H 1AF)

*Ambassador:* Guillermo Vega (accredited 29 May 1984).

Of Great Britain in Panama (Via España 120, Panama City 1)

*Ambassador:* Margaret Bryan, CMG.

Of Panama in the USA (2862 McGill Terr., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Aquilino Boyd.

Of the USA in Panama (Apartado 6959, Panama City 5)

*Ambassador:* Arthur Davis.

Of Panama to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Leonardo Kam.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Comptroller-General of the Republic (Contraloría General de la República, Calle 35 y Avenida 6, Panama City) publishes an annual report and other statistical publications.

Jorden, W. J., *Panama Odyssey*. Univ. of Texas Press, 1984

Langstaff, E. DeS., *Panama*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara 1982

Ropp, S. C., *Panamanian Politics*. New York, 1982

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional, Departamento de Información, Calle 22, Panama.

# PAPUA NEW GUINEA

*Capital:* Port Moresby  
*Population:* 3.48m. (1987)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$690 (1986)

**HISTORY.** To prevent that portion of the island of New Guinea not claimed by the Netherlands or Germany from passing into the hands of a foreign power, the Government of Queensland annexed Papua in 1883. This step was not sanctioned by the Imperial Government, but on 6 Nov. 1884 a British Protectorate was proclaimed over the southern portion of the eastern half of New Guinea, and in 1887 Queensland, New South Wales and Victoria undertook to defray the cost of administration, and the territory was annexed to the Crown the following year. The federal government took over the control in 1901; the political transfer was completed by the Papua Act of the federal parliament in Nov. 1905, and on 1 Sept. 1906 a proclamation was issued by the Governor-General of Australia declaring that British New Guinea was to be known henceforth as the Territory of Papua. The northern portion of New Guinea was a German colony until the First World War. It became a League of Nations mandated territory in 1921, administered by Australia, and later a UN Trust Territory (of New Guinea).

The Papua New Guinea Act 1949-1972 provides for the administration of the UN Australian Trust Territory of New Guinea in an administrative union with the Territory of Papua, in accordance with Art. 5 of the New Guinea Trusteeship Agreement, under the title of Papua New Guinea.

Australia granted Papua New Guinea self-government on 1 Dec. 1973 and, on 16 Sept. 1975, Papua New Guinea became a fully independent state.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Papua New Guinea extends from the equator to Cape Baganowa in the Louisiade Archipelago to 11° 40' S. lat. and from the border of West Irian to 160° E. long. with a total area of 462,840 sq. km. According to the census the 1980 population was 3,010,727. Estimate (1987) 3.48m. Port Moresby, 152,100; Lae, 79,600; Rabaul (1980), 14,954; Madang, 24,700; Wewak, 23,200; Goroka, 21,800; Mount Hagen (1980), 13,441. Area and population of the provinces:

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Sq.km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Estimate 1987</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Milne Bay	14,000	127,975	153,800	Alotau
Northern	22,800	77,442	92,200	Popondetta
Central	29,500	116,964	135,000	Port Moresby
National Capital District	240	123,624	145,300	—
Gulf	34,500	64,120	72,600	Kerema
Western	99,300	78,575	93,600	Daru
Southern Highlands	23,800	236,052	262,400	Mendi
Enga	12,800	164,534	180,100	Wabag
Western Highlands	8,500	265,656	304,800	Mount Hagen
Chimbu	6,100	178,290	186,800	Kundiawa
Eastern Highlands	11,200	276,726	310,300	Goroka
Morobe	34,500	310,622	364,400	Lae
Madang	29,000	211,069	251,100	Madang
East Sepik	42,800	221,890	260,000	Wewak
West Sepik	36,300	114,192	130,100	Vanimo
Manus	2,100	26,036	30,500	Lorengau
West New Britain	21,000	88,941	110,600	Kimbe
East New Britain	15,500	133,197	157,800	Rabaul
New Ireland	9,600	66,028	78,900	Kavieng
North Solomons	9,300	128,794	159,100	Arawa

Vital statistics (1987, estimate): Crude birth rate, 35 per 1,000; crude death rate, 13.

**CLIMATE.** There is a monsoon climate, with high temperatures and humidity the year round. Port Moresby is in a rain shadow and is not typical of the rest of Papua New Guinea. Jan. 82°F (27.8°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 40'' (1,011 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Papua New Guinea has a Westminster type of government. A single legislative house, known as the National Parliament, is made up of 109 members from all parts of the country. The members are elected under universal suffrage and general elections are held every 5 years. All persons over the age of 18 who are Papua New Guinea citizens are eligible to vote and stand for election. Voting is by secret ballot and follows the preferential system.

The first Legislative Council was established in 1951. It was abolished in 1964 and replaced with the House of Assembly. In 1950 the first village council was formed which established the basis of an extensive local government system. A system of provincial government was introduced in 1976 and, since then, the importance of lower-level local government has diminished.

In the general elections held in June-July 1987, 26 seats were won by the Pangu Party, 18 by the People's Democratic Movement, 12 by the National Party, 32 by other parties and 21 by independents. A PDM-led government held office until 4 July 1988, when it was defeated in Parliament and replaced by one led by the Pangu Party.

*Governor-General:* Sir Ignatius Kilage.

The Cabinet in July 1988 was as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Rabbie Namaliu.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Public Service:* Akoka Doi. *Agriculture and Livestock:* Galen Lang. *Finance and Planning:* Paul Pora. *Tourism and Culture:* Beona Motawiya. *Minerals and Energy:* Patterson Lowa. *Forests:* Karl Stack. *Provincial Affairs:* John Momis. *Transport:* Anthony Temo. *Justice:* Bernard Narakobi. *Education:* Jack Genia. *Defence:* Arnold Marsipal. *Communications:* Malipu Balakau. *Works and Supply:* Paul Wanjik. *Fisheries and Marine Resources:* Allan Ebu. *Environment and Conservation:* Jim Waim. *Foreign Affairs:* Michael Somare. *Lands and Physical Planning:* Karl Swokin. *Health:* Robert Suckling. *Labour and Employment:* Peter Garong. *Police:* Mathias Ijape. *Home Affairs and Youth:* Timothy Bonga. *Trade and Industry:* Galeva Kwarara. *Correctional Services:* Melchior Pep. *Housing:* Gerard Sigulogo. *Administrative Services:* Paul Kamod. *Minister for State, Assisting the Prime Minister:* John Giheno. *Civil Aviation:* Bernard Vogae.

The seat of the Government is at Port Moresby.

*National flag:* Diagonally ochre-red over black, on the red a bird of paradise in gold, and on the black 5 stars of the Southern Cross in white.

**DEFENCE.** The Papua New Guinea Defence Force has a total strength of 3,200 (1989) consisting of land, maritime and air elements. The Army is organized in 2 infantry and 1 engineer battalions. The Navy has 4 attack class patrol craft and 2 heavy landing craft. The Defence Force has an Air Transport Squadron with (1989) about 100 personnel. Current equipment comprises 5 C-47 transports, and 4 Australian-built N22B Nomads and 3 Israeli-built Aravas for both transport and border patrol duties.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Papua New Guinea is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, the Colombo Plan, the South Pacific Commission and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue (in K1,000) for calendar years was:

<i>Source</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Customs, excise and export tax	202,900	229,867	241,052
Other taxes	217,100	234,422	254,866
Foreign government grants <sup>1</sup>	205,000	184,250	188,896
Loans	82,500	60,461	62,352
Other revenue	123,600	178,295	107,341
Total	831,100	887,295	854,507

<sup>1</sup> Mainly from Australia.



Expenditure (in K1,000) for the same periods:

Source	1986	1987	1988
Consumption	513,350	538,250	530,590
Capital	138,830	71,438	81,042
Other expenditure <sup>1</sup>	178,930	254,317	298,501
Total	831,100	864,005	910,133

<sup>1</sup> Includes transfers to provincial governments.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *kina* divided into 100 *toea* and is the sole legal tender. In March 1989, £1 = K1.45; US\$1 = K0.85.

**Banking.** The Bank of Papua New Guinea assumed the central banking functions formerly undertaken by the Reserve Bank of Australia on 1 Nov. 1973.

A national banking institution which has been named the Papua New Guinea Banking Corporation, has been established. This bank has assumed the Papua New Guinea business of the Commonwealth Trading Bank of Australia except where certain accounts give rise to special financial or contractual problems.

The subsidiaries of 3 Australian commercial banks also operate in Papua New Guinea. These are the Australia and New Zealand Banking Group (PNG) Ltd, the Bank of New South Wales (PNG) Ltd, and the Bank of South Pacific Ltd, all of which offer trading and savings facilities. As from 1 Nov. 1973 these banks operated under Papua New Guinea banking legislation.

In 1983, two additional commercial banks Indosuez Niugini Bank Ltd and Niugini Lloyds International Bank Ltd began operating, each with 51% national ownership, and the remaining 49% held by the affiliate of a major international bank.

In addition to these five commercial banks, the Agriculture Bank of Papua New Guinea (formerly the Development Bank) has provided long-term development finance with a particular attention to the needs of small-scale enterprises since 1967. The country's first merchant bank, Resources and Investment Finance Ltd (RIFL), specializing in large-scale financial services began business in late 1979. Its shares are owned by the Hong Kong and Shanghai Banking Corporation, the Commonwealth Trading Bank of Australia and the Papua New Guinea Banking Corporation.

On 30 June 1987 commercial banks deposits totalled K762.2m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1986 installed capacity was 494,300 mw, production 1,602.4m. kw.h.

**Oil.** The lagifu field in the Southern Highlands had (1988) potential recoverable reserves of 500m. bbls.

**Minerals.** Copper is the main mineral product. Oil companies have been searching for oil, but by 1986 no commercial deposits had been found. Gold, copper and silver are the only minerals produced in quantity. Major copper deposits in the Kieta district of Bougainville have proved reserves of about 800m. tonnes and have been worked by Bougainville Copper Ltd since 1972. Copper and gold deposits in the Star Mountains of the Western Province are being developed by Ok Tedi Mining Ltd at the Mt. Fubilan mine. Production of gold commenced in 1984 and of copper concentrates in 1987. In 1986, B.C.L. produced 586,552 tonnes of copper concentrate containing approximately 178,593 tonnes of copper, 16,367 kg of gold and 50,385 kg of silver; Ok Tedi Mining Ltd produced 18,277 kg of gold and 5,677 kg of silver.

**Agriculture.** At 31 Dec. 1983, the total area of larger holdings was 397,081 hectares, of which 180,000 hectares were for agricultural purposes, the principal crops being coffee, copra, cocoa and palm oil. Minor commercial crops include pyrethrum, tea, peanuts and spices. Locally consumed food crops include sweet

potatoes, maize, taro, bananas, rice and sago. Tropical fruits grow abundantly. There is extensive grassland. A newly-established sugar industry has made the country self-sufficient in this commodity while a beef-cattle industry is being developed.

Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Coffee, 54; copra, 145; cocoa beans, 30; palm oil, 125.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 123,000; pigs, 1.5m.; goats, 17,000; poultry, 3m.

**Forestry.** Timber production is of growing importance for both local consumption and export. In 1986, 1.7m. cu. metres of logs were harvested; logs exported, 1.3m. cu. metres.

Production of sawn timber, 1986, 84,000 cu. metres, exports, 7,438 cu. metres; exports of woodchips, 81,037 tonnes.

**Fisheries.** Tuna, both skipjack and yellowfin species, is the major fisheries resource; in 1980 the catch was 33,000 tonnes but has diminished sharply since then due to oversupply conditions on world markets. Exports of various crustacea, 1986, 1,575 tonnes, value K10.47m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Secondary and service industries are expanding for the local market. The main industries were (1988) food processing, beverages, tobacco, timber products, wood, and fabricated metal products. In 1985 there were 707 factories employing 27,195 persons. Value of output K695m.

**Labour.** In 1980 about 733,000 were gainfully employed.

**Commerce.** Imports (in K1,000) for calendar years:

	1984	1985	1986
Food and live animals	154,394	153,460	162,809
Beverages and tobacco	11,204	9,605	8,481
Crude materials, inedible, except fuels	5,828	6,206	6,945
Mineral fuels, lubricants and related materials	156,090	153,806	93,444
Oils and fats (animal and vegetable)	3,915	3,402	3,453
Chemicals	62,080	65,838	81,568
Manufactured goods, chiefly by material	138,030	132,432	149,046
Machinery and transport equipment	230,015	248,350	307,997
Miscellaneous manufactured articles	71,585	83,210	75,973
Commodities and transactions of merchandise trade, not elsewhere specified	12,532	10,590	12,353
Total imports	845,673	866,898	902,069

Exports (in K1,000) for calendar years:

	1985	1986	1987
Coconut and copra products—			
Copra	33,922	10,154	15,113
Copra (coconut) oil	22,706	10,887	14,486
Copra cake and pellets	938	888	1,034
Total	57,566	21,929	30,633
Coffee beans	117,110	203,505	134,643
Cocoa beans	62,764	56,183	56,359
Crude rubber	3,736	3,860	3,078
Tea	13,330	7,133	5,571
Pyrethrum extract	704	484	249
Forest and timber products			
Logs	55,394	62,303	103,645
Sawn timber	1,845	1,800	1,259
Plywood	211	—	—
Other	4,985	5,010	6,825
Total	62,435	69,113	111,729

	1985	1986	1987
Crocodile skins	2,370	2,475	1,879
Crayfish and prawns	9,782	10,472	10,509
Gold	175,451	220,542	140,573
Copper concentrate	307,038	357,559	538,315
Other domestic produce	78,232	45,972	35,726
Total domestic produce	890,518	999,227	1,069,262
Re-exports	27,106	17,885	17,665
Total exports	917,624	1,017,111	1,086,927

Of exports in 1986, Japan took 26%, Federal Republic of Germany, 35% and Australia, 14%; of imports, Australia furnished about 40%, Singapore, 6% and Japan, 18%.

Total trade between Papua New Guinea and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	68,245	59,642	38,474	46,045	44,291
Exports and re-exports from UK	14,643	12,592	12,084	16,693	20,521

**Tourism.** In 1986, there were 32,000 visitors of which 8,500 were tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 there were approximately 19,736 km of roads including approximately 1,200 km paved. Motor vehicles numbered (1986) 45,713 including 16,499 cars and station wagons.

**Aviation.** Frequent air services operate to and from Australia (Sydney, Brisbane and Cairns), and there are regular flights to Djayapura (Indonesia), Manila and Singapore. A service is also maintained to Honiara in the Solomon Islands. In addition to Air Niugini, the national flag carrier, Qantas operates in and out of Papua New Guinea. There are a total of 177 airports and airstrips with scheduled services.

**Shipping.** There are regular shipping services between Australia and Papua New Guinea ports, and also services to New Zealand, Japan, Hong Kong, US west coast, Singapore, Solomon Islands, Vanuatu, Taiwan, Philippines and Europe. Small coastal vessels run between the various ports. In 1985 cargo discharged from overseas was 1.5m. tonnes; cargo loaded for overseas was 2.1m. tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephones numbered 63,212 on 31 Dec. 1986. The National Broadcasting Commission operates three networks. A national service is relayed throughout the country by a series of transmitters on medium- and short-wave bands. Local services operate in each of the 19 provinces, mainly on short-wave, while the larger urban centres are also covered by a commercial FM network relayed from Port Moresby. Two commercial television stations broadcast to Port Moresby which had plans (1987) to extend their services to other areas. In 1985 there were 230,000 television and (1986) 225,000 radio receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1986 there was one daily newspaper with a circulation of 28,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1983, over 1,500 criminal and civil cases were heard in the National Court and an estimated 120,000 cases in district and local courts.

**Police.** Total uniformed strength at 31 Dec. 1986, 4,756.

**Religion.** At the 1980 Census, Protestants formed 64% of the population and Roman Catholics 33%.

**Education.** At 30 June 1986 about 374,950 children attended 2,461 primary schools and 60,052 enrolled in 234 secondary, technical and vocational schools. The University of Papua New Guinea and the Papua New Guinea University of Technology had 3,029 students enrolled in full-time courses in 1986.



**Health.** In 1986, there were 19 hospitals, 459 health centres, 2,231 aid posts and 283 doctors.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Papua New Guinea in Great Britain (14 Waterloo Pl., London, SW1R 4AR)  
*High Commissioner:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Papua New Guinea (Kiroki St., Port Moresby)  
*High Commissioner:* M. E. Howell, OBE.

Of Papua New Guinea in the USA (1330 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* Renagi Lohia.

Of the USA in Papua New Guinea (Armit St., Port Moresby)

*Ambassador:* Everett Bierman.

Of Papua New Guinea to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Renagi Lohia.

### Further Reading

*The Territory of Papua. Annual Report.* Commonwealth of Australia. 1906–1940–41 and from 1945–46

*The Territory of New Guinea. Annual Report.* Commonwealth of Australia. 1914–1940–41 and from 1946–47

*Papua New Guinea, Annual Report.* From 1970–71

Hasluck, P., *A Time for Building.* Melbourne Univ. Press, 1976

McConnell, F., *Papua New Guinea.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988

Ross, A. C. and Langmore, J., *Alternative Strategies for Papua New Guinea.* OUP, 1974

Ryan, P. (ed.) *Encyclopaedia of Papua and New Guinea.* Melbourne Univ. Press, 1972

Skeldon, R. (ed.) *The Demography of Papua New Guinea.* Institute of Applied Social and Economic Research, 1979

# PARAGUAY

Capital: Asunción

Population: 4.01m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$880 (1986)

## República del Paraguay

**HISTORY.** The Republic of Paraguay gained its independence from Spain on 14 May 1811. In 1814 Dr José Gaspar Rodríguez de Francia was elected dictator, and in 1816 perpetual dictator by the National Assembly. He died 20 Sept. 1840. In 1844 a new constitution was adopted, under which Carlos Antonio López (first elected in 1842, died 10 Sept. 1862) and his son, Francisco Solano López, ruled until 1870. During the devastating war against Brazil, Argentina and Uruguay (1865–70) Paraguay's population was reduced from about 600,000 to 232,000. Argentina, in Aug. 1942, and Brazil, in May 1943, voided the reparations which Paraguay had never paid. Further severe losses were incurred during the war with Bolivia (1932–35) over territorial claims in the Chaco. A peace treaty by which Paraguay obtained most of the area her troops had conquered was signed in July 1938.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Paraguay is bounded north-west by Bolivia, north-east and east by Brazil, south-east, south and south-west by Argentina. The area of the Oriental province is officially estimated at 159,827 sq. km (61,705 sq. miles) and the Occidental province at 246,925 sq. km (95,337 sq. miles), making the total area of the republic 406,752 sq. km (157,042 sq. miles).

The population (Census 1982) was 3,035,360; estimate (1988) 4,010,000. In 1984 the capital, Asunción (and metropolitan area), had 729,307 inhabitants; other principal cities: Presidente Stroessner (110,000), Pedro Juan Caballero (80,000), Encarnación (31,445), Pilar (26,352), Concepción (25,607).

The capital district and 19 departments had the following populations in 1982:

Asunción (city)	}	729,307	Misiones	79,278
Central			Neembucú	70,689
Caaguazú		299,227	Amambay	68,422
Itapúa		263,021	Canendiyú	65,807
Paraguari		202,152	Oriente	2,959,568
Cordillera		194,826	Presidente Hayes	43,787
San Pedro		189,751	Boquerón	14,685
Alto Paraná		188,351	Alto Paraguay	4,535
Guairá		143,374	Chaco	286
Concepción		135,068	Nueva Asunción	231
Caazapá		109,510	Occidente	63,524

Number of births, 1986, was 109,626; deaths, 11,519.

The population is overwhelmingly *mestizo* (mixed Spanish and Guaraní Indian) forming a homogeneous stock. There are some 46,700 unassimilated Indians of other tribal origin, in the Chaco and the forests of eastern Paraguay. There are some small traces of Negro descent. 40.1% of the population speak only Guaraní; 48.2% are bilingual (Spanish/Guaraní); and 6.4% speak only Spanish.

Mennonites who arrived in 3 groups (1927, 1930 and 1947) are settled in the Chaco and Oriental Paraguay and were estimated in 1969 to number 13,000, of whom 2,000 came from Canada and 11,000 from Germany. The Japanese colonists in the Oriental section, who first came in 1935, were reckoned to number 7,000 in 1983. An agreement with Korea was signed in 1966 and there were (1988) about 7,575 Korean families living in Paraguay.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with abundant rainfall and only a short dry season from July to Sept., when temperatures are lowest. Asunción. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 53" (1,316 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution replacing that of 1940 was drawn up by a Constituent Convention in which all legally recognized political parties were represented and was signed into law on 25 Aug. 1967. It provides for a two-chamber parliament consisting of a 30-seat Senate and a 60-seat Chamber of Deputies, each elected for a 5-year term. Two-thirds of the seats in each Chamber are allocated to the majority party (since 1954 the *Partido Colorado*) and the remaining one-third shared among the minority parties in proportion to the votes cast. Voting is compulsory for all citizens over 18. The President is directly elected for a 5-year (renewable) term; he appoints the Cabinet and during parliamentary recess can govern by decree through the Council of State, the members of which are representatives of the Government, the armed forces and other bodies. Gen. Stroessner was deposed in a *coup* on 3 Feb. 1989. Elections are due 1 May 1989.

*President:* Gen. Andres Rodriguez, assumed office 3 Feb. 1989.

The following is a list of past presidents since 1948, with the date on which each took office:

Dr J. Natalicio González, 15 Aug. 1948 (deposed).	Dr Federico Chávez, 16 July 1950 (resigned).
Gen. Raimundo Rolón, 30 Jan. 1949.	Tomás Romero Pereira, 4 May 1954.
Dr Felipe Molas López, 26 Feb. 1949 <sup>1</sup> (resigned).	Gen. Alfredo Stroessner, 3 Feb. 1989 (deposed).

<sup>1</sup> Provisional, *i.e.*, following a *coup d'état*.

The President has a cabinet of 10 ministers which in Oct. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Interior:* Dr Sabino A. Montanaro. *Foreign Affairs:* Dr Rodney Elpidio Acevedo. *Finance:* Elvio Alonso Martino. *Education and Worship:* Dr Carlos Ortiz Ramirez. *Public Works and Communications:* Juan A. Cáceres. *Agriculture and Livestock:* Hernando Bertoni. *National Defence:* Gen. Germán G. Martínez. *Public Health and Social Welfare:* Dr Adán Godoy Giménez. *Justice and Labour:* Eugenio Jaquet. *Industry and Commerce:* Dr Delfin Ugarte Centurión.

*National flag:* Red, white, blue (horizontal); the white stripe charged with the arms of the republic on the obverse, and, on the reverse, with a lion and the inscription *Paz y Justicia*—the only flag in the world with different obverse and reverse.

*National anthem:* ¡Paraguayos, república o muerte! (words by F. Acuña de Figueroa; tune by F. Dupey).

The country is divided into 2 provinces: the 'Oriental', east of Paraguay River, and the 'Occidental', west of the same river. The Oriental section is divided into 14 departments and the capital. The more important departments are supervised by a *Delegado* appointed by and directly responsible to the central government. The Occidental province, or Chaco, is divided into 5 departments.

**DEFENCE.** The army, navy and air forces are separate services under a single command. The President of the Republic is the active Commander-in-Chief. The armed forces totalled (1989) about 16,000 officers and men.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 cavalry division, 8 infantry divisions, 2 Presidential Escort Regiments, 2 infantry regiments and supporting artillery, engineer and signals units. Equipment includes 6 M-4A3 main battle and 34 M-3A1 light tanks. Strength (1989) 12,500 (including 8,600 conscripts), and there are 30,500 reserves.

**Navy.** The flotilla comprises 6 armoured river defence gunboats (1 new Brazilian-built, 2 ancient monitors of 636 tons built in Italy and 3 old *ex*-Argentinian minesweepers of 620 tons), 1 converted landing ship with helicopter deck, 1 river patrol boat, 6 coastal patrol craft, 2 landing craft, 1 survey craft, 1 transport training ship, 12 service craft and 2 tugs. There are 10 naval fixed-wing aircraft and 4 helicopters. Personnel in 1989 totalled 2,500 officers and men including coast-guard and 500 marines.



**Air Force.** The Air Force came into being in the early thirties. After operating only transport and training aircraft for a number of years, it received 9 Xavante light jet strike/training aircraft from Brazil in 1980. Other types in service include about 6 C-47 and 4 Aviocar twin-engined transports, 1 Convair C-131A, a Twin Otter, an Otter, 8 Brazilian-built Uirapuru primary trainers, 12 T-6 Texan, 5 Brazilian-supplied Universal armed basic trainers, 6 Tucano advanced trainers and a number of light aircraft and helicopters. HQ and flying school are at Campo Grande, Asunción. Personnel (1989) 1,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Paraguay is a member of UN, OAS and LAIA.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1988 budget balanced at Gs. 859,410,496,826.

**Currency.** The *guaraní* was established on 5 Oct. 1943 equal to 100 old paper pesos. Total monetary circulation was Gs.81,531m. in Dec. 1983. There were (1988) two official rates of exchange; a rate Gs.400 for the import of oil and by-products and Gs.550 for other goods.

Rate of exchange, March 1989: 401 *guaraníes*=US\$1; 690 *guaraníes*=£1.

**Banking.** The Banco Central del Paraguay opened 1 July 1952 to take over the central banking functions previously assigned to the National Bank of Paraguay, which had opened in March 1943 and been reorganized as the Banco del Paraguay in Sept. 1944 with a monetary, a banking and a mortgage department. The Banco del Paraguay closed in Nov. 1961 and has been replaced, with the aid of a US loan of US\$3m., by the Banco Nacional de Fomento.

The Banco Nacional de Fomento, Lloyds Bank, Banco Exterior do Brasil, Citibank, Banco de Asunción, Banco Exterior SA, Banco Unión SA, Banco Paraguayo de Comercio, Banco Real del Paraguay SA, Banco Aleman Transatlantico, Banco Holandés Unido, Banco Nacional del Estado de São Paulo, Yegros y Azara, Interbanco, Banco Paraná and Banco de Inversiones all have agencies in Asunción and branches in some main towns.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was officially adopted on 1 Jan. 1901.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity requirements are supplied by Acaray hydro-electric power plant. Production in 1986 was 1,130m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

Itaipú, the largest hydro-electric dam in the world, a joint effort of the governments of Brazil and Paraguay was inaugurated in 1982 and it is estimated that the whole project will be completed in 1990. Eventually it will have 18 turbogenerators, each with a capacity of 700,000 kw. In 1984 the first turbine started generating power.

The Yacyretá project is being carried out by the Binational Commission Yacyretá which was created by a treaty between the governments of Argentina and Paraguay. Work is being carried out on this project and it is hoped that the plant will be in full operation by the end of this decade. Initially 20 turbines each of 135,000 kw generating capacity will be installed giving the plant an initial output of 2.7m. kw.

**Oil.** The oil refinery at Villa Elisa, which has been in operation since 1966, has a production of about 3,500 bbls a day. Exploration for petroleum in the Chaco yielded negative results but prospecting was continuing in 1988.

**Minerals.** Iron, manganese and other minerals have been reported but have not been shown to be commercially exploitable. There are large deposits of limestone, and also salt, kaolin and apatite. National and international firms have acquired licences to prospect for oil and natural gas in the Chaco.

**Agriculture.** In 1981 it was estimated that agriculture absorbs some 51.4m.

hectares. In 1986, the main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) were: Mandioca (cassava), 2,875; soybeans, 662; maize, 469; seed cotton, 375; wheat, 253; rice, 77; tobacco, 18; sugar-cane, 1,296; coffee, 18.

Wheat, soybeans, cotton, sugar, tobacco, coffee are increasing in importance, as are also essential oils and oilseeds. *Yerba maté*, or strongly flavoured Paraguayan tea, continues to be produced but is declining in importance.

Livestock (1987). Paraguay had about 7,332,000 cattle, 317,000 horses, 1.69m. pigs, 398,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** In the Oriental section there are reserves of hardwoods and cedars that have scarcely been exploited. Palms, tung and other trees are exploited for their oils. The Japanese are experimenting with mulberries for silk growing. Pines and firs have been introduced under a United Nations project. In the Chaco the accessible Quebracho forests have nearly been worked out but plans are being made to open up new areas. In 1986, 181,355 tons of timber were exported.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production, 1983 (tons): Hides, 11,036; frozen meat, 7,506; cotton fibre, 77,157 (1,000 metres); tannin, 12,678; petit grain, 86; tung oil, 17,033; cement, 152,953; sugar, 98,199; cigarettes (1m. packets), 46,598; matches (1,000 boxes), 8,979. There are 3 meat-packing plants and other factories producing vegetable oils. A textile industry in Pilar and Asunción meets a large part of local needs.

**Labour.** Trade unionists number about 30,000 (*Confederación Paraguaya de Trabajadores* and *Confederación Cristiana de Trabajadores*).

**Commerce.** Imports and exports (in US\$1m.):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	478.3	513.0	442.3	509.3	592.3
Exports	251.5	334.5	303.9	232.5	353.4

Chief exports in 1987 included (in US\$1,000): Cotton, 100,957; soybeans, 122,783; vegetable oil, 9,555; sawn wood, 25,084; expellers, 12,502; tobacco, 9,860; cattle hides, 13,788; tannin extract, 5,268; processed meat, 21,778; essential oils, 5,825.

Chief imports 1987 (in US\$1,000): Fuels and lubricants, 102,773; machinery, 151,951; chemical and pharmaceutical products, 25,874; transport and accessories, 47,869; drinks and tobacco, 41,626; foodstuffs, 8,970; iron and manufactures, 24,370; agricultural implements and accessories, 8,301; textiles and clothing, 12,374; paper, cardboard and paper products, 10,464; metal and metal products, 9,080.

Imports and exports (in US\$), by country, 1987:

Country	Imports	Exports
Algeria	38,035	...
Argentina	46,099	53,570
Belgium	4,331	11,396
Brazil	169,005	62,236
Federal Republic of Germany	30,061	13,483
France	6,817	6,357
Italy	25,955	12,057
Japan	30,014	...
Netherlands	1,857	63,589
Spain	7,610	11,096
Sweden	1,528	...
Switzerland	5,689	24,137
UK	33,984	2,517
Uruguay	7,571	11,265
USA	55,249	13,914

Total trade between Paraguay and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,961	2,086	1,455	1,409	1,950
Exports and re-exports from UK	16,884	15,540	31,010	25,409	22,024

**Tourism.** Visitors numbered 200,000 in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 23,606 km of roads, of which 2,159 were paved. The principal paved roads are Route No. 2/7 running from Asunción to the bridge over the Paraná at Puerto Presidente Stroessner, and thence down to the ocean at Paranáaguá; and Route No. 1 to Encarnación in the south. The other main arteries are Coronel Oviedo-Pedro Juan Caballero road (unpaved from Coronel Oviedo) in the north and the Trans-Chaco road which starts from the bridge across the river Paraguay north of Asunción and ends at Nueva Asunción on the Bolivian border. Unpaved roads are closed when it rains. In the Argentine, a paved road starts from Pilcomayo, opposite Asunción, and provides good communication with Buenos Aires. In 1987 there were 90,000 vehicles (36,900 cars, 24,300 lorries, 2,700 buses and 26,100 jeeps and taxis).

**Railways.** The President Carlos Antonio López (formerly Paraguay Central) Railway runs from Asunción to Encarnación, on the Río Alto Paraná, with a length of 441 km (1,435 mm gauge). In 1986, traffic amounted to 156,231 tonnes and 348,535 passengers.

**Aviation.** International services are operated by 8 airlines (1 domestic and 7 foreign) and internal routes by military airlines and some small private lines.

**Shipping.** In flood the Paraguay River, which divides the country into two distinct parts, is navigable for 12ft-draught vessels as far as Concepción, 180 miles north of Asunción, and for smaller vessels for a further distance of 600 miles northward. Drought conditions often restrict navigation to lighter traffic. The Paraná River is navigable by large boats from Corrientes up to Puerto Aguirre, at the mouth of the Yguazú River. Boats of a few hundred tons capacity navigate the tributary rivers.

Asunción, the chief port, is 950 miles from the sea. The cargo fleet includes 25 vessels of 300–1,000 tons, 3 tankers of 1,100–1,700 tons, 2 passenger river boats and 1 ocean-going freighter of 713 tons.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1985 there were 382 postal offices and 88,730 telephones. In Dec. 1984 there were 266,200 television and 624,000 radio receivers. There are 4 television stations.

**Cinemas** (1986). Cinemas numbered 6 in Asunción. The larger country towns usually have an outdoor cinema.

**Newspapers** (1988). There were 5 daily newspapers in Asunción.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The highest court is the Supreme Court with 5 members. There are special Chambers of Appeal for civil and commercial cases, and criminal cases. Judges of first instance deal with civil, commercial and criminal cases in 6 departments. Minor cases are dealt with by Justices of the Peace.

The Attorney-General represents the State in all jurisdictions, with representatives in each judicial department and in every jurisdiction. In matters of revenue, taxes, etc., the State is represented by the *Abogado del Tesoro*.

**Religion.** Religious liberty is guaranteed by the 1967 constitution. Article 6 thereof recognizes Roman Catholicism as the official religion of the country. The same article states that relations between Paraguay and the Holy See shall be regulated by concordats or other bilateral agreements, but no such agreements have yet been negotiated.

The Roman Catholic Church is organized into the Archdiocese of Asunción, 3 other dioceses (San Juan Bautista de las Misiones, Concepción and Villarrica); 4 Prelatures (Coronel Oviedo, Encarnación, Alto Paraná and Caacupé); and 2 Vicariates Apostolic (Chaco and Pilcomayo). The bishops meet in a Conference of Paraguayan Bishops. Only civil marriages are legally valid. There are numerous non-catholic communities, the largest of whom are the Mennonites. There is a



small Anglican church in Asunción, with missions in the Chaco, which comes under the jurisdiction of an Anglican Bishop resident in Asunción.

**Education.** Education is free and nominally compulsory. In 1987 there were 4,101 primary schools (public and private) with 579,687 pupils and 28,136 teachers. In 1985 there were 740 secondary schools with (1987) 148,516 students and (1982) 2,448 teachers. The National University in Asunción had, in 1987, 18,711 students and (1985) 2,694 professors; the Catholic University had 10,409 students and (1984) 900 professors.

**Health.** In 1982 there were 2,201 doctors. In 1979 there were 855 dentists, 860 pharmacists, 783 midwives and 2,636 nursing personnel. In 1985 there were 3,380 hospital beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Paraguay in Great Britain (51 Cornwall Gdns, London, SW7 4AQ)

*Ambassador:* Antonio R. Zuccolillo.

Of Great Britain in Paraguay (Calle Presidente Franco, 706, Asunción)

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* John G. MacDonald, MBE.

Of Paraguay in the USA (2400 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Dr Marcos Martínez Mendieta.

Of the USA in Paraguay (1776 Mariscal López Ave., Asunción)

*Ambassador:* Timothy Towell.

Of Paraguay to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Alfredo Cañete.

### Further Reading

*Gaceta Oficial*, published by Imprenta Nacional, Estrella y Estero Bellaco, Asunción

*Anuario Daumas*. Asunción

*Anuario Estadístico de la República del Paraguay*. Asunción. Annual

Lewis, P. H., *Paraguay under Stroessner*. Univ. of North Carolina Press, 1980

Maybury-Lewis, D. and Howe, J., *The Indian Peoples of Paraguay: Their Plight and Their Prospects*. Cambridge, Mass., 1980

Nickson, R. A., *Paraguay*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional, De la Rosidenta, Asunción.

# PERU

*Capital:* Lima

*Population:* 21.3m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$970 (1985)

## República del Perú

**HISTORY.** The Republic of Peru, formerly the most important of the Spanish vice-royalties in South America, declared its independence on 28 July 1821; but it was not till after a war, protracted till 1824, that the country gained its actual freedom.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Peru is bounded north by Ecuador and Colombia, east by Brazil and Bolivia, south by Chile and west by the Pacific ocean. Area 1,285,216 sq. km (496,093 sq. miles).

The long-standing dispute with Chile over the provinces of Tacna and Arica (*see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-Book, 1928, p. 1198) reached an amicable settlement on 3 June 1929 at Lima, Tacna going to Peru and Arica to Chile. In response to demands by Bolivia for permanent access to the Pacific Coast, proposals for a Bolivian corridor to the sea and a new Bolivian port to be built in the disputed area have been put forward by Chile and Peru. To date, little progress has been made. One result has been increased tension along the Chilean-Peruvian border, there is no sign of a settlement of the border dispute, and the armed forces of both countries remain on the alert in the disputed border area. Fighting broke out between Peruvian and Ecuadorean Forces, in early 1981, along part of the disputed border (the Cordillera del Condor) which has to date not been adequately mapped. A number of proposals for settling the issue permanently have been put forward but a final settlement is unlikely to be reached in the near future. For an account of the settlement of other boundary disputes, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-Book, 1948, p. 1173.

The census taken in 1981 gave the population as 17,005,210. Estimate (1988) 21,255,900 (10,707,400 male). Lima, the capital, had (1983) 5,258,600 population. Birth rate per 1,000 population (1988), 34.2; death rate, 9; infant mortality rate per 1,000 live births, 85.8.

The area and population (at Census, 12 July 1981) of the 24 departments and the constitutional province of Callao, together with their capitals, are shown below:

<i>Department</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>
Amazonas	41,297	319,500	Chachapoyas	12,800
Ancash	36,669	951,800	Huaraz	61,200
Apurímac	20,550	364,800	Abancay	27,000
Arequipa	63,528	910,500	Arequipa	591,700
Ayacucho	44,181	557,600	Ayacucho	94,200
Cajamarca	34,930	1,222,600	Cajamarca	85,600
Callao	148	560,000	Callao	318,300
Cuzco <sup>1</sup>	76,329	1,000,400	Cuzco	255,300
Huancavelica	21,079	372,900	Huancavelica	24,700
Huánuco	34,094	583,800	Huánuco	85,500
Ica	21,251	519,500	Ica	144,000
Junín	41,296	1,062,600	Huancayo	199,200
La Libertad	23,241	1,180,800	Trujillo	491,100
Lambayeque	13,737	881,000	Chiclayo	394,800
Lima	33,821	6,313,000	Lima	417,900 <sup>3</sup>
Loreto	379,025	621,800	Iquitos	247,900
Madre de Dios	78,403	46,000	Puerto Maldonado	19,500
Moquegua	15,709	126,900	Moquegua	29,400
Pasco	24,035	270,800	Cerro de Pasco	72,100
Piura	36,403	1,413,600	Piura	297,200
Puno	72,382 <sup>2</sup>	997,400	Puno	92,700
San Martín	52,309	429,500	Moyobamba	22,900
Tacna	15,232	195,500	Tacna	137,500
Tumbes	4,732	135,900	Tumbes	61,100
Ucayali	100,831	217,700	Pucallpa	140,700

<sup>1</sup> Constitutional province.

<sup>2</sup> Includes Peruvian zone of Lake Titicaca (4,996 sq. km).

<sup>3</sup> Municipality proper; Lima/Callao metropolitan area 4,605,043.

The official languages are Spanish (spoken by 68% of the population) and Quechua (spoken by 27%); 3% speak Aymará.

**CLIMATE.** There is a very wide variety of climate, ranging from equatorial to desert, (or perpetual snow on the high mountains). In coastal areas, temperatures vary very little, either daily or annually, though humidity and cloudiness show considerable variation, with highest humidity from May to Sept. Little rain is experienced in that period. In the Sierra, temperatures remain fairly constant over the year, but the daily range is considerable. There the dry season is from April to Nov. Desert conditions occur in the extreme south, where the climate is uniformly dry, with a few heavy showers falling between Jan. and March. Lima. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 62°F (16.7°C). Annual rainfall 2" (48 mm). Cuzco. Jan. 56°F (13.3°C), July 50°F (10°C). Annual rainfall 32" (804 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 3 Oct. 1968 a military junta overthrew the government of President Fernando Belaúnde Terry and installed Gen. Juan Velasco Alvarado as President of a 'Revolutionary Government' with a cabinet composed entirely of officers of the armed services. Gen. Velasco was ousted in bloodless *coup* in Aug. 1975 and was replaced by Gen. Francisco Morales Bermudez.

The new Constitution, which became effective when a civilian government was installed in July 1980, provides for a Legislature consisting of a Senate (60 members) and a Chamber of Deputies (180 members) and an Executive formed of the President of the Republic and a Council of Ministers appointed by him. Elections were held in April 1985. They are held every 5 years with the President and Congress elected, at the same time, by separate ballots. All Peruvians over the age of 18 are eligible to vote; in May 1980 the number of registered voters was over 6m., including 1m. in Lima province. Voting is compulsory; women were fully enfranchised in 1955.

Presidents since 1962 were:

Gen. Ricardo Pérez Godoy, 18 July 1962–3 March 1963.<sup>1</sup>  
Gen. Nicolás Lindley López, 3 March–28 July 1963.  
Fernando Belaúnde Terry, 28 July 1963–3 Oct. 1968.<sup>1</sup>

Gen. Juan Velasco Alvarado, 3 Oct. 1968–29 Aug. 1975.<sup>1</sup>  
Gen. Francisco Morales Bermudez, 29 Aug. 1975–28 July 1980.  
Fernando Belaúnde Terry, 28 July 1980–28 July 1985.

<sup>1</sup> Deposed.

*President:* Alan García Pérez (sworn in 28 July 1985).

The Cabinet was in Nov. 1988 composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Minister of the Presidency:* Armando Villanueva del Campo. *Defence:* Gen. Enrique López Albújar. *Economy and Finance:* Carlos Rivas Davila. *Food and Agriculture:* Juan Manuel Coronado Balmaceda. *Education:* Mercedes Cabanillas. *Energy and Mines:* José Carlos Carrasco Távara. *Fisheries:* Rómulo León Alegría. *Foreign Affairs:* Luis González Posada. *Housing:* Luis Bedoya Vélez. *Industry and Commerce:* Iván García Cabrejos. *Interior:* Vice-Adm. Juan Soria Díaz. *Transport and Communications:* Camilo Carrillo Gómez. *Justice:* César Delgado Barreto. *Labour and Social Relations:* Orestes Rodríguez Campos. *Health:* Luis Pinillos Ashton. *Armed Forces:* Lieut.-Gen. Pablo Varela.

There are 24 departments divided into 179 provinces (plus the constitutional province of Callao) and 1,764 districts; the province of Callao has some of the functions of a department.

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of red, white, red, with the national arms in the centre.

*National anthem:* Somos Libres, seámoslo siempre (words by J. de la Torre Ugarte; tune by J. B. Alcedo, 1821).

## DEFENCE.

**Army.** While military service is compulsory youths are only conscripted to fill the



annual quota. The term of service is 2 years and all males of 20–25 years of age are liable. The country is divided into 5 military regions.

The Army comprises (1989) approximately 80,000 men (including 55,000 conscripts). There are 5 military regions with 2 armoured, 1 cavalry, 8 infantry, 1 airborne and 1 jungle divisions. Of independent groups there are 2 artillery, 1 anti-aircraft, 2 infantry battalions, 7 jungle battalions and 1 engineering battalions. There is an air element of 25 Mil Mi-8, 3 Mi-6 and 6 Alouette III helicopters, plus more than a dozen fixed-wing transport and liaison aircraft. Equipment consists of approximately 400 tanks (T-54/-55 and AMX-13), over 400 light armoured fighting vehicles and 105-mm./130-mm./155-mm. field artillery.

The section of the national police force with a para-military role is known as the *Guardia Civil* and comprises approximately 42,000 personnel.

**Navy.** The principal surface ships of the Peruvian Navy are the cruisers:–

Completed	Name	Standard Displacement (tons)	Main Guns	Aircraft	Shaft horsepower	Max. Speed (knots)
1953	<i>Almirante Grau</i> ex- <i>Aguirre</i> (ex- <i>De Zeven Provinciën</i> )	9,850	4 6in.	3	85,000	32
1953	<i>Proyecto 01</i> ex- <i>Almirante Grau</i> <sup>1</sup> (ex- <i>De Ruyter</i> )	9,530	8 6in.	–	85,000	32

<sup>1</sup> When the Dutch cruiser *De Ruyter* was purchased in 1973 she was re-named *Almirante Grau* after Peru's principal naval hero. In consequence the cruiser whose name had been changed from *Newfoundland* to *Almirante Grau* when she was purchased from Britain in 1959 was again re-named *Capitan Quinones*, after an air force hero; but this ship has since been retired (latterly used as harbour training ship); and her sister ship *Colonel Bolognesi* (ex- *HMS Ceylon*) was laid up in 1983. *Aguirre* was bought from the Netherlands in 1976 (in 1986 this ship assumed the name *Almirante Grau* and the former *Almirante Grau* became *Proyecto 01*, a very confusing recent history of renaming).

There are also 12 submarines comprising 6 completed in Federal Republic of Germany in 1974–82, 4 completed in USA in 1954–57 and 2 old *ex-USN* built in 1944; 2 reconstructed 'Daring' class destroyers delivered from Britain during 1973; 6 old destroyers purchased from the Netherlands in 1980–82, 2 Italian-built frigates completed in 1979 and 2 Peruvian completed to same design in 1985–86, 6 new French-built fast missile-armed corvettes, 2 medium landing ships; 5 river gunboats; 3 river patrol boats; 2 transports; 3 hospital craft; 1 research craft; 5 oilers; 7 survey vessels; 1 repair ship; 1 torpedo recovery vessel; 1 floating workshop, 4 floating docks; 4 water carriers, and 7 tugs.

All naval training takes place in the Callao area at various schools. The main naval base and dockyard are also in Callao. Smaller bases are at Iquitos on the Amazon, and at San Lorenzo.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 23,000 officers and men including the Naval Air Arm which recently operated 17 ship-borne anti-submarine helicopters and 11 land-based maritime patrol aircraft plus 5 C-47 and 2 C-130 Hercules transports. There is a Marine Brigade of 3,000 men.

The Coast Guard (originally set up with light forces transferred from the Navy) includes 6 modern patrol vessels built in Peru in 1976–82, 3 fast patrol craft built in Britain in 1964–65, 2 former US gunboats, 4 coastal patrol boats and 5 river patrol craft.

**Air Force.** The operational force consists of 5 combat groups. No. 6 Group has 2 squadrons of Mirage 5 jet fighters; No. 9 Group has 2 squadrons of Canberra light jet bombers; No. 7 Group has 2 squadrons of A-37B light attack aircraft; No. 12 Group has Soviet-built Su-22 variable-geometry fighter bombers in 2 operational squadrons; No. 11 Group has one squadron of Su-22s and one with Mirage 2000s. Other aircraft in service include medium transports (1 F.28 Fellowship, 15 An-32, 11 C-130/L-100 Hercules), light transports (16 Twin Otter, 1 twin-jet Falcon and 12 Turbo-Porter), helicopters (2 Mi-6 and 6 Mi-8, Bell 47G, 206, 212, 214ST, 412

and UH-1, BO 105 and Alouette III), 70 training aircraft (including Aermacchi MB 339, T-37 and T-41D) and a small number of miscellaneous types for photographic and communications duties. There are military airfields at Talara, Chiclayo, Piura, Pisco, Lima (2), Iquitos and La Joya, and a seaplane base at Iquitos. All officers and pilots are trained at the Air Academy at Lima (Las Palmas). The approximate strength of the Peruvian Air Force (1988) 15,000 personnel and 115 combat aircraft.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Peru is a member of UN, OAS, Andean Group and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1987 envisaged expenditure of 92,539m. intis and revenue of 66,424m. intis.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *inti* introduced 1986. One *inti* = 1,000 *soles*. In March 1989, £1 = 1,657 *inti*; US\$1 = 963 *inti*.

**Banking.** The government bank of issue is the Banco Central de la Reserva del Perú, which was established in 1922.

The Government's fiscal agent is the Banco de la Nación which, since May 1970, has control of the 'giro' market through which most non-trade foreign currency transactions are channelled.

There were in 1987, 12 commercial banks (of which 7 state-owned), 5 foreign commercial banks, 4 development banks, 6 regional commercial banks and a savings bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures was established by law in 1869, and since 1916 has come into general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1987 the production of electric energy was 13,951m. kwh (10,809m. kwh hydro-electric). Supply 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Proven oil reserves in the jungle region amount to about 900m. bbls. The new 850 km pipeline, linking the new jungle oilfields to coastal terminals, was opened in 1977. Output amounted to 7m. tonnes in 1988 and Peru became an oil exporter in 1985.

**Minerals.** Peru's mining industry produces 13 metals and 25 non-metallic minerals. Lead, copper, iron, silver, zinc and petroleum are the chief minerals exploited. In 1984 prospecting for uranium was in progress. Mineral exports in 1980: Copper, US\$752m.; lead, US\$383m.; zinc, US\$210m.; silver, US\$312m.; iron ore, US\$95m.; gold, US\$40m. Mineral production (in 1,000 tonnes, 1987) of iron, 3,305; zinc, 612; copper, 406; lead, 204; silver, 2,054,000 kg; gold, 5.6m. kg.

**Agriculture.** There are 4 natural zones: the coast strip, with an average width of 80 km; the Sierra or Uplands, formed by the coast range of mountains and the Andes proper; the Montaña or high wooded region which lies on the eastern slopes of the Andes, and the jungle in the Amazon Basin, known as the Selva. In 1984 irrigation was increasing the amount of cultivable acreage in the arid coastal sections of the country, using the abundance of water flowing from the Andes mountains.

Production in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane, 6,099; potatoes, 1,709; cotton, 202; coffee, 98; rice, 1,169; maize, 914.

Livestock (1987): 2.48m. alpacas, 25,000 vicuna, 3.96m. cattle, 13.3m. sheep, 2.3m. pigs, 50m. poultry.

**Forestry.** There are 209m. acres of forests containing valuable hardwoods; oak and cedar account for about 40%. In 1983, total roundwood removals totalled 7.8m. cu metres.

**Fisheries.** Production (1987 in tonnes) 4,274,000, including anchoveta, 1,640,700; sardine (1986), 1,721,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** About 70% of Peru's manufacturing industries are located in or around the Lima/Callao metropolitan area. Products include pig-iron, blooms, billets, largets, round and round-deformed bars, wire rod, black and galvanized sheets and galvanized roofing sheets. Refractories are manufactured at Lima.

The Government has a monopoly of the import and/or local manufacture and sale of guano, salt, alcohol and explosives.

**Labour.** In 1988 the total labour force was considered to number 7,205,500 persons. The population was distributed as follows: Agriculture, forestry, hunting and fishing, 2,507,500; manufacturing industry, 742,200; commerce, 1,080,800; construction, 259,400; mining, 172,900; services, 1,923,900; others, 518,800.

**Trade Unions.** Trade unions have about 2m. members (approximately 1.5m. in peasant organizations and 500,000 in industrial). The major trade union organization is the *Confederación de Trabajadores del Perú*, which was reconstituted in 1959 after being in abeyance for some years. The other labour organizations recognized by the Government are the *Confederación General de Trabajadores del Perú*, the *Confederación Nacional de Trabajadores* and the *Central de Trabajadores de la Revolución Peruana*.

**Commerce.** The value of trade has been as follows (in US\$1m.):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	3,722	2,722	2,140	1,806	2,596	3,068
Exports	3,293	3,015	3,147	2,978	2,531	2,605

In 1987, imports (in US\$1,000) were mainly from the USA (563,264), Federal Republic of Germany (233,205) and Japan (209,926); exports were mainly to the USA (541,799) and Japan (162,447). In 1986 the chief export was minerals, US\$1,023,000.

Total trade between Peru and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	119,423	108,943	82,141	91,689	90,844
Exports and re-exports from UK	33,841	40,371	48,275	49,324	31,384

**Tourism.** There were 305,000 visitors in 1986; revenue US\$325m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were 69,942 km, of which 7,459 km were paved and 13,538 km gravel. In 1987 there were 610,813 registered motor vehicles.

**Railways.** Total length (1986), 1,672 km on 1,435- and 914-mm gauges. In 1986 railways carried 2.3m. tonnes of freight and 3.3m. passengers.

**Aviation.** In 1986 there were 30 airports.

**Shipping.** In 1983, 23.5m. tonnes of goods were loaded and unloaded, including 10.4m. coastal traffic.

**Post and Broadcasting.** An earth satellite ground communication station at Lurin connects Peru through Intelsat. III to the US and Europe. In 1986 there were 628,643 telephones, 419,164 in Lima. Radio-telephone circuits connect Lima with distant towns. There are 153 broadcasting stations, of which 29 are in Lima. Radio receivers (1984) 2.24m. and television receivers 520,000.

**Cinemas.** In 1972 there were 276 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** The main Lima newspapers are *El Comercio*, *Expreso*, *República*, *Hoy*, *La Voz*, *Ojo*, *El Popular* *El Diario*, *La Tercera*, *Extra*, *El Nacional* and *La Crónica*.



## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Peruvian judicial system is a pyramid at the base of which are the justices of the peace who decide minor criminal cases and civil cases involving small sums of money. The apex is the Supreme Court with a President and 12 members; in between are the judges of first instance, who usually sit in the provincial capitals, and the superior courts.

**Religion.** Religious liberty exists, but the Roman Catholic religion is protected by the State, and since 1929 only Roman Catholic religious instruction is permitted in schools, state or private. In 1972 there were 1 Roman Catholic cardinal, 7 archbishops, 14 bishops, 3 vicars-general, 8 vicars apostolic, 2,672 priests, 506 cloistered monks and 4,558 members of religious orders.

**Education.** Elementary education is compulsory and free for both sexes between the ages of 7 and 16; secondary education is also free.

In 1987 there were 3,763,730 pupils in primary schools and 1,732,466 pupils in secondary schools.

In 1987 the total number of students at 35 universities was 409,654.

**Health.** There were in 1986, 353 hospitals and 920 health centres.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Peru in Great Britain (52 Sloane St., London, SW1X 9SP)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Peru (Edificio El Pacifico Washington, Ave. Arequipa, Lima)

*Ambassador:* A. J. Beamish, CMG.

Of Peru in the USA (1700 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* Cesar G. Atala.

Of the USA in Peru (PO Box 1995, Lima)

*Ambassador:* Alexander F. Watson.

Of Peru to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Carlos Alzamora.

## Further Reading

The official gazette is *El Peruano*, Lima.

*Anario Estadístico del Perú.* Annual.—*Perú: Compendio Estadístico.* Annual.—*Boletín de Estadística Peruana.* Quarterly.—*Demarcación Política del Perú.* (Dirección Nacional de Estadística), Lima

*Estadística del Comercio Exterior* (Superintendencia de Aduanas). Lima

*Banco Central de Reserva.* Monthly Bulletin.—*Renta Nacional del Perú.* Annual, Lima

Figueroa, A., *Capitalist Development and the Peasant Economy of Peru*. CUP, 1984

Hemming, J., *The Conquest of the Incas*. London, 1970

McClintock, C. and Lowental, A. F., (eds.) *The Peruvian Experiment Reconsidered*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1983

Mejía Baca, J. and Tauro, A., *Diccionario Enciclopédico del Perú*. 3 vols. 1966

Thorpe, R. and Bertram, G., *Peru 1890–1977: Growth and Policy in an Open Economy*. London, 1978

*National Library:* Avenida Abancay, Lima.

# PHILIPPINES

*Capital:* Manila

*Population:* 58.72m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$614 (1986)

## Republika ng Pilipinas

**HISTORY.** Before the Spanish discovery of the Philippines, the native Filipinos came in contact with India, China and Arabia. According to the early records of China, 'some Filipinos from the country of Ma-i arrived in Canton and sold their merchandise' as early as 982. The Philippine islands were discovered by Magellan in 1521 and conquered by Spain in 1565. Following the Spanish-American war, the islands were ceded to the USA on 10 Dec. 1898, after the Filipinos had tried in vain to establish an independent republic in 1896.

The Philippines acquired self-government as a Commonwealth of the USA by Act of Congress signed by President Roosevelt on 24 March 1934 and ratified by plebiscite on 14 May 1935. This provided for independence after a 10-year transitional period, at the end of which the Philippines became completely independent on 4 July 1946.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Philippines is situated between 21° 25' and 4° 23' N. lat. and between 116° and 127° E. long. It is composed of 7,100 islands and islets, 2,773 of which are named. Approximate land area, 115,830 sq. miles (300,000 sq. km). The largest islands (in sq. km) are Luzon (104,684), Mindanao (94,627), Samar (13,079), Negros (12,706), Palawan (11,784), Panay (11,515), Mindoro (9,735), Leyte (7,215), Cebu (4,421), Bohol (3,864), Masbate (3,268).

Census population 1980 was 48,098,460; 36% urban. Estimate (1988) 58,721,307. (41% urban in 1987).

The area and population of the 13 regions are as follows (from north to south):

<i>Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>	<i>Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>
Iloos	21,568	4,133,684	Central Visayas	14,951	4,446,456
Cagayan Valley	36,403	2,712,698	Eastern Visayas	21,432	3,242,836
Central Luzon	18,231	5,862,990	Northern Mindanao	28,328	3,437,549
National Capital	636	7,561,413	Southern Mindanao	31,693	4,132,019
Southern Luzon	46,924	7,691,855	Central Mindanao	23,293	2,802,001
Bicol	17,633	4,197,973	Western Mindanao	18,685	3,060,825
Western Visayas	20,223	5,438,994			

The major cities (with 1980 census populations) are as follows: all on Luzon unless indicated in parenthesis.

Manila	1,630,485 <sup>1</sup>	Batangas	143,570
Quezon City	1,165,865 <sup>1</sup>	Cabanatuan	138,298
Davao (Mindanao)	610,375	San Pablo	131,655
Cebu (Cebu)	490,281	San Juan del Monte	130,088 <sup>1</sup>
Caloocan	467,816 <sup>1</sup>	Cadiz (Negros)	129,632
Makati	372,631 <sup>1</sup>	Navotas	126,146 <sup>1</sup>
Zamboanga (Mindanao)	343,722	Lipa	121,166
Pasay	287,770 <sup>1</sup>	Baguio	119,009
Pasig	268,570 <sup>1</sup>	Silay (Negros)	111,131
Bacolod (Negros)	262,415	Mandaue (Cebu)	110,590
Iloilo (Panay)	244,827	Lucena	107,880
Cagayan de Oro (Mindanao)	227,312	Calbayog (Samar)	106,719
Valenzuela	212,363 <sup>1</sup>	Ormoc (Leyte)	104,978
Marikina	211,613 <sup>1</sup>	Tacloban (Leyte)	102,523
Parañaque	208,552 <sup>1</sup>	San Carlos (Luzon)	101,243
Mandaluyong	205,366 <sup>1</sup>	Legaspi	99,766
Angeles	188,834	Dagupan	98,344
Butuan (Mindanao)	172,489	Malolos	95,699
Iligan (Mindanao)	167,358	San Carlos (Negros)	91,627
Olongapo	156,430	Naga	90,712
General Santos (Mindanao)	149,396		

<sup>1</sup> City within Metropolitan Manila (total population 5,925,884).

In 1980 the national language, Pilipino (based on Tagalog, a Malayan dialect) was spoken by 55% of the population, but as a mother tongue by only 23.8%; among the 76 other indigenous languages spoken, all of the Malayo-Polynesian family, Cebuano was spoken as a mother tongue by 24.4%, Ilocano by 11.1%, Hiligaynon by 8% and Bikol by 5%.

**CLIMATE.** Some areas have an equatorial climate while others experience tropical monsoon conditions, with a wet season extending from May to Nov. Mean temperatures are high all year, with very little variation. Manila. Jan. 77°F (25°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 82" (2,083 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Presidential elections were held on 7 Feb. 1986. Ferdinand E. Marcos was opposed by Corazón Aquino. The elections proved to be fraudulent and although Marcos was proclaimed President, by the National Assembly, on 15 Feb., on 25 Feb. he fled the country. President Corazón Aquino was sworn in on 25 Feb.

On 25 March 1986 the President abolished the Parliament and declared a provisional government. A new Constitution was ratified by referendum in 1987 with 78.5% of the voters endorsing it. It aims 'to secure to ourselves and our posterity the blessings of independence and democracy under the rule of law and a regime of truth, justice, freedom, love, equality and peace'.

At congressional elections held on 11 May 1987, 24 senators were elected in the Upper House and 200 congressmen in the House of Representatives.

*President:* Corazón Aquino.

*Vice President:* Salvador Laurel.

*Foreign Affairs:* Raul Manglapus. *Finance:* Vicente Jayme. *Justice:* Sedfrey Ordoñez. *National Defence:* Fidel Ramos. *Agriculture and Food:* Carlos Dominguez. *Environment and Natural Resources:* Fulgencio Factoran Jr. *Agrarian Reform:* Philip Juico. *Education, Culture and Sports:* Lourdes Quisumbing. *Local Government:* Lito Monico Lorenzana. *Labour and Employment:* Franklin Drilon. *Public Works and Highways:* Fiorello Estuar. *Trade and Industry:* José Concepcion Jr. *Transport and Communications:* Reinerio Reyes. *Tourism:* José Antonio Gonzales. *Health:* Alfredo Bengzon. *Science and Technology:* Antonio Arizabal. *Social Welfare and Development:* Mita Pardo de Tavera. *Budget and Management:* Guillermo Carague. *National Economic and Development Authority:* Solita Monsod. *Executive Secretary:* Catalino Macaraeg Jr. *Press Secretary:* Teodoro Benigno Jr. *Presidential Commission on Good Government:* Mateo Caparas. *Central Bank Governor:* Jose Fernández.

*National flag:* Horizontally blue over red, with a white triangle based on the hoist bearing a gold sun of 8 rays and 3 gold stars.

*National hymn:* 'Land of the Morning', lyric in English by M. A. Sane and C. Osias, tune by Julian Felipe (1898); 'Pambansang Awit ng Pilipinas', Tagalog lyric by the Institute of National Language, music by Julian Felipe.

*Local Government.* The country is administratively divided into 13 regions, 73 provinces, 60 cities, 1,532 municipalities, 21 municipal districts and 40,761 *barangays*. On 14 Nov. 1975 the name of provincial boards and city or municipal boards or councils was changed into *Sangguniang Bayan*.

**DEFENCE.** On 14 March 1947 the Philippine and US Governments signed a 99-year military-base arrangement since reduced to 25 years and will end in 1991. The USA was granted the use of a series of army, navy and air bases, with the right to use a number of others on mutual agreement. On 21 March a second agreement provided for a US Military Advisory Group as well as military assistance. A treaty of mutual assistance was signed in Washington on 30 Aug. 1951; the instruments of ratification were exchanged in Manila on 27 Aug. 1952. The Philippines is also a signatory of the S.E. Asia Collective Defence Treaty.

The Chief of Staff of the Armed Forces has overall command over the Army, Air Force, Navy and Constabulary.



**Army.** The Army comprises 6 infantry divisions, 1 ranger regiment, 3 engineer brigades, 1 light armoured regiment and 4 artillery regiments. Equipment includes 28 Scorpion light tanks. Strength (1989) 65,000, with reserves totalling 95,000. There are also paramilitary forces; the Philippine Constabulary (43,500) and the Civil Home Defence Force (45,000).

**Navy.** The fleet includes 3 very old frigates (former US destroyer escorts built in 1943), 10 corvettes (3 *ex-US* fleet minesweepers and 7 *ex-US* escorts), 2 *ex-US* PC-type patrol vessels, 8 other patrol craft, 5 gunboats, 70 coastal patrol craft, 1 training ship, 24 landing ships, 4 medium landing ships, 6 landing craft (3 LSSL and 3 LCU), 3 repair ships, 2 oilers, 3 water carriers, 1 supply ship, 6 survey ships, 5 tenders, 70 minor landing craft, 2 yachts (command ships), 6 tugs and 20 auxiliaries. There are 30 patrol craft and 60 cutters and tenders in the coast guard.

The Philippine Navy was considerably increased in 1976 by taking over many vessels (nearly all former US warships) from the Vietnamese Navy which escaped from Indo-China when the Saigon government collapsed in 1975. But some 60 of the larger ships are well over 40 years old. The 4 largest are now non-operational, 4 patrol vessels built in 1979 are unservicable, and all LSTs seriously in need of refit. Of some 250 ships only 100 are servicable and 30 regularly operational.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 12,500 officers and men. There are also 9,500 officers and enlisted men in the marine corps (was to be raised to 15,400), and 2,000 officers and men in the coast guard.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had (1989) a strength of 17,000 officers and men, with 330 aircraft, and was built up with US assistance. Its fighter-bomber wing is equipped with 1 squadron of F-5As. A strike wing is equipped with armed trainers, 2 squadrons having T-28s and 1 squadron SF.260WPs. Other units include a maritime patrol squadron with F27 Maritimes and HU-16 Albatross amphibians and 7 transport squadrons (1 with C-130/L-100 Hercules, 1 with F27s, 1 with Nomads, 1 with C-47s, 2 with UH-1 Iroquois helicopters and 1 with S-76 helicopters). Training aircraft include T-41s, T-34s and T-33 jets. Two S-70 helicopters are used as VIP transports.

**Police.** Public order is maintained partly through the Philippine constabulary and partly through the local police forces. The constabulary now forms part of the Armed Forces and has 27,000 personnel.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Republic of the Philippines is a member of UN and the Colombo Plan.

**External Debt.** At April 1988 the external debt (monetary and non-monetary) amounted to US\$28,950m.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A development plan, 1987-92, aimed at an average growth rate of 6.8%.

**Budget.** The revenues and expenditures of the central government for calendar years were, in 1m. Philippine pesos, as follows:

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	57,150	68,961	79,245	103,200	128,300
Expenditure	67,797	80,148	114,505	155,500	190,700

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

Expenditure (1988) included (in 1m. pesos): National defence, 16,800; education, health and social services, 35,900; economic development, 35,600; debt service, 86,800.

At June 1988 the total internal public debt outstanding of the national and local governments and monetary institutions, including those of the government corporations, stood at P.196,891.1m.

**Currency.** Total money supply, March 1988, was P.51,576.5m., of which

P.32,835.2m. was currency in circulation and P.18,741.3m. were demand deposits. The coins used are: 5 *peso*, 1 *peso*, one-half *peso*, quarter *peso*, media *peseta* (10 *centavos*), all contain 70 grammes copper, 18 grammes zinc and 12 grammes nickel; 5 *centavo* in copper and zinc, and 1 *centavo* in aluminium and magnesium zinc. Central Bank notes are issued in 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 *pesos* denominations.

In March 1989, £1 = 36.00 *pesos*; US\$1 = 20.92 *pesos*.

**Banking.** In June 1988 there were 29 head offices and 1,714 branches of commercial banks, with 4 overseas, 1 each in New York, Hong Kong, Taipei and London. Agencies exist in Honolulu, San Francisco and Los Angeles. Total deposits of the commercial banks in March 1988 were P.164,335m. Total number of Philippine banking institutions, June 1988, 3,559 with total assets P.672,482.1m. at March 1988.

Under the law passed 15 June 1948 the Central Bank of the Philippines was created to have sole control of the credit and monetary supply, independent of the Treasury. It has a capital of P.10m. furnished solely by the Government. Its total assets, at 31 Dec. 1987 were P.325,185.1m. Central Bank's total assets at March 1988 were P.326,446.5m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures was established by law in 1869, and since 1916 has come into general use but there are local units including the picul (63.25 kg) for sugar and fibres, and the cavan (16.5 gallons) for cereals.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Government and private electric systems furnish the Philippines with electric power, with total installed capacity of 5,796m. mw (1987); production 20,865m. kwh. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 60 Hz.

**Minerals.** Mineral production in 1987 (in tonnes): Nickel metal, 8,510; zinc metal, 1,128; copper metal, 214,103; cobalt metal (1986), 90; coal, 1,169,167; salt, 466,427; gold, 32,599 kg; silver, 50,816 kg; silica sand, 213,407. Other minerals include chromite, cement, rock asphalt, sand and gravel.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of 30m. hectares, 7.04m. hectares are commercial forests; 5.4m. hectares non-commercial forests; 794,000 hectares open grassland; 115,000 hectares mangrove and marshes; 14,794,000 hectares cultivated.

About 98.4% of the total cultivated area is owned by Filipinos; the average size of the farm was 2.63 hectares in 1980. The principal products are unhusked rice (palay), Manila hemp (abaca), copra, sugar-cane, maize and tobacco. As of Oct. 1987 9,940,000 persons were employed in agriculture (47.8% of the working population).

The products (in 1,000 tonnes) are (1987, provisional): Rough rice, 8,958; copra, 2,429; coconuts, 3,263; sugar (centrifugal muscovado and molasses), 1,861; shelled corn, 4,015; bananas, 3,755; tobacco, 58; abaca fibre, 84.

Minor crops are fruits, nuts, root crops, vegetables, onions, beans, coffee, cacao, peanuts, ramie, rubber, maguey and kapok.

Livestock, estimated in 1987: 2,865,305 carabaos (water buffaloes), 1,746,850 cattle, 7,038,030 pigs, 2,015,510 goats and 58,069,540 poultry.

**Forestry.** The forests covered some 9,180,479 hectares in 1986. Log production, 1987, 4,130,608 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Fish production from all sources was 2,213,040,000 kg and was valued at P.37,241,893,000 in 1987.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Manufacturing is a major source of economic development contributing 24.91% to GNP in 1987. Leading growth sectors were food manufacturing, textile, footwear and wearing apparel, machinery except electrical, fabricated metal products, wood and cork products, industrial chemicals and other chemical

products, furniture and fixtures and publishing and allied industries. In 1985 (annual survey), there were 5,369 large manufacturing establishments, of which 1,331 were engaged in food; 413 wearing apparel; 132 footwear; 312 textile; 354 publishing and allied industries; 328 machinery except electrical; 262 fabricated metal products; 294 industrial chemicals and other chemical products; 284 wood and cork products; 157 plastic products and 161 transport equipment. The non-agricultural labour force as of Oct. 1987 was 10,855,000 out of a total of 20,795,000 employed.

**Commerce.** The values of imports and exports (f.o.b.) for calendar years are stated as follows in US\$1m.:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	6,070	5,111	5,044	6,737
Exports	5,391	4,629	4,842	5,720

The principal exports in 1987 were (in US\$1m.): Garments, 1,098; electronics, 1,094; coconut oil (crude), 381; bars, rods and slabs of copper, 162; shrimps and prawns, 155; lumber, 154; bananas, 121; copper concentrates, 109.

Main imports in 1987 (in US\$1m.): Petroleum products and related materials, 819; textile yarns, fabrics, made-up articles and related products, 207; electric machinery, apparatus and appliances, 293; cereals and cereal preparations, 168; iron and steel, 204; industrial machinery, equipment and machine parts, 117; organic chemicals, 177; artificial resins and plastic materials, 142; machinery specialized for particular industries, 133.

For over a half-century the foreign trade has been chiefly with the USA.

Total trade between the Philippines and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	199,659	179,979	182,852	202,707	223,571
Exports and re-exports from UK	91,751	94,370	79,809	113,784	123,974

**Tourism.** In 1987, 794,700 tourists visited the Philippines spending US\$458m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 highways totalled 162,325 km; of this, 9,366 km were concrete; 11,934, asphalt; 9,684, earth; 131,342, macadam. In 1987 there were registered 1,191,422 motor vehicles of all types.

**Railways.** The National Railways totals 1,027 km of 1,067 mm gauge on Luzon, and Phividec Railways operates 116 km on Panay Island. In 1987, 4,640,000 passengers and 16,158 tonnes of freight were carried by rail.

**Aviation.** The Philippine Air Lines, Inc., with a working capital of P.3,061m., in 1986 carried 4,865,689 passengers and 54,980,763 kg of cargo.

**Shipping.** In 1985 there were 302 public and 240 private ports, many serving coastal shipping. In 1984, 63,726 vessels of 24,097,000 net tons entered and 63,175 vessels of 23,449,000 net tons cleared all ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were in operation 2,100 post offices and 2,824 telegraph stations. The Philippine Long Distance Telephone Co. had 866,084 telephones in service (company-owned and subscriber-owned) in 1987. Other major operators had 53,711 connexions in 1985.

Licensed radio stations in 1987 numbered 28,020.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 472 registered publications (288 published in Manila), 20 of which were dailies in 1986.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court which is composed of a chief justice and 14 associate justices; it can declare a law or treaty unconstitutional by the concurrent votes of the majority sitting. There is an intermediate appellate court, which consists of a presiding appellate justice and 49 associate appellate justices. There are 13 regional trial courts, one for each judicial region, with a presiding regional trial



judge in its 720 branches. There is a metropolitan trial court in each metropolitan area established by law, a municipal trial court in each of the other cities or municipalities and a municipal circuit trial court in each area defined as a municipal circuit comprising one or more cities and/or one or more municipalities.

The Supreme Court may designate certain branches of the regional trial courts to handle exclusively criminal cases, juvenile and domestic relations cases, agrarian cases, urban land reform cases which do not fall under the jurisdiction of quasijudicial bodies and agencies and/or such other special cases as the Supreme Court may determine.

**Religion.** In 1970 there were 31,169,488 Roman Catholics, 1,434,688 Aglipayans, 1,584,963 Moslems, 1,122,999 Protestants, 475,407 members of the Iglesia ni Kristo, 33,639 Buddhists and 863,302 others.

The Roman Catholics are organized in 12 archbishoprics, 30 bishoprics, 12 prelatures nullius, 4 apostolic vicariates, 4 apostolic prefectures and some 1,633 parishes. The Philippine Independent Church, founded in 1902, and comprising about 3-9% of the population, denies the spiritual authority of the Roman Pontiff. It is divided into two groups, one of which has accepted ordinations by the Episcopalian Church.

**Education.** Formal education consists of 3 levels: Elementary, secondary and further education. Public elementary education is free and public elementary schools are established in almost every *barangay* or *barrio*. The majority of the secondary and post-secondary schools are private, sectarian or non-sectarian. The number of years required to complete the elementary and secondary levels are 6 and 4 years respectively, while the tertiary level requires at least 4 years for an academic degree. Pre-school education is also offered mostly in private schools to children from ages 3-6.

Non-formal education consists of adult literacy classes, agricultural and farming training programmes, occupation skills training, youth clubs, and community programmes of instructions in health, nutrition, family planning and co-operatives.

Public and private schools in 1986-87 enrolled 9,230,378 pupils in primary schools, 3,420,921 in secondary schools and 1,704,618 students in further education. The University of the Philippines (founded in 1908) had 15,316 students in 1984.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 51,461 registered physicians and (1987) 87,697 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Philippines in Great Britain (9A Palace Green, London, W8 4QE)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in the Philippines (115 Esteban St., Manila)

*Ambassador:* Keith MacInnes, CMG.

Of the Philippines in the USA (1617 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* Emmanuel N. Pelaez.

Of the USA in the Philippines (1201 Roxas Blvd., Manila)

*Ambassador:* Nicholas Platt.

Of the Philippines to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Emmanuel Pelaez.

## Further Reading

*Philippine Yearbook 1987*, National Statistics Office, Manila, 1987

*Foreign Trade Statistics of the Philippines, 1987*, National Statistics Office, Manila, 1985

Bresnan, J. (ed.) *Crisis in the Philippines: The Marcos Era and Beyond*, Princeton Univ. Press, 1986

Lightfoot, K., *The Philippines*, London, 1973

May, R. J. and Nemenzo, F. (eds.), *The Philippines after Marcos*, London and Sydney, 1985

Poole, F. and Vanzi, M., *Revolution in the Philippines*, New York, 1984

Richardson, J. A., *Philippines*, [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

# PITCAIRN ISLAND

*Only settlement:* Adamstown  
*Population:* 59 (1987)

**HISTORY.** It was discovered by Carteret in 1767, but remained uninhabited until 1790, when it was occupied by 9 mutineers of HMS *Bounty*, with 12 women and 6 men from Tahiti. Nothing was known of their existence until the island was visited in 1808. In 1856 the population having become too large for the island's resources, the inhabitants (194 in number) were, at their own request, removed to Norfolk Island; but 43 of them returned in 1859–64.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Pitcairn Island (1.75 sq. miles; 4.6 sq. km) is situated in the Pacific Ocean, nearly equidistant from New Zealand and Panama (25° 04'S. lat., 130° 06' W. long.). Adamstown is the only settlement. The population on 31 Dec. 1987 was 59.

The uninhabited islands of Henderson (12 sq. miles), Ducie (1½ sq. miles) and Oeno (2 sq. miles) were annexed in 1902 and are included in the Pitcairn group.

**CLIMATE.** An equable climate, with average annual rainfall of 80" (2,000 mm), spread evenly throughout the year. Mean monthly temperatures range from 75°F (24°C) in Jan. to 66°F (19°C) in July.

**CONSTITUTION.** Pitcairn was brought within the jurisdiction of the High Commissioner for the Western Pacific in 1898 and transferred to the Governor of Fiji in 1952. When Fiji became independent in Oct. 1970, the British High Commissioner in New Zealand was appointed Governor.

The Local Government Ordinance of 1964 constitutes a Council of 10 members, of whom 4 are elected, 5 are nominated (3 by the 4 elected members and 2 by the Governor) and the Island Secretary is an *ex-officio* member. The Island Magistrate, who is elected triennially, presides over the Council; other members hold office for only 1 year. Liaison between Governor and Council is through a Commissioner in the Auckland, New Zealand, office of the British Consulate-General.

*Governor:* R. A. C. Byatt, CMG (resides in Wellington).

*Island Magistrate:* Brian Young (elected Dec. 1987).

*Flag:* British Blue Ensign with the whole arms of Pitcairn in the fly.

**TRADE.** Fruit, vegetables and curios are sold to passing ships; fuel oil, machinery, building materials, flour, sugar and other foodstuffs are imported.

**ROADS.** There were (1988) 6 km of roads. In Aug. 1988 motor cycles provided the sole means of personal automotive transport; there were 9 2-wheelers, 16 3-wheelers and 1 4-wheeled motor cycle.

**JUSTICE.** The Island Court consists of the Island Magistrate and 2 assessors.

**EDUCATION.** In 1988 there was 1 teacher and 12 pupils.

## Further Reading

*A Guide to Pitcairn.* Pitcairn Island Administration, Auckland, revised ed. 1982  
Ball, I., *Pitcairn: Children of the Bounty*. London, 1973  
Ross, A. S. C. and Moverly, A. W., *The Pitcairnese Language*. London, 1964

# POLAND

Capital: Warsaw

Population: 37.8m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$2,070 (1986)

## Polska Rzeczpospolita Ludowa

**HISTORY.** In 1966 Poland celebrated its millennium, but modern Polish history begins with the partitions of the once-powerful kingdom between Russia, Austria and Prussia in 1772, 1793 and 1795. For 19th century events see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK* 1980-81.

On 10 Nov. 1918 independence was proclaimed by Józef Piłsudski, the founder of the Polish Legions during the war. On 28 June 1919 the Treaty of Versailles recognized the independence of Poland.

On 1 Sept. 1939 Germany invaded Poland, on 17 Sept. 1939 Russian troops entered eastern Poland, and on 29 Sept. 1939 the fourth partition of Poland took place. After the German attack on Russia, the Germans occupied the whole of Poland. By March 1945 the country had been liberated by the Russians.

In 1970 the Federal Republic of Germany recognized Poland's western boundary as laid down by the Potsdam Conference of 1945 (the 'Oder-Neisse line').

In July 1944 the USSR recognized the Polish Committee of National Liberation (*Polski Komitet Wyzwolenia Narodowego*) established in Lublin as an executive organ of the National Council of the Homeland (*Krajowa Rada Narodowa*). The Committee was transformed into the Provisional Government in Dec. 1944, and on 28 June 1945, supplemented by members of the Polish Government in London (which had been recognized by the UK and USA), it was re-established—in Moscow—as the Polish Provisional Government of National Unity and on 6 July recognized as such by the UK and USA.

Elections were held on 19 Jan. 1947. Of the 12.7m. votes cast, 11.24m. were recognized as valid and 9m. were given for the Communist-dominated 'Democratic Bloc'. After riots in Poznań in June 1956 nationalist anti-Stalinist elements gained control of the Communist Party, under the leadership of Władysław Gomułka.

In Dec. 1970 strikes and riots in Gdańsk, Szczecin and Gdynia led to the resignation of a number of leaders including Gomułka. He was replaced by Edward Gierek.

The introduction of price rises in June 1976 was again followed by strikes and riots. The rises were withdrawn and some demonstrators were imprisoned. In the campaign of protest which followed a Committee for the Defence of the Workers (KOR) was formed.

The raising of meat prices on 1 July 1980 resulted in a wave of strikes which broadened into generalized wage demands and eventually by mid-Aug. acquired a political character. Workers in Gdańsk, Gdynia and Sopot elected a joint strike committee, led by Lech Wałęsa.

On 31 Aug. the Government and Wałęsa signed the 'Gdańsk Agreements' permitting the formation of independent Trade Unions.

On 5 Sept. Gierek was replaced as First Secretary by Stanisław Kania. On 17 Sept. various Trade Unions decided to form a national confederation ('Solidarity') and applied for legal status, which was granted on 24 Oct. after some Government resistance.

On 9 Feb. the Defence Minister, Gen. Wojciech Jaruzelski, became Prime Minister. A new Communist Party leadership was elected in July. At Solidarity's first national congress (4-10 Sept. and 2-8 Oct. 1981) Wałęsa was re-elected chairman and a radical programme of action was adopted. On 18 Oct. Kania was replaced as Party leader by Jaruzelski. On 13 Dec. 1981 the Government imposed martial law (*stan wojenny*), banning a wide range of civil liberties, and establishing the rule of a 20-member Military Council of National Salvation (WRON). Solidarity



was proscribed and its leaders detained. Martial law was approved by the Sejm on 26 Jan. 1982 with one dissident vote and 5 abstentions. The Party Central Committee approved the measure on 25 Feb. Wałęsa was released in Nov. 1982. On 8 Oct. the Sejm voted (with 12 dissident votes and 9 abstentions) a law dissolving all registered trade unions including Solidarity. These have been replaced by workplace unions which are required to pledge support for the Communist Party and the Constitution. Martial law was lifted in July 1983. An amnesty of 21 July 1984 freed 35,000 common and 652 political prisoners, including 7 Solidarity and 4 KOR leaders. In Nov. 1985 Jaruzelski resigned the Prime Ministership in favour of Zbigniew Messner, and was elected Chairman of the Council of State. In July and Sept. 1986 the Government granted an amnesty to all political prisoners except those accused of terrorism or spying. Following a wave of strikes and demands for the reinstatement of Solidarity, Messner and his government resigned in Sept. 1988. Mieczysław Rakowski was appointed Prime Minister on 27 Sept.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Poland is bounded north by the Baltic and the RSFSR, east by Lithuania, White Russia and the Ukraine, south by Czechoslovakia and west by the German Democratic Republic. Poland comprises an area of 312,683 sq. km (120,628 sq. miles). The country is divided into 49 voivodships (*województwo*) and these in turn are divided into 818 towns and 2,122 wards (*gmina*). The capital is Warsaw (Warszawa).

Area (in sq. km) and population (in 1,000) in 1988 (1984 % urban in brackets).

<i>Voivodship</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Voivodship</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>
Biała Podlaska	5,348	301 (32.5)	Opole	8,535	1,023 (50.9)
Białystok	10,055	680 (57.7)	Ostrołęka	6,498	390 (30.9)
Bielsko-Biała	3,704	885 (48.9)	Piła	8,205	473 (53.9)
Bydgoszcz	10,349	1,097 (62.8)	Piotrków	6,266	639 (45.3)
Chełm	3,866	244 (39.9)	Płock	5,117	513 (45.7)
Ciechanów	6,362	422 (33.0)	Poznań	8,151	1,316 (69.7)
Częstochowa	6,182	771 (51.2)	Przemyśl	4,437	401 (35.7)
Elbląg	6,103	472 (58.6)	Radom	7,294	737 (44.5)
Gdańsk	7,394	1,420 (76.2)	Rzeszów	4,397	704 (37.7)
Gorzów	8,484	491 (60.4)	Siedlce	8,499	642 (28.7)
Jelenia Góra	4,378	514 (65.3)	Sieradz	4,869	404 (33.1)
Kalisz	6,512	704 (44.5)	Skierniewice	3,960	413 (42.2)
Katowice	6,650	3,971 (87.7)	Słupsk	7,453	404 (53.8)
Kielce	9,211	1,116 (44.4)	Suwałki	10,490	459 (49.9)
Konin	5,139	463 (38.6)	Szczecin	9,981	959 (73.9)
Koszalin	8,470	498 (61.0)	Tarnobrzeg	6,283	587 (34.6)
Kraków (Cracow)	3,254	1,217 (69.1)	Tarnów	4,151	652 (34.2)
Krosno	5,702	484 (32.8)	Toruń	5,348	650 (60.8)
Legnica	4,037	503 (66.6)	Wałbrzych	4,168	739 (88.5)
Leszno	4,154	380 (46.1)	Warsaw	3,788	2,432 (73.0)
Łódź	1,523	1,148 (91.4)	Włocławek	4,402	428 (44.9)
Łomża	6,684	342 (35.7)	Wrocław	6,287	1,119 (72.4)
Lublin	6,792	997 (55.5)	Zamość	6,980	489 (24.9)
Nowy Sącz	5,576	679 (35.5)	Zielona Góra	8,868	654 (59.0)
Olštyn	12,327	739 (56.4)			

Population (in 1,000) of the largest towns (1985):

Warsaw	1,649	Bydgoszcz	361	Gliwice	213
Łódź	849	Lublin	324	Kielce	201
Kraków (Cracow)	716	Sosnowiec	255	Zabrze	198
Wrocław (Breslau)	636	Częstochowa	247	Toruń	186
Poznań	553	Białystok	245	Tychy	182
Gdańsk (Danzig)	467	Gdynia	243	Bielsko-Biała	174
Szczecin (Stettin)	391	Bytom	239	Ruda Śląska	165
Katowice	363	Radom	214	Olštyn	147

At the census of 6 Dec. 1984 the population was 37,026,000 (18m. males; 60% urban). Population on 1 Jan. 1988, 37,764,000 (19.3m. females; 23m. urban), density, 121 per sq. km. Vital statistics, 1987 (per 1,000): Marriages, 6.7; divorces, 1.3; live births, 16.1; deaths, 10.1; infant mortality (per 1,000 live births), 17.4.

The rate of natural growth, 1987, 6 per 1,000. Expectation of life in 1984 was 66.8 years. In 1984, 55% of the population was under 30.

Ethnic minorities are not identified. There were estimated to be 1.2m. Germans in 1984. In 1982 there were 900 immigrants and 32,100 emigrants. In 1983 19,200 Germans emigrated. There is a large Polish diaspora, some 65% in USA. About 250,000 Poles settled abroad between 1981 and 1988, 153,000 illegally.

**CLIMATE.** Climate is continental, marked by long and severe winters. Rainfall amounts are moderate, with a marked summer maximum. Warsaw. Jan. 25°F (-3.9°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 22.1" (550 mm). Gdańsk. Jan. 29°F (-1.7°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 22" (559 mm). Kraków. Jan. 27°F (-2.8°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 29" (729 mm). Poznań. Jan. 30°F (-1.1°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 21" (523 mm). Szczecin. Jan. 30°F (-1.1°C), July 65°F (18.3°C). Annual rainfall 22" (550 mm). Wrocław. Jan. 30°F (-1.1°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 23" (574 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present Constitution was adopted on 22 July 1952. Amendments were adopted in 1976 and 1983.

The titular head of state is the Chairman of the Council of State, Wojciech Jaruzelski. Deputy Chairmen: Kazimierz Barcikowski, Zenon Komender, Tadeusz Mlynczak, Tadeusz Szlachowski.

Since 1983 the Constitution has defined the position of political parties as follows: 'The alliance and cooperation of the Polish United Workers' (i.e. Communist) Party (PUWP) with the United Peasant Party and the Democratic Party in the construction of socialism and their cooperation with those social organizations and associations that are grounded in the principles of the system of the Polish People's Republic form the basis of the Patriotic Movement of National Renaissance.' (PRON).

Talks between the PUWP, Solidarity and others in Feb.-March 1989 resulted in proposals for reform for approval by Parliament. These included the establishment of a 98 member upper house to be elected on 4 June 1989 in conjunction with Parliamentary elections at which Solidarity and other opposition groups would be permitted to stand, democratization of local government, and the legalization of Solidarity and Rural Solidarity.

In March 1989 the Politburo of the PUWP consisted of: Wojciech Jaruzelski (*First Secretary*); Władysław Baka; Kazimierz Barcikowski; Stanisław Ciosek; Józef Czyrek; Gen. Czesław Kiszczak (*Minister of the Interior*); Alfred Miodowicz; Zygmunt Murański; Marian Orzechowski (*Foreign Minister*); Tadeusz Porebski; Mieczysław Rakowski (*Prime Minister*); Gen. Florian Siwicki (*Defence Minister*); Zofia Stepien. Candidate members: Manfred Gorywoda; Janusz Kubasiewicz; Zbigniew Michalek; Gabriela Rembisz. Ministers not in the Politburo included 4 *Deputy Prime Ministers*: Zdzisław Sadowski (*Chairman, Planning Commission*); Józef Koziol; Janusz Patorski; Zbigniew Szalajda; Bazyli Samojlik (*Finance*); Władysław Gwiazda (*Foreign Economic Co-operation*); Lech Domeracki (*Justice*); Jerzy Urban (*Head of Government Press Office*).

In 1987 the PUWP had 2,149,300 (3,091,900 in 1980) members (39% workers, 89% over 30 in 1984), the United Peasants' Party had 513,500 in 1988, and the Democratic Party, 126,900 in 1987. The Socialist Youth Union had 1.5m. members in 1986 (2m. in 1980).

The authority of the republic is vested in the Sejm (Parliament), elected for 4 years by all citizens over 18. The Sejm elects a Council of State and a Council of Ministers.

The last elections for the Sejm were held on 13 Oct. 1985. 410 seats were contested by 2 candidates each, and 50 seats by one candidate who had to obtain 50% of the vote, these latter being mainly Government leaders and 16 independents. All candidates had to support the policies of PRON. Turn-out was said to be 78.86%. The 460 seats were distributed as follows: 245 PUWP, 106 United Peasants' Party, 35 Democratic Party, 74 independents, including 21 Catholics.

At a referendum of 29 Nov. 1987 the 28m. voters were asked (i) if they would accept two or three years of sacrifice to save the economy (ii) if they wanted deep



democratization of political life. Turn-out was 68%. 44% of the electorate voted for (i) (26% against), 46% for (ii) (24% against), falling short of the 50% approval stipulated to make the conditions legally binding.

Local government is carried out by People's Councils elected every 4 years at voivodship and community level. Alongside these are the offices of state administration. The chairman of the People's Council is the Secretary of the regional organization for the area. 256,632 candidates stood at the elections of 19 June 1988; turn-out was claimed to be 56%. Solidarity called for a boycott, and estimated turn-out at 50%.

*National flag*: Horizontally white over red.

*National anthem*: Jeszcze Polska nie zginęła (words by J. Wybicki, 1797; tune by M. Ogiński, 1796).

**DEFENCE.** A National Defence Committee was set up in Nov. 1983 with Gen. Jaruzelski at its head. Poland is divided into 3 military districts: Warsaw (the eastern part of Poland); Pomerania (Baltic coast, part of central Poland; headquarters at Bydgoszcz); Silesia (Silesia and southern Poland; headquarters at Wrocław).

Armed forces are on Soviet lines and divided into army and air force (2 years' conscription), navy (3 years), anti-aircraft, rocket and radio-technological units (3 years) and internal security forces (2 years). The military age extends from the 19th to the 50th year. The strength of the armed forces was (1988) 394,000, plus 87,000 security and frontier forces. Security forces include armoured brigades.

3-year civilian duty as a conscientious alternative to conscription was introduced in 1988. Reductions in defence spending and personnel were announced in 1989.

**Army.** The Army consists of 5 armoured, 8 mechanized divisions, 1 airborne and 1 amphibious assault, 5 artillery brigades; 3 anti-tank regiments; 4 surface-to-surface missile brigades; 1 air defence brigade. Equipment includes 3,400 T-54/-55 and 350 T-72 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 230,000 (including 168,000 conscripts).

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 4 ex-Soviet diesel electric propelled patrol submarines, 1 new frigate, 3 missile armed modern corvettes, 24 fleet minesweepers, 12 fast missile craft, 15 patrol boats, 40 coastguard patrol boats, 24 minesweepers, 8 inshore minesweepers, 23 medium landing ships, 3 intelligence vessels, 8 training ships, 3 degaussing vessels, 2 salvage ships, 2 torpedo recovery vessels, 18 minor landing craft, 6 surveying vessels, 7 oilers, 20 tugs and 40 auxiliaries and tenders. The Fleet Air Arm has 90 somewhat dated fixed-wing aircraft (including 40 MiG-17s and 40 MiG-21s) and over 40 helicopters. Personnel in 1989 totalled 19,000 comprising 5,200 afloat, 2,000 under training, 4,100 of coastal defence, 2,500 in naval aviation and 5,200 on shore support.

**Air Force.** The Air Force had a strength (1989) of some 92,000 officers and men and 675 first-line jet aircraft of Soviet design, forming 4 air divisions. There are 11 air defence regiments (33 squadrons) with about 400 MiG-21 and MiG-23 supersonic interceptors, and 6 regiments (18 squadrons) operating variable-geometry MiG-23BM and Su-20, Su-7B and MiG-17 close-support fighters. There are also reconnaissance, ECM, transport, helicopter (including Mi-2s for observation and Mi-24 gunships) and training units. Soviet 'Guideline' 'Goa', 'Ganef', 'Gainful' and 'Gaskin' surface-to-air missiles are operational.

Two Soviet armoured divisions are stationed on Polish territory.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Poland is a member of UN, Comecon and the Warsaw Pact and was readmitted to IMF in May 1986.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For planning history until 1980 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK 1981-82, p.1002. Industrialization without sufficient expenditure on infrastructure; neglect of agriculture and the inefficiency of the planning mechanism, exacerbated by higher prices and declining Western demand for exports, and the



social unrest since 1980, brought the economy to a state of paralysis. Some food-stuffs are rationed, and price increases were introduced in 1982 and 1984–88. Economic reforms involving a closer linking of credits, profits and wages with market forces and efficiency were introduced in 1982 and Oct. 1987. Since Jan. 1989 private businesses have been taxed at the same rates as state enterprises, and limits on the number of their employees have been removed. A 5-year National Socio-Economic Plan is running from 1986 to 1990, and into this Central Annual Plans are integrated. Inflation was 70% in 1989.

**Budget.** Budget in 1 m. złotys, for calendar years:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	2,345,300	2,629,100	3,299,700	3,854,200	4,902,700	5,850,400
Expenditure	2,434,200	2,654,400	3,367,800	3,979,200	4,193,200	5,029,800

Main items of 1987 revenue (in 1 m. złotys): State enterprises, 4,649,200; finance and insurance, 166,100; non-socialized economy and personal taxes, 378,400.

Main items of 1987 expenditure (in 1 m. złotys): The economy, 2,525,400; welfare, 647,900; defence, 467,700; administration, 330,700; education, 497,200.

**Currency.** The currency unit is the *złoty*, divided into 100 *groszy*. The currency consists of notes of 10, 20, 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 2,000 and 5,000 złotys; and of coins of 10, 20 and 50 groszy and 1, 2, 5, 10, 20 and 50 złotys. In March 1989, £1 sterling = 968.16 złotys, US\$1 = 562.56 złotys.

**Banking.** The National Bank of Poland (established 1945) is the central bank, has exclusive authority to issue currency, is charged with control of money and credit, and has responsibility for financial implementation of the national economic plan. The Food Economics Bank (Bank Gospodarki Żywnościowej) is responsible for financing of rural enterprises, and also operates banks. The General Savings Bank (Powszechna Kasa Oszczędności) exercises central control over savings activities, transfers and checking transactions, including activities of workers' co-operative banks.

In addition to the National Bank of Poland other authorized foreign-exchange banks are, the Polish Welfare Bank (Bank Polska Kasa Opieki SA) and the Commercial Bank of Warsaw (Bank Handlowy w Warszawie SA). An Export Development Bank was established in 1986.

Deposits in savings institutions amounted to 2.48m. złotys in 1987.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity production (1987) 146,000m. kwh. In 1984 97.5% of electricity was produced by coal-powered thermal plants. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz. A nuclear power station is being built at Żarnowiec.

**Minerals.** Poland is a major producer of coal (reserves of some 120,000m. tonnes) and sulphur. Copper reserves are estimated at 56m. tonnes. Production in 1987 (in 1m. tonnes): Coal, 193; brown coal, 73.2; copper ore (1985), 29.4; silver, 831 tonnes. Oil was discovered 80 km off the port of Leba in 1985. Total oil reserves amount to some 100m. tonnes. Crude oil production was 140,000 tonnes in 1988, natural gas 5,745m. cu. metres in 1987.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 there were 18.8m. hectares of agricultural land, of which 14.4m. hectares were in private hands, 3.5m. in state farms, 698,000 in co-operatives and 62,000 in agricultural associations. 14.5m. hectares were arable, 259,000 orchards, 2.5m. meadows, 1.6m. pasture lands.

Collectivization has been largely abandoned. There were 2,222 co-operatives in 1987, 1,240 state farms and 396 agricultural associations. In Dec. 1987 a private, Catholic, Foundation for the Development of Polish Agriculture was set up to aid farmers with Western finance. A compulsory contributory pension scheme was introduced in 1978 for farmers who turn over their farms to their successors or the State. Private holdings may not exceed 100 hectares. There were 2.76m. in 1987, of which 816,000 were less than 2 hectares.

<i>Crops</i>	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>			<i>Yield (1,000 tonnes)</i>		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	1,885	2,025	2,132	6,461	7,502	7,942
Rye	3,083	2,760	2,647	7,600	7,074	6,816
Barley	1,242	1,335	1,286	4,086	4,412	4,335
Oats	1,086	924	856	2,682	2,486	2,428
Potatoes	2,095	2,009	1,934	36,546	39,037	36,252
Sugar-beet	436	423	422	14,664	14,217	13,987

Livestock (1987, in thousands): 10,523 cattle (4,937 cows), 18,546 pigs, 4,739 sheep, 1,141 horses, 65,000 poultry. Milk production in 1987 was 15,046m. litres, meat, 3.1 lm. tonnes.

Tractors in use in 1987: 1,039,000 (in 15-h.p. units).

**Forestry.** In 1987, 8.7m. hectares were forests (predominantly coniferous). 68,000 hectares were afforested, and 24.5m. cu. metres of timber gained.

**Fisheries.** In 1985 the fishing fleet had 93 deep-sea vessels totalling 314,000 GRT. The catch was 650,600 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Coke, 17,100; rolled steel, 12,412; cement, 16,100; sulphuric acid (100%), 497; fertilizers, 2,622; electrolytic copper, 390; zinc, 177; salt, 4,865 in 1985; sugar, 1,670; plastics, 639. In 1987, 325 ships over 100 DWT were built. 293,000 cars, 45,600 lorries and 10,000 buses were built in 1987.

Output of light industry in 1987: Cotton fabrics, 745m. metres; woollen fabrics, 99.3m. metres; synthetic fibres, 120m. metres; shoes, 163m. pairs; household glass, 63,300 tonnes; paper, 1,380,000 tonnes; washing machines 778,000, refrigerators 509,000, and TV sets 646,000.

**Labour.** In 1987 the total number in employment was 17.3m. (8.1m. women in 1984), of whom 5m. worked in the private sector, and including in agriculture 4.9m., industry 4.9m., building 1.3m., trade 1.5m. and transport and communications 1m. There were 6,000 'seeking jobs'. Founded in Aug. 1980 the 'independent self-governing union' organization Solidarity (Chairman Lech Wałęsa) was dissolved in Oct. 1982 along with all other trade unions. New official unions (OPZZ) established in 1983 took over Solidarity's funds in 1985. OPZZ (Chairman, Alfred Miodowicz) had 5m. members in 1988. There are also some 4,000 small unions not affiliated to OPZZ. Average wage in 1987, 29,184 zlotys per month. A law of Oct. 1982 makes voluntary unemployment an offence; offenders are liable for compulsory labour. There is a statutory 42-hour working week which may be compulsorily extended in certain workplaces, with 38 free Saturdays a year.

**Commerce.** Trade statistics for calendar years (in 1m. zlotys):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	868,908	970,203	1,209,695	1,594,900	1,964,000	2,875,600
Exports	951,162	1,060,177	1,336,125	1,691,000	2,115,600	3,236,500

Main imports in 1987 (in tonnes): Petroleum, 14.2m.; iron ore, 17.1m.; fertilizers, 6m.; wheat, 2.3m.; coal, 1.1m.; passenger cars, 31,600 units.

Main exports in 1987 (in tonnes): Coal, 31m.; coke, 2.3m.; copper, 162,000; sulphur, 3.9m.; pharmaceuticals, 69,347m. zlotys; ships, 287,000 DWT.

Foreign trade deals should be made directly with the appropriate foreign trade enterprise. Information may be obtained from the Polish Chamber of Foreign Trade, Trebacka 4, 00-950 Warsaw. Joint ventures with Western firms are encouraged both at home and abroad. Since Jan. 1989 Western investors may own 100% of companies on Polish soil.

43.9% of Poland's trade is with Comecon countries. In Oct. 1985 Poland signed a trade agreement with the USSR for 1986-90. This gives the USSR a wide role in the Polish economy, particularly in the supply of oil, and reschedules Poland's 5,000m. rouble debt beyond 1990. Soviet exports include plant and equipment and raw materials; Polish exports, machinery, ships, coal, chemicals and consumer

goods. Federal Germany and UK are Poland's major non-communist trading partners.

In July 1985 Western bankers agreed to reschedule Poland's hard currency debts, spreading total repayment over 1991-97. Polish indebtedness to the West was some US\$35,500m. in 1989. In 1985 a 2% levy was imposed on firms' fixed asset to help repay hard currency debts. Poland does not accept liability for the £495,000 debts of pre-war Danzig (Gdańsk).

Total trade between Poland and UK (British Department of Trade returns £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	266,961	320,276	309,746	303,418	328,013
Exports and re-exports from UK	169,962	184,143	182,841	181,451	175,685

Some Polish imports are subject to quota restrictions.

In Feb. 1987 the US restored Poland's most-favoured-nation status and removed other economic sanctions introduced as a response to the imposition of martial law (1981-83).

**Tourism.** In 1987, 4,776,000 tourists visited Poland (942,000 from the West) and 5,229,000 Polish citizens made visits abroad (1,130,000 to the West). More liberal passport regulations were introduced for Polish citizens in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 Poland had 153,000 km of hard-surfaced roads. In 1986 there were 4m. passenger cars (3.9m. private), 827,000 lorries (330,000 private) 86,000 buses and 1.52m. motor cycles.

In 1984 road transport carried 2,438m. passengers and 1,421m. tonnes of freight. There were 4,667 fatal road accidents in 1986.

**Railways.** The length of the standard gauge railway system was (1987) 24,309 km (9,978 km electrified) and ran 121,383m. tonne-km and 48,285m. passenger-km.

**Aviation.** In 1985 the state airline 'Lot' had 39 aircraft including 5 Il-62s, operated 9 internal and 34 international routes. 1,853,000 passengers were flown and 9,000 tonnes of freight in 1984. There are British Airways, SABENA, KLM, PANAM, Alitalia, Swissair, Air France, Austrian Airlines and Lufthansa services to Okęcie (Warsaw) airport.

**Shipping.** The principal ports are Gdynia, Gdańsk (Danzig) and Szczecin (Stettin). Ocean-going services are grouped into Polish Ocean Lines (150 vessels totalling 1.1m. DWT in 1985) based on Gdynia and operating regular liner services, and the Polish Shipping Company based on Szczecin and operating cargo services. Poland also has a share in the Gdynia America Line. 35.4m. tonnes of freight and 297,000 passengers were carried in 1984.

In 1987 the merchant marine had 251 vessels totalling 2.8m. GRT (including 9 tankers and 16 vessels over 30,000 tons). There are regular lines to London, Hull, China, Indonesia, Australia, Vietnam and some African and Latin-American countries.

Total shipping entering Polish ports in 1984 was 10,081 vessels of 27.2m. NRT.

There are 3,997 km of inland navigable waterways. 15.4m. tonnes of freight and 6.5m. passengers were carried in 1984.

**Pipeline.** In 1987 there were 1,986 km of oil pipeline.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 8,342 post offices. There were 2.63m. telephones of which 1.98m. were private and 32,000 telex subscribers.

*Polskie Radio i Telewizja* broadcasts 3 programmes in Polish on long-, medium- and short-waves and on FM. There are 2 TV programmes. Colour programmes are transmitted by SECAM system. There were 85 transmitting stations in 1987. Wire-less licences in 1984 numbered 9.29m.; television licences, 8.77m.

**Cinemas and Theatres.** In 1987 there were 2,010 cinemas, 101 theatres and 49 concert halls. Cinema attendance was 94m.; theatre, 7.6m. 39 full-length films were made.



**Newspapers** (1987). There were 97 newspapers with an overall circulation of 10.44m. and 2,888 other periodicals. The Party newspaper is *Trybuna Ludu* (People's Tribune).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The penal code was adopted in 1969. Espionage and treason carry the severest penalties. For minor crimes there is provision for probation sentences and fines.

There exist the following courts: The Supreme Court; voivodship, district and special courts. Judges and lay assessors are elected. The State Council elects the judges of the Supreme Court for a term of 5 years, and appoints the Prosecutor-General. The office of the Prosecutor-General is separate from the judiciary. An ombudsman's office was established in 1987.

Family courts were established (1977) for cases involving divorce and domestic relations. Crimes reported in 1983 (and 1984) 466,205 (538,930) including 478 (593) homicides and 1,875 (2,184) rapes.

**Religion.** In 1978, 93% of the population was baptized into the Catholic Church, and 78% of the population attended church regularly. According to a survey published in the Communist Party journal *Nowe drogi* in 1985, 90% of the population held religious beliefs. Church-State relations are regulated by agreements of 1950, 1956 and 1972. A joint government-episcopal commission was reactivated in Sept. 1980, and religious broadcasting began. The Church has a university (Lublin), an Academy of Catholic Theology and in 1983 46 seminaries. Religious education of children is conducted in 'catechism centres' of which there were some 20,000 in 1985.

The archbishop of Warsaw and Gniezno is the primate of Poland (since 1981, Cardinal Józef Glemp). The Vatican considers the archbishoprics of Lwów and Vilnius (incorporated in the USSR in 1940) as still being under Polish jurisdiction. In 1983 there were 5 archbishoprics, 27 dioceses and 7,496 parishes, 84 bishops, 37,132 monks and nuns and 14,498 churches and 4,201 chapels. In 1986 there were 3 cardinals and 22,381 priests. In Oct. 1978 Cardinal Karol Wojtyła, archbishop of Cracow, was elected Pope as John Paul II.

On 28 June 1972 the Vatican adjusted the Church boundaries, to coincide with the State's western frontier ('Oder-Neisse line') and the 4 apostolic administrators in the former German territories became bishops. In Oct. 1984, the radical priest, Jerzy Popiełuszko was murdered by secret policemen who were subsequently sentenced to long terms of imprisonment.

Figures for other churches in 1983: Polish Autocephalous Orthodox, 5 dioceses, 218 parishes, 301 churches, 226 priests, 1 monastery, 1 nunnery, 600,000 adherents. Lutheran, 6 dioceses, 121 parishes, 173 churches, 153 chapels, 100 parsons (100,000 adherents in 1975). Uniate, 3 dioceses, 85 parishes, 98 churches, 90 priests (200,000 adherents in 1975). Old-Catholic Mariavite, 3 dioceses, 42 parishes, 55 churches, 29 priests (30,000 adherents in 1975). Methodist, 5 districts, 60 parishes, 57 chapels, 36 parsons (4,133 adherents in 1975). United Evangelical, 200 congregations, 56 chapels, 180 parsons. Seventh-day Adventist, 123 communities, 123 churches, 61 parsons. Baptist, 128 congregations, 58 chapels, 58 parsons (2,300 adherents in 1975). Jews, 16 congregations, 10 synagogues (12,000 adherents in 1978). Epiphany World Mission, 9 chapels and 426 priests. In 1985 there were 2,500 Moslems with 3 mosques and 5 priests.

**Education.** Basic education from 7 to 15 is free and compulsory. Free secondary education is then optional in general or vocational schools. Primary schools are organized in complexes based on wards under one director ('gmina collective schools'). In 1987-88 there were: Kindergartens, 26,289 with 1.4m. pupils and 88,000 teachers; primary schools, 18,129 with 5,134,000 pupils and 277,000 teachers; secondary schools, 1,138 with 422,000 pupils and 22,000 teachers; vocational schools, 9,421 with 1,668,000 pupils and 82,000 teachers, and 92 institutions of higher education (including 11 universities, 18 polytechnics, 9 agricultural schools, 6 schools of economics, 10 teachers' training colleges and 11 medical schools) with 343,400 students and 58,398 teaching staff.

In 1984 administration of schools was transferred from central to local government.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 710 hospitals (including 43 mental hospitals) with 249,000 beds, 6,562 dispensaries and 3,307 health centres. There were 77,300 doctors and 17,600 dentists.

**Social Security.** In 1984, 76,955m. złotys were paid in family allowances and 77,830m. złotys in sick pay. In 1987 2.21m. retirement pensions were paid (monthly average 18,808 złotys), 2.05m. disability pensions (14,236 złotys), 951,000 dependants' pensions (14,107 złotys) and 1.2m. farmers' retirement pensions (11,598 złotys).

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Poland in Great Britain (47 Portland Pl., London, W1N 3AG)

*Ambassador:* Dr Zbigniew Gertych

Of Great Britain in Poland (Aleje Roz No. 1, Warsaw)

*Ambassador:* S. J. Barrett, CMG.

Of Poland in the USA (2640 16th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Jan Kinast.

Of the USA in Poland (Aleje Ujazdowskie 29/31, Warsaw)

*Ambassador:* John R. Davis, Jr.

Of Poland to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Eugeniusz Noworyta.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistical Office, Warsaw (Wawelska 1-3), publishes *Rocznik statystyczny* (annual, 1930-39; 1947-); *Concise Statistical Yearbook of Poland* (1959-); *Poland: Statistical Data*. (annual, 1977-); *Statystyka Polski* (irreg., 1947-); *Biuletyn statystyczny* (monthly, 1957-).

*Constitution of the Polish People's Republic.* Warsaw, 1964

Ascherson, N., *The Struggles for Poland.* London, 1987

Ash, T. G., *The Polish Revolution: Solidarity 1980-82.* London, 1983

Åslund, A., *Private Enterprise in Eastern Europe: the Non-Agricultural Private Sector in Poland and the GDR, 1945-83.* London, 1985

Beneš, V. L. and Pounds, N. G. J., *Poland.* London, 1970

Bielasiak, J. and Simon, M. D. (eds.) *Polish Politics: Edge of the Abyss.* New York, 1984

Brandys, K., *Warsaw Diary 1978-1981.* New York, 1984

Bromke, A., *Poland: the Protracted Crisis.* Oakville (Ontario), 1983.—*The Meaning and Uses of Polish History.* New York, 1987

Brumberg, A., *Poland: Genesis of a Revolution.* New York, 1983

Bulas, K. and others, *English-Polish and Polish-English Dictionary.* 2 vols. The Hague, 1959

Burda, A., *Parliament of the Polish People's Republic.* Wrocław, 1978

Davies, N., *Poland, Past and Present: A Select Bibliography of Works in English.* Newtonville, 1977.—*God's Playground: A History of Poland.* 2 vols. OUP, 1981.—*Heart of Europe: a Short History of Poland.* OUP, 1984

De Weydenthal, J. B., et al. *The Polish Drama, 1980-1982.* Lexington, 1983

Dziewanowski, M. K., *Poland in the Twentieth Century.* Columbia Univ. Press, 1977

Eringer, R., *Strike for Freedom: The Story of Lech Wałęsa and Polish Solidarity.* New York, 1982

Gięsztor, A., and others, *History of Poland.* 2nd ed. Warsaw, 1979

Halecki, O., *A History of Poland.* 4th ed. London, 1983

Jaruzelski, W., *Jaruzelski, Prime Minister of Poland: Selected Speeches.* Oxford, 1985

Kanka, A. G., *Poland: An Annotated Bibliography of Books in English.* New York, 1988

Karpiński, J., *Countdown: the Polish Upheavals of 1956, 1968, 1970, 1976, 1980.* NY, 1982

Kieniewicz, S. (ed.) *History of Poland.* 2nd ed. Warsaw, 1979

Landau, Z., *The Polish Economy in the Twentieth Century.* London, 1985

Leslie, R. F., (ed.) *The History of Poland since 1863.* CUP, 1980

Lewanski, R. C., *Poland.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Lipski, J. J., *KOR: a History of the Workers' Defense Committee in Poland, 1976-1981.* Univ. of California Press, 1985

- Michnik, A., *Letters from Prison and Other Essays*. London, 1985
- Misztal, B., (ed.) *Poland after Solidarity*. New Brunswick, 1985
- Polonsky, A. and Drukier, B., *The Beginnings of Communist Rule in Poland*. London, 1980
- Pomian-Srzednicki, M., *Religious Change in Contemporary Poland: Secularization and Politics*. London, 1982
- Potel, J.-I., *The Summer Before the Frost: Solidarity in Poland*. London, 1982
- Preibisz, J. M., (ed.) *Polish Dissident Publications: an Annotated Bibliography*. New York, 1982
- Raina P., *Independent Social Movements in Poland*. London, 1981.—*Poland 1981: Towards Social Renewal*. London, 1985
- Ruane, K., *The Polish Challenge*. London, 1982
- Sanford, G., *Polish Communism in Crisis*. London, 1983
- Singer, D., *The Road to Gdańsk: Poland and the USSR*. New York and London, 1981
- Staniszki, J., *Poland's Self-Limiting Revolution*. Princeton, 1984
- Steven, S., *The Poles*. London, 1982
- Szczypiorski, A., *The Polish Ordeal: The View from Within*. London, 1982
- Taras, R., *Poland: Socialist State, Rebellious Nation*. Boulder, 1986
- Wałęsa, L., *A Path of Hope*. London, 1989
- Wedel, J., *The Private Poland*. New York, 1986
- Weschler, L., *Solidarity: Poland in the Season of its Passion*. NY, 1982
- Who's Who in Poland*. New York, 1983
- Wielka Encyklopedia Powszechna*. 13 vols. Warsaw, 1962–70
- Woodall, J., (ed.) *Policy and Politics in Contemporary Poland: Reform, Failure and Crisis*. London, 1982
- National Library*: Biblioteka Narodowa, Rakowiecka 6, Warsaw.



# PORTUGAL

Capital: Lisbon

Population: 10.29m. (1986)

GNP per capita: US\$2,230 (1986)

## República Portuguesa

**HISTORY.** Portugal has been an independent state since the 12th century, apart from one period of Spanish rule (1580–1640). The monarchy was deposed on 5 Oct. 1910 and a republic established.

A *coup* on 28 May 1926 established a military provisional government from 1 June. A corporatist constitution was adopted on 19 March 1933 under which a civil dictatorship governed until a fresh *coup* on 25 April 1974 established a Junta of National Salvation.

Following an attempted revolt on 11 March 1975, the Junta was dissolved and a Supreme Revolutionary Council formed which ruled until 25 April 1976 when constitutional government was resumed; the SRC was renamed the Council of the Revolution, becoming a consultative body until its abolition in 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mainland Portugal is bounded north and east by Spain and south and west by the Atlantic ocean. The Atlantic archipelagoes of the Azores and of Madeira form autonomous but integral parts of the republic, which has a total area of 91,985 sq. km (35,516 sq. miles) and census populations:

1940	7,755,423	1960	8,889,392	1981	9,833,014
1950	8,510,240	1970	8,648,369		

The areas and populations of the districts and Autonomous Regions are:

		Census	Estimate			Census	Estimate
Districts:	sq. km	1981	31 Dec. 1986	Districts:	sq. km	1981	31 Dec. 1986
Aveiro	2,808	622,988	660,500	Porto	2,295	1,562,287	1,657,700
Beja	10,225	188,420	179,900	Santarém	6,747	454,123	460,800
Braga	2,673	708,924	763,900	Setúbal	5,064	658,326	761,000
Bragança	6,608	184,252	185,600	Viana de			
Castelo				Castelo	2,225	256,814	265,500
Branco	6,674	234,230	226,000	Vila Real	4,328	264,381	264,100
Coimbra	3,947	436,324	446,200	Viseu	5,007	423,648	424,800
Evora	7,393	180,277	175,600	Total			
Faro	4,960	323,534	339,200	mainland	88,941	9,336,760	9,707,000
Guarda	5,518	205,631	198,300	Autonomous			
Leiria	3,515	420,229	435,200	Regions:			
Lisboa	2,761	2,069,467	2,124,100	Azores	2,247	243,410	253,500
Portalegre	6,065	142,905	138,600	Madeira	794	252,844	269,500

At the 1981 census, 29.7% of the population was urban (living in towns of 10,000 and more) and 48.2% were male. The chief cities at 31 Dec. 1984 (and census, 1981) are Lisbon, the capital 807,937 (817,627) and Porto 327,368 (330,199); other towns are Amadora 95,518 (93,663), Setúbal 77,885 (76,812), Coimbra 74,616 (71,782), Braga 63,033 (63,771), Vila Nova de Gaia 62,469 (60,962), Barreiro 50,863 (50,745), Funchal 44,111 (48,638), Almada 42,607 (41,468), Queluz 42,241 (41,112), Odivelas 38,322 (38,546), Evora 34,851 (34,072), Agualva-Cacem 34,341 (34,041) and Oeiras 32,529 (32,046).

The Azores islands lie in the mid-Atlantic ocean, between 1,200 and 1,600 km west of Lisbon. They are divided into 3 widely separated groups with clear channels between, São Miguel (747 sq. km) together with Santa Maria (97 sq. km) being the most easterly; about 100 miles north-west of them lies the central cluster of Terceira (397 sq. km), Graciosa (61 sq. km), São Jorge (238 sq. km), Pico (433 sq. km) and Faial (172 sq. km); still another 150 miles to the north-west are Flores (143 sq. km) and Corvo (17 sq. km), the latter being the most isolated and primitive of the islands. São Miguel contains over half the total population of the archipelago.

Madeira comprises the island of Madeira (740 sq. km), containing the capital, Funchal; the smaller island of Porto Santo (42 sq. km), lying 46 km. to the north-east of Madeira; and two groups of uninhabited islets, Ilhas Desertas being 20 km. south-east of Funchal and Ilhas Selvagens near the Canaries.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live-births</i>	<i>Still-births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Emigrants</i>
1982	151,029	1,894	73,660	6,769	92,551	10,276
1983	144,327	1,791	74,417	7,837	96,150	7,096
1984	142,805	1,664	69,875	7,034	97,227	6,556
1985	130,492	1,510	68,461	8,988	97,339	7,149
1986	126,748	1,390	69,271	8,411	95,828	6,253

In 1986 the births included 65,427 boys and 61,321 girls; deaths, 50,036 males and 45,792 females. In 1986, 924 emigrants went to France, 2,704 to USA and 868 to Australia.

**CLIMATE.** Because of westerly winds and the effect of the Gulf Stream, the climate ranges from the cool, damp Atlantic type in the north to a warmer and drier Mediterranean type in the south. July and Aug. are virtually rainless everywhere. Inland areas in the north have greater temperature variation, with continental winds blowing from the interior. Lisbon. Jan. 52°F (11°C), July 72°F (22°C). Annual rainfall 27.4" (686 mm). Porto. Jan. 48°F (8.9°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,151 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution, replacing that of 1976, was approved by the Assembly of the Republic (by 197 votes to 40) on 12 Aug. 1982 and promulgated in Sept. It abolished the (military) Council of the Revolution and reduced the role of the President of the Republic.

Portugal is a sovereign, unitary republic with all citizens possessing fundamental rights and duties before the law. Executive power is vested in the President of the Republic, directly elected for a 5-year term (for a maximum of 2 consecutive terms). Presidents since 1926:

Marshal António Oscar de Fragoso Carmona,  
29 Nov. 1926–18 April 1951 (died).

Dr Antonio de Oliveira Salazar (acting),  
18 April 1951–22 July 1951.

Marshal Francisco Higino Craveiro Lopez,  
22 July 1951–9 Aug. 1958.

Rear-Adm. Américo de Deus Rodrigues  
Tomás, 9 Aug. 1958–25 April 1974.  
(deposed).

Gen. Antonio Sebastião Ribeiro de Spínola,  
25 April 1974–30 Sept. 1974 (resigned).

Gen. Francisco da Costa Gomes, 30 Sept.  
1974–14 July 1976.

Gen. Antonio Ramalho Eanes, 14 July  
1976–9 March 1986.

*President of the Republic:* Mario Soares, elected 16 Feb. 1986 (took office 9 March 1986).

The President appoints a Prime Minister and, upon the latter's nomination, other members of the Council of Ministers, as well as Secretaries and Under-Secretaries of State, who are outside the Council.

The Social Democrat government was composed in Dec. 1988:

*Prime Minister:* Aníbal Cavaco Silva.

*Deputy Prime Minister, Defence:* Eurico de Melo. *Minister of State and Justice:* Fernando Nogueira. *Parliamentary Affairs:* Antonio Capucho. *Finance:* Miguel Riberio Cadilhe. *Planning and Territorial Administration:* Luís Valente de Oliveira. *Interior:* José Silveira Godinho. *Foreign Affairs:* João de Deus Pinheiro. *Agriculture, Fisheries:* Alvaro Barreto. *Industry and Energy:* Luis Mira Amaral. *Education:* Roberto Carneiro. *Public Works and Communication:* João Oliveira Martins. *Health:* Leonor Beleza. *Labour and Social Security:* José Silva Peneda. *Trade and Tourism:* Joaquim Ferreira do Amaral. *Youth:* Antonio Couto dos Santos.

There is a unicameral legislature, the Assembly of the Republic, comprising 250 deputies elected for 4 years by universal adult suffrage under a system of proportional representation. At the General Election of 19 July 1987, there were 148 seats won by the *Partido Social Democrata* (PSD), 60 by the *Partido Socialista* (PS), 7

by the Democratic Renewal Party, 31 by the Communist Party and 4 by the Christian Democrats.

*National flag:* Vertical green and red, with the red of double width, and over all on the dividing line the national arms.

*National anthem:* A Portuguesa (words by Lopes de Mendonça, 1890; tune by Alfredo Keil).

*Local government:* Since 1976, the archipelagoes of the Azores and of Madeira are Autonomous Regions with their own legislatures and governments. Pending the formation of other regional governments, Continental Portugal is divided into 18 districts. Regions and districts are divided into 305 municipal authorities (*concelhos*) and sub-divided into 4,050 parishes. Each level is governed by an assembly elected by direct universal suffrage under a system of proportional representation, with an executive body responsible to the assembly.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is compulsory for 12–15 months in the Army and 18–20 months in the Navy and Air Force. Reserves for all services number about 190,000.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 brigade, 3 cavalry regiments, 1 armoured regiment, 14 infantry regiments, 1 commando regiment and 3 independent battalions, 1 special forces brigade, 3 field, 1 air-defence and 1 coast artillery regiments, 2 engineer and 1 signals regiments and 1 regiment of military police. Equipment includes 65 M-48A5 main battle tanks and 132 M113 armed personnel carriers. Strength (1989) 44,000 (including 35,000 conscripts). Security forces are National Republic Guard (17,000), Public Security Police, 17,000 and the Border Guard (8,300).

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 3 small diesel-powered patrol submarines, 4 frigates, 10 light vessels, 4 coastal minesweepers, 17 patrol launches, 1 sail training ship, 3 surveying vessels, 1 fleet tanker, 1 logistic support ship, 3 landing craft, 13 small landing craft, 2 training yachts and 3 tugs. The building programme includes 3 frigates. Navy personnel in 1989 totalled 16,000 officers and men including 2,600 marines.

**Air Force.** Formed in 1912, the Air Force has been independent since 1952, when it was combined with the naval air service and given equal status with the Army and Navy. In 1989, it had a strength of about 13,600 officers and men.

Equipment comprises 2 strike squadrons with 40 A-7P Corsair IIs; 2 squadrons of G.91Rs for ground attack; 1 squadron of P-3P Orion maritime patrol aircraft now forming; 1 squadron of 5 C-130H Hercules and 4 squadrons of CASA 212 Aviocars for transport and search and rescue operations; 32 Cessna 337 Sky-masters and a force of Puma and Alouette III helicopters. Other aircraft in service include Chipmunk piston-engined trainers, T-37C jet basic trainers, T-33, T-38A Talon and G.91T jet advanced trainers. Delivery of 18 Epsilon trainers (to replace the Chipmunks) began early in 1989.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Portugal is a member of UN, the European Communities, OECD, NATO and the Council of Europe.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue in 1988, 1,694m.; expenditure, 2,170m. (in escudos).

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *escudo* of 100 *centavos*, which contains 0.06651 gramme of fine gold. It was stabilized on 9 June 1931, and the paper currency re-linked to gold when the notes of the Bank of Portugal became payable in gold or its equivalent in foreign currency. 1,000 *escudos* is called a *conto*.

In 1986 there were bank notes of 5,000, 1,000, 500 and 100 *escudos*; cupro-nickel coins of 50, 25, 20, 5 and 2½ *escudos*; nickel-brass coins of 1 *escudo*; bronze coins of 1 and ½ *escudo*. In March 1989, £1 = 262.20 *escudos*; US\$1 = 152.35 *escudos*.



**Banking.** Since 1931, the central bank for Portugal and the only bank of issue for the country (including the Azores and Madeira) has been the Banco de Portugal, founded 19 Nov. 1846 and nationalized on 13 Sept. 1974. Its capital is fixed at 200m. escudos. All other Portuguese banks and insurance companies were nationalized on 14 March 1975 but from Feb. 1984 new private banks were allowed to operate.

The National Development Bank began operations on 4 Jan. 1960. Its total capital (1985) is 10,500m. escudos.

In 1986 there were 27 banks operating in Portugal: 21 commercial banks, 2 investment banks and 4 savings banks. In Feb. 1987 commercial banks' total credits were 1,791,427m. escudos and deposits 3,199,726m. escudos; investment banks' total credits 250,659m. escudos and deposits 141,124m. escudos; savings banks' total credits 1,125,148m. escudos and deposits 1,663,658m. escudos.

There are also 9 foreign banks, the Bank of Brazil, Lloyds Bank International Ltd., Manufactures Hanover Trust, Chase Manhattan, Citibank, Crédit Franco-Portugais, Barclays Bank International Ltd, Banque Nationale de Paris and General Bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is the legal standard. The arroba (of 14.69 kg) is sometimes used locally.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Total production of electrical power in 1985 was 19,103m. kwh.; the installed capacity totalled 6,831,753 kva. of which 3,243,074 was hydro-electric. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Portugal possesses considerable mineral wealth. Production in tonnes:

	1983	1984	1985		1983	1984	1985
Coal	185,228	194,856	233,414	Gold (refined)	0.199	0.193	0.229
Cupriferous pyrites	279,960	334,371	355,519	Uranium	122	135	139
Tin ores	525	453	379	Wolframite	2,010	2,549	2,977
Kaolin	101,594	104,388	104,055				

Uranium mining commenced in Aug. 1979. Annual production, 115 tonnes; reserves, 7,000 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** About 30% of the workforce is engaged in agriculture. The following figures show the area (in 1,000 hectares) and production (in 1,000 tonnes) of the chief crops:

	1984		1985		1986	
<i>Crop</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Quantity</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Quantity</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Quantity</i>
Wheat	291.1	465.6	282.0	394.8	315.0	499.7
Maize	251.1	491.1	240.3	530.8	252.7	618.4
Oats	194.1	151.9	190.0	118.9	194.1	152.7
Barley	83.7	91.1	85.9	65.2	87.1	89.6
Rye	130.0	103.4	122.7	96.9	124.4	99.9
Rice	29.9	134.0	30.3	146.5	32.3	149.4
Dried beans	211.2	42.1	194.9	43.8	198.4	44.4
Potatoes	122.6	1,038.0	125.6	1,135.9	118.8	1,067.3

Wine production (in hectolitres), 1986, 7.6m.; olive oil (hectolitres), 411,000 (estimate). In 1986, 68,303 tonnes of port wine were exported.

Livestock (1987). 29,000 horses, 90,000 mules, 175,000 asses, 1,087,000 cattle, 745,000 goats, 5.15m. sheep and 2.92m. pigs.

**Forestry.** Forest area covers 3m. hectares, of which 1.38m. are pine, 680,390 cork oak, 534,370 other oak, 243,180 eucalyptus, 30,230 chestnut and 160,890 other species.

Portugal surpasses the rest of the world in the production of cork; 103,543 tonnes in 1985. Most of it is exported crude. Production of resin was 107,586 tonnes in 1985; more than two-thirds are exported.

**Fisheries.** The fishing industry for the continent and adjacent isles is of importance. At 31 July 1986 there were 40,058 men and boys employed, with 11,120 boats. The sardine catch, 1986, was 103,832 tonnes valued at 3,329,315 contos;

The most important centres of the sardine industry are at Matosinhos, Figueira di Foz, Peniche, Setúbal, Portimão and Olhão.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industrial growth rate, 1983, 0.6%; manufacturing provided 30% of GDP and employed about 25% of the workforce. The main groups are textiles, shoes, leather goods, wood and cork products and ceramics; these are produced mainly by small companies. Nationalized steel, oil and engineering industries employed about 5% of the industrial workforce in 1983.

**Trade Unions.** 331 unions had in 1976 a membership of 1,436,142.

**Commerce.** Imports for consumption and exports (exclusive of coin and bullion and re-exports) for calendar years, in 1 m. escudos:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	899,340	1,160,633	1,302,737	1,412,579	3,500,000
Exports	508,568	760,580	967,404	1,076,079	2,600,000

The principal exports in 1985 were clothing (18% by value), textile yarns and fabrics (12%), machinery and transport equipment (6%), petroleum products (4%), chemicals (7%), cork and cork products (4%), footwear (5%), pulp and waste paper (5%) and wine (3%).

The distribution of the imports and exports (in 1 m. escudos):

<i>From or to</i>	<i>Imports (c.i.f.)</i>			<i>Exports (f.o.b.)</i>		
	1984	1985	1986	1984	1985	1986
Angola	5,550	13,984	11,196	22,721	26,432	13,785
Belgium	24,151	28,101	41,682	25,138	34,510	37,037
France	91,699	104,589	145,157	94,587	122,715	164,234
Germany, Fed.						
Rep. of	117,916	148,497	205,420	103,957	133,328	158,627
Italy	54,632	66,908	114,487	32,765	38,439	42,915
Mozambique	1,478	1,018	...	5,919	3,680	3,073
Netherlands	40,169	41,375	57,053	44,869	66,907	72,232
Spain	82,807	95,685	157,059	33,527	39,598	71,681
UK	77,802	97,577	108,281	116,857	141,144	154,010
USA	156,185	126,563	100,592	67,248	89,387	75,557

Total trade between Portugal (excluding the Azores and Madeira) and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	644,520	695,744	768,470	847,980	928,015
Exports and re-exports from UK	385,799	439,499	472,078	699,915	810,537

**Tourism.** Tourism is of increasing importance for the invisible balance of payments. In 1986 there were 13,056,871 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads** (1985). There were 18,815 km of road. There were registered in continental Portugal in 1986, 2,365,645 motor vehicles (excluding 106,925 motor cycles, 153,326 tractors and vehicles used by the armed forces).

**Railways.** In 1986 total railway length was 3,588 km (1,668 mm and metre gauges), of which 458 km of broad-gauge was electrified. In 1987, 5,907m. passenger-km were carried and 1,615m. tonne-km of merchandise transported.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Portela (Lisbon), Pedras Rubras (Porto), Faro (Algarve), Santa Maria (Azores) and Funchal (Madeira). Services connect Lisbon with most major centres in North and South America, Western Europe and Africa. Airlines in 1985 carried 2m. passengers and (1986) 44,163 tonnes of freight. The national airline changed its name to Air Portugal in 1979.

**Shipping.** In 1985, 12,539 vessels of 57.6m. tons entered the ports (continental and islands), of which 3,791 (14.2m. tons) were Portuguese, 305 (1.7m. tons) British

and 606 (2.1 m. tons) Spanish. In 1984 the merchant marine consisted of 91 transport vessels of 1,396,051 gross tons.

**Post and Broadcasting** (1985). The number of telegraph offices was 1,564. The State owned 7,693,529 km of telephone line through the *Telefones de Lisboa e Porto* (nationalized in 1977). Number of telephones was 1,835,331 (1985).

*Radio Difusão Portuguesa* broadcasts 3 programmes on medium-waves and on FM as well as 3 regional services. *Radiotelevisão Portuguesa* broadcasts 2 commercial TV programmes. *Radio Renascença* is a commercial, nationwide network. In addition there are 6 local, commercial stations, operating on medium-waves. Radio Trans Europe is a high-powered short-wave station, retransmitting programmes of different broadcasting organizations, e.g., IBRA, Radio Canada and Deutsche Welle. Radio Free Europe also has relay facilities on short-waves in Portugal. Number of receivers: Radio (1984), 2,155,000; TV (1986), 1,618,391.

**Cinemas** (1986). There were 373 cinemas with a seating capacity of 178,957.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 33 daily newspapers with a combined circulation of 173,327m.; 15 of these, with a combined circulation of 104,273m., appeared in Lisbon.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Portuguese law distinguishes civil (including commercial) and penal, labour, military, administrative and fiscal branches, having low courts and high courts.

The republic is divided for civil and penal cases into 217 *comarcas*; in every comarca there is at least one court or tribunal. In the comarca of Lisbon there are 39 lower sub divisional courts (*juízo*) (22 for criminal procedure and 17 for civil or commercial cases); in the comarca of Oporto there are 20 such courts (11 for criminal and 9 for civil or commercial cases); at Braga, Coimbra, Loures, Setúbal, Sintra and Vila Nova de Gaia there are 4 functioning courts; at Almada, Cascais, Funchal, Guimarães, Leiria, Matosinhos, Oeiras, Santarém, Torres Vedras, Viana do Castelo, Vila do Conde, Vila da Feira and Viseu there are 3 courts; 22 comarcas have 2 courts each. There are 4 courts of appeal (*Tribunal de Relação*) at Lisbon, Coimbra, Évora and Oporto, and a Supreme Court in Lisbon (*Supremo Tribunal de Justiça*).

Capital punishment was abolished completely in the Constitution of 1976.

The prison population as at 31 Dec. 1983 was 6,633.

**Religion.** In 1981, 94.5% of the population were Roman Catholic, but there is freedom of worship, both in public and private, with the exception of creeds incompatible with morals and the life and physical integrity of the people.

**Education.** Compulsory education has been in force since 1911. In 1984–85 there were 10,448 public primary schools with 837,760 pupils and 40,773 teachers. In 1984–85 private elementary schools numbered 668 with 61,611 pupils and 2,882 teachers. Basic preparatory schools numbered 1,918 with 375,516 pupils and 31,248 teachers. In 1984–85 there were 499 secondary schools, with 604,727 pupils and 45,559 teachers. There were also 27 schools which taught art activities (cinema, music and theatre) with 14,749 students. There are 13 universities, of which 8 are in Lisbon: the University of Lisbon (founded 1911), the Technical University (1930), the private Catholic University (1968), the New University (1973), the Free University (1977) and the International University (1984); the other six are Coimbra (founded 1290), Porto (1911), Aveiro (1973), Minho, at Braga (1974), Évora (1979), Azores, at Ponta Delgado (1980) and Algarve, at Faro (1983). Including other colleges, there were 102,837 students in higher education in 1984–85 with 10,745 teaching staff.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 227 hospitals, 363 health centres, 25,696 doctors, 312 dentists, 597 stomatologists, 4,285 pharmacists and 25,199 nursing personnel.



## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Portugal in Great Britain (11 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8PP)

*Ambassador:* Bernardo Sepúlveda (accredited 17 March 1989).

Of Great Britain in Portugal (35-37 Rua de S. Domingos à Lapa, Lisbon)

*Ambassador:* M. K. O. Simpson-Orlebar, CMG.

Of Portugal in the USA (2125 Kalorama Rd., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* João Eduardo M. Pereira Bastos.

Of the USA in Portugal (Ave. das Forças Armadas, 1600 Lisbon)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Portugal to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* João de Matos Proença.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Instituto Nacional de Estatística (Avenida Dr António José de Almeida, Lisbon) was set up in 1935 in succession to the Direcção-Geral de Estatística. The Centro de Estudos Económicos and the Centro de Estudos Demográficos were affiliated to the Instituto in 1944. The main publications are:

*Anuário Estatístico. Annuaire statistique.* Annual, from 1875

*Estatísticas do Comércio Externo.* 2 vols. Annual from 1967 (replacing *Comércio Externo*, 1936-66, and *Estatística Comercial*, 1865-1935)

*Censo da População de Portugal.* 1864 ff. Decennial (latest ed. 1972)

*Estatística da Organização Corporativa.* 1938-49. *Estatísticas da Organização Corporativa e Previdência Social.* 1950 ff.

*Estatísticas das Finanças, Públicas and Estatísticas Nometárias.* 1969 ff. (replacing *Estatísticas Financeiras.* 1947-68 and *Situação Bancária.* 1919-46)

*Estatísticas Agrícolas. Statistique Agricole.* 1943-64; replaced by *Estatísticas Agrícolas e Alimentares.* From 1965. Annual

*Estatísticas Industriais.* 1967 ff. (replacing *Estatística Industrial. Statistique Industrielle.* 1943-66)

*Estatísticas Demográficas.* From 1967 (replacing *Anuário Demográfico.* 1929-66)

*Boletim Mensal do Instituto Nacional de Estatística.* Monthly since 1929

*Centro de Estudos Económicos. Revista.* 1945 ff.

*Centro de Estudos Demográficos. Revista.* 1945 ff.

*Estatísticas das Contribuições e Impostos.* Annual from 1967 (replacing *Anuário Estatístico das Contribuições e Impostos.* 1936-66)

*Estatísticas da Cultura, Reveio e Resporto.* 1979 ff.

*Estatísticas da Educação.* 1940 ff.

*Estatísticas da Justiça.* 1968 ff. (replacing *Estatísticas Judiciária.* 1936-66)

*Estatísticas das Sociedades.* 1939 ff.

*Estatísticas da Saúde.* 1969 ff.

*Estatísticas do Turismo.* 1969 ff.

*Estatísticas do Energia.* 1969 ff.

Azevedo, Gonzaga de, *História de Portugal.* 6 vols. Lisbon, 1935-44

Ferreira, H. G. and Marshall, M. W., *Portugal's Revolution: Ten Years On.* CUP, 1986

Ferreira, J. A., *Dicionário inglês-português.* 2 vols. Porto, 1948

Gallagher, T., *Portugal: A Twentieth Century Interpretation.* Manchester Univ. Press, 1983

Graham, L. S. and Wheeler, D. L., (eds.) *In Search of Modern Portugal: The Revolution and its Consequences.* Univ. of Wisconsin Press, 1983

Harvey R., *Portugal: Birth of a Democracy.* London, 1978

Robertson, I., *Blue Guide: Portugal.* London, 1982

Rogers, F. M., *Atlantic Islanders of the Azores and Madeiras.* North Quincy, 1979

Taylor, J. L., *Portuguese-English Dictionary.* London, 1959

Unwin, P. T. H., *Portugal.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional, Campo Grande, Lisbon. *Director:* A. H. C. Marques.

## MACAO

**HISTORY.** Macao was visited by Portuguese traders from 1513 and became a Portuguese colony in 1557; it remains a Portuguese-administered territory by virtue of a Sino-Portuguese treaty of 1 Dec. 1887. It was an Overseas Province of Portugal, 1961-74. Discussions on the future of Macao were taking place with the

People's Republic of China in 1986-87 and in 1999 Macao will be handed to China.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The territory, which lies at the mouth of the Canton (Pearl) River, comprises a peninsula (6.05 sq. km) connected by a narrow isthmus to the People's Republic of China, on which is built the city of Nome de Deus de Macao, and the islands of Taipa (3.78 sq. km), linked to Macao by a 2-km bridge, and Colôane (7.09 sq. km) linked to Taipa by a 2-km causeway (total area, 16.92 sq. km (6 sq. miles). The population (Census, 1981) was 261,680, Estimate (1986) 426,400, of which 51.7% are males and 92.6% live in the city of Macao. 5.1% on floating homes and 2.3% on the islands. The official languages are Portuguese and Chinese. Cantonese is used by virtually the entire population.

Vital statistics (1986): Births, 7,477; marriages, 2,845; deaths, 1,324.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** By agreement with Beijing in 1974, Macao is a Chinese territory under Portuguese administration. An 'organic statute' was published on 17 Feb. 1976. It defined the territory as a collective entity, *pessoa colectiva*, with internal legislative authority which, while remaining subject to Portuguese constitutional laws, would otherwise enjoy administrative, economic and financial autonomy. The Governor is appointed by the Portuguese President, who also appoints up to 5 Secretaries-Adjunct on the Governor's nomination. The Legislative Assembly of 17 deputies, chosen for a 3-year term, comprises 6 members directly elected by universal suffrage, 6 indirectly elected by economic, cultural and social bodies and 5 appointed by the Governor.

*Governor:* Carlos Melancia.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1986, revenue was 1,567,000,000 *patacas* and expenditure 1,435,000,000 *patacas*.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *pataca*, of 100 *avos*. In March 1989, £1 = 13.93 *patacas*; US\$1 = 8.09 *patacas*.

**Banking.** The bank of issue is the Instituto Emissor de Macau. Commercial business is handled (1986) by 23 banks with 95 branches in Macao, 9 of which are local (with 81.5% of total resident deposits and 67.4% of total domestic credit at 31 Dec. 1984) and 14 foreign (including 4 offshore banking units). Total banks' deposits, June 1985, 8,508.5m. *patacas*.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Textile and garment manufacturing forms the basis of local industry. In 1983, it represented about 65% of industrial production.

**Labour.** The estimated total labour force in 1984 was 178,000, 44% of whom were employed in manufacturing, 33% in commerce and services and 8% in construction.

**Commerce.** The trade, mostly transit, is handled by Chinese merchants. Imports, in 1986, were 7,318.2m. *patacas* and exports, 8,630.2m. *patacas*.

In 1986, 46% of imports came from Hong Kong and 20% from China. 33% of exports went to USA, 36% to EEC (mainly Federal Republic of Germany, France and UK); clothing and textiles accounted for 69.7% of exports, toys 11.8%.

Total trade between Macao and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	40,508	36,509	45,286	45,896	41,116
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,034	1,595	6,522	5,617	4,348

**Tourism.** There were 4,238,269 visitors in 1986. 81.7% were from Hong Kong.

## COMMUNICATIONS.

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 90 km of roads. In 1986 there were 21,710 passenger cars and 2,576 commercial vehicles.

**Shipping.** Macao is served by Portuguese, British and Dutch steamship lines. In 1983, 27,686 vessels of 9.14m. gross tons entered the port. Regular services connect Macao with Hong Kong, 65 km to the north-east.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The territory has 1,577 km of telephone line (47,591 instruments in 1986). One government and 1 private commercial radio station are in operation on medium-waves broadcasting in Portuguese and Chinese. Number of receivers (1977), 70,000. Macao receives television broadcasts from Hong Kong and in 1984 a public bilingual TV station began operating. There were (1979) 50,000 receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1986, there were 11 newspapers (5 in Portuguese and 6 in Chinese) with a circulation of 114,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a court of First Instance, from which there is appeal to the Court of Appeal and then the Supreme Court, both in Lisbon.

In 1986 there were 4,414 cases of crimes known to the police, of which 3,224 were against property. There were 25,577 cases in courts pending on 1 Jan. and presented during 1986, of which 3,344 were in district court, 19,089 in criminal court, 250 in juvenile court and 3,109 in administrative court. At 31 Dec. 1986 there were 416 prisoners, and 22 addicts in the centre for rehabilitation of drugs-abusers.

**Religion.** The majority of the Chinese population are Buddhists. About 6% are Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1985-86 education was provided at 63 kindergartens (14,488 pupils; 413 teachers), 74 primary schools (31,669; 1,080), 31 secondary schools (13,849; 769), 3 special schools (53; 13), 2 teacher-training schools (52; 13), 5 higher schools (5,840; 75) and 83 adult schools (23,430; 534). The University of East Asia, established in 1981 on Taipa, had 1,165 students in 1983.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 2 hospitals with 1,216 beds; there were 179 doctors and (1982) 26 pharmacists, 10 midwives and 315 nursing personnel.

### Further Reading

*Anuário Estatístico de Macau.* Macao, Annual

*Macao in Figures.* Macao, Annual.

*Education Survey, 1984-85.* Macao, 1986

Brazão, E., *Macao.* Lisbon, 1957



# QATAR

*Capital:* Doha

*Population:* 371,863 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$22,940 (1984)

## Dawlat Qatar

**HISTORY.** The State of Qatar declared its independence from Britain on 3 Sept. 1971, ending the Treaty of 3 Nov. 1916 which was replaced by a Treaty of friendship between the 2 countries.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The State of Qatar, which includes the whole of the Qatar peninsula, extends on the landward side from Khor al Odeid to the boundaries of the Saudi Arabian province of Hasa. The territory includes a number of islands in the coastal waters of the peninsula, the most important of which is Halul, the storage and export terminal for the offshore oilfields. Area, 11,437 sq. km; population census (1981) 244,534; estimate in 1987 371,863. In 1987 only 25% were Qatari, with a large majority coming from Pakistan and India.

The capital is Doha (population 1986, 217,294), which is the main port. Other towns are Dukhan, the centre of oil production, Umm Said, oil-terminal of Qatar, and Ruwais, Wakra, Al-Khour, Umm Salal Mohammad and Umm-Bab.

Vital statistics (1987): Live births, 9,919; deaths, 788; marriages, 1,349; divorces, 337.

The official language is Arabic.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is hot and humid. Doha. Jan. 62°F (16.7°C), July 98°F (36.7°C). Annual rainfall 2.5'' (62 mm).

**RULER.** *The Amir:* HH Shaikh Khalifa bin Hamad Al-Thani, assumed power on 22 Feb. 1972. On 31 May 1977, HH Shaikh Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani was appointed Heir Apparent of the State of Qatar, and the portfolio of Minister of Defence was added to his existing responsibility of Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces.

*Minister of State for Foreign Affairs:* Shaikh Ahmad bin Saif Al-Thani.

There is no Parliament, but the Council of Ministers is assisted by a 30-member nominated Advisory Council.

*Local government:* Qatar is divided into 9 municipalities.

*Flag:* Maroon, with white serrated border on hoist.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 Royal Guard regiment, 1 tank, 3 mechanized infantry, 1 artillery batteries and 1 surface-to-air missile. Equipment includes 24 AMX-30 tanks. Personnel (1989) 6,000.

**Navy.** The Navy has 3 modern French-built fast gunboats, 6 British-built patrol craft and 45 coastal patrol craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 700 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 1 squadron of Mirage F1 fighters and 12 Commando, 14 Gazelle and 6 Super Puma helicopters and 6 Alpha Jet armed trainers and Tigercat surface-to-air missile systems. Personnel (1989) 300.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Qatar is a member of UN and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue (1987-88) 6,745m. riyals; expenditure 12,217m. riyals.

**Currency.** On 13 May 1973 the Qatar *Riyal* (of 100 *dirhams*) was introduced. There are coins of 1, 5, 10, 25 and 50 *dirhams*, and banknotes of 1, 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500 *riyals*. In March 1989, £1 = 6.30 *riyals*, US\$1 = 3.66 *riyals*.

**Banking.** The 14 banks operating in Qatar in 1987, included 5 national banks: Qatar National Bank, The Commercial Bank of Qatar, Doha Bank, the Islamic Bank of Qatar and Al Ahli Bank. There are 3 Arab banks: Arab Bank Limited, Bank of Oman and Al Mashrek Bank. The other 6 foreign banks were: Banque Paribas, the British Bank of the Middle East, Chartered Bank, Bank Saderat Iran, Grindlays Bank and the United Bank. The Qatar National Bank was established in 1965 with capital of 56m. *riyals*, 50% of which was contributed by the Government and 50% by the private sector. Deposits in commercial banks were 1,241.8m. *riyals* by Dec. 1987. Government deposits 331m. *riyals* and private sector's savings deposits 1,240.1m. *riyals* in 1987.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in general use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 4,366m. kwh (generation of Abu Samra not included). Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** On 9 Feb. 1977 Qatar gained national control over its 2 natural resources, oil and gas, with the signing of an agreement with Shell Qatar over the procedure for the transfer to the State of the company's remaining 40% share. A similar agreement had been reached with the Qatar Petroleum Co. on 16 Sept. 1976.

The Qatar General Petroleum Corporation (QGPC) had been established by decree in July 1974 to assume overall responsibility for the State's domestic and foreign oil interests and operations. On 16 Oct. 1976 the Qatar Petroleum Producing Authority (QPPA) was established to serve as the executive arm of the QGPC—but in 1980 it was merged into the QGPC, which now directly oversees oil production through two operational divisions, Onshore and Offshore. The National Oil Distribution Company (NODCO) had a daily throughput capacity of 62,000 bbls a day in 1984 following the opening of a 50,000 bbls a day refinery at Umm Said to supplement the existing refinery.

Production, 1988, 15,200,000 tonnes. Proven reserves (1986) 3,300m. bbls.

**Gas.** The North West Dome oilfield is being developed which contains 12% of the known world gas reserves. Production (1986) 229,100m. cu. ft.

**Water Resources.** Two main desalination stations, at Ras Abu Aboud and Ras Abu Fontas, together have a daily capacity of 167.6m. gallons of potable water. A third station is planned at Al Wasil, with a capacity of 40m. gallons a day. Total water production 1987 (well field and distillate) 17,542m. gallons.

**Agriculture.** 10% of the working population is engaged in agriculture. The Ministry of Agriculture is implementing a long-term policy aimed at ensuring self-sufficiency in agricultural products. The number of farms rose from 120 in 1960 to 841 in 1985. Production (1987) in tonnes: Barley, 2,814; wheat, 206; tomatoes, 5,440; melons and watermelons, 3,437; eggplant, 1,210; lettuce, 729; dates, 5,197; fruits, 2,824; bovine meat, 1,710; poultry meat, 1,500; eggs, 1,379; milk and dairy products, 18,727.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 9,422; camels, 22,481; sheep, 121,316; goats, 86,531; poultry, 1m. horses, 1,031; deer, 3,463.

**Fisheries.** The produce of local fisheries in 1984 met 77.2% of Qatar's requirements. The state-owned Qatar National Fishing Company has 3 trawlers and its refrigeration unit processes 10 tonnes of shrimps a day. Catch (1987) 2,678 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The Qatar Fertiliser Co. plant was opened in 1973 (production, 1987, 682,300 tonnes of ammonia and 733,900 tonnes of urea), the Qatar Steel Co. factory in 1978 (output, 1987, 509,400 tonnes) and the Qatar Petrochemical Co.

plant in 1981, all in the Umm Said industrial zone. Production (1987, in tonnes): Cement, 791,700; lime, 15,000; flour, 26,200; bran, 6,600; organic fertilizer, 27,700; ethylene, 262,700; polyethylene, 173,900 and sulphur, 48,200.

**Labour.** The economically active population (15 years and above) in March 1986 totalled 200,238, of whom 6,283 were engaged in agriculture and fishing, 4,807 in mining and quarrying, 13,914 in manufacturing, 5,266 in electricity, gas and water, 40,523 in building and construction, 21,964 in trade, restaurants and hotels, 7,357 in transport and communications, 3,157 in finance, insurance and real estate and 96,466 in social and community services.

**Commerce.** In 1987 exports totalled 7,224m. riyals, and imports, 4,000m. riyals. Main imports in 1987 (in 1,000 riyals) were machinery and transport equipment (1,666,892), manufactured goods (1,218,517) and food and live animals (706,201). In 1987 Japan provided 16.3% of imports, the UK 16%, the USA 11.9% and the Federal Republic of Germany 7.2%.

Total trade between Qatar and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	28,212	32,607	29,587	13,765	3,888
Exports and re-exports from UK	133,803	142,065	112,143	105,087	88,920

**Tourism.** In 1987 tourists stayed 184,030 nights in hotels.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1981 there were about 800 miles of road. In 1987 there were 145,473 registered vehicles including 2,415 motorcycles.

**Aviation.** Gulf Air (owned equally by Qatar, Bahrain, Oman and the UAE), operates daily services from Bahrain; British Airways, Middle East and about 15 other airlines operate regular international flights from Doha airport. In 1987, 488,511 passengers arrived, 473,387 departed and 425,525 were in transit; 9,501 aircraft arrived and 9,502 departed.

**Shipping.** In 1987, 395 vessels, 1,101,925 tonnes of cargo and 1,854 containers were handled.

**Post and Telecommunications.** There were 25 post offices in Doha and other towns in 1987. Qatar Broadcasting Service, using 12 transmission stations, broadcasts for 41 hours a day in Arabic, English, French and Urdu. Telephone and radio-telephone services connect Qatar with Europe and America; there were 111,000 telephones in 1986. In 1987 there were 75,000 radios and 111,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there were 4 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there were 4 daily and 2 weekly newspapers and 6 magazines.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Judiciary System is administered by the Ministry of Justice which comprises three main departments: Legal affairs, courts of justice and land and real estate register. There are 5 Courts of Justice proclaiming sentences in the name of H. H. the Amir. The Court of Appeal, the Labour Court, the Higher Criminal Court, the Civil Court and the Lower Criminal Court.

All issues related to personal affairs of Moslems under Islamic Law embodied in the Holy Quran and Sunna are decided by Sharia Courts.

**Religion.** The population is almost entirely Moslem.

**Education.** There were, in 1986-87, 33,306 pupils at primary schools, 12,367 pupils at intermediate schools, 7,650 pupils at secondary schools and 856 male students at specialist schools. There were 48 Arab and foreign private schools with 16,291 pupils in 1986-87. The University of Qatar had 5,347 students in 1987-88.



Students abroad (1987–88) numbered 916. In 1986–87, 3,435 men and 2,507 women attended evening classes.

**Health.** There were 3 hospitals (including 1 for women and 1 for gynaecology and obstetrics) with a total of 937 beds in 1987. There were 20 health centres in 1987. In 1987 there were 560 doctors, 62 dentists, 140 pharmacists and 1,418 qualified nurses.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Qatar in Great Britain (27 Chesham Pl., London, SW1X 8HG)

*Ambassador:* Sherida Sa'ad Jubran Al Ka'abi, GCVO (accredited 26 March 1981).

Of Great Britain in Qatar (Doha, Qatar)

*Ambassador:* P. M. Nixon, OBE.

Of Qatar in the USA (600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)

*Ambassador:* Ahmed Abdulla Zaid Al-Mahmoud.

Of the USA in Qatar (Fariq Bin Omran, Doha)

*Ambassador:* Joseph Ghougassian.

Of Qatar to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Hamad Abdel Aziz Al-Kawari.

### Further Reading

*Annual Statistical Abstract.* 8th ed. Doha, 1988

El Mallakh, R., *Qatar: The Development of an Oil Economy.* New York, 1979

Unwin, P. T. H., *Qatar.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982

# ROMANIA

*Capital:* Bucharest

*Population:* 22.8m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,540 (1981)

## Republica Socialistă România

**HISTORY.** 1918 is celebrated as the year of foundation of the 'unitary national Romanian state'. For the history and constitution of Romania from 1859 to 1947, see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1947, pp. 1187-89. On 30 Dec. 1947 King Michael abdicated under Communist pressure and parliament proclaimed the 'People's Republic'.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Romania is bounded north and north-east by the USSR, east by the Black Sea, south by Bulgaria, south-west by Yugoslavia and north-west by Hungary. The area of Romania is 237,500 sq. km (91,699 sq. miles). Pre-war Romania had an area of 113,918 sq. miles. Population at censuses: 1930, 18,057,208 (14,280,729 within present-day Romania); 1948, 15,872,624 (48.3% male); 1966, 19,103,163 (49% male, 38.2% urban); 1977, 21,559,910 (49.3% male, 47.5% urban).

In 1986 the population was 22,823,479 (49.3% male; 50.6% urban), density per sq. km, 96. Vital statistics, 1985 (per 1,000 population): Live births, 15.8; deaths, 10.9; marriages, 7.1; divorces, 1.43; stillborn (per 1,000 live births), 7.8; infant mortality (per 1,000 live births), 25.6. Expectation of life in 1984, 66.9 years. Welfare incentives and tax penalties (on the childless) are designed to combat a decline in the birthrate. Abortion and contraception are illegal, and the marriageable age of girls has been lowered from 18 to 15. Population growth rate per 1,000 was 4.9 in 1985 and 5.2 in 1984.

Administratively, Romania is divided into 41 counties (*judeţ*), 237 towns (*oraş*) (of which 55 are municipalities) and 2,705 local authorities (*comune*). The capital is Bucharest (Bucureşti), a municipality with county status.

<i>District</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population 1986</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population 1985</i>
Alba	6,231	424,700	Alba Iulia	64,369
Arad	7,652	504,144	Arad	185,892
Argeş	6,801	669,459	Piteşti	154,112
Bacău	6,606	715,054	Bacău	175,299
Bihor	7,535	655,682	Oradea	208,507
Bistriţa-Năsăud	5,305	319,698	Bistriţa	73,429
Botoşani	4,965	462,983	Botoşani	104,836
Braşov	5,351	688,151	Braşov	346,640
Brăila	4,724	398,193	Brăila	234,600
Buzău	6,072	521,391	Buzău	132,311
Caraş-Severin	8,503	403,723	Reşiţa	104,362
Călăraşi	5,075	345,936	Călăraşi	68,226
Cluj	6,650	741,096	Cluj-Napoca	309,843
Constanţa	7,055	709,755	Constanţa	323,236
Covasna	3,705	231,531	Sf. Gheorghe	65,868
Dîmboviţa	4,035	561,290	Tîrgovişte	88,663
Dolj	7,413	771,406	Craiova	275,098
Galaţi	4,425	632,029	Galaţi	292,805
Giurgiu	3,810	325,991	Giurgiu	65,792
Gorj	5,641	376,821	Tîrgu Jiu	85,058
Harghita	6,610	358,779	Miercurea-Ciuc	45,651
Hunedoara	7,016	557,396	Deva	76,934
Ialomiţa	4,449	303,914	Slobozia	44,797
Iaşi	5,469	787,351	Iaşi	314,156
Maramureş	6,215	543,261	Baia Mare	135,536
Mehedinţi	4,900	328,870	Drobeta-Turnu Severin	97,862
Mureş	6,696	614,725	Tîrgu Mureş	157,411
Neamţ	5,890	569,675	Piatra-Neamţ	107,581

<i>District</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>Population 1986</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Population 1985</i>
Olt	5,507	531,168	Slatina	73,982
Prahova	4,694	864,274	Ploiești	234,021
Satu Mare	4,405	410,762	Satu Mare	128,115
Sălaj	3,850	267,208	Zalău	54,676
Sibiu	5,422	506,061	Sibiu	176,928
Suceava	8,555	679,964	Suceava	92,690
Teleorman	5,760	506,499	Alexandria	51,267
Timiș	8,692	720,719	Timișoara	318,955
Tulcea	8,430	269,014	Tulcea	84,353
Vaslui	5,297	458,056	Vaslui	62,372
Vâlcea	5,705	426,160	Râmnicu Vâlcea	93,271
Vrancea	4,863	388,064	Focșani	83,562
Bucharest <sup>1</sup>	1,521	2,272,526	Bucharest <sup>2</sup>	1,975,808

<sup>1</sup> Total conurbation.<sup>2</sup> Central area.

The last official figures on the size of the ethnic minorities were published in 1977. Estimates for 1989: Hungarians, 2m. (mainly in Transylvania); Germans, 280,000; Gypsies, 1m.; Jews, 30,000. Hungarians are not allowed to emigrate. The agricultural 'systematisation' (see Agriculture, p. 1036) has borne particularly hardly upon ethnic Hungarians, and has been a source of contention with Hungary. Germans are permitted to emigrate under an agreement with Federal Germany of 1980 at a compensation rate of some DM8,000 a head; 120,000 had left by 1988. The official language is Romanian.

**CLIMATE.** A continental climate with a large annual range of temperature and rainfall showing a slight summer maximum.

Bucharest. Jan. 27°F (−2.7°C), July 74°F (23.5°C). Annual rainfall 23.1" (579 mm). Constanța. Jan. 31°F (−0.6°C), July 71°F (21.7°C). Annual rainfall 15" (371 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution dates from 1965 and supersedes those of 1948 and 1952. The leading role of the Communist Party is affirmed. In 1986 the Constitution was amended to allow for national referendums. For the first to be held see Defence, p. 1034. The Grand National Assembly of 369 is elected for 5 years (before 1972 for 4 years). It holds short sessions twice a year, and between sessions delegates its legislative rights to the State Council. Its Speaker is Nicolae Giosan.

The Socialist Democracy and Unity Front (SDUF) functions as a consultative body on home and foreign affairs. It has central and local councils in which workers, peasants, professional bodies, ethnic minorities and the Communist Party are represented.

All citizens of 18 and over have the right to vote and electoral law provides for the nomination of 'one or more' candidates in each constituency. To be elected candidates must secure 50% + 1 of the vote, otherwise re-elections are held.

The last election was held on 17 March 1985 (for previous elections see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1985–86). From an electorate of 15,733,060 turn-out was 15,732,095 (99.99%) and 15,375,522 votes (97.73%) were cast for SDUF. Anti-SDUF votes come mainly from ethnic minority areas, and are increasing: 1969, 0.2%; 1975, 1.2%; 1980, 1.5%; 1985, 2.27%. 594 candidates stood.

Local government is carried out by People's Councils at the administrative levels mentioned on p. 1032. 57,584 councillors were elected from among 117,349 candidates on 15 Nov. 1987.

Real political power is in the hands of the Romanian Communist Party. The Party Congress elects the General Secretary, and its Central Committee elects the Executive Political Committee with its Permanent Bureau and the Secretariat (General Secretary and 7 secretaries). The Party had 3,709,735 members in 1987.

*President of the Republic and Chairman of the State Council:* Nicolae Ceaușescu, succeeded Chivu Stoica in Dec. 1967. *Vice-Chairmen:* Manea Mănescu, Gheorghe Rădulescu, Maria Ghițuică, Arpad Pall.



In March 1989 the Permanent Bureau of the Party consisted of: Nicolae Ceaușescu (*General Secretary*); Emil Bobu; Elena Ceaușescu<sup>1</sup>; Constantin Dăscălescu; Manea Mănescu; Gheorghe Oprea; Gheorghe Rădulescu.

<sup>1</sup> Ceaușescu's wife.

*Council of Ministers* (March 1989). *Chairman (Prime Minister)*: Constantin Dăscălescu. *First Deputy Prime Ministers*: Elena Ceaușescu, Gheorghe Oprea, Ion Dinca; *Deputy Prime Ministers*: Ștefan Andrei; Ludovic Fazekas; Lina Ciobanu; Cornel Pacoste; Barbu Petrescu. Other ministers include: Radu Balan (*Chairman, State Planning Committee*); Gheorghe David (*Agriculture*); Vacant (*Finance*); Ioan Totu (*Foreign*); Maj.-Gen. Vasile Milea (*Defence*); Tudor Postelnicu (*Interior*); Maxim Berghianu (*Labour*); Ioan Ungur (*Foreign Trade*); Maria Bobu (*Justice*); Petre Fluture (*Electric Power*); Paula Prioteașă (*Food*).

In July 1970 Romania signed a treaty of friendship, co-operation and mutual assistance with the USSR. A previous such treaty had expired in 1968. Since the mid-1960s Romania has been taking a relatively independent stand in foreign affairs generally, and within Comecon and the Warsaw Pact.

*National flag*: Three vertical strips of blue, yellow, red, with the national arms in the centre.

*National anthem*: Trei culori (Three colours). Introduced, 1977. Music by Ciprian Porumbescu.

**DEFENCE.** Defence is the responsibility of the Defence Council, which is controlled by the Council of State and headed by President Ceaușescu. On 23 Nov. 1986 a referendum was held on reducing defence spending by 5%. Turn-out was 99.9%, and 100% were in favour. Military service is compulsory for 16 months in the Army and Air Force and 24 months in the Navy.

**Army.** The 4 Army Areas consist of 2 tank and 8 motor rifle divisions; 4 mountain, 2 artillery, 4 anti-aircraft and 2 surface-to-surface missile brigades; and 4 artillery, 1 anti-aircraft, 5 anti-tank and 4 airborne regiments. Equipment includes 630 T-34, 850 T-54/-55, 30 T-72 and 350 M-77 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 140,000 (including 95,000 conscripts), and 500,000 reservists. There are a further 40,000 men in paramilitary border guard and internal security forces.

**Navy.** The fleet comprises 2 Romanian-built new missile-armed large destroyers each with hangar for 2 helicopters 1 *ex-Soviet* diesel-electric powered patrol submarine, 3 new frigates, 3 corvettes, 6 fast missile boats, 42 fast torpedo boats, 27 fast gunboats, 1 new monitor, 3 old patrol vessels, 2 minelayer/mine counter measures support ships, 4 old minesweepers, 37 inshore minesweepers, 2 logistic support ships, 1 oceanographic ship, 2 training ships, 40 river patrol craft, 3 landing craft and 2 tugs. Headquarters of the Navy is at Mangalia, and of the Danube flotilla at the main river port of Brăila. The naval school is in Constanța. Personnel in 1989 totalled 7,500 officers and ratings including 600 in Coastal Defence, 900 under Training and 2,500 shore support.

**Air Force.** The Air Force numbered some 32,000 men, with 368 combat aircraft in 2 air divisions (4 regiments) in 1989. These are organized into 12 interceptor squadrons with MiG-21 and MiG-23 fighters, 6 ground-attack and close-support squadrons with MiG-17 fighters, and 1 reconnaissance squadron of Il-28s. There are also more than 150 training aircraft, 20 An-24/26/30 transports and more than 150 helicopters (Mi-2, Mi-4, Mi-8, Mi-14, Alouette and Puma). Under delivery are 185 IAR-93 close-support/interceptors to replace the MiG-17s and Skyfox anti-armour helicopters. 'Guideline' and 'Gainful' surface-to-air missiles are operational, and short-range surface-to-surface missiles have been displayed.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Romania is a member of UN, IMF, Comecon and the Warsaw Pact.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** In Oct. 1982 the Supreme Council of Economic and Social Development, presided over by Nicolae Ceaușescu, was raised to the level of an economic legislative chamber. The seventh 5-year plan covers 1986–90. Annual growth targets: Agriculture, 6.1%; industry, 7.5%. Increase in output (and target) under the 1981–85 plan: Industry, 21.6% (54.4%); agriculture, 10% (75.5%). There has been only limited decentralization of planning. (For previous plans see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1976–77.). Romania is committed to intensive industrialization and agriculture has been neglected.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in 1 m. lei) for calendar years:

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	262,227	288,511	301,908	308,917	363,180	340,914	433,094
Expenditure	262,227	288,511	301,908	308,917	342,545	340,914	433,094

<sup>1</sup> Estimates.

In 1985 sources of revenue (in 1 m. lei) included: Profit payments of state enterprises 29,527; turnover tax, 93,666; personal taxes, 4,251; insurance contributions, 40,009; taxes on enterprise wage funds, 47,125. Expenditure: National economy, 172,559; social and cultural, 90,412; defence, 12,113.

Revenue and expenditure of local councils (included above) was 63,054 m. lei and 60,560 m. lei in 1985.

Romania has settled UK claims arising out of the peace treaty and on defaulted bonds.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *leu*, pl. *lei* (of 100 *bani*). On 1 Feb. 1954 the gold content of the leu was to 0.148112 gramme of fine gold. Exchange rates (March 1989): £1 = 14.78 lei; US\$1 = 8.59 lei.

Bank-notes of 1, 5, 10, 25, 50 and 100 lei are issued by the National Bank, and there are coins of 5, 10, 15 and 25 *bani* and 1, 3 and 5 *lei*.

**Banking.** The National Bank of Romania (founded 1880, nationalized 1946) is the State Bank under the Minister of Finance. Half its profits are allotted to the State budget. There are also a Bank of Investments, a Foreign Trade Bank, an Agriculture and Food Industry Bank and a Savings Bank. The US Export-Import Bank withdrew Romania's borrowing rights as a sanction in 1988. In 1974 the American bank Manufactures Hanover Trust Co. opened a branch in Bucharest, the first Western bank to do so in a Communist country.

**Weights and measures.** The Gregorian calendar was adopted in 1919. The metric system is in use. Tubes and pipes are measured in *tol* (= 1 inch).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed electric power 1984: 18,829,000 kw.; output, 1986, 75,478 m. kwh (10,810 m. kwh hydroelectric). Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz. There are two joint Romanian-Yugoslav hydro-electric power plants on the Danube at the 'Iron Gates' with a combined yearly output of 22,250 m. kwh. A nuclear power programme has been subject to cut-backs and delays. In Oct. 1985 a state of emergency was declared in the energy sector and its administration handed over to the military. This was still in force in 1989.

**Oil.** The oilfields are in the Prahova, Băcau, Gorj, Crișana and Argeș districts. Oil production in 1988 was 10 m. tonnes. Oil reserves are expected to be exhausted by the mid-1990s. Refining capacity was enlarged from 16 m. tonnes per annum in 1970 to 30 m. tonnes in 1985. Crude oil has to be imported.

**Minerals.** The principal minerals are oil and natural gas, salt, brown coal, lignite, iron and copper ores, bauxite, chromium, manganese and uranium. Salt is mined in the lower Carpathians and in Transylvania; production in 1985 was 5 m. tonnes.

Output, 1985 (and 1986) (in 1,000 tonnes): Iron ore, 2,287 (2,431); coal, 46,581 (47,518, including lignite 38,012); methane gas (cu. metres), 27,719 m. (26,763 m.).

The share of coal in the overall production of energy rose from 28% in 1975 to 47% in 1985 and is expected to reach 60% by 1990.

**Agriculture.** In 1988 a programme of 'systematisation' was announced to destroy more than 50% of villages and relocate the inhabitants in apartment blocks. There were 15.04m. hectares of agricultural land in 1986, including (in 1,000 hectares): Arable, 10,005; meadows and pasture, 4,400; vineyards and fruit trees, 633.

Production in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat and rye, 7,947; barley, 2,200; maize, 20,000; potatoes, 8,513; sunflower seeds, 1,004; sugar-beet, 7,000.

Livestock (1987): 7,017,000 cattle, 14,711,000 pigs, 18,762,000 sheep and 137m. poultry. The number of horses had fallen to some 200,000 by Feb. 1986, but it was then decided to increase the herd and allow the tractor park to reduce by 30%.

In 1985 there were 4,363 collective farms, with 9.1m. hectares of land (7.2m. arable; 1.4m. private plots). State farms numbered 419, with 2m. hectares of land, of which 1.65m. hectares were arable. A further 2.4m. hectares of land were in the hands of other state agricultural organizations. There were 573 agriculture mechanization stations. Total tractor force, 1986: 185,208. Since 1984 production quotas on private plots must be met on pain of confiscation. The National Union of Agricultural Co-operatives promotes self-management in collective farms, and gives guidance on planning and marketing. A minimum income is guaranteed to peasants. In 1985 there were 2.7m. hectares of irrigated land.

**Forestry.** Total forest area was 6.34m. hectares in 1985. 52,850 hectares were afforested.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Output of main products in 1985 (and 1986) (in tonnes): Pig-iron, 9,212 (9,329); steel, 13,795 (14,276); steel tubes, 1,513 (1,565); blast furnace coke, 4,743 (5,088); rolled steel, 9,900 (10,207); chemical fertilizers, 3,097 (3,278); washing soda, 836 (895); caustic soda, 814 (846); paper, 741 (768); cement, 12,238 (14,216); sugar, 582 (489); edible oils, 328 (339). Fabrics (in 1m. sq. metres): Cotton, 700 (731); woollens, 131 (140); man-made fibres, 257,205 (302,681). In 1,000 units: Radio sets, 571 (580); TV sets, 522 (530); washing machines, 210 (263); motor cars, 134,169 (124,372).

**Labour.** The employed population in 1986 was 10.7m., of whom 3m. worked in agriculture and 4.8m. industry and building. In 1985 39.4% of the total workforce, and 42.6% of the industrial workforce, were women. Wage differentials (at a ratio of 5.25:1) are in accordance with the 'social evaluation' of the work and a range of incentives for productivity. The average monthly wage was 2,827 lei in 1985. Wages are cut if output falls below par. Wages were increased by 10% in 1988. The working week is of 46 hours with alternate Saturdays free. Men retire at 62, women at 57.

**Commerce.** In 1985 exports totalled 192,295m. lei and imports 148,362m. lei.

Principal exports in 1985 were (in 1,000 tonnes): Petroleum products, 9,691; cement, 2,477; cereals, 842; oilfield equipment, 6,110m. lei; equipment for cement mills, 274m. lei; equipment for chemical factories, 904m. lei; shipbuilding, 966m. lei. Principal imports (in 1,000 tonnes): Iron ore, 15,207; industrial coke, 1,898; rolled ferrous metals, 696; electrical equipment, 4,809m. lei; motor cars, 1,303 units, and industrial and agricultural equipment.

In 1985 Romania's main trading partners (trade in 1m. lei) were: USSR, 74,333; Egypt, 22,304; Federal Republic of Germany, 19,486; Italy, 16,866; Iran, 16,758; German Democratic Republic, 16,737; USA, 15,645.

Total trade between Romania and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	226.091	102.946	86,730	92,526	100,906
Exports and re-exports from UK	71,641	78,474	82,011	55,688	50,111



Both the UK and the USA have joint economic commissions with Romania. The US Congress abolished Romania's most-favoured nation status in 1988. In May 1986 Romania and the USSR signed a co-operation agreement for a 15-year programme of economic, scientific and technical development.

Romania owed some £2,800m. to Western banks in 1988.

Joint companies with Western firms have been set up; at least 51% of the capital must be in Romanian hands. 4 were in operation in 1985. The 'Romconsult' and 'Publicom' agencies will carry out respectively market research and publicity campaigns on behalf of foreign firms. Romania has a trade link with EEC under the generalized preference system. Agreements with the EEC on industrial products and establishing a joint economic commission were reached in March 1980.

On 1 Jan. 1975 a 2-tier tariff system was introduced, graded according to the grant of most-favoured nation status to Romania.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were in 1985, 14,666 km of national roads of which 12,239 km were modernized. Freight carried, 362m. tonnes; passengers, 837m. Private motoring is prohibited Jan.-March to save fuel.

**Railways.** Length of route in 1986 was 11,221 km. In 1985 472 km narrow-gauge. A total of 3,328 km was electrified. Freight carried in 1985, 283m. tons; passengers, 460m.

**Aviation.** TAROM (*Transporturi Aeriene Române*), the state airline, operates all internal services, and also services to Amsterdam, Athens, Beirut, Belgrade, Berlin, Brussels, Budapest, Cairo, Cologne, Copenhagen, Düsseldorf, Frankfurt, Istanbul, London, Moscow, Paris, Prague, Rome, Sofia, Tel-Aviv, Vienna, Warsaw and Zürich. Bucharest is also served by British Airways, PANAM, SABENA, Aeroflot, Air France, Interflug, ČSA, MALEV, Austrian Air Lines, SAS, Lot, TABSO, El Al, Alitalia, Lufthansa and Swissair. An air agreement with China was signed in 1973.

Bucharest's airports are at Băneasa (internal flights) and Otopeni (international flights; 12 miles from Bucharest). Air transport in 1985 carried 2.5m. passengers and 29,000 tonnes of freight.

**Shipping.** The main ports are Constanța on the Black Sea and Galați and Brăila on the Danube. A new port has been constructed at Agigea on the Black Sea and the 64 km canal between the Danube and the Black Sea was opened in 1984. The largest shipyard is at Galați.

In 1985 the mercantile marine (NAVROM) owned some 200 sea-going ships. In 1985 sea-going transport carried 25.72m. tonnes of freight; river transport, 18.4m. tonnes and 1.84m. passengers.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 4,979 post offices in 1985. Number of telephone subscribers, 1.96m. *Radio-televiziunea Română* broadcasts 3 programmes on medium-waves and FM. There are also 6 regional programmes, including transmission in Hungarian, German and Serbo-Croat. Following the energy crisis of 1984 the two TV channels were merged and broadcasting reduced from 100 to 22 hours a week. Programmes in Hungarian and German have been dropped. Radio receiving sets, in 1986 3.19m.; TV sets, 3.86m.

**Cinemas and Theatres.** There were, in 1986, 5,475 cinemas and 151 theatres and concert halls. 27 full-length feature films were made in 1985.

**Newspapers and Books.** There were, in 1986, 36 daily and 24 weekly newspapers and 435 periodicals, including 11 dailies and 3 weeklies in minority languages. The Party newspaper is *Scînteia* ('The Spark'). There were 7,059 public libraries. 3,063 book titles were published in 1985 in 66.3m. copies. (376 titles in minority languages).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Supreme Court, the 40 district courts, and lower courts. Lay assessors (elected for 4 years) participate in most court trials,

collaborating with the judges. The Procurator-General exercises 'supreme supervisory power to ensure the observance of the law' by all authorities, central and local, and all citizens. The Procurator's Office and its organs are independent of any organs of justice or administration, and only responsible to the Grand National Assembly (which appoints the Procurator-General for 4 years) and between its sessions, to the State Council. The Ministry of the Interior is responsible for ordinary police work. State security is the responsibility of the State Security Council. A new penal code came into force on 1 Jan. 1969. The death penalty is retained for 'specially serious offences' (treason, some classes of murder, theft of property having serious consequences). An amnesty of Jan. 1988 abolished or reduced the sentences of all convicts.

**Religion.** Churches are organized and function in accordance with art. 30 of the Constitution. Churches administer their own affairs and run seminaries for the training of priests. Expenses and salaries are paid by the State. There are 14 Churches, all under the control of the 'Department of Cults'. The largest is the Romanian Orthodox Church, which claimed some 16m. members in 1985. It is autocephalous, but retains dogmatic unity with the Eastern Orthodox Church. It is administered by the consultative Holy Synod and National Ecclesiastical Assembly and the executive National Ecclesiastical Council and Patriarchal Administration. It is organized into 12 dioceses grouped into 5 metropolitan bishoprics (Hungaro-Wallachia; Moldavia-Suceava; Transylvania; Olit; Banat), and headed by Patriarch Teoctist Arapășu (since 1986). There are some 11,800 churches, 2 theological colleges and 6 'schools of cantors', as well as seminaries.

The Uniate (Greek Catholic) Church (which severed its connexion with the Vatican in 1698) was suppressed in 1948. It had 1.6m. adherents and 1,818 priests. Estimates for 1973: 700,000 adherents and 600 priests.

Other churches: Serbs have a Serbian Orthodox Vicariate at Timișoara. In 1986 there were 1.2m. Roman Catholics, mainly among the Hungarian and German minorities. There are 8 dioceses. In 1985 6 were vacant. There is a bishop of Alba Iulia and an Apostolic Administrator was appointed to Bucharest in Oct. 1984. There were 734 priests in 1982. The Church has not secured approval for a Statute and has no hierarchical ties with the Vatican.

Calvinists (600,000; mainly Hungarian) have bishoprics at Cluj and Oradea; Lutherans (150,000, mainly Germans) a bishopric at Sibiu and Unitarians (60,000, Hungarians) a bishopric at Cluj. These sects share a seminary at Cluj. In 1987 there were about 200,000 Baptists and 300,000 other neo-Protestants.

In 1988 there were 30,000 Jews under a Chief Rabbi (Moses Rosen). There were 120 synagogues in 1987.

There were 40,000 moslems in 1983 and they have a Muftiate at Constanța.

**Education.** Education is free and compulsory from 6 to 16, consisting of 8 years of primary school and 2 years of secondary (gymnasium). Further secondary education is available at *lycées*, professional schools or advanced technical schools.

In 1986-87 there were 12,548 kindergartens with 32,789 teachers and 836,225 children; 14,046 primary and secondary schools with 144,878 teachers and 3,017,339 pupils; 981 *lycées* with 46,124 teachers and 1,196,949 pupils; 747 professional schools with 2,420 teachers and 257,196 pupils; and 313 advanced technical schools with 104 teachers and 23,204 pupils. In 1983-84 there were 3,130 schools for 340,773 pupils of ethnic minorities with 15,922 teachers.

There are universities at Iași (founded 1860), Bucharest (1864), Cluj (1919), Timișoara (1962), Craiova (1965) and Brașov (1971). In 1986-87 there were in all 44 institutes of higher education, with 157,174 (8,897 foreign) students and 12,504 teachers. In 1983-84 there were 11,568 students at institutes of higher education for ethnic minorities with some 1,000 teachers.

The Academy, with seat at Bucharest, has 2 branches at Iași and Cluj. The National Council for Scientific Research co-ordinates research.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 213,560 hospital beds and 48,062 doctors (including 7,356 dentists). Some hospitals began to charge fees in 1983.

**Social Security.** In 1986 3.21m. pensioners drew an average monthly pension of 1,817 lei.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Romania in Great Britain (4 Palace Green, London, W8 4QD)

*Ambassador:* Stan Soare (accredited 6 Nov. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Romania (24 Strada Jules Michelet, Bucharest)

*Ambassador:* Hugh Arbuthnott, CMG.

Of Romania in the USA (1607 23rd St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Ion Stoichici.

Of the USA in Romania (7–9 Strada Tudor Arghezi, Bucharest)

*Ambassador:* Roger Kirk.

Of Romania to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Petre Tanasie.

### Further Reading

*Anuarul Statistic al R.S.R.* Bucharest, annual

*Atlas Geografic Republica Socialistă România.* Bucharest, 1965

*Dicționar Enciclopedic Român.* Bucharest, 1962–66

*Economic and Commercial Guide to Romania.* Bucharest, annual since 1969

*Mic Dicționar Enciclopedic.* Bucharest, 1973

*Revista de Statistică.* Bucharest, monthly

*Romania: An Encyclopaedic Survey.* Bucharest, 1980

*Romania, the Industrialization of an Agrarian Economy under Socialist Planning: Report of a Mission sent to Romania by the World Bank.* Washington, 1979

Academia Republicii Socialiste România. *Dicționar Englez-Român.* Bucharest, 1974

Ceaușescu, N., *Romania on the Way of Completing Socialist Construction.* 3 vols. Bucharest, 1968–69.—*Romania on the Way of Completing the Many-sided Developed Socialist Society.* Bucharest, 1970 ff.

Deletant, A. and D., *Romania* [Bibliography]. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985

Fischer-Galati, S. A., *Rumania: A Bibliographical Guide.* Library of Congress, 1963.—*The New Rumania.* Mass. Inst. of Technology, 1968.—*The Socialist Republic of Rumania.* Baltimore, 1969.—*Twentieth Century Rumania.* New York, 1970

Giurescu, C. C. (ed.) *Chronological History of Romania.* 2nd ed. Bucharest, 1974

Graham, L. S., *Romania, a Developing Socialist State.* Boulder, 1982

Ionescu, A. (ed.) *The Grand National Assembly of the Socialist Republic of Romania: A Brief Outline.* Bucharest, 1974

King, R. R., *History of the Romanian Communist Party.* Stanford, 1980

Levițchi, L., *Dicționar Român-Englez.* 2nd ed. Bucharest, 1965

Morariu, T., et al., *The Geography of Rumania.* 2nd ed. Bucharest, 1969

Nelson, D. N. (ed.) *Romania in the 1980's.* Boulder, 1981

Pacepa, I., *Red Horizons.* London, 1988

Shafir, M., *Romania: Politics, Economics and Society.* London, 1985

Stanciu, I. G. and Cernovodeanu, P., *Distant Lands: The Genesis and Evolution of Romanian-American Relations.* Boulder, 1985

Turnock, D., *An Economic Geography of Romania.* London, 1974.—*The Romanian Economy in the Twentieth Century.* London 1986



# RWANDA

Capital: Kigali

Population: 6.71m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$290 (1986)

## Republika y'u Rwanda

**HISTORY.** From the 16th century to 1959 the Tutsi kingdom of Rwanda shared the history of Burundi (*see* p. 258). In 1959 an uprising of the Hutu destroyed the Tutsi feudal hierarchy and led to the departure of the Mwami Kigeri V. Elections and a referendum under the auspices of the United Nations in Sept. 1961 resulted in an overwhelming majority for the republican party, the Parmehutu (*Parti du Mouvement de l'Emancipation du Bahutu*), and the rejection of the institution of the Mwami. The republic proclaimed by the Parmehutu on 28 Jan. 1961 was recognized by the Belgian administration (but not by the United Nations) in Oct. 1961. Internal self-government was granted on 1 Jan. 1962, and by decision of the General Assembly of the UN the Republic of Rwanda became independent on 1 July 1962. The first President, Gregoire Kayibanda, was deposed in a *coup* on 5 July 1973.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Rwanda is bounded south by Burundi, west by Zaïre, north by Uganda and east by Tanzania. A mountainous state of 26,338 sq. km (10,169 sq. miles), its western third drains to Lake Kivu on the border with Zaïre and thence to the Congo river, while the rest is drained by the Kagera river into the Nile system.

The population was 4,819,317 at the 1978 Census, of whom over 90% were Hutu, 9% Tutsi and 1% Twa (pygmy); latest estimate (1988) 6,710,000. In 1988 there were about 20,000 refugees in Rwanda, all from Burundi.

The areas and populations (1978 Census) of the 10 prefectures are:

<i>Prefecture</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1978</i>	<i>Prefecture</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1978</i>
Cyangugu	2,226	331,380	Kigali	3,251	698,063
Kibuye	1,320	337,729	Kibungo	4,134	360,934
Gisenyi	2,395	468,786	Gitarama	2,241	602,752
Ruhengeri	1,762	528,649	Gikongoro	2,192	369,891
Byumba	4,987	519,968	Butare	1,830	601,165

Kigali, the capital, had 156,650 inhabitants in 1981; other towns (1978) being Butare (21,691), Ruhengeri (16,025) and Gisenyi (12,436). Kinyarwanda, the language of the entire population, and French are official languages, and Kiswahili is spoken in the commercial centres, where most of the 1,200 Europeans and 750 Asians reside.

Vital statistics (1975): Live births, 113,154; deaths, 41,385; marriages, 13,899.

**CLIMATE.** Despite the equatorial situation, there is a highland tropical climate. The wet seasons are from Oct. to Dec. and March to May. Highest rainfall occurs in the west, at around 70" (1,770 mm), decreasing to 40–55" (1,020–1,400 mm) in the central uplands and to 30" (760 mm) in the north and east. Kigali. Jan. 67°F (19.4°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,000 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was approved by referendum on 17 Dec. 1978; under it, the *Mouvement revolutionnaire national pour le développement* (MRND) founded 5 July 1975 becomes the sole political organization. Executive power is vested in a President, elected by universal suffrage for a (renewable) 5-year term. He presides over a Council of Ministers, whom he appoints and dismisses.

Legislative power rests with a National Development Council of 70 deputies, elected for a 5-year term; elections were held on 26 Dec. 1983.

*President:* Maj.-Gen. Junéval Habyarimana (took office July 1975; elected Dec. 1978 and re-elected Dec. 1983).

*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* François Ngarukiyintwari.

**National flag:** Three equal vertical panels of red, yellow and green (left to right), the letter 'R' in black superimposed on the centre panel.

**Local government:** The 10 prefectures, each under an appointed Prefect, are divided into 143 communes, each with an appointed Burgomaster and an elected Council.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 commando battalion, 1 reconnaissance, 8 infantry and 1 engineer companies. Equipment includes 12 AML-60/-90 armoured cars. Strength (1989) about 5,000.

**Air Force.** The Air Force currently operates 2 Guerrier armed light aircraft, 1 twin-engined Defender, 2 Noratlas, 1 Islander light transport, 6 Gazelle and 4 Alouette III helicopters. A Caravelle is operated on VIP duties. Personnel (1989) 200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Rwanda is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC. With Burundi and Zaïre it forms part of the Economic Community of Countries of the Great Lakes.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1986 balanced at 22,354m. Rwanda francs.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Rwanda franc*. The official rate of Rwanda francs 136.25 = £1; 79.17 = US\$1 (March 1989).

**Banking.** The Development Bank of Rwanda (*Banque Rwandaise de Développement—BRD*) had a capital (1983) of 1,000m. Rwanda francs. Other banks are the Central Bank (*Banque Nationale du Rwanda*); 2 commercial banks which are majority foreign owned—the *Banque Commerciale du Rwanda* and the *Banque de Kigali*; the People's Bank, the Savings Association and the *Caisse Hypothécaire*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** 4 hydro-electric installations and 1 thermal plant produced 110m. kwh in 1986, but over half of the country's needs come from Zaïre. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Cassiterite and wolframite are mined east of Lake Kivu. Production (1983): Cassiterite, 1,526 tonnes; wolfram, 429 tonnes. About 1m. cu. metres of natural gas are obtained from under the lake each year.

**Agriculture.** Subsistence agriculture accounts for most of the gross national product. Staple food crops (production 1986, in 1,000 tonnes) are sweet potatoes (920), cassava (348), beans (240), sorghum (184), potatoes (270), maize (121), peas and groundnuts. The main cash crops are *aravica* coffee (30), tea (8) and pyrethrum. There is a pilot rice-growing project.

Long-horned Ankole cattle, 639,000 head in 1980, play an important traditional role. Efforts are being made to improve their present negligible economic value. There were (1987) 673,000 cattle, 1m. goats, 350,000 sheep and 86,000 pigs.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There are about 100 small-sized modern manufacturing enterprises in the country. Food manufacturing is the dominant industrial activity (64%) followed by construction (15.3%) and mining (9%). There is a large modern brewery.

**Commerce.** In 1984 imports amounted to 27,122m. Rwanda francs and exports to 15,543m. of which coffee comprised 83%, tea 4% and tin 6%; Belgium provided 14% of imports, Kenya 13% and Japan 10%.

Total trade between Rwanda and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	7,842	3,998	7,487	4,291	8,434
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,385	3,565	1,681	2,526	1,636

**Tourism.** In 1984 there were 20,000 visitors to national parks.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1982) 6,760 km of roads. There are road links with Burundi, Uganda, Tanzania and Zaïre. There were in 1982 6,188 cars and 7,168 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Kanombe, for Kigali, and at Kamembe, with services to Bujumbura, Bukavu, Entebbe, Goma, Lubumbashi, Athens and Brussels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Telephones (1983) 6,598. In 1983 there were 2 radio stations and 155,000 receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1975 there were 3 cinemas with a seating capacity of 1,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A system of Courts of First Instance and provincial courts refer appeals to Courts of Appeal and a Court of Cassation situated in Kigali.

**Religion.** The population was (1983) predominantly Roman Catholic (56%); there is an archbishop (Kigali) and 3 bishops. 23% of the population follow traditional religions, 12% are Protestants and 9% Moslems.

**Education.** In 1981 there were 704,924 pupils attending 1,606 primary schools with 11,912 teachers. There were 118 secondary, technical and teacher-training schools with 10,667 students and 887 teachers. The National University, opened at Butare, with sites at Butare and Ruhengeri, in 1963, had 1,577 students in 1984.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 170 hospitals and health centres with (1980) 9,015 beds; there were also 164 doctors, 1 dentist, 10 pharmacists, 464 midwives and 525 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Rwanda in Great Britain

*Ambassador:* Ildephonse Munyeshyaka (resides in Brussels).

Of Great Britain in Rwanda

*Ambassador:* R. L. B. Cormack, CMG (resides in Kinshasa).

Of Rwanda in the USA (1714 New Hampshire Ave, NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Aloys Uwimana.

Of the USA in Rwanda (Blvd. de la Revolution, Kigali)

*Ambassador:* John E. Upston.

Of Rwanda to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Célestin Kabanda.



# ST CHRISTOPHER (ST KITTS)—NEVIS

*Capital:* Basseterre  
*Population:* 43,700 (1986)  
*GNP capita:* US\$1,700 (1986)

**HISTORY.** St Christopher (known to its Carib inhabitants as *Liamuiga*) and Nevis were discovered and named by Columbus in 1493. They were settled by Britain in 1623 and 1628 respectively, but ownership was disputed with France until 1713. Forming part of the Leeward Islands Federation from 1871 to 1956, and part of the Federation of the West Indies from 1958 to 1962. In Feb. 1967 the colonial status was replaced by an 'association' with Britain, giving the islands full internal self-government, while Britain remained responsible for defence and foreign affairs. St Christopher-Nevis became fully independent on 19 Sept. 1983.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The islands form part of the Lesser Antilles in Eastern Caribbean. Population, estimate (1986) 43,700.

	<i>sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>
St Christopher	174	33,881	Basseterre	14,283
Nevis	93	9,428	Charlestown	1,243
	<hr/> 267	<hr/> 43,309		

In 1980, 94% of the population were black and 36% were urban. English is the official and spoken language.

**CLIMATE.** A pleasantly healthy climate, with a cool breeze throughout the year, low humidity and no recognized rainy season. Average annual rainfall is about 55" (1,375 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1983 Constitution described the country as 'a sovereign democratic federal state'. It allowed for a unicameral Parliament consisting of 11 elected Members (8 from St Kitts and 3 from Nevis) and 3 appointed Senators. Nevis was given its own Island Assembly and the right to secession from St Kitts. At the General Elections held on 21 June 1984, 6 seats from St Kitts were won by the People's Action Movement and 2 by the Labour Party, while the 3 Nevis seats were won by the Nevis Reformation Party.

*Governor-General:* Sir Clement Athelston Arrindell, GCMG, GCVO.

*Prime Minister:* Rt. Hon. Dr Kennedy Alphonse Simmonds.

*Flag:* Diagonally green, black, red, with the black fimbriated in yellow and charged with two white stars.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** St Christopher-Nevis is a member of the UN, the OAS, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1989 budget envisaged expenditure at EC\$86,973,000 and revenue at EC\$86,966,000

**Currency.** The East Caribbean *dollar* (of 100 *cents*) is in use. In March 1989, £1 = EC\$4.67; US\$1 = EC\$2.71.

**Banking.** The National Bank operates 4 branches in St. Kitts and Nevis. The main office is located in Basseterre. Other banks include Barclay's Bank International, with a sub-branch in Nevis, Royal Bank of Canada, Bank of Commerce, and the Nevis Co-operative Bank and the Bank of Nevis in Charlestown. Branches of the Bank of Nova Scotia are located in Basseterre and Charlestown. Commercial banks' assets (1987) EC\$366.3m.; deposits EC\$239.9m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1984) 34m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The main crops are sugar and cotton. There are 30 sugar estates and 124 acres of cotton. Most of the farms are small-holdings and there are a number of coconut estates amounting to some 1,000 acres under public and private ownership. Sugar production (1987) 28,491 tonnes and 30.5 tonnes of cotton and 260,382 lbs of copra were produced in 1986.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 7,000; pigs, 10,000; sheep, 15,000; goats, 10,000; donkeys, (1984) 1,365; poultry, (1984) 67,030.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1983) 1,100 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main employer of labour is the sugar industry. Other industries are: Clothing, footwear and assembly of electronic equipment.

**Commerce.** Imports, (1986) EC\$169.8m. mainly from the USA and UK; exports, EC\$67.9m. Chief export was sugar (24,576 tons in 1983), mainly to the USA (EC\$68m.) and UK (EC\$25.6m.).

Total trade between St Christopher (St Kitts)—Nevis and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	5,634	4,429	4,677	4,271
Exports and re-exports from UK	5,256	6,008	7,041	8,025

**Tourism.** In 1987, there were 91,383 tourists, 31,458 arriving by sea.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1983) about 305 km of roads, and (1987) 2,641 passenger cars and 1,494 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** There are 36 miles of railway operated by the sugar industry.

**Aviation.** There is an airport at Golden Rock (St Kitts). 98,263 passengers arrived by air in 1987. There is an airfield on Nevis (Newcastle).

**Shipping.** A deep water port was opened in 1981 at Bird Rock with accommodation for cargo, tourist, roll-on-roll-off ships and bulk sugar and molasses loading. 1,428 tourists arrived by sea in 1985.

**Post and Telecommunications.** There is a general post office in Basseterre. Five branches are on the island. Charlestown has a general post office, and there are two branches in Nevis. There were 4,000 telephones at 31 Jan. 1988. In 1985 there were 5,000 television and 21,000 radio receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Supreme Court and by Magistrates' Courts. They have both civil and criminal jurisdiction.

**Religion.** In 1985, 36.2% were Anglican, 32.3% Methodist, 7.9% other Protestant, and 10.7% Roman Catholic.

**Education.** Primary education is compulsory for all children between the ages of 5 and 14, but no pupil is required to leave school before the age of 16 years. There is an Extra-Mural Department of the University of the West Indies, a Technical College and a Teachers' Training College.

In 1988 there were 7,473 pupils in primary schools, 4,273 in secondary schools, and (1989) 211 students in the Technical and Teacher's Training Colleges.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 22 doctors, 4 hospitals with 258 beds and 17 health clinics.

**DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES**

Of St Christopher and Nevis in Great Britain (10 Kensington Ct., London W8)  
*High Commissioner:* Richard Gunn.

Of Great Britain in St Christopher and Nevis  
*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG (resides in Bridgetown).

Of St Christopher and Nevis in the USA (2501 M. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)

*Chargé d'Affaires:* Erstein M. Edwards.

Of St Christopher and Nevis to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr William Herbert.

**Further Reading**

*National Accounts.* Statistics Division, Ministry of Development (annual)

*St Kitts and Nevis Quarterly.* Statistics Division, Ministry of Development

Gordon, J., *Nevis: Queen of the Caribees*. London, 1985

*Library:* Public Library, Basseterre. *Librarian:* Miss V. Archibald.



# ST HELENA

Capital: Jamestown  
Population: 5,564 (1988)

**HISTORY.** The island was administered by the East India Company from 1659 and became a British colony in 1834.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** St Helena, of volcanic origin, is 1,200 miles from the west coast of Africa. Area, 47 sq. miles (121.7 sq. km), with a cultivable area of about 600 acres (243 hectares). Population (1988) 5,564. The port of the island is Jamestown, population (1976) 1,516.

In 1982 there were: Births, 123; deaths, 52; marriages, 26.

**CLIMATE.** A mild climate, with little variation. Temperatures range from 75–85°F (24–29°C) in summer to 65–75°F (18–24°C) in winter. Rainfall varies between 13" (325 mm) and 37" (925 mm) according to altitude and situation.

**GOVERNMENT.** The Government of St Helena is administered by a Governor, with the aid of a Legislative Council consisting of the Governor, 2 *ex-officio* members (the Government Secretary and the Treasurer) and 12 elected members. Committees of the Legislative Council are responsible for the general oversight of the activities of government departments and have, in addition, statutory and administrative functions.

The Governor is also assisted by an Executive Council consisting of the 2 *ex-officio* members and the chairmen of the 6 Council committees.

*Governor and C.-in-C.:* R. F. Stimson.

*Government Secretary:* E. C. Brooks, OBE.

*Flag:* The British Blue Ensign with the shield of the colony in the fly.

**FINANCE AND TRADE,** for years from 1 April–31 March, in £ sterling:

	1977–78	1978–79	1979–80	1980–81	1981–82	1982 <sup>3</sup>
Revenue <sup>1</sup>	2,244,550	2,683,681	4,226,899	4,488,257	5,656,518	4,126,548
Expenditure <sup>1</sup>	2,200,299	2,764,150	4,325,910	4,551,657	5,681,934	3,988,900
Imports <sup>2</sup>	1,758,337	1,164,437	1,835,000	2,117,126	2,485,819	2,381,632

<sup>1</sup> Including imperial grants (1977–78, £1,657,231; 1978–79, £1,771,618; 1979–80, £3,347,631; 1980–81, £3,232,093; 1981–82, £3,296,933; 1982, £2,819,256).

<sup>2</sup> Including government stores.

<sup>3</sup> April–Dec.

The revenue from customs was, in 1982, £305,635.

The colony's liabilities at 31 March 1982 exceeded the assets by £177,060; 31 Dec. 1982, £39,412.

Total trade between Ascension and St Helena and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	979	4,515	380	189	205
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,294	7,914	8,196	8,065	6,103

**BANKING.** Savings-bank deposits on 31 Dec. 1982, £1,467,079, belonging to 3,800 depositors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1987) 87 km of all-weather motor roads.

**Shipping.** The number of merchant vessels that called in 1982 (April–Dec.) was 30; total tonnage entered and cleared was 218,257.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Cable & Wireless Ltd cable connects St Helena with Cape Town and Ascension Island. There is a telephone service with 85 miles of wire and (1982), 310 telephones.

St Helena Government Broadcasting Station broadcasts in English on medium-waves. Number of radio receivers (1982), 1,500.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Police force, 32; cases dealt with by police magistrate, 205 in 1981.

**Religion.** There are 10 Anglican churches, 4 Baptist chapels, 3 Salvation Army halls, 1 Seventh Day Adventist church and 1 Roman Catholic church.

**Education.** Three pre-school playgroups, 8 primary, 3 senior and 1 secondary schools controlled by the Government had 980 pupils in Sept. 1982.

**Health.** There were 3 doctors, 1 dentist and 54 hospital beds in 1982.

**Ascension** is a small island of volcanic origin, of 34 sq. miles (88 sq. km), 700 miles north-west of St Helena. In Nov. 1922 the administration was transferred from the Admiralty to the Colonial Office and annexed to the colony of St Helena. There are 120 hectares providing fresh meat, vegetables and fruit. Population, 31 March 1988, was 1,007 (excluding military personnel).

The island is the resort of sea turtles, which come to lay their eggs in the sand annually between Jan. and May. Rabbits are more or less numerous on the island, which is, besides, the breeding ground of the sooty tern or 'wideawake', these birds coming in vast numbers to lay their eggs every eighth month. There is also a small herd of feral donkeys.

Cable & Wireless Ltd own and operate a cable station, connecting the island with St Helena, Sierra Leone, St Vincent, Rio de Janeiro and Buenos Aires. There is an airstrip (Miracle Mile) near the settlement of Georgetown which was being extended in 1985.

*Administrator:* M. T. S. Blick.

**Tristan da Cunha**, is the largest of a small group of islands in the South Atlantic lying 1,320 miles (2,124 sq. km) south-west of St Helena, of which they became dependencies on 12 Jan. 1938. Tristan da Cunha has an area of 98 sq. km and a population (1988) of 313, all living in the settlement of Edinburgh. Inaccessible Island (10 sq. km) lies 20 miles west and the 3 Nightingale Islands (2 sq. km) lie 20 miles south of Tristan da Cunha; they are uninhabited. Gough Island (90 sq. km) is 220 miles south of Tristan and has a meteorological station.

Tristan consists of a volcano rising to a height of 6,760 ft, with a circumference at its base of 21 miles. The volcano, believed to be extinct, erupted unexpectedly early in Oct. 1961. The whole population was evacuated without loss and settled temporarily in the UK. In 1963 they returned to Tristan where they all dwell in the settlement of Edinburgh. Before the disaster occurred the habitable area was a small plateau on the north west side of about 12 sq. miles; 100 ft above sea-level. Only about 30 acres was under cultivation, three-quarters of it for potatoes. There were apple and peach trees. Potatoes remain the chief crop, cattle, sheep and pigs are now reared, and fish are plentiful.

Population in 1880, 109; in 1983, 296. The original inhabitants were shipwrecked sailors and soldiers who remained behind when the garrison from St Helena was withdrawn in 1817.

At the end of April 1942 Tristan da Cunha was commissioned as HMS *Atlantic Isle*, and became an important meteorological and radio station. In Jan. 1949 a South African company commenced crawfishing operations. An Administrator was appointed at the end of 1948 and a body of basic law brought into operation. The Island Council, which was set up in 1932, in 1982 consisted of a Chief Islander, 3 nominated and 7 elected members under the chairmanship of the Administrator.

*Administrator:* R. Perry.

## Further Reading

Crawford, A., *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties*. Edinburgh, 1982

Cross, A., *Saint Helena*. Newton Abbot, 1980

Munch, P. A., *Sociology of Tristan da Cunha*. Oslo, 1945.—*Crisis in Utopia*. New York, 1971

# ST LUCIA

*Capital:* Castries

*Population:* 146,600 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,320 (1986)

**HISTORY.** St Lucia was discovered about 1500 A.D. Attempts to colonize the island by the English took place in 1605 and 1638. The French settled in 1650 and St Lucia was ceded to Britain in 1814. Self-government was achieved in 1967 and independence on 22 Feb. 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** St Lucia is a small island of the Lesser Antilles situated in the Eastern Caribbean between Martinique and St Vincent, with an area of 238 sq. miles (617 sq. km); population (census, 1980) 120,300. Estimate (1988) 146,600. The capital is Castries (population, 1988, 52,868). Life expectancy (1985) was 68.6 (men) and 75.5 (women).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with a dry season lasting from Jan. to April, a wet season from May to Aug., followed by an Indian summer for two months, but most rain falls in Nov. and Dec. Amounts vary over the year, according to altitude, from 60" (1,500 mm) to 138" (3,450 mm). Temperatures are uniform at about 80°F (26.7°C).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** There is a 17-seat House of Assembly elected for 5 years; an 11-seat Senate appointed by the Governor-General, 6 on the advice of the Prime Minister, 3 on the advice of the Leader of the Opposition, and 2 'after consultation with appropriate religious, economic or social bodies or associations'.

At the elections in April 1987, the United Workers' Party gained 9 seats, and the St Lucia Labour Party, 8.

*Governor-General:* Sir Vincent Floissac, CMG, QC.

*Prime Minister:* Rt Hon. John George Melvin Compton.

*Flag:* Blue with a design of a black triangle edged in white, bearing a smaller yellow triangle, in the centre.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** St Lucia is a member of UN, OAS, Caricom, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The aim of the Development Plan, 1977-90, is to develop agriculture to diversify production and to contain rural-urban drift.

**Budget.** The budget in 1986-87 amounted to EC\$232.6m. expenditure.

**Banking.** There are Barclays Bank International with 4 branches and 2 agencies, the Royal Bank of Canada with 1 branch, the Bank of Nova Scotia with 3 branches, the Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce and the St Lucia Co-operative bank with 2 branches each, the National Development Bank with 1 branch and the National Commercial Bank with 3 branches.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1986, laundry soap, coconut meal, rum, beverages and clothing were the chief products.

**Agriculture.** Bananas, cocoa, copra and coconut oil are the chief products.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 12,000; pigs, 12,000; sheep, 15,000; goats, 12,000.

**Commerce.** Value of imports (1985), EC\$337.5m.; of exports, EC\$140.5m.,



including coconut oil, cocoa beans, copra and bananas. Main items of imports were artificial silk and cotton piece-goods, cement, plastic goods, iron and steel products, hardware, motor vehicles, agricultural machinery, fertilizers, wheat flour, codfish and rice, meat and meat preparations.

Total trade between St Lucia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	44,047	59,855	40,908	58,385
Exports and re-exports from UK	11,550	12,441	13,196	19,750

**Tourism.** The total number of visitors during 1986 was 171,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The island has 500 miles of main and secondary roads, and 2,084 commercial vehicles and 7,049 cars in 1984.

**Aviation.** The island is served on a scheduled basis by Leeward Islands Air Transport, British West Indian Airways, Eastern Airline, British Airways, Pan Am, Caribbean Airways and Air Canada. There are 2 airfields—Hewanorra International Airport, with 9,000 ft runway, and Vigie.

**Shipping.** There are 2 ports, Castries and Vieux Fort.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1986) 13,654 telephone instruments coupled to 7,960 exchange lines; 157 telex machines, and telegram service. There were 5,000 TV and 92,000 radio receivers in 1985.

**Cinemas.** There were 8 cinemas in 1986.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The island is divided into 2 judicial districts, and there are 9 magistrates' courts. Appeals lie with the Eastern Caribbean Supreme Court of Appeal.

Police establishment in 1986 was 14 officers, 16 inspectors, 11 station sergeants, 39 sergeants, 58 corporals and 333 constables.

**Religion.** In 1981 over 86% of the population was Roman Catholic.

**Education** (1985–86). 79 primary schools, with 32,273 pupils on roll. Primary education is free and compulsory by law, but the legislation is not enforced. There are 12 secondary schools (2 Roman Catholic, 1 Seventh-day Adventist, 9 government) with 5,665 pupils. There is 1 technical college with (1985–86) 223 students and 1 teachers' college with (1985–86) 123 students.

**Health.** Victoria Hospital (in Castries) has 213 beds; there is also a 162-bed mental hospital, 3 other hospitals (150 beds) and 29 health centres. In 1984 there were 58 doctors, 5 dentists and 236 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of St Lucia in Great Britain (10 Kensington Ct., London, W8)

*High Commissioner:* Richard Gunn.

Of Great Britain in St Lucia (Colombus Sq., Castries)

*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG (resides in Bridgetown).

Of St Lucia in the USA and to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Joseph Edsel Edmunds.

## Further Reading

Ellis, G., *St Lucia: Helen of the West Indies*. London, 1985

*Library:* The Central Library, Castries. *Acting Librarian:* Frances Niles.

# ST VINCENT AND THE GRENADINES

*Capital:* Kingstown  
*Population:* 112,614 (1987)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$960 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The date of discovery of St Vincent was 22 Jan. 1498. In 1969 St Vincent became a self-governing Associated State of UK and acquired full independence on 27 Oct. 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** St Vincent is an island of the Lesser Antilles, situated in the Eastern Caribbean between St Lucia and Grenada, from which latter it is separated by a chain of small islands known as the Grenadines. The total area of 388 sq. km (150 sq. miles) comprises the island of St Vincent itself (345 sq. km) and the Northern Grenadines (43 sq. km) of which the largest are Bequia, Mustique, Canouan, Mayreau and Union.

The population at the 1980 Census was 97,845; latest estimate (1987) was 112,614 of whom 5,451 lived on the Northern Grenadines. The capital, Kingstown, had 28,942 inhabitants in 1987 (including suburbs). The population is mainly of black (82%) and mixed (13.9%) origin, with small white, Asian and Amerindian minorities.

Vital statistics (1987): Live births, 2,639; deaths, 608; marriages, 416.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical marine, with north-east Trades predominating and rainfall ranging from 150" (3,750 mm) a year in the mountains to 60" (1,500 mm) on the south-east coast. The rainy season is from June to Dec., and temperatures are equable throughout the year.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The House of Assembly consists of 13 elected members, directly elected for a 5-year term from single-member constituencies, the Attorney-General (elected) and 6 Senators appointed by the Governor-General (4 on the advice of the Prime Minister and 2 on the advice of the Leader of the Opposition). At the General Elections held in July 1984, the New Democratic Party won 9 and the St Vincent Labour Party won 4 of the 13 elective seats in the House of Assembly. A 10th seat was won by the NDP in a subsequent by-election.

*Acting Governor-General:* Henry Harvey Williams.

*Prime Minister:* Rt. Hon. James Fitz-Alan Mitchell.

*National Flag:* Three vertical stripes of blue, yellow, green, with the yellow of double width and charged with three green diamonds.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** St Vincent and the Grenadines is a member of UN, OAS, Caricom, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Development Plan, 1986-89, aims to encourage exports, reduce imports and to develop agriculture.

**Budget.** Revenue (estimate), 1988-89, \$123,693,070; expenditure, \$123,621,279. Public debt at the end of the financial year 1985-86 was \$57,905,110.

**Currency.** The currency is the Eastern Caribbean *dollar*. In March 1989, £1 = EC\$4.67; US\$1 = EC\$2.71.

**Banking.** There are branches of Barclays Bank PLC, the Caribbean Banking Corporation, the Canadian Imperial Bank of Commerce, the Bank of Nova Scotia.

Locally-owned banks: the National Commercial Bank, St Vincent Co-operative Bank and the St Vincent Agricultural Credit and Loan Bank.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 35m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture accounted for 20.8% of GDP in 1987. According to the 1985-86 census of agriculture, 29,649 acres of the total acreage of 85,120 were classified as agricultural lands; 5,500 acres were under forest and woodland and all other lands accounted for 1,030 acres. The total arable land was about 8,932 acres, of which 4,016 acres were under temporary crops, 2,256 acres under temporary pasture, 2,289 acres under temporary fallow and other arable land covering 371 acres. 16,062 acres were under permanent crops, of which approximately 5,500 acres were under coconuts and 7,224 acres under bananas; the remainder produce cocoa, citrus, mangoes, avocado pears, guavas and miscellaneous crops. The sugar industry was closed down in 1985 although some sugar-cane will be grown for rum production. Production (1987, in tonnes): Coconuts, 20,000; bananas, 47,000.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 8,000; pigs, 7,000; sheep, 14,000; goats, 4,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industries include assembly of electronic equipment, manufacture of garments, electrical products, animal feeds and flour, corrugated galvanized sheets, exhaust systems, industrial gases, concrete blocks, plastics, soft drinks, beer and rum, wood products and furniture, and processing of milk, fruit juices and food items.

**Commerce** (1987). Imports, EC\$264,301,919; exports, EC\$139,569,582.

Principal exports, 1987 in EC\$: Arrowroot, 1,155,492; eddoes and dasheen, 11,288,471; sweet potatoes, 5,978,280; tannias, 4,434,584; bananas, 53,049,346; galvanized sheets, 4,850,654; yams, 848,965; plantain, 2,670,207; ginger, 740,884; flour, 16,722,941.

Total trade between St Vincent and the Grenadines and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	22,339	21,161	20,208	29,709
Exports and re-exports from UK	6,600	8,288	8,529	8,011

**Labour** (1987). The Department of Labour is charged with looking after the interest and welfare of all categories of workers, including providing advice and guidance to employers/employees and their organizations and enforcing the labour laws.

**Tourism.** There were 127,776 visitors in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1987) 620 km of all-weather roads, 453 km of rough motorable roads and 180 km of tracks.

**Aviation.** Scheduled services are operated daily by LIAT and Air Martinique. Non-scheduled services are operated by Mustique Airways, Tropical Air Services, Aero-Services and St Lucia Airways. Passengers are able to travel daily through the chain of islands stretching as far north as San Juan, Puerto Rico and south to Trinidad. Connexions to the USA, Canada, South America and Europe are possible *via* Barbados, Antigua, Trinidad and St Lucia.

**Shipping** (1987): 36 auxiliary sailing vessels of 1,510 NRT entered and cleared. 659 motor vessels of 805,261 NRT entered and cleared. 47 tankers of 41,798 NRT bringing 18,925.13 tons of fuel entered.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There is a General Post Office at Kingstown and 49 district post offices. There is an automatic telephone system with (1987), 6,145 subscribers; 7,950 stations and a digital radio link to Bequia, Mustique and Union



Island; VHF links Petit St Vincent and Palm Island. In 1987 there were 12,000 TV and 60,000 radio receivers.

**Cinemas.** There were 2 cinemas in 1987 with a seating capacity of 1,825.

### JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice** (1986). There were 3,699 criminal matters disposed of in the 3 magisterial districts which comprise 11 courts. 192 cases were dealt with in the 1987 Criminal Assizes in the High Court. Strength of police force (1982), 525 (including 12 officers).

**Religion.** At the 1980 Census, 42% of the population was Anglican, 21% Methodist and 12% Roman Catholic.

**Education** (1987). Sixty-one primary schools; pupils on roll, 25,152. Expenditure on primary education, \$13,937,403. There is also a secondary school for girls (703 pupils), a co-educational school (592 pupils), as well as 12 assisted secondary schools (3,667 pupils) and 7 rural secondary schools with 1,820 pupils. Expenditure on secondary education, \$3,937,703. There is a private secondary school with 298 pupils.

**Health.** There were (1987) a General Hospital in Kingstown (204 beds), 5 rural hospitals at Chateaubelair, Georgetown, Mesopotamia, Bequia and Union Island; 1 psychiatric hospital (120 beds); 1 geriatric hospital (120 beds); 35 medical clinics and 1 private hospital (10 beds). In 1987 there were 39 doctors, 2 dentists, 80 technical staff, 236 trained nursing personnel and 85 community health aides.

*Library:* St Vincent Public Library, Kingstown. *Librarian:* Mrs Lorna Small.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of St Vincent and the Grenadines in Great Britain (10 Kensington Ct. London, W8)

*High Commissioner:* Richard Gunn.

Of Great Britain in St Vincent and the Grenadines

*High Commissioner:* K. F. X. Burns, CMG (resides in Bridgetown).

Of St Vincent and the Grenadines to the UN

*Ambassador:* Jonathan Peters.

### Further Reading

Price, N., *Behind the Planter's Back*. London, 1988

# SAN MARINO

*Capital:* San Marino  
*Population:* 22,746 (1988)

## Repubblica di San Marino

**HISTORY.** On 22 March 1862 San Marino concluded a treaty of friendship and co-operation, including a *de facto* customs union with the kingdom of Italy, preserving the independence of the ancient republic, although completely surrounded by Italian territory. The treaty was renewed on 27 March 1872, 28 June 1897 and 31 March 1939, with several amendments 1942–85.

The republic has extradition treaties with Belgium, France, the Netherlands, UK and USA.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** San Marino is a land-locked state in central Italy, 20 km from the Adriatic. The frontier line is 38.6 km in length, area is 61.19 sq. km (24.1 sq. miles) and the population (31 Dec. 1988), 22,746; some 11,000 citizens live abroad. The capital, San Marino, had 4,363 inhabitants (1986); the largest town is Serravalle (7,109), an industrial centre in the north.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The legislative power is vested in the Great and General Council of 60 members elected every 5 years by popular vote, 2 of whom are appointed every 6 months to act as regents (*Capitani reggenti*).

The elections held on 29 May 1988 gave 27 seats to the Christian Democrats, 18 to the Communists, 15 to Socialist parties.

The regents (who are Heads of State) exercise executive power together with the Congress of State (*Congresso di Stato*), which comprises the regents, 3 secretaries of state and 7 ministers, and through Commissions on social welfare, public works, etc.

*National flag:* Horizontally white over light blue, with the national arms over all in the centre.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is not obligatory, but all citizens between the ages of 16 and 55 can be called upon to defend the State. They may also serve as volunteers in the Military Corps.

**ECONOMY.** The budget (ordinary and extraordinary) for the financial year ending 31 Dec. 1989 balanced at 259,275,271,797 lire.

Wheat, barley, maize and vines are grown. The chief exports are wood machinery, chemicals, wine, textiles, tiles, varnishes and ceramics.

Italian currency is in general use, but the republic issues its own postage stamps and coins.

In 1987, 3m. tourists visited San Marino.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** A bus service connects San Marino with Rimini. There are 237 km of roads and (1987) 16,540 passenger cars and 3,225 commercial vehicles.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 11,707 telephones. In 1983 there were 8 post offices. In 1982 there were 8,994 radio and 6,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1987 there were 7 cinemas with a seating capacity of 1,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Law is administered by a Commissioner for civil cases and a Commis-

sioner for criminal cases (acting with a penal judge), from whom appeals can be made to a civil appeals judge and a criminal appeals judge respectively. The highest legal authority is, in certain cases, the *Consiglio dei XII*. Civil marriage was instituted in Sept. 1953 and divorce allowed in April 1986.

**Religion.** 95% of the population are Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1985 there were 13 elementary schools with 1,411 pupils and 158 teachers, 4 secondary schools with 1,248 pupils and 183 teachers. There is also a foreign languages school, a technical school and a trade and handicraft school.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 149 hospital beds and 60 doctors.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

*British Consul-General* (resides at Florence): M. L. Croll.

*Consul-General in London:* Lord Forte.

## Further Reading

*Information:* Office of Cultural Affairs and Information of the Department of Foreign Affairs.

Garbelotto, A., *Evoluzione storica della costituzione di S. Marino*. Milan, 1956

Matteini, N., *The Republic of San Marino*. San Marino, 1981

Packett, C. N., *Guide to the Republic of San Marino*. Bradford, 1970

Rossi, G., *San Marino*. San Marino, 1954



# SÃO TOMÉ E PRÍNCIPE

*Capital:* São Tomé  
*Population:* 115,600 (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$340 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The islands of São Tomé and Príncipe, were discovered in 1471 by Pedro Escobar and João Gomes, and from 1522 constituted a Portuguese colony. On 11 June 1951 it became an overseas province of Portugal.

On 26 Nov. 1974 the Government of Portugal and the liberation movement of São Tomé e Príncipe signed an agreement granting independence to the archipelago on 12 July 1975.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The republic, which lies about 200 km off the west coast of Gabon, in the Gulf of Guinea, comprises the main islands of São Tomé (845 sq. km) and Príncipe and several smaller islets including Pedras Tinhosas and Rolas. It has a total area of 1,001 sq. km (387 sq. miles). Total population (census, 1981) 96,611. Estimate (1988) 115,600.

The areas and populations of the 2 provinces were as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1981</i>	<i>Estimate 1987</i>	<i>Chieftown</i>	<i>Estimate 1984</i>
São Tomé	859	91,356	106,900	São Tomé	34,997
Príncipe	142	5,255	6,100	São António	1,000

The official language is Portuguese, but 90% speak Fang, a Bantu language.

Vital statistics (1985): Births, 3,700; deaths, 900.

**CLIMATE.** The tropical climate is modified by altitude and the effect of the cool Benguela current. The wet season is generally from Oct. to May, but rainfall varies very much, from 40" (1,000 mm) in the hot and humid north-east to 150–200" (3,800–5,000 mm) on the plateau. São Tomé. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 38" (951 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution was approved by the Constitutional Assembly (elected 6 July 1975) on 12 Dec. 1975. Under it, the sole legal party is the *Movimento de Libertação de São Tomé e Príncipe*, who nominate candidates for the Presidency and People's Assembly. The President is elected by the People's Assembly for a 4-year term; he is also head of government and appoints a Cabinet of Ministers to assist him. The 40-member People's Assembly is also elected for 4 years.

*President, Prime Minister, Economy and Planning:* Dr Manuel Pinto da Costa (re-elected 30 Sept. 1985).

*Foreign Affairs:* Guilherme Posser da Costa.

*Flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, yellow, green, with the yellow of double width and bearing 2 black stars; in the hoist a red triangle over all.

*Local government:* São Tomé province comprises 6 districts, while Príncipe province forms a seventh district.

**DEFENCE.** About 700 Angolan and 200 Cuban military personnel are stationed on the islands.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** São Tomé e Príncipe is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 5-year Development Plan (1986–90) gives priority to industry, energy, construction and agriculture.

**Budget.** In 1984 the budget envisaged revenue of 654.9m. dobra and expenditure of 921m. dobra.

**Currency.** The currency is the *dobra*, introduced in 1977, divided into 100 *centavos*. In March 1989, £1 = 175.87 *dobra*; US\$1 = 102.19 *dobra*.

**Banking.** *Banco Nacional de São Tomé e Príncipe* (established, 1975) is the central bank.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 3m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Most land is state-owned and former plantations run as co-operatives. About 38% of the area is under cultivation. Production (1983 in tonnes): Cacao, 4,451; copra, 3,727; bananas, 3,641; palm oil (1982), 1,100. Food crops include cassava, sweet potatoes and yams. In 1987 there were 4,000 goats, 2,000 sheep, 3,000 pigs and 3,000 cattle.

**Fisheries.** The fishing industry is being developed, to exploit the rich tuna shoals. Catch (1985) 4,355 tonnes.

**COMMERCE.** Imports in 1984 amounted to 485.9m. dobras and exports to 539.6m. dobras the main exports being cocoa (80%), copra (15%), coffee, bananas and palm-oil. Portugal provided 30% of imports while the German Democratic Republic took 35% of exports, the Netherlands 18% and Portugal 15%.

Total trade between São Tomé e Príncipe and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	450	197	327	205	20
Exports and re-exports from UK	962	824	455	329	416

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were 288 km of roads (198 paved) in 1975.

**Aviation.** São Tomé airport is linked by regular services to Douala, Lisbon, Luanda, Cabinda, Libreville, Malabo and Brazil, as well as to Príncipe.

**Shipping.** In 1975, 70 vessels entered the port of São Tomé to unload 26,693 tonnes and load 9,880 tonnes.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1986) 28,000 radio receivers and 2,200 telephones.

**Cinemas.** In 1972 there was 1 cinema with a seating capacity of 1,000.

**Newspapers.** In 1986 there were 2 weekly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE.

**Justice.** Members of the Supreme Court are appointed by the People's Assembly.

**Religion.** About 80% of the population are Roman Catholic.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 19,086 pupils and 517 teachers in 63 primary schools, 6,186 pupils and 300 teachers in 11 secondary schools, and 370 students and 35 teachers in 2 technical schools.

**Health.** In 1981 there were 38 doctors and 118 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in São Tomé and Príncipe

*Ambassador:* M. J. C. Glaze, CMG (resides in Luanda).

Of São Tomé and Príncipe in the USA and to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Joaquim Rafael Branco.

# SAUDI ARABIA

*Capital:* Riyadh

*Population:* 11.52m. (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$6,930 (1986)

## al-Mamlaka al-'Arabiya as-Sa'udiya

**HISTORY.** Saudi Arabia was founded by Abdul Aziz ibn Abdur-Rahman al-Faisal Al Sa'ud, GCB, GCIE (born about 1880; died 9 Nov. 1953), who had been proclaimed King of the Hejaz on 8 Jan. 1926 and had in 1927 changed his title of Sultan of Nejd and its dependencies to that of king, thus becoming 'King of the Hejaz and of Nejd and its Dependencies'. On 20 May 1927 a treaty was signed at Jiddah between Great Britain and Ibn Sa'ud, by which the former recognized the complete independence of the dominions of the latter. The name of the State was changed to 'The Saudi Arabian Kingdom' by decree of 23 Sept. 1932.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Saudi Arabia, which occupies over 70% of the Arabian peninsula, is bounded west by the Red Sea, east by the Gulf and the United Arab Emirates, north by Jordan, Iraq and Kuwait, south by the Yemen Arab Republic, the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen and Oman. The total area is estimated to be 849,400 sq. miles (2.2m. sq. km).

The principal cities of the Western Province (formerly *Hejaz*) are Jiddah (561,104 inhabitants at the 1974 Census; estimate (1986) 1m.), Mecca (366,801), Taif (204,857) and Medina (198,196); of the Central Province (formerly *Nejd*) are Riyadh, the national capital (666,840; estimate, 1986, 1.5m.), Buraidah (69,940), Ha'il (40,502), Uneiza and Al-Kharj; of the Northern Province are Tabouk (74,825), Al-Jawf and Sakaka; of the Eastern Province (formerly *Al-Hasa*) are Dammam (127,844), Hofuf (101,271), Haradh (100,000), Al-Mobarraz (54,325), Al-Khobar (48,817) and Qatif; and of the Southern Province (formerly *Asir*) are Khamis-Mushait (49,581), Najran (47,501), Jisan (32,814) and Abha (30,150). New industrial cities are being built at Jubail and Yanbu on the Gulf. Taif, about 3,800ft above sea-level and some 50 miles from Mecca, is a summer resort.

The total population was (1974 census) 7,012,642, of which 5,128,655 were categorized as settled and 1,883,987 as nomadic. Estimate (1986) 11.52m.

**CLIMATE.** A desert climate, with very little rain and none at all from June to Dec. The months May to Sept. are very hot and humid, but winter temperatures are quite pleasant. Riyadh. Jan. 58°F (14.4°C), July 92°F (33.3°C). Annual rainfall 4" (100 mm). Jiddah. Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 87°F (30.6°C). Annual rainfall 3" (81 mm).

**KING.** **Fahd ibn Abdul Aziz;** succeeded in May 1982, after King Khalid's death. *Crown Prince:* Prince Abdullah ibn Abdul Aziz, First Deputy Prime Minister, Head of the National Guard, brother of the King.

*National flag:* Green, with the text 'There is no God but Allah and Mohammed is his prophet' in white Arabic script, and beneath this a white sabre.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Kingdom has been welded together from Hejaz, Nejd, Asir and Al-Hasa. Riyadh is the political capital and Mecca the religious capital. There is no formal Constitution.

The King has the post of Prime Minister.

*First Deputy Prime Minister and Head of the National Guard:* Prince Abdullah ibn Abdul Aziz.

*Second Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Defence and Aviation, and Inspector General:* Prince Sultan ibn Abdul Aziz.



*Public Works and Housing:* Prince Miteb ibn Abdul Aziz. *Interior:* Prince Naif ibn Abdul Aziz. *Foreign Affairs:* Prince Saud al Faisal. *Labour and Social Affairs:* Muhammad al-Ali al-Fayiz. *Communications:* Hussein Ibrahim al Mansouri. *Finance and National Economy:* Muhammad Ali Aba'l Khail. *Information:* Ali ibn Hasan al-Shaer. *Industry and Electricity:* Dr Abdul Aziz al Zamil. *Commerce:* Dr Sulaiman Abdul Aziz al Sulaim. *Justice:* Sheikh Ibrahim ibn Muhammad ibn Ibrahim al Shaikh. *Education and Acting Higher Education:* Dr Abdul Aziz al Abdullah al Khuwaiter. *Petroleum and Mineral Resources and Planning:* Hisham Nazer. *Haj Affairs, Waqfs:* Abdul Wahhab Ahmad Abdul Wasi. *Municipal and Rural Affairs:* Ibrahim ibn Abdullah al Angari. *Agriculture and Water:* Dr Abdul Rahman ibn Abdul Aziz ibn Hasan al Shaikh. *Health:* Faisal ibn Abdul Aziz al Hejailan. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Dr Alawi Darwish Kayyal. *Without Portfolio:* Fayez Badr. *Pilgrimage and Endowments:* Abdul Wahhab Ahmed Abdul Wasi. There are 7 Ministers of State.

There are provisions for the setting up of certain advisory councils, comprising a consultative Legislative Assembly in Mecca, municipal councils in each of the towns of Mecca, Medina and Jiddah, and village and tribal councils throughout the provinces. The country is divided for administrative purposes into 14 Regions (Emirates).

**DEFENCE.** The US maintains a Military Mission (with an Air Force element) as do France and Pakistan. Personnel are trained in Saudi Arabia, France, Pakistan, UK and the USA.

**Army.** The Army comprises 2 armoured brigades, 4 mechanized brigades, 1 airborne brigade, 1 Royal Guard regiment, 23 artillery battalions and 1 infantry brigade. Equipment is mainly US or French (M101, M109 and M198 artillery, M113 APCs, M60 tanks, AMX30 tanks. There are surface-to-air batteries with Stinger and Redeye. Six Dauphin helicopters are in service. Total strength of Army (1989) approximately 38,000. There are para-military forces with the Ministry of Interior; Frontier Force and Coastguard (approximately 8,500).

**National Guard.** The National Guard comprises 2 mechanized brigades (trained by the US), 1 ceremonial cavalry squadron. Additionally there are a number of regular and irregular units, the total strength of the National Guard amounting to approximately 56,000 (10,000 active). The National Guard's primary role is the protection of the Royal Family and vital points in the Kingdom. It does not come under command of the Ministry of Defence and Aviation. UK provides small advisory teams to the National Guard.

**Navy.** The Royal Saudi Naval Forces, comprise 4 new French-built guided missile frigates of 2,600 tons, 4 new US-built missile-armed fast corvettes of 800 tons, 9 fast missile craft of 380 tons (all completed in 1980-82 in USA), 3 *ex*-German torpedo boats, 4 US-built MSC-type coastal minesweepers, 2 new French-built armed replenishment ships of 10,500 tonnes each with 2 helicopters, 1 *ex*-US coastguard cutter, 8 new French-built patrol craft, 40 coastal patrol boats, 18 hovercraft, 2 air-sea rescue launches, 1 training ship, 4 utility landing craft, 12 minor landing craft, 1 salvage vessel, 2 tugs, and 2 royal yachts (with helicopter). New construction planned includes 2 large guided missile frigates, 6 submarines and a submarine parent ship. There are 24 Dauphin helicopters. The main port facilities are at Jubail and Jedda.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 7,800 officers and other ranks plus instructors and trainees. RSNF rely on considerable US and Pakistan support.

The Coast Guard operates over 450 craft including 160 coastal patrol craft, 300 inshore patrol cutters, 1 training ship, 3 small oilers, 4 fire-fighting craft, 2 yachts and 12 service craft. Eight large patrol craft are planned.

**Air Force.** Formed as a small army support unit in 1932, the Air Force has been built up considerably with British and US assistance since 1946. Complete re-equipment began in 1966 and delivery of 45 F-15 Eagles to equip 3 air superiority squadrons was made in 1982-84; they operate in conjunction with 5 E-3A Sentry AWACS aircraft and 8 KC-707 flight refuelling tankers. Current combat

units include 3 squadrons of F-5E Tiger II supersonic fighter-bombers and RF-5E Tigereye reconnaissance aircraft, supported by a conversion unit with F-5B/F combat trainers. One squadron has formed with Tornado strike aircraft, of which 48 are on order, plus 24 Tornado interceptors. Two squadrons of Strikemaster light jet attack/trainers are based at the King Faisal Air Academy, Riyadh, together with 12 Reims/Cessna FR172 piston-engined primary trainers, PC-9 basic trainers, Hawk advanced trainers and Jetstream navigation trainers. Other types in current service include 50 C-130E/H and KC-130H Hercules transports and tankers, 1 Boeing 747 SP, 1 Boeing 747-200, 1 Boeing 737, 3 Boeing 707, 4 CN-235s and 2 JetStar VIP jet transports, more than 60 Agusta-Bell 205, 212 and JetRanger helicopters, 2 Agusta AS-61A-4 VIP transport helicopters and communications aircraft. Personnel (1989), about 16,500.

**Air Defence Command.** This separate Command was formerly part of the Army, which retains a point air defence capability. It is heavily reliant on Pakistan assistance, particularly manpower. Equipment comprises approximately 18 Crotale missile systems, 15 batteries of Improved Hawk surface-to-air missiles, 30 mm Oerlikon and 20 mm Vulcan guns.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Saudi Arabia is a member of UN, the Arab League, the Gulf Cooperation Council and OPEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fourth 5-year development plan (1985-90) aims to increase manpower by an overall 3.8% and emphasizes industrial growth and economic development.

**Budget.** In 1986 the financial year became the calendar year. The 1988 budget provided for expenditure of 141,200m. rials and revenue of 105,300m. rials.

There is no public debt.

**Currency.** The paper *rial* is divided into 100 *halalas*. In March 1989, £1 = 6.47 rials; US\$1 = 3.76 rials.

**Banking.** The Saudi Arabian Monetary Agency, established in 1953, is the central bank and the government's fiscal agent. There were 637 commercial banks in mid 1987. The Saudi Arabian Agricultural Bank with 70 branches and offices extended 1,019m. rials in credit services to farmers during 1987. In 1985 total deposits in commercial banks were US\$111,000m. and total assets were 143,000m. rials.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** 49,925m. kwh. was generated by the main electricity companies in 1985. A programme of research and development of solar energy has produced a photovoltaic power system with a capacity in 1988 of 50 kw to provide electricity for 2 villages. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 and 60 Hz.

**Oil.** The first general geologic-geographical survey of Saudi Arabia was completed in 1961 under the joint sponsorship of the Saudi Arabian and US governments but surveying continues. Proven reserves (1988) 169,000m. bbls.

Oil production began in 1938 by Aramco, which is now 100% state-owned and accounts for about 97% of total crude oil production, with Getty and the Arabian Oil Co. accounting for the remainder.

Crude oil production in 1988 was 251m. tonnes. Crude oil exports in 1985 were 1,216m. bbls, of which Aramco provided 97.4%, Arabian Oil 1.94% and Getty Oil 0.6%. 1985 oil exports earned US\$30,000m. (95m. for crude) and Aramco earned 98% of this total.

Production comes from 14 major oilfields, mostly in the Eastern Region, the most important of which are Ghawar (believed to be the world's largest oilfield), Abqaiq, Safaniyah (the largest offshore field) and Berri.

New fields have been discovered onshore at Farhah and Assahba and deeper



pools offshore at Marjan, Safaniya and Zuluf, and during 1984 117 new wells were drilled and 4 seismic explorations conducted.

In 1981 a pipeline from the eastern oilfields to the Red Sea oil terminal at Yanbu was completed and a link to the Iraqi oilfields was completed in 1985.

In early 1986 there were 5 domestic refineries: Ras Tanura, refining capacity 450,000 bbls per day (Aramco); Riyadh, 120,000 bbls per day, Jiddah, 96,000 bbls per day and Yanbu, 170,000 bbls per day (Petromin); Rasal-Khafji, 13,000 bbls per day (Arabian Oil Co.); as well as 3 joint venture export refineries: Yanbu, 250,000 bbls per day (Petromin/Mobil Oil); Jubail, 250,000 bbls per day (Petromin/Shell Saudi Arabia); Rabigh, 325,000 bbls per day (Petromin/Petrol International). Aramco has added a 300 tonne a day sulphur plant to Ras Tanura and operates a 400 tonnes a day desulphurization plant at Jubail.

**Gas.** In 1984 production of liquefied natural gas from oilfield associated and dissolved gas was 355,059 bbls per day.

**Water Resources.** Intensive efforts are underway to provide adequate supplies of water for urban, industrial, rural and agricultural use. Most investment however has gone into seawater desalination. By early 1985 22 plants in 21 towns had the capacity to produce 2.1 m. metres per day and 5 more, totalling 444,200 cu. metres per day were under construction. Another 10, amounting to 475,682 cu. metres per day, were at various stages of planning.

**Minerals.** Commercial production was scheduled to begin in 1988 at Mahd Al-Dahab gold mine. Deposits of iron, phosphate, bauxite, uranium and copper have been found.

**Agriculture.** Since 1970 the Government has spent substantially on desert reclamation, irrigation schemes, drainage and control of surface water and control of moving sands. Undeveloped land has been distributed to farmers and there are research and extension programmes. Large scale private investment has concentrated on meat, poultry and dairy production.

Production, 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Dates, 500; tomatoes, 330; water melons, 420; wheat, 2,072; barley, 80; grapes, 80; milk, 584; poultry meat, 300; red meat, 136; eggs, 150.

Livestock estimates for 1987 include 530,000 cattle, 110,000 asses, 165,000 camels, 3.8m. sheep and 2.35m. goats.

**Fisheries.** Saudi Fisheries, established in 1981, has introduced a wide variety of fish to the domestic market and opened up a thriving export business in shrimps. Annual catch between 16,000 and 20,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The Government actively encourages the establishment of manufacturing industries in the country. The policy includes the provision of industrial estates and loans covering 50% of capital investment. The Government has also established two industrial poles at Jubail and Yanbu, linked by gas and oil pipelines, to be the focus of heavy industrial development. Both have petrochemical complexes producing ethylene and methanol. In 1988 there were 12 major industries (petrochemical, urea and ammonia fertilizer, steel, gas and plastics) and over 65 support and light manufacturing businesses in operation in Jubail, and 8 heavy industries (natural gas liquids fractionation, refining, petrochemical, lube additives, crude oil and chemical terminals) and 21 light and support industries in operation in Yanbu.

**Labour.** The expatriate labour force grew by an average of 11.7% a year between 1980 and 1985. The proportion of non-Saudis in the total labour force rose from 28.2% in 1975 to 60% by 1985. In 1988, 95% of the total labour force was employed in the non-oil sector.

**Commerce.** Exports in 1986 (in 1m. rials) 74,377 of which crude oil, 73%; refined oil, 12%; petro-chemicals, 3.5%. Total imports (1986) 70,780m. rials. Major export destinations in 1984 (value in US\$1m.) included: Japan, 13,367; USA,



3,644; Singapore, 2,423. Major import sources in 1984 (value in 1m. rials) included: Japan, 23,569; USA, 20,655; Federal Republic of Germany, 9,861; France, 9,253; Italy, 8,595.

Total trade between Saudi Arabia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	545,149	483,634	435,930	383,143	614,144
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,387,163	1,256,081	1,507,062	1,978,440	1,713,423

**Tourism.** In 1984 there were nearly 2m. pilgrims to Mecca from abroad.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** All the main regions and population centres of the Kingdom are linked by asphalted roads, of which there were 29,655 km in 1985 and 52,226 km of graded, unpaved agricultural roads. An additional 12,492 km of roads were under construction including the Trans-Peninsula Expressway. There are road links with Yemen, Jordan, Kuwait and Qatar, and a causeway link to Bahrain. In 1985 there were 2m. passenger cars, 2m. commercial vehicles and about 41,000 buses.

**Railways.** A railway from Riyadh to Dammam on the Gulf (571 km, 1,435 mm gauge) *via* Dhahran and the oilfields Abqaiq, Ithmaniya (near Hofuf) and Haradh was completed in Oct. 1951. A 'dry port' at Riyadh station opened in 1981, and a new 465 km Dammam-Riyadh direct line was opened throughout in 1985. There are plans to extend the line *via* Medina to Jiddah. That section of the Hejaz Railway which is in Saudi Arabian territory is not now in working order, but studies have been initiated to restore the whole line from Damascus to Medina. In 1987 railways carried 104m. passenger-km and 940m. tonne-km.

**Aviation.** Saudi Arabian Air Lines, a government-owned company operates regular internal air services, and international routes to Africa, the Middle East, Europe and the Far East, as well as special flights for pilgrims. There are 3 major international airports at Jiddah, Dhahran and Riyadh and 19 domestic airports. King Fahd International Airport in Eastern Province is due to be completed in 1990. In 1985, 28.6m. passengers and 300,000 tonnes of cargo were carried.

**Shipping.** The ports of Dammam and Jubail on the Gulf and Jiddah, Yanbu and Jizan on the Red Sea had 143 deep-water piers by 1985 and discharged 35.9m. freight tonnes. Aramco operates a deepwater oil terminal at Ras Tanura.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1985), 1,216,000. Number of post offices (1985) 591. In 1984 there were (estimate) 2.8m. radio receivers and 2.5m. television receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1985 there were 8 daily newspapers in Arabic and 3 in English and 15 weekly or monthly magazines.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The religious law of Islam is the common law of the land, and is administered by religious courts, at the head of which is a chief judge, who is responsible for the Department of Sharia (legal) Affairs. Sharia courts are concerned primarily with family inheritance and property matters. The Committee for the Settlement of Commercial Disputes is the commercial court. Other specialized courts or committees include one dealing exclusively with labour and employment matters; the Negotiable Instruments Committee, which deals with cases relating to cheques, bills of exchange and promissory notes, and the Board of Grievances, whose preserve is disputes with the government or its agencies and which also has jurisdiction in trademark-infringement cases and is the authority for enforcing foreign court judgements.

**Religion.** About 85% are Sunni Moslems and 15% Shiites.

**Education.** Schooling is in three stages, primary, intermediate and secondary which is to prepare older pupils for university; pre-primary schools are being introduced. Education is free in all these stages; monthly scholarships are paid to students

in higher education and certain allowances are paid at general education level. Girls' education is administered separately. In 1987 there were 6,112 girls' schools and other institutions with 945,635 students and 61,245 teachers. In 1985 there were 500 pre-primary schools with 55,000 pupils, 7,612 primary schools with 1,242,000 pupils and 79,000 teachers, and 3,314 intermediate/secondary schools with 530,542 students and 40,326 teachers. In 1988 there were 3,500 pupils in 29 special education institutes for mentally retarded and physically handicapped children. In 1986-87 there were 64,888 students in 1,305 schools in the programme to combat illiteracy.

In 1985 there were 24 vocational centres, where 4,515 primary school graduates were instructed in basic trades. There were also 8 technical and 26 commercial secondary schools, taking 11,159 intermediate school graduates, and 2 technical and 3 commercial higher institutes (627 students), 21 more advanced industrial, commercial and agricultural education institutes.

University courses concentrating on science, engineering, agriculture and medicine, but also covering education, commerce and arts, are available at the King Abdul Aziz University, Jiddah, King Saud University, Riyadh and King Faisal University, Dammam and Hofuf. There are two branches of King Saud University at Abha and Qaseem. King Abdul Aziz University had a branch campus at Taif. Specialized engineering studies are available at the University of Petroleum and Minerals, Dhahran, and Arabic and Sharia law studies at the Islamic University, Medina, Imam Mohammad bin Saud University, Riyadh and the Um-AlQura University, Makkah. There were 93,000 university students (35,000 women) and 4,000 post-graduate students in 1984-85.

**Welfare.** The Ministry of Health is responsible for medical services, serving both Saudi citizens, foreign residents and pilgrims. In 1986 there were 141 hospitals with 23,862 beds, 1,431 primary health care centres and in 1985, 8,243 doctors, 16,443 nurses and midwives, 8,858 technical assistants. There were also 73 private hospitals (10,244 beds) employing 6,096 doctors. The Jiddah Quarantine Centre, designed by WHO and primarily for pilgrims, can take 2,400 patients.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Saudi Arabia in Great Britain (30 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8QB)  
*Ambassador:* Sheikh Nasser H. Almanqour, GCVO.

Of Great Britain in Saudi Arabia (PO Box 94351, Riyadh)  
*Ambassador:* Sir Stephen Egerton, KCMG.

Of Saudi Arabia in the USA (601 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)  
*Ambassador:* HRH Prince Bandar bin Sultan.

Of the USA in Saudi Arabia (PO Box 9041, Riyadh)  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Saudi Arabia to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Samir Shihabi.

## Further Reading

- Anderson, N., *The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia*. (Rev. ed.). London, 1982  
 Clements, F. A., *Saudi Arabia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988  
 Hajrah, H. H., *Land Distribution in Saudi Arabia*. London, 1982  
 Holden, D. and Johns, R., *The House of Saud*. London and New York, 1981  
 Looney, R. E., *Saudi Arabia's Development Potential*. Lexington, 1982  
 McMaster, B., *The Definitive Guide to Living in Saudi Arabia*. London, 1980  
 Niblock, T., *State, Society and Economy in Saudi Arabia*. New York, 1981  
 Presley, J. R., *A Guide to the Saudi Arabian Economy*. London, 1984  
 Quandt, W. B., *Saudi Arabia in the 1980's: Foreign Policy, Security and Oil*. Washington, 1981  
 Safran, N., *Saudi Arabia: The Ceaseless Quest for Security*. Harvard Univ. Press, 1985.

# SENEGAL

Capital: Dakar

Population: 6.98m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$420 (1986)

## République du Sénégal

**HISTORY.** France established a fort at Saint-Louis in 1659 and later acquired other coastal settlements from the Dutch; the interior was occupied in 1854–65. Senegal became a territory of French West Africa in 1902 and an autonomous state within the French Community on 25 Nov. 1958. On 4 April 1959 Senegal joined with French Sudan to form the Federation of Mali, which achieved independence on 20 June 1960, but on 22 Aug. Senegal withdrew from the Federation and became a separate independent republic. Senegal was a one-Party state from 1966 until 1974, when a pluralist system was re-established. Léopold Sédar Senghor, President since independence, resigned on 31 Dec. 1980 and was succeeded by his Prime Minister, Abdou Diouf. From 1 Feb. 1982 Senegal joined with Gambia to form a Confederation of Senegambia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Senegal is bounded by Mauritania to the north and north-east, Mali to the east, Guinea and Guinea-Bissau to the south and the Atlantic to the west with The Gambia forming an enclave along that shore. The republic has a total area of 196,192 sq. km; the population (census, 1976) 4,907,507 (estimate, 1988) 6,982,000. In 1988 there were 5,200 refugees in Senegal, of whom 5,000 from Guinea-Bissau.

The areas (in sq. km), Census populations and capitals of the 10 regions are:

Region	sq. km	1984 Estimate	Capital	1979 Estimate
Dakar	550	1,380,700	Dakar	978,553
Diourbel	4,359	501,000	Diourbel	55,307
Fatick	7,935	506,500	Fatick	...
Kaolack	16,010	741,600	Kaolack	115,679
Kolda	21,011	517,600	Kolda	...
Louga	29,188	493,900	Louga	37,665 <sup>1</sup>
Saint-Louis	44,127	612,100	Saint-Louis	96,594
Tambacounda	57,602	355,000	Tambacounda	29,054
Thiès	6,601	837,900	Thiès	126,886
Ziguinchor	7,339	361,000	Ziguinchor	79,464

<sup>1</sup> 1976.

Ethnic groups are the Wolof (36% of the population), Serer (19%), Fulani (13%), Tukolor (9%), Diola (8%), Malinké (6%), Bambara (6%) and Sarakole (2%).

Vital statistics (1984): Births, 306,500 (birth rate 4.9%); deaths, 116,700 (death rate 1.9%).

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate with wet and dry seasons. The rains fall almost exclusively in the hot season, from June to Oct., with high humidity. Dakar. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 22" (541 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the Constitution promulgated on 7 Mar. 1963 (as subsequently amended) there are simultaneous elections by universal adult suffrage for 5-year terms for both the Presidency and for the unicameral 120-member National Assembly; for the latter 60 members are elected in single-member constituencies and 60 by a form of proportional representation.

In the general election of Feb. 1983 the *Parti socialiste* gained 111 seats, the *Parti démocratique sénégalais* 8 seats and the *Rassemblement national démocratique* 1.

On 14 Nov. 1981, President Diouf of Senegal and President Jawara of The Gambia issued a joint communiqué proposing the establishment of a confederation, to be known as Senegambia. Both parliaments ratified the agreement at



the end of the year. The instruments of ratification were exchanged in Banjul on 11 Jan. 1982 and the Confederation formally came into existence on 1 Feb.

The agreement stated that each confederal state shall maintain its independence and sovereignty and calls for the integration of the armed security forces, economic and monetary union, co-operation in the fields of communications and external relations, and the establishment of joint institutions (i.e. President, Vice President, Council of Ministers, Confederal Parliament). The President of the Confederation would be President Diouf, and the Vice President President Jawara. The Confederal Parliament would have one third Gambian representation and two thirds Senegalese.

President Jawara said in Nov. 1981 that 'the Confederation would not compromise any of the agreements which link The Gambia direct to Britain and the rest of the Commonwealth'.

*President of the Republic:* Abdou Diouf (took office in Jan. 1981, re-elected 1983 and 1988).

The Council of Ministers was composed as follows in June 1988:

*Foreign Affairs:* Ibrahima Fall. *Defence:* Medoune Fall. *Interior:* André Sonko. *Economy and Finance:* Serigne Lamine Diop. *Culture:* Moustapha Kâ. *National Education:* Ibrahima Niang. *Higher Education:* Hakhir Thiam. *Rural Development:* Cheikh Abdoul Khadre Cissokho. *Industrial Development and Handicrafts:* Famara Ibrahima Sagna. *Housing and Urban Affairs:* Momodou Abbas Bâ. *Commerce:* Seydina Oumar Sy. *Planning and Co-operation:* Djibo Kâ. *Communications:* Robert Sagna. *Justice, Keeper of the Seals:* Seydou Madani Sy. *Civil Service and Labour:* Moussa N'Doye. *Public Health:* Mme. Therese King. *Social Development:* Ndioro Ndiaye. *Water Resources:* Samba Yella Diop. *Youth and Sports:* Abdoulaye Makhtar Diop. *Equipment:* Alassane Dialy Ndiaye. *Tourism:* Malik Sy.

*Ministers-Delegate:* Farba Lo (*Relations with National Assembly*), Fatou Ndongo Dieng (*Emmigration*), Moussa Toure (*Finance and Economy*), Mbaye Diouf (*Rural Development, Animal Resources*), Moctar Kebe (*Rural Development, Protection of the Environment*).

*National flag:* Three vertical strips of green, yellow, red, with a green star in the centre.

The official language is French.

*Local Government.* Senegal is divided into 10 *régions*, each with an appointed governor and an elected regional assembly. They are divided into 30 *départements*, each under an appointed *Préfet*, and thence into 99 *arrondissements*.

**DEFENCE.** There is selective conscription.

**Army.** The Army had a strength of 8,500 (1989), organized in 5 infantry battalions, 1 engineer, 1 armoured, 1 airborne, 1 commando and 1 artillery battalions, and minor units. Equipment includes about 70 armoured cars. There is also a paramilitary force of gendarmerie and customs.

**Navy.** The flotilla includes 1 new corvette, 1 patrol vessel, 3 patrol craft, 3 fast gunboats, 20 small patrol craft, 1 fishery protection trawler, 4 coastal patrol launches, 3 landing craft, 2 minor amphibious craft, 12 service craft, 1 tug and 1 training tender. Personnel (1989) totalled 700 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Senegal Air Force, formed with French assistance, has 4 Rallye Guerrier and 5 Magister armed trainers and 1 Twin Otter for maritime patrol, 1 Boeing 727 and 1 Caravelle VIP transports, 6 F.27 twin-turboprop transports, 2 Broussard and 1 Cessna 337 liaison aircraft, 2 Puma, 1 Gazelle and 2 Alouette II helicopters, plus 4 Rallye trainers. Personnel (1989) 500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Senegal is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Seventh 4-year Development Plan (1985–89) provides 645,000m.

francs CFA for investment in the productive sector, improved infrastructure and for reducing foreign debt.

**Budget.** The budget for 1986–87 balanced at 319,679m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The currency is the *franc* CFA, with a parity value of 50 *francs* CFA to 1 French *franc*.

**Banking.** The bank of issue is the *Banque Centrale des États de l'Afrique de l'Ouest*. The principal commercial bank is the *Union Sénégalaise de la Banque pour le Commerce et l'Industrie* (established 1961 with assistance from Crédit Lyonnais) in which the Senegalese government has the majority share-holding; also state controlled is the *Banque Nationale de Développement du Sénégal*. There are 3 private banks.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) was 737m. kwh. Supply 110 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Extraction of phosphate rock in 1985 amounted to 1.8m. tonnes of calcium phosphate and 365,640 of aluminium phosphate. Titanium ores and zirconium are extracted from coastal (sand) deposits. Iron ore deposits amounting to an estimated 980m. tonnes have been located at La Faleme.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area (19.7m. hectares), 5.35m. were under cultivation, 5.84m. were pasture, 5.45m. were forested and 3.03m. were uncultivated land in 1981. The chief cash crops (1986 production in 1,000 tonnes) are groundnuts (720) and seed cotton (50); the main food crops are millet (703), sugar-cane (800), rice (128), maize (128), tomatoes (25), mangoes (34), onions (32).

Livestock (1987): 2.2m. sheep, 1.1m. goats, 2.2m. cattle, 210,000 pigs, 210,000 asses, 6,000 camels and 208,000 horses.

**Forestry.** Production (1985) amounted to 4.1m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** The 1985 catch totalled 244,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Dakar has numerous industrial works. A major ship-repairing complex has been constructed there for vessels of up to 28,000 tonnes. Cement production (1983) 395,300 tonnes; petroleum products, 336,000; groundnut oil, 217,000.

**Trade Unions.** There are two major unions, the *Union Nationale des Travailleurs Sénégalais* (government-controlled) and the *Confédération Nationale des Travailleurs Sénégalais* (independent) which broke away from the former in 1969.

**Commerce.** In 1985 imports totalled 283,093m. francs CFA and exports 182,987m. francs CFA; 32% of imports came from France and 28% of exports went to France. In 1985 petroleum products provided 22% of exports, fisheries 22%, phosphates 10% and cotton fabrics 4%.

Total trade between Senegal and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	23,789	17,671	13,881	11,307	11,284
Exports and re-exports from UK	15,772	13,514	12,328	11,878	14,840

**Tourism.** In 1986, 235,000 tourists visited Senegal.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The length of roads (1983) was 14,700 km of which 3,650 km was bitumenized. In 1984 there were 73,665 passenger cars and 36,144 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** There are 4 railway lines: Dakar-Kidira (continuing in Mali), Thiès-Saint-Louis (193 km), Guinguinéo-Kaolack (22 km), and Diourbel-Touba (46 km). Total length (1986), 905 km (metre gauge). In 1985–86 railways carried 332,000 passengers and 2m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** In 1984 230m. passenger-km and 17.4m. tonne-km of freight were flown. There are major airports at Yoff, Saint-Louis, Tambacounda and Ziguinchor.

**Shipping.** In 1986 the merchant marine numbered 148 vessels of 41,651 DWT. There is a river service on the Senegal from Saint-Louis to Podor (363 km) open throughout the year, and to Kayes (924 km) open from July to Oct. The Senegal River is closed to foreign flags. The Saloum River is navigable as far as Kaolack, the Casamance River as far as Ziguinchor.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1983, 530 post offices. Telephones in 1984 numbered 32,997. In 1985 there were 11 radio stations with 450,000 radio receivers and 2 television stations with 55,000 receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1975 there were 77 with a seating capacity of 33,500.

**Newspapers.** The main daily is *Le Soleil*, circulation (1984) 30,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are *juges de paix* in each *département* and a court of first instance in each region. Assize courts are situated in Dakar, Kaolack, Saint-Louis and Ziguinchor, while the Court of Appeal resides in Dakar.

**Religion.** The population (1980) was 91% Moslem, 6% Christian (mainly Roman Catholic) and 3% animist.

**Education.** Secondary education is provided at 11 *lycées*, 66 *collèges d'enseignement secondaire*, 2 *lycées techniques*, 2 *écoles normales* and 3 *cours normaux*. In 1985 there were 583,507 pupils and 11,513 teachers in 2,171 primary schools; and 113,653 pupils and (1983) 2,346 teachers in 162 secondary schools. The University in Dakar, established on 24 Feb. 1957, had 11,474 students in 1984. A second university was being built (1985) at St Louis.

**Health.** In 1978 there were 44 hospitals with 7,092 beds; and in 1981, 449 doctors, 70 dentists, 139 pharmacists, 326 midwives and 1,766 state nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Senegal in Great Britain (11 Phillimore Gdns., London, W8 7QG)  
*Ambassador:* Gen. Idrissa Fall, GCVO, MBE (accredited 1 Nov. 1984)

Of Great Britain in Senegal (20 Rue du Docteur Guillet, Dakar)  
*Ambassador:* John Macrae, CMG.

Of Senegal in the USA (2112 Wyoming Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Falilou Kane.

Of the USA in Senegal (Ave. Jean XXIII, Dakar)  
*Ambassador:* Lannon Walker.

Of Senegal to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Massamba Sarré

## Further Reading

Crowder, M., *Senegal: A Study in French Assimilation*, OUP, 1962

Gellar, S., *Senegal*. Boulder, 1982.—*Senegal: An African Nation between Islam and the West*. Aldershot, 1983

Samb, M. (ed.) *Spotlight on Senegal*. Dakar, 1972



# SEYCHELLES

*Capital:* Victoria

*Population:* 67,000 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$3,590 (1988)

**HISTORY.** The islands were first colonized by the French in 1756, in order to establish plantations of spices to compete with the Dutch monopoly. They were captured by the English in 1794 and incorporated as a dependency of Mauritius in 1814. In Nov. 1903 the Seychelles archipelago became a separate colony. Internal self-government was achieved on 1 Oct. 1975 and independence as a republic within the Commonwealth on 29 June 1976. The first President, James Mancham, was deposed in a *coup* on 5 June 1977 and replaced by his Prime Minister.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Seychelles consists of 115 islands and islets in the Indian ocean, north of Madagascar, with a combined area of 175 sq. miles (455 sq. km) within two distinct groups. The Mahé or Granitic group of 41 islands cover 92 sq. miles (239 sq. km); the principal island is Mahé, with 59 sq. miles (153 sq. km) and 59,500 inhabitants at the 1987 census, the other inhabited islands of the group being Praslin, La Digue, Silhouette, Fregate and North, which together have 7,100 inhabitants.

The Outer or Coralline group comprises 74 islands spread over a wide area of ocean between the Mahé group and Madagascar, with a total land area of 83 sq. miles (214 sq. km) and a population of about 400. The main islands are the Amirante Isles (including Desroches, Poivre, Daros and Alphonse), Coetivy Island and Platte Island, all lying south of the Mahé group; the Farquhar, St Pierre and Providence Islands, north of Madagascar; and Aldabra, Astove, Assumption and the Cosmoledo Islands, about 1,000 km south-west of the Mahé group. Aldabra (whose lagoon covers 55 sq. miles), Farquhar and Desroches were transferred to the new British Indian Ocean Territory in 1965, but were returned by Britain to the Seychelles on the latter's independence in 1976. Population (1987, estimate) 67,000.

Vital statistics (1987): Births, 1,684; deaths, 505.

The official languages are Creole, English and French but 95% of the population speak Creole.

**CLIMATE.** Though close to the equator, the climate is tropical. The hot, wet season is from Dec. to May, when conditions are humid, but south-east trades bring cooler conditions from June to Nov. Temperatures are high throughout the year, but the islands lie outside the cyclone belt. Victoria. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 95" (2,375 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution came into force on 5 June 1979, under which the Seychelles People's Progressive Front is the sole legal Party and nominates all candidates for election. There is a unicameral People's Assembly comprising 23 members elected for 5 years with 2 further nominated members. There is an Executive President directly elected for a 5-year term, who nominates and leads a Council of Ministers.

*President:* France Albert René.

*Education, Information and Youth:* James Michel. *National Development:* Jacques Hodoul. *Health and Social Services:* Joseph Belmont. *Political Organization:* Esme Jumeau. *Internal Affairs:* Rita Sinon. *Tourism and Transport:* Ralph Adam. *Manpower:* Jeremie Bonnelame.

*National flag:* Divided horizontally red over green by a wavy white stripe, with red of double width.

**DEFENCE.** The Defence Force comprises all services. Personnel (1989) 1,300 organized in 1 infantry battalion, 2 artillery troops and a marine group and an Air

Wing with 2 Islanders, 1 Defender and 1 Merlin IIB for transport and 2 Chetak helicopters. There is also a People's Militia (5,000).

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Seychelles is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Development Plan, 1985-89 envisages investment of Rs 2,800m. aimed at reducing unemployment and improving the balance of payments.

**Budget,** in 1m. rupees, for calendar years:

	1984 <sup>1</sup>	1985	1986	1987
Recurrent revenue	395.9	476.4	515.6	639.2
Recurrent expenditure	484.5	543.6	591.1	641.8

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

**Currency.** The currency is the Seychelles *rupee* divided into 100 cents. In March 1989, £1 = 9.70 *rupees*; US\$1 = 5.64 *rupees*.

**Banking.** Central Bank of Seychelles, Development Bank of Seychelles and Seychelles Savings Bank have head offices and Barclays Bank, Standard Bank, Bank of Credit and Commerce International, Banque Française Commerciale, Habib Bank and Bank of Baroda, have branches in Victoria and Mahé.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 70.4m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Coconuts are the main cash crop (production, 1987, 21,000 tonnes). Other main crops produced for export are cinnamon bark (1987, 389 tonnes) and copra (1987, 1,307 tonnes). Tea production, 1987, 109 tonnes. Crops grown for local consumption include cassava, sweet potatoes, yams, sugar-cane, bananas and vegetables. The staple food crop, rice, is imported.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 2,000; pigs, 15,000; goats, 4,000.

**Fisheries.** The fishing industry is being expanded for home consumption and export. Catch (1987) 3,944 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Local industry is expanding, the largest development in recent years being the brewery (output, 1987, 4,650,000 litres). Other main activities include production of soft drinks (4,412,000 litres in 1987), cigarettes (67.8m. in 1987) and paints, dairy, processing of cinnamon and coconuts.

**Commerce.** Total trade, in rupees, for calendar years:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports (less re-exports)	618,700,000	704,700,000	652,000,000	635,800,000
Domestic exports	21,400,000	21,900,000	13,900,000	35,800,000

Principal imports (1987): Manufactured goods, Rs 197.8m.; food, beverages and tobacco, Rs 134.6m.; petroleum products, Rs 94.9m., machinery and transport equipment, Rs 156.3m. mainly (1985) from UK (15%), Italy (10%), France (9%) and the Republic of South Africa (9%). Principal exports (1987): Copra, Rs 3.2m.; fresh and frozen fish, Rs 7.9m.; cinnamon bark, Rs 1.6m.; canned tuna, Rs 20.8m. mainly (1985) to Pakistan (35%), Japan (31%) and Réunion (12%).

Total trade between Seychelles and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,663	938	884	1,297
Exports and re-exports from UK	9,561	9,639	10,770	10,478

**Tourism.** Tourism has now established itself as an important sector of the economy. The number of visitors has grown very rapidly since the opening of the inter-

national airport in 1978 and in 1979 there were 78,852. Visitor numbers declined to 55,867 in 1983 but were 71,626 in 1987.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There is a good system of tarmac (165 km) and earth roads (104 km) in Mahé; extensive roadmaking is being undertaken.

**Aviation.** Air Seychelles operates 4 services a week between Europe and Seychelles and regular services from Mahé to Praslin and Fregate Islands. British Airways operates 2 services a week between London, Bahrain, Mauritius and Seychelles. Air France operates 3 services a week. Kenya Airways operates a service twice a week. TPC Air also operate services. In 1987 aircraft movements were 1,652; passenger movements, 381,000 (including domestic flights); freight loaded, 417 tonnes, unloaded, 1,149 tonnes.

**Shipping.** The main port is Victoria. Shipping (1987), goods unloaded, 272,700 tonnes, goods loaded, 13,200 tonnes. There are regular cargo vessels from Australia and the Far East, South Africa and Europe. The vessel *Cinq Juin* travels to and from Mauritius and visits the outlying islands.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Services operated by Cable & Wireless Ltd provide telegraphic communications with all parts of the world by satellite, the company's radio-telephone service also extends to all principal countries in the world. In 1978, an automatic dialling telex system was introduced. Telephones in Jan. 1983 numbered 4,512. There are 2 radio stations and (1983) 18,000 receivers. There were 3,500 television sets in 1984 and Radio Television Seychelles runs radio and television services in Creole, English and French.

**Cinema.** In 1987 there was 1 cinema with seating capacity of 200.

**Newspaper.** In 1987 there was 1 daily newspaper.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The police force numbered 492 all ranks and 69 special constabulary.

**Religion.** 90% of the inhabitants are Roman Catholic and 8% Anglican.

**Education.** Equality of educational opportunity exists for all children for a minimum of 9 years.

In 1986 there were 14,663 pupils and 681 teachers in primary schools, 2,433 pupils and 112 teachers in secondary schools and 1,541 students and 160 teachers in the Polytechnic. In 1983, a total of 239 students were undergoing training overseas, mainly in the UK; 153 were in university, 39 teacher-training and 6 nursing.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 57 doctors, 9 dentists, 275 nurses and 373 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Seychelles in Great Britain (50 Conduit St., London, W1A 4PE)

*High Commissioner:* Robert F. Delpech.

Of Great Britain in Seychelles (Victoria Hse., Victoria, Mahé)

*High Commissioner:* Peter Smart.

Of Seychelles in the USA and to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of the USA in Seychelles (Victoria Hse., Victoria, Mahé)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Information Office, 52 Kingsgate House, Victoria, Mahé.

*Agricultural Survey 1980.* Government Printer

*Seychelles in Figures.* Statistics Division, Mahé, 1986

Benedict, M. and Benedict, B., *Men, Women and Money in Seychelles.* Univ. of California Press, 1983

Franda, M., *The Seychelles: Unquiet Islands.* Boulder, 1982

Lionnet, G., *The Seychelles.* Newton Abbot, 1972

Mancham, J. R., *Paradise Raped: Life, Love and Power in the Seychelles.* London, 1983



# SIERRA LEONE

*Capital:* Freetown

*Population:* 3.88m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$310 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Colony of Sierra Leone originated in the sale and cession, in 1787, by native chiefs to English settlers, of a piece of land intended as a home for natives of Africa who were waifs in London, and later it was used as a settlement for Africans rescued from slave-ships. The hinterland was declared a British protectorate on 21 Aug. 1896. Sierra Leone became independent as a member state of the Commonwealth on 27 April 1961, and a republic on 19 April 1971.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Sierra Leone is bounded on the north-west, north and north-east by the Republic of Guinea, on the south-east by Liberia and on the south-west by the Atlantic ocean. The coastline extends from the boundary of the Republic of Guinea to the north of the mouth of the Great Scarcies River to the boundary of Liberia at the mouth of the Mano River, a distance of about 212 miles (341 km). The area of Sierra Leone is 27,925 sq. miles (73,326 sq. km). Population (census 1985), 3,517,530, of whom about 2,000 are Europeans, 3,500 Asians and 30,000 non-native Africans. Estimate (1988) 3,875,000. The capital is Freetown, with 469,776 inhabitants.

Vital statistics (1986); Live births, 75,862; deaths, 6,272.

Sierra Leone is divided into 3 provinces and the Western Area:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1985</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Estimate 1988</i>
Western Area	557	554,243	Freetown	469,776
Southern province	19,694	740,510	Bo	26,000
Eastern province	15,553	960,551	Kenema	13,000
Northern province	35,936	1,262,226	Makeni	12,000

The principal peoples are the Mendes (34% of the total) in the south, the Temnes (31%) in the north and centre, the Konos, Fulanis, Bulloms, Korankos, Limbas and Kissis.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate, with marked wet and dry seasons and high temperatures throughout the year. The rainy season lasts from about April to Nov., when humidity can be very high. Thunderstorms are common from April to June and in Sept. and Oct. Rainfall is particularly heavy at Freetown because of the effect of neighbouring relief. Freetown. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 135" (3,434 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** For earlier Constitutional history see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK 1978-79, p. 1046. Following a referendum in June 1978, a new Constitution was instituted under which the ruling All People's Congress (APC) became the sole legal Party. The 124-member Parliament comprises 105 members directly elected for a 5-year term (latest elections, 31 May 1986), together with 12 Paramount Chiefs representing the 12 districts and 7 members appointed by the President. The President is elected for a 7-year term by the National Delegates' Conference of the APC; he appoints and leads a Council of Ministers.

*President:* Maj.-Gen. Dr Joseph Saidu Momoh.

*First Vice-President, Minister of Lands, Housing and Planning:* Abu B. Kamara.

*Finance:* Dr Sheka Kanu. *Foreign Affairs:* Abdul Karim Koroma.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, white, blue.

**Local Government.** The provinces are administered through the Ministry of Internal Affairs and divided into 148 Chiefdoms, each under the control of a Paramount Chief and Council of Elders known as the Tribal Authorities, who are responsible for the maintenance of law and order and for the administration of justice (except for serious crimes). All of these Chiefdoms have been organized into local government units, empowered to raise and disburse funds for the development of the Chiefdom concerned.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 infantry battalions, 2 artillery batteries and 1 engineer squadron. Strength (1989), 3,000 officers and men.

**Navy.** There are 1 *ex*-Soviet gunboat, 1 coastal patrol craft and 3 landing craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled 150 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Wing of the Defence Force appears to be inactive, although the Defence Ministry is listed as the owner of 1 BO 105 and 2 AS.355 Ecureuil helicopters carrying civil registrations. Personnel, about 30.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Sierra Leone is a member of UN, OAU, ECOWAS, the Commonwealth, the Mano River Union and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A development plan (1981–84) was launched to achieve self-sufficiency in food, better infrastructure and to increase mineral production.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in 1,000 leone) for years ending 30 June:

	1982–83	1983–84	1984–85	1985–86
Revenue	243,300	327,900	317,100	524,700
Expenditure	480,000	537,900	507,100	771,100

**Currency.** The Bank of Sierra Leone, which was established on 4 Aug. 1964, is responsible for providing the currency in the country. It introduced on 4 Aug. 1964 a decimal currency, the *leone* and the *cent*. The paper currency consists of 1, 2, 5, 10 and 20 *leone* and 50-*cent* notes; the coinage of 1, 5, 10, 20 and 50 *cents*.

At 30 June 1982 total Sierra Leone notes and coins in circulation was Le. 91.75m. In March 1989, £1 = 70.79 *leone*; US\$1 = 41.13 *leone*.

**Banking.** The Standard Chartered Bank Sierra Leone, the National Commercial Bank, International Bank of Credit and Commerce, International Bank of Trade and Industry and Barclays Bank Sierra Leone have their headquarters at Freetown; the Standard Chartered Bank has 14, Barclays Bank 12 and the National Commercial Bank, 8 branches and agencies.

The Post Office Savings Bank had 94,910 depositors with total credit balance of nearly Le. 3,455,469 in 1983.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 85m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** The chief minerals mined are diamonds (243,500 carats, 1984–85), bauxite (1m. tonnes), gold (12,253 oz.), and rutile (76,900 tonnes). Molybdenite is being prospected. Rutile production started in 1979; potential production 100,000 tonnes per annum. Iron ore production was resumed in Feb. 1983 at Marampa by a new company, Austro Minerals, who withdrew in March 1985, having produced 151.2 tonnes since July 1984.

**Agriculture.** In the western area farming is largely confined to the production of cassava and garden crops, such as maize, vegetables and mangoes, for local consumption. In the regions the principal products include rice, which is the staple food of the country, cassava, groundnuts and export crops such as palm-kernels, cocoa beans, coffee, ginger and piassava. Cattle production is important in the

northern part of the country, and most of the poultry, eggs and pork are produced in the Western Area. Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Rice, 525; cassava, 113; palm oil, 44; palm kernels, 30; coffee, 11; cocoa, 9.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 330,000; goats, 180,000; sheep, 330,000; chickens, 6m.

**Fisheries.** The estimated tonnage of catch of all species of fish during 1983 was 126,098 tonnes. The FAO has carried out a 5-year survey of pelagic fish resources along the coastline and continental shelf.

Total catch of fish is still below the demand of the country. In 1980, 247 tonnes of fish value Le. 483,488 were imported.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Four pioneer oil-mills for the expressing of palm-oil are operated by the Sierra Leone Produce Marketing Board. Government also operates 4 rice-mills, and there are a number of privately owned mills. At Kenema the Government Forest Industries Corporation produces sawn timber, joinery products (including prefabricated buildings) and high-class furniture. In addition, there is a smaller privately owned saw-mill at Panguma, Kenema and Hangha, and several small furniture workshops are used internally. Village industries include fishing, fish curing and smoking, weaving and hand methods of expressing palm-oil and cracking palm kernels.

**Labour.** A large proportion of the population is engaged in agriculture and about 125,000 workers are in wage-earning employment. The number of workers in establishments employing 6 or more persons was 64,092 in 1982, distributed as follows: Services, 24,142; mining and quarrying, 6,170; transport, storage and communications, 4,814; construction, 9,721; commerce, 6,870; manufacturing, 9,407; agriculture, forestry and fishing, 5,834; electricity and water services, 24,142.

**Commerce.** Total trade (in 1,000 leone) for calendar years:

	1981	1982	1983	1984
Imports	360,440	368,473	289,828	418,286
Exports	168,576	133,245	178,558	334,420

Of the imports (1980) 22% came from the UK, 9% from Japan and 7% from Federal Republic of Germany. Of the exports (1980), 41% went to the UK, 11% to the USA, 8% to the Netherlands and 7% to Switzerland; diamonds formed 45%, coffee 13% and cocoa 13%.

Total trade between Sierra Leone and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	25,971	17,435	11,599	12,679	14,462
Exports and re-exports from UK	19,532	23,620	17,403	16,221	14,256

**Tourism.** Tourism is being developed and is a major growth industry. In 1986 there were 194,000 tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1977) about 4,406 miles of main roads, of which 665 miles are surfaced with bitumen.

Motor vehicles licensed in 1984 totalled 36,192; passenger cars, 19,040; buses and trucks, 1,818, and motor cycles, 7,056.

**Railways.** The government railway closed in 1974, though in 1987 there were plans to resume operations, and an 84-km mineral line of 1,067-mm gauge connecting Marampa with the port of Pepel has been rehabilitated.

**Aviation.** Freetown Airport (Lungi), situated north of Freetown in the Port Loko District, is the only international airport in Sierra Leone.

The airport is served by Sierra Leone Airlines, Ghana/Nigeria Airways, British Caledonian, Union de Transport Aériens, KLM, Air Afrique and Aeroflot. A once weekly non-stop flight from London (Gatwick) to Freetown and *vice versa* is also provided.



Sierra Leone Airlines provide domestic flights daily (except Sundays) from Hastings (14 miles from Freetown) to Gbangbatoke, Bo, Kenema, Yengema; twice weekly to Bonthe, and occasional charter flights to Marampa and Port Loko. Domestic air taxi services also operate.

**Shipping.** During 1984 the total imports handled by the port of Freetown amounted to 351,205 freight-tons and exports 371,158 freight-tons. In 1982 a total of 576 vessels called at Freetown; 564 were cargo vessels and 12 were tourist ships with a total of 718 passengers.

Bonthe-Sherbro, 80 miles south of Freetown, is used for the shipment of rutile and bauxite. Pepel lies some 12 miles from Freetown and exports iron ore.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Posts and Telecommunications Department maintains a trunk network of radio and overhead telephone and telegraph routes of approximately 3,000 miles linking the Western Area with the other regions. Automatic telephone exchanges have been introduced at the regional centres of Bo, Kenema and Makeni; microwave radio relay link now replaces overhead open wire on main trunk routes. An extension programme to link important mining areas at Koidu, Mokanji and Pepel to the national network by microwave links has been established.

The wired broadcasting relay service was replaced in Jan. 1964 by a transistor radio service. Approximately 20,000 transistor radios purchased under this scheme are now in service.

Number of telephones (1981) 220,000. Telegraphic facilities are provided at 58 offices.

There were (1983) 37 post offices and 76 postal agencies.

The number of private wireless-licence holders (1983, estimate) was 600,000 and 22,000 television sets were in operation in 1984.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court has jurisdiction in civil and criminal matters. Subordinate courts are held by magistrates in the various districts. Native Courts, headed by court Chairmen, apply native law and custom under a criminal and civil jurisdiction. Appeals from the decisions of magistrates' courts are heard by the High Court. Appeals from the decisions of the High Court are heard by the Sierra Leone Court of Appeal. Appeal lies from the Sierra Leone Court of Appeal to the Supreme Court which is the highest court.

**Police.** The police force at 31 Dec. 1982 had an authorized strength of 136 superior police officers, 485 junior police officers and 4,934 other ranks including 415 women. In the provinces each Chiefdom keeps an additional force known as Chiefdom Police.

A non-pensionable force, known as the Auxiliary Force and consisting of 3 Junior police officers and 260 other ranks, are helping the regular force in maintaining law and order in the diamond protected area in the Eastern region.

**Religion.** The Moslem community was estimated to comprise 39% of the population in 1980, while 52% followed traditional tribal religions; Protestants were 6% and Roman Catholics 2% of the total. The Temne people are mainly Moslem and the Mende chiefly animists. Spiritualist churches were growing in 1985.

**Education** (1984). There were over 1,267 registered primary schools; total enrolment (1982) 276,911. Primary education is partially free but not compulsory though parents and guardians are urged to send their children and wards to school. School attendance varies considerably in different parts of the country. There were (1984) 184 secondary schools with (1982) 66,464 pupils; 71 of these schools are fully assisted by the Government. Technical education was provided in 4 technical institutes, 2 trade centres and in the technical training establishments of the mining companies. There is also a rural institute.

Fourah Bay College (1,400 students) and Njala University College are the 2 constituent colleges of the University of Sierra Leone. The Institute of Education,

which is part of the University, is now responsible for teacher education, educational research and curriculum development in the country.

There is a paramedical school at Bo in the Southern region.

**Health** (1984). In the Western Area there are 13 government hospitals (1,108 beds and 217 cots), including a maternity hospital, a children's hospital and an infectious diseases hospital near Freetown. There are 6 government health centres in the Western Area. Three private hospitals are located in Freetown with 108 beds. A mental hospital at Kissy has accommodation for 224 patients. In the provinces there are 14 government hospitals, 6 hospitals associated with mining companies and 7 mission hospitals. There is a school of nursing in Freetown. There are 156 government dispensaries and health treatment centres and two military hospitals with 124 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Sierra Leone in Great Britain (33 Portland Pl., London, W1N 3AG)

*High Commissioner:* Caleb Aubee.

Of Great Britain in Sierra Leone (Standard Bank of Sierra Leone Ltd Bldg., Lightfoot Boston St., Freetown)

*High Commissioner:* D. W. Partridge, CMG.

Of Sierra Leone in the USA (1701 19th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Sahr Matturi.

Of the USA in Sierra Leone (Corner Walpole and Siaka Stevens St., Freetown)

*Ambassador:* Cynthia Perry.

Of Sierra Leone to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Thomas Kargbo.

## Further Reading

*Atlas of Sierra Leone.* Ed. Survey and Lands Dept. Freetown, 1953

*Background to Sierra Leone.* Freetown, 1980

Cole, B. P., *Sierra Leone Directory of Commerce, Industry and Tourism.* 1985

Fyfe, C., *A History of Sierra Leone.* OUP, 1962.—Fyfe, C. and Jones, E. (ed.) *Freetown.* Sierra Leone Univ. Press and OUP, 1968

Fyfe, C. N. and Jones, E. D., *A Krio-English Dictionary.* OUP and Sierra Leone Univ. Press, 1980

Kup, A. P., *Sierra Leone.* Newton Abbot, 1975

Porter, A. T., *Creoledom: A Study in the Development of Freetown Society.* OUP, 1963

# REPUBLIC OF SINGAPORE

Population: 2.61m. (1987)  
GNP per capita: US\$7,464 (1987)

**HISTORY.** For the early history of the settlement (1819) and colony (1867) see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1959, pp. 246 f.

By an agreement entered into between the Governments of Malaysia and of the State of Singapore on 7 Aug. 1965, effective on 9 Aug. 1965, Singapore ceased to be one of the 14 states of the Federation of Malaysia and became an independent sovereign state. The separation was ratified by the Constitution and Malaysia (Singapore Amendment) Act of the Malaysian Parliament on 9 Aug. The 2 governments agreed to enter into a treaty on external defence and mutual assistance. The Singapore Government retains its executive authority and legislative powers under its State Constitution and took over the powers of the Malaysian Government under the Malaysian Constitution in Singapore. The sovereignty and jurisdiction of the head of the Malaysian State was transferred to the Singapore Government. Civil servants working in Singapore for the Federal Departments became Singapore civil servants. Singapore citizens ceased to be Malaysian citizens.

Singapore accepted responsibility for international agreements entered into by the Malaysian Government on its behalf.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Republic of Singapore consists of Singapore Island itself, and some 57 islets.

Singapore Island is situated off the southern extremity of the Malay peninsula, to which it is joined by a causeway carrying a road, railway and water pipeline. The Straits of Johore between the island and the mainland are about three-quarters of a mile wide. The island is some 26.1 miles (42 km) in length and 14.3 miles (23 km) in breadth, and about 240.4 sq. miles (622.6 sq. km) in area, including some 57 adjacent islets, 20 of which are inhabited.

Census of population (1980): 1,856,237 Chinese, 351,508 Malays, 154,632 Indians and 51,568 others; total 2,413,945. Estimate (mid-1987), 2,612,800.

*Report on the Census of Population 1980.* Dept. of Statistics, Singapore, 1980

**CLIMATE.** The climate is equatorial, with uniformly high temperatures and no defined wet or dry season, rain being plentiful throughout the year. Jan. 78.1°F (25.6°C), July 80.8°F (27.1°C). Annual rainfall 93.2" (2,367 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** By a constitutional amendment the name of the state was changed to 'Republic of Singapore', the head of state was named 'President of Singapore' and the legislative assembly was renamed 'Parliament'.

Parliament consists of 81 members, elected by secret ballot from single-member and group representation constituencies and 1 non-constituency member of Parliament, and is presided over by a Speaker, chosen by Parliament from its own members or from outside Parliament. In the latter case, the Speaker has no vote. With the customary exception of those serving criminal sentences, all citizens over 21 are eligible to vote irrespective of sex, race, education or property qualification. There is a common roll without communal electorates. Citizenship is automatic by birth; it can also be acquired by registration or by naturalization.

A Presidential Council was established under Part IVA of the Constitution enacted on 9 Jan. 1970. The general function of the Council is to consider and report on matters affecting persons of any racial or religious community in Singapore as referred to it by Parliament or the Government. The Council will draw attention to any bill or subsidiary legislation which in the opinion of the Council is a differentiating measure.



Parliament is composed of 80 People's Action Party members, 1 Singapore Social Democratic Party member and 1 non-constituency member of Parliament from the Workers' Party.

*President of Singapore:* Wee Kim Wee (sworn in 2 Sept. 1985).

The People's Action Party Cabinet at Sept. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Lee Kuan Yew.

*First Deputy Prime Minister and Minister for Defence:* Goh Chok Tong. *Second Deputy Prime Minister:* Ong Teng Cheong. *National Development:* S. Dhanabalan. *Education:* Dr Tony Tan Keng Yam. *Environment:* Dr Ahmad Mattar. *Communications and Information, Second Minister for Defence (Policy):* Dr Yeo Ning Hong. *Law and Home Affairs:* S. Jayakumar. *Finance:* Dr Richard Hu Tsu Tau. *Labour:* Lee Yock Suan. *Foreign Affairs and Community Development:* Wong Kan Seng. *Trade and Industry and Second Minister for Defence (Services):* Lee Hsien Loong. *Acting Minister for Health and Senior Minister of State:* Dr Yeo Cheow Tong.

There are 5 Ministers of State.

*National flag:* Horizontally red over white, charged in the canton with a crescent and a circle of 5 stars, all in white.

Malay, Chinese, Tamil and English are the official languages; English is the language of administration.

**DEFENCE.** The Ministry of Defence exercises command and control over all armed forces in the republic. It comprises 5 major divisions, *i.e.*, the general staff, manpower, logistic, security and intelligence and finance divisions. Compulsory military service in peace-time was introduced in 1967. Periods of service are officers/n.c.o.s. 30 months, other ranks 24 months. Reserve liability is to 40 for men, 50 for officers.

The governments of Australia, Britain, Malaysia, New Zealand and Singapore continue to co-operate closely in defence arrangements.

**Army.** The Army consists of 3 divisions: The 3rd (Tiger) division, the 6th (Cobra) division and the 9th (Panther) division, the latter 2 being reservist formations. Standard infantry weapons are the SAR-80 assault rifle, AR-15 (M-16) rifle, Ultimax 100 light machine gun, 60 mm and 81 mm mortars, 84 mm Carl Gustav anti-tank guns and the Jeep-mounted 106 mm recoilless guns. Most of these weapons and the ammunition are manufactured locally. Strength (1989) 45,000 (including 30,000 conscripts) and 170,000 reserves. Paramilitary forces number 37,500.

**Navy.** The flotillas comprise 6 fast missile craft, all of German design but 4 built in Singapore, 6 fast patrol craft built by Vosper Thornycroft (2 at Portsmouth, Britain, and 4 in Singapore), 2 *ex*-US coastal minesweepers, 12 coastal patrol boats, 2 training vessels, 6 landing ships (*ex*-USN LST) and 8 small landing craft (2 *ex*-Australian). Six missile corvettes of 600 tons are under construction or on order, and the acquisition of 1 or more 1,000 ton ships is being considered.

Personnel in 1989 numbered 4,500 officers and men. There are over 60 coastal patrol craft deployed by the marine police and 3 small survey craft operated by the Singapore Port Authority.

**Air Defence Command.** The formation of an Air Defence Command began in 1968. The Republic of Singapore Air Force now has 2 squadrons of F-5E supersonic fighters supported by 2-seat F-5Fs; 4 fighter-bomber squadrons equipped with A-4S Skyhawks, supported by TA-4S two-seat trainers; 1 squadron of Hunter jet fighters and reconnaissance-fighters, supported by Hunter 2-seat trainers; a squadron of Strikemaster armed trainers; a radar unit and Bloodhound, Rapier and Hawk surface-to-air missile squadrons; a transport squadron of C-130s (including 4 equipped as flight refuelling tankers); a squadron of Skyvans equipped for search and rescue; a squadron of Bell UH-1H Iroquois and Bell 212 helicopters; and training units equipped with SF.260MS piston-engined basic trainers, SIAI-Marchetti S.211 jets, AS 350 Ecureuil helicopters, plus four E-2C Hawkeye AWACS aircraft.

Eight F-16 Fighting Falcons will enter service in mid-1989. Personnel strength (1989) about 6,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Singapore is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, the Colombo Plan and ASEAN.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The GNP in 1987, at current cost was S\$43,272.2m., an increase of 9.4% over 1986.

**Budget.** Public revenue and expenditure for financial years (in S\$1 m.):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	10,059	13,058	10,271	12,584	11,556
Expenditure <sup>2</sup>	17,243	21,533	10,816	15,271	12,446

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

<sup>2</sup> Includes the transfer from the Consolidated Revenue Account to the Development Fund.

**Currency.** The *Singapore dollar* (S\$) is divided in 100 *cents*. Gross circulation in Dec. 1987 was S\$5,885.7m. In March 1989, £1 = 3.33 *dollars*; US\$1 = 1.93 *dollars*.

**Banking.** The functions of the Commissioner of Banking have been assumed from 1 Jan. 1971 by the Monetary Authority of Singapore, which performs all the functions normally associated with a central bank, except the issuing of currency which is the responsibility of the Board of Commissioner of Currency.

The Development Bank of Singapore was established as a fully licensed bank in 1968, and is the largest local bank in terms of assets. Primarily it provides long-term financing of manufacturing and other industries. At 31 Dec. 1987 it had a paid up capital of S\$346m. and shareholders' funds amounting to S\$2,312.5m.

There were 137 commercial banks with 404 banking offices operating in Singapore in 1987. The total assets/liabilities amounted to S\$86,411.6m. as at Nov. 1987. Total deposits of non-bank customers amounted to S\$35,700m. while loans and advances including bills financing, totalled S\$38,203.9m. at 31 Nov. 1987.

There were 63 merchant banks operating in Singapore at 31 Dec. 1987. Of these, 62 had an Asian Currency Unit each and were engaged actively in Asian dollars transactions. Their main functions included underwritings, portfolio fund management, financial advisory services and loan syndication.

In Dec. 1987, the Singapore Post Office Savings Bank had 3,253,403 savings accounts and a total deposit balance of all accounts of S\$11,165m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system or the International System of Units (SI) was introduced in 1971 in Singapore.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The Public Utilities Board is responsible for the provision of electricity, gas and water. Electrical power is generated by 4 oil-fired power stations, with a total generating capacity of 3,371 mw at the end of 1987. Production (1987) 12,000m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Singapore is the largest oil refining centre in Asia.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture contributed less than 1% of GDP and employed only 1% of the labour force in 1987. Most food is imported but Singapore is self-sufficient in eggs and pork, and vegetables are produced for domestic consumption. Orchids are a valuable export.

**Fisheries.** As the prospect of increasing fish production from inshore waters is poor, in 1967 various projects were introduced with the aim of making Singapore self-sufficient in fish as well as a major fishing base in the region.

The Jurong fishing port and fish market began operating 26 Feb. 1969. A Fishery Training Institute was established at Changi with the assistance of the United

Nations Development Programme (Special Fund) to train youths and fishermen in modern fishing techniques. At Changi, too, a Marine Fisheries Research Department was set up under the sponsorship of the South-East Asian Fisheries Development Centre. Research on fish culture and ornamental fish was carried out at the Freshwater Fisheries Laboratory at Sembawang. The ornamental fish industry is a valuable foreign exchange earner. Export of aquarium fish in 1987, S\$53.9m. The total supply of fresh fish in 1987 was 112,079 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The largest industrial area is the Jurong Industrial Estate with 1,820 factories employing 99,708 workers in March 1987.

Production, 1987 (in S\$1m.), totalled 45,020.4, including machinery and appliances, 19,490; petroleum, 7,287; food and beverages, 2,689; chemical products, 3,511; transport equipment, 1,941; fabricated metal products, 2,095; paper products and printing, 1,666; wearing apparel, 1,514; rubber processing, 159.

**Labour.** In June 1987, 1,192,900 persons were employed, of whom 1,003,800 were employees, 60,200 were employers, 102,400 were self-employed and 26,500 were unpaid family workers. The majority were working in manufacturing, 318,900; trade, 279,400.

The Employment Act and the Industrial Relations Act provide principal terms and conditions of employment such as hours of work, sick leave and other fringe benefits. A new labour legislation was introduced allowing youths of 14-16 years to work in industrial establishments, and also children from 12-14 years to be employed in approved apprenticeship schemes. A trade dispute may be referred to the Industrial Arbitration Court which was established in 1960.

The Ministry of Labour operates an employment service to assist job seekers to obtain employment and employers to recruit workers. In addition it provides the handicapped with specialized on-the-job training. The Central Provident Fund was established in 1955 to make provision for employees in their old age. On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 1.9m. members with S\$30.6m. standing to their credit in the fund. The total number of active employers registered with the board in 1986 was 69,309.

**Trade Unions.** There were 89 registered trade unions comprising 83 employee unions, 5 employer unions and 1 federation of trade unions at 31 Dec. 1987. The total membership of employee unions numbered 205,717, of whom 201,603 belonged to 70 employee unions affiliated to the National Trades Union Congress. Members of employer unions numbered 1,118.

## Commerce.

Imports and exports (in S\$1m.), by country, 1987:

	<i>Imports (c.i.f.)</i>	<i>Exports (f.o.b.)</i>
Australia	1,313.3	1,649.7
China	2,975.8	1,546.8
France	1,415.9	920.4
Germany, Federal Republic of	2,359.4	1,952.5
Hong Kong	1,801.8	3,814.9
Japan	14,029.3	5,449.3
Kuwait	1,557.7	122.7
Malaysia	9,477.4	8,559.6
Saudi Arabia	2,835.6	578.7
Taiwan	3,143.5	1,636.7
Thailand	2,136.5	2,553.5
United Arab Emirates	1,128.6	437.9
UK	2,174.8	1,713.4
USA	10,062.1	14,695.0

The major trading countries for 1987 were US (19.2%), Japan (15.1%), Malaysia (14%) and the EEC (12.1%). In 1987, imports (S\$68,415.2m.) increased by 23.2%. Exports increased from S\$48,985.5m. in 1986 to S\$60,265.7m. in 1987.



Exports (1987, in S\$1m.): Machinery and transport equipment, 26,273.8 (of which electrical machinery, 14,035.3; transport equipment, 1,484.4); mineral fuels, 9,746.7; crude materials, 3,003.3 (of which rubber, 1,544.1); chemicals, 3,761.5; food, beverages and tobacco, 3,104.3; clothing, 2,095.7; animal and vegetable oils, 795.9; textiles, 1,330.3; scientific and optical instruments, 1,045.1; metal goods, 626.6; iron and steel, 471.8.

Imports (1987, in S\$1m.): Machinery and transport equipment, 27,534; mineral fuels, 12,525.7; food, beverages and tobacco, 4,546.8; chemicals, 4,081.9; crude materials, 2,267.2 (of which rubber, 1,159.4); textiles, 2,878; iron and steel, 1,661.1; animal and vegetable oils, 791.8; metal goods, 1,332.5; scientific and optical instruments, 1,571.1; non-metal mineral goods, 1,045.1; paper and paper-board and related articles, 886.2.

In the following table (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling) the imports include produce from Sabah, Sarawak and other eastern places, transhipped at Singapore, which is thus entered as the place of export:

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	488,421	441,345	462,878	473,814	579,368
Exports and re-exports from UK	556,443	612,920	547,419	602,627	632,452

**Tourism.** There were 3,678,809 visitors in 1987, spending S\$4,760m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 2,760 km of public roads, of which 2,655 km are asphalt-paved. In Dec. 1987 motor vehicles numbered 471,124, of which 222,487 were private cars, 8,733 buses, 116,544 motor cycles and scooters, 13,633 public cars including taxis, school taxis and private hire cars.

**Railways.** A 16-mile (25.8-km) main line runs through Singapore, connecting with the States of Malaysia and as far as Bangkok. Branch lines serve the port of Singapore and the industrial estate at Jurong. A metro opened in 1987.

**Aviation.** The new international airport at Changi was completed and operational from 1 July 1981. Forty-seven international airlines operated 1,300 scheduled flights a week, totalling 72,067 commercial aircraft movements at Singapore International Airport in Changi in 1987. Freight handled (1987) 418,253 tonnes and there were 11,181,641 passengers.

**Shipping.** A total of 61,611 vessels of 206m. NRT entered Singapore during 1987.

**Post and Telecommunications.** In March 1987, 88 post offices and 44 postal agencies were in operation. Telephones numbered 1.16m. in 1987.

**Cinemas** (1987). There were 41 cinemas with a total seating capacity of 48,000.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 7 daily newspapers, in 4 languages, with a total daily circulation of 700,925.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court in Singapore which consists of the High Court, the Court of Appeal and the Court of Criminal Appeal. The Supreme Court is composed of a Chief Justice and 6 Judges. An appeal from the High Court lies to the Court of Appeal in civil matters and to the Court of Criminal Appeal in criminal matters. Further appeal can in certain cases be made to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. The High Court has original civil and criminal jurisdiction as well as appellate civil and criminal jurisdiction in respect of appeals from the Subordinate Courts. There are 12 district courts, 14 magistrates' courts, 1 juvenile and 1 coroner's court and a small claims tribunal.

**Religion.** The major religions are Buddhism, Taoism, Islam, Christianity and Hinduism. At the 1980 census 56% of the population aged 10 years and above were Buddhists and Taoists, 16% Moslems, 10% Christians and 4% Hindus.

**Education.** Statistics of schools in 1987:

<i>Primary</i>	<i>Schools</i>	<i>Pupils</i>	<i>Teachers</i>
Government schools	169	199,174	8,062
Government-aided schools	60	62,225	2,371
Private schools	1	204	9
<i>Secondary</i>			
Government schools	113	148,240 <sup>1</sup>	6,960
Government-aided schools	44	52,885 <sup>1</sup>	2,341
Private schools	4	1,732 <sup>1</sup>	68

<sup>1</sup> Includes pre-university classes.

The National University of Singapore was established on 8 Aug. 1980 following the merger of the University of Singapore and the Nanyang University. The National University of Singapore has 8 faculties: Arts and social sciences, law, science, medicine, dentistry, engineering, architecture and building, accountancy and business administration. Post-graduate studies are offered in all the faculties and there are 3 post-graduate schools for medical, dental and management studies. Total enrolment for 1987-88 was 13,238 students.

The Nanyang Technological Institute, situated in the former Nanyang University, was established on 8 Aug. 1981. The institute had an enrolment of 3,940 students in 1987-88. It will be developed into a University of Technology by 1992. The Singapore Polytechnic had 13,753 students and the Ngee Ann Polytechnic 10,858 students in 1987-88. The Institute of Education, established on 1 April 1973, is now the only institution responsible for teacher education in Singapore and for promoting research in education. There were 1,557 students in 1987-88.

The Adult Education Board and the Industrial Training Board were merged to form the Vocational and Industrial Training Board, on 1 April 1979. The VITB has taken over all the functions and responsibilities in vocational training and continuing education. The VITB runs 16 training institutes and centres offering full-time and part-time courses. The total student enrolment for 1987 was 28,863.

**Health.** There were 9 government hospitals with a total of 7,717 beds in 1987. There were 2,941 doctors registered.

**DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES**

Of Singapore in Great Britain (2 Wilton Cres., London, SW1X 8RW)

*High Commissioner:* Abdul Aziz Mahmood.

Of Great Britain in Singapore (Tanglin Rd, Singapore, 1024)

*High Commissioner:* Michael E. Pike, CMG.

Of Singapore in the USA (1824 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Tommy Koh Thong Bee.

Of the USA in Singapore (30 Hill St., Singapore, 0617)

*Ambassador:* Daryl Arnold.

Of Singapore to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Chan Heng Chee.

**Further Reading**

*Statistical Information:* The Department of Statistics (PO Box 3010, Maxwell Road, Singapore 9050) was established 1 Jan. 1922. Its publications include: *Singapore Trade Statistics* (monthly), *Monthly Digest of Statistics*, *Yearbook of Statistics*, *Singapore Demographic Bulletin* (monthly), *Census of Population 1980*, *Singapore Yearbook of Labour Statistics*. *Chief Statistician:* Khoo Chian Kim.

National Library. *Books About Singapore*. Singapore. Biennial

*Singapore. Constitution.* The Constitution of Singapore. Singapore, 1966

*The Budget for the Financial Year 1988-89.* Singapore, 1988

*Singapore.* Economic Committee, *The Singapore Economy: new direction: report of the Economic Committee*, Ministry of Trade and Industry, Singapore, 1986

- Singapore*. Singapore, Information Division, Ministry of Communications and Information
- Singapore. Government Gazette* (published weekly with supplement)
- Economic Survey of Singapore*. Ministry of Trade and Industry, Singapore (Annual)
- Singapore. Facts and Pictures*. Singapore, Information Division, Ministry of Communications and Information
- Singapore Government Directory*. Singapore, Information Division, Ministry of Communications and Information
- Singapore: An Illustrated history, 1941-48*. Ministry of Culture, Singapore, 1984
- The Statutes of the Republic of Singapore*. Rev. 12 vols., 1985 (with annual supplements). Singapore, Law Revision Commission, 1986—.
- Chew, P. S. J. (ed.) *Singapore Development: Policies and Trends*. OUP, 1983
- Clammer, J. R., *Singapore: Ideology, Society, Culture*. Singapore, 1985
- Drysdale, J., *Singapore: Struggle for Success*. Singapore, 1984
- Josey, A., *Lee Kuan Yew, The Struggle for Singapore*. London, 1980.—*Singapore: Its Past, Present and Future*. Singapore, 1979
- Lim, L., *Trade, Employment and Industrialisation in Singapore*. Geneva, 1986
- Quah, J. S. T., *Government and Politics of Singapore*. OUP, 1985
- Quah, J. S. T. and Quah, S. T., *Singapore [Bibliography]* Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1988
- Saw, S. H., *Population Control for Zero Growth in Singapore*. Singapore, 1980
- Tan, C. H., *Financial Institutions in Singapore*. 4th ed. Singapore, 1985
- Turnbull, C. M., *A History of Singapore, 1819-1975*. OUP, 1977
- You, P. S. and Lim, C. Y. (eds.) *Singapore: Twenty-five years of Development*. Singapore, 1984
- National Library*: National Library, Stamford Rd, Singapore. *Director*: Mrs Toke-Lan Wicks.



# SOLOMON ISLANDS

*Capital:* Honiara

*Population:* 285,796 (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$530 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The Solomon Islands were discovered in 1568 by Alvaro de Mendana, on a voyage of discovery from Peru; 200 years passed before European contact was again made with the Solomons. The southern Solomon Islands were placed under British protection in 1893; the eastern and southern outliers were added in 1898 and 1899. Santa Isabel and the other islands to the north were ceded by Germany in 1900. Full internal self-government was achieved on 2 Jan. 1976 and independence on 7 July 1978.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Solomon Islands lie within the area 5° to 12° 30' S. lat. and 155° 30' to 169° 45' E. long. The group includes the main islands of Guadalcanal, Malaita, New Georgia, San Cristobal (now Makira), Santa Isabel and Choiseul; the smaller Florida and Russell groups; the Shortland, Mono (or Treasury), Vella La Vella, Kolombangara, Ranongga, Gizo and Rendova Islands; to the east, Santa Cruz, Tikopia, the Reef and Duff groups; Rennell and Bellona in the south; Ontong Java or Lord Howe to the north; and innumerable smaller islands. The land area of the Solomons is estimated at 10,640 sq. miles (27,556 sq. km). The larger islands are mountainous and forest clad, with flood-prone rivers of considerable energy potential. Guadalcanal has the largest land area and the greatest amount of flat coastal plain.

Population of the Solomon Islands was (census, 1986) 285,796. Growth rate (1988) 3.4%.

The islands are administratively divided into 7 provinces. These provinces are (with 1987 estimated population): Western Province (62,300), Guadalcanal, including Honiara (71,300), Central (20,600), Malaita (80,700), Makira and Ulawa (20,800), Temotu (15,300), Isabel (15,500).

The capital, Honiara, on Guadalcanal, is the largest urban area, with estimated population in 1985 of 26,000.

English is the official language but there are at least 87 vernacular languages.

**CLIMATE.** An equatorial climate with only small seasonal variations. South-east winds cause cooler conditions from April to Nov., but north-west winds for the rest of the year bring higher temperatures and greater rainfall, with annual totals ranging between 80'' (2,000 mm) and 120'' (3,000 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Solomon Islands is a constitutional monarchy with the British Sovereign (represented locally by a Governor-General, who must be a Solomon Island citizen) as Head of State, while legislative power is vested in the unicameral National Parliament composed of 38 members, elected by universal adult suffrage for four years (subject to dissolution), and executive authority is effectively held by the Cabinet, led by the Prime Minister.

The Governor-General is appointed for up to five years, on the advice of Parliament, and acts in almost all matters on the advice of the Cabinet. The Prime Minister is elected by and from members of Parliament. Other Ministers are appointed by the Governor-General on the Prime Minister's recommendation, from members of Parliament. The Cabinet is responsible to Parliament. Emphasis is laid on the devolution of power to provincial governments, and traditional chiefs and leaders have a special role within the arrangement.

At the General election held on 24 Oct. 1984, 13 seats were gained by the Solomon Islands United Party (SIUP), 12 seats by the People's Alliance Party, 4 seats by Solomons Ano Sagufenua (SAS) and 8 seats by others and independents, with one seat vacant.

*Governor General:* Sir George Lepping, GCMG, MBE.

*Prime Minister:* Rt. Hon. Ezekiel Alebua, PC.

*National flag:* Divided blue over green by a diagonal yellow band, and in the canton 5 white stars.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Solomon Islands is a member of UN, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1985–89 Development Plan envisages improvement in natural resources, health and education.

**Budget.** The budget for 1988 envisaged expenditure of SI\$170.76m. of which SI\$76.47m. was for development.

**Currency.** The *Solomon Island dollar* (SI\$) was introduced in 1977. In March 1989, US\$1 = 2.18 dollars; £1 = 3.74 dollars.

**Banking.** In 1988 there were 3 commercial banks: Australia and New Zealand Banking Group, National Bank of Solomon Islands and Westpac Banking Corporation.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 24,205,117 kwh. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** There are reserves of bauxite and phosphate, and there is a small industry extracting gold (65,807 grams refined, in 1986) and silver (70,158) by panning.

**Agriculture.** Land is held either as customary land (88% of holdings) or registered land. Customary land rights depend on clan membership or kinship. Only Solomon Islanders own customary land; only Islanders or government members may hold perpetual estates of registered land. Coconuts, cocoa, rice and other minor crops are grown. Main food crops coconut, cassava, sweet potato, yam, taro and banana: Solomon Islands Plantations Ltd has a plantation of about 40,000 hectares of oil-palm, near Honiara. Production of copra (1987), 27,447 tonnes; palm oil, 11,998; cocoa, 2,964; palm kernels, 2,432.

Rice-cropping in 1983 yielded 4,608 tonnes of milled rice. Rice has been imported since the 1986 cyclone.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 23,000; pigs, 51,000.

**Forestry.** Forests cover about 2.4m. hectares, with (1987) an estimated 10.4m. cu. metres of commercial timber. Production (1987) of logs, 301,700 cu. metres and sawn timber, 17,600 cu. metres; total exports, 285,650 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Catch of tuna (1987) 32,210 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industries include palm oil milling, rice milling, fish canning, fish freezing, saw milling, food, tobacco and soft drinks. Other products include wood and rattan furniture, fibreglass articles, boats, clothing and spices.

**Commerce.** Total exports (1987) SI\$128.3m. The main imports (1987, in SI\$1m.) were machinery and transport equipment, 39.28; mineral fuels and lubricants, 19.88; manufactured goods, 27.7; food, 20.23. Total imports SI\$134,944,000. Main exports included fish products, 52.58; wood products, 37.17; cocoa beans, 9.54; copra, 10.26; palm oil products, 7.63. In 1987 imports were mainly from Australia (41%), Japan (19%), Singapore (9%), New Zealand (8%) and the UK (4%); exports were mainly to Japan (36%), Thailand (32%), UK (14%) and USA (5%), on a regional basis South East Asia accounted for 57%, EEC, 22% and Oceania, 12%.

Total trade between Solomon Islands and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	7,714	4,074	4,461	5,153
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,862	1,618	1,566	2,576

**Tourism.** In 1987, there were 12,555 visitors of whom 60.1% were tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 1,300 km of motorable roads of which 100 km of bitumen-topped roads; the rest were coral or gravel. In 1986 there were 3,629 vehicles, of which about 1,827 were commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** (1988) An international airport 13 km from Honiara is served by Air Nauru, Air Niugini, Air Pacific and Solomon Islands Airline. There are 27 airfields. Solomon Islands Airline also provides inter-island transport and scheduled flights to Kieta in Papua New Guinea.

**Shipping.** International seaports are Honiara, and Yandina in the Russell group. Shipping services are maintained with Australia, New Zealand, UK and the Far East. Honiara port handles about 250 overseas vessels annually. In 1987 the merchant marine comprised 26 vessels of 5,811 GRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In addition to the general post office, there are 9 post offices, 4 sub post offices and 95 Postal Agencies. In addition there are 143 licensed stamp dealers. Number of telephones (1988), 2,500. A VHF radio telephone service operates internally as well as overseas. Solomon Islands Broadcasting Corp. transmits 118 hours a week from Honiara, Gizo and Lata. In 1987 there were about 35,000 radio receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 3 weekly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Civil and criminal jurisdiction is exercised by the High Court of Solomon Islands, constituted 1975. A Solomon Islands Court of Appeal was established in 1982. Jurisdiction is based on the principles of English law (as applying on 1 Jan. 1981). Magistrates' courts can try civil cases on claims not exceeding \$2,000, and criminal cases with penalties not exceeding 14 years' imprisonment. Certain crimes, such as burglary and arson, where the maximum sentence is for life, may also be tried by magistrates. There are also local courts, which decide matters concerning customary titles to land; decisions may be put to the Customary Land Appeal Court. There is no capital punishment.

**Religion.** At the 1986 census, 33.9% of the population were Anglican, 19.2% Roman Catholic, 17.6% South Sea Evangelical and 23.5% other Protestant.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 42,374 pupils and 2,124 teachers in 462 primary schools, and 5,604 pupils and 300 teachers in 12 provincial and 8 national secondary schools.

Training of teachers and trade and vocational training is carried out at the college of Higher Education. There were 413 students on overseas scholarships in 1987.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 8 hospitals, 31 doctors, 464 registered nurses and 283 nursing aides.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the Solomon Islands in Great Britain

*High Commissioner:* Wilson Ifunaoa (accredited 12 Feb. 1987).

Of Great Britain in the Solomon Islands (Soltel House, Mendana Ave., Honiara)

*High Commissioner:* Junor Young.

Of the Solomon Islands in the USA and to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Francis J. Saemala.

## Further Reading

*Solomon Islands Hand Book* 1983. Government Information Service, Honiara, 1983

Bennett, J. A., *Wealth of the Solomons: A History of a Pacific Archipelago, 1800-1978*. Univ. of Hawaii Press, 1987

Kent, J., *The Solomon Islands*. Newton Abbot, 1972



# SOMALIA

*Capital:* Mogadishu

*Population:* 6.26m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$280 (1986)

Jamhuriyadda  
Dimugradiga  
Somaliya

**HISTORY.** The Somali Republic came into being on 1 July 1960 as a result of the merger of the British Somaliland Protectorate, which became independent on 26 June 1960, and the Italian Trusteeship Territory of Somalia.

On 21 Oct. 1969 Maj.-Gen. Mohammed Siyad Barre took power in a *coup*, suspended the Constitution and formed a Supreme Revolutionary Council to administer the country, which was renamed the Somali Democratic Republic. Constitutional government was re-established on 23 Sept. 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Somalia is bounded north by the Gulf of Aden, east and south by the Indian ocean, and west by Kenya, Ethiopia and Djibouti. Total area 637,657 sq. km (246,201 sq. miles). Census population (1975) 3,253,024 of whom 15% urban. Estimate (1988) 6.22m. In Aug. 1987 there were 700,000 refugees from Ethiopia.

The capital is Mogadishu (1m. including a floating population of about 250,000), other large towns being Hargeisa (400,000), Baidoa (300,000), Burao (300,000), Kismaayo (200,000), Merca (100,000), Kisimayu (70,000) and Berbera (65,000).

**CLIMATE.** Much of the country is arid, though rainfall is more adequate towards the south. Temperatures are very high on the northern coasts. Mogadishu. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 17" (429 mm). Berbera. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 97°F (36.1°C). Annual rainfall 2" (51 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution came into force on 23 Sept. and was amended in Dec. 1984. The sole legal Party (since 1 July 1976) is the Somali Revolutionary Socialist Party, administered by a 51-member Central Committee. There is an Executive President nominated by the Central Committee and elected for a 7-year term by direct popular vote; legislative power resides with a People's Assembly consisting of 171 members directly elected for a 5-year term from a single list of 171 SRSP candidates, together with a further 6 members appointed by the President. The President appoints and leads a Council of Ministers.

*President:* Maj.-Gen. Mohammed Siyad Barre (elected 1980, and re-elected in 1986).

*Prime Minister:* Lieut.-Gen. Mohammed Ali Samater.

*National flag:* Light blue with a white star in the centre.

The national language is Somali. Arabic is also an official language and English and Italian are extensively spoken.

*Local Government.* There are 18 regions, sub-divided into 84 districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 4 tank, 45 mechanized and infantry, 4 commando and 1 surface-to-air missile, 3 field artillery brigades. Equipment includes 140 T-34/-54/-55, 123 M-47 and 30 Centurion main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 61,300. There are additional paramilitary forces: Police (8,000), Border Guards (1,500) and People's Militia (20,000).

**Navy.** The flotilla includes 4 fast attack/torpedo/patrol craft, 2 fast missile craft, 4

fast torpedo boats, 5 patrol craft, 1 medium landing ship and 4 minor landing craft. All are former Soviet naval units which are deteriorating with the withdrawal of Soviet spares. Personnel totalled 1,200 officers and men in 1989.

**Air Force.** Formed with a nucleus of aircraft taken over from the former Italian Air Corps of Somalia, in 1960, the Air Corps was built up with Soviet aid. Current equipment includes 6 MiG-21 and 20 F-6 (Chinese-built MiG-19) supersonic fighters, 8 Hunter fighter-bombers (including 1 trainer), about 8 MiG-17 jet-fighters and 2 MiG-15UTI two-seat advanced trainers, and small transport, helicopter and training units. Latest equipment includes 2 Aeritalia G222, 6 Aviocar and 2 An-26 twin-turboprop transports, 5 SIAI-Marchetti SF.260W armed trainers and 4 Agusta-Bell 212 helicopters from Italy, plus 4 Islander and 2 P-166 light transports. Serviceability of most aircraft is reported to be low. Personnel (1989) 2,500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Somalia is a member of UN, OAU, the Arab League, the Islamic League and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1988 balanced at Som.Sh.15,800m..

**Currency.** The currency is the *Somali shilling*, divided into 100 cents. The money is issued in notes of 5, 10, 20 and 100 shillings and coins of 1, 5, 10, 50 cents and 1 shilling. In March 1989 £1 = 421.6 Som.Sh.; US\$1 = 244.99 Som.Sh.

**Banking.** The bank of issue is the Central Bank of Somalia (founded in 1960 as the Somali National Bank). All foreign banks were nationalized in May 1970, and the Commercial and Savings Bank of Somalia and the Somali Development Bank, both state-owned, are the only other banks.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity production (1986) was 137m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Deposits of iron ore in the south and gypsum in the north are known to exist. Beryl and columbite are also found in the north. None are commercially exploited. Several firms hold exploration and drilling licences for oil. Uranium is found in the Juba area.

**Agriculture.** Somalia is essentially a pastoral country, and about 80% of the inhabitants depend on livestock-rearing (cattle, sheep, goats and camels). In Southern Somalia, especially along the Shebeli and Juba rivers, there are banana and sugar-cane plantations with a cultivated area of some 90,000 hectares. Estimated production, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane, 550; bananas, 70; maize, 382; sorghum, 251; grapefruit, 9; seed cotton, 3. Fresh fruit and oil seeds are grown in increasing quantities.

Livestock (1987): 18.5m. goats; 11.5m. sheep; 6.35m. camels; 5.5m. cattle; 1,000 horses, 25,000 asses and 23,000 mules.

**Forestry.** Production (1984) 5.2m. cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** 21 co-operatives, including 4,000 full-time and 10,000 part-time fishermen, caught some 15,300 tonnes in 1984.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** A few small industries existed in 1986 including sugar refining, food processing, textile and petroleum refining. Production (1981): Textiles, 10.1m. yards; sugar, 26,800 tonnes; flour and pasta, 5,900 tonnes.

**Commerce.** In 1983 imports were Som.Sh.2,844m. and exports Som.Sh.1,423m. The chief exports are fresh fruit, livestock, hides and skins.

In 1984, 20% of imports came from Italy, 20% from USA and 13% from Saudi Arabia, while 59% of exports went to Saudi Arabia.

Total trade between the Somali Republic and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,582	1,448	740	825	1,151
Exports and re-exports from UK	14,165	8,646	9,139	11,417	10,379

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Somalia has no developed transport system. Internal freight and passenger transport is almost entirely by means of road haulage. In 1985 there were 17,215 km of roads (2,500 km were paved), 17,754 passenger cars and 9,533 commercial vehicles.

**Aviation.** There is a commercial national airline, Somali Airlines. Mogadishu airport is used by Alitalia, Alyemda, Air Tanzania, PIA, Saudi Airways and Kenya Airways.

**Shipping.** There are 4 deep-water harbours at Kisimayu, Berbera, Marka and Mogadishu. The merchant fleet (1985) amounted to 26 vessels of 28,053 gross tons.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1985), about 6,000. The state radio stations transmit in Somali, Arabic, English and Italian from Mogadishu, and Hargeisa. Receivers (1983) 134,000. A television service was started in 1983.

**Cinemas.** In 1970 there were 26 cinemas with a seating capacity of 23,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 84 district courts, each with a civil and a criminal section. There are 8 regional courts and 2 Courts of Appeal (at Mogadishu and Hargeisa), each with a general section and an assize section. The Supreme Court is in Mogadishu.

**Religion.** The population is almost entirely Sunni Moslems.

**Education.** The nomadic life of a large percentage of the population inhibits education progress. In 1982 there were 220,680 pupils and 9,460 teachers in primary schools, there were 53,391 pupils and 2,201 teachers in secondary schools, and 1,836 students with 133 teachers at teacher-training establishments. The National University of Somalia in Mogadishu (founded 1959) had 2,332 students in 1980.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 450 doctors, 180 pharmacists, 2 dentists, 556 midwives and 1,834 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Somalia in Great Britain (60 Portland Pl., London, W1N 3DG)

*Ambassador:* Ahmed Jama Abdulle (accredited 28 Oct. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Somalia (Waddada Xasan Geedd Abtoow 7/8, Mogadishu)

*Ambassador:* Jeremy Varcoe.

Of Somalia in the USA (600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)

*Ambassador:* Abdullah Addou.

Of USA in Somalia (Corso Primo Luglio, Mogadishu)

*Ambassador:* T. Frank Crigler.

Of Somalia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Abdillahi Said Osman.

## Further Reading

*Background to the Liberation Struggle of the Western Somalis.* Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Mogadishu, 1978

Darch, C., *Somalia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986

Legum, C. and Lee, B., *Conflict in the Horn of Africa*. London, 1977



# REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

*Capital:* Pretoria  
*Population:* 29.6m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$1,800 (1986)

## Republiek van Suid-Afrika

**HISTORY.** The Union of South Africa was formed in 1910 and comprised the former self-governing British colonies of the Cape of Good Hope, Natal, the Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The Union remained a member of the British Commonwealth until it became a republic on 31 May 1961.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** South Africa is bounded north by South West Africa, Botswana and Zimbabwe, north-east by Mozambique and Swaziland, east by the Indian ocean, south and west by the South Atlantic. Lesotho forms an enclave between the Orange Free State and Natal. The total area of the republic was (1983) 433,678<sup>1</sup> sq. miles (1,123,226 sq. km), divided between the provinces as follows: Cape Province, 249,331 (645,767); Natal, 33,578 (86,967); Transvaal, 101,351 (262,499); Orange Free State, 49,418 (127,993).

On 25 Dec. 1947 the Union formally took possession of Prince Edward Island and, on 30 Dec., of Marion Island, about 1,200 miles south-east of Cape Town.

<sup>1</sup> Excludes Walvis Bay (434 sq. miles), which is an integral part of the Cape Province but is administered under Act No. 24 of 1922, and also excludes South West Africa, Transkei, Ciskei, Bophuthatswana and Venda.

The census taken in 1904 in each of the 4 colonies was the first simultaneous census taken in South Africa. In 1911 the first Union census was taken.

	<i>All races</i>		<i>Whites</i>		<i>Non-whites</i>		
	<i>Total</i>	<i>Whites</i>	<i>Non-Whites</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>
1904	5,174,827	1,117,234	4,057,593	635,317	481,917	2,046,370	2,011,223
1911	5,972,757	1,276,319	4,696,438	685,206	591,113	2,383,879	2,312,559
1921	6,927,403	1,521,343	5,406,060	783,006	738,337	2,753,188	2,652,872
1936	9,587,863	2,003,334	7,584,529	1,017,557	985,777	3,818,211	3,766,318
1946	11,415,925	2,372,044	9,043,881	1,194,201	1,177,843	4,610,862	4,433,019
1951	12,671,452	2,641,689	10,029,763	1,322,754	1,318,935	5,109,331	4,920,432
1960	15,994,181	3,080,159	12,914,022	1,534,923	1,545,236	6,504,317	6,409,705
1970	21,402,470	3,726,540	17,675,930	1,856,180	1,870,360	8,689,920	8,986,010
1980 <sup>1</sup>	24,885,960	4,528,100	20,357,860	2,265,400	2,262,700	10,393,780	9,964,080
1985 <sup>2</sup>	23,391,245	4,574,339	18,816,906	2,254,801	2,319,538	9,293,081	9,523,825

<sup>1</sup> Excludes Transkei, Bophuthatswana and Venda, but includes Ciskei (677,820).

<sup>2</sup> Also excludes Ciskei.

Of the non-White population in 1985, 15.2m. were Black, 2.8m. Coloured and 821,361 Asiatic. The numerically leading Black nations (1980) are the Zulu (5,682,520), Xhosa (2,987,340), Sepedi (North Sotho) (2,347,600), Seshoeshoe (South Sotho) (1,742,060), Tswana (1,357,360). Population, (1985) of the Black national areas: Kwa Zulu, 3,738,334; Gazankulu, 496,200; Lebowa, 1,833,144; Qwaqwa, 180,924; Ka Ngwane, 391,205; Kwa Ndebele, 235,511. These places are included in the land area figures for the provinces where they lie, but their inhabitants are not included in the provincial population figures. Growth rate 1980-88, 1.8% (Black, 2.4%; Coloured, 1.9%; Asian, 1.8%; White, 1.1%).

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	Whites			Immigrants	Asians and Coloureds			
	Births	Deaths	Marriages	Emigrants	Births	Deaths	Marriages	
1984	81,550	38,175	44,840	28,793	8,550	111,946	30,895	29,282
1985	79,863	37,348	41,313	17,284	11,401	104,088	27,594	28,006
1986	72,938	38,241	41,575	6,994	13,711	101,331	28,714	28,276

Of the 6,994 immigrants in 1986, 3,818 were from Europe (of whom 2,012, UK); 2,433 from Africa (of whom 1,859, Zimbabwe); 359 from the Americas and 232 from Asia: of the 13,711 emigrants 6,741 went to Europe (of whom 5,407 to UK); 3,978 to Australia; 747 to Africa.

The registration of Black essential data was introduced on a compulsory basis many years ago. However, despite serious efforts on the part of the registering authorities, the Blacks are still largely reluctant to have their essential data registered. Consequently no complete vital statistics are available for this population group.

Urban areas, according to the 1985 census:

<i>Urban Area</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>White</i>	<i>Coloured</i>	<i>Asian</i>	<i>Black</i>
Johannesburg/Randburg	1,609,408	515,670	121,860	57,775	914,103
Cape Peninsula	1,911,521	542,705	1,068,921	18,389	281,506
Durban/Pinetown/Inanda	982,075	307,930	59,925	490,857	123,363
East Rand	1,038,108	399,445	33,390	17,472	587,801
Pretoria/Wonderboom/					
Soshanguve	822,925	432,267	21,215	18,017	351,426
Port Elizabeth/Uitenhage	651,993	173,273	172,186	7,346	299,188
West Rand	647,334	233,460	19,206	7,631	387,037
Vanderbijlpark/Vereeniging/					
Sasolburg	540,142	167,905	15,321	4,529	352,387
Bloemfontein	232,984	95,271	20,152	35	117,526
Pietermaritzburg	192,417	60,161	13,771	57,006	61,479
Free State Goldfields	320,319	69,387	6,246	2	244,184
Kimberley	149,667	33,782	50,214	1,202	64,469
East London/King William's					
Town	193,819	77,827	29,008	2,921	84,063

In 1980 (census) Afrikaans was the home language of 2,581,080 Whites, English of 1,763,220 Whites. Of the 15,970,019 Black, Nguni languages (mainly Zulu, Xhosa, Swazi and Ndebele) are spoken by about 10m.; Sotho languages (Northern, Western and Southern) by 5.5m.; Tsonga languages by 900,000 and Venda by 169,700. Bushman and Khoe languages are spoken among nomads. Indian languages in use include Tamil, Hindi, Gujarati, Urdu and Telugu.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is healthy and invigorating, with abundant sunshine and relatively low rainfall. The factors controlling this include the latitudinal position, the oceanic location of much of the country, and the existence of high plateaus. The south-west has a Mediterranean climate, with rain mainly in winter, but most of the country has a summer maximum, though quantities show a clear decrease from east to west. Temperatures are remarkably uniform over the whole country. Pretoria. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 52°F (11.1°C). Annual rainfall 31" (785 mm). Bloemfontein. Jan. 73°F (22.8°C), July 47°F (8.3°C). Annual rainfall 23" (564 mm). Cape Town. Jan. 69°F (20.6°C), July 54°F (12.2°C). Annual rainfall 20" (508 mm). Durban. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 62°F (16.7°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,008 mm). Johannesburg. Jan. 68°F (20°C), July 51°F (10.6°C). Annual rainfall 28" (709 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** On 2 Nov. 1983 a referendum among white voters approved the South Africa Constitution Bill which had previously been passed in the House of Assembly by 119 votes to 35. Turnout for the referendum was 2,062,469 (76.02%), of whom 1,360,223 voted in favour.

The new constitution became effective on 4 Sept. 1984. It provides for a tri-cameral parliament: The House of Assembly with 178 members of whom 166 are directly elected and 8 indirectly elected by White voters; the House of Representatives with 85 members of whom 80 are directly elected by Coloured voters; the House of Delegates with 45 members of whom 40 are directly elected by Indian voters. The term for all members is 5 years.

These houses choose (from their majority parties) respectively 50 White, 25 Coloured and 13 Indian members of an electoral college which elects an executive President. The President initiates legislation and resolves disputes between houses. He is helped by a 60-member President's Council: 20 members are elected by the

House of Assembly, 10 by the House of Representatives and 5 by the House of Delegates; 15 are MPs nominated by himself and 10 are MPs nominated by Opposition parties.

The President appoints a Ministers' Council for each house, choosing 5 members from the majority party; a member chosen from outside the house must become a member of it within one year, and enjoy majority-party support. The Councils handle the affairs of their own population group and administer the departments established for that group. The President also appoints a Cabinet; any member appointed from outside Parliament must become a member of one of the three houses within one year. Any Ministers' Council member may be appointed a Cabinet member for a specific purpose or for an indefinite period. Any Ministers' Council may co-opt a Cabinet member in the same way, providing that member qualifies as a member of the Council in question.

Each house legislates on its own community affairs; the three houses have co-responsibility for national affairs. The State President, on the Cabinet's advice, decides whether a certain matter is a community or a national affair.

To hold an office of profit under the State (with certain exceptions) is a disqualification for membership of either House, as are also insolvency, crime and insanity. Pretoria is the seat of government, and Cape Town is the seat of legislature.

The state of the parties on 4 Sept. 1984: in the House of Assembly, National Party, 114; Progressive Federal Party, 26; Conservative Party, 17; New Republic Party, 8; South African Party, 3. In the House of Representatives, Labour Party, 76; others, 4. In the House of Delegates, National People's Party 18; Solidarity, 17; others, 5.

Indians voting in the elections to the new House of Delegates in Aug. 1984, 20.3% of registered voters; Coloured voters to the new House of Representatives, 30.9%.

*President:* P. W. Botha (sworn in, 14 Sept. 1984).

The Cabinet in March 1989 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* P. W. Botha.

*Transport Services:* E. van der M. Louwe. *Constitutional Development and Planning:* C. R. Heunis. *Foreign Affairs:* R. F. Botha. *National Education:* F. W. de Klerk. *Law and Order:* A. Vlok. *Home Affairs and Communications:* J. C. G. Botha. *National Health and Population Development:* W. A. van Niekerk. *Co-operation and Development and (Black) Education:* Dr G. Viljoen. *Defence:* Gen. M. Malan. *Manpower:* A. Hendrickse. *Justice:* H. J. Coetsee. *Agriculture:* J. J. G. Wentzel. *Economic Affairs and Technology:* D. W. Steyn. *Environment and Water Affairs:* G. J. Kotze. *Minister of Information in the State Presidents' Office:* C. J. van der Merwe. *Minister of Administration and Privatization in the State Presidents' Office:* D. W. de Villiers. *Finance:* B. J. du Plessis. *Chairman of the Ministers' Council for Coloured Own Affairs:* (Vacant). *Chairman of the Ministers' Council for Indian Own Affairs:* (Vacant).

The Prime Minister receives an annual salary of R43,000 and a reimbursive allowance of R20,000; a member of the Cabinet an annual salary of R23,500 and a reimbursive allowance of R6,500; and a Deputy Minister an annual salary of R19,000 and a reimbursive allowance of R6,500.

The English and Afrikaans languages are both official, subject to amendments carried by a two-thirds majority in joint session of both Houses of Parliament.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of orange, white, blue, with the flags of the Orange Free State and the Transvaal, and the Union Jack side by side in the centre.

*National anthem:* The Call of South Africa/Die Stem van Suid-Afrika (words by C. J. Langenhoven, 1918; tune by M. L. de Villiers, 1921).

*Provincial Administration.* In each of the 4 provinces there is an Administrator appointed by the State President-in-Council for 5 years. Until 1986 there were



provincial councils, each council electing an executive committee of 4 (either members or not of the council), the Administrator acting as chairman. Provincial councils were abolished in 1986; local governments remain, comprising municipal councils, management boards and other local committees, all of which have authority to deal with local matters, of which provincial finance, education (primary and secondary, other than higher education and technical education), hospitals, roads and bridges, townships, horse and other racing, and game and fish preservation are the most important. All ordinances passed by the local councils are subject to the veto of the State President-in-Council.

*Black Administration.* In 1959 the main ethnic groups received legislative recognition by the passing of the Promotion of Bantu Self-Government Act, which provided *inter alia* for the various ethnic groups to develop into self-governing national units.

As the Act envisages eventual political autonomy for each of the various national units and as representation in the highest White governing bodies is regarded as a retarding factor, the representation of Blacks by Whites in Parliament and the Cape Provincial Administration was abolished with effect from 30 June 1960.

Territorial Authorities were established between 1968 and 1970, and were converted to Legislative Assemblies in 1971.

Each national unit also has an Executive Council. These Councils, each headed by a Chief Councillor, consist of 6 members, except in the case of the South Sotho, where there are only 4. Each of these Councillors is responsible for the administration of a Department. A civil service has been established in each instance, staffed by citizens of the respective homelands. White officials will serve the homeland governments on secondment, until trained Black citizens are able to take over all duties.

There are (1989) 10 homelands of which 4 are recognised by the South African government as Independent:

The Transkei, territory of the Xhosa nation, became independent on 26 Oct. 1976 (*see p. 1107*), Bophuthatswana on 6 Dec. 1977 (*see p. 1105*), Venda on 13 Sept. 1979 (*see p. 1108*) and Ciskei on 4 Dec. 1981 (*see p. 1110*).

There are (1989) 6 territories with a degree of self-government but still forming part of the Republic: Kwa Zulu, Gazankulu (Machangana-Tsonga people), Lebowa (North Sotho), Qwaqwa (South Sotho), Ka Ngwane (Swazi) and Kwa Ndebele (Southern Ndebele).

**DEFENCE.** The South African Defence Force comprises a Permanent Force, a Citizen Force and a Commando organization. The Permanent Force consists of professional soldiers, airmen and seamen who are responsible for the administration and training of the whole Defence Force in peace-time, but who are gradually absorbed into the Citizen Force in time of war. The Permanent Force and the Citizen Force consist of Army, Air Force and Naval components; the Commando organization is an army and air organization.

Every white male citizen between 18 and 65 is liable to undergo training and to render personal service in time of war. Those between the ages of 16 and 25 are liable to undergo a compulsory course of peace training.

The S.A. Defence Force is administered by the Chief of the Defence Force, his advisers being the Chief of the Army, Chief of the Air Force and Chief of the Navy, Chief of Staff Operations, Chief of Staff Personnel, the Chief of Staff Management Services and the Surgeon-General.

**Army.** South Africa is divided into 11 territorial Commands. Within the various Commands are training units, of which members of the Permanent Force form the permanent staff. Courses of various types are held also at the S.A. Military College. The Army includes 1 armoured, 1 mechanized, 4 motorized and 1 parachute brigade; 1 special reconnaissance regiment and supporting artillery, engineer and signals units. Equipment includes some 250 Centurion/Olifant main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 75,000 (including 55,000 conscripts) with an Active Reserve of

146,000. Paramilitary forces are Commandos (130,000), South African Police (55,000) and Police Reserves (37,000).

**Navy.** The South African Navy has its headquarters at Pretoria.

The Navy includes 3 French-built diesel-powered patrol submarines, 2 old British-built anti-submarine frigates (if and when modernized), 9 fast missile armed patrol vessels (6 built in Durban and 3 in Israel), 9 coastal minesweepers (2 converted to minehunters and 2 employed for patrol), 1 British-built survey ship, 1 fleet replenishment ship, 1 small training vessel, 1 torpedo recovery vessel, 3 rescue launches, 30 very small harbour patrol boats and 3 tugs.

A custom-built submarine complex incorporating an operations centre alongside a synchrolift marine elevator capable of docking all South African warships except the large tanker, was opened at Simonstown in July 1972. A new maritime headquarters was opened at Silvermine in March 1973.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 7,500 officers and ratings, including 900 marines.

**Air Force.** There is 1 bomber squadron with 5 Canberra B.12 and 2 Canberra T.4; 1 bomber squadron with 6 Buccaneer Mk.50; 1 coastal patrol squadron with 18 Piaggio P.166S; 1 coastal patrol squadron with C-47s; 1 fighter-bomber squadron with 30 Mirage F1-AZ ground attack aircraft; 1 fighter-bomber squadron with Atlas Cheetahs (locally modified Mirage IIIs); 1 general-purpose fighter squadron with Mirage IIICZ interceptors and Mirage IIIRZ reconnaissance fighters; and 1 squadron with Mirage F1-CZ interceptors. Transport squadrons have 9 Transall C-160s, 7 C-130B Hercules, more than 40 C-47s, 7 C-54s, 4 Boeing 707s, 1 Viscount, 4 twin-jet HS.125s and 4 twin-turboprop Merlin IVA light transports. Four helicopter squadrons and No. 22 Flight have more than 80 Alouette IIIs, 60 Pumas, 8 Wasps, and 14 Super Frelons. T-6Gs are used for primary training, followed by advanced training on Impalas and Mirage IIIEZ/DZ, weapons training on Impalas, and multi-engine/crew training on C-47s. Built under licence in the Republic of South Africa, about 150 two-seat Impala Mk. 1s have been followed by 75 single-seat Impala Mk. 2s, based on the Aermacchi MB.326M and 326K respectively. Three squadrons operate C4M Kudu and AM.3C Bosbok liaison aircraft. South African industry is currently modernizing the Mirage combat aircraft (under the name 'Cheetah') and developing an armed helicopter derived from the Puma.

The Citizen Force has 3 squadrons of Impalas for counter-insurgency duties and C4M Kudu and AM.3C Bosbok liaison aircraft. CF personnel have additional functions in regular SAAF squadrons, notably those equipped with C-47 transports and P.166 light transport/coastal patrol aircraft. Total strength (1989) was about 13,000 regular officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Republic of South Africa is a member of UN.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Total revenue and expenditure of the central government's State Revenue Account in R1m.:

	1986-87	Estimates 1987-88
Revenue	34,611	38,794
Expenditure	40,213	46,319

The main sources of State Revenue 1987-88 were income tax, R21,887m.; general sales tax, R9,954m.; excise duties, R1,920m.; customs duties, R1,540m. Main expenditure: Education, R8,617m.; defence, R7,018m.; economic services, R6,248m.; interest on public debt, R6,098m.; health, R4,339m.; other social, R4,274m.

Public debt on 31 March 1987, R47,619m., of which R3,220m. was foreign debt; internal debt, R44,399m.

**Currency.** Decimal coinage was introduced in 1959, the units being the *rand* (abbreviated as R) and the *cent* (abbreviated as c). The rand/cent coinage system came



into operation on 14 Feb. 1961. The decimal coins are: *Gold coins*, 2 rand; 1 rand. *Silver coins*, 50 cents; 20 cents; 10 cents; 5 cents. *Bronze coins*, 2 cents; 1 cent. In March 1989, £1 = R4.30; US\$1 = R2.51.

**Banking.** In Dec. 1920 a Central Reserve Bank was established at Pretoria. It commenced operations in June 1921, and began to issue notes in April 1922. The bank has branches in Pretoria (Head Office), Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth, East London, Bloemfontein, Pietermaritzburg and Windhoek. Total deposits, 31 March 1987, R3,957m.; assets, R12,158m.

In March 1987 there were 14 commercial banks and 22 general banks (formerly hire-purchase and savings banks), with total liabilities, 31 March 1987, commercial banks, R53,369m., general, R15,412m.; 10 merchant banks (R5,352m.) and 3 discount houses (R1,612m.) The Land and Agricultural Bank had R8,342m. total liabilities; Post Office Savings Bank deposits, R3,356m.

**Weights and Measures.** The Measuring Units and National Measuring Standards Act, 1973, confirmed the adoption of the international metric system.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The total capacity of the power plants controlled by the Electricity Supply Commission was 26,150,000 kw at the end of 1985. There were 20 coal-fired stations, 3 hydro-electric stations (1,540 mw) and 2 gas-turbine stations (342 mw). Production (1986) 145,394m. kwh of which ESCOM generated 133,644m. kwh. Net production (sent out from plants for consumption), 133,293, of which ESCOM, 123,643. Supply 220 and 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Small amounts of oil and gas were found off-shore (south west of Mossel Bay) in Oct. 1982.

**Water.** Government activities are governed by the Water Act, 1956 (as amended), which is administered by the Directorate of Water Affairs. A Water Research Commission was established in 1971 to co-ordinate and promote research; it is responsible for hydrological research, major water resource development, water pollution control. The combined average flow of South Africa's rivers is about 52,000m. cu. metres annually, most of it lost by evaporation and spillage. Water demand (now mainly urban-industrial) grows at 7% annually.

The Orange River Project was launched in 1966. It is to embrace 3 major dams on the Orange River, 9 smaller dams or weirs, a 51½-mile tunnel, 20 hydro-electric power stations and a system of canals.

In Oct. 1986 South Africa signed a treaty with Lesotho to allow damming the Orange River head waters within Lesotho and diverting the collected water through tunnels into the Vaal River system of the OFS. Lesotho is to receive royalties and hydro-electric power in exchange.

**Minerals.** Value of the main mineral production sales (in R1,000):

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Asbestos	113,279	101,207	102,453	99,064
Chrome ore	71,453	121,627	231,669	212,794
Coal	2,539,731	3,348,058	4,962,285	5,245,943
Copper	351,137	365,761	535,853	550,178
Diamonds	525,217	463,019	702,648	647,996
Fluorspar	30,744	49,209	56,510	62,104
Gold	10,180,209	11,556,315	15,296,931	17,287,356
Iron ore	309,919	372,728	472,353	473,510
Lime and limestone	162,493	182,831	203,975	237,311
Manganese	110,219	202,566	298,761	271,024
Phosphate	74,271	97,962	118,855	150,287
Silver	79,342	64,332	78,248	72,087

Total value of all minerals sold (1986), R29,240.1m.

Mineral production (tonnes) 1986: Coal, 170m.; iron ore, 24.5m.; phosphates, 2.9m.; manganese ore, 3.7m.; chromite, 3m.; asbestos, 138,000; copper, 196,000; lime and limestone, 14.3m.; fluorspar, 334,000; gold, 635,233 kg; silver, 216,599 kg; diamonds, 10.1m. carats.



At 31 Dec. 1986 the number of persons engaged in mining was 752,264. Of these, 553,668 were engaged in goldmining.

*Minerals. A Quarterly Report of Production and Sales.* Department of Mineral and Energy Affairs, Pretoria, from 1936

*Mining Statistics.* Department of Mineral and Energy Affairs, Pretoria, from 1966

**Agriculture.** Much of the land suitable for mechanical farming has unreliable rainfall. Of the total area natural pasture occupies 58% (71.3m. hectares); about 14m. hectares are suitable for dry-land farming, of which 10.6m. are actually cultivated.

In 1986, agriculture, forestry and fisheries contributed approximately 6% to GDP.

Production (1986-7, in 1,000 tonnes): Maize, 7,371; sorghum, 467; wheat, 2,592; groundnuts, 85; sunflower seed, 397; sugar-cane, 20,000; oranges, 522; potatoes, 1,072; vegetables, 2,851.

Livestock, in 1,000 (1987): 11,799 cattle, 29,728 sheep, 5,820 goats, 1,455 pigs.

The 1987 production of red meat was 911,000 tonnes, poultry meat 354,000 tonnes, wool, 91,000 tonnes, eggs, 185,000 tonnes, milk, 2.6m. tonnes.

Cotton-growing is now undertaken by many farmers, the plant being found a better drought resistant than either tobacco or maize. Viticulture and fruit-growing are important. Gross value of production (1986-87), R127.7m.

In 1986-87 the gross value of agricultural production was R12,677m. (field crops, R4,787m.; livestock products, R5,825m.; horticultural products, R2,365m.).

**Forestry.** The commercial forests occupy about 1.62m. hectares, of which 148,000 hectares are indigenous trees and the rest exotic trees (pine, gum, wattle). The total value of saw logs delivered from plantation was about 45m. cu. metres in 1986.

The Republic is self sufficient in newsprint and exports pulp and paper.

**Fisheries.** About 90% of the catch is taken from the cold waters off the west coast. In 1985 sea fisheries caught 550,000 tons, of which 80,000 tons were pelagic shoal fish, mainly anchovy, trawl fisheries (hake and sole) landed 185,000 tonnes. Total output, wholesale value, R480m. Employment, 10,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Net value of sales of the principal groups of industries (in R1m.) in 1986: Processed food, 13,667; beverages and tobacco, 3,426; vehicles, 5,318; basic metals, 9,463.3; chemicals and products, 17,756; non-electrical machinery, 4,331; electrical machinery, 3,876; fabricated metal products except machinery, 5,555; printing and publishing, 1,795; wood and cork products except furniture, 1,357; clothing, 1,947; paper and products, 3,785; textiles, 3,497; total net value including other groups, 86,055. Manufacturing industry contributed R28,321m. to gross domestic product of R128,524m. in 1986.

Industrial employment (except mining) at 28 Feb. 1987: Manufacturing employed 1,322,100 workers; construction, 295,600; trade and accommodation services, 742,917 (31 Dec. 1986).

Average monthly earnings of white employee, 1984, R1,402; of black, R364.

In 1986 in private manufacturing 168,100 workers were employed in the food industry; textiles employed 102,000; clothing, 109,800; transport equipment, 96,300; non-metallic mineral products, 77,500; metal products, 124,000; chemical, petroleum and coal products, 92,000.

**Trade Unions.** At 1 Jan. 1985 there were 196 trade unions with an estimated total membership of 1,391,000. There were 46 White unions, 24 Coloured and 26 Black. Thirty-five unions were mixed and 53 had members from all population groups. Twelve do not specify their composition.

The Industrial Conciliation Amendment Act (1979) provides for freedom of association to all workers irrespective of race; it is now possible for a Black trade union (as opposed to a union with some Black members) to register. Unions are barred from political activity.

**Commerce.** South Africa, Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland and Transkei are members of a customs union and the foreign trade statistics shown below represent the combined imports and exports of these countries. The total value of the imports and exports was as follows (in R1m.):

	<i>Imports</i>		<i>Exports</i>
1984	21,804.4	1984	25,584.5
1985	22,989.1	1985	36,474.2
1986	26,893.7	1986	41,796.7

The principal commodity groups of imports and exports (in R1m.) in 1986 were:

<i>Imports</i>		<i>Exports</i>	
Machinery	7,317.8	Minerals and products	4,967.2
Vehicles and aircraft	2,963.2	Base metals	4,756.8
Chemical products	3,050.5	Precious stones, metals and coins	3,036.7
Base metals	1,267.6	Textiles	934.4
Scientific and special equipment	1,167.2	Chemical products	1,174.0
Resins and plastics	1,140.0	Food, beverages and tobacco	947.8
Textiles	913.9	Vegetable products	1,059.6

The geographical origin of South Africa's imports and the direction of its export trade were mainly as follows in 1985:

	<i>Imports %</i>	<i>Exports %</i>
Africa	2	4
Europe	42	23
USA	13	9
Japan	10	8

Total trade between South Africa and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1988</i>
Imports to UK	725,631	989,757	829,305	658,162	807,669
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,205,143	1,009,629	849,557	948,584	1,074,826

**Tourism.** In 1986, 644,502 tourists visited the Republic of South Africa.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The railway administration operates the long-distance road motor services, together with private operators.

There were at 31 March 1985, 183,851 km of roads, of which some 1,999 km of national roads and 48,746 km of provincial roads were surfaced.

South African Transport Services carried 13.2m. passengers and 4.4m. tonnes of goods by road in the year ended 31 March 1986; private operators carried 911,112 passengers and 242.2m. tonnes of goods. Buses have been desegregated in Cape Town and Durban.

Motor vehicles in operation on 30 June 1985 included 2,973,000 passenger cars, 1,055,000 commercial vehicles. New motor vehicles licensed, year ending 30 June 1986, 285,000.

**Railways.** Railway history in South Africa begins in 1860 with the line Durban-Point. With the formation of the Union in 1910, the state-owned lines in the 4 provinces (12,194 km) were amalgamated into one state undertaking, which also took over the control of the harbours—the South African Railways and Harbours Administration now known as South African Transport Services.

Government-owned lines operated by the administration (1986) totalled 23,821 km (mostly 1,065 mm gauge), of which 7,913 km were electrified. Passenger journeys, 1987, 612.4m.; revenue-earning goods and livestock traffic, 167m. tonnes.

The railways earned R5,410m. in 1986, to which goods contributed R2,646.6m.

**Aviation.** Civil aviation in South Africa is controlled by the Department of Transport, which administers the following state-owned airports: Jan Smuts Airport, Johannesburg; D. F. Malan Airport, Cape Town; Louis Botha Airport, Durban; J. B. M. Hertzog Airport, Bloemfontein; Ben Schoeman Airport, East London; H. F. Verwoerd Airport, Port Elizabeth; B. J. Vorster Airport, Kimberley; P. W. Botha



Airport, George; Pierre van Ryneveld Airport, Upington. At other airports the Department provides air navigation services.

South African Airways, as the national air carrier, operate scheduled international air services within Africa and to Europe, South America, the USA, the Far East and Australia. Twenty independent operators provide internal flights which link up with SAA's internal network.

During 1985 South African Airways carried 4,031,728 passengers (3,494,918 on internal flights) and 78,508 tonnes of freight and mail (44,948).

**Shipping.** The main ports are Durban, Cape Town, Saldanha, Richards Bay, Port Elizabeth and East London. Smaller ports are Mossel Bay, Port Nolloth, Walvis Bay and Lüderitz. During 1987 main ports handled 93m. tons of cargo.

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 31 March 1986 there were in South Africa 2,183 money-order post offices and postal agencies.

On 30 Sept. 1982 the international telex switchboard served 26,323 telex subscribers in South Africa. Line capacity of automatic telephone exchanges, 2.1m.; there were (1986) 4m. telephones.

The South African Broadcasting Corporation had, in Sept. 1984, 1.8m. television licences.

**Cinemas** (1980). There were 620 including 140 drive-ins.

**Newspapers** (1981). There are 8 Afrikaans and 14 English daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The common law of the republic is the Roman-Dutch law—that is, the uncodified law of Holland as it was at the date of the cession of the Cape in 1806. The law of England as such is not recognized as authoritative, though by statute the principles of English law relating to evidence and to mercantile matters, *e.g.*, companies, patents, trademarks, insolvency and the like, have been introduced. In shipping and insurance, English law is followed in the Cape Province, and it has also largely influenced civil and criminal procedure throughout the republic. In all other matters, family relations, property, succession, contract, etc., Roman-Dutch law rules, English decisions being valued only so far as they agree therewith.

The Supreme Court of South Africa is constituted as follows: (i) The Appellate Division, consisting of the Chief Justice and as many Judges of Appeal as the State President may stipulate, is the highest court and its decisions are binding on all courts. It has no original jurisdiction, but is purely a Court of Appeal. (ii) The Provincial Divisions: In each province there is a provincial division of the Supreme Court, while in the Cape there are three such divisions possessing both original and appellate jurisdiction. (iii) The Local Divisions: There is a local division each in the Transvaal and Natal exercising the same original jurisdiction within limited areas as the provincial divisions. The judges hold office till they attain the age of 70 years. No judge can be removed from office except by the State President upon an address from both Houses of Parliament on the ground of misbehaviour or incapacity. The circuit system is fully developed.

The Black appeal courts and 3 Black divorce courts have jurisdiction to some extent concurrent with and in certain respects exclusive of that of the Supreme Court in cases in which the parties are Black.

Each province is further divided into districts with a magistrate's court having a prescribed civil and criminal jurisdiction. From this court there is an appeal to the provincial divisions of the Supreme Court, and thence to the appellate division. Magistrates' convictions carrying sentences above a prescribed limit are subject to automatic review by a judge. In addition, several regional divisions consisting of a number of districts have been constituted. Convictions of such courts are not subject to automatic review by a judge.

Courts of Black affairs commissioners have been constituted in defined areas to hear all civil cases and matters between Black and Black only. An appeal lies to the Black appeal court, whose decision is final, unless the court consents to an appeal to the appellate division of the Supreme Court on a point stated by the court itself.



Black affairs commissioners have concurrent criminal jurisdiction with magistrates' courts in respect of certain offences committed by Black, while a limited civil and criminal jurisdiction is conferred upon the Black chief or headman over his own tribe.

**Religion.** A sample tabulation of the 1980 census results as regards religious denominations shows the following: *Whites*: Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk, 1,693,640; Anglicans, 456,020; Methodists, 414,080; Roman Catholics, 393,640; Nederduits Hervormde Kerk, 246,340; Presbyterians, 128,920; Gereformeerde Kerk, 128,360; Apostolics, 125,920; other Christians, 566,640; Jews, 119,220; others, 255,320. *Blacks*: Methodists, 11,554,280; Black independent churches, 4,954,000; Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk, 1,103,560; Roman Catholics, 1,676,680; Anglican, 797,040; Lutheran, 698,400; other Christian churches, 1,760,860; non-Christian churches, 101,700; others, 4,277,240. *Coloureds and Asians*: Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk, 678,380; Hindus, 512,360; Anglican, 360,380; Roman Catholic, 285,980; Islam 318,000; others, 1,279,020.

Membership of the white branch of the Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk was opened to all races in 1986.

**Education.** Primary and secondary public education, other than that specifically provided elsewhere, falls under the Provincial Administration. In terms of the National Education Policy Act, 1967, the Minister of Education, Arts and Science may, after consultation with the Provincial Administrators and the National Advisory Education Council, determine general educational policy within the framework of the Act. Black education is the responsibility of the Department of Black Education and Training, while education for Coloureds and Indians is controlled by the Department of Internal Affairs.

*Public primary and secondary schools* in 1987: Schools for Whites had 951,594 pupils and 71,657 teachers. For Coloureds, 822,767 pupils and 43,689 teachers. For Indians, 235,424 pupils and 12,787 teachers. For Blacks, 4,674,565 pupils and 137,442 teachers. A non-racial school (100 pupils) opened near Durban in 1987. Special schools (1987) for 4,465 Black pupils had 3,073 teachers; for 13,832 White pupils, 4,336 teachers; for 5,641 Coloured pupils, 1,256 teachers; for 1,929 Indian pupils, 738 teachers.

*Private Schools.* To a certain extent the activities of private schools are controlled by government regulations. Their pupils generally sit for the state schools' examinations. These schools make provision for kindergarten, elementary and preparatory, general primary, secondary and commercial education.

*Higher Education.* In March 1987 tertiary-level students included 247,035 whites (5% of white population), 31,488 coloureds (1%), 25,183 Indians (2.7%) and 95,119 Blacks (0.45%).

Of these, 164,634 whites, 24,012 coloureds, 19,802 Indians and 82,675 Blacks were at university and Colleges of Education. There are 17 universities in the republic: (1) The University of Cape Town. (2) The University of Natal in Durban and Pietermaritzburg. (3) The University of the Orange Free State at Bloemfontein (teaching in Afrikaans). (4) Potchefstroom University for Christian Higher Education, Potchefstroom (Afrikaans). (5) The University of Pretoria (Afrikaans). (6) Rhodes University, Grahamstown, C.P. (7) The University of Stellenbosch (Afrikaans). (8) The University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. (9) The University of South Africa, with its seat in Pretoria, which conducts a Division of External Studies by means of correspondence and vacation courses (English and Afrikaans); it is also an examining body. (10) The University of Port Elizabeth (English and Afrikaans). (11) Rand Afrikaans University, Johannesburg (All may enrol, white, black, coloured or Asian students).

The University of Fort Hare (12), the University of the North (13) near Pietersburg and the University of Zululand (14) near Empangeni, Natal, are operated by the Department of Education and Training and provide education at university level for Blacks, the University of the Western Cape (15), Bellville (Cape), offers university facilities to the Coloured population and is administered by the Department of Internal Affairs as is the University for Indians (16), the University of

Durban-Westville, at Durban. The Medical University of South Africa (17) is for Black students.

*Technical and Vocational Education.* Technical, vocational and special education for persons other than those for whom specific provision is made: The Department of National Education is responsible for the maintenance, management and control of or the payment of subsidies to colleges for advanced technical education, technical colleges, technical institutes, special schools, schools of industries and reform schools. Colleges for advanced technical education provide education on an advanced level for a variety of technical, commercial and general courses of study as well as secondary education on a part-time basis. Technical colleges and technical institutes are mainly responsible for the training of apprentices and the education, on a part-time basis, of persons not subject to compulsory school attendance. Special schools for handicapped children cater for the educational needs of those who are blind, partially sighted, deaf, hard of hearing, epileptic, cerebral palsied and physically handicapped. Children found to be in need of care by a children's court, are admitted to schools of industries and reform schools.

The Department of Internal Affairs has taken over all schools of this nature for Coloureds.

In 1987, technical and training colleges (except Colleges of Education) had 82,401 white students; 7,476 coloured; 5,381 Indian; 12,444 black.

**Health.** In 1986 (preliminary) there were 22,525 medical practitioners and specialists, 3,704 dental specialists and dentists, 88,795 nurses; in 1984 there were 629 hospitals. In 1983 there were 14,333 beds in psychiatric hospitals; 652,054 mentally ill were treated as out-patients, and others treated in psychiatric wards in general hospitals.

All public health services rendered by government bodies are free, or charged according to the patient's means.

**Social Welfare.** Under the Social Pensions Act, 1973, pensions and allowances are made to aged, blind, disabled and war veterans, subject to a means test. Family allowances are paid to families with 3 or more children and inadequate income, and to mothers alone with one or more children and inadequate income.

*Welfare Services.* South Africa is not a welfare state, yet provides many services for the community. Welfare work on behalf of the Government is done by the Departments of Health and Welfare, Co-operation and Development, and Internal Affairs.

Voluntary organizations are numerous. The work of all these bodies is co-ordinated by the South African Welfare Council and regional welfare boards set up under the National Welfare Act, 1978.

The Children's Act, 1960, provides for the protection of children from neglect, ill-treatment and exploitation; the child is cared for within the family whenever possible, but there are also State subsidies to children's homes, crèches and foster families.

Welfare services for the aged are mainly provided by voluntary bodies with government subsidies; the same principle applies to the care of the handicapped, but there are State settlements for the permanently handicapped, and State sheltered-employment programmes for handicapped adults.

The National Advisory Board on Rehabilitation Matters advises and brings together the voluntary and government agencies working on drug abuse and alcoholism.

In all fields of welfare, State subsidies enable voluntary bodies to employ professional social workers.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of South Africa in Great Britain (South Africa Hse., Trafalgar Sq., London, WC2N 5DP)

*Ambassador:* P. R. Killen.

Of Great Britain in South Africa (255 Hill St., Arcadia, Pretoria, 0002)

*Ambassador:* Sir Robin Renwick, KCMG.

Of South Africa in the USA (3051 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Piet G. Koornhof.

Of the USA in South Africa (225 Pretorius St., Pretoria)

*Ambassador:* Edward Perkins.

Of South Africa to The United Nations

*Ambassador:* Albert Leslie Manley.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Bureau (formerly Office) of Census and Statistics (Schoeman St., Pretoria)

The Customs and Excise Office, Pretoria, publishes *Monthly Abstract of Trade Statistics* (from 1946) and *Trade and Shipping of the Union of South Africa* (annually, 1910–55); *Foreign Trade Statistics* (annually, from 1956)

Benson, M. *Nelson Mandela: The Man and the Movement*. New York, 1986

Bissell, R. E. and Crocker, C. A., *South Africa in the 1980s*. Boulder, 1979

Böhning, W. R., *Black Migration to South Africa*. Geneva, 1981

Branford, J., *A Dictionary of South African English*. Rev. ed. OUP, 1980

Davenport, T. R. H., *South Africa: A Modern History*. 3rd ed. CUP, 1986

de Villiers, L., *South Africa: A Skunk Among Nations*. London, 1975

Gann, L. H. and Duignan, P., *Why South Africa will Survive*. London, 1981

Goldenhuys, D., *The Diplomacy of Isolation: South African Foreign Policy Making*. Johannesburg, 1984

Hill, C. R., *Change in South Africa: Blind Alleys and New Directions*. London, 1983

Musiker, R., *South Africa*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1980

*Oxford History of South Africa*. OUP, Vol. 1, 1969; Vol. 2 1971

Parker, F. J., *South Africa: Lost Opportunities*. Lexington, 1983

Price, R. and Rossberg, C., *The Apartheid Regime: Political Power and Racial Domination*. Univ. of California Press, 1980

Thompson, L., *The Political Mythology of Apartheid*. Yale Univ. Press, 1985

## PROVINCE OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

### Kaapprovinsie

**HISTORY.** The colony of the Cape of Good Hope was founded by the Dutch in the year 1652. Britain took possession of it from 1795 to 1803 and again in 1806, and it was formally ceded to Great Britain by the Convention of London, 13 Aug. 1814. Letters patent issued in 1850 declared that in the colony there should be a Parliament which should consist of the Governor, a Legislative Council and a House of Assembly. On 31 May 1910 the colony was merged in the Union of South Africa, thereafter forming an original province of the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The following table gives the population of the Cape of Good Hope<sup>1</sup> (area (1980) 646,332 sq. km) at the last census:

	Total	All races		Whites		Non-Whites	
		Males	Females	Males	Females	Males	Females
1936	3,527,865	1,663,169	1,864,796	396,058	394,993	1,267,011	1,469,803
1946	4,051,424	1,924,334	2,127,090	433,849	436,300	1,490,485	1,690,790
1951	4,426,726	2,110,674	2,316,052	463,917	471,168	1,646,757	1,844,884
1960	5,360,234	2,553,245	2,806,989	493,370	507,398	2,059,875	2,299,591
1970 <sup>2</sup>	4,293,726	2,151,629	2,142,097	546,761	567,448	1,604,868	1,579,649
1980 <sup>3</sup>	5,091,360	2,575,460	2,515,900	624,680	639,360	1,950,780	1,876,540
1986 <sup>1</sup>	4,901,261	2,371,906	2,529,355	...	...	...	...

<sup>1</sup>Including Walvis Bay (699 sq. km).

<sup>2</sup>Excluding Transkei.

<sup>3</sup>Excluding Transkei, Ciskei and Bophuthatswana.



Present area, 641,379 sq. km (247,637 sq. miles), including the enclave of Walvis Bay 1,124 sq. km (434 sq. miles) on the coast of South West Africa (Namibia) which forms an administrative part of the Cape Province.

Of the non-White population in 1980, 32,120 were Asians, 1,569,040 were Blacks and 2,226,160 Coloureds.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>
1979	80,900	32,185	34,243
1980	80,546	34,162	29,334
1983	73,654	39,164	39,162
1984	74,122	41,345	40,165

**ADMINISTRATION.** In June 1986 the provincial councils were abolished. Cape Town is the seat of the provincial administration.

*Administrator:* Eugene Louw.

The province is divided into 111 magisterial districts and 35 divisions. Each division has a council of at least 6 members (15 in the Cape Division) elected quinquennially by the owners or occupiers of immovable property. The duties devolving upon divisional councils include the construction and maintenance of roads and bridges, local rating, vehicle taxation (except motor vehicle taxation) and preservation of public health. There are 216 municipalities, each governed by a mayor and councillors. Municipal elections are held biennially.

**FINANCE.** In 1984-85 revenue amounted to R1,996,920,000 and expenditure to R1,987,920,000.

**MINING.** For mineral production, *see* p. 1093.

**AGRICULTURE.** Viticulture in the republic is almost exclusively confined to the Cape Province, but practically all other forms of agricultural and pastoral activity are pursued.

**INDUSTRY.** The province has brick, tile and pottery works, saw-mills, engineering works, foundries, grain-mills, distilleries and wineries, clothing factories, furniture, boot and shoe factories, etc.

**RELIGION.** Sample tabulation, 1980 census. Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk, 1,110,516; Gereformeerde Kerk, 12,714; Nederduits Hervormde Kerk, 115,012; Anglican, 430,102; Presbyterian, 35,126; Methodist, 112,961; Roman Catholic, 251,000; Apostolic, 73,140; Lutheran, 89,134; Islam, 183,000; Hindu, 7,000; Independent Churches, 94,103; other Christian Churches, 440,000; Jews, 31,621; Agnostics, 55,000.

**EDUCATION.** On 1 April 1986 the Education Department came within the jurisdiction of the Central Government. Education is compulsory for all White children. Primary and secondary education is free to the end of the calendar year in which the age of 19 years is attained.

*Whites* (1985). There were 828 government and aided schools with 14,205 teachers and 238,853 pupils; 8 teacher-training colleges with 291 lecturers and 1,841 students; 53 private schools with 13,859 pupils.

*Coloureds* (1985). There were 1,776 government and aided schools with 26,583 teachers and 657,391 pupils; 13 teacher-training colleges with 6,709 students; 18 private schools with 2,652 pupils.

*Black* (1985). There were 1,137 government schools with 7,105 teachers and 318,541 pupils and 17 private schools with 118 teachers and 6,120 pupils.

*Asians* (1985). There were 8 government schools with 201 teachers and 5,400 pupils.

## PROVINCE OF NATAL

**HISTORY.** Natal was annexed to Cape Colony in 1844, placed under separate government in 1845, and on 15 July 1856 established as a separate colony. By this charter partially representative institutions were established, and in 1893 the colony attained responsible government. The province of Zululand was annexed to Natal on 30 Dec. 1897. The districts of Vryheid, Utrecht and part of Wakkerstroom, formerly belonging to the Transvaal, were annexed in Jan. 1903. On 31 May 1910 the colony was merged in the Union of South Africa as an original province of the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The province (including Kwa Zulu, 36,073 sq. km) has an area of 91,785 sq. km, with a seaboard of about 576 km. The climate is sub-tropical on the coast and somewhat colder inland. The province is divided into 45 magisterial districts.

The census returns of population (excluding Kwa Zulu) for 1985 were:

		<i>All races</i>		<i>Whites</i>		<i>Non-Whites</i>	
	<i>Total</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>
1960	2,979,034	1,443,561	1,535,473	166,404	222,750	1,227,157	1,362,468
1970	4,236,770	2,009,410	2,227,360	171,005	214,960	1,794,430	2,004,610
1980	2,676,340	1,360,600	1,315,740	276,240	285,620	1,084,360	1,030,120
1985	2,145,018	1,072,426	1,072,592	274,987	285,234	797,629	787,358

Of the non-White population in 1980, 665,340 were Asians, 91,020 Coloureds and 1,358,120 Blacks. Population of Kwa Zulu, *see* p. 1088.

**ADMINISTRATION.** State of parties Oct. 1985: New Republic Party, 14; National Party, 5; Progressive Federal Party, 1.

The seat of provincial government in Natal is Pietermaritzburg. In April 1978 the area of East Griqualand was transferred to Natal from Cape Province.

*Administrator:* The Hon. Radclyffe Macbeth Cadman.

**FINANCE.** In 1987-88 revenue amounted to R1,148,755,145 and expenditure to R1,125,888,380.

**MINING.** The province is rich in mineral wealth, particularly coal. For figures of mineral production, *see* p. 1093.

**AGRICULTURE.** Sugar and citrus growing are of major importance. On the coast and in Zululand there are vast plantations of sugar-cane (about 375,000 hectares), producing, in 1985, 20,756,000 tons. Cereals of all kinds (especially maize), fruits, vegetables, the *Acacia molissima* (the bark of which is much used for tanning purposes) and other crops are produced. Large areas are devoted to timber plantations and forestry.

**INDUSTRY.** Natal is highly industrialized. There are metallurgical, chemical, paper, rayon and food-processing plants, iron and steel foundries, petrol refineries, pulp-mills, explosives and fertilizer plants, milk- and meat-canning factories.

**EDUCATION.** The Department of Education and Culture controls primary and secondary education for Whites. Control was transferred from the province to central government on 1 April 1986, and the classification of government-aided schools changed to private although they continue to receive a subsidy.

*Whites* (1988). There were 264 government schools with 100,555 pupils; 2 residential teacher-training colleges with 980 students; 1 correspondence teacher-training college with 340 pupils; 54 private schools with 11,248 pupils; 11 special schools and training centres with 1,431 pupils and 9 technical colleges with 3,606 pupils.

*Coloureds* (1988). There were 64 state and state-aided schools with 1,406 teachers and 30,490 pupils; 16 state subsidized pre-primary schools with 10 teachers and

900 pupils; 4 special schools with 166 pupils and 20 teachers; 1 teacher-training college with 378 students and 36 lecturers; 1 technical college with 38 full-time lecturers and 13 part-time lecturers.

*Blacks* (1988). There were 1,086 schools with 5,809 teachers and 214,264 pupils. These schools are situated in the white area of Natal and the south-eastern Transvaal.

*Asians* (1988). There were 446 state and state-aided schools with 11,297 teachers and 242,805 pupils; 36 pre-primary schools with 2,705 children; 2 schools of industries with 240 pupils; 16 special schools and training centres with 1,507 pupils; 3 technical colleges with 2,024 full-time students and 4,877 part-time students; 2 Colleges of Education with 602 students and 1 college for further training for teachers with 231 full-time students.

## PROVINCE OF THE TRANSVAAL

**HISTORY.** The Transvaal was one of the territories colonized by the Boers who left the Cape Colony during the Great Trek in 1834 and following years. In 1852, by the Sand River Treaty, Great Britain recognized the independence of the Transvaal, which, in 1853, took the name of the South African Republic. In 1877 the republic was annexed by Great Britain, but the Boers took up arms towards the end of 1880. In 1881 peace was made and self-government, subject to British suzerainty and certain stipulated restrictions, was restored to the Boers. The London Convention of 1884 removed the suzerainty and a number of these restrictions but reserved to Great Britain the right of approval of the Transvaal's foreign relations, excepting with regard to the Orange Free State. In 1886 gold was discovered on the Witwatersrand, and this discovery, together with the great influx of foreigners which it occasioned, gave rise to many grave problems. Eventually, in 1899, war broke out between Great Britain and the Transvaal. Peace was concluded on 31 May 1902, the Transvaal and the Orange Free State both losing their independence. The Transvaal was governed as a crown colony until 12 Jan. 1907, when responsible government came into force. On 31 May 1910 the Transvaal became one of the four provinces of the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the province is 262,499 sq. km or 101,351 sq. miles, including Gazankulu, Lebowa, Ka Ngwane and Kwa Ndebele. The province is divided into 53 districts. The following table shows the population, excluding Gazankulu, Lebowa, Ka Ngwane and Kwa Ndebele in 1985, at each of the last censuses:

	<i>Total</i>	<i>All races</i>		<i>Whites</i>		<i>Non-Whites</i>	
		<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>
1936	3,341,470	1,846,576	1,494,894	424,470	396,286	1,422,108	1,098,608
1946	4,283,038	2,374,323	1,908,715	541,053	522,068	1,833,270	1,386,647
1951	4,812,838	2,619,314	2,193,524	737,194	731,111	2,575,119	2,230,053
1960	6,270,711	3,310,948	2,959,763	735,845	729,730	2,575,103	2,230,034
1970	6,478,904	3,507,753	2,971,151	957,291	946,802	2,550,462	2,024,349
1980	8,376,042	4,581,054	3,794,988	1,192,484	1,176,055	3,388,570	2,618,933
1985	7,532,179	4,008,070	3,524,109	1,224,064	1,237,300	2,784,006	2,286,809

Of the non-White population in 1985, 4,674,290 were Black, 126,201 Asians and 270,324 Coloureds. Population of Gazankulu, Lebowa, Ka Ngwane and Kwa Ndebele, *see* p. 1088.

Important towns of the province are listed on p. 1089.

**ADMINISTRATION.** The seat of provincial government is at Pretoria, which is also the administrative capital of the Republic of South Africa.

*Administrator:* D. J. Hough.



**FINANCE.** In 1985–86 revenue amounted to R2,822,726,531 and expenditure to R2,742,739,546.

**MINING.** For mineral production, *see* p. 1093. Gold output in 1983 was 15,807,760 oz. worth R7,483,932,210.

**AGRICULTURE.** The province is in the main a stock-raising country, though there are considerable areas well adapted for agriculture, including the growing of tropical crops.

**INDUSTRY.** The province has iron and brass foundries and engineering works, grain-mills, breweries, brick, tile and pottery works, tobacco, soap, and candle factories, coach and wagon works, clothing factories, etc.

**RELIGION.** 1980 population census. *Whites:* Christians, 1,927,646; Jews, 76,913; other non-Christians, 4,265.

*Non-Whites:* Christians, 4,692,362; Moslems, 74,504; Hindus, 37,249; other non-Christians, 15,668.

**EDUCATION.** All education for Whites except that of universities is under the provincial authority. The province has been divided for the purposes of local control and management into 21 school districts. Instruction in government schools, both primary and secondary, is free. The medium of instruction is the home language of the pupil. The teaching of the other language begins at the earliest stage at which it is appropriate on educational grounds. Both languages are taught as examination subjects to every pupil.

*Whites* (1982). There were 1,153 public schools with 27,797 teachers and 547,452 pupils; 5 teacher-training colleges with 5,904 students; 84 private schools with 2,009 teachers and 31,597 pupils.

*Coloureds* (1982). There were 92 state and state-aided schools with 1,898 teachers and 59,547 pupils; 1 teacher-training college with 272 students.

*Asians* (1982). There were 71 public schools with 1,259 teachers and 28,958 pupils; 1 teacher-training college with 30 teachers and 377 students.

*Blacks* (1977). There were 2,170 public and private school sections with 15,450 teachers and 735,325 pupils (Homelands excluded).

## PROVINCE OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE

### Oranje-Vrystaat

**HISTORY.** The Orange River was first crossed by Europeans in the middle of the 18th century. Between 1810 and 1820, settlements were made in the southern parts of the Orange Free State, and the Great Trek greatly increased the number of settlers during and after 1836. In 1848, Sir Harry Smith proclaimed the whole territory between the Orange and Vaal rivers as a British possession called the 'Orange River Sovereignty'. However, in 1854, by the Convention of Bloemfontein, British sovereignty was withdrawn and the independence of the country was recognized.

During the first 5 years of its existence the Orange Free State was much harassed by incessant raids by the Basutos. These were at length conquered, but, owing to the intervention of the British Government, the treaty of Aliwal North incorporated only part of the territory of the Basutos in the Orange Free State.

On account of the treaty with the South African Republic, the Orange Free State took a prominent part in the South African War (1899–1902) and was annexed on 28 May 1900 as the Orange River Colony. Crown colony government continued

until 1907, when responsible government was introduced. On 31 May 1910 the Orange River Colony was merged in the Union of South Africa as the province of the Orange Free State, and on 31 May 1961 became a province of the Republic of South Africa.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the province is 127,993 sq. km or 49,418 sq. miles, including Qwaqwa. The province is divided into 43 administrative and 49 magisterial districts. The population has varied as follows:

	<i>All races</i>			<i>Whites</i>		<i>Non-Whites</i>	
	<i>Total</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>
1936	772,060	381,903	390,157	101,872	99,106	280,031	291,051
1946	879,071	432,896	446,175	101,874	100,203	331,022	345,972
1951	1,016,570	519,166	497,404	115,637	112,015	403,529	385,389
1960	1,386,202	731,486	654,716	139,304	137,103	601,182	553,613
1970	1,716,350	899,140	817,210	148,110	148,030	751,030	669,180
1980	1,931,860	1,039,220	892,640	166,380	159,840	872,840	732,800
1985	1,776,903	940,000	836,903	164,135	168,192	775,865	668,711
1987	1,863,327	986,220	877,107	166,871	170,995	819,349	706,112

Of the non-White population in 1987, 1,459,851 were Black, 65,555 Coloureds and 55 Indians.

**ADMINISTRATION.** Provincial councils were abolished on 30 June 1986.

For the Whites there are 69 municipal councils, 2 local management boards and 6 village management boards. For the Non-Whites there are 4 municipal councils, 8 village management boards, 67 village committees and 2 local authority committees.

*Administrator:* L. J. Botha.

**FINANCE.** In 1986-87 revenue was R551.5m. and expenditure R574.1m.

**MINING.** For mineral statistics, *see* p. 1093. The output of gold in 1987 was 165,504 kg valued at R4,800m.

**AGRICULTURE.** The province consists of undulating plains, affording excellent grazing and wide tracts for agricultural purposes. The rainfall is moderate. The Orange Free State is the largest grain-producing province in the Republic and is also an important sheep- and cattle-farming region.

**INDUSTRY.** The more important manufacturing industries in the province are the oil-from-coal factory at Sasolburg (as well as industries based on its by-products); grain mills and brick, tile and pottery works. Fertilizers, agricultural implements, blankets, woollen products, clothing, hosiery, cement and pharmaceutical products are also manufactured.

**EDUCATION.** Primary, secondary and vocational education and the training of teachers are controlled and financed by the Department of Education and Culture. Administration: House of Assembly for Whites and Administration; House of Representatives for Coloureds; Department of Education and Training for Blacks.

Education is free in all public schools up to the university matriculation standard. Attendance is compulsory for White and Coloured between the ages of 7 and 16, but exemption may be granted in special cases. Attendance is not compulsory for Black children, except in areas/communities/towns where a request for compulsory education had been made. In these cases education is compulsory up to Standard 5 or the age of 16. The home language of the pupil is the medium of instruction up to Standard 2; thereafter he has an option of Afrikaans, English or his home language in Black schools.

Further education and training are given at 2 universities, 2 teachers' training colleges, 1 technikon, 1 agricultural college, 2 nursing colleges, 5 technical colleges and 2 training centres.

*Whites* (1987). There were 209 government and aided schools with 4,519 teachers and 76,416 pupils.

*Coloureds* (1987). There were 45 government and aided schools with 675 teachers and 16,534 pupils.

*Blacks* (1987). There were 2,348 government schools with 9,343 teachers and 377,978 pupils.

## BOPHUTHATSWANA

**HISTORY.** Bophuthatswana was first to obtain self-government under the Bantu Homeland Constitution Act of 1971 and was the second black homeland to ask the Republic of South Africa for full independence, which was granted on 6 Dec. 1977.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area is 44,000 sq. km.

In 1985 there was a *de jure* population of 3.2m., of which 47% lived in the White areas. The remaining 53% (1,740,600) lived in the homeland. Estimate (1985) 1.66m. The capital is Mmabatho.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Bophuthatswana Government is a compromise between the traditional chief-in-council system and a democratic electoral system. There are 72 elected and 24 nominated members in the Legislative Assembly. Self-government was granted in 1972. Each regional authority (coinciding with the 12 districts of the country) nominates 2 members, and each district elects 6 members to the National Assembly and 12 designated by the President on account of their special knowledge, qualifications or experience.

Executive power vests in the President, who is directly elected by general suffrage of persons who are registered as voters, and he elects his Cabinet.

The first general election was held in Oct. 1972, 2 political parties taking part. Kgosi Lucas Mangope's Bophuthatswana National Party (BNP) won 20 of the 24 contested seats, but in 1974 he formed the Bophuthatswana Democratic Party which in the 1987 elections won 66 seats; the People's Progressive Party, 6 seats.

Members of regional authorities are elected from among the tribal and community authorities in their areas.

The Cabinet in Jan. 1988 consisted of:

*President, Minister of Law and Order, Audit and Public Service:* Dr Kgosi Lucas Mangope (took office 6 Dec. 1977; re-elected for another 7 years as from 11 Nov. 1984).

*Population Development:* T. M. Molatlhwa. *Internal Affairs:* Kgosi B. L. M. I. Motsatsi. *Defence:* Brig. H. F. P. Riekert. *Finance:* L. G. Young. *Posts and Telecommunications and Broadcasting:* K. C. V. A. Sehume. *Manpower and Coordination:* S. M. Seodi. *State Affairs and Civil Aviation:* R. Cronje. *Foreign Affairs:* S. L. L. Rathebe. *Health and Social Welfare:* L. G. Holele. *Water Affairs:* T. M. Tlhabane. *Economic Planning, Energy Affairs and Mines:* E. B. Keikelame. *Agriculture and Natural Resources:* P. H. Mooketsi. *Parliamentary Affairs, Local Government and Housing:* H. F. Tlou. *Education:* G. S. Nkai. *Justice and Transport:* S. G. Mothibe. *Public Works:* S. C. Kgobokoe.

There were 8 Deputy Ministers.

*Flag:* Blue, crossed by a diagonal orange stripe, and in the canton a white disc charged with a leopard's face in black and white.

**DEFENCE.** The Air Wing of the Defence Force has 2 Partenavia P-68 patrol aircraft, 2 Aviocar transports, and 1 Alouette III, 2 BK-117 and 1 Ecureuil helicopters. There is an Army Force of 3,100 with 2 infantry battalions.



## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Aid.** The Republic of South Africa granted aid of R72m. in 1986-87.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1987-88 budget balanced at R1,517m.

**Currency.** South African Rand.

**Banking.** The financial system is controlled by legislation inherited from South Africa on independence, and commercial banks have strong direct links with South African banks which in certain instances are controlled by overseas banking companies.

In 1988 there were 3 commercial banks with branches in all major commercial and agricultural centres offering a full range of banking services. The Agricultural Bank of Bophuthatswana provides finance to farmers. The government-funded Agricultural Development Fund provides loan finance and subsidy support to agricultural co-operative societies. The Bophuthatswana Building Society grants loans for house building.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Water.** The Department of Agriculture inherited the following improvements from South Africa: 2,833 reservoirs; 6,845 boreholes, of which more than 4,000 have been equipped; 648 earth dams.

**Minerals.** The territory is particularly rich in minerals. In 1987 there were 20 mines employing 45,000 people. Minerals include platinum, asbestos, gold, calcite, granite, chrome, vanadium, limestone and diamonds.

Exploration for more platinum, chrome and coal is currently being carried out both by the private sector and by the Mining and Geological Survey Division of the Department of Economic Planning. The platinum mines around Rustenburg produce about 66% of the free world's total production. The major chrome mines are near Rustenburg and Marico, while vanadium is mined in the Odi district near Brits. The Rustenburg, Western and Impala Platinum mines which are shared with the Republic of South Africa produce about 1.9m. oz. a year.

**AGRICULTURE.** Bophuthatswana is a semi-arid area of bushveld and grass veld suitable for stock farming. The annual rainfall is 300 mm in the west and 700 mm in the east and there are 4 river catchment areas—those of the Molopo, Ngotwane, Sehujwane (Limpopo) and Madikwe (Vaal) rivers.

Although the land tenure system militates against establishing large farms, some land which is suitable for farming is leased by the Government to successful farmers.

**Livestock (1986):** Cattle, 463,008; sheep, 250,970; goats, 466,088; pigs, 7,601; poultry, 181,151.

Only 6.6% of the territory is suited to dryland farming, but crop yields have shown a steady improvement in recent years. In Ditsobotla district, 3,500 hectares of fertile land has been developed by 3 primary co-operatives comprising 190 Batswana farmers. Silkworm farming was being tried in 1983. By 1981 the country was self sufficient in maize and exported the surplus. Three rice projects are successfully expanding and vegetable production was flourishing in 1987. The budget for 1987-88 is R62m.

**INDUSTRY.** The first industries were started on an agency basis at Babelegi; the fastest growing industrial area in the homeland, in 1977 it covered 183 hectares and by March 1985 more than R234m. had been invested in the project. Other industries are situated at Garankuwa, Seloseshu, Montshiwa and Mogwase. South African border industries are also promoted by the government, notably at Rosslyn where 128 industries had been established by Dec. 1975.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total length (1985) 6,300 km, of which 810 km are tarred. In 1976–77, 132 km were covered by bus, and 116m. passengers transported.

**Aviation.** Mmabatho International Airport was opened in 1984.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 18,640 telephones at 30 April 1987, and 107 post offices.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** In 1986 there were 1,307 educational institutions which included special schools and technical schools. Primary school attendance in 1986 was 349,952; middle schools, 149,815; high schools, 50,499; teacher training colleges, 2,807; special and vocational schools, 1,634; technical schools, 3,648; university (1987), 2,700. There were (1986) 14,250 teachers excluding lecturers.

Education is free apart from nominal contributions to school funds, and hostel fees at post-primary schools.

Instruction from Grade 1 to Standard 2 is in Setswana, while Standard 3 to senior standards are taught in English. The education is controlled by the Department of Education with a budget of R219m. in 1987–88.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 11 hospitals, 152 static clinics, 6,303 hospital and clinic beds, 106 doctors and 2,672 nurses. The health budget in 1987–88 was R103m.

## Further Reading

*Five Years of Independence: Republic of Bophuthatswana.* Mafikeng, 1983

# TRANSKEI

**HISTORY.** Transkei is the homeland of the Xhosa nation and was granted self-government by the Republic of South Africa in 1963. Over 1.5m. Transkeians live permanently in the Republic of South Africa but were deprived of their South African citizenship on independence.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area is 16,910 sq. miles (43,798 sq. km). Population (1985 estimate) 2,876,122. The capital is Umtata (population (1976) 24,805; 20,196 Blacks, 1,067 Coloured and 3,542 Whites). Other towns include Gcuwa, Kwabhaca, Umzimvubu and Lusikisiki.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Status of Transkei Bill of 1976 gave Transkei a unicameral National Assembly instead of the then existing Legislative Assembly. Independence was achieved 26 Oct. 1976.

General elections were held on 29 Sept. 1976 and the Transkei National Independence Party gained 69 of the 75 elective seats in the National Assembly. Members were elected for a 5-year period. In addition there are 75 traditional (co-opted) members (70 chiefs and 5 paramount chiefs).

*President:* Paramount Chief T. N. Ndamase.

In Sept. 1987 Chief George Mantanzima the Prime Minister, resigned and was succeeded by Stella Sigcau who in turn was ousted in a bloodless military coup, led by Major-Gen. Bantu Holomisa in Jan. 1988.

*Flag:* Three horizontal stripes of ochre, white, green.

**FINANCE.** In 1985 government income was R872m. and expenditure R984m.

**AGRICULTURE.** Notable examples of successful commercial enterprises in agriculture are the Magwa and Majola tea estates, with approximately 1,700 hectares planted, and various fibre plantations. 70,000 hectares of land are under

indigenous forests and 61,000 hectares have been put under exotic plantations. There are 28 sawmills in the country.

Livestock (1976): Cattle, 1.3m.; sheep, 2.5m.; goats, 1.25m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are above 8,800 km of roads.

**Railways.** There is a 209 km railway line linking Umtata with the port of East London in the Republic of South Africa.

**Aviation.** An international airport exists at Umtata.

**Shipping.** A start was made in 1978 on a 'free port' at Mnganzana but has since been abandoned.

**Post.** There were 11,498 telephones in 1978.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** In 1985 there were 690,000 pupils in primary schools and 193,000 pupils in secondary schools. The national university was inaugurated in Umtata in 1977.

**Health.** There were (1987) 31 hospitals with a total of 7,561 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

No country, other than the Republic of South Africa, has recognized Transkei as an independent state.

# VENDA

**HISTORY.** Traditionally the territory of the Vhavenda, the country was granted self-government in 1973, and became the third Black homeland to be granted independence by the Republic of South Africa on 13 Sept. 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area is 6,500 sq. km. Of the 381,000 Vhavenda living in the Republic of South Africa in 1970, nearly 70% lived in Venda. In 1980 the *de jure* population of Venda was estimated at 513,890, the *de facto* population at 343,480. The capital is Thohoyandou.

Vital statistics, 1981: Births, 13,568; deaths, 1,069; marriages, 228.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Executive power is vested in the President, who is elected for the duration of each Parliament, which consists of the President and the National Assembly; legislative power is vested in Parliament. In addition to the National Assembly there is an Executive Council, or Cabinet, and a judiciary independent of the Executive. The National Assembly comprises the 28 chiefs, 15 members designated by 4 regional councils, 42 members elected by popular vote and 3 members nominated by the President. A new Assembly must be elected after every 5 years, but it may be dissolved at any time by the President. All existing tribal, community and regional councils were retained with their status and powers unchanged, like those of the tribal leaders.

The first general election was held in Aug. 1973; the sole political party, the Venda Independence People's Party (VIPP) won 10 of the 18 contested seats. Shortly after, the Chief Minister, Chief Mphephu, formed the Venda National Party (VNP); in the second general election of July 1978 the VIPP won 31 of the 42 contested seats, VNP the remaining 11. Chief Mphephu was re-elected Chief Minister.

*President:* Paramount Chief P. R. Mphephu.

*Foreign Affairs:* Chief A. M. Madzivhandila. *Economic Affairs:* Headman F. N. Rayele. *Education:* Headman E. R. B. Nesengani. *Urban Affairs and Land Tenure:* Chief C. A. Nelwamondo. *Justice:* Chief J. R. Rambuda. *Health and Welfare:*



Chief C. N. Makuya. *Agriculture and Forestry*: G. M. Ramabulana. *Internal Affairs*: Chief M. M. Mphaphuli. *Transport, Works and Communications*: A. A. Tshivhase. *Deputy for Posts and Telecommunications*: Headman B. R. Nemulodi. *Deputy for Information and Broadcasting and of Public Service Commission*: W. R. Rabuma.

*Flag*: Three horizontal stripes of green, yellow, and brown, with a brown V on the yellow stripe, and a blue vertical strip in the hoist.

**DEFENCE.** The Venda Defence Force was formed in 1983. It includes a small aviation component operating 1 Alouette III and 1 BK-117 helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Aid.** The Republic of South Africa granted aid of R45m. in 1981-82.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1983-84 budget envisaged expenditure of R152,074,050.

**Currency.** South African Rand.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Water.** In Oct. 1982 there were 118 hectares of canals, 250 dams and 520 bore-holes.

**Minerals.** Venda is relatively poor in mineral resources, although there are large supplies of stone for construction. Coal is the most important mineral; there are large deposits in the west near Makhado and in the north-east, bordering on the Kruger National Park, which it is hoped will soon be exploited. In addition there are deposits of graphite, copper sulphides, phosphates and magnesite; in 1978 the 2 graphite and 2 magnesite mines provided employment for 233 people, and the value of their output was R963,900.

**Agriculture.** About 85% of Venda is suitable only for the raising of livestock because of insufficient rainfall and poor soils, while some 10% is suited to dry-land crop production. Over 10,965 hectares have been given over to forest, mainly pine and eucalyptus. Eighteen irrigation schemes are being developed and there is extensive reclamation and conservation of eroded or overgrazed land; nearly R2m. were spent on these projects in 1980-81. Only maize is grown on a comparatively large scale, but tea, sisal, groundnuts, coffee and sub-tropical fruits are increasing in importance. A fish-breeding project produced 3 tonnes in 1980-81.

Over 80% of the working population are engaged in agriculture. The Venda Agricultural Corporation (Agriven) was established on 1 April 1982 to promote agricultural development.

**INDUSTRY.** Industrial development is still in its early stages, and since Venda's location is unfavourable, the Government is concentrating on the promotion of agro-industries utilizing local produce, and small-scale industries. A chutney factory has recently been established, in addition to a tea processing plant, a furniture factory and several saw-mills. A copper-chrome arsenate preservation plant has been established at Phiphidi. At Shayandima a 20-hectare industrial area has been prepared. The construction industry is particularly important owing to the substantial increase in the demand for buildings caused by the recent expansion of government, educational and health services.

In Dec. 1982 total investment in industry was estimated at R18.9m. The Venda Development Corporation was established in 1975 to promote and finance economic developments.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1982) 1,226 km of roads, of which 50 km had a permanent surface.

**Aviation.** An airline, inaugurated in 1981, operates between Nwangundu in Thohoyandu and Johannesburg *via* Pietersburg and Pretoria.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 30 post offices and postal agencies. Telephones (1982) numbered, 1,547. In 1984 the government-owned Radio Thohoyandu broadcast 17 hours daily.

## EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Education.** The Department of Education assumed responsibility for education on independence. Education is free up to Standard 2, and pupils are taught in the native tongue, Luvenda, for the first 4 years (up to Standard 2), after which English is gradually introduced. Secondary education comprises Standards 6 to 10.

The number of primary schools increased from 233 (1970) to 502 (1984), the number of pupils from 65,500 (1970) to 157,014 (1982) and the number of teachers from 956 (1970) to 4,586 (1982).

In 1970 there were 12 secondary schools, which had increased to 112 by 1982. Pupils numbered 2,465 in 1970, 33,432 in 1982, while the number of teachers increased from 100 (1970) to 1,062 (1982).

In addition there is a technical school at Sibasa with about 320 pupils, an agricultural school at Dimani with 476 pupils, and a school for the handicapped at Shayandima. There are 2 teacher-training colleges; enrolment was 704 in 1982. The University of Venda was established in 1981; 1,358 students (1984).

**Health.** In 1984 there were 5 hospitals/homes with 1,556 beds and 47 clinics. White doctors numbered 10 and coloured, 3; there were 712 nurses.

**Welfare.** In 1981-82 the Government spent R7.3m. on grants and pensions to 22,249 recipients. There is one welfare home.

## Further Reading

*Venda* 1983. Dept. of Information and Broadcasting. Sibasa, 1984

# CISKEI

**HISTORY.** On 4 Dec. 1981 the Republic of South Africa gave independence to Ciskei, the fourth of the tribal homelands.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Ciskei lies between latitudes 32° and 33°35' and longitudes 26°20' and 27°48', and has a coastal boundary between East London and Port Alfred. The total area is about 9,000 sq. km. The population was (1987) 2m. but only 1m. live in Ciskei. The remainder are resident and workers in the Republic of South Africa.

Populations of towns (1987): Mdantsane, 350,000; Zwelitsha, 55,000; Sada, 38,000; Dimbaza, 25,000 and Litha, 9,500. The capital, Bisho, houses 8,000 people, although the development is still going on.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In 1981 Ciskei became an independent democratic republic. In 1988 the Government consisted of a President and an Executive Council consisting of 15 Ministers appointed by the President. The legislature is a National Assembly consisting of (1988) 45 Hereditary Chiefs, 16 elected and 5 nominated Members and the Paramount Chief's representatives of 37 are traditional leaders, the others being elected on the basis of adult suffrage every five years.

*President:* Dr Lennox Sebe.

*Flag:* Blue, a broad diagonal band from lower hoist to upper fly, charged with a black crane.

*National Anthem:* *Nkosi Sikelel' i Afrika*, composed by Enoch Sontonga.

**DEFENCE.** There is a Ciskei Defence Force. Its aviation element is equipped with 2 Skyvan and 3 Islander transports, and 3 BK-117 and 1 BO 105 helicopters, plus 2 Cessna 152 trainers.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1987-88 budget balanced at R859m.

**Currency.** South African Rand.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Ciskei is totally dependent on power supply lines maintained by the Republic of South Africa.

**Minerals.** Mineral resources are mainly undeveloped and in 1988 only two mines existed in Ciskei, one producing dolorite, the other rutile ilmenite, leucoxene and zircon.

**Agriculture.** In 1977-78, total agricultural production was valued at R8.26m.

In 1986, the dryland products included (in tons): Maize, 3,125; wheat, 131; sorghum, 325; sunflower, 8.7. Horticultural crops included (1986, in tons): Potatoes, 979.9; cabbage, 5,135.8; carrots, 981.1; brussel sprouts, 356; onions, 4.8; pumpkins, 102.4; cauliflower, 11.6; peas, 28; dry beans, 83.3; spinach, 1.9; beetroot, 8.5.

Livestock (1986): 11,442 cattle, 76,294 sheep, 77,568 goats, 3,743 pigs, 14,742,814 poultry.

**Forestry.** In 1983-84, 5,500 hectares were planted mainly with conifers. The indigenous forest covered some 18,000 hectares. In 1984-85 (estimate), production of timber was valued at R600,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1988 total investment was R467m. The chief manufactures include textiles, timber products, electronic components, steel products, food and leather goods.

**Commerce.** International trade is mainly with the Republic of South Africa and no separate figures are available. The main exports are pineapples, timber and manufactured goods.

**Tourism.** Tourism is an important and developing industry.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were 448 km of tarred roads and 2,556 km of gravel roads.

**Railways.** There are two main railway lines serving the southern part of Ciskei.

**Aviation.** Ciskei uses East London's airport and there is a new international airport at Bulembu, near Bisho.

**Shipping.** Ciskei has no harbour of its own but has full access to the facilities of East London in the Republic of South Africa.

**Post and Broadcasting.** All major centres have post offices and manual and automatic telephone exchanges; telex facilities are available. There were (1987-88) 21,095 telephones. Radio Ciskei broadcasts from Bisho daily.

**Newspapers** (1988). There were three Ciskeian newspapers: *Umthombo*; *Imvo*, first published in 1884; *Umtha*, an agricultural newspaper.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court acts as Court of Appeal for the eight Magistrates' Courts, which in turn act as Courts of Appeal for the Chiefs' Courts. Appeals from the Supreme Court are heard by the Appellate Division of Ciskei in Bisho.

**Religion.** In 1988 (estimate) the population was 27% Methodists, 20% Indepen-



dent, 16% Presbyterian, 12% Anglicans, 7% Roman Catholics and 5% Dutch Reformed Church.

**Education.** In 1986–87 there were 545 primary schools with 200,752 pupils and 4,369 teachers; 158 post primary schools with 59,414 students and 1,809 teachers; 3 training colleges with 1,677 students and 97 teachers and 1 vocational school with 174 students and 20 teachers. The University of Fort Hare had a total of 2,304 students in 1981.

**Health.** In 1987–88, there were 8 hospitals with 2,910 beds, and a total of 2,952 nursing staff.

**Social Welfare.** Pensions paid in 1984–85:

	<i>Beneficiaries</i>	<i>Amount (R1,000)</i>
Old age	42,573	20,435
Blind	564	270
Disability	5,421	2,602
War veterans	72	38
Leprosy	11	5

### Further Reading

Charlton, N., *Ciskei: Economics and Politics of Dependence in a South African Homeland*. London, 1980

Pauw, B. A., *Christianity and the Xhosa Tradition*. OUP, 1975

Van der Kooy, R. (ed.) *The Republic of Ciskei: A Nation in Transition*. Pretoria, 1981

# SOUTH GEORGIA AND SOUTH SANDWICH ISLANDS

**HISTORY.** South Georgia was probably first sighted by a London merchant, Antonio de la Roche, and then in 1756 by a Spanish Captain, Gregorie Jerez. The first landing and exploration was undertaken by Captain James Cook, who formally took possession in the name of George III on 17 Jan. 1775. British sealers arrived in 1788 and American sealers in 1791. Sealing reached its peak in 1800. A German team was the first to carry out scientific studies there in 1882–83. Whaling began in 1904 when the *Compania Argentina de Pesca* formed by C. A. Larsen, a Norwegian, established a station at Grytviken. Six other stations were established up to 1912. Whaling ceased in 1966 and the civil administration was withdrawn. Argentine forces invaded South Georgia on 3 April 1982. A British naval task force recovered the Island on 25 April 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** South Georgia lies 800 miles south-east of the Falkland Islands and has an area of 1,450 sq. miles. The South Sandwich Islands are 470 miles south-east of South Georgia and have an area of 130 sq. miles. There has been no permanent population in South Georgia since the whaling station at Leith was abandoned in 1966. There is a small military garrison. The British Antarctic Survey have a biological station on Bird Island. The South Sandwich Islands are uninhabited.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is wet and cold with strong winds and little seasonal variation. 15°C is occasionally reached on a windless day. Temperatures below –15°C at sea level are unusual.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Under the new Constitution which came into force on 3 Oct. 1985 the Territories ceased to be dependencies of the Falkland Islands. Executive power is vested in a Commissioner who is the officer for the time being administering the Government of the Falkland Islands. The Commissioner is obliged to consult the officer for the time being commanding Her Majesty's British Forces in the South Atlantic on matters relating to defence and internal security (except police). The Commissioner whenever practicable consults the Executive Council of the Falkland Islands on the exercise of functions that in his opinion might affect the Falkland Islands. There is no Legislative Council. Laws are made by the Commissioner.

*Commissioner:* W. H. Fullerton.

**Economy.** The total revenue of the Territories (estimate, 1988–89) £268,240, mainly from philatelic sales and investment income. Expenditure estimate £194,260.

**Communications.** There is occasional direct sea communication between the Falkland Islands and South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands by means of the Royal Research Ships *John Biscoe* and *Bransfield* and the ice patrol vessel *HMS Endurance*. Royal Fleet Auxiliary ships, which serve the garrison, run regularly to South Georgia. Mail is dropped from military aircraft.

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court for the Territories and a Court of Appeal in the United Kingdom. Appeals may go from that court to the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. There is no magistrate permanently in residence. The Officer Commanding the garrison is usually appointed a magistrate.

## Further Reading

Headland, R. K., *The Island of South Georgia*. CUP, 1985

# SPAIN

*Capital:* Madrid

*Population:* 39m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$5,198 (1986)

## España

**HISTORY.** Although Spain has traditionally been a monarchy there have been two Republics, the first in 1873, which lasted for 11 months, and the second 1931–39; both were democratically and peacefully proclaimed. Part of the army rebelled against the republican government on 18 July 1936, thus beginning the Spanish Civil War, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1939, pp. 1325–26. The new regime was led by Gen. Franco, who had been proclaimed Head of State and Government in 1936, and its institutions were based on single party rule, with the *Falange* as the only legal political organization.

In July 1969, Prince Don Juan Carlos de Borbón y Borbón, grandson of Alfonso XIII, was sworn in as successor to the Head of State and he had the title of HRH Prince of Spain until he became King.

Gen. Francisco Franco y Bahamonde died on 20 Nov. 1975 and on 22 Nov. Prince Juan Carlos de Borbón y Borbón took the oath as Juan Carlos I, King of Spain.

On 23 Feb. 1981 there was an attempted military *coup*. For 18 hours the deputies of the lower house of Parliament and the Cabinet were held hostage. The King, the only high authority who kept his liberty, obtained the surrender of the rebels without bloodshed.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Spain is bounded north by the Bay of Biscay and the Pyrenees (which form the frontier with France and Andorra), east and south by the Mediterranean and the Straits of Gibraltar, south-west by the Atlantic and west by Portugal and the Atlantic. Continental Spain has an area of 492,592 sq. km, and including the Balearic and Canary Islands and the towns of Ceuta and Melilla 504,750 sq. km (194,884 sq. miles). Population (mid-decennial census. 1986), 38,891,313. Estimate (1987) 39m.

The growth of the population has been as follows:

Census year	Population	Rate of annual increase	Census year	Population	Rate of annual increase
1860	15,655,467	0.34	1950	27,976,755	0.81
1910	19,927,150	0.72	1960	30,903,137	0.88
1920	21,303,162	0.69	1970	33,823,918	0.94
1930	23,563,867	1.06	1981	37,746,260	1.15
1940	25,877,971	0.98			

Area and population of the autonomous communities and provinces, mid-decennial census of 1 April 1986:

Autonomous community	Area (sq. km)	Population	Per sq. km	Autonomous community	Area (sq. km)	Population	Per sq. km
Province				Province			
Andalusia	87,268	6,875,628	78	Zaragoza	17,194	845,832	49
Almería	8,774	448,592	51	Asturias	10,565	1,114,115	106
Cádiz	7,385	1,054,503	142	Balears	5,014	754,777	151
Córdoba	13,718	745,175	54	Basque			
Granada	12,531	796,857	63	Country, The	7,261	2,133,002	296
Huelva	10,085	430,918	43	Alava	3,047	275,703	92
Jaén	13,498	633,612	47	Guipúzcoa	1,997	688,894	344
Málaga	7,276	1,215,479	168	Vizcaya	2,217	1,168,405	531
Sevilla	14,001	1,550,492	110	Canary Islands	7,273	1,614,882	221
Aragón	47,669	1,214,729	25	Palmas, Las	4,065	855,494	213
Huesca	15,671	220,824	14	Santa Cruz			
Teruel	14,804	148,073	10	de Tenerife	3,208	759,388	237



<i>Autonomous community</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Per sq.</i>	<i>Autonomous community</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Per sq.</i>
<i>Province</i>	<i>(sq. km)</i>		<i>km</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>(sq. km)</i>		<i>km</i>
<i>Cantabria</i>	5,289	524,670	99	<i>Tarragona</i>	6,283	531,281	84
<i>Castilla-La Mancha</i>	79,226	1,665,029	21	<i>Extremadura</i>	41,602	1,088,543	26
Albacete	14,858	342,278	23	Badajoz	21,657	664,516	30
Ciudad Real	19,749	477,967	24	Cáceres	19,945	424,027	21
Cuenca	17,061	210,932	12	<i>Galicia</i>	29,434	2,785,394	94
Guadalajara	12,190	146,008	12	Coruña, La	7,876	1,102,376	141
Toledo	15,368	487,844	31	Lugo	9,803	399,232	40
<i>Castilla-León</i>	94,147	2,600,330	27	Orense	7,278	399,378	55
Ávila	8,048	179,207	22	Pontevedra	4,477	884,408	197
Burgos	14,269	363,530	25	<i>Madrid</i>	7,995	4,854,616	607
León	15,468	528,502	34	<i>Murcia</i>	11,317	1,014,285	89
Palencia	8,029	188,472	23	<i>Navarra</i>	10,421	512,676	49
Salamanca	12,336	366,668	29	<i>Rioja, La</i>	5,034	262,611	52
Segovia	6,949	151,520	21	<i>Valencian Community</i>	23,305	3,772,002	161
Soria	10,287	97,565	9	Alicante	5,863	1,254,920	216
Valladolid	8,202	503,306	61	Castellón	6,679	437,320	66
Zamora	10,559	221,560	21	Valencia	10,763	2,079,762	194
<i>Catalonia</i>	31,930	5,977,008	187	<i>Ceuta</i> <sup>1</sup>	18	71,403	3,996
Barcelona	7,773	4,598,249	591	<i>Melilla</i> <sup>1</sup>	14	55,613	3,972
Gerona	5,886	490,667	83				
Lérida	12,028	356,811	29	<i>Total</i>	504,750	38,891,313	77

<sup>1</sup> Ceuta and Melilla are municipalities located in the northern coast of Morocco.

The capitals of the autonomous communities are as follows: Andalusia, cap. Sevilla (Seville); Aragón, cap. Zaragoza (Saragossa); Asturias, cap. Oviedo; Baleares (Balearic Islands), cap. Palma de Mallorca; The Basque Country, cap. Vitoria; Canary Islands, dual and alternative capital, Las Palmas and Santa Cruz de Tenerife; Cantabria, cap. Santander; Castilla-León, cap. Valladolid; Catalonia, cap. Barcelona; Extremadura, cap. Mérida; Galicia, cap. Santiago de Compostela; Madrid, cap. Madrid; Murcia, cap. Murcia (but regional parliament in Cartagena); Navarra, cap. Pamplona; La Rioja, cap. Logroño; Valencian Community, cap. Valencia. Castilla-La Mancha had not chosen (1988) a capital town; the actual seat of its legislature and executive is at Toledo.

The capitals of the provinces are in the towns from which they take the name, except in Álava (capital Vitoria), Asturias (Oviedo), Baleares (Palma de Mallorca), Cantabria (Santander), Guipúzcoa (San Sebastián), La Rioja (Logroño), Navarra (Pamplona) and Vizcaya (Bilbao).

On 1 April 1986 there were 19,771,007 females and 19,120,306 males..

By decree of 21 Sept. 1927 the islands which form the Canary Archipelago were divided into 2 provinces, under the name of their respective capitals: Santa Cruz de Tenerife and Las Palmas de Gran Canaria. The province of Santa Cruz de Tenerife is constituted by the islands of Tenerife, La Palma, Gomera and Hierro, and that of Las Palmas by Gran Canaria, Lanzarote and Fuerteventura, with the small barren islands of Alegranza, Roque del Este, Roque del Oeste, Graciosa, Montaña Clara and Lobos. The area of the islands is 7,273 sq. km; population (mid-decennial census 1986), 1,614,882. Places under Spanish sovereignty in Morocco are: Alhucemas, Ceuta, Chafarinas, Melilla and Peñón de Vélez.

The following were the registered populations of principal towns at mid-decennial census 1986:

<i>Town</i>	<i>Popu- lation</i>	<i>Town</i>	<i>Popu- lation</i>	<i>Town</i>	<i>Popu- lation</i>
Albacete	127,169	Baracaldo	112,854	Cornellá	86,467
Alcalá de Henares	150,221	Barcelona	1,694,064	Coruña, La	241,808
Alcorcón	137,225	Bilbao	378,221	Elche	173,392
Algeciras	97,213	Burgos	163,910	Ferrol, El	88,101
Alicante	265,543	Cáceres	79,342	Fuenlabrada	119,463
Almería	156,838	Cádiz	154,051	Gerona	67,578
Ávila	44,618	Cartagena	168,809	Getafe	130,971
Badajoz	126,340	Castellón	129,813	Gijón	259,226
Badalona	223,444	Córdoba	304,826	Granada	280,592

<i>Town</i>	<i>Popu- lation</i>	<i>Town</i>	<i>Popu- lation</i>	<i>Town</i>	<i>Popu- lation</i>
Hospitalet	276,865	Orense	102,455	Santa Cruz de	
Huelva	135,427	Oviedo	190,651	Tenerife	211,389
Jerez de la Frontera	180,444	Palencia	76,707	Santander	188,539
Jaén	102,826	Palma de Mallorca	321,112	Santiago de	
Laguna, La	114,223	Palmas, Las	372,270	Compostela	104,045
Leganés	167,088	Pamplona	183,703	Sevilla	668,356
León	137,414	Reus	83,251	Tarragona	109,557
Lérida	111,507	Sabadell	185,960	Tarrasa	159,530
Logroño	118,770	Salamanca	166,615	Torrejón de Ardoz	79,877
Lugo	77,728	San Baudilio del		Valencia	738,575
Madrid	3,123,713	Llobregat	75,388	Valladolid	341,194
Málaga	595,264	San Fernando	84,940	Vigo	263,998
Mataró	99,642	San Sebastián	180,043	Vitoria	207,501
Móstoles	175,802	Santa Coloma de		Zaragoza	596,080
Murcia	309,504	Gramanet	133,515		

### Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1982	188,597	509,685	282,266
1983	183,068	477,291	296,188
1984	192,406	465,709	295,425
1985	193,128	451,373	308,430
1986	203,394	434,490	306,613

On 31 Dec. 1987 the number of foreigners legally registered was 334,935 (largest foreign community, British, 55,318).

*Languages.* The Constitution states that 'Castilian is the Spanish official language of the State', but also that 'All other Spanish languages will also be official in the corresponding Autonomous Communities'.

Catalan is spoken by a majority of people in Catalonia and Baleares, and by a large minority in Valencian Community (where it is frequently called Valencian); in Aragón, a narrow strip close to Catalonia and Valencian Community boundaries, speaks Catalan.

Galician, a language very close to Portuguese, is spoken by a majority of people in Galicia. Basque, by a significant minority in the Basque Country (33.3%, 1981 census); 54.3% in Guipúzcoa province, 25.7% in Vizcaya province and 11.7% in Álava province. Basque is also spoken by a small minority in north-west Navarra.

In bilingual communities, both Spanish and the regional language are taught in the schools and universities.

**CLIMATE.** Most of Spain has a form of Mediterranean climate with mild, moist winters and hot, dry summers, but the northern coastal region has a moist, equable climate, with rainfall well-distributed throughout the year, mild winters and warm summers, though having less sunshine than the rest of Spain.

Madrid. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 16.8" (419 mm). Barcelona. Jan. 46°F (8°C), July 74°F (23.5°C). Annual rainfall 21" (525 mm). Cartagena. Jan. 51°F (10.5°C), July 75°F (24°C). Annual rainfall 14.9" (373 mm). La Coruña. Jan. 51°F (10.5°C), July 66°F (19°C). Annual rainfall 32" (800 mm). Sevilla. Jan. 51°F (10.5°C), July 85°F (29.5°C). Annual rainfall 19.5" (486 mm). Palma de Mallorca (Balearic Islands). Jan. 51°F (11°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 13.6" (347 mm). Santa Cruz de Tenerife (Canary Islands). Jan. 64°F (17.9°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 7.72" (196 mm).

**KING. Juan Carlos I,** born 5 Jan. 1938. The eldest son of Don Juan, Conde de Barcelona. Juan Carlos was given precedence over his father as pretender to the Spanish throne in an agreement in 1954 between Don Juan and Gen. Franco. Don Juan resigned his claims to the throne in May 1977. King (then Prince) Juan Carlos married, in 1962, Princess Sophia of Greece, daughter of the late King Paul of the Hellenes and Queen Frederika. *Offspring:* Elcna, born 20 Dec. 1963; Cristina, 13 June 1965; Felipe, Prince of Asturias, Heir to the throne, 30 Jan. 1968.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The *Cortes* (Parliament) was freely elected on 15 June 1977. The text of the new Constitution was approved by referendum on 6 Dec. 1978, and came into force 29 Dec. 1978. It established a parliamentary monarchy, with King Juan Carlos I as head of state. Legislative power is vested in the *Cortes*, a bicameral parliament composed of the Congress of Deputies (lower house) and the Senate (upper house). The Congress of Deputies has not less than 300 nor more than 400 members (350 in the general elections of 1977, 1979, 1982 and 1986), all elected in a proportional system regarding the population of every province. The members of the Senate are elected in a majority system: The 47 peninsular provinces elect 4 senators each, regardless of population; the insular provinces electing 5 (Balears, Las Palmas) or 6 (Santa Cruz de Tenerife); and Ceuta and Melilla, 2 senators each. There are 208 senators, to whom are added some other members of the upper house elected by the parliaments of the autonomous communities. Deputies and senators are elected in universal (but not compulsory), direct, free, equal and secret suffrage, for a term of 4 years, liable to dissolution. Executive power is vested in the President of the Government (prime minister), with his Cabinet; he is elected by the Congress of Deputies.

A general election took place on 22 June 1986.

*Congress of Deputies* (350 members): Spanish Workers Socialist Party (PSOE), 184; Popular Alliance (AP, conservative), 84 (including its ally Liberal Party); Christian Democracy (ex Popular Democratic Party), 21; Social and Democratic Centre (CDS, centrist), 19; Convergence and Union (CiU, Catalan nationalists), 18; Basque Nationalist Party (PNV), 6; United Left (communist dominated coalition, IU), 7; Herri Batasuna (HB, Basque independentists), 5; Euskadido Eskerra (non-radical Basque independentists), 2; four conservative regional parties from Galicia, the Canaries, Aragón and Valencia, 1 each. *Presidente* (speaker) of the Congress of Deputies, Félix Pons Irazazábal (PSOE).

*Senate*: 208 members, excluding those elected by regional parliaments (250 including them): PSOE, 124 (145); AP and PDP, 63 (73); CiU, 8 (10); PNV, 7 (9); HB, 1 (1); Independents from the Canaries, 2 (2); CDS, 3 (3). *Presidente* (speaker) of the Senate, José F. de Carvajal (PSOE).

The Council of Ministers appointed 8 July 1988 was composed as follows in March 1989:

*President of the Government (Prime Minister)*: Felipe González Márquez (Secretary-General of PSOE).

*Vice-President of the Government (Deputy Premier)*: Alfonso Guerra González. *Foreign Affairs*: Francisco Fernández Ordóñez. *Economy, Finance and Commerce*: Carlos Solchaga Catalán. *Industry and Energy*: Claudio Aranzadi Martínez. *Interior*: José Luis Corcuera. *Defence*: Narcís Serra i Serra. *Public Administration*: Joaquín Almunia Amann. *Education and Science*: Javier Solana Madariaga. *Public Works*: Javier Sáez de Cosculluela. *Justice*: Enrique Múgica Herzog. *Culture*: Jorge Semprún. *Agriculture, Fisheries and Food*: Carlos Romero Herrero. *Health and Consumers Affairs*: Julián García Vargas. *Labour and Social Security*: Manuel Chaves. *Transport, Tourism and Communications*: José Barrionuevo. *Social Affairs*: Matilde Fernández. *Minister, Government Spokeswoman*: Rosa Conde. *Relations with the Cortes and Secretary of the Cabinet*: Virgilio Zapatero.

All ministers are members of PSOE, except Aranzadi, Semprún and Conde, who are independents.

*National flag*: Three horizontal stripes of red, yellow, red, with the yellow of double width, and charged near the hoist with the national arms.

*National anthem*: Marcha real.

*Regional and local government*. The Constitution of 1978 establishes a semi-federal system of regional administration, with the autonomous community (*Comunidad Autónoma*) as its basic element. There are 17 autonomous communities, each of them having a Parliament, elected by universal vote, and a regional government; all possess exclusive legislative and executive power in many matters, as listed in the national Constitution and in their own fundamental law (*estatuto de*



*autonomía*). The Basque Country and Catalonia elected their first parliaments in March 1980, Galicia in Oct. 1981 and Andalusia in May 1982. All others in May 1983. Further elections were held in the autonomous communities 1984-88.

There are 7 autonomous communities composed of one only province, i.e., Asturias (*ex-Oviedo* province), Cantabria (*ex-Santander* province), La Rioja (*ex-Logroño* province), Navarra, Baleares, Murcia and Madrid. The other 10 are formed by 2 or more provinces. In all, there are in Spain 50 provinces, since the administrative division established in 1833; Ceuta and Melilla, municipalities in the northern coast of Morocco, are not part of any province. The provincial council (*Diputación Provincial*) is the administrative organ of the province, except in the 7 autonomous communities composed of one only province, where there are only the regional legislative and executive powers. The provincial council is indirectly elected. Each of the 7 main islands of the Canaries (provinces of Las Palmas and Santa Cruz de Tenerife) has a directly elected corporation, the *Cabildo Insular*, to rule its special interests; in the main islands of the Balearics there are also elected *Consell Insular*.

The provinces are constituted by the association of municipalities (8,056 on 1 April 1986). Municipalities are autonomous in their own sphere. At their head stands the municipal council (*Ayuntamiento*), members of which are elected in a universal ballot every 4 years, and they, in turn, elect one of them as Mayor (*Alcalde*).

**DEFENCE.** On 26 Sept. 1953 the US and Spain signed three agreements covering the construction and use of military facilities in Spain by the US, economic assistance, and military end-item assistance. These agreements were renewed several times, the last in July 1982. The American naval and air base at Rota (near Cádiz) is connected by pipelines with the American bomber bases at Morón de la Frontera (near Seville), Torrejón (near Madrid) and Zaragoza. The US will withdraw from Torrejón in 1991 (withdrawal began in Aug. 1988).

Length of service is 12 months and 16 months for volunteers.

In March 1986 a referendum was conducted to establish whether Spain should remain in NATO. 52.5% of the voters were for the resolution.

**Army.** The Army is divided into 2 principal parts: 8 Regional Operation Commands and the General Reserve Force. The former consist of 1 armoured, 1 mechanized and 1 motorized divisions; 2 armoured cavalry, 1 parachute and 1 air-portable brigades; and supporting artillery, engineer and signals units. The General Reserve Force comprises an airborne brigade with air defence, artillery and engineer units. There are also the Royal Guard unit, and the Army Aviation forces. Equipment includes 299 AMX-30, 375 M-47E and 164 M-48 tanks. The aviation element of the Army consists of about 200 helicopters, including 70 HA-15s, 60 UH-1 Iroquois, 15 OH-58 Kiowas and 6 AB-212s, with 18 Super Pumas now being delivered. Strength (1989) 232,000 (including 164,000 conscripts). Of these 5,600 are stationed on the Balearic Islands, 10,000 on the Canary Islands and 15,800 in Ceuta/Melilla. The paramilitary Civil Guard number 72,700 men.

**Navy.** Particulars of the principal ships:

Naval Particulars of some principal ships.						
Com- pleted	Name	Standard displace- ment Tons	Guns	Aircraft	Shaft horse- power	Speed Knots
Aircraft Carriers						
1988	Principe de Asturias	14,700	4 Meroka 20 mm (12 barrels) CIWS	6-8 VSTOL aircraft and 10-16 helicopters (gas)	46,400	25
1943	Dédalo <sup>1</sup>	16,416	22 40-mm. A.A.	7 VSTOL aircraft and 20 helicopters	100,000 (steam)	32 (original) now 24

<sup>1</sup> The former US fixed-wing aircraft carrier *Cabot*, converted in 1966 and transferred to Spain on loan in 1967 and purchased in 1973. Classed as a helicopter carrier until Harrier 'jump-jet' fixed wing aircraft were embarked. To be de-commissioned.

There are also 8 submarines (4 'Daphne' class, 4 'Agosta' class), 7 destroyers, 9

frigates, 6 old corvettes, 12 new fast attack craft, 4 ocean minesweepers, 8 coastal minesweepers, 26 coastal patrol craft, 33 inshore patrol launches, 1 dock landing ship, 6 survey ships, 3 landing ships, 5 landing craft, 140 minor landing craft, 1 replenishment ship, 12 oilers, 2 attack transports, 2 tenders, 2 training ships, 1 boom defence vessel, 1 fishery protection trawler, 30 tugs, 1 royal yacht, 10 water carriers, 40 auxiliary craft and 36 service barges.

The Spanish Navy is being renewed and modernized. Ships under construction include 4 missile-armed frigates. Ships projected include 3 submarines, 4 destroyers, 1 more missile armed frigate and 6 corvettes, while a modified new construction programme is being considered including 3 submarines, 5 frigates, 8 minesweepers and 4 minehunters.

Shipbuilding is mainly carried on at the dockyards at El Ferrol and Cartagena, Cádiz having a smaller share in it. Barcelona, Bilbao, Seville and Cádiz are the chief naval yards.

There are naval radio telegraphic stations at Cádiz, Barcelona, Mahón, Pontevedra, Cartagena and El Ferrol.

In 1989 naval personnel totalled 55,054, comprising 5,562 naval officers, 34,051 ratings, 8,996 civil branch and 670 marine officers and 10,102 marine other ranks.

The Naval Air Service operates 28 fixed-wing aircraft and 44 helicopters.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is organized as an independent service, dating from 1939. It is administered through 4 operational commands. These comprise Air Combat Command which controls interceptor squadrons (including USAF elements) and the control and warning radar network, Tactical and Transport Commands, and Air Command of the Canaries. Strength (1989) 32,000 and 215 combat aircraft.

The Tactical Air Command has 2 fighter-bomber squadrons of Spanish-built Northrop SF-5s, 1 aero-naval co-operation squadron with 6 P-3A Orion anti-submarine aircraft, and a liaison flight at Tablada with CASA 127s. Air Combat Command has 2 squadrons of Mirage III-Es, 2 squadrons of F-4C/RF-4C Phantom IIs, 2 squadrons of F-18 Hornets and 2 squadrons of Mirage F1-Cs, plus a flight of CASA/Dornier Do27/127 liaison aircraft. Five KC-130H tankers support the fighter squadrons. Three wings of Air Transport Command operate C-130 Hercules, Caribou and Spanish-built CASA Aviocars. Air Command of the Canaries has 3 squadrons, equipped with Aviocar transports; Mirage F1 fighter-bombers; F27 Maritime aircraft and Super Puma helicopters for search and rescue. Other equipment includes 2 Boeing 707s, 5 Falcons and helicopters for VIP transport; and aircraft for photographic, firefighting, target towing and research duties. Air-sea rescue units have Aviocars and Super Puma helicopters.

American-built F33 Bonanza and Chilean-built Pillan piston-engined aircraft are used for basic training, after which pupil pilots progress to CASA C-101 jet aircraft. Two-seat versions of operational types are used as advanced trainers. Other training types include Beechcraft King Air C90s for instrument flying and liaison duties.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Spain is a member of UN, the Council of Europe, NATO, the European Communities and OECD.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure in 1 m. pesetas:

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Revenue	5,399,997	6,113,086	7,164,232	8,113,442	8,939,237
Expenditure	5,399,997	6,113,086	7,164,232	8,113,442	8,939,237

The budget is made up as follows (in 1 m. pesetas):

<i>Revenue (1988)</i>		<i>Revenue (1988) continued</i>	
Direct taxes	3,107,000	Real estate income	151,000
Indirect taxes	3,296,000	Miscellaneous income	235,000
Levies and various revenues	294,000	Deficit (financed with public	
Current transactions	212,000	debt, treasury loans, etc)	1,644,237

<i>Expenditure (1988)</i>		<i>Expenditure (1988) continued</i>	
H.M. House	600	Ministry of Public Works and Housing	323,560
Cortes (Parliament)	10,750	„ Education and Science	714,020
Court of Accounts	2,312	„ Labour and Social Security	1,891,724
Constitutional Court	893	„ Industry and Energy	227,511
Council of State	478	„ Agriculture and Food	143,136
Public Debt	1,179,231	„ Transport, Tourism and Communications	432,009
Civil Service Pensions	453,377	„ Culture	48,262
General Council of the Judicial Power	1,292	„ Public Administration	28,659
Relations with the Cortes and Secretariat of the Cabinet	23,175	„ Health and Consumer Affairs	31,329
Ministry of Foreign Affairs	50,565	Regional governments	1,370,001
„ Justice	138,400	Regional Compensation Fund	140,508
„ Defence	762,061	Expenses in several ministries	149,871
„ Finance	207,686	Financial relations with EEC	262,885
„ Interior	344,842		

**Currency.** The *peseta* is divided into 100 *céntimos*; but *céntimos* are no longer in legal use since 1 July 1984.

Bank-notes of 10,000, 5,000, 2,000, 1,000, 500, 200 and 100 *pesetas* and coins of 1 *peseta* (copper and aluminium), 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100, 200 and 500 *pesetas* (nickel and copper) are in circulation. In Sept. 1987 the circulation of bank-notes was 2,699,700m. *pesetas* and of coins, 159,200m. *pesetas*.

In March 1989, £1 = 198.60 *pesetas*; US\$1 = 115.40.

Inflation rate in Dec. 1985, 8.2%; 1986, 8.3%; 1987, 4.6%.

**Banking.** On 1 Jan. 1922 the Bank of Spain came under the Bank Ordinance Law, according to which the Government participate in its net profits.

The 10 largest banks are: Banco Central; Banco Español de Crédito; Banco Hispano Americano; Banco de Bilbao; Banco de Vizcaya; Banco de Santander; Banco Popular Español; Banco Exterior de España; Banco Pastor; Banco de Sabadell. All are privately owned except the Banco Exterior de España.

Private banks deposits and savings bank deposits (Popular Savings Banks) in Spain, 31 Dec. 1987, amounted to 29,784,700m. *pesetas*. The Post Office Savings Bank opened on 12 March 1916. Deposits, 30 June 1987, amounted to 569,117m. *pesetas*.

**Weights and Measures.** On 1 Jan. 1859 the metric system of weights and measures was introduced.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power-stations in 1987 had a total installed capacity of 42m. kw. The total output 1987, amounted to 132,707m. kwh of which 28,110m. hydro-electric and 41,267m. nuclear. Supply 110 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude oil production (1988) 1.5m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Production of natural gas in 1986 was 225,000 tonnes.

**Minerals.** Spain has a relatively wide range of minerals but most of them are found in small or moderate quantities. Production of the principal minerals (in 1,000 tonnes; net metal content):

	1986	1987		1986	1987
Anthracite	5,645	5,512	Lead	80	78
Coal	10,485	8,903	Zinc	223	225
Lignite	22,350	21,961	Tin <sup>1</sup>	281	71
Uranium <sup>1</sup>	373	380	Wolfram <sup>1</sup>	564	64
Iron	2,778	2,042	Fluorspar	278	196
Pyrites	1,195	992	Potassium salts	1,491	1,612
Copper	47	11			

<sup>1</sup> Tonnes.

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the total value of agricultural produce was 1,531.6m. *pesetas*;



of livestock, 1,063m.; of forestry, 89m. Land under cultivation in 1985 (in 1,000 hectares) included: Cereals, 7,591.3; vegetables, 480; potatoes, 331. In 1987, 647,681 tractors and 52,018 harvesters were in use.

Principal crops	Area (in 1,000 hectares)				Yield (in 1,000 tonnes)			
	1984	1985	1986	1987	1984	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	2,306	2,025	2,096	2,174	6,044	5,326	4,292	5,774
Barley	4,025	4,155	4,334	4,377	10,695	10,680	7,331	9,533
Oats	479	465	384	378	790	719	422	502
Rye	231	222	223	222	325	295	220	321
Rice	73	74	79	78	437	459	494	482
Maize	440	516	525	526	2,495	3,331	3,405	3,338
Potatoes	348	327	289	303	5,949	5,770	4,857	5,550
Sugar-beet	221	178	195	184	8,814	7,349	7,629	7,638
Sunflower	1,007	1,125	936	978	968	915	844	926

In 1986, 1,574,000 hectares were under vines; production of wine was (1987) 39.6m. hectolitres. The area of onions was (1987) 31,000 hectares, yielding (1987) 1,064,000 tonnes. Production of oranges and mandarines was 3,601,000 tonnes, lemons, 621,000. Other products are esparto, flax, hemp and pulse. Spain has important industries connected with the preparation of wine and fruits.

Industrial crops (1987 in 1,000 tonnes): Cotton, 251; olive oil, 586; tobacco, 42 (1985).

Livestock products (1987 in 1,000 tonnes): Pork, 1,235; beef, 455; mutton, 135; poultry meat, 725; goat meat, 9; rabbit meat, 70; cows' milk, 5,800m. litres; sheep's milk, 250m. litres; goats' milk, 421m. litres; eggs, 870m. dozen.

Livestock (1987): Horses, 248,000; asses, 140,000; mules, 117,000; cattle, 4,957,000; sheep (1986), 17,177,000; goats (1986), 2,925,000; pigs, 16,941,000; poultry (1986), 53m.

**Forestry.** Total forests (1985) 11.7m. hectares; production, 1986, 15,635,000 cu. metres of wood. Other forest products (1986 in tonnes): Resins, 23,955; cork, 73,541; esparto, 5,872.

**Fisheries.** The total catch amounted in 1987 to 1,071,292 tonnes, including 162,887 tonnes of molluscs, 34,323 of crustaceans and 111,244 from nurseries; total value, 231,528m. pesetas. The main fishing region is the North-West (Galicia), with 56.4% of the catch. The Spanish fishing fleet in 1986 consisted of 17,464 vessels of 649,457 tonnes, with a total crew of 94,246.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The industrial sector represented 72.3% of export value, 38.6% of GNP and 24.2% of employment in 1987. In 1983, the principal textile productions were (in 1,000 tonnes): Wool yarn, 33; cotton yarn, 106; fabrics yarn, 128; wool cloth, 9; cotton cloth, 88; fabrics cloth, 69. In 1983, 2.4m. tonnes of writing, printing, packing and other paper were produced. The production of cement reached 23,012,000 tonnes in 1987. Steel production (1987) 11,813,000 tonnes; the three great blast-furnaces concentrations are in Bilbao area, Avilés (Asturias) and Sagunto (Valencia). The chemical industry is located in the areas of Madrid, Barcelona and Bilbao; sulphuric acid production (1982), 2m. tonnes; nitrogenous fertilizers, 822,000 tonnes; plastics (1987), 1,703,000 tonnes. The 9 oil refineries refined (1987) 45.8m. tonnes of crude oil. In 1982 900,000 TV sets (550,000 colour sets) were manufactured. 911,000 refrigerators and 1,336,000 washing machines were manufactured in 1987. Spain has important toys and shoe industries, toys especially in Alicante and Barcelona provinces and shoe in Alicante province and the Balearic islands.

Spanish shipyards launched 280,268 BRT in 1987. In 1987, 1,402,000 cars and 302,000 industrial and commercial vehicles were built.

**Labour.** The monthly minimum wage for workers was 46,680 pesetas (Jan. 1989).

The economically active population numbered 14,358,700 in Dec. 1987. Of these, 11,421,000 were employed: 1,728,100 in agriculture and fishing, 2,761,500 in manufactures, 931,100 in construction industry and 6,000,300 in trade, trans-

port and other public and personal services. 20.4% of the active population was unemployed at the end of 1987 (2,937,700 persons).

**Trade Unions.** The Constitution guarantees the establishment and activities of trade unions provided they have a democratic structure. The two most important trade unions are *Unión General de Trabajadores* (UGT), founded in 1888 by Pablo Iglesias (who had founded in 1879 the Spanish Workers Socialist Party, PSOE), and *Comisiones Obreras*, which was gradually established 1958–63, then as a clandestine labour organization.

**Commerce.** Foreign trade of Spain (Peninsula, Balears, Canaries, Ceuta, Melilla) (in 1m. pesetas):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	4,176,470	4,628,991	5,073,239	4,890,768	6,029,838
Exports	2,838,601	3,778,071	4,104,143	3,800,225	4,195,623

In 1987 the most important items of import were (in 1m. pesetas): Crude petroleum, 748,725 (12.42% of total); vehicle parts, 229,869 (3.81%); vehicles 254,378 (4.22%); computers, 149,601 (2.48%); petroleum products, 125,345 (2.08%); inner combustion motors, 118,696 (1.97%); measuring and precision tools, 87,979 (1.46%); telecommunications equipment, 86,897 (1.44%); electrical machinery and tools, 86,248 (1.43%); paper and paperboard, 81,519 (1.35%).

The most important exports in 1987 (in 1m. pesetas) were: Vehicles, 449,494 (10.71% of total); petroleum products, 226,638 (5.40%); fresh fruit and nuts, 218,901 (5.22%); vehicle parts, 153,901 (3.66%); footwear, 133,332 (3.18%); vegetables, 105,328 (2.51%); iron and steel bars, 91,740 (2.19%); tyres, 69,872 (1.67%); alcoholic beverages, 68,803 (1.64%); iron and steel sheets, 68,260 (1.63%).

Distribution of Spanish foreign trade (in 1m. pesetas) according to main origin and destination, for calendar years:

	Imports		Exports	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
EEC	2,458,100	3,292,037	2,294,300	2,676,714
Germany, Federal Republic	736,091	970,299	444,686	503,380
France	571,427	773,993	682,748	786,869
Italy	356,867	532,650	302,261	371,852
UK	377,653	421,774	335,283	398,029
Netherlands	145,272	195,090	216,067	225,738
Belgium–Luxembourg	130,222	193,790	107,264	126,476
Portugal	63,094	100,707	130,954	189,893
USA	482,718	499,075	349,330	341,672
Japan	217,105	270,245	39,211	46,319
Latin America	347,776	373,620	214,578	182,086
Mexico	127,774	176,973	28,713	21,630
EFTA	253,600	217,049	179,837	1,187,631
Sweden	80,810	105,922	42,032	46,628
Switzerland	82,064	101,613	74,878	75,145
COMECON	86,992	155,976	68,601	66,940
USSR	41,929	109,114	33,316	36,386
Nigeria	40,098	102,172	16,721	15,593
Libya	132,654	100,618	17,487	15,982
Saudi Arabia	70,498	85,091	50,270	43,952
Iraq	121,890	82,272	8,560	2,140
Iran	57,536	81,828	24,239	12,549

Total trade between Spain and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,770,862	1,777,341	2,099,139	2,482,360
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,553,424	1,905,479	2,164,221	2,691,662

Total trade of the Spanish territories and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	Imports to UK			Exports from UK		
	1986	1987	1988	1986	1987	1988
Canary Islands	63,529	77,191	77,491	66,949	86,185	90,834
North Africa	44	...	34	2,762	3,831	3,599

**Tourism.** In 1987, 50,539,385 tourists visited Spain (from France, 23.1%; Portugal, 17.7%; Federal Republic of Germany, 13%; UK, 14.9%; Morocco, 5%). Receipts of foreign currency (1987) US\$14,759,900. Hotel and similar beds, 1,784,900 (1987).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 the total length of highways and roads of all classes was 318,225 km. The main network comprised 2,155 km of motorways (1,798 km toll motorways), 619 km of other four-lane highways and 17,760 km of first class roads. Number of cars (1987) was 10,689,101, lorries and vans, 1,844,124, buses, 45,078 and motorcycles, 845,612. There were in Dec. 1986 12,345,589 driving licences (3,370,450 drivers were women).

**Railways.** The total length of the state railways in 1986 was 12,691 km, mostly 1,676-mm gauge (6,226 km electrified). On 1 Feb. 1941 the Spanish railways, of broad gauge only, passed into state ownership; they are under a board known as the *Red Nacional de Ferrocarriles Españoles* (RENFE). The gauge of the principal Spanish railways has, for strategic reasons, been kept different from that of France; passengers therefore must change trains at the French frontier stations except by certain trains having variable gauge axles. In 1987 freight carried was 30.2m. tonnes and 190.3m. passengers. There are several regional railways including Basque, Catalan and FEVE (narrow gauge) railways.

**Aviation.** The most important Spanish airline is 'Iberia': it maintains a regular service with Europe, America, Africa and the Middle and Far East. Its fleet included 6 B-747s (for 430 passengers each), 8 DC-10s (for 266), 6 Airbus-300Bs (for 253), 35 B-727s (for 161) and 30 DC-9s (for 110) in 1985. 'Aviaco' operates mainly internal flights. There are 43 airports open to civil traffic; those of Madrid, Palma de Mallorca and Barcelona are the most active. A small airport in Seo de Urgel, in the Pyrenees, used especially for the air service of Andorra was opened in 1982.

Aircraft movements in 1987, 309,385 internal and 293,177 international, carrying 25.7m. passengers on internal and 37.2m. on international flights, and 348,056 tonnes of merchandise.

**Shipping.** The merchant navy in 1987 had 952 vessels of a gross tonnage of 4,652,000.

In 1987, 82,174 ships entered Spanish ports, carrying 14.1m. passengers and discharging and loading 215.7m. tonnes of cargo.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The receipts of the post office in 1986 were 87,396m. pesetas; expenses, 99,892m. pesetas. There were in 1986, 13,292 post offices and (Nov. 1987) 15,350,464 telephones, these all privately operated.

*Radio Nacional de España* broadcasts 4 programmes on medium-waves and FM, as well as many regional programmes; it does not broadcast advertising. There is another state broadcasting network, *Radio-Cadena Española*, this self-financing with advertising. The greatest radio audience is that of a private network, *Sociedad Española de Radiodifusión* (SER); *Cadena de Ondas Populares Españolas* (COPE) belongs to the Roman Catholic church. Two private broadcasting networks were established in 1982 covering the whole of Spain, *Antena 3* and *Radio 80*. *Televisión Española* broadcasts 2 programmes. Since 1983 *TV3* broadcasts entirely in Catalan and *Eusko Telebista* about 90% in Basque. Since 1985 *Televisión de Galicia* broadcasts in Galician. Colour transmissions are carried by PAL system. Number of receivers (1979): Radio, 9.6m.; television, 9.4m. (about 50% colour sets).

**Cinemas** (1986). There were 2,640 cinemas with an audience of 87.3m.

**Newspapers** (1986). There were about 75 daily newspapers with a total daily circulation of about 5m. copies. In 1986 the following dailies had a daily circulation of more than 100,000 copies: *El País* (Madrid, 360,398), *La Vanguardia* (Barcelona, 194,553), *ABC* (Madrid, 235,107), *As* (Madrid, [sports], 153,504), *El*



*Periódico* (Barcelona, 150,912), *Diario 16* (Madrid, 134,534) and *El Correo Español-El Pueblo Vasco* (Bilbao, 115,511).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Justice is administered by *Tribunales* and *Juzgados* (Tribunals and Courts), which conjointly form the *Poder Judicial* (Judicial Power). Judges and magistrates cannot be removed, suspended or transferred except as set forth by law. The Constitution of 1978 has established a new organ, the *Consejo General del Poder Judicial* (CGPJ, General Council of the Judicial Power), formed by 1 President and 20 magistrates, judges, attorneys and lawyers, governing the Judicial Power in full independence from the other two powers of the State, the Legislative (Cortes) and the Executive (President of the Government and his Cabinet); all members of the CGPJ, magistrates, etc., have been appointed by the Cortes since 1985. Its President is that of the *Tribunal Supremo*. The territorial organization of justice is being gradually changed, adapting it to the new map of the country in Autonomous Communities and when completed, in each of these it will be a *Tribunal Superior de Justicia* as the highest judicial organ, responsible only to the national *Tribunal Supremo*.

The Judicature is composed of the *Tribunal Supremo* (Supreme High Court); 16 *Audiencias Territoriales* (Division High Courts); 50 *Audiencias Provinciales* (Provincial High Courts); 518 *Juzgados de Primera Instancia* (Courts of First Instance), 755 *Juzgados de Distrito* (District Courts) and 7,532 *Juzgados Municipales y de paz* (Municipal and Peace Courts, court of lowest jurisdiction held by Justices of the Peace).

The *Tribunal Supremo* consists of a President (appointed by the King, on proposal from the *Consejo General del Poder Judicial*) and various judges distributed among 7 chambers: 1 for trying civil matters, 3 for administrative purposes, 1 for criminal trials, 1 for social matters and 1 for military cases. The *Tribunal Supremo* has disciplinary faculties; is court of cassation in all criminal trials; for administrative purposes decides in first and second instance disputes arising between private individuals and the State, and in social matters resolves in the last instance all cases involving over 100,000 pesetas.

The *Audiencias Territoriales* have power to try in second instance sentences passed by judges in civil matters.

The *Audiencias Provinciales* try and pass sentence in first instance on all cases filed for delinquency. The jury system, re-established by the art. 125 of the Constitution, had not been applied by Jan. 1989, pending its parliamentary regulation.

The *Juzgados Municipales* try small civil cases and petty offences. The *Juzgados Comarcales* deal with the same charges, but their jurisdiction embraces larger districts.

The *Tribunal Constitucional* (Constitutional Court) has power to solve conflicts between the State and the Autonomous Communities, to determine if legislation passed by the Cortes is contrary to the Constitution and to protect constitutional rights of the individuals violated by any authority. Its 12 members are appointed by the King in the following way: 4, on proposal of the Congress of Deputies; 4, on proposal of the Senate; 2 on proposal of the *Consejo General del Poder Judicial*; and 2 on proposal of the Cabinet. It has a 9 year term, a third of the membership renewed every 3 years.

The death penalty was abolished in 1978 by the Constitution (art. 15). Divorce is again legal since July 1981 and abortion since Aug. 1985.

The prison population was, on 8 Nov. 1987, 27,656.

**Religion.** Roman Catholicism is the religion of the majority. There are 11 metropolitan sees and 52 suffragan sees, the chief being Toledo, where the Primate resides.

The archdioceses of Madrid-Alcalá and Barcelona depend directly from the Vatican.

The Constitution guarantees full religious freedom and states that no religion has an established legal condition (art. 16); so, since 29 Dec. 1978 there has been no official religion in Spain. A report issued in 1982 by the Episcopal Conference of

the Roman Catholic Church claims that 82.76% of all children born in 1981 were baptized in that church.

There are about 250,000 other Christians, including several Protestant denominations, Jehovah Witnesses (about 60,000) and Mormons. The British and Foreign Bible Society was, on 10 March 1963, allowed to resume its activities.

The first synagogue since the expulsion of the Jews in 1492 was opened in Madrid on 2 Oct. 1959. The number of Jews is estimated at about 13,000.

There is a growing Moslem community, with between 200,000 and 300,000 members. Most of them are foreign citizens, but there are also Spanish Moslems, mainly in Ceuta and Melilla.

**Education.** Primary education is compulsory and free between 6 and 14 years of age.

In 1986-87 pre-primary education (under 6 years) was undertaken by 39,190 schools, with 39,105 teachers and 1,326,917 pupils. Primary or basic education (6 to 14 years): 185,658 schools, 192,217 teachers and 6,649,521 pupils. Secondary education (14-17 years) is conducted on two branches: Middle schools (*Institutos*), and vocational and technical centres (*Formación Profesional*), with 2,638 and 2,199 school units, 77,163 and 50,480 teachers and 1,263,841 and 727,212 pupils. For adult education there were (in 1986-87) 602 school units, with 543 teachers and (1985-86) 145,062 students. For the physically or mentally disabled there were (1986-87) 4,817 school units, with 5,146 teachers and 42,620 pupils.

In 1987 there were in all 34 universities: 23 State Universities, in Madrid, Barcelona, Valencia, Granada, Sevilla, Santiago de Compostela, Zaragoza, Bilbao (University of the Basque Country), Oviedo, Valladolid, Salamanca (founded in 1215), La Laguna (Canaries), Murcia, Málaga, Córdoba, Badajoz-Cáceres (University of Extremadura), Cádiz, León, Santander, Alicante, Palma de Mallorca, Albacete-Ciudad Real (University of Castilla-La Mancha) and Alcalá de Henares; 4 Polytechnic Universities, in Madrid, Barcelona, Valencia and Las Palmas (Canaries); 2 Autonomous Universities, in Madrid and Barcelona; 4 private (catholic) universities, in Deusto (Bilbao), Pamplona, Salamanca and Madrid (University of Comillas); and the *Universidad Nacional de Educación a Distancia* (National University for Education at Home), which teaches by mail, radio and TV, with its central seat at Madrid (50,653 students, 1986-87). There were 903,166 university students (1986-87) including 30,545 students at private universities.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 131,080 doctors, 5,722 dentists, 31,118 pharmacists, 147,462 nurses, 6,103 midwives and 935 hospitals with 179,192 beds.

**Social Security.** The social services budget was 4,852,182m. pesetas in 1988, and covered retirement pensions (60% of that budget), health and hospital services (29.09%) and other allowances and aids. There is a minimum pension for every retired citizen with yearly earnings under 520,000 pesetas.

In 1988 the system of contributions to the social security and employment scheme was: For pensions, sickness, invalidity, maternity and children, a contribution of 28.8% of the basic wage (24% paid by the employer, 4.8% by the employee); for unemployment benefit, a contribution of 6.3% (5.2% paid by the employer, 1.1% by the employee). There are also minor contributions for a Fund of Guaranteed Salaries, working accidents and professional sicknesses, and vocational training.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Spain in Great Britain (24 Belgrave Sq., London SW1X 8QA)

*Ambassador:* José Joaquín Puig de la Bellacasa, GCVO.

Of Great Britain in Spain (Calle de Fernando el Santo, 16, Madrid, 4)

*Ambassador:* Lord Nicholas Gordon Lennox, KCMG, LVO.

Of Spain in the USA (2700 15th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Julián Santamaría.

Of the USA in Spain (Serrano 75, Madrid)

*Ambassador:* Joseph Zappala.

Of Spain to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Francisco Villar Ortiz de Urbina.



### Further Reading

- Bell, D. (ed.) *Democratic Politics in Spain: Spanish Politics after Franco*. London, 1983  
 Carr, R., *Modern Spain, 1875-1980*. OUP, 1980  
 Collins, R., *The Basques*. Oxford, 1986  
 Donaghy, P. J. and Newton, M. T., *Spain: A Guide to Political and Economic Institutions*. CUP, 1987  
*Enciclopedia Universal Ilustrada*. 70 vols., 10 appendices, 10 supplements. Madrid  
 Gunther, R. (et al) *Spain after Franco: The Making of a Competitive Party System*. Univ. of California Press, 1986  
 Harrison, J., *The Spanish Economy in the Twentieth Century*. London, 1985  
 Hooper, J., *The Spaniards: A Portrait of The New Spain*. London, 1986  
 Preston, P., *The Triumph of Democracy in Spain*. London and New York, 1986  
 Shields, G. J., *Spain*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985  
*National Library*: Biblioteca Nacional, Madrid.

## FORMER PROVINCE IN AFRICA (WESTERN SAHARA)

The colony of Spanish Sahara became a Spanish province in July 1958. On 14 Nov. 1975 Spain, Morocco and Mauritania had reached agreement on the transfer of power over Western Sahara to Morocco and Mauritania on 28 Feb. 1976. Morocco occupied al-Aaiún in late Nov. and on 12 Jan. 1976 the Spanish army withdrew from Western Sahara which had ceased to be a Spanish province on 31 Dec. 1975. The country was partitioned by Morocco and Mauritania on 28 Feb. 1976; Morocco reorganized its sector into 3 provinces. In Aug. 1979 Mauritania withdrew from the territory it took over in 1976. The area was taken over by Morocco and reorganized into a fourth province.

A liberation movement, *Frente Polisario*, launched an armed struggle against Spanish rule on 20 May 1973 and, in spite of occupation of all western centres by Moroccan troops, Saharawi guerrillas based in Algeria continue to attempt to liberate their country. They have renamed it the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic and hold most of the desert beyond a defensive line built by Moroccan troops encompassing Smara, Bu Craa and Laâyoune. A ceasefire was agreed in Aug. 1988.

In 1982 the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic became a member of the Organization of African Unity (OAU).

*President*: Mohammed Abdelaziz.

Area 266,769 sq. km (102,680 sq. miles). The population at the census held by Morocco in Sept. 1982 was 163,868; estimate (1986) 180,000. Another estimated 165,000 Saharawis live in refugee camps around Tindouf in south-west Algeria. The main towns (1982 census) are Laâyoune (al-Aaiún), the capital (96,784), Dakhla (17,822) and as-Smara (17,753). The population is Arabic-speaking, and virtually entirely Sunni Moslem.

Rich phosphate deposits were discovered in 1963 at Bu Craa. Morocco holds 65% of the shares of the former Spanish state-controlled company. While production reached 5.6m. tonnes in 1975, exploitation has been severely reduced by guerrilla activity but in 1984 produced 1m. tonnes. After a nearly complete collapse, production and transportation of phosphate resumed in 1978, ceased again, and then resumed in 1982. There are about 6,100 km of motorable tracks, but only about 500 km of paved roads. There are airports at Laâyoune and Dakhla. As most of the land is desert, less than 19% is in agricultural use, with about 2,000 tonnes of grain produced annually. There are (1983) about 22,000 sheep, as well as goats and camels raised. Electricity produced (1983) 78m. kwh.

### Further Reading

- Hodges, T., *Western Sahara: The Roots of a Desert War*. London and Westport, 1984  
 Sipe, L. F., *Western Sahara: A Comprehensive Bibliography*. New York, 1984



# SRI LANKA

*Capital:* Colombo

*Population:* 16.6m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$400 (1986)

## Ceylon

**HISTORY.** According to the Mahawansa chronicle, an Indian prince from the valley of the Ganges, named Vijaya, arrived in the 6th century B.C. and became the first king of the Sinhalese. The monarchical form of government continued until the beginning of the 19th century when the British subjugated the Kandyan Kingdom in the central highlands.

In 1505 the Portuguese formed settlements on the west and south, which were taken from them about the middle of the next century by the Dutch. In 1796 the British Government annexed the foreign settlements to the presidency of Madras. In 1802 Ceylon was constituted a separate colony.

Ceylon became an independent Commonwealth state when the Ceylon Independence Act, 1947, came into force on 4 Feb. 1948. Sri Lanka became a republic in 1972. War between northern Tamil separatists and government forces began in 1983; the state of emergency ended on 11 Jan. 1989, but violence continued.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Sri Lanka is an island in the Indian Ocean, south of the Indian peninsula from which it is separated by the Palk Strait. On 28 June 1974 the frontier between India and Sri Lanka in the Palk Strait was re-defined, giving to Sri Lanka the island of Kachchativu. Area (in sq. km.) and census population on 17 March 1981.

<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Provinces</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>
Western	3,708.61	3,919,807	North-Central	10,723.59	849,492
Central	5,583.50	2,009,248	Uva	8,487.91	914,522
Southern	5,559.15	1,882,661	Sabaragamuwa	4,901.55	1,482,031
North-Eastern	18,833.37	2,084,655			
North-Western	7,812.18	1,704,334	Total	65,609.86	14,846,750

Population (1981 census), 14,846,750, an increase of 17% since 1971. Population (in 1,000) according to race and nationality at the 1981 census: 10,980 Sinhalese, 1,887 Ceylon Tamils, 1,047 Ceylon Moors, 39 Burghers, 47 Malays, 819 Indian Tamils, 28 others. Non-nationals of Sri Lanka totalled 635,150. By agreement with the Government of India in 1964 and 1974, Indian nationals who have not been granted Sri Lanka citizenship were to be repatriated. The 1964 agreement covered 525,000 people; the 1974 agreement, 75,000.

Vital statistics, 1986 (provisional): birth-rate (per 1,000 population), 22.3; death-rate, 6.0; infant death-rate (per 1,000 live births), 22.6.

The urban population was 21.5% of the total in 1981. The principal towns and their population according to the census of 1981 are: Colombo (the capital), 587,647; Dehiwela-Mt. Lavinia, 173,529; Moratuwa, 134,826; Jaffna, 118,224; Kotte, 101,039; Kandy, 97,872; Galle, 76,863; Negombo, 60,762; Trincomalee, 44,313; Batticaloa, 42,963; Matara, 38,843; Ratnapura, 37,497; Anuradhapura, 35,981; Badulla, 33,068; Kalutara, 31,503. Population of the Greater Colombo area, 1980, about 1m.

The national languages are Sinhala, English and Tamil; Sinhala is the official language and Tamil is used in the northern and eastern provinces.

**CLIMATE.** Sri Lanka has an equatorial climate with low annual temperature variations, but it is affected by the north-east Monsoon (Dec. to Feb.) and the south-west Monsoon (May to Sept.). Rainfall is generally heavy but never lasts long; it is heaviest in the south-west and central highlands while the north and east are relatively dry. Thirty-year averages, 1951-80: Colombo. Jan. 79.7°F (26.5°C), July 81.1°F (27.3°C). Annual rainfall 99.5" (2,527 mm). Trincomalee. Jan.

78.6°F (25.9°C), July 86.2°F (30.1°C). Annual rainfall 63.60" (1,615 mm). Kandy. Jan. 73.9°F (23.3°C), July 75.9°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 76.6" (1,947 mm). Nuwara Eliya. Jan. 58.5°F (14.7°C), July 60.3°F (15.7°C). Annual rainfall 80.04" (2,044 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution for the Democratic Socialist Republic of Sri Lanka was promulgated in Sept. 1978.

The Executive President is directly elected by the people and has to receive more than one-half of the valid votes cast. His term of office is six years and he shall not hold the office for more than two consecutive terms. He is the Head of the State, the Head of the Executive and of the Government and the Commander-in-chief of the Armed Forces. He does not have any veto power over legislation; even in a time of public emergency, he must act with Parliamentary control and approval.

Parliament consists of one chamber, composed of 168 members elected by universal suffrage. The Senate was abolished by constitutional amendment in Oct. 1971.

The term of Parliament is six years. In Nov. 1982 Parliament voted to extend its present term (expiring Aug. 1983) for a further six years. The vote was subject to national referendum on 20 Dec. 1982; 71% of the electorate voted and 55% approved the extension.

The Prime Minister and other Ministers, who must be members of Parliament, are appointed by the President. The President is head of the Cabinet.

The electorate consists of all who are 18 years of age and over.

*National flag:* A yellow field bearing 2 panels: In the hoist 2 vertical strips of green and orange; in the fly, dark red with a gold lion holding a sword and in each corner a gold 'bo' leaf.

The Cabinet was as follows in March 1989:

*President, Defence, Higher Education, Janata Estates Development, and Plan Implementation, Manpower Mobilization and Civil Security, Leader of the House, Local Government, Highways, Housing and Construction, Emergency Civil Administration:* Ranasinghe Premadasa.

*Prime Minister, Finance:* D. B. Wijeratne.

*Land, State Plantations:* Gamini Dissanayake. *Foreign Affairs:* R. Wijeratne. *Home Affairs:* K. W. Devanayagam. *Agriculture and Food:* Lalith W. Athulathumudali. *Rural Development:* Wimala Kannangara. *Justice:* N. P. Wijeyeratne. *Finance and Planning:* N. Marikkar. *Labour:* P. C. Imbulana. *Cultural Affairs:* E. L. B. Hurulle. *Fisheries:* M. F. W. Perera. *Health:* R. Atapattu. *Post and Telecommunications:* S. Abeysundera. *Parliamentary Affairs and Sports, Chief Government Whip:* M. Vincent Perera. *Transport, Transport Boards, Private Omnibus Transport:* M. H. Mohamed. *Co-operatives:* W. Dahanayake. *Public Administration and Plantation Industries:* M. Jayawickreme. *Textile Industry:* W. Mendis. *Social Services:* Asoka Karunaratne. *Rural Industrial Development:* S. Thondaman. *Industries:* R. Wickremasinghe. *State:* A. de Alwis. *Regional Development:* C. Rajadurai. *Women's Affairs and Teaching Hospitals:* S. Ranasinghe. *Trade and Shipping:* M. S. Amarasiri. *Power and Energy:* P. Dayaratne. *Without Portfolio:* M. A. Bakeer Markar.

For purposes of general administration, the island is divided into 25 districts, administered by government agents. There are 12 Municipal Councils and 24 District Councils.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army was constituted on 10 Oct. 1949. It consists of 5 infantry brigades, 2 reconnaissance, 2 field artillery and 1 engineer regiment, and 1 signals battalion. Equipment includes 18 Saladin armoured cars and 15 Ferret scout cars. Strength (1989) 40,000 including active reservists. There are also paramilitary forces: Police Force (28,000), Volunteer Force (eventually 10,000, when fully mobilized).

**Navy.** The Navy was constituted on 9 Dec. 1950. It comprises 4 Surveillance Command Ship (*ex-mercantile*), 2 new Colombo-built off-shore patrol vessels, 6 (*ex-Chinese*) patrol gunboats, 50 small patrol boats, 2 landing craft and 2 fast passenger craft. Emphasis is now on indigenous building. *Elara, Tissa, Ruhuna, Vijaya, Gemunu* and *Rangalla* are commissioned as shore establishments. The largest naval base is at Trincomalee. Personnel in 1989 numbered 500 officers and 6,000 ratings. Naval personnel are sent to the UK, India and Pakistan for training. There is also a Volunteer Naval Reserve of 100 officers and 1,000 ratings, and a Naval Reserve of 20 officers and 100 men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force was formed on 10 Oct. 1950. Its flying bases are at Katunayake and China Bay, Trincomalee. Equipment of 4 squadrons comprises 9 SF.260 and 4 Cessna 150/152 trainers, 2 Herons, 3 HS748, 6 Chinese-built Y-12s, 2 Chinese-built Y-8s (An-12s), 1 Super King Air, 3 Cessna Skymasters, 1 Cessna 421 and a Cessna Cardinal for general transport and utility purposes; 3 Doves for navigation training; and 2 Dauphin, 12 Bell 212, 4 Bell 412 and up to 10 JetRanger helicopters for internal security operations. Total strength (1989) about 3,700 officers and airmen. There is also an Air Force Reserve.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Sri Lanka is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, the Non-Aligned Movement, the South Asian Association for Regional Co-operation and the Colombo Plan.

**External debt.** External debt in Dec. 1986 was Rs 86,208.2m. (provisional).

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 1987-91 plan aims at 4.6% annual growth rate. Investment allocated is mainly for power and water, including the Mahaweli energy and irrigation scheme, road repairs and telecommunication. Total public investment, about Rs154,156m.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure of central government in Rs 1m. for financial years ending 31 Dec.:

Year	Revenue	Expenditure		Total
		Recurrent	Capital	
1985	39,010	33,842	30,529	64,371
1986	41,644	34,772	35,112	69,884
1987 <sup>1</sup>	44,115	37,050	33,000	70,050

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

The principal sources of revenue in 1986 were (in Rs 1m.): Income tax, 4,787; import duties, 4,476; export duties, 1,574; other indirect taxes, 21,035.

The principal items of recurrent expenditure in 1986 (in Rs 1m.): Administration including defence, 9,279; food subsidies and food stamps, 1,799; education, social services and health, 5,512; interest on public debt, 9,413. Capital expenditure on agriculture, 1,465; communications, 2,476.

**Currency.** The Monetary Law Act provides that the standard monetary unit is the Sri Lankan *rupee*.

The Central Bank is the sole authority for the issue of currency and all currency notes and coins issued by the Central Bank are legal tender for the payment of any amount, except notes of Rs 50 and Rs 100 dated before 25 Oct. 1970. Currency notes are issued in the denominations of Rs 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 and 1,000. Coins are issued in the denominations of 1, 2, 5, 10, 25 and 50 cents; Rs 1, 2 and 5. The total circulation was Rs 12,246.9m. on 30 June 1986. In March 1989, £1 = Rs 57.20; US\$1 = Rs 33.24.

**Banking.** The narrow money supply (M1) at 30 June 1986 stood at Rs 19,948.8m.

The main commercial banks in Sri Lanka are: The Bank of Ceylon and the



People's Bank (state-managed), the State Bank of India, Grindlays Bank, the Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation, the Standard Chartered Bank, the Commercial Bank of Ceylon, the Hatton National Bank, the Habib Bank (Overseas) Ltd., Indo-Suez Bank, Bank of Credit and Commerce International, American Express and the Indian Overseas Bank Ltd. Total assets of 25 commercial banks at 30 June 1986, Rs 63,632.3m.

The state-owned Ceylon Insurance Corporation and the National Insurance Corporation have a monopoly of all insurance business.

Sri Lanka National Savings Bank at 30 June 1986 had a balance to depositors' credit of Rs 13,615.2m. Sri Lanka State Mortgage and Investment Bank, National Development Bank, Development Finance Corporation, the National Housing Authority and the Housing Development Finance Corporation of Sri Lanka Ltd. are the main long-term credit institutions.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system has been established by the Weights and Measures (Amendment) Law No. 24 of 1974, and subsequent legislation.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Installed capacity of electric energy (1986), 1,065,250 kw. Energy produced, 2,653m. kwh; the main source is hydro-electricity (producing 2,645m. kwh). The Mahaweli power scheme had 2 large hydro-power plants commissioned in 1985: Victoria and Kothmale. The Randenigala hydro-power plant was commissioned in 1986 (two 61 mw units). Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Water.** The Mahaweli Ganga irrigation scheme is (1987) irrigating 41,000 hectares of new land and 77,000 hectares of land already cultivated. There is a Water Resources Board (set up in 1966) and a National Water Supply and Drainage Board (1974). Water supply to the city and area of Colombo comes from the Labugama and Kalatuwawa reservoirs. Consumption within Colombo city limits is estimated at 10,000m. gallons a year.

All domestic consumers receive a free water allowance; commercial consumers do not.

**Minerals.** Gems are among the chief minerals mined and exported. Precious and semi-precious stones are found among the layers of older alluvium and river gravels of quaternary age in the valleys of the Ratnapura district in the southwest. The most important are sapphire, ruby, crysoberyl, beryl, topaz, spinel, garnet, zircon and tourmaline. Value of gemstones exported in 1986, Rs 755m.

Graphite is also important. The State Graphite Corporation was set up in 1971. There were 3 large mines (Bogala, Kahatagaha and Kalangaha), and several smaller mines. Graphite produced (tonnes), 1985, 7,413; 1986, 7,708.

The Ceylon Mineral Sands Corporation was established in 1957, mainly to extract ilmenite. Production of ilmenite, 1986, 129,907 tonnes. Some rutile is also produced (8,443 tonnes in 1986).

Salt extraction is the oldest industry in Sri Lanka and is now controlled by the National Salt Corporation. The method is solar evaporation of sea-water. Production, 1986, 104,279 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** The area of the island is 6,561,000 hectares, of which about 2m. hectares are under cultivation. Agriculture engages about 45% of the labour force. The main crops in 1986 were as follows: Paddy (2.6m. tonnes from 836,000 hectares), rubber (137,000 tonnes), tea (211,000 tonnes) and coconuts (3,039m. nuts).

Livestock in 1987 (estimate): 1,807,000 cattle, 1,008,000 buffaloes, 97,000 swine, 530,000 goats and sheep, 9m. poultry.

**Fisheries.** Production for 1986 was 183,056m. tons including 144,266m. tons of coastal water fish, 35,390m. tons of fresh water fish and 3,400m. tons from deep-sea fisheries. In 1986 (provisional) there were 27,792 fishing craft, of which 14,387 were not motorized.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The private sector has been encouraged since 1977, with Investment

Promotion Zones and freedom for imports; the public sector still accounts for about 60% of total production.

The main industries are food, beverages and tobacco; textiles, clothing and leather goods; chemicals, petroleum, rubber and plastics.

The Greater Colombo Economic Commission has charge of the two Investment Promotion Zones: Katunayake and Biyagama.

**Trade Unions.** The registration and control of trade unions are regulated by the Trade Unions Ordinance (Ch. 138 of the Legislative Enactments). In 1985 there were 957 registered trade unions with a membership of 1,565,394.

**Commerce.** The values of total imports and exports (imports excluding bullion, specie and postal articles; exports, including re-exports and ship's stores) for calendar years (in Rs 1,000):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	36,875,519	42,020,529	46,913,266	49,068,542	51,281,508
Exports	20,728,491	24,843,439	36,540,767	35,034,947	34,092,261

Principal exports (domestic) in 1986 (in Rs 1m.): Tea, 9,253; rubber, 2,622 copra, coconut oil and desiccated coconut, 1,609; other crops, 780; textiles and garments, 9,629; precious and semi-precious stones, 1,182.

Principal imports (Rs 1m.) in 1986 were petroleum, 6,203m.; machinery and equipment, 5,828m.; vehicles and transport equipment, 1,457; food and beverages, 6,746.

In 1986 the principal sources of imports were (in Rs 1m.): Saudi Arabia, 325; Japan, 8,934; UK, 2,882; USA, 3,291; India, 2,222; Iran, 1,069; Singapore, 2,011; FRG, 2,405; South Korea, 1,963.

Principal export destinations 1986 were (in Rs 1m.): UK, 1,893; USA, 8,480; Japan, 1,813; Pakistan, 949; FRG, 2,305; Saudi Arabia, 907.

Total trade between Sri Lanka and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	77,163	73,956	51,860	53,817	56,661
Exports and re-exports from UK	61,179	79,234	83,315	84,680	92,528

**Tourism.** About 230,000 tourists visited the country in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are about 25,650 km. of motorable roads, of which 82% are black-topped. Number of motor vehicles, 31 Dec. 1985, 523,723, including 148,587 private cars and cabs, 98,859 lorries, 75,474 tractors, 161,373 motor cycles, 38,309 buses.

**Railways.** In 1986 there were about 1,453 km of railway open, of which 1,394 km were broad gauge and 59 narrow gauge. In 1987 railways ran 1,881m. passenger-km and 204m. tonne-km.

**Aviation.** Air Lanka operates international services. Foreign airlines which operate scheduled services to Sri Lanka are British Airways, India Airlines Corporation, Aeroflot, KLM, Singapore Airlines, Thai Airways International, Pakistan International Airlines, Gulf Air, Royal Nepal Airlines, Kuwait Airways, Saudi Air, Emirates and UTA French Airlines; various others operate charter services.

Internal services are operated by Upali, Air Taxis and Consolidated Engineering.

**Shipping.** In 1986, merchant vessels totalling 25.7m. GRT entered the ports of Sri Lanka. The Sri Lanka Shipping Corporation began functioning as ship-owners, charterers, brokers and shipping agents in 1971. The Sri Lanka Port Authority was established in 1979.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1986 there were 487 post offices and 3,221 sub-post offices. In 1982 there were 1,900 telegraph offices and 109,900 telephones. Throughout the Greater Colombo Area inter-dialling facilities are now available between 52 stations.

The Overseas Telecommunication Service operates telegraph and telephone ser-



vices to most parts of the world. Broadcasting is provided by the Sri Lanka Broadcasting Corporation, which assumed the functions of Radio Ceylon on 5 Jan. 1967.

**Cinemas.** In 1985 there were 229 cinemas. The National Film Corporation established in 1971 has exclusive rights to import films and arrange distribution of foreign and local films. Films released, 1985, 154.

**Newspapers.** There are 6 main newspaper groups: Associated Newspapers of Ceylon Ltd (5 daily and 3 weekly papers and other periodicals); Express Newspapers (Ceylon) Ltd (2 daily and 2 weekly papers); Independent Newspapers Ltd. (3 daily and 3 weekly papers and other periodicals); Upali Newspapers Ltd. (2 daily, 2 weekly papers and other periodicals); Wijeya Publications (2 weekly papers and other periodicals); Eelanadu Ltd (1 daily).

There are 6 daily and 4 weekly papers in Sinhala; 6 daily and 4 weekly in Tamil; 4 daily and 4 weekly in English.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The systems of law which obtain in Sri Lanka are the Roman-Dutch law, the English law, the Tesawalamai, the Moslem law and the Kandyan law.

The Kandyan law applies to the Kandyan Sinhalese in respect of all matters relating to inheritance, matrimonial rights and donations. The law of England is observed in most commercial matters. The law of Tesawalamai is applied to all Tamil inhabitants of Jaffna, in all matters relating to inheritance, marriages, gifts, donations, purchases and sales of land. The Moslem law is applied to all Moslems in respect of succession, donations, marriage, divorce and maintenance. These customary and religious laws have been modified in many respects by local enactments.

The courts of original jurisdiction are the High Court, District Courts, Magistrates' Courts and Primary Courts. The High Court tries major crimes and also exercises admiralty jurisdiction. The District Court has unlimited civil jurisdiction in civil, revenue, trust, insolvency and testamentary matters, over persons and estates of persons of unsound mind, and wards. Family Courts were established in 1978; District Courts act as Family Courts. The Magistrates' Courts exercise criminal jurisdiction carrying the power to impose terms of imprisonment not exceeding 2 years and fines not exceeding Rs 1,500. The Primary Courts which were established in 1978 exercise civil jurisdiction where the value of the subject matter does not exceed Rs 1,500 and also have jurisdiction in respect of by-laws of local authorities and matters relating to the recovery of revenue of such local authorities. Primary Courts exercise exclusive criminal jurisdiction in respect of offences which may be prescribed by regulation by the Minister. The Primary Courts have the power to impose sentences of imprisonment not exceeding three months and fines not exceeding Rs 250.

The Constitution of 1978 provided for the establishment of two superior courts, the Supreme Court and the Court of Appeal.

The Supreme Court is the highest and final superior court of record and exercises jurisdiction in respect of constitutional matters, jurisdiction for the protection of fundamental rights, final appellate jurisdiction, consultative jurisdiction, jurisdiction in election petitions and jurisdiction in respect of any breach of the privileges of Parliament. Parliament may provide by law that the Supreme Court exercises the power to grant and issue any of the orders in the nature of Writs of Certiorari, Prohibition, Procedendo, Mandamus or Quo Warranto. The Court of Appeal has appellate jurisdiction to correct all errors in fact or law committed by any court, tribunal or institution; it can grant and issue orders in the nature of the above Writs, and of Writs of Habeas Corpus and injunctions; it can also try election petitions in respect of election of members of Parliament.

**Police.** The strength of the police service in 1986 was 23,739.

**Religion.** Buddhism was introduced from India in the 3rd century B.C. and is the religion of 69.3% of the inhabitants. There were (1981) 10,288,325 Buddhists, 2,297,806 Hindus, 1,130,568 Christians, 1,121,717 Moslems and 8,334 others.

**Education.** Education is free from the kindergarten to the university and is im-



parted in the medium of the mother tongue. In 1981 about 87% of the population (10 years old and older) was literate.

In 1986 there were 10,099 schools including 9,656 government schools; the rest were private and estate schools, and Pirivenas. The government schools had 142,630 teachers and 3.7m. students from grades kindergarten to XII. Ministry of Education expenditure (1986), Rs 4,117.8m. Education is now administered under 31 regional directors.

The overall control of the education regions is vested in the Ministry of Education.

There are 8 Universities: Peradeniya, Colombo, Jaffna, Sri Jayawardenepura, Moratuwa, Kelaniya, Eastern, and Ruhuna, an Open University. Dumbura Campus comes under Peradeniya University. There are 8 Institutes (4 for post-graduate and 4 for undergraduate studies).

In 1985 there were 18,913 students and 2,051 teachers in the 7 Universities and 1 University College. The Open University had 9,287 students. Postgraduate Institutes had 519 students, the others, 1,214. There were 23 institutions for technical education, 9 of which had grade I status; total enrolment (1985), 20,796.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 497 hospitals, including 88 maternity homes, and 341 central dispensaries. Hospitals had 46,005 beds and there were 2,222 Department of Health doctors. Total state budget expenditure on health, 1986, Rs 2,095m.

**Social Security.** The activities of the Department of Social Services include:

- (1) Payment of Public Assistance, monthly allowance, tuberculosis assistance and leprosy allowance to all needy persons.
- (2) Relief for those affected by widespread distress, such as floods, drought, cyclone.
- (3) Custodial care and welfare services to the elderly and infirm.
- (4) Vocational training, rehabilitation, aids and appliances for the physically handicapped.
- (5) Custodial care, vocational training and rehabilitation for socially handicapped persons.
- (6) Distribution of Food Stamps and Kerosene Oil Stamps.
- (7) Study of social problems affecting the community with a view to finding appropriate solutions.
- (8) Financial assistance to voluntary institutions that provide welfare services.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Sri Lanka in Great Britain (13 Hyde Park Gdns., London, W2 2LU)  
*High Commissioner:* Chandra Monerawela (accredited 15 May 1984).

Of Great Britain in Sri Lanka (190 Galle Rd., Kollupitiya, Colombo 3)  
*High Commissioner:* D. A. S. Gladstone, CMG.

Of Sri Lanka in the USA (2148 Wyoming Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* W. S. L. De Alwis.

Of the USA in Sri Lanka (210 Galle Rd., Kollupitiya, Colombo 3)  
*Ambassador:* James Spain.

Of Sri Lanka to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Nissanka Wijewardane.

## Further Reading

*The Sri Lanka Year Book.* Department of Census and Statistics. Colombo, Annual Census Publications from 1871

*Economic Atlas.* Department of Census and Statistics. Colombo, 1980

*Performance 1985.* Ministry of Plan Implementation, Colombo, 1985

*Review of the Economy.* Central Bank of Ceylon. Annual

*Statistical Pocket-Book.* Department of Census and Statistics. Colombo, 1984

*Statistical Abstract.* Department of Census and Statistics, Colombo, 1982

Coomaraswamy, R., *Sri Lanka: The Crisis of the Anglo-American Constitutional Traditions in a Developing Society.* Colombo, 1984

- de Silva, K. M. (ed.) *Sri Lanka: A Survey*. London, 1977.—*A History of Sri Lanka*. London, repr. 1982.—*Managing Ethnic Tensions in Multi-Ethnic Societies: Sri Lanka 1880–1985*. New York, 1986
- Ferguson's *Ceylon Directory*. Annual (from 1858)
- Fernando, T., *Sri Lanka: An Island Republic*. Epping, 1985
- International Commission of Jurists, ed., *Sri Lanka: A Mounting Tragedy of Errors*. London, 1984
- Johnson, B. L. C. and Scrivenor, M. le M., *Sri Lanka: Land, People and Economy*. London, 1981
- Manogaran, C., *Ethnic Conflict and Reconciliation in Sri Lanka*. Univ. Hawaii Press, 1987
- Manor, J., *Sri Lanka: In Change and Crisis*. London, 1984
- Moore, M., *The State and Peasant Politics in Sri Lanka*. CUP, 1985
- Piyadasa, L., *Sri Lanka: The Holocaust and After*. London, 1984
- Poonambalam, S., *Dependent Capitalism in Crisis: The Sri Lankan Economy 1948–80*. London, 1981
- Ratnasuriya, M. D. and Wijeratne, P. B. F., *Shorter Sinhalese-English Dictionary*. Colombo, 1949
- Richards, P. and Gooneratne, W., *Basic Needs, Poverty and Government Policies in Sri Lanka*. Geneva, 1981
- Robinson, M. S., *Political Structure in a Changing Sinhalese Village*. CUP, 1975
- Samaraweera, V., *Sri Lanka*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987
- Schwarz, W., *The Tamils of Sri Lanka*. London, 1983
- Tambiah, S. J., *Sri Lanka: Ethnic Fratricide and the Dismantling of Democracy*. London, 1986
- Wilson, A. J., *Politics in Sri Lanka 1947–73*. London, 1974.—*The Gaullist System in Asia: the Constitution of Sri Lanka*. London, 1980

# SUDAN

*Capital:* Khartoum

*Population:* 25.56m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$330 (1987)

## Jamhuriyat es-Sudan

**HISTORY.** Sudan was proclaimed a sovereign independent republic on 1 Jan. 1956. On 19 Dec. 1955 the Sudanese parliament passed unanimously a declaration that a fully independent state should be set up forthwith, and that a Council of State of 5 should temporarily assume the duties of Head of State. The Codomini, the UK and Egypt, gave their assent on 31 Dec. 1955.

For the history of the Condominium and the steps leading to independence, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1955, pp. 340–341.

On 8 July 1965 the Constituent Assembly elected Ismail El-Azhari as President of the Supreme Council. Following a crisis in the coalition Cabinet the Prime Minister, Mohammed Ahmed Mahgoub resigned on 23 April 1969. For political history *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1973–74, p. 1333. The Government was taken over by a 10-man Revolutionary Council on 25 May 1969 under the Chairmanship of Col. Jaafar M. al Nemery. This Council was dissolved in 1972.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Sudan is bounded north by Egypt, north-east by the Red Sea, east by Eritrea and Ethiopia, south by Kenya, Uganda and Zaïre, west by the Central African Republic and Chad, north-west by Libya. Sudan covers an area of 967,500 sq. miles (2,505,813 sq. km) and the population at the census of 14 Feb. 1983 was 20,564,364; latest estimate (1987) 25.56m. The chief cities (census, 1983) are the capital, Khartoum (476,218), its suburbs Omdurman (526,287) and Khartoum North (341,146), Port Sudan (206,727), Wadi Medani (141,065), al-Obeid (140,024), Kassala (98,751 in 1973), Atbara (73,009), al-Qadarif (66,465 in 1973), Kosti (65,257 in 1973) and Juba (56,737 in 1973).

The northern and central thirds of the country are populated by Arab and Nubian peoples, while the southern third is inhabited by Nilotic and Negro peoples; Arabic, the official language, is spoken by 51%, Darfurian by 6% and other northern languages by 12%, while Nilotic languages (chiefly Dinka and Nuer) are spoken by 18%, Nilo-Hamitic by 5%, Sudanic by 5% and others by 3%. In 1987 there were 975,000 refugees in Sudan (337,544 from Ethiopia).

The area and population (census, 1983) of the regions are as follows:

<i>Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1983</i>	<i>Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1983</i>
Northern	183,941	1,083,024	Dafur	196,555	3,093,699
Eastern	129,086	2,208,209	Equatoria <sup>1</sup>	76,495	1,406,181
Central	53,716	4,012,543	Bahr al-Ghazal <sup>1</sup>	77,625	2,265,510
Kurdufan	146,932	3,093,294	Upper Nile <sup>1</sup>	92,269	1,599,605
Khartoum (province)	10,883	1,802,299			

<sup>1</sup> Re-united in 1985 as Southern Region.

**Local government:** Sudan is divided into Khartoum Province (centrally administered) and 6 Regions, each with an elected Regional Assembly and government, and sub-divided into 18 more Provinces.

**CLIMATE.** Lying wholly within the tropics, the country has a continental climate and only the Red Sea coast experiences maritime influences. Temperatures are generally high throughout the year, with May and June the hottest months. Winters are virtually cloudless and night temperatures are consequently cool. Summer is the rainy season inland, with amounts increasing from north to south, but the northern areas are virtually a desert region. On the Red Sea coast, most rain



falls in winter. Khartoum. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 89°F (31.7°C). Annual rainfall 6'' (157 mm). Juba. Jan. 83°F (28.3°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 39'' (968 mm). Port Sudan. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 94°F (34.4°C). Annual rainfall 4'' (94 mm). Wadi Halfa. Jan. 60°F (15.6°C), July 90°F (32.2°C). Annual rainfall 0.1'' (2.5 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** President Nemery was deposed in a military *coup* on 6 April 1985 and the Constitution of 1973 was suspended. A transitional Constitution was approved in Oct. 1985. A Military Council was established to which the Cabinet was responsible prior to elections held in April 1986 for the 301-seat National Assembly. Voting was postponed in some southern constituencies.

*The Supreme Council:* Ahmad Ali al-Mirghani (*President*), Idris Albanna, Ali Hasan Taj ad-Din, Muhammad al-Hasan Abdullah Yasin, Pacifico Lado Lolik. All Sworn in 6 May 1986.

*Prime Minister and Defence:* Sadiq al-Mahdi. *Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign Affairs:* Hassan al-Turabi.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, black, with a green triangle based on the hoist.

## DEFENCE.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 1 Republican Guard brigade, 2 armoured, 1 parachute and 12 infantry brigades, with 3 artillery and 1 engineer regiments, and 3 Air Defence brigades (including 1 surface-to-air missile). Equipment includes 155 T-54 and T-55, 60 Chinese Type-62 and 20 M-60A3 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 54,000. Paramilitary forces are National Guard (500) and Border Guard (2,500).

**Navy.** The Navy was established in 1962 to operate in the Red Sea and the River Nile, with 4 patrol boats built in Yugoslavia and a training mission from the Yugoslav Navy until 1972. There are also 1 larger *ex*-Yugoslav patrol craft, 3 *ex*-Iranian coastal patrol craft, 4 *ex*-Iranian very small coastguard cutters, 2 *ex*-Yugoslav landing craft, 1 small oiler, 1 small survey vessel and 1 water carrier. The flotilla reportedly has suffered from lack of maintenance and spares. Personnel in 1989 totalled 700 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force was built up with Soviet and Chinese assistance, and is now receiving equipment from the USA. Two combat squadrons are equipped with about 10 MiG-21 fighters, 6 Northrop F-5E, 10 F-6 (Chinese-built MiG-19) and 12 F-5 (Chinese-built MiG-17) fighter-bombers. There is 1 transport squadron, with 5 C-130H Hercules, 6 Aviocars and 3 DHC-5D Buffalo turboprop transports; 2 helicopter squadrons have 12 AB.212s and 10 BO 105s, 12 Romanian-built Pumas, 6 Mi-8s; there are 3 Jet Provost, 3 Strikemaster and 1 F-5F jet armed trainers, and some Chinese-built FT-2 (MiG/ISUII) advanced trainers. Personnel totalled (1989) about 3,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Sudan is a member of UN, OAU, the Arab League and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1987-88 budget envisages revenue of £S3,906m. and expenditure of £S6,790m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the Sudanese *pound* (£S) divided into 100 *piastres* and 1,000 *milliemes*. Sudanese bank-notes of £S10, £S5, £S1, 50 and 25 *piastres* and Sudanese coins of P. 10, 5, 2; m/ms 10, 5, 2, 1 are in circulation. In March 1989, £1 = £S7.78; US\$1 = £S4.52.

**Banking.** The Bank of Sudan opened in Feb. 1960 with an authorized capital of £S1.5m. as the central bank of the country; it has the sole right to issue currency. All foreign banks were nationalized in 1970.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 1,210m. kwh. Supply 240 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Two oil wells in the south-west produce 15,000 bbls per day of high quality oil. Production of petrol (1982) 150,000 tonnes.

**Minerals.** Minerals known to exist include: Gold, graphite, sulphur, chromium-ore (estimate, 9,900m. tonnes in 1982), iron-ore, manganese-ore, copper-ore, zinc-ore, fluorspar, natron, gypsum and anhydrite, magnesite, asbestos, talc, halite, kaolin, white mica, coal, diatomite (kieselguhr), limestone and dolomite, pumice, lead-ore, wollastonite, black sands, vermiculite pyrites.

Gold is being exploited on a small scale at Gabeit and at Abirkateib (in Kassala Province); alluvial gold is occasionally exploited in Southern Fung and Equatoria. Iron-ore was discovered in Red Sea area in 1976.

Manganese mining activities started in the 1950s but this industry did not develop well and in 1982 only 200 tonnes was produced. Processed and scrap white mica have been mined since the late fifties; it went out of production for almost a decade, but started again in 1970 when 170 tonnes were produced; 1982, 200 tonnes. A big deposit of vermiculite and a medium-sized deposit of pyrophyllite are known to occur in the Sinkat District. Reserves of metallurgical grade chromite occur in the Ingessana Hills, Blue Nile Province. Huge reserves of chrysotile asbestos are proved in this vicinity and also in Qala El Nahal area, Kassala Province. Deposits of magnesite, with or without talc, are known to occur in the Ingessana Hills and Qala El Nahal areas in addition to other occurrences in the Halaib area, Red Sea Province.

**Agriculture.** The Sudan is a predominantly agricultural country. Cotton is by far the most important cash crop on which the Sudan depends for earning foreign currency. The two types of cotton grown in the Sudan are: (a) long staple sakellaridis and sakel types (derivatives of sakellaridis), grown in Gezira, White Nile, Abdel Magid and private pump schemes; (b) short staple, mainly American types, in Equatoria and Nuba Mountains, generally by rain cultivation.

Production (1986) in 1,000 tonnes: Sorghum, 3,605; sugar-cane, 5,200; groundnuts, 454; seed cotton, 440; millet, 544; wheat, 199; sesame, 301; cotton seed, 275.

One of the largest sugar complexes in the world was opened at Kenana in March 1981. It is capable of processing 330,000 tonnes a year.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 20.49m.; sheep, 19m.; goats, 14m.; poultry, 32m.

**Forestry.** Gum arabic, mainly hashab gum from *Acacia senegal*, is the sole forest produce exported on a major scale. Production (1983) 38.16m. cu. metres.

**COMMERCE.** Total trade for calendar years, in US\$1,000:

	1984	1985	1986
Imports	556,000	1,237,000	1,055,000
Exports	519,000	544,000	497,000

In 1983, Saudi Arabia provided 14.3% of imports and the UK 10%, while 17.1% of exports went to Saudi Arabia and 10% to Italy; cotton formed 49% by value of exports and groundnuts 2%, sesame 9% and gum arabic 9%.

Total trade between Sudan and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	16,858	21,323	12,826	18,850	9,910
Exports and re-exports from UK	95,627	103,635	83,335	75,322	86,480

**Tourism.** There were 42,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1982 there were about 3,000 km of tarmac roads, including the new 1,190 km road from Khartoum to Port Sudan, and 45,000 km of tracks. There were 99,400 passenger cars and 17,500 commercial vehicles in 1985.

**Railways.** The main railway lines run from Khartoum to El Obeid *via* Wadi Medani, Sennar Junction, Kosti and El Rahad (701 km); El Rahad to Nyala *via* Abu Zabad, Babanousa and Ed-Daein (698 km); Sennar Junction to Kassala *via* Gedaref (455 km) and to Roseires *via* Singa (220 km); Kassala to Port Sudan *via* Haiya Junction and Sinkat (550 km); Khartoum to Wadi Halfa *via* Shendi, El Dammer, Atbara, Berber and Abu Hamad Junction (924 km); Abu Hamad to Karima (248 km); Atbara to Haiya Junction (271 km); Babanousa to Wau (444 km). The main flow of exports and imports is to and from Port Sudan *via* Atbara and Kassala. The total length of line open for traffic (1982) was 4,786 km. The gauge is 1,067 mm. In 1985–86, the railways carried 2.3m. passengers and 837,675 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Sudan Airways is a government-owned airline, with its headquarters in Khartoum, operating domestic and international services. In 1980 Sudan Airways carried 519,000 passengers and 6.8m. ton-kg of mail and freight.

**Shipping.** Supplementing the railways are regular river steamer services of the Sudan Railways, between Karima and Dongola, 319 km; from Khartoum to Kosti, 319 km; from Kosti to Juba, 1,436 km, and from Kosti to Gambela, 1,069 km. Port Sudan is the country's only seaport; it is equipped with 13 berths.

**Post and Broadcasting** Number of telephones in 1983 was 68,838 (44,756 in Greater Khartoum). Radio receivers (1982) 5m. The television service broadcasts for 35 hours per week. There were (1982) 1m. TV receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1975 there were 58, seating capacity 112,000 and also 43 mobile units.

**Newspapers.** In 1985 there were 2 daily newspapers with a circulation of 120,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judiciary is a separate and independent department of state directly and solely responsible to the President of the Republic. The general administrative supervision and control of the judiciary is vested in the High Judicial Council.

Civil Justice is administered by the courts constituted under the Civil Justice Ordinance, namely the High Court of Justice—consisting of the Court of Appeal and Judges of the High Court, sitting as courts of original jurisdiction—and Province Courts—consisting of the Courts of Province and District Judges. The law administered is 'justice, equity and good conscience' in all cases where there is no special enactment. Procedure is governed by the Civil Justice Ordinance.

Justice in personal matters for the Moslem population is administered by the Mohammedan law courts, which form the Sharia Divisions of the Court of Appeal, High Courts and Kadis Courts; President of the Sharia Division is the Grand Kadi. The religious law of Islam is administered by these courts in the matters of inheritance, marriage, divorce, family relationship and charitable trusts.

Criminal Justice is administered by the courts constituted under the Code of Criminal Procedure, namely major courts, minor courts and magistrates' courts. Serious crimes are tried by major courts, which are composed of a President and 2 members and have the power to pass the death sentence. Major Courts are, as a rule, presided over by a Judge of the High Court appointed to a Provincial Circuit or a Province Judge. There is a right of appeal to the Chief Justice against any decision or order of a Major Court, and all its findings and sentences are subject to confirmation by him.

Lesser crimes are tried by Minor Courts consisting of 3 Magistrates and presided over by a Second Class Magistrate, and by Magistrates' Courts.

**Religion.** In 1980 about 73% of the population was Moslem. The population of the 12 northern provinces is almost entirely Moslem (Sunni), while the majority of the 6 southern provinces are animist (18%) or Christian (9%).



**Education** (1985). 6,707 primary schools had 1.7m. pupils; there were 490,583 pupils in 2,167 secondary schools and 28,985 in tertiary education. In 1979 Khartoum University with 10 faculties had 8,777 students. The Khartoum branch of Cairo University with 4 faculties had about 5,000 students and the Islamic University of Omdurman with 3 faculties had 1,472 students. Juba University, founded in 1975 with 5 faculties had 425 students.

**Health.** In 1981 the Ministry of Health maintained 158 hospitals (with 17,205 beds), 887 dispensaries, 1,619 dressing stations and 220 health centres. There were 2,122 doctors and 12,871 nurses.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Sudan in Great Britain (3 Cleveland Row, London, SW1A 1DD)  
*Ambassador:* Sayed Ibrahim Mohamed Ali (accredited 23 July 1985).

Of Great Britain in Sudan (PO Box No. 801, Khartoum)  
*Ambassador:* John Beaven, CMG, CVO.

Of Sudan in the USA (2210 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Ambassador:* Salah Ahmed.

Of the USA in Sudan (Sharia Ali Abdul Latif, Khartoum)  
*Ambassador:* G. Norman Anderson.

Of Sudan to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Amin M. Abdoun.

### Further Reading

- Sudan Almanac.* Khartoum (annual)  
Daly, M. W., *Sudan.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983  
Gurdon, C., *Sudan in Transition: A Political Risk Analysis.* London, 1986  
Halasa, A. *et al The Return to Democracy in Sudan.* Geneva, 1986  
Holt, P. M., *A Modern History of the Sudan.* New York, 3rd ed. 1979  
Iten, O., *Le Soudan.* Zurich, 1983

# SURINAME

*Capital:* Paramaribo

*Population:* 415,000 (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,510 (1986)

**HISTORY.** At the peace of Breda (1667) between Great Britain and the United Netherlands, Suriname was assigned to the Netherlands in exchange for the colony of New Netherland in North America, and this was confirmed by the treaty of Westminster of Feb. 1674. Since then Suriname has been twice in British possession, 1799–1802 (when it was restored to the Batavian Republic at the peace of Amiens) and 1804–16, when it was returned to the Kingdom of the Netherlands according to the convention of London of 13 Aug. 1814, confirmed at the peace of Paris of 20 Nov. 1815. On 25 Nov. 1975, Suriname gained full independence and was admitted to the UN on 4 Dec. 1975. On 25 Feb. 1980 the Government was ousted in a *coup*, and a National Military Council (NMC) established. A further *coup* on 13 Aug. replaced several members of the NMC, and the State President. Other attempted coups took place in 1981 and 1982, with the NMC retaining control. Suriname returned to democracy in Jan. 1988 following elections held in Nov. 1987.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Suriname is situated on the north coast of South America and bounded on the north by the Atlantic ocean, on the east by the Marowijne River, which separates it from French Guiana, on the west by the Corantijn River, which separates it from Guyana, and on the south by forests and savannas, which separate it from Brazil.

Area, 163,820 sq. km. Census population (1980), 354,860. Estimate (1987) 415,000. The capital, Paramaribo, had (1971 census) 103,738 inhabitants.

Suriname is divided into 9 districts (populations census 1980): Paramaribo (urban district), 67,905; Commewijne, 14,351; Coronie, 2,777; Marowijne, 23,402; Nickerie, 34,480; Saramacca, 10,335; Suriname, 166,494; Brokopondo, 20,249 and Para, 14,867.

The official languages are Dutch and English. English is widely spoken next to Hindi, Javanese and Chinese as inter-group communication. A vernacular, called 'Sranan Tongo' or 'Surinamese', is used as a lingua franca. In 1976 it was announced that Spanish would become the nation's principal working language.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is equatorial, with uniformly high temperatures and rainfall. There is no recognized dry season. Paramaribo. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 89" (2,225 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was approved by referendum in Sept. 1980. Elections took place 25 Nov. 1987. The Front for Democracy and Development won (provisional) 40 of the 51 seats in the National Assembly.

*President:* Ramsewak Shankar (elected for a 5-year term in Jan. 1988).

*Flag:* Horizontally green, red, green with the red of double width with yellow 5-pointed star in centre of red bar.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** Armed forces of the Republic of Suriname consist of 1 infantry and 1 military police battalions with a strength of about 2,700 in 1989. Equipment includes 2 PC-7 armed trainers, 3 Defender twin-engined light transports operated alongside 1 Bell 205, 2 Alouette III and 1 Cessna 206 liaison aircraft. Officers' ranks were abolished in Feb. 1986.

**Navy.** The flotilla comprises 3 patrol vessels, 3 coastal patrol craft, 3 river patrol launches and 1 coastal cutter all built in the Netherlands. In 1989 personnel totalled 200 officers and men.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Suriname is a member of UN, OAS and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** For 15 years from independence approximately 3,500m. guilders is available from the Netherlands to carry out an extensive social and economic development programme.

**Budget.** The revenues and expenditures (derived from import, export and excise duties, taxes on houses and estates, personal imports and some indirect taxes) were as follows (in 1m. Suriname guilders) in 1985: Revenue, 491.8; expenditure, 803.4.

External public debt in 1985, US\$24m.

**Currency.** Notes ranging from 5 to 1,000 *Suriname guilders* are legal tender. Currency notes of 1.00 and 2.50 guilders are issued by the Government. In March 1989, US\$1 = 1.79 *Suriname guilders*; £1 sterling = 3.08 *Suriname guilders*.

**Banking.** The Central Bank of Suriname is a bankers' bank and also a bank of issue; the Surinaamsche Bank, the Algemene Bank Nederland and the Handels-, Krediet- en Industriebank, are commercial banks; the Suriname People's Credit Bank operates under the auspices of the Government; Surinaamse Postspaarbank (postal savings bank); Surinaamse Hypotheekbank NV (mortgage bank); Surinaamse Investerings Mij. NV (investment bank); Agentschap van de Maatschappij tot financiering van het Nationaal Herstel NV (long-term investments); National Development Bank; The Agrarian Bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 1,610m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Bauxite is the most important mineral; it is being mined in the Suriname and Marowijne districts but in 1987 several mines have been closed by attacks by anti-government rebels. Fresh deposits have been found in the western areas. The ore is exported mainly to USA and the Dominican Republic, but partly processed locally into alumina and aluminium. Production (1985 in 1,000 tonnes): Bauxite, 3,738; alumina, 1,242; aluminium, 28.8.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is restricted to the alluvial coastal zone; cultivated area in 1982, 87,442 hectares. The staple food crop is rice; 72,571 hectares of paddy were planted in 1982, chiefly in the Nickerie, Commewijne, Saramacca and Coronie districts.

Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane, 120; rice, 300; oranges, 10; grapefruit, 1; coconuts, 7; palm oil, 7.2; cassava, 3.

Livestock (1987): 66,000 head of cattle, 3,000 sheep, 5,000 goats, 23,000 pigs, 6m. poultry.

**Forestry.** Suriname has great timber resources. Production in 1983 included 204,251 cu. metres of logs, 18,420 cu. metres of sleepers (1982), 18,134 cu. metres of plywood and 3,155 cu. metres of particle board.

**Fisheries.** The fish catch in 1980 amounted to 2,100 tonnes and the shrimp catch, 3,100 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1981, there were 3 large bauxite plants, 1 alumina and 1 aluminium smelting plants, sugar- and rice-mills, 3 paint factories, 2 fruit-juice plants, 3 shrimp freezing plants, a plywood factory, timber-mills, a milk pasteurization



plant, a butter and margarine factory and a number of various medium and small industries. Shortage of skilled personnel inhibits expansion.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports in calendar years (in 1 m. Suriname guilders):

	1980	1981	1982	1983 <sup>1</sup>	1984 <sup>1</sup>
Imports	900.3	1,013.7	921.2	762.5	699.0
Exports	918.2	845.7	765.1	605.4	650.7

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

Principal exports in 1982 (in 1,000 Suriname guilders): Alumina, 411,500; bauxite, 52,400; aluminium, 124,000; rice, 72,100; shrimp, 53,300; wood and wood products, 20,600; bananas, 13,200.

Principal imports in 1982 (in 1,000 Suriname guilders): Raw and auxiliary materials, 356,700; fuels and lubricants, 209,900; investment goods, 117,800; foodstuffs, cars and motorcycles, 73,100; textile yarn and fabrics, 9,600.

Total trade between Suriname and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	18,316	15,405	15,554	12,488	11,256
Exports and re-exports from UK	9,593	9,398	9,743	7,974	6,107

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 1,335 km of main roads. Two of them lead from Paramaribo to the bauxite centres of Smalkalden (29 km) and Paranam (30 km) and to the airport of Zanderij (49 km). Another main road runs across the districts of Saramacca (71 km) and Coronie (68 km), a fourth across the Commewijne district (41 km) and a fifth in the Marowijne district, from the bauxite centre Moengo to Albina (45 km). The 'East-West connexion' is almost completed, linking the Corantijn and the Marowijne rivers (375 km).

In 1985 there were 31,536 passenger cars, 10,629 trucks, 1,923 buses and 1,034 motor cycles.

**Railways.** There is a single-track railway, running from Onverwacht to Bronsweg (86 km); part of the track, from Paramaribo to Onverwacht (34 km) has been removed. Another single-track railway runs from Apoera to the Bakhuis Mountains.

**Aviation.** Regular air services are maintained by KLM, SLM, Aero Cubano and Cruzeiro do Sul. The international airfield at Zanderij is capable of handling all types of planes.

Suriname Airways Ltd provides daily services between all major districts and maintains also a charter service.

**Shipping.** The Royal Netherlands Steamship Co. plies between Amsterdam, Rotterdam, Antwerp, Hamburg and Paramaribo, and New York, Baltimore, New Orleans and Paramaribo. Regular sailings are made to Georgetown, Ciudad Bolivar and most Caribbean ports. The Suriname Navigation Co. maintains services from Paramaribo to Georgetown and Cayenne, and once a month to the Caribbean area. A French and an Italian company maintain passenger services to Europe. The Alcoa Steamship Co. has a fortnightly service to New York, Baltimore, Mobile and New Orleans; a Japanese line sails once a month from Hong Kong and Yokohama to Paramaribo; the Boomerang Line maintains a monthly freight and passenger service between Suriname and Australia.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1985 there were 36,000 telephones. Wireless telephone connects Suriname with the Netherlands, USA, Curaçao, Guyana, French Guiana and Trinidad. There are 6 broadcasting and 1 television stations. In 1986 there were 246,000 radios and 48,000 TV sets.

**Cinemas.** In 1981 there were 18 cinemas and 1 drive-in cinema.

**Newspapers** (1987). There are 2 daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a court of justice, whose members are nominated by the President. There are 3 cantonal courts.

**Religion.** There is entire religious liberty. At the end of 1983 the main religious bodies were: Hindus, 97,170; Roman Catholics, 80,922; Moslems, 69,638; Moravian Brethren, 55,625; Reformed, 6,265; Lutheran, 2,695; Jehovah's Witnesses, 1,626; Seventh Day Adventists, 1,061; others, 24,627.

**Education.** In 1984-85 there were 321 primary schools with 3,880 teachers and 89,624 pupils, and there were 839 teachers and 22,814 pupils at 63 secondary schools. There was also a University with 2,353 students and 155 teaching staff.

**Health.** There were (1985) 1,964 hospital beds and 219 physicians.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in Suriname

*Ambassador:* D. P. Small, CMG, MBE (resides in Georgetown).

Of Suriname in the USA (4300 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Arnold T. Halfhide.

Of the USA in Suriname (Dr Sophie Redmondstraat 129, Paramaribo)

*Ambassador:* Robert E. Barbour.

Of Suriname to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The General Bureau of Statistics in Paramaribo was established on 1 Jan. 1947. Its publications comprise trade statistics, *Suriname in Figures* (including, from 1953, the former *Handelsstatistiek*) and *Statistische Berichten*.

*Economische Voorlichting Suriname*, Ministry of Economic Affairs, Paramaribo  
*Annual Report of the Central Bank of Suriname*

# SWAZILAND

*Capital:* Mbabane

*Population:* 676,049 (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$730 (1984)

**HISTORY.** The Swazi migrated into the country to which they have given their name, in the last half of the 18th century. They settled first in what is now southern Swaziland, but moved northwards under their chief, Sobhuza—known also to the Swazi as Somhlolo. Sobhuza died in 1838 and was succeeded by Mswati. The further order of succession has been Mbandzeni and Bhunu, whose son, Sobhuza II, was installed as King of the Swazi nation in 1921 after a long minority.

The independence of the Swazis was guaranteed in the conventions of 1881 and 1884 between the British Government and the Government of the South African Republic. In 1890, soon after the death of Mbandzeni, a provisional government was established representative of the Swazis, the British and the South African Republic Governments. In 1894 the South African Republic was given powers of protection and administration. In 1902, after the conclusion of the Boer War, a special commissioner took charge, and under an order-in-council in 1903 the Governor of the Transvaal administered the territory, through the Special Commissioner. Swaziland became independent on 6 Sept. 1968.

On 25 April 1967 the British Government gave the country internal self-government. It changed the country's status to that of a protected state with the Ngwenyama, Sobhuza II, recognized as King of Swaziland and head of state. King Sobhuza died on 21 Aug. 1982. On 25 April 1986, King Mswati III was installed as King of Swaziland.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Swaziland is bounded on the north, west and south by the Transvaal Province, and on the east by Mozambique and Zululand. The area is 6,705 sq. miles (17,400 sq. km).

The country is divided geographically into 4 longitudinal regions running from north to south; 3 of roughly equal width—Highveld (westernmost), Middleveld, Lowveld—and the Lubombo plateau in the east. The mountainous region on the west rises to an altitude of over 6,000 ft (1,800 metres). The Middleveld is mostly between 1,700 and 3,000 ft, while the Lowveld has an average height of not more than 1,000 ft (300 metres).

Population (census 1986), 681,059. Mbabane, the administrative capital (1986, 38,290). The main urban areas with 1986 census populations are: Manzini (18,084); Big Bend (9,676); Mhlume (6,509); Havelock Mine (4,850); Nhlangano (4,107); Pigg's Peak (3,223) and Siteki (2,271). 31,072 citizens abroad. In early 1988 there were 14,550 refugees living in the country.

**CLIMATE.** A temperate climate with two seasons. Nov. to March is the wet season, when temperatures range from mild to hot, with frequent thunderstorms. The cool, dry season from May to Sept. is characterised by clear, bright sunny days. Mbabane. Jan. 68°F (20°C), July 54°F (12.2°C). Annual rainfall 56" (1,402 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Britain's protection ended at independence, when a Constitution similar to the 1967 Constitution was brought into force. The general elections (by universal adult franchise) in April 1967 gave the royalist and traditional Imbokodvo National Movement all 24 seats. The Parliament consists of a House of Assembly, with 24 elected and 6 nominated members and the Attorney-General, who has no vote, and a Senate comprising 12 members, 6 of whom are elected by the House of Assembly and 6 appointed by the King. The executive authority is vested in the King and exercised through a Cabinet presided over by the Prime Minister, and consisting of the Prime Minister, the Deputy Prime Minister and up to 8 other ministers. In April 1973 the King



assumed supreme power and the Constitution was suspended and in 1976 it was abolished. On 28 Oct. 1983 a general election took place to elect an electoral college of 80 members.

*His Majesty the King:* Mswati III (crowned 25 April 1986).

In Jan. 1989, the Cabinet was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Sotja E. Dlamini.

*Foreign Affairs:* G. M. Mamba. *Labour and Public Service:* B. M. Nsibandze. *Agriculture and Co-operatives:* H. S. Mamba. *Commerce, Industry and Tourism:* N. D. Ntiwane. *Works and Communications:* W. C. Mkhonta. *Education:* Chief Siphon Shongwe. *Finance:* B.S. Dlamini. *Health:* Dr F. Friedman. *Justice:* R. Dladla. *Interior and Immigration:* E. S. Shabalala. *Natural Resources, Land Utilization and Energy:* Prince Nqaba Dlamini.

*National flag.* Horizontally 5 unequal stripes of blue, yellow, crimson, yellow, blue; in the centre of the crimson strip an African shield of black and white, behind which are 2 assegais and a staff, all laid horizontally.

*Local Government.* The country is divided into the 4 regions of Shiselweni, Lubombo, Manzini and Hhohho. They are administered by Regional Administrators.

## DEFENCE

**Army Air Wing.** First military aircraft acquired by Swaziland, in mid-1979, were 2 Israeli-built Arava light twin-turboprop transports with underwing weapon attachments for light attack duties.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Swaziland is a member of UN, OAU, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in 1,000 emalangeni) for financial years ending 31 March:

	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Revenue	252,416	284,783	337,914
Expenditure	263,294	295,857	347,215

**Currency.** The currency in circulation in Swaziland is the *emalangeni*, but remains in the rand monetary area. In March 1989, £1 = 4.32 *emalangeni*; US\$1 = 2.51 *emalangeni*.

**Banking.** Barclays Bank International and the Standard Bank Ltd maintain branches at Mbabane and Manzini; sub-branches and agencies are operated in 17 other places. Bank rates are those in force throughout South Africa and are prescribed by the main South African offices of the 2 banks. The Swaziland Credit and Savings Bank, now known as The Swazi Bank, a statutory body, was opened in 1965. It specializes in credit for agriculture and low-cost housing. Its head office is in Mbabane and it has branches or agencies at 3 other places. A fourth bank, The Bank of Credit and Commerce International opened in Sept. 1978; its head office is in Manzini and it has a branch in Mbabane.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 120m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Swaziland produces asbestos from the Havelock Mine (25,925 tonnes in 1987). Coal is mined at Mpaka (165,371 tonnes in 1987). Quarry stone is also mined (96,114 cu. metres in 1987).

A railway has been built from the Ngwenya haematite deposits to Goba, in Mozambique, chiefly for the transportation of iron ore. The extensive deposits of low-volatile bituminous coal in the Lowveld are being worked to provide coal for the railway, sugar-mills and export.

**Agriculture.** In 1986-87 the cultivated area was 164,030 hectares, the grazing area 1,165,305 hectares and the commercial forest area 106,339 hectares. Production (1986-87, in 1,000 tonnes): Sugar-cane, 4,084; citrus, 58; rice, 5; seed cotton, 15; maize, 151; sorghum, 3; pineapples, 41; tomatoes, 4; potatoes, 7. Tobacco is also grown. It is usually necessary to import maize from South Africa. Sugar, first produced in 1958, and woodpulp and other forest products are the two main agricultural exports.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 641,000; goats, 309,000; sheep, 22,000; poultry, 1m.

**COMMERCE.** By agreement with the Republic of South Africa, Swaziland is united in a customs union with the republic and receives a *pro rata* share of the customs dues collected.

Total exports (1987) amounted to E709,161,000. The chief items were (in E1,000): Sugar, 222,241; unbleached woodpulp, 129,623; canned fruit, 38,523; asbestos, 23,649.

Total imports (1987) amounted to E876,491. The chief items were (in E1,000): Machinery and transport equipment, 135,452; minerals, fuels and lubricants, 131,361; manufactured items, 102,621; food, 101,199.

Total trade between Swaziland and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	41,786	41,281	48,194	36,901	27,973
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,430	3,122	3,922	2,257	1,564

**Tourism.** There were 256,000 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There is daily (except Sundays) communication by railway motor-buses between Manzini, Mbabane and Breyten; Manzini, Mankayana and Piet Retief. Total length of roads (1986) 2,772 km of which 680 km were tarred.

**Railways.** In 1986 the system comprised 370 km of route, and carried 1,083,000 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** The country's chief airport is at Matsapa, near Manzini. It is served by Royal Swazi National Airways connecting with Johannesburg, Durban, Lusaka, Nairobi, Harare and Gaborone. Lesotho National Airways flies to Harare and Maputo through Matsapa. In 1986 Zambian Airways inaugurated their weekly flight to Matsapa *via* Gaborone.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1986) 57 post offices, 2 telephone-telegraph agencies and 10 telephone agencies. There were, 31 Dec. 1985, 18,484 telephones, 8,349 exchange connexions and 309 telex exchange connexions. In 1986 there were over 96,000 radio sets and over 12,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** There were 5 cinemas in 1980 with a total seating capacity of 1,625.

**Newspapers.** There were in 1987 two daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judiciary is headed by the Chief Justice. A High Court having full jurisdiction and subordinate courts presided over by Magistrates and District Officers are in existence.

There is a Court of Appeal with a President and 3 Judges. It deals with appeals from the High Court. There are 16 Swazi courts of first instance, 2 Swazi courts of appeal and a Higher Swazi Court of Appeal. The channel of appeal lies from Swazi Court of first instance to Swazi Court of Appeal, to Higher Swazi Court of Appeal, to the Judicial Commissioner and thence to the High Court of Swaziland.

**Religion.** In 1984 there were about 120,000 Christians and about 30,000 adults holding traditional beliefs. A large number of churches and missionary societies are established throughout the country and, in addition to evangelism, are doing im-

portant work in the fields of education and medicine. In the larger centres there are churches of several denominations—Protestant, Roman Catholics and others.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 590 schools with 147,743 pupils in primary classes and 32,942 in secondary classes. The Swaziland Agricultural College and University Centre at Luyengo was opened in Oct. 1966. The College is now named the Faculty of Agriculture at the University of Swaziland, which is situated in Matsapa. Technical and vocational training classes are run at the Government Swaziland College of Technology, the Swaziland Institute of Management and Public Administration, Vocational Commercial Training Institute (VOCTIM), Mpaka Vocational Centre and Manzini Industrial Training Centre. The Government also operates a police college, an Institute of Health Sciences and the Nazarene College of Nursing which trains para-medical staff for the hospitals and clinics. There are 3 teacher training colleges with 534 students in 1986–87. There were 746 students enrolled in all the vocational centres, 498 at the Swaziland College of Technology and 1,270 at the University of Swaziland in 1986–87.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 80 doctors, 13 dentists and 1,608 hospital beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Swaziland in Great Britain (58 Pont St., London SW1X 0AE)

*High Commissioner:* M. N. Dlamini.

Of Great Britain in Swaziland (Allister Miller St., Mbabane)

*High Commissioner:* J. G. Flynn.

Of Swaziland in the USA (4301 Connecticut Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* A. V. Mamba.

Of the USA in Swaziland (PO Box 199, Mbabane)

*Ambassador:* Mary Ryan.

Of Swaziland to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Timothy L. L. Dlamini.

### Further Reading

Booth, A., *Swaziland: Tradition and Change in a Southern African Kingdom*. Aldershot and Boulder, 1984

Grotper, J. J., *Historical Dictionary of Swaziland*. Metuchen, 1975

Jones, D., *Aid and Development in Southern Africa*. London, 1977

Matsebula, J. S. M., *A History of Swaziland*. London, 1972

Nyeko, B., *Swaziland*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982



# SWEDEN

*Capital:* Stockholm  
*Population:* 8.4m. (1987)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$18,607 (1987)

## Konungariket Sverige

**HISTORY.** Organized as an independent unified state in the 10th century, Sweden became a constitutional monarchy in 1809. In 1809 she also ceded Finland to Russia. In 1815 German possessions were ceded to Prussia and Sweden was united with Norway, which union lasted until 1905.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Sweden is bounded west and north-west by Norway, east by Finland and the Gulf of Bothnia, south-east by the Baltic Sea and south-west by the Kattegat. The first census took place in 1749, and it was repeated at first every third year, and, after 1775, every fifth year. Since 1860 a general census has been taken every 10 years and, in addition, in 1935, 1945, 1965, 1975 and 1985.

Latest census figures: 1940, 6,371,432 (annual increase since 1935: 0.38%); 1950, 7,041,829 (1.1% since 1945); 1960, 7,495,316 (0.64% since 1950); 1965, 7,766,424 (1.04% since 1960); 1970, 8,076,903 (1.04% since 1965); 1975, 8,208,544 (1.02% since 1970); 1980, 8,320,438 (1.01% since 1975); 1985, 8,360,178.

<i>Counties (Län)</i>	<i>Land area: sq. km</i>	<i>Census population 1 Nov. 1985</i>	<i>Estimated population 31 Dec. 1987</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. km 31 Dec. 1987</i>
Stockholm	6,488	1,577,596	1,606,157	248
Uppsala	6,989	251,754	257,739	37
Södermanland	6,060	249,885	250,073	41
Östergötland	10,562	393,668	395,580	37
Jönköping	9,944	300,892	302,475	30
Kronoberg	8,458	174,025	174,116	21
Kalmar	11,170	238,406	237,356	21
Gotland	3,140	56,180	56,269	18
Blekinge	2,941	151,055	149,600	51
Kristianstad	6,089	280,516	281,907	46
Malmöhus	4,938	750,294	757,643	153
Halland	5,454	240,090	244,377	45
Göteborg and Bohus	5,141	715,831	726,325	141
Älvsborg	11,395	426,769	430,129	38
Skaraborg	7,938	270,530	270,847	34
Värmland	17,583	279,503	279,402	16
Örebro	8,519	270,384	269,341	32
Västmanland	6,302	254,858	254,253	40
Kopparberg	28,194	284,029	283,330	10
Gävleborg	18,191	289,452	286,907	16
Västernorrland	21,678	262,555	260,332	12
Jämtland	49,443	134,161	133,389	3
Västerbotten	55,401	245,302	245,703	4
Norrbottn	98,911	262,443	260,833	3
Total	410,928 <sup>1</sup>	8,360,178	8,414,083	20

<sup>1</sup> Total area of Sweden, 449,964 sq. km.

On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 4,152,583 males and 4,261,500 females.

On 31 Dec. 1987 aliens in Sweden numbered 400,974. Of these, 130,823 were Finns, 38,723 Yugoslavs, 27,277 Norwegians, 24,735 Danes, 22,414 Turks, 20,463 Iranians, 15,066 Poles, 11,784 Chileans, 11,859 West Germans, 8,980 Britons, 7,363 Greeks, 6,796 Americans, 3,967 Iraqis and 3,913 Italians.

## Vital statistics for calendar years:

	Total living births	To mothers single, divorced or widowed	Stillborn	Marriages	Divorces	Deaths exclusive of still-born
1984	93,889	41,887	381	36,849	20,377	90,483
1985	98,463	45,640	388	38,297	19,763	94,032
1986	101,950	49,324	423	38,906	19,107	93,295
1987	104,699	52,218	412	41,223	18,426	93,307

Immigration: 1982, 30,381; 1983, 27,495; 1984, 31,486; 1985, 33,134; 1986, 39,487; 1987, 42,688. Emigration: 1982, 28,381; 1983, 25,269; 1984, 22,825; 1985, 22,041; 1986, 24,495; 1987, 20,679.

In 1860 the urban population numbered 435,000 (11% of the total population) and on 31 Dec. 1965, 4,177,212 (54%); including other densely populated areas, the urbanized population in 1965 was 77.4%.

On 15 Sept. 1980, population in densely populated areas was 6,910,431 (83.1%).

## Population of largest communities, 31 Dec. 1987:

Stockholm	666,810	Halmstad	77,942	Kalmar	54,915
Göteborg	431,521	Karlstad	74,892	Falun	52,202
Malmö	230,838	Skellefteå	74,091	Kungsbacka	50,804
Uppsala	159,962	Huddinge	71,910	Mölndal	50,549
Örebro	119,066	Kristianstad	70,180	Solna	50,450
Norrköping	119,001	Botkyrka	67,536	Trollhättan	49,914
Linköping	118,602	Växjö	67,350	Sollentuna	49,757
Västerås	117,563	Luleå	66,719	Hässleholm	48,493
Jönköping	108,962	Nyköping	64,428	Varberg	47,040
Helsingborg	106,982	Haninge	61,301	Skövde	46,438
Borås	100,935	Nacka	61,084	Uddevalla	46,257
Sundsvall	92,721	Örnsköldsvik	59,248	Borlänge	45,990
Eskilstuna	88,508	Karlskrona	58,650	Norrälje	43,140
Gävle	87,474	Östersund	56,914	Motala	41,444
Umeå	86,816	Järfälla	56,563	Sandviken	39,876
Lund	84,342	Gotland	56,269	Västervik	39,558
Södertälje	80,263	Täby	55,661		

*Befolkningsförändringar (Population Changes)*. Annual. 3 vols. Statistics Sweden, Stockholm  
*Folkmängd 31 Dec. (Population)*. Annual. 2 vols. Statistics Sweden, Stockholm

**CLIMATE.** North Sweden suffers from severe winters, with snow lying for 4–7 months. Summers are fine but cool, with long daylight hours. Further south, winters are less cold, summers are warm and rainfall generally well-distributed over the year, though with a slight summer maximum. Stockholm. Jan. 24.4°F (–4.1°C), July 59.9°F (17.3°C). Annual rainfall 25" (622 mm).

**REIGNING KING.** Carl XVI Gustaf, born 30 April 1946, succeeded on the death of his grandfather Gustaf VI Adolf, 15 Sept. 1973, married 19 June 1976 to *Silvia* Renate Sommerlath, born 23 Dec. 1943 (Queen of Sweden). *Daughter and Heir Apparent:* Crown Princess Victoria Ingrid Alice Désirée, Duchess of Västergötland, born 14 July 1977; *son:* Prince Carl Philip Edmund Bertil, Duke of Värmland, born 13 May 1979; *daughter:* Princess Madeleine Thérèse Amelie Josephine, Duchess of Hälsingland and Gästrikland, born 10 June 1982.

*Sisters of the King.* Princess Margaretha, born 31 Oct. 1934, married 30 June 1964 to Mr John Ambler; Princess Birgitta (Princess of Sweden), born 19 Jan. 1937, married 25 May 1961 (civil marriage) and 30 May 1961 (religious ceremony) to Johann Georg, Prince of Hohenzollern; Princess Désirée, born 2 June 1938, married 5 June 1964 to Baron Niclas Silfverschiöld; Princess Christina, born 3 Aug. 1943, married 15 June 1974 to Tord Magnuson.

*Uncles of the King.* Sigvard, Count of Wisborg, born on 7 June 1907; Prince Bertil, Duke of Halland, born on 28 Feb. 1912, married 7 Dec. 1976 to Lilian May Davies, born 30 Aug. 1915 (Princess of Sweden, Duchess of Halland); Carl Johan, Count of Wisborg, born on 31 Oct. 1916.

*Aunt of the King.* Princess Ingrid (Princess of Sweden), born 28 March 1910, mar-

ried 24 May 1935 to Frederik, Crown Prince of Denmark (King Frederik IX), died 14 Jan. 1972.

The following is a list of the kings and queens of Sweden, with the dates of their accession from the accession of the House of Vasa:

<i>House of Vasa</i>		<i>House of Pfalz-Zwei- brücken (contd.)</i>		<i>House of Bernadotte</i>	
Gustaf I	1521	Carl XII	1697	Carl XIV Johan	1818
Eric XIV	1560	Ulrica Eleonora	1719	Oscar I	1844
Johan III	1568			Carl XV	1859
Sigismund	1592			Oscar II	1872
Carl IX	1599	<i>House of Hesse</i>		Gustaf V	1907
Gustaf II Adolf	1611	Fredrik I	1720	Gustaf VI Adolf	1950
Christina	1632			Carl XVI Gustaf	1973
		<i>House of Holstein- Gottorp</i>			
<i>House of Pfalz-Zwei- brücken</i>		Adolf Fredrik	1751		
Carl X Gustaf	1654	Gustaf III	1771		
Carl XI	1660	Gustaf IV Adolf	1792		
		Carl XIII	1809		

The royal family of Sweden have a civil list of 15.15m. kronor; this does not include the maintenance of the royal palaces.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Sweden's present Constitution came into force in 1975 and replaced the 1809 Constitution. Under the present Constitution Sweden is a representative and parliamentary democracy. Parliament (*Riksdag*) is declared to be the central organ of government. The executive power of the country is vested in the Government, which is responsible to Parliament. The King is Head of State, but he does not participate in the government of the country. Since 1971 Parliament has consisted of one chamber. It has 349 members, who are elected for a period of 3 years in direct, general elections.

Every man and woman who has reached the age of 18 years on election-day itself, and who is not under wardship has the right to vote and to stand for election.

The manner of election to the *Riksdag* is proportional. The country is divided into 28 constituencies. In these constituencies 310 members are elected. The remaining 39 seats constitute a nation-wide pool intended to give absolute proportionality to parties that receive at least 4% of the votes. A party receiving less than 4% of the votes in the country is, however, entitled to participate in the distribution of seats in a constituency, if it has obtained at least 12% of the votes cast there.

The *Riksdag*, elected 1988, has 156 Social Democrats, 66 Conservatives, 42 Centre Party, 44 Liberals, 21 Communists and 20 Green Party.

The Social Democratic Cabinet was composed as follows in Jan. 1989:

*Prime Minister:* Ingvar Carlsson.

*Finance:* Kjell-Olof Feldt. *Health and Social Affairs:* Sven Hultström. *Special responsibility for international development co-operation, Ministry of Foreign Affairs:* Lena Hjelm-Wallén. *Foreign Affairs:* Sten Andersson. *Higher Education, with special responsibility for cultural affairs, the mass media and comprehensive schools:* Bengt Göransson. *Foreign Trade:* Anita Gradin. *Environment and Energy:* Birgitta Dahl. *Defence:* Roine Carlsson. *Agriculture:* Mats Hellström. *Public Administration:* Bengt Johansson. *Transport and Communications:* Georg Andersson. *Special responsibility for family policy, the disabled and elderly, Ministry of Health and Social Affairs:* Bengt Lindqvist. *Labour, with special responsibility for immigrant affairs:* Maj-Lis Lööv. *Housing:* Ulf Lönnqvist. *Labour:* Ingela Thalén. *Industry:* Ivar Nordberg. *Assistant Minister of Finance:* Odd Engström. *Justice:* Laila Freivalds. *Special responsibility for church, equality and consumer affairs, Ministry of Public Administration:* Margot Wallström.

Ministerial decisions are formally made by the Cabinet collectively and not (with some exceptions) by individual ministers.

Public administration in Sweden is characterized by a unique degree of function-



al decentralization. The Ministries are not really administrative agencies. Their main function is to prepare the decisions of the Cabinet; such decisions may concern bills for the *Riksdag*, general government directives and higher appointments. Only to a small extent does the Cabinet make individual administrative decisions. The routine administrative work is attended to by the central boards (*centrala ämbetsverk*). Each board is in principle subordinate to the government; its sphere of activity depends on the appropriations granted by the *Riksdag*. The Government often asks the boards' opinion on proposed measures.

*National flag*: Blue with a yellow Scandinavian cross.

*National anthem*: Du gamla, du fria, du fjällhöga nord (words by R. Dybeck, 1844; folk-tune).

The official language is Swedish. The capital is Stockholm.

*Regional and Local Government*. For national administrative purposes Sweden is divided into 24 counties (*län*), in each of which the central government is represented by a state county administrative board (*länsstyrelse*). The governor (*landshövding*), appointed by the government, is chairman of the board, which in addition to the governor has 14 members elected by the county council.

Local government and the levying of local taxes are based on the Instrument of Government (the Swedish Constitution) and are regulated by the local government act and special acts. According to the local government act Sweden is divided into municipalities in which all men and women who have reached the age of 18 on election-day itself, and not under wardship, are entitled to elect the municipal council. These councils are named *kommunfullmäktige*. The number of municipalities has, since 1951, been reduced from about 2,500 to 284. The municipalities deal with a great variety of different tasks such as social welfare, education and culture, public health, town planning, housing etc. Each county, except Gotland, which consists of only one municipality, has a county council (*landsting*) elected by men and women who enjoy local suffrage. The county councils chiefly administer the health services and medical care. The municipalities of Gothenburg and Malmö do not belong to county councils. Ecclesiastical affairs in all parishes with more than 500 inhabitants entitled to vote are dealt with by church councils (*kyrkofullmäktige*); smaller parishes may make the same arrangement. All elections are conducted on a proportional basis.

Boalt, G., *The Political Process*. Stockholm, 1984

Gustafsson, A., *Local Government in Sweden*. Stockholm, 1988

Gustafsson, G., *Local Government Reform in Sweden*. Stockholm, 1980

Hadenius, S., *Swedish Politics During the 20th Century*. Stockholm, 1988

Lewin, L., Jansson, B. and Sörbom, D., *The Swedish Electorate 1887-1968*. Stockholm, 1972

Lindström, E., *The Swedish Parliamentary System*. Stockholm, 1983

Strömberg, L. and Westerstahl, J., *The New Swedish Communes*. Gothenburg, 1984

Vinde, P., *Swedish Government Administration*. 2nd rev. ed. Stockholm, 1978

**DEFENCE.** A Supreme Commander is, under the Government, in command of the three services. He is assisted by the Defence Staff under a chief of staff.

The military forces are recruited on the principle of national service, supplemented by voluntarily enlisted personnel who form the permanent cadres for training purposes, staff duties, etc.

Liability to service commences at the age of 18, and lasts till the end of the 47th year. The period of training for the Army and Navy is 7½-12 months and for the Airforce 8-12 months.

The territorial organization consists of 6 military commands each one under a general officer commanding.

**Army.** The C.-in-C. of the Swedish Army has at his disposal the Army Staff under a chief of staff. The peace-time Army consists for training purposes of 16 infantry, 2 cavalry, 7 armour, 6 artillery, 5 AA, 3 engineer, 2 signal and 3 Army Service Corps units, most of which are called 'regiments' (*regementen*). The Army Aviation Corps comprises 2 Battalions operating 18 Bulldog aircraft and 18 JetRanger helicopters for observation, 20 armed BO 105 helicopters, 12 AB.204B transport

helicopters, and 25 Hughes 300C helicopters and 2 DO 27 aircraft for training and observation duties.

The Army is organized and equipped with regard to the varying geographical and climatic conditions of the country. The voluntary Home Guard (*Hemvärnet*) with a total strength of more than 100,000 men ready for action within 2 hours, raised during the War continues to be in force.

Sweden's ground forces, total 850,000 men (including the voluntary Home Guard), can be said to consist of an Army which for the most part is on indefinite leave, but which on short notice can be ready for action. One of the basic principles of the Swedish system of mobilization is the local recruitment of as many units as possible. The storage of equipment and supplies is decentralized on more than 3,000 places.

The active personnel of the Army comprises (1989) about 44,000, including 35,000 conscripts doing basic training.

**Navy.** The C-in-C. of the Swedish Navy is assisted by the Chief of Naval Staff, the Chief of Naval Material and the Commander-in-Chief of Coastal Fleet. The Navy is divided into two branches, the Navy and the Royal Coast Artillery. There are 4 Naval Command Areas: Those of the southern, eastern, western and northern coasts. The coast artillery defence areas are those of the Stockholm archipelago, Blekinge, Gothenburg, Gotland and Norrland. There are 5 coastal artillery regiments.

There are 16 diesel-powered patrol submarines, 2 missile-armed small corvettes (leaders for fast attack craft), 28 fast missile craft, 4 fast torpedo boats, 4 patrol craft, 3 minelayers, 1 mine countermeasures support ship, 13 coastal minelayers, 6 new minehunters, 10 coastal minesweepers, 18 inshore minesweepers, 32 coastal patrol craft, 2 mine transports, 1 electronic surveillance ship, 3 torpedo recovery vessels, 10 tenders, 4 surveying vessels, 7 icebreakers, 3 oilers, 1 salvage vessel, 10 artillery landing craft, 83 utility landing craft, 30 minor landing craft, 2 sail training ships, 1 supply ship, 2 water carriers and 17 tugs.

Two submarines, 4 missile armed fast attack craft leaders (officially classed as corvettes) and 2 more minehunters are under construction.

The Naval Air Arm comprises 11 Boeing Vertol 107 helicopters and 8 Jet-Ranger helicopters, plus 3 Aviocar fixed-wing aircraft for anti-submarine warfare and electronic surveillance.

The personnel of the navy and coast artillery in 1989 totalled 9,350 officers and men, comprising 3,250 regulars and 6,100 conscripts.

The Coast Guard operates 150 cutters, patrol boats and service craft and lists 5 aircraft. Personnel in 1989 numbered 570.

**Air Force.** The C-in-C. of the Swedish Air Force has at his disposal the Air Staff under a chief of staff.

The combat force consists of 3 fighter-interceptor, 3 ground-attack and 3 mixed interceptor/reconnaissance wings (*flottiljer*), each with 2-3 squadrons of 12-15 aircraft, including 6 reconnaissance squadrons (*divisioner*). Total peace-time strength of the combat units is 16 squadrons with nearly 400 first-line aircraft.

Night and all-weather fighters are the Swedish-built Saab J35 Draken, equipping 3 squadrons, and JA37 Viggen, equipping 8 squadrons. The ground-attack wings have 6 squadrons of Saab AJ37 Viggens, and there is provision for 4 light ground-attack squadrons of twin-jet Saab-105s (Sk60s), which could be drawn in wartime from training units. The 3 reconnaissance squadrons have SF37 (photo) and SH37 (maritime, radar) Viggen reconnaissance aircraft; and there are transport, helicopter and other support units. The Sk60 is the Air Force's standard advanced trainer, to which pupils progress after initial training on piston-engined Bulldogs. Other trainers in service include the Sk61 Bulldog, Sk35C Draken and Sk37 Viggen.

Active strength (1989) 8,000 personnel, including 5,000 conscripts.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Sweden is a member of UN and EFTA.



## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure of the total budget (Current and Capital) for financial years ending 30 June (in 1m. kr.):

	Revenue	Expenditure		Revenue	Expenditure
1982-83	191,280	277,031	1985-86	275,099	322,241
1983-84	221,165	297,881	1986-87	320,105	334,996
1984-85	260,596	330,281	1987-88 <sup>1</sup>	332,222	336,788

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

The preliminary revenue and expenditure for the financial year 1 July 1987 to 30 June 1988 was as follows (in 1m. kr.):

Revenue		Expenditure	
Taxes:		Royal Household and residences	38
Taxes on income, capital gains and profits	83,289	Justice	11,498
Statutory social security fees	55,386	Foreign Affairs	11,199
Taxes on property	16,623	Defence	28,519
Value-added tax	79,960	Health and Social Affairs	93,110
Other taxes on goods and services	58,121	Transport and Communications	11,527
Total revenue from taxes	293,379	Ministry of Finance	19,834
Non-tax revenue	28,422	Education and Cultural Affairs	45,602
Capital revenue	68	Agriculture	6,330
Loan repayment	5,952	Labour	23,003
Computed revenue	4,401	Housing and Physical Planning	16,362
Total revenue	332,222	Industry	5,456
		Civil Service Affairs	3,378
		Ministry of Environment and Energy	7,230
		Parliament and agencies	476
		Interest on National Debt, etc.	53,410
		Unforeseen expenditure	3
		Changed appropriation of short-term credits	-187
		Total expenditure	336,788

On 31 Dec. 1987 the national debt amounted to 622,272m. kr.

*Riksgäldskontoret* (National Debt Office), *årsbok*. Annual. Stockholm, from 1920

*Riksskatteverket* (National Tax Board), *årsbok*. Annual. Stockholm, from 1971

*The Swedish Budget*. Ministry of Economic Affairs and Ministry of the Budget, from 1962/63

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the Swedish *krona*, of 100 *öre*. In March 1989, £1 = 10.93 *krona*; US\$1 = 6.35 *krona*.

Gold coins do not exist as a currency. Central banknotes for 5, 10, 50, 100, 500, 1,000 and 10,000 kr. are legal means of payment.

**Banking.** The Riksbank, or Central Bank of Sweden, belongs entirely to the State and is managed by directors elected for 3 years by the Parliament, except the chairman, who is designated by the Government. The bank is under the guarantee of the Parliament, its capital and reserve capital are fixed by its constitution. Since 1904, only the Riksbank has the right to issue notes. On 31 Dec. 1987 its note circulation amounted to 56,303m. kr.; its gold and foreign-exchange reserves totalled 50,288m. kr. There are 25 commercial banks. On 31 Dec. 1987 their total deposits amounted to 290,276m. kr.; advances to the public amounted to 344,024m. kr.

On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 116 savings banks; their total deposits amounted to 135,351m. kr.; advances to the public were 109,416m. kr. Co-operative banks had total deposits of 36,479m. kr.; advances to the public were 26,481m. kr.

*Sveriges Riksbank*, *årsbok*. Annual. Stockholm, from 1908

*Skandinaviska Enskilda Banken*, *Kvarialskrift*. Quarterly Review (in English). Stockholm, from 1920

Bosworth, B. and Rivlin, A. M., (eds.) *The Swedish Economy*. Washington, D.C., 1987

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is obligatory.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Sweden is rich in hydro-power resources. The total electric energy net production in 1986 was 133,700m. kwh. About 45% of this energy was produced in



hydro-electric plants and 50% in nuclear power plants. The remaining 5% was produced in conventional thermal power plants. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Sweden is one of the leading exporters of iron ore. The largest deposits are found north of the polar circle in the area of Kiruna and Gällivare-Malmberget. The ore is exported *via* the Norwegian port of Narvik and the Swedish port of Luleå. There are also important resources of iron ore in southern Sweden (Bergslagen). The most important fields are Grängesberg and Stråssa and the ores are shipped *via* the port of Oxelösund. Some of the southern deposits have, in contrast to the fields in North Sweden, a low phosphorus content.

There are also some deposits of copper, lead and zinc ores especially in the Boliden area in the north of Sweden. These ores are often found together with pyrites. Non-ferrous ores, except zinc ores, are used in the Swedish metal industry and barely satisfy domestic needs.

The total production of iron ores amounted to 20.5m. tons in 1986 and exports to 17.2m. tons. The production of copper ore was 357,430 tons, of lead ore 129,265 tons, of zinc ore 394,374 tons.

There are also deposits of raw materials for aluminium not worked at present. In southern Sweden there are big resources of alum shale, containing oil and uranium.

**Agriculture.** According to the farm register which is revised annually the following data was provided for 1987. The number of farms in cultivation of more than 2 hectares of arable land, was 103,591; of these there were 60,072 of 2-20 hectares; 39,832 of 20-100 hectares; 3,687 of above 100 hectares. Of the total land area of Sweden (41,161,500 hectares), 2,890,359<sup>1</sup> hectares were arable land, 336,730<sup>1</sup> hectares cultivated pastures and (1981) 22,742,235 hectares forests.

Chief crops	Area (1,000 hectares) <sup>1</sup>			Production (1,000 tonnes)		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	286.7	321.4	335.6	1,338	1,731	1,558
Rye	48.3	40.4	42.2	157	154	137
Barley	710.7	680.9	580.5	2,309	2,327	1,907
Oats	474.7	486.8	424.6	1,668	1,486	1,440
Mixed grain	56.1	50.0	45.8	...	...	...
Peas and vetches	45.5	41.0	59.0	...	...	...
Potatoes	37.7	37.5	37.9	1,266	1,209	958
Sugarbeet	51.9	51.3	51.3	2,156	2,187	1,699
Tame hay	676.1	671.0	676.6	4,121	3,981	4,488
Oil seed	172.5	175.8	169.7	371	374	296

Area of rotation meadows for pasture was (in 1,000 hectares<sup>1</sup>): 1983, 184; 1984, 182; 1985, 181; 1986, 180; 1987, 175.

Total production of milk (in 1,000 tonnes): 1983, 3,715; 1984, 3,821; 1985, 3,724; 1986, 3,566; 1987, 3,513. Butter production in the same years was (in 1,000 tonnes): 72, 78, 75, 68, 66; and cheese 115, 116, 115, 113, 114.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 1.7m.; sheep, 397,000; pigs, 2.2m.; poultry, 10.8m.

Number of farm tractors in 1986, 183,828; combines in 1986, 47,089.

The number of pelts produced in 1986-87 was as follows: Fox, 48,754; mink, 1.72m.; others, 12,105.

<sup>1</sup> Figures refer to holdings of more than 2 hectares of arable land.

**Forestry.** In 1983-87 the forests covered an area of 23.6m. hectares, *i.e.* roughly 57% of the country's land area. Municipal and State ownership accounts for one-fourth of the forests, companies own another fourth, and the remaining half is in private hands. In the felling seasons, 1985-86 and 1986-87 respectively, 52.7m. and 50.3m. cu. metres (solid volume excluding bark) of wood were removed from the forests in Sweden. The sawmill, wood pulp and paper industries are all of great importance. The number of sawmills in 1984 was about 2,500, 370 of which were commercial sawmills, with more than 90% of the total production of sawn hard- and soft-wood. In 1987 the total production was about 11.3m. cu. metres. The wood pulp factories total output amounted to 10m. tons (including dissolving pulp) (dry weight).

**Fisheries.** In 1987 the total catch of the sea fisheries was 197,307 tons, landed weight, value 746m. kr.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Manufacturing.** The most important sector of Swedish manufacturing is the production of metals, metal products, machinery and transport equipment, covering almost half of the total value added by manufacturing. Production of high-quality steel is an old Swedish speciality. A large part of this production is exported. The production of ordinary steel is slightly decreasing and is still short of domestic demand. The total production of steel amounted to 4.1 m. tons in 1983. There is also a large production of other metals (aluminium, lead, copper) and rolled semi-manufactured goods of these metals.

These basic metal industries are an important basis for the production of more developed metal products, machinery and equipment, which are to a large extent sold on the world market, *i.e.*, hand tools, mining drills, ball-bearings, turbines, pneumatic machinery, refrigerating equipment, machinery for pulp and paper industries, etc., sewing machines, machine tools, office machinery, high-voltage electric machinery, telephone equipment, cars and trucks, ships and aeroplanes.

Another important manufacturing sector is based on Sweden's forest resources. This sector includes saw-mills, plywood factories, joinery industries, pulp- and paper-mills, wallboard and particle board factories, accounting for about 20% of the total value of manufacturing. A fast increasing sector is the chemical industry, especially the petro-chemical branch. Minerals industries include production of building materials, decorative arts products of glass and china.

Industry groups	No. of establishments		Average no. of wage-earners		Sales value of production (gross) in 1m. kr.	
	1985	1986	1985	1986	1985	1986
Mining and quarrying	111	107	8,471	8,075	6,425	5,820
Metal-ore mining	35	35	7,397	6,997	5,694	5,068
Other mining	76	72	1,074	1,098	731	752
Manufacturing	9,095	9,022	535,140	531,228	510,994	527,322
Manufacture of food, beverages and tobacco	837	818	50,579	51,227	70,801	74,501
Textile, wearing apparel and leather industries	626	607	24,417	23,224	10,780	11,046
Manufacture of wood products including furniture	1,413	1,372	45,577	44,532	32,876	34,993
Manufacture of paper and paper products, printing and publishing	1,079	1,080	65,925	65,580	71,163	76,161
Manufacture of chemicals and chemical, petroleum, coal, rubber and plastic products	703	724	41,324	42,081	79,105	70,216
Manufacture of non-metallic mineral products, except products of petroleum and coal	391	378	16,123	15,829	10,793	11,309
Basic metal industries	160	160	36,359	35,436	40,191	38,961
Manufacture of fabricated metal products, machinery and equipment	3,786	3,378	252,022	250,698	193,828	208,657
Other manufacturing industries	100	95	2,814	2,621	1,456	1,479
Electricity, gas and water <sup>1</sup>	825	702	10,968	10,292	77,325	76,888
Electricity, gas and steam	699	702	10,368	10,292	75,715	76,888
Water works and supply <sup>1</sup>	126	—	600	—	1,610	—

<sup>1</sup> Excluding water, 1986.

*Arbetsmarknadsstatistik (Labour Market Statistics).* Monthly. National Labour Market Board, Stockholm, from 1963

*Arbetsmarknadsstatistisk Årsbok (Year Book of Labour Statistics).* Statistics Sweden, Stockholm, from 1973

Johansson, Ö., *The Gross Domestic Product of Sweden and its Composition 1861-1955.* Stockholm, 1967

Thalberg, B. and Marno, N., eds., *Economic Growth, Welfare and Industrial Relations: A Comparative Study of Japan and Sweden.* Tokyo, 1984

*Jordbruksekonomiska meddelanden (Journal of Agricultural Economics,* published monthly by the National Agricultural Market Board). Stockholm, from 1939

*Jordbruksstatistisk årsbok* (Yearbook of Agricultural Statistics). Statistics Sweden, Stockholm, from 1965

*The Swedish Economy*. Ministry of Economic Affairs and National Institute of Economic Research. Stockholm, from 1960

**Trade Unions.** The Swedish Federation of Trade Unions (LO) had 24 member unions with a total membership of 2,279,885 in 1987; the Swedish Central Organization of Salaried Employees (TCO) had 21, with 1,250,073; the Swedish Confederation of Professional Associations (SACO-SR) had 25, with 300,084.

**Commerce.** The imports and exports of Sweden, unwrought gold and coin not included, have been as follows (in 1 m. kr.):

	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	146,040	173,932	200,368	218,569	244,654	232,614	257,408
Exports	144,876	168,134	210,516	242,811	260,481	265,103	281,433

Imports and exports by products (in 1 m. kr.):

	<i>Imports</i>		<i>Exports</i>	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
Food and live animals chiefly for food	14,429	14,526	4,967	4,675
Cereals and cereal preparations	814	891	1,321	1,241
Vegetables and fruit	4,317	5,127	404	376
Coffee, tea, cocoa, spices and manufactures thereof	4,225	2,720	602	630
Feeding stuff for animals (not including unmilled cereals)	991	971	148	155
Beverages and tobacco	1,949	1,948	355	338
Crude materials, inedible, except fuels	10,241	10,963	24,293	25,847
Hides, skins and furskins, raw	550	613	927	850
Crude rubber (including synthetic and reclaimed)	499	471	156	158
Cork and wood	2,657	3,267	9,517	9,911
Pulp and waste paper	570	582	8,795	10,449
Textile fibres (other than wool tops) and their wastes (not manufactured into yarn or fabric)	368	364	258	224
Crude fertilizers and crude minerals (excluding coal, petroleum and precious stones)	1,321	1,469	443	468
Metalliferous ores and metal scrap	2,636	2,466	3,841	3,531
Mineral fuels, lubricants and related materials	24,967	23,077	7,611	8,211
Coal, coke and briquettes	1,882	1,329	192	196
Petroleum, petroleum products and related materials	22,371	20,910	6,591	7,415
Chemicals and related products, n.e.s.	22,621	24,765	17,782	19,232
Artificial resins and plastic materials, and cellulose esters and ethers	6,624	7,358	4,976	5,588
Manufactured goods classified chiefly by material	38,511	41,714	69,812	74,358
Paper, paperboard, and articles of paper pulp, of paper or of paperboard	3,063	3,411	27,464	30,777
Textile yarn, fabrics, made-up articles, n.e.s., and related products	6,501	7,112	3,480	3,639
Non-metallic mineral manufactures, n.e.s.	3,744	4,167	2,860	3,142
Iron and steel	8,438	8,690	16,360	16,339
Non-ferrous metals	4,876	4,834	4,600	4,906
Machinery and transport equipment	84,221	98,772	116,147	121,812
Power generating machinery and equipment	5,918	6,068	7,395	7,795
Machinery specialized for particular industries	7,311	9,075	13,117	13,880
Metal working machinery	2,591	2,949	2,638	2,693
General industrial machinery and equipment, n.e.s. and machine parts, n.e.s.	12,512	14,329	18,351	19,609
Office machines and automatic data processing equipment	10,134	11,482	7,898	7,982



	1986	Imports 1987	1986	Exports 1987
Telecommunications and sound recording and reproducing apparatus and equipment	6,209	7,035	10,166	9,615
Electrical machinery apparatus and appliances, n.e.s., and electrical parts thereof (including non-electrical counterparts, n.e.s., of electrical household type equipment)	14,195	15,883	10,672	11,293
Road vehicles (including air cushion vehicles)	20,529	27,621	39,414	43,322
Other transport equipment	4,823	4,331	6,495	4,993
Miscellaneous manufactured articles	33,811	39,463	20,499	22,297

## Principal import and export countries (in 1m. kr.):

	Imports from		Exports to	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
Belgium-Luxembourg	7,265	7,668	10,761	11,653
Denmark	15,897	17,314	21,148	20,894
Federal Republic of Germany	47,731	56,175	30,659	33,351
Finland	15,868	17,820	16,210	17,533
France	12,125	13,245	13,584	15,061
Italy	9,010	10,678	9,114	10,593
Netherlands	9,888	10,596	12,276	13,801
Norway	13,110	15,156	29,661	30,270
Switzerland	5,115	5,403	5,357	6,321
USSR	3,538	4,880	2,135	1,826
UK	24,199	23,518	27,665	28,674
USA	18,235	17,780	29,865	30,067

Total trade between Sweden and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,416,383	2,465,582	2,756,536	2,952,453	3,366,524
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,888,625	3,006,890	2,307,900	2,322,235	2,195,032

*Historisk Statistik för Sverige, 3: Utrikeshandel* [Foreign Trade], 1732-1970. Statistics Sweden, Stockholm, 1972

*Utrikeshandel, årsstatistik* [Foreign Trade, Annual Bulletin]. Statistics Sweden, Stockholm. 5 vols. Statistical Reports, Series H

*Utrikeshandel, månadsstatistik* [Foreign Trade, Monthly Bulletin]. Statistics Sweden, Stockholm.

*Utrikeshandel, kvartalsstatistik* [Foreign Trade, Quarterly Bulletin]. Statistics Sweden, Stockholm. January - December. Exports respectively imports. Statistical Reports, Series H

*Utrikeshandel, års statistik* [Foreign Trade, Annual]. Official Statistics of Sweden, Statistics Sweden, Stockholm. Imports and exports. Distribution by country and commodity according to the SITC

*Utrikeshandel, årsstatistik* [Foreign Trade, Annual]. Official Statistics of Sweden, Statistics Sweden, Stockholm. Imports and exports. Commodities according to the CCCN.

**Tourism.** In 1987 foreign visitors spent 12,881m. kr., and stayed 3,243,324 nights in hotels, 909,706 in holiday villages and youth hostels and 2,936,216 camping. Earnings from tourism (1987) 12·88m. kr.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 200,000 km of public roads comprising State-administered roads, 98,441 km, municipal, 32,000 km, private roads with subsidies, 77,031 km, of which 68,762 km were surfaced. Motor vehicles on 31 Dec. 1987 included 3,366,570 passenger cars, 259,576 buses and lorries and 31,016 motor cycles (all in use).

**Railways.** At the end of 1987 the total length of railways was 11,673 km; 7,464 km were electrified which carried 83m. passengers and 54m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Commercial air traffic is maintained in (1) Sweden and other parts of the world by Scandinavian Airlines System (SAS), of which AB Aerotransport (ABA = Swedish Air Lines) is the Swedish partner (DDL = Danish Air Lines and DNL = Norwegian Air Lines being the other two); (2) only within Sweden by Linjeflyg AB. Scandinavian Airlines System have a joint paid-up capital of about Sw. kronor 6,039m. Capitalization of ABA, Sw. kronor 1,832m., of which 50% is

owned by the Government and 50% by private enterprises. Capitalization of Linjeflyg, Sw. kronor 657m., of which 50% is owned by SAS and 50% by ABA.

In scheduled air traffic during 1987 the total number of km flown was 94.1m.; passenger-km, 7,275.1m.; goods, 164.4m. ton-km; mail, 18.5m. ton-km. These figures represent the Swedish share of the SAS traffic (Swedish domestic and three-sevenths of international traffic) and the Linjeflyg traffic.

**Shipping.** The Swedish mercantile marine consisted on 30 June 1988 of 405 vessels of 2m. gross tons (only vessels of at least 100 gross tons, and excluding fishing vessels and tugs). Stockholm and Göteborg, with together 167 vessels of 1.4m. gross tons in Dec. 1987, are the two major home ports for the Swedish mercantile marine.

Vessels entered from and cleared for foreign countries, exclusive of passenger liners and ferries, with cargoes and in ballast, in 1987, are as follows (only vessels of at least a gross tonnage of 75): With cargoes, 28,613 with a gross tonnage of 109.9m.; in ballast, 16,261 with a gross tonnage of 57.7m.

**Post and Broadcasting.** On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 5,480,000 main telephone lines.

Number of combined radio and television reception fees paid at the end of 1987 was 3,293,000, of which 3m. included extra fees for colour television. As from 1 April 1978, special sound broadcasting licences were discontinued.

*Sveriges Radio AB* is a non-commercial semi-governmental corporation, transmitting 3 programmes on long-, medium-, and short-waves and on FM. There are also regional programmes. It also broadcasts 2 TV programmes. Colour programmes are broadcast by PAL system.

The overseas radio-telegraph and radio-telephone services are conducted by the Swedish Telecommunications Administration.

The number of post offices at the end of 1986 was 2,164. For receipts of the post and telecommunication services *see* the section on Economy.

**Cinemas** (1987). There were 1,112 cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1987). There were 178 daily newspapers with a total circulation of 4.9m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The administration of justice is entirely independent of the Government. The *Justitiekansler*, or Attorney General (a royal appointment) and the *Justitieombudsmän* (Parliamentary Commissioners appointed by the Diet), exercise a check on the administration. In 1968 a reform was carried through which meant that the offices of the former *Justitieombudsman* (Ombudsman for civil affairs) and the *Militieombudsman* (Ombudsman for military affairs) were turned into one sole institution with 3 Ombudsmen, each styled *Justitieombudsman*. They exert a general supervision over all courts of law, the civil service, military laws and the military services. In 1987-88 they received altogether 2,972 cases; of these, 136 were instituted on their own initiative and 2,803 on complaints.

The *Riksåklagaren* (a royal appointment) is the chief public prosecutor.

The kingdom has a Supreme Court of Judicature and is divided into 6 Courts of Appeal districts (*hovrätter*) and 97 district-court divisions (*tingsrätter*). There is also a Housing Appeal Court and 12 rent and tenancy tribunals.

Of the district courts 27 also serve as real estate courts and 6 as water rights courts.

These district courts (or courts of first instance) deal with both civil and criminal cases. Each member of the court has an individual vote and is legally responsible for the decision. In the voting, the majority rules. When the votes are evenly divided in a criminal case, the opinion implying the least severe sentence applies, and in cases where there is no opinion that could be considered the mildest, the Chair has the casting vote, as is also the case in family civil cases and matters; petty cases are tried by the judge alone. Civil cases are tried as a rule by 3 to 4 judges or in minor cases by 1 judge. Disputes of greater consequence relating to the Marriage Code or the Code relating to Parenthood and Guardianship are tried by a judge and a *nämnd* of 3-4 lay assessors. When cases concerning real estate are being tried the

court consists of 2 qualified lawyers, 1 specialist on technical matters and 2 lay assessors.

Criminal cases are tried by a judge and a jury of 5 members (lay assessors) in felony cases, and of 3 members in misdemeanour cases. The cases in Courts of Appeal are generally tried by 4 or 5 judges, but the same cases, which are tried with a judge and a *nämnd* in the first instance, are tried by 3 or 4 judges and a *nämnd* of 2-3 members. In cases concerning real estate the court consists of a specialist on technical matters in place of one of the judges and in water-right cases of 3 or 4 judges and 1 or 2 specialists on technical water matters.

Those with low incomes can receive free legal aid out of public funds. In criminal cases a suspected person has the right to a defence counsel, paid out of public funds.

The Attorney-General (*Justitiekanslern*) and the Parliamentary Commissioner (*Justitieombudsmannen*) for the Judiciary and Civil Administration supervise the application in the public sector of acts of parliament and regulations. The Attorney-General is the Government's legal adviser and also the Public Prosecutor.

The holders of the office of Parliamentary Commissioner are 4 in number.

There were 76 penal and correctional institutions for offenders in 1987 with an average population of 4,264 male and 217 female inmates (including offenders in remand prison). Besides, there were 531 children or young people registered for care in treatment and/or residential homes on 31 Dec. 1987, admitted under the 'Care of Young Persons' Act.

Anderman, S., (ed.) *Law and the Weaker Party: An Anglo-Swedish Comparative Study*. Abingdon, 1981-83

Bruzelius, A. and Ginsburg, R. B., *The Swedish Code of Judicial Procedure*. South Hackensack, Rev. ed., 1979

Strömholm, S., *An Introduction to Swedish Law*. Stockholm, 1981

al-Wahab, I., *The Swedish Institution of Ombudsmen*. Stockholm, 1979

*Justitieombudsmännens ämbetsberättelse avgiven till Riksdagen*. Annual. Stockholm

*The Penal Code of Sweden: As Amended 1 Jan. 1972*. South Hackensack, 1972

*Rättsstatistisk årsbok* (Year Book of Legal Statistics). Statistics Sweden, Stockholm, from 1975

**Religion.** The overwhelming majority of the population belong to the Evangelical Lutheran Church, which is the established national church. In 1988 there were 13 bishoprics (Uppsala being the metropolitan see) and 2,565 parishes. The clergy are chiefly supported from the parishes and the proceeds of the church lands. The non-conformists mostly still adhere to the national church. The largest denominations, on 1 Jan. 1987, were: Pentecost Movement, 100,442; The Mission Covenant Church of Sweden, 78,325; Salvation Army, 28,691; Swedish Evangelical Mission, 23,169; Swedish Baptist Church, 20,741; Örebro Missionary Society, 22,328; Swedish Alliance Missionary Society, 13,503; Holiness Mission, 6,087.

There were also 129,403 Roman Catholics (under a Bishop resident at Stockholm).

Parliament and Convocation (*Kyrkomötet*) decided in 1958 to admit women to ordination as priests.

**Education.** By the Swedish Higher Educational Act of 1977 a unified educational system was created by integrating institutions which had previously been administered separately. This new *högskola* includes not only traditional university studies but also those of various former professional colleges as well as a number of study programmes earlier offered by the secondary school system. One of the goals of the 1977 university reform was to introduce an increased element of vocational training into part of Swedish higher education and to widen admission. A Certificate of Education (B.Sc., M.Sc., U.C. etc.) is awarded on completion of a general study programme. This certificate states the number of courses taken as well as the points and grades obtained on each course in the study programme.

In autumn 1987 there were, in these new integrated institutions for higher education, *högskola*, about 163,200 enrolled for undergraduate studies of whom 112,400 were distributed by sector as follows: Education for technical professions, 32,100; education for social work, economic and administrative professions, 34,700; education for medical and paramedical professions, 21,200; education for the teaching professions, 18,300; and education for information, communication and



cultural professions, 6,100. The number of students enrolled for post-graduate studies was 12,500.

In autumn term in the school year 1987-88 there were 590,000 pupils in primary education (grades 1-6 in compulsory comprehensive schools). Secondary education at the lower stage (grades 7-9 in compulsory comprehensive schools) comprised 332,200 pupils. In secondary education at the higher stage (the integrated upper secondary school), there were 242,200 pupils (excluding about 9,500 pupils in the fourth year of the technical line regarded as third-level education). The folk high schools, 'people's colleges', had 15,700 pupils in courses of more than 15 weeks.

In municipal adult education there were 136,600 pupils (corresponding to a gross number of 323,000 participants). Basic education for adults had 21,400 pupils.

There are also special schools for pupils with visual and hearing handicaps (about 630 in 1987-88) and for those who are mentally retarded (about 10,600 pupils).

*Education Policy for Planning: Goals for Educational Policy in Sweden.* OECD, Paris, 1980  
*Science and Technology Policies in Sweden.* Ministry of Education and Cultural Affairs, Stockholm, 1986

*The Swedish Folk High School.* Swedish National Board of Education, Stockholm, 1986  
*Yearbook of Educational Statistics 1986.* Statistics Sweden, Stockholm, 1986

Boucher, L., *Tradition and Change in Swedish education.* OUP, 1982

Düring, A., *Swedish Research.* Stockholm, 1985

Götberg, B. and Svärd, S., *The Swedish 'Folk High School': Its Background and its Present Situation.*

Kim, L., *Widened Admission to Higher Education in Sweden.* Stockholm, 1982

Marklund, S., *Educational Administration and Educational Development.* Univ. of Stockholm, 1979.—*The Democratization of Education in Sweden.* Univ. of Stockholm, 1980

Paulston, C. B., *Swedish Research and Debate about Bilingualism.* Stockholm, 1983

Stenholm, B., *The Swedish School System.* Stockholm, 1984

Sundqvist, A., *New Rules for Swedish Study Circles.* Stockholm, 1983

Ueberschlag, G., *La Folkhögskola.* Paris, 1981

**Social Welfare.** The social security schemes are greatly expanding. Supported by a referendum, the Diet in 1958 and 1959 decided that the national pensions should be increased successively until 1968 and supplementary pensions paid from 1963. These pensions are of invariable value. In 1969 the Diet decided that as from 1 July 1969 an increment to the basic pension was to be paid to persons without supplementary pensions, and this amount is to be successively increased in a 10-year period. The basic and supplementary pensions consist of old-age and family pensions, as well as pensions paid to the disabled. The financing of the supplementary system is based on the current-cost method.

The most important social welfare schemes are described in the conspectus below.

Type of scheme	Introduced	Scope	Principal benefits
Sickness insurance (compulsory—current law, 1962)	1955	All residents	Hospital fees, most private doctors charge the insured person normally 60 kr., district physicians and doctors in hospitals charge the insured person only 50 kr. for full medical treatment, some reimbursement of cost of transportation as well as costs of physiotherapy, convalescent care, etc., medicines at reduced prices or free of charge. During sickness daily allowance 90% of the yearly income in between 6,000 and 193,500 kr. There is generally no maximum benefit period. Dental care is available to all residents from 20 years of age, the maximum payable by the patient being 60% up to 2,500 kr. and 25% thereafter. Before 20 years of age dental care is given free through the national dental service.

<i>Type of scheme</i>	<i>Introduced</i>	<i>Scope</i>	<i>Principal benefits</i>
Employment injury insurance (compulsory—current law, 1976)	1901	All employed persons	Medical treatment, medicine and medical appliances, hospital care, sickness benefit 100% of the yearly income in between 6,000 and 193,500 kr. (first 90 days covered by sickness insurance), disability annuities, funeral benefit and survivor's pensions.
Unemployment insurance (current law, 1973)	1935	Members of recognized unemployment insurance societies (about 70% of all employees)	149-425 kr. per day subject to tax.
Basic pensions (current law, 1962) <i>Old-age</i>	1914	All citizens	Payable from the age of 65 or, at a reduced rate, from the age of 60. 65,274 kr. per annum for married couples, 37,152 kr. for others (including the special increment of 24,768 kr. and 12,384 kr. respectively for those without supplementary pension); about half of them receive municipal housing supplement.
<i>Disability</i>	1914	All citizens	Payable before the age of 65. Full pension 49,536 kr. per annum (including the special increment of 24,768 kr.).
<i>Survivors</i>	1948	All citizens	Widow's pension is payable before the age of 65. The pension is 37,152 kr. (including the special increment of 12,384 kr.) but less for those who have become widows before the age of 50 and have no child below 16. Many of them receive municipal housing supplements. Child pension is payable before the age of 18. The pension amounts to 10,578 kr. (fatherless or motherless) and 15,996 kr. (orphans).
Supplementary pensions (current law, 1962) <i>Old-age</i>	1960	All gainfully occupied persons	Payable from the same age as the basic pension ( <i>see above</i> ). The pension is in principle 60% of the insured person's average annual earnings during the best 15 years except an amount corresponding to the basic pension and subject to a ceiling.
<i>Disability</i>	1960	All gainfully occupied persons	Payable before the age of 65. Full pension corresponds in principle to supplementary old-age pension.

<i>Type of scheme</i> <i>Survivors</i>	<i>Intro- duced</i> 1960	<i>Scope</i> All gainfully occupied persons	<i>Principal benefits</i> Payable to widow and children, before the age of 19, of a deceased person as a certain percentage of the deceased's supplementary pension.
Partial pensions (current law, 1979)	1976	All employees between 60–65 years of age	The pension is payable between 60–65 years of age. The insured must have reduced his working time by 5 hours on an average a week and the part-time work must thereafter comprise at least 17 hours per week. Furthermore the insured must have worked during at least 5 of the last 12 months and achieved a right to supplementary pension for 10 years after the age of 45. The partial pension is paid out by 65% of the loss of income in connection with the change-over to part-time work.
Parents benefit	1974	All resident parents in connection with confinement	Parents cash benefit of 60 kr. a day during 360 days until the child reaches 4 years of age. Employed parents entitled to daily parents cash benefit of 90% of the daily income (in between 6,000–193,500 kr. yearly) for 270 days. Maximum daily parents cash benefit 477 kr. and for the last 90 days 60 kr. a day will be paid.
Temporary parents benefit	1974	All resident parents	Temporary parents cash benefit with the same amount as for parents cash benefit for care of each child which is ill during 60 days for the parents together until the child reaches 12 years of age.
Children's allowances	1948	All children below 16  Children at school 16–18	From 1 Jan. 1987 5,820 kr. per annum. An additional allowance is paid out for the third child with one-half of an allowance and 160% of a full allowance for each additional child. 485 kr. per month during school-courses.

Total social expenditure, including also hygiene, care of the sick and social assistance, amounted to 295,888m. kr. in 1986, representing 32% of the GDP.

*The Cost and Financing of the Social Services in Sweden, 1981.* Stockholm, 1983

Ministry of Health and Social Affairs, *The Evolution of the Swedish Health Insurance.* Stockholm, 1978

*Socialnytt* (Official Journal of the National Board of Health and Welfare). Stockholm, from 1968

*Social Insurance Statistics, Facts 1986.* National Social Insurance Board, Stockholm, 1986

*The Swedish Health Services in the 1990s.* The National Board of Health and Welfare, Stockholm, 1985

Forsberg, M., *The Evolution of Social Welfare Policy in Sweden.* Stockholm, 1984

Heclo, H., *Modern Social Politics in Britain and Sweden: From Relief to Income Maintenance.* New Haven, 1974

Lagerström, L., *Pension Systems in Sweden.* Stockholm, 1976.—*Social Security in Sweden.* Stockholm, 1976



## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Sweden in Great Britain (11 Montagu Pl., London, W1H 2AL)

*Ambassador:* Leif Leifland, GCVO (accredited on 10 Nov. 1982).

Of Great Britain in Sweden (Sjörödgatan 6-8, 115 27 Stockholm)

*Ambassador:* Sir John Ure, KCMG, LVO.

Of Sweden in the USA (600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)

*Ambassador:* Count Wilhelm H. F. Wachtmeister.

Of the USA in Sweden (Strandvägen 101, 115 27 Stockholm)

*Ambassador:* Gregory J. Newell.

Of Sweden to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Jan Eliasson.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Statistics Sweden, (Statistiska, Centralbyrån, S-11581 Stockholm) was founded in 1858, in succession to the Kungl. Tabellkommissionen, which had been set up in 1756. *Director-General:* Sten Johansson. Its Publications include:

*Levnadsförhållanden, årsbok* (Living Conditions). Annual. From 1975.—*Rapport*. From 1976

*Statistisk årsbok för Sverige* (Statistical Abstract of Sweden). From 1914

*Siffror om Sverige* (Sweden). From 1971. Also in English as *Sweden*

*Historisk statistik för Sverige* (Historical Statistics of Sweden). 1955 ff. (4 vols. to date)

*Allmän månadsstatistik* (Monthly Digest of Swedish Statistics). From 1963

*Statistiska meddelanden* (Statistical Reports). From 1963

Andersson, L., *A History of Sweden*. Stockholm, 1962

*Atlas över Sverige*. Stockholm, 1953-71. [Publ. in separate parts dealing with population, economics, etc.]

*Publications on Sweden*. Stockholm, 1988

*Documents on Swedish Foreign Policy, 1981*. Stockholm, 1983

Grosskopf, G., *The Swedish Tax System*. Stockholm, 1986

Gullberg, I. E., *Swedish-English Dictionary of Technical Terms.—Svensk-Engelsk Fackordbok*. Stockholm, 2nd ed. 1977

Hadenius, S., *Swedish Politics during the Twentieth Century*. Stockholm, 1985

Hansson, I., Jonung, L., Myhrman, J. and Söderström, H. T., *Sweden – the Road to Stability*. Stockholm, 1985

Heelo, H. and Madsen, H., *Policy and Politics in Sweden: Principled Pragmatism*. Philadelphia, 1987

Hellberg, T. and Jansson, L. M., *Alfred Nobel*. Stockholm, 1984

Linton, M., *The Swedish Road to Socialism*. London, 1985

Meyerson, P.-M., *Eurosclerosis, The Case of Sweden*. Stockholm, 1985

Nordic Council, *Yearbook of Nordic Statistics*. From 1962 (in English and one Nordic Language)

Olivecrona, G., (ed.) *Sweden In Fact*. Stockholm, 1986

Sather, L. B. and Swanson, A., *Sweden*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

Scott, F. D., *Sweden: The Nation's History*. Univ. of Minnesota Press, 1983

Söderström, H. T., *Getting Sweden Back to Work*. Stockholm, 1986

Turner, B., *Sweden*. London, 1976

*Sveriges statskalender*. Published by Vetenskapsakademien. Annual, from 1813

*National Library:* Kungliga Biblioteket, Stockholm. *Director:* Lars Tynell.

# SWITZERLAND

*Capital:* Bern

*Population:* 6.6m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$17,840 (1986)

## Schweiz—Suisse—Svizzera

**HISTORY.** On 1 Aug. 1291 the men of Uri, Schwyz and Unterwalden entered into a defensive league. In 1353 the league included 8 members and in 1513, 13. Various territories were acquired either by single cantons or by several in common, and in 1648 the league became formally independent of the Holy Roman Empire, but no addition was made to the number of cantons till 1798. In that year, under the influence of France, the unified Helvetic Republic was formed. This failed to satisfy the Swiss, and in 1803 Napoleon Bonaparte, in the Act of Mediation, gave a new Constitution, and out of the lands formerly allied or subject increased the number of cantons to 19. In 1815 the perpetual neutrality of Switzerland and the inviolability of her territory were guaranteed by Austria, France, Great Britain, Portugal, Prussia, Russia, Spain and Sweden, and the Federal Pact, which included 3 new cantons, was accepted by the Congress of Vienna. In 1848 a new Constitution was passed. The 22 cantons set up a Federal Government (consisting of a Federal Parliament and a Federal Council) and a Federal Tribunal. This Constitution, in turn, was on 29 May 1874 superseded by the present Constitution. In a national referendum held in Sept. 1978, 69.9% voted in favour of the establishment of a new canton, Jura, which was established on 1 Jan. 1979.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Switzerland is bounded west and north-west by France, north by the Federal Republic of Germany, east by Austria and south by Italy. Area and population, according to the census held on 1 Dec. 1980 and estimate 31 Dec. 1987.

<i>Canton</i>	<i>Area</i> (sq. km)	<i>Census</i> 1 Dec. 1980	<i>Estimate</i> 31 Dec. 1987	<i>Pop. per</i> <i>sq. km.</i> 1980
Zürich (Zurich) (1351)	1,729	1,122,839	1,136,700	650
Bern (Berne) (1553)	6,049	912,022	928,800	151
Luzern (Lucerne) (1332)	1,492	296,159	308,500	198
Uri (1291)	1,076	33,883	33,400	31
Schwyz (1291)	908	97,354	104,800	107
Obwalden (Obwald) (1291)	491	25,865	27,900	53
Nidwalden (Nidwald) (1291)	276	28,617	31,500	104
Glarus (Glaris) (1352)	685	36,718	36,700	54
Zug (Zoug) (1352)	239	75,930	83,100	318
Fribourg (Freiburg) (1481)	1,670	185,246	197,200	111
Solothurn (Soleure) (1481)	791	218,102	220,400	276
Basel-Stadt (Bâle-V.) (1501)	37	203,915	192,800	5,485
Basel-Landschaft (Bâle-C.) (1501)	428	219,822	226,900	513
Schaffhausen (Schaffhouse) (1501)	298	69,413	70,000	233
Appenzell A.-Rh. (Rh.-Ext.) (1513)	243	47,611	49,600	196
Appenzell I.-Rh. (Rh.-Int.) (1513)	172	12,844	13,200	75
St Gallen (St Gall) (1803)	2,014	391,995	407,000	195
Graubünden (Grisons) (1803)	7,106	164,641	167,100	23
Aargau (Argovie) (1803)	1,405	453,442	478,000	323
Thurgau (Thurgovie) (1803)	1,013	183,795	194,600	181
Ticino (Tessin) (1803)	2,811	265,899	279,100	95
Vaud (Waadt) (1803)	3,218	528,747	556,700	164
Valais (Wallis) (1815)	5,226	218,707	235,500	42
Neuchâtel (Neuenburg) (1815)	797	158,368	157,400	199
Genève (Genf) (1815)	282	349,040	365,200	1,237
Jura (1979)	837	64,986	64,800	78
Total	41,293 <sup>1</sup>	6,365,960	6,566,900	154

<sup>1</sup> 15,943 sq. miles.

The German language is spoken by the majority of inhabitants in 19 of the 26 cantons above (French names given in brackets), the French in 6 (Fribourg, Vaud, Valais, Neuchâtel, Jura and Genève, for which the German names are given in brackets), the Italian in 1 (Ticino). In 1980, 65% spoke German, 18.4% French, 9.8% Italian, 0.8% Romansch and 6% other languages; counting only Swiss nationals, the percentages were 73.5, 20.1, 4.5, 0.9 and 1. On 8 July 1937 Romansch was made the fourth national language; it is spoken mostly in Graubünden.

At the end of 1987 the 5 largest cities were Zürich (346,500); Basel (171,700); Geneva (160,900); Berne (136,300); Lausanne (123,700). At the end of 1986 the population figures of the '*agglomérations*' or conurbations were as follows: Zürich, 840,313; Basel, 363,029; Geneva, 384,507; Bern, 300,316; Lausanne, 262,217; other towns, 1985, (and their conurbations, 1986) were Winterthur, 84,400 (107,812); St Gallen, 73,200 (125,879); Luzern, 60,600 (160,594); Biel, 52,000 (82,544).

The number of foreigners resident in Switzerland in Jan. 1985 was 960,700. Of these, 186,600 were in Zürich canton, 109,100 in Vaud and 122,900 in Geneva.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Live births</i>		<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces</i>	<i>Still births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
	<i>Total</i>	<i>Illegitimate</i>				
1984	74,700	4,300	38,600	11,200	350	58,600
1985	74,700	4,200	38,800	11,400	340	59,600
1986	76,300	4,300	40,200	11,400	330	60,100
1987	76,500	4,500	43,000	11,500	340	59,500

In 1983 there were 91,300 emigrants and 88,000 immigrants; in 1984, 85,000 and 97,000; in 1985, 85,000 and 99,000; in 1986, 85,000 and 107,000.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is largely dictated by relief and altitude and includes continental and mountain types. Summers are generally warm, with quite considerable rainfall; winters are fine, with clear, cold air. Bern. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July, 65°F (18.5°C). Annual rainfall 39.4" (986 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Switzerland is a republic. The highest authority is vested in the electorate, *i.e.*, all Swiss citizens of over 20. This electorate—besides electing its representatives to the Parliament—has the voting power on amendments to, or on the revision of, the Constitution. It also takes decisions on laws and international treaties if requested by 50,000 voters or 8 cantons (facultative referendum), and it has the right of initiating constitutional amendments, the support required for such demands being 100,000 voters (popular initiative).

The Federal Government is supreme in matters of peace, war and treaties; it regulates the army, the railway, telecommunication systems, the coining of money, the issue and repayment of bank-notes and the weights and measures of the republic. It also legislates on matters of copyright, bankruptcy, patents, sanitary policy in dangerous epidemics, and it may create and subsidize, besides the Polytechnic School at Zürich and at Lausanne, 2 federal universities and other educational institutions. There has also been entrusted to it the authority to decide concerning public works for the whole or great part of Switzerland, such as those relating to rivers, forests and the construction of national highways and railways. By referendum of 13 Nov. 1898 it is also the authority in the entire spheres of common law. In 1957 the Federation was empowered to legislate on atomic energy matters and in 1961 on the construction of pipelines of petroleum and gas.

*National flag:* Red with a white couped cross.

*National anthem:* Trittst im Morgenrot daher (words by Leonard Widmer, 1808–68; tune by Alberik Zwyssig, 1808–54); adopted by the Federal Council in 1962.

The legislative authority is vested in a parliament of 2 chambers, a *Ständerat*, or Council of States, and a *Nationalrat*, or National Council.



The *Ständerat* is composed of 46 members, chosen and paid by the 23 cantons of the Confederation, 2 for each canton. The mode of their election and the term of membership depend entirely on the canton. Three of the cantons are politically divided—Basel into Stadt and Land, Appenzell into Ausser-Rhoden and Inner-Rhoden, and Unterwalden into Obwalden and Nidwalden. Each of these 'half-cantons' sends 1 member to the State Council.

The *Nationalrat*—after the referendum taken on 4 Nov. 1962—consists of 200 National Councillors, directly elected for 4 years, in proportion to the population of the cantons, with the proviso that each canton or half-canton is represented by at least 1 member. The members are paid from federal funds at the rate of 150 francs for each day during the session and a nominal sum of 10,000 francs per annum.

In 1987 the 200 members were distributed among the cantons<sup>1</sup> as follows:

Zürich (Zurich)	35	Appenzell—Outer- and Inner-Rhoden	3
Bern (Berne)	29	St Gallen (St Gall)	12
Luzern (Lucerne)	9	Graubünden (Grisons)	5
Uri	1	Aargau (Argovie)	14
Schwyz	3	Thurgau (Thurgovie)	6
Unterwalden—Upper and Lower	2	Ticino (Tessin)	8
Glarus (Glaris)	1	Vaud (Waadt)	17
Zug (Zoug)	2	Valais (Wallis)	7
Fribourg (Freiburg)	6	Neuchâtel (Neuenburg)	5
Solothurn (Soleure)	7	Geneve (Genf)	11
Basel (Bâle)—town and country	13	Jura	2
Schaffhausen (Schaffhouse)	2		

<sup>1</sup> The name of the canton is given in German, French or Italian, according to the language most spoken in it, and alternative names are given in brackets.

Composition of the National Council in 1983: Social Democrats, 47; Radicals, 54; Christian-Democratic People's Party, 42; Swiss People's Party, 23; Liberals, 8; Independents, 8; National Campaign/Vigilance, 5; Evangelical Party, 3; Progressive Organizations, 3; Environmentalists, 3; Others, 4.

Council of States (1983): Christian Democrats, 18; Radicals, 14; Social Democrats, 6; Swiss People's Party, 5.

A general election takes place by ballot every 4 years. Every citizen of the republic who has entered on his 20th year is entitled to a vote, and any voter, not a clergyman, may be elected a deputy. Laws passed by both chambers may be submitted to direct popular vote, when 50,000 citizens or 8 cantons demand it; the vote can be only 'Yes' or 'No'. This principle, called the *referendum*, is frequently acted on.

Women's suffrage, although advocated by the Federal Council and the Federal Assembly, was on 1 Feb. 1959 rejected, but in a subsequent referendum, held on 7 Feb. 1971, women's suffrage was carried.

The chief executive authority is deputed to the *Bundesrat*, or Federal Council, consisting of 7 members, elected from 7 different cantons for 4 years by the *Vereinigte Bundesversammlung*, i.e., joint sessions of both chambers. The members of this council must not hold any other office in the Confederation or cantons, nor engage in any calling or business. In the Federal Parliament legislation may be introduced either by a member, or by either House, or by the Federal Council (but not by the people). Every citizen who has a vote for the National Council is eligible for becoming a member of the executive.

The President of the Federal Council (called President of the Confederation) and the Vice-President are the first magistrates of the Confederation. Both are elected by the Federal Assembly for 1 calendar year and are not immediately re-eligible to the same offices. The Vice-President, however, may be, and usually is, elected to succeed the outgoing President.

*President of the Confederation.* (1989): Jean-Pascal Delamuraz.

The 7 members of the Federal Council—each of whom has a salary of 203,000 francs per annum, while the President has 215,000 francs—act as ministers, or chiefs of the 7 administrative departments of the republic. The city of Berne is the seat of the Federal Council and the central administrative authorities.

The Federal Council was composed as follows in 1989:

*Foreign Affairs:* René Felber.

*Interior:* Flavio Cotti.

*Justice and Police:* Arnold Koller.

*Military:* Kaspar Villiger.

*Finance:* Otto Stich.

*Public Economy:* Jean-Pascal Delamuraz.

*Transport, Communications and Energy:* Adolf Ogi.

*Local Government.* Each of the cantons and demi-cantons is sovereign, so far as its independence and legislative powers are not restricted by the federal constitution; all cantonal governments, though different in organization (membership varies from 5 to 11, and terms of office from 1 to 5 years), are based on the principle of sovereignty of the people.

In all cantons a body chosen by universal suffrage, usually called *der Grosse Rat*, or *Kantonsrat*, exercises the functions of a parliament. In all the cantonal constitutions, however, except those of the cantons which have a *Landsgemeinde*, the referendum has a place. By this principle, where it is most fully developed, as in Zürich, all laws and concordats, or agreements with other cantons, and the chief matters of finance, as well as all revisions of the Constitution, must be submitted to the popular vote. In Appenzell, Glarus and Unterwalden the people exercise their powers direct in the *Landsgemeinde*, i.e., the assembly in the open air of all male citizens of full age. In all the cantons the *popular initiative* for constitutional affairs, as well as for legislation, has been introduced, except in Lucerne, where the *initiative* exists only for constitutional affairs. In most cantons there are districts (*Amtsbezirke*) consisting of a number of communes grouped together, each district having a Prefect (*Regierungsratthalter*) representing the cantonal government. In the larger communes, for local affairs, there is an Assembly (legislative) and a Council (executive) with a president, maire or syndic, and not less than 4 other members. In the smaller communes there is a council only, with its proper officials.

**DEFENCE.** There are fortifications in all entrances to the Alps and on the important passes crossing the Alps and the Jura. Large-scale destructions of bridges, tunnels and defiles are prepared for an emergency.

**Army.** Switzerland depends for defence upon a *national militia*. Service in this force is compulsory and universal, with few exemptions except for physical disability. Those excused or rejected pay certain taxes in lieu. Liability extends from the 20th to the end of the 50th year for soldiers and of the 55th year for officers. The first 12 years are spent in the first line, called the *Auszug*, or *Élite*, the next 10 in the *Landwehr* and 8 in the *Landsturm*. The unarmed *Hilfsdienst* comprises all other males between 20 and 50 whose services can be made available for non-combatant duties of any description.

The initial training of the Swiss militia soldier is carried out in recruits' schools, and the periods are 118 days for infantry, engineers, artillery, etc. The subsequent trainings, called 'repetition courses', are 20 days annually; but after going through 8 courses further attendance is excused for all under the rank of sergeant. The *Landwehr* men are called up for training courses of 13 days every 2 years, and the *Landsturm* men have to undergo a refresher course of 13 days.

The Army is divided into 3 field corps each of 1 armoured and 2 infantry divisions and support groups, a corps with 3 mountain divisions, and independent redoubt-, fortress- and territorial-brigades. Strength on mobilization (1989): 560,000, and 400,000 reserves.

The administration of the Swiss Army is partly in the hands of the Cantonal authorities, who can promote officers up to the rank of captain. But the Federal Government is concerned with all general questions and makes all the higher appointments.

In peace-time the Swiss Army has no general; only in time of war the Federal Assembly in joint session of both Houses appoints a general.

The Swiss Army are armed with the Swiss automatic rifle and with machine-guns, bazookas and mortars. The field artillery is armed with a Q.F. shielded 10.5 Bofors and field howitzers of 10.5 cm calibre. The heavy artillery is armed with



guns of 10.5 cm and howitzers of 15 cm calibre. Equipment includes Leopard, Centurian and P3-61/-68 tanks and 1,500 M-63/-73/-64 armoured personnel carriers.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has 3 flying regiments, with about 270 combat aircraft. The fighter squadrons are equipped with Swiss-built F-5E Tiger IIs (7 squadrons), Mirage IIIS supersonic interceptor/ground-attack (2 squadrons), Mirage IIIRS fighter/reconnaissance (1 squadron), and Hunter interceptor/ground-attack (9 squadrons) aircraft. Bloodhound surface-to-air missile batteries are operational.

Training aircraft are Pilatus P-3 and PC-7 Turbo-Trainer and Vampire; there are also communications and transport aircraft and helicopters. The Vampires will be replaced by Hawk trainers in 1990. Personnel (1989), 45,000 on mobilization.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Switzerland is a member of OECD, EFTA and the Council of Europe. In a referendum in 1986 the electorate voted against joining the UN.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure of the Confederation, in 1 m. francs, for calendar years:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Revenue	18,900	19,400	20,770	22,200	25,200	24,400
Expenditure	19,300	20,300	21,400	22,900	23,200	24,200

The public debt, including internal debt, of the Confederation in 1980 amounted to 24,409m. francs; 1981, 24,677m.; 1982, 24,968m.; 1983, 25,249m.; 1984, 27,700m.; 1985, 29,200m.

*Schweizerisches Finanz-Jahrbuch.* Bern. Annual. From 1899

**Currency.** The *franc* of 100 *Rappen* or *centimes* is the monetary unit. On 10 May 1971 there was a revaluation to 0.21759 grammes of fine gold.

The legal gold coins are 20- and 10-franc pieces; cupro-nickel coins are 5, 2, 1 and ½ franc, 20, 10 and 5 centimes; bronze, 2 and 1 centime. Notes are of 1,000, 500, 100, 50, 20, 10 and 5 francs.

On 10 July 1981 the notes in circulation (of francs of nominal value) was as follows: In 1,000 franc notes, 8,685.1m. francs; in 500, 4,201.9m. francs; in 100, 6,687.3m. francs; in 50, 1,058.3m. francs, and in lower denominations 1,195.8m.

In March 1989, £1 = 2.73 francs; US\$1 = 1.58 francs.

**Banking.** The National Bank, with headquarters divided between Bern and Zürich, opened on 20 June 1907. It has the exclusive right to issue bank-notes. In 1984 the condition of the bank was as follows (in 1m. francs): Gold, 11,904, foreign exchange (currency), 38,800; currency in circulation, 26,500.

In 1986 there were 1,689 banking institutions with total assets of 805,000m. Swiss francs. They included 29 cantonal banks (154,600m. francs), 5 big banks (436,800m.), 215 regional banks (69,600m.), 1,243 loan and *Raiffeisen* banks (23,000m.), 197 other banks (121,000m.).

On 31 Dec. 1986 the total amount of savings deposits, deposit and investment accounts in Swiss banks was 167,100m. francs.

*National Bank: Bulletin mensuel.*—*Das schweizerische Bankwesen.* Yearly. From 1920

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures was made compulsory by the federal law on 3 July 1875 and since 1 Jan. 1887 only metric units have been legal. By the federal law of 24 June 1909 the international electric units were also adopted.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The total production of energy amounted to 56,600m. kwh. in 1987 of which 35,400m. kwh. were generated by hydro-electric plants. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.



**Gas.** The production of gas in 1986 was 54.52m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** There are 2 salt-mining districts; that in Bex (Vaud) belongs to the canton, but is worked by a private company, and those at Schweizerhalle, Rheinfelden and Ryburg are worked by a joint-stock company formed by the cantons interested. The output of salt of all kinds in 1982 was 361,964 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of the country of 4,129,315 hectares, about 1,057,794 hectares (25.6%) are unproductive. Of the productive area of 3,071,521 hectares, 1,051,991 hectares are wooded. The agricultural area, in 1985, totalled 1,076,339 hectares, of which 287,049 hectares arable land, 13,450 hectares vineyards, 7,229 hectares intensive fruit growing and 642,194 hectares permanent meadow and pasture land. In 1985 there were 119,731 farms. The gross value of agricultural products was estimated at 7,243.1m. francs in 1980 and 8,775m. francs in 1986.

In 1985, 100,806 hectares were planted with bread grains; 83,113 hectares fodder cereals; 20,063 hectares potatoes; 14,247 hectares sugar-beet; 42,218 hectares silo and green maize. Production, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Potatoes, 789; sugar-beet, 790; wheat, 530; barley, 270; maize, 157; tobacco, 1.5. Milk production (in 1,000 tonnes): 1960, 3,112; 1970, 3,204; 1980, 3,679; 1986, 3,867.

The fruit production (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986 was: Apples, 393; pears, 172; plums, 39; cherries, 35; nuts, 8.

Wine is produced in 18 of the cantons. In 1986 Swiss vineyards yielded 1,344,492 hectolitres of wine.

Livestock (1987): 48,000 horses, 355,000 sheep, 1,858,000 cattle (including about 809,000 milch cows), 1,917,000 pigs, (1985) 6m. poultry.

**Forestry.** Of the forest area of 999,795 hectares, 56,876 were owned by the Federation or the cantons, 636,069 by communes and 306,850 by private persons or companies in 1982. Production (1987) 4,570 cu. metres of softwood and 1,158 cu. metres of hardwood.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The chief food producing industries, based on Swiss agriculture, are the manufacture of cheese, butter, sugar and meat. The production in 1986 was (in tonnes): Cheese, 130,900; butter, 37,300; sugar, 9,800; meat, 37,600. There are 46 breweries, producing in 1978, 4.05m. hectolitres of beer. Tobacco products in 1986: Cigars, 278m.; cigarettes (1982), 26,497m.

Among the other industries, the manufacture of textiles, wearing apparel and footwear, chemicals and pharmaceutical products, bricks, glass and cement, the manufacture of basic iron and steel and of other metal products, the production of machinery (including electrical machinery and scientific and optical instruments) and watch and clock making are the most important. In 1981 there were 8,738 factories with 693,243 workers. In 1982, 41,200 were working in textile industries, 45,000 in the manufacture of clothing and footwear, 70,200 in chemical works, 194,700 in the construction industry, 168,600 in manufacture of metal products, 252,000 in the manufacture of machinery and 55,300 in watch and clock making and in the manufacture of jewellery.

Production in 1982 was: Woollen and blended yarn, 15,467 tonnes; woollen and blended cloth, 7,534 metres; footwear (1981), 5.87m. pairs; cement, 4,099,874 tonnes; raw aluminium, 75,256 tonnes; chocolate, 76,605 tonnes, 25.38m. watches and clocks were exported (1981).

**Labour.** In 1986, the total working population was 3,218,700, of which 209,200 were active in agriculture and forestry, 1,222,000 in manufacture and construction and 1,787,500 in services.

The foreign labour force with permit of temporary residence was 788,000 in Aug. 1986. Of the number recorded 284,000 were Italians, 91,000 Spaniards, 83,000 Frenchmen, 71,000 Germans and 29,000 Austrians.

The Swiss Federal Union of Administrative and Public Service Workers had, in 1985, a membership of 123,300. The Federation of Trade Unions had about 443,000 members.

**Commerce.** The special commerce, excluding gold (bullion and coins) and silver (coins), was (in 1 m. Swiss francs) as follows:

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	60,859	60,094	58,060	61,064	69,024	74,750	73,513	75,171
Exports	49,608	52,822	52,659	53,724	60,654	66,624	67,004	67,477

The following table, in 1 m. francs, shows the distribution of the special trade of Switzerland among the principal countries:

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports from</i>				<i>Exports to</i>			
	1984	1985	1986	1987	1984	1985	1986	1987
Federal Rep. of Germany	20,128.0	22,912.7	24,267.1	25,806.0	11,853.3	13,103.2	14,146.2	14,367.8
France	7,565.2	8,344.2	8,423.6	8,109.1	5,022.7	5,552.5	6,065.0	6,166.1
Italy	6,808.2	7,243.0	7,487.4	7,641.9	4,461.0	4,956.4	5,161.3	5,568.0
Netherlands	3,031.9	3,412.6	3,069.9	3,015.9	1,602.3	1,767.4	1,829.8	1,880.0
Belgium-Luxembourg	2,910.4	3,009.4	2,593.1	2,570.4	1,461.7	1,344.5	1,450.8	1,629.4
UK	4,974.7	5,425.2	5,375.0	4,577.8	4,834.6	5,298.9	5,182.1	5,038.5
Denmark	612.6	677.6	713.0	787.8	730.2	889.8	904.3	817.7
Portugal	228.2	244.1	271.6	276.0	372.2	377.8	413.2	462.6
Ireland	309.2	354.2	402.9	409.0	175.1	153.1	150.2	118.2
Spain	978.7	1,089.8	944.5	925.6	1,176.4	1,186.4	1,098.7	1,200.2
Greece	107.8	135.1	127.4	113.6	380.1	406.0	348.4	347.8
EEC Total	46,448.0	51,514.0	53,675.5	54,233.0	30,521.0	33,471.7	36,750.0	37,596.2
Austria	2,430.9	2,666.1	2,896.9	2,903.3	2,359.5	2,582.6	2,605.2	2,558.1
Norway	238.9	302.5	285.0	360.3	491.7	560.0	586.0	493.4
Sweden	1,199.1	1,377.2	1,330.6	1,483.4	1,204.5	1,317.3	1,300.2	1,327.8
Finland	419.4	418.5	454.0	484.9	477.1	530.0	562.9	573.9
Iceland	74.4	66.9	64.5	81.0	18.4	20.3	19.6	20.3
EFTA	4,509.9	5,075.4	5,031.0	5,312.7	4,923.4	5,388.0	5,073.8	4,973.5
Gibraltar, Malta	2.3	4.1	5.4	10.8	23.3	25.0	24.5	20.8
German Dem. Republic	111.3	133.3	129.4	115.1	148.7	189.8	243.0	352.4
Poland	143.1	134.2	101.3	104.9	257.6	300.2	264.3	261.1
Czechoslovakia	189.8	194.6	163.4	152.1	261.7	310.2	324.4	310.2
Hungary	378.3	351.2	271.1	237.8	307.0	335.1	321.7	318.3
Yugoslavia	181.4	197.7	167.9	163.1	465.3	462.3	512.4	424.2
Bulgaria	49.8	33.4	23.2	18.3	287.8	233.3	279.2	229.5
Romania	38.4	48.9	38.9	29.8	59.4	84.8	52.3	29.0
USSR	1,217.1	1,196.4	722.0	409.5	466.1	636.5	535.2	710.3
Turkey	140.3	200.1	228.6	201.7	427.9	590.1	667.9	677.6
Other European countries	12.6	23.2	14.4	12.4	38.6	45.1	38.6	44.2
Europe Total	54,482.0	60,196.3	60,572.1	61,001.3	39,364.2	43,258.5	45,087.3	45,947.4
Egypt	82.8	58.2	27.0	21.4	437.9	395.9	291.3	278.6
Sudan	10.1	2.9	1.7	...	50.4	44.9	36.5	...
Libya	1,038.1	949.1	410.7	409.0	242.7	170.4	117.4	113.8
Tunisia	150.0	21.6	33.5	...	50.4	52.0	50.2	...
Algeria	447.3	417.6	166.3	154.0	203.3	242.3	200.7	125.6
Morocco	24.9	23.6	25.2	...	75.3	90.2	81.1	...
Côte d'Ivoire	51.0	67.3	56.5	...	42.9	46.2	55.3	...
Guinea	1.4	1.8	0.2	...	10.9	11.4	8.2	...
Ghana	23.9	30.3	30.1	...	20.6	21.5	32.8	...
Nigeria	160.1	439.0	147.8	112.7	242.4	344.6	279.7	153.5
Zaire	5.1	6.2	10.0	...	34.4	38.0	41.2	...
Angola	16.6	6.4	5.6	...	17.4	37.3	23.0	...
S Africa, Rep. of	203.7	171.4	154.3	395.4	549.5	482.9	430.9	404.7

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports from</i>				<i>Exports to</i>			
	1984	1985	1986	1987	1984	1985	1986	1987
Zambia	9.7	5.7	10.6	...	17.8	19.2	8.0	...
Zimbabwe	49.4	34.3	19.4	...	30.6	32.8	37.1	...
Tanzania	6.9	3.9	1.7	...	26.5	26.6	22.9	...
Kenya	37.1	35.0	40.7	...	30.7	35.6	43.7	...
Other African countries	89.3	117.5	101.2	...	199.5	216.4	223.4	...
<b>Africa Total</b>	<b>2,407.4</b>	<b>2,391.8</b>	<b>1,242.5</b>	<b>1,393.2</b>	<b>2,283.2</b>	<b>2,308.2</b>	<b>1,983.4</b>	<b>1,679.5</b>
Syria	1.8	3.1	6.5	...	79.2	95.3	59.1	...
Lebanon	76.9	55.4	93.2	...	144.5	81.4	75.5	...
Israel	255.5	260.3	233.6	235.7	597.7	843.0	749.3	797.7
Iraq	3.7	1.2	1.1	...	241.6	256.5	169.0	...
Kuwait	5.3	2.4	1.2	...	195.6	189.1	111.3	...
Iran	124.2	66.7	87.4	77.1	662.1	475.6	420.0	327.5
Saudi Arabia	387.1	307.7	188.7	192.1	1,571.7	1,410.7	981.6	1,073.5
UAE	7.0	96.3	7.1	40.6	408.4	342.0	224.3	205.2
Pakistan	47.7	46.9	54.0	...	158.8	197.8	259.2	...
India	149.9	173.8	173.3	185.4	368.7	381.4	549.9	354.5
Thailand	163.1	155.7	200.7	...	224.9	248.5	201.8	...
Malaysia	54.6	72.2	54.9	...	128.3	142.2	144.0	...
Singapore	242.4	93.8	87.1	116.0	586.5	457.7	415.6	482.6
China	194.5	218.0	185.3	238.7	291.0	589.1	738.3	613.6
Hong Kong	776.3	802.7	722.1	772.2	932.0	1,086.4	1,305.7	1,392.3
Taiwan	231.6	233.7	277.1	...	260.9	265.6	260.7	...
Korea, Rep. of	210.1	227.9	244.7	...	205.7	252.8	280.5	...
Japan	2,631.3	2,960.2	3,418.6	3,448.4	1,998.0	1,122.2	2,171.5	2,573.8
Philippines	44.8	41.0	31.7	...	87.9	101.2	104.6	...
Indonesia	52.7	70.2	64.4	...	186.4	155.9	193.6	...
Other Asian countries	83.0	73.6	97.4	...	448.2	543.4	464.6	...
<b>Asia Total</b>	<b>5,743.5</b>	<b>5,962.8</b>	<b>6,230.1</b>	<b>6,664.4</b>	<b>9,778.1</b>	<b>10,237.8</b>	<b>9,880.1</b>	<b>10,448.4</b>
Canada	262.2	274.7	240.9	293.5	554.4	759.8	719.5	633.8
USA	4,562.6	4,390.9	3,970.1	3,993.6	5,943.2	6,870.8	6,343.0	5,917.5
Mexico	52.4	43.6	40.4	38.8	258.5	358.5	341.3	242.8
Guatemala	41.3	47.3	55.3	...	30.7	28.1	17.2	...
Honduras	38.6	50.5	43.6	...	29.4	20.2	15.5	...
Costa Rica	49.4	68.4	63.3	...	15.7	15.2	17.6	...
Panama	428.8	217.8	161.6	258.0	307.8	233.6	176.9	185.8
Cuba	13.9	14.5	14.4	...	56.1	65.8	40.7	...
Colombia	119.3	140.6	145.2	...	107.1	160.9	127.1	...
Venezuela	10.3	17.3	9.2	...	205.2	190.0	215.2	181.7
Brazil	352.2	421.9	304.6	9.2	358.3	473.5	557.1	489.3
Uruguay	26.1	24.0	29.3	291.4	29.6	29.3	27.3	...
Argentina	109.2	132.0	83.5	...	228.4	293.1	223.7	242.3
Chile	18.0	18.1	21.2	74.3	80.6	83.0	95.0	...
Bolivia	5.1	2.5	0.7	...	12.2	9.4	11.9	...
Peru	19.9	35.7	34.8	...	74.2	86.0	126.4	...
Ecuador	15.4	23.5	20.0	...	52.3	68.4	67.4	...
Other American countries	132.0	126.7	89.1	...	238.3	338.5	230.9	...
<b>Australia and Oceania</b>	<b>134.8</b>	<b>149.5</b>	<b>140.6</b>	<b>133.6</b>	<b>646.6</b>	<b>735.1</b>	<b>699.5</b>	<b>689.3</b>

Custom receipts (in 1,000 francs): 1980, 3,170,700; 1981, 3,243,631; 1982, 3,243,000; 1983, 3,382,000; 1984, 3,393,000; 1985, 3,449,000.

Total trade between Switzerland (including Liechtenstein) and UK for calendar years (British Department of Trade, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,490,593	2,371,090	2,989,112	3,298,009	3,840,643
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,549,469	1,306,757	1,575,247	1,835,851	1,854,918



Federal Customs Office, *Statistique mensuelle du commerce extérieur de la Suisse*. From 1925.—*Statistique annuelle du commerce extérieur de la Suisse*. 2 vols. From 1840.—*Rapport annuel de la statistique du commerce Suisse*. From 1889

**Tourism.** Tourism is an important industry. In 1987, overnight stays in hotels and sanatoria were 35,595,000 and in other accommodation 39,070,000 (34,581,000 by foreign visitors).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1983) 70,848 km of main roads, including 1,300 km of 'national roads' for motor cars only. Motor vehicles, as at 30 Sept. 1987, numbered 3,392,000, including 2,733,000 private cars, 218,000 trucks, 240,000 motor cycles, 11,000 buses and 190,000 commercial and agricultural vehicles.

**Railways.** Railway history in Switzerland begins in 1847. In 1986 the length of the general traffic railways was 5,034 km, and of special lines (funiculars etc.), 814 km. The operating receipts of general traffic lines amounted to (1985) 4,604,100,000 francs; operating expenses, 5,380,600,000 francs. Traffic (1986) was 45.1 m. tonnes and 228.5 m. passengers.

There are many privately-owned lines, the most important of which are the Bern–Lötschberg–Simplon (115 km) and Rhaetian (363 km) networks.

**Aviation.** In 1985 Swiss aviation on domestic and international routes carried 7,498,000 passengers.

The air transport organization Swissair (founded in 1931) in 1982 carried 189,139 tonnes of freight and 7,168,567 passengers. Swissair had a capital of 422 m. francs on 15 May 1977. Its fleet consisted of 53 aircraft in Jan. 1983.

**Shipping.** A merchant marine was created by a decree of the Swiss Government dated 9 April 1941, the place of registry of its vessels being Basel. In 1985 it consisted of 39 vessels with a total of 225,434 GRT. In 1981, 8,277,359 tonnes of goods were handled in the port of Basel.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1985 there were 3,880 post offices. On 1 Jan. 1985 there were 5,435,800 telephones, all integrated in one dial system.

Wireless communication is furnished by 3 main medium-wave stations and 1 short-wave station. There are 3 television studios and more than 100 transmitters. TV programmes are financed by licence fees and advertisements. Advertisements are limited to 15 minutes each day. All stations are operated by the Federal Post, Telephone and Telegraph (PTT) services. Radio-telegraph circuits are operated by Radio Suisse SA, radio-telephone circuits by the PTT. Radio licences, 1985, 2,467,200; television licences, 2,186,500.

The total expenditure of the PTT in 1985 was 7,812.4 m. francs, the total gross receipts 8,098.3 m. francs.

**Cinemas** (1986). There were 428 cinemas with a seating capacity of 122,000.

**Newspapers** (1985). The number of daily newspapers was estimated to be 399.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Federal Tribunal (*Bundes-Gericht*), which sits at Lausanne, consists of 26–28 members, with 11–13 supplementary judges, appointed by the Federal Assembly for 6 years and eligible for re-election; the President and Vice-President serve for 2 years and cannot be re-elected. The President has a salary of 170,000 francs a year, and the other members 158,000 francs. The Tribunal has original and final jurisdiction in suits between the Confederation and cantons; between cantons and cantons; between the Confederation or cantons and corporations or individuals, the value in dispute being not less than 8,000 francs; between parties who refer their case to it, the value in dispute being at least 20,000 francs; in such suits as the constitution or legislation of cantons places within its authority; and in many classes of railway suits. It is a court of appeal against decisions of other

federal authorities, and of cantonal authorities applying federal laws. The Tribunal also tries persons accused of treason or other offences against the Confederation. For this purpose it is divided into 4 chambers: Chamber of Accusation, Criminal Chamber (*Cour d'Assises*), Federal Penal Court and Court of Cassation. The jurors who serve in the Assize Courts are elected by the people, and are paid 100 francs a day when serving.

On 3 July 1938 the Swiss electorate accepted a new federal penal code, to take the place of the separate cantonal penal codes. The new code, which abolished capital punishment, came into force on 1 Jan. 1942.

**Religion.** There is complete and absolute liberty of conscience and of creed. No one is bound to pay taxes specially appropriated to defraying the expenses of a creed to which he does not belong. No bishoprics can be created on Swiss territory without the approbation of the Confederation.

According to the census of 1 Dec. 1980 Roman Catholics numbered 3,030,069 (47.6%) of the population; Protestants, 2,822,266 (44.3%) and others, 513,625 (8.1%). In 1960 Protestants were in a majority in 10 of the cantons and Catholics in 12. Of the more populous cantons, Zürich, Bern, Vaud, Neuchâtel and Basel (town and land) were mainly Protestant, while Luzern, Fribourg, Ticino, Valais and the Forest Cantons are mainly Catholic. The Roman Catholics are under 6 Bishops, viz., of Basel (resident at Solothurn), Chur, St Gallen, Lugano, Lausanne–Geneva–Fribourg (resident at Fribourg) and Sitten (Sion), all of them immediately subject to the Holy See. The Old Catholics have a theological faculty at the university of Bern.

**Education.** Education is administered by the cantons and is compulsory. Before the year 1848 most of the cantons had organized a system of primary schools, and since that year elementary education has steadily advanced. In 1874 it was made obligatory for the whole country (the school age varying in the different cantons) and placed under the civil authority. In some cantons the cost falls almost entirely on the communes, in others it is divided between the canton and communes. In all the cantons primary instruction is free. In 1987–88 there were 132,879 pupils in nursery schools and 375,302 in primary schools.

In most cantons there are also secondary schools for youths of from 12 to 15. gymnasia, higher schools for girls, teachers' seminaries, commercial and administrative schools, trade schools, art schools, technical schools, schools for the instruction of girls in domestic economy and other subjects, agricultural schools, schools for horticulture, for viticulture, for arboriculture and for dairy management. There are also institutions for the blind, the deaf and dumb and feeble-minded. In 1987–88 there were 313,594 pupils in secondary schools.

There are 7 universities in Switzerland. These universities are organized on the model of those of Germany, governed by a rector and a senate, and divided into faculties (theology, jurisprudence, philosophy, medicine, etc.). In 1986–87 the Federal Institute of Technology at Zürich (founded in 1855) had 632 teachers and 10,263 matriculated students; the Federal Institute of Technology at Lausanne, independent of the university since 1946, had 149 teachers and 3,170 students; the St Gall School of Economics and Social Sciences, founded in 1899, had 215 teachers and 3,198 matriculated students.

University statistics in the winter of 1986–87:

	<i>Theology</i>	<i>Humanities etc</i>	<i>Law</i>	<i>Economics</i>	<i>Medicine</i>	<i>Science</i>	<i>Teaching staff (1985–86)</i>
Basel (1460)	223	1,687	881	848	1,761	1,275	625
Zürich (1523 & 1833)	358	7,463	3,138	2,239	3,354	2,101	1,661
Bern (1528 & 1834)	374	2,696	1,657	848	1,798	1,628	723
Genève (1559 <sup>1</sup> & 1873 <sup>1</sup> )	130	4,578	995	2,411	1,506	1,645	913
Lausanne (1537 <sup>1</sup> & 1890 <sup>2</sup> )	85	1,678	889	1,405	1,503	875	476
Fribourg (1889)	504	1,999	995	1,129	225	506	548
Neuchâtel (1866 & 1909)	52	870	310	444	57	524	240

<sup>1</sup> Founded as an academy.

<sup>2</sup> Reorganized as a university.

These numbers are exclusive of 'visitors', but inclusive of women students. In 1985-86 there were 74,806 students attending universities.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 18,366 doctors, 37,360 (1980) nurses, 4,700 dentists and 10,700 physiotherapists. There were (1986) 432 hospitals and 1,389 pharmacies.

**Social Security.** The Federal Insurance Law against illness and accident, of 13 June 1911, entitles all Swiss citizens to insurance against illness; foreigners may be admitted to the benefits. Compulsory insurance against illness does not exist as yet, but cantons and communities are entitled to declare insurance obligatory for certain classes or to establish public benefit (sick fund) associations, and to make employers responsible for the payment of the premiums of their employees.

Unemployment insurance is based since 13 June 1976 upon a Constitution amendment which stipulates unemployment insurance as compulsory for all wage-earners.

Insurance against accident is compulsory for all officials, employees and workmen of all the factories, trades, etc., which are under the federal liability law.

On 6 July 1947 a federal law was accepted by a referendum, providing compulsory old age and widows and widowers insurance for the whole population, as from 1 Jan. 1948. In March 1985 the number of normal pensioners was 1,033,000.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Switzerland in Great Britain (16-18 Montagu Pl., London, W1H 2BQ)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Switzerland (Thunstrasse 50, 3005 Bern)

*Ambassador:* Christopher Long, CMG.

Of Switzerland in the USA (2900 Cathedral Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Eduard Brunner.

Of the USA in Switzerland (Jubiläumstrasse 93, 3005, Bern)

*Ambassador:* Joseph Gildenhorn.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Bureau fédéral de statistique (Hallwylstr. 15, 3003 Bern) was established in 1860. *Director:* Carlo Malaguerra. Its principal publications are:

*Annuaire statistique de la Suisse.* Bâle. From 1891

*Bibliographie Suisse de statistique et d'économie politique.* Annual, from 1937

*Reflets de l'économie* (monthly)

Swiss Confederation

*Annuaire; Budget; Message du Budget; Compte d'Etat* (annual) *Feuille Fédérale; Recueil des Lois fédérales* (weekly)

*Recueil systématique des lois et ordonnances, 1848-1947* (in German, French and Italian). Bern, 1951

*Sammlung der Bundes- und Kantonsverfassungen* (in German, French and Italian). Bern, 1937

Federal Department of Economics

*La vie économique* (and supplements). Monthly. From 1928

*Législation sociale de la Suisse.* Annual, from 1928

McPhee, J., *The Swiss Army.* London, 1985

Schwarz, U., *The Eye of the Hurricane: Switzerland in World War Two.* Boulder, 1980

Wildblood, R., *What makes Switzerland tick?* London, 1988

*National Library:* Bibliothèque Nationale Suisse, Hallwylstr. 15, 3003, Bern. *Director:* F. G. Maier.



# SYRIA

Capital: Damascus

Population: 11.4m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$2,000 (1984)

## al-Jumhuriya al-Arabya as-Suriya

**HISTORY.** For the history of Syria from 1920 to 1946 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1957, pp. 1408 f. Complete independence was achieved on 12 Apr. 1946. Syria merged with Egypt to form the United Arab Republic from 2 Feb. 1958 until 29 Sept. 1961, when independence was resumed following a *coup* the previous day. Lieut.-Gen. Hafez al-Assad became Prime Minister following the fifth *coup* of that decade on 13 Nov. 1970, and assumed the Presidency on 22 Feb. 1971.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Syria is bounded by the Mediterranean and the Lebanese Republic on the west, by Israel and Jordan on the south, by Iraq on the east and by Turkey on the north. The frontier between Syria and Turkey (Nisibim-Jeziret ibn Omar) was settled by the Franco-Turkish agreement of 22 June 1929.

The area of Syria is 185,180 sq. km (71,498 sq. miles), of which 35,000 sq. km have been surveyed. The census of 1981 gave a total population of 9,050,204. Estimate (1988) 11.4m. of whom 50% were urban.

The areas and populations (1981 Census) of the 14 *mohafaza* (districts) are:

	Sq. km	1981 Census		Sq. km	1981 Census
City of Damascus	105	1,112,214	Idlib	6,097	579,581
Dimashq (Damascus)	18,032	917,364	Hasakah	23,334	669,887
Aleppo	18,500	1,878,701	Raqqa	19,616	348,383
Homs	42,223	812,517	Suwaydá	5,550	199,114
Hama	8,883	736,412	Dará	3,730	362,969
Lattakia	2,297	554,384	Tartous	1,892	443,290
Dayr az-Zawr	33,060	409,130	Qunaytirah	1,861	26,258

Principal towns (census 1981), Damascus, 1,251,028; Aleppo, 976,727; Homs, 354,508; Lattakia, 196,791; Hama, 176,640.

Arabic is the official language, spoken by 89% of the population, while 6% speak Kurdish (chiefly Hasakah governorate), 3% Armenian and 2% other languages.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is Mediterranean in type, with mild wet winters and dry, hot summers, though there are variations in temperatures and rainfall between the coastal regions and the interior, which even includes desert conditions. The more mountainous parts are subject to snowfall. Damascus. Jan. 45°F (7°C), July 81°F (27°C). Annual rainfall 9" (225 mm). Aleppo. Jan. 43°F (6.1°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 16" (401 mm). Homs. Jan. 45°F (7.2°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 12" (300 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was approved by plebiscite on 12 March 1973 and promulgated on 14 March. It confirmed the Arab Socialist Renaissance (*Ba'ath*) Party, in power since 1963, as the 'leading party in the State and society'. Legislative power is held by a 195-member People's Council, elected for a 4-year term. At the latest elections on 10 Nov. 1981, all seats were won by the National Progressive Front, a coalition of the Ba'ath Party and 4 smaller ones.

*President:* Lieut.-Gen. Hafez al-Assad (re-elected for further 7-year terms in 1978 and 1985).

*First Vice-President:* Abdul Halim Khaddam (*Political and Foreign Affairs*).

*Second Vice-President:* Rifaat al-Assad (*Defence and Security*).

*Third Vice-President:* Mohammed Zuhair Mashraq (*Party Affairs*).

*Prime Minister:* Mahmoud Zubi.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, black, with 2 green stars on the white stripe.

**DEFENCE.** Military service is compulsory for a period of 30 months.

**Army.** The Army is organized into 5 armoured and 3 mechanized divisions, 1 special forces division, 7 independent special forces regiments, 2 artillery, 3 surface-to-surface missile brigades and 9 surface-to-air missile battalions. Strength (1989) about 300,000 (including 130,000 conscripts) and reserves 50,000. There are a further 25,000 men in paramilitary forces. Equipment includes 2,100 T-54/-55, 1,000 T-62 and 950 T-72/-72M main battle tanks.

**Navy.** The Navy includes 3 old *ex*-Soviet diesel-powered patrol submarines (and another used as a battery changing platform), 2 small frigates, 12 fast missile boats, 3 minesweepers, 2 coastal minesweepers, 4 inshore minesweepers, 6 coastal patrol craft and 1 diving ship (all *ex*-Soviet). Personnel in 1989 totalled 4,000 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, including Air Defence Command, was believed (1989) to have about 40,000 personnel and over 500 first-line jet combat aircraft, made up of about 200 MiG-21, 80 MiG-23 and 30 MiG-25 supersonic interceptors, 60 MiG-23, 40 Su-7, 60 Su-22 and 50 MiG-17 fighter-bombers, plus some MiG-25 reconnaissance aircraft. Sixty MiG-29 interceptors are being delivered by the USSR. Training units have Spanish-built Flamingo piston-engined primary trainers and Czechoslovakian L-29 Delfin and L-39 jet basic trainers. There are also transport units with Il-76, An-12, An-24/26, Il-14 and other types, and helicopter units with Soviet-built Ka-25s, Mi-6s, Mi-8s, Mi-14s and Mi-24 gunships, and French-built Gazelles. 'Guideline', 'Goa', 'Gainful' and 'Gaskin' surface-to-air missiles are widely deployed in Syria by Air Defence Command, and 'Gammon' long-range surface-to-air missiles in Lebanon.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Syria is a member of UN and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The total investment envisaged in the fifth 5-year plan (1981-85) £Syr.101,493m.

**Budget.** The ordinary budget for the calendar year 1986 provides for expenditure of £Syr.43,841m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the Syrian *pound*, divided into 100 *piastres*. In March 1989, £1 = £Syr.36.29; US\$1 = £Syr.21.08.

**Banking.** The Central Bank has the sole right of issuing currency. Other banks were nationalized in March 1963, namely, the Omayya Bank and its subsidiary, the Popular Mortgage Bank; the Orient Arab Bank; the Bank of Syria and Overseas; the Agricultural Bank; the Arab World Bank. Number of branches, 1973: Central Bank of Syria, 9; Commercial Bank of Syria, 22; Industrial Bank, 3; Agricultural Co-operative Bank, 50; Real Estate Bank, 3; Bank of Popular Discount, 27.

**Weights and Measures.** A decree dated 22 Aug. 1935 makes the use of the metric system legal and obligatory throughout the whole of the country. In outlying districts the former weights and measures may still be in use. They are: 1 *okiya* = 0.47 lb.; 6 *okiyas* = 1 *oke* = 2.82 lb.; 2 *okes* = 1 *rottol* = 5.64 lb.; 200 *okes* = 1 *kantar*.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1987) 7,032m. kwh.

**Oil.** A branch of the Iraq Petroleum Co.'s oil pipeline from Kirkuk crosses Syria

between Makaleb in the east and Nahr el Kebir valley in the west. The Iraq Petroleum Co. has constructed a new pipeline from Kirkuk to the small fishing port of Banias (south of Lattakia), which came into use in April 1952; the Trans-Arabian Pipeline Co.'s line to Sidon crosses southern Syria. Crude oil production (1988) 13.5m. tonnes. Reserves (1983) 1,521m. bbls.

**Gas.** Gas reserves (1982) 700,000m. cubic ft. Production (1983) 75.86m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Phosphate deposits have been discovered at two places near al-Shargiya and at Khneifis. Production, 1983, 1.23m. tonnes; other minerals were salt, 88,000 tonnes and gypsum 189,000 tonnes. There are indications of lead, copper, antimony, nickel, chrome and other minerals widely distributed. Sodium chloride and bitumen deposits are being worked.

**Agriculture.** In 1987, 129,000 hectares were under cotton, 1,183,000 hectares under wheat and 1,570,000 hectares under barley. The cultivable area in 1987 was 6,133,000 hectares, and there were 534,000 hectares of forest and 8,277,000 hectares of steppe and pasture.

Production of principal crops, 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Wheat, 1,656; barley, 576; cotton, 351; olives, 221; lentils, 89; millet, 14; sugar-beet, 457.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 710,000; asses, 184,000; sheep, 12.7m.; goats, 1.6m.; poultry, 12.6m.

**Fisheries.** The total catch in 1983 was 3,777 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The most important industries are flour, oils, soap, cement, tanning, tobacco, textiles, knitwear, glassware, spinning, sugar, margarine, hosiery, footwear and brassware. Industrial production in 1980 included (in 1,000 tonnes): Woollen fabrics, 1,200; cement, 2,310; sugar, 141; salt, 111; cotton yarn, 25.2; manufactured tobacco, 9.9.

**Commerce.** Trade in calendar years in £Syr.1 m. was as follows:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	16,154	15,570	10,709	27,915
Exports	7,275	6,427	5,199	15,192

In 1984 imports came from Iran (22.7%), Libya (7.7%), Federal Germany (5.9%), France (5.1%), Italy (4.6%) and included crude oil and power generating machinery. Exports went to Romania (28.2%), Italy (19.8%), USSR (11.5%) and France (12.2%) and included petroleum products (63.1%).

Total trade between Syria and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	59,245	78,575	31,298	24,937	36,100
Exports and re-exports from UK	91,909	80,901	55,511	34,053	24,647

**Tourism.** In 1986, there were 1.16m. visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1980 there were 13,000 km of asphalted roads, 1,300 km of macadam non-asphalted road and 6,000 km of earth roads. The first-class roads are capable of carrying all types of modern motor transport and are usable all the year round, while the second-class roads are usable during the dry season only, *i.e.*, for about 9 months. The motor vehicles registered in 1981 were 93,000 motor cycles, 9,935 buses, 75,200 cars and 93,300 goods vehicles.

**Railways.** Network totals 1,686 km of 1,435 mm gauge (Syrian Railways) and 246 km of 1,050 mm gauge (Hedjaz-Syrian Railway). In 1986 the Syrian Railways network carried 3.3m. passengers and 5.1m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** In 1980, 12,557 aircraft arrived at Damascus and Aleppo airports, disembarking 559,430 passengers.



**Shipping.** The amount of cargo discharged in 1980 was 2.6m. tons and the amount loaded 430,000 tons.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones (1983), 468,922; of these, 152,203 were in Damascus and 71,135 in Aleppo. There were 2m. radio sets in 1985 and 400,000 television receivers.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 3 national daily newspapers in Damascus; other dailies and periodicals appear in Hama, Homs, Aleppo and Lattakia.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Syrian law is based on both Islamic and French jurisprudence. There are 2 courts of first instance in each district, one for civil and 1 for criminal cases. There is also a Summary Court in each sub-district, under Justices of the Peace. There is a Court of Appeal in the capital of each governorate, with a Court of Cassation in Damascus.

**Religion.** The population is composed 90% of Sunni Moslems and there are also Shiites and Ismailis. There are also Druzes and Alawites. Christians include Greek Orthodox, Greek Catholics, Armenian Orthodox, Syrian Orthodox, Armenian Catholics, Protestants, Maronites, Syrian Catholics, Latins, Nestorians and Assyrians. There are also Jews and Yezides.

**Education.** The Syrian University was founded in 1924, although the faculties of law and of medicine had existed previously. In 1986 there were 4 universities with 135,191 students.

In 1985–86 there were 9,039 primary schools with 78,416 teachers and 2,029,752 pupils; secondary and intermediate schools, with 32,496 teachers and 814,917 pupils; vocational and teacher-training schools had 7,340 teachers and 66,858 pupils; 42 higher education establishments had 135,191 students.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 12,382 hospital beds (1 per 857 persons) in 202 hospitals; there were also 6,768 doctors, 2,176 dentists, 2,786 pharmacists, 2,372 midwives and 7,923 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Syria in the USA (2215 Wyoming Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Chargé d'Affaires:* Bushra Kanafani.

Of the USA in Syria (Abu Rumaneh, Al Mansur St., Damascus)  
*Ambassador:* William L. Eagleton, Jr.

Of Syria to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Diplomatic relations with Syria were broken off by the UK on 31 Oct. 1986.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* There is a Central Statistics Bureau affiliated to the Council of Ministers, Damascus. It publishes a monthly summary and an annual Statistical Abstract (in Arabic and English).

Abd-Allah, U. F., *The Islamic Struggle in Syria*. Berkeley, 1983

Barthélemy, A., *Dictionnaire arabe-français. Dialectes de Syrie*. 4 vols. Paris, 1935–50

Devlin, J. F., *Syria: Modern State in an Ancient Land*. Boulder, 1983

Maoz, M. and Yaniv, A., *Syria under Assad*. New York, 1986

Seale, P., *The Struggle for Syria*. London, 1986.—*Asad of Syria: The Struggle for the Middle East*. London, 1988

Secombe, I. J., *Syria*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

# TANZANIA

*Capital:* Dodoma

*Population:* 23.2m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$240 (1986)

## Jamhuri ya Muungano wa Tanzania

**HISTORY.** German East Africa was occupied by German colonialists from 1884 and placed under the protection of the German Empire in 1891. It was conquered in the First World War and subsequently divided between the British and Belgians. The latter received the territories of Ruanda and Urundi and the British the remainder, except for the Kionga triangle, which went to Portugal. The country was administered as a League of Nations mandate until 1946 and then as a UN trusteeship territory until 9 Dec. 1961.

Tanganyika achieved responsible government in Sept. 1960 and full self-government on 1 May 1961. On 9 Dec. 1961 Tanganyika became a sovereign independent member state of the Commonwealth of Nations. It adopted a republican form of government on 9 Dec. 1962. For history from the end of the 17th century until 1884 see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK* 1982-83, p. 1170.

On 24 June 1963 Zanzibar became an internal self-governing state and on 9 Dec. 1963 she became independent. On 24 June 1963 the Legislative Council was replaced by a National Assembly.

On 12 Jan. 1964 the sultanate was overthrown and the sultan sent into exile by a revolt of the Afro-Shirazi Party leaders who established the People's Republic of Zanzibar.

On 26 April 1964 Tanganyika, Zanzibar and Pemba combined to form the United Republic of Tanganyika and Zanzibar (named Tanzania on 29 Oct.).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tanzania is bounded north-east by Kenya, north by Lake Victoria and Uganda, north-west by Rwanda and Burundi, west by Lake Tanganyika, south-west by Zambia and Malaŵi and south by Mozambique. Total area 945,037 sq. km (364,881 sq. miles including the offshore islands of Zanzibar (1,660 sq. km) and Pemba (984 sq. km) and inland water surfaces (59,050 sq. km)). The census of Aug. 1978 gave 17,551,925 for the United Republic, of which 17,076,270 were counted in mainland Tanzania and 475,655 in Zanzibar and Pemba. Estimate (1987) 23.2m. There were also (1987) 133,951 refugees living in Tanzania.

The chief towns (1978 census populations) are Dar es Salaam, the chief port and former capital (757,346), Zanzibar Town (110,669), Mwanza (110,611), Dodoma, the capital (45,703), Tanga (103,409), Arusha (55,281), Mbeya (76,606), Morogoro (61,890), Mtwara (48,510), Tabora (67,392), Iringa (57,182), and Kigoma (50,044).

The United Republic is divided into 25 administrative regions of which 20 are in mainland Tanzania, 3 in Zanzibar and 2 in Pemba. The 1985 estimated population of the islands was 571,000, of which 45% (256,950) were in Pemba and 55% (314,050) in Zanzibar.

The estimated populations of the 20 mainland regions were as follows in 1985:

Arusha	1,183,000	Lindi	604,000	Rukwa	603,000
Dar es Salaam	1,394,000	Mara	862,000	Ruvuma	691,000
Dodoma	1,171,000	Mbeya	1,335,000	Shinyanga	1,662,000
Iringa	1,100,000	Morogoro	1,134,000	Singida	730,000
Kagera	1,298,000	Mtwara	878,000	Tabora	1,089,000
Kigoma	782,000	Mwanza	1,736,000	Tanga	1,236,000
Kilimanjaro	1,093,000	Pwani	578,000		

Kiswahili is the national language and English is the official language.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is very varied and is controlled very largely by altitude and distance from the sea. There are three climatic zones: the hot and humid coast,

the drier central plateau with seasonal variations of temperature, and the semi-temperate mountains. Dodoma. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 23" (572 mm). Dar es Salaam. Jan. 82°F (27.8°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,064 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A permanent Constitution was approved in April 1977. The country is a one-party state. The Tanganyika African National Union and the Afro-Shirazi Party in Zanzibar merged into one revolutionary party, *Chama cha Mapinduzi*, in Feb. 1977.

The President of the United Republic is head of state, chairman of the party and commander-in-chief of the armed forces. The second vice-president is head of the executive in Zanzibar. The Prime Minister and first vice-president is also the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

According to the Constitution of 1977, as amended in Oct. 1984, the National Assembly is composed of a total of 244 members: 169 Members of Parliament elected from the Constituencies (119 from the mainland and 50 from Zanzibar); 15 National Members elected by the National Assembly; 15 women members elected by the National Assembly, 5 from Zanzibar; 5 members elected by the House of Representatives in Zanzibar; 25 ex-officio Members (20 Regional Commissioners from the mainland and 5 from Zanzibar) and 15 Nominated Members (by the President), 5 from Zanzibar.

In Dec. 1979 a separate Constitution for Zanzibar was approved. Although at present (1981) under the same Constitution as Tanzania, Zanzibar has, in fact, been ruled by decree since 1964.

The Government was in Nov. 1988 composed as follows:

*President of the United Republic:* Ndugu Ali Hassan Mwinyi (sworn in 5 Nov. 1985 for 5-year term).

*Prime Minister and First Vice President:* Joseph S. Warioba.

*President of Zanzibar and Second Vice President:* Idris A. Wakil. *Without Portfolio:* Rashidi Kawawa, Getrude Mongella. *Deputy Prime Minister, Defence and National Service:* Salim Ahmed Salim. *Finance, Economic Affairs and Planning:* Cleopa D. Msuya. *Foreign Affairs:* Benjamin Mkapa. *Agriculture and Livestock Development:* Jackson Makwetta. *Local Government, Co-operatives and Marketing:* Paul Bomani. *Communications and Works:* Mustafa Nyang'anyi. *Labour and Manpower Development:* Christian Kisanji. *Home Affairs:* Muhiddin Kimario. *Education:* Kighoma Malima. *Mineral Resources and Energy:* Al Noor Kassum. *Lands, Natural Resources and Tourism:* Arcado Ntagazwa. *Industries and Trade:* Joseph Rwegasira. *Health and Social Welfare:* Dr Aaron Chiduo. *Attorney General and Justice:* Damian Lubuva. *Water:* Dr Pius Ng'wandu. *Community Development, Culture, Youth and Sports:* Fatma Saidi Ali. There are 6 Ministers of State and 10 Deputy Ministers.

*National flag:* Divided diagonally green, black, blue, with the black strip edged in yellow.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 8 infantry, 1 tank brigade; 2 artillery, 2 anti-aircraft, 2 mortar, 1 surface-to-air missile, 2 anti-tank and 2 signals battalions. Equipment includes 30 Chinese Type-59 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 38,350. There is also a Citizen's Militia of 100,000 men.

**Navy.** There are 6 ex-Chinese fast gunboats, 4 ex-GDR gunboats, 4 ex-Chinese fast torpedo hydrofoil boats, 4 ex-North Korean patrol craft, 4 ex-Chinese coastal patrol boats, 1 survey launch, 1 research vessel and 2 ex-Chinese minor landing craft. Personnel in 1989 totalled some 700.

**Air Force.** The Tanzanian People's Defence Force Air Wing was built up initially with the help of Canada, but combat equipment has been acquired from China. Personnel totalled about 1,000 in 1988, with about 10 F-7 (MiG-21), 10 F-6 (MiG-19) and 8 F-4 (MiG-17) jet fighters; 1 F28 Fellowship VIP transport; 5



Buffalo twin-engined STOL transports; 3 HS 748 turboprop transports; 2 Cessna 404 and 6 Cessna 310 liaison aircraft; 4 Agusta-Bell AB.205 transport helicopters, and 2 JetRanger and 2 Bell 47G light helicopters; and Piper Cherokee and FT-2 (Chinese-built MiG-15 UTI) trainers.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Tanzania is a member of UN, OAU, the Commonwealth, Non-Aligned Movement and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fourth 5-year development (1981-86) plan envisaged investment of Sh. 40,200m. and a growth rate of 6%.

**Budget.** In 1988-89 revenue US\$627m., capital expenditure US\$284m. and recurrent expenditure US\$903m.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *Tanzanian shilling* divided into 100 cents. The Tanzanian coinage has denominations of 5, 10, 20, 50 cents, 1 Sh., 5 Sh., 20 Sh. and 1,500 Sh.; notes, 10 Sh., 20 Sh., 50 Sh., 100 Sh. and 200 Sh. In March 1989, £1 = Sh. 225.25; US\$ = Sh. 130.88.

**Banking.** On 14 June 1966 the central bank called the Bank of Tanzania, with a government-owned capital of Sh. 20m., began operations.

On 6 Feb. 1967 all commercial banks with the exception of National Co-operative Banks were nationalized and their interests vested in the National Bank of Commerce on the mainland and the Peoples' Bank in Zanzibar.

**Weights.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** A 21 mw hydro-electric power-station on the Pangani River was commissioned in 1964. The first phase of the Kidatu power-station in Morogoro region with an installed capacity of 100 mw was commissioned in 1975. The second phase with an additional 100 mw was commissioned in 1981. The third phase (Mtera power-station) with a capacity of 80 mw is scheduled for completion in 1988. Production (1986) 830m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** Production (1984): Diamonds, 53,195 grammes; gold, 96,530 grammes; salt, 29,907 tonnes; gemstones, 38,884 kg. Large deposits of coal and tin exist but mining is on a small scale. Exploration is going on to establish economic deposits of copper, cobalt and nickel, and feasibility studies to exploit iron ore deposits in south-western Tanzania. Work is under way to utilize natural gas deposits at Songo Songo off the coast south of Dar es Salaam.

**Agriculture.** Production of main agricultural crops in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes) was: Sisal, 22; seed cotton, 147; sugar-cane, 1,075; coffee, 51; tobacco, 18; maize, 2,359; wheat, 72; cashew nuts, 20; citrus, 32. Production of sisal has been declining since 1967. The Tanganyika Sisal Corporation has embarked on a diversification programme by introducing various new crops. Crops already planned are cardamom, beans, cashew nuts, citrus, cocoa, coconuts, cotton, maize and timber. Cattle ranching, dairying and twine spinning have also been introduced.

Zanzibar provides the greater part of the world's supply of cloves, which account for over 90% of foreign earnings. There are about 40,000 hectares under cloves with about 1.5m. trees; five-sixths of the clove output is produced on Pemba. The clove industry is undergoing a rehabilitation programme to increase production, which in 1980-81 was 7,497 tons; 1984-85, over 8,700 tons.

A 10-year programme to rehabilitate the coconut industry started in 1980. By 1985 over 23m. trees were under plantation on the mainland and Zanzibar. Chillies, cocoa, limes, other tropical fruits and coil tobacco are also cultivated. The chief food crops are rice, bananas, cassava, pulses, maize and sorghum.

**Livestock** (1987, including Zanzibar): 14.5m. cattle, 4.5m. sheep, 6.55m. goats, 32m. poultry.

**Forestry.** Total forested land 43m. hectares. Total production (1983) 114,900 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** A Fisheries Development Co. is catching sardines and tuna for export. Catch (1983) 237,148 tonnes of which, inland waters, 202.662 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industry is limited and is mainly textiles, petroleum and chemical products, food processing, tobacco, brewing and paper manufacturing.

**Commerce.** Total trade (in Sh. 1m.):

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	7,781	8,877	11,953	17,962	30,270	57,971
Exports	4,117	4,138	5,661	5,937	10,963	17,642

Imports and exports (in Tanzanian Sh. 1m.), by country, 1987:

Country	Imports	Exports	Country	Imports	Exports
Bahrain	1,279.6	23.0	India	1,181.3	1,119.7
Belgium	1,056.0	359.6	Italy	5,195.9	609.8
China	557.4	18.8	Japan	6,533.9	726.1
Denmark	2,813.6	15.5	Netherlands	2,842.2	1,426.5
Federal Republic of Germany	7,217.9	2,267.1	Singapore	444.3	590.5
			Thailand	3.8	119.3

Major export items 1987 (in Sh. 1m.): Coffee, 5,792.6; cotton, 2,831.8; sisal, 321.7; cloves, 264.7; tea, 825.4; tobacco, 864.2; cashew nuts, 439; diamonds, 576.9.

Total trade between Tanzania and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	46,640	40,268	26,400	26,386
Exports and re-exports from UK	88,622	62,869	91,874	88,686

**Tourism.** In 1985 about 59,000 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1988 there were 82,000 km of roads and (1983) 43,248 cars and 12,579 licensed commercial vehicles of which 11,290 were trucks and 1,289 buses.

**Railways.** On 23 Sept. 1977 the independent Tanzanian Railway Corporation was formed following the break-up of the East African Railways administration. The network totals 2,600 km (metre-gauge), excluding the Tan-Zam Railway 969 km in Tanzania (1,067 mm gauge) operated by a separate administration. In 1986, the state railway carried 3m. passengers and 989,000 tonnes of freight while the Tan-Zam Railway carried 1m. tonnes of freight and 1.2m. passengers.

**Aviation.** There are 53 aerodromes and landing strips maintained or licensed by Government; of these, 2 are of international standards category (Dar es Salaam and Kilimanjaro) and 18 are suitable for Dakotas. Air Tanzania Corporation provide regular and frequent services to all the more important towns within the territory and to Mozambique, Zambia, Seychelles, Comoro, Rwanda, Burundi and Madagascar.

There is an all-weather landing-ground in Zanzibar and a smaller all-weather landing-ground in Pemba.

**Shipping.** In 1980 there were 1,296 ships of 3,176,000 NRT.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1988 there were 63,000 direct telephone lines and 1,400 telex lines. There are 2 broadcasting stations (1 for mainland Tanzania and 1 for Zanzibar) and colour television operates in Zanzibar. In 1984 there were 9,000 television receivers (on Zanzibar only) and 2m. radio receivers.

**Newspapers** (1985). There were 3 dailies, 2 weeklies and several monthly magazines.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Judiciary is independent in both judicial and administrative matters and is composed of a 4-tier system of Courts: Primary Courts; District and Resident Magistrates' Courts; the High Court and the Court of Appeal. The Chief Justice is head of the Court of Appeal and the Judiciary Department. The Court's main registry is at Dar es Salaam; its jurisdiction includes Zanzibar. The Principal Judge is head of the High Court, also headquartered at Dar es Salaam, which has resident judges at 7 regional centres.

**Religion.** In 1984 some 40% were Christian, including Roman Catholics under the Archbishops of Dar es Salaam and Tabora, Anglicans under the Archbishop of Tanzania, and Lutherans. Moslems amount to 33%, but reach 66% in the coastal towns; Zanzibar is 96% Moslem and 4% Hindu. Some 23% follow traditional religions.

**Education.** In 1987 there were 10,302 primary schools with 3,169,202 pupils, and 288 (1988) secondary schools (175 private) with 127,703 students.

Technical and vocational education is provided at several secondary and technical schools and at the Dar es Salaam Technical College.

There were, in 1987, 63 teachers' colleges, including the college at Chang'ombe for secondary-school teachers, with 11,667 students.

The University of Dar es Salaam, independent since 1970, has faculties of law, arts, social sciences, medicine, engineering, commerce and management. Sokoine University of Agriculture, established in 1984, has faculties of agriculture, forestry and veterinary medicine. The total number of students in both universities was 3,395 in 1987.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 1,065 doctors and 152 hospitals with 22,800 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Tanzania in Great Britain (43 Hertford St., London, W1)

*High Commissioner:* Anthony Balthazar Nyakyi.

Of Great Britain in Tanzania (Hifadhi Hse., Samora Ave., Dar es Salaam)

*High Commissioner:* Colin H. Imray, CMG.

Of Tanzania in the USA (2139 R. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Asterius M. Hyera.

Of the USA in Tanzania (36 Laibon Rd., Dar es Salaam)

*Ambassador:* Donald Petterson.

Of Tanzania to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Wilbert K. Chagula.

## Further Reading

*Atlas of Tanganyika.* 3rd ed. Dar es Salaam, 1956

*Tanganyika Notes and Records.* Tanganyika Society, Dar es Salaam. (Twice yearly, from 1936) *The Economic Development of Tanganyika. Report . . . by the International Bank.*

Johns Hopkins Univ. Press and OUP, 1961

Jany, S. G., *A History of Zanzibar.* Nairobi, 1970

Coulson, A., *Tanzania: A Political Economy.* OUP, 1982

Darch, C., *Tanzania.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985

Hood, M., (ed.) *Tanzania and Nyerere.* London, 1988

Nyerere, J., *Freedom and Development.* New York, 1976

Resnick, I. N., *The Long Transition: Building Socialism in Tanzania.* New York and London, 1981

Yeager, R., *Tanzania: An African Experiment.* Aldershot, 1982



# THAILAND

Capital: Bangkok  
Population: 53.9m. (1987)  
GNP per capita: US\$810 (1986)

## Prathes Thai, or Muang-Thai

**HISTORY.** Until 24 June 1932 Siam was an absolute monarchy. On that date a *coup d'état* was effected and a Provisional Constitution Act was promulgated on 27 June. This was replaced by the constitution of 10 Dec. 1932, which in turn was superseded by new constitutions.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Thailand is bounded west by Burma, north and east by Laos and south-east by Cambodia. In the south it becomes a peninsula bounded west by the Indian Ocean, south by Malaysia and east by the Gulf of Thailand. Area is 513,115 sq. km (198,456 sq. miles).

At the census taken in 1980 the registration gave a population of 46,961,338, of whom 30.4% lived in the Central region, 35.2% in the North-East region, 12.5% in the South region, 21.9% in the North region. Estimate (1987) 53,873,172 (26,830,017 females).

Vital statistics, 1984: Births, 956,680 (467,566 females); deaths, 225,282 (94,433 females).

Thailand is divided into 73 provinces. Provinces with over 1m. population 1987 were Nakhon Rajchasisima (2,298,024), Ubon Rajchathani (1,810,846), Udon Thani (1,740,650), Khon Kaen (1,638,260), Buriram (1,382,451), Nakhon Si Thammaraj (1,376,926), Chiangmai (1,313,859), Sri Saket (1,261,694), Surin (1,237,770), Roi Et (1,184,070), Nakhon Sawan (1,059,909) and Songkhla (1,044,244).

Bangkok Metropolis is the capital (population 1987, 5,609,352). Other towns (1980 census) are Changmai (101,595), Hat Yai (93,519), Khon Kaen, (85,863), Phitsanulok (79,942), Nakhon Rajchasisima (78,246), Udon Thani (71,142), Songkhla (67,945), Nakhon Sawan (63,935), Nakhon Si Thammaraj (63,162), Ubon Rajchathani (50,788), Ayutthaya (47,189), Nakhon Pathom (45,242), Lampang (42,301) and Ratchaburi (40,404).

Thai is the national language. Several Chinese dialects are also spoken in Bangkok and the north and some Malay in the south. English is increasingly used in tourist areas.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, with high temperatures and humidity. Over most of the country, 3 seasons may be recognized. The rainy season is June to Oct., the cool season from Nov. to Feb. and the hot season is March to May. Rainfall is generally heaviest in the south and lightest in the north east.

Bangkok. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 56" (1,400 mm).

**REIGNING KING.** Bhumibol Adulyadej, born 5 Dec. 1927, younger brother of King Ananda Mahidol, who died on 9 June 1946. King Bhumibol married on 28 April 1950 Princess Sirikit, and was crowned 5 May 1950. Children: Princess Ubol Ratana (born 5 April 1951, married Aug. 1972 Peter Ladd Jensen), Crown-Prince Vajiralongkorn (born 28 July 1952, married 3 Jan. 1977 Soamsawali Kitiyakra), Princess Maha Chakri Sirindhorn (born 2 April 1955), Princess Chulabhorn (born 4 July 1957, married 7 Jan. 1982 Virayudth Didysarin).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The military government resigned on 14 Oct. 1973 and a new government was formed. A new Constitution

was promulgated in Dec. 1978. A general election was held on 24 July 1988. Of the 357 seats in Parliament, the Chart Thai Party won 87, the Social Action Party 54, the Democrat Party 48, Ruam Thai Party 35.

The cabinet in Aug. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister and Minister of Defence:* Maj.-Gen. Chatichai Choonhavan.

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Pong Sarasin, Bhichai Rattakul, Gen. Tienchai Sirisumpan. *Ministers of the Prime Minister's Office:* Meechai Ruchupan, Boon-eua Prasertsuwan, Korn Dapparungsi, Anuwat Wattanapongsiri, Chaisiri Ruangkanhasas, Supatra Masdit, Col. Phol Rerngprasertvit, Capt. Chalerm Yubamrung. *Finance:* Pramual Sabhavasut. *Foreign Affairs:* Air Chief Marshal Siddhi Savetsila. *Agriculture and Cooperatives:* Lieut.-Col. Sanan Khachornprasart. *Communications:* Montree Pongpanit. *Commerce:* Subin Pinkhayan. *Interior:* Maj.-Gen. Pramarn Adireksarn. *Justice:* Lieut.-Gen. Chamras Mangkalarat. *Science, Technology and Energy:* Prachuab Chaiyasan. *Education:* Gen. Mana Rattanakoses. *Public Health:* Chuan Leekpai. *Industry:* Banharn Silpaarcha. *University Affairs:* Tavich Klinprathoom.

*National flag:* Five horizontal stripes of red, white, blue, white, red, with the blue of double width.

*Local Government.* Thailand is divided into 73 provinces (*changwads*), each under the control of a *changwad* governor. The *changwads* are subdivided into 640 districts (*amphurs*) and 83 sub-districts (*king amphurs*), 6,331 communes (*tambons*) and 56,608 villages (*moobans*).

**DEFENCE.** Under the Military Service Act of 1954 every able-bodied man between the ages of 21 and 30 is liable to serve 2 years with the colours; 7 years in the first reserve; 10 years in the second reserve; 6 years in the third reserve.

**Army.** The Army is organized in 4 Regions and consists of 1 cavalry, 1 armoured, 7 infantry, 2 special forces, 1 artillery and 1 anti-aircraft divisions; 19 engineer and 8 independent infantry battalions; and 4 reconnaissance companies. Equipment includes 65 M-48A5, 30 Chinese Type-69 and 300 M-41 main battle tanks. There is also an Army Aviation force including about 100 transport helicopters (mostly UH-1 Iroquois), and over 50 O-1 Bird Dog observation aircraft and 4 C-47 and 2 Shorts 330 twin-turboprop transports. Strength (1989) 166,000 (with 500,000 reserves for all armed forces).

**Navy.** The Fleet includes 5 frigates, 4 corvettes (small frigates) – all missile-armed – all US-built, 3 fast large attack gunboats, 6 fast missile craft, 4 coastal mine-sweepers, 10 patrol vessels, 2 mine counter-measures support ships, 20 gunboats, 26 coastal patrol boats, 9 landing ships, 13 landing craft, 42 minor landing craft, 5 minesweeping boats, 3 surveying ships, 3 surveying boats, 40 river patrol craft, 2 transports, 5 oilers, 3 training ships (old frigate, old corvette, old escort mine-sweeper), 2 transports, 2 water carriers and 4 tugs. The air element includes 8 S-2 Trackers, 3 F27 Maritimes, 5 N24A Nomads and 2 CL-215s for maritime patrol, 5 C-47s and 2 F27s for transport duties, 9 Cessna 337 armed light transports, and 17 Bell helicopters.

Naval personnel in 1989 totalled 18,500 officers and ratings, 900 in the Naval Air Arm and 20,000 in the Marine Corps. The Royal Naval Academy is at Paknam. The coast guard force operates 4 patrol vessels, 3 coastal patrol craft, 8 river patrol boats and a considerable number of service craft.

**Air Force.** The Royal Thai Air Force was reorganized with the assistance of a US Military Air Advisory Group. It had a strength (1989) 48,000 personnel, and is made up of a headquarters and Combat, Logistics Support, Training and Special Services Groups. Combat units comprise 2 squadrons of F-5E/F interceptors, 1 squadron of F-5A/B fighter-bombers and RF-5A reconnaissance aircraft, 1 squadron with A-37B light jet attack aircraft, 2 with OV-10 Bronco light reconnaissance/attack aircraft, and 1 with AU-23A Peacemakers and 1 squadron with C-47s for security duties. Three Arava are used for electronic intelligence gathering and 3 Learjets for combat support. There are transport units equipped with a total of about 70 C-130H/H-30 Hercules, DC-8-62F, HS 748, C-123B Provider,

C-47 and smaller aircraft, including 20 Australian-built Missionmasters; there are 25 UH-1H and 18 S-58T helicopters; 20 O-1 Bird Dog observation aircraft; training units with Air trainer CT/4 primary trainers built in New Zealand, Italian-built SF.260MTs, T-37 intermediate and T-33A advanced trainers. In 1984, delivery began of 31 Model 400 and 16 Model 600 Fantrainers, of which the first 6 were built in the Federal Republic of Germany, the remainder are being partially manufactured and assembled in Thailand. Delivery of 18 F-16 Fighting Falcons began in 1988.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Thailand is a member of UN, ASEAN and the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Sixth 5-year Development Plan (1987-91) envisages emphasis on the less capital-intensive industries and on export growth.

**Budget.** Expenditure (1986, 1m. baht) 218,000: Economy, 34,088 (of which 17,202 for agriculture); education, 39,978; defence, 41,257; internal security, 10,829; public health, 23,792; administration, 5,823; debt, 50,719. Revenue, 185,000 (1m. baht).

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *baht*, which is divided into 100 *satang*. Only nickel, copper, tin and bronze coins are now minted, in denominations of 1, 2, 5 *baht*, 25, 50 *satang*. Currency notes now comprise, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100, 500 *baht* notes.

On 31 March 1976 the total amount of notes and coins in circulation was 30,280m. baht. In March 1989, £1 = 44.00 *baht*; US\$1 = 25.57 *baht*.

**Banking.** In 1942 the Bank of Thailand was established under the Bank of Thailand Act, B.E. 2485 (1942) and began operations on 10 Dec. 1942, with the functions of a central bank. The Bank has its banking activities entirely separate from the management of the note issue. The Bank also took over the note issue previously performed by the Treasury Department of the Ministry of Finance. Although the entire capital is owned by the Government, the Bank is an independent body.

Banks incorporated under Thai law include the Bangkok Bank Ltd, the Bangkok Bank of Commerce Ltd, the Bank of Asia for Industry & Commerce Ltd, the Bank of Ayudhya Ltd, Bangkok Metropolitan Bank Ltd, the Laem Thong Bank Ltd, the Siam City Bank Ltd, the Siam Commercial Bank Ltd, First Bangkok City Bank Ltd, Union Bank of Bangkok Ltd, the Bank of Agriculture and Agricultural Co-operatives, the Government Housing Bank, the Sayam Bank and the Wang Lee Chan Bank Ltd. Foreign banks include the Chartered Bank, the Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation, the Citibank, Banque de l'Indochine, Bank of Canton Ltd, Bank of China Ltd, Bank of America, N.T. & S.A., the Mitsui Bank Ltd, The Asia Trust Bank Ltd, Bharat Overseas Bank Ltd, The Chase Manhattan Bank, United Malayan Banking Corporation and the Bank of Tokyo Ltd, Nakornthon Bank, Thai Farmers' Bank, Thai Military Bank, Thai Danu Bank.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was made compulsory by a law promulgated on 17 Dec. 1923. The actual weights and measures prescribed by law are: Units of weight: 1 *standard picul* = 60 kg; 1 *standard catty* ( $\frac{1}{100}$  picul) = 600 grammes; 1 *standard carat* = 20 centigrammes. Units of length: 1 *sen* = 40 metres; 1 *wah* ( $\frac{1}{20}$  sen) = 2 metres; 1 *sauk* ( $\frac{1}{2}$  wah) = 0.50 metre; 1 *keup* ( $\frac{1}{2}$  sau) = 0.25 metre. Units of square measure: 1 *rai* (1 sq. sen) = 1,600 sq. metres; 1 *ngan* ( $\frac{1}{4}$  rai) = 400 sq. metres; 1 *sq. wah* ( $\frac{1}{100}$  ngan) = 4 sq. metres. Units of capacity: 1 *standard kwien* = 2,000 litres; 1 *standard ban* ( $\frac{1}{2}$  kwien) = 1,000 litres; 1 *standard sat* ( $\frac{1}{50}$  ban) = 20 litres; 1 *standard tannan* ( $\frac{1}{20}$  sat) = 1 litre.

Legislation passed in 1940 provided that the calendar year shall coincide with the Christian Year, and that the year of the Buddhist era 2484 shall begin on 1 Jan. 1941. (The New Year's Day was previously 1 April.).



## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1981, steam power accounted for 52% of production (81% of the fuel being imported) and hydro-electric power for 34%. A lignite-fuelled plant at Mae-Moh had 7 generators producing 825,000 kw in 1985. A natural gas-fuelled plant (1.82m. kw) opened at Bang Pakong in 1985. Production (1986) 24,060m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** There is extensive oil and gas exploration in the Gulf of Thailand. In 1987 the Sirikit oil field, which came on stream in 1983, remained Thailand's only significant find. Proven oil reserves in 1987 were less than 160m. bbls. Production of crude oil (1988) 1.9m. tonnes providing 15% of needs.

**Gas.** Production of natural gas (1987) 178,655m. cu. ft.

**Minerals.** The mineral resources include cassiterite (tin ore), wolfram, scheelite, antimony, coal, copper, gold, iron, lead, manganese, molybdenum, rubies, sapphires, silver, zinc and zircons. Output in 1986 (in tonnes): Iron, 37,330; manganese, 4,888; tin, 23,299; lead, 61,885; antimony, 2,397; zinc, 373,833; lignite, 5,542,247; gypsum, 1,665,557; tungsten, 963; fluorite, 189,712.

**Agriculture.** The chief produce of the country is rice, which forms the national food and the staple article of export. The area under paddy is about 18m. acres. In 1987 40% of the total land area was cultivated.

Output of the major crops in 1988 was (in 1,000 tonnes): Paddy, 19,460; maize, 4,880; sugar-cane, 27,500; jute and kenaf, 204; tobacco, 27; tapioca-root, 22,180; soybeans, 380; coconut, 780; mung beans, 310; cotton, 92; groundnuts, 147; sesame, 35; castor seeds, 30; kapok and bambax fibre, 35.

Livestock, 1987 (in 1,000): Horses, 19; buffaloes, 6,350; cattle, 4,931; pigs, 4,200; sheep, 73; goats, 80; poultry, 99,000.

**Forestry.** About 25% of the land area of Thailand was under forest in 1984. In the north, mixed deciduous forests with teak (*Tectona grandis*, Linn.), growing in mixture with several other species, predominate. In the north-eastern section hardwood of the *Dipterocarpus* species, especially *Shorea obtusa* and *Pentacme Siamensis*, Kurz exist in most parts. In all other regions of the country tropical evergreen forests are found, with the well-known timber of commerce, Yang (*Dipterocarpus alatus*, Roxb and *Dipterocarpus* spp.) as the outstanding crops. Most of the teak timber exploited in northern Thailand is floated down to Bangkok.

Output of main forestry products in 1987: Teak, 38,100 cu. metres; yang and other woods, 2,110,900 cu. metres. By-products in 1987: Firewood, 873,700 cu. metres; charcoal, 463,900 cu. metres; 16m. bamboo (1985) and 139,711 decalitres of yang oil (1984).

Rubber production (in 1,000 tonnes), 1955, 133.3; 1960, 170.8; 1969, 281.8; 1973, 384; 1978, 467; 1979, 531; 1980, 501; 1981, 502; 1982, 552; 1983, 587; 1984, 629; 1985, 722; 1986, 790; 1987, 910; 1988, 970.

**Fisheries.** In 1986 the catch of sea fish was 2,348,600 tonnes including marine prawns and shrimps, 141,200 tonnes; of freshwater fish, 187,800 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production of manufactured goods in 1984 included 9,850,000 tonnes of cement, 97,293,000 litres of beer, 1,593m. bottles of soft drinks, 31,403 tonnes of cigarettes and tobacco, 347,934 iron rods, 171,666 galvanized iron sheets, 119,319 tin plates, 98,148 automobiles, 302,195 motorcycles and 42,205 tonnes of tyres.

**Labour.** In 1987, 28.94m. persons out of a labour force of 26.97m. were employed: 17.43m. in agriculture and 2.5m. in manufacturing.

**Commerce.** The foreign trade (in 1m. baht) was as follows:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports (c.i.f.)	236,609	245,155	251,169	245,900	342,200
Exports (f.o.b.)	146,472	175,237	193,366	231,000	298,100

In 1987 exports (in 1m. baht) included: Garments, 35,900; rice, 22,668; tapioca, 20,719; rubber, 20,392; jewellery, 19,722; integrated circuits, 15,173; canned sea-food, 13,220; fabrics, 8,683; sugar, 8,583; footwear, 5,918.

1987 imports (in 1m. baht) included: Chemicals, 36,045; iron and steel, 23,693; non-electrical machinery and parts, 49,485; electrical machinery and parts, 31,988; vehicles and parts, 15,240; fuel and lubricants, 44,457.

Total trade between Thailand and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	112,353	131,806	182,756	239,430	321,241
Exports and re-exports from UK	149,742	157,723	158,195	206,571	279,717

**Tourism.** In 1987 3,483,000 foreigners visited Thailand. Earnings (1985) 31.768m. baht.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 the total length of roads was 156,776 km, of which 44,534 km (29%) were national highways and 112,242 km (71%) provincial roads. Motor vehicles registered in 1982 included 492,742 passenger cars, 32,114 buses (1979), 419,143 lorries (1979) and 1,401,918 motor cycles.

**Railways.** In 1987 the State Railway totalled 3,924 km (metre gauge) and carried 78m. passengers and 5.5m. tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** There are international airports at Bangkok, Changmai in the north and Phuket and Hat Yai in the south. Thai Airways Co. Ltd (TAC), is the sole Thai air transport enterprise. The Company operates 11 domestic routes and 3 international routes and carried more than 1m. passengers in 1984. In 1959 Thai Airways and the Scandinavian Airlines System set up a new company, Thai Airways International, to operate the international air services from Thailand. In 1984, more than 2.7m. passengers were carried.

**Shipping.** In 1983, 3,137 vessels of 14,174,828 NRT entered and 2,648 of 11,663,452 NRT cleared the port of Bangkok.

The port of Bangkok, about 30 km from the mouth of the Chao Phya River, is capable of berthing ocean-going vessels of 10,000 gross tons and 28 ft draught. Bangkok is now a port of entry for Laos, and goods arriving in transit are sent up by rail to Nong Khai and ferried across the river Mekhong to Vientiane.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1985 there were 576,082 telephones, of which 389,096 were in Bangkok.

In 1985, there were 275 radio stations and 9 television stations, 7,629,998 radios and 4,122,000 televisions.

**Cinemas** (1983). There were 651 cinemas with a seating capacity of 438,787.

**Newspapers** (1986). There are 23 daily newspapers in Bangkok, including 3 in English and 7 in Chinese, with a combined circulation of about 2m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The judicial power is exercised in the name of the King, by (a) courts of first instance, (b) the court of appeal (*Uthorn*) and (c) the Supreme Court (*Dika*). The King appoints, transfers and dismisses judges, who are independent in conducting trials and giving judgment in accordance with the law.

Courts of first instance are subdivided into 20 magistrates' courts (*Kwaeng*) with limited civil and minor criminal jurisdiction; 85 provincial courts (*Changwad*) with unlimited civil and criminal jurisdiction; the criminal and civil courts with exclusive jurisdiction in Bangkok; the central juvenile courts for persons under 18 years of age in Bangkok.

The court of appeal exercises appellate jurisdiction in civil and criminal cases from all courts of first instance. From it appeals lie to Dika Court on any point of law and, in certain cases, on questions of fact.

The Supreme Court is the supreme tribunal of the land. Besides its normal

appellate jurisdiction in civil and criminal matters, it has semi-original jurisdiction over general election petitions. The decisions of Dika Court are final. Every person has the right to present a petition to the Government who will deal with all matters of grievance.

**Religion.** In 1983 there were 47,049,223 Buddhists, 1,869,427 Moslems, 267,381 Christians and 64,369 Hindus, Sikhs and others.

**Education.** Primary education is compulsory for children between the ages of 7–14 and free in local municipal schools. In 1984 there were 532,097 students enrolled at pre-primary level, 7,229,064 at primary level, 1,304,520 at lower secondary level, 945,260 at upper secondary level and 361,819 in higher education. In 1980 there were 36 teachers' training colleges with 5,317 teachers and 63,983 students and about 180 government vocational schools and colleges with 11,240 teachers and 208,088 students. There are 8 schools for deaf children, 2 for the blind, 1 for multiple-handicapped and 2 for the mentally retarded. In 1984 the 36 teacher training colleges were regionally consolidated into 8 United Colleges also offering 4-year programmes in science and technology, management, social development, agriculture, arts and journalism. In 1986 there were 14 universities 3 of which were private: Chulalongkorn University (1916), Thammasat University (1934), Universities of Medical Science, Agriculture and Fine Arts; Ramkhamhaeng University (1971)—all in Bangkok; Chiangmai University (1964), the Khon Kaen University (1966) in the north-east and Prince of Songkhla University (1968) in the south.

**Health.** The Primary Health Care Programme had provided health services in 95% of villages in 1986. In 1982 there were 434 hospitals and 6,496 health centres. In 1982 there were 6,550 physicians, 1,122 dentists and (1981) 2,680 pharmacists.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Thailand in Great Britain (30 Queen's Gate, London, SW7 5JB)

*Ambassador:* Sudhee Prasasvinitchai (accredited 4 Nov. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Thailand (Wireless Rd., Bangkok)

*Ambassador:* Derek Tonkin, CMG.

Of Thailand in the USA (2300 Kalorama Rd., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Vitthya Vejajiva.

Of the USA in Thailand (95 Wireless Rd., Bangkok)

*Ambassador:* William A. Brown.

Of Thailand to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* M. L. Birabhongse Kasemsri.

## Further Reading

*Thailand Statistical Yearbook.* National Statistical Office, Bangkok

*Thailand in Brief.* 7th ed. Bangkok, 1985

Girling, J. I. S., *Thailand: Society and Politics*, Cornell Univ. Press, 1981

Morrell, D. and Samudavanija, C., *Political Conflict in Thailand*. Cambridge, Mass., 1981

Watts, M., *Thailand*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986



# TOGO

Capital: Lomé

Population: 3.25m. (1988)

GNP per capita: US\$250 (1986)

## République Togolaise

**HISTORY.** A German protectorate from July 1884, Togo was occupied by British and French forces in Aug. 1914 and subsequently partitioned between the two countries on 20 July 1922 under a League of Nations mandate. British Togo subsequently joined Ghana. The French mandate was renewed by the UN as a trusteeship on 14 Dec. 1946. On 28 Oct. 1956 a plebiscite was held to determine the status of the territory. Out of 438,175 registered voters, 313,458 voted for an autonomous republic within the French Union and the end of the trusteeship system. The trusteeship was abolished on the achievement of independence on 27 April 1960.

On 13 Jan. 1963 the first President Sylvanus Olympio was murdered by n.c.o.s. of the army. Nicolas Grunitzky, a former prime minister and Olympio's brother-in-law, was appointed President. On 13 Jan. 1967 in a bloodless *coup* the army under Lieut.-Col. Etienne Eyadéma made President Grunitzky 'voluntarily withdraw'. On 14 April 1967 Col. Eyadéma assumed the Presidency. There was a return to constitutional government on 13 Jan. 1980.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Togo is bounded west by Ghana, north by Burkina Faso, east by Benin and south by the Gulf of Guinea. The area is 56,785 sq. km. The population of Togo in 1981 (census) was 2,700,982; 1988 (estimate) 3,246,000. The capital is Lomé (population, 1983, 366,476), other towns (1981, population) being Sokodé (48,098), Kpalimé (31,800), Atakpamé (27,100), Bassar (21,800), Tsévié (17,000) and Aného (14,000).

The areas, populations and chief towns of the 5 regions are:

Region	Sq. km	Census 1981	Chieftown
Des Savanes	8,602	326,826	Dapaong
De La Kara	11,630	432,626	Kara
Centrale	13,182	269,174	Sokodé
Des Plateaux	16,975	561,656	Atakpamé
Maritime	6,396	1,039,700	Lomé

The south is largely populated by Ewe-speaking peoples (forming 47% of the population) and related groups, while the north is mainly inhabited by Hamitic groups speaking Voltaic (Gur) languages such as Kabre (22%), Gurma (14%) and Tem (4%). The official language is French but Ewe and Kabre are also taught in schools. In 1984, 27% lived in urban areas and (1981) 48% were male.

Vital statistics, 1984: Live birth rate, 4.5%; death rate, 1.6%.

**CLIMATE.** The tropical climate produces wet seasons from March to July and from Oct. to Nov. in the south. The north has one wet season, from April to July. The heaviest rainfall occurs in the mountains of the west, south-west and centre. Lomé. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 35" (875 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following approval in a referendum on 30 Dec. 1979, a new Constitution came into force on 13 Jan. 1980, when the Third Togolese Republic was proclaimed. It provides for an Executive President, directly elected for a 7-year term, and for a National Assembly of 77 deputies, elected on a regional list system for a 5-year term. Elections to the Assembly were held on 24 March 1985.

All candidates are approved by the *Rassemblement du peuple togolais*, the sole legal Party since 1969; it is administered by a 46-member Central Committee and a 13-member Political Bureau elected at its fourth Party Congress in Dec. 1986.

The government in Oct. 1987 was composed as follows:

*President, Minister of Defence:* Gen. Gnassingbé Eyadéma (re-elected for a further 7-year term in Dec. 1986).

*Foreign Affairs and Co-operation:* Yaovi Adada. *Rural Development:* Koffi Walla. *Justice, Keeper of the Seals:* Kpotivi Tèvi-Djidjogbé Laclé. *Economy and Finance:* Komlan Alipui. *Planning and Mines:* Barry Moussa Barque. *Posts and Telecommunications:* Ayeva Nassirou. *Public Works, Labour and Civil Service:* Bitokotipou Yagninim. *Minister-Delegate to Presidency in charge of Information:* Gbegnon Amegboh. *Youth, Sports and Culture:* Komlavi Gnemegna. *National Education and Scientific Research:* Tchalim Tcha Koza. *Interior:* Komlan Agbétiafa. *Commerce and Transport:* W'souwodji Kawo Ehe. *Public Health, Social and Women's Affairs:* Dr Ayissah Agbetra. *Industry and State Enterprises:* Koffi Djondo. *Technical and Professional Training:* Koffi Edoh. *Environment and Tourism:* Yao Komlavi.

*National flag:* Five horizontal stripes of green and yellow, a red quarter with a white star.

*Local Government:* There are 5 regions, each under an inspector appointed by the President; they are divided into 21 *prefectures*, each administered by a district chief assisted by an elected district council.

**DEFENCE.** Armed forces numbered (1989) about 5,900, all forming part of the Army.

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 infantry, 1 Presidential Guard commando and 1 para-commando regiments, with artillery and logistic support units. Equipment includes 9 Scorpion and 2 T-54/-55 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 4,000, with a further 1,550 men in a paramilitary force.

**Navy.** In 1989 there were 2 coastal patrol craft, 2 defence launches and a naval base at Lomé. Naval personnel, 100 officers and men.

**Air Force.** An Air Force, established with French assistance, has 6 Brazilian-built EMB-326 Xavante (Aermacchi MB.326) armed jet trainers; 5 Alpha Jet advanced trainers, with strike capability, 1 DC-8 and 1 twin-turboprop F28 Fellowship for VIP use, 2 turboprop Buffalo transports; 2 Beech Barons and 2 Cessna 337s for liaison; 3 Epsilon basic trainers; 1 Puma and 2 Lama helicopters. Personnel (1989) 250.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Togo is a member of UN, OAU and ECOWAS, and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The fourth 5-year development plan (1981-85) provided for investment of 368,490m. francs CFA, of which 116,397m. were for rural development, 98,625m. for industrial development and 100,690m. for infrastructure.

**Budget.** The ordinary budget for 1988 balanced at 89,692m. francs CFA.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *franc* CFA with a parity rate of 50 *francs* CFA to 1 French *franc*. The rate of exchange (March 1989) was 541.63 francs CFA to £1; US\$1 = 314.72.

**Banking.** The bank of issue is the *Banque Centrale des Etats de l'Afrique de l'Ouest*. Seven commercial and 3 development banks are based in Lomé.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 203m. kwh. There is a hydro-electric plant at Kpalimé. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Minerals.** A Mines Department was set up in 1953 after the discovery of very rich deposits of phosphate and bauxite; mining began in 1961. Output of phosphate

rock (1984) 2.8m. tonnes. Other mineral deposits are limestone, estimated at 200m. tons; iron ore, estimated at 550m. tons with iron content varying between 40% and 55%, and marble estimated at 20m. tonnes. Salt production (1982) 600,000 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Inland the country is hilly, rising to 3,600 ft, with streams and waterfalls. There are long stretches of forest and brushwood, while dry plains alternate with arable land. Maize, yams, cassava, plantains, groundnuts, etc., are cultivated; oil palms and dye-woods grow in the forests; but the main commerce is based on coffee, cocoa, palm-oil, palm-kernels, copra, groundnuts, cotton, manioc. There are considerable plantations of oil and cocoa palms, coffee, cacao, kola, cassava and cotton. Production, 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes): Cassava, 442; tomatoes, 6; yams 336; maize, 133; sorghum, 90; millet, 70; seed cotton, 70; rice, 15; groundnuts, 22; coffee 10.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 290,000; sheep, 950,000; swine, 300,000; horses, 1,000; asses, 3,000; goats, 740,000.

**Forestry.** Forests cover 28% of the land surface. Roundwood production (1983) 735,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1984) 14,547 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There is a cement works (production, 1983; 232,000 tonnes); a second is being built in co-operation with Ghana and Côte d'Ivoire with a capacity of 1.2m. tonnes per annum. An oil refinery of 1m. tonne capacity opened in Lomé in 1978 and a steel mill (20,000 tonne capacity) in 1979. Industry, though small, is developing and there are about 40 medium sized enterprises in the public and private sectors, including textile and food processing plants.

**Commerce** (in 1m. francs CFA):

	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984
Imports	116,357	117,769	128,354	108,141	118,460
Exports	71,285	56,241	58,173	61,921	83,588

In 1985, of the exports, phosphates amounted to 38%, cotton 11%, coffee 11% and cocoa beans 6% by value; 22% of exports went to France and 18% to the Netherlands. Of the imports, France supplied 27%, the Netherlands, 11% and UK, 10%.

Total trade between Togo and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	3,224	4,597	5,008	2,579	690
Exports and re-exports from UK	12,166	17,034	17,488	15,431	22,231

**Tourism.** There were about 99,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, in 1986, 7,850 km of roads, of which 1,500 km were paved. In Dec. 1984 there were 36,372 passenger cars and 17,963 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** There are 4 metre-gauge railways connecting Lomé, with Aného (continuing to Cotonou in Benin), Kpalimé, Tabligbo and (via Atakpamé) Blitta; total length 525 km. In 1986 the railways carried 6.3m. tonne-km and 60m. passenger-km.

**Aviation:** Air services connect Tokoin airport, near Lomé, with Paris, Dakar, Abidjan, Douala, Accra, Lagos, Cotonou and Niamey and by internal services with Sokodé, Mango, Dapaong, Atakpamé and Niamtougou.

**Shipping.** In 1983, vessels landed 654,000 tonnes and cleared 683,000 tonnes at Lomé; 31,058 containers passed through the port in 1981. The merchant marine comprised (1985) 11 vessels of 77,989 DWT. In 1981 some 2.2m. tonnes of phosphate were loaded at the port of Kpémé.



**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1983) 388 post offices and 11,105 telephones. Togo is connected by telegraph and telephone with Ghana, Benin, Côte d'Ivoire and Senegal, and by wireless telegraphy with Europe and America. There were 14,000 television receivers and 250,000 radio receivers in 1985.

**Newspapers.** There was (1984) 1 daily newspaper (circulation 10,000).

### JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Supreme Court and two Appeal Courts are in Lomé, one for criminal cases and one for civil and commercial cases. Each receives appeal from a series of local tribunals.

**Religion.** In 1980, 28% of the population were Catholics, 17% Moslem (chiefly in the north) and 9% Protestant; while 46% follow animist religions.

**Education.** In 1986 there were 474,998 pupils and 10,209 teachers in 2,345 primary schools, 86,327 pupils in secondary schools, and 5,050 students and 198 teachers in technical schools and 374 students and 22 teachers at the teacher-training college. The University of Benin at Lomé (founded in 1970) had 4,500 students and 308 teaching staff in 1986.

**Health.** In 1979 there were 69 hospitals with (1982) 3,655 beds; and in 1985, 168 doctors, 7 dentists, 51 pharmacists, 559 midwives (1980) and 1,116 nursing staff.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Togo in Great Britain (30 Sloane St., London, SW1)

*Ambassador:* Assiongbon Agbenou (accredited 10 Oct. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Togo

*Ambassador:* A. H. Wyatt, CMG (resides in Accra).

Of Togo in the USA (2208 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Ellom-Kodjo Schuppius.

Of the USA in Togo (Rue Pelletier Caventou, Lomé)

*Ambassador:* David A. Korn.

Of Togo to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Kwam Kouassi.

### Further Reading

Cornevin, R., *Histoire du Togo*, 3rd ed., Paris, 1969

Feuillet, C., *Le Togo en general*, Paris, 1976

Piroux, M., *Le Togo aujourd'hui*, Paris, 1977

# TONGA

*Capital:* Nuku'alofa  
*Population:* 95,200 (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$580 (1986)

## Friendly Islands

**HISTORY.** The Kingdom of Tonga attained unity under Taufa'ahau Tupou (George I) who became ruler of his native Ha'apai in 1820, of Vava'u in 1833 and of Tongatapu in 1845. By 1860 the kingdom had become converted to Christianity (George himself having been baptized in 1831). In 1862 the king granted freedom to the people from arbitrary rule of minor chiefs and gave them the right to the allocation of land for their own needs. These institutional changes, together with the establishment of a parliament of chiefs, paved the way towards the democratic constitution under which the kingdom is now governed, and provided a background of stability against which Tonga was able to develop her agricultural economy.

The kingdom continued up to 1899 to be a neutral region in accordance with the Declaration of Berlin, 6 April 1886. By the Anglo-German Agreement of 14 Nov. 1899 subsequently accepted by the USA, the Tonga Islands were left under the Protectorate of Great Britain. A protectorate was proclaimed on 18 May 1900, and a British Agent and Consul appointed. On 4 June 1970 the UK Government ceased to have any responsibility for the external relations of Tonga.

The Tongatapu group was discovered by Tasman in 1643.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The kingdom consists of some 169 islands and islets with a total area of 289 sq. miles (748 sq. km: including inland waters), and lies between 15° and 23° 30' S. lat and 173° and 177° W. long., its western boundary being the eastern boundary of Fiji. The islands are split up into the following groups reading from north to south: The Niuas, Vava'u, Ha'apai, Kotu, Nonuka, Otu Tolu and Tongatapu. The 3 main groups, both from historical and administrative significance, are Tongatapu in the south, Ha'apai in the centre and Vava'u in the north.

The capital is Nuku'alofa on Tongatapu, population (1986) 28,899.

There are 5 divisions comprising 23 districts:

<i>Division</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1986</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Niuas	72	2,379	Hihifo
Vava'u	119	15,170	Neiafu
Haapai	110	8,979	Pangai
Tongatapu	261	63,614	Nuku'alofa
'Eua	87	4,393	Ohonua

Census population (provisional, 1986) 94,535 (males, 47,589); estimate (1988) 95,200.

**CLIMATE.** Generally a healthy climate, though Jan. to March is hot and humid, with temperatures of 90°F (32.2°C). Rainfall amounts are comparatively high, being greatest from Dec. to March. Nuku'alofa, Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 63" (1,576 mm). Vava'u, Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 110" (2,750 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present Constitution is almost identical with that granted in 1875 by King George Tupou I. There is a Privy Council, Cabinet, Legislative Assembly and Judiciary. The legislative assembly, which meets annually, is composed of 9 nobles elected by their peers, 9 elected representatives of the people and the Privy Councillors (numbering 11); the King appoints one of the 9 nobles to be the Speaker. The elections are held triennially. In 1960, women voted for the first time.

**King:** HM King Taufa'ahau Tupou IV, GCVO, GCMG, KBE, born 4 July 1918, succeeded on 16 Dec. 1965 on the death of his mother, Queen Salote Tupou III; his coronation took place on 4 July 1967.

**Prime Minister:** HRH Prince Fatafehi Tu'pelehake, KCMG, KBE, younger brother of the King.

**Deputy Prime Minister:** Hon. Baron Tuita, CBE.

**Foreign Affairs and Defence:** HRH Crown Prince Tupouto'a.

**National flag:** Red with a white quarter bearing a red couped cross.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Tonga is a member of the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Recurrent revenue and expenditure in T\$1,000:

	1985-86	1986-87 <sup>1</sup>	1987-88 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	26,940	26,113	29,846
Expenditure	26,940	26,113	29,846

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

The principal sources of revenue are import dues, income tax, sales tax, port and service tax, wharfage and philatelic revenue.

Public debt at 30 June 1986, T\$42.7m.

**Currency.** There is a government note issue of *pa'anga* (T\$) 20, 10, 5, 2 and 1 and coin issue of T\$2, T\$1 and *seniti* 50, 20, 10, 5, 2 and 1. In March 1989, £1 = 2.12 *pa'anga*; US\$1 = 1.23 *pa'anga*.

**Banking.** The Bank of Tonga and the Tonga Development Bank are both situated in Nuku'alofa (Tongatapu) with branches in the main islands 'Eua, Ha'apai, Vava'u and the Niuas.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 8m. kwh. Supply 230 volts; 50 Hz.

**Agriculture.** Production (1986, in 1,000 tonnes) consisted of coconuts (52), fruit and vegetables (19), copra (6) and cassava (17).

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 8,000; horses, 9,000; pigs, 65,000; goats, 11,000; poultry (1982), 175,000.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1982) 2,500 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Commerce.** In 1986, imports were valued at T\$56,575,200 while exports and re-exports were T\$8,186,600 and T\$677,500.

Main imports (1986, in T\$): Food 13,904,500, beverages and tobacco 3,375,300, crude materials 2,181,300, fuel and lubricants 7,019,100, oils and fats 131,300, chemicals 4,598,300, manufactured goods 10,839,700, machinery and transport equipment 9,487,200, miscellaneous manufactured articles 4,906,200.

Main exports (1986, in T\$): Coconut oil 1,762,200, vanilla 1,201,700, bananas 1,270,700, desiccated coconut 691,600, water melons 4,900, knitted clothes 420,500, tarotaruas 8,500, manufactured machinery, 358,000.

Principal destinations for Tongan exports/re-exports in 1986 were: New Zealand (T\$3,623,100), Australia (T\$2,286,100), USA (T\$1,517,500), UK (T\$4,500). Of 1986 imports (in T\$), New Zealand furnished 22,248,000; Australia, 16,938,300; Japan, 5,186,200; Singapore, 1,211,800; Fiji, 3,305,700; China (Mainland), 850,000; UK, 1,751,100.

Total trade between Tonga and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	70	86	100	145
Exports and re-exports from UK	699	936	2,013	856



**Tourism.** There were 44,677 visitors in 1986-87.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986-87 there were over 4,000 registered motor vehicles and (1987) 1,242 km of roads (263 km paved).

**Aviation.** International air service connexions to Tongatapu are now provided by Air New Zealand, Polynesian Airlines, Air Pacific and Hawaiian Air with 4 flights per week to Auckland, 3 to Apia, 4 to Suva and 2 to Nadi. Hawaiian Air provides a twice weekly service to Hawaii via Pagopago. Internal air service flights are operated during the week to 'Eua, Ha'apai, Vava'u and Niuatoputapu by Friendly Island Airways.

**Shipping.** Pacific Forum Line maintains a four weekly service New Zealand-Fiji-Samoas-Tonga from Sydney, Australia-Noumea-Fiji-Samoas-Tonga. Warner Pacific Line maintains a monthly service New Zealand-Tonga-Samoas-Tonga-New Zealand and a monthly service Tonga-New Zealand-Australia-Funufuti-Tarawa-Samoas-Tonga.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The kingdom has its own issue of postage stamps. Telephones numbered 3,500 in 1986 and there were 65,000 radio receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Since the lapse of British extra-territorial jurisdiction British and foreign nationals charged with an offence against the laws of Tonga (the enforcement of which is a responsibility of the Minister of Police) are fully subject to the jurisdiction of the Tongan courts to which they are already subject in all civil matters.

**Religion.** The Tongans are Christian, over 30,000 being adherents of the Wesleyan Church.

**Education.** In 1986 there were 101 government and 10 denominational primary schools, with a total of 16,912 pupils. There were 5 government and 45 mission schools and 1 private school offering secondary education, with a total roll of 14,321. There was one government teacher-training college with 113 students; 3 government technical and vocational schools with 117 trainees and 8 non-government technical and vocational schools with 323 trainees. 201 students were undertaking tertiary training overseas under an official scholarship in 1985.

**Health.** In 1986-87 there were 47 doctors, 11 dentists, 2 pharmacists, 27 midwives, 216 nursing personnel and 4 hospitals with 307 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Tonga in Great Britain (New Zealand Hse., Haymarket, London, SW1Y 4TE)  
*High Commissioner:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Tonga (Nuku'alofa)  
*High Commissioner:* A. P. Fabian.

## Further Reading

Churchward, C. M., *Tongan Dictionary*. London, 1959

Luke, Sir Harry, *Queen Salote and Her Kingdom*. London, 1954

Packett, C. N., *Travel and Holiday Guide to Tongatapu Island*. Bradford, 1984

# TRINIDAD AND TOBAGO

*Capital:* Port-of-Spain  
*Population:* 1.24m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$5,120 (1986)

**HISTORY.** Trinidad was discovered by Columbus in 1498 and colonized by the Spaniards in the 16th century. During the French Revolution a large number of French families settled in the island. In 1797, Great Britain being at war with Spain, Trinidad was occupied by the British and ceded to Great Britain by the Treaty of Amiens in 1802. Trinidad and Tobago were joined in 1889.

Under the Bases Agreement concluded between the governments of the UK and the USA on 27 March 1941, and the concomitant Trinidad-US Bases Lease of 22 April 1941, defence bases were leased to the US Government for 99 years. On 8 Dec. 1960 the US agreed to abandon 21,000 acres of leased land and the US has since given up the remaining territory, except for a small tracking station.

On 31 Aug. 1962 Trinidad and Tobago became an independent member state of the British Commonwealth. A Republican Constitution was adopted on 1 Aug. 1976.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The island of Trinidad is situated in the Caribbean Sea, about 12 km off the north-east coast of Venezuela; several islets, the largest being Chacachacare, Huevos, Monos and Gaspar Grande, lie in the Gulf of Paria which separates Trinidad from Venezuela. The smaller island of Tobago lies about 31 km further to the north-east. Altogether, the islands cover 5,124 sq. km (1,978 sq. miles) of which Trinidad (including the islets) has 4,821 sq. km (1,861 sq. miles) and Tobago 303 sq. km (117 sq. miles). Population (census 1980): 1,079,800. (Trinidad, 1,039,100; Tobago, 40,700); estimate (1988) 1,243,000 (Trinidad, 1,198,000, Tobago, 45,000). Capital, Port-of-Spain, 58,400; other important towns, San Fernando (34,200) and Arima (24,600). Those of African descent are 40.8% of the population, Indians, 40.7%, mixed races, 16.3%, European, Chinese and others, 2.2%. English is spoken generally. Estimated population in 1987, 1.22m.

Vital statistics (rate per 1,000), 1983: Births, 29.2; deaths, 6.6; infant deaths, 12.6. Proportion of population under 15 years (1984) 39.2%.

**Tobago** is situated about 30.7 km north-east of Trinidad. Main town is Scarborough.

Principal goods shipped from Tobago to Trinidad are copra, cocoa, livestock and poultry, fresh vegetables, coconut oil and coconut fibre.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical climate whose dry season runs from Jan. to June, with a wet season for the rest of the year. Temperatures are uniformly high the year round. Port-of-Spain. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 65" (1,631 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1976 Constitution provides for a bicameral legislature of a Senate and a House of Representatives. The Senate consists of 31 members, 16 being appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister, 6 on the advice of the Leader of the Opposition and 9 at the discretion of the President.

Tobago has a 15-man House of Assembly (with limited powers).

The House of Representatives consists of 36 (34 for Trinidad and 2 for Tobago) elected members and a Speaker elected from within or outside the House.

The Cabinet consists of the Prime Minister, appointed by the President, and other Ministers, including the Attorney-General.

At the general elections in Dec. 1986 the National Alliance for Reconstruction won 33 seats; the People's National Movement won 3 seats.

*President:* Noor Hassanali.

*Prime Minister and Minister of Finance and Economy:* A. N. R. Robinson.

*Local Government:* Trinidad is divided into a city (the capital), 3 boroughs and 6 counties; Tobago has since 1980 had a 15-member elected House of Assembly with limited powers of self-government.

*National flag:* Red with a diagonal black strip edged in white.

**DEFENCE.** The Defence Force has a regular and a reserve infantry battalion and a support battalion equipped with 81mm mortars, and there is also a small air element, equipped with 1 Cessna 402 light transport. Personnel in 1989 totalled 2,750.

In 1989 there were 2 Swedish (Karlskrona)-built patrol vessels, 2 British (Vosper, Portsmouth)-built patrol craft, 7 minor patrol boats, 1 survey vessel, 2 research craft and 1 sail training ship. A Commodore is Chief of Defence Staff while a Commander directs the Coast Guard. Of total defence personnel (1989) 600 were coast-guard. The Police operate 2 coastal patrol cutters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Trinidad and Tobago is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAS, Caricom and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The 1987 budget envisaged revenue (in TT\$) as 5,845.5m. and expenditure as 5,545.6m.

Total external debt at 31 Dec. 1986, TT\$5,600m.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Trinidad and Tobago dollar* of 100 cents. There are coins of 1, 5, 10, 25 and 50 cents and TT\$1, and banknotes of TT\$1, 5, 10, 20 and 100. £1 = TT\$7.34; US\$1 = TT\$4.27 (March 1989).

**Banking.** Banks operating: Republic Bank of Trinidad and Tobago Ltd; Royal Bank of Trinidad and Tobago Ltd; Bank of Commerce, Trinidad and Tobago Ltd; Bank of Nova Scotia; United Bank of Trinidad and Tobago Ltd; National Commercial Bank of Trinidad and Tobago; Workers' Bank of Trinidad and Tobago; Trinidad Co-operative Bank Ltd. A Central Bank began operations in Dec. 1964.

Government savings banks are established in 69 offices, with a head office in Port-of-Spain.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1986, 3,182m. kwh was generated. Supply 115 and 230 volts; 60 Hz.

**Oil.** Oil production is one of Trinidad's leading industries and represented (1986) 71.6% of exports. Commercial production began in 1909; production of crude oil in 1988 was 7.8m. tonnes. Trinidad also possesses 2 refineries, with rated distillation capacity of 305,000 bbls annually; crude oil is imported from Venezuela, Indonesia, Ecuador, Nigeria, Brazil, and Saudi Arabia and refined in Trinidad. The 'Pitch Lake' is an important source of asphalt; production, 1986, 5,360,700 cu. metres.

**Gas.** In 1985 production was 7,413m. cu. ft., of which 1,601m. cu. ft. was flared and lost.

**Agriculture.** Hectares under cultivation and care include (1984): Cocoa, 21,000; sugar, 18,000. Sugar production in 1986 was 92,300 (1985: 80,900) tonnes. The territory is still largely dependent on imported food supplies, especially flour, dairy products, meat and rice. Areas have been irrigated for rice, and soil and forest conservation is practised.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 77,000; shecp, 12,000; goats, 50,000; pigs, 83,000; poultry, 8m.



## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1985, 474,300 tonnes of iron and steel were produced at the first integrated steelworks to be constructed in the Caribbean which was opened in 1981. Other manufacturing includes ammonia (production, 1985, 1,323,500 tonnes), fertilizers (1986 production, 1,888,000 tonnes), cement (338,000 tonnes, 1986), rum (2,307,000 proof gallons, 1986), beer (20,716 litres, 1986), cigarettes (920,000 kg, 1986).

**Labour.** The working population in 1986 was 471,300 and unemployment was about 17%; about 30% of the labour force belong to unions.

**Commerce.** Exports in 1986 were TT\$4,962.2m. of which TT\$3,504.4m. was mineral fuels and products and chemicals, TT\$766.8m. USA took 61.5% of exports. Imports totalled TT\$4,902.8m. of which TT\$1,792.9m. was for machinery and transport of which the USA supplied 41.8%.

Total trade of Trinidad and Tobago with UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	164,715	81,719	41,662	38,600	35,728
Exports and re-exports from UK	113,312	93,897	79,029	57,016	39,868

**Tourism.** In 1986, 182,640 foreigners visited Trinidad and Tobago spending (estimate) TT\$293.9m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1985) about 6,435 km of main and local roads. Motor vehicles registered in 1985 totalled 336,769, including 127,716 private cars, 26,392 hired and rented cars, and 33,846 goods vehicles.

**Aviation.** The following airlines operate scheduled passenger, mail and freight services. British West Indian Airways, Ltd, Air Canada, PANAM, KLM, Linea Aeropostal Venezolana, Leeward Islands Air Transport, Caribair, British Airways, American Airlines, Guyana Airways, ALM Antillean Airline, Cruzeiro (Brazil), Eastern Airlines, Caribbean Airways and Viasa.

**Shipping.** In 1983 19.2m. tons of cargo were handled.

**Post and Broadcasting.** International communications to all parts of the world are provided by Trinidad and Tobago External Telecommunications Co. Ltd (TEXTTEL) by means of a satellite earth station and various high quality radio circuits. The marine radio service is also maintained by TEXTTEL. Number of post offices (1984), 69; postal agencies, 166; number of telephones (1986), 182,325. Four wireless stations are maintained by the Trinidad Government and 3 by airline companies. There were 500,000 radio and 300,000 television receivers in 1985. A meteorological station is maintained at Piarco airport.

**Cinemas** (1986). There are 57 cinemas and 3 drive-in cinemas.

**Newspapers** (1986). There are 4 daily newspapers with a total daily circulation (1984) of 166,380, 2 Sunday newspapers with a total circulation (1984) of 161,832, and 3 weekly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court consists of the Chief Justice and 11 puisne judges. In criminal cases a judge of the High Court sits with a jury of 12 in cases of treason and murder, and with 9 jurors in other cases. The Court of Appeal consists of the Chief Justice and 3 Justices of Appeal; there is a limited right of appeal from it to the Privy Council. There are 3 High Courts and 12 magistrates' courts.

**Religion.** In 1980, 15% of the population were Anglicans (under the Bishop of Trinidad and Tobago), 33.6% Roman Catholics (under the Archbishop of Port-of-Spain), 25% Hindus and 5.9% Moslems.

**Education.** In 1985-86 there were 172,424 pupils enrolled in primary schools,

12,622 in government secondary schools, 17,576 in assisted secondary schools, 39,188 in junior secondary schools, 21,614 in senior comprehensive schools, 3,564 in composite schools and 4,419 in technical and vocational schools. The University of the West Indies campus in St Augustine had 2,684 full- and part-time students in 1984-85.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 1,103 physicians, 129 dentists, 496 pharmacists and 31 hospitals and nursing homes with 4,087 beds. There were 3,344 nurses and midwives and 980 nursing assistants in government institutions.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Trinidad and Tobago in Great Britain (42 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8NT)  
*High Commissioner:* Mervyn Assam.

Of Great Britain in Trinidad and Tobago (Furness Hse., 90 Independence Sq., Port-of-Spain)

*High Commissioner:* Sir Martin Berthoud, KCVO, CMG.

Of Trinidad and Tobago in the USA (1708 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)

*Ambassador:* J. P. Dumas.

Of the USA in Trinidad and Tobago (15 Queen's Park West, Port-of-Spain)

*Ambassador:* Sheldon J. Krys.

Of Trinidad and Tobago to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* D. H. N. Alleyne.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistical Office, Government of Trinidad and Tobago, 2 Edward St., Port-of-Spain. *Director:* J. Harewood. Publications include *Annual Statistical Digest*, *Quarterly Economic Report*, *Annual Overseas Trade Report*, *Population and Vital Statistics Annual Report*, *Report on Education Statistics*.

*Facts on Trinidad and Tobago.* Ministry of Information, Port-of-Spain, 1983

*Immigration Guidelines.* Government Printer, Port-of-Spain, 1980

*Oil and Energy, Trinidad and Tobago.* Government Printer, Port-of-Spain, 1980

*Trinidad and Tobago Year Book.* Port-of-Spain. Annual (from 1865)

Chambers, F., *Trinidad and Tobago.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1987

Cooper, St G. C. and Bacon, P. R. (eds.) *The Natural Resources of Trinidad and Tobago.* London, 1981

*Central Library:* The Central Library of Trinidad and Tobago, Queen's Park East, Port-of-Spain. *Acting Librarian:* Mrs L. Hutchinson.

# TUNISIA

*Capital:* Tunis

*Population:* 7·32m. (1986)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,300 (1986)

## al-Jumhuriya at-Tunisiya

**HISTORY.** Tunisia was a French protectorate from 1883 and achieved independence on 20 March 1956. The Constituent Assembly, elected on 25 March 1956, abolished the monarchy (of the Bey of Tunis) on 25 July 1957 and proclaimed a republic.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The boundaries are on the north and east the Mediterranean Sea, on the west Algeria and on the south Libya. The area is about 154,530 sq. km (59,664 sq. miles), including that portion of the Sahara which is to the east of the Djerid (salt marsh), extending towards Ghadamès.

At the census of 30 March 1984 there were 6,966,173 inhabitants (3,547,487 males and 3,419,026 females) of whom 52·8% were urban. Estimate (1986) 7,317,000.

The census populations of the 23 *gouvernorats* were as follows as at 30 March 1984:

	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1984</i>		<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1984</i>
Aryanah	1,558	374,192	Qasrayn (Kasserine)	8,066	297,959
Bajah (Béja)	3,558	274,706	Qayrawan (Kairouan)	6,712	421,607
Banzart (Bizerta)	3,685	394,670	Qibili (Kebili)	22,084	95,371
Bin Arus	761	246,193	Safaqis (Sfax)	7,545	577,992
Jundubah (Jendouba)	3,102	359,429	Sidi Bu Zayd		
Kaf (Le Kef)	4,965	247,672	(Sidi Bouzid)	6,994	288,528
Madaniyin (Médénine)	8,588	295,889	Silyanah (Siliana)	4,631	222,038
Mahdiyyah (Mahdia)	2,966	270,435	Susah (Sousse)	2,621	322,491
Munastir (Monastir)	1,019	278,478	Tatawin (Tataouine)	38,889	100,329
Nabul (Nabeul)	2,788	461,405	Tawzar (Tozeur)	4,719	67,943
Qabis (Gabès)	7,175	240,016	Tunis	346	774,364
Qafsah (Gafsa)	8,990	235,723	Zaghwan (Zaghouan)	2,768	118,743

Tunis, the capital, had (census, 1984) 596,654 inhabitants: Sfax, 231,911; Aryanah, 98,655; Bizerta, 94,509; Djerba, 92,269; Gabès, 92,258; Sousse, 83,509; Kairouan, a holy city of the Moslems, 72,254; Bardo, 65,669; La Goulette, 61,609; Gafsa, 60,970; Béja, 46,708; Kasserine, 47,606; Nabeul, 39,531; Mahdia, 36,828; Monastir, 35,546; Le Kef, 34,509; Tataouine, 30,371; Medenine, 26,602; Jendouba, 23,249; Tozeur, 21,604; Sidi Bouzid, 19,218; Siliana, 12,433; Kebili, 11,780; Zaghouan, 10,149.

Vital statistics (1982). Births, 221,027; deaths, 49,200; marriages, 50,177.

The official language is Arabic but the use of French is widespread.

**CLIMATE.** The climate ranges from warm temperate in the north, where winters are mild and wet and the summers hot and dry, to desert in the south. Tunis. Jan. 48°F (8·9°C), July 78°F (25·6°C). Annual rainfall 16" (400 mm). Bizerta. Jan. 52°F (11·1°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 25" (622 mm). Sfax. Jan. 52°F (11·1°C), July 78°F (25·6°C). Annual rainfall 8" (196 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution of the republic was promulgated on 1 June 1959. The President and the National Assembly are elected simultaneously by direct universal suffrage for a period of 5 years. The President cannot be re-elected more than 3 times consecutively.

Elections were held on 2 Nov. 1986, when all 125 seats in the Chamber of Deputies were won by the *Front National*, an alliance of the ruling *Parti Socialiste*



*Destourien*, renamed *Rassemblement Constitutionnel Democratique*, and the *Union générale des travailleurs tunisiens*. The elections were boycotted by opposition parties. General and presidential elections will be held on 9 Nov. 1989.

*President of the Republic*: Zine El Abidine Ben Ali (appointed 7 Nov. 1987).

The Cabinet in July 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister*: Hedi Baccouche.

*Interior*: Habib Ammar. *Justice*: Dr Hamed Karoui. *Foreign Affairs*: Abdelhamid Escheikh. *Secretary General to the Presidency*: Mohamed Jerri. *Secretary General of National Defence*: Abdallah Kallal. *Governor of the Central Bank*: Ismail Khelil. *Planning*: Mohammed Ghannouchi. *Finance*: Nouri Zorgati. *Industry and Commerce*: Moncef Belaid. *Energy and Mines*: Sadok Rabah. *Equipment and Housing*: Moncef Mouelhi. *Transport*: Ahmed Smaoui. *Tourism and Handicrafts*: Mohammed Jegham. *Cultural Affairs*: Habib Boulares. *National Education*: Hedi Khelil. *Higher Education and of Scientific Research*: Abdesslem M'Seddi. *Public Health*: Saadeddine Zmerli. *Agriculture*: Slaheddine Ben M'Barek. *Communications*: Brahim Khoudja. *Social Affairs*: Taoufik Cheikhrouhou. *Information*: Abdelmalek Laarif. *Youth and Sports*: Dr Hammouda Ben Slama. *Secretary General of the Government*: Hassine Cherif.

There were 8 Secretaries of State.

*Local Government*. The country is divided into 23 *gouvernorats*, sub-divided into 199 districts and then into *communes* and *imadas*.

*Flag*: Red with a white circle in the middle, on which is a 5-pointed red star encircled by a red crescent.

**DEFENCE.** Selective military service is 1 year. Officer-cadets are being trained in France.

**Army.** The Army consists of 2 mechanized, 1 Sahara and 1 para-commando brigades; 1 armoured reconnaissance, 1 field, 2 anti-aircraft, 1 anti-tank and 1 engineer regiments. Equipment includes 14 M-48 and 54 M-60A3 main battle, and 40 AMX-13 and 10 M-41 light tanks. Strength (1989) 30,000. There are also the paramilitary gendarmerie (2,000 men) and National Guard (7,000 men).

**Navy.** The flotilla consists of 1 frigate (*ex-US* 45-year-old destroyer-escort), 3 fast missile craft, 2 fast gunboats (*ex-Chinese*), 2 fast attack craft (British-built in 1977), 2 *ex-US*-coastal minesweepers used as patrol ships, 4 patrol vessels (French built), 10 coastal patrol boats, 4 protection launches and 1 large tug. In 1989 naval personnel totalled 4,500 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** Equipment of the Air Force, acquired from various Western sources, includes 1 squadron of Aermacchi M.B.326K/L jet light attack aircraft; 1 squadron of F-5E/F Tiger II fighters; 12 SF.260W piston-engined light trainer/attack aircraft; 2 C-130H Hercules transports, 2 S.208 liaison aircraft, 6 SF.260M trainers, 7 M.B.326B jet trainers, 6 UH-1H, 18 AB.205, 6 Ecureuil and about 12 Alouette II and III helicopters. Personnel (1989) about 4,100.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Tunisia is a member of UN, OAU, the Islamic Conference and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A seventh development plan (1987-91) envisaged investment of 8,000m. dinars.

**Budget** (in dinars). Budget estimates, 1988, revenue, 3,287m.; expenditure, 3,148m.

**Currency.** On 1 Nov. 1958 a new currency, the *dinar*, divided into 1,000 *millimes*, was established. Note circulation, Aug. 1980, was 910m. *dinars*.

Currency consists of coins of 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 and 500 *millimes*, and notes of 500 *millimes*, 1 *dinar*, 5 and 10 *dinars*. £1 = 1.62 *dinar*; US\$1 = 0.94 *dinar* (March 1989).

**Banking.** The Central Bank of Tunisia is the bank of issue. In 1983 there were 39 banks operating in Tunisia, including 7 off-shore banks. In 1984 there were 8 development banks. Bank deposits amounted to 2,115m. dinars at 31 Dec. 1982.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system of weights and measures has almost entirely taken the place of those of Tunisia, but corn is still sold in *kaffis* and *wibas*. The *kfiz* (of 16 *wiba*, each of 12 *sa*) = 16 bushels. The *ounce* = 31.487 grammes.

The principal measure of length is the metre.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electrical energy generated was 3,820m. kwh. in 1986. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Crude oil production (1988) 4.8m. tonnes.

**Gas.** Natural gas production (1984) 430m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Mineral production (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1984 (and 1981): Phosphate, 5,385 (4,978); iron ore, 309 (400); lead ore, 6.5 (14); zinc ore, 12.1 (15).

Processed minerals (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1982: Pig iron, 97; crude steel, 105.

**Agriculture.** Tunisia may be divided into 5 districts—the north, characterized by its mountainous formation, having large and fertile valleys (e.g., the valley of the Medjerdah and the plains of Mornag, Mateur and Béja); the north-east, with the peninsula of Cap Bon, the soil being specially suited for the cultivation of oranges, lemons and tangerines; the Sahel, where olive trees abound; the centre, the region of high table lands and pastures, and the desert of the south, famous for its oases and gardens, where dates grow in profusion.

Agriculture is the chief industry, and large estates predominate. Of the total area of 15,583,000 hectares, about 9m. hectares are productive, including 2m. under cereals, 3.6m. used as pasturage, 900,000 forests and 1.3m. uncultivated. Production, 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes) wheat, 1,360; barley, 537; olive oil, 113; citrus fruits, 287; dates, 74. Wine (1987) 70,000 tonnes.

Other products are apricots, pears, apples, peaches, plums, figs, pomegranates, almonds, shaddocks, pistachios, esparto grass, henna and cork.

**Livestock** (1987): Horses, 55,000; asses, 218,000; mules, 75,000; cattle, 610,000; sheep, 5.8m.; goats, 1,127,000; camels, 182,000; pigs, 4,000.

**Fisheries.** In 1980, 6,209 boats with 22,555 men were engaged in fishing. In 1987 the catch amounted to 96,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Major modern plants include a sugar refinery in Béja (57,700 tonnes in 1975), a cellulose plant in Kassérine (22,000 tonnes in 1976), a petroleum refinery in Bizerta and a steel plant at Menzel Bourguiba. There is a marble work plant and a tyre factory at Mégrine.

Production, 1984 (in 1,000 tonnes): Crude steel, 166; cement, 2,742; lime, 484; phosphoric acid, 550; petrol, 215.

**Trade Unions.** The Union Générale des Travailleurs Tunisiens won 27 seats in the parliamentary elections (1 Nov. 1981). There are also the Union Tunisienne de l'Industrie, du Commerce et de l'Artisanat (UTICA, the employers' union) and the Union National des Agriculteurs (UNA, farmers' union).

**Commerce.** The imports and exports for calendar years (in 1,000 dinars) were as follows:

	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	2,008,000	2,116,100	2,472,500	2,287,000	2,308,300	2,509,100
Exports	1,188,000	1,263,900	1,396,800	1,443,000	4,387,600	1,770,700

Exports to France in 1987 totalled 384.1m. dinars, and imports from France, 687.2m. dinars and exports to USA were valued at 32.1m. dinars and imports from USA were valued at 149.1m. dinars.

Total trade between Tunisia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	21,086	39,826	17,292	14,714	36,062
Exports and re-exports from UK	47,077	43,209	39,824	24,943	30,780

**Tourism.** In 1986, there were 1.5m. tourists and 40,000 cruise passengers.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 26,200 km of roads, of which 11,000 km were main roads. Number of motor vehicles, 1982, included 141,185 private cars, 141,426 commercial vehicles and 11,669 motor cycles.

**Railways.** In 1986 there were 2,175 km of railways (465 km of 1,435 mm gauge and 1,689 km of 1,000 mm gauge), of which 21 km electrified and ran 1,877m. tonne-km and 750m. passenger-km. A suburban railway links Tunis and La Marsa, and a light rail network opened in Tunis in 1985.

**Aviation.** The national airline is Tunis-Air. There are 5 international airports, the main one is at Tunis-Carthage. In 1983, 3,420,600 passengers were carried.

**Shipping.** The main port is Tunis, and its outer port is Tunis-Goulette. These two ports and Sfax, Sousse and Bizerta are directly accessible to ocean going vessels. The port of La Skhirra, in the south, is used for the shipping of Algerian and Tunisian oil.

In 1983, 5,370 ships of 19,224,000 tons entered Tunisian ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were, in 1983, 218,808 telephones. There were, in 1978, 403 post offices, and 6 wireless transmitting stations. Wireless sets in use in 1985 were 1.15m. Television began in 1966 and in 1985 there were 400,000 sets.

**Cinemas** (1976). There were 175 cinemas with a seating capacity of 44,000.

**Newspapers.** There were (1985) 2 Arabic and 4 French daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 51 magistrates' courts, 13 courts of first instance, 3 courts of appeal (in Tunis, Sfax and Sousse) and the High Court in Tunis.

A Personal Status Code was promulgated on 13 Aug. 1956 and applied to Tunisians from 1 Jan. 1957. This raised the status of women, made divorce subject to a court decision, abolished polygamy and decreed a minimum marriage age.

**Religion.** The constitution recognizes Islam as the state religion. There are about 20,000 Roman Catholics, under the Prelate of Tunis. The Greek Church, the French Protestants and the English Church are also represented.

**Education.** All education was in 1956 made dependent on the Ministry of National Education. The 208 independent koranic schools have been nationalized and the distinction between religious and public schools has been abolished. All education is free from primary schools to university. A teachers' training college (*école normale supérieure*) was established in 1955. There are also a high school of law, 2 centres of economic studies, 2 schools of engineering, 2 medical schools, a faculty of agriculture, 2 institutes of business administration and one school of dentistry.

In 1987-88 there were 3,605 primary schools with 43,189 teachers and 1,338,905 pupils; 436 secondary schools with 22,373 teachers and 437,604 pupils. In 1980-81 there were 60,137 students at technical and vocational schools and 4,101 students in teacher-training. In 1988 there were 3 universities: The University of Tunis (38,829 students and 5,019 teaching staff in 1984-85), the University of Sousse and the University of Sfax.

**Health.** In 1980 there were 98 hospitals (13,571 beds). The registered medical personnel in Tunisia comprised 1,800 doctors, 313 pharmacists, 176 dentists and 60 veterinaries.



**Social Security.** A system of social security was set up in 1950 (amended 1963, 1964 and 1970).

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Tunisia in Great Britain (29 Prince's Gate, London, SW7 1QG)

*Ambassador:* Abdelwahab Abdallah (accredited 18 Oct. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Tunisia (5 Place de la Victoire, Tunis)

*Ambassador and Consul-General:* S. P. Day, CMG.

Of Tunisia in the USA (1515 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20005)

*Ambassador:* Abdelaziz Hamzaoui.

Of the USA in Tunisia (144 Ave. de la Liberté, Tunis)

*Ambassador:* Robert H. Pelletreau, Jr.

Of Tunisia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Ahmed Ghezal.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Institut National de la Statistique (27 Rue de Liban, Tunis) was set up in 1947. Its main publications are: *Annuaire statistique de la Tunisie* (latest issue, 1975).

Findlay, Allan M., Findlay, A. M. and Lawless, R. I., *Tunisia*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982

Ling, D. L., *Tunisia: From Protectorate to Republic*. Indiana Univ. Press, 1967

Rudebeck, L., *The Tunisian Experience: Party and People*. London, 1970

Salem, N., *Habib Bourguiba, Islam and the Creation of Tunisia*. London, 1984

Tomkinson, M., *Tunisia: A Holiday Guide*. London and Hammamet, 1984

# TURKEY

*Capital:* Ankara

*Population:* 50.67m. (1985)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,020 (1986)

## Türkiye Cumhuriyeti

**HISTORY.** The Turkish War of Independence (1919–22), following the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire, was led and won by Mustafa Kemal (Atatürk) on behalf of the Grand National Assembly which first met in Ankara on 23 April 1920. On 20 Jan. 1921 the Grand National Assembly voted a constitution which declared that all sovereignty belonged to the people and vested all power, both executive and legislative, in the Grand National Assembly. The name 'Ottoman Empire' was later replaced by 'Turkey'. On 1 Nov. 1922 the Grand National Assembly abolished the office of Sultan and Turkey became a republic on 29 Oct. 1923.

Religious courts were abolished in 1924, Islam ceased to be the official state religion in 1928, women were given the franchise and western-style surnames were adopted in 1934.

On 27 May 1960 the Turkish Army, directed by a National Unity Committee under the leadership of Gen. Cemal Gürsel, overthrew the government of the Democratic Party. The Grand National Assembly was dissolved and party activities were suspended. Party activities were legally resumed on 12 Jan. 1961. A new constitution was approved in a referendum held on 9 July 1961 and general elections were held the same year.

On 12 Sept. 1980, the Turkish armed forces overthrew the Demirel Government (Justice Party). Parliament was dissolved and all activities of political parties were suspended. The Constituent Assembly was convened in Oct. 1981, and prepared a new Constitution which was enforced after a national referendum on 7 Nov. 1982.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Turkey is bounded west by the Aegean Sea and by Greece, north by Bulgaria and the Black Sea, east by the USSR and Iran, and south by Iraq, Syria and the Mediterranean.

The area (including lakes) is 779,452 sq. km (300,947 sq. miles). Area in Europe (Trakya), 23,764 sq. km. Area in Asia (Anadolu), 755,688 sq. km; population (census 1985), 50,664,458.

The census population is given as follows:

	<i>Total</i>		<i>Total</i>		<i>Total</i>
1927	13,648,270	1950	20,947,188	1970	35,605,176
1935	16,158,018	1955	24,064,763	1975	40,347,719
1940	17,820,950	1960	27,754,820	1980	44,736,957
1945	18,790,174	1965	31,391,421	1985	50,664,458

The population of the provinces, at the census in 1985, was as follows:

Adana	1,725,940	Çankırı	263,964	İzmir	2,317,829
Adıyaman	430,728	Çorum	599,204	Kahramanmaraş	840,472
Afyonkarahisar	666,978	Denizli	667,478	Kars	722,431
Ağrı	421,131	Diyarbakır	934,505	Kastamonu	450,353
Amasya	358,289	Edirne	389,638	Kayseri	864,060
Ankara	3,306,327	Elâzığ	483,715	Kırklareli	297,098
Antalya	891,149	Erzincan	299,985	Kırşehir	260,156
Artvin	226,338	Erzurum	856,175	Kocaeli	742,245
Aydın	743,419	Eskişehir	597,397	Konya	1,769,050
Balıkesir	910,282	Gaziantep	966,490	Kütahya	543,384
Bilecik	160,909	Giresun	502,151	Malatya	665,809
Bingöl	241,548	Gümüşhane	283,753	Manisa	1,050,130
Bitlis	300,843	Hakkari	182,645	Mardin	652,069
Bolu	504,778	Hatay	1,002,252	Muğla	486,290
Burdur	248,002	Isparta	382,844	Muş	339,492
Bursa	1,324,015	İçel	1,034,085	Nevşehir	278,129
Çanakkale	417,121	İstanbul	5,842,985	Niğde	560,386

Ordu	763,857	Sinop	280,140	Tunceli	151,906
Rize	374,206	Sivas	772,209	Uşak	271,261
Sakarya	610,500	Tekirdağ	402,721	Van	547,216
Samsun	1,108,710	Tokat	679,071	Yozgat	545,301
Şanlıurfa	795,034	Trabzon	786,194	Zonguldak	1,044,945
Siirt	524,741				

The population of towns of over 100,000 inhabitants, at the census of Oct. 1985, was as follows:

Istanbul	5,494,916	Diyarbakir	305,259	Denizli	171,360
Ankara	2,251,533	Samsun	280,068	Trabzon	155,960
Izmir	1,489,817	Antalya	258,139	Sakarya	155,041
Adana	776,000	Erzurum	252,648	Balikesir	152,402
Bursa	614,133	Malatya	251,257	Manisa	126,319
Gaziantep	466,302	Kocaeli	236,144	Van	121,306
Konya	438,859	K. Maraş	212,206	Kütahya	120,354
Kayseri	378,458	Şanlıurfa	206,385	Zonguldak	119,125
Eskişehir	367,328	Sivas	197,266	Hatay	109,233
İçel	314,105	Elazığ	181,253	İsparta	101,784

**CLIMATE.** Coastal regions have a Mediterranean climate, with mild, moist winters and hot, dry summers. The interior plateau has more extreme conditions, with low and irregular rainfall, cold and snowy winters and hot, almost rainless summers. Ankara. Jan. 32.5°F (0.3°C), July 73°F (23°C). Annual rainfall 14.7" (367 mm). Istanbul. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 73°F (23°C). Annual rainfall 28.9" (723 mm). Izmir. Jan. 46°F (8°C), July 81°F (27°C). Annual rainfall 28" (700 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Turkish Grand National Assembly was dissolved on 12 Sept. 1980. The National Security Council took over its functions and powers. On 23 Oct. 1981 a Consultative Assembly was inaugurated, to prepare a new Constitution to replace that of 1961. The Assembly began its work in Oct. 1981 under the presidency of Sadi İrmak and on 7 Nov. 1982 a national referendum established that 98% of the electorate were in favour of the new Constitution.

Turkish men and women are entitled to vote at the age of 21 to elect members of a single-chamber parliament.

Elections were held on 29 Nov. 1987. Of the 450 seats in the Grand National Assembly the Motherland Party won 292; The Social Democratic Populist Party, 99; The True Path Party, 59.

Past Presidents of the Republic: Mustafa Kemal Atatürk (29 Oct. 1923–10 Nov. 1938), İsmet İnönü (11 Nov. 1938–21 May 1950), Celâl Bayar (22 May 1950–27 May 1960), Cemal Gürsel (26 Oct. 1961–27 March 1966), Cevdet Sunay (29 March 1966–28 March 1973), Fahri S. Korutürk (6 April 1973–6 April 1980).

*President:* Kenan Evren.

The Cabinet in Jan. 1989 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Turgut Özal.

*Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of State:* (Vacant). *Justice:* Mehmet Topaç. *Defence:* Ercan Vuralhan. *Interior:* Mustafa Kalemli. *Foreign Affairs:* Mesut Yılmaz. *Finance and Customs:* Kurtcebe Alptemüçin. *Education, Youth and Sports:* Hasan Celal Güzel. *Health and Social Welfare:* Nihat Kitapçı. *Agriculture, Forestry and Rural Affairs:* Hüsnü Doğan. *Transportation and Communications:* Ekrem Pakdemirli. *Labour:* İmren Aykut. *Industry and Commerce:* Sükrü Yürür. *Energy and Natural Resources:* Fahrettin Kurt. *Culture and Tourism:* Mustafa Tinaz Titiz. *Public Works and Housing:* Safa Giray.

There are 9 Ministers of State.

*National flag:* A white crescent and star on red.

*National anthem:* Korkma! Sönmez bu şafaklarda yüzen al sancak (words by Mehmed Akif Ersoy; tune by Zeki Güngör; adopted 12 March 1921).

*Local Government.* The Constitution of 1921 provided for the administrative division of the country into *İl*, (province, now 67 in number), divided into *İlçe*



(district), subdivided in their turn into *Bucak* (township or commune). At the head of each İl is a Vali representing the Government. Each İl has its own elective council.

The İlçe is regarded as a mere grouping of Bucaks for certain purposes of general administration. The Bucak or commune is an autonomous entity and possesses an elective council charged with the administration of such matters as are not reserved to the State.

According to the municipal law passed in 1930, Turkish women have the right to be electors and to be elected at local and national elections.

**DEFENCE.** Several bills for the reorganization of the armed forces were passed in June 1961 by the Grand National Assembly. One of these placed all organizations connected with national defence under the authority of the Minister of National Defence. Another created a Supreme Council of National Security, under the chairmanship of the Prime Minister, with the object of co-ordinating the resources of the country in case of war. Besides the Minister of National Defence and the Chief of the General Staff, the heads of economic Ministries are members of this council.

Military service in Army, Air Force and Navy is 18 months. Men are called up when they reach the age of 20.

**Army.** The Army consists of 16 infantry divisions (2 mechanized), 6 armoured, 4 mechanized, 11 infantry, 1 parachute and 2 commando brigades; 5 coastal defence. Equipment includes 1,615 M-48, 900 M-47 and 77 Leopard main battle tanks. Army Aviation has over 400 aircraft and helicopters, including about 200 Bell transport helicopters. Strength (1989) 522,900 (including 497,000 conscripts), and reserves number 808,000. There is also a paramilitary force of 125,000 men including gendarmerie, 75,000.

**Navy.** The fleet includes 17 diesel-powered submarines (6 new designed in Federal Republic of Germany and 10 very old *ex-US* patrol submarines), 12 very old *ex-US* (1943–46 built) destroyers, 6 frigates (2 new FRG-built, 2 Turkish-built and 2 old *ex-German* Navy), 1 large minelayer, 6 coastal minelayers, 1 fast attack gunboat (light corvette type), 14 fast missile craft, 4 fast torpedo boats, 22 coastal minesweepers, 6 patrol vessels, 4 inshore minesweepers, 7 minehunting boats, 20 patrol craft, 3 repair ships, 2 submarine support ships, 1 large training ship, 1 training ship (*ex-German* support frigate), 7 landing ships, 47 landing craft, 20 minor landing craft, 3 submarine rescue ships, 9 oilers, 10 transports, 1 survey ship, 1 survey boat, 4 boom defence vessels, 3 depot ships, 4 training craft, 7 gate vessels, 30 auxiliary vessels, 14 tugs, 2 tenders, 9 water carriers, and 7 floating docks.

Future construction includes 6 diesel-electric patrol submarines designed in the Federal Republic of Germany, but to be built in Turkey; and 2 frigates, of German design but built in Gölcük.

The naval bases are at Gölcük in the Gulf of İzmit, at İskenderun, at Taskizak (İstanbul) and at İzmir.

The air component has over 30 S-2 Tracker aircraft and 15 helicopters for anti-submarine and patrol duties.

Personnel strength in 1989 totalled 55,000 naval officers and ratings, including marines.

The Coast Guard, formed in July 1982 from the naval wing of the Jandarma, with a rear-admiral as Commander-in-Chief, has 28 patrol vessels, 8 medium patrol craft, 9 coastal patrol cutters, 4 transports, 4 service craft; and an establishment of 1,100 officers and men.

**Air Force.** The Air Force is under the control of the General Staff and, operationally, under 6 ATAF. It is organized as 2 tactical air forces, with headquarters at Eskisehir and Diyarbakir, each having a flight of C-47s, UH-1H helicopters, T-33s. Combat aircraft comprise F-104G and F-104S Starfighters in 9 squadrons; F-5As in 3 squadrons; RF-5As in 1 squadron; F-4E and RF-4E Phantoms in 6 squadrons; plus Nike-Hercules surface-to-air missile batteries. The 4 transport squadrons are equipped with Transall C-160, C-130 Hercules, Citation, Viscount

and C-47 aircraft, and UH-1H helicopters. Training types include T-33A, T-37 and T-38 advanced trainers, T-34 basic and T-41 primary trainers. Personnel strength (1989) 57,400, with over 320 combat aircraft. Delivery of 160 F-16 Fighting Falcons began late in 1987.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Turkey is a member of UN, OECD, NATO and Council of Europe and an Associate of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The development plan 1985-90 envisaged an investment of TL14,412,900m.

**Budget.** The budget for 1988-89 envisaged expenditure of TL20.8m. and revenue of TL18.3m.

**Currency.** The Turkish *Lira* (TL) is divided into 100 *kurus* (*piastres*). Coins in general circulation are of the following values: 5, 10, 25, 50 and 100 *Lira*. Banknotes in circulation are as follows: 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000 and 20,000 *Lira*. In March 1989, US\$1 = 1,957 *Lira*; £1 = 3,368.

**Banking.** The Turkish banking system is composed of the Central Bank of the Republic of Turkey (Merkez Bankası) and 61 other banks. The assets and liabilities of deposit money banks in 1987 were TL37,027,597m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system came into force on 1 Jan. 1934. On 24 May 1928 the Grand National Assembly made European numerals obligatory as from 1 June 1929.

On 1 March 1917 the Gregorian calendar was introduced into Turkey, to be used side by side with the Hegira calendar, while as from 26 Dec. 1925 it was decided finally to adopt the Gregorian calendar alone.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The potential hydro-electric power in Turkey is estimated at 56,000m. kwh. In 1986 the electrical power plants (hydro-electric or thermal) produced 38,490m. kwh. Supply 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Oil is being produced in Garzan and Raman by the Turkish Petroleum Co. Under the oil law of 14 Oct. 1954 private companies can explore and produce oil. Crude oil production (1988) was 2.5m. tonnes. The 3 refineries refined 12m. tons of crude oil in 1975. With a fourth refinery, introduced in 1973, total refining capacity now reaches 24m. tons a year. The oil pipeline Batman-Iskenderun (494 km) was opened on 4 Jan. 1967. Imports (refined locally) in 1983 were 14.3m. tonnes.

**Minerals.** The Turkish provinces, especially those in Asia, are reported rich in minerals. Turkey is one of the four principal producers of chrome in the world.

Production of principal minerals (in 1,000 tonnes) was:

	1985	1986	1987
Coal	7,260	7,015	7,084
Lignite	39,437	45,470	46,481
Chrome	877	1,040	1,049
Copper concentrate	136	...	...
Refined sulphur	43	40	...
Iron	3,995	5,249	5,366
Boron	1,543	1,636	1,629

Of the Government organizations producing these ores, Zonguldak coal mines operate under the Turkish State Coal Exploitation; while the copper mines at Muş and Ergani, the Eastern chromite mines, Keçiborlu sulphur, Emet colemanite, Küre pyrite and cupriferous pyrite, Keban argentiiferous lead mines operate under the Etibank.

**Agriculture.** The number of people aged 15 and over engaged in agriculture in 1980 was 10,482,856.

In 1987, 24,318,000 hectares were crop land, 18,744,000 hectares of it sown and 5,574,000 hectares fallow; vineyards, fruit orchards and olive groves occupied 2,963,000 hectares; forest occupied 20,199,000 hectares.

The soil for the most part is very fertile; the principal products are cotton, tobacco, cereals (especially wheat), figs, silk, olives and olive oil, dried fruits, liquorice root, nuts, almonds, mohair, skins and hides, furs, wool, gums, canary seed, linseed and sesame. The principal tobacco districts are Samsun, Bafra, Çarsamba, İzmit and İzmir. Two-thirds of the exports of leaf tobacco goes to the USA. The principal centre for silk production is Bursa. The production of olives for olive oil, mainly confined to the IIs of Aydın and Balıkesir, is very important (427,000 tonnes in 1987). Sugar production (refined) in 1985 was 1,429,586 tonnes. Agricultural production (in tonnes) in 1987 included 3m. grapes, 700,000 oranges and 340,000 lemons, 280,000 hazelnuts, 1,680,000 apples, 600,000 olives, 4m. potatoes. Tea production (fresh leaves, 1987) was 660,690 tonnes.

Turkey produced 6,000 tonnes of flax fibre and 5,000 tonnes of hemp fibre in 1987. Cotton production was 537,000 tonnes in 1987. Agricultural tractors numbered 637,449 in 1987.

Production (in 1,000 tonnes) of principal crops:

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Wheat	16,400	17,200	17,000	19,000	18,900
Barley	5,425	6,500	6,500	7,000	6,900
Maize	1,480	1,500	1,900	2,300	2,400
Rye	380	360	360	350	380
Tobacco	234	178	170	158	182
Oats	320	316	314	300	325
Rice	189	168	162	165	165

Livestock (1987): 40.4m. sheep, 13.1m. goats, 12m. cattle, 1.2m. asses, 620,000 horses, 540,000 buffaloes.

In 1985 Turkey produced 62,000 tonnes of wool, 230,000 tonnes of cattle meat and 315,000 tonnes of sheep meat and (1981) 256,000 tonnes of poultry.

**Forestry.** The most wooded IIs are Kastamonu, Aydın, Bursa, Bolu, Trabzon, Konya and Balıkesir. In 1987 total forest land was 20,199,000 hectares. Produce (1,000 cu. metres) in 1987: Logs, 3,950; pit props, 652; industrial wood, 500; poles, 186. Also 4,956,000 tonnes of firewood.

**Fisheries.** Catch (1987): Sea fish, 562,697 tonnes; crustaceans and molluscs, 20,156 tonnes; fresh water fish, 41,760 tonnes. There were (1986) 8,661 fishing boats.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1987 Turkey produced (in tonnes) 8.15m. of fuel oil; 6,584,000 of motor oil; 4.1m. of crude iron; 338,000 of pig iron; 7m. of steel ingots; 3,649,000 of super phosphate; 3,017,000 of coke; 21.98m. of cement and 532,412 of paper. In 1987, 107,185 passenger cars were produced and 35,995 tractors. There are steel works at Karabük, Ereğli and Iskenderun.

**Trade Unions.** The trade-union movement began in 1947. There are 4 national confederations (including Türk-İş and Disk) and 6 federations. There are 35 unions affiliated to Türk-İş and 17 employers' federations affiliated to Disk, whose activities were banned on 12 Sept. 1980. In 1987, labour unions totalled 91 and employers' unions, 48.

Employment, 1980: Manufacturing, 2,036,843; construction, 813,838; transport, communications and warehousing, 545,686; mining, 179,127; services, 41,923. There were 157,466 manufacturing firms, 236,995 trading establishments and 580,635 service establishments in 1975.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports (in US\$1m.) for calendar years:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	10,757	11,343	11,105	14,158
Exports	7,134	7,958	7,457	10,190



Exports (1987) in US\$1m.: Food and livestock, 2,164; beverages and tobacco, 324; raw materials, 517; mineral fuels and lubricants, 238; animal and vegetable oils and fats, 83; chemicals, 675; manufactured goods, 2,669; machinery and transport equipment, 1,086; manufactured articles, 2,411.

Imports (1987) in US\$1m.: Food and livestock, 368; beverages and tobacco, 187; raw materials, 1,321; mineral fuels and lubricants, 3,171; animal and vegetable oils and fats, 145; chemicals, 2,144; manufactured goods, 2,331; machinery and transport equipment, 4,011; manufactured articles, 414.

In 1987 imports (in US\$1m.) were: From USA, 1,367; Iraq, 1,154; Iran, 948; Japan, 860; EEC, 5,666, of which Federal Republic of Germany, 2,109; Italy, 1,076; UK, 697; France, 608. Exports: Iraq, 945; USA, 714; Iran, 440; EEC, 4,868, of which Federal Republic of Germany, 2,184; Italy, 851; UK, 541.

Total trade between Turkey and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	204,131	538,462	406,605	579,366	509,636
Exports and re-exports from UK	331,360	460,220	433,753	513,479	477,539

**Tourism.** The number of foreign visitors was 2,894,177 in 1987; earnings from tourism in 1987, US\$1,028m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 31,062 km of state highways and 27,853 km of provincial roads; 55,946 km were surfaced. In 1987 there were 1,193,021 cars, 459,352 trucks and pick-ups, 159,868 buses and minibuses and 369,894 motorcycles.

**Railways.** Total length of railway lines in 1987 was 8,439 km (1,435 mm gauge) of which 479 km electrified; 130m. passengers and 13.9m. tonnes of freight were carried.

**Aviation.** In 1986 Turkish Airlines fleet of 31 planes flew 2,746,000 passengers and carried 37,952 tons of freight.

**Shipping.** In 1985 the gross tonnage of cargo ships totalled 690,784; passenger ships 131,325 and tankers 186,267. The main ports are: Istanbul, İzmir, Samsun, Mersin, İskenderun and Trabzon.

Coastal shipping, 1986: 25,543 vessels handled; 632,004 passengers entered, 626,602 cleared; 23.3m. tons of goods entered, 20.6m. cleared. International shipping: 12,383 vessels handled; 385,628 passengers entered, 380,440 cleared; 3,717m. tons of goods entered, 58.5m. cleared.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Number of telephones in 1986 was 2.28m.; Istanbul, 566,745; Ankara, 248,824.

In 1984 there were 6,023,000 licensed radio sets. There were 6,933,285 television receivers.

**Newspapers.** In 1985, 13 dailies were published in Ankara, 29 dailies in Istanbul, 5 dailies in İzmir, 4 dailies in Bursa and 3 dailies in Konya.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The unified legal system consists of: (1) justices of the peace (single judges with limited but summary penal and civil jurisdiction); (2) courts of first instance (single judges, dealing with cases outside the jurisdiction of (3) and (4)); (3) central criminal courts (a president and 2 judges, dealing with cases where the crime is punishable by imprisonment over 5 years); (4) commercial courts (3 judges); (5) state security courts, to prosecute offences against the integrity of the state (a president and 4 judges, 2 of the latter being military).

The civil and military Courts of Cassation sit at Ankara.

The Council of State is the highest administration tribunal; it consists of 5 chambers. Its 31 judges are nominated from among high-ranking personalities in politics, economy, law, the army, etc.

The Military Court of Cassation in Ankara is the highest military tribunal. The Military Administrative Court deals with the judicial control of administrative acts and deeds concerning military personnel.

The Constitutional Court, set up under the Constitution, can review and annul legislation and try the President of the Republic, Ministers and senior judges. It consists of 15 regular and 5 alternate members.

The Civil Code and the Code of Obligations have been adapted from the corresponding Swiss codes. The Penal Code is largely based upon the Italian Penal Code, and the Code of Civil Procedure closely resembles that of the Canton of Neuchâtel. The Commercial Code is based on the German.

**Religion.** Freedom of religion is guaranteed by the Constitution. Although Islam is not the official state religion of Turkey, Moslems form 98.2% of the population. The administration of the Moslem religious organizations is in charge of the Presidency of Religious Affairs, attached to the Prime Minister's office. The Turkish Republic is a secular state.

Istanbul is the seat of the Œcumenical Patriarch, who is the head of the Orthodox Church in Turkey. The Armenian Church (Gregorian) is ruled by a Patriarch in Istanbul who is subordinate to the Katholikos of Etchmiadzin, the spiritual head of all Armenians. The Armenian Apostolic Church is ruled by the Patriarch of Cilicia. The Chaldeans (Nestorian Uniats) have a Bishop at Mardin. The Syrian Uniats have a See of Mardin and Amida, but it is united with their Patriarchate of Antioch (residence, Damascus). Greek Uniats (Byzantine Rite) have as their Ordinary in Istanbul, the Titular Bishop of Gratianopolis. The Latins have an Apostolic Delegate in Istanbul and an Archbishop in İzmir, but their Patriarch of Istanbul is titular and non-resident. There is a Grand Rabbi (Hahambaşı) in Istanbul for the Jews, who are nearly all Sephardim.

A law passed in Dec. 1934 forbids the wearing of clerical garb for those other than religious leaders except in places of worship and during divine service. The constitution forbids the political exploitation of religion or any impairment of the secular character of the republic.

**Education.** Elementary education is compulsory and co-educational and, in state schools, free. All children from 7 to 12 are to receive primary instruction, which may be given in state schools, schools maintained by communities, or private schools, or, subject to certain tests, at home. The state schools are under the direct control of the Ministry of Education. They include primary schools, secondary or middle schools, and *lycées* or secondary schools of a superior kind. There are also training schools for male and female teachers, and technical schools. In 1986-87 there were 28 universities and over 100 other institutes of higher education. The important non-Moslem communities in Istanbul maintain their own schools, which, like all 'private' schools, are subject to the supervision of the Ministry of Education.

Literacy of the population of 6 years and over was 10.6% in 1927, 19.2% in 1935, 29% in 1945, 40.9% in 1955, 48.7% in 1965, 49% in 1970, 61.7% in 1975, 67.5% in 1980.

Religious instruction in schools, hitherto prohibited, was made optional in elementary and middle schools in May 1948. There are many training schools for Moslem clergy as well as a Faculty of Theology in Ankara.

<i>Statistics for 1986-87</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Teachers</i>	<i>Students</i>
Primary schools (state and private)	49,718	216,889	6,703,895
Secondary schools (state and private)	4,753	42,246	1,761,794
High schools (state and private)	1,344	55,065	672,574
Vocational and technical schools	2,131	45,219	666,319
Faculties (university and higher education)	322	24,382	481,600

**Health.** Public health is the responsibility of the Ministry of Health and Social Welfare, established in 1920; social insurance for workers comes under the Workers' Insurance Institution attached to the Ministry of Labour. A law promulgated in 1961 and implemented from 1963 provided for the nationalization of the health services within 15 years. In 1986, 2.8m. workers and employees were covered by social insurance, including free medical care.

In 1987 there were 38,829 doctors (1986), 8,410 dentists and 111,135 beds in 661 hospitals and 95 health centres.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Turkey in Great Britain (43 Belgrave Sq., London, SW1X 8PA)

*Ambassador:* Nurver Nures (accredited 16 Feb. 1989).

Of Great Britain in Turkey (Sehit Ersan Caddesi 46/A, Cankaya, Ankara)

*Ambassador:* T. L. A. Daunt, CMG.

Of Turkey in the USA (1606 23rd St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Dr Şükrü Elekdağ.

Of the USA in Turkey (110 Ataturk Blvd., Ankara)

*Ambassador:* Robert Strausz-Hupé.

Of Turkey to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Mustafa Akşin.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The State Institute of Statistics in Ankara consists of a research bureau and 10 sections dealing with agriculture, education, foreign trade, etc. It published an *Annuaire Statistique* *Istatistik Yılı* (1928–53) and *Aylık İstatistik Bülteni*, Monthly Bulletin of Statistics.

*The Turkish Constitution, 1971.* Ankara, 1972

*Resmî Gazete*, Official Gazette. Ankara

*Konjonktür*. Ministry of Commerce (three times a year, from 1940)

Banque Centrale de la République de Turquie. *Bulletin Mensuel* (from Jan. 1953)

Barchard, D., *Turkey and the West*. London, 1985

Dodd, C. H., *The Crisis of Turkish Democracy*. Beverley, 1983

Goodwin, G., *A History of Ottoman Architecture*. London, 1971

Güclü, M., *Turkey*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981

Hale, W., *The Political and Economic Development of Modern Turkey*. London, 1981

Hesper, M., *The State Tradition in Turkey*. Beverley, 1985

Kazancigil, A. and Özbudun, E., (eds.) *Atatürk: Founder of a Modern State*. London, 1981

Kinross, Lord, *Atatürk*. London, 1964

Lewis, B., *The Emergence of Modern Turkey*. OUP, 1968

Mackenzie, K., *Turkey in Transition: The West's Neglected Ally*. London, 1984

Sezer, D. B., *Turkey's Security Policies*. London, 1981

Tachau, F., *Turkey: The Politics of Authority, Democracy and Development*. New York, 1984

Weiker W., *The Modernization of Turkey*. New York, 1981

*State Library:* MilliKütüphane Müdürlüğü, Ankara.



# THE TURKS AND CAICOS ISLANDS

*Capital:* Grand Turk  
*Population:* 7,436 (1980)

**HISTORY.** After a long period of rival French and Spanish claims the islands were eventually secured to the British Crown by the appointment in 1766 of a Resident British Agent, and became a separate colony in 1973 after association at various times with the colonies of the Bahamas and Jamaica.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Turks and Caicos Islands are geographically part of the Bahamas extremity, of which they form the south-eastern archipelago. There are upwards of 30 small cays; area 192 sq. miles (430 sq. km). Only 6 are inhabited; the largest, Grand Caicos, is 30 miles long by 2 to 3 miles broad. The seat of government is at Grand Turk, 7 miles long by 1.25 broad; 3,098 inhabitants. Population, 1980 census, 7,436; South Caicos, 1,380; Middle Caicos, 396; North Caicos, 1,278; Providenciales, 977; Salt Cay, 284. Estimate (1988) 10,800.

Vital statistics (1985): Births, 217; marriages, 49; deaths, 72.

**CLIMATE.** An equable and healthy climate as a result of regular trade winds, though hurricanes are sometimes experienced. Grand Turk. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 29" (725 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was introduced in Aug. 1976, providing for an Executive Council and a Legislative Council. The Governor retains responsibility for external affairs, internal security, defence and certain other matters. The Executive Council comprises 3 official members: The Chief Secretary, the Financial Secretary and the Attorney-General; a Chief Minister and 3 other ministers from among the elected members of the Legislative Council; and is presided over by the Governor. The Legislative Council consists of a Speaker, the 3 official members of the Executive Council, 13 elected members and 2 appointed members. At general elections held on 3 March 1988 for the 13 elective seats on the Legislative Council, 11 seats were won by the People's Democratic Movement.

*Governor:* M. J. Bradley.

*Chief Minister:* Oswald Skipping

*Flag:* British Blue Ensign with the shield of the Colony in the fly.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** 1988-89 local revenue US\$16,006,368; budgetary aid, US\$1,084,271; expenditure, US\$17,090,639.

**Currency.** The currency in circulation is US\$.

**Banking.** In 1988 there were 3 commercial banks. Barclays Bank, Bank of Nova Scotia and Turks and Caicos Banking Company have offices in Grand Turk.

**COMMERCE** (1985-86). Exports, US\$3,509,224, and imports, US\$29,106,090. Principal imports, food, drink, manufactured goods. Origin of imports (1985-86 in US\$1): USA, 26,149,337; UK, 558,378. The main exports are crawfish (US\$1.08m. in 1985-86), dried and fresh frozen conch (US\$2.4m. in 1985-86). All crawfish, conch and other fish exports go to the USA after processing in plants in South Caicos and Providenciales.

Total trade between Turks and Caicos Islands and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	12	6	86	31	66
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,533	1,063	1,025	496	710

**TOURISM.** Number of hotels and guest houses, 34 (700 rooms/units) including the 346 room Club Méditerranée. Number of visitors, 1987, 36,647.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Aviation.** There is a 6,335 ft paved airfield on Grand Turk. On South Caicos there is a 6,000 ft paved airfield and on Providenciales a 7,000 ft paved airstrip. There are small paved and unpaved airstrips on the other 3 inhabited islands. Pan American World Airways operate passenger services to Miami. Turks and Caicos National Airlines operates daily service to the islands and a number of flights a week to Cap-Haïtien (Haiti), the Dominican Republic and the Bahamas. Turks Air Ltd and Caicos Caribbean operate regular weekly cargo services from Miami. There are 5 local charter operators, operating charters to the Bahamas and the Caribbean.

**Shipping.** Registered shipping (1985), 168 sailing vessels of 2,445 tons and 49 motor vessels of 5,517 tons.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Air-mail is received 4 times weekly from Miami and dispatched twice weekly to Miami. Surface mail from all parts of the world is routed via the US arriving weekly from Miami, Florida. There is no regular outgoing surface mail and this is sent as accumulated. Cable & Wireless (West Indies) provide internal and international cable, telephone, telex, telegraph and facsimile services. There were (1988) 1,359 telephones. North Caicos and Salt Cay are linked with the Providenciales and Grand Turk exchanges respectively. The Government operates a radio broadcasting service from Grand Turk to the Islands, call sign Radio Turks and Caicos (RTC), for a total of 98 hours a week on 1,460 KHZ medium wave. Number of receivers, approximately 12,000.

**Newspapers.** The *Turks and Caicos News* is published weekly.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Laws are a mixture of Statute and Common Law. There is a Magistrates Court and a Supreme Court. Appeals lie from the Supreme Court to the Court of Appeal which sits in Nassau, Bahamas. There is a further appeal in certain cases to the Privy Council in London.

**Religion.** The Christian faith predominates with Anglican, Methodist, Baptist, Church of God of Prophecy and New Testament Church of God being the largest group.

**Education.** Education is free and compulsory up to 15 years of age in the 14 government primary and 3 government secondary schools. There are also 3 private primary schools. Pupils at Turks and Caicos High School, 371; South Caicos, 174; Providenciales, 103; North Caicos, 224. Expenditure on education 1988-89 was US\$1,878,003.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 5 doctors and 30 hospital beds.

# TUVALU

*Capital:* Fongafale  
*Population:* 8,229 (1985)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$500 (1984)

**HISTORY.** Formerly the Ellice Islands, a British Protectorate since 1892. On the recommendation of a Commissioner, appointed by the British Government, to consider requests that the island group be separated from the Gilbert Islands, a referendum was held in 1974. There was a large majority in favour of separation and this took place in Oct. 1975. Independence was achieved on 1 Oct. 1978.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tuvalu (formerly the Ellice Islands) lies between 5° 30' and 11° S. lat. and 176° and 180° E. long. and comprise Nanumea, Nanumanga, Niutao, Nui, Vaitupu, Nukufetau, Funafuti (administrative centre), Nukulaelae and Niulakita. Population (census 1985) 8,229 and 1,500 work abroad, mainly in Nauru. Area approximately 9½ sq. miles (24 sq. km). The population is of a Polynesian race.

**CLIMATE.** A pleasant but monotonous climate with temperatures averaging 86°F (30°C), though trade winds from the east moderate conditions for much of the year. Rainfall ranges from 120'' (3,000 mm) to over 160'' (4,000 mm). Funafuti. Jan. 84°F (28.9°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 160'' (4,003 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution provides for a Prime Minister and 4 other Ministers to be elected from among the 12 elected members of the House of Parliament, for which general elections took place in Sept. 1985. The Cabinet, chaired by the Prime Minister, consists of the 4 ministers and 2 *ex officio* members, the Attorney-General and the Secretary to Government, who are also *ex officio* members of the House of Assembly.

*Governor-General:* Tupua Leupena, GCVO, MBE.

*Prime Minister:* Rt. Hon. Dr Tomasi Puapua.

*Finance:* Kitiseni Lopati. *Social Services:* Telava Tevasa. *Commerce and Natural Resources:* Lale Seluka. *Works and Communications:* Solomon M. Tealof.

*National flag:* Light blue with the Union Jack in the canton, and 9 gold stars in the fly arranged in the same pattern as the 9 islands.

*Local Government.* There is a town council on Funafuti and island councils on the 7 other atolls, each consisting of 6 elected members including a president. Since 1966 Members of Parliament have been *ex-officio* members of Island Councils. The island of Niulakita is administered as part of Niutao.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Tuvalu is a member of the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987 the budget envisaged expenditure of \$A4,194,830.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the Australian *dollar* although Tuvaluan coins up to \$A1 are in local circulation.

**Banking.** The Tuvalu National Bank was established at Funafuti in 1980 and is a joint venture between the Tuvalu Government and Wespac International.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 3m. kwh.



**Agriculture.** Coconut palms are the main crop. Production of copra (1984), 860 tonnes. Fruit and vegetables are grown for local consumption.

**Fisheries.** Sea fishing is excellent but is largely unexploited although (1988) Japanese, Taiwanese and South Korean vessels have been granted licences to fish. The USSR was refused a licence.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main sources of income are from overseas remittances from Tuvaluans working abroad, philatelic and copra sales, and handicrafts.

**Employment.** A significant number of the population are employed in the phosphate industry on Nauru. The remainder are engaged in harvesting coconuts and fishing.

**Commerce.** Commerce is dominated by co-operative societies, the Tuvalu Co-operative Wholesale Society being the main importer. Imports (1984) \$A3.96m.

Total trade between Tuvalu and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	11	—	88	2	1
Exports and re-exports from UK	82	87	78	106	105

**Tourism.** In 1979 there were 474 visitors.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Aviation.** Tuvalu is linked to the outside world by Fiji Air which operates three times a week, on Monday, Wednesday and Friday, and Air Marshal once a week on Saturdays from Kiribati and Sundays from Fiji.

**Shipping.** Funafuti is the only port and a deep-water wharf was opened in 1980. Inter-island communication is by ship.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The Tuvalu Broadcasting Service transmits daily in Tuvaluan and English and all islands have daily radio communication with Funafuti. There were 120 telephones and 2,000 radio receivers in 1984.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a High Court presided over by the Chief Justice of Fiji. Appeals lie to the Fiji Court of Appeal.

**Religion.** The majority of the population are Christians mainly Protestant but with small groups of Roman Catholics, Seventh Day Adventists, Jehovah's Witnesses, Mormons and Bahai's. There are some Moslems.

**Education.** In 1985 there was 1 secondary school jointly administered by the Government and the Church with 250 pupils. In addition there were 9 primary schools with (1985, inclusive of 326 pupils in community training centres) 924 pupils run by Island Councils and subsidized by the central government. In 1979, a maritime school was opened on Amatuku islet. Tuvaluans requiring further education must seek it abroad.

**Health.** In 1984 there was 1 central hospital with 36 beds situated at Funafuti. There were 4 doctors.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Great Britain in Tuvalu

*High Commissioner:* R. A. R. Barltrop, CMG, CVO (resides in Suva).

Of Tuvalu in the USA

*Ambassador:* Gregory Polson (resides in Tuvalu).

# UGANDA

*Capital:* Kampala

*Population:* 15.5m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$230 (1984)

**HISTORY.** Uganda became a British Protectorate in 1894, the province of Buganda being recognized as a native kingdom under its Kabaka. In 1961 Uganda was granted internal self-government with federal status for Buganda.

Uganda became a fully independent member of the Commonwealth on 9 Oct. 1962 after nearly 70 years of British rule. Full sovereign status was granted by the Uganda Independence Act, 1962, and the Constitution is embodied in the Uganda (Independence) Order in Council, 1962. The post of Governor-General was on 9 Oct. 1963 replaced by that of President as head of state, elected by the National Assembly for a 5-year term. Uganda became a republic on 8 Sept. 1967.

In 1971, Dr A. Milton Obote was overthrown by troops led by Gen. Idi Amin.

In April 1979 a force of the Tanzanian Army and Ugandan exiles advanced into Uganda taking Kampala on 11 April. On 14 April Dr Yusuf Lule was sworn in as President and the country was administered, initially, by the Uganda National Liberation Front.

The former Attorney-General, Godfrey Lukongwa Binaisa, QC, was appointed President by the National Consultative Council on 20 June 1979. Dr Lule subsequently left the country. Dr Binaisa was subsequently overthrown in May 1980 by the Military Commission, the military arm of Uganda National Liberation Front.

At the elections held on 10–11 Dec. 1980, the Uganda People's Congress, led by Dr A. Milton Obote, was declared to have held 72 of the 124 elective seats in the new Parliament, the Democratic Party 51 seats, and the Uganda Patriotic Movement 1 seat. There were 17 specially elected members.

On 27 July 1985 President Obote was overthrown, the Constitution suspended and the borders closed. Lieut.-Gen. Tito Okello became head of State on 29 July but on the following day the National Resistance Army stated that it was not prepared to co-operate with the new regime. A ceasefire between the NRA, under Yoweri Museveni, and government forces was agreed on 17 Dec. 1985.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Uganda is bounded on the north by Sudan, on the east by Kenya, on the south by Tanzania and Rwanda, and the west by Zaïre. Total area 91,343 sq. miles (236,860 sq. km), including 15,217 sq. miles (39,459 sq. km) of swamp and water.

The population was (census 1980) 12,630,076; (estimate 1987) 15,500,000. In 1980, 12% lived in urban areas, the largest towns (1980 Census) being Kampala, the capital (458,423), Jinja (45,060), Masaka (29,123), Mbale (28,039), Mbarara (23,155), Entebbe (20,472) and Gulu (14,958). The areas, populations and capitals of the 10 provinces are:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1980</i>	<i>Capital</i>
Busoga	13,340	1,221,872	Jinja
Central	6,270	1,117,648	Kampala
Eastern	22,260	2,015,530	Mbale
Karamoja	26,960	350,908	Moroto
Nile	15,730	811,755	Arua
North Buganda	27,010	1,554,371	Bombo
Northern	41,520	1,261,364	Gulu
South Buganda	15,970	905,754	Masaka
Southern	21,280	1,963,428	Mbarara
Western	30,980	1,427,446	Butebe

About 70% of the population (10.7m. inhabitants in 1986) speak Bantu languages, the major groups being the Baganda (18%), Banyoro (14%), Banyankole (8%), Bagisu (10%), Basoga (8%) and Bachiga (7%). About 16% were Nilotic groups

in the north, chiefly the Lango (6.5%) and Acholi (4%), and the rest mainly Nilo-Hamitic, predominantly Turkana (8%) and Karamojong (3%) in the northeast. The official language is English, but Kiswahili is also widely used as a lingua franca.

**CLIMATE.** Although in equatorial latitudes, the climate is more tropical, because of its elevation, and is characterized the year round by hot sunshine, cool breezes and showers of rain. The wettest months are March to June and there is no dry season. Temperatures vary little over the year. Kampala. Jan. 74°F (23.3°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,150 mm). Entebbe. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 60" (1,506 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Following the seizure of control by the National Resistance Army on 26 Jan. 1986, a 24-member National Resistance Council was formed as the principal political body. In Jan. 1989 the government was composed as follows:

*President, Minister of Defence:* Yoweri Museveni (sworn in 29 Jan. 1986).

*Prime Minister:* Dr Samson Kisekka.

*First Deputy Prime Minister:* E. Kategaya. *Second Deputy Prime Minister, Minister of Foreign Affairs:* Dr K. Ssemwogerere. *Third Deputy Prime Minister:* Abu Mayanja. *Finance:* Dr C. Kiyonga. *Co-operatives and Marketing:* James Waphakabulo. *Health:* Adoko Nekyon. *Public Service and Cabinet Affairs:* T. Rubale. *Industry and Technology:* Dr S. Tumwine. *Works:* Dan Kigozi. *Internal Affairs:* Ibrahim Mukiibi. *Information and Broadcasting:* A. Kirunda Kivejinja. *Planning and Economic Development:* Y. Kyesimira. *Commerce:* Paul Etyang. *Rehabilitation:* Chango Macho. *Lands and Surveys:* B. Okello Luwum. *Water and Mineral Development:* R. Kitariko. *Justice and Attorney-General:* Dr G. Kanyeihamba. *Tourism and Wildlife:* Brig. Moses Ali. *Education:* J. Nkangi. *Agriculture:* J. Sekitoleko. *Transport and Communication:* Dr Ruhakana Rugunda. *Animal Industry and Fisheries:* Dr Mondo Kagonyera. *Energy:* Jaberu Bidandi Ssali. *Youth, Culture and Sports:* Dr J. Kakonge. *Labour:* Stanley Okurut. *Environment Protection:* J. Okune. *Without Portfolio:* D. Kibirango. *Constitutional Affairs:* S. K. Njuba. *Regional Co-operation:* J. Mulenga. *Housing and Urban Development:* J. Sebana Kizito. *Local Government:* Amanywa Mushega.

*National flag:* Six horizontal stripes of black, yellow, red, black, yellow, red, in the centre a small white disc bearing a representation of a Balearic Crested Crane.

*Local government:* There are 10 provinces divided into 33 districts.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The National Resistance Army had a strength of about 35,000 in 1989 and is loosely organized in 6 brigades and some battalions. Equipment includes some BTR-60 armoured personnel carriers and 7 helicopters.

**Navy.** A small lake patrol was initiated in 1977.

**Air Force.** Since 1979, the service has been in a period of decline. As far as is known in early 1989, the equipment received from the East Bloc (MiG-17 and MiG-21 combat aircraft and L-29 jet trainers) is in storage. It is understood that some aircraft of Western European origin are still serviceable, including a small number of AS.202 Bravo and SF.260 trainers and about 6 Agusta-Bell helicopters, plus 3 Mi-24 armed helicopters, reportedly donated by Libya. The Police Air Wing still operates 2 fixed-wing aircraft and 7 Bell helicopters.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Uganda is a member of UN, OAU, the Non-Aligned Movement, the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987-88 revenue was 44,700m. Uganda Sh. and expenditure, 53,200m. Uganda Sh.



**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *Uganda shilling* divided into 100 *cents*. In May 1987 a new 'heavy' shilling was introduced worth 100 old shillings. In March 1989, £1 = 284.74 Uganda shillings; US\$1 = 165.45 Uganda shillings.

**Banking.** The Bank of Uganda was established on 16 May 1966. The Uganda Credit and Savings Bank, established in 1950, was on 9 Oct. 1965 reconstituted as the Uganda Commercial Bank, with its capital fully owned by the Government.

Barclays Bank of Uganda Ltd. has 4 branches, Standard Bank Uganda Ltd. has 1 branch, Bank of Baroda Uganda Ltd. has 3 branches and the Libyan Arab Uganda Bank for Foreign Trade and Development has 3 branches, the Uganda Commercial Bank has 56 branches. The Co-operative Bank which is owned by the Co-operative Movement. There are 2 Development Banks; the East African Development Bank and the Uganda Development Bank.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Industrial expansion is based on hydro-electric power provided by the Owen Falls scheme, which has a capacity of 150,000 kwh. Production (1986) 287m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Production, 1984: Copper ore (metal content) 1,100 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** In 1989, agriculture was still recovering from the administration of 1971-79. Cotton and coffee are the principal exports, the former being grown entirely and the latter very largely by African farmers. Production (1986) in 1,000 tonnes: Tobacco, 4; coffee, 195; cotton lint, 8; tea, 3; sugar-cane, 550.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 5.2m.; sheep, 1.72m.; goats, 3.32m.; pigs, 260,000; poultry, 19m.

**Forestry.** Exploitable forests consist almost entirely of hardwoods. About 50% of the timber exported goes to the UK and another 25% to Kenya and Tanzania, from which the bulk of the softwood imports are obtained.

**Fisheries.** With its 13,600 sq. miles of lakes and many rivers, Uganda possesses one of the largest fresh-water fisheries in the world. In 1983 fish production was 172,000 tonnes. Fish farming (especially carp and tilapia) is a growing industry.

**COMMERCE.** In 1987 imports were US\$605.5m. and exports, US\$319.4m.

Total trade between Uganda and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	46,750	48,571	50,870	37,076	30,487
Exports and re-exports from UK	29,294	39,925	26,046	38,545	35,340

**Tourism.** There were 35,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1985) 7,582 km of all-weather roads maintained by the Ministry of Works, of which 1,934 km are two-lane bitumenized highways, and some 19,640 km of other roads, maintained by district governments.

**Railways.** On 26 Aug. 1977 Uganda Railways was formed following break-up of the East African railway administration. The network totals 1,286 km (metre gauge). In 1986 railways carried 1.5m. passengers and 315,819 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** The International Airport, at Entebbe, has direct flights to Europe, Zimbabwe, Sudan, Kenya, Burundi, Ghana, Ethiopia, Zaïre, Nigeria, USSR, and Rwanda by Sudan Airways, Air Congo, SABENA, Air France, Ethiopian Airlines, Air Zaïre and Aeroflot. Eleven other government airfields are used for internal communications.

**Posts and Broadcasting.** There were 54,400 telephones in use in 1983. There were 600,000 radio receivers and about 90,000 television sets in 1986.

**Cinemas.** In 1971 there were 16 cinemas with a seating capacity of 8,000.

**Newspapers.** There was 1 daily newspaper in 1986 with a circulation of 25,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The High Court of Uganda, presided over by the Chief Justice and 15 puisne judges, exercises original and appellate jurisdiction throughout Uganda. Subordinate courts, presided over by Chief Magistrates and Magistrates of the first, second and third grade, are established in all areas: jurisdiction varies with the grade of Magistrate. Chief and first-grade Magistrates are professionally qualified; second- and third-grade Magistrates are trained to diploma level at the Law School, Entebbe. Chief Magistrates exercise supervision over and hear appeals from second- and third-grade courts.

The Court of Appeal of Uganda hears appeals from the High Court.

**Religion.** About 62% of the population are Christian and 6% Moslem.

**Education.** In 1988 there were 2,209,446 pupils in 7,905 primary schools (2,193,421 in 7,420 Government-aided schools and 16,025 in 485 private schools); 13,173 students in 94 teacher training colleges; 6,556 students in 24 technical schools and 28 technical institutes; 2,106 students in 10 national teachers colleges; 735 students in 5 Uganda technical colleges; 1,009 students in 5 Uganda Colleges of Commerce; 631 students in 1 Institute of Teacher Education (offering degree courses); 504 students in 1 Uganda Polytechnic Kyambogo; 333 students in Uganda College of Business Studies, Nakawa; 1,318 students in Makerere University and 163 in Islamic University, Mbale.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 76 hospitals and 20,343 hospital beds. The medical department has 8 such schools for training nurses, midwives, medical assistants, health inspectors, and other medical staff.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Uganda in Great Britain (Uganda Hse., Trafalgar Sq., London, WC2N 5DX)  
*High Commissioner:* William S. K. Matovu (accruited 7 July 1988).

Of Great Britain in Uganda (10/12 Parliament Ave., Kampala)  
*High Commissioner:* Sir Derek March, KBE.

Of Uganda in the USA (5909 16th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20011)  
*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of the USA in Uganda (British High Commission Bldg., Obote Ave., Kampala)  
*Ambassador:* Robert G. Houdek.

Of Uganda to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Wanume Kibedi.

## Further Reading

- Atlas of Uganda.* Dept. of Lands and Surveys. Kampala, 1962  
Collison, R. L., *Uganda.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981  
Jorgensen, J. J., *Uganda: A Modern History.* London, 1981  
Kitching, A. L. and Blackledge, G. R., *A Luganda-English and English-Luganda Dictionary.* Kampala, 1925  
Larimore, A. E., *The Alien Town: Patterns of Settlement in Uganda.* Chicago, 1959  
Listowel, J., *Amin.* Irish Univ. Press, 1973  
Mamdani, M., *Imperialism and Fascism in Uganda.* London, 1983

# UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS

*Capital:* Moscow  
*Population:* 284.5m. (1988)

Soyuz Sovyetskikh  
Sotsialisticheskikh  
Respublik

**POST-REVOLUTION HISTORY.** Up to 12 March 1917 the territory now forming the USSR, together with that of Finland, Poland and certain tracts ceded in 1918 to Turkey, but less the territories then forming part of the German, Austro-Hungarian and Japanese empires—East Prussia, Eastern Galicia, Transcarpathia, Bukovina, South Sakhalin and Kurile Islands—which were acquired during and after the Second World War, was constituted as the Russian Empire. It was governed as an autocracy under the Tsar, with the aid of Ministers responsible to himself and a State Duma with limited legislative powers, elected by provincial assemblies chosen by indirect elections on a restricted franchise.

On 8 March 1917 a revolution broke out. The Duma parties, on 12 March, set up a Provisional Committee of the State Duma, while the factory workmen and the insurgent garrison of Petrograd elected a Council (Soviet) of Workers' and Soldiers' Deputies. Soviets were also elected by the workmen in other towns, in the Army and Navy and, as time went on, by the peasantry. On 15 March 1917 the Tsar abdicated, and the Provisional Committee, by agreement with the Petrograd Soviet, appointed a Provisional Government and, on 14 Sept., proclaimed a republic. However, a political struggle went on between the supporters of the Provisional Government—the Mensheviks and the Socialist Revolutionaries—and the Bolsheviks, who advocated the assumption of power by the Soviets. When they had won majorities in the Soviets of the principal cities and of the armed forces on several fronts, the Bolsheviks organized an insurrection through a Military-Revolutionary Committee of the Petrograd Soviet. On 7 Nov. 1917 the Committee arrested the Provisional Government and transferred power to the second All-Russian Congress of Soviets. This elected a new government, the Council of People's Commissars, headed by Lenin.

On 25 Jan. 1918 the third All-Russian Congress of Soviets issued a Declaration of Rights of the Toiling and Exploited People, which proclaimed Russia a Republic of Soviets of Workers', Soldiers' and Peasants' Deputies; and on 10 July 1918 the fifth Congress adopted a Constitution for the Russian Soviet Federal Socialist Republic. In the course of the civil war other Soviet Republics were set up in the Ukraine, Belorussia and Transcaucasia. These first entered into treaty relations with the RSFSR and then, in 1922, joined with it in a closely integrated Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The total area of the Soviet Union in April 1989 was 22.4m. sq. km (8.65m. sq. miles). The census population on 15 Jan. 1970 was 241.7m. (111.4m. males, 130.3m. females; 136m. urban, 105.7m. rural). The census population on 17 Jan. 1979 was 262.4m. (122.3m. males, 140.1m. females, 163.6m. urban, 98.9m. rural). The increase of 27.6m. in urban population between 1970 and 1979 was due to natural increase and 15.6m. rural dwellers becoming part of the urban population resulting from migration because of the development of industry and transport, and increased farm mechanization, and from the urbanization of large rural centres. Consequently, despite a natural increase of 8.7m. in rural areas, there was a net decrease of 6.9m. over this period. Population at 1 Jan. 1987, 281.7m. (132.5m. males, 149.2m. females; 186m. urban; 95.7m. rural).

The Soviet social structure is officially described as consisting of two friendly social classes—workers and collective farm peasantry—and a social stratum, the



intelligentsia, who are engaged in mental rather than manual labour. In 1987 workers (in industry and state-owned agriculture) accounted for 61.8% of total population, collective farmers for 12% and intelligentsia for 26.2%.

The areas (in 1,000 sq. km) and population (in 1m., in Jan. 1987) of the constituent republics are as follows (capitals in brackets):

<i>Constituent Republics</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Constituent Republics</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>
RSFSR (Moscow)	17,075	145.3	Tadzhikistan (Dushanbe)	143	4.8
Ukraine (Kiev)	604	51.2	Kirgizia (Frunze)	199	4.1
Uzbekistan (Tashkent)	447	19.0	Lithuania (Vilnius)	65	3.6
Kazakhstan (Alma-Ata)	2,717	16.2	Armenia (Yerevan)	30	3.4
Belorussia (Minsk)	208	10.1	Turkmenistan (Ashkhabad)	488	3.4
Azerbaijan (Baku)	87	6.8	Latvia (Riga)	64	2.6
Georgia (Tbilisi)	70	5.3	Estonia (Tallinn)	45	1.6
Moldavia (Kishinev)	34	4.2			

*Nationalities.* The most numerous nationalities at the 1979 census were: 137.4m. Russians, 42.3m. Ukrainians, 12.5m. Uzbeks, 9.5m. Belorussians, 6.6m. Kazakhs, 6.3m. Tatars, 5.5m. Azerbaijanians, 4.1m. Armenians, 3.6m. Georgians, 3m. Moldavians, 2.9m. Tadzhiks, 2.9m. Lithuanians, 2m. Turkmenians, 1.9m. Germans, 1.9m. Kirgiz, 1.8m. Jews, 1.8m. Chuvashes, 1.4m. Latvians, 1.4m. Bashkirs, 1.2m. Mordovians, 1.2m. Poles, 1m. Estonians. The great majority (in each case 73-99%) indicated the language of their nationality as their native tongue; exceptions were the Bashkirs (67%), Germans (57%), Poles (29%) and Jews (14%).

Estimated losses of population in the Second World War, 20m., of which 7m. were military losses.

The following tables show the growth of the population in Russia:

1897 (Russian Empire)	126,900,000	1959 (census)	208,826,650
1913 (Russian Empire)	170,900,000	1970 (census)	241,720,134
1913 (present frontiers)	159,153,000	1979 (census)	262,436,227
1939 (census)	170,557,093		

The following was the population on 1 Jan. 1987 of the larger towns (in 1,000):

Akt'yubinsk	248	Dzerzhinsk (Gorky region)	281	Komsomolsk-on-Amur	316
Alma-Ata	1,108	Engels	182	Kostroma	276
Andizhan	288	Ferghana	203	Kramatorsk	198
Angarsk	262	Frunze	632	Krasnodar	623
Arkhangelsk	416	Gomel	488	Krasnoyarsk	899
Armavir	172	Gorlovka	345	Kremenchug	230
Ashkhabad	382	Gorky	1,425	Krivoi Rog	698
Astrakhan	509	Grodno	263	Kuibyshev	1,280
Baku	1,741	Grozny	404	Kurgan	354
Barnaul	596	Irkutsk	609	Kursk	434
Belaya Tserkov	194	Ivano-Frankovsk	225	Kustanai	212
Belgorod	293	Ivanovo	479	Kutaisi	220
Berezniki	200	Izhevsk	631	Kzyl-Orda	189
Biisk	231	Kalinin	447	Leninakan	228
Blagoveshchensk	202	Kaliningrad	394	Leningrad	4,948
Bobruisk	232	Kaluga	307	Lipetsk	465
Bratsk	249	Kamensk-Uralskii	204	Lvov	767
Brest	238	Karaganda	633	Lyubertsy	162
Bryansk	445	Kaunas	417	Magnitogorsk	430
Bukhara	220	Kazan	1,068	Makeyevka	455
Cheboksary	414	Kemerovo	520	Makhachkala	320
Chelyabinsk	1,119	Kerch	173	Mariupol	529
Cherepovetz	315	Khabarovsk	591	Melitopol	174
Cherkassy	287	Kharkov	1,587	Minsk	1,543
Chernigov	291	Kherson	358	Mogilev	359
Chernovtzy	254	Kiev	2,554	Moscow	8,815
Chimkent	389	Kirov	421	Murmansk	432
Chita	349	Kirovabad (Azerbaijan)	270	Naberezhnye Chelny	480
Djambul	315	Kirovograd	269	Nalchik	236
Dneprodzerzhinsk	279	Kishinev	663	Namangan	291
Dnepropetrovsk	1,182	Klaipeda	201	Nikolayev	501
Donetsk	1,090			Nizhni Tagil	427
Dushanbe	582				

Norilsk	181	Rostov-on-Don	1,004	Temirtau	228
Novgorod	228	Rovno	233	Togliatti	627
Novocherkassk	188	Rubtsovsk	168	Tomsk	489
Novokuznetsk	589	Ryazan	508	Tselinograd	276
Novorossiisk	179	Rybinsk	254	Tula	538
Novosibirsk	1,423	Samarkand	388	Tyumen	456
Odessa	1,141	Saransk	323	Ufa	1,092
Omsk	1,134	Saratov	918	Ulan-Ude	351
Ordzhonikidze		Semipalatinsk	330	Ulyanovsk	589
(Vladikavkaz)	313	Sevastopol	350	Uralsk	201
Orel	335	Severodvinsk	239	Ust-Kamenogorsk	321
Orenburg	537	Shakhty	225	Vilnius	566
Orsk	273	Simferopol	338	Vinnitsa	383
Osh	209	Smolensk	338	Vitebsk	347
Pavlodar	331	Sochi	317	Vladimir	343
Penza	540	Stavropol	306	Vladivostok	615
Perm	1,075	Sterlitamak	251	Volgograd	988
Petropavlovsk-		Sumgait	234	Vologda	278
Kamchatskii	252	Sumy	268	Volzhsky	257
Petropavlovsk (North		Sverdlovsk	1,331	Voronezh	872
Kazakhstan)	233	Sykt'yvkar	224	Voroshilovgrad	509
Petrozavodsk	264	Syzran	174	Yaroslavl	634
Podolsk	209	Taganrog	295	Yerevan	1,168
Poltava	309	Tallinn	478	Yoshkar-Ola	243
Prokopyevsk	278	Tambov	305	Zaporozhye	875
Pskov	202	Tashkent	2,124	Zhitomir	287
Riga	900	Tbilisi	1,194	Zlatoust	206

*Narodnoe khozyaistvo SSSR*. Moscow, annual

*Ezhegodnik Bol'shoi Sovetskoi Entsiklopedii*. Moscow, annual

*Itogi Vsesoyuznoi perepisi naseleniya 1970 goda*. 7 vols. Moscow, 1972-74

*Chislennost' i sostav naseleniya SSSR po dannym Vsesoyuznoi perepisi 1979 goda*. Moscow, 1984

*Naselenie SSSR 1987*. Moscow, 1988

*Sovetskii Soyuz. Geograficheskoe opisaniye*. 22 vols. Moscow, 1966-72

Cole, J. P., *Geography of the Soviet Union*. London, 1984

Howe, G. Melvyn, *The Soviet Union: a Geographical Survey* (2nd ed.). London, 1983

Symons, L., (ed.), *The Soviet Union: a Systematic Geography*. London, 1983

Wixman, R., *The Peoples of Russia and the USSR*. London, 1984

**CLIMATE.** The USSR comprises several different climatic regions, ranging from polar conditions in the north, through sub-arctic and humid continental, to sub-tropical and semi-arid conditions in the south. Rainfall amounts are greatest in areas bordering the Baltic, Black Sea, Caspian Sea and eastern coasts of Asiatic Russia. In most cases, there is a summer maximum.

Moscow. Jan. 15°F (-9.4°C), July 65°F (18.3°C). Annual rainfall 25.2" (630 mm). Arkhangelsk. Jan. 5°F (-15°C), July 57°F (13.9°C). Annual rainfall 20.1" (503 mm). Kiev. Jan. 21°F (-6.1°C), July 68°F (20°C). Annual rainfall 22" (554 mm). Leningrad. Jan. 17°F (-8.3°C), July 64°F (17.8°C). Annual rainfall 19.5" (488 mm). Vladivostok. Jan. 6°F (-14.4°C), July 65°F (18.3°C). Annual rainfall 24" (599 mm).

## CONSTITUTION

**Constituent Republics.** The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics was formed by the union of the RSFSR, the Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, the Belorussian Soviet Socialist Republic and the Transcaucasian Soviet Socialist Republic; the Treaty of Union was adopted by the first Soviet Congress of the USSR on 30 Dec. 1922. In Oct. 1924 the Uzbek and Turkmen Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics and in Dec. 1929 the Tadzhik Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic were declared constituent members of the USSR, becoming Union Republics.

At the 8th Congress of the Soviets, on 5 Dec. 1936, a new constitution of the USSR was adopted. The Transcaucasian Republic was split up into the Armenian Soviet Socialist Republic, the Azerbaijan Soviet Socialist Republic and the Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic, each of which became constituent republics of the Union. At the same time the Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic and the Kirghiz

Soviet Socialist Republic, previously autonomous republics within the RSFSR, were proclaimed constituent republics of the USSR.

In Sept. 1939 Soviet troops occupied eastern Poland as far as the 'Curzon line', which in 1919 had been drawn on ethnographical grounds as the eastern frontier of Poland, and incorporated it into the Ukrainian and Belorussian Soviet Socialist Republics. In Feb. 1951 some districts of the Droghobych Region of the Ukraine and the Lublin Voivodship of Poland were exchanged.

On 31 March 1940 territory ceded by Finland was joined to that of the Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic of Karelia to form the Karelo-Finnish Soviet Socialist Republic, which was admitted into the Union as the 12th Union Republic. On 16 July 1956 the Supreme Soviet of the USSR adopted a law altering the status of the Karelo-Finnish Republic from that of a Union (constituent) Republic of the USSR to that of an Autonomous (Karelian) Republic within the RSFSR.

On 2 Aug. 1940 the Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic was constituted as the 13th Union Republic. It comprised the former Moldavian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic and Bessarabia (44,290 sq. km, ceded by Romania on 28 June 1940), except for the districts of Khotin, Akerman and Ismail, which, together with Northern Bukovina (10,440 sq. km), were incorporated in the Ukrainian Soviet Republic. The Soviet-Romanian frontier thus constituted was confirmed by the peace treaty with Romania, signed on 10 Feb. 1947. On 29 June 1945 Ruthenia (Sub-Carpathian Russia, 12,742 sq. km) was by treaty with Czechoslovakia incorporated into the Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic.

On 3, 5 and 6 Aug. 1940 Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia were incorporated in the Soviet Union as the 14th, 15th and 16th Union Republics respectively. The change in the status of the Karelo-Finnish Republic reduced the number of Union Republics to 15.

After the defeat of Germany it was agreed by the governments of the UK, the USA and the USSR (by the Potsdam declaration) that part of East Prussia should be embodied in the USSR. The area (11,655 sq. km), which includes the towns of Königsberg (renamed Kaliningrad), Tilsit (renamed Sovetsk) and Insterburg (renamed Chernyakhovsk), was joined to the RSFSR by decree of 7 April 1946.

By the peace treaty with Finland, signed on 10 Feb. 1947, the province of Petsamo (Pechenga), ceded to Finland on 14 Oct. 1920 and 12 March 1946, was returned to the Soviet Union. On 19 Sept. 1955 the Soviet Union renounced its treaty rights to the naval base of Porkkala-Udd and on 26 Jan. 1956 completed the withdrawal of the forces from Finnish territory.

In 1945, after the defeat of Japan, the southern half of Sakhalin (36,000 sq. km) and the Kurile Islands (10,200 sq. km) were, by agreement with the Allies, incorporated in the USSR.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> However, Japan asks for the return of the Etorofu and Kunashiri Islands as not belonging to the Kurile Islands proper. The Soviet Government informed Japan on 27 Jan. 1960 that the Habomai Islands and Shikotan would be handed back to Japan on the withdrawal of the American troops from Japan.

**GOVERNMENT.** The Soviet Union is a socialist state of the whole people (1977 constitution), the political units of which are the Soviets of People's Deputies. All central and local authority is vested in these Soviets.

The economic foundation of the USSR is the socialist system of economy and the socialist ownership of the means of production. There are two forms of socialist property: (1) state property (property of the whole people); (2) co-operative and collective farm (*kolkhoz*) property (property of individual collective farms and property of co-operative associations). The land, mineral deposits, waters, forests, mills, factories, mines, railways, water and air transport, banks, means of communication, state farms (*sovkhosy*), as well as municipal enterprises and the principal dwelling-house properties in the cities and industrial localities, are state property, but the land occupied by collective farmers is secured to them in perpetuity so long as they use it in accordance with the laws of the country. The members of the *kolkhozy* may have small plots of land attached to their dwellings for their own use. Peasants unwilling to enter a *kolkhoz* may retain their individual farms, but



they are not allowed to employ hired labour. The right of personal property of citizens in their income from work and in their savings, in their dwelling houses and auxiliary household economy, their domestic furniture and utensils and objects of personal use and comfort, as well as the right of inheritance of personal property of citizens, are protected by law. The constitution recognizes the right of all citizens to work, rest, leisure, education, health protection, housing, maintenance in old age, sickness or incapacity, without distinction of sex, race or nationality, and lays down that any direct or indirect restriction of the rights of, or conversely, the establishment of direct or indirect privileges for, citizens on account of their race, or nationality, as well as the advocacy of racial or national exclusiveness, or hatred or contempt, is punishable by law. The franchise is enjoyed by all citizens of the USSR, including members of the Armed Forces, who have reached the age of 18, irrespective of sex, with the exception of the legally certified insane. Candidates for election to the Supreme Soviet of the USSR must be 21 years of age; for all other authorities the minimum age for candidates is 18. A member of any Soviet may be recalled by a decision of a majority of his or her electors if he or she fails to give satisfaction (law on procedure for this, 30 Oct. 1959).

The USSR consists of 15 Union Republics, each inhabited by a major nationality which gives its name to the republic. These are divided into 129 territories and regions, and these again into 3,228 districts, 2,186 towns, 665 urban districts and 4,014 urban settlements (1 Jan. 1988). Within the districts there are 42,654 rural Soviets (usually each including a number of villages). The territories and regions also include a number of smaller nationalities, forming their own self-governing units—20 Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republics, 8 Autonomous Regions and 10 Autonomous Areas.

The highest legislative organ is the Supreme Soviet of the USSR. It consists of two chambers with equal legislative rights, elected for a term of 5 years: the Council of the Union and the Council of Nationalities. Each has 750 members. The present Supreme Soviet, the 'Eleventh Convocation', was elected on 4 March 1984. Constitutional amendments in Dec. 1988 provided for the election in 1989 of a 2,250-member Congress of People's Deputies which would elect a 542-member working Supreme Soviet.

The Council of the Union is elected by the citizens of the USSR on the basis of constituencies with equal populations (approximately 1 deputy for every 360,000 population). Its Chairman (elected 1988) is Yu. N. Khristoradnov. The Council of Nationalities is elected by the citizens of the USSR on the basis of national-territorial areas (32 deputies from each Union Republic, 11 from each Autonomous Republic, 5 from each Autonomous Region and 1 from each Autonomous Area). Its Chairman (elected 1984) is A. E. Voss. Plenary sessions of the Supreme Soviet are normally held twice a year for two or three days at a time.

Each chamber elects 17 standing commissions: mandates; legislative proposals; foreign affairs; planning and budget; industry; power engineering; transport and communications; construction and the building materials industry; agro-industrial complex; science and technology; consumer goods and services; housing and municipal services; health and social security; education and culture; women's work and social conditions and the protection of motherhood and childhood; youth affairs; and conservation and the rational use of natural resources. Membership of the commissions presently embraces 1,210 deputies (80.7% of the total).

Deputies are elected by the voters on the basis of universal, equal and direct suffrage by secret ballot. The only legal political party is the Communist Party of the Soviet Union; non-members are classed as non-party citizens. Candidates are selected at preliminary 'constituency electoral consultation' meetings (selection conferences), to which organizations which have put forward nominations send delegates, who discuss the various nominees. As a consequence, to date, a single candidate has been agreed upon in each constituency, whose name appears on the ballot paper to be endorsed (by non-deletion) or struck out as the voter desires. These procedures are governed by the Law on Elections to the Supreme Soviet of the USSR, adopted in April 1978. At the election on 4 March 1984, 184,006,373 electors voted (99.99% of the total); the vote in favour of the single list of candidates was 99.94% and 99.95% in each of the two chambers. The Supreme Soviet elected on that day consists of 1,071 Communist and 428 non-party deputies; 492

are women, 527 manual workers in industry and state farms, and 242 collective farmers. A new election law adopted in Dec. 1988 provided for limited competition of candidates in the future.

The highest executive and administrative body of state authority in the USSR is the Council of Ministers of the USSR, which is appointed by the USSR Supreme Soviet at a joint sitting of the two chambers. It consists of a Chairman (in effect the Soviet Prime Minister), First Vice-Chairmen and Vice-Chairmen, Ministers of the USSR, and Chairmen of State Committees of the USSR. Chairmen of the Councils of Ministers of the Union Republics are *ex officio* members of the USSR Council of Ministers. The Council of Ministers of the USSR had more than 100 members in 1988, and day-to-day co-ordination of governmental matters is accordingly delegated to a smaller body, the Presidium of the Council of Ministers, which meets approximately every week. The Council of Ministers is responsible and accountable to the Supreme Soviet and is required to report regularly to the Supreme Soviet upon its work. Between sessions of the Supreme Soviet the Council of Ministers is responsible to the Presidium of the USSR Supreme Soviet.

The Presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR is elected from among the deputies at a joint session of both chambers of the Supreme Soviet. It consists of a chairman (in effect the President of the USSR), a first vice-chairman, 15 vice-chairmen (1 from each Union Republic), 21 members and a secretary (39 members in all). The Presidium acts as the supreme state authority between sessions of the Supreme Soviet and is accountable to it for all its actions. The Presidium convenes sessions of the Supreme Soviet and co-ordinates the work of its standing commissions; it interprets the law of the USSR and ratifies and denounces international treaties; it confers medals, orders and other distinctions; it decides matters such as citizenship, amnesties, pardons, martial law and states of emergency; and it appoints the high command of the Soviet Armed forces and Soviet diplomatic representatives. It is empowered to adopt decrees (*ukazy*) and resolutions (*postanovleniya*).

Soon after the adoption of the 1936 Constitution all the constituent republics of the Union held their Soviet congresses, at which they adopted their own constitutions based in all essentials upon the Constitution of the Union but adapted where necessary to local requirements. In April 1978 the Supreme Soviets of the Union Republics similarly adopted new republican constitutions based upon the new Constitution of the USSR approved by the Supreme Soviet in Oct. 1977. Article 73 of the 1977 Constitution of the USSR reserves to the central government the spheres of war and peace, diplomatic relations, defence, foreign trade, state security, economic planning, education, the basic principles of legislation, and other matters of 'all-Union significance'. The right of the constituent republics to withdraw from the Union is, however, formally recognized in Article 72. Union Republics have their own Supreme Soviets, Presidiums and Councils of Ministers, and exercise a wide range of devolved powers in local matters.

There are 20 Autonomous Republics in the USSR, which are similarly governed by their own Supreme Soviets, Presidiums and Councils of Ministers exercising devolved powers over local matters. Most (16) are in the RSFSR; 2 are in Georgia and 1 each in Azerbaijan and Uzbekistan. Five Autonomous Regions are in the RSFSR, 1 each in Azerbaijan, Georgia, and Tadzhikistan. All 10 Autonomous Areas are in the RSFSR. Elections are held every five years to the Supreme Soviets of Union and Autonomous Republics. At the most recent elections (Feb. 1985), 10,190 deputies were elected; 3,830 (37.6%) were women, 3,495 (34.3%) were non-Party, 3,605 (35.4%) were industrial workers and 1,557 (15.3%) were collective farmers.

Regions and territories, districts, towns and rural areas are similarly governed by their own Soviets, elected for a term of 2½ years. At the most recent elections (June 1987), 2,321,766 deputies were elected to these Soviets; 1,146,329 (49.4%) were women, 1,317,009 (56.7%) were non-Party, 976,552 (42.1%) were industrial workers and 562,052 (24.2%) were collective farmers. In 162 districts elections were conducted, as an experiment, with more candidates nominated than seats available. On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 52,602 rural and urban Soviets in the USSR with 2.3m. deputies and over 30m. voluntary co-opted members participating in the work of their standing committees.



*State flag:* Red, with sickle and hammer in gold in the upper corner near the staff, and above them a 5-pointed star bordered in gold.

*National anthem:* Soyuz nerushimyy respublik svobodnykh (words by S. Mikhailov and G. El-Registan; music by A. V. Alexandrov; 1944, revised 1977).

*Chairman of the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR:* M. S. Gorbachev.

*First Vice-Chairman:* A. I. Lukyanov.

*Secretary of the Presidium:* Tengiz Menteshashvili.

*Chairman of the Council of Ministers of the USSR:* N. I. Ryzhkov.

*First Vice-Chairman:* V. S. Murakhovsky.

*Minister of Defence:* Marshal D. T. Yazov. *Minister of Foreign Economic Relations:* K. F. Katushev. *Minister for Foreign Affairs:* E. A. Shevardnadze. *Minister of Internal Affairs:* V. V. Bakatin. *Minister of Finance:* B. I. Gostev. *Chairman, State Security Committee (KGB):* V. A. Kryuchkov. *Chairman, State Planning Committee (Gosplan):* Yu. D. Maslyukov.

*Constitution (Fundamental Law) of the USSR.* Moscow, 1977

*Konstitutsiya SSSR. Konstitutsii Soyuznykh Sovetskikh Respublik.* Moscow, 1978

Feldbrugge, F. J. M. (ed.), *The Constitution of the USSR and the Union Republics.* Alphen aan den Rijn, 1979

Unger, A. L., *Constitutional Development in the USSR.* London, 1981

**Communist Party of the Soviet Union.** According to the revised rules adopted by the 27th Congress of the Party in March 1986, the Communist Party of the Soviet Union 'unites, on a voluntary basis, the more advanced, politically more conscious section of the working class, collective-farm peasantry and intelligentsia of the USSR', and represents the 'highest form of socio-political organization, the nucleus of the political system and the leading and guiding force of Soviet society'. According to the Party Programme, adopted in a revised version in 1986, the party aims to achieve the 'planned and all-round perfection of socialism', 'further advance to communism through the country's accelerated socio-economic development', and 'peace and social progress'.

The Party is organized on the territorial-industrial principle. The supreme organ is the Party Congress. Ordinary congresses are convened not less than every 5 years. The Congress elects a Central Committee which meets at least every 6 months, carries on the work of the Party between congresses, and guides the work of central Soviet and public organizations through Party groups within them. In 1988 the Central Committee formed 6 commissions, on party matters, ideology, socio-economic affairs, agriculture, international affairs and legal affairs, through which its work was to be conducted. The Central Committee may convene an All-Union Party Conference in the intervals between congresses to 'discuss pressing Party policy issues'. The 19th Conference, the first since 1941, met in Moscow in June-July 1988.

The Central Committee forms a Political Bureau (*Politburo*) to direct the work of the Central Committee between plenary meetings, a Secretariat to direct current work and a Party Control Committee to deal with disciplinary matters; it also elects the General Secretary. Similar rules hold for the regional, territorial and republican levels of the party organization. The 'basis of the Party', the primary Party organization, exists in factories, state and collective farms, units of the Soviet Army and Navy, in villages, offices, educational establishments etc. where there are at least 3 Party members. There were over 441,851 primary Party organizations in 1987.

The Central Committee elected by the 27th Congress in March 1986 consisted of 307 members and 170 candidate (non-voting) members. Of these 42.3% were drawn from the central and regional party apparatus, and 5.9% were workers or peasants.

In March 1989 the Politburo of the Central Committee consisted of the following members: M. S. Gorbachev, V. M. Chebrikov, E. K. Ligachev, V. A. Medvedev, V. P. Nikonov, N. I. Ryzhkov, V. V. Shcherbitsky, E. A. Shevardnadze, N. N. Slyunkov, V. I. Vorotnikov, A. N. Yakovlev and L. N. Zaikov and the following candidate (non-voting) members: A. P. Biryukova, A. I. Lukyanov, Yu. D. Maslyukov, G. P. Razumovsky, Yu. F. Solov'ev, N. V. Talyzin, A. V. Vlasov, D. T. Yazov.

*Secretariat:* M. S. Gorbachev (*General Secretary*); O. D. Baklanov; V. M.



Chebrikov; E. K. Ligachev; V. A. Medvedev; V. P. Nikonov; G. P. Razumovsky; N. N. Slyunkov; A. N. Yakovlev and L. N. Zaikov.

*Chairman of the Party Control Committee:* B. K. Pugo.

*Chairman of the Central Auditing Commission:* G. F. Sizov.

In July 1987 the Communist Party had 19,412,153 members (about 9.3% of the adult population). Of these, 45.3% were classified as workers, 11.6% as collective farmers and 43.1% as office workers; 29.3% were women, and 59% were Russians. The party's youth wing, the Komsomol (All-Union Leninist Communist Union of Youth), had 36m. members in 1989. V. I. Mironenko was re-elected First Secretary of its Central Committee at its 20th Congress in April 1987.

*Istoriya Kommunisticheskoi partii Sovetskogo Soyuza*, 7th ed. Moscow, 1985

*KPSS v rezolyutsiyakh i resheniyakh s'ezdov, konferentsii i plenumov TsK*, 9th ed., vol. 1ff. Moscow, 1983ff.

*Resolutions and Decisions of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union*, ed. R. H. McNeal, 5 vols. Toronto, 1974-82

*Spravochnik partiinogo rabotnika*. Moscow, annual

Hill, R. and Frank, P., *The Soviet Communist Party*. 3rd ed., London, 1987

Schapiro, L. B., *The Communist Party of the Soviet Union*. 2nd ed., London, 1970

White, S. (ed.) *Soviet Communism: Programme and Rules*. London, 1989

**DEFENCE.** On 25 Feb. 1946 the control of the Soviet Armed Forces was unified under a single Ministry of the Armed Forces. On 25 Feb. 1950 the Defence Ministry was divided into a War Ministry and a Navy Ministry; on 15 March 1953 a single Ministry of Defence was reconstituted. In 1955 the Air Defence Command and in 1960 the Strategic Rocket Forces were established as the 4th and 5th 'branches' of the armed forces beside the army, navy and air force. Overall supervision of defence and security matters is exercised by the Defence Council of the USSR, headed by the General Secretary of the CPSU.

The direction of Party and political work in the Armed Forces is exercised by the Central Committee of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union through the chief political directorate of the Ministry of Defence. The chiefs of the political departments of military commands, fleets and armies must be Party members of 5 years' standing and the chiefs of political departments of divisions and regiments Party members of 3 years' standing. About 90% of the officers are members of the Communist Party or Young Communist League, and 50% have had an engineering and technical education.

Military service begins at the age of 19 (or 18 for graduates of secondary schools). Active service lasts 2 years for privates in the Army and M.V.D. troops, 3 years for n.c.o.s in the Army and M.V.D. troops and for privates and n.c.o.s in the Air Force, 4 years for privates and n.c.o.s in the Coastal Defence, 5 years for ratings in the Navy. Reserve service lasts up to the ages of 35, 45 or 50 years according to fitness, family status and other considerations. Conscientious objection is treated as a criminal offence. Students in places of higher education are freed from military service, but receive military instruction. About half the service personnel have had higher, or 10-year, education and over 80% are members of the Communist Party.

Total strength of the armed forces was over 5.25m. in 1988, with a probable 55m. reserves and a further 570,000 in paramilitary forces.

Declared budgetary expenditure on defence (in 1m. rubles) for 1960 was 9,300; 1970, 17,900; 1980, 17,100; 1987, 20,600.

**Army.** The Army is thought to consist of 52 tank, 150 motor rifle, 7 airborne and 18 artillery divisions; 10 air assault brigades; and various independent tank, artillery, missile and engineer units. Equipment includes some 33,200 T-54/-55/-62, 9,300 T-64 and 10,800 T-72/-80 main battle tanks. Strength (1988) 2m. (including 1.4m. conscripts).

There are 6 operational rocket armies deploying 1,418 intercontinental ballistic missiles (SS-11, -13, -17, -18, -19), capable of delivering over 5,000 nuclear warheads yielding over 4,000 megatons. Intermediate range ballistic missiles (SS-20) number 441. There are a further 112 medium range ballistic missiles, but these are being phased out. Personnel number 300,000, with reserves of 520,000.

**Navy.** The Soviet Fleet is steadily expanding and progressively modernizing under a continuity of policy and technology. The overall picture is of an unprecedentedly

powerful and well-balanced navy, the capacity of which is increasing annually by scientific application and numerical strength.

The principal surface ships of the Soviet Navy are as follows:

The principal surface ships						
Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horse- power	Speed Knots
Aircraft Carriers <sup>1</sup>						
1986 Baku	}	34,000	13 fixed wing aircraft 20 helicopters	{ 4 twin SS missile launchers; 4 twin SA missile launchers; 1 twin AS missile launcher; 2 twin 76-mm AA guns	} 200,000	32
1982 Novorossiisk						
1978 Minsk						
1976 Kiev						

<sup>1</sup> See Aircraft carriers under construction and projected, successors of *Kiev* class, page 1226.

### *Battle Cruisers*<sup>1</sup>

1984 Frunze	} 22,000	3 helicopters	{ 20 single SS missile launchers; 32 SA missile launchers; 2 AS missile launchers; 2 100-mm guns ( <i>Kirov</i> ) 1 twin 130-mm guns ( <i>Frunze</i> )	} 150,000 (nuclear power)	33
1980 Kirov					

<sup>1</sup> The first battle cruisers, and the largest combatant warships, apart from aircraft carriers, to be built for any navy since the Second World War. Main engines comprise 2 nuclear reactors and oil-fired superheat boilers for steam turbines.

### *Helicopter Carriers*

1968 Leningrad	} 16,500	14 helicopters	{ 2 twin SA missile launchers; 1 twin AS missile launcher; 2 twin 57-mm guns	} 100,000	31
1967 Moskva					

### *Cruisers*

1987 Marshal Shaposhnikov	} 8,500 (loaded)	2 helicopters and 2 hangars	{ 2 quadruple SS missile launchers; 8 SA single vertical missile launchers; 2 single 100-mm guns	} 110,000	32
1986 Admiral Tributs					
1985 Admiral Spiridonov					
1984 Admiral Zakorov					
1984 Marshal Vasilevsky					
1982 Vize Admiral Kulakov					
1982 Udaloy <sup>1</sup>					

<sup>1</sup> Three more light cruisers of the *Udaloy* class rated as large anti-submarine ships are being completed.

1988 Stoyky	} 8,000 (loaded)	1 helicopter (telescopic hangar)	{ 2 quadruple SS missile launchers; 2 single SA missile launchers; 2 twin 130-mm guns	} 110,000	32
1987 Boyevoy					
1986 Bezuprechny					
1985 Osmotritelmey					
1984 Otlichnyy					
1982 Sovremenny <sup>1</sup>					

<sup>1</sup> Four more light cruisers or large destroyers of the *Sovremenny* class are under construction.

1983 Slava	10,500	1 helicopter (carrying AS torpedoes and depth bombs)	{ 16 SS launchers; 8 SA vertical launchers; 2 AS launchers; 2 130-mm guns	120,000	34
------------	--------	--	--	---------	----

Two more heavy cruisers of this class are reportedly scheduled for completion or commissioning.

Com- pleted	Name	Standard displace- ment Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horse- power	Speed Knots
<i>Cruisers</i>						
1979	Tallin	8,200	1 helicopter (hangar aft)	{ 2 quadruple SS missile launchers; 4 twin SA missile launchers; 2 twin 76-mm guns }	122,000	34
1978	Tashkent					
1977	Petropavlovsk					
1976	Azov <sup>3</sup>					
1975	Kerch					
1974	Ochakov					
1973	Nikolaiev					

<sup>3</sup> *Azov*, nominally of this Kara class, is of a modified design, with a different guided missile system (6 launchers), as trials ship for the armament of subsequent classes of cruisers.

Of 18 other missile-armed major vessels, 10 of the *Kresta II* class, displacing 6,000 tons standard, completed in 1964-77, are officially rated as large anti-submarine ships; 4 of the *Kresta I* class, 6,140 tons, completed in 1967-69 were originally rated as large anti-submarine ships; and the 4 of the *Kynda* class, completed in 1962-65, although only of 4,400 tons were rated as rocket cruisers.

1958	Admiral Senyavin <sup>1</sup>	16,000		12 6-in.; 12 3.9-in.	110,000	32
1957	Mikhail Kutuzov					
1956	Dimitri Pojarski					
1956	Oktyabrskaya Revolutsiya <sup>3</sup>					
1956	Admiral Lazarev					
1955	Alexandr Suvorov					
1954	Admiral Ushakov					
1954	Dzerzhinski <sup>2</sup>					
1953	Alexandr Nevski					
1953	Murmansk					
1953	Zhdanov <sup>1</sup>					
1953	Sverdlov <sup>4</sup>					

<sup>1</sup> *Admiral Senyavin* now has a helicopter pad and hangar ('X' and 'Y' turrets removed), leaving her with only six 6-mm guns, while *Zhdanov* has high deckhouse ('X' turret removed). Each carries twin surface-air missile launchers. Both latterly employed as command and communications ships.

<sup>2</sup> *Dzerzhinski* has only nine 6-in. guns in 3 triple turrets, 'X' turret having been replaced by a twin surface-air missile launcher.

<sup>3</sup> This ship, first named *Molotovsk*, was renamed in 1957.

<sup>4</sup> Of 24 vessels of the *Sverdlov* class originally projected only 14 were completed; *Ordzhonikidze* transferred 1962 to Indonesia (scrapped 1972) and *Admiral Nakhimov* deleted 1969. Of the older cruisers, *Kirov* and *Slava* (ex-*Molotov*) were deleted from the effective list in 1976-77 and *Zheleznyakov* in 1978. *Komsomolets* was latterly used as a training ship.

### Capital Support Ship

1977	Berezina <sup>1</sup>	36,000 (loaded)	2 helicopters	{ Twin SA missile launcher; 4 57-mm guns }	60,000	22
------	-----------------------	--------------------	---------------	--	--------	----

<sup>1</sup> Very impressive militarised replenishment ship designed to support the new Soviet aircraft carriers.

### Submarines

77(15) <sup>3</sup>	SSBN	Nuclear powered	Ballistic missile armed <sup>1</sup> q.v.
15	SSB	Diesel-electric powered	Ballistic missile armed
53	SSGN	Nuclear powered	Cruise (guided) missile armed
17	SSG	Diesel-electric powered	Cruise missile armed
78	SSN	Nuclear powered	Torpedo (only) armed
215 <sup>2</sup>	SS	Diesel powered	Torpedo (only) armed

<sup>1</sup> See table. All missile-carrying submarines are also armed with torpedoes.

<sup>2</sup> Including 65 patrol submarines in reserve or used for training only and 13 auxiliary (special purpose) submarines.

<sup>3</sup> Fifteen had missile tubes removed on conversion to fleet submarines, SSN (nuclear propelled).



*Capital (Strategic) Submarines (SSBN)*

<i>Class</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>Displacement (dived) Tons</i>	<i>Missile Tubes (vertical)</i>	<i>Nuclear Reactors</i>	<i>Shaft horse- power <sup>4</sup></i>	<i>Speed (dived) Knots</i>
Typhoon <sup>1</sup>	4	25,000	20 SS-N-20	2	100,000	30
D4	4	13,600	16 SS-NX-23	2	60,000	24
D3	14	13,250	16 SS-N-18	2	50,000	24
D2	4	12,750	16 SS-N-8	2	50,000	25
D1	18	11,000	12 SS-N-8	2	50,000	26
Y	18 (15) <sup>3</sup>	9,600	16 SS-N-6	1	50,000	28
H3	1	6,500	6 SS-N-8	1	30,000	22

<sup>1</sup> These vessels, of battleship dimensions, are the largest submarines ever built. Launched from Sept. 1980 onwards. The vertical missile cylinders are mounted forward of the fin.

*Note:* All these classes also carry six 21-inch torpedo tubes.

<sup>4</sup> Shaft horsepower for all these classes reportedly updated in 1987

There are also 40 missile-armed destroyers, 30 gun-armed destroyers, (including 13 in reserve), 32 missile-armed frigates, 50 gun-armed frigates, 3 ocean mine-layers, 120 missile-armed corvettes, 60 gun-armed corvettes, 28 patrol ships, 125 fleet minesweepers, 90 coastal minesweepers, 50 minehunters, 60 inshore mine-sweepers, 50 minesweeping boats, 80 fast missile craft, 10 fast torpedo boats, 80 fast anti-submarine boats, 110 fast attack craft, 15 multi-purpose patrol vessels, 17 hydrofoil missile boats, 30 hydrofoil torpedo boats, 15 hydrofoil gunboats, 30 coastal patrol launches, 110 river patrol boats, 100 major amphibious and auxiliary roll-on roll-off ships, 2 dock landing ships, 35 tank landing ships, 50 medium landing ships, 30 utility landing craft, 50 minor landing craft, 65 intelligence collecting ships, 85 major support ships, 11 space associated ships, 150 survey ships, 115 oceanographic research ships, 7 missile range ships, 4 nuclear powered icebreakers, 70 icebreakers, 20 training ships, 190 fishery protection ships, 28 fleet replenishment ships, 75 oilers, 13 special tankers, 45 salvage vessels, 90 transports, 21 submarine rescue ships, 135 tenders, 10 lifting ships, 12 cable ships, 35 degaussing ships, 100 fleet tugs, 80 hovercraft and thousands of auxiliaries, para-military ships and service craft.

The new construction programme includes 2 aircraft carriers, considerably larger and reportedly nuclear-powered, more very large nuclear powered ballistic missile submarines, 2 nuclear powered cruise missile submarines, 6 nuclear powered torpedo-armed submarines, 3 diesel-electric propelled patrol submarines, 2 more nuclear powered guided missile armed battle cruisers, 8 guided missile cruisers and large anti-submarine leaders, 4 frigates and 4 corvettes.

In the progressive forward procurement programme more conventionally propelled aircraft carriers of improved 'follow-on' class are envisaged, together with nuclear powered surface ships, conventionally propelled submarines and specialized support ships, to fit into the Soviet global and strategic maritime scenario.

There are 5 shipyards in and near Leningrad; Black Sea yards are at Nikolaiev and Sevastopol, new shipyards are at Molotovsk in the White Sea region and at Komsomolsk on the Amur.

The completion of a through canal system between the Baltic and White Seas, allowing regular traffic *via* the North-East Passage (during the ice-free season), facilitates the navigation of suitable ships between the Baltic and Far East.

Estimated number of personnel in 1989 totalled over 458,000, including naval aviation, naval infantry, coastal defence, cadets and apprentices (but excluding some 75,000 civilians in administration and new construction). About 25% of naval personnel are volunteers, *i.e.*, officers and petty officers, the remainder comprising national service men serving 3 years at sea and 2 if ashore.

**Air Force.** The Soviet Air Force (excluding the strategic bomber force and Voyska PVO air defence force) was believed to have a personnel strength, in 1989, of over 444,000 officers and men. To supplement long-range rocket missiles (estimated at 1,398 emplaced ICBM, 600 MRBM/IRBM), the strategic bomber force has still about 125 Tupolev Tu-95 ('Bear')<sup>1</sup> 4-turboprop bombers, 50 Myasishchev M-4 4-jet bombers and flight-refuelling tankers ('Bison'), 300 twin-jet Tupolev Tu-16 ('Badger'), and 135 supersonic Tupolev Tu-22 ('Blinder') bombers, ECM and

reconnaissance aircraft, and at least 180 Tupolev ('Backfire') swing-wing bombers. All types are used also by the Naval Air Force for long-range maritime reconnaissance; the Tu-16, Tu-95, Tu-22 and 'Backfire' can carry air-to-surface guided self-propelled cruise missiles and all 5 types have provision for flight refuelling. A new swing-wing strategic bomber ('Blackjack'), larger and faster than the American B-1, is being flight tested.

The tactical air forces, under local army command in the field, have an estimated total of 6,000 ground attack, air combat, ECM and reconnaissance aircraft, including 2,600 MiG-23/27 ('Flogger') and 800 two-seat Sukhoi Su-24 ('Fencer') supersonic swing-wing aircraft, 300 twin-jet Yakovlev Yak-28 ('Brewer') reconnaissance aircraft, 1,000 swing-wing Su-17 ('Fitter-C/D/G/H/J'), and 600 MiG-21 ('Fishbed') fighter-bombers, 340 Su-15 ('Flagon'), 200 MiG-25 ('Foxbat') and MiG-31 ('Foxhound') interceptors, and an increasing number of new Su-25 ('Frogfoot') twin-engined ground attack aircraft supported by 60 MiG-21 and 170 MiG-25 ('Foxbat') reconnaissance aircraft, and over 3,500 helicopters, including very large Mi-26 ('Halo') transports and over 1,000 heavily-armed Mi-24 ('Hind') assault helicopters, in gunship/transport versions. Electronic warfare duties are performed by a variety of aircraft, including Yak-28s and Mi-8 and Mi-17 helicopters. The Voyska PVO defence forces, organized as a separate service, have an estimated total of 1,300 jet interceptors. A high proportion of the squadrons are equipped with MiG-23 ('Flogger'), Su-15 ('Flagon'), MiG-25 ('Foxbat') and improved MiG-31 ('Foxhound') all-weather interceptors, armed with air-to-air missiles plus the MiG-29 ('Fulcrum') and Su-27 ('Flanker') new-generation aircraft now entering service. The twin-jet Yak-28P ('Firebar') and Tu-28P ('Fiddler') make up the balance of the force. Early warning and fighter-control duties are performed by about 10 radar-carrying adaptations of the Tu-114 turboprop transport, redesignated Tu-126 ('Moss'), which are being replaced by a more effective radar-equipped AWACS version ('Mainstay') of the Il-76 transport. Very large numbers of surface-to-air guided missiles are operational, on some 10,000 launchers, including the new high-performance SA-10 (low-altitude) and SA-12 (high-altitude) with capability against cruise and submarine-launched missiles respectively, the older 'Guild', 'Guideline', 'Goa', 'Gainful' and 'Ganef', the long-range 'Gammon' and the 'Galosh' which is deployed around Moscow on 32 launchers and has anti-missile capability.

<sup>1</sup> For convenience Soviet aircraft and missiles are usually referred to by invented English names in non-Soviet military writings.

Soviet Air Force transport squadrons have 150 An-12 ('Cub') 4-turboprop transports and 100 An-24s ('Coke') and An-26s ('Curl'), with 50 An-22s ('Cock'), and 400 Il-76 ('Candid') heavy four-jet freighters. The very large four-jet An-124 ('Condor') is entering service to replace the An-22. Training aircraft include the piston-engined Yak-18 primary trainer and its Yak-52 successor, the Czech-built L-29 Delfin and L-39 jet basic trainers and versions of operational types such as MiG-21, MiG-23, MiG-25, MiG-15, Su-7, Su-15, Su-17, Yak-28 and Tu-22.

**Naval Air Force.** With 1,100 fixed-wing aircraft and helicopters, the Soviet Navy has the world's second largest naval air arm. Under the control of the various naval commands, *i.e.*, Baltic, Black Sea and Pacific, the Naval Air Arm has an estimated 220 Tu-16 ('Badger') twin-jet bombers, and 140 'Backfire' swing-wing bombers, able to carry air-to-surface missiles, 40 supersonic twin-jet Tu-22 ('Blinder') maritime reconnaissance aircraft, about 70 Su-17 ('Fitter') shore-based fighters, and 90 Beriev M-12 ('Mail') maritime patrol amphibians. For reconnaissance, anti-submarine and electronic warfare there are about 100 Tu-95 and Tu-142 ('Bear') 4-engined bombers, 90 Tu-16s, and a few Tu-22s, plus a small number of Il-20s ('Coot-A') and 60 Il-38s ('May'). The Tu-142 also has an important targeting rôle for ships fitted with anti-shipping missile launchers. Over 250 anti-submarine and missile targeting/guidance helicopters, notably the Ka-27 ('Helix') and Ka-25 ('Hormone'), are carried in naval vessels, including 4 aircraft carriers (which also operate Yak-36 ('Forger') VTOL attack/reconnaissance aircraft) and 2 helicopter carriers. Several hundred transport, flight refuelling tanker ('Badger'), utility and



training fixed-wing aircraft and 100 Mi-14 ('Haze') shore-based ASW helicopters are also under Navy control.

Berman, H. J. and Kerner, M. (ed.) *Soviet Military Law and Administration*. 2 vols. Harvard Univ. Press, 1955

Scott, H. F. and Scott, W. F., *The Armed Forces of the USSR*. 2nd ed. Boulder, 1981

Smith, M. J., *The Soviet Navy, 1941-1978: A Guide to Sources in English*. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1981

Suvorov, V., *The Liberators: The Soviet Army*. London, 1981

Watson, B. W., *Red Navy at Sea*. Boulder, 1982

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** USSR is a member of UN, Comecon and the Warsaw Pact.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** Planning is based on public ownership in industry and trade, and on mixed public and collective (co-operative) ownership in agriculture. The first plan drawn up by Gosplan (the State Planning Commission) was the 'Goelro' drawn up in 1920. This was to be the basis for the economic development of the country and for the construction of a system of electrical power plants with an aggregate capacity of 1.75m. kw. in the course of 15 years.

For details of Planning 1925-1942 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1981-82, p. 1226.

For details of the fourth 5-year plan, 1946-50, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1952, pp. 1424 f. The 1950 target of the gross output of industry was exceeded by 2%.

On 10 Oct. 1952 the 19th Congress of the Communist Party issued directives for the fifth 5-year plan, 1951-55; for details, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1953, pp. 1435-36. During Sept. and Oct. 1953 the Government issued a number of decrees to stimulate the development of agriculture, the output of consumer goods and the expansion of the home trade. For details of these decrees, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1955, pp. 1448-50.

The directives for the sixth 5-year plan, 1956-60, were adopted by the 20th Congress of the Communist Party on 25 Feb. 1956; for details see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1958, p. 1472.

In May 1955 Gosplan was reorganized to consist of 2 state commissions for long-term planning (Gosplan) and for current planning (Goskonomkommissiya); at the same time a committee was set up to improve the application to industry of advanced science and technology (Gostekhnika).

Between 1954 and 1956 considerable changes were made in planning methods. In March 1954 collective farms were given greater authority over planning their own output, only the quantities required by the State in fixed deliveries being determined beforehand, and voluntary sales by contract. In 1955 they were authorized to make changes in their statutes, which had followed a fixed model since 1935. In 1955-57 over 15,000 industrial establishments in various basic industries, previously controlled by the Union Government, and later a number of entire light industries were turned over to the constituent (Union) Republics. By 1962 they controlled from 95 to 100% of all industrial output.

In 1957 a comprehensive plan for decentralization of management of industry was initiated. Industrial establishments responsible for about 71% of all Soviet industrial output were turned over to Economic Councils set up in 104 (in 1963: 47) economic administrative areas. These in 1962 controlled 73% of all industrial production. The Ministries previously responsible for the industries concerned were either abolished or transformed into purely planning and supervisory bodies. The State Committee for current planning was abolished, and Gosplan was given wider powers.

In consequence of this change a 7-year plan for 1959-65 was adopted by the 21st Congress of the Communist Party in Feb. 1959. Industrial output was to increase by 80%; it was in fact, in 1965, 84% above that of 1959. Capital investments would roughly equal the total for 1917-58: special attention was to be given to mechanization of agriculture and arduous industrial labour, automation and new technologi-



cal processes, and housing. Diesel or electric traction of railway freight was to rise to 85%. Real incomes were to rise 40%, the 7-hour day (6 hours for miners) became general in 1960 and the 40-hour week in 1961, and introduction of the 35-hour week (30 hours for miners) began in 1964.

In Oct. 1965 the regional and Republic Economic Councils were abolished and also 28 Ministries for various branches of industry (17 Union-Republican, *i.e.*, corresponding to similar Ministries in the Union Republics, and 11 All-Union).

A 20-year plan was adopted by the 22nd Congress of the Communist Party on 31 Oct. 1961, which envisaged a ninefold growth in electricity output and big increases in production of steel, oil, coal, machinery and cement, and also in grain, milk and meat. Two new iron and steel centres were to be developed in Kazakhstan and in Kursk region. A single deepwater system was to link the main inland waterways in the European USSR. Some rivers in northern Asia were to be diverted south for irrigation purposes. A 6-hour day for a 6-day week or 35 hours for a 5-day week were to be achieved by 1970. Housing, water, gas, heating, public urban transport and school meals were to be free by 1980. These and cognate measures were to provide 'the material and technical basis of communism'.

The 23rd Congress of the Communist Party in April 1966 adopted directives for a 5-year plan for 1966-70. Under these, power output was to reach 830,000-850,000m. kwh.; oil, 345-355m. tons; coal, 665-675m. tons; steel, 124-129m. tons; mineral fertilizers, 62-65m. tons; machine-tools, 220,000-230,000; cars, 700,000-800,000; tractors, 600,000-625,000; paper, 5-5.3m. tons; cement, 100-105m. tons; fabrics, 9.5-9.8m. sq. metres; leather footwear, 610-630m. pairs; meat, 5.9-6.2m. tons; butter, 1.2m. tons; sugar, 9.8-10m. tons. The average annual output of grain was to increase by 30%; 7,000 km of new railway line, 63,000 km of new motor roads and 35-40 new airports were to be built; and marine tonnage was to be increased by 50%.

The 9th Five-Year Plan adopted in 1971 provided for an increase in electric power output to 1,065,000m. kwh.; oil to 496m. tons; gas, 320,000m. cu. metres; steel, 146m. tons; coal, 695m. tons; mineral fertilizers, 90m. tons; tractors, 575,000; passenger cars, 1.26m., and lorries, 750,000. Grain output was to rise to 195m. tons in 1975; meat, approximately 16m. tons; milk, 100m. tons; textiles, 11,000m. sq. metres; leather footwear, 830m. pairs. Average wages were to increase by 22%, incomes of collective farmers 30-35%, and the average of real incomes by 31%. 3,400 miles of new railway tracks were to be built and 3,700 miles electrified, with 17,000 miles of new oil pipelines, and 40% more cargo carried by sea. Over 16m. flats and houses were to be built.

By July 1972, 43,000 industrial plants had been transferred to the new system of decentralized cost-accounting; they produced 94% of total output of Soviet industry and 95% of its total profit. All public establishments in trade and catering and all the state farms have gone over to the new system.

On 29 Oct. 1976, the Supreme Soviet adopted the 10th Five-Year Plan (1976-80). This provided for an increase of industrial output from 104.3% of the 1975 level to 136%, an average annual increase of agricultural output by 16%, freight traffic (all forms) from 105.7% to 132%, state capital investments from 105.1% of the 1975 level in 1976 to 114.6% in 1980, real income per head from 103.7% to 121%, retail commodity turnover from 103.6% to 128.7%. 550m. sq. metres of new housing were to be built. Children in pre-school establishments would increase by 104.4% in 1976 and 125.5% in 1980, pupils in day schools from 108.9% to 148.8%, and students in higher education from 100.4% to 105.4%. Hospital beds were to increase from 102.2% in the first year to 109.7% in the final year.

The 11th Five-Year Plan, adopted in 1981, aimed to raise living standards. The focus was Siberia and the Soviet Far East, with their large resources of energy and raw materials, and also Central Asia, with its favourable combination of labour resources and raw materials. Virtually no industries were to be developed in the European part of the USSR and the plan envisages speeding up the development of labour-intensive branches of agriculture, consumer goods and engineering industries in Central Asia. National income (in the Soviet definition) was to increase by 18% between 1981 and 1985; industrial production was to increase by 26%, capital

investment by 5.4%, freight traffic by 19.4%, real incomes by 16.5%, agricultural production by 13%, and retail trade in the state and co-operative sectors by 23% over the same period. Pensions were to be raised and the minimum wage was to be increased to 80 rubles a month, and efforts were to be made to increase state assistance to families with young children and to improve the food and care given to them in schools and pre-school institutions.

The 12th Five-Year Plan, adopted in 1986, also places its main emphasis upon raising popular living and cultural standards. This in turn is held to require an acceleration of socio-economic development and an intensification and increase in the effectiveness of production on the basis of scientific-technical progress. The plan covers the period 1986–90 and up to the year 2,000, by which time real living standards are planned to increase by 1.6 to 1.8 times; manual labour should account for no more than 15–20% of all productive work; state and co-operative retail trade should increase by 1.8 times; and health, educational and other social expenditure should double. Over the same period the national income should approximately double and industrial production more than double, entirely as a result of increased productivity, which is planned to increase by 2.3 to 2.5 times. Greater economy is to be achieved in the use of energy and natural resources; investment is to be concentrated in priority areas; and scientific-technical progress is to be accelerated and related more closely to production. Continued emphasis is placed upon the Energy Programme, the Food Programme and the Complex Programme for the Development of Consumer Goods and Services, which were adopted between 1982 and 1985. In the 5-year period 1986–90 national income is to increase by 22%, industrial production by 25%, labour productivity by 12–25%, and real incomes by 14%.

In 1988 national income produced increased by 4.4% (1981–85 average, 3.6%), gross industrial production by 3.9% (1981–85 average, 3.7%) and labour productivity by 5.1% (1981–85 average, 3.1%).

*Narodnoe khozyaistvo SSSR*. Moscow, annual

*Resheniya partii i pravitel'stva po khozyaistvennym voprosam*. Vol. 1ff. Moscow, 1967ff

*Istoriya sotsialisticheskoi ekonomiki SSSR*. 7 vols. Moscow, 1976–80

Nove, A., *An Economic History of the USSR*. Rev. ed., Harmondsworth, 1982.—*The Soviet Economic System*. 3rd ed., London, 1986

US Congress, Joint Economic Committee, *The Soviet Economy in the 1980s*, 2 vols. Washington D.C., 1983

Gregory, P. R. and Stuart, R. C., *Soviet Economic Structure and Performance*. 3rd ed., New York, 1986

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure in 1 m. rubles for calendar years:

	1985	1986	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>	1989 <sup>1</sup>
Revenue	390,603	419,500	435,683	443,645	459,814
Expenditure	386,469	417,400	435,510	443,645	494,798

<sup>1</sup> Estimate.

The 1989 budget allotted 278,899m. rubles to the national economy, 20,244m. to defence and 163,499m. to social and cultural services.

The social insurance budget, which is controlled by the Central Council for Trade Unions and its affiliated bodies, was 29,476m. rubles in 1977, 31,179m. in 1978, 33,089m. in 1979, 35,296 in 1980 and 58,708m. (plan) in 1988.

National income (produced) was assessed (in 1,000m. rubles) at 145.0 in 1960, 289.9 in 1970, 462.2 in 1980 and 599.6 in 1987.

Income tax was abolished on 1 Oct. 1961 for earnings up to 60 rubles per month and reduced for earnings between 61 and 70 rubles; in Dec. 1967 further cuts of 25% were made for earnings from 61 to 80 rubles; in 1972 earnings up to 70 rubles were freed of income tax, and taxes on incomes up to 90 rubles were cut by about 33½%. Capital investment (1987) was 205,400m. rubles, including 186,900m. by State and co-operative enterprises, 15,200m. by collective farms and 3,300m. by individuals (on housing).

**Currency.** As from 1 Jan. 1961 the gold content of the *ruble* was raised from 0.222 168 to 0.987 412 gramme. The official exchange rates (March 1989) 1.08 rubles = £1; 0.63 rubles = US\$1.



The gold holdings of the USSR were, in Dec. 1955, estimated at about 200m. fine oz. (US\$7,000m.), or about 20% of the world total of monetary gold.

The currency in circulation is: (1) State Bank notes in denominations of 10, 25, 50 and 100 *rubles*; (2) Treasury notes in denominations of 1, 3 and 5 *rubles*; (3) cupro-nickel coins in denominations of 10, 15, 20 and 50 *kopeks* and 1 *ruble*; (4) cupro-zinc coins in denominations of 1, 2, 3 and 5 *kopeks*.

**Banking.** The State Bank began operations on 16 Nov. 1921. By an edict of 7 April 1959 a number of specialized banks for planned long-term investments, which had existed since 1932, were abolished. The State Bank, in addition to short-term credits, effects long-term investments in agriculture and in individual rural house building. The Bank for Financing Capital Investments (*Stroibank*) covers industry, transport, urban housing schemes and public utilities and individual house-building in towns.

Deposits in 76,900 savings banks were over 266,900m. rubles to the credit of 187.5m. depositors at 1 Jan. 1988.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system has been in use since 1 Jan. 1927.

The Gregorian Calendar was adopted as from 14 Feb. 1918.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There were (1983) 57 fuel-burning power stations of over 1m. kw. capacity, and these account for over 80% of the country's electricity.

Hydro-electric stations have been constructed on major rivers. Among them are the Bratsk (4.5m. kw.), completed in 1967, Ust-Ilimsk, Central Siberia (3.6m. kw.), Krasnoyarsk (6m. kw.) and a 1.26m. kw. station on the River Pechora (Far North). The Sayano-Shushenskaya hydro-power station, part of the Yenisei chain has a capacity of 6.4m. kw. A 245m. high dam has to be built before completion, in a gorge in the Sayan Range. Another large hydro-electric station is under construction on the River Kureika, Siberia, to provide energy for the mining and metallurgical centre at Norilsk in the Arctic.

Total installed capacity of power stations in 1938 was 8.7m. kw. and 338m. kw. in 1987. Industry consumes about 70% of the total electricity. Over 35,000 small rural power stations have been closed in recent years owing to supply from State stations becoming available, but there are still many operating in the countryside. 800 towns and urban settlements were heated by central thermal plants.

The world's first commercial nuclear power station in Obninsk, built in 1954, was followed by the Beloyarsk, Novo-Voronezh, Leningrad, Kursk, Chernobyl, Armenian and Shevchenko nuclear stations. Soviet nuclear power plants so far have standard slow 1m. kw. reactors, but a 1.5m. kw. reactor has now been designed. A fast reactor is functioning at Shevchenko.

The general design for a nuclear thermal station has been developed, and practical experience in this field has been obtained at the Bilibino nuclear power station in the Arctic, which supplies electricity and heat to the inhabitants on the Chukchi Peninsula.

In 1979 a 500,000 kw. MHD pilot project was started in Ryazan. This first-generation MHD station will have an efficiency of 50% as against 40% in the best thermal power stations and will consume about 20% less fuel. An experimental tidal energy station is working at Kislaya Guba (Murman coast).

Total electricity output in 1987 was 1,665,000m. kwh.

The country's integrated power grid is now in operation, covering over 900 power stations, which are handled by a central control panel in Moscow through (in 1986) 939,400 km. of cable of 35 kw. or greater capacity. A unified power grid ('Mir') with all the Socialist countries of eastern Europe was built up between 1962 and 1967. Supply 127 and 220 volts; 50 Hz.

**Oil.** In the 1930s practically all Soviet oil came from the Caucasian fields, of which the Baku fields yielded 75-80% and the Grozny and Maikop fields between them 15%. Since then, the distribution has considerably changed. The Ural-Volga area, the 'Second Baku', has 4 large centres in operation, at Samarska Luka (Kuibyshev), Tuimazy (Bashkiria), Ishimbaev (Bashkiria) and Perm, producing nearly 100m. tonnes annually.



A large new oilfield has been developed in the Trans-Volga area of the Saratov region. The Tyumen (West Siberian) complex now accounts for over 50% of the USSR's oil output. In 1988 the USSR extracted 624m. tonnes of oil.

The total length of pipeline on 1 Jan. 1939 was 4,212 km, divided as follows: Baku-Batumi, 1,717 km; Grozny-Makhachkala, 150 km; Grozny-Armavir-Tuapse, 618 km; Armavir-Trudovaya, 488 km; Guriev-Orsk, 845 km, and other, 394 km. One pipeline (1,700 km) was completed in 1955, connecting Tuimazy in Bashkiria with the refineries of Omsk. In 1957 the Almet'yevsk-Gorky pipeline (580 km) and 479 km of the Stavropol-Moscow pipeline were completed. At the end of 1981 there were 70,800 km of pipeline, through which (in 1981) were conveyed 637.7m. tonnes of oil.

The construction of the 'Druzhba' pipeline of about 5,327 km from the oilfields near Kuibyshev to Poland and the German Democratic Republic (northern branch) and to Czechoslovakia and Hungary (southern branch)—separating in Belorussia—began in 1960, was completed in 1965. Now a double line, it has an annual throughput of 50m. tonnes.

In 1986 the USSR exported 186.8m. tonnes of crude oil and oil products.

Meyerhoff, A. A., *The Oil and Gas Potential of the Soviet Far East*. Beaconsfield, 1981

**Gas.** A natural-gas pipeline from Gazli, near Khiva, to Voskresensk, near Moscow (2,750 km), with a planned capacity of 100m. cu. metres per day, began operating in Oct. 1967. Since then it has been extended to Czechoslovakia, where a 1,000 km extension, for transmission of Soviet gas to Austria, Italy and German Democratic Republic and Federal Republic of Germany, is under construction and another to Bulgaria. Another natural-gas pipeline, over 3,000 km from Medvezhye (Tyumen Region) to Moscow, began operating in Oct. 1974. A second pipeline from this region, linking the Urengoi deposit with Petrovsky in the Central European area of the USSR, became operational in 1980, and is to be continued to the southern Ukraine, to a total length of 3,000 km. A gas pipeline starting from Orenburg (Urals), passing across the Volga at Kamyshin, and continuing across the Ukraine via Kremenchug and Vinnitsa to Czechoslovakia (2,750 km), supplies Czechoslovakia, Poland, Bulgaria and Hungary with 14,000m. cu. metres annually and Romania with 1,500m. A unified gas-grid exceeding 124,000 km now exists.

By Dec. 1981 construction work had begun on the 5,000 km Urengoi (West Siberia)-Uzhgorod-West Europe gas pipeline.

In 1987, 727,000m. cu. metres of gas were produced (in 1940, 3,200 m., in 1970, 197,900m.).

**Minerals.** Mining experts are trained in 6 mining, 3 oil and 1 peat institutes, the mining faculties of 17 higher educational establishments, oil faculties of 2 industrial institutes and a peat faculty at the Belorussian Polytechnical Institute.

The Soviet Union is rich in minerals. Soviet scientists claim that it contains 58% of the world's coal deposits, 58.7% of its oil, 41% of its iron ore, 76.7% of its apatite, 25% of all timber land, 88% of its manganese, 54% of its potassium salts and nearly one-third of its phosphates.

Estimated output (in tonnes) in 1962: Copper, 634,900; zinc, 399,000; lead, 363,000; tungsten, 10,500; antimony, 5,980; silver, 27m. fine oz. Output in 1963: Baryte, 199,500; magnesium, 31,745; aluminium, 961,400; manganese ore (1977), 8.6m.; graphite, 54,000; bauxite, 4.3m.; asbestos, 1.3m.; phosphate rock, 3.7m. (plus 7.4m. apatite); chromite, 1.23m.; gold, 12.5m. fine oz.; molybdenum, 12.5m. lb.; cadmium (1956), 160.

Output of iron and steel in the USSR (in 1m. tonnes):

	<i>Pig-iron</i>	<i>Ingot steel</i>	<i>Rolled steel</i>		<i>Pig-iron</i>	<i>Ingot steel</i>	<i>Rolled steel</i>
1913	4.2	4.2	3.5	1960	46.8	65.3	50.9
1928-29	4.0	4.8	3.9	1965	66.2	91.0	61.7
1932	6.2	5.9	4.4	1970	85.9	115.9	80.6
1940	14.9	18.3	13.1	1980	107.3	147.9	118.3
1946	10.0	13.4	9.6	1985	110.0	154.7	128.4
1950	19.2	27.3	20.9	1987	114.0	161.9	134.4

Coal production (in 1m. tonnes) was 29.1 in 1913, 165.9 in 1940, 261.1 in 1950, 509.6 in 1960, 624.1 in 1970, 716.4 in 1980, 760 in 1987.

The main centre of the atomic ore industry is at Ust-Kamenogorsk in the Altai Mountains. Uranium deposits are being worked near Taboshar (south-east of Tashkent), Andizhan (in the Tynya-Muyan Mountains), Slyudianka (near Lake Baikal), on the Kolyma River and in Southern Armenia.

**Agriculture.** The Soviet Union, up to about 1928 predominantly agricultural in character, has become an industrial-agricultural country. Of produced national income in 1986, industry accounted for 43.9%, agriculture for 20.6%, trade etc. for 17.3%, construction for 12% and transport and communications for 6.2%. Of the total state land fund of 2,227.6m. hectares, agricultural land in use in 1986 amounted to 1,048.5m., state forests and state reserves to 1,108.5m. hectares. 19% of all gainfully employed in 1986 were engaged in agriculture and forestry (1913, 75%; 1940, 54%).

The total area under cultivation (including single-owner peasant farms, state farms and collective farms) was (in the same territory) 118.2m. hectares in 1913, 150.6m. in 1940, 146.3m. in 1950, 203m. in 1960, 206.7m. in 1970, 217.3 in 1980, and 210.3m. in 1986.

Collective farms in 1986 possessed 92.2m. hectares of cultivated land, of which 50m. were under crops of various kinds; state farms and other state agricultural undertakings possessed 112.4m. hectares, of which 65.5m. were under crops; personal subsidiary holdings (private plots and allotments) accounted for 5.7m. hectares.

State procurements (after consumption by farms) were, in 1m. tonnes, for the present area of the USSR:

	1950	1960	1970	1987		1950	1960	1970	1987
Grain	32.3	46.7	73.3	73.3	Meat <sup>2</sup> and fats	1.3	4.8	8.1	21.8
Raw Cotton <sup>1</sup>	3.5	4.3	6.9	8.1	Milk and milk products	11.4	29.1	48.0	74.3
Sugar-beet	19.7	52.2	71.4	78.9	Sunflower seed	1.1	2.3	4.6	4.8
Potatoes	14.0	13.7	18.1	16.9	Eggs (1,000m.)	3.5	10.5	22.1	55.5
Other vegetables	4.3	8.0	13.8	20.2					

<sup>1</sup> Seed-cotton unginned.

<sup>2</sup> Slaughter weight.

Since 1954 grain crops have been measured in 'barn crop' (*i.e.*, net quantities delivered to barns) and not in 'gross harvest' or 'biological yield' (*i.e.*, calculated as growing crops) as previously. Average annual crops (in 1m. tonnes): 1909-13, 72.5; 1946-50, 64.8; 1951-55, 88.5; 1956-60, 121.5; 1961-65, 130.3; 1966-70, 167.5; 1971-75, 181.6; 1976-80, 205; 1981-85, 180.3; 1987, 195.

Other produce (in 1m. tonnes) in 1988: Milk, 106.4; sugar-beet, 87.8; potatoes, 62.7; vegetables, 29.3; meat (slaughter weight), 19.3; raw cotton, 8.7; sunflower seed, 6.2; wool, 0.5; eggs, 84,600m.

In 1987 there were 26,300 collective farms employing 12.6m. collective farmers. Total value of output, 77,800m. rubles. In 1985 they produced 89% of all sugar-beet, cotton 66%, milk 37%, meat 30%, potatoes 21%, other vegetables 24%, eggs 7%, sunflower seeds 74%, wool 30%. In Nov. 1969 the Third Congress of collective farmers adopted a new model constitution, considerably enlarging the planning powers of collective farms and making payments to their members a priority.

In 1987 there were 22,929 state farms employing 12m. workers (10m. engaged in agriculture) and producing an output valued at 81,000m. rubles.

By 1983 the main field work on state and collective farms and joint inter-farm enterprises (ploughing, sowing of grain, cotton and sugar-beet, and the harvesting of grain and silage crops) was fully mechanized; in 1984, 45% of potato harvesting was mechanized, 94% of sugar-beet pulling, and 66% of vegetable planting.

Rural power stations in 1940 had a capacity of 47.5 h.p.; in 1985, 719m. h.p. Energy consumption in 1985 was 30.7 h.p. per employee. In 1984 agriculture consumed 138,814m. kwh. of electric power.

Investments in agriculture in 1987 were 34,400m. rubles (including 23,800m. by the state and 10,600m. by collective farms). Total agricultural output in 1986 was valued at 121,200m. rubles.

In 1913 the total of irrigated land was 4m. hectares; in 1953, 11m.; in 1986, 20.2m. The total of land drained was 8.4m. hectares in 1956 and 14.9m. in 1986. In 1986, 2,615m. rubles were spent on conservation measures (1,798m. on water resources and 263m. on the atmosphere).

In 1913, 188,000 tonnes of mineral fertilizers were used; in 1950, 5.3m. tonnes,



and in 1981, 84m. On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 2.8m. tractors, 826,800 grain combine harvesters and 1.1m. motorized ploughs in the countryside.

An All-Union Academy of Agricultural Sciences, founded in 1929, has regional branches in Siberia and Central Asia and 310 research institutes.

Livestock (1 Jan. 1989), in 1m. head: Cattle, 118.8 (including 41.5 milch cows); pigs, 77.7; sheep, 142.2; goats, 6.5. Since 1957 the enumeration of livestock has been made on 1 Jan. instead of 1 Oct., i.e., after the winter sales and slaughter for the market. Percentage of farm production in 1985:

	Grain	Cotton	Sugar-beet	Potatoes	Other vegetables	Meat	Milk	Eggs	Wool
State	48	35	12	18	46	42	32	66	44
Collective	51	65	88	22	25	30	39	6	30
Private <sup>1</sup>	1	0	0	60	29	28	29	28	26

<sup>1</sup> i.e., household plots of collective farmers.

**Forestry.** Of the 810.9m. hectares of forest land of the USSR, 792.1m. hectares is administered and worked by the State; the remainder, 18.8m. hectares in extent, is granted for use to the peasantry free of charge.

The largest forest areas are 515m. hectares in the Asiatic part of USSR, 51.4m. along the northern seaboard, 25.4m. in the Urals and 17.95m. in the north-west.

On 24 Oct. 1948 a plan was published for planting crop-protecting forest belts, introducing crop rotation with grasses and building of ponds and water reservoirs in the steppe and forest-steppe areas of the European part of the USSR. By the middle of 1952 some 2.6m. hectares had been planted with shelter-belt trees and 13,500 ponds and reservoirs had been built. The planting of the shelter belts in the Kamyshin-Volgograd and Byelgorod-Don areas has in the main been completed. A Volga forest belt has been planted along 1,200 km of railway. Re-afforestation was carried out on 2.2m. hectares of state land in 1986.

**Fisheries.** The fishing catch including whaling (in 1,000 tons): 1913, 1,051; 1940, 1,422; 1960, 3,541; 1985, 12,400. There were 422 fishing co-operatives in 1985 with a total output valued at 772m. rubles.

Blandon, P., *Soviet Forest Industries*. Boulder, 1983

Johnson, D. G. and Brooks, K. M., *The Prospects for Soviet Agriculture in the 1980s*. Bloomington, 1983

Shaffer, H. G., *Soviet Agriculture*. New York, 1977

Symons, L., *Russian Agriculture: A Geographic Survey*. London, 1972

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The organization of industry in the USSR is based on state ownership and control, administered by a separate ministry for each large industry.

Under the successive 5-year plans, large-scale modern industrial works have been constructed, namely: 1st, over 1,500; 2nd, 4,500; 3rd (up to June 1941), 3,000; wartime, 3,500 (apart from reconstruction of destroyed plants); 4th, 6,200; 5th, 3,200; 6th, 2,700; 7th (1959-65), 5,470; 8th (1966-70), 1,870; 9th (1971-75), 2,000; 10th (1976-80), 1,200.

Output of some heavy industries was as follows:

Industry	1913	1950	1960	1970	1980	1988
Iron ore (1m. tonnes)	9.2	39.7	106.2	197.3	244.7	251.0 <sup>3</sup>
Oil (1m. tonnes)	9.2	37.9	148.0	353.0	603.2	624.0
Electric power (1,000m. kwh.)	1.9	91.2	292.0	740.9	1,295.0	1,705.0
Coal (1m. tonnes)	29.2	261.1	509.6	624.1	716.4	772.0
Steel (1m. tonnes)	4.2	27.3	65.3	115.9	147.9	163.0
Rolled steel (finished, 1m. tonnes)	3.3	18.0	43.7	80.6	102.9	116.0
Steam and gas turbines (1,000 kw.)	5.9	2,381.0	9,200.0	16,191.0	20,300.0	22,500.0 <sup>3</sup>
Steel pipe (1m. tonnes)	—	2.0	5.8	12.4	18.2	20.8
Chemical fibres (1m. tonnes)	—	0.0	0.2	0.6	1.2	1.6
Mineral fertilizer <sup>2</sup> (1m. tonnes)	0.0	1.3	3.3	13.1	24.8	37.1
Automobiles (1,000)	—	64.6	138.8	344.2	1,327.0	1,300.0
Tractors (1m. h.p.)	—	5.5	11.4	29.4	47.0	52.1 <sup>3</sup>
Sulphuric acid (1m. tonnes)	0.1	2.1	5.4	12.1	23.0	28.5 <sup>3</sup>
Excavators (no.)	—	3,540.0	12,290.0	30,800.0	42,000.0	41,700.0
Timber (commercial, 1m. cu. metres) <sup>1</sup>	27.2	161.0	261.5	298.5	277.7	295.0 <sup>3</sup>
Cement (1m. tonnes)	1.8	10.2	45.5	95.2	125.0	139.0

<sup>1</sup> Excluding collective farm production. <sup>2</sup> Recalculated base. <sup>3</sup> 1987.



The process of industrial mechanization and the installation of automatic remote control is being pushed ahead. About 93% of Soviet pig-iron and 87% of the steel is produced in fully automatic furnaces. All hydro-electric plants (in terms of capacity) are fully automatic. Coal production in open-cast mines has been completely mechanized; hydraulic mining is coming into general use. Coal-cutting and underground haulage was over 99% mechanized by the end of 1962 (loading on inclined seams 56%); peat-cutting, 100%, and loading, nearly 80%; timber-cutting, 98%; haulage to loading centres, 93%, and despatch, 97%.

Output in some consumer industries was as follows:

Industry	1913	1950	1960	1970	1980	1988
Cotton fabrics (1m. linear metres)	2,672	3,899	6,387	7,482	8,063	13,100
Woollen fabrics (1m. linear metres)	108	156	342	496	564	
Silk fabrics (1m. linear metres)	43	130	810	1,241	1,632	
Leather footwear (1m. pairs)	60	203	419	679	744	
Clocks and watches (1m.)	1	8	26	40	67	74
Radio receivers (1m.)	—	1	4	8	9	8
Television sets (1m.)	—	—	2	7	8	10
Refrigerators (1,000)	—	1	530	4,140	5,925	6,200
Paper (1,000 tonnes)	269	1,193	2,334	4,185	5,288	6,300
Meat (slaughter weight, 1m. tonnes)	5	5	9	12	15	19
Butter (1,000 tonnes)	104	336	737	963	1,278	1,700
Granulated sugar (1,000 tonnes)	1,363	2,523	6,360	10,221	10,127	12,100
Canned foods (1m. tins)	116	1,113	4,864	10,678	15,268	20,900

Since 1945 the cotton industry has expanded, especially in the Urals, Central Asia and Siberia. Large mills have been built at Kamyshin, Kherson, Barnaul, Engels, Alma-Ata, Chernigov and Frunze.

**Trade Unions and Labour.** Trade unions are organized on an industrial basis, all workers, whether manual or brain, in every branch of a given industry being eligible for membership of the same union. Collective farmers may join trade unions.

Since 1933 the trade unions have carried out the functions of the former Labour Commissariat; they control and supervise the application of labour laws, introduce new labour laws for approval by the Government and administer social insurance and factory inspection. Social insurance is non-contributory. The All-Union Congress has met at irregular intervals; the 17th Congress met in 1982 and the 18th in 1987.

In 1944 there were 176 unions. This number was reduced by amalgamation of unions to 22 in 1958, but increased to 31 by 1987. Contributions range from 0.5 to 6% of wages. There are 173 regional and Republican Trades Councils. Membership (1987) 140m.

*Chairman, Central Council of Trade Unions:* S. A. Shalayev.

Industrial and clerical workers engaged (1988) in the whole national economy were 117.5m., 51% of them women; a further 12.2m. were engaged in collective-farm agriculture. The 7-hour day (6 hours for miners underground and other heavy trades) was generally in operation by the end of 1960. The average working week since 1970 has been 39 hours and in industry 39.6 hours. The 5-day week (without reduction of total working hours) was introduced in 1967.

New 'Fundamentals of Labour Legislation', intended to codify and extend labour laws adopted in the last 40 years, were adopted by the Supreme Soviet in July 1970. They lay down, *inter alia*, the right to receive wages irrespective of the income of the enterprise concerned, the right to free vocational and advanced technical training; the right to form trade unions without state registration; the right of trade unions to participate in and supervise management and planning, labour legislation, safety regulation and housing, fixing of working conditions and wages, etc. Pensioners in Jan. 1987 numbered 56.8m., including 40.5m. old age. Average monthly wages in the state sector were 217 rubles in 1988.

*Profsoyuzy SSSR. Dokumenty i materialy.* 5 vols., Moscow, 1963-74

*Shornik postanovlenii VTsSPS.* Moscow, 1960ff, quarterly

Ruble, B. A., *Soviet Trade Unions. Their Development in the 1970s.* CUP, 1981

**Commerce.** Retail home trade takes three forms—state, co-operative and the free market, *i.e.*, sales by individual collective-farm members and by the collective farms of their surplus products, after having fulfilled their statutory deliveries and made their regular allocations to their members.

In 1987 retail trade by the State, co-operatives and collective farms totalled 350,700m. rubles; of this state and co-operative trade amounted to 341,500m. rubles (in 1970, 159,400m. and 155,200m. rubles respectively). Employees in retail trade were 7.8m. in 1987 (annual average); there were 727,600 retail trade outlets with a total floor area of 55.1m. sq. metres. The state retail price index (1980 = 100) was 108 in 1987. Trade by collective farm markets amounted to 8,700m. rubles in 1986; this was 2.6% by value of all retail trade and 4.9% by value of all food sales.

Foreign trade is organized as a state monopoly. Importation and exportation of goods are effected under licences issued by the Ministry for Foreign Economic Relations and its respective departments in pursuance of a plan annually sanctioned by the Government. The right of purchasing goods for importation, and that of selling Soviet exports abroad, is vested in trade delegations and representatives of the appropriate state corporations in foreign countries.

There are 29 state import and export organizations, including chartering and tourist corporations (one, Vostokintorg, dealing with Mongolia, Sinkiang and Afghanistan). The Central Union of Consumers' Societies (Tsentrsoyuz) is also authorized to conduct foreign trade operations.

Foreign trade in 1988 was conducted with 145 foreign countries (in 1950, 45), and had by 1986 increased 45 times by value since 1950. Exports in 1987 were valued at 68,142m. rubles (44,200m. to the socialist countries), and imports at 60,741m. rubles (42,121m. from the socialist countries).

Soviet imports of machinery and equipment, between 1940 and 1987, rose from 32.4 to 41.4%, ores and concentrates fell from 26.6 to 8.1%, foodstuffs rose from 14.9 to 16.1% and manufactured consumer goods rose from 1.4 to 13% by value; exports of fuel and electricity increased from 13.2 to 46.5% and of machinery and equipment from 2 to 15.5% by value over the same period.

Main items of exports in 1987:

Crude oil (1m. tonnes)	137.0	Gas (1m. cu. metres)	84,400.0
Iron ore (1m. tonnes)	34.6	Tractors (1,000)	41.4
Rolled metal (1m. tonnes)	8.7	Motor cars (1,000)	339.0
Paper (1,000 tonnes)	763.0	Clocks and watches (1m.)	18.6
Cotton cloth (1,000 tonnes)	783.0	Grain (1m. tonnes)	1.8

Total trade between the USSR and UK for calendar years (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	724,453	694,624	875,431	732,115
Exports and re-exports from UK	536,555	539,368	491,615	511,653

**Tourism.** Pre-revolutionary Russia was never a country for any but the most hardy and better-off tourists, as the introductory pages of Baedeker's guide made clear. For her subjects, too, touring was no more inviting. Acute shortage of hotels and boarding-houses, poor roads, lack of ordinary services for visitors were among the least of their difficulties. These have not by any means been fully overcome; but very great efforts to meet them have been made. The first tourist organizations came into existence in 1885–90 in St Petersburg, Tiflis and Odessa; and in 1901 the Russian Society of Tourists was formed (about 5,000 members in 1914). Organized tourism in the Soviet period began in the early 1920s; the Russian Society of Tourists was revived, and other tourist organizations, notably 'Intourist' (founded 1929), were established. The development of tourism on a massive scale is however a development of the post-Second World War period.

Tourist facilities for Soviet and foreign citizens are presently made available under state, trade union and other auspices, all of which come ultimately under the supervision of the State Committee on Tourism which is attached to the USSR Council of Ministers. The number of hotels available to such tourists increased from 222 in 1960 to 983 in 1987, with a total accommodation of 443,100 (in 1960, 36,000); the number of tourist bases, for the hire of equipment and shorter stays,



increased to 8,218, with a total accommodation of 806,700. In 1987 these facilities were used by 31.8m. and 4m. tourists respectively (in 1970, 5m. and 1.7m.). A total of 52.5m. citizens in 1987 made use of all forms of tourist accommodation, including sanatoria and boarding houses (in 1960, 6.7m.; in 1970, 16.8m.). In 1987 a further 227m. citizens took part in tourist excursions.

Visitors to the USSR from foreign countries are catered for by 'Intourist' and its offices in foreign countries. In 1970, the USSR had 2,059,338 foreign visitors (43,490 from the UK, and 66,365 from the USA); in 1988 there were 6m., of whom 2m. were catered for by Intourist. In the same year 4.2m. Soviet citizens made tourist, business or other visits to foreign countries.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** By 1940 there were over 1.5m. km of constructed roads, of which 143,400 km were suitable for motor traffic. The total length of motor roads in 1988 was 842,700 km. Road freights by lorry amounted to 859m. tonnes in 1940 and 27,593m. tonnes in 1987. Passengers carried were 590m. in 1940 and 49,984m. in 1987. In 1987, 24,100 inter-urban bus routes had a total length of 3,642,000 km.

**Railways.** The length of railways in Jan. 1988 was 146,100 km (1913: 58,500 km), of which 51,700 km was electrified. Diesel and electric traction now account for almost 100% of all movements, with the electrified network handling 56% of the traffic. In 1986, 47% of all domestic tonne-km of freight and 37% of all passenger-km of traffic went by rail. In 1987 railways carried 4,067m. tonnes of freight (representing 3,824,700 tonne-km) and carried 4,360m. passengers (representing 402,200m. passenger-km).

Operations are centred on 32 regions with headquarters at: Baku, Alma-Ata, Tyndin, Minsk, Irkutsk, Gorki, Khabarovsk, Donetsk, Chita, Tbilisi, Aktyubinsk, Novosibirsk, Kemerovo, Krasnoyarsk, Kuibyshev, Lvov, Kishinev, Moscow, Odessa, Leningrad, Riga, Saratov, Dnepropetrovsk, Sverdlovsk, Yaroslavl, Rostov-on-Don, Tashkent, Tselinograd, Voronezh, Kharkov and Chelyabinsk.

Extensive railway construction is in progress, including routes northwards from Surgut to Urengoi and Nizhe-Vartovskoye, while the great Baikal-Amur Magistral (BAM) project was completed in 1985. This is a new main line to the east, sited well to the north of the existing Trans-Siberian route to the Pacific ports of Nakhodka and Vladivostok. It runs from Lena, on the Lena river, to Komsomolsk-on-Amur, 3,145 km distant. BAM is intended to become the principal route for export traffic to the eastern ports, easing the very heavy pressure on the Trans-Siberian line, which is only partially electrified and not double-track throughout.

BAM was the most arduous railway building project ever tackled by Soviet engineers, and the greatest drawback to development of the region has been its severe geological and climatic conditions. There is permafrost throughout the area, and winter temperatures fall to  $-60^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Construction work occupied nearly a decade, and has required over 3,200 bridges, tunnels and culverts.

Underground railways have been built in Moscow, Leningrad, Kiev, Tbilisi, Kharkov, Tashkent, Baku, Gorky, Minsk, Yerevan, Novosibirsk and Kuibyshev. Others are under construction at Omsk, Dnepropetrovsk and Sverdlovsk.

**Aviation.** In 1987 total length of internal airlines in the USSR was approximately 939,000 km; 119m. passengers were carried internally and externally, and 3.2m. tonnes of freight. The Central Asian Airways in some instances provide the only means of communication across the desert and mountainous regions of the local republics. An 8,500-km air service was opened in Feb. 1941 between Moscow and Anadyr (Eastern Siberia), through Archangel, Igarka, Khatanga, Tiksi Bay and Cape Schmidt, *i.e.*, along the entire course of the Northern Sea Route. There are also other Arctic airlines, *e.g.*, Igarka-Gulf of Kozhevnikov; Igarka-Dickson Island; Yakutsk-Tiksi Bay; Yakutsk-Vilui; Yakutsk-Verkhioansk.

Direct air services are maintained throughout the year between Moscow and the capitals of all Soviet republics as well as London, New York, Montreal, Tokyo, Delhi, Rangoon, Belgrade, Peking, Pyongyang, Ulan Bator, Kábul, Tirana, Paris, Warsaw, Prague, Budapest, Bucharest, Sofia, Vienna, Berlin, Helsinki, Stockholm,



Copenhagen, Jakarta, Dakar and Gander. Soviet air services reached 87 countries in 1981, and 20 foreign lines have regular services to the USSR, including British Airways, KLM, SAS, Air France, SABENA, Air India, PANAM. The first Soviet airbus, the 350-seater IL-86, began flights on civil aviation routes in 1981. The 120-seater YAK-42 will gradually replace the TU-134 and AN-24 on major shorter routes.

MacDonald, H., *Aeroflot: Soviet Air Transport Since 1923*. London, 1975

**Shipping.** In 1977 the Soviet mercantile marine comprised 7,000 self-propelled vessels, of which 80% were built between 1957 and 1966. By May 1977 the gross cargo capacity was (including fishing vessels) 20.8m. registered tonnes (16m. tonnes dead-weight).

Freights carried on domestic waterways were: In 1913 (present frontiers), 35.1 m. tonnes; in 1940, 73.9m. tonnes; and in 1987, 673m. tonnes; 128m. passengers were carried. The Soviet share in world marine tonnage was 2% in 1960 and 6% in 1977. Deep-sea ports are under construction at Vostochny (Far East) and Grigorevsky (Black Sea) with new deep-sea wharves at Ventspils (Latvia), Murmansk and Archangel (for Arctic traffic). Archangel is kept open by icebreakers all the year round from 1979. Foreign freights in 1977 totalled 14% of all Soviet seaborne trade.

The North Sea route affords convenient communication between the European USSR and the Far East along the Soviet coast, for the produce of the basins of the Ob, Yenissei, Lena and Kolyma rivers.

The length of navigable rivers and canals in exploitation was (1987) 122,500 km, of which the length of floatable rivers is 81,000 km. There are several thousand miles of canals and other artificial waterways; among them the Baltic and White Sea Canal (235 km), the Moscow-Volga Canal (130 km). Goods turnover on inland waterways was 28,900m. tonne-km in 1913, 35,900m. in 1940, 45,900m. in 1950 and 252,709m. in 1987.

The Volga-Don Shipping Canal was opened for traffic in 1952. The Volga-Don waterway from Volgograd to Rostov is 540 km long, of which the Volga-Don canal comprises 101 km. The canal has transformed the section of the river from Kalach, where the Don is joined by the Volga-Don canal, to Rostov into a deep-water highway suitable for big Volga shipping. The canal links the White, Baltic, Caspian, Azov and Black Seas into a single water transport system. In Oct. 1964 the 2,430-km Baltic-Volga waterway, linking Klaipeda on the Baltic to Kakhovka at the mouth of the Dnieper and suitable for 5,000-tonne vessels, was begun. Reconstruction of the 18th-century Mariinsky canal system in north-west Russia was completed, providing a through waterway from Leningrad to Rybinsk (on the Upper Volga) and cutting the passage of freight from 18 to 2½ days.

At the end of 1977 the longest train ferry route in the world was opened between the Soviet Union and Bulgaria (Ilyichovsk-Varna).

The first section of Vostochny port, in Wrangel Bay on the Pacific coast, is completed. It will be the country's largest deep-sea port.

In 1962 a canal was completed across the Kara-Kum desert in southern Turkmenistan (replacing an earlier project for a more costly scheme across the north of the republic). The canal, from Bussag on the river Amu-Darya to Archnan, northwest of Ashkhabad, through the Murgab oasis, 900 km long, supplies water to an area exceeding 200,000 hectares, suitable for cotton, fruit, vineyards and livestock. An extension to the Caspian (500 km) is under construction: the complete system will irrigate 1m. hectares.

An irrigation canal system (250 miles), bringing water from Kakhovka on the Dnieper to the North Crimea, is nearing completion. Work to divert water from the Pechora and Vychegda rivers (flowing into the White Sea) south to the Volga is in progress. Work has begun on a 300-mile canal which will supply water from the Irtysh to Karaganda in Central Kazakhstan, irrigating over 150,000 acres; the first 37 miles were opened in 1965 and another 45 miles in Dec. 1967. Most of the 11 reservoirs required had been completed by 1 Jan. 1972. Other irrigation canals under construction are Kuibyshev (279 km long, to supply over 100,000 hectares)

and Stavropol (481 km, irrigating 200,000 hectares); the second section of the latter went into commission in Nov. 1974, 14 months ahead of schedule. In Sept. 1972 the Saratov Canal (irrigating 1 m. hectares) went into commission.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In Jan. 1988 the number of post, telegraph and telephone offices was 91,000 and of general telephones 35.3m.

The international radio-telecommunications services are operated by the Ministry of Communications of the USSR. The Great Northern Telegraph Co., Ltd. of Denmark, operates cables connecting Denmark with Leningrad, whence connexion is made by means of a trans-Siberian landline with Vladivostok. From the latter place the Great Northern Telegraph Co. owns cables connecting with Japan, China and Hong Kong. Direct radio and telephone communication with India is provided for in an agreement concluded in 1955.

The State Committee for Broadcasting and Television produces 3 programmes in Moscow, broadcasting throughout the Union. In addition the regional radio stations produce 1, 2 or 3 programmes for the republics as well as local programmes for a town or region. The foreign service from Moscow is beamed to all parts of the world, in 64 languages. Chinese has 28½ hours programme time a day. Several republics have their own foreign services. English is broadcast from Moscow, Kiev, Tashkent, Vilnius and Yerevan. There are 120 TV centres in the USSR, several of them producing more than 1 programme. In Moscow there are 4 programmes. Colour programmes are broadcast by the SECAM system. A nationwide system of space telecommunications, consisting of satellites and ground stations, takes TV broadcasts to distant parts of the country.

Number of receivers, Jan. 1988: radio, 83m. (1960, 28m); television, 87m. (1960, 5m.).

**Cinemas and Theatres** (Jan. 1988). There were 153,000 cinemas to which 3,775m. visits were made annually. In Jan. 1988 there were 658 theatres, to which 123m. visits were made.

**Newspapers.** In 1987, 8,532 newspapers with a total daily circulation of 207.9m. copies were published in 57 languages of the USSR.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The basis of the judicial system is the same throughout the Soviet Union, but the constituent republics have the right to introduce modifications and to make their own rules for the application of the codes of laws. The Supreme Court of the USSR is the chief court and supervising organ for all constituent republics and is elected by the Supreme Soviet of the USSR for 5 years. Chairman (elected 1984) V. I. Terebilov. Supreme Courts of the Union and Autonomous Republics are elected by the Supreme Soviets of these republics, and Territorial, Regional and Area Courts by the respective Soviets, each for a term of 5 years. At the lowest level are the People's Courts, which are elected directly by the population.

Court proceedings are conducted in the local language with full interpreting facilities as required. All cases are heard in public, unless otherwise provided for by law, and the accused is guaranteed the right of defence.

Laws establishing common principles of legislation in various fields are adopted by the Supreme Soviet and are then enacted in more specific form and implemented by subordinate levels of state and judicial authority.

The Law Courts are divided into People's Courts and higher courts. The People's Courts consist of the People's Judge and 2 Assessors, and their function is to examine, as the first instance, most of the civil and criminal cases, except the more important ones, some of which are tried at the Regional Court, and those of the highest importance at the Supreme Court. The Regional Courts supervise the activities of the People's Courts and also act as Courts of Appeal from the decisions of the People's Court. Special chambers of the higher courts deal with offences committed in the Army and the public transport services.

People's Judges and Assessors, who serve on a rota basis, are elected directly by the citizens of each constituency: judges for 5 years, assessors for 2½. Should a



judge be found not to perform his duties conscientiously and in accordance with the mandate of the people, he may be recalled by his electors.

The People's Assessors are called upon for duty for 2 weeks in a year. The People's Assessors for the Regional Court must have had at least 2 years' experience in public or trade-union work. The list of Assessors for the Supreme Court is drawn up by the Supreme Soviet of the republic.

The Labour Session of the People's Court supervises the regulations relating to the working conditions and the protection of labour and gives decisions on conflicts arising between managements and employees, or the violation of regulations.

Disputes between State institutions must be referred to an arbitration commission. Disputes between Soviet State institutions and foreign business firms may be referred by agreement to a Foreign Trade Arbitration Commission of the All-Union Chamber of Commerce.

The Procurator-General of the USSR (since 1984, A. M. Rekunkov) is appointed for 5 years by the Supreme Soviet. All procurators of the republics, autonomous republics and autonomous regions are appointed by the Procurator-General of the USSR for a term of 5 years. The procurators supervise the correct application of the law by all state organs, and have special responsibility for the observance of the law in places of detention. The procurators of the Union republics are subordinate to the Procurator-General of the USSR, whose duty it is to see that acts of all institutions of the USSR are legal, that the law is correctly interpreted and uniformly applied; he has to participate in important cases in the capacity of State Prosecutor.

Capital punishment was abolished on 26 May 1947, but was restored on 12 Jan. 1950 for treason, espionage and sabotage, on 7 May 1954 for certain categories of murder, in Dec. 1958 for terrorism and banditry, on 7 May 1961 for embezzlement of public property, counterfeiting and attack on prison warders and, in particular circumstances, for attacks on the police and public order volunteers and for rape (15 Feb. 1962) and for accepting bribes (20 Feb. 1962).

In view of criminal abuses, extending over many years, discovered in the security system, the powers of administrative trial and exile previously vested in the security authorities (MVD) were abolished in 1953; accelerated procedures for trial on charges of high treason, espionage, wrecking, etc., by the Supreme Court were abolished in 1955; and extensive powers of protection of persons under arrest or serving prison terms were vested in the Procurator-General's Office (1955). Supervisory commissions, composed of representatives of trade unions, youth organizations and local authorities, were set up in 1956 to inspect places of detention.

Further reforms of the civil and criminal codes were decreed on 25 Dec. 1958. Thereby the age of criminal responsibility has been raised from 14 to 16 years; deportation and banishment have been abolished; a presumption of innocence is not accepted, but the burden of proof of guilt has been placed upon the prosecutor. Secret trials and the charge of 'enemy of the people' have been abolished. Articles 70 and 190 of the Criminal Code, which deal with 'anti-Soviet agitation and propaganda' and 'crimes against the system of administration' respectively, have however been widely used against political dissidents in more recent years.

Butler, W. E., *The Soviet Legal System. Selected Contemporary Legislation and Documents*. New York, 1978.—*Soviet Law*. 2nd ed. London, 1988

Feldbrugge, F. J. M. (ed.) *Encyclopedia of Soviet Law*. 2nd ed. Dordrecht, 1985

Hazard, J., Butler, W. E. and Maggs, P., *The Soviet Legal System*. 3rd ed. New York, 1977

Simons, W. B. (ed.) *The Soviet Codes of Law*. Alphen aan den Rijn, 1980

**Religion.** With the Revolution the Orthodox Church lost its position as the dominant religion and all religions were placed on an equal footing. Article 52 of the 1977 Soviet Constitution reads as follows: 'Citizens of the USSR are guaranteed freedom of conscience, that is, the right to profess or not to profess any religion, and to conduct religious worship or atheistic propaganda. Incitement of hostility or hatred on religious grounds is prohibited. In the USSR the church is separated from the state, and school from the church.'

By decree of 2 Feb. 1918 the Orthodox Church was disestablished; its property, together with that of all other denominations, was nationalized. The congregations themselves have to maintain their churches and clergy, regardless of confession or



denomination. A minimum of 20 persons may request and receive the use of a church building, free of charge, except for maintenance, insurance, land taxes, etc. About two-thirds of all the churches have been closed since 1917, but about 20,000 churches and 18 religious seminaries were reported to be in operation in 1986. Religious instruction may be given in private, but otherwise only in church classes. The income of religious communities is not subject to taxation. Religious instruction in classes for persons under 18 is forbidden. The state supplies paper and printing facilities to all denominations for producing the Bible, the Koran, prayer books, missals, etc, although in very limited quantities.

Relations between the religious communities of all creeds and the Government are maintained through a Council for Religious Affairs which is attached to the Council of Ministers of the USSR. (*Chairman*, K. M. Kharchev).

The Russian Orthodox Church, represented by the Patriarchate of Moscow, had, in 1988, an estimated 35-40m. adherents, 6,000 clergy and 6,500 churches. There are still many Old Believers, whose schism from the Orthodox Church dates from the 17th century. The Russian Church is headed by the Patriarch of Moscow and All Russia, assisted by the Holy Synod, which has 7 members—the Patriarch himself and the Metropolitans of Krutitsy and Kolomna (Moscow), Leningrad and Kiev *ex officio*, and 3 bishops alternating for 6 months in order of seniority from the 3 regions forming the Moscow Patriarchate. The Patriarchate of Moscow maintains jurisdiction over a few parishes of Russian Orthodox abroad, at Tchrán, Jerusalem, German Democratic Republic, France (1 archbishop), England, North and South America (2 bishops). There are 16 monasteries and nunneries, and 5 Orthodox academies and seminaries with 4 official publications.

After the Russian Orthodox Church the next Christian community in importance are the Armenians; their Catholicos (Patriarch), whose seat is at Etchmiadzin, is head of all the Armenian (Gregorian) communities throughout the world. There is an Armenian Orthodox academy and a seminary.

The Georgian Orthodox Church has its own organization under a Catholicos (Patriarch) who is resident in Tbilisi and who directs the church's seminary in Mtskheta.

Protestantism is represented chiefly by the Evangelical Christian Baptists, with over 512,000 baptized adult members and some 5,000 churches; the Lutherans are concentrated mainly in the Baltic States (350,000 in Estonia, 600,000 in Latvia), the Reformed in the Transcarpathian Region of the Ukraine (70,000). Both Baptists and Lutherans conduct theological courses. The Methodist Church functions in Estonia.

The Roman Catholics are most numerous in Lithuania, Belorussia and the western Ukraine, with an estimated 5m. adherents in total. There are 2 Roman Catholic arch-episcopates and 4 episcopates in Lithuania with 630 churches and a seminary at Kaunas providing a 5-year course. In 1946 some 3.5m. Uniates in the USSR were compelled to withdraw their allegiance to Rome and came under the jurisdiction of the Orthodox Patriarchate in Moscow. In Latvia there are an arch-episcopate and 1 episcopate (Riga and Liepaja) of the Roman Catholic Church.

The Moslems (estimate 40-45m. members, mainly Sunnis), are divided into 4 administrative regions, 3 of them (Central Asia and Kazakhstan, European Russia and Siberia, Northern Caucasus) headed by a Mufti; the largest (Transcaucasia, with its centre at Baku) by a Sheikh-ul-Islam.

There is a Moslem academy and a madrasah in Central Asia. Several editions of the Koran have appeared in recent years.

There are various Jewish communities, the chief being in Moscow, Leningrad and Kiev. There were, in 1984, an estimated 69 synagogues, 35-40 rabbis, and one Yeshiva in Moscow. There are no official religious publications and the teaching of Hebrew is severely restricted. The Central Buddhist Council of the USSR is headed by a Lama with communities in Buryatia, Tuva, Kalmykia and in the national (minority) areas of the Chita and Irkutsk regions.

*O religii i tserkvi: sbornik vazhneishikh vyskazyvaniy klassikov Marksizma-Leninizma, dokumentov KPSS i sovetskogo gosudarstva.* 2nd ed., Moscow, 1981

Bordeaux, M., *Opium of the People. The Christian Religion in the USSR.* London, 1965.—  
*Religious Ferment in Russia.* London, 1968

Curtiss, J. S., *The Russian Church and the Soviet State, 1917-50*, New York, 1953  
 Ellis, J., *The Russian Orthodox Church: A Contemporary History*, London, 1986  
 Kochan, L., (ed.), *Jews in Soviet Russia since 1917*, 3rd ed., Oxford, 1977  
 Lane, C., *Christian Religion in the Soviet Union*, London, 1978

**Education.** Education is free and compulsory from 7 to 16/17. There are 2 types of general schools, with an 8-year or a 10-year curriculum; the minimum school-leaving age is now 17. Pupils who leave an 8-year school continue their education at either a 10-year school or a vocational training school. A 10-year school pupil may also transfer to vocational school after the 8th year. Under directives adopted in 1984, there will be a gradual transition towards an 11-year school system, starting at 6, from 1986 onwards; efforts are also being made to improve pupils' preparation for employment and the status and working conditions of teachers.

In 1987-88 there were 135,000 primary and secondary schools. Pupils in general educational schools numbered 43.8m. (5.9m. of them in the ninth and tenth forms) and the teachers 3.2m. Those at vocational and specialized technical secondary schools numbered 9.8m.

At the end of 1940 labour reserve schools (both vocational and industrial) were organized, admitting applicants from 14 to 17 years of age. From 1959 onwards these and other technical schools were reorganized as town and rural vocational and technical schools, at which pupils stay for a year longer than at general schools, combining completion of general secondary education with vocational training. From 1940 to 1977 inclusive they trained 35m. skilled workers. In 1978, 2.3m. graduated from such schools, including 628,000 for agriculture; 600,000 agricultural mechanics were trained in state and collective farms. Over 4,300 vocational training schools existed in 1981, training 2.17m. boys and girls, all of whom receive a full secondary education. In 1988, 17m. children of from 3 to 7 years of age attended kindergartens. Children in boarding schools numbered over 800,000 in 1972-73.

In 1987-88 there were 4,508 technical colleges with 4.5m. students, and 898 universities, institutes and other places of higher education, with 5m. students (including 1.8m. taking correspondence or evening courses). Among the 65 university towns are: Moscow, Leningrad, Kharkov, Odessa, Tartu, Kazan, Saratov, Tomsk, Kiev, Sverdlovsk, Tbilisi, Alma-Ata, Tashkent, Minsk, Gorky and Vladivostok.

On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 1.5m. scientific workers in 5,089 places of higher education, research institutes and Academies of Sciences. There are 33,000 foreign students from 130 countries.

The Academy of Sciences of the USSR had 932 members and corresponding members. Total learned institutions under the USSR Academy of Sciences number 244, with 60,518 scientific staff. Each Union Republic (other than the RSFSR) has its own Academy of Sciences, with scientific staff numbering 49,988. There are also Siberian, Far Eastern and other branches of the USSR Academy. On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 96,125 post-graduate students in Academy and other higher educational institutions, 52% studying on a part-time basis.

The Academy of Pedagogical Sciences had 14 research institutes with 1,643 staff.

In 1988 over 110m. people were studying at schools, colleges and training or correspondence courses. 125 per 1,000 of the employed population had a higher education (1939, 13; 1970, 65).

Grant, N., *Soviet Education*, 4th ed., Harmondsworth, 1979  
 Matthews, M., *Education in the Soviet Union*, London, 1982

**Health and Social Security.** All health services are free of charge although payment is required for medicines; but private practice exists. The health service is administered by the Ministry of Health of the USSR, which supervises the work of the Health Ministries of the Union Republics and the Autonomous Republics.

In 1944 an Academy of Medical Sciences was formed; in 1988 it had 300 members and corresponding members working in 64 research institutes in which 8,079



staff were employed. Smallpox, trachoma and malaria have been virtually eliminated.

In Jan. 1988 there were 23,600 civil hospitals with 3.7m. beds. There were 837,000 infants in day nurseries. 1,232,000 doctors (including dentists) were in the health service. All confinements in towns and 75% in the country were in hospital.

There were 40,600 outpatients' clinics, apart from the 28,700 women's consultation centres and children's clinics.

The death-rate in the USSR in 1987 was 9.9 per 1,000, and the birth rate 19.8 per 1,000. Infant death rate was 25.4 (per 1,000 live births) in 1987, compared with 273 in 1913, 184 in 1940 and 81 in 1950. Average expectation of life, 69.8 (men 65.1, women, 73.8).

Social insurance is administered by the trade unions, through social insurance councils elected in places of work and social insurance sub-committees of factory committees: about 5m. volunteers are engaged in this work. 52.5m. people went to holiday sanatoria or rest homes in 1987. 57.7m. people, including 10.1m. collective farmers, were receiving state pensions in Jan. 1988; of these, 41.8m. (9m. collective farmers) were old-age pensioners.

Total number of holiday sanatoria providing toning-up treatment at resorts in 1986 was 2,414, with accommodation for 605,000; in addition, there were 3,175 overnight sanatoria at large plants for treatment of mild disorders without absence from work, accommodating 269,000. There were also 1,239 trade union-managed holiday hotels with a capacity of 384,000, holidays being partly or wholly at trade unions' expense. In 1987, 52m. citizens were systematically engaged in physical culture and sport; there were 3,799 stadiums seating 1,500 or more, 2,295 swimming pools and 80,000 sports halls.

State expenditure (in 1m. rubles) on health services and physical education: 1940, 0.9; 1970, 9,300; 1980, 14,800; 1987, 19,400.

Between 1950 and 1980 62,766,000 apartments (in towns) and houses (in rural areas) were built. In 1987, 2.3m. apartments and houses were built. Rents in the USSR have not been increased since 1928 and in 1987 accounted for about 3% of the expenditure of an average worker's family. By the end of 1987, 78% of all urban housing had a gas supply installed, 93% had running water, 90% had central heating and 85% had bathrooms. 60% of total housing space is publicly and 40% is privately owned.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the USSR in Great Britain (13 Kensington Palace Gdns., London, W8 4QX)  
*Ambassador:* Leonid M. Zamyatin.

Of Great Britain in the USSR (Naberezhnaya Morisa Toreza 14, Moscow 72)  
*Ambassador:* Sir Rodric Braithwaite, KCMG.

Of the USSR in the USA (1125 16th St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20036)  
*Ambassador:* Yuri V. Dubinin.

Of the USA in the USSR (Ulitsa Chaikovskogo 19, Moscow)  
*Ambassador:* Jack F. Matlock, Jr.

Of the USSR to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Alexander Belonogov.

## Further Reading

*Narodnoe Khozvaistvo SSSR za 70 let* (National Economy of the USSR for 70 years). Jubilee Statistical Yearbook. Moscow, 1987

*Pravda* (Truth). Daily organ of the Central Committee of the Communist Party

*Izvestiya* (News). Daily organ of the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR

*Vedomosti Verkhovnoy Soveta*. Bulletin of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR in the languages of the 15 republics; published weekly

*Sovetskaya Torgovlya*. Monthly publication of the Ministry of Trade of the USSR

*Planovoye Khozyaistvo*. Monthly. Moscow



- Vestnik Statistiki*. Monthly publication of the USSR Statistical Committee
- Vneshnyaya Torgovlya*. Published by the Ministry for Foreign Trade. Monthly. Moscow
- Trud*. The daily organ of the All-Union Central Council of Trade Unions
- Professionalnye Soyuzy*. A trade union fortnightly. Moscow
- Kommunist*. A fortnightly organ of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union
- Finansy SSSR*. A monthly publication of the Ministry for Finance
- Bolshaya Sovetskaya Entsiklopedia*. 65 vols. Moscow, 1926–47; 2nd ed., 51 vols. Moscow, 1949–58; 3rd ed., Moscow, 1959–78; annual supplement (*Yezhegodnik*)
- Soviet Union*. A monthly pictorial. Moscow. (In English)
- Soviet Import-Export Dictionary* (in Russian, with English, etc., terms). Moscow, 1952
- Soviet Studies; A Quarterly Review*. Ed. R. A. Clarke. Glasgow. quarterly.
- The Current Digest of the Soviet Press*. Published by Joint Committee on Slavic Studies. Columbus, Ohio, weekly.
- Baylis, J. and Segal, G., (eds.) *Soviet Strategy*. London, 1981
- Beloff, M., *The Foreign Policy of Soviet Russia, 1929–41*. 2 vols. 1947–49.—*Soviet Policy in the Far East*. Oxford, 1953.—*Soviet Policy in Asia, 1944–52*. Oxford, 1953
- Bialer, S., *The Soviet Paradox: External Expansion, Internal Decline*. London, 1987
- Brown, A. and Kaser, M., *The Soviet Union Since the Fall of Khrushchev*. London, 2nd ed. 1978.—*Soviet Policy for the 1980s*. London, 1982
- Byrnes, J. F. (ed.) *After Brezhnev. Sources of Soviet Conduct in the 1980s*. London, 1983
- Cambridge Encyclopedia of Russia and the Soviet Union*. CUP, 1982
- Carr, E. H., *A History of Soviet Russia*. 14 vols. London, 1951–78
- Clarke, R. A. and Matko, D. J. I., (eds.) *Soviet Economic Facts 1917–80*. London, 1983
- Craft, J., *The Soviet Union Today*. Chicago, 1983
- Degras, J. (compiler), *Soviet Documents on Foreign Policy, 1917–41*. 3 vols. London, 1948–52
- Deutscher, I., *Trotsky*. 3 vols. OUP, 1954 ff.
- Edmonds, R., *Soviet Foreign Policy: the Brezhnev Years*. Oxford, 1983
- Falla, P. S., *The Oxford English-Russian Dictionary*. OUP, 1984
- Fitzsimmons, T. et al., *USSR; Its People, Its Society, Its Culture*. New Haven, 1960
- Galperin, I. R., *New English-Russian Dictionary*. 2 vols. Moscow, 1972
- Gorbachev, M., *Perestroika*. English ed. London, 1987
- Gruzinov, V. F., *The USSR's Management of Foreign Trade*. London, 1980
- Hammond, T. T. (ed.) *Soviet Foreign Relations and World Communism: A Selected Bibliography*. Princeton, 1965
- Hill, R. J., *The Soviet Union. Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1985
- Hosking, G., *A History of the Soviet Union*. London, 1985
- Hough, J. F. and Fainsod, M., *How the Soviet Union is Governed*. Rev. ed. Harvard Univ. Press, 1979
- Hutchings, R., *The Soviet Budget*. London, 1983
- Jensen, R. G. et al (eds.) *Soviet National Resources in the World Economy*. Univ. of Chicago Press, 1983
- Jones, D. L., *Books in English in the Soviet Union 1917–73: A Bibliography*. London and New York, 1975
- Kaiser, R. G., *Russia: The People and the Power*. London, 1976
- Kelley, D. R., (ed.) *Soviet Politics in the Brezhnev Era*. London, 1980
- McCauley, M., *The Soviet Union since 1917*. London, 1981
- Nove, A., *The Soviet Economic System*. London, 1977
- Pares, Sir B., *A History of Russia*. London, 1962
- Paxton, J., *Companion to Russian History*. London and New York, 1984
- Preobrazhensky, A. G., *Etymological Dictionary of the Russian Language*. Columbia Univ. Press, 1951
- Riasanovsky, N. V., *A History of Russia*. 4th ed. OUP, 1984
- Shabad, T. and Mote, V.L., *Gateway to Siberian Resources (The BAM)*. New York and London, 1977
- Schapiro, L. and Godson, J., *The Soviet Worker*. London, 1981
- Schmidt-Häuer, C., *Gorbachov: The Path to Power*. London, 1986
- Slusser, R. M. and Triska, J. F., *A Calendar of Soviet Treaties, 1917–57*. Stanford Univ. Press, 1959—and Ginsburgs, G., *A Calendar of Soviet Treaties, 1958–1973*. Alphen aan den Rijn, 1981
- Smirnitsky, A. I. (ed.) *Russko-angliiskii slovar*. 4th ed. Moscow 1959
- Thompson, A., *Russia/USSR*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1979
- Treadgold, D. W., *Twentieth Century Russia*. 6th ed. Boston, 1987
- Vernadsky, G., *A History of Russia*. 5th ed. Yale Univ. Press, 1961
- Walker, M., *The Waking Giant: Gorbachev's Russia*. New York, 1987
- Wheeler, M., *The Oxford Russian-English Dictionary*. OUP, 2nd ed., 1984
- White, S., *USSR: A Superpower in Transition*. London, 1988

# RUSSIAN SOVIET FEDERAL SOCIALIST REPUBLIC (RSFSR)

Rossiiskaya Sovyetskaya Federativnaya  
Sotsialisticheskaya Respublika

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The RSFSR occupies 17,075,000 sq. km (over 76% of the total area of the USSR) stretching from the Far North to the Black Sea in the south and from the Far East to Kaliningrad in the west. 82.6% of its population in Jan. 1979 were Russians, the rest being 38 national minorities such as the Tatars, Ukrainians, Jews, Mordovians, Chuvashis, Bashkirs, Poles, Germans, Udmurts, Buryats, Mari, Yakuts and Ossetians. The 2 principal cities are Moscow, the capital, with a population (Jan. 1987) of 8.8m. (without suburbs, 8,614,000) and Leningrad, the second capital, 4,948,000 (without suburbs, 4,393,000). Among other important large towns are Gorky, Rostov-on-Don, Volgograd, Sverdlovsk, Novosibirsk, Chelyabinsk, Kazan, Omsk and Kuibyshev. Population, 1987, 145,311,000.

The RSFSR contains great mineral resources: iron ore in the Urals, the Kerch Peninsula and Siberia; coal in the Kuznets Basin, Eastern Siberia, Urals and the sub-Moscow Basin; oil in the Urals, Azov-Black Sea area, Bashkiria, and West Siberia. It also has abundant deposits of gold, platinum, copper, zinc, lead, tin and rare metals.

The RSFSR produces about 70% of the total industrial and agricultural output of the Soviet Union. Industrial and office workers averaged 67.95m. in 1986.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The RSFSR adopted its present constitution at a meeting of the Supreme Soviet in April 1978, following 330,000 town and country meetings in which 25m. citizens took part.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* V. I. Vorotnikov.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* A. V. Vlasov.

*Foreign Minister:* V. M. Vinogradov.

The RSFSR consists of:

(1) *Territories:* Altai, Khabarovsk, Krasnodar, Krasnoyarsk, Primorye, Stavropol.

(2) *Regions:* Amur, Archangel, Astrakhan, Belgorod, Briansk, Chelyabinsk, Chita, Gorky, Irkutsk, Ivanovo, Kaluga, Kalinin, Kaliningrad, Kamchatka, Kemerovo, Kirov, Kostroma, Kuibyshev, Kurgan, Kursk, Leningrad, Lipetsk, Magadan, Moscow, Murmansk, Novgorod, Novosibirsk, Omsk, Orel, Orenburg, Penza, Perm, Pskov, Rostov, Ryazan, Sakhalin, Saratov, Smolensk, Sverdlovsk, Tambov, Tomsk, Tula, Tyumen, Ulyanovsk, Vladimir, Volgograd, Vologda, Voronezh, Yaroslavl.

(3) *Autonomous Soviet Republics:* Bashkir, Buryat, Chechen-Ingush, Chuvash, Dagestan, Kabardin-Balkar, Kalmyk, Karelian, Komi, Mari, Mordovian, North Ossetia, Tartar, Tuva, Udmurt, Yakut.

Subordinate to and within Territories and Regions are the following:

(4) *Autonomous Regions:* Adygei, Gorno-Altai, Jewish, Karachayevo-Cherkess, Khakass.

(5) *Autonomous Areas:* Agin-Buryat, Chukot, Evenki, Khanty-Mansi, Komi-Permyak, Koryak, Nenets, Taimyr (Dolgano-Nenets), Ust-Ordyn-Buryat, Yamalo-Nenets.

The Supreme Soviet, elected in Feb. 1985, consisted of 975 deputies (1 per 150,000 population); 649 were Communists, 344 women, 492 workers and collective farmers.

In June 1987, 1,159,264 deputies were elected to local authorities; 576,523 (49.7%) were women, 663,357 (57.2%) non-Party and 737,588 (63.6%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

**FINANCE.** Revenue and expenditure balanced as follows (in 1m. rubles): 1988,

110,102; 1989 (plan), 126,471. These figures, and those for the other 14 Union Republics, include grants from the Union Budget.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of railways on 1 Jan. 1987 was 85,310 km, hard-surface motor roads, 521,000 km. In 1986, 237,003 m. tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways.

*Newspapers.* In 1986 there were 4,652 newspapers, 4,345 of them in Russian. Daily circulation of Russian-language newspapers, 134.8m., other languages, 2.7m.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 20m. pupils in 70,800 primary and secondary schools; 2,907,100 students in 504 higher educational establishments (including correspondence students) and 2,465,100 students in 2,574 technical colleges of all kinds (including correspondence students). 70% of children were attending pre-school institutions. There were, on 1 Jan. 1987, 1,025,100 scientific staff in over 3,000 learned and scientific institutions.

In 1957 a Siberian branch of the Academy of Sciences was organized, in charge of all scientific research institutions from the Urals to the Pacific. There are also Far Eastern and Urals divisions.

There is an Academy of Municipal Economy (with 5 research institutions and a staff of 512).

**HEALTH.** Medical personnel in 1987 numbered 1.75m., and hospital beds 1.96m. There were 12,613 medical institutions.

## BASHKIR AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area 143,600 sq. km (55,430 sq. miles), population (Jan. 1987) 3.9m. Capital, Ufa. Bashkiria was annexed to Russia in 1557. It was constituted as an Autonomous Soviet Republic on 23 March 1919. Population, census 1979, included 24.3% Bashkiriens, 40.3% Russians, 24.5% Tatars, and 3.2% Chuvashes.

280 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 108 of them women.

In 1986-87 there were 547,000 pupils in 3,178 schools. There is a state university and a branch of the USSR Academy of Sciences with 8 learned institutions (511 research workers). There were 69,900 students in technical colleges and 53,900 in higher schools.

In Jan. 1987 there were 13,346 doctors and 52,600 hospital beds.

There are expanding chemical, coal, steel, electrical engineering, timber and paper industries. There were 629 collective farms and 159 state farms in 1980. Crop area was 4,587,000 hectares. Bashkiria is a major oil producer in USSR.

## BURIAT AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area is 351,300 sq. km (135,650 sq. miles). The Buriat Republic, situated to the south of the Yakut Republic, adopted the Soviet system 1 March 1920. This area was penetrated by the Russians in the 17th century and finally annexed from China by the treaties of Nerchinsk (1689) and Kyakhta (1727). The population (Jan. 1987) was 1,030,000. Capital, Ulan-Ude. The name of the republic was changed from 'Buriat-Mongol' on 7 July 1958. The population (1979 census) includes 23% Buriats and 72% Russians.

170 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 60 of them women.

The main industries are coal, timber, building materials, fisheries, sheep and cattle farming. In 1980 there were 105 state and 61 collective farms. Crop area was 827,100 hectares. Gold, molybdenum and wolfram are mined.



In 1986–87 there were 559 schools with 168,000 pupils, 21 technical colleges with 17,600 students and 4 higher educational institutions with 22,000 students. A branch of the Siberian Department of the Academy of Sciences had 4 learned institutions with 281 research workers.

In 1987 there were 3,795 doctors and 13,700 hospital beds.

## CHECHENO-INGUSH AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 19,300 sq. km (7,350 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1.24m. Capital, Grozny. After 70 years of almost continuous fighting, the Chechens and Ingushes were conquered by Russia in the late 1850s. In 1918 each nationality separately established its 'National Soviet' within the Terek Autonomous Republic, and in 1920 (after the Civil War) were constituted areas within the Mountain Republic. The Chechens separated out as an Autonomous Region on 30 Nov. 1922 and the Ingushes on 7 July 1924. In Jan. 1934 the two regions were united, and on 5 Dec. 1936 constituted as an Autonomous Republic. This was dissolved in 1944, but reconstituted on 9 Jan. 1957: 232,000 Chechens and Ingushes returned to their homes in the next 2 years. The population (1979 census) includes 52.9% Chechens, 11.7% Ingushes, and 29.1% Russians.

175 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 78 of them women.

The republic has one of the major Soviet oilfields; also a number of large engineering works, chemical factories, building materials works and food canneries. There is an expanding timber, woodworking and furniture industry. In 1984 there were 122 state and 39 collective farms. Crop area was 453,900 hectares.

There were, in 1986–87, 532 schools with 251,000 pupils, 12 technical colleges with 13,300 students and 3 places of higher education with 14,000 students.

In 1987 there were 3,535 doctors and 13,000 hospital beds.

## CHUVASH AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 18,300 sq. km (7,064 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1,330,000. Capital, Cheboksary. The territory was annexed by Russia in the middle of the 16th century. On 24 June 1920 it was constituted as an Autonomous Region, and on 21 April 1925 as an Autonomous Republic. The population (1979 census) includes Chuvashes (68.4%), Russians (26%), Tatars (2.9%) and Mordovians (1.6%).

200 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 79 of them women.

Like most of the Autonomous Republics, Chuvashia before 1914 was a region of primitive agriculture with a certain development of the timber industry. Today it has several big railway repair works, an expanding electrical and other engineering industries, building materials, chemicals, textiles and food industries; timber felling and haulage are largely mechanized. In 1985 there were 179 collective farms and 104 state farms. Grain crops account for nearly two-thirds of all sowings and fodder crops for nearly a quarter. Fruit and wine-growing are a developing branch of agriculture. Crop area was 732,400 hectares.

In 1986–87 there were 209,000 pupils at 689 schools, 23,800 students at technical colleges and 18,100 students undertaking higher education.

In 1987 there were 4,501 doctors and 17,800 hospital beds.

## DAGESTAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 50,300 sq. km (19,416 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1.8m. Capital, Makhachkala. Over 30 nationalities inhabit this republic apart from Russians

(11.6% at 1979 census); the most numerous are the Avartsy (25.7%), Dargintsy (15.2%), Lezginy (11.6%), Kumyki (12.4%), Laki (5.1%), Tabasarany (4.4%) and Azerbaijanis (4%). Annexed from Persia in 1723, Dagestan was constituted an Autonomous Republic on 20 Jan. 1921.

210 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 84 of them women.

There are large engineering, oil, chemical, woodworking, textile, food and other light industries. Agriculture is very varied, ranging from wheat to grapes, with sheep farming and cattle breeding; in 1983 there were 249 collective farms and 262 state farms. Crop area was 427,800 hectares. A chain of power stations is under construction in the Sulak River (total capacity 2.5m. kw.).

In 1986-87 there were 1,511 schools with 395,000 pupils, 24,200 technical students and 5 higher education establishments with 25,100 students; and a branch of the USSR Academy of Sciences with 4 learned institutions (373 research workers). In Jan. 1987 there were 7,189 doctors and 21,500 hospital beds.

## KABARDINO-BALKAR AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 12,500 sq. km (4,825 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987) 732,000. Capital, Nalchik. Kabarda was annexed to Russia in 1557. The republic was constituted on 5 Dec. 1936. Population (1979 census) includes Kabardinians (45.6%), Balkars (9%), Russians (35.1%).

160 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 69 of them women.

Main industries are ore-mining, timber, engineering, coal, food processing, timber and light industries, building materials. Grain, livestock breeding, dairy farming and wine-growing are the principal branches of agriculture. There were, in 1983, 59 state and 66 collective farms.

In 1986-87 there were 238 schools with 119,000 pupils, 9,400 students in 10 technical colleges and 10,100 students receiving higher education. In Jan. 1987 there were 3,360 doctors and 8,700 hospital beds.

## KALMYK AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 75,900 sq. km (29,300 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 329,000. Capital, Elista (85,000). The population (1979 census) includes 41.5% Kalmyks, 42.6% Russians, 6.6% Kazakhs, Chechens and Dagestanis.

The Kalmyks migrated from western China to Russia (Nogai Steppe) in the early 17th century. The territory was constituted an Autonomous Region on 4 Nov. 1920, and an Autonomous Republic on 22 Oct. 1935; this was dissolved in 1943. On 9 Jan. 1957 it was reconstituted as an Autonomous Region and on 29 July 1958 as an Autonomous Republic once more.

130 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 54 of them women.

Main industries are fishing, canning and building materials. Cattle breeding and irrigated farming (mainly fodder crops) are the principal branches of agriculture. In 1983 there were 79 state and 23 collective farms. Crop area was 859,000 hectares.

In 1986-87 there were 52,000 pupils in 253 schools, 6,300 students in technical colleges and 4,700 in higher education. There were 1,271 doctors and 4,900 hospital beds.

## KARELIAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

**HISTORY.** Before 1917, Karelia (then known as the Olonets Province) was noted chiefly as a place of exile for political and other prisoners.

After the November Revolution of 1917, Karelia formed part of the RSFSR. In June 1920 a Karelian Labour Commune was formed and in July 1923 this was transformed into the Karelian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic (one of the autonomous republics of the RSFSR). On 31 March 1940, after the Soviet-Finnish war, practically all the territory (with the exception of a small section in the neighbourhood of the Leningrad area) which had been ceded by Finland to the USSR was added to Karelia and the Karelian Autonomous Republic was transformed into the Karelo-Finnish Soviet Socialist Republic as the 12th republic of the USSR. In 1946, however, the southern part of the republic, including its whole seaboard and the town of Viipuri (Vyborg) and Keksholm, was attached to the RSFSR and in 1956 the republic reverted to ASSR status with the RSFSR.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Karelian Autonomous Republic, capital Petrozavodsk, covers an area of 172,400 sq. km. with a population of 795,000 (Jan. 1987). Karelians represent 11.1% of the population, Russians, 71.3%, Belorussians 8.1%, Ukrainians 3.2%, Finns 2.7% (1979 census).

150 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 57 of them women.

**NATURAL RESOURCES.** Karelia is chiefly noted for its wealth of timber, some 70% of its territory being forest land. It is also rich in other natural resources, having large deposits of diabase, spar, quartz, marble, granite, zinc, lead, silver, copper, molybdenum, tin, baryta, iron ore, etc. Karelia takes first place in the USSR for the production of mica. It has 43,643 lakes, which, as well as its rivers, are rich in fish.

**Agriculture.** There were 9 collective farms and 59 state farms in 1983. The crop area was 78,900 hectares (over 85% under fodder crops).

**INDUSTRY.** The republic has 25 large-scale enterprises, such as timber-mills, paper-cellulose works, mica, chemical plants, power stations and furniture factories. Output, 1986: Timber, 11.1m. cu. metres; paper, 1.3m. tonnes; cellulose, 826,000 tonnes; electricity, 3,634m. kwh.; iron ore, 9.5m. tonnes.

The construction of the White Sea-Baltic Canal had a powerful influence on the economic development of Karelia. New refrigerating plants, cellulose factories and timber industry equipment began working in 1970.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** A railway between Petrozavodsk and Suoyarvi connects the capital and the Murmansk Railway with the main railway line Sortavala-Vyborg. A railway line was also laid between Kandalaksha and Kuolayarvi. Length of track, 1,600 km.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 109,000 pupils in 314 schools. There were 9,400 students in 2 places of higher education and 14,400 in 16 technical colleges.

**HEALTH.** In Jan. 1987 there were 3,816 doctors, and 11,900 hospital beds.

## KOMI AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 415,900 sq. km (160,540 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1.2m. Capital, Syktyvkar (224,000). Annexed by the princes of Moscow in the 14th century and occupied by British and American forces in 1918-19, the territory was constituted



as an Autonomous Region on 22 Aug. 1921 and as an Autonomous Republic on 5 Dec. 1936. The population (1979 census) includes Komi (25.3%), Russians (56.7%), Ukrainians and Belorussians (10.7%).

180 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 59 of them women.

There are large coal, oil, timber, gas, asphalt and building materials industries; light industry is expanding. Livestock breeding (including dairy farming) is the main branch of agriculture. There were 56 state farms in 1983. Crop area, 92,000 hectares.

In 1986-87 there were 184,000 pupils in 547 schools, 12,200 students receiving higher education, 16,600 students in 19 technical colleges; and a branch of the Academy of Sciences with 4 learned institutions (297 research workers).

In Jan. 1987 there were 4,865 doctors and 16,900 hospital beds.

## MARI AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 23,200 sq. km (8,955 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 739,000. Capital, Yoshkar-Ola. The Mari people were annexed to Russia, with other peoples of the Kazan Tatar Khanate, when the latter was overthrown in 1552. On 4 Nov. 1920 the territory was constituted as an Autonomous Region, and on 5 Dec. 1936 as an Autonomous Republic. The population (1979 census) includes Mari (43.5%), Tatars (5.8%), Chuvashes (1.1%), Russians (47.5%).

150 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 60 of them women.

There are over 300 modern factories. The main industries are metalworking, timber, paper, woodworking and food processing. In 1983 there were 89 collective farms and 82 state farms. Over 69% of cultivated land is grain, but flax, potatoes, fruit and vegetables are also expanding branches of agriculture, as is also livestock farming. 638,000 hectares were under crops.

Estimated reserves of the Pechora coalfield are 262,000m. tons.

In 1986-87 there were 428 schools with 104,000 pupils. Technical colleges and higher education establishments had 10,600 and 15,700 students respectively.

In Jan. 1987 there were 2,424 doctors and 10,200 hospital beds.

## MORDOVIAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 26,200 sq. km (10,110 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 964,000. Capital, Saransk. By the 13th century the Mordovian tribes had been subjugated by the Russian princes of Ryazan and Nizhni-Novgorod. In 1928 the territory was constituted as a Mordovian Area within the Middle-Volga Territory, on 10 Jan. 1930 as an Autonomous Region and on 20 Dec. 1934 as an Autonomous Republic. The population (1979 census) includes Mordovians (34.2%), Russians (59.7%), Tatars (4.6%).

175 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 74 of them women.

The republic has a wide range of industries: electrical, timber, cable, building materials, furniture, textile, leather and other light industries. Agriculture is devoted chiefly to grain, sugar-beet, sheep and dairy farming. In 1983 there were 78 state and 273 collective farms.

In 1986-87 there were 130,000 pupils in 862 schools, 16,400 students in technical colleges and 20,700 attending higher educational institutions. In Jan. 1987 there were 3,619 doctors and 14,100 hospital beds.

## NORTH OSSETIAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 8,000 sq. km (3,088 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 619,000. Capital, Ordzhonikidze (formerly Vladikavkaz). The Ossetians, known to antiquity as Alani (who were also called by their immediate neighbours 'Ossi' or 'Yassi'), were annexed to Russia after the latter's treaty of Kuchuk-Kainardji with Turkey, and in 1784 the key fortress of Vladikavkaz was founded on their territory (given the name of Terek region in 1861). On 4 March 1918 the latter was proclaimed an Autonomous Soviet Republic, and after the Civil War this territory with others was set up as the Mountain Autonomous Republic (20 Jan. 1921), with North Ossetia as the Ossetian (Vladikavkaz) Area within it. On 7 July 1924 the latter was constituted as an Autonomous Region and on 5 Dec. 1936 as an Autonomous Republic. The population (1979 census) comprises chiefly Ossetians (50.5%), Russians (33.9%), Ingushi and other Caucasian nationalities (8.1%).

150 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 68 of them women.

The main industries are non-ferrous metals (mining and metallurgy), maize-processing (at the Beslan Works, the largest in Europe), timber and woodworking, textiles, building materials, distilleries and food processing. There is also a prosperous and varied agriculture. In 1983 there were 38 state and 45 collective farms.

There were in 1986-87, 96,000 children in 209 schools, 13,600 students in technical colleges and 17,700 students in 4 higher educational establishments (pedagogical, agriculture, medical and mining-metallurgical institutes). In Jan. 1987 there were 4,160 doctors and 7,800 hospital beds.

## TATAR AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 68,000 sq. km (26,250 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 3,568,000. Capital, Kazan. From the 10th to the 13th centuries this was the territory of the flourishing Volga-Kama Bulgar State; conquered by the Mongols, it became the seat of the Kazan (Tatar) Khans when the Mongol Empire broke up in the 15th century, and in 1552 was conquered again by Russia. On 27 May 1920 it was constituted as an Autonomous Republic. The population (1979 census) includes Tatars (47.7%), Chuvashes, Mordovians and Udmurts (5.9%), Russians (44%).

250 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 97 of them women.

The republic has highly developed engineering, oil and chemical industries, while timber, building materials, textiles, clothing and food industries are also expanding. The Kama works at Naberezhnye Chelny plan to produce 400,000 vehicles annually. In 1983, 557 collective and 250 state farms served a total area under crops of 3.4m. hectares.

In 1986-87 there were 2,280 schools with 491,000 pupils, 62 technical colleges with 60,400 students and 13 higher educational establishments with 68,500 students (including a state university). There is a branch of the USSR Academy of Sciences with 5 learned institutions (512 research workers).

Doctors in Jan. 1987 numbered 13,289 and hospital beds 44,900.

## TUVA AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 170,500 sq. km (65,810 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 289,000. Capital, Kyzyl (80,000). Tuva was incorporated in the USSR as an autonomous region on 13 Oct. 1944 and elevated to an Autonomous Republic on 10 Oct. 1961. It is situated to the north-west of Mongolia, between 50° and 53°N. lat. and between 90°



and 100°E. long. It is bounded to the east, west and north by Siberia, and to the south by Mongolia. The Tuvans are a Turkic people, formerly ruled by hereditary or elective tribal chiefs. (For the earlier history of the former Tannu-Tuva Republic, see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1946, p. 798.) The population (1979 census) includes Tuvans (60.5%) and Russians (36.2%).

130 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 53 of them women.

Tuva is well-watered and has much good pastoral land; 47 hydro-electric stations have been set into operation. The Tuvans are mainly herdsmen and cattle farmers, but, in 1983, 371,000 hectares were under crops. There are deposits of gold, cobalt and asbestos. The main exports are hair, hides and wool, and the imports manufactured goods and iron. There are 60 state farms. Mining, wood-working, garment, leather, food and other industries are rapidly developing.

In 1986-87 there were 154 schools with 67,000 pupils; 6 technical colleges with 4,000 students, and 1 higher education institution with 3,100 students.

In Jan. 1987 there were 1,046 doctors and 5,300 hospital beds.

## UDMURT AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 42,100 sq. km (16,250 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1,587,000. Capital, Izhevsk. The Udmurts (formerly known as 'Votyaks') were annexed by the Russians in the 15th and 16th centuries. On 4 Nov. 1920 the Votyak Autonomous Region was constituted (the name was changed to Udmurt—used by the people themselves—in 1932), and on 28 Dec. 1934 was raised to the status of an Autonomous Republic. The population (1979 census) includes Udmurts (32.2%), Tatars (6.6%), Russians (58.3%).

200 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 79 of them women.

Heavy industry includes the manufacture of locomotives, machine tools and other engineering products, timber and building materials. There are also light industries—clothing, leather, furniture, food, etc.

There were 96 state and 244 collective farms in 1983; crop area 1.4m. hectares.

In 1986-87 there were 854 schools with 230,000 pupils; there were 22,600 students at technical colleges and 24,500 at 5 higher educational institutions.

In Jan. 1987 there were 6,594 doctors and 20,400 hospital beds.

## YAKUT AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

The area is 3,103,200 sq. km (1,197,760 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1,034,000. Capital, Yakutsk (184,000). The Yakuts were subjugated by the Russians in the 17th century. The territory was constituted an Autonomous Republic on 27 April 1922. The population (1979 census) includes Yakuts (36.9%), other northern peoples (2.2%), Russians (50.4%).

205 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 92 of them women.

The principal industries are mining (gold, tin, mica, coal) and livestock-breeding. The Soviet Soyuz-Zoloto Trust and a number of individual prospectors are working the fields. Silver- and lead-bearing ores and coal are worked; large diamond fields have been opened up. Timber and food industries are developing. There was 1 collective farm in 1985 and 88 state farms, with an area under crops of 107,100 hectares. Trapping and breeding of fur-bearing animals (sable, squirrel, silver fox, etc.) are an important source of income. A severe climate and lack of railways are serious obstacles to the economic development of the republic. There are, however, 10,000 km of roads and internal air lines totalling 10,000 km including an air service between Irkutsk and Yakutsk.



In 1986-87 there were 186,000 pupils in 639 secondary schools, 10,100 technical college students and 8,600 attending 2 higher education institutions.

In Jan. 1987 there were 4,503 doctors and 15,700 hospital beds.

## ADYGEI AUTONOMOUS REGION

Part of Krasnodar Territory. Area, 7,600 sq. km (2,934 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 426,000. Capital, Maikop (145,000). Established 27 July 1922.

Chief industries are timber, woodworking, food processing; but engineering is rapidly expanding. Cattle breeding predominates in agriculture. There were 38 collective and 33 state farms in 1983.

In 1986-87 there were 163 schools with 63,100 pupils, 6 technical colleges with 7,200 students and a pedagogical institute with 5,200 students. Regional newspapers are in Adygei and Russian. In Jan. 1987 there were 1,314 doctors and 6,000 hospital beds.

## GORNO-ALTAI AUTONOMOUS REGION

Part of Altai Territory. Area, 92,600 sq. km (35,740 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 180,000. Capital, Gorno-Altai (39,000). Established 1 June 1922 as Oirot Autonomous Region; renamed 7 Jan. 1948.

Chief industries are gold, mercury and brown-coal mining, timber, chemicals and dairying. Cattle breeding predominates; pasturages and hay meadows cover over 1m. hectares, but 142,000 hectares are under crops. There were 20 collective and 37 state farms in 1983.

In 1986-87 there were 34,900 school pupils; technical colleges had 4,300 students and 2,900 students were attending a pedagogical institute. There were 30 hospitals and 4 tourist bases.

## JEWISH AUTONOMOUS REGION

Part of Khabarovsk Territory. Area, 36,000 sq. km (13,895 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 216,000 (1979 census, Russians, 84.1%; Ukrainians, 6.3%; Jews, 5.4%). Capital, Birobijan (82,000). Established as Jewish National District in 1928, became an Autonomous Region 7 May 1934.

Chief industries are non-ferrous metallurgy, building materials, timber, engineering, textiles, paper and food processing. There were 161,000 hectares under cultivation in 1983; main crops are wheat, soya, oats, barley. There were 36 state farms and 2 collective farms in 1983.

In 1986-87 there were 34,100 schoolchildren; students in technical colleges numbered 5,300. There are a Yiddish national theatre, a Yiddish newspaper and a Yiddish broadcasting service. Doctors numbered 700 and hospital beds 3,325.

## KARACHAYEVO-CHERKESS AUTONOMOUS REGION

Part of Stavropol Territory. Area, 14,100 sq. km (5,442 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 402,000. Capital, Cherkessk (107,000). A Karachai Autonomous Region was established on 26 April 1926 (out of a previously united Karachayevo-Cherkess Autonomous Region created in 1922), and dissolved in 1943. A Cherkess Autonomous Region was established on 30 April 1928. The present Autonomous Region was re-established on 9 Jan. 1957.

Ore-mining, engineering, chemical and woodworking industries have been built up since 1917. There are 70 large factories, and a copper works and sugar factory are under construction. A large irrigation scheme, Kuban-Kalaus, is being de-

veloped, to irrigate 200,000 hectares. Livestock breeding and grain growing predominate in agriculture; crop area in 1983 was 196,000 hectares. There were 15 collective farms and 37 state farms in 1983.

In 1986–87 there were 68,800 pupils in secondary schools, 6 technical colleges with 5,800 students and 1 institute with 4,700 students. In Jan. 1987 there were 1,000 doctors and 4,500 hospital beds.

## KHAKASS AUTONOMOUS REGION

Part of Krasnoyarsk Territory. Area, 61,900 sq. km (23,855 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 555,000. Capital, Abakan (151,000). Established 20 Oct. 1930.

Coal- and ore-mining, timber and woodworking industries have been highly developed since 1917. The region is linked by rail with the Trans-Siberian line. Large textile and sugar factories are being built.

In 1985, 1.8m. hectares were under crops. Livestock breeding, dairy and vegetable farming are developed. There are 56 state farms.

In 1986–87 there were 84,500 pupils in secondary schools, 8,600 students in technical colleges and 5,200 students in higher educational institutions. In Jan. 1987 there were 2,022 doctors and 8,200 hospital beds. A Khakass alphabet was created after the Revolution.

## AUTONOMOUS AREAS

**Agin-Buryat** Situated in Chita region (Eastern Siberia); area, 19,000 sq. km, population (1987), 78,000. Capital, Aginskoe. Formed 1937, its economy is basically pastoral.

**Chukot** Situated in Magadan region (Far East), its area of 737,700 sq. km in the far northeast. Population (1987), 157,000. Capital, Anadyr. Formed 1930. Population chiefly Russian, also Chukchi, Koryak, Yakut, Even. Minerals are extracted in the north, including gold, tin, mercury and tungsten.

**Evenki** Situated in Krasnoyarsk territory (Eastern Siberia); area, 767,600 sq. km, population (1987) 22,000, chiefly Evenks. Capital, Tura.

**Khanty-Mansi** Situated in Tyumen region (Western Siberia); area, 523,100 sq. km, population (1987) 1,125,000, chiefly Russians but also Khants and Mansi. Capital, Khanti-Mansiisk. Formed 1930.

**Komi-Permyak** Situated in Perm region (Northern Russia); area, 32,900 sq. km, population (1987) 161,000, chiefly Komi-Permyaks. Formed 1925. Capital, Kudymkar. Forestry is the main occupation.

**Koryak** Situated in Kamchatka region (Far East); area, 301,500 sq. km, population (1987) 40,000. Capital, Palana. Formed 1930.

**Nenets** Situated in Archangel region (Northern Russia); area, 176,700 sq. km, population (1987) 54,000. Capital, Naryan-Mar.

**Taimyr** Situated in Krasnoyarsk territory, this most northerly part of Siberia comprises the Taimyr peninsula and the Arctic islands of Severnaya Zemlya. Area, 862,100 sq. km, population (1987) 55,000, excluding the mining city of Norilsk which is separately administered. Capital, Dudinka.

**Ust-Ordyn-Buryat** Situated in Irkutsk region (Eastern Siberia); area, 22,400 sq. km, population (1987) 129,000. Capital, Ust-Ordynsk. Formed 1937.

**Yamalo-Nenets** Situated in Tyumen region (Western Siberia); area, 750,300 sq. km, population (1987) 430,000. Capital, Salekhard. Formed 1930.

## Further Reading

Armstrong, T., *Russian Settlement in the North*. CUP, 1965

Conolly, V., *Beyond the Urals. Economic Developments in Soviet Asia*. London, 1967

Dallin, D. J., *The Rise of Russia in Asia*. New York, 1949.—*Soviet Russia and the Far East*. London, 1949

Kolarz, W., *The Peoples of the Soviet Far East*, London, 1954

*Istoriya Sibiri s drevneishikh vremen do nashikh dnei*. 5 vols., Leningrad, 1968-69

## UKRAINE

### Ukrainska Radyanska Sotsialistichna Respublika

**HISTORY.** The Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic was proclaimed on 25 Dec. 1917 and was finally established in Dec. 1919. In Dec. 1920 it concluded a military and economic alliance with the RSFSR and on 30 Dec. 1922 formed, together with the other Soviet Socialist Republics, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. On 1 Nov. 1939 Western Ukraine (about 88,000 sq. km) was incorporated in the Ukrainian SSR. On 2 Aug. 1940 Northern Bukovina (about 6,000 sq. km) ceded to the USSR by Romania 28 June 1940, and the Khotin, Akkerman and Izmail provinces of Bessarabia were included in the Ukrainian SSR, and on 29 June 1945 Ruthenia (Sub-Carpathian Russia), about 7,000 sq. km, was also incorporated. From the new territories 2 new regions were formed, Chernovits and Izmail.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Ukraine is in south-west USSR; it has a Black Sea coast and western frontiers with Romania, Hungary, Poland and Czechoslovakia. It is bounded north by Belorussia and otherwise by the RSFSR. In 1938 the Ukrainian SSR covered an area of 445,000 sq. km (171,770 sq. miles); it now covers 603,700 sq. km (231,990 sq. miles).

Population, Jan. 1987, 51,201,000 (in 1979 census, 73.6% Ukrainians, 21.1% Russians, 1.3% Jews, 0.8% Belorussians).

The principal towns are the capital Kiev, Kharkov, Donetsk, Odessa, Dnepropetrovsk, Lvov, Zaporozhye and Krivoi Rog.

The Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic consists of the following regions: Cherkassy, Chernigov, Chernovtsy, Crimea (transferred from the RSFSR on 19 Feb. 1954), Dnepropetrovsk, Donetsk, Ivan Franko, Khmelnytsky (formerly Kamenets-Podolsk), Kharkov, Kherson, Kiev, Kirovograd, Lvov, Nikolayev, Odessa, Poltava, Rovno, Sumy, Ternopol, Vinnitsa, Volhynia, Voroshilovgrad, Zakarpatskaya (Transcarpathia), Zaporozhye, Zhitomir.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected on 24 Feb. 1985, consists of 650 deputies (1 per 90,000 population); 444 are Communists and 234 women. A new Constitution, based on that of the USSR, was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to regional, district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), out of 527,799 deputies returned, 259,795 (49.2%) were women, 297,136 (56.3%) non-Party and 378,000 (72.1%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* V. S. Shevchenko.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* V. A. Masol.

*Foreign Minister:* V. A. Kravtsev.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* V. V. Shcherbitsky.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1 m. rubles), 1988, 33,164; 1989 (plan), 36,885.

**AGRICULTURE.** The Ukraine contains some of the richest land in the USSR. It raises wheat, buckwheat, beet, sunflower, cotton, flax, tobacco, soya, hops, the rubber plant kok-sagyz, fruit and vegetables, and in 1985 produced 46% by value of the USSR's total agricultural output. The area under cultivation was 27.9m. hectares in 1913, 27m. in 1939 before the new territories were added, and 48.6m. in Nov. 1986.

Output (in 1 m. tonnes) in 1986 (1913 figures in tons in brackets): Grain, 43.1; sugar-beet, 42.9 (9.3); vegetables, 7.7; sunflower seed, 2.6 (0.07); potatoes, 21.4 (8.5); meat and fats, 4 (1.1); milk, 23.4 (4.7); wool, 0.030 (0.015); 17,200m. eggs (3,005m.).

On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 26.7m. cattle, 20.1m. pigs, 9.4m. sheep and goats. In 1949 silver-fox breeding farms were started.



On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 2,466 state farms and 7,452 collective farms.

Irrigation networks supplied 1.82m. hectares of land; 2.2m. hectares were drained.

Tractors numbered 439,500 at 1 Jan. 1987 and combine harvesters, 112,000.

**INDUSTRY.** Coal in the Donets field (25,900 sq. km stretching from Donetsk to Rostov), estimated to contain 60% of the bituminous and anthracite coal reserves of the USSR, yielded, in 1980, 197.1m. tonnes—about 28% of the USSR production. Large new seams have been found near Novo-Moskovsk (Dnepropetrovsk region), Kharkov, Lugansk (beyond the Don) and on the left bank of the Dnieper. Within the present frontiers of the Ukraine, coal output was 22.8m. tons in 1913, 83.8m. tons in 1940, 78m. tons in 1950 and 217m. tons in 1977.

Combining coal from the Donets field with the iron-ore from the mines in Krivoi Rog has made possible the development of a large ferrous metallurgical industry in the Ukraine. Output of iron ore was 120m. tons in 1986. Manganese is obtained at Nikopol; output in 1986, 7.1m. tons. Output of finished rolled metal products, 38.8m. tonnes in 1986 (36m. in 1980); of steel pipe, 6.9m. (6.3m.).

The Ukraine also contains oil, rich deposits of salt and various important chemicals. Oil output was 1m. tons in 1913 (in present frontiers), 353,000 tons in 1940 and 10.5m. tons in 1977; with 68.7m. cu. metres of natural gas.

The Ukraine has highly developed chemical and machine-construction industries producing one-fifth of the total output of machinery and chemicals in the USSR. Output in 1986 of paper, 309,000 tonnes; of chemical fibre, 177,000 tonnes; of sulphuric acid, 4.1m. tonnes; of caustic soda, 492,000 tonnes; of televisions, 3.2m.; of refrigerators, 752,000.

In Northern Bukovina there are deposits of gypsum, oil, alabaster, brown coal and timber. Output in 1986 of cardboard, 554,000 tonnes; of mineral fertilizers (re-calculated base), 5.5m. tonnes.

Consumer goods and food industries are important. Output in 1986 of knitwear, 327m. items; of bicycles, 913,000; of granulated sugar, 6.7m. tonnes; of leather footwear, 187m. pairs; of preserves, 4,400m. standard jars.

The number of industrial and office workers at the end of 1950 was 6.9m., and the average in 1986, 20.7m. There were 3.9m. collective farmers in 1985.

During the first 5-year plan (1929–32) the Dnieper power-station was built; destroyed during the War, it was restored during the fourth plan (1946–50). Another large hydro-electric station at Kakhovka began operations during the fifth plan (1951–55). Power output (in 1,000m. kwh.) increased as follows: 1913, 0.5; 1940, 12.4; 1950, 14.7; 1986, 273.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** The total length of railways of the Ukrainian SSR in Jan. 1987 was 22,720 km, of hard-surface motor roads 206,500 km. In 1986, 12,682 tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways.

Airlines connect Kiev, Lvov, Chernovtsy and Odessa with Crimean and Caucasian spas, Kiev with Tbilisi, Odessa with Riga and Donetsk.

*Newspapers* (1986). Out of 1,789 newspapers, 1,291 were in Ukrainian. Daily circulation of Ukrainian-language newspapers, 15.8m., other languages, 7.9m.

**RELIGION.** Several Christian Churches have their adherents in the Ukraine, the chief being the Orthodox Greek Church and the Catholic Church. The Western Ukraine Uniate Church, which in 1596 had been forced by the Poles to establish unity with the Roman Church, severed this connexion in March 1946 and joined the Orthodox Church. There are also some Protestants as well as Jews and others.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 the number of pupils in 21,600 primary and secondary schools was 7.2m.; 146 higher educational establishments had 850,700 students, and 733 technical colleges 805,100 students; 61% of children were attending pre-school institutions.

The Ukrainian Academy of Sciences was established in 1919; in 1986 it had 78 institutions with 16,162 scientific staff. There is an academy of building and architecture. Total scientific staff in all institutions was 210,400 in Jan. 1987.

**HEALTH.** Medical personnel numbered 577,600 in 1986, and hospital beds, 675,900.

### Further Reading

- Allen, W. E. D., *The Ukraine: A History*, 2nd ed. Cambridge, 1963  
 Andrusyshen, C. H. (ed.), *Ukrainian-English Dictionary*, Toronto, 1955  
 Koropecy, I. S. (ed.), *The Ukraine within the USSR: An Economic Balance Sheet*, New York, 1977  
 Kubiojovyc, V. (ed.), *Encyclopedia of Ukraine*, 4 vols. Toronto, 1984ff  
 Magoci, P. R. and Matthews, G. J., *Ukraine: A Historical Atlas*, Univ. of Toronto Press, 1985  
 Manning, C. A., *Twentieth-century Ukraine*, New York, 1951

## BELORUSSIA

### Belaruskaya Sovietskaya Sotsialistychnaya Respublika

**HISTORY.** The Belorussian Soviet Socialist Republic was set up on 1 Jan. 1919. It forms one of the constituent republics of the USSR.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Belorussia is situated along the Western Dvina and Dnieper. It is bounded west by Poland, north by Latvia and Lithuania, east by the RSFSR and south by the Ukraine. The area is 207,600 sq. km (80,134 sq. miles). The capital is Minsk. Other important towns are Gomel, Vitebsk, Mogilev, Bobruisk, Grodno and Brest. On 2 Nov. 1939 western Belorussia was incorporated with an area of over 108,000 sq. km and a population of 4.8m. The population (Jan. 1987) was 10,078,000; 79.4% of this population in 1979 (census) were Belorussians, 4.2% Poles, 11.9% Russians, 2.4% Ukrainians and 1.4% Jews.

Belorussia now comprises the following regions: Brest, Gomel, Grodno, Mogilev, Minsk, Vitebsk.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 485 deputies (1 per 20,000 population); 328 are Communists and 180 women. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to regional, district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 85,375 deputies returned, 41,518 (48.6%) were women, 47,377 (55.5%) non-Party and 56,932 (66.7%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* G. S. Tarazevich.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* M. V. Kovalev.

*Foreign Minister:* A. E. Gurinovich

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* E. E. Sokolov.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1m. rubles), 1988, 8,893; 1989 (plan), 11,022.

**NATURAL RESOURCES.** Belorussia is hilly, with a general slope towards the south. It contains large tracts of marsh land, particularly to the south-west, and valuable forest land wooded with oak, elm, maple and white beech: there are over 6,500 peat deposits.

**AGRICULTURE.** Agriculturally, Belorussia may be divided into three main sections—Northern: growing flax, fodder, grasses and breeding cattle for meat and dairy produce; Central: potato growing and pig breeding; Southern: good natural pasture land, hemp cultivation and cattle breeding for meat and dairy produce. The area under cultivation was 12.3m. hectares in Nov. 1986. There were 7.5m. cattle, 5.1m. pigs and 700,000 sheep and goats on 1 Jan. 1987.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 7,041; meat, 1,052; milk, 6,914; eggs, 3,404m.; potatoes, 13,414; vegetables, 969; sugar-beet, 1,613.

On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 1,675 collective farms and 913 state farms. About

2.5m. hectares of marsh land had been drained for agricultural use, 828,200 of these for crops. This land has been found to be as rich as the soil of the Black Earth Zone, and yields good harvests of grain, fodder, potatoes, kok-sagyz and other crops. In Jan. 1987 there were 130,500 tractors and 35,800 grain combine harvesters.

**INDUSTRY.** Industry in this republic was almost completely destroyed during the years 1941–45. By 1956, aggregate industrial output was three times what it had been in 1940. Plants producing tip-lorries, machine-tools and agricultural machinery are prominent.

The republic also contains timber works; a match factory in Borisov; building materials, machine, prefabricated house construction, glass-blowing and other factories; canneries, creameries and other food industries; chemical, textiles, artificial-silk, flax-spinning and leather works and an automobile and tractor industry.

In 1986 output was as follows: Chemical fibre, 373,000 tonnes; light bulbs, 298m.; paper, 190,000 tonnes; building bricks, 2,100m.; radio receivers, 724,000; televisions, 987,000; watches, 10.1m.; bicycles, 798,000; beet sugar, 346,000 tonnes; preserves, 689m. jars; footwear, 44.8m. pairs.

Particular attention has been paid to the development of the peat industry with a view to making Belorussia as far as possible self-supporting in fuel, and in 1939 local peat provided 67.5% of her total requirements of fuel. The average annual output is about 18m. tonnes. There are also rich deposits of rock salt.

Output of electricity in 1986, 36,800m. kwh. (508m. in 1940). New power-plants have been built in Baranovichi, Grodno, Molodechno and Lida.

The number of industrial and office workers in 1986 was 4,303,000.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** In Jan. 1987 there were 5,540 km of railways, 59,500 km of motor roads (49,500 km hard-surface) and 1,351m. tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways.

*Newspapers* (1986). Of 214 newspapers published 130 were in Belorussian. Daily circulation of Belorussian-language newspapers, 1.6m., other languages, 3.5m.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 there were 180,200 students in 33 places of higher education and 159,200 students in 139 technical colleges. There were (Jan. 1987) 43,300 scientific personnel in 178 institutions, and 562,300 specialists with a higher education employed in the national economy. The Belorussian Academy of Sciences controlled 32 learned institutions with 5,753 scientific staff. The number of children in 6,000 primary and secondary schools was 1.5m. in 1986–87. 69% of children attended pre-school institutions in Jan. 1987.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 110,400 medical personnel and 132,800 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

*Belaruskaya Sovetskaya Entsiklopediya*, Minsk, 1960–76

Lubachko, I. S., *Belorussia under Soviet Rule, 1917–57*. Lexington, 1972

Vakar, N. P., *Belorussia*. Harvard Univ. Press, 1956.—*A Bibliographical Guide to Belorussia*. Harvard Univ. Press, 1956

## AZERBAIJAN

### Azərbaycan Sovet Sosialistik Respublikası

**HISTORY.** The 'Mussavat' (Nationalist) party, which dominated the National Council or Constituent Assembly of the Tatars, declared the independence of Azerbaijan on 28 May 1918, with a capital, first at Ganja (Elizavetpol) and later at Baku. On 28 April 1920 Azerbaijan was proclaimed a Soviet Socialist Republic. From 1922, with Georgia and Armenia it formed the Transcaucasian Soviet



Federal Socialist Republic. In 1936 it assumed the status of one of the Union Republics of the USSR.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Azerbaijan covers an area of 86,600 sq. km (33,430 sq. miles) and has a population (Jan. 1987) of 6,811,000. Its capital is Baku. Other important towns are Kirovabad and Sumgait. Nakhichevan is the capital of the Autonomous Republic of the same name.

Azerbaijan includes the Nakhichevan Autonomous Republic and the Nagorno-Karabakh Autonomous Region. Situated in the eastern area of Transcaucasia, it is protected by mountains in the west and north, washed by the Caspian Sea in the east and bounded by Iran in the south. Its climate is inclined to drought.

In 1979 (census) 78.1% of the population were Azerbaijanis, who are mainly Shi'a Moslems. Other nationalities were Russians (7.9%), Armenians (7.9%) and Daghestanis (3.4%).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 450 deputies (1 per 10,000 population); 311 are Communists and 179 women. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the Nagorno-Karabakh regional Soviet and the district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 51,681 deputies returned, 24,859 (48.1%) were women, 28,484 (55.1%) non-Party and 35,047 (67.8%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* S. B. Tatliev.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* G. N. Seidov.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* A-R. Kh. Vezirov.

**FINANCE** (in 1m. rubles). Budget estimates, 1988, 3,361; 1989 (plan), 3,808.

**AGRICULTURE.** The chief agricultural products are grain, cotton, rice, grapes, fruit, vegetables, tobacco and silk. The Mexican rubber plant *grayule* has been acclimatized. A new kind of high-yielding winter wheat has been produced for use in mountainous parts of the republic. Area under cultivation, 6.7m. hectares.

Livestock on 1 Jan. 1987: Cattle, 2m.; pigs, 200,000; sheep and goats, 5.6m.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 1,066; cotton, 784; grapes, 1,536; vegetables, 855; tobacco, 62; potatoes, 189; tea, 32.7; meat, 178; milk, 965; eggs, 993m.; wool, 10.8.

Azerbaijan has become an important cotton-growing and sub-tropical base. About 70% of cultivated land is irrigated. On the irrigated land crops of Egyptian and Sea-Island cotton are obtained. Here, too, rice and lucerne are cultivated, and in the mountain valleys there are also orchards, vineyards and silk cultures.

In the south along the coast of the Caspian, where the climate is more moist, there are tea plantations, and citrus fruits and other sub-tropical plants are grown.

In 1941 a scientific research institute for sub-tropical research was opened to develop the culture of sub-tropical plants in Azerbaijan and other parts of Transcaucasia. A forestry research institute was opened in 1949.

There were on 1 Jan. 1987, 608 collective farms, 808 state farms, 37,500 tractors and 4,600 grain combine harvesters.

**INDUSTRY.** The republic is rich in natural resources: oil, iron, aluminium, copper, lead, zinc, precious metals, sulphur pyrites, limestone and salt. Iron and steel and aluminium works have been built at Sumgait.

The most important industry is the oil industry, especially in the Baku region. The output of oil was 7.7m. tonnes in 1913, 22.2m. tonnes in 1940 and 16.5m. tonnes in 1976. The largest producing area lies along the western shore of the Caspian Sea, north and south of Baku, where the largest refineries are located. Other wells lie west of Baku, and some have been drilled in the Caspian itself, off the Apsheron Peninsula. Baku is connected by a double pipeline with Batum on the Black Sea. All the oilfields have been electrified and are connected with Baku.

Azerbaijan has also copper, chemical, cement and building material, food,

timber, salt, textiles and fishing industries. In 1986, 540,000 tonnes of steel pipe were produced, 41.6m. items of knitwear, 227,000 tonnes of caustic soda, 23.4m. pairs leather footwear, 97,600 tonnes of confectionery and 646m. standard jars of conserves.

In addition to Baku, other important industrial centres are Kirovabad, Nukha, Stepanakert, Nakhichevan, Lenkoran.

In 1986 electric power output was 24,000m. kwh. Output of gas, which began in 1928 with 176m. cu. metres, was 10,989m. in 1976. Pipelines from Karadag to Baku and Sumgait supply gas fuel for all oil-cracking factories and most engineering works.

Synthetic rubber works (Sumgait), tyre works and a worsted combine (Baku) and a large textile combine (Mingechaur) have been built.

The number of industrial and office workers in 1986 was 2,102,000.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Total length of railways in 1987, 2,070 km, of motor roads 30,900 km (27,900 km hard surface).

*Newspapers* (1986). There were 146 newspapers; 117 in the Azerbaijani language (circulation 2.3m.), other languages, 494,000.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 1.4m. pupils in 4,400 primary and secondary schools and 20% of children attended pre-school institutions. There were 77 technical colleges with 75,700 students, 18 higher educational institutions, including a state university at Baku, with 105,700 students (including correspondence students). The Azerbaijan Academy of Sciences, founded in 1945, has 30 research institutions with 4,293 research workers. There were 23,100 research workers in the republic as a whole in Jan. 1987.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 63,600 medical personnel and 66,500 hospital beds.

## NAKHICHEVAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 5,500 sq. km (2,120 sq. miles), population (Jan. 1987), 278,000. Capital, Nakhichevan (37,000). This territory, on the borders of Turkey and Iran, forms part of the Azerbaijan SSR although separated from it by the territory of Soviet Armenia. Its population, mainly Azerbaijanis, had a chequered history for 1,500 years under the ancient Persians, Arabs, Seljuk Turks, Mongols, Ottoman Turks and modern Persians before being annexed by Russia in 1828. On 9 Feb. 1924 it was constituted as an Autonomous Republic within Azerbaijan. Its Supreme Soviet, elected 24 Feb. 1985, has 110 members including 52 women.

The republic has silk, clothing, cotton, canning, meat-packing and other factories. Nearly 70% of the people are engaged in agriculture, of which the main branches are cotton and tobacco growing. Fruit and grapes are also produced in increasing quantity. There are 35 collective and 37 state farms. Crop area 37,400 hectares.

In 1984-85 there were 219 primary and secondary schools with 66,000 pupils, and 2,100 were studying in higher educational institutions.

In Jan. 1983 there were 599 doctors and 2,500 hospital beds.

## NAGORNO-KARABAKH AUTONOMOUS REGION

Area, 4,400 sq. km (1,700 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 180,000. Capital, Stepanakert (33,000). Populated by Armenians (75.9%) and Azerbaijanis (23%), a separate khanate in the 18th century, it was established on 7 July 1923 as an Autonomous Region within Azerbaijan.

Main industries are silk, wine, dairying and building materials. Crop area is 67,200 hectares; cotton, grapes and winter wheat are grown. There are 33 collective and 38 state farms.

In 1984–85 34,000 pupils were studying in primary and secondary schools, 2,400 in colleges and 2,100 in higher educational institutions. In Jan. 1983 there were 523 doctors and 1,800 hospital beds.

Following extensive public demonstrations in Armenia and Azerbaijan as well as Nagorno-Karabakh itself, the area was placed under a 'special form of administration' subordinate to the USSR government in 1989.

### Further Reading

Baddeley, J. F., *The Rugged Flanks of Caucasus*. 2 vols. Oxford, 1941.

Guseinov, I. A. et al. *İstoriya Azerbaidzhana*. 8 vols. Baku, 1958–63.

## GEORGIA

### Sakartvelos Sabchota Sotsialisturi Respublica

**HISTORY.** The independence of the Georgian Social Democratic Republic was declared at Tiflis on 26 May 1918 by the National Council, elected by the National Assembly of Georgia on 22 Nov. 1917. The independence of Georgia was recognized by the USSR on 7 May 1920. On 12 Feb. 1921 a rising broke out in Mingrelia, Abkhazia and Adjara, and Soviet troops invaded the country, which, on 25 Feb. 1921, was proclaimed the Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic. At the first Transcaucasian Soviet Congress, 15 Dec. 1922, Georgia, together with Armenia and Azerbaijan, united to form the Transcaucasian Soviet Federal Socialist Republic, and a federal constitution was adopted and published 10 Jan. 1923. In 1936 the Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic became one of the constituent republics of the USSR.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Georgia is bounded west by the Black Sea and south by Turkey, Armenia and Azerbaijan. It occupies the whole of the western part of Transcaucasia and covers an area of 69,700 sq. km (26,900 sq. miles). Its population on 1 Jan. 1987 was 5,266,000. The capital is Tbilisi (Tiflis). Other important towns are Kutaisi (207,000), Rustavi (139,000), Batumi (129,000), Sukhumi (122,000), Poti (54,000), Gori (59,000).

Protected from the north by the Caucasian mountains and receiving in the west the warm, moist winds from the Black Sea into which most of its rivers flow, Georgia is outstanding for its fine, warm climate and its natural wealth, variety and beauty. It has the highest snow-capped peaks of the Caucasian mountains. Georgia contains valuable sulphur and other medicinal springs. Georgians, an ancient people, were (1979 census) 68.8% of the population; Armenians 9%; Russians, 7.4%; Azerbaijanis, 5.1%; Ossetians, 3.2%; Abkhazians, 1.7%.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Georgian Soviet Socialist Republic includes the Abkhazian ASSR, the Adjarian ASSR and the South Ossetian Autonomous Region.

The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 440 deputies; 160 are women, 290 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the district, rural and urban Soviets, and that of the South Ossetian region (21 June 1987), of 50,982 deputies returned 25,826 (50.7%) were women, 28,974 (56.8%) non-Party and 34,930 (68.5%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* P. G. Gilashvili.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* O. E. Cherkeziya.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* D. I. Patiashvili.

**FINANCE** (in 1 m. rubles). Budget estimates, 1988, 3,360; 1989 (plan), 4,067.



**AGRICULTURE.** There are 3 main agricultural areas: (1) The moist sub-tropical area along the Black Sea Coast, where are cultivated tea, citrus fruits (lemons, oranges, mandarins, etc.), the tung tree (which yields special industrial oils), eucalyptus, bamboo, high-quality tobacco; (2) Imeretia (the Kutais region) where the chief cultures are grapes and silk, and (3) Kakhetia, along the Alazani (a tributary of the Kura river), famed for its orchards and wines. Land under cultivation was 4.6m. hectares in Nov. 1986.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 638; tea leaf, 558.8; citrus fruit, 292; sugar-beet, 51; potatoes, 367; vegetables, 662; grapes, 699; meat, 177; milk, 718; eggs, 895m.; wool, 6.

On 1 Jan. 1986 there were 719 collective farms working over 66% of all agricultural land, 594 state farms working nearly 34% of such land. In the Colchis area 115,000 hectares of extremely rich land have been reclaimed. There are 389,000 hectares of irrigated land. 151,400 hectares of marsh land have been drained. Tractors numbered 27,400 on 1 Jan. 1987; grain combines, 1,700.

Livestock on 1 Jan. 1987: Cattle, 1.6m.; pigs, 1.1m.; sheep and goats, 2m.

Georgia is rich in forest lands where fine varieties of timber are grown. Area covered by forests, 2.4m. hectares.

**INDUSTRY.** The most important mining industry of Georgia is the exploitation of the manganese deposits, the richest of which lie in the Chiatura region. Manganese deposits are calculated at 250m. tonnes, distributed over an area of 140 sq. km. The most important coal seams are at Tkvarcheli (deposits estimated at 250m. tonnes) and Tkibuli (deposits of 80m. tonnes). Other important minerals are baryta, the best in the USSR, fire-resisting and other clays, diatomite shale, oil, agate, marble, cement, alabaster, iron and other ores, building stone, arsenic, molybdenum, tungsten and mercury. In 1941 a goldfield was discovered. Output of coal in 1976 was 1.9m. tonnes (625,000 in 1940).

Since the Second World War the Transcaucasian Metallurgical Plant has been built at Rustavi (near Tbilisi) and a motor works at Kutaisi. There are modern factories for processing green tea-leaves, creameries and breweries; Georgia has also textile and silk industries.

In 1986, 2.2m. tonnes of manganese ore were produced, 515,000 tonnes of steel pipe, 35,900 tonnes of chemical fibres, 35,300 tonnes of paper, 17.8m. pairs footwear, 56.1m. knitwear garments, 35,200 colour televisions, 52,500 tonnes of confectionery, 97,400 tonnes of tea and 838m. jars of preserves.

Georgia's fast flowing rivers form an abundant source of energy. One of the most powerful stations completed in recent years is Tbilisi (1m. kw.). Power output in 1986 was 14,600m. kwh. (742m. in 1940).

There were 2,216,000 industrial and office workers in 1986.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of railways in 1987, 1,540 km, of motor roads 35,200 (with hard surface 30,700).

*Newspapers* (1986). Out of 144 newspapers, 127 were in Georgian. Daily circulation of Georgian-language newspapers, 3m., other languages, 519,000.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 900,000 pupils in 3,900 primary and secondary schools, 55,300 in 91 technical colleges and 85,800 students in 19 higher educational institutions. Tbilisi University has 16,300 students. In towns, 11 years' education is usual. In Abastuman there is an astro-physical observatory. In 1936 a branch of the Academy of Sciences of the USSR was formed in Tbilisi, and in Feb. 1941 a Georgian Academy of Sciences was opened, which in Jan. 1987 had 42 institutions with scientific staff totalling 5,669. There were in all 194 research institutions with 27,600 scientific staff.

In Jan. 1987, 42% of children were attending pre-school institutions.

**HEALTH.** There were 62,600 medical personnel and 56,100 hospital beds in 1986.

## ABKHAZIAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 8,600 sq. km (3,320 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 535,000. Capital Sukhumi. This area, the ancient Colchis, included Greek colonies from the 6th century B.C. onwards. From the 2nd century B.C. onwards, it was a prey to many invaders—Romans, Byzantines, Arabs, Ottoman Turks—before accepting a Russian protectorate in 1810. However, from the 4th century A.D. a West Georgian kingdom was established by the Lazi princes in the territory (known to the Romans as 'Lazica') and by the 8th century the prevailing language was Georgian and the name Abkhazia. In March 1921 a congress of local Soviets proclaimed it a Soviet Republic, and its status as an Autonomous Republic, within Georgia, was confirmed on 17 April 1930.

Population (1979 census) Abkhazians, 17.1%, Georgians, 43.9% and Russians, 16.4%.

140 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 57 of them women.

The Abkhazian coast (along the Black Sea) possesses a famous chain of health resorts—Gagra, Sukhumi, Akhali-Antoni, Gulripsha and Gudauta—sheltered by thickly forested mountains.

The republic has coal, electric power, building materials and light industries. In 1985 there were 89 collective farms and 56 state farms; main crops are tobacco, tea, grapes, oranges, tangerines and lemons. Crop area 43,900 hectares.

Livestock, 1 Jan. 1987: 147,300 cattle, 127,900 pigs, 28,800 sheep and goats.

In 1986–87 about 100,000 pupils were engaged in study at all levels. A university has been opened in Sukhumi.

In Jan. 1985 there were 2,300 doctors and 6,000 hospital beds.

## ADJARIAN AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 3,000 sq. km (1,160 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 385,000. Capital, Batumi. After a history similar to that of Abkhazia, it fell under Turkish rule in the 17th century, and was annexed to Russia (rejoining Georgia) after the Berlin Treaty of 1878. On 16 July 1921 the territory was constituted as an Autonomous Republic within the Georgian SSR.

Population (1979 census) Georgians, 80.1%, Russians, 9.8% and Armenians 4.6%.

110 deputies were elected to the republican Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, 45 of them women.

The republic specializes in sub-tropical agricultural products. These include tea, mandarines and lemons, grapes, bamboo, eucalyptus, etc. Livestock (Jan. 1987): 133,400 cattle, 6,300 pigs, 11,600 sheep and goats. In 1980 there were 69 collective farms and 21 state farms.

There are shipyards at Batumi, modern oil-refining plant (the pipeline from the Baku oilfields ends at Batumi), food-processing and canning factories, clothing, building materials, drug factories, etc.

Health resorts are Kobuleti, Tsikhisdziri, Batumi on the coast and Beshumi in the hills. The sub-tropical climate and flora, and the combination of mountains and sea, make this republic (like Abkhazia) a favourite holiday area.

In 1986–87 79,800 pupils were engaged in study at all levels and 1,000 graduated from colleges.

In Jan. 1985 there were 1,430 doctors and 3,900 hospital beds.

## SOUTH OSSETIAN AUTONOMOUS REGION

This area was populated by Ossetians from across the Caucasus (North Ossetia), driven out by the Mongols in the 13th century. The region was set up within the Georgian SSR on 20 April 1922. Area, 3,900 sq. km (1,505 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 99,000 (1979 census, Ossetians, 66.4% and Georgians, 28.8%). Capital, Tskhinvali (34,000).

Main industries are mining, timber, electrical engineering and building materials. Crop area, chiefly grains, was 21,600 hectares in 1985; other pursuits are sheep-farming (128,500 sheep and goats on 1 Jan. 1987) and vine-growing. There were 14 collective farms and 18 state farms.

In 1986–87 there were 18,543 pupils in elementary and secondary schools; there were 1,967 graduates from higher educational institutions and 837 from colleges.

In Jan. 1987 there were 511 doctors and 1,400 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

Lang, D. M., *A Modern History of Georgia*. London, 1962. — *The Georgians*. London, 1966  
Gvarjaladze, T. and I. (eds.), *English-Georgian and Georgian-English Dictionary*. Tbilisi, 1974

Suny, R. G., *The Making of the Georgian Nation*. London, 1989  
*Istoriya Gruzii*. 3 vols. Tbilisi, 1962–73

## ARMENIA

### Haikakan Sovetakan Sotsialistakan Hanrapetoutioun

**HISTORY.** On 29 Nov. 1920 Armenia was proclaimed a Soviet Socialist Republic. The Armenian Soviet Government, with the Russian Soviet Government, was a party to the Treaty of Kars (March 1921), which confirmed the Turkish possession of the former Government of Kars and of the Surmali District of the Government of Yerevan. From 1922 to 1936 it formed part of the Transcaucasian Soviet Federal Socialist Republic. In 1936 Armenia was proclaimed a constituent republic of the USSR.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Armenia covers an area of 29,800 sq. km (11,490 sq. miles). It is bounded in the north by Georgia, in the east by Azerbaijan and in the south and west by Turkey and Iran. It is a very mountainous country with but little forest land, has many turbulent rivers and a highly fertile soil, but is subject to drought. In Jan. 1987 the population was 3,412,000. Census (1979) 89.7% of the population were Armenians, the rest are Russians (2.3%), Kurds (1.7%), Azerbaijanians (5.3%). The capital is Yerevan. Other large towns are Leninakan (218,000) and Kirovakan (159,000). An earthquake in Dec. 1988 caused extensive damage and the loss of an estimated 25,000 lives.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 338 deputies; 121 are women, 216 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 27,776 deputies returned 13,758 (49.5%) were women, 15,681 (56.5%) non-Party and 19,149 (68.9%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* G. M. Voskanyan.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* V. S. Markaryants.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* S. G. Arutyunyan.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1m. rubles), 1988, 2,243; 1989 (plan), 2,460.



**AGRICULTURE.** The chief agricultural area is the valley of the Arax and the area round Yerevan. Here there are considerable cotton plantations as well as orchards and vineyards. Sub-tropical plants, such as almonds and figs, are also grown. Olive groves and pomegranate plantations occupy large areas; experiments are being made to naturalize cork oak. In the mountainous areas the chief pursuit is livestock raising. Land under cultivation in Nov. 1986, 2.3m. hectares.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 331; potatoes, 266; vegetables, 571; sugar-beet, 132; fruit, 211; grapes, 240; meat, 113; milk, 562; eggs, 606m.; wool, 4.5.

Area of irrigated land in Armenia in 1982 was 284,000 hectares.

There were, on 1 Jan. 1987, 280 collective farms, and these together with the 513 state farms tilled 99.9% of the total cultivated area. Livestock included 300,000 pigs, 800,000 cattle and 1.8m. sheep and goats. All the state farms and collective farms had been electrified by the end of 1960. There were 13,900 tractors and 1,500 grain and cotton combines in Jan. 1987.

**INDUSTRY.** Armenia contains large deposits of copper, zinc, aluminium, molybdenum and other metals. It is also rich in marble, granite, cement and other building materials. The mining of these minerals is becoming more and more important. Among other industries are the chemical, producing chiefly synthetic rubber and fertilizers, and the extraction and processing of building materials such as cement, pumice-stone, tuffs, marble, volcanic basalt and fire-proof clay, ginning- and textile-mills, carpet weaving, food, including wine-making, fruit, meat-canning and creameries. Machine-tool and electrical engineering works have also been established. Among the industrial centres are Yerevan, Leninakan, Alaverdi, Kafan, Kirovakan, Daval, Megri and Oktemberyan. Output of electricity in 1986 was 14,500m. kwh. A chain ('cascade') of 8 hydro-electric stations on the river Razdan, as it falls about 3,300 ft from the mountain lake Sevan to its junction with the Arax, has been completed.

In 1986 output included 93,500 centrifugal pumps, 187m. light bulbs, 132,500 km of light cable, 1.5m. cu. metres ferroconcrete, 91.8m. slates, 5m. clocks, 19.5m. pairs footwear, 98.2m. items knitwear, and 475.5m. jars of preserves.

There were 1,368,000 industrial and office workers employed in the national economy in 1986.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of railways in Jan. 1987, 870 km; motor roads, 12,200 km (hard surface, 10,600).

*Newspapers* (1986). Out of 92 newspapers 81 appeared in Armenian. Daily circulation of Armenian-language newspapers, 1.5m., other languages, 134,000.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 600,000 pupils in 1,500 primary and secondary schools; 65 technical colleges with 48,500 students; 13 higher educational institutions with 54,600 students (including correspondence students). Yerevan houses the Armenian Academy of Sciences, 43 scientific institutes, a medical institute and other technical colleges, and a state university. In Jan. 1987, 33 learned institutions with 3,246 scientific staff are under the Academy of Sciences; scientific workers in 101 institutions totalled 22,300.

In Jan. 1987 39% of children attended pre-school institutions.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 31,900 medical personnel and 29,500 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

Kurkjian, V., *A History of Armenia*. New York, 1958

Lang, D.M., *Armenia: Cradle of Civilization*. London, 1978.—*The Armenians. A People in Exile*. London, 1981

Missakian, J., *A Searchlight on the Armenian Question, 1878-1950*. Boston, Mass., 1950

# MOLDAVIAN SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

## Respublika Sovietike Sochialiste Moldovenyaske

**HISTORY.** The Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic, capital Kishinev, was formed by the union of part of the former Moldavian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic (organized 12 Oct. 1924), formerly included in the Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic, and the areas of Bessarabia (ceded by Romania to the USSR, 28 June 1940) with a mainly Moldavian population. As from 2 Aug. 1940 the MSSR includes the following regions of the former Moldavian Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic: Grigoriopol, Dubossarsk, Kamensk, Rybnits, Slobodzeisk and Tiraspol, and the following districts of Bessarabia: Beltsk, Bendery, Kagulsk, Kishinev, Orgeev and Sorok. The republic, however, is divided not into regions but into 36 rural districts, 21 towns and 45 urban settlements.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Moldavia is bounded in the east and south by the Ukraine and on the west by Romania. The area is 33,700 sq. km (13,000 sq. miles). In Jan. 1987 the population was 4,185,000, of whom (1979 census) 63.9% are Moldavians. Others include Ukrainians (14.2%), Russians (12.8%), Gagauzi (3.5%), Jews (2%). Apart from Kishinev, larger towns are Tiraspol (154,000), Beltsy (139,000) and Bendery (114,000).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 380 deputies; 138 are women, 253 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 38,808 deputies returned, 19,060 (49.1%) were women, 21,951 (56.6%) non-Party and 25,930 (66.9%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* A. A. Mokuanu.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* I. P. Kalin.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* S. K. Grossu.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1 m. rubles), 1988, 3,000; 1989 (plan), 3,396.

**AGRICULTURE.** On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 368 collective farms and 473 state farms. All ploughing and sowing is mechanized. Livestock included (1 Jan. 1987) 1.2m. cattle, 1.9m. pigs and 1.2m. sheep and goats. There were 53,200 tractors and 4,300 combine harvesters in Jan. 1987. Land under cultivation (Nov. 1986) 2.9m. hectares.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 2,044; sugar-beet, 2,412; vegetables, 1,438; fruit and berries, 1,151; grapes, 1,220; meat, 322; milk, 1,412; eggs, 1,101m.

Bessarabia has an equable climate and very fertile soil. It contains nearly one quarter of the vineyards of the USSR. Bessarabia is also rich in fish in the south: sturgeon, mackerel, brill.

**INDUSTRY.** There are canning plants, wine-making plants, woodworking and metallurgical factories, a factory of ferro-concrete building materials, and footwear and textile plants. Moldavia takes third place in the USSR in the production of wine, tobacco and food-canning. Production in 1986 included 106,300 centrifugal pumps, 167.5m. slates, 19.1m. pairs footwear, 63m. items knitwear, 24,300 colour televisions, 194,300 refrigerators, 300,700 washing machines, 1,925.8m. jars of preserves. Meat and dairy produce are rapidly expanding food industries.

There are lignite, phosphorites, gypsum and valuable building materials.

In 1986 there were 1,595,000 industrial and office workers working in the national economy. Electricity generated (1986) 17,700m. kwh.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of railways in Jan. 1987, 1,150 km. There are

16,400 km of motor roads (12,200 hard surface), and 314m. tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways.

*Newspapers* (1986). There were 188 newspapers, 79 in Moldavian. Daily circulation of Moldavian-language newspapers, 1,189,000, other languages, 1,104,000.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 there were 700,000 pupils in 1,600 primary, secondary and special schools, 60,400 students in 53 technical colleges and 52,600 students in 9 higher educational institutions including the state university. A Moldavian Academy of Sciences was established in 1961: it had 17 research institutions and a scientific staff of 1,208 in Jan. 1987. In all, there are 68 learned institutions with 10,200 scientific staff. In Jan. 1987, 68% of children attended pre-school institutions.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 47,700 medical personnel and 52,800 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

Zlatova, Y. and Kotelnikov, V., *Across Moldavia* (English ed.), Moscow, 1959  
*Istoriya Moldavskoi SSR*. 2nd ed. 2 vols. Kishinev, 1965–68

## ESTONIA

### Eesti Nõukogude Sotsialistlik Vabariik

**HISTORY.** The workers' and soldiers' Soviets in Estonia took over power on 8 Nov. 1917, were overthrown by the German occupying forces in March 1918, and were restored to power as the Germans withdrew in Nov. 1918, establishing the 'Estland Labour Commune'. It was overthrown with the assistance of British naval forces in May 1919, and a democratic republic proclaimed. In March 1934 this regime was, in turn, overthrown by a fascist *coup*.

The secret protocol of the Soviet-German agreement of 23 Aug. 1939 assigned Estonia to the Soviet sphere of interest. An ultimatum (16 June 1940) led to the formation of a government acceptable to the USSR; on 21 July the State Duma proclaimed the establishment of an Estonian Soviet Socialist Republic and applied to join the USSR; on 6 Aug. the Supreme Soviet accepted the application. The incorporation has been accorded *de facto* recognition by the British Government, but not by the US Government, which continues to recognize an Estonian consul-general in New York.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Estonia is bounded west and north by the Baltic, east by the RSFSR and south by Latvia. Area, 45,100 sq. km (17,413 sq. miles); population, 1,556,000 (Jan. 1987). Census (1979) 64.7% were Estonians, 27.9% Russians, 2.5% Ukrainians and 1.6% Belorussians. The capital is Tallinn. Other large towns are Tartu, Narva, Kohtla-Järve and Pärnu. There are 15 districts, 33 towns and 26 urban settlements.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 285 deputies (1 per 10,000 population); 102 are women, 192 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), out of 11,164 deputies returned 5,472 (49%) were women, 6,140 (55%) non-Party and 7,325 (65.6%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* A. F. Riutel.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* B. E. Saul.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* V. J. Valas.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1m. rubles), 1988, 1,797; 1989 (plan), 2,035.



**AGRICULTURE.** Agriculture and dairy farming are the chief occupations. Area under cultivation was 2.6m. hectares in Nov. 1986. There were 142 agricultural and 8 fishery collectives and 152 state farms in 1987 using 21,100 tractors and 3,400 grain combines. 97% of state farms and 70% of collective farms were receiving electric power.

On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 827,600 head of cattle, 135,900 sheep and goats, and 1.1m. pigs.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 1,159; potatoes, 1,146; vegetables, 159; meat, 220; milk, 1,262; eggs, 534m.

**INDUSTRY.** Some 22% of the territory is covered by forests which provide good material for its sawmills, furniture, match and pulp industries, as well as wood fuel. Since the end of the war, 80,000 hectares have been afforested. 966,700 hectares of marsh land had been reclaimed by 1977.

Estonia has rich high-quality shale deposits (particularly in the north-east) which are estimated at 3,700m. tons. Shale output was 1.9m. tons in 1940 and 27.4m. in 1984. A factory for the production of gas from shale and a pipeline (208 km long) from Kohtla-Järve supplies shale gas to Leningrad and Tallinn. Estonian factories are now turning out agricultural and peat-digging machines, complex control and measuring instruments. The 'Volta' factory in Tallinn produces electric motors.

In the neighbourhood of Tallinn, phosphorites have been found, and in 1947 a plant for refining and for the production of super-phosphates was started. Estonia also contains valuable peat deposits, and some of her electrical stations work on peat. There are 350 rural electric stations. Electricity generated (1986) 18,000m. kwh. Output of paper in 1986 was 94,900 tonnes; leather footwear, 6.4m. pairs; knitwear, 22.5m. garments; preserves, 339m. jars.

In 1986 there were 726,000 industrial and office workers engaged in the national economy.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of railways in 1987, 1,010 km. Estonia has 20 ports, but Tallinn handles four-fifths of the total sea-going transport. Length of motor roads, 28,600 km (hard surface, 26,900 km). Airlines link Tallinn with Moscow, Leningrad, Riga and the Estonian islands.

*Newspapers* (1986). There were 50 newspapers, 35 of them in Estonian. Daily circulation of Estonian-language newspapers, 1,136,000, other languages, 224,000.

**EDUCATION.** Estonia has retained an 11-year school curriculum, when it was reduced to 10 years elsewhere in the USSR. In 1986-87 pupils in 600 primary, secondary and special schools numbered 200,000. There were 23,400 students in 6 higher educational establishments, including Tartu (Dorpat) University, founded in 1632, and 22,000 students in 36 technical colleges.

The Estonian Academy of Sciences, founded in 1946, had 24 institutions with 1,259 scientific staff in Jan. 1987; in all, 7,200 scientific staff were working in 72 institutions.

In Jan. 1987 69% of children attended pre-school institutions.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 18,000 medical personnel and 19,300 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

*Istoriya Estonskoi SSR*. 3 vols. Tallin, 1961-74

Küng, A., *A Dream of Freedom*. Cardiff, 1980

Misiuras, R.-J. and Taagepera, R., *The Baltic States: Years of Dependence 1940-1980*. Farnborough, 1983

Parming, T. and Jarvesro, E., (eds.) *A Case Study of a Soviet Republic*. Boulder, 1978

Rank, M., *Inglise—cesti Sõnaraamat*. Toronto, 1965

Raun, T. U., *Estonia and the Estonians*. Stanford, 1987

Saagpakk, P. F., *Estonian-English Dictionary*. New Haven, 1982

# LATVIA

## Latvijas Padomju Socialistiska Republika

**HISTORY.** In the part of Latvia unoccupied by the Germans, the Bolsheviks won 72% of the votes in the Constituent Assembly elections (Nov. 1917). Soviet power was proclaimed in Dec. 1917, but was overthrown when the Germans occupied all Latvia (Feb. 1918). Restored when they withdrew (Dec. 1918), it was overthrown once more by combined British naval and German military forces (May–Dec. 1919), and a democratic government set up. This régime was in turn replaced when a fascist *coup* took place in May 1934.

The secret protocol of the Soviet–German agreement of 23 Aug. 1939 assigned Latvia to the Soviet sphere of interest. An ultimatum (16 June 1940) led to the formation of a government acceptable to the USSR. On 21 July a People's Diet proclaimed the establishment of the Latvian Soviet Socialist Republic and applied to join the USSR, whose Supreme Soviet accepted the application on 5 Aug. The incorporation has been accorded *de facto* recognition by the British Government, but not by the US Government, which continues to recognize the Chargé d'Affaires in Washington, D.C.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Latvia is bounded north by Estonia and the Baltic Sea, west by the Baltic, south by Lithuania and Belorussia and east by the RSFSR. Latvia has a total area of 63,700 sq. km (24,595 sq. miles). Population, Jan. 1987, 2,647,000, of whom (1979 census) 53.7% are Latvians and 32.8% Russians. There are 26 districts, 56 towns and 37 urban settlements.

The chief town is Riga (the capital); other principal towns are Daugavpils (Dvinsk), Liepāja, Jūrmala, Jelgava (Mitau) and Ventspils (Windau).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 325 deputies (1 per 10,000 population); 115 are women, 219 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 23,398 deputies returned, 11,392 (48.7%) were women, 12,715 (54.3%) non-Party and 14,133 (60.4%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* A. V. Gorbunov.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* Y. Y. Ruben.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* J. J. Vagris.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1m. rubles), 1988, 2,733; 1989 (plan), 3,133.

**AGRICULTURE.** Latvia is now no longer mainly an agricultural country. The urban population, 35% of the total in 1939, was 71% in Jan. 1986.

Latvian forest lands, state and private (2.4m. hectares), produced in 1937–38, 3.4m. cu. metres of timber; 1983 output, 4.2m. cu. metres.

Area under cultivation was 3.9m. hectares in Nov. 1986. 1.8m. hectares of marsh land have been drained (1983).

Cattle breeding and dairy farming are the chief agricultural occupations. Oats, barley, rye, potatoes and flax are the main crops.

After the establishment of the Soviet regime about 960,000 hectares were distributed among the landless peasants or those with very small holdings. On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 248 state farms and 331 (including 11 fishery) collective farms. There were 37,600 tractors and 7,900 grain combine harvesters. By 1 Jan. 1964, all state farms and collective farms were using electric power.

Livestock (1 Jan. 1987): Cattle, 1.5m. (1939: 1.3m.); sheep and goats, 172,000 (1939: 1.5m.); pigs, 1.8m. (1939: 891,500).

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 1,850; sugar-beet, 367; potatoes, 1,566; vegetables, 218; meat, 324; milk, 1,957; eggs, 880m.

**INDUSTRY.** Latvia is the main producer of electric railway passenger cars and

long-distance telephone exchanges in the USSR, fourth in output of paper and woollen goods, fifth of sawn timber, sixth of mineral fertilizers.

Industrial output in 1986 (in 1,000 tonnes) included: Paper, 160; hosiery, 76.9m. pairs; knitwear, 43.8m. garments; footwear, 25.9m. pairs; radio receivers, 1.9m.; washing machines, 659,000; railway carriages, 599; buses, 14,700; chemical fibre, 51.4; jars of preserves, 428m. Electricity generated (1986) 5,200m. kwh.

Peat deposits extend over 645,000 hectares or about 10% of the total area, and it is estimated that total deposits are 3,000–4,000m. tons; output, 1971, 2.3m. tons. There are also gypsum deposits; amber is frequently found in the coastal districts.

In 1986 industrial and office workers numbered 1,237,000.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** In Jan. 1987 the length of railways was 2,380 km, and motor roads, 28,000 km (hard surface, 20,200 km). Riga is the largest port in the Baltic after Leningrad. In 1986, 211m. tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways.

*Newspapers* (1986). There were 108 newspapers (64 in Lettish). Daily circulation of Lettish-language newspapers, 1.4m.; other languages 462,000.

**RELIGION.** The Latvian Lutheran Church numbered 600,000 members in 1956.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 there were 900 primary and secondary schools, with a total of 400,000 pupils: 63% of children attended pre-school institutions. Ten places of higher education had 43,300 students, 55 technical colleges had 40,700 students; there were also 21 music and art schools, 3 teachers' training colleges and an agricultural academy. In 1946 an Academy of Sciences was opened which in Jan. 1987 had 15 research institutes with a staff of 1,796 scientific workers; there were over 13,700 scientific workers in 101 research institutions.

**HEALTH.** There were 33,400 medical personnel and 36,900 hospital beds in 1986.

### Further Reading

Latvian Academy of Sciences, *Istoriya Latviiskoi SSR*. Riga, 3 vols, 1952–58

Bilmanis, A., *A History of Latvia*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1951

Roze, B. and K., *Latviska-Angliska Vārdnīca*. Göppingen, 1948

Spekke, A., *History of Latvia*. Stockholm, 1951

Turkina, E., *Angliski-Latviska Vārdnīca*. Riga, 1948.—*Latviešu-Angļu Vārdnīca*. Riga, 1962

## LITHUANIA

### Lietuvos Tarybu Socialistinė Respublika

**HISTORY.** In 1914–15 the German army occupied the whole of Lithuania. On its withdrawal (Dec. 1918) Soviets were elected in all towns and a Soviet republic was proclaimed. In the summer of 1919 it was overthrown by Polish, German and nationalist Lithuanian forces, and a democratic republic established. In Dec. 1926 this regime was in turn overthrown by a fascist *coup*.

The secret protocol of the Soviet-German frontier treaty of 28 Sept. 1939 assigned the greater part of Lithuania to the Soviet sphere of influence. In Oct. 1939 the province and city of Vilnius (in Polish occupation 1920–39) were ceded by the USSR. An ultimatum (16 June 1940) led to the formation of a government acceptable to the USSR. A people's Diet, elected on 14–15 July, proclaimed the establishment of the Lithuanian Soviet Socialist Republic on 21 July and applied for admission to the USSR, which was effected by decree of the USSR Supreme Soviet on 3 Aug. and included also those parts of Lithuania which had been reserved for inclusion in Germany. This incorporation has been accorded *de facto*



recognition by the British Government, but not by the US Government, which continues to recognize a Lithuanian Chargé d'Affaires in Washington, D.C.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Lithuania is bounded north by Latvia, east and south by Belorussia, west by Poland, the Kaliningrad area of the RSFSR and the Baltic Sea. The total area of Lithuania is 65,200 sq. km (25,170 sq. miles) and the population (Jan. 1987) 3,641,000, of whom 80% were Lithuanians, 8.6% Russians and 7.7% Poles (1979 census).

The capital is Vilnius (Vilna). Other large towns are Kaunas (Kovno), Klaipeda (Memel), Šiauliai (130,000) and Panevėžys (112,000). There are 44 rural districts, 92 towns and 22 urban settlements.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 350 deputies (1 per 15,000 population); 125 are women, 235 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 28,354 deputies returned, 13,680 (48.2%) were women, 15,321 (54%) non-Party and 18,197 (64.1%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* V. S. Astrauskas.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* V. V. Sakalauskas.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* A. K. Brazauskas.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1 m. rubles), 1988, 3,962; 1989 (plan), 4,581.

**AGRICULTURE.** Lithuania before 1940 was a mainly agricultural country, but has since been considerably industrialized. The urban population was 23% of the total in 1937 and 66% in Jan. 1986. The resources of the country consist of timber and agricultural produce. Of the total area, 49.1% is arable land, 22.2% meadow and pasture land, 16.3% forests and 12.4% unproductive lands.

Area under cultivation in Nov. 1986, 4.6m. hectares. By 1981 over 2.7m. hectares of swamps had been drained.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 3,155; potatoes, 2,312; sugar-beet, 906; vegetables, 354; meat, 508; milk, 3,030; eggs, 1,203m.

On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 2.5m. cattle, 2.8m. pigs, 90,900 sheep and goats.

Forests cover 1,554,000 hectares; 70% of the forests consist of conifers, mostly pines. Peat reserves total 4,000m. cu. metres.

Between 1940 and 1947 about 575,500 hectares (about 1.4m. acres) were distributed among the landless and poor peasant farmers. In 1987 there were 48,600 tractors and 12,200 grain combines serving 737 collective farms and 311 state farms.

**INDUSTRY.** Heavy engineering, shipbuilding and building material industries are developing. Industrial output included, in 1985, 20,200 metal-cutting lathes; fuel pumps, 331,000; sulphuric acid, 440,000 tonnes; paper, 120,000 tonnes; carpet, 6.7m. sq. metres; tape recorders, 238,000; televisions, 609,000; leather footwear, 10.7m. pairs; granulated sugar, 221,800 tonnes; felled timber, 2m. cu. metres; knitwear, 61.3m. garments; hosiery, 99.3m. pairs; electric power, (1986) 22,400m. kwh.

In 1986 there were 1,580,000 industrial and office workers employed in the national economy.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of railways in Jan. 1987, 2,010 km. Vilnius has one of the largest airports of the USSR. There are 39,700 km of motor roads (29,100 km hard surface) and 170m. tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways in 1986. Klaipeda, as a non-freezing harbour and fishery base, is of national importance.

*Newspapers* (1986). Of 138 newspapers, 108 were in Lithuanian. Daily circulation of Lithuanian-language newspapers, 2.2m., other languages, 283,000.

**RELIGION.** In 1956, the Lithuanian Lutheran Church had 215,000 members; Roman Catholics, including those in Estonia and Latvia, numbered 2.5m.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 there were 600,000 pupils in 2,200 primary and secondary schools. The University of Vytautas the Great, at Kaunas, was opened on 16 Feb. 1922. On 15 Jan. 1940 certain faculties were transferred to Vilnius to join the ancient University of Vilnius (founded 1570). In 1986–87 there were 12 higher educational institutions with 64,900 students: in 66 technical colleges of all kinds there were 59,800 students. The Lithuanian Academy of Sciences, founded in 1941, had 12 institutions with a total scientific staff of 1,926 in Jan. 1987; there were 88 scientific institutions with 15,200 research personnel. 64% of children in Jan. 1987 were attending pre-school institutions.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 44,900 medical personnel and 45,700 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

- Jurgėla, C. R., *History of the Lithuanian Nation*. New York, 1948  
 Kantantas, A. and F., *A Lithuanian Bibliography*. Univ. of Alberta Press, 1975  
 Peteraitis, V., *Lithuanian–English Dictionary*. 2 vols. Chicago, 1960  
 Suziedlis, S., (ed.) *Encyclopedia Lituanica*. 6 vols. Boston, 1970–78  
 Vardys, S., (ed.) *Lithuania under the Soviets: Portrait of a Nation, 1940–45*. New York, 1965

## SOVIET CENTRAL ASIA

Soviet Central Asia embraces the Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic, the Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic, the Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic, the Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic and the Kirghiz Soviet Socialist Republic.

Turkestan (by which name part of this territory was then known) was conquered by the Russians in the 1860s. In 1866 Tashkent was occupied and in 1868 Samarkand, and subsequently further territory was conquered and united with Russian Turkestan. In the 1870s Bokhara was subjugated, the emir, by the agreement of 1873, recognizing the suzerainty of Russia. In the same year Khiva became a vassal state to Russia. Until 1917 Russian Central Asia was divided politically into the Khanate of Khiva, the Emirate of Bokhara and the Governor-Generalship of Turkestan.

In the summer of 1919 the authority of the Soviet Government became definitely established in these regions. The Khan of Khiva was deposed in Feb. 1920, and a People's Soviet Republic was set up, the medieval name of Khorezm being revived. In Aug. 1920 the Emir of Bokhara suffered the same fate, and a similar regime was set up in Bokhara. The former Governor-Generalship of Turkestan was constituted an Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic within the RSFSR on 11 April 1921.

In the autumn of 1924 the Soviets of the Turkestan, Bokhara and Khiva Republics decided to redistribute the territories of these republics on a nationality basis; at the same time Bokhara and Khiva became Socialist Republics. The redistribution was completed in May 1925, when the new states of Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan and Tadzhikistan were accepted into the USSR as Union Republics. The remaining districts of Turkestan populated by Kazakhs were united with Kazakhstan which was established as an ASSR in 1925 and became a Union Republic in 1936. Kirghizia, until then part of the RSFSR, was established as a Union Republic in 1936.

### Further Reading

- Akiner, S., *The Islamic Peoples of the Soviet Union*. Rev. ed. London, 1986  
 Bennigsen, A. and Broxup, M., *The Islamic Threat to the Soviet State*. London, 1983  
 Nove, A. and Newth, J. A., *The Soviet Middle East*. London, 1967  
 Rwykin, M., *Moscow's Muslim Challenge*. New York, 1982  
 Wheeler, G., *The Modern History of Soviet Central Asia*. London, 1964.—*The Peoples of Soviet Central Asia*. London, 1966

# KAZAKHSTAN

## Kazak Soviëttik Sotzialistik Respublikasy

**HISTORY.** On 26 Aug. 1920 Uralsk, Turgai, Akmolinsk and Semipalatinsk provinces formed the Kirgiz (in 1925 renamed Kazakh) Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic within the RSFSR. It was made a constituent republic of the USSR on 5 Dec. 1936. To this republic were added the parts of the former Governorship of Turkestan inhabited by a majority of Kazakhs. It consists of the following regions: Aktyubinsk, Alma-Ata, Chimkent, Dzhezkazgan, East Kazakhstan, Guryev, Karaganda, Kokchetav, Kustanai, Kzyl-Orda, Mangyshlak, North Kazakhstan, Pavlodar, Semipalatinsk, Taldy-Kurgan, Tselinograd, Turgai, Uralsk.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kazakhstan is bounded on the west by the Caspian Sea and the RSFSR, on the east by China, on the north by the RSFSR and on the south by Uzbekistan and Kirghizia. The area of the republic is 2,717,300 sq. km (1,049,155 sq. miles). It is the next in size to the RSFSR, is far larger than all the other Central Asian Soviet Republics combined and stretches nearly 3,000 km from west to east and over 1,500 km from north to south. Population (Jan. 1987) 16,244,000, of whom 55% live in urban areas. The Kazakhs form 36%, Russians 40.8% and Ukrainians 6.1% of the population (1979 census), as a result of the industrialization of the country since 1941 and the opening of virgin lands since 1945. The population includes over 100 nationalities.

The capital is Alma-Ata, formerly Verny; other large towns are Karaganda, Semipalatinsk, Chimkent and Petropavlovsk. In all there are 82 towns, 197 urban settlements and 221 rural districts.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 510 deputies (1 per 20,000 population); 183 are women, 336 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the regional, district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), out of 131,074 deputies returned, 64,717 (49.4%) were women, 75,748 (57.8%) non-Party and 89,350 (68.2%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*President, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* Z. Kamalidenov.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* N. A. Nazarbaev.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* G. V. Kolbin.

**FINANCE.** The budget (in 1 m. rubles) balanced as follows: 1988, 12,697; 1989 (plan), 14,254.

**AGRICULTURE.** Kazakh agriculture has changed from primarily nomad cattle breeding to production of grain, cotton and other industrial crops. In Nov. 1986 218.3m. hectares were under cultivation—over 20% of the total cultivated area of the USSR. 2,047,000 hectares of land have an irrigation network.

The 'Ukrainka' winter wheat has been transformed into a spring wheat suitable for cultivation in Kazakhstan. Tobacco, rubber plants and mustard are also cultivated. Kazakhstan has rich orchards and vineyards, which accounted for 95,000 hectares of cultivated land in 1985. Between 1954 and 1959, over 23m. hectares of virgin and long fallow land were opened up, 544 new state grain farms being organized for the purpose. State purchases of grain were 1.3m. tonnes in 1940, 12.3m. in 1971–75 (average), 12.6m. in 1981–85 (average) and 13.8m. in 1985.

Kazakhstan is noted for its livestock, particularly its sheep, from which excellent quality wool is obtained. The Akharomerino is a newly developed crossbreed of merino sheep and the wild Akhar mountain ram. Livestock on 1 Jan. 1987 included 9.5m. cattle, 36.4m. sheep and goats and 3.2m. pigs.

There were, on 1 Jan. 1987, 388 collective farms and 2,140 state farms with 241,200 tractors and 114,600 grain combine harvesters. There were 5,293 rural power stations of 307,800 kwh. capacity.



Output of main agricultural products (in 1m. tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 28.3; sugar-beet, 1.7; potatoes, 2.1; vegetables, 1.2; fruit and berries, 0.4; grapes, 0.2; meat, 1.3; milk, 5; eggs, 4,099m.; wool, 0.1.

**INDUSTRY.** Kazakhstan is extremely rich in mineral resources. Coal and tungsten in Karaganda (in the centre), oil along the river Emba (in the west), copper, lead and zinc—Kazakhstan contains about one-half of the total deposits of these three metals contained in the USSR—Iceland spar (in the south), nickel and chromium in the Kustanai and Semipalatinsk regions, molybdenum and other minerals.

In 1943 big deposits of manganese were found in Eastern Kazakhstan; new coal seams were also discovered there. In South Kazakhstan new copper and bauxite deposits have been found.

Coal, oil, non-ferrous metallurgy, heavy engineering and chemical industries have brought Kazakhstan to the third place among the industrial republics of the USSR. Production (1m. tonnes) in 1986 included iron ore, 23.6; sulphuric acid, 1.9; ferroconcrete, 6.8m. cu. metres; footwear, 37m. pairs; slates, 652m.; jars of preserves, 444.5m.; knitwear, 101.8m. items. The Leninogorsk and Chimkent lead plants, the Balkhash, Irtysh and Karakpai copper-smelting works and others supply the country with non-ferrous metals. A meat-packing plant has been built in Semipalatinsk, a fish cannery in Guryev, a chemical plant in Aktyubinsk, a tractor works at Pavlodar, and a superphosphate plant in Dzhambul. The oil industry in Emba and Aktyubinsk yields high-quality aviation oil.

Aviation plays an important part in agriculture. About 14m. hectares were in 1984 treated from the air (destruction of pests, surface feeding of sugar-beet plantations, pollination of orchards, etc.).

Among recent enterprises are a large textile combine at Kustanai, hosiery factories at Dzhankent, Leninogorsk and Aktyubinsk, a sugar factory at Aksu, meat canneries at Djetygar and Kzyl-Orda.

Electric power output in 1986 was 85,100m. kwh.

There were, in 1986, 6,562,000 industrial and office workers in the national economy.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 113,800 km of motor roads (92,300 km hard surface).

**Railways.** In 1987 the total length of railways in operation was 14,530 km. Over 600 km of narrow-gauge line and 700 km of broad-gauge line were built in the virgin lands area in 1951-57.

**Inland waterways.** In 1986 3,613m. tonne-km of freight was carried on inland waterways.

**Newspapers** (1986). Of 450 newspapers, 169 were in the Kazakh language. Daily circulation of Kazakh-language newspapers, 1.9m., in all languages, 6m.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 3.3m. pupils at 8,700 elementary and secondary schools; 246 technical colleges with 278,000 students, 55 higher educational institutions with 274,900 students, and 207 research institutes with 40,500 scientific personnel. The Kazakh Academy of Sciences, founded in 1945, had, in 1987, 31 institutions, the scientific staff of which numbered 4,450. 51% of children were attending pre-school institutions in Jan. 1987.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 187,500 medical personnel and 216,500 hospital beds.

## Further Reading

*Istoriya Kazakhskoi SSR.* 2 vols. Alma-Ata; 1957-59

Olcott, M. B., *The Kazakhs.* Stanford, 1987

# TURKMENISTAN

## Tiurkmenostan Soviet Sotsialistik Respublikasy

**HISTORY.** The Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic was formed on 27 Oct. 1924 and covers the territory of the former Trans-Caspian Region of Turkestan, the Charjiui vilayet of Bokhara and a part of Khiva situated on the right bank of the Oxus. In May 1925 the Turkmen Republic entered the Soviet Union as one of its constituent republics.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Turkmenistan is bounded on the north by the Autonomous Kara-Kalpak Republic, a constituent of Uzbekistan, by Iran and Afghánistán on the south, by the Uzbek Republic on the east and the Caspian Sea on the west. The principal Turkmen tribes are the Tekkés of Merv and the Tekkés of the Attok, the Ersaris, Yomuds and Goklans. All speak closely related varieties of a Turkic language (of the south-western group); many are Sunni Moslems.

The country passed under Russian control in 1881, after the fall of the Turkoman stronghold of GökTépé. Census (1979) 68.4% of the population were Turkmenians, most of whom were nomads before the First World War. 12.6% are Russians living mostly in urban areas, and 8.5% Uzbeks. There are also Kazakhs (2.9%), Tatars, Ukrainians, Armenians and others.

The area of Turkmenistan is 488,100 sq. km (186,400 sq. miles), and its population in Jan. 1987 was 3,361,000.

There are 5 regions: Chardzhou, Mary, Ashkhabad, Tashauz and Krasnovodsk, comprising 42 rural districts, 15 towns and 74 urban settlements.

The capital is Ashkhabad (Poltoratsk); other large towns are Chardzhou (162,000), Mary (Merv) (87,000), Nebit-Dag (83,000) and Krasnovodsk (58,000).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 330 deputies (1 per 5,000 population); 118 are women, 222 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to regional, district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 23,743 deputies returned, 11,501 (48.4%) were women, 13,420 (56.5%) non-party and 16,044 (67.5%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* R. A. Bazarov.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* A. Kh. Khodzhamuradov.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* S. A. Niyazov.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1m. rubles), 1988, 1,683; 1989 (plan), 1,934.

**AGRICULTURE.** The main occupation of the people is agriculture, based on irrigation. Turkmenistan produces cotton, wool, Astrakhan fur, etc. It is also famous for its carpets, and produces a special breed of Turkoman horses and the famous Karakul sheep.

There were 350 collective farms and 134 state farms in 1987, with 42,300 tractors and 1,600 grain combines. There were 608 rural power stations.

A considerable area is under Egyptian cotton, and from it has been evolved an original Soviet long-fibred cotton.

The main grain grown is maize. Sericulture, fruit and vegetable growing are also important; dates, olives, figs, sesame and other southern plants are grown. There is fishing in the Caspian. 34.7m. hectares were under cultivation in Nov. 1986.

Between 1958 and 1970 the Kara-Kum Canal was extended to 860 km. In 1971 the fourth section, to reach the Caspian, was begun to reach 1,000 km. By 1982 over 1,011,000 hectares had been irrigated.

Livestock on 1 Jan. 1987: Cattle, 700,000; pigs, 200,000; sheep and goats, 4.6m.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 320; cotton, 1,138; vegetables, 334; potatoes, 25; fruit and berries, 45; grapes, 148; meat, 159; milk, 364; eggs, 324m.; wool, 16.7.

**INDUSTRY.** Turkmenistan is rich in minerals, such as ozocerite, oil, coal, sulphur and salt. Industry is being developed, and there are now chemical, tailoring, textile, light, food, agricultural implements, cement and other factories, oil refineries, as well as ore-mining.

In the Kara-Kum Desert deposits of magnesium, minerals and coal have been discovered, as well as some 50 new saltmines. Here a new oil town, Nebit-Dag, has sprung up. On the Kara-Bogaz bay a sulphate industry has been developed. Industrial output in 1986 included 10.4m. items knitwear, 5m. pairs footwear, 33.3m. jars preserves. Electric power output was 12,400m. kwh. in 1986.

In 1986 there were 826,000 industrial and office workers in the national economy.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** Length of motor roads in 1987, 21,000 km (16,700 km hard surface). Motor communication exists between Ashkhabad and Meshed (Iran).

Length of railways, 2,120 km. The line Chardzhou-Kungrad crosses the Chardzhou and Tashauz regions of Turkmenia and runs across Uzbekistan. Another line connects Chardzhou and Urgench. Inland waterways, 1,300 km.

Airlines connect Leningrad and Tashauz, and Ashkhabad and remote areas in the west, north and east.

*Newspapers* (1986). Of 70 newspapers, 56 were in the Turkmen language. Daily circulation of Turkmenian-language newspapers, 823,000; in all languages, 1,053,000.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 1,800 primary and secondary schools with 800,000 pupils, 9 higher educational institutions with 39,500 students, 36 technical colleges with 37,400 students, and 11 music and art schools. The Turkmen Academy of Sciences, founded in 1951, directs the work of 15 learned institutions with a staff of 1,059 scientific staff; there were 58 research institutions in all, with 5,500 research workers, in Jan. 1987.

In Jan. 1987, 30% of children were attending pre-school institutions.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 31,200 medical personnel and 37,000 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

*Istoriya Turkmenskoi SSR*. 2 vols. Ashkhabad, 1957

## UZBEKISTAN

### Ozbekiston Soviet Sotsialistik Respublikasy

**HISTORY.** In Oct. 1917 the Tashkent Soviet assumed authority, and in the following years established its power throughout Turkestan. The semi-independent Khanates of Khiva and Bokhara were first (1920) transformed into People's Republics, then (1923-24) into Soviet Socialist Republics and finally merged in the Uzbek SSR and other republics.

The Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic was formed on 27 Oct. 1924 from lands formerly included in Turkestan. It includes a large part of the Samarkand region, the southern part of the Syr Darya, Western Ferghana, the western plains of Bukhara, the Kara-Kalpak ASSR and the Uzbek regions of Khorezm. In May 1925 Uzbekistan, by the decision of the Congress of Soviets of the USSR, was accepted as one of the constituent republics of the Soviet Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Uzbekistan is bordered on the north by the Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic, on the east by the Kirghiz Soviet Socialist



Republic and the Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic, on the south by Afghanistan and on the west by the Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic. The Uzbeks, who form 68.7% (1979 census) of the population, were the ruling race in Central Asia until the arrival of the Russians during the third quarter of the 19th century. The several native states over which Uzbek dynasties formerly ruled were founded in the 15th century upon the ruins of Tamerlane's empire. The Uzbeks speak Jagatai Turkish, which is related to Osmanli and Azerbaijan Turkish; many are Sunni Moslems. Russians numbered (census 1979) 10.8%, Tadzhiks, 3.9%, Tatars 4.2%.

The area of Uzbekistan is 447,400 sq. km (172,741 sq. miles). The population in Jan. 1987 was 19,026,000 (42% urban). The country comprises the following regions: Andizhan, Bukhara, Dzhizak, Ferghana, Kashkadar, Khorezm, Namangan, Navoi, Samarkand, Surkhan-Darya, Syr-Darya, Tashkent and the Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic of Kara Kalpakia. The capital of the Republic is Tashkent; other large towns are Samarkand, Andizhan, Namangan. There are 124 towns, 97 urban settlements and 155 rural districts.

On 19 Sept. 1963 the Supreme Soviet of the USSR confirmed decisions of the Supreme Soviets of Kazakhstan and Uzbekistan, transferring over 40,000 sq. km from the former to the latter to ensure more efficient use of the 'Hungry Steppe'.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 510 deputies (1 per 15,000 population); 183 are women, 346 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the regional, district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of 105,484 deputies returned, 50,460 (47.8%) were women, 58,448 (55.4%) non-Party and 66,918 (63.4%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*President, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* A. Salimov.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* G. Kh. Kadyrov.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* R. N. Nishanov.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1 m. rubles), 1988, 9,012; 1989 (plan), 10,029.

**AGRICULTURE.** Uzbekistan is a land of intensive farming, based on artificial irrigation. It is the chief cotton-growing area in the USSR and the third in the world. About 3.7 m. hectares of collective and state farmland have irrigation networks, totalling over 150,000 km in length, and all are in full use.

In 1939 the Ferghana Canal (270 km) was built. During 1940, among the irrigation canals completed were: the North Ferghana Canal (165 km), and Andreyev South Ferghana Canal (108 km) and the first section of the Tashkent Canal (63 km). A canal from the Amu-Darya to Bokhara across the Kzyl-Kum and Ust-Urt deserts (180 km) was completed in 1965. A 200-km canal joining the river Zeravshan with the Kashka Darya at the village of Paruz was completed in Aug. 1955; it is part of the Iski-Angara Canal. The first section (93 km) of a canal irrigating the southern 'Hungry Steppe' was opened in 1960; 500,000 hectares of this desert were under cultivation in 1967.

Agriculture flourishes, particularly in the well-watered, warm, rich oases areas, such as the Ferghana valley, Zeravshan, Tashkent and Khorezm, where cotton, fruit, silk and rice are cultivated. In the higher-lying plains grain is grown; the wide desert and semi-desert area of Western Uzbekistan is mainly given to pasture land and the breeding of the Karakul sheep; there is a Karakul institute at Samarkand.

Orchards occupied 206,000 hectares and the vineyards 133,000 hectares in 1985. The Central Asian Branch of the Scientific Research Institute of Viticulture in Tashkent has produced new frost resistant grapes by crossing the wild Amur grape with Central Asian and European types. In 1987 there were 856 collective farms and 1,085 state farms, with 192,800 tractors and 10,500 cotton picking and grain combines. Ploughing, cotton-sowing and cultivation are completely mechanized; cotton picking over 46%.

Uzbekistan provides 65% of the total cotton, 50% of the total rice and 60% of the

total lucerne grown in the USSR. The area under cultivation was 33.1m. hectares in Nov. 1986.

Livestock on 1 Jan. 1986: 4.1m. cattle, 9.3m. sheep and goats and 700,000 pigs.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 1,248; cotton, 4,989; potatoes, 309; vegetables, 2,491; fruit and berries, 647; grapes, 688; meat, 384; milk, 2,476; eggs, 2,012m.; wool, 21.1.

Afforestation over an area of 50,000 hectares has been carried out to protect the Bokhara and Karakul oases from the advancing Kzyl-Kum sands and to stop the sand-drifts in a number of districts of Central Ferghana.

**INDUSTRY.** Of its mineral resources, in addition to oil and coal, copper and building materials and ozocerite deposits are now also exploited. New very rich coal deposits were discovered in 1944 and 1947 near Tashkent.

There are over 1,600 factories and mills. They include a factory of agricultural machinery (in Tashkent), a cement factory, a sulphur-mine, an oxygen factory, a paper-mill, a leather factory, textile-mills, clothing factories, iron and steel works, the Chirchik electro-chemical plant, a superphosphate plant in Kokand and oil refineries, coalmines, etc. Output in 1986 included 26,600 tractors, 9,000 cotton harvesting machines, 25,600 tonnes of paper, 6.2m. cu. metres of ferroconcrete, 1.7m. tonnes of cotton cloth, 76.4m. items of knitwear, 36.3m. pairs of footwear, 1,062m. jars of preserves. Gold is being worked at Muruntau, Chadak and Kochbulak.

The Tashkent power station (2m. kw.) was completed in 1971. Power output in 1986 was 52,200m. kwh. (481m. kwh. in 1940). Two natural-gas pipelines (Djailak-Tashkent, Ferghana-Kokand) and a third from Bokhara to the Urals are operating. Natural gas output (1976) was 36,100m. cu. metres.

In 1986 there were 4,912,000 industrial and office workers in the national economy.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** The total length of railway in 1987 was 3,480 km. Branches lead to Karshe-Kitab, Kerki-Termez, Jalal-Abad, Namangan, Andijan and other centres. In 1947-55 a new line was built from Chardzhou to Kungrad.

The Great Uzbek Highway was completed in April 1941. Total length of motor roads in 1987 was 92,000 km (hard surface, 69,100 km). Inland waterways, 1,100 km.

An airline, serving all of Central Asia, is most developed in Uzbekistan.

*Newspapers* (1986). There were 197 newspapers in the Uzbek language out of a total of 288. Daily circulation of Uzbek-language newspapers, 4.3m.; in all languages, 5.8m.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986-87 there were 8,900 elementary and secondary schools with 4.3m. pupils, 42 higher educational establishments with 291,900 students and 249 technical colleges with 287,800 students. Uzbekistan has an Academy of Sciences, founded in 1943, with 37 institutions and 4,106 academic staff; there were 188 research institutes with a scientific staff of 38,000 in Jan. 1987. There are universities and medical schools in Tashkent and Samarkand. In Jan. 1987, 34% of children were attending pre-school institutions.

The Uzbek Arabic script was in 1929 replaced by the Latin alphabet which in 1940 was superseded by one based on the Cyrillic alphabet.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 187,500 medical personnel and 229,400 hospital beds.

### Further Reading

*Istoriya Uzbekskoi SSR*. 4 vols. Tashkent, 1967-68

Waterson, N., (ed.) *Uzbek-English Dictionary*. London, 1980

## KARAKALPAK AUTONOMOUS SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC

Area, 164,900 sq. km (63,920 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 1,139,000. Capital, Nukus (152,000). The Karakalpaks are first mentioned in written records in the 16th century as tributary to Bokhara, and later to the Kazakh Khanate. In the second half of the 19th century, as a result of the Russian conquest of Central Asia, they came under Russian rule. On 11 May 1925 the territory was constituted within the then Kazakh Autonomous Republic (of the Russian Federation) as an Autonomous Region. On 20 March 1932 it became an Autonomous Republic within the Russian Federation, and on 5 Dec. 1936 it became part of the Uzbek SSR. Census (1979) Karakalpaks were 31.1% of population, Uzbeks, 31.5% and Kazakhs, 26.9%.

185 deputies were elected to its Supreme Soviet on 24 Feb. 1985, of whom 69 were women and 118 Communists.

Its manufactures are in the field of light industry—bricks, leather goods, furniture, canning, wine. In Jan. 1987 cattle numbered 348,600 and sheep and goats, 523,900. There were 38 collective and 124 state farms. The total cultivated area in 1985 was 350,400 hectares.

In 1986–87 there were 286,800 pupils at schools, 21,400 at technical colleges, and 6,200 at Nukus University. There is a branch of the Uzbek Academy of Sciences with 190 scientific staff.

There were 2,600 doctors and 12,800 hospital beds.

## TADZHIKISTAN

### Respublikai Sovieth Sotsialistii Tojikiston

**HISTORY.** The Tadzhik Soviet Socialist Republic was formed from those regions of Bokhara and Turkestan where the population consisted mainly of Tadzhiks. It was admitted as a constituent republic of the Soviet Union on 5 Dec. 1929.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tadzhikistan is situated between 39° 40' and 36° 40' N. lat. and 67° 20' and 75° E. long., north of the Oxus (Amu-Darya). On the west and north it is bordered by Uzbekistan and by the Kirghiz Soviet Socialist Republic; on the east by Chinese Turkestan and on the south by Afghánistán. It includes three regions (Leninabad, Kurgan-Tyube and Kulyab) and 43 rural districts, 18 towns and 49 urban settlements, together with the Gorno-Badakhshan Autonomous Region. Its highest mountains are Communism Peak (7,495 metres) and Lenin Peak (7,127 metres). Even the lowest valleys in the Pamirs are not below 3,500 metres above sea-level. The huge mountain glaciers are the source of many rapid rivers—the tributaries of the Amu-Darya, which flows from east to west along the southern border of Tadzhikistan. About 58.8% of the population are Tadzhiks. They speak an Iranian dialect, little different from Persian, and they are considered to be the descendants of the original Aryan population of Turkestan. Unlike the Persians, the Tadzhiks are mostly Sunnis. Of the rest, 22.9% are Uzbeks living in the north-west of the republic. Russians and Ukrainians number 10.4% (1979 census).

The area of the territory is 143,100 sq. km (55,240 sq. miles). Population (Jan. 1987), 4,807,000. The capital is Dushanbe. Other large towns are Leninabad (153,000), Kurgan-Tyube, Kulyab.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 350 deputies (1 per 5,000 population); 126 are women and 238 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the district, urban and rural Soviets and the regional Soviet of



Gorno-Badakhshan (21 June 1987), out of 28,801 deputies returned 14,116 (49%) were women, 16,440 (57.1%) non-Party and 20,398 (70.8%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* G. Pallaev.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* I. Kh. Khacev.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* K. M. Makhkamov.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1 m. rubles), 1988, 2,109; 1989 (plan), 2,375.

**AGRICULTURE.** The occupations of the population are mainly farming, horticulture and cattle breeding. Area under cultivation in Nov. 1986 was 9.6m. hectares. There are 43,000 km of irrigation canals: the irrigation networks cover about 634,000 hectares of land.

Tadzhikistan grows many varieties of fruit, including apricots, figs, olives, pomegranates, a local variety of lemons and oranges, and in the south sugar-cane has been grown. Even on the highest mountain plateaux of the Pamirs, 'the roof of the world', the biological station of Tadzhikistan (3,860 metres above sea-level) has succeeded in raising crops of 60 varieties of barley, 10 varieties of oats, 4 of wheat, as well as vegetables. Eucalyptus and geranium are grown for the perfumery industry. Jute, rice and millet are also grown.

Tadzhikistan contains rich pasture lands, and cattle breeding is a very important branch of its agriculture. Livestock on 1 Jan. 1987: 1.4m. cattle, 3.2m. sheep and goats and 183,600 pigs.

The Gissar sheep is famous in the south for its meat and fat; the Karakul sheep is widely bred for its wool.

There were 157 collective farms (all with electric power) and 299 state farms in 1987, with 35,100 tractors and 1,600 cotton and grain combine harvesters.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 246; cotton, 922; potatoes, 199; vegetables, 505; fruit and berries, 241; grapes, 197; meat, 108; milk, 570; eggs, 536m.; wool, 5.1.

**INDUSTRY.** The original small-scale handicraft industries have been replaced by big industrial enterprises, including mining, engineering, food, textile, clothing and silk factories.

There are rich deposits of brown coal, lead, zinc and oil (in the north of the republic), rare elements, such as uranium, radium, arsenic and bismuth. Asbestos, mica, corundum and emery, lapis lazuli, potassium salts, sulphur and other minerals have been found in other parts of the republic.

Industrial output in 1986 included 1,084,000 cu. metres ferroconcrete, 317m. bricks, 13.2m. items knitwear, 9.8m. pairs footwear, 336m. jars of preserves.

There are 80 big electrical stations. The hydro-electric Varzob station began to operate in 1954, that at Kairak-Kum on the Syr Darya River was completed in 1957 and 2 more at Murgab in 1964. Output in 1986 was 13,600m. kwh. (in 1940, 62m. kwh.).

Construction of an electro-chemical combine, the largest in the USSR, has begun in the Yavan steppe in south Tadzhikistan, and the 3.2m. kw. power station in the upper reaches of the Vakhsh River was near completion in 1979.

In 1986 there were 1,120,000 industrial and office workers in the national economy.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In Jan. 1987 there were 19,000 km of motor roads. Of these, 15,800 km are hard surface, including the Osh-Khorog (700 km), Yasui-Bazar-Charm (107 km) and Dushanbe-Khorog in the Pamirs (557 km) roads.

**Railways.** A railway line between Termez and Dushanbe (258 km) connects the republic with the railway system of the USSR. The mountainous nature of the republic makes ordinary railway construction difficult; accordingly 345 km of narrow gauge railways have been constructed (Kurgan-Tyube-Piandzh and

Dushanbe–Kurgan–Tyube, connecting Dushanbe with the cotton-growing Vakhsh valley are particularly important). Length of railways, 1987, 470 km.

**Aviation.** Dushanbe is connected by air with Moscow, Tashkent, Baku and the regional and district centres of the republic.

**Shipping.** A steamship line on the Amu-Darya runs between Termez, Sarava and Jilikulam on the river Vakhsh (200 km).

**Newspapers** (1986). There were 73 newspapers, 61 in Tadzhik. Daily circulation of Tadzhik-language newspapers, 1,114,000; in all languages, 1,474,000.

**EDUCATION.** In 1986–87 there were 3,100 primary and secondary schools with 1.1m. pupils, 10 higher educational institutions with 55,300 students and 40 technical colleges with 41,300 students; the Tadzhik state university had 12,467 students. In Jan. 1987, 15% of children were attending pre-school institutions. In 1951 an Academy of Sciences was established; it has 16 institutions, the scientific staff of which numbers 1,492; there are 61 research institutions in all, with 8,600 scientific personnel in Jan. 1987. The Pamir research station is the highest altitude meteorological observatory in the world.

In 1940 a new alphabet based on Cyrillic was introduced.

**HEALTH.** There are 325 hospitals as well as maternity homes, clinics and special institutes to combat tropical diseases. There were 35,100 medical personnel in 1986 and 50,100 hospital beds.

## GORNO-BADAKHSHAN AUTONOMOUS REGION

Comprising the Pamir massif along the borders of Afghánistán and China, the region was set up on 2 Jan. 1925. Area, 63,700 sq. km (24,590 sq. miles); population (Jan. 1987), 151,000 (83% Tadjiks, 11% Kirghiz). Capital, Khorog (14,800). The inhabitants are predominantly Ismaili Moslems.

Mining industries are developed (gold, rock-crystal, mica, coal, salt). Wheat, fruit and fodder crops are grown and cattle and sheep are bred in the western parts. In 1987 there were 74,700 cattle, 343,300 sheep and goats. Total area under cultivation, 18,400 hectares.

In 1986 3,494 pupils completed secondary education.

### Further Reading

Academy of Science of Tadzhikistan, *Istoriya Tadzhikskogo Naroda*. 3 vols. Moscow, 1963–65

Luknitsky, P., *Soviet Tajikistan* [In English], Moscow, 1954

## KIRGHIZIA

### Kyrgyz Sovietik Sotsialistik Respublikasy

**HISTORY.** After the establishment of the Soviet regime in Russia, Kirghizia became part of Soviet Turkestan, which itself became an Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic within the RSFSR in April 1921. In 1924, when Central Asia was reorganized territorially on a national basis, Kirghizia was separated from Turkestan and formed into an autonomous region within the RSFSR. On 1 Feb. 1926 the Government of the RSFSR transformed Kirghizia into an Autonomous Soviet Socialist Republic within the RSFSR, and finally in Dec. 1936 Kirghizia was proclaimed one of the constituent Soviet Socialist Republics of the USSR.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The territory of Kirghizia covers 198,500 sq. km (76,460 sq. miles), and its population in Jan. 1987 was 4,143,000. The republic comprises 3 regions: Issyk-Kul, Naryn and Osh. There are 18 towns, 31 urban settlements and 40 rural districts. Its capital is Frunze (formerly Pishpek). Other large towns are Osh (188,000), Przhevalsk (56,000), Kyzyl-Kiya, Tokmak.

Kirghizia is situated on the Tien-Shan mountains and bordered on the east by China, on the west by Kazakhstan and Uzbekistan, on the north by Kazakhstan and in the south by Tadzhikistan. The Kirghizians are of Turkic origin and form 47.9% (1979 census) of the population; the rest are Russians (25.9%), Ukrainians (3.1%), Uzbeks (12.1%) and Tatars (2%).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Supreme Soviet, elected in 1985, consists of 350 deputies (1 per 5,000 population); 127 are women, 235 Communists. A new Constitution was adopted in April 1978.

At elections to the regional, district, urban and rural Soviets (21 June 1987), of the 28,063 deputies returned, 13,652 (48.6%) were women, 15,817 (56.4%) non-Party and 18,663 (66.5%) industrial workers and collective farmers.

*Chairman, Presidium of the Supreme Soviet:* T. Akmatov.

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* A. D. Dzhumagulov.

*First Secretary, Communist Party:* A. M. Masaliev.

**FINANCE.** Budget estimates (in 1m. rubles), 1988, 2,388; 1989 (plan), 2,692.

**AGRICULTURE.** Kirghizia is famed for its livestock breeding. On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 1.1m. cattle, 400,000 pigs, 10.2m. sheep and goats. Yaks are bred as meat and dairy cattle, and graze on high altitudes unsuitable for other cattle. Crossed with domestic cattle, hybrids are produced much heavier than ordinary Kirghiz cattle and giving twice the yield of milk. The Kirghizian horse is famed for its endurance, but it is of small stature; it has in recent years been crossed with Don, Arab and other breeds.

On 1 Jan. 1986 there were 176 collective and 290 state farms. Area under cultivation (Nov. 1986), 16.1m. hectares. There were 29,200 tractors and 4,900 grain combine harvesters in 1987; nearly all collective and state farms received electric power.

Kirghizia raises wheat sufficient for its own use and other grains and fodder, particularly lucerne; also sugar-beet, hemp, kenaf, kendyr, tobacco, medicinal plants and rice. Sericulture, fruit, grapes and vegetables and bee-keeping are major branches of Kirghiz agriculture. Agriculture is highly mechanized; nearly all the area under crops is worked by tractors. In 1983 irrigation networks in collective and state farms covered 974,000 hectares; practically all were in use. A canal in the western Tien-Shan ranges and a reservoir in the Urto-Tokoi mountains are being constructed.

The health resorts of Jety-Oguz (7,200 ft) and Jalal-Abad are famous for their mild alpine climate and mineral springs.

Output of main agricultural products (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Grain, 1,633; cotton, 68; potatoes, 329; vegetables, 512; fruit and berries, 189; grapes, 60; meat, 186; milk, 888; eggs, 558m.; wool, 35.8.

**INDUSTRY.** Kirghizia contains over 500 large modern industrial enterprises including sugar refineries, tanneries, cotton and wool-cleansing works, flour-mills, a tobacco factory, food, timber, textile, engineering, metallurgical, oil and mining enterprises.

Production in 1986 included 389m. light bulbs, 42,700 centrifugal pumps, 18.5m. items knitwear, 225,000 washing machines, 951,600 cu. metres ferro-concrete, 10.8m. pairs footwear, 142.6m. jars preserves, 25.2m. bottles of mineral water.

Hydro-electric power stations are being built in the Central Tien-Shans and the cotton-growing districts in the Osh Region, the Chui valley and on the shore of Lake Issyk-Kul. Power output (1986) was 11,400m. kwh.



There were, in 1986, 1,261,000 industrial and office workers in the national economy.

**COMMUNICATIONS.** In the north a railway runs from Lugovaya through Frunze to Rybachi on Lake Issyk-Kul. Towns in the southern valleys are linked by short lines with the Ursat'yevskaya-Andizhan railway in Uzbekistan. Total length of railway (Jan. 1987) is 370 km. Most of the traffic is by road; there were 39,100 km of motor roads (21,700 hard surface) in 1987. A road tunnel through the Tien-Shan mountains at an altitude of 9,600 ft, connecting Frunze and Osh, is being constructed. Inland waterways, 600 km. Airlines link Frunze with Moscow and Tashkent.

**Newspapers** (1986). Of 113 newspapers with a daily 1.46m. circulation, 61 with 862,000 circulation are in the Kirghiz language.

**EDUCATION.** Kirghizia had 1,700 primary and secondary schools with 900,000 pupils in 1986-87; 176,000 children were attending pre-school institutions. There were also 10 higher educational institutions with 58,500 students, 46 technical and teachers' training colleges with 50,800 students, as well as music and art schools. The Kirghizian Academy of Sciences was established in 1954. In 1987 there were 18 research institutes, with 1,569 scientific staff, operating under its auspices; altogether there were 9,800 scientific staff in 1987. A university was opened in 1951. In Sept. 1940 a new alphabet, based on Cyrillic, was introduced.

**HEALTH.** In 1986 there were 40,600 medical personnel and 49,100 hospital beds.

#### Further Reading

*Istoriya Kirgizskoi SSR.* 5 vols. Frunze, 1984 ff.  
Ryazantsev, S. N., *Kirghizia*. Moscow, 1951

# UNITED ARAB EMIRATES

*Federal Capital:* Abu Dhabi  
*Population:* 1.6m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$14,410 (1986)

**HISTORY.** From Sha'am, 35 miles south-west of Ras Musam dam, for nearly 400 miles to Khor al Odeid at the south-eastern end of the peninsula of Qatar, the coast, formerly known as the Trucial Coast, of the Gulf (together with 50 miles of the coast of the Gulf of Oman) belongs to the rulers of the 7 Trucial States. In 1820 these rulers signed a treaty prescribing peace with the British Government. This treaty was followed by further agreements providing for the suppression of the slave trade and by a series of other engagements, of which the most important are the Perpetual Maritime Truce (May 1853) and the Exclusive Agreement (March 1892). Under the latter, the sheikhs, on behalf of themselves, their heirs and successors, undertook that they would on no account enter into any agreement or correspondence with any power other than the British Government, receive foreign agents, cede, sell or give for occupation any part of their territory save to the British Government.

British forces withdrew from the Gulf at the end of 1971 and the treaties whereby Britain had been responsible for the defence and foreign relations of the Trucial States were terminated, being replaced on 2 Dec. 1971 by a treaty of friendship between Britain and the United Arab Emirates. The United Arab Emirates (formed 2 Dec. 1971) consists of the former Trucial States: Abu Dhabi, Dubai, Sharjah, Ajman, Umm al Qaiwain, Ras al Khaimah (joined in Feb. 1972) and Fujairah. The small state of Kalba was merged with Sharjah in 1952.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Emirates are bounded north by the Gulf and Oman, east by the Gulf of Oman and Oman, south and west by Saudi Arabia, north-west by Qatar. The area of these states is approximately 32,300 sq. miles (83,657 sq. km). The total population at census (1985), 1,622,393. Estimate (1988) 1.6m. In 1980, 69% were male and 72% lived in urban areas. About one-tenth are nomads.

Population of the 7 Emirates, 1985 census: Abu Dhabi, 670,125; Ajman, 64,318; Dubai, 419,104; Fujairah, 54,425; Ras al-Khaimah, 116,470; Sharjah, 268,722; Umm al Qaiwain, 29,229.

The chief cities (1980 census) are Dubai (265,702), Abu Dhabi, the provisional federal capital (242,975), Sharjah (125,149) and Ras al-Khaimah (42,000).

**CLIMATE.** The country experiences desert conditions, with rainfall both limited and erratic. The period May to Nov. is generally rainless, while the wettest months are Feb. and March. Temperatures are very high in the summer months. Dubai. Jan. 74°F (23.4°C), July 108°F (42.3°C). Annual rainfall 2.4" (60 mm). Sharjah. Jan. 64°F (17.8°C), July 91°F (32°C). Annual rainfall 4.2" (105 mm).

**GOVERNMENT.** The Emirates is a federation, headed by a Supreme Council which is composed of the 7 rulers and which in turn appoints a Council of Ministers. The Council of Ministers drafts legislation and a federal budget; its proposals are submitted to a federal National Council of 40 elected members which may propose amendments but has no executive power.

*President:* HH Sheikh Zayed bin Sultan al Nahyan, Ruler of Abu Dhabi.

Members of the Supreme Council of Rulers:

HH Sheikh Rashid bin Said al-Maktoum, Vice-President and Ruler of Dubai.

HH Sheikh Sultan bin Mohammed al-Qasimi, Ruler of Sharjah.

HH Sheikh Saqr bin Mohammed al-Qasimi, Ruler of Ras al-Khaimah.

HH Sheikh Rashid bin Ahmed al-Mualla, Ruler of Umm al Qaiwain.

HH Sheikh Hamad bin Mohammed al Sharqi, Ruler of Fujairah.

HH Sheikh Humaid bin Rashid al-Nuaimi, Ruler of Ajman.

The Council of Ministers in 1988 was:

*Prime Minister:* H.H. Sheikh Rashid bin Said al-Maktoum.

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Sheikh Maktoum bin Rashid al-Maktoum; Sheikh Hamdan bin Mohammed al-Nahyan.

*Interior:* Sheikh Mubarak bin Mohammed al-Nahyan. *Finance and Industry:* Sheikh Hamdan bin Rashid al-Maktoum. *Defence:* Sheikh Mohammed bin Rashid al-Maktoum. *Economy and Trade:* Saif al-Jarwan. *Information and Culture:* Sheikh Ahmed bin Hamed. *Communications:* Mohammed Saeed al-Mualla. *Public Works and Housing:* Mohammed Khalifa al-Kindi. *Education and Youth:* Faraj al-Mazroui. *Petroleum and Mineral Resources:* Dr Mana Said al-Oteiba. *Electricity and Water:* Hamaid Nasser al-Owais. *Justice:* Abdullah Hamid al-Mazroui. *Health:* Hamad al-Madfa. *Labour and Social Affairs:* Khalfan Mohammed al-Roumi. *Planning:* Sheikh Humaid al-Mualla. *Agriculture and Fisheries:* Saeed al-Raghibani. *Minister of State for Internal Affairs:* Hamouda bin Ali Dhahiri. *Minister of State for Foreign Affairs:* Rashid Abdulla Al Nuaimi. *Minister of State for Cabinet Affairs:* Said al-Ghaith. *Minister of State for Supreme Council Affairs:* Sheikh Abdel Aziz al-Qasimi. *Islamic Affairs and AWQAF:* Sheikh Mohammed al-Khazraji. *Minister of State for Finance and Industry:* Ahmad Hamid al-Tayer. *Without Portfolio:* Sheikh Ahmad bin Sultan al-Qasimi.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of green, white, black, with a vertical red strip in the hoist.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 Royal Guard, 1 armoured, 1 mechanized infantry, 1 infantry, 1 artillery and 1 air defence brigades. Equipment includes 100 AMX-30 and 36 Lion OF-40 Mk 2 main battle tanks. The strength was (1989) 40,000.

**Navy.** The naval flotilla includes 6 new German-built missile armed fast attack craft, 6 British-built patrol craft, 1 maintenance craft and 2 tenders. Personnel in 1989 numbered 1,500 officers and ratings. The Coast Guard flotilla comprises 11 armed coastal patrol craft, 20 armed small patrol cutters, 26 light launches, 1 amphibious craft, 2 diving tenders, 1 water carrier and 5 tugs.

**Air Force.** Formation of an air wing in Abu Dhabi, to support land forces, began in 1968 with the purchase of some light STOL transports and helicopters. Expansion has been rapid. Current equipment includes 23 Mirage 5 supersonic fighter-bombers, 3 Mirage 5R tactical reconnaissance aircraft and 3 Mirage 5D 2-seat trainers (to be replaced by Mirage 2000s, although delivery of the first 18 has been delayed indefinitely because of a contract dispute); 4 C-130 Hercules and 5 Buffalo turboprop transports; 4 CASA C-212 Aviocar ECM/elint aircraft; about 40 Gazelle, Alouette III, Puma, Super Puma and Ecureuil helicopters; 23 PC-7 Turbo-Trainers and 15 Hawk light attack/trainers. Initial personnel were mostly British but considerable assistance is now being received from Arab countries and from Pakistan. The air wing became the Air Force of Abu Dhabi in 1972, in which year 3 JetRanger helicopters were transferred to the air wing of the Union Defence Force, since combined with the Dubai Police Air Wing to form a single component of the United Emirates Air Force. Current equipment of the Dubai Air Wing of the UAEF, bought mainly in Italy, comprises 3 Aermacchi MB 326K jet light attack aircraft, 1 Aeritalia G222 twin-turboprop transport, 1 piston-engined SF.260W armed basic trainer, 5 SF.260TP turboprop trainers, and 2 MB 326L, 5 MB 339 and 8 Hawk jet trainers, 6 Bell 205A-1, 3 Bell 212, 4 Bell 214 and 6 JetRanger helicopters and 1 Cessna 182 liaison aircraft, plus 2 L-100-30 Hercules transports and a variety of other types for VIP use. Sharjah formed a small aviation force, the Amiri Guard Air Wing, at the end of 1984. The service is essentially an internal security and transport force operating 1 Short 330 and 1 Skyvan for transport duties and 3 JetRanger helicopters. Personnel (1989) 1,500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The UAE is a member of UN, GCC and of the Arab League.



## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue is principally derived from oil-concession payments. The federal budget (1988) was expenditure DH 14,250m. and revenue 12,400m.

**Currency.** The UAE issued its own currency in 1972 based on the *dirham*. 1 UAE *dirham* = 100 *fil*s. There are notes of 5, 10, 50, 100 and 500 *dirham* and coins of 1 and 5 *dirham* and 1, 5, 10, 25 and 50 *fil*s. Rate of exchange, March 1989: £1 = 6.33 *dirham*; US\$1 = 3.68 *dirham*.

**Banking.** The UAE Central Bank was established in 1980. In 1987 there were 53 commercial banks, 19 of which were local and 34 foreign-owned with over 284 branches.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 16,440m. kwh. Supply in Abu Dhabi 230 volts; Dubai 220 volts and in the remaining Emirates 240 volts; all 50 Hz.

**Oil.** Total production of crude oil (1985) 442.3m. bbls. Reserves (1988) 200,000m. bbls.

*Abu Dhabi.* Ownership in 1976 was as follows: *ADPC*, 60% Government; 9.5% BP; 9.5% Shell; 9.5% CFP; 4.75% Mobil; 2% Partex. *ADMA*, 60% Government; 26.7% BP/Japan Oil Development Co.; 13.3% CFP. A Japanese company, Abu Dhabi Oil Co. (ADOCO) began production from its Mubarratz field in 1973. There are other companies which have concessions in the State: Japan's Middle East Oil; a US consortium led by Pan Ocean Oil and Sunningdale Oils of Canada. A State Petroleum Co., the Abu Dhabi National Oil Co. (ADNOC), was formed in 1971 and began to set up its own tanker fleet known as the Abu Dhabi National Tankers Co. (ADNATCO). Proven reserves (1988) 31,000m. bbls. Oil production, 1988, 55.6m. tonnes.

*Dubai.* In July 1975 Dubai decided to take full control of all foreign oil and gas operations in the State. The companies were to remain however. A Dubai producing group was set up to comprise the foreign interests—US and continental companies. Dubai Petroleum Co. (DPC—a subsidiary of Continental Oil) has a 30% interest in this group; the other members are Dubai Marine Areas (*Compagnie Française des Pétroles*) with 50%; Deutsche Texaco with 10%; Dubai Sun Oil 5%; and Delfzee Dubai Petroleum (Wintershall) 5%. Oil production (1988) 17m. tonnes.

*Sharjah.* In Sharjah the concession is given to Crescent Oil, its shareholders are: Ashland Oil, Skelly Oil, Kerr-McGee, Cities Services and Juniper. Other oil concessions have recently been given to the Crystal Oil Co. of USA and the Reserves Oil and Gas Co. Oil production, 1988, 3.15m. tonnes.

*Ajman.* An oil concession was awarded to United Refining in 1974.

*Umm al Qawain.* The concession here was given to US Occidental Petroleum; another was awarded to a consortium led by the US company United Refinery.

*Ras al-Khaimah.* The Dutch oil firm Vitol took over Union's concession in 1973. Shell began prospecting in 1969 but pulled out in 1971. A concession in the same area was awarded to Peninsula Petroleum, a subsidiary of the US California Time Group, in 1973.

**Gas.** Abu Dhabi has reserves of natural gas, nationalized in 1976. The Abu Dhabi Gas Liquefaction Plant at Das Island (51% ADNOC) has a capacity of 2m. tons LNG, 1m. tons LPG, 220,000 tons of light distillate and 230,000 tons of pelletized sulphur. Gas exports (1986) DH4,500m.

**Water.** Production of drinking water (1986) 11,600m. gallons. In 1986 the solar-powered Umm al Nar station produced 15,000 gallons a day. The first phase of the biggest solar-operated water production plant in the Gulf region (with an estimated daily capacity of 21m. gallons and 265 mw of electricity) was completed at Al Taweela in 1987, the second phase (40m. gallons and 400 mw) in 1990.

**Agriculture.** The fertile Buraimi Oasis, known as Al Ain, is largely in Abu Dhabi territory. By 1988, 2,620 farms had been set up on 12,565 hectares of land reclaimed from sand dunes. Owing to lack of water and good soil there is little agriculture in the rest of UAE. Cultivated area (1985) 320,000 hectares. Production (1987): Red meat, 14,000 tonnes; poultry, 7,000 tonnes; dates, 64,000 tonnes; vegetables, 327; wheat, 2.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 48,000; camels, 121,000; sheep, 400,000; goats, 825,000.

**Fisheries.** Sharjah exports shrimps and prawns; a fishmeal plant is operating in Ras al-Khaimah and plants are planned for Ajman and Sharjah. Catch (1984) 74,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** A fertilizer plant at Ruwais in Abu Dhabi, opened in 1984, produced 343,000 tonnes of ammonia and 353,000 tonnes of urea in 1985. Umm al-Nar has a plant producing salt, hydrochloric acid, chlorine, caustic soda and distilled water.

There were about 190 industrial and commercial companies in the Jebel Ali industrial zone in Dubai by 1988, including an aluminium smelter and power and desalination plant, opened in 1979, and a lubricants plant with an annual capacity of 30,000 tonnes, opened in 1988. Production of aluminium in 1986, 155,605 tonnes, nearly all of which was exported.

There were 8 cement plants in 1987 (3 of them in Ras al-Khaimah), with a total annual capacity of 8m. tonnes. The home market for cement amounted to 25% of the total installed capacity of 6m. tonnes in 1986.

The 2 main steel rolling mills are in Dubai and Sharjah. Plastics are produced at factories in Dubai and Sharjah and mechanical dies and tools, sportswear and equipment, clothing and knitwear in Dubai. Fujairah has rockwool and ceramics factories. Ship repairs and steel fabrication are carried on in Ajman. There is a petrochemical complex on Das Island in Abu Dhabi.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1987 for UAE were DH26,000m. Exports and re-exports (non-oil) totalled DH12,000m. Oil exports accounted for DH29,000m.

Total trade between the UAE (excluding Abu Dhabi) and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	60,550	71,688	59,428	81,218	58,651
Exports and re-exports from UK	296,948	374,616	413,651	329,008	334,506

Total trade between Abu Dhabi and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	21,981	24,866	14,584	13,771	25,566
Exports and re-exports from UK	215,947	246,732	168,111	149,989	128,838

**Tourism.** In 1987 there were 85 hotels.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 2,200 km of roads and 230,000 vehicles.

**Aviation.** In 1987 there were 4 international airports. A number of cargo airlines also fly regularly to the country's major airports. An air-taxi service, Emirates Air Services, flying between Abu Dhabi and Dubai, began in June 1976. Dubai set up the airline, Emirates, in 1985.

**Shipping.** In 1987 there were 7 commercial sea ports. Jebel Ali is the largest. Abu Dhabi has dry docks and there are smaller ports at Sharjah, Ras al-Khaimah and Fujairah. Jebel Ali is a port and industrial estate 35 km south-west of Dubai city and had (1982) 66 berths.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 319,246 telephones, of which 113,629 were in Abu Dhabi and 98,010 in Dubai. In Sharjah a new telephone company has been formed and the other Northern States are now linked by telephone. The new

Cable and Wireless Station at Jebel Ali in the State of Dubai links the system with the international communication network.

Television stations are at Abu Dhabi and Dubai, with extension of the service well advanced to the rest of the Emirates. Stations for The Voice of the Gulf Co-operation Council, a 6-state radio station, began broadcasting from Abu Dhabi in Aug. 1985. Estimated radios (1984) 190,000 and television sets over 110,000.

**Newspapers** (1987). There are a number of daily and weekly publications mostly in Arabic, but some in English, notably *The Emirates News* of Abu Dhabi, *The Gulf News*, a daily, published in Dubai and the *Khaleej Times* (daily), also published in Dubai.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** UAE subjects and citizens of all Arab and Moslem states are subject to the jurisdiction of the local courts. In the local courts the rules of Islamic law prevail. A new code of law is being produced for Abu Dhabi. In Dubai there is a court run by a *qadi*, while in some of the other States all legal cases are referred immediately to the Ruler or a member of his family, who will refer to a *qadi* only if he cannot settle the matter himself. In Abu Dhabi a professional Jordanian judge presides over the Ruler's Court.

**Religion.** Nearly all the inhabitants are Moslem of the Sunni, and a small minority of the Shi'ite sects.

**Education** In 1986-87 there were 122,543 pupils in primary schools, 36,810 in preparatory schools and 20,753 in secondary schools. There were 1,712 students in religious schools, 597 in technical schools and (1987-88) 2,075 at university.

**Health.** In 1984 there were 28 hospitals (4,853 beds) and 119 clinics. There were 1,840 physicians.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the UAE in Great Britain (30 Prince's Gate, London, SW7 1PT)  
*Ambassador:* Dr Khalifa Mohamed Sulaiman (accredited 18 Nov. 1988).

Of Great Britain in the UAE  
*Ambassador:* M. L. Tait, CMG, LVO (at the British Embassy, Abu Dhabi).

Of the UAE in the USA (600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)  
*Ambassador:* Ahmed S. Al-Mokarrab.

Of the USA in the UAE (Al-Sudan St., Abu Dhabi)  
*Ambassador:* David Lyle Mack.

Of the UAE to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Mohammed Hussain Al-Shaali.

## Further Reading

- Middle East Annual Review*. London  
Clements, F. A., *United Arab Emirates*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983  
Heard-Bey, F., *From Trucial States to United Arab Emirates*. London, 1982  
Mallakh, R. S., *The Economic Development of the United Arab Emirates*. London, 1981  
Mostyn, T., *UAE-A MEED Practical Guide*, 2nd ed. London, 1986  
Soffan, L. U., *Women of the United Arab Emirates*. London, 1980



# UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND

*Capital:* London  
*Population:* 55.78m. (1981)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$8,920 (1986)

'Great Britain' is a geographical term describing the main island of the British Isles which comprises England, Scotland and Wales (so called to distinguish it from 'Little Britain' or Brittany). By the Act of Union, 1801, Great Britain and Ireland formed a legislative union as the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. Since the separation of Great Britain and Ireland in 1921 Northern Ireland remained within the Union which is now the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. The United Kingdom does not include the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man which are direct dependencies of the Crown with their own legislative and taxation systems.

## GREAT BRITAIN

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area (in sq. km) and population (present on census night) at the census taken 5 April 1981:

<i>Divisions</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Total</i>
England	130,357	46,362,836
Wales	20,761	2,791,851
Scotland	78,762	5,130,735
	<hr/> 229,880	<hr/> 54,285,422

Population at the 4 previous decennial censuses:

<i>Divisions</i>	<i>1931</i>	<i>1951</i>	<i>1961</i>	<i>1971</i>
England <sup>1</sup>	37,359,045	41,159,213	43,460,525	46,019,000
Wales	2,158,374	2,598,675	2,644,023	2,731,000
Scotland	4,842,980	5,096,415	5,178,490	5,228,963
Army, Navy and Merchant Seamen abroad	434,532	—	—	—
Total	<hr/> 44,794,931	<hr/> 48,854,303	<hr/> 51,283,038	<hr/> 53,978,963

<sup>1</sup> Areas now recognised as part of Gwent, Wales, formed the English county of Monmouthshire until 1974.

Population (usually resident) at the census of 1981:

<i>Divisions</i>	<i>Males</i>	<i>Females</i>	<i>Total</i>
England	22,288,395	23,483,561	45,771,956
Wales	1,336,323	1,413,317	2,749,640
Scotland	2,428,472	2,606,843	5,035,315
Great Britain	<hr/> 26,053,190	<hr/> 27,503,721	<hr/> 53,556,911

In 1981 in Wales 21,283 persons 3 years of age and upwards were able to speak Welsh only, and 482,276 able to speak Welsh and English (preliminary figures); these totals represent 19% of the total population. In Scotland in 1981, 79,307 of the usually resident population could speak Gaelic (1.3%); 3,113 could read or write Gaelic, but could not speak it.

At the census of 1981, in England and Wales, there were 17,706,492 private households; in Great Britain, 19,500,113.

The age distribution in 1981 of the 'usually resident' population of England and Wales and Scotland was as follows (in 1,000):

<i>Age-group</i>	<i>England and Wales</i>	<i>Scotland</i>	<i>Great Britain</i>
Under 5	2,910	308	3,219
5 and under 10	3,207	344	3,551
10 " 15	3,846	425	4,271
15 " 20	4,020	447	4,467
20 " 25	3,564	394	3,959
25 " 35	6,931	701	7,632
35 " 45	5,885	588	6,473
45 " 55	5,474	575	6,049
55 " 65	5,410	541	5,951
65 " 70	2,426	241	2,667
70 " 75	2,062	204	2,265
75 " 85	2,280	221	2,501
85 and upwards	507	46	552
Total	48,522	5,035	53,557

At 30 June 1987 the estimated population of Great Britain was 55,355,000. Age and sex distribution: between 0 and 16, 5,722,200 males, 5,426,600 females; 16 and under 65, 17,819,800 males; 16 and under 60, 16,242,000 females; aged 65 and over, 3,418,500 males; 60 and over, 6,722,900 females.

*England and Wales:* The census population, (present on census night) of England and Wales 1801 to 1981:

<i>Date of enumeration</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile</i>	<i>Date of enumeration</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile<sup>1</sup></i>
1801	8,892,536	152	1891	29,002,525	497
1811	10,164,256	174	1901	32,527,843	558
1821	12,000,236	206	1911	36,070,492	618
1831	13,896,797	238	1921	37,886,699	649
1841	15,914,148	273	1931	39,952,377	685
1851	17,927,609	307	1951	43,757,888	750
1861	20,066,224	344	1961	46,104,548	791
1871	22,712,266	389	1971	48,749,575	323
1881	25,974,439	445	1981	49,154,687	325

<sup>1</sup> Per sq. km from 1971

There is only one other major country in Europe, Netherlands (population density 421 persons per sq. km), more crowded than England and Wales.

The birth places of the 1981 'usually resident' population were: England, 41,552,500; Wales, 2,758,026; Scotland, 752,188; Northern Ireland, 209,042; Ireland, 579,833; Commonwealth, 1,429,407; foreign countries, 1,209,091.

Local authority areas in being from April 1974. Area in sq. km and population estimate 30 June 1987:

<i>ENGLAND</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Non-Metropolitan counties—contd.</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>
<i>Metropolitan counties</i>	<i>sq. km</i>			<i>sq. km</i>	
Greater London	1,580	6,770,400	Derbyshire	2,631	918,700
Greater Manchester	1,286	2,580,100	Devon	6,715	1,010,000
Merseyside	652	1,456,800	Dorset	2,654	648,600
South Yorkshire	1,560	1,295,600	Durham	2,436	598,700
Tyne and Wear	540	1,135,800	East Sussex	1,795	698,000
West Midlands	899	2,624,300	Essex	3,674	1,521,800
West Yorkshire	2,039	2,052,400	Gloucestershire	2,638	522,200
<i>Non-metropolitan counties</i>			Hampshire	3,772	1,537,000
Avon	1,338	951,200	Hereford and Worcester	3,927	665,100
Bedfordshire	1,235	525,900	Hertfordshire	1,634	986,800
Berkshire	1,256	740,600	Humburside	3,512	846,500
Buckinghamshire	1,883	621,300	Isle of Wight	381	126,900
Cambridgeshire	3,409	642,400	Kent	3,732	1,510,500
Cheshire	2,322	951,900	Lancashire	3,043	1,381,300
Cleveland	583	554,500	Leicestershire	2,553	879,400
Cornwall and Isles of Scilly	3,546	453,100	Lincolnshire	5,885	574,600
Cumbria	6,809	486,900	Norfolk	5,355	736,200
			Northamptonshire	2,367	561,800
			Northumberland	5,033	300,900
			North Yorkshire	8,317	705,700

<i>Non-Metropolitan counties—contd.</i>	<i>Area sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>	WALES	<i>Area sq. km</i>	<i>Population</i>
Nottinghamshire	2,164	1,007,800	Clwyd	2,425	402,800
Oxfordshire	2,611	578,000	Dyfed	5,765	343,200
Shropshire	3,490	396,500	Gwent	1,376	443,100
Somerset	3,458	452,300	Gwynedd	3,868	236,300
Staffordshire	2,716	1,027,500	Mid-Glamorgan	1,019	534,700
Suffolk	3,800	635,100	Powys	5,077	113,300
Surrey	1,655	1,000,400	South Glamorgan	416	399,500
Warwickshire	1,981	484,200	West Glamorgan	815	363,200
West Sussex	2,016	700,000			
Wiltshire	3,481	550,900			
			Total Wales		2,836,200
Total England		47,406,700	Total—England and Wales		50,242,900

## County districts with populations of over 90,000 (estimate, 30 June 1987):

ENGLAND			
Allerdale	96,100	East Lindsey	113,800
Amber Valley	110,000	East Staffordshire	94,600
Arun	128,300	Elmbridge	107,900
Ashfield	107,000	Epping Forest	113,000
Ashford	93,900	Erewash	106,800
Aylesbury Vale	144,300	Exeter	98,800
Barnsley	221,500	Fareham	98,200
Basildon	157,400	Gateshead	206,900
Basingstoke and Deane	138,400	Gedling	110,500
Bassetlaw	104,900	Gillingham	96,100
Beverley	110,800	Gloucester	90,500
Birmingham	998,200	Gravesham	91,700
Blackburn	136,900	Guildford	123,400
Blackpool	144,100	Halton	123,500
Bolton	262,300	Harrogate	146,400
Bournemouth	154,200	Havant	118,800
Bracknell	95,000	Hinckley and Bosworth	94,600
Bradford	462,500	Horsham	107,000
Braintree	116,400	Hove	90,400
Breckland	103,600	Huntingdon	145,300
Brighton	140,900	Ipswich	116,500
Bristol	384,400	King's Lynn and West Norfolk	131,400
Broadland	102,500	Kingston upon Hull	252,700
Bromsgrove	90,300	Kirklees	375,800
Broxtowe	106,800	Knowsley	161,500
Bury	173,700	Lancaster	130,400
Calderdale	194,800	Langbaugh	145,600
Cambridge	98,400	Leeds	709,000
Canterbury	129,500	Leicester	279,700
Carlisle	101,500	Lichfield	92,900
Charnwood	146,800	Liverpool	476,000
Chelmsford	151,200	Luton	165,300
Cherwell	122,600	Macclesfield	151,800
Chester	116,900	Maidstone	134,500
Chesterfield	97,900	Manchester	450,100
Chichester	104,900	Mansfield	100,100
Chorley	96,100	Mendip	93,200
Colchester	147,200	Mid-Bedfordshire	113,200
Coventry	308,900	Middlesbrough	143,300
Crewe and Nantwich	96,600	Mid-Sussex	120,400
Dacorum	132,600	Milton Keynes	170,800
Darlington	99,100	Newark and Sherwood	103,400
Derby	215,800	Newbury	137,900
Doncaster	290,100	Newcastle under Lyme	118,100
Dover	104,300	Newcastle upon Tyne	282,700
Dudley	302,600	New Forest	161,300
Easington	95,700	Northampton	177,200
East Devon	116,600	Northavon	127,800
East Hampshire	100,200	North Bedfordshire	136,400
East Hertfordshire <sup>1</sup>	119,100	North-East Derbyshire	97,700
Eastleigh	99,900	North Hertfordshire	111,700
		North Norfolk	92,700



ENGLAND—*contd.*

North Tyneside	192,900
North Wiltshire	110,600
Norwich	118,600
Nottingham	276,800
Nuneaton and Bedworth	114,600
Oldham	219,500
Oxford	115,800
Peterborough	151,200
Plymouth	255,800
Poole	129,300
Portsmouth	186,800
Preston	126,700
Reading	133,800
Reigate and Banstead	113,700
Rochdale	206,600
Rochester upon Medway	146,400
Rotherham	251,700
Rushcliffe	98,400
Ryedale	90,300
St Albans	128,600
St Edmundsbury	92,000
St Helens	187,300
Salford	237,700
Salisbury	101,400
Sandwell	298,400
Scarborough	104,400
Sedgemoor	95,200
Sefton	297,300
Sevenoaks	107,500
Sheffield	532,300
Shrewsbury and Atcham	91,200
Slough	98,200
Solihull	203,900
Southampton	199,100
South Bedfordshire	111,000
South Cambridgeshire	117,400
Southend on Sea	162,500
South Kesteven	103,400
South Lakeland	99,000
South Norfolk	100,500
South Oxfordshire	132,200
South Ribble	98,600
South Somerset	140,200
South Staffordshire	106,800
South Tyneside	156,300
Stafford	117,900
Staffordshire Moorlands	96,300
Stockport	289,900
Stockton on Tees	175,900
Stoke on Trent	246,700
Stratford on Avon	107,200
Stroud	108,900

ENGLAND—*contd.*

Suffolk Coastal	109,200
Sunderland	297,100
Swale	112,500
Tameside	216,000
Taunton Deane	92,900
Teignbridge	107,500
Tendring	126,200
Test Valley	100,400
Thamesdown	166,100
Thanet	126,900
Thurrock	124,000
Tonbridge and Malling	100,400
Torbay	117,700
Trafford	216,100
Tunbridge Wells	99,100
Vale of White Horse	111,400
Vale Royal	114,000
Wakefield	310,300
Walsall	261,800
Warrington	183,700
Warwick	117,800
Waveney	105,900
Waverley	110,900
Wealden	131,700
Welwyn Hatfield	93,800
West Lancashire	106,700
West Oxfordshire	96,000
West Wiltshire	105,900
Wigan	307,200
Winchester	95,600
Windsor and Maidenhead	129,900
Wirral	334,800
Wokingham	145,600
Wolverhampton	250,500
Woodspring	184,700
Worthing	97,400
Wrekin	132,200
Wychavon	99,000
Wychcombe	156,500
Wyre	102,200
Wyre Forest	93,700
York	101,500

## WALES

Cardiff	281,500
Newport	129,500
Ogwr	135,800
Rhymney Valley	104,700
Swansea	187,000
Taff Ely	93,600
Torfaen	91,200
Vale of Glamorgan	118,100
Wrexham Maelor	115,800

The following table shows the distribution of the urban and rural population of England and Wales in 1951, 1961, 1971, and 1981.

	<i>England and Wales</i>	<i>Population</i>		<i>Percentage</i>	
		<i>Urban districts</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Rural districts</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Urban</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Rural</i>
1951	43,757,888	35,335,721	8,422,167	80.8	19.2
1961	46,071,604	36,838,442	9,233,162	80.0	20.0
1971	48,755,000	38,151,000	10,598,000	78.2	21.5
1981	49,011,417	37,686,863	11,324,554	76.9	23.1

<sup>1</sup> As existing at each census.

*Conurbations.* These are aggregates of local-authority areas with high population densities. In April 1981 there were 6 in England and Wales, with a population of 14.7m. (30% of total population); Greater London, 6.7m.; Tyneside, 0.7m.; W. Yorks., 1.67m.; S.E. Lancs., 2.24m.; Merseyside, 1.13m.; W. Midlands, 2.24m.

*Greater London Boroughs. Estimated population on 30 June 1987.*

Barking and Dagenham	147,800	Hammersmith and Fulham	151,100	Lambeth	243,200
Barnet	305,900	Haringey	193,700	Lewisham	231,600
Bexley	220,600	Harrow	200,100	Merton	164,000
Brent	256,600	Havering	237,300	Newham	206,500
Bromley	298,200	Hillingdon	231,200	Redbridge	230,100
Camden	184,900	Hounslow	194,000	Richmond-on-Thames	163,000
Croydon	319,200	Islington	168,700	Southwark	216,800
Ealing	296,900	Kensington and Chelsea	133,100	Sutton	168,600
Enfield	261,500	Kingston upon Thames	132,200	Tower Hamlets	159,000
Greenwich	216,600			Waltham Forest	214,500
Hackney	187,400			Wandsworth	258,100
				Westminster	173,400

The City of London (677 acres) is part of the County of Greater London but retains some independent powers. Resident population (1987 estimate) 4,700.

*Census of England and Wales, 1961.* HMSO, 1961-65

*Royal Commission on Local Government in Greater London, Report.* HMSO, 1960 (Cmnd. 1164)

*Census 1971, England and Wales.* HMSO, 1971-75

*Census 1971, Great Britain: Advance Analysis.* HMSO, 1972

*Census 1981, Great Britain.* HMSO, 1981-83

*Census 1981, England and Wales.* HMSO, 1981-83

*Scotland:* Area 78,762 sq. km, including its islands, 186 in number, and inland water 1,580 sq. km.

Population (including military in the barracks and seamen on board vessels in the harbours) at the dates of each census:

<i>Date of enumeration</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile</i>	<i>Date of enumeration</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile<sup>1</sup></i>
1811	1,805,864	60	1901	4,472,103	150
1821	2,091,521	70	1911	4,760,904	160
1831	2,364,386	79	1921	4,882,497	164
1841	2,620,184	88	1931	4,842,980	163
1851	2,888,742	97	1951	5,096,415	171
1861	3,062,294	100	1961	5,179,344	174
1871	3,360,018	113	1971	5,229,963	68
1881	3,735,573	125	1981	5,130,735	66
1891	4,025,647	135			

<sup>1</sup> per sq. km from 1971.

The 1981 population present on census night included 2,466,000 males, 2,664,000 females.

Population of the local authority areas:

<i>Regions (area sq. km) and Districts</i>	<i>Estimated population 1987</i>	<i>Regions (area sq. km) and Districts</i>	<i>Estimated population 1987</i>
<i>Borders</i> (4,662)	102,141	<i>Grampian</i> (8,550)	502,863
Berwickshire	18,833	Aberdeen City	213,228
Ettrick and Lauderdale	33,441	Banff and Buchan	83,753
Roxburgh	35,133	Gordon	71,986
Tweeddale	14,734	Kincardine and Deeside	48,402
		Moray	85,494
<i>Central</i> (2,590)	272,077	<i>Highland</i> (26,136)	200,608
Clackmannan	47,412	Badenoch and Strathspey	10,765
Falkirk	143,229	Caithness	27,025
Stirling	81,436	Inverness	61,077
		Lochaber	19,117
<i>Dumfries and Galloway</i> (6,475)	147,036	Nairn	10,310
Annandale and Eskdale	36,162	Ross and Cromarty	47,897
Nithsdale	57,293	Skye and Lochalsh	11,332
Stewartry	23,292	Sutherland	13,085
Wigtown	30,289		
		<i>Lothian</i> (1,756)	743,700
<i>Fife</i> (1,308)	344,590	E. Lothian	81,855
Dunfermline	129,049	Edinburgh City	438,721
Kirkcaldy	147,963	Midlothian	81,440
N.E. Fife	67,578	W. Lothian	141,684

<i>Regions (area sq. km) and Districts</i>	<i>Estimated population 1987</i>	<i>Regions (area sq. km) and Districts</i>	<i>Estimated population 1987</i>
Strathclyde (13,856)	2,332,537	Kyle and Carrick	112,999
Argyll and Bute	65,737	Monklands	106,187
Bearsden and Milngavie	40,365	Motherwell	147,542
Clydebank	48,573	Renfrew	201,295
Clydesdale	58,436	Strathkelvin	89,475
Cumbernauld and Kilsyth	62,547		
Cumnock and Doon Valley	43,302	<i>Tayside (7,668)</i>	393,762
Cunninghame	137,265	Angus	94,407
Dumbarton	79,704	Dundee	175,748
E. Kilbride	81,718	Perth and Kinross	123,607
Eastwood	57,185		
Glasgow City	715,621	<i>Island Authority Areas</i>	
Hamilton	107,018	Orkney Islands (974)	19,338
Inverclyde	96,382	Shetland Islands (1,427)	22,429
Kilmarnock and Loudoun	81,186	Western Isles (2,901)	31,048

## Population of cities and large towns:

<i>Census population</i>			<i>Census population</i>	
		<i>Estimate 1987</i>		
	<i>1971</i>	<i>1981</i>		<i>1971 1981</i>
Glasgow	893,790	762,288	Kilmarnock	48,992 52,080
Edinburgh	453,025	419,187	Dunfermline	51,738 52,057
Dundee	182,930	174,746	Clydebank	48,170 51,656
Aberdeen	181,785	190,200	Hamilton	46,376 51,529
Paisley	95,067	84,789	Coatbridge	51,985 50,866
Greenock	69,171	57,324		

New Towns (1987, estimate): East Kilbride, 69,500; Irvine, 56,200; Cumbernauld, 49,700; Livingston, 40,500; Glenrothes, 37,300.

The birthplaces of the 1981 "usually resident" population were: Scotland, 4,548,708; England, 297,784; Wales, 12,733; Northern Ireland, 33,927; Ireland 27,018; Commonwealth, 48,515; foreign countries, 65,384.

The population of the Central Clydeside conurbation in 1987 was 1,657,526.

At 30 June 1987 the estimated sex distribution of the population in Scotland was: between 0 and 16, 534,490 males, 508,414 females; 16 and 65, 1,649,415 males, 16 and 60, 1,526,181 females; 65 and over, 286,740 males, 60 and over, 606,889 females.

*Isle of Man and Channel Islands:*

<i>Islands</i>	<i>Area in sq. km</i>	<i>1961</i>	<i>Population 1971</i>	<i>1986</i>
Isle of Man	572	48,151	56,289	55,482
Jersey	116	57,200	69,329	80,212 <sup>1</sup>
Guernsey, Herm and Jethou	64	47,178	53,734	64,282
Alderney	8			
Sark, Brechou and Lihou	6			

<sup>1</sup> 1985.

## Vital statistics for England and Wales:

	<i>Estimated home population at 30 June<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Total live births</i>	<i>Illegitimate live births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces, annulments and dis- solutions</i>
1981	49,634,300	634,492	80,983	577,890	351,973	145,713
1982	49,601,400	625,931	89,857	581,861	342,166	146,698
1983	49,653,700	629,134	99,211	579,608	344,334	147,479
1984	49,763,600	636,818	110,465	566,881	349,186	144,501
1985	49,923,500	656,417	126,250	590,734	346,389	160,300
1986	50,075,400	661,018	141,345	...	347,924	153,903

<sup>1</sup> The population actually in England and Wales.

In 1985 the proportion of male to female births was 1,054 male to 1,000 female; the live birth rate was 13.1 and the death rate 11.8 per 1,000 of the population;



infant mortality rate 9.4 per 1,000 of live births. The average age at marriage in 1986 was 30.5 years for males and 27.8 years for females.

Vital statistics for Scotland:

	<i>Estimated home population at 30 June <sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Total births</i>	<i>Illegitimate births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces, annulments and dis- solutions</i>
1981	5,149,500	69,054	8,447	63,828	36,237	9,895
1982	5,166,557	66,196	9,395	65,022	34,942	11,288
1983	5,150,405	65,078	9,581	63,454	34,962	13,238
1984	5,145,722	65,106	10,640	62,345	36,253	11,915
1985	5,136,509	66,676	12,362	63,967	36,385	13,373
1986	5,121,013	65,812	13,547	63,467	35,790	13,063

<sup>1</sup> Includes merchant navy at home and forces stationed in Scotland.

In 1986 the proportion of male to female births was 1,061 male to 1,000 female; the live birth rate was 12.9 and the death rate 12.4 per 1,000 of the population; infant mortality rate, 8.2 per 1,000 live births. The average age of marriage was 29 years for males and 26 years for females.

*Emigration and Immigration.* During the last hundred years the UK has most often been a net exporter of population. Throughout the period 1881–1931 there was a consistent net loss from migration, though the fifteen years 1931–46 brought a reversal of the trend as a result of immigration from Europe. Since the Second World War the loss has largely continued. However, during the five years 1956–1961, increased immigration particularly from the new Commonwealth and Pakistan, resulted in a net gain. There were also net gains in 1979, 1983 and 1984 but these were due to decreased emigration. The latest year, 1984, shows a net gain of 59,000 due to continuing low emigration and increased immigration.

Since 1964 migration figures have been available from the International Passenger Survey. This is a sample survey conducted by the Office of Population Censuses and Surveys, covering all the principal air and sea routes between the UK and overseas, except those to and from the Republic of Ireland. For the years 1964–73 the survey shows an average annual net loss for the UK of 63,000. During the decade 1974–1983 the annual net outflow has been an average of 37,000.

The table below, derived from the International Passenger survey, summarizes migration statistics for 1986 (in 1,000):

<i>By country of last or future intended residence</i>	<i>Into UK</i>	<i>Out from UK</i>	<i>Balance</i>
All Countries	250	213	+37
Australia, Canada, New Zealand	30	50	-20
India, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka	16	4	+11
Other Commonwealth	34	21	+13
EEC	69	58	+11
USA	26	34	-8
Republic of South Africa	18	2	+16
Rest of World	57	43	+15
<i>By sex/age in 1985</i>			
Males			
0–14	24.7	14.1	+10.5
15–24	24.2	24.1	+0.1
25–44	36.6	40.6	-4.0
45 and over	13.5	12.3	+1.1
All ages	98.9	91.1	+7.8
Females			
0–14	24.0	17.5	+6.5
15–24	46.6	21.1	+25.5
25–44	52.9	34.4	+18.5
45 and over	9.9	9.6	+0.3
All ages	133.3	82.6	+50.8

Walvin, J., *Passage to Britain: Immigration in British History and Politics*. London, 1984

**CLIMATE.** The climate is cool temperate oceanic, with mild conditions and rainfall evenly distributed over the year, though the weather is very changeable because of cyclonic influences. In general, temperatures are higher in the west and

lower in the east in winter and rather the reverse in summer. Rainfall amounts are greatest in the west, where most of the high ground occurs.

London. Jan. 40°F (4.5°C), July 64°F (18°C). Annual rainfall 24'' (600 mm).  
 Aberdeen. Jan. 39°F (4°C), July 57°F (14°C). Annual rainfall 33'' (823 mm).  
 Belfast. Jan. 40°F (4.5°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 34.6'' (865 mm).  
 Birmingham. Jan. 38°F (3.3°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 30'' (749 mm).  
 Cardiff. Jan. 40°F (4.4°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 42.6'' (1,065 mm).  
 Edinburgh. Jan. 38°F (3.5°C), July 58°F (14.5°C). Annual rainfall 28'' (708 mm).  
 Glasgow. Jan. 39°F (4°C), July 60°F (15.5°C). Annual rainfall 37.2'' (930 mm).  
 Manchester. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 62°F (16.5°C). Annual rainfall 34.1'' (853 mm).

**QUEEN, HEAD OF THE COMMONWEALTH.** *Elizabeth II* Alexandra Mary, born 21 April 1926 daughter of King George VI and Queen Elizabeth; married on 20 Nov. 1947 Lieut. Philip Mountbatten (formerly Prince Philip of Greece), created Duke of Edinburgh, Earl of Merioneth and Baron Greenwich on the same day and created Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh, 22 Feb. 1957; succeeded to the crown on the death of her father, on 6 Feb. 1952. Offspring: *Charles* Philip Arthur George, Prince of Wales (Heir Apparent), born 14 Nov. 1948, married Lady Diana Spencer on 29 July 1981. Offspring: *William* Arthur Philip Louis, born 21 June 1982; *Henry* Charles Albert David, born 15 Sept. 1984. Princess *Anne* Elizabeth Alice Louise, the Princess Royal, born 15 Aug. 1950, married Mark Anthony Peter Phillips on 14 Nov. 1973. Offspring: *Peter* Mark Andrew, born 15 Nov. 1977; *Zara* Anne Elizabeth, born 15 May 1981. Prince *Andrew*, Albert Christian Edward, created Duke of York, 23 July 1986, born 19 Feb. 1960, married Sarah Margaret Ferguson on 23 July 1986; Prince *Edward* Antony Richard Louis, born 10 March 1964.

*The Queen Mother:* Queen Elizabeth, born 4 Aug. 1900, daughter of the 14th Earl of Strathmore and Kinghorne; married the Duke of York, afterwards King George VI, on 26 April 1923.

*Sister of the Queen:* Princess Margaret Rose, born 12 Aug. 1930; married Antony Armstrong-Jones (created Earl of Snowdon, 3 Oct. 1961) on 6 May 1960; divorced, 1978. Offspring: *David* Albert Charles (Viscount Linley), born 3 Nov. 1961; Lady *Sarah* Frances Elizabeth Armstrong-Jones, born 1964.

*Children of the late Duke of Gloucester* (died 10 June 1974): William Henry Andrew Frederick, born 18 Dec. 1941, died 28 Aug. 1972; Richard Alexander Walter George, Duke of Gloucester, born 26 Aug. 1944, married Birgitte van Deurs on 8 July 1972 (offspring: Alexander Patrick Gregers Richard Windsor, Earl of Ulster, born 24 Oct. 1974; Davina Elizabeth Alice Benedikte Windsor, born 19 Nov. 1977; Rose Victoria Birgitte Louise Windsor, born 1 March 1980).

*Children of the late Duke of Kent* (died 25 Aug. 1942): Edward George Nicholas Patrick, Duke of Kent, born 9 Oct. 1935; married Katharine Worsley on 8 June 1961 (offspring: George Philip Nicholas, Earl of St Andrews, born 26 June 1962, married Sylvania Tomaselli on 9 Jan. 1988 (offspring: Lord Downpatrick, born 2 Dec. 1988); Lady Helen Windsor, born 28 April 1964; Lord Nicholas Charles Edward Jonathan Windsor, born 25 July 1970). Alexandra Helen Elizabeth Olga Christabel, born 25 Dec. 1936; married 24 April 1963, Angus Ogilvy (offspring: James Robert Bruce, born 29 Feb. 1964; Marina Victoria Alexandra, born 31 July 1966). Michael George Charles Franklin, born 4 July 1942; married Marie-Christine von Reibnitz on 30 June 1978 (offspring: Lord *Frederick* Michael George David Louis Windsor, born 6 April 1979; Lady *Gabriela* Marina Alexander Ophelia Windsor, born 23 April 1981).

The Queen's legal title rests on the statute of 12 and 13 Will. III, ch. 3, by which the succession to the Crown of Great Britain and Ireland was settled on the Princess Sophia of Hanover and the 'heirs of her body being Protestants'. By proclamation of 17 July 1917 the royal family became known as the House and Family of Windsor. On 8 Feb. 1960 the Queen issued a declaration varying her confirmatory declaration of 9 April 1952 to the effect that while the Queen and her children should continue to be known as the House of Windsor, her descendants, other than descendants entitled to the style of Royal Highness and the title of Prince or Princess, and female descendants who marry and their descendants should bear the name of Mountbatten-Windsor. For the Royal Style and Titles of Queen Elizabeth see Commonwealth section.

By letters patent of 30 Nov. 1917 the titles of Royal Highness and Prince or Princess are restricted to the Sovereign's children, the children of the Sovereign's sons and the eldest living son of the eldest son of the Prince of Wales.

Provision is made for the support of the royal household by the settlement of the Civil List soon after the beginning of each reign. (For historical details, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1908, p. 5, and 1935, p. 4). According to the Civil List Act of 1 Jan. 1972 and the Civil List (Increase of Financial Provision) Order 1975, the Civil List of the Queen, after the usual surrender of hereditary revenues, was (1989) £4,658,000.

The Civil List of 1989 provides for an annuity of £140,400 to the Princess Royal; £225,300 to Prince Philip; £404,000 to Queen Elizabeth (the Queen Mother); £136,700 to the Princess Margaret; £155,400 to the Duke of York; £20,000 to Prince Edward.

Sovereigns of Great Britain, from the Restoration (with dates of accession):

<i>House of Stewart</i>		George III	25 Oct. 1760
Charles II	29 May 1660	George IV	29 Jan. 1820
James II	6 Feb. 1685	William IV	26 June 1830
<i>House of Stewart-Orange</i>		Victoria	20 June 1837
William and Mary	13 Feb. 1689	<i>House of Saxe-Coburg and Gotha</i>	
William III	28 Dec. 1694	Edward VII	22 Jan. 1901
<i>House of Stewart</i>		<i>House of Windsor</i>	
Anne	19 March 1702	George V	6 May 1910
<i>House of Hanover</i>		Edward VIII	20 Jan. 1936
George I	1 Aug. 1714	George VI	11 Dec. 1936
George II	11 June 1727	Elizabeth II	6 Feb. 1952

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The supreme legislative power is vested in Parliament, which in its present form, as divided into two Houses of Legislature, the Lords and the Commons, dates from the middle of the 14th century.

Parliament is summoned by the writ of the sovereign issued out of Chancery, by advice of the Privy Council, at least 20 days previous to its assembling. A Parliament may last up to 5 years, normally divided into annual sessions. A session is ended by prorogation, and all public Bills which have not been passed by both Houses then lapse. A Parliament ends by dissolution, either by will of the sovereign (that is, on the advice of the Prime Minister) or by lapse of the 5-year period. A dissolution is commonly followed by a general election.

Under the Parliament Acts 1911 (1 and 2 Geo. V, ch. 13) and 1949 (12, 13 and 14 Geo. VI, ch. 103), all Money Bills (so certified by the Speaker of the House of Commons), if not passed by the House of Lords without amendment, may become law without their concurrence on the Royal Assent being signified within 1 month of introduction in the Lords. Public Bills, other than Money Bills or a Bill extending the maximum duration of Parliament, if passed by the House of Commons in 2 successive sessions, whether of the same Parliament or not, and rejected each time, or not passed, by the House of Lords, may become law without their concurrence on the Royal Assent being signified, provided that 1 year has elapsed between the second reading in the first session of the House of Commons and the third reading in the second session. All Bills coming under this Act must reach the House of Lords at least 1 month before the end of the session.

The House of Lords consists (on 30 Dec. 1988) of: (1) 784 hereditary peers (including 20 women peers) sitting by virtue of creation or descent, other than those who have disclaimed their titles for life under the provisions of the Peerage Act, 1963; (2) life peers being (a) 22 Lords of Appeal (active and retired), under the Appellate Jurisdiction Act, 1876, as amended; (b) 353 life peers (including 45 women peers) under the Life Peerages Act, 1958; (3) 2 archbishops and 24 diocesan bishops of the Church of England.

The full House thus consists of 1,185, and the average attendance is about 330; at



the end of Dec. 1988 168 peers were on leave of absence and 86 peers (including 2 minors) were without writs of summons.

The House of Commons consists of members (of both sexes) representing constituencies determined by the Boundary Commissions. Persons under 21 years of age, Clergy of the Church of England and of the Scottish Episcopal Church, Ministers of the Church of Scotland, Roman Catholic clergymen, civil servants, members of the regular armed forces, policemen, most judicial officers and other office-holders named in the House of Commons (Disqualification) Act are disqualified from sitting in the House of Commons. No peer eligible to sit in the House of Lords can be elected to the House of Commons unless he has disclaimed his title for life under the Peerage Act, 1963, but Irish peers and holders of courtesy titles, who are not members of the House of Lords, are eligible.

In Aug. 1911 provision was first made for the payment of a salary of £400 per annum to members of the Commons, other than those already in receipt of salaries as officers of the House, as Ministers or as officers of Her Majesty's household. As from 1 Jan. 1989 the salaries of members are £24,107 per annum. There is an office costs allowance of up to £20,140 per annum and a living allowance, for an additional home, of up to £8,107 per annum. Members of the House of Lords are unsalaried but may recover expenses incurred in attending sittings of the House within maxima for each day's attendance of £23 for day subsistence, £60 for night subsistence and £23 for secretarial and research assistance or general office expenses. Additionally, Members of the House who are disabled may recover the extra cost of attending the House incurred by reason of their disablement. In connection with their attendance at the House and for parliamentary duties within the UK Lords may also recover the cost of travelling to and from their main place of residence.

Commons Select Committees consisting of 10–15 Members of all parties exist in order to investigate most areas of public policy.

The Representation of the People Act 1948, abolished the business premises and University franchises, and the only persons entitled to vote at Parliamentary elections are those registered as residents or as service voters. No person may vote in more than one constituency at a general election. Persons may apply on certain grounds to vote by post or by proxy.

All persons over 18 years old and not subject to any legal incapacity to vote and who are either British subjects or citizens of Ireland are entitled to be included in the register of electors for the constituency containing the address at which they were residing on the qualifying date for the register and are entitled to vote at elections held during the period for which the register remains in force.

Members of the armed forces, Crown servants employed abroad, and the wives accompanying their husbands, are entitled, if otherwise qualified, to be registered as 'service voters' provided they make a 'service declaration'. To be effective for a particular register, the declaration must be made on or before the qualifying date for that register.

The House of Commons (Redistribution of Seats) Acts 1944, 1949 and 1958, provided for the setting up of Boundary Commissions for England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. The Commissions are required to make general reports at intervals of not less than 10 and not more than 15 years and to submit reports from time to time with respect to the area comprised in any particular constituency or constituencies where some change appears necessary. Any changes giving effect to reports of the Commissions are to be made by Orders in Council laid before Parliament for approval by resolution of each House. The electorate of the United Kingdom and Northern Ireland in the register in 1986 numbered 43,391,831, of whom 36,158,417 were in England, 2,159,361 in Wales, 3,986,654 in Scotland and 1,087,399 in Northern Ireland.

At the general election held in 1987, 650 members were returned, 523 from England, 72 from Scotland, 38 from Wales and 17 from Northern Ireland. Every constituency returns a single member.

The following is a table of the duration of Parliaments called since Nov. 1935.

<i>Reign</i>	<i>When met</i>	<i>When dissolved</i>	<i>Duration (years and days)</i>	
George V, Edward VIII and George VI	26 Nov. 1935	15 June 1945	9	205
George VI	1 Aug. 1945	3 Feb. 1950	4	188
"	1 Mar. 1950	5 Oct. 1951	1	219
George VI and Elizabeth II	31 Oct. 1951	6 May 1955	3	188
Elizabeth II	7 June 1955	18 Sept. 1959	4	105
"	20 Oct. 1959	25 Sept. 1964	4	341
"	27 Oct. 1964	10 Mar. 1966	1	134
"	18 Apr. 1966	29 May 1970	4	81
"	29 June 1970	8 Feb. 1974	3	225
"	12 Mar. 1974	20 Sept. 1974	0	224
"	22 Oct. 1974	7 April 1979	4	167
"	9 May 1979	13 May 1983	4	4
"	15 June 1983	18 May 1987	3	338
"	25 June 1987	—	—	—

The executive government is vested nominally in the Crown, but practically in a committee of Ministers, called the Cabinet, which is dependent on the support of a majority in the House of Commons.

The head of the Ministry is the Prime Minister, a position first constitutionally recognized, and special precedence accorded to the holder, in 1905. His colleagues in the Ministry are appointed on his recommendation, and he dispenses the greater portion of the patronage of the Crown.

Heads of the Administrations since 1935 (C. = Conservative, L. = Liberal, Lab. = Labour, Nat. = National, Coal. = Coalition, Care. = Caretaker):

S. Baldwin (Nat.)	7 June 1935	H. Macmillan (C.)	10 Jan. 1957
N. Chamberlain (Nat.)	28 May 1937	Sir Alec Douglas-Home (C.)	18 Oct. 1963
W. S. Churchill (Coal.)	10 May 1940	H. Wilson (Lab.)	16 Oct. 1964
W. S. Churchill (Care.)	23 May 1945	E. Heath (C.)	19 June 1970
C. R. Attlee (Lab.)	26 July 1945	H. Wilson (Lab.)	12 Mar. 1974
W. S. Churchill (C.)	26 Oct. 1951	J. Callaghan (Lab.)	5 Apr. 1976
Sir Anthony Eden (C.)	6 Apr. 1955	M. Thatcher (C.)	4 May 1979

In March 1989 the Government consisted of the following members:

(a) MEMBERS OF THE CABINET

1. *Prime Minister and First Lord of the Treasury and Minister for Civil Service:* Rt Hon. Margaret Thatcher, MP, born 1925. (Salary £34,479 per annum.)

2. *Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs:* Rt Hon. Sir Geoffrey Howe, QC, MP, born 1926. (£34,479.)

3. *Chancellor of the Exchequer:* Rt Hon. Nigel Lawson, MP, born 1932. (£34,479.)

4. *Lord Chancellor:* Rt Hon. The Lord Mackay of Clashfern, QC, born 1927. (£87,250.)

5. *Secretary of State for the Home Department:* Rt Hon. Douglas Hurd, CBE, MP, born 1930. (£34,479.)

6. *Secretary of State for Wales:* Rt Hon. Peter Walker, MBE, MP, born 1932. (£34,479.)

7. *Secretary of State for Defence:* Rt Hon. George Younger, TD, MP, born 1931. (£34,479.)

8. *Secretary of State for Employment:* Rt Hon. Norman Fowler, MP, born 1938. (£34,479.)

9. *Secretary of State for Northern Ireland:* Rt Hon. Tom King, MP, born 1933. (£34,479.)

10. *Secretary of State for the Environment:* Rt Hon. Nicholas Ridley, MP, born 1929. (£34,479.)

11. *Secretary of State for Trade and Industry*: Rt Hon. The Lord Young of Graffham, born 1932. (£41,997.)

12. *Secretary of State for Education and Science*: Rt Hon. Kenneth Baker, MP, born 1934. (£34,479.)

13. *Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster*: Rt Hon. Tony Newton, OBE, MP, born 1937. (£34,479.)

14. *Minister of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food*: Rt Hon. John MacGregor, OBE, MP, born 1937. (£34,479.)

15. *Secretary of State for Scotland*: Rt Hon. Malcolm Rifkind, QC, MP, born 1946. (£34,479.)

16. *Secretary of State for Transport*: Rt Hon. Paul Channon, MP, born 1935. (£34,479.)

17. *Secretary of State for Social Services*: Rt Hon. John Moore, MP, born 1937. (£34,479.)

18. *Secretary of State for Health*: Rt Hon. Kenneth Clarke, QC, MP, born 1940. (£34,479.)

19. *Lord President of the Council and Leader of the House of Commons*: Rt Hon. John Wakeham, MP, born 1932. (£34,479.)

20. *Lord Privy Seal and Leader of the House of Lords*: Rt Hon. The Lord Belstead, JP, born 1932. (£41,997.)

21. *Secretary of State for Energy*: Rt Hon. Cecil Parkinson, MP, born 1931. (£34,479.)

22. *Chief Secretary to the Treasury*: Rt Hon. John Major, MP, born 1943. (£34,479.)

#### (b) LAW OFFICERS

23. *Attorney-General*: Rt Hon. Sir Patrick Mayhew, QC, MP, born 1929. (£36,679.)

24. *Lord Advocate*: Lord Fraser, QC, born 1945. (£42,067.)

25. *Solicitor-General*: Sir Nicholas Lyell, QC, MP, born 1938. (£29,959.)

26. *Solicitor-General for Scotland*: Alan Rodger, QC, MP, born 1944. (£36,515.)

#### (c) MINISTERS NOT IN THE CABINET

27. *Parliamentary Secretary, Treasury (Chief Whip)*: Rt Hon. David Waddington, QC, MP, born 1929. (£28,589.)

28. *Minister of State, Privy Council Office, Minister for the Arts*: Rt Hon. Richard Luce, MP, born 1936. (£24,209.)

29. *Minister of State, Foreign and Commonwealth Office*: Rt Hon. The Lord Glenarthur, born 1944. (£37,047.)

30. *Minister of State, Foreign and Commonwealth Office*: Rt Hon. Lynda Chalker, MP, born 1942. (£24,209.)

31. *Minister of State, Foreign and Commonwealth Office, Minister for Overseas Development*: Christopher Patten, MP, born 1944. (£24,209.)

32. *Minister of State, Foreign and Commonwealth Office*: Hon. William Waldegrave, MP, born 1946. (£24,209.)



33. *Financial Secretary, Treasury*: Rt Hon. Norman Lamont, MP, born 1942. (£24,209.)

34. *Paymaster General (Treasury)*: Rt Hon. Peter Brooke, MP, born 1934. (£24,209.)

35. *Minister of State, Home Office*: John Patten, MP, born 1945. (£24,209.)

36. *Minister of State, Home Office*: Timothy Renton, MP, born 1932. (£24,209.)

37. *Minister of State, Home Office*: The Earl Ferrers, born 1929. (£37,047.)

38. *Minister of State, Department of Energy*: Rt Hon. Peter Morrison, MP, born 1944. (£24,209.)

39. *Minister of State, Ministry of Defence, Armed Forces*: Hon. Archie Hamilton, MP, born 1941. (£24,209.)

40. *Minister of State, Ministry of Defence, Defence Procurement*: Rt Hon. The Lord Trefgarne, born 1941. (£37,047.)

41. *Minister of State, Employment*: Rt Hon. John Cope, MP, born 1937. (£24,209.)

42. *Minister of State, Department of Health, Minister for Health*: David Mellor, QC, MP, born 1937. (£24,209.)

43. *Minister of State, Department of Social Security, Minister for Social Security and the Disabled*: Nicholas Scott, MBE, MP, born 1933. (£24,209.)

44. *Minister of State, Northern Ireland Office*: Rt Hon. Ian Stewart, RD, MP, born 1935. (£24,209.)

45. *Minister of State, Department of the Environment, Minister for Local Government*: Michael Howard, QC, MP, born 1941. (£24,209.)

46. *Minister of State, Department of the Environment, Minister for Water, Environment Protection, Countryside and Heritage*: The Earl of Caithness, MP, born 1948. (£37,047.)

47. *Minister of State, Department of the Environment, Minister for Housing and Planning*: Rt Hon. John Gummer, MP, born 1939. (£24,209.)

48. *Minister of State, Department of Education and Science*: Angela Rumbold, CBE, MP, born 1932. (£24,209.)

49. *Minister of State, Scottish Office*: The Lord Sanderson of Bowden, born 1933. (£37,047.)

50. *Minister of State, Scottish Office*: Ian Lang, MP, born 1940. (£24,209.)

51. *Minister of State, Department of Trade and Industry*: Hon. Alan Clark, MP, born 1928. (£24,209.)

52. *Minister of State, Department of Transport*: Michael Portillo, MP, born 1953. (£24,209.)

53. *Minister of State, Welsh Office*: Wyn Roberts, MP, born 1930. (£24,209.)

*Leader of the Opposition in the House of Commons*: Rt Hon. Neil Kinnock, MP, born 1942. (£31,559.)

*Leader of the Opposition in the House of Lords*: Rt Hon. The Lord Cledwyn of Penrhos, born 1916. (£30,647.)

The Constitution of the House of Commons after the 1987 general election was as follows: Conservative, 375; Labour, 229; Liberals, 17, SDP, 5; Others, 24.

- Ball, A., *British Political Parties: The Emergence of a Modern Party System*. 1981
- Butler, D., and Butler, G., *British Political Facts, 1900–85*. London, 1986
- Butler, D., and Kavanagh, D., *The British General Election of 1987*. 1988
- Drewry, G. (ed.), *The New Select Committees*. OUP, 1985
- King, A. (ed.), *The British Prime Minister*. Rev. ed. London, 1985.—*British Members of Parliament*. London, 1974
- Mackintosh, J. P., *The British Cabinet*. 3rd ed. London, 1977.—*The Government and Politics of Britain*. 4th ed. London, 1977
- May, Sir T. E., *Treatise on the Law, Privileges, Proceedings and Usage of Parliament*. 20th ed., London, 1983
- Norton, P., *Parliament in the 1980s*. Oxford, 1985
- Parker, F. K., *Conduct of Parliamentary Elections*. London, 1983
- Pelling, H., *A Short History of the Labour Party*. London, 1976
- Shell, D., *The House of Lords*. Oxford, 1988
- Silk, E. P., *How Parliament Works*. London, 1987
- The Times Guide to the House of Commons, June 1987*. London, 1987

**European Parliament:** On 14 June 1984 Great Britain elected 81 representatives to the European Parliament, of which 66 came from England, 8 from Scotland and 4 from Wales, each constituency returning a single member by a first past the post system. Northern Ireland returned 3 members by single transferable vote. The seats were won as follows: Conservative 45, Labour 32, Scottish Nationalists 1, Ulster Unionists 1, Democratic Unionists 1, Social, Democratic and Labour Party 1.

**Local Government.** Local Administration is carried out by four different types of bodies, namely: (i) local branches of some central ministries, such as the Department of Health and Social Security; (ii) local sub-managements of nationalized industries; (iii) specialist authorities such as water authorities; and (iv) the system of local government described below. The phrase 'local government' has come to mean that part of the local administration conducted by elected councils.

There are two separate systems: one for England and Wales and one for Scotland, but both systems are financed by a species of tax on property, levied locally, supplemented by government grants. This local tax is called 'the rate'. The system of financing local government was the subject of a major review in 1975 and a further review in 1985 led to the publication of the Green Paper *Paying for Local Government*. The key proposals were: Abolition of domestic rates and introduction of a community charge to be paid at a flat rate by each adult; setting of a uniform, national non-domestic rate; and a streamlined grant system. The new system will start to come into effect in 1989 in Scotland and 1990 in England and Wales.

**Local Government: England and Wales—Outside London.** England and Wales have slightly differing systems. Each country has three types of councils namely, county, district and English parish or Welsh Community Councils. In addition, England has some metropolitan district councils.

Councillors are elected by their local electors for 4 years. The chairman of the council is one of the councillors elected by the rest. In a district with the status of city or borough his title is mayor, or in a few famous places Lord Mayor. Any parish or community council can by simple resolution adopt the style 'town council' and the status of town for the parish or community. The chairman of the council will be known as the town mayor.

**Counties and Districts:** There are 47 non-metropolitan counties (of which 8 are in Wales). The 6 metropolitan counties (Greater Manchester, Merseyside, South Yorkshire, Tyne and Wear, West Yorkshire and West Midlands) have no councils, the metropolitan districts having most of the county functions. Within the counties there are 369 districts (36 metropolitan and 333 non-metropolitan, of which 37 are in Wales).

**Parishes and Communities:** There are some 10,000 parishes within the English districts, of which 8,000 or so have councils. About 300 are former small boroughs or urban districts which became successor parishes.

In Wales, parishes are known as communities. Unlike England, where some

urban areas are not in any parish, communities have been established for the whole of Wales. There is one for each former parish, county borough, borough or urban district (or part thereof where the former area is divided by a new boundary). There are about 1,000 communities altogether, of which 800 or so have councils.

The Local Government Act 1972 laid down the boundaries for all the counties and districts in England and Wales except the English non-metropolitan districts.

Permanent Local Government Boundary Commissions for England and for Wales advise the Secretaries of State on boundaries and electoral arrangements.

Local government functions may be classified into county, district and parish or community functions, but whereas county and district functions are distinct, the parish and community functions are mostly concurrent with those of the districts. Arrangements may, however, be made so that any council may discharge functions of any other as its agent.

The following is the classification of powers given above: *Parish and Community Functions*. Allotments, burial and cremation, halls, meeting places and entertainments, facilities for exercise and recreation, public lavatories, street lighting, off-street vehicle parking, footpaths, the support of local arts and crafts, the encouragement of tourism and the right to be consulted by the district council on planning applications and certain byelaws. *District Functions*. In addition to the Parish and Community functions, aerodromes, civic restaurants, housing, markets, refuse collection, the administration of planning control, the formulation of local plans, sewerage on behalf of the water authority, museums, the licensing of places of entertainment and refreshment, and the constitutional oversight of parishes and communities. *County Functions*. The formulation of structure plans, traffic, transportation and roads, education, public libraries and museums, youth employment and social services.

There are, in addition, a number of special arrangements. Four district councils in Wales are designated as library authorities and Welsh district councils have powers in relation to allotments currently with community councils. The county councils in England and Wales separately or jointly appoint the fire and police authorities, and the bodies responsible for national parks. In Metropolitan counties, there are no county councils and all functions are performed by the districts (in some cases jointly). The total number of local government electors in England and Wales was 38,557,738 in 1987.

*Greater London*. From 1965–86 London was governed by the Greater London Council, covering the whole metropolitan area, and by 32 London boroughs and the Corporation of the City of London, each with responsibilities in its own area. The GLC was abolished on 1 April 1986. In the City and the 12 boroughs covering the inner part of Greater London, education is now the responsibility of the directly elected Inner London Education Authority, while in the 20 outer boroughs the individual borough councils are the education authorities. Fire services in Greater London are the responsibility of the London Fire and Civil Defence Authority, whose members are appointed by the boroughs and the City. Flood prevention is the responsibility of the Thames Water Authority. Waste regulation for the whole of Greater London is the function of the London Waste Regulation Authority. Waste collection is the responsibility of the boroughs. Waste disposal is the responsibility of the boroughs acting individually or in groups. Except in the City, the police authority is the Metropolitan Police, which is responsible to central government. London Regional Transport is likewise responsible to central government for passenger transport. Other local government functions are the responsibility of the boroughs, acting either individually or jointly, and the City.

Estimated population of Greater London in June 1986 was 6,775,190, and rateable value at 1 April 1987 was £2,093,517,545. Net current expenditure for all London authorities in 1987–88 was estimated at £4,704m. (including £994m. for ILEA but excluding Metropolitan Police). Gross capital expenditure (excluding leasing) for all London authorities and the London Residuary Body was estimated at £1,100m. in 1986–87.

*Scotland*. Under the system, which came into effect in 1975, the Scots mainland is divided into 9 regions, and in addition there are the 3 islands areas of Orkney, Shet-



land and the Western Isles. The regions are divided into districts which total 53. All these units have a council consisting of councillors elected for 4 years and a chairman elected by the councillors for 4 years. Community councils have been established under schemes submitted by district and islands councils. These community councils cannot claim public funds as of right, nor do they have powers directly conferred by Statute: consequently they are not local authorities in the sense that Welsh Community Councils are.

As in England and Wales a permanent Local Government Boundary Commission advises the Secretary of State on Local Authority Boundaries and electoral arrangements.

On the mainland, functions are allocated between regional and district authorities, in the same way (with minor exceptions) as they are allocated between English counties on the one hand and English districts and parishes on the other, but the councils of the islands areas, which have no districts, perform both sets of functions.

Despite differences of nomenclature the effect of the reforms of 1972 (England) and 1973 (Scotland) is to assimilate the systems of mainland Scotland and of England and Wales more closely than has been the case in the past.

The total number of local government electors in Scotland was 3,967,334 in 1988.

*Complaints.* Under both systems, complaints, by members of the public, of maladministration may be investigated by a Commissioner for Local Administration. A complaint may be referred directly to the Commissioner. He can deal only with matters for which there is no other remedy; he reports to the council concerned and may publish his report.

**DEFENCE.** The Defence Council was established on 1 April 1964 under the chairmanship of the Secretary of State for Defence, who is responsible to the Sovereign and Parliament for the defence of the realm. Vested in the Defence Council are the functions of commanding and administering the Armed Forces. The Secretary of State heads the Ministry of Defence as a Department of State. There are 4 subordinate Ministers; 2 Ministers of State and 2 Parliamentary Under-Secretaries of State.

Defence Council membership comprises the Secretary of State, the 2 Ministers of State, the Chief of the Defence Staff, the 3 single Service Chiefs of Staff, the Vice-Chief of Defence Staff, the Chief of Defence Procurement, the Chief Scientific Adviser, the Permanent Under-Secretary of State and the Second Permanent Under-Secretary of State.

There are 3 Service Boards, each of which enjoys delegated powers for the administration of matters relating to the naval, military and air forces respectively.

Defence policy decision making is a collective Governmental responsibility. Important matters of policy are considered by the full Cabinet or, more frequently, by the Defence and Overseas Policy Committee under the chairmanship of the Prime Minister. Other members of this Committee include the Secretary of State for Defence, the Foreign and Commonwealth Secretary and the Home Secretary.

*The Procurement Executive.* An important development in 1971 was the creation of a Procurement Executive to combine the Defence Procurement responsibilities of the Ministry of Defence and the former Ministry of Aviation Supply.

*Service Strengths at 1 Jan. 1988, all ranks, males and females, UK personnel only:* Royal Navy and Royal Marines, 65,600; Army, 158,400; Royal Air Force, 93,300; total, 317,300. The Ministry of Defence employed 142,237 civilians in Dec. 1988.

*Defence Budget (Plans):* 1989-90, £20,143m.; 1990-91, £21,190m.; 1991-92, £22,100m.

**Army.** Control of the British Army is vested in the Defence Council and is exercised through the Army Board. The Secretary of State for Defence is Chairman of the Army Board. The other civilian members are the 4 subordinate Ministers; the

Controller Establishments, Research and Nuclear Programmes and the Second Permanent Under Secretary of State.

The Military members of the Army Board are the Chief of the General Staff, the Adjutant General, the Quartermaster General and the Master General of the Ordnance. The Chief of the General Staff is the professional head of his Service and the professional adviser to Ministers on the Army aspects of military matters. He is responsible for the fighting efficiency of his Service; for Army advice on the conduct of operations; and for the issuing of such single Service operational orders as may be appropriate resulting from defence policy decisions. He is also responsible for the Territorial Army. The Chief of the General Staff is a member of the Chiefs of Staff Committee which is chaired by the Chief of the Defence Staff, who is responsible to HM Government for professional advice on strategy and military operations and on the military implication of defence policy. The Adjutant-General is responsible for recruiting and selection of army manpower; for the administration and individual training of military personnel; for the discipline of the Army; for pay and allowances and pensions; for legal services; for the veterinary and remount services; for the Army Cadet Forces; for questions of Army welfare and education including school children overseas; and for resettlement and sports. The Quartermaster-General is responsible for logistic planning for the Army; for the storage, distribution, maintenance, repair and inspection of equipment, stores and ammunition; for development of stores; for supply, transport and accommodation; for the development, production and inspection of clothing; for military movements and transportation; for the Army postal, catering, salvage and fire services; and for questions connected with canteens, institutes and military labour. The Master General of the Ordnance is a member of both the Army Board and of the Procurement Executive Management Board. He is responsible to the Chief of Defence Procurement for the financial and technical management of the approved programme for the procurement of land service equipment for the Armed Services, and to the Army Board for the co-ordination of the Army's total equipment programme.

Headquarters United Kingdom Land Forces at Wilton commands all Army units in UK except Ministry of Defence controlled units. The Ministry of Defence retains direct operational control of units in Northern Ireland. Command by HQ United Kingdom Land Forces is exercised through 9 district headquarters. There are 3 major overseas Commands: Land Forces British Army of the Rhine, Hong Kong and Cyprus. There are also garrisons in Berlin, Gibraltar, Falkland Islands, Brunei and Belize.

The strength of the Regular Army (less the Brigade of Gurkhas and locally enlisted personnel) on 1 Jan. 1988 was 152,000 men and 6,400 women. Strength of reserve forces were: Regular reserves, 165,900; territorial army, 75,300; Home Service Force, 3,200.

The Territorial Army role is to provide a national reserve for employment on specific tasks at home and overseas and to meet the unexpected when required; and, in particular, to complete the Army Order of Battle of NATO committed forces and to provide certain units for the support of NATO Headquarters, to assist in maintaining a secure UK base in support of forces deployed on the Continent of Europe and to provide a framework for any future expansion of the Reserves. In addition, men who have completed service in the Regular Army normally have some liability to serve in the Regular Reserve. All members of the TA and Regular Reserve may be called out by a Queen's Order in time of emergency of imminent national danger and most of the TA and a large proportion of the Regular Reserve may be called out by a Queen's Order when warlike operations are in preparation or in progress. There is a special reserve force in Northern Ireland, the Ulster Defence Regiment, 6,300 strong, which gives support to the regular army.

Men, women and juniors enlist in the Army for 22 years' active and reserve service. However, under a scheme introduced in May 1981 they are entitled to give 12 months' notice (18 months' for women) to leave active service provided they serve for a minimum of 3 years. Alternatively, they can agree to serve for 6 or 9 years to receive the benefit of higher rates of pay. Those enlisting in certain techni-



cal trades must agree to serve for a minimum of 6 years. Recruits under the age of 17½ on reaching the age of 18 are entitled either to confirm their original engagement or to reduce their period of service to 3 years.

Women serve in both the Regular Army and the TA in the Queen Alexandra's Royal Army Nursing Corps, the Ulster Defence Regiment and the Women's Royal Army Corps, the latter's employments including communications, motor transport, clerical and catering duties. Some officers of the Women's Royal Army Corps are employed on the staffs of military headquarters.

Blaxford, G., *The Regiments Depart: A History of the British Army 1945-70*. London, 1971

Brereton, J. M., *The British Soldier*. London, 1985

Johnson, F. A., *Defence by Ministry: The British Ministry of Defence 1944-1974*. London, 1980

Stanhope, H., *The Soldiers: An Anatomy of the British Army*. London, 1979

**Navy.** Control of the Royal Navy is vested in the Defence Council and is exercised through the Admiralty Board, which consists of 7 civilian and 4 service members. The Secretary of State for Defence is chairman of the Admiralty Board. The other civilian members are the Ministers and Under Secretaries of State for the Armed Forces and for Defence Procurement; the Second Permanent Under Secretary of State; the Controller, Research and Development Establishments, Research and Nuclear.

The naval members are the Chief of the Naval Staff and First Sea Lord (professional head of the Royal Navy) responsible for fighting efficiency, planning and operations advice (aided by the Assistant Chief of the Naval Staff); the Chief of Naval Personnel and Second Sea Lord, responsible for the manning of the Fleet, service conditions, training, discipline and welfare; the Controller of the Navy, responsible for research and development, design, production, inspection, repair and maintenance of ships, their weapons and equipment; and the Chief of Fleet Support, responsible for the provision of naval armament, victualling and medical stores and fuels, and for the movement of material, transport of personnel, and head of the naval dockyard organization and servicing the Fleet and of the Royal Fleet Auxiliary.

The Commander in Chief Fleet at Northwood exercises command of the Fleet. All Naval Air Stations and units at non-naval Air Stations and establishments in the United Kingdom are commanded by the Flag Officer Naval Air Command. The command of all other naval establishments in the UK, except Ministry of Defence-controlled units including Royal dockyards and the Naval Air Repair Organization, and those under the full command of the Commandant General Royal Marines, is exercised by the C.-in-C. Naval Home Command at Portsmouth through Area Flag Officers.

The Royal Naval Reserve (RNR) and the Royal Marines Reserve (RMR) currently have provision for 5,500 and 1,500 personnel respectively. The role of the RNR is to provide a reserve of trained personnel who will be available in times of war to undertake such duties as Naval Control of Shipping, Mine Counter-Measures (manning minesweepers, etc); HQ Command and Communications, and Rotary Wing Aircrew. The main roles of the RMR are to provide reinforcements and to carry out other specialist tasks with the UK-Netherlands Amphibious Force. In addition, men who have completed service in the Royal Navy and the Royal Marines have a liability to serve in the Royal Fleet Reserve. All members of the RNR, the RMR and the Royal Fleet Reserve have a liability to be called out under the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act 1980. Officers of the Retired and Emergency Lists and Pensioners also have a Reserve liability.

Royal Navy ratings enlist to complete 22 years' active service (at the end of which there is selective re-engagement open to senior, chief and charge specialists for a further 5 or 10 years) with the option to leave at 18 months' notice on completion of a minimum of 2½ years' productive service. Those who leave before completing 22 years have a liability for up to 3 years' service in the Royal Fleet Reserve. Royal Marine ranks, WRNS ratings and QARNNS ratings enlist to



complete an initial 9 year engagement but they may apply to re-engage to complete 14 years and 22 years. Servicewomen have no reserve liability.

Women serve in both the WRNS and the QARNNS, and their reserves. In the former, they are employed on a wide range of duties including secretarial, communications, stores accounting, catering, education and training support.

The following is a summary of the more important units:

Category	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988	1989
Aircraft carriers	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
Submarines	32	33	31	32	32	32	30	28	31
Destroyers	15	13	14	15	14	13	13	13	13
Frigates	47	47	46	48	42	39	36	34	35

There are also 2 assault ships, 2 aviation training (helicopter support) ships, 1 forward repair ship, 2 maintenance ships, 1 ice patrol ship, 15 patrol vessels of corvette size, 8 surveying vessels, 23 minehunters, 3 coastal minesweepers, 12 deep (fleet) minesweepers, 1 mine countermeasures support ship, 3 trials ships, 1 large seabed operations vessel, 1 diving support ship, 6 patrol craft, 19 coastal training craft, 11 mooring, salvage and boom vessels, 4 fleet replenishment ships, 14 fleet oilers, 35 other auxiliaries, 6 logistic landing ships, 50 minor landing craft, 14 fleet tugs, 46 other tugs, and 60 tenders.

In the following table the principal surface warships are listed, in descending order of modernity.

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Armament	Shaft horse-power	Speed knots
<i>Light Aircraft Carriers</i> <sup>3</sup>						
1985	Ark Royal	20,000	8 Sea Harriers; 9 ASW Sea Kings; 3 AEW Sea Kings;	Twin 'Sea Dart' surface-to-air missile launchers; 2 Phalanx guns; (3 in <i>Ark Royal</i> ); 2 20 mm guns	94,000 (gas)	28.0
1982	Illustrious <sup>1</sup>	16,250	5 Sea Harriers; 9 Sea King helicopters (original aircraft complement – see notes below)	(being replaced by 3 'Goalkeeper' systems)		
1980	Invincible <sup>2</sup>					

<sup>1</sup> Two AEW (airborne early warning) Sea Kings added to complement – to be increased to three in each ship.

<sup>2</sup> Originally designed as 'Command Cruiser', subsequently re-rated as 'Through-deck Cruiser' (meaning long underdeck hangar with flat-top or near full-length flight deck) and later designated 'Anti-Submarine Cruiser'. Officially listed as anti-submarine warfare carrier in 1980. Slightly angled deck and 7 degree ski-jump ramp, like *Illustrious*, but *Ark Royal* has 12 degree ski-jump for Harriers. During the Falklands campaign *Invincible* embarked ten Harriers and nine Sea Kings. In 1986 she paid off for refit at Devonport to include a higher, 12-degree, ski-jump ramp, greater capacity for 22 aircraft and improved armament and sensors. When she becomes operational in early 1989 *Illustrious* will be reduced to maintenance reserve until refit scheduled for 1991 to 1994.

<sup>3</sup> The aircraft carrier *Hermes*, 24,000 tons, was sold to India in 1986 and renamed *Viraat*; she was refitted at Devonport, completed in mid-1987, before becoming operational in the Indian Navy.

*Note:* For disposals of the *Ark Royal* and *Eagle*, large fixed-wing aircraft carriers; the original sister carriers of *Hermes* (*Bulwark*, *Albion* and *Centauro*) and the rebuilt carrier *Victorious*; the helicopter cruisers *Blake* and *Tiger*, original sister ship *Lion*, and the other orthodox cruisers *Belfast* (museum ship on the Thames), *Ceylon*, *Newfoundland*, *Birmingham*, *Jamaica*, *Superb*, *Kenya*, *Swiftsure*, *Bermuda*, *Mauritius*, *Sheffield* and *Gambia*, see 1983–84 and earlier editions. (*Tiger* was towed to Spain in Sept. 1986 for breaking up).

*Capital (Strategic) Submarines*

<i>Class</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>Displacement (submerged) tons</i>	<i>Missile Tubes (vertical)</i>	<i>Nuclear Reactors</i>	<i>Shaft horse- power</i>	<i>Speed Knots</i>
<i>"R"</i>	4 <sup>1</sup>	8,500	16 Polaris A3	1	15,000	25 dived 20 surface

<sup>1</sup> *Renown, Repulse, Resolution and Revenge* (former battleship names) completed in 1967-69. All also have six 21-in. torpedo tubes.

Other submarines are of the following classes: 'Upholder' (diesel electric-propelled) for commissioning in 1989, 1; 'Trafalgar' (nuclear propelled), 5; 'Swiftsure' (nuclear propelled), 6; 'Churchill' (nuclear propelled), 3; 'Valiant' (nuclear propelled), 2; 'Oberon' (completed 1960-67), 11.

The destroyers of the Royal Navy are of the following classes: Type 42 (completed 1976-85), 12; Type 82 (completed 1973), 1.

Frigates are of the following classes; Type 22 (1979-88), 12; Type 21 (1974-78), 6; 'Leander' (completed 1963-73), 16.

Ships under construction or on order include 4 nuclear armed ('Trident') and nuclear powered submarines displacing 15,000 tons dived, *Vanguard, Vengeance, Victorious and Venerable*; 1 nuclear propelled fleet submarine, 4 diesel driven patrol submarines, 6 frigates, and 8 mine counter-measures vessels.

The Fleet Air Arm has 320 aircraft of which 280 are active, in 14 operational squadrons, 3 with Sea Harrier fighter/reconnaissance aircraft, 5 with Sea King, 1 with Gazelle, 3 (one training) with Lynx helicopters, 2 with Sea King helicopters for commando transport, and 1 with Sea King helicopters converted for airborne early warning. There are 7 training and second-line squadrons, all equipped with helicopters except for 1 with Jetstream aircraft.

The total number of male and female personnel (including Royal Marines) was (in 1,000) 1986-87, 67.4; 1987-88, 65.7; 1988-89, 65.5.

Blackman, R. V. B., *The World's Warships*. London, annual  
Blackman, R. V. B., *Ships of the Royal Navy*. London, annual  
Sharpe, R. G. (ed.) *Jane's Fighting Ships*. London, annual

**Air Force.** In May 1912 the Royal Flying Corps first came into existence with military and naval wings, of which the latter became the independent Royal Naval Air Service in July 1914. On 2 Jan. 1918 an Air Ministry was formed, and on 1 April 1918 the Royal Flying Corps and the Royal Naval Air Service were amalgamated, under the Air Ministry, as the Royal Air Force.

In 1937 the units based on aircraft carriers and naval shore stations again passed to the operational and administrative control of the Admiralty, as the Fleet Air Arm. In 1964 control of the RAF became a responsibility of the Ministry of Defence.

The Royal Air Force is administered by the Air Force Board, of which the Secretary of State for Defence is Chairman. The Minister of State for the Armed Forces is Vice-Chairman, and normally acts as Chairman on behalf of the Secretary of State. Other members of the Board are the Minister of State for Defence Procurement, the Under-Secretary of State for the Armed Forces, the Under-Secretary of State for Defence Procurement, the Chief of the Air Staff, Air Member for Personnel, Air Member for Supply and Organization, Controller of Aircraft, Second Permanent Under-Secretary of State and Controller R & D Establishments, Research and Nuclear. The RAF is organized into commands:

*Home Commands.* Strike and Support Commands. The Air Training Corps and the Air Sections of the Combined Cadet Force are under the administrative control of Support Command and functionally controlled by the Ministry of Defence.

The RAF College, which trains all candidates for commissions, is at Cranwell. The RAF Staff College is at Bracknell. The Department of Air Warfare is at Cranwell. The RAF Central Flying School is at Scampton. Estimated strength in Nov. 1987, including WRAF and boys, was 93,334.

Strike Command is made up of 3 Groups. Nos 1 and 38 Groups merged in late 1983 to form a new No 1 Group, responsible for the strike/attack, reconnaissance,

tanker, battlefield support and transport forces. The Tornado GR1 and Jaguar provide the strike/attack and reconnaissance. Victor, VC10, TriStar and Hercules tanker aircraft are used for air refuelling. Battlefield support forces comprise Harrier GR3s, plus Harrier GR5s now entering service, and Chinook, Puma and Wessex support helicopters. The strategic and tactical transport force comprises VC10s and Hercules, and communications aircraft. No 11 Group controls the air defence forces: Tornado F3 and Phantom supersonic all-weather interceptors, Bloodhound surface-to-air missiles, and ground environment radars, the associated communication systems, and the Ballistic Missile Early Warning System at Fylingdales. No 11 Group also controls the Hawks of the Tactical Weapons Units which, in war, would supplement air defence fighters at bases throughout the UK. UK air defence is undergoing major improvements. The Boeing E-3 will enter service in 1990-91, replacing the Shackleton, and in the ground environment, there are new radars and communications systems entering service. No 18 Group is responsible for maritime air operations. ASW is the duty of the Nimrod Mk 2, which also has a capability against surface ships, although Buccaneers provide the main offensive force against a maritime surface threat. No 18 Group also operates Canberras in a multitude of roles, including photo-reconnaissance, target towing and ECM training, as well as Nimrod special-purpose aircraft. Search and rescue units are equipped with Sea King and Wessex helicopters. RAF Regiment short-range air defence squadrons, armed with Rapier, and the field squadrons form part of 1 Group, as does The Queen's Flight, which has 2 BAe 146s and 2 Wessex helicopters. The Military Air Traffic Operations organization also has the status of a Group. Strike Command has NATO commitments, but is available for overseas reinforcement. The training element of RAF Support Command utilizes Bulldog and Chipmunk primary trainers, Jet Provost basic trainers (now being replaced by turboprop Tucanos), Hawk advanced trainers, Jetstreams for multi-engine pilot training, twin-jet Dominies for training navigators and other non-pilot aircrew, and Gazelle and Wessex helicopters.

*Overseas Commands.* Royal Air Force Germany. Small units in Gibraltar, the Falkland Islands, Belize, Cyprus and Hong Kong.

Squadrons of RAF Germany, which form part of NATO's 2nd Allied Tactical Air Force under SACEUR, have Tornado GR1, Harrier GR3, Phantom fighters, Chinook and Puma Helicopters, Andover communications aircraft, and Rapier surface-to-air missile squadrons of the RAF Regiment.

A flight of Phantom aircraft, a squadron of Chinook and Sea King helicopters for transport and search and rescue, and a flight of Harriers and a flight of Hercules tankers are based in the Falkland Islands: a squadron of Wessex helicopters is based in Hong Kong and Cyprus.

*The Royal Air Force, 1939-45.* Vols. I, II, III. HMSO, 1953-54

Taylor J. W. R. (ed.) *Jane's All the World's Aircraft*. London. Annual from 1909

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The UK is a member of UN, Commonwealth, the European Communities, OECD, the Council of Europe, NATO and the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for years ending 31 March, in £ sterling:

Revenue	Estimated in the Budgets	Actual receipts into the Exchequer	More than estimates
1986	106,500,000,000	105,800,000,000	- 700,000,000
1987	108,600,000,000	111,100,000,000	2,500,000,000
1988	168,800,000,000	173,700,000,000	4,900,000,000
1989	184,900,000,000	190,900,000,000	6,000,000,000

The Budget estimate of ordinary revenue for 1989-90 is £206,400m.



<i>Expenditure</i>	<i>Budget and supplementary estimates</i>	<i>Actual payments out of the Exchequer</i>	<i>More than estimates</i>
1986	159,500,000,000	157,700,000,000	-1,800,000,000
1987	163,900,000,000	164,900,000,000	-1,000,000,000
1988	173,500,000,000	171,800,000,000	-1,700,000,000
1989	182,900,000,000	179,100,000,000	-3,800,000,000

The Budget estimate of ordinary expenditure for 1989-90 is £194,300m.

Revenue in detail for 1988-89 and the expenditure, are given below, as is the budget estimate for 1989-90 (in £1 m.):

<i>Sources of revenue</i>	<i>Net receipts 1988-89</i>	<i>Budget estimate 1989-90</i>
<i>Inland Revenue:</i>		
Income	43,800	46,900
Corporation tax	18,400	22,400
Petroleum revenue tax	1,300	1,400
Capital Gains tax	2,400	2,100
Inheritance tax	1,100	1,100
Stamp duties	2,300	2,400
<b>Total Inland Revenue</b>	<b>69,300</b>	<b>76,300</b>
<i>Customs and Excise:</i>		
Value Added Tax	27,500	30,000
Oil	8,700	8,800
Tobacco	5,000	5,100
Alcohol duties	4,600	4,700
Betting and gaming	900	1,000
Car tax	1,400	1,400
Customs duties	1,700	1,800
Agricultural levies	200	100
<b>Total Customs and Excise</b>	<b>49,900</b>	<b>52,900</b>
<i>Vehicle Excise duties</i>	<b>2,800</b>	<b>2,900</b>
<i>Miscellaneous receipts:</i>		
Interest and dividends	6,600	7,000
Gas levy	400	400
Oil royalties	600	600
<b>Total Government Receipts</b>	<b>190,900</b>	<b>206,400</b>

The following are the branches of expenditure for year ended 31 March 1989 and the estimates for the year 1989-90 (in £1 m.):

	<i>Estimates 1988-89</i>	<i>Estimates 1989-90</i>
Social Security	47,400	51,000
Defence	19,000	20,100
Health and Personal Social Services	21,700	23,200
Educational and Science	18,400	19,600
Other	51,100	58,300
<b>Privatization proceeds</b>	<b>-7,000</b>	<b>-5,000</b>
	<b>146,000</b>	<b>156,800</b>
Interest Payments	18,300	17,100
Other Adjustments	10,200	10,100
<b>Total</b>	<b>179,100</b>	<b>194,300</b>

A single graduated income tax came into operation on 6 April 1973, replacing the existing income tax and surtax.

<i>Rates of Personal Tax from 6 April 1989</i>	<i>%</i>
Income between	
£0–£20,700	25
Over £20,700	40

Under the tax system, the amounts of the personal allowances are adjusted so that they retain their equivalent in relation to earned income.

<i>Personal Allowances</i>	<i>1989–90</i>
	£
Single person	
Wife's earned income	2,785
Married man	4,375
Additional allowance	1,590
Age allowance (age 65 or over):	
Single	3,400
Married	5,385
Age allowance (age 75 or over):	
Single	3,540
Married	5,565

Deductions of tax under PAYE extend over the full range of unified tax rates and not merely the basic rate. Similarly, assessment on business profits and on other income which was directly assessed to tax, such as rents and interest on bank deposits, are made by reference to the full scale of rates, including where appropriate the investment income surcharge.

The standard rate of 25% is the rate at which tax is deducted from payments of interest, etc., and corresponds under the corporation tax system, to the tax credit on dividends. Where an individual's total income is such that he is liable on this taxed investment income at rates exceeding 25%, or if his investment income is high enough to make him liable to the surcharge, the higher rate or surcharge liability on this taxed investment income will in general be assessed separately after the end of the tax year.

*Corporation Tax.* Corporation Tax applies, with certain exceptions, to trades or businesses carried on by bodies corporate or by unincorporated societies or other bodies and this tax came into force from April 1966 replacing Profits Tax. Corporation Tax for companies was 35% for 1989–90. Small companies rates, 1989–90, 25%.

*Capital Gains Tax.* Gains resulting from the disposal of capital assets (other than British Government and Government guaranteed securities and certain exempted forms of property such as a private car and personal residences) are taxed under the Finance Act 1965. In 1989–90 exemption was granted for all gains made in a financial year which in total did not exceed £5,000 and most trusts on the first £2,500. In 1988 the base was brought forward from 1965 to 1982.

*Inheritance Tax.* Formerly Capital Transfer Tax. From 18 March 1986 there is no lifetime charge on gifts between individuals. From 1989 a flat rate of 40% was introduced with a threshold of £118,000.

*Value Added Tax.* Value Added Tax was introduced from 1 April 1973 at the rate of 10% on the supply of goods (with certain exceptions) and services. From 18 June 1979 the rate of tax was fixed at 15%. From 15 March 1989 the registration limits became £23,600 per annum and £8,000 a quarter.

Kay, J. A. and King, M. A., *The British Tax System*. OUP, 1980

*Local Taxation.* The rateable value on which rates were leviable in England and Wales on 1 April 1987 was £8,025m. In England and Wales, the average amount of

rates collected per £ of rateable value was £0.34 in 1913-14 and estimated to be 226.8p for 1987-88. In Scotland the rateable value on which rates are leviable on 1 April 1986 was £3,190m. and the average amount per £ of rateable value of the rates was 67.2p.

Under the Local Government Planning and Land Act 1980, the Government gives general financial assistance to local authorities by means of rate support grants. The Rate Support Grant Supplementary Report (England) 1987-88 deals with the distribution of these grants to local authorities in England only. The grants for 1987-88 contain (i) Block Grant £8,739m., the object of which is to give authorities sufficient grant to put them in a position where they can provide similar standards of service for a similar rate in the £, and (ii) Domestic Grant £717m., which will provide a relief of 18½p for domestic ratepayers except for those in the Cities of London and Westminster where the relief provided is 38p and 28p respectively. There is also provision in the 1980 Act for payment of National Parks Supplementary Grant (£7.3m.) to county councils with all or part of a national park in their area, and Transport Supplementary Grant (£180m.) payable to county councils and the Greater London Council. Grants are also payable on revenue expenditure for specific services, including police and housing, and capital expenditure on certain services also attracts grant.

In Scotland, rate support grants are paid under the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1966 as amended. The total rate support grant and the amounts of the component parts for the local authority financial year 1988-89, as prescribed in the Rate Support Grant (Scotland) (No 3) Order 1987 are as follows: total £2,037.93m. comprising needs element £1,730.23m.; resources element £215.8m.; domestic element £91.9m. The needs element is designed to provide varying levels of support to take account of variations in the demand for services and the cost of providing them with a similar degree of efficiency per head of population in different areas. The resources element, by compensating for deficiencies in local rating resources, enables local authorities receiving it to raise the same amount in rates per head of population for the same rate poundage. The domestic element is paid to rating authorities to offset the cost of reducing by 7p in the £ rates payable on domestic properties. Revenue support grant replaced rate support grant when the community charge was introduced on 1 April 1989. As in England and Wales capital and revenue grants are also payable on expenditure for certain specified services.

*Rates and Rateable Values, 1974-75.* HMSO

*Rates and Rateable Values in Scotland, 1977-78.* HMSO

*Estimates, 1982-83.* GLC

*Analysis of Rateable Values List.* GLC, 1977

*Report on Rate Support Grant Order 1979.* HMSO

<b>Gross National Product:</b>	1946	1960	1970	1980	1987
<i>Expenditure (£1m.)</i>					
Consumers' expenditure	7,273	16,939	31,773	135,738	258,431
Central government final consumption	2,282	4,206	8,961	48,424	85,772
Gross domestic fixed capital formation	925	4,190	9,462	39,411	70,767
Value of physical increase in stocks and work in progress	-126	562	425	-2,706	627
Total domestic expenditure at market prices	10,354	25,897	50,581	220,867	415,597
Exports of goods and services	1,775	5,153	11,533	63,158	107,506
Less Imports of goods and services	-2,083	-5,549	-11,122	-57,913	-112,030
Less Taxes on expenditure	-1,573	-3,378	-8,416	-36,882	-67,980
Subsidies	384	493	884	5,308	5,762
<i>Gross domestic product at factor cost</i>	8,855	22,616	43,460	194,538	348,855



<i>Factor incomes (£1m.)</i>	<i>1946</i>	<i>1960</i>	<i>1970</i>	<i>1980</i>	<i>1987</i>
Income from employment	5,758	15,174	30,404	136,050	226,343
Income from self-employment <sup>1</sup>	1,126	2,008	3,735	17,581	32,959
Gross trading profits of companies <sup>1</sup>	1,476	3,730	5,935	27,708	65,596
Gross trading surplus of public corporations <sup>1</sup>	20	534	1,447	6,222	6,623
Gross trading surplus of other public enterprises <sup>1</sup>	86	189	151	242	-177
Rent <sup>2</sup>	429	1,086	2,833	13,390	24,798
<hr/>					
Total domestic income before providing for depreciation and stock appreciation	8,895	22,863	44,837	203,304	359,377
Less Stock appreciation	-125	-122	-1,090	-6,456	-4,858
Residual error	...	-125	-287	-2,310	-2,282
<hr/>					
Gross domestic product at factor cost	8,770	22,616	43,460	194,538	352,237
Net property income from abroad	85	233	559	-273	5,523
<hr/>					
Gross national product	8,855	22,849	44,019	194,265	357,760
<hr/>					
Less Capital consumption	...	-2,047	-4,420	-27,223	-48,238
National income	...	20,802	39,599	167,042	309,522

<sup>1</sup> Before providing for depreciation and stock appreciation.

<sup>2</sup> Before providing for depreciation.

*National Economic Development Council.* The NEDC, which first met in 1962, is the national forum for economic consultation between government, management and unions. It includes leading representatives of the Government, CBI and TUC, chairmen of nationalized industries and independent members. It meets usually under the chairmanship of the Chancellor of the Exchequer, other Secretaries of State and occasionally, the Prime Minister. The Sector Groups and Working Parties, like the NEDC, bring together representatives of management and unions, officials from Government and others, who use this multi-party meeting place to study the efficiency and prospects of individual industries and sectors and to suggest ways in which these could be improved. The National Economic Development Office (NEDO) provides the professional staff for the NEDC and the Sector Groups and Working Parties.

**Currency.** The monetary unit of Great Britain is the *pound sterling*. A gold standard was adopted in 1816, the sovereign or twenty-shilling piece weighing 7.98805 grammes 0.916½ fine. Currency notes for £1 and 10s. were first issued by the Treasury in 1914, replacing the circulation of sovereigns. The issue of £1 and 10s. notes was taken over by the Bank of England in 1928. The issue of 10s. notes ceased on the issue of the 50p coin in 1969.

In March 1989, £1 = US\$ 1.72.

**Coinage.** The sovereign (£1) weighs 123.27447 grains, or 7.98805 grammes, 0.916½ (or eleven-twelfths) fine, and consequently it contains 113.00159 grains or 7.32238 grammes of fine gold. On 15 Feb. 1971 (Decimalization Day) a decimal currency system was introduced retaining the *pound sterling* as the major unit but now divided into 100 *new pence* instead of 240 old pence. The decimal coins are the £1 (22.5 mm diameter, 9.5 grammes weight); 50p (equilateral curve heptagon, 30 mm diameter, 13.5 grammes); 20p (equilateral curved heptagon 21.4 mm diameter, 5 grammes); 10p (28.5 mm, 11.31 grammes); 5p (23.6 mm, 5.65 grammes); 2p (25.9 mm, 7.12 grammes) and 1p (20.3 mm, 3.56 grammes). The Decimal Currency Act, 1967 and the Proclamation of 27 Dec. 1968 required that the 50p, 10p and 5p be made of cupro-nickel and the 2p, 1p and ½p of mixed metal; copper, tin and zinc (bronze). The Decimal Currency Act, 1969, provided that the coins of

the Queen's Maundy Money should continue to be made in silver to a millesimal fineness of 925.

By Proclamation dated 28 July 1971, which came into force on 30 Aug. 1971, the crown, double-florin, the florin, the shilling and the sixpence are to be treated as coins of the new currency and as being of the denominations respectively of 25, 20, 10, 5 and 2½ new pence. The sixpence was demonetised on 30 June 1980 and the ½p on 31 Dec. 1984.

The Coinage Act, 1971, specified that the legal tender limits for coins were: Gold coins, for payment of any amount; coins of cupro-nickel and silver of denominations of more than 10p, for payment of any amount not exceeding £10; coins of cupro-nickel and silver of not more than 10p, for payment of any amount not exceeding £5; coins of bronze, for payment of any amount not exceeding 20p. The £1 coin is legal tender to any amount.

UK coins issued in the 12 months up to March 1988 totalled £52m.

It is estimated that the following coins were in circulation in the UK at 31 March 1988, in millions: £1 812, 50p 708, 20p 1,060, 10p 1,530, 5p 2,000, 2p 2,900, 1p 4,600.

**Bank-notes.** The Bank of England issues notes in denominations of £5, £10, £20 and £50 for the amount of the fiduciary note issue. Under the provisions of the Currency and Bank Notes Act, 1954, which came into force on 22 Feb. 1954, the amount of the fiduciary note issue was fixed at £1,575m., but this figure might be altered by direction of HM Treasury after representations made by the Bank of England.

All Bank of England notes are legal tender in England and Wales. The banks in Scotland and Northern Ireland have certain note-issuing powers.

The total amount of Bank of England notes issued at 28 Dec. 1988 was £16,110m., of which £16,103,448,112 were in the hands of other banks and the public and £6,551,888 in the Banking Department of the Bank of England.

**Banking.** The Bank of England, Threadneedle Street, London, is the Government's banker and the 'banker's bank'. It has the sole right of note issue in England and Wales and manages the National Debt. The Bank operates under royal charters of 1694 and 1946 and the Bank of England Act, 1946. The capital stock has, since 1 March 1946, been held by the Treasury.

The statutory return is published weekly. End-Dec. figures for the past 4 years are as follows (in £1 m.):

	<i>Notes in circulation</i>	<i>Notes and coin in Banking Department</i>	<i>Public deposits (government)</i>	<i>Other deposits<sup>1</sup></i>
1985	12,863	7	104	2,006
1986	13,482	8	163	2,499
1987	14,542	8	100	3,144
1988	15,949	1	91	3,106

<sup>1</sup> Including Special Deposits.

The fiduciary note issue was £16,103,448,112 at 28 Dec. 1988. All the profits of the note issue are passed on to the National Loans Fund.

Official reserves of gold and convertible currencies, SDR and reserve position in the IMF at the end of Dec. 1988 were US\$51,685m.

The value of paper debit bank clearings for 1987, £8,324,927m. Paper credit clearings for 1987, £91,980m. Automatic direct debits, 1987, £126,835m.; automatic credit transfers, 1987, £229,509m.

The following statistics relate to the London and Scottish banks' groups at 31 Dec. 1988. Total deposits (sterling and currency), £282,769m.; sterling market loans £49,149m.; advances (sterling and currency), £191,358m.; sterling investments £9,650m.

Total net profits from the operations of the main London clearing bank groups in 1988 amounted to £2,875m., of which £737m. was paid in gross dividends and £2,115m. transferred to reserves.

The clearing banks cover all aspects of banking business in UK including corporate business, and are also actively involved in international banking.

*National Savings Bank. Statistics for 1986 and 1987:*

	<i>Ordinary accounts</i>		<i>Investment accounts</i>	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
Accounts open at 31 Dec.	15,353,745 <sup>1</sup>	15,559,155 <sup>1</sup>	3,485,775	3,950,056
Amounts—	£1,000	£1,000	£1,000	£1,000
Received	641,485	641,212	1,370,004	1,719,399
Interest credited	78,630 <sup>2</sup>	79,149 <sup>2</sup>	616,495	659,349
Paid	747,552	730,096	1,332,386	1,548,380
Due to depositors at 31 Dec.	1,666,686	1,656,951	6,160,644	6,991,012
Average amount due to each depositor in active accounts	£108.55	£106.50	£1,767.36	£1,769.86

<sup>1</sup>Excluding non-computerized accounts, amounting to £101.7m. in 1986 and £100.6m. in 1987.

<sup>2</sup>The interest credited to depositors for the Ordinary account for 1987 has been calculated on the same basis as 1986. (6% per annum payable on accounts with a minimum balance of £500, 3% on accounts with a minimum balance of less than £500).

The amount due to depositors in Ordinary Accounts on 1 Jan. 1989 was approximately £1.646,890,905 and in Investment Accounts £7,687,713,712.

The Girobank (founded 1968) had (1986) 1.95m. customers with balances of £1.019m.

*Bank of England Quarterly Bulletin.* Bank of England

*Bank of England Annual Report.* Bank of England

*British Banking and other Financial Institutions.* HMSO, 1977

*Central Statistical Office, Financial Statistics.* HMSO (monthly)

*The Royal Mint.* 6th ed. HMSO, 1977

Sayers, R. H., *The Bank of England 1891–1944.* CUP, 1976

**Weights and Measures.** Conversion to the metric system was in progress (1989) which will replace the imperial system at present in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The electricity industry was vested in the British Electricity Authority on 1 April 1948. Following the re-organization of the electricity supply industry after the passing of the Electricity Act, 1957, the statutory bodies comprising the electricity service in England and Wales are the Electricity Council, the Central Electricity Generating Board and the 12 Area Electricity Boards.

*The Electricity Council* has functioned from Jan. 1958 as the central council for the supply industry in England and Wales for consultation on, and formulation of, general policy; its main functions are to advise the Secretary of State for Energy on all matters affecting the supply industry, and to promote and assist the maintenance and development by the Central Electricity Generating Board and the Area Boards (known collectively as Electricity Boards) of an efficient, co-ordinated and economical system of electricity supply. The Council can also perform services for the Boards, and, in addition, has certain specific functions, particularly in matters of finance, research and industrial relations.

*The Central Electricity Generating Board* is responsible for the generation and bulk supply of electricity to the 12 Area Boards in England and Wales. It therefore plans the provision of new generating and transmission capacity, including the siting and construction of new generating stations, both conventional and nuclear, and is responsible for the operation and maintenance of generating stations and the main transmission system.

*Area Electricity Boards.* Each of the 12 Area Electricity Boards acquires bulk supplies of electricity from the Generating Board and is responsible for distribution networks and sales of electricity to its Area consumers. Thus distribution and utilization of electricity, and also the contracting and sale of appliances side of the industry, are their responsibilities.

The number of power stations owned by the Generating Board in England and Wales on 31 March 1987 was 78 with a total output capacity, of 52,363 mw. Total



number of customers in England and Wales on 31 March 1987 was 21,715,000 (on 31 March 1986, 21,487,941).

Electricity sold in England and Wales in 1986-87 amounted to 219,551 m. units. Operating profit before MWCA in 1986-87 was £1,150m. Coal used for electricity generation in 1986-87 amounted to 77m. tonnes (79m. tonnes in 1985-86). Total fuel (coal equivalent) used in 1985-86 amounted to 100.8m. tonnes and in 1986-87 to 100m. tonnes. Ten nuclear stations of total output capacity 5,029 mw provided 16.4% of total units supplied in 1986-87. Eight of these are gas cooled graphite-moderated stations using natural uranium fuel canned in magnesium alloy (Magnox) and 2 are advanced gas-cooled stations (AGR).

The number of persons employed by the Generating Board, the Electricity Council and Area Boards at the end of March 1987 was 131,067.

The North of Scotland Hydro-Electric Board, established under the Hydro-Electric Development (Scotland) Act 1943, is a nationalized authority responsible for the generation, transmission, distribution and sale of electricity to its (1987) 590,295 consumers.

The Board's district covers a quarter of the land mass of Great Britain and lies generally north and west of a line joining the firths of Clyde and Tay as well as all the island groups extending to the Outer Hebrides, Orkney and Shetland. Over 99.9% of potential consumers have now been provided with supply.

On the mainland the Board operates generating stations with a total installed generating capacity of 3,216 mw consisting of 1,762 mw of hydro power and pumped storage, together with 1,320 mw of steam. Diesel stations with a total installed capacity of 102 mw supply the principal island groups together with 32 mw gas turbine. A 1,320 mw of oil/gas fired thermal plant is now operating at Peterhead.

The main transmission system consists of 5,097 circuit km of 275 kv and 132 kv lines linking the power stations and the bulk supply points serving the distribution networks. The system control centre at Pitlochry co-ordinates the operation of the transmission system and power stations together with the continuous interchange of power with the South of Scotland Electricity Board. The number of staff in Dec. 1988 was 3,861.

The South of Scotland Electricity Board was established in April 1955 by the Electricity Reorganisation (Scotland) Act 1954, replacing in South Scotland 2 Electricity Boards and 2 Divisions of the British Electricity Authority. The area of Scotland served by the Board lies south of a line from the Firth of Clyde to the Firth of Tay and extends to about 8,000 sq. miles (21,000 sq. km), including the industrial belt of Scotland, with a population of 4m. By special arrangement a small part of North-East England is also supplied. The remainder of Scotland is served by the North of Scotland Hydro-Electric Board.

The Board differs from those established in England and Wales in that its responsibilities cover not only the distribution of electricity and retail sale of electrical appliances but also the generation and transmission of bulk power within South Scotland.

In 1988 the Board operated 15 generating stations (3 nuclear, 8 hydro-electric stations and 1 gas) with a total output capacity of 6,918 mw including 1,400 mw from Torness Power Station. In 1987-88 the Board sold 18,958m. units to almost 1.7m. consumers and had a total revenue of £925m. The number of staff employed at the end of the year was 11,879.

**Oil.** Production 1987, in 1,000 tonnes (1986 in brackets): Throughput of crude and process oils, 80,449 (80,155); refinery use, 5,216 (5,404). Refinery output: Gases, 1,479 (1,421); naphtha, 2,014 (2,652); motor spirit, 24,680 (23,360); kerosene, 8,333 (7,960); diesel oil, 21,424 (22,408); fuel oil, 12,797 (12,523); lubricating oils, 886 (909); bitumen, 2,056 (1,887). Total output of refined products, 74,656 (74,089).

**Gas.** Following the Gas Act of 1986, British Gas plc became the successor company to the British Gas Corporation. Its primary activities are the purchase, distribution and sale of gas, supported by a broad range of services to customers. It

also explores for and produces hydrocarbons. It is organized into a headquarters and twelve Regions.

British Gas explores for gas through 3 wholly owned subsidiary companies: Gas Council (Exploration) Limited (UK onshore and Denmark offshore); Hydrocarbons Great Britain Limited (Irish Sea and Cardigan Bay); Hydrocarbons Ireland Limited, (offshore Eire). British Gas owns and operates two gas fields, Morecambe and Rough field. The latter is used as a gas store and both have been developed to help meet peak winter demand.

In 1986-87, British Gas sold 18,894m. therms of gas to over 17m. customers. Just over 50% of the gas went to domestic customers, the rest to industrial and commercial enterprises. The industry won 269,000 new customers in the period and made a before-tax profit of £1,062m. with a turnover of £7,610m.

In March 1986, there were 89,000 people employed directly by the industry. British Gas spends £74m. each year on its research and development programme and its international consultancy service works in about 20 countries.

**Minerals.** Coal. The number of British Coal Corporation producing collieries at 31 March 1988 was 94. Statistics of the coalmining industry for recent years are as follows:

<i>Output, 1m. tonnes:</i>	<i>1984-85<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1985-86</i>	<i>1986-87</i>	<i>1987-88</i>
BCC mines (inc. tip and capital coal)	27.6	88.4	88.0	82.4
Opencast	13.6	14.1	13.3	15.1
Licensed	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.1
Total	42.7	104.5	103.3	99.6

*Manpower and Productivity:*

Men on colliery books (in 1,000) average	175.4	154.6	125.4	104.4
Overall output per man shift (tonnes)	2.08	2.72	3.29	3.62

<sup>1</sup> Strike year.

Total stocks of coal at 31 March 1988 amounted to 29.8m. tonnes (24m. tonnes distributed, 5.8m. tonnes undistributed). Operating profit made by British Coal for the year ended March 1988 amounted to £216m. Interest payable was £368m. The overall deficit for 1987-88 was £540m. The amount of deficit grant for the year was limited to £200m.

Production of coke (including coke breeze), 1987-88, 1.2m. tonnes.

In 1987-88 inland consumption of coal (in 1m. tonnes) was power stations, 86.2; coke ovens, 10.8; domestic, 7; other inland, 11.5; exports, 2.2. Coal imports (1987-88) 9.8m. tonnes.

The UK is among the 10 largest steel producing countries in the world. Output in recent years was as follows (in 1m. tonnes):

	<i>Pig-iron</i>	<i>Crude steel</i>	<i>Home consumption Finished steel products</i>	<i>Crude steel equivalent</i>
1985	10.5	15.7	11.6	14.2
1986	9.8	14.7	12.0	14.7
1987	12.1	17.4	12.4	14.8
1988	13.2	19.0	...	...

Exports of finished steel products were 6.4m. tonnes in 1988 and imports 5m. tonnes.

During 1988, the privatization of the British Steel Corporation was successfully completed and British Steel PLC was established. With turnover for the year to March 1988 of £4,100m., British Steel PLC is the largest steel producer in the UK, the second largest in Europe and the fourth largest in the non-Communist world in terms of crude steel production. The number of employees at 31 Dec. 1988 was some 55,000. These independent producers are represented by BISPA (British Independent Steel Producers Association) and for some products such as wire rod, reinforcement steel, bright bars, wire, open-die forgings and high speed tool and engineering steels, they cover nearly all UK production.

Pig iron produced in blast furnaces was 13.2m. tonnes in 1988 (12.1m. in 1987). Consumption of pig iron in steelworks, 13m. tonnes in 1988 (11.9m. in 1987).

Production of non-ferrous metals in 1987 (in 1,000 tonnes): Refined copper, 122.3 (125.6 in 1986); refined lead, 347 (328.6); tin metal, 17.3 (14.9); virgin aluminium, 294 (275); slab zinc, 81.4 (85.9).

**Agriculture.** The total land area of the UK is 24m. hectares, of which 18.6m. (1987) is agricultural.

Distribution of the cultivated area in the UK (in 1,000 hectares):

	1986	1987
Corn crops <sup>1</sup>	4,024	3,936
Green crops <sup>2</sup>	1,154	1,278
Hops	4	4
Fruit	53	52
Bare fallow	48	42
Rotation grasses including lucerne	1,723	1,691
Permanent pasture	5,077	5,112

<sup>1</sup> Includes wheat, barley, rye and oats.

<sup>2</sup> Green crops include beans, potatoes, turnips and swedes, mangolds, sugar-beet, cabbage, etc., for fodder, vegetables, and all other crops.

The number of workers employed in agriculture, forestry and fishing in the UK was, in June 1987, 322,000; 304,000 were solely engaged in agriculture; there were also (June 1985) 291,700 farmers, partners and directors.

Principal crops in the UK as at June in each year:

	Wheat	Barley	Oats	Beans	Potatoes	Fodder crops	Sugar-beet	Rape for oilseed
	<i>Area (1,000 hectares)</i>							
1982	1,663	2,222	129	52	192	166	204	174
1983	1,695	2,143	108	45	195	180	199	222
1984	1,939	1,978	106	42	198	191	199	205
1985	1,902	1,965	133	56	191	229	269	296
1986	1,997	1,916	97	70	178	239	205	299
	<i>Total product (1,000 tonnes)</i>							
1982	10,310	10,960	575	229	6,875	7,565	10,005	581
1983	10,880	10,080	465	188	4,780	6,160	7,494	563
1984	14,970	11,070	515	223	7,395	7,085	9,015	925
1985	12,050	9,740	615	243	6,895	6,655	7,715	895
1986	13,910	10,010	505	311	6,446	7,325	8,120	965

Livestock in the UK as at June in each year (in 1,000):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Cattle	13,290	13,213	12,865	12,533	12,158
Sheep	34,069	34,802	35,628	37,016	38,701
Pigs	8,174	7,689	7,865	7,937	7,942
Poultry	128,260	127,507	128,968	...	...

**Forestry.** On 31 March 1985 the area of productive woodland in Britain was 2,037,000 hectares of which the Forestry Commission managed 892,000 hectares and the private sector 1,145,000 hectares.

The Forestry Commission employed 6,275 staff in 1985. In addition a further 10,900 were employed in private forestry with an estimated 8,100 engaged in the wood processing industry.

In 1984-85 a total of 4.77m. cu. metres of timber was thinned and felled.

New Planting (1984-85) 21,200 hectares (5,200, Forestry Commission; 16,000, private woodlands).

James, N. D. G., *A History of English Forestry*. London, 1981

**Fisheries.** Quantity (in 1,000 tonnes) and value (in £1,000) of fish of British taking landed in Great Britain (excluding salmon and sea-trout):



<i>Quantity</i>	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Wet fish	676.2	661.0	687.2	629.3	677.3
Shell fish	72.2	72.0	74.8	87.6	111.0
	748.4	733.7	762.1	716.9	788.3
<i>Value</i>					
Wet fish	229,233	240,587	258,904	284,161	338,965
Shell fish	51,030	57,274	64,920	77,519	95,941
	280,263	297,863	323,825	361,680	434,906

The fishing fleet of England and Wales comprised (1987) 5,576 vessels including 1,730 trawlers and 810 line fishing vessels; the Scottish fleet (1987) 2,263 vessels including 807 trawlers and 1,028 shell fishing vessels other than nephrops (Norway lobster) trawlers.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Statistics of a cross-section of industrial production are as follows (in 1,000 tonnes):

	1985	1986	1987
Sulphuric acid	2,525	2,330	2,158
Synthetic resins	1,402	1,083	1,626
Cotton single yarn	39	40	42
Wool tops	45	44	44
Woollen yarn	64	73	77
Man-made fibres (rayon, nylon, etc.)	330	288	277
Newsprint	349	458	497
Other paper and board	3,335	3,465	3,682
Cement	13,339	13,413	...
Fabricated aluminium (to consumers)	466	...	...

**Engineering.** Manufacturers' sales (in £1m.) for 1987 (1986 in brackets): Motor vehicles and engines, 9,521 (7,229); motor vehicle bodies and parts, 4,582 (4,079); boilers and process plant, 1,806 (1,784); mechanical lifting and handling equipment, 1,825 (1,753); refrigerating, space-heating, ventilating and air conditioning equipment, 1,532 (1,323); construction and earth-moving equipment, 983 (1,003), wheeled tractors, 1,032 (894); industrial (including marine) engines, 773 (778).

**Electrical Goods.** Manufacturers' sales (in £1m.) for 1987 (1986 in brackets): Radio and electronic capital goods, 3,145 (2,169); basic electrical equipment, 2,782 (2,883); electronic data processing equipment, 4,322 (2,983); telephone and telegraph apparatus and equipment, 1,667 (1,750); domestic electrical appliances, 1,540 (1,327).

**Textile Manufacturers.** Production of woven cloth for 1987 (1986 in brackets): cotton (1m. metres), 245 (275); man-made fibres (1m. metres), 214.7 (217.7); woven woollen and worsted fabrics (1m. sq. metres), deliveries, 90.3 (93.1).

**Construction.** Total value (in £1m.) of constructional work by all agencies in 1987 was 34,580 (30,123 in 1986), including new work, 19,066 (16,286) of which new housing, 6,745 (5,539). Houses for private developers, 5,812 (4,697). New work (other than housing) for private developers, 8,451 (6,859), for public authorities, 3,870 (3,888).

*Annual Abstract of Statistics.* HMSO

*Statistical Summary of the Mineral Industry.* HMSO, annual

**Labour.** The distribution of total manpower in Great Britain was in June 1987 (in 1,000): Total working population, 27,521 (16,125 males, 11,396 females). Total employed in armed forces and women's services, 319. Total in civil employment, 21,289, including agriculture, 285; energy and water supply, 488 (of which coal-mining, 153); manufacture, 5,044; public administration and defence, 1,587; transport and communications, 1,326; construction, 984; distributive trades, 2,990; insurance, banking, business services, 2,299; education, 1,646; medicine,

1,266. The average quarterly numbers (based on claimants in 1,000) of registered unemployed in Great Britain were: 1983, 2,758; 1984, 2,886; 1985, 2,998; 1986, 3,055; 1987, 2,755. Average figure at 30 June 1988, 2,298.

**Trade Unions.** In Dec. 1988 there were 79 unions affiliated to the Trades Union Congress with a total membership of 8,797,192 (3m. of them women). The unions affiliated to the TUC in 1988 ranged in size from the Transport and General Workers' Union, with 1,348,712 members, to the Sheffield Wool Shear Workers' Society with 17 members. Non-manual workers accounted for nearly a third of the total TUC membership.

The TUC's executive body, the General Council, is elected at the annual Congress. It is composed of 47 members made up of 30 members nominated by unions with a membership of over 100,000, entitled to automatic representation in proportion to their size, 11 members elected by and from unions smaller than 100,000 and 6 members elected by Congress as a whole to represent women workers.

The General Secretary is elected by the Congress but is not subject to annual re-election. The TUC General Council appoints committees, which draw upon the services of specialist departments in preparing policies on economic, education, international, employment, industrial organization, equal rights, and social questions.

The TUC is affiliated to the International Confederation of Free Trade Unions, the Trade Union Advisory Committee of OECD, the Commonwealth Trade Union Council and the European Trade Union Confederation. The TUC provides a service of trade union education. It provides members to serve, with representatives of employers, on joint committees advising the Government on issues of national importance (e.g., National Economic Development Council) and on the managing boards of such bodies as the Health and Safety Commission; and Advisory, Conciliation and Arbitration Service.

The following table relates to trade disputes for recent years:

	<i>No. of workers involved</i>	<i>Working days lost through stoppages</i>
1983	571,000	3,754,000
1984	1,391,000	27,135,000
1985	791,000	6,402,000
1986	720,000	1,920,000
1987	888,000	3,545,000

**Commerce.** Value of the imports and exports of merchandise (excluding bullion and specie and foreign merchandise transhipped under bond) of the UK for 6 recent years (in £1,000):

	<i>Total imports</i>	<i>Total exports</i>		<i>Total imports</i>	<i>Total exports</i>
1983	84,789,605	78,331,360	1986	86,066,650	73,009,049
1984	65,993,096	60,533,692	1987	94,015,696	79,851,395
1985	78,705,170	70,511,345	1988	106,412,879	81,476,249

The value of goods imported is generally taken to be that at the port and time of entry, including all incidental expenses (cost, insurance and freight) up to the landing on the quay. For goods consigned for sale, the market value in this country is required and recorded in the returns. For exports, the value at the port of shipment (including the charges of delivering the goods on board) is taken. Imports are entered as from the country whence the goods were consigned to the UK, which may, or may not, be the country whence they were last shipped. Exports are credited to the country of ultimate destination as declared by the exporters.

For details of imports and exports for 1987 and 1988, *see pp.* 1327-31.

Trade according to countries for 1987 and 1988 (in £1,000):

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports of merchandise from</i>		<i>Exports of merchandise to</i>	
	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1988<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1988<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>Foreign countries</i>				
<i>Europe and Overseas Possessions—</i>				
Albania	91	2,764	2,565	1,126
Austria	781,986	874,430	463,187	509,991
Belgium and Luxembourg	4,362,463	4,956,037	3,857,717	4,251,961
Bulgaria	24,249	28,068	88,761	82,156
Czechoslovakia	141,472	148,248	114,101	130,420
Denmark and Faroe Islands	1,892,734	2,051,230	1,238,262	1,175,298
Finland	1,539,011	1,813,549	797,236	824,951
France	8,381,984	9,390,207	7,781,546	8,270,408
German Dem. Rep.	180,299	152,977	81,489	113,239
Germany (Fed. Rep. of)	15,783,904	17,667,097	9,404,257	9,521,851
Greece	355,320	356,974	444,500	468,032
Hungary	83,267	98,288	101,300	131,212
Iceland	178,314	198,365	84,866	87,100
Italy	5,216,751	5,817,445	4,145,659	4,106,417
Netherlands	7,148,036	8,279,747	5,856,164	5,583,280
Netherlands Antilles	5,429	7,823	25,287	20,089
Norway	3,290,339	3,074,312	1,220,844	1,053,613
Poland	303,418	328,013	181,451	175,685
Portugal, Azores and Madeira	847,980	1,005,506	699,915	901,371
Romania	92,526	100,906	55,688	50,111
Spain	2,099,139	2,482,360	2,164,221	2,691,662
Canary Islands	77,191	77,491	86,185	90,834
Sweden	2,952,453	3,366,524	2,322,235	2,195,032
Switzerland and Liechtenstein	3,298,009	3,840,643	1,835,851	1,854,918
Turkey	579,366	509,636	513,479	477,539
USSR	875,431	732,115	491,615	511,653
Yugoslavia	175,301	197,254	206,932	203,066
European Communities	79,778,131	55,784,600	63,008,930	40,932,046
EFTA	12,040,111	13,167,822	6,724,219	6,525,605
<i>Africa—</i>				
Algeria	172,927	159,748	73,115	86,615
Angola	2,312	10,036	29,573	26,154
Burundi	1,330	1,807	2,867	2,922
Cameroon	14,201	16,180	28,057	20,472
Côte d'Ivoire	90,246	64,041	26,834	31,172
Egypt	127,261	163,038	342,195	289,309
Ethiopia	12,875	8,451	46,146	47,661
Liberia	7,284	9,574	13,538	11,684
Libya	133,649	111,812	220,626	235,957
Mali	6,937	2,240	5,573	12,732
Mauritania	8,724	7,259	3,862	3,048
Morocco	61,108	78,896	94,487	79,017
Mozambique	6,580	5,574	21,168	24,218
Namibia	4,291	8,434	2,526	1,636
Rwanda	11,307	11,284	11,878	14,840
Senegal	658,162	807,669	948,584	1,074,826
South Africa, Republic of	7,681	10,729	3,909	3,259
Sudan	18,850	9,910	75,322	86,480
Tunisia	14,714	36,062	24,943	30,780
Zaire	8,544	7,542	26,142	26,132
<i>Asia—</i>				
Afghanistan	11,289	11,501	10,735	12,109
Bahrain	60,687	75,786	125,189	138,150
Burma	3,826	4,427	24,715	11,685
China	391,766	443,698	416,012	411,563
Indonesia	144,819	223,807	236,027	203,275
Iran	187,572	140,207	307,853	247,768
Iraq	33,871	43,406	271,655	412,091
Israel	437,014	460,289	523,591	487,255
Japan	5,463,116	6,509,137	1,495,111	1,742,747
Jordan	29,285	21,310	188,998	183,555
Korea (South)	936,038	1,135,107	427,229	450,924
Kuwait	81,530	72,318	225,168	237,515

<sup>1</sup> Provisional figures.



<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports of merchandise from</i>		<i>Exports of merchandise to</i>	
	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1988<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1988<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>Asia—(contd.)</i>				
Lebanon	9,528	14,172	40,707	55,575
Pakistan	167,315	175,337	252,978	263,300
Philippines	202,707	223,571	113,784	123,974
Qatar	13,765	3,888	105,087	88,920
Saudi Arabia	383,143	614,144	1,978,440	1,713,423
Syria	24,937	36,100	34,053	24,647
Thailand	239,430	321,241	206,571	279,717
<i>America—</i>				
Argentina	64,595	66,281	10,267	12,991
Bolivia	14,799	13,224	3,658	6,029
Brazil	636,675	742,145	347,916	304,735
Chile	112,843	179,628	105,838	80,901
Colombia	66,531	61,835	61,385	53,132
Costa Rica	16,752	16,902	14,407	11,390
Cuba	12,776	28,489	41,510	31,162
Dominican Republic	8,637	8,523	23,887	17,235
Ecuador	14,002	13,120	37,934	50,417
El Salvador	1,890	2,961	9,595	8,186
Guatemala	7,536	10,678	13,926	15,387
Haiti	621	844	5,327	6,760
Honduras	4,703	8,295	10,449	7,891
Mexico	244,719	144,947	198,992	190,011
Nicaragua	717	725	7,883	6,856
Panama	4,919	12,230	40,020	32,497
Paraguay	1,409	1,950	25,409	22,024
Peru	91,689	90,844	49,324	31,384
Puerto Rico	76,347	91,909	39,405	38,877
Uruguay	40,474	35,410	26,484	34,999
USA	9,136,016	10,767,750	11,014,242	10,544,077
Venezuela	91,749	76,563	157,760	177,787
Total (including those not specified above)	83,236,022	94,097,320	67,311,740	68,482,124
<i>Commonwealth countries:</i>				
<i>In Europe—</i>				
Cyprus	118,250	121,828	141,129	159,788
Gibraltar	3,367	4,537	49,986	67,944
Malta	52,105	40,189	107,941	121,696
<i>In Africa</i>				
<i>West Africa:</i>				
Gambia	3,038	2,927	19,765	19,236
Ghana	113,859	106,314	138,081	126,148
Nigeria, Federation of	159,386	128,123	481,568	390,476
Sierra Leone	12,679	14,462	16,221	14,256
<i>South Africa:</i>				
Botswana	11,836	6,942	10,275	26,763
Lesotho	486	977	1,112	1,260
Malawi	44,223	30,183	18,069	27,618
Swaziland	36,901	27,973	2,257	1,564
Zambia	30,310	24,822	75,178	85,746
Zimbabwe	79,771	86,268	63,181	58,077
<i>East Africa:</i>				
Kenya	129,236	142,455	199,059	202,094
Mauritius	163,271	186,240	44,395	36,553
Tanzania	26,400	26,386	91,874	88,686
Uganda	37,076	30,487	38,545	35,340
Seychelles	884	1,297	10,770	10,478
St Helena	189	205	8,065	6,103
<i>In Asia—</i>				
Bangladesh	35,454	50,249	54,382	64,018
Hong Kong	1,531,681	1,788,631	1,013,038	1,030,725
India	536,704	559,684	1,090,146	1,111,740
Malaysia	397,122	525,017	257,970	310,462
Singapore	473,814	579,368	602,627	632,452
Sri Lanka	53,817	56,661	84,680	92,528

<sup>1</sup> Provisional figures.

<i>Countries</i>	<i>Imports of merchandise from</i>		<i>Exports of merchandise to</i>	
	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>
<i>In Oceania—</i>				
Australia	673,837	745,570	1,223,613	1,377,997
Fiji	53,062	65,273	7,381	6,358
Nauru	674	642	394	759
New Zealand	487,332	443,081	378,368	300,016
Papua New Guinea	46,045	44,291	16,693	20,521
Western Samoa	531	1,323	1,650	757
<i>In America—</i>				
Bahamas	15,943	24,781	27,063	20,708
Barbados	23,320	19,487	33,067	32,061
Belize	22,757	22,461	7,543	12,064
Bermuda	1,208	6,767	25,383	24,995
Canada	1,568,305	2,038,245	1,938,237	2,038,433
Falkland Islands	8,148	4,209	7,353	9,037
Guyana	58,502	43,518	15,371	10,590
Jamaica	85,655	89,693	54,644	48,855
Leeward Islands (Anguilla; St. Kitts-Nevis; Antigua and Barbuda; Montserrat)	9,275	15,309	27,703	32,676
Trinidad and Tobago	38,600	35,728	57,016	39,868
Windward Islands (Dominica; St. Lucia; St. Vincent and the Grenadines)	98,199	120,517	32,156	36,177
Total, Commonwealth countries (in- cluding those not specified above)	7,291,268	8,436,929	8,707,918	8,937,079
Ireland	3,488,406	3,878,630	3,831,737	4,057,046
Grand Total	94,015,696	106,412,879	79,851,395	81,476,249

<sup>1</sup> Provisional figures.

Imports and exports for 1987 and 1988 (Great Britain and Northern Ireland) (in  
£1,000):

	<i>Import values c.i.f.</i>		<i>Export values f.o.b.</i>	
	<i>Total imports</i>		<i>Domestic exports</i>	
	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>

## 0. Food and Live Animals

Live animals (excluding zoo animals, dogs and cats)	236,452	287,079	325,819	254,794
Meat and meat preparations	1,562,249	1,646,347	625,964	590,421
Dairy products and eggs	617,780	761,154	314,129	389,559
Fish and fish preparations	759,194	785,760	407,164	384,427
Cereals and cereal preparations	741,168	751,253	831,201	676,665
Fruit and vegetables	2,394,045	2,462,384	300,289	222,286
Sugar, sugar preparations, honey	521,183	556,933	218,563	196,356
Coffee, tea, cocoa, spices	997,188	931,980	377,512	363,419
Feeding stuff for animals	506,492	557,674	155,835	176,412
Miscellaneous food preparations	389,032	323,722	173,895	207,089
Total of Section 0	8,724,783	9,064,286	3,730,370	3,461,429

## 1. Beverages and Tobacco

Beverages	1,105,383	1,196,276	1,411,631	1,575,468
Tobacco and tobacco manufactures	327,860	325,652	449,774	499,987
Total of Section 1	1,433,243	1,521,928	1,861,405	2,075,455

2. Crude Materials, Inedible, except  
Fuels

Hides, skins and furskins, undressed	264,149	194,219	311,455	254,813
Oil seeds, oil nuts and oil kernels	254,962	227,454	86,244	41,670
Crude rubber (including synthetic and reclaimed)	227,116	236,339	179,995	193,024
Wood and cork	1,198,452	1,355,873	25,950	26,206
Pulp and waste paper	657,198	725,281	33,864	46,438
Textile fibres and their waste	633,534	688,396	396,996	439,468
Crude fertilizers and crude minerals (excluding fuels)	286,632	354,042	340,572	339,447

<sup>1</sup> Provisional figures.

<i>Import values c.i.f. Export values f.o.b.</i>	<i>Total imports</i>		<i>Domestic exports</i>	
	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1988<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1987<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>1988<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>2. Crude Materials, Inedible, except Fuels—Contd.</i>				
Metalliferous ores and metal scrap	1,222,885	1,372,879	451,063	593,449
Crude animal and vegetable materials, not elsewhere specified	438,588	465,200	99,767	97,611
Total of Section 2	5,183,516	5,619,683	1,925,905	2,032,027
<i>3. Mineral Fuels, Lubricants and Related Materials</i>				
Coal, coke and briquettes	412,697	507,071	111,062	98,921
Petroleum and petroleum products	4,493,299	3,495,219	8,465,823	5,575,915
Gas, natural and manufactured	968,805	787,952	192,070	142,965
Total <sup>2</sup> of Section 3	6,116,960	5,058,307	8,768,955	5,817,801
<i>4. Animal and Vegetable Oils and Fats</i>				
	426,967	372,208	263,525	88,744
<i>5. Chemicals</i>				
Chemical elements and compounds	3,013,235	3,263,667	3,931,190	4,243,901
Dyeing, tanning and colouring materials	448,173	543,506	878,979	938,846
Medicinal and pharmaceutical products	786,335	875,868	1,620,747	1,735,346
Essential oils and perfume; toilet and cleansing preparations	554,482	615,100	886,404	943,499
Fertilizers, manufactured	210,584	203,608	85,389	89,993
Plastic materials	2,415,867	1,846,051	1,553,091	1,729,965
Total <sup>2</sup> of Section 5	8,330,391	9,312,716	10,519,696	11,332,676
<i>6. Manufactured Goods Classified Chiefly by Material</i>				
Leather and dressed furs	299,409	245,318	372,941	311,353
Rubber	682,549	798,839	677,930	715,505
Wood and cork (excluding furniture)	784,623	964,702	85,627	82,664
Paper, paperboard	3,238,154	3,622,656	971,085	1,093,724
Textile yarn, fabrics	3,497,575	3,635,552	1,886,174	1,934,856
Non-metallic mineral manufactures	2,747,628	3,301,013	2,654,082	2,971,102
Iron and steel	1,890,118	2,367,391	2,185,983	2,391,161
Non-ferrous metals	1,942,504	2,504,240	1,502,187	1,648,637
Manufactures of metal, not elsewhere specified	1,887,784	2,146,412	1,541,310	1,559,605
Total of Section 6	16,970,343	19,586,123	11,877,320	12,708,606
<i>7. Machinery and Transport Equipment</i>				
Boilers, engines, motors and power-units	2,513,251	3,046,962	3,241,405	3,884,822
Agricultural and Industrial machinery	6,436,664	7,821,884	8,189,085	7,646,087
Office machinery	5,431,207	6,278,574	4,483,163	5,296,568
Electrical machinery, apparatus, not elsewhere specified	7,853,254	8,990,100	5,353,760	6,101,774
Transport equipment	10,560,803	13,905,553	8,635,717	8,957,181
Total of Section 7	32,795,189	40,043,071	28,803,130	31,886,433

<sup>1</sup> Provisional figures.<sup>2</sup> Includes items not specified here.



<i>Import values c.i.f. Export values f.o.b.</i>	<i>Total imports</i>		<i>Domestic exports</i>	
	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1</sup>
8. <i>Miscellaneous Manufactured Articles</i>				
Prefabricated buildings, sanitary, plumbing, heating and lighting fixtures	254,514	336,224	133,080	199,433
Furniture	878,085	988,867	394,689	377,615
Travel goods, handbags and similar articles	230,878	250,688	34,831	43,933
Clothing	2,778,406	3,108,075	1,428,803	1,414,252
Footwear	799,275	907,685	186,564	210,448
Scientific instruments; cameras, watches and clocks	3,261,544	3,489,771	3,304,710	3,535,725
Miscellaneous manufactured articles, not elsewhere specified	4,685,362	5,340,904	4,357,078	4,326,198
Total of Section 8	12,888,063	14,422,214	9,839,755	10,107,604
9. <i>Commodities and Transactions not Classified According to Kind</i>				
Total of Section 9	1,146,242	1,412,343	2,261,332	1,965,473
Total <sup>2</sup> of all classes	94,015,696	106,412,879	79,851,395	81,476,249

<sup>1</sup>Provisional figures.<sup>2</sup>Includes items not specified here.

**Tourism.** There were an estimated 16m. overseas visitors in 1988. Foreign exchange from tourism was approximately £7,800m. including fares paid to British air and shipping lines.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Central government responsibility for highways in England rests with the Secretary of State for Transport. His responsibilities are administered by the Department of Transport through a number of Directorates at Headquarters together with 9 Regional Offices. For Welsh and Scottish roads central government responsibility rests with the Secretaries of State for Wales and Scotland respectively.

The Secretary of State is the highway authority responsible for all trunk roads. The Shire County Councils, the Metropolitan District Councils, the London Borough Councils and the Common Council of the City of London are the highway authorities responsible for local roads in their own areas.

The Secretary of State has powers to provide roads designed for limited classes of motor traffic, and to confirm schemes for the provision of such special roads by local authorities. The former have the status of trunk roads; the latter principal roads. 3,002 km of motorway were open to traffic in Great Britain in 1988 (2,265 km of trunk motorway in England, 376 km in Scotland and Wales and 119 km of principal motorway).

Public highways in Great Britain in 1988, excluding lengths of unsurfaced roads (green lanes), totalled 354,288 km (England, 270,239 km; Wales, 32,842 km; Scotland, 51,206 km). There were 12,577 km of all-purpose trunk roads, 3,002 km of trunk and principal motorways, 34,934 km of principal roads (excluding motorways) and 303,772 km of other roads.

Motor vehicles for which licences were current under the Vehicle (Excise) Act, 1971, at 31 Dec. 1987, numbered 22,152,000, including 17,421,000 private cars, 978,000 mopeds, scooters and motor cycles, 129,000 public transport vehicles and 2,437,000 goods vehicles.

New vehicle registrations in 1987 numbered 2,474,000.

Road casualties in Great Britain numbered in 1987, 311,473 including 5,125 killed; in 1986, 321,000 including 5,382 killed.

**Railways.** The British Railways Board as a public authority owns and manages British Rail: The national rail network, British Rail Maintenance Ltd, British Rail

Property Board and Transportation Systems and Market Research Ltd. (Transmark). The role of the Board is to determine policies, establish the organization to carry them out, monitor performance and take major decisions to meet objectives set by the Secretary of State for Transport.

The Group turnover 1987-88 was £3,384.2m. and 154,748 staff were employed, of whom 133,567 were involved in the railway business.

The management of the railways is the responsibility of the Vice-Chairman. He establishes plans and budgets for the achievement of objectives set by the Board, monitors and achieves results against the plans and budgets, and directs the organization and deployment of manpower resources. He is assisted by other Board members with responsibility for functions such as Engineering, Research, Finance and Planning, Marketing, Operating, Productivity and Personnel.

In the year ending 31 March 1988, British Rail carried 144.5m. tonnes of freight and parcels and 727.2m. passenger journeys were made.

The rail business is split into 5 sectors and directors act on behalf of the Vice-Chairman to control policy. The sectors are InterCity, Network South East, Provincial, Freight and Parcels. A director is responsible for efficient operation and budgeting within his sector, each of which bears its fair share of the fixed costs of operation, such as signalling and track maintenance. The day-to-day running of the rail network is the responsibility of 6 geographical regional general managers to whom local area and station managers report.

		1986-87	1987-88
<i>Passenger Receipts and Traffic</i>			
Receipts	£m.	1,427.5	1,603.5
Passenger journeys	m.	689.4	727.2
Passenger miles (estimated)	m.	19,150.0	20,593.0
<i>Freight Train Traffic</i>			
Receipts	£m.	534.6	555.0
Traffic	m. tonnes	138.4	144.5
Net tonne miles (trainload and wagonload)	m.	10,293.0	10,853.0
Locomotives			
Diesel		2,201	2,040
Electric		240	230
High Speed Trains			
Power cars		197	197
Passenger carriages		712	722
Coaching vehicles		13,677	14,648
Freight vehicles (excluding brake vans)		33,649	28,884
Stations		2,530	2,541
Route open for traffic	miles	10,358	10,335

The London Regional Transport (formerly London Transport Executive) is the authority responsible for the operation of the capital's Underground and bus services. Overall policy and financial control is exercised by the Secretary of State for Transport. In Dec. 1988, London Underground had 244 route miles of railway open for traffic and also operated over 10 route miles owned by British Rail. Rolling stock owned: Underground, 3,875 (2,475 motor cars, 1,400 trailer cars); buses, 4,825. In the financial year 1987-88, the number of train miles run in passenger service was 31.8m.; number of bus miles run in passenger service was 164m. The number of passenger journeys was: Underground 798m.; buses 1,286m.

**Aviation.** British Airways is engaged in the provision of air transport services for passengers, cargo and mail worldwide, both on scheduled and charter services. It operates long and short haul international services, as well as an extensive domestic network. In 1987-88, it carried 23.2m. passengers, and at 31 March 1988 it had a fleet (1987) of 197 aircraft and employed 42,209 personnel.

In addition to British Airways, there were in 1987 about 55 other UK air transport operators, the principal ones being Britannia Airways, Dan-Air Services and British Midland Airways. In recent years there has been a significant expansion of the independent operators.

Following the Civil Aviation Act 1971, the Civil Aviation Authority was established as an independent public body responsible for the economic and safety regulation of British civil aviation. It took over the responsibilities of the former Air Transport Licensing Board and Air Registration Board, and also runs the National Air Traffic Services in conjunction with the Ministry of Defence. CAA established a wholly-owned subsidiary, Highlands and Islands Airports Ltd on 1 April 1986 to own and operate eight aerodromes in the Scottish Highlands and Islands.

In addition to the public transport operators there are a number of companies engaged in miscellaneous aviation activities such as crop-spraying, aerial survey and photography, and flying instruction.

The operating and traffic statistics of the UK airlines on scheduled services during the calendar year 1986 (and 1987) are as follows: Aircraft km flown, 385m. (406m.); revenue passengers carried, 25m. (29m.); cargo (freight and mail) carried 376,927 (405,419) tonnes.

Traffic between the UK airports and places abroad in 1987 (and 1986) on all services included 675,683 (615,775) air transport aircraft movements.

There were 12,888 and 11,932 civil aircraft registered in the UK at 31 Dec. 1988 and 1987 respectively.

**Shipping.** The UK flag merchant fleet in July 1988 totalled 10.26m. DWT (dry cargo, 4.82m. DWT; tankers 5.44m. DWT) representing 1.7% of the world fleet. The total number of UK flag ships was 801.

In 1987 capital expenditure was an estimated £123m. The average age of UK owned and registered tonnage in mid-1987 was 12 years.

Total gross earnings by UK owned and registered ships in 1987 amounted to £3,347m. The net contribution to UK balance of payments was £500m. and, in addition, there were gross import savings of £802m.

On 30 Nov. 1988, 18 UK flag ships (131,000 DWT) were laid up out of a world total of 447 ships (7.3m. DWT).

**Inland Waterways.** There are approximately 2,500 miles of navigable canals and locked river navigations in Great Britain. Of these, the British Waterways Board is responsible for some 340 miles of commercial waterways (maintained for freight traffic) and some 1,160 miles of cruising waterways (maintained for pleasure cruising, fishing and amenity). The Board is also responsible for a further 426 miles of canals, some of which are no longer navigable and whose future is being considered in conjunction with local authorities; a number of these lengths have been restored for cruising or as local amenities. The Board's turnover for the 12 months to 31 March 1988 was £20.6m. The total freight traffic on the Board's waterways for the same period was 4.08m. tonnes.

The most important of the river navigations and canals under other authorities include the rivers Thames, Great Ouse, Nene and Yorkshire Ouse, the Norfolk Broads and the Manchester Ship Canal.

Hadfield, C., *British Canals*. 6th ed. Newton Abbot, 1979

**Posts and Telecommunications.** In Oct. 1981 the Post Office ceased to control telecommunications services, which became the responsibility of a separate corporation, British Telecom. The Post Office operates as 4 distinct but inter-dependent businesses. Every area of the country has separate district offices for each of the letters, parcels and counters businesses. Girobank also has a regional network for account holders. The Post Office provides: Royal Mail general collection and delivery services, handling 51m. letters and parcels a day; Premium Services including guaranteed delivery to UK addresses on the same day and overnight (Datapost), and by facsimile transmission to many UK and overseas centres; International Datapost offering guaranteed swift delivery to over 100 countries; postal, Girobank and many agency services on behalf of government departments and other public sector organizations at 21,000 post office counters; full banking facilities through Girobank. Number of post offices at 31 March 1987 was 21,071; number of posting boxes including those at post offices, over 100,000; staff employed, 198,217 (excluding 19,487 sub-postmasters employed on an agency basis).



	1984-85 (1m.)	1985-86 (1m.)	1986-87 (1m.)	1987-88 (1m.)
Correspondence (incl. registered items) posted	11,200	11,700	12,500	13,500
Parcels handled	203	194	192	197

Income (1987-88) £3,790.8m. Profit retained, £119.3m.

At 31 Oct. 1988 there were 6,969 local exchanges, 465 trunk exchanges and 6 international exchanges operated by British Telecom. At 30 Sept. 1988 there were 5,040,000 business and 18,143,000 residential telephone connexions and 115,000 telex connexions. In 1989 British Telecom's modernization programme will continue. By the end of 1988 there were more than 1,700 digital exchanges in operation and more than 390,000 km of optical fibre had been installed in the network.

At 31 Dec. 1988 about 200,000 customers were connected to Cellnet, the cellular mobile radio network launched in 1985 and run jointly by BT and Securicor. In 1989 BT owned and operated 5 cable and satellite TV systems at The Barbican (London), Bracknell, Berks, Irisne (Scotland), Milton Keynes and Washington (Tyne and Wear). At 31 Oct. 1988 BT employed a total staff of 232,809.

Daunton, M. J., *Royal Mail: The Post Office since 1840*. London, 1985

**Broadcasting.** Radio and television services are provided by the BBC and by the Independent Broadcasting Authority and its programme contractors. The BBC, constituted by Royal Charter until 31 Dec. 1996, has responsibility for providing domestic and external broadcast services, the former financed from the television licence revenue, the latter by Government grant. The domestic services include 2 national television services, 4 national radio network services and an expanding local radio service.

The IBA constituted until 31 Dec. 2005 provides an independent television service on a regional basis, with programmes provided by its programme contractors. The 1981 Act provided for the establishment of the fourth television channel and of the Welsh Fourth Channel Authority (WFCA) which provides a Welsh service on that channel in Wales; they started broadcasting in Nov. 1982. The IBA also provides independent local radio services. All these services are financed by the sale of broadcast advertising time.

The BBC's domestic radio services are available on LF, MF and VHF; those of the IBA on MF and VHF. The television services of the 2 authorities BBC1, BBC2, ITV, and Channel 4 are broadcast at UHF in 625-line definition and in colour.

The broadcasting authorities, whose governing bodies are appointed (by HM the Queen in the case of the BBC and by the Home Secretary in the case of the IBA and WFCA) as trustees for the public interest in broadcasting, are independent of government in matters of programme content and are publicly accountable to Parliament for the discharge of their responsibilities.

In 1981 the Broadcasting Complaints Commission was set up to consider and adjudicate upon complaints of unfair or unjust treatment in broadcast programmes or of unwarranted infringement of privacy in or in the making of programmes. The number of broadcast receiving licences in force on 31 March 1988 was 19.3m., including 17.1m. for colour. *See Addenda.*

**Cinemas.** In 1984 there were 1,200 screens in 70 cinemas and there were 55m. admissions.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there were 14 national dailies.

*Benn's Media Directory*. Tunbridge Wells, Annual

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** *England and Wales.* The legal system of England and Wales, divided into civil and criminal courts has at the head of the superior courts, as the ultimate court of appeal, the House of Lords, which hears each year a number of appeals in civil matters, including a certain number from Scotland and Northern Ireland, as well as

some appeals in criminal cases. In order that civil cases may go from the Court of Appeal to the House of Lords, it is necessary to obtain the leave of either the Court of Appeal or the House itself, although in certain cases an appeal may lie direct to the House of Lords from the decision of the High Court. An appeal can be brought from a decision of the Court of Appeal or the Divisional Court of the Queen's Bench Division of the High Court in a criminal case provided that the Court is satisfied that a point of law 'of general public importance' is involved, and either the Court or the House of Lords is of the opinion that it is desirable in the public interest that a further appeal should be brought. As a judicial body, the House of Lords consists of the Lord Chancellor, the Lords of Appeal in Ordinary, commonly called Law Lords, and such other members of the House as hold or have held high judicial office. The final court of appeal for certain of the Commonwealth countries is the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council which, in addition to Privy Counsellors who are or have held high judicial office in the UK, includes others who are or have been Chief Justices or Judges of the Superior Courts of Commonwealth countries.

*Civil Law.* The main courts of original civil jurisdiction are the county courts for less important cases, and the High Court for the more important ones.

There are 290 county courts located throughout the country, grouped in districts, and each presided over by a circuit judge. They have a general jurisdiction to determine all actions founded on contract or tort involving sums of not more than £5,000 and can also deal with other classes of case, such as landlord and tenant, probate, equity and admiralty, up to certain limits. Certain matters, such as actions of libel and slander, are entirely reserved for the High Court. In addition, certain designated county courts have jurisdiction in matrimonial proceedings. Divorce proceedings must now commence in these courts and, subject to limited exceptions, are determined in the county court.

The High Court has both appellate and original jurisdiction, covering virtually all civil causes not determined in the county court. The judges of the High Court are attached to one of its 3 divisions: Chancery; Queen's Bench; and Family; each with its separate field of jurisdiction. The presiding judges of the 3 divisions are the Lord Chief Justice (Queen's Bench), the Vice Chancellor (Chancery), and the President of the Family Division. In addition there are 82 High Court judges, called puisne judges. For the hearing of cases at first instance, the High Court judges sit singly. Appellate jurisdiction is usually exercised by Divisional Courts consisting of 2 (sometimes 3) judges, though in certain circumstances a judge sitting alone may hear the appeal.

The Restrictive Practices Court was set up in 1956 under the Restrictive Trade Practices Act, and is responsible for deciding whether a restrictive trade agreement is in the public interest. It is presided over by a High Court judge, but laymen sit on the bench also. Another specialist court is the Employment Appeal Tribunal, with similar composition, which hears appeals in employment cases from lower tribunals.

The Court of Appeal (Civil Division) hears appeals in civil actions from the High Court and county courts and certain special courts such as the Restrictive Practices Court and the Employment Appeal Tribunal. Its President is the Master of the Rolls, aided by 27 Lords Justices of Appeal sitting in 6 or 7 divisions of 2 or 3 judges each.

Civil proceedings are instituted by the aggrieved person, but, as they are a private matter, they are frequently settled by the parties to a dispute through their lawyers before the matter actually comes to court. In some cases, at the instance of either party, a jury may sit to decide questions of fact and award of damages.

*Criminal Law.* At the base of the system of criminal courts in England and Wales are the magistrates' courts which try over 97% of criminal cases. In general, in exercising their summary jurisdiction, they have power to pass a sentence of up to six months imprisonment and to impose a fine of up to £2,000 on any one offence. They also deal with the preliminary hearing of cases triable only at the Crown Court. In addition to dealing summarily with over 2m. cases, which include thefts,



assaults, road traffic infringements, drug abuse, etc, they also have a limited civil jurisdiction.

Magistrates' courts normally comprise three lay justices. Although unpaid they are entitled to loss of earnings and travel and subsistence allowance. They undergo training after appointment and they are advised by a professional justices' clerk. In central London and in some provincial areas full-time stipendiary magistrates have been appointed. Generally they possess the same powers as the lay bench, but they sit alone. On 1 Jan. 1989 the total strength of the lay magistracy was 28,211 including 12,214 women. Justices are appointed on behalf of the Queen by the Lord Chancellor, except in Greater Manchester, Merseyside and Lancashire where they are appointed by the Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster.

Justices are selected and trained specially to sit in Juvenile and domestic courts. Juvenile courts deal with cases involving persons under 17 years of age charged with criminal offences (other than homicide and other grave offences) or brought before the court as being in need of care or control. These courts normally sit with three justices, including at least one man or one woman, and are accommodated separately from other courts.

Domestic Proceedings courts deal with matrimonial applications, custody, guardianship and maintenance of children, and adoption. These courts normally sit with three justices including at least one man or one woman.

Above the magistrates' courts is the Crown Court. This was set up by the Courts Act 1971 to replace quarter sessions and assizes. Unlike quarter sessions and assizes, which were individual courts, the Crown Court is a single court which is capable of sitting anywhere in England and Wales. It has power to deal with all trials on indictment and has inherited the jurisdiction of quarter sessions to hear appeals, proceedings on committal of persons for sentence, and certain original proceedings on civil matters under individual statutes.

The jurisdiction of the Crown Court is exercisable by a High Court judge, a Circuit judge or a Recorder (who is a part-time judge) sitting alone, or, in specified circumstances, with justices of the peace. The Lord Chief Justice has given directions as to the types of case to be allocated to High Court judges (the more serious cases) and to Circuit judges or Recorders respectively.

Appeals from magistrates' courts go either to a Divisional Court of the High Court (when a point of law alone is involved) or to the Crown Court where there is a complete re-hearing on appeals against conviction. Appeals from the Crown Court in cases tried on indictment lie to the Court of Appeal (Criminal Division). Appeals on questions of law go by right, and appeals on other matters by leave. The Lord Chief Justice or a Lord Justice sits with judges of the High Court to constitute this court.

There remains as a last resort the invocation of the royal prerogative exercised on the advice of the Home Secretary. In 1965 the death penalty was abolished for murder.

All contested criminal trials, except those which come before the magistrates' courts, are tried by a judge and a jury consisting of 12 members. The prosecution may ask that any number may 'stand by' until the jury panel is exhausted, and only then need to show cause. The jury decides whether the accused is guilty or not. The judge is responsible for summing up on the facts and explaining the law; he sentences convicted offenders. If, after at least 2 hours of deliberation, a jury is unable to reach a unanimous verdict it may, on the judge's direction, provided that in a full jury of 12 at least 10 of its members are agreed, bring in a majority verdict. The failure of a jury to agree on a unanimous verdict or to bring in a majority verdict may involve the retrial of the case before a new jury.

*The Employment Appeal Tribunal.* The Employment Appeal Tribunal which is a superior Court of Record with the like powers, rights, privileges and authority of the High Court, was set up in 1976 to hear appeals on questions of fact and law against decisions of industrial tribunals and of the Certification Officer. The appeals are heard by a High Court Judge sitting with 2 members (in exceptional cases 4) appointed for their special knowledge or experience of industrial relations either on the employer or the trade union side, with always an equal number on



each side. The great bulk of their work is concerned with the problems which can arise between employees and their employers.

*Military Courts.* Offences by persons subject to service law against the system of military law created under the powers of the Army Act, Air Force Act or Naval Discipline Act are dealt with either summarily or by courts-martial.

*The Personnel of the Law.* All judicial officers except the Lord Chancellor (who is a member of the Cabinet) are independent of Parliament and the Executive. They are all appointed by the Crown on the advice of the Prime Minister or the Lord Chancellor and hold office until retiring age. The legal profession is divided; barristers, who advise on legal problems and conduct cases in court, usually act for the public only through solicitors, who deal directly with the legal business brought to them by the public. Barristers of 10 years' standing are eligible for appointment as High Court Judges, while only solicitors (of 7 years' standing) may apply for appointment as County Court and District Registrars. Long-standing members of both professions are eligible for appointment to most other judicial offices, solicitors having first to serve for at least 3 years as Recorders before qualifying for appointment as Circuit Judges.

*Legal Aid.* Broadly there are 3 kinds of legal aid. Firstly there is legal advice and assistance, otherwise known as the 'Green Form' scheme. This includes advice and help on any question of English law, both civil and criminal, but does not normally cover any form of representation before a court or tribunal. As an extension of the scheme, however, assistance by way of representation has been available for certain proceedings, chiefly civil, in magistrates' courts. Legal advice and assistance also provides for duty solicitor schemes at magistrates' courts and police stations. Under the magistrates' courts schemes, initial advice, and representation where necessary, is available to unrepresented defendants at court, from duty solicitors either in attendance at courts or on call. The scheme covers advice to a defendant in custody, making a bail application, representing a defendant in custody on a guilty plea, and certain other cases. The advice and assistance at police stations scheme enables any person who has been arrested and taken to a police station, or who is assisting the police with their enquiries, to receive advice and assistance, from either a duty solicitor or the person's own solicitor. The cost of these schemes, which are not subject to means test or contribution, is met from the Legal Aid fund and in 1987-88 amounted to £28.1m. Secondly, under Part I of the Legal Aid Act 1974, there is legal aid for civil court proceedings. Under regulations, aid is available to those of low or moderate means either free or subject to a contribution, depending on means. In 1987-88 there were over 1m. payments for advice and assistance under the Legal Advice and Assistance Scheme and around 250,000 civil legal aid certificates were issued. The cost of legal aid in civil cases is met from (a) contributions from assisted persons; (b) the operation of the statutory charge which gives the Law Society a first charge on money or property recovered or preserved for an assisted person; (c) costs recovered from opposing parties and (d) a grant from the Exchequer. The net cost of civil legal aid to the state (excluding administration costs of the scheme) in the year 1987-88 amounted to £117.1m. and the cost of the legal advice and assistance scheme was £70.4m. of which £13.5m. was accounted for by assistance by way of representation. Thirdly under Part II of the Legal Aid Act 1974 a court dealing with criminal proceedings may order legal aid to be given if it considers it is desirable in the interests of justice and if it also considers that the defendant (or appellant) requires financial assistance in meeting the costs he may incur. The interests of justice are statutorily defined to include, for example, situations where the defendant is in real danger of going to prison or losing his job, where substantial questions of law are to be argued or where the defendant is unable to follow the proceedings and explain his case due to inadequate knowledge of English, mental illness or other mental or physical disability. Legal aid must be granted, subject to means, in the following circumstances: where a person is committed for trial on a charge of murder, where the prosecutor appeals or applies for leave to appeal from the criminal division of the Court of Appeal or the Courts-Martial Appeal Court to the House of Lords, and in

certain circumstances where the court is considering depriving a defendant of his liberty.

The costs of legal aid in criminal proceedings are paid by the central government, but courts have power to require legally aided persons to contribute towards the cost of legal aid given to them. The net cost of legal aid in criminal proceedings in the year 1987-88 was £211.7m., £112.3m. of this was for legal aid in the higher courts which is paid for out of the Lord Chancellor's vote and £99.4m. for legal aid in the magistrates' courts which is paid from the legal aid fund.

*Police.* The authorized establishment of the police force in England and Wales in Dec. 1988 was 125,390; the actual strength was 111,630 men and 13,129 women. In addition there were 15,788 special constables (including 5,210 women). The estimated total expenditure on the police service in England and Wales for 1987-88 was £3,512m.

*SCOTLAND.* The High Court of Justiciary is the supreme criminal court in Scotland and has jurisdiction in all cases of crime committed in any part of Scotland, unless expressly excluded by statute. It consists of the Lord Justice-General, the Lord Justice-Clerk and 22 other judges, who are the same judges as of the Court of Session, the Scottish supreme civil court. One judge is seconded to the Scottish Law Commission. The Court, which is presided over by the Lord Justice-General, whom failing, the Lord Justice-Clerk, exercises an appellate jurisdiction as well as one of first instance, sits as business requires in Edinburgh both as a Court of Appeal (the *quorum* being 3 judges) and as a court of first instance and on circuit as a court of first instance. The decisions of the Court in either case are not subject to review by the House of Lords. One judge sitting with a jury of 15 persons can, and usually does, try cases, but 2 or more (with a jury) may do so in important or complex cases. It has a privative jurisdiction over cases of treason, murder, rape, deforcement of messengers and breach of duty by magistrates. It also, in practice, is the only court which tries serious crimes against person or property and generally those cases in which a sentence greater than imprisonment for 3 years may be imposed either under statute or common law. Moreover, the Court has inherent power to try and to punish all acts which are plainly criminal though previously unknown and not dealt with by any statute.

The appellate jurisdiction of the High Court of Justiciary extends to all cases tried on indictment, whether in the High Court or the Sheriff Court, and persons so convicted may appeal to the Court against conviction or sentence or both except that there is no appeal against any sentence fixed by law. The Lord Advocate may refer a point of law which has arisen during a trial on indictment in which accused has been acquitted for the opinion of the Court. By such an appeal, a person may bring under review of the High Court of Justiciary any alleged miscarriage of justice including any alleged miscarriage of justice on the basis of the existence and significance of additional evidence which was not heard at the trial and which was not available and could not reasonably have been made available at the trial. It is also a court of review from courts of summary criminal jurisdiction, and on the final determination of any summary prosecution a convicted person may appeal to the Court by way of stated case on questions of law, etc., but not on questions of fact, except in relation to a miscarriage of justice alleged by the person accused on the basis of the existence and significance of additional evidence which was not heard at the trial and which was not available and could not reasonably have been made available at the trial. A prosecutor may appeal only on a point of law. A further or complementary form of process of review which can be resorted to by convicted persons in these courts is by Bill of Suspension (and Liberation), but it is of strictly limited application. A prosecutor in cases tried on indictment or under summary criminal procedure may also bring under review a decision in law, prior to final judgment of the case, by way of Bill of Advocacy. The Court also hears appeals under the Courts-Martial (Appeals) Act 1951.

The Sheriff Court has an inherent universal criminal jurisdiction (as well as an extensive civil one) limited in general to crimes and offences committed within a sheriffdom (a specifically defined region), which has, however, been curtailed by



statute or practice under which the High Court of Justiciary has exclusive jurisdiction in relation to the crimes above-mentioned. This Court is presided over by a Sheriff-Principal or Sheriff, and when trying cases on indictment sits with a jury of 15 persons. His power of awarding punishment involving imprisonment is restricted to 3 years in the maximum, but he may under certain statutory powers remit the prisoner to the High Court for sentence. The Sheriff also exercises a wide summary criminal jurisdiction and when doing so sits without a jury; and he has concurrent jurisdiction with every other court within his Sheriff Court District in regard to all offences competent for trial in summary courts. The great majority of offences which come before the courts are of a minor nature and, as such, are disposed of in the Sheriff Summary Courts or in the District Courts (*see below*). In cases to be tried on indictment either in the High Court of Justiciary or in the Sheriff Court, the judge may, and in some cases must, before the trial, hold a Preliminary Diet to decide questions of a preliminary nature, whether to the competency or relevancy or otherwise. Any decision at a preliminary diet can be the subject of an appeal to the High Court of Justiciary prior to the trial.

District Courts in each local authority district have jurisdiction in minor offences occurring within the district. These courts are presided over by lay magistrates, known as justices, and have limited powers of fine and imprisonment.

The Court of Session, presided over by the Lord President (the Lord Justice-General in criminal cases), is divided into an Inner House comprising 2 divisions of 4 judges each with mainly appellate function, and an Outer House comprising 15 single judges, sitting individually at first instance; it exercises the highest civil jurisdiction in Scotland, with the House of Lords as a court of appeal.

*Police.* The police forces in Scotland at the end of 1987 had an authorized establishment of 13,642; the strength was 12,470 men and 933 women. There were 3,425 part-time special constables. The total police net expenditure in Scotland was £302,526,000 for 1986–87.

## CIVIL JUDICIAL STATISTICS

ENGLAND AND WALES	1985	1986	1987
<i>Appellate Courts</i>			
Judicial Committee of the Privy Council	59	71	56
House of Lords	79	61	125
Court of Appeal	1,545	1,565	1,614
High Court of Justice (appeals and special cases from inferior courts)	1,910	1,948	2,436
<i>Courts of First Instance (excluding Magistrates' Courts and Tribunals)</i>			
High Court of Justice:			
Chancery Division <sup>1</sup>	21,176	26,156	22,868
Queen's Bench Division <sup>2</sup>	209,967	235,536	229,399
Family Division: Principal Registry matters <sup>3</sup>	1,279	1,528	1,471
District Registry wardships	1,850	2,250	2,500
Official Referee's	1,150	1,183	1,187
County courts: Matrimonial suits <sup>4</sup>	194,534	183,826	186,675
Other <sup>5</sup>	2,224,667	2,356,922	2,437,178
Restrictive Practices Court	17	3	5
SCOTLAND			
House of Lords (Appeals from Court of Session)	6	...	...
Court of Session—General Department	16,853	...	...
Sheriff's Ordinary Cause	61,332	...	...
Sheriff's Summary Cause	139,583	...	...

<sup>1</sup> Including Companies Court, Bankruptcy petitions and Patents Court.

<sup>2</sup> Including Admiralty Court.

<sup>3</sup> Adoption, guardianship and wardship.

<sup>4</sup> Including petitions filed at Principal Registry.

<sup>5</sup> Plaintiff, Admiralty, Bankruptcy and Companies, Adoption, Guardianship and miscellaneous.



# UNITED KINGDOM

## CRIMINAL STATISTICS

### ENGLAND AND WALES

	Total number of offenders		Indictable offences <sup>1</sup>	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
<i>Aged 10 and over</i>				
Proceeded against in magistrates' courts <sup>2</sup>	2,170,618	1,843,317	463,006	488,042
Found guilty at magistrates' courts	1,814,719	1,468,435	304,719	300,135
Found guilty at the Crown Court	79,490	86,284	79,490	86,284
Cautioned <sup>3</sup>	213,429	236,572	136,863	149,825
<i>Aged 10 and under 17</i>				
Proceeded against in magistrates' courts <sup>2</sup>	74,632	67,554	57,008	52,857
Found guilty at magistrates' courts	61,095	51,989	46,471	40,355
Found guilty at the Crown Court	1,535	1,608	1,535	1,608
Cautioned <sup>3</sup>	113,496	114,401	93,508	95,715

<sup>1</sup> Includes offences which can be tried either at the Crown Court or at magistrates' courts.

<sup>2</sup> Almost all defendants are initially proceeded against at magistrates' courts.

<sup>3</sup> Offenders who, on admission of guilt, are given an oral caution by or on the instruction of a senior police officer as an alternative to court proceedings. Such cautions are not given for motoring offences.

## CRIMINAL STATISTICS

### SCOTLAND

	All Crimes and Offences		Crimes <sup>1</sup>	
	1986	1987	1986	1987
<i>All persons and companies</i>				
Proceeded against in all courts	204,933	199,954	70,138	68,953
Charge proved	184,276	179,276	60,760	59,508
<i>Children (aged 8-15)</i>				
Proceeded against in all courts	471	434	310	287
Given formal police warning/ referred to reporter	22,073	24,663	16,915	18,147

<sup>1</sup> Crimes are generally the more serious criminal acts and offences the less serious. 'Crimes' are not equivalent in coverage to 'indictable/trieble either way offences'.

Average population in prisons, youth custody centres and detention centres (1987) in England and Wales was 48,426 (convicted 39,082; untried 9,074, and 270 non-criminal prisoners); in Scotland (1987), 5,446 (sentenced, 4,509; remanded, 938 and 1 other).

*Criminal statistics, England and Wales, 1987.* HMSO, 1987

*Prison statistics, England and Wales, 1987.* HMSO, 1987

Paterson, A., *The Law Lords*. London, 1982

**Religion.** The Anglican Communion has originated from the Church of England and parallels in its fellowship of autonomous churches the evolution of British influence beyond the seas from colonies to dominions and independent nations. There is no terrestrial head of the Anglican Communion; the Archbishop of Canterbury presides as *primus inter pares* at the decennial meetings of the bishops of the Anglican Communion at the Lambeth Conference. The last Conference was held in Canterbury in 1988 and was attended by 518 bishops.

The Anglican Communion consists of 28 member Churches or Provinces. These are Australia, Brazil, Burma, Burundi, Rwanda and Zaire, Canada, Central Africa, Council of Churches of East Asia, England, Indian Ocean, Ireland, Japan, Jerusalem and the Middle East, Kenya, Melanesia, New Zealand, Nigeria, Papua New Guinea, Scotland, Southern Africa, Southern Cone of America, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda, USA, Wales, West Africa, West Indies. There are also areas which come

under the metropolitan jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Canterbury. These are Bermuda, Ceylon, the Diocese of Europe, Falkland Islands, The Council of the Churches of East Asia (which includes the Church in Korea), The Diocese of Hong Kong and Macao, Sabah, Kuching, Singapore, West Malaysia, The Lusitanian Church (Portugal) and The Spanish Reformed Episcopal Church.

*England and Wales.* The established Church of England, which baptizes about 30% of the children born in England (*i.e.* excluding Wales but including the Isle of Man and the Channel Islands), is Protestant Episcopal. Civil disabilities on account of religion do not attach to any class of British subject. Under the Welsh Church Acts, 1914 and 1919, the Church in Wales and Monmouthshire was disestablished as from 1 April 1920, and Wales was formed into a separate Province.

The Queen is, under God, the supreme governor of the Church of England, with the right, regulated by statute, to nominate to the vacant archbishoprics and bishoprics. The Queen, on the advice of the First Lord of the Treasury, also appoints to such deaneries, prebendaries and canonries as are in the gift of the Crown, while a large number of livings and also some canonries are in the gift of the Lord Chancellor.

There are 2 archbishops (at the head of the 2 Provinces of Canterbury and York), and 42 diocesan bishops including the bishop of the diocese of Europe, which is part of the Province of Canterbury. Each archbishop has also his own particular diocese, wherein he exercises episcopal, as in his Province he exercises metropolitan, jurisdiction. In Dec. 1988 there were 69 suffragan and assistant bishops, 40 deans and provosts of cathedrals and 106 archdeacons. The General Synod, in England, consists of a House of Bishops, a House of Clergy and a House of Laity, and has power to frame legislation regarding Church matters. The first two Houses consist of the members of the Convocations of Canterbury and York, each of which consists of the diocesan bishops and elected representatives of the suffragan bishops, 6 for Canterbury province and 3 for York (forming an Upper House), deans, provosts, and archdeacons, and a certain number of proctors elected as the representatives of the inferior clergy, together with, in the case of Canterbury Convocation, 4 representatives of the Universities of Oxford, Cambridge, London and the Southern Universities and in the case of York 2 representatives for the Universities of Durham and Newcastle and the other Northern Universities; the chaplains in the Forces and 2 representatives of the Religious Communities (forming the Lower House). The House of Laity is elected by the lay members of the Deanery Synods but also includes 3 representatives of the Religious Communities and *ex-officio* Church Commissioners and Ecclesiastical Judges. Parochial affairs are managed by annual parochial church meetings and parochial church councils. Every Measure passed by the General Synod must be submitted to the Ecclesiastical Committee, consisting of 15 members of the House of Lords nominated by the Lord Chancellor and 15 members of the House of Commons nominated by the Speaker. This committee reports on each Measure to Parliament, and the Measure receives the Royal Assent and becomes law if each House of Parliament resolves that the Measure be presented to the Queen.

At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 13,250 ecclesiastical parishes, inclusive of the Isle of Man and the Channel Islands. These parishes do not, in many cases, coincide with civil parishes. Although most parishes have their own churches, not every parish nowadays can have its own incumbent or minister. In Dec. 1988 there were 6,816 beneficed clergymen excluding dignitaries, 1,309 other clergymen of incumbent status and 1,777 assistant curates working in the parishes.

During 1987 women were admitted to Holy Orders for the first time in the Church of England. 439 women were ordained as full-time stipendiary deacons.

Private persons possess the right of presentation to over 2,000 benefices; the patronage of the others belongs mainly to the Queen, the bishops and cathedrals, the Lord Chancellor, and the universities of Oxford and Cambridge. In addition to the 9,902 parochial incumbents and (male) assistant curates, there were (1988) 384 dignitaries, 325 non-parochial clergymen working within the diocesan framework and approximately 2,000 non-parochial clergymen outside the framework.

In 1986 there were estimated to be 1.6m. Easter and 1.7m. Christmas Communicants.

Of the 40,431 churches and chapels registered for the solemnization of marriages at 30 June 1986, 16,607 belonged to the Established Church and the Church in Wales and 23,824 to other religious denominations. Of the 347,924 marriages celebrated in 1986 (346,389 in 1985), 34% were in the Established Church and the Church in Wales, 18% in churches or chapels of other denominations and 48% were civil marriages in a Register Office.

Roman Catholics in England and Wales were 4,324,356 in 1988. There were 5 archdioceses and 17 dioceses, 6,423 clergy and 2,799 parish churches and 1,201 other churches open to the public. Convents, 1,298.

The Unitarians have about 250 places of worship and 8,000 members. The Salvation Army, had, in British Territory, 1987, over 1,800 officers. They operate 40 eventide homes, 52 centres for the homeless, 12 homes for children and adolescents and 9 alcoholic rehabilitation centres.

The following is a summary of recent statistics of certain churches:

<i>Denomination</i>	<i>Full members</i>	<i>Ministers in charge</i>	<i>Local and lay preachers</i>
Methodist	450,406	3,210	13,378
Independent Methodist	4,108	138	—
Wesleyan Reform Union	3,224	20	153
United Reform	130,000	1,000	—
Baptist	170,610	2,132	—
Calvinistic Methodist Church of Wales	68,585	152	—
Moravian	4,000	40	—
Society of Friends	18,087	—	—

There were (1989) about 410,000 Jews in the UK with about 295 synagogues; Moslems (900,000); Sikhs (175,000); Hindus (140,000).

*Scotland.* The Church of Scotland (established in 1560 at the Reformation and re-established in 1688 as part of the Revolution Settlement) is Presbyterian, the ministers all being of equal rank. There is in each parish a kirk session consisting of the minister and a number of laymen called elders. There are presbyteries (formed by groups of parishes), meeting frequently throughout the year, and these are again grouped in synods, which meet half-yearly and can be appealed to against the decisions of the presbyteries.

The supreme court is the General Assembly, which now consists of some 1,250 members, half clerical and half lay, chosen by the different presbyteries. It meets annually in May (under the presidency of a Moderator appointed by the Assembly, the Sovereign being present or represented by a Lord High Commissioner, appointed by the Queen on the nomination of the Government of the day), and sits for 7 days. Any matters not decided during this period may be left to a Commission which will sit if required.

On 2 Oct. 1929 the Church of Scotland and the United Free Church of Scotland were reunited under the name of The Church of Scotland, and the two bodies met in General Assembly in Edinburgh as one. The united Church had, in Scotland, on 31 Dec. 1986, 1,745 congregations, 854,311 members; 18,633 teachers and 104,552 scholars in attendance in Sunday schools. The Church courts are the General Assembly, 12 synods, 46 presbyteries in Scotland, 1 in England and 2 on the Continent. Income in 1981 was £41,740,070. There are divinity faculties in 4 Scottish universities of Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen and St Andrews, with 60 professors and lecturers who are mostly ministers of the Church of Scotland.

The Episcopal Church of Scotland is a province of the Anglican Church and is one of the historic Scottish churches. It consists of 7 dioceses. As at 31 Dec. 1988 it had 263 churches and missions, 289 clergy and 59,940 members, of whom 36,033 were communicants.

There are in Scotland some small outstanding Presbyterian bodies and also Baptists, Congregationalists, Methodists and Unitarians.

The Roman Catholic Church which celebrated the centenary of the restoration of the Hierarchy in 1978, had in Scotland (1987) 1 cardinal, 2 archbishops and 9 bishops, 1,066 clergy, 472 parishes, and 798,150 adherents.

The proportion of marriages in Scotland according to the rites of the various



Churches in 1986 was: Church of Scotland, 39.4%; Roman Catholic, 13.1%; Episcopal, 1.4%; United Free, 0.4%; others, 4.4%; civil, 41.3%.

**Education.** *The Publicly Maintained System of Education England and Wales:* Compulsory schooling begins at the age of 5 and the minimum leaving age for all pupils is 16<sup>1</sup>. No tuition fees are payable in any publicly maintained school (but it is open to parents, if they choose, to pay for their children to attend other schools). The post-school stage, which is voluntary, includes universities, polytechnics and other further education establishments (including those which provide courses for the training of teachers), as well as adult education and the youth service. Financial assistance is generally available to students on higher education courses in the university and non-university sectors and to some students on other courses in further education.

*Nursery Education.* Provision for children under 5 is made in either nursery schools or in nursery or infant classes in primary schools. In the public sector no fees are payable. In Jan. 1987 there were 558 maintained nursery schools and 4,295 primary schools with nursery classes. There were 49,502 pupils under 5 attending nursery schools and 467,262 pupils under 5 in nursery and infant classes. About 49% of all these children were attending part-time.

*Primary Schools.* These provide for pupils from the age of 5 up to the age of 11. In Jan. 1988 there were 18,736 primary schools in England of which 2,839 were infant schools providing for pupils up to the age of about 7, the remainder mainly taking pupils from age 5 through to 11. Nearly all primary schools take both boys and girls. Just over 21% of primary schools had 100 full time pupils or less.

There are 1,774 primary schools in Wales. In those primary schools (and some secondary schools) which are in the predominantly Welsh-speaking areas, the main language of instruction is Welsh. There are also 'Welsh', or, more accurately, bilingual schools in mainly English-speaking parts of Wales. Generally children transfer from primary to secondary schools at 11.

<sup>1</sup> As a result of the Education (School Leaving Dates) Act 1976, one of the two former leaving dates was amended. This means that pupils whose dates of birth fall between 1 Feb. and 31 Aug. (inclusive) cease to be of compulsory school age on the Friday before the last Monday in May. Some of these pupils will leave school before their 16th birthdays. Pupils whose dates of birth fall between 1 Sept. and 31 Jan. (inclusive) remain of compulsory school age until the end of the Easter term following their 16th birthdays.

*Middle Schools.* A number of local education authorities operate a middle school system. These provide for pupils from the age of 8, 9 or 10 up to the age of 12, 13 or 14. In Jan. 1988 there were 1,190 middle schools in England deemed either primary or secondary according principally to the age range of the school concerned. This number is 23 fewer than in 1987.

*Secondary Schools.* These usually provide for pupils from the age of 11 upwards. In Jan. 1988 there were 3,546 secondary schools in England. Some local education authorities have retained selection at age 11 for entry to grammar schools of which there were 153 such schools in 1988. There were a small number of technical schools in 1987 which specialise to a greater or lesser extent in technical studies. There were 222 secondary modern schools in 1988 providing a general education up to the minimum school leaving age of 16, although exceptionally some pupils may be allowed to stay on beyond that age in these schools.

Almost all local education authorities operate a system of comprehensive schools to which pupils are admitted without reference to ability or aptitude. In Jan. 1988 there were 3,153 such schools in England with just over 2.6m. pupils. With the development of comprehensive education various patterns of secondary schools have come into operation. Principally these are: 1. all through schools with pupils aged 11 to 18 or 11 to 16; pupils over 16 being able to transfer to an 11 to 18 school or a sixth form college providing for pupils aged 16 to 19. (There were 104 sixth form colleges in England in 1988). 2. local education authorities operating a three-tier system involving middle schools where transfer to secondary school is at ages 12, 13 or 14. These correspond to 12 to 18, 13 to 18 and 14 to 18 comprehensive schools respectively; or 3. in areas where there are no middle schools a two-tier

system of junior and senior comprehensive schools for pupils aged 11 to 18 with optional transfer to these schools at age 13 or 14.

There were a number of other secondary schools of various combinations of grammar, technical or modern in Wales in 1988. There were 41 secondary using Welsh as a teaching medium, of these 16 are designated bilingual schools.

*Direct Grant Grammar Schools.* These were schools which were independent of local education authorities and which received grants direct from the Department of Education and Science for pupils in their secondary departments (upper schools). The system began to be phased out in 1976 and in Jan. 1987 only one grammar school was in receipt of the grant. It is expected that direct grant payments to grammar schools ceased in 1988.

*Assisted Places Scheme.* In order to give able children a wider range of educational opportunity the government set up, in 1981, the assisted places scheme to give help with tuition fees at independent schools to parents who could not otherwise afford them. In the school year 1987-88, the 226 participating schools offered a total of 5,516 assisted places, 4,488 for entry at age 11, 12 or 13, and 1,020 for entry at sixth form level.

*Special Education.* The Education Act 1981, which came into force in April 1983, switched the focus of attention from a child's disability to his or her special educational needs. The Act restated the Government's policy that children with special educational needs should be educated in ordinary schools provided that is compatible with the child receiving the special educational provision he requires, the provision of efficient education for the children with whom he will be educated and the efficient use of resources. Many children with special educational needs are being educated in ordinary schools. The Act provided that local education authorities should maintain 'statements' on children whom they had assessed as having special educational needs and for whom they were of the opinion that they should determine the special educational provision which should be made to meet these needs - that is, the more severely affected children.

The majority of children with statements of special educational needs attend special schools, of which there are at present around 1,443, including hospital special schools. Some 94,000 pupils with statements are educated in special schools, of whom around 1,100 are in hospital special schools. Additionally, around 6,000 pupils with statements are educated in independent schools under arrangements made by local education authorities.

Of maintained special schools, 1,118 are day schools, 173 are mainly boarding schools and there are 68 hospital special schools. Attendance is compulsory from 5-16. In addition, the Act's definition of special educational needs applies to children under 5 who are likely to have a learning difficulty when over this age, or whose learning difficulty would be likely to persist if special educational provision were not made for them. Authorities also have a duty to make special educational provision either in a school or in a college of further education for children aged 16-18 who have been assessed as being in need of, and who want, such provision. In addition to the provision in ordinary and special schools, authorities can make special arrangements for educating children at home, in small groups or in hospitals. There are also some establishments which provide further education, P.E. vocational training and for assessment for employment purely for handicapped school leavers.

The statistics in the preceding paragraphs on special education are for England only and were valid at Jan. 1988. The figures are not comparable with those given for 1984 (when transitional arrangements were in force) or previous years because of changes in the way statistics are collected as a result of the 1981 Act.

*Ancillary Services.* Local education authorities may provide registered pupils at any school maintained by them with milk, meals and refreshment and they may make such charges as they think fit for anything they provide. For pupils whose parents are in receipt of supplementary benefit or family income supplement, however, authorities are required to ensure that such provision is made for the



pupil at mid-day as appears to them to be requisite and anything which is provided must be free of charge. Authorities are also required to remit the whole or part of any charge for anything they provide for other pupils if having regard to their circumstances, they consider it appropriate to do so. Facilities must also be provided, free of charge, for consuming any meals or other refreshments which pupils bring to school themselves.

*Further and Higher Education (Non-University).* In Nov. 1987 there were about 475 institutions in England providing courses of further education, ranging from shorthand instruction to degree-level, postgraduate work and courses of teacher-training. Course enrolments numbered 609,308 full-time (including 76,907 sandwich students) and 1.6m. part-time and evening (including 498,629 students released by their employers). There were in addition 2,412 Adult Education Centres (formerly known as Evening Institutes), which provided mainly part-time courses of non-advanced general education and were attended by 1,371,037 students. The major providers of higher education, outside the university sector, are the 29 polytechnics. These are engaged mainly in higher education, offering CNAA degrees of a standard comparable to those of universities, professional qualifications and courses in a wide range of disciplines leading to awards of the Business and Technician Education Council. Many other colleges of further education are however involved to a greater or lesser extent in the higher education sector of further education. Most polytechnics and further education colleges cater for a mixture of full and part-time students, and also sandwich students whose periods of study at college alternate with periods of practical training in industry or other employment. The Secretary of State receives advice on the funding and management of advanced further education from the National Advisory Body for Public Sector Higher Education (NAB) whose remit covers almost all non-university provision at this level, most of which is maintained by local education authorities.

Courses were also provided by the Workers' Educational Association, the University extramural departments and the Welsh National Council of YMCAs.

Education at institutions of further education is not free, but fees are generally low, and are remitted for most students under the age of 18 by the local authority.

*The Youth Service.* The Youth Service forms part of the education system and is concerned with promoting the personal development and social education of young people through a wide range of leisure-time activities. A duty is laid upon local education authorities by the provisions of the 1944 Education Act to secure the adequacy of such facilities for young people in their area; to this end they either provide, maintain and staff youth clubs, centres and other facilities themselves or assist voluntary agencies to do so.

Grants to voluntary agencies to help meet the cost of regional and national capital projects and to national voluntary bodies towards their headquarters and training expenses are made by the Government.

*Awards to Students.* Local education authorities in England and Wales are responsible for making man-datory awards to suitably qualified students taking first-degree and comparable courses, courses of initial teacher-training and certain other advanced level courses. These awards cover fees and maintenance but the maintenance grants are subject to the income of the student and his parents or spouse. In addition scholarships may be available both from universities and other sources. The authorities may also give discretionary awards to students who do not qualify for mandatory awards including those taking non-degree level courses.

In 1986-87 there were 441,997 full value awards current, 44% at universities and 34,551 mandatory awards for initial teacher-training courses. Lesser value awards, which are paid below the full rate of the student's fees and maintenance, were also made by the authorities. There were 115,694 such awards taken up in the academic year 1986-87.

The Research Council gave over 6,600 new awards in 1987-88 and there were more than 13,000 current awards in that academic year. In 1988-89 the British



Academy gave 924 new awards and the Department 594 state bursaries and 70 state scholarships.

*Teachers.* In order to qualify for work in maintained schools in England and Wales, most teachers take a course of professional training. Graduates and holders of some specialist qualifications obtained before 1 Jan. 1970 are regarded as qualified to teach without training, but anyone obtaining these qualifications after that date is obliged to take a training course before being appointed for the first time to a primary or special school, and since 1 Jan. 1974 before first appointment to a secondary school.

In 1987 there were some 58 non-university institutions (including 20 polytechnics) and 31 university departments of education providing recognized courses of initial teacher-training in England and Wales.

In Nov. 1988 there were about 40,000 students on initial teacher-training courses.

On 30 Sept. 1985, 409,000 full-time teachers were employed by local education authorities in maintained nursery, primary and secondary schools in England and Wales.

*Finance.* Total current and capital expenditure on education in England (including Universities GB, and Mandatory Awards England and Wales) from public funds is estimated at £17,693m. for 1988-89 as compared with £16,423m. for 1987-88.

**Scotland.** The statistics on schools relate to education authority and grant-aided schools. From 1974-75 all teachers employed in these schools require to be qualified; figures given are full-time equivalents.

*Nursery Education.* In Sept. 1986 there were 569 nursery schools and departments, with a total enrolment of 38,685 pupils in 1985.

*Primary Education.* In Sept. 1986 there were 2,418 primary schools and departments and the number on the registers was 433,921. In Sept. 1986, 21,236 teachers were employed in primary schools and departments.

*Secondary Education.* In Sept. 1986 there were 441 secondary schools with 344,934 pupils. Of these schools in 1985, 382 were all-through comprehensive establishments providing the full range of Scottish Certificate of Education courses and also non-certificate courses. A further 59 schools were comprehensive in intake and provided both non-certificate and certificate courses, the latter however only up to Ordinary grade. The remaining 18 schools, these were selective in intake providing certificate courses only (Ordinary grade and Higher grade). Pupils who start their secondary education in schools which do not cater for courses beyond Ordinary grade may in the light of their performance, or for other reasons, be transferred at the end of their second or fourth year to schools providing Higher grade courses. There were 26,034 teachers in secondary schools at Sept. 1986.

*Special Schools.* In Sept. 1986 there were 356 special schools and departments. The total number of handicapped children under instruction was 9,815.

*Further Education.* Centres and colleges for formal further education numbered 185 in 1986-87.

The student population was 247,989, of whom 60,882 attended full-time (advanced courses, 30,657; non-advanced, 30,225) and 187,107 part-time (advanced courses, 32,362; non-advanced, 154,745).

*Teacher-Training.* In Nov. 1986 there were 3,918 students in 7 colleges of education on pre-service courses of teacher-training.

*Finance.* Total expenditure on education met from revenue in 1986-87 was £1,716m. (excluding university education and loan charges).

*Independent Schools.* Outside the state system of education there were in England 2,273 independent schools in Jan. 1988, ranging from large 'public' schools to small local ones. There were (Jan. 1988) 522,949 full-time and 17,118 part-time pupils in these schools. In Wales 11,703 full-time pupils attended 67 independent schools. Fees are charged by all these schools, which receive no grant from central

government sources. All independent schools in England are required to be registered by the Department and are liable to the inspection by HM Inspector. The term 'public schools' refers to independent schools in membership of the Headmasters' Conference, Governing Bodies Association or the Governing Bodies of Girls' Schools Association. Qualifications under which a school may be represented at the Headmasters' Conference include the measure of independence enjoyed by the governing body and the amount of advanced courses undertaken. Some of these schools are for boarders only, but the majority include non-resident 'day-pupils'. In Scotland there were 114 independent schools, with a total of 32,336 pupils in Sept. 1988. A small number of the Scottish independent schools are of the 'public school' type but they are not known as 'public schools' since in Scotland this term is used to denote education authority (*i.e.*, state) schools.

The earliest of the schools were founded by, and attached to, the medieval churches. Many were founded as 'grammar' (classical) schools in the 16th century, receiving charters from the reigning sovereign. Reformed mainly in the middle of the 19th century, these schools now provide the highest form of English pre-university education. Among the most well-known independent schools are Eton College, founded in 1440 by Henry VI, with 1,263 pupils; Winchester College, 1394, founded by William of Wykeham, Bishop of Winchester, 657 pupils; Harrow School, founded in 1560 as a grammar school by John Lyon, a yeoman, 773 pupils; Charterhouse, 1611, 712 pupils. Among the earliest foundations are King's School, Canterbury, founded 600 (with 706 pupils); King's School, Rochester, 604 (593); St Peter's, York, 627 (666).

*Universities.* In England there are 34 traditional degree-giving universities. In addition there are the London and Manchester Business Schools and the Open University. Eight new universities have been established since 1961 and 8 former Colleges of Advanced Technology gained university status in the 1960's.

In *Wales* there is 1 university, the University of Wales, with colleges at Aberystwyth, Bangor, Cardiff, Lampeter and Swansea. The University of Wales School of Medicine is a school of the University, and the University of Wales Institute of Science and Technology became a constituent college in Nov. 1967.

In *Scotland* there are 8 universities, St Andrew's, Glasgow, Aberdeen and Edinburgh Universities date from the 15th and 16th centuries while the others, Strathclyde, Heriot-Watt, Stirling and Dundee have been formally established since the early 1960s.

All these universities and colleges are independent, self-governing institutions, although they receive substantial aid from the State (in the case of the Open University by direct grant from the Department of Education and Science, and the traditional universities through the Universities Funding Council). The UFC, which from 1 April 1989, becomes the successor to the UGC, is a non departmental public body with full executive responsibility for distributing to universities funds provided for that purpose by the Secretary of State for Education and Science and voted by Parliament. It has 15 members, from higher education and elsewhere. The Council also advises the Secretary of State on matters relating to universities. The Government receives advice on the universities' requirements for central computing facilities from the Computer Board for the Universities and Research Councils whose members are also drawn from the universities and industry.

The Royal College of Art and the Cranfield Institute of Technology are primarily postgraduate institutions which award higher degrees under charters granted in 1967 and 1969 respectively.

The Open University received its Royal Charter on 1 June 1969 and is an independent, self-governing institution, awarding its own degrees at undergraduate and postgraduate level. It is financed by the Government through the Department of Education and Science and by the receipt of students' fees.

Tuition is by means of correspondence textbooks, audio and video cassettes, radio and television broadcasts, summer and residential schools. Students can also attend one of over 250 local study centres. No formal qualifications are required for entry to undergraduate or associate student courses.



Anyone resident in the UK aged 18 or over may apply. There are over 130 undergraduate courses; many are available on a one-off basis to associate students.

In 1988 it had over 71,500 undergraduates, over 2,200 postgraduates, over 22,000 short course and associate students and sold over 70,000 packs of learning materials. The university has over 2,500 full-time staff working at its Milton Keynes headquarters and in 13 regional centres throughout the country. There are 5,500 tutors and counsellors.

The University of Buckingham offers two-year honours degree courses. The academic year commencing in Jan. and consisting of four ten-week terms. There are four Schools of Studies: Accounting, Business, and Economics; Humanities; Law; and Sciences. Postgraduate courses are also offered in all schools of studies. In 1988, there were 710 full-time students. Opened in 1976, the University of Buckingham received its Royal Charter in March 1983.

All universities charge fees, but financial help is available to students from several sources. The universities themselves provide scholarships of various kinds and local education authorities and the Scottish Education Department make awards to help suitable students to attend university. The amount of aid given generally depends upon the parents' means. The majority of the students at universities in Great Britain are in receipt of some form of financial assistance.

Awards known as state studentships are offered on a competitive basis by the Department from among candidates considered by the universities and other higher education institutions to be qualified for postgraduate studies in the humanities; similar awards, tenable at universities or other higher education institutions, are offered by the Research Councils to students studying topics within the broad spectrum of agriculture and food; the biological sciences; man's natural environment; science and engineering and the social sciences at post-graduate level.

The following table gives the number of professors, lecturers, etc., and students (full-time and sandwich courses) for 1987-88:

<i>University or college</i>	<i>Students</i>	<i>Staff</i>	<i>University or college</i>	<i>Students</i>	<i>Staff</i>
Aston	3,629	359	Reading	5,953	778
Bath	3,722	524	Salford	3,990	426
Birmingham	9,347	1,592	Sheffield	8,154	1,082
Bradford	4,258	518	Southampton	6,592	1,156
Bristol	7,294	1,219	Surrey	3,511	607
Brunel	2,985	376	Sussex	4,395	605
Cambridge	12,475	1,901	Warwick	6,285	808
City	3,277	372	York	3,746	478
Durham	5,071	608			
East Anglia	4,267	502	<i>Wales—</i>		
Essex	3,222	379	Aberystwyth U.C.	3,247	382
Exeter	5,114	571	Bangor U.C.	2,896	394
Hull	4,924	490	Cardiff U.C.	5,441	606
Keele	2,922	331	St David's, Lampeter	740	72
Kent	4,187	472	Swansea U.C.	4,701	488
Lancaster	4,722	594	Univ. of Wales Institute of		
Leds	10,033	1,441	Science and Technology	2,823	338
Leicester	4,806	746	Univ. of Wales		
Liverpool	7,896	1,233	College of Medicine	830	355
London Business School	268	72			
London	40,628	8,751	<i>Scotland—</i>		
Loughborough	5,403	746	Aberdeen	5,690	776
Manchester Business School	259	46	Dundee	3,444	522
Manchester	11,338	1,821	Edinburgh	10,162	1,735
Univ. of Manchester Inst. of			Glasgow	10,810	1,479
Science and Technology	4,201	685	Heriot-Watt	3,798	416
Newcastle	7,821	1,234	St Andrews	3,619	413
Nottingham	7,334	1,103	Stirling	3,059	365
Oxford	12,357	1,977	Strathclyde	7,759	1,009

Women students are admitted on equal terms with men. Number of women students: England, 95,706; Wales, 9,066; Scotland, 20,464. There are, however, colleges exclusively for female students at Oxford and Cambridge. Total number of full-time or sandwich students at universities listed above: England, 236,386; Wales, 20,678; Scotland, 48,341; total, 305,405.



McIntosh, N. E., Calder, J. A. and Swift, B., *A Degree of Difference*. London, 1976  
 Perry, W., *Open University: A Personal Account*. Open Univ. Press, 1976

**The British Council.** The British Council was established in Nov. 1934 and incorporated by Royal Charter in 1940. Its aims are the promotion of an enduring understanding and appreciation of Britain in other countries through cultural, educational and technical co-operation.

The Council's total budget in 1986-87 amounted to £242.1m.

The Council arranges short advisory tours overseas by British experts. In a number of countries it is also the overseas administrative arm of the British Volunteer Programme. It awards scholarships and bursaries and arranges study programmes for some 25,000 visitors a year in Britain. It administers central government funds for youth exchanges with other countries.

In Britain the Council administers the programmes of award schemes for overseas students, meets many students on arrival from overseas, and provides an accommodation service for students from overseas for whom it has a special responsibility. The Council runs offices in Britain, mainly in university cities, for these purposes.

The Council is increasingly called on to administer training schemes and educational services financed by overseas authorities, or by multilateral agencies, on a contractual basis. The Council's specialist courses and summer schools provide advanced study in a number of fields, notably medicine, science, literature and the arts, English language and education. Payment is made by the student, or their parent organization, or by some other sponsor.

The Council produces the following periodicals: *Studying in Britain*, *Media in Education and Development*, *British Book News* and *Britain Abroad*. Other publications include the series *Writers and their Work*, *Notes on Literature*, *British Education*, *British Books and Libraries* and a number of booklets including *Scholarships Abroad*, *Introducing Wales*, *How to Live in Britain* and *Statistics of Overseas Students in the United Kingdom*. The Council has sponsored two major series of literature recordings, *The Complete Works of Shakespeare* and *The English Poets from Chaucer to Yeats*.

*Chairman:* Sir David Orr, MC.

*Director-General:* Richard Francis.

*Headquarters:* 10 Spring Gdns., London, SW1A 2BN.

**National Insurance.** The National Insurance Act, 1946, came into operation on 5 July 1948, repealing the existing schemes of health, pensions and unemployment insurance. This Act, along with later legislation, was consolidated as the National Insurance Act, 1965.

The Social Security Act 1975 introduced, from 6 April 1975, a new system of national insurance contributions to replace the previous system of flat-rate and graduated contributions. Since 6 April 1975, Class 1 contributions have been related to the employee's earnings and are collected with PAYE income tax, instead of by affixing stamps to a card. Class 2 and Class 3 contributions remain flat-rate, but, in addition to Class 2 contributions, those who are self-employed may be liable to pay Class 4 contributions, which for the year 1989-90 will be at the rate of 6.3% on profits or gains between £5,050 and £16,900, which are assessable for income tax under Schedule D. The non-employed and others whose contribution record is not sufficient to give entitlement to benefits are able to pay a Class 3 contribution voluntarily to qualify for a limited range of benefits. Class 2 weekly contributions for 1989-90 for men and women are £4.25. Class 3 contributions are £4.15 a week.

From 6 April 1978 the Social Security Pensions Act 1975 introduced earnings-related retirement, invalidity and widows' pensions. Employee's national insurance contribution liability depends on whether he is in contracted-out or not contracted-out employment.

For non contracted-out employment in 1989-90: On earnings between £43 and £74.99 a week, employee and employer both pay 5%; on earnings between £75 and £114.99 a week, employee and employer both pay 7%; on earnings between £115 and £164.99 a week, employee and employer both pay 9%; on earnings between £165 and £325 a week the employee pays 9% and the employer pays 10.45%; on

earnings of over £325 a week the employee pays 9% of £325 but the employer pays 10.45% of all earnings. For contracted-out employment in 1989-90: On earnings between £43 and £74.99 a week the employee pays 5% on the first £43 and 3% on the remainder and the employer pays 5% on the first £43 and 1.2% on the remainder; on earnings between £75 and £114.99 a week the employee pays 7% on the first £43 and 5% on the remainder and the employer pays 7% on the first £43 and 3.2% on the remainder; on earnings between £115 and £164.99 a week the employee pays 9% on the first £43 and 7% on the remainder and the employer pays 9% on the first £43 and 5.2% on the remainder; on earnings between £165 and £325 a week the employee pays 9% on the first £43 and 7% on the remainder and the employer pays 10.45% on the first £43 and 6.65% on the remainder; on earnings of over £325 a week the employee pays 9% on the first £43 and 7% on earnings between £43 and £325 and the employer pays 10.45% on the first £43, 6.65% on earnings between £43 and £325 and 10.45% on the remainder.

The State supplements the contributions paid by contributors and employers, from general taxation. Contributions and supplement together with interest on investments form the income of the National Insurance Fund from which benefits are paid.

**Statutory Sick Pay (SSP).** Employers are now responsible for paying statutory sick pay (SSP) to their employees for up to 28 weeks in any period of incapacity for work. Basically, all employees aged 16 years and over are covered by the scheme whenever they are sick for 4 or more days consecutively. For most employees SSP completely replaces their entitlement to State sickness benefit which is not payable as long as any employer's responsibility for SSP remains.

*Benefits.* Qualification for any benefit depends upon fulfilment of the appropriate contribution conditions. Persons who are incapable of work as the result of an industrial accident may get sickness benefit followed by invalidity benefit without having to satisfy the contributions conditions. Employed persons may qualify for all the benefits; self-employed may not qualify for unemployment benefit.

*Sickness Benefit.* From 10 April 1989 the rate is £33.20 a week plus £20.55 a week for an adult dependant.

*Unemployment Benefit* is paid through the local unemployment benefit offices of the Department of Employment. The rate is £34.70 a week plus £21.40 a week for an adult dependant.

*Invalidity Benefit* replaces sickness benefit after 168 days of entitlement. It comprises a basic invalidity pension of £43.60 weekly and an invalidity allowance of £8.95 if incapacity began before age 40; £5.80 if incapacity began between 40 and 49 or £2.90 if it began between 50 and 59 (54 for women). Increases are: £26.20 for an adult dependant plus £8.95 for each child for whom child benefit is payable. Invalidity allowance is reduced or extinguished by the amount of any additional invalidity pension and/or guaranteed minimum pension to which there is title.

*Maternity Benefit.* Statutory maternity pay may be payable to a woman from her employer if she has been employed by him for 6 months and her earnings were above the lower earnings limit. If she has been employed by the same employer for at least 2 years, payment for the first 6 weeks of maternity absence may be at 90% of her average earnings. Payment for the remainder of the period is at a standard rate of £36.25. Women who do not qualify for statutory maternity pay may be entitled to maternity allowance from DHSS if they satisfy a test of recent work and contributions paid. From April 1989, the weekly rate is £33.20. Both statutory maternity pay and maternity allowance can be paid for up to 18 weeks. Payment can start at the earliest 11 weeks before the expected week of confinement but the woman has some choice in deciding when to give up work and still retain title to the full 18 weeks.

*Widow's Benefits.* From 11 April 1988 the three main widow's benefits, will be: Widow's payment, widowed mother's allowance, widow's pension.

A widow cannot get any widow's benefits based on her husband's NI if: She had



been divorced from the man who has died; or she was living with the man as if she were married to him, but without being legally married to him; or she is living with another man as if she is married to him. A widow can only get widow's benefits if her husband has paid enough NI contributions. The rules about the number of NI contributions that are needed for these benefits can be complicated.

*Widow's Payment:* A widow may be able to get this benefit if her husband has paid enough NI contributions and: She was under 60 when her husband died; or her husband was not getting a State Retirement Pension when he died.

A widow who is entitled to a widow's payment will get a single payment of £1,000. This will be tax-free.

*Widowed Mother's Allowance:* A widow may be able to get a widowed mother's allowance if her husband has paid enough NI contributions and: She is receiving child benefit for one of her children; or her husband was receiving child benefit, or she is expecting her husband's baby.

A widow who is entitled to a widowed mother's allowance will get an amount that is based on her husband's NI contributions. The maximum will be £43.60 a week. She will also get £8.95 a week for each of her children and she may also get an additional pension based on her husband's earnings since 1978. Widowed mother's allowance is usually paid as long as the widow is getting child benefit. Widowed Mother's Allowance is taxable.

*Widow's Pension:* A widow may be able to get a widow's pension if her husband has paid enough NI contributions. She must be 45 or over when her husband died or when her widowed mother's allowance ends. A widow cannot get a widow's pension at the same time as a widowed mother's allowance. A widow who is entitled to a widow's pension will get an amount that depends on her age when her husband died or when her widowed mother's allowance ends. If she was 55 or over she will get the full rate of widow's pension. The maximum amount of widow's pension will be £43.60 a week. She may also get an additional pension based on her husband's earnings since 1978. Widow's pension is usually paid until the widow is entitled to state retirement pension, when she is 60 or older. Widow's pension is taxable.

*Guardian's Allowance.* A person who is responsible for an orphan child may be entitled to a guardian's allowance of £8.95 a week in addition to the amount of child benefit payable in respect of that child. Normally both the child's parents must be dead but when the child is illegitimate, or the parents were divorced, or one parent is missing, or serving a long sentence of imprisonment, the allowance may, in certain circumstances, be paid on the death of one parent only.

*Retirement Pension.* In order to receive a retirement pension, men between 65 and 70, and women between 60 and 65 must have retired from regular employment. From 6 April 1979 a woman divorced over the age of 60 must satisfy the retirement conditions before a pension is payable. The standard rates of basic pensions are £43.60 a week for a man or woman on his or her own contributions and £26.20 for a married woman through her husband's contributions. Proportionately reduced pensions are payable where contribution records are deficient. For a person who reaches pension age on or after 6 April 1979, additional pension may also be payable. This is based on the earnings on which he or she has paid Class 1 contributions in each complete tax year between April 1978 and pension age. If the person has been a member of a contracted-out occupational pension scheme, that scheme will be responsible for paying the whole or part of the additional pension. An increase of £26.20 a week may be payable for a dependent wife. If she resides with the beneficiary the increase is gradually reduced for earnings over £34.70 a week. A tapered earnings rule (£45.09) applies to claims made before 16 Sept. 1985. From that date the earnings rule will apply in these circumstances. When the spouse/woman looking after the claimant's child is living with the claimant an adult dependant's allowance will only be payable if the dependant's earnings do not exceed the standard rate of unemployment benefit for a person under pensionable age (currently £34.70). If she does not reside with the beneficiary an increase is not



payable if she earns more than £26.20 a week. In addition £8.95 a week may be payable for each child for whom child benefit is payable. In certain circumstances an increase of £26.20 a week may be payable for a woman having care of the pensioner's children. In addition, a man who had paid graduated contributions receives 5.71p per week for every £7.50 of graduated contributions paid, and a woman 5.71p per week for every £9 paid. Although no further graduated contributions have been paid after April 1975, pension already earned will be paid along with the basic pension in the normal way. If, after being awarded a retirement pension, a man under 70 or a woman under 65 earns more than £75 in a calendar week the pension for the next pension week, including any increase for dependants, will be reduced by 5p for every 10p earned between £75 and £79 and by 5p for every 5p earned over £79. If retirement is postponed after minimum pension age increments of all components of the pension can be earned for periods of deferred retirement. From 6 April 1979 increments are earned at the rate of one-seventh penny per £1 of basic pension for every 6 days (excluding Sundays) for which pension has been foregone. Any days for which another benefit has been paid will not count. These increments must be at least 1% of the pension rate unless the minimum was earned under the arrangements which applied before 6 April 1979. For periods between 6 April 1975 and that date, the rate was one-eighth penny per £1 of the basic pension rate for every 6 days and for periods of deferred retirement before 6 April 1975 increments were based on the number of contributions paid as an employed or self-employed person. At age 70 for a man (65 for a woman) the pension for which a person has qualified may be paid in full whether a person continues in work or not irrespective of the amount of earnings. At the age of 80 an age addition of £0.25 a week is payable. In addition non-contributory pensions are now payable, subject to residence conditions, to persons aged 80 and over who do not qualify for a retirement pension or qualify for one at a low rate. The rates of these pensions, which are financed by Exchequer funds, are £26.20 a week for a single person and £15.65 for a married woman. These amounts do not include the £0.25 age addition. From 22 Dec. 1984 the lower rate of category D retirement pension payable to married women was abolished.

**The Industrial Injuries Provisions of the Social Security Act, 1975.** The Industrial Injuries Act, which also came into operation on 5 July 1948, with its later amending Acts, was consolidated as the National Insurance (Industrial Injuries) Act, 1965. This legislation was incorporated in the Social Security Act, 1975. The scheme provides a system of insurance against 'personal injury by accident arising out of and in the course of employment' and against certain prescribed diseases and injuries due to the nature of the employment. It takes the place of the Workmen's Compensation Acts and covers persons who are employed earners under the Social Security Act. There are no contribution conditions for the payment of benefit. Three types of benefit are provided:

(1) *Disablement benefit.* This is payable where, as the result of an industrial accident or prescribed disease, there is a loss of physical or mental faculty. The loss of faculty will be assessed as a percentage by comparison with a person of the same age and sex whose condition is normal. If the assessment is between 14-100% benefit will be paid as weekly pension; 14-19% are payable at the 20% rate. The rates vary from £14.24 (20% disabled) to £71.20 (100% disablement). Assessments of less than 14% do not normally attract basic benefit except for certain progressive chest diseases. Pensions for persons under 18 are at a reduced rate. When injury benefit was abolished for industrial accidents occurring and prescribed diseases commencing on or after 6 April 1983, a common start date was introduced for the payment of disablement benefit 90 days (excluding Sundays) after the date of the relevant accident or onset of the disease. The following increases can be paid with disablement benefit: Constant attendance allowance – where the disability for which the claimant is receiving disablement benefit is assessed at 100% and is so severe that they need constant care and attention. There are 4 rates depending on the amount of attendance needed. Exceptionally severe disablement allowance –

where the claimant is in receipt of constant attendance allowance at one of the higher rates and the need for attendance is likely to be permanent.

Reduced earnings allowance (previously known as special hardship allowance) is now a separate benefit. Entitlement exists if the claimant has not retired and cannot go back to their normal job or do another job for the same pay because of the effects of the disability caused by the accident or disease. It can be paid whether or not disablement benefit is paid, providing the disablement benefit assessment is 1% or more (e.g. where disablement is assessed at less than 14%) and on top of 100% disablement benefit. Entitlement to reduced earnings allowance ceases when claimants retire for National Insurance purposes on or after 10 April 1989. In most cases it will be replaced by retirement allowance.

(2) *Death Benefit.* This is payable to the widow of a person who died before 11 April 1988 as the result of an industrial accident or a prescribed disease. Benefit is a weekly pension of either £43.60 or £13.08 depending on such factors as age and entitlement to a child's allowance. A child allowance of £8.95 per child may be payable to the widow if she is entitled to child benefit for children of the deceased. Deaths which occurred on or after 11 April 1988 – a widow is entitled to full widow's benefits even if her late husband did not satisfy the contribution condition, if he died as a result of an industrial accident or prescribed disease.

*War Pensions.* The number of beneficiaries in receipt of war (1914–18) pensions or allowances as at 31 Dec. 1987 was 9,386. The number of beneficiaries in receipt of war (1939–45 and later) pensions or allowances in payment as at 31 Dec. 1987 was 256,706. The expenditure for both wars for 1986–87 was £589.45m.

*National Insurance Fund.* At 1 April 1987 the balance of the National Insurance Fund amounted to £5,706,966,000. Income during the period 1 April 1987 to 31 March 1988, consisting of contributions from insured persons and employers, payments from the Exchequer and interest on investments, etc., was £27,335,731,000. Payments of benefit in respect of unemployment were £1,467,928,000; injury and sickness, £193,001,000; invalidity, £2,968,405,000; maternity, £50,746,000; widows, £839,250,000; guardian's allowance and child's special allowance, £1,434,000; retirement pension, £18,648,391,000; death grants, £2,608,000; disablement benefits, £453,386,000; death benefit, £56,492,000. Included in these figures are the following estimated amounts of additional component, £378,113,000; earnings related supplement having ceased. Administrative and other payments cost approximately £1,073,436,000. The balance at 31 March 1988 was £7,287,620,000.

From 1 April 1975 the National Insurance Reserve Fund and the Industrial Injuries Fund were merged with the National Insurance Fund. All basic scheme contributions payable under the 1975 Social Security Act are paid into the single fund out of which the existing range of benefits will continue to be financed. The National Insurance Fund continues to receive a Treasury Supplement; for 1987–88 this was set at a level of 7% of total contribution income.

*Child Benefit.* Child benefit is a tax-free cash allowance for all children. The weekly rate for each child is £7.25 from 6 April 1987. Child benefit is payable for all children under age 16, for 16 and 17 year olds registered for work or training and for those under age 19 receiving full-time non-advanced education at a college or school. One Parent Benefit. This is a tax-free cash allowance for certain people bringing up children alone. It is payable for the first or only child in the family in addition to child benefit. The weekly rate from 10 April 1989 is £5.20.

*Family Credit.* Family Credit is a tax-free benefit for working families with children. To be able to get Family Credit there must be at least one child under 16 in the family (or under 19 if in full-time education up to, and including, A level or equivalent standard). The claimant or her partner (husband, wife or someone the claimant lives with as if they were married) must be working at least 24 hours a week to qualify. They may be employed or self-employed. The claim may be from a couple or a lone parent bringing up a child alone. The amount of family credit payable depends on the income of the claimant and partner, how many children there are in the family and their ages. The same rates of benefit are paid for one-



parent families as for two-parent families. Family Credit is not payable if the claimant (or claimant and partner together) have savings or capital of over £6,000. Benefit is reduced if savings or capital of more than £3,000 is held.

Family Credit is paid for 26 weeks at a time. The amount of the award will usually stay the same even if earnings, or other circumstances, change during that period. In two-parent families the women should claim.

*Attendance allowance.* This is a tax-free non-contributory allowance for severely disabled people, including children aged 2 or over, who require a lot of help from another person. There are 2 rates, the higher rate of £34.90 a week for those who require attention or supervision by day and night, and the lower rate of £23.30 a week for those who need the attendance either by day or night. In addition to the medical requirements a simple test of residence and presence in Great Britain must also be satisfied.

*Invalid Care Allowance.* This is a non-contributory taxable benefit which may be paid to those under pensionable age who stay at home to care for a person who is receiving attendance allowance or constant attendance allowance. Current rate £24.75 a week, with increases for dependants.

**Income Support.** Under the Social Security Act, 1986, benefit is payable to any persons in Great Britain aged 18 years or over (excluding persons at school or college or anyone directly involved in a trade dispute) who are not in full-time remunerative work or who work part-time for less than 24 hours per week and who are without resources, or whose resources (including national insurance benefits) need to be supplemented in order to meet their requirements. A person who is excluded from benefit under the normal rules may, nevertheless, receive payments to meet urgent need. The general standards by reference to which income support is granted are determined by statutory regulations approved by Parliament. Persons who are dissatisfied with the amount of benefit granted to them may appeal to an independent Appeal Tribunal established under the Act.

**National Health.** The National Health Service in England and Wales started on 5 July 1948 under the National Health Service Act, 1946. There is a separate Act for Scotland and also one for Northern Ireland, where the Health Services are run on similar lines to those in England and Wales.

The National Health Service, which is available to every man, woman and child, is a charge on the national income in the same way as the armed forces and other facilities.

Every person normally resident in this country is entitled to use any complete part of the services, and no insurance qualification is necessary. Most of the cost of running the service is met from the national exchequer, *i.e.*, from taxes.

Since Sept. 1957 a small weekly National Health Service contribution has been payable by contributors and where applicable by their employers. For convenience this contribution is collected with the National Insurance contribution and for 1989-90 is estimated to be £3,291 m. for Great Britain.

*Organization.* Under the provisions of the NHS Act 1977 and the Health Service Act 1980, the administration of the National Health Service in England and Wales is organized under a system of regional and district health authorities accountable to the Secretary of State for the Social Services and the Secretary of State for Wales. In Scotland the National Health Service is administered under the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978, by 15 Health Boards and a Common Services Agency all accountable to the Secretary of State for Scotland.

There are 190 district health authorities in England responsible for the administration and development of health services in their district. Fourteen regional health authorities, each consisting of a number of health districts, are responsible for allocating resources between the district health authorities in their regions and for monitoring their performance. The regional authorities are responsible for



developing strategic plans and priorities and for carrying out certain executive functions.

*Services.* The National Health Service broadly consists of hospital and specialist services, general medical, dental and ophthalmic services, pharmaceutical services, community health services and school health services. All these services are free of charge except for such things as prescriptions, spectacles, dental and optical examination, dentures and dental treatment, amenity beds in hospitals and for some of the community services, for which charges are made with certain exemptions.

The total cost of the Health and Personal Social Services (England) is estimated at £19,672m. for 1987-88 and £2,441m. for the UK (Local Authority Personal Social Service being £3,614m.).

The number of abortions performed in England and Wales 1987 under the provisions of the Abortion Act, 1967, was 174,276. Of these 156,191 abortions, 100,695 (64.5%) were to single women, 38,174 (24.4%) were to married women, and 17,322 (11.1%) were to widowed, divorced or separated women and to women who did not state their marital status.

The number of abortion notifications received in Scotland in 1987 under the provisions of the Abortion Act 1967, was 9,351, of which 9,340 related to Scottish residents. Of these 9,340 notifications, 6,057 (64.8%) were to single women, 2,133 (22.8%) were to married women, and 1,150 (12.3%) were to widowed, divorced or separated women and to women who did not state their marital status.

In Great Britain in 1987 there were 32,422 general medical practitioners, (1988) 17,440 general dental practitioners and (1986) 287,700 qualified nurses and midwives. There were (1987) 388,500 average daily available hospital beds in the UK.

**Personal Social Services.** Under the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 and in Scotland the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968 the welfare and social work services provided by local authorities were made the responsibility of a new local authority department—the Social Services Department in England and Wales, and Social Work Departments in Scotland headed by a Director of Social Work. The social services thus administered include: the fostering, care and adoption of children, welfare services and social workers for the mentally disordered, the disabled and the aged, and accommodation for those needing residential care services. In Scotland the social work departments' functions also include the supervision of persons on probation, of adult offenders and of persons released from penal institutions or subject to fine supervision orders.

The number of supported residents in residential accommodation for the elderly and younger disabled was as follows:

<i>England and Wales (31 March)</i>	<i>Residential accommodation Adults and Children</i>	<i>Scotland (31 March)</i>	<i>Residential accommodation Adults and Children</i>
1985	126,147	1985	14,787
1986	121,793	1986	14,637
1987	111,688 <sup>1</sup>	1987	14,348

<sup>1</sup> England only.

*England and Wales.* Expenditure and income relating to the personal social services administered by local authorities (in £1,000 sterling):

<i>Year ended 31 March</i>	<i>Gross current expenditure</i>	<i>Income from sales, fees and charges</i>	<i>Net current expenditure</i>
1984	2,625,060	378,520	2,246,540
1985	2,781,541	390,122	2,391,419
1986	2,952,048	456,825	2,798,099
1987 <sup>1</sup>	3,286,262	488,163	2,798,099

Year ended 31 March	Capital Spending		
	Gross expenditure	Income from sales of fixed assets	Net expenditure
1984	95,903	17,940	77,963
1985	106,708	23,041	83,667
1986	107,913	27,366	80,547
1987 <sup>1</sup>	103,871	23,662	80,209

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

*Scotland.* The total local authority expenditure for 1986–87 in respect of residential accommodation and welfare services under the Social Work (Scotland) Act, 1968, was £365.6m. Central Government expenditure on social work totalled £8m.

Klein, R., *The Politics of the National Health Service*. London, 1983

Watkin, B., *The National Health Service*. London, 1978

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the USA in Great Britain (Grosvenor Sq., London, W1A 1AE)

*Ambassador:* Henry Catto.

Of Great Britain in the USA (3100 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Sir Antony Acland, GCMG, KCVO.

Of Great Britain to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Sir Crispin Tickell, GCMG, KCVO.

## Further Reading

The annual and other publications of the various Public Departments and the Reports, etc. of Royal Commissions and Parliamentary Committees. (These may be obtained from HM Stationery Office.)

Central Statistical Office. *Annual Abstract of Statistics*. HMSO.—*Monthly Digest of Statistics*. HMSO

Central Office of Information. *Britain: An Official Handbook*. HMSO, annual.

*Directory of British Associations*. Beckenham, annual

Government Statistical Service. *Social Trends*. HMSO.—*Regional Statistics*. HMSO

*Government Statistics: A Brief Guide to Sources*. HMSO, 1984

Halsey, A. H., *Trends in British Society Since 1900*. London, 1972

Hennessy, P., *Whitehall*. London, 1989

Hornsby-Smith, M. P., *Roman Catholics in England*. CUP, 1987

Jenkin, M., *British Industry and the North Sea*. London, 1981

Kendall, M. G. (ed.), *The Source and Nature of the Statistics of the United Kingdom*. 2 vols. London, 1952–1957

Lever, W. F., *Industrial Change in the United Kingdom*. Harlow, 1987

Mitchell, B. R., *Abstract of British Historical Statistics*. OUP, 1962

*Oxford History of England*. 15 vols. OUP, 1936–75

Waller, R. (ed.), *The Almanack of British Politics*. London, 1987

## Scotland

Scottish Council (Development and Industry). *Inquiry into the Scottish Economy, 1900–61*. Edinburgh, 1961

Scottish Office. *Scottish Economic Bulletin*. HMSO (quarterly).—*Scottish Abstract of Statistics*. HMSO (annual)

*The New Scottish Local Authorities: Organisation and Management Structures*. HMSO, 1973

Brand, J., *The National Movement in Scotland*. London, 1978

Campbell, R. H., *The Rise and Fall of Scottish Industry, 1707–1939*. Edinburgh, 1981

Donaldson, G. (ed.), *The Edinburgh History of Scotland*. 4 vols. Edinburgh, 1965–75

Drucker, N. and H. M., *The Scottish Government Year Book*. London, 1980

Grant, E., *Scotland*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982

Hogg, A., and Hutcheson, A. MacG., *Scotland and Oil*. 2nd ed. Edinburgh, 1975

Johnston, T. L., *Structure and Growth in the Scottish Economy*. London, 1971

Kellas, J. G., *The Scottish Political System*. 3rd ed. CUP, 1984

Meikle, H. W. (ed.), *Scotland: A Description of Scotland and Scottish Life*. London, 1947

Monies, G., *Local Government in Scotland*. Edinburgh, 1985

## Wales

*Wales: The Way Ahead* (Cmnd 3334.) HMSO, 1971

*Wales: Employment and the Economy.* Cardiff, 1972

*Digest of Welsh Statistics.* HMSO (annual)

Jenkins, G. H., *The Foundations of Modern Wales 1642-1780.* Oxford, 1988

Williams, D., *A History of Modern Wales.* New ed. London, 1977

Williams, G., (ed.) *Social and Cultural Change in Contemporary Wales.* London, 1978

## NORTHERN IRELAND

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area (revised by the Ordnance Survey Department) and population were as follows:

<i>District</i>	<i>Population (usually resident) 1981 Census<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Population estimate 30 June 1987</i>	<i>Land area (Hectares)</i>
Antrim	45,016	46,600	41,510
Ards	57,792	63,600	36,789
Armagh	49,223	50,700	66,733
Ballymena	54,813	56,100	63,384
Ballymoney	22,946	23,800	41,687
Banbridge	30,110	32,000	44,174
Belfast	314,270	303,800	11,140
Carrickfergus	28,625	29,300	8,484
Castlereagh	60,785	57,900	8,426
Coleraine	46,739	47,700	47,763
Cookstown	28,257	27,700	51,207
Craigavon	73,260	76,600	27,945
Down	53,193	56,400	63,835
Dungannon	43,883	43,900	76,266
Fermanagh	51,594	50,300	169,952
Larne	29,076	28,700	33,744
Limavady	26,964	29,600	58,523
Lisburn	83,998	92,900	43,595
Derry (Londonderry)	89,101	97,500	37,258
Magherafelt	32,494	33,300	56,186
Moyle	14,396	15,200	49,378
Newry and Mourne	76,574	87,100	88,589
Newtownabbey	72,246	72,300	15,956
North Down	66,264	70,700	7,329
Omagh	44,288	45,800	112,354
Strabane	36,279	35,700	86,090
Northern Ireland	1,532,186	1,575,200	1,348,297

<sup>1</sup> Arising from difficulties during the Census taking, a number of households were not enumerated. The population effect of this non-enumeration is estimated at about 50,000 and is included in this column.

Chief town (population, estimate 1987): Belfast, 303,800.

Vital statistics for calendar years:

	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Divorces<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Births</i>	<i>Deaths</i>
1983	9,990	1,657	27,255	16,039
1984	10,361	1,552	27,693	15,692
1985	10,343	1,669	27,635	15,955
1986	10,225	1,539	28,152	16,065
1987 <sup>1</sup>	10,363	1,514	27,865	15,334

<sup>1</sup> Provisional.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Northern Ireland is part of the United Kingdom. As such it shares in the written and unwritten constitution of the United Kingdom and is subjected to the fundamental constitutional provisions which apply to the rest of the United Kingdom. However, in the Northern Ireland Constitution Act 1973 and the Northern Ireland Act 1982, Parliament provides for a measure of devolved government in Northern Ireland. This can only be introduced if both Houses of Parliament agree that the arrangements for devolution are



likely to command widespread acceptance throughout the community in Northern Ireland.

Such matters as the Crown, Parliament, international relations, the armed forces and the raising of taxes cannot be devolved in any circumstances and remain the responsibility of the UK Parliament and Government. In the event of agreement on widely-acceptable arrangements for devolution, powers over a range of social and economic matters would be devolved first. The Northern Ireland Assembly would have power to make laws on these subjects and Members of the Assembly would be appointed as heads of the relevant Northern Ireland government departments. Such powers were devolved on 1 Jan. 1974, following an agreement among the Northern Ireland political parties to form a power-sharing Executive. This collapsed on 28 May 1974.

In the interim and in the absence of devolved arrangements which command widespread acceptance, Northern Ireland is governed by 'direct rule' under the provisions of the Northern Ireland Act 1974. This provides for Parliament to approve all laws for Northern Ireland and places the Northern Ireland departments under the direction and control of a UK Cabinet Minister, the Secretary of State for Northern Ireland.

A 78-member Assembly was elected by proportional representation in 1982. In May 1984 the Assembly set up a Committee on Devolution to consider and report on how the Assembly might be strengthened and progress made towards legislative and executive devolution. The Assembly was dissolved on 23 June 1986, having failed in its statutory duty to make proposals for devolution likely to command widespread acceptance throughout the community.

In Nov. 1985 the governments of the UK and the Republic of Ireland entered into a formal Agreement which is designed to promote peace and stability in Northern Ireland, help to reconcile the two major traditions in Ireland, create a new climate of friendship and co-operation between the people of the two countries and improve co-operation in combating terrorism. Under the Agreement an Intergovernmental Conference was established in which the Irish Government will put forward views and proposals concerning stated aspects of Northern Ireland affairs; in which the promotion of cross-border co-operation will be discussed; and in which determined efforts will be made to resolve any differences between the two governments. A Secretariat was also established by the two governments to service the Conference.

What began ostensibly as a Civil Rights campaign in 1968 escalated into a full-scale offensive designed to overthrow the State. This offensive was originally mounted by an illegal organization, the Irish Republican Army (not to be confused with the legitimate Army of the Republic of Ireland). At times counter-measures have required the services of over 20,000 regular troops, in addition to the Royal Ulster Constabulary, the RUC Reserve and the part-time Ulster Defence Regiment.

*Secretary of State for Northern Ireland:* Rt Hon. Tom King, MP.

*Local Government.* Northern Ireland has a single-tier system of 26 district councils based on main centres of population.

The district councils are responsible for the provision of a wide range of local services including refuse collection and disposal, street cleansing, litter prevention, consumer protection, environmental health, miscellaneous licensing including dog control, the provision and management of recreational and cultural facilities, the promotion of tourist development schemes, the enforcement of building regulations and gas supply. They have in addition both a representative role in which they send forward representatives to sit as members of statutory bodies including the Northern Ireland Housing Council, the Fire Authority and the Area Boards for health and personal social services and education and libraries; and a consultative role under which the Department of Environment (NI) and the Northern Ireland Housing Executive, among others, have an obligation to consult them regarding the provision of the regional services for which these bodies are responsible.

The Government's policy for the future development of the Province is contained in the *Regional Physical Development Strategy 1975-95* which was pub-

lished in May 1977. Basically the policy advocates that the main town in each District Council area should be developed to fulfil its function as the prime centre in the district and for any other specialized rôles it may have such as an industrial centre, port or tourist resort. The Strategy also recognizes that the smaller towns and villages have an important rôle to play, depending on the availability of services, as locations for smaller scale industries service centres and as dormitory centres for people not wishing to live in the towns where they find employment.

The Regional Strategy provides a framework within which development plans can be prepared for all the districts. Since its adoption of the Strategy the Department has been engaged in formulating the detailed policies and proposals for future communications, the location of industry, housing and major services in the light of anticipated population growth and distribution.

A development plan sets down the broad policies and proposals for the development or other use of land in the area covered by the plan over a period of up to 15 years ahead. Development plans covering almost all of Northern Ireland have been published and work is progressing on the remaining areas, together with review of some earlier plans.

**FINANCE.** There exists a separate Northern Ireland Consolidated Fund from which is met the expenditure of Northern Ireland Departments. Its main sources of revenue are: (i) The Northern Ireland attributed share of UK taxes; (ii) A non-specific grant in aid of Northern Ireland's revenue, payable by the Secretary of State for Northern Ireland; (iii) Rates and other receipts of Northern Ireland Departments.

The general principle underlying the financial arrangements is that Northern Ireland should have parity of taxation and services with Great Britain.

Since the financial year 1986-87 the income of the Northern Ireland Consolidated Fund has been as follows (in £ sterling):

	1986-87	1987-88	1988-89
Attributed share of UK taxes	2,030,834,826 <sup>1</sup>	2,218,709,227 <sup>2</sup>	2,305,380,000
Payments by UK Government:			
Grant in Aid	845,000,000	855,000,000	850,000,000
Refund of value added tax	33,302,021	30,752,473	34,000,000
Regional and district rates	243,250,000	251,250,000	279,500,000
Other receipts	348,366,285	345,646,946	340,000,000
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,500,753,132</b>	<b>3,701,358,646</b>	<b>3,808,880,000</b>

<sup>1</sup> Including final adjustment for 1985-86.

<sup>2</sup> Including final adjustment for 1986-87.

The public debt at 31 March 1988 was as follows: Ulster Savings Certificates, £151,751,000; Ulster Development Bonds, £26,725; borrowing from UK Government, £1,141,372,353; borrowing from Northern Ireland Government Funds, £100,176,228; European Investment Bank Loan, £15,163,789; surplus of assets over liabilities, £365,845,127; total, £1,774,335,222.

The above amount of public debt is offset by equal assets in the form of loans from Government to public and local bodies and of cash balances.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The planning, generation and distribution of electricity supplies are the responsibility of the Northern Ireland Electricity Service.

With Kilroot power station out of action for conversion to coal/oil burning, the installed capacity of the system is 1,800 mw largely provided from 3 thermal power-stations.

The total sales of electricity in Northern Ireland in the year ended 31 March 1988 amounted to 5,305m. units supplied to a total of 580,901 consumers.

**Water Supplies and Sewerage.** The Department of the Environment Water Service is responsible for water supply and sewerage. Some 691 megalitres of water are supplied throughout Northern Ireland per day to approximately 97% of the popu-

lation. Approximately 92% of the population live in property which is connected to sewers or modern septic tanks.

The Department is also responsible for the conservation and planned development of the water resources of Northern Ireland.

**Minerals.** The output of minerals (in 1,000 tonnes) during 1987 was approximately: Basalt and igneous rock (other than granite), 6,380; grit and conglomerate, 2,573; limestone, 3,041; sand and gravel, 3,634; and other minerals (rocksalt, flint, sandstone, diatomite, granite, chalk, clay and shale), 984. Lignite has been discovered near Crumlin in County Antrim and in some other areas.

**Agriculture.** Estimated gross output in 1987:

	Quantity (1,000)	Value (£m.)		Quantity (1,000)	Value (£m.)
Fat cattle	506	264.4	Grass seed	—	—
Calves	29	4.6	Hay and straw	10	0.4
Store cattle	15	5.9	Fruit	21	2.6
Exports of breeding livestock	6	2.4	Vegetables	25	6.1
Fat sheep and lambs	976	36.9	Mushrooms	9	11.0
Fat pigs	1,170	72.8	Flowers	—	6.5
Poultry (tonnes)	66	47.3	Other items	—	63.5
Eggs: for human consumption (dozen)	72	30.5			
Wool (tonnes)	2,429	2.4	Total receipts		787.0
Milk (litres)	1,340	199.6	Value of changes in stocks due to volume		-11.5
Potatoes	231	20.3			
Oats	5	0.6			
Barley	65	6.9	Gross output		775.5
Wheat	20	2.3			

Area (in 1,000 hectares) of crops at June census (1986 and 1987):

	1986	1987		1986	1987
Oats	2.4	2.6	Crop silage	5.9	5.0
Wheat	3.8	5.0	Other crops	0.8	1.4
Barley	47.4	44.4	Fruit	2.0	2.0
Other cereals and pulses	0.3	0.3	Grass for mowing	263.8	274.8
Potatoes	11.8	12.4	Grass for grazing	500.8	491.0
Turnips, swedes, kale and cabbage <sup>1</sup>	0.8	0.8	Rough grazing (excluding common land)	183.5	182.6
Vegetables	1.3	1.4			

<sup>1</sup> Stock feeding only.

Livestock (1,000) at June census (1986 and 1987):

	1986	1987		1986	1987
Dairy cows	292	289	Total sheep	1,701	1,858
Beef cows	198	196	Breeding sows	62	60
Total cattle	1,471	1,429	Total pigs	617	607
Breeding ewes	819	886	Total poultry	9,924	10,380

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1988 (June) employment in manufacturing and construction amounted to 127,900, just under 25.8% of the total employees in employment. Of this number, 29,960 (23.4%) were engaged in the engineering and allied industries, which include shipbuilding and aircraft manufacture. The former predominance of shipbuilding has diminished, and the engineering sector now produces an impressive variety of goods; from textile machinery, air-conditioning plant and oilfield equipment to automobile and aero-engine components, data-processing equipment, and electronic components. The textile and man-made fibre industries, with a workforce of 12,540 includes longer established sectors such as spinning and weaving as well as more recently established activities such as the production of carpets, man-made fibres and hosiery. The related clothing and footwear sector employs 17,530 people. Taken together, food, drink and tobacco account for 18,440 jobs, the remainder of the manufacturing sector comprising a multiplicity



of activities, such as chemicals, rubber and plastic goods, and furniture accounting for 23,850. The construction industry employed 24,430 people in 1989.

In Sept. 1988 the average number of unemployed claimants was 117,501, this represents 16.6% of the workforce. The Department of Economic Development provides an all-age guidance and placement service through a network of job-markets situated in the principal towns of Northern Ireland. They maintain registers of persons voluntarily seeking employment (either full- or part-time) and those already in employment who wish to change their job. In the financial year 1987-88, 39,796 persons (adult and young people) were placed into employment in Northern Ireland by the Employment Service. A further 18,388 persons were placed into training.

The Government offers a comprehensive range of incentives to encourage the establishment of new and the expansion of existing industry.

For the year ending March 1988, the Industrial Development Board promoted 5,300 new jobs in a total of 115 new projects of which 12 were first time projects by overseas companies. The total investment in these amounted to £302m.

Through the Department of Economic Development, there are various employment and training grants available to assist employers with recruitment and training of workers. These grants cover a wide spectrum of industry, age groups, and types of training.

Assistance is available to employers who transfer key workers temporarily or permanently to Northern Ireland from other countries or within Northern Ireland in connection with the establishment or expansion of an industrial undertaking.

The Department of Economic Development maintains a register of disabled persons who are in the employment field and under the provisions of the Disabled Persons (Employment) Acts (NI) 1945 and 1960, makes efforts to find suitable work for those who are unemployed. Employment rehabilitation courses are provided at the Employment Rehabilitation Unit at Felden House, Newtownabbey and training courses at various locations are available to assist unemployed disabled persons to readjust themselves to working conditions and to enhance their prospects of obtaining suitable employment. Allowances are paid to persons attending these courses.

The Youth Training Programme is a two year vocational training programme administered by the Department of Economic Development in partnership with the Department of Education for Northern Ireland. The programme provides:

- (a) full-time training places for 16 and 17 year old school leavers not yet in employment;
- (b) employment with training opportunities for 17 year olds (YTP Workscheme);
- (c) increased vocational preparation for young people remaining in full-time education.

In 1988-89 the Programme provided some 10,500 training places in a variety of schemes. Provision was also made for up to 6,000 entrants to YTP Workscheme, a scheme which encourages employers to recruit and train 17 year old employees.

Enterprise Ulster is an independent statutory body whose objective as a direct labour organization is to give employment to the long term and less skilled unemployed. Employment is provided through a structured industrial approach with an emphasis on: (a) rehabilitation into the disciplines of work; (b) training in semi-skilled and traditional trades; (c) placement in more conventional employment. Work that is carried out mainly for public bodies and projects, which might not otherwise be done, is of community and amenity value. In Sept. 1988, 180 projects were providing employment for 1,400 employees.

The Action for Community Employment Scheme, which came into operation in April 1981, provides temporary employment for long-term unemployed adults on projects which are of benefit to the community. In Sept. 1988 some 380 such projects were operational, providing employment for some 8,000 people.

There are 12 Training Centres in Northern Ireland which provide over 3,000 training places and an annual output of over 5,000 trainees.

Training Centres contribute to the Youth Training Programme having up to 2,200 places available for 16-17 year olds who have been unable to find employ-

ment. A special six-month broad-based modular course provides basic training in a wide variety of skills and the six-month craft skill courses provide initial apprentice training. Advanced vocational training is available to young people who have completed the basic training course and have been unable to obtain a place in an apprentice course. The remaining places are for adult trainees.

To supplement the Training Centres facilities, arrangements have been made for the use of spare training capacity in industry and commerce to attach people to firms for training courses. By this means a wide variety of training is made available and this has been further supplemented by use of spare capacity in other training agencies and in Colleges of Further Education.

The Department of Economic Development administers an Entry to Management Programme for unemployed trainees and a Management Development Programme for private sector firms. The former Programme contains training opportunities schemes for those wishing to enter or re-enter management or to set up new businesses – at the peak time of the training year up to 250 people can be in training. The latter Programme is designed to encourage companies to develop management structures and to train individual managers to a high level of competence. Each year about 2,000 grants are awarded to support training courses or training places in companies. Also, up to 2,100 places were available in the financial year 1988–89 under the Enterprise Allowance Scheme, to encourage unemployed people to set up in business, by paying them £40 a week for up to 52 weeks as a business receipt to compensate for loss of unemployment or income support.

**Labour.** The main sources of statistics in Northern Ireland are the census of employment which was last conducted in 1984 and the quarterly employment enquiry. In March 1987 there were 485,290 jobs for employees in Northern Ireland; of which 257,190 were taken up by males.

**TOURISM.** Tourism earns a substantial amount of revenue for Northern Ireland and total spending by some 824,000 visitors in 1986 was £82m. Altogether tourism provides over 9,000 full-time jobs. The Northern Ireland Tourist Board has the main responsibility for promoting tourist traffic to and within Northern Ireland.

Scenic beauty, scientific and nature interest, and wildlife are protected by the Department of the Environment under the Access to the Countryside (NI) Order 1983, the Nature Conservation and Amenity Lands (NI) Order 1985 and the Wildlife (NI) Order 1985. The Department is advised by the Ulster Countryside Committee and the Committee for Nature Conservation. Eight Areas of Outstanding Natural Beauty have been designated, where special attention is given respectively to the amenity and scientific aspects of planning applications. Country Parks have been established at Crawfordsburn, Redburn and Scrabo, Co. Down, at the Roe Valley and Ness Wood, Co. Derry, and at Castle Archdale, Co. Fermanagh. At The Birches in N. Armagh a Peatlands Park is being developed. The Lagan Valley between Belfast and Lisburn is Northern Ireland's first Regional Park. Countryside Information Centres are located at Portrush, Co. Antrim and Newcastle, Co. Down and a visitor centre at the Quoile Pondage National Nature Reserve, near Downpatrick, Co. Down. Forty-five National Nature Reserves have been declared, and more are being acquired.

The Department is advised by the Historic Monuments Council on the exercise of its powers under the Historic Monuments Act (NI) 1971 in respect of the conservation of historic monuments and the preservation of objects of archaeological or historic interest. At present there are some 165 monuments in State care and approximately 900 are scheduled. The Department, advised by the Historic Buildings Council, under the Planning (NI) Order 1972 is also responsible for listing buildings of special architectural or historic interest and for designating areas of similar interest the character or appearance of which it is desirable to preserve or enhance. To date some 7,551 buildings have been listed and 26 conservation areas have been designated. Grants may be payable by the Department to assist in the repair or maintenance of listed buildings and for schemes of enhancement in conservation areas.



## COMMUNICATIONS

**Road and Rail.** All train services are operated by the Northern Ireland Railways Co. Ltd which is a subsidiary of the Northern Ireland Transport Holding Co. The number of track km operated is 357; passenger route miles, 210. In 1987-88 railways carried 5.8m. passengers. Most bus services are operated by two other subsidiaries, Ulsterbus Ltd and Citybus Ltd. Ulsterbus runs services outside the Belfast area while all the services within the Belfast area are run by Citybus.

The Department of the Environment (NI) administers a licensing system for professional hauliers with the objective of maintaining standards and conditions necessary for the safe operation of vehicles and fair competition between hauliers. The level of services provided and the rates charged by the industry are determined by the normal economic forces of supply and demand. At 31 March 1988 there were 1,510 professional hauliers and 2,714 vehicles licensed to engage in road haulage.

The number of motor vehicles licensed at 1 March 1988 was 479,389, comprising private cars, 434,199; motor cycles, 8,846; hackney vehicles, 3,258; goods vehicles, 17,280; agricultural tractors, 6,806. In addition, there were 12,540 vehicles which were not subject to licence duty.

At 1 April 1988 the total mileage of roads was 14,812, graded for administrative purposes as follows: Motorway 69 miles; Class I dual carriageway, 81 miles; Class I single carriageway, 1,283 miles; Class II, 1,774 miles; Class III, 2,936 miles; unclassified, 8,669 miles.

**Aviation.** Northern Ireland Airports Ltd is responsible for the operation of Belfast International Airport. A major 4-stage development programme was started in 1977; 3 stages have been completed. The completion of the programme will leave the airport better equipped to handle traffic growth in the foreseeable future. Passenger and freight services operate between Belfast International Airport and airports throughout the UK. In 1986, 2.1m. passengers and 33,000 tonnes of freight and mail were handled.

Scheduled air services are available from Belfast (Harbour) Airport to 11 destinations in the UK.

There are 3 other licensed airfields in Northern Ireland and of these E. Glinton has some scheduled services; otherwise these airfields are used principally by flying clubs, by private owners and by expanding air taxi businesses flying to destinations in Ireland, the UK and continental Europe.

**Shipping.** Passenger services operate between Belfast and Liverpool and between Larne and (i) Cairnryan and (ii) Stranraer. Conventional cargo services have given way in many cases to container, unit load and drive on/drive off services. The latter type of service now operates from Belfast, Larne and Warrenpoint to various ports in UK.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Lord Chancellor has responsibility for the administration of all courts in Northern Ireland through the Northern Ireland Court Service, and is responsible for the appointment of judges and resident magistrates.

The court structure in Northern Ireland has 3 tiers—the Supreme Court of Judicature of Northern Ireland (comprising the Court of Appeal, the High Court and the Crown Court), the County Courts and the Magistrates' Courts. There are 25 Petty Sessions districts which when grouped together for administration purposes form 7 County Court Divisions and 4 Circuits.

The County Court has general civil jurisdiction subject to an upper monetary limit of £5,000. Appeals from the Magistrates' Courts lie to the County Court, while appeals from the County Court lie to the High Court or, on a point of law, to the Court of Appeal by way of case stated. Circuit Registrars have jurisdiction to deal with most defended actions up to £1,000 and most undefended actions up to £5,000. They also deal, by an informal arbitration procedure, with small claims whose value does not exceed £500. An appeal from the decision of a Circuit Registrar lies to the High Court other than in small claims cases.



*Police.* The police force consists of the Royal Ulster Constabulary, supported by the Royal Ulster Constabulary Reserve, a mainly part-time force.

**Religion.** According to the census of 1981 of the total enumerated population of 1,481,959 there were: Roman Catholics, 414,532; Presbyterians, 339,818; Church of Ireland, 281,472; Methodists, 58,731. Those belonging to other Churches and of no stated denomination numbered 387,406. 18.5% of the enumerated population failed to answer the voluntary question on religion.

**Education.** Education in Northern Ireland is administered centrally by the Department of Education and locally by 5 education and library boards. The Department is concerned with the whole range of education from nursery education through to higher education and continuing education; for sport and recreation; for youth services; for the arts and culture (including libraries) and for community relations and community development. District councils are the main providers of sport, recreation and community facilities and the education and library boards have a responsibility where the facilities are intended primarily for education and youth service activities. The Department assists with grants as far as the district councils are concerned and meets the full cost in relation to education and library boards.

The 5 education and library boards which took over responsibility for the local administration of the education and library services on 1 Oct. 1973 are required to ensure that there are sufficient schools of all kinds to meet the needs of their area. They provide primary and secondary schools, special schools for handicapped pupils and institutions of further education. The boards meet the running costs (excluding teachers' salaries) in voluntary schools other than voluntary grammar schools; award university and other scholarships; meet the tuition fees of the great majority of pupils attending grammar schools; provide milk and meals; free books and transport for pupils; enforce school attendance; regulate the employment of children and young people and secure the provision of recreational and youth service facilities. They are also required to develop a comprehensive and efficient library service for their areas. The following are the statistics for the 1986-87 academic year:

*Universities.* Northern Ireland now has 2 Universities of Higher Education, the Queen's University of Belfast (QUB) and the University of Ulster (UU). The Queen's University of Belfast (founded in 1849 as a college of the Queen's University of Ireland and reconstituted as a separate university in 1908) had 110 professors, 246 readers and senior lecturers, 606 lecturers and tutors and 7,360 full-time students in 1986-87. The University of Ulster, formed on 1 Oct. 1984, has campuses in Belfast, Coleraine, Jordanstown and Londonderry. In 1986-87 the University had 42 professors, 190 readers and senior lecturers, 601 lecturers and demonstrators and 7,606 full-time students.

*Secondary Education.* 74 grammar schools with 56,825 pupils and 3,595 full-time teachers; 177 secondary (intermediate) schools with 96,115 pupils and 6,603 full-time teachers.

*Primary Education.* 991 primary schools with 181,893 pupils and 7,774 teachers; 86 nursery schools with 4,732 pupils and 158 teachers.

*Further Education.* 26 institutions of further education with 2,231 full-time and 2,205 part-time teachers and an enrolment of 15,699 full-time, 21,322 part-time day and 16,273 evening students on vocational courses; and 46,023 students on non-vocational (mostly evening) courses.

*Special Educational Treatment.* 33 special schools, including hospital schools with 2,696 pupils and 359 teachers.

*Teachers.* There were 20,684 full-time teachers (8,306 men and 12,378 women) in grant-aided schools and institutions of further education. The principal initial teacher-training courses are the Bachelor of Education (3 year and 4 year honours), general or honours BA and BSc. degrees with education (3, 4 and 5 year) and the one year Certificate of Education for graduates. There were 1,650 students (302

men and 1,348 women) in training at the 2 Colleges of Education and the 2 Universities during 1986-87.

Expenditure by the Department of Education (1986-87) £696.6m.

**Health and Personal Social Services.** Under the provisions of the Health and Personal Social Services (NI) Order 1972, the Department of Health and Social Services is responsible for the provision of integrated health and personal social services in Northern Ireland, designed to promote the physical and mental health of the people of Northern Ireland through the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of illness, and also to promote their social welfare. Four Health and Social Services Boards, Eastern, Northern, Southern and Western, established under the above Order, administer health and personal social services, as the Department directs, within their designated areas.

**Social Security.** The social security schemes in Northern Ireland are similar to those in force in Great Britain.

*National Insurance.* During the year ended 31 March 1988, £10.6m. sickness benefit was paid to an average of 8,068 persons and £48.7m. unemployment benefit was paid to an average of 28,254 persons. Widows' benefits amounting to £30.1m. were paid to 12,788 persons and retirement pensions totalling £409.5m. were paid to an average of 212,924 persons. Invalidity pensions and allowances totalling £130.2m. were paid to 43,949 persons. Industrial disablement benefit amounting to £13.3m. was paid to an average of 5,489 persons. Maternity allowance totalling £2.4m. was paid to an average of 1,506 persons. Receipts, of the Northern Ireland Insurance Fund in the year ended 31 March 1988 were £720.5m. and payments were £678m.

*Child Benefit.* During the year ended 31 March 1988, £178m. was paid to an average of 216,312 families.

*Supplementary Benefits.* In 1987-88, £348.5m. was paid to an average of 192,372 persons.

*Family Income Supplement.* In 1987-88, £13.9m. was paid to an average of 14,777 persons.

### Further Reading

The annual and other publications of the various Departments and the Reports, etc., of Parliamentary Committees may be obtained from HMSO Bookshop, Belfast.

*Northern Ireland Social Security Statistics*

*Census of Population Reports, Northern Ireland.* Belfast, HMSO, 1981

*Northern Ireland: A Trade Directory.* Belfast, HMSO, 1st ed. 1985

*Reports on the Census of Production of Northern Ireland.* Belfast, HMSO

*The Statutes Revised: Northern Ireland.* HMSO, 1982

Arthur, P. and Jeffery, K., *Northern Ireland since 1968.* Oxford, 1988

Bell, G., *The Protestants of Ulster.* London, 1976

Biggs-Davison, J., *The Hand is Red.* London, 1974

Flackes, W. D., *Northern Ireland: Political Directory 1968-83.* London, 1983

Kelly, K., *The Longest War: Northern Ireland and the IRA.* Dingle, Westport and London, 1982

Kenny, A., *The Road to Hillsborough.* London, 1986

Shannon, M. O., *Northern Ireland.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1989

Wallace, M., *British Government in Northern Ireland: From Devolution to Direct Rule.* Newton Abbot, 1982

Watt, D. (ed.) *The Constitution of Northern Ireland.* London, 1981

## ISLE OF MAN

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area, 221 sq. miles (572 sq. km); resident population census April 1986, 64,282. The principal towns are Douglas (population, 20,368), Ramsey (5,778), Peel (3,660), Castletown (3,019). Vital statistics, 1987: Births, 729; deaths, 925; marriages, 430.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Isle of Man is administered in accordance with its own laws by the Court of Tynwald, consisting of the Governor, appointed by the Crown; the Legislative Council, composed of the Lord Bishop of Sodor and Man, the Attorney-General (who does not vote) and 8 members selected by the House of Keys, total 10 members; and the House of Keys, a representative assembly of 24 members chosen on adult suffrage. The Island is not bound by Acts of the Imperial Parliament unless specially mentioned in them.

A special relationship exists between the Isle of Man and the European Economic Community providing for free trade and adoption by the Isle of Man of the EEC's external trade policies with third countries. The Island remains free to levy its own system of taxes.

An Executive Council to advise the Governor on all matters of government was set up under the Isle of Man Constitution Act, 1961. It consists at present of the Chief Minister and the ministers of the 9 major departments of Government.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Maj.-Gen. Laurence New, CB, CBE.

*Government Secretary:* P. J. Hulme.

*Flag:* Red, with 3 steel-coloured legs armoured and spurred (knees and spurs, yellow) in the centre.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue is derived from customs duties, value added tax and from income tax. In 1988-89 the budget allowed for expenditure of £177.8m. Income tax was 15% of the first £6,000 of taxable income and 20% on the balance. There are no inheritance or capital gains taxes. A non-resident company duty of £450 was introduced on 6 April 1987 on every company incorporated in the Isle of Man which trades and is controlled outside the island.

The Island currently makes an annual contribution to the UK Government towards the cost of defence and other common services provided by the UK Government. That contribution currently amounts to about £1.2m.

**Currency.** The Isle of Man Government issues its own notes and coin on a par with £ sterling. £50, £20, £10, £5, £1 and 50p notes and £5, £2, £1, 50p, 20p, 10p, 5p, 2p and 1p coins are issued. Various commemorative coins have been minted together with legal tender gold coins and a platinum bullion coin.

**Banking.** Government regulation of the banking sector is exercised through the Financial Supervision Commission. The Commission was established in 1982 and is responsible for the licensing and supervision of banks, deposit-takers and certain financial intermediaries giving financial advice and receiving client monies for investment and management. In 1988 there were 46 licensed banking institutions, 7 deposit-taking licence holders and 4 UK Building Societies with Isle of Man licences. In June 1988 the deposit base was £4,075m.

**AGRICULTURE.** The area farmed is about 120,000 acres out of a total land area of around 140,000 acres. About 66,000 acres is devoted to grass whilst a further 37,000 acres are accounted for by rough grazing. Barley accounts for most of the remaining land under cultivation and some barley is exported. There are approximately 147,000 sheep, 32,000 cattle, 71,000 poultry and 8,000 pigs on farms in the Island. Agriculture contributes less than 3% of the Island's GNP.

**TOURISM.** In 1986-87 tourism contributed around 11% of national income; there were 328,051 visitors during the 1988 summer season.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 500 miles of good roads. The International TT Motor Cycle Races and cycle races take place annually. Omnibus services operate to all parts of the island.

On 31 March 1988 there were about 39,000 licensed vehicles on the roads, including 2,300 motorcycles.

**Railways.** Several novel transport systems operate on the Island during the



summer season, including 100-year-old horse-drawn trams, and the Manx Electric Railway, linking Douglas, Ramsey and Snaefell Mountain (2,036 ft). The Isle of Man Steam Railway also operates between Douglas and Port Erin.

**Aviation.** Ronaldsway Airport handles scheduled services operated by Manx Airlines, Jersey European and Loganair to and from London, Manchester, Belfast, Dublin, Glasgow, Liverpool, Blackpool, etc. Air taxi services also operate.

**Shipping.** Car ferries of the Isle of Man Steam Packet Co. link the Island with Heysham throughout the year and similar services operate to Liverpool, Fleetwood, Stranraer, Dublin and Belfast during the summer season.

**Broadcasting.** The first constitutionally licensed commercial radio station in the British Isles, Manx Radio, is operated by Government on medium and VHF wavelengths from Douglas.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 3 weekly newspapers and 1 twice weekly newspaper.

## JUSTICE AND EDUCATION

**Police.** The police force numbered 201 all ranks in 1988.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 5 and 16. In 1988 there were 33 primary schools with 5,172 pupils in attendance. The net expenditure on education for 1988–89 amounted to £23.4m. There are 7 secondary schools, 5 provided by the Board of Education (4,506 registered pupils), 1 direct grant school for girls (115 senior and 140 junior registered pupils), 1 independent co-educational public school (245 senior and 125 junior registered pupils), 1 college of further education (379 full-time pupils in 1987–88).

## Further Reading

Additional information is available from: Economic Adviser's Office, 14 Hill St, Douglas, Isle of Man.

Publications: *Isle of Man Key Facts 1988*, *Isle of Man Digest of Economic and Social Statistics 1988*, *Isle of Man Census Reports 1981*, 3 vols, *Isle of Man Interim Census Report 1986*, *Isle of Man Family Expenditure Survey 1981–82*, *Isle of Man Passenger Survey Reports 1985, 1986 and 1987*, *Isle of Man National Income Estimates 1986/87*, *Isle of Man General Index of Retail Prices* (Monthly).

*Tynwald Companion 1985*. Isle of Man Government, 1985

Kinvig, R. H., *History of the Isle of Man*. Oxford, 1945.—*The Isle of Man: A Social, Cultural and Political History*. Liverpool Univ. Press, 1975

Mais, S. P. B., *Isle of Man*. London, 1954

Solly, M., *The Isle of Man: A Low Tax Area*. London, 1984

Stenning, E. H., *Portrait of the Isle of Man*. London, 1984

## CHANNEL ISLANDS

**AREA.** The Channel Islands are situated off the north-west coast of France and are the only portions of the 'Duchy of Normandy' now belonging to the Crown of England, to which they have been attached since the Conquest. They consist of Jersey (28,717 acres), Guernsey (15,654 acres) and the following dependencies of Guernsey—Alderney (1,962), Brechou (74), Great Sark (1,035), Little Sark (239), Herm (320), Jethou (44) and Lihou (38), a total of 48,083 acres, or 75 sq. miles (194 sq. km).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is mild, with an average temperature for the year of 11.5°C. Average yearly rainfall totals: Jersey, 862.9mm; Guernsey, 858.9mm. The wettest months are in the winter. Highest temperatures recorded: Jersey, 34.8°C.; Guernsey, 31.7°C. Maximum temperatures usually occur in July and Aug. (daily maximum 20.8°C. in Jersey, slightly lower in Guernsey). Lowest temperatures recorded: Jersey, 10.3°C.; Guernsey, -7.4°C. Jan. and Feb. are the coldest months (mean temperature approximately 6°C.).

**CONSTITUTION.** The Lieut.-Governors and Cs.-in-C. of Jersey and Guernsey are the personal representatives of the Sovereign, the Commanders of the Armed Forces of the Crown and the channel of communication between the Crown and the insular governments. They are appointed by the Crown and have a voice but no vote in the Assemblies of the States (the insular legislatures). The Secretaries to the Lieut.-Governors are their staff officers.

The Bailiffs are appointed by the Crown and are Presidents both of the Assembly of the States and of the Royal Courts of Jersey and Guernsey. They have in the States a casting vote.

**LANGUAGE.** The official languages are French and English, but English is the main language. In the country districts of Jersey and Guernsey and throughout Sark some people also speak a Norman-French dialect; that of Alderney has died out.

**TRADE.** From 1958 the trade of the Channel Islands with the UK has been regarded as internal trade.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Road.** Omnibus services operate in all parts of Jersey and Guernsey.

**Aviation.** Scheduled air services are maintained by British Airways, Air Atlantique, Aer Lingus, Air UK, Jersey European, British Midland, Aurigny Air Services, Dan-Air, Brymon Airways, Guernsey Airlines, NLM City Hopper and other companies between the islands and airports in the UK, Ireland, the Netherlands and France. During the summer months these services are greatly increased, both in the number of airports served and in the frequency of flights.

**Shipping.** Passenger and cargo services between Jersey, Guernsey and England are maintained by British Channel Island Ferries; between Guernsey, Jersey and England and St Malo by the Commodore Shipping Co., Emeraude Ferries connect Jersey with St Malo; between Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, England and France by Condor Ltd (hydrofoil), and between Guernsey and Alderney and England and Guernsey and Sark by local companies.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Postal and overseas telephone and telegraph services are maintained by the respective Postal Administrations of each bailiwick. The local telephone services are maintained by the insular authorities. There were, in 1987, 41,582 working telephones in Jersey and 55,416 stations in Guernsey.

There is an independent television station in Jersey and local radio stations, BBC Radio Jersey and Guernsey, opened in 1982.

## JUSTICE AND RELIGION

**Justice.** Justice is administered by the Royal Courts of Jersey and Guernsey, each of which consists of the Bailiff and 12 Jurats, the latter being elected by an electoral college. There is an appeal from the Royal Courts to the Courts of Appeal of Jersey and of Guernsey. A final appeal lies to the Privy Council in certain cases. A stipendiary magistrate in each, Jersey and Guernsey, deals with minor civil and criminal cases.

**Church.** Jersey and Guernsey each constitutes a deanery under the jurisdiction of the Bishop of Winchester. The rectories (12 in Jersey; 10 in Guernsey) are in the gift of the Crown. The Roman Catholic and various Nonconformist Churches are represented.

## Further Reading

Ambrière, F., *Les Iles Anglo-Normandes*. Paris, 1971

Coysh, V., *The Channel Islands: A New Study*. Newton Abbot, 1977

Cruikshank, C., *The German Occupation of the Channel Islands*. London, 1975

Jee, N., *The Landscape of the Channel Islands*. Chichester, 1982

Lemprière, R., *Portrait of the Channel Islands*. London, 1970.—*History of the Channel Islands*. Rev. ed. London, 1980

Myhill, H., *Introducing the Channel Islands*. London, 1964

Utley, J., *The Story of the Channel Islands*. London, 1966

## JERSEY

**POPULATION** (census 1986), 80,212. In the year ended 31 Dec. 1987 there were 1,055 births and 845 deaths. The town is St Helier on the south coast.

**CONSTITUTION.** The States consist of 12 Senators (elected for 6 years, 6 retiring every third year), 12 Constables (triennial) and 29 Deputies (triennial), all elected on universal suffrage by the people.

The island legislature is 'The States of Jersey'. The States comprises the Bailiff, the Lieut.-Governor, 12 Senators, the Constables of the 12 parishes of the island, 29 Deputies, the Dean of Jersey, the Attorney-General and the Solicitor-General. They all have the right to speak in the Assembly, but only the 53 elected members (the Senators, Constables and Deputies) have the right to vote; the Bailiff has a casting vote. General elections for Senators and Deputies are held every third year. Except in specific instances, enactments passed by the States require the sanction of The Queen-in-Council. The Lieut.-Governor has the power of veto on certain forms of legislation.

*Flag:* White with a red diagonal cross. In the top centre of the flag a shield of the arms of Jersey ensigned with the Plantagenet Crown.

*Lieut.-Governor and C.-in-C. of Jersey:* Adm. Sir William Pillar, GBE, KCB.

*Secretary and ADC to the Lieut.-Governor:* Cdr D. M. L. Braybrooke, LVO, RN (Retd).

---

*Bailiff of Jersey and President of the States:* Sir Peter Crill, OBE.

*Deputy Bailiff:* V. A. Tomes.

## ECONOMY

**Budget** (year ending 31 Dec. 1987). Revenue, £234,061,396; expenditure, £177,041,020; public debt, £1,166,690. The standard rate of income tax is 20p in the pound. No super-tax or death duties are levied. Parochial rates of moderate amount are payable by owners and occupiers.

**Currency.** The States issue bank-notes in denominations of £20, £10, £5 and £1.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Principal activities: Tourism; total number of hotel and guesthouse bedrooms (1987), 12,105; expenditure of tourists (1985), £190m. Agriculture, total output (1987), £39,486,053 and total exports, £27,541,223. Light industry, mainly electrical goods, textiles and clothing. Total exports (1980), £29m. Banking and finance, total bank deposits and balances due to parent companies by deposit-taking institutions (1987), £26,000m.

**Commerce** (1980). Principal imports: Machinery and transport equipment, £57.3m.; manufactured goods, £43.4m.; food, £40m.; mineral fuels, £21.5m.; chemicals, £15.1m., and miscellaneous, £53.6m. Principal exports (1980): Machinery and transport equipment, £28m.; food, £22.2m; manufactured goods, £15.6m., and miscellaneous, £24.1m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Aviation.** The Jersey airport is situated at St Peter. It covers approximately 375 acres. Number of aircraft movements excluding local flying (1987) 69,418; number of terminal passengers, 1,755,767.

**Shipping** (1987). All vessels arriving in Jersey from outside Jersey waters report at St Helier or Gorey on first arrival. There is a harbour of minor importance at St Aubin. Number of commercial vessels entering St Helier, 4,300; number of visiting yachts, 4,100. Passengers arrived in 1987, 386,992.



**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1984 there were 64,000 telephones and (1985) 24 post offices.

**EDUCATION** (1987). There were 5 States secondary schools and 1 high school, and 22 States primary schools; 4,443 pupils attended the primary schools, 3,675 the secondary schools. There were 8 private primary schools with 1,274 pupils and 4 private secondary schools with 807 pupils. Highlands College offers full- and part-time courses to Ordinary and National Certificate and Diploma levels or similar standards and, together with Les Quennevais Adult Community Centre, evening classes in technical and recreational subjects.

### Further Reading

Balleine, G. R., *Biographical Dictionary of Jersey*. London, 1948.—*A History of the Island of Jersey*. Rev. ed. Chichester, 1981.—*The Bailiwick of Jersey*. 3rd ed. London, 1970  
Bois, F. de L., *The Constitutional History of Jersey*. Jersey, 1970  
Carre, A. L., *English-Jersey Language Vocabulary*. Jersey, 1972  
Le Maistre, F., *Dictionnaire Jersiais-Français*. Jersey, 1966  
*States of Jersey Library*: Royal Square, St Helier. *Librarian*: J. K. Antill, FLA.

## GUERNSEY

**POPULATION.** Census population (1986) 55,482. Births during 1987 were 687; deaths, 605. The town is St Peter Port.

**CONSTITUTION.** The government of the island is conducted by committees appointed by the States.

The States of Deliberation, the Parliament of Guernsey, is composed of the following members: The Bailiff, who is President *ex officio*; 12 Conseillers; H.M. Procureur and H.M. Comptroller (Law Officers of the Crown), who have a voice but no vote; 33 People's Deputies elected by popular franchise; 10 Douzaine Representatives elected by their Parochial Douzaines; 2 representatives of the States of Alderney.

The States of Election, an electoral college, elects the Jurats and Conseillers. It is composed of the following members: The Bailiff (President *ex officio*); the 12 Jurats or 'Jurés-Justiciers'; the 12 Conseillers; H.M. Procureur and H.M. Comptroller; the 33 People's Deputies; 34 Douzaine Representatives; and (for the election of Conseillers) 4 representatives of the States of Alderney.

Since Jan. 1949 all legislative powers and functions (with minor exceptions) formerly exercised by the Royal Court have been vested in the States of Deliberation. Projets de Loi (Bills) require the sanction of The Queen-in-Council.

*Flag*: White bearing a red cross of St George, with an argent with a cross gules superimposed on the cross.

*Lieut.-Governor and C.-in-C. of Guernsey and its Dependencies*: Lieut.-Gen. Sir Alexander Boswell, KCB, CBE.

*Secretary and ADC to the Lieut.-Governor*: Capt. D. P. L. Hodgetts.

---

*Bailiff of Guernsey and President of the States*: Sir Charles Frossard.

*Deputy Bailiff of Guernsey*: G. M. Dorey.

**FINANCE** (year ending 31 Dec. 1987). Revenue, including Alderney, £101,250,316; expenditure, including Alderney, £83,161,418. The standard rate of income tax is 20p in the pound. States and parochial rates are very moderate. No super-tax or death duties are levied.

**COMMERCE** (1987). Principal imports: Coal, 20,231 tonnes; petrol and oils, 138,707,378 litres. Principal exports: Tomatoes (1987), £7,897,764; flowers and

fern, £19,013,274; sweet peppers, £112,103; aubergines, £2,656; other vegetables, £1,132,650; plants, £1,656,456.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Aviation.** The airport in Guernsey, situated at La Villiaze, has a landing area of approximately 124 acres and a tarmac runway of 4,800 ft. In 1987, passenger arrivals totalled 773,320.

**Shipping.** The principal harbour is that of St Peter Port, and there is a harbour at St Sampson's (used mainly for commercial shipping). In 1987 passenger arrivals totalled 296,534. Ships registered in Guernsey at 31 Dec. 1987 numbered 1,120 and 470 fishing vessels. In 1987, 11,435 yachts visited Guernsey.

**EDUCATION.** There are 2 public schools in the island: Elizabeth College, founded by Queen Elizabeth in 1563, for boys, and the Ladies' College, for girls. The States grammar school provides for education up to University entrance requirements, and there are numerous modern secondary and primary schools and a College of Further Education. The total number of school children was (1987) 8,204. Facilities are available for the study of art, domestic science and many other subjects of a technical nature. There is also a convent school with boarding facilities for girls.

**ALDERNEY.** Population (1986 census, 2,130). The island has an airport. The Constitution of the island (reformed 1987) provides for its own popularly elected President and States (12 members), and its own Court. The town is St Anne's.

*Flag:* White with a red cross with the island badge in the centre.

*President of the States:* J. Kay-Mouat.

*Clerk of the States:* D. V. Jenkins.

*Clerk of the Court:* P. J. Beer.

**SARK.** Population (1986 estimate, 550). The Constitution is a mixture of feudal and popular government with its Chief Pleas (parliament), consisting of 40 tenants and 12 popularly elected deputies, presided over by the Seneschal. The head of the island is the Seigneur. Sark has no income tax. Motor vehicles, except tractors, are not allowed.

*Flag:* White with a red cross and a red first quarter bearing two gold lions.

*The Seigneur:* J. M. Beaumont.

*Seneschal:* L. P. de Carteret.

## Further Reading

- Carteret, A. R. de, *The Story of Sark*. London, 1956  
 Coysh, V., *Alderney*. Newton Abbot, 1974  
 Durand, R., *Guernsey, Present and Past*. Guernsey, 1933.—*Guernsey under German Rule*. London, 1946  
 Hathaway, S., *Dame of Sark: An Autobiography*. London, 1961  
 Le Huray, C. P., *The Bailiwick of Guernsey*. London, 1952  
 Marr, L. J., *A History of Guernsey*. Chichester, 1982  
 Wood, A. and M. S., *Islands in Danger*. 2nd ed. London, 1957  
 Wood, J., *Herm, Our Island Home*. London, 1973

# UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

*Capital:* Washington, D.C.  
*Population:* 238.7m. (1985)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$16,710 (1985)

**HISTORY.** The Declaration of Independence of the 13 states of which the American Union then consisted was adopted by Congress on 4 July 1776. On 30 Nov. 1782 Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the USA, and on 3 Sept. 1783 the treaty of peace was concluded and was ratified by the USA on 14 Jan. 1784.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Population of USA at each census from 1790 to 1980, and for USA including Alaska and Hawaii, from 1960. Residents of Puerto Rico, Guam, American Samoa, the Virgin Islands of the USA, Northern Mariana Islands, the remainder of the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, Midway, Wake, Johnston and US population abroad are excluded from the figures of this table. Residents of Indian reservations are excluded prior to 1890.

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negroes</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Other races</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Decennial increase %</i>
1790	3,172,464 <sup>3</sup>	757,208	—	3,929,672	—
1800	4,306,446	1,002,037	—	5,308,483	35.1
1810	5,862,073	1,377,808	—	7,239,881	36.4
1820	7,866,797	1,771,562	—	9,638,359	33.1
1830	10,537,378	2,328,642	—	12,866,020	33.5
1840	14,195,805	2,873,648	—	17,069,453	32.7
1850	19,553,068	3,638,808	—	23,191,876	35.9
1860	26,922,537	4,441,830	78,954 <sup>4</sup>	31,443,321	35.6
1870 <sup>5</sup>	33,589,377	4,880,009	88,985	38,558,371	22.6
1870 <sup>5</sup>	34,337,292	5,392,172	88,985	39,818,449	26.6
1880	43,402,970	6,580,793	172,020	50,155,783	30.1
1890	55,101,258	7,488,676	357,780	62,947,714	25.5
1900	66,868,508	8,834,395	509,265	76,212,168	21.0
1910	81,812,405	9,828,667	587,459	92,228,531	21.0
1920	94,903,540	10,463,607	654,421	106,021,568	14.9 <sup>6</sup>
1930	110,395,753 <sup>7</sup>	11,891,842	915,065	123,202,660	16.1 <sup>6</sup>
1940	118,357,831	12,865,914	941,384	132,165,129	7.3
1950	135,149,629	15,044,937	1,131,232	151,325,798	14.5
1960 <sup>8</sup>	158,831,732	18,871,831	1,619,612	179,323,175	18.5
1970	177,748,975	22,580,289	2,882,662	203,211,926	13.3
1980	188,371,622	26,495,025	11,679,158	226,545,805	11.4

<sup>1</sup> Seventeen southern states (including D.C.) in 1900 had 7,922,969 Negroes (89.7% of the total Negro population); in 1920, 8,912,231 (85.2%); in 1940, 9,904,619 (77%); in 1950, 10,225,407 (68%); in 1960, 11,311,607 (59.9%); in 1970, 11,969,961 (53%); in 1980, 14,048,000 (53%).

<sup>2</sup> 1870: 63,199 Chinese, 55 Japanese and 25,731 Indians; 1880, 105,465 Chinese, 148 Japanese and 66,407 Indians; 1890, 107,488 Chinese, 2,039 Japanese and 248,253 Indians; 1900, 118,746 Chinese, 85,716 Japanese, 237,196 Indians, 67,607 other races; 1910, 94,414 Chinese, 152,745 Japanese, 276,927 Indians, 2,767 Filipino, 60,606 other races; 1920, 85,202 Chinese, 220,596 Japanese, 244,437 Indians, 26,634 Filipino, 77,552 other races; 1930, 343,352 Indians, 102,159 Chinese, 278,743 Japanese, 108,424 Filipino, 82,387 other races; 1940, 345,252 Indians, 106,334 Chinese, 285,115 Japanese, 98,535 Filipino, 106,148 other races; 1950, 357,499 Indians, 326,379 Japanese, 150,005 Chinese, 122,707 Filipino, 174,642 other races; 1960, 523,591 Indians, 464,332 Japanese, 237,292 Chinese, 176,310 Filipino, 218,087 other races; 1970, 792,730 Indians, 591,290 Japanese, 435,062 Chinese, 343,060 Filipino, 720,520 other races; 1980, 1,364,033 Indians, 700,974 Japanese, 806,040 Chinese, 774,652 Filipino, 8,033,459 other races.

<sup>3</sup> Made up of Anglo-Scottish, 89.1%; German, 5.6%; Dutch, 2.5%; Irish, 1.9%; French, 0.6%.

<sup>4</sup> 34,933 Chinese and 44,021 Indians.

<sup>5</sup> Enumeration in 1870 incomplete. Figures in italics represent estimated corrected population.

[Footnotes continued on p. 1373.]



Total population in 1980 at 226,545,805 comprised 110,053,161 males and 116,492,644 females; 167,054,638 were urban and 59,491,167 were rural. Negroes, 12,519,189 males and 13,975,836 females.

Estimated population, including Alaska and Hawaii, and armed forces overseas, on 1 July 1950, 152,271,000; 1955, 165,931,000; 1960, 180,671,000; 1965, 194,303,000; 1970, 204,878,000; 1975, 215,973,000; 1980, 227,658,000; 1982, 232,100,000; 1983, 234,200,000; 1984, 236,600,000; 1985, 238,740,000.

The age distribution by sex of the total population of the US (excluding armed forces overseas, US population abroad and outlying areas) at the 1980 census was as follows:

<i>Age-group</i>	<i>Male</i>	<i>Female</i>	<i>Total</i>
Under 5	8,362,009	7,986,245	16,348,254
5-9	8,539,080	8,160,876	16,699,956
10-14	9,316,221	8,925,908	18,242,129
15-19	10,755,409	10,412,715	21,168,124
20-24	10,663,231	10,655,473	21,318,704
25-34	18,381,903	18,699,936	37,081,839
35-44	12,569,719	13,064,991	25,634,710
45-54	11,008,919	11,790,868	22,799,787
55-59	5,481,863	6,133,391	11,615,254
60-64	4,669,892	5,417,729	10,087,621
65-74	6,756,502	8,824,103	15,580,605
75 and over	3,548,413	6,420,409	9,968,822
Total	110,053,161	116,492,644	226,545,805

The following table includes population statistics, the year in which each of the original 13 states ratified the constitution, and the year when each of the other states was admitted into the Union. Postal abbreviations for the names of the states are shown in brackets. Land area includes land temporarily or partially covered by water, and lakes, etc., of less than 40 acres. (For census population by states and regions in 1940 and 1950 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1952, pp. 552 and 553.)

<i>Geographic divisions and states</i>	<i>Land area: sq. miles 1980</i>	<i>Census population 1 April 1970</i>	<i>Census population 1 April 1980</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile, 1980</i>
<i>United States</i>	3,539,289	203,302,031	226,545,805	64.0
<i>New England</i>	63,012	11,847,186	12,348,493	196.0
Maine (1820) ( <i>Me.</i> )	30,995	993,663	1,124,660	36.3
New Hampshire (1788) ( <i>N.H.</i> )	8,993	737,681	920,610	102.4
Vermont (1791) ( <i>Vt.</i> )	9,273	444,732	511,456	55.2
Massachusetts (1788) ( <i>Mass.</i> )	7,824	5,689,170	5,737,037	733.3
Rhode Island (1790) ( <i>R.I.</i> )	1,055	949,723	947,154	897.8
Connecticut (1788) ( <i>Conn.</i> )	4,872	3,032,217	3,107,576	637.8
<i>Middle Atlantic</i>	99,733	37,283,339	36,786,790	368.9
New York (1788) ( <i>N.Y.</i> )	47,377	18,241,266	17,558,072	370.6
New Jersey (1787) ( <i>N.J.</i> )	7,468	7,168,164	7,364,823	986.2
Pennsylvania (1787) ( <i>Pa.</i> )	44,888	11,793,909	11,863,895	264.3

<sup>6</sup> Between the 1910 census (15 April 1910) and the 1920 census (1 Jan. 1920), the period covered was 116 months (less than a full decade). Adjusting for this, the exact rate of increase for the decade was 15.4%. Similarly correcting for the 123 months between the 1920 and 1930 censuses, the true rate of increase was 15.7%.

<sup>7</sup> Figures for 1930 have been revised to include Mexicans (1,422,533), who were classified with 'Other Races' in the 1930 census reports.

<sup>8</sup> Figures for 1960 strictly comparable with those given for other years (*i.e.*, excluding Alaska and Hawaii) are: White, 158,454,956; Negroes, 18,860,117; other races, 1,149,163; total, 178,464,236; decennial increase, 18.4%.

<i>Geographic divisions and states</i>	<i>Land area: sq. miles 1980</i>	<i>Census population 1 April 1970</i>	<i>Census population 1 April 1980</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile, 1980</i>
<i>East North Central</i>	243,961	40,252,678	41,682,217	170.9
Ohio (1803) ( <i>Oh.</i> )	41,004	10,652,017	10,797,630	263.3
Indiana (1816) ( <i>Ind.</i> )	35,932	5,193,669	5,490,224	152.8
Illinois (1818) ( <i>Ill.</i> )	55,645	11,113,976	11,426,518	205.3
Michigan (1837) ( <i>Mich.</i> )	56,954	8,875,083	9,262,078	162.6
Wisconsin (1848) ( <i>Wis.</i> )	54,426	4,417,933	4,705,767	86.5
<i>West North Central</i>	508,132	16,344,389	17,183,453	33.8
Minnesota (1858) ( <i>Minn.</i> )	79,548	3,805,069	4,075,970	51.2
Iowa (1846) ( <i>Ia.</i> )	55,965	2,825,041	2,913,808	52.1
Missouri (1821) ( <i>Mo.</i> )	68,945	4,677,399	4,916,686	71.3
North Dakota (1889) ( <i>N.D.</i> )	69,300	617,761	652,717	9.4
South Dakota (1889) ( <i>S.D.</i> )	75,952	666,257	690,768	9.1
Nebraska (1867) ( <i>Nebr.</i> )	76,644	1,483,791	1,569,825	20.5
Kansas (1861) ( <i>Kans.</i> )	81,778	2,249,071	2,363,679	28.9
<i>South Atlantic</i>	266,910	30,671,337	36,959,123	138.5
Delaware (1787) ( <i>Del.</i> )	1,932	548,104	594,338	307.6
Maryland (1788) ( <i>Md.</i> )	9,837	3,922,399	4,216,975	428.7
Dist. of Columbia (1791) ( <i>D.C.</i> )	63	756,510	638,333	10,132.3
Virginia (1788) ( <i>Va.</i> )	39,704	4,648,494	5,346,818	134.7
West Virginia (1863) ( <i>W. Va.</i> )	24,119	1,744,237	1,949,644	80.8
North Carolina (1789) ( <i>N.C.</i> )	48,843	5,082,059	5,881,766	120.4
South Carolina (1788) ( <i>S.C.</i> )	30,203	2,590,516	3,121,820	103.4
Georgia (1788) ( <i>Ga.</i> )	58,056	4,589,575	5,463,105	94.1
Florida (1845) ( <i>Fla.</i> )	54,153	6,789,443	9,746,324	180.0
<i>East South Central</i>	178,824	12,804,552	14,666,423	82.0
Kentucky (1792) ( <i>Ky.</i> )	39,669	3,219,311	3,660,777	92.3
Tennessee (1796) ( <i>Tenn.</i> )	41,155	3,924,164	4,591,120	111.6
Alabama (1819) ( <i>Al.</i> )	50,767	3,444,165	3,893,888	76.7
Mississippi (1817) ( <i>Miss.</i> )	47,233	2,216,912	2,520,638	53.4
<i>West South Central</i>	427,271	19,322,458	23,746,816	55.6
Arkansas (1836) ( <i>Ark.</i> )	52,078	1,923,295	2,286,435	43.9
Louisiana (1812) ( <i>La.</i> )	44,521	3,643,180	4,205,900	94.5
Oklahoma (1907) ( <i>Okla.</i> )	68,655	2,559,253	3,025,290	44.1
Texas (1845) ( <i>Tex.</i> )	262,017	11,196,730	14,229,191	54.3
<i>Mountain</i>	855,193	8,283,585	11,372,785	13.3
Montana (1889) ( <i>Mont.</i> )	145,388	694,409	786,690	5.4
Idaho (1890) ( <i>Id.</i> )	82,412	713,008	943,935	11.5
Wyoming (1890) ( <i>Wyo.</i> )	96,989	332,416	469,557	4.8
Colorado (1876) ( <i>Colo.</i> )	103,595	2,207,259	2,889,964	27.9
New Mexico (1912) ( <i>N. Mex.</i> )	121,335	1,016,000	1,302,894	10.7
Arizona (1912) ( <i>Ariz.</i> )	113,508	1,772,482	2,718,215	23.9
Utah (1896) ( <i>Ut.</i> )	82,073	1,059,273	1,461,037	17.8
Nevada (1864) ( <i>Nev.</i> )	109,894	488,738	800,493	7.3
<i>Pacific</i>	896,253	26,525,774	31,799,705	35.5
Washington (1889) ( <i>Wash.</i> )	66,511	3,409,169	4,132,156	62.1
Oregon (1859) ( <i>Oreg.</i> )	96,184	2,091,385	2,633,105	27.4
California (1850) ( <i>Calif.</i> )	156,299	19,953,134	23,667,902	151.4
Alaska (1959) ( <i>Al.</i> )	570,833	302,173	401,851	0.7
Hawaii (1960) ( <i>Hi.</i> )	6,425	769,913	964,691	150.1

<i>Geographic divisions and states</i>	<i>Land area: sq. miles 1980</i>	<i>Census population 1 April 1970</i>	<i>Census population 1 April 1980</i>	<i>Pop. per sq. mile, 1980</i>
<i>Outlying Territories, total</i>	4,691	4,720,306	3,565,376	760
Puerto Rico (1898)	3,515	2,712,033	3,196,520	909
Virgin Islands (1917)	132	62,438	96,569	731
American Samoa (1900)	77	27,159	32,297	419
Guam (1898)	209	84,996	105,979	507
Northern Marianas (1947)	184	9,640	16,780	91
Marshall Islands (1947)	70	22,888	30,873	441
Micronesia, Fed. States (1947)	271	47,202	73,160	270
Palau (1947)	192	11,210	12,116	63
Midway Islands (1867)	2	2,220	453	226
Wake Island (1898)	3	1,647	302	100
Johnston and Sand Islands (1858)	...	1,007	327	...

The 1980 census showed 9,323,946 foreign-born Whites. The 9 countries contributing the largest numbers who were foreign-born were Mexico, 2,199,221; Germany, 849,384; Canada, 842,859; Italy, 831,922; UK, 669,149; Cuba, 607,814; Philippines, 501,440; Poland, 418,128; USSR, 406,022.

Increase or decrease of native White, and foreign-born White, population from 1860 to 1980, by decades:

<i>Native White</i>			<i>Foreign-born White</i>		
<i>Total</i>	<i>Increase</i>	<i>Per cent increase</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Increase or decrease (-)</i>	<i>Per cent change</i>
1860 22,825,784	5,513,251	31.8	4,096,753	1,856,218	82.8
1870 28,095,665	5,269,881	23.1	5,493,712	1,396,959	34.1
1880 36,843,291	8,747,626	31.1	6,559,679	1,065,967	19.4
1890 45,979,391	9,018,732 <sup>1</sup>	24.5	9,121,867	2,562,188	39.1
1900 56,595,379	10,615,988	23.1	10,213,817	1,091,950	12.0
1910 68,386,412	11,791,033	20.8	13,345,545	3,131,728	30.7
1920 81,108,161	12,721,749	18.6	13,712,754	367,209	2.8
1930 96,303,335	15,195,174	18.7	13,983,405	270,651	2.0
1940 106,795,732	10,492,397	10.9	11,419,138	-2,564,267	-18.3
1950 124,780,860	17,985,128	16.8	10,161,168	-1,257,970	-11.0
1960 149,543,638	24,762,778	19.8	9,293,992	- 867,176	- 8.5
1970 169,385,451	19,841,813	13.3	8,733,770	- 560,222	- 6.0
1980 179,711,066	10,325,615	6.0	9,323,946	590,176	6.7

<sup>1</sup> Exclusive of population specially enumerated in 1890 in Indian Territory and on Indian reservations.

The population of leading cities (with over 100,000 inhabitants) at the censuses of 1970 and 1980 were as follows:

<i>Cities</i>	<i>1 April 1970</i>	<i>1 April 1980</i>	<i>Cities</i>	<i>1 April 1970</i>	<i>1 April 1980</i>
New York, N.Y.	7,895,563	7,071,639	Boston, Mass.	641,071	562,994
Chicago, Ill.	3,369,357	3,005,072	New Orleans, La.	593,471	557,515
Los Angeles, Calif.	2,811,801	2,966,850	Jacksonville, Fla.	504,265	540,920
Philadelphia, Pa.	1,949,996	1,688,210	Seattle, Wash.	530,831	493,846
Houston, Tex.	1,233,535	1,595,138	Denver, Colo.	514,678	492,365
Detroit, Mich.	1,514,063	1,203,339	Nashville-Davidson, Tenn.	426,029	455,651
Dallas, Tex.	844,401	904,078	St Louis, Mo.	622,236	453,085
San Diego, Calif.	697,471	875,538	Kansas City, Mo.	507,330	448,159
Phoenix, Ariz.	584,303	789,704	El Paso, Tex.	322,261	425,259
Baltimore, Md.	905,787	786,775	Atlanta, Ga.	495,039	425,022
San Antonio, Tex.	645,153	785,880	Pittsburgh, Pa.	520,089	423,938
Indianapolis, Ind.	736,856	700,807	Oklahoma City, Okla.	368,164	403,213
San Francisco, Calif.	715,674	678,974	Cincinnati, Ohio	453,514	385,457
Memphis, Tenn.	623,988	646,356	Fort Worth, Tex.	393,455	385,164
Washington, D.C.	756,668	638,333	Minneapolis, Minn.	434,400	370,951
Milwaukee, Wisc.	717,372	636,212	Portland, Oregon	379,967	366,383
San José, Calif.	459,913	629,442	Honolulu, Hawaii	324,871	365,048
Cleveland, Ohio	750,879	573,822	Long Beach, Calif.	358,879	361,334
Columbus, Ohio	540,025	564,871			



<i>Cities</i>	<i>1 April 1970</i>	<i>1 April 1980</i>
Tulsa, Okla.	330,350	360,919
Buffalo, N.Y.	462,768	357,870
Toledo, Ohio	383,062	354,635
Miami, Fla.	334,859	346,865
Austin, Tex.	253,539	345,496
Oakland, Calif.	361,561	339,337
Albuquerque, N. Mex.	244,501	331,767
Tucson, Ariz.	262,933	330,537
Newark, N.J.	381,930	329,248
Charlotte, N.C.	241,420	314,447
Omaha, Nebr.	346,929	314,255
Louisville, Ky.	361,706	298,451
Birmingham, Ala.	300,910	284,413
Wichita, Kans.	276,554	279,272
Sacramento, Calif.	257,105	275,741
Tampa, Fla.	277,714	271,523
St Paul, Minn.	309,866	270,230
Norfolk, Va.	307,951	266,979
Virginia Beach, Va.	172,106	262,199
Rochester, N.Y.	295,011	241,741
St Petersburg, Fla.	216,159	238,647
Akron, Ohio	275,425	237,177
Corpus Christi, Tex.	204,525	231,999
Jersey City, N.J.	260,350	223,532
Baton Rouge, La.	165,921	219,419
Anaheim, Calif.	166,408	219,311
Richmond, Va. *	249,332	219,214
Fresno, Calif.	165,655	218,202
Colorado Springs, Colo.	135,517	215,150
Shreveport, La.	182,064	205,820
Lexington-Fayette, Ky.	108,137	204,165
Santa Ana, Calif.	155,710	203,713
Dayton, Ohio	243,023	203,371
Jackson, Miss.	153,968	202,895
Mobile, Ala.	190,026	200,452
Yonkers, N.Y.	204,297	195,351
Des Moines, Iowa	201,404	191,003
Grand Rapids, Mich.	197,649	181,843
Montgomery, Ala.	133,386	177,857
Knoxville, Tenn.	174,587	175,030
Anchorage, Alaska	48,081	174,431
Lubbock, Tex.	149,101	173,979
Fort Wayne, Ind.	178,269	172,196
Lincoln, Nebr.	149,518	171,932
Spokane, Wash.	170,516	171,300
Riverside, Calif.	140,089	170,876
Madison, Wisc.	171,809	170,616
Huntington Beach, Calif.	115,960	170,505
Syracuse, N.Y.	197,297	170,105
Chattanooga, Tenn.	119,923	169,565
Columbus, Ga.	155,028	169,441
Las Vegas, Nev.	125,787	164,674
Salt Lake City, Utah	175,885	163,033
Worcester, Mass.	176,572	161,799
Warren, Mich.	179,260	161,134
Kansas City, Kans.	168,213	161,087
Arlington, Tex.	90,229	160,113
Flint, Mich.	193,317	159,611
Aurora, Colo.	74,974	158,588
Little Rock, Ark.	132,483	158,461
Tacoma, Wash.	154,407	158,501
Providence, R.I.	179,116	156,804
Greensboro, N.C.	144,076	155,642
Fort Lauderdale, Fla.	139,590	153,279
Mesa, Ariz.	63,049	152,453

<i>Cities</i>	<i>1 April 1970</i>	<i>1 April 1980</i>
Springfield, Mass.	163,905	152,319
Gary, Ind.	175,415	151,953
Raleigh, N.C.	122,830	150,255
Stockton, Calif.	109,963	149,779
Amarillo, Tex.	127,010	149,230
Hialeah, Fla.	102,452	145,254
Newport News, Va.	138,177	144,903
Bridgeport, Conn.	156,542	142,546
Huntsville, Ala.	139,282	142,513
Savannah, Ga.	118,349	141,390
Rockford, Ill.	147,370	139,712
Glendale, Calif.	132,664	139,060
Garland, Tex.	81,437	138,857
Paterson, N.J.	144,824	137,970
Hartford, Conn.	158,017	136,392
Springfield, Mo.	120,096	133,116
Fremont, Calif.	100,869	131,945
Winston-Salem, N.C.	133,683	131,885
Evansville, Ind.	138,764	130,496
Lansing, Mich.	131,403	130,414
Torrance, Calif.	134,968	129,881
Orlando, Fla.	99,006	128,291
New Haven, Conn.	137,707	126,109
Peoria, Ill.	126,963	124,160
Garden Grove, Calif.	121,155	123,307
Hampton, Va.	120,779	122,617
Hollywood, Fla.	106,873	121,323
Erie, Pa.	129,265	119,123
Pasadena, Calif.	112,951	118,550
Beaumont, Tex.	117,548	118,102
San Bernardino, Calif.	106,869	117,490
Macon, Ga.	122,423	116,896
Youngstown, Ohio	140,909	115,436
Topeka, Kans.	125,011	115,266
Chesapeake, Va.	89,580	114,486
Lakewood, Colo.	92,743	112,860
Pasadena, Tex.	89,957	112,560
Independence, Mo.	111,630	111,806
Cedar Rapids, Iowa	110,642	110,243
Irving, Tex.	97,260	109,943
South Bend, Ind.	125,580	109,727
Sterling Heights, Mich.	61,365	108,999
Oxnard, Calif.	71,225	108,195
Ann Arbor, Mich.	100,035	107,966
Tempe, Ariz.	63,550	106,743
Sunnyvale, Calif.	95,976	106,618
Modesto, Calif.	61,712	106,602
Elizabeth, N.J.	112,654	106,201
Eugene, Oregon	79,028	105,624
Bakersfield, Calif.	69,515	105,611
Livonia, Mich.	110,109	104,814
Portsmouth, Va.	110,963	104,577
Allentown, Pa.	109,871	103,758
Berkeley, Calif.	114,091	103,328
Concord, Calif.	85,164	103,255
Waterbury, Conn.	108,033	103,266
Davenport, Iowa.	98,469	103,264
Alexandria, Va.	110,927	103,217
Stamford, Conn.	108,798	102,453
Boise City, Idaho	74,990	102,451
Fullerton, Calif.	85,987	102,034
Albany, N.Y.	115,781	101,727
Pueblo, Colo.	97,774	101,686
Waco, Tex.	95,326	101,261
Columbia, S.C.	113,542	101,208
Durham, N.C.	72,863	100,831
Reno, Nev.	92,115	100,756
Roanoke, Va.	95,438	100,220

*Vital Statistics:* Vital statistics are based on records of births, deaths, foetal deaths, marriages and divorces filed with registration officials of states and cities. Figures for the US include Alaska beginning with 1959 and Hawaii beginning with 1960.

Annual collection of mortality records from a national death-registration area was inaugurated in 1900. A national birth-registration area was established in 1915. These areas, which at their inception comprised 10 states and the District of Columbia, expanded gradually until 1933, when both the birth- and death-registration areas covered the entire continental US. Marriage and divorce statistics are compiled from reports furnished by state and local officials. Data on annulments are included in the divorce statistics. The marriage-registration area was established in 1957 with 30 states and 3 other areas. The divorce-registration area was established in 1958 with 14 states and 2 other areas. In Jan. 1980 the marriage-registration area included 42 states and D.C., and the divorce-registration area included 30 states.

	<i>Live births</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Deaths</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Marriages</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>Divorces</i> <sup>4</sup>	<i>Maternal deaths</i> <sup>5</sup>	<i>Deaths under 1 year</i> <sup>6</sup>
1900	—	343,217	709,000	56,000	—	—
1910	2,777,000	696,856	948,000	83,000	—	—
1920	2,950,000	1,118,070	1,274,476	170,505	16,320	170,911
1930	2,618,000	1,327,240	1,126,856	195,961	14,915	143,201
1940	2,559,000	1,417,269	1,595,879	264,000	8,876	110,984
1950	3,632,000	1,452,454	1,667,231	385,144	2,960	103,825
1960	4,257,850 <sup>7</sup>	1,711,982	1,523,000	393,000	1,579	110,873
1970	3,731,386 <sup>7</sup>	1,921,031	2,158,802	708,000	803	74,667
1980	3,612,258	1,989,841	2,390,252	1,189,000	334	45,526
1984	3,699,141	2,039,369	2,477,192	1,169,000	220 <sup>8</sup>	39,200 <sup>8</sup>
1985	3,760,561	2,086,440	2,412,625	1,190,000	295	40,030
1986	3,756,547	2,105,361	2,400,000 <sup>8</sup>	1,159,000 <sup>8</sup>	272	38,891
1987 <sup>8</sup>	3,829,000	2,127,000	2,421,000	1,157,000	240	37,922

<sup>1</sup> Figures through 1959 include adjustment for under-registration (the 1959 registered count was 4,244,796); beginning 1960 figures represent number registered.

<sup>2</sup> Excluding foetal deaths and deaths among the armed forces overseas.

<sup>3</sup> Estimates for all years except 1970.

<sup>4</sup> Includes reported annulments. Estimated for all years.

<sup>5</sup> Deaths for 1979–81 (Ninth Revision, International Classification of Diseases, 1975). Deaths from complications of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium. Deaths for 1968–78 were classified according to the Eighth Revision, International Classification of Diseases, adopted, 1965. Deaths for 1958–67 were classified according to the Seventh Revision of the International Lists of Diseases and Causes of Death, those for 1949–57 according to the Sixth Revision and those for 1939–48, according to the Fifth Revision.

<sup>6</sup> Excluding foetal deaths. <sup>7</sup> Based on a 50% sample. <sup>8</sup> Provisional.

The crude birth rate, based on total live-birth estimates per 1,000 total population, fell from 29.5 in 1915 to 18.4 in 1933; it rose to a peak of 26.6 in 1947—its highest for 25 years. This peak reflects demobilization (1945–46), the record marriage rate that followed, and the high levels of employment and income. The decrease in the following 3 years was moderate. In 1951 the rate moved upward and levelled off in 1957 at about 25 per 1,000 population. Since 1957 the crude birth rate declined every year to 18.4 live births per 1,000 population in 1966. The crude birth rate for 1987 was 15.7. Estimated number of illegitimate births in 1986 was 878,477, a ratio of 233.9 illegitimate births per 1,000 registered live births.

Deaths, excluding foetal deaths (per 1,000 population), declined from 17.2 in 1900 to 10 in 1946. The death rate has been below 10 per 1,000 since 1947, fluctuating slightly from year to year, mainly under the impact of occurrences of outbreaks of severe respiratory diseases. The rate for 1970, 9.5; 1980, 8.8; 1981, 8.6; 1982, 8.6; 1983, 8.6; 1984, 8.7; 1985, 8.7; 1986, 8.7; 1987, 8.7.

Leading causes of death, 1987, per 100,000 population: Diseases of heart, 313.4; malignant neoplasms, 196.1; cerebrovascular diseases, 61.3; accidents, 39; suicides, 12.7; homicides, 8.5.

Deaths from AIDS (HIV infection) in 1987 (provisional) 13,130.

The marriage rates per 1,000 population for selected years are: 1920, 12; 1932, 7.9; 1946, 16.4; 1951, 10.4; 1961, 8.5; 1970, 10.6; 1975, 10; 1980, 10.6; 1981, 10.6; 1982, 10.8; 1983, 10.5; 1984, 10.5; 1985, 10.1; 1986, 10; 1987, 9.9. The divorce rates per 1,000 population for selected years are: 1920, 1.6; 1946, 4.3;

1951, 2.5; 1961, 2.3; 1971, 3.7; 1979, 5.3; 1980, 5.2; 1981, 5.3; 1982, 5; 1983, 4.9; 1984, 5; 1985, 5; 1986, 4.8; 1987, 4.8.

Maternal mortality rates (deaths of mothers from conditions associated with deliveries and complications of pregnancy, childbirth and the puerperium) per 100,000 live births, were 1915-19, 727.9 and thereafter declined: 493.9 for 1935-39; 376 for 1940; 207.2 for 1945; 83.3 for 1950; 47 for 1955; 37.1 for 1960; 31.6 for 1965; 21.5 for 1970; 12.8 for 1975; 9.2 for 1980; 8.5 for 1981; 8.9 for 1982; 8 for 1983; 7.2 for 1986. The 1986 rate for white women was 4.9 and for all other women 16.

The infant mortality rates, per 1,000 live births were: 1915-19, 95.7; 1920-24, 76.7; 1925-29, 69; 1930-34, 60.4; 38.3 in 1945; 29.2 in 1950; 26.4 in 1955; 26 in 1960; 20 in 1970; 16.1 in 1975; 12.6 in 1980; 11.2 in 1983; 10.8 in 1984; 10.6 in 1985; 10.4 in 1986; 10 in 1987. In 1984 the rate for whites was 9.4; for all other, 16.1.

*Immigration:* The Immigration and Nationality Act, as amended, provides for the numerical limitation of most immigration. Public Law 96-212, the Refugee Act of 1980, reduced the worldwide numerical limitation to 280,000 for 1980 and 270,000 thereafter, with a maximum of 20,000 visas available for one country. The colonies and dependencies of a foreign state are limited to 600 per year, chargeable to the country limitation of the mother country. Visas are allocated under a system of 6 preference categories, 4 of which are designed to reunite close relatives of US citizens and resident aliens of the US, and 2 for skilled and professional workers. Visa numbers not used in the preference categories are made available to qualified non-preference immigrants. The non-preference category has not been available since 1978 due to high demand in other categories. Immigrants not subject to any numerical limitation are spouses, children, and parents of US citizens, who are 21 years of age or older; certain former US citizens; ministers of religion; certain long-term US government employees; and refugees adjusting to immigrant status.

Immigrant aliens admitted to US for permanent residence, by country or region of birth.

Country or region of birth	Immigrants admitted			
	1984	1985	1986	1987
All countries	543,903	570,009	601,708	601,516
Europe	64,076	63,043	62,512	61,174
Germany, Fed. Rep.	6,875	7,235	6,991	7,210
Greece	2,865	2,579	2,512	2,653
Italy	3,130	3,214	3,089	2,784
Poland	9,466	9,464	8,481	7,519
Portugal	3,779	3,781	3,766	3,912
Spain	1,393	1,413	1,591	1,578
UK	13,949	13,408	13,657	13,497
Yugoslavia	1,569	1,662	2,011	1,827
Other Europe	21,050	19,987	20,414	20,194
Asia	256,273	264,691	268,248	257,684
China and Taiwan	35,841	39,682	38,530	37,772
Hong Kong	5,465	5,171	5,021	4,706
India	24,964	26,026	26,227	27,803
Japan	4,043	4,086	3,959	4,174
Korea (North and South)	33,042	35,253	35,776	35,849
Philippines	42,768	47,978	52,558	50,060
Thailand	4,885	5,239	6,204	6,733
Other Asia	105,265	101,256	99,973	90,587
North America	166,706	182,045	207,714	216,550
Canada	10,791	11,385	11,039	11,876
Mexico	57,557	61,077	66,533	72,351
Cuba	10,599	26,334	33,114	28,916
Dominican Republic	23,147	23,787	26,175	24,858
Haiti	9,839	10,165	12,666	14,819
Jamaica	19,822	18,923	19,595	23,148
Trinidad and Tobago	2,900	2,831	2,891	3,543
Other Caribbean	7,958	7,241	7,191	7,615
Central America	24,088	26,302	28,380	29,296
Other North America	5	—	130	128



<i>Country or region of birth</i>	<i>Immigrants admitted</i>			
	<i>1984</i>	<i>1985</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
South America	37,460	39,058	41,874	44,385
Colombia	11,020	11,982	11,408	11,700
Ecuador	4,164	4,482	4,516	4,641
Other South America	22,276	22,594	25,950	28,044
Africa	15,540	17,117	17,463	17,724
Australia and New Zealand	1,903	2,041	1,964	1,844
Other countries	1,945	2,014	1,933	2,155

<sup>1</sup> GDR and FRG.

The total number of immigrants admitted from 1820 up to 30 Sept. 1987 was 53,723,582; this included 7,051,146 from the Federal Republic of Germany, and from Italy 5,340,441.

Aliens coming to the US for temporary periods of time are classified as non-immigrants. During fiscal year 1987, a total of 12,272,866 non-immigrants were admitted. This total includes multiple entry documents but excludes border crossers, crewmen and insular travellers. Tourists numbered 8,887,299, with more than half (4,943,319) coming from Mexico, Japan, the UK, the Caribbean, Germany (GDR and FRG) and Canada. There were 1,116,278 aliens expelled during fiscal year 1987. Of this number, 22,579 were deported and 1,093,699 were required to depart without formal orders of deportation.

During fiscal year 1987, 227,008 persons became US citizens through naturalization, including 204,250 naturalized under the general provisions of 5-year residence in the US, 19,777 spouses and children of US citizens, 2,402 members of US Armed Forces and 73 under other provisions. The new citizens included 6,738 from Cuba, 25,296 from the Philippines, 13,241 from China and Taiwan, 14,233 from Korea, 7,102 from the UK, 2,601 from Italy, 21,999 from Mexico and 5,196 from Jamaica.

**CLIMATE.** For temperature and rainfall figures, see entries on individual states as indicated by regions, below, of mainland USA.

*Pacific Coast.* The climate varies with latitude, distance from the sea and the effect of relief, ranging from polar conditions in North Alaska through cool to warm temperate climates further south. The extreme south is temperate desert. Rainfall everywhere is moderate. *See* Alaska, California, Oregon, Washington.

*Mountain States.* Very varied, with relief exerting the main control; very cold in the north in winter, with considerable snowfall. In the south, much higher temperatures and aridity produce desert conditions. Rainfall everywhere is very variable as a result of rain-shadow influences. *See* Arizona, Colorado, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, New Mexico, Utah, Wyoming.

*High Plains.* A continental climate with a large annual range of temperature and moderate rainfall, mainly in summer, although unreliable. Dust storms are common in summer and blizzards in winter. *See* Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota.

*Central Plains.* A temperate continental climate, with hot summers and cold winters, except in the extreme south. Rainfall is plentiful and comes at all seasons, but there is a summer maximum in western parts. *See* Mississippi, Missouri, Oklahoma, Texas.

*Mid-West.* Continental, with hot summers and cold winters. Rainfall is moderate, with a summer maximum in most parts. *See* Indiana, Iowa, Kansas.

*Great Lakes.* Continental, resembling that of the Central Plains, with hot summers but very cold winters because of the freezing of the lakes. Rainfall is moderate with a slight summer maximum. *See* Illinois, Michigan, Minnesota, Ohio, Wisconsin.

*Appalachian Mountains.* The north is cool temperate with cold winters, the south warm temperate with milder winters. Precipitation is heavy, increasing to the south but evenly distributed over the year. *See* Kentucky, Pennsylvania, Tennessee, West Virginia.

*Gulf Coast.* Conditions vary from warm temperate to sub-tropical, with plentiful rainfall, decreasing towards the west but evenly distributed over the year. *See* Alabama, Arkansas, Florida, Louisiana.

*Atlantic Coast.* Temperate maritime climate but with great differences in temperature according to latitude. Rainfall is ample at all seasons; snowfall in the north can be heavy. *See* Delaware, District of Columbia, Georgia, Maryland, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, South Carolina, Virginia.

*New England.* Cool temperate, with severe winters and warm summers. Precipitation is well distributed with a slight winter maximum. Snowfall is heavy in winter. *See* Connecticut, Maine, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Vermont. *See also* Hawaii and Outlying Territories.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The form of government of the USA is based on the constitution of 17 Sept. 1787.

By the constitution the government of the nation is composed of three co-ordinate branches, the executive, the legislative and the judicial.

The National Government has authority in matters of general taxation, treaties and other dealings with foreign Powers, foreign and inter-state commerce, bankruptcy, postal service, coinage, weights and measures, patents and copyright, the armed forces (including, to a certain extent, the militia), and crimes against the USA; it has sole legislative authority over the District of Columbia and the possessions of the US.

The 5th article of the constitution provides that Congress may, on a two-thirds vote of both houses, propose amendments to the constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of all the states, call a convention for proposing amendments, which in either case shall be valid as part of the constitution when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, whichever mode of ratification may be proposed by Congress. Ten amendments (called collectively 'the Bill of Rights') to the constitution were added 15 Dec. 1791; two in 1795 and 1804; a 13th amendment, 6 Dec. 1865, abolishing slavery; a 14th in 1868, including the important 'due process' clause; a 15th, 3 Feb. 1870, establishing equal voting rights for white and coloured; a 16th, 3 Feb. 1913, authorizing the income tax; a 17th, 8 April 1913, providing for popular election of senators; an 18th, 16 Jan. 1919, prohibiting alcoholic liquors; a 19th, 18 Aug. 1920, establishing woman suffrage; a 20th, 23 Jan. 1933, advancing the date of the President's and Vice-President's inauguration and abolishing the 'lame-duck' sessions of Congress; a 21st, 5 Dec. 1933, repealing the 18th amendment; a 22nd, 26 Feb. 1951, limiting a President's tenure of office to 2 terms, or to 2 terms plus 2 years in the case of a Vice-President who has succeeded to the office of a President; a 23rd, 30 March 1961, granting citizens of the District of Columbia the right to vote in national elections; a 24th, 4 Feb. 1964, banning the use of the poll-tax in federal elections; a 25th, 10 Feb. 1967, dealing with Presidential disability and succession; a 26th, 22 June 1970, establishing the right of citizens who are 18 years of age and older to vote.

*National flag:* Seven red and 6 white alternating stripes, horizontal; with a blue canton, extending down to the lower edge of the 4th red stripe from the top, and displaying 50 white 5-pointed stars, one for each state. The stars have one point directed vertically upward, and they are arranged in 6 rows of 5 each, alternating with 5 rows of 4 each. On the admission of additional states, stars are added, effective on 4 July following the date of admission. Congress, by law of 22 Dec. 1942, has codified 'existing rules and customs' pertaining to the display of the flag, for civilians.

*National anthem:* The Star-spangled Banner, 'Oh say, can you see by the dawn's early light' (words by F. S. Key, 1814; tune by J. S. Smith; formally adopted by Congress 3 March 1931).

*National motto:* 'In God we trust'; formally adopted by Congress 30 July 1956.

**Presidency.** The executive power is vested in a president, who holds office for 4 years, and is elected, together with a vice-president chosen for the same term, by



electors from each state, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress. The President must be a natural-born citizen, resident in the country for 14 years, and at least 35 years old.

The presidential election is held every fourth (leap) year on the Tuesday after the first Monday in November. Technically, this is an election of presidential electors, not of a president directly; the electors thus chosen meet and give their votes (for the candidate to whom they are pledged, in some states by law, but in most states by custom and prudent politics) at their respective state capitals on the first Monday after the second Wednesday in December next following their election; and the votes of the electors of all the states are opened and counted in the presence of both Houses of Congress on the sixth day of January. The total electorate vote is one for each senator and representative.

If the successful candidate for President dies before taking office the Vice-President-elect becomes President; if no candidate has a majority or if the successful candidate fails to qualify, then, by the 20th amendment, the Vice-President acts as President until a president qualifies. The duties of the Presidency, in absence of the President and Vice-President by reason of death, resignation, removal, inability or failure to qualify, devolve upon the Speaker of the House under legislation enacted 18 July 1947. And in case of absence of a Speaker for like reason, the presidential duties devolve upon the President *pro tem.* of the Senate and successively upon those members of the Cabinet in order of precedence, who have the constitutional qualifications for President.

The presidential term, by the 20th amendment to the constitution, begins at noon on 20 Jan. of the inaugural year. This amendment also installs the newly elected Congress in office on 3 Jan. instead of—as formerly—in the following December. The President's salary is \$200,000 per year, plus \$50,000 to assist in defraying expenses resulting from official duties. Also he may spend up to \$100,000 non-taxable for travel and \$20,000 for official entertainment. The office of Vice-President carries a salary of \$115,000, plus \$10,000 allowance for travel, all taxable.

The President is C.-in-C. of the Army, Navy and Air Force, and of the militia when in the service of the Union. The Vice-President is *ex-officio* President of the Senate, and in the case of 'the removal of the President, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of his office', he becomes the President for the remainder of the term.

*President of the United States:* George Bush, of Texas, born at Milton, Massachusetts, in 1924; Vice-President, 1981–89.

At the Presidential election on 8 Nov. 1988 total vote cast, including men and women in the armed services, was 91,585,872, of which George Bush (R.) received 48,881,011 (53.4%), Michael Dukakis (D.) 41,828,350 (45.67%), Ron Paul (Libertarian) 431,499 (0.47%), Lenora Fulani (New Alliance) 218,159 (0.24%). Electoral college votes: Bush 426; Dukakis 112.

#### PRESIDENTS OF THE USA

<i>Name</i>	<i>From state</i>	<i>Term of service</i>	<i>Born</i>	<i>Died</i>
George Washington	Virginia	1789–97	1732	1799
John Adams	Massachusetts	1797–1801	1735	1826
Thomas Jefferson	Virginia	1801–09	1743	1826
James Madison	Virginia	1809–17	1751	1836
James Monroe	Virginia	1817–25	1759	1831
John Quincy Adams	Massachusetts	1825–29	1767	1848
Andrew Jackson	Tennessee	1829–37	1767	1845
Martin Van Buren	New York	1837–41	1782	1862
William H. Harrison	Ohio	Mar.–Apr. 1841	1773	1841
John Tyler	Virginia	1841–45	1790	1862
James K. Polk	Tennessee	1845–49	1795	1849
Zachary Taylor	Louisiana	1849–July 1850	1784	1850
Millard Fillmore	New York	1850–53	1800	1874



<i>Name</i>	<i>From state</i>	<i>Term of service</i>	<i>Born</i>	<i>Died</i>
Franklin Pierce	New Hampshire	1853–57	1804	1869
James Buchanan	Pennsylvania	1857–61	1791	1868
Abraham Lincoln	Illinois	1861–Apr. 1865	1809	1865
Andrew Johnson	Tennessee	1865–69	1808	1875
Ulysses S. Grant	Illinois	1869–77	1822	1885
Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio	1877–81	1822	1893
James A. Garfield	Ohio	Mar.–Sept. 1881	1831	1881
Chester A. Arthur	New York	1881–85	1830	1886
Grover Cleveland	New York	1885–89	1837	1908
Benjamin Harrison	Indiana	1889–93	1833	1901
Grover Cleveland	New York	1893–97	1837	1908
William McKinley	Ohio	1897–Sept. 1901	1843	1901
Theodore Roosevelt	New York	1901–09	1858	1919
William H. Taft	Ohio	1909–13	1857	1930
Woodrow Wilson	New Jersey	1913–21	1856	1924
Warren Gamaliel Harding	Ohio	1921–Aug. 1923	1865	1923
Calvin Coolidge	Massachusetts	1923–29	1872	1933
Herbert C. Hoover	California	1929–33	1874	1964
Franklin D. Roosevelt	New York	1933–Apr. 1945	1882	1945
Harry S. Truman	Missouri	1945–53	1884	1972
Dwight D. Eisenhower	New York	1953–61	1890	1969
John F. Kennedy	Massachusetts	1961–Nov. 1963	1917	1963
Lyndon B. Johnson	Texas	1963–69	1908	1973
Richard M. Nixon	California	1969–74	1913	—
Gerald R. Ford	Michigan	1974–77	1913	—
James Earl Carter	Georgia	1977–81	1924	—
Ronald Reagan	California	1981–89	1911	—
George Bush	Texas	1989–	1924	—

## VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE USA

John Adams	Massachusetts	1789–97	1735	1826
Thomas Jefferson	Virginia	1797–1801	1743	1826
Aaron Burr	New York	1801–05	1756	1836
George Clinton	New York	1805–12 <sup>1</sup>	1739	1812
Elbridge Gerry	Massachusetts	1813–14 <sup>1</sup>	1744	1814
Daniel D. Tompkins	New York	1817–25	1774	1825
John C. Calhoun	South Carolina	1825–32 <sup>1</sup>	1782	1850
Martin Van Buren	New York	1833–37	1782	1862
Richard M. Johnson	Kentucky	1837–41	1780	1850
John Tyler	Virginia	Mar.–Apr. 1841 <sup>1</sup>	1790	1862
George M. Dallas	Pennsylvania	1845–49	1792	1864
Millard Fillmore	New York	1849–50 <sup>1</sup>	1800	1874
William R. King	Alabama	Mar.–Apr. 1853 <sup>1</sup>	1786	1853
John C. Breckinridge	Kentucky	1857–61	1821	1875
Hannibal Hamlin	Maine	1861–65	1809	1891
Andrew Johnson	Tennessee	Mar.–Apr. 1865 <sup>1</sup>	1808	1875
Schuyler Colfax	Indiana	1869–73	1823	1885
Henry Wilson	Massachusetts	1873–75 <sup>1</sup>	1812	1875
William A. Wheeler	New York	1877–81	1819	1887
Chester A. Arthur	New York	Mar.–Sept. 1881 <sup>1</sup>	1830	1886
Thomas A. Hendricks	Indiana	Mar.–Nov. 1885 <sup>1</sup>	1819	1885
Levi P. Morton	New York	1889–93	1824	1920
Adlai Stevenson	Illinois	1893–97	1835	1914
Garret A. Hobart	New Jersey	1897–99 <sup>1</sup>	1844	1899
Theodore Roosevelt	New York	Mar.–Sept. 1901 <sup>1</sup>	1858	1919
Charles W. Fairbanks	Indiana	1905–09	1855	1920
James S. Sherman	New York	1909–12 <sup>1</sup>	1855	1912
Thomas R. Marshall	Indiana	1913–21	1854	1925

<sup>1</sup> Position vacant thereafter until commencement of the next presidential term.

<i>Name</i>	<i>From state</i>	<i>Term of service</i>	<i>Born</i>	<i>Died</i>
Calvin Coolidge	Massachusetts	1921–Aug. 1923 <sup>1</sup>	1872	1933
Charles G. Dawes	Illinois	1925–29	1865	1951
Charles Curtis	Kansas	1929–33	1860	1935
John N. Garner	Texas	1933–41	1868	1967
Henry A. Wallace	Iowa	1941–45	1888	1965
Harry S. Truman	Missouri	1945–Apr. 1945 <sup>1</sup>	1884	1972
Alben W. Barkley	Kentucky	1949–53	1877	1956
Richard M. Nixon	California	1953–61	1913	—
Lyndon B. Johnson	Texas	1961–Nov. 1963 <sup>1</sup>	1908	1973
Hubert H. Humphrey	Minnesota	1965–69	1911	1978
Spiro T. Agnew	Maryland	1969–73	1918	—
Gerald R. Ford	Michigan	1973–74	1913	—
Nelson Rockefeller	New York	1974–77	1908	1979
Walter Mondale	Minnesota	1977–81	1928	—
George Bush	Texas	1981–89	1924	—
Danforth Quayle	Indiana	1989–	1947	—

<sup>1</sup> Position vacant thereafter until commencement of the next presidential term.

*Cabinet.* The administrative business of the nation has been traditionally vested in several executive departments, the heads of which, unofficially and *ex officio*, formed the President's Cabinet. Beginning with the Interstate Commerce Commission in 1887, however, an increasing amount of executive business has been entrusted to some 60 so-called independent agencies, such as the Veterans Administration, Housing and Home Finance Agency, Tariff Commission, etc.

All heads of departments and of the 60 or more administrative agencies are appointed by the President, but must be confirmed by the Senate.

The Cabinet consisted of the following (Feb. 1989):

1. *Secretary of State* (created 1789). James Addison Baker III, of Texas, lawyer; Presidential Chief of Staff 1981–85; Secretary of the Treasury 1985–88; born 1930.
2. *Secretary of the Treasury* (1789). Nicholas F. Brady, investment banker; born 1930.
3. *Secretary of Defense* (1947). Richard Cheney, of Wyoming; congressman; White House Chief of Staff 1975–76; born 1940.
4. *Attorney-General* (Department of Justice, 1870). Richard Thornburgh, of Pennsylvania; lawyer, academic administrator; governor of Pennsylvania 1979–87; born 1932.
5. *Secretary of the Interior* (1849). Manuel Lujan, Jr., of New Mexico; congressman; born 1928.
6. *Secretary of Agriculture* (1889). Clayton K. Yeutter, of Nebraska; rancher; former Dept. of Agriculture official; US trade representative 1985–89; born 1930.
7. *Secretary of Commerce* (1903). Robert A. Mosbacher, Sr., of Texas; oil and gas producer; former co-chairman, Republican National Finance Committee; born 1927.
8. *Secretary of Labor* (1913). Elizabeth H. Dole, of Kansas; lawyer, Secretary of Transportation 1983–87; born 1936.
9. *Secretary of Health and Human Services* (1953). Louis W. Sullivan, of Georgia; medical school president; born 1933.
10. *Secretary of Housing and Urban Development* (1966). Jack F. Kemp, of New York; congressman; born 1935.
11. *Secretary of Transportation* (1967). Samuel K. Skinner, of Chicago; regional transport authority chairman; lawyer; born 1938.
12. *Secretary of Energy* (1977). James D. Watkins, naval officer; Chief of Naval Operations 1982–86; born 1927.

13. *Secretary of Education* (1979). Lauro F. Cavazos, of Texas; university president; born 1927.

14. *Veterans' Affairs* (1989). Edward J. Derwinski, of Chicago; government official; born 1926.

Each of the above Cabinet officers receives an annual salary of \$99,500 and holds office during the pleasure of the President.

*Congress:* The legislative power is vested by the Constitution in a Congress, consisting of a Senate and House of Representatives.

*Electorate:* By amendments of the constitution, disqualification of voters on the ground of race, colour or sex is forbidden. Accordingly, the electorate consists theoretically of all citizens of both sexes over 18 years of age, but the franchise is not universal. There are requirements of residence varying in the several states as to length from 6 months to 2 years and differing requirements as to registration. In 20 states the ability to read (usually an extract from the constitution) is required—in Alaska the ability to read English; in Hawaii, English or Hawaiian; in Louisiana, English or one's native tongue. In Alabama the voter must take an 'anti-Communist oath' and fill out a questionnaire to the satisfaction of the registrars. In some southern states voters are required to give a reasonable explanation of what they read. In most states convicts are excluded from the franchise, in some states duellists and fraudulent voters.

Legislation designed to discourage the rise of third parties has been adopted in a few states. In Illinois a new party must present a petition signed by at least 25,000 voters, including at least 200 in each of 50 of the 102 counties.

The method of balloting varies greatly. Seventeen states use different ballots for federal, state and local elections. In Delaware and South Carolina the various political parties furnish their own ballot-papers to the voters as he or she enters the polling-booth.

*Senate:* The Senate consists of 2 members from each state, chosen by popular vote for 6 years, one-third retiring or seeking re-election every 2 years. Senators must be no less than 30 years of age; must have been citizens of the USA for 9 years, and be residents in the states for which they are chosen. The Senate has complete freedom to initiate legislation, except revenue bills (which must originate in the House of Representatives); it may, however, amend or reject any legislation originating in the lower house. The Senate is also entrusted with the power of giving or withholding its 'advice and consent' to the ratification of all treaties initiated by the President with foreign Powers, a two-thirds majority of senators present being required for approval. (However, it has no control over 'international executive agreements' made by the President with foreign governments; such 'agreements', representing an important but very recent development, cover a wide range and are actually more numerous than formal treaties.) It also has the power of confirming or rejecting major appointments to office made by the President, but it has no direct control over the appointment by the President of 'personal representatives' or 'personal envoys' on missions abroad. Members of the Senate constitute a High Court of Impeachment, with power, by a two-thirds vote, to remove from office and disqualify any civil officer of the USA impeached by the House of Representatives, which has the sole power of impeachment.

The Senate has 16 Standing Committees to which all bills are referred for study, revision or rejection. The House of Representatives has 22 such committees. In both Houses each Standing Committee has a chairman and a majority representing the majority party of the whole House; each has numerous sub-committees. The jurisdictions of these Committees correspond largely to those of the appropriate executive departments and agencies. Both Houses also have a few special Committees with limited duration; there were (1989) 4 Joint Committees.

*House of Representatives:* The House of Representatives consists of 435 members elected every second year. The number of each state's representatives is determined by the decennial census, in the absence of specific Congressional legislation affecting the basis. The states, in 1989, had the following representatives:



Alabama	7	Indiana	10	Nebraska	3	South Carolina	6
Alaska	1	Iowa	6	Nevada	2	South Dakota	1
Arizona	5	Kansas	5	New Hampshire	2	Tennessee	9
Arkansas	4	Kentucky	7	New Jersey	14	Texas	27
California	45	Louisiana	8	New Mexico	3	Utah	3
Colorado	6	Maine	2	New York	34	Vermont	1
Connecticut	6	Maryland	8	North Carolina	11	Virginia	10
Delaware	1	Massachusetts	11	North Dakota	1	Washington	8
Florida	19	Michigan	18	Ohio	21	West Virginia	4
Georgia	10	Minnesota	8	Oklahoma	6	Wisconsin	9
Hawaii	2	Mississippi	5	Oregon	5	Wyoming	1
Idaho	2	Missouri	9	Pennsylvania	23		
Illinois	22	Montana	2	Rhode Island	2		

The Supreme Court decided on 17 Feb. 1964, that the federal constitution requires congressional districts within each state to be substantially equal in population. By almost invariable custom the representative lives in the district from which he is elected.

Representatives must be not less than 25 years of age, citizens of the USA for 7 years and residents in the state from which they are chosen. The District of Columbia, Guam, American Samoa and the Virgin Islands have one non-voting delegate each. The House also admits a 'resident commissioner' from Puerto Rico, who has the right to speak on any subject and to make motions, but not to vote; he is elected in the same manner as the representatives but for a 4-year term. Each of the two Houses of Congress is sole 'judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members'; and each of the Houses may, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member. The period usually termed 'a Congress' in legislative language continues for 2-years, terminating at noon on 3 Jan.

The salary of a senator is \$89,500 per annum, with tax-free expense allowance and allowances for travelling expenses and for clerical hire. The salary of the Speaker of the House of Representatives is \$115,000 per annum, with a taxable allowance. The salary of a Member of the House is \$89,500.

No senator or representative can, during the time for which he is elected, be appointed to any *civil* office under authority of the USA which shall have been created or the emoluments of which shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding *any* office under the USA can be a member of either House during his continuance in office. No religious test may be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the USA or in any state.

The 101st Congress (1989–91) was constituted (Jan 1989) as follows: Senate, 45 Republicans, 55 Democrats; House of Representatives, 260 Democrats, 175 Republicans.

*Indians:* By an Act passed on 2 June 1924 full citizenship was granted to all Indians born in the USA, though those remaining in tribal units were still under special federal jurisdiction. Those remaining in tribal units constitute from one-half to three-fourths of the Indian population. The Indian Reorganization Act of 1934 gave the tribal Indians, at their own option, substantial opportunities to self-government and of self-controlled corporate enterprises empowered to borrow money, buy land, machinery and equipment; these corporations are controlled by democratically elected tribal councils; by 1945 roughly a third of the Indians had taken advantage of this Act. Recently a trend towards releasing Indians from federal supervision has resulted in legislation terminating supervision over specific tribes. Indian lands (1981) amounted to 52,473,000 acres, of which 41,062,000 was tribally owned and 10.96m. in trust allotments. Indian lands are held free of taxes. Total Indian population at the 1980 census was 1,418,195, of which Oklahoma, Arizona, California and New Mexico accounted for 628,400.

*State and Local Government:* The Union comprises 13 original states, 7 states which were admitted without having been previously organized as territories, and 30 states which had been territories—50 states in all. Each state has its own constitution (which the USA guarantees shall be republican in form), deriving its authority, not from Congress, but from the people of the state. Admission of states

into the Union has been granted by special Acts of Congress, either (1) in the form of 'enabling Acts' providing for the drafting and ratification of a state constitution by the people, in which case the territory becomes a state as soon as the conditions are fulfilled, or (2) accepting a constitution already framed, and at once granting admission.

Each state is provided with a legislature of two Houses (except Nebraska, which since 1937 has had a single-chamber legislature), a governor and other executive officials, and a judicial system. Both Houses of the legislature are elective, but the senators (having larger electoral districts usually covering 2 or 3 counties compared with the single county or, in some states, the town, which sends 1 representative to the Lower House) are less numerous than the representatives, while in 38 states their terms are 4 years; in 12 states the term is 2 years. Of the 4-year senates, Illinois, Montana and New Jersey provide for two 4-year terms and one 2-year term in each decade. Terms of the lower houses are usually shorter; in 45 states, 2 years.

Members of both Houses are paid at the same rate, which varies from \$200 per biennium (New Hampshire) to \$46,800 per year (Alaska). The trend is towards annual sessions of state legislatures; in 1987, 36 were constitutionally required to meet annually (in 1939, only 4), the other 14 holding biennial sessions, 12 in the odd-numbered and 2 in the even-numbered years. Of these 14, 6 met annually in practice by invoking flexible constitutional powers to reconvene at intervals during the biennium.

The Governor has power to summon an extraordinary session, but not to dissolve or adjourn. The duties of the two Houses are similar, but in many states money bills must be introduced first in the Lower House. The Senate sits as a court for the trial of officials impeached by the other House, and often has power to confirm or reject appointments made by the Governor.

State legislatures are competent to deal with all matters not reserved for the federal government by the federal constitution nor specifically prohibited by the federal or state constitutions. Among their powers are the determination of the qualifications for the right of suffrage, and the control of all elections to public office, including elections of members of Congress and electors of President and Vice-President; the criminal law, both in its enactment and in its execution, with unimportant exceptions, and the administration of prisons; the civil law, including all matters pertaining to the possession and transfer of, and succession to, property; marriage and divorce, and all other civil relations; the chartering and control of all manufacturing, trading, transportation and other corporations, subject only to the right of Congress to regulate commerce passing from one state to another; labour; education; charities; licensing; fisheries within state waters, and game laws (apart from the hunting of migratory birds, which is a federal concern under treaties with Canada and Mexico). Taxes on income were left to the states until 1913, when the 16th amendment authorized the imposition of federal taxes on income without regard to apportionment.

The Governor is chosen by direct vote of the people over the whole state. His term of office varies in the several states from 2 to 4 years, and his salary from \$35,000 (Arkansas, Maine) to \$100,000 (New York). His duty is to see to the faithful administration of the law, and he has command of the military forces of the state. He may recommend measures but does not present bills to the legislature. In some states he presents estimates. In all but one of the states (North Carolina) the Governor has a veto upon legislation, which may, however, be overridden by the two Houses, in some states by a simple majority, in others by a three-fifths or two-thirds majority. In some states the Governor, on his death or resignation, is succeeded by a Lieut.-Governor who was elected at the same time and has been presiding over the state Senate. In several states the Speaker of the Lower House succeeds the Governor.

The chief officials by whom the administration of state affairs is carried on (secretaries, treasurers, members of boards of commissioners, etc.) are usually chosen by the people at the general state elections for terms similar to those for which governors hold office.



**Local Government.** The chief unit of local government is the county, of which there were (1986) 2,992 with definite functions; in addition, Rhode Island has 5 'counties' which have no functions; Alaska does not have 'counties' as such and, since Oct. 1960, there has been no active county government in Connecticut. Louisiana has 64 'parishes'. The counties maintain public order through the sheriff and his deputies, who may, in a crisis, be drawn temporarily from willing citizens; in many states the counties maintain the smaller local highways; other functions are the granting of licences and the apportionment and collection of taxes. In a few states they also manage the schools.

The unit of local government in New England is the rural township, governed directly by the voters, who assemble annually or oftener if necessary, and legislate in local affairs, levy taxes, make appropriations and appoint and instruct the local officials (selectmen, clerk, school-committee, etc.). Townships are grouped to form counties. Where cities exist, the township government is superseded by the city government.

The **District of Columbia**, ceded by the State of Maryland for the purposes of government in 1791, is the seat of the US Government. It includes the city of Washington, and embraces a land area of 61 sq. miles. The Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1967 instituted a Mayor Council form of government with appointed officers. In 1973 an elected Mayor and elected councillors were introduced; in 1974 they received power to legislate in local matters. Congress retains power to enact legislation and to veto or supersede the Council's acts. Since 1961 citizens have had the right to vote in national elections. On 23 Aug. 1978 the Senate approved a constitutional amendment giving the District full voting representation in Congress. This has still to be ratified.

The **Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, American Samoa, Guam and the Virgin Islands** each have a local legislature, whose acts may be modified or annulled by Congress, though in practice this has seldom been done. Puerto Rico since its attainment of commonwealth status on 25 July 1952, enjoys practically complete self-government, including the election of its governor and other officials. The conduct of foreign relations, however, is still a federal function and federal bureaux and agencies still operate in the island.

General supervision of territorial administration is exercised by the Office of Territories in the Department of Interior.

*Congress and the Nation*, 4 vols., Congressional Quarterly, Washington, from 1965.—*Congressional Ethics*, Rev. ed., 1980.—*Congressional Quarterly Almanac*, annual  
*Constitution of the US, National and State*, 2 vols. [with subsequent amendments], Dobbs Ferry, 1962

*Political profiles*, 5 vols. New York, from 1978

Adrian, C. R., *State and Local Government*, 4th ed. New York, 1977

Barone, M. (ed.) *The Almanac of American Politics*. New York and London, Annual

Brenner, P., *The Limits and Possibilities of Congress*. New York, 1983

Seymour-Ure, C., *The American President: Power and Communication*. London, 1982

**DEFENCE.** The President is C.-in-C. of the Army, Navy and Air Force.

The National Security Act of 1947 provides for the unification of the Army, Navy and Air Forces under a single Secretary of Defense with cabinet rank. The President is also advised by a National Security Council and the Office of Civil and Defense Mobilization.

The major components of the Department of Defense are the Office of the Secretary of Defense and the Joint Chiefs of Staff, who provide immediate staff assistance and advice to the Secretary; the departments of the Army, Navy and Air Force, each separately organized under a civilian head (not of cabinet rank); and the unified and specified commands.

**Army.** *Secretary of the Army:* John O. Marsh Jr.

**Central Administration.** The Secretary of the Army is the head of the Department of the Army. Subject to the authority of the President as C.-in-C. and of the Secretary of Defense, he is responsible for all affairs of the Department.



The Secretary of the Army is assisted by the Under Secretary of the Army, 5 Assistant Secretaries of the Army (Civil Works, Financial Management, Installations and Logistics, Manpower and Reserve Affairs, Research, Development and Acquisition), General Counsel, Administrative Assistant, Director for Information Systems for Command, Control, Communications and Computers, Inspector General, Chief of Legislative Liaison, Chief of Public Affairs, and the Army Staff headed by the Chief of Staff, US Army. The Office of the Under Secretary of the Army includes a Deputy Under Secretary (Operations Research).

The Chief of Staff, Army, in his role as a member of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, the Chief of Staff takes part in the planning and supervision of the operational forces under the command of the Commanders-in-Chief. The Vice Chief of Staff assists and advises the Chief of Staff.

The Army General Staff is the principal element of the Army Staff and includes the Offices of the Chief of Staff, Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans, Deputy Chief of Staff for Personnel, Deputy Chief of Staff for Logistics, and Deputy Chief of Staff for Intelligence. Other elements of the Army Staff are the offices of the Judge Advocate General, Surgeon General, Chief of Chaplains, Chief, Army Reserve, Chief, National Guard Bureau, and Chief of Engineers.

The Army consists of the Active Army, the Army National Guard of the US, the Army Reserve and civilian workforce; and all persons appointed to or enlisted into the Army without component; and all persons serving under call or conscription, including members of the National Guard of the States, etc., when in the service of the US. The strength of the Active Army was (1988) 771,847 (including some 83,251 women).

The US Army Forces Command, with headquarters at Fort McPherson, Georgia, commands the Third US Army; five continental US Armies, 1st Special Operations Command and all assigned Active Army and US Army Reserve troop units in the continental US, Alaska, Panama, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands of the USA. The headquarters of the continental US Armies are: First US Army, Fort George G. Meade, Maryland; Second US Army, Fort Gillem, Georgia; Fourth US Army, Fort Sheridan, Illinois; Fifth US Army, Fort Sam Houston, Texas; Sixth US Army, Presidio of San Francisco, California. The US Army Training and Doctrine Command, with headquarters at Fort Monroe, Virginia, co-ordinates and integrates the total combat development effort of the Army as well as developing, managing, establishing and verifying the training of individuals of the US Army and authorized foreign nationals. The US Army Health Services Command, with headquarters at Fort Sam Houston, Texas, provides health services in the continental US for the US Army and provides professional education and training for medical personnel of the US Army and authorized foreign national personnel. The US Army Materiel Command, with headquarters in Alexandria, Virginia, is responsible for all US Army activities dealing with equipment development, procurement, delivery, supply and maintenance. The US Army Communications Command, with headquarters at Fort Huachuca, Arizona, provides worldwide communication to the Department of the Army and supports the Defense Communications Systems. The US Army Military District of Washington, with headquarters at Fort McNair, Washington, D.C., provides support to the Department of the Army and the Department of Defense at the seat of Government.

Nearly 40% of the Active Army is deployed outside the continental US. Several divisions, most of which are located in the USA, keep equipment in the Federal Republic of Germany and can be flown there in 48–72 hours. Headquarters of US Seventh and Eighth Armies are in Europe and Korea respectively.

*Operational Commands and Weapons.* The larger commands are the theater army and corps. The typical theater army may consist of a variable number of corps composed of combat forces of armour and infantry, organizations, air defense artillery and field artillery units; combat support forces of aviation, engineer and signal elements; and combat service support forces. A typical corps consists of a variable number and mixture of infantry, mechanized infantry, armoured, air assault, or airborne divisions; one or more separate infantry, mechanized infantry

or armoured brigades; one or more armoured cavalry regiments; corps artillery (155-mm howitzer, 203-mm howitzer, multiple launch rocket system (MLRS), *Lance* missile battalions); corps air defense brigade (*Hawk* and *Chaparral* battalions), and combat support and combat service support forces.

US Army Divisions have a common base (containing command, aviation, divisional artillery, air defense artillery, combat support and combat service support units) and a varying mixture of combat manoeuvre battalions (usually 9 or 10 in number in 3 brigades) to make up airborne, infantry, armoured, mechanized infantry and air assault divisions. Divisions can in this way be 'tailored' to fit a variety of strategic or tactical situations. An infantry division, with about 18,600 soldiers, may have 8 infantry battalions, an armoured battalion and a mechanized infantry battalion; a mechanized infantry division, with about 17,100 soldiers, may have 5 mechanized infantry battalions and 5 armoured battalions; an armoured division, with about 16,800 soldiers, may have 4 mechanized infantry battalions and 6 armoured battalions; an airborne division, with 13,100 soldiers, may have 9 infantry (airborne) battalions.

The newly created 10,800-man light divisions consist of infantry, airborne or air assault forces. All offer rapid strategic force projection. Infantry divisions can operate in all environments and are general purpose forces. The air assault division is a highly specialized force capable of battlefield helicopter operations for infantry, field artillery, air defense artillery and necessary support forces.

Small arms include the M-9 (9mm pistol), M-16 series rifle and the M-249 Squad Automatic Weapon both of which fire a 5.56-mm cartridge. The standard general-purpose machine-gun is the M-60 (23 lb.; 550 rounds of 7.62-mm per minute). Infantry weapons also include M-203 grenade launcher attachment for the M-16A1 rifle, which fire a 40-mm grenade up to 400 metres, the *Tow* and *Dragon* anti-tank missile systems, and the M-72 rocket, a light anti-tank weapon.

Combat vehicles of the US Army are the tank, armoured personnel carrier, infantry fighting vehicle, and the armoured command vehicle. The first-line tanks are the M1A1 Abrams tank with a 120mm main gun, and both the M1 Abrams and the M60A3 tanks with 105-mm main armament. The standard armoured infantry personnel carrier is the M113 which is being replaced by the M2 Bradley Fighting Vehicle (BFV). Both carry a mechanized infantry squad, but the BFV mounts a 25-mm Bushmaster gun and *Tow* missile launchers. The M3 version of the BFV is being used as the ground scout vehicle in armoured cavalry regiments, squadrons and in scout platoons of armoured and mechanized infantry battalions.

The approved calibres of artillery are: Light, 105-mm howitzer, medium 155-mm howitzer; the heavy, 203-mm howitzer. The Multiple Launch Rocket System (MLRS) is a 227-mm rapid fire rocket system used in a non-nuclear counterfire role. The 107-mm mortar, the 81-mm mortar and the 60-mm mortar are used by the combat manoeuvre elements. The *Tow* is the primary anti-tank weapon. Forward-area air-defence weapons, including the *Vulcan* 20-mm gun, provide the capability of low-altitude defence against high-performance aircraft.

The Army has two categories of missiles—surface-to-surface (field artillery) and surface-to-air (air defence artillery). Surface-to-surface missiles are: *Pershing II*, terminally-guided, nuclear warhead, range about 1,000 miles (1,600 km) operational (being phased out under the terms of the Intermediate Nuclear Forces Treaty between the US and USSR); *Lance*, guided, nuclear warhead, storable, liquid propellant, operational. Surface-to-air missiles, for air defence, are: *Patriot*, guided, conventional warhead, operational; *Hawk*, homing type, low-to-mid-altitude, field operational (product improvements continue to improve the effectiveness of the system); *Chaparral*, infra-red homing, low-altitude, forward area, operational (improvements to the basic system are under development); *Stinger*, hand-held, infra-red homing, low-altitude, forward area, operational. Anti-tank missiles are: *Tow*, tube launched, optically tracked, wire guided, anti-armour, forward area, operational; *Hellfire*, terminal homing, anti-armour, operational and *Dragon*, wire-guided, light anti-armour, forward area, operational.

The Army employs rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft as organic elements of its ground formations where their use is required on a full-time basis and their im-



mediate and constant availability is essential. The front line commander exploits the benefits of aviation technology to perform traditional land battle tasks in the third dimension. This concept of airmobility for ground formation utilizes aerial vehicles as a highly integrated team to perform all five functions of land combat: reconnaissance, command and control, logistics and that inseparable combination, firepower and manoeuvre.

The Army has over 8,500 aircraft, all but about 500 of them helicopters. The principal types are 3,500 UH-1 Iroquois and 1,000 UH-60 Black Hawk transport helicopters, 1,900 OH-58 Kiowa observation helicopters, 1,200 AH-1S Cobra and 400 AH-64 Apache anti-armour helicopters, and 450 CH-47 Chinook medium-lift helicopters.

*Enlistment, Terms of Service.* Since 1974 the Army has operated an 'all volunteer' system making it, in effect, an all-regular force both regular and reserve components. Terms of service may be 2, 3, 4, 5 or 6 years. Men and women who enlist incur an 8-year obligation and must serve in the reserve any part of the period not served on active duty.

The National Guard is the only reserve military component with a dual mission: A state and federal rôle. Enlistment is voluntary. The members are recruited by each state, but are equipped and paid by the federal government (except when performing state missions). Training is supervised by the active Army (FORSCOM), and unit organization parallels that for the active army; training facilities are made available by the USA and each state. As the organized militia of the several states, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico and the Territories of the Virgin Islands and Guam, the Guard may be called into service for local emergencies by the chief executives in those jurisdictions; and may be called into federal service by the President to thwart invasion or rebellion or to enforce federal law. In its role as a reserve component of the Army, the Guard is subject to the order of the President in the event of national emergency.

The Army Reserve is designed to supply qualified and experienced units and individuals in an emergency. US Army Forces Command is charged with the command, support and training supervision of US Army Reserve units. Members of units are assigned to one category, the Ready Reserve. The Ready Reservist is subject to call by the President in case of national emergency without declaration of war by Congress. The Standby Reserve and the Retired Reserve may be called only after declaration of war or national emergency by Congress.

*Defense 88.* Dept. of Defense, Washington, D.C.

Coker, C., *US Military Power in the 1980s*. London, 1984

Kinnell, S., *Military History of the United States: An Annotated Bibliography*. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1986

*Navy. Secretary of the Navy:* William L. Ball, III.

The Department of the Navy is administered under the Secretary of Defense by the Secretary of the Navy, assisted by the Under Secretary; 4 Assistant Secretaries, for Financial Management; for Shipbuilding and Logistics; for Manpower and Reserve Affairs; and for Research, Engineering and Systems, as well as by the Chief of Naval Operations and the Commandant of the Marine Corps. The 3 divisions of the Department of the Navy are:

Navy Department, comprised of staff offices of the Secretary for Legislative Affairs, Information, the Judge Advocate General, Auditor General, Program Appraisal, General Counsel, Naval Research and Comptroller; offices of the Chief of Naval Operations which include the Vice Chief, the Assistant Vice Chief/Director of Naval Administration, 3 Assistant Chiefs, 5 Deputy Chiefs and 6 Directors; Naval Inspector General; the Surgeon General; Bureau of Naval Personnel; and Headquarters U.S. Marine Corps.

The Shore Establishment comprises commands dealing with air, naval acquisition support, space and warfare systems, facilities engineering, sea (including ordnance) and supply systems; and other commands: Space, Medical, Education and Training, Data Automation, Telecommunications, Intelligence, Oceanography, Legal Service, Security Group, and Investigative Service; as well as supporting establishment of the Marine Corps and Marine Corps Reserve.



The Operating Forces are the Military Sealift Command, U.S. Naval Forces Europe, the Atlantic and Pacific Fleet including Fleet Marine Forces; operating forces of the Marine Corps, the Mine Warfare Command, Operational Test and Evaluation Force, Naval Forces Southern and Central Commands, and the Naval Reserve Forces.

Major shore activities include 8 shipyards, 27 air stations and facilities, 2 amphibious bases, 5 submarine bases and 13 naval stations and bases. By agreement dated 2 Sept. 1940, Britain granted leases for naval and air bases in Newfoundland, Bermuda, Bahamas, Jamaica, St Lucia, Trinidad, Antigua and Guyana; but these are not all now active.

Naval appropriations in recent fiscal years: 1980, \$47,084m.; 1981, \$57,834m.; 1982, \$68,792m.; 1983, \$81,936m.; 1984, \$81,999m.; 1985, \$95,549m.; 1986, \$100,207m.; 1987, \$95,849m.; 1988, \$101,707m. (planned).

The active personnel on duty in 1988 was 587,000 Navy officers and enlisted men, plus 199,600 Marine Corps officers and men.

The following is a tabulated statement of US vessels listed on 31 Dec.:

Category	1980	1981	1982	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Multi-purpose aircraft carriers	15	15	15	14	14	14	15	15
ASW and other carriers	5 <sup>1</sup>	4 <sup>1</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup>	3 <sup>2</sup>
Helicopter carriers	12	12	25 <sup>2</sup>	25 <sup>2</sup>	25 <sup>2</sup>	25 <sup>2</sup>	25 <sup>2</sup>	25 <sup>2</sup>
Command ships	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup>
Nuclear powered submarines	118	124	129	135 <sup>7</sup>	139 <sup>7</sup>	140 <sup>7</sup>	140 <sup>7</sup>	141 <sup>7</sup>
Submarines (conventional)	10	8	6	6	5	5	5	5
Battleships	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
Cruisers	29 <sup>4</sup>	31 <sup>4</sup>	32 <sup>4</sup>	33 <sup>4</sup>	32 <sup>4</sup>	34 <sup>4</sup>	38 <sup>4</sup>	40 <sup>4</sup>
Destroyers	98 <sup>5</sup>	93 <sup>5</sup>	88 <sup>5</sup>	86 <sup>5</sup>	84 <sup>5</sup>	83 <sup>5</sup>	82 <sup>5</sup>	82 <sup>5</sup>
Frigates	67 <sup>6</sup>	77 <sup>6</sup>	82 <sup>6</sup>	102 <sup>6</sup>	105 <sup>6</sup>	112 <sup>6</sup>	115 <sup>6</sup>	116 <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Comprises 1 training carrier and 2 other Essex class aircraft carriers laid up in reserve.

<sup>2</sup> Comprises 5 flat-top hangar/dock heavy amphibious assault ships and 7 lighter flat-top hangar ships and 13 lighter semi-flat-top amphibious transports dock.

<sup>3</sup> Includes 1 Middle East Flagship (converted amphibious transport dock).

<sup>4</sup> Includes 24 frigates (destroyer leaders, DLG) reclassified as cruisers in 1975 and 1980.

<sup>5</sup> Includes 10 frigates (destroyer leaders, DLG) reclassified as destroyers in 1975. Of the 82 destroyers 40 are classified as DDG.

<sup>6</sup> Includes 65 escort ships reclassified as frigates on 1 July 1975.

<sup>7</sup> Includes 9 Trident (Ohio class) ballistic missile armed very large (see Table) vessels, 29 other ballistic missile submarines and 103 attack submarines.

The table below shows principal surface ships, guns under 3-in. calibre not given:

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horsepower	Speed Knots
<i>Multi-Purpose (Former Attack) Aircraft Carriers</i>						
1987	Theodore Roosevelt	81,600	90	{ 3 BPDMS <sup>3</sup> launchers with Sea Sparrow missiles	{ 260,000 (nuclear power)	33
1982	Carl Vinson	81,600				
1977	Eisenhower	81,600				
1975	Nimitz	81,600				
1968	John F. Kennedy	61,000	85	{ 3 BPDMS launchers with NATO Sea Sparrow missiles	280,000	34
1965	America	60,300				
1962	Enterprise	75,700	84	{ 3 NATO Sea Sparrow missile launchers	{ 300,000 (nuclear power)	35
1962	Constellation	61,000	85	{ 3 Sea Sparrow missile launchers	280,000	34
1961	Kitty Hawk	61,000	85	{ 3 BPDMS launchers with NATO Sea Sparrow missiles	280,000	34
1959	Independence	60,000	80 to 75	{ 3 BPDMS launchers with Sea Sparrow missiles	280,000	34
1957	Ranger	60,000				

Completed	Name	Standard displacement Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horse- power	Speed Knots
<i>Multi-Purpose (Former Attack) Aircraft Carriers</i>						
1956	Saratoga	59,100	80 to 75	{ 3 BPDMS launchers with Sea Sparrow missiles }	260,000	33
1955	Forrestal	59,100	70			
1950	*Oriskany <sup>1</sup>	33,250	70	2 5-in. guns	150,000	33
1947	Coral Sea <sup>2</sup>	52,500	75	{ 2 Sea Sparrow missile launchers }	212,000	33
1945	Midway <sup>2</sup>	51,000	75	{ 2 Sea Sparrow missile launchers }	212,000	33
1944	{ *Bon Homme Richard <sup>1</sup> }	33,100	70	4 5-in. guns	150,000	33

<sup>1</sup> In reserve, *Bon Homme Richard* still as CVA, and *Oriskany* still as CV.

<sup>2</sup> Sister ship *Franklin D. Roosevelt* was stricken from the Navy List in 1977.

<sup>3</sup> Basic Point Defence Missile System.

\*Of sister ships *Intrepid* was stricken in 1982 to become a memorial ship at New York City, *Shangri La* was scrapped in 1983 and the anti-submarine support aircraft carriers *Bennington* and *Hornet* were deleted from the list in 1987.

#### *Training Carrier*

1943	Lexington	32,800	—	Removed	150,000	33
------	-----------	--------	---	---------	---------	----

The 'Essex' class originally comprised 24 ships. Only the above 2\* now remain in reserve.

#### *Helicopter Carriers<sup>1</sup> (Amphibious Assault Ships)*

1981	Pelileo	{ 39,300 (full load) }	26 to 42	{ 2 Sea Sparrow missile launchers (BPDMS); 3 5-in. guns }	70,000	24
1980	Nassau		helicopters			
1978	Belleau Wood		(or V/STOL			
1977	Saipan		aircraft)			
1976	Tarawa <sup>2</sup>					

<sup>1</sup> According to official statistics eleven of the 12 amphibious transports dock (the other is a command ship) of the Austin class; of 12,000 tons, and the two of the Raleigh class, each with a capacity of six helicopters, are now listed under the generic heading of helicopter carriers.

<sup>2</sup> In many ways these five heavy through deck hangar ships are equivalent to orthodox large aircraft carriers in other principal navies.

#### *Helicopter Carriers (Amphibious Assault Ships)*

1970	Inchon	{ 18,800 (full load) }	20 to 26	{ 2 Sea Sparrow missile launchers (BPDMS); 4 3-in. guns }	23,000	23
1968	New Orleans		helicopters			
1966	Tripoli		(or 4 V/STOL			
1965	Guam		aircraft			
1963	Guadalcanal		instead of			
1962	Okinawa		helos)			
1961	Iwojima					

#### *Command Ships*

1971	Mount Whitney	{ 19,100 (full load) }	1	{ 2 Sea Sparrow missile launchers; 4 3-in. guns (twin) }	22,000	23
1970	Blue Ridge		helicopter			

The amphibious transport dock *Coronado* was converted to a command ship to relieve *La Salle* as flagship of the Middle East Force.

Com- pleted	Name	Standard displace- ment Tons	Aircraft	Principal armament	Shaft horse- power	Speed Knots
<i>Battleships</i>						
1944	{ Missouri <sup>1</sup> Wisconsin <sup>1</sup>	45,000		{ 9 16-in.; 12 5m.; 8 quadruple Tomahawk cruise missile launchers; 4 quadruple Harpoon launch cannisters	212,000	33
1943	{ Iowa <sup>1</sup> New Jersey					

<sup>1</sup> All laid up in reserve since 1955–58 (except *New Jersey* reactivated for service off Vietnam 1967–69) but reactivated and converted to cruise missile carriers in 1981–88.

### *Cruisers*

1988	Princeton	9,000	2 helicopters	{ 2 vertical missile launchers and 8 quadruple Tomahawk launchers in earliest 5 ships, later 8 ships 8 quadruple 'Harpoon' and 2 twin Standard/ ASROC launchers (but will be equipped as earlier ships); 2 5-in.	80,000 (gas)	30
1988	Philippine Sea					
1988	Lake Champlain					
1987	San Jacinto					
1987	Leyte Gulf					
1987	Antietam					
1987	Mobile Bay					
1986	Bunker Hill					
1986	Thomas S. Gates					
1986	Valley Forge					
1985	Vincennes	15,540	deck for helicopter	{ 2 quadruple Harpoon, 2 quadruple 'Tomahawk' and 2 twin Terrier/ Standard; guided mis- sile launchers; 2 5-in.	80,000 (nuclear power)	30
1984	Yorktown					
1983	Ticonderoga					
1961	Long Beach					
1980	Arkansas				{ 100,000 (nuclear power)	33
1978	Mississippi					
1977	Texas					
1976	Virginia					
1974	South Carolina			{ 2 quadruple Harpoon; 2 single Standard; 2 5-in.	{ 60,000 (nuclear power)	30
1973	California					
1967	Truxtun	8,400	1 helicopter	{ 2 quadruple Harpoon; 1 twin 'Standard'; 1 5-in.;	{ 60,000 (nuclear power)	30
1962	Bainbridge	7,800	—	{ 2 quadruple Harpoon; 2 twin 'Standard'		
1964–67	9 Belknap Class <sup>1</sup>	6,570	1 helicopter	{ 2 quadruple Harpoon; 'Tomahawk' being fitted; 1 twin Standard; 1 5-in.	85,000	34
1962–64	9 Leahy Class <sup>2</sup>	5,670	—	{ 2 quadruple Harpoon; 2 twin Standard	85,000	34

<sup>1</sup> The 'Belknap' class comprises *Belknap*, *Biddle*, *Fox*, *Horne*, *Josephus Daniels*, *Jouett*, *Sterett*, *Wainwright* and *William H. Standley*.

<sup>2</sup> The 'Leahy' class comprises *Dale*, *England*, *Gridley*, *Halsey*, *Harry E. Yarnell*, *Leahy*, *Reeves*, *Richmond K. Turner* and *Worden*.



*Capital (Strategic) Submarines*

<i>Class</i>	<i>No.</i>	<i>Displacement (submerged) Tons</i>	<i>Ballistic Missile Tubes (Vertical)</i>	<i>Nuclear Reactors</i>	<i>Shaft Horse- power</i>	<i>Speed Knots</i>
'726'	9	18,700	{ 24 Trident }	1	60,000	{ 30 dived 20 surface }
'640'	12 <sup>1</sup>	8,500	{ 16 Poseidon (or Trident) }	1	15,000	{ 30 dived 20 surface }
'616'	17 <sup>1</sup>	8,250	{ 16 Poseidon (or Trident) }	1	15,000	{ 30 dived 21 surface }

Completion:- '726' or 'Ohio' class in 1981-86 (five more to follow in 1988-91); '640' or 'Benjamin Franklin' class 1965-67; '616' or 'Lafayette' class in 1963-64. All ballistic missile armed submarines also have four 21-inch torpedo tubes.

<sup>1</sup> Six converted to Trident missile system.

In addition to the above named principal surface ships there are 141 nuclear-powered submarines (including the ballistic missile armed vessels in the table), 5 conventionally propelled submarines, 82 destroyers, 116 frigates, 4 mine counter-measures vessels, 21 ocean minesweepers (reserve training), 4 patrol vessels, 6 hydrofoil missile patrol craft, 70 amphibious warfare ships, 150 landing craft, 40 replenishment ships, 100 sealift ships, 130 fleet support ships and auxiliaries, 60 oilers, 100 minor landing craft and 1,000 service craft.

Ships under construction include 5 submarines of 18,700 tons submerged with nuclear propulsion and ballistic missiles, 17 nuclear propelled attack (fleet) submarines of 6,900 tons submerged; the giant nuclear propelled aircraft carriers *Abraham Lincoln* and *George Washington* each of 93,500 tons full load; 9 guided missile cruisers, 3 guided missile destroyers and 4 mine countermeasures vessels.

Projected new construction includes 10 more 'Ohio' class nuclear propelled deterrent or 'strategic' submarines; 5 more nuclear propelled fleet or 'attack' submarines; 5 guided missile cruisers, 26 guided missile destroyers, 6 mine countermeasures vessels and 17 coastal minehunters.

**Naval Aviation.** The official figures for the total aircraft inventory are (1988) 6,000 in the Navy and Marine Corps, of which 5,100 are active and 4,500 are operating. The main fighters are the F-14 Tomcat and F/A-18 Hornet; the A-6 Intruder, A-7 Corsair, F/A-18 Hornet, A-4 Skyhawk and AV-8 Harrier are assigned to strike missions; the E-2C Hawkeye is used for airborne early warning; the EA-6B Prowler is used for electronic countermeasures support; the P-3 Orion and S-3 Viking for anti-submarine warfare and maritime patrol; the SH-2 Seasprite, SH-3 Sea King and SH-60 Sea Hawk helicopters for ASW and anti-shipping; transports include the C-130 Hercules, C-2 Greyhound and C-9 Skytrain II aircraft plus UH-1 Iroquois, CH-46 Sea Knight and CH-53 Sea Stallion helicopters; the T-34C Turbo-Mentor, T-2 Buckeye, T-44 King Air, F-5E/F Tiger II, F-16N Fighting Falcon, F-21 Kfir and TH-57 Sea Ranger helicopters are used for primary and advanced training.

**The US Coast Guard** operates under the Department of Transportation in time of peace and as a part of the Navy in time of war or when directed by the President. The act of establishment stated the Coast Guard 'shall be a military service and branch of the armed forces of the United States at all times'. The Coast Guard did operate as part of the Navy during the First and Second World Wars. It also had some units serving in Vietnam. It comprises 250 ships including cutters of destroyer, frigate, corvette and patrol vessel types, powerful icebreakers, and paramilitary auxiliaries and tenders, plus over 2,000 rescue and utility craft. It also maintains 70 fixed-wing aircraft and 130 helicopters. The Coast Guard missions include maintenance of aids to navigation, enforcement of maritime laws, enforcement of international treaties, environmental protection (especially waterway pollution), commercial vessel safety programmes, recreational boating safety,

search and rescue efforts and military readiness. In the new construction programme are 2 cutters of frigate size and utility each capable of carrying a helicopter and 16 patrol boats. The strength of personnel in 1989 was 5,000 officers, 1,380 warrant officers and 30,370 enlisted personnel and 880 cadets.

**Air Force.** *Secretary of the Air Force:* (Vacant).

The Department of the Air Force was activated within the Department of Defense on 18 Sept. 1947, under the terms of the National Security Act of 1947. It is administered by a Secretary of the Air Force, assisted by an Under Secretary and 3 Assistant Secretaries (Readiness Support; Acquisition; and Manpower and Reserve Affairs). The USAF, under the administration of the Department of the Air Force, is supervised by a Chief of Staff, who is a member of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. He is assisted by a Vice Chief of Staff, Assistant Vice Chief of Staff, and 4 Deputy Chiefs of Staff (Personnel; Programs and Resources; Plans and Operations; and Logistics and Engineering).

The USAF consists of active duty Air Force officers and enlisted personnel, civilian employees, the Air National Guard and the Air Force Reserve. For operational purposes the service is organized into 13 major commands, 16 separate operating agencies and 6 direct reporting units. The Strategic Air Command, equipped with long-range bombers based both in the USA and overseas, and with intercontinental ballistic missiles, is maintained primarily for strategic air operations anywhere on the globe. Tactical Air Command is the Air Force's mobile strike force, able to deploy US general-purpose air forces anywhere in the world for tactical air combat operations. The Military Airlift Command provides air transportation of personnel and cargo for all military services on a worldwide basis; and is also responsible for Air Force audio-visual products, weather service, and aerospace rescue and recovery operations.

The other major commands are the Air Force Systems Command, Air Force Logistics Command, Air Force Communications Command, Electronic Security Command, Air Training Command, Alaskan Air Command, Pacific Air Forces, Air Force Space Command, United States Air Forces in Europe, and Air University. The Alaskan, Pacific and European commands conduct, control and co-ordinate offensive and defensive air operations according to tasks assigned by their respective theatre commanders.

The separate operating agencies are the Air Force Accounting and Finance Center, Air Force Audit Agency, Air Force Commissary Service, Air Force Engineering and Services Center, Air Force Inspection and Safety Center, Air Force Intelligence Service, Air Force Office of Security Police, Air Force Military and Personnel Agency, Air Force Office of Medical Support, Air Force Management Engineering Agency, Air Force Service Information and News Center, Air Force Legal Services Center, Air Force Office of Special Investigations, Air Force Operational Test and Evaluation Center, Air Force Reserve, and Air Reserve Personnel Center. Air Force direct reporting units are the Air Force Academy, Air National Guard, Air Force Technical Applications Center, Air Force District of Washington, D.C., Air Force Civilian Personnel Management Center and USAF Historical Research Center.

Of the fighter and interceptor aircraft in service, the F-15 Eagle, F-16 Fighting Falcon, F-111 and F-4 Phantom II fly faster than the speed of sound in level flight and can carry a variety of armament. The E-3 Sentry (AWACS) is a large long-range airborne warning and control aircraft; the EF-111A Raven is a tactical electronics jamming aircraft produced by conversion of the F-111A fighter. The subsonic A-7 Corsair II, the A-10 Thunderbolt and the AC-130H are close air support aircraft. The OA-37 and the OV-10 are observation aircraft. Strategic bombers are the B-52 Stratofortress and the B-1B heavy bombers and the 'swing-wing' FB-111A. The Strategic Air Command also operates the KC-10A Extender and the KC-135 Stratotanker for aerial refuelling and the SR-71 Blackbird and the U-2 and TR-1 for reconnaissance. Primary transports include the C-141 Starlifter the C-5 Galaxy, KC-10A Extender and the turboprop-powered C-130 Hercules.

Intercontinental ballistic missiles in USAF service are the Minuteman II and III and Peace Keeper (M-X).

In 1989, the Air Force had about 579,000 military personnel. The service operates approximately 9,400 aircraft in the active Air Force, the Air National Guard and the Air Force Reserve.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** USA is a member of UN, OAS, NATO, OECD and the Colombo Plan.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget covers virtually all the programmes of federal government, including those financed through trust funds, such as for social security, Medicare and highway construction. Receipts of the Government include all income from its sovereign or compulsory powers; income from business-type or market-orientated activities of the Government is offset against outlays. Budget receipts and outlays (in \$1m.):

<i>Year ending</i> <i>30 June</i>	<i>Receipts</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Outlays</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>Surplus (+)</i> <i>or deficit (-)</i>
1945	45,159	92,712	-47,553
1950	39,443	42,562	- 3,119
1955	65,451	68,444	- 2,993
1960	92,492	92,191	+ 301
1970	192,807	195,649	- 2,842
1982 <sup>1</sup>	617,766	745,706	-127,940
1985	734,057	946,316	-212,260
1988 <sup>3</sup>	913,411	1,065,759	-152,348
1989 <sup>3</sup>	974,045	1,096,740	-122,695

<sup>1</sup> From 1977 the fiscal year changed from a 1 July-30 June basis to a 1 Oct.-30 Sept. basis.

<sup>2</sup> From 1970, revised to include Medicare premiums and collections.

<sup>3</sup> July 1988 estimates.

Budget receipts, by source, for fiscal years (in \$1m.):

<i>Source</i>	<i>1987</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>1988</i> <sup>1,2</sup>	<i>1989</i> <sup>1,2</sup>
Individual income taxes	392,557	405,188	423,443
Corporation income taxes	83,926	93,361	109,917
Social insurance taxes and contributions	303,318	335,031	359,519
Excise taxes	32,457	34,669	34,494
Estate and gift taxes	7,493	7,567	7,795
Customs	15,085	17,086	18,371
Miscellaneous	19,307	20,510	20,505
<b>Total</b>	<b>854,143</b>	<b>913,411</b>	<b>974,045</b>

<sup>1</sup> Includes off-budget receipts. <sup>2</sup> July 1988 estimates.

Budget outlays, by function, for fiscal years (in \$1m.):

<i>Source</i>	<i>1987</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>1988</i> <sup>1,2</sup>	<i>1989</i> <sup>1,2</sup>
National defence	281,999	285,423	294,020
International affairs	11,649	12,806	11,056
General science, space, and technology	9,216	10,903	13,103
Energy	4,115	2,695	2,657
Natural resources and environment	13,363	14,892	15,894
Agriculture	27,356	19,431	16,572
Commerce and housing credit	6,182	18,278	11,713
Transportation	26,228	27,017	27,162
Community and regional development	5,051	5,903	5,918
Education, training, employment and social services	29,724	33,217	38,692
Health	39,968	44,620	48,849
Medicare	75,120	79,464	85,254
Income security	123,250	129,609	134,978
Social Security	207,353	218,857	232,415
Veterans' benefits and services	26,782	28,880	29,695
Administration of justice	7,548	9,029	10,002



<i>Source</i>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1 2</sup>	1989 <sup>1 2</sup>
General government	7,569	10,388	9,606
Central federal credit activities	...	...	-7,231
Net interest	138,570	151,092	157,107
Allowances	...	...	-48
Undistributed offsetting receipts	-36,455	-36,742	-40,674
Total budget outlays	1,004,586	1,065,759	1,096,740

<sup>1</sup> Includes outlays of off-budget Federal entities and programmes.

<sup>2</sup> July 1988 estimates.

Budget outlays, by agency, for fiscal years (in \$1 m.):

<i>Agency</i>	1987 <sup>1</sup>	1988 <sup>1 2</sup>	1989 <sup>1 2</sup>
Legislative branch	1,812	1,942	2,093
The Judiciary	1,178	1,409	1,679
Executive Office of the President	109	124	125
Funds appropriated to the President	10,406	9,429	6,520
Agriculture	50,350	46,907	42,613
Commerce	2,127	2,489	2,594
Defence—Military	273,966	277,275	285,500
Defence—Civil	20,684	22,284	23,618
Education	16,800	18,970	23,597
Energy	10,693	10,853	11,994
Health and Human Services, except Social Security	148,894	160,573	171,320
Health and Human Services, Social Security	202,422	214,052	226,867
Housing and Urban Development	15,484	19,457	22,821
Interior	5,050	5,382	5,037
Justice	4,333	5,159	5,895
Labor	23,453	22,016	22,337
State	2,788	3,321	3,418
Transportation	25,431	26,102	26,277
Treasury	180,253	202,340	211,537
Environmental Protection Agency	4,904	4,859	5,127
General Services Administration	51	-22	-45
National Aeronautics and Space Administration	7,591	9,112	10,978
Office of Personnel Management	26,966	28,838	30,965
Small Business Administration	-65	128	-355
Veterans Administration	26,952	28,754	29,628
Other Independent Agencies	14,264	22,685	15,842
Allowances	...	...	-48
Undistributed offsetting receipts	-72,310	-78,679	-91,917
Total budget outlays	1,004,586	1,065,759	1,096,740

<sup>1</sup> Includes outlays of off-budget Federal entities and programmes.

<sup>2</sup> July 1988 estimates.

*National Debt:* Gross federal debt outstanding (in \$1 m.), and *per capita* debt (in \$1) on 30 June to 1970 and then on 30 Sept.:

	<i>Public debt</i>	<i>Per capita</i> <sup>2</sup>		<i>Public debt</i>	<i>Per capita</i> <sup>2</sup>
1919 <sup>1</sup>	25,485	243	1970	382,603	1,866
1920	24,299	228	1980	914,317	4,014
1930 <sup>1</sup>	16,185	132	1985	1,827,470	7,603
1940	50,696	382	1986 <sup>3</sup>	2,120,082	8,737
1950	256,853	1,687	1987 <sup>3</sup>	2,345,578	9,576
1960	290,862	1,610	1988 <sup>3 4</sup>	2,577,081	10,471

<sup>1</sup> On 31 Aug. 1919 gross debt reached its First World War (1914–18) peak of \$26,596,702,000, which was the highest ever reached up to 1934; on 31 Dec. 1930 it had declined to \$16,026 m., the lowest it has been since the First World War. On the 30 Nov. 1941, just preceding Pearl Harbor, debt stood at \$61,363,867,932. The highest Second World War debt was \$279,764,369,348 on 28 Feb. 1946.

<sup>2</sup> *Per capita* figures, beginning with 1960, have been revised; they are based on the Census Bureau's estimates of the total population of the US, including Alaska and Hawaii.

<sup>3</sup> Revised to exclude unamortized discount or premium on all Treasury debt securities held by the public.

<sup>4</sup> July 1988 estimate.

*State and Local Finance:* Revenue of the 50 states and all local governments (82,340 in 1986) from their own sources amounted to \$670,251m. in fiscal year 1985-86; in addition they received \$113,099m. in revenue from fiscal aid, shared revenues and reimbursements from the federal government, bringing total revenue from all sources to \$783,349m. Of the revenue from state and local sources, taxes provided \$373,051m., of which property taxes (mainly imposed by local governments) yielded \$111,710m. or 30% of all tax revenue; and sales taxes, both general sales taxes and selective excises, provided \$135,001m. (36%).

State tax revenue totalled \$228,053m. in fiscal year 1986. Largest sources of state tax revenue are general sales taxes (imposed during 1986 by 45 states), motor fuel sales taxes (all states), individual income (44 states), motor vehicle and operators' licences (all states), corporation income (46 states), tobacco products (all states) and alcoholic beverage sales taxes (all states).

General revenue of local units from own sources in fiscal year 1985-86 totalled \$233,457m. In addition they received \$147,256m. from state and federal aids. Property taxes provided 28% of total general revenue.

Total expenditures of state and local governments were \$717,430m. in 1985-86, of which approximately 71% was for current operation. Education took \$210,819m. in current and capital expenditure; highways, \$49,368m.; welfare (chiefly public assistance), \$73,785m., and health and hospitals, \$53,508m. Capital outlays (construction, equipment and land purchases) totalled \$90,449m.

Gross debt of state and local governments totalled \$658,875m. or \$2,733 *per capita* at the close of their 1985-86 fiscal year. Total cash and investment assets of state and local governments were \$926,230m., about 21% being in cash and deposits, and the remainder in investments, mainly non-governmental securities.

US Bureau of the Census, *Governmental Finances in 1985-86*. Washington, 1987  
American Economic Association, *Readings in Fiscal Policy*. Homewood, Ill., 1985

**National Income.** The Bureau of Economic Analysis of the Department of Commerce prepares detailed estimates on the national income and product of the United States. The principal tables are published monthly in *Survey of Current Business*; the complete set of national income and product tables are published in the *Survey* regularly each July, showing data for recent years. *The National Income and Product Accounts of the United States, 1929-1982: Statistical Tables* (1986) and the July 1987 and July 1988 *Survey* contain complete sets of tables from 1929 through 1986. The conceptual framework and statistical methods underlying the US accounts were described in *National Income, 1954*. The July 1987 *Survey* provides a current overview of concepts and estimating procedures as well as a comprehensive directory to information on the US national accounts. Subsequent limited changes were described in the July 1988 *Survey*.

These latest figures <sup>1</sup> in \$1,000m. for various years are as follows:

	1929 <sup>2</sup>	1933 <sup>3</sup>	1950	1960	1970	1980	1987
1. Gross National Product	103.9	56.0	288.3	515.3	1,015.5	2,732.0	4,526.7
(a) Personal consumption expenditures	77.3	45.8	192.1	330.7	640.0	1,732.6	3,012.1
(b) Gross private domestic investment	16.7	1.6	55.1	78.2	148.8	437.0	712.9
(c) Net exports of goods and services	1.1	0.4	2.2	5.9	8.5	32.1	-123.0
(d) Government purchases of goods and services	8.9	8.3	38.8	100.6	218.2	530.3	924.7
1. GNP less capital consumption allowances with capital consumption adjustment, indirect business tax and non-tax liability, business transfer payments, statistical discrepancy, plus subsidies less current surplus of government enterprises, equals:							

	1929 <sup>2</sup>	1933 <sup>3</sup>	1950	1960	1970	1980	1987
2. National Income which, <i>less</i> corporate profits with inventory valuation and capital consumption adjustments, contributions for social insurance, wage accruals less disbursements, <i>plus</i> government transfer payments to persons, interest paid by government to persons and business less interest received by government, interest paid by consumers, personal dividend income, business transfer payments, equals:	84.7	39.4	239.8	424.9	832.6	2,203.5	3,678.7
3. Personal income whereof	84.3	46.3	228.1	409.4	831.8	2,258.5	3,780.0
4. Personal tax and non-tax payments take leaving	2.6	1.4	20.6	50.5	116.2	340.5	570.3
5. Disposable personal income divided into	81.7	44.9	207.5	358.9	715.6	1,918.0	3,209.7
(e) Personal outlays <sup>4</sup>	79.2	46.5	194.8	338.1	657.9	1,781.1	3,105.5
(f) Personal saving	2.6	-1.6	12.6	20.8	57.7	136.9	104.2
IA. GNP in constant (1982) \$s	709.6	498.5	1,203.7	1,665.3	2,416.2	3,187.1	3,847.0
(a) Personal consumption expenditures	471.4	378.7	733.2	1,005.1	1,492.0	2,000.4	2,521.0
(b) Gross private domestic investment	139.2	22.7	234.9	260.5	381.5	509.3	674.8
(c) Net exports of goods and services	4.7	-1.4	4.7	-4.0	-30.0	57.0	-128.9
(d) Government purchases of goods and services	94.2	98.5	230.8	403.7	572.6	620.5	780.2
II. National Income composed of	84.7	39.4	239.8	424.9	832.6	2,203.5	3,678.7
<i>Compensation of employees</i>	51.1	29.6	155.4	296.7	618.3	1,638.2	2,683.4
(g) Salaries and wages	50.5	29.0	147.2	272.8	551.5	1,372.0	2,248.4
(h) Supplements to wages and salaries	0.7	0.6	8.2	23.8	66.8	266.3	435.0
<i>Proprietors' income</i> <sup>5</sup>	14.4	5.4	38.8	52.1	80.2	180.7	312.9
(i) Farm <sup>5</sup>	6.1	2.5	13.6	11.6	14.7	20.5	43.0
(j) Business and professional <sup>5</sup>	8.3	2.9	25.2	40.5	65.4	160.1	270.0
<i>Personal income from rents</i> <sup>6</sup>	4.9	2.0	7.7	15.3	18.2	6.6	18.4
<i>Net interest</i>	4.7	4.1	3.0	11.3	41.2	200.9	353.6
<i>Corporate profits with inventory valuation and capital consumption adjustments</i>	9.6	-1.5	34.9	49.5	74.7	177.2	310.4
(k) Tax liabilities	1.4	0.5	17.9	22.7	34.4	84.8	133.8
(l) Inventory valuation adjustment	0.5	-2.1	-5.0	-0.2	-6.6	-43.1	-18.0
(m) Capital consumption adjustment	-0.9	-0.3	-3.0	-0.3	5.2	-16.8	51.7
(n) Dividends	5.8	2.0	8.8	12.9	22.5	54.7	95.5
(o) Undistributed profits	2.8	-1.6	16.2	14.3	19.2	97.6	47.4

<sup>1</sup> The inclusion of statistics for Alaska and Hawaii beginning in 1960 does not significantly affect the comparability of the data.

<sup>2</sup> Peak year between First and Second World Wars.

<sup>3</sup> Low point of the depression.

<sup>4</sup> Includes personal consumption expenditures, interest paid by consumers and personal transfer payments to foreigners (net).

<sup>5</sup> With inventory valuation and capital consumption adjustment.

<sup>6</sup> With capital consumption adjustment.

**Currency.** Prior to the banking crisis that occurred early in 1933, the monetary system had been on the gold standard for more than 50 years. An Act of 14 March 1900 required the Secretary of the Treasury to maintain at a parity with gold all forms of money issued by the USA. For a description of these, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1934. For information 1934-74 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1988-89.

Under the Coinage Act of 1965, all coins and currencies of the USA, regardless of when coined or issued, are legal tender for all debts, public and private.

Only one of the eight kinds of notes outstanding is now significant: Federal



Reserve notes in denominations of \$1, \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50 and \$100. The issue of (a) \$500, \$1,000, \$5,000 and \$10,000 Federal Reserve notes; of (b) silver certificates, and of (c) \$100, \$5 and \$2 US notes have been discontinued, although they are still outstanding. The following issues were stopped many years ago and have been in process of retirement: (1) Federal Reserve Bank notes; (2) National Bank notes; (3) Treasury notes of 1890; (4) fractional currency.

Federal Reserve notes are obligations of the USA and a first lien on the assets of the Federal Reserve Banks, through which they are issued. Each of the 12 banks issues them against the security of an equal volume of collateral.

At March 1989 £1 sterling = US\$1.72.

**Banking.** On 30 June 1985 there were 14,579 insured commercial banks and insured mutual savings banks with deposits of \$1,777,076m. filing report of condition and income statements with the Federal Reserve Board.

The Federal Reserve System, established under an Act of 1913, comprises the Board of 7 Governors, the 12 regional Federal Reserve Banks with their 25 branches, the Federal Open Market Committee and the Federal Advisory Council. The 7 members of the Board of Governors are appointed by the President with the consent of the Senate. Each Governor is appointed to a full term of 14 years or an unexpired portion of a term, one term expiring every 2 years. No two may come from the same Federal Reserve District. The Board supervises the Reserve Banks which bear the likeness of the late President Eisenhower, are sold at premium price and the issue and retirement of Federal Reserve notes; it designates 3 of the 9 directors of each Reserve Bank and designates the Chairman and Deputy Chairman; it passes on the admission of state banks to the System and has power to correct unsound conditions in State member banks or violations of banking law by them, including, if necessary, disciplinary action to remove officers and directors for unsafe or unsound banking practices or for continuous violations of banking laws; it also authorizes State member bank branches and approves mergers and consolidations if the acquiring, assuming or resulting bank is to be a State member; and it has power to control the expansion of bank holding companies and to require divestment of certain non-banking interests. The 12 members of the Federal Open Market Committee include the 7 members of the Board of Governors and 5 of the 12 Federal Reserve Bank presidents. The latter serve 1-year terms on the Committee in rotation except for the President of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, who is a permanent member. The Federal Open Market Committee influences credit market conditions, money and bank credit, by buying or selling US Government securities; and it also supervises System operations in foreign currencies for the purpose of helping to safeguard the value of the dollar in international exchange markets and facilitating co-operation and efficiency in the international monetary system. The Board also influences credit conditions through powers to set reserve requirements, to approve discount rates at Federal Reserve Banks, and to fix margin requirements on stock-market credit.

The Reserve Banks advance funds to depository institutions, issue Federal Reserve notes, which are the principal form of currency in the US, act as fiscal agent for the Government, and afford nation-wide cheque-clearing and fund transfer arrangements. They may discount paper for depository institutions and increase or reduce the country's supply of reserve funds by buying or selling Government securities and other obligations at the direction of the Federal Open Market Committee. The purchase and sale of securities in the open market is conducted by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York. Their capital stock is held by the member banks, but it carries no voting rights except in the election of directors.

Every member bank is required to subscribe to stock in the Reserve Bank of its district in an amount equal to 6% of its paid-up capital and surplus. Only one-half of the par value of the stock is paid in, the other half remaining subject to call by the Board of Governors. However, no call has been made for the second half of the subscription. All depository institutions with certain transaction accounts and time deposits are required to hold reserves with the Federal Reserve.

From 1968, the Congress passed a number of consumer financial protection acts, the first of which was the Truth in Lending Act, for which it has directed the Board

to write implementing regulations and assume partial enforcement responsibility. Others include the Equal Credit Opportunity Act, Home Mortgage Disclosure Act, Consumer Leasing Act, Fair Credit Billing Act, and Electronic Fund Transfer Act. To manage these responsibilities the Board has established a Division of Consumer and Community Affairs. To assist it, the Board consults with a Consumer Advisory Council, established by the Congress as a statutory part of the Federal Reserve System.

The Consumer Advisory Council was established by Congress in 1976 at the suggestion of the Board of Governors. Representing both consumer/community and financial industry interests, the Council meets several times a year to advise the Board on its implementation of consumer regulations and other consumer related matters.

Another statutory body, the Federal Advisory Council, consists of 12 members (one from each district); it meets in Washington at least four times a year to advise the Board of Governors on general business and financial conditions.

Following the passage of the Monetary Control Act of 1980, the Board of Governors established the Thrift Institutions Advisory Council to provide information and views on the special needs and problems of thrift institutions. The group is comprised of representatives of mutual savings banks, savings and loan associations, and credit unions.

Banks which participate in the federal deposit insurance fund have their deposits insured against loss up to \$100,000 for each depositor. The fund is administered by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation established in 1933; it obtains resources through annual assessments on participating banks.

All members of the Federal Reserve System are required to insure their deposits through the Corporation, and non-member banks may apply and qualify for insurance. On 31 Dec. 1984, 14,506 commercial banks and 267 mutual savings banks with insured deposits of \$1,400,000m. were members of the insurance fund. There are also 37 co-operative Farm Credit Banks, supervised by the Farm Credit Administration, that make agricultural and rural housing loans as well as loans to farmer co-operatives and to businesses providing on-farm services. In this system, farm mortgage loans are originated by local federal land bank associations, while farm production loans are made by local production credit associations. Moreover, the Federal Home Loan Bank System, which includes 12 district banks, is one of several government-sponsored agencies established for the public purpose of assisting home ownership. The Federal Home Loan Banks borrow in the financial markets and lend these funds to savings and loan associations and savings banks, which hold most of their assets in home mortgages. The Federal Home Loan Bank System is privately owned and does not receive any direct federal funding, although it seems to carry an implicit promise of financial support from the federal government because of its public purpose.

Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System. *The Federal Reserve System: Purposes and Functions*. 7th ed., 1984.—*Federal Reserve Bulletin*. Monthly.—*Annual Report*.—*Annual Statistical Digest*.—*The Federal Reserve Act, As Amended Through 1984*

Meek, P., *U.S. Monetary Policy and Financial Markets*. New York, 1982

Timberlake, R. H., *The Origins of Central Banking in the United States*. Cambridge, Massachusetts, 1978

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is to be introduced in the early 1990s. British weights and measures are usually employed, but the old Winchester bushel and wine gallon are used instead of the new or Imperial standards: *Wine gallon* = 0.83268 Imperial gallon; *Bushel* = 0.9690 Imperial bushel. Instead of the British cwt of 112 lb., one of 100 lb. is used; the *short* or *net ton* contains 2,000 lb.; the *long* or *gross ton*, 2,240 lb.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (public utilities only, 1985) 2,679,857,000m. kwh.

**Minerals.** Total value of non-fuel minerals produced in US (including Alaska and Hawaii) in 1984 was estimated at \$23,150m. (\$21,100m. in 1983). Details are given in the following tables.



## Production of metallic minerals (long tons, 2,240 lb.; short tons, 2,000 lb.):

	1986		1987	
	Quantity	Value (\$1,000)	Quantity	Value (\$1,000)
<i>Metallic minerals</i>				
Bauxite (dried equiv.) tonnes	856	15,643	674	12,855
Copper (recoverable content), tonnes	510	10,361	576	10,871
Gold (recoverable content), troy oz.	1,147,277	1,670,660	1,255,914	2,284,156
Lead (recoverable content), tonnes	339,793	165,150	311,298	246,654
Molybdenum (content of concentrate), 1,000 lb.	93,976	234,940	75,117	194,553
Silver (recoverable content), 1,000 troy oz.	34,524	188,846	39,790	278,930
Zinc (recoverable content), tonnes	202,983	170,050	216,981	200,529
Other metals	—	1,562,607	—	—

The US is wholly or almost wholly dependent upon imports for industrial diamonds, bauxite, tin, chromite, nickel, strategic-grade mica and long-fibre asbestos; it imports the bulk of its tantalum, platinum, manganese, mercury, tungsten, cobalt and flake graphite, and substantial quantities of antimony, cadmium, arsenic, fluorspar, zinc and bismuth.

In 1987 precious metals were mined mainly in Nevada, Idaho, Montana, Utah and Arizona (in order of combined output of gold and silver).

Statistics of important non-metallic minerals and mineral fuels are:

	1986		1987	
	Quantity	Value (\$1,000)	Quantity	Value (\$1,000)
<i>Non-metallic minerals</i>				
Boron minerals, short tons	1,251,000	426,086	1,385,000	475,092
Cement:				
Portland, 1,000 short tons	75,217	3,755,161	74,868	3,646,561
Masonry, 1,000 short tons	3,569	231,551	3,680	259,926
Clays, 1,000 short tons	44,620	1,095,179	47,805	1,202,602
Gypsum, 1,000 short tons	15,789	102,047	15,612	106,977
Lime, 1,000 short tons	14,474	757,867	15,758	789,683
Phosphate rock, 1,000 tonnes	38,710	877,600	40,954	793,280
Potassium salts, 1,000 tonnes (K <sub>2</sub> O equivalent)	1,147	152,000	—	—
Salt (common), 1,000 short tons	36,663	665,400	36,493	684,170
Sand and gravel, 1,000 short tons	910,420	3,106,760	896,200	3,002,500
Stone, 1,000 short tons	1,007,000	4,085,000	1,200,100	5,248,600
Sulphur (Frasch-process), 1,000 tonnes	4,108	508,512	3,610	386,834
Other non-metallic minerals	—	48,139	—	42,234
Total non-metallic minerals	—	15,611,302	—	16,812,659

	1986		1987	
	Quantity	Value (\$1,000)	Quantity	Value (\$1,000)
<i>Mineral fuels</i>				
Coal: Bitum. and lignite, 1,000 short tons	879,000	22,062,900	884,400	21,667,800
Pennsylv. anthracite, <sup>1</sup> 1,000 short tons	4,700	215,260	3,800	171,000
Gas: Natural gas, <sup>2</sup> 1 m. cu. ft	16,380,000	41,113,800	15,970,000	29,863,900
Petroleum (crude), 1,000 bbls of 42 gallons	3,274,400	78,880,657	3,163,800	40,053,961

<sup>1</sup> Includes a small quantity of anthracite mined in states other than Pennsylvania.

<sup>2</sup> Value at wells.

*Minerals Yearbook.* Bureau of Mines. Washington, D.C. Annual from 1932–33; continuing the *Mineral Resources of the United States* series (1866–1931); from 1977 in 3 vols. (*Metals and Minerals*; *Area Reports, Domestic*; and *Area Reports, International*)

**Agriculture.** Agriculture in the USA is characterized by its ability to adapt to widely varying conditions, and still produce an abundance and variety of agricultural products. From colonial times to about 1920 the major increases in farm production were brought about by adding to the number of farms and the amount of land under cultivation. During this period nearly 320m. acres of virgin forest were converted to crop land or pasture, and extensive areas of grass lands were ploughed. Improvident use of soil and water resources was evident in many areas.

During the next 20 years the number of farms reached a plateau of about 6.5m., and the acreage planted to crops held relatively stable around 330m. acres. The



major source of increase in farm output arose from the substitution of power-driven machines for horses and mules. Greater emphasis was placed on development and improvement of land, and the need for conservation of basic agricultural resources was recognized. A successful conservation programme, highly coordinated and on a national scale—to prevent further erosion, to restore the native fertility of damaged land and to adjust land uses to production capabilities and needs—has been in operation since early in the 1930s.

Following the Second World War the uptrend in farm output has been greatly accelerated by increased production per acre and per farm animal. These increases are associated with a higher degree of mechanization; greater use of lime and fertilizer; improved varieties, including hybrid maize and grain sorghums; more effective control of insects and disease; improved strains of livestock and poultry; and wider use of good husbandry practices, such as nutritionally balanced feeds, use of superior sites and better housing. During this period land included in farms decreased slowly, crop land harvested declined somewhat more rapidly, but the number of farms declined sharply.

Some significant changes during these transitions are:

All land in farms totalled less than 500m. acres in 1870, rose to a peak of over 1,200m. acres in the 1950s and declined to 1,002m. acres in 1987, even with the addition of the new States of Alaska and Hawaii in 1960. The number of farms declined from 6.35m. in 1940 to 2,173m. in 1987, as the average size of farms doubled. The average size of farms in 1987 was 461 acres, but ranged from a few acres to many thousand acres. In 1982, 636,827 farms (690,329 in 1978) were less than 50 acres; 711,499 (814,689), 50–179 acres; 729,865 (811,468), 180–999 acres; and 161,159 (162,156) 1,000 acres or more.

Farms operated by owners or part-owners, 1982, were 1,981,780 (88% of all farms), by all tenants, 257,520 (12%). The average size of farms in 1982 was 227 acres for full-owners, 794 acres for part-owners and 428 acres for tenants.

In 1987 (with 1960 figures in parentheses) large-scale, highly mechanized farms with sales of agricultural products totalling \$20,000 and over per farm made up 36.6% (8.6%) of all farms and accounted for 79.9% of all farmland. Farms selling between \$19,999 and \$2,500 worth of products per farm were 37% (44.8%) of all farms and accounted for 15.7% of farmland. Operators in every sales category received off-farm income, but operators selling less than \$20,000 per year received more of their average income from non-farm sources than from farming in 1986. In 1986 the average net farm income for farms with sales of \$500,000 and over was \$635,517; for farms with sales between \$100,000–\$499,999, \$63,751; for farms with sales between \$40,000–\$99,999, \$14,455; and for farms with sales of less than \$40,000, \$139. The average net farm income in 1986 for all farms was \$18,426. In 1986, farms with sales of less than \$40,000 accounted for 39.2% of total farm cash income in the US. Farms with sales of \$40,000–\$99,999 contributed 11.4% of total cash income; farms with sales of \$100,000–\$499,999, 27.4%; farms with sales of \$500,000 and over, 22%.

A century ago three-quarters of the total US population was rural, and practically all rural people lived on farms. In April 1987 27% of the population was rural. Farm residents accounted for 2% of the total population.

During the week of July 10–16, 1988, there were 3.52m. people working on farms and ranches. The workforce comprised 1.43m. self-employed farm operators, 591,000 unpaid workers, 1.20m. workers hired directly by farm operators and 303,000 Agricultural Service employees.

Cash receipts from farm marketings and government payments (in \$1m.):

	<i>Crops</i>	<i>Livestock and livestock products</i>	<i>Government payments</i>	<i>Total</i>
1932	1,996	2,752	—	4,748
1945	9,655	12,008	742	22,405
1950	12,356	16,105	283	28,744
1960	15,259	18,989	702	34,950
1970	20,976	29,563	3,717	54,256
1980	69,026	67,405	1,286	137,717
1985	74,413	69,780	7,704	151,897
1986	63,612	71,573	11,813	146,998

Realized gross farm income (including government payments), in \$1m., was 174,691 in 1984, 166,031 in 1985 and 159,541 in 1986; net farm income amounted to 32,022 in 1986. Farm real estate debt, excluding debt in operator dwellings, was \$103,700m. in 1984, \$97.7m. in 1985 and \$88.1m. in 1986.

US agricultural exports, fiscal year, totalled: 1978-79, \$31,979m.; 1979-80, \$40,481m.; 1980-81, \$43,780m.; 1981-82, \$39,095m.; 1982-83, \$34,769m.; 1983-84, \$38,027m.; 1984-85, \$31,201m.; 1985-86, \$26,324m.

Total area of farm land under irrigation in 1984 was 44,731,000 acres.

According to census returns and estimates of the Economic Research Service, the acreage and specified values of farms has been as follows (area in 1,000 acres; value in \$1,000; cash receipts in \$1m.):

	<i>Farm area</i>	<i>Crop land available for crops</i>	<i>Value, land, bldgs.<sup>2</sup> machinery, livestock</i>	<i>Cash receipts</i>
1910	878,798	432,000	41,089,000	...
1930	990,112 <sup>1</sup>	480,000	57,815,000	...
1940	1,065,114 <sup>1</sup>	467,000	41,829,000	...
1950	1,161,420 <sup>1</sup>	478,000	104,800,000	28,461
1959	1,123,508 <sup>1</sup>	458,100	155,700,000	33,647
1969	1,062,893 <sup>1</sup>	472,100	241,200,000	48,179
1978	1,014,777 <sup>1</sup>	471,000	728,700,000	112,360
1982	986,797 <sup>1</sup>	489,000	903,800,000	142,595
1986	...	...	638,100,000	135,185

<sup>1</sup> Includes Alaska and Hawaii.

<sup>2</sup> Real estate, livestock and machinery, excluding crops.

The areas and production of the principal crops for 3 years were:

	1985			1986			1987		
	<i>Har-vested 1,000 acres</i>	<i>Produc-tion 1,000</i>	<i>Yield per acre</i>	<i>Har-vested 1,000 acres</i>	<i>Produc-tion 1,000</i>	<i>Yield per acre</i>	<i>Har-vested 1,000 acres</i>	<i>Produc-tion 1,000</i>	<i>Yield per acre</i>
Corn for grain (bu.)	75,224	8,876,706	118.0	69,159	8,249,864	119.3	59,167	7,064,143	119.4
Oats (bu.)	8,177	520,800	63.7	6,860	381,356	56.3	6,925	373,765	54.0
Barley (bu.)	11,603	591,383	51.0	12,007	610,522	50.8	10,027	527,010	52.6
All wheat (bu.)	64,734	2,425,105	37.5	60,723	2,081,635	34.4	55,930	2,105,200	37.6
Rice (cwt.) <sup>1</sup>	2,492	134,913	5,414	2,360	133,350	5,651	2,330	127,725	5,482
Soybeans for beans (bu.)	61,584	2,098,531	34.1	58,292	1,940,101	33.3	56,437	1,904,712	33.7
Flaxseed (bu.)	584	8,293	14.2	683	11,538	16.9	463	7,444	16.1
All Cotton <sup>1</sup> (bales)	10,229	13,432.2	630	8,468	9,731.1	552	10,049	14,724.2	703
Potatoes (cwt.)	1,361	407,109	299	1,220	361,511	296	1,282	385,774	301
Tobacco (lb.)	688	1,511,638	2,197	582	1,163,940	2,001	602	1,226,280	2,038

<sup>1</sup> Yield in lb.

*Corn (Maize).* The chief corn-growing states (1987) were (estimated production, corn for grain in 1,000 bu.): Iowa, 1,306,500; Illinois, 1,201,200; Nebraska, 812,200; Minnesota, 635,000; Indiana, 631,800; Ohio, 362,400; Wisconsin, 330,400; Missouri, 242,950; South Dakota, 228,250.

*Wheat.* The chief wheat-growing states (1987) were (estimated production in 1,000 bu.): Kansas, 366,300; N. Dakota, 269,120; Oklahoma, 129,600; Montana, 151,220; Texas, 100,800; Washington, 114,285; S. Dakota, 106,704; Minnesota, 102,588; Colorado, 97,380; Idaho, 85,500; Nebraska, 85,800.

*Cotton.* Leading production, 1987, by state (in 1,000 bales, 480 lb. net weight) was: Texas, 4,650; California, 2,950; Mississippi, 1,750; Arizona, 1,045; Louisiana, 990; Arkansas, 905; Tennessee, 650; Alabama, 408; Oklahoma, 350.

*Tobacco.* Production (1,000 lb.) of the chief tobacco-growing states was, in 1987: N. Carolina, 467,790; Kentucky, 326,335; Tennessee, 93,545; S. Carolina, 94,080; Virginia, 76,040; Georgia, 72,080.

**Fruit.** Production, in 1,000 tonnes:

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Apples	3,918	3,954	5,121	...
Citrus Fruit	10,525	11,051	11,968	12,641
Grapes	5,607	5,225	5,250	...

**Dairy produce.** In 1987, production of milk was 142,462m. lb.; cheese solid, 5,344m. lb.; butter, 1,104m. lb.; ice-cream, 931m. gallons; non-fat dry milk for human consumption, 1,059m. lb.; cottage cheese, 1,519m. lb.

**Livestock** (1 Jan. 1988): Cattle and calves, 98,994,000; sheep and lambs, 10,774,000; hogs and pigs (1 Dec. 1987), 56,240,000.

On 1 Dec. 1987 there were 377.52m. chickens, excluding broilers. In 1987 240.3m. turkeys were raised; 5,002.9m. broilers were produced, 1 Dec. 1986–30 Nov. 1987. Eggs produced, same period, 69,492m. (value \$3,177m.).

Value of production (in \$1m.) was:

	1986	1987
Cattle and calves	20,935.3	24,629.3
Sheep and lambs	443.9	498.9
Hogs and pigs	9,555.8	10,426.8

Total value of livestock, excluding poultry and goats and, from 1961, horses and mules (in \$1m.) on farms in the USA on 1 Jan. was: 1930, 6,061; 1933 (low point of the agricultural depression), 2,733; 1970, 22,886; 1978, 31,952; 1979, 50,612; 1980, 60,598; 1981, 60,016; 1982, 53,601; 1983 (preliminary), 52,148.

In 1987 the production of shorn wool was 85.8m. lb. from 11m. sheep (average 1970–74, 320m. lb. from 18.2m. sheep); of pulled wool, 1.15m. lb. (1970–74, 10.1m. lb.).

**Forestry.** In 1977 the US forest lands, including Alaska and Hawaii, capable of producing timber for commercial use, covered 482,485,900 acres (more than one-fifth of the land area), classified as follows: Saw-timber stands, 215,435,700 acres; pole timber stands, 135,609,900 acres, seedling and sapling stands, 115,032,100 acres; non-stocked and other areas, 16,408,200 acres. Ownership of commercial forest land is distributed as follows: Federal government, 99,410,400 acres; state, county, municipal and Indian, 36,311,200 acres; privately owned, 346,764,300 acres, including 115,777,100 acres on farms. Of the saw-timber stand (2,578,940m. bd ft) Douglas fir constitutes 514,317; Southern pine, 321,563; Western yellow (ponderosa and jeffrey) pine, 192,070; other softwoods, 957,458; hardwoods, 255,189. In 1976 growing stock timber removals amounted to 14,229,023,000 cu. ft compared to net annual growth of about 21,664,316,000 cu. ft. Saw-timber removals amounted to 65,176,618,000 bd ft against an annual growth of 74,620,832,000 bd ft. The net area of the 156 national forests and other areas in USA and Puerto Rico administered by the US Department of Agriculture's Forest Service, including commercial and non-commercial forest land, was in Oct. 1986, 191m. acres.

Fire takes a heavy annual toll in the forest; total area burned over in 1986 was 3,191,125 acres; 1,500m. acres of land are now under organized fire-protection service. Federal land that was planted or seeded in forest and wind barrier nursery stock in the year ending 30 Sept. 1986 was 300,640 acres.

*Land Areas of National Forest System.* Forest Service, US Dept. of Agriculture, 1985  
*Report of the Forest Service, 1985*

**Fisheries.** Total US catch (edible and industrial), 1985, 2.8m. tonnes valued at \$2,300m.; harvest outside the US (mostly tuna) and joint venture operations (mostly Alaskan pollock), 1.1m. tonnes valued at \$277m.; foreign catch in the 200 mile wide US fishery zone (mostly Alaskan pollock, 73%; Pacific flounders, 13% and Pacific cod, 6%), 1.2m. tonnes.

Major species caught, 1985: Menhaden, 2,700m. lb, value \$101m. (44% of total US catch); salmon, 727m. lb, \$440m.; crabs, 338m. lb, \$390m.; shrimp, 473m. lb, \$306m.; cod, 303m. lb, \$54m.; sea herring, 199m. lb, \$50m.; tuna, 516m. lb, \$212m. Major landing areas, 1985: By value (in \$1m.): Alaska, 591; Massachu-



setts, 232; Louisiana, 229; Texas, 177; Florida, 171. By volume (in 1 m. lb): Louisiana, 1,700; Alaska, 1,200; Virginia, 723; Mississippi, 471; California, 363.

Exports, 1985, totalled \$1,100m.; imports, \$6,700m. *Per capita* consumption, 1985, 14.5 lb edible meat; estimated live weight equivalent about 43 lb *per capita*.

**Tennessee Valley Authority.** Established by Act of Congress, 1933, the TVA is a multiple-purpose federal agency which carries out its duties in an area embracing some 41,000 sq. miles, in 125 counties (aggregate population, about 4.7m.) in the 7 Tennessee River Valley states: Tennessee, Kentucky, Mississippi, Alabama, North Carolina, Georgia and Virginia. In addition, 76 counties outside the Valley are served by TVA power distributors. Its 3 directors are appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate; headquarters are in Knoxville, Tenn. There were 32,000 employees in Aug. 1987.

In the 1930s and 1940s, the Tennessee Valley offered the world a model of the first effort to develop all resources of a major river valley under one comprehensive programme, the Tennessee Valley Authority. The multipurpose development of the Tennessee River for flood control, navigation, and electric power production was the first big task for TVA. But there were other needs; controlling erosion on the land, introducing better fertilizers and new farming practices, eradicating malaria, demonstrating ways electricity could lighten the burdens in the home and increase production on the farm, and a multitude of potential job-producing enterprises.

In the depression year, 1933, the *per capita* income in the Valley was \$168, compared with the national average of \$375. Through the years, TVA has placed a strong emphasis on the economic development of the Valley. In recent years average income levels in the region have been nearly 80% of the national level.

TVA supplies electric power to 160 local distribution systems serving 2.9m. customers. The power system originated with the water-power development of the Tennessee River, but has become predominantly a coal-fired system as power requirements have outgrown the region's hydro-electric potential. In fiscal year 1986, the TVA system generated 94,600m. kwh. Installed capacity in 1986 was 32.1m. kw, with another 5.2m. kw under construction at TVA's nuclear plants.

Power operations are financially self-supporting from revenues. In fiscal year 1986 power revenues were \$4,639m. Power facilities are financed from revenues and the sale of revenue bonds and notes, and TVA is repaying appropriations previously invested in power facilities. Other TVA resource development programmes continue to be financed from congressional appropriations.

*Annual Report of the TVA.* Knoxville, 1934 to date

Clapp, G.R., *The TVA; An Approach to the Development of a Region.* Univ. of Chicago Press, 1955

Lilienthal, D. E., *TVA; Democracy on the March.* 20th Anniversary ed. New York and London, 1953

Tennessee Valley Authority. *A History of the Tennessee Valley Authority.* Knoxville, Tennessee, 1982

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The following table presents industry statistics of manufactures as reported at various censuses from 1909 to 1982 and from the Annual Survey of Manufactures for years in which no census was taken. The figures for 1958 to 1982 include data for some establishments previously classified as non-manufacturing. The figures for 1939, but not for earlier years, have been revised to exclude data for establishments classified as non-manufacturing in 1954. The figures for 1909-33 were previously revised by the deduction of data for industries excluded from manufacturing during that period.

The statistics for 1958, 1963, 1967, 1972, 1977 and 1982 relate to all establishments employing 1 or more persons anytime during the year; for 1950, 1956-57, 1959-62, 1966 and 1968-74 on a representative sample of manufacturing establishments of 1 or more employees; for 1929 through 1939, those reporting products valued at \$5,000 or more; and for 1909 and 1919, those reporting products valued at \$500 or more. These differences in the minimum size of establishments included in the census affect only very slightly the year-to-year comparability of the figures.

The annual Surveys of Manufactures carry forward the key measures of manu-

facturing activity which are covered in detail by the Census of Manufactures. The estimate for 1950 is based on reports for approximately 45,000 plants out of a total of more than 260,000 operating manufacturing establishments; those for 1956-57 on about 50,000, and those for 1959-62, 1966 and 1968-74 on about 60,000 out of about 300,000. Included are all large plants and representative samples of the much more numerous small plants. The large plants in the surveys account for approximately two-thirds of the total employment in operating manufacturing establishments in the US.

	<i>Number of establish- ments</i>	<i>Production workers (average for year)</i>	<i>Production workers' wages total (\$1,000)</i>	<i>Value added by manufacture (\$1,000)</i>
1909	264,810	6,261,736	3,205,213	8,160,075
1919	270,231	8,464,916	9,664,009	23,841,624
1929	206,663	8,369,705	10,884,919	30,591,435
1933	139,325	5,787,611	4,940,146	14,007,540
1939	173,802	7,808,205	8,997,515	24,487,304
1950	260,000	11,778,803	34,600,025	89,749,765
1960	...	12,209,514	55,555,452	163,998,531
1963	306,317	12,232,041	62,093,601	192,082,900
1967	305,680	13,955,300	81,393,600	261,983,800
1969	...	14,357,800	93,459,600	304,440,700
1970	...	13,528,000	91,609,000	300,227,600
1972	312,662	13,526,500	105,494,700	353,974,200
1973	...	14,233,100	118,332,300	405,623,500
1974	...	13,970,900	124,983,200	452,468,400
1975	...	12,567,900	121,427,200	442,485,800
1977	350,757	13,691,000	157,163,700	585,165,600
1978	...	14,228,700	176,416,800	657,412,000
1979	...	14,537,800	192,881,500	747,480,500
1980	...	13,900,100	198,164,000	773,831,300
1982	348,385	12,400,600	204,787,200	824,117,700
1984	...	12,572,800	231,783,900	983,227,700
1985	...	12,171,100	235,731,700	999,065,800
1986	...	11,800,000	237,000,000	1,035,000,000

For comparison of broad types of manufacturing, the industries covered by the Census of Manufactures have been divided into 20 general groups according to the *Standard Industrial Classification*.

<i>Code No.</i>	<i>Industry group</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>Production workers (average for year)</i>	<i>Production workers' wages, total (\$1,000)</i>	<i>Value added by manu- facture <sup>1</sup> (\$1,000)</i>
20.	Food and kindred products	1984	1,009,500	17,061,400	98,037,400
		1985	993,600	17,427,700	104,140,000
		1986	990,000	17,789,000	112,191,000
21.	Tobacco products	1984	38,600	933,200	10,786,600
		1985	36,900	440,900	11,893,700
		1986	34,000	912,000	12,725,000
22.	Textile mill products	1984	610,500	7,852,300	22,110,400
		1985	565,300	7,609,200	20,193,300
		1986	555,000	7,898,000	22,232,000
23.	Apparel and other textile products	1984	977,100	9,280,300	28,858,800
		1985	904,000	9,003,000	27,728,400
		1986	863,000	8,949,000	28,451,000
24.	Lumber and wood products	1984	541,500	7,860,000	21,035,100
		1985	514,200	7,835,800	21,065,500
		1986	512,000	8,135,000	23,239,000
25.	Furniture and fixtures	1984	383,700	5,148,700	15,905,600
		1985	380,000	5,345,500	16,478,800
		1986	376,000	5,556,000	17,659,000
26.	Paper and allied products	1984	468,100	10,515,800	40,884,700
		1985	462,100	10,783,400	40,387,200
		1986	458,000	11,297,000	43,925,000
27.	Printing and publishing	1984	733,400	12,916,200	67,021,600
		1985	742,100	13,554,400	73,054,300
		1986	738,000	14,099,000	78,150,000

<sup>1</sup> Figures represent adjusted value added.

<i>Code No.</i>	<i>Industry group</i>	<i>Year</i>	<i>Production workers (average for year)</i>	<i>Production workers' wages, total (\$1,000)</i>	<i>Value added by manufacture <sup>1</sup> (\$1,000)</i>
28. Chemical and allied products		1984	490,700	11,444,400	94,728,200
		1985	476,000	11,602,000	95,257,500
		1986	458,000	11,756,000	100,013,000
29. Petroleum and coal products		1984	89,800	2,648,600	16,163,400
		1985	83,500	2,533,900	17,111,600
		1986	82,000	2,598,000	17,496,000
30. Rubber and miscellaneous plastics products		1984	573,800	9,439,400	34,183,400
		1985	578,400	9,799,200	35,708,300
		1986	572,000	10,124,000	37,236,000
31. Leather and leather products		1984	145,200	1,482,600	4,510,700
		1985	124,800	1,342,200	4,107,500
		1986	110,000	1,213,000	3,611,000
32. Stone, clay and glass products		1984	416,400	8,039,000	27,706,600
		1985	403,800	8,196,200	28,841,800
		1986	399,000	8,352,000	30,677,000
33. Primary metal industries		1984	616,000	14,915,700	42,290,900
		1985	571,000	14,277,900	38,081,900
		1986	529,000	13,472,000	38,092,000
34. Fabricated metal products		1984	1,112,200	21,158,500	67,644,800
		1985	1,103,500	21,976,800	69,161,500
		1986	1,050,000	21,817,000	68,621,000
35. Machinery (except electrical)		1984	1,297,600	26,749,100	112,346,300
		1985	1,236,600	26,510,500	110,234,100
		1986	1,141,000	25,422,000	108,365,000
36. Electric and electronic equipment		1984	1,287,400	23,493,100	109,904,200
		1985	1,233,100	23,658,800	109,861,500
		1986	1,160,000	23,361,000	112,422,000
37. Transportation equipment		1984	1,159,800	30,768,000	114,498,700
		1985	1,179,600	33,171,400	120,953,100
		1986	1,169,000	33,626,000	125,706,000
38. Instruments and related products		1984	358,100	6,533,600	39,869,900
		1985	348,000	6,192,600	40,278,300
		1986	335,000	6,704,000	40,005,000
39. Miscellaneous manufacturing		1984	263,400	3,544,000	14,740,400
		1985	234,600	3,415,300	14,031,600
		1986	236,000	3,520,000	14,622,000

<sup>1</sup> Figures represent adjusted value added.

*Iron and Steel:* Output of the iron and steel industries (in net tons of 2,000 lb.), according to figures supplied by the American Iron and Steel Institute, was:

	<i>Furnaces in blast 31 Dec.</i>	<i>Pig-iron (including ferro-alloys)</i>	<i>Raw steel</i>	<i>Steel by method of production <sup>1</sup></i>				<i>Basic Oxygen</i>
				<i>Open hearth</i>	<i>Bessemer</i>	<i>Electric <sup>2</sup></i>		
1932 <sup>3</sup>	44	9,835,227	15,322,901	13,336,210	1,715,925	270,044		...
1939	195	35,677,097	52,798,714	48,409,800	3,358,916	1,029,067		...
1944 <sup>4</sup>	218	62,866,198	89,641,600	80,363,953	5,039,923	4,237,699		...
1950	234	66,400,311	96,336,075	86,262,509	4,534,558	6,039,008		...
1960	114	68,566,384	99,281,601	86,367,506	1,189,196	8,378,743		3,346,156
1970	152	87,933,000	131,514,000	48,022,000	—	20,162,000		63,330,000
1980	...	70,329,000	111,835,000	13,054,000	—	31,166,000		67,617,000
1986	...	43,952,000	81,606,000	3,330,000	—	30,390,000		47,885,000
1987	...	48,410,000	89,151,000	2,666,000	—	33,989,000		52,496,000

<sup>1</sup> The sum of these 4 items should equal the total in the preceding column; any difference appearing is due to the very small production of crucible steel, omitted prior to 1950.

<sup>2</sup> Includes crucible production beginning 1950.

<sup>3</sup> Low point of the depression.

<sup>4</sup> Peak year of war production.



Wholesale price index of iron and steel mill products (1967 = 100) was: 1950, 59.4; 1960, 96.4; 1970, 114.3; 1980, 302.7; 1982, 349.7; 1983, 352.5; 1984, 366.1; 1985, 366.2.

The iron and steel industry in 1987 employed 120,865 wage-earners (compared with 449,888 in 1960), who worked an average of 41 hours per week and earned an average of \$16.22 per hour: total wages were \$4,244m. and total salaries for 42,473 employees were \$1,704m.

*Annual Statistics Report.* American Iron and Steel Institute

**Labour.** The American labour movement comprises about 190 national and international labour organizations plus a large number of small independent local or single-firm labour organizations. In 1985 total membership was approximately 20.1m. The American Federation of Labor (founded 1881 and taking its name in 1886) and the Congress of Industrial Organizations merged into one organization, named the AFL-CIO, in Dec. 1955, representing 16.8m. workers in 1980.

Unaffiliated or independent labour organizations, inter-state in scope, including those organizing coalminers, teamsters and government employees and railroad workers, had an estimated total membership excluding all foreign members (1980) of about 6.8m.

Labour organizations represented 19.9% (19.3m.) of the labour force in 1986; 17.5% (17m.) were actual members of unions.

A total of 69 strikes and lockouts of 1,000 workers or more occurred in 1986, involving 533,000 workers and 11.9m. idle days; the number of idle days was 0.05% of the year's total working time of all workers.

There are 3 federal agencies which provide formal machinery for the adjustment of labour disputes: (1) The Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service, now an independent agency, whose mediation services are available 'in any labor dispute in any industry affecting commerce'; under Executive Order 11491, as amended, to federal agencies and organizations of federal employees involved in negotiation disputes; and in state and local government collective bargaining disputes when adequate dispute resolution machinery is not available to the parties. Its aim is to prevent and minimize work stoppages. (2) The National Mediation Board (1934) provides much the same facilities for the railroad and air-transport industries pursuant to the Railway Labor Act. (3) The National Railroad Adjustment Board (1934) acts as a board of final appeal for grievances arising over the interpretation of existing collective agreements under the Railway Labor Act; its decisions are binding upon both sides and enforceable by the courts.

The National Labor Relations Act, as amended by the Labor-Management Relations (Taft-Hartley) Act, 1947 (see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1955, p. 617), was amended by the Labor-Management Reporting and Disclosure Act, 1959, and again amended in 1974. The 1959 Act requires extensive reporting and disclosure of certain financial and administrative practices of labour organizations, employers and labour relations consultants. In addition, certain powers are vested in the Secretary of Labor to prevent abuses in the administration of trusteeships by labour organizations, to provide minimum standards and procedures for the election of union officers and to establish rules prescribing minimum standards for determining the adequacy of union procedures for the removal of officers. Other provisions impose a fiduciary responsibility upon union officers and provide for the exclusion of those convicted of certain named felonies from office for specified periods; more stringently regulate secondary boycotts and banning of 'hot' cargo agreements; put limitations upon organizational and recognition picketing and permit States to assert jurisdiction over labour disputes where the National Labor Relations Board declines to act. The Act also contains a 'Bill of Rights' for union members (enforceable directly by them) dealing with such things as equal rights in the nomination and election of union officers, freedom of speech and assembly subject to reasonable union rules, and safeguards against improper disciplinary action.

The Bureau of Labor Statistics estimated that in 1986 the labour force was 119,540,000 (65.6% of those 16 years and over); the resident armed forces accounted for 1,706,000 and the civilian labour force for 117,834,000, of whom 109,597,000 were employed and 8,237,000—or 7%—were unemployed. The following table shows civilian employment by industry and sex and percentage distribution of the total:

<i>Industry Group</i>	<i>Male</i>	<i>Female</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Percentage distribution</i>
Employed (1,000 persons):	60,892	48,706	109,597	100.0
Agriculture, forestry and fisheries	2,511	652	3,163	2.9
Mining	736	143	880	0.8
Construction	6,663	625	7,288	6.6
Manufacturing:				
Durable goods	9,289	3,315	12,605	11.5
Non-durable (including not specified)	4,936	3,421	8,357	7.6
Transportation, communication and other public utilities	5,553	2,097	7,650	7.0
Wholesale and retail trade	11,990	10,823	22,813	20.8
Finance, insurance and real estate	3,021	4,380	7,401	6.8
Services	13,199	21,137	34,337	31.3
Private households	184	1,057	1,241	1.1
Other services	13,015	20,080	33,096	30.2
Professional services	7,229	14,945	22,174	20.2
Public administration	2,992	2,112	5,104	4.7

*A Guide to Basic Law and Procedures under the National Labor Relations Act*, National Labor Relations Board, Washington, D.C., 1976

Brody, D., *Workers in Industrial America: Essays on the Twentieth-century Struggle*. New York, 1980

**Commerce.** The subjoined table gives the total value of the imports and exports of merchandise by yearly average or by year (in \$1 m.):

	<i>Exports</i>		<i>General</i>		<i>Exports</i> <sup>2</sup>		<i>General</i>
	<i>Total</i>	<i>US mds<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>imports</i>		<i>Total</i>	<i>US mds<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>imports</i> <sup>2</sup>
1946-50	11,829	11,673	6,659	1983	200,538	195,969	258,048
1951-55	15,333	15,196	10,832	1984	217,888	212,057	325,726
1956-60	19,204	19,029	13,650	1985	213,146	206,925	345,276
1961-65	24,006	24,707	17,659	1986	217,304	206,376	369,961
1970	43,224	42,590	39,952	1987	252,866	243,859	405,901

<sup>1</sup> Excludes re-exports.

<sup>2</sup> Includes US Virgin Islands trade with foreign countries.

For a description of how imports and exports are valued, see *Explanation of Statistics of Report FT990, Highlights of US Export and Import Trade*, Bureau of the Census, US Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C., 1946.

The 'most favoured nation' treatment in commerce between Great Britain and US was agreed to for 4 years by the treaty of 1815, was extended for 10 years by the treaty of 1818, and indefinitely (subject to 12 months' notice) by that of 1827.

**Imports and exports of gold and silver bullion and specie in calendar years (in \$1,000):**

	<i>Gold</i>		<i>Silver</i>	
	<i>Exports</i>	<i>Imports</i>	<i>Exports</i>	<i>Imports</i>
1932	809,528	363,315	13,850	19,650
1940	4,995	4,749,467	3,674	58,434
1944	959,228	113,836	126,915	23,373
1955	7,257	104,592	8,331	72,932
1960	1,647	335,032	25,789	57,438
1965	1,285,097	101,669	54,061	64,769
1970	36,887	227,472	53,003	58,838
1975	429,278	406,583	104,086	274,106
1980	2,787,431	2,508,520	1,326,878	1,336,009
1985	919,400	2,109,500	81,746	855,528
1987	1,034,186	1,052,941	79,123	460,235

The domestic exports of US produce, including military, and the imports for consumption by economic classes for 3 calendar years were (in \$m.):

	<i>Exports</i> (US merchandise)			<i>Imports</i> for consumption		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Food and live animals	19,268	17,303	19,179	18,668	20,644	20,267
Crude materials	16,939	17,324	20,416	10,295	10,347	11,295
Machinery and transport equipment	94,278	95,290	108,596	136,613	161,999	176,893
Chemicals	21,759	22,766	26,381	14,420	14,851	16,046
Total of the above main groups	152,244	152,683	174,572	179,996	207,841	224,501

Leading exports of US merchandise are listed below for the calendar year 1987: Special category merchandise is included. Data for major subdivisions of certain classes are also given:

<i>Commodity</i>	<i>\$lm.</i>	<i>Commodity</i>	<i>\$lm.</i>
Machinery, total	69,637	Chemicals	26,381
Power generating machinery	10,193	Chemical elements and compounds	10,679
Metalworking machinery	1,606	Plastic materials and resins	5,492
Agricultural machines and tractors	1,493	Soybeans	4,343
Office machinery and computers	18,692	Cotton	1,631
Telecommunications apparatus	5,085	Textiles and apparel	4,089
Electrical machinery and apparatus	16,637	Tobacco and cigarettes	3,138
Electrical power apparatus and switchgear	3,243	Iron and steel-mill products	1,223
Road motor vehicles (and parts)	20,878	Non-ferrous base metals and alloys	1,853
Aircraft and spacecraft (and parts)	16,904	Pulp, paper and products	6,264
Grains and preparations	8,058	Coal	3,430
Wheat (and flour)	3,248	Fruits and vegetables	2,956
		Petroleum and products	3,922
		Firearms of war and ammunition	2,258

Chief imports for 27 commodity classes for consumption for the calendar year 1987:

<i>Commodity</i>	<i>\$lm.</i>	<i>Commodity</i>	<i>\$lm.</i>
Petroleum products, crude and refined	40,828	Wool and other hair	248
Petroleum	29,130	Metal manufactures n.e.s.	7,950
Petroleum products	11,698	Diamonds (excl. industrial)	3,423
Non-ferrous metals	7,894	Rubber	760
Copper	1,458	Textile yarn, fabrics and products	6,457
Aluminium	2,859	Clothing	20,408
Nickel	570	Cotton fabrics, woven	1,295
Lead	595	Machinery, total	96,568
Tin	270	Agricultural machinery and tractors	1,842
Paper, paperboard and products	7,309	Office machinery	18,450
Newsprint	4,117	Coffee	2,706
Wood pulp	2,013	Chemicals and related products	16,046
Fertilizers	795	Chemicals	8,406
Sugar	381	Oils and fats	554
Iron and steel-mill products	8,394	Cocoa beans	504
Cattle, meat and preparations	3,192	Glass, pottery and china	2,823
Automobiles and parts	12,051	Footwear	7,225
Fish (and shellfish)	798	Toys and sports goods	5,987
Fruit and vegetables	4,295	Furs, undressed	218
Alcoholic beverages	3,125	Telecommunications apparatus	19,826
		Artworks and antiques	600
		Natural and manufactured gas	2,505

Total trade between the USA and the UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	9,919,689	8,468,160	9,136,015	10,767,750
Exports and re-exports from UK	11,498,802	10,379,585	11,014,242	10,544,077



Imports and exports by continents, areas and selected countries for calendar years (in \$1 m.):

<i>Area and country</i>	<i>General imports</i>		<i>Exports incl. re-exports <sup>1</sup></i>	
	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Western Hemisphere	110,201	117,954	76,410	94,795
Canada	68,253	71,085	45,333	59,814
20 Latin American Republics	39,541	44,371	27,968	31,574
Central American Common Market	2,061	1,939	1,767	1,873
Costa Rica	641	670	483	582
El Salvador	385	284	518	390
Guatemala	601	495	400	480
Honduras	433	489	363	418
Nicaragua	8	1	3	4
Panama	366	356	711	743
Latin American FTA	35,655	40,519	24,180	27,356
Argentina	856	1,080	944	1,090
Bolivia	124	111	112	140
Brazil	6,813	7,865	3,885	4,040
Chile	820	981	823	796
Colombia	1,874	2,232	1,318	1,412
Ecuador	1,465	1,266	601	621
Mexico	17,302	20,271	12,392	14,582
Paraguay	30	22	171	183
Peru	803	769	693	814
Uruguay	473	344	100	92
Venezuela	5,097	5,579	3,141	3,586
Dominican Republic	1,085	1,163	921	1,142
Haiti	375	395	387	459
Bahamas	442	416	761	782
Netherlands Antilles	471	521	398	507
Jamaica	299	395	457	601
Trinidad and Tobago	793	815	532	361
Europe				
Western Europe	89,825	95,496	61,642	69,718
OECD Countries	89,130	94,636	61,003	69,091
European Economic Community	75,736	81,188	53,154	60,575
Belgium and Luxembourg	4,006	4,171	5,399	6,189
Denmark	1,757	1,779	758	893
France	10,129	10,730	2,615	7,943
Germany (Fed. Rep.)	25,124	27,069	10,561	11,748
Greece	394	480	430	402
Ireland	1,003	1,112	1,434	1,810
Italy	10,607	11,040	4,838	5,530
Netherlands	4,066	3,964	...	8,217
Portugal	552	664	638	581
Spain	2,702	2,839	2,615	3,148
UK	15,396	17,341	11,418	14,114
Turkey	633	821	1,160	1,483
EFTA countries				
Austria	864	929	464	549
Norway	1,079	1,404	937	842
Sweden	4,420	4,758	1,871	1,894
Switzerland	5,253	4,249	2,977	3,151
Finland	908	999	381	515
Iceland	238	286	60	84
Yugoslavia	646	797	528	461
Poland	233	296	151	239
USSR	558	425	1,248	1,480

<sup>1</sup> 'Special category' exports are included in these totals.

<i>Area and country</i>	<i>General imports</i>		<i>Exports incl. re-exports <sup>1</sup></i>	
	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>	<i>1986</i>	<i>1987</i>
Asia <sup>2</sup>	153,869	174,452	64,532	73,268
Near East	7,890	10,811	8,415	9,502
Bahrain	77	63	195	205
Iran	569	1,668	34	54
Iraq	440	495	528	683
Israel	2,418	2,639	2,239	3,130
Kuwait	267	522	7	505
Lebanon	30	33	106	97
Saudi Arabia	3,612	4,433	657	3,373
Japan	81,911	84,575	26,882	28,249
Other Asia	67,186	83,582	34,514	41,497
Bangladesh	230	370	165	193
Hong Kong	8,891	9,854	3,030	3,983
India	2,283	2,529	1,536	1,463
Indonesia	3,312	3,394	946	767
Korea, Republic of	12,729	16,987	6,355	8,099
Malaysia	2,421	2,921	1,730	1,897
Pakistan	325	405	830	733
Philippines	1,972	2,264	1,363	1,599
Singapore	4,725	6,201	3,380	4,053
Sri Lanka	337	417	66	77
Taiwan (Formosa)	19,791	24,622	5,524	7,413
Thailand	1,748	2,220	936	1,544
Vietnam <sup>3</sup>	...	...	30	23
China	4,771	6,294	3,106	3,497
Oceania	3,717	4,136	6,659	6,526
Australia	2,632	3,007	5,551	5,495
New Zealand and W. Samoa	984	1,053	883	821
Africa	10,348	11,939	5,978	6,283
Algeria	1,831	1,999	453	426
Egypt	112	465	1,982	2,210
Ethiopia	75	74	104	136
Libya	2	...	46	...
Morocco	43	50	487	383
Ghana	191	249	84	115
Liberia	82	88	65	70
Nigeria	2,530	3,573	409	295
Kenya	141	79	70	95
Zaire	221	308	105	104
South Africa, Republic of <sup>4</sup>	2,365	1,346	1,158	1,281

<sup>1</sup> 'Special category' exports are included in these totals.

<sup>2</sup> Excludes Yemen (Aden) (formerly Southern Yemen).

<sup>3</sup> Included in China from 1984.

<sup>4</sup> Includes also South-West Africa (Namibia).

*US Department of Commerce, Bureau of Census. Report FT 990, Highlights of US Export and Import Trade*

**Tourism.** In 1987, 29.7m. visitors travelled to the USA and spent over US\$14,778m. (excluding transportation paid to US international carriers). They came mainly from Canada (12.4m.), Mexico (13.1m.), Europe (6.2m.) and the Caribbean (3.7m.). Expenditure by US travellers in foreign countries for 1987 was over US\$20,496m. (excluding transportation paid to foreign flag international carriers).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 31 Dec. 1987 the total US public road<sup>1</sup> mileage, including rural and urban roads, amounted to 3,874,026 miles, of which 3,502,701 miles were surfaced roads. The total mileage cited includes 703,554 miles of rural roads under control of the states, 2,172,542 miles of local rural roads, 212,556 miles of federal park and

forest roads, and 710,188 miles of urban roads and streets. Expenditures for construction and maintenance amounted to \$46,830m. in 1986.

By the end of 1987, toll roads administered by state and local toll authorities, totalled 4,692 miles (including some under construction) compared with 344 miles in 1940.

Motor vehicles registered in the calendar year 1987 were (Federal Highways Administration) 179,044,449, including 137,323,632 automobiles, 602,055 buses and 41,118,762 trucks.

Inter-city trucks (private and for hire) averaged 605,000m. revenue net ton-miles in 1984. Of the 593,728 buses in service in 1986, 479,076 were school buses. Inter-city service operated a total of 1,137m. bus-miles and carried a total of 362m. revenue passengers in 1984.

There were 46,385 deaths in road accidents in 1987.

<sup>1</sup> Public road mileage excludes that mileage not open to public travel, not maintained by public authority, or not passable by standard four-wheel vehicles. This excluded mileage was reported to the US Federal Highway Administration prior to 1981.

**Railways.** Railway history in the USA commences in 1828, but the first railway to convey both freight and passengers in regular service (between Baltimore and Ellicott's Mills, Md., 13 miles) dates from 24 May 1830. Mileage rose to 52,922 miles in 1870; to 167,191 miles in 1890, and to a peak of 266,381 miles in 1916, falling thereafter to 261,871 in 1925; 246,739 in 1940 and 222,164 in 1969 (these include some duplication under trackage rights and some mileage operated in Canada by US companies). The ordinary gauge is 4 ft 8½ in. (about 99.6% of total mileage). The USA has about 29% of the world's railway mileage.

In addition to the independent railroad companies, railway service is provided by the National Railroad Passenger Corporation (Amtrak), which is federally assisted. Amtrak was set up on 1 May 1971 to maintain a basic network of inter-city passenger trains with government assistance, and is responsible for almost all non-commuter services with 40,000 miles of route including 1,256 km owned (555 electrified) and carried 21m. passengers in 1985. From 1 Jan. 1983, an Amtrak commuter division took over from Conrail all commuter services not acquired by State or regional agencies.

Conrail was established on 1 April 1976 to run freight services in the industrial north-east formerly operated by the bankrupt Penn Central, Reading, Lehigh Valley, Central of New Jersey, Erie Lackawanna, Lehigh & Hudson railroads, and Pennsylvania-Reading Seashore Lines which was returned to the private sector in 1985. There are in addition some 400 minor railways (short lines) which provide local freight connections. Outside the major conurbations there are almost no regular passenger services other than those provided by Amtrak.

The following table, based on the figures of the Interstate Commerce Commission, shows some railway statistics for 4 calendar years:

Classes I and II Railroads	1960	1970	1980 <sup>2</sup>	1986 <sup>1,2</sup>
Mileage owned (first main tracks)	223,779	204,621	157,078	135,782
Revenue freight originated (1m. short tons)	1,421	1,572	1,537	1,306
Freight ton-mileage (1m. ton-miles)	591,550	771,012	932,748	867,722
Passengers carried (1,000)	488,019	289,469	281,503	<sup>3</sup>
Passenger-miles (1m.)	31,790	10,786	6,557	<sup>3</sup>
Operating revenues (\$1m.)	9,587	12,209	28,708	26,204
Operating expenses (\$1m.)	7,135	9,806	26,761	24,896
Net railway operating income (\$1m.)	1,055	506	1,364	507
Net income after fixed charges (\$1m.)	855	126	2,029	1,579
<b>Class I Railroads:</b>				
Locomotives in service	40,949	27,086	28,240	21,045
Steam locomotives	25,640	—	—	—
Freight-train cars (excluding caboose cars)	1,721,269	1,423,921	1,101,343	713,954
Passenger-train cars	57,146	11,177	2,219	672
Average number of employees	1,220,784	566,282	458,996	275,817
Average wage per week (\$1)	72.59	188.71	474.21	690.27

<sup>1</sup> Class I railroads only. From 1981, Class II railroads were no longer required to file annual reports.

<sup>2</sup> Data for National Railroad Passenger Corporation excluded.

<sup>3</sup> This data has been discontinued.



**Aviation.** In civil aviation there were, on 31 Dec. 1987, 699,653 certified pilots (including 146,014 student pilots) and 275,082 registered civil aircraft.

Airports on 31 Dec. 1987: Air carrier, 708; general aviation, 16,307. Of these airports, 12,907 were conventional land-based, while 388 were seaplane bases, 3,653 were heliports and 67 stolports (STOL—Short Take-Off and Landing).

Statistics from the Department of Transportation indicate that for 1987 US flag carriers in scheduled international service had 30.8m. enplanements with 425.3m. aircraft miles (excluding all-cargo) for a total of 79,827m. revenue passenger-miles. The non-scheduled airlines had a total of 13,545m. revenue passenger-miles internationally and domestically. Domestically US scheduled airlines in 1987 had 416.5m. enplanements with a total of 3,439.1m. aircraft miles for 324,481m. revenue passenger-miles. (A revenue passenger-mile is one paying passenger carried per mile.).

**Shipping.** On 1 June 1988 the US merchant marine included 686 sea-going vessels of 1,000 gross tons or over, with aggregate dead-weight tonnage of 25m. This included 252 tankers of 16.8m. DWT.

On 1 June 1988 US merchant ocean-going vessels were employed as follows: Active, 394 of 18.6m. DWT, of which 163 of 6.9m. tons were foreign trade, 170 of 10.2m. tons in domestic trade and 61 of 1.5m. tons in other US agency operations. Inactive vessels totalled 6.8m. DWT; 39 of 2.4m. DWT privately owned were laid up and 253 of 4.5m. tons were Government-owned National Defense reserve fleet. Of the total vessels in the US fleet, 427 of 21 m. DWT were privately owned.

US exports and imports carried on dry cargo and tanker vessels in the year 1987 totalled 718.6m. long tons, of which 27.8m. long tons or 4% were carried in US flag vessels.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Until the beginning of 1984 the telephone business was largely in the hands of the American Telephone and Telegraph Company (AT & T) and its telephone operating subsidiaries, which together were known as the Bell System. Pursuant to a government anti-trust suit, the Bell System was broken up, with the telephone operating companies being divested from AT & T to create seven regional companies for providing local service. There are also many hundreds of smaller telephone companies having no common ownership affiliation with the Bell companies, but which connect with them for universal service, countrywide and worldwide. In addition, several new entrants have begun to compete with AT & T in the long-distance telephone market. The message telegraph and telex services are in the hands of The Western Union Telegraph Company, and the international record carriers, which compete with the telephone industry in providing leased private lines. Western Union also provides an inter-city telephone service.

	1960	1970	1980	1987
All telephone systems:				
Total access lines	74,342,000	120,218,000	180,425,000	126,725,000
Bell System:				
Total access lines	60,735,100	96,561,000	141,674,000	100,244,000
Average daily telephone calls	219,093,000	368,363,000	580,230,000	1,359,697,965
Local	209,373,000	346,505,000	527,543,000	1,248,559,658
Long distance	9,720,000	21,858,000	52,687,000	111,138,307
Total plant in service (\$1,000)	24,072,499	54,813,202	132,831,794	177,170,795
Total operating revenues (\$1,000)	7,958,125	17,094,846	51,203,404	64,980,888
Employees, number	580,405	772,980	847,768	501,179
Western Union Telegraph Co.:				
Public telegrams for year	102,931,000	46,084,000	40,801,398	17,590,490
Total plant (\$1,000)	398,023	1,029,149	2,101,007	1,800,307
Revenue from public telegrams (\$1,000)	160,746	126,739	115,612	81,043
Total operating revenues (\$1,000)	262,365	402,456	696,972	455,785
Employees, number	32,655	24,293	12,649	...

Postal business for the years ended 30 Sept. included the following items:

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Number of post offices, on 30 June <sup>1</sup>	39,386	39,327	39,270	40,030
Postal operating revenue (\$1,000)	25,313,554	27,736,071	30,102,691	31,528,112
Postal expenses (\$1,000)	26,357,353	29,207,201	30,716,595	32,519,689

<sup>1</sup> The US Postal Service was established 1 July 1971. Financial statements prior to that date are those of the Post Office Department. Such statements for 1968-71 have been restated to be in a format and on an accounting principle basis generally consistent with 1972.

On 1 Jan. 1975 there were in the USA and Territories, 7,068 authorized commercial radio stations, 711 commercial television stations: Of non-commercial stations 717 were for radio, 241 for television.

**Cinemas.** Cinemas increased from 17,003 in 1940 to 20,239 in 1950 and decreased to 20,200 in 1984, of which 2,832 were drive-ins.

**Newspapers.** Of the daily newspapers being published in the USA in 1971, 339 were morning papers with a circulation of 26,116,000, and 1,425 were evening papers with a circulation of 36,115,000. The 590 Sunday papers had a total circulation of 49.7m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Legal controversies may be decided in two systems of courts: The federal courts, with jurisdiction confined to certain matters enumerated in Article III of the Constitution, and the state courts, with jurisdiction in all other proceedings. The federal courts have jurisdiction exclusive of the state courts in criminal prosecutions for the violation of federal statutes, in civil cases involving the government, in bankruptcy cases and in admiralty proceedings, and have jurisdiction concurrent with the state courts over suits between parties from different states, and certain suits involving questions of federal law.

The highest court is the Supreme Court of the US, which reviews cases from the lower federal courts and certain cases originating in state courts involving questions of federal law. It is the final arbiter of all questions involving federal statutes and the Constitution; and it has the power to invalidate any federal or state law or executive action which it finds repugnant to the Constitution. This court, consisting of 9 justices who receive salaries of \$104,100 a year (the Chief Justice, \$108,400), meets from Oct. until June every year and disposes of about 4,450 cases, deciding about 380 on their merits. In the remainder of cases it either summarily affirms lower court decisions or declines to review. A few suits, usually brought by state governments, originate in the Supreme Court, but issues of fact are mostly referred to a master.

The US courts of appeals number 13 (in 11 circuits composed of 3 or more states and 1 circuit for the District of Columbia and 1 Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit); the 168 circuit judges receive salaries of \$83,200 a year. Any party to a suit in a lower federal court usually has a right of appeal to one of these courts. In addition, there are direct appeals to these courts from many federal administrative agencies. In the year ending 30 June 1986, 35,455 appeals were filed in the courts of appeals.

The trial courts in the federal system are the US district courts, of which there are 89 in the 50 states, 1 in the District of Columbia and 1 each in the territories of Puerto Rico, Virgin Islands, Guam and the Northern Marianas. Each state has at least 1 US district court, and 3 states have 4 apiece. Each district court has from 1 to 27 judgeships. There are 575 US district judges (\$78,700 a year), who handle about 254,800 civil cases and 57,000 criminal defendants every year.

In addition to these courts of general jurisdiction, there are special federal courts of limited jurisdiction. US Claims Court (16 judges at \$70,200 a year) decides claims for money damages against the federal government in a wide variety of matters; the Court of International Trade (9 judges at \$78,700) determines controversies concerning the classification and valuation of imported merchandise.

The judges of all these courts are appointed by the President with the approval of the Senate; to assure their independence, they hold office during good behaviour



and cannot have their salaries reduced. This does not apply to the territorial judges, who hold their offices for a term of years or to judges of the US Claims Court. The judges may retire with full pay at the age of 70 years if they have served a period of 10 years, or at 65 if they have 15 years of service, but they are subject to call for such judicial duties as they are willing to undertake. Only 9 US judges up to 1986 have been involved in impeachment proceedings, of whom 4 district judges and 1 commerce judge were convicted and removed from office.

Of the 254,828 civil cases filed in the district courts in the year ending 30 June 1986, about 113,392 arose under various federal statutes (such as labour, social security, tax, patent, securities, antitrust and civil rights laws); 42,326 involved personal injury or property damage claims; 88,352 dealt with contracts; and 10,674 were actions concerning real property.

Of the 41,490 criminal cases filed in the district courts in the year ending 30 June 1986, about 2,010 were charged with alleged infractions of the immigration laws; 340, the transport of stolen motor vehicles; about 3,540 larceny and theft; 8,570, embezzlement and fraud; and 7,890 narcotics laws.

Persons convicted of federal crimes are either fined, released on probation under the supervision of the probation officers of the federal courts, confined in prison for a period of up to 6 months and then put on probation (known as split sentencing) or confined in one of the following institutions: 3 for juvenile and youths; 7 for young adults; 7 for intermediate term adults; 7 for short-term adults; 2 for females; 1 hospital and 15 community service centres. In addition, prisoners are confined in centres operated by the National Institutes of Mental Health. In addition, prisoner drug addicts may be committed to US Public Health Service hospitals for treatment. Prisoners confined in institutions operated by the US Bureau of Prisons for the year ending 30 Sept. 1982, numbered 28,133.

The state courts have jurisdiction over all civil and criminal cases arising under state laws, but decisions of the state courts of last resort as to the validity of treaties or of laws of the US, or on other questions arising under the Constitution, are subject to review by the Supreme Court of the US. The state court systems are generally similar to the federal system, to the extent that they generally have a number of trial courts and intermediate appellate courts, and a single court of last resort. The highest court in each state is usually called the Supreme Court or Court of Appeals with a Chief Justice and Associate Justices, usually elected but sometimes appointed by the Governor with the advice and consent of the State Senate or other advisory body; they usually hold office for a term of years, but in some instances for life or during good behaviour. Their salaries range from \$24,000 to \$84,584 a year. The lowest tribunals are usually those of Justices of the Peace; many towns and cities have municipal and police courts, with power to commit for trial in criminal matters and to determine misdemeanours for violation of the municipal ordinances; they frequently try civil cases involving limited amounts.

The death penalty is illegal in Alaska, Hawaii, Iowa, Maine, Minnesota, Oregon, West Virginia, Wisconsin and Michigan; in North Dakota it is legal only for treason and first-degree murder committed by a prisoner serving a life sentence for first-degree murder, in Rhode Island only for murder committed by a prisoner serving a life sentence and in Vermont and New York for the murder of a peace officer in the line of duty and for first-degree murder by those who kill while serving a life sentence for murder. The death penalty is legal in 37 states. Until 1982 it had fallen into disuse and had been abolished *de facto* in many states. The US Supreme Court had held the death penalty, as applied in general criminal statutes, to contravene the eighth and fourteenth amendments of the US constitution, as a cruel and unusual punishment when used so irregularly and rarely as to destroy its deterrent value.

There were no executions 1968–76. In 1977 a convicted murderer requested that he should be executed and after a lengthy legal dispute the sentence was carried out at Utah state prison. Six persons were executed between 1977 and 1982. In Jan. 1983, 1,050 prisoners in 31 states were reported under sentence of death.

The total number of civilian executions carried out in the US from 1930 to 1982 was 3,866.



*Federal 'Political' Crimes.* Prosecutions for what may be loosely described as 'political' offences, or crimes directed towards the overthrow by violence of the federal government, which were somewhat numerous in the early 1950s, have declined sharply over the last 20 years and are now exceedingly rare.

*A Guide to Court Systems.* Institute of Judicial Administration. New York, 1960

*The United States Courts.* Administrative Office of the US Courts, Washington, D.C., 20544

Blumberg, A. S., *Criminal Justice: Issues and Ironies*. 2nd ed. New York, 1973

Huston, L. A. and others, *Roles of the Attorney General of the United States*. New York, 1968

McCloskey, R. G., *The Modern Supreme Court*. Harvard Univ. Press, 1972

McLaughlin, W. P., *American Legal Processes*. New York, 1977

Walker, S. E., *Popular Justice*. New York, 1980

**Religion.** *The Yearbook of American and Canadian Churches for 1988*, published by the National Council of the Churches of Christ in the USA, New York, presents the latest figures available from official statisticians of church bodies. The large majority of reports are for the calendar year 1986, or a fiscal year ending 1986. The 1986 reports indicated that there were 142,799,662 (142,926,363 in 1985) members with 346,102 local churches. There were 328,566 clergymen serving in local congregations in 1986. The principal religious bodies (numerically or historically) or groups of religious bodies are shown below:

<i>Denominations</i>	<i>Local churches</i>	<i>Total membership</i>
Summary:		
Protestant bodies	315,810	78,991,261
Roman Catholic Church	23,561	52,893,217
Jews <sup>1</sup>	3,416	5,814,000
Eastern Churches	1,662	3,980,107
Old Catholic, Polish National Catholic and Armenian	426	828,962
Buddhists	100	100,000
Miscellaneous <sup>2</sup>	1,127	192,115
1986 totals	346,102	142,799,662 <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Includes Orthodox, Conservative and Reformed bodies.

<sup>2</sup> Includes non-Christian bodies such as Spiritualists, Ethical Culture, Unitarian-Universalists.

<sup>3</sup> Care should be taken in interpreting membership statistics for the US Churches. Some statistics are accurately compiled and others are estimates. Also statistics are not always comparable.

<i>Protestant Church Membership</i>	<i>Total membership</i>
Baptist bodies	
Southern Baptist Convention	14,613,618
National Baptist Convention, USA	5,500,000 <sup>1</sup>
National Baptist Convention of America, Inc.	2,668,799 <sup>1</sup>
National Primitive Baptist Convention	250,000 <sup>1</sup>
American Baptist Churches in the USA	1,576,483
American Baptist Association	250,000
Conservative Baptist Association of America	225,000
Regular Baptist Churches	300,839
Free Will Baptists	206,546
Baptist Missionary Association of America	228,125
Christian Church (Disciples of Christ)	1,106,692
Christian Churches and Churches of Christ	1,063,469
Church of the Nazarene	530,912
Churches of Christ	1,623,754
The Episcopal Church	2,504,507
Latter-Day Saints:	
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints	3,860,000
Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints	192,077
Lutheran Bodies <sup>1</sup> :	
Lutheran Church in America	2,896,138
The Lutheran Church-Missouri Synod	2,630,588
The American Lutheran Church	2,319,443
Wisconsin Evangelical Lutheran Synod	416,493

<i>Protestant Church Membership</i>	<i>Total membership</i>
Methodist Bodies:	
United Methodist Church	9,192,172
African Methodist Episcopal Church	2,210,000
African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church	1,195,173
Christian Methodist Episcopal Church	718,922
Pentecostal Bodies:	
Assemblies of God	2,135,104
Church of God (Cleveland, Tenn.)	505,775
United Pentecostal Church, International, Inc.	500,000
Presbyterian Bodies:	
Presbyterian Church (USA)	3,007,322
Others	430,342
Reformed Churches:	
Reformed Church in America	340,359
Christian Reformed Church	219,988
The Salvation Army	432,893
Seventh-day Adventists	666,199
United Church of Christ	1,676,105

<sup>1</sup> On 1 Jan. 1988 a merger of the American Lutheran Church, the Society of Evangelical Lutheran Churches and the Lutheran Church in America formed the Evangelical Lutheran Church in America (ELCA).

*Yearbook of American and Canadian Churches*. Annual, from 1951. New York

**Education.** Under the system of government in the USA, elementary and secondary education is committed in the main to the several states. Each of the 50 states and the District of Columbia has a system of free public schools, established by law, with courses covering 12 years plus kindergarten. There are 3 structural patterns in common use; the K8-4 plan, meaning kindergarten plus 8 elementary grades followed by 4 high school grades; the K6-3-3 plan, or kindergarten plus 6 elementary grades followed by a 3-year junior high school and a 3-year senior high school; and the K6-6 plan, kindergarten plus 6 elementary grades followed by a 6-year high school. All plans lead to high-school graduation, usually at age 17 or 18. Vocational education is an integral part of secondary education. In addition, some states have, as part of the free public school system, 2-year colleges in which education is provided at a nominal cost. Each state has delegated a large degree of control of the educational programme to local school districts (numbering 15,713 in school year 1986-87), each with a board of education (usually 3 to 9 members) selected locally and serving mostly without pay. The school policies of the local school districts must be in accord with the laws and the regulations of their state Departments of Education. While regulations differ from one jurisdiction to another, in general it may be said that school attendance is compulsory from age 7 to 16.

The Census Bureau estimates that in Nov. 1979 only 1m. or 0.6% of the 170m. persons who were 14 years of age or older were unable to read and write; in 1930 the percentage was 4.8. In 1940 a new category was established—the 'functionally illiterate', meaning those who had completed fewer than 5 years of elementary schooling; for persons 25 years of age or over this percentage was 2.4 in March 1987 (for the non-white population alone it was 5.1%); it was 0.8% for white and 1.1% for non-whites in the 25-29-year-old group. The Bureau reported that in March 1987 the median years of school completed by all persons 25 years old and over was 12.7, and that 19.9% had completed 4 or more years of college. For the 25-29-year-old group, the median school years completed was 12.8 and 22% had completed 4 or more years of college.

In the autumn of 1986, 12,517,000 students (5,891,000 men and 6,626,000 women) were enrolled in 3,406 colleges and universities; 2,203,000 were first-time students. About 27.9% of the population between the ages of 18 and 24 were enrolled in colleges and universities.

Public elementary and secondary school revenue is supplied from the county and other local sources (43.8% in 1986-87), state sources (49.8%) and federal sources (6.4%). In 1986-87 expenditure for public elementary and secondary education totalled about \$161,000m., including \$146,600m. for regular day school

programmes, \$2,200m. for other programmes, \$9,200m. for capital outlay and \$3,000m. for interest on school debt. The current expenditure per pupil in average daily attendance was about \$3,977. The total cost per pupil, also including capital outlay and interest, amounted to about \$4,300. Estimated total expenditures, for private elementary and secondary schools in 1986-87 were about \$14,200m. In 1985-86 the 3,340 universities and colleges expended \$100,101m. from current funds, of which \$65,067m. was spent by institutions under public control. The federal government contributed 12.7% of total current-fund revenue; state governments, 29%; student tuition and fees, 22.4%; and all other sources, 35.9%.

Vocational education below college grade, including the training of teachers to conduct such education, has been federally aided since 1918. Federal support for vocational education in 1986-87 amounted to about \$882m. Many public high schools offer vocational courses in addition to their usual academic programmes. In 1981-82 enrolments in the vocational classes were: Agriculture, 420,000; business, 5,874,000; home economics, 3,024,000; industrial arts, 2,980,000; trade and industry, 1,874,000.

Summary of statistics of regular schools (public and private), teachers and pupils in autumn 1986 (compiled by the US National Center for Education Statistics):

<i>Schools by level</i>	<i>Number of schools 1986-87</i>	<i>Teachers autumn 1986</i>	<i>Enrolment autumn 1986</i>
Elementary schools:			
Public	60,784	1,267,000	24,201,000
Private	20,252 <sup>1</sup>	250,000 <sup>2</sup>	4,300,000 <sup>2</sup>
Secondary schools:			
Public	23,389	977,000	15,636,000
Private	7,387 <sup>1</sup>	98,000 <sup>2</sup>	1,300,000 <sup>2</sup>
Higher education:			
Public	1,533	507,000 <sup>2</sup>	9,722,000
Private	1,873	210,000 <sup>2</sup>	2,794,000
Total	115,218	3,309,000	57,953,000

<sup>1</sup> Data for 1985-86.

<sup>2</sup> Estimated.

Most of the private elementary and secondary schools are affiliated with religious denominations. Of the children attending private elementary and secondary schools in 1985, nearly 3.1m. or 55.4% were enrolled in Roman Catholic schools. About 1.6m. or 28.7% were in schools affiliated with other religious groups.

During the school year 1986-87 high-school graduates numbered about 2,693,000 (about 49.5% boys and 50.5% girls). Institutions of higher education conferred 987,823 bachelor's degrees during the year 1985-86, 485,923 to men and 501,900 to women; 288,567 master's degrees, 143,508 to men and 145,059 to women; 33,653 doctorates, 21,819 to men and 11,834 to women; and 73,910 first professional degrees, 49,261 to men and 24,649 to women.

During the academic year, 1986-87, 349,610 foreign students were enrolled in American colleges and universities. The percentages of students coming from various areas in 1986-87 were: South and East Asia, 48.8; Middle East, 13.4; Latin America, 12.4; Africa, 9; Europe, 10.3; North America, 4.7; Oceania, 1.2.

School enrolment, Oct. 1986, embraced 95% of the children who were 5 and 6 years old; 99% of the children aged 7-13 years; 95% of those aged 14-17, 55% of those aged 18 and 19, 33% of those aged 20 and 21, and 18% of those aged 22-24 years.

The US National Center for Education Statistics estimates the total enrolment in the autumn of 1988 at all of the country's elementary, secondary and higher educational institutions (public and private) at 58.5m. (58.4m. in the autumn of 1987); this was 23.8% of the total population of the USA as of 1 Sept. 1988.

The number of teachers in regular public and private elementary and secondary schools in the autumn of 1988 was expected to increase slightly to 2,668,000. The average annual salary of the public school teachers was about \$28,030 in 1987-88.



*Digest of Education Statistics*. Annual. Dept. of Education, Washington 20202, D.C. (from 1962)

*American Community, Technical and Junior Colleges*. 9th ed. American Council on Education, Washington, 1984

*American Universities and Colleges*. 12th ed. American Council on Education, Washington, 1983

**Health and Welfare.** Admission to the practice of medicine (for both doctors of medicine and doctors of osteopathic medicine) is controlled in each state by examining boards directly representing the profession and acting with authority conferred by state law. Although there are a number of variations, the usual time now required to complete training is 8 years beyond the secondary school with up to 3 or more years of additional graduate training. Certification as a specialist may require between 3 and 5 more years of graduate training plus experience in practice. In academic year 1986–87 the 142 US schools (15 osteopathic and 127 allopathic) graduated 17,446 physicians. About 34% of first-year students were women. In Dec. 1986 the estimated number of active physicians (MD and DO—in all forms of practice) in the US, Puerto Rico and outlying US areas was 544,800 (1 active physician to 442 population). The distribution of physicians throughout the country is uneven, both by state and by urban–rural areas.

In 1986–87 the 59 dental schools graduated 4,717 dentists. Active dentists in Dec. 1986 numbered 143,000 (1 active dentist to 1,697 population).

In academic year 1986–87, there were 1,463 registered nursing programmes in the US and 70,333 graduates. In Dec. 1986 registered nurses employed full- or part-time were 1 to 151 population.

Number of hospitals listed by the American Hospital Association in 1984 was 6,872, with 1,339,000 beds and 37,938,000 admissions during the year; average daily census was 970,000. Of the total, 341 hospitals with 112,000 beds were operated by the federal government; 1,662 with 203,000 beds by state and local government; 3,366 with 717,000 beds by non-profit organizations (including church groups); 786 with 100,000 beds are proprietary. The categories of non-federal hospitals are 5,814 short-term general and special hospitals with 1,020,000 beds; 131 non-federal long-term general and special hospitals with 30,000 beds; 579 psychiatric hospitals with 175,000 beds; 7 tuberculosis hospitals with 1,000 beds.

Social welfare legislation was chiefly the province of the various states until the adoption of the Social Security Act of 14 Aug. 1935. This as amended provides for a federal system of old-age, survivors and disability insurance; health insurance for the aged and disabled; supplemental security income for the aged, blind and disabled; federal state unemployment insurance; and federal grants to states for public assistance (medical assistance for the aged and aid to families with dependent children generally) and for maternal and child-health and child-welfare services. The Social Security Administration of the Department of Health and Human Services has responsibility for the programmes—old-age, survivors and disability insurance and supplemental security income. The Family Support Administration has federal responsibility for the programmes—aid to families with dependent children, low income energy assistance, child support enforcement, refugee and entry assistance and community services block grant. The Health Care Financing Administration, an agency of the same Department, has federal responsibility for health insurance for the aged and disabled, such groups as the elderly, children, youth, native Americans and persons with developmental disabilities, and its Public Health Service supports maternal and child-health services. Unemployment insurance is the responsibility of the Department of Labor.

The Social Security Act provides for protection against the cost of medical care through the two-part programme of health insurance for people 65 and over and for certain disabled people under 65, who receive disability insurance payments or who have permanent kidney failure (Medicare). During fiscal year 1987, payments totalling \$49,967m. were made under the hospital part of Medicare on behalf of 31,852,860 people. During the same period, \$29,937m. was paid under the voluntary medical insurance part of Medicare on behalf of 31,169,960 people.

In 1988 about 130m. persons worked in employment covered by old-age, survivors and disability insurance.

In June 1988 over 38.4m. beneficiaries were on the rolls, and the average benefit paid to a retired worker (not counting any paid to his dependants) was about \$514 per month.

In 1987 an average of 11m. persons (adults and children) were receiving payments under aid to families with dependent children (average monthly payment, \$360 per family). Total payments under aid to families with dependent children were \$16,323m. for the calendar year 1987. The role of Child Support Enforcement is to ensure that children are supported by their parents. Money collected for children who live with only one parent because of divorce, separation or out-of-wedlock birth. In 1987, nearly \$4,000m. was collected on behalf of these children.

In June 1988, about 4.4m. persons were receiving supplementary security income payments, including 1.4m. persons aged 65 or over; 83,000 blind persons, and over 2.8m. disabled persons. Payments, including supplemental amounts from various states, totalled \$12,100m. in 1986.

In 1986, federal appropriations for the social services block grant amounted to \$2,584m. In addition, 1986 federal appropriations for human development and family social services to selected target groups totalled \$2,790m. Included in this amount were \$1,955m. for children and youth; \$671m. for the elderly; \$77m. for persons with developmental disabilities; and \$28m. for native Americans. During 1988, the Public Health Services awarded a total of \$526.5m. for maternal and child health services, \$444.2m. as block grants to the States and the remaining \$82.3m. for special projects of regional and national significance, including approximately \$7.2m. for research and \$29.3m. for training in the fields of maternal and child health. Other block grants awarded by the Public Health Service in 1988 included \$88m. for preventive health; \$487m. for alcohol, drug abuse and mental health; \$155m. for alcohol and drug abuse treatment and rehabilitation. In 1988, \$396.3m. was awarded for community health centres; \$43.5m. for migrant health centres; \$20.1m. for efforts to reduce infant mortality; \$3.3m. for black lung clinics; and \$139.7m. for family planning.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the USA in Great Britain (Grosvenor Sq., London, W1A 1AE)

*Ambassador:* Henry Catto.

Of Great Britain in the USA (3100 Massachusetts Ave., Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Sir Antony Acland, KCMG, KCVO.

Of the United States to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Thomas Pickering.

## Further Reading

### I. STATISTICAL INFORMATION

The Office of Management and Budget, Washington, D.C. 20503 is part of the Executive Office of the President; it is responsible for co-ordinating all the statistical work of the different Federal Government agencies. The Office does not collect or publish data itself. The main statistical agencies are as follows:

(1) Data User Services Division, Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20233. Responsible for decennial censuses of population and housing, quinquennial census of agriculture, manufactures and business; current statistics on population and the labour force, manufacturing activity and commodity production, trade and services, foreign trade, state and local government finances and operations. (*Statistical Abstract of the United States*, annual, and others).

(2) Bureau of Labor Statistics, Department of Labor, 441 G Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20212. (*Monthly Labor Review* and others).

(3) Information Division, Economic Research Service, Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. 20250. (*Agricultural Statistics*, annual, and others).

(4) National Center for Health Statistics, Department of Health and Human Services, 3700

East-West Highway, Hyattsville Md. 20782. (*Vital Statistics of the United States*, monthly and annual, and others).

(5) Bureau of Mines Office of Technical Information, Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 20241. (*Minerals Yearbook*, annual, and others).

(6) Office of Energy Information Services, Energy Information Administration, Department of Energy, Washington, D.C. 20461.

(7) Statistical Publications, Department of Commerce, Room 5062 Main Commerce, 14th St and Constitution Avenue NW, Washington, D.C. 20230; the Department's Bureau of Economic Analysis and its Office of Industry and Trade Information are the main collectors of data.

(8) Center for Education Statistics, Department of Education, 555 New Jersey Avenue NW, Washington, D.C. 20208.

(9) Public Correspondence Division, Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Public Affairs P.C.), The Pentagon, Washington, D.C. 20301-1400.

(10) Bureau of Justice Statistics, Department of Justice, 633 Indiana Avenue NW, Washington, D.C. 20531.

(11) Public Inquiry, APA 200, Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation, 800 Independence Avenue SW, Washington, D.C. 20591.

(12) Office of Public Affairs, Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation, 400 7th St. SW, Washington, D.C. 20590.

(13) Statistics Division, Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury, 1201 E St. NW, Washington, D.C. 20224.

Statistics on the economy are also published by the Division of Research and Statistics, Federal Reserve Board, Washington, D.C. 20551; the Congressional Joint Committee on the Economy, Capitol; the Office of the Secretary, Department of the Treasury, 1500 Pennsylvania Avenue NW, Washington, D.C. 20220.

## II. OTHER OFFICIAL PUBLICATIONS

*Guide to the Study of the United States of America*. General Reference and Bibliography Division, Library of Congress. 1960.

*Historical Statistics of the United States, Colonial Times to 1957: A Statistical Abstract Supplement*. Washington, 1960.—*Continuation to 1962 and Revisions*, 1965.

*United States Government Manual*. Washington. Annual.

The official publications of the USA are issued by the US Government Printing Office and are distributed by the Superintendent of Documents, who issued in 1940 a cumulative *Catalog of the Public Documents of the . . . Congress and of All the Departments of the Government of the United States*. This *Catalog* is kept up to date by *United States Government Publications, Monthly Catalog* with annual index and supplemented by *Price Lists*. Each *Price List* is devoted to a special subject or type of material, e.g., *American History or Census*. Useful guides are Schmeckebier, L. F. and Eastin, R. B. (eds.) *Government Publications and Their Use*. 2nd ed., Washington, D.C., 1961; Boyd, A. M., *United States Government Publications*. 3rd ed. New York, 1949, and Leidy, W. P., *Popular Guide to Government Publications*. 2nd ed. New York and London, 1963.

*Treaties and other International Acts of the United States of America* (Edited by Hunter Miller), 8 vols. Washington, 1929–48. This edition stops in 1863. It may be supplemented by *Treaties, Conventions . . . Between the US and Other Powers, 1776–1937* (Edited by William M. Malloy and others). 4 vols. 1909–38. A new Treaty Series, *US Treaties and Other International Agreements* was started in 1950.

*Writings on American History*. Washington, annual from 1902 (except 1904–5 and 1941–47).

## III. NON-OFFICIAL PUBLICATIONS

### A. Handbooks

National Historical Publications Commission. *Guide to Archives and Manuscripts in the United States*, ed. P. M. Hamer. Yale Univ. Press, 1961

Adams, J. T. (ed.) *Dictionary of American History*. 2nd ed. 7 vols. New York, 1942

*Dictionary of American Biography*, ed. A. Johnson and D. Malone. 23 vols. New York, 1929–64.—*Concise Dictionary of American Biography*. New York, 1964

*Current Biography*. New York, annual from 1940; monthly supplements

Handlin, O. and others. *Harvard Guide to American History*. Cambridge, Mass., 1954

Herstein, S. R. and Robbins, N., *United States of America*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982

Lord, C. L. and E. H., *Historical Atlas of the US*. Rev. ed. New York, 1969

*Who's Who in America*. Chicago, 1899–1900 to date; monthly Supplement. 1940 to date



## B. General History

- Barck, Jr., O. T. and Blake, N. M., *Since 1900: A History of the United States*. 5th ed. New York, 1974
- Brogan, H., *The Longman History of the United States of America*. London, 1985
- Carman, H. J. and others, *A History of the American People*. 3rd ed. 2 vols. New York, 1967
- Morison, S. E. with Commager, H. S., *The Growth of the American Republic*. 2 vols. 5th ed. OUP, 1962–63
- Nicholas, H. G., *The Nature of American Politics*. OUP, 1980
- Scammon, R. N. (ed.) *American Votes: A Handbook of Contemporary American Election Statistics*. Washington, D.C., 1956 to date (biennial)
- Schlesinger, A. M., *The Rise of Modern America, 1865–1951*. 4th ed. New York, 1951.—*The Age of Roosevelt*. 4 vols. New York and London, 1957–62.—*A Thousand Days: John F. Kennedy in the White House*. New York and London, 1965
- Snowman, D., *America Since 1920*. London, 1978
- Watson, R. A., *The Promise and Performance of American Democracy*. 2nd ed. New York, 1975

## C. Minorities

- Burma, J. J., *Spanish-speaking Groups in the US*. Duke University Press, 1954, repr. 1974
- McNickle, D., *The Indian Tribes of the United States*. OUP, 1962.—*Native American Tribalism*. OUP, 1973
- Sklare, M., *The Jew in American Society*. New York, 1974

## D. Economic History

- The Economic History of the United States*. 9 vols. New York, 1946 ff.
- Bining, A. C. and Cochran, T. C., *The Rise of American Economic Life*. 4th ed. New York, 1963
- Dorfman, J., *The Economic Mind in American Civilization*. 5 vols. New York, 1946–59
- Friedman, M. and Schwartz, A. J., *A Monetary History of the United States, 1867–1960*. New York, 1963

## E. Foreign Relations

- Documents on American Foreign Relations*. Princeton, from 1948. Annual
- The United States in World Affairs*. 1931 ff. Council on Foreign Relations. New York, from 1932. Annual
- Agnew, J., *The United States in the World Economy*. CUP, 1987
- Bartlett, R. (ed.) *The Record of American Diplomacy: Documents and Readings in the History of American Foreign Relations*. 4th ed. New York, 1964
- Beloff, M., *The United States and the Unity of Europe*. London, 1963, repr. 1976
- Connell-Smith, G., *The United States and Latin America*. London, 1975
- Connwab, G., (ed.) *United States Foreign Policy at the Crossroads*. Westport, 1982
- Vance, C., *Hard Choices: Critical Years in America's Foreign Policy*. New York, 1983

## F. National Character

- Degler, C. N., *Out of Our Past: The Forces That Shaped Modern America*. Rev. ed. New York, 1970
- Duigan, P. and Rabushka, A., (eds.) *The United States in the 1980s*. Stanford, 1980
- Fawcett, E. and Thomas, T., *America and the Americans*. London, 1983
- National Library: The Library of Congress*. Washington 25, D.C. *Librarian: Lawrence Quincy Mumford*, AB, MA, BS.

## STATES AND TERRITORIES

*For information as to State and Local Government, see under UNITED STATES, pp. 1384–87.*

Against the names of the Governors and the Secretaries of State, (D.) stands for Democrat and (R.) for Republican.

Figures for the revenues and expenditures of the various states are those of the Federal Bureau of the Census unless otherwise stated, which takes the original state figures and arranges them on a common pattern so that those of one state can be compared with those of any other.

Official publications of the various states and insular possessions are listed in the *Monthly Check-List of State Publications*, issued by the Library of Congress since 1910. Their character and contents are discussed in J. K. Wilcox's *Manual on the Use of State Publications* (1940). Of great importance bibliographically are the publications of the Historical Records Survey and

the American Imprints Inventory, which record local archives, official publications and state imprints. These publications supplement those of state historical societies which usually publish journals and monographs on state and local history. An outstanding source of statistical data is the material issued by the various state planning boards and commissions, to which should be added the annual *Governmental Finances* issued by the US Bureau of the Census.

*The Book of the States*. Biennial. Council of State Governments. Lexington, 1953 ff.

*State Government Finances*. Annual. Dept. of Commerce, 1966 ff.

## ALABAMA

**HISTORY.** Alabama, settled in 1702 as part of the French Province of Louisiana, and ceded to the British in 1763, was organized as a Territory, 1817, and admitted into the Union on 14 Dec. 1819.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Alabama is bounded north by Tennessee, east by Georgia, south by Florida and the Gulf of Mexico and west by Mississippi. Area, 51,998 sq. miles, including 1,562 sq. miles of inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 3,893,888, an increase of 13.06% over that of 1970. Estimate (1987) 4,148,905. Births, 1987, 59,558 (14.4 per 1,000 population); deaths, 37,681 (9.1); infant deaths (under 1 year), 726 (12.2 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 44,820 (10.8); divorces, 24,532 (5.9).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	1,228,832	908,282	909	70	2,138,093	41.4
1930	1,700,844	944,834	465	105	2,646,248	51.3
1960	2,283,609	980,271	1,726	915	3,266,521	64.0
All others						
1970	2,533,831	903,467	6,867		3,444,165	66.7
1980	2,872,621	996,335	24,932		3,893,888	74.9

Of the total population in 1980, 49% were male, 61% were urban and 65% were 21 years or older.

The large cities (1980 census) were: Birmingham, 284,413 (metropolitan area, 847,487); Mobile, 200,452 (443,536); Huntsville, 142,513 (308,593); Montgomery (capital), 177,857 (272,687); Tuscaloosa, 75,211 (137,541).

**CLIMATE.** Birmingham. Jan. 46°F (7.8°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 54" (1,346 mm). Mobile. Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 63" (1,577 mm). Montgomery. Jan. 49°F (9.4°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 53" (1,321 mm). *See* Gulf Coast, p. 1380. The growing season ranges from 190 days (north) to 270 days (south).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1901; it has had 287 amendments (at 23 March 1988). The legislature consists of a Senate of 35 members and a House of Representatives of 105 members, all elected for 4 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years.

The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 7 representatives. Applicants for registration must take an oath of allegiance to the United States and fill out a questionnaire to the satisfaction of the registrars. In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 809,663 votes, Dukakis, 547,347.

Montgomery is the capital.

*Governor:* Guy Hunt (R.), 1987-91 (\$70,223).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Jim Folsom, Jr. (D.) (\$2,100 a month plus allowances).

*Secretary of State:* Glen Browder (D.) (\$36,234 plus \$14,400 allowances).

**BUDGET.** The total net revenue for the fiscal year ending 30 Sept. 1986 was \$14,974m. (\$3,073m. from tax, \$1,330m. from federal payments); total net expenditure was \$15,143m. (\$2,290m. on education, \$529m. on highways, \$503m. on public welfare, \$555m. on health).

The outstanding debt on 30 Sept. 1986 amounted to \$2,952m.  
*Per capita* income (1986) was \$11,601.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Principal minerals (1986): Coal, limestone, sand and gravel, petroleum (21.1m. bbl.) and natural gas (146,606m. cu. ft.). Total mineral output (1986) was valued at \$2,001m. of which fuels, \$1,440m.

**Agriculture.** The number of farms in 1988 was 49,000, covering 11.0m. acres; average farm had 224 acres and was valued at about \$164,000.

Cash receipts from farm marketings, 1987: Crops, \$588m.; livestock and poultry products, \$1,560m.; and total, \$2,148m. Principal sources: greenhouses and nurseries, peanuts, cotton, potatoes and other vegetables, soybeans; corn, wheat, pecans, hay, peaches and other fruit are also important. In 1987, poultry accounted for the largest percentage of cash receipts from farm marketings; cattle and calves were second, horticulture third, peanuts fourth.

**Forestry.** Area of national forest lands, Oct. 1988, 649,056 acres; state-owned forest, 147,400; industrial forest, 5,124,000; private non-industrial forest, 15.4m.; other government-owned forest, 368,418.

**INDUSTRY.** Alabama is predominantly industrial. In 1986 manufacturing establishments employed 357,500 workers; government, 297,000; trade, 320,400; services, 258,200; transport and public utilities, 71,500 (total non-agricultural workforce 1.5m.).

**TOURISM.** In 1986 about 28.6m. travelled to or through Alabama from other states. Total income from tourism (including receipts from Alabama holiday-makers) was about \$4,000m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Paved roads of all classes at 31 Dec. 1987 totalled 61,769 miles; total highways, 88,166 miles.

**Railways.** At 1 July 1988 the railways had a length of 5,875 miles including side and yard tracks.

**Aviation.** In 1988 the state had 103 public-use airports. Nine airports are for commercial service, two are relief airports for Birmingham and the rest, general aviation.

**Shipping.** There are 1,200 miles of navigable inland water and 50 miles of Gulf Coast. The only deep-water port is Mobile, with a large ocean-going trade; total tonnage (1987), 29.36m. tons. The docks can handle 34 ocean-going vessels at once. The 9-ft channel of the Tennessee River traverses North Alabama for 200 miles; the Tennessee-Tombigbee waterway (232 miles), connects the Tennessee River with the Tombigbee River for access to the Gulf of Mexico. The Warrior-Tombigbee system (476 miles) connects the Birmingham industrial area to the Gulf. The Coosa-Alabama River system reaches central Alabama as far north as Montgomery from Mobile and the Gulf Intracoastal Waterway. The Chattahoochee River runs for 261 miles. The Alabama State Docks also operates a system of 10 inland docks; there are several privately-run inland docks.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The prison population on 30 Sept. 1988 was 12,190.

From 1 Jan. 1927 to 28 Aug. 1987 there were 156 executions (electrocution): 124 for murder, 25 for rape, 5 for armed robbery, 1 for burglary and 1 for carnal knowledge. Before 1 Jan. 1927, persons executed in Alabama were hanged locally by the sheriffs in the counties of their conviction.

In 41 counties the sale of alcoholic beverage is permitted, and in 26 counties it is prohibited; but it is permitted in 7 cities within those 26 counties.



**Religion.** Chief religious bodies (in 1980) are: Southern Baptist Convention (about 1,182,018), Churches of Christ (113,919), United Methodist (about 344,790), Roman Catholic (106,123), African Methodist Episcopal Zion (139,714), Christian Methodist Episcopal (about 53,493) and Assemblies of God (48,610).

**Education.** In the school year 1987-88 the 1,316 public elementary and high schools required 37,086 teachers to teach 727,522 pupils enrolled in grades K-12. In 1987 there were 16 senior public institutions with 106,343 students and 5,625 faculty members. In 1988 the 7 community colleges had 25,241 students and 684 instructors; 14 junior colleges had 25,878 and 617; 20 technical schools had 13,543 and 547.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 137 hospitals (21,404 beds) licensed by the State Board of Health. In 1986 hospitals for mental diseases had 2,236 beds. Facilities for the mentally retarded (1 Oct. 1987) had 1,320 certified beds.

**Pensions and Security.** In July 1988 Alabama paid supplements (to federal welfare payments) to 8,972 recipients of old-age assistance, receiving an average of \$53.31 each: 5,169 permanently and totally disabled, \$57.48; 118 blind, \$54.74. Combined state-federal aid to dependent children was paid to 44,647 families, average \$112.92 per family.

### Further Reading

- Alabama Official and Statistical Register.* Montgomery. Quadrennial  
*Alabama County Data Book.* Alabama Dept. of Economic and Community Affairs. Annual  
*Directory of Health Care Facilities.* Alabama State Board of Health  
*Economic Abstract of Alabama.* Center for Business and Economic Research, Univ. of Alabama, 1987  
 McCurley, R. L., Jr., ed., *The Legislative Process.* Alabama Law Institute, 3rd ed., 1984  
 McIppen, R. A., *Alabama Government Manual.* Alabama Law Institute, 7th ed., 1986  
 Wiggins, S. W., (ed.) *From Civil War to Civil Rights, 1860-1960.* Univ. of Alabama Press, 1987

## ALASKA

**HISTORY.** Discovered in 1741 by Vitus Bering, its first settlement, on Kodiak Island, was in 1784. The area known as Russian America with its capital (1806) at Sitka was ruled by a Russo-American fur company and vaguely claimed as a Russian colony. Alaska was purchased by the United States from Russia under the treaty of 30 March 1867 for \$7.2m. It was not organized until 1884, when it became a 'district' governed by the code of the state of Oregon. By Act of Congress approved 24 Aug. 1912 Alaska became an incorporated Territory; its first legislature in 1913 granted votes to women, 7 years in advance of the Constitutional Amendment.

Alaska officially became the 49th state of the Union on 3 Jan. 1959.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Alaska is bounded north by the Beaufort Sea, west and south by the Pacific and east by Canada. It has the largest area of any state, being more than twice the size of Texas. The gross area (land and water) is 591,004 sq. miles; the land area is 586,412 sq. miles of which 85% was in federal ownership in 1984. Census population, 1 April 1980, was 401,851, including military personnel, an increase of 33.5% over 1970. Estimate (1987), 537,800. Births, 1984, were 12,247 (24.5 per 1,000 population); deaths, 1,993 (4); infant deaths, 147 (12 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 6,519 (13); divorces, 3,904 (7.8).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	All Others	Total	Per sq. mile
1940	39,170	...	33,354	72,524	0.13
1950	92,808	...	35,835	128,643	0.23
1960	174,649	...	51,518	226,167	0.40
1970	236,767	8,911	54,704	300,382	0.53
1980	309,728	13,643	78,480	401,851	0.70

Of the total population in 1980, 53.01% were male, 64.34% were urban and 68.57% were aged 21 years or over.

The largest city is Anchorage, which had a 1980 census area population of 174,430 (1987 estimate, 231,422). Other census area populations, 1980 (and 1987 estimate), Fairbanks North Star, 53,983 (73,164); Juneau, 19,528 (25,369); Kenai Peninsula, 25,282 (39,170); Ketchikan Gateway, 11,316 (12,432); Kodiak Island, 9,939 (13,658); Matanuska-Susitna 17,816 (37,027). There are 11 boroughs and 142 incorporated cities.

**CLIMATE.** Anchorage. Jan. 12°F (−11.1°C), July 57°F (13.9°C). Annual rainfall 15" (371 mm). Fairbanks. Jan. −11°F (−23.9°C), July 60°F (15.6°C). Annual rainfall 12" (300 mm). Sitka. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 55°F (12.8°C). Annual rainfall 87" (2,175 mm). *See* Pacific Coast, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** An important provision of the Enabling Act is that the state has the right to select 103.55m. acres of vacant and unappropriated public lands in order to establish 'a tax basis'; it can open these lands to prospectors for minerals, and the state is to derive the principal advantage in all gains resulting from the discovery of minerals. In addition, certain federally administered lands reserved for conservation of fisheries and wild life have been transferred to the state. Special provision is made for federal control of land for defence in areas of high strategic importance.

The constitution of Alaska was adopted by public vote, 24 April 1956. The state legislature consists of a Senate of 20 members (elected for 4 years) and a House of Representatives of 40 members (elected for 2 years). The state sends 2 senators and 1 representative to Congress. The franchise may be exercised by all citizens over 18.

The capital is Juneau.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 102,381 votes, Dukakis, 62,205.

*Governor:* Stephen Cowper (D.), 1986–90 (\$81,648).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Steve McAlpine (D.) 1986–90 (\$76,188).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Total state government revenue for the year ended 30 June 1984 (Annual Financial Report figures) was \$3,935.8m. (\$2,914m. from petroleum revenue, \$109.4m. from taxation). Total expenditure was \$3,931.3m.

In 1976 a Permanent Fund was set up for the deposit of at least 25% of all mineral-related revenue; total assets at 30 Nov., 1987, \$8,837m.

General obligation bonds at 30 June 1984, \$169.5m.

*Per capita* income (1985) was \$18,187.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Oil and Gas.** Commercial production of crude petroleum began in 1959 and by 1961 had become the most important mineral by value. Production: 1961, 6.3m. bbls (of 42 gallons); 1976, 67m. bbls; 1977, 169m. bbls; 1981, 587m. bbls; 1985, 666m. bbls. Oil comes mainly from Prudhoe Bay, the Kuparuk River field and several Cook Inlet fields. Natural gas marketed production, 1985, 324,000m. cu. ft. Alaska receives 84% of its total revenue from petroleum. Revenue to the state from oil production in 1984 was \$2,861.6m. from corporate petroleum tax \$265.1m. and from royalties \$1,047.5m., severance tax, \$1,393.1m., property tax, \$131m., bonus sale, \$10.1m., rents, \$3.8m., inter-governmental receipts, \$11.1m.

Oil from the Prudhoe Bay arctic field is now carried by the Trans-Alaska pipeline to Prince William Sound on the south coast, where a tanker terminal has been built at Valdez.

**Minerals.** Value of production, 1983: Gold (169,000 troy oz.) \$67.6m.; antimony (22,400 lb.) \$25,000; platinum \$100,000; silver (33,200 troy oz.) \$332,000; tin

(215,000 lb.) \$1.1m.; jade and soapstone (2.3 tons) \$42,000; sand and gravel (50m. short tons) \$120m.; building stone (5.27m. short tons) \$25m.; coal (803,000m. short tons) \$18m. Total value, \$232,399,000.

**Agriculture.** In some parts of the state the climate during the brief spring and summer (about 100 days in major areas and 152 days in the south-eastern coastal area) is suitable for agricultural operations, thanks to the long hours of sunlight, but Alaska is a food-importing area. In 1985 about 2m. acres was farmland; 90% of this was unimproved pasture primarily government leases for grazing of sheep and beef cattle in south-west Alaska. In 1980 (preliminary) there were 8,400 cattle, 1,100 milch cows, 1,800 hogs and 4,300 sheep stock.

Farm income in 1985: \$26m. of which \$18m. was from crops (mainly hay and potatoes) and \$8m. from livestock and dairy products.

There were about 25,000 reindeer in western Alaska in 1980, owned by individual Eskimo herders except for 750 at Nome owned by the Government.

**Forestry.** In south-eastern Alaska timber fringes the shore of the mainland and all the islands extending inland to a depth of 5 miles. The state's enormous forests could produce an estimated annual sustained yield of 1,500m. bd ft of lumber, nearly twice Alaska's record 1973 cut. Alaska has 2 national forests: The Tongass of 16.9m. acres and the Chugach of 5.9m. acres. An estimated total of 446m. bd ft was cut in 1981, of which 387.5m. came from national forests and 53,687,000 from state forests, 4,275,000 from land held by the Bureau of Indian Affairs and 362,000 from the Bureau of Land Management. Alaska has 2 large pulp-mills at Ketchikan and Sitka.

**Fisheries.** The catch for 1985 was 1,185m. lb. of fish and shellfish having a value to fishermen of \$591m. The most important fish are salmon, crab, herring and shrimp.

**INDUSTRY.** Main industries with employment, 1988: Government, 66,600; trade, 41,900; services, 42,900; contract construction, 8,700; manufacturing, 14,800; mining including oil and gas, 9,500; transport, communication and utilities, 17,200; finance, insurance and property, 10,700.

The major manufacturing industry was food processing, followed by timber industries. Total non-agricultural employment, 1988, 212,300. Total wages and salaries, 1987, \$5,759.86m.

**TOURISM.** About 691,200 tourists visited the state in 1984.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Alaska's highway and road system, 1984, totalled 15,315 miles, including marine highway systems, local service roads, borough and city streets, national park, forest and reservation roads and military roads. Registered motor vehicles, 1985, 382,000.

The Alaska Highway extends 1,523 miles from Dawson Creek, British Columbia, to Fairbanks, Alaska. It was built by the US Army in 1942, at a cost of \$138m. The greater portion of it, because it lies in Canada, is maintained by Canada.

**Railways.** There is a railway of 111 miles from Skagway to the town of Whitehorse, the White Pass and Yukon route, in the Canadian Yukon region (this service operates seasonally). The government-owned Alaska Railroad runs from Seward to Fairbanks, a distance of 471 miles. This is a freight service with only occasional passenger use. A passenger service operates from Anchorage to Fairbanks via Denali National Park in the tourist season.

**Aviation.** In 1982 the state had about 1,070 airports, of which about half were publicly owned. Commercial passengers by air from Alaska's largest international airports Anchorage and Fairbanks numbered 1.1m. at Anchorage and 273,512 at Fairbanks. General aviation aircraft in the state per 1,000 population was about ten times the US average.

**Shipping.** Regular shipping services to and from the US are furnished by 2 steam-



ship and several barge lines operating out of Seattle and other Pacific coast ports. A Canadian company also furnishes a regular service from Vancouver, B.C. Anchorage is the main port.

A 1,435 nautical-mile ferry system for motor cars and passengers (the 'Alaska Marine Highway') operates from Seattle, Washington and Prince Rupert (British Columbia) to Juneau, Haines (for access to the Alaska Highway) and Skagway. A second system extends throughout the south-central region of Alaska linking the Cook Inlet area with Kodiak Island and Prince William Sound.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is no death penalty in Alaska. At 31 Dec. 1985 there were 2,311 prisoners in state and federal institutions.

**Religion.** Many religions are represented, including the Russian Orthodox, Roman Catholic, Episcopalian, Presbyterian, Methodist and other denominations.

**Education.** Total expenditure on public schools in 1986 was \$806m. or \$1,548 per capita. In 1988 there were about 3,100 elementary and 2,800 secondary school teachers, average salary, \$41,000. During 1984 there were 100,000 pupils at public schools, 3,868 at private schools. The Bureau of Indian Affairs schools had 1,005 pupils. The University of Alaska (founded in 1922) had (Spring 1984) 11,808 students in Fairbanks, Anchorage and Juneau and 19,296 in community colleges. Other colleges had 1,775 students in 1984.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 26 acute care hospitals with 1,800 beds, of which 7 were federal public health hospitals; 1 mental hospital; 24 mental health clinics.

**Welfare.** Old-age assistance was established under the Federal Social Security Act; in 1985 aid to dependent children covered a monthly average of 6,400 households; payments, an average of \$501 per month; aid to the disabled was given to a monthly average of 2,300 persons receiving on average \$251 per month. An average of 1,100 aged per month received \$166.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Department of Commerce and Economic Development, Economic Analysis Section, Juneau; Department of Labor, Research and Analysis, Juneau.

*Alaska Blue Book*, Department of Education, Juneau. Biennial

*Alaska Industry—Occupation Outlook to 1992*, Department of Labor, Juneau.

*Alaska Economy, The*, Division of Economic Enterprise, Juneau, Annual

*Alaska Statistical Review*, Office of the Governor, Juneau, Biennial

*Annual Financial Report*, Department of Administration, Juneau.

Gardey, J., *Alaska: The Sophisticated Wilderness*. London, 1976

Hulley, Clarence C., *Alaska Past and Present*. Portland, Oregon, 1970

Hunt, W. R., *Alaska, a Bicentennial History*. New York, 1976

Pearson, R. W. and Lynch, D. F., *Alaska, a Geography*. Boulder, 1984

Thomas, L., Jr., *Alaska and the Yukon*. New York, 1983

Tourville, M., *Alaska, a Bibliography, 1570–1970*. 1971

*State Library:* Pouch G, Juneau. *Librarian:* Richard Engen.—Alaska Historical Library, Pouch G, Juneau. *Librarian:* Phyllis de Muth.

## ARIZONA

**HISTORY.** Arizona was settled in 1752, organized as a Territory in 1863 and became a state on 14 Feb. 1912.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Arizona is bounded north by Utah, east by New Mexico, south by Mexico, west by California and Nevada. Area, 113,508 sq. miles, including 492 sq. miles of inland water. Of the total area in 1985, 28% was Indian Reservation, 17% was in individual or corporate ownership, 16% was held by the US Bureau of Land Management, 15% by the US Forest Service, 13% by the

State and 10% by others. Census population on 1 April 1980 was 2,718,425, an increase of 53.4% over 1970. Estimate (1987) 3,469,000. Births, 1986, 60,575; deaths, 25,035; infant deaths (1983), 509; marriages, 36,025; divorces, 23,062.

Population in 5 census years:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Chinese</i>	<i>Japanese</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	171,468	2,009	29,201	1,305	371	204,354	1.8
1930	378,551	10,749	43,726	1,110	879	435,573	3.8
1960	1,169,517	43,403	83,387	2,937	1,501	1,302,161	11.3
			<i>All others</i>				
1970	1,604,498	53,344	117,557			1,775,399	15.6
1980	2,260,288	74,159	383,768			2,718,215 <sup>1</sup>	23.9

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

Of the population in 1980, 1,375,214 were male, 2,278,728 were urban and 1,872,447 were aged 20 and over.

The 1980 census population of Phoenix was 789,704 (1986 estimate, 881,640); Tucson, 330,537 (384,385); Scottsdale, 88,412 (108,447); Tempe, 106,743 (132,942); Mesa, 152,453 (239,587); Glendale, 97,172 (122,392).

**CLIMATE.** Phoenix. Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 90°F (32.2°C). Annual rainfall 8" (191 mm). Yuma. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 91°F (32.8°C). Annual rainfall 3" (75 mm). *See* Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The state constitution (1910, with 103 amendments) placed the government under direct control of the people through the Initiative, Referendum and the Recall. The state Senate consists of 30 members, and the House of Representatives of 60, all elected for 2 years. Arizona sends to Congress 2 senators and 5 representatives. In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 694,379 votes, Dukakis, 447,272.

The state capital is Phoenix. The state is divided into 15 counties.

*Governor:* Rose Mofford (D.), 1988–91 (\$75,000).

*Secretary of State:* James Shumway (D.), 1988–91 (\$50,000).

**BUDGET.** General revenues, year ending 30 June 1987 (US Census Bureau figures), were \$2,422m. (taxation, \$2,431m.); general expenditures, \$2,384m. (education, \$1,484m.; transport \$15.8m., and public health and welfare, \$458.6m.).

*Per capita* income (1986) was \$13,090.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The mining industries of the state are important, but less so than agriculture and manufacturing. By value the most important mineral produced is copper. Production (1986) 874,715 short tons; gold and silver are both largely recovered from copper ore. Other minerals include sand and gravel and lead. Total value of minerals mined in 1986 was \$1,566.3m.

**Agriculture.** Arizona, despite its dry climate, is well suited for agriculture along the water-courses and where irrigation is practised on a large scale from great reservoirs constructed by the US as well as by the state government and private interests. Irrigated area, 1984, 1.07m. acres. The wide pasture lands are favourable for the rearing of cattle and sheep, but numbers are either stationary or declining compared with 1920.

In 1987 Arizona contained 8,400 farms and ranches with 852,866 acres of crop land, out of a total farm and pastoral area of 38m. acres. The average farm was estimated at 4,405 acres. Farming is highly commercialized and mechanized and concentrated largely on cotton picked by machines and by Indian, Mexican and migratory workers.

Area under cotton (1986), 322,800 acres; 823,000m. bales (of 480 lb.) of cotton were harvested.

**Cash income, 1986,** from crops, \$838m.; from livestock, \$714m. Most important cereals are wheat, corn and barley; other crops include oranges, grape-fruit and lettuce. On 1 Jan. 1985 there were 1,050,000 all cattle, 82,000 milch cows, 306,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** The national forests in the state had an area (1983) of 11.22m. acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 there were 3,747 manufacturing establishments with 172,047 production workers, earning \$1,947m.

**TOURISM.** In 1982 15.7m. tourists visited Arizona; direct employment, 71,700; indirect, 114,600; state tax revenue, \$204m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1982 there were 76,290 miles of public roads and streets; in 1986 2,628,738 motor vehicles were registered in the state.

**Aviation.** Airports, 1984, numbered 251, of which 82 were for public use; 6,079 aircraft were registered.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A 'right-to-work' amendment to the constitution, adopted 5 Nov. 1946, makes illegal any concessions to trade-union demands for a 'closed shop'.

The Arizona state and federal prisons 31 Dec. 1985 held 8,518. There have been no executions since 1963; from 1930 to 1963 there were 38 executions (lethal gas) all for murder, and all men (28 whites, 10 Negro).

**Religion.** The leading religious bodies are Roman Catholics and Mormons (Latter Day Saints); others include Methodists, Presbyterians, Baptists and Episcopalians.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory to grade 9 (from 1985–86) and to grade 10 (from 1986–87). In autumn 1986 there were 532,694 pupils enrolled in grades K–12. In 1986 spending on public schools was \$1,589m. or \$499 per capita. The state maintains 3 universities: the University of Arizona (Tucson) with an enrolment of 30,437 in autumn 1986; Arizona State University (Tempe) with 40,735; Northern Arizona University (Flagstaff) with 13,354.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 88 hospitals reported by the State Department of Health; capacity 13,890 beds; the hospitals had 1,522 physicians and dentists, 8,437 registered nurses and 1,503 licensed practical nurses.

**Social Security.** Old-age assistance (maximum depending on the programme) is given, with federal aid, to needy citizens 65 years of age or older. In June 1985, federal Social Security Insurance payments went to 10,500 aged (\$158 each), and 22,000 disabled (\$251); 71,900 people in 25,200 families received aid for families with dependent children.

## Further Reading

*Arizona Statistical Review.* 42nd ed. Valley National Bank, Phoenix, 1986

Comeaux, M. L., *Arizona: a Geography.* Boulder, 1981

Faulk, O. B., *Arizona: A Short History.* Univ. Oklahoma Press, 1970

Goff, J. S., *Arizona Civilization.* 2nd ed. Cave Creek, 1970

Mason, B. B. and Hink, H., *Constitutional Government of Arizona.* 7th ed. Tempe, 1982

*State Library:* Department of Library, Archives and Public Records, Capitol, Phoenix 85007.

*Director:* Sharon G. Turgeon.

## ARKANSAS

**HISTORY.** Arkansas was settled in 1686, made a territory in 1819 and admitted into the Union on 15 June 1836. The name originated with the Quapaw Indian tribe. The constitution, which dates from 1874, has been amended 59 times.



**AREA AND POPULATION.** Arkansas is bounded north by Missouri, east by Tennessee and Mississippi, south by Louisiana, south-west by Texas and west by Oklahoma. Area, 53,187 sq. miles (1,109 sq. miles being inland water). Census population on 1 April 1980 was 2,286,435, an increase of 18.9% from that of 1970. Estimate (1986) 2,372,000. Births, 1986, were 34,063 (14.4 per 1,000 population); deaths, 23,896 (10.1); infant deaths (1983), 373 (10.6 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 31,162 (13.1); divorces 16,563 (7).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	1,131,026	442,891	460	72	1,574,449	30.0
1930	1,375,315	478,463	408	296	1,854,482	35.2
1960	1,395,703	388,787	580	1,202	1,786,272	34.0
<i>Allothers</i>						
1970	1,565,915	352,445	4,935		1,923,295	37.0
1980	1,890,332	373,768	22,335		2,286,435	43.9

Of the total population in 1980, 48.3% were male, 51.6% were urban, 60.2% were 21 years of age or older.

Little Rock (capital) had a population of 158,461 in 1980; Fort Smith, 71,626; North Little Rock, 64,288; Pine Bluff, 56,636; Fayetteville, 36,608; Hot Springs, 35,781; Jonesboro, 31,530; West Memphis, 28,138. The population of the largest standard metropolitan statistical areas: Little Rock-North Little Rock, 393,774; Fayetteville-Springdale, 178,609; Fort Smith (Arkansas portion), 132,064; Pine Bluff, 90,718; Memphis (Arkansas portion), 49,499; Texarkana (Arkansas portion), 37,766.

**CLIMATE.** Little Rock. Jan. 42°F (5.6°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 49" (1,222 mm). *See* Gulf Coast, p. 1380.

**GOVERNMENT.** The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 35 members elected for 4 years, partially renewed every 2 years, and a House of Representatives of 100 members elected for 2 years. The sessions are biennial and usually limited to 60 days. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 4 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 463,574 votes, Dukakis, 344,991.

The state is divided into 75 counties; the capital is Little Rock.

*Governor:* Bill Clinton (D.), 1987-91 (\$35,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Winston Bryant (D.) (\$14,000).

*Secretary of State:* W. J. McCuen (D.) (\$22,500).

## FINANCE

**Budget.** The state and local government revenue for the fiscal year 1987 was \$5,497m., of which taxation furnished \$2,597m. and federal aid, \$1,017m. General expenditure was \$4,553m., of which education took \$1,893m.; highways, \$511m., and public welfare, \$543m.

Long-term debt (state and local governments) for the financial year 1987 was \$4,296m.

*Per capita* income (1987) was \$11,507.

**Banking.** In 1987 total bank deposits were \$15,580.6m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** In 1987 crude petroleum amounted to 38.1 m. bbls; natural gas, 418.4m. cu. ft; the state is an important source of bauxite, bromine, special abrasive silica stone and barite; it is one of four states producing tripoli and vanadium and one of two shipping gallium.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 50,525 farms had a total area of 14m. acres; average farm was

of 291 acres; 7,484,316 acres were harvested cropland; 2,022,695 acres were irrigated.

The largest sources of income in 1987 were chickens including broilers, 878.6m. birds, (value 1,100m.); 63.9m. bu. soybeans (\$395m.); cattle and calves (\$384m.); rice, 5,250 lb. per acre (\$382m.); cotton, 901,000 bales (\$272m.). Cash farm income (1987) was \$2,900m.; from crops, \$1,000m., and from livestock, \$1,900m.

Livestock on 1 Jan. 1987 included 1.8m. all cattle, 62,000 milch cows and 460,000 swine.

**INDUSTRY.** In July 1988 total employment averaged 1,034,800 (52,300 agricultural, 229,700 manufacturing, 192,300 wholesale and retail trade, 136,900 government). The Arkansas Department of Labor estimated that 188,500 factory production workers earned an average \$330.89 per week (40.8 hours). The most important manufacturing group was food and kindred products employing 46,900, followed by electric and electronic equipment (24,100) and lumber and wood products (20,100). Construction employed 36,100.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total road mileage, 82,672 miles. State-maintained highways (1988) total 16,165 miles; local county highways, 49,649 miles; city streets, 9,626 miles; federal roads, 1,633 miles; roads not publicly maintained, 5,598 miles. In 1987 there were 1,905,103 registered motor vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1988 there were in the state 3,169 miles of commercial railway.

**Aviation.** Six air carrier and 1 commuter airlines serve the state; there were, in 1988, 167 airports (92 public-use and 75 private).

**Waterways.** There are about 1,000 miles of navigable streams, including the Mississippi, Arkansas, Red, White and Ouachita Rivers. The Arkansas River/Kerr-McClellan Channel flows diagonally eastward across the state and gives access to the sea *via* the Mississippi River.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** Main protestant churches in 1980: Baptist (603,844), Methodist (214,925), Church of Christ (90,671), Assembly of God (53,555). Roman Catholics (1980), 56,911.

**Education.** In the school year 1986-87 public elementary and secondary schools had 458,937 enrolled pupils and about 21,500 classroom teachers. Average salaries of teachers in elementary schools was \$19,330, secondary \$20,576. Expenditure on elementary and secondary education was \$1,214m.

An educational TV network provides a full 12-hour-day telecasting; it has 5 stations (1988).

Higher education is provided at 32 institutions: 10 state universities, 1 medical college, 12 private or church colleges, 10 community or junior colleges. Total enrolment in institutions of higher education, 1987-88, was 75,508.

There were (1987-88) 24 vocational-technical schools with 37,563 students, including extension class students. Total expenditure, \$32.5m.

**Health.** There were 102 licensed hospitals (13,042 beds) in 1988, and 237 licensed nursing homes (23,517 beds).

**Social Welfare.** In 1987 449,000 persons drew social security payments; 251,000 were retired workers; 40,000 were disabled workers; 67,000 were widows and widowers; 45,000 were wives and husbands. In Dec. 1986 monthly payments were \$171m., \$117m. to retired workers and their dependants, \$32m. to survivors, and \$21m. to disabled workers and their dependants.

State prisons in Oct. 1988 had 5,347 inmates.

## Further Reading

*Current Employment Developments.* Arkansas Employment Security Division, Little Rock

- Arkansas State and County Economic Data*. Regional Economic Analysis, Univ. Arkansas, Little Rock
- Governmental Finances*. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, 1986-87.
- Agricultural Statistics for Arkansas*. U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, Crop Reporting Service, Little Rock, 1987
- Statistical Summary for the Public Schools of Arkansas*. Dept. of Education, Little Rock
- Ferguson and Atkinson. *Historic Arkansas*. Little Rock, 1966
- Fletcher, J. G., *Arkansas*. Univ. N. Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1947

## CALIFORNIA

**HISTORY.** California, first settled in July 1769, was from its discovery until 1846 politically associated with Mexico. On 7 July 1846 the American flag was hoisted at Monterey, and a proclamation was issued declaring California to be a portion of the US. On 2 Feb. 1848, by the treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, the territory was formally ceded by Mexico to the US, and was admitted to the Union 9 Sept. 1850 as the thirty-first state, with boundaries as at present.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area, 158,693 sq. miles (2,120 sq. miles being inland water). In 1985 the federal government owned 48m. acres (48% of the land area); in 1984, 570,000 acres were under jurisdiction of the Bureau of Indian Affairs, of which 501,000 acres were tribal. Public lands, vacant in 1975, totalled 15,607,125 acres, practically all either mountains or deserts.

Census population, 1 April 1980, 23,667,902, an increase of 18.5% over 1970, making California the most populous state of the USA (New York: 17,557,288). Estimate (1987) 27,662,900. Births in 1986, 481,905 (17.9 per 1,000 population); deaths, 202,826 (7.5); infant deaths, 4,298 (8.9 per 1,000 live births); marriages (1984), 226,560 (8.8); divorces, dissolutions and nullities, 129,131 in 1983 (5.1).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Japanese	Chinese	Total (incl. all others)	Per sq. mile
1910	2,259,672	21,645	41,356	36,248	2,377,549	15.0
1930	5,408,260	81,048	97,456	37,361	5,677,251	35.8
1960	14,455,230	883,861	157,317	95,600	15,717,204	99.0
1970	17,761,032	1,400,143	213,280	170,131	19,953,134	125.7
			All other			
1980	18,030,893	1,819,281	3,817,728		23,667,902	149.1

Of the 1980 population 49.3% were male, 91.3% were urban and 67.2% were 21 years old or older.

The largest cities with 1980 census population are:

Los Angeles	2,966,850	Anaheim	219,494	Fremont	131,945
San Diego	875,538	Fresno	217,289	Torrance	129,881
San Francisco	678,974	Santa Ana	204,023	Garden Grove	123,307
San José	629,546	Riverside	170,591	San Bernardino	118,794
Long Beach	361,334	Huntington Beach	170,505	Pasadena	118,550
Oakland	339,337	Stockton	149,779	Oxnard	108,195
Sacramento	275,741	Glendale	139,060		

Urbanized areas (1980 census): Los Angeles-Long Beach, 9,477,926; San Francisco-Oakland, 3,191,913; San Diego, 1,704,352; San José, 1,243,900; Sacramento, 796,266; San Bernardino-Riverside, 703,316; Oxnard-Ventura-Thousand Oaks, 378,420; Fresno, 331,551.

**CLIMATE.** Los Angeles. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 15" (381 mm). Sacramento. Jan. 45°F (7.2°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 19" (472 mm). San Diego. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 10" (259 mm). San Francisco. Jan. 50°F (10°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 22" (561 mm). Death Valley. Jan. 52°F (11°C), July 100°F (38°C). Annual rainfall 1.6" (40 mm). See Pacific Coast, p. 1379.



**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution became effective from 4 July 1879; it has had numerous amendments since 1962. The Senate is composed of 40 members elected for 4 years—half being elected each 2 years—and the Assembly, of 80 members, elected for 2 years. Two-year regular sessions convene in Dec. of each even-numbered year. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years.

California is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 45 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 4,756,490 votes, Dukakis, 4,448,393.

The capital is Sacramento. The state is divided into 58 counties.

*Governor:* George Deukmejian (R.), 1987–91 (\$49,100).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Leo McCarthy (D.), 1987–91 (\$42,500).

*Secretary of State:* March Fong Eu (D.) (\$42,500).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1988 total General Fund revenues were \$32,360m.; total General Fund expenditures were \$33,021m. (\$17,744m. for education, \$10,379m. for health and welfare).

The long-term state debt (general obligation bonds outstanding) was \$8,007m. on 30 June 1988.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$17,821.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Crude oil output was estimated at 365,934,296 bbls in 1987. Output of natural gas was 382,217.9m. cu. ft; of natural gas liquids, (1987) 227,000 bbls. Gold output was about 602,071 troy oz. (1987); asbestos, boron minerals, diatomite, tungsten, sand and gravel, salt, magnesium compounds, clays, cement, copper and iron ore are also produced. The estimated value of all the minerals produced was \$2,510m. in 1987.

**Agriculture.** Extending 700 miles from north to south, and intersected by several ranges of mountains, California has almost every variety of climate, from the very wet to the very dry, and from the temperate to the semi-tropical.

In 1982 there were 82,468 farms, comprising 32m. acres; average farm, 390 acres. Cotton, fruit, livestock and vegetables are important. Cash receipts, 1986, from crops, \$10,026m.; from livestock and poultry, \$4,488m. Dairy produce, cattle, horticultural products, grapes, and cotton lint (in that order) are the main sources of farm income.

Production of cotton lint, 1987, was 717,900 short tons; other field crops included sugar-beet (6.0m. short tons). Principal crops include wine, table and raisin grapes (4.7m. short tons); peaches (734,000 short tons); pears (337,000 short tons); apricots (110,000 short tons); prunes (228,000 short tons); plums, nectarines, avocados, olives and almonds. Citrus fruit crops were: Oranges, 2.2m. short tons; lemons, 817,000 short tons; grapefruit, 298,600 short tons.

On 1 Jan. 1988 the farm animals were: 1m. milch cows, 4.6m. all cattle, 800,000 sheep and 130,000 swine.

**Forestry.** National forest-service land in 1985 was 20,578,000 acres, of which 8,286,000 acres were commercial forest. California ranks third to Oregon and Washington in volume of standing timber; total annual cut was about 4,099m. bd ft in 1986.

**Fishery.** The catch in 1987 was 443.4m. lb.; leading species were mackerel, tuna and sea urchin.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987, manufacturing employed about 2.1m. The fastest-growing industries were textile mill products, clothing and lumber. The aerospace industry is important, as is food-processing.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 California had 57,748 miles of roads inside cities and 101,185

miles outside. In 1987 there were about 15.6m. registered cars and over 4.7m. commercial vehicles, leading all states in all items by a wide margin.

**Railways.** Total mileage of railways in 1986, was 8,044 miles. There are 2 systems: Amtrak and Southern Pacific Railroad commuter trains. Amtrak carries about 1.7m. passengers per year on the intra-state routes. Southern Pacific carries about 5.4m. on a commuter route. Amtrak services run from San Francisco and Los Angeles. Southern Pacific runs the Caltrains commuter route from San Francisco to San Jose. There is a metro (BART) and light rail (Muni) system in San Francisco. There is a light rail line in San Diego and Sacramento and another under construction in San Jose.

**Aviation.** In 1986 there were 283 public airports and 739 private airstrips.

**Shipping.** The chief ports are San Francisco and Los Angeles.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** State prisons, 1 Jan. 1987, had 55,920 male and 3,564 female inmates. From 1893 to 1942, 307 inmates were executed by hanging. From 1938 to 1976, 194 inmates were executed by lethal gas. No further death sentences were passed until 1980.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic Church is much stronger than any other single church; next are the Jewish congregations, then Methodists, Presbyterians, Baptists and Episcopalians.

**Education.** Full-time attendance at school is compulsory for children from 6 to 16 years of age for a minimum of 175 days per annum, and part-time attendance is required from 16 to 18 years. In autumn 1987 there were 4.5m. pupils enrolled in elementary and secondary schools. Total state expenditure on public education, 1987-88, was \$18,527m.

Community Colleges had 1,264,409 students in autumn 1987.

California has two publicly supported higher education systems: The University of California (1868) and the California State University and Colleges. In autumn 1987, the University of California with campuses for resident instruction and research at Berkeley, Los Angeles, San Francisco and 6 other centres, had 157,331 students. California State University and Colleges with campuses at Sacramento, Long Beach, Los Angeles, San Francisco and 15 other cities had 342,776 students. In addition to the 28 publicly supported institutions for higher education there are 117 private colleges and universities which had a total estimated enrolment of 151,844 in the autumn of 1987.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 522 general hospitals; capacity, 107,584 beds. On 30 June 1988 state hospitals for the mentally disabled had 4,844 patients.

**Social Security.** On 1 Jan. 1974 the federal government (Social Security Administration) assumed responsibility for the Supplemental Security Income/State Supplemental Program which replaced the State Old-Age Security. The SSI/SSP provides financial assistance for needy aged (65 years or older), blind or disabled persons. An individual recipient may own assets up to \$1,900; a couple up to \$2,850, subject to specific exclusions. There are federal, state and county programmes assisting the aged, the blind, the disabled and needy children. In 1987 5,172 families per month were receiving an average of \$416 per family.

## Further Reading

*California Almanac, 1984-85.* Fay, J. S., (ed.) Oxford, 1984

*California Government and Politics.* Hoerber, T. R., et al. (eds.) Sacramento, Annual

*California Handbook.* California Institute, 1981

*California Statistical Abstract.* 29th ed. Dept. of Finance, Sacramento, 1988

*Economic Report of the Governor.* Dept. of Finance, Sacramento, Annual

Lavender, D. S., *California.* New York, 1976

*State Library:* The California State Library, Library-Courts Bldg, Sacramento 95814.

## COLORADO

**HISTORY.** Colorado was first settled in 1858, made a Territory in 1861 and admitted into the Union on 1 Aug. 1876.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Colorado is bounded north by Wyoming, north-east by Nebraska, east by Kansas, south-east by Oklahoma, south by New Mexico and west by Utah. Area, 104,090 sq. miles (496 sq. miles being inland water). Federal lands, 1974, 23,974,000 acres (36% of the land area).

Census population, 1 April 1980, was 2,889,964, an increase of 680,368 or 30.8% since 1970. Estimated (1986), 3,267,118. Births, 1985, were 55,115 (17.1 per 1,000 population); deaths, 20,234 (6.4); infant deaths, 519 (9 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 33,616 (12.5); dissolutions, 19,193 (6.6).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	783,415	11,453	1,482	2,674	799,024	7.7
1930	1,018,793	11,828	1,395	3,775	1,035,791	10.0
1950	1,296,653	20,177	1,567	5,870	1,325,089	12.7
1970	2,112,352	66,411	8,836	10,388	2,207,259	21.3
			<i>All others</i>			
1980	2,571,498	101,703	216,763		2,889,964	27.7

Of the total population in 1980, 49.6% were male, 80.6% were urban; 68% were aged 20 years or older. Large cities with 1980 census population (and 1986 estimate): Denver, 492,365 (514,950); Colorado Springs, 215,150 (270,724); Aurora, 158,588 (220,066); Lakewood, 112,860 (121,729); Pueblo, 101,686 (102,852); Arvada, 84,576 (90,698); Boulder, 76,685 (80,002); Fort Collins, 65,092 (78,038); Wheat Ridge, 30,293 (29,864); Greeley, 53,006 (59,036); Westminster, 50,211 (69,335).

Main metropolitan areas (1986): Denver-Boulder, 1,843,757; Fort Collins, 174,636; Colorado Springs, 380,025; Greeley, 137,271; Pueblo, 128,671; Front Range Urban Area, 2,692,304.

**CLIMATE.** Denver. Jan. 31°F (−0.6°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 14'' (358 mm). Pueblo. Jan. 30°F (−1.1°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 12'' (312 mm). *See* Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution adopted in 1876 is still in effect with (1983) 78 amendments. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 35 members elected for 4 years, one-half retiring every 2 years, and of a House of Representatives of 65 members elected for 2 years. Sessions are annual, beginning 1951. The Governor, Lieut.-Governor, Attorney-General, Secretary of State and Treasurer are elected for 4 years. Qualified as electors are all citizens, male and female (except convicted, incarcerated criminals), 18 years of age, who have resided in the state and the precinct for 32 days immediately preceding the election. The state is divided into 63 counties. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 6 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 727,633 votes, Dukakis, 621,093.

The capital is Denver.

*Governor:* Roy Romer (D.), 1987–91 (\$60,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Nancy Dick (D.), 1987–91 (\$32,500).

*Secretary of State:* Natalie Meyer (R.), 1987–91 (\$32,500).

**BUDGET.** The state's total budget, 1985–86, is \$3,497m., of which taxation and other revenue furnish \$2,859m. and federal grants \$637m. Education takes \$1,708m.; health, welfare and rehabilitation, \$1,037m., and highways, \$440m. Total state and local taxes *per capita* (1985) were \$2,167.



The state has no general obligation debt. The net long-term debt (in revenue bond) on 30 June 1985 was \$139m.

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$15,113.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Colorado has a variety of mineral resources. Among the most important are crude oil, metals and coal. Mineral production in 1986 (estimate) \$1,000m. in value. An estimated 23,700 people were employed in extracting petroleum and natural gas in 1986; 5,000 in metals and 4,300 in coal and non-metals.

**Agriculture.** In May 1985 farms numbered 26,700, with a total area of 34.4m. acres. (66.7% of the land area); 7,375,000 acres were harvested crop land; average farm (1984), 1,282 acres. Cash income, 1985, from crops \$1,085m.; from livestock, \$1,950m. In 1984 there were 3,200,000 acres under irrigation.

Production of principal crops in 1984: Maize for grain, 134m. bu. (from 680,000 acres); wheat, 115.3m. bu. (3.0m.); hay, 3.3m. tons (1.4m.); dry beans, 2.26m. cwt (170,000); potatoes, 19.2m. cwt (51,400); sugar-beet, 920,600 tons (46,000); oats, barley and sorghums are grown, as well as fruit.

On 1 Jan. 1984 the number of farm animals was: 75,000 milch cows, 3.1m. all cattle, 690,000 sheep, 210,000 swine. The wool clip in 1984 yielded 7m. lb. of wool.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 1,448,300 were employed in non-agricultural sectors, of which 367,800 were in trade; 328,800 in services; 247,800 in government; 196,500 in manufacturing; 87,900 in construction; 88,500 in transport and public utilities; 33,000 in mining; 98,000 in finance, insurance and property. In manufacturing the biggest employers were non-electrical machinery, foods and kindred products, and printing.

**TOURISM.** In 1985 about 20m. people spent holidays in Colorado, of whom about 3% were Colorado residents. Overall expenditure, \$4,500m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state highway system (1983) included 9,232 miles of highway. County roads totalled 56,898, and city streets, 9,352 miles. Total road mileage, 80,483, of which 5,001 miles are unmaintained county and city roads.

**Railways.** In 1982 there were in the state 4,500 miles of main-track and branch railway.

**Aviation.** There were (1984) 233 airports in the state. Of these, 68 are publicly owned and open to the public; 16 are privately owned and open to the public; 149 are private and not open to the public.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** At 30 Sept. 1984 there were 3,050 people committed to the State Department of Corrections, inmates of the State Penitentiary, the State Reformatory and other institutions. In 1967 there was 1 execution; since 1930 executions (by lethal gas) numbered 47, including 41 whites, 5 Negroes and 1 other; all were for murder.

Colorado has a Civil Rights Act (1935) forbidding places of public accommodation to discriminate against any persons on the grounds of race, religion, sex, colour or nationality. No religious test may be applied to teachers or students in the public schools, 'nor shall any distinction or classification of pupils be made on account of race or colour'. In 1957 the General Assembly prohibited discrimination in employment of persons in private industry and in 1959 adopted the Fair Housing Act to discourage discrimination in housing. A 1957 Act permits marriages between white persons and Negroes or mulattoes.

**Religion.** In 1984 the Roman Catholic Church had 550,300 members; the ten main Protestant denominations had 350,900 members; the Jewish community had 45,000 members. Buddhism is among other religions represented.

**Education.** In autumn 1984 the public elementary and secondary schools had 526,336 pupils and 34,500 teachers and administrators; total instructional salaries averaged \$25,000. Enrolments in universities and larger colleges, autumn 1983, were: US Air Force Academy (Colorado Springs), 6,000 students; University of Colorado (Boulder), 25,500; University of Colorado (Denver), 10,560; University of Colorado (Colorado Springs), 5,500; University of Colorado (Medical Center), 1,585; Colorado State University (Fort Collins), 17,500; University of Denver (Denver), 9,300; Colorado School of Mines (Golden), 3,200; University of Northern Colorado (Greeley), 10,700; University of Southern Colorado (Pueblo), 5,000; Western State College (Gunnison), 1,700; Adams State College (Alamosa), 2,000; Metropolitan State College (Denver), 17,690; Colorado College (Colorado Springs), 1,950; Fort Lewis College (Durango), 3,650; Mesa College (Grand Junction), 3,400.

**Health.** Approved hospitals, 1983, numbered 98. In 1983, there were 25 public mental health centres and clinics.

**Social Security.** A constitutional amendment, adopted 1956, provides for minimum old age pensions of \$100 per month, which may be raised on a cost-of-living basis; for a \$5m. stabilization fund and for a \$10m. medical and health fund for pensioners. In 1984 the maximum monthly retirement pension (for citizens of 65 and older) was \$703; maximum monthly benefit for a disabled worker, \$854.

### Further Reading

*Directory of Colorado Manufacturers, 1986.* Business Research Division, School of Business, Univ. of Colorado, Boulder, 1987

*State of Colorado Business Development Manual.* Office of Business Development, Denver, 1986

*Economic Outlook Forum, 1986.* Colorado Division of Commerce and Development, and the College of Business, Univ. of Colorado, Denver, 1987

Griffiths, M. and Rubright, L., *Colorado: a Geography.* Boulder, 1983

Sprague, M., *Colorado: A History.* New York, 1976

*State Library:* Colorado State Library, State Capitol, Denver, 80203.

## CONNECTICUT

**HISTORY.** Connecticut was first settled in 1634 and has been an organized commonwealth since 1637. In 1629 a written constitution was adopted which, it is claimed, was the first in the history of the world formed under the concept of a social compact. This constitution was confirmed by a charter from Charles II in 1662, and replaced in 1818 by a state constitution, framed that year by a constitutional convention.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Connecticut is bounded north by Massachusetts, east by Rhode Island, south by the Atlantic and west by New York. Area, 5,018 sq. miles (147 sq. miles being inland water).

Census population, 1 April 1980, 3,107,576, an increase of 2.5% since 1970. Estimate (1983) 3,138,000. Births (1984) were 39,237 (12.4 per 1,000 population); deaths, 27,633 (8.8); infant deaths, 320 (8.2 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 25,080 (8); divorces, 11,226 (3.6).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	1,098,897	15,174	152	533	1,114,756	231.3
1930	1,576,700	29,354	162	687	1,606,903	328.0
1960	2,423,816	107,449	923	3,046	2,535,234	517.5
			All others			
				15,074		
1970	2,835,458	181,177			3,031,709	629.0
1980	2,799,420	217,433	4,533	18,970	3,107,576	634.3

Of the total population in 1980, 1,498,005 persons were male, 2,449,774 persons were urban. Those 19 years old or older numbered 2,228,805.

The chief cities and towns, with census population 1 April 1980, are:

Bridgeport	142,546	New Britain	73,840
Hartford	136,392	West Hartford	61,301
New Haven	126,109	Danbury	60,470
Waterbury	103,266	Greenwich	59,578
Stamford	102,453	Bristol	57,370
Norwalk	77,767	Meriden	57,118

Larger urbanized areas, 1980 census: Hartford, 726,114; Bridgeport, 395,455; New Haven, 417,592; Waterbury, 228,178; Stamford, 198,854.

**CLIMATE.** New Haven: Jan. 28°F (−2.2°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,151 mm). *See* New England, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1818 Constitution was revised in June 1953 effective 1 Jan. 1955. On 30 Dec. 1965 a new constitution went into effect, having been framed by a constitutional convention in the summer of 1965 and approved by the voters in Dec. 1965.

The 1965 Constitution provides for 30 to 50 members of the Senate (instead of 24 to 36) and for 125 to 225 members of the House of Representatives, to be elected from assembly districts, rather than 2 or 1 from each town, as in the former constitution. The convention has added a new provision for a 3-day session following each regular or special session, solely to reconsider bills vetoed by the Governor.

The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 36 members and a House of Representatives of 151 members. Members of each House are elected for the term of 2 years (annual salary \$9,500 first year, \$7,500 second year; expenses \$2,000 and mileage allowance). Legislative sessions are annual. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. All citizens (with necessary exceptions and the usual residential requirements) have the right of suffrage.

Connecticut is one of the original 13 states of the Union. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 6 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 747,082 votes, Dukakis, 674,873. The state capital is Hartford.

*Governor:* William A. O'Neill (D.), 1987–91 (\$65,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Joseph J. Fauliso (D.), (\$40,000).

*Secretary of State:* Julia Tashjian (D.), (\$35,000).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1982 (state government figures) general revenues were \$5,588m. (taxation, \$3,723m., and federal aid, \$998m.); general expenditures were \$5,330m. (education, \$1,843m., highways, \$376m., and public welfare, \$737m.).

The total long-term debt on 30 June 1982 was \$4,452m.

*Per capita* income, 1985, was \$18,089.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The state has some mineral resources: Sheet mica, sand, gravel, clays and stone; total production in 1982 was valued at \$56m.

**Agriculture.** In 1985 the state had 4,000 farms with a total area of about 500,000 acres; average farm was of 118 acres, valued at \$3,208 per acre. Total cash income, 1985, was \$316m., including \$110m. from crops and \$206m. from livestock and products (mainly from dairy products and poultry). Principal crops are hay, silage, forest, greenhouse and nursery products, tobacco, potatoes, sweet corn, tomatoes, apples, peaches, pears, vegetables and small fruit.

Livestock (1 Jan. 1980): 108,000 all cattle (value \$70.7m.), 5,200 sheep (\$387,000), 11,000 swine (\$699,000) and 5.8m. poultry (\$12m.).

**Forestry.** The state had (1980) 137,782 acres of state forest land, which is about 4.2% of the total land area.



**INDUSTRY.** Total non-agricultural labour force in 1985 was 1,569,000. The main employers are manufacturers (411,000 workers mainly in transport equipment, non-electrical machinery and fabricated metals); trade (350,000 workers); services (353,000) and government (189,000).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state (1 Jan. 1981) maintains 4,035 miles of highways, all surfaced. Motor vehicles registered in 1985 numbered 2,422,000.

**Railways.** In 1981 there were 950 miles of railway track.

**Aviation.** In 1981 there were 61 airports (27 commercial including 5 state-owned, and 34 heliports).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1981 there were no executions; since 1930 there have been 22 executions (19 by electrocution, 3 by hanging), including 19 whites and 3 Negroes, all for murder. In 1984 there were 5,718 inmates of the state and federal prisons.

The Civil Rights Act makes it a punishable offence to discriminate against any person or persons 'on account of alienage, colour or race' and to hold up to ridicule any persons 'on account of creed, religion, colour, denomination, nationality or race'. Places of public resort are forbidden to discriminate. Insurance companies are forbidden to charge higher premiums to persons 'wholly or partially of African descent'. Schools must be open to all 'without discrimination on account of race or colour'.

**Religion.** The leading religious denominations (1980) in the state are the Roman Catholic (1.4m. members), United Churches of Christ, Protestant Episcopal, Jewish, Greek Orthodox, Methodist, Baptist, Presbyterian.

**Education.** Elementary instruction is free for all children between the ages of 4 and 16 years, and compulsory for all children between the ages of 7 and 16 years. In 1983 there were 719 public elementary schools, 237 secondary schools and 25 combined. In 1983 there were 478,000 pupils and 32,500 elementary and secondary teachers. Expenditure of the state on public schools, 1986, \$2,321m. or \$731 per capita. Average salary of teachers in public schools, 1986, \$26,750.

Connecticut has 47 colleges, of which one state university, 4 state colleges, 5 state technical colleges and 12 regional community colleges are state funded. The University of Connecticut at Storrs, founded 1881, had 1,253 faculty and 22,407 students in 1980-81. Yale University, New Haven, founded in 1701, had 2,088 faculty and 9,626 students. Wesleyan University, Middletown, founded 1831, had 297 faculty and 2,775 students. Trinity College, Hartford, founded 1823, had 145 faculty and 2,007 students. Connecticut College, New London, founded 1915, had 203 faculty and 1,974 students. The University of Hartford, founded 1877, had 305 faculty and 9,836 students. The regional community colleges (2-year course) had 514 faculty and 34,082 students.

**Health.** Hospitals listed by the American Hospital Association, 1983, numbered 65, with 18,200 beds. The state operated one general hospital, one veterans' hospital, 8 hospitals for the mentally ill (2,450 patients in Jan. 1981), 2 training schools for the mentally retarded (and 12 regional centres), one chronic disease hospital (56 in-patients in Jan. 1981) and a state-aided institution for the blind.

**Social Security.** Disbursements during the year ending 30 June 1986 amounted to \$66.1m. in aid to the aged (6,500 persons per month receiving an average of \$153) and disabled (19,400, receiving \$239). In other areas of welfare, there was an average of 40,700 cases for aid to families with dependent children comprising 118,800 recipients.

## Further Reading

*The Register and Manual of Connecticut.* Secretary of State, Hartford, Annual  
*The Structure of Connecticut's State Government.* Connecticut Public Expenditure Council, Hartford, 1973

Adams, V. Q., *Connecticut: The Story of Your State Government*, Chester, 1973  
 Halliburton, W. J., *The People of Connecticut*, Norwalk, 1985  
 Roth, David M. (ed.) *Series in Connecticut History*, 5 vols., Chester, 1975  
 Smith, Allen R., *Connecticut, a Thematic Atlas*, Newington, 1974  
 Van Dusen, Albert E., *Connecticut*, New York, 1961

*State Library*: Connecticut State Library, Capitol Avenue, Hartford, 06015. *State Librarian*: Clarence R. Walters.

## DELAWARE

**HISTORY.** Delaware, permanently settled in 1638, is one of the original 13 states of the Union, and the first one to ratify the Federal Constitution.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Delaware is bounded north by Pennsylvania, north-east by New Jersey, east by Delaware Bay, south and west by Maryland. Area 2,044 sq. miles (112 sq. miles being inland water). Census population, 1 April 1980 was 594,338, an increase of 46,234 or 8.4% since 1970. Estimate (1987), 644,000. Births in 1987, 10,410; deaths, 5,700; infant deaths, 87; marriages, 5,410; divorces, 2,928.

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	171,102	31,181	5	34	202,322	103.0
1930	205,718	32,602	5	55	238,380	120.5
1960	384,327	60,688	597	410	446,292	224.0
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	466,459	78,276	3,369		548,104	276.5
1980	488,002	96,157	10,179		594,338	290.8

Of the total population in 1980, 48.4% were male, 70.7% were urban and 65.7% were 21 years old or older.

The 1980 census figures show Wilmington with population of 70,195; Newark, 25,241; Dover, 23,512; Elsmere Town, 6,493; Milford City, 5,356; Seaford City, 5,256.

**CLIMATE.** Wilmington. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,076 mm). *See* Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution (the fourth) dates from 1897, and has had 51 amendments; it was not ratified by the electorate but promulgated by the Constitutional Convention. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 21 members elected for 4 years and a House of Representatives of 41 members elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years.

With necessary exceptions, all adult citizens, registered as voters, who are *bona fide* residents, and have complied with local residential requirements, have the right to vote.

Delaware is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 1 representative, elected by the voters of the whole state.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 130,581 votes, Dukakis, 99,479.

The state capital is Dover. Delaware is divided into 3 counties.

*Governor*: Michael N. Castle (R.), 1989–92 (\$70,000).

*Lieut.-Governor*: Dale E. Wolf (R.), (\$19,200).

*Secretary of State*: Michael Harkins (R.) (\$49,300) (appointed by the Governor).

**FINANCE.** For the year ending 30 June 1986 total revenue was \$1,987m., of which federal grants were \$297.7m. Total expenditure was \$799m.

On 30 June 1988 the total debt was \$490m.

*Per capita* income (1987) was \$16,696.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The mineral resources of Delaware are not extensive, consisting chiefly of clay products, stone, sand and gravel and magnesium compounds. Value of mineral production in 1980 was \$2m.

**Agriculture.** Delaware is mainly an industrial state, but 630,000 acres is in farms; 500,000 acres of this is harvested annually. There were 3,100 farms in 1987. The average farm was valued (land and buildings) at \$360,626. The main product is broilers, accounting for \$319.97m. farm receipts, out of a total \$486.86m. in 1987.

The chief field crops are corn and soybeans.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 manufacturing establishments employed 69,500 people; main manufactures, chemicals, transport equipment and food.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state in 1988 maintained 4,722 miles of roads and streets and 1,399 miles of federally-aided highways. There were also 610 miles of municipal maintained streets. Vehicles registered in year ended 30 June 1988, 503,828.

**Railways.** In 1988 the state had 285 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** Delaware had 11 airports, all of which were for general use in 1988.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** State prisons, 1 July 1985–30 June 1986, had daily average of 2,621 inmates. The death penalty was illegal from 2 April 1958 to 18 Dec. 1961. Executions since 1930 (by hanging) have totalled 12 (none since 1946).

**Religion.** Membership, 1979–80: Methodists, 60,489; Roman Catholics, 103,060; Episcopalians, 18,696; Lutherans, 10,000.

**Education.** The state has free public schools and compulsory school attendance. In Sept. 1987 the elementary and secondary public schools had 95,659 enrolled pupils and 5,900 classroom teachers. Another 21,666 children were enrolled in private and parochial schools. Appropriation for public schools (financial year 1986–87) was about \$309.2m. Average salary of classroom teachers (financial year 1986–87), \$27,467. The state supports the University of Delaware at Newark (1834) which had 900 full-time faculty members and 19,067 students in Sept. 1988, Delaware State College, Dover (1892), with 140 full-time faculty members and 2,389 students, and the 4 campuses of Delaware Technical and Community College (Wilmington, Stanton, Dover and Georgetown) with 219 full-time faculty members and 7,675 students.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 7 short-term general hospitals. During financial year 1987 patients in mental hospitals numbered 2,302.

**Social Security.** In 1974 the federal Supplemental Security Income (SSI) programme lessened state responsibility for the aged, blind and disabled. SSI payments in Delaware (1987), \$17.8m. Provisions are also made for the care of dependent children; in 1987 there were 20,000 recipients in 7,900 families (average monthly payment per family, \$257). The total state programme for the year ending 30 June 1987 was \$25m. for the care of dependent children.

## Further Reading

*Information:* Division of Historical and Cultural Affairs, Hall of Records, Dover.

*Delaware Data Book.* Delaware Development Office, Dover, 1988

*State Manual, Containing Official List of Officers, Commissions and County Officers.* Secretary of State, Dover, Annual



Hoffecker, C. E., *Delaware; a Bicentennial History*. New York, 1977  
 Smeal, L., *Delaware Historical and Biographical Index*. New York, 1984  
 Weslager, C. A., *Delaware Indians, a History*. Rutgers Univ. Press, 1972  
*Topical History of Delaware*. Division of Historical and Cultural Affairs. Dover, 1977

## DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA

**HISTORY.** The District of Columbia, organized in 1790, is the seat of the Government of the US, for which the land was ceded by the states of Maryland and Virginia to the US as a site for the national capital. It was established under Acts of Congress in 1790 and 1791. Congress first met in it in 1800 and federal authority over it became vested in 1801. In 1846 the land ceded by Virginia (about 33 sq. miles) was given back.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The District forms an enclave on the Potomac River, where the river forms the south-west boundary of Maryland. The area of the District of Columbia is 68.68 sq. miles, 6 sq. miles being inland water.

Census population, 1 April 1980, was 638,333, a decrease of 16% from that of 1970. Estimate (1983) 623,000. Metropolitan statistical area of Washington, D.C.-Md-Va. (1980), 3m. Density of population in the District, 1980, 10,453 per sq. mile. Births, 1984, in the District were 19,123 (30.7 per 1,000 population); resident deaths, 8,302 (13.3); infant deaths, 393 (20.6 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 5,488 (8.8); divorces, 2,874 (4.6).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Chinese and Japanese	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	236,128	94,446	68	427	331,069	5,517.8
1930	353,981	132,068	40	780	486,869	7,981.5
1960	345,263	411,737	587	3,532	763,956	12,523.9
			All others			
1970	209,272	537,712		9,526	756,510	12,321.0
1980	171,768	448,906		17,659	638,333	10,184.0

**CLIMATE.** Washington. Jan. 34°F (1.1°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 43'' (1,064 mm). See Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**GOVERNMENT.** Local government, from 1 July 1878 until Aug. 1967, was that of a municipal corporation administered by a board of 3 commissioners, of whom 2 were appointed from civil life by the President, and confirmed by the Senate, for a term of 3 years each. The other commissioner was detailed by the President from the Engineer Corps of the Army. Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1967 submitted by the President to Congress on 1 June 1967 abolished the Commission form of government and instituted a new Mayor Council form of government with officers appointed by the President with the advice and consent of the Senate. On 24 Dec. 1973 the appointed officers were replaced by an elected Mayor and councillors, with full legislative powers in local matters as from 1974. Congress retains the right to legislate, to veto or supersede the Council's acts. The 23rd amendment to the federal constitution (1961) conferred the right to vote in national elections; in the 1984 presidential election Mondale polled 172,459 votes, Reagan, 26,805. Since 1971 the District has had a delegate (two, by 1987) in Congress who may vote in Committees but not on the House floor.

**BUDGET.** The District's revenues are derived from a tax on real and personal property, sales taxes, taxes on corporations and companies, licences for conducting various businesses and from federal payments.

The District of Columbia has no bonded debt not covered by its accumulated sinking fund. *Per capita* personal income, 1985, \$18,186.

**INDUSTRY.** The District's main industries (1985) are government service

(263,000 workers); services (214,000); wholesale and retail trade (64,000); finance, real estate, insurance (35,000), communications, transport and utilities (26,000); total workforce, 1985, 629,000.

**TOURISM.** About 17m. visitors stay in the District every year and spend about \$1,000m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Within the District are 340 miles of bus routes. There are 1,101 miles of streets maintained by the District; of these, 673 miles are local streets, 262 miles are major arterial roads. In 1985 233,000 vehicles were registered.

**Railways.** There is a rapid rail transit system including a town subway system. This coordinates with the bus system and connects with Union railway station and the National Airport. Nine rail lines serve the District.

**Aviation.** The District is served by 3 general airports; across the Potomac River in Arlington, Va., is National Airport, in Chantilly, Va., is Dulles International Airport and in Maryland is Baltimore—Washington International Airport.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Since 1958 there have been no executions; from 1930 to 1957 there were 40 executions (electrocution) including 3 whites for murder and 35 Negroes for murder and 2 for rape. The death penalty was declared unconstitutional in the District of Columbia on 14 Nov. 1973. At 31 Dec. 1985 there were 6,404 prisoners in state and federal institutions.

The District's Court system is the Judicial Branch of the District of Columbia. It is the only completely unified court system in the United States, possibly because of the District's unique city-state jurisdiction. Until the District of Columbia Court Reform and Criminal Procedure Act of 1970, the judicial system was almost entirely in the hands of Federal Government. Since that time, the system has been similar in most respects to the autonomous systems of the states.

**Religion.** The largest churches are the Protestant and Roman Catholic Christian churches; there are also Jewish, Eastern Orthodox and Islamic congregations.

**Education.** In 1983–84 there were about 89,000 pupils in secondary and elementary schools. Expenditure on public schools, 1986, \$404m. or \$645 per capita; public school teachers' average salary was \$34,000. Higher education is given through the Consortium of Universities of the Metropolitan Washington Area, which consists of six universities and three colleges: Georgetown University, founded in 1795 by the Jesuit Order (11,688 students in 1985–86); George Washington University, non-sectarian founded in 1821 (17,948); Howard University, founded in 1867 (11,184); Catholic University of America, founded in 1887 (6,805); American University (Methodist) founded in 1893 (8,032); University of D.C., founded 1976 (12,080); Gallaudet College, founded 1864 (2,128); Trinity College, founded 1897 (926). There are altogether 18 institutes of higher education.

All benefit from such facilities as the 12 museums of the Smithsonian Institution, the Library of Congress, National Archives, and the Legal Libraries of the US Supreme Court and Department of Justice.

**Social Security** The District government provides primary health care for residents, mainly through its Department of Human Services. In 1983 there were 17 hospitals with 8,700 beds. The welfare programme of aid to families with dependent children gave money to 55,900 recipients in 21,600 families in 1985; 4,100 aged and 11,600 disabled also received aid, total payments \$43.8m.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Metropolitan Washington Board of Trade publications. *Reports of the Commissioners of the District of Columbia.* Annual. Washington  
Federal Writers' Project. *Washington, D.C.: A Guide to the Nation's Capital.* New York

# FLORIDA

**HISTORY.** White men, probably Spaniards but possibly English, saw Florida for the first time in the period 1497–1512. John Cabot first charted the cape now called Florida in 1498. Juan Ponce de Leon sighted Florida on 27 March 1513. Going ashore between 2 and 8 April in the vicinity of what is now St Augustine, he named the land 'Pasqua de Flores' because his landing was 'in the time of the Feast of Flowers'. The first permanent settlement was Spanish and was made at St Augustine, 8 Sept. 1565; it is the oldest permanent settlement in the US. In 1763 it was ceded to England; back to Spain in 1783, and to the US in 1821. Florida became a Territory in 1821 and was admitted into the Union on 3 March 1845.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Florida is a peninsula bounded west by the Gulf of Mexico, south by the Straits of Florida, east by the Atlantic, north by Georgia and north-west by Alabama. Area, 58,664 sq. miles, including 4,510 sq. miles of inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, was 9,746,324, an increase of 43.4% since 1970. Estimate (1 July 1988) 12,262,425. Births in 1987 were 175,017; deaths, 127,636; infant deaths, 1,849; marriages, 138,072; divorces and other dissolutions, 79,667.

Population in 5 federal census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>All Others</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per Sq. Mile</i>
1940	1,381,986	514,198	1,230	1,897,414	35.0
1950	2,166,051	603,101	2,153	2,771,305	51.1
1960	4,063,881	880,168	7,493	4,952,788	91.5
1970	5,719,343	1,041,651	28,449	6,789,443	125.6
1980	8,319,448	1,342,478	84,398	9,746,324	180.1

Of the population in 1980, 48% of the total were male; 84.3% were urban and 72.4% were 20 years of age or over.

The largest cities in the state, 1980 census (and 1987 estimates) are: Jacksonville, 540,898 (638,212); Miami, 346,931 (417,714); Tampa, 271,523 (291,617); St Petersburg, 236,893 (263,352); Fort Lauderdale, 153,256 (159,736); Hialeah, 145,254 (161,119); Orlando, 128,394 (151,901); Hollywood, 117,188 (130,219); Miami Beach, 96,298 (96,962); Clearwater, 85,450 (108,846); Tallahassee, 81,548 (120,023); Gainesville, 81,371 (89,090); West Palm Beach, 62,530 (75,932); Largo, 58,977 (62,624); Pensacola, 57,619 (63,441); Pompano Beach, 52,618 (68,759).

**CLIMATE.** Jacksonville. Jan. 55°F (12.8°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 54" (1,353 mm). Key West. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 39" (968 mm). Miami. Jan. 67°F (19.4°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 60" (1,516 mm). Tampa. Jan. 61°F (16.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 51" (1,285 mm). *See* Gulf Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The 1968 Legislature revised the constitution of 1885. The state legislature consists of a Senate of 40 members, elected for 4 years, and House of Representatives with 120 members elected for 2 years. Sessions are held annually, and are limited to 60 days. The Governor is elected for 4 years, and can hold two terms in office. Two senators and 19 representatives are elected to Congress.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 2,535,503 votes and Dukakis, 1,630,647.

The state capital is Tallahassee. The state is divided into 67 counties.

*Governor:* Bob Martinez (R.), 1987–91 (\$69,550).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Bobby Brantley (R.), 1987–91 (\$60,455).

*Secretary of State:* Jim Smith (R.), 1987–91 (\$59,385).

**FINANCE.** There is no state income tax on individuals. For the year ending 30 June 1988 the state had a total revenue of \$33,557m. and total expenditure of \$32,881m. General revenue fund expenditure was \$9,764m.



Net long-term debt, 30 June 1988, amounted to \$3,758m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$15,584.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Chief mineral is phosphate rock, of which marketable production in 1987 was 30m. tonnes.

**Agriculture.** In 1987, there were 39,000 farms; net income per farm was \$59,125. Total value of all farm land and buildings, \$25,000m. There were 624,492 acres in citrus groves in 1986 and 12.4m. acres of other farms and ranches. Total cash receipts from crops and livestock (1986), \$4,680m., of which crops provided \$3,680m. Oranges, grapefruit, melons and vegetables are important. Other crops are soybeans, sugar-cane, tobacco and peanuts. On 1 Jan. 1988 the state had 1.76m. cattle, including 179,000 milch cows, and 150,000 swine.

The national forests area in Sept. 1988 was 1,146,675 acres. There were 15.66m. acres of commercial forest.

**Fisheries.** Florida has extensive fisheries for oysters, shrimp, red snapper, crabs, mackerel and mullet. Catch (1988), 195m. lb. valued at \$210m.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 there were 15,262 manufacturers. They employed 516,580 persons. The metal-working, lumber, chemical, woodpulp, food-processing and instruments industries are important.

**TOURISM.** During 1986 35.7m. tourists visited Florida. They spent \$22,800m. making tourism one of the biggest industries in the state. There were (1988) 141 state parks, 4 state forests, 2 national parks and 2 national forests. The state parks were visited by 13.6m. people in 1986–87, 1.2m. of them campers.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state (1987) had 122,810.7 miles of road and streets of which 102,966.5 miles were in the state and local system (63,917.1 miles being county roads), and 19,844.2 miles were federally-aided roads.

In 1982–83, 11.4m. vehicle licence plates were issued.

**Railways.** In 1988 there were 3,356 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** In 1988 Florida had 136 public use airports of which 22 have scheduled commercial service.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Since 1968 there have been 19 executions, by electrocution, for murder; from 1930 to 1968 there were 168 executions (electrocution), including 130 for murder, 37 for rape and 1 for kidnapping. State prisons, 30 June 1988, had 36,092 in-mates.

**Religion.** The main Christian churches are Roman Catholic, Baptist, Methodist, Presbyterian and Episcopalian.

**Education.** Attendance at school is compulsory between 7 and 16.

In 1986–87 the public elementary and secondary schools had 1,658,624 enrolled pupils. Total expenditure on public schools was \$8,499.6m. The state maintains 28 community colleges.

There are 9 universities in the state system, namely the University of Florida at Gainesville (founded 1853) with 31,039 students in 1987; the Florida State University (founded at Tallahassee in 1857) with 25,872; the University of South Florida at Tampa (founded 1960) with 28,514; Florida A. & M. University at Tallahassee (founded 1887) with 5,656; Florida Atlantic University (founded 1964) at Boca Raton with 10,991; the University of West Florida at Pensacola with 7,104; the University of Central Florida at Orlando with 16,556; the University of North Florida at Jacksonville with 7,123; Florida International University at Miami with 16,556.

**Health.** Hospitals, 1987, numbered 306 with 70,132 beds; there were 228 general, 77 special and 1 tuberculosis hospitals.

**Social Security.** From 1974 aid to the aged, blind and disabled became a federal responsibility. The state continued to give aid to families with dependent children and general assistance. Monthly payments 1987-88: Aid to 3,091 blind averaged \$242.70; aid to 108,936 dependent children averaged \$84.69; aid to 114,200 disabled averaged \$246.22; aid to 77,445 aged averaged \$190.86.

### Further Reading

*Florida Population: Summary of the 1980 Census.* Univ. of Florida Press, 1981  
*Report.* Florida Secretary of State. Tallahassee. Biennial  
*Report of the Comptroller.* Tallahassee. Biennial  
 Morris, A., *The Florida Handbook.* Tallahassee. Biennial  
 Fernald, E. A. (ed.) *Atlas of Florida.* Florida State Univ., 1981  
 Tebeau, C. W., *A History of Florida.* Univ. Miami Press, rev. ed., 1980  
*State Library:* Gray Building, Tallahassee. *Librarian:* Barratt Wilkins.

## GEORGIA

**HISTORY.** Georgia (so named from George II) was founded in 1733 as the 13th original colony; she became the 4th original state.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Georgia is bounded north by Tennessee and North Carolina, north-east by South Carolina, east by the Atlantic, south by Florida and west by Alabama. Area, 58,910 sq. miles, of which 854 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, was 5,464,265. Estimate (1987), 6,222,000. Births, 1986, were 98,175 (16 per 1,000 population); deaths, 49,336 (8.1); infant deaths, 1,225 (12.5 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 70,866 (11.6); divorces and annulments, 33,957 (5.5).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	1,431,802	1,176,987	95	237	2,609,121	44.4
1930	1,837,021	1,071,125	43	317	2,908,506	49.7
1960	2,817,223	1,122,596	749	2,004	3,943,116	67.7
<i>All others</i>						
1970	3,391,242	1,187,149	11,184		4,589,575	79.0
1980	3,948,007	1,465,457	50,801		5,464,265	92.7

Of the 1980 population, 2,641,030 were male. 3,406,171 were urban and those 20 years of age and over numbered 3,601,895.

The largest cities are: Atlanta (capital), with population, 1980 census, of 422,293 (urbanized area, 2,010,368); Columbus, 168,598 (238,593); Savannah, 133,672 (225,581); Macon, 116,044 (251,736); Albany, 74,471 (112,257).

**CLIMATE.** Atlanta. Jan. 43°F (6.1°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 49" (1,234 mm). *See* Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution was ratified in the general election of 2 Nov. 1976, proclaimed on 22 Dec. 1976 and became effective 1 Jan. 1977. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 56 members and a House of Representatives of 180 members, both elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Legislative sessions are annual, beginning the 2nd Monday in Jan. and lasting for 40 days.

Georgia was the first state to extend the franchise to all citizens 18 years old and above. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 10 representatives.

Registered voters, 1986, numbered 2,575,815. At the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 1,081,331 votes, Dukakis, 714,792.

The state capital is Atlanta. Georgia is divided into 159 counties.

*Governor:* Joe F. Harris (D.), 1987–91 (\$82,530).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Zell Miller (D.), (\$50,076).

*Secretary of State:* Max Cleland (D.), (\$62,920).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1987 general revenue was \$8,368m. (taxes, \$5,290m.; federal aid, \$2,027m.); general expenditure was \$8,079m. (education, \$3,148m.; medical care and public assistance, \$1,285m.).

On 30 June 1987 total liability was \$4,390m.

Estimated *per capita* personal income (1987), was \$14,098.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Georgia is the leading producer of kaolin. The state ranks first in production of crushed and dimensional granite, second in production of fuller's earth and marble (crushed and dimensional).

**Agriculture.** In 1987, 49,000 farms covered 13m. acres; average farm was of 265 acres; total value, land and buildings, 1986, \$11,094m. For 1986 cotton output was 185,000 bales (of 480 lb.). Other crops include tobacco, corn, wheat, soybeans, peanuts and pecans. Cash income, 1987, \$3,500m: from crops, \$1,300m.; from livestock, \$1,800m.

On 1 Jan. 1986 farm animals included 1.65m. all cattle, including 119,000 milch cows, and 1.1m. swine.

**Forestry.** The forested area in 1987 was 24m. acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 the state's manufacturing establishments had 569,400 workers; the main groups were textiles, apparel, food and transport equipment. Trade employed 692,200, services 536,100, government, 476,000.

**TOURISM.** In 1987 tourists spent \$8,670m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total road mileage (Dec. 1987) was 106,386 including 1,219 interstate and 17,000 federal and state highways. Motor vehicles registered, 1986, numbered 5,140,387.

**Railways.** In 1976 there were 5,417 miles of railways. A metro opened in Atlanta in 1979.

**Aviation.** In 1988 there were 118 public and 168 private airports.

**Shipping.** The principal port is Savannah.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** State and federal prisons, 31 Dec. 1985, had 16,118 inmates. Since 1964 there have been two executions (for murder). From 1924 to 1964 there were 415 executions (electrocution), including 75 whites and 268 Negroes for murder, 3 whites and 63 Negroes for rape and 6 Negroes for armed robbery.

Under a Local Option Act, the sale of alcoholic beverages (not including malt beverages and light wines) is prohibited in more than half the counties.

**Religion.** An estimated 78% of the population are church members. Of the total population, 74.3% are Protestant, 3.2% are Roman Catholic and 1.5% Jewish.

**Education.** Since 1945 education has been compulsory; tuition is free for pupils between the ages of 6 and 18 years. In 1987 there were 1,289 public elementary schools and 361 public secondary schools; in autumn 1987 they had 1.1m. pupils and 60,509 teachers. Teachers' salaries averaged \$27,606 in 1987–88. Expenditure on public schools (1987), \$2,394m. or \$438 per capita and \$2,939 per pupil.

The University of Georgia (Athens) was founded in 1785 and was the first chartered State University in the US (26,547 students in 1987–88). Other institutions of higher learning include Georgia Institute of Technology, Atlanta (11,771), Emory



University, Atlanta (8,884), Georgia State University, Atlanta (22,116) and Mercer University, Macon (3,416). The Atlanta University Center, devoted primarily to Negro education, includes Clark College (1,860) and Morris Brown College (1,257, co-educational, Morehouse (2,160), a liberal arts college for men, Interdenominational Theological Center, a co-educational theological school, and Spelman College, the first liberal arts college for Negro women in the US. Atlanta University serves as the graduate school centre for the complex. Wesleyan College near Macon is the oldest chartered women's college in the US.

**Health.** Hospitals licensed by the Department of Human Resources, 1985, numbered 173 with 26,051 beds.

**Social Security.** In Dec. 1985, 60,300 persons were receiving SSI old-age assistance of an average \$128 per month; 82,500 families were receiving as aid to dependent children an average of \$186 per family; aid to 89,500 disabled persons was \$217 monthly.

### Further Reading

*Georgia History in Outline.* Univ. of Georgia Press, Athens, 1978

Bonner, J. C. and Roberts, L. E. (eds.) *Studies in Georgia History and Government.* Reprint Company, Spartanburg, 1940 Repr.

Pound, M. B. and Saye, A. B., *Handbook on the Constitution of the U.S. and Georgia.* Univ. of Georgia Press, Athens, 1978

Rowland, A. R., *A Bibliography of the Writings on Georgia History.* Hamden, Conn., 1978

Saye, A. B., *A Constitutional History of Georgia, 1732-1968.* Univ. of Georgia, Athens, Rev. ed., 1970

*State Library:* Judicial Building, Capital Sq., Atlanta. *State Librarian:* John D. M. Folger.

## HAWAII

**HISTORY.** The Hawaiian Islands, formerly known as the Sandwich Islands, were discovered by Capt. James Cook in Jan. 1778. During the greater part of the 19th century the islands formed an independent kingdom, but in 1893 the reigning Queen, Liliuokalani (died 11 Nov. 1917), was deposed and a provisional government formed; in 1894 a Republic was proclaimed, and in accordance with the request of the Legislature of the Republic, and a resolution of the US Congress of 6 July 1898 (signed 7 July by President McKinley), the islands were on 12 Aug. 1898 formally annexed to the US. On 14 June 1900 the islands were constituted as a Territory of Hawaii.

Statehood was granted to Hawaii on 18 March 1959.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Hawaiian Islands lie in the North Pacific Ocean, between 18° 56' and 28° 25' N. lat. and 154° 49' and 178° 22' W. long., about 2,090 nautical miles south-west of San Francisco. There are 136 named islands and islets in the group, of which 7 major and 8 minor islands are inhabited. The land and inland water area of the state is 6,471 sq. miles, with census population, 1 April 1980, of 964,691, an increase of 194,778 or 25.4% since 1970; density was 150.1 per sq. mile.

The principal islands are Hawaii, 4,035 sq. miles and population, 1980, 92,053 (estimate, 1987, 114,400); Maui, 735 and 62,823 (81,100); Oahu, 618 and 762,534 (830,600); Kauai, 558 and 38,856 (47,400); Molokai, 264 and 6,049 (6,700); Lanai, 141 and 2,119 (2,200); Niihau, 71 and 226 (202); Kahoolawe, 46 (uninhabited). The capital Honolulu, on the island of Oahu, had a population in 1980 of 365,048 and Hilo on the island of Hawaii, 35,269. Estimated state population, 1987, 1,082,500. Actual population (including visitors, excluding absent residents) 1,201,000.

Figures for racial groups, 1980, are: 331,925 White, 239,734 Japanese, 132,075 Filipinos, 118,251 Hawaiian, 55,916 Chinese, 17,453 Korean, 17,687 Negroes, 51,650 all others. In 1986, 31.2% of the population (outside barracks and other institutions) was of mixed race. Of the total, 92.3% were citizens of the US.

Inter-marriage between the races is popular. Of the 9,714 resident marriages in 1987, 44.6% were between partners of different race. Births, 1987, were 18,555; deaths, 6,149; infant deaths, 168; marriages, 16,567; divorces and annulments, 4,419.

**CLIMATE.** All the islands have a tropical climate, with an abrupt change in conditions between windward and leeward sides, most marked in rainfall. Temperatures vary little. Honolulu. Jan. 71°F (21.7°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 31" (775 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution took effect on 21 Aug. 1959.

The Legislature consists of a Senate of 25 members elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 51 members elected for 2 years. The constitution provides for annual meetings of the legislature with 60-day regular sessions. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The registered voters, 1986, numbered 419,794.

The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 2 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 192,364 votes, Bush, 158,625.

*Governor:* John Waihee (D.), 1986-90 (\$80,000).

**BUDGET.** Revenue is derived mainly from taxation of sales and gross receipts, real property, corporate and personal income, and inheritance taxes, licences, public land sales and leases. For the year ending 30 June 1986 state general fund receipts amounted to \$1,406.6m.; special fund receipts, \$140.9m., and federal grants, \$394m. (included as \$10.3m. of general funds and \$383.7m. of special funds). State expenditures were \$2,456.12m. (education, \$773.2m.; highways, \$104.5m.; public welfare, \$322.5m.; figures include both special and general funds).

Net long-term debt, 31 Dec. 1986, amounted to \$2,720.4m.

Estimated *per capita* personal income (1987) was \$15,366.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Total value of mineral production, 1987, amounted to \$72,575,000. Cement shipped from plants amounted to 310,000 short tons; stone, 6,800,000 short tons.

**Agriculture.** Farming is highly commercialized, aiming at export to the American market, and highly mechanized. In 1986 there were 4,200 farms with an acreage of 1.95m.

Sugar and pineapples are the staple crops. Income from crop sales, 1986, was \$481.3m., and from livestock, \$83.4m. The sugar crop was valued at \$233.8m.; pineapples, \$99.7m.; other crops, \$147.7m.

**Forestry.** In 1987 there were 840,540 acres of forest reserve land, including 327,845 in private ownership.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1986 manufacturing establishments employed 15,700 production workers who earned an estimated \$239.3m. Defence is the second-largest industry; US armed forces spent \$1,856m. in Hawaii in 1987.

**Commerce.** In 1987 imports were \$801.6m.; exports, \$151.7m.

**Tourism.** Tourism is outstanding in Hawaii's economy. Tourist arrivals numbered 1.1m. in 1967, and reached 6.1m. in 1988. Tourist expenditures, \$380m. in 1967, contributed \$7,700m. to the state's economy in 1988.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 798,317 motor vehicles, and a total of 4,071 miles of highways (including 94 miles of freeways).

**Aviation.** There were 7 commercial airports in 1987; passengers arriving from overseas numbered 6.27m., and there were 8.8m. passengers between the islands.

**Shipping.** Several lines of steamers connect the islands with the mainland USA, Canada, Australia, the Philippines, China and Japan. In 1987, 2,080 overseas and 2,848 inter-island vessels entered the port of Honolulu.

**Post.** There were 520,057 telephone access lines at 31 Dec. 1987.

**Broadcasting.** In 1988, Hawaii had 45 commercial and 2 other radio stations, 16 commercial and 2 other TV stations.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is no capital punishment in Hawaii.

**Religion.** The residents of Hawaii are mainly Christians, though there are many Buddhists. A sample survey in 1979 showed that 31% were Roman Catholic, 34% Protestant, 12% Buddhist, 2.5% Latter Day Saints.

**Education.** Education is free, and compulsory for children between the ages of 6 and 18. The language in the schools is English. In 1987-88 there were 231 public schools (166,240 pupils with 8,632 teachers) and 138 private schools (36,179 pupils and 2,536 teachers) ranging from kindergarten through the 12th grade. The University of Hawaii-Manoa, founded in 1907, had 18,448 day students in 1987; total attendance at all campuses of the University of Hawaii system, 43,054; 9,576 at private colleges.

**Social Security.** During 1987 4,924 people were receiving old-age assistance of an average \$210 per month; 14,334 families, \$403 in aid to dependent children; 6,665 disabled people, \$288. Social Security beneficiaries, 138,472, receiving aggregate monthly payments of \$63m.

### Further Reading

- Government in Hawaii.* Tax Foundation of Hawaii, Honolulu, 1987  
*Guide to Government in Hawaii.* 8th ed. Legislative Reference Bureau. State of Hawaii, Honolulu, 1984  
*Atlas of Hawaii.* Hawaii Univ., rev. ed. Honolulu, 1983  
*State of Hawaii Data Book.* Hawaii Dept. of Business and Economic Development, 1987  
 Allen, G. E., *Hawaii's War Years.* 2 vols. Hawaii Univ. Press, 1950-52  
 Bell, R. J., *Last Among Equals: Hawaiian Statehood and American Politics.* Honolulu, 1984  
 Kuykendall, R. S. and Day, A. G., *Hawaii, A History.* Rev. ed. New Jersey, 1961  
 Morgan, J. R., *Hawaii.* Boulder, 1982  
 Pukui, M. K. and Elbert, S. H., *Hawaiian-English Dictionary.* Rev. ed. Honolulu, 1986

## IDAHO

**HISTORY.** Idaho was first permanently settled in 1860, although there was a mission for Indians in 1836 and a Mormon settlement in 1855. It was organized as a Territory in 1863 and admitted into the Union as a state on 3 July 1890.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Idaho is bounded north by Canada, east by the Rocky Mountains of Montana and Wyoming, south by Nevada and Utah, west by Oregon and Washington. Area, 83,564 sq. miles, of which 1,153 sq. miles are inland water. In 1983 the federal government owned 34,282,000 acres (65% of the state area). Census population, 1 April 1980, 943,935, an increase of 32.4% since 1970. Estimate (1984) 1,001,000.

Births, 1984, 17,996 (18 per 1,000 population); deaths, 7,229 (7.2); infant deaths, 174 (9.7 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 13,264 (13.3); divorces, 6,210 (6.2).



## Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	319,221	651	3,488	2,234	325,594	3.9
1930	438,840	668	3,638	1,886	445,032	5.4
1960	657,383	1,502	5,231	2,958	667,191	8.1
1970	693,375	3,655	5,413	2,526	713,008	8.5
1980	901,641	2,716	<i>All others</i> 39,578		943,935	11.3

Of the total 1980 population, 471,155 were male, 509,702 were urban and those 20 years of age or older 600,242.

The largest cities are Boise (capital) with 1980 census population of 102,160 (1984 estimate, 107,188); Pocatello, 46,340 (45,334); Idaho Falls, 39,734 (41,774); Lewiston, 27,986 (28,050); Twin Falls, 26,209 (28,168); Nampa, 25,112 (27,347).

**CLIMATE.** Boise. Jan. 29°F (−1.7°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 12" (303 mm). *See* Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution adopted in 1890 is still in force; it has had 104 amendments. The Legislature consists of a Senate of 42 members and a House of Representatives of 84 members, all the legislators being elected for 2 years. The Governor, Lieut.-Governor and Secretary of State are elected for 4 years. Voters are citizens, over the age of 18 years. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 2 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 253,467 votes, Dukakis, 147,420.

The state is divided into 44 counties. The capital is Boise.

*Governor:* Cecil Andrus (D.), 1987–91 (\$50,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* C. L. Otter (R.), 1987–91 (\$14,000).

*Secretary of State:* Pete Cenarrusa (R.), 1987–91 (\$37,500).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1985 (State Auditor's Office) general revenues were \$551.1m. and general expenditures, \$555.5m. (which includes \$3.4m. outstanding obligations).

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$11,120.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Production of the most important minerals (1984): Silver, 18.87m. troy oz.; copper, 3,701 tonnes; antimony, 557 short tons. There is some gold, lead, zinc and vanadium. Non-metallic minerals include phosphate rock (4.7m. tonnes), lime (87,000 short tons), garnet, gypsum, perlite, pumice, tungsten, molybdenum, crushed stone (1.8m. short tons), sand and gravel and dimension stone. Value of total mineral output was \$412m. in 1984.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the leading industry, although a great part of the state is naturally arid. Extensive irrigation works have been carried out, bringing an estimated 4m. acres under irrigation; 83 reservoirs have a total capacity of 10.4m. acre-ft, 7.3m. acre-ft of which is primarily used for irrigation.

In 1985 there were 24,600 farms with a total area of 14.7m. acres (27% of the land area); average farm had 598 acres with land and buildings valued at approximately \$749 per acre.

In 1984 there were 51 soil conservation districts, managed by local farmers and ranchers, covering most of the state.

Cash receipts from marketings, 1985, was \$2,063m. (\$1,200m. from crops and \$862m. from livestock). The most important crops are potatoes and wheat—potatoes leading all states; in 1985 the production amounted to 103m. cwt, cash receipts \$323m.; wheat, 72m. bu., \$235m. Other crops are sugar-beet, alfalfa, barley, field peas and beans, onions and apples. On 1 Jan. 1985 the number of sheep was 313,000; milch cows, 165,000; all cattle, 1.78m.; swine, 112,000.

**Forestry.** In 1983 a total of 20,635,700 acres (37.6% of the state's area) was in

forests; 13,540,600 acres of this was commercial (non-reserved) forest. The volume of sawtimber in commercial forests was 139,600m. bd ft. The stumpage value of forest products was about \$124m., and about \$531m. was added by processing. Ownership of commercial forests is 70% federal, 6.5% state and local government, 0.5% Indian, 22.3% private. Some 16,100 workers are involved in forestry.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1985 85,000 were employed in trade, 70,000 in government, 66,000 in services, 55,000 in manufacturing.

**TOURISM.** Money spent by travellers in 1984 was about \$1,200m. Estimated state and local tax receipts from tourism, \$48m. Jobs generated, 25,000 (pay-roll over \$300m.).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state maintained in 1985, 4,954 miles of the total of 68,808 miles of public roads; 745,462 passenger vehicles were registered in 1985.

**Railways.** The state had (1985) 1,910 miles of railways (including 2 Amtrak routes).

**Aviation.** There were 68 municipally owned airports in 1985.

**Shipping.** Water transport is provided from the Pacific to the Port of Lewiston, by way of the Columbia and Snake rivers, a distance of 464 miles.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The death penalty may be imposed for first degree murder, but the judge must consider mitigating circumstances before imposing a sentence of death. Since 1926 only 4 men (white) have been executed, by hanging (1 in 1926, 2 in 1951 and 1 in 1957). At 1 Oct. 1985 14 prison inmates (13 men and 1 woman) were under sentence of death. Execution is now by lethal injection. The state prison system, 1 Oct. 1985, had 1,260 inmates.

**Religion.** The leading religious denominations are the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (Mormon Church), Roman Catholics, Methodists, Presbyterians, Episcopalians and Lutherans.

**Education.** In 1984–85 public elementary schools (grades K to 6) had 118,647 pupils and 5,481 classroom teachers; secondary schools had 92,053 pupils and 4,980 classroom teachers.

Average salary, 1984–85, of elementary and secondary classroom teachers, \$20,032. The University of Idaho, founded at Moscow in 1889, had 459 professors and 8,970 students in 1984–85. There are 9 other institutions of higher education; 5 of them are public institutions with a total enrolment (1984–85) of 21,914 (excluding vocational-technical colleges).

**Social Welfare.** Old-age assistance is granted to persons 65 years of age and older. In Aug. 1985, 1,014 persons were drawing an average of \$105.86 per month; 6,023 families with 10,858 children were drawing an average of \$243.85 per case (or \$90.10 per eligible person); 28 blind persons, \$73.21; 569 children were receiving \$248.88 per child for foster care; 1,827 permanently and totally disabled persons, \$133.69.

**Health.** In Sept. 1985 skilled nursing covered 4,761 beds; intermediate care, 107; intermediate care for the mentally retarded 528. Hospitals had 3,547 beds and home health agencies totalled 36.

## Further Reading

*Idaho Blue Book.* Secretary of State, Boise, 1983–84

*Idaho.* Idaho First National Bank

*Idaho Almanac.* Division of Economic and Community Affairs, 1977

*Idaho's Yesterdays.* State Historical Society, Quarterly

## ILLINOIS

**HISTORY.** Illinois was first discovered by Joliet and Marquette, two French explorers, in 1673. In 1763 the country was ceded by the French to the British. In 1783 Great Britain recognized the United States' title to the land that became Illinois; it was organized as a Territory in 1809 and admitted into the Union on 3 Dec. 1818.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Illinois is bounded north by Wisconsin, north-east by Lake Michigan, east by Indiana, south-east by the Ohio River (forming the boundary with Kentucky), west by the Mississippi River (forming the boundary with Missouri and Iowa). Area, 56,400 sq. miles, of which 652 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1980, 11,426,518, an increase of 2.71% since 1970. Estimate (1987), 11,582,000. Births in 1987 were 180,441 (15.5 per 1,000 population); deaths, 102,105 (8.7); infant deaths, 2,094 (11.1 per 1,000 live births); marriages 95,613 (8.3); divorces, 46,800 (4).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>All others</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	5,526,962	109,049	188	2,392	5,638,591	100.6
1930	7,295,267	328,972	469	5,946	7,630,654	136.4
1960	9,010,252	1,037,470	4,704	28,732	10,081,158	180.3
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	9,600,381	1,425,674	87,921		11,113,976	199.4
1980	9,233,327	1,675,398	517,793		11,426,518	203.0

Of the total population in 1980, 5,537,737 were male, 9,518,039 persons were urban and 5,597,360 were 18 years of age or older.

The most populous cities with population (1980 census), are:

Chicago	3,005,072
Rockford	139,712
Peoria	124,160
Springfield (cap.)	99,637
Decatur	94,081
Joliet	77,956
Aurora	81,293
Evanston	73,706
Waukegan	67,653
Arlington Heights	66,116

Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area population, 1980 census (and 1987 estimate): Chicago, 7,102,378 (6,188,800); East St Louis, 565,874 (570,400); Peoria, 365,864 (340,400); Rockford, 279,514 (280,300); Springfield, 176,089 (190,600); Decatur, 131,375 (126,700).

**CLIMATE.** Chicago. Jan. 25°F (−3.9°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 33" (836 mm). *See* Great Lakes, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution became effective 1 July 1971. The General Assembly consists of a House of Representatives of 118 members, elected for 2 years and a Senate of 59 members who are divided into three groups; in one, they are elected for terms of four years, four years, and two years; in the next, for terms of four years, two years, and four years; and in the last, for terms of two years, four years, and four years. Sessions are annual. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected as a team for 4 years; the Comptroller and Secretary of State are elected for 4 years. Electors are citizens 18 years of age, having the usual residential qualifications.

The state is divided into legislative districts, in each of which 1 senator is chosen; each district is divided into 2 representative districts, in each of which 1 representative is chosen.

Illinois is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 22 representatives.



In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 2,298,648 votes, Dukakis, 2,180,657.

The capital is Springfield. The state has 102 counties.

*Governor:* James R. Thompson (R.), 1987-91 (\$88,825).

*Lieut.-Governor:* George Ryan (R.), 1987-91 (\$62,700).

*Secretary of State:* Jim Edgar, 1987-91 (\$78,375).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1988 general revenues were \$11,620m. and general expenditures were \$11,528m.

Total net long-term debt, 30 June 1987, was \$13,232m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$16,442.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Chief mineral product is coal; 48 operative mines had an output (1987) of 60.8m. tons. Mineral production also included: Crude petroleum, fluorspar, tripoli and lime. Total value of mineral products, 1986, was \$3,268.1m.

**Agriculture.** In 1988, 83,000 farms had an area of 28.6m. acres; the average farm was 345 acres.

Cash receipts, 1987, from crops, \$3,912.6m.; from livestock and livestock products, \$2,261.8m. Illinois is a large producer of maize and soybeans, the state's leading cash commodities. Output, 1987: Soybeans, 323m. bu; wheat, 56m. bu; maize, 1,201.2m. bu. In Jan. 1988 there were 210,000 milch cows, 2.05m. all cattle; 107,000 sheep and 5m. swine. The wool clip was 1m. lb. in 1987.

**Forestry.** National forest area under the US Forest Service administration, Sept. 1985, was 262,291 acres. Total forest land, 5.2m. acres.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1985, manufacturing establishments employed 1,042,651 workers; annual payroll, \$26,091.76m. Largest industry was non-electrical machinery. Gross state product, 1987 preliminary, \$235,365,000.

**Labour.** In 1987 there were 4.89m. employees, of whom 932,000 were in manufacturing, 1.2m. in trade, 1.15m. in services, 719,000 in government.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 there were 6.26m. passenger cars, 1.29m. trucks and buses, 13,999 taxis, liveries and ambulances, 495,759 trailers and semi-trailers, 241,474 motor cycles and 26,604 other vehicles registered in the state. At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 13,222.26 miles of state primary roads of which 1,933.33 miles were interstate; 3,753.72 miles of state supplementary roads and 267.23 miles of toll roads and toll bridges.

**Railways.** There were, on 31 May 1987, 8,332 miles of Class I railway. Chicago is served by Amtrak long-distance trains on several routes, and by a metro (CTA) system, and by 7 groups of commuter railways controlled by the Northeast Illinois Railroad Corporation (now called METRA).

**Shipping.** In 1984 the seaport of Chicago handled 23,813,368 short tons of cargo.

**Aviation.** There were (1987) 128 public airports and 713 restricted landing areas.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1985 there were no executions; since 1930 there have been 90 executions (electrocution), including 58 white men, 1 white woman and 31 Negro men, all for murder. In June 1988 the total average daily prison population was 20,615.

A Civil Rights Act (1941), as amended, bans all forms of discrimination by places of public accommodation, including inns, restaurants, retail stores, railroads, aeroplanes, buses, etc., against persons on account of race, religion, colour,

national ancestry or physical or mental handicap'; another section similarly mentions 'race or colour.'

The Fair Employment Practices Act of 1961, as amended, prohibits discrimination in employment based on race, colour, sex, religion, national origin or ancestry, by employers, employment agencies, labour organizations and others. These principles are embodied in the 1971 constitution.

The Illinois Human Rights Act (1979), prevents unlawful discrimination in employment, real property transactions, access to financial credit, and public accommodations, by authorizing the creation of a Department of Human Rights to enforce, and a Human Rights Commission to adjudicate, allegations of unlawful discrimination.

**Religion.** Among the larger religious denominations are: Roman Catholic (3.6m.), Jewish (50,000), Presbyterian Church, USA (200,000), Lutheran Church in America (200,000), Lutheran Church Missouri Synod (325,000), American Baptist (105,000), Disciples of Christ (75,000), and United Methodist (505,000), Southern Baptist (265,000), United Church of Christ (192,000), Church of Nazarene (50,000), Assembly of God (63,000).

**Education.** Education is free and compulsory for children between 7 and 16 years of age. In autumn 1987 public school elementary enrolments were 1,250,917 pupils and 58,844 teachers; secondary enrolments, 560,529 pupils and 30,099 teachers. Enrolment (1987-88) in non-public schools was 251,369 elementary and 76,871 secondary. Teachers' salaries, 1987-88, averaged \$29,716. Total enrolment in 179 institutions of higher education (autumn 1987) was 691,584.

Colleges and universities with over 3,000 students:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Place</i>	<i>Control</i>	<i>Autumn 1987 Enrolment</i>
1851	Northwestern University	Evanston	Methodist	16,437
1857	Illinois State University	Normal	Public	23,141
1867	University of Illinois	Urbana	Public	62,894
1867	Chicago State University <sup>1</sup>	Chicago	Public	7,047
1869	Southern Illinois University	Carbondale	Public	35,268
1870	Loyola University	Chicago	Roman Catholic	13,803
1890	University of Chicago	Chicago	Non-Sect.	10,265
1895	Eastern Illinois University	Charleston	Public	10,761
1895	Northern Illinois University	DeKalb	Public	25,455
1897	Bradley University	Peoria	Non-Sect.	4,974
1899	Western Illinois University	Macomb	Public	12,602
1940	Illinois Institute of Technology <sup>2</sup>	Chicago	Non-Sect.	6,208
1945	Roosevelt University	Chicago	Non-Sect.	6,166
1961	Northeastern Illinois University <sup>3</sup>	Chicago	Public	10,578

<sup>1</sup> Formerly Illinois Teachers College (South).

<sup>2</sup> Illinois Institute of Technology formed in 1940 by merger of two older technical schools.

<sup>3</sup> Formerly Illinois Teachers' College (North).

**Health.** In 1986 hospitals listed by the American Hospital Association numbered 270, with 64,303 beds. At June 1986 state institutions had 4,513 developmentally disabled and 3,544 mentally ill residents.

**Social Security.** State-administered Supplemental Security Income (SSI) was paid to 50,496 recipients in financial year 1987; gross income-maintenance payments (no adjustments) totalled \$58.9m.; medical payments, \$131.1m. Aid to families with dependent children was paid to 241,989 families, average monthly payment per family, \$309; total payments, \$897.3m.; medical payments, \$440.1m.

### Further Reading

*Blue Book of the State of Illinois.* Edited by Secretary of State. Springfield. Biennial Angle, P. M. and Beyer, R. L., *A Handbook of Illinois History.* Illinois State Historical Society, Springfield, 1943

Clayton, J., *The Illinois Fact Book and Historical Almanac 1673-1968.* Southern Illinois Univ., 1970

Howard, R. P., *Illinois: A History of the Prairie State.* Grand Rapids, 1972

Pease, T. C., *The Story of Illinois.* 3rd ed. Chicago, 1965

*The Illinois State Library.* Springfield, IL 62756. *State Librarian:* Jim Edgar.

# INDIANA

**HISTORY.** Indiana, first settled in 1732–33, was made a Territory in 1800 and admitted into the Union on 11 Dec. 1816.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Indiana is bounded west by Illinois, north by Michigan and Lake Michigan, east by Ohio and south by Kentucky across the Ohio River. Area, 36,185 sq. miles, of which 253 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, was 5,490,224, an increase of 294,832 or 5.7% since 1970. Estimate (1988) 5,575,000. In 1985 births were 80,928 (14.7 per 1,000 population); deaths 48,173 (8.8); infant deaths, 886 (10.9 per 1,000 live births); marriages 51,063 (9.3).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	2,639,961	60,320	279	316	2,700,876	74.9
1930	3,125,778	111,982	285	458	3,238,503	89.4
1960	4,388,554	269,275	948	2,447	4,662,498	128.9
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	4,820,324	357,464	15,881		5,193,669	143.9
1980	5,004,394	414,785	71,045		5,490,224	152.8

Of the total in 1980, 2,665,805 were male, 3,525,298 were urban and 3,545,431 were 21 years of age or older.

The largest cities with census population, 1980 (and 1986 estimates), are: Indianapolis (capital), 711,539 (719,820); Fort Wayne, 172,196 (172,900); Gary, 151,953 (136,790); Evansville, 130,496 (129,480); South Bend, 109,727 (107,190); Hammond, 93,714 (86,380); Muncie, 77,216 (72,600); Anderson, 64,695 (61,020); Terre Haute, 61,125 (57,920).

**CLIMATE.** Indianapolis. Jan. 29°F (−1.7°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,034 mm). *See* The Mid-West, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution (the second) dates from 1851; it has had (as of Nov. 1983) 34 amendments. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 50 members elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 100 members elected for 2 years.

A constitutional amendment of 1970 allows the legislators to set the length and frequency of sessions, which are currently held annually. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 10 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 1,280,292 votes, Dukakis, 850,851.

The state capital is Indianapolis. The state is divided into 92 counties and 1,008 townships.

*Governor:* Evan Bayh (D.), 1989–92 (\$66,000 plus expenses).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Frank O'Bannon (D.), 1988–92 (\$51,000 plus expenses).

*Secretary of State:* Joseph Hogsett (D.), 1988–92 (\$46,000).

**BUDGET.** In the fiscal year 1986–87 (US Census Bureau figures) total revenues were \$9,037.5m. (\$1.875.3m. from federal government, \$4,774.2m. from taxes), total expenditures were \$8,341.9m. (\$1,829.6m. for education, \$1,050m. for public welfare and \$606.6m. for highways).

Total long-term debt, on 30 June 1987, was \$2,691.5m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$13,834.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The state produced 26.7m. short tons of crushed stone and 159,000 short tons of dimension stone in 1984; the output of coal was 30.9m. short tons; petroleum, 5m. bbls (of 42 gallons).



**Agriculture.** Indiana is largely agricultural, about 75% of its total area being in farms. In 1986, 78,000 farms had 16.2m. acres (average, 208 acres). Cash income, 1985, from crops, \$2,869.3m.; from livestock and products, \$1,727.6m.

The chief crops (1982) were maize (815m. bu.), winter wheat (46.4m. bu.), oats (6.1m. bu.), soybeans (183.2m. bu.), popcorn, rye, barley, hay (alfalfa, clover, timothy), lespedeza seed, mint, clover seed, apples, strawberries, tomatoes, water-melons and tobacco.

The livestock on 1 Jan. 1982 included 1.75m. all cattle, 207,000 milch cows, 138,000 sheep and lambs, 4.1m. swine, 21.9m. chickens. In 1982 the wool clip yielded 852,000 lb. of wool from 124,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** The national forests area, 9 Sept. 1983, was 188,252 acres; 13 state forests and 2 state nurseries totalled 142,336 acres in July 1983.

**INDUSTRY.** Manufacturing establishments employed, in 1986, 575,200 workers, earning \$14,772.4m. The steel industry is the largest in the country.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1982 there were 91,654 miles of highways, roads and streets, of which 66,412 miles were county highways and 11,148 miles state highways. Motor vehicles registered, 1986, 4,533,362.

**Railways.** In 1980 there were 5,252 miles of mainline railway, 921 miles of secondary track and 3,295 miles of side and yard track.

**Aviation.** Of airports, 1984, 127 were for public use, 401 were private and 3 were military.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1963–80 there were no executions; there have since been 4, for murder. State correctional institutions, financial year 1987–88, had an average daily population of 11,889.

The Civil Rights Act of 1885 forbids places of public accommodation to bar any persons on grounds not applicable to all citizens alike; no citizen may be disqualified for jury service 'on account of race or colour'. An Act of 1947 makes it an offence to spread religious or racial hatred.

A 1961 Act provided 'all . . . citizens equal opportunity for education, employment and access to public conveniences and accommodations' and created a Civil Rights Commission.

**Religion.** Religious denominations include Methodists, Roman Catholic, Disciples of Christ, Baptists, Lutheran, Presbyterian churches, Society of Friends.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory from 7 to 16 years. In 1987–88 public and parochial schools, had 927,895 pupils and 52,626 teachers. Teachers' salaries, grades 1–12, averaged \$26,592 (1987–88). Total expenditure for public schools, \$2,788.5m.

The principal institutions for higher education are (1987–88):

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Institution</i>	<i>Control</i>	<i>Students (full-time)</i>
1801	Vincennes University	State	8,228
1824	Indiana University, Bloomington	State	33,421
1837	De Pauw University, Greencastle	Methodist	2,404
1842	University of Notre Dame	R.C.	9,811
1850	Butler University, Indianapolis	Independent	3,723
1859	Valparaiso University, Valparaiso	Evangelical Lutheran Church	3,690
1870	Indiana State University, Terre Haute	State	11,161
1874	Purdue University, Lafayette	State	33,303
1898	Ball State University, Muncie	State	19,110
1963	Indiana Vocational Technical College, Indianapolis	State	4,760
1985	University of Southern Indiana	State	4,624

**Health.** Hospitals listed by the Indiana State Board of Health (1981) numbered 120 (23,929 beds). On 30 June 1983, 11 state mental hospitals had 6,273 patients enrolled (4,472 present).

**Social Security.** Old-age assistance, assistance to the blind and to the disabled were transferred from state to federal programmes in June 1974. In July-Dec. 1987, state supplemental assistance and/or Federal Supplemental Security assistance was paid to an average of 12,756 elderly persons per month (total \$9.1m.), 1,251 blind (\$1.7m.) and 38,304 disabled (\$51.2m.).

### Further Reading

Indiana State Chamber of Commerce. *Here is Your Indiana Government*. 22nd ed. Indianapolis, 1985

*State Library:* Indiana State Library, 140 North Senate, Indianapolis 46204. *Director:* C. Ray Ewick.

## IOWA

**HISTORY.** Iowa, first settled in 1788, was made a Territory in 1838 and admitted into the Union on 28 Dec. 1846.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Iowa is bounded east by the Mississippi River (forming the boundary with Wisconsin and Illinois), south by Missouri, west by the Missouri River (forming the boundary with Nebraska), north-west by the Big Sioux River (forming the boundary with South Dakota) and north by Minnesota. Area, 56,275 sq. miles, including 310 sq. miles of inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 2,913,387, an increase of 3.17% since 1970. Estimate, 1984, 2,836,890. Births, 1987, were 37,463; deaths, 26,390; infant deaths, 299; marriages, 22,833; dissolutions of marriages, 10,471.

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1870	1,188,207	5,762	48	3	1,194,020	21.5
1930	2,452,677	17,380	660	222	2,470,939	44.1
1960	2,729,286	25,354	1,708	1,022	2,757,537	49.2
<hr/>						
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	2,782,762	32,596	10,010		2,825,368	50.5
1980	2,838,805	41,700	32,882		2,913,387	51.7

At the census of 1980, 1,416,195 were male, 1,624,547 were urban and 1,971,502 were 20 years of age or older.

The largest cities in the state, with their census population in 1980 are: Des Moines (capital), 191,003; Cedar Rapids, 110,243; Davenport, 103,243; Sioux City, 82,003; Waterloo, 75,985; Dubuque, 62,321; Council Bluffs, 56,449; Iowa City, 50,508; Ames, 45,775; Cedar Falls, 36,322; Clinton, 32,828; Mason City, 30,144; Burlington, 29,529; Fort Dodge, 29,423; Ottumwa, 27,381.

**CLIMATE.** Cedar Rapids. Jan. 18.5°F (-7.5°C), July 74.3°F (23.5°C). Annual rainfall 36" (903 mm). Des Moines. Jan. 18.6°F (-7.5°C), July 76.3°F (29.6°C). Annual rainfall 31" (773 mm). *See* The Mid-West, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution of 1857 still exists; it has had 37 amendments. The General Assembly comprises a Senate of 50 and a House of Representatives of 100 members, meeting annually for an unlimited session. Senators are elected for 4 years, half retiring every second year. Representatives for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 6 representatives. Iowa is divided into 99 counties; the capital is Des Moines.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 667,085 votes, Bush, 541,540.

*Governor:* Terry Branstad (R.), 1987-91 (\$70,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Jo Ann Zimmerman (D.), 1987-91 (\$23,900).

*Secretary of State:* Elaine Baxter (D.) (\$50,000).

**BUDGET.** For fiscal year 1987 state tax revenue was \$2,622.1m. General expenditures were \$2,012m. for education, \$769.3m. for public welfare, and \$666.56m. for transport.

On 30 June 1987 the net long-term debt was \$579m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$14,191.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The leading products by value are crushed stone (28.4m. tons in 1983) and cement (1.68m. short tons in 1983). Coalfields produced 526,929 tons in 1982. The value of mineral products, 1986, was \$247.3m.

**Agriculture.** Iowa is the wealthiest of the agriculture states, partly because nearly the whole area (95.5%) is arable and included in farms. It has escaped large-scale commercial farming. The average farm (in 1987) was 313 acres.

Cash farm income (1986 estimate) was \$9,106m.; from livestock, \$4,982m., and from crops, \$4,124m. Production of corn was 1,307m. bu., value \$2,090m. and soybeans, 343.6m. bu., value \$1,800m. On 1 Dec. 1986 livestock included swine, 13.5m. (leading all states); milch cows, 360,000; all cattle, 4.9m., and sheep and lambs, 350,000. The wool clip (1984) yielded 3.3m. lb. of wool.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 manufacturing establishments employed 200,000 people: Trade, 264,000; services, 228,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 1 Jan. 1986 number of miles of streets and highways was 112,683; there were 1.9m. licensed drivers and 3.05m. registered vehicles.

**Railways.** The state, 1985, had 4,160 miles of track, and 6 Class I railways.

**Aviation.** Airports (1986), numbered 350, including 99 lighted airports and 92 all-weather runways. There were almost 2,936 private aircraft.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is now no capital punishment in Iowa. State prisons, 31 Dec. 1986, had 2,777 inmates.

**Religion.** Chief religious bodies in 1980 were: Roman Catholic (542,698 members); United Methodists, 258,252; American Lutheran, 200,712 baptised members; United Presbyterians, 85,000; United Church of Christ, 50,679.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for 24 consecutive weeks annually during school age (7-16). In 1985-86 491,000 were attending primary and secondary schools; 55,227 pupils attending non-public schools. Classroom teachers numbered 30,400 in 1987 with average salary of \$22,603; total expenditure on public schools was \$2,000m. or \$710 per capita. Leading institutions for higher education (1985-86) were:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Institution</i>	<i>Control</i>	<i>Full-time Professors</i>	<i>Students</i>
1843	Clarke College, Dubuque	Independent	65	857
1847	University of Iowa, Iowa City	State	1,800	29,651
1847	Grinnell College, Grinnell	Independent	118	1,250
1852	Wartburg College, Waverly	American Lutheran	94	1,323
1853	Cornell College, Mount Vernon	Independent	96	1,101
1858	Iowa State University, Ames	State	2,137	26,529
1876	Univ. of Northern Iowa, Cedar Falls	State	735	11,514
1881	Drake University, Des Moines	Independent	306	5,502
1881	Coe College, Cedar Rapids	Independent	121	1,184
1894	Morningside College, Sioux City	Methodist	99	1,217



**Health.** In 1985, the state had 139 hospitals (18,753 beds). In 1985 hospitals for mental diseases had 1,320 resident patients.

**Social Security.** Iowa has a Civil Rights Act (1939) which makes it a misdemeanor for any place of public accommodation to deprive any person of 'full and equal enjoyment' of the facilities it offers the public.

Supplemental Security Income (SSI) assistance is available for the aged (65 or older), the blind and the disabled. In May 1988, 8,290 elderly persons were drawing an average of \$116 per month, 1,080 blind persons \$239 per month, and 21,173 disabled persons \$244 per month. Aid to dependent children, established in 1974, was received by 39,917 families representing 137,810 persons.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* State Departments of Health, Public Instruction and Social Services; State Aeronautics and Commerce Commissions; Iowa Department of Economic Development; Crop and Livestock Reporting Services, Des Moines; Iowa Dept. of Transportation, Ames; Geological Survey, Iowa City; Iowa College Aid Commission.

*Annual Survey of Manufactures.* US Department of Commerce

*Government Finance.* US Department of Commerce

*Official Register.* Secretary of State, Des Moines. Biennial

Petersen, W. J., *Iowa History Reference Guide.* Iowa City, 1952

Smeal, L., *Iowa Historical and Biographical Index.* New York, 1984

Vexler, R. I., *Iowa Chronology and Factbook.* Oceana, 1978

*State Library of Iowa:* Des Moines 50319.

## KANSAS

**HISTORY.** Kansas, settled in 1727, was made a Territory (along with part of Colorado) in 1854, and was admitted into the Union with its present area on 29 Jan. 1861.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kansas is bounded north by Nebraska, east by Missouri, with the Missouri River as boundary in the north-east, south by Oklahoma and west by Colorado. Area, 82,277 sq. miles, including 499 sq. miles of inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 2,364,236, an increase of 5.1% since 1970. Estimate (1985) 2,450,000. Vital statistics, 1984: Births, 38,570 (15.8 per 1,000 population); deaths, 21,742 (8.9); infant deaths, 336 (8.7 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 24,795 (10.2); divorces 12,915 (5.3).

Population in 5 federal census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1870	346,377	17,108	914	—	364,399	4.5
1930	1,811,997	66,344	2,454	204	1,880,999	22.9
1960	2,078,666	91,445	5,069	2,271	2,178,611	26.3
All others						
1970	2,122,068	106,977	17,533		2,249,071	27.5
1980	2,168,221	126,127	69,888		2,364,236	28.8

Of the total population in 1980, 1,156,941 were male, 1,575,899 were urban and those 20 years of age or older numbered 1,620,368.

Cities, with 1980 census population, are Wichita, 279,835; Kansas City, 161,148; Topeka (capital), 115,266; Overland Park, 81,784; Lawrence, 52,738.

**CLIMATE.** Dodge City. Jan. 29°F (−1.7°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 21" (518 mm). Kansas City. Jan. 30°F (−1.1°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 38" (947 mm). Topeka. Jan. 28°F (−2.2°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 35" (875 mm). Wichita. Jan. 31°F (−0.6°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 31" (777 mm). See Mid-West, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The year 1861 saw the adop-

tion of the present constitution; it has had 78 amendments. The Legislature includes a Senate of 40 members, elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 125 members, elected for 2 years. Sessions are annual. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The right to vote (with the usual exceptions) is possessed by all citizens. The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 5 representatives.

The state was the first (of 42 states) to establish in 1933 a Legislative Council; this is now called the Legislative Coordinating Council and has 7 members.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 552,659 votes, Dukakis, 422,056.

The capital is Topeka. The state is divided into 105 counties.

*Governor:* Mike Hayden (R.), 1987-91 (\$65,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Thomas Docking (D.), 1987-91 (\$18,207).

*Secretary of State:* Bill Graves (R.) (\$50,000).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1986 (Governor's Budget Report) general revenue fund was \$1,863m. General expenditures were \$1,738m.

Bonded debt outstanding for 1982 amounted to \$316.9m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$13,775.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Important minerals are coal, petroleum (75m. bbl. in 1985), natural gas (513,000m. cu. ft.), lead and zinc.

**Agriculture.** Kansas is pre-eminently agricultural, but sometimes suffers from lack of rainfall in the west. In 1985, 72,000 farms covered 48m. acres; average farm, 667 acres.

Cash income, 1985, from crops was \$2,478m.; from livestock and products, \$3,264m.

Kansas is a great wheat-producing state. Its output in 1985 was 433.2m. bu. valued at \$1,321m. Other crops in 1985 (in bushels) were maize, 140m. (\$351m.); sorghum, 207m.; soybeans, 44m.; oats and barley. The state has an extensive livestock industry, comprising, on 1 Jan. 1986, 115,000 milch cows, 5.8m. all cattle, 210,000 sheep and lambs 1.5m. swine.

**INDUSTRY.** Employment distribution (1985): total workforce 975,000, of which 245,000 were in trade; 191,000 in government; 187,000 in services; 174,000 in manufacturing; 65,000 in transport and utilities; 53,000 in finance, insurance and real estate; 44,000 in construction. The slaughtering industry, other food processing, aircraft, the manufacture of transport equipment and petroleum refining are important.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state in Dec. 1982 had 135,087 miles of roads and streets including 8,916 miles of interstate and other primary and federally-aided highways. In 1985 2,157 vehicles were registered.

**Railways.** There were 7,273 miles of railway in Jan. 1982.

**Aviation.** There were 384 airports and landing strips in 1983, of which 168 were public.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There were 4,748 prisoners in state institutions, 31 Dec. 1985. The death penalty (by hanging) for murder was abolished in 1907 and restored in 1935; there have been no executions since 1968; executions 1934 to 1968 have been 15 (all for murder).

For the various Civil Rights Acts forbidding racial or political discrimination, see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1955, p. 666. The 1965 Kansas Act against

**Discrimination** declared that it is the policy of the state to eliminate and prevent discrimination in all employment relations, and to eliminate and prevent discrimination, segregation or separation in all places of public accommodations covered by the Act.

**Religion.** The most numerous religious bodies are Roman Catholic, Methodists and Disciples of Christ.

**Education.** In 1982-83 organized school districts had 1,519 elementary and secondary schools which had 407,074 pupils and 26,053 teachers. Average salary of public school teachers, 1986, \$22,800 (elementary and secondary). There were 20 independent colleges, 20 community colleges, 2 Bible colleges, 1 municipal university.

Kansas has 6 state-supported institutions of higher education: The University of Kansas, Lawrence, founded in 1865, had 24,774 students in 1985-86; Kansas State University, Manhattan (1863), had 17,570; Emporia State University, Emporia, had 5,344; Pittsburg State University, Pittsburg, had 5,096; Fort Hays State University, Hays, had 5,657 and Wichita State University, Wichita, had 16,902. The state also supports a two-year technical school, Kansas Technical Institute, at Salina.

**Health.** In 1983 the state had 165 hospitals (18,300 beds) listed by the American Hospital Association; hospitals had an average daily occupancy rate of 70.3%.

**Social Security.** In Dec. 1985, 20,900 persons received state and federal aid under programmes of aid to the aged or disabled, and 66,800 in 22,700 families received aid to dependent children. Average monthly payment to the aged, \$121; the disabled, \$206, per family with dependent children, \$303 (1984).

### Further Reading

*Annual Economic Report of the Governor.* Topeka

*Directory of State Officers, Boards and Commissioners and Interesting Facts Concerning Kansas.* Topeka, Biennial

Drury, J. W., *The Government of Kansas.* Lawrence, Univ. of Kansas, 1970

Zornow, W. F., *Kansas: A History of the Jayhawk State.* Norman, Okla., 1957

*State Library:* Kansas State Library, Topeka.

## KENTUCKY

**HISTORY.** Kentucky, first settled in 1765, was originally part of Virginia; it was admitted into the Union on 1 June 1792 and its first legislature met on 4 June.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Kentucky is bounded north by the Ohio River (forming the boundary with Illinois, Indiana and Ohio), north-east by the Big Sandy River (forming the boundary with West Virginia), east by Virginia, south by Tennessee and west by the Mississippi River (forming the boundary with Missouri). Area, 40,409 sq. miles, of which 740 sq. miles are water. Census population, 1980 3,660,777, an increase of 13.6% since 1970. Estimate (1987) 3,727,000. Births in 1986, 51,776 (13.9 per 1,000 population); deaths, 34,788 (9.3); infant deaths, 504 (9.8 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 46,460 (12.5); divorces, 19,000 (5.1).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	All others	Total	Per sq. mile
1930	2,388,364	226,040	185	2,614,589	65.1
1950	2,742,090	201,921	795	2,944,806	73.9
1960	2,820,083	215,949	2,124	3,038,156	76.2
1970	2,981,766	230,793	6,147	3,218,706	81.2
1980	3,379,006	259,477	22,294	3,660,777	92.3

Of the total population in 1980, 1,789,039 were male, 1,862,183 were urban and 2,359,614 were 21 years old or older.



The principal cities with census population in 1980 are: Louisville, 298,694 (urbanized area, 654,938); Lexington-Fayette, 204,165; Owensboro, 54,450; Covington, 49,585; Bowling Green, 40,450; Paducah, 29,315; Hopkinsville, 27,318; Ashland, 27,064; Frankfort (capital), 25,973.

**CLIMATE.** Kentucky has a temperate climate. Temperatures are moderate during both winter and summer, precipitation is ample without a pronounced dry season, and there is little snow during the winter. Lexington. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,126 mm). Louisville. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,077 mm). See Appalachian Mountains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution dates from 1891; there had been 3 preceding it. The 1891 constitution was promulgated by convention and provides that amendments be submitted to the electorate for ratification. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 38 members elected for 4 years, one half retiring every 2 years, and a House of Representatives of 100 members elected for 2 years. A constitutional amendment approved by the voters in Nov. 1979, changes the year in which legislators are elected from odd to even numbered years and establishes an organizational session of the legislature, limited to ten legislative days, in odd-numbered years. The amendment provides for regular sessions limited to 60 legislative days between the first Tuesday after the first Monday of Jan. and 15 April of even numbered years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. All citizens are (with necessary exceptions) qualified as electors; the voting age was in 1955 reduced from 21 to 18 years. Registered voters, Sept. 1988: 1,946,050. In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 731,446 votes, Dukakis, 579,077.

The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 7 representatives.

The capital is Frankfort. The state is divided into 120 counties.

*Governor:* Wallace G. Wilkinson (D.), 1987-91 (\$68,364).<sup>1</sup>

*Lieut.-Governor:* Brereton Jones (D.) (\$58,101).<sup>1</sup>

*Secretary of State:* Bremer Ehrler (D.) (\$58,101).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1988. Salaries are revised annually by the percentage change in the Consumer Price Index.

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1988 revenues received within the five major operating funds amounted to \$5,866.7m. Included in this figure are \$3,030.2m. General Fund revenues and \$1,469m. Federal Fund revenues. Total expenditures amounted to \$5,833.5m. including education and humanities, \$1,617.6m.; human resources benefits payments, \$873.8m.; and transport, \$671.2m.

The general obligation bonded indebtedness on 30 June 1988 was \$119.5m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$12,059.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The principal mineral product of Kentucky is coal, 153.9m. short tons mined in 1986, value \$3,995m. Output of petroleum, 6.5m. bbls (of 42 gallons); natural gas, 80,195m. cu. ft; stone, 38.4m. short tons, value \$137m.; clay 721,000 short tons, value \$3.5m.; sand and gravel, 7.2m. short tons, value \$17m. Total value of non-fuel mineral products in 1986 was \$267,265,000. Other minerals include fluorspar, ball clay, lead, zinc, silver, cement, lime, industrial sand and gravel, oil shale and tar sands.

**Agriculture.** In 1988, 99,000 farms had an area of 14.5m. acres. The average farm was 146 acres.

Cash income, 1987, from crops, \$1,506m., and from livestock, \$913m. The chief crop is tobacco: Production, in 1987, 305m. lb., ranking second to N. Carolina in US. Other principal crops include hay, corn, soybeans, wheat, fruit and vegetables, sorghum grain, barley, oats and rye.

Stock-raising is important in Kentucky, which has long been famous for its

horses. The livestock in 1987 included 218,000 milch cows, 2.5m. cattle and calves, 34,000 sheep, 900,000 swine.

**Forestry.** Total forests area, 1978, 12,160,800 acres. Total commercial forest land, 1978, 11,901,900 acres; 92% is privately owned.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 the state's 3,725 manufacturing plants had 187,800 production workers; value added by manufacture in 1986 was \$15,909.1m. The leading manufacturing industries (by employment) are non-electrical machinery, fabric products including clothing, electrical equipment and foods.

**TOURISM.** In 1987 tourist expenditure was \$4,022m., producing over \$283m. in tax revenues and generating 114,707 jobs. The state had (1987) 805 hotels and motels, 240 campgrounds and 45 state parks.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1989 the state had over 79,227 miles of federal, state and local roads. There were over 2.7m. motor vehicle registrations in 1987.

**Railways.** In 1988 there were 3,521 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** There are (1988) 76 publicly-used airports and 2,144 registered aircraft in Kentucky.

**Shipping.** There is an increasing amount of barge traffic on 1,090 miles of navigable rivers. There are 5 river ports, 2 under construction and 2 planned.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 10 prisons within the Department of Adult Institutions and one privately-run adult institution; average daily population (1987-88), 6,698, including 5,023 in prison, 209 in a private prison, 1,088 in jails awaiting incarceration, 378 in local community centers.

There has been no execution since 1962. A session of Congress in 1976 limited the death penalty to cases of kidnap and murder.

Total executions, 1911-62, were 162, including 76 whites and 86 Negroes; 144 were for murder, 7 for rape, 6 for criminal offences, 5 for armed robbery. There were (1988) 34 people under death sentences.

**Religion.** The chief religious denominations in 1980 were: Southern Baptists, with 883,096 members, Roman Catholic (365,277), United Methodists (234,536), Christian Churches and Church of Christ (81,222) and Christian (Disciples of Christ) (78,275).

**Education.** Attendance at school between the ages of 5 and 15 years (inclusive) is compulsory, the normal term being 175 days. In 1987-88, 23,509 teachers were employed in public elementary and 12,165 in secondary schools, in which 431,369 and 211,329 pupils enrolled respectively. Expenditure on elementary and secondary day schools in 1987-88 was \$2,108.5m.; public school classroom teachers' salaries (1987-88) averaged \$24,274.

There were also 4,100 teachers working in private elementary and secondary schools with 66,425 students.

The state has 25 universities and senior colleges, 4 junior colleges and 14 community colleges, with a total (autumn 1987) of 145,321 students. Of these universities and colleges, 23 are state-supported, and the remainder are supported privately. The largest of the institutions of higher learning are (autumn 1987): University of Kentucky, with 22,000 students; University of Louisville, 20,573 students; Western Kentucky University, 13,520 students; Eastern Kentucky University, 13,099 students; Murray State University, 7,376 students; Morehead State University, 6,490 students; Northern Kentucky University, 9,020 students; Kentucky State, 2,105. Five of the several privately endowed colleges of standing are Berea College, Berea; Centre College, Danville; Transylvania University, Lexington; Georgetown College, Georgetown; and Bellarmine College, Louisville.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 130 licensed hospitals (19,418 beds). There were 332 licensed long-term care facilities (29,362) and 519 licensed family care homes (1,452).

**Welfare.** In Aug. 1988 there were 261,971 persons receiving financial assistance; 99,200 of these persons received the Federal Supplemental Security Income (SSI); 29,307 of them were aged, 1,976 blind, 67,917 disabled. Also, in the all state funded Supplementation programme, payments were made in Aug. 1988 to 6,731 persons, of which 3,343 were aged, 93 blind and 3,295 disabled. The average State Supplementation payment was \$130.00 to aged, \$78.42 to blind and \$134.17 to disabled.

In the Aid to Families with Dependent Children Programme as of Aug. 1988, aid was given to 156,040 persons in 58,155 families. The average payment per person was \$78.77, per family \$211.35.

In addition to money payments, medical assistance, food stamps and social services are available.

### Further Reading

*Kentucky Economic Statistics.* Cabinet for Economic Development, Frankfort  
Lee, L. G., *A Brief History of Kentucky and its Counties.* Berea, 1981

## LOUISIANA

**HISTORY.** Louisiana was first settled in 1699. That part lying east of the Mississippi River was organized in 1804 as the Territory of New Orleans, and admitted into the Union on 30 April 1812. The section west of the river was added very shortly thereafter.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Louisiana is bounded north by Arkansas, east by Mississippi, with the Mississippi River forming the boundary in the north-east, south by the Gulf of Mexico and west by Texas, with the Sabine River forming most of the boundary. Area, 52,453 sq. miles, including lakes, rivers and coastal waters inside 3-mile limit; land area, 44,873 sq. miles. Census population, 1 April 1980, 4,205,900, an increase of 15.5% since 1970. Estimate (1987) 4,460,578. Births, 1986, 77,944 (17.3 per 1,000 population); deaths, 36,287 (8.1); infant deaths, 925 (11.9 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 37,459 (8.4); divorces, 15,164.

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	941,086	713,874	780	648	1,656,388	36.5
1930	1,322,712	776,326	1,536	1,019	2,101,593	46.5
1960	2,211,715	1,039,207	3,587	2,004	3,257,022	72.2
			All others			
1970	2,541,498	1,086,832	12,976		3,641,306	81.1
1980	2,911,243	1,237,263	55,466		4,203,972 <sup>1</sup>	93.5

<sup>1</sup> Preliminary.

Of the 1980 total, 2,039,894 were male, 2,885,535 were urban; those 20 years of age or older numbered 2,699,100.

The largest cities with their 1980 census population (and 1987 estimate) are: New Orleans, 557,482 (555,641); Baton Rouge (capital), 219,486 (242,184); Shreveport, 205,815 (217,718); Lafayette, 81,961 (91,084); Lake Charles, 75,051 (76,599); Kenner, 66,382 (74,851).

**CLIMATE.** New Orleans. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 58" (1,458 mm). *See* Gulf Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1974.

The Legislature consists of a Senate of 39 members and a House of Repre-



sentatives of 105 members, both chosen for 4 years. Sessions are annual; a fiscal session is held in odd years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years.

A Governor may serve a second consecutive term. Qualified electors are all registered citizens with the usual residential qualifications.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 880,660 votes, Dukakis, 715,475.

The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 8 representatives. Louisiana is divided into 64 parishes (corresponding with the counties of other states).

*Governor:* Charles E. 'Buddy' Roemer, Jr. (D.), 1988-92 (\$73,440).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Paul Hardy (R.), 1988-92 (\$63,367).

*Secretary of State:* W. Fox McKeithen (D.), 1988-92 (\$60,169).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1987 (Louisiana State Budget Office figures) general revenues were \$7,381,332,298, of which \$1,885,922,784 were federal funds; total expenditures were \$7,582,740,576 (education, \$2,435,062,145; transport and development, \$230,935,484; health, hospitals and public welfare, \$2,092,812,284).

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$11,191.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The yield in 1987 of crude petroleum was 144m. bbls; marketed production of natural gas, 1,572,835,903m. cu. ft. Rich sulphur mines are found in the state, and wells for the extraction of sulphur by means of hot water and compressed air are in operation; output, 1986, 524,000 tonnes.

Louisiana is the USA's main salt producer. Output of salt (1986) was 11.6m. short tons.

**Agriculture.** The state is divided into two parts, the uplands and the alluvial and swamp regions of the coast. A delta occupies about one-third of the total area. Manufacturing is the leading industry, but agriculture is important. In 1986 there were about 36,000 farms with annual average sales of at least \$1,000; average farm, 278 acres; average value per acre \$1,256.

Cash income, 1986, from crops \$1,371.69m.; from livestock, \$502.7m. Crops by value: Soybeans, \$189.9m.; rice, \$110.9m.; cotton lint, \$179.7m.; sugar-cane, \$115.2m..

In 1985 the state contained 89,910 milch cows, 1.2m. all cattle, 25,114 sheep and 133,349 swine.

**Fisheries.** The catch in 1986 was 1,700m. lb., value \$321.5m.

**Forestry.** Forests, 13.9m. acres, represent 49% of the state's area. Income from manufactured products exceeds \$2,500m. annually. In 1986 pulpwood cut, 5.1m. cords; sawtimber cut, 1,500m. bd ft.

**INDUSTRY.** The manufacturing industries are chiefly those associated with petroleum, chemicals, lumber, food, paper. In 1987 167,600 were employed in manufacturing, 368,500 in trade and 327,200 in service industries.

**TOURISM.** Travellers spent an estimated \$4,000m. in 1987. Tourism is the second most important industry for state income.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state has more than 16,326 miles of public roads. In Oct. 1988, over 4m. vehicles were registered in the state.

**Railways.** In 1986 there were 3,347 miles of track in the state.

**Aviation.** In 1988 there were 386 commercial and private airports.

**Shipping.** In 1984 New Orleans handled 43.9m. short tons of cargo. The Mississippi and other waterways provide 7,500 miles of navigable water.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** State and federal prisons, Nov. 1988, had 16,121 inmates. Execution is by electrocution; there were 135 between 1930 and 1961, 15 between 1977 and 1987.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic Church is the largest denomination in Louisiana. The leading Protestant Churches are Southern Baptist and Methodist.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory between the ages of 7 and 15, both inclusive. In 1986-87 there were 804,645 pupils in public elementary and secondary schools. In 1987 the 42,019 instructional staff had an average salary of \$20,235. There are 17 four-year public colleges and universities and 11 non-public four-year institutions of higher learning. There are 47 state trade and vocational-technical schools. Superior instruction is given in the Louisiana State University with 54,912 students (1987). Tulane University in New Orleans had 10,302; The Roman Catholic Loyola University in New Orleans had 5,210; Dillard University in New Orleans had 1,218; and the Southern University System, 5,210.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 186 licensed hospitals and 3 state mental hospitals.

**Social Security.** In Dec. 1985, assistance was being given to 49,400 elderly persons; 78,800 families with dependent children; 74,700 disabled people. Aid was from state and federal sources.

### Further Reading

Davis, E. A., *Louisiana, the Pelican State*. Louisiana State Univ. Press, Baton Rouge, 1975

Hansen, H., (ed.) *Louisiana, a Guide to the State*. Rev. ed. New York, 1971

Kniffen, F. B., *Louisiana, its Land and People*. Louisiana State Univ. Press, Baton Rouge, 1968

*State Library:* The Louisiana State Library, Baton Rouge, Louisiana. *State Librarian:* Thomas F. Jaques.

## MAINE

**HISTORY.** After a first attempt in 1607, Maine was settled in 1623. From 1652 to 1820 it was part of Massachusetts and was admitted into the Union on 15 March 1820.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Maine is bounded west, north and east by Canada, south-east by the Atlantic, south and south-west by New Hampshire. Area, 33,265 sq. miles, of which 2,269 are inland water. Of the state's total area, about 17-2m. acres (87%) are in timber and wood lots. Census population, 1 April 1980 1,125,027, an increase of 13.29% since 1970. Estimate (1986) 1,174,000. In 1986 live births numbered 16,717 (14.3 per 1,000 population); deaths, 10,796 (9.2); infant deaths, 146 (8.9 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 10,887 (9.2); divorces 5,621 (4.8).

Population for 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	739,995	1,363	892	121	742,371	24.8
1930	795,185	1,096	1,012	130	797,423	25.7
1950	910,846	1,221	1,522	185	913,774	29.4
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	985,276	2,800	3,972		992,048	31.0
1980	1,109,850	3,128	12,049		1,125,027	36.3

Of the total population in 1980, 48.5% were male, 40.7% were urban and 60.5% were 21 years or older.

The largest city in the state is Portland with a census population of 61,572 in 1980. Other cities (with population in 1980) are: Lewiston, 40,481; Bangor, 31,643; Auburn, 23,128; South Portland, 22,712; Augusta (capital), 21,819; Biddeford, 19,638; Waterville, 17,779.

**CLIMATE.** Average maximum temperatures range from 56.3°F in Waterville to 48.3°F in Caribou, but record high (since c. 1950) is 103°F. Average minimum ranges from 36.9°F in Rockland to 28.3°F in Greenville, but record low (also in Greenville) is -42°F. Average annual rainfall ranges from 48.85" in Machias to 36.09" in Houlton. Average annual snowfall ranges from 118.7" in Greenville to 59.7" in Rockland. *See* New England, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution of 1820 is still in force, but it has been amended 153 times. In 1951, 1965 and 1973 the Legislature approved recodifications of the constitution as arranged by the Chief Justice under special authority.

The Legislature consists of the Senate with 35 members and the House of Representatives with 151 members, both Houses being elected simultaneously for 2 years. Apart from these legislators and the Governor (elected for 4 years), no other state officers are elected. The Justices of the Supreme Judicial Court give their opinion upon important questions of law and upon solemn occasions when required by the Governor, Senate or House of Representatives. The suffrage is possessed by all citizens, 18 years of age; persons under guardianship for reasons of mental illness have no vote. Indians residing on tribal reservations and otherwise qualified have the vote in all county, state and national elections but retain the right to elect their own tribal representative to the legislature.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 304,087 votes, Dukakis, 240,508.

The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 2 representatives.

The capital is Augusta. The state is divided into 16 counties.

*Governor:* John McKernan (R.), 1987-91 (\$35,000).

*Secretary of State:* Rodney S. Quinn (D.), 1987-91 (\$30,000).

**BUDGET.** For the financial year ending 30 June 1986 general revenue was \$932m. and expenditure was \$927m.

Total net long-term debt on 30 June 1984 was \$294.5m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$13,720.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Minerals include sand and gravel, stone, lead, clay, copper, peat, silver and zinc. Mineral output, 1986, was valued at \$46m.

**Agriculture.** In 1986, 7,800 farms occupied 2m. acres; the average farm was 194 acres.

Cash receipts, 1985, \$378m., of which \$80m. came from potatoes; Maine is the third largest producer of potatoes (about 7% of the country's total of 325.7m. cwt). Other important items include eggs (\$94m.), dairy products (\$107.5m.) and poultry (\$29.7m.); these with potatoes provide 78% of receipts. Sweet corn, peas and beans, oats, hay, apples and blueberries are also grown. On 1 Jan. 1983 the farm animals included 57,000 milch cows, 146,000 all other cattle, and 14,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** Lumber, wood turnings and pulp are important. In 1982 the cut of softwood was 769,195m. bd ft; hardwood, 150,878m. bd ft, and pulpwood, 3,417,586 cords. Spruce and fir, white pine, hemlock, white and yellow birch, sugar maple, northern white cedar, beech and red oak are the most important species cut. There were (1982) 17,600,000 acres of commercial forest (98% in private ownership). National forests comprise 37,500 acres; other federal, 35,800; state forests, 163,000 acres; municipal, 75,200 acres. Wood products industries are of great economic importance; in 1982 the lumber, wood and paper industries' production was valued at \$3,355,731. There were (1982) 342 primary manufacturers and over 1,400 secondary.

**Fisheries.** In 1983, 202,657,000 lb. of fish and shellfish (valued at \$107,889,000) were landed; the catch included 21,976,000 lb. of lobsters (valued at \$51,234,000).



1.97m. lb. of scallops (\$10.8m.); 4.14m. lb. of soft clams (\$7.24m.); 12.31m. lb. of dabs (\$6.0m.); 42.4m. lb. of menhaden (\$846,000); 40m. lb. of herring (\$2.14m.).

**INDUSTRY.** Total non-agricultural workforce, 1985, 459,000. Manufacturing employed 106,000; trade, 108,000; services, 95,000; government, 86,000; the main manufacture is paper at 47 plants, producing about 34% of manufacturing value added.

**LABOUR.** The four largest employers are government, education, health and tourism.

**TOURISM.** In 1987 there were about 4.8m. tourists (including state residents on holiday), generating nearly \$1,000m. in business. Eating, drinking and accommodation produce 12.4% of sales tax.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1983 there were 22,098 miles of roads, of which 3,973 miles were state highways and 4,359 miles were state-aided; town streets and miscellaneous, 13,766 miles. In July 1984, 847,922 motor vehicles were registered, including 669,240 passenger vehicles, 87,267 commercial vehicles and 40,361 motorcycles.

**Railways.** In 1984 there were 1,516 miles of mainline railway tracks.

**Aviation.** Licensed airports, 1984, numbered 76, including 37 commercial public airports, 12 non-commercial and 4 commuter airports, 15 commercial and 4 non-commercial seaplane bases, and 4 air-carrier airports. There were also 2 military airports and 23 private landing strips.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state's penal system in Sept. 1984 held 435 adults in the State Prison, 237 in the Correctional Center and 332 juveniles in the Youth Center. There is no capital punishment. Inmates serving life sentences are eligible for parole consideration after 15 years, less remission for good conduct, provided they were imprisoned before the passage of a new Criminal Code by the 107th Maine Legislature, which abolished the parole system.

**Religion.** The largest religious bodies are: Roman Catholic (270,283 members), Baptists (36,808 members) and Congregationalists (40,750 members), and other Christian Churches (34,066 members).

**Education.** Education is free for pupils from 5 to 21 years of age, and compulsory from 7 to 17. In 1983-84 the 756 public schools (610 elementary, 105 secondary and 41 combined elementary and secondary) had 12,283 staff and 209,753 enrolled pupils. In 1983-84 there were 126 private schools with 1,035 teachers and 15,461 pupils. Public school teachers' salaries, 1983-84, averaged \$17,328. Total public expenditure on public elementary and secondary education in 1982-83, \$461,252,847.

The state University of Maine, founded in 1865, had (1983-84) 1,003 teaching staff and 28,591 students at 7 locations; Bowdoin College, founded in 1794 at Brunswick, (107 and 1,371); Bates College at Lewiston, (104 and 1,424); Colby College at Waterville, (125 and 1,733); Husson College, Bangor, (31 and 1,465); Westbrook College at Westbrook, (56 and 1,120); Unity College at Unity, (23 and 325), and the University of New England (formerly St Francis College) at Biddeford, (55 and 848).

**Health.** In 1984 the state had 42 general hospitals (4,571 beds for acute care); 3 hospitals for mental diseases, acute and psychiatric care (541 beds); 144 nursing homes (10,220 beds).

**Social Security.** Supplemental Security Income (SSI) (maximum payment for single person, \$324.30 per month) is administered by the Social Security Administration. It became effective on 1 Jan. 1974 and replaces former aid to the aged,

blind and disabled, administered by the state with state and federal funds. SSI is supplemented by Medicaid for nursing home patients or hospital patients. State payments for SSI recipients for 1985 totalled \$42.3m., covering 22,000 cases. Aid to families with dependent children is granted where one or both parents are disabled or absent and income is insufficient; aid was being granted in Aug. 1985 to 20,100 families (58,300 children) with an average payment per family of \$321 per month. Payments under Maine Medicaid Assistance programme totalled \$217m. for the financial year 1983-84. There is a programme of assistance for catastrophic illness. Child welfare services include basic child protective services, enforcing child support, establishing paternity and finding missing parents, foster home placements, adoptions; services in divorce cases and licensing of foster homes, day care and residential treatment services, and public guardianship. There are also protective services for adults.

### Further Reading

*Maine Register, State Year-Book and Legislative Manual.* Tower Publishing, Portland.  
Annual  
Banks, R., *Maine Becomes A State.* Wesleyan U.P., 1970  
Caldwell, B., *Rivers of Fortune.* Gannett, 1983  
Calvert, M. R., *Dawn over the Kennebec.* Private Pr., 1983  
Clark, C., *Maine.* New York, 1977

## MARYLAND

**HISTORY.** Maryland, first settled in 1634, was one of the 13 original states.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Maryland is bounded north by Pennsylvania, east by Delaware and the Atlantic, south by Virginia and West Virginia, with the Potomac River forming most of the boundary, and west by West Virginia. Chesapeake Bay almost cuts off the eastern end of the state from the rest. Area, 10,460 sq. miles, of which 623 sq. miles are inland water; in addition, water area under Maryland jurisdiction in Chesapeake Bay amounts to 1,726 sq. miles. Census population, 1 April 1980, 4,216,975, an increase since 1970 of 293,078 or 7.5%. Estimate (1986) 4,463,000. In 1985 births were 67,985 (15.5 per 1,000 population); deaths, 36,607 (8.3); infant deaths, 811 (11.9 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 46,063 (10.5); divorces, 16,187 (3.7).

Population for 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1920	1,204,737	244,479	32	413	1,449,661	145.8
1930	1,354,226	276,379	50	871	1,631,526	165.0
1960	2,573,919	518,410	1,538	5,700	3,100,689	314.0
<i>All others</i>						
1970	3,194,888	499,479	28,032		3,922,399	396.6
1980	3,158,838	958,150	99,987		4,216,975	428.7

Of the total population in 1980, 2,042,810 were male, 3,386,555 persons were urban and those 20 years old or older numbered 2,890,196.

The largest city in the state (containing 16.9% of the population) is Baltimore, with 786,741 in 1980 (and 745,900 in 1987); Baltimore metropolitan area, 2.3m. Maryland residents in the Washington, D.C., metropolitan area total more than 1.6m. Other cities (1980) are Dundalk (71,293); Towson (51,083); Silver Spring (72,893); Bethesda (62,736). Incorporated places, estimate 1986: Rockville, 46,900; Bowie, 35,740; Hagerstown, 33,670; Frederick, 33,800; Annapolis, 33,360; Gaithersburg, 32,350; Cumberland, 23,230; Cambridge, 11,070.

**CLIMATE.** Baltimore. Jan. 36°F (2.2°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,026 mm). See Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates

from 1867; it has had 125 amendments. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 47, and a House of Delegates of 141 members, both elected for 4 years, as are the Governor and Lieut.-Governor. Voters are citizens who have the usual residential qualifications. At the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 834,202 votes, Dukakis, 793,939.

Maryland sends to Congress 2 senators and 8 representatives.

The state capital is Annapolis. The state is divided into 23 counties and Baltimore City.

*Governor:* William D. Schaefer (D.), 1987-91 (\$75,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* J. Joseph Curran (D.), 1987-91 (\$62,500).

*Secretary of State:* Patricia Holtz (\$45,000).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1987 general revenues were \$7,549,161,000 (\$5,388,916,000 from taxation). General expenditures, \$7,314,578,000, including \$1,621,797,000 for education and \$2,247,820,000 for public welfare and health; \$1,320,474,000 for transport.

Total authorized long-term state debt, 30 June 1987 was \$2,965,447,000. (Issued and outstanding, \$2,030,415,000; authorized but not issued, \$935,032,000.)

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$18,124.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Value of non-fuel mineral production, 1987, was \$296m. Sand and gravel (19.5m. short tons) and stone (25.8m. short tons) account for over 68% of the total value. Coal is the leading mineral commodity by value followed by Portland cement, stone, sand and gravel. Output of coal was 4m. short tons, valued at about \$96m. Natural gas is produced from 1 field in Garrett County; 20m. cu. ft in 1986. A second gas field in the same county is used for natural gas storage.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is an important industry in the state. In 1987 there were approximately 16,500 farms with an area of 2.5m. acres (40% of the land area).

Farm animals, 1 Jan. 1988, were: Milch cows, 114,000; all cattle, 320,000; swine, 220,000; sheep, 34,000; chickens (not broilers), 5.2m. The most important crops, 1987, were: Corn for grain, 35.9m. bu.; soybeans, 9.2m. bu.; tobacco, 16.7m. lb., and hay, 642,000 tons.

Cash receipts from farm marketings, 1987, were \$1,148m.; from livestock and livestock products, \$734m., and crops, \$394m. Dairy products and broilers are important.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 manufactories had 133,300 production workers earning \$2,875.9m.; value added by manufacture, \$12,370.5m. Chief industries are electrical and electronic equipment, food and kindred products, chemicals and products, printing and publishing.

**TOURISM.** Tourism is one of the state's leading industries. In 1987 tourists spent over \$5,220m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state highway department maintained, 1 Jan. 1988, 5,246 miles of highways, of which 84 miles were toll roads. The 23 counties maintained 18,066 miles of highways, and the 159 municipalities (including the city of Baltimore) maintained 4,036 miles of streets and alleys. Total mileage, 1 Jan. 1988, of public highways, streets and alleys, 27,348 miles. In 1987, an estimated 3.7m. automobiles were registered.

**Railways.** Railways, in 1988, had 1,081 miles of line.

**Aviation.** There were, 1988, 39 commercially licensed airports.

**Shipping.** In 1987 Baltimore was the fifth largest US seaport in value of trade, ninth in tonnage handled.



## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Prisons on 1 Oct. 1988 had about 13,500 men and 500 women; the total equalled 306 per 100,000 population, a high rate, which may be explained by the fact that Maryland incarcerates domestic relations law violators in state prisons; state prisons also receive a considerable number of persons committed for misdemeanours by magistrates' courts of the counties as well as from Baltimore's court system.

Since 1930 there have been 68 executions (by lethal gas since 1957; earlier by hanging)—7 whites and 37 Negroes for murder, and 6 whites and 18 Negroes for rape. Last execution was June 1961.

Maryland's prison system has conducted a work-release programme for selected prisoners since 1963. All institutions have academic and vocational training programmes.

In accordance with the 1950 Supreme Court decisions declaring segregation unconstitutional, the University of Maryland and other public and private colleges began admitting Black students in Sept. 1956; elementary and secondary schools followed.

**Religion.** Maryland was the first US state to give religious freedom to all who came within its borders. Present religious affiliations of the population are approximately: Protestant, 32%; Roman Catholic, 24%; Jewish, 10%; remaining 34% is non-related and other faiths.

**Education.** Education is compulsory from 6 to 16 years of age. In Sept. 1987 the public elementary schools (including kindergartens and secondary schools) had 683,797 pupils. Teachers and principals in the elementary and secondary schools numbered 42,412. Teachers' average salary in 1986–87 was \$28,893. Current expenditure by local school boards on education, 1986–87, was \$2,925.4m., of which the state's contribution was \$1,179.5m.

In 1987 there were 32 degree-granting 4-year institutions and 19 2-year colleges. The largest two were the University of Maryland system, with 66,595 students (Sept. 1987) and Towson State College with 15,542 students (Sept. 1987).

**Health.** In Sept. 1988, 79 hospitals (19,500 beds) were licensed by the State Department of Health and Mental Hygiene.

The Maryland State Department of Health, organized in 1874, was in 1969 made part of the Department of Health and Mental Hygiene which performs its functions through its central office, 23 county health departments and the Baltimore City Health Department. For the financial year 1987 the department's budget was \$1,556.7m., of which \$1,095.7m. were general funds and \$44.8m. special funds appropriated by the General Assembly. The balance of the budget, \$416.2m., derives from federal funds.

During financial year 1987 Maryland's programme of medical care for indigent and medically indigent patients covered 393,683 persons. The programme, which covers in-patient and out-patient hospital services, laboratory services, skilled nursing home care, physician services, pharmacy services, dental services and home health services, cost approximately \$847m.

**Social Security.** Under the supervision of the Department of Human Resources, local social service departments administer public assistance for needy persons. In April 1988 families with dependent children received \$20,639,963 (172,603 recipients, average actual monthly payment \$119.58); general public assistance payments were \$3,071,000 (18,081 recipients, average actual monthly payments \$169.85).

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Maryland Department of Economic and Employment Development, Baltimore City, 21202.

*Maryland Manual: A Compendium of Legal, Historical and Statistical Information Relating to the State of Maryland.* Annapolis. Biennial

DiLisio, J. E., *Maryland*. Boulder, 1982

Papenfuss, E. C., et al., *Maryland, a New Guide to the Old Line State*. Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, 1976

Rollo, V. F., *Maryland's Constitution and Government*. Maryland Hist. Press, Rev. ed., 1982  
*State Library*: Maryland State Library, Annapolis. *Director*: Michael S. Miller.

## MASSACHUSETTS

**HISTORY.** The first permanent settlement within the borders of the present state was made at Plymouth in Dec. 1620, by the Pilgrims from Holland, who were separatists from the English Church, and formed the nucleus of the Plymouth Colony. In 1628 another company of Puritans settled at Salem, forming eventually the Massachusetts Bay Colony. In 1630 Boston was settled. In the struggle which ended in the separation of the American colonies from the mother country, Massachusetts took the foremost part, and on 6 Feb. 1788 became the sixth state to ratify the US constitution.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Massachusetts is bounded north by Vermont and New Hampshire, east by the Atlantic, south by Connecticut and Rhode Island and west by New York. Area, 8,284 sq. miles, 460 sq. miles being inland water. The census population 1 April 1980, was 5,737,037, an increase of 47,867 or 0.8% since 1970. Estimate (1985) 5,819,087. Births, 1985 were 82,872 (14.2 per 1,000 population); deaths, 54,935 (9.4 per 1,000); infant deaths (1984), 739 (9.3 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 51,648 (8.9); divorces, 19,794 (3.4).

Population at 4 federal census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Other</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1950	4,611,503	73,171	5,840	4,690,514	598.4
1960	5,023,144	111,842	13,592	5,148,578	656.8
1970	5,477,624	175,817	35,729	5,689,170	725.8
1980	5,362,836	221,279	152,922	5,737,037	732.0

Of the total population in 1980, 47.6% were male, 83.8% were urban and 32% were 21 years old or older.

In 1985 the population of the principal towns and cities was:

Boston	571,980	Lowell	93,343	Framingham	64,999
Worcester	160,489	Fall River	92,560	Lawrence	64,970
Springfield	151,015	Quincy	83,845	Leominster	64,768
New Bedford	98,900	Newton	82,384	Waltham	57,609
Brockton	98,040	Lynn	79,207	Medford	57,191
Cambridge	93,405	Somerville	75,802	Chicopee	55,936

The largest of 10 standard metropolitan statistical areas, 1980 census were: Boston, 2,763,357; Springfield-Chicopee-Holyoke, 530,668; Worcester, 372,940.

**CLIMATE.** Boston. Jan. 28°F (−2.2°C), July 71°F (21.7°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,036 mm). *See* New England, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution dates from 1780 and has had 116 amendments. The legislative body, styled the General Court of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, meets annually, and consists of the Senate with 40 members, elected biennially, and the House of Representatives of 160 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state sends 2 senators and 11 representatives to Congress.

At the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 1,387,398 votes, Bush, 1,184,323.

Electors are all citizens 18 years of age or older.

The capital is Boston. The state has 14 counties, 39 cities and 312 towns.

*Governor*: Michael S. Dukakis (D.), 1987–91 (\$75,000).

*Lieut.-Governor*: Evelyn Murphy (D.), 1987–91 (\$60,000).

*Secretary of the Commonwealth*: Michael J. Connolly (D.) (\$60,000).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1986 the total revenue of the state was \$9,569.6m. (\$7,488.3m. from taxes, \$1,201.7m. from federal aid, \$879.6m. from other sources); total expenditures, \$9,692.7m. (\$1,389.3m. for education, \$418.7m. for highway transport and highway construction and \$3,659.6m. for human services).

The net long-term debt on 30 June 1986 amounted to \$3,645m.

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$17,516.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** There is little mining within the state. Total mineral output in 1985 was valued at \$114.5m., of which most came from sand, gravel, crushed stone and lime.

**Agriculture.** On 1 Jan. 1986 there were approximately 6,000 farms (11,179 in 1959) with an area of 598,900 acres.

Cash income, 1986, totalled \$425.2m.; dairy, \$76.3m.; greenhouse and nursery, \$118m.; poultry, \$30.8m.; vegetables, \$38.8m.; tobacco, \$7m.; cranberries, \$98.6m.; other fruit, \$23.2m.; potatoes, \$2.6m. Total from crops, \$295.2m., from livestock, \$130m.

Principal 1986 crops include cranberries, 1.69m. bbls; apples, 2.1m. bu. in 1985; potatoes, 825,000 cwt in 1985. On 1 Jan. 1982 farms in the state had 48,000 milch cows, 98,000 all cattle, 49,000 swine. In 1982 farms produced 145,000 turkeys and 0.8m. chickens.

**Forestry.** About 68% of the state is forest. State forests cover about 256,000 acres. Total forest land covers about 3m. acres. Commercially important hardwoods are sugar maple, northern red oak and white ash; softwoods are white pine and hemlock. About 240m. bd ft of timber are cut annually.

**Fisheries.** The 1985 catch amounted to 296m. lb. of fish and shellfish valued at \$232m.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986, manufacturing establishments employed an average of 637,740 workers. The 3 most important manufacturing groups, based on employment, were electric and electronic equipment, machinery (except electrical), printing and publishing. Service industries employed 875,736 and trade, 697,257. Total non-agricultural employment, 2,685,611.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In Oct. 1984 the state had 33,800 miles of roads and streets and in 1985 registered 3.8m. motor vehicles.

**Railways.** In 1984 there were 1,310 miles of mainline railway.

**Aviation.** There were, in 1983, 52 aircraft landing areas for commercial operation, of which 27 were publicly owned.

**Shipping.** The state has 3 deep-water harbours, the largest of which is Boston (port trade (1983), 16,767,585 short tons). Other ports are Fall River and New Bedford.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** On 31 Dec. 1985 state penal institutions held 5,447 inmates. There have been no executions since 1947.

**Religion.** The principal religious bodies are the Roman Catholics, Jewish Congregations, Methodists, Episcopalians and Unitarians.

**Education.** A regulation effective from 1 Sept. 1972 makes school attendance compulsory for ages 6–16. In 1985–86 expenditure by cities and towns on public schools was \$3,521m. or \$605 per capita, including debt retirement and service payments. In 1985–86 there were 56,400 classroom teachers and approximately 900,000 pupils.



Within the state there were (1982) 126 degree-granting institutions of higher learning (including 89 colleges and universities). Some leading institutions are:

<i>Year opened</i>	<i>Name and location of universities and colleges</i>	<i>Students 1988</i>
1636	Harvard University, Cambridge <sup>1</sup>	16,871
1839	Framingham State College	4,303
1839	Westfield State College	6,053
1840	Bridgewater State College	6,539
1852	Tufts University, Medford <sup>1,3</sup>	6,297
1854	Salem State College	6,364
1861	Mass. Institute of Technology, Cambridge <sup>1</sup>	9,158
1863	University of Massachusetts, Amherst <sup>1</sup>	26,233
1863	Boston College (RC), Chestnut Hill <sup>1</sup>	12,858
1865	Worcester Polytechnic Institute, Worcester <sup>1</sup>	4,022
1869	Boston University, Boston <sup>1</sup>	22,373
1874	Worcester College	4,899
1894	Fitchburg State College	5,212
1894	University of Lowell <sup>1</sup>	10,445
1895	Southeastern Massachusetts University	5,031
1898	Northeastern University, Boston <sup>1,4</sup>	20,618
1899	Simmons College, Boston <sup>2</sup>	2,594
1905	Wentworth Institute of Technology	3,350
1906	Suffolk University	5,978
1917	Bentley College	5,611
1919	Western New England College	3,686
1919	Babson College	3,163
1947	Merrimack College	2,300
1948	Brandeis University, Waltham <sup>1</sup>	3,484
1964	University of Massachusetts, Boston	8,027

<sup>1</sup> Co-educational.

<sup>3</sup> Includes Jackson College for women.

<sup>2</sup> For women only.

<sup>4</sup> Includes Forsyth Dental Center School.

**Health.** In 1984 the state had 177 hospitals (with 41,200 beds); average daily census, 1982, 32,736, including patients in public and private mental hospitals and institutions for the mentally retarded.

**Social Security.** The Department of Public Welfare had an appropriation of \$1,828m. in financial year 1984 and paid \$388m. in aid to families with dependent children (average 95,798 families per month); other main items were general relief (average 27,242 cases), Supplemental Security Income (average 105,402 cases) and Medical Assistance only (average 65,841 cases).

### Further Reading

*Annual Reports.* Massachusetts and US Boards, Commissions, Departments and Divisions, Boston, annual

*Manual for the General Court.* By Clerk of the Senate and Clerk of the House of Representatives, Boston, Mass. Biennial

Hart, Albert B., (ed.) *Commonwealth History of Massachusetts, Colony, Province and State.* 5 vols., New York, 1966

Levitan, D. with Mariner, E. C., *Your Massachusetts Government.* Newton, Mass., 1984

Higher Education Publications, Washington, D.C., 1983

## MICHIGAN

**HISTORY.** Michigan, first settled by Marquette at Sault Ste Marie in 1668, became the Territory of Michigan in 1805, with its boundaries greatly enlarged in 1818 and 1834; it was admitted into the Union with its present boundaries on 26 Jan. 1837.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Michigan is divided into two by Lake Michigan. The northern part is bounded south by the lake and by Wisconsin, west

and north by Lake Superior, east by the North Channel of Lake Huron; between the two latter lakes the Canadian border runs through straits at Sault Ste Marie. The southern part is bounded west and north by Lake Michigan, east by Lake Huron, Ontario and Lake Erie, south by Ohio and Indiana. Area, 58,527 sq. miles, of which 56,954 sq. miles are land area, 1,573 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 9,262,078, an increase of 380,252 or 4.3% since 1970. Estimate (1986) 9,145,000. In 1985 births were 138,902 (15.2 per 1,000 population); deaths, 78,515 (8.7); infant deaths, 1,575 (11.4 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 79,022 (17.4); divorces, 38,775 (8.5).

Population of 5 federal census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	2,785,247	17,115	7,519	292	2,810,173	48.9
1930	4,663,507	169,453	7,080	2,285	4,842,325	84.9
1960	7,085,865	717,581	9,701	10,047	7,823,194	137.2
<i>All others</i>						
1970	7,833,474	991,066	50,543		8,875,083	156.2
1980	7,872,241	1,199,023	190,814		9,262,078	162.6

Of the total population in 1980, 4,516,189 were male, 6,551,551 persons were urban and those 20 years old or older numbered 6,146,694. 162,440 were of Spanish origin.

Population of the chief cities (census of 1 April 1980) was:

Detroit	1,203,339	Dearborn	90,660	Royal Oak	70,893
Grand Rapids	181,843	Westland	84,603	Dearborn Heights	67,706
Warren	161,134	Kalamazoo	79,722	Troy	67,102
Flint	159,611	Taylor	77,568	Wyoming	59,616
Lansing (capital)	130,414	Saginaw	77,508	Farmington Hills	58,056
Sterling Heights	108,999	Pontiac	76,715	Roseville	54,311
Ann Arbor	107,316	St Clair Shores	76,210		
Livonia	104,814	Southfield	75,568		

Larger standard metropolitan areas, 1980 census: Detroit, 4,353,413; Grand Rapids, 601,680; Flint, 521,589; Lansing, 471,565.

**CLIMATE.** Detroit. Jan. 22.1°F (−5.5°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 32" (813 mm). Grand Rapids. Jan. 23.8°F (−4.6°C), July 72.6°F (22.5°C). Annual rainfall 33.6" (833 mm). Lansing. Jan. 21.7°F (−5.7°C), July 71°F (21.7°C). Annual rainfall 30.8" (782 mm). *See* Great Lakes, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution was adopted in April 1963 and became effective on 1 Jan. 1964. The Senate consists of 38 members, elected for 4 years, and the House of Representatives of 110 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Electors are all citizens over 18 years of age meeting the usual residential requirements. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 18 representatives.

At the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 1,969,435 votes, Dukakis, 1,673,496.

The capital is Lansing. The state is organized in 83 counties.

*Governor:* James J. Blanchard (D.), 1987–91 (\$100,077).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Martha Griffiths (D.), 1987–91 (\$67,377).

*Secretary of State:* Richard H. Austin (D.), 1987–91 (\$89,000).

**BUDGET.** For the financial year ending 30 Sept. 1986, the general fund revenue was \$12,769,500,000 (taxation, \$9,270,600,000, and federal aid, \$3,298,600,000); total revenue, \$13,607,400,000; special revenue funds, \$837,900,000; general expenditures, \$12,235,600,000.

*Per capita* personal income (1985 estimate) was \$13,608.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Most important minerals by value of production are iron ore, petroleum

and cement. Output (1985): Iron ore, 12.69m. long tons; Portland cement, 4.75m. short tons; petroleum, 31.5m. bbls; sand and gravel, 41.35m. short tons; lime, 534,000 short tons; natural gas, 153,484,651m. cu. ft; Salt, 991,000 short tons. Mineral output in 1984 was valued at \$2,695.2m.

**Agriculture.** The state, formerly agricultural, is now chiefly industrial. In 1985 it contained 63,000 farms with a total area of 11m. acres; the average farm was 175 acres. Cash income, 1985, from crops, \$1,729.6m.; from livestock and products, \$1,237m. Principal crops are maize (production, 1985, 287.6m. bu. of grain), oats (26.1m. bu.), wheat (45m. bu.), sugar-beet (2.33m. tons); soybeans (34.6m. bu.), hay (5.7m. tons). On 1 Jan. 1986 there were in the state 108,000 sheep, 397,000 milch cows, 1.41m. all cattle and 1.19m. swine; 8.9m. chickens and 38,000 (1985) turkey breeder hens. In 1985 the wool clip yielded 902,000 lb. of wool.

**Forestry.** The forests of Michigan consist of 18.4m. acres, about 51% of total state land area. About 17.5m. acres of this total is commercial forest, 64% of which is privately owned, 20% state forest, 14% federal forest and 1.5% in various public ownerships. Three-fourths of the timber volume is hardwoods, principally hard and soft maples, aspen, oak and birch. Christmas trees are another important forest crop.

Michigan leads in the number of state parks and public campsites. There are 83 state parks and recreation areas, 6 state forests, 3 national forests and 3 national parks. There are 169 state forest campgrounds and 64 state game areas.

**INDUSTRY.** Transport equipment and non-electrical machinery are the most important manufactures. The state ranks first in 19 manufacturing categories: among principal products are motor vehicles and trucks, cement, chemicals, furniture, paper, cereal, baby food and pharmaceuticals. Total non-agricultural labour force, 1986, 4,386,000, of which 975,000 are in manufacturing.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** State trunk-line mileage (31 July 1980) totalled, 9,500, all hard surfaced. Passenger car registrations, 1986, 5,501,421.

**Railways.** On 1 Jan. 1986 there were 4,770 miles of railway and 67 miles of active car-ferry routes.

**Aviation.** Airports (1986) numbered 245 licensed airports and 22 air carrier airports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The 1963 Constitution provides that no person shall be denied the equal protection of the law; nor shall any person be denied the enjoyment of his civil or political rights or be discriminated against in the exercise thereof because of religion, colour or national origin. A Civil Rights Commission was established, and its powers and duties were implemented by legislation in the extra session of 1963. Earlier statutory enactments guaranteeing civil rights in specific areas are as follows. An Act of 1885, last amended in 1956, orders all places of public accommodation and resort, etc., to furnish equal accommodations without discrimination. An Act of 1941, as last amended, forbids the Civil Service in counties with population exceeding 1m. to discriminate against employees or applicants on the ground of political, racial or religious opinions or affiliations. An Act of 1881 incorporated into the school code of 1955 forbids any discrimination in school facilities. An Act of 1893 incorporated in the insurance code of 1956 prohibits insurance companies from discriminating between white and coloured persons.

In 1951 the legislature restored the unique one-man grand jury system abandoned in 1949.

**Religion.** Roman Catholics make up the largest body; largest Protestant denominations, Lutherans, United Methodists, United Presbyterians, Episcopalians.

**Education.** Education is compulsory for children from 6 to 16 years of age. The



operating expenditure for graded and ungraded public schools for the fiscal year 1985, was \$5,704m. In 1984-85 there were 567 school districts (elementary and secondary schools) with 1,678,458 pupils and 75,193 teachers. Teachers' salaries in 1985 averaged \$28,440.

In 1985 there were 98 institutes of higher education with 508,000 students.

Universities and students (autumn 1986):

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Students</i>
1817	University of Michigan	34,947
1849	Eastern Michigan University	21,349
1855	Michigan State University	44,088
1884	Ferris State College	11,274
1885	Michigan Technological University	6,326
1868	Wayne State University	34,764
1892	Central Michigan University	17,993
1889	Northern Michigan University	7,852
1903	Western Michigan University	21,747
1946	Lake Superior State College	2,660
1959	Oakland University	12,707
1960	Grand Valley State College	8,321
1965	Saginaw Valley College	5,377

**Social Welfare.** Old-age assistance is provided for persons 65 years of age or older who have resided in Michigan for one year before application; assets must not exceed various limits. In 1974 federal Supplementary Security Income (SSI) replaced the adults' programme. In Jan. 1987 aid was supplied to a monthly average of 418,572 dependent children in 188,972 families at \$463.86 per family.

**Health.** In 1983 the state had 231 hospitals (47,812 beds) licensed by the state and 12 psychiatric hospitals, 7 centres for developmental disabilities, 5 centres for emotionally disturbed children.

In 1986 the Medicaid programme disbursed (with federal support) \$1,642.9m. to 469,226 persons.

### Further Reading

- Michigan Manual.* Dept of Management and Budget, Lansing. Biennial  
Bureau of Business Research, Wayne State University. *Michigan Statistical Abstract.* Detroit, 1983  
Bald, F. C., *Michigan in Four Centuries.* 2nd ed. New York, 1961  
Blanchard, J. J., *Economic Report of the Governor 1985.* Lansing, 1985  
Catton, B., *Michigan—a Bicentennial History.* Norton, New York, 1976  
Lewis, F. E., *State and Local Government in Michigan.* Lansing, 1979  
Dunbar, W. F. and May, G. S., *Michigan: A History of the Wolverine State.* Grand Rapids, 1980  
Sommers, L. (ed.), *Atlas of Michigan.* East Lansing, 1977  
*State Library Services:* Library of Michigan, Lansing 48909. *State Librarian:* James W. Fry.

## MINNESOTA

**HISTORY.** Minnesota, first explored in the 17th century and first settled in the 20 years following the establishment of Fort Snelling (1819), was made a Territory in 1849 (with parts of North and South Dakota), and was admitted into the Union, with its present boundaries, on 11 May 1858.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Minnesota is bounded north by Canada, east by Lake Superior and Wisconsin, with the Mississippi River forming the boundary in the south-east, south by Iowa, west by South and North Dakota, with the Red River forming the boundary in the north-west. Area, 84,402 sq. miles, of which 4,854 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 4,075,970, an increase of 7.1% since 1970. Estimate (1987), 4,245,870. Births in 1987, 65,168

(15.3 per 1,000 population); deaths, 34,512 (8.1); infant deaths, 564 (8.7 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 33,683 (7.9); divorces, 14,931 (3.5).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	2,059,227	7,084	9,053	344	2,075,708	25.7
1930	2,542,599	9,445	11,077	832	2,563,953	32.0
1960	3,371,603	22,263	15,496	3,642	3,413,864	42.7
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	3,736,038	34,868	34,163		3,805,069	47.6
1980	3,935,770	53,344	86,856		4,075,970	51.4

Of the 1980 population, 1,997,826 were male; 2,725,270 were urban; those 21 years of age or older numbered 2,656,947.

The largest cities are Minneapolis, 370,951; St Paul (capital), 270,230 (Minneapolis-St Paul standard metropolitan statistical area, 2,113,533 in 1980); Duluth, 92,811; Bloomington, 81,831; Rochester, 57,890.

**CLIMATE.** Duluth. Jan. 8°F (−13.3°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 29" (719 mm). Minneapolis-St. Paul. Jan. 12°F (−11.1°C), July 71°F (21.7°C). Annual rainfall 26" (656 mm). *See* Great Lakes, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1858; it has had 109 amendments. The Legislature consists of a Senate of 67 members, elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 134 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 8 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 1,109,471 votes. Bush 962,337.

The capital is St Paul. There are 87 counties, four containing less than 400 sq. miles, the largest being 6,092 sq. miles.

*Governor:* Rudy Perpich (DFL.), 1987–91 (\$91,460).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Marlene Johnson (DFL.), 1987–91 (\$50,305).

*Secretary of State:* Joan Anderson Growe (DFL.), 1987–91 (\$50,305).

**BUDGET.** The general fund budget for the 1987–89 2-year period was \$11,656m.; tax relief \$1,619m., education \$6,048m., public welfare \$1,565m., transport \$135m.

Net long-term debt, 7 July 1988, was \$1,500m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$15,927.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The iron ore and taconite industry is the most important in the USA. Production of usable iron ore in 1986 was 29m. tons, value \$1,017m. Other important minerals are sand and gravel, crushed and dimension stone, lime and manganese ore. Total value of mineral production, 1986, \$1,128m.

**Agriculture.** In 1988 there were 94,000 farms with a total area of 30m. acres (60% of the land area); the average farm was of 319 acres. Average value of land and buildings (1988) \$183,574. Commercial farms in 1982 numbered 94,385; 12% of the farms were operated by tenant-farmers. Cash income, 1987, from crops, \$2,165m.; from livestock, \$3,645m. In 1987 Minnesota ranked first in sugarbeets and second in spring wheat, processing sweet corn and green peas, oats, dry milk, cheese, mink and turkeys. Other important products are wild rice, butter, eggs, flaxseed, milch cows, milk, corn, barley, swine, cattle for market, soybeans, honey, potatoes, rye, chickens, sunflower seed and dry edible beans. Of livestock, cattle represents 20% of total farm income, swine 15% and milk 21%. Of crops, corn represents 10% and soybeans 15%. On 1 Jan. 1988 the farm animals included 3.40m. all cattle, 940,000 milch cows, 213,000 sheep and lambs, 4.10m. swine and 12.7m. chickens. Turkey production, 1987, 40.5m. In 1987 the wool clip amounted to 1.62m. lb. of wool from 241,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** Forests of commercial timber cover 14m. acres, of which 53% is government-owned. The value of forest products in 1986 was \$3,986m.: \$1,309m. from primary processing, of which \$871m. was from pulp and paper; and \$2,677m. from secondary manufacturing. Logging, pulping, saw-mills and associated industries employed 51,800 in 1986.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1985 manufacturing establishments employed 367,800 workers; value added by manufacture was \$19,400m. Largest manufacturing industry is non-electrical machinery (73,000 employees); then food products (39,000), printing and publishing (38,000).

**TOURISM.** In 1986, travellers spent about \$5,300m. The industry employed about 108,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state highway system (interstate and state trunk highways) covered 12,100 miles in 1988; total highway, road and street mileage, 132,700. In 1987, 3.3m. passenger automobiles were registered.

**Railways.** There are 3 Class I and 15 Class II and smaller railroads operating, with total mileage of 5,091.

**Aviation.** In 1988 there were 141 airports for public use and 12 public seaplane bases.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A Civil Rights Act (1927) forbids places of public resort to exclude persons 'on account of race or colour' and another section forbids insurance companies to discriminate 'between persons of the same class on account of race'. Contractors on public works may have their contracts cancelled if 'in the hiring of common or skilled labour' they are found to have discriminated on the grounds of 'race, creed or colour'. The state's penal reformatory system on 26 Sept. 1988 held 2,882 adult men and women. There is no death penalty in Minnesota.

**Religion.** The chief religious bodies are: Lutheran with 1,088,304 members in 1980; Roman Catholic, 1,041,781; Methodist, 146,422. Total membership of all denominations, 2,653,161.

**Education.** In 1987, there were 62,391 kindergarten students, 327,251 elementary students, and 326,120 secondary students enrolled in 1,508 public schools. There were 87,208 kindergarten, elementary, and secondary students enrolled in 597 private schools. The University of Minnesota, chartered in 1851 and opened in 1869, had a total enrolment in 1987 of 55,924 students on all campuses. The 18 public community colleges (2-year) had a total enrolment of 45,787. There are seven state universities (4-year) at Bemidji, Mankato, Marshall, Moorhead, St Cloud, Winona, Minneapolis and St Paul. Enrolment in all institutions of higher education, 1987, 243,976.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 168 general acute hospitals with 19,546 beds. Patients resident in institutions under the Department of Human Services in Aug. 1988 included 1,339 people with mental illness, 1,458 people with mental retardation, 304 with chemical dependency and 497 in state nursing homes.

**Social Security.** Programmes of old age assistance, aid to the disabled, and aid to the blind are administered under the federal Supplemental Security Income (SSI) Programme. Minnesota has a supplementary programme, Minnesota Supplemental Aid (MSA) to cover individuals not eligible for SSI, to supplement SSI benefits for others whose income is below state standards, and to provide one-time payments for emergency needs such as major home repair, essential furniture or appliances, moving expenses, fuel, food and shelter.



### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* Current information is obtainable from the State Planning Agency (300 Centennial Office Building, 658 Cedar Street, St Paul 55155); non-current material from the Reference Library, Minnesota Historical Society, St Paul 55101.

*Legislative Manual.* Secretary of State. St Paul. Biennial

*Manufacturers' Directory.* Nelson Name Service, Minneapolis. Biennial

*Minnesota Agriculture Statistics.* Dept. of Agric., St Paul. Annual

*Minnesota Pocket Data Book 1985-86.* St Paul, 1985

## MISSISSIPPI

**HISTORY.** Mississippi, settled in 1716, was organized as a Territory in 1798 and admitted into the Union on 10 Dec. 1817. In 1804 and in 1812 its boundaries were extended, but in March 1817 a part was taken to form the new Territory of Alabama, leaving the boundaries substantially as at present.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Mississippi is bounded north by Tennessee, east by Alabama, south by the Gulf of Mexico and Louisiana, west by the Mississippi River forming the boundary with Louisiana and Arkansas. Area, 47,689 sq. miles, 457 sq. miles being inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 2,520,638, an increase of 13.6% since 1970. Estimate (1985), 2,656,600. Births, occurring in the state, 1987, were 40,374; deaths, 23,824; infant deaths, 524; marriages, 23,729; divorces, 12,142.

Population of 6 federal census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	786,111	1,009,487	1,253	263	1,797,114	38.8
1930	998,077	1,009,718	1,458	568	2,009,821	42.4
1950	1,188,632	986,494	2,502	1,286	2,178,914	46.1
1960	1,257,546	915,743	3,119	1,481	2,178,141	46.1
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	1,393,283	815,770	7,859		2,216,912	46.9
1980	1,615,190	887,206	18,242		2,520,638	53.0

Of the population in 1980, 1,213,878 were male, 1,192,805 were urban and 1,601,157 were 20 years old or older.

The largest city (1980) is Jackson, 202,895. Others are: Biloxi, 49,311; Meridian, 46,577; Hattiesburg, 40,829; Greenville, 40,613; Gulfport, 39,676; Pascagoula, 29,318; Columbus, 27,383; Vicksburg, 25,434; Tupelo, 23,905.

**CLIMATE.** Jackson. Jan. 47°F (8.3°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 49" (1,221 mm). Vicksburg. Jan. 48°F (8.9°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 52" (1,311 mm). *See Central Plains*, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution was adopted in 1890 without ratification by the electorate; 94 amendments by 1988.

The Legislature consists of a Senate (52 members) and a House of Representatives (122 members), both elected for 4 years, as are also the Governor and Lieut.-Governor. Electors are all citizens who have resided in the state 1 year, in the county 1 year, in the election district 6 months next before the election and have been registered according to law. In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 551,745 votes, Dukakis, 360,892.

The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 5 representatives.

The capital is Jackson; there are 82 counties.

*Governor:* Ray Mabus (D.), 1988-92 (\$75,600).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Bradford Johnson Dye (D.) (\$40,800).

*Secretary of State:* Dick Molpus (D.) (\$54,000).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1988 the general revenues were

\$4,940,087,828 (taxation, \$2,181,601,787; federal aid, \$1,122,319,111; other state resources, \$1,636,166,930), and general expenditures were \$4,950,364,664 (\$1,285,978,194 for education, \$357,800,229 for highways and \$880,455,695 for public welfare).

On 30 June 1988 the total net long-term debt was \$515,128,908.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$10,292 (lowest in US).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Petroleum and natural gas account for about 90% (by value) of mineral production. Output of petroleum, 1987, was 28,350,993 bbls and of natural gas 222,484,189m. cu. ft. There are 6 oil refineries. Value of oil and gas products sold 1988 was \$826,510,230.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the leading industry of the state because of the semi-tropical climate and a rich productive soil. In 1987 there were 82 soil conservation districts covering 30m. acres. In 1987 farms numbered 45,000 with an area of 13.8m. acres. Average size of farm was 307 acres. This compares with an average farm size of 138 acres in 1960.

Cash income from all crops and livestock during 1986, including government payments, was \$1,824m. Cash income from crops was \$780.1m. and from livestock and products, \$1,043.9m. The chief product is cotton, cash income \$318.3m. from 1m. acres producing 1.65m. bales of 480 lb. Soybeans, rice, corn, hay, wheat, oats, sorghum, peanuts, pecans, sweet potatoes, peaches, other vegetables, nursery and forest products continue to contribute.

On 1 Jan. 1987 there were 1.37m. head of cattle and calves on Mississippi farms. Milch cows totalled 75,000, beef cows, 690,000; hogs and pigs, 210,000. Of cash income from livestock and products, 1986, \$175.5m. was credited to cattle and calves. Cash income from poultry and eggs totalled \$573.23m.; dairy products, \$113.03m.; swine, \$37.87m.

**Forestry.** In 1987 income from forestry amounted to \$599.76m.; output of logs, lumber, etc., was 1,789,388 bd ft; pulpwood, 6,180,026 cords; distillate wood, 4,219 tons. There are about 16.9m. acres of forest (56% of the state's area). National forests area, 1987, 1.21m. acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 the 3,338 manufacturing establishments employed 228,980 workers, earning \$4,081,434,719.

**TOURISM.** Total receipts, 1987, \$1,400m. from about 1.68m. tourists.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state in July 1987 maintained 10,352 miles of highways, of which 10,286 miles were paved; 1,725,000 cars were registered.

**Railways.** The state in 1988 had 2,750 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** There were 77 public airports in 1988, 70 of them general. There were also 38 privately owned airports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In 1988 there was one execution; from 1955 to 1988 executions (by gas-chamber) totalled 34 (8 whites and 16 Negroes for murder, 9 Negroes for rape and 1 Negro for armed robbery). On 26 Oct. 1988 the state prisons had 7,088 inmates.

**Religion.** Southern Baptists in Mississippi (1987), 658,127 members; Negro Baptists, about 477,000; United Methodists (1988) 189,549; Roman Catholics (1988), 99,197 in Biloxi and Jackson dioceses.

**Education.** Attendance at school is compulsory as laid down in the Education Reform Act of 1982. The public elementary and secondary schools in 1986-87 had 498,639 pupils and 26,214 classroom teachers.

In 1987, teachers' average salary was \$19,448. The expenditure per pupil in average daily attendance, 1986-87, was \$2,526.

There are 15 universities and senior colleges, of which 8 are state-supported. The University of Mississippi, at Oxford (1844), had, 1987-88, 391 instructors and 9,542 students; Mississippi State University, Starkville, 755 instructors and 12,801 students; Mississippi University for Women, at Columbus, 106 instructors and 2,043 students; University of Southern Mississippi, Hattiesburg, 557 instructors and 11,937 students; Jackson State University, Jackson, 265 instructors and 6,045 students; Delta State University, Cleveland, 171 instructors and 3,513 students; Alcorn State University, Lorman, 136 instructors and 2,604 students; Mississippi Valley State University, Itta Bena, 102 instructors and 1,859 students. State support for the 8 universities (1987-88) was \$155.5m.

Junior colleges had (1987-88) 55,015 students and 2,388 instructors. The state appropriation for junior colleges, 1987-88, was \$56.8m.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 118 acute general hospitals (10,368 beds) listed by the State Department of Health; 7 hospitals with facilities for care of the mentally ill had 2,327 beds.

**Social Security.** The state Medicaid commission paid (1988) \$426.5m. for medical services, including \$49.9m. for drugs, \$65.3m. for skilled nursing home care, \$92.3m. for in-patient services. There were 61,520 persons eligible for Aged Medicaid and 72,487 persons eligible for Disabled Medicaid benefits at 30 June 1988. In June 1988 59,706 families with 127,432 dependent children received \$6,742,599 in the Aid to Dependent Children programme. The average monthly payment was \$112.93 per family or \$52.91 per child.

### Further Reading

*1980 Census of Population and Housing: Mississippi.*

*Mississippi Official and Statistical Register.* Secretary of State. Jackson. Biennial  
 Bettersworth, J. K., *Mississippi: A History*. Rev. ed. Austin, Tex., 1964

*Mississippi Library Commission:* PO Box 10700 Jackson, MS. 39209-0700. *Director:* David M. Woodburn.

## MISSOURI

**HISTORY.** Missouri, first settled in 1735 at Ste Genevieve, was made a Territory on 1 Oct. 1812, and admitted to the Union on 10 Aug. 1821. In 1837 its boundaries were extended to their present limits.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Missouri is bounded north by Iowa, east by the Mississippi River forming the boundary with Illinois and Kentucky, south by Arkansas, south-east by Tennessee, south-west by Oklahoma, west by Kansas and Nebraska, with the Missouri River forming the boundary in the north-west. Area, 69,697 sq. miles, 752 sq. miles being water.

Census population, 1 April 1980, 4,916,766, an increase since 1970 of 5.1%. Estimate (1986), 5,066,000. Births, 1985, were 78,760 (15.7 per 1,000 population); deaths, 51,635 (10.3); infant deaths, 784 (10.2 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 49,484 (9.8); divorces, 24,990 (5).

Population of 5 federal census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	3,134,932	157,452	313	638	3,293,335	47.9
1930	3,403,876	223,840	578	1,073	3,629,367	52.4
1960	3,922,967	390,853	1,723	3,146	4,319,813	62.5
			All others			
1970	4,177,495	480,172	19,732		4,677,399	67.0
1980	4,345,521	514,276	56,889		4,916,686	71.3

Of the total population in 1980, 2,365,487 were male, 3,350,746 persons were urban and those 18 years of age or older numbered 3,554,203.



The principal cities at the 1980 census (and estimates, 1986) are:

St Louis	453,085 (426,300)	Columbia	62,061 (63,140)
Kansas City	448,159 (444,170)	Florissant	55,372 (59,040)
Springfield	133,116 (139,360)	University City	42,738 (42,270)
Independence	111,806 (112,950)	Joplin	38,893 (40,220)
St Joseph	76,691 (74,070)	St Charles	37,379 (41,990)

Metropolitan areas, 1980: St Louis, 2,356,000; Kansas City, 1,327,000.

**CLIMATE.** Kansas City. Jan. 30°F (-1.1°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 38" (947 mm). St. Louis. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,004 mm). *See* Central Plains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution, the fourth, was adopted on 27 Feb. 1945; it has been amended 27 times. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 34 members elected for 4 years (half for re-election every 2 years), and a House of Representatives of 163 members elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Missouri sends to Congress 2 senators and 9 representatives.

Voters (with the usual exceptions) are all citizens and those adult aliens who, within a prescribed period, have applied for citizenship. In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 1,081,163 votes, Dukakis, 1,004,040.

Jefferson City is the state capital. The state is divided into 114 counties and the city of St Louis.

*Governor:* John D. Ashcroft (R.), 1989-93 (\$81,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Mel Carnahan (D.), 1989-93 (\$48,600).

*Secretary of State:* Roy D. Blunt (R.), 1989-93 (\$64,800).

**BUDGET.** For the year 1986 the total revenues from all funds were \$7,490m. (federal revenue, \$1,541m., general revenue, \$6,304m.).

Total outstanding debt, 1986, was \$3,751m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$14,687.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Principal minerals are lead (ranks first in USA), zinc (ranks second), clays, coal, iron ore, and stone for cement and lime manufacture. Value of production (1985) \$734.9m.

**Agriculture.** In 1987 there were 114,000 farms in Missouri covering 30.6m. acres. Production of principal crops, 1987: Corn, 242.96m. bu.; soybeans, 154.6m. bu.; wheat, 35.4m. bu.; sorghum grain, 59.5m. bu.; oats, 3.4m. bu.; cotton, 330,000 bales (of 480 lb.). Cash receipts from farming, 1987, \$3,550.2m. to which soybeans contributed \$508.4m.

**Forestry.** Forest land area, 1988, 12.9m. acres.

**INDUSTRY.** The largest employer in 1986 was manufacturing, in which the transport equipment industry employed 72,170 workers. Other large industries are food and kindred products, electrical equipment and supplies, apparel and related products and non-electrical machinery, leather products, chemicals, paper, metal industries, stone, clay, glass, rubber and plastic products. Retail trade employed 373,552 in 1986; wholesale trade employed 129,996.

**LABOUR.** The State Board of Mediation has jurisdiction in labour disputes involving only public utilities. The Prevailing Wage Law (1959) provides that no less than the local hourly rate of wages for work of a similar character shall be paid to any workmen engaged in public works. The Industrial Commission has authority to inspect records and to institute actions for penalties described in the Act. There is a state programme for industrial safety in hand, under the Federal Occupational

and Health Act. In 1987 the annual average number of employed was 2,426,000, and 164,000 were unemployed; the unemployment rate was 6.3%.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Federal and state highways, Sept. 1987, totalled 119,398 miles. In 1987 there were 2.7m. vehicles licensed in the state, of which 3,930 were private and commercial buses.

**Railways.** The state has 10 Class I railways; approximate total mileage, 6,736. There are 15 other railways (switching, terminal or short-line), total mileage 435, in Dec. 1987.

**Aviation.** In 1988 there were 144 public airports and 217 private airports.

**Shipping.** Ten carrier barge lines (1984) operated on about 1,000 miles of navigable waterways including the Missouri and Mississippi Rivers. Boat shipping seasons: Missouri River, April–end Nov.; Mississippi River, all seasons.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 269 commercial radio stations and 36 TV stations in 1988.

**Newspapers.** There were (1988) 36 daily and 226 weekly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** State prisons in 1988 had an average of 12,063 inmates including 528 females. The median age was 28, 55.72% were between age 15 and 29. There have been no executions since 1965 although the death penalty was reinstated in 1978; since 1930 executions (by lethal gas) have totalled 40, including 31 for murder, 6 for rape and 3 for kidnapping. The Missouri Law Enforcement Assistance Council was created in 1969 for law reform.

**Religion.** Chief religious bodies (1980) are Catholic, with 800,228 members, Southern Baptists (700,053), United Methodists (270,469), Christian Churches (175,101), Lutheran (157,928), Presbyterian (38,254). Total membership, all denominations, about 2.6m. in 1980.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for children from 7 to 16 years for the full term. In the 1987–88 school year, public schools (kindergarten through grade 12) had 802,060 pupils. Total expenditure for public schools in 1986–87, \$2,937m. Salaries for teachers (kindergarten through grade 12), 1986–87, averaged \$23,435. Institutions for higher education include the University of Missouri, founded in 1839 with campuses at Columbia, Rolla, St Louis and Kansas City, with 4,449 accredited teachers and 52,544 students in 1987–88. Washington University at St Louis, founded in 1857, is an independent co-ed university with 12,836 students in 1987–88. St Louis University (1818), is an independent Roman Catholic co-ed university with 9,800 students in 1987–88. Sixteen state colleges had 115,849 students in 1987–88. Private colleges had (1987–88) 45,160 students. Church-affiliated colleges (1987–88) had 33,687 students. Public junior colleges had 55,398 students. There are about 90 secondary and post-secondary institutions offering vocational courses, and about 294 private career schools. There were 242,323 students in higher education in autumn 1987.

**Health.** There were 9 state mental health hospitals and centres and 3 children's hospitals in 1988, admitting 22,727 patients.

**Social Security.** In 1986 the number of recipients of medicaid was 360,000. The number of recipients of Aid to families with Dependent Children was 202,000 with an average monthly payment per family of \$250.

## Further Reading

*Missouri Area Labor Trends*, Department of Labour and Industrial Relations, monthly  
*Missouri Farm Facts*, Department of Agriculture, annual  
*Report of the Public Schools of Missouri*, State Board of Education, annual  
*Statistical Abstract for Missouri*, State and Regional Fiscal Studies Unit, College of Business and Public Administration, Columbia 1985

# MONTANA

**HISTORY.** Montana, first settled in 1809, was made a Territory (out of portions of Idaho and Dakota Territories) in 1864 and was admitted into the Union on 8 Nov. 1889.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Montana is bounded north by Canada, east by North and South Dakota, south by Wyoming and west by Idaho and the Bitterroot Range of the Rocky Mountains. Area, 147,138 sq. miles, including 1,551 sq. miles of water, of which the federal government, 1986, owned 28,236,000 acres or 30.3%. US Bureau of Indian Affairs (1982) administered 5.03m. acres, of which 2,820,000 were allotted to tribes. Census population, 1 April 1980, 786,690, an increase of 13.3% since 1970. Estimate (1986), 819,000. Births, 1986, were 12,728 (15.5 per 1,000 population); deaths, 6,738 (8.2); infant deaths, 122 (9.8 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 6,739 (8.2); divorces 4,307 (5.3).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	360,580	1,834	10,745	2,870	376,053	2.6
1930	519,898	1,256	14,798	1,239	537,606	3.7
1950	572,038	1,232	16,606	—	591,024	4.1
1970	663,043	1,995	27,130	1,099	694,409	4.7
1980	740,148	1,786	37,270	2,503	786,690	5.3

Of the total population in 1980, 392,625 were male, 416,402 persons (52.9%) were urban. Persons 20 years of age or older numbered 524,836. Median age, 29 years. Households, 283,742.

The largest cities, 1980 (and 1986 estimate) are Billings, 66,798 (80,310); Great Falls, 56,725 (57,310). Others: Butte-Silver Bow, 37,205 (33,380); Missoula, 33,388 (33,960); Helena (capital), 23,938 (24,670); Bozeman, 21,645 (23,490); Anaconda-Deer Lodge County, 12,518 (10,700); Havre, 10,891 (10,840); Kalispell, 10,648 (11,890).

**CLIMATE.** Helena. Jan. 18°F (−7.8°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 13" (325 mm). *See* Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new constitution was ratified by the voters on 6 June 1972, and fully implemented on 1 July 1973; the Senate to consist of 50 senators, elected for 4 years, one half at each biennial election. The 100 members of the House of Representatives are elected for 2 years.

The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Montana sends to Congress 2 senators and 2 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 189,598 votes, Dukakis, 168,120.

The capital is Helena. The state is divided into 56 counties.

*Governor:* Stan Stephens (R.), 1989–93 (\$50,452).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Allen Kolstad (R.), 1989–93 (\$36,141).

*Secretary of State:* Mike Cooney (D.), 1989–93 (\$33,342).

**BUDGET.** Total state revenues for the year ending 30 June 1985 were \$1,738,000,000; total expenditures were \$1,557,000,000 (\$436m. for education, \$239m. for highways and \$184m. for public welfare).

Total net long-term debt on 30 June 1985 was \$157,225,000.

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$11,904.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electric power generated in April 1986 was 1,112 gwh., of which 796 gwh. was hydro-electric and 310 gwh. from coal-fired plants; 1 from oil-fired, and 4 gwh. from other sources.



**Minerals** (1985). Output of crude petroleum, 30.2m. bbls; copper, 15,092 tonnes; sand and gravel, 9,000 short tons; phosphate rock, undisclosed; silver, 4m. troy oz.; gold, 160,262 troy oz.; zinc, undisclosed; natural gas, 46,592m. cu. ft; coal, 33.3m. short tons. Value of total mineral production, \$1,198.8m., with petroleum (\$761.9m.) the first, coal (\$417.4m.) the second, natural gas (\$95.5m.) the third and gold (\$50.9m.) the fourth most important commodity.

**Agriculture.** In 1986 there were 23,300 farms and ranches (50,564 in 1935) with an area of 60.8m. acres (47,511,868 acres in 1935). Large-scale farming predominates; in 1986 the average size per farm was 2,609 acres. Income from all farm marketings was \$1,145m. in 1986 (crops, \$493m.; livestock, \$652m.). Irrigated area harvested in 1986 was 1.6m. acres; non-irrigated, 7.8m. acres.

The chief crops are wheat, amounting in 1986 to 138.5m. bu.; barley, 85m. bu.; oats, 4.1m. bu.; sugar-beet, hay, potatoes, alfalfa, dry beans, flax and cherries. In 1986 there were 24,000 milch cows, 2.4m. all cattle; 190,000 swine and 423,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** Total forest area (1986), 22.6m. acres. In 1986 there were 16.8m. acres within 11 national forests.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987 manufacturing establishments numbering 1,223 had 20,900 production workers; value added by manufacture was (1986) \$907.4m.

**LABOUR** (March 1988). Work force, 402,900; total employed, 366,000; total non-agricultural workers, 336,000; agricultural workers, 29,000. Workers employed by major industry group: Mining, 5,900 (average net weekly earnings, \$533.32); contract construction, 6,900 (\$499.22); manufacturing, 20,100 (\$404.80); transport and public utilities, 18,900 (\$433.81); wholesale/retail trade, 70,900 (\$197.78); finance/insurance/real estate, 12,500 (\$264.54); services, 64,700 (\$230.08); government, 70,200 (no income figures available). Average weekly earnings for all workers in private non-agricultural industries \$270.19. Total unemployed 36,000 (9.2% of the work force in March 1988 as compared to 5.5% nationally for that month).

There were 13 work stoppages in 1987 involving 9,920 workers, with a total of 68,164 man days idle during the year.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1987 the state had 58,711 miles of maintained public roads and streets including 11,758 miles of the federal-aid system. At 31 Dec. 1987 there were 436,152 passenger vehicles, 280,794 trucks and 25,503 motor cycles registered.

**Railways.** In Oct. 1988 there were 3,400 route miles of railway in the state.

**Aviation.** There were 129 airports open for public use in Jan. 1988, of which 122 were publicly owned.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** At 31 Dec. 1987 the Montana State Prison at Deer Lodge held 961 inmates and the Women's Correctional Facility at Warm Springs, 36. Since 1943 there have been no executions; total since 1930 (all by hanging) was 6; 4 whites and 2 Negroes, for murder.

**Religion.** The leading religious bodies are (1987): Roman Catholic with 162,000 members; Lutheran, 68,654; Methodist (Yellowstone Conference, including N. Wyoming, Montana, and Salmon, Idaho), 21,609 (church estimates).

**Education.** In Oct. 1987 public elementary and secondary schools had 152,207 pupils. Public elementary and secondary school teachers (9,659 in 1987) had an average salary of \$23,774. Expenditure on public school education (1986-87) was \$475.9m. This included \$26.33m. for Special Education.

The Montana University system consists of the Montana State University, at Bozeman (autumn 1987 enrolment: 9,878 students), the University of Montana,

at Missoula, founded in 1895 (8,472), the Montana College of Mineral Science and Technology, at Butte (1,746), Northern Montana College, at Havre (1,658), Eastern Montana College, at Billings (3,926) and Western Montana College, at Dillon (992).

**Social Security.** In Aug. 1988, 4,892 persons over age 65 were receiving in medical assistance an average of \$940 per year per person; 55 blind persons, \$558, 6,035 totally disabled, \$767; 9,290 families received in aid-to-dependent children assistance an average of \$313. Aid was from state and federal sources.

**Health.** In Aug. 1988 the state had 60 hospitals (3,354 beds) listed by the Montana Board of Health. Four centres for mental illness and developmental disabilities had 703 patients.

### Further Reading

- Montana Agricultural Statistics.* U.S. Dept. of Agriculture. Montana Crop and Livestock Reporting Service. Biennial from 1946  
*Montana Employment and Labor Force.* Montana Dept. of Labor and Industry. Monthly from 1971  
*Montana Federal-Aid Road Log.* Montana Dept. of Highways and US Dept. of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration. Annual from 1938  
*Montana Vital Statistics.* Montana Dept. of Health and Environmental Sciences. Annually from 1954  
*Statistical Report.* Montana Dept. of Social and Rehabilitation Services. Monthly from 1947  
 Lang, W. L. and Myers, R. C., *Montana, Our Land and People.* Pruett, 1979  
 Malone, M. P. and Roeder, R. B., *Montana, A History of Two Centuries.* Univ. of Washington Press, 1976  
 Spence, C. C., *Montana, a History.* New York, 1978

## NEBRASKA

**HISTORY.** The Nebraska region was first reached by white men from Mexico under the Spanish general Coronado in 1541. It was ceded by France to Spain in 1763, retroceded to France in 1801, and sold by Napoleon to the US as part of the Louisiana Purchase in 1803. Its first settlement was in 1847, and on 30 May 1854 it became a Territory and on 1 March 1867 a state. In 1882 it annexed a small part of Dakota Territory, and in 1908 it received another small tract from South Dakota.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Nebraska is bounded north by South Dakota, with the Missouri River forming the boundary in the north-east and the boundary with Iowa and Missouri to the east; south by Kansas, south-west by Colorado and west by Wyoming. Area, 77,355 sq. miles, of which 711 sq. miles are water. Census population, 1980: 1,569,825, an increase of 5.7% since 1970. Estimate (1987). 1,594,000. Births, 1987, were 23,813 (14.9 per 1,000 population); deaths, 14,820 (9.3); infant deaths, 204 (8.6 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 11,808 (7.4); divorces, 6,189 (3.9).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	1,180,293	7,689	3,502	730	1,192,214	15.5
1920	1,279,219	13,242	2,888	1,023	1,296,372	16.9
1960	1,374,764	29,262	5,545	1,195	1,411,330	18.3
<hr/>						
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	1,432,867	39,911	10,715		1,483,791	19.4
1980	1,490,381	48,390	31,054		1,569,825	20.5

Of the total population in 1980, 48.8% were male, 62.9% were urban 65.6% were 21 years of age or older. The largest cities in the state are: Omaha, with a census population, 1980, of 313,911 (estimate, 1986, 349,270); Lincoln (capital), 171,932 (183,050); Grand Island, 33,180 (39,100); North Platte, 24,509 (22,490); Fremont, 23,979 (23,780); Hastings, 23,045 (22,990); Bellevue, 21,813 (32,200); Kearney, 21,158 (22,770); Norfolk, 19,449 (20,260).

The Bureau of Indian Affairs, in June 1987, administered 65,000 acres, of which 23,000 acres were allotted to tribal control.

**CLIMATE.** Omaha. Jan. 22°F (−5.6°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 29" (721 mm). *See* High Plains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution was adopted in 1875; it has been amended 184 times. By an amendment adopted in Nov. 1934 Nebraska has a single-chambered legislature (elected for 4 years) of 49 members—the only state in the Union to have one. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Amendments adopted in 1912 and 1920 provide for legislation through the initiative and referendum and permit cities of more than 5,000 inhabitants to frame their own charters. A 'right-to-work' amendment adopted 5 Nov. 1946 makes illegal the 'closed shop' demands of trade unions. Nebraska is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 3 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 389,394 votes, Dukakis, 254,426.

The capital is Lincoln. The state has 93 counties.

*Governor:* Kay Orr (R.), 1987–90 (\$58,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* William E. Nichol (R.) (\$40,000).

*Secretary of State:* Allen Beerman (R.) (\$40,000).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1986 (US Census Bureau figures) the state's revenues were \$2,334m. (taxation, \$1,119m. and federal aid, \$561m.); general expenditures were \$2,205m. (\$690m. for education, \$353m. for highways and \$361m. for public welfare).

The state has a bonded indebtedness limit of \$100,000.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$14,328.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The total output of minerals, 1987, was valued at \$191.5m., petroleum (6.1m. bbls) and sand and gravel (10.4m. tons) being the most important.

**Agriculture.** Nebraska is one of the most important agricultural states. In 1986 it contained approximately 55,000 farms, with a total area of 47.1m. acres. The average farm was 856 acres.

In 1986, 7.9m. acres were irrigated and 71,587 irrigation wells were registered.

Cash income from crops (1987), \$1,975m., and from livestock, \$4,848m. Principal crops, with estimated 1987 yield: Maize, 812.2m. bu. (ranking third in US); wheat, 85.8m. bu.; sorghums for grain, 109.2m. bu.; oats, 17.3m. bu.; soybeans, 81.9m. bu. About 750 farms grow sugar-beet for 3 factories; output, 1987, 1.1m. short tons. On 1 Jan. 1988 the state contained 5.5m. all cattle (ranking third in US), 100,000 milch cows, 180,000 sheep and 4m. swine.

**Forestry.** The area of national forest, 1986, was 352,000 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 there were 1,800 manufacturing establishments; 62,600 production workers earned \$1,141.2m. and value added by manufacturing was \$5,362.6m. The chief industry is meat-packing.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state-maintained highway system embraced 9,947 miles in 1987; local roads, 86,158 miles. In 1987, 874,857 automobiles were registered.

**Railways.** In 1988 there were 4,013 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** Airports (1988) numbered 354, of which 101 were publicly owned.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A 'Civil Rights Act' revised in 1969 provides that all people are entitled to



a 'full and equal enjoyment of the accommodations, advantages, facilities and privileges' of hotels, restaurants, public conveyances, amusement places and other places. The state university is forbidden to discriminate between students 'because of age, sex, color or nationality'. An Act of 1941 declares it to be 'the policy of this state' that no trade union should discriminate, in collective bargaining, 'against any person because of his race or color'.

The state's prisons had, 10 Oct. 1988, 2,132 inmates (134 per 100,000 population). From 1930 to 1962 there were 4 executions (electrocution), 3 white men and 1 American Indian, all for murder, and none since.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholics had 337,855 members in 1985; Protestant Churches, 737,361; Jews, 7,865 members. Total, all denominations, 1,083,081.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for children from 7 to 16 years of age. Public elementary schools, autumn 1986, had 147,149 enrolled pupils. Teachers' salaries, 1987-88, averaged \$23,246. Estimated public school expenditure for year ending 30 Aug. 1987 was \$936m. Total enrolment in 27 institutions of higher education, autumn 1987, was 100,454 students. The largest institutions were (1987):

<i>Opened</i>	<i>Institution</i>	<i>Students</i>
1867	Peru State College, Peru (State)	1,396
1869	Univ. of Nebraska, Lincoln (State)	25,722
1872	Doane College, Crete (UCC)	796
1878	Creighton Univ., Omaha (RC)	5,827
1882	Hastings College (Presbyterian)	894
1883	Midland Lutheran College, Fremont (Lutheran)	836
1887	Nebraska Wesleyan Univ. (Methodist)	1,359
1891	Union College, Lincoln (Seventh Day Adventist)	578
1894	Concordia Teachers' College, Seward (Lutheran)	816
1905	Kearney State College, Kearney (State)	9,075
1908	Univ. of Nebraska, Omaha (State)	14,210
1910	Wayne State College, Wayne (State)	2,899
1911	Chadron State College, Chadron (State)	2,250
1923	College of St. Mary	1,256
1966	Bellevue College, Bellevue (Private)	1,922

The state holds 1.52m. acres of land as a permanent endowment for her schools; permanent public school endowment fund in Aug. 1988 was \$94.9m.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 114 hospitals and 565 patients in mental hospitals.

**Social Security.** The administration of public welfare is the responsibility of the County Divisions of Welfare with policy-forming, regulatory, advisory and supervisory functions performed by the State Department of Public Welfare. In 1987 public welfare provided financial aid and/or services as follows: for 7,680 individuals who were aged, blind or disabled, with an average state supplement of \$58.65; for 16,315 families with dependent children, with an average payment of \$318.31 per family; for 88,390 individuals who had medical needs, \$1,937.02, per individual; for 3,280 children in need of child welfare services; \$1.8m. was spent on medically-handicapped children. The amount of aid is based on need in accordance with State assistance standards; the programme of aid to families with dependent children is limited to a maximum maintenance payment of \$300 for 1 child plus \$75 for each additional child.

### Further Reading

- Agricultural Atlas of Nebraska.* Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1977  
*Climatic Atlas of Nebraska.* Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1977  
*Economic Atlas of Nebraska.* Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1977  
*Nebraska. A Guide to the Cornhusker State.* Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1979  
*Nebraska Statistical Handbook, 1988-89.* Nebraska Dept. of Econ. Development, Lincoln  
*Nebraska Blue-Book.* Legislative Council, Lincoln. Biennial  
 Olson, J. C., *History of Nebraska.* Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1955  
*State Library:* State Law Library, State House, Lincoln. *Librarian:* Reta Johnson.

# NEVADA

**HISTORY.** Nevada, first settled in 1851, when it was a part of the Territory of Utah (created 1850), was made a Territory in 1861, enlarged in 1862 by an addition from Utah Territory and admitted into the Union on 31 Oct. 1864 as the 36th state. In 1866 and 1867 the area of the state was significantly enlarged at the expense of the Territories of Utah and Arizona.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Nevada is bounded north by Oregon and Idaho, east by Utah, south-east by Arizona, with the Colorado River forming most of the boundary, south and west by California. Area 110,561 sq. miles, 667 sq. miles being water. The federal government in 1986 owned 59,814,558 acres, or 84% of the land area. Vacant public lands, 48,509,706 acres. The Bureau of Indian Affairs controlled 1.25m. acres.

Census population on 1 April 1980, 799,184, an increase of 310,446 or 63.5% since 1970. Estimate (1987) 1,053,230. Births, 1987, were 17,023 (16.1 per 1,000 population); deaths, 8,941 (8.5); marriages, 123,590 (117.4); divorces, 13,936 (13.2); infant deaths, 167 (9.8 per 1,000 live births).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic and all others</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	74,276	513	5,240	1,846	81,875	0.7
1930	84,515	516	4,871	1,156	91,058	0.8
1960	263,443	13,484	6,681	1,670	285,278	2.6
1970	449,850	27,579	7,329	3,980	488,738	4.4
1980	699,377	50,791	<i>All others</i> 49,016		799,184	7.2

Of the total population in 1980, 404,372 were male, 681,682 were urban and 556,021 were 20 years of age or older.

The largest cities are Las Vegas, with population at the 1980 census of 164,674 (1987 estimate, 217,360); Reno, 100,756 (120,770); North Las Vegas, 39,196 (51,020); Sparks, 38,114 (55,080); Carson City, 30,807 (36,650); and Henderson, 20,905 (54,590). Clark County (Las Vegas, North Las Vegas and Henderson) and Washoe County (Reno and Sparks) together had 81% of the total state population in 1980 (82% in 1987).

**CLIMATE.** Las Vegas. Jan. 44°F (6.7°C), July 85°F (29.4°C). Annual rainfall 4'' (112 mm). Reno. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 7'' (178 mm). See Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution adopted in 1864 is still in force, with 110 amendments by 1986. The Legislature meets biennially (and in special sessions) and consists of a Senate of 20 members elected for 4 years, half their number retiring every 2 years, and an Assembly of 40 members elected for 2 years. The Governor, Lieut.-Governor and Attorney-General are elected for 4 years. Qualified electors are all citizens with the usual residential qualification. Nevada is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 2 representatives. A Supreme Court of 5 members is elected for 4 years on a non-partisan ballot.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 206,040 votes, Dukakis, 132,738.

The state capital is Carson City. There are 17 counties, 17 incorporated cities and towns, 44 unincorporated towns and 1 city-county (Carson City).

*Acting Governor:* Bob Miller (D.), 1989-91 (\$65,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* (Vacant) (\$10,500).

*Secretary of State:* F. S. Del Papa (D.) (\$42,500).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1988, state general fund revenues

were \$615.7m., including federal receipts; budget expenditures were \$574.4m. Education, followed by human resources and public safety, received the largest appropriations.

State bonded indebtedness on 30 June 1988, was \$101.6m. The state has no franchise tax, capital stock tax, special intangibles tax, chain stores tax, stock transfer tax, admissions tax, gift tax, income taxes or inheritance tax. The sales and use tax and gaming taxes are the largest revenue producers.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$15,445.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Electricity power stations in Aug. 1988 supplied 402,499 residential customers, 58,657 commercial, and 587 industrial customers.

**Minerals.** Production, 1987 was \$1,446.8m. In order of value: Gold (\$1,200.3m.), silver (\$90.9m.), sand and gravel (\$30.7m.), gypsum (\$8.9m.), barite (\$4.8m.). Petroleum produced, 3.1m. bbls. Other minerals are iron ore, mercury, lime, lithium, gemstones, lead, molybdenum, fluorspar, perlite, pumice, clays, talc, salt, tungsten, magnesite, diatomite and zinc.

**Agriculture.** In 1988, an estimated 2,400 farms had a farm area of 8.8m. acres (9.2m. in 1960). Farms averaged 3,667 acres. Area under irrigation (1988) was 756,800 acres compared with 542,976 acres in 1959.

Gross income, 1987, from crops, livestock and government payments, \$276.5m. Cattle, hay, dairy products, potatoes and sheep are the principal commodities in order of cash receipts. Total value of crops produced, \$75.8m. On 1 Sept. 1988 there were 26,000 milch cows, 500,000 beef cattle, 96,000 sheep and lambs.

**Forestry.** The area of national forests (1988) under US Forest Service administration was 5,121,264 acres. National forests: Toiyabe (2,537,851 acres); Humboldt (2,469,395); Inyo (63,938); Lake Tahoe Basin (50,080).

**INDUSTRY.** The main industry is the service industry (43.5% of employment), especially tourism and legalized gambling; others include, mining and smelting, livestock and irrigated agriculture, chemical manufacturing, and lumber processing. In 1986 there were 883 manufacturing establishments with 22,450 employees, earning \$482.8m.

Gaming industry gross revenue for financial year 1987, \$3,924.9m. There were at the same time 2,105 gaming licences in force and 4,501 licensed games.

**LABOUR.** The annual average unemployment for 1987 was 6.3% of the work force. All industries employed 498,072 workers. Main industries and employees, 1987: Service industries, 217,020; retail trade, 83,441; government, 63,501; finance, insurance and real estate, 23,240; transport, 15,310; public works and utilities, 11,529; mining, 8,234.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Highway mileage (federal, state and local) totalled 51,777 in 1987, of which 9,276 miles were surfaced; motor vehicle registrations at 31 Dec. 1987 numbered 896,573.

**Railways.** In 1987 there were 1,256 miles of main-line railway. Nevada is served by Southern Pacific, Union Pacific and Western Pacific railways, and Amtrak passenger service for Las Vegas, Elko, Reno and Sparks.

**Aviation.** There were 114 civil airports and heliports in 1987. During 1987 McCarran International Airport (Las Vegas) handled 14.6m. passengers and Reno-Cannon International Airport handled 3.4m. passengers.

**Post.** In 1987 there were 84 telephone exchanges, 13 local exchange carriers with 566,846 telephones in service.



## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Prohibition of marriage between persons of different race was repealed by statute in 1959.

A 1965 Civil Rights Act makes it illegal for persons operating public accommodations, employers of 15 or more employees, labour unions, and employment agencies to discriminate on the basis of race, colour, religion or national origin; a 1971 law makes racial discrimination in the sale or renting of houses illegal. A Commission on Equal Rights of Citizens is charged with enforcing these laws.

Between 1924 and 1967 executions (by lethal gas—the first state to adopt this method, in 1921), numbered 31. Capital punishment was abolished in 1972 and later re-introduced; there have since been 2 executions (by lethal gas) in 1979 and 1985.

**Religion.** Roman Catholics were the most numerous religious group at the 1980 census, followed by members of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (Mormons) and various Protestant churches.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for children from 7 to 17 years of age. In 1987 the 207 public elementary schools had 94,288 pupils; there were 95 secondary public schools with 73,901. There were 4,049 elementary teachers (average salary \$27,012), 3,113 secondary teachers (\$28,784). There were 72 private schools (8,852 pupils). The University of Nevada, Reno, had, in 1987–88, 351 full-time instructors and 10,624 students (regular, non-degree and correspondent), and University of Nevada, Las Vegas, 402 instructors and 13,778 students. Two-year community colleges operate as part of the University of Nevada system in Reno, Carson City, Elko, Fallon and Las Vegas. There were (1987–88) 207 instructors and 28,785 students.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 34 hospitals (3,909 beds); there were 29 skilled nursing units (2,736 beds).

**Social Security.** In 1987 benefits were paid to 138,400 persons: 92,210 retired (aged 62 and over) workers (average payment \$514 per month); 13,970 widows and widowers (\$471); 11,360 disabled workers (\$536), 9,640 wives and husbands (\$257), 11,220 children (\$292). Social Security beneficiaries represented 13% of the population.

### Further Reading

*Information:* Bureau of Business and Economic Research (Univ. of Nevada).

Bushnell, E. and Driggs, D. W., *The Nevada Constitution: Origin and Growth*. Univ. of Nevada Press, 5th ed., 1980

Hulse, J. W., *The Nevada Adventure, A History*. Univ. of Nevada Press, 2nd ed., 1969

Laxalt, R., *Nevada: A History*. New York, 1977

Mack, E. M. and Sawyer, B. W., *Here is Nevada: A History of the State*. Sparks, Nevada, 1965

Paher, S. W., *Nevada, an Annotated Bibliography*. Nevada, 1980

*State Library:* Nevada State Library, Carson City. *State Librarian:* Mildred J. Heyer.

## NEW HAMPSHIRE

**HISTORY.** New Hampshire, first settled in 1623, is one of the 13 original states of the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** New Hampshire is bounded north by Canada, east by Maine and the Atlantic, south by Massachusetts and west by Vermont. Area, 9,279 sq. miles, of which 286 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 920,610, an increase of 24.8% since 1970. Estimate (1987), 1,057,000. Births, 1987, were 16,768 (15.9 per 1,000 population); deaths, 8,503 (7.9); infant deaths (1986), 116 (7.4 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 10,857 (10.6); divorces, 4,947 (4.8).

Population at 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	429,906	564	34	68	430,572	47.7
1930	464,351	790	64	88	465,293	51.6
1960	604,334	1,903	135	549	606,921	65.2
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	733,106	2,505	2,070		737,681	81.7
1980	910,099	3,990	6,521		920,610	101.9

Of the total population in 1986, 503,000 were male; those 21 years of age or older numbered 717,000.

The largest city of the state is Manchester, with a 1987 population of 100,535. Other cities are: Nashua, 79,859; Concord (capital), 35,803; Portsmouth, 29,014; Dover, 24,360; Rochester, 24,226; Keene, 22,422; Laconia, 16,378; Claremont, 14,003; Berlin, 12,093; Lebanon, 12,282; Somersworth, 10,739; Franklin, 8,217.

**CLIMATE.** Manchester, Jan. 22°F (−5.6°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,003 mm). *See* New England, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** While the present constitution dates from 1784, it was extensively revised in 1792 when the state joined the Union. Since 1775 there have been 16 state conventions with 49 amendments adopted to amend the constitution.

The Legislature consists of a Senate of 30 members, elected for 2 years, and a House of Representatives, restricted to between 375 and 400 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and 5 administrative officers called 'Councillors' are also elected for 2 years.

Electors must be adult citizens, able to read and write, duly registered and not paupers or under sentence for crime. New Hampshire sends to the Federal Congress 2 senators and 2 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 280,533 votes, Dukakis, 163,205.

The capital is Concord. The state is divided into 10 counties.

*Governor:* Judd Gregg (R.), 1989–91 (\$72,146).

*Secretary of State:* William M. Gardner (D.) (\$50,675).

**BUDGET.** The state government's general revenue for the fiscal year ending 30 June 1985 (US Census Bureau figures) was \$1,361m. (\$434m. from taxes, \$307m. from federal aid); general expenditures, \$1,012m. (\$201m. on education, \$185m. on public welfare, \$163m. on highways).

Net long-term debt, 30 June 1985, was \$1,979m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$17,133.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Minerals are little worked; they consist mainly of sand and gravel, stone, and clay for building and highway construction. Value of mineral production, 1982, \$23m.

**Agriculture.** In 1987, there were 3,200 farms occupying over half a million acres; average farm was 162.5 acres. Average value per acre, \$1,794. The US Soil Survey estimates that the state has 164,167 acres of excellent soil, 486,615 acres of fair soil, 530,630 of poor soil and 3,843,798 of non-arable soil. Only 636,195 acres (11% of the total area) show moderate erosion.

Cash income, 1987, from crops, \$38m., and livestock and products, \$72m. The chief field crops are hay and vegetables; the chief fruit crop is apples. Livestock on farms, 1987: 55,000 all cattle; 24,000 milch cows; 12,000 sheep; 9,000 swine; 365,000 poultry; 26,000 turkeys; about 30,000 horses.

**Forestry.** In 1988 forest land totalled 5m. acres; national forest, 735,000 acres.

**Fisheries.** The 1985 catch was 8m. lb., worth \$5m.

**INDUSTRY.** Total non-agricultural employment (1986), 449,000, of which 118,100 are in manufacturing, 120,600 in trade, 107,800 in services.

Principal manufactures: non-electrical machinery, electrical machinery, metal products, textiles and shoes.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 15 March 1988 the state's public road mileage was 14,642 miles of which 9,848 were non-federal-aid rural, 1,488 non-federal-aid urban, and 3,316 were federal-aid roads of which 223 miles were interstate. Motor vehicles registered, 1985, numbered 905,000.

**Railways.** In 1988 the length of railway in the state was 608 miles.

**Aviation.** In 1988 there were 15 public and 19 private airports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state prison held 940 persons on 1 June 1988. Since 1930 there has been only one execution (by hanging)—a white man, for murder, in 1939.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic Church is the largest single body. The largest Protestant churches are Congregational, Episcopal, Methodist and United Baptist Convention of N.H.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for children from 6 to 14 years of age during the whole school term, or to 16 if their district provides a high school. Employed illiterate minors between 16 and 21 years of age must attend evening or special classes, if provided by the district.

In 1987–88 the public elementary and secondary schools had 166,045 pupils and (1987) 10,112 classroom teachers. Public school salaries, 1987, averaged \$24,019. Total expenditure on public schools in 1986–87 was estimated at \$726m.

Of the 4-year colleges, the University of New Hampshire (1866) had 10,609 students in 1985–86; New Hampshire College (1932) had 3,373; Keene State College (1909) had 2,981; River College (1933) had 2,285. Dartmouth College, at Hanover was founded in 1769 (4,604 students in 1985–86). Total enrolment, 1986, in 30 institutions of higher education, was 54,453 students.

**Health.** In 1987 the state had 37 hospitals.

**Social Security.** The Division of Human Services handles public assistance for (1) aged citizens 65 years or over, (2) needy aged aliens, (3) needy blind persons, (4) needy citizens between 18 and 64 years inclusive, who are permanently and totally disabled, (5) needy children under 18 years, (6) Medicaid and the medically needy not eligible for a monthly grant.

In May 1988, 1,298 persons were receiving old-age assistance of an average \$87 per month; 2,761 permanently and totally disabled, \$133 per month; 4,003 families with dependent children, \$439 per month.

## Further Reading

Delorme, D. (ed.) *New Hampshire Atlas and Gazetteer*. Freeport, 1983

Morison, E. E. and E. F., *New Hampshire*. New York, 1976

Squires, J. D., *The Granite State of the United States: A History of New Hampshire from 1623 to the present*, 4 vols., New York, 1956

## NEW JERSEY

**HISTORY.** New Jersey, first settled in the early 1600s, is one of the 13 original states in the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** New Jersey is bounded north by New York, east by the Atlantic with Long Island and New York City to the north-east, south



by Delaware Bay and west by Pennsylvania. Area (US Bureau of Census), 7,787 sq. miles (319 sq. miles being inland water). Census population, 1 April 1980, 7,364,823, an increase of 2.7% since 1970. Estimate (1985) 7,562,000. Births, 1984, were 97,488 (13 per 1,000 population); deaths, 66,477 (8.8); infant deaths, 908 (9.3 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 62,192 (8.3); divorces, 28,469 (3.8).

Population at 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>All others</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	2,445,894	89,760	168	1,345	—	2,537,167	337.7
1930	3,829,663	208,828	213	2,630	122	4,041,334	537.3
1960	5,539,003	514,875	1,699	8,778	2,427	6,066,782	739.5
1970	6,349,908	770,292	4,706	20,537	22,721	7,168,164	953.1
1980	6,127,467	925,066	8,394	103,847	200,048	7,364,823	986.2

Of the population in 1980, 3,533,012 were male, 6,557,377 persons were urban, 5,116,581 were 20 years of age or older.

Census population of the larger cities and towns in 1980 was:

Newark	329,248	Irvington	61,493	Parsippany-	
Jersey City	223,532	Union City	55,593	Troy Hills	49,868
Paterson	137,970	Vineland	53,753	Middletown	62,574
Elizabeth	106,201	Passaic	52,463	Union Township	50,184
Trenton (capital)	92,124	Woodbridge	90,074	Bloomfield	47,792
Camden	84,910	Hamilton	82,801	Atlantic City	40,199
Clifton	74,388	Edison	70,193	Plainfield	45,555
East Orange	77,025	Cherry Hill	68,785	Hoboken	42,460
Bayonne	65,047			Montclair	38,321

Largest urbanized areas (1980) were: Newark, 1,963,000; Jersey City, 555,483; Paterson-Clifton-Passaic, 447,785; Trenton (NJ-Pa.), 305,678.

**CLIMATE.** Jersey City. Jan. 31°F (−0.6°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,025 mm). Trenton. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,003 mm). *See Atlantic Coast*, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The legislative power is vested in a Senate and a General Assembly, the members of which are chosen by the people, all citizens (with necessary exceptions) 18 years of age, with the usual residential qualifications, having the right of suffrage. The present constitution, ratified by the registered voters on 4 Nov. 1947, has been amended 27 times. In 1966 the Constitutional Convention proposed, and the people adopted, a new plan providing for a 40-member Senate and an 80-member General Assembly. This plan, as certified by the Apportionment Commission and modified by the courts, provides for 40 legislative districts, with 1 senator and 2 assemblymen elected for each. Assemblymen serve 2 years, senators 4 years, except those elected at the election following each census, who serve for 2 years. The Governor is elected for 4 years.

The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 14 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 1,699,634 votes, Dukakis, 1,275,063.

The capital is Trenton. The state is divided into 21 counties, which are subdivided into 567 municipalities—cities, towns, boroughs, villages and townships.

*Governor:* Thomas H. Kean (R.), 1986–90 (\$85,000).

*Secretary of State:* Jane Burgio (\$66,000).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1985 (budget figures) general revenues were \$9,080.2m. (taxation \$4,921m. and federal aid, \$2,419.6m.); general expenditures were \$8,824m. (education, \$2,663m.; highways, \$117.5m., and public welfare, \$912.7m.).

Total net long-term debt, 31 Dec. 1984, was \$2,381.2m.

*Per capita* personal income (1984) was \$15,282.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The chief minerals are stone (\$15m., 1984) and sand and gravel (\$34.3m.); others are zinc (\$3m.), clay products (\$986,000), peat and gemstones. New Jersey is a leading producer of greensand marl, magnesium compounds and peat. Total value of mineral products, 1984, was \$149m.

**Agriculture.** Livestock raising, market-gardening, fruit-growing, horticulture and forestry are pursued. In 1984, 9,400 farms had a total area of 970,000 acres; average farm in 1984 had 103 acres valued at \$3,056 per acre.

Cash income, 1984, from crops and livestock, \$513m.

Leading crops are tomatoes (value, \$18.2m., 1984), all corn (\$29.6m.), peaches (\$29.8m.), hay (\$11.7m.), blueberries (\$18.2m.), soybeans (\$22.8m.).

Farm animals on 1 Jan. 1984 included 40,000 milch cows, 100,000 all cattle, (1982) 8,000 sheep and lambs and 41,000 swine.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1984 manufacturing establishments employed 731,200 workers, receiving (preliminary) \$19,700m. in wages. The principal industries by value are: Chemicals and allied products, construction, electrical and electronic equipment, machinery (except electrical).

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1983 there were 33,879 miles of roads (municipal, 24,043 miles; state, 2,246 miles; county, 6,680 miles; others, 910 miles).

**Railways.** In Sept. 1985, the state had 1,882.05 route miles of railway.

**Aviation.** There were (1985) 95 airports (31 restricted), of which 14 (3) were publicly owned and 50 (28) privately owned.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** State prisons in Aug. 1985 had 12,814 adult and 587 juvenile inmates. The last execution (by electrocution) was in 1963; it was the 160th, all for murder. Future executions would be by lethal injection.

The constitution of New Jersey forbids discrimination against any person on account of 'religious principles, race, color, ancestry or national origin'. The state has had, since 1945, a 'fair employment act', i.e., a Civil Rights statute forbidding any employer, public or private (with 6 or more employees), to discriminate against any applicant for work (or to discharge any employee) on the grounds of 'race, creed, color, national origin or ancestry'. Trade unions may not bar Negroes from membership.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic population of New Jersey in 1984 was 3.1m. The five largest Protestant sects were United Methodists, 150,000; United Presbyterians, 174,000; Episcopalians, 147,000; Lutherans, 89,000; American Baptists, 74,000. There were 40,000 African Methodists and 4,000 Christian Methodist Episcopalians. The main Jewish sects were Reform (38,000) and Conservative (27,000).

**Education.** Elementary instruction is compulsory for all from 6 to 16 years of age and free to all from 5 to 20 years of age. In autumn 1984 public elementary schools had 725,700 and secondary schools had 422,138 enrolled pupils; public colleges in autumn 1984 had 313,985 students, including 117,212 in community colleges, and independent colleges had 63,607. The total cost of public schools, 1984-85, \$5,507m. Average salary of all elementary and secondary classroom teachers in public schools 1984-85 was \$25,000.

Rutgers, the State University (founded as Queen's College in 1766) had, in 1984, an opening autumn enrolment of 47,200 full- and part-time students. Princeton (founded in 1746) had 4,500 undergraduate and 1,500 graduate students. Fairleigh Dickinson (1941), had 9,770 undergraduate and 5,658 graduate students; Kean College, 12,930 students in 1983; Montclair State College, 14,949 in 1983; Glassboro State College, 8,960 in 1983; Trenton State College, 9,268 in 1983.

**Health.** In 1984 the state had 136 hospitals (34,445 beds), listed by the American Hospital Association.

**Social Security.** In the financial year 1982 gross expenditure for all public assistance programmes was \$563,000,000. Average monthly total of cases was \$358,000 with an average grant per case of \$350.

### Further Reading

*Legislative District Data Book.* Bureau of Government Research. Annual

*Manual of the Legislature of New Jersey.* Trenton. Annual

Boyd, J. P. (ed.) *Fundamentals and Constitutions of New Jersey, 1664–1954.* Princeton, 1964

Cunningham, J. T., *New Jersey: America's Main Road.* Rev. ed. New York, 1976

Kull, I. Stoddard (ed.), *New Jersey: a History.* New York, 1930

League of Women Voters of New Jersey. *New Jersey: Spotlight on Government.* Rutgers Univ. Press, 3rd ed., 1978

Lehne, R. and Rosenthal, A. (eds.) *Politics in New Jersey.* Rev. ed., Rutgers Univ. Press, 1979

*State Library:* 185 W. State Street, Trenton, N.J. 08625. *State Librarian:* Barbara F. Weaver.

## NEW MEXICO

**HISTORY.** The first European settlement was established in 1598. Until 1771 New Mexico was the Spanish kings' 'Kingdom of New Mexico'. In 1771 it was annexed to the northern province of New Spain. When New Spain won its independence in 1821, it took the name of Republic of Mexico and established New Mexico as its northernmost department. When the war between the US and Mexico was concluded on 2 Feb. 1848 New Mexico was recognized as belonging to the US, and on 9 Sept. 1850 it was made a Territory. Part of the Territory was assigned to Texas; later Utah was formed into a separate Territory; in 1861 another part was transferred to Colorado, and in 1863 Arizona was disjoined, leaving to New Mexico its present area. New Mexico became a state in Jan. 1912.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** New Mexico is bounded north by Colorado, north-east by Oklahoma, east by Texas, south by Texas and Mexico and west by Arizona. Land area 121,335 sq. miles (258 sq. miles water). Public lands, administered by federal agencies (1975) amounted to 26.7m. acres or 34% of the total area. The Bureau of Indian Affairs held 7.3m. acres; the State of New Mexico held 9.4m. acres; 34.4m. acres were privately owned.

Census population, 1 April 1980, 1,303,303, an increase of 286,248 or 28% since 1970. Estimate (1987) 1,500,000. Vital statistics, 1986: Births, 27,281 (18.4 per 1,000 population); deaths, 10,007 (6.8); infant deaths, 254 (9.3 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 14,142 (9.6); divorces, 8,872 (6.0).

The population in 5 census years was:

	White	Black	Indian	Asian and Pacific Islander	Other	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	304,594	1,628	20,573	506		327,301	2.7
1940	492,312	4,672	34,510	324		531,818	4.4
1960	875,763	17,063	56,255	1,942		951,023	7.8
1970	915,815	19,555	72,788	7,842 <sup>1</sup>		1,016,000	8.4
1980	1,164,053	24,406	106,119	6,825	1,491	1,302,894	10.7

<sup>1</sup> Includes unspecified races, 1970.

Of the 1980 total, 642,157 were male, 939,963 persons were urban; 884,987 were 18 years of age or older.

Before 1930 New Mexico was largely a Spanish-speaking state, but since 1945 an influx of population from other states has reduced the percentage of persons of Spanish origin or descent to 36.6%.

The largest cities are Albuquerque, with census population, 1980, 332,336 (and 1986 estimate, 366,750); Santa Fe (capital), 49,299 (55,980); Las Cruces, 45,086 (54,090); Roswell, 39,676 (44,110); Farmington, 32,677 (39,050).



**CLIMATE.** Santa Fé. Jan. 29°F (−1.7°C), July 68°F (20°C). Annual rainfall 15'' (366 mm). *See* Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution of 1912 is still in force with 105 amendments. The state Legislature, which meets annually, consists of 42 members of the Senate, elected for 4 years, and 70 members of the House of Representatives, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 3 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 270,341 votes, Dukakis 244,497.

The state capital is Santa Fé. For local government the state is divided into 33 counties.

*Governor:* Garrey Carruthers (R.), 1987–91 (\$63,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Jack Stahl (R.), 1987–91 (\$40,425).

*Secretary of State:* Rebecca Vigil-Giron (D.), 1987–91 (\$40,425).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1987 (US Census Bureau figures) the states general revenues were \$3,268m. (\$1,573m. from taxation and \$566m. from federal government); general expenditures, \$3,074m. (education, \$1,298m.; highways, \$382m., and public welfare, \$317m.).

Long-term debt on 30 June 1985 was \$289m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$11,875.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** New Mexico is the country's largest domestic source of uranium, perlite and potassium salts. Production of recoverable  $U_3O_8$  was 2.3m. lb. in 1987; perlite, 664,969 short tons; potassium salts, 1.3m. short tons; petroleum, 72.3m. bbls (of 42 gallons); natural gas, 710m. cu. ft; natural gas liquids, 34.1m. bbls (of 42 gallons); copper, 333,988 short tons; coal, 19.5m. short tons marketed. The value of the total mineral output (1986) was \$3,572m. An average of 15,000 persons were employed monthly in the mining industry in 1987.

**Agriculture.** New Mexico produces cereals, vegetables, fruit, livestock and cotton. Dry farming and irrigation have proved profitable in periods of high prices. There were 13,500 farms and ranches covering 44.6m. acres in 1987; in the 1982 US Census of Agriculture average farm (or ranch) was valued (land and buildings) at \$618,708; 3,732 farms and ranches were of 1,000 acres and over.

Cash income, 1987, from crops, \$223m., and from livestock products, \$521.9m. Principal crops are wheat (10.8m. bu. from 340,000 acres), hay (1.3m. tons from 305,000 acres) and sorghum/grains (8m. bu. from 140,000 acres). Farm animals on 1 Jan. 1988 included 59,000 milch cows, 1.3m. all cattle, 451,000 sheep and 31,000 swine (1987). National forest area (1986) covered 9.3m. acres.

**INDUSTRY.** Average monthly non-agricultural employment during 1987 was 529,500: 38,400 were employed in manufacturing, 138,200 in government. Value of manufactures shipments, 1986, \$3,776.4m.; leading industries, food and kindred products, transport and equipment, lumber and wood.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** On 13 March 1987 the state had 79,735 miles of road, of which the state maintained 11,722 miles. Motor vehicle registrations, 1987, 1,425,682.

**Railways.** On 31 Dec. 1987 there were 2,062 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** There were 71 public-use airports in Dec. 1988.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The number of state prison inmates in Oct. 1988 was 3,101, including 380 in juvenile centres; there were also 72 New Mexico prisoners held outside the state. The death penalty (by electrocution formerly, and now by lethal injection)

has been imposed on 8 persons since 1933, 6 whites and 2 Negroes, all for murder. The last execution was in 1961.

Since 1949 the denial of employment by reason of race, colour, religion, national origin or ancestry has been forbidden. A law of 1955 prohibits discrimination in public places because of race or colour. An 'equal rights' amendment was added to the constitution in 1972.

**Religion.** There were (1975) approximately 356,530 Protestant Church members and 315,470 Roman Catholics.

**Education.** Elementary education is free, and compulsory between 6 and 17 years or high-school graduation age. In 1987-88 the 88 school districts had an estimated enrolment of 312,048 students in elementary and secondary schools of which private and parochial schools had 24,809. There were 15,292 teachers receiving an average salary of \$24,698. Public expenditure for elementary and secondary schools was \$993m.

The state-supported 4-year institutes of higher education are (1987-88 <sup>1</sup>):

	Full-time Faculty	Students
University of New Mexico, Albuquerque	1,290	27,480
New Mexico State University, Las Cruces	695	18,314
Eastern New Mexico University, Portales	213	7,903
New Mexico Highlands University, Las Vegas	99	2,047
Western New Mexico University, Silver City	80	1,498
New Mexico Institute of Mining and Technology, Socorro	93	1,197

<sup>1</sup> Figures include branches outside main campus in cities listed.

**Health.** In 1987 the state had 49 short-term hospitals (4,284 beds).

**Social Security.** In Dec. 1986, 17,622 persons were receiving federal supplemental security income for the disabled (average \$257.29 per month); 9,322 persons were receiving old-age assistance (average \$140.43 per month); 511 persons were receiving aid to the blind (average \$239.21 per month). A monthly average of 50,831 people received aid to families with dependent children (average \$83.64 per month).

### Further Reading

- New Mexico Business* (monthly; annual review in Jan.-Feb. issue). Bureau of Business and Economic Research, Univ. of N.M., Albuquerque
- New Mexico Progress Economic Review* (annual). Sunwest, Albuquerque
- New Mexico Statistical Abstract: 1988*. Bureau of Business and Economic Research, Univ. of N.M., Albuquerque, 1989
- Beck, W., *New Mexico: a History of Four Centuries*. Univ. of Oklahoma, 1979
- Garcia, C., Haine, P. and Rhodes, H., *State and Local Government in New Mexico*. Albuquerque, 1979
- Jenkins, M., and Schroeder, A., *A Brief History of New Mexico*. Univ. of New Mexico, 1974
- Muench, D. and Hillerman, T., *New Mexico*. Belding, Portland, Oregon, 1974
- Williams, G. L., *New Mexico in Maps*. Univ. of New Mexico, 1986

## NEW YORK STATE

**HISTORY.** From 1609 to 1664 the region now called New York was claimed by the Dutch; then it came under the rule of the English, who governed the country until the outbreak of the War of Independence. On 20 April 1777 New York adopted a constitution which transformed the colony into an independent state; on 26 July 1788 it ratified the constitution of the US, becoming one of the 13 original states. New York dropped its claim to Vermont after the latter was admitted to the Union in 1791. With the annexation of a small area from Massachusetts in 1853, New York assumed its present boundaries.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** New York is bounded west and north by

Canada with Lake Erie, Lake Ontario and the St Lawrence River forming the boundary; east by Vermont, Massachusetts and Connecticut, south-east by the Atlantic, south by New Jersey and Pennsylvania. Area, 49,108 sq. miles (1,731 sq. miles being water). Census population, 1 April 1980, 17,557,288, a decrease of 3.7% since 1970. Estimate (1985) 17,783,000. Births in 1984 were 251,062 (14.2 per 1,000 population); deaths, 168,852 (9.5); infant deaths, 2,789 (11.1 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 168,860 (9.5); divorces, 61,075 (3.4, includes all dissolutions).

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	8,966,845	134,191	6,046	6,532	9,113,614	191.2
1930	12,143,191	412,814	6,973	15,088	12,588,066	262.6
1960	15,287,071	1,417,511	16,491	51,678	16,782,304	350.2
<i>All others</i>						
1970	15,834,090	2,168,949	233,828		18,236,967	380.3
1980	13,961,106	2,401,842	1,194,340		17,557,288	367.0

Of the 1980 population, 8,338,961 were male, 14,857,202 were urban; those 20 years of age or older numbered 12,232,284. Aliens registered in Jan. 1980 numbered 801,411.

The population of New York City, by boroughs, census of 1 April 1980 was: Manhattan, 1,427,533; Bronx, 1,169,115; Brooklyn, 2,230,936; Queens, 1,891,325; Staten Island, 352,121; total, 7,071,030. The New York metropolitan statistical area had, in 1980, 9,080,777.

Population of other large cities and incorporated places census, April 1980, was:

Buffalo	357,002	Albany (capital)	101,767	Schenectady	67,877
Rochester	241,509	Utica	75,435	Mount Vernon	66,023
Yonkers	194,557	Niagara Falls	71,344	Troy	56,614
Syracuse	170,292	New Rochelle	70,345	Binghamton	55,745
White Plains	46,999	N. Tonawanda	35,760	Lindenhurst	26,919
Rome	43,826	Elmira	35,327	Rockville Center	25,405
Hempstead	40,404	Auburn	32,548	Newburgh	23,438
Freeport	38,272	Poughkeepsie	29,757	Garden City	22,927
Jamestown	35,775	Watertown	27,861	Massapequa Park	19,779
Valley Stream	35,769				

Other large urbanized areas, census 1980; Buffalo, 1.2m.; Rochester, 970,313; Albany-Schenectady-Troy, 794,298.

**CLIMATE.** Albany. Jan. 24°F (-4.4°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 34" (855 mm). Buffalo. Jan. 24°F (-4.4°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 36" (905 mm). New York. Jan. 30°F (-1.1°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,087 mm). *See* Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1894; a later constitutional convention, 1938, is now legally considered merely to have amended the 1894 constitution, which has now had 93 amendments. The Constitutional Convention of 1967 (4 April through 26 Sept.) was composed of 186 delegates who proposed a new state constitution; however this was rejected by the registered voters on 7 Nov. 1967. The Senate consists of 60 members, and the Assembly of 150 members, both elected every 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The right of suffrage resides in every adult who has been a citizen for 90 days, and has the residential qualifications; new voters must establish, by certificates or test, that they have had at least an elementary education.

The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 34 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 3,228,304 votes, Bush, 2,975,276.

The state capital is Albany. For local government the state is divided into 62 counties, 5 of which constitute the city of New York. New York leads in state parks and recreation areas, covering 252,984 acres in 1979.



Cities are in 3 classes, the first class having each 175,000 or more inhabitants and the third under 50,000. Each is incorporated by charter, under special legislation. The government of New York City is vested in the mayor (Edward Koch), elected for 4 years, and a city council, whose president and members are elected for 4 years. The council has a President and 37 members, each elected from a state senatorial district wholly within the city. The mayor appoints all the heads of departments, except the comptroller, who is elected. Each of the 5 city boroughs (Manhattan, Bronx, Brooklyn, Queens and Richmond) has a president, elected for 4 years. Each borough is also a county bearing the same name except Manhattan borough, which, as a county, is called New York, and Brooklyn, which is Kings County.

*Governor:* Mario Cuomo (D.), 1987-91 (\$130,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Stan Lundine (D.), 1987-91 (\$110,000).

*Secretary of State:* Gail Schaefer (D.), 1987-91 (\$79,218).

**BUDGET.** The state's general revenues for the financial year ending 31 March 1982 were \$16,142m. (\$14,959m. from taxes); general expenditures were \$16,126m. (\$5,298m. for education, \$8,049m. for social services, \$1,893m. for transport).

*Per capita* personal income was \$14,121 in 1984.

The assessed valuation in 1980 of taxable real property in New York City was \$38,056m. The assessed valuation of the state was \$86,741m.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Production of principal minerals in 1980: Sand and gravel (22,000 short tons), salt (5,500 short tons), zinc (33,629 tonnes), petroleum (824,296 bbls), natural gas (15,680m. cu. ft). The state is a leading producer of titanium concentrate, talc, abrasive garnet, wollastonite and emery. Quarry products include trap rock, slate, marble, limestone and sandstone. Value of mineral output in 1980 \$497.9m.

**Agriculture.** New York has large agricultural interests. In 1985 it had 45,000 farms, with a total area of 9m. acres; average farm was 200 acres; average value per acre, \$808.

Cash income, 1985, from crops \$719m. and livestock, \$1,845m. Dairying, with 18,500 farms, 1981, is an important type of farming with produce at a market value of \$1,383m. Field crops comprise maize, winter wheat, oats and hay. New York ranks second in US in the production of apples, and maple syrup. Other products are grapes, tart cherries, peaches, pears, plums, strawberries, raspberries, cabbages, onions, potatoes, maple sugar. Estimated farm animals, 1986, included 2m. all cattle, 968,000 milch cows, 55,000 sheep, 130,000 swine and 8m. chickens.

**INDUSTRY.** The main employers (1982 census) are service industries (997,800), trade (1,381,000) and manufacture (1,418,800). Leading industries were clothing, non-electrical machinery, printing and publishing, electrical equipment, instruments, food and allied products and fabricated metals.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1981) 109,485 miles of municipal and rural roads. The New York State Thruway extends 559 miles from New York City to Buffalo; in 1985 receipts from tolls amounted to \$189,273,009. The Northway, a 176-mile toll-free highway, is a connecting road from the Thruway at Albany to the Canadian border at Champlain, Quebec.

Motor vehicle registrations in 1985 were 9.6m., most of which (7.7m.) were private passenger vehicles.

**Railways.** There were in 1981, 3,891 miles of Class I railways. New York City has NYCTA and PATH metro systems, and commuter railways run by Metro-North, New Jersey Rail and Long Island Rail Road.

**Aviation.** There were 472 airports and landing areas in 1986.

**Shipping.** The canals of the state, combined in 1918 in what is called the Improved Canal System, have a length of 524 miles, of which the Erie or Barge canal has 340 miles. In 1981 the canals carried 807,925 tons of freight.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The State Human Rights Law was approved 12 March 1945, effective 1 July, 1945. The State Division of Human Rights is charged with the responsibility of enforcing this law. The division may request and utilize the services of all governmental departments and agencies; adopt and promulgate suitable rules and regulations; test, investigate and pass judgment upon complaints alleging discrimination in employment, in places of public accommodation, resort or amusement, education, and in housing, land and commercial space; hold hearings, subpoena witnesses and require the production for examination of papers relating to matters under investigation; grant compensatory damages and require repayment of profits in certain housing cases among other provisions; apply for court injunctions to prevent frustration of orders of the Commissioner.

On 30 Dec. 1984, 33,155 persons were in state prisons.

In 1963–81 there were no executions. Total executions (by electrocution) from 1930 to 1962 were 329 (234 whites, 90 Negroes, 5 other races; all for murder except 2 for kidnapping).

In 1985 murders reported in New York were 1,688; total violent crimes, 165,145. Police strength (sworn officers) in 1985 was 61,009 (39,193 New York City).

**Religion.** The churches are Roman Catholic, with 6,367,576 members in 1981, Jewish congregations (about 2m. in 1981) and Protestant Episcopal (299,929 in 1980).

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 7 and 16. In 1985 the public elementary and secondary schools had 2,605,363 pupils; classroom teachers numbered 175,256 in public schools. Total expenditure on public schools in 1985 was \$13,244m. Teachers' salaries, 1985, averaged \$29,200.

The state's educational system, including public and private schools and secondary institutions, universities, colleges, libraries, museums, etc., constitutes (by legislative act) the 'University of the State of New York', which is governed by a Board of Regents consisting of 15 members appointed by the Legislature. Within the framework of this 'University' was established in 1948 a 'State University' which controls 64 colleges and educational centres, 30 of which are locally operated community colleges. The 'State University' is governed by a board of 16 Trustees, appointed by the Governor with the consent and advice of the Senate.

Higher education in the state is conducted in 296 institutions (642,000 full-time and 371,000 part-time students in autumn 1982); 573,000 students are in public-control colleges and 439,000 in private.

In autumn 1980 the institutions of higher education in the state included:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Name and place</i>	<i>Teachers</i>	<i>Students</i>
1754	Columbia University, New York	3,965	17,410
1795	Union University, Schenectady and Albany	178	2,071
1824	Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, Troy	442	6,145
1831	New York University, New York	2,615	45,000
1846	Colgate University, New York	205	2,550
1846	Fordham University, New York	958	14,653
1847	University of the City of New York, New York	12,426	172,683
1848	University of Rochester, Rochester	1,549	11,159
1854	Polytechnic Institute of New York	242	4,583
1856	St Lawrence University, Canton	173	2,375
1857	Cooper Union Institute of Technology, New York	161	872
1861	Vassar College, Poughkeepsie	230	2,364
1863	Manhattan College, New York	291	3,498
1865	Cornell University, Ithaca	1,863	17,866
1870	Syracuse University, Syracuse	1,100	11,819
1948	State University of New York	13,228	372,415

The Saratoga Performing Arts Centre (5,100 seats), a non-profit, tax-exempt organization, which opened in 1966, is the summer residence of the New York City Ballet and the Philadelphia Orchestra—two groups which present special educational programmes for students and teachers.

**Health.** In 1981 the state had 278 hospitals (67,798 beds), 585 skilled nursing homes (62,435 beds) and 241 other institutions (24,302 beds). In 1986 mental health facilities had 21,836 patients and institutions for the mentally retarded had 10,581 patients.

**Social Security.** The federal Supplemental Security Income programme covered aid to the needy aged, blind and disabled from 1 Jan. 1975. In the state programme for 1980, \$4,543m. was paid in Medicaid to 2,288,000 people; aid to dependent children in 1985 went to 1,109,610 recipients, average benefits \$371 per family per month.

### Further Reading

*New York Red Book.* Albany, 1979–80

*Legislative Manual.* Department of State, 1980–81

*Managing Modern New York: the Carey Era.* Rockefeller Institute, Albany, 1985

*New York State Statistical Yearbook, 1986–87.* Rockefeller Institute, Albany

Connery, R. and G. B., *Governing New York State: The Rockefeller Years.* Academy of Political Science, New York, 1974

Ellis, D. M., *History of New York State.* Cornell Univ. Press, 1967

Flick, A. (ed.) *History of the State of New York.* Columbia Univ. Press, 1933–37

Lincoln, C., *Constitutional History of New York 1809–1877.* Rochester, 1906

Wolfe, G. R., *New York: A Guide to the Metropolis.* New York Univ. Press, 1975

*State Library:* The New York State Library, Albany 12230. *State Librarian and Assistant Commissioner for Libraries:* Joseph Shubert.

## NORTH CAROLINA

**HISTORY.** North Carolina, first settled in 1585 by Sir Walter Raleigh and permanently settled in 1663, was one of the 13 original states of the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** North Carolina is bounded north by Virginia, east by the Atlantic, south by South Carolina, south-west by Georgia and west by Tennessee. Area, 52,669 sq. miles, of which 3,826 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 5,874,429, an increase of 15.5% since 1970. Estimated population (1986), 6,331,000.

Births, 1984, were 86,705 (14.1 per 1,000 population); marriages, 52,123 (8.5); deaths, 51,496 (8.4); infant deaths, 1,099 (12.7 per 1,000 live births); divorces and annulments, 29,125 (4.7).

Population in 6 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	1,500,511	697,843	7,851	82	2,206,287	45.3
1930	2,234,958	918,647	16,579	92	3,170,276	64.5
1950	2,983,121	1,047,353	3,742	—	4,061,929	82.7
1960	3,399,285	1,116,021	38,129	2,012	4,556,155	92.2
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <span style="margin-right: 10px;">}</span> <i>All others</i> </div>						
1970	3,901,767	1,126,478	53,814		5,082,059	104.1
1980	4,453,010	1,316,050	105,369		5,874,429	111.5

Of the total population in 1980, 2,852,012 were male, 2,818,794 were urban and 3,976,359 were 20 years old or older; 14.8% were non-white.

Cities (with census population in 1980) are: Charlotte, 314,447; Greensboro, 155,642; Winston-Salem, 131,885; Raleigh (capital), 149,771; Durham, 100,831; High Point, 64,107; Asheville, 53,281; Fayetteville, 59,507.



**CLIMATE.** Climate varies sharply with altitude; the warmest area is in the south east near Southport and Wilmington; the coldest is Mount Mitchell (6,684 ft). Raleigh. Jan. 42°F (5·6°C), July 79°F (26·1°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,158 mm). See Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1971 (previous constitution, 1776 and 1868/76); it has had 19 amendments. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 50 members and a House of Representatives of 120 members; all are elected by districts for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The Governor may succeed himself but has no veto. There are 19 other executive heads of department, 8 elected by the people and 9 appointed by the Governor. All registered citizens with the usual residential qualifications have a vote.

The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 11 representatives.

In the presidential election of 1988 Bush polled 1,232,132 votes, Dukakis, 890,034.

The capital is Raleigh, established in 1792.

*Governor:* James G. Martin (R.), 1989–93 (\$100,000, plus \$11,500 annual expenses).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Jim Gardner (R.) (\$61,044, plus \$11,500 annual expenses).

*Secretary of State:* Rufus Edmiston (D.) (\$61,044).

**BUDGET.** General revenue for the year ending 30 June 1986 was \$4,910·9m. General expenditure was \$4,971·9m.

On 30 June 1986 the net total long-term debt amounted to \$757m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985–86) was \$11,903.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Mining production in 1985 was valued at \$474·7m. Principal minerals were stone, sand and gravel, phosphate rock, feldspar, lithium minerals, olivine, kaolin and talc. North Carolina ranked first in the production of scrap mica, feldspar, lithium minerals, olivine and phrophyllite. It is also the leading producer of bricks, making more than 1,000m. bricks a year.

**Agriculture.** In 1985 there were 76,000 farms in North Carolina covering 10·8m. acres; average size of farms was 142 acres and total estimated value \$18,500m.

Cash receipts from farming (1984), \$4,125m., of which \$2,198m. was from crops and \$1,927m. from livestock, dairy and poultry products. Main crop production: flue-cured tobacco, maize, soybeans, peanuts, wheat, sweet potatoes and apples. On 1 Jan. 1985 farms had 1·17m. all cattle, 2·3m. swine and 20·2m. chickens.

**Forestry.** Commercial forest covered 18·5m. acres (60% of land area), in 1984. Main products are hardwood veneer and hardwood plywood, furniture woods, pulp, paper and lumber.

**Fisheries.** Commercial fish catch, 1985, amounted to 215m. lb.; value approximately \$65m. The catch is mainly of menhaden, crabmeat, bay scallops, flounder, croaker, shrimps, sea trout, spots and clams.

**INDUSTRY.** North Carolina's manufacturing establishments in 1985 had 827,400 workers. The leading industries by employment are textiles, clothing, furniture, electrical machinery and equipment, non-electrical machinery, and food processing. In 1985 investment in new and expanded industry was \$2,758m. About 576,200 are employed in trade, 422,800 in government and 427,600 in services.

**TOURISM.** Total receipts of the travel industry, \$4,500m. in 1985.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state maintained, 1985, 76,459 miles of highways, comprising all rural

roads and 5,088 miles of urban streets which are major thoroughfares. In Oct. 1986, 3,499,178 automobiles, 1,152,156 trucks and 1,274,137 other vehicles were registered.

**Railways.** The state in 1986 contained 3,682 miles of railway operating in 91 of the 100 counties. There are 22 Class I, II and III rail companies.

**Aviation.** In 1986 there were 82 public airports of which 14 are served by major airlines.

**Shipping.** There are 2 ocean ports, Wilmington and Morehead City.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Total executions 1910–86, 365. There was one execution (by lethal injection) in 1986. Prison population at 31 Oct. 1986, 17,700.

**Religion.** Leading denominations are the Baptists (48.9% of church membership), Methodists (20.7%), Presbyterians (7.7%), Lutherans (3%) and Roman Catholics (2.7%). Total estimate of all denominations in 1983 was 2.6m.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory between 6 and 16.

Public school enrolment, 1985–86, was 1,080,887; elementary and secondary schools numbered 1,968. Instructional staff (1986) consisted of 57,630 classroom teachers; average salary \$22,476. Expenditure for public schools was \$2,770m., 65.5% from state, 25.2% from local and 9.3% from federal sources.

In autumn 1985–86 state-supported colleges and universities included 58 community and technical colleges with 654,000 full and part time students. The 16 senior universities are all part of the University of North Carolina system, the largest campus being North Carolina State University and Raleigh, with 23,400 students. The university system was founded in 1789 at Chapel Hill and first opened in 1792. Its 1986 autumn enrolment was 130,000 students.

In addition to the state-supported institutions there were 7 private junior colleges with an enrolment of 2,585 and 31 private senior institutions with a total enrolment of 19,009. The total undergraduate enrolment in private institutions for 1985 was 21,594.

**Health.** In Oct. 1986 the state had 160 hospitals (34,438 beds).

**Social Security.** In June 1982 there were 900,070 persons receiving \$300.4m. in social security benefits. Of that number 496,020 were retired, receiving \$186.67m.; 85,640 were disabled (\$34.7m.); 318,410 others received \$79m.

## Further Reading

- North Carolina Manual.* Secretary of State, Raleigh. Biennial  
 Clay, J. W. et al (eds.), *North Carolina Atlas: Portrait of a Changing Southern State.* Univ. of North Carolina Press, 1975  
 Corbitt, D. L., *The Formation of the North Carolina Counties.* Raleigh, 1969  
 Lefler, H. T. and Newsome, A. R., *North Carolina: The History of a Southern State.* Univ. of N.C., Chapel Hill, 1973

# NORTH DAKOTA

**HISTORY.** North Dakota was admitted into the Union, with boundaries as at present, on 2 Nov. 1889; previously it had formed part of the Dakota Territory, established 2 March 1861.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** North Dakota is bounded north by Canada, east by the Red River (forming a boundary with Minnesota), south by South Dakota and west by Montana. Land area, 69,262 sq. miles, and 1,403 sq. miles of water. The Federal Bureau of Indian Affairs administered (1971) 850,000 acres, of which 153,000 acres were assigned to tribes. Census population, 1 April 1980,

652,717, an increase of 34,956 or 5.7% since 1970. Estimate (1984), 686,000. Births in 1984 were 11,833 (17 per 1,000 population); deaths, 5,538 (8.0); infant deaths, 97; marriages, 5,786; divorces, 2,249.

Population at 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	569,855	617	6,486	98	577,056	8.2
1930	671,851	377	8,617	194	680,845	9.7
1960	619,538	777	11,736	274	632,446	9.1
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	599,485	2,494	15,782		617,761	8.9
1980	625,557	2,568	24,692		652,717	9.4

Of the total population in 1980, 328,126 were male, 317,821 were urban and 419,234 were 21 years old or older. Estimated outward migration, 1970–80, 16,983.

The largest cities are Fargo with population (census), 1980, of 61,383; Grand Forks, 43,765; Bismarck (capital), 44,485, and Minot, 32,843.

**CLIMATE.** Bismarck. Jan. 8°F (−13.3°C), July 71°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 16" (402 mm). Fargo. Jan. 6°F (−14.4°C), July 71°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 20" (503 mm). *See* High Plains and Mid-West (SW North Dakota is in the Plains, the rest in the mid-west lowlands), p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1889; it has had 95 amendments. The Legislative Assembly consists of a Senate of 53 members elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 106 members elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Qualified electors are (with necessary exceptions) all citizens and civilized Indians. The state sends to Congress 2 senators elected by the voters of the entire state and 1 representative.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 165,517 votes, Dukakis, 127,081.

The capital is Bismarck. The state has 53 organized counties.

*Governor:* George A. Sinner (D.), 1989–93 (\$60,862 plus expenses).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Lloyd Omdahl (D.), 1985–89 (\$12,500 plus expenses).

*Secretary of State:* Jim Kusler (D.), 1985–89 (\$43,380 plus expenses).

**FINANCE.** General revenue of state and local government year ending 30 June 1982, was \$1,286m.; general expenditures, \$1,191m., taxation provided \$533m. and federal aid, \$252m.; education took \$449m.; highways, \$148m., and public welfare, \$104m.

Total net long-term debt (local government) on 30 June 1982, \$325m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$12,052.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The mineral resources of North Dakota consist chiefly of oil which was discovered in 1951. Production of crude petroleum in 1984 was 52.6m. bbls; of natural gas, 76,800m. cu. ft. Output of lignite coal was 21.7m. short tons. Total value of mineral output, 1984, \$1,724m.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the chief pursuit of the North Dakota population. In 1985 there were 33,000 farms (61,963 in 1954) with an area of 41m. acres (41,876,924 in 1954); the average farm was of 1,242 acres. The greater number of farms are cash-grain or livestock farms with annual sales of \$20,000–\$39,999.

Cash income, 1985, from crops, \$2,060m., and from livestock, \$686m. North Dakota leads in the production of barley, sunflowers, flaxseed and durum. Other important products are wheat, pinto beans, sugar-beet, potatoes, hay, oats, rye and maize.

The state has also an active livestock industry, chiefly cattle raising. On 1 Jan.



1985 the farm animals were: 97,000 milch cows, 2m. all cattle, 215,000 sheep and 250,000 swine. The wool clip yielded (1984), 1.6m. lb. of wool from 180,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** National forest area, 1977, 422,000 acres, of which 115,000 acres are federally owned or managed.

**INDUSTRY.** From 1970 to 1984 agricultural employment fell from 51,920 to 51,480; non-agricultural jobs rose from 148,910 to 268,300. In 1985, 68,000 were employed in trade, 63,000 in government, 58,000 in services, 16,000 in transport and utilities, 15,000 in manufacturing.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state highway department maintained, in 1985, 7,237 miles of highway; local authorities, 95,750 miles, and municipal, 3,243 miles.

Car and truck registrations in 1985 numbered 712,000.

**Railways.** In 1984 there were 5,262 miles of railway.

**Aviation.** Airports in 1984 numbered 262, of which 107 were publicly owned.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state penitentiary, on 31 Dec. 1985, held 407 inmates. There is no death penalty.

**Religion.** The leading religious denominations are the Roman Catholics, with 171,185 members in 1975; Combined Lutherans, 216,579; Methodists, 28,880; Presbyterians, 18,636.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory between the ages of 7 and 16, or until the 17th birthday if the eighth grade has not been completed. In Oct. 1983 the public elementary schools had 81,797 pupils; secondary schools, 34,892 pupils. State expenditure on public schools, 1986, \$379m. or \$553 per capita. Teachers (4,900 in elementary and 2,900 in secondary schools) earned an average \$20,850 in 1986.

The university at Grand Forks, founded in 1883, had 11,068 students in 1984; the state university of agriculture and applied science, at Fargo, 9,453 students. Total enrolment in the 8 public institutions of higher education, 1984, 33,748.

**Health.** In 1985 the state had 59 hospitals (6,000 beds), and 81 nursing homes (6,400).

**Social Security.** In 1985 6,500 received SSI payments, including 2,400 aged (average \$116 per month). 4,000 disabled (\$209); total paid, \$12.7m.; 13,100 recipients in 4,700 families received Aid to Families with Dependent Children.

## Further Reading

*North Dakota Growth Indicators, 1984.* 20th ed. Economic Development Commission, Bismarck, 1985

*North Dakota Blue Book.* Secretary of State, Bismarck, 1981

*Statistical Abstract of North Dakota, 1983.* Bureau of Business and Economic Research, Univ. of North Dakota, 1983

Glaab, C. L. et al. *The North Dakota Political Tradition.* Iowa State Univ. Press, 1981

Jelliff, T. B., *North Dakota: A Living Legacy.* Fargo, 1983

Robinson, E. B., *History of North Dakota.* Univ. of Nebraska Press, 1966

## OHIO

**HISTORY.** The first organized white settlement was in 1788; Ohio unofficially entered the Union on 19 Feb. 1803; entrance was made official, retroactive to 1 March 1803, on 8 Aug. 1953.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Ohio is bounded north by Michigan and Lake Erie, east by Pennsylvania, south-east and south by the Ohio River (forming a boundary with West Virginia and Kentucky) and west by Indiana. Area, 41,330 sq. miles, of which 325 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980 10,797,630, an increase of 145,402 or 1.4% since 1970. Estimate (1986) 10,752,000. In 1984 births numbered 159,939 (14.9 per 1,000 population); deaths, 96,937 (9); infant deaths, 1,598 (10 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 98,708 (9.2); divorces and annulments, 53,492 (5).

Population at 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	4,654,897	111,452	127	645	4,767,121	117.0
1930	6,335,173	309,304	435	1,785	6,646,697	161.6
1960	8,909,698	786,097	1,910	8,692	9,706,397	236.9
<hr/>						
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	9,646,997	970,477	34,543		10,652,017	260.0
1980	9,597,458	1,076,748	123,424		10,797,630	263.2

Of the total population in 1980, 5,217,027 were male, 7,918,259 persons were urban. Those 20 years old or older numbered 7,294,471.

Census population of chief cities on 1 April 1980 was:

Cleveland	573,822	Hamilton	63,189	Cuyahoga Falls	43,890
Columbus	565,032	Lakewood	61,963	Mentor	42,065
Cincinnati	385,457	Kettering	61,186	Newark	41,200
Toledo	354,635	Euclid	59,999	Marion	37,040
Akron	237,177	Elyria	57,538	East Cleveland	36,957
Dayton	193,444	Cleveland Heights	56,438	North Olmsted	36,486
Youngstown	115,436	Warren	47,381	Upper Arlington	35,648
Canton	93,077	Mansfield	53,927	Lancaster	34,953
Parma	92,548	Lima	47,381	Garfield Heights	34,938
Lorain	75,416	Middletown	43,719	Zanesville	28,655
Springfield	72,563				

Urbanized areas, 1980 census: Cleveland, 1,898,825; Cincinnati, 1,401,491; Columbus (the capital), 1,093,316; Dayton, 830,070; Akron, 660,328; Toledo, 791,599; Youngstown-Warren, 531,350; Canton, 404,421.

**CLIMATE.** Cincinnati. Jan. 33°F (0.6°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 39" (978 mm). Cleveland. Jan. 27°F (-2.8°C), July 71°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 35" (879 mm). Columbus. Jan. 29°F (-1.7°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 34" (850 mm). *See* Great Lakes, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The question of a general revision of the constitution drafted by an elected convention is submitted to the people every 20 years. The constitution of 1851 had 141 amendments by 1983.

In the 117th General Assembly the Senate consisted of 33 members and the House of Representatives of 99 members. The Senate is elected for 4 years, half each 2 years; the House is elected for 2 years; the Governor, Lieut.-Governor and Secretary of State for 4 years. Qualified as electors are (with necessary exceptions) all citizens 18 years of age who have the usual residential qualifications. Ohio sends 2 senators and 21 representatives to Congress.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 2,411,719 votes, Dukakis, 1,934,922.

The capital (since 1816) is Columbus. Ohio is divided into 88 counties.

*Governor:* Richard Celeste (D.), 1987-90 (\$65,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Paul Leonard (D.), 1987-90 (\$42,543).

*Secretary of State:* Sherrod Brown (D.), 1987-90 (\$60,775).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1987 general revenue fund income was 11,183.9m. and expenditure, \$10,550.7m.

The bonded debt on 30 June 1986 was \$3,378m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$13,226 (current dollars).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Ohio has extensive mineral resources, of which coal is the most important by value: Output (1986) 34.7m. short tons; value at the mine, \$1,100.9m. Production of crude petroleum, 1986, 13.4m. bbls; natural gas, 182,072m. cu. ft (value, oil and gas, \$720.4m.). Other minerals include stone, clay, sand and gravel. Value of minerals, 1986, \$329.57m.

**Agriculture.** Ohio is extensively devoted to agriculture. In 1987, 84,000 farms covered 16m. acres; average farm value per acre, \$942.

Cash income 1984, from crop and livestock and products, \$3,843m. The most important crops in 1983 were: Maize (232m. bu.), wheat (58.6m. bu.), oats (15.4m. bu.), soybeans (101.7m. bu.). On 1 Jan. 1985 there were 1.97m. swine 1.8m. all cattle and 265,000 sheep.

**Forestry.** State forest area, 1982, 195,000 acres; total forest, 6,147,000 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In May 1987, manufacturing employed 1,091,000 workers; non-manufacturing, 3,315,000. The largest industry was manufacturing of non-electrical machinery, then transport equipment and fabricated metals.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 the state had 30,939 miles of urban and 82,349 miles of rural highway. The federal-aid highway system included 8,194 miles of primary roads, of which 1,549 miles were interstate. In 1986 there were (estimate) 8.1m. cars, trucks and buses, and 292,863 motorcycles.

**Railways.** Class I railroads operated 6,102 miles in 1986.

**Aviation.** Ohio had (1985) 194 commercial airports including one seaplane base; 597 non-commercial airports; 31 commercial heliports and 222 non-commercial. There were 5,825 licensed aeroplanes at 31 Dec. 1984.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A Civil Rights Act (1933) forbids inns, restaurants, theatres, retail stores and all other places of public resort to discriminate against citizens on grounds of 'colour or race'; none may be denied the right to serve on juries on the grounds of 'colour or race'; insurance companies are forbidden to discriminate between 'white persons and coloured, wholly or partially of African descent'.

A state Civil Rights Commission (created 1959) has general administrative powers to prevent discrimination because of race, colour, religion, national origin or ancestry in employment, labour organization membership, use of public accommodations and in obtaining 'commercial housing' or 'personal residence'. Ohio has no *de jure* segregation in the public schools.

The state's adult correctional institutions, Sept. 1985, held 20,000 inmates (average daily count). Total executions (by electrocution) since 1930 were 170, all for murder. There have been no executions since 1963. The Department of Rehabilitation and Correction was created in July 1972, and has established probation services in counties where services would otherwise be inadequate or non-existent.

**Religion.** Many religious faiths are represented, including (but not limited to) the Baptist, Jewish, Lutheran, Methodist, Presbyterian and Roman Catholic.

**Education.** School attendance during full term is compulsory for children from 6 to 18 years of age. In autumn 1987 public schools had 1.8m. enrolled pupils and 99,642 full-time equivalent classroom teachers. Teachers' salaries (1987-88) averaged (estimate) \$28,191. Operating expenditure on elementary and secondary schools for 1987 was \$6,100m.: state average per pupil, \$3,769. Universities and colleges had a total enrolment (autumn 1985) of 514,745 students of whom 135,481 were in private colleges. State appropriation to state universities 1984-85, \$1,100m. Average annual charge (undergraduate) at 4-year institutions: \$4,081 (state); \$7,432 (private).



Main bodies, 1986: (figures are for main campus in named city):

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Institutions</i>	<i>Enrolments</i>
1804	Ohio University, Athens (State)	14,684
1809	Miami University, Oxford (State)	15,430
1819	University of Cincinnati (State)	30,830
1826	Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland (Indep.)	8,352
1850	University of Dayton (R.C.)	10,693
1870	University of Akron (State)	26,644
1870	Ohio State University, Columbus (State)	53,446
1872	University of Toledo (State)	21,039
1887	Sinclair Community College, Dayton	16,247
1908	Youngstown University (State)	15,252
1910	Bowling Green State University (State)	17,104
1910	Kent State University (State)	20,324
1962	Cuyahoga Community College District (State/local)	24,972
1964	Cleveland State University (State)	18,032
1964	Wright State University (State)	14,580

**Health.** In 1983 the state had 236 hospitals (62,405 beds) listed by the American Hospital Association. State facilities for the severely mentally retarded had 2,862 resident in 1984.

Mentally retarded who do not need constant supervision occupy 1,024 group homes (7,993 beds) in residential areas (1983). In 1986 17 psychiatric hospitals had a daily average of 4,012 residents. In 1984, general hospitals had 74 units (3,080 beds) for the mentally ill and 56 beds for mentally retarded. There were 384 community mental health agencies in 1986.

**Social Security.** Public assistance is administered through 6 basic programmes: Aid to dependent children, emergency assistance, Medicaid, general relief, food stamps and social services; 49% of the costs (except general relief and adult emergency assistance) are met by the federal government.

In 1985 Medicaid cost \$1,767.3m. and served an average 1.5m. people. Aid to dependent children cost \$759.5m., to 672,414 people per month at \$290 maximum grant for a family of three. Food stamps cost \$57.3m. General relief cost \$206.8m., receipts varying from county to county. Optional State Supplement is paid to aged, blind or disabled adults. Free social services are available to those eligible by income or circumstances.

### Further Reading

*Official Roster: Federal State, County Officers and Department Information.* Secretary of State, Columbus. Biennial  
Rosebloom, E. H. and Weisenburger, F. P., *A History of Ohio.* State Arch. and Hist. Soc., Columbus, 1953

## OKLAHOMA

**HISTORY.** An unorganized area in the centre of the present state was thrown open to white settlers on 22 April 1889. The Territory of Oklahoma, organized in 1890 to include this area and other sections, was opened to white settlements by runs or lotteries during the next decade. In 1893 the Territory was enlarged by the addition of the Cherokee Outlet, which fixed part of the present northern boundary. On 16 Nov. 1907 Oklahoma was combined with the remaining part of the Indian Territory and admitted as a state with boundaries substantially as now.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Oklahoma is bounded north by Kansas, north-east by Missouri, east by Arkansas, south by Texas (the Red River forming part of the boundary) and, at the western extremity of the 'panhandle', by New Mexico and Colorado. Area 69,919 sq. miles, of which 1,137 sq. miles are water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 3,025,290, an increase of 465,827 or 18% since 1970. Estimate (1986), 3,305,000. Births, 1986, were 50,536; deaths, 29,708; infant deaths 517; marriages, 33,805; divorces, including annulments, 24,747.

The population at 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Other</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	1,444,531	137,612	74,825	187	1,657,155	23.9
1930	2,130,778	172,198	92,725	339	2,396,040	34.6
1960	2,107,900	153,084	68,689	1,414	2,328,284	33.8
1970	2,280,362	171,892	97,179	10,030	2,559,253	37.2
1980	2,597,783	204,658	169,292	53,557	3,025,290	43.2

In 1980, 1,476,719 were male, 2,035,082 were urban and those 20 years of age or older numbered 2,052,729. The US Bureau of Indian Affairs is responsible for 37 Indian tribes, 201,456 Indians on 1,229,341 acres (1984).

The most important cities with population, 1980 (and estimate 1986) are Oklahoma City (capital), 403,213 (445,300); Tulsa, 360,919 (373,000); Lawton, 80,054 (82,700); Norman, 68,020 (78,300); Enid, 50,363 (50,300); Midwest City, 49,559 (53,700); Broken Arrow, 35,761 (52,000); Edmond, 34,637 (51,200).

**CLIMATE.** 1985: Oklahoma City. Jan. 30.6°F (−0.8°C), July 80.9°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 44.2'' (1,123 mm). Tulsa. Jan. 30.2°F (1.0°C), July 82.9°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 51.31'' (1,303 mm). *See* Central Plains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution, dating from 1907, provides for amendment by initiative petition and legislative referendum; it has had 114 amendments.

The Legislature consists of a Senate of 48 members, who are elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives elected for 2 years and consisting of 101 members. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4-year terms; the Governor can only be elected for two terms in succession. Electors are (with necessary exceptions) all citizens 18 years or older, with the usual qualifications.

The state is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 6 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 678,244 votes, Dukakis, 483,373.

The capital is Oklahoma City. The state has 77 counties.

*Governor:* Henry Bellmon (R.), 1987–91 (\$70,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Robert S. Kerr (R.), 1987–91 (\$40,000).

*Secretary of State:* Hannah Atkins (D.), 1988–91 (\$37,500).

**BUDGET.** Total revenue for the year ending 30 June 1987 (State Budget Office figures) was \$5,018.3m. Total expenditure, \$5,052.9m.

Bonded indebtedness for the year ending 30 June 1985, \$1,599.6m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$10,270.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Production of mineral fuels, 1986: Petroleum, 149m. bbls; natural gas (wet), 1,927,964,000,000m. cu. ft.; coal, 2.9m. short tons. In 1986 there were 93,997 oilwells and 25,762 natural gaswells in production. Non-fuel mineral production (short tons), 1985: Cement, 1.6m.; gypsum, 1.6m.; sand and gravel (construction), 12.6m.; stone, 31.2m.; clays, 997,000; other important minerals are iodine, tripoli, barite, cadmium, feldspar, refined germanium, helium, lime, nitrogen, pumice and zinc. Value of non-fuel production, 1985, \$251.6m.

**Agriculture.** In 1985 the state had 71,000 farms with a total area of 33m. acres; average farm was 465 acres. In 1982, 2.2% of the population were engaged in farming or ranching. Of these, 58% were full-time farmers or ranchers, 32% part-owners and 10.78% tenants.

Cash income from crops and livestock products 1985, \$2,664m. The most valuable crop is wheat (production, 1985, 165m. bu.). Other crops included hay, cotton, lint and grain sorghums. Livestock on farms, 1985: Cattle and calves, 5.2m. head (valued at \$1,050.1m.); milch cows, 113,000; sheep and lambs, 90,000; chickens, 3.4m.; hogs and pigs, 200,000.

The Oklahoma Conservation Commission works with 91 conservation districts,

universities, state and federal government agencies. The early work of the conservation districts, beginning in 1937, was limited to flood and erosion control: since 1970, they include urban areas also.

Irrigated production has increased in the Oklahoma 'panhandle'. The Ogallala aquifer is the primary source of irrigation water there and in western Oklahoma, a finite source because of its isolation from major sources of recharge. Declining groundwater levels necessitate the most effective irrigation practices.

**Forestry.** There are 8.5m. acres of forest, one half considered commercial. The forest products industry is concentrated in the 18 eastern counties. There are 3 forest regions: Ozark (oak, hickory); Ouachita highlands (pine, oak); Cross-Timbers (post oak, black jack oak). Southern pine is the chief commercial species, at almost 80% of saw-timber harvested annually.

Replanting is essential and encouraged by a federal investment tax credit (10%) to non-industrial forest land owners; the federal Forestry Incentives Program is also available in 7 counties, for planting on non-industrial private land.

**INDUSTRY.** Total civilian labour force, 1985, 1.6m.; wholesale and retail trade employed 288,000; government and government enterprises, 252,400; services, 225,700; manufacturing, 172,400; mining, 66,300; finance, insurance and real estate, 64,000; transport and public utilities, 64,400; construction, 46,700. Unemployment, 1985, 7.1%.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985-86 there were 668.8 miles of inter-state (non-toll) highways, and 11,565.71 miles of other state highway open; there were 485.83 miles of toll roads (including inter-state), 317.46 miles of state park roads and 86,475.79 miles of county roads; 11,275.68 miles of local city streets; total roads and streets, 1986, 110,787.27 miles.

**Railways.** In 1987 Oklahoma had 4,352 miles of railway operated by 19 companies.

**Aviation.** Airports, 1987, numbered 320, of which 125 were publicly owned. Six cities were served by commercial airlines.

**Shipping.** The McClellan-Kerr Arkansas Navigation System provides access from east central Oklahoma to New Orleans through the Verdigris, Arkansas and Mississippi rivers. The Tulsa port of Catoosa handled 1.41m. tons inward and outward on 11,997 barges in 1986; about 30% arose from international trade. Muskogee handled 119,630 tons inward and outward, 30% international. Total tonnage, 3.1m. tons, mainly chemical fertilizer, farm produce, petroleum products, iron and steel, coal, sand and gravel.

**Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 179 radio and 16 television broadcasting stations, and 7 cable-TV companies.

**Newspapers.** In 1987 there were 51 daily and 183 weekly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Penal institutions, 15 Sept. 1987, held 8,281 inmates (7,743 of them male). There were 13 correction centres, 8 community treatment centres and 7 probation and parole centres.

The death penalty was suspended in 1966 and re-imposed in 1976. Since 1915 there have been 83 (52 whites, 27 Negroes, 4 other races) executions. Electrocution was replaced (1977) by lethal injection.

**Religion.** The chief religious bodies in 1980 were Baptists, 674,766; United Methodists, 248,635; Roman Catholics, 122,820; Churches of Christ, about 80,000; Assembly of God, 63,992; Disciples of Christ, 45,070; Presbyterian, 38,605; Lutheran, 33,664; Nazarene, 22,090; Episcopal, 21,500.

**Education.** In 1984-85 there were 617,931 pupils enrolled in grades K-12. There



were 40,889 teachers at elementary and secondary schools on average salaries of \$22,458. Total expenditure on public schools, \$1,631.67m. In 1985-86 total expenditure for vocational-technical education was \$78,060,127; there were 28,028 students enrolled.

Institutions of higher education with over 4,000 students:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Place</i>	<i>1985-86 Enrollment</i>
1891	Oklahoma State University	Stillwater, Okla.	34,400
		City, Okmulgee	18,833
1891	Central State University	Edmond	27,435
1892	University of Oklahoma	Norman	6,019
1894	University of Tulsa	Tulsa	6,744
1903	Southwestern Oklahoma State University	Weatherford	5,644
1909	East Central Oklahoma State University	Ada	10,737
1909	Northeastern Oklahoma State University	Tahlequah	5,820
1909	Southeastern Oklahoma State University	Durant	7,519
1909	Cameron University	Lawton	4,307
1965	Oral Roberts University	Tulsa	5,064
1968	Rose State College	Midwest City	16,232
1969	Tulsa Junior College	Tulsa	25,748
1970	Oklahoma City Community College	Oklahoma City	15,887

Total enrolment in institutions of higher education, 1985-86, 239,389; total expenditure, \$5,172.39m.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 142 hospitals (17,700 beds).

**Welfare.** In 1985-86 the Oklahoma Department of Human Services provided for field operations, \$72.7m., for payments and services, \$184.4m.; children and youth services, \$72.2m.; developmental disability, \$64.3m., medical services, \$490m.; rehabilitation, \$41.9m.; the ageing, \$23.2m.; teaching hospitals, \$148.9m.; administration, management information, and construction, \$54.2m.

In 1985 social security payments were being drawn by 497,000 persons; average monthly payments were: Retired workers, \$452; disabled workers, \$470; and widows and widowers, \$407. There were 402,000 military veterans; 420,000 enrolled in medicare (payment \$853m.); 270,000 receiving medicaid (\$460m.); 1m. workers (taxable wages \$6,432m.) per month covered by state unemployment insurance; average weekly insured unemployment, 27,000 people.

### Further Reading

- Directory of Oklahoma.* Dept. of Libraries, Oklahoma City (irregular), 1985-86  
*Chronicles of Oklahoma.* State Historical Society, Oklahoma City (from 1921, quarterly)  
*Statistical Abstract of Oklahoma.* 1984. Centers for Economic and Management Research, Univ. of Oklahoma, Norman, 1984  
Dale, E. E. and Aldrich, G., *History of Oklahoma.* New York, 1969  
Gibson, A. M., *The History of Oklahoma.* Rev. ed., Univ. of Oklahoma, Norman, 1984  
McReynolds, Edwin C., *Oklahoma: A History of the Sooner State.* Rev. ed. Univ. of Oklahoma, Norman, 1964  
Ruth, K. et al. (eds.), *Oklahoma: A Guide to the Sooner State.* Rev. ed. Univ. of Oklahoma, Norman, 1957  
Strain, J. W., *Outline of Oklahoma Government.* Rev. ed., Central State Univ., Edmond, 1983  
*State Library:* Oklahoma Dept. of Libraries, 200 N.E. 18th Street, Oklahoma City 73105.  
*State Librarian and State Archivist:* Robert L. Clark, Jr.

## OREGON

**HISTORY.** Oregon was first settled in 1811 by the Pacific Fur Co. at Astoria, a provisional government was formed on 5 July 1834; a Territorial government was organized, 14 Aug. 1848, and on 14 Feb. 1859 Oregon was admitted to the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Oregon is bounded north by Washington, with the Columbia River forming most of the boundary, east by Idaho, with the Snake River forming most of the boundary, south by Nevada and California and west by

the Pacific. Area, 97,073 sq. miles, 889 sq. miles being inland water. The federal government owned (1985) 30,110,212 acres (48.88% of the state area). Census population, 1 April 1980, 2,633,105, an increase of 541,720 or 26% since 1970. Estimated population (1987), 2,690,000. In 1986 births numbered 38,850 (14.6 per 1,000 population); deaths, 23,328 (8.8); infant deaths 368 (9.5 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 22,015 (8.3), and divorces, 15,774 (5.9).

Population at 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	655,090	1,492	5,090	11,093	672,765	7.0
1930	938,598	2,234	4,776	8,179	953,786	9.9
1960	1,732,037	18,133	8,026	9,120	1,768,687	18.4
1970	2,032,079	26,308	13,510	13,290	2,091,385	21.7
1980	2,490,610	37,060	27,314	34,775	2,633,105	27.3

Of the total population in 1980, 1,296,566 were male, 1,788,354 persons were urban. Those 18 years and older numbered 1,910,048.

The US Bureau of Indian Affairs (area headquarters in Portland) administers (1988) 768,665.2 acres, of which 633,613.36 acres are held by the US in trust for Indian tribes, and 135,052.36 acres for individual Indians.

The largest towns, according to 1980 census figures (and 1987 estimates), are: Portland, 366,383 (419,810); Eugene, 105,664 (107,485); Salem (the capital), 89,233 (95,375); Corvallis, 40,960 (41,800); Medford, 39,603 (43,875); Springfield, 41,621 (40,600); Beaverton, 31,926 (36,235); Albany, 26,678 (28,060). Metropolitan areas (1980): Portland, 1,236,294; Eugene-Springfield, 273,114; Salem, 249,655.

**CLIMATE.** Portland. Jan. 39°F (3.9°C), July 67°F (19.4°C). Annual rainfall 44" (1,100 mm). *See* Pacific Coast, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1859; some 250 items in it have been amended. The Legislative Assembly consists of a Senate of 30 members, elected for 4 years (half their number retiring every 2 years), and a House of 60 representatives, elected for 2 years. The Governor is elected for 4 years. The constitution reserves to the voters the rights of initiative and referendum and recall. In Nov. 1912 suffrage was extended to women.

The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 5 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 517,920 votes, Dukakis, 575,151.

The capital is Salem. There are 36 counties in the state.

*Governor:* Neil Goldschmidt (D.), 1987–91 (\$75,000).

*Secretary of State:* Barbara Roberts (D.) (\$57,500).

**BUDGET.** Oregon has 2-year financial periods. Total resources for the biennium 1987–89 were \$17,676,911,406 (federal funds, \$1,811.6m.; taxes, \$3,590m.); total expenditures, \$12,805,805,602 (education, \$3,293m.; economic development and consumer services, \$3,365.6m.; human resources, \$3,028.8m.).

In 1985 the outstanding bonded debt was \$6,605m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$14,041.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** On 1 Jan. 1984 four privately owned utilities, 11 municipally owned utilities, 18 co-operatives and 6 utility districts provided electricity in the state. The privately owned companies provided 77% of the electricity. Hydroelectricity plants (102 in 1985) have an installed capacity of 5.1m. kw., of which multi-purpose federal projects like the Bonneville Power Administration accounted for 3.5m. kw. The Trojan Nuclear plant has a capacity of 1,080mw., and Boardman coal-fired plant, 530mw.

**Minerals.** Oregon's mineral resources include gold, silver, nickel copper, lead, mercury, chromite, sand and gravel, stone, clays, lime, silica, diatomite, expandable

shale, scoria, pumice and uranium. There is geothermal potential. Metallurgical plant produce \$1,000m. worth (approximately) per annum.

**Agriculture.** Oregon, which has an area of 61,557,184 acres, is divided by the Cascade Range into two distinct zones as to climate. West of the Cascade Range there is a good rainfall and almost every variety of crop common to the temperate zone is grown; east of the Range stock-raising and wheat-growing are the principal industries and irrigation is needed for row crops and fruits. In 1987 38,490 were employed in farming.

There were, in 1986, 37,000 farms with an acreage of 17.9m. (29% of the land area); average farm size was 484 acres; most are family-owned corporate farms. Average value per acre (1985), \$579.

Cash receipts from crops in 1986 amounted to \$1,281m., and from livestock and livestock products, \$584m., of which cattle and calves made most. Principal crops are hay (3.1m. tons), wheat (58m. bu.), potatoes, peppermint, ryegrass seed, pears, onions, snap beans, sweet corn and barley.

Livestock. 1 Jan. 1986: Milch cows, 100,000; cattle and calves, 1.4m.; sheep and lambs, 430,000; swine, 115,000.

**Forestry.** About 29.6m. acres is forested, almost half of the state. Of this amount, 22.7m. is commercial forest land suitable for timber production; ownership is as follows (acres): US Forestry Service, 13.6m. (46.2%); US Bureau of Land Management, 2.7m. (9.1%); other federal, 176,000 (0.6%); State of Oregon, 886,000 (3%); other public (city, county), 131,000 (0.4%); private owners, 12m. (40.7%), of which the forest industry owns 5.3m., non-industrial private owners, 3.5m., Indians, 415,000, others, 2.8m. Oregon's commercial forest lands provided an estimated 1986 harvest of 8,700m. bd ft of logs, as well as the benefits of recreation, water, grazing, wildlife and fish. Trees vary from the coastal forest of hemlock and spruce to the state's primary species, Douglas-fir, throughout much of western Oregon. In eastern Oregon, ponderosa pine, lodgepole pine and true firs are found. Here, forestry is often combined with livestock grazing to provide an economic operation. Along the Cascade summit and in the mountains of northeast Oregon, alpine species are found.

Forest production in 1986 was worth \$3,085m.

**Fisheries.** All food and shellfish landings in the calendar year 1986 amounted to a value of \$62m. The most important are: Tuna, crabs, bottom fish, shrimp.

**INDUSTRY.** Forest products manufacturing is Oregon's leading industry, and in 1986 employed 64,700. The second most important industry is high technology. Gross State product, 1986, \$35,934m. Manufacturing employed 178,000; trade, 269,000; services, 230,000; government, 200,000.

**TOURISM.** In 1985, the total income from tourism was estimated to be \$2,600m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state maintains (1987) 7,572 miles of primary and secondary highways, almost all surfaced; counties maintain 27,823 miles, and cities 7,152 miles; there were 79,167 miles in national parks and federal reservations. Registered motor vehicles, 31 Dec. 1987, totalled 2.41m.

**Railways.** The state had (1980) 19 common carrier railways with a total mileage of 4,428.

**Aviation.** In Oct. 1984 there were 4 public-use and 85 personal-use heliports; 3 public-use seaplane bases; 203 personal-use airports; 111 public-use airports including 37 state-owned airports.

**Shipping.** Portland is a major seaport for large ocean-going vessels and is 101 miles inland from the mouth of the Columbia River. In 1985 the port handled 7.2m. short tons of cargo; main commodities for this and other Columbia River ports are grain and petroleum.



**Post and Broadcasting.** In Dec. 1988 there were 178 commercial radio stations and 23 educational radio stations. There were 17 commercial television stations and 6 educational television stations. There were also 5 campus limited radio stations and 1 subscription radio station.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 22 daily newspapers with a circulation of more than 650,000 and 100 non-daily newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are 8 correctional institutions in Oregon. Total inmates, 1988, 4,197.

The sterilization law, originally passed in 1917, was amended in 1967. The amendments changed the number of persons on the Board of Social Protection from 15 to 7 and provided that the Public Defender would automatically represent all persons examined. The basis on which a person would be subject to examination by the Board are: (a) if such person would be likely to procreate children having an inherited tendency to mental retardation or mental illness, or (b) if such person would be likely to procreate children who would become neglected or dependent because of the person's inability by reason of mental illness or mental retardation to provide adequate care.

**Religion.** The chief religious bodies are Catholic, Baptist, Lutheran, Methodists, Presbyterian and Mormon.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory from 7 to 18 years of age if the twelfth year of school has not been completed; those between the ages of 16 and 18 years, if legally employed, may attend part-time or evening schools. Others may be excused under certain circumstances. In 1985-86 the public elementary and secondary schools had 429,455 students. Total expenditure on elementary and secondary education (1986) was \$1,802m.; teachers' average salary (1986), \$26,000.

Leading state-supported institutions of higher education (autumn 1986) included:

	<i>Students</i>
University of Oregon, Eugene	17,142
Oregon Health Sciences University:	1,263
Oregon State University, Corvallis	15,199
Portland State University, Portland	15,640
Western Oregon State College, Monmouth	3,394
Southern Oregon State College, Ashland	4,552
Eastern Oregon State College, La Grande	1,604
Oregon Institute of Technology, Klamath Falls	2,995

Total enrolment in state colleges and universities, 1986, 61,759. Largest of the privately endowed universities are Lewis and Clark College, Portland, with (1986) 2,846 students; University of Portland, 2,610 students; Willamette University, Salem, 1,948 students; Reed College, Portland, 1,243 students, and Linfield College, McMinnville, 1,098 students. In 1986-87 there were 50,000 students (full-time equivalent) in community colleges.

**Health.** In 1988 there were 78 licensed hospitals; there were 2 state hospitals for mentally ill (937 patients), 1 for the mentally retarded (1,200) and 1 with both programmes (150).

**Social Security.** The State Adult and Family Services Division provides cash payments, medical care, food stamps, day care and help in finding jobs. In 1988 there were about 80,000 people on low incomes, many of them children in single-parent families, benefiting from the Aid to Families with Dependent Children Programme; about 220,000 people received food stamps.

There is also a Children's Services Division.

A system of unemployment benefit payments, financed by employers, with administrative allotments made through a federal agency, started 2 Jan. 1938.

### Further Reading

- Oregon Blue Book*. Issued by the Secretary of State. Salem. Biennial  
 Federal Writers' Project. *Oregon: End of the Trail*. Rev. ed. Portland, 1972  
 Baldwin, E. M., *Geology of Oregon*. Rev. ed. Dubuque, Iowa, 1976  
 Carey, C. H., *General History of Oregon, prior to 1861*. 2 vol. (1 vol. reprint, 1971) Portland, 1935  
 Corning, H. M. (ed.), *Dictionary of Oregon History*. New York, 1956  
 Dicken, S. N., *Oregon Geography*. 5th ed. Eugene, 1973.—with Dicken, E. F., *Making of Oregon: a Study in Historical Geography*. Portland, 1979.—with Dicken, E. F., *Oregon Divided: A Regional Geography*. Portland, 1982  
 Dodds, G. B., *Oregon: A Bicentennial History*. New York, 1977  
 Friedman, R., *Oregon for the Curious*. 3rd ed. Portland, 1972  
 Highsmith, R. M. Jr. (ed.), *Atlas of the Pacific Northwest*. Corvallis, 1973  
 McArthur, L. A., *Oregon Geographic Names*. 4th ed., rev. and enlarged. Portland, 1974  
 Patton, Clyde P., *Atlas of Oregon*. Univ. Oregon Press. Eugene, 1976  
*State Library*: The Oregon State Library, Salem. *Librarian*: Wesley Doak.

## PENNSYLVANIA

**HISTORY.** Pennsylvania, first settled in 1682, is one of the 13 original states in the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Pennsylvania is bounded north by New York, east by New Jersey, south by Delaware and Maryland, south-west by West Virginia, west by Ohio and north-west by Lake Erie. Area, 45,308 sq. miles, of which 420 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 11,863,895, an increase of 63,129 or 0.5% since 1970. Estimate (1986) 11,889,000. Births, 1986, 160,336; deaths, 123,852; infant deaths, 1,628; marriages, 87,558; reported divorces, 39,875.

Population at 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	All others	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	7,467,713	193,919	1,503	1,976	7,665,111	171.0
1930	9,196,007	431,257	523	3,563	9,631,350	213.8
1960	10,454,004	852,750	2,122	10,490	11,319,366	251.5
<hr/>						
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	10,745,219	1,015,884	39,663		11,800,766	262.9
1980	10,652,320	1,046,810	164,765		11,863,895	264.3

Of the total population in 1980, 47.9% were male, 69.3% were urban and 68.1% were 21 years of age or older.

The population of the larger cities and townships, 1980 census, was:

Philadelphia	1,688,210	Scranton	88,117	Lancaster	54,725
Pittsburgh	423,938	Reading	78,686	Harrisburg	53,264
Erie	119,123	Bethlehem	70,419	Wilkes-Barre	51,551
Allentown	103,758	Altoona	57,078	York	44,619

Larger urbanized areas, 1980 census: Philadelphia (in Pennsylvania), 3,682,709; Pittsburgh, 2,263,894; Northeast, 640,396, Allentown-Bethlehem-Easton (in Pennsylvania), 551,052; Harrisburg, 446,576.

**CLIMATE.** Philadelphia. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,006 mm). Pittsburgh. Jan. 31°F (-0.6°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 37" (914 mm). See Appalachian Mountains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1968. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 50 members chosen for 4 years, one-half being elected biennially, and a House of Representatives of 203 members chosen for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Every citizen 18 years of age, with the usual residential qualifications, may

vote. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 23 representatives. Registered voters in April 1988, 5,354,310.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 2,291,297 votes, Dukakis, 2,183,928.

The state capital is Harrisburg. The state is organized in counties (numbering 67), cities, boroughs, townships and school districts.

*Governor:* Robert Casey (D.), 1987-91 (\$85,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Mark S. Singel (D.), 1987-91 (\$67,500).

**BUDGET.** Total revenues for the year ending 30 June 1988 were \$12,989.3m.; general fund expenditure, \$11,024.9m.; transport, \$1,449.8m.; public welfare, \$3,941.6m.).

On 30 June 1985 outstanding long-term debt (excluding highway bonds) amounted to \$4,987.7m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$13,437.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Pennsylvania is almost the sole producer of anthracite coal; its output reached a peak of 100,445,299 short tons in 1917 with a labour-force of 156,148 men. Production in 1986: Anthracite, 3m. tons, with about 2,720 employees; bituminous coal, 69.4m. tons, with about 19,400 men; crude petroleum, 3.78m. bbls; natural gas (1987), 163,000m. cu. ft.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture, market-gardening, fruit-growing, horticulture and forestry are pursued within the state. In 1985 there were 56,500 farms with a total farm area of 8.5m. acres (4.5m. acres in crops). Cash income, 1985, from crops, \$966m., and from livestock and products, \$2,184m.

Pennsylvania ranks first in the production of mushrooms (256.1m. lb., value \$170.7m. in 1985). Other crops are (1985) tobacco (21.8m. lb., \$14.7m.), wheat (9.7m. bu.), oats (16.7m. bu.), maize, barley and potatoes. On 1 Jan. 1986 there were on farms: 1.96m. cattle and calves, including 741,000 milch cows, 93,000 sheep, 780,000 swine. Milk production, 1986, was 10,152m. lb., and eggs numbered 4.69m. valued at \$230.69m. Pennsylvania is also a major fruit producing state; in 1985 apples totalled 620m. lb.; peaches, 100m. lb.; tart cherries, 12m. lb.; sweet cherries, 1,000 tons; and grapes, 60,000 tons. Other important items are soybeans (5.6m. bu.), vegetables for processing (73,700 tons), fresh vegetables (1.4m. cwt) and broiler-chickens (101.9m.).

**Forestry.** In 1982 national forest lands totalled 510,517 acres; state forests, 2,064,533 acres; state parks, 278,930 acres; state game land, 1,250,980 acres; game land leased but not owned by the state, 3,957,438 acres (co-operative and safety-zone programmes).

**INDUSTRY.** Pennsylvania is third in national production of iron and steel. Output of steel, 1987, 11.6m. net tons.

In 1986, manufacturing employed 1,050,000 workers; services, 1,218,000; trade, 1,095,000; government, 680,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Highways and roads in the state (federal, local and state combined) totalled (1985) 114,865 miles. Registered motor vehicles for 1986 numbered 7,986,207 (including 5,952,836 passenger cars, 1,724,077 trucks, truck-tractors and trailers).

**Railways.** In 1983, 41 railways operated within the state with a line mileage of about 6,300.

**Aviation.** There were (1982) 161 commercial airports, 3 public landing strips, 242 heliports, 391 airports for personal use and 16 seaplane bases.

**Shipping.** Trade at the ports of Philadelphia (1985), imports 56.1m. short tons, exports 7.4m.



**Post and Broadcasting.** Broadcasting stations comprised (1982) 41 television stations and 378 radio stations.

**Newspapers.** There were (1983) 111 daily and 219 weekly newspapers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** No executions took place in 1963–85; since 1930 there have been 149 executions (electrocution), all for murder.

State prison population, on 31 Dec. 1986, was 15,227.

**Religion.** The chief religious bodies in 1977 were the Roman Catholic, with 3,717,667 members; Protestant, 3,150,920 (1971); and Jewish, 469,078. The 5 largest Protestant denominations (by communicants) were: Lutheran Church in America, 766,276; United Methodist, 728,915 (1971), United Presbyterian Church in the USA, 573,905 (1971); United Church of Christ, 257,138; Episcopal, 193,399 (1971).

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for children 8–17 years of age. In 1987–88 the public kindergartens and elementary schools had 874,784 pupils; public secondary schools had 793,758 pupils. Non-public schools had 263,579 elementary pupils and 93,434 secondary pupils. Average salary, public school professional personnel, men \$32,541; women \$28,549; for classroom teachers, men \$30,745, women \$28,172.

Leading senior academic institutions included:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Institutions</i>	<i>Faculty (Autumn 1987)</i>	<i>Students (Autumn 1987)</i>
1740	University of Pennsylvania (non-sect.)	2,876	21,875
1787	University of Pittsburgh	2,485	28,364
1832	Lafayette College, Easton (Presbyterian)	185	2,327
1833	Haverford College	122	1,136
1842	Villanova University (R.C.)	749	12,119
1846	Bucknell University (Baptist)	215	3,410
1851	St Joseph's University, Philadelphia (R.C.)	314	5,649
1852	California University of Pennsylvania	336	5,875
1855	Pennsylvania State University	2,544	36,271
1855	Millersville University of Pennsylvania	312	7,225
1863	LaSalle University, Philadelphia (R.C.)	398	6,456
1864	Swarthmore College	179	1,315
1866	Lehigh University, Bethlehem (non-sect.)	439	6,607
1871	West Chester University of Pennsylvania	565	11,311
1875	Indiana University of Pennsylvania	805	13,404
1878	Duquesne University, Pittsburgh (R.C.)	479	6,639
1884	Temple University, Philadelphia	2,491	30,431
1885	Bryn Mawr College	177	1,828
1888	University of Scranton (R.C.)	302	4,865
1891	Drexel University, Philadelphia	797	12,451
1900	Carnegie-Mellon University, Pittsburgh	517	6,916

**Health.** In 1986 the state had 298 hospitals (49,789 beds) listed by the State Health Department, excluding federal hospitals and mental institutions.

**Social Security.** During the year ending 30 June 1985 the monthly average number of cases receiving public assistance was: Aid to families with dependent children, 553,003; blind pension, 3,649; general assistance, 146,194.

Payments for medical assistance for the year ending 30 June 1985 totalled \$2,246m. Under the medical assistance programme payments are made for inpatient hospital care (\$195m.); care in public institutions (nursing homes, mental institutions and geriatric centres) (\$444.5m.); private nursing home care (\$317.2m.); other medical care (\$76.7m.).

## Further Reading

*Crop and Livestock Summary.* Pennsylvania Dept. of Agriculture. Annual  
*Encyclopaedia of Pennsylvania.* New York, 1984

*Pennsylvania Manual.* General Services, Bureau of Publications, Harrisburg. Biennial

- Pennsylvania Statistical Abstract*. Dept. of Commerce, Harrisburg. Annual  
*Pennsylvania State Industrial Directory*. Harris, Ohio. Annual  
 Cochran, T. C., *Pennsylvania*, New York, 1978  
 Klein, P. S. and Hoogenboom, A., *A History of Pennsylvania*. New York, 1973  
 League of Women Voters of Pennsylvania, *Key to the Keystone State*. Philadelphia, 1972  
 Majumdar, S. K. and Miller, E. W., *Pennsylvania Coal: Resources, Technology and Utilisa-*  
*tion*. Pennsylvania Science, 1983  
 Pennsylvania Chamber of Commerce, *Pennsylvania Government Today*. State College, Pa.,  
 1973  
 Weigley, R. F., (ed.) *Philadelphia: A 300-year History*. New York, 1984  
 Wilkinson, N. B., *Bibliography of Pennsylvania History*. Pa. Historical & Museum Commis-  
 sion. Harrisburg, 1957

## RHODE ISLAND

**HISTORY** The earliest settlers in the region which now forms the state of Rhode Island were colonists from Massachusetts who had been driven forth on account of their non-acceptance of the prevailing religious beliefs. The first of the settlements was made in 1636, settlers of every creed being welcomed. In 1647 a patent was executed for the government of the settlements, and on 8 July 1663 a charter was executed recognizing the settlers as forming a body corporate and politic by the name of the 'English Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, in New England, in America'. On 29 May 1790 the state accepted the federal constitution and entered the Union as the last of the 13 original states.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Rhode Island is bounded north and east by Massachusetts, south by the Atlantic and west by Connecticut. Area, 1,214 sq. miles, of which 165 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 947,154 a decrease of 0.3% since 1970. Estimate (1987), 986,000.

Births, 1986, were 13,324; deaths (excluding foetal deaths), 9,587; infant deaths, 125; marriages, 8,103; divorces, 3,683.

Population of 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	532,492	9,529	284	305	542,610	508.5
1930	677,026	9,913	318	240	687,497	649.3
1960	838,712	18,332	932	1,190	859,488	812.4
1970	914,757	25,338	1,390	5,240	949,723 <sup>1</sup>	905.0
			All other			
1980	896,692	27,584	22,878		947,154	903.0

<sup>1</sup> Through tabulation errors there were 2,998 people unaccounted for, as to race and sex, in 1970.

Of the total population in 1980, 451,251 were male, 824,004 were urban and 665,054 were 20 years of age or older.

The chief cities and their population (census, 1980) are Providence, 156,804; Warwick, 87,123; Cranston, 71,992; Pawtucket, 71,204; East Providence, 50,980; Woonsocket, 45,914; Newport, 29,259; North Providence (town), 29,188; Cumberland (town), 27,069. The Providence-Pawtucket-Warwick Standard Metropolitan Statistical Area had a population of 919,216 in 1980.

**CLIMATE.** Providence. Jan. 28°F (-2.2°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 43" (1,079 mm). See New England, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1843; it has had 42 amendments. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 50 members and a House of Representatives of 100 members, both elected for 2 years, as are also the Governor and Lieut.-Governor. Every citizen, 18 years of age, who has resided in the state for 30 days, and is duly registered, is qualified to vote.

Rhode Island sends to Congress 2 senators and 2 representatives.

At the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 216,668 votes, Bush, 169,730.

The capital is Providence. The state has 5 counties (unique in having no political functions) and 39 cities and towns.

*Governor:* Edward DiPrete (R.), 1989–91 (\$69,900).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Roger Begin (D.), 1989–91 (\$52,000).

*Secretary of State:* Kathleen Connell (D.), 1989–91 (\$52,000).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1987 (Office of the State Controller) total revenues were \$1,585.7m. (taxation, \$1,032.8m., and federal aid, \$361.1m.); general expenditures were \$1,529.1m. (education, \$442.6m.; and public welfare, \$453.1m.).

Total net long-term debt on 30 June 1986 was \$261.8m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$15,555.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The small mineral output, mostly stone, sand and gravel, was valued (1987) at an estimated \$18m.

**Agriculture.** While Rhode Island is predominantly a manufacturing state, agriculture contributed \$110m. to the general cash income in 1987; it had 697 farms with an area of 73,000 acres (11% of the total land area), of which 31,000 acres were crop land; the average farm was 86 acres.

**Fisheries.** In 1987 the catch was 90m. lb (live weight) valued at \$76.5m.

**INDUSTRY.** Total non-agricultural employment in June 1988 was 460,300, of which 115,900 were manufacturing, 344,400 non-manufacturing. Average weekly earnings for production workers in manufacturing, \$336.60; value added by manufacture (1985), \$4,289m. Principal industries are metals and machinery, jewellery–silverware and transport equipment.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state had (1 Jan. 1987) 5,860 miles of road, of which 1,857 were state-owned. In 1987, 754,294 motor vehicles were registered.

**Railways.** In 1988, 3 railways operated 135 line-miles.

**Aviation.** In 1988 there were 6 state-owned airports. Theodore Francis Green airport at Warwick, near Providence, is served by 12 airlines, and handled over 2m. passengers and 22m. lb. of freight in 1987.

**Shipping.** Waterborne freight through the port of Providence (1985) totalled 1.9m. tons.

**Broadcasting.** There are 24 radio stations and 5 television stations; there are 8 cable television companies.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state's penal institutions, Aug. 1988, had 1,290 inmates (131 per 100,000 population).

The death penalty is illegal, except that it is mandatory in the case of murder committed by a prisoner serving a life sentence.

**Religion.** Chief religious bodies are (estimated figures Sept. 1988): Roman Catholic with 550,000 members; Protestant Episcopal (baptized persons), 50,000; Baptist, 22,500; Congregational, 12,000; Methodist, 10,000; Jewish, 24,000.

**Education.** In 1986–87 the 231 public elementary schools had 3,854 teachers and total enrolment of 68,698 pupils; about 28,000 pupils were enrolled in private and parochial schools. The 61 senior and vocational high schools had 3,702 teachers and 65,451 pupils. Teachers' salaries (1987) averaged \$23,400. Local expenditure, for schools (including evening schools) in 1986–87 totalled \$547.7m.



There are 11 institutions of higher learning in the state, including 1 junior college. The state maintains Rhode Island College, at Providence, with 600 faculty members, and 5,600 full-time students (1987), and the University of Rhode Island, at South Kingstown, with over 900 faculty members and over 14,000 students (including graduate students). Brown University, at Providence, founded in 1764, is now non-sectarian; in 1987 it had over 600 full-time faculty members and 7,000 full-time students. Providence College, at Providence, founded in 1917 by the Order of Preachers (Dominican), had (1987) 210 professors and 5,400 students. The largest of the other colleges are Bryant College, at Smithfield, with 160 faculty and 5,000 students, and the Rhode Island School of Design, in Providence, with about 155 faculty and 1,800 students.

**Health.** In 1988 the state had 22 hospitals (over 7,000 beds), including 4 mental hospitals.

**Social Security.** In 1987 aid to dependent children was granted to 44,000 children in 15,000 families at an average payment per family of \$380 per month, and the state also had a general assistance programme. (All other aid programmes were taken over by the federal government.)

### Further Reading

*Rhode Island Manual.* Prepared by the Secretary of State, Providence

*Providence Journal Almanac: A Reference Book for Rhode Islanders.* Providence. Annual

*Rhode Island Basic Economic Statistics.* Rhode Island Dept. of Economic Development. Providence, 1987

McLoughlin, W. G., *Rhode Island: a History.* Norton, 1978

Wright, M. I. and Sullivan, R. J., *Rhode Island Atlas.* Rhode Island Pubs., 1983

*State Library:* Rhode Island State Library, State House, Providence 02908. State Librarian: Elliott E. Andrews.

## SOUTH CAROLINA

**HISTORY.** South Carolina, first settled permanently in 1670, was one of the 13 original states of the Union.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** South Carolina is bounded in the north by North Carolina, east and south-east by the Atlantic, south-west and west by Georgia. Area, 31,113 sq. miles, of which 909 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 3,121,833, an increase of 20.5 since 1970. Estimate July 1988 3,493,000. Births, 1987, were 52,774 (15.4 per 1,000 population); deaths, 28,470 (8.3); marriages, 53,396 (15.6); divorces and annulments, 13,835 (4); infant deaths, 673 (12.8 per 1,000 live births).

The population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	679,161	835,843	331	65	1,515,400	49.7
1930	944,049	793,681	959	76	1,738,765	56.8
1960	1,551,022	829,291	1,098	946	2,382,594	78.7
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	1,794,432	789,040	3,588		2,587,060	83.2
1980	2,150,507	948,623	22,703		3,121,833	100.3

Of the total population in 1980, 49% were male, 54.1% were urban and 55% were 25 years old or older. Median age, 28.

Populations of large towns in 1986 (with those of associated metropolitan areas): Columbia (capital), 93,020 (444,700); Charleston, 68,900 (485,600); Greenville, 58,370; Spartanburg, 44,210 (Greenville-Spartanburg, 606,400).

**CLIMATE.** Columbia. Jan. 47°F (8.3°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,125 mm). See Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1895, when it went into force without ratification by the electorate. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 46 members, elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 124 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Only registered citizens have the right to vote. South Carolina sends to Congress 2 senators and 6 representatives.

At the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 599,871 votes, Dukakis 367,511.

The capital is Columbia.

*Governor:* Carroll Campbell (R.), 1987-91 (\$60,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* N. A. Theodore (D.), 1987-91 (\$35,000).

*Secretary of State:* John Tucker Campbell (D.), 1987-91 (\$55,000).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1988 general revenues were \$2,931.6m.; general expenditures were \$2,842.6m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$11,858.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Non-metallic minerals are of chief importance: Value of mineral output in 1987 was \$177.1m., chiefly from limestone for cement, clay, stone, sand and gravel. Production of kaolin, vermiculite, scrap mica and fuller's earth is also important.

**Agriculture.** In 1988 there were 26,500 farms covering a farm area of 5.3m. acres. The average farm was of 200 acres. Of the 24,929 farms of the 1982 Census of Agriculture, there were 1,031 of 1,000 acres or more, average farm 224 acres; owners operated 14,756 farms; tenants 2,160. There were 2,331 farms with \$100,000 or more in value of sales.

Cash receipts from farm marketing in 1987 amounted to \$502.7m. for crops and \$461m. for livestock, including poultry. Chief crops are tobacco (\$149.1m.), soybeans (\$82.6m.), and corn (\$34.8m.). Production, 1987: Cotton 106,000 bales; peaches, 300m. lb.; soybeans, 15.7m. bu.; tobacco, 94.1m. lb.; eggs, 1,604m. Livestock on farms, 1988: 620,000 all cattle, 400,000 swine.

**Forestry.** The forest industry is important; total forest land (1986), 12.3m. acres. National forests amounted to 576,518 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** A monthly average of 373,713 workers were employed in manufacturing in 1987, earning \$7,629m. Major sectors are textiles (28.5%), apparel (12.1%) and chemicals (8.6%).

Tourism is important; tourists spent an estimated \$4,311m. in 1987, and tourism employed 93,900.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total highway mileage in the combined highway system in June 1988 was 40,678 miles. Motor vehicle registrations numbered 2.4m. in 1987.

**Railways.** In 1987 the length of railway in the state was about 2,400 miles.

**Aviation.** In 1987 there were 146 aircraft facilities (65 public, 81 private) including 128 airports, 17 heliports and 1 seaplane base. Registered aircraft numbered 2,327 in 1987.

**Shipping.** The state has 3 deep-water ports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** At 31 Dec. 1986 penal institutions held 11,676 prisoners under State and federal jurisdiction.

**Education.** In 1986-87 the total public-school enrolment (K-12) was 624,832;

there were 362,114 white pupils and 262,718 non-white pupils. The total number of teachers was 34,880; average salary was \$23,201.

For higher education the state operates the University of South Carolina, founded at Columbia in 1801, with, (autumn 1987), 23,946 enrolled students; Clemson University, founded in 1889, with 13,865 students; The Citadel, at Charleston, with 3,502 students; Winthrop College, Rock Hill, with 5,217 students; Medical University of S. Carolina, at Charleston 2,435 students; S. Carolina State College, at Orangeburg, with 4,109 students, and Francis Marion College, at Florence, with 3,864 students; the College of Charleston has 5,767 students and Lander College, Greenwood, 2,262. There are 16 technical institutions (34,522).

There are also 490 private kindergartens, elementary and high schools with total enrolment (1986-87) of 46,422 pupils, and 31 private and denominational colleges and junior colleges with (autumn 1987) enrolment of 25,736 students.

**Health.** In 1987 the state had 348 non-federal health facilities with 29,242 beds licensed by the South Carolina Department of Health and Environmental Control.

**Social Security.** In 1986 there were 497,000 recipients of social security benefits. The average monthly expenditure in benefits was \$195.1 m.

### Further Reading

*South Carolina Legislative Manual.* Columbia, Annual

*South Carolina Statistical Abstract.* South Carolina Budget and Control Board, Columbia, Annual

Jones, L., *South Carolina: A Synoptic History for Laymen.* Lexington, 1978

*State Library:* South Carolina State Library, Columbia.

## SOUTH DAKOTA

**HISTORY.** South Dakota was first visited by Europeans in 1743 when Verendrye planted a lead plate (discovered in 1913) on the site of Fort Pierre, claiming the region for the French crown. Beginning with a trading post in 1794, it was settled from 1857 to 1861 when Dakota Territory was organized. It was admitted into the Union on 2 Nov. 1889.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** South Dakota is bounded north by North Dakota, east by Minnesota, south-east by the Big Sioux River (forming the boundary with Iowa), south by Nebraska (with the Missouri River forming part of the boundary) and west by Wyoming and Montana. Area, 77,116 sq. miles, of which 1,164 sq. miles are water. Area administered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs, 1985, covered 5m. acres (10% of the state), of which 2.6m. acres were held by tribes. The federal government, 1985, owned 3,148,000 acres or 6.4% of the total.

Census population, 1 April 1980, 690,178, an increase of 3.5% since 1970. Estimate (1986) 708,000. Births, 1984, were 12,431 (17.8 per 1,000 population); deaths, 6,512 (9.3); infant deaths, 124 (10 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 8,057 (11.5); divorces, 2,498 (3.6).

Population in 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	563,771	817	19,137	163	583,888	7.6
1930	669,453	646	21,833	101	692,849	9.0
1960	653,098	1,114	25,794	336	680,514	8.9
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	630,333	1,627	34,297		666,257	8.8
1980	638,955	2,144	49,079		690,178	9.0

Of the total population in 1980, 340,370 were male, 320,223 were urban and 441,851 were 21 years of age or older.



Population of the chief cities (census of 1980) was: Sioux Falls, 81,071; Rapid City, 46,340; Aberdeen, 25,973; Watertown, 15,632; Mitchell, 13,917; Brookings, 14,915; Huron, 13,000.

**CLIMATE.** Rapid City. Jan. 25°F (−3.9°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 19" (474 mm). Sioux Falls. Jan. 14°F (−10°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 25" (625 mm). *See* High Plains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Voters are all citizens 18 years of age or older who have complied with certain residential qualifications. The people reserve the right of the initiative and referendum. The Senate has 35 members, and the House of Representatives 70 members, all elected for 2 years: the Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state sends 2 senators and 1 representative to Congress.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 165,516 votes, Dukakis, 145,632.

The capital is Pierre (population, 1980, 11,973). The state is divided into 66 organized counties.

*Governor:* George Mickelson, Jr. (R.), 1987–91 (\$57,325).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Walter D. Miller, 1987–91 (\$7,980, and \$75 daily expense allowance).

*Secretary of State:* Joyce Hazeltine, 1987–91 (\$38,940).

**BUDGET.** For the fiscal year ending 30 June 1986 the estimated general fund revenues were \$349.93m. (\$191.5m. from sales and use tax); expenditure was also \$349.93m. (\$78.6m. on education).

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$11,850.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** The mineral products include gold (310,527 troy oz. in 1984, second largest yield of all states), silver (50,000 troy oz.). Mineral products, 1984, were valued at \$193.4m., of which gold accounts for \$111.9m. and silver, \$707,000.

**Agriculture.** In 1985, 37,000 farms had an acreage of 45m.; the average farm had 1,203 acres. Farm units are large; in 1982 there were only 4,024 farms of 50 acres or less, compared with 10,165 exceeding 1,000 acres. 17,371 farms sold produce valued at \$40,000 or over.

South Dakota ranks first in the US as producer of oats (79.5m. bu. in 1985) and rye (4.4m. bu.) and second in sunflower seed (609.9m. lb.). The other important crops are flaxseed (1.3m. bu.), hay (3.2m. tons), durum wheat (2.6m. bushels), barley (32.4m. bu.), corn for grain (252m. bu.), soybeans (40.6m. bu.) and potatoes (1.9m. cwt.). The farm livestock on 1 Jan. 1986 included 3.6m. cattle, 540,000 sheep, 1.6m. swine.

**Forestry.** National forest area, 1985, 1,997,000 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1985, manufacturing establishments had 23,531 workers who earned \$416.7m. Food processing is by far the largest industry with 96 plants employing 7,678 workers. Contract construction has 1,712 establishments employing 6,878. There are 179 printing and publishing plants employing 2,432 workers. Also significant are mining (59 establishments employing 2,381), dairy, lumber and wood products, machinery, transport equipment, electronics, stone, glass and clay products.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total highway mileage was 17,056 in 1981: hard surface (1985), 8,324. Registered passenger cars numbered 637,000 in 1981.

**Railways.** In 1986 there were 1,983.7 miles of railway in operation. The state owns 847.9 miles of track which is operating and 302.7 which is not.

**Aviation.** In 1985 there were 61 general aviation airports and 9 commercial airports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The State prisons had, in 1986, 316 inmates. The death penalty was illegal from 1915 to 1938; since 1938, one person has been executed, in 1949 (by electrocution), for murder.

**Religion.** The chief religious bodies are: Lutherans, Roman Catholics, Methodist, Disciples of Christ, Presbyterian, Baptist and Episcopal.

**Education.** Elementary and secondary education are free from 6 to 21 years of age. Between the ages of 8 and 16, attendance is compulsory. In 1984-85 137,764 pupils were attending elementary and high (including parochial) schools (8,324 full-time equivalent classroom teachers).

Teachers' salaries (1985-86) averaged an estimated \$17,356. Total expenditure on public schools, \$316m.

Higher education (1985-86): The School of Mines at Rapid City, established 1885, had 2,260 students; the State University at Brookings, 6,837 students; the University of South Dakota, founded at Vermillion in 1882, 5,520; Northern State College, had 2,818; Black Hills State College, 2,117; Dakota State College, 867. The 11 private colleges had 8,442 students. The federal Government maintains Indian schools on its reservations and 1 outside at Flandreau.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 70 licensed hospitals (5,157 beds).

**Social Security.** In financial year 1985-86, 3,144 aged persons received \$348,270; 135 blind persons received \$28,610; 4,713 disabled persons received \$908,370. Aid to dependent children was \$1,469,308, to 11,339 children.

## Further Reading

*Governor's Budget Report.* South Dakota Bureau of Finance and Management. Annual  
*South Dakota Historical Collections.* 1902-82

*South Dakota Legislative Manual.* Secretary of State, Pierre, S.D. Biennial

Berg, F. M., *South Dakota: Land of Shining Gold.* Hettinger, 1982

Karolevitz, R. F., *Challenge: the South Dakota Story.* Sioux Falls, 1975

Milton, John R., *South Dakota: a Bicentennial History.* New York, W. W. Norton, 1977

Schell, H. S., *History of South Dakota.* 3rd ed. Lincoln, Neb., 1975

Vexler, R. L., *South Dakota Chronology and Factbook.* New York, 1978

*State Library:* South Dakota State Library, 800 Governor's Drive, Pierre, S.D., 57501-2294.

*State Librarian:* Dr Jane Kolbe.

# TENNESSEE

**HISTORY.** Tennessee, first settled in 1757, was admitted into the Union on 1 June 1796.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Tennessee is bounded north by Kentucky and Virginia, east by North Carolina, south by Georgia, Alabama and Mississippi and west by the Mississippi River (forming the boundary with Arkansas and Missouri). Area, 42,144 sq. miles (989 sq. miles water). Census population, 1 April 1980, 4,591,120, an increase of 665,102 or 16.9% since 1970. Estimate (1987), 4,855,000. Vital statistics, 1987: Births, 67,942 (13.9 per 1,000 population); deaths, 44,884 (9.2); infant deaths 792 (11.7 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 31,358 (25.0); divorces, 30,324 (12.4).

Population in 6 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	1,711,432	473,088	216	53	2,184,789	52.4
1930	2,138,644	477,646	161	105	2,616,556	62.4
1950	2,760,257	530,603	339	334	3,291,718	78.8
1960	2,977,753	586,876	638	1,243	3,567,089	85.4
			<i>Allothers</i>			
1970	3,293,930	621,261	8,496		3,923,687	95.3
1980	3,835,452	725,942	29,726		4,591,120	111.6

Of the population in 1980, 2,216,600 were male, 2,773,573 were urban and those 21 years of age or older numbered 3,026,398.

The cities, with population, 1980 (and estimates 1986), are Memphis, 646,356 (652,640); Nashville (capital), 455,651 (473,670); Knoxville, 175,030 (173,210); Chattanooga, 169,565 (162,170); Clarksville, 54,777 (60,730); Jackson, 49,131 (52,810); Johnson City, 39,753 (44,700); Murfreesboro, 32,845 (40,960); Kingsport, 32,027 (31,470); Oak Ridge, 27,662 (26,920). Standard metropolitan areas 1980 (1987): Memphis, 810,043 (971,900); Nashville, 850,505 (956,200); Knoxville, 476,517 (594,000); Chattanooga, 320,761 (431,500); Johnson City-Bristol-Kingsport, 343,041 (442,600); Clarksville, 83,342 (156,600); Jackson, 74,546 (78,100).

**CLIMATE.** Memphis. Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 82°F (27.8°C). Annual rainfall 49" (1,221 mm). Nashville. Jan. 39°F (3.9°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 48" (1,196 mm). *See* Appalachian Mountains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The state has operated under 3 constitutions, the last of which was adopted in 1870 and has been since amended 22 times (first in 1953). Voters at an election may authorize the calling of a convention limited to altering or abolishing one or more specified sections of the constitution. The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 33 members and a House of Representatives of 99 members, senators elected for 4 years and representatives for 2 years. Qualified as electors are all citizens (usual residential and age (18) qualifications). Tennessee sends to Congress 2 senators and 9 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 939,434 votes, Dukakis, 677,715.

For the Tennessee Valley Authority *see* p. 1406.

The capital is Nashville. The state is divided into 95 counties.

*Governor:* Ned McWherter (D.), 1987-91 (\$85,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* John S. Wilder (D.), 1987-91 (\$12,500).

*Secretary of State:* Gentry Crowell (D.), (\$62,500).

**BUDGET.** For 1986-87 total revenue was \$5,723m.; general expenditure, \$5,044m.

Total net long-term debt on 30 June 1987 amounted to \$764.3m.

*Per capita* personal income (1987) was \$12,880.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Total value added by mining 1982: Fuel minerals (mainly coal), \$217.1m.; non-fuel (mainly stone and zinc), \$154.4m.

**Agriculture.** In 1987, 96,000 farms covered 12.6m. acres. The average farm was of 131 acres (only a few states had a smaller average) valued, land and buildings, at \$1,012.

Cash income (1986) from crops was \$891m.; from livestock, \$1,033m. Main crops were cotton, tobacco and soybeans.

On 1 Jan. 1988 the domestic animals included 204,000 milch cows, 2.3m. all cattle, 12,000 sheep, 800,000 swine.

**Forestry.** Forests occupy 13.16m. acres (50% of total land area). The forest industry and industries dependent on it employ about 40,000 workers, earning



\$150m. per year. Wood products are valued at over \$500m. per year. National forest system land (1985) 627,000 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** The manufacturing industries include iron and steel working, but the most important products are chemicals, including synthetic fibres and allied products, electrical equipment and food. In 1986, manufacturing establishments employed 466,600 workers; value added by manufactures was \$23,624.9m.

**TOURISM.** In 1987 42.2m. out-of-state tourists spent \$4,553m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1985 there were 68,768 miles of municipal and rural roads. The state is served by 115 intrastate bus companies and 31 privately owned internal bus services.

Motor-vehicle registrations, 1987, totalled 4,436,868, of which 3,605,620 were cars.

**Railways.** The state had (1985) 2,857 miles of track.

**Aviation.** The state is served by 11 major airlines. In 1985 there were 74 public airports and 78 private; there were 71 heliports and 2 military air bases.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There has been no execution since 1960; since 1930 there have been 22 whites and 44 Negroes executed (by electrocution) for murder and 5 whites and 22 Negroes for rape. A US Supreme Court ruling prohibits the use of capital punishment under present Tennessee law, except for first degree murder.

Prison population, 30 June 1987, 7,239.

The law prohibiting the inter-marriage of white and Negro was declared unconstitutional by the US Supreme Court in June 1967.

**Religion.** The leading religious bodies are the Southern Baptists, Methodists and Negro Baptists.

**Education.** School attendance has been compulsory since 1925 and the employment of children under 16 years of age in workshops, factories or mines is illegal.

In 1986-87 there were 1,650 public schools with a net enrolment of 855,157 pupils; 42,082 teachers earned an average salary of \$22,627. Total expenditure for operating public schools (kindergarten to Grade 12) was \$2,312m. Tennessee has 49 accredited colleges and universities, 18 2-year colleges and 28 vocational schools. The universities include the University of Tennessee, Knoxville (founded 1794), with 25,525 students in 1987-88; Vanderbilt University, Nashville (1873) with 8,961, Tennessee State University (1912) with 7,012, the University of Tennessee at Chattanooga (1886) with 7,355, Memphis State University (1912), 20,473 and Fisk University (1866) with 650.

**Health.** In 1986 the state had 146 hospitals with 27,274 beds. State facilities for the mentally retarded had 2,081 resident patients and mental hospitals had 1,560 in 1987.

**Social Security.** In 1986 Tennessee paid \$3,680m. to retired workers and their survivors and to disabled workers. Total beneficiaries: 500,000 retired; 162,000 survivors and 100,000 disabled. 395,000 people received \$719m. in Medicaid. Supplemental Security Income (\$295m.) was paid to 129,300. 58,000 families (1985) received aid to dependent children (\$84m.).

## Further Reading

*Tennessee Dept. of Finance and Administration, Annual Report, Annual*

*Dept. of Education Annual Report for Tennessee, Annual*

*Tennessee Blue Book, Secretary of State, Nashville*

*Tennessee Statistical Abstract, Center for Business and Economic Research, Univ. of Tennessee, Annual*

Corlew, R. E., *Tennessee: A Short History*. Univ. Tennessee, 2nd ed., 1981

Davidson, D., *Tennessee: Vol. I, The Old River Frontier to Secession*, Univ. Tennessee, 1979

Dykeman, W., *Tennessee*, Rev. Ed., New York, 1984

*State Library*: State Library and Archives, Nashville. *Librarian*: Edwin Gleaves. *State Historian*: Wilma Dykeman.

## TEXAS

**HISTORY.** In 1836 Texas declared its independence of Mexico, and after maintaining an independent existence, as the Republic of Texas, for 10 years, it was on 29 Dec. 1845 received as a state into the American Union. The state's first settlement dates from 1686.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Texas is bounded north by Oklahoma, north-east by Arkansas, east by Louisiana, south-east by the Gulf of Mexico, south by Mexico and west by New Mexico. Area, 266,807 sq. miles (including 4,790 sq. miles of inland water). Census population, 1 April 1980 (provisional), 14,228,383, an increase of 27% since 1970. Estimate (1985), 16,370,000. Vital statistics for 1984: Births, 306,192 (19.2 per 1,000 population); deaths, 119,531 (7.5); infant deaths, 3,178 (10.4 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 207,631 (13); divorces, 98,074 (6.1).

Population for 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	3,204,848	690,049	702	943	3,896,542	14.8
1930	4,967,172	854,964	1,001	1,578	5,824,715	22.1
1960	8,374,831	1,187,125	5,750	9,848	9,579,677	36.5
			<i>All others</i>			
1970	9,717,128	1,399,005	80,597		11,196,730	42.7
1980	11,197,663	1,710,250	1,320,470		14,228,383	54.2

Of the population in 1980, 6,998,301 were male, 11,327,159 persons were urban. Those 20 years old and older numbered 9,357,309. A census report, 1980, showed, 2,985,643 persons of Spanish origin.

The largest cities, with census population in 1980, are:

Houston	1,595,138	Amarillo	149,230	Odessa	90,027
Dallas	904,078	Beaumont	118,102	Garland	138,857
San Antonio	785,882	Wichita Falls	94,201	Laredo	91,449
Fort Worth	385,164	Irving	109,943	San Angelo	73,240
El Paso	425,259	Waco	101,261	Galveston	61,902
Austin (capital)	345,496	Arlington	160,113	Midland	70,525
Corpus Christi	231,999	Abilene	98,315	Tyler	70,508
Lubbock	173,979	Pasadena	112,560	Port Arthur	61,195

Larger urbanized areas, 1980: Houston, 2,891,146; Dallas-Fort Worth, 2,964,342; San Antonio, 1,070,245.

**CLIMATE.** Dallas. Jan. 45°F (7.2°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 38" (945 mm). El Paso. Jan. 44°F (6.7°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 9" (221 mm). Galveston. Jan. 54°F (12.2°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,159 mm). Houston. Jan. 52°F (11.1°C), July 83°F (28.3°C). Annual rainfall 48" (1,200 mm). *See* Central Plains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1876; it has been amended 233 times. The Legislature consists of a Senate of 31 members elected for 4 years (half their number retire every 2 years), and a House of Representatives of 150 members elected for 2 years.

The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Qualified electors are all citizens with the usual residential qualifications. Texas sends to Congress 2 senators and 27 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 3,014,007 votes, Dukakis, 2,331,286.

The capital is Austin. The state has 254 counties.

*Governor:* Bill Clements (R.), 1987-91 (\$90,700).

*Lieut.-Governor:* William P. Hobby (D.), 1987-91 (\$7,200).

*Secretary of State:* John W. Fainter, Jr. (D.), (\$61,200).

**BUDGET.** In the fiscal year ending 31 Aug. 1982 general revenues were \$23,617m. (\$13,671m. from taxes, \$4,154m. federal aid); general expenditures, \$21,334m. (\$8,743m. on education, \$2,506m. on highways, \$2,067m. on hospitals, \$1,741m. on public welfare). Texas has a large revenue derived from the severance tax (*i.e.*, tax on the removal of oil, natural gas and sulphur from the soil or waters of the state).

Net long-term debt, 31 Aug. 1985, was \$4,009m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$13,483.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Production, 1985: Crude petroleum, 889m. bbls, natural gas 6,012,000 m.c.f.; other minerals include natural gasoline, butane and propane gases, helium, crude gypsum, granite and sandstone, salt and cement. Total value of mineral products in 1982, \$45,388m., of which \$43,834 was for fuels.

**Agriculture.** Texas is one of the most important agricultural states of the Union. In 1985 it had 184,000 farms covering 136m. acres; average farm was of 739 acres valued, land and buildings, at \$652 per acre. Large-scale commercial farms, highly mechanized, dominate in Texas; farms of 1,000 acres or more in number far exceed that of any other state. But small-scale farming persists.

Soil erosion is serious in some parts. For some 97,297,000 acres drastic curative treatment has been indicated and for 51,164,000 acres, preventive treatment.

Production, 1985: Cotton, 3,945,000 bales (of 480 lb., value \$981m.); maize (157m. bu., value \$422m.), wheat (187.2m. bu., value \$580m.), oats, barley, soybeans, peanuts, oranges, grapefruit, peaches, potatoes, sweet potatoes.

Cash income, 1985, from crops was \$3,857m.; from livestock, \$5.441m.

The state has a very great livestock industry, leading in the number of all cattle, 13.6m. on 1 Jan. 1986, and sheep, 1.8m.; it also had 322,000 milch cows, and 435,000 swine.

**Forestry.** There were (1980) 23.3m. acres of forested land.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1985 manufacturing establishments employed 1m. workers; trade employed 1.7m.; government, 1m.; services, 1.3m.; construction, 448,000; finance, insurance and real estate, 442,000; transport and public utilities, 383,000. Chemical industries along the Gulf Coast, such as the production of synthetic rubber and of primary magnesium (from sea-water), are increasingly important.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1979 there were 264,900 miles of roads including 199,500 miles of rural roads. Motor registration in 1985, 12.6m.

**Railways.** The railways (1974) had a total mileage of 19,134 miles, of which 13,303 miles were main lines.

**Aviation.** In 1981 there were 322 public and 1,109 private airports.

**Shipping.** The port of Houston, connected by the Houston Ship Channel (50 miles long) with the Gulf of Mexico, is the largest inland cotton market in the world. Cargo handled 1981, 100.9m. tonnes.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In Dec. 1985 the state prison held 37,532 men and women. Execution is by



lethal injection; there were 300 between 1930 and 1968; between 1977 and 1986 there were 8.

Texas has adopted 11 laws governing the activities of trade unions. An Act of 1955 forbids the state's payment of unemployment compensation to workers engaged in certain types of strikes.

**Religion.** The largest religious bodies are Roman Catholics, Baptists, Methodists, Churches of Christ, Lutherans, Presbyterians and Episcopalians.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory from 7 to 17 years of age.

In autumn 1983 public elementary and secondary schools had 2,990,000 enrolled pupils; in 1986 there were 175,500 classroom teachers whose salaries averaged \$24,500. Total public school expenditure, 1986, \$11,943m. or \$750 per capita.

The largest institutions of higher education, with faculty numbers and student enrolment, 1985-86, were:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Institutions</i>	<i>Control</i>	<i>Faculty</i>	<i>Students</i>
1845	Baylor University, Waco	Baptist	636	11,481
1852	St Mary's University, San Antonio	R.C.	209	3,298
1869	Trinity University, San Antonio	Presb.	255	2,759
1873	Texas Christian University, Fort Worth	Christian	519	6,925
1876	Texas A. and M. Univ., College Station	State	2,240	35,675
1876	Prairie View Agr. and Mech. Coll., Prairie View	State	297	4,627
1879	Sam Houston State University	State	365	10,345
1883	University of Texas System (every campus)	State	6,328	105,810
1890	North Texas State University, Denton	State	884	21,210
1891	Hardin-Simmons University, Abilene	Baptist	124	1,817
1889	East Texas State University, Commerce	State	363	6,867
1899	South West Texas State University, San Marcos	State	833	19,267
1903	Texas Woman's University, Denton	State	520	8,197
1906	Abilene Christian University, Abilene	Church of Christ	275	4,505
1911	Southern Methodist University, Dallas	Methodist	650	9,048
1923	Stephen F. Austin State University	State	517	12,500
1923	Texas Technical University, Lubbock	State	1,444	23,589
1925	Texas Arts and Industries University, Kingsville	State	234	5,117
1934	University of Houston, Houston	State	2,100	30,000
1947	Texas Southern University, Houston	State	544	14,230
1951	Lamar University, Beaumont	State	545	14,094

**Health.** In 1983, the state had 562 hospitals (84,900 beds) listed by the American Hospital Association; on 1 Jan. 1980 mental hospitals had 6,559 resident patients and state institutions for the mentally retarded, 11,178 resident patients (1980).

**Social Security.** Aid is from state and federal sources. Old-age assistance (SSI) was being granted in Dec. 1985 to 123,400 persons, who received an average of \$133 per month; aid was given to 127,100 disabled (\$217) and 398,900 dependent children (average payment per family, \$142 per month).

### Further Reading

- Texas Almanac*. Dallas. Biennial  
*Texas Factbook*. Univ. of Texas. 1983  
 Benton, W. E., *Texas, its Government and Politics*. 4th ed., Englewood Cliffs, 1977  
 Cruz, G. R. and Irby, J. A. (eds.), *Texas Bibliography*. Austin, 1982  
 Fehrenbach, T. R., *Lone Star: A History of Texas and the Texans*. London, 1986  
 Jordan, T. G. and Bean, J. L., Jr., *Texas*. Boulder, 1983  
 MacCorkle, S. A. and Smith, D., *Texas Government*. 7th ed. New York, 1974  
 Richardson, R. N., *Texas, the Lone Star State*. 3rd ed. New York, 1970

*Legislative Reference Library*: Box 12488, Capitol Station, Austin, Texas 78811. *Director*: James R. Sanders.

## UTAH

**HISTORY.** Utah, which had been acquired by the US during the Mexican war, was settled by Mormons in 1847, and organized as a Territory on 9 Sept. 1850. It was admitted as a state into the Union on 4 Jan. 1896 with boundaries as at present.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Utah is bounded north by Idaho and Wyoming, east by Colorado, south by Arizona and west by Nevada. Area, 84,899 sq. miles, of which 2,826 sq. miles are water. The federal government (1967) owned 35,397,274 acres or 67·1% of the area of the state. The area of unappropriated and unreserved lands was 23,268,250 acres in 1974. The Bureau of Indian Affairs in 1974 administered 3,035,190 acres, all of which were allotted to Indian tribes.

Census population, 1 April 1980, 1,461,037, an increase of 38% since 1970. Estimate (1985), 1,645,000. Births in 1984 were 39,677 (24 per 1,000 population); deaths, 9,295 (5·6); infant deaths, 407 (10·3 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 17,579 (10·6); divorces, 8,134 (4·9).

Population at 5 federal censuses was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	366,583	1,144	3,123	2,501	373,851	4·5
1930	499,967	1,108	2,869	3,903	507,847	6·2
1960	873,828	4,148	6,961	5,207	890,627	10·8
1970	1,031,926	6,617	11,273	6,230	1,059,273	12·9
1980	1,382,550	9,225	19,256	15,076	1,461,037	17·7

Of the total in 1980, 724,501 were male, 1,232,908 persons were urban; 860,304 were 20 years of age or older.

The largest cities are Salt Lake City (capital), with a population (census, 1980) of 162,960; Provo, 74,007; Ogden, 64,444; Bountiful, 32,877; Orem, 52,399; Sandy City, 51,022 and Logan, 26,844.

**CLIMATE.** Salt Lake City. Jan. 29°F (−1·7°C), July 77°F (25°C). Annual rainfall 16" (401 mm). *See* Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Utah adopted its present constitution in 1896 (now with 61 amendments). It sends to Congress 2 senators and 3 representatives.

The Legislature consists of a Senate (in part renewed every 2 years) of 30 members, elected for 4 years, and of a House of Representatives of 75 members elected for 2 years. The Governor is elected for 4 years. The constitution provides for the initiative and referendum. Electors are all citizens, who, not being insane or criminal, have the usual residential qualifications.

The capital is Salt Lake City. There are 29 counties in the state.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 426,858 votes, Dukakis, 206,853.

*Governor:* Norman Bangerter (R.), 1989–93 (\$52,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* W. Val Oveson (R.), 1989–93 (\$35,500).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1982 general revenue was \$2,490m. (\$1,332m. from taxes, \$612m. from federal aid) while general expenditures were \$2,490m. (\$1,104m. on education, \$279m. on highways, \$234m. on public welfare).

The net long-term debt on 30 June 1982 was about \$2,171 m.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$10,493.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals** The principal minerals are: Copper, gold, petroleum, lead, silver and zinc. The state also has natural gas, clays, tungsten, molybdenum, uranium and phosphate rock.

**Agriculture.** In 1985 Utah had 14,000 farms covering 12m. acres, of which about 2m. acres were crop land and about 300,000 acres pasture. About 1m. acres had irrigation; the average farm was of 857 acres.

Of the total surface area, 9% is severely eroded and only 9.4% is free from erosion; the balance is moderately eroded.

Cash income, 1985, from crops, \$138m. and from livestock, \$409m. The principal crops are: Barley, wheat (spring and winter), oats, potatoes, hay (alfalfa, sweet clover and lespedeza), maize. In 1985 there were 515,000 sheep; 80,000 milch cows; 800,000 all cattle; 28,000 swine.

**Forestry.** Area of national forests, 1981, was 9,129,000 acres, of which 8.05m. acres were under forest service administration.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1985 manufacturing establishments had 94,000 workers. Leading manufactures by value added are primary metals, ordinances and transport, food, fabricated metals and machinery, petroleum products. Service industries employed 132,000; trade, 148,000; government, 138,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state has about 50,000 miles of highway. In 1985 there were 1,103,000 motor vehicles registered.

**Railways.** On 1 July 1974 the state had 1,734 miles of railways.

**Aviation.** In 1981 there were 57 public and 45 private airports.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The number of inmates of the state prison in Dec. 1985 was 1,570. Since 1930 total executions have been 14 (13 by shooting, 1 by hanging—the condemned man has choice), all whites, and all for murder.

**Religion.** Latter-day Saints (Mormons) form about 73% of the church membership of the state; their church is a substantial property-owner. The Roman Catholic church and most Protestant denominations are represented.

**Education.** School attendance is compulsory for children from 6 to 18 years of age. There are 40 school districts. Teachers' salaries, 1985, averaged \$21,500. There were (autumn 1983) 379,000 pupils in public elementary and secondary schools, and (1986) 16,700 classroom teachers, average salary, \$22,550; estimated public school expenditure was \$1,092m. or \$664 per capita.

The University of Utah (1850) (24,770 students in 1985–86) is in Salt Lake City; the Utah State University (1890) (11,804) is in Logan. The Mormon Church maintains the Brigham Young University at Provo (1875) with 26,894 students. Other colleges include: Westminster College, Salt Lake City (1,302); Weber State College, Ogden (11,117); Southern Utah State College, Cedar City (2,587); College of Eastern Utah, Price (1,132); Snow College, Ephraim (1,328); Dixie College, St George (2,234).

**Health.** In 1983, the state had 44 hospitals (5,400 beds) listed by the Utah Department of Social Services. Mental hospitals had 317 resident patients on 1 Jan. 1980: state facilities for the mentally retarded had 763.

**Social Security.** In Dec. 1985 the state department of public welfare provided assistance to 37,800 persons receiving aid to dependent children at an average \$322 per family per month; aid to the aged, the blind and disabled is provided from federal funds; there were 1,900 aged recipients in 1985 (average \$150 per month), 6,600 disabled (\$224).

## Further Reading

*Compiled Digest of Administrative Reports.* Secretary of State, Salt Lake City. Annual *Statistical Abstract of Government in Utah.* Utah Foundation, Salt Lake City. Annual *Utah Agricultural Statistics.* Dept. of Agriculture, Salt Lake City. Annual



*Utah: Facts.* Bureau of Economic and Business Research, Univ. of Utah, 1975

Arrington, L., *Great Basin Kingdom: An Economic History of the Latter-Day Saints, 1830-1900.* Cambridge, Mass., 1958

Petersen, C. S., *Utah, a History.* New York, 1977

## VERMONT

**HISTORY.** Vermont, first settled in 1724, was admitted into the Union as the fourteenth state on 4 March 1791. The first constitution was adopted by convention at Windsor, 2 July 1777, and established an independent state government.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Vermont is bounded north by Canada, east by New Hampshire, south by Massachusetts and west by New York. Area, 9,614 sq. miles, of which 341 sq. miles are inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 511,456, an increase of 15% since 1970. Estimate (1986) 541,000. Births, 1986, were 8,097 (15 per 1,000 population); deaths, 4,760 (8.8); infant deaths, 83 (10.3 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 5,698 (10.5); divorces, 2,410 (4.5).

Population at 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	354,298	1,621	26	11	355,956	39.0
1930	358,966	568	36	41	359,611	38.8
1960	389,092	519	57	172	389,881	42.0
1970	442,553	761	229	787	444,732	48.0
1980	506,736	1,135	984	1,355	511,456	55.1

Of the population in 1980, 249,080 were male, 172,735 persons were urban; those 20 years of age or older numbered 343,666. The largest cities are Burlington, with a population in 1980 of 37,712; Rutland, 18,436; Barre, 9,824.

**CLIMATE.** Burlington, Jan. 17°F (-8.3°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 33" (820 mm). *See* New England, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution was adopted in 1793 and has since been amended. Amendments are proposed by two-thirds vote of the Senate every 4 years, and must be accepted by two sessions of the legislature; they are then submitted to popular vote. The state Legislature, consisting of a Senate of 30 members and a House of Representatives of 150 members (both elected for 2 years), meets in Jan. in odd-numbered years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 2 years. Electors are all citizens who possess certain residential qualifications and have taken the freeman's oath set forth in the constitution.

The state is divided into 14 counties; there are 251 towns and cities and other minor civil divisions. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 1 representative, who are elected by the voters of the entire state.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 123,166 votes, Dukakis, 116,419.

The capital is Montpelier (8,241, census of 1980).

*Governor:* Madeleine Kunin (D.), 1989-91 (\$50,003).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Howard Dean (D.) (\$22,006).

*Secretary of State:* James Douglas (R.) (\$29,993).

**BUDGET.** The total revenue for the year ending 30 June 1986 was \$866m.; total disbursements, \$865.6m.

Total net long-term debt, 30 June 1986, was \$254.7.

*Per capita* personal income (1985) was \$12,117.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Stone, chiefly granite, marble and slate, is the leading mineral produced in Vermont, contributing about 60% of the total value of mineral products. Other

products include asbestos, talc, peat, sand and gravel. Total value of mineral products, 1984, \$45m.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the most important industry. In 1986 the state had 7,000 farms covering 2m. acres; the average farm was of 286 acres. Cash income, 1985, from livestock and products, \$352m.; from crops, \$32m. The dairy farms produce about 2,300m. lb. of milk annually. The chief agricultural crops are hay, apples and maple syrup. In 1981 Vermont had 355,000 cattle, 11,000 sheep, 9,000 swine, 425,000 poultry.

**Forestry.** In 1982 the harvest was 82m. bd ft hardwood and 93m. bd ft softwood saw-logs, and 267,000 cords of pulpwood and boltwood. About 600,000 cords was cut for firewood.

The state is nearly 80% forest, with 12% in public ownership. National forests area (1983), 285,000 acres. State-owned forests, parks, fish and game areas, 250,000 acres; municipally-owned, 38,500 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 service industries employed 65,000; manufacturing, 54,000; trade, 52,000; government, 35,000; construction, 20,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state had 14,031 miles of roads in 1985, including 13,071 miles of rural roads. Motor vehicle registrations, 1985, 387,000.

**Railways.** There were, in 1983, 756 miles of main line railway, 300 of which was leased by the state to private operators.

**Aviation.** There were 18 airports in 1987, of which 11 were state operated, 1 municipally owned and 6 private. Some are only open in summer.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** In financial year 1986 prisons and centres had 676 inmates; 476 of these were serving more than one year.

**Religion.** The principal denominations are Roman Catholic, United Church of Christ, United Methodist, Protestant Episcopal, Baptist and Unitarian-Universalist.

**Education.** School attendance during the full school term is compulsory for children from 7 to 16 years of age, unless they have completed the 10th grade or undergo approved home instruction. In 1984 the public schools to grade 8 had 63,000 enrolled pupils; grades 9-12 had 27,000 pupils. Full-time teachers for public elementary schools (1986) numbered 2,900, secondary schools 3,500. Teachers' salaries for 1986 averaged \$19,900 (elementary) and \$20,700 (secondary). Total expenditure on public schools, 1986, \$314m.

In autumn 1985 there were 31,416 students in higher education. The University of Vermont (1791) had 11,096 students in 1986-87; Norwich University (1834, founded as the American Literary, Scientific and Military Academy in 1819), had 2,425; St Michael's College (1904), 2,130; there are 5 state colleges.

**Health.** In Sept. 1985 the state had 19 general hospitals (2,872 beds).

**Social Security.** Old-age assistance (SSI) was being granted in 1985 to 3,000 persons, drawing an average of \$139 per month; aid to dependent children was being granted to 21,900 persons, drawing an average of \$400 per family per month; and aid to the permanently and totally disabled was being granted to 6,200 persons, drawing an average of \$260.

## Further Reading

*Legislative Directory.* Secretary of State, Montpelier. Biennial  
*Vermont Annual Financial Report.* Auditor of Accounts, Montpelier. Annual  
*Vermont Facts and Figures.* Office of Statistical Co-ordination, Montpelier  
*Vermont Year-Book,* formerly *Walton's Register.* Chester. Annual

Bassett T. and Seymour D. (eds.) *Vermont: A Bibliography of its History*, Boston, 1981  
 Delorme, D. (ed.) *Vermont Atlas and Gazetteer*, Rev. ed., Freeport, 1983  
 Morrissey, C. T., *Vermont*, New York, 1981

*State Library*: Vermont Dept. of Libraries, Montpelier. *State Librarian*: Patricia Klinck.

## VIRGINIA

**HISTORY.** The first English Charter for settlements in America was that granted by James I in 1606 for the planting of colonies in Virginia. The state was one of the 13 original states in the Union. Virginia lost just over one-third of its area when West Virginia was admitted into the Union (1863).

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Virginia is bounded north-west by West Virginia, north-east by Maryland, east by the Atlantic, south by North Carolina and Tennessee and west by Kentucky. Area, 40,767 sq. miles including 1,063 sq. miles of inland water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 5,346,818, an increase of 695,370 or 14.9% since 1970. Estimate 1986 5,787,000. In 1985 there were 85,984 births (15 per 1,000 population); 45,236 deaths (7.9); 990 infant deaths (11.5 per 1,000 live births); 66,541 marriages and 24,131 divorces.

Population for 5 federal census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	1,389,809	671,096	539	168	2,061,612	51.2
1930	1,770,441	650,165	779	466	2,421,851	60.7
1960	3,142,443	816,258	2,155	4,725	3,966,949	99.3
All others						
1970	3,761,514	861,368	25,612		4,648,494	116.9
1980	4,230,000	1,008,311	108,517		5,346,818	134.7

Of the total population in 1980, 49% were male, 66% were urban and 59% were 21 years of age or older.

The population (census of 1980) of the principal cities was: Norfolk, 266,979; Virginia Beach, 262,199; Richmond, 219,214; Newport News, 144,903; Hampton, 122,617; Chesapeake, 114,226; Portsmouth, 104,577; Alexandria, 103,219; Roanoke, 100,427; Lynchburg, 66,743.

**CLIMATE.** Average temperatures in Jan. are 41°F in the Tidewater coastal area and 32°F in the Blue Ridge mountains; July averages, 78°F and 68°F respectively. Precipitation averages 36" in the Shenandoah valley and 44" in the south. Snowfall is 5-10" in the Tidewater and 25-30" in the western mountains. Norfolk, Jan. 41°F (5°C), July 79°F (26.1°C). Annual rainfall 46" (1,145 mm). See Atlantic Coast, p. 1380.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution dates from 1971.

The General Assembly consists of a Senate of 40 members, elected for 4 years, and a House of Delegates of 100 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. Qualified as electors are (with few exceptions) all citizens 18 years of age, fulfilling certain residential qualifications, who have registered. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 10 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 1,305,131 votes, Dukakis, 860,767.

The state capital is Richmond; the state contains 95 counties and 41 independent cities.

*Governor*: Gerald L. Baliles (D.), 1986-90 (\$75,000).

*Lieut.-Governor*: L. Douglas Wilder (D.) \$20,000.

*Secretary of the Commonwealth*: Sandra D. Bowen (D.) (\$45,959).

**BUDGET.** General revenue for the year ending 30 June 1985 was



\$6,652,678,000 (taxation, \$4,489,878,000, and federal aid, \$1,298,159,000); general expenditures, \$5,844,421,000 (\$1,644,836,000 for education, \$1,079,596,000 for transport and \$1,950,440,000 for public welfare).

Total net long-term debt, 30 June 1984, amounted to \$521,032,000.

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$15,374.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Coal is the most important mineral, with output (1984) of 35,500,000 short tons. Lead and zinc ores, stone, sand and gravel, lime and titanium ore are also produced. Total mineral output was \$382m. in 1986.

**Agriculture.** In 1985 there were 55,000 farms with an area of 10m. acres; average farm had 182 acres and was valued at \$106,220.

Income, 1985, from crops, \$623m., and from livestock and livestock products, \$1,004m. The chief crops are corn, hay, peanuts and tobacco.

Animals on farms on 1 Jan. 1985 included 162,000 milch cows, 1.76m. all cattle, 125,000 sheep and 370,000 swine (Dec. 1984).

**Forestry.** National forests, 1984, covered 1,634,000 acres.

**INDUSTRY.** The manufacture of cigars and cigarettes and of rayon and allied products and the building of ships lead in value of products.

**TOURISM.** Tourists spend about \$4,100m. a year in Virginia, attracted mainly by the state's outstanding scenery, coastline and historical interest.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state highways system, 31 Dec. 1983, had 61,977 miles of highways, of which 8,958 miles were primary roads. Motor registrations, 1985, 4.1m.

**Railways.** In 1985 there were 3,693 miles of railways.

**Aviation.** There were, in 1985, 81 airports, of which 58 were publicly owned.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Executions (by electrocution) since 1930 totalled 100. Prison population, 31 Dec. 1985, 12,073 in federal and state prisons.

**Religion.** The principal churches are the Baptist, Methodist, Protestant-Episcopal, Roman Catholic and Presbyterian.

**Education.** Elementary and secondary instruction is free, and for ages 6–17 attendance is compulsory. No child under 12 may be employed in any mining or manufacturing work.

In 1984 the 135 school districts had, in primary schools, 578,305 pupils and 34,167 teachers and in public high schools, 369,956 pupils and 26,286 teachers. Teachers' salaries (1986) averaged \$23,450. Total expenditure on education, 1986, was \$3,233m. The more important institutions for higher education (1986) were:

<i>Founded</i>	<i>Name and place of college</i>	<i>Staff</i>	<i>Students</i>
1693	College of William and Mary, Williamsburg (State)	526	6,616
1749	Washington and Lee University, Lexington	194	1,804
1776	Hampden-Sydney College, Hampden-Sydney (Pres.)	74	825
1819	University of Virginia, Charlottesville (State)	1,772	17,149
1832	Randolph-Macon College, Ashland (Methodist)	102	1,013
1832	University of Richmond, Richmond (Baptist)	349	4,705
1838	Virginia Commonwealth University, Richmond	1,885	19,641
1839	Virginia Military Institute Lexington (State)	100	1,350
1865	Virginia Union University, Richmond	98	1,311
1868	Hampton University	297	4,483
1872	Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University	2,209	22,345
1882	Virginia State University, Petersburg	263	3,583
1908	James Madison University, Harrisonburg	600	9,757
1910	Radford University (State)	365	7,500
1930	Old Dominion University, Norfolk	713	15,463
1956	George Mason University (State)	715	17,652

**Health.** In 1983 the state had 135 hospitals (31,300 beds) listed by the American Hospital Association.

**Social Security.** In 1938 Virginia established a system of old-age assistance under the Federal Security Act; in March 1983 persons in 2,034 cases were drawing an average grant of \$202.79; aid to permanently and totally disabled, 1,766 cases, average grant \$218.96; aid to dependent children, 164,383 persons, average grant \$85.77; general relief, 6,642 persons, average grant \$146.62.

### Further Reading

*Virginia Facts and Figures.* Virginia Division of Industrial Development, Richmond. Annual Dabney, V., *Virginia, the New Dominion.* 1971

Fridell, G., *The Virginia Way.* Burda, 1973

Gottmann, J., *Virginia in our Century.* Charlottesville, 1969

Morton, R. L., *Colonial Virginia.* 2 vols. Univ. Press of Virginia, 1960

Rouse, P., *Virginia: a Pictorial History.* Scribner, 1975

Rubin, L. D. Jr., *Virginia: a Bicentennial History.* Norris, 1977

*State Library:* Virginia State Library, Richmond 23219. *State Librarian:* Ella Gaines Yates.

## WASHINGTON

**HISTORY.** Washington, formerly part of Oregon, was created a Territory in 1853, and was admitted into the Union as a state on 11 Nov. 1889. Its settlement dates from 1811.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Washington is bounded north by Canada, east by Idaho, south by Oregon with the Columbia River forming most of the boundary, and west by the Pacific. Area, 68,192 sq. miles, of which 1,622 sq. miles are inland water. Lands owned by the federal government, 1977, were 12.4m. acres or 29.1% of the total area. Census population, 1 April 1980, 4,132,156, an increase of 718,906 or 21.1% since 1970. Estimated population (1987), 4,481,100. Births, 1986 were 69,431 (15.7 per 1,000 population); deaths, 34,166 (7.8); infant deaths (1985), 778 (10.2 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 43,255 (9.8); divorces and annulments, 26,405 (6.0).

Population in 5 federal census years was:

	White	Negro	Indian	Asiatic and others	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	1,109,111	6,058	10,997	15,824	1,141,990	17.1
1930	1,521,661	6,840	11,253	23,642	1,563,396	23.3
1960	2,751,675	48,738	21,076	31,725	2,853,214	42.8
1970	2,351,055	71,308	33,386	53,420	3,409,169	51.2
1980	3,779,170	105,574	60,804	186,608	4,132,156	62.1

Of the total population in 1980, 2,052,307 were male, 3,037,014 persons were urban; 2,759,552 were 20 years of age or older.

There are 24 Indian reservations, the largest being held by the Yakima tribe. Indian reservations in Sept. 1979 covered 2,496,423 acres, of which 1,996,018 acres were tribal lands and 497,218 acres were held by individuals. Total Indian population, 1980, 60,804.

Leading cities are Seattle, with a population in 1980 (and 1987 estimate) of 491,897 (491,300); Spokane, 170,993 (172,100); Tacoma, 158,101 (158,900); Bellevue, 73,711 (82,070). Others : Yakima, 49,826; Everett, 54,413; Vancouver, 42,834; Bellingham, 45,794; Bremerton, 36,208; Richland, 33,578; Longview, 31,052; Renton, 30,612; Edmonds, 27,526; Walla Walla, 25,618. Urbanized areas (1980 census): Seattle–Everett, 1,600,944; Tacoma, 482,692; Spokane, 341,058.

**CLIMATE.** Seattle. Jan. 40°F (4.4°C), July 63°F (17.2°C). Annual rainfall 34" (848 mm). Spokane. Jan. 27°F (−2.8°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 14" (350 mm). *See* Pacific Coast, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution, adopted in 1889, has had 63 amendments. The Legislature consists of a Senate of 49 members elected for 4 years, half their number retiring every 2 years, and a House of Representatives of 98 members, elected for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. The state sends 2 senators and 7 representatives to Congress.

Qualified as voters are (with some exceptions) all citizens 18 years of age, having the usual residential qualifications.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 844,544 votes, Bush, 800,182.

The capital is Olympia (population, 1980 census, 27,447). The state contains 39 counties.

*Governor:* Booth Gardner (D.), 1989–93 (\$63,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Joel Pritchard (R.), 1989–93 (\$28,600).

*Secretary of State:* Ralph Munro (R.), 1989–93 (\$31,000).

**BUDGET.** For the 2-year budget period 1987–89 the state's total revenue is (projected) \$19,923.6m.; general expenditure is (projected) \$20,412.4m. (education, \$8,497.5m.; transport, \$2,072.8m., and human resources, \$5,771.6m.).

Total outstanding debt in 1987 was \$3,073m.

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$14,625.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** With about 20% of potential water-power resources of US, the state has ample developed and potential hydro-electricity.

**Minerals.** Mining and quarrying are not as important as forestry, agriculture or manufacturing. Uranium is mined but figures are not disclosed; other minerals include sand and gravel, stone, coal and clays.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is constantly growing in value because of more intensive and diversified farming and because of the 1m.-acre Columbia Basin Irrigation Project.

In 1987 there were 37,000 farms with an acreage of 15.8m.; average farm was of 427 acres. Average value per acre (1985), \$923.

Cash return from farm marketing, 1985, was \$2,797m. (from crops, \$1,865m.; from livestock and dairy products, \$932m.). Wheat, cattle and calves, milk and apples are important.

On 1 Jan. 1985 animals on farms included 211,000 milch cows, 1.47m. all cattle, 53,000 sheep and 45,000 swine.

**Forestry.** Forests cover about 23m. acres, of which 9m. acres are national forest. In 1985, timber harvested from 486,506 acres cut, was 5,874.2m. bd ft. Acres planted or seeded, 1986, 171,641, not including natural re-seeding. Production of wood residues, 1986, included 695,927 tons of pulp and board.

**Fisheries.** Salmon and halibut are important; total fish catch, 1985, 210.3m. lb.; value, \$108m.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1986 manufacturing employed 304,200 workers, of whom 85,000 were in aerospace and 58,700 in the forest products industry.

Abundance of electric power has made Washington the leading producer of primary aluminium; employment, 1986, 7,600; exported aluminium, \$199.1m. worth. Aircraft exported, \$5,641.9m.

In 1986 trade employed 434,700, service industries, 393,000; government, 349,300.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state (1986) had 749 miles of interstate highway; 9,400 miles of federal-aid roads; 41,725 miles of county-maintained roads; 11,000 miles of city streets. Total including other categories, 80,623. Motor vehicle registrations (1986), 4,324,313.



**Railways.** The railways had, in 1980, 6,057 miles.

**Aviation.** There were in 1979, 365 airports, 120 publicly owned. In 1986 Seattle-Tacoma Airport traffic was 13.6m. passengers, 65,975 tons of mail and 157,027 tons of freight and express.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The adult population in state prisons in Dec. 1985 was 6,909. Since 1963 there have been no executions; total 1930–63 (by hanging) was 47, including 40 whites, 5 Negroes and 2 other races, all for murder, except 1 white for kidnapping.

**Religion.** Chief religious bodies are the Roman Catholic, United Methodist, Lutheran, Presbyterian, Latter-day Saints and Episcopalian.

**Education.** Education is given free to all children between the ages of 5 and 21 years, and is compulsory for children from 8 to 15 years of age. In autumn 1986 there were 761,760 pupils in public elementary and secondary schools. In 1986 there were 36,200 classroom teachers, average salary, \$26,100. The total expenditure on public elementary and secondary schools for the school year 1986 was \$3,124m. or \$708 per capita.

The University of Washington, founded 1861, at Seattle, had, autumn, 1986, 33,226 students, and Washington State University at Pullman, founded 1890, for science and agriculture, had 15,888 students. Twenty-seven community colleges had (1986) a total enrolment of 134,522 state-funded students.

**Health.** In 1981 the 2 state hospitals for mental illness had a daily average of 1,204 patients; schools for handicapped children, 1,999 residents in Sept. 1981.

In 1983 the state had 122 general hospitals (16,200 beds); in 1981, 3 licensed psychiatric hospitals (181 beds) and 3 alcoholism hospitals (174 beds).

**Social Security.** Old-age assistance is provided for persons 65 years of age or older without adequate resources (and not in need of continuing home care) who are residents of the state. In Dec. 1985, 12,100 people were drawing an average of \$157 per month; aid to 189,000 children in 67,900 families averaged \$419 per family monthly; to 35,000 totally disabled, \$266 monthly.

## Further Reading

Washington State Research Council. *Handbook: A Compendium of Statistical and Explanatory Information about State and Local Government in Washington*. 4th ed. Olympia, 1973

Avery, M. W., *Washington, a History of the Evergreen State*. Univ. of Wash. Press, 1965.—*Government of Washington State*. Univ. of Wash. Press, rev. ed. 1973

*State Library*: Washington State Library, Olympia. *State Librarian*: Nancy Zussy.

## WEST VIRGINIA

**HISTORY.** In 1862, after the state of Virginia had seceded from the Union, the electors of the western portion ratified an ordinance providing for the formation of a new state, which was admitted into the Union by presidential proclamation on 20 June 1863, under the name of West Virginia. Its constitution was adopted by the voters almost unanimously on 26 March 1863.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** West Virginia is bounded north by Pennsylvania and Maryland, east and south by Virginia, south-west by the Sandy River (forming the boundary with Kentucky) and west by the Ohio River (forming the boundary with Ohio). Area, 24,282 sq. miles, of which 102 sq. miles are water. Census population, 1 April 1980, 1,949,644, an increase of 11.8% since 1970. Estimate (1986), 1,919,000. Births, 1987, 22,280 (11.6 per 1,000 population); deaths, 19,669 (8.7); infant deaths, 217 (9.7 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 13,200 (6.8); divorces, 9,043 (4.8).

Population in 5 federal census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	1,156,817	64,173	36	93	1,221,119	50.8
1940	1,614,191	114,893	18	103	1,729,205	71.8
1960	1,770,133	89,378	181	419	1,860,421	77.3
1970	1,673,480	67,342	751	1,463	1,744,237	71.8
1980	1,874,751	65,051	1,610	5,194	1,949,644	80.3

Of the total population in 1980, 945,408 were male, 705,319 were urban; those 20 years of age or older numbered 1,319,566.

The 1980 census (and 1985 estimate) population of the principal cities was: Huntington, 63,684 (61,086); Charleston, 63,968 (59,371). Others: Wheeling, 43,070 (42,082); Parkersburg, 39,967 (39,399); Morgantown, 27,605 (27,786); Weirton, 24,736 (23,878); Fairmont, 23,863 (22,822); Clarksburg, 22,371 (21,379).

**CLIMATE.** Charleston. Jan. 34°F (1.1°C), July 76°F (24.4°C). Annual rainfall 40" (1,010 mm). *See* Appalachian Mountains, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The present constitution was adopted in 1872; it has had 62 amendments.

The Legislature consists of the Senate of 34 members elected for a term of 4 years, one-half being elected biennially, and the House of Delegates of 100 members, elected biennially. The Governor is elected for 4 years and may succeed himself once. Voters are all citizens (with the usual exceptions) 18 years of age and meeting certain residential requirements. The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 4 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 339,112 votes, Bush, 307,824.

The state capital is Charleston. There are 55 counties.

*Governor:* Gaston Caperton (D.), 1989–92 (\$72,000).

*Secretary of State:* Ken Hechler (D.), (\$43,200).

**FINANCE.** General revenues for the year ending 30 June 1987 were \$3,225m. (\$1,531m. from taxes, \$877m. from federal funds); general expenditures were \$3,355m. (education, \$1,348m.; highways, \$598m.; public welfare, \$749m.).

Debts outstanding were \$969.5m. on 30 June 1987.

Estimated *per capita* personal income (1988) was \$10,959.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** 38% of the state is underlain with mineable coal; 130.8m. short tons of coal were produced in 1986. Petroleum output, 3m. bbls; natural gas production was 135,431m. cu. ft. Salt, sand and gravel, sandstone and limestone are also produced. The total value of mineral output in 1986 was \$4,837m.

**Agriculture.** In 1988 the state had 20,500 farms with an area of 3.6m. acres; average size of farm was 176 acres and valued at \$542 per acre. Livestock farming predominates.

Cash income, 1987, from crops was \$57.5m.; from government payments, \$10.6m., and from livestock and products, \$168.9m. Main crops harvested, 1987: Hay (1m. tons); all corn (3.6m. bu.); tobacco (2.5m. lb.). Area of main crops, 1987: hay, 630,000 acres; corn, 85,000 acres. Apples (185m. lb. in 1987) and peaches (17m. lb.) are important fruit crops. Livestock on farms, 1 Jan. 1988, included 490,000 cattle, of which 31,000 were milch cows; sheep, 91,000; hogs, 37,000; chickens, 721,000 excluding broilers. Production, 1987, included 32.8m. broilers, 108m. eggs; 2.4m. turkeys.

**Forestry.** State forests, 1987, covered 79,365 acres; national forests, 1,673,000 gross acres; 75% of the state is woodland.

**INDUSTRY.** In 1987, 1,645 manufactories had 86,088 production workers

who earned \$2,163m. Leading manufactures are primary and fabricated metals, glass, chemicals, wood products, textiles and apparel, and machinery.

In 1987 non-agricultural employment was 597,800 of whom 139,046 were in trade, 121,130 in government and 106,540 in service industries.

The first commercial coal liquefaction plant in the USA is being built near Morgantown with the co-operation of the governments of Federal Republic of Germany and Japan and the Gulf Oil Co.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** Total highways on 30 June 1987, 37,786 miles (state maintained, 33,882 miles; inter-state, 393 miles; national parks and other roads, 3,904 miles). Registered motor vehicles, financial year ending 30 June 1987, numbered 1,401,424.

**Railways.** In 1987 the state had 2,895 miles of railway, all operated by diesel or electric trains.

**Aviation.** There were 27 licensed airports in 1987.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There are 64 AM radio stations, 70 FM radio stations. Television stations number 9 VHF and 5 UHF.

**Newspapers.** Daily newspapers number 25; weekly newspapers 62.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state court system consists of a Supreme Court and 31 circuit courts. The Supreme Court of Appeals, exercising original and appellate jurisdiction, has 5 members elected by the people for 12-year terms. Each circuit court has from 1 to 7 judges (as determined by the Legislature on the basis of population and case-load) chosen by the voters within each circuit for 8-year terms.

Effective on 1 July 1967, the West Virginia Human Rights Act prohibits discrimination in employment and places of public accommodations based on race, religion, colour, national origin or ancestry.

There are 5 penal and correctional institutions which had, on 30 June 1987, 1,558 inmates. In 1965 the state legislature abolished capital punishment.

**Religion.** Chief denominations in 1987 were United Methodist (159,000 members, estimate), Baptists (116,000) and Roman Catholics (109,000).

**Education.** Public school education is free for all from 5 to 21 years of age, and school attendance is compulsory for all between the ages of 7 and 16 (school term, 200 days—180–185 days of actual teaching). The public schools are non-sectarian. In autumn 1987 public elementary and secondary schools had 344,604 pupils and 22,702 classroom teachers. Average salary of teachers in 1987, \$21,736. Total 1986 expenditures for public schools, \$1,196m.

Leading institutions of higher education in 1987:

<i>Founded</i>		<i>Full-time students</i>
1837	Marshall University, Huntington	12,033
1837	West Liberty State College, West Liberty	2,450
1867	Fairmont State College, Fairmont	5,432
1868	West Virginia University, Morgantown	17,270
1872	Conecord College, Athens	2,380
1872	Glenville State College, Glenville	2,096
1872	Shepherd College, Shepherdstown	3,920
1891	West Virginia State College	4,503
1895	West Virginia Institute of Technology, Montgomery	2,814
1895	Bluefield State College, Bluefield	2,559
1901	Potomac State College of West Virginia Univ., Keyser	1,040
1972	West Virginia College of Graduate Studies	2,662
1976	School of Osteopathic Medicine, Lewisburg	233

In addition to the universities and state-supported schools, there are 3 com-



munity colleges (8,625 students in 1987), 10 denominational and private institutions of higher education (8,981 students in 1987) and 11 business colleges.

**Health.** In 1987 the state had 77 hospitals and 53 licensed personal care homes, 32 skilled-nursing homes and 3 mental hospitals.

**Social Security.** The Department of Human Services, originating in the 1930s as the Department of Public Assistance, is both state and federally financed. In the year ending 30 June 1988 day care for 4,735 children per month was provided; aid was given to 26,464 families with dependent children (average award, \$231.64 per month); handicapped children's services conducted 8,389 examinations; 93,376 families per month received food stamps.

On 1 Jan. 1974 all blind, aged and disabled services were converted to the Federal Supplemental Security Income programme.

### Further Reading

*West Virginia Blue Book*. Legislature, Charleston. Annual, since 1916

*West Virginia Statistical Handbook*, 1974. Bureau of Business Research, W. Va. Univ., Morgantown, 1974

*Bibliography of West Virginia*. 2 parts. Dept. of Archives and History, Charleston, 1939

*West Virginia History*. Dept. of Archives and History, Charleston. Quarterly, from 1939

Conley, P. and Doherty, W. T., *West Virginia History*. Charleston, 1974

Davis, C. J. and others, *West Virginia State and Local Government*. West Virginia Univ. Bureau for Government Research, 1963

Rice, O. K., *West Virginia: A History*. Univ. Press of Kentucky, Lexington, 1985

Williams, J. A., *West Virginia: A Bicentennial History*. New York, 1976

*State Library*: Division of Archives and History, Dept. of Culture and History, Charleston.

## WISCONSIN

**HISTORY.** Wisconsin was settled in 1670 by French traders and missionaries. Originally a part of New France, it was surrendered to the British in 1763 and in 1783, when ceded to the US, became part of the North-west Territory. It was then contained successively in the Territories of Indiana, Illinois and Michigan. In 1836 it became part of the Territory of Wisconsin, which also included the present states of Iowa, Minnesota and parts of the Dakotas. It was admitted into the Union with its present boundaries on 29 May 1848.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Wisconsin is bounded north by Lake Superior and the Upper Peninsula of Michigan, east by Lake Michigan, south by Illinois, west by Iowa and Minnesota, with the Mississippi River forming most of the boundary. Area, 56,154 sq. miles, including 1,439 sq. miles of inland water, but excluding any part of the Great Lakes. Census population, 1 April 1980 4,705,642, an increase of 6.5% since 1970. Estimated population (1988), 4,815,502. Births in 1987 were 70,907 (14.8 per 1,000 population); deaths, 42,074 (8.8); infant deaths, 611 (8.6 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 37,430 (7.9); divorces and annulments, 16,923 (3.5).

Population in 5 census years was:

	White	Negro	All others	Total	Per sq. mile
1910	2,320,555	2,900	10,405	2,333,860	42.2
1930	2,916,255	10,739	12,012	2,939,006	53.7
1960	3,858,903	74,546	18,328	3,951,777	72.2
1970	4,258,959	128,224	30,750	4,417,933	80.8
1980	4,443,035	182,592	80,015	4,705,642	86.4

Of the total population in 1980, 49% were male, 64.2% were urban and 67% were 20 years old or older.

Population of the larger cities, 1980 census, was as follows:

Milwaukee	636,297	Appleton	58,913	Beloit	35,207
Madison	170,616	Oshkosh	49,620	Fond du Lac	35,863
Racine	85,725	La Crosse	48,347	Manitowoc	32,547
Green Bay	87,889	Sheboygan	48,085	Wausau	32,426
Kenosha	77,685	Janesville	51,071	Superior	29,571
West Allis	63,982	Eau Claire	51,509	Brookfield	34,035
Wauwatosa	51,308	Waukesha	50,365		

Population of larger urbanized areas, 1980 census: Milwaukee, 1,207,008; Madison, 213,678; Duluth-Superior (Minn.-Wis.), 132,585; Racine, 118,987; Green Bay, 142,747.

**CLIMATE.** Milwaukee. Jan. 19°F (-7.2°C), July 70°F (21.1°C). Annual rainfall 29" (727 mm). *See* Great Lakes, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution, which dates from 1848, has 125 amendments. The legislative power is vested in a Senate of 33 members (1989 term: 20 Democrats, 13 Republicans) elected for 4 years, one-half elected alternately, and an Assembly of 99 members (1989 term: 56 Democrats, 44 Republicans) all elected simultaneously for 2 years. The Governor and Lieut.-Governor are elected for 4 years. All 6 constitutional officers serve 4-year terms.

Wisconsin has universal suffrage for all citizens 18 years of age or over; but, as there is no official list of voters, the size of the electorate is unknown; 2,191,612 voted for President in 1988.

Wisconsin is represented in Congress by 2 senators and 9 representatives.

In the 1988 presidential election Dukakis polled 1,126,794 votes, Bush, 1,047,499.

The capital is Madison. The state has 72 counties.

*Governor:* Tommy G. Thompson (R.), 1987-91 (\$86,149).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Scott McCallum (R.), 1987-91 (\$46,360).

*Secretary of State:* Douglas La Follette (D.), 1987-91 (\$42,089).

**BUDGET.** For the year ending 30 June 1988 (Wisconsin Bureau of Financial Operations figures) total revenue for all funds was \$11,999,460,815 (\$5,780,139,828 from taxation and \$2,137,314,286 from federal aid). General expenditure from all funds was \$11,217,121,304 (\$3,528,234,561 for education, \$3,272,141,331 for human resources).

*Per capita* personal income (1986) was \$14,742.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** There were, Dec. 1987, 87 hydro-electric power plants (15 of them municipal, 57 private in Wisconsin; 15 private outside the state) operated by public utilities with a total installed capacity of 454,332 kw.; output, 1987, was 1,492,682mwh. The 15 outside plants are in Michigan; installed capacity 99,990 kw., output 354,159mwh.

Fossil fuel and nuclear plants numbered 23 (4 municipal); the former had a total installed capacity of 7,048,528 kw.; total output, (1987), 27,679,602mwh; the 2 nuclear plants had an installed capacity of 1,540,682 kw. and a total output (1987) of 11,178,886mwh.

There were also 27 internal combustion reciprocating plants (17 of them municipal), with a total installed capacity of 98,455 kw. and a total output of (1987) 3,614mwh., and 16 internal combustion turbine plants with a total installed capacity of 1,257,450 kw.; total output was (1987) 42,015mwh.

There was a total of 152 plants, with a total installed capacity of 10,399,447 kw. and a total output of (1987) 40,396,799mwh.

**Minerals.** Sand and gravel, crushed stone and lime are the chief mineral products. Mineral production in 1987 was valued at \$153m. This value included \$73.2m. for sand and gravel, \$56.9m. for crushed stone and about \$22m. for lime. Value of all other minerals including natural abrasives, peat and gemstones, \$11m.

There are plans to develop a 2m. ton copper (with small amounts of gold) deposit near Ladysmith.

**Agriculture.** The total number of farms has declined in the last 50 years, but farms have become larger and more productive. On 1 Jan. 1988 there were 80,000 farms with a total acreage of 17.5m. acres and an average size of 218.8 acres, compared with 142,000 farms with a total acreage of 22.4m. acres and an average of 158 acres in 1959.

Cash receipts from products sold by Wisconsin farms in 1987, \$5,197m.; \$4,360m. from livestock and livestock products and \$837m. from crops.

Wisconsin ranked first among the states in 1987 in the number of milch cows, milk and butter production, output of American, Brick, Muenster, Italian and Blue Mold Cheese. Production of all cheese accounted for 35.1% of the nation's total. The state also ranked first in bulk whole condensed milk, bulk skim condensed, milk lactose for human use, whey solids in wet blends, whey protein concentrate and dry whey. The state also ranked first in mink pelts. In crops the state ranked first for snap beans, green peas and sweet corn for processing, and corn for silage. Production of the principal field crops in 1987 included: Corn for grain, 330.4m. bu.; corn for silage, 10.22m. tons; oats, 43.2m. bu.; all hay, 8.9m. tons. Other crops of importance 21.3m. cwt of potatoes, 8.4m. lb. of tobacco, 1.3m. bbls of cranberries, 1.8m. cwt of carrots and the processing crops of 770,000 tons of sweet corn, 114,700 tons of green peas and 279,400 tons of snap beans.

**Forestry.** Wisconsin has an estimated 15.3m. acres of forest land (about 42% of land area). Of 14.7m. acres of commercial forest (June 1988) national forests covered 1.2m. acres; state forests, 0.6m.; county and municipal forests, 2.3m.; forest industry, 1.2m.; private land, 9.1m.

Growing stock (1985), 15,500m. cu. ft, of which 11,900m. cu. ft is hardwood and 3,600m. cu. ft, softwood. Main hardwoods, aspen, maple, oak and birch; main softwoods, red pine, white pine, balsam fir, jack pine.

**INDUSTRY.** Wisconsin has much heavy industry, particularly in the Milwaukee area. Two thirds of manufacturing employees work on durable goods. Non-electrical machinery is the major industrial group (19% of all manufacturing employment) followed by food processing, fabricated metals, paper and paper products, electrical machinery, printing and publishing and transport equipment. Primary and secondary wood-product industries are high in value of product (over \$91,000m. in 1986). Manufacturing establishments in 1987 provided 25% of all employment, 32% of all earnings. The total number of establishments was 9,155 in 1987; the biggest concentration (40% of employment) is in the south-east.

**TOURISM.** The tourist-vacation industry ranks among the first three in economic importance. The decline of lumbering and mining in the northern section of the state has increased dependency on the recreation industry. The Division of Tourism of the Department of Development spent \$6,405,200 to promote tourism in financial year 1988-89.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The state had on 1 Jan. 1988, 108,640 miles of highway. 75% of all roads in the state have a bituminous (or similar) surface. There are 11,873 miles of state trunk roads and 19,555 miles of county trunk roads.

In the year ending 1 July 1988 Wisconsin registered 3,676,452 motor vehicles.

**Railways.** On 1 Aug. 1987 the state had 4,224 road-miles of railway.

**Aviation.** There were, in 1988, 96 publicly operated airports. Fifteen scheduled air carrier airports were served by 8 regional and national air carriers.

**Shipping.** Lake Superior and Lake Michigan ports handled 36.2m. tons of freight in 1986; 80% of it at Superior, one of the world's biggest grain ports, and much of the rest at Milwaukee and Green Bay.



## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state's penal, reformatory and correctional system on 31 July 1988 held 5,535 men, 265 women and 509 juveniles in 13 state-owned and other institutions for adult and juvenile offenders; the probation and parole system was supervising 22,155 men and 4,858 women. Wisconsin does not impose the death penalty.

**Religion.** Wisconsin church affiliation, as a percentage of the 1980 population, was estimated at 32.2% Catholic, 20.06% Lutheran, 3.74% Methodist, 10.41% other churches and 32.6% un-affiliated.

**Education.** All children between the ages of 7 and 16 are required to attend school full-time to the end of the school term in which they become 16 years of age. Children living in a district with a vocational school must attend until 18. In 1987-88 the public school grades kindergarten-8 had 510,617 pupils and 30,867 (full-time equivalent) teachers; school grades 9-12 had 250,672 pupils and 16,854 teachers. Elementary teachers' salaries, 1987-88, averaged \$28,071; junior high, \$29,436; middle school, \$30,051; high, \$30,121.

In 1987-88 vocational, technical and adult schools had an enrolment of 421,666. There is a school for the visually handicapped and a school for the deaf.

The University of Wisconsin, established in 1848, was joined by law in 1971 with the Wisconsin State Universities System to become the University of Wisconsin System with 13 degree granting campuses, 13 two-year campuses in the Center System, and the University Extension. The 26 campuses had, in 1987-88, 7,100 full-time professors and instructors and 1,951 (full-time equivalent) teaching assistants. In autumn 1987, 162,458 students enrolled (10,948 at Eau Claire, 5,055 at Green Bay, 9,406 at La Crosse, 43,368 at Madison, 25,213 at Milwaukee, 11,599 at Oshkosh, 5,213 at Parkside, 5,302 at Platteville, 5,420 at River Falls, 9,386 at Stevens Point, 7,513 at Stout, 2,377 at Superior, 10,843 at Whitewater and 10,815 in the Center System freshman-sophomore centres). There are also several independent institutions of higher education. These (with 1987-88 enrolment) include 2 universities (13,516), 18 liberal arts colleges (20,840), 5 technical and professional schools (4,193), and 4 theological seminaries (499).

The total expenditure, 1985-86, for all public education (except capital outlay and debt service) was \$4,479m.

The state maintains an educational broadcasting and television service.

**Health.** In Oct. 1988 the state had 137 general and allied special hospitals (21,231 beds), 16 mental hospitals (1,839 beds), 6 treatment centres for alcoholism (225 beds). Patients in state mental hospitals and institutions for the mentally retarded in June 1986 averaged 2,632.

**Social Security.** On 1 Jan. 1974 the US Social Security administration assumed responsibility for financial aid (Supplemental Security Income) to persons 65 years old and over, blind persons and totally disabled persons, who satisfy requirements as to need. Recipients receive a federal payment plus a federally administered state supplementary payment, except for those who reside in a medical institution. In Oct. 1988, there were 80,717 SSI recipients in the state; payments were \$443 for a single individual, \$494 for an eligible individual with an ineligible spouse, and \$676 for an eligible couple. A special payment level of \$543 for an individual and \$1,029 for a couple may be paid with special approval for SSI recipients who are developmentally disabled or chronically mentally ill, living in a non-medical living arrangement not his or her own home. All SSI recipients receive state medical assistance coverage.

Under the Aid to Families with Dependent Children programme, 86,888 families of 262,537 persons received an average of \$466.38 per family in Aug. 1988. Medicaid cost \$1,145.5m. in financial year 1987-88.

### Further Reading

*Dictionary of Wisconsin Biography.* Wis. Historical Society, Madison, 1960  
*Wisconsin Blue Book.* Wis. Legislative Reference Bureau, Madison, Biennial

Current, R. N., *Wisconsin, a History*. New York, 1977

Martin, L., *The Physical Geography of Wisconsin*. Univ. Wisconsin Press, 3rd ed., 1965

Nesbit, R. C., *Wisconsin, A History*. State Historical Society of Wisconsin, Madison, 1973

Robinson, A. H. and Culver, J. B., (eds.) *The Atlas of Wisconsin*. Univ. Wisconsin Press, 1974

State Historical Society of Wisconsin: *The History of Wisconsin*. Vol. I [Alice E. Smith], Madison, 1973.—Vol. II [R. N. Current], Madison, 1976.—Vol. III [R. C. Nesbit], Madison, 1985.—Vol. VI [W. F. Thompson], Madison, 1988

State Information Agency: Legislative Reference Bureau, State Capitol, Madison, Wis. 53702. Chief: Dr H. Rupert Theobald.

## WYOMING

**HISTORY.** Wyoming, first settled in 1834, was admitted into the Union on 10 July 1890. The name originated with the Delaware Indians.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Wyoming is bounded north by Montana, east by South Dakota and Nebraska, south by Colorado, south-west by Utah and west by Idaho. Area 97,809 sq. miles, of which 820 sq. miles are water. The Yellowstone National Park occupies about 2,221,733 acres; the Grand Teton National Park has 310,350 acres. The federal government in 1979 owned 28,888,546 acres (46.1% of the total area of the state). The Federal Bureau of Land Management administers 17,546,188 acres.

Census population, 1 April 1980, 469,557, an increase of 41.25% since 1970. Estimate (1988) 477,097. Births in 1984 were 9,741 (20 per 1,000 population); deaths, 3,172 (6.4); infant deaths, 104 (10 per 1,000 live births); marriages, 5,783; divorces, 3,705.

Population in 5 census years was:

	<i>White</i>	<i>Negro</i>	<i>Indian</i>	<i>Asiatic</i>	<i>Total</i>	<i>Per sq. mile</i>
1910	140,318	2,235	1,486	1,926	145,965	1.5
1930	221,241	1,250	1,845	1,229	225,565	2.3
1960	322,922	2,183	4,020	805	330,066	3.4
<i>All others</i>						
1970	323,619	2,568	6,229		332,416	3.4
1980	446,488	3,364	19,705		469,557	4.8

Of the total population in 1980, 240,560 were male, 295,898 were urban and those over 21 years of age numbered 295,908.

The largest towns are Cheyenne (capital), with census population in 1980 of 58,429 (1988 estimate, 50,600); Casper, 59,287 (46,600); Laramie, 24,410 (26,900); Rock Springs, 19,458 (19,600).

**CLIMATE.** Cheyenne. Jan. 25°F (−3.9°C), July 66°F (18.9°C). Annual rainfall 15" (376 mm). Yellowstone Park. Jan. 18°F (−7.8°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 18" (444 mm). See Mountain States, p. 1379.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution, drafted in 1890, has since had 43 amendments. The Legislature consists of a Senate of 30 members elected for 4 years, and a House of Representatives of 64 members elected for 2 years. The Governor is elected for 4 years.

The state sends to Congress 2 senators and 1 representative, elected by the voters of the entire state. The suffrage extends to all citizens, male and female, who have the usual residential qualifications.

In the 1988 presidential election Bush polled 106,814 votes, Dukakis, 67,077.

The capital is Cheyenne. The state contains 23 counties.

Governor: Mike Sullivan (D.), 1987–90 (\$70,000).

Secretary of State: Kathy Karpan (D.), 1987–90 (\$52,500).

**BUDGET.** In the fiscal year ending 1 July 1987 (State Treasurer's figures) cash receipts were \$1,681,314,115; general expenditures were \$1,504,570,195.

Per capita personal income (1984) was \$12,238.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** Wyoming is largely an oil-producing state. In 1987 the output of petroleum was valued at \$1,440.3m.; natural gas, \$889.8m. Other mining: Coal, \$1,111.5m.; trona, uranium, iron ore, feldspar, gypsum, limestone, phosphate, sand, gravel and marble, taconite, bentonite and hematite.

**Agriculture.** Wyoming is semi-arid, and agriculture is carried on by irrigation and by dry farming. In 1987 there were 8,700 farms and ranches; total land area 34.8m. acres.

Cash receipts, 1986, from crops, \$236.4m.; from livestock and products, \$314m. Principal commodities are wheat, cattle and calves, lambs and sheep, sugar-beet, barley, hay and wool. Animals on farms on 1 Jan. 1987 included 10,000 milch cows, 1.3m. all cattle, 775,000 sheep and lambs and 35,000 swine.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In 1987 there were 531 manufacturing establishments. There were 964 mining companies or producers. A large portion of the manufacturing in the state is based on natural resources, mainly oil and farm products. Leading industries are food, wood products (except furniture) and machinery (except electrical). There were 931 new business incorporations in 1986. The Wyoming Industrial Development Corporation assists in the development of small industries by providing credit.

**Labour.** The mining industry employed an average of 17,700 workers in June 1987. The total civilian labour force for June 1987 was 253,682; non-agricultural, 198,800. The average unemployment rate (Jan.-July 1987) was 8.3% and average weekly earnings \$611 for mining (production workers).

**Tourism.** There are over 5m. tourists annually, mainly sportsmen. The state has the largest elk and pronghorn antelope herds in the world, 11 fish hatcheries and numerous wild game. Receipts from hunters and fishermen in 1986, \$14,628,081.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The roads in 1986 comprised 5,240 miles of federal highways, 349 miles of state highways and 914 miles of inter-state highway. There were (1986) 616,718 registered motor vehicles and 12 bus companies.

**Railways.** The railways, 1986, had a length of 2,615 mainline miles and 550 branch miles.

**Aviation.** There were 11 towns with commuter air services and 2 towns on jet routes in 1987.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The state penitentiary in Oct. 1987 held 684 inmates and 16 on work release, the Womens' Center, 50. There are 2 other state correctional institutions. There have been 14 executions in Wyoming, 8 by hanging and 6 by lethal gas.

**Religion.** Chief religious bodies are the Roman Catholic (with 45,917 members in 1974), Mormon (28,954 in 1971) and Protestant churches (83,327 in 1974). There were 5,000 members of the Eastern Orthodox Church in 1972.

**Education.** In 1986-87 public elementary and secondary schools had 98,455 pupils. Enrolment in the parochial elementary and secondary schools was about 4,000. Approximately 6,273 public school teachers earned an average of \$28,230. The average total expenditure per pupil for 1985-86 was \$4,970.

The University of Wyoming, founded at Laramie in 1887, had in academic year 1987-88 10,401 students. There are 2-year colleges at Casper, Riverton, Torrington, Cheyenne, Powell, Rock Springs and Sheridan with credit course enrolment of 16,780 students in 1985-86.

**Social Welfare.** In Jan. 1974 the federal government assumed many of the previous



state programmes including old age assistance, aid to the blind and disabled. In 1987 financial year, \$16.2m. was distributed in food stamps; \$17.6m. in aid to families with dependent children: \$626,314 in general assistance; \$1,189,902 in emergency assistance; \$41m. in Medicaid. Total state expenditure on public assistance and social services programmes, financial year 1987, \$123.5m.

**Health.** In 1986 the state had 30 hospitals. There are 29 registered nursing homes.

### Further Reading

- Official Directory*, Secretary of State, Cheyenne, Biennial  
*1987 Wyoming Data Handbook*, Dept. of Administration and Fiscal Control, Division of Research and Statistics, Cheyenne, 1987  
 Brown, R. H., *Wyoming: A Geography*, Boulder, 1980  
 Larsen, T. A., *History of Wyoming*, Rev. ed. Univ. of Nebraska, 1979  
 Treadway, T., *Wyoming*, New York, 1982

## OUTLYING TERRITORIES

*Non-Self-Governing Territories: Summaries of Information Transmitted to the Secretary-General of the United Nations*, Annual

## GUAM

**HISTORY.** Magellan is said to have discovered the island in 1521; it was ceded by Spain to the US by the Treaty of Paris (10 Dec. 1898). The island was captured by the Japanese on 10 Dec. 1941, and retaken by American forces from 21 July 1944. Guam is of great strategic importance; substantial numbers of naval and air force personnel occupy about one-third of the usable land.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Guam is the largest and most southern island of the Marianas Archipelago, in 13° 26' N. lat., 144° 43' E. long. The length is 30 miles, the breadth from 4 to 10 miles, and there are about 209 sq. miles (541 sq. km). Agaña, the seat of government is about 8 miles from the anchorage in Apra Harbour. The census on 1 April 1980 showed a population of 105,979, an increase of 20,983 or 24.7% since 1970; those of Guamanian ancestry numbered about 50,794; foreign-born, 28,572; density was 507 per sq. mile. Estimated population (1984), 115,756. On 1 July 1980 transient residents connected with the military were estimated at 20,000. The Malay strain is predominant. The native language is Chamorro; English is the official language and is taught in all schools.

**CLIMATE.** Tropical maritime, with little difference in temperatures over the year. Rainfall is copious at all seasons, but is greatest from July to Oct. Agaña, Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 93" (2,325 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Guam's constitutional status is that of an 'unincorporated territory' of the US. Entry of US citizens is unrestricted; foreign nationals are subject to normal regulations. In 1949-50 the President transferred the administration of the island from the Navy Department (who held it from 1899) to the Interior Department. The transfer conferred full citizenship on the Guamanians, who had previously been 'nationals' of the US. There was a referendum on status, 30 Jan. 1982. 38% of eligible voters voted; 48.5% of those favoured Commonwealth status.

The Governor and his staff constitute the executive arm of the government. The Legislature is unicameral; its powers are similar to those of an American state legislature. At the general election of Nov. 1982, the Democratic Party won 14 seats and the Republicans 7. All adults 18 years of age or over are enfranchised. Guam returns one non-voting delegate to the House of Representatives.

*Governor:* Ricardo Bordallo (D.), 1982–85. (\$50,000).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Edward D. Reyes (D.), 1982–85.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** At 30 Sept. 1983 total assets were \$65.1m.; federal grants \$35.2m., taxes, \$26.7m.; total liabilities were \$149.3m.

**Banking.** Recent changes in banking law make it possible for foreign banks to operate in Guam.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Water.** Supplies are from springs, reservoirs and groundwater; 65% comes from water-bearing limestone in the north. The Navy and Air Force conserve water in reservoirs. The Water Resources Research Centre is at Guam University.

**Agriculture.** The major products of the island are sweet potatoes, cucumbers, water melons and beans. In 1982 there were 140 full-time and 1,904 part-time farmers. Livestock (1985) included 2,000 cattle, 8,000 pigs, and (1984) 36,430 poultry. Commercial productions (1983) amounted to 6.6m. lb. of fruit and vegetables (\$3.4m.), 567,000 doz. eggs (\$811,093). There is an agricultural experimental station at Inarajan.

**Fisheries.** Fresh fish caught in 1982, 319,300 lb. Offshore fishing produced 100,687 lb., including 6,080 lb. of shrimps.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Guam Economic Development Authority controls three industrial estates: Cabras Island (32 acres); Calvo estate at Tamuning (26 acres); Harmon estate (16 acres). Industries include textile manufacture, cement and petroleum distribution, warehousing, printing, plastics and ship-repair. Other main sources of income are construction and tourism.

**Labour.** In 1983 51% of employment was in government, 18% in trade, 5% in construction, 13% in services, 4% in manufacturing, 5% in transport and 4% in finance.

**Trade.** Guam is the only American territory which has complete 'free trade'; excise duties are levied only upon imports of tobacco, liquid fuel and liquor. In the year ending 31 Dec. 1980 imports were valued at \$544.1m. and accounted for 90% of trade.

**Tourism.** Tourism is developing; there were 1,900 visitors in 1964 and 407,100 in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are 419 miles of all-weather roads.

**Aviation.** Seven commercial airlines serve Guam.

**Post and Broadcasting.** Overseas telephone and radio dispatch facilities are available. In 1983 there were 23,442 telephones.

There are 4 commercial stations, a commercial television station, a public broadcasting station and a cable television station with 24 channels.

**Newspapers.** There is 1 daily newspaper, a twice-weekly paper, and 4 weekly publications (all of which are of military or religious interest only).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Organic Act established a District Court with jurisdiction in matters arising under both federal and territorial law; the judge is appointed by the President subject to Senate approval. There is also a Supreme Court and a Superior Court; all judges are locally appointed except the Federal District judge.

Misdemeanours are under the jurisdiction of the police court. The Spanish law was superseded in 1933 by 5 civil codes based upon California law.

**Religion.** About 98% of the Guamanians are Roman Catholics; others are Baptists, Episcopalians, Bahais, Lutherans, Mormons, Presbyterians, Jehovah's Witnesses and members of the Church of Christ and Seventh Day Adventists.

**Education.** Elementary education is compulsory. There are Chamorro Studies courses and bi-lingual teaching programmes to integrate the Chamorro language and culture into elementary and secondary school courses. There were, Dec. 1983, 24 elementary schools, 6 junior high schools, 5 senior high schools, one vocational-technical school for high school students and adults and 1 school for handicapped children. There were 17,725 elementary school pupils, 7,418 junior high and 5,776 senior high school pupils. Department of Education staff included 1,258 teachers. The Catholic schools system also operates 3 senior high schools, 3 junior high and 5 elementary schools. The Seventh Day Adventist Guam Mission Academy operates a school from grades 1 through 12, serving over 100 students. St John's Episcopal Preparatory School provides education for 530 students between kindergarten and the 9th grade. The University of Guam (an accredited institution) had 2,774 students, 1983-84.

**Health.** There is a hospital, 8 nutrition centres, a school health programme and an extensive immunization programme. Emphasis is on disease prevention, health education and nutrition.

### Further Reading

*Report (Annual) of the Governor of Guam to the US Department of Interior*  
*Guam Annual Economic Review.* Economic Research Center, Agaña

Carano, P. and Sanchez, P. C., *Complete History of Guam.* Rutland, Vt., 1964

## REPUBLIC OF PALAU

**HISTORY.** Under the Treaty of Versailles (1919) Japan was appointed mandatory to the former German possessions north of the Equator. In 1946 the US agreed to administer the former Japanese-mandated islands of the Caroline, Marshall and Mariana groups (except Guam) as a Trusteeship for the United Nations; the trusteeship agreement was approved by the Security Council 27 April 1947 and came into effect on 18 July 1947. The Trust Territory was administered by the US Navy until 1951, when all the islands except Tinian and Saipan in the Marianas were transferred to the Secretary of the Interior. In 1962 the Interior Department assumed responsibility for them also. In April 1976 the US government separated the administration of the Northern Marianas (*see below*) from that of the rest of the Trust Territory. The rest was 3 entities, each with its own constitution: the Marshall Islands, the Federated States of Micronesia (Yap, Kosrae, Truk and Pohnpei) and the Republic of Palau. The US Congress agreed compacts of free association with all except Palau (*see below*) in 1985-86.

Palau is now the only remaining Trust Territory. The Republic lies west of the Federated States of Micronesia, and has a land area of 192 sq. miles, divided between 26 larger islands and more than 300 islets. The largest island is Babelthup (143 sq. miles). Population (1980 census) 12,116; 1988 estimate, 14,106. The language is Palauan.

The headquarters is Koror. The Republic has a bicameral parliament with an 18-member Senate, and 16-member House of Delegates, both elected for four years as are the president and vice-president. The Constitution, adopted in July 1980, provided for ultimate free-association status, but it also defines Palau as a nuclear-free zone; this is in conflict with the United States' intention of basing nuclear weapons on the islands, as part of the defence responsibility included in the Free Association Compact. To cancel the anti-nuclear clause and accept the Compact required a 75% vote at referendum. When this was not achieved by successive



referenda, the constitution was amended to allow a simple majority to suffice. Palau voted in favour of the Compact (67%) in Aug. 1987; however, the Plebiscite was judged by Palau Supreme Court to have been unconstitutional and Palau remains in Trust.

Palau has a directly-elected President and Vice-President, and a bicameral parliament. The capital is Koror.

There is subsistence agriculture, craft-work and some commercial fishing.

## REPUBLIC OF THE MARSHALL ISLANDS

On 21 Oct. 1986 the USA entered into a Compact of Free Association with this former Trust Territory. The Republic is a sovereign state responsible for its foreign policy; the USA controls defence policy (for a minimum of 15 years) and provides financial support. The constitution of 1 May 1979 is still in force; it provides for an elected assembly and an elected president, both serving four-year terms. There is also an advisory council of chiefs.

Population (July 1988), 40,609. The Marshallese are predominantly Micronesian and Christian. There are two indigenous languages; Japanese is also used, but the official language is English. The capital is Majuro. Kwajalein is a US missile-testing range and airfield.

The total area is 181.3 sq. km (land area).

## FEDERATED STATES OF MICRONESIA

On 3 Nov. 1986 this island group, a former Trust Territory, entered into a Compact of Free Association with the USA. The Federation is a sovereign state; the USA controls defence (for a minimum period of 15 years) and provides financial support. The Federation is responsible for its own foreign policy. The capital is Kolonia.

Land area, 702 sq. km. Population (July 1988), 86,094. The Federation has 4 states: Kosrae, Pohnpei, Truk and Yap. There are 607 islands. The people are Micronesian and Polynesian; the main languages are Kosrean, Yapese, Pohnpeian and Trukese; the official language is English.

The federal congress is elected for four years, as are the president and vice-president. Each state has an elected governor and a unicameral assembly.

## THE NORTHERN MARIANAS

The islands form a chain, extending 560 km north from Guam; there are 16 islands, all mountainous, with a combined land area of 477 sq. km (184 sq. miles). The islands were formerly part of the US-administered Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands. On 17 June 1975 the voters of the Northern Mariana Islands, in a plebiscite observed by the UN, adopted the covenant to establish a Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands in Union with the USA. In April 1976 the US government approved the covenant and separated the administration of the Northern Marianas from that of the rest of the Trust Territory.

The Northern Marianas form a Commonwealth with an elected governor and lieutenant-governor, both serving 4-year terms; the bicameral parliament has a 9-member Senate, elected for four years, and a 15-member House of Representatives (elected for two). The people are US citizens; they elect a non-voting delegate to the US House of Representatives. The USA is responsible for defence.

The population, 1980 census, 16,780 (1988 estimate, 20,591). Saipan is the seat of government. The official language is English, 55% (1980) speak Chamorro.

## AMERICAN SAMOA

**HISTORY.** The Samoan Islands were first visited by Europeans in the 18th century; the first recorded visit was in 1722. On 14 July 1889 a treaty between the USA, Germany and Great Britain proclaimed the Samoan islands neutral territory, under a 4-power government consisting of the 3 treaty powers and the local native government. By the Tripartite Treaty of 7 Nov. 1899, ratified 19 Feb. 1900, Great Britain and Germany renounced in favour of the US all rights over the islands of the Samoan group east of 171° long. west of Greenwich, the islands to the west of that meridian being assigned to Germany (now the Independent State of Western Samoa, *see p. 1592*). The islands of Tutuila and Aunu'u were ceded to the US by their High Chiefs on 17 April 1900, and the islands of the Manu'a group on 16 July 1904. Congress accepted the islands under a Joint Resolution approved 20 Feb. 1929. Swain's Island, 210 miles north of the Samoan Islands, was annexed in 1925 and is administered as an integral part of American Samoa.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The islands (Tutuila, Aunu'u, Ta'u, Olosega, Ofu and Rose) are approximately 650 miles east-north-east of Fiji. The total area of American Samoa is 76.1 sq. miles (197 sq. km); population, 1980, 32,297, nearly all Polynesians or part-Polynesians. The island's 3 Districts are Eastern (population, 1980, 17,311), Western (13,227) and Manu'a (1,732). There is also Swain's Island, with an area of 1.9 sq. miles and 29 inhabitants (1980), which lies 210 miles to the north west. Rose Island (uninhabited) is 0.4 sq. mile in area. In 1981 there were 1,158 births and 153 deaths.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical maritime climate with a small annual range of temperature and plentiful rainfall. Pago-Pago. Jan. 83°F (28.3°C), July 80°F (26.7°C). Annual rainfall 194" (4,850 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** American Samoa is constitutionally an unorganized unincorporated territory of the US administered under the Department of the Interior. Its indigenous inhabitants are US nationals and are classified locally as citizens of American Samoa with certain privileges under local laws not granted to non-indigenous persons. Polynesian customs (not inconsistent with US laws) are respected.

Fagatogo is the seat of the Government.

The islands are organized in 15 counties grouped in 3 districts; these counties and districts correspond to the traditional political units. On 25 Feb. 1948 a bicameral legislature was established, at the request of the Samoans, to have advisory legislative functions. With the adoption of the Constitution of 22 April 1960, and the revised Constitution of 1967, the legislature was vested with limited law-making authority. The lower house, or House of Representatives, is composed of 20 members elected by universal adult suffrage and 1 non-voting member for Swain's Island. The upper house, or Senate, is comprised of 18 members elected, in the traditional Samoan manner, in meetings of the chiefs.

*Governor:* A. P. Lutali.

*Lieut.-Governor:* Eni F. Hunkin, Jr.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The first formal Economic Development and Planning Office completed its first year in 1971. Much has been done to promote economic expansion within the Territory and a large amount of outside investment interest has been stimulated.

The Office initiated the first Territorial Comprehensive Plan. This plan when completed will, with periodic updating, provide a guideline to territorial development for the next 20 years. The planning programme was made possible under a Housing and Urban Development '701' grant programme, and Economic Development Administration '302' planning programmes.

The focus will be on physical development and the problems of a rapidly increasing population with severely limited labour resources.

**Budget.** The chief sources of revenue are annual federal grants from the US, and local revenues from taxes, and duties, and receipts from commercial operations (enterprise and special revenue funds), utilities, rents and leases and liquor sales. During the financial year 1983-84 the Government had a revenue of \$76.6m. including local appropriations of \$9.5m., federal appropriations of \$39.6m. and enterprise funds of \$17.5m.

**Banking.** The American Samoa branch of the Bank of Hawaii and the American Samoa Bank offer all commercial banking services. The Development Bank of American Samoa, government owned, is concerned primarily through loans and guarantees with the economic advancement of the Territory.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Net power generated (financial year 1981) was 72.2m. kwh., of which 23.1m. kwh. was supplied to large power users and 20.2m. kwh. to householders. All the Manu'a islands have electricity.

**Agriculture.** Of the 48,640 acres of land area, 11,000 acres are suitable for tropical crops; most commercial farms are in the Tafuna plains and west Tutuila. Principal crops are taro, bread-fruit, yams, bananas and coconuts. Local sales (1982): taro, 770,315 lb.; bananas, 1m. lb.; vegetables, 584,143 lb.

Livestock (1986): Pigs, 11,000; (1984) goats, 8,000; poultry, 45,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Fish canning is important, employing the second largest number of people (after government). Attempts are being made to provide a variety of light industries. Tuna fishing and local inshore fishing are both expanding.

**Commerce.** In 1982 American Samoa exported goods valued at \$186,782,060 and imported goods valued at \$119,416,918. Chief exports are canned tuna, watches, pet foods and handicrafts. Chief imports are building materials, fuel oil, food, jewellery, machines and parts, alcoholic beverages and cigarettes.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There are (1983) about 76 miles of paved roads and 16 miles of unpaved within the Federal Aid highway system. There are 21 miles of other unpaved roads. Motor vehicles registered, 1983, 3,657.

**Aviation.** South Pacific Island Airways and Polynesian Airlines operate daily services between American Samoa and Western Samoa. South Pacific Island Airways also operates between Pago Pago and Honolulu, and between Pago Pago and Tonga. The islands are also served by Air Nauru which operates between Pago Pago, Tahiti and Auckland, and Air Pacific (Fiji and westward). South Pacific and Manu'a Air Transport run local services.

**Shipping.** The harbour at Pago Pago, which nearly bisects the island of Tutuila, is the only good harbour for large vessels in Samoa. By sea, there is a twice-monthly service between Fiji, New Zealand and Australia and regular service between US, South Pacific ports, Honolulu and Japan.

**Post and Broadcasting.** A commercial radiogram service is available to all parts of the world through 2 principal trunks, United States and Western Samoa. Commercial phone and telex services are operated to all parts of the world on a 24-hour service. Number of telephones (Sept. 1983), 6,029; telex subscribers, 78.

## JUSTICE, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** Judicial power is vested firstly in a High Court. The trial division has original jurisdiction of all criminal and civil cases. The probate division has juris-



diction of estates, guardianships, trusts and other matters. The land and title division decides cases relating to disputes involving communal land and Matai title court rules on questions and controversy over family titles. The appellate division hears appeals from trial, land and title and probate divisions as well as having original jurisdiction in selected matters. The appellate court is the court of last resort. Two American judges sit with 5 Samoan judges permanently. In addition there are temporary judges or assessors who sit occasionally on cases involving Samoan customs. There is also a District Court with limited jurisdiction and there are 69 village courts.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 6 and 18. The Government (1983) maintains 24 consolidated elementary schools, 5 senior high schools with technical departments, 1 community college, special education classes for the handicapped and 92 Early Childhood Education Centres for pre-school children. Total elementary and secondary enrolment (1983), 8,300; in ECE schools, 1,611; classes for the handicapped, 68; total elementary and secondary classroom teachers, 480. Ten private schools had 2,108 students. Learning is by a variety of media including television.

**Health.** The Department of Health provides the only curative and preventive medical and dental care in American Samoa. It operates a general hospital (173 beds including 49 bassinets), 3 dispensaries on Tutuila, 4 dispensaries in the Manu'a group, 1 on Aunu'u and 1 on Swain's Island. A \$3.5m. tropical medical centre was completed and placed in service in 1968. This now embraces the general hospital as well as preventive health services and out-patient clinics for surgery, obstetrics, gynaecology, emergencies, family practice, internal medicine, paediatrics; there are clinics for treatment of the eye, ear, nose and throat, dental and public health departments.

In 1983 there were 27 doctors, 7 dentists, 2 optometrists, 3 nurse anaesthetists, and 3 physician assistants. Total number of health service employees, 397.

## OTHER PACIFIC TERRITORIES

**Johnston Atoll.** Two small islands 1,150 km south-west of Hawaii, administered by the US Air Force. Area, under 1 sq. mile; population (1980 census) 327, with Sand Island.

**Midway Islands.** Two small islands at the western end of the Hawaiian chain, administered by the US Navy. Area, 2 sq. miles; population (1980 census) 453.

**Wake Island.** Three small islands 3,700 km west of Hawaii, administered by the US Air Force. Area, 3 sq. miles; population (1980 census) 302.

## COMMONWEALTH OF PUERTO RICO

**HISTORY.** Puerto Rico, by the treaty of 10 Dec. 1898 (ratified 11 April 1899), was ceded by Spain to the US. The name was changed from Porto Rico to Puerto Rico by an Act of Congress approved 17 May 1932. Its territorial constitution was determined by the 'Organic Act' of Congress (2 March 1917) known as the 'Jones Act', which ruled until 25 July 1952, when the present constitution of the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico was proclaimed.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Puerto Rico is the most easterly of the Greater Antilles and lies between the Dominican Republic and the US Virgin Islands. The island has a land area of 3,459 sq. miles and a population, according to the census of 1980, of 3,196,520, an increase of 484,487 or 17.9% over 1970. Of the population in 1970 about 529,000 were bilingual, Spanish being the mother

tongue and (with English) one of the two official languages. Urban population (1980) 2,134,365 (66.8%).

Vital statistics (1985-86): Births, 63,542 (19.4 per 1,000 population); deaths, 23,118 (7.1); deaths under 1 year, 947 (14.9 per 1,000 live births).

Chief towns, 1980 (and 1986 estimate) are: San Juan, 434,849 (431,227); Bayamón, 196,207 (211,616); Ponce, 189,046 (190,679); Carolina, 165,954 (162,888); Caguas, 117,959 (126,298); Mayaguez, 96,193 (98,861); Arecibo, 86,766 (90,960).

The Puerto Rican island of Vieques, 10 miles to the east, has an area of 51.7 sq. miles and 7,662 (8,084) inhabitants. The island of Culebra, with 1,265 (1,272) inhabitants, between Puerto Rico and St Thomas, has a good harbour.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Puerto Rico has representative government, the franchise being restricted to citizens 18 years of age or over, residence (1 year) and such additional qualifications as may be prescribed by the Legislature of Puerto Rico, but no property qualification may be imposed. Women were enfranchised in 1932 (with a literacy test) and fully in 1936. Puerto Ricans do not vote in the US presidential elections, though individuals living on the mainland are free to do so subject to the local electoral laws. The executive power resides in a Governor, elected directly by the people every 4 years. Fourteen heads of departments form the Governor's advisory council, also designated as his Council of Secretaries. The legislative functions are vested in a Senate, composed of 27 members (2 from each of the 8 senatorial districts and 11 senators at large), and the House of Representatives, composed of 51 members (1 from each of the 40 representative districts and 11 elected at large). Puerto Rico sends to Congress a Resident Commissioner to the US, elected by the people for a term of 4 years, but he has no vote in Congress. Puerto Rican men are subject to conscription in US services.

On 27 Nov. 1953 President Eisenhower sent a message to the General Assembly of the UN stating 'if at any time the Legislative Assembly of Puerto Rico adopts a resolution in favour of more complete or even absolute independence' he 'will immediately thereafter recommend to Congress that such independence be granted'.

For an account of the constitutional developments prior to 1952, see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1952, p. 742. The new constitution was drafted by a Puerto Rican Constituent Assembly and approved by the electorate at a referendum on 3 March 1952. It was then submitted to Congress, which struck out Section 20 of Article 11 covering the 'right to work' and the 'right to an adequate standard of living'; the remainder was passed and proclaimed by the Governor on 25 July 1952.

At the election on 4 Nov. 1984 the Popular Democratic Party, headed by Rafael Hernández Colon, polled 822,783 votes (47.8% of the total); the New Progressive Party, headed by Carlos Romero Barceló, polled 768,742 votes (44.6% of the total); the Independence Party (full independence by constitutional means), 61,316 (3.6% of the total); Renewal Puerto Rican Party, 69,865 votes (3.6% of the total).

*Governor:* Rafael Hernández Colon (Popular Democratic Party), 1984-88 (\$35,000).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Central Government budget, year ending 30 June 1986: Balance at 1 July 1985, \$63,752,000; receipts, \$6,079,319,000; disbursements, \$5,863,929,000.

Assessed value of property, 30 June 1985, was \$9,544.6m., and bonded indebtedness (30 June 1987), \$2,551m.

The US administers and finances the postal service and maintains air and naval bases. US payments in Puerto Rico, including direct expenditures (mainly military), grants-in-aid and other payments to individuals and to business totalled: 1984-85, \$3,882.9m.; 1985-86, \$4,180.2m.; 1986-87, \$4,113m.

**Banking.** Banks on 30 June 1988 had total deposits of \$20,848m. Bank loans

were \$11,178m. This includes 18 commercial banks, 2 government banks and 4 trust companies.

## NATURAL RESOURCES

**Minerals.** There is stone, and some production of cement (1m. tons in 1987–88).

**Agriculture.** Farming is mainly of sugar-cane. Production of raw sugar, 96 degrees basis, 1988 crop year, was 102,308 tons.

Livestock (1988): Cattle, 578,930; pigs, 194,613; poultry, 11m.

**COMMERCE.** In 1987–88 imports amounted to \$11,857.3m., of which \$7,927.6m. came from US; exports were valued at \$13,185.9m., of which \$11,613.4m. went to US.

In financial year 1988 the US took: Sugar, 24,248 short tons; cigarettes, cigars and cheroots, 1,904,184,000 units; other tobacco and products, 1,800,533 lb.; rum, 20,442,905 proof gallons.

Puerto Rico is not permitted to levy taxes on imports.

Total trade between Puerto Rico and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	76.854	126.971	81.131	76,347	91,909
Exports and re-exports from UK	72.695	117.861	49.620	39,405	38,877

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The Department of Public Works had under maintenance in June 1986, 8,111.7 km of paved road. Motor vehicles registered 30 June 1988, 1,608,542.

**Shipping.** In financial year 1987–88, 9,734 American and foreign vessels of 57,576,368 gross tons entered and cleared Puerto Rico.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1987 there were 118 broadcasting stations and 14 television companies. There were (1988) 756,590 telephones.

**Newspapers.** In 1988 there were 4 main newspapers, *El Nuevo Día* had a daily circulation of about 196,034 (Dec. 1987); *El Vocero*, 235,000 (Sept. 1988); *San Juan Star*, 48,000 (Sept. 1988); *El Mundo*, 105,000 (Sept. 1988).

## JUSTICE AND EDUCATION

**Justice.** The Commonwealth judiciary system is headed by a Supreme Court of 7 members, appointed by the Governor, and consists of a Superior Tribunal with 11 sections and 92 superior judges, a District Tribunal with 38 sections and 99 district judges, and 60 municipal judges all appointed by the Governor.

**Education.** Education was made compulsory in 1899, but in 1981, 3.6% of the children still had no access to schooling. The percentage of illiteracy in 1980 was 10.3% of those 10 years of age or older. Total enrolment in public schools, 1987–88, was 666,255. Accredited private schools had 117,230 pupils (1987–88). All instruction below senior high school standard is given in Spanish only.

The University of Puerto Rico, in Río Piedras, 7 miles from San Juan, had 56,904 students in 1987–88 of which 3,973 were in 3 Regional Colleges and 17,515 in other technology colleges. Higher education is also available in the Inter-American University of Puerto Rico (39,164 students in 1987–88), the Catholic University of Puerto Rico (11,509), the Sacred Heart College (8,025) and the Fundación Educativa Ana G. Méndez (17,054). These and other private colleges and universities had 23,057 students.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The area of Economic Research and Evaluation of the Puerto Rico Planning Board publishes: (a) annual *Economic Report to the Governor*; (b) *External Trade Statistics* (annual report); (c) *Reports on national income and balance of payments*; (d) *Socio-Economic Statistics* (since 1940); (e) *Puerto Rico Monthly Economic Indicators*. In addition there are annual reports by various Departments.



- Annual Reports*. Governor of Puerto Rico. Washington  
 Bloomfield, R. J., *Puerto Rico: The Search for a National Policy*. Boulder, 1985  
 Carr, R., *Puerto Rico: A Colonial Experiment*. New York Univ. Press, 1984  
 Cevallos, E., *Puerto Rico*. [Bibliography], Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1985  
 Crampsey, R. A., *Puerto Rico*. Newton Abbot, 1973  
 Dietz, J. L., *Economic History of Puerto Rico: Institutional Change and Capital Development*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1987  
 Falk, P. S., (ed.) *The Political Status of Puerto Rico*. Lexington, Mass., 1986  
*Commonwealth Library*: Univ. of Puerto Rico Library, Rio Piedras. *Librarian*: José Lázaro.

## VIRGIN ISLANDS OF THE UNITED STATES

**HISTORY.** The Virgin Islands of the United States, formerly known as the Danish West Indies, were named and claimed for Spain by Columbus in 1493. They were later settled by Dutch and English planters, invaded by France in the mid-17th century and abandoned by the French *c.* 1700, by which time Danish influence had been established. St Croix was held by the Knights of Malta between two periods of French rule.

They were purchased by the United States from Denmark for \$25m. in a treaty ratified by both nations and proclaimed 31 March 1917. Their value was wholly strategic, inasmuch as they commanded the Anegada Passage from the Atlantic Ocean to the Caribbean Sea and the approach to the Panama Canal. Although the inhabitants were made US citizens in 1927, the islands are, constitutionally, an 'unincorporated territory'.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Virgin Islands group, lying about 40 miles due east of Puerto Rico, comprises the islands of St Thomas (28 sq. miles), St Croix (84 sq. miles), St John (20 sq. miles) and about 50 small islets or cays, mostly uninhabited. The total area of the 3 principal islands is 136 sq. miles, of which the US Government owns 9,599 acres as National Park.

The population, according to the census of 1 April 1985, was 110,800, an increase of 15,209 or 16% since 1980. Population had slowly declined since 1835, when it stood at 43,000, but began to recover in the 1940s, and increased greatly after 1960. Population of St Croix, 55,300; St Thomas, 52,660; St John, 2,800. About 20–25% (1980) are native-born, 35–40% from other Caribbean islands, 10% from mainland USA and 5% from Europe. St Croix has over 40% of Puerto Rican origin or extraction, Spanish speaking. In financial year 1986, live births were 2,266 and deaths, 507.

The capital and only city, Charlotte Amalie, on St Thomas, had a population (1985) of 52,660; there are two towns on St Croix. Christiansted with (1980) 2,856 and Frederiksted with 1,054.

**CLIMATE.** Average temperatures vary from 77°F to 82°F throughout the year; humidity is low. Average annual rainfall, about 45 inches. The islands lie in the hurricane belt; tropical storms with heavy rainfall can occur in late summer, but hurricanes rarely.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Organic Act of 22 July 1954 gives the US Department of the Interior full jurisdiction; some limited legislative powers are given to a single-chambered legislature, composed of 15 senators elected for 2 years representing the two legislative districts of St Croix and St Thomas-St John.

The Governor is elected by the residents. Since 1954 there have been four attempts to redraft the Constitution, to provide for greater autonomy. Each has been rejected by the electorate. The latest was defeated in a referendum in Nov. 1981, 50% of the electorate participating.

For administration, there are 15 executive departments, 14 of which are under

commissioners and the other, the Department of Justice, under an Attorney-General. The US Department of the Interior appoints a Federal Comptroller of government revenue and expenditure.

The franchise is vested in residents who are citizens of the United States, 18 years of age or over. In 1986 there were 34,183 voters, of whom 26,377 participated in the local elections that year.

They do not participate in the US presidential election but they have a non-voting representative in Congress.

The capital is Charlotte Amalie, on St Thomas Island.

*Governor:* Alexander A. Farrelly (\$62,400).

*Lieut.-Governor:* Derek N. Hodge (\$57,000).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Under the 1954 Organic Act finances are provided partly from local revenues—customs, federal income tax, real and personal property tax, trade tax, excise tax, pilotage fees, etc.—and partly from Federal Matching Funds, being the excise taxes collected by the federal government on such Virgin Islands products transported to the mainland as are liable.

Budget for financial year 1987, \$255.5m.

**Currency and Banking.** United States currency became legal tender on 1 July 1934. Banks are the Chase Manhattan Bank; the Bank of Nova Scotia; the First Federal Savings and Loan Association of Puerto Rico; Barclays Bank International; Citibank; First Pennsylvania Bank; Banco Popular de Puerto Rico, and the First Virgin Islands Federal Savings Bank.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The Virgin Islands Water and Power Authority provides electric power from generating plants on St Croix and St Thomas; St John is served by power cable and emergency generator.

**Water.** There are 6 de-salinization plants with maximum daily capacity of 8.7m. gallons of fresh water. Rain-water remains the most reliable source. Every building must have a cistern to provide rain-water for drinking, even in areas served by mains (10 gallons capacity per sq. ft of roof for a single-storey house).

**Agriculture.** Land for fruit, vegetables and animal feed is available on St Croix, and there are tax incentives for development. Sugar has been terminated as a commercial crop and over 4,000 acres of prime land could be utilized for food crops.

Livestock (1986): Cattle, 5,802; goats, 4,556; pigs, 2,300; sheep, 2,879, poultry, 18,360.

**Fisheries.** There is a fishermen's co-operative with a market at Christiansted. There is a shellfish-farming project at Rust-op-Twist, St Croix.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main occupations on St Thomas are tourism and government service; on St Croix manufacturing is more important. Manufactures include rum (the most valuable product), watches, pharmaceuticals and fragrances. Industries in order of revenue: Tourism, refining oil, watch assembly, rum distilling, construction.

**Commerce.** Exports, calendar year 1986, totalled \$2,119m. (of which \$2,052m. to USA) and imports \$2,643m. (\$1,453m.).

Total trade between the US Virgin Islands and UK (financial years, British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	514	5,455	2,674	75
Exports and re-exports from UK	4,060	5,955	6,503	5,281

**Tourism.** Tourism is the most important business. There were about 1.52m.

visitors in 1986 spending \$509.8m.; 728,700 came by air and 827,151 on cruise ships, mainly to St Thomas which has a good, natural deepwater harbour.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The Virgin Islands have (1986) 660 miles of roads, and 48,800 motor vehicles registered.

**Aviation.** There is a daily cargo and passenger service between St Thomas and St Croix. Alexander Hamilton Airport on St Croix can take all aircraft except Concorde. Cyril E. King Airport on St Thomas takes 727-class aircraft. There are air connexions to mainland USA, other Caribbean islands, Latin America and Europe.

**Shipping.** The whole territory has free port status. There is an hourly boat service between St Thomas and St John.

**Post and Broadcasting.** All three Virgin Islands have a dial telephone system. In Dec. 1986 there were 39,232 telephones. Direct dialling to Puerto Rico and the mainland, and internationally, is now possible. Worldwide radio telegraph service is also available.

The islands are served by 10 radio stations, 4 television stations 3 newspapers, 2 of them daily, and several monthlies.

## RELIGION AND EDUCATION

**Religion.** There are churches of the Protestant, Roman Catholic and Jewish faiths in St Thomas and St Croix and Protestant and Roman Catholic churches in St John.

**Education.** Education is compulsory between the ages of 4½ and 16 years, inclusive. In 1987–88 there were 34 public schools (ranging from kindergarten to high schools); enrolment was 24,000; 36 private schools had 6,460 pupils. In 1985–86 revenues to school district were \$103.2m., of which \$85.83m. was from local, and \$17.4m. from federal sources. Public school expenditure was \$76.75m., of which \$52.2m. was for instruction. In autumn 1987 the University of the Virgin Islands had 2,545 registered students; 2,361 undergraduates and 184 graduate students. The College is part of the United States land-grant network of higher education.

### Further Reading

Boyer, W. W., *America's Virgin Islands*. Durham, N.C., 1983

Dookhan, L., *A History of the Virgin Islands of the United States*. Caribbean Univ. Press, 1974

Lewis, G. K., *The Virgin Islands: A Caribbean Lilliput*. Northwestern University Press, Evanston, 1972



# URUGUAY

*Capital:* Montevideo

*Population:* 3.08m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$1,860 (1986)

## República Oriental del Uruguay

**HISTORY.** The Republic of Uruguay, formerly a part of the Spanish Viceroyalty of Río de la Plata and subsequently a province of Brazil, declared its independence 25 Aug. 1825 which was recognized by the treaty between Argentina and Brazil signed at Rio de Janeiro 27 Aug. 1828. The first constitution was adopted 18 July 1830.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Uruguay is bounded on the north-east by Brazil, on the south-east by the Atlantic, on the south by the Río de la Plata and on the west by Argentina. The area is 176,215 sq. km (68,037 sq. miles). The following table shows the area and the population of the 19 departments at census 1985:

<i>Departments</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1985</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Census 1985</i>
Artigas	11,928	68,400	Artigas	34,551
Canelones	4,536	359,700	Canelones	17,316
Cerro-Largo	13,648	78,000	Melo	42,329
Colonia	6,106	112,100	Colonia	19,077
Durazno	11,643	54,700	Durazno	27,602
Flores	5,144	24,400	Trinidad	18,271
Florida	10,417	65,400	Florida	28,560
Lavalleja	10,016	61,700	Minas	34,634
Maldonado	4,793	93,000	Maldonado	33,498
Montevideo	530	1,309,100	Montevideo	1,247,920
Paysandú	13,922	104,500	Paysandú	75,081
Río Negro	9,282	47,500	Fray Bentos	20,431
Rivera	9,370	88,400	Rivera	56,335
Rocha	10,551	68,500	Rocha	23,910
Salto	14,163	107,300	Salto	80,787
San José	4,992	91,900	San José	31,732
Soriano	9,008	77,500	Mercedes	37,110
Tacuarembó	15,438	82,600	Tacuarembó	40,470
Treinta y Tres	9,529	45,500	Treinta y Tres	30,956

Total population, census (1985) 2,940,200 and estimate 1988 was 3,080,000. In 1985 Montevideo (the capital) had a census population of 1,246,500; Las Piedras, 58,221.

**CLIMATE.** A warm temperate climate, with mild winters and warm summers. The wettest months are March to June, but there is really no dry season. Montevideo. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 50°F (10°C). Annual rainfall 38" (950 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Since 1900 Uruguay has been unique in her constitutional innovations, all designed to protect her from the emergence of a dictatorship. The favourite device of the group known as the 'Batllistas' (a *Colorado* faction) which, until defeated at the 1958 elections, held the majority for over 90 years, has been the collegiate system of government, in which the two largest political parties were represented.

There is a Senate of 31 members and a Chamber of Representatives of 99 members.

Presidential elections were held on 25 Nov. 1984 and Julio Maria Sanguinetta of the Colorado Party was elected. The first-choice candidates of the National (Blanco) Party and the Broad Front Party were vetoed by the military government.

Gen. Gregorio Alvarez resigned on 12 Feb. 1985 and a return to civilian rule took place on 1 March 1985.

*President:* Julio Maria Sanguinetta (sworn in on 1 March 1985).

The Cabinet in Dec. 1988 was as follows:

*Vice-President:* Enrique Tarigo.

*Defence:* Hugo Medina. *Foreign Affairs:* Dr Luis Barrios Tassano. *Interior:* Antonio Marchesano. *Economy:* Ricardo Zerbino. *Public Health:* Dr Raul Ugarte. *Industry and Energy:* Jorge Presno. *Transport and Public Works:* Jorge Sanguinetti. *Labour:* Hugo Fernandez. *Agriculture:* Pedro Bonino. *Justice, Education and Culture:* Dr Adela Reta. *Tourism:* José Villar

*National flag:* Nine horizontal stripes of white and blue, a white canton with the 'Sun of May' in gold.

*National anthem:* Orientales, la patria ó la tumba (words by Francisco Acuña de Figueroa; music by Francisco José Deballi).

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of volunteers who enlist for 1-2 years service. There are 1 infantry and 1 engineer brigades, 15 infantry, 10 cavalry, 6 artillery and 6 engineer battalions. Equipment includes 17 M-24, 28 M-3A1 and 22 M-41 light tanks. Strength (1989) 17,200.

**Navy.** The Navy consists of 3 small frigates (*ex-US* old destroyer escorts, 2 of 1943 vintage, 1 of 1954), 1 corvette (*ex-1942 US* fleet minesweeper), 1 patrol vessel (*ex-coastal* minesweeper), 4 other patrol vessels, 3 coastal patrol craft, 1 transport, 1 training ship, 1 salvage vessel, 7 minor amphibious craft, 2 oilers and 1 tender. Personnel in 1989, totalled 4,200 officers and ratings including 550 naval infantry (marines) and Coastguard, and the small US-equipped naval air service of 390 with 18 aircraft and 3 helicopters.

**Air Force.** Organized with US aid, the Air Force had (1989) about 3,000 personnel and 110 aircraft, including 1 counter-insurgency squadron with 6 IA 58 Pucara, 4 AT-33 armed jet trainers and 8 A-37B light strike aircraft, a reconnaissance and training squadron with 10 T-6Gs, 3 transport squadrons with 2 turboprop F.27 Friendships, 5 Brazilian-built EMB-110 Bandeirantes (1 equipped for photographic duties), 5 CASA C-212 Aviocars and 6 Queen Airls, a search and rescue squadron with Cessna U-17A aircraft and Bell helicopters, and a number of Cessna 182 light aircraft for liaison duties. Basic training types are the T-41 and T-34.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Uruguay is a member of UN, OAS and LAIA (formerly LAFTA).

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The receipts and expenditure of the national accounts as approved by the National Council of Government (URN\$1m.):

	1986	1987
Revenue	150,000	271,000
Expenditure	161,000	293,000

External public debt US\$5,888m. in Dec. 1987.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the *Nuevo Peso* (1,000 old pesos) of 100 *centésimos*. The actual circulating medium consists of paper notes issued by the Central Bank in *Nuevo Peso* denominations of 50, 100, 500 and 1,000 *Nuevo Peso*, and 1, 2, 5 and 10 coins. In March 1989, US\$1 = 489.99 pesos; £1 = 843.28 pesos.

**Banking.** The Bank of the Republic (founded 1896), whose president and directors are appointed by the Government has a paid-up capital of N\$1,852m. The Banco

Central was inaugurated on 16 May 1967. Note circulation in Dec. 1983 was N\$10,538.7m.

A state-owned National Insurance Bank (*Banco de Seguros del Estado*) has a monopoly of new insurance business of all kinds.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was adopted in 1862.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Power output in 1986 was 3,730m kwh.

**Oil.** Petroleum production (1981) 185,000 tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Uruguay is primarily a pastoral country. Of the total land area of 46m. acres some 41m. are devoted to farming, of which 90% to livestock and 10% to crops. Some large *estancias* have been divided up into family farms; rural land-lordism is much less than elsewhere.

There were (1987) 10,323,000 cattle, 25.56m. sheep, 500,000 horses, 190,000 pigs, 12,000 goats and 6m. poultry.

The wool clip in 1984 was 91,000 tonnes.

Agricultural products are raised chiefly in the departments of Paysandú, Rio Negro, Colonia, San José, Soriano and Florida. The average farm is about 250 acres. The principal crops and their estimated yield (in tonnes) in 2 crop years were as follows:

	1986	1987		1986	1987
Wheat	232,000	350,000	Barley	77,000	90,000
Linseed	7,000	8,000	Maize	92,000	104,000
Oats	28,000	30,000	Rice	394,000	354,000

Uruguay is self-sufficient in rice, with a surplus for export. Three sugar refineries handle cane and (mainly) beet, their total production being approximately (1987) 93,000 tonnes, and approaching self-sufficiency.

Wine is produced chiefly in the departments of Montevideo, Canelones and Colonia, about enough for domestic consumption (74,000 tonnes in 1987). The country has some 6m. fruit trees, principally peaches, oranges, tangerines and pears.

**Forestry.** In 1985 roundwood removals were 2,975,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** In 1985, the total catch was 139,078 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industries include meat packing, oil refining, cement manufacture, food-stuffs, beverages, leather and textile manufacture, chemicals, light engineering and transport equipment. There are about 100 textile mills, but with the exception of half a dozen large plants, these are on the whole small.

**Trade Unions.** Trade unions number about 150,000 members. About 1.05m. (35%) population are classed as gainfully occupied.

**Commerce.** The foreign trade (officially stated in US\$, with the figure for imports based on the clearance permits granted and that for exports on export licences utilized) was as follows (in US\$1,000):

	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	732.0	...	1,087.6	1,189.1
Exports	925.0	...	838.8	1,141.9

Of the imports in 1984 (in US\$1m.) USA, 65.9; Nigeria, 113.3; Brazil, 135; Argentina, 88.4; Federal Republic of Germany, 48.6; UK, 18.2. Of the exports in 1984 Brazil took 144.8; Argentina, 88.3; Federal Republic of Germany, 79.3; USSR, 45.7; USA, 123.9; Iran, 49.2; UK, 37.7.

Principal imports (1984) (in US\$1,000): Mineral products, 262,500; chemical products, 113,252; machinery and appliances, 94,219. Exports: Textiles and textile products, 281,703; live animals and animal products, 229,079; skins and hides, 146,508; vegetable products, 129,110.



Total trade between Uruguay and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	33,292	28,824	41,366	40,474	35,410
Exports and re-exports from UK	13,980	15,513	24,465	26,484	34,999

**Tourism.** There were 1,168,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1984) about 52,000 km of roads including 12,000 km of motor-ways.

Registered motor vehicles, 31 Dec. 1981, are estimated at 281,275 passenger cars and 47,102 trucks and buses.

**Railways.** The total railway system open for traffic was (1986) 2,991 km of 1,435 mm gauge. In 1986 it carried 3.3m. passengers and 867,000 tonnes of freight.

**Aviation.** Carrasco, 22.5 km from Montevideo, is the most important airport. US, Argentine, Brazilian, Chilean, Dutch, French, Fed. German, Scandinavian and Paraguayan airlines fly to and from Uruguay. The state-operated civil airline PLUNA runs services in the interior of the country and to Brazil, Paraguay and Argentina, and Spain.

**Shipping.** In 1983 there were 13 merchant vessels and 3 tankers. In 1982, 1,115 vessels cleared Montevideo. River transport (1,270 km) is extensive, its main importance being to link Montevideo with Paysandú and Salto.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The telephone system in Montevideo is controlled by the State; small companies operate in the interior. Telephone instruments, 1986, numbered 337,000. There are 1,277 post offices. Uruguay has 85 long-wave and 17 short-wave broadcasting stations. There were (1985) about 1.7m. wireless sets and 500,000 television receivers. There are 4 television stations in Montevideo and 11 in the interior. The State itself operates one of the most powerful sound broadcast-stations in South America.

**Cinemas** (1980). Cinemas numbered 85 with seating capacity of 47,000.

**Newspapers** (1984). There were 5 daily newspapers in Montevideo with aggregate daily circulation of about 210,000; most of the 25-30 provincial newspapers appear bi-weekly.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Ministry of Justice was created in 1977 to be responsible for relations between the Executive Power and the Judiciary and other jurisdictional entities. The Court of Justice is made up by 5 members appointed by the Council of the Nation at the suggestion of the Executive Power, for a period of 5 years. This court has original jurisdiction in constitutional, international and admiralty cases and hears appeals from the appellate courts, of which there are 4, each with 3 judges.

In Montevideo there are also 8 courts for ordinary civil cases, 3 for government (*Juzgado de Hacienda*), as well as criminal and correctional courts. Each departmental capital has a departmental court; each of the 224 judicial divisions has a justice of peace court.

**Religion.** State and Church are separated, and there is complete religious liberty. The faith professed by 66% of the inhabitants is Roman Catholic although only 50% attend church.

**Education.** Primary education is obligatory; both primary and superior education are free.

In 1985-86 there were 356,002 primary school pupils, and 188,176 secondary school pupils.

The University of the Republic at Montevideo, inaugurated in 1849, has about 16,200 students; tuition is free to both native-born and foreign students; there are 10 faculties. There are 43 normal schools for males and females, and a college of

arts and trades with about 33,000 students. There are also many religious seminaries throughout the Republic with a considerable number of pupils, a school for the blind, 2 for deaf and dumb and a school of domestic science.

**Health.** Hospital beds, 1983, numbered (estimate) 23,400; physicians numbered (1984) 5,736.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Uruguay in Great Britain (48 Lennox Gdns., London, SW 1X 0DL)

*Ambassador:* Dr Luis Alberto Solé-Romeo.

Of Great Britain in Uruguay (Calle Marco Bruto 1073, Montevideo)

*Ambassador:* Eric Vines, CMG, OBE.

Of Uruguay in the USA (1918 F. St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20006)

*Ambassador:* Dr Hector Luisi.

Of the USA in Uruguay (Lauro Muller 1776, Montevideo)

*Ambassador:* Malcolm R. Wilkey.

Of Uruguay to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Felipe Héctor Paolillo.

### Further Reading

The official gazette is the *Diario Oficial*

*Statistical Reports of the Government.* Montevideo. Annual and biennial

*Anales de Instrucción Primaria.* Montevideo. Quarterly

Finch, M.H.J., *A Political Economy of Uruguay Since 1870.* London, 1981

Salgado, José. *Historia de la República O. del Uruguay.* 8 vols. Montevideo, 1943

Weinstein, M., *Uruguay: Democracy at the Crossroads.* Boulder, 1988

*National Library:* Biblioteca Nacional del Uruguay, Guayabo 1793, Montevideo. It publishes *Anuario Bibliográfico Uruguayo.*

# VANUATU

*Capital:* Vila

*Population:* 149,400 (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$350 (1981)

## Republic of Vanuatu

**HISTORY.** The group was administered for some purposes jointly, for others unilaterally, as provided for by Anglo-French Convention of 27 Feb. 1906, ratified 20 Oct. 1906, and a protocol signed at London on 6 Aug. 1911 and ratified on 18 March 1922. On 30 July 1980 the Condominium of the New Hebrides achieved independence and became the Republic of Vanuatu.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The Vanuatu group lies roughly 500 miles west of Fiji and 250 miles north-east of New Caledonia. The estimated land area is 5,700 sq. miles (14,760 sq. km). The larger islands of the group are: (Espiritu) Santo, Malekula, Epi, Pentecost, Aoba, Maewo, Paama, Ambrym, Efate, Erromanga, Tanna and Aneityum. They also claim Matthew and Hunter islands. Population at the census (1979) 112,596. Estimate (1988) 149,400. Vila (the capital) 15,000. There are 3 active volcanoes, on Tanna, Ambrym and Lopevi, respectively. Earth tremors are of common occurrence.

*Language:* The national language is Bislama (spoken by 82% of the population); English and French are also official languages.

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, but moderated by oceanic influences and by trade winds from May to Oct. High humidity occasionally occurs and cyclones are possible. Rainfall ranges from 90" (2,250 mm) in the south to 155" (3,875 mm) in the north. Vila. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 72°F (22.2°C). Annual rainfall 84" (2,103 mm). A cyclone hit Vila in Feb. 1987.

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** Legislative power resides in a 46-member unicameral Parliament elected for a term of 4 years. In the latest elections on 30 Nov. 1987, 26 seats were won by the *Vanuaaku Pati* and 20 by the Union of Moderate Parties. There is also a Council of Chiefs, comprising traditional tribal leaders, to advise on matters of custom.

The President is elected for a 5-year term by an electoral college comprising Parliament and the presidents of the 11 regional councils. Executive power is vested in a Council of Ministers, responsible to Parliament, and appointed and led by a Prime Minister who is elected from and by Parliament.

*President:* Fred Timakata (elected Jan. 1989).

The cabinet in June 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Walter Hadye Lini, CBE.

*Home Affairs:* Iolu Abbil. *Foreign Affairs and Justice:* Donald Kalpokas. *Education, Youth and Sports:* Sethy Regenvanu. *Agriculture and Livestock:* Jack Hopa. *Finance:* Sela Molisa. *Health:* (Vacant). *Lands, Minerals and Fisheries:* William Mahit. *Civil Aviation, Telecommunications, Forestry and Energy:* Harold Qualo. *Trade, Commerce and Industry:* Edward Natapei. *Transport, Tourism, Public Works, Water Supply, Labour and Immigration:* (Vacant).

*Flag:* Red over green, with a black triangle in the hoist, the three parts being divided by fimbriations of black and yellow, and in the centre of the black triangle a boar's tusk overlaid by two crossed fern leaves.

**DEFENCE.** There is a paramilitary force with about 300 personnel.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Vanuatu is a member of the UN and the Commonwealth and is an ACP state of EEC.



## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The budget for 1986 envisaged expenditure of 5,298m. Vatu and revenue of 6,130m. Vatu. The main sources of revenue were import and taxes on goods and services.

**Currency.** The currency is the *Vatu*. March 1989: £1 = 181.33 *Vatu*; US\$1 = 105.36.

**Banking** (1986). The Finance Centre, established in 1970–71 and based primarily in Vila, consists of 4 international banks (including the Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation) and 6 trust companies (including Melanesia International Trust Company Ltd, a Hongkong Bank group associate). In Aug. 1984 the Asian Development Bank opened a regional office in Vila.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in force.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 20m. kwh.

**Minerals.** The manganese mine, established at Forari on Efate closed in 1978 and the extraction of pozzolana to supply the local cement industry ceased in 1985. Preliminary prospecting for gold began in 1985 and prospects have been identified on Efate, Malekula and Santo.

**Agriculture.** The main commercial crops are copra, cocoa and coffee. In 1984 almost 47,000 tonnes of copra were exported, accounting for 62% of total exports by value. Production, 1987: Copra, 40,000 tonnes; cocoa, 1,000 tonnes; coffee (1985), 65. In 1985 about 80% of the population were engaged in subsistence agriculture. Yams, taro, manioc, sweet potatoes and bananas are grown for local consumption. A large number of cattle are reared on plantations, and an upgrading programme using pure-bred Charolais, Limousins and Illawarras has begun. A beef industry is developing.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 103,000; goats, 12,000; pigs, 73,000.

**Forestry.** In 1987 some 1,900 hectares of plantation had been established. Production (1985) 37,900 cu. metres of logs and sawn timber.

**Fisheries.** The principal catch is tuna (1985, 3,962 tonnes) mainly exported to USA. Small-scale commercial fishing (1985) over 200 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Industries in 1987 included copra processing, meat canning and fish freezing, a saw-mill, soft drinks factories and a print works. Building materials, furniture and aluminium were also produced, and in 1984 a cement plant opened.

**Commerce.** Imports and exports were (in 1 m. Vatu):

	1982	1983	1984	1985
Imports	5,794	5,287	5,801	7,529
Exports	2,199	2,940	4,300	3,263

In 1985 the main exports (in 1 m. Vatu) were: Copra, 1,392; fish, 761; beef and veal, 198; logs and sawn timber, 136; cocoa, 133. 48% of exports went to the Netherlands, 17% to Japan, 14% to Belgium and 12% to France. Australia (36%), Japan (12%), New Zealand (10%) and France (8%) were the major sources of imports and principal imports (in 1 m. Vatu) were machinery and transport equipment (1,413), food and live animals (1,234), basic manufactures (1,084), fuels and lubricants (667) and chemicals (397).

Total trade between Vanuatu and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	174	62	15	5
Exports and re-exports from UK	768	1,037	1,058	856

**Tourism.** In 1986 there were 18,000 visitors to Vanuatu. In addition there were over 56,000 tourists from cruise ships. Earnings from tourism 2,000m. Vatu.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 there were 1,062 km of roads in Vanuatu, of these about 250 km are paved, mostly on Efate Island and Espiritu Santo. There were 3,087 registered cars in Vanuatu (1984).

**Aviation** (1986). Air Vanuatu provides services to Australia; Air Nauru, Air Pacific, Air Caledonie, Solair and UTA serve Pacific routes; Air Melanesia provides regular services to 16 domestic airfields, and charter services. There are international airfields at Vila and Santo.

**Shipping.** Several international shipping lines serve Vanuatu, linking the country with Australia, New Zealand, other Pacific territories notably Hong Kong, Japan, North America and Europe. The chief ports are Vila and Santo. In 1977, 394 vessels arrived including 48 cruise ships carrying 40,412 visitors. 92,340 tons of cargo were exported and 102,867 tons discharged. Small vessels provide frequent inter-island services.

**Telecommunications.** Internal telephone and telegram services are provided by the Posts and Telecommunications and Radio Departments. There are automatic telephone exchanges at Vila and Santo; rural areas are served by a network of tele-radio stations. In 1983 there were 6 post offices and 3,000 telephones.

External telephone, telegram and telex services are provided by VANITEL, through their satellite earth station at Vila. There are direct circuits to Noumea, Sydney, Hong Kong and Paris and high quality communications are available on a 24-hour basis to most countries in the world. Air radio facilities are provided. Marine coast station facilities are available at Vila and Santo. Radio Vanuatu operates a service 7 days a week in, French, English and Bislama. In 1986 there were 4 radio stations and 18,000 receivers.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A study was being made in 1980 which could lead to unification of the judicial system.

**Religion.** Over 80% of the population are Christians, but animist beliefs are still prevalent.

**Education.** There were (1987) 224 English primary schools with 13,000 pupils, 105 French primary schools with 10,000 pupils, 11 government and denominational secondary schools with 2,000 pupils and Matevulu College. Tertiary education is provided at the Vanuatu Technical Institute and the Teachers College, while other technical and commercial training is through regional institutions in the Solomon Islands, Fiji and Papua New Guinea. Eleven new secondary institutions are planned to open in 1987.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 10 government-run hospitals throughout the islands (2 in Vila) and a number of clinics and dispensaries. In 1984 there were 19 doctors and, in 1982, 2 dentists, 3 pharmacists, 5 midwives and 266 nursing personnel.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Vanuatu in Great Britain

*High Commissioner:* (Vacant).

Of Great Britain in Vanuatu (Melitco Hse., Rue Pasteur, Vila)

*High Commissioner:* J. Thompson, MBE.

Of Vanuatu to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Nikenike Vurobaravu.

# VATICAN CITY STATE

## Stato della Città del Vaticano

**HISTORY.** For many centuries the Popes bore temporal sway over a territory stretching across mid-Italy from sea to sea and comprising some 17,000 sq. miles, with a population finally of over 3m. In 1859-60 and 1870 the Papal States were incorporated into the Italian Kingdom. The consequent dispute between Italy and successive Popes was only settled on 11 Feb. 1929 by three treaties between the Italian Government and the Vatican: (1) A Political Treaty, which recognized the full and independent sovereignty of the Holy See in the city of the Vatican; (2) a Concordat, to regulate the condition of religion and of the Church in Italy; and (3) a Financial Convention, in accordance with which the Holy See received 750m. lire in cash and 1,000m. lire in Italian 5% state bonds. This sum was to be a definitive settlement of all the financial claims of the Holy See against Italy in consequence of the loss of its temporal power in 1870. The treaty and concordat were ratified on 7 June 1929. The treaty has been embodied in the Constitution of the Italian Republic of 1947. A revised Concordat between the Italian Republic and the Holy See was subsequently negotiated and signed in 1984, and which came into force on 3 June 1985.

The Vatican City State is governed by a Commission appointed by the Pope. The reason for its existence is to provide an extra-territorial, independent base for the Holy See, the government of the Roman Catholic Church.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The area of the Vatican City is 44 hectares (108.7 acres). It includes the Piazza di San Pietro (St Peter's Square), which is to remain normally open to the public and subject to the powers of the Italian police. It has its own railway station (for freight only), postal facilities, coins and radio. Twelve buildings in and outside Rome enjoy extra-territorial rights, including the Basilicas of St John Lateran, St Mary Major and St Paul without the Walls, the Pope's summer villa at Castel Gandolfo and a further Vatican radio station on Italian soil. *Radio Vaticana* broadcasts an extensive service in 34 languages from the transmitters in the Vatican City and in Italy.

The Vatican City has about 1,000 inhabitants.

**CONSTITUTION.** The Pope exercises sovereignty and has absolute legislative, executive and judicial powers. The judicial power is delegated to a tribunal in the first instance, to the Sacred Roman Rota in appeal and to the Supreme Tribunal of the Signature in final appeal.

The Pope is elected by the College of Cardinals, meeting in secret conclave. The election is by scrutiny and requires a two-thirds majority.

<i>Name and family</i>	<i>Election</i>	<i>Name and family</i>	<i>Election</i>
Benedict XIV ( <i>Lambertini</i> )	1740	Leo XIII ( <i>Pecci</i> )	1878
Clement XIII ( <i>Rezzonico</i> )	1758	Pius X ( <i>Sarto</i> )	1903
Clement XIV ( <i>Ganganelli</i> )	1769	Benedict XV ( <i>della Chiesa</i> )	1914
Pius VI ( <i>Braschi</i> )	1775	Pius XI ( <i>Ratti</i> )	1922
Pius VII ( <i>Chiamonti</i> )	1800	Pius XII ( <i>Pacelli</i> )	1939
Leo XII ( <i>della Genga</i> )	1823	John XXIII ( <i>Roncalli</i> )	1958
Pius VIII ( <i>Castiglioni</i> )	1829	Paul VI ( <i>Montini</i> )	1963
Gregory XVI ( <i>Cappellari</i> )	1831	John Paul I ( <i>Luciani</i> )	1978
Pius IX ( <i>Mastai-Ferretti</i> )	1846	John Paul II ( <i>Wojtyla</i> )	1978



*Supreme Pontiff:* **John Paul II** (Karol Wojtyła), born at Wadowice near Cracow, Poland, 18 May 1920. Archbishop of Cracow 1964–78, created Cardinal in 1967, elected Pope 16 Oct. 1978, inaugurated 22 Oct. 1978.

Pope John Paul II was the first non-Italian to be elected since Pope Adrian VI (a Dutchman) in 1522.

*Secretary of State:* Cardinal Agostino Casaroli (appointed May 1979).

*Flag:* Vertically yellow and white, with on the white the crossed keys and tiara of the Papacy.

**ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH.** The Roman Pontiff (in orders a Bishop, but in jurisdiction held to be by divine right the centre of all Catholic unity, and consequently Pastor and Teacher of all Christians) has for advisers and coadjutors the Sacred College of Cardinals, consisting in Jan. 1989 of 154 Cardinals appointed by him from senior ecclesiastics who are either the bishops of important Sees or the heads of departments at the Holy See. In addition to the College of Cardinals, the Pope has created a 'Synod of Bishops'. This consists of the Patriarchs and certain Metropolitans of the Catholic Church of Oriental Rite, of elected representatives of the national episcopal conferences and religious orders of the world, of the Cardinals in charge of the Roman Congregations and of other persons nominated by the Pope. The Synod meets as and when decided by the Pope. The last Synod (on the laity) met in Oct. 1987.

The central administration of the Roman Catholic Church is carried on by a number of permanent committees called Sacred Congregations, each composed of a number of Cardinals and diocesan bishops (both appointed for 5-year periods), with Consultors and Officials. Besides the Secretariat of State and the Council for Public Affairs of the Church (which deals with external relations) there are now 10 Sacred Congregations, viz.: Doctrine, Oriental Churches, Bishops, the Sacraments, Divine Worship, Clergy, Religious, Catholic Education, Evangelization of the Peoples and Causes of the Saints. There are also 3 Secretariats: for Christian Unity, Non-Christians and Non-Believers; a Prefecture of Economic Affairs, a Prefecture of the Pontifical Household and a Statistical Office. Furthermore, the Roman Curia contains 3 tribunals, the Apostolic Penitentiary, the Supreme Tribunal of the Apostolic Signature and the Sacred Roman Rota; and, lastly, various other councils and commissions dealing with the Laity, Justice and Peace, Women, the Family, the Information and Revision of Canon Law, Social Communications, Migration and Tourism and Culture. The Pontifical Academy of Sciences was revived by Pius XI in 1936 with 70 members.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

In its diplomatic relations with foreign countries the Holy See is represented by the Secretariat of State and the Council for Public Affairs of the Church. It maintains permanent observers to the UN in New York and Geneva and to UNESCO and FAO. The Holy See is a member of IAEA and the Vatican City State is a member of UPU and ITU. It therefore attends as a member those international conferences open to State members of the UN and specialized agencies.

Of the Holy See in Great Britain (54 Parkside, London, SW19 5NF)

*Apostolic Pro-Nuncio in Great Britain:* Archbishop Luigi Barbarito (accredited 7 April 1986).

Of Great Britain at the Holy See (91 Via Condotti, I-00187, Rome).

*Ambassador:* J. K. E. Broadley, CMG. *First Secretary:* P. J. McCormick.

Of the Holy See in the USA (3339 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008).

*Apostolic Pro Nuncio:* Most Rev. Pio Laghi.

Of the USA at the Holy See (Villino Pacelli, Via Aurelia 294, 00165, Rome).

*Ambassador:* Frank Shakespeare.

**Further Reading**

- Acta Apostolicae Sedis Romanæ*. Rome  
*Annuario Pontificio*. Rome. Annual  
*L'Attività della Santa Sede*. Rome. Annual  
*The Catholic Directory*. London. Annual  
*Code of Canon Law*. London, 1983  
*The Catholic Directory for Scotland*. Glasgow. Annual  
*The New Catholic Encyclopædia*. New York  
*The Catholic Almanac*. Huntingdon, Annual  
Bull, G., *Inside the Vatican*. London, 1982  
Cardinale, Mgr. Igino, *Le Saint-Siège et la diplomatie*. Paris and Rome, 1962.—*The Holy See and the International Order*. Gerrards Cross, 1976  
Hales, E. E., *The Catholic Church and the Modern World*. London, 1958  
Hebblethwaite, P., *In the Vatican*. London, 1986  
Mayer, F. *et al*, *The Vatican: Portrait of a State and a Community*. Dublin, 1980  
Nichols, P., *The Pope's Divisions*. London, 1981  
Walsh, M. J., *Vatican City State*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1983

# VENEZUELA

*Capital:* Caracas

*Population:* 18.77m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,930 (1986)

## República de Venezuela

**HISTORY.** Venezuela formed part of the Spanish colony of New Granada until 1821 when it became independent in union with Colombia. A separate, independent republic was formed in 1830.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Venezuela is bounded north by the Caribbean, east by Guyana, south by Brazil, south-west and west by Colombia. The official estimate of the area is 912,050 sq. km (352,143 sq. miles); the frontiers with Colombia, Brazil and Guyana extend for 4,782 km and its Caribbean coastline stretches for some 3,200 km. Population (1981) census, 14,516,735. Estimate (1985) 17,316,740. The 1981 census excluded tribal Indians estimated at 53,350 (chiefly in Amazonas Territory) and illegal immigrants, estimated (1979) at about 3m. The official language is Spanish, spoken by all but 2.5% of the population.

The areas, populations and capitals of the 20 states and 4 federally-controlled areas are:

<i>State</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1981</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Census 1981</i>
Anzoátegui	43,300	683,717	Barcelona	156,461
Apure	76,500	188,187	San Fernando	57,308
Aragua	7,014	891,623	Maracay	387,682
Barinas	35,200	326,166	Barinas	110,462
Bolívar	238,000	668,340	Ciudad Bolívar	182,941
Carabobo	4,650	1,062,268	Valencia	624,113
Cojedes	14,800	133,991	San Carlos	37,892
Falcón	24,800	503,896	Coro	96,339
Guárico	64,986	393,467	San Juan	57,219
Lara	19,800	945,064	Barquisimeto	523,101
Mérida	11,300	459,361	Mérida	143,805
Miranda	7,950	1,421,442	Los Teques	112,857
Monagas	28,900	388,536	Maturín	154,976
Nueva Esparta	1,150	197,198	La Asunción	10,375
Portuguesa	15,200	424,984	Guanare	64,025
Sucre	11,800	585,698	Cumaná	179,814
Táchira	11,100	660,234	San Cristóbal	198,793
Trujillo	7,400	433,735	Trujillo	31,774
Yaracuy	7,100	300,597	San Felipe	57,526
Zulia	63,100	1,674,252	Maracaibo	890,553
Ter. Amazonas	175,750	45,667	Puerto Ayacucho	28,248
Ter. Delta Amacuro	40,200	56,720	Tucupita	27,299
Federal District	1,930	2,070,742	Caracas	1,044,851
Federal Dependencies	120	850	—	—

Other large towns (1980) are Petare (334,800), Ciudad Guyana (314,041, census 1981), Baruta (180,100), Cabimas (138,529, census 1981), Acarigua (126,000), Maiquetiá (120,200), Valera (101,981, census 1981), Chacao (101,900), Puerto Cabello (94,000), Carúpano (82,000) and Puerto La Cruz (81,800).

Venezuela is the most urbanised Latin American nation; in 1985, 86% of the population lived in urban areas. Over half the population live in the valleys of Carabobo and Valencia (once the capital). At the 1981 census, 69% were of mixed ethnic origin (*mestizo*), 20% white, 9% black and 2% amerindian.

Vital statistics (1986): 504,278 births, 100,002 marriages, 77,647 deaths. Life expectancy (1985) 65 males, 71 females, with 41% of population under 15 years.



**CLIMATE.** The climate ranges from warm temperate to tropical. Temperatures vary little throughout the year and rainfall is plentiful. The dry season is from Dec. to April. Caracas. Jan. 65°F (18.3°C), July 69°F (20.6°C). Annual rainfall 32" (833 mm). Ciudad Bolívar. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 81°F (27.2°C). Annual rainfall 41" (1,016 mm). Maracaibo. Jan. 81°F (27.2°C), July 85°F (29.4°C). Annual rainfall 23" (577 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The constitution of 1961 provides for popular election for a term of 5 years of a President, a National Congress, and State and Municipal legislative assemblies, and guarantees the freedom of labour, industry and commerce. Aliens are assured of treatment equal to that extended to nationals.

Congress consists of a Senate and a Chamber of Deputies. At least 2 Senators are elected for each State and for the Federal District. Senators must be Venezuelans by birth and over 30 years of age. Deputies must be native Venezuelans over 21 years of age; there is 1 for every 50,000 inhabitants. The territories, on reaching the population fixed by law, also elect deputies. Voting (by proportional representation) is compulsory for men and women over 18. Owing to the high rate of illiteracy, voting is by coloured ballot cards.

The President must be a Venezuelan by birth and over 30 years of age; he has a qualified power of veto.

The following is a list of presidents since 1945:

	<i>Took Office</i>		<i>Took Office</i>
Rómulo Betancourt	20 Oct. 1945	Rómulo Betancourt	13 Feb. 1959
Rómulo Gallegos	15 Feb. 1948	Raul Leoni	11 March 1964
Lieut.-Col. Carlos Delgado		Rafael Caldera	11 March 1969
Chalbaud	24 Nov. 1948 <sup>4</sup>	Carlos Andrés Pérez	
Dr G. Suárez Flamerich	27 Nov. 1950 <sup>2</sup>	Rodríguez	12 March 1974
Col. Marcos Pérez Jiménez.	3 Dec. 1952 <sup>1</sup>	Dr Luis Herrera Campins	12 March 1979
Rear-Adm. Wolfgang		Dr Jaime Lusinchi	2 Feb. 1984
Larrazábal Ugueto	23 Jan. 1958 <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	Carlos Andrés Pérez	
Dr Edgard Sanabria	14 Nov. 1958 <sup>3</sup>	Rodríguez	2 Feb. 1989

<sup>1</sup> Deposed. <sup>2</sup> Resigned. <sup>3</sup> Provisional. <sup>4</sup> Assassinated 13 Nov. 1950.

*President:* Carlos Andrés Pérez Rodríguez, elected 4 Dec. 1988 with 54.56% of the votes, assumed office on 2 Feb. 1989.

The cabinet in Feb. 1989 was composed as follows:

*Interior:* Alejandro Izaguirre. *Foreign Affairs:* Enrique Tejera. *Finance:* Eglee Iturbe de Blanco. *Industrial Development:* Moises Naim. *Agriculture:* Fanny Bello. *Labour and Social Development:* Marisela Padron. *Justice:* Luis Beltran Guerra. *Transportation and Communications:* Gustavo Rada. *Energy and Mines:* Celestino Armas. *Presidential Secretary:* Reinaldo Figueredo. *Defence:* Gen. Italo del Valle Alliegro.

At the Congressional elections held 4 Dec. 1983, 112 of the 200 seats in the Chamber of Deputies were won by Acción Democrática, 61 by COPEI (the Social Christians) and 27 by other parties.

The city of Caracas is the capital. The 20 states, autonomous and politically equal, have each a legislative assembly and a governor. The states are divided into 156 districts and 613 municipalities. There are also 2 federal territories with 7 departments, and a federal district with 2 departments and 2 parishes. Each district has a municipal council, and each municipio a communal junta. The federal district and the 2 territories are administered by the President of the Republic.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of yellow, blue, red, with an arc of 7 white stars in the centre, and the national arms in the canton.

*National anthem:* Gloria al bravo pueblo (1811; words by Vicente Salias, tune by Juan Landaeta).

**DEFENCE.** All Venezuelans on reaching 18 years of age are liable for 2 years in the Armed Forces.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 cavalry and 4 infantry divisions; 1 Ranger brigade,

supporting regiments and groups. Equipment includes 81 AMX-30 main battle and 36 AMX-13 light tanks. Army aviation comprises 24 helicopters and 18 aircraft. Strength (1989) 34,000.

**Navy.** Strength includes 3 submarines, 6 frigates, 13 patrol and coastal vessels, 3 corvettes, 16 missile and 15 torpedo craft.

The Coastguard, under Naval control (commanded by a Rear-Admiral) comprises 2 old Italian-built frigates, 6 British-built fast attack craft and 2 large armed tugs. Coastal patrol boats operated by the National Guard (*Fuerzas Armadas de Cooperación*) now number 40, and there are 25 service craft.

New construction (delayed) planned includes 4 corvettes, 2 more submarines, several mine countermeasures vessels, 2 landing ships and 1 survey ship.

There is a naval academy and sail training ship for the training of officer cadets and a school of staff studies and various technical training schools.

Personnel in 1989 totalled: 11,000 officers and men (4,500 conscripts) including the Marine Corps, the Coastguard, the National Guard and the Naval Air Arm comprising 8 S-2E Trackers, 8 Aviocars and 1 Dash-7, 12 Agusta AB-212 ship-borne helicopters and 2 Bell 47 helicopters for search and rescue and training and 6 light twin aircraft for various and coastguard duties.

**Air Force.** Formed in 1920, the Air Force of (1989) some 5,000 officers and men is a small, but well-equipped service with a total of about 200 aircraft. There are 8 combat squadrons. Two are equipped with 18 F-16A and 6 F-16B Fighting Falcons. Two have 14 Canadair CF-5A fighter-bombers and 6 two-seat CF-5Ds, and two share 9 Mirage III/5s. Two bomber squadrons are equipped with 19 modernized Canberra jet-bombers and a single reconnaissance Canberra. Another operational squadron has 14 OV-10E Bronco twin-turboprop counter-insurgency aircraft. A helicopter force consists of more than 30 Bell 212s, 214STs and 412s, UH-1B/D/H Iroquois and Alouette IIIs. Transport units are equipped with 12 C-123 Providers, 6 C-130H Hercules, 5 C-47s and 6 Aeritalia G222s. Communications aircraft are Queen Airls and other types. Thirty Tucanos Mentors are used for training, together with 20 T-2D Buckeye advanced jet trainers, which have a secondary attack role. A battalion of paratroops comes within Air Force responsibility. There is a staff college and a cadet academy.

**National Guard,** a volunteer force of some 22,000 under the Ministry of Defence, is broadly responsible for internal security. It includes customs and forestry duties among its tasks.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Venezuela is a member of UN, OAS, LAIA (formerly LAFTA), OPEC and the Andean Group.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** The revenue and expenditure for calendar years were, in Bs.1m., as follows:

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Revenue	102,808	118,039	...	165,000	180,000
Expenditure	103,539	113,307	...	165,000	180,000

**Currency.** The *bolívar* (Bs.) is divided into 100 *céntimos*. Gold coins, 100 (*pachanos*), 20 and 10 *bolívars* have been minted but are no longer in circulation; silver coins are 5 (*fuerte*), 2, 1 *bolívars*; nickel, 50 (*real*), 25 (*medio*) and 12.5 *céntimos* (*locha*), coppernickel, 5 *céntimos* (*puya*).

The bank-notes in circulation are 500, 100, 50, 20 and 10 *bolívars*. The circulation of foreign bank-notes is forbidden.

In March 1989, £1 = Bs.67.78; US\$1 = 39.58 on the free market.

**Banking.** The major banks include: Banco Provincial SAICA, Banco de Venezuela, Banco Consolidado, Banco Unión, Banco Mercantil, Banco Latino, Banco de Maracaibo, Banco Industrial de Venezuela, Bank of America.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 50,240m. kwh. The Guri dam hydroelectric project was opened in Nov. 1986. It will supply 70% of the country's needs.

**Oil.** The oil-producing region around Maracaibo, covering some 30,000 sq. miles, produces about three-quarters of Venezuelan petroleum. Deposits in the Orinoco region are likely to prove one of the largest heavy oil reserves in the world. Nationalization of the privately owned oil sector in 1976 has proved successful. New distribution channels have been established, with the result that the major transnational companies which took 80% of Venezuela's oil in 1976 handled only 50% in 1980. Crude oil production (1988) 93m. tonnes.

Proven crude oil reserves in Dec. 1986 stood at 55,521m. bbls. However, these are considered conservative estimates and new fields off-shore have estimated reserves of 6,000–40,000m. bbls. The Orinoco tar sands belt has reserves variously estimated at between 700,000m. bbls. and 3,000,000m. bbls.

**Gas.** Production (1985) 33,059m. cu. metres.

**Minerals.** Bauxite is being exploited in the Guayana region by Bauxien, a state agency. There are important goldmines in the region south-east of Bolívar State, and new deposits have been discovered near El Callao (1959) and Sosa Méndez (1961) in the Guayana region. Output, 1982, amounted to 902 kg. Diamond output, from Amazonas territory, was 687,000 carats in 1977. Manganese deposits, estimated at several million tons, were discovered in 1954. Phosphate-rock deposits (yielding from 64 to 82% tricalcium phosphate) are found in the state of Falcón; reserves of 15m. tons of high-quality rock have been established. The state of Sucre has large sulphur deposits. Coal is worked in the states of Táchira, Aragua and Anzoátegui. Coal proven reserves in Zulía (160m. tons) are to be developed to service a new thermal power station in the Maracaibo area. An important nickel deposit (at Loma de Hierro near Tejerías) is estimated to equal 600,000 tons of pure nickel. Saltmines are now worked by the Government on the Araya peninsula. Asbestos and copper pyrite are being exploited. There were proven reserves (1984) of bauxite totalling 200m. tonnes and production of about 3m. per annum are scheduled from 1986.

Iron ore is exploited in Bolívar State by the Orinoco Mining Co. and Iron Mines of Venezuela, subsidiaries respectively of the US Steel Corp. and the Bethlehem Steel Co. Proven reserves at the end of 1980 were 1,800m. tonnes. National output of iron ore, 1985, 14.9m. tonnes of which 9m. was exported.

**Agriculture.** Venezuela is divided into 3 distinct zones—the agricultural, the pastoral and the forest zone. In the first are grown coffee, cocoa, sugar-cane, maize, rice, wheat (grown in the Andes), tobacco, cotton, beans, sisal, etc.; the second affords grazing for more than 6m. cattle and numerous horses; and in the third, which covers a very large portion of the country, tropical products, such as caoutchouc, balatá (a gum resembling rubber), tonka beans, dividivi, copaiba, vanilla, growing wild, are worked by the inhabitants. The 1987 livestock estimate showed cattle, 12,654,000; pigs, 3,351,000; goats, 1.34m.; sheep, 422,000; poultry, 54m. Area under cultivation is 5,530,898 acres. Over 50% of all farmers are engaged in subsistence agriculture and growth rates in agricultural production have not kept pace with the high population increase. Government has introduced a programme of price support, tax incentives and price increases.

Production (1987, in 1,000 tonnes) rice, 300; maize, 1,200; cassava, 315; sugar-cane, 7,000; bananas, 1,000; oranges, 392; potatoes, 195; tomatoes, 125; coffee, 66; sesame seed, 80; tobacco, 15; cocoa, 14.

The coffee plantations number 62,673, covering 543,400 acres with 135m. bushes. The Venezuelan cocoa, from 13,000 plantations, is considered to be of high quality; it is grown chiefly in the states of Sucre and Miranda. The sugar industry has 6 government and 20 privately owned mills.

**Forestry.** Resources have been barely tapped; 600 species of wood have been identified.



**Fisheries.** Total catch (1985) was 263,840 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Production (1985): Steel, 2.72m. tonnes; aluminium, 407,000; ammonia, 490,000; fertilizers, 650,000; cement, 5.12m.; paper, 550,000; vehicles (units) 116,000.

Industrial development is concentrated in capital intensive areas where it can have a competitive advantage within the Andean Group, whereas in more labour intensive industries, the low labour costs of other member countries gives them an advantage. However, Venezuela currently produces 90% of its requirements of processed food, beverages, tobacco, clothing and textiles.

**Labour.** The labour force in 1985 was 6m., 16.3% were in agriculture, 15.3% in manufacturing and 7% in construction.

Wages are the highest in Latin America, there is a high turnover of labour and a corresponding rate of absenteeism.

45% of the labour force is unionized. The most powerful confederation is the CTV (*Confederacion de Trabajadores de Venezuela*, formed 1947), which is dominated by the Accion Democratica party. Estimated membership, 1.1m. but claims 2m.

**Commerce.** Venezuela's exports and imports (in US\$1 m.):

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Exports	14,759	15,967	14,178	8,880
Imports	6,409	7,262	7,388	7,600

Main export markets in 1982 were USA, Netherlands Antilles because of its oil refining and transshipment facilities, Canada, Puerto Rico, Italy and Spain.

Principal imports are machinery and equipment, manufactured goods, chemical products, foodstuffs.

The USA supplied 47% of all imports in 1982, followed by Federal Republic of Germany, Japan, Italy and the UK.

Total trade between UK and Venezuela (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	253,770	238,879	96,339	91,749	76,563
Exports and re-exports from UK	102,400	165,268	170,101	157,760	177,787

**Tourism.** 317,300 tourists visited Venezuela in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were, 1985, 62,601 km of road fit for traffic the year round; of these 24,036 km are paved. There are 10,097 km of high-speed 4-lane motorway type. The motorway system runs from Caracas to Puerto Cabello *via* Valencia and will shortly be linked direct with one from La Guaira to Caracas.

**Railways.** Plans have existed since 1950 for large-scale railway construction but only the Puerto Cabello to Barquisimeto and Acarigua lines (336 km–1,435 mm gauge) has been completed. In 1986 it carried 17.1m. passenger-km and 11.5m. tonne-km. A metro is under construction in Caracas the first section of which was opened in March 1983.

**Aviation.** In 1985 there were 7 international airports, 51 national and over 200 private airports. The chief Venezuelan airlines are LAV (Líneas Aéreas Venezolanas), a government-owned concern, and AVENSA (Aerovías Venezolanas). Both operate numerous internal services. VIASA operates international routes in conjunction with KLM. There are also 3 specialist air freight companies. In all there are over 100 commercial aircraft in operation. In addition to Venezuelan international services, a number of US and Latin American and European lines operate services to Venezuela. British Airways operates twice-weekly flights between London and Caracas.

**Shipping.** Foreign vessels are not permitted to engage in the coasting trade, except by special concessions or by contract with the Government. La Guaira, Maracaibo, Puerto Cabello, Puerto Ordaz and Guanta are the chief ports. In Dec. 1978 the merchant fleet had an aggregate gross tonnage of 824,000; this included tankers of 368,000 gross tons.

The principal navigable rivers are the Orinoco and its tributaries Apure and Arauca, from San Fernando to Tucupita through Ciudad Bolívar, Puerto Ordaz and San Félix; San Juan from Caripito to the Gulf of Paria; and Escalante in Lake Maracaibo.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 1,165,699 telephones in 1985. An international telex service operates in the Caracas metropolitan zone. There is a submarine telephone link with USA.

In 1986 there were 6.7m. radio receivers and 77 radio stations at Caracas, Maracaibo, Maracay and other towns. There were 3 television stations in Caracas (two privately owned), of which 2 cover, with relays, most of the country. In 1986 there were about 2.75m. homes with TV receivers.

**Cinemas** (1977). There were 563 cinemas and 25 drive-ins.

**Newspapers** (1983). There were 25 leading daily newspapers with a circulation of over 1.7m.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND HEALTH

**Justice.** The Supreme Court, which operates in Divisions, each with 5 members, is elected by Congress for 5 years. The country is divided into 20 legal districts. They select their own President and Vice-President. The Federal Procurator-General is appointed for 5 years. There are lower federal courts.

Each state has a Supreme Court with 3 members, a superior court, or superior tribunal, courts of first instance, district courts and municipal courts. In the territories there are civil and military judges of first instance, and also judges in the municipios. Finally, there is an income-tax claims tribunal.

**Religion.** The Roman Catholic is the prevailing religion, but there is toleration of all others. There are 4 archbishops, 1 at Caracas, who is Primate of Venezuela, 2 at Mérida and 1 at Ciudad Bolívar. There are 19 bishops. In the state primary schools instruction is given only to those children whose parents expressly request it. Protestants number about 20,000.

**Education.** In 1984-85 there were 14,277 primary schools with 125,140 teachers and 3,256,554 pupils, 2,241 secondary schools with 58,056 teachers and 1,007,642 pupils. The number of students in higher education was 381,575 with 30,123 teaching staff in the 81 establishments.

**Health.** In 1983 there were 21,502 doctors and 43,650 beds in hospitals and dispensaries in 1979.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Venezuela in Great Britain (1 Cromwell Rd., London, SW7)

*Ambassador:* Dr Francisco Kerdel-Vegas, CBE (accredited 5 Nov. 1987).

Of Great Britain in Venezuela (Torre Las Mercedes, Avenida La Estancia, Chuao, Caracas 1060)

*Ambassador:* Giles Fitzherbert, CMG.

Of Venezuela in the USA (2445 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Valentin Hernandez.

Of the USA in Venezuela (Avenida Francisco de Miranda and Avenida Principal de la Floresta, Caracas)

*Ambassador:* Otto J. Reich.

Of Venezuela to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Andrés Aguilar.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The following are some of the principal publications:

- Dirección General de Estadística, Ministerio de Fomento, *Boletín Mensual de Estadística*.—*Anuario Estadístico de Venezuela*. Caracas, Annual
- Banco Central, *Memoria Annual* and *Boletín Mensual*
- Ministerio de Sanidad y Asistencia Social, Dirección de Salud Pública, *Anuario de Epidemiología y Asistencia Social*
- Bigler, G. E., *Politics and State Capitalism in Venezuela*. Madrid, 1981
- Braveboy-Wagner, J. A., *The Venezuela-Guyana Border Dispute: Britain's Colonial Legacy in Latin America*. Boulder and Epping, 1984
- Buitrón, A., *Causas y Efectos del Exodo Rural en Venezuela*.—*Efectos Económicos y Sociales de las Inmigraciones en Venezuela*.—*Las Inmigraciones en Venezuela*. Pan American Union, Washington, D.C., 1956
- Ewell, J., *Venezuela: A Century of Change*. London, 1984
- Lombard, J., *Venezuelan History: A Comprehensive Working Bibliography*. Boston, 1977.—*Venezuela: The Search for Order, the Dream of Progress*. OUP, 1982
- Martz, J. D. and Myers, D. J., *Venezuela: The Democratic Experience*. New York, 1986



# VIETNAM

*Capital:* Hanoi

*Population:* 61.4m. (1989)

*GNP per capita:* US\$200 (1989)

## Cộng Hòa Xã Hội Chủ Nghĩa Việt Nam—The Socialist Republic of Vietnam

**HISTORY.** The history of Vietnam can be traced to the beginning of the Christian era. Conquered by the Chinese in B.C. 111, it broke free of Chinese domination in 939, though at many subsequent periods it was a nominal Chinese vassal. (For subsequent history until the cessation of hostilities with France at the Geneva Conference of July 1954 *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1985–86).

The Geneva conference stipulated that elections should take place in 1956. Ngo Dinh Diem became Prime Minister of South Vietnam (Republic of Vietnam) in 1954 and President in 1955. Elections were never held. In 1963 Diem was overthrown. In 1965 Nguyen Van Thieu took power as chairman of a National Leadership Committee, becoming President in 1967. From 1959 the North promoted insurgency in the South; US involvement began in 1961.

In Paris on 27 Jan. 1973 an agreement was signed ending the war in Vietnam. After the US withdrawal, however, hostilities continued between the North and the South until the latter's defeat in 1975. 150,000–200,000 South Vietnamese fled the country, including the former President Thieu.

For details of the former Republic of Vietnam, *see* THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1975–76. After the collapse of Thieu's regime the Provisional Revolutionary Government established an administration in Saigon. A general election was held on 25 April 1976 for a National Assembly representing the whole country. Voting was by universal suffrage of all citizens of 18 or over, except former functionaries of South Vietnam undergoing 're-education', the last of whom (approximately 7,000) were released in Sept. 1987 and Feb. 1988. The unification of North and South Vietnam into the Socialist Republic of Vietnam took place formally on 2 July 1976. In 1978 Vietnam signed a 25-year treaty of friendship and co-operation with the USSR. Relations with China correspondingly deteriorated, an exacerbating factor being the Vietnamese military intervention in Cambodia. Occasional skirmishing along the China–Vietnam border continued into 1988. In 1988 Vietnam began the phased withdrawal of its 120,000 troops in Cambodia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The country has a total area of 329,566 sq. km and is divided administratively into 40 provinces. Areas and populations (in 1,000) at the census of Oct. 1979 were as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1979</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1979</i>
Lai Chau	17,408	322,077	Thai Binh	1,344	1,506,235
Son La	14,656	487,793	Hai Phong (city) <sup>1</sup>	1,515	1,279,067
Hoang Lien Son	14,125	778,217	Ha Nam Ninh	3,522	2,781,409
Ha Tuyen	13,519	782,453	Thanh Hoa	11,138	2,532,261
Cao Bang	} 13,731	{ 479,823	Nghe Tinh	22,380	3,111,989
Lang Son		{ 484,657	Binh Tri Thien	19,048	1,901,713
Bac Thai	8,615	815,105	Quang Nam – Da Nang	11,376	1,529,520
Quang Ninh	7,076	750,055	Nghia Binh	14,700	2,095,354
Vinh Phu	5,187	1,488,348	Gia Lai – Kon Tum	18,480	595,906
Ha Bac	4,708	1,662,671	Dac Lac	18,300	490,198
Ha Son Binh	6,860	1,537,190	Phu Khanh	9,620	1,188,637
Hanoi (city) <sup>1</sup>	597	2,570,905	Lam Dong	10,000	396,657
Hai Hung	2,526	2,145,662	Thuan Hai	11,000	938,255

<sup>1</sup> Autonomous city.

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1979</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>1979</i>
Dong Nai	12,130	1,304,799	Ben Tre	2,400	1,041,838
Song Be	9,500	659,093	Cuu Long	4,200	1,504,215
Tay Ninh	4,100	684,006	An Giang	4,140	1,532,362
Long An	5,100	957,264	Hau Giang	5,100	2,232,891
Dong Thap	3,120	1,182,787	Kien Giang	6,000	994,673
Thanh Pho—			Minh Hai	8,000	1,219,595
Ho Chi Minh <sup>1</sup>	1,845	3,419,978	Vung Tau—Con Dao <sup>2</sup>	—	91,160
Tien Giang	2,350	1,264,498			
				329,466	52,741,766

<sup>1</sup> Autonomous city.<sup>2</sup> Special area.

At the census of Oct. 1979 the population was 52,741,766 (25,580,582 male; 19.7% urban).

Population (1989), 64m. (Ho Chi Minh 4m.; Hanoi, 2m. (1979); growth rate (1988) 2.4% per annum. Density, 181 per sq. km. Sanctions are imposed on couples with more than two children.

84% of the population are Vietnamese (Kinh). There are also over 60 minority groups thinly spread in the extensive mountainous regions. The largest minorities are (1976 figures in 1,000): Tay (742); Khmer (651); Thai (631); Muong (618); Nung (472); Meo (349); Dao (294). In 1987 1m. Vietnamese were living abroad, mainly in USA.

From 1979 to July 1984 59,730 persons emigrated legally. In 1986 1,400 people a month were leaving legally under the UN's orderly departure scheme. (For previous details see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1981–82). Between Apr. 1975 and Aug. 1984 a further 554,000 illegal emigrants ('boat people') succeeded in finding refuge abroad. In June 1988 the UK announced that Hong Kong would no longer accept 'boat people', who were not proven political refugees and in Feb. 1989, Vietnam agreed to accept their return but did not agree to their enforced repatriation. In March 1989 ASEAN announced that 'boat people' would no longer be automatically eligible for resettlement in member countries. In Jan. 1988 the USA announced a plan to accept all Asian-American children in Vietnam as refugees.

**CLIMATE.** The humid monsoon climate gives tropical conditions in the south and sub-tropical conditions in the north, though real winter conditions can affect the north when polar air blows south over Asia. In general, there is little variation in temperatures over the year. Hanoi. Jan. 62°F (16.7°C), July 84°F (28.9°C). Annual rainfall 72" (1,830 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was adopted in Dec. 1980. It states that Vietnam is a state of proletarian dictatorship and is developing according to Marxism–Leninism.

At the elections for the National Assembly held on 19 April 1987, 829 candidates stood and 496 were elected. Turn-out of voters was said to be 99.32%.

Local government authorities are the people's councils, which appoint executive committees. Local elections were held with the National Assembly elections in 1987.

'The standing organ of the National Assembly and presidium of the Republic' is the State Council:

*President (titular head of state):* Vo Chi Cong. *Vice-Presidents:* Nguyen Huu Tho, Le Quang Do, Nguyen Quyet, Dam Quang Trung, Huynh Tan Phat, Mrs Nguyen Thi Dinh.

*Chairman of the National Assembly:* Le Quang Do.

All political power stems from the Communist Party of Vietnam (until Dec. 1976 known as the Workers' Party of Vietnam), founded in 1930; it had 1.7m. members in 1986. Its Politburo in April 1989 consisted of Nguyen Van Linh (*First Secretary*); Vo Chi Cong; Do Muoi (*Prime Minister*); Vo Van Kiet; Le Duc Anh (*Minister of Defence*); Nguyen Duc Tam; Nguyen Co Thach (*Deputy Prime Minister and Foreign Minister*); Dong Si Nguyen (*Deputy Prime Minister*); Tran Xuan Bach; Nguyen Thanh Binh; Dao Duy Tung; Doan Khue; Mai Chi Tho

(*Minister of the Interior*). Ministers not in the Politburo include: Vo Nguyen Giap (*Deputy Prime Minister*); Doan Duy Than (*Foreign Trade*); Hoang Quy (*Finance*); Tran Hoan (*Information*), Pham Van Kai (*Chairman, State Planning Commission*).

There were 2 puppet parties, the Democratic (founded 1944) and the Socialist (1946), which were unified with the trade and youth unions in the Fatherland Front. The Democratic Party was wound up in Oct. 1988.

*National flag*: Red, with a yellow 5-pointed star in the centre.

*National anthem*: 'Tien quan ca' ('The troops are advancing').

**DEFENCE.** Vietnam has the fifth largest army in the world. Men between 18 and 35 and women between 18 and 25 are liable for conscription of 3 years, specialists 4 years.

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 armoured division, 65 infantry divisions (of varying strengths), 8 engineer and 16 economic construction divisions, and 10 field artillery brigades. Equipment includes some 1,600 main battle and 450 light tanks. Strength was (1989) about 1.3m; although reductions of 300,000 have been announced. Paramilitary forces are Border Defence (60,000) and Peoples' Defence Force (500,000). In 1989 some 50,000 troops were still stationed in Laos and 100,000 in Cambodia.

**Navy.** Before the North Vietnamese victory in 1975 the Navy comprised 3 old coastal escorts, 2 fast missile boats, 28 fast torpedo boats, 22 fast motor gunboats, 34 small patrol boats, 24 landing craft, 4 minesweeping boats, 10 tenders, 100 auxiliaries and 200 armed junks. It also had 10 Mi-4 SAR helicopters.

At least 1 frigate, several other major warships and a considerable number of auxiliaries were captured after the South Vietnamese surrender.

The fleet reportedly includes 5 *ex*-Soviet escorts, 2 old frigates, 2 old corvettes, 1 fleet minesweeper, 8 old patrol vessels, 8 fast missile boats, 16 fast torpedo boats, 5 fast hydrofoil torpedo craft, 15 fast gunboats, 9 fast patrol craft, 6 coastal patrol cutters, 9 landing ships, 12 landing craft, 1 torpedo recovery vessel, 1 fleet minesweeper, 2 coastal minesweepers, 1 inshore minehunter, 1 survey ship, 15 auxiliaries and 100 armed junks; but due to the lack of maintenance, spares and trials it is difficult to assess the operational availability of this heterogeneous collection or the availability of trained personnel. The USSR has docking facilities at the Cam Ranh Bay naval base.

It is estimated that 4 missile craft, 6 torpedo boats, 22 gunboats, 3 minesweepers, 24 patrol craft, 25 coastguard cutters and 100 motor launches are non-operational together with 580 riverine craft, 100 landing craft, 30 monitors, 100 converted amphibious craft, 26 vedettes, 36 auxiliaries and 75 service craft.

In 1988 there were an estimated 6,000 naval personnel but there had been up to 34,000 additional conscripts.

**Air Force.** The Air Force, built up with Soviet and Chinese assistance, had (1989) about 12,000 personnel and 350 combat aircraft (plus many stored), including modern US types captured in war. There are reported to be 3 squadrons of variable-geometry MiG-23s, 6 squadrons of MiG-17s and Su-20s, over 150 MiG-21 interceptors; An-2, Li-2, C-47, An-24, An-26 and Il-14 transports; and a strong helicopter force with UH-1 Iroquois, Mi-6, Mi-8 and Mi-24 helicopters. 'Guideline', 'Goa' and 'Gainful' missiles are operational in large numbers.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Vietnam is a member of UN, Comecon and IMF.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** Long-term forward planning gives priority to self-sufficiency in agriculture and stimulating regional industry. The fourth 5-year plan covers 1986-90. (For previous plans see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1985-86.)

Curtailment of Western aid, and resistance to Government measures have contributed to a shortage of consumer goods and widespread malnutrition. Small family businesses were legalized in 1986.



Since assuming Party leadership in Dec. 1986 Nguyen Van Linh has denounced the inefficiency and bureaucracy of the past and announced major economic reforms injecting free enterprise principles and reducing central control.

**Currency.** The monetary unit is the *dong*. A currency reform of 14 Sept. 1985 substituted a new *dong* at a rate of 1 new *dong* = 10 (old) *dong*. Notes are issued for 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, 100 and 500 new *dong*. (For former currency see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1985-86). In March 1989 £1 = 5,702 *dong*; US\$1 = 3,313 *dong*. Inflation was 700% in 1988.

**Banking.** The bank of issue is the National Bank of Vietnam (founded in 1951). There is also a Bank for Foreign Trade (Vietcombank).

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** In 1986, 5,400m. kwh. of electricity were produced. A hydro-electric power station with a capacity of 2m. kw. was opened at Hoa-Binh in 1989.

**Minerals.** North Vietnam is rich in anthracite, lignite and hard coal: Total reserves are estimated at 20,000m. tonnes. Anthracite production in 1975 was 5m. tonnes. Coal production was 5.3m. tonnes in 1980. There are deposits of iron ore, manganese, titanium, chromite, bauxite and a little gold. Reserves of apatite are some of the biggest in the world. A Soviet-Vietnamese enterprise claimed to have struck oil in May 1984.

**Agriculture.** In 1985, 62% of the population was engaged in agriculture. In 1977 there were 15,200 co-operatives in the North averaging 300-500 hectares (less than 100 hectares in mountain regions) and a workforce of 1,000-2,000. The intemperate collectivization of agriculture in the South after 1977 had disastrous effects which the Government is now trying to rectify by a system of incentives to peasants which allows them small private plots and the right to market some of their own produce. There were 105 state farms employing in all 70,000 workers and with 55,000 hectares arable and 50,000 hectares of pasture. Other crops include maize, sugar-cane, sweet potatoes and cotton. The cultivated area in 1980 was 6.97m. hectares (5.54m. hectares for rice). In 1984 there were some 23,000 production collectives and 268 agricultural co-operatives in the South accounting for 47% of the cultivated area. There were about 300 state farms.

Production in 1,000 tonnes in 1987: Rice (15,300), soybeans (90), tea (35), rubber (57), maize (550), tobacco (36), potatoes (255), sweet potatoes (2,150) from 400,000 hectares, sorghum (50) from 35,000 hectares, dry beans (72) from 62,000 hectares, coffee (12). Cereals production was 15.9m. tonnes in 1987.

Livestock (1987): Cattle 2,775,000; pigs, 11,796,000; goats, 432,000; poultry, 100m.

Animal products, 1987: Eggs, 152,700 tonnes, meat, 963,000 tonnes.

**Forestry.** 1,626,000 cu. metres of timber were produced in 1980.

**Fisheries.** Fishing is important, especially in Halong Bay. In 1976, 6m. tonnes of sea fish and 180,000 tonnes of freshwater fish were caught.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Next to mining, food processing and textiles are the most important industries; there is also some machine building. Older industries include cement, cotton and silk manufacture.

Private businesses were taken over in 1978. Foreign firms, principally French, are continuing to function, but all US property has been nationalized. There is little heavy industry. Most industry is concentrated in the Ho-Chi-Minh area.

Production (1980, in 1,000 tonnes) iron, 125; steel, 106; sulphuric acid, 6,700; caustic soda, 4,500; mineral fertilizer, 260; pesticides, 18,400; paper, 54,000; sugar, 94,000, cement, 705. 1,500 tractors were built in 1980, and 621 railway coaches. Footwear production, 200,000 pairs. Beer, 942,000 hectolitres.

**Labour.** Average wage (1984) 200 dong per month. Workforce (1985) 28.76m., of whom 17.91m. were in agriculture.

**Commerce.** 65% of exports are to, and 85% of imports from, Communist countries. USSR and Japan are Vietnam's main trading partners; others are Singapore and Hong Kong. Main exports are coal, farm produce, sea produce and livestock. Imports: Oil, steel, artificial fertilizers. There is an aid agreement with the USSR for 1986-90 amounting to about 9,000m. roubles. In 1989 Vietnam's total indebtedness was estimated at US\$9,000m (US\$2,000m. to the West). In 1978 the IMF approved a virtually interest-free loan of US\$90m. repayable over 50 years, but in April 1985 suspended all further credits to Vietnam. Sweden gives annual aid of US\$47m. A law of Jan. 1988 regulates joint ventures with Western firms; full repatriation of profits and non-nationalization of investments are guaranteed. Offices may be opened in Vietnam.

Trade between Vietnam and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	1,758	1,200	357	492
Exports and re-exports from UK	2,077	1,288	2,598	2,213

**Tourism.** Since 1988 Vietnamese have been permitted to travel abroad for up to 3 months for various specific reasons. Group travel to Communist countries has also been authorized.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1986 there were about 65,000 km of roads described as 'main roads'.

**Railways.** Route length was 4,200 km in 1986. The Hanoi-Ho Chi Minh City line is being rebuilt in a programme of reconstruction and extension. About 50m. passengers and 10m. tonnes of freight are carried annually.

**Aviation.** Air Vietnam operates internal services from Hanoi to Ho Chi Minh City, Cao Bang, Na Son and Dien Bien, Vinh and Hue, and from Ho Chi Minh City to Ban Me Thuot and Da Nang, Can Tho, Con Son Island and Quan Long and from Hanoi to Bangkok in conjunction with Thai Airways. Aeroflot (USSR) operate regular services from Ho Chi Minh City to Moscow and from Hanoi to Moscow, Rangoon and Vientiane, Interflug (German Dem. Rep.) to Berlin, Moscow and Dacca, Philippine Airlines to Manila, and Air France to Paris.

**Shipping.** In 1986 there were 150 ships totalling 338,668 GRT. The major ports are Haiphong, which can handle ships of 10,000 tons, Ho Chi Minh City and Da Nang, and there are ports at Hong Gai and Haiphong Ben Thuy. There are regular services to Hong Kong, Singapore, Kampuchea and Japan. In 1987 there were some 6,000 km of navigable waterways.

Cargo is handled by the Vietnam Ocean Shipping Agency; other matters by the Vietnam Foreign Trade Transport Corporation.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1984 there were 6m. radios. There were 106,100 telephones in 1984. There were 2.25m. TV sets in 1984.

**Cinemas and theatres.** 116 films were produced in 1980 (including 10 full-length). There were 145 theatres.

**Newspapers and books.** The Party daily is *Nhan Dan* ('The People') circulation, 1985: 500,000. The official daily in the South is *Giai Phong*. Two unofficial dailies, *Cong Giao Va Dan Toc* (Catholic) and *Tin Sang* (independent) are also published. 2,564 books were published in 1980 totalling 90.9m. copies.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A new penal code came into force 1 Jan. 1986 'to complete the work of the 1980 Constitution'. Penalties (including death) are prescribed for opposition to the people's power, and for economic crimes. There are the Supreme People's Court, local people's courts and military courts. The president of the Supreme Court is

responsible to the National Assembly, as is the Procurator-General, who heads the Supreme People's Office of Supervision and Control.

**Religion.** Taoism is the traditional religion but Buddhism is widespread. At a Conference for Buddhist Reunification in Nov. 1981, 9 sects adopted a charter for a new Buddhist church under the Council of Sangha. The Hoa Hao sect, associated with Buddhism, claimed 1.5m. adherents in 1976. Caodaism, a synthesis of Christianity, Buddhism and Confucianism founded in 1926, has some 2m. followers. There are some 6m. Roman Catholics (mainly in the south) headed by Cardinal Trinh Van Can, Archbishop of Hanoi and 13 bishops. There were 2 seminaries in 1989. In 1983 the Government set up a Solidarity Committee of Catholic Patriots. In Aug. 1988 the Government announced that all Catholic priests had been released from re-education camps, but were not yet permitted to resume their duties.

**Education.** Primary education consists of a 10-year course divided into 3 levels of 4, 3 and 3 years respectively. There were 500,000 teachers in 1988. Numbers of pupils and students in 1980-81: Nurseries, 2.66m.; primary schools, 12.1m.; complementary education, 2.19m.; vocational secondary education, 130,000. In 1980-81 there were 92,913 nurseries. There were 11,400 schools and 280 vocational secondary schools, with 357,000 and 13,000 teachers respectively.

In 1980-81 there were 83 institutions of higher education (including 3 universities: (Hanoi, Ho Chi Minh City, Central Highlands University at Ban Me Thuot), 13 industrial colleges, 7 agricultural colleges, 5 economics colleges, 9 teacher-training colleges, 7 medical schools and 3 art schools, in all with 16,000 teachers and 159,000 students. In 1981 there were 5,000 Vietnamese studying in the USSR.

**Health.** In 1975 there were 1,996 hospitals and dispensaries and 93 sanatoria. There were some 13,517 doctors and dentists in 1981 and 197,000 hospital beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Vietnam in Great Britain (12-14 Victoria Rd., London, W8)

*Ambassador:* Tran Van Hung (accredited 29 Oct. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Vietnam (16 Pho Ly Thuong Kiet, Hanoi)

*Ambassador:* Emrys T. Davies, CMG.

Of Vietnam to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

## Further Reading

Bui Phung, *Vietnamese-English Dictionary*. Hanoi, 1987

Chen, J. H.-M., *Vietnam: A Comprehensive Bibliography*. London, 1973

Dellinger, D., *Vietnam Revisited*. Boston (Mass.), 1986

Fforde, A., *The Limits of National Liberation: Problems of Economic Management in the Democratic Republic of Vietnam*. London, 1987

Harrison, J. P., *The Endless War: Fifty Years of Struggle in Vietnam*. New York, 1982

Higgins, H., *Vietnam*. 2nd ed. London, 1982

Ho Chi Minh, *Selected Writings, 1920-1969*. Hanoi, 1977

Hodgkin, T., *Vietnam: The Revolutionary Path*. London, 1981

Houtart, F., *Hai Van: Life in a Vietnamese Commune*. London, 1984

Karnow, S., *Vietnam: A History*. New York, 1983

Lawson, E. K., *The Sino-Vietnamese Conflict*. New York, 1984

Lewy, G., *America in Vietnam*. OUP, 1979

Leitenberg, M. and Burns, R. D., *War in Vietnam*. 2nd ed. Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1982

Nguyen Tien Hung, C., *Economic Developments of Socialist Vietnam, 1955-80*. New York, 1977

Nguyen Van Canh, *Vietnam under Communism, 1975-1982*. Stanford Univ. Press, 1983

Popkin, S. L., *The Rational Peasant: The Political Economy of Rural Society in Vietnam*. Berkeley, 1979

Smith, R. B., *An International History of the Vietnam War*. London, 1983

Truong Nhu Tang, *Journal of a Vietcong*. London, 1986



# BRITISH VIRGIN ISLANDS

*Capital:* Road Town  
*Population:* 13,246 (1987)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$4,500 (1982)

**HISTORY.** The Virgin Islands were discovered by Columbus on his second voyage in 1493. The British Virgin Islands were first settled by the Dutch in 1648 and taken over in 1666 by a group of English planters. In 1774 constitutional government was granted and in 1834 slavery was abolished.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The British Virgin Islands form the eastern extremity of the Greater Antilles and, exclusive of small rocks and reefs, number 40, of which 15 are inhabited. The largest are Tortola (1980 population, 9,322), Virgin Gorda (1,443), Anegada (169) and Jost Van Dyke (136). Other islands in the group have a total population of 82; Marine population, 220; Institutional population, 662. Total area about 59 sq. miles (130 sq. km); population (1987), 13,246. Road Town, on the south-east of Tortola, is a port of entry; population, approximately 3,976.

**CLIMATE.** A pleasantly healthy sub-tropical climate with summer temperatures lowered by sea breezes. Nights are cool and rainfall averages 50" (1,250 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** In 1950 representative government was introduced and in 1967 a new Constitution was granted (amended 1977). The Governor is responsible for defence and internal security, external affairs, the public service, and the courts. The Executive Council consists of the Governor, 1 *ex-officio* member who is the Attorney-General and 4 ministers in the Legislature. The Legislative Council consists of 1 *ex-officio* member who is the Attorney-General and 9 elected members, one of whom is the Chief Minister and Minister of Finance; the Speaker is elected from outside the Council.

*Governor:* J. Mark Herdman, LVO.

*Chief Minister:* H. Lavity Stoutt.

*Flag:* The British Blue Ensign with the arms of the Territory in the fly.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987 revenue (estimate) was US\$24,401,000; expenditure, US\$23,511,100.

**Currency.** The unit of currency is the US dollar.

**Banking.** Bank of Nova Scotia, Barclays Bank PLC, Chase Manhattan Bank NA, Cragmuir Trust Company Ltd and First Pennsylvania Bank NA hold General Banking Licences and had total deposits of US\$191m. at 31 Dec. 1985. Five institutions hold restricted banking licences and there are also a large number of trust companies.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production, 1986, 31m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** Agricultural production is limited, with the chief products being live-stock (including poultry), fish, fruit and vegetables. Fruit production, 1987, 1,000 tonnes. In 1985 the Agriculture Department was extended to include an abattoir.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 2,000; pigs, 3,000; sheep, 8,000; goats, 12,000.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The entire economy is based on tourism, from which is derived directly

or indirectly some 75% of GDP. The construction industry is a significant employer.

**Commerce.** There is a very small export trade almost entirely with the Virgin Islands of the USA. In 1987 imports were US\$77.3m. and exports US\$3.1m.

Total trade between the British Virgin Islands and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	698	267	752	4,030
Exports and re-exports from UK	3,522	3,491	3,310	7,108

**Tourism.** There were 221,920 visitors in 1987. In 1986 visitors spent (estimate) US\$119,978,000.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1985) over 70 miles of roads and (1986) 4,706 licensed vehicles.

**Aviation.** Beef Island Airport, about 16 km from Road Town, is capable of receiving 80-seat short-take-off-and-landing jet aircraft. Air BVI operates internal flights and external flights to San Juan (main route), Puerto Rico; the USVI and St Kitts. Other services to the BVI are Eastern Metro Express, LIAT and American Eagle.

**Shipping.** There are services to Europe, the USA and other Caribbean islands, and daily services by motor launches to the US Virgin Islands.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1986) nearly 3,000 telephones and 83 telex subscribers, and an external telephone service links Tortola with Bermuda and the rest of the world, and cable communications also exist to all parts of the world. Radio ZBVI transmits 10,000 watts and has stand-by transmitting facilities of 1,000 watts. British Virgin Islands operates Cable TV of approximately 12 television channels plus a number of FM stereo broadcasting stations.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** There are Anglican, Methodist, Seventh-Day Adventist, Roman Catholic and Baptist Churches in the Territory. The Church of God is also represented.

**Education.** Primary education is provided in 16 government schools, two with secondary divisions, and 10 private schools. Total number of pupils (Dec. 1987) 2,463.

Secondary education to the GCE level and Caribbean Examination Council level is provided by the BVI High School and the secondary divisions of the schools on Gorda and Anegada. Total number of secondary level pupils (Dec. 1987) 1,443 including those attending Literacy and Skills Programme at post-primary level.

Government expenditure, 1988 (estimate), US\$4m. In 1987 the total number of teachers in all Government schools was 182. In 1986 a branch of the Hull University (England) School of Education was established.

**Health.** In 1987 there were 7 doctors, 42 nurses, 50 public hospital beds and 1 private hospital with 8 beds. Expenditure, 1987 (estimate) was US\$2.4m.

## Further Reading

- Dookhan, I., *A History of the British Virgin Islands*. Epping, 1975  
 Harrigan, N. and Varlack, P., *British Virgin Islands: A Chronology*. London, 1971.  
 Pickering, V. W., *Early History of the British Virgin Islands*. London, 1983.

*Library:* Public Library, Road Town, *Librarian:* Mr Peter Moll.

# WESTERN SAMOA

*Capital:* Apia  
*Population:* 163,000 (1986)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$770 (1984)

## Samoa i Sisifo

**HISTORY.** Western Samoa, a former German protectorate (1899–1914), was administered by New Zealand from 1920 to 1961, at first under a League of Nations Mandate and from 1946 under a United Nations Trusteeship Agreement. In May 1961 a plebiscite held under the supervision of the United Nations on the basis of universal adult suffrage voted overwhelmingly in favour of independence as from 1 Jan. 1962, on the basis of the Constitution, which a Constitutional Convention had adopted in Aug. 1960. In Oct. 1961 the General Assembly of the United Nations passed a resolution to terminate the trusteeship agreement as from 1 Jan. 1962, on which date Western Samoa became an independent sovereign state.

Under a treaty of friendship signed on 1 Aug. 1962 New Zealand acts, at the request of Western Samoa, as the official channel of communication between the Samoan Government and other governments and international organizations outside the Pacific islands area. Liaison is maintained by the New Zealand High Commissioner in Apia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Western Samoa lies between 13° and 15° S. lat. and 171° and 173° W. long. It comprises the two large islands of Savai'i and Upolu, the small islands of Manono and Apolima, and several uninhabited islets lying off the coast. The total land area is 1,093 sq. miles (2,830.8 sq. km), of which 659.4 sq. miles (1,707.8 sq. km) are in Savai'i, and 431.5 sq. miles (1,117.6 sq. km) in Upolu; other islands, 2.1 sq. miles (5.4 sq. km). The islands are of volcanic origin, and the coasts are surrounded by coral reefs. Rugged mountain ranges form the core of both main islands and rise to 3,608 ft in Upolu and 6,094 ft in Savai'i. The large area laid waste by lava-flows in Savai'i is a primary cause of that island supporting less than one-third of the population of the islands despite its greater size than Upolu.

The population at the 1981 census was 158,130, of whom 114,980 were in Upolu (including Manono and Apolima) and 43,150 in Savai'i. The capital and chief port is Apia in Upolu (population 33,170 in 1981). Estimate (1986) 163,000.

**CLIMATE.** A tropical marine climate, with cooler conditions from May to Nov. and a rainy season from Dec. to April. The rainfall is unevenly distributed, with south and east coasts having the greater quantities. Average annual rainfall is about 100" (2,500 mm) in the drier areas. Apia. Jan. 80°F (26.7°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 112" (2,800 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution provides for a Head of State known as 'Ao o le Malo', which position from 1 Jan. 1962 was held jointly by the representatives of the two royal lines of Tui'aana/Tuiatua and Malietoa. On the death of HH Tupua Tamasese Mea'ole, CBE, on 5 April 1963, HH Malietoa Tanumafili II, CBE, became, as provided by the constitution, the sole Head of State for life. Future Heads of State will be elected by the Legislative Assembly and hold office for 5-year terms.

The executive power is vested in the Head of State, who swears in the Prime Minister (who is appointed by members of the Legislative Assembly) and, on the Prime Minister's advice, the 8 Ministers to form the Cabinet which has general direction and control of the executive Government.



The Legislative Assembly has 45 members elected from territorial constituencies on a franchise confined to matais or chiefs (of whom there were about 15,000 in 1988) and 2 members elected on universal adult suffrage from the individual voters roll, which has replaced the old European roll (approximately 1,350 in 1971). One Member is elected as Speaker. The Constitution also provides for a Council of Deputies of 3 members. In the elections held Feb. 1985, the Human Rights Protection Party won 31 seats.

The official languages are Samoan and English.

*Head of State and O le Ao o le Malo:* HH Malietoa Tanumafili II, GCMG, CBE.

The cabinet in April 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister, Minister of Foreign Affairs, Internal Affairs, Immigration, Justice, Police and Prisons, Attorney General:* Tofilau Eti Alesana. *Finance:* Tuilaepa Sailele. *Agriculture:* Pule Lameko. *Economic Affairs:* Tanuvasa Livi. *Health:* Polaitaivao Fosi. *Education:* Patu Afaese. *Post Office and Telecommunications:* Jack Netzler. *Public Works:* Leiatua Vaiao. *Lands and Survey:* Sifuiva Sione.

*National flag:* Red with a blue quarter bearing 5 white stars of the Southern Cross.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Western Samoa is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, the South Pacific Forum and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** In 1987 budgeted revenue was \$WS82.2m.; expenditure, \$WS118m.

**Currency.** The Western Samoa currency is the *talà* (dollar). In March 1989, £1 = 3.74; US\$1 = 2.17.

**Banking.** A Central Bank was established in 1984. In 1959 the Bank of Western Samoa was established with a capital of \$WS500,000, of which \$WS275,000 was subscribed by the Bank of New Zealand and \$WS225,000 by the Government of Western Samoa. In 1977 the Pacific Commercial Bank was established jointly by Australia's Bank of New South Wales and the Bank of Hawaii.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 79m. kwh.

**Agriculture.** The main products (1987, in 1,000 tonnes) are coconuts (200), taro (39), copra (26), bananas (23), papayas (12), mangoes (6), pineapples (6) and cocoa beans (2).

Livestock (1987): Horses, 3,000; cattle, 27,000; pigs, 65,000; poultry 1m.

**Fisheries.** The total catch (1983) was 3,150 tonnes, valued at \$WS5.1m.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Some industrial activity is being developed associated with agricultural products and forestry.

**Commerce.** In 1985, imports were valued at \$WS115,074,000 and exports at \$WS36,195,000. Principal exports were coconut oil (10,926 tonnes; \$WS15,622,000), cocoa (581 tons; \$WS2,356,000), taro (22,000 cases, \$WS5,113,000), coconut cream (\$WS2,833,000); fruit juice (\$WS1,002,000); beer (\$WS385,000) and cigarettes (\$WS5,558,000). Chief imports in 1983 included food and live animals (\$WS15,195,000), beverages and tobacco (\$WS1,913,000), machinery and transport equipment (\$WS14,968,000), mineral fuels, lubricants and other materials (\$WS13,133,000), chemicals (\$WS4,221,000) and miscellaneous manufactured articles (\$WS5,279,000).

Total trade between Western Samoa and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	421	292	622	531	1,323
Exports and re-exports from UK	1,183	619	433	1,650	757

**Tourism.** There were 49,710 visitors in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads** (1987). Western Samoa has 2,085 km of roads, 400 km of which are surfaced and 1,200 km plantation roads fit for light traffic.

In 1984 there were 1,498 private cars, 1,909 pick-up trucks, 398 trucks, 187 buses, 297 taxis and 144 motor cycles.

**Aviation.** Western Samoa is linked by daily air service with American Samoa, which is on the route of the weekly New Zealand-Tahiti and New Zealand-Honolulu air services, with connexions to Fiji, Australia, USA and Europe. There are also services throughout the week to and from Tonga, Fiji, Nauru, the Cook Islands and New Zealand. Internal services link Upolu and Savai'i.

**Shipping.** Western Samoa is linked to Japan, USA, Europe, Fiji, Australia and New Zealand by regular shipping services.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There is a radio communication station at Apia. Radio telephone service connects Western Samoa with American Samoa, Fiji, New Zealand, Australia, Canada, USA and UK. Telephone subscribers numbered 3,641 in 1984. In 1982 there were 70,000 radio receivers and about 2,500 television sets.

**Cinemas.** In 1989 there were 2 cinemas.

**Newspapers.** In 1985, there were 4 weeklies, circulation 12,000 and 2 monthlies (8,000); all were in Samoan and English.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** In 1981, 47% of the population were Congregationalists, 22% Roman Catholic and 16% Methodist.

**Education.** In 1986 the total number of pupils in primary, junior and secondary schools was 51,940. The University of the South Pacific School of Agriculture is in Western Samoa. A National University was established in 1984.

**Health.** In 1988 there was 1 national hospital, 7 district hospitals, 9 health centres and 14 subcentres and 44 doctors.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Western Samoa in Great Britain

*High Commissioner:* Feesago George Fepulea'i (resides in Brussels).

Of Great Britain in Western Samoa

*High Commissioner:* R. A. C. Byatt, CMG (resides in Wellington, New Zealand).

Of Western Samoa in the USA and to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

## Further Reading

*Statistical Year-Book.* Annual

Fox, J. W. (ed.) *Western Samoa.* Univ. of Auckland, 1963

Milner, G. B., *Samoan-English, English-Samoan Dictionary.* OUP, 1965

# YEMEN ARAB REPUBLIC

*Capital:* San'a  
*Population:* 8.6m. (1988)  
*GNP per capita:* US\$550 (1986)

al Jamhuriya al  
Arabiya al Yamaniya

**HISTORY.** On the death of the Iman Ahmad on 18 Sept. 1962, army officers seized power on 26–27 Sept., declared his son, Saif Al-Islam Al-Badr (Iman Mansur Billah Muhammad), deposed and proclaimed a republic. The republican régime was supported by Egyptian troops, whereas the royalist tribes received aid from Saudi Arabia. On 24 Aug. 1965 President Nasser and King Faisal signed an agreement according to which the two powers are to support a plebiscite to determine the future of the Yemen; a conference of republican and royalist delegates met at Haradh on 23 Nov. 1965, but no plebiscite was agreed upon. At a meeting of the Arab heads of state in Aug. 1967 the President and the King agreed upon disengaging themselves from the civil war in Yemen. At the time there were still about 50,000 Egyptian troops in the country, holding San'a, Ta'iz, Hodeida and the plains, whereas the mountains were in the hands of the royalist tribes. By the end of 1967 the Egyptians had withdrawn.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** In the north the boundary between the Yemen and Saudi Arabia has been defined by the Treaty of Taif concluded in June 1934. This frontier starts from the sea at a point some 5 or 10 miles north of Maidi and runs due east inland until it reaches the hills some 30 miles from the coast, whence it runs northwards for approximately 50 miles so as to leave the Sa'da Basin within the Yemen. Thence it runs in an easterly and south-easterly direction until it reaches the desert area near Nejran. The area is about 73,300 sq. miles (195,000 sq. km) with a population of 8,105,974, census 1986; estimate (1988) 8,595,000. There were 1,168,199 citizens working abroad mainly in Saudi Arabia and the United Arab Emirates not included in the census total. The capital is San'a with a population of (1986) 427,150. Other important towns are the port of Hodeida (population, 155,110), and Ta'iz (178,043); other towns are Ibb, Yerim, Dhamar and the ports of Mokha and Loheiya.

**CLIMATE.** A desert climate, modified by relief. San'a. Jan. 57°F (13.9°C), July 71°F (21.7°C). Annual rainfall 20" (508 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A general election was held on 5 July 1988 for the 128 elective seats on the 159-member People's Consultative Assembly (*Majlis ash-Shura*); the remaining 31 seats are appointed by the President. The Consultative Assembly elects the President for renewable 5-year terms.

*President of the Republic:* Col. Ali Abdullah Saleh (elected 1978; re-elected 1983 and 1988).

*Vice-President:* Abdel-Karim al-Arishi.

The Council of Ministers in Aug. 1988 was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Maj. Abdel Aziz Abdel Ghani.

*Deputy Prime Ministers:* Lieut.-Col. Mujahid Abu Shawrib (*Internal Affairs*), Dr Abdel Karim al-Iryani (*Foreign Affairs*), Dr Muhammad Said al-Attar (*Development*), Dr Hassan Mohammed Makki.

*Agriculture and Fisheries:* Dr Nasir Abdullah al-Awlaqi. *Waafs and Religious Guidance:* Qadi Ali bin Ali as-Samman. *Legal and Consultative Assembly Affairs:* Ismail Ahmad al-Wazir. *Education:* Ahmed Muhammad al-Unsi. *Communications:* Ahmad Khadim al-Wajih. *Economy:* Dr Abd at-Wahhab Mahinud Abd al-



Hamid. *Civil Service and Administrative Reform*: Muhammad Abdullah al-Jayfi. *Power, Water and Drainage*: Jamal Muhammad Abduh. *Finance*: Alawi Salah as-Salami. *Health*: Muhammad Ali Muqbil. *Information and Culture*: Hassan Ahmad al-Lawzi. *Interior*: Abdullah Hussain Barakat. *Justice*: Lieut.-Col. Muhsin Muhammad al-Ulufi. *Social Affairs and Labour*: Ahmad Muhammad Luqman. *Municipalities and Housing*: Muhsin Ali al-Hamadani. *Oil and Mineral Resources*: Ahmad Ali al-Muhani. *Public Works and Transport*: Abdullah Hussain al-Kurshumi. *Youth and Sports*: Dr Muhammad Ahmad al-Kabab. *Yemen Unity Affairs*: Yahya Hussain al-Arashi.

*National flag*: Three horizontal stripes of red, white, black, with a green star in the centre.

*Local government*: There are 11 provinces (*Liwa'*): Sa'dah, Bayda, San'a, Hodeida, Hajjah, Jawf, Mahwit, Marib, Dhamar, Ibb and Ta'iz.

**DEFENCE.** Military service for 3 years is compulsory.

**Army.** The Army consists of 3 armoured, 1 mechanized, 9 infantry, 1 para-commando, 1 Special Forces, 5 artillery brigades, 1 central guard force and 3 anti-aircraft artillery and 2 air defence battalions. Equipment includes 100 T-34, 460 T-54/-55, 34 T-62 and 64 M-60A1 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) 35,000.

**Navy.** The flotilla consists of 3 patrol craft, 2 fast attack craft, 2 inshore mine-hunters, 4 landing craft (all 11 *ex-Soviet*) and 12 small coastal patrol boats. Personnel in 1989 numbered 600 regular officers and men.

**Air Force.** Built up with aid from both the USA and USSR, as well as Saudi Arabia, the Air Force is believed to be receiving many new Soviet aircraft. Current equipment includes 15 Su-22 fighter-bombers, 30 MiG-21 and 14 F-5 fighters, a total of 14 Il-14, An-24/26, C-130 Hercules and Skyvan transports, and over 30 Mi-8 and Agusta-Bell JetRanger and 212 helicopters. Personnel (1989) about 1,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The Yemen Arab Republic is a member of UN and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The Third Development Plan (1987-92) provides investment of US\$3,776m. (40% foreign aid), and concentrates principally on agricultural development.

**Budget.** The budget for 1986 provided for expenditure of 9,944,396,000 riyal and revenue of 7,179,029,000 riyal.

**Currency.** The currency is the *riyal* of 100 *fiils*. In March 1989, 17.73 *riyal* = £1 and 10.30 *riyal* = US\$1.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 556m. kwh.

**Oil.** The first large-scale oilfield and pipeline was inaugurated in 1987, following the discovery in 1984.

**Minerals.** The only commercial mineral being exploited is salt and (1984) production was 167,000 tons. Reserves (estimate) 25m. tonnes.

**Agriculture.** Of the total area of 19.5m. hectares, 1.3m. are arable or permanent crops. Cotton is grown in the Tihama, the coastal belt, round Bait al Faqih and Zabid. Fruit is plentiful, especially fine grapes from the San'a district. Production (1987, in 1,000 tonnes): Sorghum, 477; potatoes, 110; grapes, 129; dates, 15; wheat, 100; barley, 40; maize, 48.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 1,023,000; camels, 61,000; sheep, 2,604,000; goats, 1,594,000; poultry, 18m.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1984) 18,300 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** There is very little industry. The largest is a textile factory at San'a. Production of cement (1982) 85,000 tonnes.

**Commerce.** Imports totalled US\$1.2m. riyals in 1985, the largest items being food and live animals. Exports totalled US\$1.2m. in 1985.

Total trade between Yemen Arab Republic and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	2,312	2,106	2,306	1,532
Exports and re-exports from UK	94,382	58,149	55,334	42,564

**Tourism.** There were about 44,000 tourists in 1986.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1985) 37,000 km of roads.

**Aviation.** There are 3 international airports: San'a, Ta'iz and Hodeida.

**Shipping.** Hodeida, Mokha, Salif and Loheiya are the 4 main ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were about 35,000 telephones in 1984. In 1986 there were 50,000 television and 200,000 radio receivers.

## RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Religion.** The population is almost entirely Moslem, comprising 39% Sunni (Shafi'i) and 59% Shi'a (Zaidi).

**Education.** There were (1985-86) 904,487 pupils at primary schools, 112,922 in secondary schools, and 11,616 at teacher-training establishments. In 1982 the University of San'a (founded in 1974) had 6,719 students.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 1,234 physicians and 60 hospitals and health centres with 5,986 beds.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Yemen Arab Republic in Great Britain (41 South St., London, W1Y 5PD)  
*Ambassador:* Ahmed Daifellah Al-Azeib (accredited 16 Oct. 1982).

Of Great Britain in Yemen Arab Republic (129 Haddah Rd., San'a)  
*Ambassador:* M. A. Marshall.

Of Yemen Arab Republic in the USA (600 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20037)  
*Ambassador:* Mohsin A. Alaini.

Of the USA in Yemen Arab Republic (P.O. Box 1088, San'a)  
*Ambassador:* William A. Rugh.

Of Yemen Arab Republic to the United Nations  
*Ambassador:* Mohamed Salem Basendwah.

## Further Reading

- Bidwell, R., *The Two Yemens*. Boulder and London, 1983  
El Mallakh, R., *The Economic Development of the Yemen Arab Republic*. London, 1986  
Peterson, J. E., *Yemen: The Search for a Modern State*. London, 1982  
Smith, G. R., *The Yemens*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984  
Stookey, R. W., *Yemen: The Politics of the Yemen Arab Republic*. Boulder, 1978

# THE PEOPLE'S DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF YEMEN

*Capital:* Aden

*Population:* 2.3m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$270 (1987)

Jumhuriyah al-Yemen  
al Dimuqratiyah  
al Sha'abiyah—  
Southern Yemen

**HISTORY.** Between Aug. and Oct. 1967 the 17 sultanates of the Federation of South Arabia (*see* map in the STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1965–66) were overrun by the forces of the National Liberation Front (NLF). The rulers were deposed, resigned or fled. At the same time the rival organization of FLOSY (Front for the Liberation of Occupied South Yemen) fought a civil war against NLF and harassed the British forces and civilians in Aden. In Nov. the UAR withdrew its support from FLOSY, and with the backing of the Army the NLF took over throughout the country.

The last British troops left Aden on 29 Nov. 1967, and on 30 Nov. the Southern Yemen People's Republic was proclaimed and the name was subsequently changed to the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen in 1970.

On 13 Jan. 1986 there was a *coup* attempt against President Ali Nasser Mohammed which developed into virtual civil war. By 24 Jan. the rebel forces had taken control of the capital, Aden, and at a meeting of the Socialist Party Central Committee the presidium of the Supreme People's Council announced that the Acting President was Haydar al-Attas.

In May 1988, agreements were signed in Taiz between Ali Salcm Al-Beedh, Secretary General of the Yemeni Socialist Party and President Saleh of the Yemen Arab Republic. The agreements covered joint oil exploration of a demilitarized border zone and more open borders.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The People's Democratic Republic of Yemen is bounded north by the Yemen Arab Republic and Saudi Arabia, east by Oman, south by the Gulf of Aden and west by the Yemen Arab Republic and Bab Al-Mandab Strait. The Republic covers an area of approximately 130,065 sq. miles (336,869 sq. km). Land area can be divided into 4 areas: (i) the coastal lands in the south, nearly 1,200 km long and 12.25 km wide; (ii) the inner lands and plateaus; (iii) the northern desert to the north of Hadhramaut; (iv) the green valleys scattered between the high lands. Population (estimate, 1987) 2,278,000; urban, 33%; rural, 57% and nomads, 10%. The main towns are (1984) Aden (capital) (population, 318,000), and Mukalla (158,000).

The island of **Kamaran** in the Red Sea (area 181 sq. km) was in British occupation from 1915 to 1967, when the inhabitants opted in favour of remaining with the Republic but Yemen Arab Republic occupied it in 1972.

The island of **Perim** (300 sq. km) was first occupied by the French in 1738. In 1799 the British took formal possession but evacuated the island the same year. It was re-occupied by the British in Jan. 1851 and was later used as a coaling station. In Nov. 1967 the inhabitants opted in favour of remaining with the Republic.

The island of **Socotra** lying to the east of the Horn of Africa in the Arabian sea



(area 3,500 sq. km) was formerly part of the Sultanate of Qishn and Socotra and became part of the Republic in 1967.

**CLIMATE.** A desert climate prevails, modified in parts by altitude, which affects temperatures by up to 12°C, as well as rainfall, which is very low in coastal areas. Aden. Jan. 75°F (24°C), July 90°F (32°C). Annual rainfall 1.8" (46 mm).

## CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT

An amended Constitution was approved by the Supreme People's Council on 31 Oct. 1978.

The cabinet in July 1988 was composed as follows:

*President:* Haydar Abu Bokr al-Attas (elected 6 Feb. 1986).

*Chairman, Council of Ministers:* Yasin Said Numan. *Defence:* Col. Salih Ubayd Ahmad. *Finance:* Ahmad Nasir al-Danani. *Foreign Affairs:* Abdel Aziz al-Dali. *State Security:* Said Salih Salami.

*National flag.* Three horizontal stripes of red, white, black, with a blue triangle based on the hoist bearing a red star.

*Local Government.* There are 6 governorates (Aden, Lahej, Abyan, Shabwa, Hadhramaut and Al-Mahra), sub-divided into 30 provinces.

**DEFENCE.** Military service for 2 years is compulsory.

**Army.** The Army comprises 1 armoured, 3 mechanized, 8 infantry, 3 artillery, 2 rocket and 2 surface-to-surface missile brigades and 10 artillery battalions. Equipment includes 470 T-34/-54/-55/-62 main battle tanks. Strength (1989) about 24,000.

**Navy.** The Navy comprises 6 fast missile craft, 2 fast torpedo-boats, 2 fast attack craft, 1 tank landing ship, 3 medium landing ships and 5 minor landing craft, all transferred from the Soviet Navy and 10 very small British-built launches. Personnel in 1989 totalled 1,000 officers and men.

**Air Force.** Formed in 1967, the Air Force is now equipped mainly with aircraft of Soviet design. It has received about 40 MiG-21 fighters, 30 MiG-17 and 25 MiG-23 fighter-bombers, 30 Su-22 attack aircraft, 15 Mi-24 gunship helicopters, 4 An-24 and 2 An-26 twin-turboprop transports and about 30 Mi-8 and 5 Mi-4 helicopters. Personnel (1989) about 2,500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** The People's Democratic Republic of Yemen is a member of UN and the Arab League.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The development plan (1986-91) envisaged expenditure of 998.2m. dinars.

**Budget.** The budget (in 1m. Yemeni dinars) for 1986 envisaged general revenue at 214.4 and general expenditure at 341.4.

**Currency.** The currency is the South Yemen *dinar* and is divided into 1,000 *fiils*. Coins: 50, 25, 5 *fiils*; notes: 10, 5 and 1 *dinar*, 500 and 250 *fiils*. In March 1989, £1 = 0.593 *dinars*; US\$1 = 0.344 *dinars*.

**Banking.** The only commercial bank is the National Bank of Yemen with the Bank of Yemen carrying on the functions of the Central Bank. All foreign banks have been nationalized.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 556m. kwh.

**Oil.** In 1987 a Soviet company announced they had found oil in the Shabwa area. Many Western companies are now involved in prospecting and drilling for oil in several other areas of the country. By the end of 1989 the Soviets hope to have finished a pipeline from Shabwa to Bir Ali on the coast to enable oil to be shipped to the Aden refinery and also to be exported.

**Agriculture.** Agriculture is the main occupation of the people. This is largely of a subsistence nature, sorghum, sesame and millet being the chief crops, and wheat and barley widely grown at the higher elevations. Of increasing importance, however, are the cash crops which have been developed since the Second World War, by far the most important of which is the Abyan long-staple cotton, now the country's major export.

Owing to paucity of rainfall, cultivation is largely confined to fertile valleys and flood plains on silt, built up and irrigated in the traditional manner. These traditional methods are being augmented and replaced by the use of modern earth moving machinery and pumps. Irrigation schemes with permanent installations are in progress. Production (1987 in 1,000 tonnes): Millet, 85; wheat, 17; cotton lint, 5; cotton seed, 10; sesame, 3; barley, 2.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 96,000; sheep, 930,000; goats, 1.4m.; poultry, 2m.

**Fisheries.** There is a thriving fisheries industry, fish being the Republic's major export after cotton. Catch (1985) 80,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Light industry is being established and paint, match and textile factories are in production.

**Commerce.** Trade is mainly transshipment and entrepôt, Aden serving as a centre of distribution to and from neighbouring territories. Transit trade is mainly in cotton piece-goods, grains, coffee, hides and skins, and cheap consumer goods. Importation of all commodities specified for local consumption is subject to a prior import licence from the Ministry of Trade, Industry and Supply. Importation of any commodities is completely forbidden except by virtue of a valid import licence.

In 1985 imports totalled 241 m. dinar; exports and re-exports, 10m. dinar.

Total trade between Republic of Yemen and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	18,238	7,938	4,848	1,056	1,827
Exports and re-exports from UK	45,221	34,827	23,928	28,271	20,862

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1986) 1,929 km of roads. Registered motor vehicles in 1984 numbered 51,884.

**Aviation.** There are airports at Khormaksar (Aden) and Mukalla. Nine airlines operate scheduled services: Alyemda, Air-France, Ethiopian Airlines, Middle East Airlines, Yemen Airlines, Aeroflot, Saudi Airlines, Kuwait Airways, and Air Djibouti.

**Shipping.** Because of its favourable geographical position and its efficient service to ships, Aden used to be one of the busiest oil-bunkering ports in the world, handling some 550 ships a month. In 1983, 4.8m. tonnes of cargo were unloaded and 3.6m. tonnes loaded. Five alongside berths were under construction in 1988.

**Post and Broadcasting.** The automatic telephone system provided service to about 31,000 subscribers in 1985.

In 1985 there were 180,000 radio and 30,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1971). There were 19 cinemas with a seating capacity of about 20,000.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There is a Supreme Court and Magistrates' Courts. In some areas Moslem and local Common Law are administered.

**Religion.** The majority of the population is Moslem. There are small numbers of Christians and Hindus.

**Education.** There were (1987) 310,839 pupils attending 989 primary schools and 31,530 secondary school pupils attending 62 schools. A state university was founded in 1975 and the number of students is increasing. In 1985, 400,000 students were studying at schools at various levels. Efforts are being made to eradicate illiteracy among adults.

**Welfare.** There were (1986) 54 hospitals with 4,499 beds and about 652 doctors.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen in Great Britain (57 Cromwell Rd., London, SW7 2ED)

*Ambassador:* Ahmed Abdo Rageh (accredited 18 Feb. 1987).

Of Great Britain in the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen (28 Shara Ho Chi Minh, Khormaksar, Aden)

*Ambassador:* R. D. Gordon.

Of the People's Democratic Republic of Yemen to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Abdalla Saleh Al-Ashtal.

The US Embassy in Aden was closed on 26 Oct. 1969 and UK acts as the protective power.

## Further Reading

Bidwell, R., *The Two Yemens*. London, 1984

Ismael, T. Y. and Ismael, J. S., *The People's Democratic Republic of Yemen: Politics, Economics and Society*. London, 1986

Kostiner, J., *The Struggle for South Yemen*. London and New York, 1984

Lackner, H., *P.D.R. Yemen: Outpost of Socialist Development in Arabia*. London, 1985

Smith, G. R., *The Yemens*. [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Stookey, R. W., *South Yemen: A Marxist Republic in Arabia*. Boulder and London, 1982

Thesiger, W., *Arabian Sands*. London, 1959



# YUGOSLAVIA

*Capital:* Belgrade

*Population:* 23.41m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$2,300 (1986)

## Socijalistička Federativna Republika Jugoslavija— Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia

**HISTORY.** In 1917 the Yugoslav Committee in London drew up the Pact of Corfu, which proclaimed that all Yugoslavs would unite after the first world war to form a kingdom under the Serbian royal house. The Kingdom of Serbs, Croats and Slovenes was proclaimed on 1 Dec. 1918. In 1929 the name was changed to Yugoslavia. During the Second World War Tito's partisans set up a provisional government (AVNOJ) which was the basis of a Constituent Assembly after the war. On 29 Nov. 1945 Yugoslavia was proclaimed a republic.

The peace treaty with Italy, signed in Paris on 10 Feb. 1947, stipulated the cession to Yugoslavia of the greater part of the Italian province of Venezia Giulia, the commune of Zara and the island of Pelagosa and the adjacent islets.

By an agreement of 10 Nov. 1975 the city of Trieste ('Zone A') was recognized as Italian and the Adriatic coastal portion of the former Free Territory of Trieste ('Zone B') as Yugoslav. A free industrial zone was set up in the Fernetici-Sezana region on both sides of the frontier.

Albanian-Serb dissensions in Kosovo brought inter-ethnic tensions into prominence during 1988. These, combined with the rapidly deteriorating state of the economy, led to widespread popular unrest. On 30 Dec. 1988 the Prime Minister, Branko Mikulić, and his government resigned after failing to secure parliamentary approval for a package of market-oriented economic reforms.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Yugoslavia is bounded in the north by Austria and Hungary, north-east by Romania, east by Bulgaria, south by Greece and west by Albania, the Adriatic Sea and Italy. There are 365 offshore islands in the Adriatic. The area is 255,804 sq. km. Population at the 1981 census: 22,424,771. Density, 87.7 per sq. km. Population by sex at the 1981 census: Females, 11,340,933. Population, 1988: 23,411,000.

The federal capital is Belgrade (Beograd). Population (census, 1981) 1,470,073 and of other principal towns (B = Bosnia and Herzegovina; C = Croatia; K = Kosovo; Ma = Macedonia; Mo = Montenegro; Se = Serbia; Sl = Slovenia; V = Vojvodina):

Banja Luka (B)	183,618	Priština (K)	210,040
Bitolj (Ma)	137,636	Prizren (K)	134,526
Čačak (Se)	110,676	Rijeka (C)	193,044
Čakovec (C)	116,825	Šabac (Se)	119,669
Gostivar (Ma)	101,028	Sarajevo (B)	448,519
Kragujevac (Se)	164,823	Skopje (Ma)	504,932
Kraljevo (Se)	121,622	Slavonski Brod (C)	106,400
Kruševac (Se)	132,972	Smederevo (Se)	107,366
Kumanovo (Ma)	126,188	Split (C)	180,571
Leskovac (Se)	159,001	Subotica (V)	154,611
Ljubljana (Sl)	305,211	Tetovo (Ma)	162,378
Maribor (Sl)	185,699	Titograd (Mo)	132,290
Mostar (B)	110,377	Titova Mitrovica (K)	105,322
Niš (Se)	230,711	Tuzla (B)	121,717
Novi Sad (V)	257,685	Uroševac (K)	113,680
Osijek (C)	158,790	Zadar (C)	116,174
Pančevo (V)	123,791	Zagreb (C)	1,174,512
Peć (K)	111,071	Zenica (B)	132,733
Prijedor (B)	108,868	Zrenjanin (V)	139,300

Population (1981 census) by ethnic group was (i) the 6 'leading nations': Serbs, 8,140,452; Croats, 4,428,005; Moslems, 1,999,957; Slovenes, 1,753,554; Macedonians, 1,339,729; Montenegrins, 579,023; (ii) of the 18 other 'nationalities': Albanians, 1,730,364; Hungarians, 426,866. 1,219,045 persons declared themselves 'Yugoslavs' (i.e. not professing any ethnic group). In 1986 about 460,000 nationals worked abroad. There were 181,000 Gypsies in 1986.

Vital statistics, 1987 (per 1,000 population): Live births, 15.3; deaths, 9.2; marriages, 7; infant mortality, 26.2; natural increase, 6.4. Divorces per 1,000 marriages: 128.5. Expectation of life in 1982: Males, 68; females, 73.

The Yugoslav (i.e., South Slav) languages proper are Slovene, Macedonian and Serbo-Croat, the latter having 2 variants (Serbian and Croatian) which are regarded as constituting one language. There are claims, largely politically-motivated, that Croatian is a separate language and Macedonian a dialect of Bulgarian. Macedonian is and Serbian may be written in the Cyrillic alphabet. There are also substantial Albanian and Hungarian-speaking minorities. Art. 246 of the Constitution lays down that 'The languages of the nations and nationalities and their alphabets shall be equal throughout the territory of Yugoslavia'. In practice Serbo-Croat serves as a *lingua franca* throughout the country.

**CLIMATE.** Most parts have a central European type of climate, with cold winters and hot summers, but the whole coast experiences a Mediterranean climate with mild, moist winters and hot, brilliantly sunny summers with less than average rainfall. Belgrade. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 72°F (22°C). Annual rainfall 24.4" (610 mm). Sarajevo. Jan. 31°F (-0.5°C), July 67°F (19.6°C). Annual rainfall 34" (856 mm). Sibenik. Jan. 45°F (7°C), July 78°F (25.5°C). Annual rainfall 32.5" (813 mm). Split. Jan. 47°F (8.5°C), July 78°F (25.6°C). Annual rainfall 35" (870 mm). Zagreb. Jan. 32°F (0°C), July 72°F (22°C). Annual rainfall 34.6" (865 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution passed on 31 Jan. 1946 declared the Federal Republic to be composed of 6 republics: Serbia, Croatia, Slovenia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia and Montenegro.

On 13 Jan. 1953 a new Constitution affirmed the management of all public affairs by the workers and their representatives.

The Constitution promulgated 7 April 1963 set up the 2 socialist autonomous provinces of Kosovo and Vojvodina within the framework of Serbia.

Under this Constitution, social self-government was exercised by the representative bodies of communes, districts, autonomous provinces, republics and the Federation and the rights to self-government and distribution of income proclaimed in 1953 were extended to those employed in public services. The former Council of Producers was replaced by Councils of Working Communities representing employees in every field of social activity.

All the means of production and all natural resources are social property. Exceptions are peasants' holdings (up to 10 hectares of arable land) and handicrafts. Citizens may be owners of dwellings for personal and family needs.

A new Constitution was proclaimed on 21 Feb. 1974. This directly transfers economic and political decision making to the working people through the 'assembly system'. An assembly is defined (Art. 132) as 'a body of social self-management and the supreme organ of power within the framework of the rights and duties of its socio-political community'. Assemblies are based upon the workplace or community and take various forms depending upon the nature of employment. Art. 133 states, 'working people in basic self-managing organizations and communities and in socio-political organizations shall form delegations for the purpose of the direct exercise of their rights, duties and responsibilities and of organized participation in the performance of the functions of the assemblies of the socio-political communities', and Art. 135, 'Candidates for members of delegations of basic self-managing organizations and communities shall be proposed and determined by the working people in these organizations and communities in the Socialist Alliance of the Working People ... or in trade union organizations'. At the apex of the assembly system is the federal legislature, the Assembly of the Socialist

Federal Republic of Yugoslavia which has 2 Chambers: The Federal Chamber and the Chamber of Republics and Autonomous Provinces.

The Federal Chamber consists of 30 delegates of self-managing organizations, communities and socio-political organizations from each Republic, and 20 delegates from each Autonomous Province. The Chamber of Republics and Autonomous Provinces consists of 12 delegates from each Republican Assembly and of 8 delegates from each Autonomous Province's Assembly. Delegates are elected for 4 years. They retain their normal employment.

A parliamentary commission was set up in 1987 to study a radical series of proposed constitutional amendments.

*President of the Federal Assembly:* Marjan Rožič.

Every citizen over the age of 18 has the suffrage (16 if employed). The last elections were held from Jan. to April 1986.

The State Presidency is elected by the Federal Assembly every 5 years. It has 9 members: 8 representatives of the Republics and Autonomous Provinces, and the President of the Presidium of the League of Communists *ex officio*. The annual President is head of state.

Membership of the state Presidency:

*Bosnia and Herzegovina:* Raif Dizdarević; *Croatia:* Josip Vrhovec; *Macedonia:* Lazar Mojsov; *Montenegro:* Veselin Djuranović; *Serbia:* Gen. Nikola Ljubičić; *Slovenia:* Stane Dolanc (*annual President, May 1989–May 1990*); *Kosovo:* Sinan Hasani; *Vojvodina:* (*to be elected*).

The Government is the Federal Executive Council of Chairman (i.e. Prime Minister), Vice-Chairmen, Ministers without Portfolio and Federal Secretaries, who are elected by the Federal Assembly every 4 years in conformity with equality of representation of the Republics and Autonomous Provinces. In March 1989 the Government consisted of 19 ministers, including Ante Marković (*Prime Minister*), Branko Zekan (*Finance*), Budimir Lončar (*Foreign Affairs*), Petar Gračanin (*Internal Affairs*), Franc Horvat (*Foreign Economic Affairs*), Božidar Marendić (*Development*), Col.-Gen. Veljko Kadijević (*Defence*).

The only political party is the League of Communists, which had 2,167,860 members in 1985 (30.3% workers; 25% under 27 years). Political unrest mainly associated with Serbia's attempt to deal with ethnic tensions in its autonomous provinces of Kosovo and Vojvodina led to the confirmation in office of the League's Presidium (after 4 members had resigned) by secret ballot of the Central Committee in Oct. 1988. In March 1989 the Presidium consisted of Stipe Šušar (*President*); Ivan Brigić, Dušan Čkrebić, Radiša Gačić, Štefan Korošec, Marko Orlandić, Milan Pančevski, Ivica Račan, Vasile Tupurkovski. There are also 9 *ex-officio* members.

*National flag:* Three horizontal stripes of blue, white, red, with a large red, yellow-bordered star in the centre.

*National anthem:* Hej, Slaveni, jošte živi reč naših dedova—O Slavs, our ancestors' words still live.

*Local Government.* Within the federal framework of republics Yugoslavia is administratively divided into 527 communes (*opština*).

**DEFENCE.** Military service for 12 months is compulsory. The General People's Defence Law of 1969 bases Yugoslavia's defence on the principle of a nation in arms ready to wage partisan war against any invader. The partisan Territorial Defence Force number about 3m.

**Army.** The Army is divided into 7 Military Regions and comprises 12 infantry divisions; 8 independent tank, 9 independent infantry, 3 mountain and 1 airborne brigades; 10 field artillery, 11 anti-aircraft, 6 anti-tank and 4 surface-to-air missile regiments. Equipment includes 700 T-54/-55, 260 M-84 and 60 M-47 main battle



tanks. Strength (1989) 144,000 (including 94,500 conscripts), with a reserve of 440,000.

**Navy.** The Navy comprises 5 diesel powered patrol submarines, 8 midget (four 5-man and four 2-man) submarines, 3 new *ex-Soviet* frigates, 16 fast missile boats, 15 fast torpedo boats, 3 small corvette-style patrol vessels, 10 fast attack craft, 4 minehunters, 17 patrol boats, 10 inshore minesweepers, 21 river minesweepers, 3 tank landing ships, 12 minelaying landing craft, 1 survey ship, 1 salvage vessel, 2 headquarters ships, 6 transports, 2 training ships, 22 minor landing craft, 2 oilers and 12 tugs. The Naval Air Arm operates 12 Mi-8 'Hip' and 10 'Hormone' Ka-25 helicopters plus 15 Gazelles for liaison. Personnel in 1989 totalled: 11,000 officers and ratings.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has about 250 combat aircraft and is organized in 2 Air Corps, with HQ at Zagreb and Zemun. There are 2 fighter divisions equipped primarily with about 125 Russian-built MiG-21s, although now being joined by MiG-29s, 2 ground-attack divisions of locally-built Jastreb and Orao jet attack aircraft, and 2 squadrons of Jastreb jet reconnaissance aircraft. Transport units fly Il-14 and An-26 twin-engined aircraft, 4-turboprop An-12s, and a few other types in small numbers, notably CL-215 amphibians, C-47s, Turbo-Porters and Yak-40s, Mystère 50s and Learjets for VIP duties. Training types are the nationally-designed UTVA-75 armed primary trainer, Galeb jet basic trainer and the Super Galeb jet advanced trainer. A large number of Gazelle, Agusta-Bell 205, Mi-4 and Mi-8 helicopters are in service. 'Guideline' and 'Goa' surface-to-air missiles have been supplied by the USSR. Personnel (1989) 33,000.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Yugoslavia is a member of UN and has special relationships with Comecon and OECD.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** A 5-year plan of economic development for 1981-85 envisaged that industrial production should increase by 4.5-5%, and that of agriculture by 4.5%. A Long-Term Economic Stabilisation Programme was introduced in 1983 to deal with the economic crisis, and laws were passed to ensure the prompt repayment of foreign debts. By a law of Aug. 1985 planning at Federal level was introduced into the activities of railways, the post office, energy suppliers and large enterprises. Foreign indebtedness was US\$17,600m. in 1989. Price increases were introduced in May 1988. Inflation reached 346% in March 1989. Balance of payments (in US\$1m.) in 1986: Receipts, 19,721; expenditure, 18,621.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for 1987, 1,971,600m. dinars. 459,609m. dinars were allotted to defence in 1985.

**Currency.** On 26 July 1965 the value of 1 *dinar*, divided into 100 *para*, was fixed at 0.710937 milligrammes of fine gold instead of 2.96224 milligrammes. A new *dinar*, equivalent of 100 old dinars, was introduced on 1 Jan. 1966. There are coins of 10, 20, 50 and 100 *dinars*, and notes of 10, 20, 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 20,000 and 50,000 *dinars*. Currency in circulation in 1986 was 1,161,000m. *dinars*. There have been several devaluations since 1980. In March 1989, £1 = 12,276 *dinars*; US\$1 = 7,133 *dinars*. International reserves, 1987: US\$1,539m.

**Banking.** The National Bank is the bank of issue. There are also republican National Banks, 115 (in 1980) 'internal banks', 160 'basic banks' and 9 'associated banks'. In 1986 credits amounted to 886,300m. dinars. Savings deposits totalled 2,079,000m. dinars in 1986, foreign exchange savings 4,655,500m.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric weights and measures have been in use since 1883. The *wagon* of 10 tonnes is used as a unit of measure for coal, roots and corn. The Gregorian calendar was adopted in 1919.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Output in 1986, 77,916m. kwh, of which 27,505m. was hydro-electric. There is a 664-mw nuclear power plant at Krško (opened 1981). This was closed for investigation in Feb. 1987. Plans for 4 more have been shelved.

**Oil.** Crude oil production (1988) 3.7m. tonnes.

**Minerals.** Yugoslavia has considerable mineral resources, including coal (chiefly brown coal), iron, copper ore, gold, lead, chrome, antimony and cement. The most important iron mines are at Vareš and Ljubija in Bosnia, and there are also considerable siderite and limonite iron ores between Prijedor, Sanski Most and Topusko. Copper ore is exploited chiefly at Bor (Serbia). The principal lead mines are at Trepča and Mežice. Chrome mines are in southern Serbia (Kosovo) and Macedonia (Skopje, Kumanovo). There are 2 antimony mines in western Serbia (Podrinje).

Mining output, in 1,000 tonnes, in 1985 (and 1986): Coal, 400 (404); lignite, 56,635 (56,359); bauxite, 3,250 (3,459); salt, 410 (504); manganese ore, 32 (41); iron ore, 5,478 (6,618); copper ore, 26,166 (27,864); lead and zinc ore, 4,590 (4,588); antimony ore, 71 (61); pyrite concentrates, 507 (759); magnesite, 417 (423). In 1983, gold output was 4,238 kg; silver (1985), 156,000 kg.

**Agriculture.** The economically active agricultural population was 2,488,000 in 1981 (47.5% female). The cultivated area was 9.85m. hectares in 1986 of which 8.14m. were in private farms and 1.72m. in agricultural organizations, of which there were 3,474 in 1986. In 1984 only 6.5% of the 2.6m. private farms were more than 10 hectares of land.

Area (in hectares) and yield (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1986: Maize, 2.4m. (12,526); wheat, 1.4m. (4,746); sugar beet, 137,986 (5,599); rye, 42,000 (74); tobacco, 73,114 (96); sunflower, 188,839 (449); potatoes, 283,000 (2,651).

Livestock, 1987: Cattle, 5,030,000; pigs, 8,459,000; sheep, 7,819,000; poultry, 79,696,000.

1986 yield of fruit (in 1,000 tonnes): Apples, 637; grapes, 1,549; plums, 700. 7.6m. hectolitres of wine were produced.

There were 955,280 tractors in 1986, of which 923,000 were in private hands.

**Forestry.** The forest areas consist largely of beech, oak and fir. Forest area in 1986: 9,396,000 hectares (3,016,000 in private hands). Gross timber cut: 22,786,000 cu. metres.

**Fisheries.** In 1986 the landings of fish were (in tonnes): Salt-water, 51,482; fresh-water, 26,082. The number of fishing craft was 289 motor vessels (11,856 GRT) and 1,360 sailing and rowing vessels.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Employment.** In 1986 there were 9,249 large industrial enterprises and 1,423 small businesses in the social sector, and 159,448 small businesses in the private sector. In Dec. 1986 (women in brackets) there were 150,000 (55,000) employed in the private sector and 6.5m. (2.5m.) in the social sector (excluding armed forces) of whom 2.62m. (920,000) were in manufacturing and mining, and 1.11m. (680,000) in the social services. There were 1,087,000 unemployed in 1987. Average monthly income per worker in 1986: 84,670 dinars. There were (1986) 6,086,600 trade union members. A wage freeze was imposed in May 1988.

**Industry.** The majority of industries are situated in the north-west part of the country.

Industrial output (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1985 (and 1986): Pig-iron, 3,120 (3,063); steel, 4,480 (4,519); cement, 9,027 (9,128); sulphuric acid, 1,489 (1,595); fertilizers, 2,445 (2,770); plastics, 586 (647). Fabrics (in 1m. sq. metres): Cotton, 344 (358); woollen, 101 (110). Sugar (1,000 tonnes), 933 (801). Motor cars (in 1,000s), 228 (253).

**Commerce.** Foreign trade, in 1 m. dinars; for calendar years:

	1983	1984	1985	1986
Imports	1,475,783	3,080,197	3,205,900	3,108,230
Exports	1,209,709	2,643,333	2,797,991	2,724,204

Structure of exports (and imports) in 1986 (%): Investment goods, 18 (17.1); intermediate goods, 50.1 (76); consumer goods, 31.9 (6.9). Largest suppliers in 1986 (goods in 1 m. dinars): USSR, 495,825; Federal Republic of Germany, 454,184; Italy, 255,735; Iraq, 210,027; USA, 177,955; Czechoslovakia, 153,482; Libya, 64,717. Largest export markets: USSR, 825,887; Italy, 240,440; Federal Germany, 253,147; USA, 149,554; Czechoslovakia, 112,907; Iraq, 90,761.

Main exports as % share in 1986: Machinery and transport equipment, 33.2; other manufactures, 17.1; food and tobacco, 9.3; chemicals, 11.5; raw materials, 4.1; fuel, 1.9. Imports: Fuel, 18.9; machinery and transport equipment, 30.3; chemicals, 14.4; raw materials, 9.8.

Joint ventures with Western firms are permitted, and since 1984 the Western partner has been able to own 98% of the capital. There were 186 joint ventures in 1984.

A trade pact was signed with the USSR in March 1983.

Total trade between Yugoslavia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	108,479	122,132	145,127	175,301	197,254
Exports and re-exports from UK	163,871	177,530	188,390	206,932	203,066

**Tourism.** In 1987, 8,910,000 (1986: 8,431,000) tourists visited Yugoslavia.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads** (1986). There were 69,401 km of asphalted roads and 34,781 km of macadamized roads. There were 2,957,116 passenger motor cars and 232,020 trucks and buses. 1,023m. passengers and 232m. tonnes of freight were carried by public road transport. The north-south highway is being converted to 6-lane motorway. There were 64,698 road traffic casualties (4,414 deaths).

**Railways.** In 1987 Yugoslavia had 9,270 km of railway, of which 3,771 km are electrified, and carried 120m. passengers and 84.2m. tonnes of freight. In June 1988 Yugoslavia closed its only rail link with Albania.

**Aviation.** The national airline JAT (Jugoslovenski Aero Transport) in 1986 flew on its home and international services, 66.6m. km and carried 5.8m. passengers and 111m. tonne-km of freight. The chief airfields are Belgrade, Zagreb, Ljubljana, Sarajevo, Skopje, Dubrovnik, Split, Titograd, Tivat, Pula and Zadar.

**Shipping.** In 1986 Yugoslavia possessed a total of 480 sea-going vessels of 2.9m. gross tons.

Vessels of 52m. net tonnes entered its ports.

Length of navigable waterways: Rivers, 1,673 km; canals, 664 km. There are 2 navigable lakes: Skadar (391 sq. km, of which 243 in Yugoslavia) and Ohrid (348 sq. km, of which 230 in Yugoslavia). A Tisza-Danube canal system is under construction. In 1986 there were 1,194 river craft.

**Pipeline.** An oil pipeline runs from Krk to Pančevo.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were 4,011 post offices and 3,598,000 telephone subscribers in 1986. *Jugoslovenska Radiotelevizija* consists of almost 250 main, relay and local stations operating on medium-waves and FM. *Radio Koper* also broadcasts commercial programmes in Italian for northern parts of Italy. National and regional TV programmes are broadcast. Advertisements are broadcast for maximum 170 minutes each week. Number of receivers in 1986: Radio, 4.8m.; television, 4.1m.

**Cinemas** (1986). 1,271, seating 532,000. 30 full-length films were made in 1986.

**Theatres** (1986). 70, seating 27,981.

**Newspapers and Books** (1986). There were 28 dailies and 4,543 other newspapers



and periodicals. There are no party dailies but *Borba* and *Politika* (circulation in 1986: 47,000 and 249,000) enjoy semi-official status. 10,734 book titles (1,151 by foreign authors) were published in 1986.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** There are county tribunals, district courts, supreme courts of the constituent republics and a Supreme Court. There are also self-management courts, including courts of associated labour. In county tribunals and district courts the judicial functions are exercised by professional judges and by lay assessors constituted into collegia. There are no assessors at the supreme courts.

All judges are elected by the socio-political communities in their jurisdiction. The judges exercise their functions in accordance with the legal provisions enacted since the liberation of the country.

The constituent republics enact their own criminal legislation, but offences concerning state security and the administration are dealt with at federal level.

In 1985 262,000 crimes were reported, 164,000 charges made and 108,000 convictions obtained (excluding juveniles).

**Religion.** Religious communities are separate from the State and are free to perform religious affairs. All religious communities recognized by law enjoy the same rights.

Serbia has been traditionally Orthodox and Croatia Roman Catholic. Moslems are found in the south as a result of the Turkish occupation. The 1953 percentage of the denominations was: Orthodox, 41.2%; Roman Catholic, 31.7%; Moslems, 12.3%; Protestants, 0.9%; without religion, 12.6%. 1984 estimates of believers: Orthodox, 9m.; Roman Catholic, 7m.; Moslems, 4m.

The Serbian Orthodox Church with its seat in Belgrade has 20 bishoprics within the country and 4 abroad, 3 in US and Canada and 1 in Hungary. The Serbian Orthodox Church numbers about 2,000 priests.

The Macedonian Orthodox Church with the Archbishop of Ohrid and Macedonia as its head in Skopje, has 4 bishoprics in the country and 1 abroad (American-Canadian-Australian). The Macedonian Orthodox Church numbers about 300 priests.

The Roman Catholic Church is divided into two provinces: Zagreb with 4 suffragan sees, and Sarajevo with 2 suffragan sees. In addition, the Roman Catholic Church has 4 archbishoprics, 10 independent bishoprics directly connected with the Vatican and 3 Apostolic Administrators. There is a National Conference of Bishops with the Archbishop of Zagreb, Cardinal Franjo Kuharić, at its head. The Roman Catholic Church has about 4,000 priests, 2 theological faculties and 15 seminaries. Relations with the Vatican are regulated by a 'Protocol' of 1966.

The Moslem Religious Union has 4 republic Superiorates in Sarajevo, Skopje, Titograd and Priština. The highest authority is the supreme synod of the Islamic Religious Community, which elects the Reis-ul-Ulema and the Supreme Islamic Superiorate. The Moslem religious community has about 2,000 priests.

The Protestant churches covering 4 independent Lutheran Churches, numbering about 150,000 believers, the Reformed Christian Church, numbering about 60,000 believers, include also several much smaller churches of Baptists, Methodists, Adventists, Nazarenes, etc., numbering together about 100,000 believers. The Protestant churches have about 450 priests.

Also there are independent Old Catholic Churches with Synodal Council at Zagreb.

The Jewish religion has about 35 communities making up a common league of Jewish Communities with its seat in Belgrade.

**Education.** Compulsory general education lasts 8 years, secondary 3-4 years. In 1986-87 there were 11,978 primary schools with 140,357 teachers and 2,843,253 pupils, 1,246 secondary schools with 57,788 teachers and 945,592 pupils, 130 primary schools for adults with 10,604 pupils, and 200 secondary schools for adults with 38,736 pupils.

Primary (and secondary) schools of ethnic minorities (1985-86): Albanian,

1,205 (165); Hungarian, 153 (67); Bulgarian, 43 (nil); Czech, 12 (1); Slovak, 25 (8); Italian, 28 (11); Romanian, 31 (7); Turkish, 64 (13); Ukrainian, 2 (nil).

In 1986–87 there were 326 institutes of higher education with 349,654 students and 17,601 teachers.

**Health.** In 1986 there were 51,775 doctors and dentists, and 142,579 hospital beds (10,107 psychiatric).

Health insurance benefits totalled 516,341m. dinars and pensions 726,784m. dinars in 1985. 51,147m. dinars were paid in child allowances in 1985. Consumption of food per capita in 1986: Meat, 56.5 kg.; cereals, 148.1 kg.; milk, 102.6 litres; vegetables and fruit, 200.2. Daily consumption: 15,370 kilojoules.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Yugoslavia in Great Britain (5 Lexham Gdns., London, W8 5JJ)

*Ambassador:* Mitko Čalovski.

Of Great Britain in Yugoslavia (46 Generala Ždanova, Belgrade)

*Ambassador:* Andrew Wood, CMG.

Of Yugoslavia in the USA (2410 California St., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Zivorad Kovacevic.

Of the USA in Yugoslavia (50 Kneza Miloša, Belgrade)

*Ambassador:* John D. Scanlan.

Of Yugoslavia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dragoslav Pejić.

## Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Federal Statistical Office (Savezni Zavod za Statistiku; Kneza Miloša 20, Belgrade) was founded in Dec. 1944. *Director:* Dr D. Grupković. It publishes: *Indeks* (from April 1952); *Statistički bilten* (1950 ff.); *Statistical Yearbook* (from 1954, with English translations); *Statistics of Foreign Trade of the SFR Yugoslavia* (annual, from 1946; half-yearly, from 1951); *Statistical Pocket-book* (from 1955; in 4 eds.: Yugoslav, English, French and Russian).

*The Assembly of the SFR of Yugoslavia.* Belgrade, 1974

*The Constitution of the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia.* Belgrade, 1974

Alexander, S., *Church and State in Yugoslavia since 1945.* CUP, 1979

Artesien, P. F. R., *Joint Ventures in Yugoslav Industry.* Aldershot, 1985

Banac, I., *The National Question in Yugoslavia.* Cornell Univ. Press, 1985

Burg, S. L., *Conflict and Cohesion in Socialist Yugoslavia: Political Decision-Making since 1966.* Princeton Univ. Press, 1983

Čičin-Sain, A. and Ellis, M. (eds.), *Doing Business with Yugoslavia: Economic and Legal Aspects.* Belgrade, 1986

Cohen, L. J., *Political Cohesion in a Fragile Mosaic: The Yugoslav Experience.* Boulder, 1983

Dedijer, V., et al., *History of Yugoslavia.* New York, 1974

Djilas, M., *Memoir of a Revolutionary.* New York, 1973.—*Rise and Fall.* London, 1985

Drvodelić, M., *Croatian or Serbian-English Dictionary.* 4th ed. Zagreb, 1978

Filipović, R., *English-Croatian or Serbian Dictionary.* Zagreb, 1980.—*The New Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Regime of Yugoslavia.* Belgrade, 1986

Horton, J. J., *Yugoslavia.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1978

Kotnik, J., *Slovensko-angleski slovar.* 4th ed. Ljubljana, 1959

Lydall, H., *Yugoslavia in Crisis.* OUP, 1989.

McFarlane, B., *Yugoslavia: Politics, Economics and Society.* London, 1988

Milivojević, M. et al. (eds.) *Yugoslavia's Security Dilemmas: Armed Forces, National Defence and Foreign Policy.* Oxford, 1988

Milošević, D., *Investing in Yugoslavia and Other Forms of Long-Term Economic Co-operation with Yugoslav Enterprises.* 2nd ed. Belgrade, 1986

Pavlowitch, S. K., *The Albanian Problem in Yugoslavia.* London, 1982

Prout, C., *Market Socialism in Yugoslavia.* OUP, 1985

Ramet, P., *Nationalism and Federalism in Yugoslavia, 1963–1983.* Indiana Univ. Press, 1984.—*Yugoslavia in the 1980s.* Boulder, 1985

Seroka, J., *Political Organizations in Yugoslavia.* Durham, NC, 1986

Singleton, F., *Twentieth Century Yugoslavia.* London, 1976.—(with B. Carter) *The Economy of Yugoslavia.* London, 1982.—*A Short History of the Yugoslav Peoples.* CUP, 1985

- Sirc, L., *The Yugoslav Economy under Self-Management*. London, 1979  
 Stojanović, R., (ed.) *The Functioning of the Yugoslav Economy*. New York, 1982  
 Tito, J. B., *The Essential Tito*. New York, 1970  
 Zimmerman, W., *Open Borders, Non-Alignment and the Political Evolution of Yugoslavia*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1987

## REPUBLICS AND AUTONOMOUS PROVINCES

The Federal Republic of Yugoslavia comprises the 6 republics of Bosnia and Herzegovina, Croatia, Macedonia, Montenegro, Serbia and Slovenia, and the 2 autonomous provinces of Kosovo and Vojvodina within the Republic of Serbia.

Each has its own Constitution, Assembly of 3 Chambers (of Associated Labour; of Communes; Socio-Political) and League of Communists within the League of Communists of Yugoslavia, though the latter is not formally a federal institution. State Presidents and League of Communist Secretaries in March 1989: *Bosnia and Herzegovina*: Vacant, Živko Grubor; *Croatia*: Mika Špiljak, Stanko Stojčević; *Kosovo*: Ramzi Kolgeci; Rahman Morina; *Macedonia*: Milan Pančevski, Jakov Lazarovski; *Montenegro*: Vacant; *Serbia*: Petar Gračanin, Slobodan Milošević; *Slovenia*: Andrej Marinc, Milan Kučan; *Vojvodina*: Vacant.

Indicators (in %) for 1986:

	Population	Workers	Social product <sup>1</sup>	Investments <sup>1</sup>
<i>Yugoslavia</i>	100	100	100	100
Bosnia and Herzegovina	18.7	15.7	13.3	16.2
Croatia	20.1	23.6	24.6	22.9
Macedonia	8.7	7.7	5.7	3.7
Montenegro	2.7	2.5	2.0	2.7
Serbia	41.5	37.9	36.4	39.5
Slovenia	8.3	12.6	18.0	15.0

<sup>1</sup> 1985.

## BOSNIA AND HERZEGOVINA

**HISTORY.** The country was settled by Slavs in the 7th century, the original clan system evolving between the 12th and 14th centuries into a principality under a *Ban*, during which time the Bogomil Christian heresy became entrenched. Bosnia was conquered by the Turks in 1463, and the majority of the Bogomils were converted to Islam. At the Congress of Berlin (1878) the territory was assigned to Austro-Hungarian administration under nominal Turkish suzerainty. Austria-Hungary's outright annexation in 1908 generated tensions which contributed to the outbreak of the first world war.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** The republic is bounded in the north and west by Croatia, in the east by Serbia and in the south-east by Montenegro. It is virtually land-locked, having a coastline of only 20 km with no harbours. Its area is 51,129 sq. km. The capital is Sarajevo.

Population at the 1981 census: 4,124,256 (2,073,343 females), of whom the predominating ethnic groups were Moslems (1,630,033), Serbs (1,320,738) and Croats (758,140). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 80.7. Population, 1986, 4.36m.

*Vital statistics:*

	Live births	Marriages	Deaths	Growth rate per 1,000
1985	69,913	34,446	26,892	10.0
1986	68,447	34,123	27,377	9.4

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 2.53m. hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and areas sown (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 324 (136); barley, 79 (39); maize, 931 (255); soya, 14,861 (7,337); potatoes, 359 (53).



Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 120; cattle, 960; sheep, 1,496; pigs, 712. Timber cut in 1986: 7.45m. cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 13,962m. kwh; lignite, 8.77m. tonnes; iron ore, 5.7m. tonnes; pig iron, 1.89m. tonnes; bauxite, 2.16m. tonnes; cement, 773,000 tonnes; cotton fabrics, 22m. sq. metres; cars, 21,000.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986, 2.88m.; non-agricultural workforce, 1.03m., of whom 880,000 worked in production.

## CROATIA

**HISTORY.** The Croats migrated to their present territory in the 6th century and were converted to Roman Catholicism. Croatia was conquered by Hungary in 1091 and remained under Hungarian domination until after the first world war. During the second world war an independent fascist state was set up.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Croatia is bounded in the north by Slovenia and Hungary and in the east by Serbia. It has an extensive Adriatic coastline well provided with ports, and includes the historical areas of Dalmatia, Istria and Slavonia, which no longer have administrative status. The capital is Zagreb. Its area is 56,538 sq. km. Population at the 1981 census was 4,601,469 (2,374,579 females), of whom the predominating ethnic groups were Croats (3,454,661) and Serbs (531,502). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 81.4. Population, 1985, 4.66m.

### *Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	63,170	31,717	52,673	2.3
1986	60,447	30,491	51,977	1.8

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 3.23m. hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and areas sown (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 1,087 (282); barley, 157 (55); maize, 2,743 (531); sugar beet, 1,127 (26); soya, 48,086 (18,093); potatoes, 729 (82). Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 48; cattle, 882; sheep, 742; pigs, 1,821. Timber cut in 1986: 5.65m. cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 9,083m. kwh; coal, 272,000 tonnes; bauxite, 405; crude petroleum, 301,000 tonnes; steel, 462,000 tonnes; plastics, 286,000 tonnes; cement, 3.3m. tonnes; cotton fabrics, 76m. sq. metres; sugar, 176,000 tonnes.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 3.06m.; non-agricultural workforce, 1.55m., of whom 1.26m. worked in production.

## MACEDONIA

**HISTORY.** The Slavs settled in Macedonia since the 6th century, who had been Christianized by Byzantium, were conquered by the non-Slav Bulgars in the 7th century and in the 9th century formed a Macedo-Bulgarian empire, the western part of which survived until Byzantine conquest in 1014. In the 14th century it fell to Serbia, and in 1355 to the Turks. After the Balkan Wars of 1912-13 Turkey was ousted, and Serbia received the greater part of the territory, the rest going to Bulgaria and Greece. In 1918 Yugoslav Macedonia was incorporated into Serbia as 'South Serbia'. Possession of this territory has long been a source of contention between Bulgaria and Yugoslavia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Macedonia is land-locked, and is bounded in the north by Serbia and Kosovo, in the east by Bulgaria, in the south by Greece and in the west by Albania. The capital is Skopje. Its area is 25,713 sq. km. Population at the 1981 census was 1,909,136 (940,993 females), of whom the predominating ethnic groups were Macedonians (1,279,323), Albanians (377,208) and Turks (86,591). Population density per sq. km, 1981, 74.2. Population, 1986, 2.04m.

*Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	39,133	16,507	14,844	12.0
1986	38,891	16,380	14,804	11.8

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 1.34m. hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and areas sown (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 315 (112); barley, 137 (52); maize, 124 (41); cotton, 937 (1,043); tobacco, 37 (30). Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 71; cattle, 264; sheep, 2,368; pigs, 161. Timber cut in 1986: 1.09m. cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 4,159m. kwh; lignite, 3.75m. tonnes; iron ore, 850,000 tonnes; pig-iron, 275,000 tonnes; steel, 437,000 tonnes; copper ore, 3.56m. tonnes; sulphuric acid, 95,000 tonnes; cement, 690,000 tonnes; cotton fabrics, 57m. sq. metres.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 1.29m.; non-agricultural workforce, 510,000, of whom 400,000 worked in production.

## MONTENEGRO

**HISTORY.** Montenegro emerged as a separate entity on the break-up of the Serbian Empire in 1355. It was never effectively subdued by Turkey. It was ruled by Bishop Princes until 1851, when a royal house was founded.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Montenegro is a mountainous region which opens to the Adriatic in the south-west. It is bounded in the north-west by Bosnia and Herzegovina, in the north-east by Serbia and in the south-east by Albania. The capital is Titograd. Its area is 13,812. sq. km. Population at the 1981 census was 584,310 (294,571 females), of whom the predominating ethnic groups were Montenegrins (400,488), Moslems (78,080) and Albanians (37,735). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 42.3. Population, 1986, 0.62m.

*Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	10,268	4,198	3,751	10.6
1986	10,288	4,189	4,024	10.1

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 517,000 hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and areas sown (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 9 (4); barley, 13 (7); maize, 13 (8); potatoes, 32 (7). Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 22; cattle, 190; sheep, 490; pigs, 25. Timber cut in 1986: 920,000 cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 3,058m. kwh; lignite, 2.11m. tonnes; bauxite, 780,000 tonnes; cement, 170,000 tonnes.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 390,000; non-agricultural workforce, 160,000, of whom 130,000 worked in production.

## SERBIA

**HISTORY.** The Serbs received Orthodox Christianity from the Byzantines. They threw off the latter's suzerainty to become a large prosperous medieval state, which was destroyed by the Turks at the Battle of Kosovo in 1389. After revolutions in 1804 and 1815 Serbia won increasing degrees of autonomy from Turkey; complete independence came with the Treaty of Berlin in 1878. Its prince took the title of king in 1881.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Serbia is bounded in the north-west by Croatia, in the north by Hungary, in the north-east by Romania, in the east by Bulgaria, in the south by Macedonia and in the west by Albania, Montenegro and Bosnia and Herzegovina. It includes the Autonomous Provinces of Kosovo in the south and Vojvodina in the north. Without these its area is 55,968 sq. km. The capital is Belgrade. Population at the 1981 census was 9,313,676 (4,684,349 females), of whom the predominating ethnic group was Serbs (6,182,155). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 105.4. Population, 1986, 9.66m.

### *Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	156,524	64,313	92,180	6.7
1986	153,321	64,045	93,571	6.2

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 5.75m. hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and areas sown (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 2,910 (770); barley, 298 (106); maize, 8,400 (1,471); sugar-beet, 4,096 (101); soya, 161,804 (70,123); potatoes, 991 (96). Livestock in 1986: (in 1,000 head): Horses, 109; cattle, 2,178; sheep, 2,698; pigs, 5,142. Timber cut in 1986: 4.17m. cu. metres.

**Industry.** (1986): Electricity, 35,523m. kwh; coal, 37.66m. tonnes; lignite, 36.71m. tonnes; pig-iron, 506,000 tonnes; steel, 591,000 tonnes; copper ore, 24.3m. tonnes; lorries, 11,000; cars, 177,000; sulphuric acid, 1.12m. tonnes; plastics, 236,000 tonnes; cement, 2.92m. tonnes; sugar, 537,000 tonnes; cotton fabrics, 81m. sq. metres; woollens, 43m. sq. metres.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 6.25m.; non-agricultural workforce, 2.49m., of whom 2.03m. were in production.

## KOSOVO

**HISTORY.** Following Albanian-Serb conflicts the Kosovo and Serbian parliaments adopted constitutional amendments in March 1989 surrendering much of Kosovo's autonomy to Serbia.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area: 10,887 sq. km. The capital is Priština. Population at the 1981 census, 1,584,441 (766,048 females), of whom the predominating ethnic groups were Albanians (1,226,736), and Serbs (209,497). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 145.5. Population, 1986, 1.8m.

### *Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	54,436	12,569	9,947	25.3
1986	54,391	12,431	9,982	24.6

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** The agricultural area in 1986 was 585,000 hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and sown areas (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 304 (91); maize, 338 (99); sugar-beet, 74 (3); potatoes, 84 (8). Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 32; cattle, 408; sheep, 411; pigs, 64. Timber cut in 1986, 388,000 cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 5,395m. kwh; lignite, 9.81m. tonnes; sulphuric acid, 45,000 tonnes; cement, 328,000 tonnes.



**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 980,000; non-agricultural workforce, 218,105, of whom 162,549 worked in production.

## VOJVODINA

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Area: 21,506 sq. km. The capital is Novi Sad. Population at the 1981 census, 2,034,772 (1,041,392 females), of whom the predominating ethnic groups were Serbs (1,107,375) and Hungarians (385,356). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 94.6. Population, 1986, 2.05m.

### *Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	25,005	14,248	23,584	1.0
1986	24,062	13,657	23,916	0.1

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** The agricultural area in 1986 was 1.78m. hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and sown areas (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 1,465 (285); barley, 169 (45); maize, 5,151 (737); sugar-beet, 3,208 (77); soya, 144,840 (62,035); potatoes, 342 (25). Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 26; cattle, 289; sheep, 364; pigs, 2,264. Timber cut in 1986: 716,000 cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 1,304m. kwh; crude petroleum, 1.13m. tonnes; sulphuric acid, 48,000 tonnes; plastics, 158,000 tonnes; cement, 1.31m. tonnes.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 1.37m.; non-agricultural workforce, 610,000, of whom 500,000 worked in production.

## SLOVENIA

**HISTORY.** The lands originally settled by Slovenes in the 6th century were steadily encroached upon by Germans. Slovenia developed as part of Austria-Hungary and only gained independence in 1918. A legal opposition group, the Slovene League of Social Democrats (leader, France Tomšič), was formed in Jan. 1989.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Slovenia is bounded in the north by Austria, in the north-east by Hungary, in the south-east by Croatia and in the west by Italy. There is a small strip of coast south of Trieste. Its area is 20,251 sq. km. The capital is Ljubljana. Population at the 1981 census: 1,891,864 (973,098 females), of whom the predominating ethnic group were Slovene (1,712,445). Population density per sq. km, 1981: 93.4. Population, 1986, 1.93m.

### *Vital statistics:*

	<i>Live births</i>	<i>Marriages</i>	<i>Deaths</i>	<i>Growth rate per 1,000</i>
1985	27,925	10,658	20,297	4.0
1986	27,137	10,622	20,352	3.5

## ECONOMY

**Agriculture.** In 1986 the agricultural area was 872,000 hectares. Yields (in 1,000 tonnes) and sown areas (in 1,000 hectares) of principal crops were: Wheat, 141 (43); maize, 315 (64); sugar-beet, 152 (4); potatoes, 458 (32). Livestock in 1986 (1,000 head): Horses, 15; cattle, 556; sheep, 25; pigs, 596. Timber cut in 1986: 3.5m. cu. metres.

**Industry.** Production (1986): Electricity, 12,131m. kwh; lignite, 5m. tonnes; steel, 830,000 tonnes; lorries, 3,900; cars, 45,000; sulphuric acid, 216,000 tonnes; sugar, 34,000 tonnes; cement, 1.24m. tonnes; cotton fabrics, 118m. sq. metres; woollens, 24m. sq. metres.

**Employment.** Population of working age, 1986: 1.24m.; non-agricultural workforce, 830,000, of whom 700,000 worked in production.

# ZAÏRE

*Capital:* Kinshasa

*Population:* 32.56m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$160 (1986)

## République du Zaïre

**HISTORY.** Until the middle of the 19th century the territory drained by the Congo River was practically unknown. When Stanley reached the mouth of the Congo in 1877, King Leopold II of the Belgians recognized the immense possibilities of the Congo Basin and took the lead in exploring and exploiting it. The Berlin Conference of 1884-85 recognized King Leopold II as the sovereign head of the Congo Free State.

The annexation of the state to Belgium was provided for by treaty of 28 Nov. 1907, which was approved by the chambers of the Belgian Legislature in Aug. and Sept. and by the King on 18 Oct. 1908. The law of 18 Oct. 1908, called the Colonial Charter (last amended in 1959), provided for the government of the Belgian Congo, until the country became independent on 30 June 1960. The country's name was changed from Congo to Zaïre in Oct. 1971. For subsequent history to 1977 see THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK, 1980-81, p. 1613.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Zaïre is bounded north by the Central African Republic, north-east by Sudan, east by Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi and Lake Tanganyika, south by Zambia, south-west by Angola, north-west by Congo. There is a 40-km Atlantic coastline separating Angola's province of Cabinda from the rest of that country.

The area of the republic is estimated at 2,344,885 sq. km (905,365 sq. miles). The population is composed almost entirely of Bantu groups, with minorities of Sudanese (in the north), Nilotes (northeast), Pygmies and Hamites (in the east). In the 1984 census the population was 29,671,407 (44% urban). Estimate (1988) 32,564,000. In Dec. 1987 there were about 320,000 refugees in Zaïre including 300,000 from Angola.

The area (in sq. km) and populations (census) 1984 of the regions were as follows, together with their chief towns:

<i>Region</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1984</i>	<i>Chief town</i>	<i>Census 1984</i>
Bandundu	295,658	3,682,845	Bandundu (Banningville)	96,841 <sup>1</sup>
Bas-Zaïre	53,920	1,971,520	Matadi	144,742
Equateur	403,293	3,405,512	Mbandaka (Coquilhatville)	125,263
Haut-Zaïre	503,239	4,206,069	Kisangani (Stanleyville)	282,650
Kasai Occidental	156,967	2,287,416	Kananga (Luluabourg)	290,898
Kasai Oriental	168,216	2,402,603	Mbuji-Mayi (Bakwanga)	423,363
Kinshasa City	9,965	2,653,558	Kinshasa (Leopoldville)	2,653,558
Kivu	256,662	5,187,865	Bukavu (Costermansville)	171,064
Shaba	496,965	3,874,019	Lubumbashi (Elizabethville)	543,268

<sup>1</sup> 1976.

Other large towns (1976): Likasi (194,465 in 1984); Kikwit (146,784 in 1984); Kalémié (172,297); Kamina (160,020); Ilebo (142,036); Boma (93,965) and Kolwezi (77,277).

French is the only official language, but of more than 200 languages spoken, 4 are recognized as national languages. Of these, Kiswahili is used in the east, Tshiluba in the south, Kikongo in the area between Kinshasa and the coast, while Lingala is spoken widely in and around Kinshasa and along the river; Lingala has become the *lingua franca* after French.

**CLIMATE.** Because of the size and the relief of the country, the climate is very varied, the central region having an equatorial climate, with year-long high temperatures and rain at all seasons. Elsewhere, depending on position north or south

of the Equator, there are well-marked wet and dry seasons. The mountains of the east and south have a temperate mountain climate, with the highest summits having considerable snowfall. Kinshasa. Jan. 79°F (26.1°C), July 73°F (22.8°C). Annual rainfall 45" (1,125 mm). Kananga. Jan. 76°F (24.4°C), July 74°F (23.3°C). Annual rainfall 62" (1,584 mm). Kisangani. Jan. 78°F (25.6°C), July 75°F (23.9°C). Annual rainfall 68" (1,704 mm). Lubumbashi. Jan. 72°F (22.2°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 50" (1,237 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** A new Constitution was promulgated on 15 Feb. 1978 and amended in Nov. 1980. The supreme institution is the sole political party, the *Mouvement Populaire de la Révolution* (MPR), whose leader and President is automatically Head of State, of the National Executive Council and of the National Legislative Council. His nomination by the Political Bureau of the MPR (whose 38 members are all nominated by him) is confirmed for a 7-year term (renewable once) by election by universal adult suffrage (all Zaïreans acquire automatic membership of the MPR at birth).

*Former President:* Joseph Kasavubu, 1 July 1960–25 Nov. 1965 (deposed in coup).

*President:* Marshal Mobutu Sésé Séko Kuku Ngbendu wa Zabanga (took office 25 Nov. 1965, elected 1 Nov. 1970 and re-elected Dec. 1977 and July 1984).

The National Executive Council is composed of State Commissioners appointed by the President. In Nov. 1988 it was composed as follows:

*Prime Minister:* Kengo Wa Dondo.

*Deputy Prime Minister:* Mwando Msimba. *Civil Service:* (Vacant). *Territorial Administration and Decentralization:* Mandungu Bula Nyati. *Foreign Affairs and International Co-operation:* Nguza Karl-I-Bond. *Information and Press:* Ekila Liyonda. *Planning:* Kasereka Kasai. *Finance:* Kamitatu Massamba. *Budget:* Kinzonzi Mvutukidi Ngindu Kagbia. *Economy and Industry:* Mokonda Bonza. *Parastatals:* Mulumba Lukoji. *Foreign Trade:* Kanumubadi Badibanga Mbakese. *Rural Development:* Kayinga Onsi Ndal. *Mines and Energy:* Kisanga Kabongelo. *Public Works and Regional Development:* Mokolo wa Mpombo. *Transport and Communications:* Sampassa Kaweta Milombe. *Land, Environment and Conservation:* Pendje Demodetdo. *Higher Education, Universities and Scientific Research:* Luhahi a Niami. *Primary and Secondary Education:* Nzege Alaziambina. *Public Health:* Dr Ngandu Kabeya. *Town Planning and Housing:* Kibangula Kia Makonga. *Social Affairs:* Maduka Inyanza. *Labour and Social Security:* Kisolokele Wamba. *Post and Telecommunications:* Ilelo Itambala. *Sport and Leisure:* Tshimbombo Mukuna. *Culture, Arts and Tourism:* Beyeye Djema. *President of the Judicial Council:* N'Singa Undjuu Ongwankebi Untumbe.

Parliament consists of a unicameral National Legislative Council comprising People's Commissioners (one per 150,000 inhabitants) elected by universal suffrage for a 5-year term. At the latest elections (Sept. 1987) 210 People's Commissioners were elected from a list of candidates presented by the MPR.

*National flag:* Green, with a yellow disc bearing an arm holding a flaming torch.

*Local government:* Zaïre is composed of the *ville neutre* of Kinshasa (administered by a Governor) and 8 regions, each under a Regional Commissioner and 6 Councillors; all are appointed by the President. The regions are divided into 13 urban and 24 rural sub-regions.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army is divided into 3 Military Regions and comprises 1 infantry division (3 infantry brigades), and 1 Special Forces division (1 parachute, 1 commando and 1 Presidential Guard brigades). Equipment includes 50 Chinese Type-62 light tanks, and 95 AML-60 and 60 AML-90 armoured cars. Strength (1989) 22,000. There is a paramilitary gendarmerie which is responsible for security and also numbered (1989) about 26,000, organized in 40 battalions.



**Navy.** The Navy consists of 3 flotillas, 1 coastal, 1 river and 1 lake, comprising 35 coastal patrol boats including 6 US-built and 29 French-built. Personnel in 1989 numbered 1,500 officers and men including 600 marines.

**Air Force.** The Air Force has been built up with training assistance from Italy. In 1989 it operated 7 Mirage 5 supersonic fighters, 12 Aermacchi MB.326GB and 3 MB.326K armed jet trainers, 5 C-130 Hercules and 3 DHC-5 Buffalo turboprop transports, 7 C-47, 4 C54, 2 DC-6 piston-engined transports, 19 Bell 47, Alouette, Puma and Super Puma helicopters, 9 SIAI-Marchetti SF.260MC basic trainers and a variety of other transport and training aircraft. Personnel (1989) 2,500.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Zaïre is a member of UN, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 5-year Development Plan, 1986-90 envisages expenditure of US\$5,000m. emphasis is being placed on promoting food production and increasing agricultural exports.

**Budget.** Revenue was envisaged at 100m. zaïres in 1987, and expenditure. 106m.

**Currency.** The currency unit, is the *zaïre*, divided into 100 *makuta*. Each *likuta* (plural *makuta*) is divided into 100 *sengi*. Bank-notes are issued in the following denominations: 50, 10, 5 and 1 *zaïre* and 50 *makuta*; there are coins of 20, 10 and 5 *makuta*, 1 *likuta* and 10 *sengi*. In March 1989, £1 sterling = 540.25 *zaïre*; US\$1 = 313.92 *zaïre*.

**Banking.** The central bank is Banque du Zaïre. A development bank with state backing is the Société Financière de Développement (SOFIDE). Commercial banks operating in Zaïre are Banque de Paris et des Pays-Bas, Banque de Kinshasa, National & Grindlays Bank, Barclays Bank SZPRL, First National City Bank, Union Zaïroise de Banques, Banque Commerciale Zaïroise, Banque du Peuple, Caisse Nationale d'Epargne et de Crédit Immobilier and Banque Internationale pour L'Afrique au Zaïre.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system was introduced by law on 17 Aug. 1910.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 5,280m. kwh. A huge new dam at Inga, on the Zaïre River near Matadi, has a potential capacity of 39,600 mw.

**Oil.** Offshore oil production began in Nov. 1975; crude production (1988) was 1.4m. tonnes.

**Minerals.** In 1984 33% of Zaïre's foreign exchange was derived from mining of copper (502,600 tonnes), zinc (197,700 tonnes), cobalt (19,600 in 1985), as well as manganese, tin, gold and silver. The most important mining area is in the region of Shaba (formerly Katanga). The principal mining companies are the State-owned Gécamines; the Zaïre-Japanese Sodimiza; the international Société Minière du Tenke-Fungurume which started production in 1976; and 2 diamond companies, MIBA and British Zaïre Diamond Distributors. Production (1985) 19.6m. metric carats.

**Agriculture.** There were (1984) 5.65m. hectares of arable land and 24.8m. hectares of pastures and meadows. The main food crops (1987 production in 1,000 tonnes) are: Cassava, 16,091; plantains, 1,510; sugar-cane, 1,087; maize, 777; groundnuts, 411; bananas, 338; yams, 225; rice, 302. Cash crops (1987) include palm oil, 165; coffee, 102; palm kernels, 70; rubber, 23; seed cotton 77. There are also (1987) pineapples, 172; mangoes, 150; oranges, 148; papayas, 170.

**Livestock** (1987): Cattle, 1,431,000; sheep, 777,000; goats, 2,972,000; pigs, 792,000; poultry, 19m.

**Forestry.** Equatorial rain forests cover 55% of Zaïre's land surface, and 30·5m. cu. metres of timber were produced in 1985.

**Fisheries.** The catch for 1985 was 102,000 tonnes, almost entirely from inland waters.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** The main manufactures are foodstuffs, beverages, tobacco, textiles, leather, wood products, cement and building materials, metallurgy and metal extraction, small river craft, and bicycles.

**Commerce.** Imports in 1986 totalled 51,959m. zaïres, exports totalled 65,187m. zaïres. In 1984, 36% of the exports (by value) consisted of copper, 11% of coffee, 17% of crude petroleum and 12% of cobalt. In 1985, 24% of all exports went to USA, 32% to Belgium, 12% to Federal Republic of Germany and 5% to France, while 22% of imports came from Belgium, 11% from France, 10% from USA and 8% from Federal Republic of Germany.

Total trade between Zaïre and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	7,720	35,198	17,192	8,544	7,542
Exports and re-exports from UK	36,254	34,975	34,217	26,142	26,132

**Tourism.** There were 51,000 visitors in 1986 spending US\$16·3m.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** In 1984 of 160,000 km of roads only 20,600 km are of national importance and all roads are earth-surfaced. In 1982 there were 89,471 passenger cars and 16,807 commercial vehicles.

**Railways.** There are two railway operators, the Zaïre National Railways (SNCZ) and the National Office of Transport and Communications (Onatra), which leases two lines from SNCZ. Length in 1986 was 4,750 km on 3 gauges, of which 858 km is electrified. In 1986 SNCZ carried 330m. passenger-km and 1,785m. tonne-km of freight.

**Aviation.** There are 4 international airports at Kinshasa (Ndjili), Lubumbashi (Luano), Kisangani and Bukavu. There are another 40 airports with regular scheduled internal services, and over 150 other landing strips.

More than twelve international airlines, including British Caledonian Airways, operate in and out of Kinshasa from Europe, Africa and the USA. The national airline Air Zaïre, operates on all the main internal routes as well as on international routes to Europe and other African cities.

**Shipping.** The Zaïre River and its tributaries are navigable for about 13,700 km. Regular traffic has been established between Kinshasa and Kisangani as well as Ilebo, on the Lualaba (*i.e.*, the river above Kisangani), on some tributaries and on the lakes. Zaïre has only 40 km of sea coast. The merchant marine in 1981 comprised 34 vessels with a total tonnage of 92,044 GRT. Kinshasa, Matadi and Boma are the main seaports; in 1978, 629,422 tonnes of freight were unloaded and 498,380 loaded.

**Post and Broadcasting.** In 1983 there were 362 post offices. Length of telegraph lines, 2,459 km. There were 15 broadcasting stations, 161 stations of wireless telegraphy and 206 telegraph offices; telephones numbered 31,855 in 1985. There is a ground satellite communications station outside Kinshasa. In 1986 there were 525,000 radio and 15,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas** (1974): 91 cinemas had a seating capacity of 23,300.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 4 dailies: *Salongo* (mornings) and *Elima* (evenings) in Kinshasa; *Njumbe* in Lubumbashi and *Boyoma* in Kisangani.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** A Justice Department was established in Jan. 1980 to replace the Judicial

Council. There is a Supreme Court at Kinshasa, 9 Courts of Appeal and 32 courts of first instance.

**Religion.** In 1988 there were about 15.7m. Roman Catholics, 9.4m. Protestants and 5.6m. Kimbanguistes, as well as some 450,000 Moslems and 2,000 Jews. The remaining inhabitants (about 1.1m.) chiefly adhere to animist beliefs.

**Education.** In 1983 there were 4,654,613 pupils and 112,077 teachers in 10,065 primary schools; and in 1978-79 there were 611,349 pupils in 2,511 secondary schools; 70,342 students in technical schools and 138,170 in teacher-training colleges. In 1971 all Institutes of Higher Education combined to form the National University of Zaïre, but in 1981 this was divided to form 3 Universities at Kinshasa, Kisangani and Lubumbashi; in 1985-86 in all there were 37,706 students and 3,072 teaching staff at 36 higher education establishments.

**Health.** In 1979 there were 1,900 doctors, 58 dentists, 414 pharmacists, 3,043 midwives, 14,661 nursing personnel and 942 hospitals and medical centres with 79,244 beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Zaïre in Great Britain (26 Chesham Pl., London, SW1X 8HH)

*Ambassador:* Nkikele Kitshode (accredited 17 Feb. 1988).

Of Great Britain in Zaïre (Ave. de l'Équateur, Kinshasa)

*Ambassador:* R. L. B. Cormack, CMG.

Of Zaïre in the USA (1800 New Hampshire Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20009)

*Ambassador:* Kalimba wa Katana Mushobekwa.

Of the USA in Zaïre (310 Ave. des Aviateurs, Kinshasa)

*Ambassador:* (Vacant).

Of Zaïre to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Bagbeni Adeito Nzengeya.

### Further Reading

*Area Handbook for the Democratic Republic of the Congo (Kinshasa).* US Government Printing Office, Washington, 1971

*Atlas Général du Congo.* Académie Royale, Brussels

Gran, G., *Zaire: The Political Economy of Underdevelopment.* New York, 1979

Slade, R. M., *King Leopold's Congo: Aspects of the Development of Race Relations in the Congo's Independent State.* OUP, 1962

Young, C. and Turner, T., *The Rise and Decline of the Zaïrian State.* Univ. of Wisconsin Press, 1985



# ZAMBIA

*Capital:* Lusaka

*Population:* 7.12m. (1987)

*GNP per capita:* US\$300 (1986)

**HISTORY.** The independent Republic of Zambia (formerly Northern Rhodesia) came into being on 24 Oct. 1964 after 9 months of internal self-government following the dissolution of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland on 31 Dec. 1963.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Zambia is bounded by Tanzania in the north, Malaŵi in the east, Mozambique in the south-east and by Zimbabwe and South West Africa (Namibia) in the south. The area is 290,586 sq. miles (752,614 sq. km). Population (1980 census) 5,679,808 of which 43% urban; estimate (1987) 7.12m.

The republic is divided into 9 provinces. Their names, headquarters, area (in sq. km) and census population in 1980 were as follows:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Headquarters</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Headquarters</i>	<i>Area</i>	<i>Population</i>
Copperbelt	Ndola	31,328	1,248,888	Eastern	Chipata	69,106	656,381
Luapula	Mansa	50,567	412,798	Southern	Livingstone	85,283	686,469
Northern	Kasama	147,826	677,894	N.-Western	Solwezi	125,827	301,677
Central	Kabwe	94,395	513,835	Western	Mongu	126,386	487,988
Lusaka	Lusaka	21,898	693,878				

The seat of Government is at Lusaka (population, 1987, 818,994); other large towns are Kitwe (449,442), Ndola (418,142), Mufulira (192,323), Chingola (187,310), Luanshya (160,667), Kalulushi (89,065) and Chililabombwe (79,010) on the Copperbelt; Kabwe, the oldest mining township (190,752); Livingstone, the old capital (94,637); and other provincial capitals at Kasama, Mansa, Chipata, Mongu and Solwezi. In Jan. 1988 there were 146,000 refugees in Zambia including 97,000 Angolans.

The official language is English and the main ethnic groups are the Bemba (34%), Tonga (16%), Malawi (14%) and Lozi (9%).

**CLIMATE.** The climate is tropical, but has three seasons. The cool, dry one is from May to Aug., a hot dry one follows until Nov., when the wet season commences. Frosts may occur in some areas in the cool season. Lusaka. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 33" (836 mm). Livingstone. Jan. 75°F (23.9°C), July 61°F (16.1°C). Annual rainfall 27" (673 mm). Ndola. Jan. 70°F (21.1°C), July 59°F (15°C). Annual rainfall 52" (1,293 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** The Constitution provides for a President, elected in the first instance by the General Conference of the ruling party, the United National Independence Party, and thereafter he is elected by the electorate. On 13 Dec. 1972 President Kaunda signed a new Constitution based on one-party rule.

The single political party is the United National Independence Party. Its full-time executive organ (headed by a Secretary-General) is the Central Committee, whose 24 members are elected by the General Conference of the Party. The Central Committee has precedence over the legislative body, the National Assembly, which is led by the Prime Minister and consists of 125 elected members and up to 10 nominated members, including a cabinet of 18 ministers.

Presidential elections were held in Oct. 1988 and on 30 Oct. President Kaunda was sworn in for a sixth 5-year term.

The Cabinet, as in Dec. 1988, was composed as follows:

*President and Commander-in-Chief:* Dr Kenneth David Kaunda.

*Secretary General of the Party:* A. G. Zulu.

*Prime Minister:* K. S. K. Musokotwane.

*Defence:* M. Masheke. *Foreign Affairs:* L. Mwananshiku. *Finance and Planning:*

G. Chigaga. *Attorney-General*: F. M. Chomba. *Higher Education*: L. Goma. *Health*: R. Sakuhuka. *Industry*: J. K. M. Kalaluka. *Home Affairs*: P. Malukutila. *Mines*: P. S. Chitambala. *Agriculture*: F. Chuula. *Power*: Gen. G. K. Chinkuli. *Works*: H. Mwale. *Labour and Social Services*: U. G. Mwila. *Tourism*: L. S. Subulwa. *Information*: J. C. M. Punabantu. *Youth*: F. Hapunda. *Education and Culture*: B. R. Kabwe. *Co-operatives*: J. Mukando.

*National flag*: Green, with in the fly a panel of 3 vertical strips of dark red, black and orange, and above these a soaring eagle in gold.

*National anthem*: Stand and Sing of Zambia, Proud and Free.

The 9 provinces (sub-divided into 53 districts) are administered by Central Committee Members for the provinces who are responsible for the overall government and Party administration of their respective areas.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 armoured regiment and 6 infantry battalions, with supporting artillery, engineer and signals units. Equipment includes some 30 main battle tanks and 78 armoured cars. Strength (1989) 15,000. There are also paramilitary police units numbering 1,200 men.

**Air Force.** Creation of the Zambian Air Force was assisted initially by an RAF mission. Training and expansion of the Air Force was next taken over by Italy, with the purchase of 23 Aermacchi M.B.326G armed jet basic trainers (of which 18 remain in service), 8 SIAI-Marchetti SF.260M piston-engined trainers and 15 Agusta-Bell 47G, 10 AB.205 and 2 AB.212 helicopters. Twelve F-6 (MiG-19) jet fighter-bombers and some BT-6 primary trainers have since been acquired from China, a squadron of 14 MiG-21 fighters, 3 Yak-40 light jet transports, 4 An-26 twin-turboprop transports and 6 Mi-8 helicopters from the Soviet Union, 5 DHC-5 Buffalo twin-turboprop transports from Canada, 6 C-47s built in the USA, 8 DO 28D Skyservant light transports from Germany, 15 Supporter armed light trainers from Sweden. Serviceability of most types is reported to be low. The survivors of 6 Jastreb light attack aircraft and 2 Galeb trainers supplied by Yugoslavia are thought to be in storage. Personnel (1989) 1,200.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Zambia is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, SADCC, OAU and is an ACP state of EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure for 1987 (in K1m.): Envisaged expenditure of 5,758 and revenue of 4,801.

**Currency.** The *Kwacha* (K) is divided into 100 *ngwee* (n). There are coins of 50, 20, 10, 5, 2 and 1 *ngwee* and banknotes of K20, K10, K5, K2 and K1 are in use. In March 1989, £1 = 17.25 *Kwacha*; US\$1 = 10.02 *Kwacha*.

**Banking.** Barclays Bank has 25 branches, 6 sub-branches and 17 agencies; Standard Bank has 18 branches and 17 agencies; National & Grindlays, 10 branches and 1 sub-branch; Zambia National Commercial Bank, 10 branches and 1 in London; the post office saving bank has branches throughout the republic.

The Finance Development Corporation (FINDECO) controls the building societies, all insurance companies, one commercial bank and has shares in a second one. The Agricultural Finance Corporation provides loans to farmers, co-operatives, farmers' associations and agricultural societies.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** The total installed capacity of hydro and thermal power stations, excluding Zambia's share of Kariba South, amounts to 1,924,700 kw and the energy production during 1986 amounted to some 11,100m. kwh. Zambia exports electricity to Zaïre, Zimbabwe and Angola.

The hydro stations are located at Mbala, Mansa, Kasama, Mulungushi, Lunsemfwa and Victoria Falls, Lusiwasi and Kafue Gorge. Work has started on the Kariba North Project. The thermal stations are located on the Copperbelt. A number of diesel power stations have been installed, mostly in the North-Western and Northern Provinces.

**Minerals.** The total value of minerals produced (in 1,000 tonnes) in 1985 was: Copper, 543; zinc, 32; lead, 15; cobalt, 4.4; gold, 7,903 oz.

**Agriculture.** Although 70% of the population is dependent on agriculture only 10% of GDP is provided by the industry. Principal agricultural products (1987) were maize, 954,000 tonnes; sugar-cane, 1.25m. tonnes; seed cotton, 57,000 tonnes; tobacco, 4,000 tonnes; groundnuts, 14,000 tonnes.

Livestock (1987): 2.85m. cattle; 221,000 pigs; 80,000 sheep; 420,000 goats, and 14m. poultry.

**Fisheries.** Total catch (1984) 65,000 tonnes.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** In Dec. 1984 there was a labour force of 2.27m. of which 63% employed in agriculture, 2.6% in mining and quarrying and 2.1% in manufacturing.

**Commerce.** Trade in 1m. kwacha for 3 years:

	1985	1986	1987
Imports	2,089.5	4,447.7	6,227.5
Exports	1,486.1	3,074.4	8,058.6

In 1983, copper provided 89% of all exports (by value), cobalt 4%, zinc 2%.

Total trade between Zambia and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	27,879	27,260	30,310	24,822
Exports and re-exports from UK	85,949	77,840	75,178	85,746

**Tourism.** There were 100,000 visitors in 1985.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** There were (1984) 37,279 km of roads including over 5,592 km of tarred roads. In 1982 there were 33,000 commercial vehicles and 68,000 cars.

**Railways.** In 1985 the total route-km was 1,266 km (1,067 mm gauge). In 1987-88 the Zambian railways (excluding Tan-Zam) carried 1.9m. passengers and 4.6m. tonnes of freight. The Tan-Zam railway, giving Zambia access to Dar es Salaam, comprises 892 km of route in Zambia.

**Aviation.** There were (1982) 130 airports in Zambia (46 government owned). Lusaka is the principal international airport. Seven foreign airlines use Lusaka.

**Post and Broadcasting.** There were (1982) 13 head post offices and 236 other post offices. In 1985 there were 74,500 telephones, and in 1986 528,000 radio and 66,000 television receivers.

**Cinemas.** In 1971 there were 28 cinemas with a seating capacity of 13,400.

**Newspapers.** There were (1984) 2 national daily papers: *The Times of Zambia* (circulation, 65,000) and *Zambia Daily Mail* (45,000) and *The Sunday Times* (74,000).

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The Judiciary consists of the Supreme Court, the High Court and 4 classes of magistrates' courts; all have civil and criminal jurisdiction.

The Supreme Court hears and determines appeals from the High Court. Its seat is at Lusaka.



The High Court exercises the powers vested in the High Court in England, subject to the High Court ordinance of Zambia. Its sessions are held where occasion requires, mostly at Lusaka and Ndola.

All criminal cases tried by subordinate courts are subject to revision by the High Court.

**Religion.** Freedom of worship is one of the constitutional rights of Zambian citizens. The Christian faith with 66% of the population has largely replaced traditional African religions. There are 20,000 Moslems.

**Education.** In 1984 there were 1,121,769 pupils in 2,894 primary schools, secondary schools, 104,859 in 142 schools. In 1984 there were 4,910 students in technical colleges and 4,653 students were enrolled for teacher-training. In 1984 the University of Zambia had 3,621 full-time students.

**Health.** In 1981 there were 821 doctors, 52 dentists, 36 pharmacists, 866 midwives and 871 nursing personnel. There were also 636 hospitals and clinics with 20,638 beds.

### DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Zambia in Great Britain (2 Palace Gate, London, W8 5LS)

*High Commissioner:* W. J. Phiri (accredited 9 Oct. 1986).

Of Great Britain in Zambia (Independence Ave., Lusaka)

*High Commissioner:* J. M. Willson, CMG.

Of Zambia in the USA (2419 Massachusetts Ave., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)

*Ambassador:* Nalumino Mundia.

Of the USA in Zambia (PO Box 31617, Lusaka)

*Ambassador:* Paul J. Hare.

Of Zambia to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Peter Dingi Zuze.

### Further Reading

*General Information:* The Director, Zambia Information Services, PO Box 50020, Lusaka.

*Laws of Zambia.* 13 vols. Govt. Printer, Lusaka

Beveridge, A. A. and Oberschall, A. R., *African Businessmen and Development in Zambia.* Princeton Univ. Press, 1980

Bliss, A. M. and Rigg, J. A., *Zambia.* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1984

Burdette, M. M., *Zambia: Between two Worlds.* Boulder, 1988

Gertzel, C. (ed.) *The Dynamics of a One-Party State in Zambia.* Manchester Univ. Press, 1984

Kaunda, K. D., *Zambia Shall be Free.* London, 1962.—*Humanism in Zambia.* Lusaka. 2 vols. 1967 and 1974.—*Zambia's Economic Revolution.* Lusaka, 1968.—*Zambia's*

*Guidelines for the Next Decade.* Lusaka, 1968.—*Letter to my Children.* Lusaka, 1973

Roberts, A., *A History of Zambia.* London, 1977

# ZIMBABWE

*Capital:* Harare

*Population:* 8·87m. (1988)

*GNP per capita:* US\$780 (1984)

**HISTORY.** Prior to Oct. 1923 Southern Rhodesia, like Northern Rhodesia, was under the administration of the British South Africa Co. In Oct. 1922 Southern Rhodesia voted in favour of responsible government. On 12 Sept. 1923 the country was formally annexed to His Majesty's Dominions, and on 1 Oct. 1923 government was established under a governor, assisted by an executive council, and a legislature, with the status of a self-governing colony. For the history of the period 1961–1979 including the period of unilateral declaration of independence see *THE STATESMAN'S YEAR-BOOK*, 1980–81, pp. 1623–25. Rhodesia (Southern Rhodesia) became the Republic of Zimbabwe on 18 April 1980.

**AREA AND POPULATION.** Zimbabwe is bounded north by Zambia, east by Mozambique, south by the Republic of South Africa and west by Botswana. The area is 150,699 sq. miles (390,308 sq. km). The capital is Harare (Salisbury). The total population was (1982 census) 7,539,300; 1988 estimate, 8·87m.

There are 8 provinces:

<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1982</i>	<i>Province</i>	<i>Sq. km</i>	<i>Census 1982</i>
Manicaland	35,219	1,099,202	Masvingo	55,777	1,031,697
Mashonaland Central	29,482	563,407	Matabeleland North	76,813	885,339
Mashonaland East	26,813	1,495,984	Matabeleland South	54,941	519,606
Mashonaland West	55,737	858,962	Midlands	55,977	1,091,844

Population of main urban areas (1982 census): Bindura, 18,243; Bulawayo, 414,800; Masvingo (Fort Victoria) 31,000; Kadoma (Gatooma) 45,000; Gweru (Gwelo) 79,000; Chegutu (Hartley) 26,617; Marondera (Marandellas) 37,092; Kwekwe (Que Que) 48,000; Redcliffe, 22,000; Harare (Salisbury) 656,100; Zvishavane (Shabani) 27,000; Chinhoyi (Sinoia) 24,322; Mutare (Umtali) 70,000; Hwange (Wankie) 39,000; Chitungwiza, 175,000.

In 1982 23% were urban and 51% under 15.

Vital statistics (1986): Birth rate was 37·2 per 1,000 population, the death rate 10·8 per 1,000. In Jan. 1988 there were 135,000 refugees mainly from Mozambique.

The official language is English. Shona and Sindebele are the main spoken languages.

**CLIMATE.** Though situated in the tropics, conditions are remarkably temperate throughout the year because of altitude, and an inland position keeps humidity low. The warmest weather occurs in the three months before the main rainy season, which starts in Nov. and lasts till March. The cool season is from mid-May to mid-Aug. and, though days are mild and sunny, nights are chilly. Harare. Jan. 69°F (20·6°C), July 57°F (13·9°C). Annual rainfall 33" (828 mm). Bulawayo. Jan. 71°F (21·7°C), July 57°F (13·9°C). Annual rainfall 24" (594 mm). Victoria Falls. Jan. 78°F (25·6°C), July 61°F (16·1°C). Annual rainfall 28" (710 mm).

**CONSTITUTION AND GOVERNMENT.** At the Commonwealth Conference held in Lusaka in Aug. 1979 agreement was reached for a new Constitutional Conference to be held in London and this took place between 10 Sept. and 15 Dec. 1979 at Lancaster House. It was attended by the various factions in Zimbabwe-Rhodesia, including Abel Muzorewa, Robert Mugabe and Joshua Nkomo, and was chaired by Lord Carrington. It achieved 3 objectives: (i) the terms of the Constitution for an independent Zimbabwe; (ii) terms for a return to legality; and (iii) a ceasefire. Lord Soames became Governor of Southern Rhodesia in Dec. 1979 and elections took place in March 1980, resulting in victory for the Zimbabwe African National Union (ZANU, PF).

The Constitution provides for a bicameral Parliament. Parliament consists of a 40-member Senate elected by the common roll; 10 chiefs elected by all the

country's tribal chiefs; 6 nominated by the Prime Minister and a 100-member House of Assembly; Universal suffrage for citizens over the age of 18; A President (elected for a 6-year term of office by Parliament) who heads the Executive; An independent judiciary enjoying security of tenure; A justiciable Declaration of Rights, derogation from certain of the provisions being permitted, within specified limits, during a state of emergency; Independent Service Commissions exercising powers in respect of staffing and conditions of service in the Public Service, the uniformed forces and the judiciary; Special entrenchment of certain provisions of the Constitution until April 1990 (the protective provisions of the Declaration of Rights).

In 1987 there were 2 constitutional changes: Racial representation was abolished and an executive presidency established.

Under the Constitution no Parliament may continue in existence for more than 5 years.

In March 1988 the composition of the House of Assembly was, ZANU, PF 78 members, the Zimbabwe African People's Party (ZAPU) 14, ZANU, I and Independents, 6.

*Executive President:* Robert G. Mugabe (sworn in on 30 Dec. 1987).

The Cabinet in March 1989 was composed as follows:

*Vice-President:* Simon Muzenda. *Senior Minister in the President's Office:* Joshua Nkomo. *Senior Minister of Political Affairs in the President's Office:* Tapfumaneyi Nyagumbo. *Senior Minister of Finance, Economic Planning and Development in the President's Office:* Dr Bernard Chidzero. *Defence:* (Vacant). *Mines:* Richard Hove. *Energy and Water Resources and Development:* Kumbirai Kangai. *National Supplies:* Simbi Mubako. *Justice, Legal and Parliamentary Affairs:* Emmerson Mnangagwa. *Higher Education:* Dzingai Mutumbuka. *Community and Co-operative Development and Women's Affairs:* Joyce Mujuru. *Foreign Affairs:* Dr Nathan Shamuyarira. *Information, Posts and Telecommunications:* Dr Witness Mangwende. *Local Government, Rural and Urban Development:* Enos Chikowore. *Natural Resources and Tourism:* Victoria Chitepo. *Home Affairs:* Moven Mahachi. *Transport:* Simbarashe Mumbengegwi. *Trade and Commerce:* Dr Oliver Munyaradzi. *Industry and Technology:* Dr Callistus Ndlovu. *Lands, Agriculture and Rural Resettlement:* David Karimanzira. *Primary and Secondary Education:* Fay Chung. *Youth, Sport and Culture:* David Kwidini. *Public Construction and National Housing:* Joseph Msika. *Health:* Brig. Felix Muchemwa. *Labour, Manpower Planning and Social Welfare:* John Nkomo. There are 8 Ministers of State.

*National flag:* Seven horizontal stripes of green, yellow, red, black, red, yellow and green; on a white black-edged triangle in the hoist a red star surmounted by the Zimbabwe Bird in yellow.

The first municipal elections were held in Nov. 1980.

## DEFENCE

**Army.** The Army consists of 1 armoured, 1 air-defence and 1 artillery regiments; 20 infantry, 1 commando and 2 parachute battalions; and 7 engineer and 7 signals squadrons. Equipment includes 8 T-54 and 35 Ch T-59 main battle tanks. Strength was (1989) 46,000, and there are a further 15,000 paramilitary police.

**Air Force.** The Zimbabwe Air Force (regular) has a strength of (1987) about 1,000 personnel and 130 aircraft in 9 squadrons, of which 2 are intended primarily for a training role. Headquarters ZAF and the main ZAF stations are in Harare; the second main base is at Gweru, with many secondary airfields throughout the country. Equipment includes 1 squadron of F-7 (MiG-21) interceptors, 1 squadron of Hunter FGA.9 fighter-bombers, 1 squadron of Hawk training and light attack aircraft, a transport squadron with 11 turboprop CASA Aviocars, 6 twin-engined Islanders and 6 C-47s; a squadron with 9 Reims/Cessna 337 Lynx attack aircraft; a squadron with 14 SIAI-Marchetti SF.260W Genet and 15 SF.260C Genet trainers; a helicopter liaison/transport squadron with 40 Alouette II/IIIs, a helicopter



casualty evacuation/transport squadron with 6 Agusta-Bell 205s and 12 Bell 412s. Nine Canberra bombers are in storage.

## INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Membership.** Zimbabwe is a member of UN, the Commonwealth, OAU, SADCC, the Non-Aligned Movement and is an ACP state of the EEC.

## ECONOMY

**Planning.** The 5-year development plan (1986-90) emphasizes greater public-sector involvement in all parts of the economy.

**Budget.** Revenue and expenditure (in Z\$1,000):

	1984-85	1985-86	1986-87	1987-88
Revenue	2,212,839	2,616,185	2,997,000	3,784,856
Expenditure	2,641,260	3,136,738	3,828,528	4,295,736

Receipts during the year ended 30 June 1985 were (in Z\$1,000): Income and profits tax, 1,066,584; taxes on goods and services, 1,137,808; miscellaneous taxes and other income, 311,757.

The gross amount of the public debt outstanding in June 1986 was Z\$5,192,729,612.

**Currency.** On 17 Feb. 1970 decimal currency was adopted. The unit of currency is the Zimbabwe *dollar* divided into 100 *cents*. In March 1989, £1 = Z\$3.44; US\$1 = Z\$1.99.

**Banking.** The Reserve Bank of Zimbabwe is the country's central bank; it became operative when the Bank of Rhodesia and Nyasaland ceased operations on 1 June 1965. It acts as banker to the Government and to the commercial banks and as agent of the Government for important financial operations. It is also the central note-issuing authority and co-ordinates the application of the Government's monetary policy. The Zimbabwe Development Bank, established in 1983 as a development finance institution, is 51% Government-owned.

The post office savings bank had Z\$652,787,470 deposits at 30 June 1985.

The 5 commercial banks are Barclays Bank of Zimbabwe Ltd, Grindlays Bank Ltd, Zimbabwe Banking Corporation Ltd, Standard Chartered Bank Zimbabwe Ltd, Bank of Credit and Commerce Zimbabwe (Pvt) Ltd. In 1986 they had 119 branches and 75 agencies. The 4 merchant banks are Standard Chartered Merchant Bank, Merchant Bank of Central Africa, RAL Merchant Bank and Syfrets Merchant Bank. There are 5 registered finance houses, 3 of which are subsidiaries of commercial banks.

**Weights and Measures.** The metric system is in use but the US short ton is also used.

## ENERGY AND NATURAL RESOURCES

**Electricity.** Production (1986) 4,670m. kwh.

**Minerals.** The total value of all minerals produced in 1987 was Z\$896,691,000. Output (in 1,000 tonnes) and value (in Z\$1,000):

	Output			Value		
	1985	1986	1987	1985	1986	1987
Asbestos	173.5	163.6	193.3	84,544	85,789	97,859
Gold (1,000 oz.)	472.0	478.0	472.0	241,312	292,770	349,931
Chrome ore	526.5	553.1	562.2	33,676	39,698	44,160
Coal	3,114.0	4,047.0	4,814.0	66,844	89,144	103,402
Copper	20.7	20.6	19.6	43,339	43,272	46,069
Nickel	9.9	9.7	10,912.0	73,429	60,672	73,153
Iron Ore	1,098.0	1,115.0	1,328.0	18,930	21,144	28,843
Silver (1,000 oz.)	799.0	840.0	813.0	7,869	10,612	15,790
Tin	1,209.0	1,019.0	1,037.0	22,592	10,568	11,547
Cobalt	91.0	76.0	107.0	2,798	2,379	1,370

**Agriculture.** The most important single food crop in Zimbabwe is maize, the staple food of a large proportion of the population; deliveries to the Grain Marketing Board in 1985 were 1.7m. tonnes. The export potential for the livestock industry has increased with the possibility of new markets in EEC countries. Milk production in 1987 was 220,000 tonnes.

The country is suitable for the production of both citrus and deciduous fruits and fruit production is now well established. In 1987 seed cotton production was 300,000 tonnes and in 1985-86 irrigated wheat production was 205,528 tonnes. Tea is grown in the Inyanga and Chipinge districts and production in 1987 was 17,000 tonnes. Coffee growing is of increasing importance (production, 1987, 13,000 tonnes) as is sugar (production, 1987, 447,000 tonnes). Other crops grown in substantial quantities include small grains (sorghums and millet), soya-beans and groundnuts. A wide variety of vegetable crops are also produced.

Tobacco is the most important single product, accounting for over 40% of the value of earnings from agricultural exports. In 1984 tobacco exports were valued at Z\$282m. In 1985 tobacco production was 128,000 tonnes.

Production, 1987 in 1,000 tonnes, of maize, 1,094; wheat, 215; sorghum, 53; barley, 30; millet, 81; soyabeans, 104; seed cotton, 300; fruit, 132.

Livestock (1987): Cattle, 5.5m.; pigs, 180,000; sheep, 570,000; goats, 1.6m.

**Fisheries.** Trout is farmed in Nyanga, prawns at Lake Kariba and bream at Mount Hampden near Harare to supplement supplies of fish caught in dams and lakes. In 1986 trout were caught at the rate of 200,000 a year, and the planned production of bream was 400-500 tonnes a year.

## INDUSTRY AND TRADE

**Industry.** Metal products account for over 20% of industrial output. Important agro-industries include food processing, textiles, furniture and other wood products.

**Labour.** The labour force (1985) was 2.8m. In 1984, 1,036,400 were employed; of whom 271,200 were in agriculture, forestry and fishing and 166,300 in manufacturing.

**Commerce.** The Customs Agreement with the Republic of South Africa was extended in March, 1982 pending further discussion. Zimbabwe has also entered into Trade Agreements with Zambia, Mozambique, Tanzania, Angola and Swaziland and with countries outside Africa. Imports and exports (in Z\$1,000):

	1983	1984	1985	1986	1987
Imports	1,061,600	1,200,700	1,447,000	1,640,482	1,741,750
Exports	1,150,200	1,453,000	1,545,343	1,699,764	1,757,895

Principal imports in 1984 (in Z\$1,000): Machinery and transport equipment, 373,550; petroleum products, 256,924; chemicals, 178,111; manufactured goods, 177,851; miscellaneous manufactured goods, 78,615.

Principal exports in 1986 (in Z\$1,000): Unmanufactured tobacco, 238,213; ferro-alloys, 210,079; asbestos, 82,741; cotton lint, 130,548.

In 1986, 12.4% of exports (excluding gold) went to the Republic of South Africa, 12.3% to UK, 8.5% to Federal Republic of Germany, 5.8% to Italy, 5.7% to USA and 4.6% to Japan, while the Republic of South Africa provided 21.4% of imports, UK 10.9%, Federal Republic of Germany 9.9%, USA 8.2%, Japan 4.3% and Italy 4.3%.

Total trade between Zimbabwe and UK (British Department of Trade returns, in £1,000 sterling):

	1984	1985	1986	1987	1988
Imports to UK	74,090	90,398	80,702	79,771	86,268
Exports and re-exports from UK	66,636	73,571	61,937	63,181	58,077

**Tourism.** In 1987, 454,779 tourists visited Zimbabwe. The main tourist areas are Victoria Falls, Kariba, Hwange, the Eastern Highlands and Great Zimbabwe. The Zimbabwe Tourist Development Corporation is in Harare and Victoria Falls.

## COMMUNICATIONS

**Roads.** The Ministry of Transport is responsible for the construction and maintenance of all State roads and bridges, and all road bridges outside municipal areas. The Ministry offers advice and help on roads and bridges, through Provincial Road Engineers, to district councils. State roads are those connecting all the main centres of population, international routes, major links in the system and main roads serving rural communities. The total length of roads is approximately 85,237 km including surfaced, 12,000; gravel, 46,187; earth, 27,000.

Number of motor vehicles, 1984: Passenger cars, 237,128; commercial vehicles, 17,058; motor cycles, 24,347; trailers, 33,227; tractors, 5,695.

**Railways.** Zimbabwe is served by the National Railways of Zimbabwe, which connect with the South African Railways to give access to the South African ports; with the Mozambique Railways to give access to the ports of Beira and Maputo; and with the Zambia railway system. In 1985 there were 3,394 km (1,067 mm gauge) of railways including 311 km electrified. In the year ending 30 June 1986 National Railways of Zimbabwe carried 14m. tonnes of freight and 2.7m. passengers.

**Aviation.** Air Zimbabwe operates domestic services and also regular flights to Zambia, Kenya, Malawi, Botswana and South Africa, and to London, Frankfurt and Athens in Europe and also to Perth and Sydney in Australia in association with Qantas. The country is also served by British Airways, Kenya Airways, Ethiopian Airlines, Air Tanzania, Air Malawi, Zambian Airways, Balkan Bulgarian Airlines, Mozambique Airlines, South African Airways, Air Botswana, the Royal Swazi Airlines, TAP Air Portugal, Qantas, Lesotho Airways and Air India. Services by KLM, Swissair and UTA were temporarily suspended in 1986. In 1985, 660,858,000 passenger-km were flown by Air Zimbabwe.

**Shipping.** Zimbabwe outlets to the sea are Maputo and Beira in Mozambique, Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania and the South African ports.

**Post and Broadcasting.** At 31 Aug. 1986 there were 170 full post offices, 47 postal telegraph agencies and 86 postal agencies. At 30 June 1986 there were 251,344 telephones in Zimbabwe served by 96 exchanges; 2,102 telex connexions, served by 2 telex exchanges. Zimbabwe Broadcasting Corporation is an independent statutory body broadcasting a general service in English, Shona, N'debele, Nyanja, Tonga and Kalanga. There are 3 national semi-commercial services, Radio 1, 2 and 3, in English, Shona and N'debele. Radio 4 transmits formal and informal educational programmes. Zimbabwe Television broadcasts 2 channels 95 hours a week via 11 transmitters. In June 1986 there were 130,500 television and 450,000 radio licences.

## JUSTICE, RELIGION, EDUCATION AND WELFARE

**Justice.** The general common law of Zimbabwe is the Roman Dutch law as it applied in the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope on 10 June, 1891, as subsequently modified by statute. Provision is made by statute for the application of African customary law by all courts in appropriate cases.

The Supreme Court consists of the Chief Justice and at least two (in 1985 there were three) permanent Supreme Court judges. It is Zimbabwe's final court of appeal. It exercises appellate jurisdiction in appeals from the High Court and other courts and tribunals; its only original jurisdiction is that conferred on it by the Constitution to enforce the protective provisions of the Declaration of Rights. The Court's permanent seat is in Harare but it sits regularly in Bulawayo also.

The High Court is also headed by the Chief Justice, supported by the Judge President and an appropriate number of High Court judges. It has full original jurisdiction, in both Civil and Criminal cases, over all persons and all matters in Zimbabwe. The Judge President is in charge of the Court, subject to the directions of the Chief Justice. The Court has permanent seats in both Harare and Bulawayo and sittings are held three times a year in three other principal towns.

Regional courts, established in Harare and Bulawayo but also holding sittings in



other centres, exercise a solely criminal jurisdiction that is intermediate between that of the High Court and the Magistrates' courts.

Magistrates' courts, established in twenty centres throughout the country, and staffed by full-time professional magistrates, exercise both civil and criminal jurisdiction.

The tribal courts and district commissioners' courts of colonial days were abolished in 1981, to be replaced by a system of primary courts, consisting of village courts and community courts. By 1982 1,100 village and 50 community courts had been established. Village courts are presided over by officers selected for the purpose from the local population, sitting with two assessors. They deal with certain classes of civil cases only and have jurisdiction only where African customary law is applicable. Community courts are presided over by presiding officers in full-time public service who may be assisted by assessors. They have jurisdiction in all civil cases determinable by African customary law and also deal with appeals from village courts. They also have limited criminal jurisdiction in respect of petty offences against the general law.

**Religion.** The largest religious groups are the Anglicans and Roman Catholics. Other denominations include Presbyterians, the Methodist Church in Zimbabwe and the United Methodist Church. Islam, Hinduism and traditional indigenous religions are represented.

**Education.** Education is compulsory. All primary schools offer free tuition; government secondary schools charge from Z\$8-Z\$25 per term. All instruction is given in English. There are also over 3,800 private primary schools and over 950 private secondary schools, all of which must be registered by the Ministry of Education. In 1988 there were 2,220,967 pupils at primary schools and 653,353 pupils at secondary schools.

There are 10 teachers' training colleges, 8 of which are in association with the University of Zimbabwe. In addition, there are 4 special training centres for teacher trainees in the Zimbabwe Integrated National Teacher Education Course. In 1988 there were 15,750 students enrolled at teachers' training colleges (1987), 1,002 students at agricultural colleges and 25,104 students at technical colleges.

The University of Zimbabwe provides facilities for higher education. In 1988 the total enrolment of students in the 9 Faculties of Agriculture, Arts, Commerce and Law, Education, Engineering, Medicine, Science, Social Studies and Veterinary Science, was 7,699.

**Health.** In 1985 there were 162 hospitals, 1,062 static rural clinics and health centres and 32 mobile rural clinics operated by the Ministry of Health. All mission health institutions get 100% government grants-in-aid for recurrent expenditure. There is a medical school attached to the University of Zimbabwe in Harare, four government training schools attached to the 4 central hospitals for training state registered nurses, 14 training schools for medical assistants out of which 11 are administered by missions, and two for training maternity assistants, health assistants/health inspectors.

**Social Services.** It is a statutory responsibility of the government in many areas to provide: Processing and administration of war pensions and old age pensions; protection of children; administration of remand, probation and correctional institutions; registration and supervision of welfare organisations.

## DIPLOMATIC REPRESENTATIVES

Of Zimbabwe in Great Britain (Zimbabwe Hse., 429 Strand, London, WC2R 0SA)  
*High Commissioner:* Dr Herbert M. Murerwa (accredited 1 March 1984).

Of Great Britain in Zimbabwe (Stanley Hse., Stanley Ave., Harare)  
*High Commissioner:* Michael Ramsay Melhuish, CMG.

Of Zimbabwe in the USA (2852 McGill Terr., NW, Washington, D.C., 20008)  
*Chargé d'Affaires:* Jonathan Wutaunashe.

Of the USA in Zimbabwe (172 Rhodes Ave., Harare)

*Ambassador:* James Wilson Rawlings.

Of Zimbabwe to the United Nations

*Ambassador:* Dr Stanley Mudenge.

### Further Reading

*Statistical Information:* The Central Statistical Office, PO Box 8063, Causeway, Harare, Zimbabwe, originated in 1927 as the Southern Rhodesian Government Statistical Bureau. Ten years later its name was changed to Department of Statistics, and in 1948 it assumed its present title when it took over responsibility for certain Northern Rhodesian and Nyasaland statistics (which it relinquished in Dec. 1963 on the dissolution of the Federation). It publishes *Monthly Digest of Statistics*.

Akers, M., *Encyclopaedia Rhodesia*. Harare, 1973

Caute, D., *Under the Skin: The Death of White Rhodesia*. London, 1983

Davies, D. K., *Race Relations in Rhodesia*. London, 1975

Keppel-Jones, A., *Rhodes and Rhodesia: The White Conquest of Zimbabwe, 1884–1902*. Univ. of Natal Press, 1983

Linden, I., *The Catholic Church and the Struggle for Zimbabwe*. London, 1980

Martin, D. and Johnson, P., *The Struggle for Zimbabwe*. London, 1981.—*Destructive Engagement*. Harare, 1986

Meredith, M., *The Past is Another Century: Rhodesia 1890–1979*. London, 1979

Morris-Jones, W. H., (ed.) *From Rhodesia to Zimbabwe*. London, 1980

Nkomo, J., *Nkomo: The Story of My Life*. London, 1984

O'Meara, P., *Rhodesia: Racial Conflict or Co-Existence*. Cornell Univ. Press, 1975

Pollak, K. and Pollak, O. B., *Rhodesia/Zimbabwe* [Bibliography] Oxford and Santa Barbara, 1979

Schatzberg, M. G., *The Political Economy of Zimbabwe*. New York, 1984

Stoneham, C., *Zimbabwe's Inheritance*. London, 1982

Thornycroft, P., *A Field for Investment*. Harare, annual

Verrier, A., *The Road to Zimbabwe, 1890–1980*. London, 1986

Wiseman, H. and Taylor, A. M., *From Rhodesia to Zimbabwe: The Politics of Transition*. Elmsford, N.Y., 1981

*Reference Library:* National Archives of Zimbabwe, PO Box 8043, Causeway, Harare.





# PLACE AND INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS INDEX

*Italicised page numbers refer to extended entries*

- Aachen, 535, 543, 558  
Aalborg, 416, 424, 426  
Aalsmeer, 899  
Aalst, 195  
Aargau, 1164, 1166  
Aarhus, 416, 424, 426  
Aba, 942  
Abaco, 175  
Abadán, 706–7, 709  
Abaing, 777  
Abakan, 1260  
Abancay, 996  
Abaringa, 777  
Abastuman, 1268  
Abbotsford, 306  
Abchê, 346, 348  
Abemama, 777  
Abengourou, 391  
Abeokuta, 942  
Aberdeen (Hong Kong), 611  
Aberdeen (S.D.), 1529  
Aberdeen (U.K.), 1299,  
1300, 1302, 1347–8  
Aberystwyth, 1347–8  
Abha, 1057, 1062  
Abidjan, 391, 393–4  
Abilene (Tex.), 1533,  
1535  
Abirkateib, 1137  
Abkhazia, 1269  
Ábo, 475, 481  
Aboisso, 391  
Abomey, 208, 210  
Abuzzi, 742, 744  
Abqaiq, 1059, 1061  
Abu Dhabi, 1290–1,  
1294  
Abu Hamad, 1138  
Abuja, 943  
Abu Madi, 450  
Abu Qir, 449–50  
Abu Zabad, 1138  
Abyan, 1598–9  
Açaba, 855  
Acacjutla, 456–7  
Acapulco de Juárez, 863  
Acariagua, 1576, 1580  
Acarnania, 571  
Accra, 563–4, 566  
Aceh, 699, 701, 704  
Achtarspelen, 899  
Acklins Island, 175  
Aconagua, 349  
Acre (Brazil), 229, 234  
Ada (Okla.), 1517  
Adamaoua, 265  
Adamstown, 1008  
Adana, 1206–7  
Addis Ababa, 462–3,  
465–6  
Ad-Diwaniyah, 712  
Adelaide, 143, 147, 97–8  
Adélie Land, 125,  
511–12  
Aden, 29, 1597–9  
Adilabad, 653  
Adiyaman, 1206  
Adjaria, 1269  
Ado-Ekiti, 942  
Adola, 464  
Adoni, 653  
Adrar (Algeria), 74  
Adrar (Mauritania), 855  
Adventure, 595  
Adygei, 1251, 1259  
Adzopé, 391  
Aegean Islands, 572, 574  
Aetolia and Acarnania,  
571  
Afam, 944  
Afghanistan, 48, 63–7  
Afyonkarahisar, 1206  
Agadéz, 939–40  
Agadir, 878–9, 881  
Agaleta, 858  
Agaña, 1553  
Agartala, 652, 688–9  
Agatti, 697  
Agboville, 391  
Aghion Oros, 572  
Aghios Nikolaos, 572  
Agigea, 1037  
Agin-Buryata, 1251,  
1260  
Aginskoe, 1260  
Agona Swedru, 563  
Agra, 631, 662, 690  
Ağrı, 1026  
Agualva-Cacem, 1019  
Aguascalientes, 862–3  
Ahmadi, 790  
Ahmedabad, 631, 649,  
652, 659–61  
Ahmednagar, 672  
Ahuachapán, 454  
Ahuroa, 920  
Ahváz, 706–7  
Ahenanmaa, 474  
Ain Chok-Hay Hassani,  
878  
Ain Defla, 74  
Ain Téouchent, 74  
Ajoun el Atrous, 857  
Aïr, 940–1  
Airdrie, 299, 300  
Aisén, 349, 354  
Aitutaki, 931–2  
Aix-en-Provence, 485,  
490  
Aizawl, 652, 676  
Ajaccio, 484  
Ajdabiya, 810  
Ajman, 1290, 1292–3  
Ajmer, 631, 662, 683  
Akashat, 715  
Akashi, 758  
Akershus, 948  
Akhaia, 571  
Akhali-Antoni, 1269  
Akita, 758  
Akjoujt, 856  
Akola, 672–3  
Akosombo, 565  
Akouta, 939–40  
Akranes, 623  
Akron (Oh.), 1376,  
1512, 1514  
Aksu, 1280  
Aksum, 462  
Aktyubinsk, 1223, 1243,  
1280  
Akure, 943  
Akureyri, 623, 627  
Akyab, 254, 257  
Al Aaiún, 878, 1126  
Alabama, 1374, 1384–5,  
1404, 1406, 1425–7  
Alagoas, 229  
Al Ain, 1293  
Alajuela, 386, 389  
Al-Amarah, 712  
Alamosa (Colo.), 1440  
Al-Anbar, 712  
Åland, 474  
Al-Arish, 447  
Alaska, 1372, 1374,  
1384–8, 1406, 1417,  
1427–30  
Al-Asnam, 74  
Alava, 1114–16  
Alaverdi, 1271  
Alba, 1032  
Albacete, 1115, 1125  
Al-Bahr al-Ahmar, 447  
Alba Iulia, 1032, 1038  
Albania, 47–8, 68–73,  
1606  
Albany (Australia), 161  
Albany (Ga.), 1449  
Albany (N.Y.), 1376,  
1504, 1506  
Albany, (Oreg.), 1518  
Al-Basrah, 712–13  
Al-Bayadh, 74  
Alberta, 270–3, 283–5,  
291–2, 294,  
299–302, 332  
Albertirsa, 617  
Albina, 1142  
Al-Boulaida, 74, 78  
Albuquerque (N. Mex.),  
1376, 1501, 1503  
Albury, 130, 154, 157  
Alcalá de Henares,  
1115, 1125  
Alcorcón, 1115  
Aldabra, 238, 1067  
Alderney, 1300, 1367–8,  
1370, 1371  
Alegranza, 1115  
Aleppo, 1175, 1177–8  
Alessandria, 742  
Ålesund, 949  
Alexander Hamilton  
Airport, 1564  
Alexandria (Egypt),  
447–8, 452  
Alexandria (Romania),  
1033  
Alexandria (Va.), 1376,  
1388, 1540  
Alexandroupolis, 572  
Algarve, 1023  
Algéciras, 1115  
Algeria, 45, 74–7  
Al-Ghurdaqah, 447  
Algiers, 74–6, 78  
Al-Hillal, 712  
Al-Hoceima, 878  
Alhucemas, 1115  
Alicante, 1115, 1121,  
1125  
Alice Springs, 112,  
122–4  
ALIDE, 54  
Aligarh, 631, 650, 690  
Ali-Sabieh, 431  
Al Jadida, 879  
Al-Jawf, 1057  
Al-Kharjah, 447  
Al-Kharj, 1057  
Al-Khobar, 1057  
Al-Khour, 1028  
Alkmaar, 899  
Al-Kut, 712  
Allahabad, 631, 638,  
649, 690  
Allentown (Pa.), 1376,  
1521  
Allerdale, 1297  
Alma-Ata, 1223, 1241,  
1243, 1248, 1279  
Almada, 1019, 1024  
Al-Mahra, 1598  
Aimelo, 899  
Almere, 899  
Almería, 1114–15  
Almirante, 981  
Almirante Brown, 91  
Al-Mobarraz, 1057  
Al-Muthanna, 712  
Alo, 518  
Al-Obeid, 1135, 1138  
Alofi (Niue), 932  
Alofi (Wallis and  
Futuna), 517  
Alor Setar, 830  
Alotau, 984  
Al-Oued, 74  
Alphen aan den Rijn,  
899  
Alphonse Island, 1067  
Al-Qadiri, 1135  
Al-Qadisiyah, 712  
Alsace, 484  
Al-Shargiya, 1177  
Altai, 1251  
Alta Verapaz, 581, 583  
Al Taweela, 1292  
Altos (Pa.), 1521  
Alto Paraguay, 990  
Alto Paraná, 990, 994  
Ålvsborg, 1148  
Al-Wadi al Jadid, 447  
Amadora, 1019  
Amagasaki, 758  
Amambay, 990  
Amapá, 229, 231, 235  
Amarillo (Tex.), 1376,  
1533  
Amarkantak, 670  
Amarpur, 688  
Amasya, 1206  
Amatuku, 1217  
Amazonas (Brazil), 229,  
234  
Amazonas (Colombia)  
374  
Amazonas (Peru), 996  
Amazonas (Venezuela),  
1576, 1579  
Ambala, 661–2, 680  
Ambato, 441  
Ambatondrazaka, 825  
Amber Valley, 1297  
Amboina, 700, 703  
Ambouli, 432

- Ambrym, 1570  
 American Samoa, 1375,  
     1385, 1387, 1557-9  
 Amersfoort, 899  
 Ames (Ia.), 1461-2  
 Amherst (Canada), 317  
 Amherst (Mass.), 1478  
 Amiens, 485  
 Amílcar Cabral Airport,  
     339  
 Amindivi Islands, 697  
 Amini, 697  
 Amirante Isles, 1067  
 Amman, 767, 770  
 Ampang, 836  
 Amphissa, 571  
 Amravati, 631, 672-3  
 Amreli, 659  
 Amritsar, 631, 680-1  
 Amstelveen, 899  
 Amsterdam, 898-900,  
     907  
 Amsterdam Island,  
     511-12  
 Amstetten, 169  
 Am Timan, 346  
 Amur, 1251  
 Anaconda (Mont.), 1489  
 Anadyr, 1243, 1260  
 Anaheim (Calif.), 1376,  
     1435  
 Anambra, 942  
 Anantapur, 653, 655  
 Ancash, 996  
 Anchorage (Ak.), 1376,  
     1428-30  
 Anchorage Island, 931  
 Ancon, 981  
 Ancona, 742, 745, 751  
 Andalusia, 1114-15,  
     1118  
 Andaman and Nicobar  
     Islands, 631, 634,  
     648, 652, 692,  
     693-4  
 Andean Group, 45, 54  
 Anderlecht, 195  
 Anderson (Ind.), 1459  
 Andhra Pradesh, 630,  
     634, 642, 648, 652,  
     653-5, 686  
 Andizhan, 1223, 1238,  
     1283-4  
 Andorra, 79-80  
 Andorre-la-Vieille, 79,  
     80  
 Andros, 175  
 Androth, 697  
 Anegada, 1589  
 Anébo, 1190, 1192  
 Aneityum, 1570  
 Angarsk, 1223  
 Angeles, 1002  
 Angers, 485, 497  
 An Giang, 1584  
 Angkor, 261  
 Anglican Communion,  
     1340-1, 1342  
 Angoche, 884  
 Angola, 48, 81-4  
 Angoulême, 485  
 Anguilla, 30, 55, 85-6  
 Angul, 679  
 Angus, 1300  
 Anhui, 356, 361  
 Anjouan, 379, 381  
 Ankara, 1206-7,  
     1211-12  
 Annaba, 74-5, 78  
 An-Najaf, 712  
 Annamalai Nagar, 688  
 Annandale and Eskdale,  
     1299  
 Annapolis (Md.),  
     1473-4  
 Ann Arbor (Mich.),  
     1376, 1479  
 An-Nasiriyah, 712  
 Annecy, 485  
 Annobón, 459  
 Ansari Nagar, 696  
 Anshan, 356, 361  
 Antalya, 1206-7  
 Antananarivo, 822,  
     824-5  
 Antarctic  
     -Argentine, 90-1  
     -Australian, 30, 97,  
     125-6  
     -British, 30, 238, 469  
     -Chilean, 349  
     -French, 511-12  
     -New Zealand, 30,  
     930  
     -Norwegian, 969  
 Antigua (Guatemala),  
     581  
 Antigua and Barbuda,  
     28, 29, 55, 87-9  
 Antioquia, 373, 376  
 Antipodes Islands, 929  
 Antofagasta, 221-2,  
     349-50, 353-4  
 Antrim, 1357  
 Antseranana, 822  
 Antwerp, 194-5, 201-2  
 Anuradhapura, 1127  
 Anzoátegui, 1576, 1579  
 Aoba, 1570  
 Aomori, 758  
 Aorangi, 916  
 Aotearoa, 926  
 Apeldoorn, 899  
 Apia, 1591, 1593  
 Apoera, 1142  
 Apollima, 1591  
 Appenzell, 1164,  
     1166-7  
 Appleton (Wisc.), 1548  
 Apure, 1576  
 Apurimac, 996  
 Aqaba, 767-8, 770  
 Aquitaine, 484  
 Arab Common Market,  
     57  
 Aracajú, 229-30  
 Arad, 1032  
 Aragón, 1114-16  
 Aragua, 1576, 1579  
 Arak, 706-7  
 Aranuki, 777  
 Ararat (Australia), 154  
 Arauca, 373  
 Araucanía, 349  
 Arawa, 984  
 Arba Minch, 463  
 Arcadia, 571  
 Archangel, *see*  
     Arkhangelsk  
 Archnan, 1244  
 Ardabil, 707  
 Ards, 1357  
 Arecibo, 1560  
 Arequipa, 996  
 Arezzo, 747, 751  
 Argenteuil, 485  
 Argentia, 316  
 Argentina, 90-6, 126,  
     467, 992  
 Arges, 1032, 1035  
 Argolis, 571  
 Argostolion, 571  
 Argyll and Bute, 1300  
 Arica, 220-2, 349, 996  
 Arima, 1197  
 Arizona, 1374, 1385,  
     1402, 1404, 1430-2  
 Arkansas, 1374, 1385-6,  
     1404, 1432-5  
 Arkhangelsk, 1223-4,  
     1243-4, 1251  
 Arlington (Tex.), 1376,  
     1533  
 Arlington Heights (Ill.),  
     1456  
 Arlit, 939-41  
 Arlon, 194  
 Armagh, 1357  
 Armavir, 1223, 1238  
 Armenia, 1223-4, 1239,  
     1270-1  
 Armenia (Colombia),  
     373  
 Armidale, 130  
 Arnhem, 899-900  
 Arnhem Land, 122  
 Arorae, 777  
 Arrah, 657  
 Ar-Ramadi, 712  
 Arras, 485  
 Arta, 571  
 Artigas, 1565  
 Artvin, 1206  
 Arua, 1218  
 Aruba, 901, 910-12,  
     913-14  
 Arun, 1297  
 Arunachal Pradesh, 631,  
     634, 648, 652-3,  
     655  
 Arusha, 1179  
 Arussi, 463  
 Arvada (Colo.), 1438  
 Aryanah, 1201  
 Asahikawa, 758  
 Asamankese, 563  
 Asansol, 631, 692  
 Ascension, 30, 468,  
     1046, 1047  
 ASEAN, 45, 51-2  
 Ashanti, 563  
 Ashdod, 737  
 Asheville (N.C.), 1507  
 Ashfield, 1297  
 Ashford, 1297  
 Ashkhabad, 1223,  
     1281-2  
 Ashland (Ky.), 1466  
 Ashland (Oregon), 1520  
 Ashland (Va.), 1541  
 Ashmore and Cartier  
     Islands, 30, 97,  
     128-9  
 Asimah, 767  
 Asmara, 463, 465  
 Assab, 464  
 Assahba, 1059  
 Assakan, 251  
 As-Salimiya, 790  
 Assam, 630, 632, 634,  
     642, 648, 652,  
     655-7  
 As-Samawah, 712  
 Assela, 463

- Assen, 899  
 Association of South-  
     East Asian Nations,  
     45, 51-2  
 As-Sulaymaniyah, 712  
 Assumption Island,  
     1067  
 Astrakhan, 1223, 1251  
 Aston, 1348  
 Astove, 1067  
 Asturias, 1114-15, 1118  
 Asunción, 990, 993-5  
 Aswân, 447-8, 450, 452  
 Asyût, 447, 452  
 Atacama, 349, 352  
 Atafu, 930  
 Atakora, 208  
 Atakpamé, 1190, 1192  
 Atar, 855, 857  
 Atbara, 1135, 1138  
 Athabasca, 300, 302  
 Athens (Ga.), 1450  
 Athens (Greece), 571-2,  
     576  
 Athens (Oh.), 1514  
 Athens (W. Va.), 1546  
 Athlone, 728  
 Athos, Mount 572  
 Ati, 346  
 Atiu, 931-2  
 Atizapán de Zaragoza,  
     863  
 Atlanta (Ga.), 1375,  
     1449-51  
 Atlantic City (N.J.),  
     1499  
 Atlántico (Colombia),  
     373  
 Atlántida, 602  
 Atlantique (Benin), 208  
 At-Tarf, 74  
 Attica, 571  
 At-Tur, 447  
 Auburn (Me.), 1470  
 Auburn (N.Y.), 1504  
 Auckland, 915, 918-19,  
     925-6  
 Auckland Islands, 929  
 Auderghem, 195  
 Augsburg, 535, 543, 548  
 Augusta (Italy), 746  
 Augusta (Me.), 1470  
 Aun'u, 1557, 1559  
 Aurangabad, 631, 649,  
     672-3  
 Aurora (Colo.), 1376,  
     1438  
 Aurora (Ill.), 1456  
 Aust-Agder, 948  
 Austin (Tex.), 1376,  
     1533-5  
 Australia, 28-30, 50,  
     97-125  
     -External Territories,  
     97, 125-9  
     -States, 129-68  
     -Territories, 120-5  
 Australian Antarctic  
     Territory, 30, 97,  
     125-6  
 Australian Capital  
     Territory, 97-9,  
     101, 106-7, 115,  
     120-1  
 Australind, 164  
 Austral Islands, 515  
 Austria, 40, 46-7, 58,  
     169-72

- Auvergne, 484  
 Avadh, 690  
 Avarau, 931  
 Aveiro, 1019, 1024  
 Avellaneda, 91  
 Avignon, 485  
 Avila, 1115  
 Avilés, 1121  
 Avon, 1296  
 Awassa, 463  
 Awbari, 810  
 Ayacucho, 996  
 Aydın, 1206, 1210  
 Aylesbury Vale, 1297  
 Aysén, 349, 354  
 Ayulthaya, 1184  
 Azad Kashmir, 970  
 Azárbáiján (Iran), 706,  
 709  
 Azerbaijan (USSR),  
 1223-4, 1264-6  
 Azilal, 878  
 Aziziyah, 810  
 Azogues, 441  
 Azores, 1019, 1021,  
 1023-4  
 Azraq, 769  
 Azua, 436  
 Azuay, 441  
  
 Baarle-Hertog, 194  
 Baarn, 899  
 Babahoyo, 441  
 Babanousa, 1138  
 Babelegi, 1106  
 Babelthuap, 1555  
 Babil, 712, 715  
 Bacáu, 1032, 1035  
 Bacolod, 1002  
 Bács-Kiskun, 614  
 Bac Thai, 1583  
 Badajoz, 1115, 1125  
 Badakhshan, 65  
 Badalona, 1115  
 Baden, 169  
 Badenoch and  
 Strathspey, 1299  
 Baden-Württemberg,  
 534-5, 540, 546-7  
 Badulla, 1127  
 Bafatá, 589  
 Baffin, 331  
 Bafoulabé, 847  
 Bafoussam, 265  
 Bafra, 1210  
 Baga-Nuur, 873  
 Bagdogra Airport, 685,  
 692  
 Baghdad, 712, 715  
 Baghlan, 63, 65  
 Bágmáti, 895  
 Bagram, 64  
 Baguio, 1002  
 Bahamas, 28, 29, 55,  
 175-9, 1215  
 Bahawalpur, 969  
 Bahia, 229-30, 235  
 Bahía Blanca, 91, 95  
 Bahía Las Minas, 981  
 Bahoruco, 436  
 Bahrain, 180-4  
 Bahr Dar, 463  
 Baia Mare, 1032  
 Baidoa, 1085  
 Bairnsdale, 154  
 Bait-al-Falaj, 966  
 Baja California, 862  
 Baja Verapaz, 581  
 Bajram Curri, 68  
 Bakau, 523  
 Bakersfield (Calif.), 1376  
 Bakhtárán, 706-7, 709  
 Baku, 1223, 1237-8,  
 1243, 1247, 1264-5,  
 1269  
 Bakwanga, *see* Mbuji-  
 Mayi  
 Balaju, 895  
 Balboa, 981  
 Balchik, 246  
 Bale (Ethiopia), 463  
 Bâle (Switzerland), *see*  
 Basel  
 Balearic Islands,  
 1114-16, 1118,  
 1121  
 Bali, 699-700, 704-5  
 Balikesir, 1206-7, 1210  
 Balikpapan, 700  
 Balkassar, 973  
 Balkh, 65  
 Balkhash, 1280  
 Ballarat, 153, 157  
 Ballsh, 71  
 Ballymena, 1357  
 Ballymoney, 1357  
 Balqa, 767  
 Baltimore (Md.), 1375,  
 1414, 1473-5  
 Baltistan, 970  
 Baluchistán, 968-70,  
 973  
 Bam, 250  
 Bamako, 846-8  
 Bambari, 342  
 Bamberg, 543, 548  
 Bamenda, 265  
 Bamian, 65  
 Bamingui-Bangoran,  
 342  
 Banaba, 777-8, 893  
 Banaras, 650  
 Banas Kantha, 659  
 Banat, 1038  
 Banbridge, 1357  
 Banda Aceh, 699  
 Bandarban, 185  
 Bandár-e-Abbás, 706  
 Bandar Khomeini, 709  
 Bandar Seri Begawan,  
 239, 241  
 Bandundu, 1614  
 Bandung, 700  
 Báneasa Airport, 1037  
 Banff and Buchan, 1299  
 Banfora, 250  
 Bangalore, 631, 638,  
 649, 652, 654,  
 666-7  
 Bangarem, 697  
 Bangassou, 342  
 Bangi, 837  
 Bangkok, 1184, 1187-9  
 Bangor (Me.), 1470,  
 1472  
 Bangor (UK), 1347-8  
 Bangladesh, 29, 185-90,  
 641, 656  
 Bang Pakong, 1187  
 Banguí, 342-4  
 Banja Luka, 1601  
 Banjarasin, 700  
 Banjul, 523-5  
 Ban Me Thuot, 1587-8  
 Banningvale, *see*  
 Bandundu  
 Banská Bystrica, 409  
 Banstead, 1298  
 Baqji, 363-4  
 Baoshan, 361  
 Baotou, 356, 361, 364  
 Ba'qubah, 712  
 Baquerizo Moreno, 441  
 Baracaldo, 1115  
 Barahona, 436  
 Baranovich, 1264  
 Baranya, 614  
 Barauni, 657  
 Barbados, 28, 29, 55,  
 191-3  
 Barbuda, 87  
 Barca Airport, 413  
 Barcelona (Spain),  
 1115-16, 1119,  
 1121, 1123-5  
 Barcelona (Venezuela),  
 1576  
 Barclayville, 806  
 Bardo, 1201  
 Bareilly, 631  
 Barentsoya, 960  
 Bargi, 670  
 Bari, 742, 751  
 Bari Brahmará, 665  
 Barima, 593  
 Barinas, 1576  
 Barisal, 185  
 Barking and Dagenham,  
 1299  
 Barlavento, 337  
 Barnaul, 1223, 1241  
 Barnett, 1299  
 Barneveld, 899  
 Barsley, 1297  
 Baroda, 660  
 Barquisimeto, 1576,  
 1580  
 Barranquilla, 373-4,  
 377  
 Barre (Vt.), 1538  
 Barreiro, 1019  
 Baruta, 1576  
 Basel, 1164-6, 1172-3  
 Bashkiria, 1251, 1252  
 Basildon, 1297  
 Basilicata, 742, 744  
 Basingstoke and Deane,  
 1297  
 Basque Country, The,  
 114-16, 1118  
 Basra, 715  
 Bassar, 1190  
 Bassas da India, 506  
 Bassein, 254, 257  
 Basse-Kotto, 342  
 Basse-Normandie, 484  
 Basse-Terre  
 (Guadeloupe),  
 500-2  
 Basseterre (St  
 Christopher-Nevis),  
 1043-4  
 Bassettlaw, 1297  
 Bass Strait Islands, 155  
 Bas-Zaire, 1614  
 Bata, 459, 461  
 Batangos, 1002  
 Bath, 1348  
 Batha, 346  
 Bathurst (Australia), 130  
 Bathurst (Canada), 309  
 Batman, 1209  
 Batna, 74, 78  
 Batokunku, 524  
 Baton Rouge (La.), 1376,  
 1468  
 Battambang, 261-2, 264  
 Batticaloa, 1127  
 Batumi, 1238, 1265,  
 1267, 1269  
 Bat-Yam, 733  
 Bauchi, 942  
 Bavaria, 534-5, 540,  
 547-9  
 Bawku, 566  
 Bayamón, 1560  
 Bayda, 1595  
 Bay of Plenty, 915  
 Bayonne (France), 485  
 Bayonne (N.J.), 1499  
 Bayreuth, 543, 548  
 Bazar, 1286  
 Bazéga, 250  
 Beardsden and Milngavie,  
 1300  
 Beau Bassin-Rose Hill,  
 858  
 Beaufort, 839  
 Beaumont (Tex.), 1376,  
 1533, 1535  
 Beaverton (Oreg.), 1518  
 Béchar, 74  
 Bedford (Canada), 317  
 Bedfordshire, 1296-8  
 Bedworth, 1298  
 Beef Island Airport,  
 1590  
 Beersheba, 732-3  
 Behera, 447  
 Beijing, 355-7, 363, 366  
 Beira, 884, 886-7  
 Beirut, 798-802  
 Beja (Portugal), 1019  
 Béja (Tunisia), 1201,  
 1203  
 Béjaia, 74, 76  
 Békés, 614  
 Békéscsaba, 614  
 Belait, 239  
 Belaya Tserkov, 1223  
 Belém, 229-30  
 Bélep Archipelago, 513  
 Belfast, 1302, 1357,  
 1363-4  
 Belgaum, 631, 666-7  
 Belgium, 36, 39, 40-2,  
 126, 194-203, 818,  
 906  
 Belgorod, 1223, 1240,  
 1251  
 Belgrade, 1601, 1606-7,  
 1612  
 Bélinga, 521  
 Belize, 29, 55, 204-7,  
 1311, 1315  
 Belize City, 204, 206-7  
 Bellary, 666-7  
 Bellevue (Nebr.), 1491,  
 1493  
 Bellevue (Wash.), 1542  
 Bellingham (Wash.),  
 1542  
 Bellona Island, 1082  
 Belluno, 751  
 Bellville, 1097  
 Belmopan, 204, 206-7  
 Belo Horizonte, 229-30,  
 235-6  
 Beloit (Wisc.), 1548  
 Belonia, 688  
 Belorussia, 1223-5,  
 1247, 1263-4



- Beloyarsk, 1237  
 Beltsk'y, 1272  
 Belur, 692  
 Bemidji (Minn.), 1483  
 Benalla, 154, 157  
 Bendel, 942  
 Bendery, 1272  
 Bendigo, 153-4, 157  
 Benelux Economic Union, 199, 820, 906  
 Bengal, East, *see* Bangladesh  
 Bengal, West, *see* West Bengal  
 Benghazi, 810, 812-14  
 Bengkulu, 699  
 Bengo, 82  
 Benguela, 81-3  
 Ben Gurion Airport, 737  
 Benha, 447  
 Beni, 218, 221  
 Beni Mellal, 878-9  
 Benin, 208-11  
 Benin City (Nigeria), 942  
 Beni Suef, 447  
 Ben Msik-Sidi Othmane, 878  
 Bénoué, 265  
 Ben Schoeman Airport, 1095, 1111  
 Ben Slimane, 878  
 Bensonville, 806  
 Ben Tre, 1584  
 Benue, 942  
 Bequia, 1050-2  
 Berat, 68  
 Berazategui, 91  
 Berber, 1138  
 Berbera, 1085, 1087  
 Berbérati, 342, 344  
 Berbice, 592-3  
 Berchem, 195  
 Berchem Ste Agathe, 195  
 Berea (Ky.), 1467  
 Berezni, 1223  
 Bergamo, 742, 747, 751  
 Bergen, 949  
 Bergen op Zoom, 899  
 Bergisch Gladbach, 535  
 Bergslagen, 1154  
 Berhampur, 678, 680  
 Berkeley (Calif.), 1376, 1437  
 Berkshire, 1296  
 Berlin (Germany), 526, 528, 549  
 Berlin (N.H.), 1497  
 Berlin, East, 527, 531, 549  
 Berlin, West, 534-6, 540, 543, 549-50, 1311  
 Bermejo, 222  
 Bermo, 657  
 Bermuda, 30, 212-14  
 Bern(e), 1164-6, 1168, 1172-3  
 Berri, 1059  
 Berry Islands, 175  
 Bertoua, 265  
 Beru, 777  
 Berwickshire, 1299  
 Besançon, 484-5  
 Beshumi, 1269  
 Best, 899  
 Bethesda (Md.), 1473  
 Bethlehem (Pa.), 1521, 1523  
 Béthune, 485  
 Betio, 778-9  
 Betla, 658  
 Beuningen, 899  
 Beverley, 1297  
 Beverwijk, 899-900  
 Bex, 1169  
 Bexley, 1299  
 Béziers, 485  
 Bhádgaon, 894  
 Bhadravati, 667  
 Bhagalpur, 658  
 Bhaktapur, 894  
 Bhandara, 672  
 Bharuch, 659  
 Bhatinda, 680  
 Bhavnagar, 631, 659-61  
 Bheemavaram, 653  
 Bheemunipatnam, 654  
 Bheri, 895  
 Bhilai, 670-1  
 Bhir, 672  
 Bhiwani, 661  
 Bhopal, 631, 652, 670-1  
 Bhubaneswar, 652, 678-80  
 Bhuj, 660  
 Bhuntar Airport, 663  
 Bhután, 215-17  
 Biała Podlaska, 1010  
 Białystok, 1010  
 Biakouma, 391  
 Bicol, 1002  
 Bidar, 653, 666  
 Biddeford (Me.), 1472  
 Bié, 82  
 Biel, 1165  
 Bielefeld, 535, 543, 558  
 Bielsko-Biala, 1010  
 Big Bend, 1144  
 Bihar, 630, 633-4, 641-2, 648, 652, 657-8  
 Biharsharif, 657  
 Bihor, 1032  
 Biisk, 1223  
 Bijagos, 589  
 Bijapur, 666  
 Bikaner, 631, 683  
 Bilaspur, 669-71  
 Bilbao, 1115, 1119, 1121, 1124-5  
 Bilecik, 1206  
 Billings (Mont.), 1489, 1491  
 Biloxi (Miss.), 1484  
 Biltine, 346  
 Bimini Islands, 175  
 Bin Arus, 1201  
 Bindura, 1623  
 Binghamton (N.Y.), 1504  
 Bingöl, 1206  
 Binh Tri Thien, 1583  
 Bintulu Port, 842  
 Biobio, 349  
 Bioko, 459-61  
 Biombo, 589  
 Bir Ali, 1599  
 Birao, 342  
 Biratnagar, 894  
 Bird Island, 1113  
 Bird Rock, 1044  
 Birganj, 896  
 Birgung, 896  
 Birkama, 523  
 Birmingham (Ala.), 1376, 1425-6  
 Birmingham (UK), 1297, 1302, 1348  
 Birnie, 777  
 Birobijan, 1259  
 Bisho, 1110-11  
 Biskra, 74, 75  
 Bismarck (N.D.), 1510  
 Bissalanca Airport, 591  
 Bissau, 589, 591  
 Bistrita, 1032  
 Bistrita-Násaud, 1032  
 Bitlis, 1206  
 Bitolj, 1601  
 Bitra, 697  
 Biyagama, 1131  
 Bizalpara, 896  
 Bizerta, 1201, 1203-4  
 Björneborg, 475  
 Björnaya, 960-1  
 B. J. Vorster Airport, 1095  
 Blackburn, 1297  
 Blackburne Airport, 877  
 Blackpool, 1297  
 Blagoevgrad, 243  
 Blagoveshchensk, 1223  
 Blantyre, 826-7  
 Blekinge, 1148  
 Blenheim (New Zealand), 916  
 Blida, *see* Boulaida  
 Blitta, 1192  
 Bloemfontein, 1089, 1095, 1097  
 Bloomfield (N.J.), 1499  
 Bloomington (Ind.), 1450, 1482  
 Blowing Point, 86  
 Bluefield (W. Va.), 1546  
 Bluefields, 934, 937  
 Blue Nile Province (Sudan), 1137  
 Bo, 1070, 1073-4  
 Boali, 342  
 Boa Vista (Brazil), 229  
 Boa Vista (Cape Verde), 337-8  
 Bobo-Dioulasso, 250, 252  
 Bobonong, 224  
 Bobruisk, 1223, 1263  
 Boca Raton, 1448  
 Bocas del Toro, 978  
 Bochum, 535, 543, 558  
 Bodh Gaya, 658  
 Bodo, 949  
 Boé, 590  
 Boeotia, 571  
 Bogor, 700  
 Bogotá, 373-4, 377-8  
 Bogra, 185  
 Bohol, 1002  
 Boise City (Id.), 1376, 1454  
 Bojador, 878  
 Bokaro Steel City, 631, 657  
 Boké, 587  
 Bol, 346  
 Bolama, 591  
 Bolama-Bijagos, 589  
 Bolgatanga, 563  
 Boliden, 1154  
 Bolívar (Colombia), 373  
 Bolívar (Ecuador), 441  
 Bolívar (Venezuela), 1576, 1579  
 Bolivia, 54, 218-23, 996  
 Bologna, 742, 751  
 Bolton, 1297  
 Bolu, 1206, 1210  
 Bolungarvik, 623  
 Bolzano, 741-2  
 Boma, 1614  
 Bombay, 631-2, 647-9, 652, 654, 672-3, 695  
 Bombo, 1218  
 Bomi, 806  
 Bonaire, 912-14  
 Bonanza, 937  
 Bonavista, 313  
 Bondoukou, 391  
 Bône, *see* Annaba  
 Bong, 806, 808  
 Bongor, 346  
 Bongouanou, 391  
 Bonin Islands, 758  
 Bonn, 534-5, 543, 558  
 Bonneville (Oreg.), 1518  
 Bonthe-Sherbro, 1073  
 Booué, 521  
 Bophuthatswana, 1091, 1105-7  
 Boquerón, 990  
 Bor, 1605  
 Bora-Bora, 515, 517  
 Borås, 1149  
 Bordeaux, 484, 486, 490, 495  
 Borders Region (Scotland), 1299  
 Bordj Bou Arreridj, 74  
 Bordo, 427  
 Borgerhout, 195  
 Borgou, 208  
 Borisov, 1264  
 Borkou-Ennedi-Tibesti, 346  
 Borlänge, 1149  
 Borne, 899  
 Bornholm, 416  
 Borno, 942  
 Borsod-Abaúj-Zemplén, 614  
 Borujerd, 707  
 Borzya, 874  
 Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1609-10  
 Bossangoa, 343  
 Boston (Mass.), 1375, 1476-8  
 Bosworth, 1297  
 Bota, 268  
 Boteti, 224  
 Botkyrka, 1149  
 Botosani, 1032  
 Botswana, 29, 224-8, 1095  
 Bottrop, 535  
 Bouafle, 391  
 Bouaké, 391, 394  
 Bouar, 342  
 Bou Arfa, 882  
 Bouches-du-Rhône, 492  
 Bouenza, 382  
 Bougie, *see* Bejaia  
 Bougouriba, 250  
 Bouira, 74  
 Boujdour, 878  
 Boulaida, 74, 78  
 Boulder (Australia), 161

- Boulder (Colo.), 1438, 1440  
 Boulemane, 878  
 Boulgou, 250  
 Boulkiemde, 250  
 Boulogne-Billancourt, 485  
 Boulogne-sur-Mer, 485  
 Boumerdes, 74, 78  
 Bouna, 391  
 Boundiali, 391  
 Bountiful (Ut.), 1536  
 Bounty Islands, 929  
 Bouden, 847  
 Bourges, 485  
 Bourgogne, 484  
 Bournemouth, 1297  
 Bouvet Island, 961  
 Bowie (Md.), 1473  
 Bowling Green (Ky.), 1466  
 Bowling Green (Oh.), 1514  
 Bostel, 899  
 Boyaca, 373  
 Boyer Ahmadi and Kohkilueh, 706  
 Bozeman (Mont.), 1489-90  
 Bozen, 741-2  
 Bozoum, 342  
 Brabant, 194  
 Bracknell, 1297, 1314, 1334  
 Bradford, 1297, 1348  
 Braga, 1019, 1024  
 Bragança, 1019  
 Bráila, 1032, 1034, 1037  
 Braintree, 1297  
 Brajrajnagar, 679  
 Brak, 813  
 Brakna, 855  
 Brandon, 306, 309  
 Brasília, 229-31, 236  
 Braşov, 1032, 1038  
 Bratislava, 408-11, 413-14  
 Bratsk, 1223  
 Braunau am Inn, 169  
 Braunschweig, 535, 543, 556  
 Brava, 337-8  
 Brazil, 126, 229-37, 992  
 Brazzaville, 382-5  
 Brechou, 1300, 1367  
 Breckland, 1297  
 Breda, 899-900  
 Brega, 812  
 Bregenz, 169  
 Bremen, 534-5, 540, 543, 550-2  
 Bremerhaven, 535, 550  
 Bremerton (Wash.), 1542  
 Brent, 1299  
 Brescia, 742, 747, 751  
 Brest (France), 485, 489  
 Brest (USSR), 1223, 1263  
 Bria, 342  
 Bridgeport (Conn.), 1376, 1441  
 Bridgetown, 191  
 Brighton, 1297  
 Brindisi, 745  
 Brisbane, 97, 98, 138  
 Bristol (Conn.), 1441  
 Bristol (Tenn.), 1531  
 Bristol (UK), 1297, 1348  
 Britain, *see* United Kingdom  
 British Antarctic Territory, 30, 238, 469  
 British Columbia, 270-3, 283-5, 291-2, 302-6, 332  
 British Indian Ocean Territory, 30, 238  
 British Virgin Islands, 30, 1589-90  
 Brittany, 484  
 Brno, 409, 413-14  
 Broadland, 1297  
 Brockton (Mass.), 1476  
 Broken Hill (Australia), 130  
 Broken Hill (Okla.), 1515  
 Bromley, 1299  
 Bromsgrove, 1297  
 Brong-Ahafo, 563  
 Bronsweeg, 1142  
 Bronx (N.Y.), 1504-5  
 Brookfield (Wisc.), 1548  
 Brookings (S.D.), 1529-30  
 Brooklyn, (N.Y.), 1504-5  
 Broxtowe, 1297  
 Bruck an der Mur, 169  
 Bruges, 194-5  
 Brummen, 899  
 Brunei, 29-30, 51, 239-42, 1311  
 Brunei Muara, 239  
 Brunsum, 899  
 Brunswick (Me.), 1472  
 Bruny Island, 150  
 Brussels, 194-5, 201-2  
 Bryansk, 1223, 1251  
 Bucaramanga, 373  
 Buchanan, 806, 808  
 Bucharest, 1032-3, 1037-8  
 Buckingham, 1348  
 Buckinghamshire, 1296  
 Bu Craa, 1126  
 Budapest, 614-16, 620-1  
 Buéa, 265  
 Buenaventura, 377  
 Buenos Aires, 90-1, 94-5  
 Buffalo (N.Y.), 1376, 1504  
 Buganda, 1218  
 Bujumbura, 258-60  
 Bukavu, 1614, 1617  
 Bukhara, 1223, 1283  
 Bukit Mertajam, 836  
 Bulawayo, 1623, 1627  
 Buldana, 672  
 Bulembo, 1111  
 Bulgaria, 47, 48, 58, 126, 243-9, 1244  
 Bulsar, 659  
 Bunbury, 161  
 Bundaberg, 138  
 Buraidah, 1057  
 Buraimi, 1293  
 Burao, 1085  
 Burdur, 1206  
 Burdwan, 691, 693  
 Burg, 531  
 Burgas, 243, 246-7  
 Burgenland, 169-70  
 Burgos, 1115  
 Burgundy, 484  
 Burhanpur, 669  
 Buriram, 1184  
 Burkina Faso, 250-3  
 Burlington (Ia.), 1461  
 Burlington (Vt.), 1538  
 Burma, 29, 254-7  
 Burnaby, 306  
 Burnie, 149  
 Burrell, 68  
 Bursa, 1206, 1210-11  
 Burundi, 258-60, 1041  
 Bury, 1297  
 Buryatia, 1247, 1251, 1252-3  
 Büschehr, 706, 709  
 Buskerud, 948  
 Busoga, 1218  
 Bussag, 1244  
 Bussam, 899  
 Butare, 1040, 1042  
 Butaritari, 777  
 Butebe, 1218  
 Butha-Buthe, 803  
 Butte (Mont.), 1489, 1491  
 Butterworth, 836  
 Butuan, 1002  
 Buyant Uhaa Airport, 874  
 Buzáu, 1032  
 Bydgoszcz, 1010, 1012  
 Byelorussia, *see* Belorussia  
 Byrnihat, 675  
 Bytom, 1010  
 Byumba, 1040  
 Caacupé, 994  
 Caaguazú, 990  
 Caazapa, 990  
 Caabñas, 454  
 Cabanatuan, 1002  
 Cabimas, 1576  
 Cabinda, 81-3  
 Cabo Delgado, 884  
 Cabora Bassa, 886  
 Čačak, 1601  
 Cáceres, 1115, 1125  
 Cacheu, 589, 591  
 CACM, 54  
 Cadiz (Philippines), 1002  
 Cádiz (Spain), 1114-15, 1119, 1125  
 Caen, 484-5  
 Cagayan de Oro, 1002  
 Cagayan Valley, 1002  
 Cagliari, 742, 747, 751  
 Aguas, 1560  
 Caicos Islands, 1214-15  
 Cairnryan, 1363  
 Cairns, 138  
 Cairo, 447-8, 452  
 Caithness, 1299  
 Cajamarca, 996  
 Čakovec, 1601  
 Calabar, 943, 945, 946  
 Calabaria, 742, 744  
 Calais, 485  
 Calama, 350  
 Calamata, 571  
 Caláraşi, 1032  
 Calbayog, 1002  
 Calcutta, 631-2, 647-9, 652, 654, 691-3  
 Caldas, 373, 376  
 Calderdale, 1297  
 Calgary, 272, 290, 299-302  
 Cali, 373-4, 377  
 Calicut, 631, 668-9  
 California, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1406, 1435-7  
 Callao, 996, 998, 1000  
 Calocan, 1002  
 Caltanissetta, 747  
 Camagüey, 395  
 Cambodia, 261-4, 1585  
 Cambridge (Md.), 1473  
 Cambridge (Mass.), 1476, 1478  
 Cambridge (UK), 1297, 1348  
 Cambridge Bay, 331  
 Cambridgeshire, 1296, 1298  
 Camden (N.J.), 1499  
 Camden (UK), 1299  
 Camerino, 751  
 Cameroon, 29, 265-9  
 Camiri, 219-20, 222  
 Camotra, 694  
 Campania, 742, 744  
 Campbell Island, 929  
 Campbellton, 309  
 Campeche, 862-3, 867  
 Campina Grande, 230  
 Campinas, 230, 236  
 Campione, 748  
 Campo, 268  
 Campo Grande, 229-30  
 Cam Ranh Bay, 1585  
 Camrose, 299, 300  
 Canada, 28, 29, 36, 39, 45, 50, 270-97  
 -Provinces, 299-331  
 -Territories, 331-6  
 Canakkale, 1206  
 Cañari, 441  
 Canary Islands, 1115-16, 1118-19, 1122, 1125  
 Canberra, 97-8, 121  
 Canea, 572  
 Canelones, 1565, 1567  
 Canendiyul, 990  
 Canillo, 80  
 Çankırı, 1206  
 Cannanore, 669  
 Cannes, 485  
 Cannon Airport (Nev.), 1495  
 Canoas, 230  
 Canouan, 1050  
 Cantabria, 1115, 1118  
 Canterbury (New Zealand), 916  
 Canterbury (UK), 1297, 1340-1  
 Can Tho, 1587  
 Canton (China), 356, 361, 363-4, 366  
 Canton (N.Y.), 1506  
 Canton (Oh.), 1512  
 Cao Bang, 1583, 1587  
 Cape Coast (Ghana), 563  
 Capelle aan den IJssel, 899  
 Cape Province, 1088, 1096, 1099-1100  
 Cape Town, 1089, 1095-7, 1100  
 Cape Verde, 337-9

- Cap Haïtien, 597, 600  
 Capital District (Mali), 846-7  
 Caprivi Strip, 889  
 Caqueta, 373  
 Carabobo, 1576  
 Caracas, 1576-7, 1580-1  
 Carajás, 234-5  
 Caranda, 220  
 Caraş-Severin, 1032  
 Carbondale (Ill.), 1458  
 Carbonear, 313  
 Carchi, 441  
 Carcross, 335  
 Cardiff, 1298, 1302, 1347-8  
 Caribbean Community, 55-6  
 Caribbean Free Trade Area, 55  
 Caribou (Me.), 1471  
 CARICOM, 55-6  
 CARIFTA, 55  
 Carinthia, 169-70  
 Caripito, 1581  
 Carlisle, 1297  
 Carlow, 717, 728  
 Carmen, 867  
 Car Nicobar, 694  
 Carolina, 1560  
 Caroline Island, 777  
 Carrasco Airport, 1568  
 Carriacou, 578-9  
 Carrickfergus, 1357  
 Carsamba, 1210  
 Carson City (Nev.), 1494, 1496  
 Cartagena (Colombia), 373, 377  
 Cartagena (Spain), 1115-16, 1119  
 Cartago, 386, 389  
 Carthage Airport, 1204  
 Cartier Island, 30, 97, 128-9  
 Carupano, 1576  
 Casablanca, 879, 881-2  
 Casablanca-Anfa, 878  
 Casanare, 373  
 Cascais, 1024  
 Caseros, 91  
 Casino, 130  
 Casper (Wyo.), 1551-2  
 Cassino, 751  
 Castel Gondolfo, 1573  
 Castellón, 1115  
 Castelo Branco, 1019  
 Castilla-La Mancha, 1115, 1125  
 Castilla-León, 1115  
 Castlegar, 306  
 Castlemaine, 154  
 Castlereagh, 1357  
 Castletown, 1365  
 Castricum, 899  
 Castries, 1048-9  
 Catalonia, 1115-16, 1118  
 Catamarca, 90, 94-5  
 Catania, 742, 751  
 Catanzaro, 742, 751  
 Catió, 591  
 Cat Island, 175  
 Catoosa (Oh.), 1516  
 Cauca, 373, 376  
 Cavan, 718  
 Cayenne, 502-4  
 Cayman Brac, 340-1  
 Cayman Islands, 30, 340-1  
 Cayo, 204  
 Ceará, 229  
 Cebu, 1002  
 Cedar City (Ut.), 1537  
 Cedar Falls (Ia.), 1461-2  
 Cedar Rapids (Ia.), 1376, 1461-2  
 Celaya, 863  
 Celebes, *see* Sulawesi  
 Cengkareng, 704  
 Central African Republic, 342-5  
 Central American Bank for Economic Integration, 602  
 Central American Common Market, 54  
 Central Department (Paraguay), 990  
 Central District (Israel), 732  
 Centrale Region (Togo), 1190  
 Central Island (Solomon Islands), 1082  
 Central Province (Kenya), 772, 774  
 Central Province (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 Central Province (Sri Lanka), 1127  
 Central Province (Uganda), 1218  
 Central Province (Zambia), 1619  
 Central Region (Ghana), 563  
 Central Region (Malawi), 826-7  
 Central Region (Scotland), 1299  
 Central Region (Sudan), 1135  
 Central Region (Thailand), 1184  
 Centre Department (Haiti), 597  
 Centre for Educational Research and Innovation, 35  
 Centre Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Centre Region (France), 484  
 Centro Sur Province (Equatorial Guinea), 459  
 CERI, 35  
 Cernovice Airport, 413  
 Cerro Colorado, 980  
 Cerro de Pasco, 996  
 Cerro-Largo, 1565  
 České Budějovice, 409  
 Cessnock, 130  
 Ceuta, 1114-15, 1118, 1122, 1125  
 Ceylon, *see* Sri Lanka  
 Chacabacare, 1197  
 Chacao, 1576  
 Chachapoyas, 996  
 Chaco (Argentina), 90  
 Chaco (Paraguay), 990, 992-5  
 Chad, 346-8  
 Chadak, 1284  
 Chadron (Nebr.), 1493  
 Chafarinas, 1115  
 Chagos Archipelago, 238, 858  
 Chahār Mahāl and Bakhtiārī, 706  
 Chai Wan, 611  
 Chalatenango, 454  
 Chalcis, 571  
 Chaman, 66  
 Chambéry, 485  
 Champagne-Ardenne, 484  
 Champasak, 797  
 Champerico, 585  
 Chanda, 672  
 Chandbali, 680  
 Chandigarh, 631, 634, 648-9, 652-3, 661-3, 680-1, 694  
 Changchun, 356, 364, 366  
 Changhwa, 368  
 Changi, 1077-9  
 Chang'ombe, 1183  
 Changsha, 356  
 Channel, 313  
 Channell Islands, 1295, 1300, 1341, 1367-71  
 Chapel Hill (N.C.), 1509  
 Chapra, 657  
 Chardzhou, 1281-2, 1284  
 Chari-Baguirmi, 346  
 Charikar, 63  
 Charity, 594  
 Charleroi, 195, 201  
 Charleston (Ill.), 1458  
 Charleston (S.C.), 1526, 1528  
 Charleston (W. Va.), 1545  
 Charlestown, 1043-4  
 Charlotte (N.C.), 1376, 1507  
 Charlotte Amalie, 1562-3  
 Charlottenburg, 549  
 Charlottesville (Va.), 1541  
 Charlottetown, 324-5  
 Charm, 1286  
 Charnwood, 1297  
 Charters Towers, 140  
 Cha Song, 788  
 Chateaubelair, 1052  
 Chatham Islands, 915, 918  
 Chattanooga (Tenn.), 1376, 1531-2  
 Cheboksary, 1223  
 Chechaouén, 878  
 Chechen-Ingush Republic, 1251, 1253  
 Cheghcherán, 63  
 Chegutú, 1623  
 Cheju, 780, 783  
 Chelif, 74  
 Chelm, 1010  
 Chelmsford, 1297  
 Chelsea, 1299  
 Chelyabinsk, 1223, 1243, 1251  
 Chemba, 663  
 Chengdu, 356, 363-4, 366  
 Cherbourg, 485, 489  
 Cherepovets, 1223  
 Cherkassy, 1223, 1261  
 Cherkessk, 1259  
 Chernigov, 1223, 1241, 1261  
 Chernobyl, 1237  
 Chernomvtsy, 1223, 1261-2  
 Chernyakhovsk, 1225  
 Cherrapunji, 632  
 Cherry Hill (N.J.), 1499  
 Cherwell, 1297  
 Chesapeake (Va.), 1376, 1540  
 Cheshire, 1296  
 Chester, 1297  
 Chesterfield, 1297  
 Chesterfield Islands, 513  
 Chestnut Hill (Mass.), 1478  
 Chetlat, 697  
 Chetumal, 862  
 Cheyenne (Wyo.), 1551-2  
 Chiang Mai, 1184, 1188-9  
 Chiapas, 862  
 Chiayi, 368  
 Chiba, 758  
 Chicago (Ill.), 1375, 1456-8  
 Chichester, 1297  
 Chichigalpa, 934  
 Chickmagalur, 666  
 Chicalayo, 996, 999  
 Chicopee (Mass.), 1476  
 Chicoutimi, 272  
 Chieti, 751  
 Chihuahua, 862-3, 865  
 Chile, 54, 126, 218, 349-54, 996  
 Chilean Antarctic Territory, 349  
 Chileka Airport, 828  
 Chilibabombwe, 1619  
 Chillagoe, 140  
 Chillán, 350  
 Chilliwalk, 306  
 Chiloe, 354  
 Chilpancingo, 862  
 Chimaltenango, 581  
 Chimboraço, 441  
 Chimu, 984  
 Chiment, 1223, 1279-80  
 Chimoio, 884  
 Chin, 254  
 China, 126, 355-72, 607, 1025-6  
 Chinandega, 934, 937  
 Chingleput, 653  
 Chingola, 1619  
 Chinhoyi, 1623  
 Chipata, 1619  
 Chippinge, 1626  
 Chirchik, 1284  
 Chiriquí, 978, 980-1  
 Chita, 1223, 1243, 1247, 1251  
 Chitaldrug, 666  
 Chitral, 66  
 Chitré, 978  
 Chittagong, 185-6, 188-90  
 Chittaranjan, 692  
 Chittoor, 653  
 Chitungwiza, 1623



- Chobe, 225, 226  
 Chocó, 373, 376  
 Choiseul, 1082  
 Cholla, 780  
 Choluteca, 602–3, 605  
 Chomutov, 412  
 Chonchu, 781  
 Chongjin, 785–6, 788  
 Chongqing, 363–4, 356–7  
 Chorley, 1297  
 Chowdwar, 679  
 Choybalsan, 874  
 Christ Church (Barbados), 193  
 Christchurch (New Zealand), 916, 925–6  
 Christiansted, 1562–3  
 Christmas Island (Australia), 30, 97, 115, 127  
 Christmas Island (Kiribati), *see* Kirimati  
 Chubu, 758  
 Chubut, 91  
 Chugoku, 758  
 Chukotka, 1251, 1260  
 Chungchong, 780  
 Chungsing, 368  
 Chuquisaca, 218  
 Chur, 1173  
 Chuvashia, 1251, 1253  
 Ciechanów, 1010  
 Ciego de Avila, 395  
 Cienfuegos, 395, 398  
 Cincinnati (Oh.), 1375, 1512  
 Cirebon, 700  
 Ciskei, 1091, 1110–12  
 Ciudad Bolívar, 1576–7, 1581  
 Ciudad Guyana, 1576  
 Ciudad Juárez, 863  
 Ciudad Madero, 863  
 Ciudad Obregón, 863  
 Ciudad Real, 1115, 1125  
 Ciudad Victoria, 862–3  
 Clackmannan, 1299  
 Clare, 717  
 Claremont (N.H.), 1497  
 Clarendon, 753  
 Clarksburg (W. Va.), 1545  
 Clarksville (Tenn.), 1531  
 Clausthal, 543, 556  
 Clearwater (Fla.), 1447  
 Clermont-Ferrand, 584–5  
 Cleveland (Oh.), 1375, 1486, 1512, 1514  
 Cleveland (UK), 1296  
 Cleveland Heights (Oh.), 1512  
 Clifton (N.J.), 1499  
 Clinton (Ia.), 1461  
 Clipperton Island, 517  
 Cluj, 1032, 1038  
 Cluj-Napoca, 1032  
 Clutha-Central Otago, 916  
 Clwyd, 1297  
 Clydebank, 1300  
 Clydesdale, 1300  
 Clydeside, 1300  
 CMEA, 48–9  
 Coahuila, 862, 866  
 Coastal-North Otago, 916  
 Coast Province (Kenya), 772, 774  
 Coatbridge, 1300  
 Coats Land, 238  
 Coatzacoalcas, 863, 867  
 Cobán, 581, 583  
 Cobija, 218–19  
 Cochabamba, 218–19, 222–3  
 Cochín, 631–2, 648, 669, 687  
 Coclé, 978  
 Cocos (Keeling) Islands, 30, 97, 115, 126–7  
 Codrington, 87–8  
 Coetivy Island, 1067  
 Coihaique, 349  
 Coimbatore, 631, 666, 669, 687  
 Coimbra, 1019, 1024  
 Cojedes, 1576  
 Cojutepeque, 454  
 Colac, 154  
 Colchester, 1297  
 Coleraine, 1357, 1364  
 Colima, 862  
 Colmar, 485  
 Colôane, 1026  
 Cologne, 535, 543, 558  
 Colombia, 54, 373–8  
 Colombo, 1127, 1130–1, 1133  
 Colombo Plan, 49–51  
 Colón (Galápagos), 441  
 Colón (Honduras), 602  
 Colón (Panama), 978, 980  
 Colonia (Uruguay), 1565, 1567  
 Colorado, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1438–40  
 Colorado Springs (Colo.), 1376, 1438, 1440  
 Columbia (Mo.), 1487–8  
 Columbia (S.C.), 1376, 1526–8  
 Columbus (Ga.), 1376, 1449  
 Columbus (Miss.), 1484, 1486  
 Columbus (Oh.), 1375, 1512, 1514  
 Comayagua, 602  
 Comayagua, 603  
 COMECON, 48–9  
 Comilla, 185  
 Comino, 849  
 Commerce Bight, 206  
 Commewijne, 1140–2  
 Common Market, *see* European Economic Community  
 Commonwealth, The, 28–31  
 Comodoro Rivadavia, 91, 95  
 Comoé, 250  
 Comoros, 379–81, 508, 511  
 Comox, 306  
 Conakry, 586–8  
 Concepción (Chile), 349, 353  
 Concepción (Panama), 980  
 Concepción (Paraguay), 990, 994  
 Concord (Calif.), 1376  
 Concord (N.H.), 1497  
 Concordia, 91  
 Con Dao, 1584  
 Congo, 382–5  
 Connacht, 718  
 Connecticut, 1373, 1385, 1387, 1440–3  
 Con Son Island, 1587  
 Constanta, 1032–4, 1037  
 Constantine, 74, 78  
 Cook Islands 630–2  
 Cookstown, 1357  
 Coomacka, 594  
 Coorg, 666  
 Copenhagen, 416, 418, 424, 426  
 Copiapo, 349  
 Copperbelt Province (Zambia), 1619  
 Coquihlatville, *see* Mbandaka  
 Coquimbo, 349–50, 352  
 Coral Sea Islands, 30, 97, 129  
 Cordillera, 990  
 Córdoba (Argentina), 90–1, 93, 95  
 Córdoba (Colombia), 373  
 Córdoba (Mexico), 863  
 Córdoba (Spain), 1114–15, 1125  
 Corentyne, 593  
 Corfu, 576  
 Corinth, 571, 576  
 Corinto, 934, 937  
 Corisco, 459  
 Cork, 717–18, 728  
 Cornellá, 1115  
 Corner Brook, 313  
 Cornwall, 1296  
 Coro, 1576  
 Coronel Oviedo, 994  
 Coronie, 1140–2  
 Çorovodë, 68  
 Corozal, 204  
 Corpus Christi (Tex.), 1376, 1533  
 Corrientes (Argentina), 90, 95  
 Corrientes (Paraguay), 994  
 Corrивerton, 592  
 Corsica, 484  
 Cortés, 602  
 Çorum, 1206  
 Corunna, *see* La Coruña  
 Corvallis (Oreg.), 1518, 1520  
 Corvo Island, 1019  
 Cosenza, 742, 751  
 Cosmoledo Islands, 1067  
 Costa Rica, 54, 386–90  
 Costermansville, *see* Bukavu  
 Cotaje, 221  
 Côte d'Ivoire, 391–4, 565, 1192  
 Cotonou, 208–10  
 Cotopaxi, 441  
 Cottbus, 527  
 Council Bluffs (Ia.), 1461  
 Council for Mutual Economic Assistance, 48–9  
 Council of Europe, 39–41  
 Courtrai, 195  
 Covasna, 1032  
 Coventry, 1297  
 Covington (Ky.), 1466  
 Crabwood Creek, 594  
 Cracow, *see* Kraków  
 Craigavon, 1357  
 Craiova, 1032, 1038  
 Cranbrook, 303, 306  
 Cranfield, 1347  
 Cranston (R.I.), 1524  
 Creil, 485  
 Crete (Greece), 572, 576  
 Crete (Nebr.), 1493  
 Crewe and Nantwich, 1297  
 Crimea, 1261  
 Crisana, 1035  
 Cristóbal, 978, 981  
 Croatia, 1610  
 Crooked Island, 175  
 Cross River, 942  
 Croydon, 1299  
 Crozet Islands, 511–12  
 Crumlin, 1360  
 Csongrád, 614  
 Cuando-Cubango, 82  
 Cuanza Norte/Sul, 82  
 Cuba, 48, 395–400  
 Cúcuta, 373  
 Cuddalore, 687  
 Cuddapah, 653–4  
 Cudjoe Head, 877  
 Cuenca (Ecuador), 441, 443, 445  
 Cuenca (Spain), 1115  
 Cuernavaca, 862–3  
 Cueva, 223  
 Cuiaba, 229  
 Culebra, 1560  
 Culemborg, 899  
 Culiacán Rosales, 862–3, 868  
 Cumaná, 1576  
 Cumberland (Md.), 1473  
 Cumberland (R.I.), 1524  
 Cumbernault and Kilsyth, 1300  
 Cumbria, 1296  
 Cumnock and Doon Valley, 1300  
 Cundinamarca, 373  
 Cunene, 82  
 Cunningham, 1300  
 Curaçao, 903, 912–14  
 Curepipe, 858  
 Curituba, 229–30, 236  
 Cuscatlán, 454, 457  
 Cuttack, 631, 678, 680  
 Cutuco, 456  
 Cuu Long, 1584  
 Cuvette, 382  
 Cuyahoga Falls (Oh.), 1512  
 Cuyuni, 593  
 Cuzco (Peru), 996–7  
 Cyanguu, 1040  
 Cyclades, 572  
 Cyprus, 29, 40, 44, 276, 401–7, 1311, 1315

- Cyrenaica, 810, 813  
 Cyril E. King Airport, 1564  
 Czechoslovakia, 47-8, 58, 126, 408-15  
 Dabakala, 391  
 Dacca, *see* Dhaka  
 Dac Lac, 1583  
 Dacorum, 1297  
 Dadong, 364  
 Dadra and Nagar Haveli, 631, 634, 649, 652, 694-5  
 Dafur, 1135  
 Dagang, 361  
 Dagenham, 1299  
 Daghestan, 1251, 1253-4  
 Dagupan, 1002  
 Dahab, 878  
 Dahuk, 712  
 Daitari, 679  
 Daito Islands, 758  
 Dajabón, 436  
 Dakar, 1063, 1065-6  
 Dakhla, 1126  
 Dakhlet Nouâdhibou, 855  
 Dalian, 356, 364  
 Dallas (Tex.), 1375, 1533, 1535  
 Daloa, 391, 394  
 Dalvik, 623  
 Daman and Diu, 631, 634, 652, 658, 695  
 Damanhur, 447  
 Damanjodi, 679  
 Damascus, 1175, 1177-8  
 Damiatta, 447  
 Dammam, 1057, 1061-2  
 Dampier, 166  
 Danané, 391  
 Da Nang, 1583, 1587  
 Danbury (Conn.), 1441  
 Danager Island, 931-2  
 Dangs, 659  
 Danli, 602  
 Danube Commission, 58-9  
 Danville (Ky.), 1467  
 Danzig, *see* Gdańsk  
 Dapaong, 1190, 1192  
 Daqahliya, 447  
 Daqing, 361, 364  
 Dará, 1175  
 Darbhanga, 657-8  
 Dar es Salaam, 1179-80, 1182-3  
 Darién, 978, 980  
 Dar-i-Suf, 65  
 Darjeeling, 632  
 Darkhan, 871, 873-4  
 Darlington, 1297  
 Darmstadt, 535, 543, 554  
 Daros, 1067  
 Dartmouth (Canada), 317  
 Daru, 984  
 Darwin, 97, 98, 122, 124  
 Das Island, 1293  
 Datong, 356  
 Daugavpils, 1275  
 Daval, 1271  
 Davao, 1002  
 Davenport (Ia.), 1376, 1461  
 David, 978, 980  
 Dawson, 332-3, 335  
 Dawson Creek, 306  
 Daya Bay, 361  
 Dayr az-Zawr, 1175  
 Dayton (Oh.), 1376, 1512, 1514  
 Dearborn (Mich.), 1479  
 Dearborn Heights (Mich.), 1479  
 De Bilt, 899  
 Debrecent, 614, 616, 621  
 Debre Markos, 463  
 Debre Zeit, 463-4  
 Deccatur (Ill.), 1456  
 Dedza, 827  
 Deer Lodge (Mont.), 1490  
 Degari, 973  
 Dégrad des Cannes, 504  
 Dehiwela-Mount Lavinia, 1127  
 Dehra Dun, 631  
 DeKalb (Ill.), 1458  
 De La Kara, Region, 1190  
 Delaware, 1374, 1384-5, 1443-5  
 Delft, 899  
 Delfzijl, 899, 905  
 Delhi, 631, 638, 647-8, 650, 652, 654, 662  
 Delhi (Union Territory), 631, 634, 695-6  
 Delhi, New, 630, 632, 696  
 Delta Amacuro, 1576  
 Demerara, 592-3  
 Den Helder, 899, 903  
 Denizli, 1206-7  
 Denmark, 36, 40, 42, 44, 46-7, 126, 416-27, 430  
 -Dependencies, 427-30  
 Denpasar, 700  
 Denver (Colo.), 1375, 1438, 1440  
 De Panne, 201  
 Dera Ghazi Khan, 973  
 Derby, 1297  
 Derbyshire, 1296-7  
 Derna, 810, 814  
 Derry, 1357, 1364  
 Desaguadero, 222  
 Desfil, 707  
 Des Moines (Ia.), 1376, 1461-2  
 Des Plateaux, Region (Togo), 1190  
 Desroches, 238  
 Desroches Island, 1067  
 Dessau, 527  
 Des Savanes, Region (Togo), 1190  
 Dessie, 463  
 Detroit (Mich.), 1375, 1479  
 Deurne (Belgium), 195  
 Deurne (Netherlands), 899  
 Deusto, 1125  
 Deva, 1032  
 Deventer, 899  
 Devil's Island, 502  
 Devon, 1296-7  
 Devonport (Australia), 149  
 Dewangiri, 215  
 Dewas, 670  
 D.F. Malan Airport, 1095  
 Dhahran, 1061-2  
 Dhamar, 1594-5  
 Dhanbad, 631, 657  
 Dharmanagar, 688-9  
 Dharwar, 666-7  
 Dhaka, 185-90  
 Dhaulagiri, 895  
 Dhi Qar, 712  
 Dhodak, 973  
 Dhofar, 963, 965-6  
 Dhulia, 672  
 Dhullian, 973  
 Dhursing, 896  
 Diadema, 230  
 Diamou, 847  
 Dibrë, 68  
 Dibrugarh, 655-6  
 Diego Garcia, 238  
 Diego Ramírez Islands, 349  
 Dien Bien, 1587  
 Diffa, 940  
 Differdange, 818  
 Dijon, 484-5  
 Dikchu, 684  
 Dikhil, 431  
 Dili, 700  
 Dillon (Mont.), 1491  
 Dilolo, 83  
 Dimani, 1110  
 Dimapur, 675, 677-8  
 Dimbaza, 1110  
 Dimbokro, 391  
 Dimbovita, 1032  
 Dinajpur, 185  
 Diourbel, 1063, 1065  
 Direction Island, 126  
 Dire Dawa, 463  
 Dispur, 652, 656, 676  
 District of Columbia, 1374, 1385, 1387, 1390, 1416, 1445-6  
 Ditsobotla, 1106  
 Diu, 695  
 Divo, 391  
 Diyala, 712  
 Diyarbakir, 1206, 1208  
 Djambala, 382  
 Djambul, 1223, 1280  
 Djebel Berga, 76  
 Djelfa, 74  
 Djerba, 1201  
 Djetygar, 1280  
 Djezkazgan, 1280  
 Djibouti, 431-3, 511  
 Dncproderzhinsk, 1223  
 Dnepropetrovsk, 1223, 1243, 1261  
 Doba, 346  
 Dodecanese, 572, 576  
 Dodge City (Kans.), 1463  
 Dodoma, 1179-80  
 Doetinchem, 899  
 Doha, 793, 1028, 1030  
 Dolj, 1032  
 Dolni Dubnik, 246  
 Dominica, 29, 55, 434-5  
 Dominican Republic, 436-40  
 Doncaster, 1297  
 Donegal, 718  
 Donetsk, 1223, 1243, 1261-2  
 Dongen, 899  
 Dongeradeel, 899  
 Dong Nai, 1584  
 Dongola, 1138  
 Dong Thap, 1584  
 Dordrecht, 899-900  
 Dornbirn, 169  
 Dorset, 1296  
 Dortmund, 535, 543, 558  
 Dorval Airport, 327  
 Dosso, 940  
 Douai, 485  
 Douala, 265, 268  
 Douglas, 1365, 1367  
 Douglas-Daly, 123  
 Dover (Del.), 1443-4  
 Dover (N.H.), 1497  
 Dover (UK), 1297  
 Down, 1357  
 Drama, 572  
 Drammen, 949  
 Drenthe, 899  
 Dresden, 527-8  
 Drobeta-Turnu Severin, 1032  
 Dronning Maud Land, 969  
 Dronten, 899  
 Drumheller, 299, 300  
 Dschang, 265  
 Duarte, 436  
 Dubai, 1290, 1292-4  
 Dubbo, 130  
 Dublin, 717-18, 725, 728  
 Dubossarsk, 1272  
 Dubrovnik, 1606  
 Dubuque (Ia.), 1461-2  
 Ducie Island, 1008  
 Dudelong, 818  
 Dudinka, 1260  
 Dudley, 1297  
 Duff Islands, 1082  
 Duisburg, 535  
 Dukhan, 1028  
 Duluth (Minn.), 1482, 1548  
 Dumbarton, 1300  
 Dum Dum Airport, 647  
 Dumfries and Galloway, 1299  
 Dumyât, 447  
 Dundalk (Ireland), 728  
 Dundalk (Md.), 1473  
 Dundee, 1300, 1347-8  
 Dunedin (New Zealand), 916, 925-6  
 Dunfermline, 1299, 1300  
 Dungannon, 1357  
 Dunkerque, 485  
 Dun Laoghaire, 717-18  
 Duque de Caxias, 230  
 Durango (Colo.), 1440  
 Durango (Mexico), 862, 865  
 Durant (Okla.), 1517  
 Durazno, 1565  
 Durazzo, *see* Durrës  
 Durban, 1089, 1095-8  
 Durgapur, 631, 692  
 Durg-Bhilainagar, 631  
 Durham (N.C.), 1376, 1507

- Durham (UK), 1296, 1348  
 Durrës, 68, 70-1  
 Dushanbe, 1223, 1285-7  
 Düsseldorf, 535, 543, 556, 558  
 Dvinsk, 1275  
 Dyfed, 1297  
 Dzaoudzi, 508  
 Dzerzhinsk, 1223  
 Dzhambul, 1223, 1280  
 Dzizak, 1283  
  
 EAEC, 42, 45-6  
 Eagle Atoll, 238  
 Ealing, 1299  
 Easington, 1297  
 East Anglia, 1348  
 East Bank, *see* Jordan  
 East Cape (New Zealand), 915  
 East Cleveland (Oh.), 1512  
 East Devon, 1297  
 Easter Island, 349  
 Eastern District (American Samoa), 1557  
 Eastern Highlands (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 Eastern Province (Kenya), 772, 774  
 Eastern Province (Sierra Leone), 1070  
 Eastern Province (Uganda), 1218  
 Eastern Province (Zambia), 1619  
 Eastern Region (Ghana), 563  
 Eastern Region (Sudan), 1135  
 East Germany, *see* German Democratic Republic  
 East Grinton, 1363  
 East Hampshire, 1297  
 East Hertfordshire, 1297  
 East Kilbride, 1300  
 Eastleigh, 1297  
 East Lindsey, 1297  
 East London, 1089, 1095-6, 1111  
 East Lothian, 1299  
 Easton (Pa.), 1521  
 East Orange (N.J.), 1499  
 East Providence (R.I.), 1524  
 East Region (Iceland), 623  
 East St Louis (Ill.), 1456  
 East Staffordshire, 1297  
 East Sussex, 1296  
 Eastwood, 1300  
 Eau Claire (Wisc.), 1548, 1550  
 Ebolowa, 265  
 EC, 41-6  
 ECA, 5  
 ECE, 5  
 Economic and Social Commission for Western Asia, 5  
 Economic Commission for Africa, 5  
 Economic Commission for Europe, 5  
 Economic Community of Countries of the Great Lakes, 1041  
 Economic Development Institute, 21  
 ECSC, 42, 43, 44  
 Ecuador, 54, 441-6, 996  
 Edam-Volendam, 899  
 Ed-Daein, 1138  
 Ede (Netherlands), 899  
 Ede (Nigeria), 942  
 Edéa, 265, 267  
 Edessa, 572  
 Edgeoya, 960  
 Edinburgh (Tristan da Cunha), 1047  
 Edinburgh (UK), 1299, 1300, 1302, 1347-8  
 Edirne, 1206  
 Edison (N.J.), 1499  
 Edjélé, 76  
 Edmond (Okla.), 1515, 1517  
 Edmonds (Wash.), 1542  
 Edmonton (Canada), 272, 290, 299-302  
 Edmundston, 309, 312  
 EEC, 42, 44-5, 47-8  
 Elate, 1570-2  
 Effon-Alaiye, 943  
 EFTA, 44, 46-7  
 Eger, 614  
 Egmont Atoll, 238  
 Egypt, 29, 45, 57, 447-53, 732  
 ELB, 43  
 Eichstätt, 543, 548  
 Eilat, 737  
 Eindhoven, 899-900  
 Eire, *see* Ireland  
 Eisenstadt, 169  
 Ejde, 427  
 El Alto Airport, 222  
 Elâziğ, 1206-7  
 Elbasan, 68, 71  
 Elblag, 1010  
 El Bluff, 937  
 Elburg, 899  
 El Callao, 1579  
 El César, 373  
 Elche, 1115  
 El-Dammer, 1138  
 Eldoret, 772, 775  
 Eleuthera, 175  
 El Ferrol, 1115, 1119  
 El Gassi, 76  
 Elia, 571  
 Elizabeth (N.J.), 1376, 1499  
 Elizabethville, *see* Lubumbashi  
 El Jadida, 878  
 El Kelâa-Srarhna, 878  
 Elko (Nev.), 1495-6  
 Ellicott's Mills (Md.), 1414  
 Elmbridge, 1297  
 Elmira (N.Y.), 1504  
 Elobey, 459  
 El Oro, 441  
 El Paraiso, 602  
 El Paso (Tex.), 1375, 1533  
 Elphinstone, 694  
 El Porvenir, 978  
 El Progreso (Guatemala), 581  
 El Progreso (Honduras), 602-3  
 El Rahad, 1138  
 Elsa, 333, 335  
 El Salvador, 54, 454-8  
 El Seiba, 436  
 Elsmere Town (Del.), 1443  
 Eluru, 653  
 El Yopal, 373  
 Elyria (Oh.), 1512  
 Emba, 1280  
 Embu, 772  
 Emek Hefer, 736  
 Emet, 1209  
 Emilia-Romagna, 741, 744  
 Emmen, 899  
 Empanjeni, 1097  
 Encamp, 80  
 Encarnación, 990, 994  
 Enderbury, 777  
 Enfield, 1299  
 Enga, 984  
 Engels, 1223, 1241  
 England, 1295-9, 1308-9, 1318, 1320-2, 1325, 1331, 1334-48, 1355  
 -Counties, 1296-7  
 Enid (Okla.), 1515  
 Enschede, 899-900  
 Ensenada, 863  
 Entebbe, 1218-21  
 Entre Ríos, 90, 95  
 Enugu, 942, 946  
 Enver Hoxha Port, 71  
 Epe (Netherlands), 899  
 Epe (Nigeria), 945  
 Ephraim (Ut.), 1537  
 Epi, 1570  
 Epirus, 571, 575  
 Epping Forest, 1297  
 Equateur (Zaire), 1614  
 Equatorial Guinea, 459-61  
 Erdenet, 871, 873-4  
 Eregli, 1210  
 Erevan, *see* Yerevan  
 Erewash, 1297  
 Erfurt, 527  
 Ergani, 1209  
 Erie (Pa.), 1376, 1521  
 Eritrea, 462-3, 464-5  
 Erlangen, 535, 543, 548  
 Ermelo, 899  
 Ernakulam, 669  
 Erode, 631  
 Er Rachidia, 878  
 Erromanga, 1570  
 Ersekë, 68  
 Erzincan, 1206  
 Erzurum, 1206-7  
 Esbjerg, 416  
 Esbo, 475  
 Escalante, 1581  
 ESCAP, 5  
 Esch-Alzette, 818  
 Escuintla, 581  
 ESCWA, 5  
 Estâhân, 706-7  
 Eskifjörður, 623  
 Eskiltuna, 1149  
 Eskişehir, 1206-8  
 Esmeraldas, 441, 444  
 Esplanat, 436  
 Espargos, 339  
 Espíritu Santo, 229, 234  
 Espíritu Santo, 1570-2  
 Espoo, 475  
 Es Saouira, 878  
 Es Semara, *see* Smara  
 Essen, 535  
 Essendon Airport, 158  
 Essequibo, 592-3  
 Essex, 1296, 1348  
 Essonne, 494  
 Esteban Echeverría, 91  
 Esteli, 934, 937  
 Estevan, 329  
 Estonia, 1223, 1225, 1247, 1273-4  
 Est Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Estuaire, 519  
 Etchmiadzin, 1247  
 Ethiopia, 48, 462-6  
 Etorofu, 1224  
 Etten-Leur, 899  
 Etterbeek, 195  
 Ettrick and Lauderdale, 1299  
 ETUC, 33  
 'Eua, 1194-6  
 Euboea, 571, 574  
 Euclid (Oh.), 1512  
 Eugene (Oreg.), 1376, 1518, 1520  
 EURATOM, 42, 45-6  
 Euroa, 157  
 Europa, 506  
 European Atomic Energy Community, 42, 45-6  
 European Coal and Steel Community, 42, 43, 44  
 European Commission on Human Rights, 40, 41  
 European Communities, 41-6  
 European Court of Human Rights, 40, 41  
 European Court of Justice, 43  
 European Economic Community, 42, 44-5, 47-8  
 European Free Trade Association, 44, 46-7  
 European Investment Bank, 43  
 European Parliament, 42-3, 1308  
 European Trade Union Confederation, 33  
 European Youth Centre/Foundation, 40  
 Evanston (Ill.), 1456, 1458  
 Evansville (Ind.), 1376, 1459  
 Evenki, 1251, 1260  
 Evere, 195  
 Everett (Wash.), 1542



- Everton (Guyana), 595  
 Evora, 1019, 1024  
 Evros, 572  
 Evrytania, 571  
 Exeter, 1297, 1348  
 Extremadura, 1115, 1125  
 Extrême-Nord Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Exuma Islands, 175  
  
 Faa Airport, 517  
 Fada N'Gourma, 250  
 Fagatogo, 1557  
 Faial Island, 1019  
 Fairbanks (Ak.), 1428-30  
 Fairmont (W. Va.), 1545-6  
 Faisalabad, 969  
 Faiyûm, 447  
 Faizabad, 63  
 Fakaofa, 930  
 Falcón, 1576, 1579  
 Falkirk, 1299  
 Falkland Islands, 30, 91, 238, 467-9, 1113, 1311, 1315  
 Fall River (Mass.), 1476-7  
 Falun, 1149  
 Famagusta, 401, 405, 407  
 Family Islands, 177-9  
 Fangataufa, 515  
 Fangling, 607  
 FAO, 14-15, 21  
 Farafenni, 523  
 Farakka, 187, 692  
 Fareham, 1297  
 Fargo (N.D.), 1510-11  
 Farhah, 1059  
 Faridabad, 631, 661  
 Faridpur, 185  
 Farmington (N. Mex.), 1501  
 Farmington Hills (Mich.), 1479  
 Faro (Canada), 333, 335  
 Faro (Portugal), 1019, 1023-4  
 Faroe Islands, 416, 417, 418, 427-8, 416-18, 427-8  
 Farquhar, 238  
 Farquhar Island, 1067  
 Fars, 706  
 Fatah, 810  
 Fatick, 1063  
 Fatuhiva, 516  
 Faya, 346  
 Fayetteville (Ark.), 1433  
 Fayetteville (N.C.), 1507  
 Federal Dependencies (Venezuela), 1576  
 Federal District (Brazil), 229, 231  
 Federal District (Congo), 382  
 Federal District (Honduras), 602-3  
 Federal District (Mexico), 862, 864  
 Federal District (Venezuela), 1576  
 Federal Republic of Germany, *see* Germany, Federal Republic of  
 Feira de Santana, 230  
 Fejér, 614  
 FELABAN, 54  
 Feldkirch, 169  
 Feltre, 751  
 Ferghana, 1223, 1283  
 Ferkéssédougou, 391, 393  
 Fermanagh, 1357  
 Fernando de Noronha, 229, 231  
 Ferozepore, 680  
 Ferrara, 742, 751  
 Fez, 878-9, 881  
 Fezzan, The, 810, 813  
 Fianarantsoa, 822  
 Fier, 68  
 Fife, 1299  
 Figueira da Foz, 1023  
 Fíguig, 878  
 Fiji, 29, 470-3, 1217  
 Finland, 46-7, 48, 474-83  
 Finnmark, 948  
 Flagstaff (Ariz.), 1432  
 Flamingo Airfield, 914  
 Flanders, 194  
 Flandreau (S.D.), 1530  
 Flensburg, 543, 562  
 Flevoland, 899, 902  
 Flinders Island, 150  
 Flin Flon, 306  
 Flint (Mich.), 1376, 1479  
 Flint Island, 777  
 Florence (Italy), 742, 747, 749, 751  
 Florence (S.C.), 1528  
 Florencia, 373  
 Flores (Azores), 1019  
 Flores (Uruguay), 1565  
 Florianópolis, 229  
 Florida (Uruguay), 1565, 1567  
 Florida (USA), 1374, 1385, 1406, 1447-9  
 Florida Islands (Soloman Islands), 1082  
 Florina, 572  
 Florissant (Mo.), 1487  
 Flushing, 900, 903  
 Focsani, 1033  
 Foggia, 742  
 Fogo, 337-8  
 Fomboni, 379  
 Fond du Lac (Wisc.), 1548  
 Fontvielle, 869-70  
 Food and Agriculture Organization, 14-15, 21  
 Forbach, 485  
 Forest, 195  
 Forlì, 742  
 Formosa (Argentina), 90  
 Formosa (China), *see* Taiwan  
 Fortaleza, 229-30, 235-6  
 Fort Clayton, 983  
 Fort Collins (Colo.), 1438, 1440  
 Fort-de-France, 504-5  
 Fort Dodge (Ia.), 1461  
 Fort George G. Meade (Md.), 1388  
 Fort Gillem (Ga.), 1388  
 Fort Hare, 1097  
 Fort Huachuca (Ariz.), 1388  
 Fort Lauderdale (Fla.), 1376, 1447  
 Fort Liberté, 597  
 Fort McMurray, 299-301  
 Fort McNair (Washington, D.C.), 1388  
 Fort Monroe (Va.), 1388  
 Fort Providence, 332  
 Fort Resolution, 332  
 Fort St John, 303, 306  
 Fort Sam Houston (Tex.), 1388  
 Fort Saskatchewan, 299, 300  
 Fort Sheridan (Ill.), 1388  
 Fort Simpson, 332  
 Fort Smith (Ark.), 1433  
 Fort Smith (Canada), 331-3  
 Fort Wayne (Ind.), 1376, 1459  
 Fort Worth (Tex.), 1375, 1533, 1535  
 Fouban, 265  
 Fourah Bay, 1073  
 Framingham (Mass.), 1476  
 France, 36, 37, 39, 40, 41, 42, 126, 484-500  
     -Overseas Departments, 500-8  
     -Overseas Territories, 511-18  
     -Territorial Collectivities, 508-11  
 Franche-Comté, 484  
 Francisco Morazán, 602, 604  
 Francistown, 224  
 Franekeradeel, 899  
 Frankfort (Ky.), 1466  
 Frankfurt am Main (FRG), 535, 543, 554  
 Frankfurt an der Oder (GDR), 527  
 Franklin (N.H.), 1497  
 Fray Bentos, 1565  
 Frederick (Md.), 1473  
 Fredericton, 309-12  
 Frederiksberg, 416  
 Frederiksborg, 416  
 Frederiksted, 1562  
 Fredrikstad, 949  
 Freeport (Bahamas), 175, 177-8  
 Freeport (N.Y.), 1504  
 Freetown, 1070-4  
 Fregate Island, 1067, 1069  
 Freiburg im Breisgau, 535, 543, 547  
 Fremantle, 161, 166  
 Fremont (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Fremont (Nebr.), 1491, 1493  
 French Guiana, 500, 502-4  
 French Island, 155  
 French Polynesia, 511, 515-17  
 French Southern and Antarctic Territories, 511-12  
 Fresno (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 FRG, *see* Germany, Federal Republic of  
 Fria, 587-8  
 Fribourg, 1164-6, 1173  
 Friedrichshain, 549  
 Friesland, 899  
 Friuli-Venezia Giulia, 741, 744  
 Frobisher Bay, 331, 333  
 Frosinone, 751  
 Frunze, 1223, 1241, 1288-9  
 Frydek-Místek, 409  
 Fuenlabrada, 1115  
 Fuerteventura, 1115  
 Fuglafjörður, 428  
 Fujairah, 1290, 1293  
 Fujian, 356, 363-4  
 Fujisawa, 758  
 Fukui, 758  
 Fukuoka, 758, 765  
 Fukushima, 758  
 Fukuyama, 758  
 Fulham, 1299  
 Fullerton (Calif.), 1376  
 Funabashi, 758  
 Funafuti, 1216-17  
 Funchal, 1019-20, 1023-4  
 Fung, 1137  
 Fushun, 356  
 Futuna, 517-18  
 Fuzhou, 356  
 Fylingdales, 1315  
 Fyn, 416  
  
 Gabeit, 1137  
 Gabela, 83  
 Gabès, 1201  
 Gabon, 519-22  
 Gaborone, 224, 227  
 Gabrovo, 243  
 Gabû, 589  
 Gafsa, 1201  
 Gagnoa, 391  
 Gagra, 1269  
 Gainesville (Fla.), 1447-8  
 Gaithersburg (Md.), 1473  
 Galápagos Islands, 441  
 Galati, 1032, 1037  
 Galerazamba, 376  
 Galicia, 1115-16, 1118  
 Galilee, 736  
 Galle, 1127  
 Gällivare, 1154  
 Galveston (Tex.), 1533  
 Galway, 718, 728  
 Gamba, 1138  
 Gambia, The, 29, 523-5, 1063-4  
 Gambier Islands, 515  
 Gamalakarley, 475  
 Gandaki, 895  
 Gander, 313  
 Gandhinagar, 659-60  
 Gantok, 652, 684-5  
 Ganjam, 679  
 Ganshoren, 195

- Gansu, 356, 365  
 Ganzourgou, 250  
 Gao, 846, 848  
 Garankuwa, 1106  
 Garbaber, 623  
 Garden City (N.Y.), 1504  
 Garden Grove (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Gardez, 63  
 Garfield Heights (Oh.), 1512  
 Garissa, 772  
 Garland (Tex.), 1376, 1533  
 Garoua, 265, 268  
 Garrett County (Md.), 1474  
 Gary (Ind.), 1376, 1459  
 Garzan, 1209  
 Gaspar Grande, 1197  
 Gateshead, 1297  
 Gatooma, 1623  
 GATT, 25-6  
 Gauhati, 647, 649  
 Gävle, 1149  
 Gävleborg, 1148  
 Gaya, 658  
 Gaza (Mozambique), 884, 886  
 Gazankulu, 1088, 1091, 1102  
 Gaza Strip, 732, 733, 767  
 Gaziantep, 1206  
 Gazli, 1238  
 Gbangbatoke, 1073  
 Gbarga, 806  
 Gcuwa, 1107  
 Gdańsk, 1009-11, 1015  
 GDR, *see* German Democratic Republic  
 Gdynia, 1009-10, 1015  
 Gedaref, 1138  
 Gedling, 1297  
 Geelong, 97, 153-4, 157  
 Gelderland, 899  
 Geldermalsen, 899  
 Geldrop, 899  
 Geleen, 899-900  
 Gelsenkirchen, 535  
 Gemas, 836  
 Gembloux, 202  
 Gemu Gofa, 463  
 Gendringen, 899  
 General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, 25-6  
 General Omar Torrijos Airport, 981  
 General San Martín, 91  
 General Santos, 1002  
 General Sarmiento, 91  
 Geneva, 1164-6, 1173  
 Genk, 195  
 Geno(v)a, 742, 746, 751  
 Gentofte, 416  
 George, 1096  
 Georgetown  
   (Ascension), 1047  
 George Town  
   (Australia), 151  
 George Town (Cayman Islands), 340-1  
 Georgetown (Del.), 1444  
 Georgetown (Guyana), 592, 595  
 Georgetown (Ky.), 1467  
 Georgetown (Malaysia), *see* Penang  
 Georgetown (St Vincent), 1052  
 Georgia (USA), 1374, 1385, 1404, 1406, 1449-51  
 Georgia (USSR), 1223-4, 1267-8  
 Gera, 527  
 Geraldton, 161  
 German Democratic Republic, 47-8, 126, 527-33, 535  
 Germany, 526  
 Germany, Federal Republic of, 37, 39, 40-2, 58, 126, 534-46, 1311, 1315 -Länder, 546-62  
 Gerona, 1115  
 Getafe, 1115  
 Ghadames, 810, 813  
 Ghana, 29, 563-7, 1192  
 Ghanzi, 226  
 Gharbiya, 447  
 Ghardaia, 74  
 Gharyan, 810, 813  
 Ghat, 812-13  
 Ghatsila, 658  
 Ghawar, 1059  
 Ghaziabad, 631  
 Ghazni, 63  
 Ghent, 194-5, 201-2  
 Ghubriah, 965  
 Gia Lai, 1583  
 Gibraltar, 30, 568-70, 1311, 1315  
 Giessen, 543, 554  
 Gifu, 758  
 Gijón, 1115  
 Gikongoro, 1040  
 Gilán, 706  
 Gilbert Islands, 777  
 Gilgit, 970  
 Gillingham, 1297  
 Gillot Airport, 507  
 Gilze en Rijen, 899  
 Gippoland, 156-7  
 Giresun, 1206  
 Gisborne, 915-16  
 Gisenyi, 1040  
 Gitarama, 1040  
 Gitega, 258, 260  
 Giurgiu, 1032  
 Giza, 447-8  
 Gizo, 1082, 1084  
 Gjirrokastër, 68  
 Gjøvik, 949  
 Glace Bay, 317  
 Gladstone, 138  
 Glamorgan, 1297-8  
 Glarus, 1164, 1166-7  
 Glasgow, 1300, 1302, 1347-8  
 Glendale (Ariz.), 1431  
 Glendale (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Glenorchy, 149  
 Glenrothes, 1300  
 Glenvale (W. Va.), 1546  
 Gliwice, 1010  
 Gloucester, 1297  
 Gloucestershire, 1296  
 Gnagna, 250  
 Gniezno, 1016  
 Goa, 631, 634, 647-8, 652-3, 658-9  
 Goba, 463  
 Gobi Altai, 874  
 Godoy Cruz, 91  
 Godthaab, 428-9  
 Goes, 899  
 Goiânia, 229-30, 236  
 Goiás, 229  
 Gøjjam, 463  
 Golan Heights, 276, 732-3  
 Gölcük, 1208  
 Gold Coast (Australia), 97, 138  
 Golden (Colo.), 1440  
 Golden Rock Airport, 1044  
 Golfito, 386, 389  
 Gomel, 1223, 1263  
 Gomera, 1115  
 Gómez Palacio, 863  
 Gonaïves, 597  
 Gondar, 463, 466  
 Gongola, 942  
 Goose Bay, 313  
 Gopalpur, 679-80  
 Gorakhpur, 631, 647, 690  
 Gordon, 1299  
 Gorey, 1369  
 Gorgol, 855  
 Gori, 1267  
 Gorinchem, 899  
 Gorj, 1032, 1035  
 Gorky, 1223, 1238, 1243, 1248, 1251  
 Gorlovka, 1223  
 Gorno-Altai(sk), 1251, 1259  
 Gorno-Badakhshan, 1285-6, 1287  
 Goroka, 984  
 Gorzów, 1010  
 Gostivar, 1601  
 Göteborg, 1149, 1151-2, 1158  
 Göteborg and Bohus, 1148  
 Gothenburg, *see* Göteborg  
 Gotland, 1148-9, 1151-2  
 Göttingen, 535, 543, 556  
 Gottwaldov, 409  
 Gouda, 899  
 Gough Island, 1047  
 Goulburn, 130  
 Goulette, 1201, 1204  
 Gourma, 250  
 Gozo, 849  
 Gracias a Dios, 602  
 Graciosa, 1115  
 Graciosa Island, 1019  
 Grafton, 130  
 Graham Land, 238  
 Grahamstown, 1097  
 Grampian Region, 1299  
 Gramsh, 68  
 Granada (Nicaragua), 934, 937  
 Granada (Spain), 1114-15, 1125  
 Gran Canaria, 1115  
 Grand Bahama, 175, 177-8  
 Grand Bassa, 806, 808  
 Grand Bourg, 500  
 Grand Cape Mount, 806, 808  
 Grand Cayman, 340-1  
 Grande Anse  
   (Guadeloupe), 500  
 Grande Anse (Haiti), 597  
 Grande Comore, 379-80  
 Grande Prairie, 299, 300  
 Grande-Terre, 500  
 Grand Falls, 313  
 Grand Forks (N.D.), 1510-11  
 Grand Gedeh, 806  
 Grand Island (Nebr.), 1491  
 Grand Junction (Colo.), 1440  
 Grand Kru, 806  
 Grand Rapids (Mich.), 1376, 1479  
 Grand Turk, 1214  
 Grangesberg, 1154  
 Granma, 395  
 Graubünden, 817, 1164-6  
 Gravenhage, 's-, *see* Hague, The  
 Gravesham, 1297  
 Graz, 169, 173  
 Great Barrier Island, 918  
 Great Britain, *see* United Kingdom  
 Great Falls (Mont.), 1489  
 Great Zimbabwe, 1626  
 Greece, 37, 40, 42, 44, 45, 571-7  
 Greeley (Colo.), 1438, 1440  
 Green Bay (Wisc.), 1548-50  
 Greencastle (Ind.), 1460  
 Greenland, 416-18, 428-30  
 Greenock, 1300  
 Greensboro (N.C.), 1376, 1507  
 Greenvale, 140  
 Greenville (Liberia), 806  
 Greenville (Me.), 1471  
 Greenville (Miss.), 1484  
 Greenville (S.C.), 1526  
 Greenwich (Conn.), 1441  
 Greenwich (UK), 1299  
 Greenwood (S.C.), 1528  
 Grenada, 28, 29, 55, 578-80  
 Grenadines, Northern, 1050  
 Grenadines, South, 578  
 Grenoble, 485, 495  
 Grevena, 572  
 Greymouth, 916  
 Gribingui, 342  
 Grigorevsky, 1244  
 Grigoriopol, 1272  
 Grimshaw, 332  
 Grindavík, 623  
 Grinnell (Ia.), 1462  
 Grisons, 817, 1164-6  
 Grodno, 1223, 1263-4  
 Groningen, 899-900  
 Grootfontein, 889  
 Grosseto, 747  
 Grozny, 1223, 1237-8, 1253

- Guadalajara (Mexico), 862-3, 868  
 Guadalajara (Spain), 1115  
 Guadalcanal, 1082  
 Guadalupe, 863  
 Guadeloupe, 500-2  
 Guainia, 374  
 Guairá, 990  
 Guam, 1375, 1385, 1387, 1390, 1416, 1553-5  
 Guanacaste, 386  
 Guanajuato, 862  
 Guanare, 1576  
 Guangdong, 356, 361, 363  
 Guangxi, 356  
 Guangzhou, *see* Canton (China)  
 Guanta, 1581  
 Guantánamo, 395-6  
 Guaquí, 222  
 Guaranda, 441  
 Guarda, 1019  
 Guárico, 1576  
 Guarulhos, 230  
 Guatemala, 54, 581-5  
 Guatemala City, 581, 584  
 Guaviare, 374  
 Guayaquil, 441-3, 445  
 Guayas, 441  
 Guaymallén, 91  
 Guaymos, 867  
 Gudauta, 1269  
 Guelma, 74  
 Guelmim, 878  
 Guéra, 346  
 Guernsey, 1300, 1367-8, 1370-1  
 Guerrero, 862  
 Guiana, French, *see* French Guiana  
 Guidimaka, 855  
 Guiglo, 391  
 Guildford, 1297  
 Guilin, 364  
 Guimarães, 1024  
 Guinea, 525, 586-8  
 Guinea-Bissau, 525, 589-91  
 Guinée-Forestière, 586-7  
 Guinée-Maritime, 586-7  
 Guinguiné, 1065  
 Guipúzcoa, 1114-16  
 Guiyang, 356, 364  
 Guizhou, 356  
 Gujarat, 630, 634, 642, 648, 652, 659-61  
 Gujranwala, 969  
 Gujrat, 969  
 Gulbahar, 65  
 Gulbarga, 653, 666-7  
 Gulfport (Miss.), 1484  
 Gulf Province (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 Gulrīpsha, 1269  
 Gulu, 1218  
 Gümüşhane, 1206  
 Gunjur, 523  
 Gunnison (Colo.), 1440  
 Guntur, 631, 655  
 Gunza, 83  
 Gurdaspur, 680  
 Gurgaon, 661  
 Guriev, 1238, 1280  
 Gusau, 943  
 Gustavia, 500  
 Guwahati, 655-6  
 Guyana, 29, 55, 592-6  
 Gwadur, 963  
 Gwalior, 631, 649, 670-1  
 Gwent, 1295, 1297  
 Gweru (Gwelo), 1623  
 Gwynedd, 1297  
 Gyalshing, 684-5  
 Győr, 614  
 Győr-Sopron, 614  
 Haaksbergen, 899  
 Ha'apai Islands, 1194-6  
 Haarlem, 899-900  
 Haarlemmermeer, 899  
 Ha Bac, 1583  
 Habomai Islands, 1225  
 Hachioji, 758  
 Hackney, 1299  
 Hadhramaut, 1598  
 Haeju, 785-6  
 Hafnarfjörður, 623  
 Hagen, 535  
 Hagerstown (Md.), 1473  
 Hagondange-Briey, 485  
 Hague, The, 898-900, 903  
 Hahaya Airport, 381  
 Haifa, 732-3, 735, 737-9  
 Hai Hung, 1583  
 Haikou, 356  
 Ha'il, 1057  
 Hainan, 356, 362  
 Hainaut, 194  
 Haines (Ak.), 1430  
 Hai Phong, 1583, 1587  
 Hai Phong Ben Thuy, 1587  
 Hairatan, 66  
 Haiti, 597-601  
 Haiya, 1138  
 Hajdú-Bihar, 614  
 Hajjah, 1595  
 Hakkari, 1206  
 Hakodate, 758  
 Halaib, 1137  
 Halden, 949  
 Haldia, 648, 692  
 Halifax (Canada), 272, 278, 317, 320  
 Halland, 1148  
 Halle, 527  
 Hallein, 169  
 Halmstad, 1149  
 Halton, 1297  
 Halul, 1028  
 Hama, 1175, 1178  
 Hamadán, 706-7  
 Hamamatsu, 758  
 Hamburg, 534-5, 540, 542-3, 552-3  
 Hämeenlinna, 475, 474-5  
 Hamgyong, 786  
 Hamheung, 785  
 Hamhung, 785-6, 788  
 Hani, 364  
 Hamilton (Australia), 154  
 Hamilton (Bermuda), 212  
 Hamilton (Canada), 272, 321  
 Hamilton (New Zealand), 915-16, 926  
 Hamilton (N.J.), 1499  
 Hamilton (Oh.), 1512  
 Hamilton (UK), 1300  
 Hamirpur, 663  
 Hamm, 535  
 Hammersmith and Fulham, 1299  
 Hammond (Ind.), 1459  
 Hampshire, 1296  
 Hampton (Va.), 1376, 1540  
 Ha Nam Ninh, 1583  
 Hangha, 1072  
 Hangzhou, 356, 364  
 Haninge, 1149  
 Hanoi, 1583-4, 1587-8  
 Hanover (Germany), 535, 543, 556  
 Hanover (Jamaica), 753  
 Hao, 515  
 Happy Valley, 313  
 Haradh, 1057, 1061  
 Harar, 463, 466  
 Harare, 1623, 1627  
 Harge, 463  
 Harhin, 356, 364  
 Harburg, 543  
 Hardenberg, 899  
 Harderwijk, 899  
 Hargeisa, 1085, 1087  
 Harghita, 1032  
 Haringey, 1299  
 Harnai, 973  
 Harper, 806  
 Harrisburg (Pa.), 1521-2  
 Harrisonburg (Va.), 1541  
 Harrogate, 1297  
 Harrow, 1299  
 Harstad, 949  
 Hartford (Conn.), 1376, 1441-2  
 Hartley, 1623  
 Haryana, 630, 634, 648, 652-3, 661-2  
 Hasakah, 1175  
 Ha Son Binh, 1583  
 Hassan, 666  
 Hasselt, 194-5  
 Hassi Messaoud, 76  
 Hassi-R'Mel, 76  
 Hassleholm, 1149  
 Hastings (Australia), 130  
 Hastings (Nebr.), 1491  
 Hastings (New Zealand), 915-16  
 Hastings (Sierra Leone), 1073  
 Hatay, 1206-7  
 Hatfield, 1298  
 Hato Airport, 914  
 Hato Mayor, 436  
 Hattiesburg (Miss.), 1484, 1486  
 Ha Tuyen, 1583  
 Hat Yai, 1184, 1188  
 Haugesund, 949  
 Hau Giang, 1584  
 Haulbowline Island, 720  
 Haus Khaz, 696  
 Haute-Guinée, 586-7  
 Haute-Kotto, 342  
 Haute-Normandie, 484  
 Haute-Sangha, 342  
 Haut-Ogooué, 519  
 Hauts-de-Seine, 494  
 Haut-Zaïre, 1614  
 Havana, 395, 398  
 Havant, 1297  
 Havelock Mine, 1144-5  
 Havering, 1299  
 Havířov, 409  
 Havre (Mont.), 1489, 1491  
 Havre, Le, 485  
 Hawaii, 1372, 1374, 1384-5, 1417, 1451-3  
 Hawalli, 790  
 Hawar Islands, 180  
 Hawke's Bay, 915  
 Hay Mohamed-Aïn Sebâa, 878  
 Hay River, 331-3  
 Hays (Kans.), 1465  
 Hazaribagh, 658  
 Hazelwood, 156  
 Heard and McDonald Islands, 30, 97, 128  
 Hebbal, 667  
 Hebei, 356, 361, 365  
 Hebrides, *see* Western Isles  
 Hedmark, 948  
 Heemskerk, 899  
 Heemstede, 899  
 Heerenveen, 899  
 Heerhugowaard, 899  
 Heerlen, 899-900  
 Hefei, 356  
 Hegoumenitsa, 571  
 Heidelberg, 535, 547  
 Heilbronn, 535  
 Heilongjiang, 356, 362  
 Heiloo, 899  
 Helena (Mont.), 1489  
 Hellendoorn, 899  
 Hellevoetsluis, 899  
 Helmond, 899  
 Helsingborg, 1149  
 Helsingør, 416  
 Helsinki, 474, 481  
 Hempstead (N.Y.), 1504  
 Henan, 356  
 Henderson (Nev.), 1494  
 Henderson Island, 1008  
 Hengelo, 899-900, 905  
 Hengyang, 363-4  
 Heraklion, 572  
 Herat, 63, 65-6  
 Herdecke, 543  
 Heredia, 386  
 Hereford and Worcester, 1296  
 Herm, 1300, 1367  
 Hermosillo, 862-3  
 Hermoupolis, 572  
 Herne, 535  
 Herning, 416  
 Herrera, 978  
 Herstal, 195  
 Hertfordshire, 1296-7  
 Hertzog Airport, 1095  
 Hessen, 534-5, 540, 553-5  
 Heves, 614  
 Hewanorra Airport, 1049  
 H.F. Verwoerd Airport, 1095  
 Hhohho, 1145  
 Hialeah (Fla.), 1376, 1447



- Hidalgo, 862  
 Hidd, 180  
 Hierro, 1115  
 Higashiosaka, 758  
 Highland Region  
   (Scotland), 1299  
 High Point (N.C.), 1507  
 Hildesheim, 535, 543, 556  
 Hillingdon, 1299  
 Hillsborough, 311  
 Hilo (Hi.), 1451  
 Hilversum, 899-900  
 Himachal Pradesh, 630, 634, 648, 652-3, 662-3  
 Himeji, 758  
 Hinche, 597  
 Hinckley and Bosworth, 1297  
 Hirakata, 758  
 Hirakud, 679  
 Hiroshima, 758-9  
 Hissar, 661  
 Hivaoa, 516  
 Ho, 563, 566  
 Hoa Binh, 1586  
 Hoang Lien Son, 1583  
 Hobart, 97, 98, 149, 153  
 Hoboken (Belgium), 195  
 Hoboken (N.J.), 1499  
 Ho Chi Minh, 1584, 1586-8  
 Hodeida, 1594-6  
 Hodeh ech-Chargui, 855  
 Hodeh el-Gharbi, 855  
 Hofuf, 1057, 1061-2  
 Hoggar, 941  
 Hohenheim, 543, 547  
 Hohhot, 356, 366  
 Hokkaido, 758-9, 764-5  
 Holguín, 395  
 Holice Airport, 413  
 Holland, *see*  
   Netherlands  
 Hollywood (Fla.), 1376, 1447  
 Holon, 733  
 Holyoke (Mass.), 1476  
 Home Island (Cocos Islands), 126  
 Homs, 1175, 1178  
 Honan, 365  
 Honduras, 54, 602-5  
 Hong Gai, 1587  
 Hong Kong, 30, 607-13, 1311, 1315, 1584  
 Honiara, 1082-4  
 Honolulu (Hi.), 1375, 1451-3  
 Honshu, 758-9, 762, 764  
 Hoogeveen, 899  
 Hoogezaand-Sappemeer, 899  
 Hoorn, 899  
 Hopen, 960-1  
 Hopkinsville, (Ky.), 1466  
 Hordaland, 948  
 Hormozgán, 706, 709  
 Horowhenua, 916  
 Horsburgh Island, 126  
 Horsens, 416  
 Horsham (Australia), 154  
 Horsham (UK), 1297  
 Hoshangabad, 670  
 Hoshiapur, 662, 680  
 Hospitalet, 1116  
 Hot Springs (Ark.), 1433  
 Houet, 250  
 Houlton (Me.), 1471  
 Hounslow, 1299  
 Houston (Tex.), 1375, 1533-5  
 Houten, 899  
 Hove, 1297  
 Howrah, 692  
 Hradec Králové, 409  
 Hsinchu, 368  
 Huachipato, 353  
 Huahine, 515  
 Huaianan, 356  
 Hualien, 368, 371  
 Huambo, 81, 82, 84  
 Huancavelica, 996  
 Huancayo, 996  
 Huangpu, 364  
 Huánuco, 996  
 Huaraz, 996  
 Hubei, 356, 366  
 Hubli-Dharwar, 631  
 Huddinge, 1149  
 Hue, 1587  
 Huehuetenango, 581  
 Huelva, 1114, 1116  
 Huesca, 1114  
 Huevo, 1197  
 Huila (Angola), 82  
 Huila (Colombia), 373  
 Huizen, 899  
 Huju, 788  
 Hull (Canada), 272, 326  
 Hull (UK), 1297, 1348  
 Hulwan, 447  
 Humber, 1296  
 Humphrey Island, 931  
 Hunan, 356, 361  
 Hunedoara, 1032  
 Hungary, 47-8, 58, 126, 614-22  
 Hung Hom, 611  
 Hungnam, 788  
 Hunter Island, 513, 1570  
 Huntingdon, 1297  
 Huntington (W. Va.), 1546  
 Huntington Beach (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Huntsville (Ala.), 1376, 1425  
 Huon Islands, 513  
 Hurghada, 449  
 Huron (S.D.), 1529  
 Husaiba, 715  
 Húsavík, 623  
 Hwange, 1623, 1626  
 Hwanghai, 786  
 Hyderabad (India), 631-2, 647, 649-55  
 Hyderabad (Pakistan), 969  
 Hyesan, 786, 788  
 Hyvinge/kää, 475  
 IAEA, 12  
 Ialomița, 1032  
 Iasi, 1032, 1038  
 Ibadan, 942-3, 946  
 Ibagué, 373  
 Ibaraki, 758  
 Ibarra, 441  
 Ibb, 1594-5  
 IBRD, 19, 20-1  
 Ica, 996  
 ICAO, 22  
 İcel, 1206  
 Iceland, 36, 40, 46-7, 623-9  
 ICFTU, 32-3  
 Ichikawa, 758  
 Ichinomiya, 758  
 IDA, 21  
 Idaho, 1374, 1385, 1402, 1404, 1453-5  
 Idaho Falls (Id.), 1454  
 Idlib, 1175  
 IEA, 35  
 IFAD, 27-8  
 IFC, 21-2  
 Ife, 942  
 Ifni, 878  
 Ifrane, 878  
 Igarka, 1243  
 Iglesias, 747  
 Iisalmi, 475  
 Ijebu-Ode, 943  
 Ikare, 943  
 Ikeja, 946  
 Ikerre-Ekiti, 942  
 Ila, 942  
 Ilām and Poshtkuh, 706  
 Ilan, 368  
 Ilebo, 1614  
 Île-de-France, 485  
 Île de la Gonave, 597  
 Îles de Hoorn, 517  
 Îles des Saintes, 500-1  
 Îles du Vent, 515  
 Îles Glorieuses, 506  
 Ilesha, 942  
 Îles sous le Vent, 515, 517  
 Ilhas Desertas, 1020  
 Ilhas Selvagens, 1020  
 Iligan, 1002  
 Ilitchovsk, 247, 1244  
 Illinois, 1374, 1384-6, 1404, 1456-8  
 Illizi, 74  
 Illubabor, 463  
 ILO, 12-14  
 Ilobu, 943  
 Ilocos, 1002  
 Iloilo, 1002  
 Ilopongo Airport, 457  
 Ilorin, 942  
 Imathia, 572  
 Imatra, 475  
 Imbabura, 441  
 IMF, 18-20  
 IMO, 24-5  
 Imo, 942  
 Impala, 1106  
 Impfondo, 382  
 Imphal, 652, 675  
 Inaccessible Island, 1047  
 Inagua Islands, 175  
 Inanda, 1089  
 Inchiri, 855  
 Inchon, 780-1  
 Independence (Mo.), 1376, 1487  
 Independencia (Dominican Republic), 436  
 India, 29, 126, 187, 630-51, 973  
   -States, 630-1, 632, 634, 652-93  
   -Union Territories, 631, 632, 634, 693-8  
 Indiana, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1459-61  
 Indianapolis (Ind.), 1375, 1459-60  
 Indira Gandhi Airport, 696  
 Indonesia, 51, 699-705  
 Indore, 631, 649, 670-1  
 Inga, 1616  
 Inhambane, 884, 886  
 Inner Mongolia, 356  
 Innsbruck, 169, 173  
 Inter-American Institute of Agricultural Sciences, 388  
 International Atomic Energy Agency, 12  
 International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, 19, 20-1  
 International Centre for Advanced Technical and Vocational Training, 13  
 International Civil Aviation Organization, 22  
 International Confederation of Free Trade Unions, 32-3  
 International Court of Justice, 6  
 International Development Association, 21  
 International Energy Agency, 35  
 International Finance Corporation, 21-2  
 International Fund for Agricultural Development, 27-8  
 International Institute for Labour Studies, 13  
 International Labour Office/Organisation, 12-14  
 International Maritime Organization, 24-5  
 International Monetary Fund, 18-20  
 International Narcotics Control Board, 5  
 International Telecommunication Union, 23  
 International Trade Centre, 26  
 International Trade Federations, 33  
 International Trade Secretariats, 33  
 Itibuca, 602  
 Inuvik, 331-3, 335  
 Invercargill (New Zealand), 916  
 Inverclyde, 1300  
 Inverness, 1299  
 Inyanga, 1626  
 Ionian Islands, 571  
 Iowa, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1417, 1461-3  
 Iowa City (Ia.), 1461-2  
 Ipoh, 830, 837

- Ipswich, 1297  
 Iqaluit, 331, 333  
 Iquique, 349  
 Iquitos, 996, 998-9  
 Iran, 57, 706-11, 712  
 Irapuato, 863  
 Iraq, 29, 48, 57, 706, 712-16  
 Irbid, 767, 770  
 Irbil, 712, 715  
 Ireland, 40, 42, 44, 717-31, 1358  
 Irian Jaya, 699-700, 703-4  
 Iringa, 1179  
 Irsine, 1334  
 Irkutsk, 1223, 1243, 1247, 1251  
 Irrawaddy, 254  
 Irtysh, 1280  
 Irvine, 1300  
 Irving (Tex.), 1376, 1533  
 Irvington (N.J.), 1499  
 Isafjörður, 623  
 Isa Town, 180, 182  
 Iseyin, 942  
 Isfāhan, *see* Esfāhān  
 Isfjord, 961  
 Ishimbaev, 1237  
 Ishpushta, 65  
 Iskenderun, 1208-11  
 Isla de Cedros, 867  
 Isla de la Juventud, 395-6  
 Islamabad, 968-70, 976  
 Islam Qala, 66  
 Islas de la Bahía, 602  
 Isle of Man, 1295, 1300, 1341, 1365-7  
 Isle of Pines, 513  
 Isle of Wight, 1296  
 Islington, 1299  
 Ismailia, 447-8  
 Isparta, 1206-7  
 Israel, 45, 732-40, 798  
 Issia, 391  
 Issyk-Kul, 1288  
 Istanbul, 1206-8, 1211-12  
 Itabira, 234  
 Itaipu, 992  
 Italy, 36, 40, 41, 42, 126, 741-52  
 Itanagar, 652, 655  
 Itapua, 990  
 ITF, 33  
 Ithaca (N.Y.), 1506  
 Ithmaniya, 1061  
 ITS, 33  
 Itta Bena (Miss.), 1486  
 ITU, 23  
 Ituni, 594  
 Ivano-Frankovsk, 1223, 1261  
 Ivanovo, 1223, 1251  
 Ivato Airport, 824  
 Ivigtut, 429  
 Ivoloina, 825  
 Ivory Coast, *see* Côte d'Ivoire  
 Iwaki, 758  
 Iwo, 942  
 Ixelles, 195  
 Izabal, 581  
 Izhevsk, 1223, 1258  
 İzmir, 1206-8, 1210-12  
 Izmit, 1210  
 Jabal al-Akhdar, 810  
 Jabalpur, 631, 670-1  
 Jabal-us-Serāj, 65  
 Jabiru, 122  
 Jackson (Miss.), 1376, 1484, 1486  
 Jackson (Tenn.), 1531  
 Jacksonville (Fla.), 1375, 1447-8  
 Jaemel, 597  
 Jaén, 1114, 1116  
 Jaffa, 733  
 Jaffna, 1127, 1133  
 Jagang, 786  
 Jahangirnagar, 190  
 Jahra, 790  
 Jaipur, 631, 649, 652, 682-3  
 Jakarta, 699-701, 704  
 Jalālabād (Afghānistān), 63, 66-7  
 Jalal-Abad (USSR), 1284, 1288  
 Jalandhar, 631  
 Jalapa, 581  
 Jalapa Enriquez, 862-3, 868  
 Jalgaon, 672  
 Jalisco, 862  
 Jalpaiguri, 691-2  
 Jamaica, 28, 29, 55, 753-5  
 Jamalpur, 185, 188  
 Jambi, 699  
 James Spriggs Payne Airfield, 808  
 Jamestown (St Helena), 1046  
 Jamestown (N.Y.), 1504  
 Jammu, 664-5  
 Jammu and Kashmir, 630, 633-4, 642, 648, 652, 664-5  
 Jamnagar, 631, 659-60  
 Jamshedpur, 631, 658  
 Jämtland, 1148  
 Janakpur, 895-6  
 Janesville (Wisc.), 1548  
 Jan Mayen, 961  
 Jan Smuts Airport, 1095  
 Japan, 50, 126, 758-66, 982, 1225  
 Järjälä, 1149  
 Järvenpää, 475  
 Jarvis Island, 777  
 Jaunpur, 690  
 Java, 699-700, 703-4  
 Jawf, 1595  
 Jayanagar, 896  
 Jayapura, 700  
 J.B.M. Hertzog Airport, 1095  
 Jebel Ali, 1293-4  
 Jefferson City (Mo.), 1487  
 Jelenia Góra, 1010  
 Jelgava, 1275  
 Jember, 700  
 Jena, 527  
 Jendouba, 1201  
 Jérémie, 597  
 Jerez de la Frontera, 1116  
 Jersey, 1300, 1367-8, 1369-70  
 Jersey City (N.J.), 1376, 1499  
 Jerusalem, 732-3, 738-9  
 Jervis Bay, 97, 120  
 Jessore, 185, 189  
 Jethou, 1300, 1367  
 Jette, 195  
 Jewish Autonomous Region (USSR), 1251, 1259  
 Jhang, 969  
 Jhansi, 631, 690  
 Jiangsu, 356  
 Jiangxi, 356  
 Jiddah, 1057-8, 1060-2  
 Jidda Island, 180  
 Jidhafs, 180  
 Jihočeský Region, 409  
 Jihomoravský Region, 409  
 Jijel, 74  
 Jilikalum, 1287  
 Jilin, 356, 361, 366  
 Jimma, 463  
 Jinan, 356  
 Jind, 661  
 Jinja, 1218  
 Jinotepe, 934  
 Jizan, 1057, 1061  
 João Pessoa, 229-30, 236  
 Joda, 679  
 Jodhpur, 631, 638, 683  
 Joensuu, 475, 481  
 Johannesburg, 1089, 1095, 1097  
 Johnson City (Tenn.), 1531  
 Johnston and Sand Islands, 1375, 1559  
 Johor Baharu, 830  
 Johore, 830-1, 835-7  
 Joiville, 230  
 Joliet (Ill.), 1456  
 Jomo Kenyatta Airport, 775  
 Jonesboro (Ark.), 1433  
 Jönköping, 1148-9  
 Jonquière, 272  
 Joplin (Mo.), 1487  
 Jordan, 29, 45, 767-71  
 Jordanstown, 1364  
 Jorf Lasfar, 882  
 Jorhat, 656  
 Jos, 942  
 Jost Van Dyke, 1589  
 Jounieh, 801  
 Joya Mair, 973  
 Juan de Nova, 506  
 Juan Fernández Islands, 349  
 Juba (Somalia), 1086  
 Juba (Sudan), 1135-6, 1138-9  
 Jubail, 1057-8, 1060  
 Jubbahthi Airport, 663  
 Judaea and Samaria, *see* West Bank  
 Juigalpa, 934, 937  
 Juiz de Fora, 230  
 Juju, 90  
 Jullundur, 680  
 Junagadh, 659  
 Jundiai, 230  
 Juneau (Ak.), 1428, 1430  
 Junin, 996  
 Junk Bay, 607  
 Jura, 1164-6  
 Jurmala, 1275  
 Jurong, 1077-9  
 Jutiapa, 581  
 Juticalpa, 602  
 Jwaneng, 224, 226  
 Jyväskylä, 475, 481  
 Kabardin-Balkaria, 1251, 1254  
 Kābul, 63, 65-7  
 Kabwe, 1619  
 Kachchativu, 1127  
 Kachin, 254  
 Kadiogo, 250  
 Kadmat, 697  
 Kadoma, 1623  
 Kaduna, 942, 944  
 Kaédi, 855  
 Kaesong, 785-6, 788  
 Kaif, 1201  
 Kafan, 1271  
 Kafr ad-Dawwar, 447  
 Kafr el Sheikh, 447  
 Kaga-Bandoro, 342  
 Kagera, 1179  
 Kagoshima, 758  
 Kagulsk, 1272  
 Kohoolawe (Hi.), 1451  
 Kāhramanmaraş, 1206  
 Kailashahar, 688  
 Kaimiro, 920  
 Kaira, 659  
 Kairouan, 1201  
 Kaiserslautern, 543, 559  
 Kajaani, 475  
 Kakamega, 772  
 Kakanda, 587  
 Kakata, 806  
 Kakhovka, 1244, 1262  
 Kakinada, 653-4  
 Kalabagh, 973  
 Kalach, 1244  
 Kalamazoo (Mich.), 1479  
 Kalat, 974  
 Kalatuwawa, 1130  
 Kalémie, 1614  
 Kalgoorlie, 161, 164, 166  
 Kalimantan, 699-700, 703-4  
 Kalingapatnam, 654  
 Kalinin, 1223, 1251  
 Kaliningrad, 526, 1223, 1225, 1251  
 Kalispell (Mont.), 1489  
 Kalisz, 1010  
 Kalkidhiki, 572  
 Kalmar, 1148-9  
 Kalmykia, 1247, 1251, 1254  
 Kalpeni, 697  
 Kaluga, 1223, 1251  
 Kalulushi, 1619  
 Kalutara, 1127  
 Kalyani, 693  
 Kamalpur, 688  
 Karaman, 1597  
 Kamchatka, 1251  
 Kamembe Airport, 1042  
 Kameng, 655  
 Kamensk, 1272  
 Kamensk-Uralsky, 1223  
 Kamina, 1614  
 Kamloops, 302, 306  
 Kampala, 1218-19  
 Kampen, 899  
 Kampot, 264

- Kampuchea, *see*  
     Cambodia  
 Kamuzu Airport, 828  
 Kamyshin, 1238,  
     1240-1  
 Kananga, 1614-15  
 Kanara, 666  
 Kanazawa, 758  
 Kandahar, 63, 65-6  
 Kandi, 208, 210  
 Kanda, 648, 660-1  
 Kandy, 1127-8  
 Kanem, 346  
 Kangar, 830  
 Kanggye, 786, 788  
 Kangra, 662-3  
 Ka Nwange, 1088, 1091,  
     1102  
 Kangwon, 780  
 Kangwon, North, 786  
 Kankan, 586, 588  
 Kano, 942-3  
 Kanombe Airport, 1042  
 Kanpur, 631, 690  
 Kansas, 1374, 1385,  
     1404, 1463-5  
 Kansas City (Kans.),  
     1376, 1463  
 Kansas City (Mo.), 1375,  
     1487-8  
 Kanto, 758  
 Kanton, 777  
 Kaohsiung, 368, 371  
 Kaolack, 1063, 1065-6  
 Kapanda, 82  
 Kapfenberg, 169  
 Kaposvár, 614  
 Kaptai, 186  
 Kapuni, 920  
 Kapurthala, 680  
 Kara, 1190  
 Karabuk, 1210  
 Karachaev-Cherkessia,  
     1251, 1259-60  
 Karachi, 969-70, 973,  
     975-6  
 Karadag, 1266  
 Karaganda, 1223, 1244,  
     1279-80  
 Karaj, 707  
 Karak, 767  
 Karakalpakia, 1283,  
     1285  
 Karamai, 361, 364  
 Karamoja, 1218  
 Karaskpai, 1280  
 Karbala, 712  
 Karditsa, 571  
 Karelia, 1225, 1251,  
     1255  
 Karen, 254  
 Kariba, 1626  
 Karikal, 697  
 Karima, 1138  
 Karimnaga, 653  
 Karkar, 65  
 Karl-Marx-Stadt, 527  
 Karliskrona, 1149  
 Karlsruhe, 535, 547  
 Karlstad, 1149  
 Karnal, 661-2  
 Karnali, 895  
 Karnataka, 630, 633-4,  
     642, 648, 652,  
     665-7  
 Karonga, 828  
 Karpenissi, 571  
 Kars, 1206  
 Karshe, 1284  
 Kartong, 524  
 Karviná, 409  
 Karwar, 667  
 Karyai, 572  
 Kasai, 1614  
 Kasama, 161  
 Kasane, 226  
 Kasaragod, 667  
 Kashiwa, 758  
 Kaskadar, 1283  
 Kashmir, 970; *see also*  
     Jammu and  
     Kashmir  
 Kaslik, 802  
 Kassala, 1135, 1138  
 Kassel, 535  
 Kassérine, 1201, 1203  
 Kassinga, 82  
 Kastamonu, 1206, 1210  
 Kastoria, 572  
 Kasugai, 758  
 Kasungu, 827  
 Kasur, 969  
 Katanga, *see* Shaba  
 Katerini, 572  
 Katherine, 122-4  
 Káthmándu, 894, 896  
 Katihar, 657  
 Katiola, 391  
 Katni, 671  
 Katowice, 1010  
 Katsina, 942  
 Katunayake, 1131  
 Katwijk, 899  
 Kau (Hi.), 1451  
 Kaunas, 1223, 1247,  
     1277-8  
 Kavajë, 68  
 Kavalla, 572  
 Kavaratti, 697  
 Kavieng, 984  
 Kawagoe, 758  
 Kawaguchi, 758  
 Kawasaki, 759  
 Kaya, 250, 252  
 Kayah, 254  
 Kayes, 846, 848, 1066  
 Kayseri, 1206-7  
 Kazakhstan, 1223-5,  
     1235, 1247,  
     1279-80  
 Kazan, 1223, 1248,  
     1251  
 Kaziranga, 674, 678  
 Kearney (Nebr.),  
     1493  
 Keban, 1209  
 Kebili, 1201  
 Keçiborlu, 1209  
 Kecskemét, 614  
 Kedah, 830-1, 835  
 Kediri, 700  
 Keele, 1348  
 Keeling Islands, *see*  
     Cocos (Keeling)  
     Islands  
 Keelung, 368, 371  
 Keene (N.H.), 1497  
 Keetmanshoop, 889  
 Keewatin, 331, 333  
 Kefá, 463  
 Kefallenia, 571  
 Keflavik, 623  
 Kelang, 830  
 Kelaniya, 1133  
 Kelantan, 830-1, 835  
 Kelowna, 303, 306  
 Kemerovo, 1223, 1243,  
     1251  
 Kemi, 475  
 Kemo-Gribingui, 342  
 Kenai Peninsula (Ak.),  
     1428  
 Kendari, 700  
 KénéDougou, 250  
 Kenema, 1070, 1072-3  
 Keningau, 838-9  
 Kénitra, 878-9  
 Kenner (La.), 1468  
 Kenosha (Wisc.), 1548  
 Kensington and Chelsea,  
     1299  
 Kent, 1296, 1348  
 Kentucky, 1374, 1385,  
     1404, 1406, 1465-8  
 Kenya, 29, 772-6  
 Kerala, 631, 634, 642-3,  
     648-9, 652, 667-9  
 Kerava, 475  
 Kerch, 1223  
 Kerema, 984  
 Kerguelen Islands,  
     511-12  
 Kericho, 775  
 Kerki, 1284  
 Kerkrae, 899-900  
 Kerkyra, 571  
 Kermadec Islands, 929  
 Kermán, 706-7, 710  
 Kerry, 717  
 Keshod, 660  
 Keski-Suomi, 474  
 Keta, 563  
 Ketchikan (Ak.), 1428-9  
 Kete-Krachi, 566  
 Kettering (Oh.), 1512  
 Keyser (W. Va.), 1546  
 Khabarovsk, 1223,  
     1243, 1251  
 Khaburah, 963  
 Khadoli, 695  
 Khairagarh, 671  
 Khajuraho Airport, 671  
 Khakassia, 1251, 1260  
 Khamis-Mushait, 1057  
 Khammam, 653  
 Khanaqin, 715  
 Khandesh, 672  
 Khandwar, 669, 671  
 Khanmuh, 665  
 Khanty-Mansi(isk),  
     1251, 1260  
 Kharagpur, 692  
 Kharar, 680  
 Kharg Island, 709  
 Kharkov, 1223, 1243,  
     1248, 1261-2  
 Khartoum, 1135-6,  
     1138-9  
 Khaskovo, 243  
 Khatanga, 1243  
 Khémisset, 878  
 Khenchela, 74  
 Khénitra, 878  
 Kherson, 1223, 1241,  
     1261  
 Khios, 572  
 Khmel'nitsky, 1261  
 Khneifis, 1177  
 Khon Kaen, 1184, 1189  
 Khorásán, 706, 709  
 Khorezm, 1283  
 Khormaksar, 1599  
 Khorog, 1286-7  
 Khorramabad, 706-7  
 Khorramshahr, 707  
 Khota, 683  
 Khouribga, 878-9  
 Khowai, 688  
 Khulna, 185-6  
 Khums, 810  
 Khuzestán, 706  
 Khyber, 970  
 Kiama, 130  
 Kibungo, 1040  
 Kibuye, 1040  
 Kidatu, 1181  
 Kidira, 1065  
 Kidston, 140  
 Kiel, 535, 543, 562  
 Kielce, 1010  
 Kiên Giang, 1584  
 Kié-Ntem, 459  
 Kieta, 986  
 Kiev, 1223-4, 1243,  
     1245, 1247-8,  
     1261-2  
 Kiffa, 857  
 Kigali, 1040, 1042  
 Kigoma, 1179  
 Kikwit, 1614  
 Kildare, 717  
 Kilimanjaro, 1179, 1182  
 Kilindini, 775  
 Kilkenny, 717  
 Kilis, 572  
 Kilmarnock, 1300  
 Kilroot, 1358  
 Kiltan, 697  
 Kimbe, 984  
 Kimberley, 1089, 1095  
 Kimchaek, 785  
 Kincardine and Deeside,  
     1299  
 Kindia, 586-7  
 King Fahd Airport,  
     1061  
 King Island, 150  
 Kingman Reef, 777  
 Kings County (N.Y.),  
     *see* Brooklyn (N.Y.)  
 King's Lynn and West  
     Norfolk, 1297  
 Kingsport (Tenn.), 1531  
 Kingston (Jamaica), 753,  
     756  
 Kingston (Norfolk  
     Island), 128  
 Kingston upon Hull,  
     1297, 1348  
 Kingston upon Thames,  
     1299  
 Kingstown, 1050-2  
 Kinguélé, 520  
 King William's Town,  
     1089  
 Kinkala, 382  
 Kinki, 758  
 Kinma, 368  
 Kinshasa, 1614-15,  
     1617-18  
 Kiofi, 260  
 Kirghizia, 1223-5,  
     1287-9  
 Kiribati, 29, 777-9  
 Kirimati, 777-8  
 Kirkcaldy, 1299  
 Kirklareli, 1206  
 Kirklees, 1297  
 Kirkuk, 712, 714-15  
 Kirov, 1223, 1251  
 Kirovabad, 1223, 1265,  
     1268



- Kirovakan, 1270-1  
 Kirovograd, 1223, 1261  
 Kirşehir, 1206  
 Kiruna, 1154  
 Kisangani, 1614-15,  
 1617-18  
 Kishinev, 1223, 1243,  
 1272  
 Kisii, 775  
 Kisimayu, 1085, 1087  
 Kiskunfélegyháza, 616  
 Kislaya Guba, 1237  
 Kismaayo, 1085  
 Kisumu, 772, 775  
 Kitab, 1284  
 Kitakyushu, 759  
 Kitale, 775  
 Kitchener, 272, 321  
 Kitikmeot, 330, 333  
 Kitwe, 1619  
 Kivu, 1614  
 Kladno, 409, 412  
 Klagenfurt, 169, 173  
 Klaipėda, 531, 1223,  
 1244, 1277  
 Klaksvig, 428  
 Klamath Falls (Oreg.),  
 1520  
 Klang, 836  
 Klosterneuburg, 169  
 Knokke, 201  
 Knowlesy, 1297  
 Knoxville (Tenn.), 1376,  
 1406, 1531-2  
 Kobe, 759  
 Koblenz, 535, 543, 559  
 Kobuleti, 1269  
 Kocaeli, 1206-7  
 Kochbulak, 1284  
 Kochi, 759  
 Kodiak Island (Ak.),  
 1428, 1430  
 Koekelberg, 195  
 Koforidua, 563  
 Kogo, 459, 461  
 Kohima, 652, 677-8  
 Kohistan, 975  
 Kohtla-Järve, 1273-4  
 Koidu, 1073  
 Kokand, 1284  
 Kakkola, 475  
 Kolaba, 672  
 Kolar, 666  
 Kolda, 1063  
 Kolding, 416  
 Kole, 267  
 Kolhapur, 631, 673  
 Kollegal, 666  
 Kolombangara, 1082  
 Kolonna, 1247  
 Kolonia, 1556  
 Kolonjë, 68  
 Kolwezi, 1614  
 Komárom, 614  
 Kombo St Mary,  
 523  
 Komi, 1251, 1255-6  
 Komi-Permyak, 1251,  
 1260  
 Komotini, 572  
 Kompong Cham, 262-3  
 Kompong Som, 264  
 Komsomolsk-on-Amur,  
 1223, 1243  
 Konark, 679  
 Kondapalli, 654  
 Kong Karls Land, 960  
 Kongsberg, 949  
 Königswusterhausen,  
 531  
 Konin, 1010  
 Konstanzt, 543, 547  
 Kon Tum, 1583  
 Konya, 1206-7,  
 1210-11  
 Kópavogur, 623  
 Köpenick, 549  
 Kopparberg, 1148  
 Koraput, 679  
 Korba, 670-1  
 Korçë, 68, 70-2  
 Kordistan, 706  
 Korea, North, 780,  
 785-9  
 Korea, South, 780-4,  
 785  
 Korhogo, 391  
 Korinthia/os, *see*  
 Corinth  
 Koriyama, 759  
 Koror, 1555-6  
 Koryak, 1251, 1260  
 Koshigaya, 759  
 Kosi, 895  
 Košice, 409, 413-14  
 Kosovo, 1601-2, 1605,  
 1612-13  
 Kosrae, 1556  
 Kossi, 250  
 Kosti, 1135, 1138  
 Kostrova, 1223, 1251  
 Koszalin, 1010  
 Kota Baharu, 830  
 Kotah, 631, 669  
 Kota Kinabalu, 830,  
 838-40  
 Kothagudam, 653  
 Kothmale, 1130  
 Kotka, 475  
 Kottayam, 669  
 Kotte, 1127  
 Kotu Islands, 1194  
 Koudougou, 250  
 Kouilou, 382  
 Koulamoutou, 519, 521  
 Kouljokoro, 846, 848  
 Kouritenga, 250  
 Kourou, 502-3  
 Kouroussa, 848  
 Kouvola, 475, 481  
 Kovno, *see* Kaunas  
 Kowloon, 607, 610  
 Koyali, 660  
 Kozani, 572  
 Kozhikode, *see* Calicut  
 Kpalimé, 1190-2  
 Kpandu, 566  
 Kpémé, 1192  
 Kragujevac, 1601  
 Kraków, 1010-11  
 Kraljevo, 1601  
 Kramatorsk, 1223  
 Krasnodar, 1223, 1251  
 Krasnovodsk, 1281  
 Krasnoyarsk, 1223,  
 1237, 1243, 1251  
 Krefeld, 535  
 Kremenchug, 1223,  
 1238  
 Krems an der Donau,  
 169  
 Kreuzberg, 549  
 Kribi, 268  
 Krimpen aan den IJssel,  
 899  
 Krishnapatnam, 654  
 Kristiansand, 949  
 Kristianstad, 1148-9  
 Krivoi Rog, 1223,  
 1261-2  
 Krk, 1606  
 Kronoberg, 1148  
 Krosno, 1010  
 Krško, 1605  
 Kruijé, 68  
 Krusevac, 1601  
 Krutitsy, 1247  
 Ksar al Kabir, 879  
 Kuala Belait, 239, 241  
 Kuala Lumpur, 830-3,  
 836-7, 839, 842  
 Kuala Terengganu, 830  
 Kuantan, 830, 837  
 Kuching, 830, 840-2  
 Kudat, 838  
 Kudy mkar, 1260  
 Kufrah, 810  
 Kuibyshev, 1223,  
 1237-8, 1243-4,  
 1251  
 Kujang, 788  
 Kukës, 68  
 Kulu, 662-3, 681  
 Kulyab, 1285  
 Kumamoto, 759  
 Kumanovo, 1601, 1605  
 Kumaon, 690  
 Kumasi, 563-4, 566  
 Kumba, 265, 268  
 Kumo, 943  
 Kunashiri, 1225  
 Kundiawa, 984  
 Kunduz, 63, 66  
 Kungrad, 1284  
 Kungsbacka, 1149  
 Kunming, 356, 364, 366  
 Kuopio, 474-5, 481  
 Kupang, 700  
 Kurashiki, 759  
 Kurdish Autonomous  
 Region (Iraq),  
 712-13  
 Kurdufan, 1135  
 Kürdzhali, 243  
 Kûre, 1209  
 Kurgan, 1223, 1251,  
 1285-7  
 Kuria, 777  
 Kuria Muria Islands,  
 963  
 Kurile Islands, 1225  
 Kurnool, 653  
 Kurram, 970  
 Kursk, 1223, 1235,  
 1237, 1251  
 Kurukshetra, 661-2  
 Kushtia, 185  
 Kustanai, 1223, 1280  
 Kütahya, 1206  
 Kutaisi, 1223, 1267-8  
 Kutch, 659  
 Kuusankoski, 475  
 Kuwait, 57, 790-3  
 Kvitya, 960  
 Kwabhaca, 1107  
 Kwai Chung, 607, 611  
 Kwajalein, 1556  
 Kwa Ndebele, 1088,  
 1091, 1102  
 Kwangchu, 781  
 Kwara, 942  
 Kwa Zulu, 1088, 1091,  
 1101  
 Kwekwe, 1623  
 Kwinana, 164  
 Kwun Tong, 611  
 Kyle and Carrick, 1300  
 Kymi, 474  
 Kyonggi, 780  
 Kyongsan, 780  
 Kyoto, 759, 765  
 Kyrenia, 401, 407  
 Kyushu, 758  
 Kyustendil, 243  
 Kyzyl, 1257  
 Kyzyl-Kiya, 1288  
 Kzyl-Orda, 1223, 1280  
 La Altagracia, 436  
 La Asunción, 1576  
 Laâyoune, 878, 1126  
 Labé, 586  
 Labrador, 313-16  
 Labuan, 830, 832, 838-9  
 Labugama, 1130  
 Labyrinth Islands, 693  
 Lac, 346  
 Laccadive Islands, *see*  
 Lakshadweep  
 La Ceiba, 602-3, 605  
 La Condamine, 869  
 Laconia (N.H.), 1497  
 La Coruña, 1115-16  
 Lacq, 492  
 La Crosse (Wisc.), 1548,  
 1550  
 La Désirade, 500  
 La Digue, 1067  
 La Dorada, 377  
 Lady Julia Percy Island,  
 155  
 Lac, 985  
 La Estrella, 436  
 La Faleme, 1065  
 Lafayette (Ind.), 1460  
 Lafayette (La.), 1468  
 Laghouat, 74  
 Lagos, 942-3, 946  
 La Goulette, 1201, 1204  
 La Grande (Oreg.), 1520  
 La Guaira, 1580-1  
 La Guajira, 373  
 Lahad Datu, 838-9  
 Lahaul, 662  
 Lahej, 1598  
 Lahn, 554  
 Lahore, 969-70, 976  
 Lahti, 475  
 Lai, 346-7  
 LAIA, 54  
 Lai Chau, 1583  
 Lajjun, 769  
 La Joya, 999  
 Lake Charles (La.), 1468  
 Lake Macquarie, 130  
 Lakewood (Colo.), 1376,  
 1438  
 Lakewood (Oh.), 1512  
 Lakhra, 973  
 Lakonia, 571  
 Lakota, 391  
 Lakshadweep, 631, 634,  
 636, 649, 652,  
 696-7  
 La Laguna, 1116, 1125  
 La Libertad (El  
 Salvador), 454, 457  
 La Libertad (Peru), 996  
 Lalitpur, 894-5  
 Lalitpur Airport, 690  
 La Louvière, 195  
 La Marsa, 1204

- La Massana, 80  
 Lambaréné, 519, 521  
 Lambaycque, 996  
 Lambeth, 1299  
 Lam Dong, 1583  
 Lamentin, 504-5  
 Lamia, 571  
 Lampang, 1184  
 Lampeter, 1347-8  
 Lampung, 699, 704  
 Lanai (Hi.), 1451  
 Lancashire, 1296, 1298, 1336  
 Lancaster (Oh.), 1512  
 Lancaster (Pa.), 1521  
 Lancaster (U.K.), 1297, 1348  
 Landgraaf, 899  
 Langbaugh, 1297  
 Langlade, 508  
 Lang Son, 1583  
 Languedoc-Roussillon, 485  
 L'Anse-au-Meadow, 312  
 Lansing (Mich.), 1376, 1479  
 Lanus, 91  
 Lanzarote, 1115  
 Lanzhou, 356, 364, 366  
 Laoghis, 717  
 Laos, 48, 794-7, 1188, 1585  
 La Palma (Panama), 978  
 La Palma (Spain), 1115  
 La Pampa, 90, 95  
 La Paz (Bolivia), 218-20, 222-3  
 La Paz (El Salvador), 454  
 La Paz (Honduras), 602  
 La Paz (Mexico), 862-3  
 La Plata, 90, 91, 95  
 Lappeenranta, 475, 481  
 Lappi, 474  
 Lappland, 474  
 La Quiaca, 221  
 L'Aquila, 751  
 Lara, 1576  
 Laramie (Wyo.), 1551-2  
 Laredo (Tex.), 1533  
 Largeau, 346  
 Largo (Fla.), 1447  
 La Rioja (Argentina), 90, 94  
 La Rioja (Spain), 1115, 1118  
 Larissa, 571  
 Larnaca, 401, 405  
 Larne, 1357, 1363  
 La Rochelle, 485  
 La Romana, 436  
 L'Artibonite, 597  
 Las Cruces (N. Mex.), 1501, 1503  
 La Seo de Urgel, 80  
 La Serena, 349  
 Lashkargah, 65  
 La Shkirra, 1204  
 Las Palmas, 1114, 1116, 1118, 1125  
 La Spezia, 742, 745  
 Lassithi, 572  
 Las Tablas, 978  
 Lastourville, 521  
 Las Tunas, 395  
 Las Vegas (Nev.), 1376, 1494-6  
 Las Vegas (N. Mex.), 1503  
 Lata, 1084  
 Latacunga, 441  
 Latin American Association of Development Financing Institutions, 54  
 Latin American Banking Federation, 54  
 Latin American Economic System, 54  
 Latin American Integration Association, 54  
 La Tontouta Airport, 514  
 La Tortue, 597  
 La Trinité, 504  
 Lattakia, 1175, 1178  
 Latvia, 1223, 1225, 1247, 1275-6  
 Launceston (Australia), 149, 153  
 La Unión, 454, 457  
 Laurium, 574  
 Lausanne, 1165, 1172-3  
 Lautoka, 470, 472  
 Laval, 326, 328  
 Lavalleya, 1565  
 La Vega, 436, 439  
 La Villiaze, 1371  
 Lawra, 566  
 Lawrence (Kans.), 1463, 1465  
 Lawrence (Mass.), 1476  
 Lawton (Okla.), 1515, 1517  
 Lázaro Cárdenas, 867  
 Lazio, 741, 744  
 League of Arab States, 56-7  
 Leba, 1013  
 Lebanon, 45, 732, 798-802  
 Lebanon (N.H.), 1497  
 Lebowa, 1088, 1091, 1102  
 Lecce, 742, 751  
 Leduc, 299, 300  
 Leeds, 1297, 1348  
 Leeuwarden, 899  
 Leeward Islands (French Polynesia), 515, 517  
 Leeward Islands (Netherlands Antilles), 912  
 Lefka, 407  
 Leganés, 1116  
 Legaspi, 1002  
 Leghorn, 742, 746  
 Legnica, 1010  
 Leguan, 595  
 Leh Airport, 665  
 Le Havre, 485  
 Leicester, 1297, 1348  
 Leicestershire, 1296  
 Leiden, 899-900  
 Leiderdorp, 899  
 Leidschendam, 899  
 Leinster, 717  
 Leipzig, 527-8, 531  
 Leiria, 1019, 1024  
 Leitrim, 718  
 Le Kef, 1201  
 Lekemti, 463  
 Lékoumou, 382  
 Lelystad, 900  
 Le Mans, 485  
 Lempira, 602  
 Lena, 1243  
 Leninabad, 1285  
 Leninakan, 1223, 1270-1  
 Leningrad, 1223-4, 1232, 1237, 1243, 1245, 1247-8, 1251, 1274  
 Leninogorsk, 1280  
 Leninsk, 1282  
 Lenkoran, 1266  
 Lennoxville, 328  
 Lens, 485  
 Leoben, 169, 173  
 Leominster (Mass.), 1476  
 León (Nicaragua), 934, 937  
 León (Spain), 1115-16, 1125  
 León de los Aldamas, 863  
 Leonding, 169  
 Leopoldville, *see* Kinshasa  
 Léraba, 393  
 Lérabe, 803  
 Lérida, 1115-16  
 Les Abymes, 501  
 Les Cayes, 597  
 Les Escaldes, 79, 80  
 Leskovac, 1601  
 Lesotho, 29, 803-5, 1093, 1095  
 Les Saintes, *see* Îles des Saintes  
 Lesvos, 572  
 Leszno, 1010  
 Lethbridge, 299, 300, 302  
 Leticia, 374  
 Letterkenny, 728  
 Leusden, 900  
 Leuuka, 472  
 Levadia, 571  
 Leverkusen, 535  
 Levin, 916  
 Levkas, 571  
 Lewisburg (W. Va.), 1546  
 Lewisham, 1299  
 Lewiston (Id.), 1454-5  
 Lewiston (Me.), 1470, 1472  
 Lexington (Va.), 1541  
 Lexington-Fayette (Ky.), 1376, 1466-7  
 Leyte, 1002  
 Lezhë, 68  
 Lhasa, 356-7, 364  
 Lianyungang, 364  
 Liaoning, 356  
 Liberador, 349  
 Liberec, 409  
 Liberia, 806-9  
 Liberia (Costa Rica), 386  
 Librazhd, 68  
 Libreville, 519, 521  
 Libya, 810-14  
 Lichfield, 1297  
 Lichinga, 884  
 Lichtenberg, 549  
 Lida, 1264  
 Liechtenstein, 40, 815-17  
 Liège, 194-5, 202  
 Liepāja, 1247, 1275  
 Lier, 195  
 Lifou, 513  
 Liguria, 741, 744  
 Lihou, 1300, 1367  
 Likasi, 1614  
 Likouala, 382  
 Lille, 485, 495, 497  
 Lillehammer, 949  
 Lilongwe, 826-8  
 Lima (Oh.), 1512  
 Lima (Peru), 996-7, 999-1000  
 Limassol, 401  
 Limavady, 1357  
 Limbe (Cameroon), 265, 268  
 Limbe (Malawi), 827  
 Limbourg, 194, 202  
 Limburg, 899  
 Limerick, 717-18, 728  
 Limoges, 485  
 Limón, 386, 389  
 Limousin, 485  
 Lincoln (Nebr.), 1376, 1491-3  
 Lincolnshire, 1296  
 Linden, 592, 594  
 Lindenhurst (N.Y.), 1504  
 Lindi, 1179  
 Line Islands, 777-8  
 Linköping, 1149  
 Linz, 169, 173  
 Lipa, 1002  
 Lipetsk, 1223, 1251  
 Lisbon, 1019-20, 1023-4, 1027  
 Lisburn, 1357  
 Lismore, 130  
 Lisse, 900  
 Litha, 1110  
 Lithgow, Greater, 130  
 Lithuania, 1223, 1225, 1247, 1276-8  
 Litoral Province (Equatorial Guinea), 459  
 Little Cayman, 340  
 Little Rock (Ark.), 1376, 1433  
 Littoral Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Liuzhou, 364  
 Liverpool, 1297, 1348  
 Livigno, 748  
 Livingston, 1300  
 Livingstone, 1619  
 Livonia (Mich.), 1376, 1479  
 Livorno, *see* Leghorn  
 Ljubija, 1605  
 Ljubljana, 1601, 1606, 1613  
 Lloydminster (Alberta), 299, 300  
 Lloydminster (Saskatchewan), 329  
 Lobatse, 224  
 Lobaye, 342  
 Lobith, 907  
 Lobito, 81, 83  
 Lobos, 1115  
 Lochaber, 1299  
 Łódź, 1010

- Lofa, 806  
 Logan (Ut.), 1536-7  
 Logone, 346  
 Logroño, 1115-16  
 Loheiya, 1594, 1596  
 Lohit, 655  
 Loja, 441, 445  
 Lokeren, 195  
 Lokossa, 208  
 Loma de Hierro, 1579  
 Lomas de Zemora, 91  
 Lombardy, 741, 744, 747  
 Lombok, 700  
 Lomé, 1190, 1192-3  
 Lomža, 1010  
 London (Canada), 272, 321  
 London (UK), 1295-6, 1298, 1302, 1309, 1318, 1332-3, 1347-8  
   -Boroughs, 1299, 1331  
 London, City of, 1299, 1318, 1331, 1348  
 Londonderry, 1357, 1364  
 Londrina, 230  
 Long An, 1584  
 Long Beach (Calif.), 1375, 1435, 1437  
 Long Cay, 175  
 Longford (Australia), 157  
 Longford (Ireland), 717  
 Longhai, 364  
 Long Island (Bahamas), 175  
 Longview (Wash.), 1542  
 Longyearbyen, 961  
 Loon op Zand, 900  
 Lopevi, 1570  
 Lorain (Oh.), 1512  
 Lord Howe Island, 129, 1082  
 Lorengau, 984  
 Lorestan, 706  
 Loreto, 996  
 Lorient, 485  
 Lorman (Miss.), 1486  
 Lorraine, 485  
 Los Angeles (Calif.), 1375, 1435, 1437  
 Los Angeles (Chile), 350  
 Los Lagos, 349  
 Los Mochis, 863  
 Los Rios, 441  
 Los Santos, 978  
 Losser, 900  
 Los Teques, 1576  
 Lothian, 1299  
 Lotschberg, 1172  
 Louhomo, 382  
 Louga, 1063  
 Loughborough, 1348  
 Louis Botha Airport, 1095  
 Louisiana, 1374, 1384-5, 1387, 1404, 1406, 1468-70  
 Louisville (Ky.), 1376, 1466-7  
 Loures, 1024  
 Louth, 717  
 Louvain, 195, 202  
 Lovech, 243  
 Lowell (Mass.), 1476  
 Lower Austria, 169, 170  
 Lower Saxony, 534-5, 539-40, 555-6  
 Lo Wu, 611  
 Loyalty Islands, 513  
 Loy Yang, 156  
 Luanda, 81-4  
 Luang Prabang, 794, 797  
 Luano Airport, 1617  
 Luanshya, 1619  
 Luapula, 1619  
 Luba, 459, 461  
 Lubango, 81, 84  
 Lubbock (Tex.), 1376, 1533, 1535  
 Lübeck, 535, 543, 562  
 Lublin, 1010, 1016  
 Lubombo, 1144-5  
 Lubumbashi, 1614, 1617-18  
 Luena, 1002  
 Lucerne, 1164-7, 1173  
 Lucknow, 631, 649, 652, 689-90  
 Luda, 364  
 Luderitz, 891  
 Ludhiana, 631, 680-1  
 Ludwigshafen am Rhein, 535  
 Lugano, 1173  
 Lugansk, 1262  
 Lugo, 1115-16  
 Lugovaya, 1289  
 Luleå, 1149, 1154  
 Luluabourg, *see* Kananga  
 Lumbini, 895  
 Lumut, 832  
 Lund, 1149  
 Lunda, 82  
 Lüneberg, 543, 556  
 Lungi Airport, 1072  
 Luoyang, 356  
 Luqa, 852  
 Lusaka, 1619, 1621  
 Lushnjë, 68  
 Luskisiki, 1107  
 Lustenau, 169  
 Luton, 1297  
 Luxembourg, 36, 39, 40, 41, 42, 199, 818-21, 906  
 Luxembourg (Belgium), 194  
 Luxor, 447-8, 452  
 Luyengo, 1147  
 Luzon, 1002, 1006  
 Lvov, 1008, 1223, 1243, 1261-2  
 Lwow, *see* Lvov  
 Lynehburg (Va.), 1540  
 Lynn (Mass.), 1476  
 Lyon, 485-6, 494-5, 497  
 Lyttelton, 925  
 Lyubertsy, 1223  
 Ma'an, 767, 770  
 Maanshan, 361  
 Maarssen, 900  
 Maastricht, 900  
 Macao, 1025-7  
 Macapá, 229  
 Macas, 441  
 McCarren International Airport (Nev.), 1495  
 Macclesfield, 1297  
 McDonald Islands, 30, 97, 128  
 Macedonia (Greece), 572, 575  
 Macedonia (Yugoslavia), 1610-11  
 Maeiō, 229-30  
 Macerata, 751  
 Maehakos, 772  
 Maehala, 441, 444-5  
 Machias (Me.), 1471  
 Maehida, 759  
 Machilipatnam, 653-4  
 Machkund, 653  
 Maekay, 138  
 McKean, 777  
 McKee, 920  
 Maekenzie, 595  
 McMinnville (Oreg.), 1520  
 Macomb (Ill.), 1458  
 Macon (Ga.), 1376, 1449, 1451  
 Maequarie Island, 125, 150  
 MacRobertson Land, 125  
 Madagascar, 506, 822-5  
 Madang, 984  
 Madeira, 1019-21, 1023  
 Madhya Pradesh, 630, 633-4, 641-2, 648-9, 652, 671-2  
 Madison (Wisc.), 1376, 1548, 1550  
 Madiun, 700  
 Madras, 631-2, 647-9, 652-4, 686-8  
 Madre de Dios, 996  
 Madrid, 1114-16, 1118, 1121, 1123-5  
 Madura, 699-700  
 Madurai, 631, 687-8  
 Maebashi, 759  
 Mae Moh, 1187  
 Maewo, 1570  
 Mafteng, 803  
 Mafra, 767  
 Magadan, 1251  
 Magallanes, 349, 354  
 Magdalena, 373  
 Magdeburg, 527  
 Magelang, 700  
 Magherafelt, 1357  
 Magnesia, 571  
 Magnitogorsk, 1223  
 Magwe, 254, 257  
 Mahaica, 593  
 Mahajanga, 822, 825  
 Mahakali, 895  
 Mahalapye, 224  
 Mahallah al-Kuhrā, 447  
 Maharashtra, 630-1, 633-4, 642-3, 648, 652, 659, 672-3  
 Mahawi Ganga, 1130  
 Mahawel Ganga, 1130  
 Mahabubnaga, 653  
 Mahd Al-Dahah, 1060  
 Mahdia, 1201  
 Mahe (India), 669, 697  
 Mahe (Seychelles), 1067-9  
 Mahipār, 65  
 Mahon, 1119  
 Mahwit, 1595  
 Maiana, 777  
 Maidenhead, 1298  
 Maidstone, 1297  
 Maiduguri, 942  
 Maikop, 1237, 1259  
 Maimana, 63, 65  
 Maine, 1373, 1385-6, 1417, 1470-3  
 Mainz, 535, 543, 559  
 Maio (Cape Verde), 337-8  
 Maio (French Polynesia), 515  
 Maiquetia, 1576  
 Maisons-Lafitte, 488  
 Maitland, 130  
 Majuro, 1556  
 Makak, 268  
 Makaleb, 1177  
 Makati, 1002  
 Makeevka, 1223  
 Makeni, 1070, 1073  
 Makhachkala, 1223, 1238, 1253  
 Makhado, 1109  
 Makin, 777  
 Makira, 1082  
 Makkah, 1062  
 Makkovik, 315  
 Makokou, 519  
 Malabar, 667  
 Malaho, 459, 461  
 Malacca, *see* Melaka  
 Málaga, 1114, 1116, 1125  
 Malaita, 1082  
 Malakand, 970  
 Malan Airport, 1095  
 Malang, 700  
 Malange, 81-3  
 Malanjkhānd, 670  
 Malatya, 1206-7  
 Malawi, 29, 826-9  
 Malaya, *see* Peninsular Malaysia  
 Malaysia, 29, 51, 830-7  
 Malden Island, 777  
 Maldives, 29, 844-5  
 Maldonado, 1565  
 Malé, 844-5  
 Malekula, 1570-1  
 Mali, 846-8  
 Malmherget, 1154  
 Malmö, 1149, 1151  
 Malmöhus, 1148  
 Malolos, 1002  
 Malta, 29, 40, 44, 849-54  
 Maluku Islands, 699-700, 704  
 Malvinas, *see* Falkland Islands  
 Malwa, 670  
 Mamao, 517  
 Mamoundzou, 508  
 Man (Côte d'Ivoire), 391  
 Man, Isle of, *see* Isle of Man  
 Manabi, 441  
 Managua, 934-5, 937  
 Nanali, 663  
 Manama, 180-3  
 Manaure, 376  
 Manaus, 229-30, 236  
 Manawatu, 915  
 Manchester (Jamaica), 753  
 Manchester (N.H.), 1497



- Manchester (UK), 1296-7, 1302, 1308, 1336, 1347-8  
 Mandalay, 254  
 Mandaluyong, 1002  
 Mandaue, 1002  
 Mandeville, 753  
 Mandsaur, 670  
 Mandurah, 161  
 Mandya, 666  
 Manga, 940  
 Mangaia, 931-2  
 Mangalia, 1034  
 Mangalore, 631, 667, 669  
 Mangalore, New, 648  
 Mangan, 684-5  
 Mangareva, 515  
 Mango, 1192  
 Manhattan (Kans.), 1465  
 Manhattan (N.Y.), 1504-5  
 Manica, 884  
 Manicaland, 1623  
 Manihiki, 931  
 Manila, 1002  
 Manipur, 631, 634, 648-9, 652-3, 673-5  
 Manisa, 1206-7  
 Manitoba, 270-3, 284-5, 291-2, 306-9  
 Manitowoc (Wisc.), 1548  
 Manizales, 373, 377  
 Mankato (Minn.), 1483  
 Mankayata, 1146  
 Mankono, 391  
 Manmad, 673  
 Mannheim, 535, 543, 547  
 Manono, 1591  
 Manra, 777  
 Mansa, 1619  
 Mansfield (Oh.), 1512  
 Mansfield (UK), 1297  
 Mansudae, 788  
 Mansūra, 447  
 Mantes-la-Jolie, 485  
 Manu'a, 1557-9  
 Manuae, 931  
 Manus, 984  
 Manzanillo, 867  
 Manzhouli, 364  
 Manzini, 1144-7  
 Mao, 346  
 Maputo, 884-7  
 Mara, 1179  
 Maracaibo, 1576-7, 1579, 1581  
 Maracay, 1576, 1581  
 Maradi, 939-41  
 Marakei, 777  
 Marampa, 1002-3  
 Maramures, 1032  
 Marandellas, 1623  
 Maranhão, 229  
 Marburg, 543, 554  
 Marche, 741, 744  
 Marcus Island, 758  
 Mar del Plata, 91, 95  
 Mardin, 1206, 1212  
 Maré, 513  
 Margibi, 806  
 Mari, 1251, 1256  
 Maria Trinidad Sánchez, 436  
 Marib, 1595  
 Maribor, 1601  
 Marico, 1106  
 Marie Galante, 500, 502  
 Marigot, 500  
 Marikina, 1002  
 Marion (Oh.), 1512  
 Marion Island, 1088  
 Maritime Region (Togo), 1190  
 Mariupol, 1223  
 Marjan, 1060  
 Marka, 1085, 1087  
 Markazi, 706  
 Marlborough (New Zealand), 916  
 Marondera, 1623  
 Maroua, 265  
 Marovoay, 825  
 Marowijne, 1140-2  
 Marquesas Islands, 515  
 Marrakesh, 878-9, 882  
 Marsaxlokk, 850  
 Marseille, 485, 495  
 Marshall (Minn.), 1483  
 Marshall Islands, 1375, 1555, 1556  
 Martin, 409  
 Martinique, 500, 504-6  
 Marwar, 683  
 Mary, 1281  
 Maryborough (Queensland), 138  
 Maryborough (Victoria), 154  
 Maryland (Liberia), 806  
 Maryland (USA), 1374, 1385, 1473-6  
 Marystown, 313  
 Marzuq, 810  
 Masaka, 1218  
 Masame, 226  
 Masan, 781  
 Masat, 695  
 Masaya, 934, 937  
 Masbate, 1002  
 Mascara, 74  
 Maseru, 803  
 Mashhad, 706-7  
 Mashonaland, 1623  
 Mason City (Ia.), 1461  
 Massachusetts, 1373, 1385, 1476-8  
 Massapequa Park, 1504  
 Massawa, 463-4  
 Masterton, 916  
 Masuku, 519-20  
 Masvingo, 1623  
 Mat, 68  
 Matabeleland, 1623  
 Matadi, 1614  
 Matagalpa, 934, 937  
 Matamoros, 863  
 Matanuska-Susitna (Ak.), 1428  
 Matanzas, 395  
 Matará, 1127  
 Mataram, 700  
 Matarani, 221  
 Mataró, 1116  
 Mataura, 515  
 Mata-Utu, 518  
 Mathura, 690  
 Mato Grosso, 229, 234  
 Mato Grosso do Sul, 229  
 Matosinhos, 1023-4  
 Matruh, 447  
 Matsapa, 1146-7  
 Matsudo, 759  
 Matsuyama, 758-9  
 Matthew Island, 513, 1570  
 Mattu, 463  
 Maturin, 1576  
 Maua, 230  
 Mauberge, 485  
 Maui (Hi.), 1451  
 Maui (New Zealand), 920  
 Mauke, 931-2  
 Maule, 349  
 Maun, 226  
 Maupiti, 515  
 Mauritania, 855-7  
 Mauritius, 28, 29, 506, 858-61  
 Mayabandar, 694  
 Mayaguana, 175  
 Mayaguez, 1560  
 Maya Maya, 384  
 Maynooth, 728  
 Mayo (Canada), 333, 335  
 Mayo (Ireland), 718  
 May o-Kabbi, 346  
 Mayotte, 379, 508-9, 511  
 May Pen, 753  
 Mayreau, 1050  
 Maysan, 712  
 Mayumba, 521  
 Mazándarán, 706, 709  
 Mazār-i-Sharif, 63-4, 66  
 Mazaruni, 593  
 Mazatenango, 581  
 Mazatlán, 863, 867  
 Mbabane, 1144-6  
 M'baiki, 342  
 Mbale, 1218  
 M'Balmayo, 265, 268  
 Mbandaka, 1614  
 M'Banga, 268  
 Mbarara, 1218  
 Mbeya, 1179  
 Mbinda, 384  
 Mbini, 461  
 M'Bomou, 342  
 Mbuji-Mayi, 1614  
 Mchinji, 828  
 Mdantsane, 1110  
 Meath, 717  
 Mecca, 1057-8, 1061  
 Mechelen, 195  
 Mechi, 895  
 Medak, 653  
 Medan, 699  
 Médéa, 74  
 Medellín, 373  
 Médénine, 1201  
 Medford (Mass.), 1476  
 Medford (Oreg.), 1518  
 Medicine Hat, 299, 300  
 Medina, 1057-8, 1061-2  
 Medvezhye, 1238  
 Meerssen, 900  
 Meerut, 631, 690  
 Meghalaya, 631, 634, 636, 648-9, 652-3, 655, 675-6  
 Megri, 1271  
 Mégrine, 1203  
 Mehedinți, 1032  
 Mehetia, 515  
 Mehrabad Airport, 710  
 Mehsana, 659  
 Mékambo, 521  
 Mekele, 463  
 Meknès, 878-9  
 Melaka, 830-1, 835  
 Melbourne, 97-8, 113, 153-4, 157-9  
 Melfort, 329  
 Mellila, 1114-15, 1118, 1122, 1125  
 Melitopol, 1223  
 Mellersta Finland, 474  
 Melo, 1565  
 Melun, 485  
 Melville, 329  
 Melville Bay, 124  
 Memphis (Tenn.), 1375, 1531-2  
 Menada, 700  
 Mendi, 984  
 Mendip, 1297  
 Mendipathar, 675  
 Mendoza, 90-1, 95  
 Menongue, 83  
 Mentor (Oh.), 1512  
 Menüfiya, 447  
 Menzel Bourguiba, 1203  
 Meppel, 900  
 Mercedes, 1565  
 Merenie, 122-3  
 Mérida (Mexico), 862-3  
 Mérida (Spain), 1115  
 Mérida (Venezuela), 1576, 1581  
 Meriden (Conn.), 1441  
 Meridian (Miss.), 1484  
 Merkssem, 195  
 Merlo, 91  
 Mers el Kebir, 75  
 Mersah Matruh, 447, 449, 452  
 Merseyside, 1296, 1298, 1308, 1336  
 Mersin, 1211  
 Merton, 1299  
 Meru, 772  
 Merv, 1281  
 Mesa (Ariz.), 1376, 1431  
 Mesopotamia (St. Vincent), 1052  
 Messenia, 571  
 Messina, 742, 751  
 Meta, 373  
 Metropolitan Region (Chile), 349  
 Metz, 485, 490  
 Mexicali, 862-3  
 Mexico, 48, 862-8  
 Mexico City, 862-4, 867-8  
 Mexico State, 862  
 Meyar, 973  
 Mežice, 1605  
 Mhlume, 1144  
 Miami (Fla.), 1376, 1447-8  
 Miami Beach (Fla.), 1447  
 Miaoli, 368  
 Michigan, 1374, 1385, 1417, 1478-81  
 Michoacán de Ocampo, 862  
 Micronesia, Federated States of, 1375, 1555, 1556  
 Mid-Bedfordshire, 1297  
 Middelburg, 900

- Middlesbrough, 1297  
 Middletown (Conn.), 1442  
 Middletown (N.J.), 1499  
 Middletown (Oh.), 1512  
 Mid-Glamorgan, 1297  
 Midi-Pyrénées, 485  
 Midland (Tex.), 1533  
 Midlands Province (Zimbabwe), 1623  
 Midlothian, 1299  
 Mid-Sussex, 1297  
 Midway Islands, 1375, 1559  
 Midwest City (Okla.), 1515, 1517  
 Miercurea-Ciuc, 1032  
 Mikhailovgrad, 243  
 Mikkeli, 474-5  
 Mikomeseng, 459  
 Mila, 74  
 Milan, 742, 746, 749, 751  
 Mildura, 154  
 Milford City (Del.), 1443  
 Milne Bay, 984  
 Milner Bay, 124  
 Milot, 71  
 Milton Keynes, 1297, 1334, 1348  
 Milwaukee (Wisc.), 1375, 1548-50  
 Mina Abdullah, 793  
 Mina Ahmade, 793  
 Mina al-Fahal, 966  
 Mina Al-Zor, 793  
 Mina Qaboos, 966  
 Mina Raysut, 963, 966  
 Minas, 1565  
 Minas Gerais, 229, 234  
 Mina Shuaiba, 793  
 Mina Sulman, 183  
 Minatitlán, 863  
 Mindanao, 1002  
 Mindelo, 337, 339  
 Mindoro, 1002  
 Mingechaur, 1266  
 Minh Hai, 1584  
 Minicoy Islands, 697  
 Minna, 943  
 Minneapolis (Minn.), 1375, 1482-3  
 Minnesota, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1417, 1481-4  
 Minot (N.D.), 1510  
 Minsk, 1223, 1243, 1248, 1263  
 Minya, 447  
 Miquelon, 510  
 Mirabel, 327  
 Miracle Mile Airfield, 1047  
 Miranda, 1576, 1579  
 Mirditë, 68  
 Miri, 830, 840  
 Misiones (Argentina), 90  
 Misiones (Paraguay), 990, 994  
 Miskolc, 615  
 Mississippi, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1406, 1484-6  
 Missolonghi, 571  
 Missoula (Mont.), 1489, 1491  
 Missouri, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1486-8  
 Misurata, 810, 812, 814  
 Mitchell (S.D.), 1529  
 Mitiamo, 931  
 Mitte, 549  
 Mitu, 374  
 Mitylini, 572  
 Miyazaki, 759  
 Mizoram, 631, 634, 636, 648, 652-3, 655, 676  
 Mmamabula, 226  
 Mmambatho, 1105, 1107  
 Mnganzama, 1108  
 Mobaye, 342  
 Mobile (Ala.), 1376, 1425-6  
 Moçamedes, 81-3  
 Mocoa, 373  
 Modena, 742, 751  
 Modesto (Calif.), 1376  
 Mödling, 169  
 Moengo, 1142  
 Mogadishu, 1085, 1087  
 Mogilev, 1223, 1263  
 Mogwase, 1106  
 Mohale's Hoek, 803  
 Mohamed V Airport, 882  
 Mohammedia, 879, 881  
 Mohammedia-Znata, 878  
 Mohéli, 379, 381  
 Mohindergarh, 661  
 Mohmand, 970  
 Mokanji, 1073  
 Mokha, 1594, 1596  
 Mokhotlong, 803  
 Mokokchung, 677  
 Moldavia, 1223, 1225, 1272-3  
 Molde, 949  
 Molenbeek St Jean, 195  
 Molise, 742, 744  
 Mollendo, 221-2  
 Mölndal, 1149  
 Molodechno, 1264  
 Molokai (Hi.), 1451  
 Mombasa, 772, 774-5  
 Mon (Burma), 254  
 Mon (India), 677  
 Monaco, 869-70  
 Monagas, 1576  
 Monaghan, 718  
 Monastir, 1201  
 Mönchengladbach, 535  
 Monclova, 863  
 Moncton, 312  
 Mongo, 346  
 Mongolia, 48, 871-5  
 Mongomo, 459  
 Mongu, 1619  
 Monklands, 1300  
 Monmouth (Oreg.), 1520  
 Mono (Benin), 208  
 Mono Islands, 1082  
 Monos, 1197  
 Monrovia, 806, 808-9  
 Mons, 194-5, 202  
 Monseñor Nouel, 436  
 Montana, 1374, 1385-6, 1402, 1404  
 Montaña Clara, 1115  
 Montbéliard, 485  
 Mont-Belo, 384  
 Montclair (N.J.), 1499  
 Monte Carlo, 869  
 Monte Cristi, 436  
 Montego Bay, 753, 756  
 Montenegro, 1611  
 Monte Plata, 436  
 Montería, 373  
 Monterrey, 862-3  
 Montevideo, 1565, 1567-8  
 Montgomery (Ala.), 1376, 1425  
 Montgomery (W. Va.), 1546  
 Montpellier, 485  
 Montreal, 272, 283, 290-1, 326-8  
 Montreuil, 485  
 Montserrat, 30, 55, 876-7  
 Montserrat, 806  
 Montshiwa, 1106  
 Monywa, 254  
 Monza, 742  
 Moorea, 515, 517  
 Moorhead (Minn.), 1483  
 Mooroopna, 153-4  
 Moose Jaw, 329  
 Mopti, 846, 848  
 Moquegua, 996  
 Moradabad, 631  
 Morang, 894  
 Moratuwa, 1127, 1133  
 Moray, 1299  
 Morazán, 454, 456  
 Mordovia, 1251, 1256  
 Morehead City (N.C.), 1509  
 Morelia, 862-3, 868  
 Morelos, 862  
 More og Romsdal, 948  
 Morgantown (W. Va.), 1545-6  
 Mormugao, 648  
 Morobe, 984  
 Morocco, 45, 878-83, 1126  
 Morogoro, 1179  
 Morón, 91, 95  
 Morona-Santiago, 441  
 Morón de la Frontera, 1118  
 Moroni, 379, 381  
 Moroto, 1218  
 Morphou, 401, 407  
 Morupule, 225-6  
 Morwell, 153-4, 156-7  
 Moscow (Id.), 1455  
 Moscow (USSR), 1223-4, 1238, 1243-5, 1247-8, 1251  
 Moss, 949  
 Mossel Bay, 1096  
 Most, 409, 412  
 Mostaganem, 74, 76, 78  
 Mostar, 1601  
 Mostoles, 1116  
 Mosul, 712-13, 715  
 Motala, 1149  
 Motherwell, 1300  
 Mounda, 519-21  
 Mouhoun, 250, 252  
 Mouila, 519, 521  
 Moulinet, 254, 256-7  
 Mounana, 520  
 Moundou, 346, 348  
 Mount Athos, 572  
 Mount Gambier, 144  
 Mount Hagen, 984  
 Mount Isa, 124, 138, 140  
 Mount Morgan, 140  
 Mount Pearl, 313  
 Mount Pleasant Airport, 468  
 Mount Vernon (Ia.), 1462  
 Mount Vernon (N.Y.), 1504  
 Mouscron, 195  
 Mexico, 82  
 Moyen-Chari, 346  
 Moyenne-Guinée, 586-7  
 Moyen-Ogooué, 519  
 Moyle, 1357  
 Moyobamba, 996  
 Mozambique, 48, 826, 884-7  
 Mpaka, 1145, 1147  
 Mpoko, 344  
 M'Sila, 74  
 Mtera, 1181  
 Mtskheta, 1247  
 Mtnthama, 827  
 Mtwara, 1179  
 Mubarraz, 1292  
 Mudanjiang, 364  
 Mudwari-Katni, 669  
 Mufulira, 1619  
 Mugla, 1206  
 Muharraq, 180, 182-3  
 Mukalla, 1597, 1599  
 Mulheim an der Ruhr, 535  
 Mulhouse, 485  
 Muloza, 827  
 Muloza, 969, 973  
 Muncie (Ind.), 1459-60  
 Munghyr, 657  
 Munich, 535, 543, 547-9  
 Münster (FRG), 535, 543, 558  
 Munster (Ireland), 717-18  
 Murcia, 1115-16, 1118, 1125  
 Mureș, 1032  
 Murfreesboro (Tenn.), 1531  
 Murgab, 1244, 1286  
 Murgul, 1209  
 Muri, 658  
 Murmansk, 1223, 1244, 1251  
 Muruntau, 1284  
 Mururoa, 515  
 Mus, 1206  
 Musan, 788  
 Muscat, 963, 966  
 Mushin, 942  
 Muslimbagh, 973  
 Mustique, 1050-1  
 Mutare, 1623  
 Mutrah, 963, 966  
 Mutsamudu, 379  
 Muzaffarabad, 970  
 Muzaffarpur, 657-8  
 Mwali, 379, 381  
 Mwanza, 1179  
 Myitkyina, 257  
 Mymensingh, 185  
 Myongchon, 788  
 Mysore, 631, 666-7  
 Mzuzu, 826-7  
 Naaldwijk, 900  
 Naama, 74

- Naberezhnye Chelny, 1223  
 Nabeul, 1201  
 Nabih Saleh Island, 180  
 Nacala, 886  
 Nacka, 1149  
 Nadi Airport, 472  
 Naga, 1002  
 Nagaland, 631, 634, 636, 648-9, 652-3, 655, 677-8  
 Nagano, 759  
 Nagapattinam, 687  
 Nagarjunasagar, 654  
 Nagasaki, 759  
 Naghlu, 65  
 Nagorno-Karabakh, 1265, 1266-7  
 Nagoya, 758-9, 765  
 Nagpur, 631, 638, 649, 672-3  
 Naha, 758-9  
 Nahouri, 250  
 Nahr el Kebir, 1177  
 Nairn, 1299  
 Nairobi, 772-3, 775  
 Najran, 1057  
 Nakambe, 252  
 Nakhichevan, 1264, 1266  
 Nakhodka, 1243  
 Nakhon Pathom, 1184  
 Nakhon Rajchasisma, 1184  
 Nakhon Sawan, 1184  
 Nakhon Si Thammaraj, 1184  
 Nakoura, 801  
 Nakuru, 772, 775  
 Nalanda, 658  
 Nalaykha, 874  
 Nalchik, 1223  
 Nalgonda, 653  
 Nalut-Yefren, 813  
 Namagan, 1223, 1283-4  
 Namchi, 684-5  
 Namdokchon, 788  
 Namentaga, 250  
 Namibe, 81-3  
 Namibia, 888-91  
 Nampa (Id.), 1454  
 Nampo, 785-6, 788  
 Nampula, 884, 886  
 Namur, 195, 202  
 Nanaimo, 303, 305-6  
 Nana-Mambere, 342  
 Nanchang, 356, 364  
 Nancowrie, 694  
 Nancy, 485  
 Nandankanan, 679  
 Nanded, 653, 672  
 Nangal, 663  
 Nangarhar, 65  
 Nanisana, 825  
 Nanjing, 356, 363, 366  
 Nanning, 356, 364  
 Nanterre, 485  
 Nantes, 485  
 Nantou, 368  
 Nantwich, 1297  
 Nanumanga, 1216  
 Nanumea, 1216  
 Napier, 915-16  
 Naples, 742, 745, 749, 751  
 Napo, 441  
 Naqb Ishtar, 770  
 Nara, 759  
 Náráryani, 895  
 Nariño, 373, 376  
 Narmadasagar, 670  
 Narsapur, 654  
 Narva, 1273  
 Naryan-Mar, 1260  
 Naryn, 1288  
 Nashua (N.H.), 1497  
 Nashville (Tenn.), 1375, 1531-2  
 Nasik, 631, 672  
 Na Son, 1587  
 Nassau (Bahamas), 175, 177-9  
 Nassau Island, 931  
 Nassib, 770  
 Natal (Brazil), 229, 230, 236  
 Natal (South Africa), 1088, 1096, 1101-2  
 National Capital (Philippines), 1002  
 National Capital District (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 National District (Dominican Republic), 436  
 Natitingou, 208, 210  
 NATO, 36-9  
 Nauen, 531  
 Nauplion, 571  
 Nauru, 892-3  
 Navarra, 1115-16, 1118  
 Navoi, 1283  
 Navotas, 1002  
 Navrongo, 566  
 Naxos, 576  
 Nayarit, 862  
 Nazareth, 732  
 Nazinon, 252  
 Nazret, 463  
 Ndele, 342  
 N'djamena, 346, 348  
 Ndjili Airport, 1617  
 N'Djole, 521  
 Ndola, 1619  
 NEA, 35  
 Neamt, 1032  
 Nebit-Dag, 1281-2  
 Nebraska, 1374, 1385-6, 1404, 1491-3  
 Neembuco, 990  
 Neemuch, 670  
 Negeri Sembilan, 830-1, 835  
 Negev, 736  
 Negombo, 1127  
 Negros, 1002  
 Neiva, 373  
 Nellore, 653  
 Nelson, 916  
 Nelson Bays, 916  
 Néma, 857  
 Nenets, 1251, 1260  
 Nepál, 894-7  
 Napanagar, 670  
 Neskaupstaður, 623  
 Netherlands, 36, 39, 40-2, 126, 199, 898-910  
 Netherlands Antilles, 901, 912-14  
 Netzhualcōyotl, 863  
 Neubrandenburg, 527  
 Neuchâtel, 1164-6, 1173  
 Neukölln, 549  
 Neuquén, 90, 95  
 Neuss, 535  
 Neuwerk Island, 552  
 Nevada, 1374, 1385, 1402, 1494-6  
 Nevis, 1043-4  
 Nevşehir, 1206  
 New Amsterdam, 592, 595  
 Newark (Del.), 1443-4  
 Newark (N.J.), 1376, 1499  
 Newark (Oh.), 1512  
 Newark and Sherwood, 1297  
 New Bedford (Mass.), 1476-7  
 New Britain (Conn.), 1441  
 New Britain (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 New Brunswick, 270-3, 284-5, 291-2, 309-12  
 Newburgh (N.Y.), 1504  
 Newbury, 1297  
 Newcastle Airport (St Christopher-Nevis), 1044  
 Newcastle under Lyme, 1297  
 Newcastle upon Tyne, 1297, 1348  
 New Delhi, 630, 632, 696  
 New Forest (UK), 1297  
 Newfoundland, 270-3, 284, 291-2, 312-16  
 New Georgia, 1082  
 New Glasgow, 317  
 Newham, 1299  
 New Hampshire, 1373, 1385-6, 1496-8  
 New Haven (Conn.), 1376, 1441-2  
 New Ireland, 984  
 New Jersey, 1373, 1385-6, 1498-1501  
 New London (Conn.), 1442  
 New Mangalore, 648  
 New Mexico, 1374, 1385, 1501-3  
 New Orleans (La.), 1375, 1468-70  
 New Plymouth, 915-16  
 Newport (R.I.), 1524  
 Newport (UK), 1298  
 Newport News (Va.), 1376, 1540  
 New Providence, 175, 177-8  
 New Rochelle (N.Y.), 1504  
 Newry and Mourne, 1357  
 New South Wales, 97-8, 101, 106-7, 112-13, 115, 120, 129-37  
 Newton (Mass.), 1476  
 Newtownabbey, 1357, 1361  
 New Waterford, 317  
 New Westminster, 305-6  
 New York (N.Y.), 1375, 1504-5  
 -Boroughs, 1504-5  
 New York State, 1373, 1385-6, 1417, 1503-7  
 New Zealand, 29, 30, 50, 126, 915-29, 933, 1008, 1591  
 -Minor Islands, 929  
 -Territories Overseas, 930-2  
 Neyagawa, 759  
 Ngaoundéré, 265, 267-8  
 Nghe Tinh, 1583  
 Nghia Binh, 1583  
 Ngounie, 519  
 Ngwenya, 1145  
 Nhlanguano, 1144  
 Nhulunbuy, 122  
 Niagara Falls (Canada), 272  
 Niagara Falls (N.Y.), 1504  
 Niamey, 939-41  
 Niamtougou, 1192  
 Niari, 382  
 Niassa, 884  
 Nicaragua, 48, 54, 934-8  
 Nice, 485  
 Nickerie, 1140-1  
 Nicobar Islands, 694  
 Nicosia, 401-2, 405, 407  
 Nidwalden, 1164, 1166  
 Nieuwegein, 900  
 Ngide, 1206  
 Niger, 939-41  
 Niger (Nigeria), 942  
 Nigeria, 29, 265, 942-7  
 Nightingale Islands, 1047  
 Niigata, 759  
 Niihau (Hi.), 1451  
 Nijkerk, 900  
 Nijmegen, 900  
 Nikolaev, 1223, 1232, 1261  
 Nikopol, 1262  
 Nikumaroro, 777  
 Ninkunau, 777  
 Nile Province (Uganda), 1218  
 Nimba, 806, 808  
 Nimes, 485  
 Ninawa, 712  
 Ningbo, 356  
 Ningxia, 356, 365  
 Niqat al-Khums, 810  
 Nirmal, 654  
 Nis, 1601  
 Nishinomiya, 759  
 Niterói, 230, 236  
 Nithsdale, 1299  
 Nitra, 409  
 Niua Islands, 1194-5  
 Niuatoputapu, 1196  
 Niue, 30, 932-3  
 Niulakita, 1216  
 Niutao, 1216  
 Nizhe-Vartovskoc, 1243  
 Nizhnii Tagil, 1223  
 Nizamabad, 653  
 Nizam Sagar, 653  
 Nizwah, 963  
 Njala, 1073  
 Njarðvík, 623  
 Njarzidja, 379-80  
 N'kayi, 382  
 Nkongsamba, 265, 268  
 Noakhali, 185  
 Nobles Nob, 123



- Nógrád, 614  
 Nokia, 475  
 Nola, 342  
 Nome (Ak.), 1429  
 Nome de Deus de Macau, 1026  
 Nomuka Islands, 1194  
 Nong Khai, 1188  
 Nonouti, 777  
 Noord-Brabant, 899  
 Noord-Holland, 899  
 Noordostpolder, 900  
 Noordwijk, 900  
 Nordaustlandet, 960  
 Nord Department (Haiti), 597  
 Nord-Est Department (Haiti), 597  
 Nordjylland, 416  
 Nordland, 948  
 Nord-Ouest Department (Haiti), 597  
 Nord-Ouest Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Nord-Pas-de-Calais, 485  
 Nord Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Nord-Trøndelag, 948  
 Norfolk (Nebr.), 1491  
 Norfolk (UK), 1296-7  
 Norfolk (Va.), 1376, 1540-1  
 Norfolk Island, 30, 96, 115, 127-8  
 Norilsk, 1223, 1237  
 Normal (Ill.), 1458  
 Norman (Okla.), 1515, 1517  
 Normandy, *see* Basse-Normandie; Haute-Normandie  
 Norman Manley Airport, 756  
 Norrbotten, 1148  
 Norrköping, 1149  
 Norrland, 1152  
 Norrtälje, 1149  
 Norte de Santander, 373  
 Northampton, 1297  
 Northamptonshire, 1296  
 North Atlantic Treaty Organization, 36-9  
 Northavon, 1297  
 North Battleford, 329  
 North Bay (Canada), 278  
 North Bedfordshire, 1297  
 North Carolina, 1374, 1385-6, 1404, 1406, 1507-9  
 North-Central Province (Sri Lanka), 1127  
 North Dakota, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1417, 1509-11  
 North Down, 1357  
 North-Eastern Province (Sri Lanka), 1127  
 North-East Derbyshire, 1297  
 North-Eastern Province (Kenya), 772  
 North-East Region (Thailand), 1184  
 Northern Cyprus, Turkish Republic of, 406-7  
 Northern District (Israel), 732  
 Northern Ireland, 1311, 1320, 1334, 1357-65  
     -Districts, 1357  
 Northern Marianas, 1375, 1416, 1556  
 Northern Province (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 Northern Province (Sierra Leone), 1070  
 Northern Province (Uganda), 1218  
 Northern Province (Zambia), 1619  
 Northern Region (Ghana), 563  
 Northern Region (Malawi), 826-7  
 Northern Region (Sudan), 1135  
 Northern Territory (Australia), 97-9, 101, 106-7, 115, 121-5  
 North Hertfordshire, 1297  
 North Island (New Zealand), 915-16  
 North Island (Seychelles), 1067  
 North Keeling Island, 126  
 North Lakhimpur, 656  
 Northland (Iceland), 623  
 Northland (New Zealand), 915  
 North Las Vegas (Nev.), 1494  
 North Little Rock (Ark.), 1433  
 North Olmsted (Oh.), 1512  
 North Ossetia, 1251, 1257  
 North Platte (Nebr.), 1491  
 North Providence (R.I.), 1524  
 North Region (Thailand), 1184  
 North Rhine-Westphalia, 534-6, 539-41, 556-8  
 North Solomons (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 North Stradbroke Island, 140  
 North Sydney (Canada), 316-17  
 North Tonawanda, 1504  
 North Tyneside, 1298  
 Northumberland, 1296  
 North-Western Province (Sri Lanka), 1127  
 North-Western Province (Zambia), 1619  
 North-West Frontier Province (Pakistan), 968-70, 974  
 Northwest Territories (Canada), 270-3, 280, 284, 291-2, 299, 328, 331-3  
 North Wiltshire, 1298  
 Northwood, 1312  
 North Yorkshire, 1296  
 Norwalk (Conn.), 1441  
 Norway, 36, 40, 42, 46-7, 126, 948-62  
 Norwich, 1298  
 Nottingham, 1298, 1348  
 Nottinghamshire, 1297  
 Nouâdhibou, 855, 857  
 Nouakchott, 855-6  
 Nouméa, 512, 514  
 Nova, Iguaçu, 230  
 Novara, 742  
 Nova Scotia, 270-3, 284-5, 291-2, 310, 317-20  
 Novgorod, 1223, 1251  
 Novi Sad, 1601, 1613  
 Novocherkassk, 1224  
 Novokuznetsk, 1224  
 Novomoskovsk, 1262  
 Novorossiisk, 1224  
 Novosibirsk, 1224, 1243, 1251  
 Novovoronezh, 1237  
 Nowgong, 655  
 Nowy Sącz, 1010  
 Nsanje, 828  
 Nsawam, 563  
 Nuclear Energy Agency, 35  
 Nuenen, 900  
 Nueva Asunción, 990, 994  
 Nueva Esparta, 1576  
 Nueva San Salvador, 454  
 Nueva Segovia, 936  
 Nuevitas, 398  
 Nuevo Laredo, 863  
 Nuevo León, 862, 865, 868  
 Nui, 1216  
 Nukha, 1266  
 Nuku'alofa, 1194  
 Nukufetau, 1216  
 Nukuhiva, 515-16  
 Nukulaelae, 1216  
 Nukunonu, 930  
 Nukus, 1285  
 Nuncaton and Bedworth, 1298  
 Nunspeet, 900  
 Nuremburg, 535, 543, 548  
 Nusa Tenggara, 699-700  
 Nuwara Eliya, 1128  
 Nwangundu, 1110  
 NWFP, *see* North-West Frontier Province (Pakistan)  
 Nyakagunda, 260  
 Nyala, 1138  
 Ny-Alesund, 961  
 Nyanga (Gabon), 519  
 Nyanga (Zimbabwe), 1626  
 Nyanza, 772, 774  
 Nyanza-Lac, 260  
 Nyeri, 772, 775  
 Nyíregyháza, 614  
 Nyköping, 1149  
 Nyslott, 475  
 Nzérékoré, 586, 588  
 Nzwani, 379, 381  
 Oahu (Hi.), 1451  
 Oakland (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Oak Ridge (Tenn.), 1531  
 OAS, 52-3  
 OAU, 58  
 Oaxaca, 862  
 Oaxaca de Juárez, 862-3  
 Obando, 374  
 Oberhausen, 535  
 Obninsk, 1237  
 Obo, 342  
 Obock, 431  
 Obuasi, 563  
 Obwalden, 1164, 1166  
 Occidental Province (Paraguay), 990-1  
 Ocean Island, 777-8, 893  
 Ocotepeque, 602  
 Oda, 563  
 ODECA, 54  
 Odessa, 416, 424, 426  
 Odessa (Tex.), 1533  
 Odessa (USSR), 1224, 1243, 1248, 1261-2  
 Odi, 1106  
 Odienné, 391  
 Odivelas, 1019  
 OECD, 35-6  
 Oeiras, 1019, 1024  
 Oeno Island, 1008  
 Ofña, 943  
 Ofñaly, 717  
 Offenbach am Main, 535  
 Ofoten, 955  
 Ofu, 1557  
 Ogaden, 462  
 Ogbomoso, 942  
 Ogden (Ut.), 1536-7  
 Ogooué, 519  
 Ogun, 942  
 Ogwr, 1298  
 Ohio, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1511-14  
 Oio, 589  
 Oita, 759  
 Oka-Akoko, 943  
 Okara, 969  
 Okayama, 759  
 Okazaki, 759  
 Okęcie Airport, 1015  
 Okinawa, 758  
 Oklahoma, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1514-17  
 Oklahoma City (Okla.), 1374, 1515, 1517  
 Okmulgee (Okla.), 1517  
 Oktemberyan, 1271  
 Olafsfjörður, 623  
 Olanchito, 602  
 Olancho, 602  
 Old Crow, 335  
 Oldebroek, 900  
 Oldenburg, 535, 543, 556  
 Oldenzaal, 900  
 Oldham, 1298  
 Olgiy, 874  
 Olhão, 1023  
 Olinda, 230  
 Olomouc, 409, 413-14  
 Olongapo, 1002  
 Olosega, 1557  
 Olsztyn, 1010  
 Olt, 1033, 1038  
 Olympia (Wash.), 1543  
 Omagh, 1357  
 Omaha (Nebr.), 1376, 1491-3  
 Oman, 963-7

- Ombella-M'poko, 342  
 Omdurman, 1135, 1139  
 Omiya, 759  
 Omsk, 1224, 1238,  
     1243, 1251  
 Ondo, 942-3  
 Onigbolo, 210  
 Onitsha, 942  
 Onotoa, 777  
 Ontario, 270-3, 283-5,  
     291-2, 320-4  
 Ontong Java, 1082  
 Onverwacht, 1142  
 Oosterhout, 900  
 Ooststellingwerf, 900  
 OPEC, 57-8  
 Opole, 1010  
 Oporto, *see* Porto  
 Oppland, 948  
 Osterland, 900  
 Oradea, 1032, 1038  
 Oran, 74-6, 78  
 Orange, 130  
 Orangeburg (S.C.), 1528  
 Orange Free State, 1088,  
     1103-5  
 Orange Walk, 204  
 Oranjestad, 910-12  
 Oropa, 224, 226  
 Ordino, 80  
 Ordu, 1207  
 Ordzhonikidze, 1224,  
     1257  
 Örebro, 1148-9  
 Oregon, 1374, 1385,  
     1417, 1517-21  
 Orel, 1224, 1251  
 Orem (Ut.), 1536  
 Orenburg, 1224, 1238,  
     1251  
 Orense, 1115-16  
 Organization for  
     Economic Co-  
     operation and  
     Development, 35-6  
 Organization of African  
     Unity, 58  
 Organization of  
     American States,  
     52-3  
 Organization of Central  
     American States, 54  
 Organization of the  
     Co-operatives of  
     America, 54  
 Organization of the  
     Petroleum  
     Exporting  
     Countries, 57-8  
 Orgeev, 1272  
 Oriental Province  
     (Paraguay), 990-1,  
     993  
 Orissa, 631, 634, 642,  
     648, 652, 678-80  
 Orizaba, 863  
 Orkney Islands, 1300,  
     1309, 1322  
 Orlando (Fla.), 1376,  
     1447-8  
 Orléans, 484-5  
 Orléansville, *see* Chelif  
 Ormoc, 1002  
 Örnsköldsvik, 1149  
 Orona, 777  
 Orsk, 1224, 1238  
 Orumiyeh, 706-7  
 Oruro, 218-19, 222-3  
 Osaka, 758-9, 765  
 Osasco, 230  
 Osh, 1224, 1286, 1288-9  
 Oshawa, 272  
 Oshkosh (Wisc.), 1548,  
     1550  
 Oshogbo, 942  
 Osijek, 1601  
 Oslo, 948-9, 957  
 Osmanabad, 672  
 Osmani, 189  
 Osnabrück, 535, 556  
 Osorno, 350  
 Oss, 900  
 Östergötland, 1148  
 Östero, 427  
 Östersund, 1149  
 Ostfold, 948  
 Ostrava, 409, 412  
 Ostrołęka, 1010  
 Otanmäki, 475  
 Otjiwarongo, 889  
 Otopeni Airport, 1037  
 Ottawa, 270, 272, 280,  
     321  
 Ottumwa (Ia.), 1461  
 Otu Tolu Islands, 1194  
 Ouaddaï, 346  
 Ouagadougou, 250,  
     252-3  
 Ouahigouya, 250  
 Ouahran, *see* Oran  
 Ouaka, 342  
 Ouargla, 74  
 Ouazate, 878  
 Oubritenga, 250  
 Oudalan, 250  
 Oued Ed, 878  
 Oued Zem, 882  
 Oueluz, 1019  
 Ouémé, 209  
 Ouessou, 382  
 Ouest Department  
     (Haiti), 597  
 Ouest Province  
     (Cameroon), 265  
 Ouham, 342  
 Ouham-Pende, 342  
 Ouidah, 208, 210  
 Oujda, 878-9  
 Oulu, *see* Uleåborg  
 Oumé, 391  
 Oum el Bouaghi, 74  
 Outokumpu, 478  
 Overijssel, 899  
 Overland Park (Kans.),  
     1463  
 Oviedo, 1115-16, 1125  
 Owian-Aladja, 945  
 Owando, 382  
 Owendo, 521  
 Owensboro (Ky.), 1466  
 Owo, 943  
 Oxelösund, 1154  
 Oxford (Miss.), 1486  
 Oxford (Oh.), 1514  
 Oxford (UK), 1298,  
     1348  
 Oxfordshire, 1297-8  
 Oxnard (Calif.), 1376,  
     1435  
 Oyapoc, 504  
 Oyem, 519, 521  
 Oyo, 942  
 Paama, 1570  
 Pabna, 185  
 Pachuco de Soto, 862-3  
 Padang, 699-700  
 Padang Besar, 836  
 Paderborn, 535  
 Padua, 742, 751  
 Paducah (Ky.), 1466  
 Pago Pago, 1557-8  
 Pahang, 830-1, 835  
 Paisley, 1300  
 Pakanbaru, 699  
 Pakistan, 29, 633, 664,  
     968-77  
 Paks, 617  
 Palam Airport, 647, 696  
 Palana, 1260  
 Palangkaraya, 700  
 Palapye, 224  
 Palau, 1375, 1555-6  
 Palau (Indonesia), 700  
 Palawan, 1002  
 Palé, 459  
 Palembang, 699  
 Palencia, 1115-16  
 Palermo, 742, 751  
 Palestine, 29, 57, 767,  
     798  
 Palisadoes, 756  
 Palma de Mallorca,  
     1115-16, 1123,  
     1125  
 Palmer Land, 238  
 Palmerston, 122  
 Palmerston Island, 931  
 Palmerston North,  
     915-16, 926  
 Palm Island, 1052  
 Palmyra Island, 777  
 Palu, 700  
 Palwon, 788  
 Pamanzi, 508  
 Pamplona (Colombia),  
     377  
 Pamplona (Spain),  
     1115-16, 1125  
 Panaji, 652, 659, 673  
 Panama, 978-83, 1388  
 Panama Canal, 978,  
     981-2  
 Panama City, 978, 981,  
     983  
 Panama Province, 978  
 Panaque, 1002  
 Panay, 1002, 1006  
 Pančevo, 1601, 1606  
 Panch Mahals, 659  
 Pando, 218  
 Panėvėžys, 1277  
 Panguma, 1072  
 Pankow, 549  
 Pantnagar, 690  
 Papar, 839  
 Papeete, 515-16  
 Papendrecht, 900  
 Paphos, 401, 405  
 Papua New Guinea, 29,  
     126, 984-9  
 Pará, 229, 234  
 Paradip, 648, 679-80  
 Paraguari, 990  
 Paraguay, 990-5  
 Paraiiba, 229  
 Parakou, 208-10  
 Paramaribo, 1140, 1142  
 Paraná (Argentina), 90  
 Paraná (Brazil), 229, 234  
 Paranaquá, 994  
 Paramam, 1142  
 Parbhani, 672  
 Pardubice, 409  
 Paris, 484-6, 488,  
     494-5, 497  
 Parkersburg (W. Va.),  
     1545  
 Parkside (Wisc.), 1550  
 Parma (Italy), 742, 751  
 Parma (Oh.), 1512  
 Pärnu, 1273  
 Paro, 216  
 Parsippany, 1499  
 Paruz, 1283  
 Pasadena (Calif.), 1376,  
     1435  
 Pasadena (Tex.), 1376,  
     1533  
 Pasay, 1002  
 Pascagoula (Miss.), 1484  
 Pasco, 996  
 Pasir Mas, 836  
 Passaic (N.J.), 1499  
 Passau, 543, 548  
 Passoré, 250  
 Pastaza, 441, 443  
 Pasto, 373  
 Patagonia, 91  
 Patan (India), 661  
 Pátan (Nepal), 894-5  
 Paterson (N.J.), 1376,  
     1499  
 Pathankot, 663, 665  
 Patiala, 680-1  
 Patna, 631-2, 649, 652,  
     657-8  
 Patras, 571  
 Patuakhali, 185  
 Pau, 485  
 Paúl, 338  
 Pavia, 751  
 Pavlodar, 1224, 1280  
 Pawtucket (R.I.), 1524  
 Paysandú, 1565, 1567-8  
 Pays de la Loire, 485  
 Pazardzhik, 243  
 Pearls Airport, 579  
 Peč, 1601  
 Pécs, 614, 616, 621  
 Pedernales, 436  
 Pedras Rubras Airport,  
     1023  
 Pedras Tinhosas, 1055  
 Pedro Juan Caballero,  
     990, 994  
 Peel, 1365  
 Pegu, 254  
 Pekalongan, 700  
 Pekanbaru, 704  
 Peking, *see* Beijing  
 Pella, 572  
 Peloponnese, 571, 575  
 Pelotas, 236  
 Pematangsiantar, 700  
 Pemayangtse, 685  
 Pempa (Mozambique),  
     884  
 Pempa (Tanzania),  
     1179, 1182  
 Penang, 830-1, 833,  
     835-7  
 Penghu, 368  
 Peniche, 1023  
 Peninsular Malaysia,  
     835-7  
 Pennsylvania, 1373,  
     1385, 1521-4  
 Peñón de Vélez, 1115  
 Penonomé, 978  
 Penrhyn Island, 931  
 Pensacola (Fla.), 1447-8

- Pentecost, 1570  
 Penticton, 303  
 Penza, 1224, 1251  
 Peoria (Ill.), 1376, 1456, 1458  
 Pepel, 1072-3  
 Peradeniya, 1133  
 Perak, 830-1, 835  
 Peravia, 436  
 Pereira, 373  
 Perim, 1597  
 Perlis, 830-1, 835  
 Perm, 1224, 1237, 1251  
 Permanent Court of Arbitration, 6  
 Permet, 68  
 Pernambuco, 229  
 Pernik, 243  
 Peros Banhos, 238  
 Perpignan, 80, 485  
 Perth (Australia), 97-8, 161, 166  
 Perth and Kinross, 1300  
 Peru, 54, 126, 441, 996-1001  
 Peru (Nebr.), 1493  
 Perugia, 742, 751  
 Pescara, 742, 751  
 Peshawar, 969-71, 976  
 Peshkopi, 68  
 Pest, 614  
 Petach Tikva, 733  
 Petaling Jaya, 830  
 Petange, 818  
 Petare, 1576  
 Petén, 581, 583  
 Peterborough, 1298  
 Peterhead, 1322  
 Peter I Island, 961  
 Petersburg (Va.), 1541  
 Petite Martinique, 578  
 Petit St Vincent, 1052  
 Petropavlovsk, 1224, 1279  
 Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky, 1224  
 Petrópolis, 236  
 Petrovsky, 1238  
 Petrozavodsk, 1224  
 Petsamo, 474  
 Pförzheim, 535  
 Phek, 677  
 Philadelphia (Pa.), 1375, 1521-3  
 Philippines, The, 51, 1002-7  
 Phiphi, 1109  
 Phitsanulok, 1184  
 Phnom Penh, 261-4  
 Phoenix (Ariz.), 1375, 1431  
 Phoenix (Botswana), 226  
 Phoenix Islands, 777-8  
 Phokis, 571  
 Phthiotis, 571  
 Phuket, 1188  
 Phu Khanh, 1583  
 Phulbani, 679  
 Phuntsoling, 216  
 Piacenza, 742, 751  
 Piandzh, 1286  
 Piarco Airport, 1199  
 Piatra-Neamt, 1032  
 Piauí, 229  
 Picardy, 485  
 Pichincha, 441  
 Pico Island, 1019  
 Piedmont, 741, 744, 747  
 Pieria, 572  
 Pierre van Ryneveld Airport, 1096  
 Pietermaritzburg, 1089, 1097, 1101  
 Pigg's Peak, 1144  
 Pila, 1010  
 Pilani, 683  
 Pilar, 993  
 Pilcomayo, 994  
 Pinang, *see* Penang  
 Pinar del Rio, 395, 398-9  
 Pine Bluff (Ark.), 1433  
 Pine Point, 332  
 Pinetown, 1089  
 Pingtung, 368  
 Pinjarra, 164  
 Piotrków, 1010  
 Piparia, 695  
 Piraeus, 571, 576  
 Pisa, 742, 751  
 Pisco, 999  
 Pitcairn Island, 30, 1008  
 Pitesti, 1032  
 Pitlochry, 1322  
 Pittsburg (Kans.), 1465, 1521  
 Pittsburgh (Pa.), 1375, 1523  
 Piura, 996, 999  
 Plainfield (N.J.), 1499  
 Plaisance Airport, 861  
 Plateau (Congo), 382  
 Plateau (Nigeria), 942  
 Platte Island, 1067  
 Platteville (Wisc.), 1550  
 Plevén, 243  
 Plock, 1010  
 Ploiesti, 1033  
 Plovdiv, 243, 245, 249  
 Plymouth (Montserrat), 876  
 Plymouth (UK), 1298  
 Plzeň, 409  
 Pobé, 210  
 Pocatello (Id.), 1454  
 Pochentong Airport, 264  
 Podolsk, 1224  
 Podor, 1066  
 Podrinje, 1605  
 Pogradec, 68  
 Pohjois-Karjala, 474  
 Pohnpei, 1556  
 Point (South Africa), 1095  
 Point-Central (Mauritania), 857  
 Pointe-à-Pitre, 500-2  
 Pointe-Clairette, 520  
 Pointe-des-Galets, 507  
 Pointe-Noire, 382, 384  
 Point Salines Airport, 579  
 Poipet, 264  
 Poitiers, 485  
 Poitou-Charentes, 485  
 Poivre, 1067  
 Poland, 47-8, 126, 1009-18  
 Poltava, 1224, 1261  
 Polyghyros, 572  
 Pomeróon, 593  
 Pompano Beach (Fla.), 1447  
 Ponce, 1560  
 Pondicherry, 631, 634, 648, 650, 652, 697-8  
 Poni, 250  
 Ponta Delgado, 1024  
 Pontevedra, 1115, 1119  
 Pontiac (Mich.), 1479  
 Pontianak, 700  
 Pool, 382  
 Poole, 1298  
 Popayán, 373, 377  
 Popondetta, 984  
 Porbandar, 660  
 Pori, 475  
 Porkkala, 474  
 Porsgrunn, 949  
 Portage la Prairie, 306  
 Port Alberni, 303  
 Portalegre, 1019  
 Portales (N. Mex.), 1503  
 Port Arthur (Tex.), 1533  
 Port Augusta, 124, 144  
 Port-au-Prince, 597-600  
 Port aux Basques, 313, 315-16  
 Port Blair, 693-4  
 Port-Buet Airport, 393  
 Port Chalmers, 925  
 Port Cornwallis, 694  
 Port-de-Paix, 597  
 Port Dickson, 836  
 Portela Airport, 1023  
 Port Elizabeth, 1089, 1095-7  
 Port Erin, 1367  
 Port-Gentil, 519-20  
 Port Harcourt, 942-4, 946  
 Port Hedland, 161, 166  
 Portici, 749  
 Portimão, 1023  
 Port Kamsar, 588  
 Port Kelang, 837  
 Port Kembla, 134  
 Portland (Australia), 154  
 Portland (Jamaica), 753  
 Portland (Me.), 1470  
 Portland (Oreg.), 1375, 1518-20  
 Port Lincoln, 144  
 Port Loko, 1073  
 Port Louis, 858, 861  
 Port Moresby, 984-5, 988  
 Port Nolloth, 1096  
 Porto, 1019-20, 1023-4  
 Porto Alegre, 229-30, 235-6  
 Port-of-Spain, 1197-8  
 Porto-Novo (Benin), 208-10  
 Porto Novo (Cape Verde), 338  
 Porto Santo, 1020  
 Pôrto Velho, 229  
 Portoviejo, 441, 445  
 Port Pirie, 144, 166  
 Port Qasim, 974-5  
 Port Said, 447-9, 452  
 Portsmouth (N.H.), 1497  
 Portsmouth (UK), 1298, 1312  
 Portsmouth (Va.), 1376, 1540  
 Port Sudan, 1135-6, 1138  
 Port Tewfik, 449  
 Portugal, 36, 40, 42, 45, 46-7, 1019-25  
 -overseas territory, 1026-7  
 Portuguese, 1576  
 Port Walcott, 166  
 Posadas, 520  
 Potaro, 593  
 Potchefstroom, 1097  
 Potenza, 751  
 Poti, 1267  
 Potosí, 218-19, 222-3  
 Potsdam, 527  
 Poubara, 520  
 Poughkeepsie (N.Y.), 1504, 1506  
 Powys, 1297  
 Poza Rica de Hidalgo, 863  
 Poznań, 1009-11  
 Prague, 408-10, 413-14  
 Prahova, 1033, 1035  
 Praia, 337, 339  
 Prakasam, 653  
 Praslin Island, 1067, 1069  
 Prato, 742  
 Prenzlaue Berg, 549  
 Presidency Division (West Bengal), 691  
 Presidente Hayes, 990  
 Presidente Stroessner, 990, 994  
 Presidio of San Francisco (Calif.), 1388  
 Prešov, 409  
 Preston, 1298  
 Pretoria, 1088-9, 1092, 1097, 1102  
 Preveza, 571  
 Price (Ut.), 1537  
 Prijedor, 1601, 1605  
 Primorye, 1251  
 Prince Albert, 329-30  
 Prince Edward Island (Canada), 270-3, 284-5, 291-2, 310, 324-5  
 Prince Edward Island (South Africa), 1088  
 Princess Elizabeth Land, 125  
 Prince George, 302, 306  
 Prince Rupert, 303, 305-6  
 Principe, 1055  
 Prinses Beatrix Airport, 911  
 Prinses Juliana Airport, 914  
 Prins Karls Forland, 960  
 Priština, 1601, 1607, 1612  
 Prizren, 1601  
 Probolinggo, 700  
 Proddatur, 653  
 Prokopyevsk, 1224  
 Providence (R.I.), 1376, 1524-6  
 Providence Island (Seychelles), 1067  
 Providenciales, 1214-15  
 Provo (Ut.), 1536-7  
 Przemyśl, 1010  
 Przhewalsk, 1288  
 Pskov, 1224, 1251



- Pucallpa, 996  
 Puch'on, 781  
 Puebla, 862, 868  
 Puebla Zaragoza, 862-3  
 Pueblo (Colo.), 1376,  
 1438, 1440  
 Puente Alto, 349  
 Puerto Aguirre, 994  
 Puerto Armuelles, 981  
 Puerto Ayacucho, 1576  
 Puerto Barrios, 581, 584  
 Puerto Cabello, 1576,  
 1580-1  
 Puerto Cabezas, 937  
 Puerto Carreño, 374  
 Puerto Cortés, 602-3,  
 605  
 Puerto Inírida, 374  
 Puerto La Cruz, 1576  
 Puerto Maldonado, 996  
 Puerto Montt, 349, 353  
 Puerto Ordaz, 1581  
 Puerto Plata, 436, 439  
 Puerto Quetzal, 584  
 Puerto Rico, 1375,  
 1385, 1387-8, 1390,  
 1416, 1559-62  
 Puerto Sandino, 937  
 Puglia, 742, 744  
 Pukapuka, 931-2  
 Pukchong, 788  
 Puké, 68  
 Pukow, 363  
 Pula, 1606  
 Pul-i-Khumri, 63, 65-6  
 Pullman (Wash.), 1544  
 Punakha, 217  
 Pune, 631, 649, 672-3  
 Punjab (India), 631, 634,  
 642, 648, 652-3,  
 661-2, 680-2  
 Punjab (Pakistan),  
 968-70, 973  
 Puno (Bolivia), 222  
 Puno (Peru), 996  
 Punta Arenas (Chile),  
 349, 353  
 Puntarenas (Costa Rica),  
 386, 389  
 Puri, 679  
 Purmerend, 900  
 Purnea, 657  
 Pusa, 696  
 Pusan, 780-1, 783  
 Putten, 900  
 Putumayo, 373  
 Puyo, 441  
 Pwani, 1179  
 P.W. Botha Airport,  
 1095-6  
 Pyongan, 786  
 Pyrgos, 571  
 Qacentina, *see*  
 Constantine  
 Qacha's Nek, 803  
 Qala El Nahal, 1137  
 Qala-i-Nau, 63  
 Qalyūbiya, 447  
 Qaseem, 1062  
 Qatar, 1028-31  
 Qatif, 1057  
 Qazvin, 707  
 Qena, 447  
 Qingdao, 356, 359, 364,  
 366  
 Qinghai, 356  
 Qinghua, 366  
 Qinhuangdao, 364  
 Qiqihar, 356, 364  
 Qizil Qala, 66  
 Qom, 707  
 Quang Nam, 1583  
 Quang Ninh, 1583  
 Quan Long, 1587  
 Quarry Bay, 611  
 Quatre Bornes, 858  
 Queanbeyan, 97, 130  
 Quebec, 270-3, 283-5,  
 291-5, 310, 326-8  
 Queen Alia Airport, 770  
 Queen Charlotte Islands,  
 302  
 Queen Maud Land, 969  
 Queens (N.Y.), 1504-5  
 Queensland, 97-8, 101,  
 106-7, 112-13, 115,  
 138-43  
 Quelimane, 884, 886  
 Quepos, 386, 389  
 Que Que, *see* Kwekwe  
 Querétaro, 862-3, 865  
 Quetta, 969-70, 973-4,  
 976  
 Quezaltenango, 581  
 Quezon City, 1002  
 Quibdo, 373  
 Quiché, 581  
 Quilmes, 91  
 Quilon, 667, 669  
 Quilpué, 350  
 Quinara, 589  
 Quincy (Mass.), 1476  
 Quindío, 373  
 Quintana Roo, 862  
 Quito, 441-5  
 Qunaytirah, 1175  
 Qunduz, 66  
 Quneitra, 732  
 Quthing, 803  
 Qwaqwa, 1088, 1091,  
 1104  
 Qytet Stalin, 70  
 Raalte, 900  
 Rabat, 878-9, 881-2  
 Rabaul, 984  
 Rabat-Salé, 878  
 Rabigh, 1060  
 Racine (Wisc.), 1548  
 Radom, 1010  
 Rae-Edzo, 332-3  
 Ragged Island, 175  
 Rajatēa, 515  
 Raichur, 653, 666  
 Raipur, 631, 670-1  
 Raivaevae, 515  
 Raizet Airport, 502  
 Rajahmundry, 631, 654  
 Rajasthan, 631, 634,  
 642, 648-9, 652,  
 682-3  
 Rajchaburi, 1184  
 Rajin, 788  
 Rajkot, 631, 659-61  
 Rajshahi, 185, 188, 190  
 Rakahanga, 931  
 Rakhine, 254  
 Raleigh (N.C.), 1376,  
 1507-9  
 Rama, 937  
 Raman, 1209  
 Ramat Gan, 733, 739  
 Ramla, 732  
 Rampura-Agucha, 682  
 Ramsey, 1365, 1367  
 Rancagua, 349  
 Ranchi, 631, 649, 658  
 Randburg, 1089  
 Randenigala, 1130  
 Randers, 416  
 Rangiroa, 515  
 Rangoon, 254  
 Rangpo, 685  
 Rangpur, 185  
 Rankin Inlet, 331, 333  
 Ranongga, 1082  
 Raoul Island, 929  
 Rapa-Iti, 515  
 Rapa Nui, *see* Easter  
 Island  
 Rapid City (S.D.),  
 1529-30  
 Rāpti, 895  
 Raqqah, 1175  
 Rarotonga, 931-2  
 Ras Abu Aboud, 1029  
 Ras Abu Fontas, 1029  
 Ras al-Khafaji, 1060  
 Ras al-Khaimah, 1290,  
 1292-3  
 Rasht, 706-7  
 Ras Tanura, 1060-1  
 Ratlam, 669, 671  
 Ratnagiri, 672  
 Ratnapura, 1127, 1130  
 Rauma, 475  
 Ravenna, 742  
 Rawaki, 777  
 Rawalpindi, 969, 976  
 Rawdhatain, 792  
 Rawson, 91  
 Raxaul, 896  
 Rayagada, 679  
 Raysut, 963, 966  
 Razgrad, 243  
 Reading (Pa.), 1521  
 Reading (UK), 1298,  
 1348  
 Recife, 229-30, 236  
 Redcliffinghausen, 535  
 Redbridge, 1299  
 Redcliffe, 1623  
 Red Deer, 299, 300  
 Redonda, 87  
 Reef Islands (Solomon  
 Islands), 1082  
 Regensburg, 535, 543,  
 548  
 Reggio di Calabria, 742,  
 751  
 Reggio nell'Emilia, 742  
 Regina (Canada), 272,  
 328-30  
 Régina (French Guiana),  
 504  
 Rehoboth, 889  
 Rehovoth, 739  
 Reigate and Banstead,  
 1298  
 Reims, 484-5  
 Reinickendorf, 549  
 Reirson Island, 931  
 Relizane, 74  
 Remscheid, 535  
 Rendova, 1082  
 Renfrew, 1300  
 Renkum, 900  
 Rennell Island, 1082  
 Rennes, 484-5, 495  
 Reno (Nev.), 1376,  
 1494-6  
 Renton (Wash.), 1542  
 Renukoot, 690  
 Resettlement Fund for  
 National Refugees  
 and Over-  
 Population, 40  
 Resistencia, 90, 95  
 Resița, 1032  
 Retalhuleu, 581  
 Rethymnon, 572  
 Réunion, 500, 506-8  
 Reus, 1116  
 Rewa, 669-70  
 Reykjavik, 624  
 Reynosa, 863  
 Reykjavik, 623-4, 627-8  
 Rheden, 900  
 Rheinfelden, 1169  
 Rhineland-Palatinate,  
 534-6, 540, 543,  
 558-9  
 Rhode Island, 1373,  
 1385, 1387, 1417,  
 1524-6  
 Rhodes, 572  
 Rhodope, 572  
 Rhône-Alpes, 485  
 Rhymney Valley, 1298  
 Riau, 699, 704  
 Ribe, 416  
 Ribeira Grande, 338  
 Ribeirão Preto, 230  
 Riberalta, 219, 222-3  
 Richards Bay, 1096  
 Richland (Wash.), 1542  
 Richmond (Canada),  
 306  
 Richmond (N.Y.), 1505  
 Richmond (Va.), 1376,  
 1540-1  
 Richmond on Thames,  
 1299  
 Ridderkerk, 900  
 Rifa'a, 180, 182  
 Rift Valley, 772, 774  
 Riga, 1223-4, 1243,  
 1247, 1275-6  
 Riihimäki, 475  
 Rijeka, 1601  
 Rijssen, 900  
 Rijswijk, 900  
 Rikitea, 515  
 Rikkyo, 765  
 Rimatara, 515  
 Rimini, 742  
 Rinnicu Vilcea,  
 1033  
 Rinas Airport, 71  
 Ringerike, 949  
 Ringkøbing, 416  
 Riobamba, 441  
 Rio Branco, 229  
 Rio Cuarto, 91, 95  
 Rio de Janeiro, 229-30,  
 234-6  
 Rio Gallegos, 91  
 Rio Grande do Norte,  
 229  
 Rio Grande do Sul, 229,  
 234  
 Riohacha, 373  
 Rio Muni, 459-61  
 Rio Negro (Argentina),  
 91  
 Rio Negro (Uruguay),  
 1565, 1567  
 Río Piedras, 1561  
 Río San Juan, 934  
 Risaralda, 373  
 Risdon, 151

- Ritchie Archipelago, 693  
 Rivera, 1565  
 Rivercess, 806  
 River Falls (Wisc.), 1550  
 Rivers, 942  
 Riverside (Calif.), 1376  
 Riverton (Wyo.), 1552  
 Riyadh, 1057, 1059-62  
 Riyak, 801  
 Rize, 1207  
 Road Bay, 86  
 Road Town, 1589-90  
 Roanne, 485  
 Roanoke (Va.), 1376, 1541  
 Roberts Airport, 808  
 Robertsport, 806  
 Roboré, 219  
 Rocha, 1565  
 Rochambeau Airport, 503  
 Rochdale, 1298  
 Rochester (Minn.), 1482  
 Rochester (N.H.), 1497  
 Rochester (N.Y.), 1376, 1504, 1506  
 Rochester upon Medway, 1298, 1347  
 Rockford (Ill.), 1376, 1456  
 Rockhampton, 138  
 Rock Hill (S.C.), 1528  
 Rockland (Me.), 1471  
 Rock Springs (Wyo.), 1551-2  
 Rockville (Md.), 1473  
 Rockville Center (N.Y.), 1504  
 Rodhapi, 572  
 Rodrigues, 858, 861  
 Roebourne, 161  
 Roermond, 900  
 Roeselare, 195  
 Rogaland, 948  
 Rohilkhand, 690  
 Rohtak, 661  
 Roi Et, 1184  
 Rolas, 1055  
 Rolla (Mo.), 1488  
 Rome (Italy), 541-2, 749, 751  
 Rome (N.Y.), 1504  
 Ronaldsway Airport, 1367  
 Rondonia, 229  
 Roosendaal en Nispen, 900  
 Roque del Este/Oueste, 1115  
 Roraima, 229, 231  
 Rosario, 91, 95  
 Roscommon, 718  
 Roseau, 434  
 Rose Hall, 592  
 Roseires, 1138  
 Rose Island, 1557  
 Roseville (Mich.), 1479  
 Rosita, 934  
 Roskilde, 416, 426  
 Rosmalen, 900  
 Ross and Cromarty, 1299  
 Ross Dependency, 30, 930  
 Rosslyn, 1106  
 Rosso, 855  
 Ross River, 335  
 Rostock, 527  
 Rostov-on-Don, 1224, 1243-4, 1251  
 Roswell (N. Mex.), 1501  
 Rota, 1118  
 Rotherham, 1298  
 Rotorua, 916-17  
 Rotterdam, 900, 907  
 Rotuma, 470  
 Roubaix, 485  
 Rouen, 484-5  
 Rourkela, 631, 678-9  
 Rovaniemi, 475, 481  
 Rovno, 1224, 1261  
 Roxburgh, 1299  
 Royal Oak (Mich.), 1479  
 Rrëshen, 68  
 RSFSR, *see* Russia  
 Rubtsovsk, 1224  
 Rucphen, 900  
 Ruda Śląska, 1010  
 Rügen Island, 531  
 Ruhengeri, 1040, 1042  
 Rukva, 1179  
 Rum Cay, 175  
 Rundu, 889  
 Rupnarayanpur, 692  
 Rurrenabaque, 223  
 Rurutu, 515  
 Ruse, 243  
 Rushcliffe, 1298  
 Russell Islands, 1082  
 Russia, 1223-4, 1251-2  
 Rustavi, 1267-8  
 Rustenburg, 1106  
 Rust-op-Twist, 1563  
 Rutland (Vt.), 1538  
 Ruvuma, 1179  
 Ruwais (Qatar), 1028  
 Ruwais (United Arab Emirates), 1293  
 Ruwi, 963  
 Ruzyně Airport, 413  
 Rwanda, 1040-2  
 Ryazan, 1224, 1237, 1251  
 Rybachy, 1289  
 Rybinsk, 1224, 1244  
 Rybnits, 1272  
 Ryburg, 1169  
 Ryedale, 1298  
 Ryukyu, 758  
 Rzeszów, 1010  
 Saarbrücken, 535, 543, 559  
 Saarland, 534-6, 540, 559-61  
 Saba, 912-14  
 Šabac, 1601  
 Sabadell, 1116  
 Sabah, 830-1, 833, 838-40  
 Sabar Kantha, 659  
 Sabha, 810  
 Sabroom, 688  
 Sacatépéquez, 581  
 Sacramento (Calif.), 1376, 1435-7  
 Sackville, 312  
 Sada, 1110  
 Sa'dah, 1595  
 Sadar, 688  
 Safaniyah, 1059-60  
 Safaqa, 449  
 Safi, 878-9, 881-2  
 Saging, 254  
 Sagami-hara, 759  
 Sagar, 669-71  
 Sagarmatha, 895  
 Saginaw (Mich.), 1479  
 Sagunto, 1121  
 Saharanpur, 631  
 Saida (Algeria), 74  
 Saida (Lebanon), *see* Sidon  
 Saindak, 973  
 St Albans, 1298  
 St Albert, 299, 300  
 St Andrew, 753  
 St Andrew's, 1347-8  
 St Ann, 753  
 St Aubin, 1369  
 St Augustine, 1200  
 St Barthélemy, 500-1  
 St Brandon Islands, 858  
 Saint-Brieuc, 485  
 St Catharines, 272  
 St Catharines-Niagara, 272  
 St Catherine, 753  
 Saint-Chamond, 485  
 St Charles (Mo.), 1487  
 St Christopher-Nevis, 29, 55, 1043-5  
 St Clair Shores (Mich.), 1479  
 St Cloud (Minn.), 1483  
 St Croix, 1562-4  
 Saint-Denis (France), 485  
 Saint-Denis (Réunion), 506-7  
 St Edmundsbury, 1298  
 St Elizabeth, 753  
 Saint-Étienne, 485  
 St Gall(en), 817, 1164-6, 1173  
 St George (Ut.), 1537  
 St George's, 578-80  
 St Gilles, 195  
 St Helena, 30, 1046-7  
 St Helens, 1298  
 St Helier, 1369  
 St Hubert, 278  
 St James, 753  
 Saint John (Canada), 272, 309-12  
 St John (Virgin Islands), 1562, 1564  
 St John's (Antigua and Barbuda), 87-8  
 St John's (Canada), 272, 313  
 St Josse-ten-Noode, 195  
 St Kitts-Nevis, 29, 55, 1043-5  
 Saint-Laurent-du-Maroni, 502-4  
 St Louis (Mo.), 1375, 1487-8  
 Saint-Louis (Senegal), 1063, 1065-6  
 St Lucia, 29, 55, 1048-9  
 St Martin, 500-1  
 St Mary, 753  
 St Michel, 474-5  
 Saint-Nazaire, 485  
 St Niklaas, 195  
 St Paul (Minn.), 1376, 1483  
 Saint Paul Island, 511-12  
 St Peter Airport, 1369  
 St Peter Port, 1370-1  
 St Petersburg (Fla.), 1376, 1447  
 Saint-Pierre (Réunion), 506  
 St Pierre (St Pierre and Miquelon), 510-11  
 St Pierre and Miquelon, 313, 500, 510-11  
 St Pierre Island (Seychelles), 1067  
 St Pölten, 169  
 St Sampson's, 1371  
 St Thomas (Jamaica), 753  
 St Thomas (Virgin Islands), 1562-4  
 St Vincent and the Grenadines, 29, 55, 1050-2  
 Saipan, 1556  
 Sakai, 759  
 Sakaka, 1057  
 Sakarya, 1207  
 Sakhalin, 1225, 1251  
 Sal, 337-8  
 Salah-ad-Din, 712  
 Šalaj, 1033  
 Salalah, 963, 966  
 Salamanca (Mexico), 863  
 Salamanca (Spain), 1115-16, 1125  
 Salamat, 346  
 Sala y Gómez, 349  
 Salcedo, 436  
 Saldanha, 1096  
 Sale (Australia), 154  
 Salé (Morocco), 879  
 Salekhard, 1260  
 Salem (India), 631, 653, 687  
 Salem (Oreg.), 1518, 1520  
 Salerno, 742, 751  
 Salford, 1298, 1348  
 Salgótarján, 614  
 Salif, 1596  
 Salima, 828  
 Salina (Kans.), 1465  
 Salina Cruz, 867  
 Salisbury (UK), 1298  
 Salisbury (Zimbabwe), *see* Harare  
 Salmon Arm, 306  
 Salomon, 238  
 Salonica, *see* Thessaloniki  
 Salta, 90, 95  
 Salt Cay, 1214-15  
 Saltillo, 862-3  
 Salt Lake City (Ut.), 1376, 1536-7  
 Salto, 1565, 1568  
 Salvador (Brazil), 229-30, 235-6  
 Salvador, El, 54, 454-8  
 Salzburg, 169-70, 173  
 Salzgitter, 535, 539  
 Samaná, 436  
 Samar, 1002  
 Samaragamuwa, 1127  
 Samarinda, 700  
 Samarkand, 1224, 1283-4  
 Samarra, 712  
 Samarska Luka, 1237  
 Sambalpur, 680

- Samoa, *see* American Samoa; Western Samoa  
 Samos, 572  
 Samsun, 1207, 1210–11  
 San'a, 1594–6  
 San Ambrosio, 349  
 Sánandáj, 706  
 San Andrés y Providencia, 373  
 San Angelo (Tex.), 1533  
 San Antonio (Tex.), 1375, 1533, 1535  
 San Baudilio del Llobregat, 1116  
 San Bernardino, 1376, 1435  
 San Bernardo, 349  
 San Blas, 978  
 San Carlos (Costa Rica), 388  
 San Carlos (Luzon, Philippines), 1002  
 San Carlos (Negros, Philippines), 1002  
 San Carlos (Nicaragua), 934  
 San Carlos (Venezuela), 1576  
 Sánchez Ramírez, 436, 439  
 San Cristóbal (Dominican Republic), 436  
 San Cristobal (Solomon Islands), *see* Makira  
 San Cristóbal (Venezuela), 1576  
 Sancti Spiritus, 395  
 Sandakan, 830, 838–40  
 Sandefjord, 949  
 San Diego (Calif.), 1375, 1435, 1437  
 Sand Island, 1375, 1559  
 Sandnes, 949  
 Sando, 427  
 Sandviken, 1149  
 Sandwell, 1298  
 Sandy City, 1536  
 San Felipe (Venezuela), 1576  
 San Félix (Chile), 349  
 San Félix (Venezuela), 1581  
 San Fernando (Spain), 1116  
 San Fernando (Trinidad and Tobago), 1197  
 San Fernando (Venezuela), 1576, 1581  
 San Francisco (Calif.), 1375, 1435, 1437  
 San Francisco (El Salvador), 454  
 Sangaredi, 588  
 Sangdong, 783  
 Sangha (Central African Republic), 342  
 Sangha (Congo), 382  
 Sangli, 631, 672  
 Sangrur, 680  
 Sangster Airport, 756  
 Sanguie, 250  
 San Ignacio de Velasco, 223  
 Saniquillie, 806  
 San Isidro, 91  
 San Isidro el General, 389  
 Sani Suwayf, 447  
 San José (Calif.), 1375, 1435, 1437  
 San José (Costa Rica), 386, 389–90  
 San José (Uruguay), 1565, 1567  
 San José del Guaviare, 374  
 San Juan (Argentina), 90–1, 94–5  
 San Juan (Dominican Republic), 436  
 San Juan (Puerto Rico), 1560  
 San Juan (Venezuela), 1576, 1581  
 San Juan de la Managuana, 436  
 San Juan del Monte, 1002  
 San Juan del Sur, 937  
 San Justo, 91  
 Sankt Pölten, 169  
 Sanlurfa, 1207  
 San Lorenzo (Ecuador), 445  
 San Lorenzo (Peru), 998  
 San Luis, 71  
 San Luis Potosí, 862–3  
 San Marcos, 581  
 San Marino, 40, 748, 1053–4  
 San Martin, 996  
 Sanmatenga, 250  
 San Miguel, 454, 456–7  
 San Miguel de Tucumán, 90–1  
 San Miguelito, 978  
 San Nicolás, 91  
 San Nicolás de los Garzas, 863  
 San Pablo, 1002  
 San Pedro (Côte d'Ivoire), 394  
 San Pedro (Paraguay), 990  
 San Pedro de Macorís, 436  
 San Pedro Sula, 602–3, 605  
 San Salvador (Bahamas), 175  
 San Salvador (El Salvador), 454, 456–7  
 San Salvador de Jujuy, 90, 95  
 San Sebastián, 1115–16  
 Sanski Most, 1605  
 Santa Ana (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Santa Ana (El Salvador), 454, 456–7  
 Santa Bárbara, 602  
 Santa Catarina (Brazil), 229, 234  
 Santa Catarina (Cape Verde), 338  
 Santa Clara, 395  
 Santa Coloma de Gramanet, 1116  
 Santa Cruz (Argentina), 91  
 Santa Cruz (Bolivia), 218–23  
 Santa Cruz (Cape Verde), 338  
 Santa Cruz (Solomon Islands), 1082  
 Santa Cruz Airport (India), 647  
 Santa Cruz de Tenerife, 1114–16, 1118  
 Santa Fé (Argentina), 90, 95  
 Santa Fé (N. Mex.), 1501–2  
 Santa Isabel Island, 1082  
 Santa Luzia, 337–8  
 Santa Maria (Azores), 1019, 1023  
 Santa Marta, 373, 377  
 Santander (Colombia), 373  
 Santander (Spain), 1115–16, 1125  
 Santarém, 1019, 1024  
 Santa Rosa (Argentina), 90, 95  
 Santa Rosa de Copán, 602  
 Santa Rosalia, 867  
 Santiago (Chile), 349–50, 353–4  
 Santiago (Dominican Republic), 436  
 Santiago (Panama), 978  
 Santiago de Compostela, 1115–16, 1125  
 Santiago de Cuba, 395, 399  
 Santiago del Estero, 90, 95  
 Santiago de los Caballeros, 436  
 Santiago de María, 457  
 Santiago Rodríguez, 436  
 Santiniketan, 693  
 Sant Julià, 80  
 Santo, 1570–2  
 Santo André, 230  
 Santo Antão, 337–8  
 Santo Domingo, 436–7, 439  
 Santorin, 576  
 Santos, 230, 236  
 Santo Tomás de Castilla, 583–4  
 San Vicente, 454, 457  
 Sanyang, 524  
 São Bernardo do Campo, 230  
 São Gonçalo, 230  
 São João de Meriti, 230  
 São Jorge Island, 1019  
 São José dos Campos, 230  
 São Luís, 229  
 São Miguel, 1019  
 São Nicolau, 337–8  
 São Paulo, 229–30, 234–6  
 São Tiago, 337–8  
 São Tome e Príncipe, 1055–6  
 São Vicente, 337–8  
 Sapele, 943, 945  
 Sapporo, 758–9, 765  
 Saragossa, *see* Zaragoza  
 Sarajevo, 1601, 1606–7, 1609  
 Saramacca, 1140–1  
 Sarandë, 68, 71  
 Saransk, 1224, 1256  
 Saratov, 1223, 1238, 1243, 1245, 1248, 1251  
 Sarava, 1287  
 Sarawak, 830–1, 840–3  
 Sardinia, 742, 744–5, 747  
 Sargodha, 969  
 Sarh, 346, 348  
 Sári, 706  
 Sar-i-Pol, 65  
 Sariwon, 786, 788  
 Sark, 1300, 1367–8, 1371  
 Sarobi, 65  
 Sasebo, 759  
 Saseno, *see* Sazan  
 Saskatchewan, 270–3, 283–5, 291–2, 295, 328–31  
 Saskatoon, 272, 329–30  
 Sasolburg, 1089, 1104  
 Sassandra, 391  
 Sassari, 742, 747, 751  
 Satpura, 670  
 Satu Mare, 1033  
 Sautdärkrökur, 623  
 Saudi Arabia, 57, 790, 1057–62  
 Savai'i, 1591, 1593  
 Savannah (Ga.), 1376, 1449–50  
 Savannakhet, 794, 797  
 Savé, 210  
 Savelinna, 475  
 Sawai Madhopur, 683  
 Sawfajjin, 810  
 Sawháj, 447  
 Say, 940  
 Saxony, Lower, *see* Lower Saxony  
 Sazan, 68  
 Scampton, 1314  
 Scarborough (Trinidad and Tobago), 1197  
 Scarborough (UK), 1298  
 Schaerbeek, 195  
 Schaffhausen, 1164, 1166  
 Scharhorn Island, 552  
 Schefferville, 327  
 Schenectady (N. Y.), 1504, 1506  
 Schiedam, 900  
 Schijndel, 900  
 Schleswig-Holstein, 534–6, 540, 556, 561–2  
 Schoelcher, 504  
 Schöneberg, 549  
 Schwechat Airport, 173  
 Schweizerhalle, 1169  
 Schwerin, 527  
 Schwyz, 1164, 1166  
 Scilly Isles, 1296  
 Scotland, 1295–6, 1299–1301, 1308–10, 1318, 1320, 1322, 1325, 1331, 1333–4, 1338–40, 1342, 1346–8, 1355–6  
 –Regions, 1299–1300  
 Scottsdale (Ariz.), 1431  
 Scranton (Pa.), 1521  
 Scutari, *see* Shkodër  
 Seaford City (Del.), 1443



- Sealdah, 692  
 Seattle (Wash.), 1375,  
     1542, 1544  
 Seawell Airport, 193  
 Sebha, 812-13  
 Secunderabad, 647  
 Sedgemoor, 1298  
 Sedom, 737  
 Seeb, 963, 966  
 Sefton, 1298  
 Segboroué, 210  
 Ségou, 846  
 Segovia, 1115  
 Séguéla, 391  
 Seinäjoki, 475  
 Seine-et-Marne, 494  
 Seine-Maritime, 492  
 Seine-Saint-Denis, 494  
 Sekondi-Takoradi,  
     563-4, 566  
 SELA, 54  
 Selangor, 830-1, 835  
 Selebi-Phikwe, 224, 226  
 Selenić, 70  
 Selfoss, 623  
 Selkirk (Botswana), 226  
 Selkirk (Canada), 306  
 Selosesha, 1106  
 Seltjarnarnes, 623  
 Semarang, 700, 703  
 Sembawang, 1078  
 Semipalatinsk, 1224,  
     1279-80  
 Semnán, 706  
 Semporna, 839  
 Sendai, 758-9, 765  
 Senegal, 523, 525,  
     1063-6  
 Senegambia, 523,  
     1063-4  
 Sennar, 1138  
 Sêno, 250  
 Sensuntepeque, 454  
 Seo de Urgel, La, 80,  
     1123  
 Seoul, 780-1, 783  
 Seongnam, 781  
 Sepik, 984  
 Sçpt-lles, 327  
 Seraing, 195  
 Serbia, 1602, 1612  
 Serdang, 837  
 Serekunda, 523  
 Seremban, 830  
 Seretse Khama Airport,  
     227  
 Sergipe, 229  
 Seria, 239-41  
 Serowe, 224  
 Scrabble, 1053  
 Serres, 572  
 Seti, 895  
 Sétif, 74, 78  
 Settatt, 878  
 Sétúbal, 1019, 1023-4  
 Sevastopol, 1224, 1232  
 Sevenoaks, 1298  
 Sevcročeský Region, 409  
 Severodvinsk, 1224,  
     1232  
 Severomoravský  
     Region, 409  
 Seville, 1114-16, 1119,  
     1125  
 Seward (Ak.), 1429  
 Seward (Nchr.), 1493  
 Seychelles, 29, 238, 506,  
     1067-9  
 Scyðisfjörður, 623  
 Sfax, 1201, 1204  
 Sfintu Gheorghe, 1032  
 's-Gravenhage, *see*  
     Hague, The  
 Shaanxi, 356, 365  
 Shaba, 1614, 1616  
 Shabani, *see* Zvishavane  
 Shabwa, 1598-9  
 Shag Island, 128  
 Shah Alam, 830, 837  
 Shahr Kord, 706  
 Shakhty, 1224  
 Shaki, 943  
 Shan, 254  
 Shandong, 356, 361,  
     365-6  
 Shanghai, 356-7, 359,  
     361, 363-4, 366  
 Shanxi, 356, 361, 364-5  
 Sharigh, 973  
 Sharin Gol, 874  
 Sharjah, 1290-3  
 Sharon, 736  
 Sharqiya, 447  
 Shati, 810  
 Sha Tin, 607, 610  
 Shayandima, 1109-10  
 Sheboygan (Wisc.), 1548  
 Sheffield, 1298, 1348  
 Shellharbour, 130  
 Shencottah, 667  
 Shendi, 1138  
 Shengli, 361  
 Shenyang, 356, 364  
 Shephelah, The, 736  
 Shepherdstown, (W.  
     Va.), 1546  
 Shepparton, 153-4, 157  
 Sherbrooke, 272, 326,  
     328  
 Sheridan (Wyo.), 1552  
 Sherkan Bandar, 66  
 Sherpur, 64  
 's-Hertogenbosch,  
     899-900  
 Shetland Islands, 1300,  
     1309-10, 1322  
 Sheung Wan, 611  
 Shevchenko, 1237  
 Shiberghán, 63, 65, 66  
 Shubin el-Kom, 447  
 Shijiazhuang, 356  
 Shikarpur, 973  
 Shikoku, 758  
 Shikotan, 1225  
 Shillong, 638, 652,  
     675-6  
 Shimla, 652, 662-3  
 Shimoga, 666  
 Shimonoski, 759  
 Shindand, 64  
 Shinyanga, 1179  
 Shippagan, 312  
 Shiráz, 706-7  
 Shiselweni, 1145  
 Shizuoka, 759  
 Shkirra, 1204  
 Shkodër, 68-9, 71  
 Shoa, 463  
 Sholapur, 631, 672-3  
 Shomolu, 943  
 Shortland Islands, 1082  
 Shreveport (La.), 1376,  
     1468  
 Shrewsbury and  
     Atcham, 1298  
 Shropshire, 1297  
 Shubra al-Khayma, 447  
 Shuiaba, 793  
 Shumen, 243  
 Shuwaikh, 793  
 Sialkot, 969  
 Siang, 655  
 Šiauliai, 1277  
 Sibasa, 1110  
 Sibi, 973  
 Sibiti, 382  
 Sibiu, 1033, 1038  
 Sibu, 830, 840-1  
 Sibut, 342  
 Sichuan, 356, 361-2,  
     365-6  
 Sicily, 742, 744-5, 747  
 Sidamo, 463  
 Sidi-Bel-Abbès, 75, 78  
 Sidi Bouzid, 1201  
 Sidi Kacem, 878  
 Sidon, 799-801  
 Siedlce, 1010  
 Siegen, 535  
 Siem Reap, 261  
 Siena, 751  
 Sieradz, 1010  
 Sierra Leone, 1070-4  
 Siglufjörður, 623  
 Signatepeque, 602  
 Siirt, 1207  
 Sikasso, 846  
 Sikkim, 631, 634, 648,  
     652-3, 683-5  
 Silay, 1002  
 Silchar, 655-6  
 Silhouette Island, 1067  
 Siliana, 1201  
 Siliguri, 685  
 Siliitra, 243  
 Silvassa, 694-5  
 Silver City (N. Mex.),  
     1503  
 Silvermine, 1092  
 Silver Spring (Md.),  
     1473  
 Simferopol, 1224  
 Simlipal, 679  
 Simla, *see* Shimla  
 Simonstown, 1092  
 Simpon, 1172  
 Sinai al-Janūbiya, 447  
 Sinai-ash-Shamāliya,  
     447  
 Sinai Peninsula, 276,  
     732  
 Sinaloa, 862  
 Sincelejo, 373  
 Sind, 968-70, 973  
 Singa, 1138  
 Singapore, 29, 51, 830,  
     1075-81  
 Singave, 518  
 Singida, 1179  
 Singtam, 685  
 Sinkat, 1137-8  
 Sinoe, 806  
 Sinoia, *see* Chinhoyi  
 Sinop, 1207  
 Sint Eustatius, 912, 914  
 Sint Maarten, 912-14  
 Sint Nicolaas, 911  
 Sint Niklaas, 195  
 Sintra, 1024  
 Sinuiji, 785-6, 788  
 Sioux City (Ia.), 1461-2  
 Sioux Falls (S.D.), 1529  
 Siparuni, 593  
 Sironj, 669  
 Sirsa, 661  
 Sissili, 250  
 Sistán and Balúchestan,  
     706  
 Sítka (Ak.), 1428-9  
 Sitra, 180  
 Sittard, 900  
 Sitten, 1173  
 Siuna, 937  
 Sivas, 1207  
 Skagway (Ak.), 1429-30  
 Skalfjörður, 428  
 Skaraborg, 1148  
 Skardu, 975  
 Skarsterlân, 900  
 Skellefteå, 1149  
 Skien, 949  
 Skierniewice, 1010  
 Skikda, 74  
 Skopje, 1601, 1605-7,  
     1611  
 Skövde, 1149  
 Skrapar, 68  
 Skye and Lochalsh, 1299  
 Slatina, 1033  
 Slavonski Brod, 1601  
 Sliedrecht, 900  
 Sligo, 718, 728  
 Sliven, 243, 245  
 Slobodzeisk, 1272  
 Slobozia, 1032  
 Slough, 1298  
 Slovakia, 408-9, 413-14  
 Slovenia, 1613  
 Šlupsk, 1010  
 Slydianka, 1238  
 Smakaden, 1142  
 Smallingerland, 900  
 Smara, 878, 1126  
 Smederevo, 1601  
 Smithfield (R.I.), 1526  
 Smolensk, 1224, 1251  
 Smolyan, 243  
 Snares Islands, 929  
 Sneek, 900  
 Sochi, 1224  
 Society Archipelago,  
     515  
 Socna, 813  
 Socorro (N. Mex.), 1503  
 Socotra, 1597-8  
 Södermanland, 1148  
 Södertälje, 1149  
 Sodor and Man, 1366  
 Soest, 900  
 Sofala, 884, 886  
 Sofia, 243-5, 247-9  
 Sogn og Fjordane, 948  
 Sohag, 447  
 Sohar, 963, 965  
 Sokodé, 1190, 1192  
 Sokoine, 1183  
 Sokolov, 412  
 Sokoto, 942-3  
 Solander Island, 929  
 Soldeu, 80  
 Soleure, *see* Solothurn  
 Solihull, 1298  
 Solingen, 535  
 Söllentuna, 1149  
 Solna, 1149  
 Sololá, 581  
 Solomon Islands, 29,  
     1082-4  
 Solothurn, 1164, 1166,  
     1173  
 Solwezi, 1619

- Somalia, 29, 462, 1085-7  
 Sombbrero Island, 85  
 Somerset, 1297  
 Somersworth (N.H.), 1497  
 Somerville (Mass.), 1476  
 Somogy, 614  
 Sonamura, 688  
 Sonderjylland, 416  
 Sondre Sromfjord, 429  
 Song Be, 1584  
 Songkhla, 1184  
 Sonipat, 661  
 Son La, 1583  
 Sonora, 862, 865  
 Sonsonate, 454, 456-7  
 Sopore, 665  
 Sopot, 1009  
 Soria, 1115  
 Soriano, 1565, 1567  
 Sorocaba, 230  
 Sorok, 1272  
 Sor Range, 973  
 Sor-Trondelag, 948  
 Sosa Méndez, 1579  
 Soshanguve, 1089  
 Sosnowiec, 1010  
 Sotavento, 337  
 Soubre, 391  
 Souk Ahras, 74  
 Soum, 250  
 Sourou, 250  
 Sousse, 1201, 1204  
 South Africa, 29, 126, 888-9, 890, 1088-99, 1106, 1146  
   -Homelands, 1091, 1105-1112  
   -Provinces, 1099-1105  
 Southampton, 1298, 1348  
 South Australia, 97-8, 106-7, 112-13, 115, 143-8  
 South Bedfordshire, 1298  
 South Bend (Ind.), 1376, 1459  
 South Cambridgeshire, 1298  
 South Carolina, 1374, 1384-5, 1404, 1526-8  
 South Dakota, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1528-30  
 South-East Lancashire, 1298  
 Southend on Sea, 1298  
 Southern District (Israel), 732  
 Southern Highlands (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 Southern Province (Sierra Leone), 1070  
 Southern Province (Sri Lanka), 1127  
 Southern Province (Uganda), 1218  
 Southern Province (Zambia), 1619  
 Southern Region (Malaŵi), 826-7  
 Southern Region (Sudan), 1135, 1137  
 Southern Yemen, *see* Yemen People's Democratic Republic  
 Southfield (Mich.), 1479  
 South Georgia, 30, 91, 469, 1113  
 South Glamorgan, 1297  
 South Grenadines, 578  
 South Island (Cocos Islands), 126  
 South Island (New Zealand), 915-16, 921  
 South Kesteven, 1298  
 South Kingstown (R.I.), 1526  
 South Lakeland, 1298  
 Southland (New Zealand), 916  
 South Norfolk, 1298  
 South Orkney Islands, 91, 238  
 South Ossetia, 1270  
 South Oxfordshire, 1298  
 South Pacific Forum, 56  
 Southport (N.C.), 1508  
 South Portland (Me.), 1470  
 South Region (Iceland), 623  
 South Region (Thailand), 1184  
 South Ribble, 1298  
 South Sandwich Islands, 30, 91, 469, 1113  
 South Shetland Islands, 238  
 South Somerset, 1298  
 South Staffordshire, 1298  
 South Tyneside, 1298  
 Southwark, 1299  
 South West Africa, *see* Namibia  
 Southwest Peninsula Region (Iceland), 623  
 South Yemen, *see* Yemen People's Democratic Republic  
 South Yorkshire, 1296, 1308  
 Soviet Union, *see* Union of Soviet Socialist Republics  
 Sovyetsk, 1225  
 Spain, 40, 42, 45, 47, 126, 1114-26  
 Spandau, 549  
 Spanish Town, 753  
 Sparks (Nev.), 1494-5  
 Spartanburg (S.C.), 1526  
 Sparte, 571  
 Speyer, 559  
 Spezia, 742, 745  
 Spijkenisse, 900  
 Spiti, 662  
 Split, 1601, 1606  
 Spitsbergen, 960  
 Spokane (Wash.), 1376, 1542  
 Springdale (Ark.), 1433  
 Springfield (Ill.), 1456-7  
 Springfield (Mass.), 1376, 1476  
 Springfield (Mo.), 1376, 1487  
 Springfield (Oh.), 1512  
 Springfield (Oreg.), 1518  
 Springlands, 595  
 Spruce Grove, 299, 300  
 Sri Jayawardenepura, 1133  
 Sri Lanka, 29, 1127-34  
 Srinagar, 631, 652, 664-5, 690  
 Sri Saket, 1184  
 Stadskanaal, 900  
 Stafford, 1298  
 Staffordshire, 1296, 1298  
 Staffordshire Moorlands, 1298  
 Stamford (Conn.), 1376, 1441  
 Stanley, 467-8  
 Stanleyville, *see* Kisangani  
 Stann Creek, 204  
 Stanton (Del.), 1444  
 Stara Zagora, 243  
 Starbuck Island, 777  
 Starkville (Miss.), 1486  
 Staten Island (N.Y.), 1504  
 Stavanger, 949  
 Stavropol, 1224, 1238, 1245, 1251  
 Steenwijk, 900  
 Stenlitz, 549  
 Stein, 900  
 Steinkjer, 949  
 Stellenbosch, 1097  
 Stepanakert, 1266  
 Stephenville, 313  
 Sterling Heights (Mich.), 1376, 1479  
 Sterlitamak, 1224  
 Stettin, *see* Szczecin  
 Stevens Point (Wisc.), 1550  
 Stewart Island, 915  
 Stewartry, 1299  
 Steyr, 169  
 Stillwater (Okla.), 1517  
 Stirling, 1299, 1347-8  
 Stockholm, 1148-9, 1151-2, 1158  
 Stockport, 1298  
 Stockton (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Stockton on Tees, 1298  
 Stoke on Trent, 1298  
 Stoney Creek, 311  
 Storström, 416  
 Stout (Wisc.), 1550  
 Strabane, 1357  
 Strasbourg, 484-5  
 Strassa, 1154  
 Stratford on Avon, 1298  
 Strathclyde, 1300, 1347-8  
 Strathkelvin, 1300  
 Stredočeský, Region, 409  
 Stredoslovenský Region, 409  
 Strömö, 427  
 Stroud, 1298  
 Stung Treng, 261  
 Stuttgart, 535, 543, 546-7  
 Styria, 169-70  
 Suao, 371  
 Subansiri, 655  
 Subotica, 1601  
 Suceava, 1033  
 Suchitpequez, 581  
 Sucre (Bolivia), 218-19, 222-3  
 Sucre (Colombia), 373  
 Sucre (Venezuela), 1576, 1579  
 Sudan, 29, 1135-9  
 Sudbury (Canada), 272, 321  
 Sud Department (Haiti), 597  
 Sudero, 427  
 Sud-Est Department (Haiti), 597  
 Sud-Est Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Sud Province (Cameroon), 265  
 Suez, 447  
 Suez Canal, 452, 732  
 Suffolk, 1297  
 Suffolk Coastal, 1298  
 Sui, 973  
 Suita, 759  
 Sukabumi, 700  
 Sukhumi, 1267, 1269  
 Sukkur, 969, 973  
 Sukuta, 523  
 Sulawesi, 699-700, 703-4  
 Sumat(e)ra, 699, 703-4  
 Sumgait, 1224, 1265-6  
 Summerside, 324  
 Sumy, 1224, 1261  
 Sundas, Lesser, *see* Nusa Tenggara  
 Sunday Island, 929  
 Sunderland, 1298  
 Sundsvall, 1149  
 Sungei Golok, 836  
 Sunnyvale (Calif.), 1376  
 Sunyani, 563, 566  
 Superior (Wisc.), 1548, 1550  
 Supernaam, 593  
 Sur, 963  
 Surabaya, 700, 703  
 Surakarta, 700  
 Surat, 631, 659, 661  
 Surendranagar, 659  
 Surgut, 1243  
 Surin, 1184  
 Suriname, 54, 592, 1140-3  
 Surkhan-Darya, 1283  
 Surrey (Canada), 306  
 Surrey (UK), 1297, 1348  
 Surt, 810  
 Sussex (Canada), 309  
 Sussex (UK), 1296-7, 1348  
 Sutherland, 1299  
 Sutton, 1299  
 Suva, 470-3  
 Suwaiq, 963  
 Suwaki, 1010  
 Suwarrow Island, 931  
 Suwaydā, 1175  
 Suweon, 781  
 Svalbard, 960-1

- Sverdlovsk, 1224, 1243,  
 1248, 1251  
 Sverdrup Islands, 270  
 Swain's Island, 1557,  
 1559  
 Swakopmund, 889-90  
 Swan Hill, 154  
 Swale, 1298  
 Swansea, 1298, 1347-8  
 Swaziland, 29, 1095,  
 1144-7  
 Sweden, 40, 46-7,  
 1148-63  
 Swift Current, 329  
 Switzerland, 40, 46-7,  
 815-17, 1164-74  
 Sydney (Australia),  
 97-8, 113, 130, 134  
 Sydney (Canada), 317  
 Sydney Mines, 317  
 Syktyvkar, 1224  
 Sylhet (Bangladesh), 185  
 Sylhet (Pakistan), 968  
 Syra, 576  
 Syracuse (Italy), 742  
 Syracuse (N.Y.), 1376,  
 1504, 1506  
 Syr-Darya, 1283  
 Syria, 45, 57, 447, 732,  
 798, 1175-8  
 Syzran, 1224  
 Szabolcs-Szatmár, 614  
 Szczecin, 413, 1009-11,  
 1015  
 Székesfehérvár, 614  
 Szekszárd, 614  
 Szolnok, 614  
 Szombathely, 614  
  
 Tabasco, 862  
 Tabiteuea, 777  
 Tablada, 1119  
 Tabligbo, 1192  
 Tabora, 1179, 1183  
 Taboshar, 1239  
 Tabouk, 1057  
 Tabriz, 706-7  
 Tabuهران, 777  
 Táchira, 1576, 1579  
 Tacloban, 1002  
 Tacna, 996  
 Tacoma (Wash.), 1376,  
 1542, 1544  
 Tacuarembó, 1565  
 Tadjoura, 431  
 Tadjikistan, 1223-4,  
 1285-7  
 Taegu, 780-1  
 Taejon, 781  
 Taff Ely, 1298  
 Taftlah, 767  
 Taganrog, 1224  
 Tagant, 855  
 Tahaa, 515  
 Tahiti, 515, 517  
 Tahlequah (Okla.), 1517  
 Tahoua, 939-41  
 Tahuata, 516  
 Taichung, 368, 371  
 Taif, 1057, 1062  
 Taimyr, 1251, 1260  
 Tainan, 368  
 Taiohae, 516  
 Taipa, 1026-7  
 Taipei, 368, 371  
 Taiping (Malaysia), 830  
 Tai Po, 607  
 Taitung, 368  
  
 Taiwan, 355, 368-72  
 Taiyuan, 356  
 Ta'iz, 1594  
 Tajikistan, *see*  
 Tadjikistan  
 Takamatsu, 759  
 Takatsuki, 759  
 Takeo, 264  
 Takoradi, 564, 566  
 Takutea, 931  
 Takutu, 593  
 Talara, 999  
 Talca, 349  
 Talcahuano, 349  
 Tallahassee (Fla.),  
 1447-8  
 Tallinn, 1223-4, 1273-4  
 Talwara, 663  
 Tamale, 563-4, 566  
 Tamana, 777  
 Tamanrasset, 74  
 Tamaulipas, 862  
 Tambacounda, 1063,  
 1066  
 Tambao, 251  
 Tambov, 1224, 1251  
 Tameside, 1298  
 Tamil Nadu, 631, 634,  
 642-3, 648, 652,  
 654, 686-8  
 Ta'min, 712  
 Tampa (Fla.), 1376,  
 1447-8  
 Tampere, 475, 481  
 Tampico, 863, 867  
 Tamuning, 1554  
 Tamworth (Australia),  
 130  
 Tandil, 95  
 Tandjilé, 346  
 Tanezrouft, 941  
 Tanga, 1179  
 Tangail, 185  
 Tangier, 878-9  
 Tangshan, 356  
 Tanjungkarang, 699  
 Tanjung Priok, 704  
 Tanna, 1570  
 Tanta, 447  
 Tan-Tan, 878  
 Tanzania, 29, 1179-83  
 Taoudenni, 847  
 Taounate, 878  
 Taoyuan, 368, 371  
 Tapoa, 250  
 Taranaki, 915  
 Taranto, 742, 745-6  
 Tarapacá, 349, 352  
 Tarawa, 777-9  
 Tarcoola, 112, 124  
 Taree, Greater, 130  
 Tarhunah, 810, 813  
 Tarija, 218-19, 222-3  
 Tariki, 920  
 Tarkwa, 563  
 Tarnobrzeg, 1010  
 Tarnów, 1010  
 Taroudant, 878  
 Tarrafal, 338  
 Tarragona, 1115-16  
 Tarrasa, 1116  
 Tartous, 1175  
 Tartu, 1248, 1273-4  
 Tashauz, 1281-2  
 Tashguzar, 66  
 Tashkent, 1223-4, 1243,  
 1245, 1248, 1283-4  
 Taskizak, 1208  
  
 Tasmania, 97-8, 106-7,  
 112-13, 115,  
 148-53  
 Tata, 878  
 Tatabanya, 615  
 Tataouine, 1201  
 Tatar Republic, 1251,  
 1257  
 Ta'u, 1557  
 Taunggyi, 254, 257  
 Taunton Deane, 1298  
 Taupo, 915  
 Tauranga, 915-16  
 Tavastehus, 474-5  
 Tawau, 838-9  
 Taylor (Mich.), 1479  
 Tayside, 1300  
 Tay Ninh, 1584  
 Taza, 878-9  
 Tbilisi, 1223-4, 1243,  
 1247-8, 1267  
 Tchibanga, 519  
 Tchimbélé, 520  
 Tébessa, 74  
 Tegal, 70  
 Tegucigalpa, 602-3, 605  
 Tehran, 706-7, 709-10  
 Tennybridge, 1298  
 Tekirdağ, 1207  
 Tela, 602-3  
 Telanaipura, 699  
 Telangana, 653  
 Tel Aviv, 732-3, 737-9  
 Telemark, 948  
 Tel-Kotcheh, 715  
 Telemorn, 1033  
 Teluk Anson, 836  
 Tema, 563, 566  
 Tembung, 239  
 Temirtau, 1224  
 Temotu, 1082  
 Tempe (Ariz.), 1376,  
 1431-2  
 Tempelhof, 549  
 Temuco, 349  
 Tena, 441  
 Tenali, 653  
 Tenasserim, 254  
 Tending, 1298  
 Tenerife, 1115  
 Tenkodogo, 250  
 Tennant Creek, 122-4  
 Tennessee, 1374, 1385,  
 1404, 1406, 1530-3  
 Tenom, 838-9  
 Tepelenë, 68  
 Tepic, 862-3  
 Teraina, 777  
 Teramo, 751  
 Terceira Island, 1019  
 Terengganu, 830  
 Teresina, 229-30  
 Termez, 1284, 1286-7  
 Terneuzen, 900  
 Terni, 742  
 Termitz, 169  
 Ternopol, 1261  
 Terrace, 306  
 Terre Adélie, *see* Adélie  
 Land  
 Terre-de-Bas, 500  
 Terre Haute (Ind.),  
 1459-60  
 Teruel, 1114  
 Test Valley, 1298  
 Tete, 884  
 Tetiaroa, 515  
 Tetouan, 878-9  
  
 Tetovo, 1601  
 Texarkana (Ark.), 1433  
 Texas, 1374, 1385, 1404,  
 1406, 1533-5  
 Teyateyaneng, 803  
 Tezpur, 656  
 Thaba-Tseka, 803  
 Thadeua, 796  
 Thai Binh, 1583  
 Thailand, 51, 1184-9  
 Thames-Coromandel,  
 915  
 Thamesdown, 1298  
 Thames Valley (New  
 Zealand), 915  
 Thana, 631, 672  
 Thanet, 1298  
 Thanh Hoa, 1583  
 Thanh Pho, 1585  
 Thatta Sadha, 973  
 Theodore Francis Green  
 Airport, 1525  
 Theravelli, 679  
 Thesprotia, 571  
 Thessaloniki, 572  
 Thessaly, 571, 574  
 Thiès, 1063, 1065  
 Thika, 772  
 Thimphu, 215-17  
 Thionville, 485  
 Thohoyandou, 1108,  
 1110  
 Thompson, 306  
 Thrace, 572  
 Three Kings Islands, 929  
 Thuan Hai, 1583  
 Thule, 428  
 Thunder Bay, 272  
 Thurgau, 1164, 1166  
 Thurrock, 1298  
 Tianjin, 356-7, 363-4  
 Tianshui, 364  
 Tiaret, 74, 78  
 Tibet, 356-7  
 Ticino, 1164-6, 1173  
 Tiel, 900  
 Tien Giang, 1584  
 Tiergarten, 549  
 Tierra del Fuego, 90-1  
 Tietjerksteradeel, 900  
 Tigre (Argentina), 91  
 Tigre (Ethiopia), 463  
 Tiji, 677  
 Tijuana, 863  
 Tiko, 268  
 Tikopia, 1082  
 Tilarán, 389  
 Tilburg, 900  
 Timaru, 916-17  
 Tímehri Airport, 594  
 Timiş, 1033  
 Timişoara, 1033, 1038  
 Timor Timur, 700, 704  
 Tindouf, 74, 1126  
 Tingréla, 391  
 Tin Shui Wai, 607  
 Tinsukia, 655  
 Tipaza, 74  
 Tipitapa, 934  
 Tipperary, 717  
 Tirana, 68-9, 71-2  
 Tirap, 655  
 Tiraspol, 1272  
 Tirgoviste, 1032  
 Tîrgu Jiu, 1032  
 Tîrgu Mures, 1032  
 Tîris el Gharbi(ya), *see*  
 Western Sahara



- Tiris Zemmour, 855  
 Tirol, 169–70  
 Tiruchirappalli, 631, 687  
 Tirunelveli, 631  
 Tirupathi, 654–5  
 Tissemilt, 74  
 Titas, 187  
 Titograd, 1601, 1606–7, 1611  
 Titova Mitrovica, 1601  
 Tivat, 1606  
 Tizi-Ouzou, 74, 78  
 Tiznit, 878  
 Tkibuli, 1268  
 Tkvarcheli, 1268  
 Tlaquepaque, 863  
 Tlaxcala, 862  
 Tlemcen, 74, 78  
 Tlokweng, 222  
 Toamasina, 822, 824–5  
 Tobago, 1197–8  
 Tobruk, 810  
 Togliatti, 1224  
 Togo, *1190–3*  
 Tohoku, 758, 765  
 Tokat, 1207  
 Tokelau, 30, 930  
 Tokmak, 1288  
 Toknam, 788  
 Tokoin Airport, 1192  
 Tokorozawa, 759  
 Toksong, 788  
 Tokushima, 759  
 Tokyo, 758–9, 764–5  
 Tolbukhin, 243  
 Toledo (Belize), 204  
 Toledo (Oh.), 1376, 1512, 1514  
 Toledo (Spain), 1115, 1124  
 Toliary, 822  
 Tolima, 373, 376  
 Tolna, 614  
 Toluca de Lardo, 862–3  
 Tolyatti, 1224  
 Tombali, 589  
 Tombouctou, 846, 848  
 Tomsk, 1224, 1248, 1251  
 Tonbridge and Malling, 1298  
 Tonga, 29, *1194–6*  
 Tongareva, 931  
 Tongariro, 915  
 Tongatapu, 1194, 1196  
 Toowoomba, 138  
 Topeka (Kans.), 1376, 1463  
 Topusko, 1605  
 Torbay, 1298  
 Torfaen, 1298  
 Torghundi, 66  
 Torkham, 66  
 Torness, 1322  
 Tornio, 475  
 Toronto, 272, 283, 290, 321, 323  
 Torrance (Calif.), 1376, 1435  
 Torre del Greco, 742  
 Torrejón de Ardoz, 1116, 1118  
 Torreon, 863  
 Torres Vedras, 1024  
 Torrington (Wyo.), 1552  
 Tórshavn, 427–8  
 Tortola, 1589–90  
 Toruń, 1010  
 Totonicapán, 581  
 Touba (Côte d'Ivoire), 391  
 Touba (Senegal), 1065  
 Toulon, 485, 489  
 Toulouse, 485, 497  
 Tourcoing, 485  
 Tournai, 195  
 Tours, 485  
 Tower Hamlets, 1299  
 Townsville, 97, 138  
 Towson (Md.), 1473  
 Toyama, 759  
 Toyohashi, 759  
 Toyonaka, 759  
 Toyota, 759  
 Tozeur, 1201  
 Trabzon, 1207, 1210–11  
 Trade Union International, 33  
 Trafford, 1298  
 Tralee, 728  
 Transkei, 1091, 1095, *1107–8*  
 Transvaal, 1088, 1096, *1102–3*  
 Transylvania, 1033, 1035, 1038  
 Traralgon, 154  
 Trarza, 855  
 Traun, 169  
 Treasury Islands, 1082  
 Treinta y Tres, 1565  
 Trelawny, 753  
 Trengganu, 831, 835  
 Trentino-Alto Adige, 741, 744  
 Trento, 741–2, 751  
 Trenton (Canada), 278  
 Trenton (N.J.), 1499  
 Trepča, 1605  
 Treptow, 549  
 Trier, 543, 559  
 Trieste, 742, 751, 1601  
 Trikkala, 571  
 Trincomalee, 1127, 1129  
 Trinidad (Bolivia), 218–19, 222–3  
 Trinidad (Uruguay), 1565  
 Trinidad and Tobago, 29, 55, *1197–1200*  
 Tripoli (Lebanon), 799–801  
 Tripoli (Libya), 810, 812–14  
 Tripolis, 571  
 Tripolitania, 810, 812–13  
 Tripura, 631, 634, 648–9, 652–3, *688–9*  
 Tristan da Cunha, 30, *1047*  
 Trivandrum, 631, 638, 647, 652, 667–9  
 Trnava, 409  
 Trois-Rivières, 272, 326  
 Trollhättan, 1149  
 Tromelin, 506  
 Troms, 948  
 Tromsø, 949, 957  
 Trondheim, 949, 957  
 Tropojë, 68  
 Troy (Mich.), 1479  
 Troy (N.Y.), 1504, 1506  
 Troyes, 485  
 Trujillo (Peru), 996  
 Trujillo (Venezuela), 1576  
 Truk, 1556  
 Truro (Canada), 317  
 Tsamkong, 359  
 Tselinograd, 1224, 1243  
 Tsévié, 1190  
 Tskhisdziri, 1269  
 Tsing Yi, 607  
 Tskhinvali, 1270  
 Tsuen Wan, 607, 611  
 Tsumeb, 889  
 Tuamotu Archipelago, 515  
 Tuaran, 839  
 Tübingen, 543, 547  
 Tubmanburg, 806  
 Tubuai Islands, 515  
 Tucson (Ariz.), 1376, 1431–2  
 Tucumán, 90, 95  
 Tucupita, 1576, 1581  
 Tuen Mun, 607, 610–11  
 Tuensang, 677  
 TUI, 33  
 Tuimazy, 1237–8  
 Tula, 1224, 1251  
 Tulcán, 441  
 Tulcea, 1033  
 Tuli, 677  
 Tulsa (Okla.), 1376, 1515–17  
 Tumangang, 788  
 Tumbes, 996  
 Tumkur, 666  
 Tumpat, 836  
 Tumu, 566  
 Tunbridge Wells, 1298  
 Tunceli, 1207  
 Tundo, 658  
 Tungurahua, 441  
 Tunis, 1201, 1204  
 Tunis-Carthage, 1204  
 Tunis-Goulette, 1201, 1204  
 Tunisia, 45, *1201–5*  
 Tunja, 373, 377  
 Tupelo (Miss.), 1484  
 Tupiza, 222  
 Tura, 1260  
 Turéia, 515  
 Turfan, 364  
 Türgovishte, 243  
 Turin, 742, 751  
 Turkey, 37, 40, 42, 44, 401, *1206–13*  
 Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus, 406–7  
 Turkmenistan, 1223–4, 1281–2  
 Turks and Caicos Islands, 30, *1214–15*  
 Turku, 475, 481  
 Turku-Pori, 474  
 Turnhout, 195  
 Turrialba, 388  
 Tuscaloosa (Ala.), 1425  
 Tuscany, 741, 744, 747  
 Tut, 973  
 Tuticorin, 631, 648, 687  
 Tutong, 239  
 Tutuila, 1557–9  
 Tutume, 224  
 Tuva, 1247, 1251, 1257–8  
 Tuvalu, 29, 777, *1216–17*  
 Tuxtla Gutiérrez, 862–3  
 Tuxpan, 867  
 Tuzla, 1601  
 Tweed, 138  
 Tweeddale, 1299  
 Tweed Heads, 97  
 Twin Falls (Id.), 1454  
 Tyche, 1010  
 Tyler (Tex.), 1533  
 Tyndin, 1243  
 Tyne and Wear, 1296  
 Tyneside, 1298  
 Tyre, 799  
 Tyube, 1286–7  
 Tyumen, 1224, 1238, 1251  
 Uahuka, 515  
 Uapu, 515  
 Ueberlândia, 230  
 Ubon Rajchathani, 1184  
 Uçayalı, 996  
 Uccle, 195  
 Udaipur, 683, 688  
 Uddevalla, 1149  
 Uden, 900  
 Udine, 742, 751  
 Udmurtia, 1251  
 Udorn Thani, 1184  
 Ufa, 1224, 1252  
 Uganda, 29, *1218–21*  
 Ughelli, 944  
 Uiback, 63  
 Uige, 82  
 Uitenhage, 1089  
 Uithoorn, 900  
 Ujjain, 631, 670–1  
 Ujung Padang, 700  
 Ukraine, 1223–5, 1247, *1261–3*  
 Ulan Bator, 871, 873–4  
 Ulan-Ude, 1224, 1252  
 Ulawa, 1082  
 Uleåborg, 474–5, 481  
 Ulhasnagar, 631  
 Ulm, 535, 543, 547  
 Ulsan, 781  
 Ulster, *see* Northern Ireland  
 Ulster (Republic of Ireland), 718  
 Ulyanovsk, 1224, 1251  
 Umanak, 429  
 Umbria, 741, 744  
 Umeå, 1149  
 Umm Al-Nassan Island, 180  
 Umm al-Nar, 1292–3  
 Umm al Qaiwain, 1290, 1292  
 Umm-Bab, 1028  
 Umm Said, 1028, 1030  
 Umm Salal Mohammad, 1028  
 Um Qasr, 715  
 Umerai Airport, 676  
 Umtali, 1623  
 Umtata, 1107–8  
 Umzimvubu, 1107  
 Una, 663  
 Unbong, 788  
 UNCTAD, 26  
 UNDP, 9, 15, *21–2*  
 UNHCR, *10–11*  
 UNESCO, 12, *15–16*, 21, 67

- Uneiza, 1057  
 UNFPA, 9-10  
 Ungava, 326  
 UNHCR, 7, 10-11  
 UNICEF, 9-10  
 UNIDO, 21  
 Union City (N.J.), 1499  
 Union Island, 1050-2  
 Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, 47-8, 58, 65-6, 126, 1222-50  
   -Autonomous Republics, Regions, etc., 1226-7  
   -Constituent Republics, 1223-5  
 Union Township (N.J.), 1499  
 United Arab Emirates, 1290-4  
 United Kingdom, 29, 36, 39, 40, 42, 44, 45, 46-7, 50, 126, 1295-1371  
 United Nations, 3-28, 720, 780  
   -Children's Fund, 9-10  
   -Conference on Trade and Development, 26  
   -Development Programme, 9, 15, 21, 22  
   -Disaster Relief Co-ordinator, 10-11  
   -Economic and Social Council, 5  
   -Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, 12, 15-16, 21, 67  
   -Fund for Population Activities, 9-10  
   -High Commissioner for Refugees, 7, 10-11  
   -Industrial Development Organization, 21  
   -Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees, 10  
 United States, 36, 39, 50, 126, 396, 625, 981-2, 1372-1424, 1584  
   -States, 1373-4, 1384-7, 1398, 1424-1553  
   -abbreviations of names, 1373-4  
   -Territories, 1375, 1383, 1387, 1553-64  
 Unity (Me.), 1472  
 Universal Postal Union, 22-3  
 University City (Mo.), 1487  
 Unterwalden, 1164, 1166-7  
 UNWRA, 10  
 Upington, 1096  
 Upper Arlington (Oh.), 1512  
 Upper Austria, 169-70  
 Upper East Region (Ghana), 563  
 Upper Sileru, 653  
 Upper West Region (Ghana), 563  
 Upolu, 1591, 1593  
 Uppsala, 1148-9, 1159  
 UPU, 22-3  
 Uqsur, *see* Luxor  
 Uralsk, 1224  
 Urawa, 759  
 Urbana (Ill.), 1458  
 Urbino, 751  
 Urengoi, 1238, 1243  
 Urgench, 1282  
 Uri, 1164, 1166  
 Uroševac, 1601  
 Uruapan, 863  
 Uruguay, 126, 1565-9  
 Urumqi, 356, 364  
 Usak, 1207  
 USSR, *see* Union of Soviet Socialist Republics  
 Ūsti nad Labem, 409  
 Ust-Kamenogorsk, 1224, 1239  
 Ust-Ordyn-Buryat, 1251, 1260  
 Ust-Ordynsk, 1260  
 Usulután, 454, 457  
 Utah, 1374, 1385, 1402, 1417, 1536-8  
 Utica (N.Y.), 1504  
 Utrecht, 899, 900, 908  
 Uttarpara, 692  
 Uttar Pradesh, 631, 633-4, 642, 648, 652, 689-91  
 Uturoa, 515  
 Uusimaa, 474  
 Uva, 1127  
 Uvéa (New Caledonia), 513  
 Uvéa (Wallis and Futuna), 518  
 Uzbekistan, 1223-4, 1282-4  
 Uzhgorod, 1238  
 Vaasa, *see* Vasa  
 Vadarevu, 654  
 Vadodara, 631, 659, 661  
 Vaduz, 815  
 Vago, 427-8  
 Vaishali, 658  
 Vaitupu, 1216  
 Vajmory Airport, 413  
 Vakaga, 342  
 Valais, 1164-6, 1173  
 Val-de-Marne, 494  
 Valdez (Ak.), 1428  
 Valdivia, 350, 354  
 Val-d'Oise, 494  
 Valence, 485  
 Valencia (Spain), 1115-16, 1121, 1125  
 Valencia (Venezuela), 1576, 1580  
 Valenciennes, 485  
 Valenzuela, 1002  
 Vale of Glamorgan, 1298  
 Vale of White Horse, 1298  
 Valera, 1576  
 Vale Royal, 1298  
 Valkeakoski, 475  
 Valkenswaard, 900  
 Vallabh-Vidyanagar, 661  
 Valle, 602  
 Valle d'Aosta, 741, 743-4  
 Valle de Cauca, 373  
 Valledupar, 373  
 Vallendar, 559  
 Valletta, 849  
 Valley Stream (N.Y.), 1504  
 Valley, The, 85  
 Valldolid, 1115-16, 1125  
 Valona, *see* Vlorë  
 Valparaíso (Chile), 349-50, 354  
 Valparaíso (Ind.), 1460  
 Valverde, 436  
 Van, 1207  
 Vanasthali, 683  
 Vancouver (Canada), 270, 272, 290, 302-3, 305-6  
 Vancouver (Wash.), 1542  
 Vanda, 475  
 Vanderbiltpark, 1089  
 Vanimo, 984  
 Vantaa, 475  
 Vanua Levu, 470, 472  
 Vanuatu, 29, 513, 1570-2  
 Vapi, 695  
 Varanasi, 631, 690  
 Varberg, 1149  
 Vares, 1605  
 Varkaus, 475  
 Värmland, 1148  
 Varna, 243, 247, 1244  
 Vas, 614  
 Vasa, 474-5, 481  
 Vascoas-Phoenix, 858  
 Vaslui, 1033  
 Västerås, 1149  
 Västerbotten, 1148  
 Västernorrland, 1148  
 Västervik, 1149  
 Västmanland, 1148  
 Vatican, 1573-5  
 Vaud, 1164-6, 1173  
 Vaupés, 374  
 Vava'u Islands, 1194-6  
 Växjö, 1149  
 Veendam, 900  
 Veenendaal, 900  
 Veghel, 900  
 Vejle, 416  
 Veldhoven, 900  
 Veliko Turnovo, 243, 249  
 Vella La Vella, 1082  
 Velsen, 900  
 Venda, 1091, 1108-10  
 Veneto, 741, 744  
 Venezuela, 54, 57, 592, 1576-82  
 Venice, 742, 746, 751  
 Venissieux, 485  
 Venlo, 900  
 Venray, 900  
 Ventspils, 1244, 1275  
 Ventura (Calif.), 1435  
 Veracruz, 862  
 Veracruz Llave, 863, 867  
 Veraguas, 978  
 Verdun (Canada), 326  
 Vereeniging, 1089  
 Verkhoyansk, 1243  
 Vermillion (S.D.), 1530  
 Vermont, 1373, 1385, 1417, 1538-40  
 Vernon, 303, 306  
 Verona, 742, 751  
 Verria, 572  
 Versailles, 485  
 Verviers, 195  
 Verwoerd Airport, 1095  
 Vest-Agder, 948  
 Vestfold, 948  
 Vestmannaeyjar, 427-8  
 Vestsjælland, 416  
 Veszprém, 614  
 Viacha, 219  
 Viana de Castelo, 1019, 1024  
 Viborg, 416, 424  
 Vicente López, 91  
 Vicenza, 742  
 Vichada, 374  
 Vicksburg (Miss.), 1484  
 Victoria (Australia), 97-8, 106-7, 112-13, 115, 153-60  
 Victoria (Canada), 272, 302, 305-6  
 Victoria (Hong Kong), 611  
 Victoria (Malaysia), 830, 838  
 Victoria (Seychelles), 1067-9  
 Victoria (Sri Lanka), 1130  
 Victoria de Durango, 862-3  
 Victoria Falls, 1623, 1626  
 Vidin, 243  
 Viedma, 91  
 Vieques, 1560  
 Vienna, 169, 170, 173  
 Vientiane, 794-7  
 Vietnam, 48, 1583-8  
 Vieux Fort, 1049  
 Vigo, 1116  
 Vijayawada, 631, 654-5  
 Vila, 1570-2  
 Vila do Conde, 1024  
 Vila Nova de Gaia, 1019, 1024  
 Vila Real, 1019  
 Vilcea, 1033  
 Villach, 169  
 Villa Clara, 395  
 Villacoublay, 490  
 Villa Elisa, 992  
 Villahermosa, 862-3  
 Villa Montes, 219, 222  
 Villarrica, 994  
 Villavicencio, 373  
 Villazón, 222  
 Villeurbanne, 485  
 Villmanstrand, 475, 481  
 Vilnius, 1016, 1223-4, 1245, 1277  
 Viluisk, 1243

- Vilvoorde, 195  
 Viña del Mar, 349  
 Vineland (N.J.), 1499  
 Vinh, 1587  
 Vinh Phu, 1583  
 Vinnitsa, 1224, 1238, 1261  
 Virgin Gorda, 1589  
 Virginia, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1406, 1540-2  
 Virginia Beach (Va.), 1376, 1540  
 Virgin Islands, British, 30, 1589-90  
 Virgin Islands of the United States, 1375, 1385, 1387-8, 1390, 1416, 1562-4  
 Viru Viru, 222  
 Visayas, 1002  
 Viséu, 1019, 1024  
 Vishakhapatnam, 631, 648, 654  
 Vitebsk, 1224, 1263  
 Viterbo, 751  
 Viti Levu, 470, 472  
 Vitória (Brazil), 229  
 Vitoria (Spain), 1115-16  
 Vitória a Minas, 235  
 Vitry-sur-Seine, 485  
 Vizcaya, 1114-16  
 Vizianagaram, 653  
 Vlaardingen, 900  
 Vladimir, 1224, 1251  
 Vladivostok, 1224, 1243, 1245-248  
 Vlissingen, 900, 903  
 Vlorë, 68, 70-1  
 Voinjama, 806  
 Vojvodina, 1602, 1613  
 Volcano Islands, 758  
 Volendam, *see* Edam-Volendam  
 Volgograd, 1224, 1240, 1244, 1251  
 Volhynia, 1261  
 Vologda, 1224, 1251  
 Volos, 571  
 Volta, 563  
 Volta Redonda, 234  
 Volzhsky, 1224  
 Voorburg, 900  
 Voorschoten, 900  
 Voorst, 900  
 Vorarlberg, 169-70, 817  
 Voronezh, 1224, 1243, 1251  
 Voroshilovgrad, 1224, 1261  
 Vorster Airport, 1095  
 Voskresensk, 1238  
 Vostochny, 1244  
 Vostok Island, 777  
 Vrancea, 1033  
 Vratsa, 243  
 Vrazhdebna Airport, 247  
 Vught, 900  
 Vung Tau, 1584  
 Východočeský Region, 408  
 Východoslovenský Region, 409  
 Wa, 563, 566  
 Waalwijk, 900  
 Wabag, 984  
 Wabana, 313  
 Wabush, 313, 315  
 Waco (Tex.), 1376, 1533, 1535  
 Waddinveen, 900  
 Wadi Halfa, 1136, 1138  
 Wadi Medani, 1135, 1138  
 Wageningen, 900  
 Wagerup, 164  
 Wagga Wagga, 130  
 Waikato, 915, 926  
 Waini, 593  
 Wairakei, 920  
 Wairarapa, 916  
 Wakayama, 759  
 Wakefield, 1298  
 Wake Island, 1375, 1559  
 Wakenaam, 595  
 Wakra, 1028  
 Walbrzych, 1010  
 Wales, 1295-6, 1298, 1308-9, 1318, 1320-2, 1325, 1331, 1334-48, 1355  
 -Counties, 1297  
 Walla Walla (Wash.), 1542  
 Wallblake Airport, 86  
 Wallis and Futuna, 511, 517-18  
 Walpole Island, 513  
 Walsall, 1298  
 Walster, 614  
 Waltham (Mass.), 1476, 1478  
 Waltham Forest, 1299  
 Walvis Bay, 888-9, 891, 1096, 1100  
 Wan Chai, 610  
 Wandsworth, 1299  
 Wanganui, 915-16  
 Wangaratta, 154, 157  
 Wanki, *see* Hwange  
 Waranagad, 631, 653-5  
 Wardha, 672  
 Warm Springs (Mont.), 1490  
 Warren (Mich.), 1376, 1479  
 Warren (Oh.), 1512  
 Warrenpoint, 1363  
 Warri, 943-4, 946  
 Warrington, 1298  
 Warrmambool, 154  
 Warsaw, 1009-12, 1015-16  
 Warsaw Pact, 47-8  
 Warwick (Pa.), 1524-5  
 Warwick (UK), 1298, 1348  
 Warwickshire, 1297  
 Waseda, 765  
 Washington (D.C.), 1375, 1404, 1445-6  
 Washington (State), 1374, 1385, 1387, 1542-4  
 Washington (UK), 1334  
 Wasit, 712  
 Wassenaar, 900  
 Waterbury (Conn.), 1376, 1441  
 Waterford, 718, 728  
 Waterloo (la.), 1461  
 Watermael-Boitsfort, 195  
 Watertown (N.Y.), 1504  
 Watertown (S.D.), 1529  
 Waterville (Me.), 1471-2  
 Watson Lake, 333, 335  
 Wau, 1138  
 Waukegan (Ill.), 1456  
 Waukesha (Wisc.), 1548  
 Wausau (Wisc.), 1548  
 Wauwatosa (Wisc.), 1548  
 Waveney, 1298  
 Waverley, 1298  
 Waverly (la.), 1462  
 Wayne (Nebr.), 1493  
 Waziristan, 970  
 WCC, 31-2  
 WCL, 32-3, 34  
 Wealden, 1298  
 Weatherford (Okla.), 1517  
 Wedding, 549  
 Weert, 900  
 Weipa, 140  
 Weirton (W. Va.), 1545  
 Weissensee, 549  
 Wele-Nzas, 459  
 Wellington (India), 637  
 Wellington (New Zealand), 915-18, 925-6  
 Wels, 169  
 Welwyn Hatfield, 1298  
 West Allis (Wisc.), 1548  
 West Bank, 732, 733, 767-8  
 West Bengal, 630-1, 634, 641-2, 648, 652, 691-3  
 Westbrook (Me.), 1472  
 West Coast (New Zealand), 916  
 Western Area (Sierra Leone), 1070, 1073-4  
 Western Australia, 97-8, 106-7, 112-13, 115, 160-8  
 Western District (American Samoa), 1557  
 Western European Union, 39  
 Western Highlands (Papua New Guinea), 984  
 Western Isles (Scotland), 1300, 1310, 1322  
 Western Peninsula (Iceland), 623  
 Western Province (Kenya), 772, 774  
 Western Province (Papua New Guinea), 984, 986  
 Western Province (Solomon Islands), 1082  
 Western Province (Sri Lanka), 1127  
 Western Province (Uganda), 1218  
 Western Province (Zambia), 1619  
 Western Region (Ghana), 563  
 Western Sahara, 855, 876, 1126  
 Western Samoa, 29, 930, 1591-3  
 West Germany, *see* Germany, Federal Republic of  
 West Glamorgan, 1297  
 West Hartford (Conn.), 1441  
 West Island (Cocos Islands), 126  
 West Lancashire, 1298  
 Westland (Mass.), 1479  
 West Liberty (W. Va.), 1546  
 West Lothian, 1299  
 Westmeath, 717  
 West Memphis (Ark.), 1433  
 West Midlands (UK), 1296, 1298, 1308  
 Westminster (Colo.), 1438  
 Westminster (UK), 1299, 1318  
 Westmoreland (Jamaica), 753  
 West Oxfordshire, 1298  
 West Palm Beach (Fla.), 1447  
 West Region (Iceland), 623  
 Weststellingwerf, 900  
 West Sussex, 1297  
 West Virginia, 1374, 1385, 1417, 1544-7  
 West Wiltshire, 1298  
 West Yorkshire, 1296  
 Wetaskiwin, 299, 300  
 WEU, 39  
 Wewak, 984  
 Weyburn, 329  
 WFTU, 32-4  
 Whangarei, 915-16  
 Whcat Ridge (Colo.), 1438  
 Wheeling (W. Va.), 1545  
 Whitehorse, 333-6  
 White Plains (N.Y.), 1504  
 White Russia, *see* Belorussia  
 Whitewater (Wisc.), 1550  
 WHO, 10, 16-18, 21, 946  
 Whyalla, 144  
 Wichita (Kans.), 1376, 1463, 1465  
 Wichita Falls (Tex.), 1533  
 Wicklow, 717  
 Wiener Neustadt, 169  
 Wierden, 900  
 Wiesbaden, 535, 553  
 Wigan, 1298  
 Wight, Isle of, *see* Isle of Wight  
 Wigram, 919  
 Wigtown, 1299  
 Wijchen, 900  
 Wilkes-Barre (Pa.), 1521  
 Wilkes Land, 125  
 Willemstad, 912, 914  
 Williamsburg (Va.), 1541  
 Willis Island, 129  
 Wilmersdorf, 549  
 Wilmington (Del.), 1443-4



- Wilmington (N.C.), 1508-9  
 Wilrijk, 195  
 Wilton, 1311  
 Wiltshire, 1297-8  
 Winchester, 1298  
 Windhoek, 888-90  
 Windsor  
   (Newfoundland), 313  
 Windsor (Ontario), 272, 321  
 Windsor and Maidenhead (UK), 1298  
 Windward Islands (French Polynesia), *see* Îles du Vent  
 Windward Islands (Netherlands Antilles), 912  
 Winneba, 563  
 Winnipeg, 272, 277-8, 306-9  
 Winona (Minn.), 1483  
 Winschoten, 900  
 Winston-Salem, 1376, 1507  
 Winterswijk, 900  
 Winterthur, 1165  
 WIPO, 26-7  
 Wirral, 1298  
 Wisconsin, 1374, 1385, 1404, 1417, 1547-51  
 Witten, 535, 543, 558  
 WMO, 23-4  
 Wodonga, 154, 157  
 Woerden, 900  
 Wokha, 677  
 Wokingham, 1298  
 Wolcu-Ntem, 519  
 Wolfsberg (Austria), 169  
 Wolfsburg (FRG), 535  
 Wollega, 463  
 Wollo, 463  
 Wollongong, 97, 130, 137  
 Woluwe-St Lambert, 195  
 Woluwe-St Pierre, 195  
 Wolverhampton, 1298  
 Wonderboom, 1089  
 Wonsan, 785, 788  
 Woodbourne, 919  
 Woodbridge (N.J.), 1499  
 Woodspring, 1298  
 Woonsocket (R.I.), 1524  
 Worcester (Mass.), 1376, 1476, 1478  
 Worcester (UK), 1296  
 World Bank, 19, 20-1  
 World Confederation of Labour, 32-3, 34  
 World Council of Churches, 31-2  
 World Federation of Trade Unions, 32-4  
 World Health Organization, 10, 16-18, 21, 946  
 World Intellectual Property Organization, 26-7  
 World Meteorological Organization, 23-4  
 Worsley, 164  
 Worthing, 1298  
 Wrekin, 1298  
 Wrexham Maelor, 1298  
 Wrocław, 1010-12  
 Wrocław, 1010  
 Wuhan, 356, 361, 363, 366  
 Wuppertal, 535  
 Würzburg, 535, 543, 548  
 Wychavon, 1298  
 Wycombe, 1298  
 Wyoming, 1374, 1385, 1551-3  
 Wyoming (Mich.), 1479  
 Wyre (Forest), 1298  
 Xiaixai, 884  
 Xanthi, 572  
 Xiamen, 366  
 Xian, 356, 364, 366  
 Xiangan, 364  
 Xieng Khouang, 796  
 Xining, 356, 364  
 Xinjiang, 356, 364-5  
 Xuzhou, 364  
 Yacetyetá, 992  
 Yafran, 810  
 Yakima (Wash.), 1542  
 Yakutia, 1251, 1258-9  
 Yakutsk, 1243, 1258  
 Yalourn, 155-7  
 Yamalo-Nenets, 1251, 1260  
 Yambol, 243  
 Yamoussoukro, 391  
 Yanam, 697  
 Yanbu, 1057, 1060-1  
 Yandina, 1084  
 Yanggang, 786  
 Yannina, 571  
 Yao, 759  
 Yaoundé, 265, 268  
 Yap, 1556  
 Yaracuy, 1576  
 Yarkon, 736  
 Yarmouth (Canada), 317  
 Yaroslavl, 1243, 1251  
 Yasui, 1286  
 Yásuj, 706  
 Yatenga, 250  
 Yau Ma Tei, 611  
 Yazd, 706-7  
 Yellowknife, 279, 332-3  
 Yellowstone Park (Wyo.), 1551  
 Yemen Arab Republic, 1594-6, 1597  
 Yemen People's Democratic Republic, 48, 1597-1600  
 Yendi, 566  
 Yengema, 1073  
 Yeotmal, 672  
 Yerevan, 1223-4, 1243, 1245, 1270-1  
 Yerim, 1594  
 Yinchuan, 356, 364  
 Yoff Airport, 1066  
 Yogyakarta, 700-1  
 Yokkaichi, 759  
 Yokohama, 759, 764  
 Yokosuka, 759  
 Yonkers (N.Y.), 1376, 1504  
 York (Pa.), 1521  
 York (UK), 1298, 1341, 1348  
 Yorkshire, 1296, 1308  
 Yorkton, 329  
 Yoro, 602  
 Yoshkar-Ola, 1224, 1256  
 Youngstown (Oh.), 1376, 1512, 1514  
 Youyiguan, 364  
 Yozgat, 1207  
 Yucatán, 862  
 Yuen Long, 607, 610  
 Yugoslavia, 45, 48, 58, 71, 1601-9  
   -Republics and Provinces, 1602, 1609-13  
 Yukon, 271-3, 280, 284, 291-2, 333-6  
 Yuksam, 685  
 Yulara, 122  
 Yuma (Ariz.), 1431  
 Yumen, 364  
 Yundum Airport, 525  
 Yunlin, 368  
 Yunnan, 356, 361-6  
 Yvelines, 494  
 Zaanstad, 900  
 Zaanstreek, 900  
 Zabrze, 1010  
 Zacapa, 581  
 Zacatecas, 862  
 Zacatecoluca, 454, 457  
 Zadar, 1601, 1606  
 Zagâziq, 447  
 Zaghouan, 1201  
 Zagreb, 1601, 1604, 1606-7, 1610  
 Záhedán, 706, 710  
 Záhle, 799  
 Zaïre, 1041, 1614-18  
 Zaire (Angola), 82  
 Zakarpatskaya, 1261  
 Zakynthos, 571  
 Zala, 614, 617  
 Zalaegerszeg, 614  
 Zaluzi, 411  
 Zambézia, 884  
 Zambia, 29, 1619-22  
 Zamboanga, 1002  
 Zamora (Ecuador), 441  
 Zamora (Spain), 1115  
 Zamora-Chinchipe, 441  
 Zamość, 1010  
 Zanderij Airport, 1142  
 Zanesville (Oh.), 1512  
 Zanján, 706-7  
 Zante, 571  
 Zanzibar, 1179-83  
 Západočeský Region, 409  
 Západoslovenský Region, 409  
 Zapopán, 863  
 Zaporozhye, 1224, 1261  
 Zaragoza, 1114-16, 1118, 1125  
 Zaria, 942  
 Zarnowiec, 1013  
 Zarqa, 767  
 Zawia, 810  
 Zeeland, 899  
 Zehlendorf, 459  
 Zeist, 900  
 Zelaya Norte/Sur, 934-5  
 Zemun, 1604  
 Zenica, 1601  
 Zeravshan, 1283  
 Zevenaar, 900  
 Zhanjiang, 364  
 Zhdanov, *see* Rybinsk  
 Zhejiang, 356  
 Zhengzhou, 356, 363-4  
 Zhitomir, 1224, 1261  
 Zhuzhou, 363-4  
 Zia Airport, 189  
 Zibo, 356  
 Zielona Góra, 1010  
 Ziguinchor, 1063, 1066  
 Žilina, 409  
 Zimbabue, 29, 1623-9  
 Zinder, 939-41  
 Zizya, 770  
 Zlatoust, 1224  
 Zlitan, 810  
 Zoetermeer, 900  
 Zomba, 826-7  
 Zonguldak, 1207, 1209  
 Zou, 208  
 Zouérate, 855, 857  
 Zoundwéogo, 250  
 Zrenjanin, 1601  
 Zuénoula, 391  
 Zug, 1164, 1166  
 Zuid-Holland, 899, 902  
 Zulia, 1576, 1579  
 Zuluf, 1060  
 Zunhebato, 677  
 Zurich, 1164-8, 1173  
 Zutphen, 900  
 Zvishavane, 1623  
 Zwedru, 806  
 Zwelitsha, 1110  
 Zwickau, 527  
 Zwijndrecht, 900  
 Zwolle, 900

# PRODUCT INDEX

References are to production data

## Aluminium:

- Australia, 107, 110
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 141
- Tasmania, 151–2
- Western Australia, 164
- Bahrain, 182–3
- Cameroon, 267
- China, 361
- Ghana, 566
- Hungary, 618
- Iceland, 626
- India, 643
- Italy, 747
- Jordan, 770
- Norway, 952
- Sweden, 1155
- USSR, 1238
- UK, 1324–5
- USA:
- Washington, 1543
- Venezuela, 1580

## Barley, world statistics, xvii

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 71
- Algeria, 76
- Australia, 107, 109
- New South Wales, 133
- Queensland, 140
- South Australia, 146
- Tasmania, 151
- Victoria, 157
- Western Australia, 163
- Austria, 172
- Belgium, 199
- Bhutan, 216
- Bulgaria, 246
- Canada, 284
- Quebec, 327
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Chile, 352
- Cyprus, 403
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Denmark, 420
- Ecuador, 444
- Ethiopia, 465
- Finland, 478
- France, 492
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Germany (FRG), 540
- Baden-Württemberg, 546
- Bavaria, 548
- Hessen, 554
- Lower Saxony, 555
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
- Saarland, 560
- Schleswig-Holstein, 561
- Hungary, 618
- India:
- Sikkim, 684
- Iran, 709
- Iraq, 714
- Ireland, 723
- Italy, 747
- Japan, 762
- Jordan, 769
- Kenya, 774
- Korea, South, 783
- Libya, 813
- Mexico, 866
- Mongolia, 873

## Barley:

- Morocco, 881
- Netherlands, 905
- New Zealand, 921
- Norway, 953
- Poland, 1014
- Portugal, 1022
- Romania, 1036
- Spain, 1121
- Sweden, 1154
- Switzerland, 1169
- Syria, 1177
- Turkey, 1210
- UK, 1324
- Northern Ireland, 1360
- USA, 1404
- Arizona, 1432
- Colorado, 1439
- Idaho, 1454
- Indiana, 1460
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Minnesota, 1482
- Montana, 1490
- North Dakota, 1510
- Oregon, 1519
- Texas, 1534
- Wyoming, 1552
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
- Yemen People's Republic, 1599
- Yugoslavia:
- Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1609
- Croatia, 1610
- Macedonia, 1611
- Montenegro, 1611
- Serbia, 1612–13
- Zimbabwe, 1626

## Bauxite:

- Australia:
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140
- Western Australia, 163
- Brazil, 235
- Cameroon, 267
- China, 361
- Congo, 384
- Dominican Republic, 438
- France, 492
- Ghana, 565
- Greece, 574
- Guinea, 587
- Guyana, 593–4
- Hungary, 617
- India, 642
- Gujarat, 660
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Orissa, 679
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Uttar Pradesh, 690
- Indonesia, 703
- Jamaica, 755
- Malaysia, 834, 836
- Pakistan, 973
- Romania, 1035
- Sierra Leone, 1071
- Suriname, 1141–2
- USSR, 1238
- USA, 1402
- Arkansas, 1433
- Venezuela, 1579

## Bauxite:

- Vietnam, 1586
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1610
- Croatia, 1610
- Montenegro, 1611

## Chrome:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 70–1
- Brazil, 233
- Cuba, 397
- India, 642
- Bihar, 657
- Karnataka, 666
- Orissa, 679
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Iran, 709
- Japan, 762
- Madagascar, 824
- New Caledonia, 513–14
- Pakistan, 973
- Romania, 1035
- South Africa, 1093
- Bophuthatswana, 1106
- Turkey, 1209
- USSR, 1238
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Cereals, world statistics, xv–xxii

## Coal:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 70
- Algeria, 76
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109
- New South Wales, 133
- Queensland, 140–1
- South Australia, 145
- Tasmania, 150
- Victoria, 157
- Western Australia, 163
- Belgium, 199
- Botswana, 226
- Brazil, 234
- Bulgaria, 246
- Canada, 283
- Alberta, 301
- British Columbia, 304–5
- New Brunswick, 311
- Nova Scotia, 319
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Chile, 352
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Czechoslovakia, 411–12
- France, 492
- Germany (FRG), 539
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Saarland, 560
- Hungary, 617
- India, 643
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Assam, 656
- Bihar, 657
- Gujarat, 660
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Meghalaya, 675
- Orissa, 679
- Tamil Nadu, 686

## Coal:

- West Bengal, 692
- Indonesia, 703
- Iran, 709
- Japan, 762
- Korea, North, 787
- Korea, South, 783
- Mexico, 866
- Morocco, 881
- Mozambique, 886
- New Zealand, 921
- Niger, 940
- Nigeria, 944-5
- Pakistan, 973
- Philippines, 1005
- Poland, 1013
- Portugal, 1022
- Romania, 1035
- South Africa, 1093
- Spain, 1120
- Taiwan, 370
- Turkey, 1209
- USSR, 1238, 1240
- RSFSR, 1251
- Ukraine, 1262
- Uzbekistan, 1284
- UK, 1323, 1330
- USA, 1402, 1411
- Alabama, 1426
- Alaska, 1429
- California, 1439
- Illinois, 1457
- Indiana, 1459
- Iowa, 1462
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Maryland, 1474
- Missouri, 1487
- Montana, 1490
- New Mexico, 1502
- Ohio, 1513
- Oklahoma, 1515
- Pennsylvania, 1522
- Tennessee, 1531
- Virginia, 1541
- West Virginia, 1545
- Wyoming, 1553
- Venezuela, 1579
- Vietnam, 1586-7
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Croatia, 1610
- Serbia, 1612
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Cocoa:

- Australia, 110
- Benin, 210
- Bolivia, 221
- Brazil, 234-5
- Cameroon, 267
- Congo, 384
- Costa Rica, 388-9
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Ecuador, 444
- Equatorial Guinea, 460
- Fiji, 471
- Gabon, 521
- Ghana, 565-6
- Grenada, 579
- Guyana, 599
- Jamaica, 755
- Liberia, 807-8
- Malaysia, 834, 836, 842
- Nigeria, 945
- Panama, 980
- Papua New Guinea, 986-7
- St Lucia, 1048-9

## Cocoa:

- St Vincent and the Grenadines, 1051
- São Tomé e Príncipe, 1056
- Sierra Leone, 1071-2
- Solomon Islands, 1083
- Togo, 1192
- Trinidad and Tobago, 1198
- UK, 1329
- Vanuatu, 1571
- Venezuela, 1579

## Coffee:

- Angola, 83
- Australia, 110
- Benin, 209
- Bolivia, 221
- Brazil, 234-5
- Burundi, 259
- Cameroon, 267
- Central African Republic, 344
- Colombia, 376
- Congo, 384
- Costa Rica, 388-9
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 398
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Ecuador, 444
- El Salvador, 456
- Equatorial Guinea, 460
- Ethiopia, 465
- Ghana, 565
- Guatemala, 583
- Guinea, 587
- Haiti, 599
- Honduras, 604
- India, 642, 645
- Karnataka, 666
- Kerala, 668
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Indonesia, 703
- Kenya, 774
- Liberia, 807-8
- Madagascar, 824
- Mexico, 866
- New Caledonia, 514
- Nicaragua, 936-7
- Panama, 980
- Papua New Guinea, 986-7
- Paraguay, 993
- Peru, 999
- Rwanda, 1041
- Sierra Leone, 1071-2
- Tanzania, 1181
- Togo, 1192
- Uganda, 1220
- UK, 1329
- Vanuatu, 1571
- Venezuela, 1579
- Vietnam, 1586
- Zaire, 1616-17
- Zimbabwe, 1626

## Copper:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 70-1
- Algeria, 76
- Antigua and Barbuda, 88
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 110
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140-1
- South Australia, 145
- Tasmania, 150, 152
- Botswana, 226
- Burkina Faso, 251
- Burma, 255
- Canada, 283

## Copper:

- British Columbia, 304
- Manitoba, 308
- New Brunswick, 311
- Ontario, 323
- Quebec, 327
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Chile, 352-3
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Congo, 384
- Cuba, 397
- Cyprus, 403
- Ecuador, 444
- Finland, 478
- India, 642
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Bihar, 657
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Rajasthan, 682
- Sikkim, 685
- Uttar Pradesh, 690
- Indonesia, 703
- Japan, 762
- Korea, North, 787-8
- Korea, South, 783
- Malaysia, 834, 836
- Mexico, 866
- Mongolia, 873
- Morocco, 881
- Nicaragua, 936
- Norway, 952
- Oman, 965
- Pakistan, 973
- Panama, 980
- Papua New Guinea, 986
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Poland, 1013
- Romania, 1035
- South Africa, 1093
- Sudan, 1137
- Sweden, 1154-5
- Taiwan, 370
- Turkey, 1209
- Uganda, 1220
- USSR, 1238
- RSFSR, 1251
- UK, 1324
- USA, 1402
- Arizona, 1431
- California, 1436
- Idaho, 1454
- Maine, 1471
- Montana, 1490
- New Mexico, 1502
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Macedonia, 1611
- Serbia, 1612
- Zaire, 1616-17
- Zambia, 1621
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Cotton:

- Afghanistan, 65-6
- Albania, 71
- Angola, 83
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109-10
- New South Wales, 134
- Queensland, 140
- Victoria, 158
- Bangladesh, 188
- Benin, 209-10
- Bolivia, 221
- Botswana, 226
- Bulgaria, 246
- Burkina Faso, 251



## Cotton:

- Burma, 256
- Burundi, 259
- Cameroon, 267
- Central African Republic, 344
- Chad, 347
- China, 363
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 398
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Egypt, 451
- El Salvador, 456
- France, 493
- Germany (FRG), 540
- Ghana, 565
- Greece, 575
- Guatemala, 583
- Guyana, 599
- Hungary, 618
- India, 642–3, 645
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Assam, 656
- Gujarat, 660
- Karnataka, 666
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Meghalaya, 675
- Pondicherry, 697
- Punjab, 681
- Rajasthan, 683
- Tamil Nadu, 686–7
- Israel, 736
- Japan, 763
- Kenya, 774
- Korea, North, 787
- Laos, 796
- Madagascar, 824
- Mali, 847
- Mexico, 866
- Nicaragua, 936–7
- Nigeria, 945
- Pakistan, 974
- Paraguay, 993
- Peru, 999
- Senegal, 1065
- Somalia, 1086
- South Africa, 1094
- Spain, 1121
- Sudan, 1137
- Swaziland, 1146
- Syria, 1177
- Taiwan, 370
- Tanzania, 1181
- Thailand, 1187
- Togo, 1192
- Turkey, 1210
- Uganda, 1220
- USSR, 1239–42
- Armenia, 1271
- Azerbaijan, 1265
- Kirghizia, 1288
- Tadzhikistan, 1286
- Turkmenistan, 1281
- Uzbekistan, 1283–4
- UK, 1325
- USA, 1404, 1411
- Alabama, 1426
- Arizona, 1431
- Arkansas, 1434
- California, 1436
- Georgia, 1450
- Louisiana, 1469
- Mississippi, 1485
- Missouri, 1487
- New Mexico, 1502
- Oklahoma, 1515
- South Carolina, 1527
- Tennessee, 1531

## Cotton:

- Texas, 1534
- Venezuela, 1579
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
- Yemen People's Republic, 1599
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Macedonia, 1611
- Slovenia, 1613
- Zaire, 1616
- Zambia, 1621
- Zimbabwe, 1626

## Diamonds

- Angola, 82–3
- Australia:
- Western Australia, 163
- Botswana, 226
- Brazil, 234
- Central African Republic, 344
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Ghana, 565
- Guyana, 593
- India, 643
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Liberia, 807–8
- Namibia, 890
- Sierra Leone, 1071
- South Africa, 1093
- Bophuthatswana, 1106
- Tanzania, 1181
- Zaire, 1616

## Gas, natural:

- Afghanistan, 65–6
- Albania, 70
- Algeria, 76
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 109
- Northern Territory, 122–3
- South Australia, 145
- Victoria, 157
- Western Australia, 163
- Bahrain, 182
- Bangladesh, 187
- Belgium, 199
- Bolivia, 220–1
- Brazil, 233
- Brunei, 240–1
- Burma, 255
- Canada, 283
- Alberta, 300–1
- British Columbia, 304
- New Brunswick, 311
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Chile, 352
- Ecuador, 444
- Egypt, 450
- France, 492
- Germany (FRG), 539
- Hungary, 617
- India, 641, 643
- Andhra Pradesh, 653
- Gujarat, 660
- Indonesia, 703
- Iran, 709
- Ireland, 722
- Italy, 747
- Kuwait, 792
- Libya, 812
- Malaysia, 834
- Mexico, 865
- Netherlands, 905
- New Zealand, 920
- Norway, 952–3, 955
- Oman, 965
- Pakistan, 973

## Gas, natural:

- Poland, 1013
- Qatar, 1029
- Romania, 1035
- Rwanda, 1041
- Spain, 1120
- Syria, 1177
- Taiwan, 370
- Thailand, 1187
- Tunisia, 1203
- USSR, 1238, 1242
- Ukraine, 1262
- Uzbekistan, 1284
- United Arab Emirates, 1292
- UK, 1322–3, 1330
- USA, 1402
- Alabama, 1426
- Alaska, 1428–9
- Arkansas, 1433
- California, 1436
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Louisiana, 1469
- Maryland, 1474
- Michigan, 1480
- Mississippi, 1485
- Montana, 1490
- New Mexico, 1502
- New York, 1505
- North Dakota, 1510
- Ohio, 1513
- Oklahoma, 1515
- Pennsylvania, 1522
- Texas, 1534
- West Virginia, 1545
- Wyoming, 1552
- Venezuela, 1579

## Gold:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140
- Tasmania, 150
- Victoria, 157
- Western Australia, 163
- Bolivia, 221
- Brazil, 234
- Burma, 256
- Canada, 283
- British Columbia, 304
- New Brunswick, 311
- Newfoundland, 315
- Northwest Territories, 332
- Ontario, 323
- Quebec, 327
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Yukon, 334
- Central African Republic, 344
- Chile, 353
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Costa Rica, 388
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Ecuador, 444
- Ethiopia, 464
- Ghana, 565–6
- Guyana, 593
- India, 642–3
- Haryana, 662
- Karnataka, 666
- Indonesia, 703
- Japan, 762
- Kenya, 774
- Korea, South, 783
- Liberia, 807–8
- Madagascar, 824

## Gold:

- Malaysia, 836
- Mexico, 865
- New Zealand, 921
- Nicaragua, 936
- Pakistan, 973
- Papua New Guinea, 986
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Portugal, 1022
- Sierra Leone, 1071
- South Africa, 1093, 1103-4
- Bophuthatswana, 1106
- Sudan, 1137
- Taiwan, 370
- Tanzania, 1181
- USSR, 1238
- RSFSR, 1251
- USA, 1402
- Alaska, 1428
- Arizona, 1431
- California, 1436
- Montana, 1490
- Nevada, 1495
- South Dakota, 1529
- Venezuela, 1579
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Zambia, 1621
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Iron and steel:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Algeria, 76-7
- Angola, 83
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109-10
- South Australia, 145-6
- Tasmania, 150, 152
- Western Australia, 163
- Austria, 171
- Bangladesh, 188
- Belgium, 199
- Brazil, 234-5
- Bulgaria, 246-7
- Burma, 256
- Canada, 283
- Ontario, 323
- Quebec, 327
- Chile, 352-3
- China, 361-3
- Congo, 384
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 397
- Egypt, 450
- Finland, 478
- France, 492
- Gabon, 520
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Germany (FRG), 539
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Saarland, 560
- Guinea, 587
- Hungary, 618
- India, 642-3, 645-6
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Bihar, 657
- Goa, 659
- Karnataka, 666
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Orissa, 679
- Indonesia, 703
- Iran, 709
- Italy, 747
- Japan, 762-3
- Jordan, 769
- Korea, North, 787

## Iron and Steel:

- Korea, South, 783
- Liberia, 808
- Luxembourg, 820
- Malaysia, 834, 836
- Mauritania, 856
- Mexico, 866
- Mongolia, 881
- New Caledonia, 513
- Nigeria, 945
- Norway, 952
- Pakistan, 974
- Peru, 999
- Romania, 1035-6
- Sierra Leone, 1071
- South Africa, 1093
- Spain, 1120
- Sudan, 1137
- Sweden, 1154-5
- Taiwan, 370
- Thailand, 1187
- Trinidad and Tobago, 1199
- Tunisia, 1203
- USSR, 1238, 1240, 1242
- Kazakhstan, 1280
- RSFSR, 1251
- UK, 1323-4, 1330
- USA, 1408-9, 1411
- California, 1436
- Michigan, 1479-80
- Minnesota, 1482
- Missouri, 1487
- Wyoming, 1552
- Venezuela, 1579-80
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1610
- Croatia, 1610
- Macedonia, 1611
- Serbia, 1612
- Slovenia, 1613
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Lead:

- Algeria, 76
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 110
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140-1
- Tasmania, 150, 152
- Austria, 171
- Brazil, 234
- Burma, 255
- Canada, 283
- New Brunswick, 311
- Northwest Territories, 332
- Yukon, 334
- Chile, 352
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Congo, 384
- Guatemala, 583
- India, 642
- Bihar, 657
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Sikkim, 675
- Iran, 709
- Ireland, 722
- Italy, 747
- Japan, 762
- Korea, North, 787-8
- Korea, South, 783
- Mexico, 866
- Mongolia, 881
- Nigeria, 945
- Norway, 952
- Peru, 999

## Lead:

- Spain, 1120
- Sweden, 1154-5
- Thailand, 1187
- Tunisia, 1203
- Turkey, 1209
- USSR, 1238
- RSFSR, 1251
- UK, 1324
- USA, 1402
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Maine, 1471
- Missouri, 1487
- Virginia, 1541
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Zambia, 1621

## Maize, world statistics, xxi

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 71
- Angola, 83
- Australia:
  - Northern Territory, 123
  - Queensland, 140
- Belize, 205
- Benin, 209
- Bhutan, 216
- Bolivia, 221
- Botswana, 226
- Bulgaria, 246
- Burkina Faso, 251
- Burma, 256
- Burundi, 259
- Cambodia, 263
- Cameroon, 267
- Canada:
  - Quebec, 327
- Cape Verde, 338
- Central African Republic, 344
- Chad, 347
- Chile, 352
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Comoros, 380
- Congo, 384
- Costa Rica, 388
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 398
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Ecuador, 444
- Egypt, 451
- El Salvador, 456
- Ethiopia, 465
- Fiji, 471
- France, 492
- Gabon, 521
- Ghana, 565
- Guinea, 587
- Guinea-Bissau, 590
- Haiti, 599
- Hungary, 618
- India:
  - Bihar, 657
  - Himachal Pradesh, 663
  - Jammu and Kashmir, 664
  - Punjab, 681
  - Sikkim, 684
  - Tamil Nadu, 686
- Italy, 748
- Kenya, 774
- Laos, 796
- Lesotho, 804
- Madagascar, 824
- Malawi, 828
- Malaysia, 836
- Mali, 847
- Mauritania, 856

## Maize:

- Mexico, 866
- Morocco, 881
- Mozambique, 886
- Nepál, 895
- New Caledonia, 514
- New Zealand, 921
- Nicaragua, 936
- Nigeria, 945
- Pakistan, 974
- Panama, 980
- Paraguay, 993
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Portugal, 1022
- Romania, 1036
- Rwanda, 1041
- Senegal, 1065
- Somalia, 1086
- South Africa, 1094
- Ciskei, 1111
- Venda, 1109
- Spain, 1121
- Swaziland, 1146
- Switzerland, 1169
- Tanzania, 1181
- Thailand, 1187
- Togo, 1192
- Turkey, 1210
- USA, 1403-4
- Arizona, 1432
- Colorado, 1439
- Illinois, 1457
- Indiana, 1460
- Kansas, 1464
- Michigan, 1480
- Nebraska, 1492
- New York, 1505
- North Carolina, 1508
- North Dakota, 1510
- Ohio, 1513
- Texas, 1534
- Venezuela, 1579
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1609
- Croatia, 1610
- Macedonia, 1610
- Montenegro, 1611
- Serbia, 1612-13
- Slovenia, 1613
- Zaire, 1616
- Zambia, 1621
- Zimbabwe, 1626

## Manganese:

- Argentina, 94
- Australia:
- Northern Territory, 123
- Tasmania, 151
- Brazil, 234
- Bulgaria, 246
- Chile, 352
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Gabon, 520
- Ghana, 565
- India, 643
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Bihar, 657
- Goa, 659
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Orissa, 679
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Iran, 709

## Manganese:

- Japan, 762
- Korea, North, 787
- Mexico, 866
- Morocco, 881
- Romania, 1035
- South Africa, 1093
- Sudan, 1137
- Thailand, 1187
- USSR, 1238
- Georgia, 1268
- Ukraine, 1262
- Venezuela, 1579
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yugoslavia, 1605

## Millet, world statistics, xxi

- Bhutan, 216
- Botswana, 226
- Burkina Faso, 251
- Cameroon, 267
- Central African Republic, 344
- Chad, 347
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Ghana, 565
- Guinea-Bissau, 590
- India:
- Sikkim, 684
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Kenya, 774
- Mali, 847
- Mauritania, 856
- Nepál, 895
- Niger, 940
- Nigeria, 945
- Senegal, 1065
- Sudan, 1137
- Syria, 1177
- Togo, 1192
- Yemen People's Republic, 1599
- Zimbabwe, 1626

## Nickel:

- Albania, 70-1
- Australia, 109-10
- Queensland, 140
- Western Australia, 163-4
- Botswana, 226
- Canada, 283
- Manitoba, 308
- Ontario, 323
- Cuba, 397
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Greece, 574
- Indonesia, 703
- Mongolia, 873
- New Caledonia, 513-14
- Norway, 952
- Philippines, 1005
- Venezuela, 1579
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Oats, world statistics, xviii

- Albania, 71
- Algeria, 76
- Australia, 107
- New South Wales, 133
- Queensland, 140
- South Australia, 146
- Tasmania, 151
- Victoria, 157
- Western Australia, 163
- Austria, 172
- Belgium, 199
- Canada, 284
- Quebec, 327
- Saskatchewan, 330

## Oats:

- Chile, 352
- Denmark, 421
- Finland, 478
- France, 492
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Germany (FRG), 540
- Baden-Württemberg, 546
- Bavaria, 548
- Hessen, 554
- Lower Saxony, 555
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
- Saarland, 560
- Schleswig-Holstein, 561
- Hungary, 618
- Ireland, 723
- Italy, 747
- Mongolia, 873
- Netherlands, 905
- Norway, 953
- Poland, 1014
- Portugal, 1022
- Spain, 1121
- Sweden, 1154
- Turkey, 1210
- UK, 1324
- Northern Ireland, 1360
- USA, 1404, 1411
- Colorado, 1439
- Indiana, 1460
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Michigan, 1480
- Minnesota, 1482
- Mississippi, 1485
- Missouri, 1487
- Montana, 1490
- Nebraska, 1492
- New York, 1505
- North Dakota, 1510
- Ohio, 1513
- Pennsylvania, 1522
- Texas, 1534
- Wisconsin, 1549

## Oil and petroleum, world statistics, xviv

- Afghanistan, 66
- Albania, 70-1
- Algeria, 76-7
- Angola, 82-3
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109-10
- Northern Territory, 122-3
- Queensland, 140
- Victoria, 156-7
- Western Australia, 164
- Austria, 171
- Bahrain, 181
- Barbados, 192
- Benin, 209
- Bolivia, 220
- Brazil, 233
- Brunei, 240-1
- Burma, 255
- Canada, 283
- Alberta, 300
- British Columbia, 304
- Manitoba, 308
- New Brunswick, 311
- Newfoundland, 315
- Northwest Territories, 332
- Saskatchewan, 329-30
- Yukon, 334
- Chile, 352
- China, 361, 363



## Oil and petroleum:

- Colombia, 376
- Congo, 385
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 397
- Denmark, 420
- Ecuador, 444
- Egypt, 450-1
- France, 492
- Gabon, 520
- Germany (FRG), 539
- Ghana, 565
- Guatemala, 583
- Hungary, 617
- India, 641, 643
- Assam, 656
- Gujarat, 660
- Indonesia, 703
- Iran, 709
- Iraq, 714
- Ireland, 722
- Italy, 747
- Jordan, 769
- Korea, South, 782
- Kuwait, 791-2
- Libya, 812
- Malaysia, 834, 836, 842
- Mexico, 865-6
- Netherlands, 905
- Nigeria, 944
- Norway, 952-3, 955
- Oman, 965
- Pakistan, 973
- Peru, 999
- Poland, 1013
- Qatar, 1029
- Romania, 1035
- Saudi Arabia, 1059-60
- Spain, 1120
- Sudan, 1137
- Taiwan, 370
- Thailand, 1187
- Trinidad and Tobago, 1198
- Tunisia, 1203
- Turkey, 1209
- USSR, 1237, 1240, 1242
- Azerbaijan, 1265
- RSFSR, 1251
- Ukraine, 1262
- United Arab Emirates, 1292
- UK, 1322, 1330
- USA, 1402
- Alabama, 1426
- Alaska, 1428-9
- Arkansas, 1433
- California, 1436
- Colorado, 1439
- Illinois, 1457
- Indiana, 1459
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Louisiana, 1469
- Michigan, 1479-80
- Mississippi, 1485
- Montana, 1490
- Nebraska, 1492
- Nevada, 1495
- New Mexico, 1502
- New York, 1505
- North Dakota, 1510
- Ohio, 1513
- Oklahoma, 1515
- Pennsylvania, 1522
- Texas, 1534
- West Virginia, 1545
- Wyoming, 1552
- Venezuela, 1579
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595

## Oil and petroleum:

- Yemen People's Republic, 1599
  - Yugoslavia, 1605
  - Croatia, 1610
  - Serbia, 1613
  - Zaire, 1616-17
- Phosphates:
- Albania, 70
  - Algeria, 76
  - Angola, 82
  - Australia:
    - Tasmania, 151
  - Brazil, 234
  - Cambodia, 263
  - China, 361
  - Congo, 384
  - Egypt, 450
  - India:
    - Madhya Pradesh, 670
    - Rajasthan, 682
  - Mali, 847
  - Morocco, 881
  - Nauru, 892-3
  - Netherlands Antilles, 913
  - Niger, 940
  - Senegal, 1065
  - South Africa, 1093
  - Syria, 1177
  - Togo, 1191-2
  - Tunisia, 1203
  - USSR, 1238
  - USA, 1402
    - Florida, 1448
    - Idaho, 1454
    - Montana, 1490
    - North Carolina, 1508
    - Wyoming, 1552
  - Venezuela, 1579

## Potatoes:

- Albania, 71
  - Algeria, 76
  - Andorra, 80
  - Argentina, 94
  - Australia:
    - New South Wales, 133
    - Queensland, 140
    - Tasmania, 150
    - Victoria, 157
    - Western Australia, 163
  - Austria, 172
  - Bangladesh, 188
  - Belgium, 199
  - Bhutan, 216
  - Bolivia, 221
  - Brazil, 234
  - Bulgaria, 246
  - Canada, 284
  - New Brunswick, 311
  - Prince Edward Island, 325
  - Quebec, 327
  - Cape Verde, 338
  - Chile, 352
  - Colombia, 376
  - Costa Rica, 388
  - Cuba, 398
  - Cyprus, 403
  - Czechoslovakia, 412
  - Denmark, 421
  - Egypt, 451
  - Finland, 478
  - France, 492
  - Germany (GDR), 530
  - Germany (FRG), 540
  - Baden-Württemberg, 546
  - Bavaria, 548
- Potatoes:
- Hessen, 554
  - Lower Saxony, 555
  - North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
  - Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
  - Saarland, 560
  - Schleswig-Holstein, 561
  - Hungary, 618
  - Iceland, 626
  - India, 642
  - Assam, 656
  - Bihar, 657
  - Himachal Pradesh, 663
  - Meghalaya, 675
  - Sikkim, 684
  - Tripura, 688
  - Ireland, 723
  - Israel, 736
  - Italy, 747
  - Jordan, 769
  - Kenya, 774
  - Korea, North, 787
  - Lebanon, 800
  - Madagascar, 824
  - Malta, 851
  - Mauritania, 856
  - Mexico, 866
  - Mongolia, 873
  - Morocco, 881
  - Mozambique, 886
  - Nepal, 895
  - Netherlands, 905
  - Norway, 953
  - Pakistan, 974
  - Peru, 999
  - Poland, 1014
  - Portugal, 1022
  - Romania, 1036
  - Rwanda, 1041
  - South Africa, 1094
  - Ciskei, 1111
  - Spain, 1121
  - Swaziland, 1146
  - Sweden, 1154
  - Switzerland, 1169
  - Turkey, 1210
  - USSR, 1239-40
  - Armenia, 1271
  - Azerbaijan, 1265
  - Belorussia, 1263
  - Estonia, 1274
  - Georgia, 1268
  - Kazakhstan, 1280
  - Kirghizia, 1288
  - Latvia, 1275
  - Lithuania, 1277
  - Tadzhikistan, 1286
  - Turkmenistan, 1281
  - Ukraine, 1261
  - Uzbekistan, 1284
  - UK, 1324
  - Northern Ireland, 1360
  - USA, 1404
  - Colorado, 1439
  - Connecticut, 1441
  - Idaho, 1454
  - Maine, 1471
  - Massachusetts, 1477
  - Minnesota, 1482
  - Montana, 1490
  - Nevada, 1495
  - North Dakota, 1510
  - Oregon, 1519
  - South Dakota, 1529
  - Texas, 1534
  - Wisconsin, 1549
  - Venezuela, 1579

## Potatoes:

- Vietnam, 1586
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1609
- Croatia, 1610
- Montenegro, 1611
- Serbia, 1612–13
- Slovenia, 1613

## Rice, world statistics, xv

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 71
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107
- New South Wales, 133
- Bangladesh, 188
- Belize, 205
- Benin, 209
- Bhutan, 216
- Bolivia, 221
- Brazil, 234
- Burkina Faso, 251
- Burma, 256
- Cambodia, 263
- Central African Republic, 344
- Chad, 347
- Chile, 352
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Comoros, 380
- Congo, 384
- Costa Rica, 388
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 398
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Ecuador, 444
- Egypt, 451
- El Salvador, 456
- Fiji, 471
- France, 492
- French Guiana, 503
- Ghana, 563
- Greece, 575
- Guinea, 587
- Guinea-Bissau, 590
- Guyana, 594
- Haiti, 599
- India, 642, 645
- Andaman and Nicobar Islands, 693
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Bihar, 657
- Dadra and Nagar Haveli, 694
- Goa, 659
- Gujarat, 660
- Himachal Pradesh, 663
- Jammu and Kashmir, 664
- Karnataka, 666
- Kerala, 668
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Manipur, 674
- Mizoram, 676
- Nagaland, 677
- Orissa, 679
- Pondicherry, 697
- Punjab, 681
- Sikkim, 684
- Tamil Nadu, 687
- Tripura, 688
- West Bengal, 692
- Indonesia, 703
- Iran, 709
- Iraq, 714
- Italy, 747

## Rice:

- Japan, 762
- Kenya, 774
- Korea, North, 787
- Korea, South, 783
- Laos, 796
- Liberia, 807–8
- Malawi, 828
- Malaysia, 836
- Mali, 847
- Mauritania, 856
- Mexico, 866
- Mozambique, 886
- Nepal, 895
- Nicaragua, 936
- Niger, 940
- Nigeria, 944
- Pakistan, 974
- Panama, 980
- Paraguay, 993
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Portugal, 1022
- Senegal, 1065
- Sierra Leone, 1071–2
- Spain, 1121
- Sri Lanka, 1130
- Suriname, 1141–2
- Swaziland, 1146
- Taiwan, 370
- Tanzania, 1181
- Thailand, 1187
- Togo, 1192
- Trinidad and Tobago, 1198
- Turkey, 1210
- USSR:
- Uzbekistan, 1283
- USA, 1404
- Arkansas, 1434
- Louisiana, 1469
- Minnesota, 1482
- Mississippi, 1485
- Venezuela, 1579
- Zaire, 1616

## Rubber:

- Brazil, 234–5
- Brunei, 241
- Burma, 256
- Cambodia, 263
- Cameroon, 267
- Canada, 286
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Guinea-Bissau, 590
- India:
- Kerala, 668
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Tripura, 688
- Indonesia, 703
- Liberia, 808
- Malaysia, 834, 836, 842
- Papua New Guinea, 987
- Sri Lanka, 1130
- Thailand, 1187–8
- UK, 1329–30
- Zaire, 1616

## Rye, world statistics, xvi

- Austria, 172
- Belgium, 199
- Canada, 284
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Denmark, 421
- Finland, 478
- France, 492
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Germany (FRG), 540

## Rye:

- Baden-Württemberg, 546
- Bavaria, 548
- Hessen, 554
- Lower Saxony, 555
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
- Saarland, 560
- Schleswig-Holstein, 561
- Hungary, 618
- Mongolia, 873
- Netherlands, 905
- Norway, 953
- Poland, 1014
- Portugal, 1022
- Romania, 1036
- Spain, 1121
- Sweden, 1154
- Turkey, 1210
- USA:
- Indiana, 1460
- Kentucky, 1466
- Minnesota, 1482
- North Dakota, 1510
- Yugoslavia, 1605

## Salt:

- Albania, 70
- Algeria, 76
- Angola, 80
- Australia:
- South Australia, 145
- Western Australia, 163
- Bahamas, 177
- Bangladesh, 188
- Brazil, 234
- Bulgaria, 246
- Canada, 283
- New Brunswick, 311
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Cape Verde, 338
- Chad, 347
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Costa Rica, 388
- Cuba, 397
- Egypt, 450
- Ethiopia, 464
- Greece, 575
- India:
- Himachal Pradesh, 662
- Rajasthan, 682
- Tamil Nadu, 686
- Iran, 709
- Israel, 735–6
- Kenya, 774
- Mali, 847
- Morocco, 881
- Netherlands, 905
- Pakistan, 973
- Philippines, 1005
- Poland, 1014
- Romania, 1035
- Sri Lanka, 1130
- Switzerland, 1169
- Syria, 1177
- Tanzania, 1181
- Togo, 1192
- USA, 1402
- California, 1436
- Louisiana, 1469
- Michigan, 1480
- New York, 1505
- Texas, 1534
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
- Yugoslavia, 1605

## Silver:

- Algeria, 76
- Argentina, 94
- Australia:
  - New South Wales, 133
  - Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140
- Tasmania, 150
- Bolivia, 221
- Brazil, 234
- Burma, 256
- Canada, 283
- British Columbia, 304
- New Brunswick, 311
- Newfoundland, 315
- Northwest Territories, 332
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Yukon, 334
- China, 361
- Colombia, 376
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Ecuador, 444
- India, 642
- Karnataka, 666
- Rajasthan, 682
- Indonesia, 703
- Japan, 762
- Korea, South, 783
- Mexico, 865
- Nicaragua, 936
- Pakistan, 973
- Papua New Guinea, 986
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Poland, 1013
- South Africa, 1093
- USSR, 1238
- USA, 1402
- Alaska, 1428
- Arizona, 1431
- Idaho, 1454
- Maine, 1471
- Montana, 1490
- Nevada, 1495
- South Dakota, 1528
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Zimbabwe, 1625

## Sorghum, world statistics, xxii

- Albania, 71
- Australia, 109
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140
- Benin, 209
- Botswana, 226
- Burkina Faso, 251
- Burundi, 259
- Colombia, 376
- Egypt, 451
- El Salvador, 456
- Ethiopia, 465
- Lesotho, 804
- Mexico, 866
- Nicaragua, 936
- Nigeria, 945
- Rwanda, 1041
- Somalia, 1086
- South Africa, 1094
- Ciskei, 1111
- Sudan, 1137
- Swaziland, 1146
- Tanzania, 1181
- Togo, 1192
- USA, 1403
- Colorado, 1439
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Mississippi, 1485

## Sorghum:

- Missouri, 1487
- Nebraska, 1492
- New Mexico, 1502
- Oklahoma, 1515
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
- Yemen People's Republic, 1599
- Zimbabwe, 1626

## Soya beans:

- Argentina, 94
- Brazil, 235
- Burma, 256
- Cambodia, 263
- Canada, 285
- China, 362
- Japan, 762
- Mexico, 866
- Taiwan, 370
- Thailand, 1187
- USA, 1404, 1411
- Alabama, 1426
- Arkansas, 1434
- Delaware, 1444
- Florida, 1448
- Georgia, 1450
- Illinois, 1457
- Indiana, 1460
- Iowa, 1462
- Kansas, 1464
- Kentucky, 1466
- Louisiana, 1469
- Maryland, 1474
- Michigan, 1480
- Minnesota, 1482
- Mississippi, 1485
- Missouri, 1487
- Nebraska, 1492
- New Jersey, 1500
- North Carolina, 1508
- Ohio, 1513
- South Carolina, 1527
- South Dakota, 1529
- Tennessee, 1531
- Texas, 1534
- Yugoslavia:
  - Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1609
  - Croatia, 1610
  - Serbia, 1612–13
- Zimbabwe, 1626

Steel, *see* Iron and steel

## Sugar, world statistics, xxiii

- Afghanistan, 65–6
- Albania, 71
- Angola, 83
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109
- New South Wales, 133
- Queensland, 140–1
- Bahamas, 176
- Bangladesh, 188
- Barbados, 192
- Belgium, 199
- Belize, 205–6
- Benin, 210
- Bolivia, 221
- Bulgaria, 246
- Burkina Faso, 251
- Cameroon, 267
- Cape Verde, 338
- Chad, 347
- Chile, 352
- China, 362

## Sugar:

- Colombia, 376
- Comoros, 380
- Congo, 384
- Costa Rica, 388–9
- Côte d'Ivoire, 393
- Cuba, 398
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Ecuador, 444
- Egypt, 451
- El Salvador, 456
- Ethiopia, 465
- Fiji, 471
- France, 492–3
- French Guiana, 503
- Gabon, 521
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Germany (FRG), 540
- Baden-Württemberg, 546
- Bavaria, 546
- Hessen, 554
- Lower Saxony, 555
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
- Saarland, 560
- Schleswig-Holstein, 561
- Ghana, 565
- Greece, 575
- Guadeloupe, 501
- Guatemala, 583
- Guinea, 587
- Guinea-Bissau, 590
- Guyana, 594
- Haiti, 599
- Honduras, 604
- Hungary, 618
- India, 642–3
- Andhra Pradesh, 654
- Assam, 656
- Bihar, 657
- Delhi, 696
- Goa, 659
- Haryana, 662
- Karnataka, 666
- Kerala, 668
- Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Maharashtra, 672
- Orissa, 679
- Pondicherry, 697–8
- Rajasthan, 683
- Tamil Nadu, 686–7
- Tripura, 686
- Uttar Pradesh, 690
- Indonesia, 703
- Iran, 709–10
- Ireland, 723
- Italy, 748
- Jamaica, 755
- Japan, 762
- Kenya, 774
- Lebanon, 800
- Liberia, 807–8
- Madagascar, 824
- Malawi, 828
- Malaysia, 836
- Mali, 847
- Martinique, 505
- Mauritius, 860
- Mexico, 866
- Morocco, 881
- Mozambique, 886
- Nepal, 895
- Nicaragua, 936–7
- Niger, 940
- Pakistan, 974
- Panama, 980



Sugar:

- Papua New Guinea, 987
- Paraguay, 993
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Poland, 1014
- Réunion, 507
- Romania, 1036
- Senegal, 1065
- Somalia, 1086
- South Africa, 1094
- Spain, 1121
- Sudan, 1137
- Suriname, 1141
- Swaziland, 1146
- Sweden, 1154
- Switzerland, 1169
- Taiwan, 370
- Tanzania, 1181
- Thailand, 1187
- Trinidad and Tobago, 1198
- Turkey, 1210
- Uganda, 1220
- USSR, 1239–41
  - Armenia, 1271
  - Belorussia, 1263
  - Georgia, 1268
  - Kazakhstan, 1280
  - Latvia, 1275
  - Lithuania, 1277
  - Moldavia, 1272
  - Ukraine, 1261–2
- UK, 1324, 1329
- USA:
  - California, 1436
  - Colorado, 1439
  - Florida, 1448
  - Hawaii, 1452
  - Idaho, 1454
  - Louisiana, 1469
  - Michigan, 1480
  - Minnesota, 1482
  - Montana, 1490
  - Nebraska, 1492
  - North Dakota, 1510
  - Puerto Rico, 1561
  - Wyoming, 1552
- Venezuela, 1579
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Croatia, 1610
- Serbia, 1612–13
- Slovenia, 1613
- Zaire, 1616
- Zambia, 1621
- Zimbabwe, 1626

Sulphur:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Algeria, 76
- Australia:
  - New South Wales, 133
- Canada, 283
- New Brunswick, 311
- China, 361
- France, 492–3
- Italy, 747
- Mexico, 866
- Pakistan, 973
- Qatar, 1030
- Sudan, 1137
- Taiwan, 370
- Turkey, 1209
- USA, 1402
  - Louisiana, 1469
- Venezuela, 1579

Tea:

- Australia, 110

Tea:

- Bangladesh, 188
- Burundi, 259
- China, 362–3
- India, 642, 645
  - Assam, 656
  - Kerala, 668
  - Tamil Nadu, 686
  - Tripura, 688
- Japan, 762
  - Kenya, 774
- Malawi, 828
- Malaysia, 836
- Mauritius, 860
- Mozambique, 886
- Papua New Guinea, 986–7
- Rwanda, 1041
- Sri Lanka, 1130
- Taiwan, 370
- Turkey, 1210
- USSR:
  - Azerbaijan, 1265
  - Georgia, 1268
- UK, 1329

Tin:

- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107
  - New South Wales, 133
  - Queensland, 140
  - Tasmania, 150, 152
  - Western Australia, 163
- Bolivia, 220–1
- Brazil, 234
- Burma, 255
- China, 361
- India:
  - Madhya Pradesh, 670
- Indonesia, 703
- Laos, 796
- Malaysia, 834, 836
- Mongolia, 873
- Nigeria, 944
- Norway, 952
- Portugal, 1022
- Rwanda, 1041
- Spain, 1120
- Thailand, 1187
- USSR:
  - RSFSR, 1251
- UK, 1324
- USA:
  - Alaska, 1428–9
- Zimbabwe, 1625

Tobacco:

- Afghanistan, 66
- Albania, 71
- Andorra, 80
- Angola, 83
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 110
  - Queensland, 140–1
  - South Australia, 146
  - Victoria, 157
  - Western Australia, 164
- Bahamas, 177
- Bangladesh, 188
- Barbados, 192
- Belgium, 199
- Brazil, 234
- Bulgaria, 246–7
- Canada, 285–6
- Costa Rica, 388
- Cuba, 398
- Dominican Republic, 438
- Fiji, 471
- France, 492

Tobacco:

- Ghana, 565
- Greece, 575
- Guatemala, 583
- Honduras, 604
- India, 642, 645
  - Andhra Pradesh, 654
  - Bihar, 657
  - Karnataka, 666
  - Tamil Nadu, 686
- Iran, 709
- Israel, 736
- Italy, 748
- Japan, 762
  - Kenya, 774
- Korea, South, 787
- Laos, 796
- Madagascar, 824
- Malawi, 828
- Malaysia, 834
- Paraguay, 993
- Philippines, 1005
- Spain, 1121
- Switzerland, 1169
- Tanzania, 1181
- Thailand, 1187
- Turkey, 1210
- Uganda, 1220
- USSR:
  - Azerbaijan, 1265
- UK, 1329
- USA, 1404, 1411
  - Connecticut, 1441
  - Florida, 1448
  - Georgia, 1450
  - Indiana, 1460
  - Kentucky, 1466
  - Maryland, 1474
  - Massachusetts, 1477
  - North Carolina, 1508
  - Pennsylvania, 1522
  - Puerto Rico, 1561
  - South Carolina, 1527
  - Tennessee, 1531
  - Virginia, 1541
  - West Virginia, 1545
  - Wisconsin, 1549
- Venezuela, 1579–80
- Vietnam, 1586
- Yugoslavia, 1605
  - Macedonia, 1611
- Zaire, 1617
- Zambia, 1621
- Zimbabwe, 1626

Tungsten:

- Argentina, 94
- Australia:
  - Tasmania, 152
- Bolivia, 221
- Brazil, 234
- Burma, 256
- Canada:
  - New Brunswick, 311
- China, 361, 363
- Guatemala, 583
- Japan, 762
- Korea, South, 783
- Mongolia, 873
- Nicaragua, 936
- Portugal, 1022
- Rwanda, 1040
- Spain, 1120
- Thailand, 1187
- USSR, 1238
- USA:
  - Idaho, 1454

## Uranium:

- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 109
- Northern Territory, 123
- Bolivia, 221
- Canada:
  - Newfoundland, 315
  - Ontario, 323
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Gabon, 520
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Korea, North, 787
- Mexico, 865
- Namibia, 890
- Niger, 940
- Portugal, 1022
- Romania, 1035
- Spain, 1120
- Sweden, 1154
- USSR, 1239
- USA:
  - New Mexico, 1502
  - Washington, 1543
  - Wyoming, 1552

## Wheat, world statistics, xv

- Afghanistan, 65
- Albania, 71
- Algeria, 76
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109
- New South Wales, 133
- Queensland, 140
- South Australia, 146
- Tasmania, 150
- Victoria, 157
- Western Australia, 163
- Austria, 172
- Bangladesh, 188
- Belgium, 199
- Bhutan, 216
- Bolivia, 221
- Botswana, 226
- Bulgaria, 246
- Burma, 256
- Canada, 284
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Chile, 352
- China, 362
- Colombia, 376
- Cyprus, 403
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- Denmark, 421
- Egypt, 451
- Ethiopia, 465
- Finland, 478
- France, 492
- Germany (GDR), 530
- Germany (FRG), 540
- Baden-Württemberg, 546
- Bavaria, 548
- Hessen, 554
- Lower Saxony, 555
- North Rhine-Westphalia, 557
- Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
- Saarland, 560
- Schleswig-Holstein, 561
- Greece, 575
- Hungary, 618
- India, 642
- Delhi, 696
- Haryana, 662
- Himachal Pradesh, 663
- Jammu and Kashmir, 664
- Maharashtra, 672
- Manipur, 674
- Wheat:
  - Punjab, 681
  - Sikkim, 684
  - Tripura, 688
  - West Bengal, 692
  - Iran, 709
  - Iraq, 714
  - Ireland, 723
  - Italy, 748
  - Japan, 762
  - Jordan, 769
  - Kenya, 774
  - Lesotho, 804
  - Libya, 813
  - Mexico, 866
  - Mongolia, 873
  - Morocco, 881
  - Nepal, 895
  - Netherlands, 905
  - New Zealand, 921
  - Norway, 953
  - Pakistan, 974
  - Paraguay, 993
  - Poland, 1014
  - Portugal, 1022
  - Romania, 1036
  - South Africa, 1094
  - Ciskei, 1111
  - Spain, 1121
  - Sudan, 1137
  - Sweden, 1154
  - Switzerland, 1169
  - Syria, 1177
  - Taiwan, 370
  - Tanzania, 1181
  - Turkey, 1210
  - USSR, 1239
  - Kazakhstan, 1279
  - UK, 1324
  - Northern Ireland, 1360
  - USA, 1404, 1411
  - Alabama, 1426
  - Arizona, 1432
  - Colorado, 1439
  - Georgia, 1450
  - Idaho, 1454
  - Illinois, 1457
  - Indiana, 1460
  - Kansas, 1464
  - Kentucky, 1466
  - Michigan, 1480
  - Minnesota, 1482
  - Mississippi, 1485
  - Missouri, 1487
  - Montana, 1490
  - Nebraska, 1492
  - New Mexico, 1502
  - North Carolina, 1508
  - North Dakota, 1510
  - Ohio, 1513
  - Oklahoma, 1515
  - Oregon, 1519
  - Pennsylvania, 1522
  - Texas, 1534
  - Wyoming, 1552
  - Venezuela, 1579
  - Yemen Arab Republic, 1595
  - Yemen People's Republic, 1599
  - Yugoslavia, 1605
  - Bosnia and Herzegovina, 1609
  - Croatia, 1610
  - Macedonia, 1611
  - Montenegro, 1611
  - Serbia, 1612-13
  - Slovenia, 1613
  - Zimbabwe, 1626

## Wine:

- Albania, 71
- Algeria, 76
- Australia, 107
- South Australia, 146
- Victoria, 157
- France, 492
- Germany (FRG):
  - Rhineland-Palatinate, 558
- Greece, 575
- Israel, 736
- Italy, 747
- Luxembourg, 820
- Portugal, 1022
- Spain, 1121
- Switzerland, 1169
- USA:
  - California, 1436
- Yugoslavia, 1605

Wolfram, *see* Tungsten

## Wool:

- Afghanistan, 65
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109
- Queensland, 140-1
- Tasmania, 151-2
- Victoria, 158
- Western Australia, 163
- Bulgaria, 246
- Canada, 285
- Colombia, 376
- Czechoslovakia, 412
- France, 493
- Germany (FRG), 540
- Hungary, 618
- Iran, 709
- Japan, 763
- Mongolia, 874
- New Zealand, 921, 924
- Spain, 1121
- Turkey, 1210
- USSR, 1239-41
- Armenia, 1271
- Azerbaijan, 1265
- Georgia, 1268
- Kazakhstan, 1280
- Kirghizia, 1288
- Tadzhikistan, 1286
- Turkmenistan, 1281
- Ukraine, 1261
- Uzbekistan, 1284
- UK, 1325
- Northern Ireland, 1360
- USA:
  - Iowa, 1462
  - Michigan, 1480
  - Minnesota, 1482
  - Wyoming, 1552
- Yugoslavia:
  - Slovenia, 1613

## Zinc:

- Algeria, 76
- Argentina, 94
- Australia, 107, 109-10
- New South Wales, 133
- Northern Territory, 123
- Queensland, 140
- Tasmania, 150-2
- Austria, 171
- Bolivia, 221
- Canada, 283
- Manitoba, 308
- New Brunswick, 311
- Newfoundland, 315
- Northwest Territories, 332

Zinc:

- Ontario, 323
- Quebec, 327
- Saskatchewan, 330
- Yukon, 334
- Chile, 352
- China, 361
- Congo, 384
- Ecuador, 444
- Guatemala, 583
- India, 642
- Sikkim, 685
- Iran, 709
- Ireland, 722
- Italy, 747
- Japan, 762

Zinc:

- Korea, North, 787-8
- Korea, South, 783
- Mexico, 866
- Mongolia, 873
- Morocco, 881
- Nigeria, 945
- Norway, 952
- Peru, 999
- Philippines, 1005
- Poland, 1015
- Spain, 1120
- Sudan, 1137
- Sweden, 1154
- Thailand, 1187
- Tunisia, 1203

Zinc:

- USSR, 1238
- RSFSR, 1251
- U.K., 1324
- USA, 1402
- Kansas, 1464
- Maine, 1471
- Missouri, 1487
- Montana, 1490
- New Jersey, 1500
- New York, 1505
- Oklahoma, 1515
- Virginia, 1541
- Yugoslavia, 1605
- Zaire, 1616
- Zambia, 1621





# NAMES INDEX

- Abanda, J.T., 266  
 Abbas, P.B., 239  
 Abass, O.C., 431  
 Abaza, M.M., 448  
 Abbadi, H., 879  
 Abbey, J.L.S., 567  
 Abbil, I., 1570  
 Abdallah, A., 1205  
 Abdelaziz, M., 1126  
 Abderemane, A.A., 379  
 Abdi, A.I., 431, 433  
 Abdou, S., 431  
 Abdoudou, S., 209  
 Abdoulaye, M., 939  
 Abdoun, A.M., 1139  
 Abdourahmane, S., 939  
 Abduh, J.M., 1595  
 Abdul Ghafar Baba, 832  
 Abdul Halim  
 Mu'adzam, *Sultan*,  
 831  
 Abdul Rahman Zohari,  
 841  
 Abdul Taib Mahmud,  
 841  
 Abdul-Karim, I., 181  
 Abdulahi, H., 943  
 Abdullah, B., 856  
 Abdullah, F., 664  
 Abdullah ibn Abdul  
 Aziz, *Prince*, 1057  
 Abdullahi, D.O., 856  
 Abdulle, A.J., 1087  
 Abedi-Jafari, H., 707  
 Abeysondera, S., 1128  
 Abidiné, Z.S., 586  
 Abraham, A.R., 317  
 Abrantes Fernández, J.,  
 396  
 Abreu, J.B.de, 231  
 Abu Ghazala, M.A.H.,  
 448  
 Abu Hassan Omar, 832  
 Abu Shawrib, M., 1594  
 Abulhasan, M.A., 793  
 Acevedo, R.E., 991  
 Acevedo Peralta, R., 454  
 Acland, A., 1356, 1422  
 Acquah, F., 564  
 Adada, R., 383  
 Adada, Y., 1191  
 Adair, J.A., 299  
 Adam, R., 1067  
 Adamafti, N.O., 564  
 Adamec, L., 410  
 Adami, E.F., 850  
 Adams, W.J., 453  
 Adaoghlu, M., 407  
 Adderley, P.L., 176  
 Addou, A., 1087  
 Adhyatma, 701  
 Adireksarn, P., 1185  
 Adjoudji, H., 266  
 Adouki, M., 385  
 Adoum, M.A., 348  
 Afaese, P., 1592  
 Afiff, S., 701  
 Afifi, T., 879  
 Agbenou, A., 1193  
 Agbétiafa, K., 1191  
 Agbetrá, A., 1191  
 Agenor, F., 598  
 Ago, R., 7  
 Aguilar, A., 1581  
 Ahern, B., 719  
 Ahern, M.J., 139  
 Ahmad, S.U., 1598  
 Ahmad bin Mahmud  
 Shahabudin, 831  
 Ahmad bin Saif  
 Al-Thani, 1028  
 Ahmad Shah  
 Al-Musta'in,  
*Sultan*, 831  
 Ahmad Zaidi bin  
 Muhammed Noor,  
 831, 841  
 Ahmadu, H., 947  
 Ahmed, M., 186  
 Ahmed, S., 1139  
 Ahmed bin Hamed,  
 1291  
 Ahsan, A., 970  
 Ahwoi, A., 564  
 Aikins, G.E.K., 564  
 Aikman, D., 205  
 Ajibola, B., 943  
 Ajloni, Z., 768  
 Ake, S., 392  
 Akhoond Zadeh, M.M.,  
 711  
 Akihito, *Emperor*, 759  
 Akinrinade, A., 943  
 Akmatov, T., 1288  
 Akpo, P., 209  
 Akrami, K., 707  
 Akritidis, N., 573  
 Akşin, M., 1213  
 Alaihi, M.A., 1596  
 Alaoui, M.M.B., 879  
 Alarcón Mantilla, L.F.,  
 374  
 Alatas, A., 701  
 Alaziambina, N., 1615  
 Albanna, I., 1136  
 Albert Alexandre Louis  
 Pierre, *Prince*, 869  
 Albrecht, E., 555  
 Aldridge, E.C., 1395  
 Alebua, E., 1083  
 Aleluia Lopes, T., 589  
 Alesana, T.E., 1592  
 Alexander, H., 434  
 Alexander, L.M., 321  
 Alexander, P.C., 686  
 Alfonsín, R., 92  
 Alfred Jabu anak  
 Numpang, 841  
 Algayer, J., 410  
 Ali, E.O., 431  
 Ali, F.S., 1180  
 Ali, M., 380  
 Ali, M., 1219  
 Ali, M.S.S., 790  
 Ali, S.A.S., 379  
 Ali, S.I.M., 1139  
 Alia, R., 69  
 Alipui, K., 1191  
 Allan, A.J., 887  
 Allen, R., 877  
 Alleyne, B.G.K., 434  
 Alleyne, D.H.N., 1200  
 Alliali, C., 392  
 Almanqour, N.H., 1062  
 Almoayed, T.A., 180  
 Almunia Amann, J.,  
 1117  
 Alonettis, A., 402  
 Alptemucin, K., 1207  
 Alpuche, I., 204  
 Alston, R.J., 966  
 Altangerel, B.-O., 872  
 Altenburg, W., 38  
 Altes, F.K., 902  
 Álvarez del Castillo, E.,  
 864  
 Alves, A., 231  
 Alves Filho, J., 231  
 Alzamora, C., 1001  
 Amadou, H., 939  
 Amar Sim Kheng, 841  
 Amaral, L.M., 1020  
 Amarasiri, M.S., 1128  
 Amato, G., 744  
 Amegboh, G., 1191  
 Amin, M.R., 186  
 Aminu, J., 943  
 Amin, H.A.N. al-, 713  
 Ammar, H., 1202  
 Amsa, I., 939  
 Amsberg, C. von, 900  
 Anas, A., 701  
 Anaya, F., 219  
 Anciaux, J., 507  
 Andeme, I.E.M., 460  
 Andersen, H.G., 629  
 Anderson, D., 299  
 Anderson, G.N., 1139  
 Andersson, G., 1150  
 Andersson, S., 1150  
 Andre, H., 274  
 Andrei, S., 1034  
 Andreotti, G., 743  
 Andrew, B., 329  
 Andrew, *Prince, Duke of*  
*York*, 1302-3  
 Andrews, E.E., 1526  
 Andriamalagasy, R., 823  
 Andrianoelison, J.-M.,  
 823  
 Andriantiana, R., 823  
 Andrus, C., 1454  
 Angari, I. Ibn A. al, 1058  
 Angba, N.K., 392  
 Angoran, Y.E., 392  
 Anisul, M.H., 186  
 Annan, D.F., 564  
 Anne, *Princess Royal*,  
 1302  
 Ansari, Z.R., 636  
 Antelo, H., 219  
 Antill, J.K., 1370  
 Antonio, H., 208  
 Antonio, M., 885  
 Anuar, H., 1081  
 Apang, G., 655  
 Appleyard, L.V., 621  
 Aptidon, H.G., 431  
 Aqazadeh, Q.R., 707  
 Aquino, C., 1003  
 Arad, M., 739  
 Aragon, E., 205  
 Aranda da Silva, M., 885  
 Aranzadi Martínez, C.,  
 1117  
 Arashi, Y.H. al-, 1595  
 Arauco Paz, E., 223  
 Araújo, J.E., 338  
 Arbuthnot, H., 1039  
 Archade, A., 209  
 Archer da Silva, R.B.,  
 231  
 Arens, M., 734  
 Arias Sánchez, O., 387  
 Arias Sánchez, R., 387  
 Arifin, B., 701  
 Arishi, A.-K. al-, 1594  
 Arizabal, A., 1003  
 Armacost, M., 765  
 Armas, C., 1577  
 Armstrong, I.M., 131  
 Armstrong-Jones, *Lady*  
*Sarah*, 1302  
 Arnold, D., 1080  
 Arnold, L.M.F., 144  
 Arpaillage, P., 486  
 Arraut Esquivel, L.H.,  
 374  
 Arrayed, J.S. Al-, 180  
 Arrindell, A., 1043  
 Arutyunyan, S.G., 1270  
 Asamoah, O., 564  
 Asante, K.B., 564  
 Asgrimsson, H., 624  
 Ashcroft, J.D., 1487  
 Ashtal, A.S. Al-, 1600  
 Aslani, M., 69  
 Aspe Armella, P., 864  
 Assad, H. al-, 1175  
 Assad, R. al-, 1175  
 Assam, M., 1200  
 Assasie, J.Y., 564  
 Astorga-Gadea, N., 938  
 Astrauskas, V.S., 1277  
 Atakol, K., 407  
 Atala, C.G., 1001  
 Atala, R., 777  
 Atanasov, G., 244  
 Atapattu, R., 1128  
 Atasayan, T., 407  
 Athulathmudali, L.W.,  
 1128  
 Atkins, H., 1515  
 Atkinson, M.W., 445  
 Attar, M.S. al-, 1594  
 Attas, H.A.B. al-, 1598  
 Aubee, C., 1074  
 Aubel, F.N., 350  
 Aung Ye Kyaw, 254  
 Austin, B.D., 139  
 Austin, G., 598  
 Austin, R.H., 1479  
 Avice, E., 487  
 Avril, P., 598  
 Awadi, A.A. al, 790  
 Awan, M.A., 970  
 Awang bin Hassan, 831  
 Awlaqi, N.A. al-, 1594  
 Axen, H., 528  
 Ayad, M.G., 802  
 Ayatollahi, M.R., 707  
 Aykut, I., 1207  
 Aylward, R.J., 314  
 Azcona Hoyo, J., 602-3  
 Azeib, A.D. Al-, 1596  
 Azlan Shah, *Raja*, 831  
 Azmani, A. al-, 879  
 Azzout, H.B., 75  
 Bâ, M.A., 1064  
 Bâ, O.I., 847  
 Babale, A., 266  
 Babangida, I., 943  
 Bacar, B.A., 380  
 Baccouche, H., 1202  
 Baco Carbo, R., 442  
 Bacon, L., 326  
 Bacon, R.S., 317  
 Badawi, A.H., 453  
 Badouvas, K., 573  
 Badr, F., 1058  
 Badr, Z.M., 448  
 Baga-Yambo, T., 343  
 Bah, A., 586  
 Bahadur Singh, B., 636  
 Bahama, H. Al, 181  
 Baird, B.G., 131  
 Bajpai, I., 470

- Baka, W., 1011  
 Bakatin, V.V., 1228  
 Baker, J.A., 1383  
 Baker, K., 1306  
 Bakl, B., 75  
 Bakke, H., 950  
 Baklanov, O.D., 1228  
 Balaguer, J., 437  
 Balakau, M., 985  
 Balan, R., 1034  
 Baldet, M., 586  
 Balev, M., 244  
 Bali, D., 943  
 Baliles, G.L., 1540  
 Balima, S.T., 251  
 Ball, W.L., 1390  
 Balopi, P., 225  
 Balstad, J., 950  
 Bamana, Y., 509  
 Banda, H.K., 826  
 Bandar bin Sultan, 1062  
 Bando, H., 266  
 Bangertner, N., 1536  
 Bangoura, H.-V., 587  
 Bangoura, M., 586  
 Banki, M.T., 707  
 Bannon, J.C., 144  
 Banny, J.K., 392  
 Bappoo, S., 859  
 Bar-Lev, H., 734  
 Barakat, A.H., 1595  
 Barari, H.R., 661  
 Barbalho, J.F., 231  
 Barbarito, L., 1574  
 Barbour, R.E., 1143  
 Barcikowski, K., 1011  
 Barco Vargas, V., 374  
 Barder, B.L., 947  
 Bardi, R., 454  
 Barltrop, R.A.R., 473,  
 893, 1217  
 Bärflund, K., 476  
 Barnes, H.G., 354  
 Barnett, L.M.H., 757  
 Baron, F.A., 435  
 Barque, B.M., 1191  
 Barre, M.S., 1085  
 Barretto, A., 1020  
 Barrett, H.M., 314  
 Barrett, S.J., 1017  
 Barrington, N.J., 977  
 Barrionuevo, J., 1117  
 Barrios Tassano, L.,  
 1566  
 Barros, F. de, 589  
 Barrow, D., 204  
 Barrow, R.N., 31, 193  
 Barry, B., 586  
 Bartlett Diaz, M., 864  
 Basendwah, M.S., 1596  
 Basnyet, H.B., 894  
 Bastri, D., 879  
 Bassett, M.E.R., 918  
 Bassoukou-Boumba,  
 P.-D., 383  
 Basu, J., 691  
 Bataroma, R., 777  
 Ba'teke, A., 779  
 Batmunkh, J., 872  
 Batoko, O., 209  
 Battaglia, A., 744  
 Batubara, C., 701  
 Baudouin, *King*, 195  
 Baxter, E., 1462  
 Bayh, E., 1459  
 Bayram, M., 407  
 Bazarov, R.A., 1281  
 Beamish, A.J., 1001  
 Beatrix, *Queen*, 898, 900  
 Beatty, H.P., 274  
 Beaulieu, R., 310  
 Beaumont, J.M., 1371  
 Beaven, J., 1139  
 Beavogui, T., 588  
 Beazley, K., 100  
 Becerra, M.F., 374  
 Beehio, J.-J., 392  
 Beck, T., 615  
 Bedjaoui, M., 7  
 Bedo, J., 823  
 Bedoya Velez, L., 997  
 Bedregal Gutiérrez, G.,  
 219  
 Beedh, A.S.A.I., 1597  
 Beer, P.J., 1371  
 Beerman, A., 1492  
 Beggs, P.A., 162  
 Begin, R., 1525  
 Beidari, M., 939  
 Beidou, B., 940  
 Beil, G., 528  
 Békalé, R.N., 519-20  
 Bekteshi, B., 69  
 Belaid, M., 1202  
 Belayat, A., 75  
 Beleza, L., 1020  
 Belkaid, B., 75  
 Bellmon, H., 1515  
 Bello, F., 1577  
 Bellocchi, N.H., 227  
 Bellosso, E.E., 454  
 Belmont, J., 1067  
 Belonogov, A., 1249  
 Belstead, *Lord*, 1306  
 Beltran Guerra, L., 1577  
 Bemananjara, J., 823  
 Ben Abdallah, M., 564  
 Ben Abdeljalil, A.,  
 879-80  
 Benaissa, M., 879  
 Ben Ali, Z.El A., 1202  
 Ben Amar, M., 75  
 Bencheikh, T., 879  
 Benfrehia, A., 75  
 Bengzon, A., 1003  
 Benigno, T., 1003  
 Benjamin, E., 587  
 Benjamin, M.P., 435  
 Ben M'Barck, S., 1202  
 Bennett, J.M., 149  
 Bennett, P., 149  
 Ben Slama, H., 1202  
 Bereez, J., 615  
 Beregovoy, P., 486  
 Berg, B., 819  
 Bergach, M., 883  
 Berge, G., 950  
 Berghianu, M., 1034  
 Berinson, J.M., 162  
 Berlinski, L., 911  
 Bernal Lizama, L.T.,  
 455  
 Bernard, L., 324  
 Bernston, E., 329  
 Berri, N., 799  
 Berthoud, M., 1200  
 Bertoni, H., 991  
 Beşçesler, A., 407  
 Bessaieh, B., 75  
 Best, R., 629  
 Beswick, R.J., 149  
 Bethel, P., 175  
 Bethel, P.M., 176  
 Betkowski, N., 299  
 Bettencourt Santos, H.,  
 339  
 Bhadra Singh, V., 663  
 Bhagat, H.K.L., 636  
 Bhandari, N.B., 684  
 Bhandari, R., 696  
 Bhatnagar, S.K., 684  
 Bhumbol, *King*, 1184  
 Bhutto, B., 970  
 Biancheri, B., 751  
 Biaou, A., 208  
 Bierman, E., 989  
 Bierring, O., 430  
 Biffot, L.-M., 522  
 Bilgrav-Nielsen, J., 418  
 Bin Abdullah, Y. Bin A.,  
 964  
 Bin Ali, H. Bin M., 966  
 Binoba, P., 258  
 Biran, Y., 739  
 Bird, L.B., 87  
 Bird, V.C., 87  
 Birendra, *King*, 894  
 Biryukova, A.P., 1228  
 Bishop, J.K., 809  
 Bista, K.B., 894  
 Biya, P., 266  
 Bjarnason, G., 624  
 Blacken, J.D., 591  
 Blackman, D., 191  
 Blackman, H.A., 191  
 Blais, P., 274  
 Blaize, H., 578  
 Blanc, P.-L., 499  
 Blanchard, F., 14  
 Blanchard, J.J., 1479  
 Blanchard, T.A., 314  
 Blandon, E., 584  
 Blane, J., 348  
 Blaney, V., 310  
 Blevins, F.T., 144  
 Blewett, N., 100  
 Blick, M.T.S., 1047  
 Blix, H., 12  
 Blum, N., 537  
 Blunt, R.D., 1487  
 Boadu, C., 564  
 Bobu, E., 1034  
 Bobu, M., 1034  
 Boden, F., 819  
 Bodhisane, T., 797  
 Bognessan, A.Y., 251  
 Bogossian, R.W., 941  
 Bogsch, A., 27  
 Boguinard, E.K., 392  
 Böhme, H.-J., 528  
 Bokam, J.B., 266  
 Bol-Alima, G., 268  
 Bole, F., 470  
 Bolivogui, L., 586  
 Bolkerstein, F., 902  
 Bolkiah family, 239  
 Bomani, P., 1180  
 Bommai, S.R., 666  
 Bonga, T., 985  
 Bongo, M., 519  
 Bongo, O., 519  
 Bonino, P., 1566  
 Bonnelame, J., 1067  
 Bonnet, Y., 501  
 Bonnici, E., 850  
 Bonnici, U.M., 850  
 Bonza, M., 1615  
 Booh Booh, J.-R., 266  
 Bootell, S., 859  
 Booyen, H., 890  
 Borbidge, R.B., 139  
 Bordialo, R., 1554  
 Borge Martinez, T., 935  
 Borgen, K., 950  
 Borges da Silveira, L.C.,  
 231  
 Borja Cevallos, R., 442  
 Borman, N., 407  
 Bossano, J.J., 568  
 Bosterud, H., 950  
 Boswell, A., 1370  
 Botchwey, K., 564  
 Botha, J.C.G., 1090  
 Botha, L.J., 1104  
 Botha, P.W., 1090  
 Botha, R.F., 1090  
 Bouamoud, M., 879  
 Bouchama, K., 75  
 Bouchard, B., 274  
 Bouchard, L., 274  
 Boufettas, A., 879  
 Bouhabib, A., 802  
 Boulares, H., 1202  
 Bounkoulou, B., 385  
 Bourassa, R., 326  
 Bourdès-Ogouliguende,  
 J., 519  
 Boussena, S., 75  
 Boutros-Ghali, B., 448  
 Bowen, L., 100  
 Bowen, S.D., 1540  
 Boyd, A., 983  
 Boye, M.M.O., 857  
 Bradley, J., 321  
 Bradley, M.J., 1214  
 Brady, H., 350  
 Brady, N.F., 1383  
 Braid, I.M., 149  
 Braithwaite, R., 1249  
 Braks, G., 902  
 Branco, J.R., 1056  
 Branstad, T., 1462  
 Brantley, B., 1447  
 Braun, T., 487  
 Braybrooke, D.M.L.,  
 1369  
 Brazanskas, A.K., 1277  
 Brerhi, R.A., 75  
 Brett, C., 314  
 Bridge, E.F., 162  
 Briggs, E.E., 606  
 Brighty, A.D., 399  
 Brigić, I., 1603  
 Brinkman, E., 902  
 Broadley, J.K.E., 1574  
 Broek, H. van den, 902  
 Brooke, P., 1307  
 Brooks, E.C., 1046  
 Broomfield, N., 532  
 Browder, G., 1425  
 Brown, B.J., 324  
 Brown, R., 754  
 Brown, S., 1512  
 Brown, W.A., 1189  
 Brummet, T., 303  
 Brundtland, G.H., 950  
 Brunhart, H., 815  
 Brunner, E., 1174  
 Bryan, M., 983  
 Bryant, W., 1433  
 Bucci, M., 751  
 Buchanan, J.M., 317  
 Buchi, H., 350  
 Buckland-James, J.H.,  
 467  
 Buffett, D.E., 128  
 Bührig, M., 31  
 Buivakaloloma, A., 470  
 Buiang Mohd, 841  
 Bukman, P., 902  
 Burges Watson, R.E.,  
 897



- Burgio, J., 1499  
Burgo Fernandes, V., 338  
Burke, R., 719  
Burnham, V., 592  
Burns, K.F.X., 88, 193, 435, 580, 1045, 1049, 1052  
Bush, F., 821  
Bush, G., 1381-3  
Busquin, P., 197  
Butale, C.J., 225  
Butcher, D.J., 918  
Butler, R.E., 23  
Butros, A., 771  
Butt, J.C., 314  
Button, J., 100  
Buyoya, P., 258  
Bwanali, E.C.I., 826  
Byatt, R.A.C., 933, 1008, 1593  
  
Cabanillas, M., 997  
Cabral, A.L., 591  
Cabral, V., 589  
Cabral d'Almada, F., 589  
Cabrera Hidalgo, A., 581  
Cabriss Ruiz, R., 396  
Cáceres, J.A., 991  
Cadioux, P.H., 274  
Cadieux, M.R., 1020  
Cadman, R.M., 1100  
Cahen, A., 39  
Caicedo Ferrer, J.M., 374  
Cain, E., 207  
Cain, J., 155  
Caithness, *Earl of*, 1307  
Calovski, M., 1608  
Camacho Solis, M., 864  
Camara, I., 589  
Camara, K., 586  
Camara, S.D., 588  
Camdessus, M., 20  
Cameron, D.W., 318  
Çami, F., 69  
Campbell, C., 1527  
Campbell, J., 821  
Campbell, J.T., 1527  
Campbell, K., 274  
Campbell, W.B., 138  
Camperderros, M., 79  
Candioti, E.J., 95  
Cañete, A., 991  
Caparas, M., 1003  
Caperton, G., 1545  
Caplan, E., 321  
Capucho, A., 1020  
Caputo, D., 92  
Carague, G., 1003  
Carbon, A., 434  
Çarçani, A., 69  
Cardenal Martínez, E., 935  
Cardenal, Martínez, F., 935  
Cardona Marina, A., 864  
Cardoso, R., 338  
Cariaga, J., 219  
Carl XVI Gustaf, *King*, 1149  
Carlsson, I., 1150  
Carlsson, R., 1150  
Carnahan, M., 1487  
Carneiro, R., 1020  
Carneiro Tavares, J.R., 231  
Carpio Nicolle, R., 581  
Carr, J.P., 162  
Carraro, F., 744  
Carrasco Tavera, J.C., 997  
Carrión Cruz, L., 935  
Carruthers, G., 1502  
Carvajal, P., 350  
Carvalcante, V., 231  
Carvalho, J.de, 337  
Carvalho dos Santos, H.de, 82  
Casaroli, A., 1574  
Casey, R., 1522  
Caso Lombardo, A., 864  
Castelo Branco, J.H., 231  
Castillo Claramont, R., 454  
Castle, M.N., 1443  
Castor, E., 503  
Castro, E., 32  
Castro, F., 396  
Castro, R., 396  
Cattin, C.D., 744  
Catto, H., 1356, 1422  
Causley, I.R., 131  
Cavaco Silva, A., 1020  
Cavazos, L.F., 1383  
Caygill, D.F., 917  
Ceausescu, E., 1034  
Ceausescu, N., 1033-5  
Celeste, R., 1512  
Celestine Ujang anak Jilan, 841  
Celiku, H., 69  
Cenarrusa, P., 1454  
Cepeda, F., 378  
Cereva, V., 69  
Cerazo Arévalo, M.V., 581  
Cerroquada-Pascuet, F., 79  
Cervera Pacheco, V., 864  
Césaire, A., 505  
Chadli, B., 75  
Chadwick, V., 131  
Chagula, W.K., 1183  
Chaiyasan, P., 1185  
Chalabi, F.J.Al-, 58  
Chalker, L., 1306  
Challoner, R.W., 870  
Cham, A.M.C., 523  
Chamoun, C., 799  
Chan Heng Chee, 1080  
Chan Hong Nam, G., 841  
Chan Siang Sun, 832  
Chandisingh, R., 592  
Chang Young-Chol, 781  
Channon, P., 1306  
Charalambopoulos, Y., 573  
Charasse, M., 487  
Chardon, A., 940  
Charest, J.J., 274  
Charles, M.E., 434  
Charles, *Prince of Wales*, 1302  
Charles, S., 598  
Chaudhary, P.N., 894  
Chaudhury, A., 660  
Chavan, S.B., 636  
Chaves, M., 1117  
Chaves de Mendonça, A.A., 231  
Chávez Zamora, C., 387  
Chebrikov, V.M., 1228-9  
Chehem, M.M., 431  
Cheikhrouhou, T., 1202  
Chen Li-an, 369  
Cheng Wei-yuan, 369  
Chérèque, J., 487  
Cherif, H., 1202  
Cherkezziya, O.E., 1267  
Chevenement, J.-P., 486  
Cheverie, W., 324  
Cheyney, R., 1383  
Chi Chang Ik, 785  
Chiba, K., 765  
Chibane, A., 75  
Chiduo, A., 1180  
Chidzero, B., 1624  
Chien, F., 369  
Chiepe, G.K.T., 224  
Chigaga, G., 1620  
Chikwore, E., 1624  
Chilume, O.I., 225  
Chimango, L.J., 826  
Chinkuli, G.K., 1620  
Chipande, A.J., 885  
Chirdon, Y.A., 431  
Chirinos Calero, A., 864  
Chirwa, R.W., 826  
Chissano, J.A., 884  
Chit Swe, 254  
Chitambala, P.S., 1620  
Chitepo, V., 1624  
Chiu Chuang-huan, 369  
Cho Se Ung, 786  
Cho Soon, 781  
Choe Byung-Yol, 781  
Choe Gwang, 786  
Choe Jong Gun, 786  
Choe Young-Chol, 781  
Choi Ho-Joong, 781  
Chomba, F.M., 1620  
Chong Jun Gi, 786  
Chong Sung Nam, 786  
Choonhavan, C., 1185  
Choudhury, H.R., 186  
Chowdhury, S.Q., 186  
Christian, F., 913  
Christofides, T., 402  
Christophory, J., 821  
Chrysanthou, C., 402  
Chrysostomos, *Metro-politan*, 32  
Chung, F., 1624  
Chung Jong-Taek, 781  
Chung Won-Sik, 781  
Chuula, F., 1620  
Ciobanu, L., 1034  
Ciosek, S., 1011  
Cissé, S.A., 847  
Cissokho, C.A.K., 1064  
Čkrebic, D., 1603  
Claes, W., 196  
Clair, S., 859  
Clark, A., 1307  
Clark, C.J., 273  
Clark, H., 918  
Clark, R.L., 1517  
Clark, T.J., 716  
Clark, W., 522  
Clarke, C., 754  
Clarke, H., 754  
Clarke, K., 1306  
Clauson, P.J., 139  
Clavette, G., 310  
Cledwyn of Penrhos, *Lord*, 1307  
Cleland, M., 1450  
Clements, B., 1534  
Clements, G.R., 324  
Clinton, B., 1433  
Coëme, G., 197  
Coetsee, H.J., 1090  
Coles, A.J., 119  
Coles, J., 119  
Collet, B.J., 418  
Collins, G., 719  
Collins, J., 314  
Collins, M., 274  
Collins, P.E.J., 131  
Colombo, E., 744  
Compaoré, B., 250  
Compaoré, J.-L., 251  
Compton, J.G.M., 1048  
Conable, B.B., 21-2  
Concepción, J., 1003  
Concha, M., 350  
Conde, R., 1117  
Connell, K., 1525  
Connery, E.J., 307  
Connolly, M.J., 1476  
Constable, E.G., 776  
Constenla Umana, G., 387  
Conté, L., 586  
Conway, S., 321  
Cooney, M., 1489  
Cooper, T.R., 139  
Coore, D., 754  
Cope, J., 1307  
Corbell, J., 274  
Corbier, C., 512  
Corbin, R.H.O., 592  
Corcuera, J.L., 1117  
Cordeiro Almado, D.H., 338  
Cordero-Arias, J.F., 390  
Cordoba Montoya, J., 864  
Cordóvez, D., 442  
Cormack, R.L.B., 260, 1042, 1618  
Cornell, R.A., 35  
Coronado Balmaceda, J.M., 997  
Correa, J.A., 445  
Correia, A.N., 589  
Correia, C., 589  
Cossiga, F., 743  
Cotti, F., 1167  
Coulibali, O., 939  
Coulibaly, L.N.P., 392  
Coulibaly, T., 847  
Coubassas, S., 586  
Couto, R.C., 231  
Couto dos Santos, A., 1020  
Couvelier, M., 303  
Cowper, S., 1428  
Crafter, G.J., 144  
Cragg, S.M., 155  
Crawford, N.S., 300  
Cresson, E., 486  
Crigler, T.F., 1087  
Crill, P., 1369  
Cripps, S., 300  
Croes, M., 911  
Croll, M.L., 1054  
Crompton, M.R., 238  
Cronje, R., 1105  
Crosbie, J.C., 273  
Crowell, G., 1531  
Crowson, R.B., 381, 861

- Cruz Avalos, C., 454  
 Csehak, J., 615  
 Cuko, L., 69  
 Cullen, M.J., 918  
 Cumate Rodríguez, J., 864  
 Cummings, J.G., 307  
 Cuomo, M., 1505  
 Curien, H., 486  
 Curley, W., 499  
 Curling, A., 321  
 Curran, J.J., 1474  
 Czyrek, J., 1011  
  
 D'Escoto, F., 938  
 D'Escoto Brockman, M., 935  
 D'Hondt Van Opdenbosch, P., 197  
 Dadar, J., 970  
 Daddah, A.O., 857  
 Dahab, M.G.A., 448  
 Dahanayake, W., 1128  
 Dahl, B., 1150  
 Dajani, R., 768  
*Dalai Lama*, 356  
 Dali, A.A.al-, 1598  
 Dalrymple, F.R., 119  
 Daly, B., 719  
 Daly, M., 390  
 Daly, M.F., 938  
 Dam, A.P., 427  
 Dam Quang Trung, 1584  
 Damdin, P., 872  
 Damiba, B., 251  
 Dami, I., 239  
 Danani, A.N.al-, 1598  
 Danchev, P., 244  
 Dankora, S., 208  
 Dao Duy Tung, 1584  
 Dapparungsi, K., 1185  
 Daprou, K., 251  
 Darbo, B.B., 523  
 Dascălescu, C., 1034  
 Daskalova, S., 244  
 Daud, S., 832  
 Daunt, T.L.A., 1213  
 Dauto, A.O., 885  
 David, G., 1034  
 David, R., 434  
 David, *I'scount Linley*, 1302  
 Davies, E.T., 1588  
 Davies, R., 162  
 Davis, A., 983  
 Davis, J., 303  
 Davis, J.R., 1017  
 Dawe, R.G., 314  
 Dawkins, J., 100  
 Day, S.P., 1205  
 Dayaratne, P., 1128  
 Daza, P., 354  
 De Alwis, A., 1128  
 De Alwis, W.S.L., 1133  
 De Carteret, L.P., 1371  
 De Cleene, T.A., 918  
 De Cotret, R.R., 274  
 De Klerk, F.W., 1090  
 De Marco, G., 850  
 De Mel, T., 394  
 De Michelis, G., 743  
 De Mita, C., 743  
 De Muth, P., 1430  
 De Villiers, D.W., 1090  
 Dean, H., 1538  
 Dean, J.G., 651  
  
 Decaux, A., 487  
 Deetman, W., 902  
 Dehaene, J.-L., 196  
 Dehennin, H., 203  
 Dejid, B., 872  
 Del Papa, F.S., 1494  
 Del Valle Alliegro, I., 1577  
 Delamuraz, J.-P., 1166-7  
 Délano, J.C., 354  
 Delebarre, M., 486  
 Deleza, W.B., 826  
 Delgado, E., 442  
 Delgado Barreto, C., 997  
 Delius, C.E., 223  
 Delors, J., 42  
 Delpech, M.E.R., 95  
 Delpech, R.F., 1069  
 Demba, S., 826  
 Dembele, M., 847  
 Demnati, O., 879  
 Demodetdo, P., 1615  
 Deng Xiaoping, 358-9  
 Dengo, J.M., 387  
 Denise, A., 392  
 Denktash, R., 401-2, 407  
 Denman, R., 43  
 Denys, R.B., 231  
 DePree, W.A., 190  
 Der'i, A., 734  
 Derisbourg, J.-P., 46  
 Derkach, L., 307  
 DeRoburt, H., 892  
 Derwinski, E.J., 1384  
 Deukmejian, G., 1436  
 Deus Maximiano, J.de, 338  
 Devanayagam, K.W., 1128  
 Dewatre, J., 503  
 Dhahiri, H.bin A., 1291  
 Dhanabalan, S., 1076  
 Diabate, L., 392  
 Diallo, A., 586  
 Diallo, P., 586  
 Diana, *Princess of Wales*, 1302  
 Diatta, J., 941  
 Dibo, P.G., 392  
 Dick, N., 1438  
 Dick, P.W., 274  
 Dickel, F., 528  
 Didi, A.S.M., 844  
 Didi, H.O., 856  
 Dieng, F.N., 1064  
 Diepgen, E., 549  
 Diergaardt, H., 890  
 Dijk, C. van, 902  
 Dinca, I., 1034  
 Ding Guangen, 358  
 Dinn, J., 314  
 Dinning, J., 300  
 Diop, A.M., 1064  
 Diop, C.M., 522  
 Diop, H.S., 856  
 Diop, S.L., 1064  
 Diop, S.Y., 1064  
 Diouf, A., 1063-4  
 Diouf, M., 1064  
 DiPrete, E., 1525  
 Dirks, H., 303  
 Dissanayake, G., 1128  
 Ditz, J., 170  
 Divine, G., 329  
 Djassi, M., 589  
 Djaymaz, G., 407  
  
 Djema, B., 1615  
 Djin, K., 564  
 Djondo, K., 1191  
 Djosar, S., 407  
 Djoudi, H., 78  
 Dladla, R., 1145  
 Dlamini, B.S., 1145  
 Dlamini, M.N., 1147  
 Dlamini, N., 1145  
 Dlamini, S.E., 1145  
 Dlamini, T.L.L., 1147  
 Do Muoi, 1584  
 Doak, W., 1521  
 Doan Duy Than, 1585  
 Doan Khue, 1584  
 Docking, T., 1464  
 Dodeen, M., 768  
 Doe, S.K., 806  
 Doğan, H., 1207  
 Dohlus, H., 528  
 Dohnal, J., 170  
 Doi, A., 985  
 Dole, E.H., 1383  
 Domeracki, L., 1011  
 Dominguez, C., 1003  
 Domokos, M., 621  
 Donahoe, T.R.B., 317  
 Donald, A., 366  
 Dondo, K.wa, 1615  
 Dong Si Nguyen, 1584  
 Donkoh, Y., 564  
 Donkor, E.K.T., 564  
 Dorey, G.M., 1370  
 Dorsainville, C., 598  
 Dost, M.S., 67  
 Doubin, F., 487  
 Doucett, R., 310  
 Douglas, E., 754  
 Douglas, J., 1538  
 Douglas, W., 193  
 Dombia, C.O., 847  
 Doumbouya, S., 586  
 Doumiam, O., 383  
 Dove-Edwin, G., 947  
 Dowd, J.R.A., 131  
 Dowding, P.M., 162  
 Downey, J.E., 307  
 Doyle, N., 314  
 Driedger, A., 307  
 Drilon, F., 1003  
 Drossoyiannis, A., 573  
 Duarte, J.N., 454  
 Dubey, B., 636  
 Dubinin, Y.V., 1249  
 DuBose, R., 89  
 Ducharme, G., 307  
 Dueck, P., 303  
 Dugersuren, M., 875  
 Dukakis, M.S., 1381, 1476  
 Dulari Sinha, R., 668  
 Dullolo, M., 859  
 Dumas, J.P., 1200  
 Dumas, R., 486  
 Duncan, J., 329  
 Dunkel, A., 26  
 Dunkley, C., 754  
 Dunstan, D., 144  
 Du Plessis, B.J., 1090  
 Dupuis, G.B., 850  
 Durafour, M., 486  
 Duran Saucedo, J.C., 219  
 Dwidar, M.R., 448  
 Dybkjaer, L., 418  
 Dye, B.J., 1484  
 Dykeman, W., 1533  
 Dyremose, H., 418  
  
 Dysart, S., 310  
 Dyulgerov, P., 244  
 Dyvig, P., 430  
 Dzhumagulov, A.D., 1288  
 Dzhurov, D., 244  
  
 Eagleton, W., 1178  
 Eakins, J., 321  
 Ebeid, A.M., 448  
 Eberlein, W., 528  
 Ebu, A., 985  
 Echeverria Salgado, C.F., 387  
 Edgar, J., 1457  
 Edis, R.J.S., 238  
 Edmiston, R., 1508  
 Edmunds, J.E., 1049  
 Edoh, K., 1191  
 Edri, R., 734  
 Edward, *Prince*, 1302-3  
 Edward, *Prince, Duke of Kent*, 1302  
 Edwards, E.M., 1045  
 Edwards, G.J., 162  
 Edwards, J.C., 805  
 Egerton, S., 1062  
 Egilsson, O., 629  
 Ehe, W.K., 1191  
 Ehrler, B., 1466  
 Eidem, B.M., 950  
 Ekra, M., 392  
 Ela, F.M., 461  
 Elabe, M.D., 431  
 Elekdag, S., 1213  
 Elenga, E., 383  
 Elias, T.O., 7  
 Eliassen, K., 962  
 Eliasson, J., 1163  
 Elizabeth, *Queen Mother*, 1302-3  
 Elizabeth II, *Queen*, 28-9, 1302-3  
 Ellemann-Jensen, U., 418  
 Elliott, M., 739  
 Ellis, A., 324  
 Elrington, H., 205  
 Elston, M., 321  
 Elzinga, P., 300  
 Eman, J.H., 911  
 Enneve, E., 943  
 Encik Adenan bin Haji Satem, 841  
 Engelhard, H.A., 537  
 Engholm, B., 561  
 Englebrecht, A.W., 911  
 Engseth, W., 950  
 Engström, O., 1150  
 Enin, A., 564  
 Epp, J., 274  
 Erbilin, M., 407  
 Ernst, J.A., 307  
 Eroglu, D., 407  
 Errazuriz, H.F., 354  
 Ershad, H.M., 186  
 Escalante Vargas, L.D., 387  
 Escalona Reguera, J., 396  
 Escheikh, A., 1202  
 Espinosa de los Reyes, J., 868  
 Esquivel, M.A., 204  
 Esquivel Volio, A., 387  
 Essimengane, S., 519  
 Essy, A., 394  
 Estuar, F., 1003

- Esztorgalyos, F., 621  
 Ettli, H., 170  
 Etyang, P., 1219  
 Eu, M.F., 1436  
 Evans, G., 100  
 Evensen, J., 7  
 Everett, B., 584  
 Evers, N.C.K., 149  
 Evins, C., 486  
 Evren, K., 1207  
 Ewans, M., 211  
 Ewengue, J.-M., 385  
 Ewick, C.R., 1461  
 Eyadéma, G., 1190-1  
 Eysers, P.H.C., 78  
 Ez, A.A.H., 448
- Fabian, A.P., 1196  
 Fabiola, *Queen*, 195  
 Factoran, F., 1003  
 Fahd, *King*, 1057  
 Faheem, M.A., 970  
 Fahey, J.J., 131  
 Fainter, J.W., 1534  
 Fakhoury, R., 802  
 Fakhro, A., 180  
 Falae, O., 943  
 Fall, Ibrahim, 1064  
 Fall, Idrissa, 1066  
 Fall, M., 1064  
 Falzon, M., 850  
 Fanfani, A., 744  
 Farah, M.B., 431  
 Farell Cubillas, A., 864  
 Farhadi, M., 707  
 Farrelly, A.A., 1563  
 Fatafehi Tu'apehake, *Prince*, 1195  
 Fauliso, J.J., 1441  
 Faure, M., 486  
 Fauroux, R., 486  
 Fayiz, M.al-A.al., 1058  
 Fazekas, L., 1034  
 Fedoruk, S., 329  
 Fein, R.H., 909  
 Felber, R., 1167  
 Feldt, K.-O., 1150  
 Felipe, *Prince*, 1116  
 Fenne, N., 730  
 Fepulea'i, F.G., 1593  
 Ferguson, T.S., 242  
 Fergusson, E., 499  
 Fernandes, C.A., 82  
 Fernández, H., 1566  
 Fernández, J., 1003  
 Fernández, M., 1117  
 Fernández, S., 350  
 Fernández Ordóñez, F., 1117  
 Fernández Saborio, G., 387  
 Ferrao, V., 887  
 Ferreira, J., 885  
 Ferreira da Nobrega, M., 231  
 Ferreira do Amaral, J., 1020  
 Ferreira Neto, A.J., 81  
 Ferrers, *Earl*, 1307  
 Ferri, E., 744  
 Ferriter, J.P., 433  
 Fettah, M., 879  
 Feyder, J., 821  
 Fidler, J., 414  
 Fields, D.C., 345  
 Figueredo, R., 1577  
 Figueres de Jiménez, 387
- Fikre-Selassie Wogderess, 463  
 Filali, A., 879  
 Filipov, G., 244  
 Filippopoulos, A., 573  
 Filmon, J.A., 307  
 Findlay, G.M., 307  
 Finette, R., 859  
 Finn, G., 310  
 Finnbogadóttir, V., 624  
 Fischbach, M., 819  
 Fischer, O., 528  
 Fisseha Desta, 463  
 Fitzherbert, G., 439, 1581  
 Fjordbotten, E.L., 300  
 Flegel, M., 528  
 Flemming, M., 170  
 Floissac, V., 1048  
 Floros, G., 573  
 Fluture, P., 1034  
 Flynn, J.G., 1147  
 Flynn, P., 719  
 Fofana, A., 586  
 Fofe, J., 266  
 Fogh Rasmussen, A., 418  
 Fojtik, J., 410  
 Folger, J.D.M., 1451  
 Fologo, L.D., 392  
 Folsom, J., 1425  
 Fontaine, R., 321  
 Ford, D., 608  
 Fordham, R.C., 155  
 Foregger, E., 170  
 Formica, R., 744  
 Fort, M.G., 348  
 Forte, *Lord*, 1054  
 Fortier, Y., 296  
 Fosi, P., 1592  
 Fowler, N., 1305  
 Francanzani, C., 744  
 Francis, H.H. (Tim), 933  
 Francis Joseph II., *Prince*, 815  
 Franco Guachalla, A., 219  
 Fraser, *Lord*, 1306  
 Frederik, *Prince*, 417  
 Freivalds, L., 1150  
 Frenette, R., 310  
 Friedman, F., 1145  
 Frossard, C., 1370  
 Fry, J.W., 1481  
 Fulani, L., 1381  
 Fullerton, W.H., 238, 467, 1113  
 Fulton, E., 321
- Gaćić, R., 1603  
 Gadam, K., 832  
 Gaddafi, M., 810-11  
 Gado, G., 209  
 Galea, L., 850  
 Gallardo, J., 442  
 Galloni, G., 744  
 Galvin, J.R., 38  
 Gammelgaard, L., 418  
 Gandhi, R., 635  
 Ganga, J.-C., 383  
 Ganilau, P., 470  
 Ganzuri, K.A. el., 448  
 Garba, A., 941  
 Garba, J.N., 947  
 Garcia, J.H., 82  
 García, Cabrejos, I., 997  
 García Pérez, A., 997
- García Rodríguez, R., 350  
 Garcia Vargas, J., 1117  
 Gardner, B., 1543  
 Gardner, J., 1508  
 Gardner, W.M., 1497  
 Garnier, J.-R., 510  
 Garong, P., 985  
 Garrón de Doryon, V., 387  
 Garrón Salazar, H., 387  
 Gaspari, R., 744  
 Gata, F., 518  
 Gatt, L., 850  
 Gattermann, G., 558  
 Gava, A., 743  
 Gaviña Trujillo, C., 374  
 Gavrielides, A., 402  
 Gay, N.R., 176  
 Gayoom, M.A., 844  
 Gazere, O., 939  
 Gbedemah, M.K., 564  
 Gbeho, J.V., 567  
 Gbezerabria, M., 343  
 Geens, A., 197  
 Gegprifti, L., 69  
 Geh, H.-P., 547  
 Gemayel, A., 798-9  
 Genia, J., 985  
 Gennimatas, G., 573  
 Genscher, H.-D., 537  
 George, H., 434  
 Gerard, J., 598  
 Gerhardsen, T.S., 950  
 Gerlach, M., 528  
 Gertych, Z., 1017  
 Gestsson, S., 624  
 Getty, D.R., 299  
 Ghaith, S.al., 1291  
 Ghandhi, R.K.S., 663  
 Ghani, A.A.A., 1594  
 Ghannouchi, M., 1202  
 Gharekhan, C.R., 651  
 Ghartimagar, B.R., 894  
 Ghazouani, R., 879  
 Ghezal, A., 1205  
 Ghitulica, M., 1033  
 Ghiz, J.A., 324  
 Ghougassian, J., 1031  
 Ghozali, S.A., 75  
 Ghuburrin, B., 859  
 Giacomelli, G., 10  
 Giaconi, J., 350  
 Gibbs, I.J., 139  
 Gibbs, O.M., 580  
 Giffin, R.C., 317  
 Giheno, J., 985  
 Gilashvili, P.G., 1267  
 Gildenhorn, J., 1174  
 Gildred, T., 95  
 Gillespie, C.A., 378  
 Giosan, N., 1033  
 Giray, S., 1207  
 Givens, W.A., 809  
 Gjynush, S., 69  
 Gjyzari, N., 69  
 Gladstone, D.A.S., 845, 1133  
 Glasby, A.I., 385  
 Glassman, J.D., 67  
 Glasson, W.H., 139  
 Glasspole, F., 753  
 Glaze, M.J.C., 84, 1056  
 Glump, J., 1016  
 Glenarthur, *Lord*, 1306  
 Glitman, M.W., 203  
 Glover, M.J.K., 859  
 Gnemegna, K., 1191
- Gnoleba, M.S., 392  
 Goburdhun, J., 859  
 Godinho Gomes, H., 589  
 Godinho Gomes, P.A., 589  
 Godoy Jiménez, A., 991  
 Goebbels, R., 819  
 Goff, P.B., 918  
 Goh Chok Tong, 1076  
 Goldschmidt, N., 1518  
 Goldson, P., 204  
 Goma, L., 1620  
 Gombosuren, T., 872  
 Gomes, I., 338  
 Gómez, C.C., 997  
 Gomis, C., 394  
 Gonelevu, V., 470  
 Gong Pinmei, 365  
 Gonifei-Gaibounanou, P., 343  
 Gonzales, J.A., 1003  
 González, C.H., 864  
 González Márquez, F., 1117  
 González Posada, L., 997  
 Goodall, D., 651  
 Goodfellow, M.A., 522  
 Göransson, B., 1150  
 Gorbachev, M.S., 1228  
 Gorbunov, A.V., 1275  
 Gordon, E.M., 204  
 Gordon, H., 350  
 Gordon, R.D., 1600  
 Gore, M.E.J., 809  
 Gortari, S. de, 864  
 Gorywoda, M., 1011  
 Gosaibi, G.M.al., 184  
 Gostev, B.I., 1228  
 Gotlieb, A.E., 296  
 Götting, G., 528  
 Gračanin, P., 1603, 1609  
 Gradin, A., 1150  
 Graf, R., 170  
 Graham, A., 310  
 Gramajo Morales, H., 581  
 Grandmaitre, B., 321  
 Grant, C.H., 596  
 Grant, J.P., 10  
 Grasset, B., 513  
 Graves, B., 1464  
 Gray, R.T., 149  
 Greaves, E.E., 191  
 Greaves, P., 191  
 Green, H., 592  
 Green, M., 310  
 Greenidge, C., 592  
 Gregg, D., 784  
 Gregg, J., 1497  
 Gregorios, P.M., 32  
 Gregory, R.J., 145  
 Greiner, N.F., 131  
 Grelombe, C., 343  
 Grewal, S., 670  
 Griffiths, M., 1479  
 Grill, J.F., 162  
 Grimsson, O.R., 624  
 Grondahl, K.K., 950  
 Gronemeyer, H., 553  
 Groom, F.R., 149  
 Groom, R.J., 149  
 Gros, A.M., 939  
 Grossu, S.K., 1272  
 Grösz, K., 615  
 Growe, J.A., 1482  
 Grubor, Z., 1609



- Grunwald, H., 174  
 Guðmundsson, F., 629  
 Guebuza, A.E., 885  
 Guerra González, A., 1117  
 Guerreiro Dias, J., 81  
 Guerrero, M.J., 374  
 Guerrier, A., 598  
 Guessous, A., 880  
 Guezodje, V., 209  
 Guigma, A., 251  
 Guillaume, G., 7  
 Gumbs, E., 85  
 Gumbs, L., 913  
 Gummer, J., 1307  
 Gumucio Granier, J., 223  
 Gundana, F., 885  
 Gungaadorj, S., 872  
 Gungah, D., 859  
 Gunn, R., 1045, 1049, 1052  
 Gunn, W.A.M., 139  
 Gupta, S., 186  
 Gur, M., 734  
 Gurinovich, A.E., 1263  
 Gutierrez, C.J., 390  
 Gutiérrez Barrios, F., 864  
 Güzel, H.C., 1207  
 Guzman, J.A., 350  
 Gwiazda, W., 1011  
 Haarder, B., 418  
 Habibe, B.J., 701  
 Habibi, H., 707  
 Habibou, A., 939  
 Habibullah, W., 697  
 Habré, H., 346-7  
 Habyarimana, J., 1040  
 Haddad, N.H., 713  
 Hagen, S., 303  
 Hager, K., 528  
 Haiba, M.H.O.S., 856  
 Haidara, M.M., 847  
 Haig, I., 155  
 Haimar, M.O., 856  
 Hajj, A. al-, 802  
 Halbritter, W., 528  
 Halfhide, A.T., 1143  
 Halifa, M., 380  
 Hall, W., 191  
 Hallahan, E.K., 162  
 Hallett, C.B., 179  
 Halonen, T., 476  
 Halvorsen, E., 950  
 Hamad, J.M. al, 791  
 Hamad bin Khalifa Al-Thani, 1028  
 Hamad bin Mohammed al Sharqi, *Sheikh*, 1290  
 Hamadani, M.A. al-, 1595  
 Hamadou, B.G., 431  
 Hamami, H., 771  
 Hamán, J., 410  
 Hamdan, Y., 768  
 Hamdan bin Mohammed al-Nahyan, 1291  
 Hamdoon, N., 716  
 Hameed, A., 844  
 Hamid, A.M.A. al-, 1594-5  
 Hamilton, A., 1307  
 Hammoury, M., 768  
 Hāmori, C., 615  
 Hamzah, Z., 768  
 Hamzaoui, A., 1205  
 Han Sung-Soo, 781  
 Han Xu, 366  
 Hand, G., 100  
 Hanif Khan, M., 970  
 Hannibalsson, J.B., 624  
 Hans Adam, *Prince*, 815  
 Hansen, M., 197  
 Hanson, L., 303  
 Hapunda, F., 1620  
 Harahap, H., 701  
 Harald, *Prince*, 949  
 Hardy, N., 329  
 Hardy, P., 1469  
 Hare, P.J., 1622  
 Harewood-Benn, Y., 592  
 Harkins, M., 1443  
 Harland, B., 933  
 Harmoko, 701  
 Harouna, O.D., 856  
 Harper, N.J., 139  
 Harris, J.F., 1450  
 Hartarto, 701  
 Harvey, L.T., 139  
 Hashem, J., 799  
 Haskins, J.G., 225  
 Hassan, F., 701  
 Hassan, K. Al H., 768  
 Hassan, *Prince*, 768  
 Hassan II, *King*, 879  
 Hassanali, N., 1198  
 Hassanaly, A., 379  
 Hata, T., 760  
 Haughey, C., 719  
 Haussman, H., 537  
 Hawke, R., 100  
 Hawlicek, H., 170  
 Hay, D.A., 132  
 Hayat, F.S., 970  
 Hayatou, S., 266  
 Hayday, A.V., 825  
 Hayden, M., 1464  
 Hayden, W.G., 100  
 Hazeltine, J., 1529  
 Hazi, V., 621  
 Hazoume, G.L., 209  
 Hearn, L., 314  
 Hechler, K., 1545  
 Heckler, M.M., 730  
 Hejailan, F. ibn A.A. al-, 1058  
 Held, H.J., 32  
 Hellström, M., 1150  
 Helveg Petersen, N., 418  
 Hemmings, T.H., 144  
 Hempel, J., 31  
 Henderson, Y.D., 162  
 Hendrickse, A., 1090  
 Heng Samrin, 262  
 Henri, *Prince*, 818  
 Henrik, *Prince*, 417  
 Henry, *Prince*, 1302  
 Hepworth, L., 329  
 Herbert, W., 1045  
 Herder, G., 532  
 Herdman, J.M., 1589  
 Herman, V., 410  
 Hermannsson, S., 624  
 Hernández, V., 1581  
 Hernández Alcerro, J.R., 606  
 Hernández Colón, R., 1560  
 Herrera, W., 442  
 Herrmann, J., 528  
 Herzog, C., 734  
 Heunis, C.R., 1090  
 Heusinger, H.-J., 528  
 Heyer, M.J., 1496  
 Hiilali, M., 879  
 Hill, G.L., 162  
 Hillery, P., 719  
 Hinchcliffe, P.R.M., 793  
 Hindawi, T. Al-, 768  
 Hinterscheid, M., 33  
 Hiriart Balderrama, F., 864  
 Hitam, Y.M., 835  
 Hitch, B., 853  
 Hjelm-Wallén, L., 1150  
 Ho Dam, 786  
 Hoang Quy, 1585  
 Hobby, W.P., 1534  
 Hocké, J.-P., 11  
 Hockin, T., 274  
 Hodge, B.J., 162  
 Hodge, D.N., 1563  
 Hodgetts, D.P.L., 1370  
 Hodgins, G., 329  
 Hodgman, P.C.L., 149  
 Hodoul, J., 1067  
 Hoess, F., 174  
 Hoffmann, K., 410  
 Höfner, *Cardinal*, 543  
 Hofner, E., 528  
 Hogg, C.J., 155  
 Hogsett, J., 1459  
 Hohenfellner, P., 174  
 Holele, L.G., 1105  
 Holkeri, H., 476  
 Holomisa, B., 1107  
 Holst, J.J., 950  
 Holtz, P., 1474  
 Homaidan, I.M.H., 180  
 Homann, H., 528  
 Honecker, E., 528-9  
 Hong Song Nam, 786  
 Honwana, L.B., 885  
 Hoos, J., 615  
 Hopa, J., 1570  
 Hopgood, D.J., 144  
 Hoq, A., 186  
 Horowitz, H.E., 525  
 Horsman, J.D., 299  
 Horvat, F., 1603  
 Horváth, I., 615  
 Hosek, C., 321  
 Hosni, F., 449  
 Hoss, S., 799  
 Houdek, R.G., 1221  
 Houdou, A., 209  
 Hough, D.J., 1102  
 Hounissi, Z., 75  
 Houphouët-Boigny, F., 392  
 Houstecký, M., 414  
 Houti, A.R.I. al, 790  
 Hove, R., 1624  
 Howard, M., 1307  
 Howe, B., 100  
 Howe, G., 1305  
 Howell, M.E., 989  
 Howell, W.N., 793  
 Hoyte, H.D., 592  
 Hruvňak, P., 410  
 Hrušková, M., 410  
 Hsiao Tien-tsang, 369  
 Hsu Shi-teh, 369  
 Hu Qili, 358  
 Hu Tsu Tau, R., 1076  
 Hu Yaobang, 358  
 Huberts, T., 303  
 Huh Hyong-Koo, 781  
 Hulme, P., 1366  
 Hultström, S., 1150  
 Humaid bin Rashid al-Nuaimi, *Sheikh*, 1290  
 Humoud, M. Al-, 768  
 Humphries, B., 100  
 Hun Sen, 261-2  
 Hunguana, T., 885  
 Hunkin, E.F., 1557  
 Hunley, H., 299  
 Hunt, G., 1425  
 Hunt, J.L., 918  
 Hupper Argello, W., 935  
 Huq, S., 186  
 Hurd, D., 1305  
 Hurulle, E.R.B., 1128  
 Husák, G., 410  
 Hussain, A., 186  
 Hussain, M.Z., 844  
 Hussain Khan, S., 186  
 Hussein, *King*, 767-8  
 Hussein at-Takriti, S., 712-13  
 Huynh Tan Phat, 1584  
 Hyera, A.M., 1183  
 Hyon Hong-Joo, 781  
 Iacovou, G., 402  
 Ibbott, A., 525  
 Ibrahim, A., 832  
 Ibrahim, G. el S., 448  
 Ibrahim, Ilyas, 844  
 Ibrahim, Isa, 239  
 Ibrahim, Izzat, 713  
 Ibrahim, I., 844  
 Ibrahim, O.H., 431  
 Ibrahim Ismail ibni Sultan, *Regent*, 831  
 Ibrahimi, A.T., 75  
 Idarousse, S., 380  
 Iddrisu, M., 564  
 Idriss, P.H., 242  
 Idrissou, S.I., 211  
 Ifunaoa, W., 1084  
 Ignatios IV, *Patriarch*, 32  
 Ijape, M., 985  
 Illanes, F., 219  
 Imam, Z., 186  
 Imbulana, P.C., 1128  
 Imray, C.H., 1183  
 Inderson, S., 913  
 Indra, A., 410  
 Ingvarson, I.S., 629  
 Insanally, S.R., 596  
 Inyanza, M., 1615  
 Ipina, E., 219  
 Iqbal, R.S., 970  
 Iravani, M.J., 707  
 Iryani, A.K. al-, 1594  
 Isa, T.A., 713  
 Isai, H., 69  
 Ishaq Khan, G., 969-70  
 Iskandar, F., 449  
 Islam, M., 186  
 Islam, S.S., 186  
 Isley, E.D., 300  
 Ismail Petra ibni Al-Marhum, *Sultan*, 831  
 Isom, H.W., 797  
 Itambala, I., 1615  
 Itoe, B., 266  
 Iturbe de Blanco, E., 1577  
 Iuta, T., 777  
 Ivanovic, I.S., 870  
 Iványi, P., 615  
 Izaguirre, A., 1577

- Ja'afar ibni Al-Marhum, Besar, 831  
 Jackson, R., 592  
 Jacobovits de Szeged, A., 909  
 Jacobs, L., 89  
 Jacobs, W.E., 87  
 Jacovides, A.J., 406  
 Jafairy, I., 28  
 Jaichandra Singh, R.K., 674  
 Jakeš, M., 410  
 Jalali, M.H., 707  
 Jallow, H., 523  
 Jallow, O.A., 523  
 Jameel, A., 844  
 Jameel, F., 844  
 Jamer, H.W., 314  
 Jamsranjav, A., 872  
 Janák, I., 410  
 Jansen, J., 303  
 Jaques, T.F., 1470  
 Jaquet, E., 991  
 Jaramillo Correa, L.F., 374  
 Jarowski, W., 528  
 Jarrett, L., 310  
 Jarrett, S.O., 809  
 Jaruzelski, W., 1009-11  
 Jarwan, S.A., 1291  
 Jasir, K.A.S., 790  
 Jasrai, P., 872  
 Jatta, M., 523  
 Jaunarena, H., 92  
 Jawara, D.K., 523, 1064  
 Jay Hee-Oh, 784  
 Jayakumar, S., 1076  
 Jayawickreme, M., 1128  
 Jayfi, M.A.al., 1595  
 Jayme, V., 1003  
 Jean, *Grand Duke*, 818  
 Jeewoolall, R., 859  
 Jeffries, W.P., 918  
 Jegham, M., 1202  
 Jelinek, O.J., 274  
 Jenkins, D.V., 1371  
 Jenkins, M.R.H., 909  
 Jennings, R., 7  
 Jerri, M., 1202  
 Jervolino, R.R., 744  
 Jessersamng, C., 861  
 Jesus, D.J.de, 82  
 Ji Chaozhu, 366  
 Jiang Qing, 358  
 Jiang Zemin, 358  
 Jigme Singye Wangchuck, *King*, 215  
 Jiménez, D., 390  
 Jiménez Veiga, D., 387  
 Jishi, M.J. Al, 180  
 Johanes, J., 410  
 Johansson, B., 1150  
 John Paul II, *Pope*, 1016, 1573-4  
 Johnson, Garry, 608  
 Johnson, George, 307  
 Johnson, J., 776  
 Johnson, K., 754  
 Johnson, M., 1482  
 Johnson, R., 1493  
 Johnston, D., 299  
 Johnston, R., 303  
 Johnstone, L.C., 78  
 Jolly, R.A., 155  
 Jones, Barry, 100  
 Jones, Brereton, 1466  
 Jonkman, H., 909  
 Jørgensen, E., 430  
 Jospin, L., 486  
 Jouahri, A., 879  
 Joudeh, S., 768  
 Joxe, P., 486  
 Joy, D., 457, 605  
 Juan, E., 205  
 Juan Carlos I, *King*, 1114, 1116-17  
 Jugnauth, A., 859  
 Juico, P., 1003  
 Juliana, *Queen*, 900  
 Julis, K., 410  
 Jumayan, K.J.S. al, 790  
 Jumblatt, W., 799-800  
 Jumeau, E., 1067  
 Juncker, J.-C., 819  
 Jung, L., 41  
 Junid, S., 832  
 Justiniano, J.G., 219  
 Kâ, D., 1064  
 Kâ M., 1064  
 Ka'abi, S.S.J.Al, 1031  
 Kabab, M.A.al., 1595  
 Kabanda, C., 1042  
 Kabbai, M., 879  
 Kabeya, N., 1615  
 Kagbongo, K., 1615  
 Kabore, P.-D., 253  
 Kabwe, B.R., 1620  
 Kachamila, J., 885  
 Kacisolomone, I., 470  
 Kadigiri, E., 260  
 Kadijević, V., 1603  
 Kadyrov, G.K., 1283  
 Kafe, S.M., 379  
 Kafrawi, H.M. el, 448  
 Kagami, H., 765  
 Kaggbia, K.M.N., 1615  
 Kagonyera, M., 1219  
 Kaissi, A., 879  
 Kaiteie, T., 777  
 Kakkamanis, A., 573  
 Kakonge, J., 1219  
 Kalaluka, J.K.M., 1620  
 Kalemli, M., 1207  
 Kalin, I.P., 1272  
 Kallal, A., 1202  
 Kalpokas, D., 1570  
 Kaltwasser, F.G., 549  
 Kalu, K.I., 943  
 Kam, L., 983  
 Kamalidenov, Z., 1279  
 Kamara, A.B., 1070  
 Kamberi, A., 69  
 Kamikamica, J., 470  
 Kamod, P., 985  
 Kan'an, A. El-S., 768  
 Kan'an, T., 768  
 Kanafani, B., 1178  
 Kandil, A.H.M., 448  
 Kane, F., 1066  
 Kane, N., 856  
 Kanerva, I., 476  
 Kang Song San, 785  
 Kang Young-Hoon, 781  
 Kangai, K., 1624  
 Kanidoua, N., 251  
 Kannangara, W., 1128  
 Kanon, D.B., 392  
 Kanu, S., 1070  
 Kanyeihamba, G., 1219  
 Karanja, J., 773  
 Kargbo, T., 1074  
 Karimanzira, D., 1624  
 Karl-i-Bond, N., 1615  
 Karmi, A.H., 970  
 Karotu, I., 777  
 Karoui, H., 1202  
 Karpan, K., 1551  
 Kärpät, F., 615  
 Kartasasmitta, G., 701  
 Karunanidhi, M., 686  
 Karunaratne, A., 1128  
 Kasai, K., 1615  
 Kasemsri, M.L.B., 1189  
 Kassa-Mapsi, E., 519  
 Kassim, H.A., 181  
 Kassir, V., 799  
 Kassum, A., 1180  
 Kataoka, S., 760  
 Kategaya, E., 1219  
 Katjiuongua, M., 890  
 Katopola, D.S., 826  
 Katter, R.C., 139  
 Katushev, K.F., 1228  
 Katz-Oz, A., 734  
 Katzav, M., 734  
 Kaul, P.K., 651  
 Kaunda, K.D., 1619  
 Kawari, H.A.A.Al., 1031  
 Kawawa, R., 1180  
 Kay-Mouat, J., 1371  
 Kayyal, A.D., 1058  
 Kazeruni, S., 707  
 Kean, T.H., 1499  
 Keating, P., 100  
 Kebe, M., 1064  
 Kedikilwe, P.H.K., 224  
 Keeley, R.V., 577  
 Keikelame, E.B., 1105  
 Keita, B., 392  
 Keita, D., 847  
 Keita, K., 586  
 Keita, L., 848  
 Keita, M., 847  
 Kelly, C., 911  
 Kelly, J., 802  
 Kelso, F.B., 38  
 Kemp, J.F., 1383  
 Keneally, G.F., 144  
 Kennan, J.H., 155  
 Kepa, S., 470  
 Kerdel-Vegas, F., 1581  
 Kerekou, A., 208  
 Kerekou, M., 208  
 Kerin, J., 100  
 Kerr, G., 318  
 Kerr, R.S., 1515  
 Kerrio, V., 321  
 Kessler, H., 528  
 Ketlogetse, S.T., 227  
 Kgabo, E.M.K., 225  
 Kgobokoe, S.C., 1105  
 Khachornprasart, S., 1185  
 Khaddam, A.H., 1175  
 Khadija bint Ahmed, A., 856  
 Khaev, I.K., 1287  
 Khal, M.A.A., 1058  
 Khairallah, A., 713  
 Khaled, F.A.R.al, 791  
 Khalifa, Al., family, 180-1  
 Khalifa Al-Thani, *Amir*, 1028  
 Khamenei, H.S.A., 707  
 Khan, S.M., 977  
 Khandakar, A.K., 186  
 Kharafi, J.M. al, 790  
 Kharchev, K.M., 1247  
 Khasawneh, H. Al., 768  
 Khatami, M., 707  
 Khatib, H. Al., 768  
 Khayyat, A.A. Al., 768  
 Khazraji, S.M.al., 1291  
 Khediri, H., 75  
 Khelil, H., 1202  
 Khelil, I., 1202  
 Kherroubi, M.C., 75  
 Khider, A., 509  
 Khlyfat, A., 768  
 Khodzhamuradov, A.K., 1281  
 Khomeini, *Ayatollah*, 706  
 Khoo Chian Kim, 1080  
 Khouadia, B., 1202  
 Khussaiby, S.Bin M.Al., 967  
 Khuwaiter, A.A.al Al, 1058  
 Kibedi, W., 1221  
 Kibirango, D., 1219  
 Kidwai, M., 636  
 Kiechle, I., 537  
 Kigozi, D., 1219  
 Kikhe, J., 343  
 Kilage, I., 985  
 Kilday, L.C., 439  
 Kilimite, H.T., 251  
 Killen, P.R., 1098  
 Kim Bok Sin, 786  
 Kim Chang Ju, 786  
 Kim Chang-Kun, 781  
 Kim Hwan, 785-6  
 Kim Il Sung, 785  
 Kim Jip, 781  
 Kim Jong Il, 785  
 Kim Kyong-Won, 784  
 Kim Sik, 781  
 Kim Yong Nam, 785  
 Kim Yong-Jong, 781  
 Kim Yun Hyok, 786  
 Kimario, M., 1180  
 Kimbembe, D., 383  
 Kinast, J., 1017  
 Kincl, F., 410  
 Kindi, M.K.al., 1291  
 King, M.A., 191  
 King, R., 310  
 King, Thérèse, 1064  
 King, Tom, 1305, 1358  
 Kingon, A.H., 46  
 Kinnock, N., 1307  
 Kirata, B., 777  
 Kirk, R., 1039  
 Kirner, J.E., 155  
 Kisanji, C., 1180  
 Kisseka, S.M., 1219  
 Kiszczak, C., 1011  
 Kitapci, N., 1207  
 Kitariko, R., 1219  
 Kito, M., 82  
 Kitshode, N., 1618  
 Kittani, I.T., 716  
 Kivejinja, A.K., 1219  
 Kiyonga, C., 1219  
 Kizito, J.S., 1219  
 Kleiber, G., 528  
 Klein, H., 537  
 Klein, J., 329  
 Klibi, C., 57  
 Klinck, P., 1540  
 Klinprathoom, T., 1185  
 Klunder, J.H.C., 145  
 Knight, K.D., 754  
 Knoppel, I., 913  
 Knotek, I., 410  
 Knowles, E., 176  
 Koch, E., 1505

- Koch, H.-A., 552  
 Kock-Petersen, E., 418  
 Koh Thong Bee, T., 1080  
 Kohl, H., 537  
 Koivisto, M., 475  
 Koizumi, J., 760  
 Kolane, J.T., 805  
 Kolbe, J., 1530  
 Kolbin, G.V., 1279  
 Kolingba, A., 343  
 Koller, A., 1167  
 Kolstad, A., 1489  
 Komender, Z., 1011  
 Komlavi, Y., 1191  
 Konan, S., 392  
 Konate, I., 251  
 Kondi, P., 69  
 Koné, A., 392  
 Koné, M., 847  
 Koning, J. de, 902  
 Kontagora, M., 943  
 Koornhof, P.G., 1099  
 Korbeci, S., 69  
 Korn, D.A., 1193  
 Koroma, A.K., 1070  
 Korošec, S., 1603  
 Korsaga, F., 251  
 Korte, R. de, 902  
 Kosgei, S.J., 776  
 Kotaite, A., 22  
 Kotze, G.J., 1090  
 Kouassi, K., 1193  
 Kouloumbis, E., 573  
 Koutsogiorgas, A., 573  
 Kovačević, Z., 1608  
 Kovalev, M.V., 1263  
 Kowalski, K., 300  
 Koza, T.T., 1191  
 Koziol, J., 1011  
 Kozonguizi, J., 890  
 Kravtsev, V.A., 1261  
 Krenz, E., 528  
 Krieps, R., 819  
 Krishna Rao, K.V., 674, 677, 688  
 Kristensen, F., 950  
 Krolkowski, W., 528  
 Krys, S.J., 1200  
 Kryuchkov, V.A., 1228  
 Kubadinski, P., 244  
 Kubasiewicz, J., 1011  
 Kubuabola, I., 470  
 Kučan, M., 1609  
 Kulakowski, J., 34  
 Kulcsár, K., 615  
 Kulikov, V.G., 48  
 Kumar Mahanta, P., 656  
 Kumud Ben Joshi, M.S., 653  
 Kunin, M., 1538  
 Kunze, H., 533  
 Kuo, S., 369  
 Kuo Nan-hung, 369  
 Kurisaqila, A., 470  
 Kurshumi, A.H.al., 1595  
 Kurt, F., 1207  
 Kusler, J., 1510  
 Kusumaatmadja, S., 701  
 Kuti, O.R., 943  
 Kux, D., 394  
 Kvidal, M., 950  
 Kwarara, G., 985  
 Kwelagobe, D.K., 225  
 Kwidini, D., 1624  
 Kwinter, M., 321  
 Kye Ung Tae, 786  
 Kyesimira, Y., 1219  
 Laarif, A., 1202  
 La Barre de Nanteuil, L. de, 499  
 Labied, M., 879  
 Lacey, A.W., 310  
 Lachs, M., 7  
 Laclé, K.T.-D., 1191  
 Lacroix, E., 505  
 Laensar, M., 879  
 La Follette, D., 1548  
 Lafontaine, O., 560  
 Laghi, P., 1574  
 Lagourgue, P., 507  
 Lahure, J., 819  
 Laing, E.A., 207  
 Lake, E.H., 89  
 Lal, B., 636  
 Lal, D., 661  
 Lal Fotedar, M., 636  
 Lam, D.S., 303  
 Lama, J.K., 586  
 Lamana, A., 348  
 Lameko, P., 1592  
 Lamin biti Jabang, A., 523  
 Lamine, M.S.O.M., 856  
 Lamjav, B., 872  
 Lamont, N., 1307  
 Lamontagne, G., 326  
 Landry, A., 310  
 Landry, C., 310  
 Landry, M., 274  
 Lane, G., 329  
 Lang, D.G., 467  
 Lang, G., 985  
 Lang, I., 1307  
 Lang, J., 486  
 Lange, D.R., 917  
 Lange, I., 528  
 Langley, D., 212  
 La Pergola, A., 744  
 Laraki, N.A., 879  
 Lariffa, D., 501  
 Lassou, G., 347  
 Latif, A.H.J.bin A., 242  
 Lattanzio, V., 744  
 Laurel, S., 1003  
 Laustsen, A., 418  
 Lautenschlager, H.W., 545  
 La Vega Domínguez, J. de, 864  
 Lawal, B., 943  
 Lawate, P.S., 894  
 Lawrence, C.M., 162  
 Lawson, N., 1305  
 Lawzi, H.A.al., 1595  
 Lazaro, J., 1562  
 Lazarovski, J., 1609  
 Le Duc Anh, 1584  
 Le Ilénaff, J., 518  
 Le Quang Do, 1584  
 Leary, J.C., 580  
 LeBlanc, G., 318  
 Lee, S., 310  
 Lee Bong-Suh, 781  
 Lee Han-Dong, 781  
 Lee Hong-Ku, 781  
 Lee Hsien Loong, 1076  
 Lee Kim Sai, 832  
 Lee Kuan Yew, 1076  
 Lee Kyu-Song, 781  
 Lee Sang-Hi, 781  
 Lee Sang-Hoon, 781  
 Lee Sang-Hyong, 781  
 Lee Teng-hui, 368  
 Lee Yock Suan, 1076  
 Leefe, J.E., 318  
 Leekpai, C., 1185  
 Legros, A., 507  
 Legwaila, L.J., 227  
 Lehr, U.-M., 537  
 Leifland, L., 1163  
 Lekhanya, J., 803  
 Lenárt, J., 410  
 Lenehan, S.M., 144  
 Lenihan, B., 719  
 Lennox, N.G., 1125  
 Leon, Eduardo, 439  
 Leon, Edwin, 387  
 Leon Alegria, R., 997  
 Leonard, P., 1512  
 Leontieff, A., 516  
 Le Pensec, L., 486  
 Lepping, G., 1083  
 Lester, V.P., 139  
 Letelier, G., 350  
 Leupena, T., 1216  
 Lévesque, G.D., 326  
 Levin, B., 254  
 Levy, D., 734  
 Lewis, D.G., 274  
 Leyes, P.M., 374  
 Li Guixian, 361  
 Li Jong Ok, 785  
 Li Luyé, 366  
 Li Peng, 358  
 Li Ruihan, 358  
 Li Tieying, 358  
 Li Ximing, 358  
 Liang Kim Bang, 841  
 Lichal, R., 170  
 Liebenow, P.K., 550  
 Lien Chan, 369  
 Ligachev, E.K., 1228-9  
 Liikanen, E., 476  
 Lim Keng Yaik, 832  
 Lima M., 338  
 Lindner, G., 532  
 Lindo, D., 204  
 Lindqvist, B., 1150  
 Linehan, T.P., 730  
 Ling Liong Sik, 832  
 Lingama-Toleque, C., 345  
 Lingani, J.-B.B., 251  
 Lini, W.H., 1570  
 Lira, S., 350  
 Lisboa Ramos, A., 338  
 Lisieux Medeiros, V., 231  
 Littleproud, B.G., 139  
 Livi, T., 1592  
 Liyonda, E., 1615  
 Lizano Fait, E., 387  
 Lo, F., 1064  
 Lockyer, J., 310  
 Lodon, S.F., 431  
 Lohani, P.C., 894  
 Lohia, R., 989  
 Lohmeier, D., 562  
 Lohse, E., 543  
 Loiselle, G., 274  
 Lolik, P.L., 1136  
 Lončar, B., 1603  
 Londoño Paredes, J., 374  
 Long, C., 1174  
 Lönnqvist, U., 1150  
 Löow, L., 1150  
 Lopati, K., 1216  
 Lopes, J.L.F., 339  
 López, E., 997  
 López, R.J., 454  
 Lopez Ceron, L., 455  
 Lord, W., 366  
 Lorenz, S., 528  
 Lorenzana, L.M., 1003  
 Löschnak, F., 170  
 Louekoski, M., 476  
 Louw, E., 1100  
 Louwe, E. van der M., 1090  
 Lovansay, S., 795  
 Lowa, P., 985  
 Loy, P., 81  
 Lubbers, R., 902  
 Lubuva, D., 1180  
 Lučan, M., 410  
 Luce, R., 1306  
 Luisi, H., 1569  
 Lujan, M., 1383  
 Lukács, J., 615  
 Lukanov, A., 244  
 Lukman, R., 943  
 Lukoji, M., 1615  
 Lukyanov, A.I., 1228  
 Lundine, S., 1505  
 Lupo, S.E., 588  
 Luqman, A.M., 1595  
 Lutali, A.P., 1557  
 Lutchmeenaraidoo, S., 859  
 Luvsangombo, S., 872  
 Luwum, B.O., 1219  
 Luz, S.M.da, 337  
 Ly, S., 847  
 Lyell, N., 1306  
 Lyman, P.N., 947  
 Lynch, P.G., 381, 825  
 Lyne, S., 567  
 Lyster, M.A., 155  
 Mabus, R., 1484  
 McAlpine, S., 1428  
 Macaraeg, C., 1003  
 McAulliffe, D.P., 982  
 McCallum, S., 1548  
 Maccanico, A., 744  
 McCarthy, L., 1436  
 McCaughey, J.D., 154  
 McComie, V.T., 53  
 McCoy, E., 300  
 McCrae, J.C., 307  
 McCuen, W.J., 1433  
 McCutcheon, A., 155  
 McDermidt, J., 274  
 McDonagh, R., 730  
 Macdonald, D.S., 296  
 MacDonald, J.G., 995  
 Macdonald, M., 179  
 McDougall, B.J., 274  
 McDowell, D.K., 933  
 McGrath, J.W., 314  
 MacGregor, J., 1306  
 Machel, G., 885  
 Macho, C., 1219  
 Machungo, M. da G., 884  
 McInnes, D.P., 318  
 MacInnes, K., 1007  
 MacInnis, G., 324  
 McInnis, T.J., 317  
 MacIsaac, J., 317  
 Mack, D.L., 1294  
 Mackay, E.M., 274  
 Mackay of Clashfern, Lord, 1305  
 McKechnie, P.R., 139  
 McKee, M., 310  
 McKeithen, W.F., 1469



- McKenna, F.J., 310  
Mackenzie Stuart, *Lord*, 43  
McKernan, J., 1471  
MacKernan, P.N., 730  
Mackey, G.W., 176  
McKinley, B., 601  
McKinnon, K., 334  
Mackley, I.W., 67  
McKnight, W.H., 274  
McLean, M., 914  
McLeod, G., 329  
McLeod, L., 321  
McNeil, K., 754  
MacPhail, L.G., 324  
Macrae, J.E.C., 339, 588, 591, 848, 857, 1066  
McVeigh, D.T., 139  
McWherter, N., 1531  
Madfa, H.al., 1291  
Madougou, A., 939  
Madrigal Nieto, R., 387  
Madsen, M., 418  
Mady, A.D., 392  
Madzivhandila, A.M., 1108  
Magrutsch, W.F., 174  
Mahachi, M., 1624  
Mahathir Mohamad, 832  
Mahbubuzzaman, M., 186  
Mahdi, S.al., 1136  
Maher, A., 310  
Mahgoub, M.A., 449  
Mahit, W., 1570  
Mahmood, I., 186  
Mahmood Iskandar ibni Al-Marhum, *Sultan*, 831  
Mahmoud, A.A., 1080  
Mahmoud, A.A.Z.Al., 1031  
Mahmud, S.S., 713  
Mahmud Al-Marhum ibni Al-Marhum, *Sultan*, 831  
Mai Chi Tho, 1584  
Maidou, C., 345  
Maiga, A.F., 939-40  
Major, J., 1306  
Majumdar, S.R., 688  
Makhkamov, K.M., 1286  
Makhulu, W.P.K., 31  
Makki, H.M., 1594  
Makonga, K.K., 1615  
Makramallah, M., 449  
Maksim, *Metropolitan*, 248  
Maktoum bin Rashid al-Maktoum, 1291  
Makuya, C.N., 1109  
Makwetta, J., 1180  
Malabo, S.B., 460  
Malan, M., 1090  
Maleuda, G., 528  
Malherbes, C., 859  
Malietoa Tanumafili, II, 1592  
Malile, R., 69  
Malima, K., 1180  
Mallaby, C., 545  
Mallet, H., 25  
Malmierca Pcoli, I.O., 396  
Malukutilla, P., 1620  
Maman, S., 943  
Mamba, A.V., 1147  
Mamba, G.M., 1145  
Mamba, H.S., 1145  
Mammi, O., 744  
Mancini, R., 321  
Manduca, J.A., 853  
Mănescu, M., 1033-4  
Manfredo, F., 982  
Manga, O.M., 939  
Mangkalarat, C., 1185  
Manglapus, R., 1003  
Mangope, K.L.M., 1105  
Mangwende, W., 1624  
Manigat, L., 598  
Manikufan, H., 845  
Manley, A.L., 1099  
Manley, D., 754  
Manley, M., 754  
Manness, C.S., 307  
Mannino, C., 744  
Mansouri, H.al., 1058  
Mao Kao-kuan, 369  
Mapouka, T., 343  
Mara, K., 470  
Marandi, A.R., 707  
Marboua, T., 343  
March, D.M., 1221  
Marchesano, A., 1566  
Marendici, B., 1603  
Margaret, *Princess*, 1302-3  
Margerie, E. de, 499  
Margot, A., 43  
Margrethe II, *Queen*, 417  
Marikkar, N., 1128  
Marinc, A., 1609  
Mark, D., 943  
Markar, M.A.B., 1128  
Markaryants, V.S., 1270  
Marker, J.K.A., 977  
Marko, R., 69  
Markov, S., 244  
Marković, A., 1601-3  
Marmosudjono, S., 701  
Maróthy, K., 615  
Marouf, T.M., 713  
Marques, A.H.C., 1025  
Márquez de la Plata, A., 350  
Marsh, J.O., 1387  
Marshall, C.R., 917  
Marshall, M.A., 433, 1596  
Marsipal, A., 985  
Mart, M., 43  
Martens, W., 196  
Martin, D.J., 131  
Martin, J.G., 1508  
Martin, S., 274  
Martínez, B., 1447  
Martínez, G.G., 991  
Martínez, V., 92  
Martínez Mendieta, M., 995  
Martínez Ordóñez, R., 606  
Martino, E.A., 991  
Martins, J.O., 1020  
Marulanda, C.A., 374  
Masaliev, A.M., 1288  
Masdit, S., 1185  
Mashat, M.S. Al-, 716  
Masheke, M., 1619  
Mashrqa, M.Z., 1175  
Masire, Q.K.J., 224  
Maslyukov, Y.D., 1228  
Masol, V.A., 1261  
Masood, A., 67  
Masri, T. Al-, 768  
Massa, J., 350  
Massamba, K., 1615  
Masse, M., 274  
Massieu Berlanga, A., 864  
Matheson, J.R., 317  
Mathur, S.C., 682  
Matin, A., 186  
Matjila, A., 890  
Matlock, J.F., 1249  
Matos Proença, J.de, 1025  
Matovu, W.S.K., 1221  
Matsinhe, M. de A., 885  
Matsiona, B.C., 383  
Matsunaga, N., 765  
Mattar, A., 1076  
Mattarella, S., 744  
Matthew, J.A., 128  
Matthews, W.B., 314  
Matturi, S., 1074  
Maud, H.J.H., 406  
Maung Maung Gyi, U, 254  
Maung Maung Khin, 254  
Maurice, E., 505  
Maxwell, C., 329  
Mayanja, A., 1219  
Maycock, A.T., 176  
Mayer, C.J., 274  
Mayes, M.K., 144  
Mayhew, P., 1306  
Maynard, C.A., 434  
Maynard, C.T., 175  
Mays, C., 179  
Maystadt, P., 197  
Mazankowski, D.F., 274  
Mazroui, A.H.al., 1291  
Mazroui, F.al., 1291  
Mbakese, K.B., 1615  
Mbay, R., 829  
Mbaye, K., 6-7  
Mbende, J., 266  
Mbinda, A., 81  
Mbitikon, R., 343  
Mbonimpa, C., 258  
Mebiame, L., 519  
M'Eboutou, M.M., 266  
Medgyessy, P., 615  
Medhri, A.A., 879  
Medina, H., 1566  
Medvedev, V.A., 1228-9  
Meehan, F.J., 532  
Meguid, A.E.A., 448  
Meiklejohn, R., 329  
Mejia Vallejo, O., 374  
Melancia, C., 1026  
Melhuish, M.R., 1628  
Mellick, J., 487  
Mellor, D., 1307  
Melnick, S., 350  
Melo, E.de, 1020  
Mena, J.F., 442  
Mendes, I.de S., 231  
Mendis, W., 1128  
Meneses Fonseca, B., 935  
Mengistu Haile Mariam, 463  
Mensah, N.G., 14  
Mensah, S., 564  
Mensah, T.A., 25  
Menteshashvili, T., 1228  
Merbah, K., 75  
Mercouri, M., 573  
Meridor, D., 734  
Merino Castro, J.T., 350  
Merrithew, G.S., 274  
Messaoudi, Z., 75  
Metherell, T.A., 131  
Meyer, N., 1438  
Meza, R., 457  
Meziane, A., 75  
Michael, C., 303  
Michalek, Z., 1011  
Michel, James (Seychelles), 1067  
Michel, James (US ambassador), 585  
Michiko, *Empress*, 759  
Mickelson, G., 1529  
Middleton, L.J., 784  
Mielke, G., 528  
Miers, D., 577  
Mihali, Q., 69  
Mikidache, A., 380  
Mikulic, B., 1601  
Milea, V., 1034  
Miller, B., 1494  
Miller, M.S., 1476  
Miller, W.D., 1529  
Miller, Z., 1450  
Milligan, K., 324  
Milo, R., 734  
Milombe, S.K., 1615  
Milosević, S., 1609  
Milton, D., 757  
Minko, H., 519  
Miño Guitart, J., 79  
Miodowicz, A., 1011, 1014  
Mirdha, R.N., 636  
Mirghani, A.A.al., 1136  
Mironenko, V.I., 1229  
Mirona, P., 69  
Mitchell, J.F.-A., 1050  
Mitchelson, B.E., 307  
Miteb ibn Abdul Aziz, 1058  
Mitsuzuka, H., 760  
Mittag, G., 528  
Mitterrand, F., 486  
Mkapa, B., 1180  
Mkhonta, W.C., 1145  
Mladenov, P., 244  
Mlabala, M., 826  
Mlynczak, T., 1011  
Mmusi, P.S., 224  
Mnangagwa, E., 1624  
Mobutu Sésé Séko, 1615  
Mochtar, R., 701  
Mock, A., 170  
Mocumbi, P., 885  
Moda'i, Y., 734  
Moerdiono, 701  
Mofford, R., 1431  
Moggie, L., 832  
Mogwe, A.M., 225  
Mohamad Adnan Robert, 831  
Mohamad Said Keruak, 838  
Mohamed, A.S., 449  
Mohamed, M.H., 1128  
Mohamed Rahmat, 832  
Mohammad, M., 832  
Mohammad Jcmuri bin Serjan, 841  
Mohammadai-Reyshahri, M., 707  
Mohan, J., 664  
Mohashin, M., 894

- Mohs Villalta, E., 387  
 Mohtashemi-Pur, A.A., 707  
 Moi, D. T. arap, 773  
 Mokama, M., 225  
 Mokanu, A.A., 1272  
 Mokarrab, A.S. Al-, 1294  
 Molathwa, T.M., 1105  
 Molisa, S., 1570  
 Moll, P., 1590  
 Mölleman, J., 537  
 Molne Armengol, L., 79  
 Molomjants, D., 872  
 Molpus, D., 1484  
 Momis, J., 985  
 Momoh, J.S., 1070  
 Momoh, T., 943  
 Mon Jamaluddin, 835  
 Monday, H.R., 525  
 Monerawela, C., 1133  
 Mongella, G., 1180  
 Moniba, H.F., 806  
 Monjo, J.C., 835  
 Monsod, S., 1003  
 Montanaro, S.A., 991  
 Monteiro, J.O., 885  
 Monteiro, V.F., 589  
 Monteiro Furtado, C., 231  
 Montgomery, G.C., 967  
 Montpezat, J., 516  
 Moody, G.C., 318  
 Mooketsi, P.H., 1105  
 Moon Tae-Joon, 781  
 Moore, J., 1306  
 Moore, M.E., 300  
 Moore, M.K., 917  
 Moore, T.J., 131  
 Mora, L.P., 387  
 Morake, K.P., 225  
 Morales Ehrlich, J.A., 455  
 Morales Lechuga, I., 864  
 Moreira, M.M., 237  
 Moreira Lima, O.J., 231  
 Moreno Iruegas, M. de los A., 864  
 Morgan, A.H., 817  
 Morgan, J.A., 868  
 Morland, M., 257  
 Morris, P., 100  
 Morrison, P., 1307  
 Morrissey, R., 324  
 Mosbacher, R.A., 1383  
 Moscoso, F., 219  
 Moshoeshoe II, King, 803  
 Mosquera Chaux, V., 378  
 Motawiya, B., 985  
 Mothibamele, J.L.T., 224  
 Mothibe, S.G., 1105  
 Motsatsi, K.B.L.M.I., 1105  
 Motzfeldt, J., 429  
 Moulthi, M., 1202  
 Moultrie, J., 179  
 Moumin, A. Al, 381  
 Mound, T.E.J., 870  
 Mounthault, H., 383  
 Moureaux, P., 196  
 Moushoutas, C., 406  
 Moussa, P., 383  
 Moussirou, E., 519  
 Moy, A., 701  
 Moya-Palencia, M., 868  
 Moyle, C.J., 918  
 Mphaphuli, M.M., 1109  
 Mphcephu, P.R., 1108  
 Mpombo, M.wa, 1615  
 M'Seddi, A., 1202  
 Msika, J., 1624  
 Msimba, M., 1615  
 Msuya, C.D., 1180  
 Mswati III, King, 1144-5  
 Mtawali, B.B., 829  
 Mualla, H.al-, 1291  
 Mualla, M.S.al-, 1291  
 Mubako, S., 1624  
 Mubarak, M.H., 448  
 Mubarak bin Mohammed al-Nahyan, 1291  
 Muchemwa, F., 1624  
 Mudenge, S., 1629  
 Mudge, D., 890  
 Mueckenberger, E., 528  
 Mugabe, R.G., 1624  
 Mugica Herzog, E., 1117  
 Muhani, A.A.al-, 1595  
 Mujuru, J., 1624  
 Mujuthaba, A., 844  
 Mukando, J., 1620  
 Mukilbi, I., 1219  
 Mukuna, T., 1615  
 Mulenga, J., 1219  
 Müller, G., 528  
 Müller, M., 528  
 Mullings, S., 754  
 Mulroney, M.B., 273  
 Mumbengegwi, S., 1624  
 Mumford, L.Q., 1424  
 Mundia, N., 1622  
 Munim Shah, A., 186  
 Munro, L., 321  
 Munro, R., 1543  
 Muntasir, O. al-, 811  
 Muntz, G.H., 139  
 Munyaradzi, O., 1624  
 Munyeshyaka, I., 1042  
 Muqbil, M.A., 1595  
 Murakhovsky, V.S., 1228  
 Murański, Z., 1011  
 Murayama, T., 760  
 Murdani, L.B., 701  
 Murerwa, H.M., 1628  
 Murphy, E., 1476  
 Murpratomo, S., 701  
 Murra, P., 69  
 Murray, L., 274  
 Murray, W.S., 592  
 Murray, W.T.J., 131  
 Musa, B.S., 943  
 Musavi-Khamenei, M.H., 707  
 Museveni, Y., 1218-19  
 Mushega, A., 1219  
 Mushobekwa, K.wa K., 1618  
 Musokotwane, K.S.K., 1619  
 Mustafa, Y.A., 448  
 Mustaqi, K., 69  
 Muteka, F.F., 82  
 Mutumbuka, D., 1624  
 Muzenda, S., 1624  
 Mwakikunga, M.M., 826  
 Mwale, H., 1620  
 Mwanamshiku, L., 1619  
 Mwemwenibure, A., 777  
 Mwila, U.G., 1620  
 Mwinyi, N.A.H., 1180  
 Myftiu, M., 69  
 Myo Aung, U., 257  
 Nabavi, B., 707  
 Nabi, M., 75  
 Nagy, S., 618  
 Naif ibn Abdul Aziz, 1058  
 Najlatikau, E., 473  
 Naim, M., 1577  
 Najib Tun Razak, 832  
 Najibullah, S.M., 63  
 Nakajima, H., 18  
 Nako, A., 69  
 Nallet, H., 486  
 Namaliu, R., 985  
 Namdar-Zangeneh, B., 707  
 Namsrai, T., 872  
 Nan, M.O., 856  
 Nantes, D., 318  
 Napsiah Omar, 832  
 Narakobi, B., 985  
 Naranjo, P., 442  
 Naranjo Villalobos, F., 387  
 Narasimha Rao, P.V., 636  
 Narayan, I.J., 470  
 Naruhito, Prince, 759  
 Nasko, M.G., 943  
 Nasr, F.S., 449  
 Nassif, T., 883  
 Nassirou, A., 1191  
 Natapei, E., 1570  
 Navon, Y., 734  
 Navunisaravi, V., 470  
 Nawaz, S.S., 977  
 Nayanar, E.K., 668  
 Nazarbaev, N.A., 1279  
 Nazer, H., 1058  
 Ndal, K.O., 1615  
 Ndamase, T.N., 1107  
 N'Daw, O., 392  
 N'Diayane, M.L.O., 856  
 N'Diaye, A., 847  
 Ndiaye, A.D., 1064  
 N'Diaye, B., 586  
 N'Diaye, B.O.A., 856  
 Ndiaye, N., 1064  
 Ndjapou, J., 343  
 Ndlovu, C., 1624  
 N'Doye, M., 1064  
 Ndremanjary, J.-A., 823  
 Neal, D.M., 139  
 Neher, L., 253  
 Neilson, P., 918  
 Neilson, R., 378  
 Neira, J., 442  
 Neisser, H., 170  
 Nekyon, A., 1219  
 Nelwamondo, C.A., 1108  
 Neme, N., 392  
 Németh, M., 615  
 Nemiche, D.B., 75  
 Nemitsas, T., 402  
 Nemulodi, B.R., 1109  
 Nesengani, E.R.B., 1108  
 Netanyahu, B., 739  
 Netzler, J., 1592  
 Neufeld, H.J., 307  
 Neumann, A., 528  
 New, L., 1366  
 Newell, G.J., 1163  
 Newington, M.J., 237  
 Newman, D., 933  
 Newton, D.G., 716  
 Newton, T., 1306  
 Ng Cheng Kiat, 832  
 Ngango, G., 266  
 Ngarkiyintwari, F., 1040  
 Ngatse, P., 383  
 Ngollo, R.D., 383  
 Ngolo, B.M., 383  
 Ngu, J.N., 266  
 Nguema, T.M.O., 460  
 Nguindo, D., 343  
 Nguyen Co Thach, 1584  
 Nguyen Duc Tam, 1584  
 Nguyen Huu Tho, 1584  
 Nguyen Quyet, 1584  
 Nguyen Thanh Binh, 1584  
 Nguyen Thi Dinh, 1584  
 Nguyen Van Linh, 1584  
 Ng wandu, P., 1180  
 Ni Zhengyu, 7  
 Niami, L.a., 1615  
 Niang, I., 1064  
 Niare, S., 848  
 Nichol, W.E., 1492  
 Niemczyk, J.M., 414  
 Nijpels, E., 902  
 Nikonov, V.P., 1228-9  
 Niles, T.M.T., 296  
 Ninn-Hausen, E., 418  
 Nisbet, B., 911  
 Nishanov, R.N., 1283  
 Nisheoka, T., 760  
 Nissim, M., 734  
 Niwa, H., 760  
 Nixon, P.M., 1031  
 Nixon, R.F., 321  
 Niyazov, S.A., 1281  
 Niyungeko, J., 260  
 Njje, L., 523  
 Njoya, I.M., 266  
 Njuba, S.K., 1219  
 Nkangi, J., 1219  
 Nkau, G.S., 1105  
 Nkomo, John, 1624  
 Nkomo, Joshua, 1624  
 Nkwain, F., 266  
 Nogueira, F., 1020  
 Nogueira Batista, P., 237  
 Nombre, A., 251  
 Noonan, M.J., 719  
 Noordin, J., 239  
 Nor, Y.M., 832  
 Nordberg, I., 1150  
 Nørgaard, C.A., 41  
 Norrback, O., 476  
 Nosiglia, E., 92  
 Noterdaeme, P., 203  
 Noumazalaye, A., 383  
 Noworyta, E., 1017  
 Nsibandze, B.M., 1145  
 Ntagazwa, A., 1180  
 Ntiwane, N.D., 1145  
 Ntoutoume-Emane, J.-F., 520  
 Ntui, O.E., 266  
 Nuaimi, R.A. Al, 1291  
 Numan, Y.S., 1598  
 Núñez Téllez, R., 935  
 Nures, N., 1213  
 Nuri, A.A. al, 790  
 Nurul Hassan, S., 679  
 Nwachukwu, I., 943  
 Nwako, M.P.K., 225  
 Nyagumbo, T., 1624  
 Nyakyi, A.B., 1183

- Nyang'anyi, M., 1180  
 Nyati, M.B., 1615  
 Nyers, R., 615  
 Nzengeya, B.A., 1618  
 Nzisabira, A., 260
- O Guk Ryol, 786  
 O Jin U., 785  
 Oba, A.N., 383  
 Obaidullah Khan, A.Z.M., 190  
 O'Bannon, F., 1459  
 Obasi, G.O.P., 24  
 Obeng, P.V., 564  
 Oberle, F., 274  
 Oberoi, T.S., 693  
 Obimpeh, S.G., 564  
 Obzina, J., 410  
 Ochirbal, I., 875  
 Ochirbat, P., 872  
 Oda, S., 7  
 Odeh, H., 768  
 Odzaga, J.R., 522  
 Ogi, A., 1167  
 Ogouma, S., 208  
 Ogouma, S.J., 211  
 O'Hanlon, R., 719  
 Oien, A., 950  
 O'Keefe, P.L., 414  
 O'Kennedy, M., 719  
 Okongwu, S.C., 943  
 Okonogi, H., 760  
 Okune, J., 1219  
 Okurut, S., 1219  
 Olav V., *King*, 949  
 Olesen, A., 418  
 Oleson, C.L., 307  
 Olhaye, R., 433  
 Oliveira Lima, A.de, 338  
 Oliveira Ramos, T.L.S.de, 338  
 Olivier, A.B., 853  
 Olmert, E., 734  
 Omadhi, L., 1510  
 Onambwe, H., 82  
 Ondrich, F., 410  
 O'Neil, H., 321  
 O'Neill, R.J., 174  
 O'Neill, W.A., 1441  
 Ong Teng Cheong, 1076  
 Ongoiba, I., 847  
 Ongueme, M.N., 460  
 Onko, J., 773  
 Onyonka, Z., 773  
 Opere, M., 943  
 Oprea, G., 1034  
 Oramas-Oliva, O., 400  
 Orchar, D.W., 307  
 Ordenez, S., 1003  
 Oreja, M., 41  
 Orlandić, M., 1603  
 Orman, H., 299  
 O'Rourke, A., 730  
 O'Rourke, M., 719  
 Orr, K., 1492  
 Ortega Saavedra, D., 935  
 Ortega Saavedra, H., 935  
 Ortiz, G., 442  
 Ortiz de Urbina, F.V., 1125  
 Ortiz Ramirez, C., 991  
 Orzechowski, M., 1011  
 Osborne, D.G., 829  
 Osborne, J.A., 876  
 Osman, A.A.R., 448  
 Osman, A.M., 885  
 Osman, A.S., 1087  
 Osseirane, O., 799
- Ossetoumba, J.L.L., 383  
 Osterman, C.E., 300  
 Oswald, J., 38  
 Oteiba, M.S.al., 1291  
 Oteng, G., 225  
 Othily, G., 503  
 Otoo, E.K., 567  
 Ott, H., 532  
 Otter, C.L., 1454  
 Ouattara, Y., 392  
 Ouedraogo, A., 253  
 Ouedraogo, C.O., 251  
 Ouedrogo, Y., 251  
 Oumar, S., 856  
 Oumarou, I., 48  
 Oumarou, M., 939  
 Oumeziane, M., 75  
 Ouologuem, A., 847  
 Ousmane, A.B., 939  
 Ovcharov, S., 244  
 Oveson, W.V., 1536  
 Owais, H.N.al., 1291  
 Owona, J., 266  
 Owon-Nguema, F., 519  
 Oyangen, G., 950  
 Oyono, F.L., 266  
 Özal, T., 1207
- Paasio, P., 476  
 Pacheco, F.A., 387  
 Packwood, C.O., 214  
 Pacoste, C., 1034  
 Pacsai, L., 620  
 Padron, M., 1577  
 Paek Hak Rim, 786  
 Pahadia, J., 657  
 Paihama, K., 81  
 Pairin Kittingan, J., 838  
 Paiz Andrade, R., 581  
 Pak Gil Yon, 789  
 Pak Sung Chul, 785  
 Pakdemerli, E., 1207  
 Pall, A., 1033  
 Pallaev, G., 1286  
 Palm, J.M., 251  
 Palmer, G.W.R., 917  
 Palmer, M., 621  
 Palmer, R.D., 861  
 Panayides, T., 406  
 Pančevski, M., 1603, 1609  
 Panev, I., 244  
 Panguene, A.A., 887  
 Pankov, G., 244  
 Pant, K.C., 636  
 Pant, Y.P., 894  
 Paolillo, F.H., 1569  
 Papageorgiou, P., 402  
 Papandreou, A.G., 573  
 Papoulas, G.D., 577  
 Papoulas, K., 573  
 Paphemelis, S., 573  
 Pardo de Tavera, M., 1003  
 Paré, L., 326  
 Park Sung, 781  
 Parker, D., 303  
 Parker, D.C., 162  
 Parker, J.H., 331  
 Parkinson, C., 1306  
 Parrino, V.B., 744  
 Parris, W.H., 592  
 Parsuraman, A., 859  
 Partridge, D.W., 1074  
 Paşalar, O., 407  
 Pashane, M., 826  
 Pastinen, O., 482  
 Paterson, T.F., 127
- Patiashvili, D.I., 1267  
 Patnaik, J.B., 679  
 Patorski, J., 1011  
 Patt, G., 734  
 Patten, C., 1306  
 Patten, J., 1307  
 Patten, R., 321  
 Patterson, C.J., 754  
 Patterson, D., 331  
 Paul, R., 1381  
 Paula, G.de, 913  
 Paultre, F., 598  
 Pawar, S., 672  
 Paye, J.-C., 35  
 Payne, A.J., 601  
 Paz Essensoro, V., 219  
 Pazzianotto Pinto, A., 231  
 Pe Thein, 254  
 Peach, M., 314  
 Peacocke, G.B.P., 131  
 Pearce, R.J., 162  
 Pearsall, G.A., 149  
 Pedale, P., 81  
 Peethum, S., 861  
 Peixoto de Magalhaes, A.C., 231  
 Pejić, D., 1608  
 Pelaez, E.N., 1007  
 Pelletier, J., 486  
 Pelletreau, R.H., 1205  
 Penalosa, E., 378  
 Peneda, J.S., 1020  
 Pengiran, P.S.R., 242  
 Penner, J., 307  
 Penner, V.D., 339  
 Pep, M., 985  
 Paponis, A., 573  
 Peprah, K., 564  
 Perdomo, R., 454  
 Pereira, A.M., 337  
 Pereira, J., 589  
 Pereira Bastos, J.E.M., 1025  
 Perera, M.F.W., 1128  
 Peres, S., 734  
 Peretz, Y., 734  
 Pérez, C., 219  
 Pérez de Cuéllar, J., 7  
 Pérez Rodríguez, C.A., 1577  
 Perkins, E., 1099  
 Perpieh, R., 1482  
 Perrin, B.K., 406  
 Perry, C., 1074  
 Perry, R., 1047  
 Pesola, H., 476  
 Peters, J., 1052  
 Peters, M.L., 913  
 Peterson, D., 321  
 Petrescu, B., 1034  
 Petricevich, A., 219  
 Petrie, P.C., 203  
 Petrigiani, R., 751  
 Petterson, D., 1183  
 Pllug, G., 546  
 Pham Van Kai, 1585  
 Philip, *Prince, Duke of Edinburgh*, 1302-3  
 Philippe, A., 821  
 Philippou, A., 402  
 Phillips, G., 321  
 Phillips, J.D., 260  
 Phillips, M.A.P., 1302  
 Phiri, W.J., 1622  
 Phomvihane, K., 795  
 Phone Myint, 254  
 Phounsavanh, N., 795
- Pickard, N.E.W., 131  
 Pickering, D., 470  
 Pickering, E.P., 131  
 Pickering, T., 1422  
 Pickering, T.R., 739  
 Pickersgill, R., 754  
 Pierre, S., 823  
 Pipari, A.-L., 476  
 Pike, M.E., 1080  
 Pilgrim, C.S., 595  
 Pillar, W., 1369  
 Pilliod, C.J., 868  
 Pindling, L.O., 175  
 Pinheiro, J.de D., 1020  
 Pinillos Ashton, L., 997  
 Pinkhayan, S., 1185  
 Pinochet, A., 350  
 Pintat Solans, J., 79  
 Pinthro, S., 598  
 Pinto, L., 751  
 Pinto da Costa, M., 1055  
 Pires, P.V.R., 337  
 Pires Gonçalves, L., 231  
 Pitarka, B., 69  
 Pitra, F., 410  
 Plantagenest, M., 510  
 Platt, N., 1007  
 Plazas Alcidi, G., 374  
 Plumb, *Lord*, 42  
 Poati-Souchalat, A., 383  
 Poblete, O., 350  
 Pohjala, T., 476  
 Pol Pot, 261  
 Polansky, S., 249  
 Polson, G., 1217  
 Pomicino, P.C., 744  
 Ponce de León, E.C., 864  
 Pondi, V.P.-T., 268  
 Pongpanit, M., 1185  
 Pons, J.J., 442  
 Poos, J.F., 819  
 Pope, N., 155  
 Poperen, J., 486  
 Popivanov, R., 244  
 Pora, P., 985  
 Porebski, T., 1011  
 Portillo, M., 1307  
 Portos, A., 823  
 Posser da Costa, 1055  
 Postelnicu, T., 1034  
 Pottakis, Y., 573  
 Pougui, A.-E., 383  
 Power, C., 314  
 Pozsgay, I., 615  
 Pradhan, B.B., 894  
 Pradhan, R.D., 655  
 Prado, J., 350  
 Prandini, G., 744  
 Prasad, S., 681  
 Prasasvinitchai, S., 1189  
 Prasertsuwan, B., 1185  
 Prashad, S., 592  
 Prashit, T., 264  
 Pravesh Chandra, J., 696  
 Prawiro, R., 701  
 Premadasa, R., 1128  
 Fresno, J., 1566  
 Pretorius, J.W.F., 890  
 Pringle, F., 754  
 Prioteasa, P., 1034  
 Prisco Viana, L.H., 231  
 Pritchard, J., 1543  
 Produje, M.A., 350  
 Proto, F., 501  
 Protopapas, N., 402  
 Psimhis, J.-L., 343



- Puapua, T., 1216  
 Pugh, R.L., 857  
 Pugo, B.K., 1229  
 Puhakka, M., 476  
 Puig de la Bellacasa, J.J., 1125  
 Pullen, B.T., 155  
 Punabantu, J.C.M., 1620  
 Puolanne, U., 476  
 Putra ibni Al-Marhum, *Raja*, 831  
  
 Qaboos bin Said, *Sultan*, 963  
 Qadhafi, M., 810-11  
 Qarazi, M., 707  
 Qasimi, A.A.al-, 1291  
 Qasimi, A.bin S.al-, 1291  
 Qian Qichen, 358  
 Qiao Shi, 358  
 Qin Jiwei, 358  
 Quale, H., 1570  
 Quayle, D., 1383  
 Quianoo, A., 564  
 Quilès, P., 486  
 Quinn, R.S., 1471  
 Quisumbing, L., 1003  
  
 Rabah, S., 1202  
 Rabaua, U., 777  
 Rabesahala, G., 823  
 Rabetafika, B., 825  
 Rabin, Y., 734  
 Rabotoson, F. de P., 825  
 Rabuka, S., 470  
 Rabuma, W.R., 1109  
 Račan, I., 1603  
 Rachid, K.H.O., 880  
 Rada, G., 1577  
 Radembo-Coniquet, R., 519  
 Radi, E.A.H., 448  
 Rădulescu, G., 1033-4  
 Rae, P.E., 149  
 Rafidah Aziz, 832  
 Rafini, B., 939  
 Rafiq-Dust, M., 707  
 Rageh, A.A., 1600  
 Raghbani, S.al-, 1291  
 Rahman, M., 186  
 Rainford, R., 56  
 Rainier III, *Prince*, 869  
 Rajadurai, C., 1128  
 Rajaie-Khorassani, S., 711  
 Rajaobelina, L.M., 825  
 Rajeshwar, T.B., 691  
 Rakoto, I., 823  
 Rakotomavo, J., 823  
 Rakotomavo, P., 823  
 Rakowski, M., 1010-11  
 Rama Rao, N.J., 653  
 Ramabulana, G.M., 1109  
 Ramadan, T.Y., 713  
 Ramahatra, V., 823  
 Rambuda, J.R., 1108  
 Ramirez Mercado, S., 935  
 Ramjuttun, D., 859  
 Ramly, A.R., 705  
 Ramos, F., 1003  
 Ramos da Cruz, D., 82  
 Ramphal, S.S., 30  
 Ramsay, A.J., 802  
 Ramsay, D., 321  
  
 Ramtallie, O.D., 754  
 Rana, J.P., 897  
 Rana, P., 894  
 Ranasinghe, S., 1128  
 Randall, J.H., 139  
 Randrianasolo, J., 823  
 Rane, P., 659  
 Rangel, D.das C.S., 81  
 Ranneberger, M.E., 887  
 Rantanen, J., 476  
 Rasgotra, S.M., 651  
 Rashid bin Ahmed al-Mualla, *Sheikh*, 1290  
 Rashid bin Said al-Maktoum, *Sheikh*, 1290-1  
 Rassi, A.al-, 799  
 Rathebe, S.L.L., 1105  
 Ratsiraka, D., 822-3  
 Rattakul, B., 1185  
 Rattanakoses, M., 1185  
 Rattray, C., 754  
 Rau, J., 556  
 Rauchfuss, W., 528  
 Rausch, J.-M., 487  
 Ravele, F.N., 1108  
 Raveloson-Mahasampo, C.B., 823  
 Rawiri, G., 519  
 Rawlings, J.J., 563-4  
 Rawlings, J.W., 1629  
 Ray, R., 100  
 Rayes, G.M.A. Al-, 793  
 Razafindramisa, A., 823  
 Razumovsky, G.P., 1228-9  
 Razzaz, M.A. el, 449  
 Read, J.B., 162  
 Reddy, K.B., 672  
 Redston, C.F., 467  
 Redway, A., 274  
 Ree, A., 303  
 Reedijk, C., 910  
 Reeve, A., 771  
 Reeves, P., 917  
 Regenvanu, S., 1570  
 Rego, H.N.do, 231  
 Reich, O.J., 1581  
 Reichelt, H., 528  
 Reid, B., 303  
 Reid, I., 300  
 Reid Cabral, D.J., 437  
 Reisch, G., 47  
 Reith, M., 268, 345, 461  
 Rekunkov, A.M., 1246  
 Rela Mazula, A., 885  
 Rembisz, G., 1011  
 Rémillard, G., 326  
 René, F.A., 1067  
 Renton, T., 1307  
 Renwick, R., 1099  
 Rerngrasertvit, P., 1185  
 Reta, A., 1566  
 Revollo, A., 219  
 Rex, R.R., 932  
 Reyes, E.D., 1554  
 Reyes, R., 1003  
 Reyes Portocarrero, R., 935  
 Reynolds, A., 719  
 Rezende Machado, I., 231  
 Riberaygua Miquel, B., 79  
 Rich, R.G., 207  
  
 Richard, *Prince, Duke of Gloucester*, 1302  
 Richardson, G., 100  
 Richmond, C., 303  
 Ridthofen, H. von, 545  
 Riddell, J., 321  
 Rideout, T.G., 314  
 Ridley, N., 1305  
 Ridy, A.R. El-, 453  
 Riegler, J., 170  
 Rickert, H.F.P., 1105  
 Riesenhuber, H., 537  
 Rifai, M. as S. al, 790  
 Rifai, Z., 768  
 Rifkind, M., 1306  
 Ringadoo, V., 859  
 Riutel, A.F., 1273  
 Rivas Davila, C., 997  
 Rivas-Gallont, E., 457  
 Riviello Bazan, A., 864  
 Robati, P., 931  
 Roberts, B., 1518  
 Roberts, W., 1307  
 Robertson, P., 754  
 Robinson, A.N.R., 1198  
 Robleh, M.B., 431  
 Robson, J.A., 962  
 Rocard, M., 486  
 Rodger, A., 1306  
 Rodger, S.J., 918  
 Rodgers, P., 179  
 Rodrigues, M.A., 82  
 Rodrigues Branco, A.J.L., 885  
 Rodriguez, A., 991  
 Rodriguez Campos, O., 997  
 Roemer, C.E. (Buddy), 1469  
 Roh Tae-Woo, 781  
 Rohrmoser Valdeavellano, R., 584  
 Rolle, D.E., 175-6  
 Romer, R., 1438  
 Römer, R.A., 913  
 Romero Barceló, C., 1560  
 Romero Herrero, C., 1117  
 Ronbeck, S., 950  
 Roper, T.W., 155  
 Roqani-Zanjani, M., 707  
 Rosales-Rivera, M., 457  
 Rosario Vaz, F.E. do, 885  
 Rosas Vega, G., 374  
 Rosende, H., 350  
 Rossell Dolcet, R., 79  
 Rostad, K., 300  
 Röttsch, H., 533  
 Rougih, M., 75  
 Rouis, B., 75  
 Roumeliotis, P., 573  
 Rumi, K.M.al-, 1291  
 Rousseau, P., 329  
 Roussety, M.F., 859  
 Rowell, E.M., 223  
 Roy, J.-L., 326  
 Rozić, M., 1603  
 Ruanganchanasas, C., 1185  
 Rubale, T., 1219  
 Ruben, Y.Y., 1275  
 Ruberti, A., 744  
 Ruchupan, M., 1185  
 Ruda, J.M., 6-7  
  
 Ruddy, F.S., 461  
 Ruding, O., 902  
 Rudini, 701  
 Ruffolo, G., 744  
 Ruggiero, R., 744  
 Rugh, W.A., 1596  
 Rugunda, R., 1219  
 Ruhfus, J., 545  
 Ruiz Hernández, H., 935  
 Rumbold, A., 1307  
 Ruphin, G., 823  
 Russell, D.J., 299  
 Russell, J., 314  
 Russell, R.S., 318  
 Russo, P.A., 193  
 Rustam, S., 701  
 Ruwe, L.N., 629  
 Rwegasira, J., 1180  
 Ryan, C., 326  
 Ryan, G., 1457  
 Ryan, M., 1147  
 Ryan, R.J., 848  
 Ryan, S., 100  
 Ryan, S.L., 143  
 Ryrie, W., 22  
 Rysstad, R., 41  
 Ryzhkov, N.I., 1228  
  
 Saadi, S., 75  
 Sabah, as-, family, 790-1  
 Sabah, S.N. Al-, 793  
 Sabally, S., 523  
 Sábato, J., 92  
 Sabbagh, S.A.W.Al, 184  
 Sabharuddin Chik, 832  
 Sabhavasu, P., 1185  
 Sabo, A., 939  
 Saboia, H., 231  
 Sadia, D., 392  
 Sadik, N., 10  
 Sadowski, Z., 1011  
 Saemala, F.J., 1084  
 Sáez de Cosculluela, J., 1117  
 Safiullah, K.H., 190  
 Sagna, F.I., 1064  
 Sagna, R., 1064  
 Sahnoun, M., 78  
 Saho, L., 523  
 Saibou, A., 939  
 Said, S.F.Bin-M.al-, 964  
 Said, S.F.Bin-T.al-, 964  
 Said, S.T.Bin-S.al-, 964  
 Saidi, M.Bin-A.al B., 964  
 Saidou, A., 939  
 Saikia, H., 676  
 Sailele, T., 1592  
 Saint-Pierre, A., 598  
 Sajadah, V., 859  
 Sakalauskas, V.V., 1277  
 Sakano, S., 760  
 Sakuhuka, R., 1620  
 Salah, A., 771  
 Salahuddin Shah ibni Al-Marhum, *Sultan*, 831  
 Salami, A.S.as-, 1595  
 Salami, S.S., 1598  
 Saleh, A.A., 1594, 1597  
 Saleh, A.A.H., 449  
 Saleh, I., 701  
 Salim, E., 701  
 Salim, S.A., 1180  
 Salimov, A., 1283  
 Salle, M., 343  
 Salolainen, P., 476

- Salomao, J., 885  
 Samassekou, N., 848  
 Samater, M.A., 1085  
 Samayoa, J.A., 454  
 Sambat, A., 520  
 Samman, Q.A. bin A. as-, 1594  
 Samojlik, B., 1011  
 Sampegbo, S., 251  
 Samy-Mackfoy, P., 343  
 Sánchez de Lozada, G., 219  
 Sanda, O., 266  
 Sanders, J.R., 1535  
 Sanderson of Bowden, Lord, 1307  
 Sandiford, E., 191  
 Sangma, P.A., 675  
 Sanguinetta, M.J., 1566  
 Sanguinetti, J., 1566  
 Sanogo, B., 251  
 Sansa René, M., 79  
 Santamaria, J., 1125  
 Santer, J., 819  
 Santos, J.E. dos, 81  
 Santos, Manuel dos (Guinea-Bissau), 589  
 Santos, Manuel dos (Mozambique), 887  
 Santuz, G., 744  
 Saqr bin Mohammed al-Qasimi, *Sheikh*, 1290  
 Sarah, *Duchess of York*, 1302  
 Sarasin, P., 1185  
 Sarhadizadeh, A.Q., 707  
 Sárlos, I., 615  
 Sarney, J., 231  
 Sarpong, N.A., 564  
 Sarré, M., 1066  
 Sartetakis, C., 573  
 Sarwar, A., 67  
 Sasamura, Y., 25  
 Sassou-Nguesso, D., 382-3  
 Sathe, V., 636  
 Sato, S., 760  
 Saud al Faisal, 1058  
 Saul, B.E., 1273  
 Saunders, D., 757  
 Sauvé, J., 273  
 Savage, J., 303  
 Savetsila, S., 1185  
 Saw Maung, 254  
 Sayyed-Kia, M., 707  
 Scanlan, J.D., 1608  
 Schabowski, G., 528  
 Schaefer, G., 1505  
 Schaefer, W.D., 1474  
 Schaubel, W., 537  
 Scheleske Sanchez, M., 864  
 Schipp, J.J., 131  
 Schlechter, M., 819  
 Schlitz, H., 197  
 Schluter, P., 418  
 Schmidt, G., 329  
 Schnabel, R.A., 482  
 Schneider, O., 537  
 Scholz, R., 537  
 Schulze, R., 528  
 Schuppius, E.-K., 1193  
 Schürer, G., 528  
 Schwarz-Schilling, C., 537  
 Schwebel, S., 7  
 Schwitzgebel, H., 555  
 Scoon, P., 578  
 Scott, A.J., 340  
 Scott, I.G., 321  
 Scott, N., 1307  
 Scowen, R., 326  
 Sebe, L., 1110  
 Sebebo, R.K., 225  
 Secchia, P., 751  
 Sedgho, L., 251  
 Segesvary, L., 817  
 Sehoulia, D., 343  
 Sehume, K.C.V.A., 1105  
 Seidow, G.N., 1265  
 Seignoret, C.A., 434  
 Sein Aung, 254  
 Sekitoleko, J., 1219  
 Seluka, L., 1216  
 Sembler, M., 119  
 Semedo, J., 589  
 Semlali, A., 879  
 Semprún, J., 1117  
 Seodi, S.M., 1105  
 Sepúlveda, B., 1025  
 Séraphin, J.-J., 823  
 Serour, A.F., 449  
 Serra i Serra, N., 1117  
 Serra Puche, J., 864  
 Setches, K.P., 155  
 Sey, A.O., 523  
 Seybou, A., 939  
 Shaali, M.H. Al-, 1294  
 Shabalala, E.S., 1145  
 Shaben, L.R., 299  
 Shad, J.S., 909  
 Shaer, A. ibn H.al-, 1058  
 Shafei, Q.R., 707  
 Shagaya, J., 943  
 Shahabuddeen, M., 7, 592  
 Shahal, M., 734  
 Shaikh, A.R. ibn A.A. ibn H.al, 1058  
 Shaikh, I. ibn M. ibn I.al, 1058  
 Shaikhly, S. Al-, 716  
 Shaka, A. R. Al, 768  
 Shakar, K.E. Al-, 184  
 Shaker, M.I., 453  
 Shakespeare, F., 1574  
 Shakespeare, J.W.R., 883  
 Shalayev, S.A., 1241  
 Shamir, Y., 734  
 Shamuyarira, N., 1624  
 Shanfari, A.B. Al-, 967  
 Shankar, R., 1140  
 Shankar Ray, S., 681  
 Shankaranand, B., 636  
 Sharkey, C.J., 223  
 Sharma, S.D., 635  
 Sharman, R.C., 168  
 Sharon, A., 734  
 Sharq, M.H., 63  
 Shcherbitsky, V.V., 1228, 1261  
 Sheikh, D.O., 856  
 Shekri, A., 943  
 Shepherd, J.A., 184  
 Sherif, M.S. el, 448  
 Sherman, E., 473  
 Shevardnadze, E.A., 1228  
 Shevchenko, V.S., 1261  
 Shields, M.K., 918  
 Shih Chi-yang, 369  
 Shihabi, S., 1062  
 Shipanga, A., 890  
 Shirawi, Y.A. Al-, 181  
 Shiv Shankar, P., 636  
 Shlaudemán, H.W., 273  
 Shongwe, S., 1145  
 Shrestha, D.B., 894  
 Shrestha, M.M.S., 894  
 Shubert, J., 1507  
 Shumway, J., 1431  
 Shurtleff, L.G., 385  
 Sibghatullah, M., 63  
 Siddiky, B.A., 190  
 Siddon, T.E., 274  
 Sidhu, S.S., 22  
 Sidi Mohammed, *Prince*, 879  
 Sidibe, B., 586  
 Sidki, A.T.M., 448  
 Siebert, B., 350  
 Sigfússon, S.J., 624  
 Sigulogo, G., 985  
 Sigurdottir, J., 624  
 Sigurðsson, J., 624  
 Sihanouk, *Prince*, 261  
 Silpaarcha, B., 1185  
 Silva, A. da, 589  
 Silva, A.H. da, 81  
 Silva, J.P., 338  
 Silva, O.L. da, 337  
 Silva Rocha, A., 338  
 Silveira, L.H. da, 231  
 Silveira Godinho, J., 1020  
 Silvia, *Queen*, 1149  
 Simha, B.K., 896  
 Simmonds, K., 1043  
 Simmons, K., 191  
 Simms, L.A., 314  
 Simonsen, P., 418  
 Simpson, P., 754  
 Simpson-Orlebar, M.K.O., 1025  
 Sindermann, H., 528  
 Singel, M.S., 1522  
 Singh, B., 636  
 Singh, B.N., 656-7  
 Singh, D., 636  
 Singh, G., 659, 694  
 Singh, N., 7  
 Singleton, M., 131  
 Sinner, G.A., 1510  
 Sinon, R., 1067  
 Sione, S., 1592  
 Siphandon, K., 795  
 Sipraseuth, P., 795  
 Siraj, H.B., 431  
 Siregar, A., 701  
 Sirikit, *Queen*, 1184  
 Srisumpan, T., 1185  
 Sisay, S., 523  
 Siwicki, F., 1011  
 Sizov, G.F., 1229  
 Sjadzali, H.M., 701  
 Skaff, J., 799  
 Skancke, G., 962  
 Skinner, S.K., 1383  
 Skipping, O., 1214  
 Slaoui, D., 883  
 Slyunkov, N.N., 1228-9  
 Small, D.P., 596, 1143  
 Small, H., 754  
 Small, L., 1052  
 Smalley, R.M., 805  
 Smaoui, A., 1202  
 Smart, P., 1069  
 Smili, B., 879  
 Smit-Kroes, N., 902  
 Smith, B., 227  
 Smith, Bruce, 310  
 Smith, Bud, 303  
 Smith, D.M., 318  
 Smith, Jim, 1447  
 Smith, Joan, 321  
 Smith, M., 719  
 Smith, P., 329  
 Smith, R.B.R., 131  
 Smith, V., 193  
 Smits, C., 913  
 So Chol, 785  
 So Yun Sok, 786  
 Soare, S., 1039  
 Soares, J.C.B., 53  
 Soares, M., 1020  
 Sobhi, M.I., 23  
 Sodnom, D., 872  
 Sodre, R.C. de A., 231  
 Soebadio, H., 701  
 Soisson, J.-P., 486  
 Sokolov, E.E., 1263  
 Solana Madariaga, J., 1117  
 Solana Morales, F., 864  
 Solanki, M.S., 636  
 Solchaga Catalán, C., 1117  
 Solé-Romeo, L.A., 1569  
 Soliman, S.M., 448  
 Solís Fallas, O., 387  
 Solís Palma, M., 979  
 Solle, H., 528  
 Solofoson, G., 823  
 Solov'ev, Y.F., 1228  
 Somare, M., 985  
 Sommer, P.R., 853  
 Somvorachit, D., 797  
 Song Ping, 358  
 Sonko, A., 1064  
 Sonko, L.J., 523  
 Sophia, *Queen*, 1116  
 Sorbara, G., 321  
 Soria Diaz, J., 997  
 Sotirhos, M.G., 757  
 Souna, A., 939  
 Sourrouille, J., 92  
 Souza e Silva, C.A. de, 237  
 Souza Pinto, P.D. de, 231  
 Sow, O., 586  
 Spain, J., 1133  
 Spang, P., 821  
 Sparrow, D., 299  
 Späth, L., 546  
 Spautz, J., 819  
 Spiljak, M., 1609  
 Sprague, D.K., 875  
 Spreckley, J.N.T., 835  
 Springer, H., 191  
 Spyker, P.C., 155  
 Srivastava, C.P., 25  
 Ssali, J.B., 1219  
 Ssemwogerere, K., 1219  
 Stack, K., 985  
 Stadler, W.E., 211  
 Stahl, J., 1502  
 Stange, R., 350  
 Stanislaus, L.A., 580  
 Staples, H.A.J., 482  
 Staples, P., 100  
 Star, T.W., 893  
 Stathatos, S.G., 577  
 Stefani, S., 69  
 Steichen, R., 819  
 Stejskal, J., 410  
 Stellini, S.J., 853  
 Stepan, M., 410  
 Stephens, S., 1489  
 Stepien, Z., 1011

- Sterba, J., 410  
 Stevens, G., 300  
 Stewart, I., 1307  
 Steyn, D.W., 1090  
 Stich, O., 1167  
 Stimson, R.F., 1046  
 Stirn, O., 487  
 Stoianov, D., 244  
 Stoichici, I., 1039  
 Stoichkov, G., 244  
 Stojčević, S., 1609  
 Stoltenberg, G., 537  
 Stoltenberg, T., 950  
 Stoph, W., 528  
 Storani, C., 92  
 Stout, H.L., 1589  
 Strachan, B., 303  
 Straub, B., 615  
 Strausz-Hupé, R., 1213  
 Streach, K., 317  
 Strebl, M., 174  
 Streeton, T.G., 190  
 Streibl, M., 548  
 Streicher, R., 170  
 Strezov, A., 249  
 Stroessner, A., 991  
 Stuart, C.M., 127  
 Stuart, R.D., 962  
 Subroto, 58  
 Subulwa, L.S., 1620  
 Suckling, R., 985  
 Sudarman, S., 701  
 Suddarth, R.S., 771  
 Sudharmono, 701  
 Sudomo, 701  
 Sugiarto, 701  
 Suharto, R., 699, 701  
 Suhartoyo, S., 705  
 Sulaim, S.A.A., 1058  
 Sulaiman, K.M., 1294  
 Sulaiman, A.Z., bin H., 239  
 Sullivan, L.W., 1383  
 Sullivan, M., 1551  
 Sultan, F.A.L., 448  
 Sultan bin Mohammed al-Qasimi, *Sheikh*, 1290  
 Sultan ibn Abdul Aziz, 1057  
 Sumarlin, J.B., 701  
 Summner, C.J., 144  
 Suominen, I., 476  
 Süßmuth, R., 537  
 Sutherland, V.E., 253, 394, 941  
 Sutresna, N., 705  
 Sutrisno, T., 701  
 Suvar, S., 1603  
 Swan, H., 329  
 Swan, J.W.D., 212  
 Sweeney, J., 321  
 Swokin, K., 985  
 Sy, D.L., 847  
 Sy, M., 1064  
 Sy, S.M., 1064  
 Sy, S.O., 1064  
 Sychev, V.V., 49  
 Sylla, O., 586  
 Sylvestre, J.G., 297  
 Syrimis, G., 402  
 Szabo, I., 615  
 Szalajda, Z., 1011  
 Szelachowski, T., 1011  
 Tabai, I., 777  
 Tabakucord, F., 470  
 Tabba'a, H., 768  
 Tabone, A., 850  
 Tabone, C., 850  
 Taib, A.R., 239  
 Tait, M.L., 1294  
 Taitt, B., 191  
 Tajad-Din, A.H., 1136  
 Takabwebwe, M., 777  
 Takatsuji, M., 760  
 Takeshita, N., 760  
 Talalla, A.S., 835  
 Talbot, S.R., 32  
 Talhi, J.A. al-, 811  
 Talyzin, N.V., 1228  
 Tamariz, D., 442  
 Tamou, O., 379-80  
 Tan Keng Yam, T., 1076  
 Tanasie, P., 1039  
 Tanchev, P., 244  
 Tandjung, A., 701  
 Tanev, G., 244  
 Tankeu, E., 266  
 Tapsell, P., 918  
 Tarasov, N.K., 7  
 Tarawneh, F., 768  
 Tarazevich, G.S., 1263  
 Tarigo, E., 1566  
 Tariq Khan, A., 970  
 Tasca, C., 487  
 Tashjian, J., 1441  
 Tatai, I., 615  
 Tati-Loutard, J.-B., 383  
 Tatljev, S.B., 1265  
 Taufa'ahau Tupou IV, *King*, 1195  
 Tavaia, J., 470  
 Taveras-Guzman, J.A., 440  
 Tawiah, E., 564  
 Taxell, C., 476  
 Taya, M.O.S.M., 855  
 Tayer, A.H.al-, 1291  
 Taylor, D.G.P., 467  
 Taylor, H., 175  
 Taylor, I.F., 162  
 Tchepanov, C., 266  
 Tchioba, E.-G.M., 519  
 Tealof, S.M., 1216  
 Teannaki, T., 777  
 Teceloc, B., 861  
 Teferra Haile-Selassie, A., 466  
 Teixeira, A.L., 81  
 Teixeira de Matos, A., 81  
 Tejera, E., 1577  
 Téllez Argello, D.M., 935  
 Temo, A., 985  
 Tenglen Ahmad Rithandeen, 832  
 Tenni, M.J., 139  
 Terchilov, V.I., 1245  
 Terry, P., 568  
 Tevasa, T., 1216  
 Tewary, T.T.P., 697  
 Thai, A.H., 885  
 Thalen, I., 1150  
 Thapa, S., 894  
 Thatcher, M., 1305  
 Thelsuma, L., 598  
 Theobald, H.R., 1551  
 Theodore, N.A., 1527  
 Thiam, A., 392  
 Thiam, H., 1064  
 Thinley, D.J., 217  
 Thomai, T., 69  
 Thomas, D., 751  
 Thomas, J.A.E., 88  
 Thomas, R., 249  
 Thompson, Charles, 779  
 Thompson, Curl, 204  
 Thompson, J., 1572  
 Thompson, J.R., 1457  
 Thompson, T.G., 1548  
 Thompson, W., 473  
 Thomson, P.A.B., 207  
 Thondaman, S., 1128  
 Thornburgh, R., 1383  
 Tian Jiyun, 358  
 Tickell, C., 1356  
 Tiendrebeogo, A., 251  
 Tillett, K.E., 207  
 Timataka, F., 1570  
 Tin Tun, 254  
 Tindemans, L., 197  
 Tisch, H., 528  
 Titiz, M.T., 1207  
 Tiwari, N.D., 689  
 Tizard, R.J., 918  
 Tlhabane, T.M., 1105  
 Tlou, H.F., 1105  
 Tobback, L., 197  
 Tobin, G., 314  
 Todman, T.A., 430  
 Todorov, S., 244  
 Toernaes, L., 418  
 Tofani, H., 587  
 Toganivalu, W., 470  
 Tognoli, C., 744  
 Tolentino, A.C., 337  
 Toma, M.I., 1593  
 Tomasek, F., 414  
 Tomes, V.A., 1399  
 Tonelli, I., 92  
 Tonha, P.M., 81  
 Tonkin, D., 797, 1189  
 Topaç, M., 1207  
 Tora, A., 470  
 Törnudd, K., 482  
 Totok, W., 556  
 Totu, I., 1034  
 Toukan, F., 768  
 Tounkara, T., 939  
 Toure, F., 587  
 Toure, M., 1064  
 Touré, M.A., 847  
 Towell, T., 991  
 Tra, A.V.B., 392  
 Trail, G., 829  
 Tran Hoan, 1585  
 Tran Van Hung, 1588  
 Tran Xuan Bach, 1584  
 Traore, B., 847  
 Traoré, J., 586  
 Traore, Mohamed, 588  
 Traore, Moussa, 58, 847  
 Trautmann, R., 615  
 Trefgarne, *Lord*, 1307  
 Treiki, A., 814  
 Trezise, N.B., 155  
 Trites, P., 310  
 Tritsis, A., 573  
 Trivedi, K., 660  
 Tromp, F.B., 911  
 Troy, G.J., 162  
 Trucco, P., 92  
 Tsaranazy, J.E., 823  
 Tshipinare, M.R., 225  
 Tshivhase, A.A., 1109  
 Tsiba, F., 383  
 Tsikata, T., 564  
 Tsochatzopoulos, A., 573  
 Tsovolas, D., 573  
 Tsur, Y., 734  
 Tudor, J., 191  
 Tuita, *Baron*, 1195  
 Tull, J.L., 390  
 Tull, T.A., 596  
 Tumwine, S., 1219  
 Tunnermann, C., 938  
 Tupouto'a, *Prince*, 1195  
 Tuppy, H., 170  
 Tupurkovski, V., 1603  
 Turabi, H.al-, 1136  
 Turé, B., 591  
 Turgeon, S.G., 1432  
 Turner, C.J., 876  
 Tutu, A., 81  
 Twomey, H.M., 314  
 Ugarte, R., 1566  
 Ugarte Centurion, D., 991  
 Ulufi, M.M.al-, 1595  
 Umar, A., 943  
 Umar, A.A., 239  
 Ungur, I., 1034  
 Uno, S., 760  
 Untumbe, N.U.O., 1615  
 Upadhyaya, S.K., 894  
 Upston, J.E., 1042  
 Urbain, R., 197  
 Urban, B., 410  
 Urban, J., 1011  
 Urbanek, K., 410  
 Ure, J., 1163  
 Urwick, A., 296  
 Usman Arif, M., 689  
 Utchanah, M., 859  
 Uthman, D.A. al, 790  
 Uwimana, A., 1042  
 Václavik, M., 410  
 Vagris, J.J., 1275  
 Vaiao, L., 1592  
 Vajiralongkorn, *Prince*, 1184  
 Vakatora, T., 470  
 Valas, V.J., 1273  
 Valcourt, B., 274  
 Valdés Abascal, R., 864  
 Valdez, B., 455  
 Valencia-Ospina, E., 7  
 Valente de Oliveira, L., 1020  
 Valenzuela, M., 935  
 Valenzuela, S., 350  
 Vallejo Arco, A., 442  
 Valtasaari, J., 482  
 Valvis, P., 573  
 Van Bellinghen, J.-P., 203  
 Van den Brande, L., 197  
 Van der Biest, A., 197  
 Van der Merwe, C.J., 1090  
 Van Nickerk, W.A., 1090  
 Van Tonder, W.T., 805  
 Van-Dünem, A., 81  
 Van-Dünem, F.J.F., 81  
 Van-Dünem, P.de C., 81  
 Vander Zalm, W.N., 303  
 Vanderveken, J., 33  
 Vant, N., 303  
 Varcoc, J., 1087  
 Varela, P., 997  
 Várkonyi, P., 615  
 Vasconcellos Franca, A., 338  
 Vázquez Nava, M.E., 864  
 Vassalli, G., 743



- Vassiliou, G., 401-2  
 Vega, G., 983  
 Veitata, T., 470  
 Veitch, E., 303  
 Vejijava, V., 1189  
 Velásquez-Díaz, M., 605  
 Velayati, A.A., 707  
 Velichkov, V., 249  
 Vellu, S.S., 832  
 Veloso, Jacinto, 885  
 Veloso, Jorge, 350  
 Vengal Rao, J., 635  
 Veniamin, C., 402  
 Venkataraman, R., 635  
 Venkatasubiah, P., 666  
 Vennamo, P., 476  
 Vera Arrata, A., 442  
 Verduga, C., 442  
 Verge, L., 314  
 Verma, R.K., 694  
 Vezina, M., 274  
 Vezirov, A.-R.K., 1265  
 Victoria, *Princess*, 1149  
 Vides Casanova, C.E., 454  
 Vieira, H., 338  
 Vieira, J.B., 589  
 Vig Jensen, O., 418  
 Vigil Icaza, M.E., 935  
 Vigil-Giron, R., 1502  
 Viljoen, G., 1090  
 Villagran DeLeon, F., 585  
 Villalobos, J., 219  
 Villanueva del Campo, A., 997  
 Villanyi, M., 615  
 Villar, J., 1566  
 Villiger, K., 1167  
 Vincent Perera, M., 1128  
 Vinde, P., 35  
 Vines, E., 1569  
 Vinogradov, V.M., 1251  
 Vlasov, A.V., 1228, 1251  
 Vlok, A., 1090  
 Vo Chi Cong, 1584  
 Vo Nguyen Giap, 1585  
 Vo Van Kiet, 1584  
 Vocouma, P., 251  
 Vogue, B., 985  
 Vongkhamso, S., 795  
 Vongsay, K., 797  
 Vongvichit, P., 795  
 Vora, M.L., 670  
 Vorotnikov, V.I., 1228, 1251  
 Vos, W., 911  
 Voscherau, H., 552  
 Voskanyan, G.M., 1270  
 Vraalsen, T.E., 962  
 Vranitzky, F., 170  
 Vunibobo, B., 470  
 Vuralhan, E., 1207  
 Vurobaravu, N., 1572  
 Wachtmeister, W.H.F., 1163  
 Waddington, D., 1306  
 Wagner, C., 204  
 Wagner, C.-L., 558  
 Wagner, J., 820  
 Wahhab, M.M.A., 448  
 Waihee, J., 1452  
 Waim, J., 985  
 Wajih, A.K.al., 1594  
 Wakeham, J., 1306  
 Wakil, I.A., 1180  
 Walde, W., 528  
 Waldegrave, W., 1306  
 Waldeheim, K., 170  
 Wafesa, L., 1009-10, 1014  
 Wali, Y.A., 448  
 Walker, C., 191  
 Walker, E.H., 155  
 Walker, H.S., 754  
 Walker, L., 1066  
 Walker, P., 1305  
 Walla, K., 1191  
 Waller, W., 457  
 Wallman, W., 537  
 Wallmann, W., 554  
 Walls, G., 145  
 Wallström, M., 1150  
 Walsh, P., 100  
 Walsh, R.W., 155  
 Walters, C.R., 1443  
 Walters, V.A., 545  
 Wamba, K., 1615  
 Wan Li, 358  
 Wang Bingqian, 358  
 Wang Fang, 358  
 Wang Zhen, 357  
 Wanjik, P., 985  
 Waphakabulo, J., 1219  
 Ward, C., 321  
 Wardoyo, 701  
 Wariboa, J.S., 1180  
 Warki, B.A., 431  
 Warnke, J., 537  
 Warren, G., 314  
 Wasi, A.W.A.A., 1058  
 Wathelet, M., 197  
 Watkins, J.D., 1383  
 Watson, A.F., 1001  
 Wattanapongsiri, A., 1185  
 Wazir, I.A.al., 1594  
 Wazoua, D., 343  
 Weaver, B.F., 1501  
 Webber, P.N., 299  
 Weddahi, M.M.O., 856  
 Wedemeier, K., 551  
 Wee Kim Wee, 1076  
 Weil, L.J., 897  
 Weiner, G., 274  
 Weisgerber, J., 303  
 Weiss, N., 300  
 Weiz, H., 528  
 Weizman, E., 734  
 Weizsäcker, R. von, 537  
 Wentzel, J.J.G., 1090  
 West, G.B., 131  
 West, S., 100  
 Westbrook, R., 242  
 Weter, K.T., 917  
 Wheelock Román, J., 935  
 White, A., 354  
 White, D.R., 155  
 White, W.K.K., 705  
 Whitehead, J., 765  
 Whittaker, G.O., 85  
 Wickremasinghe, R., 1128  
 Wiese, B.J., 144  
 Wijeratne, R., 1128  
 Wijetunge, D.B., 1128  
 Wijewardane, N., 1133  
 Wijeyeratne, N.P., 1128  
 Wilde, F., 918  
 Wilder, J.S., 1531  
 Wilder, L.D., 1540  
 Wilhjelm, N., 418  
 Wilkey, M.R., 1569  
 Wilkins, B., 1449  
 Wilkinson, W.G., 1466  
 Willem-Alexander, *Prince*, 900  
 William, *Prince*, 1302  
 Williams, H.H., 1050  
 Williams, N.C.R., 430  
 Williams, R., 875  
 Willis, R., 100  
 Willockx, F., 197  
 Willson, J.M., 1622  
 Willybiro-Sako, J., 343  
 Wilms, D., 537  
 Wilson, D., 608  
 Wilson, J., 719  
 Wilson, K.J., 162  
 Wilson, L., 32  
 Wilson, M., 321  
 Wilson, M.H., 274  
 Wiltshire, L., 56  
 Windsor, N., 314  
 Winegard, W., 274  
 Wisner, F.G., 453  
 Wolf, D.E., 1443  
 Wolfowitz, P.D., 705  
 Wong, R., 321  
 Wong Kim Min, J., 841  
 Wong Soon Kai, 841  
 Wood, A., 1608  
 Wood, M., 564  
 Woodburn, D., 1486  
 Woodley, E., 913  
 Woods, M., 719  
 Woolcott, R.A., 119  
 Woollaston, P.T.E., 918  
 Wordsworth-Stevenson, E., 809  
 Wörner, M., 37  
 Wrye, W., 321  
 Wu Xueqian, 358  
 Wutaunashe, J., 1628  
 Wyatt, A.H., 1193  
 Wyatt, A.S., 567  
 Xavier, A.O., 580  
 Xuereb, P., 850  
 Ya'acobi, G., 734  
 Yabsley, M.R., 132  
 Yagninim, B., 1191  
 Yahaya, H., 564  
 Yakovlev, A.N., 1228-9  
 Yang Rudai, 358  
 Yang Shangkun, 357-8  
 Yannopoulos, E., 573  
 Yao Yilin, 358  
 Yaou, A., 266  
 Yaqub Khan, S.Z., 970  
 Yasin, M.al-H.A., 1136  
 Yates, E.G., 1542  
 Yazov, D.T., 1228  
 Yeo Cheow Tong, 1076  
 Yeo Ning Hong, 1076  
 Yessa, E.S., 856  
 Yeutter, C.K., 1383  
 Yilmaz, M., 1207  
 Yliff, Y., 197  
 Yoka, A.E., 383  
 Yon Hyong Muk, 786  
 Yondon, J., 872  
 Yong, A.S., 832  
 Yong, R., 52  
 Yordanov, G., 244  
 Yotov, Y., 244  
 Young, B., 1008  
 Young, B.A., 318  
 Young, H., 314  
 Young, J., 1084  
 Young, J.R., 324  
 Young, L., 299  
 Young, L.G., 1105  
 Young of Graftham, *Lord*, 1306  
 Younger, G., 1305  
 Youssouf, I.A., 431  
 Youssouff, A.A., 431  
 Yu Kuo-hwa, 369  
 Yubamrung, C., 1185  
 Yudohusodo, S., 701  
 Yun Gi Jong, 786  
 Yurur, S., 1207  
 Yusof, H., 239  
 Yusuf, A., 473  
 Zafar, K., 186  
 Zafera, A., 823  
 Zahid, A., 186  
 Zahidi, M.Z., 879  
 Zahir, U., 844  
 Zaikov, L.N., 1228-9  
 Zainuddin, D., 832  
 Zakaria, I., 34  
 Zakhem, S.H., 184  
 Zaki, A., 844  
 Zali, A.A., 707  
 Zamil, A.A.al, 1058  
 Zamor, R., 588  
 Zamyatin, L.M., 1249  
 Zanone, V., 744  
 Zapatero, V., 1117  
 Zapotocký, E., 414  
 Zappala, J., 1125  
 Zavadil, M., 410, 412  
 Zawaideh, S., 768  
 Zawawi, Q.bin A.M.al., 964  
 Zayed bin Sultan al Nahyan, *Sheikh*, 1290  
 Zegada Hurtado, J., 219  
 Zein, A.O., 856  
 Zekan, B., 1603  
 Zeledón Araya, R., 387  
 Zenined, A., 883  
 Zeny, C., 823  
 Zepos, C., 577  
 Zerbino, R., 1566  
 Zhao Ziyang, 358  
 Zheng Tuobin, 358  
 Zhivkov, T., 244  
 Zhulev, D.A., 249  
 Zimmerman, J.A., 1462  
 Zimmermann, F., 537  
 Zindou, I., 209  
 Zitouni, M., 75  
 Zmerli, S., 1202  
 Zodehougan, E., 208  
 Zongo, H., 251  
 Zorgati, N., 1202  
 Zougha, A., 251  
 Zoumanigui, G., 586  
 Zubi, M., 1176  
 Zuccolillo, A.R., 995  
 Zuleta Roncali, W., 219  
 Zulu, A.g., 1619  
 Zumbado Jimenez, F., 387  
 Zussy, N., 1544  
 Zuze, P.D., 1622















TRENT UNIVERSITY



0 1164 0141193 3

895969

895969

JA 51 .S7 1989/90  
Statesman's year book

895969

